Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Full Version



Edited by

Jane Platt

‘If I could spare time to Methodise these Rude Notes which are contained in my several books of Collections … I would’. These are the rueful words of Rev. Thomas Machell of Kirkby Thore (1647-1698), who died before he could complete his mammoth ‘History and Topography of Cumberland and Westmorland’.
328 years after his untimely death, Machell’s collections toward his History and Topography of Westmorland are published here, for the first time.

Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Edited by
Jane Platt

CUMBERLAND AND WESTMORLAND
ANTIQUARIAN AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY

Record Series Volume 25
2025

Cumberland and Westmorland
Antiquarian and Archaeological Society
Hon. General Editor
Professor Colin Richards

Thomas Machell's Collections Towards a History and Topography of Westmorland

Record Series Volume 25

Editorial matter © Jane Platt, 2025. All rights reserved

ISBN 978 1 873124 956

Printed by
Titus Wilson Ltd, Kendal
2025

This work has been supported by a legacy from Annette Mary Theresa Harwood, deceased, of Stanwix, Carlisle.

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the copyright owner or as expressly permitted by law.

Requests for the copyright owner's written permission to reproduce any part of this publication should be made of the copyright owner through the CWAAS.

Contents

List of Figures vi

Abbreviations xxiii

Glossary of some English Terms used in Machell's Text xxv

Glossary of some of the Latin Words used in Machell's Text xxxi

Introduction 1

Preface 31

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

- **Chapter 1: Town of Appleby and its Parishes** 219
- **Chapter 2: Askham Parish** 387
- **Chapter 3: Asby Parish** 399
- **Chapter 4: Bampton Parish** 401
- **Chapter 5: Barton Parish** 407
- **Chapter 6: Brough Parish** 473
- **Chapter 7: Brougham Parish** 527
- **Chapter 8: Cliburn Parish** 543
- **Chapter 9: Clifton Parish** 551
- **Chapter 10: Crosby Garrett Parish** 573
- **Chapter 11: Crosby Ravensworth Parish** 581
- **Chapter 12: Dufton Parish** 591
- **Chapter 13: Kirkby Stephen Parish** 597
- **Chapter 14: Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin Parishes** 651
- **Chapter 15: Lowther Parish** 769
- **Chapter 16: Long Marton Parish** 783
- **Chapter 17: Morland Parish** 791
- **Chapter 18: Musgrave Parish** 809
- **Chapter 19: Ormside Parish** 815
- **Chapter 20: Orton Parish** 821
- **Chapter 21: Ravenstonedale Parish** 837
- **Chapter 22: Shap Parish** 847
- **Chapter 23: Warcop Parish** 863

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

- **Chapter 2.1: Kendal Barony** 877
- **Chapter 2.2: Kendal Town** 907

Chapter 2.3: Kendal Chapelries

3i: Burneside 931

3ii: Crook and Winster 937

3iii: Hutton 941

3iv: Ings & Hugill 945

3v: Kentmere 951

3vi: Longsleddale 957

3vii: Natland and Watercrook 961

3viii: Selside & Skelsmergh 969

3ix: Staveley 973

3x: Underbarrow 979

Chapter 2.4: Beetham Parish 981

Chapter 2.5: Burton in Kendal Parish 1003

Chapter 2.6: Grasmere Parish 1015

Chapter 2.7: Heversham Parish 1049

Chapter 2.8: Kirkby Lonsdale Parish 1075

Chapter 2.9: Windermere Parish 1117

Chapter 2.10: Itinerary 1163

Part 3. Further Collections

Chapter 3.1: Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland 1195

Chapter 3.2: Correspondence 1203

Chapter 3.3: Roman Antiquities 1233

Chapter 3.4: Concerning Heraldry 1307

Bibliography 1 1369

Bibliography 2 1383

Acknowledgements 1405

List of figures

Preface

Figure 1. ‘Of the British Characters’. I.15. 43
Figure 2. Sketch of the Picts’ Wall. I.35. 57
Figure 3. ‘hec fata resolvent’. I.229. 73
Figure 4. Proposed Title Page, ‘These Armes … will make a pretty Booke.’ I.41. 84
Figure 5. ‘Out of Mr Adam’s Index Villaris’. III.vii. 86
Figure 6. Examples of symbols based on the Index Villaris. III.1. 86
Figure 7. Part of Machell’s Township Chart. III.3. 87
Figure 8. ‘An Hantshire Piper’. I.83. 138
Figure 9. ‘*Speed*’. II.502. 207
Figure 10. ‘Father or brother … you may pace at any entrance as twix a. & b.’ II.530. 212

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

Chapter 1: Town of Appleby and its Parishes

Figure 1.1.1. Appleby Castle. I.57. 219
Figure 1.1.2. Seals ‘sans date’. I.62. 223
Figure 1.1.3. Appleby Seal. I.165. 224
Figure 1.1.4. Sketch of Roman coins. I.172. 231
Figure 1.1.5. ABALLABA Inscription. I.173. 232
Figure 1.1.6. ‘Platforme’ of Appleby. I.176A. 234
Figure 1.1.7. Margin sketch of halberd, with explanatory text. I.308. 257
Figure 1.1.8. Proclamation of James II, 1688. I.178-9. 258
Figure 1.1.9. ‘By the King: A Proclamation for Restoring Corporations to their Ancient Charters, Rights and Franchises, James R.’ 1688. I.182A-183. 259
Figure 1.1.10. Appleby Seal. I.276A. 262
Figure 1.1.11. Common seals of the Borough of Appleby. I.277. 263
Figure 1.1.12. ‘The seale is about as big as a groat.’ I.347. 289
Figure 1.1.13. Coat of arms drawn on a small scrap of paper. I.262C. 292
Figure 1.1.14. Seal of Robert de Veteriponte. I.187. 294
Figure 1.1.15. Seals of the Veteriponte and Machell families. I.261. 295
Figure 1.1.16. ‘This is not much unlike Meschiens, his armes’. I.332. 303
Figure 1.1.17. Appleby Castle Tower. I.183B. 304
Figure 1.1.18. Inscription in Appleby Castle Tower. I.183B. 304
Figure 1.1.19. Sketch placed alongside the words, ‘which strong and fortificall worke’. I.302. 305
Figure 1.1.20. Margin sketch: ‘antiq of Castles’. I.302. 305
Figure 1.1.21. ‘In a field Gules, 6 annulets Or’. I.234. 310
Figure 1.1.22. ‘Richard de Buly … Gules, a primrose, Or, pierced of the field.’ I.235. 311
Figure 1.1.23. Seal of John de Veteripont. IV.31. 311
Figure 1.1.24. Space for the Veteripont seal, containing the pencilled words, ‘Se the seale’. I.236. 312
Figure 1.1.25. Seal of Richard Fitz John. I.237. 313

Figure 1.1.26. Veteripont Seal. I.238. 314
Figure 1.1.27. Margin sketch relating to animal heads hung on the Hart Horne Tree, Whinfell. I.245. 321
Figure 1.1.28. Seal of Roger de Clifford. I.247. 323
Figure 1.1.29. Clifford Arms. I.248. 325
Figure 1.1.30. Reverse of Seal: 'This Seale is of Red wax'. I.253. 330
Figure 1.1.31. 'Seale of Sir William de Threlkeld' c.1341-42. I.253. 331
Figure 1.1.32. Example of Machell's frequent use of a pointing hand as a nota bene. I.254. 332
Figure 1.1.33. 'The Good old Mali-Catuli'. I.328B. 345
Figure 1.1.34. Hilton. 'Over the arched gate of the court'. III.91. 357
Figure 1.1.35. Hilton. 'Over the hall chimney'. III.91. 357
Figure 1.1.36. Crackenthorpe Hall. I.335B. 364
Figure 1.1.37. 'old timber footed … to make the garrets'. I.335A. 365
Figure 1.1.38. Sketch of Roman Fort. III.51. 367
Figure 1.1.39. Roman Camp at Crackenthorpe. I.330. 368
Figure 1.1.40. Roman Camp at Crackenthorpe. 'I have seen this Romane Campe since and have drawn it out elsewhere.' I.330. 368
Figure 1.1.41. Faint pencil plan of the Roman fort at Crackenthorpe. I.331. 369
Figure 1.1.42. Three greyhounds courant. I.332. 373
Figure 1.1.43. Seal sketches. I.646. 375
Figure 1.1.44. 'Machel with Barkar'. I.646. 377

Chapter 2: Askham Parish

Figure 1.2.1. East Window, Askham Church. I.359. 388
Figure 1.2.2. Askham Hall, gate inscription. I.361. 390
Figure 1.2.3. Askham Hall Chapel, East Window. I.361. 391
Figure 1.2.4. Kitchen doorway stone, Askham Hall, I.363. 392
Figure 1.2.5. Coats of arms on Askham Cross. I.362. 392

Chapter 4: Bampton Parish

Figure 1.4.1. Pencil drawing. 'SIGILLUM PATRITII FILII'. I.369. 402
Figure 1.4.2. Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, St Edmund Hall, Oxford, 20 September 1686. I.370A. 403

Chapter 5: Barton Parish

Figure 1.5.1. Margin sketch plan of Barton Church with tower and interior arches. I.660. 411
Figure 1.5.2. 'Over the Portch on the outside in Stone'. I.673. 412
Figure 1.5.3. Chancel Ceiling, Barton Church. I.671. 412
Figure 1.5.4. A measured plan of Barton Church. I. 671A. 413
Figure 1.5.5. Arms and Monumental Inscriptions at Barton Church. I. 675. 415
Figure 1.5.6. Lancaster Arms. I.380. 417
Figure 1.5.7. Coats of arms, low end of the quire. I.380. 417
Figure 1.5.8. Sketch of the 'through' at number 13. I.380. 418
Figure 1.5.9. Barton Church: 'W.D. 1674'. I.380. 418

Figure 1.5.10. Small sketches: ‘Maybe John Lancaster’. I.381. 418
Figure 1.5.11. Text written in several different directions and text crossed through. I.655B. 428
Figure 1.5.12. Sketch of the Dacre Arms on Barton Cross. I.664. 429
Figure 1.5.13. Dunmallet, Pooley, ‘Bridge’ and Machell’s notes. I.666. 431
Figure 1.5.14. Sketch of Trostermount, now called Hodgson’s Hill, Pooley. I.692. 432
Figure 1.5.15. Sketch Plan of Winder Hall. I.696. 435
Figure 1.5.16. Sketch of Martindale Chapel. I.698. 436
Figure 1.5.17. Martindale Chapel Plan. I.655B. 437
Figure 1.5.18. Coats of Arms: Martindale family and Browne of Matterdale. Margin of I.700. 440
Figure 1.5.19. Lord’s Seat, Bannerdale. I.699. 440
Figure 1.5.20. Sketch of Patterdale Chapel and yew tree. I.706. 443
Figure 1.5.21. Patterdale Chapel Plan. I.725C. 443
Figure 1.5.22. Two escutcheons on the lintel over the door at Patterdale Hall. I.714. 446
Figure 1.5.23. ‘A light touch or scratch of what I remember of Patterdale Hall: a Little hall’ I.715A. 446
Figure 1.5.24. Patterdale Hall Floor slates. I.715B. 447
Figure 1.5.25. An eagle displayed: inked on the left, pencilled on the right. I.724A. 449
Figure 1.5.26. Hartsop Hall Ground Plan. I.725A. 451
Figure 1.5.27. Hartsop Hall sketches. I.725A. 452
Figure 1.5.28. ‘The forme of the lake called Ulse-water.’ II.438. 455
Figure 1.5.29. Small piece of paper affixed to the page. ‘On the Seeling in Plasterworke, in the old dineing Roome at Sockbridge’. I.733. 458
Figure 1.5.30. Plaster work on the partition of the new dining room at Sockbridge Hall. I.725D. 458
Figure 1.5.31. ‘Arms over the Tower Door’. I. 725D. 458
Figure 1.5.32. Plan of Sockbridge Hall. I.725D. 459
Figure 1.5.33. On the ‘Great Hall window’, Sockbridge Hall. I.725D. 459
Figure 1.5.34. Coats of Arms on a ‘great Beam’ in Sockbridge Hall. I.725C. 460
Figure 1.5.35. In Yanwath Hall ‘Outshot window’. I.736. 461
Figure 1.5.36. ‘In Plasterwork over the Dineing-Room chimney.’ I.736. 461
Figure 1.5.37. In plasterwork over the ceiling. I.736. 462
Figure 1.5.38. Annotated plan of Yanwath Hall. I.737. 462
Figure 1.5.39. Castlesteads at Yanwath Wood. I.738A. 463
Figure 1.5.40. Machell’s sketches of Maybrough and ‘Arthur[’s] Castle alias the round Table’. I.737. 465
Figure 1.5.41. Maybrough. Four standing stones; the larger circle contains the Latin word ‘Iugerum’. I.375. 466
Figure 1.5.42. Notes on Hartsop and Patterdale, written up elsewhere and then scored through. I.725B. 467

Chapter 6: Brough Parish

Figure 1.6.1. ‘IHS & M’. I.426. 478
Figure 1.6.2. Elevation of Brough Castle. I.392. 482
Figure 1.6.3. Plan of Brough Castle. I.392A. 483
Figure 1.6.4. Key to Machell’s Plan of Brough Castle. 483

Figure 1.6.5. Sketches. I.395. 485
Figure 1.6.6. Margin sketch. Impression of the old roof of the Roman Tower at Brough Castle. I.396. 486
Figure 1.6.7. Copy of Brough Charter Seal. I.429. 489
Figure 1.6.8. 'Brough Spaw Well'. III.103. 490
Figure 1.6.9. Court Leet and Baron Arms. I.399. 494
Figure 1.6.10. Maiden Castle. I.401. 497
Figure 1.6.11. Route over Stainmore. I.401. 498
Figure 1.6.12. Margin sketch plan of Maiden Castle. I.436A. 499
Figure 1.6.13. Faint lines of a pencilled plan of Maiden Castle. I.436B. 499
Figure 1.6.14. Arms of Sir Alexander Ewbank. I.400. 503
Figure 1.6.15. Arms of Vipont and Ewbank. I.400. 504
Figure 1.6.16. Symbols relating to the marriage of Thomas de Helebeck to Avicia. I.405. 505
Figure 1.6.17. Sigillum Thomas de Helbeck, 26. Ed. 1. [1297-98] I.409. 509
Figure 1.6.18. Arms, top-left margin, I.410 511
Figure 1.6.19. Blenkinsop: Thomas and Katherine's Arms. I.410. 512
Figure 1.6.20. Haverington Arms. I.410. 512
Figure 1.6.21. Arms of William de Blenkinshop. I.411. 513
Figure 1.6.22. Seals: 1. 'Used by Thomas Junior's widow at her will'; 2. 'Used at her sonn's will'. I.414. 517
Figure 1.6.23. Seal of Thomas Blenkinsop. I.416. 519
Figure 1.6.24. Vaux Seal. I.418. 521
Figure 1.6.25. 'Gun britch' and 'levator'. III.107. 524

Chapter 7: Brougham Parish

Figure 1.7.1. Chimney piece in the dining room at Hornby Hall. I.444A. 535
Figure 1.7.2. Matches. I.443. 535
Figure 1.7.3. 'Browham demolished'. I.630. 540
Figure 1.7.4. 'Browham demolished', detail. I.630. 541

Chapter 8: Cliburn Parish

Figure 1.8.1. Cliburn church plan. III.117. 544
Figure 1.8.2. Sketch of the gable end of Cliburn church. III.117. 544
Figure 1.8.3. Plan of Cliburn Hall. Margin. III.117. 545
Figure 1.8.4. Coat of Arms over the door at Cliburn Hall. III.15. 546

Chapter 9: Clifton Parish

Figure 1.9.1. Sketch plan of Clifton Parsonage House. III.121. 551
Figure 1.9.2. Engayne Arms (1.). III.121. 553
Figure 1.9.3. Helynor Ingayne. III.123. 555
Figure 1.9.4. Fallowfield of Great Strickland Arms. III.123. 555
Figure 1.9.5. 'vid. Fig. 3'. III.123. 555
Figure 1.9.6. The letter 'M' in Clifton Church. III.123. 556
Figure 1.9.7. 'Seal on a deed in the possession of T. Sandford'. III.124. 557

Figure 1.9.8. Seal of Richard Lowther. III.125. 557
Figure 1.9.9. Engayne Arms (2.). III.133 562
Figure 1.9.10. Inscription frame 'upon the gable end of Clifton Hall'. III.133A. 563
Figure 1.9.11. Wybergh Pedigree. III.150. 571
Figure 1.9.12. 'In Mr Knight booke'. III.150. 571

Chapter 10: Crosby Garrett Parish

Figure 1.10.1. Directions from Crosby Garrett Church. III.166B. 573
Figure 1.10.2. Musgrave Arms. III.166A. 575
Figure 1.10.3. 'Fairy Beads'. I.539. 578

Chapter 11: Crosby Ravensworth Parish

Figure 1.11.1. Crosby Ravensworth Church. East Window. III.177. 584
Figure 1.11.2. Crosby Ravensworth. Manor House Arms. III.178. 585
Figure 1.11.3. 'A coyn of Richard found … in the street. Feb. 23 1688/9'. III.174. 587

Chapter 12: Dufton Parish

Figure 1.12.1. Arms at Dufton Church. III.162A. 592

Chapter 13: Kirkby Stephen Parish

Figure 1.13.1 'In Hartley's choir which is on the south side of the church'. I.578. 600
Figure 1.13.2. Coats of Arms in the margin. I.579. 601
Figure 1.13.3. Wharton Tomb, pencil and ink drawing. I.573. 602
Figure 1.13.4. Wharton Tomb East End: detail. I.576. 604
Figure 1.13.5. 'Said to be Sir Andrew Hartcley, Earle of Carlile.' 'X.' I.580. 606
Figure 1.13.6. Example of the hand of a later writer who questioned the provenance of the monument above. I.573. 606
Figure 1.13.7. Armorial Glass in Kirkby Stephen Church. I.582. 607
Figure 1.13.8. Crocklem Castle and the Roman Way. III.183. 615
Figure 1.13.9. Fells and route map. III.188. 616
Figure 1.13.10. 'Wilborefell', A Prospect of the fell S. & S. West from Rasett Pikes. III.188. 617
Figure 1.13.11. 'A Memorandum of Hartley Castle'. III.223. 618
Figure 1.13.12. Stone 'howles'. Pencil and ink drawing. I.584. 620
Figure 1.13.13. 'Stone like a tortoise; strange stags horn'. I.569C. 620
Figure 1.13.14. Plan of Wharton Hall. III.202. 625
Figure 1.13.15. Machell's Figure (a.). III.202. 626
Figure 1.13.16. Machell's Figure (b.). III.201. 627
Figure 1.13.17. Machell's Figure (c.). III.201. 627
Figure 1.13.18. Machell's Figure (d.). III.202. 628
Figure 1.13.19. Machell's Figure (e.). III.203. 628
Figure 1.13.20. Machell's Figure (g.). III.203. 629
Figure 1.13.21. Plain shield, Clifford. III.205. 630
Figure 1.13.22. Image at foot of page after 'verry'. III.203. 630
Figure 1.13.23. Wharton Hall Parlour. Musgrave Coat of Arms. III.207. 631

Figure 1.13.24. Angel and Coat of Arms, 'probably Warcops'. III.225. 634
Figure 1.13.25. Coats of Arms. 'This is defaced but it appears like 3 cupps'. III.225. 634
Figure 1.13.26. Plan of Smardale Hall. III.225. 634
Figure 1.13.27. Armorial Glass in the Hall. III.225. 635
Figure 1.13.28. 'The same agane.' III.225. 635
Figure 1.13.29. Armorial Glass in the Gallery end window. III.225. 636
Figure 1.13.30. In Soulby Chapel. III.194. 637
Figure 1.13.31. Seal of Sir Richard de Suleby. I.497. 639
Figure 1.13.32. Small sketch of the Hither Pit. Letters a. to f. denote areas mentioned in the text. III.192. 649

Chapter 14: Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin Parish

Figure 1.14.1. Sketch of the Whelp Descent. I.550. 659
Figure 1.14.2. 'Vault underground … at Coppin Hill'. I.548. 669
Figure 1.14.3. A scrap page typical of those numbered in the 20th century when pasted into the volume. I.561A. 671
Figure 1.14.4. Letter to Machell from A. Smal[…], 1672. VI.222B. 672
Figure 1.14.5. Sketch of Kirkby Thore font cover with added scrap page. I.561. 675
Figure 1.14.6. Image of scroll. I.476. 676
Figure 1.14.7A. Machell's plan of Rose Castle post 1660. VI.662K. 677
Figure 1.14.7B. Detail from Machell's plan of Rose Castle. VI.662K. 678
Figure 1.14.8. 'Earthworks; The road to K. church; The Romane Way towards Apleby'. I.485. 698
Figure 1.14.9. 'Forme pectinatus'. I.528. 701
Figure 1.14.10. 'a & b; 'f.v.': examples of Machell's sketches. I.528. 701
Figure 1.14.11. Study desk. I.563. 710
Figure 1.14.12. Dining-room chimney 'contrivance' and study desk. I.562. 710
Figure 1.14.13. 'The little house on the left as you goe to Penrith'. I.548. 716
Figure 1.14.14. Inscription. I.758. 722
Figure 1.14.15. The Great Seal of England kept by Roger Malus Catulus. I.372. 726
Figure 1.14.16. The Great Seal turned through 180 degrees. I.372. 726
Figure 1.14.17. Machell descent. I.763. 726
Figure 1.14.18. Crackenthorpe Hall Coats of Arms. I.620. 732
Figure 1.14.19. Newbiggin Hall. 'Carnaby quarterd with Crackenthorpe'. Arms of Salkeld of Rosgil. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.20. Newbiggin Hall. Brisco quartering Skelton impaling Crackenthorpe. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.21. Newbiggin Hall. Crackenthorpe: fleur-de-lys Or; Bird Or on ground Gules. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.22. Newbiggin Hall. 'Warcop' Argent on Sable, fess Argent. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.23. Newbiggin Hall. Argent a bend chequy Or and Gules. I.649A. 733
Figure 1.14.24. 'On the lower rock at Crawdundell. Sep.19.1690'. III.283. 734

Chapter 15: Lowther Parish

Figure 1.15.1. Lowther Arms 1687 (Or, 6 annulets Sable). III.41B. 771
Figure 1.15.2. West end of Lowther Church, sketched on the reverse of a letter. III.41A. 774

Figure 1.15.3. Lowther Church. III.41. 774
Figure 1.15.4. 'Platforme of Lowther Parsonage'. III.34. 775
Figure 1.15.5. Lowther Arms. III.34A. 777
Figure 1.15.6. Lowther Hall. III.42-43. 778
Figure 1.15.7. Lowther Hall. III.45. 778
Figure 1.15.8. At Lowther Hall. III.48. 779
Figure 1.15.9. Sketch plan of Melkinthorpe Hall. III.34A. 782

Chapter 16: Long Marton Parish

Figure 1.16.1. Margin detail: images of tumuli. I.603. 783
Figure 1.16.2. Arms 'in Martin Church window'. I.601A. 784
Figure 1.16.3. Faded pencil sketches of escutcheons in the windows of Long Marton Church. I.606. 785
Figure 1.16.4. White Burwens..'a. Bulwork; b. the mote; c. another Bulworke like an halfemoon'. I.610. 787

Chapter 17: Morland Parish

Figure 1.17.1. Backhouse Arms. I.613. 794
Figure 1.17.2. Arms at Melkinthorpe Hall. III.263A. 801

Chapter 18: Musgrave Parish

Figure 1.18.1. Musgrave Church. East Window Images. III.273. 811
Figure 1.18.2. Musgrave Church. South Window Images. III.275. 811
Figure 1.18.3. Sketch containing six square plots: 3 above 3, each labelled a, b, c, d. III.282. 813

Chapter 19: Ormside Parish

Figure 1.19.1. Ormside Parish Bounder. III.291. 815
Figure 1.19.2. Sketch plan of Ormside Church. III.292. 816
Figure 1.19.3. Brass at Ormside Church. Sir Christopher Pickering. I.646B. 816
Figure 1.19.4. Margin sketch plan of Breeks or Breaks Hall. III.293A. 818
Figure 1.19.5. Finds from the River Eden at Ormside. III.293. 819

Chapter 20: Orton Parish

Figure 1.20.1. Brandreth Stone. III.301. 827
Figure 1.20.2. Letter, 1673. III.298. 828
Figure 1.20.3. Inscription, Tebay School. III.301. 829
Figure 1.20.4. Ancient Hall house with window 'castle-wise'. III.302. 831
Figure 1.20.5. Engraving. Portrait of Thomas Barlow D.D. I.642A. 833
Figure 1.20.6. 'Found in Sunbiging Tarne'. III.205. 834

Chapter 21: Ravenstonedale Parish

Figure 1.21.1. Sketch of a feature 'a mile & ½ N.W. from Newbigin, the left hand of the way to Appleby'. III.305. 837
Figure 1.21.2. Tern [Tarn] House. Coats of Arms. III.306. 840

Chapter 22: Shap Parish

Figure 1.22.1. Shap Church. Coats of arms. III.313. 848
Figure 1.22.2. Seal 'Ad Shap Abbey'. I.165. 848
Figure 1.22.3. Standing Stones, 'near to Shap Abbey'. I.312. 857
Figure 1.22.4. Gilbert Culwen, sigillum. I.311. 861

Chapter 23: Warcop Parish

Figure 1.23.1.'The Round-Castle near Coupland Beckbridge as the foundation Appears in Its Ruines'. I.317. 864
Figure 1.23.2. Warcop tumuli and 'the Romane Way which leads towards Appleby'. I.318. 865
Figure 1.23.3. 'A ring made of earth and stones'. I.318. 865
Figure 1.23.4. Coats of arms at Warcop Hall. I.319. 866
Figure 1.23.5. Church bells, Warcop. III.327. 867
Figure 1.23.6. Four coats of arms in Warcop Church windows. I.320. 867
Figure 1.23.7. Nevill coat of arms, Warcop Church. I.320. 868
Figure 1.23.8. Warcop Tower window. Coats of arms. I.322. 870
Figure 1.23.9. Margin sketch beside a description of Thomas Warcop of Colby. I.333. 870
Figure 1.23.10. Coat of arms at Burton Hall. III.329. 872
Figure 1.23.11. Coat of arms in the great window of the dining room at Burton Hall. III.329. 872
Figure 1.23.12. Detail on 'the highest stone of the S.W. angle of the great window' of Burton Hall. III.329. 872

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

Chapter 2.1: Kendal Barony

Figure 2.1.1. 'Cunswick, an old Hall.' II.3. 877
Figure 2.1.2. 'In Plaster over the Hall chimney' at Dockray Hall. 'R \ W / S. 1621.' II.359B. 896

Chapter 2.2: Kendal Town

Figure 2.2.1. John Speed's Map of Kendal. II.23. 907
Figure 2.2.2. Machell's Plan of Kendal Castle. Detail. II.26. 907
Figure 2.2.3. Kendal Hospital. Arms. II.26. 909
Figure 2.2.4. Water-Budget. II.31. 910
Figure 2.2.5. View of Kendal Church from the west; small sketch 4cm x 4cm, pasted onto II.30. 910
Figure 2.2.6. Parr's Quire. II.35. 911
Figure 2.2.7. Monument, north side of Parr's Quire. II.35. 911
Figure 2.2.8. Part of the monument of Sir Augustine Nicholls of Faxton. II.35. 912
Figure 2.2.9. In Sizergh or Strickland's Quire. II.36. 912
Figure 2.2.10. Between Parr's and Strickland's quire. 3 coats of arms in stone, one defaced. II.36A. 913
Figure 2.2.11.'North side of the quire: gray marble tomb supported with Hewne Stone.' II.36A. 913
Figure 2.2.12. Coats of Arms. II.359A. 913
Figure 2.2.13. 'And at the corner is this Coate of Arms'. II.36A. 914
Figure 2.2.14. Seal to a deed of gift, 21. Ed. III. 'which is not much unlike this in Strickland's Quire'. II.36B. 914

Figure 2.2.15. Pasted images of monument and inscriptions, c., d. and e, II.37. 915
Figure 2.2.16. Marble monument near the vestry door. II.39. 916
Figure 2.2.17. Memorial to Michael Stanford. II.39. 917
Figure 2.2.18. Seal detail. University of St Andrews. II.41. 918
Figure 2.2.19. Kendal Castle. II.71. 926
Figure 2.2.20. Mound at Kendal. II.369C. 929
Figure 2.2.21. 'Kendal Church. In Strickland, quier window'. II.122. 929

Chapter 2.3: Kendal Chapelries

3i: Burneside

Figure 2.3i.1. Pencil sketch of Burneside Chapel. II.91. 931
Figure 2.3i.2. Thomas Dennison. 'Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer.' II.91. 932

3ii: Crook and Winster

Figure 2.3ii.1. Plan of Crook Chapel. II.91. 937
Figure 2.3ii.2. Winster Chapel. II.97. 938

3iii: Hutton

Figure 2.3iii.1. Hutton Chapel. II.87. 941

3iv. Ings & Hugill

Figure 2.3iv.1. Chapel at Ings. II.121. 945
Figure 2.3iv.2. Lines on Rowland Wilson, copied by James Robinson, chaplain. II.413A. 947
Figure 2.3iv.3. St Ann's Chapel Ings from the south-east; sketch in red pencil and ink. II.414. 948

3v: Kentmere

Figure 2.3v.1. Kentmere Chapel. II.105. 951
Figure 2.3v.2. Kentmere Hall. Ab Ecclesia Kendal 8m. N.W & by N. II.105. 952
Figure 2.3v.3. 'Kentmer Hall; in the Hall window'. II.105. 952
Figure 2.3v.4. 'No Deer in memory – but trees'. II.106. 953

3vi: Longsleddale

Figure 2.3vi.1. Longsleddale Chapel. II.103. 957

3vii: Natland and Watercrook

Figure 2.3vii.1. Natland Chapel. II.81. 961
Figure 2.3vii.2. 'At Natland, the reverse as the lower in all respects.' II.79. 962
Figure 2.3vii.3. 'Found at Broadflat S. a Capella 12 score, in May 91.' II.79 963
Figure 2.3vii.4. 'Found near Mr Guyes ¼ m. N. a Capella. 16 years since.' II.80. 963
Figure 2.3vii.5. 'A piece of a pot with this broken inscription', and an 'oven' at Watercrook. II.81. 965
Figure 2.3vii.6. Watercrook Roman fort. II.83. 966
Figure 2.3vii.7. 'The Little Altar', 2 ft 1/2 high. II.82. 967

3viii: Selside & Skelsmergh

Figure 2.3viii.1. Selside Chapel and Hall. II.101. 969

3ix: Staveley

Figure 2.3ix.1. Staveley Chapel. II.113. 974

Figure 2.3ix.2. Arms in Staveley Chapel East Window. II.113. 974

3x: Underbarrow

Figure 2.3x.1. Underbarrow Chapel. II.111. 979

Chapter 2.4: Beetham Parish

Figure 2.4.1. Beetham Church. II.276. 981

Figure 2.4.2. 'In the High Quire on the South Side in wainscot: F.D. 1614'. II.267. 981

Figure 2.4.3. 'In the East window of the great Quire'. II.267. 981

Figure 2.4.4. 'In the E. Window of the S. Ile quire. In Text Letters on the first light of the same window'. II.267. 982

Figure 2.4.5. 'Over the S. Ile Q. as you enter by 6 steps Ascending, 3 Bores heads couped'. II.267. 982

Figure 2.4.6. II.267. On the South Side. II.267. 982

Figure 2.4.7. 'In a midle window in the S. Ile.' II.267. 983

Figure 2.4.8. Beetham Church memorials. Foot of II.267. 983

Figure 2.4.9. 'Cherubim' in Witherslack Chapel East Window. II.275. 989

Figure 2.4.10. Witherslack Chapel. Coats of Arms, 1 and 2. II.275. 990

Figure 2.4.11. Witherslack Chapel and East Window. II.277. 992

Figure 2.4.12. Witherslack Hall. II.277. 999

Chapter 2.5: Burton in Kendal Parish

Figure 2.5.1. Small sketch of Burton Church. II.291. 1004

Figure 2.5.2. Burton Church Arms, Sketches 1-5. II.289. 1004

Figure 2.5.3. Arms, Sketches 6-7. II.289. 1005

Figure 2.5.4. 'Arms on the Capital of the farthest pillar.' II.289. 1005

Figure 2.5.5. Leigh Arms. II.289. 1005

Figure 2.5.6. Burton Cross. II.290. 1007

Figure 2.5.7. Orientation diagram from Burton Church. II.291. 1009

Figure 2.5.8. Chapel and Hall at Preston Patrick. II.297. 1011

Figure 2.5.9. R \ L / E, 1666, 'Over the hall door'. II.295. 1014

Chapter 2.6: Grasmere Parish

Figure 2.6.1. Seal stamped with the Fleming Arms. II.124. 1019

Figure 2.6.2. Assessment Stick. II.124. 1020

Figure 2.6.3. Bells at Grasmere Church 1607, with Arms and Inscriptions. II.132C. 1021

Figure 2.6.4. Grasmere Church, 3rd Bell Inscription. II.132C. 1022

Figure 2.6.5. Grasmere Church. Memorials and Arches. II.125. 1022

Figure 2.6.6. 'Dunbal Raise Stones'. II.132B. 1026

Figure 2.6.7. {'Ergo this Coat, had he 2 wives – for Briggs was one of Calmire.'}. II.129. 1028

Figure 2.6.8. Langdale Chapel. II.153. 1030

Figure 2.6.9. The three Shire Stones and the rising of rivers. II.135. 1035

Figure 2.6.10. {'Which Way – Which way'}. II.149. 1038
Figure 2.6.11. Rydal Hall. II.133. 1039
Figure 2.6.12. Daniel Fleming's Signature. II.145. 1041
Figure 2.6.13. Windermere. Islands near Bowness. II.150. 1044
Figure 2.6.14. Ambleside Chapel, ' In the Quier on the right ha[n]d window near to great East window'. II.151. 1045
Figure 2.6.15.'Upon the Dial Post on the Cross in Ambleside'. II.150. 1045
Figure 2.6.16. Inscription on 'Ambleside Chappel Bell'. II.150A. 1045
Figure 2.6.17. Inscription from 'Borwens'. II.152. 1046
Figure 2.6.18. 'A sword at Elterwater Hall'. II.153. 1047

Chapter 2.7: Heversham Parish

Figure 2.7.1. Heversham church. II.161. 1049
Figure 2.7.2. Heversham Church East Window. 'Richard Buskel 1601'. II.161. 1050
Figure 2.7.3. 'In Prestons Seat' and 'three more thus'. II 161. 1050
Figure 2.7.4. 'Above a Capital of a Pillar in the N. Ile'. II.165. 1051
Figure 2.7.5. 'On the E? window of the North Aisle'. II.165. 1051
Figure 2.7.6. 'On a Marble-Grave-Stone in Prestons Pew S'. II.165. 1052
Figure 2.7.7. Benson Family Arms. II.167. 1057
Figure 2.7.8. Upper Levins Hall. II.175. 1059
Figure 2.7.9. Arms at Upper Levins Hall. II.175. 1060
Figure 2.7.10. Scroll 'in the parlour window'. II.176. 1061
Figure 2.7.11. Figures illustrating text. II.177. 1063
Figure 2.7.12. Bellingham coat of arms in wainscot. II.178. 1064
Figure 2.7.13. 'Under Levins Hall'. II.179. 1064
Figure 2.7.14. A & 14B. Arms at Nether Levens Hall. II.179. 1065
Figure 2.7.15. Slip of paper 4cm square: epitaph to an unknown lady who died in August 1582. II.181. 1066
Figure 2.7.16. 'Silver found About Siserge Hall 15 years since'. II.183. 1067
Figure 2.7.17. 'Silver found there at the same time.' II.183. 1067
Figure 2.7.18. 'Silver which came out of Yorkeshire perhaps from about Fountains Abby near Rippon'. II.183. 1068
Figure 2.7.19. Sizergh. Arms on 'a dilicate chimney piece of wainscot' in the dining room'. II.187. 1068
Figure 2.7.20. Arms in the Hall at Sizergh Castle. II.187. 1069
Figure 2.7.21. Detail of the parlour chimney piece (e.); arms under a window of the tower (f.). II.187. 1070
Figure 2.7.22. Plan of Crosthwate Chapel. II.190A. 1070
Figure 2.7.23. Example of Machell's MS. II.190A. 1071
Figure 2.7.24. Calmire Hall. 'Old Ivy Building.' II.191. 1072
Figure 2.7.25. Arms containing 'wantaracks' at Calmire Hall. II.191. 1072
Figure 2.7.26. Calmire Hall. 'Another sort of wantarack'. II.191. 1073
Figure 2.7.27. Crosscrake Chapel. 'The chimney is made in the corner, yard long in the lintal.' II.85. 1073

Chapter 2.8: Kirkby Lonsdale Parish

Figure 2.8.1. 'Kirkby Loansdale Church, Michael gate and Brigg Street.' II.208. 1076
Figure 2.8.2. Altar at Kirkby Lonsdale, used as a door seat. II.204. 1077
Figure 2.8.3. Carus with Curwen descent. V.53. 1078
Figure 2.8.4. Machell's use of small scraps of paper. II. 205B. 1079
Figure 2.8.5. Barbon Chapel. II.201. 1081
Figure 2.8.6. In the margin, sketch of Casterton Hall. II.223. 1083
Figure 2.8.7. Kirkby Lonsdale Church; margin sketch. II.205. 1086
Figure 2.8.8. Arms in the Middleton Quire of Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.9. Second coat of arms. Middleton quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.10. Coats of arms on the south side of the monument in the Middleton quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.11. North side of the monument in Middleton Quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219. 1087
Figure 2.8.12. 'In Casterton Piew in the S. Ile – on wainscot.' II.219. 1088
Figure 2.8.13. Redman Arms in Casterton pew in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.220. 1088
Figure 2.8.14. Curwen with Carus coat of arms. II.220. 1089
Figure 2.8.15. Samuell Gibson's Christian Tattoos 1. II.231. 1098
Figure 2.8.16. Samuel Gibson's Christian Tattoos 2. II.231. 1099
Figure 2.8.17. Margin sketch, 3cm x 1cm. Middleton Chapel [length]19; [breadth] 8. II.235. 1100
Figure 2.8.18. Middleton Hall. II.241. 1101
Figure 2.8.19. Middleton Hall. In the Dining Room wainscot. II.241. 1101
Figure 2.8.20. Dining Room Middleton Hall: Arms on a wooden tablet. II.241. 1102
Figure 2.8.21A. Elevation. Hawking Hall. II.236. 1102
Figure 2.8.21B. Plan. Hawking Hall. II.236. 1103
Figure 2.8.22. Killington Chapel. II.253. 1110
Figure 2.8.23. Killington Chapel. 'Arms marked (1.)'. II.253. 1110
Figure 2.8.24. Sketch plan of Killington Hall. II.253. 1110
Figure 2.8.25. Killington Hall garret window. II.253. 1111
Figure 2.8.26. Killington Hall. 'Over the hall door now a window.' II.253. 1111
Figure 2.8.27. Hutton Roof Chapel. II.261. 1113

Chapter 2.9: Windermere Parish

Figure 2.9.1. Windermere Church. II.308. 1120
Figure 2.9.2. Windermere Church. Arms in the upper lights. II.308. 1121
Figure 2.9.3. 'In the South Ile Quire on the S. side'. II.308. 1122
Figure 2.9.4. Four Coats relating to the woollen industry. II.308. 1123
Figure 2.9.5. 'Gentlemen and their ladyes' at the foot of the lower lights. II.311. 1124
Figure 2.9.6. On little and middle bells at Windermere Church. II.312A. 1125
Figure 2.9.7. Windermere church. On 'The Great Bell'. II.312B. 1125
Figure 2.9.8. Margin drawing of the Philipson monument in Windermere Church. II.312. 1126
Figure 2.9.9. 'Windermere Water.' II.313. 1130
Figure 2.9.10. Margin sketch. Troutbeck Chapel. II.319. 1133
Figure 2.9.11. Margin Note: Bishop Lyttelton's addition to Machell's text. II.323. 1139

Figure 2.9.12. Borrans-Ring. II.327. 1140
Figure 2.9.13. Margin sketch of St Katherine's Chapel, Applethwaite. II.330. 1143
Figure 2.9.14. Draft sketch of Calgarth Hall, annotated, 'not right'. II.332. 1144
Figure 2.9.15. Arms at Calgarth Hall, annotated, 'Set the[se] off a little wider one from another.' II.332. 1144
Figure 2.9.16. Calgarth Hall. II.333. 1146
Figure 2.9.17. On a silver tumbler, the Arms of Philipson. II.336. 1147
Figure 2.9.18. Philipson Descent. II.338. 1149
Figure 2.9.19. Cormorant seen at Windermere Parsonage. II.336. 1152
Figure 2.9.20. 'Great Holm-house alias White-hall.' II.342. 1154
Figure 2.9.21. Plan of Holm-house (Whitehall). 'This stands wrong way; ergo, Turne It.' I.342. 1154
Figure 2.9.22. Windermere, showing 'Ruffholm, Ladyholm, Henholm, Longholm Maiden Holm'. II.343. 1155
Figure 2.9.23. Windermere. Detail from the larger image on II.343. 1156

Chapter 2.10: Itinerary

Figure 2.10.1. Christian tattoos. II.384A. 1168
Figure 2.10.2. Frontispiece detail from William Camden's *Britannia* (1600 edition). 1176
Figure 2.10.3. Burneside Hall. Margin sketch. II.409. 1180
Figure 2.10.4. 'Armes at Burnaside Hall'. II.409. 1181
Figure 2.10.5. Margin sketch 1½ cm square: calf with two heads. II.412. 1183
Figure 2.10.7. Coathow. Arms in the Hall. II.429. 1188
Figure 2.10.8. Helm Crag. 'Atlas supporting the Hevens'. II.432. 1190
Figure 2.10.9. 'An heap of stones'. II.432. 1190
Figure 2.10.10. Grasmere 'Sess Bills'. II.424. 1191
Figure 2.10.11.'Like an house only at the N. End'. II.436. 1192

Part 3. Further Collections

Chapter 3.1: Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland

Figure 3.1.1. 'In folio marked thus'. VI.430. 1197

Chapter 3.2: Correspondence

Figure 3.2.1. Machell's copy of his letter, superimposed on sketches of heraldic shields. II.378. 1204
Figure 3.2.2. Letter to Machell, on which he sketched the west end of Lowther Church. III.41A. 1213
Figure 3.2.3. Letter addressed to Machell in London, later used as a sketch pad. VI.482. 1213
Figure 3.2.4. Evidence of multiple use. I.176B. 1231
Figure 3.2.5. Letter addressed to Mrs Elizabeth Machell. II.36B. 1231

Chapter 3.3: Roman Antiquities

Figure 3.3.1. Roman Finds VI.21. 1233
Figure 3.3.2. Illustration from Thomas Machell's letter to William Dugdale, March 25 1684, 'which was published to my unknowledge & printed at Oxford, amongst your *Philosophic Transactions*, Apr. 20 at p.555.' 1235

Figure 3.3.3. Machell's sketch of an inscription and reference to Dr Martin Lister's note on Paulini. VI.279. 1240
Figure 3.3.4. Vessel Quantities. VI.275. 1242
Figure 3.3.5. Symbols used by Machell on VI.237. 1243
Figure 3.3.6. Pillar Shaft. VI.234A. 1245
Figure 3.3.7. Peripteros: Ground plan. VI.234. 1245
Figure 3.3.8. Four-fold wall, pipe wall, pillar wall and altar. VI.240. 1246
Figure 3.3.9. 'A Platform of an Arched Subterranean Vault at Kirkbythore.' VI.281. 1248
Figure 3.3.10. Vault Detail. 'The figure of it resembled a trunke'. VI.281. 1249
Figure 3.3.11. 'A wall of 2 f[eet] & 2 inch broad with 2 Leaden-pipes joyned at (a); the other, a wall with 6 Projectures for so many Pillars, on each of which wee suppose one hath stood.' VI.286. 1251
Figure 3.3.12. 'And on the second of these Projectures was this Inscription.' VI.286. 1252
Figure 3.3.13. 'Interspaces between Projectures.' VI.289. 1253
Figure 3.3.14. 'The 2nd projecture' inscription. VI.289. 1254
Figure 3.3.15. Seal Ring Stones. VI.246. 1257
Figure 3.3.16. 'A sardonix ring stone with a seale cut up on it found in Bleckatt Burhans, 30 of March 1687/8.' VI.246. 1257
Figure 3.3.17. 'Lapis inventus apud Whelp-Castle. 1688.' VI.244A. 1258
Figure 3.3.18. 'With this Inscription, but (like the Castle) turn'd upside down.' VI.248. 1259
Figure 3.3.19. Fair Copy of Machell's work on Appleby Inscriptions sent to Dr John Mill at Oxford. I.189. 1261
Figure 3.3.20. '16. ad App[leby].' VI.188. 1263
Figure 3.3.21. 'The xxth is design'd by Mr Bainbrig as a fairer copy to preserve the Memory of Those Inscriptions upon the Rocks which are at Crawdundale'. VI.186D. 1263
Figure 3.3.22. Varronius Inscription. VI.193. 1263
Figure 3.3.23. Inscription not known to Camden. VI.195. 1264
Figure 3.3.24. Appleby School; Clifford Inscription. VI.186B. 1265
Figure 3.3.25. Appleby School Inscription; Thomas Smith and Ran[dal] Sanderson 1671. I.198A. 1266
Figure 3.3.26. An urn found at Machell's Bank. VI.202. 1267
Figure 3.3.27. Urn, drawn on a separate piece of paper and pasted onto the page. VI.204. 1268
Figure 3.3.28. Machell Seal and Inscriptions. VI.210. 1272
Figure 3.3.29. Coins. VI.210A. 1273
Figure 3.3.30. Two faces of a silver coin, 'the bigness of a 3d.' VI.226. 1278
Figure 3.3.31. Detail. Frontinus Inscription. VI.186B. 1281
Figure 3.3.32. Further Altar. Detail. VI.248. 1284
Figure 3.3.33. 'An altar (above a yard high) digg'd up at Kirby in Loansdale, circa an. 1684.' VI.257. 1285
Figure 3.3.34. Roman Inscription found between Ambleside and Windermere church. VI.259. 1286
Figure 3.3.35. Fragments of Roman Inscriptions at Tunstall Vicarage. VI.262. 1287
Figure 3.3.36. 'Roaleing stone'. IV.79. 1288
Figure 3.3.37. Margin. IV.80. 1289
Figure 3.3.38. Margin. IV.81. 1289

Figure 3.3.39. Stone at Lazonby. IV.82. 1290
Figure 3.3.40. Part of an Inscription within a discarded draft of Thomas Machell's letter to John Mill, 20-21 February 1687. I.763A. 1292
Figure 3.3.41. Cornelian gem stone seal figure. VI.296. 1293
Figure 3.3.42. Image from a ring stone found in 1691. VI.296. 1294
Figure 3.3.43. Letter to Machell from John Mill, October 1691, with Machell's riposte. VI.185. 1299
Figure 3.3.44. Letter from Machell to Mill, 26 June 1692. VI.187. 1300
Figure 3.3.45. Page fragment containing a letter. I.509. 1303
Figure 3.3.46. Coins. VI.271. 1303

Chapter 3.4: Concerning Heraldry

Figure 3.4.1. Dieu et mon Droit. VI.393. 1321
Figure 3.4.2. 'He would convert Square Heads or Cavaliers into Round Heads'. VI.393. 1322
Figure 3.4.3. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.397. 1327
Figure 3.4.4. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.399. 1328
Figure 3.4.5. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.401. 1328
Figure 3.4.6. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.403. 1329
Figure 3.4.7. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.405. 1330
Figure 3.4.8. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.407. 1331
Figure 3.4.9. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.409. 1331
Figure 3.4.10. 'A Baron's Cap'. VI.451. 1332
Figure 3.4.11. Seal of John Goldrington. VI.457. 1338
Figure 3.4.12. Forest Court: 'the eire of the forrest'. VI.457. 1338
Figure 3.4 13. Labourne Arms. VI.462. 1342
Figure 3.4.14. 'Drawings of Backhouse, Windsor and Theodall (alt. Theoball) Coates of Arms'. VI.471. 1345
Figure 3.4.15. 'A Wing Gules erect'. VI.465. 1346
Figure 3.4.16. 'The duble strokes. Clifford'. VI.473. 1349
Figure 3.4.17. 'Laton' Arms. Machell's use of heraldry symbols as shorthand. VI.475. 1350
Figure 3.4.18. Shorthand heraldry symbol. VI.479. 1354
Figure 3.4.19. 'Midleton' Arms: symbols. VI.479. 1354
Figure 3.4.20. Published document beginning, 'For that the Taking of Inquisitions Post Mortem is not now in use…', pasted into VI.499 and annotated by Machell. 1363

Abbreviations

AVB	Authorised Version of the Bible (1611).
AWL	R.S. Boumphrey, C. Roy Hudleston and J. Hughes, *An Armorial for Westmorland and Lonsdale* CWAAS Extra Series 21 (Kendal, 1975).
BL	British Library.
CAC(C)	Cumbria Archive Centre, Carlisle.
CCED	Clergy of the Church of England Database Online: http://www.theclergydatabase.org.uk.
CFH	C. Roy Hudleston and R.S. Boumphrey, *Cumberland Families and Heraldry* CWAAS Extra Series 23 (Kendal, 1978).
CW1, CW2, CW3	*Transactions of the Cumberland and Westmorland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society*, old series (1866-1900); new series (1901-2000); third series (2001-).
CWAAS	Cumberland and Westmorland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society.
Dugdale, *Baronage*	William Dugdale*, The Baronage of England, or, An historical account of the lives and most memorable actions of our English nobility in the Saxons time to the Norman conquest, and from thence, of those who had their rise before the end of King Henry the Third's reign deduced from publick records, antient historians, and other authorities* (London, 1675-76).
Dugdale, *Monasticon*	William Dugdale, *Monasticon Anglicanum, or, The history of the ancient abbies, and other monasteries, hospitals, cathedral and collegiate churches in England and Wales. With divers French, Irish, and Scotch monasteries formerly relating to England* (1655-1673).
Dugdale*, Warwickshire*	William Dugdale, *The Antiquities of Warwickshire* (1656).
English Heritage List	The National Heritage List for England: http://list.english-heritage.org.uk.
Hyde & Pevsner	M. Hyde and N. Pevsner*, Cumbria: Cumberland, Westmorland and Furness: The Buildings of England* (New Haven and London, 2010).
Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*	R.S. Ferguson (ed.), *Miscellany Accounts of the Diocese of Carlisle…by William Nicolson late Bishop of Carlisle,* CWAAS Extra Series 1 (London and Carlisle, 1877).
N&B1, N&B2	Joseph Nicolson and Richard Burn, *The History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland*, 2 vols (London, 1777).
Nightingale*, Ejected of 1662*	*B. Nightingale, The Ejected of 1662 in Cumberland and Westmorland, two vols (Manchester, 1911).*
OAD	Oxford Alumni Database, online at 'Ancestry UK', http://search.ancestry.co.uk
ODNB	*Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*, online version (Oxford University Press): http://www.oxforddnb.com.
OED	*Oxford English Dictionary*, online version (Oxford University Press): http://www.oed.com.
Smith, *Place-Names*	A.H. Smith, *The Place-Names of Westmorland*, Vols XLII (1) and XLIII (2), English Place-Name Society (Cambridge, 1965-66).
Speed, *Historie*	John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans. Their Originals, Manners, Habits, Warres, Coines, and Seales: with the Successions, Lives, Acts, and Issues of the English Monarchs from Julius Caesar, unto the Raigne of King James of famous Memorie* (London, 1611).
Westmorland Place-Names	*Place-Names of Westmorland* (online), edited by A.H. Smith (1967). https://epns.nottingham.ac.uk/browse/Westmorland

English Glossary

Unless otherwise stated, these definitions have been adapted from the online version of the *Oxford English Dictionary*.

Agistment	Rate levied on or profit made from the pasturing of another person's cattle; the action or process of taking livestock to feed at an agreed rate; the opening of a forest for a specified time to livestock.
Alienation	Sale, mortgage, lease or other method of disposal.
Appurtenances	Rights and duties associated with holding land.
Arbitrary tenants	Evictable at the will of the Lord of the manor, who could also alter their fine at will: a 'tenancy at will'.
Baly or Baillie	Another form of the word bailiff.
Berryes	Tumuli.
Bishoprick	Diocese of Durham.
Boons and boon-days	Work done free for the Lord e.g. carting fuel, cutting crops, shearing sheep: as part of the rent.
Brassed (braced)	Interlaced.
Burgage	House or plot of land held by the inhabitant of a town or borough, or a tenure of land in an ancient borough.
Carucate	Measure of land, varying with the nature of the soil, etc., being as much as could be tilled with one plough (with its team of 8 oxen) in a year; a plough-land. The acreage of the carucate varied according to the system of tillage. If the land lay in three arable common fields the carucate, according to Fleta, contained 180 acres; 60 for fallow, 60 for winter corn, and 60 for spring corn. If the land lay in 2 fields the carucate consisted of 160 acres, 80 for fallow, and 80 for tillage. Commonly only the land under plough in any one year was reckoned, the fallow being thrown into common pasturage. Hence in ancient deeds the normal carucate is either 120 acres or 80 acres by the Norman number (5 score to the hundred) and 144 acres or 96 acres by the English number (6 score to the hundred).
Catadupe	Cataract.
Champion country	Variant of 'champaign': a large expanse of open country, as distinct from mountains and woods.
Clean marte	Pine marten.
Composition	An agreement for the payment of a sum of money in lieu of the discharge of some other obligation, or in a different way from that required by the original contract.
Constablewick	Township or tithing under the jurisdiction of a constable.
Copyhold	Tenure of manorial land with obligations to perform certain services for the lord.
Cornage	Feudal service, being a form of rent fixed by the number of horned cattle; horngeld.
Customary tenancy	Holding by copy of court roll under manor custom.
Deer leap	Opening to allow access to deer.
Drengage	Tenure or service of a dreng. A dreng was a free tenant holding by a tenure older than the Norman Conquest, the nature of which was partly military, partly servile.
Dubs	Deep & calm pools within a larger body of water (Machell, II.464); small and stagnant pools of water (*OED* Online).
Easter Book	Account book for recording Easter Offerings: money payable at Easter to the incumbent of a parish by the parishioners.
Escheat	An aspect of feudal law, whereby a fief reverted to the lord when the tenant died without leaving a successor qualified to inherit under the original grant. Hence, the lapsing of land to the Crown or to the lord of the manor, on the death of the owner intestate without heirs.

Escheator	An officer appointed yearly by the Lord Treasurer to take notice of the escheats in the county to which he is appointed, and to certify them into the Exchequer.
Escuage	Chief form of feudal tenure (literally shield-service), personal service in the field for a period of forty days in each year (see also scutage).
Escutcheon	Shield or shield-shaped surface on which a coat of arms is depicted; also in wider sense, the shield with the armorial bearings; a sculptured or painted representation of this.
Fee	Land holding (including the Marquess and Richmond Fees); such fees could divide townships in two.
Fee-farm	Kind of tenure by which land is subject to a perpetual fixed rent without any other services; the estate of the tenant in land so held.
Fee} simple Foe}	Freehold land which can be disposed of according to the wishes of the owner; one of the two (main) legal estates in land – correctly the 'fee simple absolute in possession'. (The other main legal estate in land is a term of years absolute, i.e. leasehold.) Machell appears to have understood 'fee' as derived from 'foedus': a contract or agreement: 'knights' foes.' It is also thought that 'fee' is derived from the Saxon 'fee' (cattle or goods of any kind): Low Latin, 'feudum'. See H.J. Todd (ed*.), A Dictionary of the English Language by Samuel Johnson; with numerous corrections …* (London, 1818), FEC-FEE.
Fine	Amount of money paid for a lease or admission to copyhold land: a premium.
Fine certain	A fixed sum.
First Fruits and Tenths	The First Fruits represented a customary gift or payment to the Church, by the new holder of an ecclesiastical benefice, usually equivalent to the first year's income. Tenths were 10 percent of the annual income, due each year. The Court of First Fruits and Tenths was established in 1540 to collect from clerical benefices moneys that had previously been sent to Rome.
Foul marte	Pole cat.
Freehold	To end copyhold status, freehold could be bought by a lump sum paid to the lord of the manor (see also Fee Simple).
Glebe	A portion of land assigned to a member of the clergy as part of a benefice.
Greenhew	Right to cut greenery for fodder.
Hag	Wooded enclosure; a coppice or copse; a hedge.
Heaven-water	'As heaven-water deals' – watershed; draining divide; boundary.
Hep/Hepp	Shap.
Heriot	Feudal service, originally consisting of weapons, horses, and other military equipment, restored to a lord on the death of his tenant; afterwards a render of the best live beast or dead chattel of a deceased tenant due by legal custom to the lord of whom he held.
Heriotable	Liable to a mortuary fine; paying a heriot in kind as part of the (re)admission fee to the holding.
Hundred	Subdivision of a county or shire, having its own court; formerly applied also to the court itself. Most of the English counties were divided into hundreds, in some counties into wapentakes, and in others, wards. It has been regarded as: denoting a division of a hundred hides of land; as the district which furnished a hundred warriors to the host; as representing the original settlement of the hundred warriors; or as composed of a hundred hides, each of which furnished a single warrior': (Stubbs *Const. Hist.* I. v. §45).
Hurrock	Way cairn. Machell defines a hurrock/harrock, as, 'a little heap for a boundary' [I.184].
Inquisition	Judicial or official investigation or inquiry, an inquest; also the document recording such inquiry and its result.
Kead	Sheep-louse.
King's Books	When the first-fruits and tenths were transferred to the English Crown by Henry VIII, it was enacted that commissioners should be appointed in every diocese to certify the value of every ecclesiastical benefice and preferment in the respective dioceses; according to this valuation the first fruits and tenths

	were to be collected and paid in future. This *valor beneficiorum* is what is commonly called the King's Books; see Sir William Blackstone, *Commentaries on the Laws of England in Four Books* (1753) *(with notes selected from various later editions, and a Life of the Author by George Sharswood, in Two Volumes* (Philadelphia, 1893), Vol. 1 - Books I & II. p.784 para 5.
Knight-service	The military service which a knight was bound to render as a condition of holding his lands; hence, the tenure of land under the condition of performing military service.
Lastage	Charge payable by traders attending fairs and markets; a duty levied at so much per last (commercial unit of weight) of goods bought or sold at a fair.
Lile	Little (e.g. Lile Langdale).
Leun	River Lune.
Li.	Pounds sterling.
Ling	Type of heather.
Lunn	Wood or grove.
Manor court	This could also take place in an inn or house.
Martes	Clean mart = pine marten; foul mart = pole cat.
Martlet	Heraldic swallow, never represented with feet, as swallows appear never to touch the ground: Fox Davies, *Heraldry*, 244-45.
Maunch	Manch – in heraldry, a sleeve, especially a medieval hanging sleeve.
Meal silver	Certain tithes could be altered by paying a modus (see below). The terms hay-silver, oat-silver, hemp-silver and meal-silver refer to the payment of tithes in money. See 'silver' in Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary Vol. V, R-S* (London, 1904), 437.
Messuage	Originally, a portion of land occupied, or intended to be occupied, as the site for a dwelling house and its appurtenances. In later use (chiefly in law): a dwelling house together with its outbuildings and the adjacent land assigned to its use. Viz. Its curtilage.
Modus	In full, *modus decimandi*. A method of paying tithes other than the one which is usual or prevalent; especially a money payment made in lieu of a tithe.
Moiety	Part of a larger whole; a small or lesser share, portion, or quantity.
More-game	Moor-game, i.e. grouse, particularly the red grouse.
Mortmain	From post-classical Latin *mortua manus*, *manus mortua* (dead hand). The condition of lands or tenements held inalienably by an ecclesiastical or other corporation. Alienations in mortmain, as being injurious to the rights of the crown and the mesne lords, were forbidden under English law by Act 7 Edw. I, statute 2, 1279, to impose limits on the Church's holding of property, This and other such Acts were known as the 'Statutes of Mortmain'. In practice, such grants continued after 1279, but required prior royal licence.
Multur	Multer, moulter or multure: the payment of a fraction of grain ground to the lord of the mill, or the miller. The proportion exacted was higher for those farmers within the lands of an estate on which there was an obligation to grind corn at a certain mill, than for those who came voluntarily from outwith its jurisdiction: *Dictionaries of the Scots language*, Online.
Noble	Coin worth 6s 8d.
Nonage	State of being under full legal age; minority, youth.
Norroy	The title of the third King of Arms, whose jurisdiction before 1945 lay in England to the north of the River Trent.
Nowt/Neot geld	Rent-payment in cattle; also, a tax levied on cattle.
Oxgang	Measure of land formerly in use in parts of northern England and Scotland, equivalent to an eighth of a carucate; so called because a carucate was the amount of land that could be ploughed by a team of eight oxen in a year.
Passes	Paces; rate of stepping; steps. Machell was aware that his passes were not standardised, see Warcop, I.318.
Peculiar	Ecclesiastical district (usually a parish) outside the jurisdiction of the archbishop, bishop or archdeacon. Peculiars were entitled to hold their own

	courts, hence, before 1858 they proved wills of people who owned property in their respective districts.
Pontage	Toll for the use of a bridge; a tax paid for the maintenance and repair of a bridge or bridges.
Poutes	Young of a game-bird. Modern form: pullet: *Dictionary of the Older Scottish Tongue (up to 1700)*. Online.
Prescription Money	Money paid out according to ancient or continued custom, especially when regarded as authoritative.
Procuration	Payment made by a parish, religious house, etc., in lieu of providing entertainment for a bishop, archdeacon, or other official visitor.
q.	Quarter of a penny: a farthing.
Quarry	Pane of glass, cut into a regular geometric shape.
Quire	Chancel or east end of a church.
Quit claim	*Quiete clamare*. To release or renounce all pretensions to right or title: *Jacob's New Law Dictionary* (1732).
Rag	Piece of hard or rough stone, especially of a kind suitable for paving or building.
Reader	After the Reformation, lay readers were appointed to lead worship and perform minor functions, including pastoral duties, in parishes which had no regular incumbent or minister. This situation persisted for longer in the north of England than elsewhere.
Saltier/Saltire	In heraldry, a St. Andrew's cross. Hence, 'in saltire': crossed like the limbs of a St. Andrew's cross. When the field of a coat, or any charge upon it, is divided by two diagonal lines, crossing each other, it is termed, 'per saltier'.
Scutage	Tax levied on knights' fees; chiefly in a restricted sense, such a tax paid in lieu of military service.
s.d.	Sans date: with no date.
Sesses	Assessments.
Settle	A flat ledge or wall foot.
Shrievalty	Office or jurisdiction of a sheriff. Sheriffs were deputies of the Crown and the main agent of the courts until the 14th century and were therefore of enormous executive influence in each county.
Sike	A small stream of water, a rill or streamlet, especially one flowing through flat or marshy ground, often dry in summer; a ditch or channel through which a tiny stream flows.
Socage	Tenure of land by certain determinate services other than knight-service.
Stallage	Tax or toll levied for the liberty of erecting a stall in a fair or market.
Stang	Pole or stake, a wooden bar or beam. To ride the stang: to be mounted astride a pole borne on the shoulders of two men, and carried through the streets to excite the derision of the spectators.
Stuart	Steward.
Suit and Service	Attendance at court and personal service due from a tenant to his or her lord; also used to describe certain forms of tenure that involve this obligation.
Synodal	Payment made by the inferior clergy to the bishop, properly on the occasion of a synod, and hence at an episcopal or archidiaconal visitation.
Taberdar	Name formerly given to certain scholars of The Queen's College, Oxford, from the gown (tabard) they wore as servitors (pauper puer); still surviving in the name of some of the scholarships at that college.
Tenement	Land which is held of another by any tenure.
Threave	'Thrave': two shocks or stooks of corn (or other pulse), generally containing twelve sheaves each, but varying in different localities; hence used as a measure of straw, fodder, etc.
Through/through-stone	A coffin made of stone; a sarcophagus. Also: a tomb, a sepulchre; a grave; a large slab of stone laid over a tomb or grave; a horizontal gravestone; also, a funerary monument consisting of a horizontal slab supported on columns; a table tomb.

Turbary	Land where turf or peat might be dug for fuel; a peatbog or peat moss. In law: in full common of turbary, i.e. the right to cut turf or peat for fuel on a common or on another person's land.
Usher	Assistant to a schoolmaster; under-master, assistant-master.
Vaccary	Cow pasture.
Viduity	Widowhood.
Vivary	[Latin] *vivarium*: enclosure for keeping deer etc., or a fishpond. 'Vivarium ... in Law … signifieth Parks, Warrens, and Pischaries or Fishings.' See E. Coke, *The Second Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England* (1642), 100.
Waif and Stray	A waif was an item of ownerless and unclaimed property found on a landowner's territory; a stray referred to a domestic animal that had wandered onto the same land. A grant of waif and stray permitted the landowner to take ownership of such goods or animals if they remained unclaimed after a set period of time.
Yeat	Gate.

Latin Glossary

Compiled by Jane Penman

a capella	from the chapel
ab aula	from the hall
ab ecclesia	from the parish church
anno ejusdem	in the same year
arbor vitæ	tree of life: the evergreen thuja
capital messuage	the chief house on an estate; the mansion-house of a manor
caput baroniæ	head of the barony; the chief seat of a nobleman
coram provincialibus	in the view of locals
cum pertinentiis	with appurtenances
de mense in mensem	from month to month
de quo infra	of which below
de quo quaere	about which enquire
durante vita	in his lifetime
durante vita patris	in his father's lifetime
eadem	the same
eadem anno	in the same year
ejusdem	of the same
eodem	with the same
fictilia	earthenware
forsan	perhaps
ibidem	in the same place
ideo quaere	therefore enquire
in capite	in chief; directly from the crown
infra	below
inter alios	among other people
membranula	skins from which a roll is composed; parchment
mense in mensem	every month / from month to month
miles	knight
ni fallor	unless I am mistaken
nuper	lately
ob	½d. From Latin 'obulus'
Pasce	Easter
penes	in the custody of
placitum inter	plea between
puto	perhaps
quo warranto	by what authority: writ or legal action requiring a person to show by what warrant an office or franchise is held, claimed, or exercised
ratio nominis	reason for the name
rotulus	roll
sc. (scilicet)	one may know; equivalent to the English phrase 'to wit'
sed dub[ito]	but I doubt it
sed parum ad rem	but little to the point
sed quaere/quere	but query this
sine prole (S.P.)	without issue
sine titulo	without title
ut puto	so I think
ut supra	as described or shown above
uxor	wife
valet per annum	worth per year
vidua	widow
viri clari	outstanding men
vix credo	I scarcely believe it

Introduction

Background to this Volume

The antiquarian collections of Thomas Machell, rector of Kirkby Thore, are the property of the Dean and Chapter of Carlisle; they have been preserved among the Dean & Chapter of Carlisle muniments (DCHA/11/4) in Cumbria Archive Centre, Carlisle. Characterised as a manuscript research archive towards a history of Westmorland, and, to a lesser degree, Cumberland, they have been bound into six volumes, each containing over 500 numbered pages. The papers include Thomas Machell's illustrated notes, bound and interleaved with transcripts of charters, pedigrees, correspondence and other records, not necessarily in Machell's own hand.

Machell's objective was to reveal the history, topography and natural history of Cumberland and Westmorland, their parishes and towns. Before his death in 1698 he had amassed a huge number of notes and draft narratives, and a collection of revealing correspondence. While the notes cover aspects of both counties, Machell's deep affection for his own locality guaranteed that the greater proportion of his research would be devoted to the county of Westmorland, particularly the Appleby area where he had been born and brought up, the history and topography of which became his major preoccupation. Machell's material on Cumberland (mainly confined to Volume VI) forms a minor part of the whole, most of it consisting of volumes written by others and since published as follows:
1. Edmund Sandford's, *Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland.*[1]
2. John Denton's *History of Cumberland*.[2]

Machell's work on Cumberland has been largely omitted from this edition.

Transcribing the Text: Machell's Six Volumes

Machell's research has been admired locally for many years, as shown in Samuel Jefferson's listing of the contents of the Machell volumes, in his *History and Antiquities of Carlisle* (Carlisle and London, 1838).

Vol. I
- Collections respecting the Ancient Britons and Romans.
- An attempt towards a general description of Westmorland etc.

Vol. II
- *Villare alphabeticum* for the barony of Kendal.
- Descriptions of the parishes of the said barony.
- Churches, coats of arms etc.
- Journal of the author's travels in the said barony.

Vol. III
- *Villare* of Westmorland and Cumberland.
- Collections about King Arthur, Marius and Uter Pendragon.

Vol. IV
- A view of the first fruits and tenths within the diocese of Carlisle.
- Collections relating to the families of Vipont and Clifford.
- Abbreviations of words and law terms occurring in old records explained.
- Extracts from charters, rolls and escheats in the Tower, relating to lands in Westmorland and Cumberland.
- Collections out of the registers of Wetheral and Holm Cultram Abbeys, from the library of the Dean and Chapter.

[1] Edmund Sandford, *A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland*, CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890), a copy of which exists in Machell's MS: VI.540-69.
[2] Angus Winchester (ed.), *John Denton's History of Cumberland*, CWAAS Record Series 20, Surtees Society Volume CCXIII (Durham, 2010). See Machell VI.1-146, 176 and 527-35.

Vol. V
- Charter of the Borough of Appleby.
- Pedigrees and conveyances of the families of Crackenthorpe, Machell etc.

Vol. VI
- A copy of John Denton's MS History of Cumberland.
- A collection of Roman Inscriptions.
- Excerpts from Dugdale's *Monasticon*.
- Arms of the chief families of Cumberland and Westmorland.
- A discourse on titles of honour in general.
- An anonymous description of Cumberland, written c. 1675.[3]
- Inquisitions concerning lands at Penrith taken upon the death of Alexander III, king of Scotland.
- A list of sheriffs of both counties from the reign of Henry II.
- R. Singleton's full account of the parish of Melmerby.

This edition comprises transcriptions of Thomas Machell's Volumes, I, II, III and VI (excluding most of the text on Cumberland), and short extracts from Volumes IV and V. As noted by Jefferson, Volumes IV and V predominantly contain the research documents (charters, deeds and pedigrees) from which Machell formed his narrative on history, people and places in Westmorland. Only a small amount of relevant narrative material has been transcribed from these two volumes.
All regnal years have been derived from Sweet and Maxwell's *Guide to Law Reports and Statutes*, fourth edition (London, 1962), Chapter Five.

Order of the material
1. Editor's Introduction.
2. Machell's Preface.
3. Part I. Barony of Westmorland.
4. Part 2. Barony of Kendal.
5. Part 3. Chapter 1. 'Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland'.
   Chapter 2. Machell's Correspondence.
   Chapter 3. Roman Antiquities.
   Chapter 4. 'Collections Concerning Heraldry & of the Arms & Pedegrees of Westmorland'.

Machell's Preface is principally, although not wholly, taken from his preliminary research, which is largely housed in Volumes I and II.

Part I. Barony of Westmorland, consists of chapters on each parish and its chapelries in the barony, beginning with the main town, Appleby, and continuing in alphabetical order.

Part II. Barony of Kendal, comprises chapters on each parish and its chapelries in the barony, beginning with Kendal, the main town and largest parish, and continuing in alphabetical order.

Within Volume II, Machell described a fact-finding journey through the Barony of Kendal during the summer of 1692, which he named his 'Itinerary'. In *Antiquary on Horseback. The First Publication of The Collections of the Rev. Thos. Machell Chaplain to King Charles II Towards a History of the Barony of Kendal* (Jane Ewbank's scholarly edition of Volume II of Machell's collections),[4] the text of the Itinerary was subsumed into Machell's notes on the Kendal parishes to create a seamless whole. In this edition, however, the Itinerary has been retained as a separate entity, partly because it offers

[3] Written by Edmund Sandford, see above.
[4] Jane M. Ewbank (ed.), *Antiquary on Horseback. The First Publication of The Collections of the Rev. Thos. Machell Chaplain to King Charles II Towards a History of the Barony of Kendal*, CWAAS Extra Series 19 (Kendal, 1963).

the reader a complete example of Machell's narrative style, and partly because we encounter Machell in carefree mode: meeting and travelling with old friends; consuming generous amounts of fine food and alcohol: 'not for drinkeing but for companyes sake';[5] and generally enjoying his 'holiday'. It is illuminating to contrast his demeanour here with his distressed letters to Lord Thanet and others, setting out his parochial difficulties, written just a few years later.[6]

The First Chapter of Part 3 consists of Machell's 'Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of the County of Westmorland', and his suggestions for further reading. This is augmented by textual additions made by Charles Lyttelton (antiquary and bishop of Carlisle from 1762 to 1768) in the form of his own (eighteenth-century) reading preferences.
The Second, Third and Fourth Chapters comprise material from all six volumes. Chapter Two contains most of Machell's correspondence (unless relevant to the narrative elsewhere); Chapter Three collates Machell's research, writing and publication on Roman antiquities; Chapter Four presents one of Machell's major preoccupations: the 'Heraldry & the Arms & Pedigrees of Westmorland'.

Transcription method
A critical principle of transcription is to avoid inflicting undue violence to the author's text. Word-for-word transcription is the rule in this edition unless the text has been obscured, has perished, was scored through, or (very rarely) written so illegibly that a précis had to be substituted. Where Machell repeated single words and short phrases in error, they have been silently corrected. Exceptions also include substitution of the thorn letter 'y' (in 'ye') with the modern 'th', and 'ff' with 'F'. These occur in text written by hands other than Machell's.

Spelling
Original spelling has been largely retained; for example, in such words as 'bin' for 'been' and 'Isue' for 'Issue'. Some shortened words have been silently extended (for example, 'go' is a shortened form of 'ergo'),[7] and also where Machell has placed a line above a letter, suggesting a double letter. When meaning is not absolutely clear, abbreviated words have been extended using square brackets. Machell's habit of spelling the same word in several different ways has been retained. For instance, when writing the word 'manor', he wrote it as 'manor', 'manner', 'maner' and 'mannor', but frequently wrote only 'm.' or 'man'. When the word has been shortened, this edition adopts Machell's most frequently used form: 'manner'.

Another difficulty arises in Machell's spelling of 'Westmorland'. Machell wrote at some length on the meaning of the name. Was the county named after moorland, as Camden had suggested, and therefore, 'Westmoreland'; was it named after King Westmer, and therefore, 'Westmerland'; or was it 'Westmereland', named after its lakes? Machell employed all of these versions, although, even in passages suggesting that the county was named after King Westmer, he would occasionally write, 'Westmoreland'. Howbeit, as Machell frequently adopted a shortened version 'Westm'land,' or even 'W', the slightly abbreviated word, 'Westm'land', has been used throughout this edition, unless Machell's deliberate choice of an alternative version is clear.

Machell's formation of the vowels 'a', 'o' and 'u' have provided another transcription difficulty. In Machell's hand these vowels frequently look exactly the same, and this makes his attempts to explain the derivation of the words, 'barrow', borrow' and 'burrow' in the same paragraph, risibly difficult to disentangle. Similarly, the letters 'W' and 'M' are sometimes used interchangeably, as in 'Wakeber Well', 'Makeber Well'. They have been transcribed as seen. While Machell used several variants of the word 'Esquire', 'Esq.' has been employed throughout.

[5] See Part 2, Chapter 10. Itinerary, II.424.
[6] Part 1, Ch. 14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, 'A Narrative about a Chapel at Sowerby June 5 1697', beginning at III.229.
[7] 'Therefore'.

Capitalisation
Machell's capitalisation can appear indiscriminate; proper nouns often begin with lower-case letters, while common nouns are often capitalised. In this edition proper nouns are usually capitalised. Machell often expressed compound place-names as one (as in 'Troutbeck', 'Kirkbythore' and 'Longmarton') but when he wrote them as two, only the first was capitalised, as in 'Kirkby thore'. These forms have been retained. Capitalisation of common nouns has been less easy to edit. It was decided that words beginning with letters that can be either capital or lower case in their formation (such as 'o' and 's'), would be treated conventionally. Machell, in common with others of his time, capitalised words which seemed important to him, such as 'Town' and 'Country'. Here, a fairly impressionist approach has been adopted. A judgment was made that ease of reading should predominate, but that, in some cases, Machell's preferences for capitalisation of common nouns should stand. Overall, the general rule has been to make the text intelligible while demonstrating Machell's style. An exception has been made in the treatment of the names of heraldic colours. To distinguish them from identical words with different meanings (such as, 'or'), they have been capitalised.

Other punctuation
Most of the colons denoting the end of Machell's sentences have been changed to the modern full stop. Machell's use of the comma has been retained, and commas have been added where appropriate, to aid understanding. Machell clearly wrote many of his notes hurriedly, making copious use of the dash, which can make scanning for meaning difficult. Some dashes have been retained, though many have been changed where appropriate.

Other editorial decisions
Ampersands have been retained.
Underscoring has been retained.
Abbreviations such as 20. Ed. 1. have been retained.
Machell's use of shortcuts, such as '2ce' for 'twice' is retained and footnoted.
Abbreviations denoting money or weight have been retained.
Superscript words and numbers have been retained.
Original pagination is reproduced in square brackets; for example [II.323] i.e. Volume II, page 323.
All brackets in the original text are retained as round brackets. Unclosed brackets have been closed silently.
Quotation and exclamation marks have been retained.
Deleted words have been struck through in the manner of the originals.
Names of published volumes quoted by Machell have been italicised for easy recognition.
Marginalia have been reproduced within braces { }. Where margin comments form a section-heading, they have been placed in the body text and underlined. If a margin comment acts as a note, it has been placed at the foot of the page on which it was written (see Asterisks).
Asterisks have been retained. Machell employed them to reference notes placed elsewhere in the text, as a form of footnoting. Accordingly, this edition has employed Machell's technique by utilising a form of footnoting suggested by the pages of Nicolson and Burn's *History of Westmorland and Cumberland*, and other contemporaneous volumes, as follows:

*	first
†	second
‡	third
⸸	fourth
‖	fifth
¶	sixth

These footnotes have been placed at the foot of the relevant pages of Machell's text, and denoted with the heading, '[Machell's Notes]', and the page number.
Angle brackets \ / denote interlineations.
It has been tempting to create a symbol noting the many changes of ink and other variations suggesting text written at different times on the same page but as there are often a great many such

changes a decision was taken not to clutter the text but to note the most significant changes in footnotes.

Transcription of Latin text
Because Latin was an integral part of the antiquary's tool kit during the seventeenth century (essential for researching deeds, charters etc.) it was decided that the appearance of Machell's Latin passages should not differ in any way from his English text. Translations have been placed in footnotes. Regularly repeated Latin words and phrases have been placed together in a Glossary.

Editorial changes
'Mr' and 'Dr' do not receive the full-stop given to them by Machell.
Question marks in the text were sometimes written backwards and before the question itself. These have been replaced with question marks pointing in the conventional direction but remaining in their designated place.
Where marginalia echo the body text, they have been deleted and, if relevant, mentioned in footnotes. Most running headings have been removed.
Editorial insertions have been placed within square brackets, thus [ ].
Where expected headings do not exist, they are inserted in square brackets.
Chapter and main-section headings have been changed to bold type, while secondary headings have been underscored.
Broken (pecked) underscoring was Machell's method of demonstrating his unhappiness with his choice of word or phrase; he usually placed an alternative close by. This method has been retained.
In a few paragraphs where scoring-through, interlineation, pecked lines and underscored text threaten to obscure both the text and its meaning, the original has been transferred, exactly as seen, to a footnote; the 'correct' version (that is, the text edited as Machell intended) is given in the body text.
Repeated passages are usually deleted and indicated in footnotes but when repeats are necessary to the narrative, and to the observance of Machell's research and writing method, they have been allowed to remain.
When Machell wished to remind himself of an important fact, he often drew a hand with the first finger pointing in the direction of the text. This edition replaces the pointing hand with the more easily reproduced 'N.B.'.
Machell's text includes much deliberate scoring through (with one line or with a cross) of narrative passages. It seems that when a draft narrative had been rewritten elsewhere, Machell crossed through his older draft. Such crossing-through of drafts has not been shown in this edition, in favour of other means of demonstrating Machell's narrative changes.

Ordering the text
Machell's aim was to present the history, topography and natural history of each Westmorland parish in alphabetical order according to, first, the Barony of Westmorland and, second, the Barony of Kendal. The main town of each barony was to be presented first in each of the two sections. By so ordering his work Machell was replicating the approach of well-known contemporaries such as William Dugdale. Like Dugdale, he aimed to use a specific system – he called it his 'method' – to organise the material, first, within each barony, and second, within each parish (see below). Machell's notes do not necessarily follow his plan, and, to complicate matters further, William Nicolson's organisation of the six volumes did not place Machell's parish notes together in one place. Consequently, after an exact transcription of the text of Volumes I, II, III and VI had been drafted, information on places was brought together to form a coherent narrative. Thus, while page and volume numbers have been retained, they do not necessarily appear chronologically, allowing notes which appear randomly in one or other of the original volumes to become comprehensible when placed with text on similar themes.

Repetition
Machell was the first antiquary to chronicle the history of the two counties of Cumberland and Westmorland systematically. In doing so he had to start from scratch. 'It is indeed a thing to be lamented' he wrote

> and the greatest occasion which discourages me from writeing concerneing this County is that Historyes are so silent: and that I should be deprived of the assistance which other men have so easily bin happy in from *Doomsday Booke*. And therefore, not knowing where to begine I must content my selfe with takeing some rude notes of those monuments of antiquity which yett remaine, they being the onely evidences I know of the famous exploits which have bin performed here in former aiges.[8]

After consulting the works of early chroniclers and historians, such as Camden, but frequently finding them inaccurate or 'silent' on the history of Westmorland, Machell and his assistants at Oxford University visited the Oxford libraries and the Tower of London, searching out old documents which would illuminate the county's history. Where evidence could not be found, Machell turned to ancient sites and the finds made there. This pioneering spirit lies at the heart of the Machell legacy, for his manuscripts are nothing if not a work in progress. He puzzled out his methods and narrative drafts over and over again. His accounts of each parish are laboured; pages of brief notes intersperse narrative passages, and such passages are often reworked several times, making it difficult for the reader to recognise anything resembling a 'fair copy'. Repetition is particularly marked in treatments of the town and parishes of Appleby, the parish of Kirkby Thore and the parish of Barton, three places Machell knew extremely well. In this edition, some repetition has been allowed to remain. Such passages have been separated and ordered, as far as possible, to demonstrate Machell's methods, techniques and preoccupations. Readers will find that each repetition contains something new, as Machell reconsidered his subject.

Biographical note

Thomas Machell's life has already been documented. For example, Angus Winchester's entry in the *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* in 2004, and a highly appreciative article in CWAAS *Transactions*, by John Rogan and Eric Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', published as long ago as 1955, both provide excellent overviews of his life and work.[9] In brief, their information comprises the following:

The second son of Lancelot Machell, Thomas Machell was born at Crackenthorpe Hall near Appleby, Westmorland, into a well-known gentry family; he was baptised in 1647. As a boy he was probably a pupil at Appleby Grammar School, from which, at the age of 16, he went to The Queen's College, Oxford, as a Taberdar.[10] He proceeded BA, proceeded MA, and in December 1672 became a fellow of the college.

At Oxford, Machell met some of the most celebrated antiquaries of the day, several of whom were involved in writing county histories. Influenced by William Dugdale and Anthony à Wood among others,[11] Machell determined to write a history and topography of Cumberland and Westmorland. Robert Plot, Oxford professor of chemistry, curator of the Ashmolean Museum and author of the *Natural History of Oxfordshire*,[12] encouraged Machell to extend his sphere of activity to include natural history.[13] From the early 1670s, still based in Oxford, Machell began to amass historical data from Oxford, London and Westmorland.

Machell returned permanently to Westmorland toward the end of the 1670s. As the Machells had for generations allied themselves with the powerful Clifford family, the Earl of Thanet (heir to Lady Anne Clifford's estates) presented Machell to the rectory of Kirkby Thore in 1677. In Machell's list of the values of 24 parishes in the barony of Westmorland, Kirkby Thore was the second most valuable, at

[8] Machell's Preface, I.59.
[9] John Rogan and Eric Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', *CW2*, 55 (1955), 123-53.
[10] Taberdar: see English Glossary.
[11] This rather grand name was used by few of Wood's correspondents. Machell referred to him as 'Mr Wood' {Part 3, Ch. 2, VI.253). 'Anthony Wood' is commonly used in this edition.
[12] Robert Plot, *The Natural History of Oxfordshire, being an Essay toward the Natural History of England* (Oxford, 1676).
[13] For Robert Plot, see A. Turner, 'Plot, Robert (bap. 1640, d. 1696), naturalist and antiquary'. *ODNB*.

£37 17s 8½d, with annual tithes of £3 15s 9½d.[14] On the 27 June, 1679 Machell was appointed a chaplain-in-ordinary to Charles II,[15] but other preferment did not come his way; he remained at Kirkby Thore for the rest of his life, marrying, fathering a family and caring for his parish, all the while endeavouring to complete his History. He died in 1698, aged 51.[16]

Significance of this publication

Thomas Machell's collections relating to Westmorland contain the earliest detailed antiquarian account of the county's history and topography, encompassing a wider range of material than some later histories.[17] In this edition, the vast majority of Machell's texts and drawings relating to Westmorland are published together for the first time. Parts of his text have been published already, amid general agreement among local scholars that Machell is an important figure. For example, from 1874 to the present time, his family, marriage, children, allegiances, parish difficulties, politics and much more have been explored by a significant number of contributors to CWAAS *Transactions*.[18] Here, he rightly emerges as a staunch upholder of Laudian Anglicanism and monarchism; a collector of family pedigrees; a proto-archaeologist; a scholar of ancient and medieval history; an innovative architect; and an expert on church buildings and country houses. This edition of Machell's History will allow scholars to study such themes more fully than in the past.

Perhaps even more importantly, this edition invites readers to explore another aspect of Machell's text, which, though integral to known themes, encourages the investigation of a completely different realm. Machell's many descriptions of the local, the commonplace and the every-day in Westmorland form a vital part of the whole collection. His deep interest in Westmorland's place-names and dialect; games and traditions; folklore and humour; local politics and local characters; his comedic or tragic anecdotes; and his ventures into tales of the occult offer an alternative dynamic which reveals even more of the period and place in which he lived. The importance of Machell's research is that it stands at an intersection between late-seventeenth-century antiquarianism, erudition, religion, lore and tradition.[19]

Machell's History is made even more valuable by the fact that his early death prevented the publication of a completed work. Had it been published, many of the delights of his six volumes – his correspondence; his trenchant opinions; his unguarded comments; his frequent criticism of his peers – would almost certainly have been edited and lost, leaving the reader with a rather bland volume and a much less fruitful reading experience. A short history and topography of Westmorland authored by Machell was published during his lifetime. Written as a supplementary chapter to Edmund Gibson's 1695 edition of Camden's *Britannia*, it briefly sketches out the content of his planned volume.[20] But, though carefully composed Machell's chapter hides more than it reveals when compared with his notes.

---

[14] Kirkby Stephen was the richest, at £48 19s 2d, with annual tithes of £4 17s 11d. See Machell's Preface, I.148.

[15] His appointment was continued under James II; but 'I have lost so good a master', wrote Machell, 'I never regarded it afterwards.' See Edward Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 416-66.

[16] See Angus Winchester, 'Machell, Thomas (bap. 1647, d. 1698), antiquary'. *ODNB*. See also Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', 132-53.

[17] For instance, Joseph Nicolson and Richard Burn, *The History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland*, 2 vols (London, 1777) (cited as *N&B1* and *N&B2* henceforward) which presents a tightly controlled and somewhat restrictive view of the past in the two counties.

[18] For example, Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', 416-66; Michael Waistell Taylor, 'Manorial Halls in Westmorland' *CW1*, 12 (1893), 15-41; Lionel Cresswell, 'Crackenthorpe: Its Manor Hall and the Machell Family', *CW2*, 33 (1933), 113-32; C. Roy Hudlestone, Thomas Machell, his Wife and Children and his Whelpdale Stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45; Paul Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint: July 2d. 1690' *CW2*, 89 (1989), Notes 4, 179-81.

[19] I should like to thank Professor William Gibson for this suggestion.

[20] William Camden and Edmund Gibson (1669-1748), *Camden's Britannia newly translated into English, with large additions and improvements; publish'd by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695), 'Additions to Westmoreland', 810-18.

The unfinished nature of Machell's History also reveals important aspects of seventeenth-century antiquarian scholarship. The reader will note aspects such as the development of various research methods, including those of early archaeologists; the building of evidence to provide argument; the careful citation of sources; and the experimental composition of early drafts, which involved copious textual alteration. This transcription of Machell's work-in-progress will be appreciated, not only by those who are already conversant with him as a northern gentleman-antiquary, but also by a greater constituency of scholars and a wider public, to whom some of the hitherto impenetrable content will be revelatory.

Machell's citation of written sources

Machell diligently cited his published written sources. They have been listed in a bibliography. Machell's letters and list of printed volumes demonstrate him to have read widely.[21] The printed-volume list contains many of the major scholarly works of his era, comparing favourably (though the list is shorter) with the books owned by Sir Daniel Fleming at Rydal Hall.[22] Always attracted to ingenious devices, he

> … contriv'd an octagonall deske with a small writeing table running beneath it, by means whereof he can consult many authors at once without moving his foot, & compare them together with a turne of his hand.[23] … Turneing it round wil bring 8 folios or 16 folios to hand to examine at and quot of, to aprise ascending.[24]

Many of the volumes appear to have been Machell's own, but he also borrowed from other antiquarian libraries, such as the bishop's at Rose Castle, and from Sir Daniel Fleming at Rydal Hall, one of whose letters to Machell reminded him to return a particularly important publication.

> Having often occasion to consult Dugdale's *Baronage of England*, I hope you'l be pleased to return mine hither as soon, & as safely, as you can.[25]

Machell's correspondence

This edition includes all the correspondence found in Machell's Volumes I to VI. Not only do the letters illuminate Machell's family and clerical concerns, they also reveal some of the research preoccupations and processes of late-seventeenth-century antiquaries. Machell's correspondence with the principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, Dr John Mill (also born in Westmorland), with William Dugdale, William Nicolson, Sir Daniel Fleming, the cartographer John Adams, and others – together with his unguarded pen-portraits of contemporaries whom he disliked – illuminates relationships between antiquaries, scholars and landed gentlemen in a manner reminiscent of another unpublished antiquary, John Aubrey. In one sense, it is to be celebrated that Machell's raw, frank, multi-layered History and Topography of Westmorland was never completed, thus permitting us to arrive at an understanding of a life, a place, a county and an era which is lost to us in the mild texts of some published contemporaries.

Machell's unfinished manuscripts

Machell was not unique in failing to complete his county history. At the end of the seventeenth century the antiquary and bishop, White Kennett (1660-1728), remarked on the large number of unfinished or unpublished antiquarian works which remained in manuscript.[26] According to the historian Graham Parry, the reason for this is that writing a county history requires not merely 'industry and skill' but also 'organisational power'. Parry cites John Leland, who was overwhelmed

[21] See Part 3, Ch. 2. Correspondence.
[22] Compare Machell's book list with the list of volumes in Sir Daniel Fleming's study at Rydal in Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), Appendix 1, 335-41.
[23] Part 1, Ch. 14. Kirkby Thore, I.537.
[24] Part 1, Ch. 14. Kirkby Thore, I.562.
[25] Part 3, Ch. 2. II.145.
[26] In Graham Parry, *The Trophies of Time: English Antiquarians of the Seventeenth Century* (Oxford, 1995), 16.

by the volume of his notes; John Aubrey, who could never complete a work or methodise his papers; Roger Dodsworth, who left 60 volumes in manuscript; Thomas Allen, Brian Twyne and William Fulman, 'all of whom had the same ambition to collect, but the same misfortune never to methodise or publish'.[27] Machell was highly aware of his failings, but blamed them on the interruptions of a busy life.

> See Dugdall of Warwickshire, Burton of Leicestershire, to help method & order.
> If I could spare time to Methodise these Rude Notes which are conteined in my severall books of Collections … I would …[28]

Early Reception of Machell's Manuscripts

Encouraged by his peers, Machell published a small amount of his research. His work on Roman antiquities found at Kirkby Thore was eagerly awaited, the correspondence pages of this edition demonstrating the importance attached to his findings. His letter to Sir William Dugdale, describing finds made in a well at Kirkby Thore: 'discovered here about a week since, by the foot of an Horse which stumbled upon it and therefore may be called the Fountain Hypocrene', was printed in *Philosophical Transactions* in 1684; Machell's carefully detailed report of the finds resulted in his election to the Oxford Philosophical Society.[29] Of this he was proud enough to style himself:

> … one Thomas Machell (late-fellow of Queen's College in Oxford, & Chaplain in Ordinary to King Charles the second, now {this 1t October 1686} fellow of the Philosophical Society in the said university.[30]

Machell's collection of Roman inscriptions, 'with a discourse on them', which was sent to John Mill in 1692, did not earn the same respect. As described in Part 3, Chapter 2, Machell and Mill argued over the project for some time. Although they were both Westmorland men and Queen's College alumni, Machell was of gentry stock, while Mill, two years younger than Machell, was a weaver's son from Hardendale near Shap.[31] The two had an uneasy relationship, both personally and professionally, as shown in their correspondence. In one of Machell's last letters to Mill he expressed both intimacy and frustration:

> I have Laboured all that I could (even under the Pressure of som mighty affairs that intervened & of diverse Disturbances & Interruptions) to gratify you in Your Request, with such inscriptions as occur in These Parts; but have not had leisure to compleat and finish them as I Intended. However, Sir, that you may not be altogether frustrated in Your Designe, I have sent you your Book with all the Inscriptions at Apalby-School, and som other Places, fairly writ in It. And (That nothing may be awanting to do you service that layes in my power) I have also sent you The very first Draught of all my other Rude Notes & \ other / Inscriptions as they were Scratched out at the first \ in haste / on Horseback or Otherwise, in my Travails and Rambles; which, notwithstanding, I dare affirm to be very Exact as to the Letter: which is all you desire. But for the notes Interspersed amongst them, they are so ill writt (for want of Convenient time & place) and so full of Blotts & Interlineations, That (unless it be you, who pretend to read anything that falls from my Penn) no body besides my selfe can Compose & Bring them in Order. And you may be suer that I would not expose them in so Rude a Dress to any man liveing Excepting your selfe (my old friend and Confident) who I know will conceal them from all Carping Eyes, & Communicate onely what is for your Purpose…[32]

As noted above, Machell also contributed to Edmund Gibson's extended edition of Camden's *Britannia*, published in 1695. In his 'Preface to the Reader', Gibson introduced those in each county who had added to Camden's research.

---

[27] Parry, *Trophies of* Time, 16.
[28] Machell's Preface, I.153.
[29] *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 555-58. See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.200 ff. See also, Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell, the Antiquary', 145.
[30] See I.550.
[31] For Mill, see S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5-1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*.
[32] See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.299.

> Westmorland is engag'd to Mr. Thomas Machel for so many use-ful discoveries; as its neighbour Cumberland is to Dr. Hugh Todd Prebendary of the Church of Carlisle: and lastly, Northumberland to Mr. William Nicolson, Arch-deacon of the same Church, eminent for his knowledge in the Languages and Antiquities of the Northern Nations.[33]

Interestingly, few outside this circle acknowledged Machell's contribution, and local gossip asserted that a map made by Machell had been rejected because of his insistence on dedicating it to the earl of Carlisle.[34] Nevertheless, Machell's research was recognised by Anthony Wood in his *Athenae Oxonienses : an exact history of all the writers and bishops who have had their education in the University of Oxford*.[35]

> THOMAS MACHEL (malus catulus) son of Lanc. Mach. of Crakenthorp in Westmoreland. matric. Feb. 5. 1663-4. afterward became a poor serving child, tabarder and fellow of Queen's coll. Afterwards he was minister of Kirby-Thore in Westmoreland. He hath written:
> "A Letter to Sir Will. Dugdale", dat. 23 Mar. 1684. concerning some Antiquities found at Kirkby Thore. This letter is in the "Philos. Transact." nu.158 — Apr. 20. an. 1684.
> "Survey, or Antiquities of Westmoreland" MS.

After Machell's death: in November 1698, the unfinished pages and rough notes of his collections were deposited in the library at Carlisle Cathedral. As William Nicolson, then archdeacon and future bishop of Carlisle, explained in a letter to the antiquary Ralph Thoresby just before Christmas of that year,

> Mr Machell is lately dead: he has left the inspection of his papers to me, with a request that if I find any thing that will abide the public view, the press may be set to work for the benefit of his children. I do not yet see that any great fortunes are to be raised out of them, there being nothing that looks towards a formal work.[36]

Nicolson briefly recorded his involvement with Machell's research in his *English Historical Library*. When the first edition was published in 1696, Machell was still living.

> *Westmorland.* Mr. *Tho Machel,* Rector of *Kirkbythore* in this County, has (with a great deal of Pains and good Judgment) collected its Antiquities: which, we hope, will ere long meet with so suitable an Encouragement as will oblige the Author to publish 'em.[37]

When a second, expanded, edition of the *English Historical Library* was published in 1714, Nicolson amended the text to cover the fact that Machell had been unable to complete his research.

> Westmorland. Mr Thomas Machel late rector of Kirkbythore in this county had with a great deal of pains collected its antiquities but never met with encouragement enough to oblige him to publish them. His papers were left (in confusion) to me and I have taken the best care I can to preserve them (bound in six volumes in folio) for the use of posterity. That part of its story which more nearly concerns the nobility and gentry has been well preserved by Sir Dan. Fleming of Rydale Knt who has thereby done his own ancient family a great deal of right and has also approved himself an eminent benefactor to those of his neighbours.[38]

---

[33] *Camden's Britannia, Newly Translated into English: with large additions and improvements. Publish'd by Edmund Gibson, of Queens-College in Oxford* (London, 1695), Preface.
[34] See Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', 133.
[35] Anthony Wood, *Athenae Oxonienses: an exact history of all the writers and bishops who have had their education in the University of Oxford : to which are added the Fasti, or Annals of the said University* (Oxford, 1632-1695), in Philip Bliss (ed.) (London, 1813-20), Vol. IV, 532.
[36] Letter from W. Nicolson to Ralph Thoresby, 22 Dec. 1698, in Joseph Hunter (ed.), *Letters of eminent men, addressed to Ralph Thoresby FRS*, Vol. 1 (London, 1832), 349.
[37] William Nicolson, *The English Historical Library, or, A short view and character of most of the writers now extant, either in print or manuscript which may be serviceable to the undertakers of a general history of this kingdom* (London, 1696), 64-65.
[38] William Nicolson, *The English historical library, in Three Parts, giving a Short View and Character of most of our Historians either in Print or Manuscript : With an Account of our Records, Law-Books, Coins, and other*

History of the Binding

At some point after 1699 Nicolson obeyed Machell's wish by collating his papers. He had them bound into a set of six handsome calf-over-board volumes, each 33.3cm long and 22.6cm wide; and, while the thickness of each volume differs, each contains over 500 numbered pages. A contents page, an index and various annotations were added to each volume by Nicolson himself, thus impressing on future readers that (as he had communicated to Ralph Thoresby) he had carried out more than one very difficult undertaking for Machell, at great cost to himself.[39]

[William Nicolson's Introduction, Volume I, vii-viii]

> This and the five following Volumes (marked on the back, T.M. Vol. II. Etc.) are made up of loose papers left to me by their Author Mr Thomas Machell, late Rector of Kirkbythore; with his Request that (if it might be readily done) they[40] should be put into Form, and offer'd to some Bookseller for the Benefit of his Widow and Children. Upon perusal of 'em, I found the Collection so imperfect, Raw and indigested, that 'twas impossible to bring them (of 'emselves) to any such Account as the good man hoped for: since it appear'd that he had bestow'd more pains on the Family of Machel, than on the Pedigrees of all the rest of the Gentry in the two Counties; and that the single parish of Kirkbythore was more labour'd than all besides in the bottome of Westmerland. In the Transcripts of Records, &c, he has made use of other mens hands: As (particularly) in those out of the Tower, in the 4th Volume, I find a good many of my own writing. This Drudgery (I remember) I was unwillingly put upon in 1678. when Mr M. was Fellow, and I Taberdar of Qu. Coll. and (being then in Attendance on Mr Secretary Williamson) in dayly expectance of being sent beyond sea. Others are copy'd by W. Atkinson (afterwards Fellow of the same College) who was not well acquainted with old Records.
> Mr Machel's own chief Excellency was in drawing Coats of Arms, prospects of Churches and Houses, &c. And whoever shall hereafter perfect his Design, in furnishing the Curious with such an History of Cumberland and Westmerland as Sr W. Dugdale has given us of Warwickshire, may hence have a good share of the Ornamental part of his Work.[41]

Nicolson listed the pages where images of coats of arms; seals; Roman monuments; prospects of churches and chapels; stained glass and funerary monuments; and the seats of the nobility and gentry could be found. Clearly this took some time, as Nicolson's annotations are to be found throughout the six volumes. His Introduction, placed at the beginning of Volume I, is dated 'Aug. 10. 1711'.[42] His diary entry on the 19 of October 1709, written while he was resident in Carlisle diocese, is instructive: '19. Wednesday. D[ined] Mr Hall of Qu. Coll. to whom I shew'd my Medals, T.M's MSS. &c.,'[43] suggesting that he was then working on the material.[44]

Beginning in 1764, the churchman and antiquary, Charles Lyttelton (born 1714), bishop of Carlisle from 1762 to 1768,[45] studied the volumes, annotating some of the text and adding several sheets of

---

matters serviceable to the Undertakers of a General History of England, The Second Edition Corrected and Augmented (London, 1714), 26.

[39] See William Nicolson's Preface, Machell MS.I, vii-viii.

[40] A scored-through word here is illegible.

[41] William Nicolson's Preface, Machell MS.I, vii-viii. On this subject, note Rogan and Birley's opinion: 'It will be seen that Nicolson has tacitly assumed that Machell's papers had been left to him, and not merely placed in his hands for perusal and putting into order; the event may cause us to be thankful, even though the antiquary's will makes it clear that he never contemplated giving the papers to his former pupil. Nicolson's own estimate of their value is remarkable, as much for its criticisms … as for the shrewd assessment of the antiquary's strong points.' Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell, the Antiquary', 136-37.

[42] DCHA/11/4/1, viii.

[43] R.G. Collingwood (ed.), 'Bishop Nicolson's Diaries: Part VI.' *CW2*, 35 (1935), 112.

[44] Nevertheless, the idea of Machell's huge unbound collection of papers being produced during dinner is almost unimaginable.

[45] He was born in 1714; see David W.V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142.

notes, the content of which corrected and supplemented Machell's narrative.[46] These sheets were firmly attached to the spine during a rebinding exercise which might have occurred much later, when the volumes were restored by Maltby of Oxford (founded in 1834). Regrettably, the record of this restoration has disappeared from the company's archive.[47]

It is clear that during the binding's careful restoration an effort was made to use as much of the original binding-material as possible. Nevertheless, binding involves a potential loss of text, and over-sewing has comprehensively hidden words and phrases written close to the gutter of each volume. Machell's choice of loose-leaf single sheets of different sizes, together with home-made booklets (he often directed the reader to 'my little booke'),[48] clearly offered a challenge to binders at different times. During a restoration, the original leather appears to have been stretched over boards beneath, suggesting that the boards had been renewed. During the late 20th century (from circa 1988, when the volumes entered Cumbria County Archives, Carlisle) various loose scraps of paper belonging to the collection were pasted onto some of the volumes' empty pages by archivist, Jeremy Godwin.[49]

Pagination

The volumes were paginated at different periods. Machell's original pagination occurs sporadically throughout the volumes and was apparently inserted by him when constructing his 'little books'. See, for example, II.470, which was first paginated as page 23. The main pagination seems to have occurred when the volumes were first bound; it was carried out in thick black ink, often superimposing Machell's earlier page numbers and even some of his text; during the process, a few pages were paginated incorrectly. Subsequent pagination was added by archivists in the late twentieth century, when various loose sheets were pasted into the volumes.[50] Written in pencil, such pagination usually adds a letter of the alphabet (A-F) to an existing page number. There are groups of blank paginated pages throughout the volumes.

Discussion of the binding and pagination of the volumes leads inevitably to a transcription difficulty caused by apparently missing pages – a phenomenon which could have occurred after Machell's volumes were borrowed from Carlisle Cathedral Library by Rev. Dr Richard Burn.[51] Although they occasionally cited 'Mr Machel' as their source, Joseph Nicolson and Richard Burn nevertheless co-opted substantial parts of Machell's manuscript into their own in their *History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland,* published in 1777. As Burn had undertaken to author the Westmorland section, it is to be expected that he would seek to borrow Machell's volumes from the cathedral library, which he did in 1765, the year in which he became chancellor of the diocese. The matter is recorded in a Dean and Chapter Minute Book, in which it appears that Burn kept the volumes for ten years; they were not listed as returned until 1775, two years before the publication of Nicolson and Burn's 'History'.[52] Conceivably, Burn's extensive use of Machell's work made rebinding a necessary next step in the history of these volumes.

---

[46] See Part 3, Ch.1, Bishop Charles Lyttelton's suggestions for further reading, VI.432A-D. Lyttelton borrowed Machell's volumes from Carlisle Cathedral library; viz. '31 July. 3rd vol. Machel's MSS for the Bp; August 7. 4 vol. of Machel's MSS. for the Bishop; Sept.15. 6. vol. of Machel's MSS for the Bp.' See CAC(C), DCHA/5/6/1/15. Library Register 1703-1873.

[47] Email correspondence between this editor and the firm: http://www.maltbysbookbinders.com. The firm's logo is attached to the volumes' binding.

[48] See Machell's Preface, II.474: 'Se my little b[ook] on Alters dig'd up; se my misselanyes.'

[49] See Jeremy Godwin's comments on the flyleaf of Volume I.

[50] Information gained during discussions with Jeremy Godwin and former archivists at CAC(C).

[51] Richard Burn (1709–1785) was born in Winton, Kirkby Stephen. He matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1729 (BA 1734), and in 1736 was instituted to the vicarage of Orton, Westmorland. He became a justice of the peace for Westmorland and Cumberland. In 1762 he was made a DCL by Oxford, and in 1765 Bishop Lyttelton appointed him chancellor of Carlisle diocese. He died at Orton in 1785. See N. Landau, 'Burn Richard, legal writer and Church of England clergyman'. *ODNB*.

[52] Carlisle Cathedral Dean and Chapter Minute Book (1752-1792), CAC(C). DCHA/1/1/11, 129.

This suggests a possible answer to a serious editing problem. Volume I of Nicolson and Burn's *History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland* contains a long, passionate passage describing, first, Oliver Cromwell's imposition of a charter on Appleby and, second, the town's joy at the restoration of the monarchy.[53] The passage, which contains strong terms such as 'bloody regicides', begins, 'The Reverend Thomas Machel, speaking of the plundering and devastations which Appleby had sustained in former ages, adds…'. Two pages are then taken up by a transcription (written between quotation marks) of Machell's text;[54] yet, to the present knowledge of this editor, the passage does not appear in Machell's six volumes. In this edition, therefore, the 'missing' text has been transcribed from Nicolson and Burn into passages criticising Cromwell's Commonwealth in Machell's chapter on Appleby Town and Parishes.[55] The transcribed passage is wholly authentic, but, unless the pages were misfiled into another Machell document collection, their present location is unknown to this editor.[56]

Modern reception of Machell's volumes, Part 1.

After the publication of Nicolson and Burn's *History and Antiquities of Westmorland and Cumberland*, in 1777, Thomas Machell appears to have been completely overlooked by scholars. In 1827, for example, while entering a footnote into his edition of *The Life, Diary and Correspondence of Sir William Dugdale*, William Hamper remarked of Machell:

> In the *Philosophical Transactions* Vol. xiv., p.555, is a letter from Mr Thomas Machel of Kirbythore in Westmoreland … concerning some Antiquities found there; but not of sufficient interest to deserve reprinting.[57]

Although he later revised his opinion, even Richard Saul Ferguson, distinguished chancellor of the diocese of Carlisle and a president of CWAAS, initially described Machell as 'our great local drya[s]dust'.[58] Machell's diminished status can be attributed partly to William Nicolson, whose patronising preface to Volume I of Machell's 'History', transcribed above, reveals this famous antiquary's attitude toward his colleague and former mentor. Similarly, a perusal of Nicolson and Burn's volumes might have convinced some scholars that Machell had no more to add to history than proto-Toryism, pedigrees, pots and property. And, as has been noted above, while the fact that Machell failed to publish his complete 'History' is tremendously helpful to today's scholars, it was obviously a critical factor in the burying of his reputation.

CWAAS *Transactions* 1874-1918[59]

From its inception in 1874, CWAAS *Transactions* recognised the importance of one of its very own scholars. Nevertheless, Charles J. Ferguson, who quoted more than a dozen times from Machell's text on architecture within his article, 'The development of domestic architecture: Rose Castle and Dalston Hall' (1876), was one of the few contributors who appear to have actually studied the volumes.[60] Others quoted Machell in circuitous ways. In 1874, for example, Rev. James Simpson, vicar of Kirkby Stephen, consulted Machell's text within the Hill manuscripts, which had been compiled

[53] See Michael Mullett, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby in the era of Lady Anne Clifford, 1649-1689*, CWAAS Tract Series 25 (Kendal, 2015), 24-26.
[54] See *N&BI,* 315-16.
[55] Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes, from I.507.
[56] For instance, CCA(C), DCHA/11/3, Machell family of Crackenthorpe: Chronological Series of records filed and bound into eight volumes with separate card indexes.
[57] Anthony Wood to William Dugdale (19 July 1684), in William Hamper, *The Life, Diary and Correspondence of Sir William Dugdale* (London, 1827), 434.
[58] Taken from Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', 138.
[59] Analysis of *Transactions* articles mentioning Thomas Machell was carried out by searching all the articles in CWAAS *Transactions* 1874-2020, accessed from 'Cumbria Past', Online.
[60] C.J. Ferguson, 'The Development of Domestic Architecture: Rose Castle and Dalston Hall', *CWI*, 2 (1876), 152-71.

during the nineteenth century.[61] Between 1874 and 1918, 35 articles cited Machell's name, but 10 of them mentioned his research without giving volume or page number, and 20 (57 per cent) quoted him through other sources, such as Nicolson and Burn's *History*, parish registers and, increasingly, articles published in previous volumes of *Transactions*.

As chancellor of the diocese, Charles Ferguson's brother, R.S. Ferguson, was in a better position than others to view the Machell volumes in situ. The Carlisle Cathedral 'Dean and Chapter Order Book' (1874-1901) reports his having done so on 16 April 1874.[62] He studied the Machell volumes in the cathedral library on other occasions, as revealed in his letter to the secretary of the Society of Antiquaries of Newcastle upon Tyne:

Carlisle December 17th 1885

> Dear Mr Blair
> I recently searched the Machell Manuscripts in possession of the Dean and Chapter of Carlisle, for the purpose of ascertaining if they contain any Romano-British inscriptions not yet published. The volumes are six in number, and refer mainly to the county of Westmoreland. In the 6th volume is the following letter from Dr J. Mills, Principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford…'

Ferguson then added a transcription of the letter he had found, described other communications between Machell and John Mill, and voiced his disappointment on finding that Machell's drawings were 'few' and 'rough'.[63]

In 1894, Ferguson's monograph, *A History of Westmorland*, quoted Machell's research on six occasions, predominantly by citing *Transactions* articles and Nicolson and Burn's *History*. When referring to illustrations of the seals of Robert and Idonea de Veteriponte, however, he guided the reader to 'the first volume of the Machell manuscripts in the library of the Dean and Chapter at Carlisle, p.187,' and 'the first volume of Machell's MSS., pp. 238, 26.'[64] Ferguson had not found admittance to the cathedral library an easy matter. As researchers know, obtaining access to certain archives is not always uncomplicated. Ferguson vented his exasperation within an article on the stained glass at Windermere parish church, published in CWAAS *Transactions* in 1880.

> The earliest account of this glass is to be found in the second volume of Machell's MS. Collections, in the Dean and Chapter Library at Carlisle. I have some rough memoranda I made long ago of his notes as to the coats of arms. I regret that I have been unable to verify them, or obtain a glimpse, even for a few moments, of the originals: this is due to the obstructive regulations placed by the Dean and Chapter of Carlisle, in the way of access to manuscripts of which they are the trustees for the public.[65]

Perhaps the obstruction occurred because R.S. Ferguson, though chancellor of the diocese, was the first layman ever to be appointed to that role;[66] but whatever the reason, his experience of admittance differed markedly from the free access experienced by that earlier chancellor, Rev. Richard Burn.

CWAAS *Transactions* 1919-1958

During the first half of the 20th century, Thomas Machell's name appeared in *Transactions* less often than before, and local authors who cited his work did so only in passing, in support of their own specific historical concerns. During the years 1919-1958, Machell was mentioned in 22 articles (as distinct from 35 during the period 1870-1918), only four of which cited volume and page numbers,

[61] Hill MSS, CAC(C,) DCHA/11/11/1-9: 9 volumes of collections for 'The History and Antiquities of the County of Westmorland' by John Hill of Castle Bank, Appleby (died 1861). See Rev. J. Simpson, 'Appleby Castle', *CW1*, I (1874), 242-54, at 247.
[62] Chapter Order Book (1874-1901), CAC(C), DCHA 1/1/15, 4.
[63] Letter from R.S. Ferguson (then editor of CWAAS *Transactions*) written in Carlisle on 17 December 1885 and read to the Society of Antiquaries of Newcastle upon Tyne. See *Proceedings of the Antiquaries of Newcastle-upon-Tyne Vol. II* (South Shields, 1887), 142-43.
[64] R.S. Ferguson, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1894), 99, 101.
[65] R.S. Ferguson, 'Windermere (Bowness) Parish Church, and its Old Glass', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 47.
[66] See E. Carlyle & A. Winchester, 'Ferguson, Richard Saul (1837-1900), antiquary'. *ODNB*.

while others merely referred to his name, cited previous *Transactions* articles, or had gained their information from Nicolson and Burn's *History*. R.S. Ferguson had demonstrated the difficulties involved in gaining access to the original volumes, even for local scholars, however distinguished; how much harder, then, would it have been for those who lived many miles from the far north of England?

CWAAS *Transactions* 1963-1998

During the 1960s, a sea-change in local interest in Machell's volumes occurred when Jane M. Ewbank, daughter of Walter Ewbank (then domestic chaplain to Bishop Thomas Bloomer and Vicar of Raughton Head, Cumberland),[67] was given access to the Machell documents, in particular Volume II. Consequently, in 1963, Jane Ewbank published a scholarly edition of Machell's notes on the Barony of Kendal, *Antiquary on Horseback. The First Publication of The Collections of the Rev. Thos. Machell Chaplain to King Charles II Towards a History of the Barony of Kendal*.[68] The publication was highly appreciated by local scholars, as shown by the rising number of articles concerning Machell in *Transactions* during the period 1964 to 1998. Over three quarters of the 31 articles mentioning him cited only secondary sources, and, of these, 71 per cent cited Ewbank's book. Nicolson and Burn's *History* ceased to be cited as a source for Machell's research during this period.

CWAAS *Transactions* 2000-2020

Of the 22 *Transactions* articles utilising Machell's research during the years 2000-2020, 64 per cent cited Ewbank's *Antiquary on Horseback*, while just 14 per cent cited Machell's volume and page numbers. This is thought-provoking for several reasons. First, circa 1988-90 the whole of Machell's collection was moved from Carlisle Cathedral Library to the Cumbria Record Office at Carlisle, where it has resided ever since; yet, despite this, scholars have still preferred to use secondary sources. The irony of this situation was made clear in 2014, when an author who had used Rogan and Birley's *Transactions* article, 'Thomas Machell, the Antiquary', as his main source[69] thanked Carlisle archivist, Tom Robson, for finding and sending to him the extra information he needed from Machell's volumes; an admission, perhaps, that Carlisle was still too far away for some scholars to venture.[70] The second obvious result of the publication of *Antiquary on Horseback* is that from 1964 to the present, *Transactions* articles which quote Machell have shown a pronounced leaning towards seeking evidence only from the Barony of Kendal: this, of course, can be found much more easily in Ewbank's book than in Machell's muddled MS. Machell's research notes on Kendal Barony fill little more than one of his six volumes, but only a few scholars during this period appear to have utilised the other five.[71]

Difficulties of Transcription

Notwithstanding difficulties of access, there is another, graver, difficulty; one which all scholars who have actually consulted Machell's volumes acknowledge. It is the notoriously illegible text. Contemporaries such as Nicolson, and later scholars such as Rogan and Birley, described the chaotic nature of the volumes' pages, many of which had been altered, added to, overwritten and scored through to a bewildering extent.[72] When Machell's handwriting is also considered, it is not surprising that few scholars ever attempted to unravel the mess. As noted above, in his letter to William Nicolson, Machell himself had confessed:

---

[67] Obituary. 'The Ven. Walter Frederick Ewbank 1918-2014', *Church Times*, 9 May 2014.
[68] Ewbank (ed.), *Antiquary on Horseback*, see fn. 4.
[69] Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell, the Antiquary', 132-53.
[70] See Peter Lucas, 'A South Westmorland Medieval Holy Well? The Case of St. Gregory's Well, Preston Patrick', *CW3,* 14 (2014), 125-28, at 125 n.6. Another such example is C.S. Colman, 'The Paralysis of the Cumberland and Westmorland Army in the First Civil War c.1642-45', *CW3*, 1 (2001). Having quoted Machell's Vol. II, 342, Colman remarked 'I am grateful to Richard Hall at the Cumbria Record Office, Kendal, for this reference.' [see 126, endnote 13].'
[71] For example, Angus Winchester, 'Personal Names and Local Identities in Early Modern Cumbria', *CW3*, 11 (2011), 29-50 [Angus Winchester is the author of Machell's biography in *ODNB*]; Mark Blackett-Ord, 'Growth of a Manor House: the early history of Warcop Hall, 1580-1745', *CW3,* 20 (2020), 137-50.
[72] Rogan and Birley, 'Thomas Machell, the Antiquary', *CW2* (1955), 142.

> …the notes … are so ill writt (for want of Convenient time & place) and so full of Blotts & Interlineations … no body besides my selfe can Compose & Bring them in Order.

This is not to claim that all of Machell's manuscripts are difficult to read; he had several handwriting styles, depending on whether he was writing a note, a draft, a fair copy, a letter, or a finished piece for publication. Considered in that order, the handwriting grows more legible and, indeed, more beautiful, as the texts approach publication standard. Unfortunately, most of the manuscripts are in note or draft form, and, as Eric Birley commented in 1951:

> [Machell's] MSS. collections, in the Dean and Chapter library in Carlisle, have been the delight and the despair of a long succession of scholars, from Bishop Nicolson to Chancellor Ferguson (to say nothing of people still living).[73]

In his article written with John Rogan in 1955, Birley expanded on this theme.

> An analytical study of the rough drafts would undoubtedly yield interesting information about Machell's mind, but it is one of the tasks which we can only indicate now, in the hope that someone may be prepared to undertake it. [74]

As noted above, in 1963 Jane Ewbank undertook part of that task by transcribing Machell's 'Barony of Kendal'. Sixty years on, this edition provides a transcription of Machell's research on the whole of Westmorland. Nevertheless, the problems of transcription remain the same. Jane Ewbank's edition, like that of Nicolson and Burn, omits some of Machell's margin comment, interlineation and 'difficult' text, while Machell's notoriously opaque handwriting has led to transcription errors. Hence, it would be miraculous if this edition of *Thomas Machell's Collections towards a History and Topography of Westmorland* were to escape the same fate, despite its editor's determination to strive for accuracy. To echo Machell himself,

> Nor will I promisse to be so accurate my selfe as to scape all oversights; som can not be avoided. But I will doe my \ best / endeavour, and be very much beholden to those who shall take the paines to correct these papers where they are amiss…[75]

Modern reception of Machell's volumes. Part 2. Wider publishing

There has been no published volume devoted solely to Machell's research since the appearance of Jane Ewbank's *Antiquary on Horseback* in 1963, notwithstanding late-20th-century and 21st-century interest in the history of antiquarianism, which has led to the publication of a significant number of volumes on the subject.[76] It is unsurprising, then, that whenever Machell's name is found in such books, it appears as an aside.[77] Ignored or overlooked for centuries, Machell's dubious status among today's scholars appears to remain just as it was in his lifetime. A well-received recent edition of Sir Daniel Fleming's memoirs from 1633 to 1688 exemplifies this. Fleming mentions Machell, but only briefly; he appears to have had a closer acquaintance (though mainly in an official capacity) with

[73] Eric Birley, 'Notes: Thomas Machell and Hadrian's Wall', *CW2*, 51 (1951), 180-82, at 180.
[74] Rogan and Birley,' Thomas Machell, the Antiquary', *CW2* (1955), 142.
[75] See Part 3, Ch.4, Heraldry, 'Of Familyes', VI.373.
[76] See examples of a wide range from 1951 to 2015: David Douglas, *English Scholars 1660-1730* (London, revised edition 1951); Stan A.E. Mendyk, *Speculum Britanniae: Regional Study, Antiquarianism and Science in Britain to 1700* (Toronto, Buffalo, London, 1989); C. R. J. Currie and C. P. Lewis (eds), *English County Histories: A Guide* (Stroud, 1994); Jan Broadway, *William Dugdale and the Significance of County History in the Early Stuart England,* Volume 39 of Dugdale Society Occasional Papers (Chicago, 1999); Graham Parry, *Trophies of Time: English Antiquarians of the seventeenth century* (Oxford, 1995 and 2007); Rosemary Sweet, *Antiquaries: The Discovery of the Past in 18th-century Britain* (London and New York, 2004); Ruth Scurr, *John Aubrey: My Own Life* (London, 2015).
[77] See, for instance, Mendyk, *Speculum Britanniae*, 318; Sweet, *Antiquaries*, 208.

Machell's elder brother, Hugh, lord of Crackenthorpe.[78] Younger brother, Thomas, appears in an incident in October 1684, when Fleming visited the Earl of Thanet at Appleby Castle to arbitrate in a dispute between Hugh Machell, his mother and his sister, 'by reason of a flaw Parson Machel discovered in the Bond of Reference entered into at the instance of the Earl of Thanet, which did offend his Lordship very much.'[79] Note that the antiquary is here merely 'Parson Machel', although he and Daniel Fleming had corresponded on Machell's proposed History from at least 1677.[80]

Machell's Renaissance

As already noted, some of those commenting on Machell's research papers did so with a certain condescension. In 1899, Lancaster Herald, Edward Bellasis, thought them inadequate, perceiving Machell's approach to family pedigrees as 'quaint' and 'confused'.[81] Redressing the balance, recent British historical journals have revived interest in Machell's volumes, thanks to Professor Adam Fox, whose articles in *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, *Cultural and Social History*, and in the *Historical Journal* have illuminated content that had been previously discounted. Fox's scholarly interests have been crucial to Machell's renaissance. His study of antiquarian method led him to examine the first antiquarian questionnaires, in the planning of which Machell played a crucial part. Fox has also researched oral tradition in early modern England; a theme embedded in Machell's writing.[82] Fox's ground-breaking article, based solely on original observations gleaned from Machell's volumes, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', has raised Machell's profile to a more significant level.[83] As Fox has observed:

> Naturally enough, the focus of [the local historical societies] is on the history of the north of England as a region … Machell's fascination with popular practices and beliefs is inextricably bound up with locality. The two obviously intersect but they represent rather different emphases nevertheless.[84]

Fox accentuates the importance of vernacular culture in British history, applauding Machell as 'an original and sympathetic recorder of the beliefs and prejudices, customs and practices of his neighbours'. He believes him to be an antiquary who shared a common interest with John Aubrey 'as an important, and sometimes unique, commentator on vernacular traditions, children's games and calendar rituals'.[85] Using his cherished county of Westmorland as a source, Machell was able to draw on what he judged to be its people's distinctive character. 'He was the painstaking and sympathetic observer of a culture with which he was intimately familiar.'[86]

Fox has expressed regret that Machell still remains 'a relatively obscure and neglected figure', noting that he is remembered for his site excavations, his recording of gentry families, and 'his role in the introduction of classical architecture to Cumberland and Westmorland'; 'but', he argues, in addition to these achievements, Machell was

---

[78] In 1685 Hugh Machell was one of four members of the grand jury at Appleby who wrote a congratulatory address to James II. See Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), 239.
[79] See Sowerby and McCormack (eds), *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 214-15. For more on this dispute, see C. Roy Hudlestone, 'Thomas Machell, his Wife and Children…' *CW2* (1970), 137-44.
[80] See J.A. Bennett and Richard Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890), 135-39.
[81] Edward Bellasis, 'Strickland of Sizergh', *CW1*, 10 (1889), 75-94, at 90.
[82] See Adam Fox, 'Remembering the Past in Early Modern England: Oral and Written Tradition', *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society* 9 (1999), 233-56; *Oral and Literate Culture in England 1500-1700* (Oxford, 2000); 'Printed Questionnaires, Research Networks, and the Discovery of the British Isles, 1650-1800', *Historical Journal*, 53 (2010), 593-621.
[83] Adam Fox, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and Social History* 3 (2012), 329-47.
[84] Quotation from email correspondence between Adam Fox and the editor, March 2017.
[85] Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 329.
[86] Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 330.

> an important and original commentator on vernacular traditions and local customs. His manuscript writings add not only to our knowledge of landscape and society in the north-west of England during the late seventeenth century, but also to our understanding of early modern popular culture more broadly. They provide earlier references to a number of usages and recreations than otherwise known and represent a valuable witness from the north of the country to set alongside similar sources that derive predominantly from the south.[87]

That Machell did not confine his queries and conversations to the county elites is crucial to the argument for a renewed scholarly interest in his work. As Fox remarks, Machell's 'inquisitive' approach and willingness to converse with 'the vulgar', even if their tales stretched his credulity, are relevant and fascinating in their own right. Inevitably this approach did not impress his peers, particularly William Nicolson, 'in whose hands his posthumous reputation lay. "A very foolish tale", wrote Nicolson beside the story told to Machell by the villagers of [Ravenstonedale] about how a former lord of the manor had been providentially struck blind after enclosing their common field.'[88] Here, Fox neatly exposes two very different emphases concerning the history of locality, a dichotomy personified in the difficult relationship between these two intertwined antiquaries.

Machell's Methods. 1. Questionnaires

When writing their county histories, antiquaries made greater discoveries when they began to send out printed questionnaires containing numbered 'heads' or 'articles of enquiry' to would-be assistants in every corner of their chosen county.[89] This was not a new phenomenon; the practice came into being through Francis Bacon (1561-1626), whose ideas relating to natural philosophy led to his development of an empirical approach to scientific enquiry by means of observation and induction.[90] Moreover, after the Restoration, diocesan clergy of the Church of England were often required by their bishop to respond to a series of questions on their parochial provision in advance of visitation.[91]

Given the lofty beginnings of the antiquarian questionnaire, some might find it surprising that Thomas Machell's questionnaires, 'were the first to specify the study of antiquities, history and geography at the parish level and … were more elaborate than their predecessors'.[92] This came about through antiquarian collaboration at the University of Oxford from the 1640s, during the era of the evolution of scientific method, in which Francis Bacon's ideas were seminal. Bacon had compiled a series of 'directions of invention and enquiry' in the early 1620s, setting the scene for research into 'natural knowledge', which deliberately mixed antiquities and natural history while also encouraging collaborative methods. In 1673 the scientist Robert Hooke, who used such approaches in his own research, joined the publisher and cartographer John Ogilby, the surveyor Gregory King, the lawyer John Hoskins, the architect Christopher Wren, and the antiquary John Aubrey, to create some 'Queries in order to the description of Britannia'; a scheme invented by Ogilby in his capacity as the new Cosmographer Royal.[93] The first fact-finding documents to be directed at individuals in the British regions, these queries were used by John Aubrey in his survey of Surrey later that year, and by the natural historian, Robert Plot, when researching the *Natural History of Oxfordshire*, published in 1677, and the *Natural History of Staffordshire*, published in 1686.[94]

---

[87] Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 330.
[88] Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 343. See also Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale, II.307.
[89] Adam Fox, 'Printed Questionnaires, Research Networks, and the Discovery of the British Isles', 593-621.
[90] See M. Peltonen, 'Bacon, Francis, Viscount St Alban (1561-1626), lord chancellor, politician, and philosopher'. *ODNB*.
[91] W.J. Sheils, 'Bishops and their dioceses: reform of visitation in the Anglican church c.1680-c.1760'. CCED Online Journal 1, 2007.http://www.theclergydatabase.org.uk/cce_a1/
[92] Mendyk, *Speculum Britanniae*, 318.
[93] See Machell's Preface, I.42A.
[94] This paragraph has been calendared from Fox, 'Printed Questionnaires, Research Networks, and the Discovery of the British Isles, 1650-1800; 595-99; see also, Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 330.

While a fellow at The Queen's College (he was elected in 1673), Thomas Machell mixed with many leading Oxford antiquaries; for example, a letter to Anthony Wood (a copy of which is retained in his papers) addressed Wood as 'my old friend'.[95] In a letter to Daniel Fleming, dated March 1677, Machell explained that he had extended Ogilby's 'Queries in order to the description of Britannia' to help his own research,

> … that I maybe both able to satisfy them and myne owne curiosity. The end of which is To have in readiness a Local Account how things stand at this day in each Parish & Lordship; to which I may refer (as a Common-Place) all those Collections I have in readiness; and what ever else shall hereafter occur, either in Historyes or ancient Records.[96]

It is possible that Machell had received the queries from either Wood or Robert Plot; he had already conversed with the latter on introducing natural history into his northern research. He touched on this connection much later, in a letter written in January 1686 to the cartographer John Adams.

> … if I had met with a kind reception among my relations (the Gentry of the Countrey) & but any returne (tho' never so sleight) from the Country Ministrey, to the Queries I sent there (which were design'd partly to assist Dr Plot my friend and consociate in his *Natural History*; partly to gather where ancient writeings, & other ancient Antiquities might be seen by me; but principally, to gaine the Topographies (or locall description) of these two sister-counties to which I might refer my collections) …[97]

The information given to Adams reveals that Machell's own questionnaire had been partly designed to assist Robert Plot's research; it also underlines comments he had made years earlier, in a letter to Daniel Fleming, that his written queries had not been well received by local gentry and clergymen: 'Many are cold. If this continues I shall retire from the enterprise.'[98]

As he began his History in Oxford, Machell was obliged to rely on others for information-gathering in Westmorland. That some local worthies were unwilling to complete his queries did not bode well for their financial aid towards publication, nor for Machell's hopes of completing his study. But Machell was to highlight another approach. 'As to the Queries', he wrote on 26 March 1677 in another letter to Fleming,

> Tis true you will find them very long and tediouse, many Tautologyes conteined in them, & somthings allso which may be litigiouse & not fit to be Answer'd : But tho you (the Gentlemen & Ministers of the Countrey from whom I hope the Greatest Assistance) are men of Ingenuity, so that a word might seeme to suffice; yet They are Contriv'd for Ordnary Capacityes, That the Vulgar (possibly of slow apprehensions) who must be consulted in this undertakeing By giveing their Answers to severall Queries in Different Terms tho to the same purpose, may luckily hit of som little Circumstance fully discovering all that is sought for in 2 or 3 Questions: And as for those which are very dubiouse, and therefore may seem unfit to be Answer'd, The Respondent in this Case may use his Discretion.[99]

The interesting point here is that Machell wished to extend his queries to the 'vulgar' and those of

[95] Machell to Anthony Wood, enclosed within a letter to John Mill, 7 October 1692; see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, VI.253. Please note, however, that Machell's letter to Mill is critical of Wood's lack of generosity towards him, hurt feelings being a common feature of Machell's correspondence with Oxford colleagues.

[96] Machell to Daniel Fleming, 26 March 1677, in J.R. Magrath (ed.),*The Flemings in Oxford I* (Oxford, 1904), 214-17; see Machell's version of the 'Queries in order to the description of Britannia' in his Preface, 'Part I of Collecting in order to a Preface', I.748, I.42A.

[97] Machell to John Adams, written at Kirkby Thore, 26 January 1686; see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.516-17.

[98] Machell to Daniel Fleming 1 August 1677, in which Machell wished that all were as ready to assist him as DF. See Bennett and Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall*, 139. See also, Machell to Daniel Fleming, *The Flemings in Oxford I*, 26 March 1677, 214-17.

[99] Adam Fox, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England', 331.

'ordnary capacityes', and there is ample evidence in the volumes to prove that he did so. His printed questionnaire follows below. The Rev. Richard Singleton of Melmerby in Cumberland sent the only complete reply to be found in the Machell volumes, though there are examples of partial responses throughout.[100] Although Machell initially criticised their response, some local clergymen were prepared to help. Singleton was particularly keen, returning his 17-page reply in June 1677. Machell immediately bombarded him with another ten questions. Nor did he stop there. Singleton, as requested, had tried his best to provide drawings of various objects inside his church. Machell replied encouragingly, 'The uppermost course in the 3d light at the west end of the church & the 3rd which is imperfect, by all means draw me them. You do excellent well.' But these images were poor compared to those completed in Machell's draughtsman-like hand, so it is unsurprising that, in 1688, a few years after Singleton's death, Machell went to Melmerby church to see its interior for himself.[101]

Thomas Machell's Official Questionnaire

[1]
That the Northern Counties which abound in Antiquities and Ancient Gentry
may no longer be bury'd in Silence[102]

Information is desir'd concerning the following Queries as they lye in order, viz. either. By

1. Report and Tradition.	} noting	{	1. T.	}
2. Evidence or Record.	} them	{	2. R.	} before the Answer.
3. Experience of know-ledge of the present Age.	} with	{	3. E.	}

And it being design'd for the Honor of your Parish among others, your outmost Endeavours are desir'd in order to a true Information. Which may easily be procur'd by calling some of your Ancient men (who have gon Procession or know the Boundaries of your Parish) And the Lord or Balive, with some of the Tenents (of good Repute, Knowledge and Honesty) in particular Lordships: from whose mouths you may please to write your Answer on a sheet of paper, folded (as this) with margins on both sides. And to give the more Authority to the work, the Names of those from whom you receiv'd your informations may be return'd at the Conclusion of the Accounts of their Respective Parishes, Lordships, Villages &c. And it is to be wished that the Minister, and Church-wardens or some of the Parish would subscribe their names to the General Account of the Parish: And the Lord (or his Balive, Steward &c.) with some of the Tenents the Accounts concerning their Respective Lordships.

Chap. 1. Queries concerning the Parish in General.

1. The name of the Parish, & why so call'd? how written in ancient Records? In what Diocese, Barony, Hundred or Ward it is said to lye? How is it bounded & divided from other Parishes on the E. W. N. & South &c? by what Rivers, Hedges, Walls, Cause-ways, or common and well known Land-markes, Meets and Boundaries &c. or are they (or any of them) Litigious or Doubtfull?

2. What form and figure does it most resemble. as Square, Oblong, Oval, Triangular, &c. with the Length and Breadth in the largest parts of it, nameing the places where you begin and end your computation, as also where they lye, E. W. N. or South, and the circumference (by moderate Computation) if you can guess at it;

3. What the Quality of the Soyl in general; as clay, mold, sand, gravel? and of what sort. Red, yellow, blew, black, white, &c. And if it be stony, of what kind, as Lime-stone, &c. Also whether is it for the most part Arable pasture, meadow or wood-land? is it very fertile, barren or indifferent? Also what sort of mines, quarries. fuell. &c. doth your parish afford? At what distance do you fetch your fireing? what plenty of it? what general Customs, as Rush-bearing, Hollyes, Bonfires &c? what games, sports &c. and when celebrated?

[100] Machell MS.VI, 699-722, at CAC(C).
[101] 'Melmerby Church, Aug. 13 1688 {Ad Cumberland}', MS.VI.701 at CAC(C).
[102] 'That the Northern Counties which abound in Antiquities and Ancient Gentry may no longer be bury'd in Silence' (1677), CAC(K), WD/Ry/1904. This document can be viewed online at Text Creation Partnership, https://quod.lib.umich.edu/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=eebo2;idno=B26409.0001.001.

4. The name of the Church. Why so call'd, to what Saint dedicated? near what Saints day do you keep your Feast or Wake? what manner of building is it, great or smal; Elegant or mean? how many Rows of Pillars? hath it a Spire, Square-steeple, or neither? how many Bells? when and by whom founded, endowd, rebuilt, or extraordinarily repair'd? what Chanteries or Oratories in it, with their Foundation, Dedication, Endowment and Dissolution? Item, what monuments & monumental Inscriptions with coats of Arms &c. of Nobility and Gentry? what witty strange and uncouth Epitaphs either in the Church (1. Body. 2. Chancell) or without it, whether on the walls, or in the Church-yard? Be pleas'd to draw them out or describe them according to their Figure & Colors, as well as you can. What number and names of Chappels belonging to the Church or Parish?

5. Whether your Parish be a Vicaridge, Parsonage, or both? An Impropriation, or not? if it be, who is Impropriator? and what Allowance to the Vicar or Curate? whether hath it Tythes in kind or not? what value is it of by common Estimation? what succession of Patronage? and how transferr'd from one family to another? with the name and Habitation of the present Patron.

6. The Parsonage, or Vicaridge-house in or near to what Town or Village? at what end or side of the same E. W. N. or South? or how far distant otherwise from it? by what name & whence so call'd? how writ in antient Records? of what sort the building fair, mean or indifferent; wood, clay, brick or stone? slated or not? and in what repair? how situated? High or Low; on the top, side, or at the bottom of an hill? By what Springs, or Ponds, Rivers, (Navigable, or otherwise) with what Commodities as mills, fish, fowl, and the sorts they afford? also near or upon what great Road? & how far distant from any of them, E.W.N or South? how far from the nearest Chappel, Church, Parish-church, Market? what Gardens, Orchards, Dove-coats, Warrens, Parks, Forests, Woods, (Standing or lately cut down) with other Perquisits belonging unto it or are there any such near at hand (tho belonging unto

[2]

others) which render the place more Commodious or pleasant? what kind, and plenty of fuel? and from whence brought? Item when and by whom was it built, mended, rebuilt, or extraordinarily repair'd and upon what occasions? (And if it be a Mannor House? what Rent doth it pay, and what Courts are there kept?)
What Remarkable about it either within or without?
* Within, as ancient Inscriptions, Coats of Armes in Glass, Wood or Stone.
* Without, as Fortifications, Bulwarks and Trenches round or square; places where battles have been fought, or other Accidents have happen'd, Heaps of Stone or Earth trench'd about in manner of a Ring or otherwise; Mounts of War, ancient Ruines; Beacons; Coyns digg'd up; with other Rarities of what kind soever; as springs cold, hot, Medicinal, Bituminous, Petrifying &c.

7. How much Glebe belonging unto it; with the Quantity of an Acre by the account of your Parish? the Quality of the Soyl, viz. of what sort for the most part, Arable, &c. asking and answering the same Questions as in Query the 3d. What Woods, Forrests &c? asking and answering the same Questions as in Qu: 4th of the 3d. Chapt.
And what Priviledge extraordinary your Ministers hath? What notable Remarque of Antiquity upon the Glebe, as Fortifications, &c. see above in Query 6th at the word without, and be pleased to answer those Questions. &c.

8. How many Lordships or Mannors in the Parish which you are desir'd onely to enumerate and write down their Names; alwaies observing to put the first where the Parish-Church stands, if it happen to be one.

9. Informers Names; and their Information confirm'd by the Subscription of the Minister and Church-Wardens, if it may be had.

Chap. II. Concerning every particular Lordship enquire of the Lord, Steward, Balive, or experienced Tenents

1. The name of the Mannor or Lordship; how written in ancient Records? how at present? and whence deriv'd? In what Barony, Ward, or Hundred? How bounded with other Lordships?

2. What Form and Figure &c. asking and answering the same Questions as above Query 2d.

3. What the Quality of the soyl &c. asking and answering as above in Queries 3d. to which adde the measure of an Acre with the yearly value of the best, worst, and middle sort of Arable. Pasture. Meadow; excluding the Commons, Moors and Fells.

4. What general and Remarkable Customes of the Lordships? and how many free-holds?

5. How, and of whom doth the Lord hold the Mannor? and by what service of the King in Capite, or some Castle or Barony? And if so, of what Castle, or Barony? by Escuage, Knights-Service, or Cornage? and what Rents or Acknowledgments doth he pay? when, and to whom?

7. What priviledges hath he, as waifes Strayes, boons, &c. and what sort of Finable Rents, fines certaine or uncertaine? Green-hew, &c (or are they bought off or belonging to others) what Courts doth or may he keep? as Baron, Leet, &c. and where? Concerning the Lords privileges when you have got his Information, be pleas'd to enquire also of some of the Tenents for Confirmation, lest he pretend to more than is his right.

6. The mannor house, what Rent pays it, and what Court may be holden at it? In or near to what town or village is it and so on, asking the same Questions which occur in Qu. 6th. Concerning Parsonage or Vicaridge-houses In cap. 1. vide.

7. How many Demaines belong to it with the Quality of the Land &c. Answering the Questions in Query the 3d of cap. 1. Its peculiar priviledges; and what is remarkable therein; as Fortifications? &c. answering the same Questions as in Query 6th Chap. 1. at the word without.

8. Who the ancient, modern, and present Proprietors, and when and how they came unto it? And for the present Proprietors especially. What coats of Arms do they bear? What number of Evidences have they belonging to the family? with the date of the ancientest. What Quality are they of; as Earls, Lords, Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen? And when the first of any of Those were known in their Family? What matches out of it (either by sons or daughters) into other families, with the time when, and place where they liv'd? Item, what Pedigree do they shew, with a Copy of it; at least an account of the first and last Generation in it, according to Date; or where it may be seen? and if they have none, an account may suffice for three or fower Generations (down to themselves, their Wives and Children;) of their Matches and Issue, with the Age, birth and buriall of every one of them, as near as may be. N[ote]. but if they have enter'd their Pedigrees in Mr Dugdales Visitation 1664. (which Book I can have the use of at any time) they need not give any further account concerning their families than what hath been since.

9. How many Towns, Villages, Constable-wicks, Hamlets, &c. are contain'd in the Lordship (which onely enumerate), putting that first where the Mannor house stands. And then in particular

Chap. 3. Concerning Every City, Town, Village, Hamlet, &c.

1. The name of the Place, modern, and ancient out of Records; also whence deriv'd? the distance from the
[3]
nearest Chappell, Church, Parish-Church, Market? how situate for traffique? how for pleasure? viz. high [⋯] low, &c. answering the same Questions, as in Query 6th. of Chap. 1.

2. When and by whom built, and repaired? with the notable accidents and Calamities which have happen'd thereto by fire, water, sword, famine, Pestilence? & when? And if It be a City; or Market Town; what streets have been formerly, or are now in it? with their names and Etymologyes, as much as may be. Whether a Borough, Corporation, or neither? When the first Charter granted? with an Extract of what great Priviledges it formerly hath, or at present does enjoy; as waifes, Strayes, felons, goods, Markets, Faires? How many Burgesses they send to Parliament? (their names in succession if it may be had; or at least the Names of the present Burgesses) how is it govern'd, as by Mayor, Balives, &c. and what other officers and Attendants, with the Ensign of Magistracie carry'd before Him? What is the Town-Seal, and Arms? with the succession of your Mayors and Bailives, as far as Record and Knowledge can supply.
But whether soever it be, viz. Market Town or Village &c. you are desir'd further to enquire as followeth; &c.

3. What places remarkable in or about it, as Churches, Chappels, Monasteries, Hospitals, Colledges, Scholes, Mout-hals, Correction-Houses, Prisons, Crosses, Bridges, (whether standing or demolish'd) with the places or streets where? of Every of which in particular and according to order, Foundation, Dedication, Endowment, Dissolution; with Armes &c. asking and answering the same Questions, as Concerning Churches Ch. 1. Qu: 4. Of every particular Church, Chappel &c. And remember to annex the stipend or Allowance to Chaplains or Readers from the Parish &c. as also the names and succession of such, (so far as is possible) as have bin Masters and Governors of any of the other places which are of Note, and require Government
– Item what Castles, Towres, Halls, and other houses of Gentlemen of Quality? Whether standing or Ruinous? of which in particular asking &c. The same Questions, as in Query 6th of Ch. 1. concerning the Parsonage-

house scilicet. What its name &c. But if the Manor or Parsonage-house chance to be one of those houses of Note, it may suffice only to Name it, as having spoken of it more at large in its proper place. It[em] what men of great Eminence for Arts, Arms, or blood? as Doctors, Bishops, Authors of Books, famous Lawyers, Judges, Serjeants at Law, Noble Warriors, Generals; &c. Kings, Earles, Princes, Lords, &c. Have any such bin born, bred or Buried in your Town? with the place where. It[em] What famous Acts done by Archers? what by witches, Spirits and Conjurers, which are own'd to be true, and are very remarkable? otherwise none of them.
– It[em]. what Fortifications, &c. Answering the same Questions, as in Qu: 6. Ch: 1. of the word Without, or as in the next following Query at the place marked Thus *

4. What Fells, Moors, and Commons (with stint, or without) belonging to the Village or Town &c, and how far distant? What profits and Commodities (beside pasture) do they afford? as Fern or Brackens, heath or Ling, furrs or whins, turf or Peat? * What Woods, Forrests, Chaces, Parkes, Warrens, Groves, now in being or lately destroy'd? But if any be spoken of with the mannor house, only mention them here.
– It[em]. what Springs Cold, or hott, Medicinal, Petrifying, or Bituminous? What Ponds, Tarns, Lakes, Rivers? with the sorts of Fish and Fowl they afford. And who reaps the benefit?
– It[em]. What Quarries, Mines, Pitts. &c. of Marble, Black, white, or Gray? Jeat, Precious Stone; Limestone, hewing-stone; Milstone; slate, (white red, or blew;) Coal; Gravel; Lead; Tin; Iron, Brasse, Copper, Silver, Gold, &c.
– It[em]. What Fair thereupon? when kept? Who has the profits?
– It[em]. What Horse-Races? where? for what prize? by whom first appointed, and how long ago?
– It[em]. What memorable places where Battles have been fought? Round heaps of Stone, or Earth cast up in Hills, trench'd round about, or otherwise? What Fortifications, Camps? &c. Answering the same Questions, as in Chap. 1 Qu: 6. at the word Without
– It[em]. What accidents and strange Occurrences have happen'd thereabout? With other Notable Remarks of what kind soever. And what you can say of any of them by your own knowledge, Report, or otherwise. Referring each thing to its proper head as near as you can.

5. How many Freeholders belonging to it (or if a Borough, how many Burgers, or what fee-farm Rent doth it pay, and to whom?) What other sorts of Tenants in it? at whose Courts do they [do] suit and service? By what Tenure do they hold? as soccage, Border-service, &c. or how? in what manner are they admitted unto their Estates? and how do they passe or Convey them away? as by surrender and admittance in Court, Copy of Court-Roll, will, or Deed? What Rents do they pay to the Lord of the mannor, or unto others? And what sort of Fines (Certain or uncertain) with other sort of Duties; as Oxgeld, green-hew, Reliefs, Heriots, &c? What services do they, not mention'd before amongst the Lordships Priviledges Chap. 2d. Qu:5th?
− Do they pay any things to any other Lord than the Lord of the mannor? or have any of them purchas'd their Fines and Services? if so, when, and of whom? and what their tenure is now call'd?
− Have they any extraordinary Priviledge or Custom in the place, (not mention'd before amongst those of the mannor in general) whereby any benefit doth accrue to themselves, their Widdows or Children?
When You have got the Information of Tenants concerning Priviledges: be pleas'd to inquire of the Lord, or his Steward for Confirmation, lest they pretend to what is not their right.

6. Informers Names.

7. Confirmation of Lord and Tenents by Subscription.

8. What Notable Proverbs, or peculiar expressions are us'd in the Parish, Lordship or Village?

9. The Names and Course of Every River or Beck in the Parish, with all its heads whence it springs? What way it runns E. W. North. or South? and the Parishes or Lordships it runns by or through? also the Towns, Halls, or Gentlemens Houses it visits by the Way, and how far it leaves them (or any of them) on the E. W. N. or South? The number of Mills and Bridges upon it? The sorts of Fish in it? Lastly where it takes the Sea, or loses it self in some other River or Lake?

[4]

10. The high or great-Roads which go through your Parish; Whence they come? To what place they go, and where they end? With the Parishes, Lordships &c. they passe by or through? Also Gentlemens houses or Notable Antiquities which occure in, or near unto them. Of all these (or as many as you can) Information is desir'd. And you may please to return your Answer, together with the Paper of Queries, as soon as possibly you can to Thomas Machell of Cracanthorpe in Westmerland. A.M. and Fellow of Queens Coll. in Oxon. 1. Jan. 1676-7.

Questionnaires: comment

Having read all four pages of Machell's questionnaire, the reader might well agree with Adam Fox that its length could have been very off-putting, or that the recipients could see no value in it, or that they were suspicious of giving away too much of a confidential nature.[103] Nevertheless, there is overwhelming evidence within the six volumes that Machell made extensive use of these queries, not only by sending them out to recipients, but also by using them as a means of organising his work methodically, in conjunction with the published county histories of others. A mere glance at his Preface will demonstrate that Machell reworked his method many times over different periods.[104] He also repeated key parts of it when collating information on particular parishes, as in Appleby, where he covered four pages with queries,[105] and in Kirkby Thore, where there are three.[106]

Machell's use of Informants

Informants were the key to Machell's whole enterprise. As already noted, county landowners were not always helpful; neither were some town councillors, as his uncle, John Thwaites, a mayor of Appleby, ruefully informed him in a letter written in September 1673.

> My kind respects salute you. I have endeavourd to satisfie your desires to give you an account of … Kendall & their Immunityes, but cannot prevaile therein.
> Your affectionate uncle
> Jo: Thwaites.

Such difficulties caused Machell to rely on the goodwill of local parish clergy, schoolteachers, friends, and members of his family, to help him gain the data he sought. His family's status enabled him to consult clergy of high diocesan office, as seen in this report of his correspondence with a future dean of Carlisle.

> I was of opinion that Nine Church took its name of St Ninian, and to that effect sent a letter to Archdeacon Musgrave, afterwards Dean of Carlile,[107] desireing him to enquire of his friend, one Mr Savage,[108] sometime parson there, what he could say of it. And received an answer dated from Edenall December 15, 1673, in these words.
> … Your apprehension of Nine Church is right, for not onely his name, Sc. De Ninianus, but his picture also, was seen by Mr Savage on the partition betwixt the chancel & body of the Church, who refers you to the *Aurea Legenda*, for an account concerneing that same.[109]

Sir Daniel Fleming allowed Machell to consult the books and papers in his library at Rydal Hall, and was himself a source of local information for many years, despite his cool demeanour.

> Rydal, Feb. 9. 93/94
> Sir
> Having often occasion to consult Dugdale's *Baronage of England*, I hope you'l be pleased to return mine hither as soon, & as safely, as you can. I am glad to know that you, Mr Arch-deacon and Mr Todd are concerned for Westmorland, Northumberland & Cumberland in the new edition of Mr Camden's *Britannia*; not doubting but that those three counties will be very well done. I long to hear of that book being published. I have here sent you a copy of a pedigree, which I omitted to deliver unto you at your being in this country, and which is more correct than that which was more hastily taken here by Sir William Dugdale. I wish we had any thing in these parts that would invite you to

[103] Fox, 'Printed Questionnaires, Research Networks … 1650-1800', 616-18.
[104] Machell's Preface. Pages on method: I.1; VI. xii; I.748-49; I.42A; I.3-4; I.750; I.767C; I.767D; I.153-54; IV.60B; I.197-98; I.229; I.148-49; I.41-43; I.127-28; I.46.
[105] Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, I.57; I.171; I.172; I.172A; I.172B.
[106] Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.508; I.548; I.744.
[107] Thomas Musgrave, Archdeacon of Carlisle, 1669; Dean of Carlisle, 1684; died, 1686. CCED.
[108] Arthur Savage, ordained Deacon at Rose Castle, 1637; Rector of Brougham, 21 August 1643 to 8 October 1662; Second Prebendary at Carlisle Cathedral and Rector of Caldbeck, 1665 until his death in 1701. CCED.
[109] See Part 1, Ch.7, Brougham, I.479-80. For information on the *Legenda Aurea* (the Golden Legend) consult those pages.

> cross our mountains, your company being very acceptable unto
> Sir
> Your most faithful servant
> Dan: Fleming.[110]

Machell also consulted women, those keepers of the oral tradition relating to family pedigrees. In 1689, for example, when researching the Wharton family's ancestors, he turned to 'old Isbell Wharton of Wharton Dikes – aged 93'. He was interested in longevity in general, recording 'old Thomas Walker 112, his wife 109' at Crackenthorpe, among a host of older people named throughout his notes.[111] The provision of such a vast number of local names is worthy of further study. The inclusion of a poll book related to an election at Appleby offers the researcher names and addresses of voters, as well as their voting preferences. Such information on local people is ripe for wider investigation alongside parish registers (those at Kirkby Thore commenced in 1593),[112] to promote further scholarship.[113]

Informants came from many backgrounds. In two pages of text on Windermere, for instance, Machell retold a story heard at Holker; then gave the names of two Troutbeck informants – a clergyman and a yeoman farmer – and, lastly, copied a line written by local poet, Richard Braithwate.[114]

> Memorandum. To Enquire of a store about a Hagworme who bit a man in the legg – of which he could get no cure; and about a year after the hag worme came to the doer, & the man ordered them to set it open; & so it came to his leg which he exposed, & licked it, & went away, after which he mended forthwith. Told me at Mr Prestons of Howcar, I thinke per Mr Marsden.
> [Informants] de Troutbeck: Mr Walker curate – George Brown yeoman.
> Ad Kendal et Kentmere. Poet Brat:
> 'Kendal from Kent derives Its name, & Kent from Kentmeres springing fountaine came.'[115]

Having examined the hag-worm narrative, the reader will perhaps judge with William Nicolson that Machell was somewhat credulous, and, indeed, his volumes contain dozens of similar tales which support Nicolson's opinion. Stories of ghostly appearances, punishment inflicted from the grave, premonitions, witchcraft and much more were relayed to Machell by gentry, yeomen, tenants, miners shepherds and others, some known to him and others whom he had met for the first time.

Machell: pride, place and prejudice

For Tory Anglicans like Machell, exploration of the past formed one way of making sense of the turbulent events of the later seventeenth century. 'Place' for him was both a physical and an intellectual engagement. The failures in heraldic visitation, the rise of a mercantile class, the regicide and the fall of James II were to him, signs of the collapse of precious pedigrees and traditions, soon to be forgotten. Like John Aubrey, William Dugdale and others, Machell worked to preserve the past as he understood it, at the end of a century of great change.

As already noted, because Machell did not live to complete his project, his volumes contain many personal revelations that, had he lived to publish, would have almost certainly been omitted. His correspondence gives a measure of this, but, hidden among the pages of all six volumes, there are also nuggets of fascinating detail relating to Machell's daily activities and opinions. Life revolved around the rectory. Machell demonstrated a fondness for it, describing some of the changes he had introduced to make it more congenial. Fond of inventing devices, he explained (writing in the third person) that

[110] II.145. Note that Fleming desires Machell to return his book, a situation well-known to scholars everywhere.
[111] See Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.548.
[112] See R. Bower, 'Notes on the Kirkby Thore Registers', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 305-11, 372-86, at 372.
[113] For an example of such research see Pauline Wharton, *The Disappearing Yeoman: Windermere 1640-1841* (self-published, Amazon, 2017), Appendices.
[114] Richard Braithwaite of Burneside Hall: see Mary L. Armitt, 'Ambleside town and chapel: some contributions towards their history', *CW2*, 6 (1906), 1-96, at 28; see also H. S. Cowper, 'Notes on Richard Braithwaite of Burneside, the Poet and Writer, and his Portraits', *CW2*, 22 (1922), p.78.
[115] Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.317-19.

he had 'made a contrivance in his dining-room chimney that they waste not one cinder, nor never carry any ashes out of it':

> It is done by a funnel under the grate, which goes downe behind the corner of the hall-chimney; having […] small iron-barrs at the top of it to divide the cinders from the ashes, and a door of stone at the bottom to take them out at once in a yeare, which in the meane time is close daubed up & stopp'd, to prevent inconvenience.[116]

Like other Oxford scholars of his era, Machell was fascinated by machines and inventions.[117] He designed a font cover for his church at Kirkby Thore:

> A dillicate Font where \ at the Rectors charge which he [had] / made of huen stone, the designe of which to have a fountaine p\l/aying up in the bason and a dove appendant to the cover \ of it, / which (when it ascend by the help of a pully whose counterpoyse is hid in the steepel tower), will seem to stand hovering over the water …{The counterpoise goes up in the steeple where it is not seen: a proper emblem of the Holy Ghosts descending upon & sanctifying of the baptismal water to the mystical washing away of sin.}[118]

In a list of the prominent males in his family, he dubbed himself 'Thomas, the Contriver'.

> Guy & Hugh, the warriers.
> Henry, Doctor of Laws – Phil[osopher]
> Lancelot & John his brother, the soljer.
> Hugh, the builder.
> & the last & the least … Thomas, the Contriver; rector of Kirkbythore.[119]

Wherever he went, he was happy to engage with men as 'ingeniouse' as himself, such as Thomas Blenkinsop of Brough, 'an ingeniouse Gentleman for any sort of mechaniks.'; George Browne of Troutbeck, 'an Ingeniouse Countryman'; and James Dawsons [of Bridgend near Hutton]:

> an ingeniouse contry man who has made a milne which grindes Corne, Tempses[120] & Winnowes, & Turnes a Grindestone & polish wheale, & bores Gun-barrells; He having a Whitesmiths shop in his mill, in which he works Gun worke to Admiration, as also Clock work and Watch work – all which he tooke up of his own hand.'

Machell's volumes also reveal a great interest in gardens, fields, mountains and woods, and the particular plants that grew there. He described the deforestation he encountered,[121] and considered what improvements could be made to the gardens of large country houses.

> Sockbridge Hall is the manor house; which standeth North from the River Emot about a Bowshot … It is scituate upon a descent, in so much that you goe downe 3 descents in the very Court ere you enter the Hall…{Trees growing without the Court Wall which renders it somwhat more gracefull} – But if ever this be made a Stately house indede – they must build front to the river of Emote; carry

[116] Part 1, Ch.4, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.537.
[117] For example, Robert Hooke (1635-1703). Named 'England's Leonardo' by Oxford's Allan Chapman, he was a gifted creator of mechanical devices, creating a clockwork machine to record astronomical observations, measuring the weight of air and inventing a spring-regulated watch. He became curator of experiments at, and secretary of, the Royal Society, performing scientific investigations; he coined the biological term 'cell'. His *Micrographia* – on the natural world seen through a microscope – founded a new scientific discipline. Extracted from Pete Wilton, 'Oxford and the Royal Society's Origins', https://www.ox.ac.uk/news/science-blog/oxford-and-royal-society%E2%80%99s-origins (2010).
[118] Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.561.
[119] Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, III.82.
[120] 'Tempse': a sieve, esp. one used for bolting meal; a strainer. In modern local use, especially a sieve used in brewing. *OED*.
[121] See Machell's Preface, II.456; IV.28-29.

> the way in a streight line by the end of the house; and turne the Courtes and as far as the outer gate into Gardines & Orchards.[122]

Nevertheless, Machell appeared to like his own garden best. His study overlooked it and he was extremely proud of the plants he grew there, extolling the climate and soil which had produced them.

> And in his gardine which his study looks into, which being a piece of ground ornamented (forced),[123] doth show the benignity of the air & soyle to be extraordinary.[124]
> Nature alsoe hath sported herselfe, having gratified him with two rare productions: a dasie, four-inch and an half in circumference … & severall gilly flowers full blowne at Shrovetide, … without any help of […] dunging, or other improvement; which shows the benignity of the aire & soile to be more in this county than has been reported by other authors.[125]

Here, in his study, Machell was able to sit down to work. Always 'ingeniouse', he designed a revolving bookcase cum writing-desk which he sketched and described twice.

> He hath alsoe contriv'd an octagonall deske with a small writeing table running beneath it by means whereof he can consult many authors at once without moving his foot, & compare them together with a turne of his hand.[126]

Embedded in Machell's commentary is an enormous sense of local patriotism and pride. To Machell, there was no county as fine as Westmorland; no social class as fine as the Westmorland gentry; and no gentry more deserving of praise than the Machells of Crackenthorpe Hall and their relatives. As he avowed:

> It will not becom to boast of this family, but I dare aver that there is not a gentleman in either county of any antiquity that is not related to the Machells of Crakenthorp. He is not a gentleman that is not of kin to the Machells of Crakenthorp.[127]

He traced his ancestry back to the Roman presence in the north of England, suggesting that his family was descended from Roman stock.

> … the proprietor of [Whelp] Castle (with the lands round about it, whom the Saxons call'd Whelp \ in Latin, Catulus / might be a Branch of the old Romane Catuli, left here in trust with their British bands where when the Romans made their recess into Gaul, Anno Christ 443 \ in about the year 440, then destitute of aid, / there being but the space of \ about / 600 years \ (and many familyes have continued so long) / from betwixt their departure and the Norman Conquest \ Sc. 627 years.[128]

This sounds like special pleading. To quote Edward Bellasis:

> The Antiquary contends for a descent from the Roman Catuli. His argument is briefly:—Whelp Castle is hard by Crackenthorpe, Ulf and Whelp (Catulus) are synonymous, the Machell and Whelpdale arms are similar, Malus Catulus and Mauchael appear indiscriminately in the deeds, and Kirkby Thore was a Roman station.[129]

As Bellasis then remarked, 'the evidence seems inconclusive'. Nonetheless, Machell's strong sense of family exceptionalism coloured his attitude. It can be seen most particularly in his admiration of his male relatives. Besides praising his father's political loyalty, he frequently recorded his fearless

---

[122] Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.732.
[123] 'Forced': of plants, a crop, etc; made to bear, or produced, out of the proper season. Alternatively, fortified, made strong against attack. *OED*.
[124] See Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.563.
[125] See Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore … I.537.
[126] See Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore … I.563.
[127] See Part 1, Ch.13, Kirkby Stephen, III.210.
[128] See Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore … I.560.
[129] Edward Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorp', 417 fn.

exploits, not only when horse-racing and deer-hunting, but also in sports which are now less well-known, as seen in this passage on otter hunting.

> In this … river are many otters which afford the gentlemen som fine recreation. They hunt em to great hounds & spears, or with water spaniels traned up for the purpose. My Dear Father, Sq' Machell of Crakenthorpe, being a great hunter of this and all other game and that delighted in all sorts of activity, kild an otter once, 2 yards long. The skin was menald or spotted like to a leopard, and was so much esteemed of for the rarity \ of it / that he might have sold \ the same / for 10li. [130]

Machell's admiration of his family was matched by his waspish condemnation of those he considered social upstarts, his intense loyalty to the crown (a trait exhibited by all his family), and his enormous dislike of parliamentarians and others who had benefited from Cromwell's rule.[131] Such prejudices are described in the following paragraphs.

Social Climbers

Machell resented the rising tide of lawyers, merchants and successful artisans who desired to possess the armorial bearings of gentlemen. Their wealth could buy land and large residences but, if they wished to impress the College of Arms with their ancient lineage, these men sometimes resorted to subterfuge.[132] The College of Arms is an ancient body which has the oversight of all aspects of heraldry, but during Machell's lifetime it became known that individual heralds could be hoodwinked into accepting bogus family trees. As Machell wrote in one of his letters to the cartographer, John Adams:

> … you must expect to meet with many [pedigrees] that are false & spuriouse, for I have read somewhere …that there was a mendicant, illiterate fellow went about in these parts making false pedigrees; & I have found it true by experience, having had occasion to correct some of them for the Heralds themselves.[133]

Machell was contemptuous of those who made false pedigrees. One recipient of his scorn was James Bird of Brougham. We learn that James Bird was a Penrith lawyer who bought dwellings in Brougham and, in demolishing them, demolished a community; that his pedigree had been accepted by William Dugdale (Norroy, King of Arms) but that Machell had been unable to authenticate it; that he had married the daughter of a tanner; and that local information said that he had begun life with three hen chicks (this probably referring to the advantageous marriages of his three daughters). When Bird presented his grant of arms, Machell's contempt knew no bounds:

> And this being the original of … James Bird. Query: whether three hen chickens had not bin a more proper coate for him, than 3 demi lyons. But that he is a Bird of prey. He had the confidence to boast of the antiquity of his family to old Sir John Lowther, a wise & sober gentleman … affirmeing to him that there were Birds at Browham ever since the Conquest; to which Sir John gravely replyd, 'Yes, I believe there have bin Birds there … an longer too, yea, ever since Adam': meaning of featherd fowl. 1691? Sept. circa 20. James, the eldest son & heire of James, hangd for cutting his wife's throat in Kinsington Fildes near London.[134]

Note the last sentence, which leaves us in no doubt as to Machell's opinion of one who had the temerity to aspire to gentry status.

Parliamentarians

To Machell, the gentlemen who had sided with Cromwell in the Civil War were far more despicable than social climbers; to staunch royalists, such men were traitors. We see this in the scorn poured out

[130] See Machell's Preface, II.463.
[131] I thank Timothy Sykes for suggesting the highly apposite term, 'waspish', in relation to some of Machell's critical comments.
[132] The College of Heralds.
[133] See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence: Machell to John Adams, 26 January 1686, I.518.
[134] Part 1, Ch.7, Brougham, I.618.

on Major Arthur Scaife of Hellbeck, who claimed a grant of arms for a pedigree (authenticated by Dugdale) demonstrating that the Scaifes had been gentlemen for four or five hundred years. 'On the contrary', wrote Machell, Dugdale had said he had 'never heard of any gentleman named Scaife.' Moreover, Machell dismissed the major's title, '… he had that command under Oliver Cromwell in that Horrid rebellion & Civil War.'[135] Interestingly, Machell was not unduly critical of Philip, fourth Baron Wharton; a prominent parliamentarian, puritan and favourite of Oliver Cromwell. The aristocratic lineage and large landholdings of the Whartons were probably enough to encourage a diplomatic silence most of the time, despite Lord Wharton's dissenter status; but Machell could not resist adding the following disparaging passage, when compiling material on Ravenstonedale:

> In Russendale Town, S. ab Ecclesia ½ a quarter of a mile, near the midle of it is the East Row stands a meeting-house, being an house lately purchased & put in repare by Philip, Lord Wharton & his discenting tenants in 1691 \ for a meeting house which is / vastly distant from the church but not far from the alehouse. A man was slane \ at the repareing of it / by a piece of timber, so that its foundation, like that of old Roome,[136] was not without blood. Thus, the Lord Wharton continue in blindness – in hunc usque [right up to this moment].[137]

Thomas Barlow, bishop of Lincoln

Machell also disapproved of Thomas Barlow, the Oxford academic and bishop of Lincoln. Barlow was born in 1608, of what Machell termed 'mean' parentage, in the parish of Orton, Westmorland. Like Machell, he attended Appleby Grammar School and progressed to The Queen's College, Oxford. A man of huge intellect, he was already well-known as a scholar (he was provost of Queen's) before becoming bishop of Lincoln in 1675. This, Machell faithfully recorded in his chapter on Orton. Then we hear what Machell really thought of Barlow.

> He had many good qualityes, but courted fame so much that he would doe anything almost, to cheat the world into a good opinion of him, being … one that could rub o[f] any shame with a few fawneing words and fair pretences full of promises, but very barren & empty in performance {A man whose deed consists all together in the words & liberality in promises, for when he hath said, he hath don, & ye get no more.} He was in crafty witt subtill enough, in speach pleasing, in entertainment liberal, & beloved of all but those that knew him; to his friends treacherous, to his foes irreconcileable. Thus he was before consecration. God make him better for the time to come.[138]

Barlow had created enemies because he was seen as a 'trimmer': a man who trimmed his sails to the prevailing winds of religion and politics to survive and prosper, just like the Vicar of Bray.[139] Despite his strong Calvinism, he courted royalist and parliamentarian alike, which clearly appalled Machell. But would Machell have published his negative views of the man? He knew very well that authors were dependent on wealthy supporters to subsidise their publication costs. As he wrote to John Adams:

---

[135] Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.395.
[136] Rome.
[137] Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale, III.308.
[138] This passage is so well composed and ironically written that we could be excused for wondering whether Machell had 'borrowed' it. Nonetheless, it is there for a reason, i.e. Machell's hearty dislike of a cleric who aimed to dodge any expression of bias. See Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.619.
[139] 'The Vicar of Bray': a 17th-century country melody to which satirical verses were later added. The first two verses are as follows: 1. 'In good King Charles's golden days, When Loyalty no harm meant; A Zealous High-Church man I was, And so I gain'd Preferment. Unto my Flock I daily Preach'd, Kings are by God appointed, And Damn'd are those who dare resist, or touch the Lord's Anointed. [Chorus] And this is law, I will maintain unto my Dying Day, Sir. That whatsoever King may reign, I will be the Vicar of Bray, Sir!'
2. 'When Royal James possest the crown, and popery grew in fashion; The Penal Law I shouted down, and read the Declaration: The Church of Rome I found would fit, full well my Constitution, And I had been a Jesuit, But for the Revolution.' [Chorus] Four more verses follow the triumphant progress of the Vicar of Bray through the reigns of William III, Queen Anne and George I.

> Truth is noe worse for being attyr'd in a comly dresse. Gentlemen should be gently dealt with, & what ever seems to reflect upon them should be related with candour & modesty, which I ever propose to my selfe, as a Rule.[140]

Local stresses and strains

Clearly, Machell exhibited both local and national prejudice, yet he too should 'be gently dealt with', for his professional life was by no means devoid of anxiety. Although he appears to have been a diligent clergyman, toward the end of his life he entered into deep disagreement with one of his wealthy parishioners, his churchwardens, and his patron, the Earl of Thanet, in matters concerning income and responsibilities related to the parochial chapel at Temple Sowerby. This affected him deeply and interfered with his research. As he confessed in a letter to John Mill, written on 1 July 1692:

> I have Laboured all that I could (even under the Pressure of som mighty affairs that intervened & of diverse Disturbances & Interruptions) to gratify you in Your Request, with such inscriptions as occur in These Parts; but have not had leisure to compleat and finish them as I Intended.

An impassioned letter to Lord Thanet, dated 5 June 1697 (only one year before his death), set out Machell's parochial and financial concerns in great depth; that he was fobbed off is made obvious in the reply he received from Thanet's chaplain. This correspondence, plus all the evidence that Machell had gathered in his defence, is set out in detail at the conclusion of his research on Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin parishes.[141]

Conclusion

Machell's volumes offer all the insights noted here, and many more. Readers will thoroughly enjoy the humour of the antiquary's frequent dry and testy asides, of which this last should give them a taste for more. He seriously questioned the history of Rey Cross on Stainmore: was it here that 'King Westmer slow the king Rothingar', or did it serve 'as a meare [boundary] stone?' He added in the margin,

> When after aiges begin to consider how our young prodigal Gentlemen by coming up to London & playing the foole there destroy their estate: they will rather thinke that the ancestors erected this as a ne plus ultra to eldest sons, who except they be sober ou[gh]t never to travil beyond this.[142]

Machell's notes offer a cornucopia of such insights. He writes as a man thoroughly at home in his own place and glad to share his deep understanding and knowledge of it. That his notes are unfinished should be celebrated. They offer a rare gift to posterity, allowing the reader access to both unpolished and well-crafted prose; repetitions and errors; ancient monuments; architecture; manors and towns; religion; the state of the Church and of national politics; ideas of great importance and passages of throwaway humour; ancestral and questionable pedigrees; wealthy and poor families; forests and gardens; animals and birds; soil, rocks and their products; unbridled gossip and bawdy behaviour; folklore and vernacular speech; ghosts and witches; oral testimony and medieval documents; regional patriotism and civil war; and above all, intense pride in place. There is much more to explore than this brief Introduction will allow, and there are more conclusions to be drawn. Until now, scholars have known Machell's name, his life-story and his research on the barony of Kendal, but few have read all of his original notes, the handwriting of which would frustrate almost anyone. The situation has now been somewhat rectified through the publication of this edition. It has been a privilege to have revealed *Thomas Machell's Collections towards a History and Topography of Westmorland* to a wider readership.

[140] Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence: Machell to Adams, I.517.
[141] Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, Part IV.
[142] Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.401.

Preface

[I.746][1]

Sydus Boriale[2]
The Ancient & Modern Estate
of
WESTMER-LAND[3]
By
T.M. Rector of K.,
sometimes Fellow of Q. C. in Oxford
one of the Philosophie Society of the said University
& Chaplain Ordinary to King Charles the 2nd

[I.1]

T.M. Vol. I.
[A.] Part I of Collecting in Order to a Preface.
For the Intended Method,[4] See Part the 3d pag.1t

Because peradventure I may take occasion when I live in the Country,[5] to methodise those Notes concerning Westm'land, which I hastily gathered now and then when I was in that Country I thought fit allso to collect these historical observations concerning
1. The Britans & particularly of Brigants
2. The Romans with a Catalogue of Emperors & Lieutenants
3. The Saxon[s] with a Catalogue of their Kings
4. The Daines with a catalogue for the Knights; & so of
5. The Normans from whose Arrival my particular Account must att the highest take this Original.

This peradventure it may doe by way of place if I should take an hum[our] to transcribe my Notes: & because tis like I may want Bookes conten it in the Country (for then or never I thinke I shall doe it). I have scribbled these after a Rude Manner.
! Method! – a chapter of parishes \ & churches / out of Dugdal p.10 col[umn] 2 & 11. col. 1.[6]

[Machell's Notes: I.2]
N.B. There are no Queries to be solved in this part, but what Verstegan, Speed & Camden will Answer.[7]

---

[1] This title page typifies much of Machell's writing in that, beneath the title, the page has been completed in faded pencil, most of it illegible. This faded text appears to comprise a series of notes relating to the material on I.768, below.
[2] MS: 'Sydus Boriale ~~Antiquitates Boriales or~~ The Ancient & Modern Estate of the 2 sister Countyes…': 'Northern Star, ~~Antiqyuities of the North~~'. After this title sequence, the body text is written in red crayon and faded pencil and is legible only in parts. The content forms rough notes for the information which follows on I.748.
[3] MS: 'Sydus Boriale. The Ancient & Modern Estate of the 2 sister Countyes of WESTMER-LAND & CUMBER-LAND.' Because this edition concerns Westmorland, Machell's title has been edited to suit, but his remarks in the Preface on Cumberland have been allowed to remain as seen.
[4] Extended references to method begin on I.748.
[5] Machell was instituted to the rectory of Kirkby Thore in 1677. Notes and correspondence demonstrate that document research, site visits and early drafting of his county history began well before that date, during short visits home to Westmorland, and in Oxford, during his fellowship at The Queen's College. N.B. In this edition, the college name is almost always given in a shortened form – 'Queen's College, Oxford'.
[6] Dugdale, *Warwickshire* was Machell's favoured source for method when writing his own county history.
[7] Richard Verstegan, *A Restitution of Decayed Intelligence in Antiquities concerning the most noble and renowned English Nation* (1605); John Speed, *Historie of Great Britaine* (1611, augmented 1623*)*;William Camden, *Britannia* (originally published in Latin in 1586 with later additions in English, such as the edition translated by Philemon Holland (London, 1610 and later editions). The Holland edition of 1637 was purchased in 1656 for £1.10s. by Thomas Smith, bishop of Carlisle; it remains on the shelves of Carlisle Cathedral Library

Nom. Autheru[m]: A. Mundy's *Cronicle of the Success of Times* printed at London ~~8°~~ ~~Reg~~ 1611.[8] He promised also a Cronicle of London exceeding Stowes, p.572.[9]

[VI.xii]

[Cumberland]

I purpose to treat:
1. Of the county in general; its division into Baronyes, following the course of the River Eden which 1ˢᵗ entering the county, heads on the west side the Sig[nory] of Penreth;[10] on the East, at Anstable.[11]
The Barony of Englewood W.
of Gilsland NW.
At Warwick Brig the Barony of Linstock . }
At Carlile Brig the Barony of Liddal. } North
On the south the Barony of Dalston by Cauda F[lu].[12]
On the west the Barony of Burgh Bound.
From Allardale Barony by the river Wampul.
Then:
Of Allerdale by the sea twixt
Copland by the sea twix
Grastock by Pettterell.

Of these in order and in every one:
1. The ancient demesnes, but afterwards chang'd, as in the proper places.
2. How many lordships held of it, all which are conteined in parishes.
In the parish of {?} Or I may follow the Lordships as Dugdale doth, without medling with parish in general.

[I.748]

Notes for The Preface to Westm'land and Cumberland!

{Method: relate to both Westm'land & Cumberland}
The relation I have to these 2 sister Countyes (being of Westmorland, by the father's side, & of Cumberland, by the mother's and grandmother's) ~~and obliged to both for a~~ \ and the paternal estate of my ancestors / ~~liberall Maintenance out of the ancient estates~~ \ being in both Countyes, obliegeth me / ~~Counytes of my ancestors which lyes in Both Countyes~~) \ to have an equal concerne for them both. / ~~of them has made me have an equal Concerne for the Honour of them~~, and the Importunity of Sir William Dugdal, and som other friends, who thought me more fit for this undertakeing than I did my selfe, has prevaled with me to make some Collections in order to the discovery of them. ~~And being related to most of the familyes in either County, they need not be a feard but to have justice don them so far as I can infor[m] my selfe~~ in which I purpose to follow this method.

To speake of them both in General and therein shew,
1. Their site and bounds.
2. The comodityes they [blank]
3. Their inhabitants from the Brittaines till of late dayes: \ Romanes, Saxons, Scots ut agunt saltem Norman[13] / of the Brittaines and their works, The Romans and theirs, the Saxons and theirs, with the Normans & theirs. Their rest. Kings. Success[ion] & armes of Kings}

(CCL, 6A. 9.7) and was consulted during this transcription of Machell's collections. I thank the Dean and Chapter for permitting me to use this volume (Ed.).
[8] Anthony Munday, *A Briefe Chronicle of the Successe of the Times from the Creation of the Worlde to this Instant* (1611).
[9] John Stow (c.1525-1605), *The chronicles of England from Brute unto this present yeare of Christ. 1580. Collected by Iohn Stow citizen of London* (London, 1580).
[10] The Lordship of Penrith.
[11] Although Anstable (Ainstable) is to the east of the Eden, the settlement is nowhere near the river itself; the settlements of Kirkoswald and Armathwaite lie closer to the River Eden, in the same vicinity.
[12] The river Caldew.
[13] 'As at any rate the Normans [have it].'

(They had 4 collonyes[14] in the bottom of Westm'land: Sc. Brough Apleby Kirkbythore Browham but 2 in Kendall: A[m]b[le]side & Watercrooke, lately discovered.)
{Both are said to have had their Kings or rather one King to have had them both} {for Ralf Meschens had them both.}[15]
The Public Buildings &c. – as the Roman way which goes through both Countyes. The Maiden way which does the like. And the Picts Wall which joins[16] them together.

Of Eden, which waters both but springs in th'one and ends in the other. This, and Cumberland where the river runs may be calld the Garden of Eden,[17] notwithstanding Mr Fuller's joake, who never sees the place he w[r]itt of and following the account which Speed and Camden gave of the place pleasantly said it had much of Eden, but little of Paradise.}[18]

Tis England in Epit[ome]} haveing all those things that she so much boasts of in great abundance. Anglia Ma[i]us [19]– penes fon[te]s[20] – (See Math. Paris. 1. Henry Hano Gemeticensis,[21] Hector Boethius[22] Ib. 12. Cap. 10). Abund[ant] peat coale, lead, blew stone or black pearle.

Westm'land was Westm'land then.[23]

---

[14] Sites of Roman colonies.
[15] Before 1092, Cumberland, Allerdale and Westmorland belonged to the diocese of Glasgow and appear to have been ruled as one. When the Scots were dispossessed by the Normans in 1092, the acquisition contained all the areas excluded by Domesday Book six years earlier. Around 1098, the Norman, Ranulf Meschin (d. c.1129), earl of Chester and lord of Carlisle, had begun to govern the region from either Carlisle or Appleby. As Lord of Carlisle, his grant of land included the Barony of Westmorland. Through marriage, he was also said to have held the Barony of Kendal. Ranulf Meschin had wide powers over Cumberland and Westmorland under the king. He surrendered his role in 1121-22, and from then until 1133 Cumberland and Westmorland were run by minor local officials answerable to the Exchequer (pipe roll, 1129-30). See *CFH*, 225; see also, Richard S. Ferguson, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1894), 74-76; see also Charles Phythian-Adams, 'From Peoples to Regional Societies: The Problem of Early Medieval Cumbrian Identities', *CW3,* 11 (2011), 51-64, at 55.
[16] MS: 'Jones'.
[17] The page contains another similar passage: MS: 'Being for the most part one continued vaile down which Eden runs and only divided by the said river \ which so impregnates the Bankes thereof, / that these 2 Countyes \ and Emote & Blenkerne, which run into it / if all were like them, might well be called the Gardine of Eden': See Camden's account in *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), I.760-62 and I.776-81.
[18] Thomas Fuller wrote an early dictionary of national biography: *The history of the worthies of England who for parts and learning have been eminent in the several counties: together with an historical narrative of the native commodities and rarities in each county, endeavoured by Thomas Fuller* (1662). In Vol. 3 of *Worthies* (ed. P.A. Nuttall, 1840, 301) he remarked of Westmorland, 'Though this county be sterile by general rule, it is fruitfull by some few exceptions, having some pleasant vales, though such ware be too fine to have much measure thereof; insomuch that back-friends to this County will say, that though Westmoreland hath much of *Eden* (running clean through it), yet hath little of *Delight* therein'. Towards the end of his thoughts on Westmorland, Fuller addressed the reader: 'Reader, I must confess myself sorry and ashamed that I cannot do more right to the natives of this County, so far distanced North that I never had yet the opportunity to behold it. Oh, that I had received some intelligence from my worthy friend Dr Thomas Barlow, provost of Queen's College in Oxford, who for his religion and learning is an especial ornament of Westmoreland.' (Nuttall, 311). That commentators of previous times had failed to visit all or any of the county, annoyed Machell greatly. For more on Barlow, see Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.639.
[19] 'A greater place than England.'
[20] 'So likewise, my sources.'
[21] Guilelmus Gemeticensis, 11th/12th century.
[22] Hector Boethius or Boece (or Boyce or Boise) c.1465-1536, Scottish philosopher and historian, was the first principal of King's College in Aberdeen. In 1527 he wrote the *Historia Gentis Scotorum* (History of the Scottish People). See N. Royan, 'Boece (Boethius), Hector, historian and college head'. *ODNB*.
[23] As written. Machell's arguments relating to the meaning and spelling of the name of 'Westmorland' form a large portion of his Preface, see below, 'Ten draft passages relating to the name 'Westmorland', the county's fertility, and perceived inaccuracies in the writings of previous historians.'

The[y] have the same seminary of religion & learneing – Queens College in Oxford, of which hath bin many \ great & / learned men; found by Mr R.E., a Cumberland Gent. \ Chaplain to K. Ed. 3. / but whose preferment was in Westm'land at Brough under Stanemore the impropriation of which he procured for the 1^{t} endowment of his College or Hall (as twas then called). Ordained Deacon at Ap[pleby] in Westm'land, Ordained priest at Carlile in Cumberland. And so he ordained his College for both & for them alone \ and those of his blood / so long as their schooll shall be able to send such schollars up thither as are qualified for it in the founders sense.[24]
The Greatest part of them under one Bishop who has one [palace] at Buly in the County of Westm'land & another at Rose in the County of West[25] both ancient Castles.[26]

[I.749]

{?} Both held by Cornage or Border service[27], till of late it was in an other Tenure, which they call [blank] by Act of Parliament – & were liable to wardship &c. This Cornage was an Honourable service under one Lord Lieutenant, {to which drengage is opposed} & joyned together in the militia, both Horse & Foote.

2. In Particular of each of these Countyes and therein
    1. Of their division into severall Baronyes.
    2. Of those Baronyes, \ & in which diocess / into severall Hundreds or Wards.[28]
    3. Of those into several parishes.
    4. Of those parishes, into several Lordships, Constablewicks, Villages and Hamlets.

With what is remarquable in Nature or Art in any one of them; refering it to the proper place whereunto it belongs with its distance & beareing \ together / with an History \ an account / of places persons & things according to the Order of Time. And at the Last (where they may be had) the Pedigree of the Proprietors, and owners of the respective \ Lordships / <u>places</u>, which may be continued by their posterity in after aiges.
But in this they differ:
Several Assises – Justices – several ways of Assessments. This by a booke of Purvey;[29] that by a Booke [of] Rates.

{<u>They afford</u>:}
{<u>Birds</u> – Egle or Vulters Hawkes, no phesants – wild ducks cormorants doterals – ospreys – speckled raven, Herinseas.
<u>Beastes</u> – otters marts wilde cats.
<u>Fishes</u> – salmon oysters cockles \ golden trout / Gray Trout muscles Eales large chars.
<u>Stones</u>
plaster of paris marble
gagates[30] or jet
common plaster
limestone frestone
slate – blewwhi[t]e
wad – Black
lead – Rudoker[31]

[24] '"Hall of the Queen's Scholars at Oxford" was founded in 1341 by Robert de Eglesfield, a chaplain in the household of Queen Philippa, who named it in her honour': see queens.ox.ac.uk.
[25] A slip of Machell's pen: Rose Castle is in Cumberland and was well-known to Machell as the bishop's residence; not only did he visit regularly, but also he worked on its architecture.
[26] Buly: Beaulieu or Bewley Castle near Bolton in Westmorland, was an episcopal manor of the Abbey of Carlisle, possibly named to commemorate the abbacy of Hugh of Beaulieu Abbey in Hampshire, who, in 1219, was enthroned as Bishop of Carlisle. Henry Summerson, 'Hugh [Hugh of Beaulieu] (d. 1223)'. *ODNB*.
[27] For Cornage and other such terms, see the English Glossary.
[28] Hundred: see the English Glossary.
[29] The Cumberland Purvey was an ancient local tax: see note from Daniel Fleming, *N&B1*.13.
[30] 'Gagates': Obsolete term for jet. *OED*.
[31] Rud oker = a red variety of ochre. *OED*.

pearles
Minerals
sulphur
lead copper silver
Onely money scarce: much out little in.
& Shrubs Trees Herbs Maidenhair Juniper Holly Ewe Bayes – Lignum vitæ.}

[I.42A][32]

Queries in order to the description of *BRITANNIA*[33]

1. Of the County in generall.
2. The severall Hundreds, Parishes, Villages and Hamlets.
3. Peculiars or Priviledg'd places.
4. Citties, Towns, Corporations, Market-Towns & Fair-Towns. \ Manner-houses. Sundial. /
5. Houses of Nobility & Gentry.
6. Castles, Churches, Chappells, Monasteries, Hospitalls, Schools, Colledges.
7. Mills, Beacons, Bridges, Mountaines.
8. Chaces, Forrests, Woods, Groves, Parks, Commons, Warrens, Heaths. 4. 5.
9. Valleys, Dales, Rivers, Brooks, Meres, Ponds. 7.
10. Places where Battles have been, Lodges in Forrests &c. \ 4. 5./
11. Works and mines of Salt, Lead, Tin, Iron, Coal, Lime, Alabaster, Marble, Freestone, Grindstone, Mill-stone, Silver, Gold, Copper. \ 4. 5./
12. Waters, Springs & Baths, Cold or Hot, Medicinall, Bituminous, Petrifying &c. \ 4. 5./ \ a spae near Barton /
13. Praecincts or Dioceses \ 1. 2. /
14. What part of the Country is arable, Pasture, Meadow \ 1. 2./
15. Roman Ways & Stations, Coyns & Monuments &c. \ 1. 2. 4. 5./
16. Accidents, Calamities or Casualties &c. \ 4. 5./
17. Improvements in Husbandry, Housewifery \ 1. /
18. Peculiar Customs or manners of the Country \ Yeule, Curne, Hag, down a stang. It is not for myne own fau[l]t &c. /
19. Places of Birth, Education or Habitation of Eminent Persons in all ages. \ 4. 5./ \ Se Fuller's *Worthyes*; Gilpin.[34] /

Of these or any of them, information is desired in writing, either upon certaine knowledge or other good authority, directing each remark to the number relating to it, & annexing thereto the Country & Hundred wherein the remark falls.[35]

[I.3]

[ANCIENT HISTORY]

[B.] Part the 1[t] of the Preface

Of the Ancient Inhabitants of England: the Britaines
and of the Brigantes in particular who inhabited the northern parts

[32] Notes, some written in another hand.
[33] In 1673 the scientist Robert Hooke joined with the publisher and cartographer John Ogilby, the surveyor Gregory King, the lawyer John Hoskins, the architect Christopher Wren, and the antiquary John Aubrey to create some 'Queries in order to the description of Britannia': a new scheme projected by Ogilby, the Cosmographer Royal. These were the first fact-finding documents to be directed at individuals in the British regions. Thomas Machell sent out these questionnaires when planning his research. More elaborate than their predecessors, they were the first to specify the study of antiquities, history and geography at parish level. See Editor's Introduction, 'Machell's Methods. 1. Questionnaires.'
[34] Nuttall (ed.), Fuller's *Worthies*, Vol. 3, contains information on, 1. Bernard Gilpin (see 'Writers', 307-08); and 2. Richard Gilpin (see 'Memorable Persons', 310-11).
[35] Machell refers here to his questionnaire, which was based on these queries.

Of the Rom[ans]

1. Their coming into England.
2. Their progress & spreading over the Nation.
3. Their severall divisions of the Iland.
4. Under which division the Northern partes and particularly Westm'land. By whome – and how Governed. A catalougue of the Roman Emperours under whome Britan was, together with their lieutennants. Their names, and particular notise of what they did against the Brigantes.
5. Their departure out of the land with the fortress they made - & herin of the 2 great walls. Hadrian & Severus.

[Machell's Notes: I.3]

{pro genealogia}

{Will[iel]mus […] genuitque
|
Bonifacium e quo natus
|
Gulielmus qui duxit Sibillam filiam Balvini quæ ei filium peperit unicum nomine […]
|
Gulielmus qui sine liberis obijt. Sine prole exti[n]ctus
|
Reinerus post mortem eius duxit filiam hæredemque Emanuelis quæ peperit
|
Bonifacium qui e filia […] suscepit
|
Bonifacium qui e Beatrice filia […] genuit
|
Johannem qui talia præstitit ex hoc natus Willielmus qui duxit Johannam unde natus […]}
|
Isabell quæ nupsit[36]

Memorandum to insert a Catalogue of the British Kings out of Speed.[37]

[I.4]

Note. Lett these notes following be reduced into a compendious relation.
{1} 1. Of the Britans the ancient inhabitants of \ this / Iland.
{!} 2. Of the Romanes, with their Emperours Consuls & lieutennants or praetors that had to doe in this Kingdome and what happened remarkeable conserning any of them in these Northern parts.
{!} 3. Of the Saxons the originall, comeing in, progress, Kings in these parts, extirpation &c. therein of the Danish incurtions.
4. On the Normans, the original arrival Conquest, from whence a more particular relation*.
(a) And allso from the affinity which he has observ'd to be, betwixt the language & customs of the ancient Gauls, and those of the Britanns, who are yett in being and possess that part which wee now calle Wales, from the Latin word Wallia, which is derived from Galia; & signifyes as much as the Country of the Gauls.

[36] 'As a Genealogy. Will[iel]mus [...] and fathered Bonifacius from whom was born Gulielmus who married Sibilla daughter of Balvinus who bore to him an only son named Gulielmus who died without children. Deceased without issue. Reinerus after his death married the daughter and heir of Emanuel who bore Bonifacius who from his daughter […] acknowledged Bonifacius, who from Beatrice daughter of […] fathered John who upheld this state of affairs. From him was born Willielmus who married Johanna whence was born [...]. Isabell who married [...].' Some of this text is obscured by the binding; some has been left blank by Machell.
[37] John Speed (1551/2-1629), English cartographer and historian, belonged to a circle which included members of the original Society of Antiquaries and scholars such as William Camden and Robert Cotton. As all were involved in the methodological study of the history of the British people and institutions, they were able to help Speed in his research. Through Robert Cotton, Speed developed an interest in coins, and was responsible for those described in Camden's *Britannia*. His best-known work includes the *Historie of Great Britaine* (1611, augmented 1623), with its accompanying atlas volume, *The Theatre of the Empire of Great Britaine.* See Sarah Bendall, 'Speed, John, historian and cartographer.' *ODNB*.

For Brith, in We[l]sh, doth properly signify that which is painted; whence the word Brit (of which Brito a Britann) may be easily drawn by casting away the asperate only†. And as the inhabitants had The name of Britanns upon this occasion; so the Iland itselfe tooke it[s] denomination (of Britann) from them; and was calld Britannia by the Greek Geographers, from adding ταvι/α: a particle much in use amongst them, whereby they express a nation or Country to the word Britton. Brit.[38]
(b) And of this usage we have diverse examples:
His adde Capitania et Occitania;[39] et Isac Causabon[40] (in *epistolas a Joh. Georgio Gravio editas*; epistola 101, p. 118) dicit tamen nullibi Regionem significare aliquando autem ponitur (ut inquit ille) pro terra singula vel ora per Strabonem et alios depravate, unde figmenti huius et somnij origo.[41]

[Machell's Notes: I.4]
*Se it somewhat compendious pag. 14 hujius.[42]
†This may give us som insight into the occasion of calling the northern Brittans, Picts, because perhaps peteneing[43] their custom of painting themselves after the others had left it of & were civilized & conforming to the Romans; they might from thence be called Picti in opposition to for distinction's sake from}[44]

[I.5][45]

Of the Britans
Of the inhabitants ancient [46]

{Brit. 1[t] inhab.}
The first inhabitants of this place ~~together~~ (with the rest of this Iland) were the Brittans, concerning whose original neither could Caesar nor they themselves give an account,[47] & so much ancienter are they than att \ any / History. But the judiciouse & learned Camden derives them[48] from the next neighbouring nations \ Sc. from / the Gauls, who were formerly called Gomari & Gomerot[49] from Gomerus the eldest son of Japhet*;[50] and he confirmes it, from the Britons calleing them selves (Kumero) & Kumeri, & their women Kumeraes, and \ the / very language which they yett speake Kumeraec, whence these later words (whereby we express the people and nation) Camber and Cambria have their original. And this conjecture is more than probable if we believe (as ~~many~~ \ som / writers affirme) (a.) that ~~England~~ \ Britann / was once joyned

[38] MS: \ '~~to the / vulgar name~~ a particle much in use amongst them, whereby they express a nation or Country ~~to the vulgar name~~ to the word Britton. Brit.'
[39] Occitania is an historical and cultural region in Western and Southern Europe where the Romance language, Occitan, was historically spoken and where it is occasionally used as a second language. *OED*.
[40] Isaac Casaubon (1559-1614), born in Geneva of Hugenot parents, was a professor of Greek (among other subjects) at Geneva and Montpelier universities. In 1598, Henri IV of France invited him to Paris 'pour la profession des bonnes Lettres', but, as a Protestant, his involvement in formal religious debate made his position at the French Catholic court uncomfortable, and in 1610 he accepted an invitation from Richard Bancroft, archbishop of Canterbury, to base himself in England. His correspondence was extensive, some of it controversial. His collection of letters ('epistles') was published posthumously in 1709. See J. Considine, 'Casaubon, Isaac, classical scholar and ecclesiastical historian'. *ODNB*.
[41] 'To these add Capitania and Occitania; and Isac Causabon (in letters published by John George Gravius, letter 101, p.118) says however that ταvι/α sometimes signifies no particular region but is wrongly used (as he says) for an individual land or coast by Strabo and others, whence the origin of this figment and illusion.' John George Graevius (1632-1703) was a German classical writer and critic. At the University of Utrecht he occupied, first, the chair of rhetoric and, from 1667 until his death, that of history and politics. William III of England made him Historiographer Royal. As well as writing admired books on the classics, he also edited many of the writings of contemporary scholars. The *Oratio funebris* by P. Burmann (1703) contains a list of his works. See *Encyclopædia Britannica* (1911) Vol. 12, G. Graaff Reinet – Gräfrath.
[42] 'Of this [chapter]'.
[43] Pertaining [to].
[44] Foxing prevents clear reading of text after this point, but very similar text appears on I.5.
[45] Also numbered p.1.
[46] MS: 'Of the inhabitants ancient (~~and modern and of the present Customs & Constitutions of this Country~~).'
[47] MS: 'the Brittans, concerning whose original neither ~~their~~ \ could / Caesar, nor they themselves knew anything att all \ ~~could~~ give an account… /'
[48] MS: 'But the judiciouse & learned Camden ~~will have them to hav taken their original~~ \ derives them' /
[49] MS: 'Gomery\ot'.
[50] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 10-11.

to the Continent by a little \ isthmus or / neck of land, and was ~~only~~ a peninsula. But then as we ~~allwaye~~s see, that people and ~~Nations~~ \ Countryes / which do aggree in one \ som / general name, have other particular ~~names~~ \ names of their own / peculiar to them selves \ alone / whereby they are ~~distinguished~~ \ known / from ~~their~~ \ other / neighbouring Nations so tis not unlikely that these Cimbri or Cumeri, which inhabited \ here within / this Iland were caled Brittanns for distinction sake, the name being taken from their frequent custome of painting their bodyes, for which they are noted by those excellent authors, Caesar Mela & Pliny†.

{Britan whence so called}
The Ile had the name Britan\n/ia \ query Britania / from Greek impos[it]ion, ~~with whome it was usual to~~ for the Greeks were wont in nameing of nations to add the particle Βριτανι/α signifying a country, as Mauretania, Lussitania, Aquitania, & I think they were the first that called it Βρετανι/α, for which ~~the~~ […][51] is writt \ corruptly / Βρεταννι/α. But Caesar and Lucretius – the first Latin authors that take notise of it, \ doe write it / Britannia ~~we calld it Britan~~. And the Germans allso have a custome \ amongst them / not much unlike this, who add the word landt to the names of Countryes as \ may appear from / this very Iland, which the Germain Saxons did first calle Englandt, and this very County, which they called Westmorlandt \ & Cumberlant / (with many other places that I could mention) if it were needful.'

{It[s] Ancient Division}
Concerneing the division of Government of this land and people of old, it is not so exactly knowne as might be wished: for Caesar himselfe makes so little mention of it, that upon his account little credit is given unto Florus when he make Livie say (*Epit. Livij,* li. l50)[52] that Caesar, having slane a great multitude of Britanns reliquam insule partem

[Machell's Notes: I.5 & I.6]
*unde forsa comrade [whence perhaps comrade]. And allso from the affinity with &c.
†{Britannos se Glasto[s] (et Glast etiam nu[nc] apud illos caeruleum significat) depingere iste legitat.}[53]
[I.6]
If Horace was not before Caesar's time or Conquest he was but borne about 12 years before Caesar made his expedition into Brit[ain]: Sc. Natus Anno Mundi 3901/ Britannia a Caesare – Subacta A.M. 3912.[54]
Wee have many Roman Inscriptions found about Yorke with the name Eboracum on them. I doubt it? q[uery]?

[51] Scored-through illegible text follows.
[52] [The reference is to Florus, *Epit. Liv. XLV*.16-19]: 'Omnibus terra marique peragratis respexit Oceanum et, quasi hic Romanis orbis non sufficeret, alterum cogitavit. Classe igitur conparata Britanniam transit mira celeritate; quippe qui tertia vigilia cum Morinorum solvisset a portu, minus quam medio die insulam ingressus est. Plena erant tumultu hostico litora, et trepidantia ad conspectum rei novae carpenta volitabant. Itaque trepidatio pro victoria fuit. Arma et obsides accepit a trepidis, et ulterius isset, nisi inprobam classem naufragio castigasset Oceanus. Reversus igitur in Galliam, classe maiore auctisque copiis in eundem rursus Oceanum eosdemque rursus Britannos. Caledonas secutus in silvas unum quoque e regibus Casuellanum in vincla dedit. Contentus his (non enim provinciae, sed nomini studebatur) cum maiore quam prius praeda revectus est, ipso quoque Oceano tranquillo magis et propitio, quasi inparem ei se fateretur.' 'Having penetrated everywhere by land and sea, he turned his gaze towards the ocean and, as if this world of ours sufficed not for the Romans, set his thoughts on another. He, therefore, collected a fleet and crossed over to Britain with wonderful speed; for starting from the harbour of the Morini at the third watch he disembarked upon the island before midday. The shores were crowded with a confused throng of the enemy, and their chariots were hurrying to and fro in panic at the strange sight before their eyes. This panic was as good as victory for Caesar, who received arms and hostages from his frightened foes and would have advanced further if the ocean had not taken vengeance on his presumptuous fleet by wrecking it. He, therefore, returned to Gaul and then, with a larger fleet and increased forces, made another attempt against the same ocean and the same Britons. Having pursued them into the Caledonian forests, he made one of their kings, Casuellanus, a prisoner. Content with these achievements (for he sought a reputation rather than a province) he returned with greater spoil than before, the very ocean showing itself more calm and propitious, as though it confessed itself unequal to opposing him.'
[53] 'The Britons describe themselves as Glast[i] (and among them even now Glast means blue)', see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637). 26.5cm of heavily scored-through text follows: it has not been transcribed.
[54] 'That is, born in AM 3901, Britain being conquered by Caesar AM 3912.'

[I.7][55]

in potestatem subegit:[56] and many take occasion to adhere rather unto the poet than Historian, who ~~tells us that~~ gives the Epethite of Intacti[57] to the Britains, as tho they had not been touched by the Roman Intactus aut Britannus ut descenderet / sacra catenatus via.[58] {*Epod*. 7 V. 4.}

{Caesars Towers}
Notwithstanding we have several places in this island, and particularly in Westm'land, which bear Caesars name: But all the Emperours stileing themselves Caesars, they might borrow that denomination from any other as well as hee. But tho wee have not very particular accounts of the state {& affars} of our Nation, before his time; yett we finde here were Kings in severall parts (when the Romaines came first into these our territories) : 'who made \ a / noble ~~resistance~~ \ & vigorous defence / against their ~~Romans~~ \ ~~armies~~ incursions, /~~ one whereof was the famous Caratacas~~, but the cause of their universal overthrow ~~was~~ \ is / said to be this: that they could not aggre amongst themselves & and so att lenth became a prey to the Common Enemy. Yett so great was their courage that \ they / held them in play about one hundred and 36 years.

{Their names are these}
We have not \ I confess / the particular names of each of their Kings. But the Limits and Bounds of most of their Kingdomes which had their names from their inhabitants, are prety well dyscovered in Camden & Speed,[59] to whome I shal refer the further inquisitive, minding only to concern myself att present with the Brigants, who were the 1st inhabitants of this part of Britann, which now is called Westm'land; for they had in their territories, Yorkshire, Lancashire, and the Bishoprick of Durham, with Westm'land and Cumberland; In briefe; all that part which we now call the North of England, excepting North-Humberland which was in those dayes of the Kingdom of Ottadini[60] \ whose Regia Oppida or / principle seat was at Bremantium, thought now to be Ridsdall or Rebchester.

{Brigantes chief seat York}
But as to the Metropolis or chief Towne of the ~~Brigantes~~ Brigantine Kingdome; it is thought to be Yorke, which Ptolomie (in lib. *Magnae Constitutionis* 2[do]) from them calls Brigantium; ~~But~~ \ only / Mr Camden suspects the Booke not to be his: B114.[61]

{Gallagum in Westm'land, Whelp Castle; q[uery] for authority; see Speeds maps.}[62]
However the matter be, it cannot be doubted that Gallagum now Kirkbythore was a principle Towne in this part of their Kingdome, haveing so many camps & fortes.[63] And I am of opinion that the Romaines (who having as yett made no further progress in their \ Northern / Conquest kept their

---

[55] Also numbered p.2.
[56] '… brought the remaining part of the island under his control.'
[57] 'Untouched'.
[58] 'Or that the unconquered Briton might descend the Via Sacra in chains': Horace, *Epodes* 7, line 4. The context is Horace's outcry against the threat of civil war. He contrasts this with legitimate, honourable wars against uncivilised foreigners like the Britons, addressing his fellow countrymen: 'Villains, where are you rushing to? Why are your hands / Grasping those swords that were sheathed? Hasn't enough Roman blood been shed over / The fields, and Neptune's waves? / Yet not so that Rome could burn the proud towers / Of an envious Carthage, Nor that the as-yet-unconquered Britons, might descend / The Via Sacra in chains.'
[59] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 37, 41, 43-44, 48-53, 111-27; see also Speed, *Historie*, Book 6, 43-185.
[60] There follows a scored-through, illegible word.
[61] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 701: 'Eboracum … which Ptolemee in the second booke of his *Great Contruction* called Brigantium (if the said booke bee not corrupted).'
[62] John Speed, *Theatrum Imperii Magnae Britanniae: The theatre of the empire of Great Britaine presenting an exact geography of the kingdomes of England, Scotland, Ireland, and the iles adioyning: with the shires, hundreds, cities and shire-townes, within ye kingdome of England, divided and described by Iohn Speed* (London, 1611/12).
[63] MS: 'It cannot ~~yett~~ \ be / doubted that \ Gallagum now Kirkbythore was a / principle Towne in this part of their Kingdome, ~~was Callatum, \ Gallagum / otherwise Callatum \ Gallatum /afterwards Whealop Castle, and now Kirkbythore~~ \ haveing so many camps & fortes… /'

Station att Appleby) cast up that Great Camp on Speedy-Moor in Crakenthorpe Lordship[64] against this Gallatum; for the Campe

[I.9][65]

lyes at ~~halfe~~ \ but / a mile's distance from Kirkbythore by the high way side confronting the Towne but ~~I shall~~ \ in this / submit to better judgments.

{Note of the Brig[antes]}
The Brigantes were a numerous and most valiant people apud meliores notae authores imprimis celebrati[66] and their name is ~~Consonant and~~ agreeable to their natures for it implies as much as Hardy, Bold, Fierce and Cruell, as Mr Camden has ~~ingeniously~~ \ well / observed. Britanni enim nostri (sayes he) si quos pravo ingenio et audacius grassatos viderint, wharret Brigans ie Briga[n]tem agere dicunt. Gallique hodie ex prisca ut videtur Galloru[m] lingua eiusdem farinae {Whence so-called} homines Brigand, et naves praedatorias Brigantines, vocitant. An vero ea vis fuerit verbi olim in Gallia vel Britannica lingua, vel nostri Brigantes eiusmodi fuerunt non ausim affirmare. Si tamen non male memini Brigantes Alpinum populum grassatores, vocat Strabo, & Julius Belga, Juvenis projectae audaciae (cui vis authoritas et virtus nomen videbatur) Briganticus apud Tacitum cognominatur. etc. ie reddatur A[n]glic[e].[67]

{A people in the time of Ant. Pius}
For which sort of vice (if it may be \ so / called ~~one~~) (hoc enim nullam ignominiam habuit Bellicosa illa civitate, cum jus in viribus omnes gentes haberent)[68] our ancient Brigantes, ~~were very~~ seem'd not ~~very~~ far ~~distant~~ \ remote when they preyd so much upon their neighbours, and made incursions in Genouniam (Romanorum in Britannia provinciam)[69] which Camden takes to be Guineth in Wales because it layes \ situate / bounded within the \ borders & / confines of Brigantia:[70] In punishment of which\ attempts / Antoninus Pius tooke no small part of their country from them as Pausanius relates

> ɘΑπετε/μετο η] 0Αντωνι=νοφ ο(Ευ0σεβηφ και∴ τω~ν ε0ν Βριττανι/α Βριγα/ντων τη∴ν πολλη/ν, ο/9τι ε0πεσβαι/νειν και∴ ου[(~τοι συ∴ν τοι~φ ο/9πλοιφ η0/ρχαν τη∴ν Γενουνι/αν μοι~ραν υ(πεκο/ουφ Ρομαι/ων.[71]

[64] Speedy Moor is a field in Appleby St Michael parish, known also as Langespedy; spēd ēg: 'rich water meadow'. Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 102.
[65] Also numbered p.3.
[66] 'especially celebrated among the better critical authorities.'
[67] 'For if our Britons (sayes he) see people of aggressive character, brazenly swaggering around, they say 'he's playing the Brigans' i.e. acting the Brigant. And the Gauls today, from the former language of the Gauls, as it seems, habitually call men of the same character Brigand and pirate ships Brigantines. Whether there really was that meaning of the word once in Gaul or in the British language, or whether our Britons were of that sort, I would not venture to state. If, however I rightly remember, Strabo calls the Alpine Brigantes robbers, & Julius, a Belgian, a conspicuously reckless youth (to whom power, authority and valour seemed mere names) is called Briganticus in Tacitus etc. i.e. let it be rendered in English.' See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 685-86.
[68] '(for this held no shame in that warlike state, since all peoples considered right [to lie] in might)'.
[69] 'into Genounia (a Roman province in Britain)'.
[70] Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 659-60.
[71] Pausanias VIII.43.4: 'Antoninus Pius, indeed, expropriated also most of the lands of the Brigantes in Britain, because these people began to enter with arms into the Genounian district subject to the Romans.' Machell's version of Pausanius VIII.43.4, copies Camden's: 'Antoninus Pius cut the Brigantes in Britain short of a great deal of their Country, because they began to take armes and in hostile manner to invade Genunia, a Region subject to the Romans' (Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland,1637, 686) but the veracity of the original Greek text has been challenged: 'A much disputed and somewhat obscure passage in Pausanias appears to refer to a serious disturbance among the Brigantes, for he says that Antoninus deprived them of part of their territory after they had launched an attack on 'the Genounian district'. There is good reason to think that Pausanias might have confused the British Brigantes with the Brigantes of Raetia and their neighbours the Genauni, but other evidence that something fairly serious had happened in the Pennines at this time suggests that Pausanias really was reporting an incident in Britain, and had merely made a mistake about the name of the people attacked.' Peter Salway, *The Oxford Illustrated History of Roman Britain* (Oxford, 1993), 148.

Whence we may collect that they were not quite dispossessed of their Country even in the time of Antoninus Pius, which was [blank] year after the Romaines gott footing in Brittain*. Before I had acquainted my selfe well with the historie of these former times; alltho I had \ red / that Caesar subdued the whole Iland of Brites as has bin said ~~before~~,[72] yett I could not imagin that to be true: for it seemed strange ~~to mee~~, that he landing first in the Southern parts, should pass ~~unto~~ \ into / the North, without some years labour haveing to doe with such a hardy & warlike people especially these Brigantes, who I supposed were able to make[73] some resistance against the Romaine ~~Armies~~; and therefor I did conclude with my selfe, that the Conquest must needs

[Machell's notes: I.9]

*See Camden's preface to Yorkshire: It is all very good and pertinent to this purpose.[74]

[I.11][75]

\ proceed by degrees which / gradually I afterward found it to be for it seems that Caesar did rather, discover then subdue the Country*.[76] And that their were many Conflicts and ~~Bloody~~ Battles before it was subject to the Romaine yoake. For the people were so averse to subjection, that they hated their \ very / owne native kings if \ at / any time they chanced to ~~compound~~ \ capitulate / with the Romains ~~armes~~ & not fight it out; as appeares from that instance of Cardanus whome the Romaines (haveing conquered the nearest part of the Island) reinstated and made King thereof; ~~who~~ \ He / was faithful to and much respected of them; but disestemed and hated of his countrymen, as a pusilanimous prince and betrayer of their \ countrys / libertyes. But tho some of the British Kings were easily prevailed upon (after some Batles lost) to yeald to the Romaines, and ~~resume~~\ hand / their Crownes & septers to them ~~att their hands~~, \ from them / yett some ~~were more~~ \ on the contrary / were every whit as obstinate.

{Noble Caractacus}

And in particular that noble Caratacus: King of the Silures who ~~waged~~ wared against them ~~for severall years~~ \ 9 years together, / but att last (with his whole family) was taken, ~~captive~~ or rather ~~indeed~~ given up captive to the Romaine forces by ~~perfidious~~ Cartismandua. And so was carryed in Tryumph to ~~their Imperial City~~ \ Rome. / Concerning whome Mr Camden tells us out of Zonoras how he reproved the Romaine avirice \ coveteousness / in these words \ following: / Cum Romae (says he) splendorem et amplitudinem captivus perlustrasset itane (inquit) Cum hæc et hujusmodi habeatis; nostra Tuguriola concupiscitis? {Camd. de Cardiganshire *ad princip*}‡.[77]

He is reported to have \ kept / the field & held out against the Romans, with his Silures & Ordovises only, when the Icenias Cangij & Brigantes[78] began to faint and give over (so Mr Speed unadvisedly tells us) ~~how be it~~.[79] \ And that he was betrayed by faithless Cartismandua, Queen of the Brigantes; how be it in the next section he ~~tells us~~ declares how Venutius that famous King of the Brigantes and husband to Cartismandua who betrayed brave Caractacus unto the Romanes ~~after~~ he haveing ~~put him~~ \ comited / himselfe ~~the wife~~ to her protection) \ his Brigantes / give Battle to the Romaines ~~with his Brigantes~~, with whom she joyned her selfe against her husband, in which Battle they gott the victory he […] she the shame. – Whence it appears that the Brigantes were in armes after Caratacus was taken prisoner, for it is not likely, that he would seeke for protection from the Queen, after she had side with

[72] Speed, *Historie*, Book 2, Chapter 6.
[73] A scored-through illegible word follows.
[74] Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 689-70.
[75] Also numbered p.4.
[76] MS: 'for it seems that Caesar did rather, discover ~~the Country~~ then subdue ~~it to the Romans~~ \ the Country / Iland.'
[77] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 657: 'What mean you (saith he) when yee have these and such like stately buildings of your owne, to covet our small cottages.' Also quoted in Camden, *Remaines concerning Britaine* (London, 1637, 1st edn, 1605), 232, and attributed to Zonaras: 'Why doe you so greedily desire our poore cottages, when as you have such stately and magnificent palaces?'
[78] For the Iceni, Cangi, Brigantes and other British tribes see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), from 43.
[79] Speed, *Historie*, Book 6, 34.

the common enemy, aganst her husband and Country.[80] Hence it appears that the Romaines did not perfectly overflow this nation; nor \ did / the Romanes obtaine

[I.13][81]

their Conquest with dry blowes (as wee say) over the Brit.[82] In all probability this Country or Nation of the Brigants was one of the last which \ held / out against them, being out of ~~subjection~~ \ their power / till Claudius his reigne, who came in person to \ assist & / relieve his Lieutennant Plautius ~~by name~~ \ then / all most ~~vanquished~~ \ overcome / with the British valour.' A margin comment here gives, '{Bri\n/g. in Claud. His Reigne Plautius.}

[Machell's notes: I.11-I.18]

*Ut Tacitus.
†his perfidious w[ife], who took part with them against her owne husband, the famous Vinutius, King of Brigantia.
‡(Carry on the story of him. Se libet è Speed vol 2. C6. §)[83]
[I.12]
{Gallatum} Why not from Galgacus? Because the Brigantes were seems to me before the Calidonii & therefore it seems to have bin in subjection to the Roman yoake, before his time; being a noted town in Brigantia.
Of the Brittish Manner:
Incampenis Building Burying Coyneing
Claudius and Plautius
[I.14-18] {Domitian} {Claudius}{Vespasian} {Severus}[84]

[I.13]

{Galgacus}
But the last resistance that was made against them, as being the furthest bounds of their Conquest; was by Galgacus, a worthy and most valiant prince of the Calidonians who for virtue, and Birth, \ was justly / preferrd before any other in that part of the Iland; upon which account he was made Generall against the Invasion of Julius Agricola.

{Agricola Subdues all to the Frith}[85]
~~From all which it appears~~, but being overthrowne the Romaines possessed them selves of these parts, ~~of the Iland~~ \ as far as the frith / or att least the \ best & richest part / of it, suffering the Britanes to inhabit the mountains, but themselves the planes or ~~what~~ \ as much / they pleased of them – and are therefore to be reckond as the next Ancient Inhabitants of this part of Brit.

[I.15]

Of the British Characters[86]

In Bishop Usher's Collection of Letters p.55; in a letter writ to him from Dr Langbaine the learned Provost of Queens College in Oxford, wee have this account – which \ I / have subjoined – of the British Character; which was taken out of a Manuscript Booke belonging to St Dunstans, writ by one Memnings or Memnius, but is supposed to be a mixture 'twix Irish and Saxon, & the Britans indeed to have no* rudiments.
*But if so, query: how the Druids & Bardes become so learned, as they are reported.
T.M. answer: They are said to have taught somthings by heart, which were held unlawfull to be put in writeing: & for other things to have used the Greek Character, whereby their skill was hid from the vulgar sort of people. Speed p.168. Col. 1.

[80] Machell gave this paragraph a border and crossed it through, a device (seen throughout the volumes) to erase drafts when he had finished them elsewhere.
[81] Also numbered p.5.
[82] 3 lines of heavily scored-through text follow, partly repeating the previous passage.
[83] Scored-through text on the lower third of this page has not been transcribed.
[84] These headings relate to text which appears elsewhere. I.16-18 comprises rough pencilled notes; two pages have been scored through. The first page (16) is the reverse of a page of notes on Ussher (15); dated 1686, it contains quotations as part of Machell's personal notes relating to philosophy, Christianity and preaching. On the other pages are notes for material discussed on I.3, 5, 9, 10, 21, 24, 28, 34, 39, 41, 45, 46, 48, 50, 51.
[85] Frith = Forth.
[86] British typographical symbols.
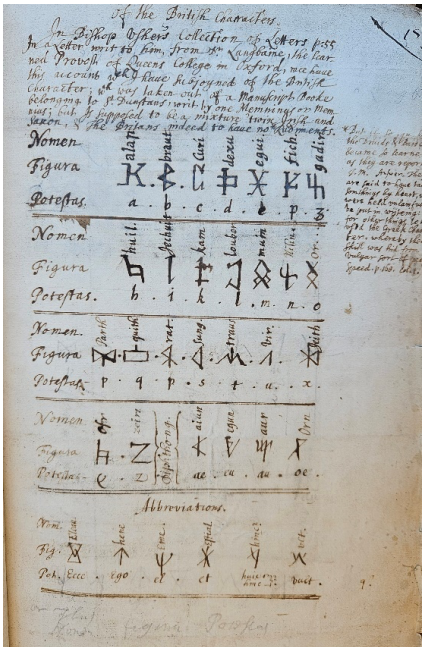


Figure 1. 'Of the British Characters'. I.15.

[I.13]

Of the Romans

The Romans had their name from Rome the famous City from whence they came, and that was so called from Romulus, the son of Mars & Rhea Syl\via / of Trojan extraction; but to lett those things pass \ Tho som will have it / {See my Hildebrand}[87] they haveing conquered most part of the world, came into Britan under the conduct of (c.) Julius Caesar Anno Ante C. N. ~~be~~ 54. which according to […][88] and the Cronolog[ie] must be Anno Mund. 3909, for Our Saviour was b\orne / An~~no~~ 3963, out of which 54 being ~~subtracted~~ \ deducted, / there remaines 3909, which must be the year of his arrival; howbeit, we have not any \ very exact & faithfull / accompt {concerning the mat[ter]} for ~~some~~ \ others / will have it \ ~~to have happened in~~ / in 3917. But ~~it is not much material~~ \ the matters not great / their being noe more than 8 years difference \ in these computations. /

The first time ~~that~~ he came~~, being woryed with a bitter fight~~ (says Eutropius)[89] acerba pugna fatigatus, et adversa Tempestate correptus nihil fere prestitit; He did little or nothing Anno autem insequente (Camden goes on) immo vero, majori classe, et Auctis Copijs redijt, et Cassibellino nostro multis detrimentis fracto, partem aliquam insule in deditionem ~~red~~ accepit, obsides imperavit, quid in annis singulis Romanis funderetur constituit, reversus est ad mare calendas septembris. ad VI calendas octob~~ris~~ solvit et exercitum in Gallias reportavit.[90]

[87] Friedrich Hildebrand, *Antiquitates Romanae: in compendium contractae, et juxta ordinem alphabeti dispositae, bono juventutis* (3rd edn, Oxford, 1673).
[88] An illegible letter is interlineated here.
[89] Eutropius (fl. 363-87 AD), *Breviarium Historiae Romanae*, VI.17: 'Britannis mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum ne nomen quidem Romanorum cognitum erat, eosque victos obsidibus acceptis stipendarios fecit' (translated as) 'Then he made war on the Britons, to whom not even the name of the Romans was previously known, and after subduing them and receiving hostages he made them tributary.'
[90] 'Exhausted by bitter fighting, and overtaken by stormy weather, he achieved almost nothing (he did little or nothing). But in the following year (Camden goes on) on the contrary, he returned with a greater fleet, and with increased forces, and when our Cassibellinus was broken by many losses, he received the surrender of a certain part of the island, took hostages, decreed what should be produced for the Romans on an annual basis, returned to the sea on September 1, set sail on 16 October and conveyed his army back to Gaul.' [Continues I.19].

[I.19][91]

Sed haec fuse persequitur ipse Caesar - lib[er] 4 Ep[isto]la[rum] ad Atticum Ep[isto]la 14.[92]
Veruntamen aliorum Judicio Britannos tantum prospera pugna terruit vel ut Lucanus cecinit Qui Caesar[um] familiae iniquior Territa quaesitis ostendit Terga Britannis.[93]

However it was, we are satisfied ~~out of~~ è (Dion. *Lib. 42*)[94] that for 20 years after Caesars arrival this Iland of ours had not only her Kings, but used her owne Laws, without any praefects. But they being emulous one of an other ~~and every one desireing to be~~ \ and striving together who should be Greatest, were ready to fight ~~upon every occasion~~ among themselves upon all sleight occasions. / And this (says Tacitus) was the cause, which brought that puissant nation into Bonndage \ subjection, / and was the only help to the Romans \ in obteining / the victories. {The whole process I thinke you may have in Speed 2nd Vol. Cap. 5. §.1. & 3. Ita est} for seldome it chanced ~~saith he~~ that 2 or 3 states met in Counsell \ and agreed / together, ~~and concurred~~ in one opinion to repulse the Common Enemy; so that \ fighting severally they were all over come / Dum singuli pugnabant universi vincebantur.[95]

{Domitian}
But this was not don att once (~~because Caesar)~~ \ & as it wer of a suddan / for they held the Romaines back \ from Caesar's arrivall / till the days of Domitian with so much valour, that \ but / subduing some smale part of this Iland was accounted (by themselves) to match the conquest of other Great Nations. But after they had by ~~degrees~~ \ little by little / obteined the Conquest of most of this Island, they made division thereof into 2 parts, the One called Britannia Superior (or proximior) the other caled Britannia Inferior (sive remotior).[96] Britannia Superior was the more southerly part of England together with Wales, & in it were 2 Legions ~~which I take \ to / amount to 12000 \ men~~. / Legio 2da Augusta, at Caerleon in South Wales, and Legio Vicissima Victrix att Chester ~~in Cheshire~~ \ in the west.' Britannia Inferior was the northern part, and in it was seated One Legion only, Legio Victrix 6^{a} which resided att Yorke. But under Claudius the emperour (who came to the assistance of Plautius his lieuttenant) there were 2 other legions (beside those named) plac'd in this Island, viz. Legio IX Hispaniensis, & Legio XIIII Gemina Martia Victrix; yea even in the time of Vespatian the Emperour \ there / were no less than 4 Legions \ in it / so that the Romaines had once in ~~England~~ \ Britan / 5 Legions of Soljers, chosen men, which I take to be \ about / 30 thousand in a modest ~~computation~~ \ account, / reckoning onely 6 thousand in every Legion ~~the~~ \ whereas / some \ doe / compute 6666 \ some 6826. / This division ~~of their Conquest~~ into these 2 parts was made as it seems by Severus the Emperour*, who haveing vanquish'd

[Machell's Notes: I.19]
*N. Tis said on the following page to be don by Const[antine]. Ergo consider.
Constantinus; Julius Agricola.
{Division of Britain

[91] Also numbered p.6.
[92] 'But Caesar himself followed this up extensively: Book 4 of Cicero's *Letters to Atticus*, Letter 14, "To Atticus, on a journey from Cumae, May 54 B.C. Pray, if by chance you have any news, principally from my brother Quintus, next from Caesar, and, finally, anything about the elections or about politics ... write and tell me about them."'
[93] 'Notwithstanding, in the judgement of others he merely terrified the Britons by a lucky victory, or as Lucan, who was hostile to the family of the Caesars, wrote: "He turned his back in terror on the Britons he'd gone to attack."' See Lucan, *Bellum Civile* II.572: Pompey's speech to his men, deriding Caesar: [quod] 'territa quaesitis ostendit terga Britannis?' ['Shall Caesar overthrow the senate? ... No, Fortune does not act so blindly... Have ten years vainly fighting Gallic rebels ... emboldened him? Or the fact that he turned his back in terror on the Britons he'd gone to attack?'] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 35-38.
[94] Dio Cassius, *Historia Romana*, 40. 4.1-2: 'Thus Caesar departed entirely from the island and left no body of troops behind in it; for he believed that such a force would be in danger while passing the winter in a foreign land and that it might be inadvisable for him to remain away from Gaul for any considerable period; hence he was satisfied with his present achievements, in the fear that if he reached out for more, he might be deprived even of these.'
[95] 'While they fought separately they were conquered all together', Tacitus, *Agricola* XII.
[96] 'Proximore': 'nearer'. 'Sive remotior': 'or further'.

Superior Inferior
Et Prox. Et Rem}
Higher Brit.
II. AVG.
XX. VIC.[97]
VI. VIC.
IX. HISP.
XIV.GEM[98]
Cohortes in qualibet legione X erant; et haec armatos minim. pedites habebat 6100. Equites 726. Hildeb. centurione.[99] According to this there are 6826 men in a Legion so that in England there were 30440 men of […] armes,[100] & select soljers – for of such men their legions were made.

[I.21][101]

Albinus, General of the Brit. and reduced the State under his obedience, divided the Government into these 2 provinces* placeing a praefect (i.e. a lieutennat \ generall / or Chiefe \ ~~Comander~~ / Governour over either of them (puto praefectum praetorio) quod vide†.[102] Whence it will appear that this Iland being become provinciall, was not under the same Government that other nations were; being neither Consulary, nor Proconsulary but praesidial, and govern'd by Caesars. And it is to be noted that the first men who made it a province (I mean that part which the Romans conquered for they were never ~~had it all~~ \ masters of all / was Julius Agricola (Domitian then being Emperour ~~att Rome~~) and that was 130 years after they first gott footing in Brittane.[103] He was the first also who saling about it[104]with his ~~Romane~~ fleet, discovered the Country to be an Iland.[105] And this may suffice concerning the first division according to which That place ~~of part was now called Westmerland~~ \ I treat of / (~~and concerning which I am to discourse~~) came under the 2nd partition \ denomination / being placed in Britannia Inferiori in Lower Britann, and under the ~~subjection~~ \ constraint protection / of the Legio 6th Victrix: the 6th conquering Legion‡.

{LEG. VI. VICTRIX}
{2 Division – 2, 3.}[106] It was after divided into three parts or provinces, whose limits Mr Camden endeavours to gather from the praecincts or bounds of the Archepiscopall Sees, building \ himselfe upon / the authority of Pope Lucius; according to whome the ecclesiastical jurisdictions of Xtans is said to accord with the praecincts or libertyes of the Rom[an] magistrates, Archbishops resideing att those very places, where the presidents ~~aboad~~ \ livd. / And those with us were in Carleon, \ in the west; / London, \ in the east; / & Yorke, in the south.[107] howbeit ~~computation~~ \ the Archbishop's see is

[97] XX Victrix.
[98] XIV Gemina.
[99] 'The cohorts in any legion were ten; and this [legion] had under arms at least 6100 infantrymen, 726 cavalry.' Friedrich Hildebrand, *Antiquitates Romanae: in compendium contractae, et juxta ordinem alphabeti dispositae, bono juventutis* (1st edn, 1647).
[100] An indistinct word appears between 'of' and 'armes'.
[101] I.20 contains headings for notes written up elsewhere.
[102] '(I think a praetorian prefect) see this'.
[103] For the provenance of this paragraph see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 62.
[104] MS: 'He was \ 3 / allso the \ 1 / first \ 2 / who saling about it': Machell corrected his word order using numerals.
[105] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 61.
[106] A note, partly obscured by the binding.
[107] Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637) says: 'After this, the Romans did set out the Province of Britaine into three parts, as is to be seen out of a manuscript of Sextus Rufus: namely, into Maxima Caesariensis, Britannia Prima, et Britannia Secunda. Which, as I take it, I have found out by the Bishops and their antient Diocesses**.** Lucius the Pope, in Gratian, insinuateth this much, that the Ecclesiasticall Jurisdictions of the Christians followed the Jurisdictions of the Roman Magistrates, and that Archbishops had their Seas in those cities wherein the Romane Presidents in times past made their abode. The Cities and places (saith he) in which Primats ought to sit and rule, were appointed not by the Moderne, but long before the comming of Christ, to the Primats of which cities &c. the Gentils also appealed in matters of greater importance. And in those verie cities after Christs comming, the Apostles and their Successors placed Patriarks or Primats, unto whom the affaires of the Bishops and greater causes ought to be referred. Whereas, therefore, Britaine had in old time three Archbishops,

now translated from / London ~~is now translated~~ to Canterbury. According to this account \ London / is where The place of residence ~~of that~~ \ assigned to The / President who was sete over Britannia prima⸸.

{Divisions 3,4,5.}
In after times, because of the Presidents growing great and \ Countryes / popular, they divided it agane into 5 parts, adding 2 more (Valentia & Flavia); \ 2 to / the 3 former. The bounds Mr Speed being about to describe (by I know not what faite) forgetts one of them.

[Machell's Notes: 1.21]

*{ad 1ᵗ. Divisionem. The division is said before to be made by Severus Imperator Constantinus.}
†{Se Speed} To which I shall add out of Mr Camden (for these things praemised may be of some use to the understanding of coynes ~~& ancient~~ & inscriptions \ hereafter /) that Cum novam Reip[ublican] firmam descripsisset Constantinus, sub praefecto praetorio, Galliarum vicarius praefici\e/batur, et cum Illo in Rebus bellicis comes Britanniarum, Comes litoris Saxonici, per Britanniam et Dux Britanniarum praeter praesides, Rationales.[108]
‡Memorandum vide which of the Emp. were 1ᵗ &c. in order.
⸸ II. Carleon, to him whose concernes were ~~to manage~~ in Brit. 2dᶜᵉ; and [III] Yorke to him who had the Governor of Britannia Maxima Cæsariensens, under which partition, Westm'land (however then called) \ & Cumberland / are supposed to bee. And these seem to have their distinction from the order of time in which they were conquered. T.M.[109]

[I.22]

Maxima Caesariensis and Valentia were governd by Consuls ~~onely~~, the other thre[e] by presidents; for tis observable at the decay of the Empire that those provinces onely were governed by Consuls which lay exposed or opposite to the enemye, as is evident from the *Booke of provincial notises* not only in France but in Affrica allso, and with us Valentia and Maxima Caesariensis. Flavia Caesariensis was in the midle of this Kingdome and Camden & Giraldus Cambrenses, doe conjecture. Mr Camden (from whome Mr Speed takes his information as more exact) setting downe the limitts of all the 5 provinces after this manner:
BRITANNIA 1ª (sayes he) dicta fuit omnis regio australis quae hinc Mare Britannium, illinc Tamisim et Sabrianum fretum interjacet Secunda quae nunc Wallia. Flavia Cæsariensis à Tamisi ad Humbrum[110] porrecta fuit, Maxima Cæsariensis ab Humbro ad Tinam flu[men] sive Vallum Severi. Valentia a Tina ad Fossam[111] Juxta Edenburgum quam Scoti Gramesdike vocant ubi Rom. Imperii limes ultimus - p.54.[112]

[Machell's Notes: I.22]

{This may give som light to the inscription at Crawdundale, the Consuls there mentioned being not of Rome, but perhaps of Valentia & Britannia Caesariensis CRAWDVD}[113] {Query: CN. COTTO Coss} Concerning these 2 – &c. Severus his wall. See Speed p. 229.

---

to wit, of London, of Yorke, and Caerleon in South Wales, I suppose that the Province which now we call of Canterburie (for thither the Sea of London was translated) made Britannia Prima; Wales, under the Citie of Caer Leon, was Britannia Secunda; and the Province of York, which then reached unto the Limits or Borders, made Maxima Caesariensis.' The information Camden quotes here is derived from Gratian (a Benedictine monk from Bologna), *Concordantia Discordantium Canonum* ('The Concordance of Discordant Canons or Decretum'), a collection of canon law completed around 1140.

[108] 'When Constantine had firmly established the new Republic/State under a praetorian prefect, a deputy was put in charge of the Gauls, and with him for military matters a commander of the Saxon Shore throughout Britain and a general of the Britains except for garrisons [and] finances.' Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 76.

[109] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 155.

[110] This word is partly obscured by the binding but Camden supplies 'humbrum'.

[111] Camden writes 'vallum iuxta' here.

[112] 'All the south coast which of one side lieth between the British sea, and the river Thames with the Severn sea on the other side, was called Britannia Prima. Britannia Secunda was that which is now Wales. Flavia Caesariensis reacheth from Thames to Humber. Maxima Caesariensis from Humber to the river of Tine, or the wall of Severus. Valentia from Tine to the wall or rampier neere Edenburgh, which the Scotch call Gramesdike, and was the utmost limit of the Roman Empire in this Island, when this last division was in use.' Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 156.

[113] Initials partially blotted.

NB – Speed. 220. He quotes there (& gives his approbation to it) an author called Julius Capitolinus who affirms that Lollius the Legate[114] to Antoninus (circ. An. Xt 139) overcoming the Britannes, built another Turf Wall to divide the Province & impeach the Incursions of the Barbarians, which Mr Camden he sayeth thought himself to have been in an ancient chorographical chart, drawne between Carlile & the river Tine.[115]
T.M. But I suppose him to be mistaken: for the Turfe Wall is rather to be ascrib'd to him: & Mr Speed is of the same judgement – that betwixt Carlile & Tine being all of stone. Query: where Genovia is a province adjoyning to the Brig. The occasion of Lollius fighting the Brittans.
{? q. Then see Gramesdike.}[116]

[I.23][117]

Of them. Brit[annia]
1. Saye he &c. conteines those coasts which lay betwene Thamesis, the Severne & the British Sea.
2. Brit. Secunda extended from Severne unto the Irish Sea, conteineing the Country that wee now call Wales.
3. {Flavius Imp} Flavia Caesariensis was that which lay betwixt the rivers Humber and Tine.
& 4. {Valens Imp} Valentia extended from the said river and the Picts Wall ~~reached~~ unto the Rampiere near Edenburge \ frith which is / in Scotland, the farthest ~~part that~~ \ limit of / the Roman Empire ~~possessed when~~ \ at / this division ~~was in use~~.[118]

But tho he has omitted the other part which is the Maxima Caesariensis, yett tis easi to ~~collect~~ \ gather / that all the other being ~~particularly~~ \ thus / described, the residue of the Ro[man] Dominion, must make up this province. \ But Mr Camden from &c. a. / concerning those 2 that were added (Flavia Caesariensis, & Valentia) it is to be noted that the first seems to have taken it[s] name from Flavius the Emperour son of Theodosius, for wee read not of Flavia before his time:[119] the latter from the Emperor Valence, in whose time Theodosius the Generall recovered that \ of the Rom. forces / from the Picts and Scotts, which was called Maxima Caesariensis, compelling them agane to remove from the nearer Rampire (called the Picts Wall) to the ~~furthermost near~~ \ more remote one / and that was betwixt Clyd & Forth. Concerning which tho they be not in Westm'land \ or Cumberland / yett for as much as they were the ~~utmost~~ limits of the Romaine empire, and particularly (att some time or other) \ a part / of that province \ ~~Valentia~~ / where ~~of~~ to these Countrys (I am to treat of) ~~was a part~~ \ did somtime belong / allso because they are ~~very fine~~ \ noble / antiquities, I am resolved to speake ~~a few words~~ somewhat of them.

{A digression: Annotata praetenturas quae Scotos & Pictos a provincialibus distinguebant.}[120]
There ~~being~~ are 2 famous bulworkes or Rampiers in the northern parts of this Iland; which are oftentimes confounded together by ancient and modern writers. But the Best account which I meet with of them is from Mr Gordon, a Scotchman, in Blaeus *Theater* pag. 4 part 5,[121] calling the one, i.e. that further up in Scotland, Val Severii and this near in England Val. Hadriani.[122] Concerning this he[123] is of opinion that it be\gan / ~~sayed~~ to have bin made by Julius Agricola, who beat back the Picts and Scots, one whereof inhabited the Eastern and the other the West coasts of this Country, to beyond the Friths of Clyd & Forth where this rampire is made as a limit. That he did rather begin than perfect the worke, for Tacitus sayes indeed, ~~that~~ he strenthen'd the frontiers twixt Glotta & Bodotria (i.e.

[114] Quintus Lollius Urbicus was a Berber governor of Roman Britain from 139 to 142.
[115] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 157.
[116] See Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 156.
[117] Also numbered p.8.
[118] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 156.
[119] A crossed-through word follows.
[120] 'Note the ramparts which used to separate the Scots and Picts from the provincials.'
[121] Robert Gordon of Straloch (Scottish cartographer) contributed maps to Joan Blaeu's *Theatrum Orbis Terrarum, sive Atlas Novus* (1654); see C. Fleet, M. Wilkes, C.W.J. Withers, *Scotland: Mapping the Nation* (Edinburgh, 2011), Chap. 3.
[122] MS: '*b / Val. Hadriani, and this near in England *Val Severii.' The asterisks and letter 'b' were placed here because Machell wished to reverse his original ordering of the two walls. Following this sentence a castellated line is drawn across the page.
[123] I.e. Robert Gordon.

Clyd and Forth) with garrisons; but not one syllable of a trench or wall. Nor does it appear that it was finished in the time of Trajan.

Of Val. Hadriani
But wee read of

[I.25][124]

Hadrian who was next to him; That he made a famous fortification athwart the Ile, and that it was a tre[n]ch or bulworke like those of Castles, but of greater strength for duration ~~sake~~; with turrets here and there, where the Cohorts (who did not watch) might refresh themselves, and yett be in readiness against an assalt. as may be gathered from Spartianus.

{He did not build it}
Mr Camden contends that this was made in the same place where Severus afterwards builded his. But he brings these reasons against him:
1. That there is no place more narrow than this betwixt the 2 friths which might invite him to the undertakeing; & 2. that it is not imaginable that he would part with so large a Country as betwixt these 2 Rampires which just before his time was part of the Empire.
And to ~~infringe~~ \ invalidate / Mr Camdens reasons, he makes use of \ Mr Camdens / his owne Art (coating some examples out of Camdens \ his / workes) of changing numbers and sayes that for 80 miles it should be writ 30, as Mr Camden corrects Eutropius about Severus his trench, putting 80, for 35: and he adds more over that the names of Legions found thereabouts doe not signify much, because tis usuall with them to re-tane their names which they had given att first, notwithstanding the Imposers be long since dead.[125] He has allso a relation of this trench in Scotch (è Scheda Tim[othy] Pont),[126] which aggres so well with Pausanias his description ~~of Hadrian's Trench~~ concerning Hadrianus, that I thinke very fit to be here subjoyned (a).

The trace of this fortification &c.
(a.) This trench was walled and fortified by Gallio Ravennas (as is clear from Beda)[127] and the ruines thereof are yett to be seen ~~in~~ to Britonodunum, which Mr Gordon (if he had not bin old) would have traced, and probably given us a further account of*. But Lolius, his opinion concerning a trench or bulworke in the midst betwixt these two, must not be forgott; which the same author condemns as no way probable because there is no appearance of it ther, & the nature of the ground in that midle part is so horridly moutaneouse that it will not admitt of such a worke, ~~and beside~~ in so difficult a place; And besides he had but 2 Legions under him as stones of that age not long since digged up doe testify unto us. Viz. Legio 2 Augusta & Legio XX Valens Victrix. One of them found here has this Inscription

LEG II
AVG†

(b.) The other is to be seene in porticu Dunotrij and doth testify that Lolius Urbicus raised noe new wall or fortification but superstructed his worke[128] (which carrys the name of Antoninus the Emperour

[124] Also numbered p.9.
[125] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 790-91.
[126] '… from a sheet of paper of Timothy Pont.' Timothy Pont (Scottish cartographer and topographer) was the first to produce a detailed map of Scotland from an actual survey. His collection of manuscript maps was probably passed to Johanis Blaeu in the early 1630s. Before 1636, Robert Gordon of Straloch in Aberdeenshire began to work on the completion of Blaeu's Scottish coverage. Gordon prepared up to ten draft maps for inclusion in the Blaeu *Atlas*, using Pont's maps as virtually his sole source. J. Stone, 'Pont, Timothy (fl. 1574-1611), map maker and chorographer.' *ODNB*.
[127] The Venerable Bede.
[128] MS: '{Lolius built on the fortress or Hadrian he says} … Lolius Urbicus, raised noe new wall or fortification, ~~but built upon the old one of Hadrian the Emperour, which worke hereupon doth cary the name of Antonius the Emperour, because he was his Legate unto him~~ But superstructed his worke…'

whose Legate he was) upon the ancient fortress (or rampire) of Hadrian the Emperour and is a[s] followeth:[129]

[Machell's Notes: I.25]

*{But there is a third to my knowled[ge] – Sc. one within the Picts wall but not far distant from it, upon which sto[od] Drawdikes and the City of Carlile.}
†{How makes he this out from the Inscription.}
{Digres of the Picts Wall – see Speed p.219.}

[I.24][130]

Hadrians Dike

Fritharis* Brother of Fergusius, King of Scotland, was crowned with a crown of gold in form of a Rampier (Mondy p. 448). Donald circa Xt 211, their first Christian King, was the 1st that caused gold and silver to be coyned in his Realm, stamping a X on the one side and his face on the other: è Mondy's *Chronicle* 451.[131] In the time of Eugenius, son of Ferguse (Sc. circa 440 in marg[in]) the wall call'd Adians was undermined & overthrown, & the Brittaines made tributary to the Scots & Picts above 500 years after Julius Caesar had brought them in subjection to the Romaines in the 7 of Eugenius. 2. King of Scots,[132] p.447. He tells us of an ancient Prophesie, that the Scots should in the end destroy all the Pictish projeny, p.448.

The Scottish crown was made of gold in form of a Rampier for preservation of the Countries liberty till the dayes of Achaius King of Scotland circa An. Xti 819 {Anno 819} who confirming a perpetual League with Charlemigne Emperour and King of France to last forever betwene Scots & French added to the crown 4 floure de Lices with 4 crosslets divided in sunder with equal spaces, riseing somewhat higher than the foure de lices that thereby the observeing of Xtan religion & sincere faith (maintaned by the Scottish Nation) might be the more apparent to all that beheld it (p. 455). In his time allso had Hungus the Pictish King the vision of St Andrew and his X, as is reported, whereby St Andrew became Patrone both of the Scots & Picts.}[133]

De vestigia Hadriani haec sequentia habeo e sheda Timothy Pont, quae Quia Barbaris nominibus Conflant neque Leporem latinum patiuntur, descripsi sermone nobis vernaculo.[134]
pag. 4. Johanis Blaeu, *Theatri Orbis*, Part 5.[135]

> (a.) The trace of this fortification beginneth betwixt Albicorn and Queensferry besyd the Rampire & ditche with the ł grownds slott all along. It had many square fortifications in forme of a Roman Camp. It went west from Albircorn towards Kinneil, then to Inner-ewin: at Langtoun a myl be-east Falkirk a fort, att the rountree-burne head† a fort at Wester Cowdon above Helms Chapple one, att the Crayhill one, and at Cailly bee (that is the Dick wood over against the Crayhill) on the top of the Bar-hill a great one: And (such like) at Balchastle over against the Bar-hill (one) att Achindevy, att Kirkintillo, att East Caldar, at Hiltoun of Caldar, at Balmuydie, at Simmerstoun and ovir Kelvin river, at Car\r/stoun, at Achter-minnie, at the Roch-hill ovir against the Westerwood, at Bankir over against Castelcarry (&) at Dunbas.

[129] See I.24.
[130] Also numbered p.4.
[131] Anthony Munday, *A Briefe Chronicle of the Successe of the Times*.
[132] The name of the author/authority cited is obscured by the binding.
[133] Hungus is a Latinised form of Oengus (d.834?). The building of the church of Kilrymont (St Andrews in modern Fife) is attributed to him. The foundation legends name the founder as a Pictish king, (H)ungus, but it is impossible to be sure which king, Oengus I or II, the authors had in mind. See M. Anderson, 'Kings of the Picts c.300-c.900'. *ODNB*.
[134] 'Concerning traces of Hadrian, I have the following from a piece of paper of Timothy Pont, [but] because they are mixed up with barbarian names and do not allow smooth-sounding Latin I have written them in our vernacular speech.'
[135] Arguably the first modern atlas: *Theatrum Orbis Terrarum*: 'Theatre of the World', was produced by Abraham Ortelius in 1570; from the 1630s the Blaeu family issued their work under a similar title, *Theatrum orbis terrarum, sive, Atlas Novus*.

Hactenus Chartula illa, & multum ad huc ad Britannodunum superest, quarum rerum investigationem optarem, cum his mihi nunc aetas interdixerit … Inquit Gordonius.[136]

(b.)

IMP.CÆSARI.T. ÆL[137]
ANTONINO
AVG. P. PP. VEXILLATION
LEG.XX.VAL.VIC. F.P.M.
P. III

Haec inscriptio extat in porticu Dunotrij quae Comitis Marescalli arx est in provincia Mernia, et veritatem de Lolio Urbico testatur, Illum nimirum nullum novum' murum aut praetenturam excitasse sed suum opus quod Antoninum Imperat præfert Cujus ille erat Legatus, Veteri Hadriani praetenturæ super Struxisse ibidem p.4.[138]

[Machell's Notes: I.24]

*{Cir[ca] A.M. 365– 352 Ante Xt.}
†{Rowentre water head.}

[I.26]

Eugenius the 3rd of that name King of Scotland – son of Congal – was contemporary with King Arthur and in his time was the bloody Battaile betwene the Brittaines, Scots, and Picts: where above 20000 men were slane, with Mordred, King Arthur, and Gawan, brother to Mordred, and most part of the Brittish nobility. p.452 Mondy. Eugenius 6. son of Fequhard circa xti 697[139] reigned over Scotland 10 years. In whose time milke was turned into blood in diverse places of Pictland and cheese converted into a bloody mass or cake, p.454.
Mordaike nephew to Eugenius the 7. Anno 734. In his time (according to Venerable Beed) 4 several People[s] livd in peace & Quietness within the Bounds of Albion, though differing in Manners, Language, Lawes & Ordinances, Sc. Saxons (whom he calls English men) Brittaynes, Scots & Picts. & concludes his history with King Mordak's life p.454.

In \ Xti / 762 in the reigne of Ethfine son to Eugenius the 7th – who had 4 Governours under him: wee read that ~~the~~ Conrath the Thane of Murreyland was one. And (Ibid)
In \ Xti / 839 in the reigne of the famous and renowned King Kenneth the Pictish nation were utterly destroyed, the city of Camelon cast down, the Castle of Maidens forsaken by the Picts {? Maiden Castle} and none or very few left alive in Albion. In memory of this famous victory King Kenneth \ p.455 / brought the (Prophettick) marble stone out of Argile into Gourie and plac'd it a[t] Scone, near to the place where he prevailed aganist the Picts, p.456. The marble chair or seat of Gathelus on which the Kings of Scotland were Crown'd till Rob. I[t], haveing (as is said) such a fate thereto belonging that wherever it should be found, there should the Scotchmen reign. For upon it was this inscription. Ni fallat fatum, Scoti, quacunque locatum Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.[140]

---

[136] 'Thus far that document and much still survives regarding Britannodunum, of which matters I should desire some research, since age has now made this impossible for me, says Gordonius.'
[137] 'IMP[ERATORI] CAESARI T[ITO] AEL[IO] ADRIANO ANTONINO AUG[USTO] P[IO] P[ATRI] P[ATRIAE] VEXILLATION[ES] LEG[IONIS] XX VAL[ERIAE] VIC[TRICIS] F[ECERUNT] P[ER] M[ILIA] P[ASSUUM] 111': 'To the Emperor Caesar Titus Aelius Adrianus Antoninus Augustus Pius Father of the Fatherland. The standard-bearers of Legion XX Valeria Victrix built [this wall] for a length of 3 miles.'
[138] 'This inscription is to be found in the portico of Dunotrium, which is the capital of the Earl Marshall in the province of Mernia and testifies to the truth given by Lolius Urbicus, that he in fact constructed no new wall or defence but erected on top of the old wall of Hadrian, in the same place, his own work which he attributes to the Emperor Antoninus, whose legate he was.' Taken by Machell from the *Blaeu Atlas of Scotland* (*Theatrum Orbis Terrarum Sive Atlas Novus*, Vol. V.) compiled by Johannes Blaeu, containing 49 engraved maps and 154 pages of descriptive text (1654). Blaeu's description was well known For instance, it was used by William Stukeley in *An Account of a Roman Temple and Other Antiquities, Near Graham's Dike in Scotland* (1720), 9.
[139] 'Son of Ferchard', George Buchnan, *The History of Scotland* …, 138.
[140] If Fates go right, where'er this stone is found, The Scots shall monarchs of that realm be crowned': http://www.westminster-abbey.org/archive/visit-us/highlights/the-coronation-chair.

Except old sawes do faile,
And wizards wits be blinde,
The Scots in place must reighn,
Where they this stone shal find.[141]

{The *Cron. of Success of Times*, p.481 affirms that Madan* so[n] of Locrine by Guendolen, who was eldest son of Brute and King over the Britains Anno M[undi] 290, a man who used great Tyranny among his people and Builded Madan Caistre now called Dancaster.[142]

[Machell's Notes: I.26]
*Qu. If this can be he, being a S[cottish] King? rather [than] Romain, and that Ebranke, son of Me[m]pricius son of Madan[143] built Caerbrank i.e. York & Maidens.}[144]

[I.27][145]

Roman. The Picts Wall. Vall. Severi.
The other famous Rampier, ~~some part~~ the ruines wherof are yet to be seen in some parts of Northumberland and Cumberland haveing several names in severall places, as the Audiva w. the Roman waw, the Langwaw, the Picts waw, doth cutt the Iland twix Eden Bay[146] and [blank] near to Newcastle, many people plowing near the place doe breake all their harness and tacke with rubbish and stones which are reliques \ rubbish /\ of fortification. / It is [blank] in lenth and [blank] in Breth but \ not / supposed of so great antiquity as the former, for by the name it should be a worke of Severus the Emperour. But Mr Gordon declares himself of an other opinon. Tis confess'd (sayes he) that he or his sons built this most famous wall \ extending it selfe / betwixt Eden and Tine a great part wherof is yett to be seen. But I cannot understand how he should be induced to bestow so much ground upon his enymes whilst they were att war with him, the soyle being such as succeeding Emperours thought worth the recovering. And yett authors will have it to be his worke. If they had sayd that his sons disaggreing and hastening to Rome[147] for receiveing ~~of~~ the Empire, had compacted \ and agreed / with their enemyes and so built this wall, they had spoken that which is much more credible. So you have his opinion which seemeth ~~me to be~~ very pla\u/sible\ *. / He proceeds in the next place to give some reasons of the perpetuall feuds and incurtions of the Picts, grounded upon this former conjecture, after this manner.

[141] Often phrased as: 'Except old seers do feign and wizard wits be blind, the Scots in place must reign where they this stone shall find': traditional bardic rendering of the Latin above.
[142] Anthony Munday, *A Briefe Chronicle of the Successe of the Times*. See also, Raphael Holinshed, *Chronicles: The firste volume of the chronicles of England, Scotlande, and Irelande conteyning the description and chronicles of England, from the first inhabiting unto the conquest : the description and chronicles of Scotland, from the first original of the Scottes nation till the yeare of our Lorde 1571 : the description and chronicles of Yrelande, likewise from the first originall of that nation untill the yeare 1571,* Vol. 1, (London, 1577), 17.
[143] Holinshed's *Chronicles* describe this family thus: 'Mempricius the eldest sonne of Madan, began to raigne over the Britaynes in the yere of the world 2949. Hee continued not long in peace. For his brother Manlius upon an ambitious minde provoked the Britaynes to rebell against him, so that sore and deadly warre continued long betweene them. But finally, under colour of a treatie, Manlius was slaine by his brother Mempricius, so that then he lived in more tranquilitie and rest. Howbeit … he fell into slouth, and so into unlawfull lust of lecherie, and thereby into the hatred of his people, by forcing of their wives and daughters. And finally became so beastly, that he forsooke his lawfull wife and all his concubines, and fell into the abhominable sinne of Sodomy. And thus from one vice he fell into another, till he became odible to God and man, and at length, going on hunting, was lost of his people, and destroyed of wilde beastes, when he had raigned twentie yeares, leaving behinde him a noble yong sonne named Ebranke, begotten of his lawfull wife.' Holinshed, *Chronicles*, Vol. 1, 17.
[144] Alongside this margin comment is a small drawing of the Stone of Scone beneath a coronation chair.
[145] Also numbered p.10.
[146] Presumably Bowness-on-Solway, where the Eden joins the Solway Firth.
[147] MS: 'hainstining to Roome'.

{Hadrians Dike & Agricolas}
Tis certain (sayes he) that this fortification and new made boundarye, gave occasion ever after of contention, war & slaughter; for when the Scots, Picts, Attacots, Dicalidons, Verturions & Maeates, divided \ among them yett / in their severall Countryes but under the Government of 2 princes onely, this of the Picts and that of the Scots were first of all forced beyond ~~Clyd and Forth~~, Glotta & Bodotria, by the ~~force~~ \ power / of Agricola, the Scotts being dispossessed of their western Coast, & the Picts driven from the east ~~end~~. They being intent on every occasion of recovering their owne made great disturbance under severall Emperours, but were ever suppressed and kept beyond the Trench of Hadrian or Agricola (~~for~~ it bear[in]g both those names for the reasons above) untill Severus granted them as much as they could have wished but more indeed than they could have expected (he means all that territorye betwix the 2 Trenches), and tis like, if the Romans had conteined them selves afterwards within the Trench of Severus, they would not have had them their enemyes but neighbours. But after that Carausius (as good Historians informe us) in Dioclesians time who after \ wards / ~~this~~ established tyranny in the land, had translated their Bound[148] \ marshes / to Bodotria againe; and Valentinian being emperour, Theodosius the father

[Machell's Notes: I.27]
{*But for all this I found a stone in my traceing of the Picts wall inscribed to Hadrian}
Severus[149] seemeth to have fortifyed Hadrian's Trench, with [a] stone wall & to have cast sever[al] dike allso, as a marke of his conquest & the composition which the Caledonia[n]s then made with him. T.M.! See Speed p. 229 p. 7 and 6.8.9!!!!
{Nennius Britannicus qui vixit An. 620.}[150]

[I.29][151]
of Theodosius the Emperour, as Marcellinus witnesseth, had reduced all that space which layes twixt those Bulworks into the forme of a province called Valentia.

{Valentia}
The enmyes (lieveing nothing unattempted against the Romans whome they looked upon, a~~nd~~s as perfidious and Baise as breaking of covenant) did endeavour to regaine what they had thus lost of their owne proper right. But all invane, for \ lately / the Romaines, still bearing the sway, did constantly defend what they had obteined, as long as the Empire continued prosperous. And that Rampier which Agricola made at the first; (or rather according to his opinion began or marked out) remained \ their / Boundary allmost to the last &c. But when the Roman Empire began to decline and they called home their soljers to defend their dominions, which were not so remote, The Picts & Scots repossessed themselves of all they had formely lost \ quit under / the Romans, contracting themselves to within the limit of Severus, his trench. Nevertheless, their enimes, being used to slaughter, and growne familiar with war, did cruelly raige against the provincalls, making perpetuall incurtions \ upon them / till the ~~Time of of~~ the Saxons ware called in, and ended the controverse by takeing all from ~~them~~ both \ to themselves. /
{Haec de muro pictico sed exhibit relationem multo breviorem et elega[n]tiorem infra p.14 quam cum hac confer}[152]
But these are the reasons which he doth alledge (neglected utterly by other writers) ~~of the~~ of the wars and constant feuds twixt the Picts and Romans,[153] viz. their covetousness in transgressing those bounds which were sett by compact. But it is not impossible that the Romans beginning their Conquest in the south and so driveing it on further and further, must of necessity compell a great many into the northern part (all those who would not live under their subjection) where they being very numerous and haveing little good land except this Valentia which was so often fought for, were

[148] Borders.
[149] A sketch of a castellated line appears here.
[150] 'Nennius Britannicus who lived AD 620.'
[151] Also numbered p.11.
[152] 'This much concerning the Pictish wall but he gives a much briefer and more precise account below, p.14, which should be compared with this.'
[153] An illegible scored-through word follows here.

allmost compeled to endeavour an inlargement; and that together with the hatred they had to the Romans (the spoylers of their Country) might be a reason of those durable wars (for I take not the Picts to be anything but Brit. so called (a pingendo) by their enemyes* the Romans and that (may be) for distinction, when they be came mixed with the Irish, their confederates. But however, there is noe doub[t] to [be] made, that the Romanes, being perpetually infested by them, and being att peace with the more southerly people, drew most of their soljers into these parts \ Hereabouts, / and had more fights Hereabouts than elsewhere in the nation. So that although the \ chief / stations of the Romans were ~~south at Carleon &c~~ \ at Carleon London and Yorke /as has bin said –

[Machell's No tes: I.29 & 30]

*{vide hujus paginas15, §.3 & 4}[154]
Query if Vortiger was Duke of Cornwall.

[I.31][155]

yett they were drawne out in \ to / this part of the ~~nation~~ \ Iland / (as occasion was offered) even to the last: And [er]go wee may imagin that the Romaines \ soljers / resided more in these northern parts, having their stations att severall places, whereof Apleby was one {& K\ irbythore / for cert[ain] another.}

Watercrooke and Brouham, Broug un[de]r Stane. Plu[m]pton.
But tho they were in greater numbers here than any other part of the Iland, yett they did not quite depopulate the place and extinguish the Britans, but 'twas freq[uent] with them to be Indulgent and Civil \ unto / their captives and those whome they had conquered, insomuch that the Government ~~shoud~~ \ was / often be committed [to] those very Kings whome they had overcome, as is showne before. So that tis easily supposed that the inhabitants of this place were in those times a mix sort of people, except amongst the mountains (which the Britans noe doubt entirely possessed) they being unaggreable to the Roman constitution. From which places after the Roman departure they drew themselves downe ~~agane~~ into the plaines, inhabiting that which the Romanes had left. But after this they could not be att rest[156] by reason of the Picts and Scots; the former whereof by long seperation, had forgott all affinity, not to mention their natural disposition to prey[157] \ & rapine, / and the other were mere strangers \ unto them / called in from Ireland \ in defence of / the Picts, as is aggred upon by the best writers. And beside this they were the more Cruell because they had bin so long pinnd up in a barren corner, and were allso disgusted att the Britans them selves as well as Romans {concurrit – Camden p. 33 §1.}[158] for being conciderate, and submitting to their yoake, thereby incorporateing themselves into the Empire. And this barbarous people, did so much vex and molest ~~the~~ the Province's neighbours \ inhabitants / that \ they / were forced to send to ~~the~~ Rome \ from thence / ~~Romans for assistants~~ \ to give them assistance. / And Constantius coming over with a powerful Army, & setting them free (by repulsing the enemy from them into their old territories) was thereupon (being a Briton himself by the mother's side) made King of the Britans by a compact with them and that part an ende of the Roman title to this nation of ours after, which now returned to its liberty agane. But continued not long soe, for Constantius being slane by a treacherous Pict in whom he confided,[159] Lef[t] 3 sons behinde him. Constantius, Uter and Aurelius. Constantius the Eldest was a simple youth & of too \ facile / easye a nature, \ disposition, / whereupon he was putt in a monastery \ shut up / but the other 2 were very hopefull & of great ingenuity. But they being young, the Duke of Cornwall a rich and potent man toke upon him to setle the Government, and so called Constantius from his sel to the throne; but \ it was / ~~onely~~ to destroy him; for he hired

[Machell's Notes: I.31 & I.32]

Constantius. Arthur calls him Constantine 136 *cujus*

---

[154] 'From painting.' {'See on this page 15. §3 & 4.'}
[155] Also numbered p.12.
[156] An illegible scored-through word follows here.
[157] MS: 'pray'.
[158] For such events after the Romans' departure, see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 86-87 & 107-08 (quoting Gildas).
[159] A scored-through word beginning with 'm', follows.

Constantius Uterr Pendragon Arthur Aurelius}

[I.32]
Mem. Arthurs Bury. at Caerlile King Arthurs Seaste[160] at Edenbrough.

[I.33][161]
~~certane~~ \ some / Picts to put him to death, promising ~~great~~ them an ample reward; but when the murther was com[m]itted he tooke the Traytours & put them to death ~~instead of and ward~~ Hereupon the ~~traitors of the~~ Pictish \ nation / proclamd war against him; and the \ other / brothers for fear ~~of the like practise~~ \ he should practice the like upon them / fly into Britony.'

{Saxons called into England under Hengist}
Vortiger to suppres his enemyes (because he durst not confide in his Country men) called in the ~~German~~ Saxons \ ~~out of Germany~~ / a warlike and valiant people \ of Germany / promising them \ very / great rewards; \ for their assistance. / To be brief, they haisted hither under the conduct of Hengist, their General, & beating ~~the~~ \ back the warlike / Picts back, found kinde entertanement from Vortiger; But ~~they~~ made Ill use of it ~~his kindness~~, for they swarmed hither in such great multitudes (that ~~I may be short did~~) \ they / att last rooted him out of his Kingdome and made him fly to Walles \ for saifty. / In the mean \ time / the 2 \ royal / Brothers \ Uter and Aurelius / returnd; and first (falling upon \ foule / ~~him to punish~~ the murtherer of Constantius \ their brother /) they Burned him in his Castle; and after march\~~ing~~/ against the Saxons, & gave them an Over throw & take Octa the son of Hengist ~~&~~ \ whom they / putt him to death. But my history ~~carryes me no farther~~ \ reacheth no farther / save only ~~that it tell me how~~ \ to tell us that / under these brothers the Britons had space to breath a ~~little~~ \ while / and recover their strenth.

{Would not do it, whence a Proverb.}
We may suppose [er]go that they marched on northwards to roote out \ & / conquer the \ rest of his / enemyes, and therefore the rather, Because if stones may ~~be heard~~ \ have learnd to speake / where books are silent, there is an old Castle in the County of Westm'land ~~which Bears his name~~ not far from the head of the River Eden which bears his name {being called Pendraggon which it seeme he endeavoured to surround with the river}, and a proverb concerning it ~~taken notise of by all writers~~ \ observed by all authors which have writt of the place / and still in much use amongst \ the Country / ~~the~~ people, whence vaine attempts \ when any improbable / thing is attempted.'

Let Uter Pendragon doe what he can
{the river} Eden still will run where it ran.[162]

Occasiond by Uter's attempting to draw the river round about the Castle, which he found ~~was be~~ impossible.

{Arthur's Castle} {Round Table}
And att the other end of this County is a famous Bulworke of a round forme called King Arthurs Castle, and by some his Round Table from the figure of the fort. This may seem to have ~~the &~~ had it originall from Arthur son to Uter \ Pendraggon / who was the last of of the British Kings and obtened as we red 12 great Conquests \ noble victoryes / over the Saxons in 11 years \ space, / for tho historyes of credit be very silent

[160] Presumably, 'Seat'.
[161] Also numbered p.13.
[162] More usually remembered as: 'Eden will run where Eden ran'. See *N&B1*, 562.

[I.34]

yett it is not improbable that in the prosecution of his Conquests over them he might march thus far[163] and place this as a fort upon his frontiers (whether as a defence or for post by the highway or for […][164] Turnaments I dar not th[ink]) & near the water which parts the 2 countries of Westm'land and Cumberland. I must confess I have not red any thing of his being \ marching / further \ into the / north than some part of Lancashire; ~~but~~ nor \ of / Uter's marching any further than Yorke. But ~~such monuments as these do signify some thing~~, \ these silent witnesses may be of some credit / and we must be content ~~with the light their names give us till better evidence can be had~~ \ for want of better information & proofe with what they impart by signes unto us. /

However, it is not att all to be doubted that there were Brittanes in some part of the County of Westm'land on the mountanes called Cartmel Fells, noe less than 28 years after the coming of the Saxons.[165] And not far from this place wee have 2 little rivers amongst the mountaines which retaine British names unto this day. {Glenkrodden; Glenkwen} {And all Cumberland seemeth so called from the Cumbri or Brittanes: & therefore tis likely they possesed these parts \ were part of them / in King Arthur's time, who was their last King, \ of the Brittish race / after whose decease they presently ~~fell~~ presently ~~decayed~~, \ fell / and \ were / forced (I mean the generality of them) to fly into Wales, and lieve the best part of their native Country a prey to ~~the enemy~~ \ their enemyes / the \ English / Saxon concerning \ whome / I shall ~~to~~ speake in the next place.

Of the Romans & Brit. Finis

What I have supposed above is confirm'd to me in part by what I have met with since in Mr Speed concerneing King Arthur, who gives it out of Ninius {He chased Colgerne, Captain of the Saxons, from Northumberland to Yorke about Anno Dom. 516} – a particular account of those Batle[s] which he won against the pagan Saxon, viz.

1. At the mouth of the river Gleyne; 2, 3, 4, 5, upon the bankes of Douglass in the County of Lyneax; 6. upon the river Bassus; 7. in the wood Calidon; 8. near the Castle Cumnien; 9. in Wales at Cairolien; 10. at Trachenith or Rothwood upon the sea side; 11. upon an hill named Agnot Cather,[166] Cathergonien; xii. at Bath or Bather Hill, wher the Britaines gave the Saxons a very great over throw: Bede's *History Ang.* Lib. 1, cap. 16; è Speed \ *Cronolog*. / Vol. 1. p. 316.

So that tis clear his conquests extended further than this place, even into Scotland; & therefore tis more probable that this fortification might have him for its ~~author~~, & be called Arthur's Castle from that excellent King.[167]

[Machell's Notes: I.34]

The manner of the Romanes.

1. Coyneing.
2. Building.
3. Incamping.
4. Burying.

[I.35][168]

[Picts and Saxons]

When our 1[t] ancestours and before them the Picts kept their stations in this Iland, they spred them selves \ abroad / by little & little &, their offspring encreasing, extended their bounds, Both these people were first comprised ~~betwixt~~ \ within / the friths of Foth and Clyd, as in their naturall boundarye beyond which ~~both parts went~~ the Picts following the Eastern shore challenged Lowthian

[163] MS: '~~Yet who can tell, but in~~ Yett it is not improbable that in the prosecution of his Conquests over them / ~~proseeuteing these Conquests~~ he might march thus far.' An unclear interlineation occurs here, as follows: '\ tho his place of residence was [...]alfeton […] /'

[164] Two indistinct words appear here.

[165] MS: '... in some part of the ~~County of Westm'land~~ \ countries of this / on the mountanes called Cartmel Fell noe less than 28 [?] years after the coming of the Saxons.' The sentence has been much altered and is also obscured by the binding.

[166] There is an illegible erased word after 'named'.

[167] See I.34.

[168] Also numbered p.14.

with much on that side, for theirs. If you would know their Limit, they seem to have possessed (totum illud in quod pulsis illis nostri successêre) or all that in which ours sucseded after they were beaten out. But the Scots had to them selves the western Ocean opposite to Glotta.

{Julius Agricola}
Their first \ joynt / conflicts were with the Brittans, till Julius Agricola (with his Romane Armye) made an end of the controverse so that our Picts were throwne \ driven / back to betwix the 2 friths.

{Severus}
And thus their limit continued till the time of Severus; Into whose territoryes their being many inroads but noe settlement, destruction of the Country was the end of the war.

{Maximian; Dioclesian}
Severus did first change the Limit, and either he or his sions cast up a trench called after his name. But Carausius (under Diocles[ian]; and Maximian) did extend the fortifications and remouved the Bound to the Trench of Hadrian againe, which the following Roman Capt did constantly maintaine as long as they poss[ess]ed Britan. But ~~that~~ att the last it was translated againe to Severdike, because (the Romanes being gon) the former limit could \ not / keep in the enemyes of the Picts.

{Coming In of the Saxons} {Forsaken}
Then the Saxons were called, a remedy worse than the desease, for the trechery of these assotiates, brought more misery to the nation than the cruelty of their enemyes: for they, not being content to keep the cov[ena]nt \ to stand to their covenants, / challengd all to them selves, ~~nor will they~~ \ and would not / rule as the Romanes did; \ nor / or by a mild sort of vitorie ~~grow into~~ incorporate themselves with the conquered as the French did with the Galls and the Danes afterwards with their nephews (& kindred) ~~they~~ would not rest till \ the nation was cutt of[f] & till / they had depopulated & destroyd all the Country, that they might succeed in the empty \ forsaken / possesions. They invaded severall parts under severall captanes, but all aggred in depopulateing the Ile and making a New Kingdom. They who invaded the North (Haveing taken to themselves the name of Northumbrians) with a strong army led by 2 Captanes made the 2 Kingdoms of the Deiræ & Bernicæ; \ & / they took \ againe / from the Scotts & Picts whatsoever Severus had left them, ~~and~~ about which formerly was so great contention. They advanced their bounds to the 2 friths {Sc. 660} and could not be moved ~~there~~ thence by means (no not after they were Xans) till they were 1[t] weaken'd with civill war & after by the incursions of the Danes, and they being thus broken, the Scotts \ & Picts / att lenth came their owne againe and using their victorie with lenity, granting to the \ common / people their posessions, for the most part \ holding of them as / Lords of their Country which they have ~~defend~~ kept constant from the Danes & English to this very day […][169]

[Machell's Notes: I.35. I.37]
The §6. Cum primum majores nostri:[170] i.e. The Scots &c. pag. 6.
It gives us a more brief account \ & caus / of the matter in the following cap.[171], which is: De Origine Linguae Saxonicae apud nos:[172] A more compendiouse account of Scots & Picts.
2 great Trenches, Romain victories & coming of Saxons

[169] In the MS, three words have perished here. Added to them is the deleted phrase, 'looked amongst the common sort to this very day.'
[170] 'When first our ancestors'.
[171] 'Chapter'.
[172] 'Concerning the origin of the Saxon language among us.'

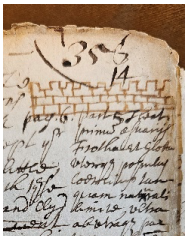


Figure 2. Sketch of the Picts' Wall. I.35.

[I.36]

{So he says, sed contusis et fractis Saxonum opibis nostri pictique in sua Rediere &c.}[173]
This Conq[est] (he speaks of) must be since <u>the time of</u> Beda, for He tells us of One Osuerin, who brough[t] a great part of the Picts' Kingdom in subjection to the English: Anno 660. He tells us allso that Idamus King of the Scots, had an unfortunate battle ~~against~~ with the Northumbrians, from whence there were none afterwards that durst contend with them for those provinces they had won. For what he relates after the coming of the Saxons, he referrs you to Beda, out of whome sayes he much may be gather[ed] to confirme this truth, alltho this change hapned above 600 years after his time.

<u>{The Picts Wall: when, why? And by whome</u>.}
It seems to me a naturall process, that as they made their advances & Conq[uests], so they should make their pretenturæ[174] for secureing of them – which makes me suppose (what others may write or fancy to the contrary) – that the Dike by Carlisle was 1ˡ made – then that in Scotland – and at the time of the Roman recess than the Romans were possessed of the other as far; yett they thought fitt to reinforce and strenthen this latter; as soone as don to lieve the front – unto the Picts – ratio – the stone which has built it twixt Bowness an[d] Brough fetchd out of Scotland which they could not do, unless masters there, or at least in friendship.*

[Machell's Notes: 1.36]

*quod Iniquun. T.M.
X he sayes in the other paper that it was rather attempted or begun than finished by Agricola.[175]

[I.37][176]

<u>{Eulog. Saxonor'</u>}
§2. Their praise v. vol. 2, pag. 178, col. 1, §2.
When the props of the Roman Empire began to faile, the Saxons for their valour a 2ᵈ tryumphant nation, began, as it were where the Romans left. For besides the continuall possesion of their Owne Country (out of which they could never be beaten) as unpartial Tacitus doth tell us; their Legions were transported into all parts of the world, and without them allmost noe vict[ory] was won. Of whose power & prowesse in the expedition of war both Dionysius, Arrianus & Seneca doe speake. To these then likewise if the Britons gave place, the Conquest was bought att as dear a rate as any part of the world beside. Neither was Britain subdued by either of these nations, or their policye or government changed, but with an unwilling subjection and great loss of \ blood / enough to make a mightier nation faint and give over.

<u>{Pic[t]s driven into the Nor[th]</u>}
§3. Tacitus sayeth that Agricola drove the Roman enemyes (to mean the obstinate & untractable Britons) into the Northern parts, as it were into an other Iland. They sent forth an army against him of

[173] 'When Saxon forces were beaten and broken, our men and the Picts returned to their own places.'
[174] 'defence'.
[175] An 'X' usually signifies that Machell (or other unknown individuals) later judged this information to be in error.
[176] Also numbered p.15.

30000 and made such resistance against Severus that in one expedition he lost 70000 of his Roman sold[iers]. 181, col.1.

{Picts why so called & whence descended}
§4. The Picts language Manner & Government was the same with the Britons & never had the name of Picts till excluded from their fellow Britans by the Roman Conquest. And those whome they \ had / reduced into provinces had possibly left of that custome of painting them selves, being civilised ~~by~~ \ & confirmd to / the Romans. And they were knowne by no other name than that of Britannes to ancient writers. Nor was Commodus, Severus, Bastianus, Geta upon their victories over these northern inhabitants called Pictish but British Conquerours, which showes the name Pict to be of later imposition, and used only for distinction sake. & Bishop Wilfride in the Convocation before King Osway of Northumberland (concerning the Celebration of Easter) calls Britans Picts: see vol. 2, p.331, lin.1: Speed in Fuller.

§5. The Cæsars landing was upon a plane & open shore, thought to be Deale. 184. He landed att the same place \ or / near \ it the / year following setting out from Callis[177] and encountered the Britans 12 mile inland at the River Stower. {He had but Cityes that submitted to him.}

§6. The Britanns insteed of money used rings of Iron & plates of Brass which passed currant as Cæsar.[178] {Ref[erence] Cuneboline was the first that stamped his image upon m[oney] in Britain.}
[I.38][179]

[Roman Consuls and Leaders in Britain]

1. In the battle under Queen Bodicea or Boudice against Paulus Suetonius, 80000 Britans lost their lives.
2. King Arthur Arms v.2: 207: C.1. His Banner displayed often against the pagan Saxons. 26: c[l]2.
3. Vespasian under Claudius was sent lieutenant of a band into Germany, thence into Britann where he fought 30 sett battles conquered the Ile of Whight, subdued two mighty nations to the Ro[mans] and wonn 20 Townes from the Britanns. He came afterwards to be Emperor, Anno Domini 72: Suetonius.
4. (Vitellius sent Vectius Belanus to be lieutenant of Britann.)
5. Vespatian Imp. sent great Captains & good soljers into the provinces, and into Britann Petilius Cerealis, who had formerly served here in the wars against Boudicea. He struck great terrour into the Britanns at his coming; and at his 1[t] approach fought many Battles and some of them Bloody against the Brigantes i.e. Yorkshire Lancashire West[morland] & Durham, the most populous state of the whole province, in which Battles the greatest part of these people were wasted and their Country came into the Roman subjection (211. Col. 1.)
6. After him succeeded in the time of Vespasian Julius Frontinus who subdued the Silures i.e. South Wales.
7. After him Julius Agricola the year before the Emperors death. He subdued the Ordovises, conquered Mona, & being a good & prudent man, moderated the Tribute, which lay soe heavy on the poorer sort. And incouraged the Britanns to Build temples & publique houses, \ taught / their nobles sonns Arts and Sciences, and brought them even to the wearing of a gowne.
8. Titus Emperor, son to Vespasian. In his ~~use~~ \ life / served in Britann with exceeding commendation. – His lieutenant in Britann was Agricola. In the 3[th] year,[180] he marched norwards to the Frith of \ Taus / Tweed \ & / wasted all as he went without any resistance fortified the places with Castles & bulworkes (which \ he / stored with sufficient prov where every Garrison wintering Garded itself. & if any losses hapned they were repaired all agane by their next soljers serving sommer service.) The fourth summer he spent in disposing & ordering what he had won, garding and fortifying that narrow space of ground twixt Glotta & Bodotina (2 armes of the 2 opposite seas, which shoot far into the

[177] Calais.
[178] There is a small sketch of a ring in the margin here,
[179] Also numbered p.16.
[180] MS: '3[th]' (because Machell originally wrote '4[th]').

Land) with castles & garrisons, so that now the Romans were absolute Lords of all the South side of Britann having cast their enemyes as it were into an other Iland.
Virius Lupus built Bowes Castle in the time of Severus about the year of Xt 197, & strength[ened] the northern part with many other, hold either under or repaired by him: may be Apleby &c. See Speed's *History* p.228.
{Agricola præsident. Builde castles about the yere of Xt 84. Imperat[or]e Tito Vespatiano Flavio Agricola being Lieutenant.}[181]

[I.39][182]

Domitian suceded Titus his brother in his Empire but not in vertue; howbeit Agricola (remaneing Lieutenant in Britann) went on in his victoryes, fighting against the Caledonians in 2 Batles, & dispatching ships to discover the Coasts & Creeks of the \ more / northern parts.

{IX LEG.}
In the first Battle the Caledonians fell in upon the Roman conquerors where the 9 Legion was lodged. But they were rescued by Agricola's light horse. In the later, Galgacus being General, 10000 of Britanns fell & but 340 of the Roman Armye. After which Agricola wholy discovered the British Coasts. But after these victories least he should be too pop[ular] Domitian sent him home under pretence of making him Lieutenant of Syria. He left the nation setled in peace and Salustius Lucullus came in his steed.
The fourth part of the Ile in the 4th year of Domitian (Xt 86) was reduced into a full province (by Agricola) the Government whereof was ever annexed and appropriate to the Roman Emperors themselves, & not at the disposition of the senate, as other provinces were.

XII [Legion]
~~Trajan~~ Nerva was the next. A good Emperor but reigned not long. Who his lieutenants were & Trajans allso, is not well knowne, but the Arch Deacon of Monmouth brings a succession of British Kings,[183] and amongst them Marius who conquered Roderick King of the Picts accompanyed with the Scots,[184] whose trophe erected near unto Carlile remained a long time afor, bearing ~~bering~~ the Inscription of his victory. {An Trophy erected at Carleol: MARII VICTORIE. T.M. sic conscribit.}[185] Maybe the battle was fought thereabouts.
{2. It may seeme to be fought at Rere Cross: HERE KING WESTMAR SLOE KING ROTHINGER: Bishop Ussher}[186] & here some wil have Westm'land \ viz. from Marius king of that place. / And after him, his son Coilus Brought up att Roome. But in these things histories are very dubious and sterrill.

{3. Via Rom.} XIII
Vepius T\r/ajan adopted by Nerva. Honoured with the epithet of Optimus Augustus. He raised the empire unto the highest pitch. He caused the famous casways to be made in Our Iland concerneing which Hear Gallen 218 Col. 1. Speed 2 vol.
4. Tho histories be silent, yett there is litle doubt to be made that he sent His proprætors Lieutenants præsid[ents] prætors & proconsulls & municipal magistrates of Cityes into this Ile as well as other places. The prætors sat upon High throne attended on by their Rictors, haveing Axes & Rods called

[181] In the MS here, there is a small sketch of a Castle keep.
[182] Also numbered p.17.
[183] Geoffrey of Monmouth, *The History of the Kings of Britain*. The author's name appears on six charters, dated between 1129 and 1151, in the Oxford area, sometimes styled *magister* ('teacher'). He was probably a secular canon of St. George's College. All the charters signed by Geoffrey are co-signed by Walter, Archdeacon of Oxford, also a canon of that church. See J.C. Crick, 'Monmouth, Geoffrey of [Galfridus Arturus] (d. 1154/5), bishop of St Asaph and historian. *ODNB*.
[184] See also Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 11.
[185] 'The Victories of Marius. T.M. [Thomas Machell] thus wrote it.'
[186] James Ussher (1581-1656), Church of Ireland archbishop of Armagh and scholar. In 1639 he completed his research into the early history of Britain and Ireland by publishing his monumental *Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates*, in which he attempted to trace the development of Christianity in Britain from its beginning to the end of the seventh century. see A. Ford, 'Ussher, James (1581-1656). *ODNB*.

fasses for the common people, who were to receve a new Governour every 7 year which was a great Burthen to the province. & perhaps on occasion of the Britons revolt whoe notwithstanding were soone suppressed.

[I.40][187]

XIIII.

Ælius Hadrianus suceed his uncle Trajan. A universall Scholler & excellent Artist. In his time the Britons impatient of servitude Began to revolt, for his lieuetennant Creus Tribellius successor to Agricola could not prevent \ keepe / his soljers from Oppresion & Mutiny; upon whose abuses the northern people imboldened by Bogs & Rocks inaccessible were resolved to defend themselves, finding many confederates & it was disputed with loss of Blood. Hereupon Julius Severus was sent, but before all was quieted, called home \ agane / to goe into Syria. Then the Emperor came in person \ him selfe / with 3 legions in the 3[d] year of his Consulship. Anno Xt. 124. And recovered all the holds \ agane / which they had taken, forceing them into the woods & mo[untains], and perceiveing the aer further North too sharp for the Roman constitution he made a Bulworke twix Eden & New \ Castles / sayes Lampridius).[188]

He made Livinus Priscus Lieuetenant, and the southern Britons being glad to be secured from the inroad of their Countrymen {?} conformed to \ the / Roman Laws in martiall & civill aff[airs]. This Priscus was proprætor of Britan and imployed in the Journey of Jewry with Hadrian, as appears from an old Inscription*.

[Machell's Notes: I.40 & I.41]

*{& what \ he / him selfe hath writ [in] the margin of his *Britannia* & by the name which ~~the People yett give it~~ \ it commonly beareth / & he him selfe hat[h] writ in the margin.}

I think an account of Roman emperors with their lieuetenants & what they performed in the north might not be amiss.

Here I want a list of the Roman Emperors related to England and their Lieuetennants or prefects especially in these parts, which must [be] extracted out of Speed's *History* att Leisure. And then lett the British Kings follow as they are, pag. 33. &c.

[I.41]

de metis et divisis Inter comitatum Eboraci et Westm'land faciendis. See my Coll MS. VI. p.56 out of Sir W. Dug[dale] 'e dorso patentis 13 Ed III p. 1.[189] Est etiam divisio post in eodem MS. V. inter Furness et Kendallum q?[190]

Queries observ'd.

June 1 1688. I observ'd that Mr Speed agrees with me in my possision of 30 years being a Rational Limit for a descent, for *Hist.* p.164. col. 2. allows[191] – 120 years for 4 descents.

[I.135B]

[Roman Lieutenants, Consuls]

[1.] {First Lord Lieutenant of Britain, Aulas Plautius; his wife Pomponia Græcina – caryed the X[t] Principles to Rome with her, whereof she stood accused and indicted upon life and death.}

The first Lieutenant authorised over The British who when upon som occasion was sent for home, (the wars not quieted) and with a small Tryump[h] (as Tacitus sayeth) entered Rome. To whom succeeded

2. Publius Ostorius Scapula: Lieutenant or proprætor. Som of the British [who] were then unconq[ered] raugeded[192] the Countreys of the Confederates. The Icenians began (Norf. Suff. Camb. & Hunting[donshire].) He subdued them & the Cattuvellauni. And a final resistance was made by the Brigantes; but without much trouble soone quieted by the execution of som few & pardoning the rest.

[187] Also numbered p.18.

[188] Aelius Lampridius was one of the six authors of the *Historia Augusta* (biographies of Roman emperors of the 2nd and 3rd centuries). He authored four of the chapters (on Commodus, Diadumenianus, Heliogabalus and Severus Alexander); his writing is frequently quoted in Camden's *Britannia*.

[189] '… from the back/reverse of letter patent 13' etc.

[190] 'Concerning the boundaries and divisions to be made between the County of York and Westmorland,'… 'There is also a division later in the same MS. V. between Furness and Kendal. Q[uery]?'

[191] MS: 'How allows.'

[192] 'marauded' or 'raided'.

But the Silures (those of South Wales) could ~~o~~[193] be brought to bear the Roman yoake but withstood them manfully under Caractacus their King – who remo\ved/ the war unto the Ordovices (i.e. North Wales), where all joynd with him who either fear'd or disdained the Romans, but was overcome, being betrayed into his hands by the Brigantes Queen &c. after the British took heart agane & so vexed Ostorius that he dyed of griefe \ & they worsted Manlius Valerus with his legion. \ Gallus stilling these forigines (*Brittannicæ* p. 5.) /

{Temp. Claudius et Neronis}
To him succeeded by Claudius his order, and was sent to Britain:
3. Aulus Didius, in whose time Venutius, a very expert man in military affairs, ~~began a new rebel~~ (justis to the Romans so long as his Queen Cartismandua, was faithfull to him) began a new rebellion for she \ being / in favour with the Romans for delivering Caractacus, & abounding in welth peace & ple[nty] & fel in Love with her husband's serv[ant] & Harnessbearer, Velocatus, & endeavoured to make him King; who raised a power against her & \ her / paramour – & she in the meantime tooke her husband's Brother with som of his nearest Kindred, prisners whereupon the next neighbours declared against her [and] with a Choyce band of youthful soljers invaded her teritories: whereof Didius haveing intelligence sent certain cohorts to secour[194] her & incounter them, which they did with som success – yett he kept his Kingdom, for the Silures were not altogether Quieted {Tacitus *History*, Lib. 3, C.9.}

{Nero 4}
To him Verannius in time of Nero succeeded who mad[e] small inroades into the Silures \ & dyed / anno primo ~~mort~~ 197. §6.

[I.136][195]

{What kin to Suetonius Tranquillus}[196]
To whom Paulinus Suetonius; \ of / great skill in service and great allso in the op[inion] of the people – who invaded Anglesey – caled then Mona – & separated from the continent by the \ River / Meni fronted on the Midst of ~~Mona~~ Ireland. {Query if this be not Man – see the map.}[197]
! Then was Catus Deciamus procurator (i.e. Receiver of the Tribute \ ~~cui sui Julius Clascitianus~~ / in the office of receipts. / It seemes the Centurians had the spoyles of the Kingdoms & the slaves of the Houses of Kings as Lawfull beauty[198] – they craved aide & Catus Deciamus the Procurator, when the Iceni stirred up rebell[ion] against; in the absence of their Lieutenant it seems there were Lieutenant of Legions, as, Petrilius Cerialis Lieutenant of Leg. IX – all foot but a Troup of horse.

{198 §15. 200 §21}
This Paulinus overcame Boduora Boadicia near unto London, & slew of the Brit. 80000 men (Pænius Posthamus a captain master of Leg. 2.) – This Paulinus being suspected & fear'd of Nero, was commanded by him (the warrs yett continueing) to deliver up his army to

[193] 'not'.
[194] 'Secure'.
[195] Also numbered p.15.
[196] Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus (born 69 AD) probably in Rome, died after 122) was a Roman biographer and antiquarian whose writings include *De viris illustribus* ('Concerning Illustrious Men'), a collection of short biographies of celebrated Roman literary figures; and *De vita Caesarum* ('Lives of the Caesars'). The latter, seasoned with bits of gossip and scandal relating to the lives of Julius Caesar and the first 11 Roman emperors, secured him lasting fame. https://www.britannica.com/biography/Suetonius.
[197] In 58 AD Gaius Suetonius Paulinus was appointed governor of Britain and began a forward movement to the Irish Sea, subduing Mona, a stronghold of druidism. When he learnt of Boudicca's revolt (60 AD) he returned with his advance-guard but with this inadequate force he was compelled to abandon Londinium and Verulamium. Retreating (along Watling Street) to his main force, he routed Boudicca's attack. His severity towards the rebels led to discord with the procurator Iulius Classicianus and his own recall (61 AD). *Oxford Dictionary of the Classical World,* 2104. Online.
[198] Presumably, 'booty'.

{6. §24}
Petronius Turpilianus, who had lately given over his Consulship at Rome – & who being a quiet and peaceable man gave up his charge to {Obijt Nero \ last Cæsar by descent.[199] /

7. {anno æt 31. X^{t}. 70.} Trebellius Maximus (who continued during the Emp. of Sergius Galba, & Otho & Vitellius) (de Niniano Bernicio vid. P.204, §9)

{8.} To whom succeeded Vectius Bolanus in the province of Britain – in Vitellius his reigne; to whom (sending for aid against the Illurian Bands) he returnd answer that the Country of Britain stood not so quiet that he might spare any number thence, the soljers & confederate having their hands full to hold all upright. He continued till Vespatian was saluted Emperur, who sent into Britain:

{9.} {211. §8}
Petilius Cerialis, who had bin here in the warrs against Boduo in the time of Nero – He warrd against the Brigantes &c. – Yorkshire Lancashire Westm'land & Durham {The most populous state of the whole Province} & in many Battles, som of them bloody, the greatest part of these people were wasted – to whom succeeded Julius Frontinus, a great soljer allso, who subdued, the strong & warlike of the Silures i.e. South Wales – after whom

Julius Agricola {! 212. §5. Castles & Bulworkes; 211. §10. He had served under Cerialis} sometime Questor Tribune & Prætor in Rome & lieutenant in Aquitania was sent by Vespasian into Britain to be General …[200]

[I.138]
Chronicon Regum Brittanicorum ad Mor, Morum sive Marium et Inde ad Lucium ipsius Nepotem[201]

A.M. 3912 V.C. 700 Ante Xtum Natum 52*	Cassivela\u/nus Britanniæ Imperator, Cæsari se dedidit. A[n]no Urbe Rom[a] Cond[ita] 700, Mundi 3912. Ante Xt natum 52 = Reg[navit] autem past hoc. Cum filio 93[202]
Tem[pore] Julij I. Imper[atoris] Tem[pore] Oct[aviani] Aug[usti] II. Imper[ator] et Tib[erius] Nero III Imp[erator] Caius Calig[ula]	Kimbellinus
IV. A.D. 43 Claudius Dru[sus]. IIIII Imperat[oris] 1^{0}.	Guidericus (Kimbellini F[ilius] nepos Cassalauni) Pacem cum Julio irritam fregit Anno Xt 43. et 3^{0} ab hinc anno, bello cecidit cuj successit[203]
A.D. 46 4^{0} Claud[ij] Drus[i] V. Imper[atoris]	Arviracus Anno X^{ti} 46 – 4^{0} Claudij, qui (Anno insequent[i]) Vespasianum cum exercitu in Britt[aniam] misit, qui Insulam Vectis cepit, resque Brittannicas adeo compos[uit] ut paulo post, Anno Claudij 7^{0}, Aulus Plautius Primus, ex consularibus, missus est in Britt[aniam] Præfectus. Anno Xt 52. Claudij X^{0}. P[ublius] Ostorius Scapula Caratucum Silurum Regem vicit captumque cu[m] uxore et fratribus ad Ro[mam] misit […][204]Defuncto autem \ ibi / Ostorio A[ulum] DIDIUM Cla[u]dius in Præsidem misit, qui statim motum Silurum

[199] Publius Petronius Turpilianus (died c.68 AD) was the successor of general Suetonius Paulinus as governor of Britain in 61-62 AD. Previously a consul in Rome, he advocated a more peaceful policy than his predecessor. He was recalled to Rome in 63 AD: Matthew Bunson, *A Dictionary of the Roman Empire* (New York and Oxford, 1995), 322.
[200] Words obscured by the binding here include, 'ordovic[e]s subd ... rebell'.
[201] 'The Chronicle of the Kings of Britain to Mor, Morus or Marius and then to Lucius, grandson of Marius.'
[202] 'Cassivelaunus, ruler of Britain, surrendered to Caesar in the year 700 from the founding of the city of Rome, in the anno mundi 3912 and BC 52. But he reigned after this with his son [until] 93.'
[203] 'Guidericus, son of Kimbellinus, grandson of Cassivelaunus, broke the ineffective peace with Julius in AD 43, and in the third year after this he fell in war.'
[204] There is an unclear interlineation here.

AD 57 Claud[ius] Domitius Nero Caes[ar] VI Imper[atoris] Anno 1^0	compescuit. Anno Xt 54. Cla[u]dij 12 et Anno Insequenti Cogidulo Brittaniæ Regulo aliquæ civitates ab Imperatoræ donatæ sunt; qui deinde usq[ue] ad Tempora Domitiani fidiss[imus] mansit Anno autem Domitij NERONIS Cæsaris 1^0 X^{ti} 57.[205]
	AVITVS Brittanniæ præfectus extitit, sub quo Romani magnam cladem accipere:
	Anno proximo VERONIVS Brittanniæ legatus missus, ibi moritur cui sucessit.
	SUETONIVS PAVLINVS, Neronis 3^0 Arviraco adhuc Principe ~~Brittanniæ~~ [et] Rege Brittann[iae] cujus Regni anno XV, Neronis 4^0 Xt. 60^0, Multi Britonum ad fidem X^{ti} conversi sunt ut quidam tradunt per {Tacit. XII:[206]} Josephum de Arimathiâ, qui X^{t}um sepiliverat. Vixit etiam et supervixit Aviragus Reg. Britt. ~~Duos~~ \ Tres / alios Imperatores [207]
VII	Sergius Sulpitius Galba VII. Rom[anorum] Imp[erator] Qui reg[ebat] menses 7.
VIII	Sylvium Ottonem – VIII Rom[anorum] Imper[atorem]. Qui reg[ebat] dies – 95.
IX.	Aulum Vitellium IX Rom[a]n[orum] Imper[ator]. Qui reg[ebat] menses fere 8 Primo autem [anno] [208]
X	Vespasiani – Othonis – Titiani \ X Imper. / moriebatur et ej successit[209]
	postquam regnasset an[nos] XXVI[210]
	Marius Arviragi filius Britonum Rex ~~ob~~ an 48. ~~Incepit Regis Vespatiani~~ Incepit Regnare Otho / Xt 72. Vespasiani Othonis 10 per quem Julius AGRICOLA anno ejus circ. 8^0 datus est Brittanniæ Legatus.[211]
AD 81 Xt Tit. Vesp. XI Imperator	Qui totam fere Romanis subegit anno autem Marij X0 Imperator Otho objit cuj Titus Vesp[asianus] succesit. Anno Xt 81, et ejus 50 marij 16, Picti Roderico duce e Sythi sedes novas quer[…] in Brit. Coyllus Marij filius Britt Rex an[no] 45, 30 Adriani Xti 120.[212]
AD 120 3^0 Adriani XV Imp[eratoris] T[itus] Ant[oninus] Pius XVI incep[it] An[no] D[omini]139 AD 165 4^0 M[arci] Aur[relij] XVIII Imp[eratoris] Regnabat cum M. Ael[io] Aurelio Antonino	Coyllus – Marij filius, Brit. Rex anno XXXXV. Quem, Ara[m] suppono Instituitisse. {2^0 Antonini Pij XVI Imper[atoris] Britt[anni] libertatem affe[ctam] a LOLIO Urbicio, divers[is] [proel[ijs] retin[end]o [au]ferebant}. 5^0 Adr[iani] Brittan[i] deficientes, Trebellio duce frenati sunt. Hinc (ut Spartacus) Brit[tania] a Scot[tis] muro divisa est. quod tamen plerumq[ue] Severi.

[205] 'His successor was Arviracus AD 46, 4th year of Claudius, who (in the following year) sent Vespasian to Britain with an army. He took the Isle of Wight and so settled affairs in Britain that a little later, in the 7th year of Claudius, Aulus Plautius Primus, one of the consuls, was sent to Britain as governor. In AD 52, 10th year of Claudius, Publius Ostorius Scapula overcame Caratucus King of the Silures and sent him prisoner with his wife and brothers to Rome. After the death of Ostorius there, Claudius sent Aulus Didius as governor, who immediately settled the disturbance among the Silures, AD 54, 12th year of Claudius. And in the following year certain citizen rights were granted by the Emperor to Cogidulus the client king of Britain: who then remained entirely loyal right up to the time of Domitian.'

[206] Words here are obscured by the binding.

[207] 'In the first year of Domitius Nero Caesar, AD 57, Avitus was governor of Britain, under whom the Romans suffered a great defeat. In the next year Veronius was sent as Legate of Britain and there died. His successor was Suetonius Paulinus, in the 3rd year of Nero, while Arviracus was still Ruler [and] King of Britain. In the 15th year of his reign, the 4th year of Nero, AD 60, many of the Britons were converted to the Christian faith, as certain [people] record, through Joseph of Arimathia who had buried Christ. Arviragus lived as ruler of Britain and survived three other Emperors.'

[208] 'Aulus Vitellius 9th Roman Emperor, who reigned about 8 months. But…'

[209] '…he [viz. Aviragus] died in the 1st year of the 10th emperor Vespasian – Otho – Titian and was succeeded,'

[210] 'after he had reigned 26 years, by'

[211] 'Marius son of Arivagus, King of the Britons, in his 48th year. Otho began to reign in AD 72 in the 1st year of Vespasian Otho, by whom, in about his 8th year, Julius Agricola was appointed to Britain as governor.'

[212] 'He subdued almost the whole [island] to the Romans. But in the 10th year of Marius the emperor Otho died, succeeded by Titus Vespasian in AD 81 and in his 5th year, 16th year of Marius, the Picts under the leadership of Rodericus [came] from Sythia seeking new settlements [and entered] Britain.'

Philos[opho] ideo Como[dus] XVIII numer[o] et Antoninus ejus Pater est XVII	Lucius (Coylli filius) Princeps Rex Brittanniæ, An. XXII. In an[no] 13 ejus regni (M[arci] Aur[elij] et Comodi 16. Xti 178) fidem Amplexus est Xt[i]anam, Beda et Gildas, Author[es].[213]
AD 187 7^0 L. Au[relij] Ant[onini] Com[modi] XIX Imp[eratoris] regnabat 13	Post cujus mortem Anno Xti 187 Duces Brittaniæ Inter se discordes Romanis ad totam fere Insulam occupandam ansam praeposuerunt, Anno Imper[atoris] Lucij Aurelij Antonini 70 Christ[i] 187.[214]
XX	AEL Pertinax – 2 mens. 25 diebus.[215]
XXI	DIDIUS IVLIANVS – 65 diebus.[216]
XXII Imp. AD 195 AD 208	L[ucius] Septim[ius] Severus r[egebat] anno[s] 18. an[no] ejus 9^0 Scoti primo fidem ampl[exi sunt] 2^0 CLOD Albinus Brit[tannorum] exerc[itus] Dux {erat sed q an B} 14^0 S[everus] Bellum in Britt[anniam] transtulit ut eos ab incursione Barbarorum liberaret. vallum CXXXII M[ilia] P[assuum] a mari ad mare duxit. s[ed] d[icit] Polyd[orus] 200 fore post an[n]is [...]'[217]

[I.139]

A Cronickle of Rom Emp. Propriæt. and Brit. Kings

{My booke of maps sayes about 54 ante Xtum natum. ergo see again in favet.}

Anno Xt.	Anno Imp.	Emperors of Rome & Proprætors of Britain	Lieutenants of Britaine	Kings of Britain
		One & fifty years before Christe's Nativity, Anno M 3912. Julius Cæsar subdued Cas. Emperour of Britaine & 6 years after the said [blank]		
M. 3918	Cas. 1^0 2 3 4 5 6	Julius Cæsar (The Romane Republic then being oppressed) & he one of the first obtained the sole empire thereof, which before was by Consulls; they notwithstanding still continuing, their name and holding the place, but \ in / subordination to their Emperours for [blank] years after. He reigned 5 yeares. To whom succeeded		Cassivellaunus, emperor of Britaine
3923 3925 3947 3955	Octav 1^0 2 3 23 33	C. Octavius Augustus (II Roman Emperour) who reigned Ann. 56 In the Third year of his reign the Famous Poet Ovid was born. And in the 23, the no less admired Virgil dyed. In the 33	26	

[213] 'Coyllus son of Marius became king of the Britons in his 45th year, whom I suppose to have set up an altar. In the 2nd year of Antoninus Pius, 16th emperor, the Britons retained and recovered their liberty, eroded by Lollius Urbicius, in several battles. In the 5th year of Hadrian, the Britons rebelling under their leader Trebellius were restrained. Henceforth (as with Spartacus), Britain was divided from Scotland by a wall, which, however, was for the most part the work of Severus. Lucius (son of Coyllus) became High King of Britain, in his 22nd year. In the 13th year of his reign (the 16th of Marcus Aurelius and Comodus, AD 178), he embraced the Christian faith. Beda and Gildas are the sources.'

[214] 'After his death in the year AD 187, the British chieftains, being at odds with each other, gave the Romans an opportunity to occupy nearly the whole island, in the 7th year of the emperor Lucius Aurelius Antoninus, AD 187.'

[215] 'Aelius Pertinax – 2 months 25 days.'

[216] 'Didius Julianus – 65 days.'

[217] 'Lucius Septimius Severus ruled for 18 years. In his 9th year the Scots first embraced the faith. In his 2nd year Clodius Albinus was leader of a British army {but query whether B.}. In his 14th year Severus carried war into Britain so that he might liberate them from a barbarian invasion. He constructed a wall of 132 miles from sea to sea. But Polydorus says it would be 200 after [...] years.'

M. 3963 et domi Nostri Jesu Christi Anno 1[0]	38 40 Dicitur circa 41 annum Augusti 53 56	Claudius (afterwards Emperour) was brought into the world. In the 38 Sergius Galba was Borne. In the 40 ~~this famous Cæsar~~ \ ~~year of his reign, Augustus~~ / he shut up the Temple of Janus the 3 third time; & so there was peace \ all / over the world ~~about~~ which \ time / The Lord of Peace \ our L. & S. J. C. / was Borne \ of a virgin; / (Irenæus Lib. 3 cap.25) from whom wee Begin our next computation, changeing it from the year of the world to the year of Christ. In the 53 year of Octavius \ Augustus / Caius Cæsar (afterwards emperour) came into the world And In the 56 Octavius dyed XIV Cal. Sept at 9 a clock of day. To whom succeeded		
Anno Christ Nati 17 21 30 16 32	Claud. 1[0] 5 14 <

43	1	Tiberius Claudius Drucius the V Romain Emperour who reigned XIII yeares VIII month & XX day. In the first year of whose R. Titus Vespasianus was Born.	And	Guidericus, son of Kimbelinus \ & / nephew \ or Grandchild of / Cassi[vel]launus, King of Brittan, broake the Peace which \ was / made with Julius Cæsar, the first Invader, & Cassa[vel]launus; upon which the next year great warrs ensued […][219] &
44	2	And the next year many say Peter ~~som say~~ came to Rome and governd the Church, 25, which how trew it is commentatours will show. And if so, Peter was Bishop of Rome, before		Guidericus was slaine in the wars; to whom succeeded ARVIRACUS[220]
45	3	E'vodius was Bishop of Antioch: which hapened not \ till / the next year following that he was made the first Bishop there as Eusabius tells us. in which year allso Marc (Peter's \ Disciple / schollar preached in Egypt. And the next year following.		
46		The nex year after Vespasianus was sent		
47	4	into Britane with a great army, [he] tooke		
	5	the Ile of Wight & composed affaire there: so that ~~Vespasian~~ \ Claudius / within 2 years after haveing reduced it		
	7	into a province, sent Ola came himselfe into Britaine, Conquered & settled it within VI months		
	9	space: Speed. Primus ex-consularibus Brittan præfectus	Ad Brittan A. Plautius, a Roman senatour to be the 1t Praefet there.	

[Machell's Notes: I.139]

*{To make this Cron[ickle] perfect, add Consull next to Emp[eror] & Lieutenant of Brit. before K[ing]. Caesar. Lib. 5}

[II.448][221]

[TOPOGRAPHY]
Of Westm'land

[General Notes and Method]

{For ancient Gentlemen see the Note Rol}
{This should belong ad Part II of my MS, which is som what bet[ter]}

[219] The next 1cm of this sentence is illegible.
[220] Aviragus.
[221] Also numbered p.1.

{1.} Of the county in general se Camden.[222] Correct where amiss & add where deficient. V.P. 6, 9, 13. P.26. Ap p.9, 11.
{2.} It is divided into 2 generall partes, the Bottome of Westm'land \ the Barony of Westm'land / & the Barrony of Kendall, \ which is more mountainouse. / In the Bottome of Westm'land, which is champion ground,[223] and, because in a vale free from mountaines, therefore called the Bottom ~~of Westm'land~~ are 3 Wards or Hundreds: E. Ward, W. Ward & Midle Ward. & so, answerably, 3 High Constable: to each ward, one. Petty Constable, 132. {a. vid. N. ad Fig. 2.} {esp part \a / ratio per person in kind.}[224]
In the Barony of Kendall, which is more mountainouse, consisting of hills & dales, & ergo called the Barrony of Kendall or Kandall, are onely 2 Wards or Hundreds, viz. Kendall Ward & Loansdall Ward. To each of them there is one High Constable. Petty Constable, 51. Particularly in Kendall Ward, 39; in Loansdall, 12. (b) Se the particular petty constablewick, p.7.
So that in Westm'land there are 5 Wards, Hundreds or High Constablewicks; Petty Constablewicks 183.

Bottom of West.		Barony of Kendall after	
Parishes	Villages or Hamlets	Parishes	Villages or Hamlets
33 with churches of ease & 7 chappels	Take them from the map p.5.	7 with 18 chaples & churches of ease 1. Gresmire has chaples of ease 2 2. Windermere: 1 church of ease, voc. Troutbeck Ch. 3. Kirkby Kendall has 13 chap. of ease 4. Heversham: 1 church of ease call'd Crosthwaite Church 5. Betham: 1 church of ease, voc. Wither Church: given by Dr Barwick, Dean of St Paul's, & consecrated by Bishop Wilkins, late of Chester anno 1671 6. Burton Chap.	Se the map p.5 but I suppose ther is no distinction twixt the Barony & the Bottom of Westm'land Tis a Chapel of Ease only.
{if we particular […] we must 1[t] doe Bot[tom] & then the Bar[ony] distinct}[225]			
(c.) A Chaple at Crakenthorp (besides private chap.) Winderworth	A Garth at the Town Head, where cherries – called Chick croft[226]		
Parishes	Churches of Ease		Chap. of ease
{in all} 40	6	There are 18 churches and chaples of E. besid[e]	23

Churches and chappells, 69.

[222] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 'Westmorland', 760-63.
[223] Champion: 'champaign'; an expanse of level open country, as distinct from mountains or woods. *OED*.
[224] This comment is partly obscured by the binding.
[225] Part of this comment is obscured by the binding.
[226] 'Chick' is indistinct.

[II.449][227]

{Sheriff}
3. It is peculiar to this county of Westmorland to have one perpetual sheriff (tho it was formerly paternall ~~through~~ \ in all / England), which office is intailed on the family of the Countiss of Penbrroke ~~whose~~ \ Her / residence is now att Apleby;[228] yet they rather the[y] had Cliffords, a sort of Roy[a]lty, to prick or appoint, than official.
{Adde ad 3[d]} {See the der[ivation] & significance of sheriffs in Preface to *Warwick.*}[229]

[I.750]

Of the County of Westm'land
1. Its Bounds.
    1. Why Westm'land; whether even a Kingdom of it selfe; whet[h]er part of Scotland.
    2. Why Countyes.
    3. What Countes or Earles.
    4. What shereffs or vicountes (or Barons).

Mr Lawson calls it the Garden of England for the choice Herbs that it affords {and Sledall the Gardine of W[estmerland]}

Of the division of Westmorland into Baronyes, and! By Way of Em[phasis]}
It is divided into 2 Baronies:
    The Barony of Apleby which is anciently termed (by way of emphasis), 'The Barony of Westm'land' – more soft and Champion – which lyetth north.
    The Barony of Kendall, commonly called by the name of 'The Barony'; more strong & mountaneous, which lyetth in the south part.

[I.767C]

1. Of the County of Westm'land in General with a Map – and therein, of its \ name and / Civil & Ecclesiastical government, with a Catalogue of shirefs.
2. Of its division into 2 Baronyes: Sc. Westm'land, Kendal.
3. The subdivision of each into so many Parishes conteined in them.
4. Of each Parish in particular.
    1. In General.
    2. In particular as on the other side.

[I.767D]

1t. In General, \ Notation & in what Denary Ward or Barony. /
1. Valuation with yearly deduction: olim; nunc![230] If not more appositely at the the account of the church and bounds. Q. Which first.
2. Advocation olim; nunc.
3. Situation et extent E. W. N. & S. and how far distant from other churches or market townes.
4. Perambulation or bounder.
5. Division into Manners. Townes, Villages Hamlets & other out houses perteineing to each & in what Constablewicks and how far distant from the church or manner house: E. W. N. or S.

II. In Particular Concerneing each Manner
1. Notation or Ratio Nominus.[231]
2. Situatio et Extentio sue contonens: In length & breadth & how bounded E. W. N. S.
3. Res Contentæ opida et fam: If the church not in it; how far ab Ecclesia.
how many fam[ilies] Fre[e]; Customary. Fine: certe; arbt.[232]

---

[227] Also numbered p.2.
[228] Machell is referring to the Countess of Pembroke (Lady Anne Clifford, 1590-1676). He referred to her throughout as the Countess of Penbroke, an archaic form of the name based on the Welsh word 'pen': head or chief part, and 'bro': a valley. See E.&T. Williams (eds), *The Cambrian Register 2: 1796* (London, 1796), 62.
[229] Dugdale, *Warwickshire*.
[230] 'Once; now!'
[231] Ratio nominus = reason for the name.
[232] Fine certain; fine arbitrary: see the English Glossary.

1. Olim; 2. Nunc: How it is accommodated or adorn'd, by art or nature.
Customry & Priv. ten[ancies]; Priviledges waifes strayes &c. deodant.[233]

4. Places & Things of note in Art; Nature &c.
1. Persons of em[inence]; Dr; general; Kgs.
2. Springs, birds, eagles, hawkes, Beasts, \ marts, /w[ild] cats, otters. Fishes. pike, salmon, pearch, Trout eale extraordinary grown. Strange accidents.

That it more general, as
1. Church \ and p[arsonage] house / or chaple foundation. It dedication, \ duration / extention, Indowment, prescriptions, Reparations \ i. br. / with Arms & Inscriptions, or other raritye with succession of ministers.
2. Scholl: Foundation \ Reparation / extent. Arms & Inscriptions. Endowment.
3. Hospital.
4. Common Halls, Correct Prisons: foundation, reparation, scituation, description.
5. Gentlemen's houses: arms & inscriptions.
[6.] An Historical account of the \ descent of / the manner.
1. Olim 2. nunc; with their Armes & Pedegres especily of the present Proprietors or familyes, & of famous men in them for Arts or Arms.

[I.153]

See Dugdall of *Warwickshire*, Burton of *Leicestershire*, to help method & order.
If I could spare time to Methodise these Rude Notes which are conteined in my severall books of Collections marked thus [blank] I would:

1. Speake of the Country in Generall[234]
1. Of its division* into 2 parts viz. the Barony of Appleby commonly called the Botom of Westm'land; Barony of Kendal.
2. Of its division into Hundreds, commonly called the Barony.
3. Of its division into Parishes.

In speaking of the County in General I would shou:
1. Whence it takes its name.
2. Its Bounds.
3. Its Forme what Lenth Bredth & Circumferance.
4. \ The ancient inhabitants and modern: their Natures. /
5. The Nature of the Aire.
6. The Nature of the Soyle \ Helped by rivers & mountaines / with the benefits & rarities ther of wood Arable pasture mineral. Query: the worth per Acre.
7. The Nature of the people & Customes of the Country; course of rivers; tract of highways.
8. It divition into 2 parts; the Barony of Appleby, \ commonly called the Botome of Westm'land / and the Barony of Kendall, which tho a Barony of it selfe was subordinate to the other \ and tis commonly knowne by the name of The Barony. / (As appeares from Lancastres doeing service in Appleby Court, which must not be mentioned till I come att its proper place; viz. either in treating of the Barony of Appleby or Kendal or both.) In which 2 are conteined, 3 Hundreds or Wards; viz. In the Barony of Appleby, 3: E[a]st Ward West Ward & Midle ward – In The Barony 2: viz. Kendall Ward and Loansdal Ward.
9. Market townes, yeomanry, how many, nameing them; whereof Apleby is chief.

[233] In English law, a deodand (sometimes deodant) was a personal chattel which, having been the immediate occasion of the death of a human being, was given to God as an expiatory offering, i.e. forfeited to the Crown to be applied to pious uses, e.g. to be distributed in alms. (Abolished in 1846.) *OED*.
[234] The numbering in this section has been edited for the sake of clarity.

10. Religious Houses their number & names of which hereafter.
11. Castles & Halls, to which formerly belongd Towers for stre[n]th. \ See Mr Burton of Lestershire. /[235]
12. Parish churches. How many – nameing in Order Alphabet[ical] / concerneing which:

2. Of the County in Particular and therein of the respective Parishes & Lordships
In speakeing of each particular parish:

1. Of the Church, with Tower or none, fair or not. How tis commonly called, to whom dedicated? By whome & when Built, what value, who Patrone?
2. {The nature of Chaples & 1st Indowments} Appurtenances, as what Chaples thereto belonging, of which more at Large in their respective Lordships.

{3.} In the particular Tract
1l: Speake of Heraldry in order to understanding of Coates of Arms.

1. Repeat the number.
2. Speake of them in particular with the severall Lordships & Manners conteined in the parish.
3. \ Order in Alphabet. /

[Machell's Notes: I.153]

*{Civil into 2 Barronyes Wards & each Ward into Constablewicks:
1. Shap. Ap[pleby] Midle Ward.
2. Ecclesiastical into Denaries, & those into Parishes.}

[I.154]

What things most remarkeable, as Armes or Monuments.
4. How many Lordships or Gentlemens seats conteined in the parish, their names, of which in Order Alphabetical, after the church Towne is spoke of, for that I designe to mention still first.
*N.B. Note to speake of Chapples as of Churches, except the 2nd & 4th Head.

In treating of particular Lordships and Families show:

1. The Name of the Manner, whence taken?
2. It Appurtenances; as \ villages / Hamletts &, if any thereto belonging
   Places and things most remarkable \ in them; / as Chaples Schools Hospitalls Religious houses places of Battles, of Coyns found, & of Roman inscriptions, Camps &c.
3. {Horse races &c.}
4. \ Accidents & Calamityes in the proper place. /
5. The ancient inhabitants, with their Armes \ or seales / mentioned if they be knowne.
6. The Modern Inhabitants.
7. The Manner House: Its situation & distance from Church and market, what remarkeable in it, Mention the present owner whose seat it is, and then proceed to:
8. The Armes & pedigree of the present owner and proceed to the next Manner.

[IV.60B]

After the preface:
1. A general description
2. After which add it were easy for me to prosecute my method as ~~Mr Cambden~~ others have done by the Course of these Rivers. But because this way is no[t] satisfactorie to those who have not Leisure to peruse the whole booke, I will rather proceed in Alphabeticall Order, so that they [who] have not a minde or ~~because~~ so much time as to follow the windeing courses of Rivers, may have a near Cutt[236] to their desired Inquisition.[237]

[235] William Burton (1575-1645), *The Description of Leicester Shire. Containing Matters of Antiquitye, Historye, Armorye, and Genealogy* (1638, 1st edn, 1622).
[236] Short-cut.
[237] As the text on the rest of this page is similar to information given elsewhere, it is not transcribed.

[I.154]

N.B. Haveing despatched all the manners in one parish, as in the parish of Ashby, proceed to next in order of alphabet, as for instance to Askham, following the foregoing method in every particular. This order I purpose to follow, excepting only in Appleby \ the chiefe Towne, / wherein I shall speake of bothe the Parish Churches which are conteined \ therein / and consequently of the Manner and Lordships allso. But in all other places I shud stick close to my Method proposed. and 1[t] of Ababy & its 2 parishes: St Lawrence & St Michaels. 2. of Ashby. 3. of Ascome &c.
N.B. See a Method elsewhere in better order: But this is not yett to be quite rejected, but compared with the other for the General Tract.

[Machell's notes on the recording of manors]

[I.197]

This must be corrected accordeing to the foregoeing method.
Manerium de M[o]rton
Morton takes its denome[na]\tion/ from the situation thereof upon a Moore, and has given name to a family of old, which was called de Morton. But I finde that in the 8. of Edward 2.[238] Thomas Musgrave, then a minor, held this lordship with Great Musgrave, halfe of Rookeby & proparte de Sandford, in which family of the Musgrave yett in being (as you shall finde in its proper place) it continued till of late yeres, that it was sold by [blank] Musgrave, to [blank] Helton. The ancestour \ Mr / Robert Helton, now justice of peace & coram,[239] whose Armes are [blank] and the pedegre of this family is as followeth {See the armes in a paper at Cap. de Kirkbythure.[240] There pedegree amongst my pedegrees.}
Hilton ... [blank][241]
Robert Hilton, justice of peace & coram = Mary \ 1 of / the daughters of [Blank] Hilton of Hilton Castle.[242]
{Johan. Hilton amicus meus dilectissimus immatura morte pracreptus:[243] anno 1676, flore ætatis & S.V. [sub verbo] mense junii in fol[io]}[244]
The manner house is Morton Hall \ 2 miles from the church,[245] / seated by brooke side under the high mountaine called Meal Fell, and near to that remarkeable hill called Murton Pike, out of which doth Isue a fluent spring, which is conv[ey]ed into the ~~house~~ Hall. This lordship yealds great plenty of limestone & of lead oare.

[I.198]

[Newby]
The manner house is a very fair one, built (of he[w]n stone) by R. N.,[246] 16[blank], att the high end of the village, 2 miles distant from the parish church & [blank] from Apple[by] which is the market they most frequent, and is [blank] from Penrith. It is now the seat of Mr John Nevinson, whose Armes and Ped[igree] take as followeth.

Note. Method for particular Lordships & Families

1. Name of the Manner; whence taken?
2. Its Appurtenances if any other Hamletts belonging there to.

---

[238] 1314-15.
[239] 'Coram' = 'before, in the presence of': often used in confusion with 'quorum': a senior Justice of the Peace. See 'quarum' and 'coram'. *OED*.
[240] Capital mansion of Kirkby Thore.
[241] Machell left space for a complete pedigree, but four generations remain blank until 'Robert Hilton = Mary Hilton the daughter of [Blank] Hilton of Hilton Castle' [n.d.]
[242] Hylton Castle in County Durham.
[243] MS: 'præerinptus'.
[244] 'John Hilton, my very dear friend, was swept away by early death in the flower of his age in 1676: under the heading of the month of June in the folio.'
[245] From St Michael's Appleby?
[246] Nevinson.

3. Places and things most remarkeable […][247]
4. The Ancient Inhabitants with their Arms.
5. The modern inhabitants ~~with there pedegre.~~
6. The Manner house its distance from Church and Situation, what Remarkeable in it. Whose Seate.
7. Their Arms & Ped.

This is that it may be Continued and Augmented.

1. Of the Country in General
   - Situation
   - Commodity
   - Number of parishes
   - Numbers of Castles and houses only nameing the nobility
   - Schools & Bridges
   - The Rivers and their Course
2. Division Into
   - Partes – 2
   - Hundred –3
   - Parishes – the manner of tenure
   - Lordships – in the respective parishes
3. An Index of Sirnames, of Places, of things remarkable.

{Method for the Parish

1. The church, how com[mon]ly called, to whome dedicated, where and by whome built, what rate, who patrone.
2. Appurtenances. What chaples thereto belonging of which in the Lordships where they are.
3. Things most re\m/ark, as Armes & Monuments.
4. How many Lordships or Townships belonging thereto, of which in order & 1^{t} of [blank] the first according to this method.}

[I.229]

Note. {I have don this into queryes in a Better Method – vide:}

1. The Church; It[s] dedication: Discribe it by Iles, Body, Quire & Stepel. with Belles. Note the windows & other monuments: 1. without. 2. within. Who Founder Benefactor? Patrone.What Chaunteryes in it.
2. What Chaples belonging to it {Whether demolished or in repare, & when & By whome founded when you come to speake of the place where they are Built.}
3. What Villages or Hamletts Belonging to the church. Name them with the Lords or Lordship they belong to.
4. How many manour ~~houses~~ or Lordships. and reduce the villages to the Lordships or mannours. Houses of Nobility and Gentry: to whome anciently, to whome now? with there Genealogies &c.
5. What remarkable as rarities: Accidents, Antiquities, Mines, Quarries, pitts &c. {each of them.}

Of Families

Lett this bee the method, in the list of Familyes.

His name; whence taken. His:

1. Descent & Time of Birth.
2. Honour dignity & preferments or Estate Acts and mon[uments].
3. His Armes, taken from seales or otherwise.
4. His Marrige, with his wifes Honourable estatate \ Acts & / Armes.
5. His & Her death Time they lived place of Burial.

[247] Five illegible words have been scored through here.

6. His & her Isue, and How disposed of.

N.B. This will be a Better method and therefore a Change, which is amiss in the Account of Viponts & Cliffords. It seemes they descend from the Viponts Lords of Westm'land a younger house for I mett with Robert son of Lawrence de Veteripont, 13. of King Edward I. [1284-85].

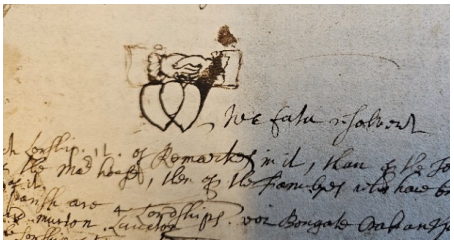


Figure 3. 'hec fata resolvent'. I.229.[248]

[I.157 & I.158]

Witnesses to the Writeings of Viponts.
A. Radulfus de Arincourt, Joh 9[0] [1207-08]
Simon Briton & Will[iam] filius Simonis B J; Philippus de Burgo, marryed Matild the daughter[249] of Sophin de Waldby; Simon Briton 9. John; Dominus Richard de Bellocampo (Dominus Thome filius Thomæ); Reginald Bellocamp Joh. R; Alexander de Brakestan (for Brakenbur) John 9. Henry de Cundale 9. J[ohn]; John clericus 9. Joh.

Anselmus de Barneis 8. J. [1206-07]
Gervise Damecourt: 8. John; G. Galfrid de Wateley, 9. J
Guido de Hellebeck: 9. John; John 9.; John de Harclay: John 9.
Robert filius Robert de Kaberghi: 8. John; Henry de Kabye (forsan pro Taby)[250]

[I.148]

The County of Westmerland in its present state as now.
Consider of a chapter de Schire Countys Wards Parishes Lordships – by selves, to present & then draw.[251]

Of the Division of Westm'land
It is divided into 2 \ great / Baronyes:
The Barony of Westmerland (KαT)[252] by way of eminence ~~as the principle~~ (Because its being the Chiefe, both for quantity & quality, both in greatness & goodness) leveing at the Bottom of Westmorland, the ridge of which hems them in as i[f] with a bulworke; and The Barony of Kendale, which lyetth S. of it, [be]yond the mountains, or rather amongst them. These subdivided into 5 Wardes or Hundreds whereof 3 doe pertaine to the Barony of Westmorland ~~& r[elate] only to The Barony of~~ Kendale, ~~and conteined in Both~~ with conteineing in \ them / 25 parishes. & in 2 only to The Barony of K. wherein are but [blank]; but that of Kendale is a very large one.

[248] 'They will resolve this fortune.'
[249] As written.
[250] 'Perhaps for Tebay.'
[251] This sentence, with an indistinct final word, has been placed within an inked border.
[252] Kα/T[ω]: In several places Machell follows the phrase 'Barony of Westm'land' with the letters KαT. The vowel is clearly written as the Greek letter alpha. This suggests that all the letters are meant to be read in the Greek (not the Roman) alphabet and that the word is abbreviated from the Greek adverb κα/τω meaning 'below'. Classical Greek authors sometimes used this word in a geographical connection to mean 'lower'. It is likely that Machell's meaning is similar and that this is a way of referring to the 'Bottom' of Westmorland.

{? } Query of the Barony of Apelby. If the Corp[oration], if Castle &c. If not before in a Chapter by itselfe. Here speake of a Barony out of Dugdall's *Baronagium*;[253] And a Court Baron; & describe this Barony by meets & boundes, & speake of the Messuagium Capitale & Baron of it.

[Dioceses]

1. In what Diocese. N.B. Here 1[t] describe it.

The Barony of Westm'land as to its ecclesiasti[cal] government is wholy under the Bishop of Carlile, & within that Diocese \ & is but one Denary / commonly the Denary of Westm'land.[254] And is divided into 3 wards \ or 100s: / East West & Midle, which are subdivided into severall parishes ~~and they agane~~ consisting of severall Manners & Lordships – of which hereafter.

[25 parishes 'with the Value and Patrones',[255] in Carlisle diocese]

	Ecclesia	Patronus	Valor Annu[256]					Decima Inde[257]				
			£	s.	d.	ob.	q[u]	£	s.	d.	ob.	q[u]
1	Apelby 2: St Laurent (Vic.[258] both)	Dean & Capit Car.	009	5	1	ob	0	000	18	6	0	q[u]
2	St Michael	Episcop: Carliol	020	12	9	ob	0	002	1	4	ob	0
3	Askeby: Rectoria	Sir George Fletcher	023	13	4	0	0	002	7	4	0	0
4	Askam: Vic.	Not correct: the crown[259]	006	0	0	0	0	000	12	0	0	0
5	Bampton: Vic.	Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge	007	5	0	0	0	000	14	5	0	0
6	Barton: Vic.	Sir John Lowther de Sockbridge	011	1	0	0	0	001	2	1	1	q[u]
7	Burgh: Vic.	Queens College in Oxon	008	18	9	0	0	000	17	10	ob	0
8	Burgham: Rect.	Lord Baron of Westmorland	016	17	10	0	0	001	13	0	ob	q[u]
9	Cliburne: Rectory	Episcop. Carliolensis	009	1	4	0	0	000	18	1	ob	q[u]
10	Clifton: Rect.	Episcopus Carliolensis	008	3	4	0	0	000	16	4	0	0
11	Crosby Garret: Recto.		019	14	4	0	0	001	9	5	0	q[u]
12	Crosby Ravensworth: Vic.	Sir Ph. Musgrave {dub Patron de Crosby Garret}[260]	007	13	4	0	0	000	15	4	0	0
13	Dufton: Rect.	Lord B[aron] of Westmorland	009	9	6	0	0	001	18	0	ob	qu
14	Kirkby Thore: Rect.	Lord B \aron/ of Westmorland	037	17	8	ob	0	003	15	9	ob	0
15	Kirkby Stephan: V.	Lord Wharton	048	19	2	0	0	004	17	11	0	0
16	Lowther: Rect.	Sir John Lowther de Lowther	025	6	2	ob	0	002	10	8	ob	q[u]
17	Marton: Rect.	Lord of Westmorland	021	15	5	ob	0	002	3	6	ob	q[u]
18	Morland: Vic.	Dean & Capit. Carliol	011	18	0	0	0	001	3	9	ob	q[u]

[253] Dugdale, *Baronagium.* For the full title see 'Abbreviations'.
[254] An almost identical sentence is found in *N&B1*, 13.
[255] This quotation was originally placed on MS. I.160.
[256] 'Annual Value.'
[257] 'Value of the Tithes.'
[258] 'Vicarage.'
[259] Addition, probably in a later hand.
[260] 'Or is he patron of Crosby Garret?'

19	Musgrave: Rect	Episcop. Carliolensis	016	8	1	0	q[u]		001	12	10	ob	q[u]
20	Newbigging: R.	Mr Crakenthorpe	004	14	0	0	0		000	9	5	0	0
21	Ormside: Rect.	Episcopus Carliolensis	017	17	8	ob	0		001	15	9	0	q[u]
22	Overton: Vicar.	Parochia de Overton	016	17	4	0	0		001	13	8	ob	q[u]
23	Ravenstonedale	[Blank]	[blank]						[blank]				
24	Shap: Vicaria	[Blank]	008	15	7	0	0		000	17	6	ob	q[u]
25	Warcop: Vicar.	Mr Brathwate	009	5	1	ob	0		000	18	6	0	q[u]

[I. 619][261]

A Catalogue of the Dignities of Carlisle Church

The Rev[d] Mr Machell Rector of Kirkbythore in Westmereland, this

[I. 616]
{ad Buly et dat.}

A Catalogue of the Bishops of Carlisle

Anno Domini 1133
33 Hen. 1 — 1. Athelwold, Adelwaldus, Adelwulphus or Adelwoldus
Anno Domini 1157
3[0] Hen. 2 — 2. Bernard
Anno Domini 1218
1[0] Hen. 3 — 3. Hugo, Abbot de Bello
4. Walter Malclerk
Anno Domini 1247
30 Hen. 3 — 5. Sylvester de Everdon
Anno Domini 1255
38 Hen. 3 — 6. Thomas de Veteri Ponte or Vipount
Anno Domini 1258
41 Hen. 3 — 7. Robertus de Chancy
Anno Domini 1280
7 Ed. 1 — 8. Radulphus de Ireton or Irton
Anno Domini 1288
15 Ed. 1 — 9. Johannes de Hal\a/ughton or Halton
Anno Domini 1325
18 Ed. 2 — 10. Johannes de Rosse or Ruse
Anno Domini 1332
6 Ed. 3 — 11. Johannes de Kirkby[262]
Anno Domini 1353
37 Ed. 3 — 12. Gilbertus de Welton
Anno Domini1363
37 Ed. 3 — 13. Thomas de Appleby
Anno Domini 1396
20 Rich. 2 — 14. Robertus de Reed
Anno Domini 1396
20 Rich. 2 — 15. Johannes de Merik's or de Novo Mercatu

[261] This page consists of the sealed outer paper of the list that follows; it is not in Machell's hand but appears to have been obtained from Bewley Castle, once a residence of the bishops of Carlisle. Compare this list with the longer, detailed list in *N&B2*, 251-300.

[262] MS.IV.85 contains a narrative relating to this bishop in William Nicolson's hand. Viz. '1343. A significavit is sent by Bishop Kirkby against John Aglionby; who had incurr'd excommunication ipso facto (by the Canon) by strikeing and drawing blood on the body of William Hare a Clergyman, and had continued above 40 dayes under that sentence. Reg. de Kirkby, p.478.' A significavit was a writ employed in ecclesiastical cases, issued by Chancery for the arrest of an excommunicated person; also, the bishop's certificate on which such a writ was based. *OED*.

Anno Domini 1400	
2 Hen. 4	16. William de Strickland
Anno Domini 14\19/	
6 Hen. 5	17. Roger Whelpdale*
Anno Domini 1423	
1 Hen. 6	18. William Barrow
Anno Domini 1430	
8 Hen. 6	19. Marmaduke Lumley
Anno Domini1450	
28 Hen. 6	20. Nicholas Closs or Close
Anno Domini 1452	
30 Hen. 6	21. William Pearcy
Anno Domini 1462	
2 Ed. 4	22. John Kingscot
Anno Domini 1464	
4 Ed. 4	23. Richard Scroope[263]
Anno Domini 1468	
8 Ed. 4	24. Edward Story
Anno Domini 1478	
18 Ed. 4	25. Richard Bell
Anno Domini 1496	
12 Hen. 7	26. William Senhouse
Anno Domini 1503	
19 Hen. 7	27. Roger Layborn or Layburn
Anno Domini1509	
1 Hen. 8	28. John Penny
Anno Domini 1520	
12 Hen. 8	29. John Kyte or Kite
Anno Domini 1537	
29 Hen. 8	30. Robert Aldrith or Aldridge
Anno Domini 1556	
1^0 Mary	31. Owen Oglethorp
Anno Domini 1561	
3^0 Eliz.	32. John Best
Anno Domini 1570	
12^0 Eliz.	33. Richard Barnes
Anno Domini 1577	
19 Eliz.	34. John May
Anno Domini 1598	35. Henry Robinson
Anno Domini 1616	36. Robert Snoden
Anno Domini 1622	37. Richard Milburn
Anno Domini 1624	38. Richard Senhouse or Senos
Anno Domini 1626	39. Francis White
Anno Domini 1629	40. Barnaby Potter
Anno Domini 1642	41. James Usher
Anno Domini 1660	42. Richard Sterne
Anno Domini 1664	43. ~~R~~Edward Rainbow

[263] MS.IV.85 contains a narrative relating to this bishop in William Nicolson's hand. Viz. '1465. Bishop Scroop (in his Chappal at Rose) enjoyn'd \ Christopher Curwyn of Cammerton / a penance of being lash'd round his parish church and afterwards entering with a Wax Taper (of 1.li weight) burning in his hand, and cover'd with a white sheet &c. Entering also into a Recognisance of 40 marks not to converse any more with Alice Grayson, the other Fornicator. Reg. Epi. R. Scroop.'

Anno Domini 1684	44. Thomas Smith

A Catalogue of the Priors of Carlisle[264]

Anno Domini 1304	1. Ethelwold or Adelwold
	2. Walter, Prior
	III. John, Prior
	IV. Bartholemew, Prior
	V. Radulph, prior
	VI. Robert de Morvil
	VII. Adam de Felton
	VIII. Alanus, Prior
	IX. John de Halton or Halaughton
	X. John de Kendall
	XI. Adam de Warwick
	XII. William de Hautewyssel
Anno Domini 1308	XIII. Robert de Helpeston
Anno Domini 1325	XIV. Simon de Hautewyssel
	XV. William de Hurtchworth or Hustword
	XVI. John de Kirkby, Prior
Anno Domini 1350	XVII. Galfridus
	XVIII. John de Horn-Castle
Anno Domini 1350	XIX. John de Bothcastre
	XX. Thomas de Hextildesham
	XXI. John de Penrith
	XXII. William de Dalston, Prior
	XXIII. Robert de Edenhall
	XXIV. Thomas de Hoton
	XXV. Thomas Barnaby, Prior
	XXVI. Thomas de Haythwait
	XXVII. Thomas Goudibour
	XXVIII. Simon Senous or Senhouse
	XXIX. Christopher Slee.

A Catalogue of the Deans of Carlile[265]

	1. Lancelot Salkeld
	2. Sir Thomas Smith, knight[266]
	3. John Woll'y Esq.
Anno Domini 1610	4. Christopher Parkins
	5. Francis White
	6. William Peterson
	7. Thomas Comber
Anno Domini 1660	8. Guy Carleton
Anno Domini 1671	9. Thomas Smith
Anno Domini 1684	10. Thomas Musgrave
	11. William Grahme

[264] Compare with *N&B2*, 301-03.
[265] Compare with *N&B2*, 303-05.
[266] See Part 1, Ch.14: Kirkbythore and Newbiggin,

Chancellours[267]

Anno Domini 1220	1. Adam de Kirkby
	2. Walterus de Ullesby
	3. Adam de Appleby
Anno Domini 1337	4. Robert de Southayks
Anno Domini 1355	5. Adam de Caldbeck
	6. John de Appleby
Anno Domini 1378	7. William, Rector of Bownes
Anno Domini 1379	8. William del Hall {NB* Here is a defect in the records near 200 years}
Anno Domini 1552	9. Henry Dethick
	10. George Dethick*
Anno Domini 1622	11. Isaac Singleton
Anno Domini 1660	12. Robert Lowther
Anno Domini 1666	13. Henry Marshall
Anno Domini 1667	14. Rowland Nicols
Anno Domini 1685	15. ThomasTullie

*Thomas Burton, Anno Domini 1581, out of the probat of Mr Knipe's will in the custody of the Vicar of Warcop.

[I. 618]

A Catalogue of the Arch-Deacons of Carlile[268]

A.D. 1230	1. Robertus
A.D. 1233	2. Petrus de Ros or Ross
A^0 17 Henry 3	3. Gervasius de Lowther
A.D. 1293	4. Magister Richardus
A.D/ 28 E.1	5. Petrus de Insula
A.D. 1311	6. Gilbert de Halaughton (or Halton)
A.D. 1318	7. Henry de Karliol
A.D. 1323	8. William de Kendale
A.D. 1354	9. Richardus de Arthureth
A.D. 1363	10. William de Rothbury
A.D. 1364	11. John de Appleby

{here is a defect in the registers for above 200 years to Eliz.[269]}

1548	12. George Nevill
	13. Edward Threlkeld
	14. Henry Dethick
	15. George Warkwic
	16. Robert Wright
	17. Isaac Singleton
A.D. 1660	18. Peter Wentworth[270]

[267] Compare with *N&B2*, 305-07.
[268] Compare with *N&B2*, 307-08.
[269] Elizabeth I's reign began in 1558.
[270] Peter Wentworth is not listed as an archdeacon by Nicolson and Burn but Nightingale includes him in his *Ejected of 1662*, Viz. 'Peter Wentworth, M.A., D.D., 1645-1660 (?), son of Thomas Wentworth of Oxford, and related to the Earl of Strafford. Magdalen Hall, Oxford, 1617-18, matriculated at the age of 16; Fellow of Balliol 1621; took his MA at Cambridge in 1623 ; B.D. 1631, and D.D. 1633. Rector of Riseholme, Lincolnshire, 1633. Dean of Armagh from 1637 to 1641. The Ulster Rebellion in 1641 necessitated his flight from Ireland; his appointment to the Archdeaconry of Carlisle and the Great Salkeld living followed. Whether he was resident is not clear, still less is it whether he held these appointments until the Restoration. He was in charge of Buriton in Hampshire, in January, 1658 …At the Restoration, reinstatement in his former deanery or an Irish Bishopric was offered to him, but he declined to return to Ireland, and accepted only the rectory of Haseley, in Oxfordshire. He

A.D.1660	19. Lewis West
A.D. 1667	20. Thomas Peachel
A.D. 1669	21. Thomas Musgrave
A.D. 1682	22. William Nicholson

[I.160A][271]

[Churches and Chapels in East Ward]

A Perfect Shedule of all the Churches & Chappelles within the East Ward within the Bottome of the County of Westm'land and what ~~churches~~ Constablewicks as in each Parish.

{Westm'land East Ward}

{ad 9? 12}

	Constablewicks	**Parish Churches**	**Chappelles**
{Mr Pety.}	Orton	}	
	Raisebeck	} Orton	
	Langdale	}	
	Bretherdale	}	
	Ravenstonedaile Parish divided into 3 Angles	Ravenstonedaile	
{Pendragon Castle}	Mallerstang		Mallerstange
{Lord Wharton}	Wharton & Nateby	Kirkby Stephen	
	Kirkby Stephen		
{Sir Musgrave}	Hartley		
	Soulby		Soulby
{Scaife}	Smardale & Waiteby		
{Neatby}	Winton		
	Keyber & the Outside		
	Crosby Garrett	[perished][272]	
	Musgrave		
	Stainmoore	Brough puto	Stainmoore
	Brough Sowerby		
	Market Brough		
{Lord Thanet}	Church Brough		
{Scaife}	Helbeck		
	Musgrave Great &		
	Flitholme & Langrig	Musgrave	
{Mr Brath[waite], the Hall}	Warcopp	} Warcopp	
{Scaife, the Tower}	Blaytarne		
{Mr Hilton; demolishd schoolmaster house cald New Hall}	Burton & Sandford		

died at Bath, July 22, 1661, at the age of 60; and was buried in the Abbey Church. A brass plate there bears the following inscription: Petrus Wentworth S.T.P. Patriciorum proles, doctrinae maritus. Summus Hyberniae decanus, Angliae praeconium primns. Ob. 22 Jul. 1661.' Extracted from Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 360-61.

[271] In the MS, this is written on a long, narrow piece of paper, folded at the foot and later repaired.

[272] I.160A has been restored here; some text is illegible.

{Mr Hilton}	Hilton & Murton		Murton Church demolished
	Bondgate	} Bongate	
{Machell Esq.}	Crackinthropp		Crackenthorpe Chaple demolished
{Mr Clapham}	Dufton Parish	Dufton	
	Long Marton		
{Mr Cole}	Brampton	} Long Marton	
{Jone Armstrong}	Knock		
{Mr Warton, Hall Mr Machell, Rectory}	Kirkbythore		
{Sandford, Barw. H[owgill] Castle}	Milburne & Grange	} Kirkbythore	Milburne Chappelle called Kirkhouse
Mr Dalston	Temple Sowerby		Temple Sowerby
Castle, Lord Thanet	Appleby		Note: Appleby is divided part in the East and part in the West Ward
	Scattergate & Burrells	} Appleby	
	Hoffe & Drybeck		
Mr Warcop	Cowby part of Appleby parish but in the West Ward		

[I.160B]

	East Ward	Parish Churches	Chappelles
	Constablewicks		
	~~Colby~~		
Mr Hilton	Ormside Greate & Ormside Little	} Ormside	
	Asby & Winderwath		
	Asby Coatsforth	} Asby	
Mr Musgrave, Asby Grange	Asby Little		
Mr Crakenthorpe & Crak.	Newbygin Parish	Newbygin	

<u>Westm'land Midle & West ward</u>

	Hartsopp & Patterdaile		Patterdale
	Martindale	} Barton	Martindale
	Barton & Powley		
Lowther of Whit[e]haven	Sockbridge & Low [W]inder		
Lowther of Lowther	Yanwath & Bridge		
Mr Sandford	Askham		
	Helton & Dale	Askham	
	Bampton Parish with Swindale & Mardale		
	Being part of Shapp parish	Bampton	

	[perished]		
	[perished]		
	[Di]vides there		
Abbey	Shapp Rosegill		
	Sleddale, Hardendale & Wastdale	Shapp	Mardale
Lowther	Lowther, Hackthorp & Whale	Lowther	
~~Dalston~~	Melkinthorp		
Wiber	Clifton[and] Dikes	Clifton	
Bird & Hospital	Browham		
	Woodside & Moorhouses	Ninekirks	Browham
Lowther Sir John Mr Wivell	Cliburne & Winderwath	Cliburne	
Halton	Bolton		
	Kings Meaburne		
	Sleagill		
Jack Nevinson	Newby	Morland	Bowlton
Mr Backhouse, Atkinson	Morland		
Crakanthorp & Fletch[er]	Grate Strickland		
Mr Dalston	Little Strickland		
	Thrimby		Thrimby {to Morland puto}
Captain Lowther	~~Colby~~	In St Michaels Apleby	
	Mauldsmeaburne & Reagill		
Mr Dodsworth	Crosby Ravensworth	Crosby Ravensworth	
	Bancke & Rowe		
	Birckbeck Felles		

[I.148]

Division into Wards

{Here speake of Wards or Hundreds. But now to notifye these severall into which the Barony is divided}

[I.751]

This Barony of Westm'land ~~commonly called the Bottom of Westm'land~~ Is subdivided into 3 wards – east ward West ward & Midle ward whereof the Last is quite lost & extinguished nor can wee tell how or where to finde it, unless wee ~~may take leave to~~ suppose, that the town of Appelby (which lyes in the midst betwixt the 2 wards) has ~~have~~ bin ~~called~~ \ accounted / whilst it was in its Glory, the Midle ward. of which I seeme to reteine som reliques; for it is not oblieged to repare any Bridges \ in either ward / excepting its owne. The East ward lyes, for the most part, on the East side of the River Eden, whence it taketh its name; and conteineth in it [blank] parishes.

[Machell's Notes: I.751] {Method: Consider?}
The Best may well be to follow Eden with the stremes that flow on East side into it from several Parishes But then Crak[enthorpe] come afor K[irkbythore] que injuriam fecit familiae Machellorum. Non mors.[273]
A list of High Constables, & Coroners. {Query: where sh[ould] this come in?}

[273] 'Which is an injustice to the Machell family. Not death.'

[I.148]

The East Ward is that \ tract of ground / which lyes on the east side of The Great River Eden, the West Ward, that which lies opposite to it. And the Midle Ward \ I take to be / ~~is~~ the \ ancient / Town & ~~Corporation~~ \ Burrow / of Apleby (which lyes in the Midle on each side of the river; & \ being som times / ~~which once was~~ answerable to a \ full / 5th \ part of / the County \ of Westmorland /~~when it was in its Glory~~ \ as shall be shown when I com to hear of it. / {Speake of this in the particular description of Apleby.}And yett continues the shire \ County / Town of Westm'land; being free from the \ all / Taxes & Contributions towards \ highways & / bridges & ways \ &c. / in the other 2 wardes, & repaireing her own: whence I doe conclude it The Midle Ward, which other wise is quite swallowed up of the other 2. For \ now / no man ~~now~~ liveing can certainely tell me (if this be not it) where the Midle Ward was,[274] although its name remanes on record in the Rolls of the County to this very day.[275]

[I.160]

In the East Ward
Apleby, Bongate, Colby, Overhoff, Rawe, Asheby, Little Musgrave, Crosby Garrett, Knockes, Doffton, Langton, Marton, Bra[mp]ton, Murton, Hilton, Crakenthorp, Ormside, Warcop, Neatby, Soulby, Kirkby Thore, Temple Sowerby, Newbigging, Mylborn, Great Musgrave, Kirkby Stephen, Winton, Hartlay, Sowerby, Waytby, Caber, Burght.
The sume of all grane to be sold in the Eastward: 106 quart. 2 bushels.

In the Midle Ward
Lowther, Emontbrigg, Yanwath, Winder, Burbanke, Bruham, Morland, Ascome, Hilton Fleyhun,[276] Clifton, Hagthorp, Mekyl-Strikland, Thrynby, Bolton, Mebron, Morehouses, Newby, Whytbor, Maldys Meborn, Crosby Ravensworth, Clybborn, Shap, Whale, Melkinthorp.

[I.135]

Ad Generalem Westmorlandiæ Descriptionem[277]

And \ now / to proceed to a more particular description of Westmerland. I shall begin with The East Ward of it: And therein first with the Kirkbythore Parish (which lyes in the very north pointe of this ward, \ & / next unto Cumberland) both because it is the place of my residence,[278] and allso it falls out to be that parish wherein the ancient Gallatum stood, which was the iiij city of the Brigantes i.e. Counties Yorkshire, Lanc., Bishoprick of Durham, Westm'land, when the Romans first Invaded Brittan & som time after.[279] {And this is confirmed by a stone set up in the Gardine house at Apleby School thus inscribed:} {Claudius Drusus Caesar Emp.}[280] {Speed p.194.}

---

[274] MS: 'where \ it should befored {stand} / the Midle Ward was \ stood.'/
[275] See also I.751, below. Nicolson and Burn describe the wards thus. 'Wards …four in number… being the districts of the like number of High Constables, who presided over the wards … for repelling plundering parties out of Scotland. Two of these wards are in the barony of Kendal, to wit, Kendal and Lonsdale Wards; and two in the Bottom, called East and West Wards: There was anciently a Middle Ward between these two last; but since watching and warding ceased, that hath fallen into and been absorbed by the other two.' *N&BI*, 12-13.
[276] Helton Flecket, now known as Helton: *N&B1*, 427.
[277] Here, Machell tells us that he intends to begin the parish sections with his own parish of Kirkby Thore; specifically, the village of Temple Sowerby. His settled method, however (described in detail in several parts of the six volumes), was to place the parish sections in alphabetical order within each barony, after describing the major town.
[278] Machell was presented to Kirkby Thore in 1677, see Editor's Introduction.
[279] MS: 'and allso ~~because & Because~~ it falls out to be that parish wherein the ancient Gallacum stood, which was the ~~Chief place not only~~ \ iiij city of the Brigantes / ~~In these Westmorland But in~~ \ i.e. / C. Yorkshire Lanc. ~~&~~ \ Bishoprick of / Durham, \ Westmorland ~~& Northumberland~~ / when the Romans first Invaded Brittan & som time after.'
[280] The last two margin comments have been moved from the top of MS.I.135B.

{Having spoke of the Parish with it[s] description by Meets & Boundes & what it affords, mention, in Generall, then divided thus: It is divided in 3 Lordship[s]: K[irkby Thore], Milburne & Temple S[owerby] – I shall begin with S[owerby] first because the place where my B. began {And so follow Eden (& the Military Way, calld the Hee Street) Till I arrive at far end of this Easterne Ward. I will begin at Eden Side. Thus, haveing made my perambulation I will tell you what I have observd.}

[Machell's Notes: I.135]

But Query: whether I shall begin my perambulation from west to north & so on with the son[281] as I doe the ward, or the contrary way.}

[I.750]

{1. The Barony of Westm'land described}

The Barony of Westm'land is otherwise called The Bottom of Westm'land from its low situation & is a most delicate Champion Countrey with mountaines as with a fence or Bulworke.[282] And lyeth in the N. part of Westm'land / extends in length from Brough under Stanemore eastwards to Emot Bridge, westwards about [blank] \ being watered with Eden, Emote & Lowther alius / And from ~~K which~~ Newbying, which is the North \ north point of Kirkbythore Parish / to Greata brig in the south about \ 12, in which you are as in a Gardine. /

{Sleddall, Loan and many less principall Brookes of Westm'land, is cald the Garden: The Garden of Eden.}

{Apalby Castle}

{Caput Baroniæ[283] & wherein formerly the Sessions Assises & prisners were kept.}

The Principal Seate of this Barony of Westm'land is at Appelby Castle which is Caput Baroniæ – to which is annext the shirefalty of the County ~~of Westm'land~~ by ancient Inheritance ~~being Granted~~ \ given ~~&~~ by King John / to Robert de Veteripont in the iiijth of his reign [1202-03]. And so has passed by the Heires general from him to the Cliffords.

{The Tuftons}

And from the Cliffords to The Tuftons of Tufton; now Earles of Thanet, Barons of Westm'land & shieriffs by inheritance, & Lords of the Honours of Appelby & Skipton – of whom wee shall give a particular History when wee com to speake of Appelby Castle.

There are 2 other places which beare the names of Baronyes, Sc. Dufton & Barton, But I thinke they are only called so because they belonged to Dakers of Daker who were sometime seald Barons} {And the other to the Barons of K[endal.]}*

[Machell's Notes: I.750]

*{Q. whether here or there? The Succession of the Barons of Westm'land

[281] 'sun'.

[282] MS: 'The Barony of Westmorland is ~~commonly~~ \ otherwise / called the Bottom of Westmorland from Its \ low / situation ~~being plane and Champion lyetth in the N. part of Westmorland~~ & Is a \ most / delicate Champion Countrey ~~excepting the mountains with which it is~~ encompassed \ with mountaines / as with a ~~Girdle wall~~ \ fence / or Bulworke/ ~~and~~ \ ~~this Bottom of W. it'~~

[283] For 'caput baroniæ', see the Latin Glossary.

[I.41]

II
Part 2
Collections in Order to the
<u>Generall</u> <u>Discription</u>
&
Division of
Westm'la



Figure 4. Proposed Title Page, 'These Armes with the Pedigrees adjoyned will make a pretty Booke.' I.41.

[A.] The Method may be thus

1. A prefatorie epistle vindicateing the County from aspertions and showing that it is called Westmoreland from Mo\o/res whether fe[r]till or otherwise \ If not from Morus the King. /
2. Procede to speake of the County of Westm'land and there show: 1[t]. Why tis called a County, where Cont. & shireve, when this division first begann. 2. Why Westm'land. 3. Proceed to its description – By bounds & Limits, by figure & extent, by Quality of the soyle (1. hill, 2. daile, 3. vaile) and allso of the inhabitants \ Their customes Tenures & sports. /
3. Proceed to the division into Botom & Barony; Hundred or Wards: general parishes & Lordships.[284]

[284] 4^0 = quarto.

4. Partic[ular]. Proceed to speake of parish & Lordships therein as the more particular Tract de Westm'land and that according to alphabeticall order in the parishes, except in the shire towne, which requireing a more particular tract than the rest and haveing 2 parish churches in it, will oblige me to treat of them under the Na[me] of Appleby.

[Machell's Notes: I.41]

*These Armes with the Pedigrees adjoyned will make a pretty Booke[285] & See my Notes on Heraldry out of Boswell.[286] It is in 4^0.

[I.43][287]

Discriptio Generalis

1. Of Westm'land in Gennerall.
2. It[s] Limits.
3. Why so called? 1. Why County? 2. Why Westm'land?
4. The Quality of the soyle.
5. The Commodityes
    1. Westm'land why soe called? Sc. from the moors but Camden's sense of moor refuted & the fertility of the soyle vindicated §2. 3: p. 6. & 7. {2. Dales 3. Vailes 1. Hills}[288]
    2. It General description:
        i. By Bounds & Limites.
        ii. By figure & extent.
        iii. By it qualities – pag. 7. §8. {Sheep, mines, quarries, peeks, woods, turfes, deere, Coal} Why called a County §3. Whence the word comes, whence shire & shireue?[289] ibidem. When England was first devided into shires §4 \ p. 4 / (How many shires it was 1st divided into? How many att the Conquest? §5. & why this with some other Northern Counytes were not then taxed) \ and that Westm'land never belong'd to the Scotts §6.[290] /
        iv. {Here a Catalogue of Earls & Sheriffs.}
        v. Thence occasion to condole his want of assistance that shall undertake to write of this subject, with other imped[iments].
        vi. & here I may take occasion to share it never did belong unto Scotland.

    3. Of the rivers in Westm'land, their courses with mention of Gentlemen's seats upon them, as allso Milns & Bridges. p.15.
    4. Of the highwayes or great roads immediate *post Fluvi*.[291]
    5. A Table of Raites of One division in the East Ward which showes the \ proportion / rent of every towne therein {not to be published} & the Royal Ayde which they payd {not much pertinent} as allso of Demaines & their ~~rent &~~ \ proportion to the / Ayde: p.1.

[285] In the MS, Machell lightly sketched a coat of arms (5cm x 4cm) on either side of his title.
[286] John Boswell (or Bossewell), heraldic writer and author of the *Workes of Armorie* (Three volumes: 'The Concordes of Armorie', 'The Armorie of Honor', 'Of Coates and Creastes' (1572). 'Contains between three and four hundred coats of arms particularly well cut in wood': John Holmes, *Descriptive Catalogue of Books in his Library, Vol 2* (London, 1830), 15.
[287] Also numbered p.4.
[288] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 759; see also *N&B1*, 1, 3, for similar text.
[289] Shireue: sheriff.
[290] MS: §5.
[291] 'After rivers.'

[III.vii]

A collection of what relates to Westm'land
Out of Mr Adam's *Index Villaris*, London 1680[292]

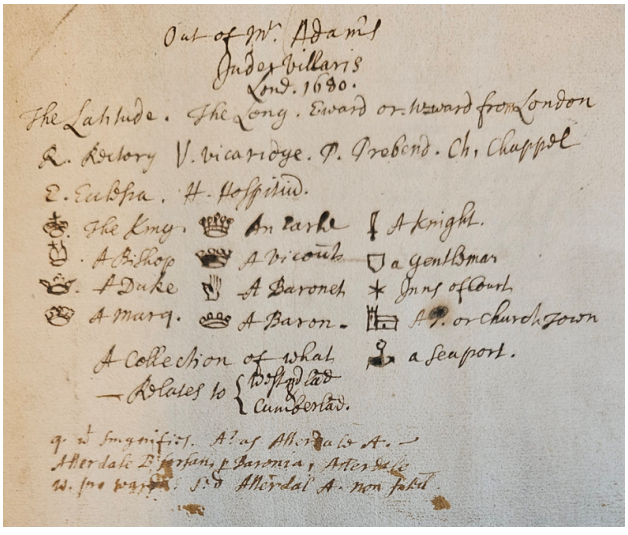


Figure 5. 'Out of Mr Adam's Index Villaris'. *III.vii.*

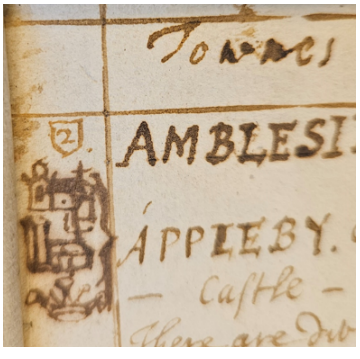


Figure 6. Examples of symbols, based on the Index Villaris. *III.1.*

[292] Machell conducted a highly charged correspondence with John Adams, see Part 3, Ch.2, E. Correspondence with John Adams, cartographer, 1686/7. In 1680, Adams published the *Index Villaris, or, An alphabetical table of all cities, market-towns, parishes, villages, private seats in England and Wales* … (reprinted with additions in 1690 and 1700). It was compiled from sources such as hearth tax returns, navigational works, and works to aid land travellers, notably those of John Ogilby, and designed to be used in conjunction with the map. It refers to 24,000 places using geographical co-ordinates, see Elizabeth Baigent, 'Adams, John (d.1738)'. *ODNB*. The full title gives some idea of the scope of this work: *An exact register, alphabetically digested, of all the cities, market-towns, parishes, villages, the hundred, lath, rape, ward, wapentake, or other division of each county the bishopricks, deaneries, churches, chappels, hospitals, with the rectories and vicarages in England and Wales and their respective valuations in the King's books, the private seats of the King, nobility and gentry, the number of Parliament-men sent by cities or burroughs, the inns of court, colleges, inns of chancery, or other societies, the latitude of each particular place, and difference of longitude, East or West from London : explained by words at length, and symbols or characters, in a plain and most intelligible method : hereto is added a perfect catalogue of the nobility of England and Wales to the present time, Feb. 20, 1700, with their respective seats, and the counties wherein they are situate*.

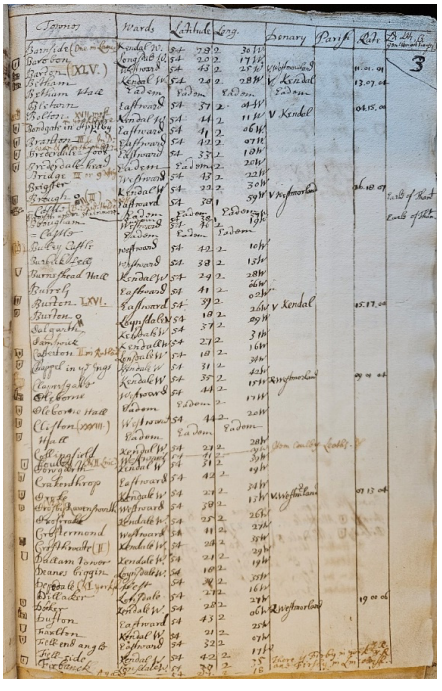


Figure 7. Part of Machell's Township Chart. III.3.

[III.1]

Towns, Wards, Latitude and Longitude, Deanery, Parish, Rate and Lords
[Chart inspired by the *Index Villaris* of John Adams]

⛊ In the chart below denotes a gentleman
[† in the chart below denotes a parish or church town]

	Towns	Wards	Latitude	Long. from London e. or w.	Denary	Parish	Rate	Lords & Gentry houses
⛊2. †	AMBLESIDE	Kendal	54-35	2-40 w.				
An earle	APPLEBY	Eastward	54-41	2-08 w.	Westmorland	St Lawr. V. St Mich. V.		Earls of Thanet
	Castle	eadem	eadem	eadem	eadem			
There are diverse other towns of this name: Sc. ~~Appellby~~ in Derbyshire in the Hundred of Ripington; in Lincolnshire in the Hundred of Manlake, & Appleby Magna & Parva in the counties of Leicester, & Hundred of Sparkingho; and Appleby Street in the county & Hundred of Hartford. From all which that this may be distinguished I would rather choose to write it Appelby, as it has bin of old. Q: Locus Appellationum or Apalby from Aballaba, its ancient name, tho I must confess that I never met with it writ in this manner.								
⛊1	Applethwate	Kendal W.	54-31	2-38 w.				1.
? 0	Armside ? Ormside	Eastward	54-34	2-09 w.				1.
? 0	Arnwith	Westward	54-43	2-22 w.				
† 2	Asby: He calls it Cotsford, the church town							

⛊3	Asby Cotsford	Eastward	54-35	2-10 west	Westm'land		R. £33. 13s. 4d	
1	Asby Magna	eadem	54-36	eadem				
1	Asby Overgrange	eadem	54-34	2-09 west				
0	Asby Parva	eadem	54-35	2-08 west				
⛊?	Ashthwate	Kendal	54-30	2-21 west				
⛊1	Askham	Westward	54-43	2-22 west				
There are ~~many~~ \ IIII / other townes of this name in Yorkshire and Notingham								
⛊2	Bampton Patric	Westward	54-39	2-22 west				
There are 2 more BAMTONS both as I take it market towns, the one in Devonshire, the other in Oxfordshire								
0	Banck	Westward	54-37	2-23 west				
There is also a place in Cumberland in Lethward of the same name, where ⛊ 1 and another in Staffordshire in the Hundreds of Pirehil: 0								
† 1	Bamton	Westward	54-39	2-23 w.		v.	7:1:4	
There is also Bamton Parva & Bamto Kirk or rather Kirkbamton in Cumberland								
								[III.3]
	Barnside (one in Lancashire)	Kendal W.	54-28	2-30 w.				
⛊1	Barobon	Longsdale w.	54-20	2-17 w.				
†	Barton (XLV)	Westward	54-43	2-25 w.	V. Westmoreland		11:01:01	
†	Betham	Kendal W.	54-20	2-25 w.	V. Kendal		04:15:00	
	Betham Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem	eadem			
	Bletarn	Eastward	54-37	2-04 w.				
†	Bolton XVII Most in Yorkshire	Kendal W.	54-44	2-11 w.	V. Kendal		04:15:00	
⛊1	Bondgate in App\e/lby	Eastward	54-41	2-06 w.				
⛊1	Branton III Sc. in Devon & Northumberland	Eastward	54-42	2-07 w.				
⛊1	Brederdale-Foot	Eastward	54-33	2-18 w.				
⛊1	Brederdale-Head Bridge III or 9 de[…]	eadem	eadem	2-20 w.				
	Brigster	Westward	54-43	2-22 w.				
⛊1	Brough o (III) (B. East Rid. Holderness)	Kendal W.	54-22	2-30 w.			16:18:07	
An Earle	Castle	Eastward	54-38	1-59 w.	V. Westmorland			Earle of Thanet
	& Brough upon Stainmore	eadem	54-38	1-19 w.				
	Brougham	Westward	54-46	2-19 w.				Earle of Thanet
	Castle	eadem	eadem	eadem				
A Bishop	Buley Castle	Westward	54-42	2-10 w.				
	Burbeck Fells	Westward	54-38	2-13 w.				
⛊	Burne Head Hall	Kendal W.	54-29	2-28 w.				
	Burrels	Eastward	54-41	2-06 w.				
⛊1	Burton (LXVI)	Eastward	54-39	2-02 w.				

⛊1	Burton 0	Loynsdale w.	54-18	2-26 w.	V. Kendal		15:17:00	
	Calgarth	Kendale W.	54-37	2-29 w.				
	Camswick	Kendall W.	54-27	2-31 w.				
⛊1	Casterton II in Rutland	Lonsdale W.	54-18	2-16 w.				
⛊1	Chappel in the Ings	Kendale W.	54-31	2-34 w.				
	Clapergate	Kendale W.	54-35	2-42 w.				
†	Cleborne	Westward	54-44	2-15 w.	R. Westmorland		09:01:04	
⛊1	Cleborne Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊1	Clifton (XXXIII)	Westward	54-44	2-15 w.				
⛊1	Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
	Collingfield	Kendal W.	54-27	2-28 w.				
⛊1	Coulby (& II Linc.)	Westward	54-41	2-09 w.	Item Coulby Leaths			
	Congarth	Kendal W.	54-31	2-39 w.				
⛊1	Crakenthrop	Eastward	54-42	2-09 w.				
⛊1	Croke	Kendale W.	54-27	2-34 w.				
⛊1	Crosby (VI) Ravensworth	Westward	54-38	2-13 w.	V. Westmorland		07:13:04	
	Croscrake	Kendale W.	54-25	2-26 w.				
	Crostermond	Westward	54-41	2-27 w.				
⛊1	Crosthwate (II)	Kendale W.	54-24	2-35 w.				
⛊	Dallam Tower	Kendale W.	54-21	2-29 w.				
	Deanes Biggin	Loynsdale W.	54-18	2-19 w.				
	Depedale (& 1 Yorksh.)	West	54-39	2-35 w.				
	Dillaker	Lonsdale	54-27	2-16 w.				
⛊1	Docker	Kendale W.	54-28	2-27 w.				
†	Dufton	Eastward	54-43	2-06 w.	R. Westmorland		19:00:06	
⛊	Farlton	Kendal W.	54-21	2-25 w.				
⛊1	Fell-end Angle	Eastward	54-32	2-07 w.				
	Fell-side	Kendal W..	54-42	2-17 w.				
⛊1	Firbanck	Lonsdale W.	54-27	2-35				
	Agane		54-27	2-18	There is Firby in Yorkshire & Firsby in Lincolnshire			

[III.4]

*There are many places ~~in England~~ which begin with Glen, as first Glen, in Northamptonshire; 2. Glen Magna & Parva, & Glenfield in Leicester; 3. Glenrumney in Glamorgan in Wales.
⛊ > Graveship – Kendal Ward: 54-25/ 2-26 w.
+ many towns begin with Grisi, as Gresby in Lincoln; 2. Gresfords in Denbigh, Gresham in Norfolk & Gresham College in Midlesex, & Gresley, & Greshey Castle in Darby. Q: de Gres?
Bewcastle Nixon in the same ward & same degree of latitude; long. 02-16 w.
Birkby ⛊ 1; Allendale A. 54-27/ 3-07 w.

Birkby ⛊ 1; Allendale B.. 54-50/3-04. w.[293]
Hutton: there are xxx places of this denomination, several of which have distinguishing termes aded unto them. Sc. in Essex, Lancashire, Somerset, Yorke, Cumberland, Durham, Dorset, but most in Yorkshire.

[III.5]

⛊	Glenkwen	Westward	54-40	2-38 w.				
⛊	Grazinghall*	Kendall War.	54-30	2-19 w.				
†	Gresmere +	Kendal War.	54-36	2-45 w.	R. Kendal		28:11:05 ½	
⛊[294]	Hackthrop (14 or 15)	Westward	54-43	2-20 w.				
⛊	Hall	Eadem	Eadem	Eadem				
	Harberwen[295] (3)	Westward	44-37	2-16 w.				
	Hardingdale (7)	Westward	54-37	2-21 w.				
	Hartley (xi)	Eastward	54-33	2-00 w.				
	Castle	eadem	eadem	eadem				
	Hartshop	Westward	54-38	2-35 w.				
⛊	-Hall	Eedem	eadem	eadem				
⛊	Haverbrack Hall	Kendale War.	54-21	2-29 w.				
⛊	Harose House	Kendal War.	54-31	2-16 w.				
	Haye (VI or VII)	Kendal W.	54-28	2-24 w.				
⛊1	Hedcorne (1 in Kent)	Eastward	54-40	1-58 w.				
	Helbeck	Eastward	54-39	1-58 w.				
⛊	Helbeck Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊1	Helsington	Kendal War.	54-26	2-28 w.				
	Helsington Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
	Helton (1 in Dorset)	Westward	54-41	2-23 w.				
†	Helton-Bacon	Westward	54040	2-02 w.	R. Kendall		20:00:06	
	Helton Dale	eadem	eadem	2-25 w.				
⛊1	Heversham	Kendal W.	54-21	2-29 w.	R. Kendal		08:09:02	
⛊	Highhouses	Kendal W.	54-31	2-34 w.				
⛊1	Hilton (XVIII)	Eastward	54-40	2-2 w.				
⛊1	Hincaster	Kendal W.	54-21	2-26 w.				
	Hoff	Eastward	54-39	2-09 w.				
	Hollinghall	Kendal War.	54-29	2-33 w.				
⛊1	Holme (XV or XVI)	Lonsdale W.	54-19	2-26 w.				
	Holmescales	Kendal W.	54-20	2-22 w.				
⛊1	Hoaf	Eastward	54-38	2-10 w.				
⛊1	Horlay (& 3 Horleys)	Eastward	54-36	2-24 w.				
⛊	Horlay Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
	Hornby	Westward	54-47	2-17 w.				
A Baronet	Howgill Castle	Eastward	54-45	2-07 w.				
	Hudfoot	Westward	54-46	2-14 w.				

[293] This paragraph (relating to Bewcastle and Birkby) has been scored through.
[294] This symbol has been scored through.
[295] Harberwain.

A Baronet 0	Hugill ⛊1	Kendale W.	54-31	2-34 w.				
⛊1	Hutton in the Hay x	Kendal War.	54-28					
⛊1	Hutton Roofe	Lonsdale W.	54-18	2-17 W.				
⛊1	Hutton Old	Kendal W.	54-24	2-23 w.				
	St Katherines (VI)	Kendal Ward	54-25	2-32 w.				
	Kellath	Eastward	54-32	2-12 w.				
⛊2	Kendal 0 11	Kendal W.	54-28	2-27 w.	v. Kendall		92:05:00	
	Castle	eadem	54-27	2-25 w.				
⛊1	Kentmere	Kendal W.	54-33	2-34 w.				
⛊1	Killington (8 beg)	Lonsdale W.	54-25	2-18 w.				
⛊1	Kings-Meburn	Westward	54-41	2-13 w.				

[III.6]

> Langdale: Eastward, 54-32; 2-13. W. There are no other places in the villars of this name, excepting only Longdale End in York N.R. & hundred of Whitby, 54-23; 01-19.
⛊ > *Mayburgh Castle, Westward 54-45; 2-21
+ The name of Medep: […] in Yorkshire is Middop: W.R. in Stanicliff hundred.
Mortons in England & Wales XXXIV. There is Morvale in Cornwal, Morvil in Penbrock, & Morvil in Salop.
†> 0 Musgrave Magna, Eastward: 54-36; 2-2 w. R. […] 16:8:10½
A Baronet: Musgrave Parva Eastward: 54-36; 2-3 w. (Westm'land Deanery)
*4 Ormsbys. Sc. 2 in Lancashire & 2 in Northfolk. & Ormskirk in Lancashire, a market town in Darby Ward.

[III.7]

A baronet	Kirby-Kendall	Kendal W.	54-28	2-28 w.				
⛊1	Kirby-Lonsdale 0 11	Lonsdale W.	54-17	2-18 w.	V. Lonsdale		20:15:02	
⛊1	Kirbysteven 0 11	Eastward	54-34	2-03 w.	V. Westmorland		48:19:02	
⛊2	Kirkby-Thure	Eastward	54-43	2-08 w.	R. Westmorland		37:17:08½	
	Kirkland	Eastward	54-47	2-08 w.				
⛊1	Kirk-land	Kendal War.	54-28	2-27 w.				
	Knipe	Westward	54-38	2-23 w.				
⛊1 ?	Knock (no no) Knock Torum in Chest[er]?[296]	Eastward	54-44	2-27 w.				
	Lady-ford	Kendal W.	54-28	2-27 w.				
	Lamrige	Kendal W.	54-29	2-20 w.				
⛊1	Langdale Magna[297]	Kendal W.	54-36	2-46 w.				
⛊1	Langdale Parva	eadem	54-35	2-48 w.				
	Lanton (XX Langtons)	Eastward	54-40	2-05 w.				
	Leith ~~Kend~~	Kendal W.	54-24	2-35 w.				
A Baronet 0	Levens ⛊ 1	Kendal Wa.	54-22	2-29 w.				
	Long-sleddale	Kendal W.	53-34	2-31 w.				

[296] Knocktorum is Noctorum, a suburb of Birkenhead; see F. Sanders and W.F. Irvine (eds), *Wirral Notes and Queries ... Relating to the Hundred of Wirral, Vol. 1* (Birkenhead, 1892), 40.
[297] A horizontal line here, and also beside Langdale Parva, denotes information on Langdale on III.6.

	Loughrigg	Kendal W.	54-36	2-44 w.				
	Lowther	Westward	54-43	2-21 w.	R. Westmorland		25:07:02½	
A Baronet	Lother Hall	eadem	eadem					
1	Lupton	Lonsdale W.	54-24	2-17 w.				
	Lythe (V or VI)	Kendal W.	54-24	2-34 w.				
	Malsborn	Westward	54-39	2-15 w.				
⛊1	Mansergh	Lonsdale W.	54-20	2-17 w.				
⛊1	Martindale	Westward	54-40	2-30 w.				
⛊1	Marton	Eastward	54-43	2-08 w.	R. Westmorland		21:15:05½	
	>*[298]							
⛊1	Meborn Mauds	Westward	54-41	2-14 w.				
+[299]	Methap	Kendal W.	54-20	2-33 w.				
⛊2	Midleton	Loynsdale W.	54-23	2-17 w.				
A Baronet 0	Milborn ⛊ 1 (VIII) Milborn[300] Grange Warwicksh.	Eastward	54-23	2-17 w.				
⛊1	Milthrop (III)	Kendal W.	54-21	2-30 w.				
⛊1	Mollerstang	Eastward	54-30	2-04 w.				
† 2	Morland	Westward	54-42	2-13 w.	V. Westmorland		11:18:00	
⛊	Morton Hall	Eastward	54-33	2-09 w.				
⛊1	> 0[301]							
	Naitby	Eastward	54-33	2-02 w.				
	Nanesergh	Kendal W.	54-22	2-29 w.				
	Nanerooth	Westward	54-45	2-22 w.				
⛊2	Natland	Kendale W.	54-25	2-26 w.				
⛊1	Newbiggin (VI) all in York, W. C. & Nor.	Eastward	54-46	2-10 w.	R. Westmorland		04:10:04	
⛊	Newby Stanes VI in W. & Y.	Westward	54-02	2-14 w.				
	Oddledo[…]	Westward	54-36	2-15 w.				
	Orald [?]	Kendale W.	54-22	2-33 w.				
⛊1	Ormeshead Magna	Eastward	54-37	2-06 w.				
*[302]	Ormeshead Parva	eadem	eadem	eadem				

[III.8]

*There is Pater Church in York &Patrick Brampton in the North Rideing of Yorkshire; Patricksborn in Kent, & Patrington, a market town in the East Rideing of York.
2 Shapwicks: one in Dorset & the other in Somerset.
*There is Skallingdam in the north; k in York; Skalshal, Leth Ward in Cumberland.

[298] Symbols here point to information on places beginning with the letter 'M' on III.6.
[299] A symbol here refers the reader to further information on III.6.
[300] Milburn Grange, Warwickshire.
[301] Symbols here refer the reader to information on places called Morton on III.6.
[302] A symbol refers the reader to settlements called Ormsby on III.6.

There is Sock in Somerset; Sockborn in Durram in Stricklan Ward								
								[III.9]
⛊1	Orton 0 11 (VI)	Eastward	54-33	2-18 w				
	Oxenholme	Kendal W.	54-27	2-25 w.				
⛊1 x	Patterdale	Westward	54-39	2-36 w.				
⛊1	Patton	Kendal W.	54-29	2-24 w.				
An Earle	Pendragon Castle XLI	Eastward	54-30	2-03 w.				
⛊	Powley	Westward	54-42	2-26 w.				
⛊	Preston Hall (LIII)	Kendal W.	54-22	2-26 w.				
⛊1	Preston Patrick	Kendal W.	54-22	2-26 w.				
⛊1	Preston Richard	Kendal W.	54-22	2-25 w.				
⛊	Raisgil Hall	Eastward	54-32	2-15 w.				
	Rasbeck	Eastward	54-33	2-12 w.				
⛊1	Rasgill	Westward	54-39	2-22 w.				
⛊	-Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊1	Ravingstone-dale	Eastward	54-32	2-07 w.				
⛊1	Regill	Westward	54-39	2-17 w.				
⛊	Regill Grange	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊	Rigmadon	Lonsdale	54-35	2-40 w.				
	Runthwate	Eastward	54-32	2-17 w.				
⛊1	Rydal N. R. York	Kendal W.	54-36	2-42w.				
⛊1	Rydal Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊1	Sandford (VI)	Eastward	54-39	2-03 w.				
⛊1	Seggeswick	Kendal W.	54-24	2-27 w.				
⛊1	Selside (VIII)	Kendal W.	54-41	2-07 w.				
⛊	Selside Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊	Selsted Hall	Kendal W.	54-31	2-26 w.				
⛊1	Shap[303]	Westward	54-39	2-20 w.				
⛊	Shap Abbey	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊	Shap Grange	eadem	eadem	eadem				
⛊1	Siserge	Kendal W.	54-24	2-30 w.				
⛊1*[304]	Skalthwate Rigge	Kendal W.	54-30	2-15 w.				
⛊1	Skattergate	Eastward	54-39	2-03 w.				
⛊1	Skelsmore (XV)	Kendall W.	54-29	2-25 w.				
⛊1	Sleddale Sledmere E.R. York	Westward	54-33	2-32 w.				
⛊1	Slegill	Westward	54-41	2-16 w.				
A Baronet 0	Smardale (Smarden Kent)	Eastward	54-34	2-05 w.				
A Baronet 0	Sockbridge	Westward	54-45	2-23 w.				
⛊1	Soulby (I Cum.)	Eastward	54-36	2-03 w.				
⛊1	Sowerby (VIII)	Eastward	54-36	2-00 w.				

[303] A symbol here points to information on ‘Shap’ place-names on III.8.
[304] The symbol here refers to information on place-names beginning with ‘Skal’ on III.8.

⛊	Sowerby Castle	Eastward	54-36	eadem				
⛊1	Temple Sowerby	Eastward	54-45	2-12 w.				
	Spittle	Kendall W.	54-28	2-26 w.				
	Stainbanck Green	Kendall W.	54-28	2-26 w.				
⛊1	Stainmore	Eastward	54-36	1-54 w.				
⛊1	Stainton (X all N.W.)	Kendal W.	52-22	2-29 w.				
	Stanley (XI)	Eastward	54-40	2-08 w.				
⛊1	Staveley (I in Darby)	Kendal W.	54-31	2-31 w.				
⛊	Strickland Hall	Westward	54-42	2-18 w.				
	Strickland Kettle	Kendal W.	54-24	2-30 w.				
⛊1	Strickland Magna	Westward	54-42	2-19 w.				
	Strickland Parva	Westward	54-42	2-18 w.				
	Strickland Roger	Kendale W.	54-24	2-31 w.				
	Sunbiggin	Eastward	54-34	2-12 w.				
	Tebay	Eastward	54-32	2-15 w.				
	Thistlethwate	Westward	54-29	2-25 w.				

[III.10]

a. Thurn in Norfolk, & Thurning in Northampton & Huntington; Thurnham in Lancashire; Thurnby & Thurnenaston in Leicester.
b. There is Ullesby, a rectory in Cumberland in Allerdale; Uldale another; Ulleskelf in the N. R. in Yorkshire; Ulseby: 2 towns of that name in Lincoln; Ulsthorp in Leicester & Ulvescross Abby.

*Qu. How this mistake? For Wharton is in Kirkby Stephan parish, which is a V. rated as above.

> + Whitwell (IX) Kendal: 54-42; 2-17 w.
> 0 Winander-mere Kendal W.: 54-30; 2-40 w. R. Kendal, [£] 24:6:8.

Ad Winder: There are townes of this name, one in Lanc., another in Cumberland in Allerdale, and a place in Warwick and Wriderton in ? in Kington Hundred.

d. There is Winton in Southampton, Sussex & N. R. in Yorkshire.

[III.11]

⛊1	Thornthwate	Westward	54-38	2-27 w.				
⛊	Thornthwate Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
a.[305]	Thurnby \ Cumb et W. R. York /	Westward	54-41	2-18 w.				
	Thranthwate	Kendal W.	54-25	2-18 w.				
	Trantram	Westward	54-28	2-21 w.				
⛊1	Troutbeck (I in Cum.)	Kendal W.	54-33	2-26 w.				
	Ubarrow	Kendal W.	54-28	2-29 w.				
⛊ 2 b.[306]	Ulva	Kendal W.	54-29	2-30 w.				
	Underbarrow	Kendal W.	54-25	2-33 w.				
	Underley	Loynsdale	54-18	2-19 w.				
	Waitby	Eastward	54-43	2-18 w.				

[305] See III.10.
[306] See III.10.

⛊1	Warcop	Eastward	54-38	2-03 w.	V. Westmorland		09:15:01½	
⛊	Warcop Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
	Wastol Foot	Westward	54-35	2-19 w.				
	Wastal Head	eadem	54-36	2-23 w.				
	Watchfeild (I in Bark.)	Kendal W.	54-28	2-26 w.				
	Watland	Kendal W.	54-25	2-26 w.				
Q.	Wellop	Westward	54-44	2-11 w.				
	Wharton	Eastward	54-33	2-05 w.	R* [307] Westmorland	*	74:10:01	No suer
	Wharton Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				Lord Wharton
⛊	Whinfield	Kendal Ward	54-30	2-22 w.				
	> + 1[308]							
	Wickerslack	Westward	54-38	2-16 w.				
	> 0[309]							
	Winder	Westward	54-41	2-38 w.				
⛊1	Winstar (I in Darby by M.)	Kendal W.	54-26	2-38 w.				
⛊1	Winton	Eastward	54-34	2-02 w.				
	Witherslake (field in Sussex)	Ken W.dal	54-22	2-33 w.				
	Yanewith	Westward	54-43	2-26 w.				
⛊	Yanewith Hall	eadem	eadem	eadem				
There is Yeartor & Yearton Court in Devon								
Addenda								
	Woodside							
†	Windermere							

[III.12]

N. Alsten Moore cannot be in Westm'land Denary.

[I.600]

[B.] {Ad Generall} Pars. 3[a]}

[I.149] [310]

[General Notes 1.]

There are few places of the Compass of Westm'land which have produced so many viri clari[311] for Learneing & otherwise, as Westm'land & Cumberland; so well has the erecting of Queen's College in Oxford answerd the expect[ations] of the Piouse founder – who did it amongst som other reasons for this more especially.[312]

Par. III. A Common Place Booke for the Antiquities of Westmerland.

[307] See III.10.
[308] Symbols to denote information on III.10.
[309] Symbol to denote information on III.10.
[310] Much of the marginalia are blotted and overwritten; consequently, some of the transcription is insecure.
[311] 'Outstanding men'.
[312] The "Hall of the Queen's Scholars at Oxford" was founded in 1341 by Robert de Eglesfield, a chaplain in the household of Queen Philippa, who named it in her honour. He envisaged an establishment of fellows, chaplains, 'poor boys' and various officials and servants, headed by a Provost. Membership was to be open, but with a preference for inhabitants of Cumberland and Westmorland. Initially The Queen's College was poor, but the endowment slowly grew … After 1400 the preference for people from Cumberland and Westmorland became a monopoly, making Queen's a community of north-westerners. During the 15th and 16th centuries it prospered. Benefactors were Bishop Thomas Barlow (Provost 1658-77) and Sir Joseph Williamson (Charles II's Secretary of State). See https://www.queens.ox.ac.uk/history.

Memorandum: to paist the Map so that it may turne up out of the Booke while you are a-reading, so that you may consult it before your eyes in any part of the Booke.[313]

In the next General, speake of
Hyde &c. See this at ~~Brough~~ \ Merton / p. 1.
Cornage.
Border Service.
In Brough as novell scutagij.[314]
Allso in the beginning de Bowes.

{Method}
{South from K.[315] lyes the [blank] of Bondgate – so calld from the Town where the church stands, which is Part of Apleby & ~~and there I shal treat of~~ which hath in it 2 parish churches – St Michael and St Lawrence; ergo I shal treat of this Town – 1st of St Michael, cont[ained] in the Lordship Bongate, Sc. Crakenthorp, Murton, Hilton, Langton & Bat.: of which in order the last, of Batleber, as part of the SW.[316] And in these,

1. of Antiquities & rarityes.
2. of [317]& houses Armes & Pedegrees.}[318]

[I.41B]

Query. at London

1. Of Manner houses in the Tower Rolls;[319] to finde out the Antiq[uity] of the Gentlemen in Westm'land. Write an alpha[betical] Table. both of them and the Gentlemen.
2. Search the Her[alds] for Knights, Matches, Armes.
   i. Of ancestry of families, which were Knights?
   ii. Of Matches – belong to each family?
   {Se the Arms of Sled Becks.}

[I.42]

Ogleby[320]

---

[313] There is no pull-out map but the memorandum suggests Machell's plan for the finished work.
[314] 'Scutage': money paid by a vassal to his lord in lieu of military service.
[315] Kirkby Thore.
[316] Insecure transcription.
[317] The next two words are illegible.
[318] This margin comment is very unclear.
[319] MS: 'Rools'.
[320] Several notes in these volumes refer to John Ogilby (1600-1676). They begin in 1673, when 'a group comprising the publisher John Ogilby, the lawyer Sir John Hoskins, the architect Christopher Wren, the antiquary John Aubrey and the surveyor Gregory King, held a meeting to devise a list of research topics for a projected series of county studies which were to form part of a volume on 'Britannia' envisaged by Ogilby in his capacity as Cosmographer Royal. The result was a printed sheet, 'Queries in Order to the Description of Britannia', containing headings under which information was to be sought. These were the first fact-finding requests to be specifically directed at individuals in the regions of Britain. Among listed questions on antiquities, topography, buildings and natural resources was one reflecting John Aubrey's particular interest in 'Peculiar Customs or Manners'. The Queries served as a blueprint for Aubrey's own survey of Surrey undertaken later in 1673 and were influential in structuring the research agenda of county studies in Britain and Ireland over the next generation. One young scholar influenced by them was Thomas Machell. In June 1673 Aubrey sent Anthony Wood a copy of one version of the 'Queries in Order to the Description of Britannia', and it might have been through Wood that Machell became aware of them. Their contents clearly inspired him to work on his own research design; he later admitted to having "enlarg'd Mr Oglebyes Queries, that I may be both able to satisfy Them, and myne owne curiosity." The result was his four-page pamphlet, "That the Northern Counties which abound in Antiquities and Ancient Gentry, may no longer be bury'd in Silence, Information is desir'd concerning the following Queries as they lye in order." Although it carried no imprinted date, at the bottom of one of only two extant copies Machell wrote, "1. Jan. 1676-7."' See Adam Fox, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and*

Query de: <u>These belong to the Queryes By Ogleby</u>
Westm'land:
Gray-Troutes in Ullswater their nature – and bigness.
25. Where slates &c.
29. See Cross Fell; altar the Leap measure at Woodside.[321]
31. How much money every year paid at the piller.
33. The mason's name that broke the stone writ upon at Br.
35. How ma[n]y men, how long a fulling the hole at Brampton yeat.
36. How much an Oxgang; as much as one ox can plough threwot the year; halfe a Quarter of a carucate[322] or Hyde land. 15 acres.[323]

[I.600]

[<u>General Notes 2.</u>]

<u>A Collection of Miscellany Notes to be refrd to their respective Heads in the 2nd Part.</u>[324]

For the:
Hyde Sax[on][325])
Caruca N[orman])
Carucata) \ the same / terrae, vid. Speed & mapps Huntingdonshire §3.
Virga)

<u>A Family</u>:
Manse Saxon)
Hyde Saxon)
Carucate Norman) 100 acres (i.e. 6 score) num certo gr[adu.][326]
Plowland Anglice)

Really and Truly as much as a Plow with a Teame (of 8 o[xen])[327] can till round the year; & ergo according to the stiffness [and] loosness of the soyle, sometimes greater, sometimes lesser.
<u>A virgate</u> (or Yardland) is a 4r of a Carucate: as much as […][328]
A <u>Bovate</u> (or Oxgang) is ½ a Quarter of a Carucate, as much as […][329] can plow.

Social History, 9 (2012), 329-47, at 329-31. Ogilby's best-known work is *Britannia, volume the first, or An illustration of the kingdom of England and dominion of Wales: by a geographical and historical description of the principal roads thereof actually admeasured and delineated in a century of whole-sheet copper-sculps : accomodated with the ichnography of the several cities and capital towns, and compleated by an accurate account of the more remarkable passages of antiquity : together with a novel discourse of the present state* (London, 1675). Chiefly a road atlas, it was securely based on contemporary and collaborative research. See C. Withers, 'Ogilby, John (1600-1676), publisher and geographer.' *ODNB*.

[321] See II.475.

[322] Carucate: originally an amount of land such as one team of oxen could plough in a season: see the English Glossary.

[323] *N&B1*, 2, remarks that in some parts of Westmorland the customary acre measured 7840 yards, which varied from the statute measure: 'as if where the land is bad they are willing to give so much the greater measure'.

[324] 'Mixed Notes Relateing to Armory & familyes to be referd by Index' is also part of this scored-through heading, but has been omitted here. For Machell's notes on families, see II.486-88, below.

[325] A hide or hyde was a Saxon land measure which continued in use after the Norman Conquest, varying in extent with the nature of the ground, etc. Primarily, a hide represented the amount considered adequate for the support of one free family with its dependants; at an early date this was defined as being as much land as could be tilled with one plough in a year. *OED*.

[326] It is possible that these are three Latin words meaning 'presumably in fixed proportion' but the edge of the page has perished here.

[327] This word has perished.

[328] The rest of this sentence has perished.

[329] A word here has perished. The phrase probably reads, 'as much as an ox can plough'.

È Dr Thorotons *Antiq. of Notinghamshire*.[330]

[I.618]

[Letter in another hand][331]

As to your Quaere's:
Sir
1. To the 1st servicium seculare, dicitur in opposione ad spirituale et ecclesiasticum servicium &c.[332] Stat1. E. 4. C. 1. Which is a [e]stirmacon of Magna Charta where (C.1) tis said the Church of England shall be free and have its rights & liberties inviolable. So that to be free from all Secular Service is to enjoy the Liberties & privileges of Church Poscessceons, for which you may consult the Canon Law.

2. Blodwita[333] or Bloudwit is an Amerciament[334] for bloodshed: from blood & wyte, or blame. He that hath Blodwite granted him, hath power to take all Amerciaments in Courts for shedding of blood. ~~Fleta L1 C 47~~ si aliqui pugnantes &c. extraxerint sanguinem prior habebit Bloudwit i.e. Amerciamentum inde in Curia sua. Ex sig[illo] Priorat[i] de Cockesford Cowill v[er]bo Bloudwit.[335] Fleta L.1 C. 47, sig[nifica]t Quietantiam misericordiae pro effusione Sanguinis.[336]
3. Serviciu[m] Extrinsecum, or forinsecum is that Service which[337] is due to the King & not to the Capital. Lord or Intrinsecum is that which is due to the Capital Lord of the Mannor.

N.B. Bovata Terrae, an oxgang of land; that is, as much as an ox can plough, which is said (by Skene) to be 13 acres, some say 18 acres.[338] Eight Bovates make one Carrucate: 144 acres, accounting 18 to the bovate.

---

[330] Robert Thoroton (1623-78), *The Antiquities of Nottinghamshire* (1677). As a contemporaneous antiquary, Thoroton's references have clear similarities to Machell's. viz. 'Roger the Man or Tenent of Roger de Busli, had two Carucats in demesne, thirteen sochm., three Vill, seven Bordars, having eight plows or Carucats.' (121); 'The land was sufficient for two plows (or two carucats)' (5); 'One virgate or yardland' (9).
[331] The author of this letter is at present unknown.
[332] 'To the 1st secular service, it is meant in contrast to the spiritual and ecclesiastical service etc.'
[333] Or 'bloodwite': a fine payable for the offence of shedding blood; also, a legal action for this offence. *OED*.
[334] Or 'amercement': a discretionary penalty or fine; originally one imposed on an offender at the discretion of the court of his or her lord, as opposed to a statutory fine. *OED*.
[335] 'If individuals while fighting etc. shall draw blood, the one who initiated it shall have Bloudwit, i.e. a fine for it in his own Court. On the authority of the Prior of Cockesford. Cowill, on the word Bloudwit indicates immunity from a fine for [in proportion to] the spilling of blood.' For this passage, see John Cowell: 'Bloodwit (blodwita) is compounded of 2 Saxon words (blout. i. sanguis) and (wit) for the which we have the word (wite) still in the West parts of England signifying a charging of one with a fault, or an upbraiding. And Speight in his expositions upon Chawser saith, that (to wit) is as much as to blame. (To wit) in some other places of this land signifieth as much as (to hitte in the teeth) or to upbraide. This bloodwit is a word used in charters of liberties aunciently graunted, and signifieth an amercement for shedding of blood. So that whosoever had it given him in his charter, had the penaltie due for shedding of blood graunted unto him. Rastall in his exposition of words. *Skene de verbo. signif*. writeth it (bludveit) and saith that (veit) in English is *injuria vel misericordia*: and that (bludveit) is an amercement or (unlawe) as the Scottishmen call it, for wrong or injurie, as bloodshed is. For he that is infest with (bludveit) hath free libertie to take all amercements of courts for effusion of blood.' John Cowell (1554-1611), *The Interpreter: or Booke containing the signification of words wherein is set foorth the true meaning of all, or the most part of such words and termes, as are mentioned in the lawe writers, or statutes of this victorious and renowned kingdome, requiring any exposition or interpretation. ... Collected by Iohn Cowell ...* (Cambridge, 1607), Letter B.
[336] 'Fleta saith, quod significat quietantiam misericordiae pro effusione sanguinis. li. 1. ca. 47.' Fleta (fl.1290-1300), is the name sometimes used to designate the author of a Latin treatise on English common law (written between 1290 and 1300) entitled *Fleta*, which updates and abridges an earlier treatise (*De legibus et consuetudinibus Angliae*) ascribed to Henry of Bratton (d.1268). The author of Fleta drew scattered passages from the Bratton treatise into a coherent order, omitted some content, and incorporated some of Edward I's legislation. See D. Seipp, 'Fleta (fl.1290-1300)'. *ODNB*.
[337] 'External or foreign service is that service which…'
[338] Sir John Skene, *De Verborum Significatione: The Exposition of the terms and difficill wordes conteined in the foure buikes of Regiam Magistratem*, *etc.* (2nd edn, Edinburgh, 1599). Skene's changing pronouncements on

[I.42]

Ad Hunc Librum[339]
Westm'land – p.2b. How Westm'land divided from Yorkshire? Why \ called / County?
Dugdale of *Warwickshire* – Warwickshire govern'd by a vicount ante conquestum?[340]
London or Oxon Lib. – p.5b. *Ypodigma Neustriæ* by Walsingham[341] concerning 12 Towne in Cumberland granted to the Scot[s], q. an 12 et nihil amplius.[342]
Mr Dugdall *Westm'land* 14.d. If rushbearing at midsom[mer] may not allude to John the Baptist?
15.a. Where Eden riseth, with many Queries about all the Rivers.

[I.42B]

Martendale F[orest] Parke & Forests. Hall. Towers.
1. Whinfield F[orest]. 2nd. Lowther P[ark]. 3. Crosby Ravenwaith?[343] 4. Hartley Park. 5. Whar[ton]. 6. Colnhead P[ark]. 7. Sleemere. 8. Firbanke \ forsan Grarig. / 9. Midleton. 10. Kendal. 11. Camswick. 12. Watland. 13. Barborn. 14. ~~Leek~~ Croscrake. 15. Preston Chapel. 16. Siserge. 17. Brigster p[ark]. 18. Witherslack 19. Bethan.

[I.127][344]

[C.] The Division of the County

{Why County? vid paref. ad County et p.12 in A}
This County is severall ways divided, as:

1. Into 2 part: The Bottom of Westm'land & Barrony of Kendal.
2. Into 5 Wards or Hundreds: 3 in the Bottom, 2 in the Barony.[345]
3. Into parishes [blank] in the Bottome and so many in the Barony.
4. Into Lordships or mannors.

{Hon[orius] divided Kent into parishes about the 640 [A.D.]: vid V.2 Sp[eed] 294, et Lothairs.}[346]

---

how many acres an ox could plough were reproduced in John Jamieson, *Supplement to the Etymological Dictionary of the Scots Language* (Edinburgh, 1841), 607-08 (HUS).

339 'In this book'.

340 'Before the Conquest?' See Dugdale, *Warwickshire*, f.2: 'Before the Normans entrance the Bishop sate in the Hundred Court, with the Lord of the Hundred, as he did in the Countie-Court with the Earl, and in the Shireeves-Turn with the Shireeve … Primi igitur sedebant, saith Sir H. Spelman, in omnibus Regni Comitatiis & tribunalibus Episcopi; in Regali quidem palacio cum Regni magnatibus; in Comitatu unà, cum Comite, & Justiciario Comitatus; in Turno Vicecomitis cum vicecomite; in Hundredo cum Domino Hundredi; sic, ut in provenda Justicia usq; quaq; gladius gladium adjuvaret, et nihil inconsulto Sacerdote (qui velut Saburra in Navi fuit) ageretur. [Therefore the leading men used to sit, saith Sir H. Spelman, in all the assemblies of the kingdom and tribunals of the Bishop: in the royal palace with the magnates of the realm; in one assembly, with the earl and judiciary of the assembly; in the Turn of the Viscount with the viscount; in the Hundred with the Lord of the Hundred; in such a way that in providing justice on all sides, sword might help sword, and nothing be done without the Bishop (who was the ballast in the ship) being consulted]. And so likewise after the Conquest, till William prohibited it.'

341 Thomas Walsingham, prior of Wymondham, said to be the last of the great medieval chroniclers, dedicated his *Ypodigma Neustriae*, to Henry V, c.1420. See J. Taylor, 'Walsingham, Thomas (c.1340-c.1422)'. *ODNB*.

342 'Whether 12 and no more.'

343 An indistinct letter or numeral appears before the question mark.

344 Also numbered p.17.

345 Nicolson and Burn refer to the number of wards being four, 'being the districts of the like number of High Constables who presided over the wards … Two of these wards are in the barony of Kendal, to wit, Kendal and Lonsdale Wards; and two in the Bottom, called East and West Wards: there was anciently a Middle Ward between these two last; but since watching and warding ceased, that hath fallen into and been absorbed by the other two.' *N&B1*, 12.

346 Honorius was Archbishop of Canterbury, 627-653. For events surrounding the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons and the later spread of Christianity see 'History of the Kings of Kent' (including Lothaire), in John Speed, *Historie*, 214-17.

{Method}
Now because most places of note are situate upon rivers, before I speake of particular places I shall present you with a scheem of the course of each river, with what mills & bridges there be upon it; which otherwise I would have taken notice of in the generall description. And haveing don that, I will speake of each parish as they laye in order:

1. Of the church with what is remarkable therein and who have bin patrons.
2. Whatt Lordships or manners in the parish \ or Gentlemen's houses / & to whome they doe or have belong \ armes & descent &c. / with an accompt of what I have observed remarkable in each of 'em, whether monuments of antique; accidents or calamityes; or whatsoever else \ & schooles or hospitals. /

And least the rivers should turne away from anything remarkable, I will give you an account of the high-wayes, more especially of the Romane, with occurrences I can remember, which may serve the travaller to divert himself withall. {Dout whether by highwayes or rivers}.
Lastly, I shall annex the coates of armes of all the gentry with their blazonry, and that to prevent all exceptions, ordine alphabetico,[347] together with their ma[t]ches and pedegrees.

{ad Stanelands Burwens}
{Bottom} Sunt glebae [prove[ntus]] novi] quae agriculae imperio numquam recusant*, sed cumulation[is] mensura quod recipiunt reddunt (viz. Stanelands). (Turfs Peats Lings Coales Whins copses.) Hyemes hu[ius] loci sunt satis clementes, frigoris enim vim carbonis fossilis ligni et cespitum abu[n]dantia, ita disolvit, montesque in altum circumfusi ita moderato te[m]pore terram fove[n]t, ut multo rimosius sit apud eos frigus, quam in non nullis Angliae regionibus, ~~xxx~~ in Septentrionali parte possitis.[348]

[Machell's Notes: I.127]

*Cf. Cicero de senectute XV.51: ...terra, quae numquam recusat imperium nec umquam sine usura reddit, quod accepit.[349]
{Shires 100 & tith[es] 358, col. 2, f. 25}

[I.128]

{Bottom}
In 2as partes dispertita Westmaria est, Inferiorem et Superiorem quarum inferior, Westmariae fundus est ie The Bot[t]om of Westm'land; superior autem Barony de Kendal ie The Barony of Kendal vulgo appellatur. pars inferior praeruptis at cerulei coloris montibus circumcincta qua mirum in modum occulos delectat est magis culta magis consita, ideo laetior, nor per libratata planetie, sed modice plana plurima imo tota (nisi qua sylvas copiosessime progignit, pratis pascuis et frumentariis jacet ca[m]pis), Hordeumque laudatissimum ibi Big vocatum, Triticum Avenas, cum omni granarum genere copiosissime effundit, adeo ut circum-vicin[i]s comitat. 69 Saepissime subministrat. 27 {magnum frumenti numerum et farris copiam non exiguam, ad vicinos alendos quotannis exportaveri[n]t. 229 vid.} (Hic piscium tanta multitudo, salmonum, […][350] et praecipue Truttarum; ut advenis sit miraculo carnis bovinae ovinae et ferinae, saporis optimi ut Advenis sit miraculo, Indigenis pro Illorum admiratione ludibrio.277) Colles etiam quibus includitur sylvis vid. The Adventure of Mr J. Smyth, London 1670 p.114 olim utrimque amicti fuere, nu[n]c vero pecoribus: jis subsunt utrimque a[r]va, arvis floridis[si]ma prata at pascua, et in medio Ituna fluvius limpidissimus interlabitur quae circumvienis agris quasi vim vitalem infundit 349. Laudatissimarum aquarum faecunda olim Genetrix. Vallis Amplissima per 12 ad min[imum] fere miliaria a Burgo sub Sax et ad pontem Emoti in longitudine jacet, latitudinem alicubi supra 11 a … extendit; alendis frugibus

[347] 'In alphabetical order.'
[348] 'There are lands which never refuse the farmer's demands, but, by the measure of their accumulation, what they receive they again release (viz. Stanelands). (Turfes Peats Lings Coales Whins copses.) The winters of this place are quite mild, for the abundance of coal, timber and turves so far diminishes the force of the cold, and the high encircling mountains so far warm the earth with their moderate climate, that among them the cold weather has far more remissions than in many regions of England located in the Northern part.'
[349] 'Land which never resists mastery nor ever returns without interest what it has received.'
[350] Here, Machell left space for additional text.

pascendis pecoribus mitissima frequentibus opidis, et nobilium virorum Domubus exculta crebrisque fluminibus rigata. Lincolnsh[ire] 297.[351]

{Cantridum} vocant Britanni terrae portionem, quae 100 villas {complectitur, inde} Cantrid Bickam centuria minor. Caer Nerv. Denbysh. 371.[352]
{Kendal} Licet hac per montibus plurimum emineat, convallibus tamen grata fecunditate, tum pascuis tum arvis faelix est regio.[353]
{Dales}A fluminibus valles apud nos denominantur (says Cam.) unde Wensedall quasi Vents dale, ie vallis ad ventum (Sic Kendale, quasi Kent dale, ie vallis ad Kent. sic denique Loansdale, q[uasi] vallis ad Loane.) 223.[354]
{Westm'd} Frugibus satis fertilis, gregibus abundans fossilium carbonum et metallorum, plumbi praecipue, alicubi ferax 370 et ut res est Dicam est Regio, nisi in montes amoena et fertilis, sua semper in principem fide et in exteros humanitate inter celeberrimas Britanniae regiones connumeranda. u[t]pote in qua[355]

[D. Passages concerning the Division of Westmorland]

[II.464][356]

Kendale Barony, tho it contane it Loansdale allso, and Langdale? with severall ~~littell vilages~~ \ other / dales & hamlets here & there. There is but one considerable valley ~~commonly~~ and because it is so incompassed with hills, is ergo called the Bottom of Westm'land. It begins at Brough and so extends it selfe in Length to Browham Castle [blank] miles in Bredth from [Blank] to [Blank], [Blank] miles.

[II.463]

From the Roy † to Browham Castle, 21 miles, and so from Hellgill brig to Browham, 21.
The bredth from Teeswater to Raflen Forrest near Shap, 16 miles.

---

[351] 'Westmaria is split into two parts, Lower and Upper, of which the lower is the bottom i.e. The Bottom of Westmorland; while the upper is commonly called the Barony of Kendal i.e. The Barony of Kendal. The lower part surrounded by steep, blue-coloured mountains, which make it a wonderful delight to the eyes is the more tilled, more cultivated, and therefore more prosperous, and not because the plain is level, rather, most of it lies only more or less flat (except where it produces woods in abundance), but all with meadows, pastures and corn fields. And it brings forth a barley called Big most celebrated there, [also] Wheat [and] Oats, with every kind of grain most abundantly, to such an extent that it furnishes the neighbours round about. Very often it supplies [them]. {It exports a great quantity of corn and no small supply of spelt for the sustenance of its neighbours every year. 229 see.} Here is such a quantity of fish, salmon … and especially trout; [and] of beef, mutton and game, of [such] superb flavour that to strangers it is a miracle, though their admiration makes the natives smile. And the hills by which it is enclosed, see *The Adventure of Mr Smyth* (London 1670), p.114, were once covered on either hand by woods, but now by flocks: next to them on both sides is arable land, in the cornfields, lovely flowery meadows and pastures, and in the midst slips by the river Eden, crystal clear; which pours out its vital force, as it were, on the surrounding fields .349 … once the fertile Mother of the most celebrated waters. A very broad valley lies about 12 miles at least in length from Brough under Stainmore to Eamont bridge; it extends in breadth in some places over 11 [miles] from [Blank]; it is very mild for cultivating crops and pasturing flocks, with numerous towns, and adorned with the mansions of noblemen and watered by many rivers.'
[352] 'The Britons call a portion of land which embraces 100 houses, a cantrid, hence Cantrid Bickam; a lesser hundred.' A cantred, cantrede or cantref (a noun associated with the English land area 'Hundred') is an area of ground containing 100 settlements. A half or other portion of a cantred is called a cymwd. *OED*.
[353] 'Although lofty mountains rise up here, in the vale, however, the region enjoys a delightful fertility, blessed both in its pastures and also in its cornfields.'
[354] 'Among us the valleys are named after the rivers (says Camden), hence Wensedall like Vents dale, that is, the valley of the Vent (thus Kendale, like Kent dale, i.e. the valley of the Kent, thus, finally, Loansdale, like the valley of the Loane.)', 223.
[355] 'Very fertile in its crops and its flocks, rich in coal mines and minerals, especially lead, in some places fruitful 370, the fact is, I would say, that the region is a pleasant and a fertile one except in the mountains, ever, through its loyalty towards the monarch and its civilised attitude to strangers, to be reckoned among the most distinguished regions of Britain. Seeing that …'
[356] Also numbered p.17.

[I.43]

The Barony of ~~Apleby~~ Westm'land for the all or most part thereunto held Lands of the Barony commonly called the Bottom of W. and by the Barony men called Westm'land: & so the Barony of Apleby was anciently called the Barony of West[morland].
The Barony of Kendall commonly called the Barony for distinction sake from the Bottom of Westm'land commonly so called: yett these are not soe different but that even the Baron of Kendal himselfe was obliged to doe sute in the Court of Apleby as you will finde in my Notes of one of those places.[357]

[I.129]

{Division Gen. v. p.19. H.}
The most generall division of it is into 2 part which we may cale Alpina and Transalpina. The one mountaineouse, tho hear and there intermixed with little valleys; the other Champion, yett here and there swelling with hills. The Champion ground is frequently called the Bottom of Westm'land, and Westm'land,[358] the Hilly Country {which is so calld}, is called the Bar-rony, and more particularly the Barony of Kendall, and they call the Bottome, by way of eminence, Westm'land denominatione a majori simul et majori parte descripta[359] the Bottom, of both more fertill and popularis.

{Whence Wards p.56 et quaere? Which is so calld q. p.}[360]
It is otherwise divided into ~~Hundred~~ Wards or Hundreds \ a p.13 col. 2 / whereof in the Bottome are 3 Wards: Eastward, Westward & Midle Ward, and answerably 3 High Constables, to each ward, One. Petty Constables,132. v. Note (a) p.4.
{So called p.1} In the Barony are onely Kendall Ward & Loansdall Ward; to each of which one High Constables; Petty Constablewick, 51. So that in Westm'land there are 5 Wards 8 Hundreds or high Constablewicks; Petty Constables, 183.

{Whence Pari\shes/ Camden p.57}[361]
The next division is into Parishes. And of these we finde [blank] in the Bottom of Westm'land with [blank] Chapels of Ease. In The Barony [blank] with [blank] Chapels of Ease. So that in the whole County are [blank][362]
The 4th and last which I shall take notise of is, if parishes, into Lordships or Manners, whereof there are for the Bot[tom] [blank], in the Bar[ony] [blank]. so that in the whole County there [blank] manner houses, or seats of Nobility and Gentry, as will more particularly appear from this following[g] schedule.
{Whence Manners?}

	Wards	Parishes	Manners
Bottom			
Baron			

Now if I had ~~a minde to write a Booke and leisure~~ leisure sure to doe it I would speake of every parish within the Church, what Lordships to whome they belong and what remarkable in each Lordship.

[I.131]

~~But because I am att too great a distance I shall \ to have other business / rather proceed by way of answer to these queryes which cam lately to my hand, & put me upon this unnecessary imployment.~~

[357] This is followed by information on Constablewicks, also found on MS.I.129.
[358] A crossed-through Latin phrase here, '~~late\[rn]tu/bis~~', might mean 'latent; concealed'.
[359] 'Named, and at the same time apportioned, from the greater portion.'
[360] Wards: See Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 158.
[361] Camden numbered the ecclesiastical parishes in England and Wales, quoting Matthew Parker (1504-75), Archbishop of Canterbury, who counted them in the archdioceses of Canterbury and York. As Westmorland was divided between the Dioceses of York and Chester, Machell could not ascertain the number through this means: see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 160-62.
[362] Camden gives the number of parishes as 26, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 763.

~~Haveing reduced them to this closer method. Crackenthorpe ita fuit arbores fructum proferentes, non insitivae manus industria sed Ipsiuss humi natura?~~[363]

[I.59]

{Unde dicit Westm'land?}[364]
It is indeed a thing to be lamented, and the greatest occasion ~~regarding working to write a book~~, \ which discourages me from writeing concerneing this county / is that Historyes are so silent: and that I should be deprived of the assistance which other men have \ so easily / bin happy in from *Doomsday Booke*. And therefore, not knowing where to begine I must content my selfe with takeing some rude notes of those monuments of antiquity which yett remaine, they being the onely evidences I know of the famous exploits which have bin performed here in former aiges. But to proceede I must show in the next place why tis called Westm'land.

[Machell's Notes: I.59A]
Anno 1175, 17 Kal. Sept. apud Ebor[acum] facta fuit conventio et finis Inter Henricum Filium Imperatricis et Willielmum Regem Scotiae […][365] qui ~~redidit sit~~ liberavit. Regi Henrico Castellum de Be[r]wick, C[astellum] de Jedeworth, C[astellum] puellarum et de Strouelin in misericordia. Regis Angliae et Inter alios Richardum de Morevilla constabularium et Richardum Comitem & Johannem de Vaux, et Hugonem Rydell, p.493, Ed. 1.[366]

[E. Passages relating to the name 'Westmorland', the county's fertility, and perceived inaccuracies in the writings of older historians][367]

[I.44A]
For the \ lesser and more / southerly part (The Barony of Kendal) is confessd to be sufficiently fertill in the valleys thereof. And the \ larger / more northerly \ The Barony of Westm'land / (of which he[368] takes no manner of notice) cannot be denyed \ by any that see it / to exceed in ~~fruitfulness~~ \ fertility, / being a large Champion Country [blank] miles long, & [blank] miles broad {surrounded with a ridge of high mountaines \ which are here calld fells /as it were upon a mound \ & within which ~~one can~~ is divers / full of rich meadows cornfields pastures, here and there interspersed with woods[369] and washed with a number of rivers and ~~other such~~ \ swe[e]t / brookes (which branche themselves like so many veines into the noble river of Eden (~~as the vena cava~~): which springeth in the head of Westmorland, \ at Hewseat Hill / & runneth down the midst of this barrony like the vena cava in a man's body,[370] & impregnates the same with life & vigour) by reason, \ which it becomes / of which It becometh so fruitfull that it hath not only enough of it[s] own to susteine it selfe \ withall, / but allso to supply ~~& support~~ the neighbouring Partes of Yorkshire[&] Bishoprick upon all occasions with corne and hay, & severall other partes of the Kingdom with cattle, & sheep, which have the report of the sweetest muttons that are in the nation. And tis commonly calld the Bottom of Westm'land.

[I.60]

[Moors or Meres]
Loca etenian inculta (sayes Camden) et quae non facile agricultura sublevari possint moors Angli septentrionales vocant et idem quae tota inter montes alter pertingentes ad occasum sita est hoc nomen

---

[363] 'Crackenthorpe was thus, the trees bearing fruit not by the labour of another's hand but by the nature of the soil itself.'
[364] 'Below, speak of Westm'land?'
[365] Some words in this Latin passage are obscured by the binding.
[366] 'In the year 1175, 17 Kal. Sept., a meeting and final concord took place between Henry son of the Empress and William King of Scotland, who liberated to King Henry the Castle of Berwick, the Castle of Jedeworth, the Maidens and of Strouelin, in compassion for the King of England, and, among others [Sc. liberated] Richard of Moreville, Constable, and Lord Richard, and John of Vaux, and Hugo Rydell.'
[367] This text, musing on the name of Westmorland, is included here as one of at least 10 such references in Machell's MS. All repeat aspects of the extracts above; see MSI.43A; MSI44B; MSI.44C; MS.II.451.
[368] William Camden.
[369] See *N&B1*, 3, for the same information.
[370] 'Like the hollow vein in a man's body.' Venæ cavæ (Latin) = 'hollow veins.'

Invenit. i.e. …[371] Nor am \ I / willing to derive it from those famous meers, which are in \ the western parts of / this County (tho it has bin writ formerly Westmerland, & not Westmorland).

[I.45][372]

[Criticism of John Speed and William Camden]

Before I proceed to give ~~an account~~ a description of this Country \ of W. / I must endeavour to correct the errours of former writers, \ or late antiquarij / and especially of Mr Speed, who does not onely make the soyle for the most part so barren {magna ex parte sayes Camden}[373] that it cannot be brought to any fruitfulness by the industry and painefull labour of the husbandman: But allso confines the whole plenty thereof, within the narrow bounds of the Vailes near Kendall situate between the river Loane[374] and Wind\nand/ermere.[375] Whereas tis most certane that the Country in Generall is sufficiently stored with all sorts of Commodityes for supplying the necessityes of humane nature \ & to susteine themselves and others / and that in such abundance, that it often ~~supplies~~ \ assistes / the neighbouring Counties (~~& Durham in particular~~ \ & Yorkshire & Bishoprick / with Corne and Hay {even from the more Northern part of Westm'land which he Take no manner of notice of} from that part of Westm'land as which lyes more northerly, & is {commonly calld the Bottom of Westm'land ~~which~~ from it situation being a large Champion Countrey} within the Beayes of Westm'land.[376]
And for that part of Westm'land which lyes about Kendall, \ and therefore, though the more Southerly part; / tho it be in deed a plentifull Country, he was ~~guilty of a very~~ grossly ~~oversight~~ \ mistake when he neglected that spacious vaile called the Bottome of Westm'land, which does not onely exceed it in bigness butt frutefullness ~~too~~ \ allso, / as must easily be granted, by any who considers \ the advantageous situation of it being / how it lyes – environed with lofty mountaines to keep of the cold, \ on every side / & how well it is watered with a number of rivers, whose bankes swell with fatness. {Yett the more sothern part is not reported (sayes he) & here writes upon report, notwithstanding he pretends in the Preface to have seen every province of England and Wales and for the most p[art] transcribes out of […][377] who does not [pre]tend to so much [ex]perience, tho I [thin]ke he had more.} But I suppose the ground of this mistake was partly his want of good information, for he writt upon hearsay; and partly the authority of our Incomparable Antiquarie, who will have it calld Westm'land, quia tota inter montes alte pertingentes\ ad. occasum / sit sita et magna ex parte inculta jaceat, loca etinim inculta\ (sayes he) / et quae non facile Agricultura subleuari possint Mores Angli septentrionales vocant. Unde Westm'land; quae nihil aliud est, quam inculta ad occasum regio.[378] In which Mr Camden ~~comes very near the matter as to it denomination~~ but is somwhat mistaken (pace tanti authoris)[379] in the use of the word whence he derives it; for the northern people ~~mongst whome I have liv'd a considerable time, and~~ with whose language I am very well

[I.47][380]

acquainted, never call their lofty and towering mountains, by the name of Moors {only Stanemore ~~which is a place on Yorkshire side~~ a mountane towards Westmerland}, for they are call'd Fells; nor

---

[371] 'For (says Camden) such barren places which cannot easily by the painfull labour of the husbandman bee brought to fruitfullnesse, the Northern Englishmen call moores; and Westmoreland is nothing else with us but a western Moorish country. Let that dream therefore of touching King *Marius*, bee excluded out of the schoole of reverend antiquity.' *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 759A.
[372] Also numbered p.1.
[373] 'For the most part, says Camden': *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 759A.
[374] Lune: see *N&B1*, 3.
[375] This text resembles John Speed's description of Westmorland: *The Theatre of the Empire of Great Britaine* (1611-1612), 85-86.
[376] 'Beay': 'a recess in a range of hills', in *OED* as 'Bay'. Alternatively, 'Brea' is a variant of brae: a steep, a slope, a hillside: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.
[377] The name given here has perished but see I.47, below, where John Leland's research is discussed.
[378] 'Because it is situated entirely among mountains that stretch right out to the west and lies for the most part uncultivated, for places which are uncultivated and cannot easily be improved by agriculture, the northern Englishmen call Moors. Hence Westm'land, which is nothing other than an uncultivated region to the west.' See Camden, *Britannia* (1587 edn), 517-8.
[379] 'With respect to so great an author'.
[380] Also numbered p.2.

yett their places, which are either Barren or unfit for Culture, for they are commonly either Lings or Mires*: Butt their Other waste grounds (be they never so fertill ~~&~~ \ or convenient / fitte for tillidge) which are not inclos'd, but lay waist and in Common; these they call Moors. \ ~~as you know very well~~ / But neither Mr Speed nor yett Mr Camden for anything I \ can / finde \ to the contrary / have had the happiness to write of this place by their Owne experience (~~they not being there~~ \ the one haveing never bin in the country the other only in the more southerly & mountainouse part, calld the (c) Barony Kendal /†.
Whereupon adhereing too much to the name, and playing a little too much ~~with the Name~~ with the word {the onely thing which Mr Camden seems to be afraid off},[381] they have renderd Westm'land more fruteless and Barren than indeed it \ really / is (as will evidently appear when I come to particulars.) Onely here give me lieve to remarke, that if Cumberland (which ~~they truly represent as~~ \ owne to be / a plentifull ~~and fertill~~ Country) had hapned \ chanc'd / to have \ had / the same denomination, it had scaped \ fared / no better. For there can no reason in Nature be given, why that County should abound so in all things \ necessary (~~as they have represented it~~) / and Westmerland \ pass for a / barren \ place / whereas the soyle is (for \ the / most part \ of / the same \ nature ~~which~~ / ~~these~~ and as full of mountaines every whitt as well watered as that; and of the more southerly situation ~~remote from the north~~ \ and to satisfy them of their ~~ignorance herein~~ \ mistake in this particular. /

[Mr Camden \ & Mr Speed as little more than his translator / as far as I ~~am~~ \ ~~able to~~ / conjecture, came into Bishoprick and Yorkshire; but turnd of into Lancashire – &[382] so entered upon that part of Westm'land towards Kendall; whence he seems to have pass'd to Millum & so travalled on by the eastern-shore,[383] even to Bulness,[384] where he trac[ed] the Ruines of the Picts wall & had a view [of] a great part of Cumberland & Northum[berland], no dout allso that he st[epped] into Scotland.[385] But whether he returned by Newcastle or (which is more likely) pass'd over into Ierland and thence by shipp came to London againe, lett others determine \ enquire. / ~~But~~ However I doe affirm that he never came in the Bottom of Westm'land, there being not the least probability of it, \ for / if he had, those many monuments of antiquity which lay so obviouse in that part of the Country \ even in the highway / had not bin conceald \ or omitted by him / nor so plentifull ~~a soyle~~ \ & pleasant a plasse / pass'd over without his observation. Much of what he has writt about Westm'land he had out of Leiland, & in particular his description of Apleby.[386] And yett Leiland himself was no whit more fortunate for he travailed no further than Barnards Castle, & where made his enquiries concerning Westm'land \ and tooke them on heresaye. / ~~and these~~ I imagin Camden did allso where he had not a view of the whol Country. But to excuse himselfe he has this expression in His Epistle: Fieri tamen potest ut a nonullis quibus fidem adhibui, perperam sim edoctus.[387] {Int. Cambden ad Lectorem}[388] And soe doubtless he was concerning this place.

---

[381] See Camden: 'Many happily will insult over me for that I have adventured to hunt after the originals of names by conjectures, who if they proceed to reject all conjectures, I feare me a great part of Liberall learning and humane knowledge will be utterly out-cast into banishment': *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), Preface.
[382] Four words have been interlineated here but they are illegible, apart from 'in Lancashire'.
[383] The text has perished here, but the letters 'Ea … ern' can be seen.
[384] Bowness. See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 775.
[385] Part of this margin comment has perished: the words 'Furness' and 'Northumberland' are partially lost.
[386] John Leland (c.1503-1552) was an antiquary who made several journeys in England, recorded in his notebooks as 'Itineraries'. Though unpublished in his lifetime, most of the notebooks were preserved, for example, in the Bodleian Library. During the late 16th century, Leland's antiquarian writings were championed by William Camden, William Lambarde (in his *Survey of Kent*) and John Stow (in his *Survey of London*, 1598). In the 17th century, antiquaries such as William Dugdale, John Aubrey, Robert Plot, and Anthony Wood greatly admired his work. See J. Carley, 'Leland, John, poet and antiquary'. *ODNB*.
[387] 'It may be that I have been misled by the credit of authors and others whom I tooke to be most true, and worthy of most credit.' Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), Preface, final paragraph.
[388] Camden, Preface.

These things I thought fitt to premise; that if any should happen to meet with these papers and be so vainely prodigall of his time as to give them the reading; he may plainly discover that I goe not about to thwart such grave Authors whose Learning & Industry I shall ever admire, without ~~some appearance of solid reason~~. \ good grounds. / And I was the more imbolden'd thereunto, not onely because I have Truth on my side but their invitations allso, who would \ not / willingly impose upon us, but have ~~all that is~~ \ what's / amiss to ~~our gentle correction~~ \ be corrected hereafter. / Cambden in Epist. dedico. In plurimis me posse errare fateor, nec erroribus indulgebo; quis totam diem iaculans semper colliniet?[389] I shall therefore proceed to the general discription which both confess were fertill enough in the valleys thereof, ~~but~~ yett supposeing the northerly part of Westm'land to be more mountainouse & by consequence ~~more~~ less fit for tillage. And mistakeing the notion of the word Moore, which they would insinuate have to imply barren mountanes which cannot be cultivated, they have represented the County in general.[390]

[Machell's Notes: I.47]

*Heaths or Boggs.
†{Si vero ex Platonis praecepto rei naturam non exprimant, si non sint liquidae purae ex natura ipsa petitae (loquitur de etymologia conjecturis suis) explodantur ejiciantur exulent. Ibid.}[391] {Mr Camden was in Yorkshire. & see my Booke of Inscriptions} {Partem Regni longe maximam perlustravi: Camden in praefat Epist.}[392]

[I.141][393]

But to proceed:

Descriptiones of the name of Westmerland

[Moorland]
[1.] The County of Westm'land \ is so called / sayeth Mr Camden, from being a Western moorish Countrey &c. But here I ~~crave here to~~ must needs dissent from his Judgment, {because (being better \ ~~both~~ / known to the place & the language of it) I am well assured that a moore \ or more / with them is a Generall name for what lieth in Common, being never so fertall & more the surpluss sayd.} \ Besides / (in the mane) tis Plentifull Countrey & affordes great store of good arable ground meadow & pasture, not only in the Barrony of Kendall, but much more \ ~~allso~~ / in the Bottom of Westm'land, \ ~~as is obvious to any consider~~ / considering the small extend of the Countrey[394] where their very moores, as they were called, if as by the ridges it doth appear they have bin formerly, would bring forth good corne.[395] And their Mountaines ~~afford~~ \ allso yield very / Good Pasture for \ cattle / sheep & ~~besides~~ many rich veines of Lead & Coale ~~they yield underground which~~ are ~~conceald~~ in them, and som brought to light; which in due \ time / place shal be made apear: nihil nobis de est praetor.[396]

[King Westmer]
2. that it is so calld from one King Westmer; who should have ruil'd here, & in a fierce Combate on the Top of Stane Moore, ~~where this County & Yorkshire parteth \ meeteth / should have~~ \ should have

[389] Camden, *Britannia*, Lectori, 10: 'in plurimis me errare posse … fateor, nec erroribus indulgebo. Quis totam diem iaculans semper collinet?' Translates as, 'And so I right willingly acknowledge that I may err much; neither will I sooth and smooth my errors. Who shooting all day long doth always hit the mark? See *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), Preface: 'To the Reader'. Machell's 'colliniet' should have been written as 'collinet'.
[390] MS: 'they have \ Ms / represent the C. in gen.'
[391] 'But if according to Plato's rule they do not express the nature of the thing, if they are not pure liquids procured from nature itself (he speaks about etymology from his own conjecture) they are rejected, thrown out, excluded. Ibid.'
[392] '"I have surveyed the greatest part of the Realm far and wide": Camden in the Preface to his Epistle.'
[393] A page of (mostly illegible) interlineation and scoring-through. What is legible has been reproduced.
[394] An indistinct interlineated phrase appears here.
[395] Nicolson and Burn concur with Machell's judgment: 'There is not one ancient record that we have met with, wherein it is not expressly called *Westmerland,* and not *Westmorland*; which doth not altogether favour Mr Camden's supposition: the Latin termination is *Westmaria*, sometimes *Westmeria*, which hath still less resemblance of the moor.' *N&BI*, 1-2.
[396] 'We lack nothing except'.

slane / ~~subdued a~~ King ~~called~~ Rothinger, ~~upon which victory this verses (tis sayd) writt~~ another \ great / prince ~~who~~ \ that /contended with him, & endeavor'd to drive out of his Kingdom, whereupon (as they say), a Cross was reard up \ erected & sett for a \ on a long stone rather now is calld a † of very place where combat was fought. / In the ~~rear of this Country where it Joyneth~~ \ very place where this combat was fought, with this Inscription: Here King Westmer sloe King Rothinger which how true it is I ~~cannot~~ shal not determine \ shal not concerne myself \ now / much to enquire, the † ther being had no devision. / But the ~~cross~~ \ stone / standeth still as a meet or Bounder betwixt this County \ & the County of / ~~&~~ York~~shire~~; ~~& Is~~ \ being / called \ by / the name of Rear Cross upon Stane-moore.Yett Hector Boetius, a zealous Scottish author, tells a contrary story.

[Machell's Notes: I.141]

{Neither is it a barren but a plentifull Country, affording great store (for the compass of it) of good arable land, pasture and meadow and that not onely ~~as is very obvious~~ for the Barony of Kendal but allso much more &c.}
{But what is tilled already affords so much of it, & mont. fells, that it yields like money, ~~this County may~~ Served by quits the cost of husband[ry], Westm'land might say of itself did: Inopem me copia fecit[397] which I suppose might be amended if they would convert more into pasture – But tho their breed would over: Up Corne – Down Horne – Up Horne – Down Corne …}
{With the stat of 7 yeares exemption from tithes & fit for tillage; If it were needfull; but the ~~Country~~ fields doe yield so much corne already that it bear but smal price: will hardly pay the Hus[band]man for his cost to till.}
{So that it being not be called Westm'land from being a western mooreish County in their Barony sense \ or so / though it might in the other, as abounding \ with /many ling moores or commons, which are fit for tilledge but for want of people (to spend & take the fruites of the earth), doe lye uncultivated, ~~They~~ are called Mores ~~therein~~, \ whereby Moores ~~import~~ meane, \ according to his own fashion, / barren heath \ ground of / in he sayes of this c. ~~county~~.'

[I.142]

He[398] saith it was sett as \ affirmeing that this † was erected for / the Outmost Limit of the Kingdom of Scotland, ~~& calls its~~\ & to collour the matter / ~~&~~ calls it Roy Cross; affirmeing ~~that~~ the English & Scottish armes \ to have bin formerly / ~~were~~ Ingraved upon it \ carved either side: one on that side & the other on this! {But I doe belive ~~that he steps too far~~, that being ~~a zelot~~ \ zealous / for his own Countrey he steps \ but step'd / too far to Inlarge the Boundes of it, & has made an inroade with his Pen. For not concerneing to inflict myselfe with the misnomer, I have often viewed it with the greatest dilligence and could never perceive the least vestigia,[399] so much as the shape of a shield or scutchion on either side of it, much less the Inscription that wee spoke of before. Nor did the Kingdom of Scotland reach hither, In any aige; for all they \ could ever with any colour / pretend or to or was, the Countys of Cumberland \ & Northumberland / – wherein (when \ we com to examine this manner it strictly / it comes to be examend) {and my reasons are in the Latter, of which they had Tindal formerly in the other} ~~it will~~ \ ~~we shall~~ / \ it will be / discovered that \ in all probability / they had but five Townes, which \ & those / they held in Homage of the Kings of England; tho perhaps with the Tithe of Dukes of Cumberland, \ theretofore / annexed therto. For their authors \ affirmeing / say that it was a Dukedom. \ Howbeit, this, & (the other story) make way & give light to \ an other / conjecture (which I will adventur to insert of myne owne;[400] that this Tract of Ground might be called Westm'land; (I doe not say the County of Westmerland \ for thats an addition of later date; for the division of this Ile / into Shires & Countys is ascribed to King Egbert the first Saxon monarch – by H. Huntington[401] – who began his reigne Anno 800 – or […][402] Now the Highest wee can go for it, is to

[397] 'Plenty has made me poor'.
[398] Hector Boetius.
[399] MS: 'For not concerneing \ ~~to notiss~~ / \ to inflict upon the / myselfe with the misnomer, I have often viewed it with the Greatest dilligence, and could never perceive \ the least vestigia. /'
[400] MS: 'Howbeit, this, ~~Contest (on the Scottish side)~~ & (the other story) ~~& the other may way~~ make way ~~story~~ & give ~~unto~~ light to ~~another~~ \ an other / Conjecture ~~of my~~ (which I will adventur to Insert of myne owne.)'
[401] Henry of Huntington (c.1088-c.1157), *Historia Anglorum or The Chronicle of Henry of Huntingdon. Comprising the history of England, from the invasion of Julius Cæsar to the accession of Henry II. Also, The acts of Stephen, king of England and duke of Normandy* (1129-1154).
[402] The following blotted word is illegible.

King Ina – Anno Dom. 720 – as Mr Dugdall doth show more at Large {in his Preface}. Tho Ina is strictly fixed there.)[403]

[3. Marius or Morus]
This Tract of Ground might peradventure be called but Westmerland – e Terra Maris Occidentalis / from Marius or Morus, a Brittish King; {It might be his territory} ~~especially if he ruld of the Brigantes~~ & as som say, Præfect to the Romans themselves – for Westm'land in the Roman Language is Terra Morij Occidentalis. And the ground I have for it is this Inscription, which is ~~supposd~~ \ tooke / kept at Ilekirke. But whether fo[u]nd in this County or that is not now [known][404]

[Machell's Notes: I.142]
{! Qu. An non Pictorum ubi q. Regum Pictorum. ubir – Reg – Scotorum.}[405]

[I.143]
nor much material. But it planely shows us there was such in this western Country. \ D.M. /[406] That this Tract of Ground \ whereof I now treat / might be called Westm'land (I doe not say the County of Westmorland for that's an addition of later date, but onely Westm'land from Marius or Morus, a Brittish King who sometime stoutly resisted the Romanes.[407] But after, he (or at least his son Koyllus & who was Bred-up at Roome in the Emperour's Court) was a great \ favourite of & / frend unto them. ~~And tis thought~~ \ Hence ~~this Part of the Brittish Iland might~~ / {of ~~whom~~ \ him / I suppose it might be called by the Romane soljers, Terra Maris Occidentalis being seated in the west of Brigantia Ulna. And from I suppose being in this best of part of Brigantia ~~Kingdom~~. It might be \ say the Romanes / it might be called Terra Maris \ Occi[dentalis,] / or Terra Mori Occidentalis: ~~which is~~ in English, Westmorland.}

I know it may be objected against he never was King of the Brigantes, of the Brigantes time; not while the Ileland was in diverse Kingdoms. But now I suppose them all ruind, beinn all destroyd by the Romane armyes, because wee had nothing of a successor except in this family. However, that there was such a King our Historyes witness. And that he had to doe in these partes (though they they derive him from \ hence into / ~~the~~ South Brittain & place him there) may be strongly praesumed from may be strongly praesumed from this altar {a stone thus inscribed} which Mr Camden met with \ at Ile Kirke / in Cumberland (~~not far from hence~~) (in ædibus Barhousiorum) \ de / Ilekirke \ a Westm'land family translated from Barwise {within the Parish of St Lawrence Apelby & perhaps cary[d] with them} perhaps caryed Hence when they were translated from Barhouse Hall in the Parish of Apleby, which gave their sirname. {That ancient family was transplanted from Barhouse Hall in ~~the County of~~ Westmerland which gave them their Name, to Ilekirk in Cumberland where they now are, which Altar he saith was thus Inscribed To Ilekirk in Cumberland where they now ~~reside & where Mr C. met with this stone~~ are, which Altar ~~is Inscribed thus~~ he saith was thus inscribed.}.[408] Which Altar he saith was thus Inscribed.

[403] See Dugdale, *Warwickshire*, Preface, 2, where Dugdale ascribes this passage on Ina, king of the West Saxons, to Selden.
[404] Another note on Marius [MS. I.145] expresses similar views. 'There was one Marius King of the Brittaines \ who is stiled / Aviragi Regis filius, anno Xt 72 Vespasiani ~~primo~~ \ 2^0. / But this could not give name to the County of Westm'land because ~~it~~ \ the land / was not then divided into Countyes or Shires. Yett ~~we have~~ it might be called the \ Terra Mori Occidentali[s] / the \ West / Land of Marius. {It might be so, he being lieutenant to Nerva}. If so be, \ then / he was King of the Brigantes, for it lyes in the western Part of that Kingdom & I take this Inscription to be made ~~by the~~ \ More / Romano [Roman custom] in Memory of him, being then in league with them.'
[405] 'Query. Whether or not of the Picts, where the kingdom of the Picts, where the kingdom of the Scots.'
[406] D.M. See the Inscription below.
[407] MS: '\ but afterwards Hel. /'
[408] The same text occurs in the margin of MS.I.142.

D.M.
MORI REGIS
FILII S HEREDES
EIVS SVBSTITVE
RVNT.VIX.Λ.LXX.[409]

Which I read ~~thus~~ \ in this wise: /

Dis Manibus
Mori Regis
Fillij – et Heredes
ejus substitute-
-runt. Vixit. Annis septuaginta

In English thus:

To the Household Gods
of ~~Moris the King~~ King Mor, (or Morus)
his sons & heires
did substitute this. He lived – years seventy

Qua Inscriptione, says Mr Camden (fruitfull which is all the use that he makes of it) breviter observare Licet Antiquitatis Lusum; Quæ Ideo literas vocum dislocavit, ut Lectori Crux figeretur. Sic enim (Hîc) vocabulum substituerunt ceu a Bacchis pentheus discerpitur, et ejus prima litera S dirempta ponitur in superiori Linea.[410] But I tak[e] S. to be put &S: & the other ~~to be~~ \ being just supplyed from éjus. /

[I.145

But I have farther to note concerneing it, that the Letter A, which stands for Annos – haveing no line or ~~dashing~~ \ or stroake / passing through it, may serve (as he sayeth in another place) to show the date of it: observavi a Severi ætate usque ad Gordiani, et postea Literam Λ ubique in hac insula in omnibus Inscriptionibus transversam lineolam non habere.[411] Camden: e Libro Meo Antiquorum Inscriptionum, p.5*.[412]

[Machell's Notes: I.145]

*{But this makes nothing at all for my purpose.}
{Cassivellanus – Cæsa[ri] se dedidit anno Xt n. 52}[413]
{Kimbelinus in vita Pat Guidericus Rex pacem egit 43; et bello cecidit anno Xt. 46 cui successit Reg. Arviragus anno Xt. 46 4º Claudij.}[414]
{Quid nom} Westm'land is thought \ by som / to be so calld from one who is stiled King Westm'land.} {Terra Marij sive mori occidentalis.}[415]

[I.143]

{Marius the King}[416]
But I have farther to note concerneing; that he seemeth (by this) to have had many \ sons, / tho there is

[409] Camden provides the inscription relating to King Morus amongst several found at Ilekirk: 'D M. MORI REGIS FILII HEREDES EIVS SVBSTITVE RVNT VIX. A. LXX,' but without comment; neither does Camden use the word 'fruitful'. See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 772C.
[410] 'From which inscription … it is possible briefly to observe the games antiquity plays; for it has displaced the letters of the words so far as to make a torment for the reader. For here they have substituted a word, just like Pentheus is torn apart by the Bacchae, and its first letter S is ripped away and placed on the line above.' This passage is not to be found in the 'Cumberland' chapter of Camden's *Britannia*.
[411] 'I have noticed from the age of Severus right up to that of Gordianus and later, the letter Λ everywhere in this island in all inscriptions has no cross-bar.'
[412] 'From my book of Ancient Inscriptions.'
[413] 'Cassivellanus surrendered to Caesar in AD 52.'
[414] Most margin comments on this page have been omitted; they repeat text on I.138 and I.143.
[415] 'The western land of Marius or Morus.'
[416] As this passage, crammed onto the page foot, contains much interlineation and scoring through, the transcription is, in part, impressionistic.

but one recorded in \ our / history, whome he made his co-heres,[417] divided his substance & Crown Landes (which were then very large for the British Kingdom) amongst them{!} \ & why might not he to som part of them. / & that they in gratitude erected this monument according to the Romane fashion. & being educated, his eldest son, at least on tel of R., as far as Bodotria being run into one, for wee read – and as Speed thinketh – succeeding him in the Iland of Brittain. No more of any succession but in his line, where he is not only as the Brittish King but the Romane præfect in whom they \ followeth / confided. For speakeing of ther emperor, Nerva, \ who succeeded Domitian / he wateth thus[418] under him.

[I.145]

And he might well be called Regis filius; note: The son of the King – His father being the only King ~~in his time~~ \ the chief King in his time / that som writers have noted – a valiant

[I.146]

and judged an object worthy the incounter of the Roman Emperour – whom the Poet {Juvenal} flatters after this sort:

It Boades Great Honour to thy self
Som King thou shalt deprive[419]
Or else Arviragus from Rule
Of Brittaine's wain shalt drive.

Speed hath inserted and old British lyne which seems to be his: 177. §3.[420] & I shall not disdane to adorne this place with it.

{Anno Domini 98 Galfridus Monmothenis}

Speed (227. §3) speeking of the Emperour Nerva, sayetth what liege Tenants under him were in Brittain or under his successor Trajan.[421] I finde not in record but [in] our English writers from the Archdeacon of Munmouth,[422] being a succession of British Kings & amongst them Marius, who conquered Roderic King of the Pickts accompanyed with the Scotts; whose Trophy erected near unto Carleile remaned a long time after, bearing the Inscription of his victory*.

And after him his son Coilus, brought up in Rome all the time of his youth, returned their favours & payed them Tribute without Constraint. Albeit by Juvenal it seemeth that Arviragus (the father of Marius) a great resister of the Romanes & lived in the reigne of Domitian, as hath been touched (Cap. 6 §12),[423] unless you will say that Muragus & Arviragus was the same Marrus. But through the uncertaintyes & disagrements {!} occasioned by the silence of Better authors, our Historyes rest doubtful & soe wee must leave them – returneing to finish.

I wish I could see this monument, or finde it described in any author. May it not be that ~~same~~ which, or that for which, or in whose place this was erected as superstition doth imply, is said to have bin graved on Ray ✝ upon Stanemore. Here, King Westmer slew King Rothinger; which has som affinity with Mar[ius] & Rotheric? Or may it not be this very stone which I have described? If so, it agrees well with this relation: His son & heire being bred at Rome, might erect this for him \ intre Romano / but

[417] Two or three scored-through words are illegible here.
[418] The page has perished here; text is difficult to decipher.
[419] The centre of this word is blotted.
[420] Speed: 'Notwithstanding by Iuvenal it is plaine, that this Arviragus was in his fame in the daies of Domitian, unto whom the Poet, as a Prophet, would foredoome his happy successe in the dispossession of his government over the Britaines, as in these his verses are seene; "It bodes great honor to thy selfe, some King tho[u] shalt deprive, Or els Arviragus from the rule of Britains waine shalt drive." An ancient British Coyne of silver is here inserted, and a mans head thereon instamped, which is supposed to be his, the letters alluding so neere to his name.' Speed, *Historie*, 177.
[421] Speed, *Historie*, 217, section 3.
[422] Geoffrey of Monmouth (d. 1154/5), bishop of St Asaph; historian. Author of *Historia regum Britanniae* 'The history of the kings of Britain' completed c.1139. See J. Crick, 'Monmouth, Geoffrey of [Galfridus Arturus]. *ODNB*.
[423] See I.19 and I.39 for other references to Domitian's rule.

[Machell's Notes: I.146]

*{*Flores Histor.*[424] Will. Malmsb[ur]y[425] ascribeth this memorial to be erected for Marius, a consul at Roome: *Polychr[onicon*] lib. 4: C: 12.}[426]

[I.147]

it cannot be applied to Marius the Consul, because he was neither King nor Kings son. The great doubt is raised by the poet Ju. ~~and~~ \ yett / he lived I thinke both in Domitian & Nerva's Time, who succeded each other – consider it well. {He seems in great f[avour] stil with the Roman R[ulers]. He & his post continued still Kings} See Juvenal &c.

Might DM MORI REG. warrant the spelling it Westmorland, as the writeing it, as Marius doth Westmaria. And he might be calld Marius by the Romans according to the Lattin form, that being a common name amongst them, insteed of Mor \ or / Moras – as it is on the stone. As his father is called Arviragus insteed Arivag upon his Coyn. & BODA Boadicia insteed of BODAC {upon a stone which ~~I would have the Welh as~~ may be her monument & which the Wesh antiquaries may enquire more into.}[427]

[Machell's Notes: I.147]

Query: of Pen-mor – Pennigent. Speed's \ Booke of / Maps,[428] or Cambden.

… Est etiam Locus Antiq[uus] in Cumb[erland] Morisby vocatus quo \ multa / opido ~~multa~~ Antiquitatis veneranda reperiunt[ur] vestigia et Lapis a Camdeno editus sic Inscribitur DEO SILVANO &c. {MS Inscrip[tiones], p. 1111}[429] Hic forsan Locus a Moro rege nomen desumpserit quasi Mor'sby – i.e. locus seu villa Mori. Et Morland in Westm'land.[430]

Camden rejects the former opinion of Marius.[431] This, tho Mr Camden hath exploded, I doe make bold to revive it for these following reasons:

1. [blank]
2. An Inscription which he hath collected but not observed.[432]

---

[424] Florus (fl. time of the emp. Hadrian), an *Epitome of Roman History*.

[425] William of Malmesbury (c.1090-c.1142), was an Anglo-Norman monk and historian, author of *Gesta Regum Anglorum* ('Deeds of the Kings of the English', 1125-34), and *Gesta Pontificum* (1125). R. Thomson, 'Malmesbury, William of, historian, man of letters, and Benedictine monk'. *ODNB*.

[426] *Polychronicon* (or *Ranulphi Castrensis, cognomine Higden, Polychronicon (sive Historia Polycratica) ab initio mundi usque ad mortem regis Edwardi III in septem libros dispositum*) written by the English Benedictine monk, Ranulf Higden (d.1364). See John Taylor, 'Higden, Ranulf'. *ODNB*.

[427] The 'Welsh antiquaries' included Edward Lhwyd, an Oxford naturalist and philologist who from 1693 updated information on Welsh counties for Edmund Gibson's new version of Camden's *Britannia* (1695), to which Machell also contributed. See Graham Parry, *The Trophies of Time: English Antiquarians of the seventeenth century* (Oxford, 1995), 345-54.

[428] John Speed, *The theatre of the empire of Great Britaine*.

[429] Camden refers to 'this altar I saw lately digged out there [Moresby], with a little horned image representing Sylvanus, erected to his honour by the Second Cohort of the Lingones'. And in his margin: 'Deo Sylvanus cohors Secunde Lingonum, cui præst G. Pompeius M. Saturninum', *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 766.

[430] 'There is also an ancient place in Cumberland called Morisby in which town are found many venerable relics of Antiquity including the stone published by Camden inscribed as follows: TO THE GOD SILVANUS etc. {MS Inscriptions p.4}. This place perhaps took its name from King Morus, Mor'sby as it were – i.e. the place or estate of Morius. Also, Morland in Westm'land.'

[431] Camden describes an inscription found at Carlisle thus: 'This Marius some will needs have to be Arviragus the Britain: others that Marius, who being claimed emperor against Gallienus, was named to bee of wonderfull strength… Yet have I learned, that another, making mention of this stone, saith it was not inscribed MARII VICTORIÆ, but MARTI VICTORI, that is, to victorious Mars, which …seeme to come nearer the truth': *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 779D. See also 759: 'Let that dreame therefore as touching King Marius, bee excluded out of the schoole of reverend antiquity, who forsooth, as our Chroniclers have dreamed, subdued the Picts and called this countrey after his own name.'

[432] A paragraph written in larger letters than the rest. Presumably Machell was referring to the inscription transcribed but not discussed by Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 772, which Machell copied into his history as evidence for Marius/Mori (see I.145).

But whence soever it taketh its name, since the division of this Land into shires – it hath bin calld the County of Westmerland:[433] 'and \ hath / Given title to a Count or Earle ~~calld by name~~ ~~which is now in the Formerly~~ of Westmorland,[434] which Honour was formerly in the Name of the Nevill, {a Yorkshire family} whose armes are seen in som part or other of most churches in Westm'land, Sc [blank]; But is now in the name of the [blank] of whose armes & pedigree I here subjoyned. But when soever it takes its name, since \ & / tho […][435] the land into Shire w[h]ich it has bin called the Co. of W.
But Will. of Mal[mesbury]
– land 20 li per acre.

[I.61][436]

{Moore – More}
It is called Westmorland, from Marius (say some), ~~the~~ a King of this Country, who fought with the Picts; and haveing vanquished \ or overcome / them, called these ~~place after~~ \ partes by / his Owne Name. But since this opinion can not please Mr Camden [~~who was such a master of History~~] it shall not \ contend, / ~~to give it countenance~~: neither finde out a new one \ of my owne query / Terra Maurorum Aureliorum from the Aurelian Maurs who resided at Apleby; tho some peradventure, ~~that delight in Etymologie, would take up the cudgels~~ ~~and contend \ much / for it~~ would be pleasd with it. But I am content \ myself at present / to walke by his light, ~~and had rather play the sceptic than use as far as it will carry mee~~ \ and to goe along with him as far as I can, deduceing it / ~~And~~ rather ~~deduce it~~ \ ~~with that worthy book q.~~ / from the word moore.
But I must begg \ his / pardon, if my experience of the use of that word \ in the northern parts / urges me ~~to be so bold as~~ to contradict him a little. For ~~notwithstanding all that their Etymologists and Lexicographers have writ, concerning the original and meaning of the word \ moore~~ / ~~yett none knows so well the use thereof in those parts of England, as one who has had a great while amongst them; (which I have don.)~~ ~~And I know very well that~~ a more ~~there is the selfe same thing with common in the south~~ \ signifies the same that \ a / Commone doth with us, being 2 different names for the selfe same thing, / and is never used ~~in any~~ otherwise ~~use by north Country men~~. (of \ which / I could give \ a great many instances all over / ~~instances through all~~ this Count\rey, / ~~where~~ their Commons ~~alway~~ allwayes \ being /called moores: altho the soyle be never so rich \ fertil.) / ~~and some I am sure are as fitt for tyllidge as their common fields; they were not inclosed~~. And Stanemore it selfe, has not the name ~~of moore~~ on any other ~~accompt~~ \ score, / but because tis a Common ~~the only instance I can give for his discription of it is a Common. There is a great difference~~; And there is not a village in all this Countrye that ever I heard of ~~that is destitute of~~ them, which has not a Common.
And wherefore I presume our Learned Mr Camden being not often in this Countrey is a little mistaken when he informes us that Loca ~~ista quae inculta jacent~~, et \ quae non facile / Agricultura ~~facile~~ sublevari ~~in~~ possint moores angli septenrionales vocant,[437] i.e. that places unfit for culture in the northern language are called Moors: for most of their Commons, which they calle so, are as good soyle and fitt for tillage, as their Common fields, \ are / if they were ~~but~~ inclosed & \ accordingly / husbanded ~~somewhat accordingly~~. So that mores are nothing but loca inculta,[438] ~~and so they always take them to be~~ wast places ~~laying waist~~ \ uncultivated, / however ~~unfit or~~ \ fertill or / fitt for tillage. But if those places be montes Alte pertingentes, et quae agricultura sublevari non possint[439] (as most of their mountaines are) They challenge to them \ selves / a peculiar name which the northern people never give to the Commons ~~or moors that are not mountains~~ for they are ~~and that is~~ \ calld / Fell. Since ergo we see the true sense

[433] The name of the county is given in full here, rather than in the usual contracted form.
[434] The name of the county is again written in full.
[435] A small amount of text has perished here.
[436] Also numbered p.7.
[437] 'Such barren places which cannot easily by the painfull labour of the husbandman bee brought to fruitfulness the Northern English call moores', Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 759.
[438] Waste places.
[439] 'Far extending mountains, which cannot be improved by agriculture.'

[Machell's Notes: I.61 and I.62]

{There was one King [of] Westm'land who is noted in Ussher's *Antiq. Ecclesae Britan*. pag. 582[440] who slew King Rothinger on the Top of Stanemore, whence this rithme: HEERE KING WESTMEER SLOW THEE KING ROTHINGER. Se allso Burton upon *Antonin[us]*[441] for the Limits.}

{Except Stanemore. Query if it extends to the fell – yes. Stanemoore dale & Stanemore fell.}

[I.62]

Maden Castle. Endenburge. Castrum alatum Aden. But Alain signif. forsan \ in / Aden pro Eaden.

[I.63][442]

of the word, Moore is nothing else but a waist place\ or Common,[443] / What if I should derive ~~it from~~ \ it ~~mean~~ / of the English word more (their being little or no difference betwixt them either in \ sense or / sound or signification)? For More, we know, is an over plus, \ remainder / or residue.[444] And moore is ~~somewhat~~ left behind \ such a parcel of ground, / ~~behind, viz a portion or parcel of ground as which~~ \ as /~~which~~ was not thought fit to be inclosed, with the fields an Demaisnes ~~were when they~~ first ~~of all divided & separated them from the Great waist places~~ \ taken up, but was left as a pasture in Common for ther beasts to goe on. \ Now this Country of old being the seat of war \ q. Morandi Locus / both in time of the Romaines & Saxons, \ the / Danes\ & Normans; / and perpetually \ since that / infested with ~~incursions of the~~ Scotts till of late years* could not husband their ground & improve it so much as \ those which lay somewhat remoter from them / ~~remoter places, so that their fields~~ \ ~~Whence it comes to pass that our fields / were little, and their moors our Commons great. Whence your southerly people in some part of Yorkeshire, and easterly in Bishoprick where the people of Bishoprigg to whom it layes west (and some part of Yorkshire) \ to whom it lies west / called the place Westm'land, and they doe to this day calle the people of this County and & the inhabitants of Cumberland, West-Country men~~.{Compared with our neighbours in Y[orkshire] & Bishoprick of whom wee lye West, whence they call us West countery men & C[ounty] Westm'land}. It appears then that Westm'land is so called, from it[s] \ western / situation – and great store of Moores and \ i.e. / Commons, \ ~~therein & unimproved places~~ / many of which notwithstanding are arable \ ~~which are therein~~ and have bin ploughed, as appears by the ridges & furrows upon them / held non quia inter montes alte pertingentes ad occasum sita est.[445] But not from lying amongst high mountaines[446] \ alltho it be enviorenned with them / for they are commonly called Fells, not Moors.[447]

[Machell's Notes: I.63]

*Usus ad tempo Jacobi Regis [James I.]

[I.46][448]

[F.] County of Westm'land
Why tis called a county; why Westm'land; Describe in generall; Divide it, and Speake of the particular Parishes & Lordships

Thus Sir,[449] haveing given you my thoughts concerneing the mistake of those 2 worthy authors in this particular, who otherwise in the general have writ beyond compaire: (yett even the better of them (as all men must doe) doth acknowledge himself, subject to errours) \ mistakes / (In plurimis me posse

[440] James Ussher, *Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates* (Dublin, 1639).
[441] William Burton (1609-57), *A Commentary on Antoninus his Itinerary, or Journies of the Roman Empire, so far as it concerneth Britain* (London, 1658).
[442] Also numbered p.7.
[443] For Camden's opinion see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 749.
[444] This is repeated on MS.II.460.
[445] 'Not because it is situated among mountains extending far towards the West'.
[446] Here, Machell translates the Latin above.
[447] See the same comments in *N&B1*: 1, 3.
[448] Continuation of I.44A.
[449] Machell was addressing the reader here.

errare fateor, nec erroribus indulgebo; quis totum diem jaculans semper colliniet?)[450] I shall proceed to speake of the County of Westm'land, & therein show you [1.] Why tis called a county. 2. Why Westm'land. 3. Describe in generall. 4. Divide it. 5. Speake of the particular Parishes & Lordships.

[I.48]

Tis divided from Bishoprick by the River Tease which springs in this Country*. It semes parted from Yorkeshire by a direct line from Argillhouse to Rear Cross;[451] & so by the Romaine Way to Bowes Castle whence in a direct line to Holme Cross.

{Why County?}
This, with Cumberland and Northumberland, are not called shires as others in England, but Counties: yet I finde Cumberland caled by Leland, and that not unfrequently, Carluelshire. & \ Westmorland-by is Apalbyshire. / They are called Counties: in Latin Comitatus, from Comes, a Count or Earl, of which every shire in England \ have one / as Governor thereof: and under him was the Vice Comes, Viscount or Sheriff; Sheriffs to this day being called Vice Comites, notwithstanding that the ~~title~~ \ word / be now transmuted to signify principly a title of honour rather than office; howbeit in this County the office & honour go together, for &c.

[Reign of Richard I. 1189-1199]
\ John de Crakenthorpe 21 Rich. at Berewise witness penes Blenkinsop /

[Reign of King John. 1199-1216]
Phillip Scroope 5^0. Johais
Joha de Ormsheved: Temp. Jo.
Reymund de Dernford t. Joh.
Eudo de Bellocampo t. Joh.
William de Ireby temp. Joh.

[Reign of] Hen. 3. [1216-1272]
Gilbert de Kirkington
Thomas filius Johannis
Robert de Morvil vice comitus
Thomas de Musegrave 36. H.3
Randulphus de Notingham \ alibi 27. H.3 / clericus \ vice com. Westmorland / in Cart. s.d. Cum. Willielmo de Goldrington. Testis (penes Mr Blenkinsop) in which Thomas de Hellebeck purchased Lands in Asco \ Ascome* /
Richard de Notingham clerk s.d.

[Reign of] Ed. 2. [1307-1327]
Henry de Warthecop 10. Ed. 2

[Reign of] Ed. 3. [1327-1377]
Henricus de Threlkeld vice com.
et Johanes de Burgh forsan Burgham sub vice com. 35. Ed. 3.

[Reign of Richard II. 1377-1399]
Johi de Crakenthorpe, 21. Rich. \ at / Berewise. Witness, penes Blenkinsop

[450] 'I confess that in very many matters I am capable of making mistakes, nor will I condone my mistakes; who, when aiming all day long, always hits the mark?' The Latin word 'collinet' has been written by Machell as 'colliniet'. The quotation is repeated on I.47 and I.48.
[451] Argill house lies on South Stainmore, Kirkby Stephen, CA17 4DH. Rey Cross (Rere Cross or Rear Cross) is located on Stainmore towards the western edge of County Durham, approximately 1 kilometre (0.62 mi) east of the border with Cumbria along the A66 road.

[Machell's Notes: I.48]

*{Sed de hoc qua?[452] see the Bounder penes Jac. Bird. Jo. Hall.}
Shirerifs Tarne?
As I remember, Warwickshire was governed before the Conquest by a viscount – Sed dub[ito]?[453]
Shireriff & Lieutenant. 57: Camden.[454]
Com\it/es 2. 345. Officiales in Saxonum Tempor[ibus] Hereditarij in Normanorum.[455]
Vice comites Westmor[iae] sub fam[iis] Vipont & Clifford in Antiquis Cartis Memorandum.[456]

[I.49][457]

{§1. Bounds}
{E Cart. penes Thomas Sandford de Askham}
The County of Westm'land \ sometime writ the County of Appleby / is bordered on the north and west side theirof with Cumberland; on the south with Lancashire; and on the east with \ part of / Yorkshire and the Bishoprick of Durham. It is separated from Cumberland by \ Tees / Emote and Blenkarne Rivers, and part of Eden, to wit from the Bridge […][458] where Blenkarne comes into it till it meets with Emote [blank] mile below. It is divided from Lancashire by \ the western bankes / Windermere Water \ which is all in Westm'land. / And the River Winster. Some take Roy Cross on the Top of Stainemore to be the Boundary twixt Westm'land & Yorkshire; yett I find that Bowes Castle \ was said to be / in this County. Vide Dugdalle *Baronagius* de Roberto de Veteriponte, qui fuit custos Castelli de Bowes \ in Westm'land* / tempore Joha[nnis] Reg[is] 2.}[459]

[Machell's Notes: I.49]

* Treat of Bowes Here.

[I.388]

Bowes Parish in Westm'land[460]
{ad Brough, on the General Description of W[estmorland]}
Tho Bowes be generally reputed in Yorkshire, yett for as much as I finde it – in evidences of great Antiquity, \ ut patet[461] = *Baronagio*, Dugdall: de Robert de Veteripont / viz. in the Time of King John – to have bin in Westm'land, & cannot finde[462] when or by what Authority alienates thence, I shall take occasion to treat of it Here (or by the by in the Limits of Westm'land, or in speakeing about Cæsars Tower Apud Appleby.)

Virius Lupus, Lieutenant under Severus & Successor to Heraclianus about the yere of Christ 197, strenthened the province especially in the north with many Strong Castles ~~amongst~~ and repaired many places ruined either by fyre or furie of the Bordering Swords & of which Lavat Ræ (i.e. Bowes under Stanemore)[463] where the 1[t] Cohort of the Thracians lay, was one; as appears by this Aultar there erected for The Goddess Fortune* now at the House of Sir Rob[ert] Cotton of Conni[n]gton in Huntington Shire†. And tis not unlikely that either he, or \ the Emperoure T.M.[464] / Severus who

[452] 'But which way from here?'
[453] 'But I doubt it'.
[454] See Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 763C-E.
[455] 'Officials in Saxon times; heirs in Norman times.'
[456] 'The viscounts of Westmaria [were] under the families Vipont and Clifford in ancient deeds.'
[457] Also numbered p.3.
[458] Two illegible words have been scored through here.
[459] 'Who was guardian of the castle of Bowes in the 2nd year of King John.' [1200-01]: See Dugdale, *Baronage* (1675), 347: '[In 4. John] he first had a grant from King John of the Castle of Appleby and Burgh, with the whole bailiwick of Westmerland, to hold during pleasure'; 348: 'In the … fifth year of King John this Robert de Vipount had also the custody of Windsor Castle; so also, of the Castle of Bowes in *Com. Westmorl*.'
[460] According to Machell's instructions (*on I.49), this edition has placed notes on the parish of Bowes here.
[461] 'To make plain/to be clear.'
[462] Machell has interlineated the figure '0' here, perhaps to indicate that he found no evidence.
[463] Lavatræ or Lavatris.
[464] These are Machell's initials, placed alongside an interlineation.

reedifyed Olinaca (which is Heckley in Yorkeshire)[465] as appeareth by \ an / Inscription \ which was / found there) were the founders, or Repar[e]res of of those Castles in Westm'land, whose mighty Towers bear the name of Cæsar. Se the inscription ibidem IM. SEVERVS‡.

[Machell's Notes: I.388]

*DEÆ FORTVNÆ &c. se Speeds *Cron*, 228 or Camden.[466] {Memorandum: I heard one found at K[endal] Fortunæ Servatrici. 1 seemes before an Ingaigement, the other after.}

†{Query if not Brough under Stanemore? Send to Cottones Sc.}[467]

‡{See also what is said of Theodosius Civilis, Lieutenant Flavius Valentinianus, who Reedifyed Cityes Castles &c. Book 6. Cap. 50 p. 270. §8.} See more there in Speed, How Severus warred with noe great Glorie against the North Brit[ons].

[I.49]

{[§2.] Figure and Extent}

The figure of this County is somewhat oblong, reaching from Kirkland in the north to Burton in the south about 30 miles; and from ~~Eden~~ \ Hewseat Morvill / {Hill} to the head of Gresmere near upon 30, which makes the measure of the whol circuit much upon 120 miles.[468]

{§3. Why County?}

It is called a County (which is peculiar to Westm'land Cumberland & Northumberland)[469] from the word Count, which signifies an Earle: In Latin Comitatus from Comes, and implyes as much as Dignitas Comitis, vel tantum spatium Terrae, quantum ad comitem pertinent;[470] i.e. The jurisdiction of an Earle, or so much land as was allotted unto him. (See more in Spelman's *Gloss[ary]*[471] *Titles of Honor*:[472] sub title: *Comitatus*.) Now tho the word cannot be out of use amongst us to express an Earle by, yet 'tis very frequent in forreine nations, and we calle his wife Countess & his deputy Vi-Count (which are reliques of the word) to this very day.[473]

{Comites; Whence Shireref}

These Comites, Countes or Earles had their \ County Courts as wee have to this day / wherein matters

---

[465] Machell appears to have taken his information from Speed's *Historie*, which spells Olicana as Olinaca, and Ilkley as Hekeley; see Ralph Thoresby (1658-1725), *Biographia Britannica, or The Lives of the most eminent Persons who have flourished in Great Britain and Ireland from the earliest ages down to the present times, collected by the best authorities, both Printed and Manuscript, and digested in the Manner of Mr Bayle's Historical and Critical Dictionary Vol. 6, Part 1* (London, 1763), 3931-43, at 3938, where these names are correctly written.

[466] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 732. Camden placed Bowes in 'Richmondshire'.

[467] Sir Robert Cotton (1571-1631) was an antiquary and politician. In the late 1580s, having already collected material for a history of Huntingdonshire, he became an early member of the Society of Antiquaries, together with his former teacher William Camden, and began to lend volumes from his growing library to fellow antiquaries. In 1599-1600 Cotton accompanied Camden on a tour of northern England, surveying and collecting Roman remains from the area around Hadrian's Wall; reports of their findings were later added to an edition of Camden's *Britannia*. In November 1629 Charles I ordered the closure of Cotton's library, and for a brief period Cotton was imprisoned because he had allowed his collections to be used for the production of arguments thought detrimental to royal interests. Cotton published little under his own name but acted as a source for many scholars engaged in their own work, for which 17th-century writers praised him. At his death, Cotton's library consisted of around 800 volumes of MSS, mainly Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, monastic registers, biblical works, lives of the saints and martyrs, genealogies and heraldic materials. See S. Handley, 'Cotton, Sir Robert Bruce, first baronet (1571-1631), antiquary and politician'. *ODNB*. Graham Parry describes Cotton as 'a magnificent specimen of the full-blown Jacobean antiquary,' Parry, *Trophies* of *Time*, 92.

[468] The length of Machell's 'mile', in this paragraph and throughout the volumes, is open to interpretation.

[469] 'Shire' does not appear in the names of these counties.

[470] 'The dignity/jurisdiction of an earl, or as much area of land as pertains to an earl'.

[471] Sir Henry Spelman, *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1626, completed by William Dugdale 1664).

[472] John Selden: *Titles of Honor* (1614).

[473] Machell here digressed to discuss the office and dignity of persons with the title of 'Count' in England and mainland Europe: see Part 3, Ch.4, Heraldry.

{Anno 1068. 2. William}[484]
Wee read that the northern English conspired att Brough against William the Conqueror in the beginning of the Norman government, which in all probability was[485] 1068 – the 2nd yere of the Conquerors reigne, when Edgar Athling the right heire to the crowne came out of Scotland to Durham, where he slew Robert Cumin & 700 Normans placed there on purpose to withstand all dangers which might arise from Malcolm King of Scotts or Edgar himself, whose sister Malcolm had espoused.

{Anno 1069. 9. William}
But notwithstand winter wether he posted into ~~his /or in~~ the north & appeared further towards 1069 when the English fugatives brought in the Daines to their succour, under the conduct of Osburne Brother to Swaine King of Denmark, & Harold & Canute his 2 sonns, who arrived in Humber & landed their men.

[I.51][486]
It is very dubious ~~when~~ whence the first division into Shires or Countyes tooke its rise: but ~~no doubt~~ \ probably / it was in the time of the Saxon, because the word is puerly Saxon, and signifyes as much as a division: however wee will run it as high as wee can. Not to mention Ignulphus: his mistake (which we shall have occasion to speake of hereafter and which is indeed of later date than what I purpose to produce),[487] Mr Seldon observing in his *Titles of Honor,* p.2 c.5. {? vid} § 3, an old law of Ina's King of West Saxons, Anno DCCXX: That if any Ealdorman ~~were~~ bee guilty of an escape, perdat suum Comitatum[488] ~~Lett him~~ \ he was to / forfeit his shire. Which ~~learned~~ Mr Dugdall has taken notice of, and afforded ~~us~~ \ me / allso an other proofe of greater antiquity ~~of H Huntington his folio 170 which he refer to King Egbert by a circumstance of time~~, ~~who began his~~ reigne, who made Egga and Learicus witnesses to his foundation Charter of Crowland, by the titles of Comes Lincolniae, & Comes Leicestriae;[489] and if theire were then Counts or Earles, no question but there were Shires or Countyes also. However Here Huntington, lib. 1. fol.170,[490] speakes more clearly concerning this division, tho of later date, for sayes he: postquam autem Reges West Seaxe cæteris praevaluerant, at monarchiam obtinuerunt (which was of Circumstance of time in the reign of King Egbert, who began to rule Anno DCCC) Terras per 35 provincias sibi diviserunt.[491] So that in probability there was a division into shires or Counties in the year DCCXVI, or DCCXX. But beyond all controversie in the year DCCC, the land there being divided into 35 Provinces, Shires or Counties.
{§ 5. The several Kings haveing severall shires in their several D.[492] – But [they] were then divided into 25 shires, as they are at this day.}[493]

{Number of shires}
But then againe we are allmost as much at a loss about the Number of Shires in this Kingdome as we

---

[484] The second year of the reign of William the Conqueror.
[485] An illegible word here is possibly, 'either'.
[486] Also numbered p.4.
[487] Ignulphus/Ignulf (c.1045-1109), a royal scribe to William I, became Abbot of Crowland c.1086. He was supposedly author of the *Croyland Chronicle*, which bears his name and is written in the first person. The *Chronicle* deals with events and documents, particularly charters, relevant to Crowland Abbey, from the eighth to the eleventh centuries, but has since been found to be a 15th-century forgery (now named *Pseudo-Ingulf*). *Pseudo-Ingulf* draws at times on reliable chroniclers and may at times reflect authentic traditions. See E. King, 'Ingulf, abbot of Crowland'. *ODNB*.
[488] 'He should lose his shire'.
[489] In Dugdale, *Warwickshire*, Preface.
[490] Henry of Huntington, *Historia Anglorum* or *The Chronicle of Henry of Huntingdon*.
[491] 'But after the Kings of West Saxony had prevailed over the others and obtained the monarchy … they divided the Lands for themselves into 35 provinces.'
[492] Dominions; domains.
[493] The MS. appears to read, 'But when they run al into and have them were then divided into 25 shires, as they are at this day', but, as this margin comment is mixed with body text it is difficult to decipher.

{Anno 1068. 2. William}[484]
Wee read that the northern English conspired att Brough against William the Conqueror in the beginning of the Norman government, which in all probability was[485] 1068 – the 2nd yere of the Conquerors reigne, when Edgar Athling the right heire to the crowne came out of Scotland to Durham, where he slew Robert Cumin & 700 Normans placed there on purpose to withstand all dangers which might arise from Malcolm King of Scotts or Edgar himself, whose sister Malcolm had espoused.

{Anno 1069. 9. William}
But notwithstand winter wether he posted into ~~his /or in~~ the north & appeared further towards 1069 when the English fugatives brought in the Daines to their succour, under the conduct of Osburne Brother to Swaine King of Denmark, & Harold & Canute his 2 sonns, who arrived in Humber & landed their men.

[I.51][486]
It is very dubious ~~when~~ whence the first division into Shires or Countyes tooke its rise: but ~~no doubt~~ \ probably / it was in the time of the Saxon, because the word is puerly Saxon, and signifyes as much as a division: however wee will run it as high as wee can. Not to mention Ignulphus: his mistake (which we shall have occasion to speake of hereafter and which is indeed of later date than what I purpose to produce),[487] Mr Seldon observing in his *Titles of Honor,* p.2 c.5. {? vid} § 3, an old law of Ina's King of West Saxons, Anno DCCXX: That if any Ealdorman ~~were~~ bee guilty of an escape, perdat suum Comitatum[488] ~~Lett him~~ \ he was to / forfeit his shire. Which ~~learned~~ Mr Dugdall has taken notice of, and afforded ~~us~~ \ me / allso an other proofe of greater antiquity ~~of H Huntington his folio 170 which he refer to King Egbert by a circumstance of time~~, ~~who began his~~ reigne, who made Egga and Learicus witnesses to his foundation Charter of Crowland, by the titles of Comes Lincolniae, & Comes Leicestriae;[489] and if theire were then Counts or Earles, no question but there were Shires or Countyes also. However Here Huntington, lib. 1. fol.170,[490] speakes more clearly concerning this division, tho of later date, for sayes he: postquam autem Reges West Seaxe cæteris praevaluerant, at monarchiam obtinuerunt (which was of Circumstance of time in the reign of King Egbert, who began to rule Anno DCCC) Terras per 35 provincias sibi diviserunt.[491] So that in probability there was a division into shires or Counties in the year DCCXVI, or DCCXX. But beyond all controversie in the year DCCC, the land there being divided into 35 Provinces, Shires or Counties.
{§ 5. The several Kings haveing severall shires in their several D.[492] – But [they] were then divided into 25 shires, as they are at this day.}[493]

{Number of shires}
But then againe we are allmost as much at a loss about the Number of Shires in this Kingdome as we

[484] The second year of the reign of William the Conqueror.
[485] An illegible word here is possibly, 'either'.
[486] Also numbered p.4.
[487] Ignulphus/Ignulf (c.1045-1109), a royal scribe to William I, became Abbot of Crowland c.1086. He was supposedly author of the *Croyland Chronicle*, which bears his name and is written in the first person. The *Chronicle* deals with events and documents, particularly charters, relevant to Crowland Abbey, from the eighth to the eleventh centuries, but has since been found to be a 15th-century forgery (now named *Pseudo-Ingulf*). *Pseudo-Ingulf* draws at times on reliable chroniclers and may at times reflect authentic traditions. See E. King, 'Ingulf, abbot of Crowland'. *ODNB*.
[488] 'He should lose his shire'.
[489] In Dugdale, *Warwickshire*, Preface.
[490] Henry of Huntington, *Historia Anglorum* or *The Chronicle of Henry of Huntingdon*.
[491] 'But after the Kings of West Saxony had prevailed over the others and obtained the monarchy … they divided the Lands for themselves into 35 provinces.'
[492] Dominions; domains.
[493] The MS. appears to read, 'But when they run al into and have them were then divided into 25 shires, as they are at this day', but, as this margin comment is mixed with body text it is difficult to decipher.

are about there original; for though, H. Hunting\ton/ tells us planely of 35 provinces in those dayes, we finde the account to alter in after aiges; for Mr Camden has coated to our hands that "in the year 1016 {?} There were in England XXXII shires. (è Malmsburiensi)[494] When William the Conqueror taxed the Kingdom (which was about 15 years after his arrivall) XXXVI (ut habet Polychronicon Acta tamen publica in qu[ibus] Censum ille retulit dum taxat XXXIIII percensent.[495] {Censum egerint Take the Lat[in].} For Durham Lancaster Westm'land Cumberland and Northumberland, were not rec[k]oned in the Number Because these 3 last, as some will have it, were att that time in subjection."[496]

[Machell's Notes: I.51]

! ! ! ! ! Westm'land Cumberland Northumberland. I thinke Meschines gave the Barony of Brough to Raife de Engayne temp Conquestis, the Conquerer gave land in Kendal, and founded a Nunery in Cumberland, so that this should se[e]m falce {Se Dugdale *Barony* Se allso Ewbank ped[igree]. Ep. 1. in the parish of Bro[ugh.}[497]

[I.52]

It should seem by this account that these 3 Northern Counteys (of Westm'land Cumberland and Northumberland) did not then belong to England att all \ in the Conqueror's time / But the Contrary will appear from severall circumstances, as 1st.

1. 'Tis certain He had both Cumberland & Northumberland in the 1st yere of his reigne Anno 1066, as appeares by his takeing along with him into Normandy (to the ende he might secure peace in England) such nobles as were most potent & powerfull, amongst whome are re\ k/oned: Edgar, sirnamed Ethling, who was \ right / heire to the Crowne ~~if not hindered by Conquest~~; Walheof the sonn of warlike Siward, Earl of Northumberlan; Gospatrick, Earl of Cumberland, with others*.

2. 'Tis certain that in the 2nd yere of William the Conqueror he founded a Religious house in Cumberland (called Nunery to this day & now the seat of the Grahams) endowing it with large priviledges; as appears by his charter bearing that date, penes Mrs Graham de Nunery: & ergo Cumberland was the Conquerors then.[498]

3. In 1073: which was the 7th of his reign tis objected to Malcolme King of Scotts, that he did not onely entertaine Egarethling the chief pretender to the English crown & his adherents; but led them on in person, and entering Cumberland waisted the Country all before them, even as far as Durham: i.e. Cumberland & much of ~~Northumberland~~ \ Bishoprick / which show they were both subject to the Conqueror.

4. He sent Gospatrick against them (lately reconciled) whom he then created Earl of Northumberland; who putt them to flight and the Conqueror pursued as far as Galloway; whereupon Malcolm sent an embassy of peace & aggrement was made, says Hector Boetius, an author of theire owne,[499] that the Scotts should have Cumberland. Our late writers give him into the Bargan (for the sake of Rere Cross which they \ falsely / call Roy) by force of conjecture, Northumberland & Westm'land. But I am \ noe writeing on this subject / of opinion that He had onely 12 Townes granted in the Kingdome of England; and those likely in Cumberland, his neighbouring. My reasons are

1t. Because he was beaten when this peace was concluded and the enymy entered into his owne Kingdome & therefore I suppose he could not capitulate upon so great advantage as the accession of a whole County (much less of 3, 2 of which the General was Earle of) to the Crowne of Scottland.

---

[494] Camden took this figure from William of Malmesbury: see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 159: 'For in the year … 1016 whiles Ethelred raigned, the Chronical of Malmesburie reporteth …in England thirty-two Shires'.
[495] 'As the *Polychron* has it, however, the public Decrees [in which] he recorded the Census while he was levying the tax record, 34'.
[496] The paragraph is based on Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 159.
[497] The foundation of the Nunnery at Armathwaite as proof of the Conqueror having taken Cumberland c.1067, has been found to be false; see Part 1. Ch.6, Brough, I.396, I.399.
[498] The walls of Nunnery House, Cumberland, are partly mid-13th century, with 16th- and 17th-century additions and alterations by the Graham family. George Graham Esq. sold Nunnery c.1690 to Sir John Lowther, for £1,436, who later exchanged it with John Aglionby Esq., for Drumburgh Castle. Further alterations were made for John Aglionby (1694, date-stone). https://historicengland.org.uk/listing; see also *N&B2*, 431.
[499] Hector Boece, *Scotorum Historia* (1527).

2. Because in 1092 when Malcolm King of Scottland advanced into England as far as Chester (Reg. Will. 2.) & had a great advantage He lefte no more for a peace than 12 villages (and sure he would aske all that belonged him) which he had formerly held of his father (viz. the Conqueror,) which he required should be restored: and upon restitution returned home again. ~~In some place contradicted~~ The reason why this and the other Northern Countyes were not taxed, was, no question, least they should adhere \ to the Scotts to keep quiete & free from rebellion. /

The destruction of the Saxon Library att Yorke (Cam[den] p. 412) & Wolsty Castle in Cumberland, which was built on purpose to secure the treasure and writeing of the monkes at Holme Cultram, with the Tower at Yorke where they \ saye the / evidences of the northern parts were kept, and Mr Dugdalls informacion that there is noe thing to helpe me \ in / the Tower att London, has undon us for any historicall account. And *Doomsday Booke* (which has stood all Antiquaries in so much steed) is silent as to us, so that what I write must be scratched out of the earth, & mere conjecture, nisi quae sunt superioris seculi.[500]

[Machell's Notes: I.52, 52A & 52B]

*[See}§9 of King William the Conqueror in Speeds *History,* ergo he had Cumberland & Northumberland.

[I.52A]

1. Road.
2. William Longspere 2nd Duke of Normandy so called of the long sword he wore.
3. Richard of Hardy 3rd Duke of Normandy so called from his admirable fortitude.
4. Richard the Good 3rd Duke of Normandy He marryed = Judith Sister of Gefferey Earle of Britaigne.

[I.52B]

Marlesuein & Gosspatrick noblemen of Northumberland, went into Denmarke upon the defeat of the English after King Williams returne out of Normandy. Queen Agathas 2 brothers Mocar Earle of Chester, & Edwine Earle of Yorkshire, who were the heads of the conspiracy went for saifty into Scotland. The Queen likewise which Edgar Atheling her son & right heire to the Crowne and Her daughters Christian and Margrett, who were courteously entertained by Malcolme (sirnamed Canmoir)[501] King of that Country who maryed Lady Margaret (2nd of King William's reigne). I am sure the Conqueror had Cumberland then for he founded Nunnery that he might be near to the English Crowne. Hence Scotland became a refuge & sanctuarye to the English who fled from the pressures of the Normans. Robert Cumin with 700 of his Normans were slane in the night time at Durham by Edgar Atheling and his followers January 28 1068. 3rd Willielmi.[502]

[I.53][503]

{Gospatrick Earle of Cumberland}

The Conqueror had Cumberland, and then doubtless Westm'land allso in 1066. which was the 1st yere of his reigne (his being Crowned at Westminster on 'Monday Natalis X^li^ anno praedicto).[504] For when he had setled affairs in this Nation, and reconciled himself to the Kentish men; he tooke saile in the Lente following towards his owne Country, take[ing] with him several pledges of the English fidelity, with many Nobles whome he feared to be potent,[505] amongst whome was Gosspatricke, Earle of Cumb'land.

{Seised Estates 1067, Reg. 2^0^}

In 1067 dureing his absence, the Welshmen under Edrick Sylvaticus rebelled against the Normans; whereupon King William returned, & toke this occasion to give the possessions of the English nobility to his owne people, as a reward of the ones service & the others disloyalty. & ~~being torn with~~ dealing severely with them, many fled the nation and found protection under Malcolme King of Scots in the yeres 1068 & 1069. 1070, 1072. He was then in person as far North as Selby {where his son Henry was Borne; afterward King of England. ~~May be fore this time Malcolm held Cumberland~~.}

[500] 'Except what there is of an earlier age'. For Domesday see https://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/domesday/.
[501] Some of this word is obscured by the binding, but it is probably the name 'Canmoir'.
[502] MS: '1608'. Machell reversed two digits here.
[503] Also numbered p.5.
[504] 'In the year aforesaid'.
[505] MS: 'poten', but perhaps 'potent': powerful; mighty. *OED*.

{Gosspatrick Earle of Northumberland}
And about the yere 1073 Malcolme did not only entertaine Edgar Etheling, the chiefe pretender to the English Crowne with his adherents as he had don hitherto; but ingaiged himself in person as their Leader & entered into Cumberland, ~~where then~~ waisteing the Country all before them, even as far as Durham: whither King William sent Gospatrick, lately reconciled unto him and by him created Earle of Northumberland, who payed the Scotts in their owne coyne: & the Conqueror was so incensed against them that he entered their Kingdome as far as Galloway; but being wearyed with the Marches & Mountains thought fitt to retire.

{Cumberland granted to the King of Scotts}
And Malcolme upon that sending an Embassy of peace; it was kindley received & King William granted Cumberland unto ~~that~~ \ him / ~~Malcolme~~ upon Condition that the Scotts thenceforward should [not] (continue or) attempt anything which might be prejudicial to the Crowne of England, upon which grant Malcolme did Homage \ to King William / for it, and as some thinke, Rear Cross upon Stainemore was then erected as a meet or bound betwixt the 2 Kingdoms, haveing Williams picture & the armes of England on one side butt Malcolmes & the Scottish Ensigns on the other, which I should willingly believe if any vestigia of those {things} were upon it, or if it could that Cumberland did [af]ter extend thus far. Sure the Conqueror upon the grant of one

[Machell's Notes: I.53]
Westm'land never part of Scotland ad page 5.

[I.54]

County, would not permitt him to incroach so much upon him as to take away 2.
In the foresaid yere 1078, the Rowle of Winchester, or *Doomsday booke*, was made, so called partly because of the heavy taxes (6s fore every hide land) partly because noe man was exepted from that survey. & the English men were so oppressed that they invited Malcolme once more to enter King Williams Confines, wasting all before him unto the River Tine \ i.e. Northumberland. / Against whome the Conqueror sent his son Robert, who layd the foundasion of a Castle there, which gave both name & beginning to the Towne. Yett there was a place there called Monkches[ster] before – an habitation of Monkes.

William the Conqueror Anno 1067 built Hastings Castle; Lincolne Castle; Notingham Castle; & Yorke Castle. In 1072 the Castle of Wysbech, near Ely & Hereward Castle of wood and turfes was then reared against him. The Castle at Durham much about the same time, or in the yere following after he had made a Truce with Malcolme King of Scots. In 1078 he built a strong castle on the east side London with deep trench, Gundulphus Bishop of Rochester being surveyor; the same wee now call the Tower of London said to be builded by Julius Caesar, so far comes it short excep wee should thinke that William onely added to the old worke. Newcastle founde[d] by Robert his son, Anno 1079. Allain Fergent (i.e. Red) Earle of Little Britaigne, had for dowry with the d[aughter] of King William & good service don at the Conquest, the Earldom of Richmond, where he built the [cast]le.

Walter Bishop of Durham bought of King William the Earledom of Northumberland so that Gosspatricus had it not long. (Henry 3. son of King William was borne \ at Selleby in Yorkeshire in 1017. 3^0 Conquest / & there the Conqueror founded the Abby of St Germans.)

{William 20. Malcolme. 12 townes in Cumberland belonged to the Scotts}
In 1092 Malcolme entered into the English Marches as far as Chester in the Street: but returned again upon the ~~restauration of~~ \ restitution of / 12 villages, which he had held in England under his father. N.B (I believe these 12 were in Cumberland, and all that he had upon the 1^{t} composition which William the Conqueror esceated maybe to the English crowne by reason of his inroad in aid of the English conspiratours after the Great Tax)*.

[Machell's Notes: I.54]

*_Ypodigma Neustriæ_.[506] Vide? Author.
(See Math. Paris. 1. Henry Hano Gemeticensis,[507] Hector Boethius[508] lib. 12. Cap. 10). Westm'land was Westm'land then.

[I.55]

{Walsingham in his _Ypodigma Neustriæ_}
And this is confirmed from the following passage, namely, that King William then repaired those castles which the Scotts had destroyd, new built in Cumberland the City Carlisle, & built a Castle there &c, which if \ all / Cumberland had belong'd to Malcolme, \ he / would not have \ suffered / permitted; nor is it likely that, comeing into England with a great power (as he did) & att such time as the English \ fleet / sent against them was torne by a Tempest and the Horsemen perished through hunger & cold, I say tis not likely that he haveing these advantages, should demand less than he \ & his ancestors / formerly injoy'd; wherefore I conclude that the Scotts were so far from haveing Westm'land & Cumberland too, which they allow them, who grant Rear Cross, or as they calld it (to palliate their fiction) Roy Cross \ upon Stanemore / for the Limit of their Kingdome, that \ they / had not all Cumberland, nor any considerable part there \ But / onely 12 villages; which the Scotch Author Hector Boetius, to inlarge the Bounds, & extoll the valour of his \ Nation / Countrymen, by ~~an unluky~~ synecdoche,[509] expresses by Cumberland; and to make out the matter, Westm'land must be \ com / in to the Bargain, \ & / Reare Cross must be called Roy Cross, & be bravely garnished with p[…]net[510] and armes, wherein all likelyhood there never was any, T.M. But Hector Boetius is not very au[then]tick*.[511]

{Malcolme killed 1093; R. Mowbray of Northumberland.}
In 1093 Malcolme King of Scots came to Glocester to treat with King William \ 2 / Rufus about affairs of theire Kingdoms, but takeing ~~some~~ distaist att \ somthing or other in the / ~~his~~ manner of \ his / rea[…][512] returned ~~without~~ \ suddenly without so much / [as] speakeing to the King; & thereupon immediately entered the Kingdome \ of England / with a great hoast, destroyd in Northumberland as far as Alnwick Castle which [was] near upon the western shore: But Robert Mowbray then Earle of Northumberland, made head against him & without expecting the King's lieve \ for it / fell fo…[513] upon \ him / and killed both him & Malcolme & ~~his sonn~~ Edward his son. Holy War was meditated upon 5 yeares before, but not pursued till this yere – by […][514]

[Machell's Notes: I.55]

*See Speed *Historie*, pag. 430 col. 2.

[I.56][515]

King Henry 1st maryed for his 1st wife Maud the daughter of Malcolme the 3rd King of Scotts sirnamed Canmoir (i.e. Great Head), by St Margaret, daughter to Edward, son of Edmund Ironside,

[506] Thomas Walsingham (d. c.1422) was an English chronicler who emulated the writing of historian, Matthew Paris (d. 1259). His last work, *Ypodigma Neustriæ*, dedicated to Henry V in 1420 (see published edn, 1574) is an epitome of English history from 911 to 1419. J. Taylor, 'Walsingham, Thomas (c.1340-c.1422), historian and prior of Wymondham'. *ODNB*.
[507] Guilelmus Gemeticensis (fl. c.1137): contributor to the *Gesta Normannorum Ducum*; see *Oxford Medieval Texts 21* (Oxford, 1992,1995).
[508] Boethius (Boece, Boyce or Boise), Hector, *Historia Gentis Scotorum* ('History of the Scottish People'), see Nicola Royan, 'Boece [Boethius], Hector'. *ODNB*.
[509] Synecdoche: a figure of speech in which a more inclusive term is used for a less inclusive one or vice versa, as a whole for a part, or a part for a whole. *OED*.
[510] Part of this word has perished.
[511] The rest of this sentence has perished.
[512] The rest of this word has perished.
[513] The rest of this word has perished
[514] A line of text has perished at the page foot; some words appear to be '… the 2 set forward.'
[515] I.56 and I.57 comprise rough notes written on paper previously used as letters to Machell from two of his students (see Part 3, Ch.2. Correspondence).

King of England \ 1000 / to whome he was maryed the 2nd yere of his reigne \ 1100 / and hereupon I suppose it was, that Alexander King of Scotts was trusted with part of his army against the Welsh in 1114 & called a parliament for the Dowry of Maud his daughter maryed to the Emperour Henry 4 in 1126 in the presence of himself & Davyd King of Scotts. He was borne in 1070 3^0 Conquestoris.[516] Dyed in 1135.[517]

Besides the tax in *Doomsday booke* of 6 shillings an Hyde per Angliam, there was an other about the yeere 1112, i.e. the 13. of Henry 1t, at 3 shillings the Hyde, upon the completion of the marriage of Maud his daughter with Henry the 4. Emperour of Germany. Q? where to be seen.

The 1st Parliament of England was in 1116, called at Salisbury by King Henry 1st consisting of the estate spiritual & temporall, the Kings of England in former times ordering their affairs by Edicts, by their Officeres and Governo\u/rs of every County. p. 439 Col. 1 am sure he means since the Norman Conquest; otherwise, I have reson to doubt of the truth of it.

[I.57]

The King of Scots, William which of right he said belong'd to his ancestours: which He ~~proposd at his~~ \ answerd after he had ascembled / his parliament at Northampton Reg. Ejus 50 {Anno 1194} that he could not by any means satisfy his petition in that Juncture of Affaires least his enemyes in France should raise a report that he did such a thing rather for fear than love & friendship. But granted a Convoy to him & his Heires in ~~every~~ \ the / Countys when they should com by summons to the Court of England.
Yett allthough Mr Speed as tells us out of William of Newburg that Appleby & Brough were surprised by William King of Scotts & recovered by King John & Liberall bestowed upon Robert de Veteriponte: yett I finde they came to King John ex forisfactura[518] Hugonis de Morevill, who did (maybe) confederate with the Scotch King. T.M.*

[Machell's Notes: I.57]

*{See other Priviledges granted the King of Scotts: Hollinshed, eodem An[n]o.}
See more of the Affairs twix Scotland and England from this time till the reigne of King Henry 3d – In the reigne of King Stephen read Section 7. 11. 12 lines 6. 14. 16. 31. 35.
In Hen. 2 reigne §7. 10 sed parum ad rem[519] 65. 67. 73.76. 78. 80. 83.
In Richard the Ist §13. 56: Speed.
In King John §10. 41. 45 sed parum ad rem.

[I.58]

{The Descent of King Stephen}
King Stephen who \ was Earle of Montaine & Boloine / began his reigne 2nd of December 1135: Contrary to the Just title of Maud the Emperess daughter to King Henry 1t & her son Henry Plantaginet after King of England. For Stephen was Nephew onely to Henry the 2nd, as \ 3 / son of Adela, Adelicia or Alice as some variously terme her: daughter of William the Conqueror & sister to the 2 preceeding Kings, whose Husband was Stephen Earle of Bloys & Champaigne. The son of Earl Eaudes[520] the son of Earle Theobald, the son of Gernon the Daine companion of Rollo, the Conqueror's ancestour. He built many castles all over England, thinking theirby to strengthen his Kingdome, but they proved the baine of subjective obedience; which Henry sirnamed Fitts Empress very well understanding, when he came to ~~the Crowne~~ make a peace with him & caused 1115 castles to be razed & cast downe. These should be some of the castles built by King Stephen:[521]

[516] 'In the third year of the reign of William the Conqueror.'
[517] The rest of the page has partly perished but reads: 'Dyed in 1135 ætat suæ […] Henry may for all this […] 2 William Rufus ætat suæ 1. William […]'
[518] 'Forfeited of Hugo…'
[519] 'But little to the point.'
[520] This word is blotted.
[521] MS: 'These should be some of the Castles built by King Stephen: ~~§7. §11. §12 6 lines §14. §16. §31. 3 &c.~~'

Hereford C. Caris C. Ludlow C. Dunestor C. Warram C. Meltune C. Shrewsbury C. Dovre C. {p. 447.} Salisbury Cast. Sherborne C. & Malmesbury C. built by Roger Bishop of Salisbury. The Devises, allso as is probable, being then accounted one of the goo[d]lyest castles in Europe.

[Machell's Notes: I.58 and I.58A]

Henry 2?[522]
Query: whether the Scotts ever had so far as to Rerecross.
Answer in short:
They had Cumberland granted (says Hector Boetius); yett I have reason to believe that they never had more granted them then 12 Townes, and as for the conjecture about Roycros, tis very false taken up~~on~~ of his owne head to extend the Limits of his Country & their Conquests: for tis Rerecross & noe signe of armes or figures upon it. Besides tis not said in any place that they had Westm'land {and beside, I finde in [blank] that the castles there came unto him ex forsfactura Hugonis[523] of taking part against King John. {Tho tis very true that the King of Scots rog[avit][524] of King Richard the first after his returne from the Holy War, to have restor'd to him the Countyes of Northumberland, Westm'land & Cumberland & the County of Lancashire.}
[I.58A]
Not[ae] de proelijs inter Malcolmum et Willielmos Angl[iae][525] Reges Anno 6. Will[iellmi] Bastardi Malcolmo Rege Scotorum Rebellante, per Terram et mare exercitum duxit in Scotiam, et eidem Malcolmo in Loco qui dicitur Abrenithes occurrit et Malcolmus suas homo devenit. è *Cronicis Mariani Scoti*.[526] Rogeri Hoveden,[527] Hen. de Huntington.
In *Cronicis Mariani Scoti* et Rogeri de Hoveden in multis Libris intenitur. Quod Anno Domini 1086 successit eidem Willielmo Bast, Willielmus Rufus f. ejus qui anno 14 regni sui Rebellante Malcolmo Rege Scotorum & Northumbriam Invadente cum Roberte fratre suo acies in Scotiam direxit cuj Malcolmus occurrit, & pax inter eos facta è conditione tali; ut Idem M. Rex Scotiæ eid. W[0] regi Anglie, sicut patri suo[528] obediret p. 491.[529]

[I.59][530]

in subjection to \ the / Scots ~~as some will have it~~; and the other 2 were either freed and excepted from tax or comprehended under Yorkshire*. But afterwards, they were all brought in and so made up the number xxxix.[531]
It seems by this relation that in the Conquere\r/s time these 3 Northern Countryes did not att all belong to England, but rather to Scotland, except they were a principality of them selves, and laying betwixt two \ crisdoms / resolved to pay subjection unto neither and it is not unlikely that Durham and Lancaster, were ~~omitted~~ \ freed / from the tax least by Burthening of these Remote Countryes, the Conqueror might give that stubborne people occasion to revolt; for I remember a passage in Mr

[522] MS: '~~Hen. 2 §7. (§10.) §65. 67. 73. 76. 78. 80. 83. Rich. 1t §13. 56 King John §10. §41. 45x~~ Henry 2?'
[523] 'Forfeited by Hugh.'
[524] 'Asked'.
[525] 'Notes on battles between Malcolm and the Williams, Kings of England. In the 6th year of William the Bastard, when Malcolm, King of the Scots rebelled, he led an army into Scotland by land and sea and met the same Malcolm in a place which is called Abrenithes and Malcolm came down… From the Chronicles of Marianus the Scot, Roger Hoveden, Henry de Huntingdon.'
[526] *Chronicis Mariani Scoti* ('Chronicles of Marianus Scotus') d. 1082.
[527] G. Bishop, R Nuberie & R. Barker (eds), *Rogeri Hovedeni Annalium Pars Prior & Posterior, in Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores Post Bedam Praecipui, ex vetustissimis codicibus manuscriptis nunc primum in lucem editi* (London, 1596).
[528] A Latin word here is illegible.
[529] 'In the Chronicles of Marianus the Scot and of Roger de Hoveden in many books it is … that in the year of our Lord 1086 William Rufus, his son, succeeded the same William the Bastard, and in the 14th year of his reign, when Malcolm, King of the Scots, rebelled and invaded Northumbria with his brother Robert, he led his army into Scotland and Malcolm met him, and peace was made between them on a condition such as this, that the same M[alcolm], King of Scotland. should give obedience to W[illiam], King of England, just as he had [formerly] done to his father. 491.'
[530] Some text here completes the subjects raised earlier; most words on this page have been scored through, suggesting a draft version.
[531] Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 159E.

Camden concerning Bishoprig men, that they stood upon their priviledges saying they were Hali warke folke.[532]
But if it be so that Westm'land was under the Scotts, How could the [blank] att Brough make a conspiracy against the Conqueror, whose subjects they were not, that being in Westm'land [blank] miles on this side the Rere Cross, or Roy Cross as some will have it (which they \ say / was a boundary 'twixt Scotland and England, having the armes of each nation upon ~~its severall sides~~; and tho we read that Cumberland was given to the Scots, yett never findeing any gift made of Westm'land, wee must either deny that the Scotts Dominions extended to this Cross, or confess that Westm'land and Cumberland were all one and had but one name, which have no aut[h]ority for; And besides if the King of England gave them he must be supposed to have had them: So that there is nothing but uncertainty concerning this matter; nor we can wee possitively determin any thing till the reign of King [blank] who won it from the Scotts with the other Countyes & so annexed it to England for ever.
{And this seems to be the reason why §6. Westm'land & its neighbouring counties were not taxed, which however advantageous then we have reason to lament & be sorry for now.}

[Machell's Notes: I.59]
*Camden p.57 (an ita sit vide *Doomsd. Booke*).[533]

[I.63]

[H.] Now of its bounds, Limits, figure & extent, Quality \ of soyle / & inhabitants

{§ 8 ~~Soyle~~ The Nature of the Country}
The next thing to be taken notise of is the soyle which for the generality is in no way dispicable, produceing great plenty of Corne and Hay allmost in every place; & where these commodityes are awanting, the defect is supplyed with pasture for cattle; or, which is allmost as necessary, woods coalpits mines or quarries which this Country affords in great abundance.

{The Barony of Kendal}
As to the more southerly part of it, tis confessed (by those who have allready writt) that there is no want of any thing necessarie; and tis very well know to those who have seen it, that northern part doth ecceed ~~the~~ \ other / in all \ sorts of naturall commodityes, / being a more Champion ground, better watered, and (bye reason of the hills wherewith tis incompassed) of a more calme and prolifique temperature: which Mr Camdens and Speeds

[I.65][534]

maps doe demonstrate, however they came to ommitt \ it / in their writeings. So that speakeing in general and considering one part with an other, it is a Country plentifull enough and sufficiently frutefull, affording all things necessarie for the sustenance of humaine nature. (For if here it be naked and destitute of trees, there it is clad with thick woods & copses. If here be mountaines and hills without any corne, there are vales and dales which abound therewith. If here be want of one thing there is plenty of an other, so that nature may seem to have sported her selfe Here, adorning the Countryes with such varietyes as render it at once both commodious and pleasant*.)

{Dales}
{It generally consistes of mountains and vales, or rather dales as they calld them there ansiently.}
And they are little planes Hedged in on each side with mountaines, haveing a river runing through them, \ from which they usually take their names / which renders them fruitefull not onely for grass

[532] 'Haliwerk-folk', also written 'Halywerc folk': people who held their lands by the service of defending the body, relics and territory of St. Cuthbert; also, the county of Durham wherein they lived. *OED*. Machell's reference is to Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 736B: 'For they pleaded (the Storie of Duresme shall speake for mee) that they were Haliwerke folkes, and held their lands to defend the Corps of St Cuthbert; neither ought they to goe out of the precincts of the Bishopricke, namely beyond Tine and Teese, for King or Bishop.'
[533] 'Whether it be thus, see Domesday Book.'
[534] Also numbered p.8.

and hay, but allso sortes of grains – as wheat rye beans pease; a sort of barly, which growing with a greater head than that in the south they usually call Big: {Bigg so called from it Bigness ~~& there~~ hav 4 rowes of Corne, whereas Barly has but 2}; but espicially Oats which in the Language of the Countrye are called Haver, of which sort of graine the Mountaineres and Dalesmen ~~doe for the~~ generally make all their Bread.[535]
And of these little valleyes (which are therefore more ~~plentifull~~ \ fruitfull / because sheltered from the cold by towering hills betwixt which they lye) there are a great Number, as Bretherdale Hegdale, Hickabdale (where are no hab[itations]) Langdale, Mardale, Matterdale, Martindale, Mallerstangdale; Oddendale, Patterdale, Ravenstangdale, Swindale, Smardale, Stainemoredale; all which lay amongst those mountaines ~~that are about~~ \ that environ / the Bottom of Westm'land \ which is the / onely place within this Country that can deserve the name of a vaile \ both / for it evenness and \ noble / extent.
And besides these are 2 greater dales than the rest viz. Loansdall & Kendale, both which are comprised ~~together~~ \ under / the Barony of Kendall. And Here 'tis to be observed that in these dales are not many villages, or Townes, but for the most \ part / loane houses which stand very frequently one from an other \ at a 4^{r} / halfe a mile distance.

[Machell's Notes: I.65]

* {Insert here water & fish p.12 col. a.}

[IV.55-56]

Ancient Value of land and cornage in the Bottom of Westmorland

Inquisition Post mortem of Robert Lord Clifford[536]

[1. Notes]
Then out of an inquisition about the quantity of corne in Westmorland, [in] which every particular made had to sell at a reasonable rate over and above it was necessary, for seed & the maintenance of his owne house. 25 xi \ & 10 xii / 27 Hen viii [1535].
The total sum of all grane to be sold in the Midle Ward: 305 quarters: Decemb. X. xxvij of Hen viii.[537] (In the Barony of Kendall 700 quarters & ½: 25 of November 27. Hen. 8) [1535].
The sum of all corne & granes \ to be / sold within the county of Westmorland is MDLXXI quarter 9 bushell: i.e. 1571 quarter 9 bushell.
I thinke the Midle & West Ward go together. Yes.[538]
It was also presented by the Justices of the said County that there were no common keepers of corne at Xtmas last past, nor noe Ingrossers of corne in the said County, nor noe wheat carried over the sea at any Port or Creke since Xtmas last past, which shows the occasion to have bin the transportation of corne, & want thereby, in the kingdome att that time.

[2. Table]

Owner	Manor (villa de)	Value	Cornage
Alan de Kaber	Kaber	20li	17s 8d
Andrew de Harcla	Harcla	40[539]	1li 6s 0d for both
	Smardale	6li 13s 4d	
Richard de Blenkinsop }	Helbeck	8li 0s 0d for his part	6s 0d between them
Isabel de Slekeburn }	1 part each	3li 0s 0d for her part	
Robert de Swinburne	Askham	20li	5li 0s 9d
T. Musgrave Infant	Great Musgrave & Murton	42li	1li12s 4d I have seen it as 45s 10d but this I take to be right
Do	Rookeby (½ of) & Sandfoot	7li	
T. de Helbeck	Half of Soulby	30li	17s 8d

[535] See a reference to oat bread in *N&B1*, 11.
[536] There were several Roberts de Clifford in the 14th century: see *N&B1*, 275-79.
[537] MS: 'Decemb. x. xxVij: Hen. 8 x. xxvij of Hen viii 27th of Henry VIII.'
[538] A surmise on Machell's part; the answer was added in different ink.
[539] Unit not given, but probably in pounds as per the other amounts.

Henry de Warcop	Warcop & ½ of Wateby	30li	17s 8d
Do	Propertyes in Helbeck	40s 0d	[Blank]
William de Dacre	½ of Wateby & ½ of Overton	40li	12s 6d
Richard de Musegrave	Crosby garratt & part of Musgrave	34li	26li 0s 3d for all his holdings in these
Do	½ of Overton	30li	
Robert Bacon } Andrew de Hellerton}	Hilton	13li	13s 8d
Robert de Asby	½ of Asby Winderwath	10li	19s 0d
John de Cottesford	½ of Great Asby	6li 13s 4d	4s 2d
Robert D'Englays	Little Asby & ½ of Helton Flecket	21li 13s 3d	13s 6d ½ (I have seen 3s 0d)
Nicholas de Hastings	Crosby Ravensworth & Nateby	40li	1li 7s 2d
Gilbert de Culwen	Shap Bampton PalKnipe & I have seen Bampton Patrick & Kings Patrick as his	5li 2 the lot	1li 6s 7d or 1li 6s 8d
Henry de Cundale	Bampton Cundale & PalKnipe	13li 6s 8d	15s 3d
Walton de Wessington	½ of Helton Flecket	6li 13s 4d	16s 4d
John Godberd	Brougham	3li 6s 8d	13s 6d
William Crackenthorpe & Henry de Reddings			
Ralph filius Willelmi (held by Ralph Lord Greystock in 1464-5)	Bolton Yanwath (& elsewhere held in chief)		
John de Boyville	Knock	13li 6s 8d	3s 4d
Luke Tailboys	½ of Cliburn	13li 6s 8d	12s 4d
Thomas de Colby	Colby	13li 6s 8d	6s 10d
The heir of Thomas de Multon of Gilsland	Hoff & Drybeck	30li	9s 2d
John de Derwentwater	Ormside	10li	13s 6d
Robert de Newbiggin	Newbiggin	10li	20d
[deleted name]	Milburn by Howgill	6li 13s 4d	1li 1s 7d
John Kirkbythore	Kirkby Thore	10li	1li 12s 0d
Thomas Mauchell	Crackenthorpe	13li 6s 8d	6s10d
Robert de Bradewood	1 carrucate in Appelby	1li 10s 0d	2s 0d
The heir of Walter de Spencer	8 akers in Apelby	–	4d
John de Harcla	Kinkber	2li 10s 0d	2s 0d
Adam de Coupland	Lowther	2li each except the Prior's	1li 0s 4d
Henry de ~~Hardington~~ Harrington			
Hugh de Lowther & the Prior of Watton			
Richard de Fraunceys	Maulds Meaburn	2li	1li 13s 0d
William de Tylia	½ of Cliburn	6li 13s 4d	7s 8d ½
John de Staffield			
Robert de Sowerby			

William de Helton	Halletun de Burton	10li	13s 4d

[I.64]

\ A short / description of the Bot[tom of Westmorland].

Through the run in the river Eden, which receives into it a great many rivuletts on each \ side, / which infuse into the ground such vital spirits Being plenfully stored with granarys pastures \ woods / meadows cornefields, & cleare runni[n]g rivers, amongst [which] Eden Is counted the chief which running dow the midst of the Country, it riceves the Other here & there Into it bosom & putts such vitall spirits into the ground, and it does not give place to any part of England, for richness of soyle.

[I.66]

Fells

But notwithstanding they bee viarable, and less fit for Husbandry; yett they bring their comodity along with them. For they are a great defence against winde and cold; which is why the Lower pla\c/es are so fertill, notwithstanding the clime, which other men having only respect to, and not knowing the advantage of it situation, have for which concluded the Country to be barren: And besides their defence against in the winter &c.

In these fells are allso stones of all sorts necessary & usefull: Free stone, Grindstone, Milstone, Limestone & slate ~~or tile~~ which are allso in great plenty in the Low Country. In the fells allso where they digg for Ore is found great plenty of a transparent stone which shines like Cristall and might be of \ some /use to the Lapidaryes, tho not regarded there. But the \ generality / is a soft and Blew stone, which is very fitt for make[ing] moulds for Buttons or Bulletts and allso for whetstones, \ & is used so by them. / These are so plentifull that they laying \ spred / upon the mountains, make them seem at a distance of a perfect \ azure / Blew colour, which is very pleasant to the Ey & renders the prospect wonderfully delightfull.[540] But the most miraculous stones that every I see were dugg up \ in the fell / at Harclay,[541] representing the fig[ure] & col[our] of Owles*, of which more there I shall speake in their proper place, vi[de). Kirkby Stephen parish, Manner[ium] de Hart.[542]

[Machell's Notes: I.66]

*Stones like Owles. Some at Harclay. Kept by Sir Phillip, & gett the picture drawne from Mr Provost:[543]

[I.67][544]

{Mountaines}

{In Caves of Mountains are ingendered cold windes*. And the greatest difference I ever observ'd thwixt these parts & south of England (in which I have equally shared my time) is in great \ high / winde in winter that oc[curred].}[545] The mountains here are very high & steep, and in some places full of Rocks and Craggs. And tho they be such for the generality as can not bee improvd by the plough, 'yett they bring their Commodityes ~~sufficiently along~~ with them; for they ~~are a defence against cold in the winter and~~ afford Good pasture for Cattle in sommer especially for \ cowes / sheep, ~~of~~ which are bred here in great abundance, yealding very good wooll. But the sweates[t] mutton in all the world;[546] inso much that King Charles the 2[d] as I have bin inform'd preferd this Country mutton before all daintyes that were brought to his Table. (Infor. Lady Tyr.)

[540] MS. II.454: 'The[y] are blew & pleasant to behold.'
[541] Hartley.
[542] Manor of Hartley.
[543] See Part 1, Ch.13, Kirkby Stephen, I.584: *Figure 1.13.12. Stone 'howles' (owls).*
[544] Also numbered p.9.
[545] Machell shortened the last word to fit the page; its transcription is therefore unsafe.
[546] See *N&B1*, 3, for the same information.

(a.)[547] Amongst these fells are allso bred staggs of an incredible bigness, with wild Bulls & Cowes ~~with which this~~ by some called Bugills, with which this Country of old did very much abound; and some continued till the late Civil Warrs.[548]

{Lead Mines}
~~But beside these commodityes~~, they have \ allso / rich treasures which lay hid within them, to wit, \ of mettall but especially / lead mines allmost in very place where they take the paines to dig and discover them, ~~which have alloys of silver and gold~~.

{Gold Mines}
And some \ shepherd[s] / are sayd to have found Gold Ore in seeking their sheep. Concerneing ~~which I must observe one thing that in~~ a sheep's head brought up to the table, I have seen ~~there the~~ all the teath gilded \ over as it were /~~as~~ with gold; but I doen\t/ use this as any argument to confirme their report. ~~But I am of opinion that if there Be plenty of gold and silver it must be under ground, for it is not possible money should abound in~~ those northern parts as it doth in south ~~by reason that~~ it is so far remote ~~and all land sute tried att London which make a great vent for money. But the Best of it is that that if they have less they need less, for all sorts of provision, are plentifull and cheap even to a wonder~~.

{Wood, Coale, Turfes}

[I.174]

In our island, as som ancient writers doe tell us, Westm'land, Cumberland and all the Northern parts of England were full of woods, trees & bushes, especially upon the mountains, where scarce any wood is now to be seen‡.

[Machell's Notes: II.510]

*Speed.
†Heilms *Cosmog*[*raphie*] p.226, Col. 3.[549] Brigantum Yorke dub ver[um] Camden 40?[550]
‡e lib. voc \ *the adven[tures] of Mr J. Smith*, putt forth by 4 Robbers, printe at London[551] pag. 114.[552]

It is though[t] allso that upon these mountains, in former times have bin a great store of ~~oakes~~ \ wood / and there still remaines some probabilityes of it, as anon shall appear: And tho all in the mean times \ or most of / be now destroyd, yett they have enough left in the Lower Countryes, there being the less need of cutting them there, by reason of their other sorts of fewell which Latter Aiges have brought to light to witt, Coale and turfes \ & peates / which are gott in great plenty upon the mountanes allmost in every place – and in some part of the Bottom of Westm'land.[553]

[Machell's Notes: I.67]

*See Pallad[io] 10. 193.[554]

---

[547] Machell employed the letter '(a)' here as a memorandum to reposition the text when completing his draft document; this edition has obeyed his instruction. MS. I.67 also contains the following crossed-through sentence: '~~Staggs and wild Bulls & Cowse, if not all destroyd in the warrs~~.'
[548] Bugill or bugle: a wild ox or young bull. *OED*.
[549] Peter Heylin (1600-1662), *Cosmographie in four bookes: containing the chorographie and historie of the whole world, and all the principall kingdomes, provinces, seas and isles thereof* (London, 1652).
[550] 'Was York of the Brigantes? I doubt it, yet Camden p.40?'
[551] The rest of the page has perished.
[552] John Smyth (Smith), *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods experienced in 30 years' practice.* 6 vols (London, 1670).
[553] See comments on deforestation and peat mosses in *N&B1*, 7.
[554] Andrea Palladio (1508-1580), *The Four Books of Architecture* (Venice, 1570). Book I was first published in English in London in 1663.

[I.69][555]

But the best Coale that this Country affords \ I thinke I may [say] or England either / is gott in the fells, and particularly on Stanemoore; it burnes \ as if it were / pitch blaseing and giveing light like a candle, but without that noysome and sulfurious smel which other Coals have; and lieves behinde it a sort of sinder after it is Burned, which will make a 2^{d} fire as bright as charcoale. And this plenty of coale makes wooden fewell so cheap in this County, that you may have underwood for cutting ~~upp~~ \ down, / for it serves them in noe steed, save only for Hedging: But their underwoods are frequently Haszell, and therefore here is great plenty of nutts, yett so little reagarded that they yeald noe commodity to those who owen them.

{Peets upon the fells}

In the Boggy places amongst the mountaines which are spongie and viscous, commonly called mosses, they digg a sort of \ black / turfes about a foot in lenth \ & ½ diameter / like to a Brick or their tanners turfes,[556] by them called peets; \ for turfes with them are a distinct thing, i.e. broad flatt taken of[f] the surface / which are excellent fuell, but the smoke thereof ~~not~~ somewhat unpleasant att least to those which are not used to it. And these pitts (or potts as they call them) tho of a considerable depth shall grow up againe in 7 year time and be fitt ~~againe~~ for a 2^{d} harvest (se *Surv. Dial[ogue*).[557]

{Woods upon the fells}

In digging these peet mosses are often found Great Oken Trees, which have laid so long that they are buried very deep in the Boggs, and the water (which in such places is Black from the nature of the soyle) hath given them a tincture like ibony and rathere added very much than taken any thing away from their naturall hardness, which may be some argument of the great store of wood that in former times was upon those mountains; for in Our Iland, as some ancient \ old / writers doe tell us \ testify, / Westm'land and Cumberland and all the northern parts of England, were full of woods trees and Bushes, especially upon the mountains, where scarce any wood is now to be seen. Verum ex quo Opulentæ ferri aliorumque metallorum venæ, hic sparsim aliisque \ vicinis / Regionibus fuerunt repertæ, sylvæ illæ Condensæ paulatim ut opinor rarescere ceperunt;[558] to which may be added an other probable reason \ also* / viz. that they being a receptacle for thieves and robbers & for enemyes allso either to lye wate in or make

[Machell's Notes: I.69 and I.70]

*{adv. of Mr J. Smith London, 1670, p.114}[559]

[I.70]

Crakenthorpe furne & woods demoll.

[I.71][560]

escapes unto, might upon that account be Burned & Cutt downe for the better security of the neighbouring inhabitants, for the Scotts have ever made inroads here, and doe to this day make certane sally to steale and drive away cattle, tho not so frequently as in Cumberland because \ this Country is / more remote from them.[561]

---

[555] Also numbered p.10.

[556] For tanners' turf, see Andrew Steele, *The Natural and Agricultural History of Peat-Moss or Turf-Bog* (Edinburgh, 1826), 12-13: '[Trees] generally found in mosses, are sometimes used as a substitute for oak in tanning leather; and peat mosses being an accumulation of a variety of vegetable matters … perhaps preserved by the stagnated water … continues to receive, by infusion, fresh supplies of tanning matter…' *OED* offers a helpful quotation from 1688: 'The Bark cast out of the Tan-Pits, wrought into Turfes, which, dried, is good fire Fuel.' *OED*.

[557] John Norden, *The Surveyor's Dialogue* (London, 1607).

[558] 'But from the time when rich veins of iron and other minerals were found here and scatteredly in other nearby regions, those thick woods gradually, as I reckon, began to grow thin.'

[559] John Smyth (Smith), *England's improvement revived …*

[560] Also numbered p.11.

[561] A point also made in *N&B1*, 7.

And the Picts no question were \ heretofore / apt enough for to doe ~~att the Comeing in and Goeing out of the Romaines, for they were men of the same sort of manner in that respect with the Scotts now a dayes~~ (if the were the old Brittaines & particularly Brigantes, which I doe really suppose them to bee) at such time as the Romaines po[sses]sed themselves of their Countrie; who for any I know destroyd the woods upon this account haveing left one great mountaine \ viz Romane Fell / which bears their name to this very day – Roman Fell. And some of the Scotts doe still drive away cattle from those people which live near or upon the mountaines, secureing them selves now by Boggs and Mosses instead of woods, through which they have dangerous & unknowne paths except to themselves (their horses being so well disciplined that they will leep from seeve bush to seve bush, {so they call your rushes} contracting their feet into the compass of a Bushel, whereas if they shoul[d] miss of those little Ileletts, horse and man would be swallowed up quick.[562]

[Borderers]
And that I suppose which animates them the more to this practisse of thievery, is that they doe not beleeve it to be a sin, as the Borderers heretofore being taught by their ancestours \ who / told Mr Gilpin (that Honest parson) ~~that~~ Thou shalt not Steale was not God's old Law but a new Law of King Henryes makeing {Henry 8}.[563] And in like manner, as I have bin informed by one who lived amongst them, doe the Highland Scotts prey upon the low and yett thinke them selves so far from sining in it, that when the husbands

[Machell's Notes: I.71]

Roman Fell alias Rut-man Fell.

[I.73]

prepare and make them selves ready for a sally, their poore wifes will fall downe on their bare knees, and begg of God to prosper their attemps and send them good success \ booty. /

[I.72]

(a) And this sort of \ way / plundering, which they openly profess, is authorised amongst them by this tradition: that they indeed are the old inhabitants, and true owners of the Country; the Lowlandmen being strangers and lowly usurpers who possessed \ the / land not by right but by might.

But to returne againe to the Lowland Scotts and mostroopers with whome ~~we~~ \ the English / are infested, or att least ~~or at least~~ have bin, as much as the Lowland Scotts are by the Highlanders.

[I.73]

But for the avoyding of Inroads and suppressing of ~~those~~ moss troopers ~~theeves.~~
Nobiles fere omnes in hoc tractu Du\c/es limitanei erant, tenentes enim dominos suos defendere, et sub illis signo Dato merere in membranulis tenebantur, sicut etiamnunc videre est in Antiquis manerijs; et privata sua Jura quodamodo regalia, eorum aliqui habuisse videantur, quae paulatim pacis tranquilitas, uti Regnorum Connub. Iam antiquavit. Adhuc autem in Cumbria et Northumbria contra Scotorum abactiones Conscripti sunt milites*, (sicut olim fuere).[564] For I read of one Gray who did soe and soe (b.) (c.)

(c.) And they have still a Troope in Cumberland kept in pay for suppressing mos[s]troopers; howbeit, I suppose in former times, they made provison rather against the Scotch Kingdome who was very apt

[562] 'Moss troopers': members of the marauding gangs which, in the mid-17th century, carried out raids across the 'mosses' of the Scottish Border; border pillagers or freebooters. *OED*.
[563] Bernard Gilpin (1516-1584), born of a gentry family at Kentmere; at Queen's College, Oxford, from 1533; a well-known itinerant preacher known as the 'Apostle of the North': D. Marcombe, 'Gilpin, Bernard, Church of England clergyman and preacher'. *ODNB*.
[564] 'Almost all the nobles in this territory were border guards, for they were held by written documents as retainers to defend their masters and to serve under them at a given signal, just as even now can be seen in their ancient manors, and some of them seem to have had their own private laws [and] in a certain manner, regalia, which gradually the tranquillity of peace-time has made obsolete, as has the 'Marriage of Kingdoms'. And to this day in Cumbria and Northumbria, soldiers are conscripted against the raids of the Scots (just as once they were).'

to Quarrell with England and there was nothing more common than for pursons of quality upon private quarrels some times as well as publiqe, to come with all ther men & tennantes in troopes \ & regiments / killing all they could, & driveing away what cattle they mett with; and sometimes takeing away children which they kept till redeemed, and this practised on Both sides, ~~both~~ \ ours as / well as theirs; especially if a father was slane in such an encounter, the sonn thought him selfe obliged to revenge his father death, and that I looke upon as a great reason why all the Gentlemens houses, or most of them, were formerly built with Towers, & in which their under roomes were vaults.

[I.72]

(b.) {Not far from Apleby} there is a place within the Lib[erty] of the Machell of Crackenthorp, which they call Hang-man Close, where some say a pair of Gallows stood, & there are 2 little hills supposed to be the places where the posts were fixed, which they show to this day. The place seems to have had it[s] name from being bestowd for some certaine time as a reward to the executioner, but whether this Lordship had an extraordinary prerogative (for it is an ancient one) or whether some of the Machells had bin Shiriff and upon that account might maintane an Executioner (haveing no aut[h]ority) I dar not determine but than (my thinkes) it is some thing odd that the Gallow should [be] placed in his owne Dom[aine]s if he was only [s]hireve.

[Machell's Notes: I.73]

*{Translate this.}

[I.74][565]

{Marshes are called in Latin arcifinales et limites ab arcendis finitimis sic uti}.[566]
wherein they kept their horses and other cattle. And truly I cannot say but that Westm'land was as much or more trubled with these inRoads noe longer since than Henry 8 times, as Cumberland or Northumberland are now. For in amongst the writeings at Crakenthorpe Hall I finde that Hugh Machell of Crakenthorpe Esq. was appointed an assistant to Sir Thomas W\harton / Knight, deputed Warden of the Westmarshes of Scotland (June 28, 29. Henry 8.) [1536/7-1537/8] by a speciall warrant under the said Kings signet and signe manual, and the Tenants of the Lordship ever did and doe yett hold their estates (amongst other conditions) by military (if I may so say) or, as it is commonly called thereby, Border Service. But now in Westm'land they live in more securitye, so that those Tennantes who heretofore held their lands at a deare rate (the Hassard of Armes) doe now live in saifty and Eat their bread in piece and Quiettness \ in a peacefull land. / Howbeit there is nothing more hatefull to them \ at this day / nor ~~nothing~~ noe man in the world they sett less by than a Lowland Scott, whom they looke upon both as treacherous and cowardly, 2 sordid vices / which they mortally abhor; but of this, more in the next particular.[567]

Concerning the Inhabitants \ ancient & / moder[n]; their disposition*[568]

When wee come to speake concerning the Inhabitants ~~ancient and~~ modern, this Country for it[s] better security & strength has yett [blank] Castles, beside [blank] which are demolished, al in good repaire. And to give warning of the approach of an enemy, [blank] Beacons.
It has 8 large rivers well-stored with fish of all sorts, as Salmon, Trouts C[h]ubs, Pikes, Brass Trouts, Gray Trouts, Gold Trouts &c. Vid the Query's?[569]
Over these rivers are a many Bridges & most of them Stone, with a great number of mills for lead, corne & cloth: Concerning all which I shall speake more large in som other place (cheepness of fish.).
It affords allso great store of cattle, as sheep cows oxen and deere in Great Plenty with staggs & wild couse on some of the fells; wild foole[570] as duk & mallar[d], teele & widgion, wild geese, herrinshoes &c. which I shall speake of hereafter.

---

[565] Also numbered p.12.
[566] 'Lands that protect [or hold] the boundaries and borderlands, because they ward off the neighbours'.
[567] See *N&B1*, 9-10 for Border Service and assignment of land.
[568] Perished marginal content includes headings on market towns, improvements and free schools. The text is a draft of material on I.75.
[569] 'See the queries.'
[570] Wild fowl.

The aire, which tho otherwise would be sharpe and cold, is more warme and temperate by reason of the mountaness and is very w[hole]some & healthy in so much that men usually live 100 yeares.[571]

[Machell's Notes: I.74]

*See notes for Ogleby.[572]
{There are in the County [blank] houses – nobil[ity] & gentry; Castles [blank] churches [blank] chaples [blank] [perished illeg.] sch[ools] [blank], mills [blank] Bridges [blank], chases [blank] woods [blank] forest [blank] grounds [blank] parkes [blank] heath [blank] warrens [blank] Nework [blank] salt [blank] lead [blank], Iron [blank] lime [blank] plaster [blank] freestone [blank] grindstone.}

[I.75][573]

§1. The Inhabitants of this County are by speech Saxons, by their names Normans & by their nature both. They doe not affect any thing of novelty, either in habitt or Language, and that is the reason why new fashons and refined expressions are nott allowed, except amongst Gentlemen. And tis very remarkable that about Ableby,[574] tho they gennerall adhere to the old English Saxon as for their words, yett they \ neither / make use of the Yorkshire Lancashire nor Scottish Dialect ~~which some of which their neighbour are infected~~, as some of their neighbours ~~were use to~~ \ most frequently / doe (~~For about Carlile they speak very Scottish & about Kendall, yea even in Orton which is but [blank] distant from Appleby, they are very much addicted to the Lancashire tone~~) but they on the Contrary give every vowel its true & full sound.[575] {Scots pronounce myne as mein; Lancs pronounce ou as au, now as naw; Yorks pronounce oo as oi, foot as foit.}

§2. They have this great advantage of Southern people, that tho they speake in their owne uncouth language (for such the true English is accounted nowadayes); yett they understand the refined tone, ~~& tho many of them can speake it too, yett except they~~ […] ~~tis counted pride in them & called~~ […] and are able to speake it if they would but practiss and ~~accustome~~ \ use / them selves to it. But by their avertion to all innovations they obteine this advantage: that they easily arrive to the knowledge of the Saxon; & have a greater propensity to pronounce French right, than any people in this nation besides.

§3. The generality of them are of a kinde and courteouse disposition, so long as they are not affronted or abused: but otherwise much addicted to revenge. They are very true & faithfull to their friends, & wonderfully Hospitable to strangers & others.[576]

§4. They love any man that dares to fight, so that a stout rober ~~when taken & imprisoned shall be company for a knight~~\ is estemed of by them: / for if he have valour he's counted a Gentleman, & the sence of ~~that is~~ \ his valour / is enough to wipe of all ~~his~~ other indignities.

§5. A schollar or a soljer they have in Great reverence but a pilfering theefe, & a dastardly coward they hate above all things ~~and have more great kindness for the Lowland Scotts. But love the Highlanders because they are~~ valiant'.[577]

[Machell's Notes: I.75]
Memorandum: the manner of holding. Clifford Knights Service: rel[i]qui per corna:[578] write the tables.

[I.76]

[§6.] A[s a] people they are Strong Active and Hardy, fitt for Labour & Lovers of industrye, yett so much addicted to masculine recreations; as Fishing Fowleing Hunting Hawkeing Horse Coursing & the like; that for these they will lieve their more necessary imployments. & love musique so well

[571] This paragraph alos appears in *N&B1*, 2-3.
[572] See the Editor's Introduction and this chapter, I.42, for Machell's connection with Ogilby's Queries.
[573] Also numbered p.13.
[574] Appleby.
[575] See this theme in *N&B1*, 11.
[576] See *N&B1*, 9, for similar attributes.
[577] The last scored-through sentence was originally placed on MS.I.76.
[578] 'The rest through cornage:'

(especially the Baggpipe) that heareing one play \ at night after worke / they will straight fall a dancing, ~~when they are most weary with workeing & Labour~~ as if they knew not what \ it were to be weary. / {!} Gens pervalida, pro loco et Tempore, nunc aratra hunc ad Arma Promptissima.[579]

§7. Their gentry are men ~~of~~ more gallant~~ry~~ in their actions than in words & clothes,[580] \ ~~or houses~~ / true to their Country & Loyall to their Prince. Witness their behaviour in the late Civil Warrs, & unda[u]nted suffering ~~in the~~ \ during / Tyranny of Oliver, for I thinke this little \ County / may say it with glorie that their was not one \ 3 /[581] Gentleman, perfidiouse in it. {An in Cumberland? Onely 3: Cholmley. Punsenby. Lawson. Roundheads in West[morland] Totidem.}[582]

§8. As \ to / ~~for matter of~~ Education, not onely the Gentry but the very commonalty bring up their children in much subjection \ to their parents & superiours; / putting them to schoole whilst they are young wher \ the / most learn English & many of them Latin before they lieve schoole and betake themselves to traides; \ & / some Greek & Hebrew, \ whose parents are able to proceed farther to, / and thence are sent to Oxford or Cambridge where they improve to a very great eminency; and for this their education is the more acquirable because of the number of free schools \ & chapel / in this Country, whereof there are ~~many~~ \ lot, Sc. / that of Appleby being \ counted / chiefe.[583]

{**Ther customes**}

§9. They plow here allwayes with oxen, haveing onely in ~~their~~ \ a / teame 2 Leading horses; & this is the old way, whence wee have the word Oxgan[g]. Bovata Terræ[584] that is to say [blank]

§10. They carry their corne \ commonly on horse back / & other Burthens commonly in wains carts but never in waggons by teames of horses, which is one reason why they use not coaches \ so / much \ in this Country; / yett it is to be noted that they carry as much or more \ sorts / with their single Horses, than the southern people doe with

[I.77][585]

their waggons, computeing Horse for Horse. But though there were an inconvenience in it, they would scarce have any regard thereunto; for they hardly give way to any innovation.

{§11.} They have \ some / particular customes \ of their own / which I doe not finde practised in the south of England; as of shooting[586] yeale[587] {Yeule see Bishop Usher in som of his works} (which in this Country Language signifies Oyle and may ~~signify~~ \ denote / joy and gladness) as soone as ever they come out of the Church on Christmas day and such like the common sort when feasted by their Landlords, come forth after dinner all together, & shoote Yeule yeule yeule 3 severall times, and if any be within doore & not present att the solemnity, ~~they to~~ man or woman \ or child, / they inflict a punishment, which is stanging or swilling.

---

[579] 'A people particularly strong for their place and for their time, most ready at one moment for the plough, at another for the fight.'

[580] According to Nicolson and Burn, 'In the article of cloathing, they have departed of late years from their ancient simplicity.' *N&B1*, 11.

[581] Inserted in another ink, possibly suggesting that the number of Roundheads in Cumberland and Westmorland was the same, but the passage appears muddled.

[582] 'Just as many/all the same.'

[583] Nicolson and Burn stress the number of good schools in 'almost every village. And in the larger towns … there are free schools handsomely endowed. Insomuch that it is a rare thing in this county, to find any person who cannot both read and write tolerably well.' *N&B1,* 9.

[584] 'Ox-ploughed land.'

[585] Also numbered p.14.

[586] Shouting.

[587] Or yeule: Machell's 'a' is often left unclosed, thus resembling 'u'. Additionally, 'Yeal' and forms of 'yeul' were interchangeable in Durham, Cumberland, Westmorland, Yorkshire and Lancashire: See Joseph Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 6., 573, 592-94: 'Yeal… also written yewl, yool or yeel in Scotland, was a northern variant of 'yule' i.e. Christmas.'

{‘Stanging’}[588]
Stanging is proper to the men, not onely upon such delinquencies, but allso upon other occasions in X^{t}mas, & as being found inbed a morneings, or any ~~delinquency~~ or \ any / misdemeanour whatsover committed against the custome of the places, or the persons their {dwelling} ~~resideing~~; and tis nothing but takeing up a man ~~up~~ upon a coltstaff which they calle a stang & carry about upon their shoulders, either into a Gentleman’s ~~hou~~ \ seller, / where they make him drinke of a great charger, or to an ailehouse, where ~~they~~ \ the / make him drinke, defraying the charges of the whole company.

{‘Swilling’}[589]
& so swilling is much the same save that tis for women who are carryed in a Swill or Basket & sometimes (if persons of quality) in a chaire, by the men, who either cause them to pay a forfett or cary them for a punishment into some water or poole near adjoyneing, for refuseing soe to doe. But they have allways musique with them; & sometimes the young men of one towne will goe to an other & stagg all they meet with in their Bedds after midnight, & Gentlemen themselves will in like manner for a Xtmas frolique thus visit one another, both in Westm’land and Cumberland.

[I.78]

[Christmas]
They keep their Christmases with great Entertainements and always musicans ~~those never absent~~ \ being calld upon eve morning about X a clock in every village all the xii days. / The Lords ~~doe most frequently~~ invite \ not only their friends but / allso their Tenants ~~together~~ to dine & be merry ~~with & the Tenents~~ \ who in requitall present their Lords with \ eggs & / poultry and \ other / such things &c. \ as / they can ~~Tenements~~ afford.[590] {N.B. Take in Here §18.}Paying allso, beside other rent services as ploughing Harrowing reaping & mowing (coales & pout Henns),[591] when \ every yere att what time / their Lord is pleased to require them. They pall for annuall rents of a smale value, & fines upon the death of the Lord and change of the Tenant.

[‘Merry Nights’]
§12. And the common sort, besides their feasting of one another (especially the young ones) have certaine sett Nights appointed for Mirth \ which they call Merry nights, in / ~~upon~~ which they all meet, att some \ public / place ~~or other~~ where a cupp of \ good / aile is sold. & there pass their time in mirth and danceing; ~~& these they call their merry nights.~~

{Boys and Childrens accustomed Sports}
§13. On New Yeres Eve the Lesser Boyes \ calld New Year Barns[592] / goe about the Neighbourhood, and gather such gifts as every Household thinke fitt to bestow; some giveing them candles, some pyes, some ro[a]st, \ some money, / some one thing & some another \ as they are disposed / which when they have \ made their / collected \ round / they make merry therewith amongst themselves. ~~They are called the New Yere Barnes, and~~ \ and in their procession or going about / one of them

[588] Stanging: a New Year’s Day custom, apparently unique to Cumberland, Westmorland and Yorkshire;one of a range of customs in which the working classes claimed the right to ‘manhandle’ their superiors. ‘Riding the Stang’ was a form of punishment inflicted on faithless partners by their community as a kind of rough justice at any time of year in many other parts of the country: *Oxford Reference*, https://www.oxfordreference.com.
[589] Swilling: a form of stanging where women were carried shoulder-high in a basket (swill) to the nearest ale-house, where they were expected to buy drinks. The only way to avoid this treatment was to pay a fine immediately, *Gentleman's Magazine* (1791); *Oxford Reference*. https://www.oxfordreference.com.
[590] MS: Following this is a crossed-through paragraph on boon services and rents, taken up again in §18.
[591] Pout hens (poults, pullets): young of the domestic fowl; chicks. Sometimes also a kind of game bird (apparently without regard to age). *OED*. The young of the moor-cock/moor-hen were also named pouts, especially in the North of England: see R. Brookes, *The Natural History of Birds: with the Method of Bringing Up and Managing those of the singing kind*, Vol. 2 (London, 1763), 149.
[592] Bairns = children.

~~repeats~~ \ sayes / a great many Stanzayes of old ~~Saxon~~ English rimes att every doore, all the rest joyning \ with him / in the chorus, whereof I will onely give you this taist, viz. ut seq.

To Neeight it is the Newyeres Neeight
To moarne it is the Day
Wee'r com'd to laite our Newyeres gyft
gitt it gin we may
(Chorus) With an Hagdown aye \ Hagmanay, Hag neun ay* / \ an Have no nay /[593]

And where they meet with a disappointment & have nothing bestowed upon them they all cry alloud:

Hunger Ith Midding
Fyer Ith House Rigging

& soe pass to the next house. And the Scotts have the selfe same custome but with som little variation in the rhyme.

['Scotch and English']

§14. And the Boyes in this Country have allso a play or sport, which of all others I must not forgett. Namely that after Schoole, or att any leysure time; they divide themselves into 2 Companyes under 2 Captaines who chuses ~~man~~ \ boy / for ~~man~~ \ boy, / whome they thinke the best for their

[Machell's Notes: I.78 & 79]

The New-Yer Gift Sang

This neeght's never eene, Hog non a
The mo'rn is King Henry's day Trol, lol a
Gang to yer breead heap. Hog &c.
Bring us down a heal heap. Trol &c.
Gang te yer Hen fleakes. Hog &c. {roostes}
Bring us Toppock & her meak. Trol &c. {an hen's name}
Gang te yer Befe-tub. Hog &c.
Cut round, cut sound, cut not yer muckle
thaum -Trol lol la.

*Hag newn a.: i.e. Have no nay, et put[o] L. Bland?

24 September 1675

From Hugh Anderson a Scottch pedlar. Compare this with the New Yeare song used in Westm'land.

[I.81]

purpose: then they strip them selves into their dubletts and drawers, each party \ the one calleing them selves Scotts & the other English, / laying their clothes all on an heape a[nd] sett a stone as it were a bounder betwixt the 2 kindomes exactly in the midle betixt their heapes of clothes. Then they begin to make incurtions into one another's territories the English beginning with this revileing expression

Here's a loup in thy Land dry bellyed Scott. {i.e. a Leape.}

& soe they plunder and steale away one from another all that ever they cann lay their hands upon. But if they can ~~catch~~ \ take hold / of any invader within their own jurisdiction either before he catches his booty (which they call a wed) {i.e. a weed or garment} or after, Except he escape clear into his owne province, they take him prisoner & carry to the weeds (i.e. their treasure or heape of clothes); whence he is not to move till some of his owne party [come] & breake in and by speed of foote lay hands on the prisoner before he \ himselfe / be touched by any of this adversaries \ party, / which if he doe, he has rescued his man & may carry him of without molestation. & thus som times one party will so farre prevaile upon the other, what with plundering & what with takeing prisoner, that the other shall have nothing att all left. This is a very active & violent ~~recreation~~ \ Sport, / which when they are

[593] For 'Hagmanay' as a variant of 'Hogmanay' (New Year's Eve) in the north of England, see Peter Hempson Ditchfield, *Old English Customs extant at the Present Time: an account of local observances, festival customs and ancient ceremonies yet surviving* in *Great Britain* (1896), 32. New Year songs were once common: see Ditchfield (32) on this custom in the Isle of Man.

suffised withall, every one take his owne clothes agane upon a truce made till the nextime and so they conclude.
This Sport they call Scotch & English, & I am persuaded that Heretofore, when incursions were so frequently \ made / betwixt the 2 Kingdomes: 'The~~ir~~ children \ either / tooke this up in imitation of what their parents did really act, or else the parents taught it to their children, as a means to instruct them in the ~~and render them active in depredation~~ prædatory art, & ~~as it were~~ inspirit them \ from their very cradles / against the Scotts \ whose fein[d]esh incursions wer so frequent, troublesome, that before King James came they called [it] the Ill Ward i.e. the ill world, and said such & such things were don th'ill Ward.[594]

['Burning Hollies']
§15. On the 12 Eve they have allso a custome of Burning Hollies (as they calle it) and this they doe all over the Country \ in every village / whereat you may see 20 or 40 fires all at once.

[I.82]

The occasion I suppose is in memorial of the wise men ~~comeing to~~ \ who came at that time / to see Our Saviour: and If I mistake not they are called Hollyes upon this account \ Sc. holy lights / {No, sed Ignus Sanctus: the holy fier, which by a mistake is converted to holly: & thence the abuse.} That formerly they were made of severall linkes or torches, tyed to severall bowes or Branches of Hollie tree, which they provided on purpose, and so carryed it about, especially upon Hills where they might be most seen, and tho att other places of late they content themselves with burneing \ whins or / furse (~~which they call whins~~) or straw or any other ~~combustable~~ matter \ stuff / which will make a great Blaze; yett att Brough they make use of an Holly \ Branch / in a manner aforesaid to this very day. I see it \ myself / on the 12 eve 1674.

['Bean Fires']
§16. They have an other custome of makeing bone fires (which they call bean fires) either from Bones, by them called Beanns, of which they gather as many as they cann of Dead Doggs Horses or the like, & Burne them in their fires; or else from the Fre[n]ch [word] Bien, which signifies good, they being usually made upon some \ Boun / good News. But whatsoever they take the word from, 'tis very certaine that they will make 2, or 3, or more of these, in a Towne \ or village / according to the bigness of it, but never less than 2, one at one end of the Towne & the other at the other; and the Boyes being divided, will robb the fires & fight as heartily for it as if it were for life and death; so that it may seem to have bin continued in memory of some great fight and of Victorie obtained; but when or what or where it was I have not yett learned. Onely it is to be Noted that [they] constantly observe this ceremony all the Country over of St John Baptists day Eve – calld Midsommer over.

[Rush Bearing]
§17. Which day \ doth allso / putt me in minde of an other custome, formerly much used amongst them, both by Boyes & Girls; and that was of Rush Beareing. For upon this day the young fry in every parish, did gather rushes (which they calle seives) as many as would Straw the church all over, & Brought them & strowed [them] on St John's Day. this methinke may be in memory of St John Baptist's being

[594] For a similar passage, although not attributed to Machell, see *N&B1*, 10.

[I.83]

An Hantshire Piper, taken at Sherborn Monach[595]



Figure 8. 'An Hantshire Piper'. I.83.

[Machell's Notes: p. 83]

For my L[earned] Friend, Mr John Mill.[596]

[I.85]

in the wilderness, But I have read somthinke more in *Kings Vaile Royal of the Ile of Man*:[597] vid my notes & insert it. (Memorandum allso that they calle the procession weeke \ in som places, / Gang Weeke, from goeing their Bounders then) & Cross Weeke, from their resting & praying att every cross which was in their circuit.

There is butt Little Land in this Country Held by Knights Service of the King in Capite: onely Apleby[598] with the castles thereto belong[ing] as Brough Brougham & Pendraggon; & Kendal Castle; which notwithstanding was in som respect subordinate to Appleby. And all the Lords or at least most of them Held by Cornage of whence take these lists {se in part 5[l]} of Apleby Brough & Kendall.[599]

[Kurne-day]
§18. The Tenents in [this] Country ~~hold frequently~~ for the most part Hold of their Lords by [blank] and many of them are bound (besideing fighting for their Lords) to severall services, as ploughing Harrowing reaping mowing &c. besides coales & pouthens, & a smale annuall rent which they pay to their Lords: as allso a fine upon death of the Lord or chainge of the Tennant. They call the Lord of the manor, speakeing ~~in the 3 person~~ \ of him / usually the Lord, & his wife the Lady. ~~But speakeing to them, Master & Mister~~. And on the kurne-day* The Tenents will come with their wifes & children, & soe will the neighbours who are nott tennants, to helpe him that day; so that he shall [have] above 100 \ or 200 reapers / att ~~once~~ a time, whome he entertaines with good ~~victuales~~ \ meat & / dri[n]ke and musique \ with a piper amongst them. / And when they have finished, they all go together upon some near Hill, where one of them (commonly the Lord's Balife) repeats this old rime, & all the rest joynes with him in the chorus, which they shout aloud. ~~The rime is thus:~~

Balife	Blessed be th' time that God was boarn
	we have gitt aw Mr …'s coarn shoarn
Chorus	A churn a churn a churn, a whowe!

[595] Monk Sherborne.
[596] Dr Mill, Principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford. See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence.
[597] James Chaloner, *A Short Treatise of the Isle of Man, digested into Six Chapters, published as an Appendix to King's Vale Royal of England*, *or, The County Palatine of Chester…* (1656).
[598] I.e. the Clifford estates.
[599] No list appears below.

which they repeat 3 times over: And then goe to the Gentleman's house in a Troupe,[600] the piper playing \ still / before them, where they have a supper provided \ for them / ~~and for their last~~ \ at which the last / dish, [to] every one a mess of cream out of the churne as a reward of their conquest: & then they fall to danceing (frequently in a O,[601] a man & woman mixed) as tho they had not wrought att all.

[Machell's Notes: I.85]

*{Churne: a mistake (forsan) for corne-day, But the custome of creame has come from the mistaken word} (as they calle it), that is the day upon \ which / the Lord ~~has likelyhood~~ of reape~~ing~~ \ &c. / his last corne.

[I.86]

[Dances]

Their dances ~~is~~ \ are / frequently in a circkle, a man & a woman, which they call a Westmorland round: or a sort of gig dance, in which the man haveing chosen the woman, leades her in his hand and gives her a Turne over the floore like a Corant;[602] and then, haveing placed her on one side the rome, where she stands all the while that He is dancing his gig, ~~&~~ \ which / haveing don he gives her a ~~salute~~ \ kiss, / & changing places, ~~then she begins and~~ \ she / danceth her Gig. And that being ended they \ both /dance ~~a Gig together~~ \ one against the other / but take not hands as they did at first – ~~where the women frequently dance realls as well as the man~~. & so, haveing don, they salute & ~~depart~~ \ sit down. Their third dance is a reele, 3 or 6 running the figure of eight. ∞.

[I.149]

{General}

['Unaccountable Arts']

They have many in these partes which Pretend to Conjuring and som have the hard reputations of witches, and much sought after, yett much hated for it.

They have several unaccountable Artes practiced by the vulgar, without any Compact with the Devil or any apparent wickedness in it, of discovering Thefts; as by a bowle or wooden dish that hath never bin wet, which they fill with water; and write the names of the suspected & other with them who in any wise might be guilty of it, in Pieces of Paper like unto Valentines, the which they put on the surface of it, & after the reading of a verse – I suppose in the Psalmes – that which sinkes first is guilty of it.

[1.] This was tryed at Warcop Tower, at Mr Farer's, for som thred that was stolne from the Talours. They suspect a maid, but her name would not sinke – though som foule play was offerd in pressing down unto it. At last a mans sunke; who \ though / [he] denyed & forswore the fact, ~~but~~ \ yett, / serching h[is] chamber, they founded it \ wrapt up in / a stocking top hid behind his bed.

Inf. Jo Wiber, sutor (Testis occulatus) Jan. 27 1686.[603]

[I.150]

2. They performe the same with a Ridle & Sheres.[604] The Ridle is a sort of Sieve which they dress their corne with, and the Sheres they commonly use are such as they shere \ clip / their sheep withall. They stick the sharp pointes of these Shere, into an hole in the side of Rudle which they hang ~~them~~ it up by – & 2 people opposite, one to the other, putts their long finger under each shoulder of the Bow of the sheres, supporteing them by \ the ends of / their fingers ends. Then another names a suspiciouse person and redes of the Psalme: Thou sawest a thefe & consentest unto him &c. If it prove not the person, the Rudle stands still, and they name \ or thinke upon / others – still reading the verse after every name – And when they hit on the guilty person it will whirle about & fly of their fingers. {Which thing I never experienced my self least I might offend God [by] it, but have had it related from several that have.}

---

[600] The main text is superimposed over several other words, including, 'manner for them'.

[601] In a ring.

[602] Courant: A kind of dance characterised by a running or gliding step (as distinguished from leaping). *OED*.

[603] 'Informant, John Wiber, cobbler (an eyewitness).' This edition removes the phrase from the foot of the previous page of the MS.

[604] Riddle: a large coarse sieve, see Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary* 5, 99-100; also named a 'ruddle' in Cumberland. Divination by riddle and shears was a common method of divination in Scotland: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.

[3.] This hath often times [been] tried in [Temple] S\owerby / within the parish of Kirkby Thore, Ch[ristopher] Lowson, who is my Informant, being once ~~time~~ an operator in ~~performeing~~ \ it / & Mr J. H. declared to mee that he tryed the same for som soape ~~that was lost~~ \ which they wanted / which he charged his mades with, but they denyed; whereupon they cast the Rudle & sheres, & nameing the mades (whom they most suspected) in stirrd not all. Then they \ named every / every body about the house, & still they stirr'd not. Lastly they named the mastiff dog, being the only remaneing Creature which could be suspected (& hardly that) of medling therewith, and presently they wirled about & flew of their fingers. He [to] satisfy himselfe farther calld the dog to him, smeld at his mouth, & it savourd of soap.

[Machell's Notes: I.150]

A County of sportes, a Horse race almost at every Town on som of the Holy dayes & sommer time, as will be see[n] in my particular discourse of places & parishes.

[I.145]

[Houses]

There houses are generally low, and so were formerly, even in France itselfe – till Hildigastus, an eminent man upon this account in the time of Hildrick, King of France, circa An. Xt 224, reduced them (as Herodian libro 6^0 ad Cultiorem Vitam & Mores; tam in amictu, quam in Ædificijs)[605] to a more elegant manner of living, both in their habits & houses also; whence the Proverb concerneing strong but unpolished worke: Das ist ein gut alt Frenchisk werk. This is one geud auld French warke: Trithem[ius].[606]

[I.137]

[Produce]

{The fruites are aples pear plumes cherryes black & read apricoths peaches &c. though not very common, because since Scottish invasions & civill wars, few have delighted in gardines & orchards. But there are allso naturally, which show the benignity of the soyle & air – Cherryes, wine berryes, & raspberryes also very fragrant & juyey.[607] Strawberryes are common in every wo[od]. & there are beside which tho plentiful here are not heard of else-where, Hinds berryes[608] & Bleaberryes which are very pleasing.}

{For flowers, clove gilly floores have bin here at Shrove-Tide, & double daysies above fower inch aboute; But to pass these by to show what it naturally doth produce: Here in the medow lands and likewise in the fields are your grait colourd violet, which are calld hearts ease & love & Idle;[609] & In the medows your Golden Globes in great abundance, & a sort of R.[610] colour.}[611]

---

[605] 'As Herodian in his 6th book concerning the more Civilised Life and Customs: so in dress as in buildings'. This refers to the 6th book (on Severus Alexander, 222-35 AD) of Herodian's 8 books on *Roman History*.

[606] In his *Compendium sive Breviarium primi voluminis annalium sive historiarum, de origine Rerum & gemis Francorum* (Paris, 1539 edn, Lib I, 38: 35), Johannes Trithemius describes Hildegast thus: 'And Hildegast, remembered as a sage among the Franks … taught the people to live in civilised ways, to build houses and to dress with greater refinement, and he told them to lay aside their savagery. For the Franks cared so little for culture or ornament, in clothes just as in their buildings … From that time the Franks began to build their houses both larger and lovelier, and distinct in separate dwellings. For whatever they constructed in former times was lowly and rustic and excessively plain, since, indeed, on account of frequent changes of settlement, they were more accustomed to live in the open countryside than in townships. Hence the Germans, whenever they see something made or depicted with old-time simplicity, reciting a proverb which praises antiquity, are accustomed to say: "Das ist ein gut alt Frenchisk werk."' ["That's real old Frankish stuff."]

[607] Juicy.

[608] The hindberry is another name for the raspberry. *OED*.

[609] Love-in-idleness is a type of purple heartsease.

[610] 'Red'? Golden globes or globe flowers (Trollius: family Ranunculaceae) are usually yellow: see George Don, *A General History of the Dichlamydeous Plants,* Vol. 1 (London, 1831), 44.

[611] For a catalogue of Westmorland's 'scarce or curious plants growing wild', see *N&B2*, 587-90.

For fish it affordes of Trout, Chevins,[612] Pikes, \ monster eles, Charres which are a great rarity, / Smelts,[613] Salmons, & a Trout which for largeness is their competour, calld a Gray-Trout.

For flesh: Beefe, large & good; \ som of which dry & hung; / mutton of all sortes, both great & little: but generally small, which yet is ~~the sweetest in~~ far sweeter th[an] the great, & preferd (I am told by the now Earle of Thanet) by King Charles the 2, for its dillicate taiste before all the muttons in the Kingdom of England.[614] I shall not mention the other sortes which are common every where but only observe that Brawn & venison are very \ plentiful / common dishes in their proper seasons Xmas \ winter / & Lammas \ sommer / all over this Countrey.

{Beastes} {The hart \ & bore /; the buck & doe; the fox \ hurtfull: / I wish wee had none. The homeless sheepe;[615] the mart[616] & the otter. All these in the Bottom of Westm'land. The Gardine of Eden.}

For fowle they have woodcock, partrige fine, all sortes of plovers ~~And what is mo~~ \ curlews, moor h[en] / mawes[617] & wilde ducks, which doe not only appear here at seasons, but breed in the Countrey. And so likewise do your gorfowle,[618] more pulates. \ But which are yett for greater rarityes / Herins (or Cranes), orspreys & Eagles or ~~rather~~ vulturs; & the mical \ comical[619]/ Doterall. But they have no Phesants, that species of them – being so tame a fowl – are long since destroyed and since the great forrest have bin depoupulated of their wood & verdure so that there is little or none on the mountains for want of Copses & Covert, to fly too at severall stages, they could never yett be restored agane. But it hath bin lately attempted by Mr Lowther to restore that game ~~in which~~ he who 2 or 3 yeares since brough[t] young one[s] over out of Yorkshire hither; But the Countrey people destroyed them before they increased to any considerable replennishing number.

[Machell's Notes: I.137]

{The River Eden running down it & being wald in on every side. It be calld the Gardene of Eden, & that not undeservedly.}

[VI.462B]

Regio est aut pascendis pecoribus aut alendis frugibus n[um]quam non mitissima, et ab omnibus vitæ necessarijs instructissima, ad quas etiam com[m]oditates flumina ista pr[rae]ter alia accedunt eximia Eden, Lowther & Emot qu[ae] cum floridissima prata et lætissima arva placide irrig[av]erint demum confluent et per Cumbriam uno Itunæ nomine praeterfluunt.[620]

It is a country very productive of corne and cattle, abounding with all sorts of necessarys for humaine life, being very much inriched by those famous rivers, Eden, Emot & Sleddell, which though not navigable, yet full of fish & of trouts especially. After they have pleasantly watred many flourishing meadows & smileing cornfields, doe meet all in one, and so run through Cumberland by the name of Eden. \ It has of old been a plentifull country for the breed of good horses. /

---

[612] Chubs.
[613] Smelt, sparling, sperling: a small fish like the salmon, emitting a peculiar odour. *OED*.
[614] MS: '& preferd (I am told) by King Charles the 1t \ 2 / sure I am by the now Earle of Thanet, for its dillicate taiste before all the muttons in the Kingdom of England.'
[615] Perhaps, unheafed.
[616] Clean mart = pine marten; foul mart = pole cat.
[617] Machell was probably referring to the sea-mew: the common gull. *OED*.
[618] The gorecock, or red game, was the moor cock (female: moor hen); the young were named gorfowl and pouts, Brookes, *Natural History of Birds* 2, 149.
[619] In another hand. A suggestion for an extension to 'mical'.
[620] 'The region is always very mild for the pasturing of flocks or growing of corn, and very well provided with all the necessaries of life, to which products those marvellous rivers also contribute beyond anything else – Eden, Lowther and Eamont, which, when they have peacefully irrigated the flowery meadows and happy fields, at last flow together and run through Cumberland under the single name of Eden.'

That part of Westmorland which layes N. & N.E. is more frutefull and woody; the other towards the south if you take in the fells is much greater but soyless worth, yet no way contemptible, for even this doth bring forth great plenty of corne, especially of bigg & oates & has very good pasture, with some shaddye woods and many coppeces. A. p.2.
It hath plenty enough of corne, abounds with cattle, and in many places has store of pitt cole. A.14.
And ergo it scarce seems strange to me att all that the Romanes ~~should pitch here and defend these places from the Scotts & Picts of old.~~ and the Kings of England in later times, should so much esteem of it \ as / allwayes to contend for keeping this (& its sister county) in their dominions. It is a country temperatæ ubertatis, plentifull enough and sufficiently frutefull.[621]
{[Rea]dy for the approachin[g] enemy especely the Scotts; there are severall beacons.}

Regio nisi in montes amoena et fertilis, pars huius Borealis Colibus
[...]ncta in fertilissimam subsidet planitiem Itunoq[ue] nobilissimo flum[ine]
[...]lebis quasi vim vitalem infundit irrigatur. Australior pars quæ
[...]ntes, salis etiam ferax est et sylvis obumbratur.}[622]

[I.87]

Of Rivers & their Courses[623]

A Cataloge of Rivers and Brookes in Westm'land with the milns that are upon them, and the Bridges which they run under, showing allso what vilages & Gentlemen's houses are near or upon the Course of the Rivers & to whome the Milns doe belong

There are 6 Principle Rivers in Westmorland and many Riviletts which run into them as followeth:

Rivers	Bridges	Milns	What Sort?	The Owners
	Upon Eden Are			
The chief river in Westm'land is Eden, which springs att Hewseat at Morvill hill, and runs downe the midest of the Bottom of Westm'land, by many fine places and pleasant seats, as Pendragon-Castle, Harcley-Castle, Kirkby-Stephen – a market Towne, Warkop Tower \ Warcop Hall / Ormside Hall, Apleby Castle \ where there are 2 pleasure boates, ~~Colby Tower~~, Crakenthorp-Hall \ where there is a pleasure [boat] / opposite to which is Buly Castle* \ Barton / [Machell's Notes: I.87] *Opposite to which at half a mile's distance is Buly Castle, on the west on [blank] & Colby Tower on the south side thereof. _____ Kirkbythore – where there is an Hall & where formerly was a castle, Temple	8. 1. Hellgill-bridge 2. Pendragon-bridge 3. Strengthrett-bridge[624] 4. Kirkby Stephen-bridge 5. Musgrave-bridge 6. Warcop-bridge	6. 1. Att Neatby 2. Att Kirkby Stephen, 2 3. Att Bongate under Apleby Castle, a great one being a double miln 4. Att Crakinthorpe	Corne, Cloth Both for Corne Corne Corne Cloth	Countess of Pembroke Viscount Westm'land Squire Machell

[621] The page foot has perished here
[622] Partly perished Latin text: 'Except in the mountains, the region is pleasant and fertile; the northern part of it [...] slopes down from the hills to a most fertile plain and is irrigated by the noble River Eden [...] as though it pours upon it a vital force. The more southerly part which [...] is also plentiful in salt and shaded by woods.'
[623] Title, moved from MS.I.106.
[624] Stenkrith.

Sowerby, Winderwath Hall, – Betwix which place and Hornby-Hall it receives the River Emote, & so enters Cumberland, passing by a great many seats of the Gentry of that County. & about ~~Roweliff~~ \ Bowness / it taketh the sea, retaineing it name all along without any allteration. It is render passable by 8 stone Bridges, & has 6 or 7 milnes builded upon, as you may see in the column opposite. Into Eden doe run on the east and nor-east, these riviletts following:	7. Apleby-bridge 8. Eden-bridge below Temple Sowerby & All these bridges are built of stone.	1 & 1 gon downe 5. Att Bolton 1	Corne	idem
Upon Bel. & Augill are				
1.Below:[625] which springs upon Stainmore, runs by High-Ubainke and haveing inlarged it selfe by a little Brooke called Argill[626] Water, discharges it selfe into Eden att Great-Musgrave.	2. 1. Belah bridge betwixt Brough & Brough Sowerby. 2. Argill Bridge in the High Street upon Stainemore	2. 1. Att Ewbanke one 2. Att Argill one		
2. Helbeck (or Brough-beck) which springs in Helbeck-Fells; runns downe by Helbeck-Hall; Brough (a Market Towne) and Brough Castle. And this allso dischargeth it selfe att Great Musgrave, where 4 rivers meet, viz. Eden, Below, Helbeck & Soulby	1. Helbeck-bridge 2. Brough bridge 3. Musgrave bridge	1. Att Hellbeck two 2. Att Brough two Att Musgrave two	One Corne One lead Corne corne 1 Corne 1 Lead	
				I.89
3. Barton Beck, which springs [blank] runs downe by Barton-Hall and thence to Warkop, where it enters Eden		2. 1. Att Burton one 2. At Warcop one	Corne Corne	
4. Helton-Beck, which springs (I suppose) about Roman-Fell att the ~~wes~~ northend thereof. runns by Helton-Hall and Lancton deschargeing it selfe into Eden, 'twixt Ormside and Apleby	2. 1. Helton-Bridge 2. Couplandbeck-Bridge	2. 1. Att Helton one 2. Att Langton one	Corne Cloth	
5. Is Troutbeck (or Morton-Beck) springing in the mountaines twix Meal-Fell and the Pikes. It runs downe by Morton-Hall \ through the Towne by / Flakebridge Wood, Brampton Hall, Long Martin \ church / & Kirkbythuer Hall, where it takes the river.	3. 1. Stockbridge 2. Morton-bridge,[627] stone 3. Kirkbythore bridge of wood formerly; now stone	3. 1. Att Brampton one 2. Att Longmarton one 3. att Kirkbythore one	Corne Corne Cloth	

[625] Belah.
[626] Augill.
[627] Long Marton.

6. Kieslay-beck, which springs on the other side Morton Pike, i.e. North Westm'lan. The true name thereof I know not & therefore call it Kiesley-beck (may bee tis Hikab). It runs downe by Kiesley towards Flakebrig wood (sed de hoc query)[628] where meeting with Troutbeck, it looseth its name. Knock q?				
7. Swindall-beck. It springs betwixt Dufton & Knock-Pike, runns by the Church and The ruines of an Old-Hall, att Dufton Towne End, and meets with Troutbeck a little before it comes to Long Marton where they both loose their names and are called Marton beck; but Kirkbythure beck when they come att Kirkbythore as it is usull with these little Brookes to take new names from all places they come att.		1. Att Dufton one	Corne	
8. Grainge-beck (so I name it cause that's the first village this rivilett calls att.) It springs in the fells on the North side Knock Pike, comes in att the higher end of Grainge, and runs even downe the streat; Leves Howgill Castle a little of[f] on the right hand, and so runs along to Newbiggin Hall, \ having met & joyneth it selfe with / where it meets with Blenkarn.[629]		2. 1. Att Gullham Holme 2. Att Milne-burne	Cloth Corne	
9. Blenkarne-beck. It spring about Cross Fell, runs downe twixt	2	3		
				[I.90]
There are more [mills] sure upon Livennat. Memorandum: Woodhead Mill				
				[I. 91]
Blenkarne and Lownthwate Wood, thence to about Newbigin, where it meets with Milburne [Beck], and so they pass on by Ackorne-banke and Milln-rigg, change name att every place, and att Edenbridge a little below Milnrigg they take the river. This Blenkarne is a boundary on the North 'twixt Westm'land and Cumberland.	2. 1. Newbiggin Bridge 2. Mil Rigg Bridge	4. 1. Att Newbiggin one 2. Att Acorne banke two 3. Att Milnrigg, one	Corne Corne, both Corne, but now gon downe	? Squire Crakinthorp ? Squire Dalston Mr Burbek but now Esq. Dalstons
Into Eden doe run, on the west and southwest, these	Bridges	Milns	Sorte	Owners
1. Soulby-beck. Or (maybe) ~~Mallerstang-beck~~; it springs I thinke in the Forrest of Mallerstang \ no / runs by [blank] and glides into Eden att Little Musgrave, being one of the fower that rondevouse there.	2. 1. Soulby Bridge 2. Sowerby Bridge	2. 1. Att Soulby one 2. Att Sowerby one	Corne Cloth	{?}
2. Ormside-beck, which springs not far from Piper Cross. It runs \ or rather springs / by Breeks att some little distance [blank] and enters Eden att Ormside Hall.		2. Both att Ormside	Corne Cloth	? Squire Hilton of Ormside

[628] 'But query this'.

[629] Machell gives an alternative here; the pecked line demonstrates his uncertainty. The word 'met' is unclear.

3. Colby-beck (or rather Asby beck). It springs in Ashby Towne Gate & hath a fine head called St Ellens Well, near Great Ashby church; runns downe by Rutter, where there is a great force or waterfall, and there it receives \ Dribeck / which ~~doth~~ runns \ not / in the sommer time, and thence has its name. So it passeth along by Barhouse-Hall, and Coulby Tower, a little below which it enters Eden.	3. 1. Bow-bridge 2. Upper Hoff-bridge 3. Colby-bridge	4. 1. Att Ashby 2. Att Rutter two 3. Att Colby one	 Corne Corne Cloth Corne	
4. Livennett: riseth near Gilse by Oddenden Parke. Runns downe by Crosby-Ravensworth Mauds-Meaburne, and Morland, wher are 2 halls, and a Great Force or waterfall, and meets with Shap-water a little below Cleaburne, and then enters Eden att [blank] betwixt Kirkbythore and Temple Sowerby {crawfish}	3. 1. Crosby Bridge 2. Meaburn bridge 3. Morland bridge	4. 1. Att Crosby 2. Att Meaburn 3. Morland two. One called Pow donnett	 Corne Corne Corne Corne	{see the description of Crosby}[630]
				[I.93]
5. Shapwater springs in 2 places near \ victa / Shap, viz. att Hardendale and Midlerigg-well. It runns by Shapp ~~Abby~~ \ where was an Abby / Strickland where are \ now / 2 Halls \ & / Melkinthorpe Hall otherwise called [Blank] and Cleburne Hall, a mile below which it meets with Livennatt & soe runns on to Eden.				
2. Sleddall flu. or Lowther flu.[631]				
An other Great River in the Bottome of Westm'land is Sleddall, which is commonly call'd Lowther. It springs att Wett-Sleddall, & soe runns along by Shapp Abby, Rosgill-Hall, Bampton ~~Hall~~ \ Grainge / Askham & Lowther Halls, Clifton Hall; & the 2 famous forts, Mabrough-Castle, & Arthurs Castle, otherwise called King Arthurs Round Table: near to which places betwixt Emote Bridge & Browham Castle, leveing Browham on the right hand It falls into Emote, \ where it looseth it name / and there looseth its name. \ And which Emot dischargeth it self into Eden 2 or 3 miles below near Hornby /	3. 1. Abby-bridge 2. Bampton grainge bridge 3. Lowther bridge near Browham	5. 1. New-milne 2. Abby-milne 3. Rosgill milne 4. Clifton milne 5. Askam milne	 Corne Corne Corne Corne Corne	
On the east side it has but one Branch or Rivilett, viz. Harberwen (or Milbeck), which springs att a place of that name runns by Bampton-Hall, & meeting with Sleddall (or Lowther) near Shap, it there leves its name.		1. Miln-beck milne	 Cloth	
Into Sleddall doe runn on the west & southwest:	1. Hoffa-bridge	2.	 Corne	

[630] I.e. Crosby Ravensworth.
[631] 'Flumen' = river.

1. Hall-water (alias Haw-water), so call'd from the place near which it springs; ~~that is~~ \ viz. / Thornthwate-Hall. This takes no long course before it enter the river near unto Bampton, and looseth it name.		1. Att Thornthwate one 2. Att Bampton one	Corne	
				[I.95]
2. Swindale Beck				
3. Heston Beck [blank] which goes into Sleddall Water a little below Askham.				

3. Emote or Emont flu.

An other great river in the Bottome of Westm'land is Emote, by some called Emont: q[uery] e montibus, because it comes from amongst the mountaines. The 1ᵗ rise hereof is out of the mere called Brotherwater, {no} which sends forth a streem N'wards by Patterdale-Hall into that other great meere or lake which is called Ulswater, att the low end whereof this said \ river / takes the name of Emote, being as a sluce to that great mote or waterplash. And so it runs along with a very swift and rapid motion by Stockbridge-Hall, Yainworthe-Hall, Mabrough Castle & Browham Castle (~~with severall pleasant seats on Cumberland side~~) \ where it after entertaines the River Lowther / till it ~~come att~~ \ so by / Hornby-Hall, a little Below which it yealds up its name to the noble River Eden, where it enters upon Cumberland.

On the southeast it has running into it these rivul[ets] foll[owing]:

1. Glenkrodden

[I. 97]

1. Glenkrodden, which springs at [Blank] and thence runs Norwest into Ulse-water
2. Glenkrowen, which springs at [blank] and runns eastward, by [blank] towards Ulsewater.
3. [Blank] which springs att [Blank] and runns directly east, by [Blank] into Ulse-water.

Besides these, 2 rivers more are powered in Ulse[water] on Cumberland side viz: Downthwate & Wether-meleck; and Daker beck into the river Emote a little below Dalemane. But they doe not ~~in Westm'land~~, belong to my present designe.

Emote and Ulse[water] are a Boundary twixt Westm'land and Cumberland.

4. Burbeck or Leun Flu.

An other great river which springs allso within the Boundaryes or Breas[632] of the Bottome of Westm'land (yett amongst the mountaines) is Burbeck ~~Water~~, which in the Barony of Kendall obteines the name of Lean ~~this being the greater of its 2 Heads~~ or Loane; whence we have Loansdale & Kirkby Loansdale, so called from the river. This Leun or Loane has an other head in Ravenstondall, which meets with Birbek about a mile or somthing more below the Hause-house, & is a boundary

[I.99]

twixt Westm'land and Yorkshire. But because Birbeck is the greater, I rather take the denomination from thence. It springs in Birbeck Fells 2 or 3 miles from Thornthwaite Hall, & runs thence for the most part southward by [blank], Midleton Hall and Kirkby Loansdale, a great markett Towne a mile below which, or thereabouts, It enters Lancashire, & takes the sea att or about the Towne of Lancaster, which is caled so from the River Leun. q. Castrum ad Loane.

Into this River doe runn on the E. & Nor.E.

1. Ortonbeck which spring in or about the Scar, and runns directly southward downe to the Towne,[633] which is a mart. and so on to Tybay, or Teba, where is meets with Teba-beck, & mixeth with it.
2. Tebay beck hath 3 heads: viz. Raisebeck, which runns from N. to South, by Rosgill (or rather Raisgill) Hall; Malerstang Water, which runns from E. to W. by [Blank]; and Langdale-beck, which runns from South toward the Norwest. & these 3 haveing mett alltogether about Tibay, obteine that name but keep not above have a mile,[634] till they loose it in the river.
3. Barborne, forsan Barburne for burne doth signify a water or brooke (Anglo-Saxon). It springs in Yorkshire, and after it has runn through some part of Westm'land it enters the river in Barburne-Parke.

Burton beck allso springs in Yorkeshire and runns through a little corner

[I.101]

[632] 'Brea', variant of brae: a steep, a slope, a hillside. *OED*. See also, *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.
[633] Orton.
[634] As seen. Perhaps Machell meant, 'half a mile'.

of Westm'land into Yorkshire againe, where it enters ~~this river~~ \ Leun / att a place called Burton. Severall other power themselves into it[s] boosome from East to Nor-east, but they are in Yorkshire and therefore not pertinent to my present purpose. On the W. & Nor-w. these 2 runn into it: viz.
1. Brether, which runns downe the dale from W. to East, by [blank] and falls into the river hard by Schales.
2. Barow, which springs att an [blank] and runns eastward by [Blank] till it meet with the river a little above Hause-house.

5. Can or Kent Flu

An other great river belonging to Westm'land, but peculiar to the Barony, as that which has its life and ending therein, is the River Kent. This Mr Camden, upon the 1ᵗ conjecture (being very willing to finde out a place for the old Concangij) would needs have named Can; and so Kendale to be falsely writt in steed of Candale; for Kendale (sayes hee) is nothing else but vallis ad Can. But he, having confuted himselfe \ long agoe / in that Early opinion about the Concongij. I must (tho unwillingly) oppose him so far, as to calle it Kent rather that Can; for Kent is the place from whence it springs; and Kendall I thinke may as well bee be derived from the ~~fountain~~ River Kent as the River Can; and so be writ Kent-dale, or rather Kendall, ut meliorem sonum[635]

[I.103]

which is easy and naturall, as well as Can-dale, or Kendale, which is \ more / harsh and ~~far-fetched~~ uncouth. Sed valeat (per me licet) Tanti viri Autoritas, quae omnibus omnium conjecturis præponderare videtur.[636]
This river takes it rise and originall att Kent-meere in the Barony. And runs along southwards, upon a craggy & uneven channell by [Blank] Colnhead-Parke, The Towne and Castle of Kendall, and so hurryes along towards Milthorpe, the onely ~~place~~ \ creek / where the sea touches Westm'land.

On the E. & Nor east it receves into it these riviletts:
1. Spritt (or [Blank])[637] which springs at ot near unto Sleddall in the Baronye, and runns S. East by [blank] till it come into the river near unto Burneshed.
2. Fawsett [blank] which springs in Fawsett Woods, runns S. East by [blank] till it comes just opposite to Selmire Parke, where it meets with ~~Grarigg Beck~~ Gra– {?}
3. Grarig-Beck, which springs in the fells above Grayrigg ~~Hall~~, runns South-west downe the gille by ~~it~~ \ Grarig Hall / till it meet with Fawsett, with which being united; they haist toward the river, and are receivd by it a mile above Kendal.

On the West it receives only one, which is [blank] Chappolon-Water. It springs at [Blank] and running directly East Enters the river over against Colon-Head Parke.

[I.105]

G. Winder or Windermer-Water

{?} The 6th Great River and receptacle of others, is Winder ~~Water~~ or Windermere Water, so calld from Its fountaine: or rather (may be) from the Lake which it makes. The spring head is near Dunbalrase-Stones, where there is a mere or broad plash of water (caled [Blank]) out of which there flows a quick running stream and hastens to Gresmere, where it makes a flood with an Ile in the midst caled [Blank]. Then agane it takes its course by [Blank] till it come in the great water flood (which is part in Westm'land & part in Lancashire) call'd Winender-mere, on the Bankes of which are [Blank] Hall [Blank] Then it contracts itelf againe att Newbridge in Lancashire, and with great strenth haistens to the sea.

This Wind[ermere]-Water receives on the East & Nor-E, 4 [becks]
1.}
2.} [Blank]
3.}
4.}

[I.106]

On the West it receives
1. Great Langdale f[lumen]
2 [Blank]; [both of] which meet together, and runn into Winder a mile above the meere.
There are 2 or 3 more \ which power themselves into it / but all in Lancashire.

7. Winster, is noe Great River

635 'As the better sound'. For Camden's understanding of the name, 'Can', see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 759C. As Machell noted, Camden decided against naming it after the Congangii: *Britannia*, 759F.
636 'But the authority of so great a man should prevail (and I accept it) since it seems to have greater weight than all the conjectures of everyone [else].'
637 The river Sprint, springing above Sleddale. Historical forms include Sprate, Sprett, Spritt and Sprent: see *Westmorland Place-Names*.

Winster is butt a little river receiveing few or noe supplyes. It springs att [Blank] and runns Southwardly by [Blank] Wither-Slack Hall & allso by Meathop Hall, about which place it enters the sea. N[ote] It is a boundary 'twixt Westm'land & Lancashire.
So much for Rivers [in Volume 1]

[II.463]

[Fish and Otters]

There \ are / a multitude of rivers & brookes, the chief whereof is Eden, which Camden calls Nobilis Ituna.[638] It takes its Rise at Hugh Seat* hill ~~in Mallerstangdale~~.[639] (Note this hill in the litle mountanes for the rise of 3 great rivers) and so runs all along downe Westm'land & Cumberland to beyon Carlile, retaneing still its name, and discharges it selfe into the sea ~~at~~ \ near unto / Bownes in Itune Bay \ where it is called the Bay of Eden. / This river is abundantly stored with fish, especially trouts, which by reason of the clearness of the water & cleaness of the lands & channels whereon it runns \ glides, / have a \ more / sweet~~er~~ \ & delicate / ~~& more refined~~ taste ~~than any~~ \ than others elswhere / ~~we have in England beside~~s \ in so much that / an Eden trout ~~being~~ \ is / famous every where.

[II.463]

The trouts hereabouts \ are not / very large, but the greatest that I hear of was taken att Ormside by my father L.M. Esq. {who being a gentleman that loved all sports & recreations} and Brought to Mr Lowsons att Batleburrow att Apleby, where the lenth thereof is notched out upon the table and was 25 inches long.

[II.464]

I have seen 8 score taken att one draught in halfe an hore's space. It abounds also with salmon, ~~&~~ smelts, chevens or chubs, other sorts of fish, \ but ~~such~~ few salmons ~~in it as~~ beyond / ~~there are stop at~~ Arma. Bay'[640] & those that get through are apt to follow the strongest. /& co\habbit/ together; / And tis remarkeable that your trouts and chevens doe not consort, yett you shall have them \ chevens / in great sholes \ abounding / within a stone throw of those very dubs (for so they call ~~your~~ \ their / deeper & calmer places ~~of water~~) where the trouts are taken;[641] \ which, tho they be very full of bones, yett with bakeing & soakeing they become inoffensive.

{Golden Trout}

There is a one sort of trout eminent above \ all / the rest, of a yellow-ish or golden colour, whence they are termed golden trout \ which ~~they~~ cut as red and free as a salmon; / and these seldom [con]sort with the other, but have peculiar ~~places to themselves~~ / dubs of their own, / as that near the mill in Crakenthorpe Lordship calld Teald-Pike-Dubb \ as where it should seeme there have bin Pikes also, tho now I know of none hereabouts but in the forsaken channels of Eden, ~~in the lords~~ at a place calld Ellerkar in the lordship of Crakenthorpe.

[II.463]

{Otters Menald}[642]

In this & the other river are many otters which afford the gentlemen ~~som~~ fine recreation. They hunt

[638] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 760: 'Among these hills that notable river Eden which Ptolemee calleth Ituna, sheweing his head first in Yorkshire, carrying a small and faint streame in the beginning, but afterwards growing by little and bigger, with sundry beckes still augmenting it, seeketh a way North-west.'

[639] An interlineation gives the alternative spelling: 'Hew Seat as on west'.

[640] Armathwaite Bay, on the Eden in Cumberland, lies several miles downstream from Appleby; its weir now forms a salmon leap but it was formerly much higher, as seen in an etching by William Bellers, 'A View of Armathwaite Bay in Cumberland from the Road, to William Milbourne Esq. of Armathwaite Castle' (London, 17 Jan. 1774). See the print at https://www.britishmuseum.org/collection/object/P_1869-0612-528.

[641] Machell's local derivation of dub – a deep & calm pool within a larger body of water – differs slightly from *OED* and *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online, both of which offer the meaning, 'small and stagnant pools of water'; 'puddles'. On the river Eden today, a 'pool' has the same meaning as Machell's 'dub', as in 'Channel-Pool' at Armathwaite, where salmon and trout linger between rapid currents.

[642] 'Menald': menal'd, meneld, meneled, menelled, menild, described an animal which was spotted, speckled or dappled. *OED*.

em to great hounds & spears, or with water spaniels traned up for the purpose.[643] My Dear Father, ~~Sq' Machell of Crakenthorpe~~, being a great hunter of this and all other game, and that delighted in all sorts of activity, kild an otter once, 2 yards long. The skin was menald or spotted like to a leopard, and was so much esteemed of for the rarity \ of it / that he might have sold \ the same / for 10^{li}.

{Held by the Proder}
Miles Graham & Hugh, his son \ who is now liveing, / tooke a live otter by his prodder, or tac[k]le, & swunge him about till the dogs ~~& men came~~ came & killd him at the parke dub.

[Machell's Notes relating to II.464]

[II.463]
*Hewseat is in Westm'land, tho the maps seeme to show the contrary.[644]
{A trout 2 feet & 1inch long}
There are salmon in Leun, Eden & Kent. Plenty of fish, see A. p.7.

[II.466][645]

{Rivers in Westm'land}
The other rivers are Lowther, Blenkarne & Emote, whereof the two latter part Westm'land & Cumberland, those sister countys, ~~which disaggre onely in the map~~.

[The Tees. (a.)]
Besides these are Tees Water head springing out of Cross Fell (~~which has the peculiar)~~ 2 or 3 miles from Howgill Castle North, and has this peculiar, that it tans \ leather / ~~the~~ best of any in England, especially for boots ~~sadle~~ & bridles, whence it is that ~~Band~~ \ Bernard / Castle in Yorkshire, whose walls it washes, is so eminent above other place for these sort of utensels; and for their excellences the King him selfe has had bridells thence as presents. It is a boundary twix Westm'land and Cumberland on the north side west till it comes to a place calld the Caldron Snoute, and there 3 diocesses, 3 parishes & 4 lordships all meet together. The diocese[s] are Durham {Doun-holme}, Carlisle & Chester, and carrying its name to the sea, vid ubi (b.)[646]

[II.465]

[The Tees (b.)]
T.J.[647]
Tees Water head spring in Westm'land near \ Crosfell over topps & commons, all mountanes you may see from hence* / fells & parks Westm'land & Cumberland for 3 miles in K[endal]P[arish] (se the map) till it comes to a little brooke (it discharges it selfe into Tees.) And from that place it parts Westm'land & Bishoprig[648] for 3 miles til it comes to the Cauldron-Snout; and there the countys of Westmorland, ~~the county of~~ Durham & Yorkshire ~~doe all meet~~ \ & the / \ bishopric / Diocesses of Carlisle, Durham and Chester doe all meet ~~att the same place~~ \ together. / And the parishes of Rumacurke, Midleton, Dufton and Bongate doe all meet att the same place. The Lordship of Dufton, the Lordship of Barnard Castle and the Lordship of Midleton doe all meet at the said place, to wit: at the Cauldron Snout, & from thence the Tees parts Yorkshire and Bishoprick till it come into the sea ~~att Tine Mouth Shield below Newcastle~~ at Hartlepool near unto Stockton: per mappam.

---

[643] Otter-hunting locally has a long history, see Lyn Murfin, *Popular Leisure in the Lake Counties* (Manchester, 1990), 95-98; see also, https://lakelandhuntingmemories.com/LostOtterhoundsNew.html.
[644] For the deficiencies of 17th-century maps, see Blake Tyson, 'John Adams's Cartographic Correspondence to Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall, Cumbria. 1676-1687', *Royal Geographical Society Journal*, 151, March 1985.
[645] Also numbered p.19.
[646] II.465 and II.466 are facing pages. On II.465 Machell indicated text (using the letter b.) belonging to a passage on II.466.
[647] Thomas Jackson senior, of Dufton. As one of Machell's trusted informants, his notes and initials appear frequently in the passages below.
[648] Bishoprick: diocese of Durham.

[Machell's Notes: II.465]
*{Over Skidday Pike far into Scotland &c. To Rose […] Toppin &c.[649] and yet L. Robinson sayes there is a spring ~~in the very~~ \ near the / top of it would drive a miln in Cumberland.}

[II.466]

[Tine Bogg]
There is a spring also, about a bow-shott from Tees Water head \ but not in Westm'land, / call'd the Tine Bogg, whence the River Tine, which is a boundary twixt Bishoprigg & Northumberland, & it beares its name from hence to the sea att Tinmouth \ Shields below / by Newcastle.

{Leun Flu}
An other river belonging to this county which takes its rise also ~~from the Bottom of~~ \ Barony ~~or Bot~~ of Westm'land / is Loyn or Leun, which ~~gives~~ takes its rise in Birbeck Fells {?} & thence runs Southw. into the Barony, where it gives name to the dale called Loansdale & Kirkby Loansdale, which stands upon it ~~so doth~~ \ & to / Lancaster also, ~~about~~ \ near to / which place~~s~~ it taketh the sea. This has salmon in as far as Tybea[650] in Orton parish.

{Kent}
An other river more proper & peculiar to the Barrony as that which hath its original there, is Kent, whence Kent-dale suie Kendal. This river Camden calls Can. And thereupon he would have ~~the would have~~ the place Candale or Kandale.[651] ~~But the thing is not materiall~~. It derives its name from Kentmere, of which hereafter*, and has 2 smale rivers which come into it ~~about~~ a mile above Kendall, viz Mint and Spritt. ~~And~~ In the river of Spritt there is a very great waterfall, which is call'd Garnett-Waterfall, by which the people doe ~~commonly take notice~~ \ prognosticate / (when as the sound thereof is h[e]ard downwards, i.e. towards Kendall, that it will be faire weather. And in Kent \ about 3 miles / beneath Kendall ~~about~~ [blank] ~~miles~~, there is another called The Force, where they take salmon

Machell's Notes: II.466]
*Se if it sprink there, & if that be in the Barony.

[II.468][652]
in the aer, & som shows them flying – T. Will. Clerke.[653] And when the noyse of this ~~the force~~ is heard up wards more loud than ordnary, they expect very fowle & rany weather. This River Kent retaines its name from the place whereof it springs \ se my Itinerary / till it falls into the sea ~~i.e. about~~ \ which is below / Millthrop, the only hav[e]n that is in Westm'land.

Brookes

{Of the Becks in W.}
Now beside these great rivers there are many brooks which the natives ab antique[654] doe still call

[649] Part of this phrase is unclear. Machell was perhaps referring to Roseberry Topping, a landmark in the Tees Valley in North Yorkshire.
[650] Tebay.
[651] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 759: 'The more Southerly part of this shire, contained in a narrow roome betweene the river Lone and Winander mere, is reputedly fruitfull enough in the vallies, although it can shew many felles, with rough and stony rocks, lying ever bare without grasse: and is all tearmed by one name, The Barony of Kendale and Candale, that is, the dale by Can: for it took the name of the river Can, which running rough upon stones, cutteth through it.'
[652] Also numbered p.22.
[653] The informant was 'T. Will.' If by 'clerke' Machell meant a clerk in holy orders, perhaps this informant was Thomas Wilson, schoolmaster, reader and curate in Brough and Warcop in 1667 and 1681, ordained at Carlisle in 1686. CCED. However, Wilson was from the barony of Westmorland, not Kendal. After the Reformation, the title, 'clerk' was often applied to laymen who performed offices in cathedrals, churches, or chapels. *OED*.
[654] 'From of old'.

burnes \ & becks, / ~~&~~ i.e. riviletts which together with the great ones are generally calld becks: as Milburne, which comes off the fell downe by Howgill. And the beckes usuall[y] have there names from the places they run through, & change their names frequently att every little village they goe by.[655] So Coupland or Ketland Beck at Hillton is called Hilton Beck; so Kirkby Thore Beck att Long Mertin[656] has the name of Mertinbeck. I must therefore call them by some one name, immitting the rest since there primitive names are washed out of rememberance ~~But if I were sure where there fountains were I would goe no further to baptise them anew~~ beside other Rivillets allmost att every Towne which convey themselves into the greater, as vaines in a man's body.

Add here the Cal[endar] Table.

Becks or Rivers Minors

[Becks]	[Rivers (flumen) Minor]	[Forces]
Kirkbythore B[eck]	Troutbeck flu	Morland B. and
Grange Beck	Brough B. flu	force
Murton B.}	Coupland B. flu	b. p 55![657]
Helton B.} the head I sup[pose] of Coupland	Soulby B. flu	
Brough B.	Langdale flu	
Ormside B.	Livennet flu	
Colby	Sleddall flu	
	Swin~~dal~~ flu	

[II.500]

[Machell's further notes on Rivers]

{Eden 1.+Below.[658] 2. Helbeck. 3. Helton b. 4. Trout b. 5. Dufton b. 6. ~~Milburne~~; ~~Mul~~ b. 7. Howgil b. 8. Blenkern.
On the east:
Mallerstang. Soulby b. Crosby b. Colby b. Ashby. Liven flu. Shap for[ce]. Wetsled. Flu.
On the West:
Burbeck obteines in the barrony the name o Leun? 1. Orton b. 2. Raise b. 3. [Blank]. 4. Dent.
on the E.
5. Skales. 6. Brother. 7. Barow.
On the west.
Kent. 1. Spur flu. 2. Fawcet b. 3. Graing[e] b. On the E.
4. Chappellon. 4. Winster on the W.
0 name in Camden}[659]

[Eden]

Eden spring at Huseat, Morvil Hil, runes downe by Pendraggon Castle, Wharton Hall, Hartley Castle, Musgrave, \ Kirkby Stephen, / Warcop Hall, Apleby & Castle, Colby Tower \ Buly Castle / Crakenthorp Hall, Kirkby Thure, Temple Sowerby, Hornby Hall.
In Westm'land into it run:
On its East side:[660]

[655] MS: '& ~~not seldome~~ change \ their names frequently / ~~name~~ att every \ little / village ~~where~~ they goe by a ~~call~~.'
[656] Long Marton.
[657] Machell's note refers to II.500, also numbered p.55.
[658] The Below or Belowe = the River Belah, which flows into the Eden. See Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 3.
[659] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 760: '… this region, which westward is bounded with the river Winster, and the spacious Lake Winandermere …'
[660] MS: 'In Westm'land ~~Kirkby Steph~~ into it run ~~from the~~ \ on its / E. side.'

1. Belowe, over which 1 bridge at Brugh Sowerby. Spring in Stanemore; discharge att Little Musgrave.
2. Helbeck Spring in Helbeck Fell; discharge att Great Musgrave. Allso it runs by Brough.
3. Helton beck, which take Eden. Twix Ormside & Apleby tis cald Coupland beck.
4. is Morton, calld Trout beck. Spring in the fells & com down twixt Meal Fell and the Pike; runs (cont.) by Flakeb[ridge] Wood.
5. So downe to Dufton Wood where it meet with Dufton beck. Soe they goe along by Merton[661] & Kirkbythet[662] where they take the river.
6. is Milburne or Milbeck, which comes from about X fell, goes along by Howgil Castel & Newbigin, where it meets with Benkerne, which runns into Eden att Eden Brigg.

On the West

{Parish of Ravenstonedale} 1[t] ~~Mallerstang~~ \ Ravenstond. / beck called Soulby beck springs in the Forrest \ of Mallerstang / (puto) and endes in Eden at Little Musgrave {p[arish] Ravingst.} about which place 4 rivers meet.

Viz.

Eden below Mallerstang & Helbeck.

1. Crosby beck begins at Crosby Gar[rett], endes at Orm[side] Mag[na].
2. Asby / Colby beck begins about Great Asby & enters Eden at Colby.
3. Livennant[663] begins near Orton at […][664] Parke and meets with Shap Water about Cleburne.
4. Shap Water, which has 2 heads: at Shap \ Midle rig Wel / & ~~Regill~~ Hardendale. It goes by Morland, Melkin & Cleborn, meets with Livennet & enters Eden a ~~little short of Kirkby Thr~~ about Temple Sowerby.

[Burbeck]

The next great river is Burbeck, which obteines in the Barrony the name of Leun. It springs in Birbeck Fells {?}, and enters the sea near the towne of Lancaster, tho some will, as Camden, have Leun to spring in Mallerstang Forrest & meet with Birbeck about a mile below the Hawse House.[665] Into it doe run on the E.

1. Orton beck. ~~Skales beck~~
2. Raisbeck
3. \ E. / Langdale beck with an other betwixt them & enter the river at ~~Tibah~~ \ Dent. / It has no more branches on the East excepting Yorkshire for from hence[666] to Midleton. It is a Bound on east S.W.
4. Ent[ers] on E[ast], Dent.

On the W.

5. Skales
6. Bretherdale & Bar\ow. /

[Kent]

The 3d is Kent. It springes at Kentmere & enters the sea about Milthorp. It has ther:

1. the river Spur\ or t / springing above Sled.[667]
2. Fawcet Wood beck.
3. Graing beck spring in Whinfell Hill.

---

[661] Long Marton.
[662] Written as seen.
[663] The river Lyvennet.
[664] This word is unclear.
[665] Machell's source was probably Camden's map of Westmorland, see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 758-59.
[666] Illegible interlineation.
[667] The river Sprint.

4. & after a while meeting with Fawcet beck they discharge themselves into Kent a mile above Kendal.

[II.501]

On the West 2.

1. Chapollon.
2. Winster flu.

{Draw a map but 1ᵗ comp[lete] names of places.}

[Lowther]

The 4. is Lowther, which springs at \ or about / Thornthwaite: enquire of Mr Mil. if there be a beck from Herberwen ~~or Wither Slack or Barton~~ which comes into Lowther there E[ast].[668] There is one head of Lowther called Sled \ from Wetsled[dale], / another from Thornthwaite, cald Hawater i.e. Hall. [Query] Enquire if neither of these be the same which is called Swindale flu ~~or Sleddall flu~~.
[Answer] No.
On the west, Hel\t/on Beck. It comes into Emot near B[rougham] Castle, where it loses its name in the other, an the other in Eden near Hornby Hall.

[Emote]

5. The next is Emote, which is ~~but~~ as a flue to that great mere cald Ulsewater, into rest [of] which there runs 1. Martendale beck; 2. Patterdale beck ~~&~~ Brother water which is the head of both Usl[water] & Emote.
On the west: Glenkerden & Glenewen rivers in Westm'land.
Downthwaite beck, Watermelak & Daker beck in Cumberland.
Emot.

1. Martindale beck
2. Patterdale
3. Glenkren } in Westm'land
4. Glenkwen }

5. Downthwaite beck }
6. Watermelak } Cumberland
7. Daker in }

[Windermere]

The 6. is Winendermere, the head of which is near Dunbalrase Stones, where it [is] a \ broad / plash of water, out of which there was a streeme downe to Gresmire, which mere continues hence to Langrig, where there is an Ile in the \ Windermere. / Thence agane it continues in a stre[am] to the great flue which is part in West[morland] part in Lancashire, & goes into the sea about Logbarrow. It has branch into it N.E. 4: Gresmere beck {?} Fell beck, Ambleside beck & to Troutbeck Hill flu. / On the west it has in West, Great Langdale & Litle Langdale which meet together[669] & run along into Wind[ermere] a little ~~below~~ behinde Ambleside beck. Quo m[odo] vocatur?[670]
Branches into Windermere

1. Greshmere beck }
2. Fel-beck } N. Est
3. Ambleside beck }
4. W. Troutbeck Hill flu }

[668] Dr John Mill, principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, born in 1644/5 in Hardendale in Shap Parish, son of Thomas Mill, a weaver. When the family moved to High Knipe, Bampton, Mill was educated at Bampton School. See S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5-1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*. For more on John Mill, see Part 1, Ch.4, Bampton, I.369-I.370B; see also Part 3, Chs 2. and 3.' This reference to 'Mr Mil' would seem to suggest that one of Machell's informants might have been a relative of Dr Mill.
[669] Some words here have perished.
[670] 'How' / 'In what manner?'

5. Great}
6. Little} Langdale becks

[II.468]

[Meres]

{Of the Meres in the Barony of W.}
{Brother Water, Ulfswater, Aweswater or Hawsewater i.e. the Halls water: aqua ad Aulam phlumens}
There are 3 standing meres ~~of ponds~~ belonging to the Bottom of Westm'land. Viz 1. Brother-Water, about a mile long & halfe a mile in bredth. 2. Ullwater about 7 miles in lenth and one in bredth. Both of these are in the head of the River Emote, which ~~should rather~~ may peradventure be derived as well from the mote or mere whence it descends as è montibus,[671] for tis also usually called Emote. The 3[d] is Ause \ or Hawse Water near Thornthwaite Hall in Bampton Parish (q. ubis) * 2 miles at least in lenth & 1mile bredth.

[Machell's Notes: II.467 & 468]

Method
Nec alia mihi comodior videtur ratio hanc partem, describendi quam si Itunæ Loderi Emoti W Loni fluenta ~~cum ceteris~~ persequar quae poti[o]ra sint flumina. Et locis potionibus affundantur.[672] See A. p. 14.
*Query: Where Haswater [673]
(His Answer:) Ha[we]s / springes out of the top of Kidsey Pike on the west side thereof. This mountain is above ½ mile in hight & picked on the top, whence tis called (as other hills of that forme) a pike. There is also a stone pike on the very top of it, and out of the midle of the stone isues out a little spring, wonderfull to see, for there stands not much above a q[uar]t of water in the top of the stone, & tis no greater, winter nor sommer. It descend by little grevets[674] in the stone downe the hill into Haswater. There are many brookes {but no spring save onely this, which is a memorable one.}
[II.468]
{Memorandum: query Eales.}

[II.470]

1. {Of meres in the Barony of Kendal}
   In the Barony are 4 meres or standing waters, viz.
   Windermere, in lenth 7 miles or ~~thereabouts~~ \ or rather xi / and about a \ 2 / mile broad; which water hath bin of late frozen over so strongly that the people hereabouts have led timber over it with draughts consisting of 8 beasts a piece.[675] In this as in the other are store of chars, scarce in any country except these northern one of England beside.
2. Kentmere Water, whence the river Kent & Kentdale had their names, in which is very great store of trouts. \ Yet that has 2 feeders. /
3. Langdale Water.
4. Greshmere Water in [both of] which also is plenty of fish.

[II.469]

[Tarns]

Lacus diffusiones nostra lingua Tarns vocamus. Camden.[676]
(a.) To the meres, ponds and standing waters may be referred those water plashes which commonly lay upon their mores and are called tarnes*, of which there are several, as:
Randale Tarne
Bongate Tarne
Crackenthorpe Tarne
Martin Tarne

[671] 'Out of the mountains.' The etymology of the name Eamont is now thought to be as follows: 'Originally the place was called æt Ea motum, 'at the river-conflu-ences'; ēa-mōt was replaced by á-mót. The confluence is that of the Lowther and the Eamont'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[672] 'Nor does any method of describing this part seem to me to be more convenient than if I follow the streams flowing from Eden, Eamont and Lune, which are drunk. And in places they flow with drinking water.'
[673] Query to Machell's informant (on the location of Haweswater), with the answer.
[674] Trenches. In Old English, this word can appear as grafet(t) and explained as 'trench'. *OED*.
[675] This is one of several references to very cold weather at this time, see Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.340.
[676] 'The overflow of a lake in our own language we call Tarns.'

Newmill Tarne
Winter Tarne?
Little Water Tarne? &
Lanton Tarne in which there are trouts, eeles and tenches.
But most of these either have noe fish, or are not taken withal, for fish in this country are not much regarded. Howbeit they are stored with wild foole[677] and geese which breed in this country at the season of the year.[678]

Gold Arke[679]
Concerneing Lancton Tarne, which I name last, there goe a strange fab[ulous][680] story of a golden Arke,[681] which was seen therein \ on a sun-shiny day, / and one man formerly attempted to draw it out with a yoake of oxon called Sprinke and Sparke.[682] But when he had almost got it out, instead of returneing \ thankes to / God ~~thankes he began to applaud his oxon in this rime~~ he presumptuously said:

> Up wêe'l Sprinke, and draw weel Sparke.
> Whether God will or not, wee'l ha' this gold Arke.

With that, his tackle broke \ all in pieces / ~~this~~ [and] the Gold Ark ~~& it retreated back againe in to the tarne~~ \ returned to its place, which som are so credu as to believe, & therefore goe on sun-shine dayes to try if they can see \ or discern / it. But they may looke long †.[683]

[Machell's Notes: II.469]

*(quare?)
†{q.} Sed facessant hujus modi fabulæ: x nolumus fabulæ licentia veritatem aliarum rerum vulnerare.[684] 295. Camden.

[II.501]

In all, 52 rivers.
In all, 7 meres. Tarnes severall; the greatest is Langton?

[II.470][685]

[Fish]
Hic piscium est tanta copia et præcipue soporis optimi Truttane, ut sit advenis miraculo, Indig[u]is pro corum admiration, Ludibrio nec minor carnis, utilitas, ut pro uno [blank] 10 homines non solum famem pellant sed ad satietatem se expleant. 227. [686]

---

[677] Fowl.
[678] MS: 'But most of these either have noe fish, or are not ~~sought after~~ \ taken withal / for fish in this country [and] are ~~little~~ \ not much / regarded. Howbeit they are ~~very~~ stored with (2) geese and (1) wild foole ~~also~~…'
[679] MS.I.341 contains a shorter passage on the 'golden arke': not transcribed.
[680] Or 'fable'.
[681] In northern dialect an 'Ark' was a large wooden bin or hutch for storing meal, bread, fruit, etc. *OED*.
[682] Oxen were usually yoked in pairs and often given paired names. In southern England the near-side (left) ox of a pair was called by a single-syllable name and the off-side (right) ox by a longer one (for example: Lark and Linnet, Turk and Tiger). See Bob Copper, *A Song for Every Season: A Hundred Years of a Sussex Farming Family* (London, 1971), 95-100. See also the will of William Sisson of Waterside, Barton, 1592: CAC(C), PROB /1592/WINVX, 76: 'I give unto my sone Percivell two oxan one called Burgess another Spinke … and a great ark with all my husbandry geare…' The names of Machell's oxen do not appear to have quite conformed to this tradition, but there are similarities.
[683] Another version appears on the same page of the MS.
[684] 'But stories of this kind are fictions; we do not wish to injure the truth of other matters with the liberties taken by a story.'
[685] Also numbered p.23.
[686] Machell's handwriting is unclear, but the Latin appears to read: 'Here is so great an abundance of fish, and especially trout of excellent flavour, that the bounty of the flesh, which is almost ridiculous, is like a miracle to

{! Several sortes of troutes (a.) & fish}
In all of these are several sortes & great store of fish, as chars, skellyes,[687] brass trouts. Gray? Troutes & several others. In Elleker also near Kirkby thore in Crakenthorpe Lordship is a pond left by water turning its course, wherein are great stores of pikes, which fish is very rather in other parts the country, the waters there aboutes being not still and mody[688] enough for such sort of fish, but some now & then \ escape / out of this into the River Eden, tho very rarely.
Finally, all the rivers in Westm'land have great store of severall sorts of fishes: as salmon, pikes, chevens, trouts and others. And in Ullswater are troutes of an incredible bigness equivalent to salmons, which are called by the name of Gray Troutes: vid. pl. p. 55.

[I.106]

[J.] Of Highwayes[689]

{Roman Way from Bowes to Browham Castle \ and where thence; / Apleby Way – to Kendal from Apleby Maden Way; Kendall Way from Kendal to Penrith in the prospect and remarkeable things therein.}

[Notes on the Roman Way 1.]
The chiefest highway in this County is that great & fair casway by some called the Street, by others the Romain Way, in evidences since the Conquest Via Regia, which comes through the Roman Campe on the top of Staine [blank][690] \ a quarter of a mile distance from the castle / through Maden Castle & Underbrough, all in the parish of Brough. Thence by Brough Hill where a great fair is kept once every yere, lieveing Helbeck Hall (an old seat of the Helbecks & Blekinsopps, now of Arthur Scaife) on the right hand. Soe on towards Apleby by Warcop Hall (a seat of the Warkops, now of Mr Brathwate; Warcop Tower, now of Mr Fairer; & Warcop Castle, formerly of the Earles of Westm'land, but now demolished & turned into a Tenement.)
In the parish of Warcop all on the left hand soe it passeth \ through the forest of Kitland / by Sandford, and ancient seat of the Sandfords, but now quite demolished. On the left & opposite to that close by the Roman Way on the left hand allso, are 2 or 3 large Berryes or Tumuli, cast up there upon some great defeat, and a little of that on the right hand a \ large / Rotundo with round stones pitched much upon an equal distance. \ Here an Horse race &c. /
Then att Coupmanbeck bridge, where [blank] of Scotts was slane by one Coupman, & wher Clem Armestrong of Appleby with his ~~warfaring~~ \ quarter / staff beat 6 Scotts with their sword tho with the loss of his crowne.[691] Before you come att this bridge near the water side are the ruins of a large round castle the wall 10 yards thicke of lime and stone, & on the left an Hospital long since decayed. When you are over this bridge, the righthand way carryes you into Appleby & mettes the Romane Way near the gallows there of in, goe through St Nicollas upon Crakanthorpe More at Laine Head: But the Romain Way goe stright forward from the brid[ge] lieveing Appleby, the Castle whereof is fair in your view close on the left hand, Murton Hall.

[I.109]

[Notes on the Roman Way 2.]
The Romane Way which leads through this Countrey is commonly called by The Street quia lapidibus servitur[692] and the Hee-Street, i.e. The Hight \ Street / ~~it~~ from it[s] eminence, being somewhat raised above the level here in this Countrey (but much higher elsewher) and pitched with stones; it is allso called by some, the Geate, and it I belive* is the same which leadeth to London through ~~the place calld~~ Higate, which takes name from hence. So that I looke upon this as a Way of the greatest

visitors, as needy as they are amazed, so that for one catch [?] 10 men not only may stave off hunger but may fill themselves to the point of satiety.'
[687] The freshwater herring.
[688] Muddy.
[689] I.106 contains a scored-through draft on highways, completed elsewhere: see I.111-12.
[690] Stanemore. For a description of the Roman Way, see *N&B1*, 8.
[691] Repeated below, I.113.
[692] 'Because it is served [i.e. paved] with stones.'

eminence from whence all others may seeme to have borrowed the names of High-Ways \ (calld roads allsoe) by which is now signified Common Passages. / This being so they are calld roades, whether from the rideing, which is roade in the preterperfect tense: or from rod or rood – a measure of 16 feet ½ {? of attorneys and by measure} \ & sometimes more / which perhaps might be esteemed a sufficient breadth for an High[way] as now 8 yards is appointed by statute (14. Car. 2. C.6), [1662-1663], which is 24 foote. See *Surveyors Dial[ogue]*[693] About the rod {?}Which is the statutable breadth of a r., I shal not determin.

But now by use it hath so obtained, that a Bridleway is contra distinct from that of a road & signifyes a private way for a single horse &c. and not for Droves, Cartes or Carriages; & needs be no broader than a foot path, whereas a road must be sufficient for Carts & Carriages ~~passing~~ \ to pass & repas one / by one another. Query? in Blou[n]t's *Law Dictionary*.[694] And Haveing observd this of Highwayes, I should proceed to a more particular account concerneing them in the County of Westm'land of which there are many, but 3 more remarkable Sc. [blank][695]

[Machell's Notes: I.108, 110, 110A] [696]

Highgate village in Midlesex, so named from a kind of toll gate enterd there in early times – see Thorpe's *Survey of London & its Environs*.[697]

*(de hoc tamen queare)[698]

[I.110-I.110A]

{N.B.} This relation of Highways may doe well in Oglebye's Notes;[699] but in these the relation of the Gentlemen's houses as to their former owners may be omitted here becase it in som measure forestalles the particular relation.

{Note.} Bowes comes best to be treated on in the Limits; Because not absolutely determined whether in Westm'land or noe? This Bowes, (in Antonine's *Itinerarie*)[700] is called Lavatrae or Levatrae (both by the account of distance & \ site thereof by the / High Street of the Romans), the antiquitie whereof is allso confirmed by a large stone found in the Church somtimes used for an Aultar, with an Inscription upon it, in Honorem Hadriani Imperatoris. See Camden, Richmondshire.[701] N[ote] The Best for Bows is Camden upon the place.[702] And is allso remarkable for this, that the first Cohort of the Thracians lay here in garison whilst Virius Lupus lived as lieuetennant and proprietor of Briton under the Emperour Severus, as appear by this inscription.[703]

---

693 John Norden, *The Surveyor's Dialogue* (London, 1607).

694 Thomas Blount (1618-1679), *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-Dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (London, 1670).

695 Continued on I.111, below.

696 The contents of I.110 and 110A comprise memoranda relating to Bowes and Stanemore, Roman antiquities on the Yorkshire border, and the Maiden Way.

697 This comment is in a hand resembling William Nicolson's. John Thorpe (1565-1655) was an architect who designed houses in and near Highgate: https://www.british-history.ac.uk/vch/middx/vol6/pp122-135. His book of plans c.1603 may be found in Sir John Soane's Museum: See John Summerson (ed.) 'The Book of Architecture of John Thorpe in Sir John Soane's Museum', *The Walpole Society, Vol. XL* (1964-66), 106. John Stow's more famous *A Survey of London* was published in 1603.

698 'However, check this.'

699 John Ogilby (1600-1676), see I.42, above.

700 The Antonine Itinerary (*Itinerarium Antonini Augusti* – 'The Itinerary of the Emperor Antoninus') is a famous *Itinerarium*, a register of the stations and distances along various roads. Seemingly based on official documents, possibly from a survey carried out under Augustus, it describes the roads of the Roman Empire.

701 Here, Machell has drawn a small sketch of the stone. Camden gives the inscription: 'IMP. CÆSARI DIVI TRAIANI PARTHICI. Max. filio / DIVI NERVÆ NEPOTI TRAIANO. Hadria/ NO AUG. PONT. MAXIM – / COS. I. – P. P. COH. IIII. F. – / 10. SEV', see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 731E.

702 See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 731-32.

703 Here, Machell has drawn another small sketch of an altar. Camden gives the inscription:' DAE. i. FORTUNÆ / VIRIUS LUPUS / LEG. AUG. PR. PR. / BALINEUM VI / IGNIS EXUST- /UM. COH. I. THR- / ACUM REST- / ITUIT. CURANTE / VAL. FRON- / TONE PRÆF---- / EQ. ALÆ VETTO', Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 732B.

And here I thinke fitt to begin to trace \ the Great Roman Way / because that ~~Westmorland~~ \ Bowes Castle / notwithstanding the vulgar estimate to its relation of the Bounds of Westm'land begining att Rere Cross, has a relation to this County. For Mr Dugdall in his *Baronagium* coates[704] out of a Record in King Johns time, that Bowes Castle in Westmorland was given in custody to Robert de Veteripont, Anno ejus [blank]. Hence therefor it leads you to a place called Spittle (formerly an Hospitall belonging to the [blank]) as I have bin informed, but now a house of refreshment for passengers; and a little way hence, on the very topp of Stane More, it carryes you directly th\rough / the great Romane Camp in the rear of which, stands Rear Cross upon the very Cassway. & soe ~~over~~, through a little \ square / fort of Romane extraction called Maden Castle to Under Brough.[705]

ad Rere †: pag. 582. Here the King Westmer Slow the King Rothinger: Usher's *Antiq. Ecclesiæ Britanniæ* penes Mr Walker, Dublin 1639.[706] Burton *Upon Antoninus* for the limits.[707]

[I.111]

Of Highwayes in Westm'land and things remarkable in them

The chiefe high-wayes that I remember in this County are:
1. The Romain-Way \ from Bowes to Browham /[708]
2. Maiden-Way \ from Kirkbythore to Newc[astle]
3. Appleby-Way \ to Kendal /
4. Kendal Way \ from Kendal to Penrith /
which 4 wayes do coast in a manner the whole County of Westm'land[709]

Via \ Regia / Romana Sive strata

1. The Romain-Way is part of [blank] Street and fairer to be seen in this Country than any \ other / that \ I finde /of in England beside: for any stranger may travil by it through the Bottome of Westm'land without guide or direction. It continues very conspicuous from beyond Doncaster in Yorkshire till you come opposite to Carlile in Cumberland \ as I have observed / which it leves on the left hand att some miles distance, & thence (as I thinke) takes into Scotland. It is called by the inhabitant of this County The Street, and in ancient evidences since the Conquest, Via Regia, or the King's High way. It comes into Westm'land {from Bowes Castle} over the great mountaine Staine More, & strikes directly forward, through the Bottom ~~of Westm'land~~ \ thereof, which is the vail Country / from E. to west towards Penrith \ & Carlile / in Cumberland, but leaves this County / ~~upon som more~~ {att Browham Castle where it passing Emote it sinkes into Cumberland. Mr Dugdale in his visitation makes it to goe by Lowther Bridge: query.} ~~It goes through the great Roman Camp, which is cast up upon the very topp thereof, and soe goes along through Maden Castle and~~ Under Brough (a market Towne formerly), lieveing \ Brough Church & / Brough Castle (one of the chief seats of the \ Lords of Westm'land) att a quarter of a miles distance on the left hand; and Helbeck Hall (which is under the craggy mountaines) formerly the seat of a family of that \ name / and a long time after of the Blenkinsops, but now lately purchased by one Arthur Scaife) {Sold to Arthur Scaife, 1675} Just opposite to the Castle, halfe a mile distant on the right hand. Soe it goes on directly towards Appleby ~~through Kirkland Forrest (forsan pro Kirk land~~ by Warcop Hall (formerly a seat of the Warcops, now of Mr Brathwate), Warcop Tower (an other seat of the same family, but now Mr Fairer), & Warcop Castle, formerly of the Nevills Earles of Westm'land but now demolished & turned into a Tenement;[710] \ & Warcop Church / all these in Warcoop, which is on the left hand a quarter distant: \ and through which there is a roade frequently {made use of which metts with this again at the end of Sandford Field opposite to Sandford, wher was formerly a Hall, the seat &c. of[f] the ride up into the way.} & soe it goes a long through Kitland Forrest, leiveing Sandford Hall, the ancient seat of the Sandfords (but now quite demolished) on the left hand att about the same distance: & directly opposite to that 2 or 3 Tumuli or Berryes trenched about in memory of some slaughter committed

[704] 'Quotes'.
[705] Machell's description of Maiden Castle is quoted in *N&B1*, 8.
[706] Archbishop James Ussher (1581-1656) *Britannicarum ecclesiarum antiquitates* (The Antiquities of the British Churches) (1639), the most substantial history of Christianity in Britain to that date. *N&B1*.1, cites p. 303 of this volume on the same subject.
[707] William Burton, *Commentary on Antoninus, his Itinerary* (1658).
[708] Compare Machell's description of the Roman Way with *N&B1*, 8.
[709] *N&B1*, 8, lists 8 good turnpike roads in the county in 1777.
[710] I.e. land or real property, held of another by any tenure; a holding. *OED*.

there,[711] close by the way on the left hand allso \ and a little off that on the right hand is a large {rotundo or ring with round stones upon it, pitched much upon an equall distance.} Soe it passeth allong the moore called Sandford-More, where a \ free / plate is runn for every Thorsday

[Machell's Notes: I.111 & 112]

{See Burton *On Antoninus*}
White Burwins

[I.113]

before Whitsuntide att the sole cost and charges of the Major of Appleby \ then being, who / delivers ~~by~~ \ it / him selfe, to him that wins ~~it~~ upon the Towne Hall staires,[712] lieveing an old Hall ~~on the other side Sandford More~~, but called by the name of Newhall (a seat of the Warcops & where some of that name do yett reside) on the left hand beyond Sandford mire. Then it Brings you to Coupman Beck bridge,[713] where they say a King of the Scotts was slaine by one Coupman, whence it had that name; and ~~near to that place on the right hand~~ & where Clem Armstrong of Appleby did of late yeres defend the passage with his quarter staff against 6 armed Scotts, tho with the loss of \ a piece of / his crowne which one of them cutt of by an unlucky blow.

{de voc vide in Warcop or Bongate parish[714]

Clem. Armstrong
|
George Armstrong a Butcher
|
John Armstrong a Butcher, now liveing 1675.}

Before you \ come at / this bridge \ near the water side, / are the ruines of a large, round castle, the walls whereof (if the rubbige have not contributed thereto) are 10 of my passes[715] \ in bredth /: And (on the lefthand if I mistake not) an Hospitall, butt long since demolished.[716] Att this bridge a way branched out (since Appleby grew less & contracted it selfe) on the left hand, levein[g] Ormside Hall (a seat formerly of the Or[m]sides), after of the Burtons then of the Pickerings & now of Hiltons of Burton & Hilton; on the left hand beyond the river Eden, but within view both of this and the Romain Way, which it meetes with againe near Appleby Gallows if you Goe by Crakenthorpe (the ancient seat of the Machells, formerly called Ma Catuli ~~In the family it has ever~~ \ ~~for finde ever it belonged to any other family ther~~ / ~~ever contented~~, for the Crakenthorpes descended from them many hundreds of yeeres since, who have continued there since the Conquest {without interuption: ut è cartis putet.}[717] Then it meates near Kirkbythore in the Lordship of Crakanthorpe. But the Roman Way it selfe runns

[711] Berryes = barrows. Machell thought that the tumuli marked 'some great defeat'; see I.106.
[712] See I.106 for another reference to this horse race.
[713] Coupland Beck. An historical form of this name is, 'Coup(e)manebec', see *Westmorland Place-Names*; see also n.892, below.
[714] 'For the name, see', Part 1, Ch.23, Warcop, and Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby: Bongate.
[715] Passes: paces; rate of stepping. *OED*.
[716] See MSI.347: 'In a dead with boundary sans date wherein Thomas de Hellerton gives his halfe of the manner of Helton Bacon to his cosan Andre de Hellerton … Copland Beck is called Copmanbeck, where the same boundary testifies there was an Hospitale deinde: in Creskeld et sic descendit usque hospitalem apud Cupmanbeck.' See also, W.G. Wiseman, 'The Medieval Hospitals of Cumbria', *CW2*, 87 (1987), 83-100, at 89. 'There would appear to have been a small hospital, possibly a hospice for travellers using the route over Stainmoor, near to Coupland Bridge, two miles south-east of Appleby. Little is known of this house, but it is thought to have been founded by the Veteriponte family. When Robert de Veteriponte died in 1261 he left two infant daughters, Isabel and Idonea. When they came of age Isabel married Roger de Clifford and Idonea married Roger de Leyburne and at the Partition of Fees of Westmorland, made at Great Asby church in 1286, that portion allotted to Isabel included the advowson of the hospital of Coupmanbeck. In a slightly later gift, c.1290, the hospital is referred to in boundary details and would appear to have been situated at the confluence of Coupmanbeck and Creskeldbeck, but no trace can be found today.'
[717] 'As is plain from the family deeds.'

directly forward \ from the said Bridge, close / by Bongate Tarne, & soe on by Appleby on the left hand, haveing 3 or 4 ways out of it into the Towne. It gives then upon ~~Gallow Hill~~ a very fair view \ of the 2 churches in Appleby, and there upon the Hill / of Appleby Castle ~~there~~, the chiefe seat of the Lords of Westmorland & Barons of Appleby & Beauly Castle \ the seat of the Bishop of Carlile and Howgill Castle / {a seat of the Sandfords olim Lanc. / which ~~you have in view~~ is so finely situated that you have it in view all along in a manner.}
So on close by the Gallows till you come at a large \ round / fort with deep trenches & out works on the right hand allmost opposite to Crakanthorp Hall & Beauly Castle, or rather to St Giles his chapple, which belongs to Crakanthorpe & Colby Tower \ on the other side Eden / a seat of the Colbyes, but now of the Warcops; \ and on the right is Brampton Hall, built by [Blank]. / Soe on to Kirkbythore, where a little before you enter the Lane, it leads you close by a Roman Camp in the Lordship of Crackenthorp, one of the fairest & largest in England, a little beyond which is a square fort with ingress & egress which they call Maiden Hold. Here allso has bin an Horse course whence the place is called Speedy More. & opposite to this is Bolton chapple belonging to Morland, & Bolton Hall, a seat [of] the Wibers and branches

[I.115]

{on the left hand, but on the right [is] Long Merton church, & the parsonage hall.}
And so it brings you to Kirkbythore, which was Callatum or Gallatum with the Romans & looked upon by authors as the Chief place, of the Brigantes in this parte of Britane when the Romanes possesd them selves of it. (Here Maiden Way Branches out of the Romane [Way] on the right hand \ by the church, / but of it wee shall speake anon.)[718]

Here ~~the Rom. Way~~ is a woden Bridge, & Hence the Great Way caryes you close by ~~some grounde which they\ call /~~ Burwins Hall where formerly was Whellop Castle, a seat as some say of the Machells ~~formerly~~ \ & was called Whelp Castle, / but long since destroyd, out of the ruines of wh'ich (as appears by the stones) most of the Houses now in being are built. & Kirkbythore Hall, (which belongd to a family of that [name], after to the Whartons, and now to one lawyer Wharton who bought it lately) is a little remote on the left hand. Thence it carryes you over Kirkbythore More, commonly called Sowerby More,[719] where are races of men women & Horses ever[y] St James day,[720] with other active sports in the village of Sowerby, \ by the chapple / to Eden Bridge, lieveing Acorn-Banke, a sweet but late seat of the family of Dalstons, & Millnrigg, a pretty little House formerly belonging to a Branch of the Birkbecks out of the house of Hornby, but now to Mr Dalston of Acorn Banke, who bought it lately.[721] Thence all along by Whinfield forrest, \ where the 3 Bretheren are remark, / to Browham Castle \ an other seat of the Lords of Westm'land / {& an excellent house} directly forward; lieveing Winderwath Hall (a place which formerly belonged to the Clifford, Lords of Westm'land, afterwards to the Brathwate of Warcop and now to Mr Wivell who purchased it lately & has beautifyed it much) on the right hand a 4^{r} of a mile distant.[722] And Woodside an Hamlett belonging to Browham Castle on the right hand allso, a little further on: \ and about the same distance / where one Scott Jumped 24 foote (8 yards) att one single leap, in memory of which 2 posts are sett up there.

[Two narratives. 1. The 'history of the Harthorn Tree'. 2. Machell's father's hunting prowess]

Likewise on the right hand, but not very percieveble, is Hornby Hall att halfe a mile distance, the seat of the Birkbeckes a worthy family; opposite to which is a Great Tree \ called Harthorn Tree / in the

[718] Machell's description of the Maiden Way begins on I.119.
[719] Temple Sowerby Moor.
[720] 25 July.
[721] For John Dalston of Acorn Bank, see Michael A. Mullett, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby in the Era of Lady Anne Clifford*, *1649-1689*, CWAAS Tract Series 25 (Kendal, 2015), 26-27.
[722] For Wivill/Wyvill, see *N&B1*, 400. Shortly before his death in 1658, William Wyvill of Johnby Hall, Greystoke, bought the Winderwath estate from Thomas Braithwaite of Burneside. Winderwath was sold to Edward Hasell of Dalemain in 1787. See *CFH*, 377.

Rome Way by the parke side where The hornes & head of a stagg & greyhound were naled up some hundreds of yeres since, part of which doe still reman; in a memory of an Hart that was coursed out of Scottland from the Red Kirke[723] hither by a single greyhound the one dyeing with the leape on one side the paile and the other on the other; whence this rithme:

> Hercules kild Harta grese.
> Hart a Grese killed Hercules.[724]

[I.117]

The \ most famous course tha ever was / {& the like of which has not} ~~like of which has not~~ bin heard of before or since. But som thing like it was lately performd by ~~Squire Machell of Crakenthorp~~ \ a gentleman of this Countrey; / who in Olivers time (alone for it was not permitted Cavaliers to meet upon any pretence) and with a single greyhound called Winfield \ ~~of which name they allwayes have a dog~~ / coursed a stag ~~upon~~ upon Dufton Murton & Cross Fell 4 or 5 hores,[725] and came in \ with him / att last att ~~Whinfield~~ \ Flakebrig / Parke Head, where he found the Buck & Dogg on their bellyes face to face, the Dogg snapping \ att his nose / the Buck ~~tho~~ sore wounded endevoreing to defend himselfe, but both soe weake, that the Dog could not kill nor ~~he fle from the dogg~~ \ the Buck escape. / Whereupon Mr Machell, \ He quitting, / quitting horse ~~for the horse was not in much better plight~~ (which was att that time, very weary of his burthen) ran up to them on foote & killed the stagg with his owne hands. ~~The dogg lept upon lapped a little blo[ood]~~. Upon which course this rime was made but noe trophie erected:

> Buck rann well so \ well / Winfield ran;
> Neither Buck nor Winfield wan.[726]

The dogg lapped ~~a little~~ \ some / of the blood, and layd him downe panting \ for breath / (whence, being not able to stir) he was left for ded: but recoverd ~~himself~~ again after a little rest, and missing his master, ran straight to Dufton, where he mett with his cloake att a little \ ale / house, being left there in the morning, & he would not part ~~from it~~ \ thence but layd downe upon it / till the Gentlemans man (which was three days' after) came for it home ...[727]

[II.476] [728]

Near to this place in the very High Way, I mean the Roman Way, is an old oake calld Hart Horn tree, to which were nailed a harts head and a greyhounds, som part whereof ~~may~~ \ is / yet to be seen. And

---

[723] The Red Kirk, Gretna; see Fullerton's *Topographical, Statistical and Historical Gazetteer of Scotland, Volume 1* (Glasgow, 1842), 715.
[724] See *N&B1*, 398-99.
[725] Hours.
[726] The incident was recorded in verse by William Wordsworth:

> 'Here stood an oak, that long had borne affixed
> To his huge trunk, or, with more subtle art,
> Among its withering topmost branches mixed,
> The palmy antlers of a hunted hart,
> Whom the dog Hercules pursued, —his part
> Each desperately sustaining, till at last
> Both sank and died, the life-veins of the chased
> And chaser bursting here with one dire smart.
> Mutual the victory, mutual the defeat!
> High was the trophy hung with pitiless pride;
> Say, rather, with that generous sympathy
> That wants not, even in rudest breasts, a seat;
> And, for this feeling's sake, let no one chide
> Verse that would guard thy memory, HART'S-HORN TREE!'

See Jared Curtis (ed.), *Collected Reading Texts from the Cornell Wordsworth III* (HEB, 209,2014), *XXI*, 482.
[727] Machell's own punctuation.
[728] Also numbered p.29.

the Ho[nourable] the Countiss of Penbroke keeps a great piece of the horne \ which lately fell off / as a rarity \ for her. / The occasion of this memorial was that a grahound coursed a hart out of this parke to the Red Kirke in Scotland, & ~~returned again~~ \ pursued him back / to this tr[e]e, where he lept \ hurt / but / ~~&~~ dyed with the fall on the other side \ of the parke pale; / the dog lept \ after him / & fell backward and dyed on this \ side the pale. /
Nor may it seem uncredible to you, for a gentleman {My own father} coursed a stagg on Dufton fells with a greyhound of his \ own[729]

[II.478][730]

{for} 4 or 5 hors and at last ~~when they come~~ \ brought him at / to Flakebrig wood head ~~morning till evening & att last when they came to a close, they~~ \ where the dog, harte &c. \ were ~~also~~ so \ & tyerd \ & spent / ~~both horse, man, dog & stag~~ that they ~~could~~ not ~~tell which to whip~~ on \ thus he tell which stood most need the gentleman \ of his whip; / so lieveing ~~their~~ \ his / horse / cut him ~~dow~~ up \ ~~with their swords~~ / & the dog lapped some blood & ~~so~~ layd ~~him~~ \him down ~~to dye~~ / downe there \ ~~where~~ being left there / they <u>left him for</u> dead. But hee recoverd \ his strength / againe a[nd] came \ ran / ~~downe~~ to an alehouse to \ where my father had / had left his cloake, & <u>finding it there</u> lay downe upon it and would not stir from it till the cloake was sent for; which was 3 days after; and \ so came home with it. / But to returne from this ~~impertinent~~ dig[r]ession ~~which will be no way serviceable to your designe~~.

But to returne from this digression:

[I.117]

<u>And now to returne to the Romaine Way</u> out of which I have wandred ~~too far~~. The next thing[731] remarkable is \ Nine Church /{so called from [blank] on the right h[and]} {And a little farther on in the very High way} a fair pillar \ with dyalls & inscriptions upon, / erected by the Honourable Lady Ann Clifford Countiss Dowager &c. in memory of her parting with her dear mother Anno [blank], the last time that ever she saw her alive. Where allso is a Table of Stone with stairs upp to it for travailers to mount their horses withall; upon which is yerely payd a certaine sum of money to the poor,[732] by the charitable appointment of the said Countiss.[733] Near that place in the Demaine wall on the right hand which goes all along by the Roman Way are 2 figures, digged upp there in serching for stones when that wall was made, & besides them were many Inscriptions found, but beaten to peaces by the \ careless / work men, who regarded nothing but their owne advantage. {Item: a Roman Inscription upon a stone lying over a smoote[734] near the corner & not far from the piller; opposite side to Hornby & Nine Church.} These stone were of the ruines of old Brovacum, a great towne in the time of the Romaines, & the further off the figures as you goe to the castle is a Caesar's head: I drew them both soone after they were found & have them to show.

[I.119]

Then this Great Roman Way Brings you to the Castle,[735] near which was a Great Roman Campe as I have bin informed \ leven[736] on the left. / {Browham & Browham Hall the seat of the Browhams, & after severall conveyances passed to the foresaid Countess, who gave to Appleby Hospitall: & allso a fair house, newly built in Browham by James Bird an attorney att law.}[737] & close by this castle runns the River Emote, which the way crosses & so goes through Carleton by Penreth, which it leeves on

[729] MS: 'My own father. Nor may it seem uncredible to you, for ~~my own father~~ \ a gentleman ~~of my acquaintance~~ / coursed a stagg on Dufton fells, ~~till neither~~ \ ~~my father~~ / with a greyhound of his \ own / ~~from morn~~'.
[730] Also numbered p.31.
[731] MS: 'think'.
[732] MS: 'power.'
[733] See *N&B1*, 394.
[734] A hole or opening at the foot of a wall, the bottom of a fence or hedge, etc., esp. one allowing the passage of hares, rabbits or sheep. *OED*.
[735] Brougham Castle.
[736] Leaving.
[737] For Machell's true feelings concerning Bird, see Part 1, Ch.7, Brougham, I.447.

the left near to Carlile as I sayd before. From this castle you have the prospect Lowther Hall \ the chief & ancient seat of the L[owthers] / & Clifton Hall, which ~~are~~ \ is / to be referd to [in the description of] Kendall Way. & likewise of Penrith & Penrith Castle & Carleton Hall on the other side the water in the County of Cumberland. Likewise, of Browham Hall, \ Browham chapple / & Mr Birds house, which lye in the way if you goe by the Bridges from hence to Penrith, at the end of which Towne you come agane into the Romaine Way & in goeing meet with pretty divertisments, as King Arthur's Round Table & Mabrough Castle,[738] betwix the 2 Bridges of Lowther & Emote on the left hand, beside a fine prospect of the Countrye which lyes upon the bankes of the River Lowther or Sleddal \ wher you see Clifton Church & the Hall.

[III.261]

The Roman Way from Kirkbythore Bridge to Brough Town End

It goeth from Kirkbythore bridge in a streight line S.E.

	Miles & ½	Quarters & ½
1. To a Dikestead in Machel's Banke, where the Roman urnes & ashes were found	0	1 q.
To the know[739] or pitch of the hill	0	1 q.
To Maiden Hold, which stands directly like Appelby Tower E. W. N. & S.	0	1 q.
To the Roman camp which flankes the way at about 20 yards distant from it: the fower corner if I may so call them (being rebated), standing directly East, W. N. & S. And opposite to the West corner of it stands Boldton Chapel at ½ a mile distance; & Marton church som what more from the East corner. Near this place I measur'd the way to be 7 yards broad.		
The camp is about 11 score in length.	0	½ q.
Thence to the riseing of Owsley .	0	½ q.
Thence up the hill to over against Beacon on Owsley where you have a fair view of Crakenthorp Hall to the front; and at a distance, if you looke about, you may see Buly Castle, Howgil Castle & many other places.	0	½ q.
Thence to Annest Johny Close Neuke	0	½ q.
Thence down the hill to the turnpike	0	1 q.
Thence to the top of the Banke End (which is over against Crakenthorp Hall at ½ a mile distance)	0	1 q.
(Opposite to which on the other hand is the West end of Brampton, above ½ a mile distant.)		
Thence to white Burwens, an irregular fort on the North E. side of the way about 20 yards distant from it, where ye see Appelby, Buly, Hougil Castles, Crakenthorp Hall & many other places, being a stately prospect.	0	1 q.[740]

[I.119 Cont.]

Thus I have don with the Great Romaine Way, which in 18 miles rideing presents you with all the seats & rarityes whereof I have given you a brief account (& concerning which I shall speake more fully in their proper places) \ besides of / {5 Castle-Halls; 10 churches & 2 chaples: Brough church, Castle; Warcop Church; Browham Chap; St Lawrence & St Michaels at Appleby; Clifton Church; Marton Church; Kirkbythore Church; Temple Church; Nine Church}[741] the like of which will scarce be found in any other County; much less in soe little a spott of ground as this Bottom of Westm'land,

[738] Mayburgh.
[739] Variant of knowe or knoll; a mound, a hillock; an area of rising ground, a rise. *OED*.
[740] The page has partly perished here.
[741] The two chapels were Temple Sowerby and Brougham.

which former writers have quite overlooked & taken noe notice of \ which I thinke is a sufficient argument that Mr [Blank] (that great lover of Antiq.)/ {never saw this place indeed}[742] I proceed now to the 2nd High way, viz.

The Maiden Way

The Maiden Way goes not far in this County, ~~so that it may well be called~~ \ being as it were / a Branch of the ~~other which~~\ Roman / but it extends it selfe very farr into Northumberland \ directly North / viz. to Caervorran ~~directly south~~ \ near / by the Picts' Wall \ not far from ~~the wall~~, paved with stones all along (and as some have reported tho the scarcity of that sort of stone here will not ~~give~~ permitt mee to give credit unto them) with flinty pibles (vid. Camden, of Northumberland). ~~And~~ What the name of this Caervorran was formerly is nott knowne, but here ~~is~~ the ~~foundation~~ \ vestigia / of a Romane campe 140 paces square; with foundations of houses built there since that time (maybe when it tooke the name of Caervorran)† \ is / planely to be seen.[743]
And the Picts Wall here\a/bouts is more high firme & strong than in any other place;[744] for 2 furlonges hence upon a great hill, it doth still remaine 15 foote high & 9 Broade alltho Bedius[745] declares that

[Machell's Notes: I.119]

*{Caervorran, forsan quasi caer ar bhron, i.e. a Tower on the side of an Hill; for so this was situate. Or rather Cairveron: i.e. Veronis, the cit[adel] of Veron.}
†{Upon the recess of the Romans.}

[I.121]

the hight thereof was one 12 \ feet / and tis built of square stone on both sides the wall. Some are of opinion that this ~~Castle~~ Way ~~ex~~wended it selfe betwixt Maiden Castle & this Caervorran, and that there upon it was called Maiden Way. But the contrary appears from this; that the way which leads from Maiden Castle runns directly Nor-west, and is a larger casseway by much; And this from Kirkbythore to Caervarran runns directly North through the Lordship of Millnburne, lieveing Hougil Castle on the right hand, which was formerly a seat of the Lancasters & now of the Sandfords. Newbigin on the left, which was the Habitation of a family of that name extinct in an Heiress and married \ 10. Ed. 2. 1317 / to Robert de Crakenthorpe, descended from ~~the Machell~~ Alexander, Brother of William Ma[lus] Catulus (or Mauchael) Lord of Crakenthorpe; and so \ on / directly over Lower-Cross Fell, lieveing High Cross Fell on the right, upon the top of which is an aultar say some; but I rather thinke \ it / to have bin a Cross & that the mountaine (which is thought to be the Hiyest in this part of England) tooke it name from thence. But tho this way doe not lead directly from Caervorran to Maden Castle, yett it leads to Kirkbythore; & the great Romane Way will carry you thence by Maden Hold & the Campe ~~thence that place~~ \ upon the moore belonging to Crakenthorp / directly forwards to Maiden Castle which is upon Stainemore. Howbeit I dar[e] not determin, whence Maiden Way, Maden Hold & Maden Castle doe take their ~~names~~ originalls & denominations, but I know very well, that the Castle att Edenburrow is called by the name of Maiden Castle allso, but in Latin Alatum: & I make noe doubt that this Maden Way was made by the Romaines.[746]

[742] A reference to an earlier criticism of William Camden.
[743] Much of this paragraph, including the measurement of the camp, is taken from Camden. See *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 800; e.g. Camden refers to having heard of 'a great port-way, paved with flint and bigge stone' which, 'led from hence through wastes unto Maiden Castle in Stanemore. Certainly, it passed directly to Kirkby Thor'.
[744] The Picts' Wall = Hadrian's Wall.
[745] Bede.
[746] On MS.I.62, Machell wrote: 'Maden Castle. Endenburge. Castrum Alatum. Aden.' Nicolson and Burn also attempted to derive both the meaning of the name and its geographical spread, see *N&B1*, 8-9.

[III.66]

{A cohort is 500 \ men / the x part of a Roman legion; ergo, a legion is 5000 men: Coles' *English Dictionary*.[747] Yet I have seen (I thinke in Haywood *of Angels*)[748] that a legion is 6666.}
They had cohortes, which warded before their capites, (at what distance I know not). These gave notice to Cæsar of the skirmish which the British had with the VII legion ~~of Romanes~~ being surprised at harvest work. Query \ Speed, pg. 184. / Might these fortes calld Maden Hold & M. Castle be a station for the cohorts?

[I.121]

[Unpaved Highways]

I shall now proceed to the other highwayes, which are not paved, nor pretend to any thing of Antiquity in them. & those are Kendal Way, which leads Betwixt Penrith, where I left the Romaine, & the towne of Kendall, whence it takes its name; & Appleby Way, which leads from Kendall to Appleby, whence it has its name.

Kendall Way

It begins att Penrith a confirmd[749] market in the County of Cumberland, and enters Westm'land att Emote Bridge: wher on the right hand up the water, besides other places in Cumberland, you have

[I.123]

view of Yanewath Hall formerly a seat of the Dudley but now purchased by Sir John Lowther of Lowther, the family of the Dudley being quite extinct.[750] And a little higher, of Sockbridge, a seat of the Lancasters, which family (tho some of the name remane still alive) is quite extinct, and the Hall now belong Sir John Lowther of Cokermouth, a Branch of the other House: & soe it goes on directly south to Lowther Bridge so called from the river which runns through it lieveing att a little destance on the right behinde the towne of Emote[751] a round fortification with a spatious entrance & 4 huge stones pitched up in it, called Mabrough Castle; and a little further up a rou[n]d fortification close by the high way on the right hand call[ed] King Arthur's Castle, & by some, the Round Table, and supposed to be a place of Justing:[752] Soe from Lowther bridge to Shap, lieveing on the left Browham chaple & a fair house near to it built by James Bird, and likewise Browham Hall, & the Castle all which I spoke of before in the Romain Way: And in Clifton it goe through the village betwixt the church & Clifton Hall which was anciently the seat of the Engaynes, and after for many generation of the Wibers, a family not quite extinct but very much decayed; & now sold or mortgaged to Sir John Lowther of Lowther Hall{Sir John [Lowther] of Sokbridge I thinke has a share in it} a place near att hand and the ancient seat of that worthy family; but so covered with wood that tho it be a very ellegant building & hath 2 stately towers, yett they cannot be seen, neither can Ascome, which is over the water opposite unto it: a seat of the Askomes after of the Swinburnes & lastly of the Sandfords,

---

[747] Elisha Coles, *An English Dictionary, explaining the difficult terms that are used in divinity, husbandry, physick, phylosophy, law, navigation, mathematicks, and other arts and sciences. Containing many thousands of hard words (and proper names of places) more than are in any other English dictionary or expositor. Together with the etymological derivation of them from their proper fountains, whether Hebrew, Greek, Latin, French, or any other language. In a method more comprehensive, than any that is extant* (London, 1676). This was the largest English dictionary of the late-17th century and was the first to recognise the importance of slang. In addition, it offered lists of dialect words and obsolete terms. It also discussed the proper names and histories of classical figures.

[748] Thomas Heywood (c.1573-1641), *The Hierarchie of the blessed Angells* (London, 1635).

[749] 'Confirmed market': a market 'established firmly'. *ODNB*. The market was confirmed in an order by Henry III in 1223. See Michael A. Mullett, *A New History of Penrith Book 1: From Pre-History to the Close of the Middle Ages* (Carlisle, 2017), 44-45.

[750] For Sir John Lowther, see Michael A. Mullett, *A New History of Penrith Book III: Penrith in the Stuart Century, 1603-1714* (Carlisle, 2018), 31.

[751] Eamont Bridge.

[752] Jousting.

who have continued ther since the [blank] yere of Edward the [blank].[753] Hence the way leads you directly to [Blank][754]

[I.134][755]

[K. Sheriffs of Westm'land]

I shall in the next place proceed to the particular description of Westm'land by parishes and manners and therein show you the ancient possessors of each Lordship together with the moderne with their armes & pedegrees. ~~But first give me lieve to speake a word or two in order thereunto concerneing of Heraldry~~. \ But before I doe this, let mee add what observations of I have other, concerneing the sheriffs of Westm'land. For though it was anciently called a County (as it is at this day), and there have bin of it severall Earles, in Latin calld Comites: as Nevils & Faines, whose pedegrees I have inserted (And Langdale, Lord Westm'land) which are all but titular. I find that anciently it has bin really under the Jurisdiction & Government of Barons, \ Lords & Signors Castelans. / and ~~if I may have leave for~~ the Hon[our] was united with the office of sheriff (which is very probable) vicountes of Westm'land. For, as to the execution of that office, the Cliffords had power \ derived / I doubt not from the Viponts & Morvills {& perhaps Ralph Meschines who at the least} to appoint their sheriffs, who were frequently ~~writ~~ \ called / vicecomites &c. See my MS. VI, p. 96; And were in those times of the best sort of Gentry for the greater honour the place & fam[ily].

[Machell's Notes: I.134]

And for this reason, I thought fit to insert a catalogue of Sherives here in this place e *Libro Rubro Scaccaris*[756] – with my own addition. And the manner & form of presenting them out of my MS VI.

[VI.593]

A Booke of Sheriffs
In order to the Antiquitye of the Countyes
of
Westmerland & Cumberland
1678

[Preliminary Notes]

N.B. by this som Deeds sans Date may be found to have bin in such a yeare, for the vicecomites are frequently witness. And allso by old deeds beareing Date this Catalogue of Sheriffs may be completed T.M.

[VI.584][757]

Dacre: The famous Treaty which followed upon King Athelstans victory over Constantine, King of Scots (so loftily described by the *Saxon Chronicle* A.D. 938),[758] is said to be ad locum qui Dacor vocatur:[759] W. Malmesbury *de Gest, Reg. Angl.* p.50.[760] Hoveden saies it was in 921 and in loco qui dicitur Eamotum,[761] p.422. Vid.*Chron.* A.S. ad an. 924.[762]

---

[753] Robert Sandford of Askham is reported to have been Acting Sheriff, 16-17 Edward II (1322-23). *CFH*, 294.
[754] … to Askham.
[755] For Machell's information on sheriffs of Westmorland, see Sir G. Duckett, 'The Sheriffs of Westmorland, with the early Sheriffs of Cumberland', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 285-305.
[756] 'From the red book of Scaccaris.' *Dialogus de Scaccario*, or 'Dialogue concerning the Exchequer', is a mediaeval treatise on the practice of the English Exchequer, written by Richard Fitzneal in the late 12th century. Machell also used it to research 'the booke of Knights fees …given in temp. Ed. I', see Part 3, Ch.1, VI.432.
[757] Text on this page appears to be in Bishop Nicolson's hand.
[758] '*The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* is an annual record of events, first compiled around 890 during the reign of King Alfred the Great. It was the first attempt to give a systematic year-by-year account of English history, and it was later maintained and added to by generations of anonymous scribes until the middle of the 1100s.' BL.
[759] '…at a place which is called Dacre.'
[760] William of Malmesbury (c.1090-c.1142), *Gesta Regum Anglorum* (1125-34).
[761] 'In the place which is said to be Eamont.'
[762] Roger of Hoveden or Howden (d.1202), *Gesta Henrici II et Gesta Regis Ricardi* ('Deeds of Henry II and King Richard'); revised in *Chronica magistri Rogeri de Hoveden* ('Chronicles of Master Roger of Howden'): the story of England before Henry II's reign, continuing until 1201.

[VI.585]

{? Query how it comes to pass that the catalogues of Sheriffs begin at Henry 2: ?Mr Dugdall}

A Catalogue of Sheriffs of Westmorland & Cumberland
ab anno 1^0 Henry 2 and ad anno 1^{um} Jacob

Memorandum
In the Catalogue of Westm'land (where the Shrievalty has bin hereditary) that I leave an column for the Provicecomites (for those that serv'd under the Viponts & Cliffords were properly soe; however, frequently writ vicecomites, and as other sheriffs had their deputyes under them, call'd undersheriffs) And it is to be noted that N.B. {~~Note that there was one Robert Veteriponte anno 80 Richard 1, which was the reign before King John~~.}

1. Robert de Veteri-ponte was Sheriff of Westmorland anno Kg John 4^0 [1202-03]. And in the next year following it was granted to him & his heires forever by the said King. To the Viponts succeeded the Cliffords by maryage of an heiress \ Query if not by Royal Grant? Sc. Dugdal, *Baron[age]* in Vipont & Clifford, p.349. /
To them, the Tuftons, by the same means, who now enjoy it by virtue of the said King's grant in the 5^{th} year of his reigne.
Wherefore (tho the office was executed by gentlemen whom they employed) wee must not looke upon Adam Deppedal and the rest inn the following catalogue as vicecomites, ~~but~~ \ tho they be stiled so; but in reality / pro-vicecomites.

2. The Viponts continued Lords of the Honour of Apelby & Sheriffs of Westmorland (for 5 generations) till the line was extinct in 2 coheirres: Isabella & Idonea, daughters of Robert, son of Robert, son of John, son of Robert, to whom King John gave the said Honour with the office of Sheriff & \ the / old-rents of Westm'land. Robert de Veteriponte (the last of that name) tooke part with the Barons against King Henry III, and dyed of a wound receiv'd in the wars, about the 43 of his reign [1258-1259], so that his Estate, with the former-grants ~~with all his estste~~ became forfæct, and were seis'd upon for the Kings use, who made his daughters (Isabel and Idonea) wards to 2 noble-men: Roger de Clifford & Roger de Leybourn, who maryed them afterwards to their owne sons, the king having granted them all their Estate about the 50^{th} year of his reigne. And Clifford, being guardian to the elder daughter, is said to have executed the office of Sheriff dureing their wardship. Idonea, the

[VI.586]

second daughter, dyed without any isue surviveing so that the whol Estate with all the profits & perquisites thereof came to Robert de Clifford in the 8^{th} year of Edward III [1334-35]; which Robert was brother & heire of Roger, son & heire of Robert, son & heire of Roger who maryed Isabella de Veteriponte: sister of Idonea de Leybourne; so that it should seeme:
1. Roger de Clifford (her husband's father) was Sheriff of Westmorland from her owne fathers death, who was Robert de Veteriponte, till the time that she maryed; Sc. from about the 49 of Henry III till the 54^{th} (or then about) of the said king's reign [1264-70]. To him succeeded her husband, Sc.
2. Roger de Clifford (son of Roger) in right of his wife, Isabella de Veteriponte. Hee dyed the 11^{th} of Edward the 1^{st} [1282-83], & to him succeeded
3. Isabella de Clifford, widow of Robert. She sate (as is said) in person at Apelby, as Sheriff of the countye, and dyed about the 20 of Edward 1 [1291-92]. To her suc[ceded]
4. Robert de Clifford (son of Roger & Isabella). He was slain in Scotland (at a place call'd Strivelings) the 4^{th} of June 1314. And to him succeded
5. Roger de Clifford, son of Robert. To him:
6. Robert de Clifford (brother of Roger & son of Robert, in whose Isue male it hath continued until this very time.
Ann, Countess Dowager of Dorsett, Penbrooke and Montgomery, daughter & sole heire to George, Earle of Cumberland, was the last of the Cliffords that held this office (Mr Thomas Gabettas being

pro-vice-comes).[763] She departed this life March 22 1676/7, and left the shrievalty (with then Barony of Westmorland &c.) to the family of the Tuftons, into which the first daughter (the Lady Margaret Sackvil) was matched, and had Isue: sons & daughters. The second daughter was maryed to [Blank] Compton, Earl of Northampton, & had Isue, the Lady Alethea, who dyed unmaryed temp. Car. 2 {The honourable John Tufton Esq., 2 brother to the Earl of Thanet, is at this time High Sheriff of Westm. & Lord of all that ancient esate which belong'd to his ancestours. T. Gabetis, vice-com.}[764]

[VI.587]

Sheriffs of Westmorland {Ad Tract Ge. de Westmorland}
A Catalogue of the Sheriffs of Westmorland from the 1^{t} years of King Henry 2
E lib. MS in folio: cajus tit. of Sheriffs, fig. 47, penes Mr Sheldon

Anno: Henry 2^{t} Reg^{s} Ang.
18.[765] Elias de Appelbi
23. Randulphus de Glanvill
24-25. Idem

Anno Richardus 1^{t} Reges Ang.
1-4. Osbertus di Longo-Campo {No one of this name came in with the Conqueror: se Batle Abby in *Hollinshed*. And another Sc. W.? Longchamp was Bishop of Ely and Chancellour of England in the time of Roger Machel being at the same time keper of the Great Seale & Vice-chancellour to the King in his expedition to the Holy War.}
5. Hugo Bardulpha
6. Idem
7. Hugo Bardulphe & Richard de Cartrai
8-9. Hugo Bardulphe
10. Idem & Johes Laleman {There are yet upon Stanemore tenants belonging to Brough Castle of the name of Lademan. Quere whether the same name.}

Anno Regis Johannis
1. Hugo Bardulphe & Richard de Carterai (v^{c} Carthenat) {Hale Charter}[766]
2. Galfr. fil Petre; Rogerus de Bello Campo; Willielmus de Stutevill & Johannes Lealeman
3-4. Willielmus de Stutevill & Ph. Escrop.
5-9. Adam Deppedal
10-12. Robert de Veteriponte
N.B. This catalogue must be false, for Robert de Veteriponte had the shrivealty {q. ideo} 4^{0} Johannis [1202-1203], & the same was settled upon him & his heires forever by the said king in the next year following; so that I take Deppedal & all that follow except the Veteriponts & Cliffords to [be] sub-vice-comityes under those familyes. T.M.

[VI.588]

Johannis
Pro-vic.
13. Eudo de Bello-Campo vice-com Westmorland. Testis apud cartam Confirm. Abbey de Hep[768] by Robert de Veteripont. T.M.

Vice-com[767]
sub Roberto de Veteriponte

[763] The tomb of Thomas Gabetis (d. 1694) is in Brough church, where there is an epitaph on a monument on the wall. See Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 46-47.
[764] Acting sheriff.
[765] MS numbers 1-17, 19-22 and 26-35 are blank.
[766] Hale Charter Roll: a cartulary of three membranes containing the claims of the Ireland family of Hale to its lands, from the time of King John into the early 15th century: Michael Johnson, *Romance and the Gentry in Late Medieval England* (Oxford, 2014), 217.
[767] A scored-through line of text here, is illegible.
[768] Shap Abbey.

[VI.589]

Westmorland Nom[in]a vicecom[itum], tem[pore] Regis Hen[rici] Tertis F. Rot.
1. ~~d~~
2. n~~l~~
3. ~~d~~
4. Ebor non Westm'land.
5. n~~l~~ de Westm'land.
6. Ebor n~~l~~ de Westm'land.
7. Galfrus de Neovil Symon de Hal pro eovic Ebor. Westm'land non norat?
8. Symon de Hal reddit comput[um] Ebor &c. nl de Westmorland.
9. Ewflacius de Ladhm ut Custos Everwikesir nl de Westmorland.
10. Idem ut custos p[ro] se et Robert de Cokefeld pro Eo red[dit] comput[um].
11-12. Robertus de Kokefeld firmar[ius] Ebor nl de Westmorland.
13. Rob. De Kokefeld ut firmar[ius] pro dim[idio] Anni W. de Stutevill .
14. ~~d~~
15-16. Will. de Stutevill [blank] et Philip de Ascillis pro eo r[eddit] co[mputum] Ebor nl de Westm'land.
17. Petrus de Ryval [blank] Johes Bonot pro eo pro dimidio anni. Brian de Insula pro Altero Dimidio Anni de Westm'land18. Brian de Insula r. c. p. Ebor n~~l~~ de Westm'land.
19. Johes fil Galf. & dim An^{t} et Brian fil Alari Ragus de Stapleton ut custos & Eo Ebor.

Sic in Res[ponsionibu]s de Ev[er]vic
Idem Joh[ann]es r[eddidit] computum de sexies XX et viij^{li} ij^{d} et ob - de Catallis Hugonis de Burgo, et de XX ij^{li} de Equirio patris sui, sicut continetur in Rotulo quem Willielmus Ruffus lib[er]auit in Tho[mam]. Sic[769] non debet sumoniri quia recordatu[m] coram rege quod Catalla prædicta fuere patris sui et not Hug[on]is de Burgo. Sic [forsan pro sed][770] H. de Burgo seisierat Catalla ista post mortem Roberti de Veteriponte tanquam custos Comitatus Westmorland per regem, et ea ante captionem suam reddiderat

[VI.590]

Joh[ann]i de Veteri-Ponte tanquam catalla Patris sui.[771]

Res[ponsione]s de Everwit Rot R[otul]^{o} 20 Regis Hen[rici] III^{i}
1. Robertus de Veteriponte debet m.^{li} ix$^{c.}$ iiij^{xx} xvij^{li} xi^{s} vj^{d} et v dextr[rarios][772] de precio pro v tonellis vini (sicut continetur in Rotulo principali.) De Quibus Idonea de Veterip[on]te filia et haeres Joh[anni]s de Builli debet lxiiij^{li} xix^{s} de debit[is] Aaron[i] [forsan Arearagys],[773] pro predicto Joh[ann]e de Buyilly, sicut continetur in Rotulo xiij$^{c[es]i[m]o}$ Regis Joh[anni]s; et xx mar[cas] pro eodem Jo[]h[ann]e ne transfretet; et xx marcas pro eodem J[o]h[ann]e pro habenda Terra patris sui; et cl^{s}[?]

[769] Machell underlined and copied various unusual symbols and letter-forms that he found in this document. His list of abbreviations, taken from Dugdale and Pettit, can be found on MS.V.97-102.
[770] The Latin word was perhaps originally 'se'.
[771] 'Thus, in the Returns of Yorkshire: The same John rendered an account of six score and eight pounds two and a half pence for the cattle of Hugo de Burgo, and of twenty-two pounds for his father's title of squire, as is included in the Roll which William Rufus delivered to Thomas. Thus he should not be summoned because it was recorded in the presence of the king that the aforesaid cattle were his father's and did not belong to Hugo de Burgo. Thus [perhaps for himself] Hugo de Burgo had become possessed of those cattle after the death of Robert de Veteripont as Guardian of the County of Westmorland for the king, and had restored them to John de Veteripont as being his father's cattle.'
[772] 'Dexter': Middle English 'destrer'; late Latin 'dextrārius'; in full, 'equus dextrārius'. dextra = right hand: so-called from being led by the squire with his right hand. See J. Saunders *Cabinet Pictures of English Life*: Chaucer (London, 1845), 76. See also, 'The war horses were led by the squires, who always keeping them in their right hand, they were called dextriers.' *OED*.
[773] Machell possibly misread the phrase 'de claro', meaning 'net', as 'Aaron', and then tried to make sense of the name.

pro eodem Joh[ann]e de vij scut[agijs][774] Reg[is] Joh[ann]is sicut continetur in Rot[ulo] iiij Regis Henrici nunc, inter debita predicti Roberti. S[um]m[a] quatuor xx & xvj^{li} xij^{s} iiij^{d}, de qua sum[m]a predicta Idonea respo[n]d[et] infra. Et deb[et] Robertus iij^{li} et ix^{li} xix^{s} et v dext[rarios] pro v dolijs vini. De quibus Joh[ann]es de Veteriponte r[espondet] infra.[775]
Idonea de Veteriponte fil]i]a et heres Joh[ann]is de Builly quatuor xx et vj^{li} xij^{s} iiij^{d} de quatuor deb[itis] sicut supra continetur.
Joh[ann]es de Veteriponte fli[ius] et heres Roberti de Veteriponte deb[et] m.^{li} ix.^{li} xix^{s} et v dextr[arios] pro v tonellis vini sicut supra continetur. R[espondet] infra.
Idem Joh[ann]es deb[et] xv^{li} ix^{s} et ij^{d} de padnagio de pluribus annis, qui requir[untur] et cl mrc[?] in R[e]s[ponsione] precedenti. Sic r[espondet] infra.[776]
Idem Joh[annes] […][777] {respondet forsan} de cl[?] etiam lxiiij^{li} xviij^{s} x^{d} de duobus Itineribus Insti[tutis] in Westmorland sicut continetur in Rot[ulo] principali {T[a]ll[ag]ij]} pro Henrico de [T[i]rello] sicut continetur in Rotulo principali; et de xxviij m^{a}rc[is] iij^{s} de pluribus p[re]stit[is] sicut continetur ibidem; et de xv^{li} ix^{s} ij^{d} de Padnagio de pluribus annis sicut supra continetur; et de m^{li} ix^{li} xix^{s} et v dextr[arios] pro v dolijs vini sicut continetur ibidem.[778]
In Thelonium – Thelonio talles – {i.e. R. Comp. reddit comput[um]}et xlj^{li} et j m[a]rc in viij taill[ijs] et debet m^{li} et viij^{s} et lxij^{li} et x^{s} et v dextr[arios] pro v dolijs vini ; et xx^{s} qui requiruntur in Rot[ulo] Principali sup[ra].[779]
{Thomam filiu[m] Joh[ann]is de (verbum deesse videtur, forsan Veteriponte. vide cat.) prestit[um] sicut contin[etur] ibidem.} p[er] ann[um] q$^{[uatuor]}$xx m^{a}rc[as] p[er] bre[vem] Regis.[780]
2. ut infra:
Rot^{o} xiij^{cio} R[e]g[is] Joh[ann]is Ev[er]wicshir.
Robertus de Veteriponte deb[et] vij m^{a}zc. de vj^{o} scut[agijs] de feod[o] Hugonis de Gernegan [nomen idem alibi occurrit.][781]
Robertus de Veteriponte. Simo clericus suus pro eo r[eddit] comp[utum] etc.[782]

---

[774] 'Scutage': tax paid by the holder for a knight's fee, usually in lieu of feudal military service.
[775] 'Returns of Yorkshire. Roll 20 of King Henry III: 1. Robert of Veteripont owes £1,980, and £17 11s 6d and 5 warhorses at the value of 5 casks of wine (as is included in the principal Roll). Of which Idonea de Veteripont, daughter and heir of John de Builly owes £64 19s of the debits of Aaron [perhaps Arearagys] on behalf of the aforesaid John de Buyilly, as is included in Roll 13 of King John; and 20 marks on behalf of the same John so he shall not alienate; and 20 marks on behalf of the same John to keep his father's land; and 150s on behalf of the same John concerning 7 shield moneys of King John, as is contained in the 5th roll of King John. Which are, indeed, now included in the 4th roll of King Henry, among the debits of the aforesaid Robert. The sum is 4 score and £16 12s 4d, about which sum the aforesaid Idonea answers below. And Robert owes £1,000 and £9 19s and 5 warhorses at the value of 5 casks of wine. Concerning which John de Veteripont answers below.'
[776] 'Idonea de Veteripont daughter and heir of John de Builly: 4 score and £16 12s 4d of the four debits, as included above. John de Veteripont son and heir of Robert de Veteripont owes £1,009 19s, and 5 warhorses at the value of 5 casks of wine, as is included above. Thus, he answers below: The same John owes £15 9s 2d concerning the pannage of several years which are required in the previous return. Thus, he answers below.'
[777] The text here is unclear.
[778] 'The same John [...]{answers, perhaps} concerning 150 also £64 18s 10d concerning two journeys undertaken in Westmorland, as is included in the Principal Roll, for Henry [of Tirell] {of tax} as is included in the principal Roll; and concerning 28 marks 3s relating to several payments, as is included in the same place; and concerning £15 9s 2d concerning the pannage of several years, as is included above; and concerning £1,009 19s and 5 warhorses for 5 casks of wine, as is included in the same place.'
[779] 'To The[lonius] {taxes to Thelonius} {i.e. he is answerable for an account} also £41 and 1 mark in 8 tax payments and he owes £1,008 and £62 10s, and 5 warhorses at the value of 5 casks of wine; and 20s which are required in the Principal Roll above.'
[780] 'Thomas son of John (a word is missing, perhaps Veteripont; see the catalogue.) Payment as included in the same place. 4 score marks yearly by the king's writ.'
[781] '2. As below. In the 13th Roll of the Returns of John of Yorkshire. Robert de Veteripont owes 7 marks in respect of 6 shield-moneys in fee of Hugo de Gernegan (the same name occurs elsewhere).'
[782] 'Robert de Veteripont … Simo the clerk answers the account for him etc.'

[VI.590A]

Pro-Vicecomites

[1.] Simo Clericus suus anno è Rotulo 20 Regis Hen. III. Rested Everwickshir.[783]

[VI.591]

Of Westmorland: Pro-vicomites

Anno Regis Henry 3[i].
1. Rob[ertus] de Veteriponte T.M.
12. Joh[ann]es de Veteriponte circa 12 vel 13m T.M.
26. Robert[us] de Veteriponte infra aetatem Gardin[o] reg[e] sub custodia prioris Carliolensis T.M.[784]
49. Hoc anno objit Robert[us] de Veteriponte et omnes possesiones suae una cum Baliva de Westmorland fisco Regi[?] redierunt. Ei successit Rogerus de Clifford.[785]
54. Rogerus de Clifford Junior qui hoc an[no] matrimoniam contraxerit cum Isabella filia & cohær[ede] Roberti de Vet[eriponte].[786]

Anno Regis Edvardi 1[i].
1-11. John Kirkeby.
12-13. Isabella de Clifford vidua.[787]
14. Richardus de Medborne.
15-16. Robertus de Morevil.
17. Robertus de Parick.
18-19. Gilb[ertus] de Brimulneshend.
20. (obijt Isab[ella] n[ulla] fal[lonia]) Thomas Hellebeck.[788]
21-23. Idem.
24-26. Rad[ulph]us de Manby.
27-28. Robertus de Clifford; P[one] Idonea Leyburne.[789]
29-33. Rob[ertus] De Clifford.

Anno Regis Ed. 1[i].
1-5. John Kirkeby.
6. Idem. Ds Mich. de Harclay.
7. Idem. Carte Crac[kenthorpe] 25. Gilbertus de Kirketon.[790]
8-11. Idem.
12-13. Idem (Isabella de Clifford vidua).
14. Ricardus de Medborne.

---

[783] 'Everwickshir': The earldom of Northumberland was not divided into counties until the time of Edward the Confessor, when it was divided into six or seven shires with a chief town at the head of each, the whole of which Domes-day Book calls Everwickshire. I.e. Yorkshire, Richmondshire, Lancashire and Durham (styled Copland), Westmorland, Northumberland and Cumberland. The city of York under the Romans was called Eboracum; under the Saxons, Everwick; and under the Danes, Jorvik. See Francis Drake, *Eboracum or the History and Antiquities of York* (London, 1736), 85. Drake took much of this information from Hoveden.
[784] 'Robert de Veteripont in his minority a ward of the king in the care of the prior of Carlisle T.M.'
[785] 'In this year Robert de Veteripont died and all his possessions along with the Bailliwick of Westmorland reverted to the King's treasury. Roger de Clifford succeeded him.'
[786] 'Under Sheriffs of King Henry 3rd. 1. Robert de Veteripont T.M. 12. John de Veteripont, about the 12th or 13th year T.M. 26. Robert de Veteripont, under age, ward of the King, in the custody of the Prior of Carlisle T.M. 49. In this year Robert de Veteripont died and all his possessions along with the Bailiwick of Westmorland, reverted to the King as tax. He was succeeded by Roger de Clifford. 54. Roger de Clifford Junior, who in this year contracted a marriage with Isabella, daughter and co-heir of Robert de Veteripont.'
[787] 'Isabella de Clifford, widow.'
[788] '(Isabella died with no forfeiture) Thomas Hellebeck.'
[789] 'Robert de Clifford; alongside Idonea Leyburne.'
[790] 'The same. Charters of Crackenthorpe 25. Gilbert of Kirketon.'

15-16. Robertus de Morevil.
17. Robertus de Paunwick.
18. Gilbertus de Brimulsneshend.
19. Idem. Obijt circa 20 Rob[erto] De Clifford filio Rogeri infra aetatem existente.[791]
20-23. Thomas Hellebeck [sub eo].[792]
24-26. Rad[ulph]us de Manby.
27-28. Robertus de Clifford; pone de Leighburne {forsan pro Idonea de}.[793]
29-34. Robertus de Clifford.
{Gilb. de Crak. Will[ielm]o fra[tre] *in castra Ellene et Agnetis fil[iarum] Galfrid[i] de Crakathorp Walt[ero] filio Walt[eri] de Meburn}.[794]

[VI.592]

Regis Ed 2[i].
1-7. Robertus de Clifford.
8-9. Idem (Rogerus de Clif[ford] fil[ius] Rob[erti]).
10-18. Henricus de Warthecop (Warc\o/p) Henry de Warthecop. e cart[a] Barforth Mauchell) Rogerus de Clifford obijt innuptus a[nno] 10 Ed. 3i ade[o] ut ei Robertus frater et haeres successit in vicec[omitatu].[795]
{Rob[ertus] trucidatus apud Stiriveling in Scotia 24 Junij 1314.}[796]

Anno Regis Ed 3[i].
1. Henricus de Threlkeld.
2. Tho[mas] de Clifford.
3. Robertus de Clifford.
4-15. Robertus de Clifford (frater Rogeri fil[ij] Rob[ert]i).[797]
16. Idem Tho[mas] de Musgrave 1342 in cart[a] Machell Valeri Sc. Raiour.[798]
17. Idem T. de Mus[grave] (Machell cart[a]).
18-19. Idem (RC. obijt hoc an[no]: ex Gen. Clifford).[799]
20. Idem Will[ielmus] de Langwathby. Cista Mac. Sc. Ad[am] de Apelby.
21-24. Rad[ulph]us de Nevill (forsan pro tunc infra aetat[atem] nupt[iarum] Sc. aetat[atem] 13) Will[ilelmi] de Langwathy cista.[800]
25-29. Thomas de Bello-Campo. Comes Warwick. forsa[n] pro Roger[o] de Clifford frat[re] et h[erede] Roberti fil[ij] Roberti tunc temporis in bello contra Franciam vel Scotiam.[801]
30-51. Rogerus de Clifford.

[VI.593]

Anno Regis Richard 2[i].
1-10. Rogerus de Clifford.
11-12. Rogerus de Clifford et Walt[erus] Strickland Chr. N.B. per ipsum Rogerum præsentatus.[802]

---

[791] 'The same. He died about 20, Robert de Clifford the son of Roger being under age.'
[792] 'Thomas Hellebeck (under him).'
[793] 'Robert de Clifford; alongside de Leighburne {perhaps on behalf of Idonea de}.'
[794] '{Gilbert of Crakenthorp, William his brother, in the castle of Ellen and Agnes, daughters of Galfrid of Crakenthorp. Walter, son of Walter de Meburn.}'
[795] 'Roger de Clifford died unmarried in the first year of Edward 3rd, with the result that Robert his brother and heir succeeded in the shrievalty.'
[796] '{Robert [was] slain at Stirling in Scotland 24 June 1314.}'
[797] 'Robert de Clifford (brother of Robert son of Robert).'
[798] 'The same. Thomas de Musgrave 1342, in a document of Machell Valerius Sc. Raiour.'
[799] 'The same. (RC died this year: from Gen. Clifford.)'
[800] 'Radulph de Nevill. Perhaps on behalf of […] then below the age of marriage, Sc. age 13. From the chest of William de Langwathby.'
[801] 'Thomas de Bello-Campo. Earl of Warwick. Perhaps on behalf of Roger de Clifford, brother and heir of Robert son of Robert, at that time engaged in war against France or Scotland.'
[802] 'N.B. presented by Roger himself.'

13. Idem obij[t] Rogerus et successit fil[ius].[803]
14. Thomas de Clifford.
15.Walterus Strickland chr.
16. Elizabetha d[o]m[in]a de Clifford nup[er] uxor Thomae domini de Clifford.[804]
17-22. Eadem (Il[lorum] fil[ius] ejus erat infra aetatem).[805]

[A[n]no] Regis Hen[rici] 4ti
1-12. Elizabetha domina Clifford prædicta.

Anno Hen[rici] 5ti
1-2. Willielmus de Lancaster (pro Joh[ann]e de Clifford iam plenae aetatis).[806]
3. Christopher Moresby.
3-8. Willielmus de Lancaster.
9. Idem (ultimo H.5i trucidatus).[807]

Anno Regis Hen[rici] 6ti
1. Joh[ann]es de Lancaster.
2. Willielmus de Lancaster.
3-5. Idem (pro Elixabetha nuper uxor[e] Johannis de Clifford, postea uxore Rad[ulphi] de Nevil, Com[itis] Westm'land).[808]
6-15. Tho[mas] Par: Chr; Subvic[ecomes].[809]
16-23. Thomas nunc d[o]m[inu]s de Clifford (plenae aetatis).[810]
24-32. Thomas nunc Dominus de Clifford.
33-38. Obijt in bello idem Thomas Dominus Clifford anno 1455. Successit ei Joh[hann]es de Clifford fil[ius] et haeres, plenae aetat[is] a[nn]o sequenti qui obijt in bello contra Ed. 4um pro Reg[e] Hen[rico] 60 a[nn]o 1461.[811]

Anno Regis Ed[wardi] 4ti
1-14. Johannes Par ae[tatis] (Cliffordiorum familia ab officio expulsa tanquam laesae majestatis reâ.)[812]
15-22. Will[iel]mus Par miles.

Anno Regis Richard 3ti
1. Will[iel]mus Par miles.

Anno Regis Hen[rici] 7mi
1-2. Henricus Clifford (fil et haeres Johes Dominus Clifford […] restitutus).[813]

---

[803] 'The same Roger died and his son succeeded.'
[804] 'Lady Elizabeth de Clifford late wife of Lord Thomas de Clifford.'
[805] 'The same (their/her son was under age).'
[806] 'William de Lancaster (for John de Clifford, now of age).'
[807] 'The same. (Slain in the last year of Henry 5th).'
[808] 'The same (on behalf of Elizabeth late wife of John de Clifford, subsequently wife of Radulph de Nevil, Earl of Westmorland.)'
[809] 'Thomas Par […]; under-sheriff.'
[810] 'Thomas now Lord de Clifford (of age).'
[811] 'The same Thomas Lord Clifford died in war in the year 1455. He was succeeded by John de Clifford his son and heir, of age, in the following year. He died in war against Edward 4th fighting for King Henry 6th in the year 1461.'
[812] 'John Par, of age (the family of the Cliffords had been exiled as being guilty of lese-majesty).' Lèse majesté: a crime committed against a monarch or other ruler; insult of or affront to a monarch or other ruler, especially when constituting a crime; treason. *OED*.
[813] 'Henry Clifford (son and heir of John, Lord Clifford, [...] restored.)'

3. Henricus Dominus Clifford.[814]
6. Henricus Clifford miles.
8-13. Rogerus Bellingham miles subvic[ecomes].[815]
14-15. John Fleminge ar[miger] subvic[ecomes].
16-20. Henricus Dominus Clifford.

[VI.594]

21-24. Hen. Dominus Clifford.

Anno Regis Hen 8^{vt}
1-6. Henricus Dominus Clifford.
7. Henricus Clifford.[816]
10. Henricus Dominus Clifford.
11-13. Hen. Clifford.
14. Hen. Clifford miles Dominus Clifford.
15. Obijt Henry Dominus Clifford 20 Aprilis.
16. cui successit Hen. Dominus Clifford fil & h.
17-20. Henry Comes Cumbrae.
21. Idem. John Lowder Esq. Provic.
22-38. Idem. Obijt 22 April 1542 ei successit Henry Dominus Clifford f & h comes Cumb. Id nominus 29.

Anno Regis Ed. 6^{ti}.
1-6. Henricus Comes Cumb.

Anno Philip & Maria R.
1-6. Henricus Comes Cumberland.

Anno Elizabeth Regina
1-2. Henricus Comes Cumb.
3-9. Henricus Comes Cumb.
11. Lancelot Pickering ar.[817]
12. Henry Crakenthorpe ar. (ab hoc ad temp. anno 21 Elizabeth sub custodioet gard fuit comitis de Bedford Anno 1570 Jan^{ri} et obijt Hen. 2^{0} cuj successit Georgius Co. Cumb. Infra aetatis).
13. Allunus Bellingham ar.
14. Humf. Musgrave ar.
15. Edward Lancaster ar.
16. John Midleton ar.
17-20. Simon Musgrave miles.
21-43. Georgius Comes Cumb. (ia' plaenae aetatis vicecom. Westmorland).

Anno Jacobi Regis 1^{i}.[818.]
3. (Obijt Georg comes Cumbriae vicecom. Westmorland 13 Octob. 1605.

[VI.595]

Temp Car. 1. Temp. Car. 2.
Anna Comitiss[a] Pembrokiæ, Dorsett et Montgom[erie] cujus vicom[es] Tho[mas] Gabetis.[819]

[814] Nos 4, 5 and 7 are blank.
[815] 'Roger Bellingham, Knight, under-sheriff.'
[816] Nos 8 and 9 are blank.
[817] No.10 is blank.
[818] Nos 1-2, 5-15 are blank.
[819] 'Anne, Countess of Pembroke, Dorset and Montgomery, whose sheriff [was] Thomas Gabetis.'

Joha[nn]es Tufton Arm[iger], Filius 2d honorabilis viri [blank] Tufton, comitis Thanet, cujus vicom[es] Tho[mas] Gabetis.[820]
Obijt Johannes Tufton comes Thanet apud Skipton in Craven com[itatu] Ebor[aci] 27^0 Aprilis 1680 circa horam 3am pomer[i]d[iani] cenotaphio commiss[o] per Thoma[m] Machell et alios 12^0 Maij tempore multo mane circa hora[m] 3am et Honorifice sepultus apud Ranham in Com[itatu] Kantis inter majores suos die martis 18^0 Maij An[n]o supradicto cuj successit.[821]
Richard Tufton (frater Joh[ann]is) comes Thanet ~~cujus vice~~ cujus vice Tho[mas] Gabetis[822]
cui successit. Thomas Tufton comes Thanet, frater prædicti Johan[n]is et Rich.[823]

Cujus vice
Thomas Gabetis.
Jacobus Bird.
Joh[annes Hall.

[II.449]

[Mace Towns][824]

There are 2 mace towns in West[morland] – Apleby & Kendall – whereof Apleby is the County Towne, where the Assises and Sessions have bin kept and holden, even since the reigne of King John. The officers whereby it is governed or that belong thereto, are a Major & Recorder, a court of aldermen, the Towne Clerke & Common Council Men, 2 Chamberlins & Sergeant att Mace, 2 \ Baliffes or / Halberteners, a Coroner, & other officers. Apalby was allwayes for the King in the late wars, and so was the most part of the country, especially the gentry, amongst whome, I may speake it to their & the countryes glory, there was ~~not~~ \ scarce / one round-head, now (as I take it); ~~in Cumberland neither except that [blank] Sir William Lawson~~[825]

[II.450][826]

[Notes on] Cityes, townes, corporate markett & fair {se p.37}

{3.} Peculiars or priviledged places. I know not \ well / what is meant by them. \ Russendall a peculiar & priviledge; Sowerby a priviledge. Sowerby priviledged, being peculiar. / ~~But Apleby is a place of great priviledge, as appears from its charter.~~ Cartes were \ all forfeit by the interposing of Olivers, but renewed by King Ch[arles] 2. /

{4} Cityes ~~wh~~ they have none at present in Westm'land, Carlile being the see for all this county ~~& great part of Cumberland, tho som belong to the Bishop of Chester~~ \ except Kendal Barony. / D[urham]? {Pag. 37} But Apleby is the primarie opidum (ad the commend of Apleby)[827] and is called in Stephanus (e *Liber Notitiarum*)[828] Urbs Westmariæ Antiq. Tis a towne corporate, govern'd by a

[820] 'John Tufton Esquire, 2nd son of the honourable [...] Tufton Earl of Thanet, whose sheriff [was] Thomas Gabetis.'
[821] 'John Tufton, Earl of Thanet, died at Skipton in Craven in the county of York on the 27th of April 1680 about the 3rd hour of the afternoon, the funeral monument being unveiled by Thomas Machell and others on the 12th of May early in the morning at the third hour. He was buried with honour at Ranham in the County of Kent among his ancestors on Tuesday the 18th of May in the year given above and succeeded by…'
[822] 'Richard Tufton (brother of John Earl of Thanet) whose sheriff [was] Thomas Gabetis.'
[823] '… who was succeeded by Thomas Tufton, Earl of Thanet, brother of the aforesaid John and Richard.'
[824] Machell first named this section, 'Government of Apleby'. A mace is a sceptre or staff of office, resembling an ornamental version of the weapon of war, which is borne before (or was formerly carried by) certain officials. The sergeant at mace was an inferior executive officer carrying the mace as a badge of office. *OED*.
[825] Two words in the margin here have perished. For more on the 'perfidious' Roundhead, Lawson, see I.76, above.
[826] Also numbered p.13.
[827] 'To the credit of Apleby.'
[828] The *Notitia Dignitatum* ('The List of Offices') or *Liber Notitiarum* is a document of the late Roman Empire, detailing the administrative organisation of the Eastern and Western Empires. It describes several thousand offices from the imperial court to provincial governments, diplomatic missions and army units.

Maior &c. Vid. p. \ 2, / and send[s] out to the House of Parliament, 2 Burgesses \ sub finem. /[829] Here in this parish* about a mile and ½ from Apleby, is a pleasant seat belonging to the Diocess of Carlile cal'd Buly Castle, on the other side of Eden opposite to Crakentho[r]pe Hall
{*No. Buly Castle was formerly contriverted but now is reputed to be in Morland.}

\ Apulby / Its situation. How many churches? \ 2 / Castle, schoole, hospital &c. Apleby was allwayes for the King \ in the late wars / & so was the most part of this country, especially the gentry, there being not one who tooke armes aganst, but many for him, & sufferd, \ even / without hopes of reward [though] neither ever \ had or sought for any. /[830]

{A Corporation, p. 8}
Kendall also is an other market. I wish I could say \ not / so famous for loyalty, but ~~I hope hereafter they will wipe of that filth &c.; se its description pes~~. It was so unhappy! & which now I hope is engaged there unto, since the towne was honoured with a Prince of the Blood \ query of Mr King / for better so than to have it staned with their Prince's blood.[831]
{non possu[m] enim non fateri hoc nostram Kendal recentioris esse memoriae, licet non procul ab hinc, magna invenitur romanorum numismatum subinde effossata copia Sc. ad loca ...}[832]

1. A Bottome are 5 market townes: Apleby – Saturday; Kirkby – Munday; Brough – Thorsday; Orton – Wednesday; ~~market on Wednesdays fair~~ Shap.
Fare Townes
Att Apleby, 2 \ Whitmunday & 10 Aug. / beside a f[air] every fortnight from Whits[unday] till Mic[haelmas].
Att Kirkby St[ephen], 2: both towne & beasts. Whitsuntide & St Luke.
Att Brough ~~Thorsday~~ Fairs 19 & 21 of September.

2. In the Barony ~~besides Kendall~~ are 4 market townes.
\ Kendall, / Ambleside, Burton & Kirkby Loansdall.

Fare townes, 5.
Att Kendall, 2 }
Ambleside, 2 } in the yeare.
Burton, 2 }
Kirkby Loansdall, 2 }
{q.} Millthrop, 1. } May 1ˢᵗ perpet. It is no mark[et]

Orton: query? ~~Market on Wed.~~ A f[air] Friday before Whitsuntide.
Shap [blank]

[II.451][833]

(a.) Note ad (a) that here wants a catalogue of the names of the petty constablewicks \ of each Hundred / in the relation of the Bottome of W.
(b.) Which are compleat in the other relation of the Barony of Kendal, but that is not a thing very considerable.

[829] A scored-through addition here reads, MS: '(~~whereof the one is the Honorable Mr [?] & the other~~ {Dub?})'; the name is difficult to decipher.
[830] One word has been damaged here.
[831] See Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.11.
[832] '{For I cannot but admit this, that our Kendal is of fairly recent memory, although not far from here is found an abundance of Roman coins that have been dug out from there, that is, at places ...}' Some of the Latin text is obscured by the binding.
[833] Also numbered p.4.

c. The names of the parishes are awanting, not so in the Barony of Kendall (sed porru[s] forsan ref)[834] yet tis to be noted that in the Barony in generall are sett downe 7 parishes where 5 onely are nominated, with one chaple to make 6. Query de Burton ~~chap.~~ if it be a parish \ as / there are 18 chaples ~~& churches of ease in the Barony~~ beside.
{ad \ fig. / 2.} Note that the Bottom of West[morland] is both more fertile & populous as may be gatherd from there [they] have more Hundreds, more parishes in those Hundreds, & fewer ~~churches~~ ~~&~~ chaples of ease, notwithstanding any thing that former wr[i]ters from falce suggestions have presented to the contrary. More Castles, gentlemen's seats, market townes, more Constablewicks – yet the other [has] richer rood[835] trade.
{c.} Vid. in map of W. He sayes we have 33 parish churches, & here T.J. he sayes we have 33 in the Bottom of W. Query: in Speed & Camden.[836]

[II.452][837]

Houses of the Nobility & Gentry [and other places] ad general

{Vid. imprimiss 5. Do this by col[umn]}
Wharton Hall, the seat of Lord Wharton; Howgill Castle, of Sir Richard Sandford; Lowther, of Sir John Lowther; Sokbrige, of Sir John Lowther; & houses of nobility and gentry.
Apleby, Brough, Browham & Pendragon Castles, the seates formerly of the Viponts, after of the Cliffords by marr[riage] & now, given by K.J., the habitation the Right Hon. Ann, Countiss of Pen[broke], Dowager of Dorset & Montgomery. Noble by nature as well as birth, the north star in whome that family is now ~~about~~ most gloriously ~~to expire~~ \ about to set. /[838] {Se Appendix p.3, par 6. Li[bro] tit[ulo] Haius.}[839]
Hartley Castle, formerly of that famous war[rior] Sir Andrew Har[cla] \ comm end melior ad Kendal Castle, seat of the Pars / who &c., now the seat of Sir Philip Musgrave, that worthy \ gentleman / who onely had the \ good / fortune to be rewarded or taken notice of.
Howgill Castle, the seat of the ~~Sandfords~~ Sir Richard Sandford, Baronet.
Buly Castle, the seat proper of the Bishop of Carlile, but let to Sir Christopher Musgrave, 2[d] son to Sir Phillip.
Crakenthorpe &c. whsoe Armes &c. are \ Sable 3 greyhound & de omnibus. /
Bolton, Kirkbythore, & vid. in my description of the gentry of Westm'land.
So on to the Barrony \ so S. back N. /

Castles
They have Apleby, Browham, Brough, Pen-dragon, Hartley, Howgill, Buly \ & Kendal in the Barony [of Kendal] / to which may be [added] those ancient ruines which still bear the names of castle, tho som of 'em are more properly ~~to be~~ castra: viz. Maiden-Castle on the top of Stanemore (vid. map; note sub finem)[840] & Maybrough Castle, near that noble fortification called the Round Table. {Vid. pag. prae prim.}[841]
Ad Kendall Castle \ & Whellop Castle of the Catuli, whence Machell / are ancient & noble ruine, the seat of Lord Par; the ancestors of Lord Parr of Rayland in Wales were borne here: vid. plu p.8 et ineo libello de Westm'land. ~~Get the names the parishes~~.

---

[834] '… but perhaps research [this] for definite.'
[835] 'Rood': a variant of 'road' in this context. *OED*.
[836] Westmorland was then divided between the dioceses of Carlisle and Chester; Camden calculated that there were 93 churches in Carlisle diocese, 256 in Chester diocese, and 26 parishes in the whole of Westmorland: see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 162, 763.
[837] Also numbered p.5.
[838] Lady Anne Clifford died in 1676.
[839] Book with the title 'Haius'. Perhaps Machell was referring to Dr Hay: See Part 2, Ch.2, Kendal Town, II.41, Dr Haius (Hay).
[840] 'See the map, note, towards the end.'
[841] 'See the page before the first.'

{Places of Note}
Monastryes, one fryeredge att Apleby of the Order of White Fryers.[842] Vid libelo tract de Apleby; Shapp Monastery, vid. Speed; St Nicholas dub, vid. not de Apleby School; vid etiam in the Barony of Kendal but I thinke there are none.
{Se p. 66. Query} Hospitalls at Apleby, one. Its foundation; when endowed.[843] Kendal query?[844]
{Query?} Schooles: Apleby, & vid. Mr Wases, his note.[845] Some free, some private. Colleges, none.[846]

[II.454][847]

[Mills]
{Water mills, not numbered}
A country of river of water so plentifull that you can not place your selfe, I believe, a mile from a corne mill. There are great store of water mills in the bottome of Westmorland, almost at every village, by reason that this part of the country is so \ very / well watered. You can scarce to [be] placed \ at / a mile distance from one in any part of the country*? Such like in the Barrony there is no want ~~or scarcity~~ of them, for I doe not remember that I ever se a winde-mill in the county ~~of Westm'land~~, notwithstanding the advantage there hills would ~~give~~ \ afford / them ~~for such con~~ above other places. Se the particular number, p.8. Se upon Kent: 11 milnes†.

{Beacons}
There are 5 or 6 beacons in Westm'land; to witt, Apleby beacon, \ Owseley beacon neare unto Crakenthorp, / Orton beacon, Hayfel beacon, Farrleton Knot or Knok beacon, & Kendall beacon; and an other, I thinke, on Whinfell. They give or take warning from Penereth beacon in Cumberland or from Engleburrow Top in Yorkeshire‡.

{Bridges named in Kendal} ⸸
Viz. over Kent: 9. viz Barly-bridge, Boulston bridge, Burneshed bridge, Strammongate Brigg in Kendal, Nether bridge, Mill-brig, Haws-brig, Force-brig & Leaven bridge.
Over Leun: ~~7 over &~~ Streight-brig, Higland br, Marwith b., Kirkby brigg & Lancaster brigg, but that bridge is ~~in~~ \out of / the County of Lancaster \ Westm'land. /

{Mountaines not numbered}
The mountains are so numerous there, where they are commonly calld by the name of fells, that it would be tediouse to give accompt of them, the barony of Kendall for the most part consisting of hills & dales, and the Bottom of Westm'land being so invironed with a rainge of montaines that, when you are att Apleby or any part of the midle of that vaile, you would thinke your selfe incirckled by them as with a round bulwerke.

{Crosfell}
But the most remarkeable are Crosfell \ in Cumberland / which commonly gives us the first signe of the winters approach by putting on its snowy cap.

---

[842] Carmelites.
[843] See Wiseman, 'Medieval Hospitals of Cumbria', 88-89.
[844] Kendal: The hospital of St Leonard, founded by the Lancaster family, barons of Kendal, was primarily a leper hospital; it occupied a site in Scalthwaiterigg, north-east of the town, now known as Spital farm, Wiseman, 'Medieval Hospitals of Cumbria', 90-91.
[845] Christopher Wase's Survey, see II.10, above.
[846] II.453 contains brief notes as follows, MS: '3. Whinfell, Kendall, Farleton Knot near Haverigg. 4. Apleby, Orton Hay f. Farleton & Kendal an upon [obscured by the binding]. Fertill in the general description. Brig. the waters. Morton Pike, Knock Pike, Dufton Pike, Roman Fell, Cross Fell a Emoe forsan. Hugh Seat Hill for 3 rivers.'
[847] Also numbered p.7.

[Machell's Notes: II.454]
*If it be necessary to have the number & names, enquire of T.J. how many stand upon each severall river, with the bridges also.
†It were a better method to treat 1[t] of rivers, then of bridges & mills, then of mountains & beacons. Nay. 1[t] mountaines, then rivers, bridges & milnes.
‡Ep. 5 ad fin.[848]
⸸There are many bridges also in the ~~Bottom of W~~; to witt on Eden [blank], on [blank], on [blank] besides other lesser waters & brookes: as Colby &c. Vid. answer to the last query into the north.
Hascat Hill. 3 river.
Stanemore: Roman works.
Se my Booke de Altari[bus][849] at furrowes.[850]

[II.455][851]
{8} Warrens &c. Hornby to Birbeck; Woodside, Whinfel \ & Browham / to the Countiss; Lowther to Sir John Lowther; \ Cliburn, Crakenthorpe / Dalan Banke to Mr Dalston.

{8} Commons. \ Every towne & village has one. / There is one which belongs to Mouls Meaburne (alias Mauds Meaburne) which is remarkeble for a rare prospect; for att an uppinstone upon the midle thereof, ~~whence~~ you may see 5 castles: \ to wit, Apleby &c., / beside many gentlemens houses, and this ~~is~~ in the way twixt Kendall and Apleby. There is an other such like place at Husheat.

{8}[852] [Woods.] \ Woods lately destroyed. /
Dufton Wood flourished very lately, out which were cut above 6,000 oakes. And in this wood a strange sort of foole,[853] which they called an Osper\eay / (which was a great devourer of fish) used to build (se its nat.) Musgrave, Hartley, Morland ~~Parke~~ \ Wood / also, which belongs to the Dean and Chapter of Carlile, was quite cut downe since the King came in, & so was part of Lownthwaite which belongs to Howgill.
But there is yet standing these very remarkeble ones {all Oake} to witt Lownthwate, which belongs to Sir Richard Sandford; Bankwood, to Mr Robert Hilton; & other 2 greater than the rest: to wit Whinfeld & Flakebrigg, both which belong to the Countiss of Penbrooke. {And beside these there are many others.} And in Flakebrig tis observeable that great store of cranes build in the north end thereof towards Brampton, and no place I know of in England beside.

[II.456][854]
Staine More, where Maden Castle the Romane fort &c. Se my booke & the map of the Bot. of W. ad finem. & Knock Pike. 3 round hills ascending \ piked / in manner of a pyramid unde pikes appellatur.[855]

{Martindale M[ountain]s Fells}
The vast fells twix Shap & Kendall, which are [blank] miles over, barren ~~of corne & & wood~~, utterly unarable & destitute all over, both of trees & corne ~~whence is that Westm'land for the most part~~ \ inagistament peete[856] / is accompted barren; ~~for I thinke \ allmost / the greater halfe is taken up in mountains~~. But other partes, especially in the Bottom of Westmorland on the fertill bankes of the noble River Eden, are so plentifully stored with corne of all sorts, woods, meadows & pasturage, that it \ ever / hath ~~ever had~~ enough to supply its owne ~~wants & the~~ necessityes \ & / often times \ to supply the wants / of the neighbouring \ people / ~~countyes~~ in Yorkeshire & bishopric with corne & hay.-But notwithstanding the fells being un-arable and unfit for husbandry, yet they bring their

[848] 'Epistle 5, towards the end.'
[849] 'Book concerning altars.'
[850] The transcribed text here is accurate, but the meaning is unclear.
[851] This note-page also contains the margin comment, MS: '{Pike: why}'.
[852] All three '{8}' have been transcribed as seen.
[853] I.e. fowl.
[854] Also numbered p.9.
[855] 'From which it is called pike.'
[856] 'Without agistament and peats.'

commodity along with them. They are a great defence against winde & cold, which is a reason why the \ lower / places is so fertill, notwithstanding the clime, which other men having \ only / respect to, & not knowing the advantage of its situation, have forthwith concluded that it must of necessity be a barren place.[857]

[II.471]

Of Quarries & mines in W[estmorland]

{Several for free stone}
Apleby – bad – r[ed][858]
Dufton – good – r[ed]
Howgill – good – r[ed]
Bolton More – w[hite]
Heights (Hoff Linn) – w[hite]

Limestone
Bramton More
Nuby & Morland
And in all places, both of East & Westward, & such like in the Barony
Stanemore

Slates
Dufton & Stainemoore

Millstone & Grindstone
~~Hornby~~ near Udfoot Boote at Hornby[859]
Whinfield
Meldon
Meaburne

Coal
Stanemore
Regill, Slegill
Helton & som at ~~Howgill~~ Milburn

Lead
Helbeck, Dufton
Murton, Harkley
~~forsan Howgill~~ sed de hoc q?[860]
Milburn
{Applethwate, a Paper Mill ~~near~~ \ in / a little above Troutbeck brege}

[II.472]

{Lead mines}[861]
~~We~~ \ they / have great store of lead all up & downe our fells. They digg it in great plenty att Dufton, Murton & Helbeck in the Bottom of Westm'land.

{Iron Mines}
There are iron mines also in the said place at Buly Castle near Apleby.[862]

---

[857] This paragraph has been lightly scored through.
[858] An interlineated phrase here is partly illegible; the place-name has a query after it and 'Ind' for 'indifferent'.
[859] Udford boat ferry?
[860] 'But I query this'.
[861] MS.II.465 also references lead mines: '{Lead mines; also Murton & Helton Lordship.} For lead mines. Helbeck, Harcley & \ Milburn Fell / Dufton lordship present them with great plenty.'
[862] This is mentioned briefly on MS.II.471.

{Lime v. p.9}
Lime at Newby, Morland, Brampton & severall other places.

{Freestone}[863]
Freestone att Apleby \ bad, / Dufton, & Read {?}[864]
Bolton More; white & where Colby Tower stone came from,
Hoflun Heightes, White.
Slates or tiles at Kings Meaburne, Dufton, Warcop Fell, Brough.
Plaster of Paris:[865] K[irkby Thore] Murton.
Allabaster? \ or plaster / att [Blank]
Milston & grindston at Meaburne, Udfoote & Whinfell &c.
Silver, gold & copper. \ At Silveray – none but Lead. /

[II.456]

{Stone of the fells: coale, limestone, slate, ore}[866]
There is allso in these fells, which are no smale commodityes: great store of cole & freestone, grindstone, milston and lyme. (Particular upon Stainemore where / ~~the best coals diged, which we have in England~~ they \ have excellent coal / the best in the country, which / burne like pitch yet free from any unpleasant \ savour / ~~sulfurious smell~~; and they leve behind them a sort of sinder after they are burn'd, which will make a \ 2^{d} / fire as bright as charcoal \ and which is used for drying of malt. / Att Regill \ and Slegill / also they have coles, but not ~~comparable to these~~ so good, which ~~this~~ plenty of coal makes ~~your~~ wooden fewell ~~hereabouts as cheep that you may have there~~ \ of less account, being seldom sold but for gryves[867] & smelt mills / in copses for cutting them up, for they serve them in noe steed save only for hedging.
For limestone. Brampton \ Meaburne, Lowther & all or most of the west side /of Eden, ~~Mor~~ Morland & Newby, which stand upon rockes of that sort, & severall other places. See pag.24, infra.

[II.455]

{Cristall}
Also a sort of X'all, which if might be of ~~some~~ use if there were ~~stone cutters or~~ lapidaryes to dress \ & cut / them: Sc. Artem[is]. Sir Phi[lip][868] had one put in a ring.[869]

[II.456]

{Forrests; Parkes}

~~Valley dayles~~ Chases, forests, woods, groves, parkes, commons, warrens. Heaths: \ none but Cleburne, tho Whinfell & Woodside be very lingey[870] / se the collums.
The inhabitants of Westm'land have bin (and are) great lovers of hunting, & therefore this place hath very much abounded with forests & parkes, tho the greatest part be destroy'd att this day

[863] MS.II.456 also references free stone: 'Free stone: Apleby, Dufton, Bolton More, Howgill and severall other places.'
[864] Written as seen. Perhaps Machell meant to write, '& Dufton read'. Read = red.
[865] Gypsum.
[866] MS.II.472 also references coal: 'Coales att Stanemore Pitts & Regill \ & Slegill / and same to be found on Milburn fell.'
[867] 'Greaves': brushwood, branches, twigs. *OED*.
[868] Musgrave.
[869] The amethyst was named after Amethystos, a female follower of Artemis, who was turned into crystal to save her from attack by tigers loosed by Dionysus. His wine-stained tears of remorse turned the crystal purple. See E.L. Abel, *Intoxication in Mythology: A Worldwide Dictionary of Gods, Rites, Intoxicants and Places* (Jefferson, NC, 2006), 16-17.
[870] 'Ling' is the northern English name for heather, and also for heathland; therefore, 'lingey' is 'heathery'. *OED*. See II.460 below.

[II.457]

by incurtions of the Scotts – & wars, so that most of em now retaine onely the name of parkes or forests.

[IV.28]

{Great plenty of wood in the N[orth]}
I thinke the County of Westmorland and Cumberland has bin all clad with wood from the top of Stanemore to Carlile as it may thus be traced; the Forest of Stanemore, the forest of Ketland or Sandford (Owsley), the forest of Oglewood or Whinfell out of which [blank] were given away every yere to [Blank] which extend near to Brough Castle. Then the forest of [Inglewood] in Cumberland, all over the Penrith fell to beyond Hutton which is Hutton in the Forest, I think that I have heard say that it appeard from old evidence that the country people petitioned King J. that it might be cutt downe in several places to the end that [persons] might goe to markets with more securitye, many wolves being shelterd in those woods. Besides these, the forest of Mallerstang, Morland W[ood], Gilshuelin, Low Paneworth, Hornby, Acorn Banke, Lownt[hwaite], Howgill, Dufton, Marton, Flakebridge, Burthwate, Burton &c.

[IV.29]

But then it was as cheap as plentifull, for all that of Sandford was sold for [Blank] markes and an horse; And I heard my [blank] telling that his great grandfather bought in Lownthwate since Henry the 8th time, 100 large Oackes for 5li that then belonged to the Salkelds; & with this his grandmother B[r]ougham Hadd was, so that her husband made this jeast of her 'that \ she / carryed on her head an 100 Oake trees all att once.'[871]

[III.321]

Carta Antiqua [Forests and Wastes]

{Cart[a] Gilb[er]ti fil[ij] Rog[eri] fil[ij] Reinfr[edi]}
Richardus dei gratia Rex Anglie, Dux Norman[norum]. xc. Archiepiscopis, Episcopis, Abbibus, Comitibus, Baronibus, Justi[ciarij]s, Senescall[i]s, viris Com[itatus] Forestar[um], et omnib[u]s balijs, et fidelibus: Salutem. voluimus et concedimus, et p[re]senti Carta confirmavimus:
Quod Gilb[e]r[t]us fil[ius] Rogeri, fil[ij] Reinf[redi], et heredes sui post eum h[ab]eant et teneant ita integre libere et quiete totam forestam suam de Westmerland, et de Kendall, et de Furneissus [?], sicut Will[ielmu]s de Lancaster filius Gilb[ert]i ea[m] umqu[am] melius, et integrius, liberius et quietius tenuit, et h[ab]uit et per ea[sdem] divisas et quod h[ab]eant Forestam illam, quam dedi[mu]s eidem Gilb[ert]o et heredibus suis in Kendall cum 6 librat[a] terr[e], ita bene, integre, lib[er]e, et quiete, sicut Nigell de Albin[..] eam umqua[m] melius, integrius, liberius, et quietius h[ab]uit et tenuit : volu[imu]s et co[n]cedimus quod, id quod wast[um] fuit in boscis de Westmerland, et de Kendale, t[em]p[or]e p[re]fati W[illielm]i de Lancaster fili[j] Gilb[ert]i, totum id adhuc wastum sit, excepta purp[re]stura facta p[er] licencia[m], et Consens[um] d[omi]noru[m] feodi de Kendall et de Westmerland : Quare vol[uimu]s, et firmiter p[re]cipimus quod nullus iniustus forisfacere p[re]sumat ipsi Gilb[ert]o vel heredibus suis de suprano[m]i[na]t[i]s sup[er] forifactura[m] mea[m] 10 librarum.
Testibus W[illiel]mo Comit[e] de Arundell, W[illiel]mo Marescall, W[illiel]mo de H[?] Constabulario, Rogero de Pratell Dap[ifer], Stephano de Turnham. Datum p[er] manu[m] Joh[ann]is de Alencu[m] Archiadiacon[i] vicecancellarij Lexon[i]. xvo die Aprilis regni mei Anno primo apud Lvenes.[872]

---

[871] This extract can be found in a transcript of ancient Vipont deeds; see MS.IV.29-31.

[872] 'Ancient Charter {Charter of Gilbert son of Roger son of Reinfred.} Richard by the grace of God King of England and Commander of the Normans, etc., sends greetings to the Archbishops, the Bishops, Abbots, Earls, Barons, Judges, Stewards, men of the Forest Court, and all the bailiffs and loyal men. We have willed and granted and by this present Charter have confirmed: That Gilbert son of Roger son of Reinfred and his heirs after him should have and hold his whole forest of Westmorland and of Kendall and of Furness as completely, freely and peaceably as William of Lancaster son of Gilbert ever held and possessed it, better, more completely and peaceably and along the same boundaries; and that they should have that Forest which I gave to the same Gilbert and his heirs in Kendall along with 6 pounds worth of land, completely, freely and peaceably as well as Nigell of Albin ever had and held it, better, more completely, freely and peaceably. We have willed and granted

[II.458][873]

{Forrests}
Mallerstang Forest. Bar. W.[874]
Iu/EuBank For. On Stainmore. Bar. W.
Kitland Forrest. Belonging to Apleby. Bar. W.
Meldon For. Belonging to Dufton
Ogglebird Forrest: antiq, or Whinfell. Bar. W.
Martindale Forrest. Bar. W. R[eplenished]
Naddel Forrest. Bar. W.
Raflen Forrest. Bar. W.

[Parks]

All these in the Barony of Westm'land.

Whinfield parke, Bott. West.[875]	Replenished
Barton pk., Bott. West.	
Lowther pk, Bott. West.	Replenished
Sattera pk.	
Thornthwaite pk., Bott. W.	
Ravenstondale pk, Bott. W.	Replenished
Wharton pk, Bott. W.	Replenished
Harcley pk, Bott. W.	Replenished
~~Hutton park~~	
Crosby Gill pk. Bott. W.	
Apleby Castle park. Bott. W.	Demolished
Crakenthorp Hall pk. Bott. W.	Demolished.
Buly Castle Pk.	Demolished.
Martin pk. Bott. W.	
Hack Thorp, Bar[ony] W.	

[Barony of Kendal]

Kentmere pk	
Standley pk	? an for Standley
Troutbeck pk	
Conswick pk	?
Witherslack pk.	Replenished
Syzer pk	?
Brigstere pk	
Lakerig pk	An pro Loughrig
Natland pk	
Leavins pk.	? Replenished
Cowhunhead pk	belongs to Bu[r]neshead
Skelsmergh pk	?
Docker pk	
Lamrig pk	?

---

that the waste which was in the woods of Westmerland and of Kendall, in the time of the aforesaid William of Lancaster son of Gilbert, all this still be waste, excepting the encroachment made by licence and consent of the lords of the fee of Kendall and of Westmerland: wherefore we have willed and strictly ordered that none unjustly presume to exact forfeiture from Gilbert himself or his heirs concerning the above mentioned, on pain of a penalty to me of 10 pounds. Witnesses: William Earl of Arundel; William the Marshal; William of H[...], Constable; Roger of Pratell, Steward; Stephen of Turnham. Given by the hand of John of Alencum, Archdeacon; vice-chancellor of Lexon[?] XVth day of April, in the first year of my reign, at Levens.'

[873] Also numbered p.11.

[874] Barony of Westmorland.

[875] Bottom of Westmorland (Barony of Westmorland).

Killington Hall pk R??
Midleton Hall pk ?
Holme pk

[Addenda]
Grayrigg Forrest
Forresthall Forrest
Hutton parke
Sattera parke

Putt them both together
Parkes – 31. Forrests –10.

It is well wooded, both in the Barrony & Bottom of Westm'land, both with timber trees & underwood. Theire upper wood is gennerally okes or ashes or birches. For okes: Whinfell, Flake brigg and Lownthwaite are famous; \ but / Crakenthorp is so strong & tenatious, that a[ll] pale in c[ompariso]n.[876] Allso Dufton & Morland Wood, lately cut downe. For ashes, Crakenthorpe parke has been famous, & so for the generall are all the bankes of Eden. For birches, the forrest of Ogglebird, ut puto[877] in Whinfel.[878]

[II.460][879]
In Whinfell Parke att Julian Bower, is a very pleasant and stately grove of trees; so att Howgill Lordship.[880]

Warrens[881]
There are many warrens also, the best whereof are ~~Birbeck of~~ (2) Hornby & (1) Whinfield Woodside belonging to the Cliffords \ ~~de Apleby & Browham Cast[les]~~ / Ea[r]les of Cumberland ~~& High Sherifs of Westm'land~~, now to the Hon. the Countiss of Penbrooke, ~~in whome the family is extinct~~. ~~And att Lowther~~. \ No. /

[Horse and Foot Racing on Heaths, Moors and Commons]

{Act of Parliament} {Hence called Westmoreland: a natural reason}
Now this co/un/tryt ~~being~~ \ of old being the seat of war & / perpetually infested with the Scotts, even till of late yeares, could not husband there ground, & \ so well / improve it, so much as remoter places \ which lye further from Scotland; / so that theire fields were \ therefore fewer, & non so large as those in the south, / but ~~little and there~~ moores ~~great~~ in ~~their~~ commons \ were more large & more frequent / ~~great whence the more southerly people in Bishopric & some parts of Yorke called the place Westmoreland & / as they doe to this day~~, whence the people of Yorkshire & Bishoprick, which lyes east from hence & made better improvement of their part of the country, calld this \ Westmoreland. / And the ~~people of this country &~~ inhabitants ~~of Cumber~~, west country men, as they doe to this day.

{! Cliburn Ling}
Heaths also, there are not a few, commonly called in that country Lings, but the place which beares the name more especially is Cliburne Ling, a fine plane moore where theres a horse course, formerly

[876] Severely truncated words, squeezed onto the end of a line.
[877] 'As I think', see the Latin Glossary.
[878] II.459 contains the note: MS: 'se Surveyors dialog. about mannors': John Norden, *The Surveyor's Dialogue*.
[879] Also numbered p.13.
[880] Most of this word has perished.
[881] Machell occasionally noted rabbit warrens (see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, I.161); for rabbit husbandry in Westmorland, see Jeremy R. Robinson and Kevin Grice, 'Cunswick Hall: An archaeological and historical survey of a Lakeland manor', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 149-68, at 153-56, particularly Figure 6, an illustration of a medieval warren from Queen Mary's Psalter, BL, Royal MS, 2B, VII.

so famous that when they would commend a good horse, indeed they usually say, he's as good an horse as ever run over Cleberne Ling.[882]
{Memorandum: the[y] kill fat sheep of Crakenthorp & Kirkby Thore moors}

[II.462][883]

{Asby Maske; Sowerby – Games}
Now these mores or commons for the generallyty are not ruff & stony, but ~~very~~ plane & champion ~~ground~~, in so much that there is scarce one that has not an horse course ~~att some Holy Day or other yearly~~ upon it the people of Sowerby: as Sandford-More, Bram[p]ton-More, Speedy-More formerly ~~but now improvd to a better use~~ Kirkby Thore-Moore\ Sowerby More, / where on St James Daye[884] are Races for great horse & little; men & boyes & women; with pitching, throwing of the ham,[885] shooting with the bow, bowling, leaping, dancing and such like active exercises are constantly perform'd. \ Her[e] the proverb, now you lowse quoth Lance Machell, had its beginning. / [886]

{Foote Race at Shap Thorne}
So Strikland-Head, Shap Thorne, where a famous race was, twixt one \ Clousdall – a famous runner or footman / supposed to be the best, ~~runner in the country~~, & ~~a neighbouring gentleman who in his mirth, offerd to run with~~ \ my own father, LM of C Esq., who, one time, boasting of his agility was undertaken, ~~this country fell~~ by a country gentleman, a relation of mine, ~~who~~, upon some advantage given before, with the biggest & heavyest man in the county \ one Robert Pattison of Woodside: [on] his back, / ~~the proposal being accepted on~~ & he won the race; and afterwards bett him on even termes.

{Foote race at Apulby buts}
The same gentleman \ in a frolike / being at bowles att Apleby with a minister of the towne \ one Mr Rowland, a nauble gentle man / & som other gentlemen, bett him there with an ~~horse~~ \ colt / on his back. And this instance may serve to show they are hefty & active men in these northern parts.[887]

Vales & Dales

There are many dales I have formerly intimated: Bretherdale, Hegdale \ Hicabdale: a gill not inhabited but with eagles, / Hardendale, Langdale, Mardale, Martindale, Mallerstangdale? Odendaile, Patterdale,[888] \ Matterdale, Ravenstonedale, \ Russendale, / Swindale, Smardale, Stainmoredale, ~~in the~~ about the ~~Bottom~~ Barony of Westmorland. All the Barony \ of Kendall / consists of dales, and is generally called, as ~~I said~~ before, by the name of Kendall.
{Dales. Bretherdale; Hicabdale is a gill where non in-habit.}

[II.470]

[Notes on] places where battle have been fought

See my Itinerary &c. (This query must be sent to T. Jackson & have recourse to Camden & Speed) \ Brough. / Bring in there that of Orton; that of Martin Parke as supposed, Jock Green & Battleburrow. Clifton rutra et Low\ther/ Brig, Sandford More, a[nd] probably Bowton Owse-fould, description of this! The neighbouring people report an Horation battle twix 3 M.[889] & 3 other bro[thers] (th[is] had almost hapned at Brampton tue them & thre Craken.[890] But the Crak. declined it.

---

[882] MS: '… they usually say ~~doe it proverbially thus~~, \ say / he's \ as good an / ~~the best~~ horse \ as / ~~that~~ ever run over Cleberne Ling.'
[883] Also numbered p.15.
[884] 25 July.
[885] Hammer?
[886] For this proverb's meaning, see II.353, below.
[887] Machell scored through most of this paragraph's final sentence. The minister, 'Mr Rowland', does not appear in Carlisle Diocese in CCED.
[888] 2cm of illegible text is scored through here.
[889] 'Machells'.
[890] 'Crackenthorpes'.

[II.472][891]

Lodges. Arable Ground

{(a.)} I am so much a stranger to the forests in Westm'land that I know but one Lodge, i.e. in Whinfell parke calld Julian Bower.[892]

[The Sea]

The Sea doth not touch on any part Westm'land save on the South West where a little creeke comes upp at Milthorpe; & at Meathope over aganst the said place, they make salt. {Query: Haver in W. Salt made at Meathop.}

[Wells]

{Clifton Wells}
~~We~~ They have severall springs but few here will make use of 'em by way of medicine. Clifton Wells were once much celebrated, but are now layd aside; for the people commonly when they are not well will rather chuse to drink ~~fast than~~ \ a good posset than a cup of / cold water. There was a report \ said to be removed / that these wells were first discovered in a misers ground, who grudched[893] that the country should have access to them without paying him money \ for treading his ground; / after which they dryed up there & broke out ~~agane att another place~~. \ of a rock in another place where they now are. /
{New Well, Lady Well and Keld-Skell […][894] Chapel-Well}
~~The well at~~ Shap Well is a great rarity. The Lady Well at Apalby near which [was] a medicine well di[scovered] 1693 cures stigh wormes.[895]
Caud Kell att Apleby & the Chaple Well att Crakenthorpe, which sprinkes out on the top of an hill, ~~have bin much frequented of old~~ \ have known – [been] resorted to, with an opinion of once medicinal qualities. / But the wells of Clifton were in great repute non about 20 years since, concerneing them it was then reported.

[Notes on soil, crops and husbandry]

{Soyle in the Bottom of W.}
All the Bottom of Westm'land is ground fitt for all sort of husbandry, having plenty of pasture: arable & meadow ground. And the fells afford very good pasturage for them in sommer, of which this county breads ~~great~~ store \ of all sortes / both large & little.

[II.473][896]

All the Bottome of W. hath great store of arable and meadow ground & groweth great store of corn of all sorts. (And great improvements have bin made by industriouse husbandry but especially with lime, wherewith they usually manure their grounds.) T.J.

{Fells & Commons}
Upon the mountains & commons are kept great store of sheep; and likewise, great plenty of cattle in the country. {But the little sheep are here the greatest & most dilicate mutton.}

{Soyle of the Barony [of Kendal]}
And in the Barony, about Langdale, Loug[h]rigg, Ambleside, Troutbeck, Ridall & there about it is mountaineouse, in which places they keep very many sheepe. {P.10 Notes} About Kendall they have good store of arable ground, & in Loansdall Ward there is more, for the most part there is pasture &

[891] Also numbered p.25, a continuation of II.470.
[892] II.471 originally contained: MS: '(a.) Besides Julian Boors, there is Lammersed Hall lodge near my Lord Wharton's Parke (vid. if it have such a parke) and Wharton Hall'.
[893] 'grudged'.
[894] Four words are illegible here.
[895] Sty worm: an eye infection caused by an eye parasite. *OED*.
[896] MS.II.473-480, contains descriptions of the Roman road from Stanemore to Brougham, alluding to Roman finds, Whelp Castle, the Hartshorn tree and the leap by Michael Scott: all given fuller treatment elsewhere.

arable, and there they bread very good cattle. In this country they breed excellent horses, both for sadle & race.

[Notes on]Roman Wayes and Antiquities

{The Roman Way}
There is one which strike through the \ Bottom / of Westmerland. ~~I mean~~ the Bottom from Roy † eastwards to Browham Castle westwards. {P.5 Appendix. Maden Castle}
It is reported to goe twix Carlile & Yorke. It passes through the ruines of a \ [square][897] fort or / building (~~or fortification~~) called Maiden Castle, which is on the ~~top~~ \ edge / of ~~that huge mountaine~~ \ of Stanemore Fell and about / 2 miles distant from ~~Roy~~ Rere Cross ~~And~~ \ most of which lyes / on the North E. side of the cross, is a large Romane worke or fortification which is about 500 yards square with 3 or 4 enterances on each side. \ There are many old Romane workes.[898] /

{Brough Castle fall: a Tradition.}
This Romane Way carryes you through Burgh (or \ olim / Verteræ, a Romane station) where there is an old castle, som part thereof, the inhabitants ~~will~~ tell you, fell on that Friday which Our Saviour was crucifyed; and \ there is / ancient tower called Cæsars not long since repaird […][899] but lately demolished. […][900] Soe it goes along down the Bottom of Westm'land by Sandford More, where tis [II.474][901]
very fair & conspic[uous].[902] & here is a Thorne & a Mire or Bo[g] on the east side \ of which moss. / So it leads by Apleby or Aballaby, a Roman station ~~allso~~ of the Aurelian Moaures, & so along on the same side Crakenthorpe (in which Lordship on Speedy More near Kirkbythore lane) till you com \ ponte sublicio[903] / at Kirkbythore, a plaice of great antiquity. And if it be indeed Gallatus, the principle station of the Brigantes, there has bin a very large castle*. Twas calld Whelp Castle, the seat of, they \ say, / Catuli, who gave \ William Ma. Cat. Sic dictum of Malo;[904] / gave Crak[enthorpe] to his brother Alexander \ hostibus illatum[905] / as appear's from that deed; & it continues in the family to this day, there names being changed into Machell. Here have been digg'd up severall coynes, whereof I have som†.

(On Speedy More is a place called Maden-hold; an other little [blank] called Whores Bound.) 216. Here was [a] Chayce.

[Maiden Bower, Dunstable]
Juxta Du[n]stable in Agro Bedfordiensi. Sic Camden.
In campis ad Austre[m] munitionem quandam castrorum quasi tumultuaria[m] Rotunda forma sed perexigua[m], Maiden Bowre vocita[n]t, ad ipsum chilternicoru[m] colliu[m] descensum vidim[u]s / Aniles de virgine bellatrice ejus incolae fabellas quas deca[n]tant vicinis ipsis relinquo / Romanis omn[ibus] Temporibus floruisse via consularis Romanoru[m], quae suo aggere hic conspicua, docet.[906]

---

[897] Machell has drawn a square shape here.
[898] MS. margin heading: '{Campe at Rere Cross: its dimention}'.
[899] There is an illegible word here.
[900] Initials placed here are partly obscured by the binding.
[901] Also numbered p.27.
[902] Insecure transcription of a blotted word.
[903] The bridge's name comes from the Volscian word 'sublica', meaning 'wood planks'. Ponte sublicio is also an ancient bridge in Rome.
[904] 'Thus, it is said of Malus.'
[905] 'Inflicted on the enemy.'
[906] 'Near Dunstable in the Bedfordshire countryside. Thus Camden: In the country to the south, we have seen a certain camp fortification, seemingly hastily constructed, in the form of a rotunda but very small - they name it Maiden Bowre - at the very descent of the Chiltern hills. I leave to the locals themselves the old wives' tales of its inhabitant which they repeat, concerning a warrior maiden. The consular road, which is evident here from its embankment, shows that it was in existence throughout the Roman period.' Camden's Latin translates

[Machell's Notes: II.474]
*Se my little b[ook] on Alters dig'd up; se my misselanyes.
†Se my cabinet.

[II.476]

{Madon Hold; Madon Way}*
Here also is a Way, which goes from Burwinhall, where Whelp Castle formerly stood, called the Maiden Way {vid p. præprim}.[907] And on Speedy More ~~near Kirkbythore~~ which is about ¼ of a mile hence \ in Crakenthorp / is a ~~round~~ \ square / fortification, with egress & regress, called Maiden Hold. This Maden Way goes from the said Whelp Castle or Burwin Hall directly northwards through \ Milburn Field How gill / ~~Sir Richard Sandford Lordship near Stourgill Castle formerly; now~~ the seat ~~of the Sandfords~~ and takes the \ Cross / Fell through the grounds att Kirkland, streight over the moss and more into Northumberland \ so to Cærvorran by the Picts Wall. /

{Roman Way}
\ But much less than this. / It is called by some the Maiden-Way-over-the-fell, & by som the Roman Way; but ~~not~~ to returne againe and not follow this trail too much out of my way.

{Roman Fell} Sed script[um][908] Rutman Fell
{c} They say thers an aultar {I can finde none} upon this Crosfell \ where is an other camp that has had a towne in it, / but I never had an opportunity to goe & see it.[909]

{Woodside Leap 8 yards}
{d} The other {Roman Way} or casway carryes you a long from Kirkbythore through Temple Sowerby and so by Winfell Parke, where on your right ha[n]d, att a place cald Woodside, there is a leap of one Michaell Scott \ no / which is 9 \ 8 / yards.
(d) The leap is 24 foote, T.J.; which is 8 yards, T.M.[910]

[Machell's Notes: II.476]
*{Som will have this paird with Flint: see Mr Speed: *Pocketbook of the Maps of England*.}[911]

[II.475]

[Cross Fell]
(c) It is thought there hath bin an aultar on Crossfell, but there not any stones which have characters upon them, T.J.[912]*
Cross Fell a †!!! I rather suppose that it is a cross and that the fell had thence its name, T.M.
Its plane for a great space, and furrow'd now, as tho it had bin plow'd in former dayes; yet it is one of the highest hills & consequently of the coldest places they have in this county. But even in barren

differently: 'That this Dunstable was the verie same Station which the Emperour Antonine in his Itinerarie calleth Magioninium, Magiovinium, and Magintum, no man needs to make doubt or to seeke it else where. For besides that it is situat upon the Romanes high way, there are peeces of the Roman Emperors monies found otherwhiles in the fields adjoining round about by the swine-heards, which as yet they terme Madning money, and within a little of the verie descent of the Chiltern hils there is a militarie modell raised up round with a rampier and ditch, such as Strabo writeth the Britans townes were, conteining nine acres of ground, which the people use to call Madning-boure and Madin-boure, in which verie name with a little change Magintum most plainly sheweth it selfe.' See Camden, *Britannia* (1607, Dana Sutton online edn), Bedfordshire, 6.
[907] 'See the page before the first.'
[908] 'But written as'.
[909] The reference, 'c', is to II.475 (c), below; see comments made by Thomas Jackson (T.J.) and Machell (T.M.).
[910] This sentence was placed originally on MS.II.475.
[911] In 1619 George Humble published a small (10cm x 17cm) cartographic pocket book of Speed's maps entitled*, England Wales and Ireland: their severall counties. Abridged from a farr larger volume: by John Speed and are to be sold by George Humble in pops head alley*. This became known as the 'Miniature Speed': see Katarzyna Lecky, *Pocket Maps and Public Poetry in the English Renaissance* (Oxford, 2019), 66.
[912] Note from Thomas Jackson, Machell's informant.

places, by the industry of husbandmen, great plenty is procured, which brings to my minde that of the psalmes (Psalme 70.16.) An handful of corne shal be sowne upon the top of the mountaine & the fruite thereof shall shake like the trees of Lebanon.[913]

Machell's Notes: II.475]

*No none. T.M.; nor alters neither.

[II.474]

[Notes on] Monuments of Antiquity

Kirkbythore & its Antiquities

Will. Ma[l]icatulus sic dictus forse quia malu[m] hostibus Intulu[i]t. gave Crak[enthorpe] to his bro Alexa[n]d[e]r (in aplogie for) […][914] Se Append. p.5. Se the other montill descriptio[n] ibid si qua[n]ta Romanorum numismatum copia quot imagines ex auro et Argento conflatae, quot vasa, quot colonae marmoriae, quot epullilia, quot antiqui operis miracula hic eruta fuerunt ex val[or]is relatione percensere velim vereor sane ne omnem fidem superaret […][915] […] 1221 hereabouts, the greatest of which is this and that other in Speedy More in the Lordship of Crackenthorpe, which [is] the seat of that ancient ~~and loyall~~ family of the Machells.

[II.477]

[Brougham and its Antiquities]

{The [Countess] Pillar}

Every year 5^{li} on the 2^{d} of Aprill att 9 a clock, about which hore the Countiss parted with her mother there, and never see her after. Draw the piller & write inscriptions if there be any.

[II.478]

The [Roman] way carryes to Browham Castle demane, which was lately walled about by the Countiss. At the riseing of the hill where this wall meets you, is a pillar sett up which serves passengers by the dyalls there upon to know the time of the day; but it is a memoriall of last parting of the Countiss of Penbrooke and her dear mother Margaret ~~Clifford~~ \ Russell, / Countesse to George Clifford, Earl of Cumb'land. And a table of stone where money is yearly payd to the pooer: query, queiu[n]t?[916] {and 5^{li} payd yearly, but I want the Inscription.}[917]

{Browham Castle Demesne: when walled about [?]}[918]

A little beyond this you have a monument {2 figures in stone} let in the wall which I have sent you, and shall lieve you to the interpr[etation], and an other in the lane which goes to the castle, se lib. Par. V.

{The 2 Towers}

Here are 2 Towers ~~Cæsar &~~ \ the Tower of League & ~~Cæsaris~~ / Paga. The rain has worn it in very deep by its drops. The most beside these was built by Roger Clifford. Tis a princely & noble house.

---

[913] This is from Psalm 72:16, *AVB*, 'There shall be an handful of corn in the earth upon the top of the mountains; The fruit thereof shall shake like Lebanon: And they of the city shall flourish like grass of the earth.'

[914] The following few words are obscured by the binding.

[915] 'If I wished to enumerate how great an abundance of Roman coins how many statues cast from gold and silver, jars, marble columns, little epics, how many marvels of ancient workmanship have been dug out here with an account of their value, I fear, indeed, that the telling would pass all belief […]'. Blots on this paragraph make it almost illegible.

[916] Machell seems to have written 'quieunt' ('are they able'), but the meaning is unclear; if he had meant 'how much' he would have written, 'quantum'.

[917] See II.477 for more on the Countess Pillar.

[918] These pages are in Machell's hand with some information supplied by his informant, Thomas Jackson, whose words Machell might have copied, but, although not specified as such (but the style of this particular passage suggests it) it is probably a draft passage from a series of reports sent by Machell to Dr John Mill of Oxford University: see Part 3, Ch.3. Roman Antiquities.

[II.477]

{This Roger.}
The inscription over the door when you are in the Court concerneing Rodger is onely this ~~RODGER CLIFFORD DID THIS~~ \ 'This made Roger', in old Text, / for he added much to the castle, that part, I suppose, betwixt the enterance and Pagan Tower. Here the Roman Way crosses the water towards Carlile. Over the enterance of the Pagan Tower att the top of the castle are places for powering downe stones, such as we may suppose were in the tower of Tebez,[919] through which a certane woman cast a piece of a milstone and ~~slew Abim~~ & broke Abimelecks[920] braine peind,[921] so that in great gallantry, least he should be slaine by a woman, he caused his paige to run him through: Judges 9. 53 & 54.[922] Pagan forsan from a man call'd Paganus, a name not unusuall in the Conquer'rs time (se Index of *Warwickshire*),[923] since whose arrivall most of our castles are thought to have bin built. But see elsewhere I have an account that this castle was probably built since the Conquest, [Blank] de Browham having granted ½ of his demesne.[924]

[II.477]

[Knock Antiquities]
Patri \ suo / honoratissimo Lancelot Machel de Crakenthorp Armigero, tertio pretori opidi hujus Antiquissimi T.M. tertio pretori T.M. filius p[atri] D.D.[925]
I enq[uired] of T.J. whether there was not a gill about Knock where the[re] were some ruines of an old Hall, in order to the discovery of Jone Armestrong who is said to have lived in Knockgill Hall. And he returned me this answer, that there is a plattforme of an old Hallstead att Knock, & 4 tenements called Demaine Tenement and a gill \ ~~not far of~~ / at the towne end. But this does not well square with Jonyes condition; for hee had there neither lands nor leveings of his owne, yet 8 score men dyned in his Hall.[926]

[III.246A][927]

Knock
There is a place in Ireland \ of this name / where a plae is kept the 1^{t} day of June, Com. Longford; and the English n[ame] of it explaines the word, for it is Knock aliis Mons-town \ mestown / i.e. the hill or mountains.[928]

[II.479][929]

{Round Table}
And over the Bridge Att ~~Yeanworth~~ Towne End is a very large Bulworke which they call the Round Table, & not far from that on the right hand as you goe to Yeanworth is an other, where trees are growne up from amongst the stones, & this the Inhabitants call Mabrough Castle \ vid Camden. Opus Vandalorum absim[ile]…[930] 275. /

---

[919] Thebez.
[920] Abimelech.
[921] Peind: peak or apex; an arched or vaulted roof or canopy; a covered passage or entry. *OED*. Thus, 'the top of his head'.
[922] Judges 9.53-54, *AVB*, 'And a certain woman cast a piece of a millstone upon Abimelech's head, and all to brake his skull. Then he called hastily unto the young man his armourbearer, and said unto him, draw thy sword, and slay me, that men say not of me, a woman slew him. And his young man thrust him through, and he died.'
[923] 'Pain (alias Pagan)', See Dugdale, *Warwickshire*, Index of Men's Names, P.
[924] The fraction is blotted; it could be a third rather than a half.
[925] 'To his most honoured father, Lancelot Machel of Crakenthorp Esquire, third mayor of this most ancient town, his son T.M gives this gift.'
[926] MS: 'Yet 8 score men dyned in his Hall. This lordship belon'd of old …'
[927] A torn scrap of paper (6cm x 11cm) pasted onto the page at a later date. This edition places it here because of the association with Knock on II.477. MS.III.246B also contains text with marginalia, but the scrap is too small to read accurately
[928] Knock is an Irish word meaning 'hill': P.W. Joyce, *Local Irish Names Explained* (Dublin, 1870), 59.
[929] A stray line on II.479 is as follows, 'Here you may take in there such like allso but more fare; at Dufton and the like was in Orton parish.'
[930] 'Work quite different from that of the Vandals'. See Camden: 'the ruines of a Romane fort thereby called Maburg.' Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 776.

The Round Table by some Arthur's castle (sayes Leiland),[931] In vertice montis acclivis et assensu difficilis, vocati Camalot, in Comitatu Somerset, iuxta Evel opidum visuntur intermotui castri expressa vestigia, et egestae Terrae vallum triplex, quod suo ambitu xx jugera includit. Inde Arthuri palatiu[m] dicu[n]t Romanoru[m] autem opus fuisse numismata rom[anorum] docent .99. Mabrough. huic forsan non absimile est sepime[n]tu[m] Illud militare juxta Heilston in Cornwall. Cuius meminit Cambdenus: Illud emin[entia], e congestis sine cemento saxis magno ambitu constructa Garth [forsan yard vel gard] patria lingua vocat[a] Cuiusmodi et alia hinc ... currunt Danico Bello et credimus posita. Nec dissimile e munitionibus illis Brit[anorum], quas rudes et informes saxoru[m] compages vocat Tacitus. Vid. Camd. de Cornwall, p.73.[932] Se whether he build Verulamium in Hartfordshire.[933] Camd. p.222.[934]
{Som say that Winsor Castle was the most peculiar place where a Round Table was erected for the meetings of King Arthur's knights. Winchester, sometimes Carleon, and sometimes in the north. p. 96 […][935] out of Geoffrey of Monmoth.}

{Maybrough or Arthurs Castle} {a Druid Temple}[936]
I should think it an abbreviation of Maden brough the name (mabe) formerly of this vilage, and may have som relation to those other places mentiond before; to witt Maden-way – Maden-Castle & Maiden hold: But what this Maiden was God knows – Hence it carryes ore[937] Emot Br[i]d[ge] into Cumberland – & so to Carlile.

{No disgrace}[938]
Edenbrough Castle is allso calld Maden castle – in Latin "puellaru[m] castru[m]". Enquire [...] when & by whome that was built & why so calld. Their dominions some[time] extended thus far. No disgrace, fore whatever they be now they were then gens bellicosissima et eodem de sanguine. Se. p.35. Gentis fortissimae. Gens praeclarissima 42. sed cave ne sint alterius generis. Hiber pict vel Saxon.[939]

---

[931] Quoted by Camden, *Britannia* (London, 1587, Latin edn), 94.
[932] 'On the summit of a hill, steep and difficult of ascent, called Camalot, in the county of Somerset, near the town of Evel, are seen the marked traces of a marching camp, and a triple rampart of banked earth which encloses xx jugera in its circuit. Hence Arthur's palace, they say. But Roman coins tell it was a work of the Romans. Perhaps not dissimilar to this is that military enclosure near Heilston in Cornwall, which Cambdenus recalls. That eminence, constructed in a great circuit out of rocks piled up without mortar, is called Garth [perhaps yard or gard] in the native tongue. Other ... of this kind run from here, put up, as we believe, in the Danish War. This is not dissimilar to those fortifications of the Britons which Tacitus calls crude and shapeless structures of rocks. See Camd. on Cornwall, p.73.' Here Machell uses a Latin quotation from Camden concerning 'giants' work' nearby, i.e. stones of great antiquity. Other Latin extracts are from Leland and Camden, citing monuments comparable to the Round Table in Camelot (near Yeovil in Somerset), Cornwall and Verulamium in Hertfordshire See Camden, *Britannia* (1587), 91, 94. See also Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), Cornwall, 186.
[933] The text is difficult to decipher here; what can be made out is, MS: '(ut p [....] et the bo [...] of Brough [...] another name).'
[934] For 'Verulamium in Hartfordshire', see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 408E: 'From Hertford twelve miles westward, stood Verolamium, a City in times past very much renowned, and as greatly frequented: Tacitus calleth it Verulamium; Ptolomee, Urolanium and Verolamium, well knowne this is in these dayes, neere unto St Albans in Caistho Hundred, which the Cassii of whom Cæsar maketh mention, in all probability, held and inhabited'.
[935] There is an illegible word here, before the page-number.
[936] This margin comment is not in Machell's hand.
[937] 'Over'.
[938] The rest of this margin comment is obscured by the binding.
[939] 'No disgrace fore whatever they be now they were then a most warlike race and from the same blood. Se. p.35: Of a most valiant race. A most illustrious nation: 42. But be careful lest they be of another race. Irish Pictish or Saxon.'

{Pendragon [Castle] the Inscription}
But by following the road I have missed of som things worthy observation to which I returne. Pendragon Castle tho it stand in obscure betwixt 2 great mountaines must not be omitted. It is supposed to have bin built in or before the time of Uter Pendragon. And is for those timed a very elegant and well-

[II.481]

-contrived piece, being tower in castle and having a gallery ~~quite~~ \ all along / about the top of the castle. The window[s] are so contrived on the highest romes, ~~as that you may escape~~ \ as to prevent / the danger of arrows; and the walls are att least 4 thicke, whose forme & plat is here represented*

[Machell's Notes: II.481]

{Tumuli or Berryes what they are & import see Dugd[ale] *Warwick*, at hic infra.}
Apleby is reported to have bin 3^{cc} burnd downe. By the certaine, twas destroyd By [blank] king of Scotts, and here was a great plague: anno [blank] as appears from a stone in the school garden house, inscribed thus: Aballaba &c.
Apud Barklow in com[itatu] Essex. Non procul a Stourifonte, sunt 3 tumuli aggesti: cuiusmodi defunctis militibus, quorum reliquiae non faciles erant repertu, extruxit antiquitas: verum cum quartus ex his jam pridem defoderetur, tria ut accepimus e saxo sepulchara, et in illis confracta hominum ossa sunt inventa. 248.[940]
The forme & plat of P.D. Castle
*~~You must~~ see my oblong pocket booke. The forme & plat of P.D. Castle in Morton Parke also \ Whiteacre in K. lordship / &c. libello meo.[941]
In Morton Parke also, which is placed in K. Lordship &c. libello meo Lowther Brigg & so near Orton. Which brings mee on my way to the Barrony where there are not so many Ancients mon[uments]

[II.483] [942]

[Kendal Antiquities]
Kendall does not much boast of antiquities. Yett there are som. Yett here has bin a noble castle, the seat of &c. And hereabouts, to witt at \ Watercrooke / many Roman coyness have bine digged & some presented mee by Mr Harry Guy of Water Creake, ~~former master of Arts~~ in Queen's College.[943] Se Camden & Speed.[944]

[Storms and Accidents]

[Violent Wind] {Whinfell Trees: the 7 Bretheren}
{16} In Aprill 1624: but I cannot learne upon which day of the moneth, happened a great and violent winde, which blew downe an infinite number of trees in severall places here aboutes, and in Whinfell, tis more remarkable that all the rest which grew one by another, and were called the 7 brethren, the least of which was twixt 7 & 8 fathom in compasse; & an other hollowe tree, which grew hard by, was left standing, in which a woman with child lodged. {That then I had heard of more [than] once.}[945]

---

[940] 'At Barklow in the county of Essex. Not far from Stourfont there are 3 elevated mounds: of the kind which antiquity built for dead soldiers, whose remains were not easy to find: but just when the fourth of these was being dug out, we came on three graves in the rock, and in those were found the fragmented bones of men.'
[941] 'My little booklet': probably one of Machell's pocketbooks.
[942] Also numbered p.35. The page contains an unrelated note. MS: 'This calld Conjers Blast, a Scotch horse running of Lancelot Machell.' '{Whinfell Trees: the 7 Bretheren}'
[943] William Guy of Watercrook, thrice mayor of Kendal, died in 1683 aged 84: Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes: Heraldry, Epitaphs, and other Inscriptions, in the Thirty-two Ancient Parish Churches and Churchyards of that County*, Vol. II (Kendal, 1889), 27; see also *N&BI*, 78-9. William's son, Henry Guy, matriculated at Queen's College in 1664 aged 17; BA 1667; MA 1670; incorporated at Cambridge, 1671: *OAD*.
[944] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 760; this sentence is a continuation of a short paragraph on II.481, above.
[945] MS: '{That ~~had heard~~ then I had heard of more once}'; this sentence is partly obscured by the binding. MS I.341 contains another allusion to the Brethren: 'Memorandum – the Brethrener – ~~Rabt~~'.

{Dufton accident 1.}
August 17, 1665, on a very clear sunshine day, that m[orning] about 11 a clock in the fore noone, there happened a terrible thunder-clapp and a great showre of raine; so that it made all aboute Dufton, Martin, Brampton & Apleby overflow with water, especially att Dufton, in a little brooke att the towne head, which is so smale of itselfe that for the most part a man may stop it with his foote. Yett it happened by this shower that 2 people, a man and a woman, (viz. Rowland Clarke and Annas Clarke his mother) with an horse and cart (into which they loading som flax which had layd to steep there, were all driven downe the water, & drowned, being not able (so sudden was the surprise) to help themselves. The horse was carried downe halfe a mile, the woman a whole mile, & the young man near 2 miles, on such a ruff, chinky and chraggy channell with wood and rocks, that a man would thinke it neere utterly impossible for anything to be carryd that way.[946]

{Brampton}
Like wise att Brampton Field Yeat there was a great stone sunke att the same time upon dry ground, and never seen after. The stone was so large that 24 yoake of oxen could not have drawne it, and 16 men were imploy the next day in filling up the hole \ which it made / vid etiam fig. (12) supræ, de Clifton wells.[947] It tore up the earth allso after a wonderfull manner in ~~Esqs M.~~ \ my father's / pastur called the high grounds \ at Crakenthorp / & yet his servants at the same time made hay in Elikar, which is a mead not halfe a mile distant from Brampton Field Gate, and had not one drop.

[Snow Storm, 1673]
A strange Storme happened in this county in 1673, whereof I had this account from my kinde friend Thomas Jackson of Dufton, senior.[948]
Sir
I should in some measure have answered your desire before this time, but that I have wanted my health often this winter and allso by reason of the great \ snow / winde & drift we had for 9 or 10 weekes together, the like whereof \ here / hath not bin knowne nor heard by any man living; both which together would not give me leave to stir abroad. There hath bin divers people in severall parts of this country lost with the drift. A very great death of sheep all overe these countryes; corne risen to a great rate; wheat 16s per bush[el] (note their bush[el]). Big, 7s; & oats, 4[s]. And 'tis thought will be dearer. The storme began the 14 of Jan. & held unto the 21 or 22 of this instant March. All the dailes people were driven into the country with their goods […][949]

{Memorandum: to tell what hapned hereabouts; man stealing at Winchester? Boy dying in Oxon streets, severall in hedges. Corn & meat & butter [blank] This storm was the only thing that ever prevented the Countiss in her determination, and so may be concluded a great one, yet she went to Pendraggon from Apleby on the 20. [Noted on] March 25 1674.}[950]

[II.484][951]
Accidents, calamities or casualtyes: \ Mr Branthwaites death in ~~1 by 6 at~~ Pendragon Castle by he leaping of the battlements there in a mel[ancholy] moode /.

[Dufton Accident 2.]
There hapned a shower of raine in the Year of Our Lord ~~1665~~ \ see on the opposite page / which made such a sudden flood that it drownd a man & his wife at Dufton, before they could move out of that little brooke which runs by the towne. {!!!} It tore up the ground on severall places by the fierceness

[946] Extreme weather is no stranger to Westmorland, see Jane Gregg, *Ploughing in Latin: a History of Bampton* (Bampton, 2nd edn, 2012), 126.
[947] 'See also the above Figure (12) of Clifton wells.'
[948] One Thomas Jackson was schoolmaster at Newbiggin from 1680 (CCED); this might have been Thomas Jackson junior, although the name was common, locally.
[949] Four words have perished here at the page foot; the last legible word is possibly 'goods'.
[950] Lady Anne Clifford died in 1676; she would have been aged c.84 when 'prevented'.
[951] Also numbered p.35.

of the torrents, and particularly att Brampton Field Yeat as you goe from \ thence ine to / Kirkbythure ~~to~~ \ not far from / the church. It sanke a stone so deep \ how big / in the ground that [blank] men were kept working a whole day to fill it up with earth. And within ¼ of a mile in Elekar they were making hay at the very same instant & had no raine. These the[y] call commonly, planet showers. But this was the greatest that ever was heart of in that country – Yes, one with thunder when Ketlewell suffered an inundation.[952]

[Dialect]

{17.} They speak in this ~~county~~ \ Bottom of Westm'land without any tone / the Anglo Saxon in great purity, and tho they can doe otherwise, yet they thinke it pride and therefore will not be induced to correct it. And it is remakeble that aboute Apleby they are neither speake according to the Lancashire, Yorkeshire or Scottish tone \ dialect / which some of which their neiburs are infected, who live in the compass of 6 miles round. This give their voice their full & proper sound.

[II.485]

Peculiar Customs

{18.} {Oxgangs & plowing}
They plow here always with oxon \ till about 1693*? / haveing but 2 leading horses att the most, which is the old way; whence we have the word Oxgan for a plowland, which according to comp[utation] is {?}† (4 of which) make a Knights fee. They knew noe teams of horses, useing them only for single burthens, single carts or the sadle, which is the reason the gentry here doe not soe often ride in their coaches, as in the south. Yet they will carry greater burthen by their single ~~burthens~~ \ cartes / than they doe in the south with their waggins \ & teams, / considering how many horses they use.

{Customs of West[morland}
They have some customs which I dow not finde practised in the south: to witt, on X^{t}mas Day to shout Yeule, Yeule, Yeule when they come out of the church and such like. The tenants at Crakenthorpe Hall, whome the Lord feasts allwayes on St Stephen's Day, they cry Ule after dinner is done, and if any man or woman stay in the house, they are to undergo a penalty, the woman swil'd, i.e. carried out in a bucket \ or swill, / & the men stang'd, i.e. caryed out upon a stang or colt staff. This may also be a custome att other great houses where I am not so well acquainted, but for stanging tis the custom for all the country at X^{t}mas time if one neighbour can catch an other in bed att any time of day or night […][953] On the 12 Eve they have bonefires, which they call hollyes in.

[Machell's Notes: II.485]
*See my horseb[ook]. I had this in K. parish, cost 30^{s} of 7.
†? Ord[er] surv[ey].

[II.486][954]

[Speech and Disposition of the People]

{Memorandum: this was transcribed into the Description General}[955]
They sooner speake in the southern dialect and therefore doe sooner accord with the P. than any other pla[ce]. They have this advantage over southern people, & that [they] can both speake to and understand them, whereas you southern[ers] in many words ~~are put to~~ \ cannot. / ~~stand~~. They haply attaine to the knowledge [of] the Saxon tongue, and have more prope[n]sity to pronounce French righ[t] than other English men.
{Latin in no place worse spoke than in Latin \ at Roome / nor English in no place worse spoke than at ~~England~~ London, the chief place of England, for as England had its name from the Saxons[956] so

[952] A second version of the storm on the previous page.
[953] This is followed by an illegible sentence relating to the 'stang'.
[954] Also numbered p.37.
[955] The hand here is probably not Machell's.
[956] Some text has perished here.

English too. But the conflux of forainers and the French humour of the court has debauched the language in so much that, setting aside the tone of the English tongue, tis better spoke at Edenbrough in Scotland. But I thinke in most purity in the Barony of Westm'land.}[957]

The generality of them are not affected with novelty, either in speech or clothes; & therefore new words & new fashions are \ equally / here exploded, being no way tollerable excepting in gentlemen.

{At p.18}[958]
They are of a kinde & courteous disposition so long as they are not affronted or abused; and wonderfully hospitable to stranges or others; fathfull to their friends, but ~~very bitter cruel & bitter to ther enemyes~~ \ much addicted to revenge on their enemyes. / They love any man that dare fight, so that a stout rober \ when he is in prison / shall be company for a gentleman, and if he have vallor, that's enough to wipe of the other disgrace. \ indignityes abstulit vertus[959] / A scholler, or soljer, is the only man they ~~pay~~ \ have / true respect for \ to / and a thief or a coward, the only men they hate & abhor. {I.e. pilfering theefe, for those only they call them.}
Gens pervalida pro loco et tempore nunc ad aratra, nunc ad arma promptissima. / [I.e.] They are people ~~strong~~ \ stout / active & hardy, fitt for labour and ~~hardy very~~ \ no less / industriouse, yet very ~~affected~~ \ much addict / {to such} \ with those / masculine recreations as \ of / hunting & horse courseing, for which kinde of sports they will oft leave their ~~worke~~ more serious \ necessary / imployments.
They are great lover of musique, especally the pipes. They ~~Scots~~ cannot yet have affection for a Scot.[960]

Their Gentry are men of \ very / great gallantry, & loyall to Envy.[961] Witness their behaviour in the late wars, & their un-daunted suffering in Tyranny of Ollover. I thinke this county may say it with glory, that there was not one gentleman a tratour in it. & for matter of education the \ very / commonnally ~~of Westm'land~~ bring up there children in a great deale of subjection & obedience to their superiors, putting them to schoole in their minority, where \ they learn to read and /many of them to understand Latin before they lieve ~~schoole~~ off, they being very much helped by the number of freschole which are in the county: viz.

[II.10][962]
{Note. Free Schools in the Bottom of Westmorland. 8. Apleby. Brough. Bampton? Kirkby Stephen. Barton. Lother. Crosby Rave. Stanemore. Tybah. Vid plur. in Wases collecti[on].}[963]

[957] A margin comment, partly obscured, provides, MS: '{Saxons Scotts, Irish, H.L.S. Scots Coward.}' Part of this paragraph is repeated in Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, II.510.
[958] Machell's numbering. Another draft relating to manners and customs is found on MS.I.75-86.
[959] 'Bravery removes (the barrier of) inferior station.'
[960] A partly obscured phrase here might read, 'most merth in meting', but this is uncertain.
[961] Envy: to seek to rival. *OED*.
[962] II.10 is part of a tabulated page in another hand but annotated by Machell. Measuring 35cm x 30cm, it consists of a large folded sheet, inserted vertically and read crossways. Its contents are numbered II.9 and II.10A-10D.
[963] See P.J. Wallis, '…Christopher Wases's Survey', 168-85. The first educational questionnaire was circulated by Christopher Wase. His dislike of post-Restoration attacks on grammar schools led him to ascertain real facts by collecting replies to such queries as: 1. Who Founder? 2. When Founded? 3. How Endowed? 4. What School-Master and succession of Masters? etc. Wase's complete *Considerations Concerning Free Schools as Settled in England* was published in Oxford in 1678. See also R. Hodges, 'Wase, Christopher (1627-1690), schoolmaster and classical scholar.' *ODNB*.

[II.486]

{Westm'land ancient families}[964]

Vid. Map of the Bottom.

{Ad Tit. 3} It is peculiar to this county to have the sherif's office in one family, which was formerly so all England, but now remanes onely here in the noble family of the Cliffords, Westm'land, of whome the former Countiss of Penbrooke is the last. Apleby is the county town & has priviledges. In omnibus sicut Ebor & ergo the major takes place of the judges & sit betwixt them.[965]

[II.487]

We looke upon these in the Bottom:

Wharton of Wharton		Lord
Lowther of Lowther		Baronet
Machell of Crakenthorpe	}	Gentlemen
Crackenthorpe of Newbigin	}	2[966] of Bol.
Sandford of Askham	}	1 Crakenthorpe of Strickland
x Wibergh of Clifton	}	Hiltons of Morton
Cliburn of Cliburn	}	Musgrave of Asby G.
x Blenkinsop of Helbeck	}	
Hiltons of Barton	}	
Barton of Breek	}	
Birlocks of Hornby	}	
Musgrave of Musgrave	}	

We looke upon these to be the ancientest in the Barony {Thom. Jac. Account.}[967]

Midleton of Midleton \ gen /
Laburne of Skelsmergh
Strickland of Sizar
\ Thornburrough /
Gilpin of Kentmere, which is now g[…] nom[968]
Bellingham of Forrest gen
Phillipson of Calgarth
~~Brathwat of Burnished~~

{These families in Westm'land I mete with ~~sans date~~ in cartis s.d.[969] T.M}

Machael or Mauchael, sans date of Crakenthorpe, now Machell
de Crackenthorpe now Crackenthorpe of Newbigin
de Musgrave now Musgrave of Musgrave
de Barwyse
de Hellebeck, now extinct
de Sulleby, extinct
de Bellocampe sive Beauchamp, extinct
\ de Lowther /
de Askeby }
de Morevilla } both extinct
de Sandeford now Sandford (Askham of Howgill) 2 families
de Querton now Wharton, Lor Wharton of Wharton
de Hartley }
de Smerdale } extinct

[964] This heading (moved from II.48) is placed here as a section heading.
[965] 'In all things just like York, and therefore …'
[966] The word after '2' is blotted.
[967] Thomas Jackson.
[968] Words blotted.
[969] Undated charters.

de Wateby }
de Helton, now Hilton of Helton & Ormside \~~Strickland,~~ Laborne /
{of which onely 3: Sc. the 2. Machells, the Lowthers 3. & Whartons, have had the honour to continue the antient seates of their ancestors unto this.}[970]

[II.488][971]

{19.} Places of birth or habitation of eminent persons in all aiges: \ Se Fathers Worth /
Gilpin[972]
Dr Langbane, Provost of Queen's College Oxon, born at Barton
Dr Crakenthorp – a famous author & chaplain to King James 1^{t}, Little Strickland
Mr Airay \ fellow of Queen's College / author of *Fasciculus Lag*[973] while Tab[arder] there, [born] Clifton
Bishop Strickland
Barlow – at Lang gill in Orton parish
Smith – see our Obit. Booke – at Whitwall in Ashby parish
Sir John Machell, Sheriff of London – at Crack[en]thorp?
Rogerus Malus-Catulus, keper of the broad seal – Ibid
Lord Wharton of the Marches \ at Wharton Hall /
H. Machell
Sir John Lowther P. C.
Sir ~~John~~ \? / Buckle – Lord Mayor of London – at Stanemore
Dr Joh. Mill at Shap
Dixon at Orrest Head[974]

[II.490]

Ad Westm'land in General et diversa loca ibidem, speciatim de Appelby Referenda[975]

Index: see 43.

Bottom of Westm'land

Places

O	Orton ph
O	Overclagill
L	Langdale
L	Langdale flu
E	Ellergill
R	Rounthwat
B	Bretherdaile
L	Loyn Flu
B	Birbeck Fells
G	Garegill
K	Killat, Rain \ Rain a Brooke /
T	Tegah
C	Colflatt

[970] MS: '{of which onely 3: Sc. the 2. Machells, the Lowthers 3. & Whartons (which I [illeg.] you in alphabetical order to [illeg.] Emulatio) have had the honour to continue the antient seates of their ancestors unto this.}'
[971] Also numbered p.39.
[972] Machell gives no information on Gilpin here, but see above, II.487.
[973] Christopher Airay, *Fasciculus praeceptorum logicalium in gratiam Juventutis Academicae compositus* (2nd edn, Oxford, 1633).
[974] Father of Thomas Dixon, see below.
[975] 'With reference to Westmorland in General and various places, especially concerning Appleby: Things to be referred'. All the entry letters have been crossed through individually, and the pages themselves also crossed through, probably to demonstrate that Machell no longer needed this information.

LS Lowscales
OS Overscales
P [Blank] Park d.
R Crosby
G Greenholm
B Bousfield
G Gill
O Orton
S Sunbigin
L Little Asby
AS Great Asby
BH Blatern Hight
B Breeks/Rutter
M Mardale
T Tothman
T Thorntwait Hall
N Naddell Forrest
T Talebert
G Goodcrost
W Walrighte
B Bonby
W Wetsleddale
R Forrrest of Ruslen
SA Shapp Abbay
K Keld
ST Thornshapp
M Milbeck
S Sleddall Flu
R Riggshole
S Sumdale Flu
R Raysid
B Bampton
B Bampton Grang
R Rosgill Hall
B BamptonHall
R Rosgill
B Butterwick
K Knipe
H Hegdale
H Helton Fleccat
A Ascam
A Askam Hall \Eamot and / Lowther flu joyne
W Whale Moore
O Odendale
HBH Bottom oth Hause
N Newintake Inclosure
G Gaud Busk?
K Kirkstone
H Hartsope & Hall
B Brother Water
U Ulswater
P Patterdale & Hall
M Martindale Forrest: what sort of wild beast were here formerly?

H Whick Winder
P Powley
Stanck
B Low Barton
W Winder Hall
S Sockbridge & Hall
Y Yeanwath & Hall
E Emot bridge
Emot
Emot Flu
H Hardendale
T Thrumby
S Little Strickland & Hall
S Great Strickland ~~& Hall~~
L Lother & Hall
C Clifton & Hall
H Hackthorp & Halls
M Melkinthorp Hall
M Ma\u/ls Meaburn
K Kings Meaburn
C Clearburne

[II.491]

Dale	R	Ravenstonedale
	C	Crosby Hill
	S	Soulby
Flu	SS	Soulby Beck
Mons	W	Willbert Fell
	W	Weatby
Flu	U	Une Flu
	S	Swall Flu
Pons	H	Hellgill Bridge
Flu	E	Eden flu
Dale	M	Mallerstang Dale
Cas	P	Pendragon Castle
	W	Wharton Hall & Parke
	N	Neatby
Pons	S	Strenkthret Bridge
	H	Hartly & Hall 2 Castle 2 parke
	K	Kirkby Stephen
	N	New Bridge
	M	Musbridge
	M	Litle Musgrave
	M	Great Musgrave
	W	Warkop & Bridge
	S	Sanforth
	O	Little Ormside
	G	Great Ormside
	B	Bongate
	S	Scattergate
	B	Burells
	A	Appleby & Castle
	A	Appleby Bridge
	B	Battlebar

C Crekenthrop & Hall & P.
C Colby
H Upper Hoff
R Raw
B Buly Castle
B Bolton
K Kirby thure
J Gillian Bower in
W Whinfield park
O Forrest of Oggle in Whinfell
B Bird dub an Oglebird
Hart horn tree
M Moorra Houses
B Browham
B Browham Castle
T Temple Sowerby
A Accaran banke
N Nubygin
M Milnerigg
W Woodside
H Hornby Hall
E Eamo~~nt~~
S Smardale Hall
B Brough Beck f.
S Stanemore Pale
B Brough 2 castles
R Ray Cross on Stanemore
C Couplin Bridge
E Eden Bridge
S Sanforth Moore
K Fforrest of Kitland
H Hellbeck
B Burton
B Burtergill
B Breckenber
H Hilton
M Murton
L Lanton
K Keisley
M Meldon Forrest
D Dufton
B Brampton
K Knock
LM Long Martin & Parke
C Closehouses
G HG Howgill Grang
HC Howgill Castle
M Milburne
K Kirkhouse
G Gullham Holme
B Blenkerne Flu
H Hughseat Hill

[Machell's Notes: II.490]
{ad Oglebys Quer[ies] which are Annex'd to Part 2.}
{Memorandum: I have 3 halfe crownes of Mr [?] 2 to buy Plaster of Paris, to pay car[riage]}
{[…] of Mr Mill in op o. flu.}[976]

[II.492][977]

An Alphabetical Table[978] of all the Townes, rivers and memorable places mentiond in Westm'land

{Names of places I thinke out of Speed}

Rivers, Bridges, Forrests &c. Names of places

	Town	Seats	Dema[sne]	Parke	Forrest
A.	Apleby	Castle	0	1	0

[Key to Machell's alphabetical table: br. bridge; c. castle; d. dale; flu: river; h. hall; p. park; t. tower]

In the Bottom of Westm'land

A.	c. p. br.	Apleby
		Asby, Great
		Asby, Little
	h.	Askham
		Akern Banke
	mere	Ause Water
		~~Ambleside~~
B.		Bretherdale Head Foot
		Burkbeck Fells
		Bousfield
		Blatarn (Hight)
		Breeks
		Bonby
		Bampton
		Bampton Grang
	h.	Bampton
		Butterwick
		Bottom oth Hause vel haus
		West Barton
	flu.[979]	Brother Water
		Low Barton
	At	Bongate
	Apleby	Burells
		Battlebar
	c.	Buly Castle
		Bolton
	h. for.	~~Bird & cham~~ Oglebird Forrest
	c. h.	Browham
		~~Brough Beck flu~~
	c.	Brugh
		Brough Sowerby
		Burton
		Burtergill

[976] The first words of this sentence are obscured by the binding.
[977] Also numbered p.47.
[978] MS: 'Alphabetical table… Alphabetically disposed'.
[979] Flumen = river.

		Breckenber
		Brampton
	flu.	Blenkerne
		[II.493]
C.		Caber
		Colflat Cotesflat
		Crosby Ravensworth Wath
	h.	Clifton
		Crosby Garrett
		Clearburne
		Crosby Hill
		Crekenthrop ~~Hall~~
	h. t. p.	Colby
	br.	Couplin Bridge
		Close House
		~~Clapergate~~
		~~Howgill Castle~~
		Crostermind
D.		Deepdale
		Dufton Dales
		Drive Evers; Dribeck
E.		Ellergill
	flu. br.	Emot, bridge
F.	for.	The Forrest of Naddell
		Forrest of Raflen
		Forrest of Ogglebird
		Forrest of Kitland
		Forrest of Meldon
		of Whinfell forsan
G	flu.	Glenkrodden & Glenkrowen
		Gresmere
		Gaze-gill
		Green-holme
		Gill
		Gils(e) (a cops ut puto)
		Goodcroft
		Gaudbuske
		G\r/ainge juxt Hougill
		Gullham Holme
		Gillian Bower v. Julian
H.		Hight
	d.	Hegdale
		Helton Fleccat
		Hause Bottom
	h.	Hartsope
		Hick-winder
	d.	Hardendale
	h.	Hakthorp
		II.494[980]
		Heltondale w.
		Hoff
	h.	Hackthrop
	b.	Helgil
		Harberwen
	c. h. p.	Harcley
		Hoff-superior

[980] Also numbered p.49.

		Hoff Lun
	h. c.	Hornby-Hall
	h.	Helbeck, query an opidum
		Ht Hilton
	c.	Howgill
		Hugh leat Hill
		West Hilton
		Heeght
J		Julian alias Gillian Bower Lodge
K		Kellath
		Keld a. Shap
		Knipe
		Kirkstone
		Kirkby Stephen
	h. c.	Kirkbythor
	for.	Kittland
		Keesley
	Q. a single if a towne that cald Kirkland	Kirkland forsan Kirkhouse
		Knock
		Kirkehouse
		Kings-Meaburne
		Kentmere
L.		Langanby (fors in Cumberland)
	flu.	Langdale Great
	flu.	Leun or Loyn
		Low-Skales
	h. flu.	Lowther
		Langton
		Long Mertin v. Merton
		~~Langrige~~
M.	d.	Mardale
		Meason
	flu.	Mill-beck
	d. for.	Martindale
	h.	Morland
	h.	Milkin[thorpe]
	c.	Maiden Castle, Hold & Way
	c.	Maybrough Castle
	h.	Milkinthorpe voc. Strickland Parva
		II.495
		Mauls-Meaburne
	d.	Mallerstangdale[981]
	br.	Musbridge pons
		Musgrave Magna
		[Musgrave] Parva
		~~Warcop Hall Tower Bridge~~
	More puto[982]	Moore-Houses
		Milnerigg, an house
		Murton
	for.	Meldon v. for.

[981] Machell has included a partially obscured phrase here: 'è gr…'?
[982] 'A moor, perhaps.'

	parke	Martin v. Long
		Milburne
N.	for.	Naddell Forrest vid. forrest
	for.	New Intack Inclos.
		Neatby
	br.	New-Bridge pons E.
	h.	New-bygin or Biggin
	h.	Newby
		Nine Churches
		Newbiggin \ south / east
O.		Orton
		Over-clay Gill
		Overscales or Sh[ales] opposed to Low Shales
		Odendale, Oddeldale neare \ to Low / Orton
	h.	Ormside Magni
		Ormside Parvi
	for.	Ogle \ Bird / vid. forrest
P.	p.	Parke (forsan Overskales P)
	h.	Patterdale
		Powley-stank where Ulswater breakes into a river
	c.	Pendragon Castle
	Parkes	Wharton Park
		Crakenthorpe Parke dud[um][983]
		Whinfield Parke
		Martin Parke
		Lother
		II.496[984]
Q.		
R.		Roun-thwaite
		Raise: a brooke
		Reagill
		Rosswood memorandum St Michael
		Rutter
	for.	Raflen Forest vid forests
		Rigg-Hole
		Raysid
	h.	Rosgill or Raisgill
		Rosgill or Raisgill
		Ravenstone-dale
		Raw
		Runthwate
		Roy Cross on Stainmore
		Raisbeck
S.		S\k/ales super, subter v. Low over
		Sunebiggin
		Swindale
	abby	Shapp
		Shap-thorne
	flu.	Sledall vid. Wet-Sleddall
		Slegall
	flu.	Swindall
	h.	Sockbridge
	h.	Strikland Magna
	h.	Strikland Parva
		Soulby & beck

[983] 'A park formerly.'
[984] Also numbered p.51.

	flu.	Swale
	br.	Strenkthret Bridge
	moore	Sandforth
		Sowerby {v. Brough Sowerby v. Temple}
	h.	Smardell
		Stainmore
	dale	Stainmore
		Smardall
T.		Tebah or Tibay
		Tothman Thornthwaite
	h.	Thornthwate-Hall

[II.497]

		Talebert
		Thremby
		Temple Sowerby
		Troutbeck
U.		Uls Water
	flu.	Ure flu ubi
W.	c.	Whelp
		~~Woodend~~
		Wastelhead
		Walmgate
		Wastlefoot
		Wetsleddaile
		Wick Wickerslack
		Whalemoore
		Willbertfell
		Winderworth
		Weatby
	h.	Winder
	h. t. br.	Warcop
		Winton
	p.	Whinfield
		Woodside
	h. p.	Wharton,
Y.	h.	Yeanwath

[II.498]

In the Barony

G.		Gresmire
	h.	Grarigg
H.		Hugill
		Hutton ith-Hay
		Hutton Nov. vel New
		Hutton Vet. vel Old
		Holmscales
		Heversham
		Han'brack
		Hincaster
		Helsington
		Hutton Roof
		Holme
		Helston laith
I.		
K.	c.	Kendal
		Kentmire
		Kirkland (in Kendal puto)
		Killington
	Kent flu.	Kirkby Loansdale

~~Kettle~~
L. ~~Lyth~~
Langdale
Long Sleddall
Lamb-Rigg or Lan rig
br. Leavens brigg
Loansdale
Lupton
Loughrigg
M. Meathopp or Methop
Milthropp
Midleton
Mansergh

[II.499]

N. Neather Stanely
New Hutton
Natland
O. Over Stanley
Ova
Underbarrow
P Parkes
Patton
Preston-Patrick
Preston-Richard
Preston chappell
Q.
R. Rydall
S. Sleddall
Sleddall Over Long v. Lo
Stanley Nether v. O v. N
h. Selside
Skelmergh
Strikland Roger
Skalthwaite Rigg
\ Steelmire /
Stanton
Sidgwick or Seggeswick
Siserghe
St Catherins v. C
T. Troutbeck
U. Under Milbeck
Under barrow
W. Witherslack
Whinfell
Windermere
Winstar chappell
Watland

{Culgith in Cumberland}

[II.502][985]

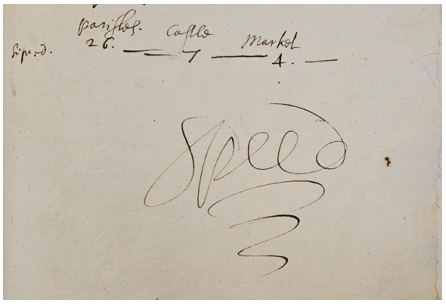


Figure 9. 'Speed'. II.502.

Forrests & Parkes marked out of Speed, in Speeds Map

In the Barony [of Westmorland]
Whinfield Forrest Out Parke nov.[986]
Lowther
Crosbyravenswith
Har[t]ley
Wharton
Mallerstang Forrest
To which add Martendale Forrest &c. in the Barony.

[In the Barony of Kendal]
Colnhead
Sheelmere
Firbanke
Midleton
Camswick
Barborne Chap
Preston Chap
Bethan
Sedgewick vel Croscrak parish
Watland
Sisergh
Brigster
Witherslack

Rivers.
Barrow
Below
Burbeck
Eden
Glenkroden
Glenkwen
Lune
Sprint
Raine

[985] Also numbered p.57.
[986] 'nov' = 'new'.

Speed [totals]

Parishes	Castle	Market
26	7	4

[II.505]

Rivers in the Bottom of W.
Bridges, Castles, Halls, Towers [987]

These must be tryed by my Booke & the maps of Westm'land.
These castles, halls & towers are the houses of their nobility & gentry.

	Rivers	Bridges	Castles	Halls	Towers
1.	Brotherwater	Apelby Bridge	Apleby C.	Askham Hall	Cæs. at Apleby
2.	Ulswater	Copelin Bridge	Buly C.	Acorn Bank H.	Cæs. at Browham
3.	Brough beck	Emote B. q. Emote	Browham C.	Barton H. de	Paga[n] at Browham
4.	Ble[n]kern flu.	Eden Bridge	Brough C.	Browham H.	Cæs. at Brough
5.	Emot f.	Hellgill b.	Howgil C.	Barhouse H. Dufton demolished	Warcop T.
6.	Eden f.	Musgrave b.	Harclay C.	Brampton H. & one demolished	Colby T. d[emolished]
7.	Langdale f.	Strenket b.	Maiden C.	Crakenthorp H.	For at Crakenthorpe
8.	Leun f.	Warcop b.	Maburg C.	Dufton H. demolished	Cæs. at Apleby
9.	Lowther f.	Kirkby \ th / Bridge	Pendragon C.	Hathop H.	Cæs. at Browham
10	Raine a broke[988]	~~Copeland Bridge~~	Whelp C.	Hercley H.	Paga[n] at Browham
11.	Swindale f.	Martindale	Apleby C.	Hornby H.	
12.	Sleddall f.	Cleburne B.		Helbeck Hall	(2 at Low[ther] Hall)
13.	Soulby Beck	Newbridge W.		Hilton H. demolished (2 at Howgill Castle) ~~Burton H.~~	(2 at Howg[ill] Castle)
14.	Swale flu.	Apelby Bridge		Kirkby Thor H.	Wharton Low
15.	Ure flu.	Copelin Bridge		Lowther H.	Lowther
16.	Uls water	Emote B. q. Emote		Long Marton demolished	
17.	d. Coup[land] beck Beside a great many brookes Torrents and riviletts			Murton H.	
18.				Melkinthorpe H	Fallaf[ield]
19.	Brotherwater			X Musgrave H. par 2	Musgrave
20.	Ulswater				
21.				Morland H[igh] H.	
22.				Newbiggin H.	Crakenthorp
23.				Newby H.	Nevinson

[987] MS: 'D. ~~Whether Milbeck near Shap be a Brooke. Colby beck, Morland beck et force in Livernett. At Milburne a beck, Milkrig a beck. At Martin.~~ Rivers in the Bottom of Westmorland. Bridges, Castles, hall, tower Askham hal. & Acorn bank h'.'
[988] A brook.

24.		Ormside H.	Now Heltons
25.		Patterdale H.	
26		Rosgill H.	
27.		Smardale H.	
		\Sokbridge H. /	In the Barony
28.		Thornthwaite Hall	
29.		Winder Hall	
		Bampton Hall	
30.		Warcop H.	
31.		Yeanwath H.	
32.		Sokbridge	
		Askham	
	Ap Cast. parke	Besides those in	
	q. parroke	the Barony	
	a παραetock[989]		

[Queries, Instructions and Narrative involving Machell's Informants][990]

[II.154A]

A. Orders & Q. given to Mr Dixon 19. II^r^ 1676[991]

{Kirkby Loansdale Kendal Mr Stuartson. Burton Bethom Heversham. Mr Lodge.}
{Mr Fleming (if writ to) will answer the rest & help in Cumberland.}

1. Remember to get information of these Parishes Sc. Burton, Bethom, Heversham, & Kirkby Loansdal: if all or part of them be in Westmorland.
{!!} 2. The \ names & / course of every River & Beck in the Barony; with all its heads where it springs \ at least the Principal, / what way it Runns E.W.N. or South & the Parishes or Lordships It Runns by or Through, allso the Towns, Halls or Gentlemens houses which it visits by the way; & how far it lieves them (or any of them) on East, W. North or S: The number of mills & bridges upon it; the sorts of fish in it; & (lastly) where it taketh the Sea, or looseth it selfe in som other River or lake?
3. The High (or great) Roads traced through the Barony. To what great place do they wend, with the Parishes Lordships &c. & Gentlemens houses, And notable Antiquityes which occur in or near them.

<u>In Grosmer Parish</u>
{Raise beck at the Head – & Rothey at the foote.}
X1. The Name of the River which Runns by the church.
X The Annual Stipend of Ambleside Chappel.
The Boundaries (on the South Side) of Grosmer Lordship: with the known marks from which divided from Ridal.

---

[989] 'Ap[pleby} Cast[le] parke q[uery] parroke from πα∴ρ and ock.' Machell is mixing languages here. He seems to suggest that 'parke' is from 'parrocke' and that 'parrocke' is derived from the Greek preposition παρα/ (meaning: 'by, alongside, next to'), with the English 'oke' (meaning oak).

[990] For more of Machell's queries and their answers, see his correspondence with Rev. Richard Singleton of Melmerby, Cumberland: MS.VI, 699-722.

[991] Two Thomas Dixons, father and son, collaborated with Machell in his research. The family came from Orresthead near Applethwaite, where the father had made a large sum of money out of his tenement (see Part 2, Chapter 8, Windermere, II.329, §43). The son matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in1664/5 aged 15; BA 1669; MA 1672/3; fellow in 1673; BD 1682; was rector of Weyhill, Hants, 1682-1708; DD 1685, see *OAD*; see also CCED. At Oxford, Dixon junior corresponded with Sir Daniel Fleming, occasionally including comments about Machell, see See Maxwell Lyte, Stanley Hughes Le Fleming, James Arthur Bennett and Richard Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890), 141: Dixon to D.F., 5 November 1677.

2. Lough Rig. What sort of Tenure, Sc – Richmond or Marquess, & what is meant by those foes. How are the Tenants of Grosmere Lordship admitted, & how do they pass away their estates. Baise brown – Lordship.[992]

[II.154B]

Ambleside fields on the South. Of whom is it held, & by what Tenure – Sc. soc~~e~~age, cornage or Knights Service? What Quit Rent doth it pay & to whom? What Mr Flemings uncles name who left him the Estate, & the names of his uncle['s] sons who dyed, & his 2 daughters who were marryed; together with their Husbands names, Arms & the place & County in which they lived
The \ Annual / prices of Land per Acre. Best, worst, & midlesort, excluding commons, Fells &c. And that of Arable, pasture, meadow.

In Windermer Parish
2. The Arms, X ~~Inscriptions &c.~~ – in or about the Church. Terrior of Glebe belonging to the Parson with the worth of Land per acre as above. How the Lordship came to the Crown? What the Ruines are of the Castle Att Ambleside? Whether it was not made a Market by Olivers Charter,[993] what the priviledges Granted them?
2. Calgarth Inscriptions there &c.[994]

[I.41A]

[B.] [Fragment of an] Alphabeticall table of Townes, Rivers & other memorable places in Westm'land[995]

[Key]
II⊙II a Towne
⊙ a Village
an Hamlet
0 a Single house
r a River

In the Bot[tom]
II⊙II Appleby – Castle
⊙ Ashby – great
⊙ Ashby – little[996]
⊙ Askham Hall
⊙ Brampton – Hall
r. Blenkern – River

[II.530][997]

[C.] {Mr Mill}
{1} Write to Mr Bellingham query History \ or Dr Smith / whether Robert Lancaster & Miles Spen. Were LL.Ds.

[II.532]

{Mr Mill} If ther be a beck from Kerberwen, ~~Witherslack or Benton~~, which comes into Lowther on the E[ast]. What tarnes; there names & \ with / fishing \ in. /
{M. Mill} Negat Sir William Sanderson whether Millbeck near Shap be a brooke or village or both?[998] A cloth mill.

---

[992] The page here has been cut; the rest of the text is missing.
[993] Oliver Cromwell's Charter.
[994] The page here has been cut; the rest of the text is missing.
[995] The table of towns, rivers etc. using this formula, seems to have been left unfinished but Machell clearly used it when communicating with his informants, see below, II.432.
[996] The remaining part of the page has been torn away at this point.
[997] Also numbered p.85.
[998] 'William Sanderson says not.'

[D.] [T.J.][999]
{Parishes in Westm'land}
{2} The names of the Constablewickes & \ of the / parishes in the Bottom of Westm'land, with the value if you can of the parish or vicar*.
{3} You send me parish in the Bottom of W. 33. But I suppose there but so many in the whole cou[n]ty. Se Speed, se Camden, for Camden gives us 26 parishes,[1000] Speed 26. {?}
{4} So to satisfy me, sett me downe how many parishes in the Bottom of Westm'land‡ with there particular names; how many Churches of Ease, with their particular names; how many Chaples of Ease with their particular names? And so in the Barony.
{5} Whether Barton be a church or a chaple, for I finde 18 Churches & Chaples of Ease besides Barton, & if it be a church. It make but 6 in the Barony, whereas my information was 7†.
{7} {Fortnight Day} When the Fortnight Day begins att Apleby and how long that faire lasts.
{8} How governed? Bid them get a sword.
Whether Brough be a market towne. Fare at Brough. How many & when.
{9} Att Kirkby Stephan; at Orton.
{10} Who live \? / at these Halls, viz. Bottom & Barony.
{11} The names of churches.
{12} Helbeck \ What know you to the Cont. of Blenkinsops of Helbeck, Hiltons of Burton. What are the families Barton of Breekes and Birbeckes of Hornby. Enquire if you finde whether they & Brathwates of Warcop have had any knights?

[Machell's Notes: II.530]

*{T.J. send & received.}[1001]
†{He putt downe the new chaple for a church.}
‡{vid. Collect[ion] p.4.}

[II.531]

{ad T.J. [of] Knock}
\ Whether a Gill besides Knok where a great house has bin. Jone Armstrong. Se the aulter on Roman Fell \ there is a Gill at the Towne End. There is a platforme of an old Hall & 4 tenements called the Demaine Tenements /

{Ewebanke} {T.J.}
Whether there be not a towne or Hall upon Stan[emore] late Eubanke Hall. There is an hamlet & Hall with 2 places called High & Low Ewbanke belong to the Countess \ of Pmb.[1002] / The demanes with their names col. wise. Woods: there names, with sorts of trees which grow in em.

[II.532]

{Teas Head in Westm'land} {T.J.} Whether Teas\ Head / be in Westm'land ita.
{T.J.} Whether these places unmarked in the alphabeticall table be villages or hamlets. Send the names of the waters & enquire of mills & bridges upon every water.
{T.J.} {Midlerig Well by Shap about Hardendale}
Send the names of those places which are not marked ⊙[1003] to T.J. to know whether they are villages or hamlets.[1004] Send a map also that he may place right if he can, according to their situation on, rivers & distance from such & such places as are mentioned in the map.
T.J. Whether any Corporaco' pro libita may carry a sword {Ius gladij}[1005]

[II.533]

[999] T.J. = Thomas Jackson (senior) of Dufton.
[1000] Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 763.
[1001] Reference to the questionnaire sent to Thomas Jackson. For the general subjects of this questionnaire, see Machell's list taken from Camden's *Britannia*, on I.42A, and the Editor's Introduction.
[1002] Pembroke.
[1003] Circled, with a dot in the centre.
[1004] 'village', see Machell's key: I.41A.
[1005] 'Whether any Corporation at will…the right to carry a sword.'

{T.J.} {I had this from Mr Jackson.}
Enquire for that inscription over the cockloft dore, and for that over the Garden House window with that at Clifton.
{T.J.} For the inscription in the Tower. Over the Hospitall gate with the endowment. And dedication if there be any, with the manner of the letter the inscriptions are writ in. Get the best writer in the schoole. Se of Kendal. Hoff. Endowment. And found where?

[II.504][1006]

What mill upon every river?
There be great store of mills in the Bottom of Westm'land by reason that it is so well waterd, there being no place thereabouts where can be a mile distant from one, every viledge almost having one. But of this \ & bridges / send to Tom Jackson.[1007]

[E.] [Machell's Relatives]
{H.M. Regill T.J.}
Bid my bro[ther] collect all he can of antiquity, whether coals at Regil: yes. Where quarryes of frestone or limestone & [blank]

[II.530]

{Father or Brother}
What the prophecy concern Sandford More & Rear✝.
Draw[1008] the fort on Stainmore \ when you goe that way. / I have Maden Castle. & measure also the bredth of the bulworke which you may pace at any entrance as twix a. & b.

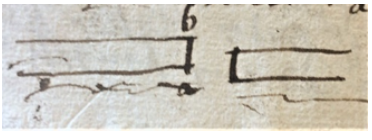


Figure 10. 'Father or brother … you may pace at any entrance as twix a. & b.' II.530.

{6} What time of the year my father putts his cattle into Eliker, & when taken out agane; what rent he payes, & what he payes not.

[II.504][1009]

Remember gray troutes as bigg as salmon in Ulswater and the dimention of the trout my father tooke & where. Great store of otters.

[II.532]

{Father or brother Hugh} What the bigness of gray-troutes & wher they are taken.
{Father or Brother: Hugh Seat, Mr Lowson} What the places, wher & what distance of the gray-trouts, & that trout taken by my father: the dimensions.

X The aultar on Cross Fell
{T.J. or Brother} Michell Scot's leap? How long; by whome: 24 feet.[1010]

[II.529]

Ad Howgil Castle
The oate stalke that was shown me att Howgill Castle was 2 yards & ½ long.

[II.532][1011]

[1006] Also numbered p.59.
[1007] This paragraph is scored through lightly
[1008] MS: 'Dray'.
[1009] Also numbered p.59.
[1010] See III.475.
[1011] Also numbered p.87.

{Increase of corne – see before ut Howgil}
{2 yd ½ v. Hugh or Bro.}What highness their oat or haver groeth. I have taken up a pea stem in Crakenthorp Field when I walked that way for recreation sake among the harvest, which because it seemed very well clad I had the curiosity to observe the increase, & there was from that single stalke besides had bin lost or cropped off – 8 score & 8 i.e. 168.

[II.535]

[F.] [Mr Sanderson]
{Wharton} I
\ Enquire of Mr Sanderson in what King's Reign: an Henry 8? one Lord Wharton was Keeper of the Marches and got many signall victories over them insomuch that he was calld in a by-name Lord Fortune \ by them. / One time upon a surprise, when his party was very inconsiderable to make them appear more numerous, he caused his men to run towards them on foot leeding their horses whereby they appeard to be twice as great a company as anded they were. & so putt them to flight. Mr R. Sanderson.

[II.533]

[G.] {**Mr Dixon**}[1012]
{The Great Planet Shower}
An account of accidents & calam[i]tyes by earth quakes, thunder and light[ning]. On flowing of rivers, great windes or sudden shower. Particular[ly] an accompt of that last great shower which drownd the people at Dufton, sunke the stone at Merton Field Yeat, and how many men were imployd to fill it. What year, month, & day it hapnd on. \ This answered at p.235 / The great trees[1013] in Whinfell: a description of them and conquering blast. In the end.

[II.534]

Mr Dixon.
Concerneing the val[e] between the River Leune & Windermere, which Speed sayes is fertill, tho conteined in a narrow compass.

You tell me of Demanes. Lett me have there names as

At	Dem.	Halls	Parkes	Forrest
Craken.	1	1	1	0
Apleb	1	Cast.	1	[Ruttlan]
Colby	1	Tower	0	0
Bar		1	0	0
Buly	1	Cast.	1	0
Bramp	0 dem	1 dem	1	

{A Table of Houses and Castles, Demesne Parkes formerly ad Crakenthorp.}
{I suppose it con[tained] all the ground calld the Parke & the Hagg Brow, so that it came up to the garden walls on the back side of the house, for the millrace was not there in former times, for the corne mill stood in Millough till it was carryd away by a flood. The cloth mill was in the parke.}

II.488]

[H.] [William Hutchinson]
Young lads grow, trees grow & hemp grows, and they may \ all / meet together att the last.
This was spoke by way of retort by an old virginal master who was twitted concer[n]ing his aige by a young ~~fell~~ fool boy {Will Hutchinson. V.M. att Howgil Castle}

[II.488]

{Hutchinsons Story ad Acorn bank}
A pleasant story of Christopher Dalston, nephew of John, who used to dream & walk in his sleepe; & one night gave a great disturbance by crying out Theeves & falling down the stares; upon which the House riss & made sea[r]ch with such armes as they had. Hutchinson for fear hid himselfe behind a

[1012] And see above, II.154A-B.
[1013] The word 'trees' is an editorial substitute for an illegible word.

courtain, haveing no shirt, and one of the people, seing somthing hid, tooke it for the theife, so they descended upon him, pulled him out of the courtain & exposed his nakedness* […].[1014]
*Rome infer the Booke ad AcornBanke.[1015]

[II.533]

[I.] [Equals and Experts]
{X Mr Guy}[1016]
Send to know where the coynes were found.

{X Mr Musgrave}
Enquire of Ninianus in Mr Musgrave's letter. Mr Savage informes what dedication the church bears now.[1017]

{Mr Wood}[1018]
How Bishop were desposed as to theire seas befor William Rufus, who made Carlile a Bishop Sea.
{Authors for Westm'land} Enquire for books necess[ary] for the discovery of the History of Westm'land. As for:
Saxon Dictionary
Poetical Dictionary Edit. Super. Scotch antiq. for Edenbr[ough]: Why Maden Castle
William of Newburrow
Speed's *Cron*[1019] for King John & William King of Scots, de recuperat Aballabae
Ptolom[y][1020] }
Beda[1021] } One in the Study de Bor.
Mat[eria] Parish }
Materia Westm. }
Liber Notiti?[1022] } It is in the library D1 9 Artib[us]
Dugdale *Monasticon* } for Apleby Fryory, Shap Abby, Schol, Wythyrall Priory
Dugdale, *Of W[arwickshire]*

[J.] [Anonymous Informants]
Whether moneys be not yearly payed to the poore upon that table of stone besides the Countiss Piller? And if so, how much & upon what day? Answered after.[1023]

Much of Browham Castle was built by Roger Clifford. Send me the inscription over the Hall dore and the inscription on Pendraggon.

{Ad Ab. Church & Scholl}
{House & land given to cort priest for singing pro def[functis] & vive[ntibus.]}[1024]
What a Chantry? The Major &c. of Apleby gave to one Gibson for to teach schoole & serv at the aultar, the Chantry of St Mary & of St Nicholas, with all lands &c.

[1014] The last two words have largely perished.
[1015] 'For the room, see the book at Acorn Bank.'
[1016] Henry Guy of Watercrook.
[1017] Arthur Savage BA, Rector of Brougham, 1643-62. CCED.
[1018] Anthony Wood, Oxford Scholar.
[1019] Speed's *Chronology*. Machell probably meant, *The historie of Great Britaine under the conquests of ye Romans, Saxons, Danes, and Normans ... from Julius Cæsar to our most gracious soveraigne King James* (London, 1611).
[1020] Ptolemy, *Geographia*.
[1021] *An Ecclesiastical History of the English People* (c.731).
[1022] Stephanus, *Liber Notitiarum/Notarum* (Book of lists).
[1023] This sentence is written in different ink.
[1024] '… For singing for the dead and the living.'

Whether hence may be gatherd any light of a monestry at St Nicholas Apleby, or a church. The house was the dwelling house of the Chantry of St Mary, & ground where the schoole stands belonged formerly to the Prior of Wetherall. Se if that Priory be in Cumberland and aske what a Priory is. It is [blank]

[II.531]

{Parkes in the Barony of Kendal}
Whether these in the Barony be parkes or forests: Sc. ~~Kentmere~~, Stanley, Conswick, Syzer, Leavens, Skelsmergh \ Great Staveley / Killington, Midleton. \? all parkes / & what is become of the Halls and demesns, severall places mentioned in the catalogue.

{Warrens in West[morland] – none in the Barony}
Warrens and there names. Low Horn Woods ~~How many lings, for that we mean by~~ heaths. Whether these be all dales or you can thinke of any more. B[r]etherdale &c. se p. 15. If you know any more let me have their names; whether a place cald Mat[…][1025] with the lenth & brea[d]th of the vale which is called the Bottom of West[morland]. The particular names of the 3 parishes and 4 lordships at the Caldron Snout.

{Kentmer}
Whether True-Bog be in Westm'land; whether Leun springs in Birbeck Fells or in ~~Maller~~ \ Raving / Stangdale? Or where. Whether there be a mere at Kentmere. If so, mark it up.

{Awsewater}
X where Aus-water is &c.[1026] What part of the country; \ marke it in the map. /

Places where battle have bin fought, either certane or supposed.
Whether any lodges beside Whinfell.
Whence came the stones which built Colby Tower.

[II.535]

Ad Shap
Shap Abbey had a graingе, i.e. an ~~place~~ \ house / where the monks had their dary.
{vid. *Survey[or's] Dialogue* + p.3}[1027] There are severall grainges in Westm'land: Shap Grainge, Asby Grainge, Regill Grainge. Lord of Shap was improp[riator] ~~Howgill Grainge~~ Sold to Sir John Lowther. Bamton Grange – enquire what more?

{Crosby Ravensworth}
Monks at Crosby Ravensworth.[1028] There are places bearing these names: Monks-garth, Mo[n]ks[barnes, Monks Bridges. Now in the possession of Bellingham of Garthorn (& Levins). He is impropriator.

{Mauds Meaburn!}
Meaburne: Kings. Mauds. From Maud, Queene of England, who kept Green Castl against her son, & made her es\ca/pe in a snow, being attired in the white habit of a nun. She would have Meaburne (where there is \ yet / a fine cross) a market towne, & would have brought which runs through on the west side, but I know not how prevented. Idem.

[1025] The rest of this word is obscured by the binding.
[1026] Repeated on MS. II.532.
[1027] John Norden, *The Surveyor's Dialogue*.
[1028] An unclear word here seems to read, 'few'.

Proverbs

[I.654A]

Take a Cow to the Hau and shel runn to the Bier.[1029]

[II.502]

Lang Streas are nae motes coth[1030] woman when she plug'd th'Tether out o'th curne.[1031]

[II.488]

Ill trusting to great men.
Its Sharp – ing o th' plane.[1032]
Its sharp mellin with edgeleams ~~o the dub by his sp. when he brakt ore a fe~~[1033]
Its parlish mellin with edge teules, co' the Devil when he brack his […] over a saw.[1034]
Lett ower send ~~the river~~ Eden [blank]
Never winter till ware enter: Sc. January.[1035]
Skill's a rare thing ~~to Kitte Keakson when he maide the wholl he left~~.
Slape hauding by the Haw Binkes.[1036]
That which is got over the devils back – or Ill-gotten ill gone.
When the wind's i'th west,[1037] the weather's at best.

[II.352]

There Proverbs
Heams[1038] heamely. i.e. Home is homely.
Sorrows Geud a frust. Sorrow Good upon trust.

[1029] 'Take a cow to the hall and she'll run to the byre.' A Scottish proverb: see Andrew Cheviot, *Proverbs, Proverbial Expressions, and Popular Rhymes of Scotland, collected and arranged with Introduction, Notes and Parallel Phrases* (Paisley and London, 1896), 71.
[1030] 'quoth'.
[1031] Taken literally, the words mean as follows, 'Streas'= straws; 'mote' = a single straw or stalk of hay; see Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary 5*., 807, and *4.*, 171. Wright quotes, 'lang straes are nae motes', as a proverb but gives no meaning. 'Plug'd' = plucked; see Wright *4*, 558; 'th'tether' = the tangle; see Wright *6*, 68. Thus, literally: 'Long pieces of straw are not small things, said the woman, when she plucked the tangle out of the churn.'
[1032] Whether this really means, 'It's cold sitting on the plain', as Adam Fox suggests, is debateable. See Fox, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and Social History* 3 (2012), 329-47, at 335. Compared with some of the other proverbs this meaning seems tame. Alternatively, it would indeed be sharp to sit on a [carpenter's] plane!
[1033] The last word is illegible.
[1034] 'Parlish'= dangerous. 'Melling'= hammering, pounding or meddling with. 'Edgeleam'= an edge-tool (sharp cutting tool). *OED*. This and the previous phrase appear to say, '"It's dangerous hammering/meddling with edge tools," quoth the devil when he broke his […] over a saw.'
[1035] 'Ware', is Scottish and northern dialect for the season of spring (*OED*), though the meaning is doubtful in this context. In 1674, John Ray used a similar word, 'to wear the pot' i.e. 'to cool it', which might fit this proverb, as in, 'It's never winter till the cold enters: i.e. January.' See John Ray (1627-1705), *A Collection of English words, not generally used ... in two alphabetical catalogues, ... northern ... southern counties, with catalogues of English birds and fishes, and an account of preparing ... metals and minerals* (London, 1674), 52.
[1036] MS: This saying appears twice on the page. 'Binks' = banks of earth or rock; 'haw' = a hedge or encompassing fence. *OED*. Thus, 'It's slippery holding by the hedge banks.' See also, 'Hall binks are sliddery', in John Ray (1627-1705*), A collection of English proverbs digested into a convenient method for the speedy finding any one upon occasion: with short annotations: whereunto are added local proverbs with their explications, old proverbial rhythmes, less known or exotick proverbial sentences, and Scottish proverbs* (Cambridge, 1678), 369.
[1037] MS: '~~when the weathers~~ When the wind's i'th west,'
[1038] Home, pronounced 'h'yam'.

[II. 353][1039]

(Northern Proverbs [1040]
{See the *Dictionary of Northcountry Words*.}[1041]

Dicere quæ puduit Scribere – justu[m][1042]

A wifes Geud Company be she never so bad.[1043]
Begg a [blank] of and old whore: Endeavour Impossibilityes.
Big to build.
Clow a clown oth' a[…] and hel Sh[…] in thy neafe.[1044]
Heams heamly gin't be never so bad.[1045]
Ill may the kill[n] caw th' mill Burnt arse.
Its ill beggin o' beggars.
Now or never qo'[1046] Bell when he hounded the Bitch.
Now thy Lowse![1047] Quo L. Machell when they would have man show the best he can doe in a Race.[1048]
Sorrow's Geud a frust.[1049]
Better threatned & upon trust than present.
Turn Gods Lether to Gods wether.[1050]
Wesh i th' tea hand & shite ith to'ther & by whilk'll be farst ful.[1051]
Whore'l ye sitt on yeüle euen?[1052]
Yee bread o' few of my Loards Tenna[n]ts.

[1039] Also numbered 'p.41.'
[1040] In the MS., this section is numbered '72'.
[1041] It is probable that Machell was referring to William Nicolson's *Glossarium Brigantinum:* see CAC(C), DCHA/11/10/1: 'Nicolson's dictionary of northern English (compiled while Nicolson was at Queen's College, Oxford, 1677)'. At Machell's behest, Nicolson, then acting as Machell's research assistant, collected a list of north-country words; see Part 3, Ch.1, Correspondence, Nicolson to Machell, (I.479), possibly referencing this list. An alternative suggestion is that Machell was referring here to Ray's *A Collection of English words, not generally used* (1674).
[1042] 'It's alright to say what it was shameful to write.'
[1043] 'A wife is good company; however bad she might be.'
[1044] 'Clow' = to wound with a nail; to spike; 'clown' = a mere rustic, a peasant; 'neafe' = a clenched hand or fist. *OED*. Thus, according to Adam Fox, 'Scratch a country-man on the arse and he'll shit in your hand', see Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 334. John Ray is more refined: 'Give a clown your finger and he will take your whole hand.' Ray, *A Collection of English Words, not generally used*, 6.
[1045] 'Home's homely, be it never so bad.'
[1046] 'Quoth'.
[1047] 'Lowse': free from bonds, fetters, or physical restraint. *OED*.
[1048] Lancelot Machell: Thomas Machell's father, who appears often in the volumes as a keen sportsman and brave rider, among other attributes.
[1049] See II.352, above, where Machell gives the meaning as 'sorrow good upon trust'. Another version of this proverb is 'All ills are good a frist', see J. Jamieson, *Etymological Dictionary of Scottish Language*, where 'frist' means 'for a space of time'. *OED*. Adam Fox also suggests that the meaning of 'frist' is, 'to trust for a time'. See Fox, 'Vernacular Culture, Westmorland', 335. See also Ray *A Collection of English words, not generally used*, 19.
[1050] This is reminiscent of Adam and Eve leaving the Garden of Eden after eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil: 'And the Lord God made cootis of skynnys to Adam and Eve his wijf, and clothide hem; and seide, Lo! Adam is maad as oon of vs, and knowith good and yuel': Genesis 3.20-22 (Wycliffe version). It quite possibly means, 'Wear leather to combat the weather'.
[1051] 'Wesh' = urine; 'Tea' = 'the one', as opposed to the other; 'whilk' = a variant of 'which'; 'farst' = the furthest. *OED*. Therefore, 'Urine in one hand and shite in the other and by which he will be stuffed full'.
[1052] Literally, 'Where will you sit on Christmas Eve?'

[74.] Strange words
To Leather } a mans hide; i.e. to stesh, lash with a leasl; beat Bacill.
Leashe }
Bensell }
A wandell; i.e. a bushell Windermer.
A Martindale potle: 8 quarts.[1053]
To Daker; i.e. to strive or contend, taken from men of that name; used also in Scotland. Testibus Mr Lawson.
To Spang-whew.[1054] Sc. to beat, they say it is takeing a spelke (i.e. a plyable stick) & bending it till both ends almost mete, & so letting it goe with all its spring & force upon a man, so that one end thereof may hurt him; but is commonly used for bating Leverets.

[1053] 'Potle' or 'potel': a unit of capacity used chiefly for liquids (but also for corn and other dry goods, and, rarely, for butter), equal to half a gallon. *OED*. At two gallons, clearly the Martindale potle had an enviable capacity.
[1054] To 'spanghew' or 'spangwhew': to throw or jerk violently; to cause an object to fly into the air; to toss with violence. *OED*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 1]

[Town of Appleby and its Parishes]



Figure 1.1.1. Appleby Castle. I.57.

[Machell's Research Method: Appleby]

[I.57]

1st of Apelby: In respect to the Town, which is the County Town & hath in 2 Parish Churches: St Michael & St Lawrance; but 1st of St Lawrence in regard of the Castle which is the capital or chief house of Westm'land. The Parish of St Lawrence commonly Apelby, lyes on the west side the River Eden, and is a vicaridge rated &c.
Show when a parsonage, how & when changed, taxed for the vicar; what chaple pertaneing \ domestic or / parochichiæl. Describe the church; school; hospital; castle. Is St Michael in the Town of Apleby.
The chappels in the lordships?
In Barwis Lordship speake of chappells one for all, out of [blank] & confirm it by the writeing in our evidence chest.

[I.171]

1. The church with what observable in it: patrone.
2. How many hamlets & vilages.
3. How many lordships & manner houses & in them; \ each / one. 1. What fam[ily].
4. What things remarkable; as antique quarries, wood, wells, waters.

[I.172]

Method for Apelby
Because it is not wholy in one Parish but has 2 Parish Churches in it I must of necessity speake the Towne 1st & the Court in it \ & / then of the churches.
Abalby is the Countie Towne & chief place of Westmorland, haveing in it 2 Parish Churches. I will first speake of it in particular with the remarkable places there in; and then of the Churches with the villages & Lordships thereunto belonging, with other things which are worthy remarke;[1] Which is the method I propose to my selfe (the particular and previous account only excepted) in the other parishes of the County of Westm'land.

[1] MS: 'belonging ~~together~~ with other thinkes ~~& places~~ which are worthy remarke.'

[I.172A][2]

[Notes on Tottenham High Cross] [3]
Two parts.
2ly: Civil. Sc. into 4 wards with their names & boundaries.
3ly: into two unequal parts by the highway with an History of it.
5ly: by Lordships with an account of great Tenants, calld in the parsonage Court-Baron: & the other five Courts are joynd all in one & belong to my Lord Colerane.[4]
6: Of the Woods
7. Of the church: for a country village a reasonable large & fair one with a pleasant tuneable ring of 5 Bells standeth upon an hill envyroned on the West, North and East with by the River Mose[elle]. How accommodated to the Towne for distance.
8. The new river & History of it.
So much in general.

The second booke treateth in particular of diverse memorable historical things which doe sort themselves by Ternaryes or Threes. 1st Ternary are 3 Countreyes. The 2. Cross, Hermitage, Altar; the 3. Three proverbs; the 4th 3 Fountanes; the 5. three Bridges; 6. 3 Wonders; 7th 3 Characters &.[5]

[I.172B][6]

ad lib Fam Machell et Lib West…[7]
Nomen (.... ...) quasi .... quod notitiam facit. Nam per id quo quidquid nominamus, illu[d] agnoscitur:[8] i.e. & therefore divine [Providence] do willeth that names doe agree [to] things signified. That is, that such names be imposed, or given unto them which may express them (if it be possible) to the full. And that name or word which is not such, the same Author termeth o)/νομα γελοι~ον: a ridiculous & foolish name.

{Method}
Bedwells definition of Tottenham,[9] which he doth \ begin / by showing:
1. In the Definition (as he calls it): In what Hundred & County; how far from London; what Antiquities; what Quantity; How bounded; the Extent or Dime[nsion]; in Breth from N. to S.; in Lenth from [E. to W.][10] In the whol circuit or compo[sition] The forme.
2. The etymology
3. Longitude & Latitude
4. Soyle & aire
5. Division: 1. Natural by a River in 2 parts.[11]

---

[2] A small note-page, bound in at a later date.
[3] This page consists of Machell's notes on William Bedwell's research on Tottenham, Middlesex. An Arabist and mathematician, Bedwell was part of a circle of scholars at Pembroke College, Cambridge, concerned with biblical studies and Semitic languages. He was vicar of Tottenham High Cross from 1607. See Alastair Hamilton, 'Bedwell, William (bap. 1563, d. 1632)'. *ODNB*; and see below, I.172B.
[4] The 1st Lord Coleraine purchased the manor of Tottenham in 1625: see Jean Pegram, Jean (1987), 'From Manor House... to Museum', *Haringey History Bulletin, vol. 28*, Hornsey Historical Society (London, 1987); his son, the 2nd Lord Coleraine, lived in Tottenham for most of his life: see Nicholas Doggett, ' Hare, Henry, second Baron Coleraine (bap. 1636, d. 1708), antiquary and architect'. *ODNB*.
[5] The rest of the page has perished.
[6] Half of this small note page has been scored through, and the right-hand part lost in a later binding operation. The Latin is given with parts missing; much of the first line is illegible.
[7] The rest of this line is obscured by the binding.
[8] 'For something is recognised through that by which we name it.'
[9] William Bedwell (bap. 1563, d. 1632), *A Brief Description of the town of Tottenham High Crosse Middlesex, together with an historical narration of such memorable things as there are to be seen and observed* (London, 1631).
[10] Words in square brackets tentatively replace text obscured by rebinding.
[11] A margin comment placed here has perished and now reads, '{This Lordship was […] the Midle Ward when a great tow[n]}.'

[I.176]

[Of the more remarkable places in Apleby]

The most remarkable places are:
1. The 2 Churches I must speake of hereafter distinctly by themselves as the General heads of their respective parishes.
2. The Castle, 3. ~~The St Nicol~~ The Fryory; 4. St Nichol & St George; 5. the Hospitall; 6. the Schoole; 7. The Towne hall; 8. the Jaol; 9. the Bridge; 10. The House of Correction.

The Castle
It is situated [blank] & consists of 2 parts: viz. the Romane Tower, & the body of the castle. The tower is supposed to be build by the Romanes and has indeed bin a distinct thing of it selfe, moted & walled about circular wise {ut res est dic[tum] opidum est situ amoe[no], suaque semper in principem fide, et in exteros humanitate inter celeberrimas Britaniae urbes commemorandum.}[12]

[Machell's Notes: I.176]

(vid. when Yorke Charter granted? If it was in Henry I time) When London &c.
They are a Barony in themselves {Quaere?}
They have a Towne hall & Prison & House of Correction & the assises have bin kept here since before date se … ante parochias.[13] The Townes armes are 3 lyons passant gardant
{1. Situation; 2. Description, with relation of accidents in pa …[14] and repares; 4. Inhabitants with their descents}[15]

[B.]
Notes, [Charters and Documents] concerning the shreivalty of Westm'land and other liberties and rights in the same county[16]

[I.160]

{Sheriff}
The Shrivealty of Westm'land was of old a great regality & ever esteemed the most noble jewell in the cabinet till they re[n]derd it vile by putting it \ this jewel into a / ~~into~~ mean mens, which before was execute by the best of the gentry. A jewel, be it never so rich, is but sordid in a swines snout.

[I.161]

Inter Placita de Assis[is] & Iuratis &c.[17] De warranto[18] Anno 20 Ed. 1. [1291-92]
Idonea de Leybourne was impleaded in a quo warranto, for useing of free chases, free warren, amends for the breaking of the Assise of Ale;[19] wafes[20] in certaine townes there sett downe to the number of 20. She sayeth that she clameth free chace and free warren in Apleby and Marton, Kings Meburne, Kirkby Stephen & Lancton, and not anywhere else; and she clameth amends for the Assise of Ale broken; and waifes in Marton, Kings Meburne & Kirkby Stephen, and in the moyity[21] of the towne of Overton &c. And she sayeth that she clameth the premises as parcell of the inheritance of Robert de Veteripont, her father, whose coheire she is together with Robert the son of Isabell her sister, which

[12] 'As the matter is, the said fortress is in a delightful situation, maintaining loyalty always to the Crown, and to be marked among the most famous cities of Britain for its civilised attitude to foreigners.'
[13] 'Before the parishes.'
[14] Indistinct word.
[15] Much of the margin comment at the page foot is obscured by the binding or has perished.
[16] This title originally appeared on MS. I.161.
[17] 'Among the pleas of the assizes and jurors etc.'
[18] 'By what authority'.
[19] For the Assize of Bread and Ale, see I.S. Hornsey, *A History of Beer and Brewing* (Cambridge, 2003), 292.
[20] Waifs: see the English Glossary.
[21] Moiety: see the English Glossary.

Robert is within aige; and the jury testify this clayme to be true, and say that Robert of Vepount died seased of the said libertyes. De warranto Ed. I.[22] {Robert Clifford son of Rodger and Isabell Vipont.}

§1. In placito de quo warranto et Rayman anno 20^0 Ed. I. Rot 2.0.[23]
The king demands by William Ing against Idonea ~~of~~ \ de / Leyburn, 1600 acres of wood, & 1000 acres of pasture in Kirkby Stephen and Brougham, & the Castle of Brough under Stanemore, and the mannours of Apleby, Kings Meburne, Browham & Kirkby Stephan. She sayeth that she clameth in cop[ar]tnary[24] with Robert of Clifford, the sonn of Isabell, her sister, & because Robert is within aige it is adjudged that the plea shall demur or stay.\ placita de Juratis &c: 6 Ed. 1. [1277-78]. /

§3. \ Placita de Juratis &c. 6. Ed. 3 [1332-1333] / Jurat et Assis Anno 7^o Ed. 1. [1278-79] / in Rot ultimo {Jurati presentant quod Henricus Senex i.e. Henry I}[25]
Burgus de Apleby venit per 12.[26] {Henricus Senex i.e. Henry 1. [1111-1112]}
The jury present that where \ as / Old Henry, granted to the Burgesses of Apleby such libertyes as the citizens of Yorke have, and King John confirmed the same, and they say that King John gave the Shrivaltye of Westmorland to Robert of Vipount and his heirs, who first hindred the said burgesses to use returne of writts and pleas of Wither~~m~~ \n/an.

II. An inquisition Munday after midlent Sunday: {Anno 3^0 Ed. I. [1274-75]}
Coram rege Ed. I. / Paschae Anno 3^0 [1275] majus et minus.[27]
Westmorland Rot. 12. Placitum Inter &c[28] {Entered}[29]
§ I. A plea betwene the Burgesses of Apleby, plantiffs, and Roger \ de / Clifford younger & Isabell his wife, & Roger \ de / Leyburne and Idonia his wife, defendants, for that the defendants exact of those Burgesses other services than they ought. The defendants say that King John gave to one Robert ~~of Vipont~~ \ de Veteripont / their ancestor Appleby & Brough [~~an Inq. upon this III^0 Ed. 1~~] see p. 48 Lib. 5 {Entered in Ap[pleby]}

§ 2. Paschae[30] 4^0 Ed. 1. [1276] Maius et minus.[31] Westmorland Rot. 30. Judgment is given for the defendants sherifes.

§ 4. Paschae 8^0 Ed. I. [1280] majus.[32] Westmorland Kendall Rot. 25.
An order made by the king and his councell how many servants the Shireue of Westmorland in Kendall ought to have for service of the king, and also an Inquisition lecta digna.[33] {Entered in Ap[pleby].}

[I.162]

{vide post Anno 13. Ed. 1.}[34]
Coram Rege Ed. I. Paschae, 14 Maius. Westmorland. Rot. 25.
A judgment given for the shrieue of Westmorland against the Burgesses of Appleby: For that the Burgesses clame to have retorne of writts & other libertyes; because the Burgesses appear not, Ideo

[22] From a warrant of Edward I. Crossed-through text here repeats the paragraph's title: '~~inter placita de Assisi & Iur &c~~.'
[23] 'Rotulus': roll.
[24] 'Copartnery': from 'coparceners' or 'coparticipates': 'those who are to have equal portion in the inheritance of an ancestor and by law are the issue female in default of heirs male, come in equality to the lands of their ancestors and make partition of the lands.' See Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (2nd edn, 1732), C.
[25] 'In the last roll the jurors present that the old Henry (Henry I).'
[26] 'The Burgesses of Appleby came.'
[27] 'In the presence of Edward I., at Easter, in the third year of Edward I.: more or less.'
[28] 'Plea between.'
[29] 'Plea entered.'
[30] 'Easter.'
[31] 'More or less.'
[32] 'At Easter in May 1280.'
[33] 'Duly recited.'
[34] 'After November 1284.'

vicecomes sine die.[35] {Entered inter Cart no 1.}

Anno 15. Ed. 1. [1287] Coram Rege Ed. I. Pasch: 15. Westmorland Rot. 10.
§6. \ Williesmus de Goldrington & / William of Goldrington & others were attached to answer Isabell, who was the wife of Roger Clifford the Younger and Idonia, her sister, for causeing John of Apleby and others to be appealed in the towne of Apleby for the death of Nicholas Strange &c. Whereas appeales of Death of man ought not to be holden before any but the King or his justices de Banco,[36] Justices Itinerant in the shire or shires in their countries,

{§7. Ed. 1. [1287-88] confirm[atum] Antiquae cartae de Apeby vide post}[37]

{§8. 18. Ed. 1. [1289-90] carta libertatis pro diversis clameis Term Retro in Tur.}[38]
Whereupon the said Isabell Shrieuess complaneth. Judgment is given that the defendants shall forfaite to the said Isabell, and the Liberties of the towne of Apleby seised unto the Kings hands, and are in the same plea repleiaed.
{Entered in Cart de Appleby} Communia de Term Michs. Anno 23 finente & Incipiente 24 Ed. I Ro. 9 in dorso.[39]

Collections Henrie
Villa de Apelby sesita in manum Regis quia homines ejusdem villae tenuerunt formifica placita in villa sua sine warranto socii. Anno 24 Rol. 14. e Tur.[40]
That Appleby was a Corporation in the time of Henry 3., haveing liberties equall with Yorke, which privaledges wer confirmed by King John. And Robert de Veteripont, the first of that name and first hereditarie Shireve, was the first allso who hindered the said Burgesses to use returne of writts and pleas of Witherman.
Ranulfus de Langeton and Alicia, his wife, who was daughter of Thomas, son of Patritius, whose heire she was, had sute of c\l/ame coram jus warijs domini Regis apud Apleby, with Thomas de Hellebeck for 2 oxgangs of land in Hellebeck, which they released to Thomas & \ his / heires. His testibus Domino Willielmo de Bampton, tunc Vicecomite Westmarie, Domino Roberto de Askeby Domino Johanne de Montvile Domino Richard de Suleby, Thomas de Musgrave tunc senescallo Westmariæ,[41] Willelmo de Warthecop, Johe de Barton,[42] Hugo Carpenter, Richardo filio Beatricie, Willielmo de Sowerby et alys.[43]

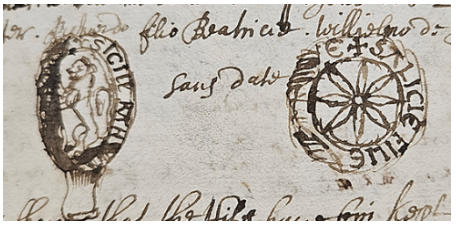


Figure. 1.1.2. Seals 'sans date'. I.62.

[35] 'Therefore, the sheriff at a later date.'
[36] Justices in the Court of Common Pleas.
[37] 'Checked at an old document at Appleby: see below.'
[38] 'A charter of liberty for various claimants in the Term Return Day, in the Tower of London.'
[39] 'The commons [court of common pleas] of the Michaelmas term at the end of year 23 and the beginning of year 24 of Edward I. [1295-96], in Roll 9 in the back.'
[40] 'Town of Appleby taken into the hand of the king because men of that town held [?] pleas in his town without warrant.'
[41] 'At that time Lord of Westmorland.'
[42] Or Burton; here there is an indistinguishable letter: a/u.
[43] 'And with others.'

This shows that the Asises have bin kept at Apleby anciently ever before the time of usuall dateing. I suppose it was in the I of Henry 3[d] [1216-1217] that this writeing was made. And it may be seen amongst the sine date[44] writeing of Hellebeck, upon the dorse of which I have writ: T.D.[45] & Lanheton, 6ost.

[I.163]

St Lawrence Appleby
Vid plura[46] in the Common Place Rolls, Booke of Pedegrees, Notes General

[I.164]

Mr Dugdall has drawn these without crownes, & I have seen a draught at an instrument of John Marshall, vicar of St Michaels,[47] to Thomas Lord Clif[ford] 4° November XXXI. of Henry 6. [1452] where the lyons in the flag are plane without crownes; the other in the shield seemd crowned: Sc. 2 upermost, the lower not. They appear'd to mee, when I saw the impression, to be crowned, & I have writ to be farther inform'd. Mr Dugdal was mistaken in Machells armes in Aple[by] church window (Sc. St Lawrence), putting the dogs without collers where as they are collerd, & several other things in that Visitation 1654, & he may possibly be out in this, sed quaere.[48] This in the reverse is better drawn than any I have seen.

[I.165]



Figure: I.1.3. Appleby Seal. I.165.

[I.167]

Inter Recepta Domini Regis Caroli in Curia Recepte scaear[ij] Sub custod[odia] Thesararij et camerarionis ibidem resident[ium]. Inter alia continetur ut sequitur. Placita Coram Domino Rege apud Westm'land a die pasche in quindecim dies. Anno Ed.1. 13[0] Rotul. 26 Preceptum fuit vicecomiti quod esset hic &c.[49] i.e. The Shireue was commanded to be present here, to an[swer] this day to the Kinges Burgers of the Towne of Appleby, concerning a plea. Whereas the wellbeloved the Kinges Burgers of Appleby by theire Charters of the Kings progenitours, Kings of England, ought to have returne of all the Kings writts concerneing themselves in their towne aforesaid, and there to make Summons and Attachments according to the Tennure of the said Brieves, and to Answer to the Kings writts which concerne themselves, before the King or his justices whomsoever, to be impleaded; by which our Lord the King might otherwise command[50] his Shireue to returne to the said Burgesses such like writts of the king, in due and accustomed forme, and in the same words that they are directed unto the

[44] 'Without a date.'
[45] An indistinct word follows.
[46] 'See further' [or 'several'].
[47] Bongate.
[48] 'But query'. According to Edward Bellasis, this window had stained glass (put in wrongly, thus making the dogs run inaccurately to the sinister) of Thornburgh quartering Machell. It was seen as late as 1855, though it has since disappeared, E. Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 419 footnote.
[49] 'Received in the Court of His Majesty, King Charles. Receipts of the Treasury under the custody of the Treasurer and Steward resident there. Among other things, the contents are as follows: Pleas before His Majesty the King in Westmorland from Easter Day for fifteen days. In the 13th year of Edward I. [1284-85], Roll 26. It was enjoined on the sheriff that he should be here etc.'
[50] MS: '{alias whereby our Lord the King might formally command}by which our Lord the King might otherwise command'.

Shireue; & the Shireue should permit them to answer to the Kings writts before the King or his Justices, to be impleaded and to make Summons & Attachments in the Kings Towne aforesaid. The Shrieve, contemneing or setting att nought the Kings command aforesaid, hath don nothing of this kinde there to the manifest prejudice or wrong of the said Burgesses and their Libertyes, as is showne to the King in behalf of those Burgesses by their [~~long~~]complaint. Att which the King wondereth, and therefore doth recommand and firmly injoyne the said Shriue that he permitt and suffer the foresaid Burgesses to have such retornes in forme aforesaid, and to answer to the Kings writts before the King or the Kings justices, to be impleaded and to make their Summons & Attachmentes there without any difficulty, according to the tenore of the forsaid Charters, & the tenore allso of the Kings mandamus directed to the Shriue. And the foresaid Shrieue came & was ready to show & verify that the forsaid Baliues never had retorne of writts, sommons or attachments; and the Baliues aforesaid did not appear. Ideo dictum est vicecomiti quod eat inde sine die; et predicti Baluis et plegis {pledges or suretye} Ideo dictum est vicecomiti quod eat sine die, et predicti Balivi et plegij Sui {pledges or suretye} de prosequendo in mi[sur]a. Queratur nomina plegiorum.[51]
II Placita Coram R. de Heng\g/ham (Ibid reservata) de Anno 15º Regis Ed. Proximo die post med Quardragess. Rott. XIII.[52] {N.B. Entered in Cart. De Ap.}
Willielmus de Goldrington &c.: William de Goldrington, John his brother, Thomas de Breton, Hugh de Granger, William Le Tayler, John de Karliol, Will Berewys – Amicia the daughter of Mr Goldrington, Simon Kemp (and others I omit) in mia pro plur defaultis.[53]

[I.168]

{Nicholas de Hastigmont \ Alice vx /
Amicia – T. Goldrington
Christian = W. de Goldrington
Isabell = William Thrilkeld
Emma = Gilbert Wherton}

The same William Goldrington and others were attached to an answer to Isabell, who was wife of Roger de Clifford, the young Idonea, the sister of the same Isabell, touching a plea. Why and when an Appeale concerning the death and killing of a man & other fellonyes committed in the Kingdome) if the King may or ought or hath bin accustomed (according to the law and custom of same kingdome) to be instituted, pleaded or held before the King or his Justices of the bench, or before his itinerary justices by the kings writs, or before the Kings shrieves in his countyes & keepers of the pleas of his Crowne in the same Countyes without the Kings writts, & in no other court of the said King. The forsaid William de Goldrington and others, have by Amice, the wife of Thomas de Goldrington, Christian the wife of William de Goldrington, Isabel, the wife of William Threlkeld, and Emma, the wife of Gilbert Wherton, without the Kings writt & without any reasonable cause, procured Robert de Appelby, John le Fraunces & Robert the son of Alexander, to be appealed in the Kings Court of the Burrow of Appleby, touching the death of Nicholas de Hasting, the brother of the said Amice, Christian, Isabel & Emme, & plead & hold that Appeal in the same court. Although Alice, who was wife of the foresed Nicholas de Hastings, doth Appeal to the foresaid Robert de Appleby touching the death of the foresaid Nicholas her som times husband, in the county as the manner is. \ But they have taken by force & armes & / have[54] the forsaid John le Fraunces, & & Robert, fil Alexandri, soe appealed with in the Liberty of the forsaid Isabel & Idonea (~~taken by force Armes & have imprisoned~~) to the prejudice of the King and the said Isabel & Idonea, and the noe small hurt of their own libertyes, to the manifest contempt of the King, against the Laws and Customes of the Kingdom, and against the peace &c. Whereupon they complane that whereas all attachments of Appeal touching the death of a man ought to belong to the Shirieve, nor may the said Appeales be determined, nor indeed are they accustomed soe to be, without Justices (supplying the Kings place, otherwise called the)

[51] 'Therefore, it was declared to the Sheriff that he should depart without a date of return, also the aforesaid Bailiffs and their sureties to prosecute [matters] in due measure. He should inquire the names of the sureties.'
[52] 'II pleas before R. de Hengham (reserved at the same place) in the 15th year of Edward. On the day following mid-Lent. Roll XIII.'
[53] '.... in due measure according to a greater number of defaults.'
[54] A word here is obscured by the binding but the crossed-through passage following it suggests its meaning.

Lieutenants of the King, or Justices of the Bench, or Itinerary Justices, or Shirieves in their Countyes, or keepers of the pleas of the Crowne in some Countyes. The foresaid William de Goldrington & others, on Wednesday next before the Nativity of St John Baptist, in the 14 of our now Kings Reigne, held an Appeal touching the death of Nicholas de Hastings, at the sute of Amice, the wife of Thomas de Goldrington, Christian, the wife of William de Goldrington, Isabel, the wife of William de Thrilkeld, & Emme, the wife of Gilbert de Querton, which Amice or in truth, & others, appealed the foresaid John le Fraunces & others, touching the death aforesaid; by whose Appeale the foresaid John & others were attached and detayned in prison, and had a day given them, until Wednesday next after the feast of the Appostles Peter & Paul in the same yere at which they prolonged their Court of Appleby until Thorsday, the feast of St James the Apostle, att which day appeared personally the foresaid Isabel as shiruess of Westmorland, & brought the Kings Writt to the aforesaid Baliues of the Court foresaid, that they should not any further hold that Appeal or the like, in the Court aforesaid contra prohibitum Regis;[55] & allso an other Writ to the foresaid Amice & others, that they should not follow their Appeal &c. Notwithstanding the foresaid Baliffs held their Court touching the Appeal aforesaid, i.e. on Wednesday next before the Feast of St Lawrence; and afterwards came one John Cromwell & brought the Kings Writt to deliver the foresaid John & Robert, whome the Baliffs indeed delivered; & after, the same Baliffs at the sute of one Adam, being under aige, who appealed the foresaid John & Robert touching the death aforesaid, tooke the same John & Robert agane and held their Court concerning the same Appeale. Whereupon, they say that they are damnifyed to the value of 1000 li & theirupon bring their Sute. And ergo William & others appeared by their attorney, and could not gainsay or contradict it {Entered in Ap. Charters}. Therefore it is adjudged that the foresaid William de Goldrington & others should make satisfaction to the foresaid Isabell & Idonea, & the Liberty of the foresaid Towne of Appleby should be into the Kings hands et William et alij mia'.[56] Afterward appeared before the Lieutenants or Deputyes of Our Lord the King at Westminster, John de Goldrington, with the Baliues of Appleby, & desired the forsaid Liberty by Plevine,[57] & it was granted &c. until a moneth after Michaelmas Day, wheresoever &c. And that they might have a writt to repleuie &c.

[I.169]

Iter[um] Carta de An[no] 14. Ed 1. No. 21.
In Tur. London.
Confirmatio Antiquae Cartae de Appleby in Com[i]t[atu] Westmorland per Hen[ricum] 2 Johan[em] & Hen[ricum] 3rd.[58]

Rex Archiepiscopis etc. Salutem; Inspeximus Cartam Confirmationis quam D[ominus] Henric[us] Rex Pater Noster fecit Burgensibus de Appelby in Hec Verba ... Henr[icus] D[e]i gratia Rex Anglie Dom[inus] Hib[er]n[ie] & Dux Norman[ie] et Aquitaniae, et comes Andeg[avie] Archiespisc[opis], Episcopis, Abbibus, Prioribus, comit[atibus], Baronibus, Just[iciari]is, Forestariis, vicecom[itibus], Prepositis, Ministris, et Omnibus Balivis et fidelibus suis, salutem; Inspeximus cartam D[omi]ni I Regis patris nostri, quam fieri fecit Burgensibus nostris de Appelby in hec verba. Johannes D[e]i Gratia Rex Angl[ie], Dom[inus] Hib[er]n[i]e, Dux Normanie Aquitan[ie] et Comes Andeg[avie], Archiepisc[opis], Abbibus, Comitibus, Baronibus, Iust[iciari]is, Vicecom[itibus], et Omnibus Ministris et fidelibus suis salutem: Sciatis nos concessisse et p[re]senti carta confirmasse Burgensibus nostris de Appleby omnes libertates et liberas consuetudines, quas Burgenses nostri de Ebor[aco] habent. Quare volumus et firmiter p[re]cipimus quod p[re]dicti Burgenses nostri de Appleby h[ab]eant bene et in pace, libere et quiete, plenarie et integre et honorifice omnes libertates et liberas consuetudines quas Burgenses nostri de Eborac[o] habent sicut Rex Henricus Pater noster eas illis concessit, et carta sua rationabiliter confirmavit, et prohibemus ne quis eas inde disturbet. Preterea dedimus et concessimus eisdem Burgensibus nostris de Appleby, Libertates et Quietantias, de

[55] 'Against the king's prohibition.'
[56] Mia = misericordia, i.e. acquitted. 'Should be into hands of the King, and both William and the others acquitted.'
[57] Plevin or (French) Plevine: 'A pledge, assurance, or warrant; surety. Also, through plevin: on bail'. *OED*.
[58] 'Another Charter of the year 14. Ed 1. No. 21. in the Tower of London. Confirmation of the Ancient Charter of Appleby in the County of Westmorland, by Henry II, John, and Henry III.'

Theolonio et stallagio et pontagio, et lestagio per Totam Terram nostram Anglie qu[ae] ad nos pertinet p[re]ter quam in civitate London nisi forte cives Ebor[aci] quietantias inde habeant, per libertates suas, in civitate London. Concessimus eis Burgen[sibus] de Appleby, tenend[o] in manu sua; reddendo inde firmam quam debe[n]t vicecom[iti] nostro de Westm[or]land apud Appleby; sc[ilicet] medietatem ad fest[um] S[anc]t[i] Michael[is] et Alteram medietatem ad Pascha.
Testibus Gaufro fil[io] Petri com[itis] Essex, Will[iam]o Briweir, Hugone Bard, Will[iam]o Stutevill, Ric[ard]o constabulario castri, Hugone de Nevil, Simon de Patteshall. Dat p[er] manum Simonis Archid[iaconi] Wallen[sis] et Johan[n]is de Gray. Apud Ebor[acum] xxvj Marc[ij] regni nostri Anno 1o ... Nos igitur concessionem donatione[m] et confirmationem p[re]dictam gratam et ratam habentes, pro nobis et Heredibus nostris, eam p[re]dictis Burgensibus nostris de Appleby p]re]senti carta nostra concedimus et confirmavimus.
His testibus, venerabil[i]b[us] patribus P. Winton[ensi], J. Bathon[ensi], et W. Carliolen[si] episc[opis], H. de Burgo com[ite] cant[uarie] Justi[ciari]o nostro, R comite castr[i] et Lind[i], Johan[ne] de Lacy constab[ulario] castri, Stephano de Segrave, Rad[olf]o fil[io] Nicholai, Godefro de Gaucrum, Rich[ard]o fil[io] Hugonis et Alyis.
Dat[a] p[er] manum venerabilis patris A. Cicestr[ensis] epi[scopi], Cancellar[ij] nostr[i]: apud Westm[inste]r 5º Maij Anno r[egni] nostri 16º
Entered Inter Cartas de Burgo de Appleby. [59]
{H. 3d.[60] Henry the 3rd confirmed onely the charte of Appleby ergo they had it before.}
{1. John [1199-1200]}
{Henry 2. confirmed the charter}
{stallagio = toll, stallage}
{lastage}[61]
{The Burrow}
{Constable of Chester}

[59] 'The King to the Archbishops etc. Greetings. We have viewed the Charter of Confirmation which Lord Henry the King, our father, made for the townsfolk of Appelby, in these words ... Henry, by Grace of God King of England, Lord of Ireland & Ruler of Normandy and Aquitaine, and Earl of Anjou, sends greetings to the Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, Earls, Barons, Justices, Foresters, Sheriffs, Reeves, Ministers, and to all the Bailiffs and his loyal people. We have viewed the charter of the Lord King the First, our father, which he caused to be made for our townsfolk of Appelby, in these words. John by Grace of God King of England, Lord of Ireland, Ruler of Normandy and Aquitania and Earl of Anjou, sends greetings to the Archbishops, Abbots, Earls, Barons, Justices, Sheriffs, and to all his ministers and faithful people: Know ye that we have conceded and by this present Charter have confirmed to our townsfolk of Appleby all the liberties and free customs which our townsfolk of York hold. Wherefore we will it and we strongly enjoin that our aforesaid townsfolk of Appleby hold well and in peace, freely and quietly, fully and wholly and honourably, all the liberties and free customs which our townsfolk of York hold, just as King Henry our father granted them to them and duly confirmed them by his charter, and we forbid that anyone should alter them from this. Moreover, we have given and granted to the same our townsfolk of Appleby the liberties and immunities of toll and stallage and pontage and lastage throughout our whole land of England which we govern except that in the city of London, unless perchance the townsfolk of York hold immunities, through their liberties, in the city of London. We have made grant to those townsfolk of Appleby, by holding in their own hand [and] by returning thence the payment which is due to our sheriff of Westmorland at Appleby; viz. a moiety at the feast of Saint Michael and the other at Easter.
Witnesses: Gaufrus son of Peter, Earl of Essex; William Briweir; Hugo Bard; William Stutevill; Richard warden of the castle; Hugo de Nevil; Simon of Patteshall. Handed over by Simon Archdeacon of Wales and John de Gray. At York the 26th of March in the 1st year of our reign ...
We, therefore, holding the grant, gift and confirmation aforesaid agreeable and valid, for us and our heirs, do grant and have confirmed it to the aforesaid our townsfolk of Appleby by our present charter.
Witnesses: The venerable fathers P. Bishop of Winchester, J. Bishop of Bath, and W. Bishop of Carlisle; Henry of the Borough [and] earl of Canterbury, our Justice; R. earl of the castle and of Lincoln; John of Lacy, warden of the castle; Stephen of Segrave; Radolfus son of Nicholaus; Godefry of Gaucrum; Richard son of Hugo; and others. Handed over by the venerable father A. Bishop of Chichester, our Chancellor. At Westminster, the 5th of May in the 16th year of our reign. Entered among the charters of the Town of Appleby'.
[60] Superimposed on '2nd'.
[61] See the English Glossary.

{16. Ed. I. [1287-88]}

[Machell's Notes: I.171] [62]

Se Appleby treated on per vicos Ogleb. Notes.[63]
Se the Charter pag[e] praecedent.
The County Court was kept in Apleby Castle, as by a verdict to Mr Elmore Machell 30th December Annis ~~Phill~~ et Mariae 4^0 et 5^0.[64]
Abbotts of Shap
Rich. Abbat 1426: 4. Hen.
Bishops of Carlisle: see at Buly: John, Bishop of Carlisle, 1426. 4. Henry 6.

[I.232]

[Charter] (occurit in Castro de Skipton)[65]
Apelby and Bur[66] cum omnibus pertinentijs suis, together with all the balifship (or Shriuealty) ~~of~~ and the rent of the county of Westmorland, and with the services of all our tenents there, who hold not of us by Knights Service: to have & to hold of us and our heires, to him and his heires who shal issue from him and his now espoused wife, by the service of 4 Knights for all service, reserveing to us and our heires all pleas which belong to the Crowne with our regal dignatie and saveing also that the said Robert nor his, shall not make any waste or distruction in Brullis de Winefeld {see a booke called *Forest Laws* which sayes no purlues till after his reign}[67] i.e. in the Purlews of Whinfeld, nor hunt in them so long as wee live, unlesse the said Robert be corporally present \ i.e. personally present / wherefore wee will and firmely command, that the said Robert and his heires, after him, have and injoy all the premises of us and our heires as is aforesaid: in woods & in planes, in wa[rrens][68] and in paths, in medows and pastures, in mores & in marshes (in stagnis et vivarijs) {In stanks & fish ponds} in ponds and in rivers, in waters & mills, and in all places with their libertyes and free customes, as is aforesaid. Test. Bald: Comite Albimer. William de Broos, Richard de Torneham, Petro de Stock, Allano Basset, Eudon de Bellocamp, Colino Clerico. Dat per manus Hugonis de Well, apud Troare 28 Octob. Anno R. nostri $5^{0.}$

From this Charter it appeares that Brough and Whinfell doe both belong to Apelby as Apendices thereof: and I suppose that Browham Castle is allso included*, tho not mentioned there:[69] For I finde not an particular grant of it to the Viponts, and yett in the partition of the 2 sisters which came to be coheres (as hereafter shall be showne) it is sufficiently manyfest that the Viponts were possessed of ~~this~~ that allso, & the Castle of Mallerstang which is called Pendragon.

---

[62] MS: '~~Apperby. Ascome. Akaby Windw. Askeby Mag. Askby Urb~~ [….] ~~Robert Swinburn 8 Ed. 2. Robert de~~ […] ~~8 Ed. 2. 8 Ed 2 p. 5~~ [...] ~~8 Ed 2. John D. Robert Bradewood R. 1. 2. 6. 2 6 8 acres 1 Ed 2 Hors Walteri de Somer o~~' In the MS; placed at the foot of the page upside down and scored-through.
[63] 'See Appleby treated on by small towns [in] Ogilby notes': John Ogilby, *Britannia … an illustration of the kingdom of England and dominion of Wales: by a geographical and historical description of the principal roads thereof* (1675, 1698). See C. Withers, 'Ogilby, John (1600-1676), publisher and geographer'. *ODNB*.
[64] The early regnal years of Mary I were 1: Alone, 1553-1554. 2: After her marriage to Philip of Spain, 1554-1558. As these periods were often calculated separately and 'Phill' is scored through, Machell's wording is opaque.
[65] 'Occurs in Skipton Castle.'
[66] Word blotted; presumably Brough.
[67] The book is probably by John Manwood: *A Treatise of the lawes of the forest ... also a treatise of the pourallee ... whereunto are added the statutes of the forest* (1615). During the reign of Henry II [1154-89] about 30 per cent of the country was set aside for royal sport. The forest laws were enacted to protect 'the beasts of the forest' (red, roe, and fallow deer, and wild boar) and the trees and undergrowth which sheltered them. The Assize of the Forest (also known as the Assize of Woodstock) in 1184, resulted in definitive forest laws. None could carry bows and arrows in the royal forest, and dogs' toes were clipped to prevent them pursuing game. Savage penalties for infringements (blinding, mutilation, and castration) were imposed. The forest laws became a major political issue in King John's reign, culminating in the Charter of the Forest (1217), but only in the 14th century, when large areas were disafforested, did the political issue subside. See John Cannon and Robert Crowcroft, 'Forest Laws', in, *A Dictionary of British History* (3rd edn, 2015). Online.
[68] The word is partially obscured by the binding.
[69] MS: 'tho not mentiond ~~made of it~~ \ there:' /

And the foresaid gift is confirmed to Robert de Veteripont† by the Kings discharge to the Barons of the Exchequer sans date (clause 6^0 Johs memb. 4^{th}), which tho placed there in the Tower yet should be referd in my opinion to the king for the \ very first / grant in these words.[70]
Rex &c. Baronibus de Scaccario &c. Sciatis quod dedimus dilecto et fideli nostro Roberto de Veteriponte.Westm'land‡ ad se sustentandum in servitio nostro, et ideo mandamus quod nihil ab eo exigatis, de preterito tempore nec de futuro \ T.G. filio Petri & apud London 14 April &c.[71] /
Which semes to me to be nothing else but a Certificate under the Kings hand, to satisfy his Barons of his grant & to prohibit theire exacting or demanding of any profits from that time forth out of the said County. Yet some are of opinion that this was meant of Custody & Wardship of Hellenisia daughter & heir of William Lancaster, Baron of Kendall.

[Machell's Notes: I.232]
*{See how they come to Browham by quit A. de Browham of Drengage}
†{He had it first in farme onely, which being given afor, the king here discharges the accounting for it}
‡{The bottom of Westm'land; called Westm'land in a peculiar manner.}

[IV.35]

In the Pipe Roll of 23 Hen III [1239-40]
They say that waste is made in the wood of Flakebrigg and two vaccaries or cowhouses carried away thence by the said Prior [of Wetheral], eleven bulls, nine cows and five woodcalves or wild calves 'calves of the woods' were taken thence by him. It seems there were wild cattle in Flakebrig then.
The Manor of Appleby. Concerning it they say: That the Tower there is much impaired and decayed, and the main timber (marennium) much rotted or decayed by default of the Prior because he would not distrain the pledges of the carpenters who ought to re-edify the Tower, who took of Lord John de Veteripont 22 marks for the reparation of the said Tower, and the Soldiers Room (the Barons Chamber) (Camera Item Militum) also, which was weak and decayed much in time of the said John, fell quite down in the time of the Prior and the main timber is annihilated and utterly wasted or destroyed; and of the 50 marks which our Lady the Queen assigned for the repair of the Castle there is not allowed above £10 as they believe.
It seems this was in the time of Henry IIIs Queen; that the Castle and Tower were both very much decayed then, and the Knights or Barons Chamber, as it was called, new fell at that time even to the ground: all which I understand to be meant of the timber, not of the walls. That the Queen did especially concern herself for the reparations of Appleby.

It seems in the 19^{th} of Edward II the Castle of Appleby was escheated into the hands of the King, for he writes to his Constable of his Castle of Appleby for to pay four marks yearly out of his cornage or horngeld to Shap Abbey (which Abbey was endowed therewith by Robert the son of John de Veteripont) due to him from these his tenants.

West of the Church, scarce a stone cast distant, stands the Free School founded by the Burgesses long ago to which were added the benefactions of 2 Queens one of sacred memory and the other of late, as I have more fully shown in my Notes concerning it, given Mr Wase: see his *History of Free Schools*.[72] It is a fair building 3 storeys high and a fair Dwelling house lately added thereto of 2 storeys.

[70] MS: 'And the foresaid gift is confirmed to Robert de Veteripont, by the Kings discharge ~~of~~ \ to / the Barons of the Exchequer sans date (clause 6^0 Johs memb. 4^{th}) ~~which tho~~ placed there in the Tower ~~yet should be referd in my opinion to the king for the \ very first~~ / grant in these words.'
[71] 'King etc. To the barons concerning the treasury etc. Let it be known that we have given to our beloved and faithful Robert de Veteriponte, Westmorland, to maintain himself in our service; and therefore, we decree that you exact nothing from him from time past nor in the future. To T.G. Son of Peter at London 14 April etc.'
[72] Christopher Wase, *Considerations concerning free-schools as settled in England* (Oxford, 1678). Christopher Wase (1627-1690) was a headmaster and classical scholar who conducted a national free-school survey, see R. Hodges, 'Wase, Christopher (1627-1690). *ODNB*. For Wase's use of questionnaires and his connections with Thomas Machell, see P. J. Wallis, 'Westmorland Schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey', *CW2*, 67 (1967), 168-85. References to Wase's survey of free-schools can be found throughout Machell's notes; for example, Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.170; Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.346.

In Dugdales Visitation.
Prospect of Appleby and Castle; Arms in and about C[astle]; Arms in and about the Hospital; Arms in and about the Church. Query if he drew the monuments, else I must. If Addison have not [drawn] the North-west Castle I must draw it and the Cross.[73]

[I.304]

[Inquisition 1314-1315]
Concerning Appleby, take this account out of the Inquisition in the 8. of Edward the 2nd [1314-15], taken att Appleby upon the death of Robert de Clifford of Apleby, that famouse warrior & most loyall subject*. He held of the king in capite,[74] the Barony of Westmorland by the service of 4 knights fees; that is to say, the Castle of Apleby with its precincts of trenches†, of the trenches of the said Castle, the herbage whereof is worth by the yere Xs.[75] And there are 200 & 10 acres of demane land ~~of which an 100 at the least is~~ \ per minus centum, i.e. by the lesser hundred[76] / worth 4d per annum and amounteth to 3li 10.[77] There are allso 25 acres of demane medow, each acres whereof is worth by the yere 16d, and they amount to xxxiiijs‡.[78] There are allso xii free tenents who pay by the yere xxxiiijs & a 1d,[79] viz.: at the feast of St Martin & Pentecost. There are allso 25 tenents who hold diverse tenements in fee, which are burned by the Scotts; and they pay per annum att the same termes 4li⸸.[80] There are allso there 28 oxgangs of land whereof each is worth per annum 4s and amounted to the sum of cl xijs.[81] \ 36. Edward 3. [1362-63] pay 41 shill.[82] / Allso there are there 24 messuages cottarales bur[n]t,[83] each whereof is worth 6d per annum, and amounteth to the sum of xs 6d.[84] Allso there is there one water mill, & is worth yerely 6li 13s 4d. Allso there is there 2 petena {quid ?}[85] et valent per annum 6s 8d.[86] There is allso there 1 parke which is called Flakebrig, and is worth by the yere in prato agistamentis et alijs exitibus,+ Cs.[87] There are also there 2 vivaries,[88] which are worth by the year 2s. Allso the pleas & perquisits of the court are worth there 2s & 8d.
The sum is xxixli xix, iij.[89]

I cannot say this is an account of the whole demane & perquisites of Appleby, because I know well that the ancient estate of the Viponts was \ at this time / under a division, & this Robert seised only of his purpart[90] \ and tho he had the Castle yet [his share was] so much contracted that he had not anything of the Castle Park, / only of his purpart. Howsoever this renders ann undeniable proof of Flakebrig being in the Libertyes of Apleby; of land being then at 4d an acre, medow att 16d; that there were above 25 tenements (for there were 25 tenents which held diverse tenements and they all destroyd and burn'd by the Scotts, as allso 24 messuages. So that tis evident 59 houses were destroyd att the least. And by this allso it appears 235 acres of land belonged att that time unto the demane. And yett I take it to be only ½, for in the 11. of Edward, Roger Cliffords halfe of the demane was

[73] For Edward Addison, see Part 1. Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.539.
[74] ' in chief.'
[75] 10s.
[76] 'Of which a hundred at least.'
[77] £3 10s.
[78] 34s.
[79] 34s 1d.
[80] Terms are rent days.
[81] 112s 0d.
[82] 41s 0d.
[83] Cottars' homes, burned down.
[84] 10s 6d.
[85] 'Quid': what are they? Petena = peat mosses.
[86] 'And are worth 6s 8d per annum.'
[87] 'And is worth annually in its meadows, grazing and other assets, 100s 0d.'
[88] Fishponds. See IV.36, below.
[89] £29 19s 3¼d; 'the court' is the manor court.
[90] Purpart = a share; a part in a division; that part of an estate formerly held in common, which is by partition allotted to any one of the parties. The word was anciently applied to the shares falling separately upon a division or partition of the estate: *Black's Law Dictionary*, http://thelawdictionary.org/purpart/.

valued att xxvii^{li} v^{s} iii. Qu.[91] The Scotts also burned several other places, as hereafter I shall show; & Burgh for one.

Demane of Apleby, given in to be Anno 8. Edward 2. [1314-1315]
\ 4d per acre / 210 \ per minus centum / & 25 medow: 16d per acre. I Edward 3. [1327-1328]
402 arable: 5d acre & 43 acre of medow 10d per acre: 19. Edward 3. [1345-1346]
Tot[al], 188 acre: 6d acre – 21 of medow:1s 6d an acre.
Wilde beast or deer in the parke of Flakebrig: Anno Edward 3. 1^{0} [1327-28]. St Laurence Parish in Apleby: see p.40 ubi plura.[92]

[Machell's Notes: I.304]

{I finde it called vicus de Scytergatt s.d. T. Tho. fil quondam magistri Willielmi de Goldryngton, majoris, puto temp. Henry 3.}[93]
*{8. Ed. 2. È Tur. Lond. Eiscaetria[94] Anno 8. Edward 2. n.62.
†1. Edward 3. 8 acres of waste within trenches herb[age] worth iiij^{s}}
‡{Arable 4d an acre; medow 16 per acres.}[95]
⸸{10. of Henry 5., the Castle & Ma[jor] of Apleby cont. in it selfe v. pag.)

[I.172]

[C.]
[Description of Appleby, primarily taken from Volume I.]
Apelbeya eo Conquestoris[96]

Abalby (for so I thinke fitt to write it) from Aballaba its ancient and Romane name,[97] is now called Apleby, Apulby or Apeby promiscuously and so I finde it writt from the ~~time of the~~ Conquest. A Towne it is of very great antiquity, being a station of Aurelian Moors, \ but of considerable[98] / yeres since then called Aballaba, and the antiquity thereof has bin confirmed, as former writers have testified, by British brickes and ancient inscriptions and of later yeres but Roman Coynes found there, whereof these are 2.

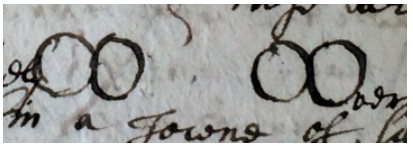


Figure 1.1.4. Sketch of Roman coins. I.172.

It has ~~probably~~ \ not unlikely / bin a Towne of \ very great & / large extent as may be discoverd from the tofts & garden platts which they call gards and which in old evidences \ are called […][99] Gardmae,

[91] £27 5s 3¼d. Query. Machell is here referring to a major raid by the Scots in 1314-15.
[92] 'Where there is more.' See IV.35, above; see also MS IV.36.
[93] 'I find it called the town of Scytergatt (without date, perhaps in the time of Henry 3.). Testator, Thomas, son of one-time magistrate William Goldrington, mayor.'
[94] Escheats from the Tower of London.
[95] 34s.
[96] 'Appleby up to the time of the Conqueror.' For a description of the development of Appleby and its castle during this period, see W. Douglas Simpson, 'The town and castle of Appleby: a morphological study', *CW2*, 49 (1949), 118-33.
[97] This information is repeated on MS II.512. For an alternative view relating to the site of Aballaba and the meaning of Appleby, see Michael Waistell Taylor, *The Old Manorial Halls of Westmorland and Cumberland* (Kendal, 1892), 123-25. For example, 'There is no evidence that Appleby was ever a Roman station at all.' (123); 'The word now written Appleby finds utterance in the folk-speech of the country in a form which may be expressed in letters as "Yæpllbi," which in sound is as close as can be to Hiálpeby.' 'Hiálp was spelled by the monks, and ever after, as Whelp.' At this point, Taylor agrees with some of Machell's 'Malus Catulus or mischievous whelp' theories, but shears them of Roman ancestry (125).
[98] This word is partly obstructed by the binding; 'considerable' has been substituted.
[99] Two words following are indistinct.

\ which are / yet to be seen in many places adjoyneing. Besides that, Stephanus in his *Poeticall Dictionaræ* declares that it was of old Britaniae Insulae Urbs.[100] A city not of England – for that is a later name – but of Britania which was the old name of England in & before the time of the Romens, and \ that / tho there \ be no vestigia of walls, they are nott att all essential to a city; for wee read that Lacedemonia[101] the most beautifull & populous city in all Greece, had noe walls att all./ {Lacedaemonia sic dicit[ur] Lacedaemone Lege et fundatore: Sparta, a Sparto Rege et res – aurata – re eiusdem.}[102]

How be it, afterwards (as most old things doe) it lost much of that grandure and lustre \ which it formerly had / partly by the Romanes recess; who left it to the merciless mercy of the Picts \ & Scots / and partly afterwards as by the Danes? After that by the Saxons, who so much obliterated all that was Romane that excepting the Tower (yet call Ceesars) they left not anything that bere that name; changeing the names not only of the streets but the towne it selfe, calleing it Appleby; ~~partl~~ not so much in regard of its \ most / ancient \ Romane / name as of the plenty of orchards \ here / whereof every messuage or house had one as may yett be discovered; so that Apleby in the \ E[nglish] moder[n] / language, was as much as to say a place of apples.[103]

[I.173]

But to come near our present Aige in which writeing \ & letters / has bin more practissed \ in, / I mean since the time of the \ Norman / Conquest; for before excep by Saxons little was writt and even that they writt (att least concerneing these northern partes) had bin lost and destroyed by the Danish Incurtions; who burned all the Monastryes in which they were kep[t] and raged most furiously in these northern Counties. It has bin a Towne of good note and repute ever since then, the Castle there being ~~the~~ Domus Capitalis totius Westmariae: the chief house of the Countre of Westm'land, and Apleby \ Capitalis Burgus ejusdem comitati: / the Chiefe or Shire Town \ of the said County; / in so much that I finde in ancient evidence amongst the records of Mr Sandford of Ascome dated Anno Regni Joh 4^0 [1202-03] that Westm'land was called the County of Apleby {??} in a peculiar mannor, so that then it should seme it was be in a florishing condition; howbeit afterwards in the yere [blank] it was utterly destroyed[104] and burned it downe by the \ plundring / Scots, whereof this inscription remaines a monument, to be seen at the schoole house ~~set up by that worth learned man Mr Regnald Bainbrig schoolmaster there.~~

ABA LLAB
Q. CC. I J

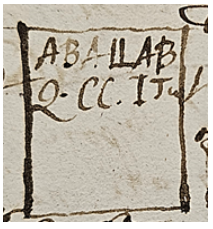


Figure 1.1.5. ABALLABA Inscription. I.173.

[100] Charles Stephanus, *Dictionarium historicum, geographicum, poeticum* (1553). This popular work was reissued throughout the 16th and 17th centuries. Stephanus was the chief source of information on proper names: historical, mythological, geographical, in Latin/English dictionaries from about 1570. See DeWitt T. Starnes, and Gertrude E. Noyes, *The English Dictionary from Cawdrey to Johnson*, 1604-1755 (Amsterdam, Philadelphia, 1991), 49.
[101] Sparta.
[102] 'It is thus called Lacedaemonia by Lacedaemonian law and from its founder: Sparta, from King Spartus, and a glorious thing by reason of the same.'
[103] Marginalia on the right of the page are partly obscured by the binding. What can be seen is noted here: MS: '3. Building. 4. Ornament within doores. 5. Streets. 6 Government. 7. Habit natural & artificial of the people.'
[104] This word has been superimposed over another; the word underneath appears to be 'demolished'.

And if tradition be of any authority this was not the first time they had served it soe; for the Scotts are said to have burned it doone thrice (~~for all which it doth~~)and yet it was rased up agane out of those ashes, I cannot say soe gloriouse & \ splendid, / but still to remane the shire Towne of Westmorland retaneing still its ancient priviledges which were never ~~as twere~~ forfeit by rebellion or called in question. ~~For Apleby~~ It was loyall even to the last in the late Civil Warrs and the Grand Usurpation of Oliver Cromell. One influence whereof \ amongst many others / is that the soljers could not prevale with the officers their upon any terme to proclame the King a tratour, so that they hired a stranger ~~to doe it, which they picked~~ picked up in the market ~~place~~ to doe that horrid & execrable act, to the great discontent & grief of ~~most~~ the people, who could not hear it but with tears in ther eyes, all the way they had left to express their indignation […][105] and dislike thereof.

It […] still what it is now. Apleby is now (as it ever was) the chief towne of Westmorland in which the asises […][106] have ever bin kept except by some accident prevented since befor the time that writeings have bin dated. It is most pleasantly situate upon the bankes of noble river Eden which gives vitall spirits to ever place which it toucheth upon; part on one side

[I.174]

and part on another joined together with a fair stone bridge of 3 Arches at one end \ near the Church / and at the other with the mill frames under the \ Castle / which in sommer time serve as a foot ~~passage~~ \ bridge / where allso formerly there was a Boate.[107] But by reason of the water seperateing one part from the other and the streets being att some distance ~~by reason~~ \ because / of the uniteing lanes being long since depopulated and the houses destroyd, their Gardens & Orchards stubled up & plowed or turned into grassing,[108] it has bin by some late writers – who knew not the place so well as they should have don – represented to the world as a village or little better; those places which are indeed Vici not Villae, streets not villages \ as I can prove by re\c/ord being by them / taken for distinct and different places, as Skattergate Bongate Howgate & Battlebarrow: And it has so much prevaled of late that tho no longer since that Henry the 8 dayes, they used to write Bongate-in-Apleby Skatergate-in-Apleby, & Batlebar-in-Apleby: into all which places Liberty of their Mace doth extend it selfe and the Sheriffs Liberty a great deal much further); yett they looke upon Apleby as a distinct thing, confineing the Generall name to one ~~single~~ street; which is indeed the chief street \ of all / and Anciently called, as I thinke [they] doe still in their writeings; at the Highe End of which is the Castle, & at the Low end the Church and Free Grammar Schoole near unto it, and the Market place with the Towne hall. But I shall present that \ compared by Dugdal to a Noblemans Table, the Lord at the upper end, The Chaplain and Schoole at the lower end / with a map of whole, a kinde of immaginarie prospect \ thereof as it is now / ~~taken from Thornbur hill~~, wherein what is hid from the ey is supplied by judgment.[109]

[105] 3cm of text are illegible here.
[106] Here, there are 2cm of illegible text.
[107] A ferryboat.
[108] Grazing.
[109] See a rough sketch on 1.176A.

[I.176A][110]

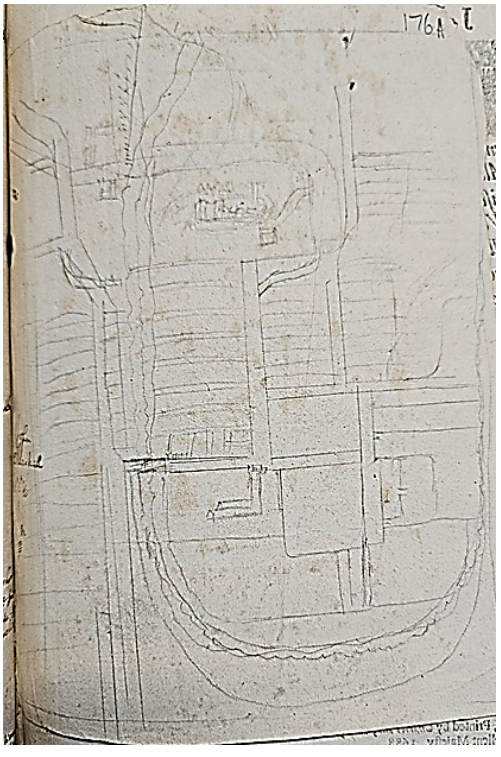


Figure 1.1.6. 'Platforme' of Appleby. 1.176A.

[I.174]

In this platforme you have [blank] number [of] streets*.
1. High Street because it is the chief and mounts allso on the top of the banke.
2. Dungate, because it is low downe betweene the 2 Bankes.
3. Skattergate – which is indeed a part of the Towne – consisting of many streets; but their names being lost is so called because the houses are sparsim[111] scattered as it were here & there; and this never came to be holy redefyned for I finde it so caled [blank]. It is allso caled Fincle Street.
4. The Windes wer litle lanes turneing or windeing from one street to another, whereof ther are 3.

[Machell's Notes: I.174 & 174A]

[I.174]
*{See in Lib. Fam. Machell ad Phil. Ma. de Batleburg in Ap.}[112]
[I.174A]

[110] This is the only draft plan of Appleby in Machell's six volumes. On II.506 he refers to a more elaborate draft, which was then in use.
[111] 'Sparsely'.
[112] Much of this sentence is obscured by the binding.

Burtons *Itinerarium*.[113] Blatum Burgu[m] \ p. 114. / is taken by Josias Simler[114] for Abalaba, a station in Cumberland, of which see more out of the *Notitia* of the Western Empire.[115] Mr Pattison at the Read Hart in Fetter Lane.
! Quaere de serv[itio] forinseco.[116]
? Serv[itium] secular.[117]
? Lib-ab omni Serv. Secul.
Quid ne Blatum-Burgum nomen daret – loco in Apeby vulgo vocato Battleburgh. Per mea […] Literarum. T.M. Ibi enim est vetus A[pleby]?[118]

[II.506][119]

In the draught these faults are to be corrected in graving. Viz.
Brigg Street & High Street are to be made longer: Brigg Street in the midle, & High Street att the upper end of the Towne Hall. Soe Skattergate is to be sett of further from the Castle, that the near row of houses may answer to the far row in Dungate. The [Castle] stables allso are to be set off to the utmost corner of the tower. That ~~place~~ lane twixt Nansons & the school Weend is to be sett of farther. Scattergate also ought to be lengthened.
In the 3 [e]s[c]utch[eons. 1. Clifford & Vipont; 2. The townes; 3. Machell cuj dedicatat.[120]
And in the table. Ab[allaba] olim fuit Britaniæ Insulæ hæc quantilla nunc olim extitit Britaniæ urbes (vide. *Poet Dict* Step.)[121] Nunc vero primarium est Westmariæ opidum, non muris, antiquis tamen munitum privilegijs.[122]

[I.175]

[Streets]
5. Bongate is many streets together, and as it were a little Towne of it selfe, haveing the name from the streete which leads \ from Ba[t]leburge / toward Coupland brigge; which is caled Bongate, \ either 1. / because seated upon an Hil, for Bon a Saxon sig[nifies] a Hil \ because / as if you should say, Bangate Bankgate. / Or 2. from the French word, pleasanse, which signifyes a beautifull good street;[123] \ or [3.] the Saxon word, bond, in opposition to the free burgh – and this may accord with Mr Camden who tells us that &c. or from / {the Saxon Bond, which signifyes a tenant or villager; these being tenants to the Castle of Apleby in opposition to the free Burgers; which interpretation has som

[113] William Burton, (1609-1657), *A Commentary on Antoninus, his Itinerary, or, Journies of the Romane Empire, so far as it concerneth Britain wherein the first foundation of our cities, lawes, and government, according to the Roman policy, are clearly discovered ... with a chorographicall map of the severall stations, and index's to the whole work* (1658).
[114] Josias Simler was a Swiss theologian who published an annotated edition of the *Itinerary of Antoninus* in 1575. P.5 of Burton's *Commentary* remarks, 'We make use of Simler's Edition, which we conceive the best, as bad as it is.' Page 114 comments, 'Josias Simler mistakes it for Aballaba, a Station also in Cumberland: of which see more out of the *Notitia* of the Western Empire. As I know not what Blatum means; so I know that to read it Blotum, with Holyoke, is against the Authority of all Copies. This and the like is noted for Schooles, that young men there may not be deceived, what ever the word Blatum stands for.'
[115] 'Notitae' were Roman lists or catalogues. The *Notitia Dignitatum* (List of Offices) details the administrative organisation of the Eastern and Western Roman Empires. It lists several thousand offices, from the imperial court to offices in the provinces: see Jeremy Norman, https://www.historyofinformation.com/.
[116] 'Ask about foreign service': i.e. service not due to an immediate overlord.
[117] 'Irregular service.'
[118] 'Does Blatum Burgum give its name to the place in Appleby commonly called Battleburgh? T.M.' The text at this point contains one illegible word, thus making a translation of it unsafe, but the text continues, 'For that is where old Appleby is.'
[119] Also numbered p.61.
[120] 'To whom it is dedicated.'
[121] Machell was referring to Charles Stephanus, see above. I.172.
[122] 'And in the Table of Appleby it was once [capital] of the island of Britain. How small now this town has long been among British cities! (See Stephanus.) Now indeed it is the principal town of Westmorland, fortified not by its walls but by its ancient priviledges.'
[123] MS: 'for Bon a Saxon sig[nifies] a Hil ~~and corruptly writ, Bangate for Bankgate~~.\ because / as if you should say, Bangate ~~or~~ Bankgate. or 2. from the French word, pleasanse It~~ / may be because formerly it has bin a very fore & well builded place & from the French Boone & gate~~ which signifyes a beautifull good street.'

authority – for – vetus Apleby ubi villani non ubi Burgenses habitant.}[124]

Here is a Carfax, Quadriaia, or a place where 4 streets meet together, near to the church. One leading from thence South E. toward Coupmanbeck.[125] An other Norwest toward Batlebar to Hougate. Another from the said place toward the Romane way which may [be] called Romane Street – a very spatiouse, but (as a Grove without trees) has never an house in it.

The 4th \ is Milstrees / opposite – extending Westward towards the Mill & Castle. And there is a Bak-lane all along the 2nd street to Howgate head, where an other lane called Stone lane comes in: being a Back passage from the Romane Street & allso from the Romane way as it layes along opposite to the place at the end of the field.

6. Howgate – So called because of \ an how / a \ hollow / passedge there hollowed betwixt ~~the~~ Rocks. {Here was a Milne in dayes of old.} And that has continued as far as Batle-bar on one side and to the Bridge on the other, and is ca[pa]ble of being made a very fine place by building their Houses \ close up to the Banke, & have[ing] Courts or garden before them. /

7. Batlebar – So called \ as som thinke from a batle / {!! Blatum Burgum} because of some Batle being fought in that place: I suppose against the Scotts upon some invasion; who pitcheing their tents upon the Common at the head thereof might give to it the denomination of Jockyes Gate, for there is a place at the head thereof called Joke green,[126] where probable they musterd & drew up there forces; and the inhabitants comeing out against them, the skermish and fight being here begun, it might give name to the place; for they calle the Scotts there Jockeys to this day – by way of derision.
{I take Burrow to signifye a brou anciently (forsan) writ Brugh. So through, thurrow this. And maybe Castleles, which are commonly upon an hil haveing a steep descent or brou, might thence be cald Burghs and not the Towns from Castles; as Spelman.[127] Hence Burgh-under-Stainmore; Burgham Castellum ad Burham. Batlebrough or Batlebrow? But if wee goe higher wee must looke upon it as Blatum Burgum.}[128]

Though I am not ignorant that I might derive the name from burrow as well as brow which signifies [blank] and by that means in Thornburrow and Gallowburrow; all anciently places inhabited belonging to the Town; but I am not vainly curious in etymology; and besides I know many places are corruptly called Burrow for Brow where it is not likely houses ever stood, as Whiteburrow, BLATUM BURGUM. Blat = Burg. \ There is Queens Street which leads in by Jock Street. The street therein conteines Saxon naimes. /[129] And thus have I perfected you a platforme & a relation. T.M.

But that what seemeth most likely to me is that this Place is part of the ancient and beautiful Street which Camden speaks of that leads by Appleby towards Brovonacum – which may well be, haveing so rare an advantage of water into their houses from the Lady Well.[130]

---

[124] 'Old Appleby, where the villagers, not where the burgesses live.'
[125] Coupland Beck.
[126] See Jock Green, II.508, below.
[127] Henry Spelman's works include *Villare Anglicum: or a view of the townes of England* (London, 1656); *Concilia Ecclesiastica Orbis Britannici* (1639), and *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (completed by William Dugdale in 1664). His papers were collected by Edmund Gibson after his death, and later (1698) published as *Reliquiae Spelmannianae*. See S. Handley, 'Spelman, Sir Henry (1563/4-1641), historian, antiquary.' *ODNB.*
[128] Essentially, this margin note derives 'bur' from 'burg'.
[129] The following indistinct margin comment has been omitted: '{The chief H. is – T.M. From the fam[ily] T.M. who … were q. fiefes in Q. \ E / th}'.
[130] As the text in this paragraph is closely written and highly interlineated, I am indebted to Jeremy Godwin's MS for part of the version offered here. Nevertheless, scholars may query it, as there is now an apparently superfluous phrase in the MS: 'And if I were not to [indistinct word]', which leaves the transcription of the paragraph open to question. See Jeremy Godwin, Machell MS: CAC(C) DX1974, Appleby.

[I.174]

\ & now / Haveing presented you with the platforme I shall in the next place acquainte you with the privileges of it – & charters - and then speak som thing of those places which are most remarkeable.[131] The places remarkeable in Apleby are the 2 Churches, ~~Castle~~ Schoole, hospital,[132] Towne Hall, Jayoll, St Nich. St George, the Friory.

[Machell's Notes on Appleby Streets: I.307]

I read of 2 street in Apleby, the one writt Bur\o/hgate, the other Borrigate (i.e. High Street?) in a lease of a burgage there, w[itnesses] Robert Warcopp tunc majore;[133] Willi[elm]o Vi'as tunc Ballio.[134] Johane Marshal Capellano Cantariæ Beatæ Mariæ in eam Ecclesia,[135] 1442: 21 Henry 6.

I found witnesses at an other lease of 2 burgages in Fynkilstrett: John Wherton tunc majore, Thoma Marshall & Johe Gifford, Baliuis dicti Burgi Will' Smyth &c. [blank] Burgensibus &c: 31 Henry 6. Inter Record Machellorum de Crakanthorp. {31 Hen. 6} [1452-53]

[D.]
[Narratives relating to places and 'things remarkable' in Appleby, in Volumes II. & III.]

[II.511]

Describe Appleby

[II.512][136]

1. Its situation in general.
2. The antiquity of the towne.
3. Of the corporation & privileges.
4. The streets & places remarkable.

Of Apleby in Westm'land

Apleby in Westm'land is the primary Westmarie regionis opidum, goverd by a m[ayor] having 2 baliefes to attend him, who with other officers usually rise[137] to the prætorian office, & lends 2 Burgess to the House of Parliament.

[1. Situation in General]

Apleby, the chief towne of Westm'land, is most pleasantly situated upon the \ ~~far &~~ / famous[138] bankes of the noble river Eden, which doth almost incircle the towne. The chiefe street that (which) \ now does / arrogate~~s to it selfe~~ the name of Apleby, as peculiar to it selfe, is long and large, having at the Low End a beatifull church, & att the High End \ is a free gramer shoole & garden, / a noble castle with stately ~~& glorious Tower~~ \ tow[er] so[me]what resembling the T. of L[ondon] / calld Cæsars \ Tower / ~~and now inhabited by the Countiss of Penbroke~~.[139]

At the Low End: Church, Schoole & a place for exercise – booles,[140] cock pits & butts environed with high bankes a[nd] a C[atadupe][141] of water.

[131] Machell in fact begins his narrative by describing the streets, then moves to the Corporation.
[132] MS: 'hospital ~~hospital St Nic St George~~'.
[133] 'Then mayor.'
[134] Possibly: 'William Vicars, then Bailiff.'
[135] 'John Marshall, chaplain of the Chantry of the blessed Mary in that same church'.
[136] Also numbered p.67. Two versions of Machell's description of Appleby appear between MS II.512 and II.525. In this edition they have been conjoined.
[137] The word 'rise' is insecure; the word it has replaced is illegible.
[138] The world 'famous' has been overwritten, but the substituted word is illegible.
[139] Originally written in or before 1676 (the year in which the countess died) but then scored through.
[140] Bowles.
[141] Cataract or waterfall.

[Machell's Notes: II.512]

{Formerly Roman Abalaba, contracte Apela, mut[ata] med[io] in tem[pore] Teu[tonum].[142] Apalby inde[143] Applebyd or by. An Italian who came into these partes declared that it was the most pleasant situation naturally that his eyes had beheld.

{Here Grass m[a]y be cut 2 in anno.}[144]

[II.511]

At the Low End is a Bridge; att the High End was formerly a large Boate to conveye corne from the mills & transport passengers, the reliqs of which are yet in the Castle. The[y] use to ride upon the warren.[145]

[II.507]

[2.] Its Antiquity[146]

ABALLABA. BRIT[ANNIÆ] INSUL. Urbs. Steph[anus]. E lib[ro] prev[iso]
Aballaba quam CC[147] fluit Ituna statio fuit. Ro[mana] temp[ore] Ma[rci] Aur[elij]. Hanc vastavit FF.[148] Guil[ielmus] R[ex] Scot[orum] 1176.
Hic pestis sævit 1598. Opp[ido] desert[o] Mercatus ad Gilshaughlin.
Quot mil[ia] hom[inum] sust[inebantur] Ab. Casst[ello] Q?[149]

[II.509]

{There never came any of the Emperours in[150] land from the time of Julius Cæsar to Claudius, who came to aid his lieutenant who was in danger to be vanquish[ed], and the reason for this vo[y]age said to be that he might win glory by fight[ing] against so warlike and so famous a people. Se Speed Vol. 2 Cap. 6 & 9.}

[II.510]

[Inhabitants]

The ancient inhabitants were the Brigantes* who were the greatest nation of this iland at the enterance of the Romaines inhabiting the northern parts (Yorkshire, Westmorland, Cumberland, cou[n]ty part of Lancashire and the Bishoprig of Durham). {All the northern tribes except Northumberland that has the Ottadini, whose chiefe towne was Bremuntium,[151] thought now [to] be Ribchester [in] Rydsdale.}†. Their principall towne in Westmorland was Galatum, now Whellop Castle.

[Modern Inhabitants]

Latin is no place worse spoke than is Latin \ at Roome, / nor English is no place worse spoke than att London. The conflux of foreigners has debauched the language insomuch that, setting aside the tone, the English tonge is better spoke at Endenbrough in Scotland, but I thinke in most purity in the county of Westm'land.

[Woodland]

In our island, as som ancient writers doe tell us, Westm'land, Cumberland and all the Northern parts of England were full of woods, trees & bushes, especially upon the mountains, where scarce any wood is now to be seen‡.

---

[142] 'Formerly Abalaba; contracted to Apela; changed during the time of the Teutons to Apalby.'The word 'time' is partly perished.
[143] 'thence.'
[144] The grass may be cut twice in the year.
[145] 'Warren': a mill dam in a stream: see Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary 6* (London, 1898-1905), 389.
[146] This heading has been taken from MS.II.511.
[147] 'Circum.'
[148] 'Funditus'.
[149] 'Aballaba, a city of the island of Britain (As Stephanus, in the book previously cited), Aballaba around which flows the River Eden was a Roman Station in the time of Marcus Aurelius. William King of Scots completely destroyed it in 1176. Here the plague raged in 1598; the town being deserted, the market moved to to Gilshaughlin. How many thousands of people were supported by the castle. Query?'
[150] A word here has perished.
[151] Brematennacum, now Ribchester, Lancashire.

[Machell's Notes: II.510]

*Speed.
†Heilms *Cosmog*[*raphie*] p.226, Col. 3.[152] Brigantum Yorke dub ver[um] Camden 40?[153]
‡e lib. voc \ *the adven[tures] of Mr J. Smith*, putt forth by 4 Robbers, printe at London[154] pag. 114.[155]

[II.524][156]

[3.] {Government} [Corporation and Priviledges][157]
It is a very ancient corporation & of great priviledges; for I finde it had a charter granted by Henry the 1t \ xa / called Henricus Senex 1, confirmed afterwards by the succeeding kings of England, with fredome from [blank]*.
Here the Assises have antiently bin kept, as I have observed in severall evidences*. Nor do I finde that ever the judges satt elswhere†, excepting once over in the time of King Charles the First, when my Lord Clifford, upon a disgust taken at the towne, for one year removed them to Kendall. But Kendall was never the chief towne of Westmorland, except for traideing, & in that deed it has far exceed Appleby of late yeres; for in Kendall is now a good trade of cottons, but in Appleby, none. The ancient government of this place was & is still, by a Mayor & 2 Balifves, or (Shireves) formerly called Provost, for such kinde of officers were under the Mayor, anno [blank] and I can not immagin them any thing else.

[Machell's Notes II.524]

*{in libro – collect[arum] chartarum familiæ Vipont & Clifford penes Commitissis.}[158]
†{Yes sometimes. See the mon[ument] in Kendal church in my collections.}

[II. 525]

{Baliffs; Provosts}
The Balives were formerly so considerable that noe Publique Act \ or Deed / of the towne was passed without them, their deeds running thus: Wee, the Major, Balives & Burgesses of Appleby &c. But since the towne became poor[159] and des[t]itute of traide, the office & dignity of these Balives or Shireves hath bin so farr forgot \ neglected that they now / serve only as attendants upon Mr Mayor, & carry 2 halbards or fasses[160] before him and follow the Mace.

{Mace Liberty; Staff Liberty}
There is also a record: a court of Aldermen, most of Gentlemen of the Country for the greater honour of the Corporation, who in time of majoralty keep proprætor there a Common Councill, 2 Chamberlans & one Sergeant att Mace. The Liberty of the Corporation is 2: Staff Liberty & Mace Liberty. The Mace Liberty goes no further than the 4 Crosses, but the Staff Liberty, farther. So to Flakebrig, where the Coroner of the towne has acted in the time of the old & honourable Countess of Penbrooke, who would never have suffered it, if it had not antiently belonged unto them.

The Places of Chief Remarke.

[II.511]

The Streets
In order & where the most remarkable house or places onely mentioned.

---

[152] Peter Heylin (1600-1662), *Cosmographie in four bookes: containing the chorographie and historie of the whole world, and all the principall kingdomes, provinces, seas and isles thereof* (London, 1652).
[153] 'Was York of the Brigantes? I doubt it, yet Camden p.40?'
[154] The rest of the page here has perished.
[155] John Smyth (Smith), *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods experienced in 30 years' practice.* 6 vols (London, 1670).
[156] Also numbered p.79.
[157] Appleby's charters are described in W. Hewitson, 'TheAppleby Charters', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 279-85.
[158] 'In the book of the collected charters of the family of the Viponts and Cliffords, in the possession of the Countess.'
[159] MS: 'power.'
[160] 'Fasces': rods carried by lictors before the superior magistrates at Rome as an emblem of their power. *OED*.

This is by an account of the most remarkable places: 1. Churches; 2. Castle; 3. Schoole; 4. Hospital; 5. Town Hall; 6. St Nicholas & St George; 7. the Fryaredge; 8. the Gaol; 9. The House of Correction; 10. The Crosses & Butter House.[161]

[II.508][162]

Apleby Streets
1. High Street
3. 3 Weends[163] (High, Midle, Low) query Windes
2. B\r/igg Street
[~~Nansons Casway~~]
4. Loain; Casway
5. Wath Way & Green
6. Dungate i.e. Downegate
Skattergate; Finkel Street
Hoffe Way
Colby Way
Millbanke
Howgate Foote
Howgate
~~St Michaels~~
Banngate[164]
Mill Green
An other street leading toward Roman Fell
The Sands or Horse Fair
Battle Barrow past [blank] which joynes to [blank]*

Places Remakeble
Jock Gree[n]
Gallow Burrow
Thorn Burrow
St Nichol[as]
The Ruin in St Nicholas: George, Nicholas
White Fryers & Ladywell
St Laurence Church
The \ Queens / Free Schoole
The Hospitell
The Castle & Cæsars Tower
The \ Castle / Stables
The Mill
St George Dub[165]
Nobilis Ituna[166]
The Prison
The House of Correction
The \ Moote / Towne Hall
The Shambles
The Crosses
Caud Kell & the Bps[167] Exchange, now a building.

[161] The final MS sentence here: 'The government \ both / ancient & modern as hereafter,' has been omitted as irrelevant to this section, but see Section F. Government, below.
[162] Also numbered p.63.
[163] Wynds.
[164] Bongate.
[165] Dub = pool.
[166] 'The noble Eden.'
[167] Bps = Bishops.

[Machell's Notes: II.508]

*Query: what they call the Gards over the bridge
~~What Nansons Causway~~
What the towne seal?
What first charter & what extent?[168]
Whose seat? What benefactors?
Nullo hactenus Titulo Abal. inclaruere.[169]

[II.512]

[High Gate]
The chief bea[u]ty thereof now consists in one large faire and broad street, called Hi-Gate by the inhabitants. Argeait alias Hi Street. ~~And one end~~ It strecheth out it selfe from N. to south up a pretty high assent whence it is so called. At the High End, in the midst of a little parke, is the Castle, with stately Tower, in the area the roof exactly answering to the midle of this street [thus][170] sc. of the Castle. Stables & gard[en]. In the midle side the west of this street is a neat built Hosspitall, quadrangular wise. The founder hereof was […][171] & on each side at every dore is a Coate of Armes of som of her

[II.513]

Ancestors. Att the Low End is a fine large church, lately reparred – I may almost say re edified, by the said Countiss but made somewhat less than it was formerly, there being taken away on the south side a quire which butted towards the towne, called Warcops Quire,[172] & in the diging away the foundations hereof were found severall allabaster images & plaster roundells with figures thereupon, well gilded and polished, which were given away to children for to play withall, some whereof I my selfe got to give my little sister. But I have sufficient repented my ignorance since and am sorry there was none to preserve these things for curiouse posterity.
There was a vestry also, as I remember, on the N. side the quire.[173] Noe doubt att the reperation hereof, many things worthy noting were utterly lost. In the glass and other places some Coats of Arms yet remaining, which I shall sett downe to paper their like nature.
That glaseing & building with stone was nott knowne in England till Bennit the monke brought along with him an Italian builder 1004 years since †.

[Machell's Notes: II.513]

*{Remember the Crosses, Towne Hall, Market Place & the Cloister supported by co[lumn]s adorn'd with Arms of Gentlemen, on some of which was ingraved these letters: Stane Morie. Query: why. Her[e] now ar built the smiths shops because the slates were brought gratis by Stane Moore men.}
†Cannot be true because we had Roman building, Castles &c. Picts wall.[174]
Then the monuments. Then pat[ron] &c. incumb[ent].

[II.512]

{Higstreet with its branches: High X Weend Winde; Low X Wend \ Winde /}
On \ each / side this street, which extends it selfe longwayes from north to south, is a great descent on the east side, downe to the River Eden, which make the towne sweet & cle[an].

168 See Hewitson, 'Appleby Charters', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 279-85, at 279-80.
169 'So far, they have not made Aballaba famous with any title.'
170 Here Machell sketched a rhombus shape.
171 Two words are illegible here but Lady Anne Clifford was the founder (see above, II.509) in 1651 (Hyde & Pevsner, 211).
172 A transept.
173 The Chancel.
174 St Benedict (Benet) Biscop founded Monkwearmouth and Jarrow in 674 and 682. He is said to have introduced glazing to England: F.L. Cross and E.A. Livingstone (eds), *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church* (Oxford, 2005), 185.

On the west \ another, / to the street called Dungate, which is scowred by a torrent {riseing opposite to the Castle on the other side of Skattergate}[175] which scowers the street clean & carryes away with it all dirt and filth and discharges it selfe into the River at the place cald the Wath: i.e. a riding place.[176]

[II.515]

{Dungate}[177]
{A street in London beares that name from its descent.}
That street so destitute of houses, which runs upon of the west side Higstreet, was formerly as tradition informes ~~mee~~ us, the finest street which was in the ~~Burrow~~ \ Towne; / for here men might walke dry on the wettest day, there being cloisters leaded over from one end to the other. Whether soe or noe, twas possible enough that there might be shelter against the raine, because the street is not broad as others ~~are~~. However it was, I doe conjecture it had its name Dungate, quasi Downgate, in opposition to High Street or He-Gate, for as that is placd on the top of a banke

[II.516][178]

high betwixt 2 descents \ on an hill, / so this is placed in the bottom \ before the hill / or betwixt 2 ascents \ in a vaile; / notwithstanding which, the situation (excepting for prospect) is equally pleasant & very commodious, being warme,[179] and there gardens here {now calld gards} will a-ford them that pleasure which theire houses deny, so that one thing an another will render it comly & very delicious.

Such a place as this a tradesman would choose; where a shop might be equally[180] with the street – a kitchen, cellar &c. on the same flore but under ground by reason of the hill; then hall & lodging romes on the next flore where the hall or parlour might open upon a levell into garden or orchard. The riseing ba[n]ke on the west side this street, tho scarce an house be remaining thereon, yet retaines the name of Dungate Gards; & that with tradition compared together, ~~the places~~ & samples of hedges here & there, which formerly have separated one ~~tenement~~ \ burgage / from another, which now are joyned ~~the~~ of the rest \ in the Sand & Howgate Foot the best information that I get to give me \ light / in this little descover of so ancient & long since ruined a place. For it is \ has / reported from father to son; that beside other accidents that might conduce to impoverish this towne, that i[t] has bin 3^{c}[181] burn'd downe [by the] Scotts. The last attempt was 500 years since, and \ then / they gave it an utter Oher,[182] as appears by a stone which bears this memorial: ABALLABA QUA[M] C.C. ITVNA STATIO FVIT &c. HANC VASTAVIT F.F. WILL. REX SCOTT[ORUM] ANNO 1176.[183]
But there is little light to be

[II.517]

drawne from history, since the ignorance in learning in that part England, which for the most delight[t] in the pike more than the pen* is sufficient discouragement to deter any man from ransaking history ~~or ancient records.~~
However, to one ~~that~~ acquainted with the language of former aiges, espieciall the A[nglo S[axon], which [is] here yet spoke in ~~very~~ much ~~purity~~ \ perfection, / the names of the places near adjacent will contribute something†. For here wee may reed, tho writ upon the dust, that it has bin a towne of large \ extent / territories, \ I doe / not \ say / in the Roman times tho Stephanus declares that twas then a city‡. Brit. Insulae Urbs. For I doe not pretend to goe so far, since little is left – not the name of a street nor anything else to bespeak it Romaine except the Tower. All which places \ in it / had those names which ~~now~~ \ then / they bear from \ the / Saxons ~~imposition~~, as Batle Barrow, Thorne Barrow,

[175] The margin comment replaces more than 20 scored-through words in the body text.
[176] MS: 'which washes ~~away all dert & filthines in~~ \ which scowers the street clean & / carryes away with it all dirt and filth ~~mess which may thence arise & powers it into the Great River att the wath to St Nicholas~~ and discharges It selfe into the River at the place cald The Wath \ i.e. a riding place. /' A wath is a fordable part of a stream. *OED*.
[177] Doomgate.
[178] Also numbered p.71.
[179] Here Machell continued with, '& low there', but placed the phrase within a box, as if to remove it.
[180] Flush with the street.
[181] Thrice.
[182] The second letter is unclear. Possibly the word is, 'Ohen' or 'ohern', meaning 'over', see Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary* 4, 334. Equally, Machell might well have written 'over' with a malformed 'v'.
[183] For a description of the full inscription, see I.507.

Gallow~~s~~ Barrow, Howgate, Bongate &c.; each whereof carry something observable in their very names, as I shall show in due time and place.

[The Wath]

Att the Low End of Dungate, this torrent turns of[f] westward[184] and towards the place which is called the Wath, a voce Teuto[nica], Wadt idem significans & for smoother pronunciation, watt;[185] for wath is a place passable in the water, where one may wade: in Latin, vadum; ~~which possible~~/ whence possibly all these

[Machell's Notes: II.517]

*{Se Dugd[ale] Preface to *Warwickshire*.}[186]
†{*Poetical Dict*[*ionary.*]}[187]
‡Stephanus quotes[188] e *Liber Notitiarum*.[189] {Its name sound Romane}

[p. 518][190]

words are derived. The broad piece \ of ground / on this side the water is called the Wath Green, and the end of which ~~is~~ by the waterside is ~~a pleasant fountaine~~ \ a very cold spring, which is therefore called the /Caud Kell, i.e. Cold Well, ~~from the coolness of the water~~. On the opposite part, beyond the water whither you have access by helpe stepp stones, is a farme house which the[y] call St Nicholas \ where lately were r[ui]nes of a church or ~~monastery~~ chaple; for there had bin an Hospitall in King Johns time. / All the grounds & woods, vaile & pasturage on that side the water till you come att the ~~Chief~~ territoryes of the Machells de Crakenthorpe, i.e. Halfe Mile Yate, ~~retaneing in general the name of St Nicholas and as you returne~~ from which of old it may seem to be taken / with which it is bounded on the north. ~~And the place~~ On the east, with the same. Jock Green \ & Battlebarrow /& Gallobar[row] Lane on the west with the River Eden. All this surface is general calld by the name of St Nicholas, notwithstanding 1 place thereof, i.e. the hill on west side the lane which brings you to Apleby from Crakenthorpe, has the name of Thorneburrow Hills.[191] I dar[e] not ~~swear~~ \ say / that some part of the towne has ~~extended hither~~ not come hither, for Burrow, a German voce Borgo \ quo / suburbicum denotat, a suburbe;[192] and many of our words being thence derived {Sc. Verstegan}[193] tis not ~~impossible~~ \ improbable / that both Thor, Gal & Burrow, being the suburbs of Apleby, were thence denominated – tho he evuds[194] Apleby so far as not to allow it that miserum fuisse: to have bin once great – may deduce from Brow, all of em being situate on rising hills. But if so, why were not others of like situation called Burrow too.

[II.519][195]

From of this hill you have a fair prospect of most part of Apleby. The way leads thence by Gallobar \ Fields / over a piece of common which is calld Jock Green, from the Scotts I suppose {the Scotts; in dirision we call Jockey} who possesd them selfes of it in ~~there last~~ assalting the towne, and the inhabitants coming out to give them battle*, have mett them in Battle \ B[ar]row, / which is not

[184] This word has been overwritten. 'Northward' appears to have been covered by 'westward', though the superimposed letters are unclear. For the 'torrent', see II.212.
[185] 'From the Saxon language, 'wadt', from the same thing' [i.e. also meaning 'wath'].
[186] Dugdale, *Warwickshire*: The first page of the Preface remarks on the warlike nature of the English and their lack of learning before the Norman Conquest.
[187] Charles Stephanus, *Dictionarium historicum, geographicum, poeticum* (1553).
[188] MS: 'coat.'
[189] Stephanus quotes from the *Liber Notitiarum* (Book of Remembrances).
[190] Also numbered p.73.
[191] This passage is so impossible to read that even Machell realised the difficulty, helpfully rewriting it in another column; hence, it appears twice in the MS.
[192] 'Burrow, German: 'borgo', denotes a suburb.'
[193] Richard Verstegan, *A Restitution of Decayed Intelligence in Antiquities concerning the most noble and renowned English Nation* (1605; reprinted 1628, 1634, 1652, 1655, 1673). See also Part 3. Chapter 3, Concerning Heraldry, VI.394.
[194] Possibly from 'evoid' or 'evode': from French 'evuider': to remove. *OED*.
[195] A sentence written vertically down the right-hand margin of this page reads, 'Blounts *Dictionary* for Villares.' In 1656, Thomas Blount published the largest English dictionary up to that date, his *Glossographia*.

improbable called so a Bello ibi Commisso;[196] so Stamford Bridge in Yorkeshire is called Battlebridge†. This street is seated upon a declineing [hill] from north to south. On the east side tis watered with ~~flu~~ a delicate springe issuing out from the Laday Well \ & so runing through the scarce visible ruines of that friery which was built by Lord Cliffor[d] Percy & Vescy of the Order of White Fryers‡, dedicated, as I conjecture from the well, to Our Lady Mary, & vallued⸸.[197] Thence it takes its course directly

[Machell's Notes: II.519]

*Mr [blank] reports that there was great amity formerly betwixt the Scotts and the neighbouring countryes, till the Romanes broke covenant & incroached upon them, since which time? Se Uescher.[198]
†Se my Appendix, p.6. Eadem de causa[199] (vid. Camden). As that worthy antiquary relates: I fear this place was never to have [been] so happy as to lodge such a guest, for that quick sighted \ ancient / would have left nothing for me to descover. Reasons: because of his posting the fruitfulness of the countery, which about this place exceed all the rest & may compare, if it doe not exceed, with his so much cele[brated] Barony of Kendal.)
‡{Query: an idem nomen cum Perci?[200] Will. de Perci ten. in Lincolnshire, temp Conquest. *Domesday Booke.*}[201]
⸸Se Dugdale.

[II.520][202]

towards Battelebarrow,[203] glideing downe on the Back Side (where which it flourish [where] there Gardens have bin) sporting it selfe through the mids[t] of them.

{Battlebur}
Afterwards it enters into the street \ Cow Makett / which in that part has a rock for its naturall pavement, upon which, it slideing, ~~doth~~ tis rendered slippery & for this reason called the Slape Stanes, i.e. Slippery Stones. So it hastes on the east side the street towards the river, & turne of a sudden into its imbraces. The other side, this wants not its delight, for being placed on the top of a banke, it has a prospect no way contempteble, with a full view of the chefe street in Ableby, & att the bottem of the descent a pureling streme goes murmuring along in a glide, as they call it,[204] \ worne to that descent by force of the water / which parts ther inclosures & the bankes of St Nicholas. I am not certane whether this be [the] street which Camden would have formerly the chiefe, for, says he, it heads by Apleby towards Brovonacum, which we now call Brooham.[205] If this be it*, I suppose it continued to the farthest end of Gallobar Lane, elese I doe not se how it could

[Machell's Notes: II.520]

*Which make [what] I formerly deliverd more probable.

[II.521]

{Battleburg Street}
[be] the chiefe in any respect, having neither the large nor pleasant situation of the broad street. May be he take in the Sands to the Bargen, which if rebuilt after the manner described in Dung[at]e[206] with Courts before it to the Gards wall, I doe not se how any place could be more delightfull to live in or looke upon. But now there is scarce one house to be seen from the end of Batle Barrow, i.e. where the torrent turns of to the river to Howgate Foote.

---

[196] 'From the war committed there.'
[197] The sentence ends abruptly here.
[198] Probably a reference to James Ussher, *Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates* (1639).
[199] 'From the same reason.'
[200] 'Query whether the same name as Percy?'
[201] See E. Cownie, 'Percy, William de (d. 1096, 99?), baron and administrator.' *ODNB*.
[202] Also numbered p.75.
[203] The route of the beck is correct according to the 1754 Appleby map: CAC(C) Ca; DLONS/L/5/3/1/1/1, 1754. My thanks to Jeremy Godwin for this observation.
[204] 'Glide': 'a stream; also, the gliding portion of a stream – a shallow.' *OED*.
[205] MS: 'for sayes \ he / it heads ~~from~~ \ by / ~~the place called~~ Apleby to\ wards / ~~the place~~ Brovonacum, which we now call Brooham.'
[206] See II.516.

[Battlebrow]
The street now calld Battlebrow or Battle-Burugh (vide) begins att the North End the Sands, where the purling streme of Lady Well runns, sporting it selfe into the river. I suppose it make its name from som great scuffle or skirmish there, and being situate upon a steep hill \ or from its being part of […][207] / may be thence called Battle Brough. And that which gives a great probability to this conjecture is that this street ends att Jock Green, which I thinke has borrow that denomination from the Scotts, by us still call'd Jockyes, they having come here unexpectedly and sett themselves in battle array. It is not unlikely that the native inhabitants came out upon them, and, to stop their entran[c]e, gave them battle in this street. ~~Few inh g~~
That the Scotts have often attacked it, there is no controver-sie, it being a generally receivd tradition by the inhabitants that they burn'd it downe 3 times to ground, the last where I finde on record a mill at Howgate – I have read of – and being destitute of History, which unless [it] be where the mill now standes was also so called!!! I am glad to read from writeings in The Sand; to take conjectures from the names of places so by comparing with received traditions, grose out the truth.[208]

[II.519]

On Wednesday Sep. 10, it came in my head that Bondgate signifies that streat of Bondmen, in opposition to the other places where the free Burgers inhabit. Vetus Appleby vel villam habitant.[209]

On the east ~~ripo~~ \ banke of / Eden, much of the towne has bin demolished, as it clear from those place which are yet called the Gards, to every of which, one house att least (if not more) has belong'd. That which goes southwards towards Houg[ate] Foote has bin a faire brod streght stret. When you are through Howgate you come into Bongate, which has bin built crosswise, 4 streets meeting together \ or 2 thwarting each other. 1 from the Castle, / but what they were formerly called, I can not tell. They now in general have the name of Bon Gate, which I thinke is peculiar to the street up the hill which carryes you on your way towards Warcop & Brough, for Bongate is as much as a street on a hill. The other part from the bridge, which runs along northwards to the

[II.520]

Low End of Batlebrow, is called The Sands, & has ~~lately~~ been a single row of houses fronting to the water. Except the river, which I cannot conjecture has bin ~~wall'd~~ \ hem'd / in by the walls and foundations of the houses there. But the soyle, being sandy, will give no ground for such a conjecture. Notwithstanding, Camden makes the principle street on this side the water leading by Apleby to a place calld Brovonacum*, which, whether it should be some part of Bongate or that space twixt Hogate and Batlebrow, & Batlebrow also taken in unto, I cannot ~~imagin~~ \ determin. / But if I could have discovered any vestigia of an Ancient Bridge, I should [believe], as some have, that wel might he then say that, It agro non inamoeno.[210] That High Street, which is now the principle, & together with the lanes & fragm[en]ts of Scattergate, peculiarly called by the name of Apleby, had full bin the chiefe.

[Machell's Notes: II.520]

*{Dub?}
{Henche.[211] If you looke through the high arches of the bridges, the towne stands so lofty, it seems to be advanced into the clouds. This I often delighted to take special notice of.}

[II.515]

{Scattergate}
The other streets which lay westward about the Tower are generally calld by the name of Scattergate, because till of late, and in some measure yet, the houses, being demolish ~~in that~~ \ by that / Influx of the Skott~~s~~\ish incursion / which I speake of annon, lay skatterd here & there. Both those streets which

[207] Words here have been obscured by the binding.
[208] The last paragraph is written across II.521 and II.522 but the direction taken by the text is unclear. This transcription is therefore unsafe.
[209] 'They live in Old Appleby or vill.'
[210] 'It passes through a not unpleasant landscape.'
[211] Probably 'Haunche': 'the side of an arch between the crown and the piers.' *OED*.

goe out of Finkel Street – the chiefe in Scattergate to the right northwards – are so demolished that they will now hardly wear the names of street.[212] I therefore call em Wayes, and together with the houses, the names \ of the streets / ~~&~~ demolish[ed] & gon. That \ part of a / street att the upper end of Skattergate is called Mill Banke because tis situate of the side of \ the / banke which goes downe to the mills.

Schoole.
Thence ~~a stone~~ \ the Schoole lane / extends it selfe \ more / north; & south is a p[l]ane piece of ground to a considerable lenth on the [blank] ~~all most~~ with water environd in a ~~Bow or~~ \ semy circle / arch.[213] This is calld The Butts because of butts being placed thereon. It serves also for a bowlingree[n] and here are 2 cockpitts dig'd in the ground towards each end; one, that which layes southward, being very deep & cut in seats lik[e] to those which they have in theatres. Here L.M. beat \ out ran vicec…[214] / the Parson.

Hence you returne up a lane directly southwards towards Dungate, in which are remane no houses excepting the schoole on the east side thereof, with 2 or three houses more adjoyning; and the Ushers house was lately pulld down. Further you have a ~~cott~~ back house or barne belonging to Mr Thwates, Alderman of the towne, to whome belonges all the houses on the south side the Schoole Winde, there bein none on the other but the Vicars barne & Mrs Hose, which stands of in the court. On the west side the Schoole lane are no houses remaneing excepting the Masters kitchyn & Garden House, which stand of from the

[II.516]

lane. Howbeit, there have bin others, as you may se by the Gardes over aganst it.[215]

[Carfax]
Here agane is Carfax, or meeting of 4 streets: as School Lane, Dungate, Wate & Winde. & then the returne to the east ripe,[216] or else begin with it.

[II.506][217]

[Appleby place-names]

{Batleborough}

[II.507]

(A Battle, suerly)

[II.506]

Battle Brough, Burrow/Battlebrow. Battlebrow – from its situation, and som battle fought there. So Standford Bridge[218] in Yorkshire is calld Battlebridge a Bello ibi commisso[219] but Camden, 331 Col. 1. alijs a Battle et Brough, a Borgo Germa[norum] Quod suburbium significat. Skin[ner], in voc[e] Borrough; sed a colle potius dictum puto, quia alia sunt loca ejusdem nominis ubi vix poss[u]mus Cog[noscere] suburbium fuisse &c. Galloburrow, Thornburrow. Sed ad suburbium vertatur[220] cum hac apel[latione]. Nisi potius dictum puto a usitat[o], Brow, quae declinationem coll[is] ibi vulgo

[212] MS: 'are so demolish that they will \ now / hardly ware the names \ ~~notions~~ / of street.'
[213] Jeremy Godwin gives a free interpretation of this difficult passage: 'Thence the School lane extends itself north and south to a plane piece of ground almost level with the water, to a considerable length, in a semi-circle or arch.' See Godwin, Machell MSS Research Notes, CAC(C), DX 1974/H9410.
[214] The text here is obscured by the margin.
[215] MS: '…as you may se by the Gardes over aganst ~~Jo~~. It ~~Nansons~~ house.'
[216] 'Ripa': riverbank.
[217] A margin note on this page consists of, MS: '~~Michel Scotts leap. Lang. Shap. Stenke head. Brampton~~ \ Temple Sowerby / Sandford Moore, Drybeck & other places where horse coursing is used.' Two lines concerning 'Things Remarkeable' have been scored through.
[218] Stamford Bridge.
[219] 'From warfare there.'
[220] MS: 'ver~~te~~te \oa/atur.'

significat ad supercil[i]um. Vero est reus Skinieras;[221] dedu\c/it enim ab Anglo-Saxon, Bræpe, palpebra supercilium.[222]

{Bongate villanor[um]}[223]
Query. Bangate, a Camb' *Britannia* Ban Altus excelsus (unde Banke etiam Anglo-Saxon deduci videatur) Et gate vicus platea via quod ab Anglo-Saxon gan Ire, which wee call Gang – vicus – villanorum.[224]

{Howgate}
Gate prius habuimus. How, autem apud nostrates, significat an Hollow \ depe / place,[225] & may peradventure be a contract[ion] of it, and the demin[utive] hereof may be the word Hovel, which notwithstanding Skin[ieras], would have to discend from Caveola, casting away C. & ad.

{Hoff}
Anglo-Saxon: Hofe, hoƿe; domus speluncæ.[226]
Belgian: hofi hoeve
Teuton: hoff prædium, villa item, item aula principis. Ergo non Jurabo (inquit Skin[ieras]) omnia ista vocata a Latino caveo ortum ducere, et nostram hovel a caveola. Est vox more Teutonica. Hoff, Lunn or Lum is a depe plow[227] of water in the northern language quam puto esse Anglo Saxon[228] i.e. Old English neutra occurrit apud Skin[ieras].[229]

{Colby}
Coldby, Cowby, Coltby.
If Colt by, ab Anglo-Saxon Cold: pullus equinus; et By: habitatio.[230] So Audby in York. Saxoni: Antiquae Habitationes.[231] If Cowby, a vaccarum frequentia; Cow autem Anglo-Saxon vocatur Cu; Dan[ish] ko. Non potest a Cole, nulla etenim ibi invenitur, sed forsan a Cold abjiciendo d., ut nos Coole: Anglo-Saxon Cole; Belgian, Koel; Teutonic, K\e/ul frigidus subfrigidus; Danish, kold & ko\a/ld; Belgian, kaud; forsan a Latin gelu. Sic Colby or Coldby erat locus frigidus. Habitatio frigida.[232]

---

[221] 'Skinieras': a latinised form of Skinner. Stephen Skinner (bap. 1623, d. 1667) was a physician and philologist who wrote philological treatises in manuscript, enumerated by Anthony Wood, edited by Thomas Henshaw, and published in London in 1671 under the title, *Etymologicon Linguæ Anglicanae*. Samuel Johnson acknowledged his indebtedness to Skinner in the preface to his *Dictionary* (1755). See B. Porter & M. Beva, 'Skinner, Stephen (bap. 1623, d. 1667)'. *ODNB*.
[222] 'From the German word Borg, which means a suburb. Skinner, in his writing, says Borough; but I think it is so called rather from a hill, because there are other places of the same name where we can hardly recognise there to have been a suburb etc. – Gallowburrow, Thornburrow. But it was turned to suburb with this name. Unless rather I think it so called from the usage Brow, which there commonly means the slope of a hill toward the brow. Indeed, Skinner is of the same mind, for he derives Brow from the Anglo-Saxon, Bræpe, an eyelid.'
[223] 'Bongate: of the country people.'
[224] 'Query Bangate in Camden's *Britannia*, Ban means 'high lofty', whence also the Anglo-Saxon 'Bank' may seem to be derived. Also 'gate': a village, an open street, because from Anglo-Saxon 'gan', 'ire' [Latin: to go], which we call 'gang'; a village – of the villagers.'
[225] 'Gate, we have had before. How, however, among our country folk, signifies a hollow [or] deep place.'
[226] 'Anglo-Saxon Hofe or hoƿe: a tunnel house' [possibly, a Saxon long-house].
[227] Pool.
[228] 'Saxon. Hoff: an estate, likewise a villa, likewise the hall of a chieftain. Therefore, I will not swear (says Skinner) that all these derive their origin from Latin 'caveo', and our 'hovel' from 'caveola'. It is a word of Saxon type. Hoff, Lunn or Lum is a depe plow of water in the northern language, which I think to be Anglo-Saxon i.e. Old English. Neither term occurs in Skinner.'
[229] 'Skinner says nothing on this.'
[230] 'If Colt-by', from Anglo-Saxon Cold, a foal; a young horse [colt]; and 'By: dwellings.'
[231] 'So Audby in York: so-called by the Saxons, meaning in Latin, ancient dwellings.'
[232] 'Cowby, from a place where cows were regularly kept. Moreover, a cow in Anglo Saxon is called 'Cu'; in Danish, 'ko'. It cannot be from 'Cole' [coal], for indeed none is found there. But perhaps it is from 'cold', by losing the letter 'd', as 'coole' with us; Anglo Saxon, 'cole'; Belgian, 'koel'; Teutonic, 'k\e/ul', meaning 'cold'

{St George Dub}
Dub signifyeth a deep place in the water. De hoc nihil loquitur Skin[ieras]. Dan[ish] & Teutonick frequently aupud Boreal[es].[233]

βύβλϑ ıι papyrus[234]

[II. 507]

{Dungate}
Forsan, ita appellabatur, \ a Tulliano, Dungeon / quia platea fuit a sole et caelo ut ferunt munita.[235] Tis reported that this was the finest street imediately before the last ~~desolation~~ \ devastation, / for here you might walk fre from raine att any season: forsan a Dung,[236] for here runs a leat to car[ry] of the stench.

{Wi\e/nd}
A turning out of ~~one~~ \ a / street. A winding, which is commonly pronounced E, which most nations – certe a venella Nome lat[i]ne.[237]

{Burrells} Non possum diricte.[238]

{Names of Places}
1. Stony Lane
2. Bon-gate
3. Mill Green
4. Castle Shewgh[239]
5. The Warren

[II.524][240]

Places remarkable

Castle, hospital, Church, School & Towne Hall, Gaol & house of Correction. The description of the situation of each & what remarkable [in] them.

[II.513]

{The Castle}
The Castle, as I sayd and so to the upper part of ~~towne~~ \ High Street / likewise, have Advantage of prospect, but lower ~~part~~, being environd [in] an a[m]phitheatre of Hills as well as water, is more warme & close. The Castle stands yet somewhat higher then all the rest, so that it doth easily command all the Towne. Tis built upon a rocky hill, being very steep on that side nex the water, & a low dissent on all other sides. It is stren[gthened] and fortified with wall, dich and bulworke.

{Castle Mantle}
On the banke twixt the mote & wall ~~are~~ \ were / planted frute trees of several sorts \ [and] have firs / which place they call the Castle Mantle, it being both of ornament & use. On the west side of the

---

or 'coldish'; Danish, 'kold' and 'ko\a/ld'. Belgian, 'Kaud'; perhaps from Latin 'gelu' [meaning cold]. Thus, Colby or Coldby was a place that was cold. A cold habitation.'

[233] 'Skinieras has nothing to say about this. Danish and Teutonick frequent among northerners.'

[234] This Greek text has been placed upside down at the foot of the page; it is possibly an abbreviation of 'Bibliotheke': library. Machell could well have have been referring to a papyrus in a library but exactly why is not known.

[235] 'Possibly it was so called from the Tullianum, a dungeon, because it was an open space blocked, so they say, from the sun and sky.'

[236] 'Perhaps Dungate is from Dung.'

[237] 'In Latin this name is certainly from venella: a vennel or narrow alley.'

[238] 'I cannot immediately give its derivation.'

[239] Castle Scua: older forms = Castle scugh, 1649; Castle skews, 1740. See *Westmorland Place-Names*, Appleby.

[240] Also numbered p.79 and p.53.

Castle within the wall is Cæsars Tower, a most stately & lofty ~~build~~ and ~~indeed elegant~~ \ magnificent / building, rather one thinke for habitation than war, tho serviceable for both.

[II.509]

The Tower Inscription

There is this inscription in the lowest roome thereof (which is a vault) written in small Romane hand upon a plate of brass to shew the reparer:

> This Caesars Tower was began to bee repaired in and this midle wall (i.e. the wall athwart the tower wherein there are 2 chimes[241] on a brest in every roome: ~~to bee bu~~ nota merginaly) And this midle wall to bee built from the foundation in 1651, by Ann Baroness Clifford &c. Westmorland e Vesc, Lady of Honour of Scipton in Craven, & Countess Dowager of Penbroke, Dorsett and Montgomery, after it had layn ruinous & uncovered from the year 1569 \ untill now /

This as I remember in \ new / Romaine hand.

[II.513]

This tower no d[oubt] is of great antiquity, as the name doth import; and being more large & eligent than that of Brough or other of Browham, all which are called by same name & supposed to be of Romane original. It make me thinke that

[II.514][242]

Apleby to them was a place more select & of great accompt; yett there is a Tower at Browham Castle beside that of Cæsars \ caled Pagans / of venerable antiquity, supported by a single columne in the midle there, but of Roman order.[243] \ May be from Paganus. /

This tower att Apleby was so defaced ~~by the passage of time~~ that nothing thereof was left but a karkess, baire walls, which, ~~bid defiance~~ obdurate with suffering so many batteryes, became to hard for the teeth of time, and so remained a glorious tho useless monument of antient architecture till the Countiss of Penbroke repaired it againe, & made a habitation worthy of Cæsar, building a wall through the midle of it & divideing each 2 flores into 2 roomes, & each roome 2 chimneys apiece.[244] My father had a mare driven up the stares, which eat grass upon the walls in Olivers time*.
Here also in the Castle Parke ~~she built a fine~~ \ are stately / stables quadrangular, with a court in the midle. Here she chused to live rather than att court, he[re] to injoye the delicacie of nature \ luxuries / rather that elsewhere the \ apperances / of Art. And here she designes to end her dayes, and to be buried in St Laurence X^ch^ which att her owne cost and of her owne motion \ she was pleased to / repair ~~the same~~ together with St Michaels:[245] formerly they say a larger church than now it is, having a tower of bells, and Great Tom of Kirkbythore was translated thence; and several other places: castle and churches, which either built anew or repaired sufficient, her great designe being to sett people aworke, that they might have money, which yet she would give them for nothing – that be a charity which encourages idleness, debauchery &c. – and partly out of a respect to Antiquity, which would not ~~permit~~ \ suffer / her to se those ancient monuments lye grovelling in the dust. And her ~~great~~ care was not to \ so much / make neat building, as we doe now adayes & is highly commendable, but to make according to that owne Ancient forme, which upon

[Machell's Notes: II.514]

*Query an true.
Monument: a figure sett up in the wall with this inscription: Hic ja[cet] Ant[iquorum] Mac[hellorum] familia.[246] I must have the monuments in the church and Arms.

---

[241] Chimneys.
[242] Also numbered p.69.
[243] MS: 'supported by a \ single / columne \ in the midle there / ~~therein the midle~~, but ~~I cannot say tis~~ of Roman order.'
[244] MS: '& divideing each ~~rooms into 2~~ \ 2 / into 2 flores\ 2 / into 2 roomes & each roome haveing 2 chimneys apiece.'
[245] 'Here she designes' suggests that Lady Anne Clifford was still living (she died in 1676).
[246] 'Here lies the family of the Ancient Machells.'

[II.515]

that accompt is noe less ~~laudable~~ praiseworthy, in order whereto she had not recourse to the most expert Architects, but experiencd old men who mightest reforme, not how they should be, but how they were formerly.[247]

[II.512]

{Hospitall}

On the east side the ~~towne~~ \ street[248] / towards the upper \ side, / is a Hospital, built quadrangular wise, not high, \ tho placed [on] high ground / {Tho so well placed by the mun[ificence] of that noble Countess} but an Neat[249] building, which may teach the almes folke this lesson: to be neat not proud, humble not lofty.}[250]

On the bake side this Hospitall, which doeth containe 12 widdows & a Mother or Governess who have co[m]petent allowance, is a garden, where everyone have a particular platt[251] or portion to the[m] selves; & then in the ~~descent~~ \ on the plane op[posite] of the Banke / of the hill, which here made easy by stares, is an orchard planted, & then againe a little garden platt on the plane to the river, out of which the widows make considerable advantage

[II.513]

by selling there frute. Nor has the Hospitall this advantage alone: Nature has provided as well for every messuage, there being ~~not~~ \ scarce / one housesteed in the towne which has not an incloser for garden and orchard belonging to it, and most of em with water; and the Lower Ends especially in this street, so that, if Industry \ & Art / would midwife to Nature, which has labourd abundantly to make it delightfull, it would produce a most delicate habitation and ~~make~~ \ render / it againe which it hath bin formerly: A Princely Hold*.

[II.509]

The hospital att Apleby is for 12 Sisters who have 6^{li} per annum allowed them, and they have a Mother over them, or Governess, whose allowance is 8^{li} per annum, and a Reader or Chaplain, whose allowance is the same. They have a Chaple and Common Hall and a bell to ring them to prayers. They live much after the manner of schollers in college saveing that every one provides their owne victuals & that they eat apart, except att som certaine times. For they are to be all within doors att 8 in winter & 9 in summer, after which time the gates are locked up. (The \ Baren /Inscription over the gate \ sheweth when & by whom i[t] was founded, ~~followeth~~ being in these words)

> This Almeshouse was founded & begunne in the year 1651, and was finished and endowed with lands, for the yearly maintenance of a Reader and 12 Sisters for ever (in 1653) by Ann Baroness Clifford, Westmerland and Vescy, Lady of the Honor of Scipton in Craven and Countiss Dowager of Penbrooke Dorsett & Montgomery.

But tis dedicated to none.[252]

The lands wherewith it was indowed were

1. St Nicholas, on the northside of Eden from which it is divided by Appelby. This was bough[t] of [Blank] Fielding of Stamford by Barnard Castle & sent to Mr Jackson for the Highest Inscription in the Garden House. Answers: younger eyes than his cannot read it.[253]
2. The Hall & manor of Browham.

[247] MS: 'not how they should be, but how they ~~ough to~~ \ had be[e]n / were formerly.'
[248] High Street.
[249] This word is superimposed upon another which is possibly,'Eleg[ant]'.
[250] MS: 'but an Neat building, which may teach the almes folke ~~this lesson~~ \ this lesson: / ~~a lesson~~ \ of / ~~humil~~ to be neat not proud, humble not lofty.'
[251] Platt = plot.
[252] It is now known as St Anne's Hospital.
[253] This references an answer to Machell's questionnaire, see Editor's Introduction.

[II.507]

At the Schoole

Here is a house which they call the Garden House, 3 stories high, all the front of which is adorned with Romain Inscriptions, the collections, I suppose, of Reg[inald] Bainbridge, whom I take to have built it,[254] and putt the north end thereof in the orchard [where there is] a little hole or setting of earth, occasioned, they say, by 3 boyes who came to digg her[e] for moneys which he had hid: one holding the lanthorn & other 2 digging. But just when they came to descover the coffer, there rose up 3 little creatures like ratts, and with a puf of wind issuing out of the hole. they were all 3 blowne severall ways a 4^{r} of a mile distant from the place. Viz.: One to The Gards, an other to St Nic. Backs and an other to [the] Vicar[age]. {I doe not vouch for the truth of this storie, which I thinke to be in some measure ground upon the opp[inion] some have to this day of his being a conjurer[255] & raiseing dobbies[256] which danced about the schoole. But I take him to have bin a very good man who hid his money in the wall of the schoole and the house which he had built for bon. pub.[257]} He is said allsoe to have buried a purse of silver under the foundations said schoole, which I take in the same sense.[258]

[II.509]

The Inscriptions att the Schoole over the cockloft[259] doore:

DE SCHOLA. B.M.
FRANCISCUS NOB[ILIS] COMES CVMBRIÆ
LIGNA DEDIT
MARGARITA COMITISSA CUMBRIÆ CL. F.
DEDIT SAXA[260]

{Memorandum: the Countess of Penbrooke oaked the Schoole & Tables}[261]

Over the new dwelling house doore:[262]

FUND~~AMENTVM~~ IACT.
JUN.[263] 10. 1671.
IN PERPETVVM VSVM
ARCHIDIDASCALI[264]

[III.57]

[Appleby Gaol: A Tale]

March 6 1688/9

One Joseph Thomson, born at Cow-Brow in Loansdal ward; was imprison'd here upon suspicion of steeling a mear,[265] and Tryed and Acquitted at the Lammas 'sise[266] last: yet continued in Jaol for want of suerties for his good behaviour, till he tooke occasion to set himselfe (and another fellon) one day at Liberty after a bold and unwonted manner; for he opned the doers \ by som art which he had / at

[254] MS.II.514 contains similar text, not transcribed.
[255] Conjuror: One who practises conjuration; one who conjures spirits and pretends to perform miracles by their aid; a magician, wizard'. *OED*. Machell infers that Bainbridge's intelligence was thought by some to suggest occult practices.
[256] Local fairies.
[257] 'Public good.'
[258] The ways in which wise and educated men, often schoolmasters, could be seen by local people in terms of sorcery and superstition during the seventeenth century and beyond, is discussed by Ian D. Hodkinson, 'Science, Superstition and Sorcery: "Wise Men" in Westmorland during the seventeenth to nineteenth centuries', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 223-44. This should be borne in mind when reading Machell's 'Appleby Gaol: a Tale: III.57, below.
[259] A garret.
[260] 'Francis the noble Earl of Cumberland gave the timber and Margaret the Countess of Cumberland gave the stone.'
[261] I.e. gave the oak wood for the school furniture.
[262] Reginald Bainbridge's 1671 building.
[263] An illegible letter has been crossed through here.
[264] 'Foundation stone laid 10 June 1671, for the perpetual use of the headmaster.'
[265] Mare.
[266] Assizes. Lammas = 1 August.

noone time of the day, & tooke leave of the Debtors in the upper Jaol, askeing them if they would com out; & promising (upon their refusal,) that he would com & set them at liberty when ever they pleased ~~to require it of him~~; And so went his way, shakeing hands with som that he met. The other Fellon made his escape, & was heard of no more: But Thomson was taken in the Barony of Kendal, & sent to a Place in the Town of Kendal where they keep their prisners till they can be transmitted to Appelby Jaol; where they locked his hands behinde his back with Iron Manickles, Gives or fetters; & chaned him \ by the neck / to a great clogg of wood with a chain of Iron, thinkeing thereby to hold him fast. But before the morning, he had got himselfe free; & taken up an huge Oaken planke out of the floore by which he let himselfe into a shop that was under neath, & throwing the doer quite of the hinges, made his second escape.[267] He was taken agane in a short time after, & recommitted to his former lodgings, where to secure him by another method, they bough[t][268] about 20 yards of Rope, & tyed & trussed him up like a Pack, with his hands behinde him; & \ so laid him in straw & /set a watch over him, which was indeed their only security, for he had got himselfe loose the next morning, & but for That, might have made an Escape. Hereupon the Deputy Jaoler thought fit to Transmitt him (with all possible speed) to Appelby Jaol; & coming to Colby; while som were enquireing for Mr Warcop, \ the Jalour who liv'd in that place / the Prisoner asked one of his keepers to play a game at cards for Diversion, and playing with him, call'd him a Bungler & told him every

[III.58]

card in his hand, which the other, admireing, bless'd him selfe \ from him / and threw up the cards.[269] But the prisoner wishd him to fall on agane & minde his business better than before, in order to which he gave him liberty to shufle & cutt and deale the cards; & when that was don told him agane every card in his hand by name & suit; upon which the other calld him a witch & would play no more. And while Mr Warcop was carrying him thence to Appelby Jaol; he wishd him to be kinde & civil to him, or it should be worse for him; which ~~the Jaoler~~ he, considering &[270] recollecting what Prankes he \ had / playd, fed him with possets or any thinge that he had a minde \ to. / And in the conclusion, opened the Jaol, set him at Liberty, and gave him a Treat at his departure, for fear of receiveing a further mischiefe.

This story, however strange it may seeme, I take to be a most Certaine Truith, haveing received the substance of it from the Pro-mayor of Apleby Mr John Atkinson; & afterwards from Mr Thomas Warcop the Jaoler ~~of Appelby~~ there, from whose report I thought fit to record it this 6th day of March, 1688/9.

[II.521]

{House of Correction}

The House of Correction is placed upon the end of the bridge opposite to the prison, with this inscription: (Porta[2] Patens[3] esto[1] nulli Claudatur honesto)[271] and then is destitute of building on both sides ~~till~~ \ to / Howgate Foote, where some houses on both sides \ with a few on the end / ~~some lately built, some of older continuance~~; and here a little torrent divides it selfe {it comes out of Stony Lane} one part running of on the right hand to[w]ards the river, the other seeking a smo[o]ther path. tho farther about, runs along the gards to beyond the bridge, where tis received into Edens imbraces. But to follow it higher

[II.522][272]

and to let that pass which is all already gon by us:

---

[267] MS: '&, throw~~gh~~ing the doer quite of the […] hinges, made his second escape.'
[268] Or 'brough[t].'
[269] MS: '\ from him / out of his company and ny, and threw up the cards.'
[270] Two crossed-through words here are illegible.
[271] 'Let the door stand open; let it not be closed to any honourable man,' See *N&B1*, 319, which gives the same inscription, though Machell appears to correct the order of it to read 'esto Porta Patens': '2,3,1.' But there is more to this inscription than meets the eye: see the chapter on Roman Antiquities, VI.199.
[272] Also numbered p.77.

[Howgate]
If wee pass a little further we come to [H]owgate, ~~so called~~ being a way or passage cut through a rock & overshaded with trees, which ~~peradventure~~ doubtless is named from the hollow-ness thereof, how being a contract[ion] of hollow and hovel, the diminutive, which may be deduced from the Latin Caveola, casting away C & adding the aspirate.
Att the end of this Howgate* there is a Catadupe,[273] which partes from Bongate, the general name of the tow Cross Streets in that part of the towne, tho I am perswaded it formerly belonged to the South Street onely,[274] being situate on a very high assent which leades towards Brough and ought to be writ non Bon-gate, but Bangate, it being derived from the British word, Ban – altus excelsus – high, lofty; whence unde Banke etiam. A[nglo S[axon] Or not to truble you with so far a feth,[275] it is enough to derive it quasi Banke-Gate, i.e. the street upon the Ba[n]ke†. The other Cross Street goes from the Mill, or att least has don so, towards Roman Fell. {The other part is waterd on one side with this sike f[r]om Sto[ny] Lane.[276] On the other, benea[th] a great rock of good huw stone runnes the River Eden. But the descent by the church to the mill is ~~more~~ facill & easy.}

[Machell's Notes: II.522]
*The place where (if I mistake [not] ancient evidence) was formerly a mill. /
†{Bongate vide supra p. 74, an non potius Bond-gate villanorum pagus. And so it is vetus Apleby ubi villani habitant.}[277] May be this was the Best part of the Towne, and Anciently the Chiefe street, called Bongate since the Norman Conquest (Camden Britannia) from the French word bien, or Latin bona. Query Bona platea, the Good Street.

[II.523]

[Conclusion]
And so I have don with its description, which is in every[278] place so very commodious for carying of[f] any thing which may be noysome, that I wonder such a pestilence should ever rage in this place as it did in the yeare \ 1598. / Witness this inscription:

Hic Pestis Sævit 1598 Oppid desert Mercatus ad Gilshaughlin F[uit]*.[279]

But when God is pleased to visit to sin, where can we be saif?

{Jardine of Eden}.
The aire \ of it self / is most healthfull, ther being no fens near, nor any places for water to stagnise[280] about this towne. And as for the coldness, this part of the country is so well fenced with the towering mounta[n]es which enci[r]cle this part, cald the Bottom of Westmorland, with the Borders of Cumberland, that looke[ing] from Apleby round about, you would think your selfe in a spatiouse cock pitt. And if some men had there description, they would \ not / feare to give the title of, The Garden of Eden; but I shall content my selfe without any flourish thus, to present you with naked truth.[281]

[Machell's Notes: II.523]
*{Gilshaugh est locus juxta part[em] Stric[kland] \ Magna / quondam sed Fallafeildorum, quorum aliquis prætorem Abullabæ tunc temporis fuisse existimo; id autem in C.F.}[282]

---

[273] Cataract; a waterfall.
[274] MS: 'tho I am perswaded it formerly belonged to the ~~High Street former~~ South Street ~~former~~ onely.'
[275] Probably from 'feith': belief, trust, confidence. *OED*.
[276] Sike: 'A small stream of water, a rill or streamlet, especially one flowing through flat or marshy ground, and often dry in summer; a ditch or channel through which a tiny stream flows. In former times frequently used as a boundary between lands, fields, etc. *OED*.
[277] 'Bongate see above p.74, whether rather Bondgate, was the centre of the country folk. And so it is Old Appleby where the villagers live.'
[278] Part of this sentence has been removed from the foot of MS.II.522.
[279] 'Here the plague raged in 1598: the market fled the town to Gilshaughlin Forest.'
[280] 'Stagnize': 'to render stagnant.' *OED*.
[281] Two short headings have been removed from this page. Viz. MS: 'The places of chief remarks. ~~As to its government~~.'
[282] 'Gilshaugh is a place once next to a part of Great Strickland, but belongs to the Fallowfields, one of whom I think was mayor of Appleby at that time; and this is in C.F.' [Charter of the Fallowfields]

[II.507]

{[**Things] Remarkeable to be writte**.}

[Loyalty to the King]
~~Lancelot Machell of Crakenthorpe Esq.~~ \ A Gentleman of this county, / when chosen Mayor, would not accept of the prætoriall dignity till Olivers Charter, ~~which had bin~~ formerly ~~procurrd~~ imposed upon the Towne (\ to the /which Aldermen ~~& Major~~ of his owne gang), was brought before him, which he tore in presence in the open court.

[II.508]

Tanta fuit hujus loci honestas ~~et regiæ majest[at]i reverentia ut edita Oliveri contra regem nec \ et parliamenti infidelis~~ /{illegitimique} ~~praetor nec ipsius Balivi quorum~~ officium erant {se my little booke.}[283]
So great was the honesty of this towne and \ so great / theire reverence to ~~kingly~~ \ regal / majesty, that when a proclamation was issued out by Oliver Cromwell, absurdly pro-clameing the King to be a tratour, nor Major nor Baileves (whose office it was), could ~~by faire or foule means~~ be brought ~~to have my hand in so horrid~~, nor any of this towne, could be prevailed upon to pronounce such a tre[ason].

[II.510]

The fidelity of this place, which it hath ever borne to the kings of England, deserves very well to be had in remembrance and to be transfer'd as an honourable example ~~to all posterity~~ \ in future ages. / In the late civil wars it was allwayes for the king, and a smale garrison of {?} men defended the castle against [blank].

{Jock-Green}
Here, the Parliament Party, being in chase, had utterly been overthrowne, but thes[e] country gentlemen could not persuade the general – I thinke it was (Lashley)[284] to fall on: for his Answer to them was, When the hares kild, the game di[es]. But after Oliver \ Cromwell / had vanquished the Royall Party ~~and~~ & settled all changes to his owne likeing, the loyalty was such that many of the inhabitants suffered \ frequent / imprisonment & sequestration, together with the neighboring gentry, most of which were Aldermen of the Towne. But its Loyalty was chiefly remarke in those dismal times for 2 circumstances:
1. That no man, no, not the inferiour officers to whome it belonged to publish proclamations, would by any means proclaime the King a Traytor. So that soljer were constreyned to gett a vagabond fellow &c;
2. Tering Oliver Charter in pieces.

[II.511]

How much also & how worthy are they to be commended for their faithfull proceeding in election of a major in Olivers time, when Captaine Atkinsons[285] (afterwards hang'd, drawne & quartered there, his head being pitched upon the towne hale, the very place where offered that violence) could not \ over / aw them into an Election, according to his pleasure & Olivers intrest, notwithstanding he layd his hand upon his sword, saying, he would choose him by that, & was also backed with a gard of

[283] Machell translates and adds to this passage immediately below; i.e. 'so great was the honesty' etc.
[284] Lashley could be a variant of Leslie (i.e. General Leslie) but the parliamentary army commander here was Major General John Lambert. Viz. 'In May 1648 the northern royalists took up arms again, and at the beginning of July the Scottish army [of 'engagers, i.e. supporters of the monarchy] under Hamilton invaded England. Against the former, Lambert more than held his own, driving Sir Marmaduke Langdale, with the bulk of his forces, into Carlisle, and recapturing Appleby and other castles. But the advance of Hamilton's Scottish army … obliged Lambert to fall back. Lambert led an organized retreat of his forces to Bowes and Barnard Castle, aiming to hold Stainmore Pass against Hamilton. From there he had to retire further to Richmond and then Knaresborough… On 13 August, Cromwell arrived, and their combined forces defeated the Scots at Preston (17-19 August 1648).' D. Farr, 'Lambert [Lambart], John (bap. 1619, d. 1684), parliamentary soldier and politician.' *ODNB*.
[285] Captain Robert Atkinson from Mallerstang, of Kaber Rigg Plot fame, was hanged 1 September, 1664, according to Lady Anne Clifford's diary: see Nightingale *Ejected of 1662,* 1, 116-17; see also Peter D. Clarke, 'The Sectarian "Threat" and its Impact in Restoration Cumbria', *CW2*, 88 (1988), 161-76.

soljers. And tho Apleby be little regarded (the unhappy faite of mos[t] that were loyal) yet this may truly be sayd of it: tho if other townes have received honour, this has deserv'd it. Nor must Carlile by me be forgot: the head of Cumb'land, as this is of Westm'land. For the Loyalty of these 2 places may very well expiate for ~~the desloyalty of all the little townes, tho there had bin more of~~ all other places, if there had bin more (as thankes be to God there were very few in both the countyes.)

[Extract from Joseph Nicolson and Richard Burn, *The History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland*, Volume I (London, 1777), pages 315 to 316.][286]

[315]

'In the time of Oliver Cromwell, they seem to have had a charter imposed upon them , restrictive probably of their former privileges ; for they had been firm in their attachment to the royal cause. To which purpose the reverend Thomas Machel, speaking of the plunderings and devastacions which Appleby had sustained in former ages, adds,'

"And if you seek for a later instance, you may find one in the height of Cromwells tyranny; for when those bloody regicides, which made the very name of an Englishman odious in the world, were not content to bury their malice with that most pious and innocent king whom they most barbarously murdered, but would farther proceed to proscribe his son and proclaim their lord and sovereign a traytor, no man there (either by reward or threatning) could be induced to act or to appear in so horrid a villainy. The mayor withdrew himself, and the bailiffs (whose office it was) threw up their commissions, though but poor men, insomuch that the soldiers were glad to have recourse unto a fellow in the market, an unclean bird, hatched at Kirkby Stephen, the nest of all traytors,[287] who proclaimed it aloud, whilst the people stopped their ears and hearts, having nothing open but their eyes, and those even filled with tears. What should I speak of those perpetual persecutions which the neighbouring gentlemen, who are aldermen of the town, underwent for their loyalty to the king? I think I need no other argument both for their acting for the king and their faithful perseverance than their constant sufferings, sequestrations, and imprisonments; from which they were never free one fortnight together, during the unhappy usurpation of that cruel tyrant. And the townsmen were not far behind this gallant example of their noble leaders; who when captain Atkinson came down from the castle with his musketeers to chuse a Roundhead mayor, and clapped his hand on his sword , saying, *I'll do it by this**, yet made resistance; for they then conferred the office (to

[316]

prevent bloodshed) on a moderate man, who had acted on neither side, except in bearing that office before; and so he was mayor two years together. And though Oliver, through captain Atkinson's means, in order to make himself more absolute, gave a charter to this ancient corporation, which was rather imposed than accepted of, yet they preserved their old one to the last. And when the first gentleman, whose name I neither need nor am willing to mention†; after his many refusals in Oliver's time, accepted the place on the king's return, he would not handle the staff of authority, nor suffer the oath of office to be administred unto him, till he had sent for Olivers charter, and in the face of the court cut it in pieces with his own hands, and then looking about he espied some taylors, and cast it to them, saying it should never be a measure unto him.[288] What should I speak of those great acclamations and expressions of joy which the people could not smother, at the news of the king's return? What, of that wonderful pomp and solemnity (the like whereof was never seen in those parts) upon his coronation, when there were almost as many bonefires as houses, and two stately high

[286] This highly important part of Machell's text can no longer be found within his bound MSS; for an analysis of how and why this might be so, see the Editor's Introduction.

[287] The label seems to have stuck. In 2009, while contesting the Penrith and the Border parliamentary constituency, Rory Stewart was told ' in five separate conversations that the people of Kirkby [Stephen] were Roundheads, and still hated Appleby for being on the Royalist side in the civil war.' See Rory Stewart, *Politics on the Edge* (London, 2023), 43.

[288] 'What the poor taylors had done to have this flung in their faces is not clear': a pertinent comment made by Lionel Cresswell, in 'Crackenthorpe: its Manor, Hall and the Machell Family', *CW2*, 33 (1933), 113-32, at 121. Part of Machell's passage is also quoted by Hewitson in 'Appleby Charters', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 283, but with no attribution. Presumably it was gleaned from *N&BI*, 316.

scaffolds at each end of the town, hung with cloth of arras and gold; whither, after service done at the church, the countess of Pembroke, with the mayor, aldermen, and all the other gentry of the county ascended, with I know not how many trumpets, and an imperial crown carried before them, where they proclaimed, prayed for, and drank the health of the king upon their knees ; the aged countess seeming young again to grace the solemnity. The expences of that day were very considerable. For throughout the town was kept open house, after the example of that noble countess, who thought not her gates then wide enough to receive her guests, which before had been too wide for receiving armies of soldiers."

[Nicolson and Burn: Notes]

*This captain Atkinson who was of Winton in this county, was afterwards hanged, for being concerned in Kaber Rigg plot.

†Hugh Machel esquire, brother of the said Thomas.[289]

[**Government of Appleby**]

[I.175]

I shall proceed to the privaledges of this Corporation and then speake something more particularly of those places which seeme more remarkeable. It is indeed a very Ancient Corporation: haveing a Charter granted by Henry 1. as is evident from the records of the Cliffords which I have red.

[I.176]

And there were a Corporation of Burgers before, for in Edward I. time {iurat … anno 7^0 Ed. I. [1278-79] Rot. Vetini…}[290] It was presented by a Jury upon sufficient evidence that old Henry {H. 1.} granted to the Burgesses of Apleby such libertyes as the Citizens of Yorke have, and that King John confirmed the same &c. \ vid. plura in notis[291] / ~~They acknowledge such~~. So that if the Towne could by trade advance their stake[292] and wer by that means able\ to maintaine / their grandure, it would not come short of any Corporation I know of in England.

They are governed by a Mayor \ the present Mayor being John Thwates Esq. Mayor of Apleby,[293] & / 12 Aldermen, many of them being Gentlemen of \ quality / [in] the County whoe keep their Propretors[294] (when they are elected) to officiate for them in their absence. And have \ 1 Sword Bearer / 1 Sargent at Mase, 2 Halbert Bearers &c.,[295] which wait upon the Mayor with other Officers \ Bali[ve]s or Shrives or Provos[t] / as Recorder, Chamberlins and Coroner, with other inferior officers.

[289] Nicolson and Burn are incorrect: it was not Hugh, but Machell's father, Lancelot, who tore up the charter (see Cresswell, 'Crackenthorpe: its Manor, Hall and the Machell Family', 121). See also I.290 in this chapter. For an analysis of Machell's political writing here, see Michael Mullett, who argues that 'it seems highly likely that Thomas Machell scripted a theatrical episode in which the newly installed restoration mayor of Appleby refused to accept the stipulations of the Cromwell charter. The account had a powerful purpose as adroit royalist propaganda.' See Michael Mullett, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby in the era of Lady Anne Clifford, 1649-1689,* CWAAS Tract Series 25 (Kendal, 2015), 24-26.

[290] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.

[291] 'See further in my notes.'

[292] Indistinct word.

[293] John Thwaites Senior was mayor in 1657 and 1658. John Thwaites, his son, was mayor in 1674, 1681, 1689 and 1698 (in which year he died in office). See http://applebytown.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/MAYORS-OF-APPLEBY-PDF.pdf.

[294] Proprætor: a person acting in place of a prætor.

[295] Alternative name: halberd. The halberd had fallen out of use as a fighting weapon by the 17th century, but was retained for ceremonial use.

[I.308]

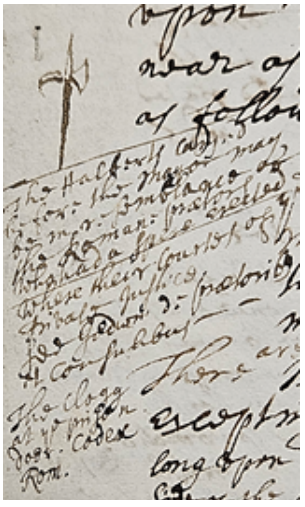


Figure 1.1.7. Margin sketch of halberd, with explanatory text. I.308.

{The halberds caryed before the mayor may be in resemblance of the Romane prætors who had a spere erected where their courtes of private justice.[296] See Joed[…], *de Prætoribus et Consulibus*.}[297]

[Machell's Notes: I.308]

{The clogg at the prison door. Codex Rom[anus.}[298]

[I.176]

And allso by 2 Balfs[299] whose office is allmost lost for want of clame & exercise but if I mistake not, of great authority and repute, being as in other places equall to the Balies or Shireves of Townes & Cities Corporate. For I finde that Gra[n]tes and other writeing were made by the Major Balives and Com[mons] of Apleby in Henry 8. Time. And I thinke they [Balives] were called Provosts, for I finde William Gold[r]ington Major of Apleby, and Thomas Gold[r]ington Provost of Apleby, witnesses att a deed amongst the writeing of Mr Blenkinsop (which except by Provost, Balives he meant, I cannot tell well what to make of them) the acknowle[dge]d statute marchant &c.[300] And may arreast[301] from [blank] to [blank] within the mase liberty which extends to these places and have all [blank] as far as the liberty of the staff doth reach, which is the whole extent of the Barony of Apleby, to wit to [Blank]

[296] The centumviral court (centumviri) was the chancery court (court of equity) of ancient Rome. It was a court of justice dealing with private law (civil law). See Agnes Clay, 'Centumviri', in Hugh Chisholm (ed.), *Encyclopædia Britannica. Vol. 5*, 11th edn (Cambridge, 1910-11), 683–84.

[297] 'Of Praetors and Consuls.' Machell was possibly referring to Josse de Damhouder, *Praxis rerum criminalium, elegantissimis iconibus ad materiam accomodis illustrata, prætoribus, proprætoribus, consulibus, proconsulibus, magistratibus, reliquisque id genus iustitiariis ac officiariis, apprimè utílis ac necessaria, etc. With woodcuts by Gerard de Jode* (Antwerp, 1554). In modern terms, 'a practical handbook of criminal justice for the use of officials such as praetors, consuls etc.'

[298] See Machell's tale of a gaol escape, III.57, above: 'They … chaned him \ by the neck / to a great clogg of wood with a chain of Iron, thinkeing thereby to hold him fast.'

[299] Bailiffs.

[300] Statute marchant/merchant: a bond of record, acknowledged before the chief magistrate of a trading town, by which a creditor has the power of seizing a debtor's lands in case of default. *OED*.

[301] Arrest.

[I.178]

[Charter Proclamations: James II. 1688][302]

[Proclamation 17 October 1688.]

JAMES R.

Whereas in the Charters, Patents or Grants made to several Cities, Burroughs and Towns Corporate, a Power is reserved to us to Remove, Displace, and Discharge by Order under Our Signet and Sign Manual, the Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen and other Members of the same: We do accordingly hereby Remove, Displace and Discharge all Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of our said respective Cities, Burroughs, and Towns Corporate, which have or claim such Offices or Places by Charter, Patent or Grant from the late King Our most Dear Brother of ever blessed Memory, or from Us since the Year One thousand six hundred seventy nine, except such Cities and Towns in Our Proclamation named, whose Deeds of Surrender are Inrolled, or against whom Judgments in Quo Warranto are Entred: And they, and every of them, are hereby Removed, Displaced and Discharged accordingly, in Pursuance of the Power reserved to Us as aforesaid: Whereof all Persons concerned are hereby required to take Notice.he issued a proclamation that
Given at Our Court a Whitehall the 17th Day of October, 1688. In the Fourth Year of Our Reign.
By His Majesties Command.
Sunderland P.
London, Printed by Charles Bill, Henry Hills, ad Thomas Newcomb, Printers to the Kings most Excellent Majesty, 1688.


JAMES R.
Whereas in the Charters, Patents, or Grants made to several Cities, Burroughs and Towns Corporate, a Power is reserved to Us, Our Heirs and Successors, to Remove, Displace and Discharge by Order in Council, the Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of the same: We do accordingly hereby Remove, Displace and Discharge all Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of our said respective Cities, Burroughs, and Towns Corporate, which have or claim such Offices or Places by Charter, Patent or Grant from the late King Our most Dear Brother of ever blessed Memory, or from Us since the Year One thousand six hundred seventy nine, except such Cities and Towns in Our Proclamation named, whose Deeds of Surrender are Inrolled, or against whom Judgments in Quo Warranto are Entred: And they, and every of them, are hereby Removed, Displaced and Discharged accordingly, in Pursuance of the Power reserved to Us as aforesaid: Whereof all Persons concerned are hereby required to take Notice.
Given at Our Court at Whitehall the 17th Day of October, 1688. In the Fourth Year of Our Reign.
By His Majesties Command.
Sunderland P.
London, Printed by Charles Bill, Henry Hills, and Thomas Newcomb, Printers to the Kings most Excellent Majesty, 1688.

At the Court at Whitehall the 17th day of October, 1688.
PRESENT,
The King's most Excellent Majesty.
His R. H. Prince George of Denmark,
Lord Chancellor, Duke of Hamilton,
Lord Privy-Seal, Marquess of Powis,
Earl of Middleton, Mr. Pepys.
Lord Chief Justice Herbert,
Sir Thomas Strickland,
Sir Nicholas Butler,
John Nicholas.
Whereas in the Charters, Patents, or Grants made to several Cities, Burroughs and Towns Corporate, a Power is reserved to His Majesty by his Order in Council, to Remove, Displace and Discharge the Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of the same: His Majesty in this day in Council pleased to Order, And it is hereby Ordered accordingly, That all Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of the said respective Cities, Burroughs and Towns Corporate, which have or claim such Offices or Places by Charter, Power or Grant from the late King of Blessed Memory, or from His Majesty since the year 1679. Except such Cities and Towns in His Majesties Proclamation named, whose Deeds of Surrender are Inrolled, or against whose Judgments in Quo Warranto are Entred; be Removed, Displaced, and Discharged, in pursuance of the Power aforesaid in aforesaid. And they and every of them are hereby Removed, Displaced, and Discharged accordingly.

Figure 1.1.8. Proclamation of James II, 1688. I.178-9.

[I.179]

At the Court at Whitehall the 17th day of October, 1688.
PRESENT, The King's most Excellent Majesty.
His R. H. Prince Geo. of Denmark,
Lord Chancellor, Duke of Hamilton,
Lord Privy-Seal, Marquess of Powis,

[302] During the reign of Charles II, and particularly early in 1688 under James II, many towns were required to surrender their charters and accept new ones, thereby allowing the monarch power to nominate or remove the principal officers. James changed his policy early in October 1688, by restoring the charter of London, and two weeks later, he issued another Proclamation directing that most town charters should be reinstated. See Robert H. George, 'The Charters Granted to English Parliamentary Corporations in 1688', *English Historical Review* 55, 217 (Jan., 1940), 47-56, at 47.

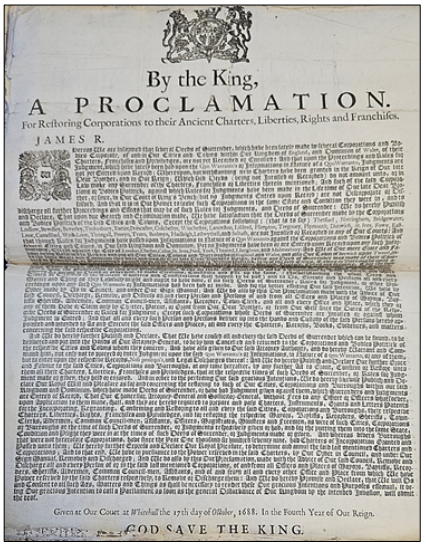
Earl of Huntingdon,
Earl of Craven,
Earl of Berkeley,
Earl of Moray,
Earl of Middleton,
Earl of Melfort,
Earl of Castlemain,
Viscount Preston,
Lord Godolphin,
Mr. Chancel. of the Exchequer,
Master of the Rolls,
Lord Chief Justice Herbert,
Sir Thomas Strickland,
Sir Nicholas Butler,
Mr. Petre.

Whereas in the Charters, Patents, or Grants made to several Cities, Burroughs and Towns Corporate, a Power is reserved to His Majesty by his Order in Council, to Remove, Displace and Discharge the Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of the same. His Majesty is this day in Council pleased to Order. And it is hereby Ordered accordingly, That all Mayors, Sheriffs, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Aldermen Common Council-Men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers, Freemen, and other Members of the said respective Cities, Burroughs and Towns Corporate, which have or claim such Offices or Places by Charter, Patent or Grant from the late King of Blessed Memory, or from His Majesty since the year 1679. Except such Cities and Towns in His Majesties Proclamation named, (whose Deeds of Surrender are Inrolled, or against whom Judgments in Quo Warranto are Entred) be Removed, Displaced, and Discharged, in pursuance of the Power reserved as aforesaid. And they and every of them are hereby Removed, Displaced, and Discharged accordingly.

John Nicholas.
London, Printed by Charles Bill, Henry Hills, and Thomas Newcomb, Printers to the King's Most Excellent Majesty, 1688.

[I.182A-183]

Proclamation for restoreing Corporations to their ancient charters & liberties,
given to me by Mr John Hall, subsheriff of Westmorland, & proclamed by him at Appleby &c. in October 1688.[303]



By the King,
A PROCLAMATION.
For Restoring Corporations to their Ancient Charters, Liberties, Rights and Franchises.
JAMES R.

Given at Our Court at *Whitehall* the 17th day of *October*, 1688. In the Fourth Year of Our Reign.
GOD SAVE THE KING.

Figure 1.1.9. 'By the King: A Proclamation for Restoring Corporations to their Ancient Charters, Rights and Franchises, James R.' 1688. 1.182A-183.

[303] The proclamations bound into the pages of Volume 1 are contemporaneous printed handbills.

By the King, A PROCLAMATION.
For Restoring Corporations to their Ancient Charters, Liberties, Rights and Franchises.
JAMES R.
Whereas We are informed that several Deeds of Surrender, which have been lately made by several Corporations and Bodies Corporate, of and in Our Cities and Towns within Our Kingdom of England, and Dominion of Wales, of their Charters, Franchises and Priviledges, are not yet Recorded or Enrolled: And that upon the Proceedings and Rules for Judgment, which have lately been had upon the Quo Warranto's or Informations in Nature of a Quo Warranto, Judgments are not yet Entred upon Record; Whereupon, notwithstanding new Charters have been granted in the Reign of Our late Dear Brother, and in our Reign; Which said Deeds (being not Inrolled or Recorded) do not amount unto, or in Law make any Surrender of the Charters, Franchises or Liberties therein mentioned; And such of the said Corpora|tions or Bodies Politick, against which Rules for Iudgments have been made in the Life time of Our late Dear Brother, or since, in Our Court of King's Bench (but no Judgments Entred upon Record) are not Discorporate or Dissolved; And that it is in Our Power to leave such Corporations in the same Estate and Condition they were in, and to discharge all further Proceedings and Effects that may be of such Rules for Judgments, and Deeds of Surrender: We do hereby Publish and Declare, That upon due Search and Examination made, We have satisfaction that the Deeds of Surrender made by the Corporations and Bodies Politick of the said Cities and Towns, Except the Corporations following: (that is to say) Thetford, Nottingham, Bridgewater, Ludlow, Bewdley, Beverley, Teukesbury, Exeter, Doncaster, Colchester, Winchester, Lanceston, Lisderd, Plimpton, Tregoney, Plymouth, Dunwich, St. Ives, Fowy, East-Looe, Camelford, West-Looe, Tintegall, Penryn, Truro, Bodmyn, Hadleigh, Lestwythell, and Saltash, are not Inrolled or Recorded in any of Our Courts: And that though Rules for Judgments have passed upon Informations in Nature of a Quo Warranto against the Corporations and Bodies Politick of several Cities and Towns, in Our said Kingdom and Dominion; Yet no Judgments have been or are Entred upon Record upon any such Informations, Except against the City of London, Chester, Calne, St. Ives, Pool, York, Thaxted, Llanghour, and Malmesbury: And We of Our meer Grace and Favour, being Resolved to Restore and put all Our Cities, Towns and Burroughs in England and Wales, and also Our Town of Berwick upon Tweed, into the same State and Condition they were and was, in Our late Dear Brothers Reign, before any Deed of Surrender was made of their Charters or Franchises, or Proceedings against them or the Corporations or Bodies Politick, in or of the said Cities, Towns or Burroughs upon any Quo Warranto or Informations in Nature of a Quo Warranto had. We do hereby therefore Publish, Declare, Direct and Require, That the said Corporations and Bodies Politick and Corporate of all the said Cities, Towns and Burroughs, whose Deeds of Surrender are not Inrolled, nor Judgments entred against them as aforesaid; And the Mayors, Bayliffs, Sheriffs, Aldermen, Common Council-men, Assistants, Recorders, Town-Clerks, Magistrates, Ministers, Officers, Freemen, and all and every others the Members of or in every of them respectively upon the Publication of this Our Proclamation, Take on them and Proceed to Act as a Corporation or Body Politick, and where Places are vacant by Death or otherwise, to make Elections, Constitute and Fill up the same (Notwithstanding the usual Days and Times of Elections by the Ancient Charters and Constitutions shall happen to be past), and to Do, Execute and perform all and every Matter and Thing as they Lawfully might and ought to have done, if no such Deeds of Surrender, Rules for Iudgment, or other Proceedings upon any such Quo Warranto or Informations had been had or made. And for the better effecting Our said Intention, We have by Order made by Us in Council, and under Our Sign Manual; And We do also by this Our Proclamation made with the Advice of Our said Council, Discharge, Remove, and Dismiss all and every Person and Persons of and from all Offices and Places of Mayors, Bayliffs Sheriffs, Aldermen, Common Council-men, Assistants, Recorder, Town-Clerk, and all and every Office and Place, which they or any of them Have or Claim only by Charter, Patent, or Grant from Our Dear Brother, or from Our Self since the Dates of the Respective Deeds of Surrender or Rules for Judgment; Except such Corporations whose Deeds of Surrender are Inrolled or against whom Judgment is Entred; And that all and every such Person and Persons deliver up into the Hands and Custody of the said Persons hereby appointed and intended to Act and Execute the said Offices and Places, all and every the Charters, Records, Books, Evidences, and matters concerning the said respective Corporations.

And We do hereby further Publish and Declare, That We have caused all and every the said Deeds of Surrender which can be found, to be delivered and put into the Hands of Our Attorney-General, to be by him Cancelled and returned to the Corporations and Bodies Politick of the respective Cities and Towns whom they concern; And have also given to Our said Attorney Authority, and do hereby Warrant and Command him, not only not to proceed or enter Judgment upon the said Quo Warranto's or Informations, in Nature of a Quo Warranto, or any of them, but to enter upon the respective Records, Noli prosequi's, and Legal Discharges thereof: And We do hereby Publish and Declare Our further Grace and Favour to the said Cities, Corporations and Burroughs, at any time hereafter, by any further Act to Grant, Confirm or Restore unto them all their Charters, Liberties, Franchises and Priviledges, that at the respective times of such Deeds of Surrender, or Rules for Judgment made or given, they held or enjoyed. And in order to the perfecting Our said gracious Intentions, We do hereby likewise Publish and Declare Our Royal Will and Pleasure as for and concerning the restoring to such of Our Cities, Corporations and Burroughs within our said Kingdom and Dominion, which have made Deeds of Surrender, or have had Iudgment given against them, which Surrenders and Iudgments are Entred of Record, That Our Chancellor, Attorney-General and Sollicitor-General, without Fees to any Officer or Officers whatsoever, upon Application to them made, shall, and they are hereby required to prepare and pass Charters, Instruments, Grants and Letters Patents for the Incorporating, Regranting, Confirming and Restoring to all and every the said Cities, Corporations and Burroughs, their respective Charters, Liberties, Rights, Franchises and Priviledges, and for restoring the respective Mayors, Bayliffs, Recorders, Sheriffs, Town-Clerks, Aldermen, Common Council-men, Assistants, Officers, Magistrates, Ministers and Freemen, as were of such Cities, Corporations or Burroughs at the time of such Deeds of Surrender, or Judgments respectively given or had, and for the putting them into the same State, Condition and Plight they were in at the times of such Deeds of Surrender, or Judgments made or given. And whereas divers Burroughs that were not heretofore Corporations, have since the Year One thousand six hundred seventy nine, had Charters of Incorporation Granted and Passed unto them; We hereby further Express and Declare Our Royal Pleasure, to determine and annul the said last mentioned Charters and Corporations; And to that end, We have in pursuance to the Power reserved in the said Charters, by Our Order in Council, and under Our Sign Manual, Removed and Discharged; And We do also by this Our Proclamation, made with the Advice of Our said Council, Remove and Discharge all and every Person of or in the said last mentioned Corporations, of and from all Offices and Places of Mayors, Bayliffs, Recorders, Sheriffs, Aldermen, Common Council-men, Assistants, and of and from all and every other Office and Place from which We have Power reserved by the said Charters respectively, to Remove or Discharge them: And We do hereby Promise and Declare, that We will Do and Consent to all such Acts, Matters and Things as shall be necessary to render these Our gracious Intentions and Purposes effectual, it being Our gracious Intention to call a Parliament as soon as the general Disturbance of Our Kingdom by the intended Invasion, will admit thereof.
Given at Our Court at Whitehallthe 17th day of October, 1688. In the Fourth Year of Our Reign.
GOD SAVE THE KING.

[I.276B][304]

[The First Appleby Charters]

Appleby traditionally reported to have bin governed by a maior when London was onely a Balife but that I shall onely mention because still common in the mouth of the people*.
The 1t Charter as far as I could ever yett discover was in the time of Henry 1t [1100-35]: è cartis Clifford apud Appleby Castle,[305] who was otherwise called Henricus Senex, but this I have only seen in an Inquisition upon a sute depending, betwixt the barrons of Westmorland, Lords of the Honour of Appleby, & the Corporation of […][306]

[304] This page also contains the notes, MS: '[perished] Crakenthorpe [perished] Cherryes grow near Appleby wild in the woods.'
[305] 'From a charter of the Cliffords at Appleby Castle.'
[306] The end of this sentence is obscured by the binding.

The Charter of Appleby granted in Henry the 2nd times [1154-89] and confirmed success[ively] by the Kings of England, is with liberty &c. and freedom allso a pontagio lastagio &c. in omnibus &c. [307]& doe sometime returne writts of witherman.[308]
Alderman Smyth, senior
Alderman Smyth, Junior
Alderman Robinson
Alderman Lowson
Alderman Atkinson
Alderman Harrison
Alderman Warcop
Nevinson

[Machell's Notes: I.276A]

*{1st. I remember long ago that it was a tradition with the people thereabouts that Apleby was governed by a mayor when London \ by a Balive [blank] /} {before London, which was made a mayor towne in the first of Richard 1st [1189-90]} {Tis also said that York was granted on the forenoone & Apleby in the afternoon.}

[1.276A][309]

The Charter to Appleby granted in Henry the 2d time is whence liberty & free customes as fully wholy & honourably as the Citizens of Yorke did enjoye; which had been confirmd successively by the Kinges of England. {Carta habuit temp. Henrie Senicis 12[310] H.1. [1111-12]}[311]
~~That we~~ \ The Corporation /consists of a Maior, Council of Aldermen, Recorder and Common Councell \ I thinke of 2 Balifes allso / have power to arrest for any sume without limitation; \ as appears from my evidence of Apleby Schoole / to elect two Burgesses for Parliament; to acknowledge statutes m[er]chant before the manor.
Felons; goods; felo de se;[312] waifs & strayes; forfeitures; escheats, doe belong to the manor for the time being.

[Common Seal]



Figure 1.1.10. Appleby Seal. 1.276A.
'3 lyons a token of loyalty & courage[313] *\ the crowne victorie / and St Lawrence on the Gryd Iron to show that it resisted even unto fire, with this devise, hic iacet Laurentius in Cratic[ula] &c.'*

[307] 'Freedom also from taxes on bridges, trading at fairs etc. in all matters etc.'
[308] Writ of Witherman: reprisal of debt.
[309] See I.285-290, for Machell's expansion of this information.
[310] Unclear numeral.
[311] Machell dates this charter to the reign of Henry I, but the text immediately above contains a clear alteration from Henry I to Henry II.
[312] 'Felo de se': 'One who 'deliberately puts an end to his own existence, or commits any unlawful malicious act, the consequence of which is his own death; verdict of self-murder; suicide.'
[313] MS: '~~Q? Which of our kings 1st bore 3 lyons? Se Leland T1 supine 3 leopards. Kgs d. Angliter~~ 3 lyons a token of loyalty & courage.'

The inscription of our common \ seale: / Hic iacet Laurentius in Craticula pos[itus][314] and on that side is the three lyons passant \ gardant crowned / & St Laurence (to whome our church is dedicated) on the gridiron. {2ce burnd before this granted; peradventure because the Towne was burn'd but that last after the Charter granted in 1176.} On the other side, Sigillum Communitatis Burgi de Apleby, and there onely the three lyons passant on a flagg etc.[315]

~~This~~ Henry 2. is sayd to be the 1st that bore 3 lyons for his Arms and it must need be a great honour to Apleby & an undoubted marke of its loyalty that he should signalise it with his own Arms distinguished onely by a symbol of honour, viz. 3 crownes.[316] & theire burnd downe by the Scotts, it should seem to be in regard of its fidelity to the English intrest att that time as there were continuall fude betwixt these two nation, they \ pretending a right to Chief / County as well as Cumberland.[317]

[I.277]



Figure 1.1.11. Common seals of the Borough of Appleby. 1.277.

These are figures of the common seales of the Borough of Appleby*, which Queen Elizabeth by her letters patents bearing date the 8. of July in the 39 yeare of her reigne [1597] (reciting the Charter of King John dated the 6. of March in the 1st yeare of his reigne [1200]; which grants and confirmes to his Burgesses of Appleby all the libertys and free customes which the Burgesses of Yorke had by the grants of King Henry 2 as also the charter of King Henry 3 reciting and confirming the same, and of King Edward the 1st & King Henry 8) ratyfies & confirmes them†.

[Machell's Notes: I.277]

*The diamite[r] of both these seales being circles: see the true dimention p.108 patis V, MS de Westm'land.[318]
The inscription should fill in the round.
†22 Martis 1664: The present Mayor being Christopher Lowther, the Recorder Thomas Denton Esq.
This must be out Dugdales Visitation.

[314] A word here has perished.
[315] For a description of the Appleby common seal, see R.S. Ferguson, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1894), 156; see also *N&BI*, 318.
[316] MS: '& an undoubted marke of its loyalty that he should signalise it with his own arms ~~Se whether all townes corporate have the knight kings arms on one side the seale~~ distinguished onely by a symbol of honour, viz. 3 crownes.'
[317] MS: 'continuall fude betwixt these two nation, they ~~having this~~ \ pretending a right to Chief / County as well as Cumberland ~~som time in past & often times being [illeg] which peradventure might move the king to honr this towne with his owne Arms & St Laurence &c~~.'
[318] 'See the true dimention p.108 patis V, MS de Westm'land': if 'patis' is correct, then it might well be an abbreviation such as 'pat[ent]is', giving the meaning, 'p.108 of letter patent V', but this is pure speculation.

[I.279]

[Correspondence relating to the government of Appleby]

[Thomas Machell; John Thwaites; Richard Blome, cartographer; Thomas Barlow, bishop of Lincoln]

[1. Thomas Machell to John Thwaites. Undated.][319]

Kinde Uncle
You promised mee some time agoe, that you would send the impressions both of your towne and schoole common seales; you sent mee a description of the townes (I thanke you) but the Impression would doe a great deal better, and therefore I pray be mindfull of your promiss & let me have them as soone as you can. I would allso know whether you have a Sigillum Secretum,[320] as well as com[m]une? And if you have lett mee know what it is? You need not fear to communicate them for tis noe new thing; and besides you may be sure that I am not a man who means any harme to your corporation. Sombody was telling \ me / that you are about to draw the quarter sessions wholy to Ap[pleby.]
I could wish in the 1st place that the sessions of assises were secured unto you by Act of Parliament as they are to Carlile by the 14 of Henry the 6th [1435-36], Cap. 3. And then you might saifly venter to stand upon your points and maintain your \ priviledges / both against the judges & justices too. But if it were not presumption in mee to direct your wise counsil, I would advise them to secure the main stake, & learne a good lesson from the dog in the fabel.[321]

You have 2 burgeses whose business it is to defend your priviledges in the House of Parliament, and procure you new ones, as far \ as / in them lyes; ~~and~~ Kendall has none. You have the president[322] of Carlile for it, and the same plea (old use & custome) which they had for theirs; Kendall has none. You have sufferings and loyalty to speake \ plead / in your behalf ~~Kendall has none~~ and many other arguments which I could produce): Kendall has none. How easy a thing then were it for you to procure this priviledge; if you would but putt your burgesses in minde & they write \ their mind & / an opportunity? Nay, I am confident, the thing is so reasonable that none would gaine say it. and \ if / this were effected you needed not fear to \ the / disgust the gentlemen of the other side ~~the countrye by~~ calling them over to your Quarter Sessions. For them it would bee both beyond theire and your Judges power for to alter the Assises. A thing I suppose which may be attempted when the Countess is ~~gone~~ \ dead. / And ergo

[I.280]

I thinke it will very much behove you to labour this business while she is alive. And the sooner the better; for you need not doubt of her utmost assistance who has hitherto preserved these \ priviledges / unto you; entertained your judges att her owne propper charge, and honoured the towne with her residence there above other places. However, I would have (before the next session of the Court of Parliament) to putt your Burgesses in minde of this matter, that they may move in it as they see opportunity; & thinke there will be a very fitt occasion when a Bill is preferr'd in order to settling your schoole on the collige; in which Bill the other may bee inserted as well as not.

{The schole setled on Q. Coll. Oxon.}
And now when my hand is in, I will reminde of an other business \ in / order to the advanceing of your schoole & towne; and that is [the] librarye. Cosan Brathwate has promissed his assistance & I make no question of Sir Richard Sandfords. I pray you therefore gett us halfe a dusen trees cutt downe in readyness and brought to the schoole that they may bee in season, & whensoever I come into the north wee will try to doe somthing in that affaire.
I pray you be pleased to send mee the names of those feofees who resigned up the schoole into our hands. And pardon those over slights (if there bee any) which my \ too / great affection to Apleby has

[319] Undated, but the reply is dated 2 October 1673.
[320] 'Secret seal', used in private correspondence. The 'sigillum commune' was the common seal.
[321] The writer is possibly referring to the fable of the dog carrying a bone, who, seeing his reflection in the water, dropped the bone in hope of picking up another one.
[322] Precedent.

caused; for assure your selfe there is none more ready to doe the towne service, or an man related unto it, much more your \ selfe / than ~~he who is~~ S[r]
Your ~~humble servant~~ \ most /dutyfull Nephew & serv[ant]
My kinde l[ove] & d[uty] to my Aunt; my love to good Cosan Deb; my service to M.B. & honest Mr Jacson; but my letter to – your selfe alone. ~~Do not show it to any~~.

[I.278B]

[2. John Thwaites to Thomas Machell. 2 October 1673.]

For Mr Thomas Machell, Fellow of Queene, Oxon
these

[I.278A][323]

Dear Cozen
It may seeme very strange to you, that I returne you noe better answear of your letter, the reason truely is I never received your paper of directions till this day; soe that in this short time could give you nothinge but an imperfect accompt; as for the immunities of our toune I have not fully completed itt, but God willing, this next terme, my man will be at London, and by him you shall receive your impresse of our common seale, & your seale appointed for the schoole, togither with an exact account of our \ first / charter & priviledges. All your friends & relations are in good health, and desire kindly to be remembered to you, and soe doth
Yor affectionate Uncle
Jo. Thwaites
Appleby 2[nd] October 1673.

[I.297][324]

[3. From Richard Blome. 27 February 1674.][325]

To the Maior, Aldermen and other the Majestrates of Appleby
Sirs
I have spent some time in the preparing for the presse a booke of heraldry entituled, *Guillim's Display of Heraldry*.[326] Manifestinge a more easie accesse to the knowledge thereof then hath beene published by any, through the benefitt of Method, being interlaced with variety of History, suitable to the severall subjects; which said booke for its excellency hath past the presse four times and is speedily to be reprinted with great variety of usefull addicons, as well of coat armour as a treatise of the Nobility and Gentry, as to their priviledges and dignityes, with chapters of each degree, which are illustrated with apt and proper sculptures to represent the same. And for the further compleatinge the said worke (by giveinge as many examples of bearings as possible), it is my desire (in a chapter relateinge to Comerce) to treat of the cittyes and cheife townes corporate in England, as to their imunityes, customes, privilidges, government, coat armour and Majestrates, with other things of remarke, fitt to be taken notice of (especially of such cittyes and townes coporate whose majestrates are benefactors to the said work, as diverse already have beene.) And well knowing that soe chargeable an undertakeinge cannott be soe well performed by a single person as by a publiq' encurragement, I am the rather induced to present these lines to your consideracons, tenderinge my service for the recording to posterity such remarkes as aforesaid are appropriate to your Corporacon, together with the names of the present majestrates, for which the charges (which by computacon cannott be lesse than 40s) will be only required downe, and 30s more upon the delivery of one of the said bookes,

[323] I.278B is the address page (15cm by 19½cm) of a letter to Machell from John Thwaites.
[324] The letter on this page is not a copy.
[325] Richard Blome (bap. 1635? d. 1705), was a heraldic painter and publisher who was among the first to use the advance subscription method to finance his publishing schemes, as will be observed in this correspondence. See S. Mendyk, 'Blome, Richard cartographer and bookseller.' *ODNB*.
[326] John Guillim (1550-1621), Herald. The inscription is dated 1610 but Guillim's *Display of Heraldrie* was published in 1611. It contained 283 folio pages and more than 500 woodcuts of shields illustrating the arms of named families and early 17th century office-holders: Thomas Woodcock, 'Guillim, John (1550-1621)'. *ODNB*.

which will be worth as much, without you will most liberally contribute unto me; and upon your notice given me thereof in due time, your comands shall readily be observed by.
Your most humble servant
Ric. Blome
Feb. 27, 1674.
Lodginge at Mr Rudds at the corner of Lincolnes Inn Fields near Clare Markett

[I.281]

[4. John Thwaites to Thomas Machell. 2 August 1675.]

Dear Cosen[327]
These I hope will finde you in good health, the continuance whereof is most heartily wished. I should ere this (in behalf of this burrough) have given you the trouble of what is here incerted, but terme occasions and my lait sicknes have enforced the delay. This corporacon (who returne you many thankes for your kindnes) is by their continued low condition obliterated in history, and if you can be instrumentall to putt fire to the ashes of antiquity you will exceedingly oblige us. Wee may speake ourselves not inferiur \ almost / to the ancientest corporacon in England.
Our comon Seale are the three lyons passant (Yorke five)*.
King Henry the First Grannts his Charter to the Burgesses of this place, for our liberties and free customes Tam integre, plenarie, & honorifice sicut cives urbis de Eboraco nunc habent et possident.[328]
King John confirmes this, and soe all the kings of England successively, to be free from the potestation[329] of Toll ~~in~~ all England \ over / præter-quam è in civitat London nisi forte cives Eboraci quietantias inde habent per libertates suas in civitate London.[330]

It appears by Records that die martis in festo Sancti Stephani martyris anno Inquisitionis Millesimo trecentesimo octogesimo octavo†,[331] the towne was burnd by the Scotts, at which time itt pased to the king twenty markes per annum at 2^{d} a burgage; and that itt was soe destroyed thereby, that of that rentt upon several Inquisicons found & returnd, there remaines to the king onely xxvj^{s} viij^{d}[332] which has been since that time and is now paied, and so itt continues‡.
If you thinke itt convenient, give my humble duty & service to the Reverend Father the Bishop of Lincolne,[333] and if you please acquaint him that though I was unjustly aspeisd by two gentlemen aldermen of this place (the one is dead, the other never gave any a good word) about the ten pounds he deposited into my hand as a free gift towards the buildinge of a house for conveinency of the markett, which never tooke effect, and thereupon I paied itt \ over / to the towne, which continued in their hands till now, and I have now imployed itt towards the building of a house which stands upon six pillars, and will be finished within this three weekes‡.
I would not willingly lye under a blemish which I doe in noe wise deserve. I do assure \ you / itt has been a very great trouble to me, and I doe value my reputation at a greater rate then the purchase of ten pounds. All yor frends at Crakanthorpp are well, your Aunt & Deborah present their kind respect & service to you; soe doth
Your very affectionat uncle
Jo. Thwaites
App 2nd August 1675.

[327] Letter written by John Thwaites.
[328] 'For our liberties and free customs, as entirely, fully and honourably as the citizens of York now have and possess them.'
[329] Potestation: 'power, authorisation'. *OED*.
[330] 'To be immune from the imposition of toll all England over, except in the city of London, apart from citizens of York who have exemptions on account of their liberties in the city of London.'
[331] 'It appears by records that on a Tuesday on the feast of St Stephen Martyr in the year of the Inquisition 1388, 11. Richard 2., the town was burned by the Scots.'
[332] 26s 8d.
[333] When Thomas Barlow was consecrated bishop of Lincoln on 27 June, 1675, Machell was then an Oxford fellow; he was presented to the living of Kirkbythore in 1677: A. Winchester, 'Machell, Thomas (bap. 1647, d. 1698), antiquary'. *ODNB*. For Barlow, see Part 1, Ch.20, Orton.

[Machell's Notes: I.281]
{Out of these I have made my description of Appleby, which must be sent to Bloome.}
*~~I thinke 6M~~. {York \ Arms / vi lyons on a Cross Gules, 5 lyons passant gardant Or.}
†XI Richard 2. [1388].
‡{hanc vastavit funditus Guilielmus Rex Scotorum 1176 / 22. Henry 2.}[334]
⸸{In July 1675 the new market house finished.}

[I.282]

[5. Letter from an umknown writer concerning Thomas Barlow, bishop of Lincoln. Transcribed (with addenda) by Machell.][335]

My Lord takes it kindly that you have imploy'd his money \ & / he has more books for you.
I have spoke a great deal of Good to him concerneing your towne. Moved him (being now a member of Parliament) to procure the settlement of the Hospital upon you as att Carlile (when the Act is made for the Schoole); & in order thereto I am to draw him \ a / note of what I thinke fitt to be ~~pleaded for it~~ \ urged for it. / I have allso mov'd him to consider of lending you out of our treasuryes 500[li] upon use as you proposed & sufficient security for 6 or 7 years, & he tells me moreover that as soon as he is settled well in his Bishoprik & begins to grow rich he will give 100 [li] to the towne.[336] I wish all this may hold, but however, you see how willing I am to serve the corporation and promote their intrest if it layd in my power. Who am [blank].

But then writes that Mr Machell has given a very good assurance of his Lordships favor & good intentions.

[Machell's Notes: I.282 & I.283]
[I.282]
A Bill that the Schoole of Appleby may be settled as to its presentation upon Queens College. Se Norleeach Mr. M.A.[337] That the Assises may be holden att Appleby as they have bin \ of old / and att noe other place. If we make the Judges visitors upon default of the College – thus: And for as much as the Judges of Assise are in some cases to be visitors of the Schoole of Appleby, it is desired that the session of the Justices to take Assises in the county of Westm'land to be holden in time of peace & of truce in the Towne of Appleby and none other place, in the same \ as it hath bin used and accustomed / except it be necessary, in case of plauge nor the like pestilentious disease, to have it pro ista vice[338] otherwise.
Query [1]: Carlile obteined the same favour \ 14 Henry 6. Cap. 3 / upon the sole account that [it] had bin so used and accustomed formerly. And the Assises have bin kept [at] Appleby ever since King Johns time & before (except once) or twice
2. Because it will be for the good of the schoole.
3. Of the towne, which was ever loyall, and suffered abundantly, not onely in the Tyranny of Oliver & late civil Warrs, but formerly by the Scotts, there being …[339]
[I.283]
Appleby was formerly cauled a city &c. {Appleby then burned to the ground!} It was formerly a very great place but brought to decay by Incursions of the Scotts who burned it down ~~3ce~~ \ 2.[340] / And as to its Government, that it was governed by a Maior \ & Aldermen / when London was under the Jurisdiction of a Balive.

---

[334] 'William, King of the Scots, completely destroyed this town.' This margin text is in Machell's hand.
[335] Marked on the reverse (I.284), 'For Mr Thomas Machell Fellow of Queens College Oxon. Post p[ai]d to London Appleby 3d.' Machell used this letter-cover to make rough notes on burgages.
[336] Thomas Barlow was born at Long-Gill, Orton, in 1608/9; he attended Appleby Grammar School before matriculating at Queen's College, Oxford, as a servitor in 1625; he became bishop of Lincoln in 1675: J. Spurr, 'Barlow, Thomas (1608/9–1691), bishop of Lincoln'. *ODNB*. According to John Curwen, Barlow gave the school £100 in books and £100 in money': John F Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward): St Lawrence, Appleby', in *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland Or the Barony of* Appleby, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 45-72.
[337] A search for 'Norleach' found various Oxford graduates named 'Norleigh' but no actual 'Norleach'.
[338] 'For that time.'
[339] The page has perished here; a whole line appears to be missing.
[340] The correction is in different ink and possibly in a different hand.

[I.291]

{Sessions of Assises} to be holden at Appleby.
Touching the difference betwixt Appleby and Kendal about Quarter Sessions, viz. in which place they ought to be kept, 1675*.

[§1.] I doe not certainly know \ know not anything / whence Quarter Sessions should take their measures (as to the place where they are to be kept {because in this pointe the Act is silent} except from the Generall Sessions of Assise & custome of the countrey. \ If it be so as to the former / there is an Act of Parliament (Anno 6^0 Richard 2nd [1382-83]) which confirmes the Assises to the County-Towne in every Shire & expresseth those to be County-Townes where the County Courts are & have bin kept; upon which statute it was particularly inacted (anno 14^0 Henry 6 [1435-36] \ Cap.30 /) that the Assises for Cumberland should be holden in time of Peace & of Truce in the City of Carlile and none other place in the county of Cumberland as had bin accustomed of old;[341] which is noe new Grant but a confirmation of the former to that place in particular, which before was comprised in the Generall Act \ occasioned (as it should seeme) from som other towne / usurping their priviledge†.
And that:
§2. Appleby (is now \ the County Towne of Westm'land / which no man will question & \ neither is it to be douted that it was so of old. Westm'land has bin of old the County Towne; for in John Bromptons *Cronicle* (who writ before the Conquest) the whole county tooke name from it & was called Applebyshire; as Cumberland likewise was called Carluel-Shire‡.[342] And as for Session Assises it planely appeares that – as now – so also of old they were held at Appleby; of which I can produce several instances in Edward the 1st time & before dateing was used.
For first it appears out of a writeing sans date penes Mr Blenkinsop, that Ranulphus de Langheton with Alicia his wife who was daughter & heir of Thomas↓ son of Patricius {see Culwens pedigree de Workinton in Cumberland} had suite of clame Coram Justitiarijs Domini Regis Apud Appleby with Thomas de Hellebeck, which they released to Thomas & his heires. His testibus Domino Willielmo de Bampton tunc vicomite Westmarie, Domino Roberto de Askeby, Domino Johanne de Morevile, Domino Richardo de Sulleby, Thoma de Musgrau‖ tunc Senescallo Westmarie, Willielmo de Warthecop, Johanne de Burton, Hugo Carpenter, Richardo fillio Beatrice, Willielmo de Sowreby & alijs. (This may be seen amongst Mr Blenkinsops writeings s.d.)¶.

§3. e allso I finde in the 4th of King John [1202-03], an[343]

[Machell's Notes: I.291]
*{Memorandum: I sent this in better order to Sir P.M. & ordered it to be registered att Appleby where it may be seen. Memorandum: to give Sir Phillip & Uncle Thwaites notice of the Act Repld.}
†{Master of Rolls in Bucks doe it: inform[an]t. J. Machel de Wendover; this note aded since. Addition to this out of my collection MS VI sub tit brevia Regis 4. Ed. 3. [1330-31] No. 56, Kendal. \ Ordinatio facta per regem et concilium suum Anno 9. Edward 1. de Turno vic[ario] ibidem tenendo pro bono pacis ibidem vacanter, to which is annexed, observari non potuit quia adversat Magna Carta.[344]/ {Note that after this it was ordered by Act

[341] MS: 'as had bin used accustomed of old.'
[342] 'John Brompton's *Chronicle* covers the arrival in England of St Augustine of Canterbury until 1199, together with a collection of Latin versions of the Anglo-Saxon law codes known as the Quadripartitus. The chronicle was once commonly called *John Brompton's Chronicle* but is often described as 'The Fitzhugh Chronicle', since the arms of William, 4th Lord Fitzhugh (1425-1452), are emblazoned on it, probably to identify him as the first owner. Thereafter it was in the hands of John Brompton (fl. 1436-c.1464), Abbot of Jervaulx, and possibly Richard, Duke of Gloucester (d. 1485). John Leland (d. 1552) seems to have seen the volume in Jervaulx Abbey in the 1530s or early 1540s, but it was recorded by the historian John Bale (1495-1563) as being in the hands of Peter Osborn (d. 1592) Keeper of the Privy Purse to Edward VI. from whom it passed to Matthew Parker (1504-1575) a former master of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.' See https://www.corpus.cam.ac.uk/articles/parker-web.
[343] MS: 'I finde in the 4th ~~yeare~~ of ~~Richard~~ King John an …' Section 3 continues on the next page.
[344] 'Addition to this out of my collection MS VI, subtitled Summary of the 4th year of King Edward III, no. 56 Kendal: Order by King and his council, 9. Ed. I, concerning a sheriff's court to be held there for the sake of peace there – but needlessly; to which is annexed: 'it could not be observed because it was contrary to Magna Carta.'

of Parliament that the judges might sit where they pleasd, being imposed upon by towns. And now their servants are bribed.}
‡{And take in here §3 &c.}
‖{May be for Idonea de Veteripont or Lab [urne]. Speed].}
¶{§4. must follow here.}
{At a confirmation of Meburne to Shap Abby by King Edward 1, anno ejus 22 [1293-94], inter alias is witnesse Thoma filio Johannis tunc Vicecomite de Appleby. MS Part V. p. 13. This I sent not but it either shows that Westmorland did yet retane the […]}[345]

[I.292]

~~But~~ \ §3. / There happened some differences in Henry the 3rds time betwixt Robert de Veteriponte Lord of the Honour of Appleby & Barron of Westm'land & William de Lancaster Baron of Kendall (who it seems by being Lord of another, and, as he ~~thought~~ \ judged / district Barony, thought him selfe exempt from doeing suite ~~& service~~ in the court of Appleby). But a finall aggreement was made betwixt them (dat apud Appleby in Quindenis Sancti Hillarij Anno Regni Regis Henrici fil Regis Johannis XI0) [1227][346] wherein the said William de Lancaster, Baron of Kendall, was obliged and bounde to doe suite in the County Court of Robert de Veteripont, by himselfe or his Stuart.[347] This is to be seen in the Countiss of Penbrooke Booke of Evidences (vide Robert de Veteripont), & in the aggrement there is mention made of Richard Ducket, one of the Justices (the highest evidence that I have met with concerning that family in the county of Westmorland for their pedigree sayes that Richard Ducket who lived in the reign of Richard the 2nd & marryed Margerie daughter & heir of Sir William Winsore of Grarig was the first who settled himself in Westm'land).

§4. Att Appleby also the Assises were kept about St Lucies Day, Anno 7^0 Edward II [13 December 1313]. John de Valibus, William de Saham, John de Methringham & Mr Thomas de Sudington Itinerant Justices. And it seems to me (before this of 6^0 Johannis [1204-05]) that the Barrons of Exchequer had either detained or required somthing from Lord Robert de Veteripont in reference to Kendal (which probably was in the Kings hand then by reason of the nonage of Helwisia, daughter & heir of William, son of Gilbert de Lancaster, lineally discended from Ivo de Talboys Earle of Anjou, to whom William the Conqueror gave that Barony) as not conteined in the first general gifte of the Barony of Westmorland.

{Whereupon King John takeing the matter into consideration isued out this special Mandamus:
Rex Baronibus de Scaccario &c. Sciatis quod dedimus delecto et fideli nostro* de Veteriponte Westm'land ad se sustentandum in servitio nostro: et ideo vobis mandamus quod nihil ab eo exinde exigatis, de preterito tempore nec de futuro. Teste G. filio Petri &c. – apud London xiiij Aprilis.}[348]

[Machell's Notes: I.292)
*(Mr Petty renders fidelita[tem] subj[ectam.)

[I.293]

Assises to be holden Appleby
Sec. 1. Reass MS V. in folio p.69 m[emorandum] calld to be added

§4. Likewise in the 20 of Edward [1291-92] 1 halfe Kirkby Stephan was pleaded to be part of the manner of Appleby \ before the Kings Justices sitting there / in a reply in answer to a plea of Devo\r/gill wife to John Baliol; Mergery de Ferrax, Countiss of Derby; Ellen, wife of Allen de la

[345] The next line of text is obscured by the binding.
[346] 'Dated at Appleby in the fifteen days of St Hilary in the 11th year of King Henry son of King John' [1226-27].
[347] Stuart = Steward.
[348] 'The King to his Barons concerning the Treasury etc. Know ye that we have given to our beloved and loyal Robert de Veteriponte the land of Westmorland for his maintenance in our service. And therefore, we command you that you exact nothing thence from him. Neither from time past nor in the future. Witness: G. son of Peter etc. At London 14 April.'

Zouch; Elizabeth, wife of Alexander Comyn, Earle of Browham, who were sisters of Thomas, son & heire of Alane, son & heir of Ellen, sister & heire of William, son & heire of Richard, brother & heire of Hugh, who they say was seised thereof in his demaine as of fee & by right, in the time of peace in the reigne of King Henry: great-grandfather of King Edward the 1st. To which it was replyed, that it was held by a grant from King John: This is in the Countisse Booke of Evidences, or else amongst Mr Blenkinsops writeings.

§5. Allso: mention of the Assises kept att Appleby 28 of Edward 1 [1299-1300] in membranula de Slegil penes Mr Blenkinsop.[349] This I have observed from Antiquitye: yett it make noe question \ is not to be doubted / but the 'Sises were sometimes removed from Appleby when the towne lay waste or desolate by war or pestilence. {è. Blenkinsop ut puto} Soe (in the 23. of Edward 1. [1294-95]) {query} the Assises were kept at Emotte Bridge. {Query} And the market itself in 1598 was removed to Gilshaughlin but returned agane when the Plague was over; as appears from a stone sett up by Reginald Bainbridge then schoolmaster of Appleby*. \ And tho for that time they were kept {at Emote, I finde them agane att Appleby 29. of Ed. 3d [1355-56]} / But I never red nor heard of the Sessions off Assise being holden att Kendall excepting once (in their owne memory) through a distrainst which my Lord Clifford had taken against Appleby† & that was more than he could justifie so that they (as appeares by the Act mentioned in the beginning of this paper)}‡. So that the next year, & ever since, they \ were & / have bin constantly \ still / kept att Appleby⸸. And I thinke you have custome to plead on your sides for the Quarter Sessions also, which were never att Kendall (that I could hear of) except by adjournment from the Towne of Appleby‖.

[Machell's Notes: I.293]

*In 1598, 128 dyed of the visitation[350] in the B[orough] of Appelby, twixt August 1t & March 25 & Lordship of Scattergate, Colby, Colby Leathes. \ è Registri Appelby ab 1582; per W.S. /[351]

†Leon[ard] Smith says so.

‡{But see an Act repealing the former General Act.}

⸸{There is an Act since which impowers the Judges. See it referd to in the great Statute Booke. This since added.}

‖{I have [thought] on the like occasion they might be at Kendal.}[352]

[I.285]

Of the Ancient Corporation of Appleby in Westmorland [353]

{Antiq. of Apalby}

Appleby (anciently Aballaba) was a Citty in the time the Romans, & the chiefe Towne in Westm'land (as it ~~remains~~ \ continues {to this day} still) att & before the Norman Conquest; insomuch that the county tooke name from it & was sometimes called the County of Appileby.

It is traditionally reported concerning this place, that it was under the jurisdiction of a major, when London was only governed by a Bailiffe: which how true it is I shall not ~~concerne myselfe~~ \ dispute / but the beginning of the majoralty of London (formerly governed by a Portgrieve)[354] is commonly reccond from the first year of Richard the First [1189-90]. And Appleby had a charter ~~from~~ \ granted by King / Henry the First (who was son to the Conqueror) of very great priviledges[355] confirmed by King John & all the Kings of England successively. It continued a place of great account till 1176 (the

[349] 'In a Slegil parchment in the custody of Mr Blenkinsop.'

[350] Visitation of the plague.

[351] MS.3.55 contains the same information.

[352] The MS here contains a memorandum relating to other concerns, Viz. 'Mem[orandum] Dug[dale] say Ing & chaple. Horse Shap.'

[353] The narrative is a transcription of part of a paper given by John Blome c. June 1675, though not in Blome's hand (see Blome's letter, MS. I.297). Neither is it obviously Machell's but when the original narrative stops mid-sentence, it becomes part of Machell's own transcription, which begins on I.285. The margin comments and corrections throughout are Machell's.

[354] Portgerefa/portreeve: originally, the governor or chief officer of a town or borough, after the Norman Conquest, a person equivalent in rank and office to a town mayor. Also, an officer subordinate to a mayor; a bailiff. *OED*.

[355] 'Of very great priviledges' has been circled.

22 of Henry 2) att which time it was utterly destroyed by incursion of the Scotts under William their king, as appears from a stone in the scho\o/le garden house.[356] And it should seem then that in regard of its loyalty & sufferings this King took \ som / compassion upon it, & (in all probability) builded* their church dedicate to St Lawrence.

[Coat of Arms]
Gules 3 passant Lions gardant in pale crowned Or: a salamander within a coronett, a dragon Gules: nec ferro nec igni fuimus.[357]

{Its common seale}
And for their armes gave them his owne ~~coate~~ with an honorary distinction, for their common seal is 3 crowned lyons passant gardant in pale with this inscription: SIGILLUM: COMMVNITATIS: BURGII: DE: APPILBY.[358] And on the reverse St Lawrence on the gridiron, kept down by force & burning in the flames; from which ariseth a flag or standard with 3 lyons (as before) and this device: HIC: IACAT: LAVRENTIVS: IN: CRATICVLA: POSITVS,[359] to show it resist'd even unto fire. Now this King Henry the 2. was the first (as all antiquaries aggree) who bare for his Arms 3 lyons†. & therefore it must needs \ be looked upon as a very / ~~fine~~ great honour to the place & an undoubted signe ~~or token~~ of its \ great / loyalty (a quality for which it now is & ever was famous) that he should signalise it with his owne Coat distinguished only by an honourable accession of 3 crowns.[360] And tho Mr Cambden (whose footesteps Speed followes.)[361]

[Machell's Notes: I.285 & I.286][362]

[I.285]
*{Re-Builded: false in Guillim.}
[I.286]
Mr R. N. layd out for Guill[im] *Display of Heraldry*: 2 li 15s 0d. & is to pay when he receives the \ 2 / volumes, 2 li 5s more.[363]
{Price of Printing} The printing of the 2 papers comes to 40s.
J. Fetherston att the Lyon in Egham next doore to the Rose? The 2nd of the left hand as you goe into Egham.
†The armes being 3 lyons has respect to their courage & loyalty. The reverse onely to the Saint of the church whose name it beareth.

[I.287]
This is a transcript of Mr Bloomes Paper, taken 19. 8th. 1675, but the \ original / was made 2 monets before.[364]

---

[356] An addition caret is placed here, but no insertion made.
[357] 'nec ferro nec igni fuimus': 'We were vanquished neither by iron nor by flame.' Iron has a significance here because of the iron on which the patron saint was tortured to death. Usually, the phrase is translated as 'neither by the sword nor by flame'.
[358] Seal of the community of the town of Appleby.
[359] 'Craticula': 'grid-iron'. 'Here lies St Laurence placed on a grid-iron.'
[360] The same information occurs on MS.I.287-288. Viz.'{! The common seale} and for their Armes gave them his owne ~~Coate~~ with an honorary ~~distinction~~ \ accession of ~~added unto it~~ 3 crowns or coronets / for their comon seale is 3 crown'd lyons passant gardant in pale, with this inscription: Sigillum Communitatis Burgii de Apilby. And on the reverse, St Lawrence of the gridiron kept down by force & burning in the flames from which [blank] arriseth a flag or standard, with 3 lyons as before, on the device this: hic jacet Lawrentius in Craticua positus ~~show it resisted even unto fire~~ (to which the whole atchievement ~~doth very much~~ allude ~~as tis~~ born ~~att this day~~) Now this ~~King~~ Henry 2nd was the first king as att \ most / antiquaries aggre, who bare for his Arms III Lyons & ergo it must needs be \ looked upon as / very great honour unto that place; and ~~undoubted~~ \ a certane / signe or ~~token of~~ its ~~loyalty~~ \ fidelity / (a quality for which it now is and ever was famouse) that he should signallise it with his owne ~~Coate~~ \ armes /distinguished only by an honourable ~~addition~~ \ accession /of 3 crownes \ or coronets. /'
[361] This particular narrative stops here; MS.I.287 repeats it, and MS.I.288 continues it.
[362] These notes (on the reverse of I.285) refer to Blome's Paper (I.287), plus book-buying and printing costs.
[363] John Guillim (c. 1565-7 May 1621) was an antiquarian and officer of arms at the College of Arms in London. He is best remembered for his monumental work on heraldry, *A Display of Heraldry*, first published in London in 1610.
[364] Written in Machell's hand.

Of the Ancient Corporation of Appleby in Westmorland {! called the Hon[our] of Appleby}
Their Arm's are Gules, 3 crown'd lyons passant gardant Or; the crest in a coronett: a salamander proper; the ~~supporters~~: 2 draggons Gules; the motto: nec ferro nec igni.
{D. Mr Th[365] x The Honour of Appleby in carta 1^0 Johannis Concessa Robert de Veteriponte.}

Appleby (anciently Abalaba) was a city in the time of the Romans* and the chiefe towne in Westm'land (as it still remaineth) att & before the Norman Conquest in so much that the county tooke name from it & was sometimes called the County of Appilby†. It is traditionally reported concerning this place that it was under the jurisdiction of a maior when London was only governed by a Baliffe, which how true it is I shall not determin, but the begining of the maioralty of London (formerly governed by a portgrave), is commonly only reckoned from the 1st ~~year~~ of \ King / Richard the 1. [1189-90]. And Appleby had a charter from King Henry 1‡ (who was sonne to the Conqueror) of very great priviledges confirmd by King John, as is yet to be seen, & all the Kings of England successively: And this seemes to give credit to ancient tradition concerning Appleby, that Yorkes first charter ~~that~~ was granted unto them the same day with Appleby, but Yorkes in the fore noone, Applebys in the after noone. And as for Yorke (I have this account out of an old Visitation⸸ penes Viduam Smith prope ecclesis St Dustani in Fleet street, London.)[366] ? Henry 2. in his charter confirmeth all former grants made to that ~~place~~ city as well in the time of King Henry 1 that was son to William the Conqueror, as all the time before. It continued a place of great account till 1176 (the 22 of Henry 2d) att which time it was utterly destroyed by the incursion of the Scotts under William their King, as appears from a ston in the schoole garden-house. And it should seem then, in Richard, of its loyalty and sufferings this king tooke compassion upon it and (in all probability) \ re / builded their church dedicated to St Lawrence.

[Machell's Notes: I.287]
*Stephanus è libro Provinciarum. *Urbes: Britanniae Insulae*)[367]
†{è carta penes Thomas Sandford de Askam Armig. et Antiquis quibusdam monachorum libris sc. Brompton.}[368]
‡Sic, Joh Thw. Armiger; nunc prætor ejusdem et confirmatur e libro MS penes commitassam apud Appleby.[369]
⸸ Memorandum: to consult whether it was not in Flow[er's] Visitation de Mr Campion.[370] {Or a Visitation in 1634.}

[I.288]

And tho Mr Camden (whose footsteps Speed followeth)* tells us out of William of Newburg[h] that William King of Scotts tooke this place (and Brough) by a sudden surprise, a little before he himself was taken prisoner att Alnwick in \ the County of / Northumberland, which is very true;[371] yett they are all mistaken in this, that these 2 places were not recovered till King Johns time. For 'tis certain the Scotts (after the Country had got themselves into ~~an~~ \ battle / array) were beaten back & their king taken prisoner; and 'tis ~~certane allso~~ \ as certane / that tho King John ~~did~~ bestowed them \ the foresed / \ Sc. the castles / on Robert de Veteripont for his good service {wherein he calls it the Honour of Appleby}, yett he recovered them not from the Scotts (~~for~~ \ but / they came into his hands) propter transgressionem factam per Hugonem de Morevillâ (by reason of the forfaiture of Hugh de Morvil, a great man in those parts, and the same ~~if I mistake not~~ \ if I be not much mistaken / that \ who / killed

[365] John Thwaites, Mayor of Appleby, 1674: http://www.applebytown.org.uk/
[366] 'Papers of Widow Smith: near the church of St Dunstan, Fleet Street, London.'
[367] Stephanus of Byzantium, *de Urbibus* (6th century; 1st published, Venice, 1502).
[368] 'From a charter in the possession of Sir Thomas Sandford of Askham, as from certain ancient monastic books.'
[369] 'Thus, John Thwaites [?] now mayor of the same [Appleby] and it is confirmed from a manuscript book in the possession of the Countess Clifford at Appleby.'
[370] William Flower was an Officer of Arms in the reigns of Henry VIII, Edward VI, Mary I and Elizabeth I. He rose to the rank of Norroy King of Arms in 1562, and served until his death in 1588. See J. Day, 'Flower, William (1497/8-1588), herald'. *ODNB*.
[371] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 761. William the Lion, King of Scotland, was captured at Alnwick in 1174, after invading England and laying waste to the north. See also, David A. Carpenter, *The Struggle for Mastery: Britain, 1066-1284*, (Oxford, 2003), 225.

Thomas a Beckett), as was given in upon Inquisition† taken att Yorke, Die Iovis proximo post mediam quadragessimæ, anno Regni Regis Eduardi 3^{0}.[372] And notwithstanding this fatall overthrow

[Machell's Notes: I.288]

*{Speed sayes som thinke Richard the 1st after he came from the Holy War.}[373]
†{occurit in castra de Scipton in Co. Ebor.}[374]

[I.289]

So much of the towne ~~was~~ \ did still / continued until the time ~~reigne~~ of King Richard the Second (who began \ his reign / in 1377) that it payd to the ~~king~~ \ Crown / in fee farme rent XX markes per ~~annum~~ yearly att 2d a burgage, which amounts to 2200 burgages, besides other houses. But in 1388 die Martis in Festo St^{i} Stephani Martyris[375] (which was about the XI \ year of the reigne /of Richard 2 [1382]) it was burnd by the Scotts* & so dismally wasted that (upon severall inquisitions found & returned) there remained only of that rent to the king ii marks per annum[376] so that 9 parts in 10 were utterly destroy'd.

But notwithstanding this great devastation that was never repared \ to this day / it doth still retaine its ancient priviledges which are ~~in every respect~~ \ still / the same with \ city of / Yorke, as appears from the ~~confrtion~~ \ Charter of King / Henry 3† in whose time here was an Exchequer \ kept / ~~commonly~~ called \ by the name of / Scaccarium de Appilby‡.[377]

And King Johns charter (which I have seene) wherein is expressed and firmely commanded that "The Burgers of Appilby shall have & enjoy all the libertys & free customes which his Burgers of Yorke have, well & peaceably, freely & quietly, fully, wholly & honourably" (with a prohibition that none shall attempt to disturb them thereof) & allso that they shall be free from toll stallage, pontage & lestage, all England over, praeterquam in civitate London,[378] which exception doth ~~very much~~ \ highly / confirme & strethen their priviledges ~~to them.~~.

{The present state of Apalby}

The Corporation consists att present of a Maior and 2 Balives; a Court of Aldermen: XII in number; a Recorder; Common-Councill \ with a sword bearer / & Sergiant att Mace ~~with~~ & other \ officers / attendants. And if the Towne were able to bear it, might be in omnibus sicut Eboracum:[379] excercising the same priviledges which the city of Yorke [has] in everything according to Charter,[380] & if any would know what these priviledges are more particularly I refer him to Yorke where he may possibly mete

[Machell's Notes: I.289]

*{penes Joh. Thw. majorem de Appleby}
†{charteri penes major}[381]

---

[372] 'Taken at York on the Thursday next after the middle of the forty days [of Lent] in the third year of the reign of King Edward.'
[373] 'Some think Richard 1 [granted these arms of three lions] after he came from the Holy War.' This sentence appears at the beginning of MS.I.288.
[374] 'It is housed in Skipton Castle, County of York.'
[375] 'On the feast-day of St Stephen the Martyr, 26 December.'
[376] MS: 'It was (b) ~~burn'd downe &~~ \ burnd by the Scotts & so dismally /wasted ~~by the Scotts~~ \ ~~wasted~~ / ~~that of~~ that ~~rent~~ (upon severall inquisitions found & returned) there remained \ only of that rent / to the king ~~only~~ ii marks per annum.'
[377] The Latin word 'scaccarium' means 'chessboard'. A chequered cloth covering a table was used for making up and marking the King's accounts, using counters. Thus, the Court of Exchequer, or Curia Scaccarii, derived its name: *Black's Law Dictionary* Online.
[378] 'Except in the city of London.'
[379] 'In all matters, just like York.'
[380] MS: 'And if the towne were able to bear it, might ~~take the services~~ \ be in omnibiis sicut Eborum excer. the same / priviledges, which the city of Yorke in everything, according to ~~their~~ charter, ~~which has bin confirm'd by all the succeeding kings of England~~.'
[381] 'Charter in the custody of the mayor.'

‡Sc. anno 35 of Henry 3 ut è chartis et MS penes commitissam cum apud Appleby castrum.}[382]
⸸{And pursuant to this I have an account of a tried case with Egemont: see my Cartae Antiquae}[383]
Query, annon thereto: if Yorke injoy any such priviledges.

[I.290]

with \ more / satisfaction. In the mean time take these, which ~~are now~~ \ follow and are at this time / in practise att Appleby. viz.:
They have power to arrest for any summe without limitation.
To elect & send II burgesses to Parliament.
To acknowledge Statute Merchant before the Maior.
To take Toll both in fairs & marketts.
To sease fellons goods, felones de se, waifs, strayes, forfaitures & escheats; all which do belong to the Maior for the time being, who takes place of the Judges of Assise as the Lord Maior of Yorke is wont to doe.
Their Aldermen are som of them Gentlemen of the Country for the greater & honour & credit of the Towne; who in time of their maioralty have their proprætors or deputyes there.

The present Major & Aldermen are these:
John Thwaites Esq., now Maior of Appleby
1. Lancelott Machell of Crakenthorp Esq., who was the first Maior after the Kings returne, & tore in pieces Olivers Charter in open court before he would accept of that office which he had declyn'd all Olivers time.
2. Richard Brathwate of Warcop Esq. & Justice of Peace, who contended with the Judges & tooke place of them, virtute chartæ.[384]
3. Robert Hilton of Morton[385] Esq., Justice of Peace.
4. Edward Musgrave of Askby Esq., Justice of Peace.
5. Thomas Warcop of Colby, Gentleman.
6. John Routledge of [blank], Gentleman.
7. Alderman Smyth, Senior }
8. Alderman Smyth, Junior }
9. Alderman Harrison } {All of Appleby}
10. Alderman Lowson }
11. Alderman Robinson }
12. Alderman Atkinson }

Appleby was very eminent for its loyalty in the late Civil Warrs, and most of the Aldermen (excepting those whome Oliver Cromwell obtruded upon them) suffered many imprisonments dureing his tyrannie, & so likewise did most of the gentry round about; for it is the glorie of the County of Westm'land that there was not one person of quality in it* who tooke up Arms against his King and Country: 2 or 3 […].[386]

[Machell's Notes: I.290]

*{Against the King} {Lord Wharton, Sir Henry Bellingham, Con[el] Crackenthorp.}[387]

[I.204-205]

[Appleby Corporation
1. Loyal Address to Charles II made July 1681
2. to James II, made amid dispute, May 1688)]

[382] 'See the charters and manuscript in the custody of the Countess of Cumberland [Lady Anne Clifford] at Appleby Castle.'
[383] 'See my ancient Charters'.
[384] 'By virtue of the charter.'
[385] Murton.
[386] Text here has perished.
[387] 'Colonel': see I.276 A-B.

[1A.] [Draft text of Appleby Corporation's Loyal Address to Charles II, 1681][388]

[I.206]

[1B.] Address to King Charles 2 [July 1681]

[I.204-05]

To the Kings most excellent Majesty
We your Majesties most loyal and obedient subjects, the Mayor. (Baillives) Aldermen, Common Council, and Commonalty of your ancient Corporation and Borough of Appleby in the County of Westmorland (never yet tainted with the least disloyalty; being very well satisfied with your Majesty's reasons for dissolving your two last Parliaments)* do hold ourselves bound in duty and allegiance to present Your Majesty with our most humble thanks for your most endearing and gracious promises renewed unto your people in your late Declaration, that it is in your Royal resolution to have frequent Parliaments, and that you will use your utmost endeavours to extirpate Popery, to redress all the grievances of your loyal Subjects, and in all things to govern according to the Statutes and Laws of this Kingdom.
For which your Majesty's most princely assurance we do think ourselves bound in all the ties of duty and gratitude humbly to tender at your Majesty's feet our lives and fortunes in defence of Your Majestys most sacred Person, Crown and Dignity, against all your enemies which do or shall endeavour to subvert the established government, and the Religion of the Church of England, the most Apost[ol]ical in all the world, which your Majesty has so long piously and carefully preserved, now declared your gracious resolution of defending the same, as it is established by the Laws of this Nation.
We therefore most humbly beg of Your Majesty that you would vouchsafe a gracious acceptance of this our most humble and sincere acknowledgement, and this voluntary offering of our unfeigned[389] affection and loyalty, humbly beseeching Almighty God that He would be pleased to continue His blessings and mercies to you, and not only give the head of Solomon but the sword of Gideon, that you may ever be victorious over this and your enemies, and that {sceptre of these Kingdoms of Your Majesty may for ever be swayed by Your Sacred Majesty and lawful successors, which is the hearty prayer of Your Majesty's most dutiful and obedient Subjects.}

[Machell's Note: I.204]
*This [that is, the text in round brackets] not inserted.

[I.203A]

[1C.] [Machell's letter criticising a draft of the Loyal Address to Charles II, 1681][390]

{Dear Uncle I had no more paper but I hope you will accept this private token of my […] to you if in town.}[391]
Sir,
Whosoever undertook to correct your coppy has not made it much better, for that clause which is added in the end of it (to omit the misspelling of the word scepter, which you had writt right but two lines before) is too formall to be sent to the king from so many wise heades as may be supposed in the Corporation; for you may observe that it is taken out of the forme of prayer used by most ministers before sermon.
Consider too if the \ wholl / whorld were not better than the Christian world? And if it were not proper in this Adress to the King, to put in the Baliffs after the Maior & ~~before the~~ Aldermen? For how little soever they be now sett by, they were formerly provosts and of great account, answering (I conceive)

[388] This is a copy in Machell's hand. It begins as a fair copy but deteriorates into his usual script. From the alterations and the correspondence below, it is clear that Machell was involved in the drafting of the 'Loyal Address'. Michael Mullett considers that 'ardent Anglicanism characterised Appleby's Corporation in 1681', creating fertile ground for an emerging alliance between the Church of England and Toryism. Mullett sees the Loyal Address here as the work of Hugh and Thomas Machell, and bishop of Carlisle, Thomas Smith. See Mullett *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby…1649-1689,* 84.
[389] MS: 'unfain~~d~~ed'
[390] The reverse [I.203B] contains the heading, 'These for Mr Thwaites att Apelby'.
[391] This scribbled note (placed at the top of the letter) is badly blotted.

to the sheriffs of Cityes. Allso before Burrows whether Corporation may not be inserted? Burn this paper & use your own judgement & discretion in its value.

[I.227]

[3.] [Appleby Corporation's Dispute with James II]

King James 2.
Isueing out a Quo Warranto[392] against the town of Apelby amongst other Corporations: they not wiling to dispute a title with the King (tho they had received their charter from himself \ but / two years afore when they resigned their old charters to him) resolved with themselves to returne him it agane in the latter end of May 1688 and accordingly sent it with a resignation upon Whit Munday in the said year,[393] to be delivered by Mr Master Musgrave, then maior of the town.[394]

[I.207]

The Appleby Election, 1679[395]

{ad Burg de Appelby}
The Great Canvas at Apelby for Burgesses – twix Mr Jo. Tufton & Sir Jo. Lowther[396]

These 10 pages following conteine an account of the management of the Burgess of Apelby in the canvas twixt Tufton & Lowther which they had for electing Burgesses to serve in Parliament about 1678 de anno, querie, being the original papers.[397]
The Honorable John Tufton \ Esq. / would have had 2 Tuftons. Sir John Lowther opposed it and tryed for one Burgess and carried it by the falsefying of one Henry Whinfell of Battlebergh who had promissed his vote for 2 Tuftons; & when that whole street was so divided that they stood in an equall ballance & Henry Whinfells was the casting vote which should carry them all, he ~~voted~~ gave it for Lowther, which quite broke the neck of that canvas.
From hence may be extracted an account of the state of that Corporation & ancient Burrow at the time of this election; what Burgers there were; what fee farme was payed; who had an undoubted right to vote; who had not; and whose right was disputed.

[I.208][398]

[Key]

Qu.	Query
R.	Reason of the query
T.	Tufton
L.	Lowther

[392] 'By what authority' [do you hold these rights]?
[393] 4 June.
[394] This event took place during the political and religious difficulties of the last year of the reign of James II, when James sought to ensure that Catholics and Dissenters were represented in town corporations. The paragraph here refers to Appleby Corporation's written response under the common seal, dated 4 June 1688, to a writ of quo warranto in which the Corporation surrendered its charter again, asking only that the existing corporate body should remain in office. Confusion reigned after James II reversed his policies and it was found that neither of Appleby's surrenders of charter (1685 and 1688) had been properly registered. For Appleby Corporation at the end of James II's reign, see Mullett, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby…1649-1689*, 102-04.
[395] This whole section should be read in tandem with Michael Mullett's chapter on 'Appleby Parliamentary elections 1679-81', in *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby…1649-16*89, 77-81.
[396] This is the only text written on MS I.226; it has been utilised as a title.
[397] This election took place in early 1679. Appleby returned two members to parliament. When Sir John Lowther III understood that the Tuftons planned to put up both Members, his response was, 'I do all I can to hinder that'. The Tufton candidate was Richard Tufton, the Lowther candidate was Anthony Lowther: https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/constituencies/appleby.
[398] The following reads like a poll book.

The Names of the Streetes

Howgate
Howgate Foote
Battlebergh
Brig Street
Burrowgate or High Street
Downgate or Low Street
Skattergate
High Crossor}
Shaw-Wiend}
Midle-Wiende or Nansons W.
Low Cross Wiend or School Winde
School Lane
To Cald Kell
Bondgate and therein

[I.209]

2

Skattergaite

John Bainbrigg L
Lancelot Robinson L Q.
Edw. Wilson L
Edw. Richardson L
William Wilson L
Richard Linge L Q.
Tho: Calvert L
William Murton L
{Query}[399] John Waugh O
{Query} Tho: Richardson T

Appleby

Christo. Blenkarne L
Willim Johnson L
Tho: Stewardson T
Mr Robinson L
Jo. Blenkarne T
Willim Richardson T
Robt Dover L
Mr Robt Harrison T/L[?]
George Dent L
Jo: Nevinson L
Robt Yoward L
John Mounsey L
Tho: Richardson L
Hugh Harryson L
Q. Jo. Todd O
John Nanson T
Q. Harbert Salkeld T
Tho: Warriner L
John Richardson L
Q. Willim Bolton T
Charles Boulton L
Daniell Bainbrigg L
Q. Henry Richardson L
Willim Mounsey L
Tho: Warriner L
John Darby T
Mr Thwaites L
Michaell Ogton L
Mich. Atkinson T
Willim Guy L
Mr Major T
William Huthart L
Q. Edw: Guy ~~L~~ T
Tho: Harryson L
Tho: Milner T
Joseph Dent L
Jo: Porter L
Q. Jo: Blaimire Junior & Senior 2
Willim Smith T
Jo: Armestronge T
Tho: Browne T
Henry Sanderson T
Edmund Lowson T
Christofer Jakes L
John Linge L
Leo: Smith L Query

Batle Burrough

Philip Maichell T
Jo: Cheise
Jo: Raisbeck
Henry Whinfeild
Q. Cleme[n]t Moresby
Mr Lowson
Q. Tho: Hilton
Leo: Emerson
Richard Lambe

[399] Some numbers in the margin are obscured by the binding.

Jo: Maichell
Robt Dunn

{Master, Usher, Vicar}
Memorandum: Miners [blank] Aldermen [blank]
Husband & relicts. H[ono]rable John Tufton Esq.

[I.211]

3

Tufton

Mr Maior
Edw: Guy
Tho: Miller
Willim Smith
Jo. Armestrong
Tho: Browne
Henry Sanderson
Edm: Lowson
Tho: Stewardson
Jo: Blenkarne
Willim Richardson

Hugh Sympson Query
Jo: Blaymire senior) Query
Jo: Blaymire junior) Query
Jo: Nanson
Herbert Salkeld Query
Jo: Darby
\ Wm Bolton /
Mr Burhannan, Mr Usher
Mr Jackson
Michael Atkinson

Burertaine

Mr Thomas Hilton X
Michael Oggden
Jo: Bainbrigg
Jo: Warkeman

Jo: Tall
Jo: Rose
Robt Smith

Battleburro

Mr Jo: Lowson
Mr Phillip Machell
Mr Robt Machell. Query.
Mr Jo: Machell

Richard Lambe
Clem: Morressby. Query. X

Jo: Tufton Esq.
James Bellingham Esq.
Lanc: Machell Esq.

Scattergait

Willim Wilson X
Tho: Richardson
Jo: Waugh Query X

Lowther

Mr Jo: Thwaites
Willim Guy
Tho: Warriner
Willm Mounsey.)
Hen. Richardson.) Queries
Dan. Bainbrigg)
Charles Bolton)

Battleburrow

John Cheesebrough)
Jo: Raisebeck)

Henry Whinfell) Not Sure
Leo: Emerson)

Scattergait

William Murton
Tho: Calvert
Rich.: Lynge Query
Willin Wilson
Edw: Wilson
Edw: Richardson
Wm Atkinson
Jo: Jon

[I.212]

A rental with names of Burgesses.[400]

[I.213]

4

Bridg Streat left-hand row: Bridg Streat

1 Chappell 2d)	
3 Burgages 6d) Mr Atkinson	T
1 Burgage 2d Will Huddart	L
2 Burgages 4d Edward Guy	T

Burrowgate

1 Burgage of the Chantry 2d John Crow a min[or]	??
1 Burgage in the Chant 2d Peter Rowlandson	ab.
1 Burgage 2 Tho: Harrison	L
1 Burgage 2 John Scot	ab.
1 Burgage 2 The Miller	T
1 Burgage of H. J. Tufton Esq. 2d Joseph Dent	L
{?}1 Burgage of W. Williams 2d John Porter[401]	{?}

1½ Burgages 1d ob, by right of his wife deceased, in tenure of J. Bleamire Elder	
his son being at age	T
(Here one misplaced: see in Dungate formerly belonging to J. Rose)	
1½ Burgages 1d Will Smyth merc[e]r	T
1 Burgage of 2d of the Chantry in the tenure of John Armstrong	T
1 Burgage 2d of \ the Honorable /John Tufton Esq. in the tenure of Tho: Browne	T
1 Burgage 2d of the Chantrey in the tenure of Henry Sanderson	T
{Memorandum Ed. Lowson}	
1 Burgage 2d of the Chantrey: Christopher Jakes	L
Burgages of the church 9d Hospitall	
Diverse Burgages 14d Leonard Smyth	L
Many Burgages 4s & 8d in the castle parke in the tenure of the Honorable J. Tufton Esq. ab	

Down ~~Street~~ Geate

1 Burgage in the Chantry 8 Will Johnson	L

In Shaw Weinde

1 Burgage 2d Christopher Blenkarn	L
1 Burgage 2d Margaret Hodgson ~~by leave~~ of John Warreman of Burrells	T

[400] Upside-down at the base of the otherwise blank I.212.
[401] A line of text below this one has been erased.

1 Burgage 2d The Corner House anciently called Goldring\ton/ Hall
in the tenure of Thomas Langton's widow

Down Burrow ~~Street~~ Geate
1 Burgage of Thomas Stuartsons and one of Sir Richard Sandfords
Of both: 3d in the tenure of Thomas Stuartsons T
{0} 3 Burgages 7d Dorathy Smyth
1 Burgage of the Chantrey 2d Thomas Robinson L
1 Burgage 2d John Blenkarn T

[I.214]
1 Burgage. Church land 2d Will Richardson T
Severall Burgages 6d of the Chantrey in the tenure of John Atkinson Esq.: minor
1. Burgage of the Chantrey &
2 of the Honorable J. Tufton Esq. 9d Rob: Dover L
1 Burgage 1: the Baliffs Garth 1 Burgage called Bellmans Garth
1 Burgage Chantrey 2d Robert Harrison L
1 Burgage 2d George Dent L
1 Burgage 2d John Nevinson L
1 Burgage 2d Thomas Carleton 18 aet)
1 Burge 2d in tenura ejusdem[402]) T? a minor

Midle Weende
1 Burgage (the Corner House) 2d Rob: Yaward L
{?} 1 Burgage: the Corner House at the low end of the Midle Weinde 2d Lancelott Robinson T~~?~~ ab[sent]
1 Burgage as also
3 more, belonging to Hugh Symson & {2^{d} ob Rob. Dover, & Mr Hilton the rest /} T?
2 of the Chantrey belonging to Mr Hilton in the tenure (6^{d}) of John Nanson T
1 Burgage 1d John Nanson [Blank]
Severall Burgages,
& one called Barblett Garth 1s in the tenure of Julian Bolton, wife of William B
& late wife of William Warriner, in right of ~~Will~~. Tho. Warriner, her son d'ab \ absent / L

1 Burgage 1d holden by Widow Willson in right of
Sam Green æt 18 L Min[or]
under the head scholler Sam Greene, 19 ætat. T?
1 Burgage 2 in the tenure of J. Mounsey L
1 Burgage 2d (purchased out of Warriners) J. Richardsons L

{? Down Burrowgate}
{?} 1 Burgage 4d in the tenure of Charles Bolton. L?
Daniel Bainbridge L?
1 Burgage 4 in tenure of Will Mounsey L?
Henry Richardson jure uxoris L?
1 Burgage 4d in tenure of Tho: Warriner L?
John Machell. T? vide alibi[403]
1 Burgage 10d Porch improvement in the market place in the tenure of John Darby
{1 Burgage*: One improvement called Smyths-House (rent 1s) for all
{1 other Burgage: Pitchman Croft
{1 Burgage: church land: Mr J. Thwaites L

[402] 'Under the same tenure'.
[403] 'See elsewhere.'

{This most false & contrary to former rentalls*: J. Thwaites}

Down Gate

1 Burgage of the Chantry John Atkinson Esq, maior	supra
{?} {O} 1 Burgage 2d late of James Thwaites, called Bellmans Garth	
1 Burgage 1d Hugh Harrison	L
1 other 1d tenura ejusdem[404]	

[I.215]

5

1 Burgage 5d in tenure L Thomas Carleton 19 æt supra	
An Improvement \ 4d / in the tenure of Jn Todd	T?
\ Memorandum / One burgage held by John Tod & T. Carleton of Frank Rose	?
1 Burgage 1d ob. of the Corner House formerly belonging to John Rose	
lately to John B\l/amire, now to Hen: Sanderson	supra
1 Burgage \ 2d / of the Countess of Arundells, now in the tenure	
of Herbert Salkeld	T
1Burgage 2d in the tenure of Will Bolton	T
1 Burgage 1d at the Wath; Thom: Richardson.	?L
(5 Burgages calld School-house Close	
(1 Burgage of the Chantrey	
(1 Burgage belonging to Wederall Abbey	
(Rent 9d in the tenure Mr Jackson school-master	T?
1 Burgage of the Honorable John	
Tufton Esq. called Pear-Tree Garth 1d Mr Jackson the school-master or Mr Usher	T?

Bridge Streat, the other Row

1 Burgage 2d in tenure Michael Ogden	? L
1 Burgage 2d in tenure Michael Atkinson	T
1 Burgage 4d in tenure Hugh Darby	T?
John Hodgson	T?
1 Burgage 1d in tenure Hugh Harrison	supra
1 Burgage 1d in tenure Will Guy	L
1 Burgage 1d in tenure of John Cheesebrough	vide infra

Battleburrough

(1 Burgage: church: land of St Nicholas	
(2 Improvements &c.	
(1 other improvement lying on the back side	
(2 Burgages called the Lady Garth, belonging to the church of St Michael	
(Rent 2s 1d all in tenure of Mr John Lowson	T
I Burgage 2d late of John Atkinsons now in tenure Clem Moresby	T
1 Burgage & 2 more 6 Mr Hilton	?
(2 Burgages formerly in the tenure of Mary Hutchinson, now of George Hilton	
(and allso for certain improvements 1s 4	
(1 other improvement 2d in tenure Georg: Hilton	supra
1 Burgage chantrey 2d Henry Whinfell	T
2 Burgages of Robert Cheesebrough 3d in tenure John Raisbeck	T
2 Burgages of Miles Hartleyes	
Landes 3d John Cheesebrough	T

[I.216]

2 Burgages in the tenure of Barbara Machell	
1 Burg ~~both~~ at Howgate Foote (both 8d) in tenure John Machell	T

[404] 'Of the same tenure.'

1 Improvement holdon by the town, ~~now~~ 17d in the tenure of Edm: Lowson T
2 Improvements belonging to the town called the Back House & Barne
in the tenure of Clem: Moresby 6[d] supra
1. Burgage Chantrey land 2d in tenure Isab. Hobson
1 Burgage 2d in tenure of Mr George Hilton supra
1 Burgage 3d in tenure Leonard Emmerson T?
1 Burgage 1d \ late / in tenure of Ralph Willson now \ of Robt Machell / {R.M.}
2 Burgages 4d in tenure Edmond Lowson
supra

Howgate Foote
1. Burgage of the Lady Arundells belonging to the House of Correction. O 2d? in the tenure of Robert Dunn
(1 Burgage of the Lady Arundells
(1 Burgage of the Countiss of Pembrookes
(1 other Burgage
(1 of the Chantery
(1 of the Church of St Michaells
(4 Burgages more of the Chantery
(2 Burgages at Howgatefoote
0 (1 Burg over against the bridge and called Appletre-Garth: 1s 9 in the tenure of Tho: Lambs wid[ow]
0 1 Burgage at Howgatefoote 2d Tho: Bousfield Absent
1 Burgage at Howgate Foote called St Johns Croft 2d Richard Lamb T
{1 St Johns Croft if a chaple}[405]

Skattergate
1 Burgage (Tansey Garth) 2d Bainbridge L
2 Burgages 3d in tenure Tho: Robinson supra L
2 Burgages 3 in tenure John Darby supra
1 Burgage 3 in tenure Edward Willson L?
1 Burgage 2 in tenure Edw. Ritchinson L
1 Burgage of Miles Hartleyes land and
one improvement 3 in tenure Tho: Willson dead. Ed. Willson ut supra
1 Burgage 2d in tenure W. Willson L

[I.217]

6

2 Burgages of John Harrisons 1d in tenure Rich: Ling L
1 Burgage & 1 other call'd Cleasbyes Garth 4d in the tenure of Mr John Thwaites supra
(1 Burgage of the Chantrey; another Burgage &
(1 improvement called the Barne 8d now in the tenure of Tho: Calvert L
Another improvement calld the Work House 2d the said Tho: Calvert supra
(1 Burgage 2d in tenure William Murton L
(1 other in the tenure of the said William
(1 Burgage called the Fidler Garth,
(& one improvement adjoyning 3d to the tenure of John Waugh T
3 Burgages 6d in tenure John Darby supra
(1 improvement of Mr Hiltons
(1 Burgage of Lord Whartons
(1 other of Mr Whartons 6d all in tenure of Tho: Robinson supra
2 Burgages, one of Mr Fallowfieldes
& the other of the chantrey 2d in tenure of Rob: Dover* *supra

[405] Written in pencil in Machell's hand.

1 Burgage of Church land 1d Tho: Carleton supra
1 Burgage 3d Tho: Richardson ~~supra~~ T

{About 157}[406]

[I.219]

7

For the Honorable Mr Tufton[407]

Scattergate
Query: ~~Scattergate~~ \ Will / Willson. R. because a lease only
Query: John Waugh – Jo: Warkeman[408]
Tho: Richardson
The Honourable John Tufton Esq.

Burrow Streat & Dungate
Query: Lancelot Machell Esq.
Tho: Stewardson
John Blenkarne
Will Richardson
John Nanson
Herbert Salkeld
Query: Will Bolton. R. in right of his wife – oppose to him Henry Richardson
John Darby
Michael Atkinson
Mr Maior
Edw: Guy
Tho: Milner
John Bleamire Senior ½)
John Bleamire Junior ½) burgge
Will Smyth
John Armstrong
Tho: Browne
Henry Sanderson
Edm. Lowson
Query: John Tod: R. a lease for 99.[409] But enquire of John Nanson for an other Burgage.

Batle-Burrow
Mr Phillip Machell
John Cheesebrooke
John Raisbeck
Hen: Whinfield
Query: Clem: Moresby. R. They say a lease, but he showes a deede.
Mr Lowson
Query: Thomas Hilton. R. a lease (Item for Broade Close).
Leonard Emmerson
Richard Lambe
Mr John Machell
Query: ~~Rob: Dun~~ \ Mr Robert Machell. / R. putt in by the justices at pleasure.
Mr Jackson
Mr Usher

406 ** added in pencil.
407 MS deleted: '{~~Minors, Aldermen, Bellg. tenement lease~~}'
408 This name is written in a different hand and ink.
409 99 years.

Mr Buchanon – R. A. payes no rent: but his gleab adjoynes to Burgages and that whereon the school-house standes was sold-of by one of the vicars of Appleby.

[I.220]

Minors at yeares of discretion
Bian Darby
Thomas Carleton
~~Sam Greene~~ R. Mr Hilton of Ormside voted under age for knights
\ [Blank] Wilson, Mr Jacksons man /
Lancelot Robinson

Aldermen haveing noe Landes in Town
Tho: Warcop – R. has free rents as a Mean Lord.)
Mr Musgrave) According to Yorke.
Memorandum: Mr Bellingham clames \ som[410] / of these Burgages by lease for 200 yeares (almost - expired) a great number on both sides – sc. If wee may guess by this rentall:

On Mr Tuftons 10
On Mr Lowthers 17

Doubtfull

Out of the catalogue on the other side these that follow are looked upon as doubtfull:
In Scattergate
1. Will Wilson, holding (they say) only by lease
2. John Waugh, holding (they say) in tenant right

Burrough-Gate & Dungate
3. Lancelott Machell Esq. holding parcel of a Burgage. He is allso Alderman, and (however) may be opposed to Mr Will Atkinson, who holdes a like parcell [...]
4. Will Bolton, who holdes a Burgage in right of his wife.
5. John Tod, who holdes by lease of 99 \ years. / But enquire of John Nanson for another Burgage.
6. Clem: Moresby, who they say holdes by lease, but showes a deede.
7. Tho: Hilton, who holdes by lease, but has a Burgage in his sonns name.
10. Thre, under 21 yeares. But of good discretion, & such have bin allowd; as Ciprian Hilton.
11. The vicar of Appelby, whose gleabe is adjoining to Burgages & whose predecessor sold-off that Burgage where the school-house is built.

[I.220A][411]

Mr Bellinghams rental for Appelbye Scattergaite & Bongaite

T Countess of Penbrooke
Mr Robt Hilton
T Robt Maichell
L William Johnson
T John Armestrange
L Robt Dover
L Mr Jo: Thwaites
L Mr Leo: Smith
Mr Alderman Smith deceased
Ab John Scott
L George Dent
l Mr Robt Harrington
L Tho: Richardson
L John Nenenson
T Tho: Carrleton

[410] Inserted in pencil in another hand.
[411] Scrap page, originally unattached to the rest of the volume but inserted and numbered by a modern archivist.

L John Mouncey
L Robt Yeward
Robt Emerson deceased
L Edmund Waryner
Ab Petter Rowlandson
Widdow Wilson
T Willm ~~Will~~ Boulton
T John Darbye
Mis Lowther
L Edward Wilson

[I.220B][412]

L Alderman Robinson
Robt Emerson
T Mr Robt. Lowson
Leo: Tomson
T Hen: Whinfell
Mr Geo: Helton
L Willm Murton
L Hugh Harison
T Micheel Attkinson
T John Nanson
Mr John Crow
L Edward Guy
L Michell Ogdon
L Tho: Browne
Tho: Lambe
Hospetall
T: 10
L: 17

[I.221]

8

For Mr Lowther

Scattergate
John Bainbridge
Query: Lancelot Robinson – R. never possesed
Edw: Will~~l~~son
Edw: Richardson
Will: Will~~l~~son
{Query} Richard Ling – no deedes yett seal'd
Tho: Calvert
Will: Murton

Burrow-Gate
Christopher Blenkarne
Will: Johnson
Mr Robinson
Robert Dover
Mr Robert Harrison – George Dent
John Nevinson
Rob: Yoward
John Mounsey
John Richardson: query. If 2?

[412] The reverse of I.220A.

Hugh Harrison
Tho: Warriner
{Query} John Richarson
Charles Bolton
Daniel Bainbridge
{Query} Henry Richardson – R. by right of his wife. Oppose to Will Bolton
Will: Mounsey
Tho: Warriner ~~L~~{~~Query~~}
Mr Th\w/aites
Michael Ogden
Will: Guy
Will: Huddard
Tho: Harrison
Joseph Dent
Query: John Porter R. The right in her first husbands heire. Ergo no vote
Christopher Jakes
{Query} John Ling – an estate lett for 99 yeares & sold by the lesses to Ling for ever
(Leonard Smyth
({Query both} Mr Dalton R. the estate is either in Mr Dalton or Smyth. Ergo not both

Battle-burrough
Supposed to be unanimous
{Query} Will: Atkinson R. he has parcell of a Burgage

[I.222]

For Mr Lamplugh
A scale
23. H6. Cap.15
Burgesses resident abideing & fre elected by Burg &c.
If any returned but so elected forfeit to the king 40^{li} to the Burgesses wrongd or him that sues after 3 m[arkes] 40^{li} by the maior.

[I.223]

9

Assenters to the Vote

Lancelot Machell Esq.
Phillip Machell
Clem: Morresby – query
in John Lowson
in Thomas Hilton
Richard Lambe
John Machell
Mr John Atkinson: maior
Edw: Guy
Michal Oggden – dubious
Tho: Miller
Jo: Bleamyres Senior
Jo: Bleamyres Junior
Wm Smith
Jo: Armstrong
Tho: Browne
Henr: Sanderson
Edw: Lowson
Wm Wilson
Tho: Richardson
Jo: Banbrigg – dubious

Jo: Waugh
Jo: Warkman
Jo: Stewardson
Jo Blenkard
Wm Richardson
Hugh Simson
Mr ~~Robt Harrison~~ – a turncoat[413]
Jo: Todd
Herbert Salkeld
Jo: Darbye
Mr James Buchanan
Michl Atkinson
Jo: Nanson
Jo: Roase
Robt Smith
Jo. Tufton Esq.
James Bellingham Esq.[414]

1. Query whether a young man at 14 yeares of age may be accounted inter probos et legales homines?[415]
2. Query whether a minor, under the age of 14 (or 21) may give a vote by his gardian?
3. Query whether the husband may not vote ~~by the curtesie of England~~ in right of his wife?
4. Query whether a Burgage being divided into parcells, give a right of voteing to the severall proprietors of those parcells? Affirmed per Mr Fletcher, Mr Lamplugh.[416]
5. Whether the Aldermen, and those that are enfranchised, may vote as Burgesses? Neg[ative.][417]
6. Query: of what force custom in these cases may be?
7. Query: who is to vote for these Burgages which as leased out by the town?
8. Query: whether the head scholler being Lord of one Burgage (and about 18 yeares of age) may give his vote?

Jo: Hodson)
Robert Machell)
Ric: Robinson) Thes m[en] is to bee enquird o[f] how […][418]
Jo: Hobson)
Lanclot Robison)

[I.224A]

Assenters

Laur Matchell
Phil Match[ell]
Cle: Mores[by]
Mr Jo. Lowson
Tho: Hilton
Rich: Lamb
Jo: Machell
Jo: Atkinson
Ed: Guy
Mich: Ogden
Tho: Miller
Jo: Bleamire
Jo: Bleemire
William Smith
Jo: Armstrong
Tho: Bro[w]n
Tho: Sanderson
Ed. Lowson

[413] Written in an unformed hand: see final paragraph of this page.
[414] These two names appear separately further down the page.
[415] 'Among honest and lawful men.'
[416] 'Affirmation' is written in different ink from the query.
[417] 'Negative' is written in different ink from that of the query.
[418] Much of the page foot has perished. The names and comments here have been written in the same unformed hand as the word 'turncoat', above.

Wm Wilson
Tho: Richardson
Jo: Bainbrigg
Jo: Waugh
Jo: Warkem[an]
Tho: Stuard
Jo: Blenkarne
Wm Richardson
Hugh Simpson
Jo. Tod
Herb. Salkeld
Jo. Darbye
~~M~~ Jamis Buch[anon]

Mich: Atkinson
Jo: Nanson
Jo: Rose
Rob: Simson
John Tufton
James Bellingham
Rob: Machell
Rich: Robinson
Jo: Hobson
Lancelot Robinson
Jo: Shot
Maister Saw house [Sowerby House]

[I.224B]

Dissenters

{?} Jo. Cheesbrugh
{?} Jo. Raisebeck
{?} Hen. Whinfield
Leo. Emerson
Wm Guy
Mt Thwaits
Tho: Norman
Will. Mownsey
Hen. Dickinson – query
Danyel Bambrig
Char: Burtun
Jo: Richison
Hugh Harison
Tho: Ritchardson
Jo. Mounsey
Ro. Yoward
Jo. Nevinson
Geordge Dent
Ro. Dover – query

Mr Tho. Robinson
Christo: Blenkerne
Will. Murton
Tho: Calvert
Ritch. Ling
Will. Wilson
Edward Wilson
Edward Ritchardson
William Johnson
Mr Leonard Smith
Jo. Ling
Jo. Porter – query
Christopher Jaikes
Jois[e]ph Dent
Tho: Harison
Will: Hudert
Mr William Atkinson
John Jon – query

[I.225]

10

[I.225B]

Jo Bainbrig
Edw. Richardson
Edw. Wilson
Wm Wilson
Tho. Calvert
Wm Murton

[I.225A]

[Letter to the mayor of Appleby from Sir John Dalston, excusing himself from assisting at the Appleby Election)]

Apleby

Mr Major
Though I should be very willing to serve your Cuporacion[419] to my power, yet in concern's of this Nature I thinke it most proper for your Recorder to be assistant to yew herein Wednesday next, which is the day appointed for the election of the Knights in Cumberland, & I shall want both my servants & horses if I were disposd to come that day, but as I am no way concernd (saving my respects &

[419] Corporation.

kindness to your selfe and brethren) being a friend & wellwisher of my Cozen Lowthers, I shall therefore beg yours & your Brethrens excuse that then you cannot be attended by
Sir
Yors to serve yew. J Dalston.

G.
[Gentry Families: Names; Land Holdings; Obligations]

[I.347]

[Sandford]
Sandfords. Lords of Sandford xij Ed. 1. [1283-84]. Vipont grant the Bosc and turbarie to William the son of Robert de Sandford. Kitland Forrest belonged to the Viponts then, & was called Forresta de Kidland.}

{Helton, Romanfel, Copmanbeck}
In a dead with boundary sans date wherein Thomas de Hellerton gives his halfe of the manner of Helton Bacon to his cosan Andre de Hellerton, Romanfell is called Rutmanfel. Copland Beck is called Copmanbeck, where the same boundary testifies there was an Hospitale deinde: in Creskeld et sic descendit usque hospitalem apud Cupmanbeck.[420] There is a tradition that one of the kings of the Scots was ~~take~~ taken \ here / by one Copland or rather Copman, near to the bridge whence the water tooke that nam*.

{Barwise, Heltum; Mauchael}
To that deed these are witnesses. Hiis Test[ibus].[421] Dominus Robert de Sowleby; Henry de Staneley; Thomas de Derewenwater, militibus. Ricardo de Barewise {forsan a Barwise Hall}; Johan de Heltum; Johanne Mauchael; Christopher Tempelman (note a sirname)[422] cum alijs.



Figure 1.1.12. 'The seale is about as big as a groat.' I.347

Of a browne sort of wax something inclineing to green here and there, the seale is about as big as a groat.

{Musgrave, Lowther, Harklay, Rosgil, Strickland, Machele, Sandford}
In a confirmation of Robert de Clifford, bearing date Anno Regis Edward xij°, Richardo de Musgrave & heredibus in perpetuum,[423] hiis testibus Michaeli de Harcla, Matheo de Rosgill, Hugone de Lowthre, Thomæ de Strikland militibus, Thomæ de Warthecop, Will de Helton. Thome Machele, Joh de Colby et alys. Date apud Burghohm \ a / Anno 1 regni regis &c.
I finde that the Sandfords were lords of Sandford in the time of Robert de Veteriponte ~~where~~ and Robert de Veteripont made an agreement with William the son of Robert de Sand ford & his heires, the Cow pasture (vaccaria) of Espland & 60 acres of arable ground adjoyning, in the forrest of Kidland. And on the other hand, William Sandford released unto the said Vipont all his clame he had in bosco et turbaria de Sandford. Salvis sibi et hominibus suis rationabilibus Estourijs &c.[424]

[420] 'Thence, to Creskeld, and so it descends as far as the hospital at Cupmanbeck.'
[421] 'With these being witnesses.'
[422] Machell was interested in this name because of the history of the Knights Templar in Temple Sowerby.
[423] 'Inheritance in perpetuity.'
[424] 'William Sandford released unto the said Vipont all his claim he had in wood and peat from Sandford, reserving to himself and his men the right to take moderate estovers etc.' [Estover: an allowance made to a person or an estate, often of wood.]

[Machell's Notes: I.347]
*Inq[uisition]. \ I read / Ro[bert] de Hilt[on].[425]

[I.348]

[Clifford]
The Seal Cliffords Armes with which this circumscribed Sigillum Roberti de Clifford.
{3} A grant of Roger de Clifford dom Westm'land: dat apud Castrum de Apleby 9º die mensis[426] apud anno Regni King Edward 2.[427] post Conquest tricesimo quinto.[428] The said Clifford armes, with a draggon couchant for crest; tale Or; and on each side a dragon to fill up the void which the scutchion leaves in the ring by way of sup[port] with this inscription: Sigillum Rogeri de Clifford.

{Sandford} Roger de Clifford grants & confirmes to Thomas \ de / Sandford & Isabel his wife & heredibus communam turbariæ in omnibus moris et turbarrijs nostris in Sandford;[429] paying their wonted rent; yett save that his tenants of what sort soever & their successors shall pay to the Cliffords every yere ~~for every~~ pro qualibet plaustrata turbarum et tericidiorum per ipsos in quadam turbaria nostra vocata Sand\e/ford\s/ myre \ capienda / shall pay one halfpenny,[430] as they were wont to doe.

{Vescy, Clifford, Threlkeld}
The 29 of March 1461. 1. Edward 4.
Margaret Bromflet, daughter and sole heire of Henry Lord Bromflet Baron Vessey & her ancestors. She was wife & widdow of John Lord Clifford who was slane att Tauton Field.[431] She was who brought the title of Baron Vesey to the Cliffords. She married afterward to Sir Lancelot Threlkeld, Knight.

{Colby}
It is writt (in Castris apud Crackenthorp penes L. Machel, armg.) not Coltby nor Coldby, nor Colby as now, butt Collibie, quasi locus super Collem scitus.[432]

{Barwyse family, Askeby, Brampton Family}
Barwyse. I \ allwayes / take the Barwises to be originally descended from Barwise Hall in the Parish of Apleby; & have since found a deed in confirmation of my conject[ure] (penes Sandford, Ask[eby]) of an house & lands in Great Askeby, by John de Berewiss, son of John de Berewyse de Apleby (for it seems \ it / was not onely accounted in the parish but Towne ther) to William the sonn of Simon de Brampton dat. apud Ebor ij idus Maij,[433] 27 Edward 1. [1299].

[425] This note is blotted.
[426] '9th day of the month'.
[427] The 35th year after the Conquest was 1101 and therefore the first or second year of Henry 1. 'Edward' might have been a slip of the pen.
[428] 35 years after the Conquest.
[429] 'And Isabel his wife and their heirs common turf rights in all our moors and and peatlands in Sandford.'
[430] 'For every wagonload of turfs and peat to be taken for themselves in a certain turbary called Sandford's mire, shall pay one halfpenny.'
[431] The Battle of Towton (Tadcaster, York, 29 March 1461). The presence of over 100,000 fighting men and c.28,000 deaths makes Towton the largest, bloodiest battle fought in England. Contemporaries regarded it as the climax of the enmity between the Houses of York and Lancaster - each of which had its rival kings – and symbolic of the prosperous south and the rapacious north. The battle's scale, and the fact that its outcome saw one dynasty removed from the throne and another elevated in its stead, makes Towton of the greatest importance. https://content.historicengland.org.uk/content/docs/battlefields/towton.pdf. See I.252.
[432] 'Like a place situated above a hill.'
[433] 'Ides of May.'

Hugh de Colleby was impowerd by William de Corbrig & John de Berewys to give possession of the manner of Berewys to Mr Thomas de Berewys (forsan ejus fil.)[434] 1343 (16^0 Edward 3). Sir Thomas de Berewise in carta ejus penes Blenkinsop:[435] 17 Edward 3. [1343-44].

[I.303]

Alane de Berwis & John de B. s.d. Sclegill cart

I allways imagined the Burwises to have originally descended from Barwyse Hall in this parish and was somw[hat] confirmed in my opinion from the evidences of the Machells de Crakenthorpe, theire near neighbours, but now am fully satisfyed from some writeing \ in the custodye / of the Blenkinsops, out of which I picked a more particular acount.

Alanus de Berwys gave to his sone Alane all his lands &c. in Slegil, to him & his heires of his lawfull wife begott, paying to him & his heirs 1d rent pro omi serv &c.[436] & do my forane service as much as belongs thereunto: s.d. His Test. D^{ns} Roberto de Askeby, Johane de Moriville, Rob. de Strickland, militibus; Thomas de Musegrave, vic. Westmorland; Gilberto de Slegil; Sen. Westmorland; William de Newby; Hew de Tylle; Hugh the son of Adam de Sowreby.

~~The one of these I doubt not~~ \ Alane the father / was he that built Barwise Chaple about the 1st yere of Thomas, Bishop of Carlile \ anno primo pontificatus / who was in the time of Pope Alexander; which Allane did supplicate the said pope to have lieu to build a chaple at Barwise upon his owne ground and have a chaplins peculiarly unto it, because he was far from the mother church, especially that partly by reason thereof & partly by inundation of the waters he was much hindered in winter time from receiving the benefits of divine service.[437] Anno etiam 1^0 Pontif Alexandri ⌖ pD (7)[438] The pope gives him very good words, caleing him dilectus filius nobilis:[439] viz. Alanus de Berwise, which was confirmed by the said bishop Salva indemnitate matris Ecclesiae,[440] & provided allso that the presbiter, who for the time to come should serve in that chapple, should ~~take an oth of fidelity~~ juramentum fidelitatis vicario matris Ecclesi sine om[n]i dificultate presenti: Dat apud lae[441] Rose 7^0 martii pontificatis nostri anno primo.[442]

Sir Thomas de Molton, Lord of Gillsland, sold to T. de Lowther junioris the custody of one oxgang of land cum pertinentijs in Drybeck in Westmorland, then in his hands by reason of the under aige of Thomas de Berewys, son & heir of Eustachis de Berewys, who held the same a him cum pertinentijs and with the marriage of Thomas, son of Eustachi[s]. He had 2 brothers: John [blank] witness inter alias Richard de Denton 5^0 Edward 1. Se more in Slegil Morla[n]d.

The last that I \ have / mett with of this family is Sir Thomas de Berwise, {I take this T. to be son or grandson of Eustachis} and his mother, then a widow, was called Johanna. And if I mistake not this Sir Thomas had a daughter called Katherine who was to be marryed to Roger Beauchamp, son & heir of T. Beauchamp of Laysingby.[443] They sent out a family very early to Slegil in Westmorland, where I have discovered them to have continued for 5 generations. This Sir Thomas was in the 17. Edward 3. Barwyse is a mannor & Barwys Raw belongs unto, & so I thinke doth Drybeck, for this family had to doe there and they had lands allso in the village of Caberg in Kirby Stephan parish.

Old Alanes seale who gave land in Slegil to Alane his son was a flore de lice.

William de Corbrig & Johan de Berewyse make Hugh de Colleby their attorney to give possession to

---

[434] 'Perhaps his son.'
[435] 'In his deed in the possession of Blenkinsop.'
[436] 'For all services etc.'
[437] See this passage repeated in *N&BI*, 336, with no reference to Machell.
[438] 'In the same year as the first year of Pope Alexander.' Thomas de Vipont was bishop of Carlisle, 1255-56; (he was Carlisle's 7th bishop if Paulinus of Leeds (who declined the bishopric) is included) This was in the pontificate of Alexander IV (reigned 1254-61). The symbol '⌖pD', which follows the name of the pope, is possibly a short form of 'Capud': head. For Carlisle's bishops, see David Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History*, (Carlisle, 2000), 142.
[439] 'Beloved noble son.'
[440] 'Without injury to the rights of the mother church.'
[441] Unclear word.
[442] 'Should take an oath of loyalty to the vicar of the mother church, without any difficulty being presented. Dated at Rose, 7 March in the first year of our pope.'
[443] Lazonby, Cumberland.

John de Berewyse of the mannor of Barewise, 1343 i.e. 17. Edward 3. Compare with the other broth[er].

[I.262C]



Figure 1.1.13. Coat of arms drawn on a small scrap of paper. I.262C.

[I.263]

The lineal descent of the Dakres. Barons*

1. Ralph Dacres marryd Margaret the daughter and one of the co-heires of Thomas Malton of Gillesland; which Thomas was brother & heire to Ralph Malton. And by the said Margaret he had Isue:

1. Hugh Dacres.

2. Hugh Dacres son & heire of Ralph marryed [blank] and had Isue: 1. William Dacres.

3. William Dacres son & heire of Hugh maryed [blank] and had Isue: Thomas Lord Dacres of Gillesland.

4. Thomas Lord Dacres of Gillesland son of William marryed Phillippa daughter of Ralph Nevill Earle of Westmorland whose armes were [blank] and then had Isue: 1. Humfrey of whome hereafter.

2. Johan who was marryed to Thomas Lord Clifford of Apleby in Westm'land who had diverse children by him as may be seen in their pedegrees.

5. Humfrey Dacres Knight Ro[t][444] Parliament. 12. Edward 4. [1472-73]. He tooke to wife Mabel Parr and had Isue: Thomas.

6. Thomas Lord Dacre of Gilseland marryed Elizabeth daughter and heire of Robert Baron of Graystock by which means he came to those lands of Grastokes which they held in Westm'land of Dufton &c. He stole her out of Broham \ Castle where [she] lett herselfe downe out of a window to him, being then a ward {!?}

7. William Lord Dacres of Gilseland marryed Elizabeth daughter of George Talbot – Lord Talbott 4th Earle of Shrewsbury – and had issue:

1. Thomas of whome hereafter.

2. Ann. Who was 2nd wife to Henry 2nd Earle of Cumberland. By whome she had Isue {as in their pedigree}.

8. Thomas Lord Daker of Gilesland; maryed Elizabeth Leybourne, daughter of Francis Leyborne (and afterwards wife to Thomas Duke of Norfolke.)

And by her he had Isue:

Ann who was marryed to Philip Earle of Arundell.

Elizabeth who was marryed to William Lord Howard.

Machell's Notes: I.263]

*{To be referd ad Dufton vel Orton.}

[444] 'Roll.'

[I.264]

The Line of the Beauchamps, Earles of Warwick*

1. William Beauchamp had to wife [blank] and by her had Isue: William.
2. William son and heire of William Beauchamp Baron of Aelmeley and Hamstape was the 12. Earle of Warwick, Shrieve of Worcestershire by inheritance Chamberlin of Ex\c/hey & Lord of Kerthing by his wife. He marryed Maud daughter & one of the coheires of John Fitz Geoffrey Lord of Kerthing & Chief Justice of England whose younger sister Isabell was maryed to the [blank] de Veteriponte Lord of Westm'land & hereditary shireue of the said county. And by this Maud he had Isue: Guy.
3. Guy Beauchamp son & heire of William 12. Earle of Warwick was the 13th Earle of the said place marryed Alice, daughter of Ralph de Toney & sister & heire of Robert Lord Toney Baron of Flemsted. By whome he had Isue: Thomas.
4. Thomas de Beauchamp son & heire of Guy was the 14th Earle of Warwick and tooke to wife Katherine daughter of Roger Mortimer Earle of March who was created the 1st Earle of the Marches of Wales in the 2. yere of Edward 3d [1328-29]. And by her he had Isue: Maud, who was marryed to Roger de Clifford Lord of Westm'land &c.†

[Machell's Notes: I.264]

*{To be referrd}
†{The armes of the Beauchampes of Warwicke were Gules, a fess between 6 crosscrosletts Or}
See a fair pedigre of Beauchamps Earles of Warwick in Dugdal of Warwickshire, p. [blank] vide in Indice.[445]

[I.265]

The Lyne of the Nevills, Earles of Westmorland*

1. Robert Nevill Lord of Raby tooke to wife Mary who was daughter & heire of Ralphe Nevill Lord of Midleham; in whose right he allso became Lord of Midleham and had Isue by her: Ralfe de Nevill.[446]
2. Ralfe son & heire of Robert was Lord of Raby and Midleham and marryed Euphamia who was the daughter of John Lord Clavering by whome he had Isue, a son called Ralfe.
3. Ralfe son & heire of Ralfe was Lord of Raby and Midleham & tooke to wife Alice who was the daughter of Hugh Lord of Andeley, by whome he had Isue John.
4. John Nevill Lord of Raby & Midleham was son & heire to Ralfe. He tooke to wife Maud Pearcy (which Maud was daughter to Henry Pearcy the Elder by Idonea de Clifford who was the daughter of Robert Lord Clifford by Maud de Clare.) And they had Isue:
1. Ralfe of whomme in the next place
2. Euphamia who was marryed to Robert de Clifford, Lord of the Honour of Appeby and Baron of Westm'land, but he dyed without Isue†.

[Machell's Notes: I.265]

*{To be referrd ad Warcop}
†See more about the Nevills in my MS of Armes (marke Part V.)

[I.171]

Thomas Taylboys of Hurworth, his seale: had Westlaton[447] by deed of Alice Blount the daughter of Warrin de Wassington, 5. Richard 2nd, which I thinke came to the \ Wil. / Threlk[eld] of Mel. \ Esq. / about the 16. of Henry 6. who conveyd them to Rookeby of Northum[berland] Esq.

[I.307]

[Roos] {There were Rooses att Barwyse 12. Henry 7. \ 1497. / One Thomas Roos had a dispensation to marry Elizabeth Blenkensop, his cosan in the 4th degree; and they had Isue Thomas to whome she granted lands in her widowhead 15. Henry 7. [1499-1500] unto this Thomas*. They had Isue Thomas who maryed Ann. [blank] & dyed about the 35. of Henry 8. [1543-44], leaveing Hugh Machell executor†.

[445] 'See in the Index.'
[446] MS: '1. Robert Nevill \ Lord of Raby, tooke to wife Mary who was daughter & heire of Ralphe ~~Lord~~ Nevill \ Lord / of Midleham in whose right he allso became Lord ~~Nevill~~ of Midleham; and had Isue by her: Ralfe \ de / Nevill.'
[447] Westlaton or Westluton.

[Machell's Notes: I.307]
*Memorandum – to insert this in Blenkinsops pedegree.
†{about that time also T. Roose, nuper de Berwise – see the Cart. 1bidem.}

[Seals]

[I.187]

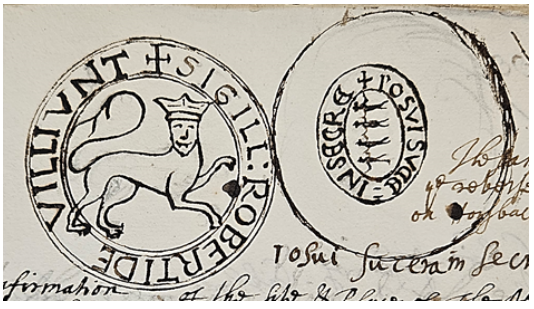


Figure 1.1.14. Seal of Robert de Veteriponte. I.187.

The same on reverse of Robert on horseback
To sui suceram in secre + (to)[448]
This seale is att a confirmation of the site & place of the Abby de Hepp i.e. Shap Abby, with the appurtenances which were contained in the writeings of Thomas the sonn of Gospatricius & Thomas the son of Thomas his son. By Robert de Veteriponte.[449] Dated att Cliburne 13^0 Johannis [1211-12]. Teste Willielmos de Thrimeby et alijs et Johanne de Harclay.[450]

Knipe Antiq. Gnype
Gnype, called Hog Gnype. There were men who tooke sirnames thence: Sc. de Gniype, & de Hog-Gnype in Cartis S.D. penes Mr Blenkinsop.

Mauchael
Alexander Mauchael witness att a deed of Thomas the sonn of Henry de Radem (sea Redman) of 2 oxgangs.[451]

Appleby to Hepp Abby, viz. those 2 which Norman his brother had of John de Veteriponte & gave with his body to Hepp Abby – ibi etiam[452] Alane de Berwyse.

Briton de Eppleby, alias Appleby
Thomas son of Gospatritius sealed with a Lyon whose tayle was clapped betwixt his leggs & up againe about his ribbs.
Michael de Duftonia, Will fil Gunnild de Bothelun.
Rose. dated 1287 15. Ed. 1. Rand: Episc.
I have seen King Edwards grant for the appropriation of Warcop church to Shap Abby by Robert de Clifford, patrone 35 ejus Regni Contra Statute de Mortman: amongst Blenkinsop.

---

[448] Machell has made a transcription error. The legend actually reads, 'IN SECRE + TO SUI SUCC:' i.e. 'In secreto sui succ.' and translates as, 'his and his successors' private seal'.
[449] See the reference to this seal in R.S. Ferguson, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1894), 99. In a footnote, Ferguson remarks, 'The counter seal, as given by Machell, is curious. It is apparently a classical gem, on which are four dancing figures. Legend: POSVI SVCE* IN. SECRE*. Posui sutelam in secreto – "I have placed a device on my privy seal."'.
[450] For another early Veteripont seal see MS.IV.31.
[451] MS: 'Alexander Mauchael, witness att a deed of Thomas the sonn of Henry de Radem (~~forsan Red\e/man~~ sea Redman [~~sed~~] ~~quod male ne habet brevit nimis scripsi~~) of 2 oxgangs.'
[452] 'There too.'

[Machell's Notes: I.187]

Vide Spelmans *Villare Anglicum*, for Townes names all England over; whence you may finde the original of most sirnames.[453]

[I.188]

Shap

Gilbert, the son of Gilbert de Culwenne Knight released clame of som tenement ~~in Shapp~~ to the Abbot &c. 34 Ed. 3 [1360-61] and sealed with a frett & chief charged with a cressent.[454]

Culwen

This I take to be the same with Curwen & descended from Gospatricius.

Apleby

Note, the lyons on Appleby seale are like those upon the trappings of Ed. I. Horse, whether crowned or noe: Querie*?

Redman or Radin: Thomas the son of Henry de Redman gave, granted and confirmed those 2 oxgangs of land which Norman his brother had of John de Veteriponte: witness Alan de Berewys, Alex Mauchaell and or Mauchel & Alijs†.

Machell's Notes: I.188]

*Noe, they are not crownd there.
†{Barwise a family}

[I.261]

[**Seals of the Veteriponte and Machell families**]

*The 1. is the seale of Maud de Veteriponte att her deed of [blank] to her son Robert.
2. Of Ivo de Veteripont att his confirmation of his mothers deed.
3. is the seal of Robert de Veteripont, the first \ of that name / shereue hereditary of Westmorland att his [blank]
4. The seal of William Mauchael of Crakenthorp, more ancient than any of the other; att his enfeoff co[n]f[er]ment of Mr Adam de Kirkby Thore for his life in the Lordship of Crakenthorp.
5. The seal of Idonea de Veteripont att her deed of the manner of Sandbeck in her widowhood, to the monkes of Roch in Yorkshire.
And the other is the impression of her Privy Seal upon the reverse of the same wax.

[Machell's Notes: I.261]

*{These must be referrd}



Figure 1.1.15. Two of a group of seals of the Veteriponte and Machell families. I.261.

[453] Henry Spelman, *Villare Anglicum: or a view of the townes of England* (London, 1656).
[454] See Parish of Shap, Part 1, Ch.22. I.311.

[I.188]

Ecclesiastical Seals

Buly
It seeme that the bishop of Carlile resided of old att Buly Castle for I finde several ~~confirmations with~~ evidences dated from thence.
1. Confirmation of the churches of Hep & Bampton by Thomas Bishop of Carlisle dated apud bellum locum dominica proxima ante natuitatem beatæ Mariæ virginis. 1256.[455] A very fine oval seale 2 inches broad with a bishop in his miter & ro \a/bes, the right hand erect with 2 finger up, the left holding a ~~miter~~ \ crosier / and writt about thus:
SIGILLUM THOME DEI GRACIA KARLEOLENSIS EP.[456]
Sylvester apud Bellum locum \ 1209 / 1244.[457]

? ! {Priory of Carlile}
The seale of the Priory of Carlile is to be seen amongst church writeings 47. Hen. 3. [1262-63]. Cust[ody] F. Blenkinsop.

{Kirkby Thore parsonage}
I thinke ~~it~~ \ Kirkby Thore / either was appropriated to Shap Abby in Henry 8. time by Henry Lord Clifford immediately before the dissolution, or in the agitation then. It was appropriated upon condition that the Abby should pay 12s to the poore per annum, otherwise to forfeit; they makeing allso sufficent provision for the Cure. 1535, the Prior \ Rich[ard] Elenwood Prior, / haveing the benefit during his life.

{Shap Abby}
28. of Henry 8. [1536-37] he granted a confirmation of Shapp Abby (as under rate or value as appears by his coppy of permission and allowances). Penes Fra[n]ces Blenkinsop Gen. apud Brough.

[I.585A]

Memorandum: That the seals of Roger (I suppose Whelpdale*) Bishop of Carlisle or William Bishop of Carlisle \ The / Priory of Carlisle & Abbey of Shappe, are in the Evidence Chest at Crackenthorpe in a green draw box.

[Machell's Notes: I.585A]

*It may be Whelpdales Seale, for he was Bishop in 1419 & was succeed by William Barrow 1423 – who – before he Got a Seale of his own right make use of Rogers.
See the seal T. de Veteripont, Episc. of Carlisle – in a Seale Box in ala[baster] made.[458]

[I.192]

[Scutage, Escuage][459]
{pro explicatione}[460] Ad Intellectionem Termini Scutagij sive Escuage.[461]
Hollished Temp An. 1221 \ Escuag Reg. 6 / The noble granted King Henry 3. of every Kings fee 2 markes silver, p.203, 4, 60. {p.213 a. figure. 20.}

Henry 3. Anno. 1231.[462] Mat[thew] Paris[463] relates that on the 27 of January the king held a Parliament at Westminster (where the Nobles spiritual & temporal were assembled) & demanded

[455] 'Dated at (Bellum Locum, Beautiful Place, Buly) on the Sunday immediately before the nativity of the blessed Virgin Mary, [21 Sept.] 1256'.
[456] MS: SIGILL THOME DEEI GRACIA KARLEEOLENSIS EEP': Seal of Thomas, by the Grace of God, bishop of Carlisle.'
[457] Silvester de Everdon was bishop of Carlisle from 1247 to 1254, in which year he was killed in a fall. The 2nd bishop of Carlisle was Bernard [1204-1214]. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History*, 142.
[458] 'Alabaster' is an editorial suggestion for the shortened word 'ala'.
[459] For scutage and escuage: see the English Glossary.
[460] 'For explanation.'
[461] 'To an understanding of the term Scutage or Escuage.'
[462] MS: 'Henry 3 ~~p. 213, 4, 2~~ anno. 1231.'
[463] Matthew Paris (c.1200-1259) was an historian and Benedictine monk whose historical works include the *Chronica Majora*, a universal history from the creation to 1259. See Henry R. Luard (ed.), *Monachi Sancti*

escuage of all those who held any Baronyes of him, i.e. forren knights fee 40 shillings or 3 markes. And the Archbishop of Canterbury (as they say) stood against the king in this demand, maintaneing that the clergie ought not to be subject unto the judgement of laymen since this escuage was granted in the parts beyond the seas without their consent. Whereupon the matter as touching the Bishops was deferd till the Quindeen of Easter,[464] allbeit that the laity and other of the spirualty did consent to the Kings will. He had allso a great escuage granted for the mariage of his sister, the emperess 1241. {p.229 a. f.50.}

\ P.230 H. 50ti, anno 1242. Reg. p. 233. / Escuage gathered throughout the realm {toward bearing the kings charges in France.}[465]

Att another sitting which was begun 3 weekes after Candlemas anno 1244, Reg. Hen. 3[l] 28. they agreed {p.332. b. fig. 30}* to give the King escuage to run towards the marriage of his eldest daughter, of every knights fe'e holden of the king, 20 shillings, to be payd at 2 terms, the one halfe at Easter, the other at Michaelmas.

Att another session of Parliament, ~~holden~~ \ begun / at Westminster on Friday following the feast of Simon & Jude[466] in the 44. of the reigne of Henry 3. [1259-60] {p.262, a, fig.10}. In this parliament was granted the king a tax cal'd scutagium or escuage, i.e. 40 shillings out of every knights fe'e throughout England, the which extended to a great sum of money. For as diverse writers do agree, there were in England at that time in possesion of the Spiritualty & Temporalty above 40 thousand knights fe'es, but almost halfe of them were in spiritual mens hands.

In the Qiendene of Easter,[467] Parliament \ began to / sat at London. In which all the Estate being assembled it was agreed {p.248 a. f.40} that a 10th part of all the revenues belonging to the Church for 3 years space should be given the king towards journey into the Holy Land, & that escuage should be levyed for that year after 3 markes of every knights fe'e. And the king on the other hand promisid faithfully to maintain & keep the Magna-Carta.

[Machell's Notes: I.192]

*{30? scutage, how it granted; question: when.}

[I.193]

[**Wardship**]

Taken out of a Roll penes Mr Blenkinsop apud Brough: which I take to have bin in reference to a Bill of Chauncery exhibited against Lord Clifford.

Thomas Blenkinsop fuit seisitus de manerio de Helbeck cum pertinentijs in Dominico suo ut de foedo, & sic seisitus manerium tenuit de Henrico Clifford per servitiu[m] militare, viz. per homagium fidelitatem et scutagium*, Sc[ilicet] quando scutagium currit ad quadraginta solidos, 40s quando ad decem, 10s & quando ad plus, plus, quando ad minus, minus, et per reditum sex solidorum ad cornagium Henrici Clifford ad festa pasche et St Michaelis Archiangeli. annuatim solvendum; de quibus quidem servicijs idem Henricus fuit seisitus per manus dicti Thomae Blenkinsop [patris] ut per manus veri tenentis sui, viz. de Homagio et fidelitate et de foedo et jure, et dicto scutagio et reditu in Domenico suo ut de foedo tempore pacis tempore dicti regis modo (Sc[ilicet] Henry 7.) capiendo inde exple[e]s et valere &c.[468]

Albani: Chronica Majora, seven vols (London, 1872-83), Vol. 3 (1876), 200. See also, S. Lloyd & R. Reader, 'Paris, Matthew (c. 1200-1259)'. *ODNB*.

[464] Here, a line of ink points the reader to a continuation of this topic at the bottom of the page.

[465] This margin comment is almost obscured by the binding.

[466] 28 October.

[467] Quindene: the fourteenth day after a festival (this being the fifteenth day when counted inclusively, following ancient Roman practice); hence the period of fifteen days beginning with the day of a festival. *OED*.

[468] 'Thomas Blenkinsop was seised of the manor of Helbeck with its appurtenances in his Demesne as by fee, and being thus seised he held the manor from Henry Clifford through military service, viz. through homage, fealty and scutage, that is, when the scutage ran to forty shillings, 40s, when to ten shillings, 10s, and when to more, more, and when to less, less; also through rent of six shillings for the cornage of Henry Clifford at the

Note this & what followeth on the other side the page (but that for certaine) was taken out of a Roll penes Mr Blenkinsop apud Brough: which I take to have bin in reference to a Bill of Chauncery exhibited against Lord Clifford for demanding the Wardship of the Gentery of this County, and the difference began in the family of the Blenkinsops of Hellbeck. It is therefore added in the clause of each manner, – minus justè; et sine titulo nisi per usurpationem tituli Domini Regis (vid. p.184).[469] But Lord Clifford (as I remember myself to have red) got the better of them, & his ancestours had the Wardship of the Gentry of this County till it was taken of by Act of Parliament (all England over), Sc. Tem. Car. 1. \ a long roll penes Mr Blenkinsop. /

This following evidence may peradventure relate to the said busines. In Bawtre Box (ni fallor)[470] apud Skipton \ MS. /
Pardonatio Henrico Clifford militi alias dicto Henrico Clifford, Domino Clifford Westmorland & Vessy; alias dicto, Henrico Clifford vicecom[iti] Westmorland alias dicto Henry Clifforth militi; alias dicto Henrico Clifford Dom[ino] Clifford militi; alias dicto, Henrico Clifford Dom[ino] Clifford filio Joh[annis] Clifford nuper Dom[ini] Clifford defuncti; fil[ij] Thomae Clifford nuper Dom[ini] de Clifford militis similiter defuncti &c. omnimodas offensas &c. Pardonavimus etiam et relax[avimus] omnimodas cattalla felmu' {felonia forsan}[471] &c. et insuper omnes intrusiones &c. Act[ionem] etiam Wardae & Maritag[ij] Thomæ fil[ie] et here[dis] Thomæ Blenkinsop armiger[i] defuncti; Ac ~~etiam war[dae] & maritag[ij]~~ quorumcumq[ue] fatuorum naturalium &c. custodie nostre pertinent: et ulterius perdonamus &c. omni[m]odas [pen]as fines &c. Proviso quod non extendat ad 7 recognitiones per quas idem Henr. recognovit se debere nobis spetingentas libras anno 17^0 irrotulatas; \ nec ad 7 septas obli[ga]tiones / nec non ad 4^r alias recognitiones per quas idem Hen[ry] et alie persone 27 Aprilis velut recognoverunt se debere nobis mille & trescentas marcas prout &c. quandocunq[ue] acciderint &c. 1^0 Janij, 21. Henry 7. [1505-06] Rot. 1.[472]

[I.194]

[Cornage]

Some Lands held of the King in Capite, paying Cornage, 19 Hen. VIII[473]

{An account by inquisition of L.H. of land held of the king in capite[474] by knights service paying cornage}

---

feasts of Easter and of St Michael Archangel, to be paid annually; the same Henry was, indeed, seised of these services through the hands of the said Thomas Blenkinsop [father] as through the hands of a true tenant, viz.of Homage and fealty both by fee and by right, and by the said scutage and rent in his Demesne as by fee in time of peace lately in the time of the said king (that is, Henry 7.) by taking thence the profits and value etc.'

469 'With little justification; and without title except through usurpation of the title of the Lord King.'

470 'Unless I am mistaken.'

471 The Latin here is corrupt and Machell's suggestion is a plausible one. The original words were probably 'omnimodas cattalorum felonias'.

472 'Remission to Henry Clifford, Knight, otherwise known as Henry Clifford Lord Clifford of Westmerland & Vessy, otherwise known as Henry Clifford Earl of Westmerland, otherwise known as Henry Clifforth, Knight, otherwise known as Henry Clifford Lord Clifford, Knight, otherwise known as Henry Clifford Lord Clifford son of John Clifford Lord Clifford lately deceased, son of Thomas Clifford Lord Clifford, Knight, likewise lately deceased, etc. [We have remitted] all manner of offences etc. – also have we remitted and discharged all manner of felonies of cattle etc, and, moreover, all trespasses etc. Also legal action for the guardianship and marriage portion of the daughter and heir of Thomas, the late Lord Thomas Blenkynsop Esquire, and the guardianship and marriage portion of whatever natural children etc. belong to our custody: And further we remit etc. all manner of penalties, fines etc. Provided that it extend not to 7 acknowledgements of debts, through which the same Henry acknowledged that he owed us seventy pounds, entered in the 17th year, nor to 7 protected bonds, nor to four other acknowledgements, through which the same Henry and other persons on the 27th April similarly acknowledged that they owe us one thousand three hundred marks, proportionately as etc. whenever they fall due etc.'1st January 21. Henry 7. Roll 1.

473 The MS margin contains: 'Of Dem[esnes] held of the king in capite, by paying cornage to the king…An account by inquisition of L.H. anno 19., of land held of the king in capete by knights service paying cornage'.

474 'held in chief.'

	Manner & Demane in Lordship	Owner	Yearly Value	Kings Cornage Rent payd at Pasce & Michaelmas	Payd to	Quo Titulo[475]	Faciendo sectam clor[476] dom regis apud castrum de Apleby mense in mensem[477]
	~~Bampton~~: ~~Knip~~	~~Thomas Blenk J S~~ \ Christopher Culwen J. S. /	£40 per annum	& 10d	Sir Henry Clifford	Ignoto titulo[478]	
Quo titulo	Bampton* Cundal	Jo: Cliborne ob 4[0].[479]	20 marcs J.S.	0: 15 & 3	Sir Henry Clifford	Ignoto	
	Bampton: Patrik						Mense in mensem
Paid to whom ~~forsan~~	Brampton:	John Lancaster Ob 10. Ed. 4.[480]	Jo S. val. £4	0: 8: 6	Lord Clifford sine 1	Per usurpatione[481]	
	Brow \urg /ham:	John Burgh Obijt X[0] J. S.	V: X marcs & [...]	0: 12: 6 /12	Henry Lord Clifford	Iniuste St. Per usurpatione	
	{Cabergh:}||	Pet. Roos obijt 8. July	H. 7. 15/ £8 0d J. S.	0: 7: 8	Henry Lord Clifford	Ignoto titulo	
	Cabergh}	John Mawchel Ob. 1. Ed. 4[482]	Joh. S. val. £X	0: 6: 10	Henry Lord Clifford, toke red[ditus]	Hom[agium] rel[evium]. sine titulo[483]	
	Clifton	T. Wybergh Will. S	[£]20	0: 17: 4	Henry Lord Clifford	Minus iuste sine titulo	Per usurp. titulo regis
	Colby: and infra	T. Warc[op] \ and infra. / Obijt 18 Ed. 4 T[484].	His S. val. 10[li]	0: 6: 10	Henry Lord Clifford, toke red[ditas]	Hom. rel. sine titulo	
	Helbeck†	T.B[lenkinsop] & T. his son	40[li]	0: 6: 0	Henry Lord Clifford	Ignoto titulo	reddit
	Newbiging	Jo. Crak[enthorpe] Ob. 6. Ed. 4[485]	J. S. 5[li]	0: 1: 8	Henry Lord Clifford cepit	red hom Rel. sine titulo[486]	Nec non per
	Overton‡ Dem:	Humfry Lord Daker Obij. 6[0]	£X[li]: 0	0: 12: 6	& Tho. Lord Daker	At 18 had the estate.	servicium ad
	Overton Dem: with ½ Watby	T. Beauchamp Obijt X Ed. 4	£ X	0: ~~12~~ \ 11/: 1	Sir Henry Clifford	Tit. ignot. TB. S.	faciendam sectam
	Smardale:	Reginald Warcop Ob. 8[0] S. Ed	Val. £4[li]	0: 10: 0	Henry Lord Clifford cepit	Red. Hom. rel. sine titulo	cori[487] dicti domini regis
Owner	Wateby↓ d[emesne] it went with ½ Overton to T. Beauchamp vid. supra						

[475] 'With what title.'
[476] The meaning seems to be 'of court' but the form of the word used is unclear.
[477] 'Mense in mensem': Every month.
[478] 'Unknown title.'
[479] 'Died in the 4th year of Henry VIII' [1512-13].
[480] 'Died 1470-71.'
[481] 'By usurping.'
[482] 'Died 1461-62.'
[483] 'Homage, feudal relief without title.'
[484] 'Died 1478-79.'
[485] 'Died 1466-67.'
[486] 'Rent: Homage, Feudal relief, without title.'
[487] The meaning seems to be 'of court' but the form of the word used is unclear.

~~owner value~~	Yanworth¶	Lancelot Threlkeld Ob. 3. Rich. 3[489] Sr L. S.	40 marcs	0: 8: 8	Henry Lord Clifford	Sine titulo per usurpation	com[itatu] W. de mense in mensem apud castrum Regis de Apleby[488]
	Housidribeck	Lord Dacre T. S.	Above £5[li]	0: 9: 2	Lord Clifford cepit	Reditus Hom. & releurium sine titulo	

[Machell's Notes: I.194]

The manner: Bampton K[n]ipe, Bampton Cu[n]dale, Bampton Pat[rick]., Browham, Bra[m]pton, Caber, Caber,[490] Clifton, Colby, Helbeck, Newbigin, Overton, […],[491] Smardale, Wateby.

*Bampton, Bampton Knipe: to Christopher Culwen & Sir Thomas, his son.[492]

Christopher Culwen per Brampton Patrik tenetur per serviciu[m] militare, sc[ilicet] per homagiu[m] fidelitatem et scutagiu[m], si quando scutagiu[m] ad quadraginta \...../ solidos 40s quand[o] ad plus plus quando ad is ['is' repeated] (sicut cetera omnia) et per reditum 14s 4d pro cornagio ad dom[inum] Clifford as fest[a] pasch[ae] et S[anc]t[i] Mich[aelis] Archangel[i] annuatim solv[endum] Knipe Patrik eodem modo (rent 17d) tenebatur ab eodem.[493]

†7 Helbeck to T.B.

‡Overton: ½ of Overton to P. Lord Dacres; ½ to Thomas Beauchamp. {N[ote] Yong Lord Daker freed at yeres because he held elsewhere of the King so he had not marriage of him but onely his land till he came at yeres}.

⸸Watby, Neatby: ½ to Thomas Beauchamp; ½ to [blank]

‖Caber: Peter Roos; Thomas his son.

¶Yanewath was held by Sir Lancelot Threlkeld de Johe Barone de Graystock per servicum militare; viz. per homagium &c. et reditum 8s & 8d ad cornagium Joh annis et Johannes Baron de Gaystock tenuit odem manerium per consimilia servicia de Henrico Domino de Clifford.[494]

{T.W. four year old when his father dyed}

Note: that these Lordships are held by Knights Service yet not of the King in Capite.

[I.195]

L

William de Morville 8 John / Jo[n] Macael John

N.

O.

Robert fil Olf. 8 J[ohn] Joha de Ormeshead vicecom West. 9. Joh / Will fil. Simonis

P.

Peter de Rosgil 9 J[ohn] Joh de Prasto: 9 Joh / Alun Princerna, 9 Joh.

[I.196]

Peterus de Rosgill: J[ohn] 9.

R.

Rob Dns de Sulebi: J[ohn] 9, Gerardius seviensus i.e. sergiant J.G. Will. filius Simonis

---

[489] 'Died 1485.'

[488] 'Also, through service of paying suit of court of the said lord king in the county of Westmorland from month to month. At the King's royal castle of Appleby.'

[490] Caber and Caber are bracketed together.

[491] Here is an illegible scored-through place name.

[492] For 'scutage', see the English Glossary.

[493] 'Christopher Culwen holds the tenancy of Bampton Patrik by military service, namely, by homage, fealty and scutage, the scutage amounting to forty ... shillings 40s sometimes more, more when … (just as everything else) and by a rent of 14s 4d for cornage, to be paid annually to Lord Clifford at the feasts of Easter and of St Michael the Archangel. He held the tenancy of Knipe Patrik in the same fashion (rent 17d).'

[494] 'Yanwath was held from John, Lord Greystoke, by knight's service, viz. by faithful homage etc. and 8s 0d rent and 8d cornage; John Lord Greystoke held that same manor by similar services from Henry Lord Clifford.'

T.
John Taleboys: 9 Joh {Arable 4d acre, 1. Ed. 1. [1272-73] ann Medow} dovecot: 2s per an. Ed. I. Value of

W.
Matild or Maud, the daughter of Torphin de Wateby, sold al her \ demesne & other / inheritance in Westmorland, 300 markes to Robert de Veteripont, by consent & assent of her free tenants; which lands she held of him 8^0 Joh. [1206-07]. Willielmus de Wiginton (forsan pro Winton) 8. J. William de Withinton 9. Joh / Thom Fil. Tho. / de Withrington, Galfrid de Wateby[495]

Y. [blank]

[I.202]

Vipount.

Apleby: The Best Gen[ealogy] I am able to Draw, both from the Evidences of the Countess of Pembroke and Mr Dugdalls *Baronagium*, is thus:

			De Veteriponte from a Lordship of that name in Normandy			
Dugdalls *Baronage*		1. Ivo de Veteriponte benefactor to the Abby of Chieney in France 1185: fuit Dom[inus] de Curvavilla[496]		= Alberia	2. Robert de Veteriponte (ejus mentio ni fallor 1073. i.e. 7^0 Will. Conq.) fuit cobenefactor cum fratre Ivo[ne] Abb[atiae] de Chien, 1185.[497] a. = Matilda filia et cohere[s] de Hugonis de Morevilla […] de Kirkoswald [...][502]	= Maria quae fuit mater Ivonis Junioris[498]
? (a) Carta[e] Commitissae Pembroke ostendunt nomina filiarum et coheredum Hugonis fuisse \ Ada[m] / Matilda[m] marit[atam] Willielmo de Veteriponte. Dugdal, autem ostend[it] eam fuisse Adam: et Johan[nam] quae fuit marit[ata] Richard Gernan et sic MS Cumb:[499]	Ivo de Veteriponte Dominus de Curvavilla = Isabella Domina de Feritate Barnardi	1. Ivo de Veteriponte, qui confirmavit donationem patrui*[500]	2. Robert de Veteriponte qui vixit†	3. Williamus de Veteri-pont qui dici[tur] Xt ni fallor[501]		
(b) Nota quod in Rotulis Antiquis Castrum de Bowes fuit infra confinia Westmariæ vid[e] cartas et liberat[a] 5.		1. Ivo de Veteriponte‡ Robert de Veteriponte filius Dom[ini] Ivonis, 11. Hen.	2 Robert de Veteriponte, 1^{us} Dom[inus] de Westmorland qui inter alia custodiam habuit	= Idonea, daughter and heir of John de Buley, Lord of the		

[495] The end of this line is obscured by the binding.
[496] 'He was Lord of Curavilla.'
[497] 'Robert de Veteriponte ([there is] mention of him, if I be not mistaken, in 1073 i.e. 7th year of William the Conqueror) was co-benefactor with his brother Ivo of the Abbey of Chien, 1185.'
[498] 'Maria, who was the mother of Ivo the younger.'
[499] 'Deeds of the Countess of Pembroke show the names of Hugo's daughters and co-heirs to have been \ Ada / Matilda, married to William de Veteriponte. Dugdal, however, shows that this was Ada: also Johanna, who was married to Richard Gernam, and so the Cumberland MS [have it].'
[500] 'Ivo de Veteriponte, who confirmed his uncle's grant.'
[501] 'William de Veteripont, who is known as Christopher, unless I am mistaken [?]'
[502] 'Matilda, daughter and co-heir of Hugo de Moreville [...] of Kirkoswald [...]'

Joh[annis] membr[anam] 9.[503]	3. [1226-27] è cartis vel Blenc. vel de Sandford habui [504]	castri de Bowes in Com[itatu] West[mariae]. 5[0] Johan[nis][505]	hon[our] of Tickhill in Yorkshire		
	1. John de Veteriponte Baron de Appelby et Westmorland ejusque loci vicecomes hæreditarius [506]	= Sibella, filia Willielmi Com[itis] Ferrars, 12. Ed. 1. [1283-84] Esch[eat] N. 17.[507]	2. Christiana de Veteriponte	= Thomas, son of Will, son of Ralph Baron of Graystock in Cumb.	
	Robert de Veteriponte	= Isabella FitsPeter			{There were other Viponts at Alston More: se Musgrave ped. & a monument in Edenhall church}
	1. Isabella de Veteriponte	2. Idonea alias Ivetta			

{See more of the name de Veteriponte pag. 107 partis V[æ]}[508]

[Bishop Nicolson's Notes: I.202][509]

*C. et patris 1236 i.e. 20. Henry 3.
†C. 1107 i.e. 8[0] Hen.1.
‡This cannot be right unless wee suppose Ivo de Veteriponte to have liv'd 120 years:

1236
1107
0129

[Machell's Notes: I.202 & 202A][510]

[I.202]
[Ewbank]
{See more of the name de Veteriponte pag. 107 partis V.}
E stem de Iewbanck capt i.e. e stem Hiltonorum, de Hilton castro in Episcop. Dunelm[511] penes Robertum Hilton de Morton. In Ewbankes pedegre (in the parish of Brough) that family is said to be extinct in a daughter & sole heire of Sir Alexander Iewbanke, who was maryed to Robert de Veteriponte; but I finde nothing of this in the evidences belonging to that family, ergo I doubt of the truth thereof of it. How cann it otherwise happen to bee except this Iewbanke was his second wife. He dyed about the 29. H.3. [1244-45]. This Ewbankes pedigree (of [which] I speake) is taken out of the famous ped. of Hilton de Hilton Castle.
[I.202A]
N.B., I suppose the anulets in ther seale to [be] placed on the manch as a frity[512] upon his marrying the Lady daughter Clifford = whose husband descended by the mother side, of the Viponts whose armes were anulets 1. r. Because none of his success[ion] bore thus.

[503] 'Note that in the ancient rolls the castle of Bowes was within the bounds of Westm'land, see the charters and writs of 5th [year of] John, membrane 9.'
[504] 'Robert de Veteriponte son of Lord Ivo, 11. Henry 3. [1226-27]. I had it from the deeds either of Blenkinsop or of Sandford.'
[505] 'Robert de Veteriponte, first Lord of Westmorland who among other things had the custody of the castle of Bowes in the County of Westmorland, 5th [year] of John.'
[506] 'John de Veteriponte Baron of Appelby and Westmorland and hereditary sheriff of that place.'
[507] ' = Sibella, daughter of William Earl Ferrars, 12. Ed. I. [1283-84] Escheat N. 17.'
[508] 'p.107, the 5th part'. [See MS. V: 3, 6, 509, 521-24; See also Dugdale *Baronage*, from 348.]
[509] In Bishop Nicolson's hand.
[510] I.202B is a scrap-page containing an unfinished plan.
[511] 'From the pedigree of Ewbank taken from the pedigree of the Hiltons of Hilton Castle in the Bishoprick of Durham.'
[512] Fretty.

2. l. I observe somthing like this in the armes of ~~Hilton~~ Musgrave; see a deed of conveyance of Hartclay Laces in Crakanthorp. See also Blencowes Grant of Armes.

[I.230]

[General Notes:]

{Carta Donationis advocatiæ Ecclesiarum St Michael et St Laurence, Monasterium Beatiæ Mariæ Eboraci.}[513]
William the Conqueror gave the county of Cumberland to William Meschiens, & I doe believe Westm'land to; whith the Honour of Apelby; for that I finde the said William Meschenes \ calling it his castle of Apelby / sealed here in the 20 year of Will. reigne [1085-1086]; & his Chaplaine Parson of the 2 churches.

{!!!} See MS Part 5, p. 27, where Johanna de Veteripont calls Tho. the son of Thomas, Dominus meus.[514] Query if not her husband (of the family of the Cullewens).

Memorandum: to subtract out of the following relations the eminent acts of the eminent men – & query if not also matches.

[I.332]

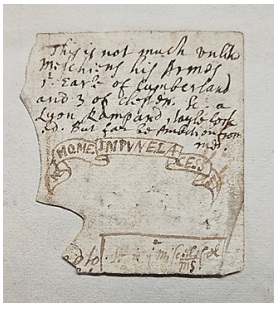


Figure 1.1.16. 'This is not much unlike Meschiens, his armes'. I.332.

This is not much unlike Meschiens, his armes, 1st Earle of Cumberland and 3 of Chester: Sc. a lyon rampard, tayle forked. But far be ambition from me.
NE MO. ME. IMPVNE. LA CESS IT [515]
{Se in the Miscell. Fol. MS}

[I.183B]

H.

[**Appleby Castle**]

{Description of the Tower and Castle}
{Of all these that are called Romane the most compleat & largest, which implies that Apleby was stil the chief place, whoever built the quandragular & equilateral.}
[Tower]
It is a very fair & ellegant Building, ascending to the top by [blank] stayers, each whereof is at least 9 inches, one with an other, so that by that we may compute it to be in hight beneath the batements [blank] And the batlements are high & dented, with a turrett or watch tower at every corner, as in the figure doth more planely appear. It is in breth 20 on each side so that the whole roomes are on one

[513] 'The charter of the donation of the advowson of the churches of St. M. and St L. belonging to the monastery of T.V.M. at York.'
[514] 'My Lord.'
[515] Nemo me impune lacessit: 'No one provokes me with impunity'. It is possible that Machell actually wrote, 'lacesset': the future tense, which changes the motto to, 'No one will provoke me with impunity'.

floore.[516] But formerly – viz.[517] the Lady An[ne] Clifford, Countess of Cumb'land & Baroness Westm'land, repared the same building a wall through the midle thereof for a stak of chimnies, in each rome, making 2 – there was but one roome on a flore and noe chimney. But certanely if they had made the chimneys in one corner & noe wall in the midle, it would have bin the finest pile in England. But it is alledged that the distance twixt wall & wall was soe great, that without great wast & destruction they could not otherwise have gott timber for it. In the lowest roome on the south side, upon the wall, is this inscription, which showes the repareing of it; and many can remember since a gray mayor of Mr Machell of Crakenthorp &c.[518]

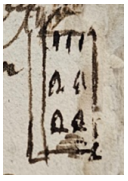


Figure 1.1.17. Appleby Castle. Tower. I.183B.

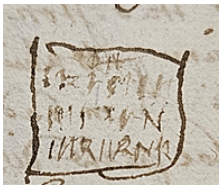


Figure 1.1.18. Inscription in Appleby Castle Tower. I.183B.

And under that wall, not exactly in the midle but towards West side rather, was a deep draw well to supply the Tower in case of ~~a erose~~ seige or takeing the Castle over which it is pitty that there was not an Arch. I read that this Tower was very much impared in [blank] time by reason of the negligence of the Prior of Carlisle, in whose custody [blank] was then as a Ward; which is brought amongst many other thing in the Inquisition. And afterward quite uncovered, no thing remaneing; a mere carkase or case of stones, till repared by the said Lady Ann. \ It was repared by the Earl of Thanet by the dir[ection] T.M. 1684.[519] /

[Castle]
The Castle is opposite to the Tower, stand[ing] East of from it, there being a large Court betwixt them and formerly a wall & ditch, but now {in 1685-1686} the wall is made levell \ & the ditch filled up / yet soe as the vestigia thereof \ still / remane. In the Castle we remark the Chaple, Hall, Dineing roome & Barron ch[amber].

[I.230]

July 18 1688.
I numbered in the tower from the top of the pinackle to doore at the stare foote, CXXV111 steps, each of them being above ½ a foote; de quo quaere?[520] Ergo it is [blank] high.

[516] A scored-through phrase here appears to read, '~~& 1. Few store is~~', but the words are difficult to decipher.
[517] An unclear word here appears to be, 'that'.
[518] Lancelot Machell had a mare ridden up the stairs of Appleby Castle tower. For another reference to this feat, see II.514, above.
[519] In different ink: a later comment.
[520] 'Query, from what?'

Apleby Castle was so great an honour ~~that~~ [blank] Clifford, one of the Barons in Parliament, subscribed himselfe at a letter from the P[arliament] to the Pope by no other title but Castellanus de Appelby. See Blo[u]nt[521] in verbum who refers to Cortgraves *Dictionary*, verbo castellan de q.[522] Send to Dr M[ill].

[I.302]

John, Lord Clifford, 11th Shireve Hereditarie & Lord of this place, builded here {about 1418} \ as appear from writs (fine) almost consumed,[523] / a strong and fortificall gatehouse of stone, all arched overhead, wherein were carved his armes ~~of Clifford &~~ Vipont & Clifford, together with his wives, the armes of the Piercyes, \ vide (a). /

"And also this John Lord Clifford did build that fine gatehouse there, so his sonn, Thomas, Lord Clifford, did build a great part of said Castle of Apleby in Westmorland, which stands Eastward as the Hall, the Chapple and great Chamber (or Dineing Roome) which were then fallne into great decay; though it had bin a castle of note ever since William the Conquerurs time and before." è Record Family Vipont & Clifford L.2, p.390.

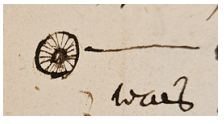


Figure 1.1.19. Sketch placed alongside the words, 'which strong and fortificall worke'. 1.302.

Which Strong and Fortificall worke and Building was all defaced and broken downe, with some of the walls of the said Castle, in 1648, in the time of our \ late / civill wars in this Kingdome of England.

The Armes in the chaple window were placed ther by Robert, Lord Clifford, the great commander, son of John: viz. of the \Viponts / Cliffords, and allso Dacres Armes, which were his wives, impaled with the Cliffords. And the Armes of his then new borne grandchild, after Henry Lord Clifford, which was Clifford & Bromflett, Lord Vescy, quartered together, with a fess of 3 bends on the topp of it; and att the low end of the said window is this inscription:

This chapple was built by Thomas Lord Clifford Anno Domini One Thousand: 400: 54

which was the yere before he was slane, & allso in which his grandchild was borne. It was pull'd down & the Castle altered by Thomas, Lord Tufton, Earl of Thanet, about 1688. / {vide hoc lib. Bowes.}[524]



Figure 1.1.20. Margin sketch: 'antiq of Castles'. I.302.

[521] In 1656, Thomas Blount published the largest English dictionary up to that date, *Glossographia*.
[522] This is probably James Howell's, *A French and English Dictionary composed by Mr Randle Cotgrave with another in English and French* (London, 1673). See under 'CHA': 'Chastelain: A Lord Castellain.'
[523] Eaten by decay etc.
[524] 'See here the Book of Bowes.'

In the Hall window East are sett up by him the armes of his father & mother impaled, and allso his & his wives, together with the Viponts by them selves.
And though Apleby Castle was built before William the Conquerers time, for the Great Tower called Caesars Tower was undoubtedly built by the Romanes when they were masters of Great Britan*; yett the greatest part of the building of the chapple was often defaced and broken downe in the warrs betwen England & Scotland, and much hurt was don thereto by the Scotts in the severall reigns of Richard 2 and Henry 4. After which, in Henry 6 dayes, this Thomas, Lord Clifford, builded the greatest part of it as it now stands, being after the fashion of those times. But (by records and evidences which are yet remaneing) the Barons chamber in it was built long before, which in Henry the 3rds time, & Edward 1., is called the Knights Chamber, & some time the Barons Chamber in the records†, p.434.

[Machell's Notes: I.302]

*{Vide Agricola, part 1t page 16.[525] MS de extructione castellorum Xti 84.[526] Virius? Lupus builded Bowes with many other places, Anno Xt 197.[527] Se allso p.27. 15. antiq. of Castles.}
†All Barons were Knights but not vice versa: T.M.

[Appleby Castle Notes]

[I.325][528]

In the time of Henry, Lord Clifford the Shepherd,[529] Westm'land was given (by reason of his attainture by Act of Parliament) by King Edward 4. to his brother Richard, Duke of Glocester, who was after King of England, but \ this Castle nor / none of the two other inhabited by him. He was slane in batle 22 of August 1485.

To Apleby Castle belongs Rent Cornage 29l 6s 8d.[530] and there are fre[e] tenants which hold Tenements of the Castle by a service called Blanche Ferme, who pay viiili 3s {?} at the usuall termes. 19. Edward 3.[531]

There are 40 acres of land on the north side of Whinfel Forrest calle le Blaunch Landes. Whinhowne & Barrinhowne, with five messuages with land and medow belonging to them, called Le Wood Side, in the said 3rd part of the same Forrest, extended at 5 marcs per annum in all Isues. Maud Beauchamp Inq. 4. Henry 4.[532]

The Castle and Man'r of Apleby conteines in itself
514 acres of land
200 acres of medow
20 acres of wood
1000 acres of pasture
1 water mill

[525] 'See Tacitus, *Agricola* Part 1, p.16.'
[526] 'See *Agricola*, part 1, p.16. MS concerning the construction of castles, AD 84.'
[527] 1697. An altar at Bowes has the inscription, 'To the goddess Fortune. Virius Lupus, imperial propraetorian legate, restored this bath-house, burnt by the violence of fire, for the First Cohort of Thracians; Valerius Fronto, cavalry prefect of the Cavalry Regiment of Vettonians, had charge of the work.' Virius Lupus was governor a.d. 197-c. 202. See https://romaninscriptionsofbritain.org.
[528] Also numbered p.40.
[529] See I.254 (Generation 8 of the Cliffords), below.
[530] £29 6s 8d.
[531] Blanch fermes or White farms, where the rent was paid in silver and not in cattle: see Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary*, BL. However, *Dictionaries of the Scots language* online, define blanche ferme as, 'a small or nominal quit-rent paid in money or otherwise'.
[532] 'Inquisition of 4. of Henry IV.' [1402-03].

and diverse villages belonging to the said C[astle] & m[anor] as: Langton, Winton, Meburn, Kirkbystephen, Mallerstang therein conteined, and diverse rents & services of fre[e] ten[an]t belonging to them: vid. in Cat. Inq. 10 Henry 5 [1422].
It was given in upon path in an inquisition taken att ~~Appleby~~ Brougham after the death of Thomas ~~Lord~~ Clifford, Knight 34 Henry 6 [1455-56] that the 2 burgages which he had in Apleby were held of the king in fre[e] burgage by fealty and the rent of 4d per annum.

[I.337]

Apleby: Caesars Tower, from all part of the country by the graene & colour of the stone; a well in the midst. & roofe invers'd. A round trench & round walls about.}

[I.231][533]

Apleby Castle: Whose Seat[534]

[Morvill]

This Castle, together with Brough which of old has belonged unto it, \ provd by the gift of St Michael & St Lau[rence] unto 1. Meschiens, 2. Morvill, / seems formerly to have bin the seat of the Morvills, for I finde in an inquisition taken at Yorke in the 3rd yere of Edward I. [1274-75] by vertue of a writ from the said king directed concerneing the seisin of Roberti de Veteriponte to whome King John gave the said Castles, that <u>they</u> came into the hand of the said King ~~propter~~ \ per / transgressionem factam per Hugonem de Morevilla*.[535] This Hugh I take to be one of those Knights or Lords who killd Thomas à Becket in the time of Henry 2. father of King Richard & King John: But what this particular transgression was, which occasion the forfature, is not there mention[ed].[536] The death I suppose of Thomas a Becket†. The Morvills have bin a florishing family of old in this county of Westm'land, and many of that name lived in repute att severall places \ after the time of this treason committed / as att Brampton, Walter de Morvill, who sold his freehold estate to R. de Veteriponte and ~~removed~~ elsewhere ~~and his son after him had~~ s[ans] d[ate]. But what they were akin to Hew de Morvil I do not know; nor is materiall (that family being soe long since extinct).[537] Onely you may note that <u>Maud</u>, the daughter of Hugh Morvill of Kirkoswald, was mother to Robert de Veteriponte & Ivo his brother‡, which peradventure was some helpe to procureing this estate after the forfaiture and haveing it settled upon Robert de Veteripont.

If the Morvils be truly a Westm'land family, I mean if they tooke that sirname from thence, I know noe towne which comes soe near to it as Moreton[538] in Westm'land, for if you change the Saxon termination into the Latin – tun into vill – Moreville and Moretun will be the same: de Morevill is the same whereof Marton ⸸.

[Machell's Notes: I.231]

*{de<u>venit</u> in manus domini Henrici Regis senioris i.e. H. 2. Sic dicti quia Henricus filius sicut coronari fecit ipso vivente. See cart. antique Machellorum gen[ealogiam] Regum.}[539]
†See allso my MS VI. 57.[540]

---

[533] Machell placed the sketch of Appleby Castle on I.57, but the description begins on I.231.
[534] Comparison with *N&B1* 267-291 demonstrates their (often unacknowledged) debt to the fruits of Machell's research.
[535] 'Through the transgression committed by Hugh de Morville.'
[536] MS: 'This Hugh I take to be one of those ~~who was the death of~~ \ Knights or Lords who killd / Thomas à Becket \ in the time of Henry 2. father of King ~~John~~ Richard & King John: / But what this particular transgression was, which occasion the forfature, is ~~am yett to learne~~ \ not there mention.'
[537] MS: 'But what they were akin to Hew de Morvil I cannot tell \ do not know; / nor is {materiall} (~~at this time~~, ~~since~~ that family ~~is~~ \being / soe long ~~since agoe~~ \ since / extinct) ~~very much materiall~~.'
[538] Murton.
[539] 'It came into the hands of Lord Henry the King, senior, i.e. H.2. so called because his son Henry made as if to be crowned while he himself was living. See the genealogy of kings in the Machell family archives.'
[540] MS.VI.57 is a page copied from John Denton's *History of Cumberland*, which relates a tale (told by a monk) regarding Ada, the mother of Sir Hugh Morvill, 'that in th'old age of her husband she grew enamoured of one Lyolph, a young Gentleman that served her husband…' Another reference to Thomas Becket and his nemesis, Hugh de Morville, appears on VI.211.

‡{c. de Hac dubitatur in genealogia præcedenti Vipontiorum.}[541]
⸸{sed hoc paru[m]}[542]

[Further Notes on the Morvills]

[I.183B]

{The Inhabitants [and] other things remarkeable}
The first that I meet with, whose seat this was, is one [blank] de Morvill, who upon some fault (but which that was I know not) did forfeit the same. This Morvill is an ancient name, but long since extinct […][543]

[I.230]

See more of the Morvills & of Hugh in particular in the Barony of Brough in Cumberland & the pedigree, MS Part 1, p.22.
Of the Morvills: See a gen[ealogy] MS VI p.143. Hugh. Rich. Rob. vic Westmorland ibid 116. Et alia Genealogia p.56. See in Bampton parish hoc libro Patricius, Son of Thomas, Lord of the manner of Hep, conveys to John de Morevilla &c. – all his lands at Knype. s.d. for 4 iron arrows at St Laurence faire, at Apleby.[544]

[I.231]

{Morvill of Cheshire: or; 3 bores heads; couped Azur. MS Φ penes Mr Sheldon de [blank] in com Warwick sed dub an ead[em] f?}[545]

[I.231]

{Vipont}

After the extirpation of the Morvils, this castle became the seat of the Viponts (which family continued for 5 generations), being first bestowed upon Robert de Veteriponte, together with the shirievalty of Westmorlandand all the tenants of the Honour of Apleby & Brough, which were to bee sibi intendentes tanquam balivo,[546] i.e. to do service to him as to their Shireve. But this was only quamdiu placuerit: during the good will and pleasure of the King; yet I finde the same confirmed ~~u~~to him \ & his heirs afterwards / upon his marriage with that noble lady Idonea de Buly, together with the rents and services of all the Kings tenents in Westm'land who did \ not / hold of the Crowne in capite, Anno Reg. Joh[n] 5^0 [1203-04], the words of which grant \ being in Latin / are to this effect:

Iohannes Dei Gratia Rex &c. John, by the Grace of God, King of England &c., Lord of Ireland, Duke of Normandy, & Earle of Anjoie: to all Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots and Earles, Barons, Judges, Shireues, Provosts, Ministers, and to all Balifes and other his faithfull subjects, sendeth greating. Know yee that wee have given and by this our present charter doe confirme unto our well beloved Robert de Veteriponte.

[I.233]

1st Generation Apleby Castle

{1. Robert de Veteriponte: his Honour, dig[nity] & preferments*}
Robert de Veteriponte the first of that name; who was Lord of the Honour of Apleby & Burgh, Baron of Westmorland & High Shireve by inheritance, was a man of very great parts & imployments for he was Shireve of 11 severall countyes \ in England / besides this of Westm'land, in the reigne of, as

[541] 'Doubt is cast on this in the preceding genealogy of the Viponts.'
[542] 'But this argument is too weak.'
[543] Some of this margin comment has perished.
[544] See also I.609: Long Marton Parish.
[545] 'But I doubt whether this is the same family.' Ralf Sheldon (1623-84) of Weston in Warwickshire was a Royalist and antiquary who compiled a folio manuscript: 'Catalogue of the nobility of England since the Norman Conquest according to theire severall Creations by every particular King'. See 'Catalogue of the nobility of England', GBR/0012/MS Add.8138. Cambridge University Library. https://archivesearch.lib.cam.ac.uk/repositories/2/resources/7499. See also, Ruth Scurr, *John Aubrey: My Own Life* (London, 2015), xix.
[546] 'Who were to look to him as to a bailiff.'

appears è magno rotulo pipae:[547] viz. of Buckingam, Bedford, Nottingham and Darbyscire in the 8. & 9. of King John [1206-08]; Cumberland 11 ejusdem; Wiltescyre & Devonscire 12; Buckingam, Bedford, Everwick (i.e. Warwick) Scyre,[548] Devonscyre, Wiltescyre 13 ejusdem; Wiltescyre 14 & 15 ejusdem; Buckingam & Bedfordscyre 17 ejusdem.[549] He was allso High Shireve at Cane in Normandy, as appears by this ~~special mandamus of King John~~ evidence in the tower (Cart. et libertat. de Anno 5^0 John [1203-04] membranis $7^{a.}$) Robertus de Veteriponte habet literas patentes omnibus de vicecomitatu […][550] directas quod sint eidem Roberto intendentes, tanquam vicecomiti et Balivo suo.[551]

And he was att last imployd as judge of Assise and satt in Commission att York Anno 3. Henry 3. October, St Andrew Apostle [1218],[552] together with Martin de Paterhull, clerke, & others, whence may take notices that in those times the clergie were judges (in recept scaccarij).[553] And he was tam marte quam mercurio peritus,[554] for in the 5th of King John the said king comited to his charge the custody of Winsor Castle; in the 6., the towne and castle of Salisburie; and had the custody of the kings owne nece comited unto him: 16. of King John and the 17. of King John [1214-16]. The Castle of Carlile by vertue of speciall mandamus to Radulphus de la Ferte then Constable of Carlile, date from Darelington 7 January†. And that so brave a man may not be aspersed with so horrid an act as the murther of a prince of royal blood (which some cronologers would fix upon him) I mean of Arthur Earle of Briton; I would have the reader take notice that tho this Robert was a great favorite of King Johns who procured that murther; yett Ralph de Diceto an eminent author and Dean of St Pauls, does possitively declare that it was don by Peter Maule {Petrus de Malo lacu} squire to King John, on whome he bestowed by way of reward the Barony of Mulgrane.[555]

{2. His Descent}
This Robert de Veteripont descended of a noble family of Normandy in Fraunce, who were Lords of Curuavill, being younger brother to Sir Ivo de Veteriponte. And \ then / were sons of William de Veteripont (which William or his father or his father came in with the Conquerour) & Matilda, daughter & cho[sen] heire of Hugh de Morevilla of Kirkuswald in Cumberland & of the Honour of Kaisbrugh in Yorkeshire, whose other daughter was Ada, wife to {Thomas Muleton and after to ~~Rich~~ Lucy}

[Machell's Notes: I.233]

*{N.B. Guillaum\e/ de Vepont is one in the catalogue of noblemen, lords & gentlemen that came in with the Conqueror.}
†He was allso governour of Bowes Castle in Yorkshire and one of those tooke the † in the Holy Land.

[547] 'From a great pipe-roll.'
[548] Everwick is one of the ancient names of York: see F.W. Moorman, *The Place-Names of the West Riding of Yorkshire*, Thoresby Society (Leeds, 1910), i.
[549] Ejusdem: 'of the same.'
[550] Here, an unclear Latin word has not been transcribed.
[551] 'Robert de Veteripont has letters patent directed to all concerning the shrievalty […] that they should be obedient to the same Robert in all matters, just as to a sheriff and his bailiff.'
[552] The Feast of St Andrew the Apostle is celebrated on 30 November (just after the beginning of Henry III's regnal year).
[553] 'In the accounts of the Treasury.'
[554] 'He was as skilled in war as in business.'
[555] Prince Arthur died in c.1203. Ralph de Diceto (d.1199/1200), chronicler, ecclesiastic and dean of St Paul's from 1180, was the author of two well-regarded chronicles: the *Abbreviationes Chronicorum* (world history to 1147) and the *Ymagines historiarum*. The latter begins with the knighting of the future Henry II in 1149, and though the chronicle continues to 1202, it has been argued that Diceto died either in 1199 or 1200, and that the section dealing with events after the coronation of King John (on 27 May 1199) is the work of a continuator. Diceto's chronicles were first printed in 1652, in the *Historiae Anglicanae scriptores X* of Roger Twysden and John Selden. See J. Mason, 'Diceto, Ralph de (d. 1199/1200)'. *ODNB*.

[I.234]

{3. His Armes}
{He was contemporary with King John but when borne it seems that Meborne was her inheritance, for she had the dysposeing of that on widowhood ½ a ploughland whereof she gave to Christian, her daughter & her husband, when Christian was sister […][556]
His armes then as appears by his Seale, were a lyon passant} with a coronet upon his head ~~as is here expressed~~ and his brother Sir Ivos was a lyon passant but without a crowne. So that I suppose the ancient armes of the Viponts were a lyon passant, and that the coronet was added upon the advancement and promotion of Robert de Veteripont to his honours and dignityes for he had not onely those places and posesions I have hitherto spoke of but his brothers allso \ which were the Castle of Mou[n]sorrel / by reason of his sideing with King Johns enemyes as appear from this evidence: E. Tur London[557] Rotulo Clauso Anno 1[0] Regis H.3 [1216-17] membrane 19.

> Rex Vicecomiti Lece: salutem. Precipimus tibi quod plenam sei[sin]a[m] here[ditariam] facias Roberto de Veteriponte de omnibus terris quae fuerunt Ivonis de Veteriponte fratris sui in Baliva tua, quae est cum inimicis nostris, quas ei concessimus quam diu nobis placuerit.[558]

From all which it may appear that tho Robert was the younger brother, yett he was become the better gentleman, and therefore might bear the better armes. But for more satisfaction I will present you with both their seales as they came to my hands in ancient evidences now in the possession of Mr Blenkinsop, and relate to Shap Abby, the 1st where of is Ivos & the 2nd Roberts.[559]

Howbe it, tho this was there bearing then, yet not long after (by what occasion I know not) their armes wer changed, for I finde, that ~~Robert~~ \ John / son of this Robert, bore annulets. And the coat which is now owned by his posterity descended from him bear for their Coat \ is this, viz. / in a field Gules, 6 annulets Or.



Figure 1.1.21. 'In a field Gules, 6 annulets Or'. I.234.

[I.235]

{4. His wife; her Armes; her descent & indowment}[560]
John de Bulye Lord of the Honour of Great Tickhil in Yorkeshire, which John was son & heire of Richard de Bulye, Lord of ~~Tgh~~Tickill & founder & Patrone of the Abby att Roch and priory of Blith in those parts, by Cicely, daughter and heir of William Bussy, son of William Bussy, from the affinity of which 2 names arrises the mistake of Idoneas name being Bulye alias Bussy. Whereas nothing is more evident than they are 2 distinct familyes. And for Bulye I am apt to believ that sirname arose from Buly Castle in Westmorland, for that I finde this family had lands &c. in Appleby in the 20 \ yeer / of William the Conqueror [1085-1086]. And Buly Castle is in the same parish.[561]

---

[556] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[557] The following has been removed from the body text, MS: '~~Claus 17 Johs mem XI Rex dedit Roberto de Veteriponte~~ …~~Leceshire~~'.
[558] 'The king to his Sheriff greetings: 'We have enjoined upon you that you give full hereditary possession to Robert de Veteripont of all the lands which were of Ivo de Veteripont his brother in your bailiwick, which is with our enemies, which we have granted to him for as long as shall please us.'
[559] Here follows a gap of 7½cm (presumably for the seals).
[560] MS: '~~Robert de Veteripont tooke to wife Idonea, daughter and heir of~~', has been removed from the body text.
[561] MS: '~~By this Idonea de Buly he had the Honour and mannour of Tikill in Yorkshire with other greate possesions~~', has been removed from the body text.

1. Robert de Veteripont married Idonea de Bulye, who brought unto him the Honour of Tickill in Yorkshire, with other great possesions, and they gave a yearly rente of 10s or a colt of that price to the Abby of Bega the Virgin in Cumberland, payable on St Lawrence Day.

{Her Armes}
2. She was daughter & heir of John de Bulye, Lord of the Honour &c. ut super.
The seale of ~~John~~ \ Rich[ard] / de Buly, whence the Armes of Bulyes is taken, is in this manner:



Figure 1.1.22. 'Richard de Buly … Gules, a primrose, Or, pierced of the field.' 1.235.

And there armes being in colours are blazon'd thus: viz. Gules, a primrose, Or, pierced of the field.

{His death; his wifes death}
Robert dyed about the 12. of Henry 3[d] [1227-28] and was buried in the Midle Temple in Flet Street, London, to the brethren whereof he gave his moity of the manner of Wycum, now Wickham in Buckingam Shire. & Idonea his widow about 7 years after, \ in / the 19[th] yere of the said King Henry, and was buried att Rupe ~~alias~~ \ now / Roch Abby in Yorkshire – which her grandfather founded, to which place allso she gave much land. He was 24 yeres shireue of Westmorland \ and dyed 12. Henry 3[d] [1227-28]. / She dyed the 19. of Henry 3. [1234-35], injoying the land of Westm'land.

The[y] had Isue
1. John, of whome in the next §
2. Christian, who was marryed to Thomas, the son of \ William the son of Ralph Fitz Ralphe / {their Isue} Baron of Graystock in the county of Cumberland, whose armes were barres of 6, Argent & Azure, 3 chaplets of roses Gules.

[I.236]

2. Gener[ation]

{His Honour & Dignity}
1. John de Veteriponte, son & heire to Robert de Veteriponte & Idonea, his wife, was the 2 Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westm'land, & shireue by inheritance; but not of the Castle, honour and manner of Tickill, for that his father and mother in their lifetime had passed that away by fine to Alice, Countiss of Ewe in the 6 yere of the reign of Henry, son of King John [1221-1222]. Except 6 Knights fees & a halfe \ viz. / which they formerly held of the said Countiss and her heires forever doeing therefore one knights service (i.e. forrane service of one knight onely) and noe more*.



Figure 1.1.23. Seal of John de Veteripont. IV.31.

(ad 1.) It seems to me that he was borne in Apleby Castle and brought up there, for those 2 oxgangs of land in Apleby which he gives to Norman \ de / Redman ar expressed to be the same that Sibilla nutrix tenuit,[562] which Sibil his nurse lately injoyed, to which deed \ s.d. / amongst others John Mauchael is a witness. And those lands as we shall show hereafter were in Bongate ~~in Apleby~~ which shows planely that then they were all one and generally called by the name of Apleby. And I do not dout that Appleby Castle was for the most part the place of residence, not only to the Viponts but the Cliffords after them; for Brough, which is the next principal house, we finde ab initio[563] governd by a Constable, which Appleby was never, exept when by forfature it belongd to the king.[564]

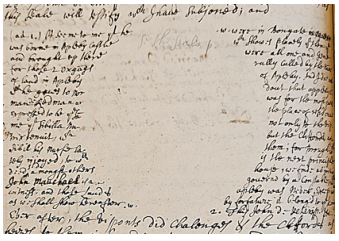


Figure 1.1.24. Space for the Veteripont seal, containing the pencilled words, 'Se the seale'. I.236.

{His Armes}
2. This John de Veteripont bore for his Armes, [blank] annulets, as this seale will testify, which I have subjoined,[565] and ever after, the Viponts did chalenges & the Cliffords as heires to them in succeeding aiges quartered in their Coate.[566] In a field, Gules, 6 annuletts, Or, as before is expressed.

{His Wife. Tur. L. Esc: 12. Ed. 1. n^0 17}
3. He marryed Sibilla, daughter to (Williamo Comiti de Ferrarijs) William, Earle Ferrars, afterwards, as is thought by some, Earle allso of Derby, whose armes were Argent 6 horse-shoes Sable[567] (porc. Or) {to have bin buryed in Shap abby in Westmorland, to which he and his father were great benefactors.}
4. He dyed about the 26. of Henry 3^d [1241-42], very yong as is thought, and lived 12 or 14 yeres Lord of Westm'land. His wife Sibilla marryed afterwards to Francis de Bohune, Lord of Midhurst in Sussex who founded Cowdry House there.

They had Isue:
5. Robert de Veteriponte of whome in the next §.

[Machell's Notes: I.236]
*{Viz. Malteby, Sandbeck, Kimberworth, Scauseby, Faldam, Standford upon Sore, Peverelthorp, Brodesworth and Torlakeston.}

[I.237]

3. Vipont

{His Honour & Descent}

[562] 'Sibilla, his nurse, held.'
[563] 'From the beginning'.
[564] MS: '{~~This John was the patrone of the Viponts of the Rectory of K ... as by the Deed of Adam, son of Waldeue. Reg. MS part 5, fol.19~~}' has been removed from the body text.
[565] See the Figure above: the shape meant for the seal but left blank.
[566] MS: '2. This John de Veteriponte &c. – 2. Ever after, the Viponts did chalenges & the Cliffords as heires to them in succeeding aiges quartered in their Coate.'
[567] MS: 'Earle allso of Derby, ~~which Sibil after the death of her~~ whose armes were argent 6 horse-shoes sable.'

Robert de Veteripont, son & heire of John de Veteripont & Sibilla, his wife, was 3[d] Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westm'land & hereditary Shireve of the same. But being left very young by reason of his fathers so early death, he was a long time Ward to the King, and in the custody of the Prior of Carlile, who tho a man of a Religiouse Order, yett it should seme had not overmuch honesty \ in this affair / for he ~~sufered~~ \ permitted / very great waistes to be made in his ~~wods~~ estate, suffering his houses not only at Appleby, as has bin said, but att other places allso, which hereafter shall be showne to goe to decay, his game destroyd and woods cutt downe, as was made manifest upon inquisition. This Robert de Veteripont, after he came to full yeres was one of those who sided with Montfort, Earl of Leicester \ & Humph. de Bohun / with other Lords & Barons against King Henry 3[d], who being assembled together answered unanimously for themselves and their followers that they would to their lives end keep the provisoes to which they were bound by oath, and defend the same because the[y] were published and confirmed both for the benefit of King and Kingdome. Upon which account his estate became afterwards forfeit. His armes as before*.

{<u>His wife; her dignity; descent and armes</u>}
He tooke to wife Isabella Fits-Peter, 2[nd] sister and afterwards one of the coheires of Richard Fits Peter, son of John Fits Peter, alias Fits-Geofray, Baron of Barkhamsteed[568] & Chief Justice of England, whome I take to be son of G. Fil. P. with whose name, after the king, the first grant of Westm'land to the Viponts doth begin†. And from his \ son / they tooke the sirname of Fits Geofray, as they did from himselfe the name of Fits Peter,[569] because the name of his father was Peter; and the sirnames of Fits-William & Fitz-Herbert \ & others the like / have first bin begun upon the like account. The armes of this family will best appear from the seale of Richard Fitz John (<u>or the son of John</u>) as it is extant in *Baron Hatons booke of seales*, which is annexed to a writeing dated the 9 Edward 1.[570] Whence they beare for their armes Quarterly Or & Gules a border varrey, Azure & Argent.



Figure 1.1.25. Seal of Richard Fitz John. I.237.

{<u>His death: he dyed &c. & left behind him</u>}
Robert de Veteripont dyed about the 49[th] of Henry 3. [1264-65], haveing received his death wound at one of the batles, either of Lewis in Sussex, or Evesham in Worcestershire; and after his death King Henry sesed upon all his lands, but in the 50th year of his reigne restored them agane unto his children. When his wife dyed is not knowne, but likely before him. 23 yere Lord of Westm'land.

[Machell's Notes: I.237]
*{This Robert being the second patrone of K: of this family, endowed the chaple of Milburne, or rather provide a chaplaine for it, by iiii markes per annum out of his cornage rents – ~~to Shap Ab~~ given to Shap Abby: see my MS; part. 5, pag. 45.}
†{G. F. P. was Earl of Essex, Lord Luggersal Castle & L[ord] Chief Justice of England, who was made Earl of Essex in right of his wife at the coronation of King John. To him Jon was son. Isabel grandchilde.}

[568] MS: 'Fits-Geofray ~~who was son of Geofray~~ Baron of Barkhamsteed.'
[569] MS: 'as they did from his~~m~~ ~~father~~ \ selfe / the name of Fits Peter.'
[570] Christopher Hatton, 1st Baron Hatton (1605-1670) was a royalist and politician. A noted antiquary, he was a founder of the Royal Society in 1663. In the 1640s, with William Dugdale and others, he compiled a *Book of Seals*, a volume of 529 medieval charters, of which 240 are reproduced in facsimile. A modern edition, *Sir Christopher Hatton's Book of Seals*, was edited by Lewis C. Loyd and Doris M. Stenton (Oxford,1950). For Dugdale and Hatton's work on seals, see L.J. Whatley (ed.), *A Companion to Seals in the Middle Ages* (Leiden, Boston, 2019), 148.

[I.238]

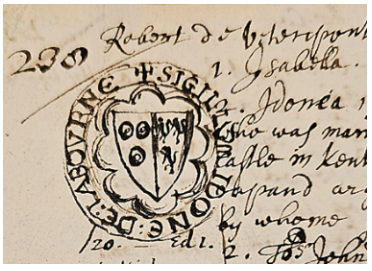


Figure 1.1.26. Veteripont Seal. I.238.

Robert de Veteripont, by Sibilla his wife, had Isue: 2 daughters,[571]
1. Isabella, of whome in the next §.
2. Idonea, sometimes called Ivetta in ancient writeings \ as Maud ~~for~~ Matilda / yett the same, who was married:

1. To Roger de Labourne, Baron of Labourn Castle in Kent, whose Armes were Azure 6 lyoncells rampand Argent \ 3 2 / lingued membred & armed Gules, by whome she had Isue: John, who dyed an infant.
2. To Sir John de Crumwell* who outlived her, but had noe Isue by her†.

{Her Honour, Descent and Welth}
1. Isabell de Veteriponte was the elder daughter and coheire to Robert de Veteriponte by Sibilla his wife, and was restored together with her sister to their fathers inheritance about the 50th yere of King Henry 3 [1266-67] at which time she was not much above 10 yeres old and her sister younger by 6 or 7 yeres; so that by reason of their nonage the king had them in wardship and committed them to the custody of 2 great men: Roger de Clifford & Roger de Labourne, who marryed them after they came to yeres to their owne sons & heires. The Isabell being the elder daughter in the partition of their lands in Westm'land had Apleby Castle with the office of shireve; which office was executed by her gardian Roger de Clifford; and the other had the Castles of Brough & Mallerstang with the land adjacente which were mannaged ~~by the care of~~ Rodger de Labourne; and it was allso ordered that the rent in generall should be collected by the respective Balives and carryed by them to the Exchequer of Apleby where they should be distributed by equall proportions. This was about the 52 yere of Henry 3 [1267-68]. But in the 4 yere of Edward the 1st [1275-76] was a more particular partition out of which I will onely take notice of the names of those who are mentioned in the knights fees because the estate was united agane not very long after and I hope will not be thought alltogether impertinent because it may be a step to the discovery of some ancient familes and distinguish them from others of a later date; and forr methods sake I shall digest them into an Alphabetical order.

In Isabells Partition
Simon de Anvoy
Robert de Askeby
Robert de Bakun & Alis de Helton[572]
John de Bayliol
Thomas de Buett
Henry de Boyvill
John de Coupland
Radulph de Cundale
Henry de Engayne
Thomas de Ellerton

[571] MS. I.237: '{His Isue} They had Isue: 2 daughters onely: 1. Isabel borne 1234 and was when her father died of the aige of \ X / ii; 2. Ivetta borne 1262'. This has been removed from the body text.
[572] MS: 'Robert de Bakun & Alis de Helton … Robert de Bakun & Alis de.'

Robert de la Firrtre
John de Goldri[n]gton
Adam de Haverington
Michael de Hardclay
Alan de Kaberga
John Mauchaell
Thomas de Murton
William Moreton
Margaret Roos

[Machell's Notes: I.238]

*His armes were Argent, a chiefe Gul. Over all a bend Azure. He had a son, by a former wife, called Richard, but none by Idonea.
†She lived for the most part att Brough and Pendragon Castles, which were then in their prime, and she dyed in the 8. of Ed. 3. [1334-35] and was buryed as is thought at Shap Abby in Westmorland, by whose decease her lands in Westmorland descended and came to her sisters heire & grandchild, which was Robert, Lord Clifford of Westmorland. Note that it seems as yet the Viponts bare but 3 [annulets.][573] Note allso that in the woman's seale, her armes hold the first place. She was borne 1262, 45. or 6. Henry . and dyed 1333 or \ the 7. / 8. Ed. 3. bein 73 old.

[I.239]

In Idoneas partition these*
William de Suleby
John de Staffol
Hugo de Soureby
Walter de Tillia
Luca Talleboys
Thomas de Corewen
Robert de Engleys
William de Graystock
Hugo de Hastings
Thomas de Hellebeck
Galrid. Fil. Henrici
Richard de Musegrave
Tenentes Terrarum Re
Reginaldi de Maundermander
Henry de Reddinger
Richard de Sandford
John de Vesa & Robert de la Vale
Richard de Warcop

And now to returne to our business agane
Isabell Vipont the elder sister, was about 14 or 15 yeres of aige married to Roger de Clifford of whome wee shall speake more att large hereafter; which husband she outlived and which is rare for a woman to performe. She satt in court and managed the office of Shireve in person when she was a widow, being present att tryalls upon life and death. And here wee will lieve her till wee have occasion to mention her agane amongst the Cliffords, the next noble family that have placed themselves here†.

Of the Cliffords[574]

[Ist Generation]
{Roger de Clifford}
{1. His Honour, dignity, preferment & Inheritance, acts and monuments}

[573] Machell drew the symbol of an annulet from the coate of arms.
[574] *N&B1* reproduces Machell's Clifford family history in the same format, using similar wording, see 274-90.

The 1st of the name of Clifford that came \ to / be seated here was Roger de Clifford sirnamed The Younger by reason of his father who[575] was Roger also, being co[n]temporary with him; for he outlived his son 5 yeres. Both he and his father were chief commanders for 20 yeres together in the warrs of England, Ireland and France in the reignes of King Henry 3 & Edward 1. & yett Roger the Younger lived not about 48 yeres, being slane in the Ile of Anglesey \ in Wales in the Kings service aganst the Welsh / so that you may se by this he was a man of early parts being trusted with such command att or about 28 yeres of aige. His paternall inheritance was the mannour of Temedbury, which is part in Worcestershire part in Herefordshire, but his estate was fairly augmented by the donation of King Henry the 3rd who gave to this Roger the Younger March 8. Anno ejus reg. 48. [1264] 100 marcs in land cum pertinentijs in the Vale of Munmoth by the service of one Knights foe; the former whereof continued in his name & family till the reigne of Queen Elizabeth, att which time it was sold by Henry Lord Clifford, Earl of Cumberland. But the other was restord agane to the Crowne in exchange for Skipton Castle as hereafter shall be shown. But the gratest advancement \ of estate / and Honour ~~came to him and his heires~~ was brought unto him by the marriage of his wife ~~whose~~ I mean the Honour of Appleby, Barony of Westmorland and hereditary shirevewick &c. And \ with / many fair possesions and lands which continued in the heires male 326 yeres exce[p]t some interuptions by Attainder in Blood occasiond through greatness and turbulency of state, which notwithstanding was never so hanous but it did admit of a restauration and became more formd,

[Machell's Notes: I.239]

*{See p. 33 of my Collections.}

†{There was one Willielmus de Veteriponte, Anglice Veipont: A Scottish Baron, and of those who sore to se the performance of Covenant of Peace kept on the Scottish side with King Henry 3, and was one of those who together with the king put to their seales. Anno 1244.}

[I.240]

and (as members in the body) became more firme for being disjointed. For by this means it hapned that all former grants were confirmed and established by Act of Parliament on the Cliffords of Westm'land and their heires forever. This Roger was hee who built the greatest part of Browham castle in Westm'land, which is now a princely house as most castles in England. Over the inner door of which castle he has placed this inscription in a [blank] character: 'This mad[e] Roger': which some would have to be understood not so much of his rasing the castle as of the castles raiseing of him; alludeing to the great avancement of fortune which came unto him by the marriage of his wife, this castle being part of her inheritance; which interpretation I shall not reject but should more have applauded it if ~~had~~ the letters had bin writt upon Apleby Castle which is the Capitale Messuagium[576] to which Browham Castle doth peculiarly belong. And truly I am of opinion that it was not very habitable and fitt for reception before thus augmented and inlarged by Lord Clifford. For in King John grant wee hear nothing of it being then included inter pertinentia.[577] And the first notice I mete with that was taken of it was in the time [blank] de Veteripont dureing whose wardship it went much to decay. So that till Roger de Clifford it may rather seem to have bin a castle of defence than of habitation; which Roger built a great part thereof and the greatest tower save that called the Pagans which was built by the Romanes: lib. 2 p.47.

{2. <u>His Descent</u>}

This Roger de Clifford descended from a noble family of the Cliffords of Clifford C[astle] in Hereford Shire, from which castle they had that sirname. And the castle (built by William Fitz Osborne Earl of Hereford but afterward possessed by the Tonyes) had its name from being placed upon a rock or cliffe nearby a ford upon the river Wy; and thence it was called Cliff Forde-Castle.[578] It appeares by ancient writeing and pedegrees that before the comeing to Clifford Castle ther sirname was Pons and that they were of Norman extraction. For this Roger descended of a second son of Walter de Clifford, son of Walter de Clifford (and Margaret de Tony his wife by whom he had

[575] MS: 'whose'.
[576] The chief house on an estate; the mansion-house of a manor.
[577] 'Among the appurtenances.'
[578] MS: 'and thence it was called Cliff~~ord~~ Forde-Castle.'

Clifford Castle) which Walter (the first that assumed the sirname of Clifford) was son to Richard Fitz Punt, son of William, Earl of Argues in Normandy, second son of Richard Duke of Normandy sirnamed Ponz.[579]

[Machell's Notes: I.240]

{Gat of Tailleurs *Cron of Normandy*; Osmond \ Seig. / du Pont came in with the Conqueror and so did [blank]. And Cifford mentiond in Battle Abby.[580] I finde Drogo filius Ponzten in Wiltescire. *Domesdaie Book*. Item. Walter[us] Ponz in Oxenfordscire.}

[I.241]

And now*

{*This may be red too.}

Walter de Clifford, Clifford of Clifford Castle, was father to the fair but unfortunate Rosamond, whose grave stone I have seen att Godstow in Oxfordshire, to which place her father became a benefactor after her decease. And from her descended (by King Henry 2.) the family of the Longspees, Earl of Salisburie, whose grandson Will came to be marryed unto Maud daughter & sole heir of Walter de Clifford, which Walter was grandchild to Walter the first: father of Rosamond; and they had a daughter only whose name was Margarett, so that this match putt a period to both those families in the direct line.[581] Howbeit, there remaned of the Cliffords who were collaterall and younger brothers, for Richard, 2nd son unto Walter \ de Clifford / by Marg\rett / Tony, rased a florishing family of the Cliffords de Frampton in the Cou[n]tye of Glocester who possessed their lands there for 15 or 16 generations till they came to a daughter and heir whose name was Mary; and she dyed without Isue. And Roger de Clifford, 2nd son of Walter, son of Walter the 1st by Sibilla daughter and heir of Robert de Ewias Lord and Baron of Ewias in the County of Hereford, raised this other family \ of which I am treating / whose descent I shall ~~follow~~ \ trace / in my following discourse. But I shall note as concerneing there Armes that all the Cliffords hitherto spoken bare chequi Or & Azure, a bend Gules, which Coat is different from the Cliffords of Westmorland. An before I proceed you must allso \ and now for the clearer proofe of his descent from Cliffords ~~Castle~~ of Clifford, I shall / ~~so~~ present you with this account concerning his ancestours ~~marages~~, which is briefly as followeth.[582]

1. Walter de Clifford, 1st Lord Clifford of Clifford Castle by right of his wife, bare for his Armes[583] a shield chequie Or & Azure, a bend Gules. Hee marryed Margarett, daughter of Ralph de Tony Lord of Clifford Castle whose armes were Argent, a maunch Gules. The[y] had J. Walt? \ Richard, of whome the Cliffords of Frampton, a florishing family there for 15 generations; & Rosamond whome / {Longspes Earl of Salisburie, whose armes were Azure 6 lyonsells Or, rampant.}

2. Walter de Clifford, 2nd of Clifford Castle, bare the same Armes with h. f. He marryed Agnes, daughter and heir of Roger de Cundy Lord of Covenby & Gletham, whose Armes were Argent, a fess between 3 martlett Gules.[584] And amongst other children they had Walter the eldest & Rodger, their second son†.

---

[579] This is followed by, MS: 'And ~~this Walter de Clifford of Clifford Castle had Ros & Richard~~', now removed from the body text.

[580] The *Chronicles of Normandie*, supposedly written by William Tailleur, were included in John Hooker's edition of ['Holinshed's] *Chronicles … first collected and published by Raphaell Holinshed, William Harrison, and others: now newlie augmented and continued (with manifold matters of singular note and worthie memorie) to the yeare 1586. by John Hooker aliàs Vowell Gent and others. With convenient tables at the end of these volumes* (London, 1587). See in this work, 'The politike Conquest of William the first', page 2, which lists 'The Catalog of such Noble men, Lords, and Gentle|men of name, as came into this land with William the Conquerour', of whom Osmond Seigneur du Pont was one; Clifford's name appears on p.4, in 'The roll of Battell abbeie'.

[581] MS: '~~And Margarett being marryed to Henry de Lacy Earle Lincoln~~' has been removed from the body text.

[582] This passage has been difficult to transcribe with complete accuracy.

[583] A small roundel image follows here.

[584] Martlet: heraldic swallow, see the English Glossary.

3. Roger, 2nd son of Walter second Lord Clifford bare the armes of his father and tooke to his first wife Sibilla daughter & heire of Robert de Ewias, Lord and Baron of Ewias Castle in Herefordshire (and widow to the Lord Robert Tregos), who bare Argent, a fess Gules, between 3 stares of 6 points Sable; by whome he had Isue Roger de Clifford the younger, first Clifford of Westmorland, of whome hereafter; and after her decease he tooke to wife the Countess of Lorane, whose armes were Gules a fess Argent betwen cross billets \ Or / 3 & 2, 3 & 2. But what Isue he had by her or whether he had any is not the subject of my enquirie for I must haisten to Roger de Clifford, 1st Clifford of Westm'land.

{His Armes}
4. Which Roger de Clifford bare for his Armes on a shield chequie Or and Azure, a fess Gules, which is an alteration from the Coat of his father and all his ancestours who insteed of a fess bare a bend. But noe way disgracefull, for the fesse is properly Cingulum Honoris, the girdle of honour, and therefor may seem to have bin placed here upon some good account.

[Machell's Notes: I.241]

*{Here I might bring in Rosamond and her family better and omit it as befor.}
†{Which Walter \ the last h[eir] male / Lady of Cantresdif, Inquis[ition] 56. Henry 3. [1271-72] whose armes were Azure a lyon rampant in amongst cross crosletts of the 2nd and had Isue: Maud, marryed to William Longspe, Earl of Salisburie, whose Armes were Azure 6 lyonsells rampant Or; who was great grandchild to Rosamond Clifford the fair but unfortunate, by King Henry 2. Which Rosamond was daughter of the 1st Walter, Lord of Clifford Castle.}

[I.242]

{His wife: her Honour, Welth and Acts and Armes}
He tooke for wife Isabell de Veteripont, elder daughter and one of the coheirs of Robert de Veteripont, Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westmorland and High Sherive of Westmorland, when she was about 14 or 15 yeres old; till which time she was Ward to his father by the free gif of King Henry 3. as a compensation of his worthy service; which Lady Isabell had the Honour of Apleby with the other titles and Honours by birth right, the younger sister onely shareing in the estate; and thence it was that dureing her minority the Office of Shireve was performed by Roger de Clifford, her husbands father, by her husband dureing his life time and by her selfe in person when she was a widow, as before has bin said. She was borne in 1254, about the 38. of King Henry the 3. and bare for her Armes the Coate of her father which is 6 annulets.[585]

{His and her death}
This Roger de Clifford dyed in the Kings service against the Welch as has bin said, 1282/3,[586] in the 11. of Edward 1. and was buried [blank]. And Isabell being then but 29 yeres of aige, yett lived a widow for 8 yeres after, and dyed in the 37th of her aige \ puto 20. Edward 1. [1291-92], / being buried as is supposed in the Abby of Shapp or Apleby Church, the Abby being within 6 miles of Appeby. And Appleby the most eminent place of \ her / inheritance & chief seat of her ancestours who together with her selfe were great benefactors to the said Abby.

{His and her Isue}
They had Isue: Robert of whome in the next § {Temp. Edward 1. Edward 2.}

2. Generation
{His Descent, Honour, Dignity, Preferment & acts}
Robert \ Clifford of Appelby / son & heire of Roger de Clifford & Isabel his wife, was borne in the yere 1274[587] about Easter; and that was in the 2nd yere of King Edward the first, being about 9 yeres old att his fathers death.

[585] Machell has written 'o' meaning 'annulets'.
[586] MS. '128.'
[587] The number '7' has been written over the number '2' to change 1274 to 1224.

{Acts}
He was Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westmorland & High Sherieue by inheritance derived from his mother Isabell de Veteripont \ & Lord of the Honour of Skipton. / He was the greatest man of all this family, being of a most martiall and heroique spirit.

{Hollinshead}[588]
When he was about 20 and 3 yeres old – anno Edward 1. 25. [1296-97] he was made the Kings captane & keeper of the Marches in the North towards Scottland; and in the 24 or 25 of his aige he made an inroad into Scotland with a party of horse;

{Stows *Cron.*}[589]
and hee allso did diverse other times dureing the reigne of Edward 1. and was in particular sumonsed to come with his horse and armes unto Carliol against the Scotts 26. of September: anno ejusdem 26. [1297-98] teste rege apud Stayne Way;[590] in which service against the Scotts he att last lost his life. He was one of the 4 guardians appoynted by King Edward the 1st upon his death bed for Edward his son & successor, and was Justice of the Kings forrest on the north side Trent.

[I.243]

He was made Lord Admirall of England in the 1st yere of Edward 2. [1307-08], and Lord March allso about the same time. And in respect of his good and laudable service had the Honour of Skipton Castle in Craven in Yorkeshire with ~~the lands about & services thereto belonging~~ \ 100 li land / bestowed upon him; which 1st grant was for his life only in the 3. of Edward 2. [1309-10]; But was after confirmed to him and his heires for ever partly as favour and partly in ex change for certane lands in the Vale of Monmouth with the Towne & wood of Hodenake; The revertion being in the Crowne; which deed was dated att Notingha[m] the 1st of August in the 4th of his reigne [1310], & confirmed agane the 7th of Sep. in the same yere; Which lands of Monmoth were given to his father, Lord Roger de Clifford by King Edward 1. And hence it appears that Apleby Castle with theire other seats in Westmorland belonged to Cliffords before Scipton Castle, this Robert Clifford being the 1st that injoyed i[t]; & in his posterity it remanes to this day, being not only confirmed by these grants but by Act of Parliament. And is here to be noted that tho Skipton Castle had formerly bin the seat of the Earls of Albemarle till bestowed[591] upon him by King Edward the 2. Yett it owes all its ornaments to him; of whome it may be said as it was of Nero {?} concerning Roome: Invenit ~~mar mori~~ \ later /itium reliquitt Marmoriam.[592] He found a ruinous heap, but left it the most ellegant & beatifull pile att that time in England. I mean of its bigness for it conteines but 2 acres of ground. He had allso other lands conferd upon him, as Duglas in Scotland: and here in England, Alanby and Skelton by the rebellious forfaiture of Christofer de Seaton, son of John and Armina his wife.[593]

---

[588] Holinshed's *Chronicles* (1577, and later editions), often referred to as just 'Holinshed', is a large collaborative work describing England, Scotland, Ireland and their histories from their first inhabitation to the mid-16th century. In 1548 the London printer and bookseller Reyner (or Reginald) Wolfe decided to produce a universal history and cosmography (i.e. description and mapping) of the world. After Wolfe's death in 1573, his assistant Raphael Holinshed took over the project, involved more writers and restrained its scope to the British Isles. The *Chronicles* were first published in 1577 in a two-volume folio edition, illustrated with numerous woodcuts. After Holinshed's death in 1580, Abraham Fleming published the significantly expanded and revised second edition of 1587 in a larger folio format, this time without illustrations. See BL online. See also Machell's Notes: I.240, above.

[589] John Stow (152[5?]-1605), *The chronicles of England from Brute unto this present yeare of Christ* (1580).

[590] 'The king bearing witness [i.e. to his service] at the Steyne Way.'

[591] MS: 'bestwooed'.

[592] Machell was in error here; it was said of Augustus with regard to Rome, 'lateritium invenit, marmoream reliquit': he found it brick, and he left it marble. (See Suetonius, *Lives of the Cæsars, Augustus, XXVIII*, 3.)

[593] Sir Christopher Seton (c.1278-1306) landowner, was said to be twenty-one when he inherited his father's Yorkshire lands as well as property in Cumberland, where (c.1305), he married Christian Bruce, a daughter of Robert (VI) de Brus, earl of Carrick (1243-1304); Robert I was her brother. Caught up in the Scottish cause, Seton was captured by the English at Loch Doon Castle and executed by Edward I in 1306; Christian kept sacred Seton's sacrifice as late as 1324, when she founded a chapel in Dumfries to his memory. See F. Watson, 'Bruce, Christian (d.1356), noblewoman'. *ODNB*.

{His Armes}
He bare for his armes quarterly, as son & heire to his mother an heiress, Cliffords & Viponts. The 3 as the 2nd, and 4th as the first.

{His Wife; her Honour, Welth and Armes}
His wife was Maud de Clare, daughter of Thomas de Clare, Stuard of the Forrest of Essex, whose son dyed without Isue so that she became one of his coheres. And Thomas her father was younger brother of Gilbert de Clare, Earl of Glocester and Hereford, whose wife was Johan de Acres 1st of the daughters of King Edward the 1st, by whome he had a son named Gilbert, Earl of Glocester & Hereford slane in Sotland att the same time with Robert de Clifford, her Lord and Husband.
She had much land of in heritance in Ireland, being daughter to Maurice, Lord Justice of that nation, by Emilia Longspe, daughter of the Earle of Sarum, which Earle descended from Rosamond Clifford, as has bin said. She bare for her armes, Or, 3 cheveronells Gules.

[I.244]

{His & Her Death}
This Lord Robert de Clifford was slane att the great battle of Bannoxburne or Striveling in Scottland 24. of June 1314 bein Sunday (which was about the 7. or 8. of Edward 2.) aetates suiæ 40, and his dead body together with the body of Gilbert Earl of Glocester, his wives cosan German,[594] sent to King Edward 2. att Barwickt and were interred as is supposed, att the abby of Shap; but that place being demolished in Henry 8 dayes,we have noe monuments or certainty thereof.
The Lady Maud his wife out lived her husband & marryed agane about 4 yeres after to one Robert de Wells and dyed in the 1st of King Edward 3. one M thre C 20 & 7.[595]

& the Isue she had by Lord Robert de Clifford, were:
1. Roger de Clifford*, borne the 2nd of February 1292, who succeeded his father in his Lands and Honours \ being 6. High Sherive[596] / but was attainted of Treason 15 yere of King Edward 2. [1321-22], for adhereing to Thomas Earl of Lancaster; and was restored agane to his lands & Honours the 1 yere of King Edward the 3rd. but injoyed them not much above a mothe till he dyed unmarried \ and was buried as is supposed at Shap Abby / so that the Land & Honour descended and came to Robert de Clifford of whome in the next section.
2. Robert de Clifford of whome in the next section.
3. Idonea de Clifford, their onely daughter, who was married to Henry, Lord Piercy, and by him had Isue that Henry Lo[rd] Piercy who maryed Mary, daughter of He[n]ry Plataginet, Duke of Lancastre, and had Isue by her Henry Lord Piercy, first Earle of Northumberland, whose armes were quarterly 1. Or a lyon rampant Azure; 2. Gules 3 fishes Argent; the 3rd as the 2nd & 4. as the first: the first quarter whereof is the paternall Coate of the Piercyes: the 2. I take as to be Lucies, assumed by an heiress.

3rd Generation: Temp. Edward 1. Edward 2. Edward 3.
{His Descent, Honour, Acts & Armes}
Robert, 2 son of Robert by Maud de Clare
was heire to his brother, and so by consequence Lord of the Honour of Apleby &c. He was ~~Borne about the 1 of Edward 2.~~ Baron of Westmorland and the 7th hereditary Shireue of the same. And third Lord of this family of the Honour of Skipton. He was borne on Friday, being All Saints Day, mensis November, 1305, being the 33. of Edward I.[597] And was Lord of the Honour of Apleby &c. Anno 1[0] Edward 3. 1327. He had great addition to his estate, about 1333, which hapned by the death of his great aunt Idonea de Veteripont, whome, as wee have said, was 1st marryed to Roger de Labourne;

[594] First cousin.
[595] 1327.
[596] The MS here contains an indistinct interlineated number which appears to claim that Roger de Clifford was '6 High Sherive.' See Machell's List of High Sheriffs, VI.592.
[597] MS: 'He was ~~Borne about about the 1. of Edward 2.~~ Baron of Westmorland and the 7th hereditary Shireue of the same. And third Lord of this family of the Honour of Skipton. He was borne ~~about one yere of Ed. 2.~~ on Friday, being All Saints Day, mens November, 1305, being the 33. of Edward I.'

and after that to John de Cromwell; but dyed without Isue after she had survived her father about 70 yeres, by reason of which the estate of the Viponts formerly divided, now became entire, and has so continued to this very day, February 9, 1675.

[Machell's Notes: I.244]

*{In Catalogo Marescallorum Angliae occurrit Roger de Clifford anno 1^0 Ed. 2. pat parte 1 membrane 19: è MS in 4^0, penes Mr Sheldon sic notatum.[598]
He had some base children by a mean woman calld Julian of the Bower, for whome he built a little house hard by Whinfel and calld it after her, the ~~lower~~ foundation of which is still to be seen. He was a martial man & of bold courage; for being ingaged in war against King Edward 2^{nd}, he caused a pursuivant which came to serve a writt of him from the said King, to eat the wax of seale in the Barons chamber at Apleby Castle.
{Alibi autem in eodem libro scribitur Rex commisit Roberto Clifford officium marescali (falso ni fallor). 1^0 Ed. 2.}[599]

[I.245]

After the death of his aunt, he tooke possesion of all the castles of the Viponts, his ancestours: viz, of Apleby, Brough, Pendraggon and Browham, which wer all of them honoured with the presence and reception of Edward Balioli, King of Scotland, in 1333, who \ came to visit /stayd here some time and tooke his divertion \ by hunting / amongst the gentery of this county of Westm'land. {See Hollingshead, who cites Southwell for his coming into Westm'land.} One monument whereof doth to this day remane in Whinfell called the Hart Horne Tree \ where he hunted a stagg to death &c. / ~~where up~~ on some extraordinary occurance, the dogg & bucks head were both naled up, as elsewhere shall be said, and some of the Hornes is yett planely to be seen*.

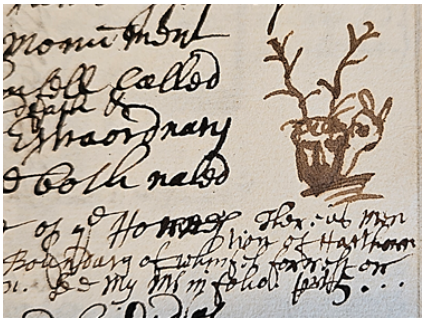


Figure 1.1.27. Margin sketch relating to animal heads hung on the Hart Horne Tree, Whinfell. I.245.

He livd for the most part a country life and builded (as is thought) some part of Skipton Castle in Craven. He accompanyed the Earle of Warwick and other Lords with an army into Scotland, which is all the relation I have mett with of him as to mertiall affaires. His armes were Clifford & Vipont quartered.

{<u>His Wife, her Honour, Welth, Acts and Armes</u>}†
Hee tooke to wife Isabella de Berkley, the onely daughter of Maurice, Lord Barkley, of Barkley Castle in the county of Glocester, and had for her portion (that you may se the moderation of those times, 1000^{li} & 50 marks, with a gowne of Cloth Brunoly {i.e. browne} scarlett & a furred cap with the best <u>minever</u>.[600] And for the Honour {?} of the said bride, her brother & sister & Lord Barkley and

[598] Here Machell has provided a symbol. 'In the Catalogue of the Marshalls of England occurs Roger de Clifford, in the 1st year of King Ed. 2., patents, part 1, membrane 19 – from a manuscript in a quarto in the possession of Mr Sheldon, marked thus.' For Ralf Sheldon, see above, I.231.
[599] 'Elsewhere, however, in the same book it is written that the king entrusted to Robert Clifford the office of Marshall, but wrongly, unless I am mistaken. First of Edward II.' [1307-08]
[600] Minever: a kind of fur, now always plain white, used especially as a lining and trimming for ceremonial costumes and formerly in the making of certain kinds of hat. *OED*.

his laydy were attired in the like apparel, & the bride sadle cost 5^{li} at London. And all the lands of Skipton, with a great part of his lands in Westmorland, were ~~settl~~ enfeofed upon for her life time, the greatest joynture that ever was made to any lady matched into this family. Her armes were checkey Azure & Gules a cheveron Azure.[601]

{His and her death}
He dyed the 20th of May, being Ascention Day, 18. Edward 3. 1344, æatis suæ 30 or there abouts & possesed his estate 17 yeres‡ \ and was buried as is supposed att Shap Abby. / She out lived her husband & marryed agane about 2 yeres after his decease to Sir Thomas Musgrave, Knight, whome she left surviveing, Monday 25. of July Anno Edward 3. 36. \ being St James Day 1362. /

And the Isue which Lord Robert de Clifford left by her were
1. Robert de Clifford⸸ born 18. of November 1330, and was marryed in his fathers life time att 13 yeres of aige to Euphaemia, one of the daughters of Ralph Nevill, Lord of Midlam Castle in Yorkeshire and sister to Ralph, the first of that family that was created Earl of Westm'land‖, whose armes were Gule a saltier Argent charged in fess with a crescent[602] Sable. But he dyed about the 32 yere of his aige in France as is supposed (for after 16 yeres of aige he spent most of his time in the wars there) and left no Isue by her. {She was his cosan German}[603] She afterwards marryed to Sir Walter Hazlerton, & dyed the 18. of Richard 2.[604]

[Machell's Notes: I.245]
*{Ther is mention of Harthorn Sike in a boundary of Whinfel Forrest or the Warren. See my MS in folio part 5.}[605]
†{Mr Smith Record of Lord Barklay family: MS pen ipse.}
‡{He was sheriff in the 20: by Mr Sheldon MS.}
⸸{8 Shireve Her[editary] He had 12^{li} 14^{s} 8^{d} ob of Christopher Seatons lands, given by King Edward for his laudable service. Dated at Lanercost 15. October Reg. 34.}[606]
‖{Se an evidence about this espousal MS X capt e cartis apud Skipton anno Edward 3. Franc 4^{0} L[ib] penes Mr Sheldon.}

[I.246]

{Her[editary] Shireve}[607]
2. Roger Clifford, of whome in the next §. & 9[th] sherieve by inheritance after the death of his brother, was borne 8. of King Edward 3. 1333. He was counted to be one of wisest and gallantest men of all the Cliffords of his race, keeping him selfe fre from troubles in those trublesome times of latter end of King Edward 3., of whome he obteined 2 weekly markets and 2 fares for Kirkby Stephan: 1 before he was Lord. He was often in the wars, both in France & Scotland, & in that remarkable sea voyace when the Earl of Arundell went with a great army to aid & assist the Duke of Britanny against the French king.

3. Thomas, writt in records Sir Thomas de Clifford, who was cotemporary with his brother Roger, Lord Clifford and Thomas, his son, to whome he made over those lands which he held of his brother in the Lordship of Brough, for terme o yeres April the 7 in the 6. yere of King Richard 2nd, and his seale was the Cliffords armes with a mullet charged upon the fess. And about it was this inscription: SIGILLUM: THOME DE CLIFORD, with 2 florishes like the granes of a tree from the top of the shield to the inner line of the utmost circumference. He marryed and from him descended Richard de Clifford, bishop of Worcester and London, with his 2 brothers, Robert & William, who were all his grandchildren. And from him allso by a lineall descent, George Clifford Esquire, who was of the

[601] MS: 'checkey azure & gules / ~~gules a fess betwee~~n a cheveron Azure.'
[602] Here, Machell has drawn a crescent shape.
[603] First cousin.
[604] 1394-95.
[605] Machell introduced the hart horn tree in his Introductory chapter, see 2.476.
[606] 1360.
[607] 9th hereditary sheriff.

Green Wax office in 1652,[608] son of the elder brother of Sir Nicol Clifford, whose sole daughter, Frances, was married to Sir Edward Ascough of Southley in Lincolnshire.

4. Generation {Temp: Edward 3. & Richard 2.}

{His Descent, Honour, Acts and Armes}

Roger de Clifford, 2nd son of Lord Robert de Clifford and Isabell de Barkley, was by decease of his brother, Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westmorland & 9 shierieve by inheritance; and Lord allso of the Honour of Skipton. He was borne in 8 of King Edward 3. 1333, and was accounted by persons of knowledge who \ have /redd concerneing him to be one of the wisest men of his time or family; a great evidence whereof [I] have, in his secureing himself from \ danger / distruction in those trublesome times of King Edward 3. about the latter end of the said kings reigne*. He was allso a person

[Machell's Notes I.246]

*{Learned Antiq.: I have seen a pardon to Roger de Clifford de Westmorland, 15. Richard 2. which begins thus: Rex Dei Gratia Omnibus Balivis &c. salute. Sciatis quod ob reverentiam Dei, & ad specialem requisitam Annæ Reginæ Angliae, & consideratione &c. Pardon. MS penes Mr Sheldon.}[609]

[I.247]

of much gallantry and valour, being often in the warrs both in France & Scottland, in particular in that remarkable sea voyage of the Earle of Arundell, when he transported a great army of soljers to aid and assist the Duke of Britany against the forces of the French king. He was publiq' spirited and a lover of building, for he tooke great care to repare his castles, the ancient seats of his noble progenitors*. His seale was in this manner, as here expressed. I have seen a larger with a bend, with 3 draggons, 1. a crest and 2. as sup[o] \r/t\ers./



Figure 1.1.28. Seal of Roger de Clifford. 1.247.

{His Wife, her Honour, Acts and Armes}

Hee tooke to wife, Matilda or Maud Beauchamp, daughter of Thomas Earle of Warwick by Katherine his wife, who was daughter to Roger Mortimer 1st Earle of March, whose father and mother lye buried in Warwick Church in a fare tombe. And this match of his, amongst other their children is expressed by the Coate impaled in a glass window there. His being as ab[ove].

{Her Armes}

And hers Gules, a fess between 6 cross crosslets Or.

---

[608] Green Wax Office: An estreat was a copy of a court record for use in the enforcement of a fine, or forfeiture of a recognisance. Estreats were delivered by the Sheriffs to the Exchequer under a seal made in green wax, to be levied in the counties: Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary*, GR.

[609] 'The King by Grace of God to all his Bailiffs etc. Greeting. Know ye that through reverence for God and at the special request of Anne Queen of England, after deliberation etc. Pardon. Evidence in the possession of Mr Sheldon.' [Anne, queen of England, was Anne of Bohemia (1366 – 1394), the first wife of Richard II.]

{Their Death}
He dyed the 13 day of July, anno 13. Richard 2. 1391, which was just 100 yeres after the death of his great grandmother, Isabel de Veteripont, ætatis suae 57, when he had been 28 yeres Lord of Westm'land and had seen a grandchild. He was buryed, as is thought, in Shap Abby. Matilda his wife dyed on Ash Wednesday 4. Henry 4. anno 1403, haveing lived his widow about 12 yeres.

{Their Isue}
And the Isue they left were
1. Thomas, of whome hereafter.
2. William de Clifford, who marryed Ann, one of the daughters and coheres of Thomas, Lord Bardelfe, whose armes were [blank]
He was [blank] and dyed the 6. yere of Henry 5th, and his office was sued out by John, Lord Clifford, Knight of the Garter, his brother son & heire att law, for he had noe Isue, neither his wife.
3. Margaret de Clifford, who was marryed to \ Sir / John Me\l/kon whose armes were [blank]

[Machell's Notes: I.247]
*{Mon[seigneur] Roger de Clifford, Seignur de Westm'land. Carta apud Skipton 2. Richard 2^0. Sciphtona in carta s.d. Karletun.}[610]

5. Generation
{Descent, Honour, Acts and Armes}
Thomas, son and heir of Roger de Clifford & Maud Beauchamp his wife, was borne in 1365. He was about 36 yeres old at the death of his father upon which he became Lord of the Honour of Alpleby, Baron of Westmorland and 10th hereditarie Shirieve of the same; and allso Lord of the Honour of Skipton. He was a great courtier & much in favour with Richard the 2nd. He was thrice summoned to Parliament and is frequently stiled in records and evidences – Thomas, Lord Clifford of Westmorland, and was certanely a valiant and brave man tho something extravagant. He went with Thomas of Woodstock, Duke of Glocester, into the country of Spruce in Germany,[611] against the infidells and barbarouse people, where he lost his life*.

[Machell's Notes: I.247]
*{Andrew Phebians *Theatre of Honour*.}[612]

[I.248]
His wife was \ Elizabeth / Ross* eldest daughter of Thomas Lord Ross of Hamlake Castle in Yorkeshire, the match being made by their parents when they were little children. He was not above 8 yeres of aige then, but it \ must / be supposed that the consummation was nott till 8 yeres after or thereabouts. Her armes are Gules 3 water budgetts Sable \ I have seen a sele with this quarter writ about: S. William de Ros de Hamlake; another without quarters: Thomae de Roos Domine de Hamlake.}

[610] 'Monseigneur Roger de Clifford, Overlord of Westmorland. Document at Skipton, 2nd year of Richard 2. [1378-79]. "Sciphtona", in an undated document at Karletun.'
[611] Prussia, also known as Pruysse, Pruys, Spruse, Spruys, see Tamarah Kohanski, C. David Benson (Eds) *The Book of John Mandeville* (Michigan, 2007), Indexed Glossary of proper names.
[612] André Fevine, *The theater of honour and knight-hood, or, A compendious chronicle and historie of the whole Christian world: containing the originall of all monarchies, kingdomes, and estates, with their emperours, kings, princes, and governours; …The first institution of armes, emblazons, kings, heralds, and pursuivants of armes* (Paris, 1620; London, 1623).



Figure 1.1.29. Clifford Arms. I.248.

{There Death}
He was slayne att Spruce in Germany the 4th of October, 1393: 15th yere of Richard the 2nd [1391-92], in which yere her father dyed allso, in the city of Paphos in the Isle of Cyprus, as he was returneing from the Holy Land†; D. fuit 2 yeres 9 months.[613] She outlived her husband about 31 yeres, remaneing a widow, and dyed upon the 26th of March, anno 2^0 Henry 6. 1424, 2 yeres after she had buried her son John, Lord Clifford.

They had Isue as follows:
1. John, of whom hereafter.
2. Maud, so named after her grandmother. She was marryed as second wife to Richard Plantaginet Earl of Cambridge, who bore the crowne armes within a bord[er] Argent charged with an orle of lyonsells rampant Gules. Which Richard was beheaded att Southampton, anno X? 3^0 Hen 2.[614] And left no Isue by her. But by his former wife, Anne Mortimer, he had Isue Richard Plantaginet Duke of Yorke, which Richard was father to King Edward the 4th. \ And Isabel maryed to Henry, Lord Bourchier E[arl]of Essex. / This Maud lived to a very great aige.

Generation 6 of the Cliffords
{His Descent, Honour, Acts & Arms}
John, son & heire of Thomas Lord Clifford by Elizabeth his wife, was borne in 1391[615] and was ward to the king when but 2 yeres of aige, by reason of the untimely death of Thomas his father; whence he became Lord of the Honour of Apleby &c., 11th hereditary Shireue of Westmorland and Lord of the Honour of Skipton. He was a great man and highly favoured (by reason of his valour and good experience in ma[r]tiall affares) of King Henry 5th by whome he was made Knight of the Most Noble Order of the Garter, and honour not hitherto conferd on any his ancestours; and was allso intrusted with great command in his warrs with France. For it appeares upon record that he was one of the first in that expedition; and was bound by Articles twixt the said king and him to carry over a number of men att armes in the same[616] Host: 13 knights, 47 esquires, 150 archers, the 3d of whome on foot & the

[613] 'Died. [he was there for] 2 years 9 months.' John Stow, *Chronicles of England*, 516.
[614] Richard Plantagenet, earl of Cambridge, was beheaded on 5 August 1415 for initiating the 'Southampton Plot' to dethrone Henry V. See G. Harriss, 'Richard [Richard of Conisbrough], earl of Cambridge (1385-1415). *ODNB*. Machell correctly assessed the date of the earl's death as during the 3rd year of the monarch, but appears to have written '2', not '5', although Machell's handwriting often appears confusing.
[615] MS: '13~~88~~ \ 91 /'.
[616] The following scored-through word is illegible.

rest on horse. {To my Lord was allowed 4s per day; to the knights 2s; to the squires 1; to the other 6d} {His seale; at the rec. is an oval sine roundel in it Clifford quart[ering] Vip[ont] quartering Ros: 1 and a helmet with 3 draggons: 1 as crest, 2 as supporters.}

[Machell's Notes: I.248]

*{His Wife: Ross, Ros or Roos}
†{Stow.}[617]

[I.249]

King Henry 5th att the coronation of his wife Queen Katherine, who was daughter to Charles the 6th of France, was pleased to honour him with the office of Butler att that solemnity*. Nor was he onely mindefull of public affaires abroade, but of private allso, in his owne houses, for this was hee who built the strong & artificall gatehouse att Apleby Castle, as hath bin said. And who allso repared his Castle att Craven. Tho he lived but 12 yeres (and most of them inploid in war) possesour of those his lands & honours.

{His Wife; Descent, Honour, Wealth & Armes}
This John Lord Clifford tooke to wife Elizabeth Piercy, onely daughter to Henry Lord Piercy sirnamed Hotspur, by Elizabeth Mortimer his wife; which Elizabeth Mortimer was daughter of Edmund Mortimer 3rd Earle of March of that family by Philippa Plantaginet, who was sole daughter & heire to Lyonell, Duke of Clarence. The armes of the Piercyes are quarterly the 1. Or a lyon rampant Azure, the 2. Gules 3 luces Argent &c.

John Lord Clifford was slane att the Siege of Meaux, in France, by the quarrell (or nutt) of a crossbow, the 10th day of March in the 10th & last yere of King Henry 5th being of the aige of 32 or thereabouts – Anno Domini 1422. His wife maryed agane about 4 yeres after his death, to Ralph Nevil, 2nd Earl of Westmorland, and had by him one son onely, which was John Lord Nevil who dyed before he came to be ~~Lord~~ \ Earle / of Westm'land, being slane att Towton Battle in Yorkshire.[618] She dyed 16. of October 1436 which was the 15. of Henry 6. and was buried att Stanthrop in the Bishoprick of Durham, near Raby Castle, where some of the Nevil Earles of Wesmerland doe lye interred.

{Their Isue}
The Isue which she had by John, Lord Clifford, were ut sequitur
1. Thomas de Clifford, de quo infra.
2. Henry, who dyed without Isue.
3. Mary, who was marryed to Sir Phillip Wentworth Knight, of whome is descended the Lord Wentworth, the Earle of Strafford and Earle of Cleveland.
The Wentworths Armes are [blank]

Generation 7 of the Cliffords
Thomas, son & heire of Thomas \ John / Lord Clifford, was borne on Monday next after the Feast of the Annuntiation, Anno 2. Henry 5. 1415. And when he was not much above 7 yeres old, through the death of his father who was slane, he became Lord of the Honour of Apleby & Skipton &c. and 12 hereditary shireve of Westm'land†. But was Ward 13 yeres

[Machell's Notes: I.249]

*{See Speed.}
†{Compare with the Roll of Sheriffs.}

[617] John Stow, *Chronicles of England,* 516: 'The same yeare (1394) Lorde T. de Ros, as he returned forth of the Holy Lande, in the Citie of Paphos in the Ile of Cipres, through intemperauncie of the ayre departed this life there.'
[618] The Battle of Towton (1461) formed a major turning point in the Wars of the Roses: the Yorkists decisively beat the Lancastrians but with enormous loss of life. See Stow's *Chronicles of England*, 747. See also, I.348, above.

[I.250]

by reason of his minority. It is evident by Holenshed & Stowe & other Chronicles and other records, that this Thomas Lord Clifford did brave service as a Chiefe Commander in the warrs of France att the Assault of Pointeres, where he & his men, being it was snow, to prevent discovory clothed themselves in whyte, & by that meanes surprised the towne \ in or / about the yere 1438, which he strongly defended in 1440, being the 18. Henry 6. against the assaults of the French king, who indeavoured to retake it.[619] He was allso an eminent commander in the civill warrs of that aige in England, with much courage and activeness tooke part with King Henry 6th against Richard Plantaginett, Duke of Yorke, in which warrs allso ~~thi~~ his yong son John was a leading man & commander for 2 or thre yere together dureing his fathers life, whereupon Thomas was called old Lord Clifford tho he was not \ above / fortye when ~~both~~ he ~~and his son~~ was slane. Neither was \ he / only busied in the warrs, but att home allso, for he toke great care of repareing his houses and in particular of Apleby Castle, his chief of mantion house, as has thence bene declared. His armes were [blank]

{His Wife}
He had to wife Johanna the daughter of Thomas Lord Dacre \ of Gilsland / by Philippa his wife; which Philippa was daughter [of] Ralph de Nevill, Earle of Westm'land by his first wife. The Article[s] of Marriage wer drawne the 1st day of August in the 2nd yere of King Henry 6. [1424], att which time they were both children; for this Thomas, Lord Clifford, could not bee above X yeres old when his mother concluded this marriage for him, which was after consummated. Her Armes were Gules 3 escallops Argent.

{Their Death}
She dyed it is certane before her husband, and as it is reported, but a little before he happened to be slane in the Battle of St Albanes in Hartfordshire where he dyed fighting on his sovoranes behalfe together with his \ uncle / Henry Piercy 2nd Earle of Northumberland, the 22 of May 1455*. And they were buried in the Abby church (with a great many other persons of quality) 48 in all; above 500 slane of King Henrys party, 600 of Yorke†, whose monuments were standing within remembrance. He lived 19 yeres possesor of his lands, and was slane in the 40th yere of his aige. And lef[t] Isue behinde him, 9 children: 4 sones & 5 daughter, viz.
1. John Clifford borne 8 April 13. Henry 6. 1435, de quo infra.
2. Roger who marryed [blank] sister & heir to one of Courtneys in the county of Devon, & whose armes were [blank] and had Isue: 1. Son butt within 2 or 3 descents the family.

[Machell's Notes: I.250]
*{~~Compare this with the death of John Lord Clifford. They cannot both be true; se the next generation.~~}
†Speed, Henry 6: 63-64.[620]

[I.251]

The family was extinct in daughters and heires.
3. Robert who maryed one of the Barkleys, who was then widow to one Alderman Joscielin of the City of London, by whome he had Isue, and from them did lineally descend George Clifford of Lincolneshire, who maryed Ursula Digby. He dyed in in one thousand \ forsan 400 / 600, 30, 9*, lieveing behinde a daughter and heir who[se] name was Ursula. This Robert was he that had his hands soe deep in Henry 7ths time in the business concerning Perken Warbeck.[621]

[619] This was the town of Pontoise which changed hands several times during the Hundred Years' War. Because the winter of 1436-37 was very frosty, on 14 February 1437, the English were able to retake the town when a company of them 'camouflaged themselves in white bed-sheets so that they could creep across the outlying snow and frozen town moats without being seen. Others disguised themselves as peasants coming up to market.' The English finally lost Pontoise during a later siege (1442). See Juliet Barker, *Conquest: The English Kingdom of France 1417-50* (Cambridge Mass., 2012), Chapters 17 & 19.
[620] See Speed, *History of Great Britaine*, 667.
[621] Perkin Warbeck was a pretender to the English throne (he claimed to be Richard of York, one of the two 'princes in the tower'). He was hanged on 23 November 1499. See Rachel Goble, 'The Execution of Perkin Warbeck', *History Today*, vol. 49, 11 (November, 1999).

4. Thomas who was a brave man; he dyed {circa 1496}[622] an olde man in Henry the 7ths reigne, beareing many offices, but dyed without Isue.
5. Elizabeth who was their eldest daughter and in deed their first childe. She was twice married ~~before 12 yeres old~~ 1. To one Plompton in Skipton Castle when she was but 6 or 7 yeres old, and his armes were [blank]. But he dying before she was 12 yeres of aige, she was marryed to his second brother, by a dispensation from the \ Pope / which was dated in the time of King Henry the 7th & still to bee seen in Skipton Castle. Neither may this seem a strange thing in those times of popery in which it was usuall to grant dispensations for greater offences.
6. Maud the second daughter, who was maryed to Sir Thomas Harrington, knight, whose armes are [blank], and, after his death, to Sir Edward Dudley, knight, to both which husbands she ~~brought forth~~ \ had / Isue.
7. Ann the third daughter, who was marryed first to Sir Richard Tempest Knight, whose armes [blank]. And after that to Sir Richard Conyers Knight, whose armes were [blank]. and she had Isue to both these husbands.
8. Johan the 4th daughter, was maryed to Richard Musgrave of Hartley Castle in this County, whose armes and pedigree you may see [blank]. And hence is descended Sir Phillip Musgrave of the same place, liveing now.
9. Margaret the daughter who was marryed to [blank] Carre of Lincolnshire, whence the Carres now there are descended, who bear for their armes [blank].

[Machell's Notes: I.251]

*{Query: If this be not the same of whom is mention in Speed VII. (~~Noe, he lived in 1496.~~) Henry 8.35 [1543-44].}

[First and Second Battles of St Albans]

[I.252B]

It was in the 1st batle of St Albans {that} the Earle of Northumberland and Lord Clifford were killd, the king shot into the neck with an arrow, about 5000 of his men put to sword, of which 48 were buryed in St Albans. This hapend in the latter end of May 1454:[623] Henry 6 §63, 64, sc. 22, vide supra.[624]
In 1458 Regni 36. the king was met by his great Lords at London to contrive a settlement & peace in the nation*. But they brought amongst them great store of followers: The Earl of Salisbury, 500; Earle of Warwick, 600; the Duke of Excester & Sommerset, 800; the Earle of Northumberland, the Lords Egremond & Clifford, 15000. This was the fashion of that swording aige. {§68} This Lord Clifford was son to the former slain at St Albans. And was one of the chiefe leaders of the Queens army (the King being then prisoner) {Decem. 1460 the last, Reg. 39.} together with Lord Nevil & Lord Rosse and in effect all the northern nobility. At Wakefield batle where the Duke \ of Yorke / amongst many nobles was slain with his young son, the Earle of Rutland, who fell in flight by the hands of Lord

[Machell's Notes: I.252B]

*{Somthing of this parliament in a pamphlet for which manifactur penes Mr Mil vel}[625]

[I.252A]

Clifford, in part of revenge, for the Earles father had slain his. A deed which worthily blemished the author; but who can promise anything temperate of himselfe in the heat of ~~war~~ marshal fury? Chiefly where twas resolved not to leave any branch of York line standing, for So One Maketh This Lord to Speak. §39*.
The second batle of St Albans in which Henry appeard against & was overthrown by the Queene happnd on Shrove Tuesday, the 17. of February, 1461. Reg. 39. But Edward, Earle of Marsh, son & heire to the Duke of Yorke, obteining at a batle at Mortimer Cross on Candlemas Day, eadem anno, haisted to London, & by favour of the citizens, was crowned King (Edward IIII). 4^0 natis ætat 20th.

[622] 1496 = 11/12 Henry VII.
[623] 22 May 1455.
[624] 'See above.'
[625] The last word is obscured by the binding.

And on the 12 of March sett out for the north to fight against Henry whom he had depos[ed] & whose army was led by the Duke of Sommersett, Earle of North[umberland] and the Lord Clifford, whose fathers were slain in the 1st batle of St Albans. Edward IIII – §4 & 5. 8vi.: Clifford character. He was slain with an hedless arrow which pieced his throat – §6 – on Palm Sunday Eve, March 28. & on the 29. the batle was ended in a plain field twixt Towton & Saxton {With the loss on both sides of 35001 lives – §7. 8. 9. – & King Henry vanquished. Lord Clifford was slain betwixt Castleford & Ferrybriggs.}[626]

[Machell's Notes: I.252A]

**Graftons Chron.*[627]

[I.252]

Generation 8 of the Cliffords

John son & heire of Thomas Lord Clifford by Johanna the daughter of Thomas Lord Daker, was borne as is sayd on the 8th of Aprill in the 13 yere of Henry 6. annoque domini 1435;[628] and being att the death of his father 20 yeres & 23 wekes, he became warde to the king for halfe a yere & 3 weekes*; and was heire to his father of his lands & honours, being Lord of the Honour of Apleby &c. and 13 hereditary Shireue of Westmorland.

He was a commander in the civ~~a~~i/l warrs dureing his minority, on the side and in the behalf of King Henry 6. \ 9 yeres in his fathers lifetime / and so he continued only 5 yeres, 8 months and 7 dayes in possession of his \ paternal / estate. Most of the time was imployed in the ~~good service~~ warrs which were then very hott between the House of Yorke & Lancaster, in which indeed he did kill Edmund Plantaginett, Earle of Rutland \ in the Battle of Sandall Castle near unto Wakefield,[629] / but he was no child as some writer would have him, but able to beare armes, being 16 or 17 yeres of aige. And this John, Lord Clifford, was not much more when he 1st commanded: on the contrary part \ and thought himself able to incounter any man. / And that he was arrived to that maturity is evident from this: that he was next child \ that his mother had by Richard, Duke of Yorke / to King Edward 4. And that King was then 18 yeres of aige. And for the sma~~le~~ distance betwixt her children, se Austin Vincent in his *Booke of Nobillity* (pag. 622),[630] where he writes of them all being 12 in number. He was att the 2nd Battle of St Albans, where King Henry 6. was brought into his tent \ 17 of February / and mett his wife there, with his sonne Prince Edward, to his exceeding great joy†. But it lasted not long for on the 8 or 9 & twentieth of March following, 1461.[631] being Palm Sunday and the eve thereof, was the great battle fought (between Towton & Saxton in Yorkshire) where the Kings party was quite overthrowne and this Lord John slane thereat (near Ferrybriggs & Castleton \ twixt Ferrybriggs & Castleford[632] / by the River Aire) where he was fyereing[633] a passage and (haveing putt of his gorgett[634] a little before, either through pane or heat) he was shott into the throat with a headless arrow.[635] And it is remarkable

[626] Another reference to great losses at the Battle of Towton, see I.348, above.
[627] Richard Grafton (c. 1511-1573): *Grafton's Chronicle: or, History of England; To Which is Added His Table of the Bailiffs, Sherrifs, and Mayors, of the City of London, From the Year 1189 to 1558, Inclusive* (1563). Nicolson and Burn devoted part of one page to Grafton's account of the killing: *N&BI*, 284.
[628] 'And in the year of the Lord 1435.'
[629] Sandal Castle: site of the battle of Wakefield, 30 December 1460.
[630] Augustine Vincent (c.1584-1626), *A discoverie of errours in the first edition of the Catalogue of Nobility published by Raphe Brooke, York Herald, from 1619 untill this present yeare, 1622: at the end whereof, is annexed a review of a later edition, by him stolne into the world, 1621* (London, 1622). Much of Machell's commentary on the Cliffords, including this note on Augustine Vincent, was copied by Nicolson and Burn (*N&BI*, 284), after which it found its way into many other publications, including notes by William Wordsworth in *The Poetical Works of William Wordsworth Vol. 2* (New York, 1859 edn); for example, see 'Song at the Feast of Brougham Castle', 402-03.
[631] MS: '~~anno 1441 forsan~~ 1461'.
[632] Nicolson and Burn chose the latter, see *N&BI*, 284.
[633] Fyering: making a large fire to serve as a beacon or signal. *OED*.
[634] Gorget: a piece of armour for the throat. *OED*.
[635] Yet another reference to the atrocities of the Battle of Towton, see I.348, I.252A.

that he, his father, grandfather and great grandfather all dyed in the wars, the 2 former beyond the seas and 2 latter at home. His armes were [blank].

And his wife was Margarett Bromflett, by birth Baroness Vessy‡, and the first who brought that title to the Cliffords, which ~~they~~ \ is /now enjoyed by Lady Ann Clifford, Baroness Vessy her direct ancestor. She was daughter & sole heire to Henry Bromflett by Elionor, daughter of Lord Henry Fitz Hugh. Her paternall coate was this: In a shield or, a plane cross Sable. {Apud cartam Will. filij Domini Eustachij de Vescy, Anno R[egni] R[egis] H[enrici] filij Johannes 24^0.}[636]

[Machell's Notes: I.252]

*{He lived 6 years after his father so that the relation of the death here of [blank] must belong to his father.}
†{Speed (Henry VI. 6.4) says [he][637] was slain at St Albans in 1454 towards the end of May. De hoc q. with Henry being Earl of Northumberland this must be his father; for he was but 20 years of Aige then.[638]
‡{The sirname, de Veci, is ancient for Robert 9. de Veci. Ten in Northamptonshire: *Domesdaie Booke.*}

[I.253]

And her father was created Baron of Vessy by King Henry 6. in the 27 yere of his reigne [1448-1449], or rather indeed restored thereunto, for he had title thereunto by right of his mother Margaret, daughter & co-heire[639] of Sir Edward St John, who maried Anastace, one of the daughters & coheires of William Aston, knight, which William was son of Gilbert who was cosan and heir of William Lord Vessy of Alnwick.

{Her Arms} Her paternall coate was this: In a shield or, a plane cross Sable.
{Apud cartam Will. filij Domini Eustachij de Vescy, Anno R[egni] R[egis] H[enrici] filij Johannes 24^0.}[640] {Anno autem ejusdem Regis 32^0 occurit sigillum, cujus diam \ etrum / linea marginalis ostendit; cui hic cricumscriptione in circulo.}[641] Sc.

+ SIGILLUM WILELMI DE WESCY, and the reverse, SECRETE + SIGILLI}



Figure 1.1.30. Reverse of Seal: 'This Seale is of Red wax'. I.253.

[636] [I.252-53]. 'In a document of William, son of Lord Eustace of Vescy. In the 24th year of the reign of King Henry, son of John.'
[637] An editorian substitution for an illegible word.
[638] In the MS, these notes have been scored through.
[639] MS: 'choh.'
[640] 'In a document of William, son of Lord Eustace of Vescy. In the 24th year of the reign of King Henry, son of John.'
[641] 'Moreover, in the 32nd year of the same king a seal is found, the diameter of which is shown by a marginal line; here is an inscription written around in a circle viz. Seal of William de Wescy, and the reverse of a private seal. This seal is of red wax.'

{Antecessoris Domini Henrici Domini Vescy fundatores fuere prioratus de Ferrybie. Haec omnia e MS Sheldon sic not[atum] in folio. Cat pt. è saculo coriareo inquisit[ionum] apud Skipton Castrum in com. York. Super clypeum autem sic notatur.}[642]

{Theire Death}
She outlived her husband, John Lord Clifford, 32 yeres, for he was slane ~~the 22 of May 1455 in~~ \ 28 of March 1461 – Palme Sunday – upon the battle / Towton Battle;[643] and she marryed afterwards to Sir Lancelott Threlkeld, whose armes were Gules a maunch Argent*. By which Sir Lancelott she had severall children, and one of their daughters, whose name was Ann, was marryed in this County of Westm'land to Sir John Lowther of Lowther Hall†, whence this Sir John Lowther now liveing is sprung. Sir Lancelot proved a very kind husband during her life, and helped to conceale her two former children which she had by Lord Clifford from the rage and fury of King Edward 4th and the House of Yorke, to which their father, her former husband and grandfather also had bin very active and mortall enemyes. And this Lady Vessy dyed in Yorkshire att her owne house of Lonsbrough 12 day of April 1493, whose monument the[re] remane to this day in that church. And her husband Lord Clifford was buryed also in the same \ County / tho in different manner; for the which Henry Piercy Earle of Northumberland his Cosan German, and many other Knights & Gentlemen of qualitye to the number of 4 or 5000 persons were interred in a pitt by the river Ayre,[644] near to the place where the battle was fought \ slane in all on both sides 35001 / where a chaple (now quite decayed) was built, and did some time remane their monument.[645]

The Isue which John, Lord Clifford, had with Margaret his wife were as followeth:
1. Henry, who was borne in the yere of Our Lord 1454, of whom infra.
2. Richard, who together with his brother Henry was concealed by his mother during her widowhood, and after her remarriage. But for the more security she thought fit to convey him over the seas, where dyed young in the Low Countryes without any Isue.
3. Elizabeth their sister, who was marryed to Sir Robert Aske, whose armes were: Azure, 4 […] in fess Ag., and from them are descended the now Askes of Yorkshire, & Lord Fairfax of Denton in the same County.

[Machell's Notes: I.253]

*And I have see a seale with a curtalled manch charged with annulets as here followeth.



Figure 1.1.31. 'Seale of Sir William de Threlkeld' c.1341-42. I.253.

[642] 'The ancestors of Lord Henry Lord Vescy were founders of the the priory of Ferriby. All this from the manuscript of Sheldon, marked thus [here there is a symbol] in the folio. In a part of a catalogue [?] from a leather bag of Inquisitions at Skipton Castle in the county of York.' There follows a sketch of two shields; one has a mark above it, as Machell has shown. For Ralf Sheldon (1623-84), see above, I.231.
[643] The battle of Towton was fought on 29 March 1461. See references above, especially I.348.
[644] MS: 'to the number \ ~~above 5000, Speed, 600 Yorkists 48 buryed in St Chan~~ / of 4 or 5000 persons were interred in a pitt by the river Ayre.'
[645] The presence of over 100,000 men and c.28,000 deaths makes Towton the largest and bloodiest battle ever fought in England. See https://content.historicengland.org.uk/content/docs/battlefields/towton.pdf.

{This was a seale of Sir William de Threlkeld, who sold burgages to Sir Robert de Clifford, Lord of Westmorland, in Apleby, 15. of King Edward 3.}[646]
†Tis Hugh in Lowther ped[igree] which should be An[n] there, but her name is other.

Generation 9 of the Cliffords

Henry, son & heire of John Lord Clifford and Margaret his wife was born as is said in the yere of Our Lord, 1454, and was 7 yeres old or thereabouts at the death of his father. But was deprived [I.254] lands honoured during the space of 24 yeres, from the 1st yere of Edward the 4th to the 1st \ or 2nd / of Henry the 7. which was 2 Kings reignes; att which time he lived as a shepherd in Yorkshire and Cumberland sometimes about [blank] {Melmerby forsan} and some time upon Thrillcot, his father-in-laws estate, and some times upon the borders of Scottland. For all this while he with the rest of his posterity (if he should have any) were attainted of treason* by Act of Parliament; and not onely so but in danger of death or att least imprisonment if he had bin taken, which was the reason of his obscure retirement. But when Henry 7. obteined his ~~was restored to the~~ crowne, the good services of his ancestours were called to remembrance, and he was restored by Act of Parliament to his blood & honour, with all his Baronyes, Castles &c.†

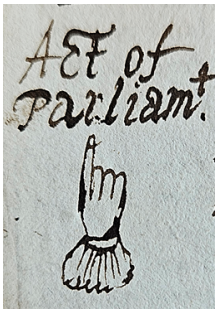


Figure 1.1.32. Example of Machell's frequent use of a pointing hand as a nota bene. I.254.

Which Act of Parliament {Anno 2^0 Hen. 7. 1486} was the principle ground of the Lady Ann Cliffords title to the same, in those sutes her good mother was pleased to manage in her behalf against her uncle \ Frances / Lord Clifford Earle of Cumberland, which lands of inheritance she now doth injoy.
And henceforward (anno 1486) he became Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westm'land and the 14th hereditary Shireue of the same; Lord also of the Honour of Skipton, and Baron of Vessy. Til ~~after~~ which time he was not able to write ~~any thing att all~~. But after he came to his Lands & Honours, he learned to write his name, & that was all. Howbeit, he delighted much in astronomie & contemplation of the course of the stars, which he was somewhat inured to by his shepherds life; and builded very much of Bardon Tower in Yorkeshire where he had a repository of mathematicall instruments for the practise of astronomie; the specalitie of which we cannot suppose him to be master of by reason of his obscure & illiterate education.[647] But tho his residence was here for the most part, yet he tooke care also of the repares of his other castles mightily decayed for want of inhabitants during his retirement & disinheritance. He was about 1 & 30 yeres old when he came to estate, which

[646] [1341-1342] For the Threlkeld arms see *CFH*, 338-39.
[647] Henry Summerson provides a more measured narrative: '… there is no evidence, later stories to the contrary notwithstanding, that the seven-year-old Henry Clifford was ever pursued by vengeful Yorkists, and the legend of the Shepherd Lord first recounted by Edward Hall in the mid-sixteenth century—telling of the young fugitive brought up among remote sheepfolds, so that he never learned to read, while his younger brother Richard was smuggled overseas, where he died—hardly stands up to scrutiny. Henry Clifford was later to be not just literate but even bookish, owning volumes on law and medicine, and developing a taste for astronomy and alchemy, while his brother is recorded in England as late as 1499. It may be that the Clifford heir thought it prudent to keep a low profile, but the fact that in 1466 Henry Harlington of Craven could bequeath him a sword and a silver bowl suggests that even then he stood in no perceptible danger … on 16 March 1472 Edward IV granted him a formal pardon.' H. Summerson, 'Clifford, Henry, tenth Baron Clifford (1454-1523)'. *ODNB*.

he injoyed about 37 yeres. And by reason of his mother being an heiress there came by an acession of the Bromfletts to his owne coate so that he bore [blank]

{His Wives}
He was twice marryed: 1. to Ann, daughter of Sir John St John of Blestotso, which wife of his was Cosan Germane by the halfe blood to King Henry 7th, for her father was \ halfe / brother to Margaret, Countess of Richmond and Darby, who was mother to the said King Henry, upon which account \ partly / tis thought his lands and Honours

[Machell's Notes: I.254]
*{1. Edward IIII in November 1461 whereby King Henry Quene Margaret & Prince Edward their son. The Dukes of Exester and Sommersett, & the Earle of Devonshire with 140 more were disherited and attainted.} †He was called to Parlament as a Pere of the Relme in which tis said that he behaved himself nobly and wisely and like a good English man. But otherwise he came seldom at London or Court.}

[I.255]
were restored. She was a piouse and devout woman, and lived for the most part a country life, which is very commendable in persons of Quality; and departed this life the 21. yere of Henry 7.[648] and was buryed in Skipton Church vault, havein bin his wife 21 yeres, and mother of severall children by him, of whome hereafter.[649]

{Her Armes} Her paternal coate was Argent a chief sudented Gules, charged with 2 mullets Or.

{His 2nd wife; Her Arms}
He was marryed the 2nd time to Mrs Florrence Pudsey, whose armes wer Vert a chevron between 3 mullets Or. And she also had severall children by him but outlived him and marryed afterwards Richard Grey, one of the young sons of Thomas, the 1st Lord Marquiss of Dorset, which was of that family, whome she outlived also haveing no Isue by him; and dyed very old in Leicestershire amongst her friends in Queen Elizabeths time and was buryed amongst her ancestours there.
And her former husband, who was Henry Lord Clifford of Westmorland, dyed the 20th of Aprill the 15 yere of Henry 8. 1523, ætatis suae 70. And was either buryed at the Abby of Shap in Westm'land or the Abby of Bolton, which is in Craven in the county of Yorke; for that he desired in his last Will and Testament, but in which place he was layd is not certanely knowne. The Isue which he had ~~was as followeth~~ by his 2 wives besides those by lowes,[650] in her former wives life time,[651] which were a great grief to her, were as followeth, viz.

{His Isue; 1493}[652]
By his 1st wife Ann St John
1. Henry, borne 1593,[653] who livd to injoy his fathers Estate and Honour, of whome hereafter.
2. Thomas (who is writ Sir Thomas), who marryed one Lucie, who was the daughter of Sir Anthony Browne, knight, whose armes were [blank]. But he & she both dyed without Isue. He had many places as of Trust conferrd upon him by King Henry 8. and was the governour of Barwick castle.
3. Mabill, the eldest daughter, who was marryed to William Fits William, Earle of Southampton, whose armes were [blank], by whome he had 2 sonns who livd to be men but dyed without Isue; and Antony Browne, his mothers halfe brother by the mothers side \ became / his heires, who was father to the 1st Vicount Montacute. And this William & Mable were the reparers of that part of the House of Cowdry in Sussex, where there armes are placed.

---

[648] 1506.
[649] MS following: '~~The 2nd time he was marryed to Mrs Florence Pudsey, by whome he had 2 or 3 sons who dyed very young, and one daughter also, whose name was Dorathie, & she was marryed to Sir Hugh Lowther of Lowther~~.'
[650] 'Lowes': perhaps 'lovers', derived from 'A burning or passionate feeling, esp. of love.', e.g. in 1603: "The raging low, the feirce and flaming fyre That dois my breist and body al combure". See 'Lowe'. *OED*.
[651] His former wife's lifetime? His former wives' lifetimes?
[652] '1493' is written in pencil in another hand.
[653] But see below: 'Generation 10 of the Cliffords'.

[I.256]

4. Elianore, who was maryed to [blank] Markenfield.
5. Ann, who was marryed to Robert Medcalfe, from whome the family of the Medcalfes still in being, have descended.
6. Johan, who was marryed to Sir Ralph Bowes, whence the Boweses in Yorkshire.
7. Margaret, marryed to Cudberd, and heire of Sir Edward Ratclif of Conington in Northumberland {They had Derwent Water setled upon the marriage, & her portion was 500li.}

And by Florrence, his 2nd wife he had
1. Two or three sonns, who all of them dyed whilst they were very young.
2. Dorathie, who was marryed to Sir Hugh Lowther of Lowther in Westmorland, whose father Sir Hugh was he who marryed Ann Threlkeld, daughter to Sir Lancelott Threlkeld, by the Lady Vescy, Lord Cliffords widow, so that this Dorathy & her husband were Cosan Germans by the halfe blood. The Lowthers Arme may be elsewhere*.

Generation 10th of the Cliffords

Henry, son and heire of Henry Lord Clifford of Westm'land and Ann St John his wife, was borne in 1593†, being about 30 yeres of aige when his father dyed, so that he was immediately thereupon possesed of his father lands & Honour, being Lord of the Honour of Apleby, Baron of Westm'land & 15th hereditary Shireve of the same; Lord allso of the Honour of Skipton & Baron Vescy, to all which titles and honours was superadded the Earledome of Cumberland & Order of the Garter. For about 2 years and 3 mo[n]ths after his fathers death he was created Earle of Cumberland by King Henry 8. in the pallace of Bridwell, London, June 18 1525, regni ejus 17^0. And Knight of the Garter in the 28 or 29 yere of the said kings reigne, being the 2nd of this family of the Cliffords that obteined that great honour. He was allso made by the same king (for there was a great amity betwixt them, both by reason of their affinity in blood being \ ½ / Cosans Germans once removed{?} & allso by reason of their education being brought up tog[eth]er when the said king was Duke of Yorke) the Lord President of North parts of England, & many times Lord Warden of the Marshes (Sir Thomas Wharton being his deputy and Hugh Machell of Crakenthorpe Esquire an assistant to him, by vertue of a speciall order under the said kings seales and signe manually) And he was imployed in all the armyes

[Machell's Notes: I.256]

*See my ped[egree] MS. It calls him onely Esquire son of Sir John, son of Hugh Lowther, so that Hugh was his grandfather but neither called Knight nor Esquire.
†{Henry 1, Earle of Cumberland. That is the 36. of Elizabeth [1593-1594]: this is impossible – it sure must be 1497 \ 1493 /?}[654]

[I.257]

sent into Scotland in the said Kings reigne, and evidently behaved him selfe noblely and valiantly. But the greatest instance of that Kings favour towards him was the willingness he expressed to have his niece marryed, who was Elionor Branden youngest daughter of his \ youngest / sister the Duchess of Suffolk, to the eldest son of this Henry Lord Clifford. And against their comeing into the north after the accomplishment of the marriage he causd the great \ gallery att / Castle of Skipton & the 8 Square Tower att the end thereof to [be] built from the ground in 3 moneths space, with a passage into the Castle through the Great Gallery for the more magnificent & commodious reception of his son and daughter-in-law. Which still remanes but the Castle was demolished in the Civill Warrs, anno Dom 1649, in the moneth of December, & in January following. He was one of the most eminent Lords in his time for nobleness, gallantry & courtship, through which he wasted some of his estate, and he bore for his armes [blank]

[654] This is more correct, as Henry Clifford lived from c.1493 to 1542: see R. Hoyle, 'Clifford, Henry, first earl of Cumberland'. *ODNB*. [Machell must surely be forgiven the errors to which we are all prone when copying from old documents.]

{His wives}
{1. Wife}
He was twice marryed, first of all with Margaret Talbott, who was eldest daughter of George, Earle of Shrowesbury, the 4th of that family; whose armes were [blank]. But she dyed very young, within 2 or 3 yeares after their marriage, and left no Isue.
{2. Wife}
His 2nd wife was Margarett Piercy 1st childe and onely daughter of Henry Piercy 5th Earle of Northumberland whose armes were the same with those of her ancestours mentioned before. She had for her portion all those lands in Craven which are called Piercyes foe. Her mother was Katherine daughter and one of the coheires of Robert Spencer Knight by Elianore his wife; which Elianore was daughter & Tenth coheire to Edmond Beuford Duke of Sommersett, so that this Margaret Piercy his wife was lineally descended from John of Gaunt Duke of Lancastre & consequently from King Edward 3.

{Their Death}
She dyed 2 yeres after her husband, for he departed this life att Skipton Castle the 2 & 20th of Aprill 1542, in the 34. yere of King Henry 8. And the yere of his aige 49, haveing bin possesor of his lands of inheritance \ about / 19 yeres; and was buried amongst some of his ancestours in Cliffords vault there. And Margaret, his wife, dyed allso att Skipton as it is supposed \ in / 1544, haveing lived for the most part a country life tho without her husband and was buryed by him in the same va\u/lt.

The Isue which they had were ut sequitur:
1. Henry Clifford \ Knight / natus in anno 1517 de quo infra*.
2. Ingeram, who toke to wife Ann, the daughter & sole heire of Sir Henry Ratclif Knight, whose armes were Argent a bend ingraled Sable, & had Isue 2 daughters only who dyed in their youth so that his nephew George Earle of Cumberland became his heire.
3. Katherine their eldest daughter who was 1. Married to John, Lord Scroope of Bolton Castle in the County of Yorke, whose armes were Azure a bend Or, by whome she had Isue. 2. To Sir Richard Cholmeley

[Machell's Notes: I.257]

*{He is called Sir Henry Clifford K., & Henry Clifford Kt in several leases & grants of his before his father was made Earle: Sc. II. Henry 8. 13. of Henry 8. in Bawtry Box at Skipton.}

[I.258]

whose armes were [blank]. And by him she had issue allso: Sir Hugh Cholmeley and Sir Henry his brother who were both liveing in 1652 being in the 3d descent from this Lady Katherine.
4. The Lady Maud their 2nd daughter who was marryed to Sir John Conyers eldest son to Lord Conyers of Hornby Castle in the county of Yorke. And his armes were Azure a manch Or, with a file of 3 lambeauxes by reason of his fathers being liveing. And by this Sir John Conyers she had diverse children.
5. The Lady Elizabeth who was marryed to Sir Christopher Medcalfe of [blank] Knight (whose armes were Argent, 3 calves passant Sable) and by him she had Isue diverse children from whome the now Medcalfes, & \ severall / other families of note are descended.
6. The Lady Jane who was marryed to Sir John Hudleston of [blank] Knight (whose armes were [blank]), and by him &c.

Generation XI of the Cliffords {Henry 2 Earle of Cumberland}
Henry Lord Clifford son & heire to Henry Earle of Cumberland by Margaret Piercy his wife was borne in the year 1570* six years afore the death of his grandfather the Shepherd & Astrologer, who is said to have foretold that his name should be extinct in.[655]
He was made Knight of the Bath at the Coronation of Queen Ann of Bullen in one thousand 533, ætatis suae 16. And when he was about 5 & 20, by the death of his father he became possessor of his Lands & Honours being 2nd Earle of Cumberland &c., and the 15th hereditary shireue & Baron of Westmorland. Before he began to retire himselfe and take delight in a countorye life he wasted some

[655] After the full-stop, the line is blank.

part of his ancient estates, and amongst other places sold that remarkable mannour of Temedbury, formerly mentioned, which was given in Henry 3rds times by Walter, Lord Clifford the 2nd Lord Clifford of Clifford Castle and Agnes de Condy his wife to their youngest son Roger de Clifford & Sibilla his wife, and so from them to Roger de Clifford their only son who marryed with Vipont and was the first of the Cliffords of Westmorland; so that from that time to this it had continued in theire name and Isue male for the space of 326 years. He was so far spent in a consumption after he had passed the 30th yere of his aige, that he was \ once / given over for a dead man, but by chafeing and cordials brought to life agane;[656]

[Machell's Notes: I.258]

*{This cannot be tem Eliz; he could not be borne & dye in the same yere.}
{1517}[657]

[I.259]

and in his weekness he was nourished for a moneth together by the milke \ which / he sucked from a womans breast; & 3 or 4 months after with asses milek, which before the yere was over restored him to his former health so that he became a strong able man for many yeres after. He was much adicted to the practise of alkimy & there is a place in the great tower att Broham in the top thereof which I suppose has bin a laboratority and in all probabilty made by him; he was a lover of bookes & learneing & had a fine collection both of manuscripts and other choyce books which was the only thing that reclamed him in his later days, and made him delight in liveing at home.

As his father was, so was he allso 2 times maryed:
1. To the Lady Elianore Brandon her Grace as has bin hinted; which Lady Elianore was yongest daughter to Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolke, by his wife Mary who was the French Queen; which marryage was solemnised in 1537, he being then about 19 yeres old and his father living*.
This Lady Margarett† bore for her armes barry of Argent and Gules, a lyon rampand Or, with a crowne florre upon his hed, per pale of the field. And by her he had Isue (but not to inherit) of whome hereafter.
2. He was marryed, after his miracolous recovery, to the Lady Ann who was yongest daughter of William Lord Dacre of Gilsland and Grastock both in Cumberland: and her mother was the Lady Elizabeth Talbot daughter to George 4th Earle of Shrewsburye. And they were marryed in Kirkouswold Castle (which florished then) about the latter end of King Edward 6. 1552. Her armes were Gules, 3 escallops Argent, and she allso had Isue by her husband, some whereof came to inherit.

{Dyed}
She out lived her husband, for he dyed att Browham Castle in Westmorland in the yere 1570, January 8, being about the aige of 53 yeres and was buried in the vault of Skipton in Craven with his \ 1st / wife & Ancestours. And she dyed att Skipton 11 yeres after, 1581, ætatis suæ 48. & was buried by her husband, leving this note of good huswife behinde her; that she never came att London in all her life time but imployed her selfe wholy with domestiq affaires; and from that I thinke the word House wife comes.

The Isue which Henry 2nd Earle of Cumberland and Baron of Westmorland & Vescy had by his wives were as followeth.

By his 1st wife[658]
1. Severall sonns who all dyed in their infancy.
2. The Lady Margaret, borne in Browham Castle 1540, who was maryed to Henry Stanley Lord Strange in the Chaple of Whitehall, King Phillip & Queen Mary both being present 7^{0} February 1555 ætatis suæ 15; which Henry was afterwards Earle of Darby and Knight of the Most Noble Order of the Garter, & had Isue by her:

[656] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[657] '1517' has been written in another hand: The 2nd earl of Cumberland lived from 1517 to 1570.
[658] MS: '… 1st wife ~~the Lady Margaret~~'.

[Machell's Notes: I.259]

*{This highborn princess was grandchild to King Henry 7. nece to King Henry 8. Cosan German to Edward 6., Queen Mary & Queen Elizabeth, & to James the 5th, king of Scotland, & cosan German 2ce removed to the Earle of Cumberland, her husband by the blood of the St Johns.}

†{dyed at Brougham Castle in 1547 & was buried in the vault at Skipton in Craven.}

[I.260]

[1.] Ferdinand and William, successively Earles of Darby, & that loyall subject James Earle of Darby who was beheaded at Bolton in Lancashire by those traiterous rebells, 1651 was son of this William & grandchilde to the Lady Margaret Clifford. His armes are Argent, a bend Azure charged with 3 buckes heads cabashed Or.[659]

2. Henry, Lord Clifford when he was but 2 or 3 yeres old dyed an infant & was buried in the vault at Skipton.

3. Charles their 2nd son who dyed allso an infant and was buried by his brother.

By his 2nd wife which was Ann Dakers.

1. The Lady Frances Clifford borne in Skipton Castle 1555 who was marryed to Philip Lord Wharton (whose armes are else where) & had severall children by him. She dyed att Wharton Hall 1542,[660] & was buried in Kirkbystephan church.

2. The Lady Mary Clifford who was born in Skipton Castle 1556, dyed about 2 or 3 yeres of aige & was buryed in Appleby church in \ this County of / Westm'land.

3. The Lady Elianore Clifford born at Skipton Castle in 1557 who dyed a made about 14 or 15 yeres of aige and was buryed att Appleby.

4. George, Lord Clifford born at Browham Castle 8 of August 1558 who came after to be Earle of Cumberland, de quo supra.[661]

5. Frances Clifford born in Skipton Castle the 13 of October 1559 who was knighted very young by Queen Elizabeth and made Knight of the Bath by King James att Whitehall when his 2nd son Charles (after King of the Land) was made Duke of Yorke, being January 4. 1605 as the yere begins on New Yeres Day. & within 2 moneths after (by the death of his brother without Isue male) he became allso Earle of Cumberland being the 4 of the name & family of the Cliffords that bore the title of Earle of Cumberland & allso the last.

Whist he was but Sir Frances in 1589 he tooke to wife Mrs Grissell Hughes daughter of Mr Thomas Hughes of Uxbridge in Midlesex and widow to Edward Nevill Lord and Baron of Abergeveny; whose armes by her father were Sable a lyon rampant regard[ant] Argent, of whome he begott ~~one~~ \ 2 / sons & 3 daughters:

1. George who dyed an infant

2. Henry who lived to be 5th Earle of Cumberland and last heir male of the norther[n] Cliffords*.

3. Margarett maryed young to Sir Thomas Wentworth who was afterwarde allso created Earle of Strafford, that worthy man who was beheaded on Tower Hill London 1641. Which King Charles 1

---

[659] The Parliamentarian forces in Bolton comprised a small army which, until the armies of Prince Rupert and Lord Derby arrived, had been besieging Lathom House, home to Lord Derby. The Parliamentarians withdrew into Bolton which had been undefended for almost a year, its defences badly maintained. After two attempts, the Royalist forces successfully stormed the town – sacking, raping and looting with ferocity, supposedly because the defenders had hanged a captured Royalist officer on the city walls 'as an Irish papist'. Estimates of the dead ranged from 2,000 out of the 3,000 Parliamentarian soldiers, to around 1,200 to 1,500, both Royalist and Parliamentarian. The earl of Derby's animosity towards the defenders was personal; the Parliamentarian garrison had been engaged in shooting at his wife and children, and many members of the garrison were known to him. As a result, Derby not only took the lead in hand-to-hand fighting in the streets, but also was said to have killed a Parliamentarian Captain in cold blood. Derby was executed in Bolton in 1651, primarily on the charge of treason against Parliament rather than the murder of the captain, although he denied the charge at his trial. See Tristan A.R. Griffin, 'Culture, Conflict, and Northern English Fortification in the British Civil Wars, Circa 1638-1652', Cambridge PhD Thesis (24 September 2020), 232-38. See also David Casserly, *Massacre, The Storming of Bolton* (Stroud, 2010).

[660] A pencilled addition in another hand reads '1592'.

[661] This comment provides a clear indication that Machell's papers were not necessarily placed by William Nicolson in the order in which Machell had written them, and, as a consequence, were wrongly numbered; in the MS, the section on George Howard occurs below (not above) this page (see I.269).

was so very sorry for.[662] His armes were [blank]. But he had no issue by her; but by a 2nd wife he became father of the now Earle Strafford.
4. Frances who was maryed to Sir Gervis Clifton of Hadsok in Notinghamshire by whome she had Isue: Clifford, Clifton and others.

[Machell's Notes: I.260]

*{For tho he had 5 children: 3 sonns & 2 daughters, by the Lady Fra[n]ces Cicil, his wife – who was daughter of Robert Cecill, Earle of Salisbury – & Lord Hugh Frasur (whose armes were Argent, 5 barulits[663] Azure; \ on / 3 of which 6 escutchions Sable charged with as many lyons rampant of the 1st), yet they all dyed young excepting ~~Frances~~ Elizabeth, who was marryed to Richard Boyle, Earle of Cork in Ireland.} {Boyle Earle of Cork, bears parted per bend imbattled, Argent and Gules.}

[I.269]

Generation XII of the Cliffords

{George, 3d Earle of Cumberland}

George Lord Clifford son & heire of Henry the second Earle of Cumberland by Ann Daker his wife was borne in Browham Castle the 8t day of August 1558 in the same chamber which his father dyed in the 8 of January 1570. anno incipiente die 10 January.[664] So that he was Earle of Cumberland &c. befor he arrived att 12 yeres of aige but ward to the queen dureing his minority, whose wardship she bestowed on the Earle of Bedford, whose daughter he marryed. He was sometime att Oxford, under the tuition of Dr John Whitgift, who came to be afterw\ard/ Archbishop of Canterbury, & here he obteined some knowledge in the Arts, and especially in Mathematiqs, which did not onely incline him thereto, butt rendered him more fitt for marittime imployment, in which \ he / was excellent; for he undertooke 11 or 12 expeditions ~~to the West Indies & coastes thereabouts~~ in the reigne of Queen Elizabeth, his first putting out being in the yere of our Lord 1587 with a designe against 1t. the Duke of Perma; the 2nd. against the Spanish Armador in 1588; the 3. against the Isles of Tercernes[665] & Azorres, wher[e] he tooke the towne Fyall,[666] being dangerously wounded in the assault; and his others as well as these were all performed with great valour and success attending the mete butt over tedious for me to relate, there being a manuscript in quarto of them in the possesion of his daughter & heire the Countess of Penbroke. I shall onely add, therefore, that his last expedition was to St John de Portarica, whence he won the towne and returned victorious into England agane in 1598, about the beginning of the moneth of October.[667] He was a man of great quickness of witt, activity of body and affable disposition, and in high favour with both his soveraignes under whome he lived.

For Queen Elizabeth made him Knight of the Garter and he was her champion in all the tilteing from the 31. yere of said queens reigne till the day that both she and that noble exercise departed from amongst us. & in that hee excelled all the Nobles of his time, for he was so much addicted to tilting, bo\w/leing, horse courseing, shooting and such like active (but expensive) exercises, that these recreations, next to his sea voyages, many of which were sustaned and managed att his owne proper cost, were the great occasion of his selling of lands and he, tis said, to have consumed more than

[662] Strafford's biographer would concur. 'Thomas Wentworth, Earl of Strafford, played the roles of honest patriot: the defender of the subjects' liberties; conscientious office-holder; autocratic governor; potential favourite; leading minister in search of personal advancement and profit; and, finally, the allegedly 'evil councillor', sacrificed to atone for Charles I's misguided policies, who after defending himself with great courage and skill against his enemies stoically faced the inevitable …The end of Strafford's life, in spite of the many roles he played, had a greater consistency than many of his enemies or later critics were prepared to admit.' R. Asch, 'Wentworth, Thomas, first earl of Strafford (1593-1641), lord lieutenant of Ireland'. *ODNB*.
[663] 'Barrulet or barrelet or bracelet: diminutive of the bar of which it is a fourth: a twentieth part of the field.' *Glossary of British Heraldry*, 47.
[664] 'The year beginning the 1 of January 1570.'
[665] Terceira: an island; part of the Azores.
[666] Faial (known to the English as Fayal), in the central group of Azores.
[667] San Juan in Puerto Rico. San Juan underwent attacks from the English, led by Sir Francis Drake in 1595 and by George Clifford, earl of Cumberland, in 1598. Clifford landed troops after laying siege to the city of El Morro; but a few months later, he abandoned the siege when his troops began to suffer from gastric fever, just before the Spanish fleet arrived to retake San Juan. See Lisa Pierce Flores, *The History of Puerto Rico* (Santa Barbara, 2010), 46.

anyone of his ancestours beside. The armour which he wore (all sett with preciouse stones) is yett to be seen in Appleby Castle & will there remane a monument of him for after aiges to see & admire. His wife was the Lady Margarett Russell youngest daughter of Frances Earle of Bedford by Margarett, his wife,

[I.270]

which Margaret her mother was daughter of Sir John St John Baron St John of Blentshow in Bedfordshire. They were marryed in St Mary Overyes church ætatis suæ 17 in Southwarke, near London, upon the 14 of June 1547 & at the same time in the same place her husbands sister the Lady Frances Clifford was married allso to Philip Lord Wharton; Queen Elizabeth being there in person. She bore the armes of the Russells, which are Argent, a lyon rampant Gule, on a chiefe Sable 3 escallops Argent.

{Their Death}
She out lived her husband and remained a widow X yeres & 7 moneths; for he dyed 13 day of October 1605 att the Savoy in London; and there he declared that tho by will he had order his estate to Fra[n]cis, his brother, yett he was perswaded it would come to his daughter, & so it did. His bowells were buried in the Savoy chapple, but his body was brought to the vault at Skipton to rest with his ancestour, whither allso afterwards his brother Fra[n]ces, his body was brought, who inherited his Honour; and tis observable that when Henry Clifford son of Frances and last Earle of Cumberland & hereditary male of the Clifford[s] was brough[t] hither allso, yet he filled up the va\cancy/ there being but just roome remaneing for him in that vault called Clifford.

And she dyed att Browham Castle in this county of Westm'land in the same chamber her husband was borne, on Fryday the 24 of May 1616; so that she lived a widow X yeres; and her bowells were buried att the parish church there but her body was brought to St Laurence in Apleby the 11 of July and there inter with \ great / pompe and state befitting so great and so good a Lady; where her stately monument remanes to this day, of which see more in the said church of Appleby.

The Isue which they had were:
1. Frances Lord Clifford who was borne att Skipton and dying there about 5 yeres of aige was buried in the vault amongst his ancestours, 1589.
2. Robert Clifford after Lord Clifford who was borne & dyed in Northall House in the county of Hartford \ 1591*. /
3. Their onely daughter the Lady Ann Clifford borne att Skipton Castle 13 of January, being Friday, in 1590, the yeare begining on New Years Day; so that her birth day is now the same with our commemoration of King Charles the Martyr. But of her more hereafter, being the last of this family.

[Machell's Notes: I.270]

*{In the letter bag of Inquisitions at Skipton Castle there is a letter importing the much lamented death of the hopefull Lord Clifford in June 1591. The most noble Earle George (his father) being then in his travailes \ Tho: Hilton / MS in folio xx^{xx} penes Mr Sheldon.}

[I.271]

She dyed att Browham Castle in Westm'land on Wednesday before Easter, being the 22 of March 1675/6, about 6 a clock at night. And was buryed att Apleby in her owne vault [blank] 1676. Where she wisely provided herselfe a monument of black & white marble with the armes of all her ancestours. Conde tibi tumulum nec fide hæredis amori.[668]

[668] 'Build a memorial for yourself; trust not in the love of your heir.' See a similar cynical sentiment in William Camden, *Remaines of a Greater Worke, concerning Brittaine, but especially England and the Inhabitants thereof* (London, 1605), 54. 'In the cloyster of New College Oxford, this following is written with a coale, for one Woodgate, who bequeathed 200 pound to one who would not bestow a plate for his memoriall: "Heus peripatetice; Conde tibi tumulum nec fide hæredis amori; Epitaphiumque, compara; Mortuus est, nec emit libris hæc verba ducentis."' ['"Ho there, passer-by! Build a memorial for yourself; trust not in the love of your heir." And compare, as an epitaph: "He is dead: words he did not buy with money from the man who composed them."']

[I.272]

N.B. There were 6 sonns & 3 daughters, grand children to the Countess of Penbroke by Margaret \ Sackvill / her daughter, maryed to John Tufton, Earle of Thanet. And but one childe born by the Lady Elizabeth, wife of James Compton, Earle of Northampton.

The Isue of the Lady Margaret		The Isue of the Lady Isabell
Nicholas, Earle of Thanet ob. s.p.	Richard Earle of Thanet	Alathea Compton, married to Sir [blank] Hungerford; she died without Isue ere she came to age so that a portion was never made of her grandmothers estate, given to her and her cosan, John Tufton.
John Tufton Esq. to whom the Countess of Pembroke conveyd her estate by will & had it confirmed by her mother; he was after Earle of Thanet and dyed at Skipton, April the 27, 1680 at 3 in the afternoon; was put in his hearse by Mr Thomas Machell, Chaplin to the King, Mr Gabetis, \ Sheriff, / & others, 13 May, 3 in the morning, and buryed with his ancestours at Raneham in Kent on Tuesday August 18. {Chaplin to the King}[669]	Sackvill Thomas George ob. s.p.	

[**Death of the Countess of Pembroke**]
The most noble, virtuous & religiouse Lady Ann Countess \ Douager / of Penbroke, Dorset & Montgomery, daughter & sole heire to the late Right Honourable George Clifford Earle of Cumberland; Baroness Clifford of Westmorland & Vescy; Lady of the Honor of Skipton in Craven; & High Sherifess by inheritance of the county of Westmorland ~~Ann Countess of Penbroke~~ dyd at Brougham Castle in Westm'land March 22, haveing attein'd to the full age of 86 years the 30 January before, & was interr'd in St Lawrence Church Apleby the 14 of April 1676. She was twice married.
1. Richard Sackvill Earle of Dorsett, 25 of February 1609. His armes were quarterly Or & Gules,[670] a bend bar[ry] Argent Azure, & had Isue by her and he dyed 28 March 1624.
2. She was maryed to Philip Herbert Earle of Penbroke & Montgomery who dyed the 23 January 1650.

{1[t] Isue by Rich.}
i. Lady Margaret Sackvil daughter & coheire married to John Tufton, Earle of Thanet 21 of April 1629,[671] & by her had 9 children; Sable within a bend an eagle disp[layed] Argent. {Margaret, Countess of Thanet dyed 1676 in August & was buried about the 19[th] ejusdem.[672]}

ii. Isabel Sackvil m. 5 of July 1647 to James Compton Earle of Northampton and had Isue: 1 son that died yong. Sable a lyon passant gard[ant] Or; 6 betwen, 3 Sco. helmets Argent.[673]

[I.274]

The Countiss of Penbrooke Resolution
upon what terms she might be brought to agree with her tenants concerneing their fines[674]

[669] Thomas Machell was chaplain in ordinary to Charles II, as he claimed many times in his notes. See, for example, III.82.
[670] MS: 1. ' ~~The Lady Ann Clifford marryed to~~ Richard Sackvill, Earle of Dorsett, 25 of February 1609. He bore for his armes were quarterly Or & Gules.'
[671] Originally '1639', the '3' then crossed out and replaced with '2'.
[672] 'Of the same' date.
[673] The last phrase is obscured by the binding.
[674] This title is in Machell's hand; the rest of the text is in another hand.

"That on gard consideration and counsel I may be brought to take of my tenants 16 or 14 pennay fine. And there upon I will continue to them theire ancient customs of all my noble ancestors that is to say my deare father and mother, my grandfather and grandmother, my greate grandfather, who was first Earle of Cumberland, and his father Henery, Lord Clifford of Westmorland and theire predeceseors, the Viponts that were Lords of Westmorland, my noble ancestors from whome I am lineally discended of this right lyne and undoubted heire to the sayd Lords of Westmorland.
Provided alwaies that they will clame nothing ~~of~~ by vertue of King James his award made the 14th of March in 1617 as the yeares begin the first of January, nor by the decree in Chanceree for the confirming of the sayd award, nor any assurance by conveyences that was made by my uncle Francis Earle of Cumberland or his sonne Henry Earle of Cumberland to that effect and purpose.
Provided that this 16 or 14 yeares fine shall not preiudice the fines already due to me uppon the death and allination of every remnant of myne in Westmorland."[675]

I.

The 2 churches: St Laurence & St Michael, of which now particularly with there respective parishes[676]

[I.296]

1. Appleby Parish: properly called the Parish of St Lawrence in Appleby

[I.183B]

{1. St Laurence, so called from the saint to which tis dedicated, is a spacious church with 2 Iles, one each side the Body quite through both the Body and Quire, and a very handsome Tower with 5 bells. The greatest which was St Law. 6. was take to be recast, but became the least bye it. The windows have 6, but were broke in the church but repaned, yet some thing remane which I shal take notice of. To this church belongs \ a castle / [and] villages. And in it are 3 manner house or seats of nobility & gentry.}

[III.53]

[Brief Notes]
{It was a Ch[urch] temp. Conq.
Long,[677] belfray 6, body 25, Quier 12 ½, broad 18. 2 rows of pillars consisting of 4 pillars & 2 pillasters & 5 arches; the Quire [consists of] 1 pillar & 2 arches on each side. Font. Organ.[678]
Mon[uments]. Vestery. Vault.

[I.296]

{Foundation}
This church (as is supposed) was ~~founded or~~ rebuilt by King Henry the 2nd, about the 24 year of his reigne.

---

[675] As a Clifford/Thanet supporter, Machell forbore to criticise Lady Anne, but there is another side to this story, which relates to the abject poverty of some of the Clifford tenants during her lifetime. In 1616, at the end of Lady Anne's inheritance-feud with Earl Francis Clifford, James I awarded Earl Francis the Clifford lands on condition that he paid Lady Anne £17,000, taken from the income of his northern estates. This caused hardship to the Earl and his tenants. Even after Lady Anne inherited the Clifford lands, there were tenant disputes. When she demanded six years of rent arrears, those who could not pay had their beasts distrained. Additionally, fines were raised to eight times the rents. The tenants pleaded poverty, leading to court cases which Lady Anne won. She wrote in her diary, '… by that means, I altered the tenure of this land which was the principal thing I was at in my suites of law with my Westmerland tenants.' Reproduced from Margaret Gowling, *The Story of Brough-under-Stainmore* (Stainmore, 2011), 79-80; see also John Breay, *The Light in the Dales* (Norwich, 1996), 149, 160. As Breay remarks, 'At the heart of the problem was the fall in the value of money. The tenants paid ancient rents fixed in the time of Henry II; and periodically they paid dropping fines on the change of tenants, and general fines on the death of the lord. As the value of money fell, lords demanded higher fines.' *Light in the Dales*, 1.
[676] This heading has been removed from MS.II.183B.
[677] 'Length of.'
[678] For Machell's description of this organ, see his list of building achievements in Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.538.

{Dedication}
It was dedicated to St Lawrence (that fyerye martyr) as a fatal omen of the great damage this towne sustained 1176,[679] in the 22. of Henry 2, being att that time Burned downe to the ground, upon a Scottish invasion under William, their king*.

{Patronage}
The patronage ~~of this church~~ was formerly in the Abby of St Maryes without the walls att Yorke, and given by the Abbot thereof &c. to the Bishop of Carlile (as appears out of an Evidence penes ~~Mr Machel apud~~ \ Lancelotum Machel de / Crackenthorpe) \ Arm /. in whose jurisdiction it remains att this day†.

{**Chanteries**}

In this church were several chanteryes; as the chantery of St Marye, to which Mr Warcop of Colby was a benefactor tempore Henry 7. (vide cart Machellor apud Crakenthorp);[680] St Nichol[as]; St Michael‡.

[Machell's Notes: I.296]

*{It was so calld in Erle Ran[ulf] Meschens. ex inscription super Lapide apud scholar.}[681]
†{vid. cart Henry 6. vol. 7?}
‡vide Lib. MS foli. part 3.[682]

[I.307]

{St Nichols Cant. 4. Henry 7. [1488-89]}
There was a chantry in St Lawrences Church in honour of St Nicol[as] the Confessor, to which Reginaldus Warcopp presented one Hen[ry] Smyth chaplayn, 4. Henry 7. [1488-89]. This I believe was that porch which was called in later times Warcops Quire*.

{St. Marye Cant. 1442. 21. Henry 6.}
There was a Chantry of St Mary which Sir Richard Garnet,[683] vicar of St Lawrence & chantry priest of the same, granted to Sir Leonard Langhorn, with yerely stipend of 7 marks sturl~~e~~ing, & he was allso to teach schole, having the advantage thereof without interruption with the orchard & all the fruits of it, & hay to feed an horse durante vita, except Sir Leonard gott better promotio†.[684] The Abbot of the Monastery of St Mary near & without the wall of York being the true & undoubted patrones of the vicarage of St Laurence in Apleby, presented Richard Garnett, who was admitted by Roger Bishop of Carlile 1507‡.

There was Cantaria Beatæ Mariæ Virginis,[685] founded \ formerly / by Thomas Goldrington & others his Ancestour ~~&~~ \ in / the church of St Laurence; ad celebranda et divina ministranda ad altaræ Beatæ Mariæ pro majore Baluijs et communitate, & pro animabus antecessorum cantariæ prædictæ fundatorum, & omnium fidelium Defunctorum & ejusdem Cant[ariæ] Benefactorum.[686]

{1515. 9. Henry 8.}
There was also in St Laurence Church the Chantery of St Michael.

---

[679] MS: '~~and~~ {No, se Cumb.} \ It was / dedicated to St Lawrence (that fyerye martyr) ~~in allusion to~~ \ as a fatal omen of / the great damage this towne sustained ~~by fire~~ 1176.'
[680] 'See a deed of Machells at Crackenthorpe.'
[681] 'It was so called in Erle Ranulf Meschines' [time], 'as is shown by an inscription on a stone at the School.'
[682] 'See folio MS book, Part 3.'
[683] Sir = Reverend.
[684] Latin: 'preferment'; 'advantage'.
[685] 'Chantry of the Blessed Virgin Mary.'
[686] 'To celebrate and administer the holy offices at the altar of the Blessed Mary, for the mayor, Bailiffs and community, and for the souls of his ancestors, the founders of the aforesaid chantry, and all the faithful departed and the benefactors of the same chantry.'

[Machell's Notes: I.307]
*{See a grant of this & St Maryes with ment[ion] of founder inter r. cartas Machellorum W. de Crak. Circ. 9[0] Henry 8. [1517-18]}[687]
†Witness, Master Heugh Machell & alijs, iii Henry 8 [1511-12]; {7. H. 8. [1515-16]} {q: an sic dict[um] a fundatore an ab officio?}[688]
‡Memorandum: they had it of Ralp[h] Meschenes, 1[t] Earle of Cumberland {Sc. MSS Cumb.}

[I.296]

{Chapples}
And severall chapples: sc. one att Barwise,[689] an other at the Castle, and a 3[rd] att the hospitall, of which we shal speak more att large in their respective places.

[St Lawrence]

Repaire}[690]
This church being much in decay, was magnificently repared att the sole cost & charge of the Lady Ann Clifford ~~Countiss of Cumberland~~ Countisse Dowager of Dorsett, Penbroke and Montgomerie, who tooke downe all the timber & the walls of most part of the Quire (where a vestery was heretofore) & rebuilt it without one, according to direction of her Stuart, Mr Vincent, of whome she had a \ very / great opinion for \ his / skill in Architecture (as may be seen by his monument att Brough).[691]
But he had none att all \ as appears by his workes. /

{Warcop Quire}
There was allso a quire on the back side of the pulpett, which projected towards the towne. This belonged to the Warcops of Colby and the Colebyes their ancestours and in digging up the pavement & demollishing of the walls they found severall allabaster & plaster figures curiously gilded, hid there, I suppose, upon the extirpation of Poperie,[692] som of [which] I saw when I was a childe, & some I believe are yet to be seen at Colby Hall.[693]

[I.295]

{Armes & Monuments}
Upon this repare the foresaid quire (in lew of which the Warcopps had allotted a piew in the chancel & a buryeing place on your right in the end of the south side Ile of the Chancell, just as you enter in at the Quire dore) was quite taken away, & the vesterie allso, which was (as is usuall) on the north side the Chancell; And much \ painted / glass with many coates of armes was broken & destroyed; but what remanes is as followeth*.

{Windows Armes} è Dugdal.

These in the E. Quire Windowe
{South Wing East End … Machel}[694]
1. Or a lyon rampant Ar[gent]: Earle Pearcy.
2. Gules a cross Argent: Nevil, Earle of Westmorland.
3. Azure powdered floralice[695] Or a lyon rampant of the 2[nd]. Beaumout.
4. Quarterly 1 Ar[gent] semé of floredelice Or; 2 l[yon]s Gules 3 lyons passant Or: i.e. France & England.

---

687 'In the Machell of Crackenthorpe deeds circa 1518.'
688 'Query, whether it was prescribed by the founder or went with the office?'
689 Barwise Hall.
690 MS: '{Repaire ~~Armes of monuments~~}'
691 For Gabriel Vincent, see Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.424.
692 MS: '~~of whome there were fine allabaster monuments found curiously gilded with gilt~~ and in digging up the pavement & demollishing of the walls they found severall allablaster & plaster figures curiously gilded, hid there, I suppose, upon the extirpation of Poperie.'
693 MS.I.296: 'Som of [them]'. MS.I.295: 'I saw when I was a childe, & some I believe are yet to be seen at Colby Hall'.
694 Written faintly in pencil. The fifth word is much faded.
695 Fleurs de lys.

A.P. in severall places of the w[indow] for Ann Penbroke Reparatrix Ecclesiæ.[696]
Benson? A name in the glasse yet standing in the Quire.

In the North Ile window and the Body[697]
5. Machel impaleing Thorburrow item single olim.[698]
6. 7. Readmanes and Musgraves armes: Azure 6[699]

Here were allso the Machells armes att large but were stolne out of the window by an ignorant fellow \ ~~of the name of Main &~~ / ~~related to the family~~ and caryed to London†. And is to be note that it was customarie of old for those who were benefactors to any church to have the armes sett up in the windows (which were not \ to be / de defaced by any man ‡.) And that this family were soe, may in some measure be gather from this piece of glass, translated probablely from the place were the armes stood (which was in the farest window in the body of the church on the north side) to the window next the new monument for the Lady Ann Clifford, Counttiss of ~~Robt~~ \ Penbrooke/ &c. wherein is this inscription: De &c. Sc. de Crackenthorpe fieri fecerit.[700]
{Machels Armes have about the doggs necks 2 stroke of oringe colour for the coller, which Dugdal has omitted: mat. Preston⸸.}

Monuments
3. Margaret, daughter of [blank] Russel Earle of Bed[ford] – a large tome with the figure of her body ~~&~~ laying at lenth (& large inscriptions with armes, which Mr \ Dugdal / hath taken) which he hath omitted.[701]
4. The Lady Ann Cliffords monument (not taken by Dugdall) which stands above a vault made on purpose for a burying place to her posterity†.
1. A figure \ of a woman / which lyes along under an arch on the right hand the Communion Table or Aultur, beyond the monument of the Lady Margaret Cliford. In Machells Quire now as wa [blank][702]
2. A broad \ grave / stone writt about which I cannot read. It now lyes in Warcops burying place.

[Machell's Notes: I.295]
*See my oblong booke of Miscellanies, & Dugdall, who visited that church, but has oversene[703] the horsehead coate, which is \ in / my Miscellanies.
†Testament Will Yewbanke et alijs.
‡See Leighs *Accidence of Armorie* pag.133.)
⸸{By an order of Thomas, Earle of Lancasters: order, temp. Edward 1. Earle Marishal of England. Insert the rule as a caution & direction for the future.} Vide Leigh.[704]

[I.328B][705]

[A Fragment]

Under this marble buryd lye*
(If fame can buryed bee)
The good old Mali-Catuli
The floores of chevalrie.[706]

[696] 'Repairer of the church.'
[697] Nave.
[698] 'Once.'
[699] Annulets.
[700] '... of Crackenthorpe caused this to be made.'
[701] The sense of this comment is probably, 'and large inscriptions with arms, which I have taken [but] Dugdale hath omitted.'
[702] Incomplete sentence, written in pencil.
[703] Overlooked.
[704] Gerard Leigh, *The Accedence of Armorie* (London, 1563).
[705] A torn sheet of notes.
[706] See *N&B1*, 344.



Figure 1.1.33: 'The Good old Mali-Catuli'. 1.328B.

So much for the church, to what belongs as parcells of the parish.

Appleby with Scattergate, which is part of it; Hoff alias Over Hoff,[707] distant ½ a mile; Burrells, ½ a mile; Colby above a mile; Barwise Row about a mile; Colby Leath, about a mile; Drybeck, about a mile.
Manners:
1. of Appleby
2. of Barwise
3. of Colby
4. of Hoff
5. Drybeck?

[Machell's Notes: I.295]
*{Monuments: These [3 & 4] must be drawn att large.}

[III.53]

[Parish Boundary]
It is bounded on the N. \ & East / with St Michaels, Appelby, commonly called Bongate Parish; on the S.E. & S. with Ormside & Ashby; on the west with ~~Orton~~ Crosby Ravensworth; and \ part of Morland an[d] on / the ~~west &~~ norwest with \ the remaining part of / Morland Parish.

The Perambulation
Beginning at the foote of Sweetmilk sike where it runneth into Eaden near Buly Castle & Crakanthorpe Hall \ opposite / a place belonging to the said Hall called Parklands Head. Thence eastward up the River Eden to a place called Hellyeats, where Stainmore-Gill Sike comes into Eden opposite to the rock called Clint-Skar in the south field which belongs to Appelby Castle \ where it leaves Bondgate Parish & adjoynes upon Ormside. Thence S. west up the said sike {cloven stone N. from here} to an \ little / hamlet in Ormside Parish, called the Heeghts; {The Hights} thence directly to Rutterforce. Thence S. up Rutter Beck to \ Scalebeck Fote ~~near~~ / an house called Howslacks (where it leves Ormside and borders upon Ashby) thence S. up Scale Beck aforesaid till you come at Halligil Wood*. Thence \ S. / ~~up a runlett or rill of water~~ \ up the said beck / by the edge of Highfield \ inclusively / to the intack-wall near Gathorn-Hall \ where Ashby & Crosby Parish meet, & Lankakes.[708] Thence west up the said wall \ crossing Kendall highway / to a little hamblet in Crosby Parish called Banke Head \ ~~Dale~~†? / Thence N.W. (& by W.) by the Banke End wall to Lankakes-House near the Countiss Mount, & so on the said wall till you com at Meaburn Edge; thence W. down the Edge-Wall till you com at Maulds-Meaburn. Thence N. by a stone wall along the side of the moore‡ to a pasture called Intack; thence N.W. by a ring wall on the outside of the moore till you com an hamlet called Drivivers⊥. Thence N.W. by Kings Meaburn ring-dike till you com at Teas-Close-Head; \ thence / N. downe the outside of Teas-Close wall to Buly Castle; thence \ N. / by Sweet Milke Sike till ~~the river~~ \ it enters / Eden where we began.

[707] MS: 'Hoff ~~Barwis Row Colby~~ alias Over Hoff.'
[708] MS: 'intack-wall near Gathorn-Hall \ where Ashby \ is / ~~into~~ {~~Gathorn Hall~~ & Crosby Parish meet, & Lancakes.}'

[Machell's Notes: III.53]

*Halligil Wood – foxes alwayes.
†Query of Barhouse farmer.
‡Q. of this, for the more I thinke belongs Meaburn. Q. of other moors. Q. where Morland endes.
⸸{A q[u]arry} {Query, where Morland enters?}

[III.54]

[Addition to the perambulation by Thomas Dobison of Drivivers]
Thence up Scale-Beck to Bousfildes grounds joyning on to T. Bousfield, Gathorn demaine; thence W. by the ringwall of the said grounds till you com to Dribeck Common \ at Bousfield Yeat; / thence ~~W.by a~~ S. down Bousfields wall, till you com at the roade ~~harding on~~ twixt Dribeck & Kendal; thence \ N. / crossing the way down Harding-Pasture wall to Harding-Neuke \ Side / where Maulds / Meaburn lordship in the parish of Crosby Ravensworth comes in; thence [Blank]*
{Thence Spabanke \ to a stone / a little above the head of Great Briggell, where Dribeck & Meaburn Commons meet.}[709]
{Neuk of Swinegill}
From the Marke-stones \ upon the more / where Colby, Dribeck, Mauds Meaburn & Kings Meaburn meet. Thence N.W.
Mr Dobson has som tent[ament]s. Lord Dakers {Mr Warcop; Rob. Speding.}

[Machell's Notes: III.54]

*{Thus far Thomas Dobison of Drivivers. Will Burry of Drivivers? Rob. Smith of Raw?}

[III.55]

{Gentlemens Houses}
Castle, Goldrington Hall, Colby Leath, Colby Tower, Barwise Hall, Buly Castle [and] Parke, Barhouse Hall, Rutter Demaine –a bad house, thatched.

{Manners}
There are in this parish Lordships or Manners. 1. Appelby-Burrow; 2. The Castle; 3. Hoff & Dribeck; 4. Colby.

1. The Burrow of Appelby are generally freeburgers, and the Mayor of the Towne keeps Court & Barron, at which \ not only / the freemen answers, but the freeburgers also, & doe Suit & Service. But the Burgers choose parli[a]ment men; the Common Council, ~~who are always freeburgers~~, choose the mayor with the consent of the Court of Aldermen. (The Mayor chooses all his officers.)

2. The Castle is the Capital Messuage of Westm'land. There [are] some ten[eme]nts in Scattergate, which is called a Lordship in the Register of Apleby, Anno 1598, for som lands they hold in the fields of Appeby Castle. Burrell S.W. a Castel, 1 mile – xiv fam[ilies]: all customary tenants. \ Burrowgate & the Wiends: l. xxiv fam. Scattergate: xxv. And others in Bongate parish? /

3. 35. Elizabeth, 10 March [1592-93] a ~~lease~~ \ pattent / from Queen Elizabeth under ~~a Broad Lease~~ \ the seal of the Exchequer / of the herbage & hay ground of Hoff Lun \ Wood / called therein Bosc de Hoffe Lyme or Hoflyme Wood. {This is the dom[ane]; no house.} Parcell of the manner of Hof & Dribeck, parcel of the lands & possessions of Leonard Dacre Esq., de alta proditione attincti existentis &c.[710] Lett to Thomas Yaire, Miles Yair & Ann Yair & their assignes for the terme of the lifes \ surrenders or forfaitures / of every one of them successively, for which they paid a fine of vj^{li} xiii^{s} iiij^{d}.[711] The year rent of \ lxvi^{s} viii^{d}: / sexagint sex solid' et octo denar'[712] ~~with an heriot~~ at the

[709] This margin comment is partly obscured and partly scored through.
[710] '… attainted for High Treason &c.' Leonard Dacre (born c.1533) was attainted in 1570, but fled to Scotland, and then to Flanders, where he died in 1573. The reasons for his fall from grace are given by Henry Summerson in 'Dacre, Leonard (d. 1573), rebel'. *ODNB*.
[711] £6 13s 4d.
[712] 66s 8d.

Annunciation[713] & Michaelmas, by equal por[tions]. And after the decease of each of them who dyed tenant thereof, paying 30^{s} (of his moneys) nomine herietti:[714] \ penes dictum Willielmum Smith.[715] /

In Hoff \ & Raw / \ 3 miles ½ / about X familyes, all customary†; & Dribeck is of the like Tenure.
33. Elizabeth, 12 July [1591] lett to Richard Southaite Gentleman by pattent, the woods, underwoods & trees growing in Hoff lunn wood in the manner of Hoff / & Drybeck in 4 several ~~Hoff~~ copses: sc.
Greenbanke Coppice or Hag. Of 20 acres.
Hougil Copice or Hag, 20 acres.
Bradland Banke, 30 acres.
Foddering Land Hag, 12 acres.
{Leased] from the Feast of the Annunciation before the date thereof for 21 years for 40^{s} per annum at Michaelmas and Annunciation. And this [deed] being in the hand of Francis Sou[erby][716] Esq. By good & lawful means ½ of it was granted by indenture from him, bearing date 26. September 3^{0} Jacobi [1605] to Thomas Yaire of Dribeck, yeoman, for the remander,[717] with 1 part in 3 of fierboot[718] to be rendered jointly betwixt them: penes Will. Smith de Apelby cler. pocciatem.[719]
Indented manner. It is agreed upon by consent of both parties, that the yearly rent of 3^{s} going out of the said grounds to the vicar of Appelby for tythes on the same shall be equally paid by the partyes to this indenture.}

{Nether Hof near Colby, W. I mile. 2 demanes freehold: Mr Bradley, Mr Dobson. High Field in Dribeck libertyes iiii fam[ilies] Customary.}

{Rutter demane and IV familys in High & Low Rutter \ 1 mile ½ S. ab Ecclesia / all customary [tenants] to Williams} All Williams tenants pay an Heriot, Sc. the best Laid,[720] Good, otherwise none. The present lady thereof is a young daughter of Will William of Johnby Hall in Cumberland given by her father and purchased by him.

4. Colby: \ a little / [over] 1 mile W. ab Ecclesia;[721] xxv \ iii / familyes, most of them freeholds – The Bishop has tenements there which pay 3. 6. 8^{d} Rent. {90^{li} per annum}.
Colby Leathes: a single farm-house of the Dean & Chapter and an out-house. Barhouse-Hall: Sir John Sudwicks. Before to one Rose who forfeited by steeling a chalice ab Ecclesia. Sir John Boyer purchased it of Sudwick.[722]

[Machell's Notes: III.55; III.56; III.59]

†{At the S. end of Hof bridge is a place called Duglassing[723] where they was a battle with Scotch & English ~~abe~~ when Appelby was burned. Sculls and boanes of dead men have bin found near the bridge in the memory of man, & they talke of a chaple hereabouts.}
[III.56]
From the Intack near Gaythorn Hall
Q. to compleat the bounder.

[713] Saturday 25 March.
[714] 'As a heriot.'
[715] 'In the possession of the said William Smith.'
[716] MS: 'Sou'; the shortened word is unclear.
[717] A word here is obscured by the binding.
[718] 'Fierboot', 'Firebote', 'Fyrbot': firewood, especially that which a tenant is entitled to take from a landlord's estate for fuel; (hence) the right or privilege of a tenant to take such wood; also housebote, haybote. *OED*.
[719] [The deed] 'in custody of William Smith of Appleby: Town Clerk.'
[720] This word has been altered, thus making the transcription questionable.
[721] 'Church of St Lawrence.'
[722] 'In the reigns of Henry VII and Henry VIII, [Berwise Hall] belonged to Sir Thomas Roos Esq. a descendant of whom forfeited it by stealing a silver chalice out of the church. Sir John Sudwick sold it to Sir John Baker, whose widow sold it to Reginald Dobson of Dufton, from whom it descended to the Metcalfes of Bellerby in Yorkshire.' J. Hodgson, *A Topographical and Historical Description of Westmoreland* (London, 1810), 81.
[723] 'Douglas Ing'.

Will. Burry of Drivivers }
Rob. Smith of Raw } bo[u]nd[er]?
& Crosby Ravens[724] }

In Dugdale visit.
Prosspect of Ap. & Cast.
Arms in and about C[astle].
Ar. in & about in hospital.
Ar. in & about the church.
Query if he drew the monuments, else I must.

If Addison have not the N.W. Castle, I must draw it and the cross.
[III.59][725]
Bongate the Bounder
Q. of Cambula.[726]

[2]

[St Michael's]
Of the Parish [and Bounds] of Bongate[727]

[I.342A] [728]

The parish of Bongate is anciently calld St Michaels in Appilby because the church stands in Bondgate, a part of that Town. There is given to the Bindeing out of poor Apprentices by Lancelot Machell of Crackenthorpe Esq. ~~of the Tow~~ devised in the Great Settlement of his Estate, XX, to be paid out of his tythes of Crackenthorpe*.

[Machell's Notes: I.342A & I.339]
*Mem[orandum] a Charity at Kendal of John Machell, sheriff of London which if paid ought to be remembered, & if not paid, ought to [be] looked for; the [charity] descends from him being of good fortunes in Bucks & Sussex.
[I.339] The boundarys. See my paper and examen J. Hill.

[I.305]

St Michaels
To St Michaels church in Apleby are belonging these places following: 1st, Bongate; \ 2. Battlebar[row], which are / parts of Apleby and called vici de Apleby i.e. streets of Apleby; 3. Crakinthorp; 4. Hilton & 5. Murton; 6. Langton; & 7. Brakenbar.

[III.61]

{1} The parish of Bongate (otherwise called St Michaels Apelby) is a vicaridge,[729] valued in the first fruits office at 20li 17s 9½d.[730] And is in the gift of the Bishop of Carleol ~~for the time being~~.[731]

[724] The word having been overwritten, it is unclear whether Machell wrote Ravensworth or Ravensbeck.
[725] This page appears to be an outer wrapper of a set of notes now subsumed into the text of Volume III.
[726] Cambula or Camlann is associated with King Arthur's last battle, the story of which was told by Geoffrey of Monmouth in his pseudo-historical chronicle *Historia Regum Britanniae* (c.1136). Though Geoffrey placed Camlann on the Camel in Cornwall, some insist that the battle was fought at Camboglanna (Castlesteads) on Hadrian's Wall. See Andrew Breeze, *British Battles 493-937: Mount Badon to Brunanburh* (London, 2020), 13-24.
[727] This title has been removed from MS.III.61.
[728] MS: A small scrap-page containing a short draft of the Bongate parish description, also written elsewhere.
[729] 'A vicar is a clergyman who has the charge of cure of a parish where the tithes have been appropriated. During the middle ages, when churches were appropriated to monasteries, vicars were employed to perform the duties of the rector and received the 'vicarial' or 'small' tithes for their maintenance. After the dissolution of the monasteries 'rectorial' tithes of impropriate rectories were commonly granted to laymen.' CCED, Glossary.
[730] The Court of First Fruits and Tenths was established in 1540 to collect moneys from clerical benefices that previously had been sent to Rome. First fruits were the first year's profits owed by a new holder of a benefice; tenths were 10 percent of the annual income, due each year: https://www.britannica.com/topic/Court-of-Augmentations.
[731] MS I.342A contains similar text: 'It is a vicaridge Rated in the First Fruites office at [Blank] and is in the Donation of the Bishop of Carlile.'

The present incumbent is Barnaby Symson M.A. & somtime Fellow of Queens College in Oxon, being son & successor to Mr Robert Symson the elder (not only in this, but also in Ormside & Longmarton parishes) who liv'd to be a ve[n]rable old man & a great example of conjugal love, as having lived above 50 years in a maryed estate without the least difference betwixt him & his wife.[732] There is a charity of 20[li] for bindeing poore ~~boys~~ apprentices, left unto Crakanthorp within this parish, by the late, valiant & truly loyal Lancelot Machell Esq., Lord of that \ Town / & Lieutenant of horse to the two Countyes of Westmorland & Cumberland.

[Of the Bounds of the parish of Bongate][733]
{W.} This parish is confin'd on the west with St Laurence, Apelby, and the Lordships of Bolton in Morland parish whose bankes are washed (excepting where it hath alter'd its course) with the great River Eden[734] which Camden calls Nobilis Ituna,[735] Sc. from the foote of Cowpland Beck unto the foote of Old Troutbeck steed,[736] where it hath formerly runn into Eden.[737]

{N.} Thence, on the north, with Kirkbythore parish, being divided from it by the said Old Beck-Steed & som part of Troutbeck till you ascend to Kirkbythore-Bridge.

{N.E.}Thence on the north & north-east side it is environ'd with Long Marton Parish & distinguished from it \ either by the ring-hedge of Brampton Lordship or / the great Romane-Way ~~commonly~~ called The Street, ~~the~~ Kings-Street & High-Stree[t], which runneth S.E. from Kirkbythore-bridge to Barron Cross (where it brancheth to Apleby) & so on, to \ a place hard by / Storrow-Close Nooke; thence, by a settle[738] (extending eastwards in a bowline) to Bongate Field Dike at Bon-Roodes Head, and by the said dike {i.e. hedge} to Crundale \ or Curndale / Head, descending northwards. Thence, by the midle of Crundale Bottom (a ~~famous~~ \ curious / foote race near unto Apleby) to Langton Tarne Sike. Thence, by the said sike (which runneth N.W.) to a place call'd Espland \ Stockbrigg at Espland is in the way twix Ap[pleby]. & D[ufton] near Brampton Hall / where it looseth it selfe in Troutbeck aforesaid (which beareth the name of Burthet Beck there), which changeing its name almost at every place it comes at & here call'd Burthet*.

[Machell's Notes III.61]

*{The reason why I adhere to name of Troutbeck generally for this river is because it hath many particular names from the several places it runns by or thorow (as Brampton), & so can not be fixed for any one of them.}

[III.63]

{N.E.} Thence it is bounded on the N.E.* agane with the parish of Dufton, & divided from it by Troutbeck (or Burthet) to Hikupdale Head, near which place it springs. Thence, by a streight line extending eastwards to the high-way or street which leadeth from Dufton to a place called Birkdale in

[732] Another draft of this material (MS I.339) but crossed through, gives: '{Rate; patrons} Bongate is a vicaridge rated in the first fruits office at [blank] and is in the disposal of [blank] {Incumbent}The present incumbent is Barnaby Symson M.A. & sometime fellow of Queens College in Oxford, who succed his father; both in this, & ~~\ the recovrye / Ormside of Ormside~~ & Long Merton Parsonage which use all the incumbents that have bin ~~there~~ \ in their / since the Restoration of King Charles II.'

[733] A note (MS. I.342) not reproduced in the body text, reads, '{Bondgate Parish} Up Grange Beck to the spring head at Green Castle. Thence in streight line to Troutbeckhead, & so on till Moseburn com into Troutbeck to it, divideing us from K. in Long Marton Parish. From thence to Troutbeck foot from Dufton P[ike]. Thence up Teas to far Crakenthorp which divides up from Tine Head in Astan Moore in Com. Thence up the river to Tease Head. Thence to Blenkarne Dale Head where Blenkarnebeck springs. Newb[y] – From Cradundale to Cowgen Head. Thence down that sill to Cunnigarth Head. Thence down Blackh…s dike.'

[734] Written in upper case in the original.

[735] See Camden, *Britannnia*: 1. 'That notable river Eden, which Ptolemee called Ituna' (760); 2. 'Ituna. That notable river which wandreth through Westmorland', 776.

[736] Former bed of the beck.

[737] Another version (III.65) gives, '{W. 4.} This parish is confin'd on the west with St Laurence, Apelby & som part of the parish of Morland whose bankes are washed with the great river Eden (which Camden \ called / called the Nobilis Ituna) from Cowpland-Beck-Foote to the foote of old Troutbeck thence where it hath formerly runn into Eden {excepting where its course has but altred.}'

[738] Settle: a flat ledge or wall foot; see also within this chapter at III.67.

the said parish \ of Dufton. / Thence, by the said way (running still eastwards) to the High-Wath of Mase Beck. Thence, by Mase-Beck (descending S.E.) to a place called Broad-Mea {i.e. a piece of ground so called, being a plane benty green compass'd with heath} near the low wath of Mase-Beck, where {?!} Rummakirk[739] Parish (in the county of York) commeth in & conjoyneth on the east side of it ~~saveing onely~~ \ which / divided by a direct mathematical line (which extending southwards) from Bread-Mea Foote[740] to the bought or bending of Mickle Fell, & so up that fell to an hurrock[741] \ of stone / (which they call a carrock) on the very \ end of it†.[742] From whence 'tis confined with the parish of Warcop on the south–east & south, & distinguished from it by a streight line thurrow Philip Read Moss; from the said hurrock (S.W.?) on Mickle fell End to another hurrock upon Lile Fell;[743] whence agane to C[hr]isty-Gill Head, & so down the bottom of Christy-Gill to the very foote of it. Thence, by a streight line (ascending westwards) over Swindale-Beck to Swindale Fauldes‡, & thence agane westward to an hurruck of stones on the top of Roman-Fell. Whence, descending (by a streight line) unto the head of Wastergill-Sike, & thence by that sike to a place call'd Spell-Banke, where it divides into 2 streams, & so ~~by~~ \ at / the right streame (or channel of it, when \ it / doth not runn) down Low-Gill-Banke to a place called Storth; and thence by Storth Sike to Breadmire Sike, whence down Breadmire Sike

[Machell's Notes: III.63]

*{Towan sayes N.W. Troutbeck springest at Hikuphead & runs west to Keiscliff; thence behinde Brampton; thence to Marton & so to Kirkbythore all along from E. to W.}
†{Query} {!} {So. Jo[hn] Hill & Thomas Sanderson agree, but Nic[holas] Harrison talks of Birk-Sike-Head whence wee are to ascend by a line S.E. to the carruck on Mickle Fell; and they, on the contrary, that Birk-Sike-Head is far in Yorkshire & that Sir William Bowes has an house & lead mines on this side of it, ergo q[uery]?}
‡{General note: Mem. at Bolton in Machells court rolls.}[744]

[III.69]

which runns by the skirts of Humphrey Head, takeing it in till it falls into Dowbeck & so down by Dowbeck till George Gill Tong*, where it runns into Kelds-Well Sike & thence descending by Keldswell Sike to Cowpland Beck Bridge, & so to the foot of Cowpland Beck, where wee first began.[745]

[Machell's Notes: III.69]

*{Tüng: a similitudine extremitatis ejusdem inter fauceses duorum fluviorum.}[746]

[I.337]

[This version of the Bounds starting from the east, was made by John Hill]
It is bounded on the east with Rummakirk, from which tis divided by Brikesike from the head ~~down~~ of it to a[747] hurruck of stones south east on the top of Mickle-Fell End*. \ So, from the parish of Warcop / in streight line […][748] on the south E. with the parish of Warcop, {in streight line} SW to another hurrock of stones {in straight line} from the hurruck of stone on Mickel-Fell to another upon Little fell by a streight line through Phillip Read Moss. Thence \ S.W. / to Cissy Gill Head by a

[739] Romaldkirk, near Barnard Castle.
[740] Broad Mease. The place-names 'bread' and 'broad' are used interchangeably in this bounder narrative; both derive from the old Saxon 'breiðr', meaning 'broad'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[741] 'Carrock': from the Old Welsh 'carrec': a rock; otherwise, a cairn on a hill marking the way or boundary.
[742] MS: '… on the very \ end of it / Top of Mickle Fell End'; Machell sometimes used pecked underscoring when considering the removal of text.
[743] MS: 'from whence 'tis confined with the parish of Warcop on the south-~~east & south: Sc. from the hurruck of stone on Mickle Fell End, by a special line through Philip Read Moss~~ east & south, & distinguished from it by a streight line thurrow Philip Read Moss; from the said hurrock (S.W.?) on Mickle fell End to another hurrock upon Lile Fell.' Lile = little.
[744] This appears to be written in another hand.
[745] MS: 'whence down ~~by~~ Breadmire \ Sike / which runns by the Skortes (which runns by the skirts of Humphrey Head ~~&~~ taketh it in \ takeing it in / till it falls into Dowbeck & so (down) by Dowbeck till George Gill Tong, where it ~~enters~~ \ runns into / Kelds-Well \ Sike / & thence (descending) by Keldswell Sike to Cowpland Beck Bridge, & so to the foot of Cowpland Beck, where wee first began, ~~by which \ it / is divided from Warcop~~.'
[746] 'So called from its resemblance to a tongue in the angle of the fork of two river channels.'
[747] Here there is a small sketch within the line of text.
[748] MS: 'in streght line {a streight line}'. This is followed by two illegible words.

streight line. Thence down the bottom of the Gill to ~~the foote of~~ \ Sissy Gill. / Thence \ westward / ascending by a streight \ line / over Swindale Beck to Swindale faulds. Thence westward ~~over~~ to an hurrock of stones on the top of Roman Fell – & thence descending in a streight line to Waster-Gill \ Sike / Head – ~~where the Sike \ so calld / springs~~. Thence down Wastergill-Sike – to ~~Humphrey Head~~ to Spel-Banke, where it divides into 2 streames. Thence down the right hand streame \ or sample of it which doth not run allwayes / down Lowgill Banke to \ a pasture calld / Storth. Thence down Storth-Sike, to Breadmire Sike; thence down Breadmire Sike to Humphrey Head \ Hill, / takeing it in till it runn into Dowbecksike; thence down Dowbeck, to Gorge Gill-Tonge End where it enters Keldswell-Sike; thence down that sike to Cowpland Beck Bridge; thence down Cowpland Beck ~~brig~~ to Eaden \ the river Eden being divid ~~all along from Warcop~~ / by \ these meet […][749] land markes all along from the parish of Warcop. / Thence on the west tis bound with St Lawrence Apleby & part of Morland, from which tis divided by the river Eden (from Cowpland Beck Foote) to the foote of old Troutbeck†. Thence on the north, with Kirkbythore parish from which tis divided from Troutbeck Foote to Kirkbythore brig by old Troutbeck Steed on N. and nor-east, with Murton parish or by the Street (or hedge)[750]

[Machell's Notes: I.337]

*{At Mical Fell mines,[751] a white raven builded as white as milke: Jo[hn] Hill}

†{This for Nicholas Harrison}

[I.338]

S.E. on Roman Way to Baron Cross where the sayd way brancheth out to Apelby, which divides from the Lordship of Brampton in Longmarton parish*. Thence directly up the foresaid streat to Borrowdale Nooke at a smal distance from it. Thence \ eastward / to Bongate Field Dikes at Bororoades Heade by a settle in a crooked line. Thence north to Crundale Head, by the said ~~thence~~ \ hedge. / Then down the midle of Crundale Bottom (which discribes an S.) to Langton Tarn Sike Troutbeck, at the foote of Flay Brigg. Thence from Dufton parish \ which lyes N. of it / by Troutbeck upwards to the spring-head at Hikeup ~~Dale~~ \ Head. / Thence to \ an hurrock of stones on / Watch-Hill by a direct line. Thence to Mase-Beck Head by a direct line. Thence eastward down Mase-Beck till it com into Swath-Beck. Then down Swath-Beck to Birke Sike \ Foote thence to the / head where wee began†.

Thence down the Sand sike which runneth northwest ~~to a place calld~~ till it looseth it selfe in Troutbeck aforesaid at a place called Espland, where it beares the name of Burthet Beck.

{N.E.}

On the north east \ it is invironed / with the parish & lordship of Dufton (from which it is divided from Espland aforesaid by Troutbeck (or Burthet) following it all along up the river to Hikeup Dalehead, near which place it springs‡. Thence eastward in a streight line to the highway, which ~~goes~~ headeth from (the town of) Dufton to \ a place calld B. in the said parish. / Thence \ by the said way which you follow eastwards / (down that ~~street~~ highway) eastwards to the High Wath of Masebeck. Thence \ to the / S.E. & by Masebeck descending S.E. /down the said ~~beck~~ \ river / to a place calld Broad Mea near the Low Wath of Masebeck {not a boggy but a rushy benty place}, divideing it all a long \ N.E. / from \ the parish of / Dufton ~~parish aforesaid~~.

{E.}

On the east with Rummakirk in Yorke\shire / being divided from it by a streight line \ southwards / from Broad Mea Foote, up the midle of it to the bought \ or bending / of Mickle Fell. Thence by a streight line to the hurrock of stones on the top of Mickel Fell, where wee began: John Hill.

[Machell's Notes: I.338]

*{Marcton parish surely never grass grew.}

†Query If it touch upon Midleton. Qu. of John Hill: How twixt Bongate and Brampton.[752]

‡{It springs in Dufton parish near Narrow Gate.}

---

[749] Two interlineated and superimposed words here have not been transcribed.

[750] MS: 'Troutbeck Foote: {On the north} Thence on the north, with Kirkby \ thore parish / & ~~Murton parish~~ from which tis divided from Troutbeck Foote to Kirkby thore brig by old Troutbeck Steed \ on N. and nor-east / with ~~or rather S. east~~ Murton parish or by the ~~thence eastwards up~~ the Street (or hedge).'

[751] This could easily be read as 'Meal' Fell, see I.341.

[752] Machell's source was John Hill of 'The How' between Bongate and Brampton, Westmorland.

[Further versions of the Bounds]

[III.65]

Thence {N.} on the North with Kirkbythore parish from which 'tis divided by the old Beck-Steed & som part of Troutbeck, till you com at Kirkbythore Bridge where it meeteth with Long Marton parish \ & / from which tis divided on the N. & N.E. by the great Romane-Way (commonly called \ Hagh Street antiently / Kings Street & High-Street) till you com at a place\ from Kirkbythore Bridge to Baron / called Baron Cross on this side Apleby; & so directly to Storray Close Nooke {whence it branches to Apleby} which is near there unto, the foresaid way running all this while directly S.E. from Kirkbythore Bridge & divide in the Lordship of C. & B.,

[III.67]

by the latter of which it is yet hem'd in & divided from it with a certain \ crooked / settle extending eastwards from Storrow-Close-Nooke to Bongate Field Dike at Bon-roodes Head & by the said dike to Crundale Head, descending northwards. Thence by the midle of Crundale Bottom (a famous foote race near unto Apleby) to Langton Tarne Sike; thence by the said sike which runneth N.W. to a place calld Espland, where it enters Troutbeck {called here also Burthet Beck} which divideth it (hence) on the northeast from the parish & Lordship of Dufton to Hicupdale Head (near which place it springeth from the parish of Dufton, called here also Burthet Beck, & where the parish of Dufton comes in & and adjoynes, by which it is bordered on the north-east & from which tis divided by \ the river / Troutbeck (or Burthet \ Beck /) following it all along up the river to Hicupdale Head near which place it springs. Thence by a streight line extending eastwards to the highway which leadeth from Dufton to a place calld Birkdale in the said parish; thence by the said way running still eastwards to the High-Wath of Mase-Beck; thence by Mase-Beck descending S.E. to a place \ swang / calld Broad Mea* which is near unto the Low-Wath of Masebeck where (it toucheth on) Rumakirkirk parish (in the county of York)† & enjoyneth unto it on the E. side thereof, being onely divided by a straight mathematical line extending S. wards \ or may be S.E. / from Broadmea Foote up the midle of the bought or bending of Mickle Fell & so to an hurrock or carrack of stones on the very top of Mickle Fell End.[753]

Machell's Notes: III.67

*{Broad Mea, a piece of green benty ground compassd with ling, which is so calld.}[754]
†{Rumakirk parish in the county of Yorkeshire comes in at its border upon the N. side.}

[I.307]

{Bongate Church}

St Michaels is called Bongate in Apleby[755] 18. Henry 8. [1526-27] in the Record of the Mau[c]h[ell] de Crak[enthorp.] And in St Michaels in Apleby was the Chantery \ late / of William English, but anciently founded;[756] both which, with the other of St Mary, were given by way of augmentation to Sir Leonard Longhorn,[757] chaplain, for teaching the Grammar Schoole att Apleby: Anno Dom. 1515, 9. Henry 8. Witness: Henry Salkeld, tunc majore;[758] Richard Garnett, Vicario; Rowlando Machell & Hugone Machel; Edmundo Machell; Johe Hilton, et alijs.

[I.507]

{Machellorum familia Scholæ Appelbiensi Benefactor perpetua assidua continua.[759]
Mr Ja[mes] rechard.

[753] MS. I.310 also references Crundale: 'At Crundale Bottome … is a place very commodious & frequently used for running of races, either on foot or with little horses. I thinke it is in the parish & lordship of Bongate? {Sed Quaere}'.
[754] See also MS. III.63; I.338.
[755] MS: '{St Michaels} it is called Bongate in Apleby.'
[756] *N&BI* refers to a lease of a garden granted in '7. Edward 4.' (1467-68), 'by Sir James Harrington (patron) and John Winton, chaplain of the chantry of Sir William Englys, knight.' The lease was found in the 'town chest of Appleby.' *N&B1*, 342.
[757] Langhorn.
[758] 'Then mayor.'
[759] 'The Machell family was a perpetual and constant and continuing benefactor of Appleby School.'

L.M.[760] Esq., a duly [appointed] benefactor to Apelby school concilio et auxilio.}[761]

[I.308]

[Arms and Monuments]

The armes of the Mauchells de Crakanthorpe were formerly in diverse parts of Bongate Church, viz. in the east window att large and in the little window next to the quire under which the Heltons have now theire seat, but they were taken downe and lost at the repareing of the said church, either by the neglegence or knavery, which more to be suspected, of the ~~bribe~~ glasier who was bribed by one that envied the antiquity of that ancient family. This was don in my time & I could if I had a mind give a more particular account concerneing it. There are no coates of armes now remaneing except the Cliffords \ which are / in that little south quire next to the pulpit in the east window thereof & some upon the timber, now much defaced; but as near as I am able to conjecture they are as followeth, viz. Argent a ~~f~~ Gules.[762] Argent a fess S[able][763] 6 anuletts the colours decayed, but I take them to be Musgraves; Sable, the charge defaced, which I take to be Machells, for they are the most ancient ~~gentry~~ inhabitants of this parish.

There \ are / no monuments observable in the church excepting one which is the figure of a woman laying long upon a through stone under a little arch on the north side of the church, and above it within the arch is an eschuction[764] parted per pale: in the 1st 6 anuletts, in the 2nd 3 water budgetts, which I take to be Musgraves & Rosses Armes, and that monument to have bin erected there in memorie of some of the Rosses who were matched into the family of the Musgraves who resided some time at Morton in this parish, which was heretofore a Lordship of theirs but afterwards sold unto the Hiltons. There is allso in quire near to the Altar a large marble through of a blewrish colour, but without any inscription, under which the ancestours of

[I.309]

the Machells of Crackenthorpe doe lye interred & were never ambitious of a fairer monument.

‘Tumulo Pompeius Nullo’: Martial vide.[765]

[Machell’s Notes: I.349]

I finde a warrant for a tree out of Morland wood to Mr Fetherston, Vicar, towards the repareing of the seats in the Dean and Chapter quire. Bering date 1605. Subscribed by Barn. Rob.; Edw. Maplet; W. Men; Richard Sibson. Directed to Adam Trigge, keeper of their woods att Mooreland.

There were in that quire the east window the Machell arms att large, and agane in the body of the Church in the first northside window next to the quire over the place where Mr Hilton sits, taken away when the church was glasen’d and repared; I forbear to speake by whome or how, to prevent descention.[766]

---

[760] Lancelot Machell, Thomas Machell’s father.

[761] Concilio et auxilio: ‘with his advice and assistance.’

[762] In this sentence the consonant ‘f’ [fess?] has been scored through.

[763] The last letter is faint; it could be ‘S’, ‘I’ or ‘g’.

[764] Escutcheon.

[765] ‘Pompey had no tomb.’ See Martial, *EPIG. XC. Epigrammata contraria*: the 2 Epigrams made on Licinus a basely born but wealthy barber of Rome, who had a marble tomb:
‘Marmoreo tumulo Licinus jacet, at Cato parvo. Pompeius nullo: credimus esse Deos?’ Translates as:
‘Licinus in Marble, Cato in a small Tomb lies. Pompey in none: can we there be Gods surmise?’
Another Distich answers that the Gods reward worthy Men with fame and felicity.
‘Saxa premunt Licinum, vehit alte Fama Catonem. Pompeium titulis: Cedimus esse Deos.’ Translates as:
‘Stones press down Licinus, Fame Cato high doth mount. Titles raise Pompey: Gods there be we count.’
Machell’s allusion is to Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great), who was defeated in civil war by Julius Caesar and murdered in Egypt in 48 B.C. Pompey’s head was severed (it was later burned in a funeral pyre by one of his freedmen) and his body thrown into the sea. No tomb for him, therefore, although he had been one of the leading Roman generals and statesmen of the late Republic. In the context, Machell is evidently declaring that it is no shame for the Crackenthorpe Machells to have a plain, uninscribed tomb when Pompey the Great had none.

[766] ‘Dissension.’

Familia de Colleby: John de Colby test. apud cart Berwis (penes Blenkinsop)}
Hugh de Colleby 1343 circa. 16° Ed. 3; 17° Ed. 3
Familia de Heltun: Thomas He\t/on, de Hel \t/on Coronator 33. Henry 6. [1454-55]

The Fryeredge
I finde in the evidence chest of the Machells of Crakenthorp {In a bill of} the fests[767] of Guy Nelsons forth bringing: s. d. but I suppose in the time of Henry 8. for there is mencon of Ambrose Machells wife. Amongst other things – as to sex priefes[768] ij^{s} iij^{d}; for proveing of the testament, 3^{s} 4^{d}; making it, iiij^{d}.

Memorandum to the Prior of Freers for Fraternyte: 1^{d}
Item for Nottgyld x^{d} ob[769] for one pare of shoes shoyngs:[770] iiii^{d}.

{Apelby: the Baliffes principl men even in the time of Henry 8. – major Bal. et com. anno ejus 9^{0}, see Cart. Machell} de Famili Machaellorum.

[I.305]

Chaples; Hamletts.

[Chapels]
At Crakenthorpe up the top of the hill, which was standing till of late years – an other I suppose in the way betwixt Coupland Beck Bridge & Bongate Head if you goe the direct way by the old hedge steed; for on the left hand is a square platte imcompassed with stones, formerly a wall but now lay rudely in a continued rainge, & in the midle thereof an oblonge which I take to be the ruines of the chaple & the square in which it stand the chapple yard. Peradventure the Towne extended hither, ~~for~~ \ but / there are noe houses nor villages nor hamletts nearare to it now than Bongate Head, & that I thinke is ½ a mile distant. But certane it is that the High Street in Bongate which leads toward Coupland Bridge has comed very near as far as the moore where the little sike runns. Follow all that lane till you come att steep descent where it contracts itself on a sudden as far and wide, and the pavement of street very faire to be discovered by the whole bredth of the lane. & the lands which lay on either side by their ridges & hedge steeds contribute very much to the confirmation of the same. Howbeit there are now houses built a thwart at the head of Bongate, and a fold walled in which beyond all dispute has not bin so formerly, and the barne & wall were both reared in my time.
I thinke there was allso a parochiall chapple formerly att Murton,[771] for in the levelling their garden platte there severall sculles and mens bones were found, as I have bin long since informed.

[III.72A]

[Short Notes on families and tenancies in Bongate, Howgate Foot and Battle-brow.]

Crackenthorp. N.W. ab Ecclesia 1 mile.
Bongate. Langton E. ¾. Now III customary and one of them has freehold there also. 1 house of the Lords calld Salkeld Tenement in 1684. Entered by a writ of possession in the right of R.B.

Batterburgh. Kirkber E. ¾ at[772] Court. 2^{s} stirrup rent. Now Burton & Thanet.

Battleburrow, N. ¼, consists of XII familyes and is all burgage land. And most of them have Customary Estates out of the Liberties of the Burrow, held of Appelby Castle.
A religious house – Lady Well. St Nicholas.

Bongate near the Vic[arage] ~~a place tenements calld by the name of Paradice~~. It consists of about XXIV \ 29 by my own observation / besides the vicarage. All customary tenants excepting II

[767] 'Fest': 'putting out cattle, sheep etc. to graze at a fixed price per head.' Or, 'bind to an agreement or contract.' See Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary*, 2, 339.
[768] Possibly from 'pree, prieve, priefe': to prove. Thus, 'six proofs [convincements]': See Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary*, 4, 610.
[769] 10½d. See the English Glossary.
[770] 'Shoeings.' Middle English: shoyng(es). 'Shoes (collectively).' *OED*.
[771] Morton.
[772] The short word following is obscured.

freeholders who have also tenant right, & bought them selves free of Mr Robert Hilton. Ten[an]t Holds of the Dean & Chapter i.e. calld Paradice of Mr George Hilton of Bondgate Town Head.

Robert Dover \ next house / a freehold, has a priviledge at the Castle mill to grind first after the mill is clear; otherwise he may stop the miln eye;[773] & for this he is to keep the fier in and be ready to let the miller in to light a candle any time of the night.

Howgate Foote, N. from the church at North End of Bongate, about IV \ or VI / familyes, 1 of which is customary estate, the other burgages, one of which is called St Johns Croft.[774]

[III.73]

Bongate – hath 2 or 3 streets now remaneing {of which there are only 2 or 3 freeholds, Sc. the vicar[age] & 2 more that purchased their freedom,[775] lately of [blank]}.[776] For it is built in manner of a T and conteineth in it about XXX f[amilies], Sc. from N. to S. 20, from E. to West 10.
Howgate Foote is in this parish, lying ~~as Crack~~ \ N. / from the church ⅛ of a mile, conteining about V or VI familyes\ is so called from the / {Howness or Hollowness of the yeat or street, one of which is a Customary Estate belonging to Ap[pleby] Castle as a parte of the manner of Bongate; the other are members.}[777] \ The house at the Bridge End / being a member of the Burrow of Appleby.

And so likewise is Battle-brow – so calld perhaps from som notable skirmish with Scotts when they used to make their inroads ~~hither~~.[778] And the common at the N.W. end of the said street being called Jock Green may very well seem to confirm the same. This conteineth in it about XII f[amilies] \ in Rasebeck / the chief houses of which are the highest & lowest on the western row. The one belonging to Mr Philip Machell \ late Alderman of Appelby / descended from the Machells of Crak[enthorpe] Hall, whose ancestor was the famous H.M. \ of Cr. / in K. H. the 8th time \ of whome more there. / The other to Mr George Hilton \ one of the feofees / of Lankashire, a 2nd brother of the Hiltons of Murton, which house was builded out of the ruines of an old Frieredge behind the opposite row of houses where the grounds adjacent still cary that name; & it seems to have had it dedication to the Virgin Mary, because there is a well spring out of those grounds with a fluent current called Lady Well, which runneth down the back \ side / of the hous[e]s on the eastern row, & serves them with water as it has served the friers formerly, & might be of use to the whole street; & a row of houses as far as Howgate if

[III.74]

there were occasion, with a little labour, where all along there has bin formerly ancient burgages, it lying in Gards, every one of which is a Burgage.

{Midle Row}
The Midle Row (where Mr Lowsons house is the chief) is but an improvement lately made, which takes away the spaciousness of it \ that street / & so likewise does the barne & improvement before Machells house; but if these were removed & a line drawn by the frieridge barne to Howgate Foote, & good houses builded, ~~it would~~ \ & likewise from Machels houses to Mr Hiltons, & a banke of stone straight from thence by the water to the House of Corection & so on, with houses in a streight line to Howgate Foote, which is all the extent of the Beast Market, it would make a noble street indeed, and be bravely watered with the said spring and River Eden, & might be convenient for a manufacture. Had Sir John Lowther instead of a facture house at Lowther, made buildings here in order to a trade, the only thing which the town stands in need of, he had so obliged them as to have deserved an eternal acknowledgement to himself & posterity; & it is a worke may beseam a noble-man, when any shal take so much \ pitty / upon it as to ~~restore this ancient burrow~~ \ lend theyre hand to lift up this ancient burrow agane, which has laid grovelling so long upon the ground.

---

[773] Mill-eye: the opening which conveys meal from the millstones to the meal-bin. *OED*.
[774] The information is repeated in the margin.
[775] Freeholds.
[776] See III.72A: Robert Halton.
[777] That is, ‘of the Borough’.
[778] Tales of skirmishes with the Scots are often repeated, e.g. I.173; 1.304; I.346-47.

[III.74]

{St Nicholas}
Next to Jock Green on the East side there lyes a large tract of ground which belonged of old to a little hospital bearing that name. It stood where the farme house standeth now opposite to the vennel call'd Nansens Wiend where only the river runns betwixt them, & hath stepping stones for convenience of passage, & to joyn it \ as it / were to the Market town, when the water is low.[779] Here was ~~great store~~ \ floore /of flags discovered in [blank], cut diamond square. It was anciently a hospital for IIII leapers.

[Machell's Notes: III.74]
{Erming Street, see Dugdale, *Warwickshire*, p.6, col.2. Q. A Strat in Eremo.}[780]

[III.75]

Who were the 1[t] founders of it I know not, onely Robert de Veteripont confirmed to the Abby of Shap. By the state of the ground \ & tho a distinct thing now of it selfe / it should seeme to have belonged to the Lordship of Crackenthorp, & to have bin taken of the demanes which hemms it in on the N. & E. side from the river by springs in a mire by Hangman Close,[781] which is now the utmost extent of limit of this Lordship of Crakanthorp, at the Lain End which comes from Battlebrough & seems to have terminate[d] an ancient street there. It is calld Hangmans Close \ thought to have taken that unpleasing name / either from som of the Machells of Crakenthorp having bin sheriffs (tho I finde no such thing) & granting this dureing their shrivalty to his executioner; or from having Furcas[782] amongst their priviledges, which were very great, as shal be shewn. And as I remember, if my childish apprehension deceived me not then, I have seen the stumbps of a pare of gallows within this close, or the little hillocks whereon they have stood.

[I.120A]

Murton

\ N. / E. 1mile ½, consistes of about \ xxiii / families, ~~most of them~~ \ 13 or 14 of which freeholds, som few arbitrary, the rest farmers. A chaple; formerly a good mannerhouse the seat of the Hiltons, but part of the demaine lands there were lately sold to Lawrence Fletcher of Strickland. A well runs into the house.

[Hilton/Helton]

Hilton: E. 1 m ½ [from Langton], and ½ a mile destant from Murton, consistes the like number of houses; most of them are freehold estates lately sold to them by Mr Thomas Hilton of Murton.[783] XII freeholds, the rest customary.

[I.305]

I finde Thomas Helton de Burton & Thomas Hilton de Hilton both witneses att a deed in the 1[st] of Elizabeth, so that by this it should seem the Murton family was then peculiarly called Hiltons of Hilton. And I suppose they had no other place then but Helton at which they dwelt on and whereupon they were called Heltons of Helton, tho they had butt ½ of the lordship; for I read of one William Musgrave de Moreton: 21. Elizabeth [1578-79], at which time allso there were Sir Simon of Edenhall & Mr Ingaram of Plompton. I finde T. Hilton of Hilton Gent, & George Hilton son & heir apparent of Thomas, bound in bond for performance of articles of agreement (29 April, 17. of King James [1619]).[784]

---

[779] A margin comment (MS I.339) provides, {'& [wood at] St Nicholas, which is supposed to be a piece of ground take[n] of[f] from this Lordship & given in nature to a piouse and religiouse use. The maintenance of Leaper[s] by som of the Machells of the other piece of the said Lordship was given of by Halth le Machel & Eve his wife to the Priory of Carlile in the f[oundation] Charter.'}
[780] 'A street in the wilderness', from the Latin and Greek, 'eremus.'
[781] MS: 'which hemms it in on the N. & E. side from the river by ~~the cource of~~ a little sike ~~which comes into Eden ad St Nicholas Dub Foote &~~ springs in a mire by Hangman Close …'
[782] 'Fork-shaped gallows', from Latin, 'furca'.
[783] MS.I.310: a note remarks, '{Morton} See towards the beginning of this booke a relation of the place & family of Hiltons, \ it was sold in 1696 by Mr George Hilton the younger to Sir John Lowther of L., except som mortgaiged to foe to Lawyer Fletcher /.'
[784] A note remarks, 'Arms & Matches of Hilton se in Kirkby Thore, a loose paper?'

[I.120A]

There is a manner house ~~in~~ \ much / demolished, which belongs to him. There is a smelt mil & corn miln. One halfe of this town belong'd to Mr Ciprian Hilton of Burton & Ormside, who sold them free; & II freeholds more at Hilton called Hilton Dykes. ½ a mile E. from the town a chaple whose walls are yet standing. \ A quarter of a m[ile] beyond the chaple / the hamblet of Brekinber,[785] S. from Hilton ½ ,& E. from the[re] 1m. and ¼. VI [families.] & Holmes Close, 1 house, freehold.

[III.91]



Figure 1.1.34. Hilton. 'Over the arched gate of the court'. III.91.

a. Over the wash-house dooer opposite to the Gate, Hilton Single, in a bordure with 2 saltiers only, with T. on one side of it & H. on the other, and these figures [blank] 16*.
b. This is waterd from Through cot well.
c. Under the table of an old window into the kitchen are 2 antic[786] faces. And above the 1ᵗ light an ape & a rabbit combatant or rather toying (being no great warriours) with their fore feet.
d. Over the hall chimney, this coate is drawn.[787]



Figure 1.1.35. Hilton. 'Over the hall chimney'. III.91.

At Viccarhight, on the S. West side of Gastal -Tarn above Murton Peat Moss, 2 miles N. from the Hall, are knout berrys[788] which grow upon an herb and are knotted like a bramble but yallow when ripe at Maudlin time – 22 July.[789]

[Machell's Notes: III.91]

*{a. By Mr Robert Hilton, who maryed Hilton of Hilton Castle in Episc. Dunelm;[790] b. Thomas Hilton, father of the said Robert.}

[I.306]

{Langton}

Langton is a mannor, the moyity or ½ whereof was passed to Roger de Clifford & his heires amongst other things, 2. Edward 2. [1308-09] by John de Crumbwell & Idonea his wife. And in the 8. yere of

[785] Brackenber.
[786] 'Antique.'
[787] The text up to this point overwrites identical text, written lightly in pencil (Machell's field-notes).
[788] Knoutberry: variant of knotberry; a local name of the Cloudberry, Rubus Chamæmorus. *OED*.
[789] Maudlin is Magdalen. 22 July is St Mary Magdalene's feast-day.
[790] 'Bishopric of Durham.'

Edward 2. [1314-15] upon the death of Robert de Clifford we have this account concerneing it, ex inquisition capt. apud Appleby est ibidem capitale &c.[791]

There is there a manner house (it seems no great one) et valet per annum 6d.	0: 0: 6
40 acres of demane land quam que libet ac. valet per annum 4d & sum è	0:14: 4
14 acres of meadow, 6d per acre per annum et sum est	0: 7: 0
20 oxgangs of land quam que lib[et] valet per annum 2s et sum est	2: 0: 0
5 messuages of Cotterells burned quorum que libet valet per annum 6d, sum est	0: 2: 6
1 water mill & valet per annum 20s	1: 0: 0
a fulling mill allso, let at 6s per annum	
	Li. s. d.
Dem and Tot. Dub?	iiii iii iiii[792]

summa est 5: 14: 0
19. Edward 3. [1345-46]

The Barony of Westm'land belongs to Apleby Castle. Certaine tenements in Apleby, Langton, Kings Meburne &c. belongs to the same Barony.

{Langton* 1. Edward 3. [1327-28]}
I finde by inquisition taken att Brough May 6th Anno 1. Edward 3. [1327] by the o\a/th of Robert de Newbiging, William de Helton, Thomas Mauchaell &c. as followeth:

Dicunt &c. They say their is a sute or cituation of a certane manner burn'd by the Scotts and it is worth nothing yerely for want of tenents & by reason of the destruction of the Scotts. And there are there:

30 acres of demane land, which lye untilled for want of tenents and by ~~reason of the~~ destruction of Scotts, the herbage whereof is worth yerely 18d	0: 1: 6
30 oxgangs of land which lye untilled for the cause aforesaid the herbage whereof worth per annum	0:15: 6
16 acres of demane medow and it is worth yerely 3s & noe more for the \ too / great abundance of medow, and pasture in those parts	0: 3: 0
4 cotages which yield ~~per annum~~ yerely	0: 2: 0
1 water mill	
The pleas & perquisites of the court of Apleby and Langton are worth yerely 4s	0: 4: 0

It seems by this that the Court was kept att Apleby, & chief manner in the Barony. N.B. That medow was cheap in this part of the country, not because it was bad, but because of its superabundance.[793] And that this was terrible inroade of the Scotts, for the proofs of which see Meburne Regis.[794]

[Machell's notes: I.306]

*{The Armes of Langtun see in Mr Knight's letters to me.}

[I.341]

Lancton was a Lordship, J. Hill says, of it selfe, forfeited in Dakers Rebellion which they calld D. Read {Dacre Read or Road} according to the Bordure Expression, when they made an inroad – the owner of Wrights house they say was hang'd on his own dooer post, & many more of them. It was (I thinke) in time of Queen Elizabeth {circa 1570}.[795] They marched up as far as Hall more by Whinfell Side, but there, upon what occasion I know not, were all dispersed & never cross'd Eden.

[791] 'From the inquisition [post mortem] taken at the Capital [mansion] at Appleby.'
[792] £4 3s 4d.
[793] In the margin Machell has written, 'Memorandum Queens Coll. in Oxon founded about this time against devastation of our country.' [Written partly in Latin.]
[794] King's Meaburn.
[795] 'Dacre's Raid', took place in 1569. See Richard S. Ferguson, *A History of Cumberland* (London, 1890), 249-50; and see above, III.55.

[I.343]

Brampton

This lordship may seem to have bin \ formerly / in the Machells about the con \ of Crakenthorp /{circa Conquest} for that the meadow in the west end of this Lordshipp, by the skurtes of Whelp Castle, the river Troutbeck being only betwixt them, & which was part of Brampton in maine, is calld Machells-Ing to this very day; which now belongs to Kirkbythore Hall, by a match of the Whartons; with one the daughter & heir, Lancaster, Lord of this manner – in which name it continued till [blank]

[I.346]

& I read in Hollinshed \ ad Cowpland Beck bridge* / David, king of Scots haveing spoyled as far as that place with (40) or 3 score thousand fighting men, was taken in the field sore wounded (for he fought very valiantly) and carryed away prisoner by a Northumberland Esq. & attended only with 8 of his servants to his own Castle 30 miles from the place where the batle was fought†. His name was John Copland, who refused to deliver his royal prisner to Queen Philippa, King Edward 3. being then in France besiegeing Callis, returneing to her this determinate \ peremptory / answer – that he would not deliver his said prisoner David King of Scots to any person liveing, man or woman, except only to the King of England, his Sovereigne Lord & Master. But after haveing waited on the king at Callis, he delivered him up by the Kings order. And \ from the King Ed. / received for his pains £500 sterling of yearly rent to him & his heires forever; & was allso made Esq. of his body. 15000 men killd on both [sides].

This batle was fought on Saturday next after the feast of St Michael in 1346‡. But this I give not much credit to, because {in truthe in deed without date, it is writ Capmanbeck; forsan taine ab hominem capiendo.} But this must be a fancy, except it was som former King of Scots, for the deed's sans date and dateing was used long before the time of King Edward 3.

[Machell's Notes: I.346]

*Nevil Cross batle but that was nere Durham.

†{Cowplin in Northumberland: 1. Glendale Ward, lat[itude]: 55; 35 l[ongitude]; 1.31 West; that and no more, in England.}

‡{In Hollinshed: Ed. 5. pag. 376: a.10. 20. 6 [?]}

[I.309]

Crakanthorp in Bongate in Apleby

In manerio de Crakanthorp, arbores sunt fructum proferentes, non solum insitivae manus industria, sed etiam ipsius humi natura in Sylvis Sc. et locis istius modi in cultis.[796] {Cheryes in the chaple woods & a sort of apple} {This gave name to the family of Crackenthorpes: vide Newbigging parish. Crackenthorpe – in the Saxon tongue, Cracken – signifyes nuts, & Thorpe a town or village – i locus corrillarum […][797] a place of nutt trees, which grow in great plenty throughout this lordship. And as Westmorland in generall may be termed the Gardine of Eden, so this part is the Garden of Nutts.[798] Such an expression wee meet with Capitulum 6. 11.[799] See Streets *Reconsiler Epist*. Ad loc[800]

[796] 'In the manor of Crackenthorpe there are fruit-bearing trees planted not only by the labour of a gardener's hand, but also by the nature of the soil itself, in the woods, that is, and in wild places of that kind.'

[797] Two illegible words have been struck through here. 'Coryletum' means a copse of hazel trees. Corylus Avellane is the Latin name for the common hazel.

[798] There are other meanings; e.g. '… named from some rookery there; crake to this day amongst the country people is used to signify a rook or crow,' *N&B1*, 344; and, 'Krakr, a crow, and Thorp, a hamlet', see Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorp', 416.

[799] A 'capitulum' is a short passage or reading from the Bible. *OED*. Machell is referring to 'The Song of Solomon, 6:11' (*AVB*): 'I went down into the garden of nuts to see the fruits of the valley, and to see whether the vine flourished, and the pomegranates budded.' A note elsewhere (MS. I.335) also remarks on Crackenthorpe's fertile soil: 'Crakanthorp aboundes with fine herbs for the pot'.

[800] The rest of this margin comment has perished. 'Streets *Reconsiler Epist*.' is at present unknown to this editor.

[III.83]

Manner de Crakenthorp

{Villa nuctifera, locus corillarum. The Town & distance}

About 1m. & ½ N.W. from the parish church lyeth Crakenthorp,[801] a village consisting of \ about / 30 families whereof 3 are freholdes, the rest arbitrary to Crakenthorpe Hall which lyeth at the high end of the towne at the W. side of it.

[I.330]

Here was born Thomas Machell sometimes fellow of Queens College in Oxford; afterwards rector of Kirkbythore; Chaplain in ordinary to King Charles the 2, and after 7 years absence in the countrey, elected fellow, with[out] his privicy[802] or seekeing after, of the Philosophick Society in Oxford.[803]

[III.77]

~~Norwest from~~ \ Under / the Chappel \ a little norwest / at the distance of ½ a quarter of a mile stands the Town of Crakenthorp,[804] which takes its name from Craken (signifying nutts) & Thorp (a village): both Saxon words; as much as to say the Town of Nutts from the plenty of nut trees, or Hassells, which grow there abouts on the bankes of Eden. It hath been larger than now it is \ by now about XXXIII, of which 2 freeholds* under the Lord of Crakenthorp, the rest arbitrary; / diverse houses on the S. side of it being long since demolished; and there ar som vestigia \ remaneing / of 2 Little Hamlets: one at Brockam Banke; so called from being infested with badgers in the time of old, & I my selfe have seen one killd there ~~of later dayes~~ in the old workes or holes, since I can remember. And another at [blank] where the foundations are fair to be seen and where this stone was taken up by me – and several Handmills,[805] such as the Romans, in the River Eden, where a pleasure boate rideth, which belongs to this Hall and Nature here hathe sported herselfe.

[Machell's Notes: III.77]

*Freholds? 2 Freholds: Sc. Dobson, Shepherd.

[III.78]

Nature indeed hath sported herselfe here in this place* and wants but the industry of a Little Art to make a most delightfull seat. Here vines which hardly could be destroyed (& som of them were transplanted hence to Appelby Castle, Ormside Hall & other places)† used have bin found; it being near within a bowshot of this ancient Romane fortification.[806] Before which agane ~~near~~ \ towards / Kirkbythore is a prætertura, square fort, or watch-tower called Maden Harbour, from the same occasion I doe suppose, that Maden Castle on the top of Stanemore & Maden Way from K. to the Picts Wall have taken there names‡. By the \ N.E. / sides of this camp & fort comes the Great Romane Cassway called Kings Street, leading from Appleby to Kendal \ N.W. / on the left hand of which these urnes found \ in a place formerly calld Machells Banke / &c. But now, by exchange it belongs to the house at the Bridge End, which was given by Halth de [Machell] and confirmd \ how long after I know not / by H. Morvil. The water then ran in a channel calld Old Troutbeck Stead ~~it was made out~~ \ and so continued, till of later years that one William Dobson, haveing lands on both side the river, cut the channel straighter for ganeing of ground and by his own convenience, as was made out by the jurey of Crakenthorp & Kirkbythore, summond on purpose to decide a controversie about the tythe corne, & ~~by consent~~ it was determind [blank]

[Machell's Notes: III.78]

*{ad marginal n[ote] on the other side.}[807]

[801] On MS.III.72A, Crackenthorpe is said to be 1 mile from the parish church.

[802] 'Privacy' or 'privity' is the state of being privy to some act. *OED*. Here, Machell impresses upon his readers that he did not actively seek his fellowship of the Society.

[803] See also III.89.

[804] MS: 'the \ Hall / Town of Crakenthorp.'

[805] Recorded also on MS.I.310A: 'And there was allso a Roman milstone, such as they used for their hand-mills, which followed their camps, which milstone was found hereabouts.'

[806] Below this text the MS shows an outline sketch plan of a fort measuring 2cm x 1cm.

[807] See III.77, above.

†{Speedy-moor, Speedy-Inge. From rideing out their coursers here,[808] the latter of which has give name to som tenants of mean account who seem to have been tenants of it. Despething or Speding.}
‡{Query the reason here.}
{Camp; Warren; Mier; Quarry.}

[III.76][809]

The Lordship of Crackanthorp extends itselfe hence[810] being the East point of it, to old Troutbeck foote \ in the west / where the common & dow[n]field of Kirkbythore meet, being above 3 miles, and the River Eden runns all along in divers meanders on the \ W. / side of it, divideing it (by it[s] ancient Course) from other Lordships the fishing of which* hath bin (all along) clam'd & injoyed \ by the Lords of Crackenthorp / except in the Libertyes of the Mayor of Appleby.

[Roger Head]
On the High mor† High Demanes [near] the ~~River~~ Eden is a woody hill called Roger ~~Heaved~~ Head‡; anciently writ Roger He\a/ved from Heaveing up, as your moales doe the Earth into Heapes or Hills; so Rogers Heaved is Roger Hill; now corruptly & by abbreviation calld Roger Head – the only memorial which time hath left us here in this place of the famous & Honorable Roger Machell – Vicechancellor of England, Lord Keeper of the Broad Seal to King Richard the I^{t}. – who was drown at Messana &c.

[Machell's Notes: III.76]

*The fishing of Eden.
†On the moore by the High House is an ancient fortification which I know [not] whether it should refer to this or Bramton.
‡Roger Head because the B. are not well understood: ergo in Both.
{Roger heaved see Wulfsheeved in Blo[u]nt.[811] Bunesheaved. Huesheved – Morvil Hill.}[812]

[III.85]

whom Hoveden (not without admiration, for he writes it in a different character) calls Malus Catulus, & tells us he was Vice-Chancellor of England in King Richard the First time &c.[813]

[VI.221]

[Nobility]{Roger Machell: Vice Chancellor of England}
But here (I presume) we must take the word Nobles[814] in a large sense, for ~~as~~ Thanes & Barons in those antient times that were near the Saxons; and not in that strictness of acceptation which is used now a days for the Greatest Nobles; for we do not pretend to \ have had / any such in this \ antient / family, unless Roger Machel (virtute officis) as being Lord Keeper of the Broad Seal and Vice Chancellor of England

[VI.223][815]

may be counted ~~one~~ \ as such; / who, though he was shipwrackt farr from this place (at Messana in Sisily) yet his name can never be drown'd in oblivion, or wash'd away \ quite out of remembrance / so long as Roger-hev ed remaineth.[816]

Now this Roger-Heved is the top of a pleasant and woody hill in the demaines of this Lordship of Crakenthorp, ~~as you goe~~ \ on your way / from thence unto Apalby, about as far beyond the chapel (when it was standing) as that chapel was distant from the Hall, having \ had / a most delightful prospe\c/t both of woods & waters, & of diverse churches, castles & towers which lye round about. \ and / it is now vulgarly cald Roger Head, quasi locus Rogeri capitalis, quo summè delectari solebat.[817]

[808] 'Courser': 'a large powerful horse, ridden in battle, in a tournament etc. A charger'. *OED*.
[809] A margin comment on MS.III.75 provides very similar information.
[810] That is, from Hangman's Close: see Bondgate Parish: III.75.
[811] Thomas Blount, *Glossographia*.
[812] This note appears on I.339.
[813] Machell references Roger of Hoveden (or Howden), *Chronica Magistri Rogeri de Houedene* (written c.1169). For Roger Howden's career and writing, see D. Corner, 'Howden [Hoveden], Roger of (d. 1201/2), chronicler.' *ODNB*.
[814] Underlined in red ink and distinct from other underscoring.
[815] Also numbered p.31.
[816] A similar comment is written in the margin of the MS, here.
[817] 'As the principal place of Roger, in which he was accustomed to take greatest pleasure.'

But it was heretofore writ Roger Heved from the Saxon word Hovet, importing that summity {of} or top of a thing. And it was usual for persons of note in antient times to give names to such places.

{Hews Heaved vulgo Hews Seat, Morvills Hill}
Thus Hugh de Morvil, Lord of Westm'land, gave name (as tis thought) to an hill upon Stanemore near which Eden springs, call'd Hews Heved, & corrupt, Hews Seat; Orme, to Ormeside \ heved / – a little hill by the side of Eden whereon the church stands, which gives name to the parish & manner of Ormshead; Humphrey Matchael (a benefactor with Halth le Malchael to the priory of Carlile) to an hill nott \ far / from there calld Humphrey Head {for I never found any besides of the name.}[818]

[III.85]

{Ermit Holme}[819]
Below this agane at the head of the poole is a meadow called Ermin Holme, I suppose corruptlye for Hermit Holme, the chaplain somtime officiateing here, ~~being~~ possibly [a] hermit and delighting to walke in this solitary place, which was much larger than it is now in the memory \ of man. / For upon a difference twixt Mr Cristopher Lowther of Leathes & Lancelot Machell of Crakenthorp Esq., it was given in evidence by the old men, som of which are yet alive, that the great gray stone which lyeth now on the other side, layd in their time on this side the water, & so the farmers of Colby Leathes were constrained to keep within their ring dike, and to secure themselves with their fences at their own peril, as they were formerly wont to doe.[820]

[III.85]

At the high end of Ermit Holme is the hedge of St Nicholas, a little sike which runns downe before it, which springs in a mire within this Lordship where the wild ducks are wont for build. & at beyond that agane in the very nib or east end of the lordship and this high demane, is a place which is called Hangman Close. And here, following the Romane Way W., it leades quite st[raight] to this fortification at a place calld White Burwens ~~E~~. & d*. But the outworkes for certane run to Crakenthorpe.

[Machell's Notes: III.85]

*[Dufton]. If not in Brampton?

[I.72]

[Hangman Close]
There is a place {not far from Apleby} within the Lib[erty] of the Machell of Crackenthorp, which they call Hang-man Close, where some say a pair of gallows stood; & there are 2 little hills supposed to be the places where the posts were fixed, which they show to this day. The place seems to have had its name from being bestowed for some certaine time as a reward to the executioner, but whether this Lordship had an extraordnary prerogative (for it is an ancient one) or whether some of the Machells had bin Shirif, and upon that account might mintaine an executioner (haveing no aut[h]ority) I dar not determin but than (my thinkes) it is some thing odd that the gallow should [be] placed in his owne domain if he was only [s]hireive.

[I.74][821]

For amongst the writings at Crackenthorpe H[all] I finde that Hugh Machell of Crakenthorpe Esq. was appointed an assistant to Sir Thomas W\harton, / Knight, deputed warden of the West Marshes of

[818] This margin comment has been superimposed in ink over another written in pencil which contains: 'Umphrey dedit […] tenure of […] Dugdall *Monasticon*'. Another comment echoes the first. MS: 'And of old Umfry Heved & this Roger Machel (since whose sad fate I have not found another ~~of that name~~ \ so […] this family / to that Roger Heved which is here described.'

[819] A truncated passage (MS.III.76) reads, 'Ermin, either from Ermitas or from Hermit; the priest perhaps had an hermitage.' The rest is obscured by the binding.

[820] See MS.III.77 for a variant, which reads: 'Ermin Holme, which lyes betwixt the chaple wood & \ the wood of / St Nicholas wood by the side of the river, might takes it name from his using to walke & retire himselfe there. It was once much more spaciouse than it is now, for ancient men, upon a varience which the farme of Leathes gave in evidence since I can remember, that the great stone which lyeth now on the other side \ of the river / la\a/yd in their time on Ermin Holm banke.' Machell also noted (MS.I.89): 'Ermin, either from ermites or … \ from hermit; the priest perhaps led an hermit. /'

[821] A margin entry on this page of the MS lists such items as: houses of gentry, chapels, bridges, woods etc. with spaces left for numbers, but the spaces are blank.

Scotland (June 28, 29. H.8. [1537-38]) by a speciall warrant under the said Kings Signett and Signe Manual, and the ten[ants] of that Lordship ever did and doe yett hold their estates (amongst other conditions) by military \ (if I may say) / or as it is commonly called there, by Border Service. But now in Westm'land they live in more securitye, so that those tennantes who heretofore held their lands at a deare rate (the Hassard of Ciues)[822] doe now live in saifty and eat their bread in piece and quietness \ in a peacefull land. / However it be, there is nothing more hatefull to them \ at this day / nor ~~nothing~~ noe man in the world they sett less by, than a ~~Scott~~ lowland Scott; whome they looke upon both as trecherous and cowardly, 2 \ sordid vices / which they mortally abhor. But of this more in the next particular.[823]

[III.86]

Thence to the Cap[ital.][824] &c., to Maden Hol[d], to the urnes opposite to which ~~was~~ in Eden at a place call Chapledub, was the altar found at Fig. [blank]*

[Machell's Notes: I.86]

*But then: memo. to bring in the hamlets &c. at Crakenthorp Town.

[III.76]

{Chappel}

And at the foote of the said Dub, on the top of an hill called Chapple Hill, are the Ruines of Saint Giles, his Chaple, which belongd to this Lordship.[825] & where a well springeth on the south side of it. Here I suppose the priest that served in the times of popery lead an Hermits call life […],[826] whence Ermin Holme, a place near adjoyneing – vel ut supra. C.[827]

[I.335]

[Crackenthorpe Hall]

In the parish of Bongate or St Michael in Apelby at Crakanthorp is a very compleat piece of architecture \ ~~the best in this country for~~ / \ which exceeds all this country for vigor[828] / cald Crakenthorp Hall, raisd upon the old foundation but somewhat shorter than formerly, which is the seate of the ancient family of Machell of Crakenthorp {who have bin writt Esqrs} descended, as is more than probable from writeings \ I / have seene, continued tradition & other conjectures, from Whelp of Whelp Castle;[829] a great man at the Conquest but an opposer, as tis thought, of the Conqueror \ for the Castle was ruined about this time / whence his true descendants \ at least the Chiefe / seated at Crakenthorp were caled by him Mali Catuli & that each which was left at C[rakenthorp] left their name wholy & were denominated after the to[wn].

[I.330]

The Hall was repared but made somewhat shorter than before by Hugh Machell Esq. by the directions of Thomas Machell his brother anno domini 1685 to whom this Distich[830] is directed:

> Aspirante Deo, domus haec catulina antiqua resurgit,
> Sumptibus Hugonis ingenioque tuo.[831]

[822] 'The Hassard of Ciues [Cives]': 'The hazard of citizens.'
[823] The page goes on to describe the inhabitants of Westmorland, see below.
[824] 'Capital Messuage': the chief house on an estate; the mansion-house of a manor.
[825] 'are the Ruines of S~~rat~~ \t/ Giles, his Chaple, which belongd to this ~~wel~~l Lordship.'
[826] Two interlineated worda are unreadable here; the first begins '&' but the second word is illegible.
[827] 'Vel ut supra': 'just as above'. MS.III.84-85 provides similar information: '… a banke of wood, on the top of which stood somtime the Chaple of Crakenthorpe, the place being still called the Chapple Garth; and a wall adjoyneing the Chaple well, which Chaple was dedicated, as I have heard, to St Giles – a Relick.'
[828] The word, 'vigor' [?] is unclear.
[829] A note (MS.I.341), remarks: '{An ancient name: test. apud carta Thomae fil Galfr Mal. Cat.}' i.e. 'Witnessd in a charter of Thomas son of Galfrid Mali Catuli.'
[830] Latin: 'a couplet'.
[831] 'God's favour sees this ancient house arise; through Hugh, its owner's wealth and expertise.' MS.III.77 repeats this narrative: '{The Hall} {has bin often times built but repared of late at the cost of H.M. Esq. {by the direction of his Brother Thomas rector of K. to whom this Distick was afterwards dedicated: Aspirante Deo, Domus haec Antiqua \ Catulina / resurgit sumptibus Hugonis ing[eni]oque Tuo.}'

[There is] an oval stone in the Court in memory of Roger Machell ViceC. of England & Keeper of the Great Seale.[832] H.M. Roger.[833]

[III.77]

{Villa de Crakenthorp}
This is the manner house where Court Baron is kept, and – as the Learned in the Law doe thinke from freeing Blood wite[834] – a Court Leet also. They have weaf & stray.}
The Hall is a dilicate uniforme building with 2 cupilooes,[835] one for pleasure, the other made for a stack of chimneys exactly like it. It is pleasant, seated upon a woody banke of the River Eden overlooking the parke & other farer meadows on the S. & West side & having in view 2 or 3 castles. There is a descent on the back side of it ~~¼~~ \ half / of a mile to the Chaple dub.

[I.335B]



Figure 1.1.36. Crackenthorpe Hall. I.335B.

[III.83]

It is a ~~no dilicate~~ \ noble / pile of building, \ exactly uniforme / \ & of such a surpriseing symetree that it seemeth greater by far than it is, / faceing to the N. (as most of the principal seates doe), having a pedament \ in the front of it ~~the Hall doer & standeth~~ \ & 2 speres (or cupiloos on either side / at the top of the house, the one ~~for pleasure, the~~ \ being designed for pleasure only, the other ~~for uniformity's sake~~ for a stack of chimneys, ~~which cometh though of stone,~~ but ~~made so exactly~~ \ so truly / like ~~one another~~ \ ~~unto it,~~ / ~~that~~ you can \ scarce / descerne ~~it~~ the one from the other, which, standing on either side of the pedament, ~~in the midle of which you enter the Hall~~ are very gracefull as you enter the house.' {Armes} ~~There 2 courtes before it, and a way leads by them into the town from the town to the kitchen flanking the house,~~ wherein wee meet with these coates ~~relateing to the family~~ \ armes / !!![836]

[832] See *N&B1*, 345.
[833] 'Son of Roger'; a margin note here lists Machell names: '{Roger M. Catulis, Halthe Machel; John; Hugh Machel & Guy.}
[834] Bloodwite: '1. A fine payable for the offence of shedding blood; 2. a legal action for this offence; 3. the offence itself; 4. the right of levying the fine; 5. the privilege of exemption from it.' *OED*.
[835] A cupola is a 'diminutive dome rising above a roof; a dome-like lantern or skylight; in practical architecture, the ceiling of a dome'. *OED*.
[836] This passage has experienced much deletion and interlineation. Thomas Machell was the architect of his brother Hugh's new pedimented front at Crackenthorpe Hall in 1685, one of the first attempts to introduce classical architecture into Cumberland and Westmorland. Reference to the pediment dates this page to 1685 or afterwards. In 1686-88 Machell worked at Appleby Castle for Lord Thanet, probably on the classical east range. For Machell as architect, see Lionel Cresswell, 'Crackenthorpe: its Manor, Hall and the Machell Family', *CW2*, 33 (1933), 113-32, at 123-25.

[III.65]

[Notes on Art at Crackenthorpe Hall]
{Besides rarity, the stack of chimneys at Crackenthorpe and sliding casements and footed principles; besides the contrivance of the house, which by the shutting of a door or two is all made private, and by opening, public.}

[I.335B]

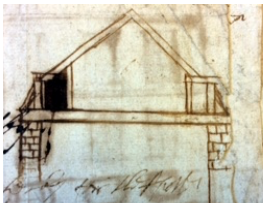


Figure 1.1.37. 'old timber footed … to make the garrets'. I.335A.

Art: a dillicate house in which shutting casements and the \ old / timber footed to such advantage as to make the garrets. {Of yards & feete?}[837]

[1.332]

{Situation}
~~The hall is a dillicate~~ But nothing commendeth this mansion more than its situation which is on a plane at the foote of ~~one~~ \ a / hill ~~& upon the top of a very high banke~~ \ on the S. of it / from which agane you have a descent down \ on the west side / down a steep banke (all coverd with wood) to the River Eden an beyond that a great plane or meadow to Buly Castle which stands in a wood. It hath 2 courtes before it, and a way which flanketh them from the town to the kitchen & other offices, so that none can com to the house upon \ any / occasion but they \ will / see the front & beauty of it \ & if the[y] be stranger or persons of q[uality, they] may enter in at the great gate. / On the back side southwards, where you have the prospect of Apleby Castle & Colby Hall, ~~you~~ there is a descent of about a 4^{r} of a mile in length to the River Eden, where there is a deep poole (or dub as they call them) of the like length, which carryeth a pleasure boate upon it, having on one hand a spacious meadow, and on the other a brave banke of wood \ and a noble plane called the Parke / {on the right hand where you may have a parrock[838] course (with the greyhoundes & hare to the Chaple wood whenever they please) and pleasure with the g[reyhounds] & hare.}[839]

[I.229]

In the Lordship of Crakanthorp are great store of ground – arable & medow – with much underwood upon the Bankes of Eden, and very rich Ground. The Towne, I thinke, was a great part demolish[ed] by the Scotts when Apleby, Lancton & Brough sufferd so by them. Upon the More is a Romane campe.

[I.330]

There are 2 altars with other monuments of antique in the east end of it; one found about the area of Whelp Castle at Kirkbythore, the other in Eden at Ellerkar in the Lordship of Crakanthorpe. Also, Lyons & Urnes near Kirkythore Bridge.

[II.449]

{Privilege of the Lordship of Crakenthorp}
The Machells of Crakenthorpe are sup[posed] to have had the priv[ilege] to execute malefactors and offenders in their owne Lordship, for all the far end of their pasture called the High-Ground is a place where gallows are thought to have stood & tis called by the name of Hang-Man Close, may-be because twas granted to som common executioner for performing that office. The Lord of this manner

[837] This scrap page also contains a title: 'Ad Parochiam de Kirkbythore & Bondgate in Apelby'.
[838] Parrock: 'an enclosed area of ground; a small field or paddock, especially one close to a farmhouse'. *OED*.
[839] Another, partly perished, description (MS.III.77), reads, '{The Hall … built but repared of late at the cost of H [...] Esq. / is a dilicate uniforme building with 2 cupilooe, one for pleasure, the other ~~made~~ of a stack of chimneys exactly like it. It is pleasant, seated ~~up~~on along Brock-ham Woody banke of the River Eden overlooking the parke & … fairer meadows on the S. & west side & having in […] 2 or 3 castles. There is a descent on the back side of it \ of a / ¼ of a mile to the chaple}.'

has such priviledges as are \ rare / to be found (in puto) in England againe, for on May the 8th, at which time there grass is very forward, he may putt as many cattle as he has \ pleases / a minde: his owne or others, into meadow ground called Elleker near Kirkby Thore from the forsaid time till after all which it yealds a good cropp of excellent hay which is some argument that those parts are so barren as former writers have ~~first supposed~~ \ represented / ~~and after related them really to be.~~ It is free also from severall rents, which others thereabouts are subject to, for it payes nothing de certo but quit rent to the king. ~~Ratio put because of~~ the […][840]

[Machell's Notes: II.449]

Query: An liceat cujlibet corporationi gladium præt[ores] habere pro libitu?[841]
N[ote] Sir W. Sanderson.[842]

[I.341]

A notable privilidge of the Lords. In Ellerkar, a diner & dogs dinner all[for] holding the yeat open & hatt off.

[III.87]

[The Midle Demaine and Roman Camps]

The midle demaine \ which chiefly bears that name / is as a gardine of very choyce herbs which nature hath planted by the water-sides, and is clad with ashes as the other with oake. There is a place calld Brockeholme: it & Brocholme Wood from brocks or badger frequenting these places, as my selfe has seen som; ~~And upon the cam~~ above which woods are the foundations of an hamlet of houses. And a greater than that, a little below upon the common \ on the West side / of Creakber Hill where many hand milstones have bin found; amongst other rubbish I observed one \ hewn / stone which beareth this figure [blank].[843]

This Creakebur, seems to have bin formerly clad with trees, & called so from the creakes or crows frequenting there, at the N. end of which is a vast Romane campe. And at a little distance from it is a prætentura, guardhouse or watch tower calld Maden Hold, where the Romanes seem to have pitched there tents when the[y] 1t came down into this part of Britan against Gallacum.

Close by these Rampiers on the E. side of them runns the Great Romane Way, which heads through Kirkbythore to Carleol; and about the midle of the long-lane, on the W. side of it, in a place which was formerly calld Maechells Banke but now belongs[844] to the Bridge End tenement, was a nest of urnes found.

This Tenement is in the Lordship of Crakenthorp and was given of it by Halth le Malchael and Eve his wife to the Priory of Carlile at the foundation of it, and so came to the Bishop of Carleol who is now Lord thereof under the Lord of the Manner of Crakenthorp to whom \ his tenants are obligd / ~~they~~ to doe him Hom[age]. & S[uit].

[I.547]

[Urns]

There were 3 of these urnes, whereof this is the least, which stood contiguouse or near adjoyning one to another in triangular form in such a Repository, as I have heard of for [blank].[845] They were hid in a circular hole or pitt, in clay […][846] 6 foote in circumference & about 3 in depth, the sides whereof were perpendicular; & herein they were covered up & left with ashes & burned boanes to within a foote of the surface of the ground, the remainder being closed up with earth.[847] In the 2 greater were

---

[840] 2cm of crossed-through text are unreadable from this point. See MS.III.81, which adds, 'In this Ellerkar the Lords of Crakenthorp have a notable priviledge. And the Bishop's Tenant is obliged to doe this homage of service.'

[841] 'Query whether it be allowed to any corporation to have a praetor's sword at will?'

[842] Written in different ink and in what appears to be a shaky hand.

[843] Space for an illustration has been left here, but it is empty.

[844] MS: 'belonks'.

[845] MS: '~~There were 3 of these, which stood triangular~~ There were 3 of these urnes where of this is the least, which stood contiguouse or near adjoyning one to another \ in triangular form. / In such a Repository, as I ~~never yet~~ \ have / heard of for [blank].' See Part 3. Chapter 3., 'Roman Antiquities', VI.200 *passim*.

[846] Some crossed-through words are illegible here.

[847] MS: 'They were \ hid / in a \ circular / hole or pitt, ~~2 foote in diameter~~ in clay 6 foote in circumference & about 3 in depth, the \ sides / whereof ~~sides~~ \ were / perpendicular ~~& made of clay~~ \ ~~composed~~ / & herein they

ashes & boanes \ butt / in the lesser black ashes onely. I have a piece \ great parte / of one of the great ones with its depositum now laying by me, & the little one \ ~~who figure I have here described~~ which here is described / was sent to Oxford by Mr Tod to [blank]

[III.51]

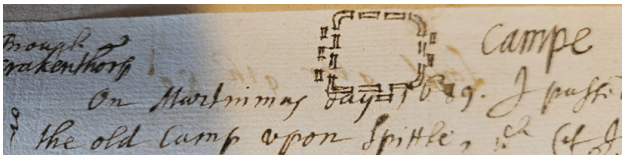


Figure 1.1.38. Sketch of Roman Fort. III.51.

Ad Brough

On Martinmas Day, 1689, I passed through the old camp upon Spittle, which (if I mistake not) was 16 score passes in diameter \ ab oriente in occasum[848] / of which to the mount with stanes opposite to the Rear Cross, 13 score and 14; but I accounted from the midle of the bulworkes. \ When I was a little beyond the camp and over the sike / I saw some stones on the highway Honey Comb*. And there is a sort of pretententura a mile distant from it, which they call Maden Castle, which is in breadth about 40 passes from the midle of the ruinous walls but it is much longer the other way. It has bin certanely a worke of Romans, for at the enterance which lookes towards Brough I discovered the walls to have bin 3 yards thick & strongly semented with lime some ~~gravel &~~ brick & mixture of gravel.

The same day I passed through an other camp of the same forme on Crakenthorpe Moore, 16 score passes ab. or. ad. Oc.[849]

[Machell's Notes III.51]

*{On this side blew-grass are diverse pebbles on the Highway, which are a blew-marble, som of them veined, others speckled with white; and there is a rock of it at this end of the hill \ where the sike runns / which gives hopes {of large ones if they were sought for.}

[I.327]

The Camp in the Lordship of Crakanthorp[850]

69 to the 1st entrance from the ditch whereof the bulwark is 10 {Sc}
20 the 1st entrance {17 – 0}
45 to the next
20 the 2nd entrance {16 – 10}
45 to the next
20 the 3 entrance & a holl in the mouth of it
55 to the nex
16 the 4th entrance
50 to the ditch
74 to the 1st
20 the 1st entrance toward Kirkby Ch[urch]
66 to the sike
13 the Sike way
8 score the bold side ditch

A sc[ore] to the; 4 sc[ore] & 3
To the 1t apparent entrance 8 score & 3
The entrance 23 without gard

were covered up \ & left / with ashes & burned boanes to within a foote of the surface of the ground: The remainder being closed up with earth.'

[848] 'From the east to the west.'

[849] 'From the east to the west.'

[850] From this point, the entries are written faintly in pencil.

To the next wher som sople[851] 4 score
Entrance 20 {19 score & 4}
Thence 4 score & 18
To the way 5 score & 10, in all to the 1st (13) score.
1 entrance garded 20 21 score
To the 2nd 50 5
2 enter 20 there to the[852]

[Machell's Notes: I.327 & I.238]

[I.327] {Bongate, Apelby; see more of Bongate sub titulo Apleby}
[I.328] Memorandum: the Urnes found in Machels Bank in 1684.[853]

[I.330]

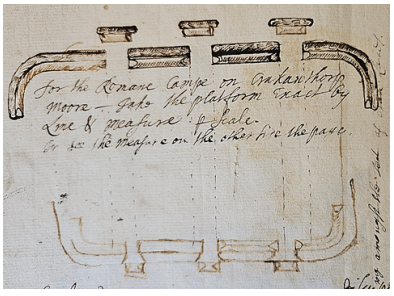


Figure 1.1.39. Roman Camp at Crackenthorpe. I.330.

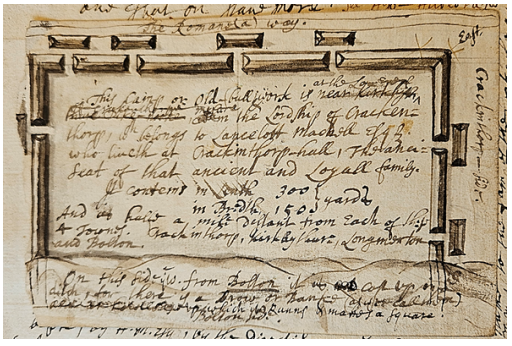


Figure 1.1.40. Roman Camp at Crackenthorpe 'I have seen this Romane Campe since and have drawn it out elsewhere. This doth onely express halfe of the campe and is rudely done.' I.330. [854]

{The Romane Way East: Crackinthorp Side Bolton Side}
This camp or old bulliwork is ~~near Kirkbythore, Dike Nooke~~ \ at the low end of Crakenthorpe \ infore[855] / & within the Lordship of Crackenthorp, which belongs to Lancelott Machell Esq. who liveth at Crackinthorp-Hall, the ancient seat of that Ancient and Loyall family.[856] It conteins in lenth 300, in bredth 150, yards, and is halfe a mile distant from each of these 4 Townes: Crackinthorp, Kirkbythore, Longmarton and Bolton. On this side, the west from Bolton it is cast up in a ditch, up which it runns & makes a square.[857]

[851] 'Sople' or sowple: 'Of a soft or yielding consistency; not rigid or hard.' *OED*.
[852] 6cm of text here are too faint to read, although '3 \ s / x' can be discerned.
[853] See *N&B1*, 351-52.
[854] This small sheet, pasted onto the page, lifts up to reveal this text on its reverse.
[855] 'Infore': variant of 'afore'. *OED*.
[856] As Lancelot Machell was still living, the drawing and text can be dated to before October 1681.
[857] MS: 'On this side, the west from Bolton it is ~~not~~ cast up in a ditch, ~~for there is a brow or banke (as wee call them~~) up which it runns & makes a square.'

[Machell's Notes: I.330]
For the Romane Camp on Crakanthorp Moore – take the platform exact by line & measure per scale. Or see the measure on the other side the page.[858]
See in Edmunds *Caesars Commentaryes*[859] a description of the Roman campes which may be corrected by this; and that on Stanemore. See also Hildebrand[860] and Rosinus[861] out of which it is taken.

[I.331]

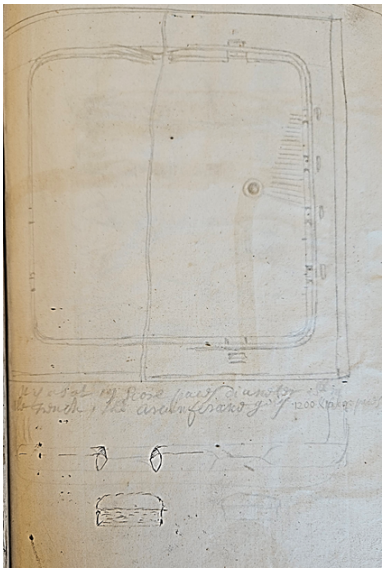


Figure 1.1.41. Faint pencil plan of the Roman fort at Crackenthorpe. I.331.

It is about 17[862] score paces diameter within the trench; the circumference is 1200 & 16 score paces.

[Descent of the Machells of Crackenthorpe]

[I.553C]
Ad Crakanthorp: A once famous family which yeilded 5 Consuls upon Record, one of which was an excellent Oratour in the Minority of Tullius Cicero, concerneing whom he speake thus in his [blank] Confidentius Loquor – quod Q. Catulus – see preface to the Chart. Antiq.[863]

[III.81]
The Succession of the Lordship[864]
The seniory or royalty of this Lordship has always belonged to the Machells of Crackenthorp, for anything I can finde to the contrary, there being no evidence when or how they came thither first, nor any record of any other family ever enjoying the same before them. Som, indeed, hav conjectured of late (& I was once of the same opinion) that it might have belonged to the family of Crakenthorps, who without difficultie tooke their names from hence. But now (doctiorem me dies reddidit)[865] I know other things; for one William Mauchael writ in \ the / Latine of those ancient dayes, Willelmus Malus

[858] There is no 'measure' on the other side of this page.
[859] Clement Edmonds, *Commentaries of Julius Caesar* (1677).
[860] Friedrich Hildebrand, *Antiquitates Romanae: in compendium contractae, et juxta ordinem alphabeti dispositae, bono juventutis* (1st edn, 1647).
[861] Johan Rosinus, *Antiquitatum Romanarum Corpus Absolutissimum* (Basel, 1583).
[862] The pencil marks are very faint. The number could equally be read as '19'.
[863] See I.759.
[864] For analysis of the Machell pedigree and history, see Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', 416-67.
[865] 'The day has made me better informed.'

Catulus gave by deed without date (but in the same character the *Doomesday Booke*) to Alexander de Crakenthorp \ his brother afterwards called Alex / iiii oxgangs*.
Their hous stood almost in the midle of the W. side row (onely distinguished from other houses by an ancient huen-stone doer of roll worke like unto a church [&] like unto which were found frames in the walls pasd dow[n] at Crackenthorpe Hall); and is now calld Hills House; not from scituation tho it stands upon the rise of [a]n hill, but from the inhabitant & owner of it.
So carry them on till Elizabeths time that they lef C[rackenthorpe].

[Machell's Notes: III.81]

*Deeds without date is a certain evidence that they were made long after the *Domesday Survey*. Deeds were generally dated till Henry 3[d] reign.[866]

[III.82]

Thus, having attend[ed] them out of the Lordship, I return to the rock out of which they were huen and they need not thinke it any disparage to derive themselves from such a family and soe long agoe; many persons of the greatest account contenting themselves with meaner originals.

The Family of the Machells
which I have found to be sometimes writ Mauchel, Maechael, Malchien & so in ancient Latin: Mali-Catulus

{Ration nom}[867] The greatest men of note whom I met with of this name and family* are[868]
1. Halthe Machel, who with ever &[869]
2. ~~John~~ \ William / Machel, the raiser of Alex his brother.
3. \ Roger Machell / who maryed Beaucha[m]p and brought an accession to the estate.
Jo. Machell, the 1[t] Esquire of the family, who whether made so by Collero SS[870] or from his father being a knight, I have (as I finde it) undetermined. Only this is certane, that he was a benefactor to ? & that all his successor till this day has been writ Esq.†.
Guy & Hugh, the warriers.
Henry, Doctor of Laws – Phil.
Lancelot & John his brother: the soljer.
Hugh, the builder.
& the last & the least[871] Thomas, the contriver \ rector of Kirkbythore, / who was somtime fellow of Queens College \ in Oxon, / afterwards of the Philosophie Society & Chaplain in ordinary to King Charles II.[872]

[Machell's Notes: III.82]

*{Take these in the history of succession according to their years wherein they lived.}
†{Inf. W. Waughs apud Culgath Sep. 10 1689} Sir Richard Musgrave told Mr W. Waugh of Culgath \ a well read G[entleman] / that he had met with several Knights of the Machells of Crakenthorp; and I have bin told by Mr W. Blen[kinsop] when wee were young that he had seen in his fathers study an MS booke of Northern Familiyes \ Gentlemen, / & mention therein of 4 or 5 Knights of this family.

[III.88]

The M[achells] of Crakenthorp tis said are descend[ed] from Whelp of Whelp Castle before the Conquest, and were calld Mali Catuli,[873] Mauchaels & Malchiens, q[e] malu' hostibus (normannis forsitar) intulerunt:[874] Sc. from their stout opposition. Sicq' Malum Marium Catulum dixisse

[866] This interjection is in an entirely different hand; see below, III.89.
[867] 'Reason for the name.'
[868] See also III.88-89, below.
[869] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding. MS.I.336 contains the following margin comment: '{The ancient noble & warlike family of M[achell] has these brave men Halthe Mal who …}'
[870] The phrase appears to read, 'collero [spelling of cholera in the 1700s], in the strict sense'. If this is the case, the meaning is unclear.
[871] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[872] MS: '& Chaplain in ordinary to King Charles II. ~~Yet may mentioned for contriveing the fabric of it~~'.
[873] Mali Catuli: the name means 'bad dogs' (or puppies).
[874] 'The bad being a name given by enemies (Normans perhaps).'

putemus.[875] And ergo they always reteined that sirname as their greatest glory: Bene e facere et male audire regium est.[876] However, they so managed their business at the least by capitulation as to reteine the Lordship of Crakenthorp with ample priviledge: edat non per drengagium, sed per nobile cornagis servicium sicut ipsi normannu,[877] a tract of which Liberty may yet be seen in several grants of the Machel of Crakanthorp (who could not give that which they had not ~~injoy~~ to their friends & relations); in particular, one of Will[iam] Machel to his brother Alex[an]der (whom he suffered to take the sirname of Crakenthorp for distinctions sake, reteineing the ancient name to him selfe) where he gives him some demaine lands with this ample priviledge: adeo[878] &c.

[III.89]

The Descent of the Manner

This manner has bin in the name of the Machels beyond all record, so that tis not known when or how they came by it. Their oldest evidences are without date \ & if so not exceeding old[879] / and all I can say concerneing them is that som of them are in the very same character with *Doomsday Booke* \ which was writ in the time of William the Conqueror. / ~~And~~ it is a mistake (which I was once guilty of my selfe) that Crakanthorp once belonged to the Crakanthorps, for[880]

[I.330]

{The Town gave name to the family of the Crakanthorps who are descended from the Machels here, as appears from writeing amongst the tent. of Crak. Lands.}

[III.89]

The chief men of note in this ancient family that I have mett with are:
This Halth le Machell, of who above, who lyes interd, as I suppose, in the priory there.
Roger Machael – dom' custos magni Angliæ sigilli &c.[881] – whose monument is to be sought at Messana in Sicily.
William Machell, who gave diverse lands in the ~~forest of~~ demane to Alexander, his brother, who first assumed the sirname of Crakenthorp for distinctions sake – for [on my] shewing the deed to Sir William Dugdal, he sayd it appeard by his stile and seal, both, that he had bin a very great man in his time.[882]
\ Jo[hn] Machel Capitalis Dom. Feodi[883] – tho that maryed Beauchamp / John Machell Esq., who with Catherine his [wife] were so great benefactor to [Blank] at Karlile[884] that they[885] ingaged to pray for him &c. as for [blank] and there wee may thinke he was buried in their church and chaple.
Hugh of the Marshes[886] / & Guy, his brother.
Lancelot Machell Esq. lately disceasd,[887] who improved the estate &c.
& Hugh Machel Esq., the present owner of it \ Crakenthorp Hall / who new modelld the house & made it much better, than before by the direction of Thomas, his brother, Rector of Kirkbythore, sometimes Fellow of Q[ueens College] in Oxford, & Chaplain in Ordinary to King Charles 2, and now Fellow of the Philosophic Society in Oxon.

[I.309]

The Armes of the Machells

The regester of Carlile gave this information anno 1674*: that he had seen an express from Queen Elizabeth to search the houses of the Machells of Crakenthorpe & Blenkinsops of Helbeck for popeish

[875] 'And so we may think that Marius said Bad Dog.'
[876] 'To do good and be evil spoken of, is kingly.' Also found in sermons of the time, such as *Forty Sermons Upon Several Occasions* by Anthony Tuckney (1676), 471.
[877] 'Not through drengage but through the noble service of cornage, just as the Normans themselves did.'
[878] 'To such an extent that […]' [as in the deed].
[879] This interlineation is in another hand; see above, III.81.
[880] Here the sentence originally ended in a blank space but continued in the margin of MS.I.330.
[881] 'Lord, Keeper of the Great Seal of England.'
[882] Digitisation of a deed 'of Willielmus Malus Catulus to Alexander his brother', at CAC(C), DCHA/11/3/1 (2R, 2V, Jpg).
[883] 'Lord of a chief fee.'
[884] A religious house? Machell neglects to give us its name.
[885] The clergy/monks.
[886] Marches.
[887] Thomas Machell's father, who died on 6 October 1681.

reliq[uaries]. N[ote] that I suppose the Machels were rendered suspitious upon the account of their match with the Blenkinsops who were then papists.[888] Item: that Phillip Machel was Doctor Decretorum.[889]

Att Crakenthorp Hall I tooke notice of the Armes upon [a] wooden shield:
Machel ~~impaled~~ i.e. Sable 3 grey hounds coloured Orang collerd Or. For the crest a stags head erased proper, tired Or.
Item impal[ed]
Wharton
4. Pickering
5. Crakenthorp
6. Thornburrow
7. Richmont
\ Machell /
8. Barwise
9. Fallowfield
10. Lancaster
11. Sandford
2. Blenkinsop
3. Barkar
13. John Machell, shireve of London
14. Sir James Maliverer[890] of [blank] in Yorkshire.

Anciently: canis \ indicus / malæ satis feriatæ naturæ, colore albus, erectus clypeo nigro in positus. Cum quo optime quadrat in scriptio hæc nemo me impune lacesset: suntque Arma furienti normanno satis congrua. Pro Crista Hyacinthus suae lilium. Hæc ad Willielmum Malum Catulum sive Mauchael. {È carta Willielmi Mali Catuli ubi Sigill e sigillo He[…] et Tho. Mali Catuli.[891]
Modern: Sable 3 greyhounds courant in pale Argent collerd Or†. Proved from the windows in Appleby & Bongate Church‡

[I.310]

as I judge (tho Mr Dugdal has putt them in his visit to Westmorland without collers & drawne them so from the glass window in Appleby church where they impale Thornburrow, calleing them Maliverers Armes) which may be disproved from the Marriage Contract (in Cista[892] evidence pen[e]s Mr Machell de Crakanthorp, temp. Richard 2, and soe they are drawne in a Booke \ of Armes / in 4^{0}.[893] intituled *The Visitation of Cumberland pro Westmorland & Cumberland*. Sc. Sable 3 greyhounds coura[n]t in pale Argent. Collerd Or. (Sed vide etiam sigillum Richardi Machel tempore Elizabeth apud Chartam de wardo Hugonis nepotis sui, ut ibi se habet.)⸸[894]

[888] During Machell's lifetime a list of local confirmations by the Catholic Bishop John Layburn (August 1687), mentions five people named Machell in Witherslack: Agnes, Jane, two Lancelots and Margaret. See Lance Thwaytes, 'Catholics of the Seventeenth Century in the Barony of Kendal', in Marie B. Rowlands (ed.), *English Catholics of Parish and Town 1558-1788* (London, 1999), Appendix 4, 209. Confirmations were carried out by Bishop Leyburn on 25, 28 and 29 August 1687. See also p.186, which relates to poll-tax payers in 1695: 'The names of Holm, Jackson, Machell, Summer, Tunstall and Wharton suggest they may have been customary tenants or tradesmen rather than the poor or labourers.'
[889] 'Doctor of Canon Law.'
[890] Mauleverer.
[891] 'Anciently, a dog (drawn in ink) of bad character, quite idle, coloured white, upright and placed upon a black shield, perfectly quartered; with this inscription: "Nobody shall provoke me with impunity." And there are arms quite concordant with a raging Norman. In front of the crest, a hyacinth as its fleur de lys. From a document of William Malus Catulus where there is a seal. From the seal of H… and of Thomas Malus Catulus.'
[892] 'In a chest.'
[893] Quarto.
[894] 'But see also the seal of Richard Machell at the time of Elizabeth in the charter concerning the ward of Hugo, Richard's nephew. As it appears there.'

[Machell's Notes: I.309 & I.310]

*{? Mr Pattison}
†{They are I believe without collars Or. Barnabyes seale.[895] Query of Johis & Richards.}
‡{È sigillo Hen[896] et Tho. Mali Catuli.}
[I.310]
⸸{Sir William called a Chaple of Heralds and corrected this mistake in his visitation from the original, & others also which I shewd him.}

[I.332]



Figure 1.1.42. Three greyhounds courant. I.332.

[Machell's Notes: I.332]

Desire my old friend Mr Logans or any graver in Oxford to bestow finish my stroakes upon this plate as I have corrected it, & take away the grossness of the hinderleg. Vet it altogether according to [blank].[897]

[I.643]

[Crackenthorp Descent]

1. Alexander 2 son of Radulfus de Crakanthorp, maryed [blank] whose Armes were [blank] and had Isue ~~Will~~.1. William: 2. Alan, who had Isue Walter. 3. Richard who had Isue Richard

2. William, son of Alexander de Cracantorp marryed [blank] whose Armes were [blank] and had Isue 1. William; 2. Gilbert; 3. Robert.
Gilbert de Crakintorp held of his father William 4 Acres of Land in Brockholm with other Land paying to his father & heredibus suis Radicem Gingibris at Xmas.[898] This shows that they came from William the Mauchal father […].[899] For those 4 acres in Long Brockholm, amongst other lands, were were given ~~to Alexander, grandfather of this Gilbert~~ By William Malus Catulus Lord of ~~Cras~~ Caracantorp: to Alexander His Brother, which Alexander was grandfather to this Gilbert & father of William. With him wer cotemporaris William de Warthecop, Thomas de Newbigging, Hugo de Bellocampo, Richard de Berewys (the 1ᵗ Times I have mett with that name) & Richard de Bertford. ~~This Gib. m~~. Then Gilbert de Quitteby Vicecom Westm'land. But Gilbert Quit his clame afterwards to William his brother. Witness, Sir Michael de Harcla, Sir Robert de Yawenwyth, Galfrid de Milkanthorp, Joh. de Helton, Johe Maachel;[900] and had Isue.

[895] Barnaby Machell.
[896] The page has perished here.
[897] The text on the rest of the page has been cut off.
[898] See CAC(C), DCHA/11/3/1/11V Jpg. On the reverse of the deed is written (in Machell's hand): 'William Son of Alexander … gives 4 acres of land in Long Brockholme to Gilbert his son, paying a race of ginger to him &c.'
[899] There is one illegible word here.
[900] A pecked line appears here, possibly as a reminder that more information was needed.

3.{1275} William, son of William, confirms to said gift of his father to Gilbert \ his brother. / This was I sup[pose] in the same yere. Witness allso Ad[am], the son of Paisn[901] de Morton. His seale was something like a floredeluce, but with severall flourishers. This William in \ anno / 1277 {20. Edward 1.} farmed the Lands which were given by his father ~~&~~ of his brother Gilbert for 12 yeres. Witness, Sir Michael de Harcla tunc Vicecom, Richard de Berewys, Johanne Mauchael, John de Helton.[902] Robert, who had \ a / release fin[e] with his brother of the gift of his father. Witness Thomas Mauchael & Joh the son of Adam de Kirkbythore. Sir Henry Hartley gave all his land in Crakanthorpe to Robert & Emme his wife. T[estament] Thomas de Musegrave tunc Vicecom. Thomas Mauchel John de Colleby, Hugo de Ormessheved. His seale being a plane crosse with a martlet in dexter point.

(2. William) 3. Richard – 138.[903]
Galfrid de Crakanthorp maryed the daughter of Mallbranche de Crakanthorp & had Isue Ellen & Agnes de Crakanthorp who passed their Lands to Walter, son of Walter de Mebrune 7. Edward. (Gilbert de Kirkinton, Vicecom.)

[I.644]

1. Alexander de Crakanthorp was 2 brother of William Mauchael de Crakanthorp by whose gift he had severall lands with great priviledges in Crakanthorp granted an[d] confirmed unto him; and amongst the rest 4 Acres in Longe Brockholme which I mention for a notes sake hereafter to be taken. He tooke his name from the name of the Towne for distinctions sake: his elder brother being called William, Dom[inus] de Crakanthorp, & sometime William Machel de Crakanthorp, sub midl Dom.[904] But Alexander his brother & their posterity were called de Crakanthorp without any addition of title or sirname; for the title belonged only to the Lord & the sirname contin[u]ed to him & his posterity as the other o[f] Crakanthorp did to Alexander & his.
He marryed & had Isue:
1. William.
2. Alayn, who marryed & had Isue: Walter,
3. Richard, who marryed and had Isue: Richard.

Generation 2.
William son of Alexander marryed and had Isue
1. William.
2. Gilbert* who marryed Ellen the daughter of [blank] and had Isue John who afterwards intaled his lands upon his ~~nephew~~ cosan[905] Richard, the second son of \ his / \ uncle / William his \ fathers / brother, & for defect of Isue upon ~~his nephew~~ Robert the elder (or 1[t]) son of William & for defect of Isue from him upon William son of William son of Alexander, who was elder, which was their father & his uncle.
3. William son of William son of Alexander de Crakanthorp vixit in 1275 and then sealed with some thing like a floredelice, as the Mauchels (at least the younger brothers) were wont to doe. But in 1308 I finde his seale to be a Crossbow, bent in an Ovel kinde of seale as before you have it drawne. He maryed & had
1. Robert 1308.
2. Richard upon whome he intaled his Estate in defect of Isue by Robert 1308.
4. Robert, son of William de Crakenthorp marryed Emma the daughter of Robert de Newbigging (for Crakanthorps Lands were infeofed upon him & reinfeofed upon Robert Crakenthorp & Emma his

[901] Or possibly, 'Payn'.
[902] These scored-through phrases then follow: '~~William witness 1298; 2 Will 1.~~'
[903] This date possibly represents, 3. Richard II (1379-80].
[904] 'Sub midle Dom': 'under the middle lord.' 'The great barons, holding large territories under the crown … frequently granted out of their great manors, smaller manors to be held of themselves … In imitation of this, the inferior lords made similar sub grants, the process being repeated downward ad infitum… The mesne or middle lords were the immediate superiors of the terre-tenant, or him who occupied the land.' See H. Broom, E. Hadley, W. Wait, *Commentaries on the Laws of England Vol. 1* (Albany, New York, 1875), 529.
[905] 'Cosan' has been superimposed over 'nephew'.

wife: 10. Edward 2. 1317). He sealed allso with a crossbow. Thus, Robert gott Hartclas lands in Crakenthorp, 1341.[906]

[Machell's Notes: I.644]

*N.B. This Gilbert de Crakanthorpe had of his father 4 Acres of Land in Long Brockholm, for which he was to pay to him & his heires 1 race of Ginger: which shoes planely they descended from Alexander the Brother of William Mauchael; who am[ongst] other lands gave 4 Acres in Long Brockhol[m] to him & his heires.

[I.645]

John Crakanthorp de Newbigging non comparant in Curia:[907] 15. Edward 4. [1475-76], Johannes Crakanthorp de Newbigging – 1. Henry 7. [1485-86], Johannes Crakanthorp \ de Newbigging / Armigeri non comparant in Curia, John Mauchel Armigeri &c. ad Henric. 8.

Thus, having presented you with an extract of this family […],[908] I shall in the next place \ […] et Tutta[909] / proceed to [a] more particular account of it, showing you the sucession of every Lord with his wife, Isue, & their Armes. But before I proceed, take a view of thes matches which I have mett with but cannot make out.

[Machell's Notes: I.645]

Method of the Sucession Relation:

1. The man, with an historical relation of him.
2. His marriage, his wifes father & mothers relation of her.
3. Their Isue, referring the 1ˢᵗ butt setting the rest downe in order with their matches.
4. Their matches.

These are the Isue of John Machel & Elizabeth his wife, Their Armes are presented in the following pages. You may doe the father and mother at large; the other in little.

Escutcheons

38 will compleat to my brother Hugh with his. They haveing:

Barwyse:	ut autem[910] in Ilekirk church
Pickering:	painted att Crakanthorp, ex infor [blank]
Crakanthorp:	I am much mistaken if I saw not an evidence wherein the fre land in Crakanthorp was return'd in dower.
Lancaster:	}
Fallowfield:	} who either united with the Machells or the Machells with them

The N[ame] Pik may be a mistake upon the account of the kindred was contracted by marrying with Blenkinsops; for Pick maryed one of the 5 sisters & Machel another.

[I.646]

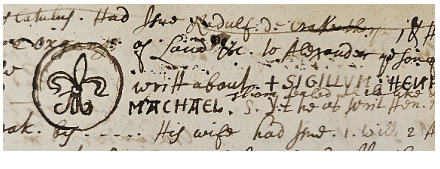


Figure 1.1.43. Seal sketch. I.646.

1. Galfrid Malus Catullus had Isue Rudulfus de Crakanthorp; & Henry {& Thomas} {Humfrey} who confirme 2 oxgangs of Land &c. to Alexander the son of Ralfe; & Hen. Seale[911] writt about + SIGILLVM HENRICI was thus: MACHAEL. S. \ Thomas sealed with the like & proper inscription / S. Yet he as writ Hen. Mal Cal.

[906] At the page foot is written: 'John 20 [the number '16' has been written above '20']. Rich[ard] 2.'
[907] 'They do not compare in the Court.'
[908] Two words have been obscured by the binding.
[909] 'and all.'
[910] 'As, moreover.'
[911] See the figure above.

2. Rad[ulphus] de Crakanthorp by [blank] his wife had Isue: 1. William; 2. Alexander \ de Crakanthorp; / 3. Mar {with Margerie Kirkbythore}[912]

3. William, the son of Ralfe gave those 2 Lands with others after the death of his mother with great priviledges to his brother Alexander otherwise called Alexander de Crakanthorpe, who was the begin[ning] of that family which till of late yeres injoyed the same Lands which are known to this day by the meets & bounds specifyed in the deed. This William lived before the reigne of King John [1199-1216]. \ He marryed Margaret & had Isue John \ dom de / (Lord of) Crakanthorp, et dom feo[dom].

4. John Mauchael was witness to a deed of Adam de Kirkbythore to Robert de Veteripont of the Advousans of the Church Anno 6. John [1204-05]. He was marryed to one Beatrix. 1298. & had Isue: Thomas & Walter de Crakanthorp vel Robert de Bedeford of Crakanthorp.
{Beatrix d[aughter] either of Simon son of Rogeri valoris de Crakenthorp vel Rob. de Bedeford of Crakenthorp with Wharton.}

5. Thomas son & heire of John marryed Emme the daughter of Gilbert de Querton, whose joynture was a messuage in Cracanthorpe which Margerie, his grandmother Held, together with a messuage & the Tenements at Kirkouswald. They had Isue ~~Thomas~~ Mr Walter & Thomas.[913]

6. {With Beauchamps} Walter son & heire of Thomas, during his fathers life marryed Elizabeth, daughter of Thomas de Bellocampo ~~of Lasingby~~, who conveyed all his Lands & Tenements in Kirkoswald & Lasingby dureing the life of T.M. his father to Thomas Beauchamp his father in law. The[y] Had Isue John. \ One of the Beauchamps came to be Earle of Warwick in time & bore for his Armes [blank] /

7. John son & heire of Walter Mauchel lett some lands to John Mauchael, put[o] his uncle,[914] for Terme of Yeres [in] 1293. i.e. 20. Edward I. He was Lord of the foe in 1290. Query? whether he did not mar[ry] Idonea de Berrford (or Maud) the daughter of Michael Carpenter by Matilda ~~the daughter of Comynes)~~ He had Isue Thomas who held of his father Carpenters lands, paying a Rose rent.[915]

8. Thomas Mauchel Lord of the foe of Crakanthorp. In his time \ tho the 1ᵗ[time][916] / I finde it exp[r]essed that John fil Agnetis held a messuage in Crakanthorp per Curialitate in Anglia.[917] Quaere de hoc?[918] Thomas the 1ᵗ was contemporary with Robert de Crakanthorp.

John 1. marry Beatrix the daughter of Roger Barkar, & Beatrix afterwards marryed to Robert de Bedford, whose widow she became. He was stild in […] confirm & quit claim, Dominus de

[912] A margin-note here contains, 'John, 22 H [perished] A[lex]ander 3. H. Thomas H. 8. T. were pledges for […]', but most of the note has perished.
[913] The rest of this sentence has perished.
[914] 'Perhaps his uncle.'
[915] A symbolic payment, like a peppercorn rent. 'In Worcester Cathedral Library there are thirty-four documents which include at least a mention of a rose rent. These documents appear to have three things in common: they are all from the 13th and 14th centuries, they all specify a rose as a rent payment and they all deal with ownership of land and property. Other things vary, such as the amount of land, the kind of land, whether agricultural land or inhabited buildings, whether it is in Worcester itself or merely fairly local. There seems to be no particular type of transaction to which a rose rent applied. The parties concerned can be male or female, individuals or groups, and the arrangement can be purely business or involve inter-familial relationships. The idea of a single rose being used in this way was obviously an acceptable convention at that time.' See https://worcestercathedrallibrary.wordpress.com/2019/08/21/the-game-of-the-rose/#_ftn1.
[916] Editorian substitution: a word has perished here.
[917] 'By the English Court.' In the MS, 'John fil Agnetis held a messuage in Crakanthorp per Curialitate in Anglia', appears twice on this page (I.646).
[918] 'Uncertainty about this.'

Crakanthorpp & capitalis dominus ejusdem foedi.[919] I thinke she had Lands of inheritance in Lasingby, for in her widow[hood] she bestowed all her Lands, Tenements there.[920]

Machel with Barkar per fess imbattled Or and Azure 3 martletts counter charged. Sir John Barkar of Grimston Hall in Trimlay in Suffolke Esq. was created Baron March 17. Anno 10. Jacobi 1612. I thinke the seale is a mole.[921]



Figure 1.1.44. 'Machel with Barkar' I.646.

[I.646B]

Gilbert had Isue.
John marryed Elen daughter of [blank] and had Isue John, who intaled his Land upon Richard the son of William de Crakanthorp, or in defect of heires to Robert son of William: And if he dye without heires to William son of William son of Alexander. Test[ament] John Mauchell & Adam de Kirkbythore & Robert de Newbiggin (Thomas de Hellebeck tunc Vicecom).

[I.646A]

Rad[ulphus] had Isue
1. William de quo infra.
2. Alexander, unde Crakanthorp family who had Isue William.
3. Barnard who marryed & had Isue Richard de Crakanthorp, who lived in Henry 3^{ds} time [1216-72].
William marryed Margarie daughter of Adam de Kirkbythore for he made his Land over to him durante vita as Tho[mas] did to Thomas Beauchamp when he maryed his daughter. His Armes were a pale very smale ut è sigillo.[922]
1. John, witness to a deed of Adam de Kirkbythore &c. 6^{0} Johannis [1204-05].
2. Alexander, qui vixit 31. Henry 3. [1246-47].
3. Thomas, who with Alexander Mauchael I find suretyes or pledges for the good Aggmnt[923] (accord to determination) of Richard the son of Bernard de Crakanthorp, & William the son of Alexander de Crakanthorp, but it is sans date.
{John} The seale of Richard is the same with that of Henry & [blank] Machaell except at the fote where it is split.[924]
Thomas father of Walter had allso Lands & Tenements in Kistlyfe [Blank] Meerton by Emma his wife, after wife …[925]

[III.79]

{Raritys at Crakanthorp}

[In Nature]
A ma[gpie] that imitates the voyce of an olde woman & a young childe; the \ barkeing / of a little curr; the mewing & sphuting[926] of a cat so exactly if that being at the doore or out of sight, it can not be

[919] 'Lord of Crackenthorpe and tenant in chief of the same fee.'
[920] One line of text has perished here.
[921] A further line has perished.
[922] 'As from the seal.'
[923] Presumably, 'agreement.'
[924] There is a tiny sketch of the split here, 1cm x ½cm.
[925] As the next sentence has been sheered off, 'Emma' was possibly afterwards the wife of another. The name, 'Walter de Rawe' [or Raven] is just visible.
[926] Possibly, 'spitting', as in 'to bespew or bespit'. *OED*.

discovered to be a counterrfait & makes such an my[st]eriouse medley amongst them as is exceeding surpriseing; & lookes like witchcraft to those that know it not.

[Thomas Walker]
Here was ~~old man~~ liveing\ one Walker / not many yeares agoe, of 100[927] years of age; an expert smith who shoed King James the 1[t] his read cow. He went up to London on foot about a law-suit after he was 100 years of age, and would goe into the Lords wood & carry away ~~good~~ hansom young ashes upon his back: which in regard of his old age & the rarity of such admirable strength[928] …worked at by the Lord of the Manner.

[I.342]

Amongst things \ in antiquity which are / extraordinary I thinke fit to mention an old cuple in this Towne, who made betwixt them 221. The man, whose name was Thomas Walker, livd to 112 years of age and went on foote; and the woman, 109.

[I.507]

[Machell Family]
Fid[es].[929] The prodigious activity & \ strength / of the late Lancelot Machell of Crakanthorp Esq. & John, his brother {!} (whose son now liveing at A[r]dee in Ireland is not inferiour to his father)[930] who exceeded all merit in feats of their time ~~in strength and~~ \ in feats of Armes / Activity \ & Strength of Body. & having a Courage suitable thereto, / may well be recounted amongst the extraordinary effects of Nature; And the said John has a son now liveing at A[r]dee in Ireland whom that Kingdom doth boast of ~~for~~ \ there, for the like undertakeing \ exployts / as his father was there.

[I.547]

H.M.[931] a person of little stature but of great gallantry; of which I shal give you 2 pregnant proofe. The one was his conduct \ & courage at Brough / upon Mr T. Esqs offering to send a challenge by him unto his \ aged / father – upon which he tooke him through hands himself & beat[932] him to his owne satisfaction.
The other was by Martin church, where being challenged by his cosan W.S.[933] whose sword he hapned to break in the combat, he therewith threw away his own, ran in […] struck him […] heales, & […] him that […] which he would not aske.[934] This was on Tuesday the 23 Feb.!!! 1687/8. The day before my Lord Preston returned.[935]

[III.79]

[In] Art
2 great Romane Wayes meet in this place, one heading by to Carlile &c. into Scotland, the other coming from towards Newcastle & ending here. And the Castra Catulin[936] or Whelp Castle has bin a vast & stupendous building, as appears by the stone, which are now diged up from the sinkes only which carrye of[f] the water & som being in length* & \ some / brick walls of a whol yard brod, which the inhabitants have somtime discovered, & as the shattered bricks here & there with tiles &c. were som sort of testimony. But iam seges est ubi domus erat.[937]

---

[927] A line over '100' suggests that he was older, as the text on the following page proves.
[928] Blots obscure the next few words, most of which have been scored through.
[929] An abbreviation, possibly of the Latin 'fides.' For the Romans, 'fides' was essential to the character of a man of public affairs, and a fundamental part of all social and political business. It meant 'reliability', was always reciprocal and mutual, and implied privileges and responsibilities on both sides.
[930] For both John Machells of Ardee, see Bernard Burke. *A Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Landed Gentry of Great Britain & Ireland*, Online edn, Vol. 2, 52.
[931] Hugh Machell.
[932] MS: 'beat~~en~~.' The term, 'took him through hands', is still a Cumbrian dialect term for a thrashing.
[933] William Sanderson.
[934] Sadly, much of this exploit has been obscured by the binding. Having read the previous passage, the reader might enjoy filling in the gaps.
[935] 'Lord Preston': Richard Graham, first Viscount Preston (1648-1695), politician and Jacobite conspirator, was the eldest son of Sir George Graham, second baronet of Netherby. Preston was made Lord Lieutenant of Cumberland and Westmorland in 1687. See J. Callow, 'Graham, Richard, first Viscount Preston'. *ODNB*.
[936] MS: '~~Castra Catululin~~… Castra Catulin.'
[937] 'And now there is a crop where a house once was.'

[Machell's Notes: III.79]

*See my letter to Mill.[938]
Sewlby: Q. of Mr Hall, what remarke priviledges: 20^{s} & a purse.[939]
Letherwite &c.[940]
Q. Where Cliburn & Browham parish meet & how divided in Whinf[ell].

[Further Notes, largely concerning rarities]

I.340

Crakenthorp Hall – the camp there on Speedymore & Maden Hold. The Roman Way that divides the 2 L[ordship]s, & the outworkes of an old fortess at the White Burwens near a place cald Castrig[941] where milestones found in Brampton.
{Cumberland, in Kirkland p[arish], Culgaith. Last in the hands of one Vaughan, sold to the tenants free.}

[I.366]

In Art
Hic locus ~~St Magi speculum~~ est Catuli ~~speculum~~ spatium \ Zystum[942] / capetale Rogero.[943] Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis.[944]

[I.337]

The outworkes of a fort calld White Burwens Hill, Merton – some urnes found – Romane Camp & Maden Hold.
For Crakenthorp Hall altars 2 lyons.
{Cupilo; Boate}
{Chantrey}[945] {Doubts}

And in nature
The soyle: gardine of Eden;[946] air healthful; exam[ine] old W.L. & J. &c.[947]
{Vines at Crakenthorp}

[III. 79]

Maiden hare, juneper berries, scurvy gras, bleaberyes.
Glo\o/bes, harts e\a/se, ladys mantl, wilde-time, burd ecence, buckthorne, buck hornes, old oake trees underground.

[I. 336]

[Rarities in Nature and Art: Environs of Appleby]

[Springs, Wells, Rivers, Tarns]

[Springs]
In Sowerby: severall spring[s] {As Turle well, Strand well, Denny well {Denny Well from Dian[a] or Dennis …}[948] But only 2 rema[r]keable: Sc. Lucyes Well by Acorn Banke, which they say is good for

[938] See the chapter on 'Roman Antiquities'.
[939] MS: 'purese'.
[940] 'Letherwite': 'any of various fines relating to sexual relations and marriage; especially a fine payable by a male serf to his lord for having illicit sexual relations with a female serf; also, such fines collectively'. *OED*.
[941] Castrigg, in the parish of Long Marton.
[942] Xystus (17th century: zystus). To the ancient Greeks, the xystus was a long, covered portico or court used for athletic exercises; to the ancient Romans it was an open colonnade or walk planted with trees, used for recreation and conversation. *OED*.
[943] 'This place is the colonnade of Catulus, chief court for Roger.'
[944] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of old Catulus'. For the significance of this quotation from Ovid, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.558.
[945] This word is an insecure transcription, as the text has been both blotted and obscured by a line below it.
[946] See also: MS. III.65, 'Herbs &c. The Garden of Eden.'
[947] Presumably, these names represent two of Machell's informants.
[948] The rest of this phrase is obscured by the binding.

sore eyes, & Aspeth Well in Aspers Close, on the S. west of Sowerby, which runns into Eden, to which in somer people resort to drinke for pleasure.

[Wells: Medical Cures]
Those at Browham calld Helly Wells once as they say, remd[949] breaste milke.
One at Dufton beyond the Pike which in 24 hores turns moss into stone.
Another ther is on the Chaple Hill calld Chaple Well, which hath sometime allso bin counted medicinal. I suppose it is dedecated, as the chaple was, to St Giles.[950] {This [chapel] has bin endowed as al other chaples anciently were; for in the deed of [blank] to [blank] of lands in Ellerker he sayes: proxim[e] terrae capel[lae] de Crakenthorp.[951] It was standing at least but \ newly/ demolished in Queen Elizabeths time}*.
M[achells] Well – good in feavours with vinegar as T.M. by experience – Marble Spar for sore eyes.
Crackenthorpe: C[ommon] P[ump] at the Hall, in digging of which a mixture lump of brass ore was found†, from which sort of minneral the water perhaps receaves its vertue. It cured Mrs E.M., the lady of the man[or];[952] of a great B[oil] which she had bin troubld with for 14 years – she drinkeing thereof in somer morneings, 3 dayes together in a week or a forth night for 3 somers \ successively / teste se ipsa[953] yet liveing.

[Machell's Notes: I.336]

*Se. Court Rolls.
†Copper, for brass is a mixture of c[opper] & t[in].
Iter[954] in the late Rebels wars,[955] the Kings party &c. Query of Vale Thwates – gave a defeat to [blank][956]

[I.340]

Tarnes [and Springs] in the demanes of Crakenthorp.[957]
This \ p[arish] all over / is intersperced with many rivulets which chase one another {strive to outrun one or another, which haisten swiftly} into the Great Channell of the no[b]le Eden & there intermix themselves with her waters. As also many curiouse Springs, the chief of which are:

1. St Giles, his well, which springs on the south side of an high hill at Crakenthorp in the demaine calld Chappel Hill, just by the edge of the chapleyard, which was called St Giles. Tis a dillicate water,[958] & hath not only as tis supposed serv'd for baptiseing their children*, but medicinal uses, being approvedly good to stop a Lax & heale soare leggs; belike St Giles left his cruches here in the possession of som old hermit who lived ~~some time~~ in and so gave name to the Hermitholm which is near to this place. To which wee may add:

2. The common pump at Crakenthorp Hall {in drying of which a lump of brass ore was taken up as big your head} because it wrought a miraculous cure upon Elizabeth Machell ~~now liveing~~ the lady of the manner &c. The pump at Crakenthorp – ab effectu[959] – extraord[inary] in nature.[960]

[949] Removed? Remedied?
[950] The Chapel of St Giles (named after Aegidius or Giles the Hermit) is in Crackenthorpe township.
[951] 'Land very near to the chapel of Crackenthorpe.'
[952] Elizabeth Whelpdale married Lancelot Machell of Crackenthorpe at Penrith on 30 November 1643; she therefore became 'lady of the manor' and was the mother of Thomas, the antiquary. See C. Roy Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45, at 111.
[953] 'Witness, she herself.'
[954] 'Here.'
[955] The Civil War.
[956] Transcribed as seen; meaning unclear.
[957] This heading has been moved here from MS.I.341
[958] MS: 'St Giles, his well, which springs on the south side of an high hill at Crakenthorp ~~called the Sark Bankes by the~~ \ in the demaine / calld Chappel Hill, just by the edge of the chapleyard, which was called St Giles ~~in the tis~~. Tis a dillicate water ~~as hath bin accounted~~.'
[959] 'From the effect.'
[960] In the MS this last sentence is numbered '6'.

3. Lady Well in the Fryaridge groundes at Apelby, & which has bin so calld (as I suppose) from the Priory. Here dedicate to St Mary and might easily water, as it semeth to have don formerly, every house on that side.[961] \ & [on] the other side also is a conduit pipe / where it runs off the street calld Batlebur (the \ old / Blato Burgum Antoninus speakes of; a member of the Corporation of Apleby).[962]
4. Pike Well which waters the manner house at Murton, coming into \ Murton Hall / by a long divided channel.

[Machell's Notes: I.340]

*{Washing away spiritual impurityes by Baptism but corpo[ris] after by immersion or lotion.}[963]
A place called Plaster Scar over against Winderwath, which is very good plaster for makeing floores. Generous - & Apelby – iron which distroyd the far woods.

[III.80]

{ad Ellercar}
{Noster Martinus Lister clarisimus – in tractate *de Cochleis*; p.146, Cap.1.}[964]
Titulo XXIX. describit musculum Latum testâ admodum tenui, ex fusco vir[id]i descentem, interdum rufessentem. Cuj latitudo ad duas uncias, longitudo ad tres uncias et dimidium. Id genus maximum quem unquam vidit.
Ex his vero inquit ipsis musculis plurimos invenimus in fossis paludis Pottery Carr dictæ juxta Doncaster quibus longitudo fere 5 uncialis, latitudo paulum supra duas uncias et dimidium.
{vitæ, vel aculi Echinorum \ 11:50 / dicti, vel corallium}
Musculorum aliarumve cochlearum testæ si in acri lixivio coquuntur earum exteriores et decolores membrana separari possunt. Et 3a membranula margaritarum splendorem habet et accom[m]odatiss[ima] est ad medicamenta quæ vis[965] in quibus requiruntur vela.[966]

[I.336]

[Other Rarities in Nature]

[Fish]
Hawes Water eales as bigg as a mans thigh.{Infor. J. Wiber from Browham Castle, farmers.}[967]
The pike fish & golden trout in Tease pikedale.
U[l]sewater trouts and eales. 1 trout that was 7 quarter long taken 12 yeares since a[t] Powley Stanke, which ran away with the speare \ as big as an[968] pike / called a Lister twice 12 score ere she came to the shore: infor. eodem.[969]

[III.41]

Langton Tarne, replennishd with eale, tench & troute.

---

[961] MS: 'Here dedicate to St Mary and / ~~has formerly watered~~ as \ might easily water / as it semeth to have don formerly, / every house on that side ~~where it runs of~~ \ the side'.
[962] As this passage is closely written, much scored-through and highly interlineated, the transcription given here is somewhat loose.
[963] 'Baptism by lotion': 'Danaeus: "Baptism signifies not only immersion, but also lotion and ablution; and not only are they baptized who are wholly dipped in water, but they that are tinged or whetted with water."' See Enoch Pond, *Treatise on Christian Baptism* (Boston, 1833), 26.
[964] 'Our most illustrious Martin Lister, *De Cochleis* [On Landsnails]' (London, 1685), and, *Exercitatio anatomica de Cochleis, maxime terrestribus & limacibus* (London, 1694).)
[965] MS: 'quae vit'.
[966] 'Under Heading XXIX he describes a broad mussel with a fairly thin shell, shading from a dark green colour, sometimes becoming reddish. Its breadth [is] approaching two inches, its length towards three and a half inches. This type is the largest that he ever saw. But he says that in the ditches of the marsh called Pottery Carr near Doncaster we find a great many of these very mussels, whose length measures almost five inches and breadth a little over two and a half inches. {For their way of life, either the spines, as they are called, of urchins, or coral.} If the shells of mussels or of other snails are cooked in caustic lye, their outsides and discoloured parts can be separated from the membrane. And a third little membrane has the lustre of pearls and is very useful for various medical treatments in which plasters are required.'
[967] Informant.
[968] A word here is illegible.
[969] 'The same informant.'

[II.464] [970]

A \ Mr Burbeck of Hornby / was in league with a Yorkeshire woman, who was very unwilling to come into Westm'land by reason that she had bin ~~told or att least supposed that they~~ \ informed it was a barren unfruitful countrey & / had no fish; whereupon, a day or 2 After […][971] \ Esq. Machell / sent his man over with an whole horse load of his \ own / takeing; and then she was satisfied that there were some, whence so many were brought. {Non Tanti.}[972]

[I.340]

[Birds]

Eagles or rather vultures – bread in Hikeupdale Skar, black in colour, their pulti[973] haveing larger limbes than the o[l]d eagle that was kept at Queens College.

[I.341]

In Bongate St Nicholas Wood, sparrow hawk nests.[974] In the bogg at the bottom of Thornbur[975] Hill, wild ducks build; as also at Spittlemire in the demane or high groundes at Crakenthorp. Herinsew[976] nests in the other end & q[uery] of ospreys[977] – cranes in Flakebrege. Wild duck at Spittle. Eagles.[978]

[Beasts]

Martes in Flakebridge

[I.229]

[Minerals]

(Remarkes)

1. In the Lordship of Bongate is a qaurrie of he[w]n ston[e], for the bankes of Eaden are a reed[979] rock here; but besides the Church there is no place remarkeable and there is \ not now / any manor [house].

[I.340]

[2.] Allso blew stone like Irish slate, which make very \ good hoanes[980] / under ground. There are very rich mines, in the fell & mountanes, of lead & coale – but little sought after – especially in a place calld Scordell – concerneing which Gillmans wife, alijs Mother Shipton, as has bin said, deliverd this rime when she passed over that beck which run due [blank]

[I.342]

{She put her finger ith Beck}

Is in this Scordell
Has riches more
than tong can tell.
They that awn'd to open Dunfell sneck
May shovell out ther silver in a peck.[981]

---

[970] This passage from MS.II.464 has been placed here, as Machell suggested: {'Prefix this to Crakenthorp, benef. of the lordship.'}

[971] 2cm of illegible text are crossed through here.

[972] 'Not so many.'

[973] A reference to the young of these birds, 'pulti' being derived from either 'puler' (17th century), 'a young bird, a fledgling'; or 'pult'/ 'pulter': 'an edible fowl: (collectively) poultry'. *OED*.

[974] MS. 'Sparrow hawks' is repeated elsewhere on this page.

[975] Thornbarrow.

[976] 'Herons': derived from Old French heronçeau. Other former names were heronshaw and hernshaw.

[977] MS. Repeated: 'Hernisews in Flakebrige wood as – of ospreys.'

[978] In the MS, this paragraph also contains a quotation, 'Up weel Spink & Draw well Sparke'. For the source of this reference, see Machell's Preface (II.469).

[979] Red sandstone.

[980] Sharpening stone.

[981] MS: 'Is in \ this / Scordal, ~~Arre~~ \ Has / riches more than tong can tell. ~~But~~ They that awn'd to open Dunfell sneck May shovell \ out ther silver in a / ~~soldett … a~~ peck'. MS. I.340 contains the words, 'Skordell Has riches more Than tongue can tell.' This reference is to the Yorkshire prophetess and soothsayer, Mother Shipton (Ursula Southeil c. 1488-1561). 'She had made her debut in print in the 1640s, but this appears to be the first indication that her legend was already being grafted onto landmarks in specific communities and woven into the fabric of their parochial lore.' Extracted from Adam Fox, 'Vernacular culture and popular customs in early modern England: evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and Social History*, vol. 9, 3 (2012), 329-347, at 336.

[3.] Stone at Murton and Bongate, but none at Crakenthorp; what built that house being fetch from far
[I.341]

Murton Fells – and others
Rarityes: There are a sort of blewish thin stones, like unto the Irish slate, & I am perswaded of the same vertue, but have experimentally found them to be good for sharping of rasors; no way inferiur to the Irish hoane. There are allso a sort of cristall stone, but very flakey. The same I suppose which those that are found in Muscovia and Saxony, called by the names of specularis, selenites, alumen, scaiblæ: usefull in medicine, which they render in English, the specular stone.

[I.340]

Murto[n] Pike – 2 miles high – is mad[e] of a pyrm[982] in the front of that gra[n]d ridge of mountane which resemble the Alpes.

[I.339]

{The Soyle}
The soyle is here (as in most other places) of diverse sortes, but generally claiy, and is very fertil, especially by the bankes of the River Eden & places adjacent, which are impregnated & inspirited with it. It produceth good corne, cattle & sheepe, these on the mountanes, those in the bottom & more champeon ground.[983] It is also adorned with wood in some partes,[984] but very rare, the most being as \ at / Crakenthorp* which is famous for ash & the strongest grad[e] oake in the Kingdom of England. For a smale nale being but entered into it can hardly be pulled out agane, & if the quantity did but answer the quality & were nearer the sea, no timber could be like it for ships.[985] Perhaps it may derive its strenth from the nature of the soyle being a strong clay.

[Flora]
Here \ are / also in the same wood, which I never saw elsewhere, wilde cherry trees; also rasp berry & wine berryes in the bankes [ab]out Troutbeck, naturally growing†. {~~But before~~ & here I must also observe unto a rarity in Nature which shows the benignity of the soyle & \ comfortable / tempertor of the air. He had in his floore gardene about – the present rector has had in his garden \ at Shrovetide / since he came to this place, double gillyflores, in their full blossom, ~~at shovetime~~ and here I cannot but take notice a rarity in nature which showes the benignity of the air & ~~fertility~~ of soyle. The present rector ~~hath~~ had in his floore garden not many years since, double gilliflowers in ful blossom at Shrovetide.}[986]

[Machell's Notes: I.339]

*(Query. Where Flakebrig?)
†{Query. If not in Murton parish.}

[I.70]

Crakenthorpe furne & woods: demoll.

[I.341]

At Crakenthorp, which is very remarkeable for its verdure and greenness, being a springy place, ~~are all manner~~ \ is great / [store] of dillicate physicall[987] herbes, the demanes & wods being as a garden.

[982] Pyramid?
[983] Variant of Champion (Champagne) country: level, open land or fields. See John Morrill (ed.), *The Oxford Illustrated History of Tudor and Stuart Britain* (Oxford, 2000), 2.
[984] MS: Written in pencil in large letters at right angles to the main text: '{In nature trees […] buck [t]hornes, hazels.}'
[985] MS: 'if the quantity did but answer the q. ~~it would be the best fetch~~ & were nearer the sea, no timber could be like it for ships.'
[986] This comment refers to the rectory at Kirkby Thore, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.537.
[987] Medicinal.

~~Birdse~~ Mellilot,[988] addertong,[989] epithimus,[990] golden globes[991] & Birds Een[992] – concerneing which see a Rem in Kirkbythore.[993]

[Fruit]
Rasp-berryes & hindberryes at a place calld Scalehowses in Murton Demaine, & bleaberryes at Meal Fell, a pasture thereto also belonging. Wineberryes at the south corner of Flakebrig Wood {formerly a parke replennishd with deere} in a place called the Springhead, by the beckside.
Allso cherry trees, which grow wild & bear fruit in the Chaplewood near Roger Head.

[I.339]

I shal conclude with ~~an~~ \ this / observation ~~(if it be not common & \ rather / a thing over general to the whol county that peculiar~~.) \ of rarityes in nature / which is rather generall {to these} throughout the whol countrey, then peculiar & proper to this one parish \ place alone /: that here are such floores growing in our medows, commons and wasts, as in the south partes are \ ~~most~~ highly / esteemd of ~~as raritye~~s, sc. go[l]den globes & pansey, or hartsease as they are som where calld, to which I must ad, that delicate bunchd pinck colourd flooer calld the Pink.'

[I.310]

Accidents

{Bongate}
In 1675 att a place called Dowcoate Flat by Bongate was an ashtree removed of about 3 yards under bowes[994] & 8 inches diameter; i.e. 2 foote in circumference) with a parcel of earth therewith 12 yards square[995] & 3 yards deepe, after a wonderfull manner as seemed to some; for it was caryed upright in the earth & slid downe an hill over some Eller (i.e. Alder) copses or bushes; and there being a plane at the bottome of the hillside about 16 yards in breadth, it continued its course over this plane into the River, there being a great flood then, [and stopped] 10 yards within the bankes of the Eden, where it stood & stands still erect, save only that it inclines a little westward. The winde was high that night but blew contrary, that is to say against the hill \ which made the thing more wonderful to som / which might be a meanes to keep it upright. And there were some showers of raine but noe great ones, neither any water course near the place where this tree stood; onely so much water as rann of the lands downe along a furrow,[996] and that is all the \ naturall / reason can be give for this accident; but a man dyed that night, whose name was Kiplin, that lived upon Stanemoore & was reputed a conjure[r],[997] to whose translation[998] it was chiefly imputed by the credulous multitude. {I give the story to rase admiration then the reason to solve the phenomenon} but indeed shows a natural reason for it, & solves the phenominon, for the root being brought down by force of the warter & descent of the hill, the contrary wind kept it upright & kept it from falling.

---

[988] Melilot: sweet clover.
[989] Adder's tongue fern.
[990] Epithymum is the 'dodder', 'the common name of the genus Cuscuta, family Convolvulaceæ, comprising slender leafless plants, like masses of twining threads, parasitic on flax, clover, thyme, furze, and other plants. *OED*. It was used as a herbal remedy, e.g. for 'melancholic passion': 'Take Epithymum one ounce and a halfe, Azure stone, Agaricus, of each one quar|ter of an ounce, Diagridion one drag. 20 Cloves, this being beaten together and tempered, you are twice a wéeke to give thereof … To moisten the drie braines in this Melancholia … take the flowers of Borage, of Buglosse, Thymus, Epithymus, of each a like quantitie, séeth this together, and wash the head therewith.' See Christof Wirsung, *The general practise of physicke conteyning all inward and outward parts of the body, with all the accidents and infirmities that are incident vnto them, euen from the crowne of the head to the sole of the foote: also by what meanes (with the help of God) they may be remedied* (London, 1605), 'The twelfth Chapter. The Braines, and all that concerneth them,' 133.
[991] Globeflower.
[992] Bird's Eye speedwell.
[993] 'Rem' here might stand for (Latin) 'matter or material', but equally it could be a contraction of the word, 'remarkable'. Machell treats 'bird een' more fully in Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.566.
[994] Boughs.
[995] MS: Machell drew a square shape here.
[996] Drainage channel.
[997] 'One who practises conjuration; one who conjures spirits and pretends to perform miracles by their aid; a wizard'. *OED*.
[998] Death.

[I.328A]

Appleby St Michaels ad Crakanthorp
Action of a whirlwind on waters, March 14 1685/6
Thomas Soulby informed me of a strange accident which hapned by a winde att the head of Ellerker, over\a/gainst Stega Lands yeat; when he & others were makeing hay there, all the water in Eaden from side to side was taken up in the winde by a whirlepuft,[999] the bredth of an house, so that he fairly discovered the channel & stones in the bottom without any water. This was about 14 years since.[1000]

[III.75]

{Ad Burton Lordship about 15 years agoe}
Anthony Stephenson found a man – in the last great frost & snow save one – in a gill above Brampton & Hilton call'd Grena-Gill, lying & moaning in the snow, who gave this account concerneing himself. That he came from Durham to the Nether Pit on Stanemore to see som of his acquaintance ~~who were~~ working there; and thence intending for High Ubanke he miss'd his way (or was missed for) a \ whol / weeke together twixt Sunday & Sunday, never resting, eating nor sleeping \ all the while / nor knowing whether it was night or day all that time but that \ there / ~~were~~ was something like a black dog sometimes running before him. His leggs were so perished in the cold that they ~~perished by it & were both~~ cut of just under the knee about 3 monthes after.

[I.340]

{Anything extraord[inary] in Art or Nature}

A monstrous birth about Friday 15 February 1686/7.}[1001]

[III.75]

{A milston caryed over Wharton Park wall without injury.}

[I.339]

[Extraordinary Things of Antiquity]
{Amongst these ancient things of antiquity which are extraordinarie I thinke fit to mention an ingeniouse old woman who lived in this town til she was 120 years old. Her names were Sanderson whom in a byname they called Cowsonsy – a compound old word which signifyes unhorned but lucky and signifyes a good lucky cow that wante shed her hornes.[1002]

[I.341]

Below the ca[mp] & nearer Kirkbythore at a place calld Machells Banke near the High Street on the left hand as you goe to K. there were urnes found in this Lordship with ashes in them &c: see one in amongst my paper sent to the Repository at Oxford by Mr Tod, & query farther of T. Long & his son.[1003]

[Other General Notes]

[I.262b]

The Lordship of Burrells.
Lordship of Skattergate.
Soulfield p[art] of the dem[ain] belong[ing] to Apleby Castle in the Lordship of Bong[ate].
Langton Field p[ar]cell of the dem[ain].
Land belonging to Apleby Castle.
Lordship of Wood Side.
In 1628 tis said that the forge in the demain lands of Browham had there been lately built.
The long warren of Lancton.

[999] Whirl-puff: puff or gust of wind such as raises dust in a whirl or eddy; also a whirlwind. *OED*.
[1000] MS.1.340 refers to these phenomena in a short note: 'a tree which ran down into Eden; a thunder shower in Brampton.'
[1001] This number could equally well read '18'.
[1002] The word 'wante' is unclear. More material on Cow Sonsy occurs in the Parishes of Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin (I.538-546).
[1003] See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.

[II.369A]

The other side adjoyneing the Lyde of Bolton Fields &c. To be calld & known by the name of Rowland Close, scituate lying and being within the Lordship, Township & Territories of Crakinthroppe aforesaid: And lying & being within the Spedings of Thone Side, and the water of Eden on thother side adjoyneing unto the side of.[1004]

[1004] The text ends here.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 2]

[Parish of Askham]

[I.356]

For this see my notes of Ascome parish. Tis writ Ascome S.D.[1] in the Catalogue of Shireves, MS of Westm'land in General, sc. Part V.[2]

[I.359][3]

Askam

[**The Church**]

The church is dedicated to St Peter*, as appears out of Haltons Register.[4] In it there is not any thing remarkable save in Sandford quire, which is on the south side the church behind the pulpit.[5]

Sandford Quire

In it are 2 fair throughs:[6] one huen stone, covered with huen stone above 4 cubits long & 2 & ½ broad,[7] under which is interred Thomas Sandford; this is next to the south window. He died durante vita Patris.[8] The other near the pulpit is almost as large every way, and covered with a fair marble of a brownish colour mixed with blew & some white vanes. \ Under is burrid Long John Sandford / {who was yonger brother of the said Thomas, buried on St John day,[9] 44 yeres since R. English buried in St Peters at Ashby.}[10] It was diged up out of water at the east end of church, at a place called Holly Well, because it descends by steps as into a well, and {Ita[11]} is the place wher they fetch their water wherewith they Baptise: An no question formerly in time of popery, whence they had their water \ on / which they had made holly water in this same place.

The parish[ioners] of Askam were used on Easter Day in the afterenoon to sing hyms and the parishioners of Lowther on the other side the water, there being a brave Ecco to contend with them†.[12]

There are besides in this quire severall grave stones, 2 whereof are somewhat remarkable.
That next the pulpit which is older, haveing a sort of † rose upon it[13] and on the right side a pair of sheres, the best sort of sisers no doubt in old time.

---

[1] 'Sine die': without date.
[2] The List of sheriffs (VI.583-95) contains no reference to Askham, but see Machell's Introduction to Westmorland: I.49, 93, 95, 123; II.487 (reference to a charter SD), 492, 505, for other references.
[3] I.359-367 are also numbered 1-9.
[4] Bishop Halton's Register: John de Halton was bishop of Carlisle, 1292-1324, see CAS(C), DRC1/1. See also, *The Register of John de Halton*, 2 vols, CWAAS Record Series II (Kendal, 1913).
[5] Askham Church was rebuilt in 1832-33 by Robert Smirke (architect of Lowther Castle) on the plan of the medieval church, incorporating some of its features: Hyde & Pevsner, 121-22.
[6] 'Throughs' are flat gravestones. *OED*.
[7] Cubit: an ancient measure of length derived from the forearm; varying at different times and places, but usually about 18-22 inches. *OED*.
[8] He died 'in his father's lifetime.'
[9] St John the Evangelist: 27 December.
[10] Thomas died 27 September 1630, and John who succeeded him was buried on 28 December in the same year. See Frederick W. Ragg, 'Helton Flechan, Askham and Sandford of Askham', *CW2,* 21 (1921), 174-233, at 198.
[11] 'Thus.'
[12] The River Lowther runs between Askham and Lowther in a deep gulley; hence the echo.
[13] A rose-headed cross.

The other, a cross rose in planer worke; on the right side a booke & a pair of sheres \ under it /more rudely cut, as the whole worke indeed is; on the left side an escutshon and under neath A.S. for Ann Sandford. One Bridget Sandford being lately buried there, B.S. for Brigget Sandford is ingraved thereupon.

In the East window was this Coat of Armes:



Figure 1.2.1. East Window, Askham Church. I.359.

{This was taken out of the quire upon the comeing up of the Scots in the Civil Wars,[14] & placed in the west wind[ow] of the Hall[15] for preservation.} {Note that antlers the Bores heads are Or.}[16]

There is upon the timber in the body of the church: E.D., E. D.; T.S., T.S.[17] which stand for Edward Dudley & Thomas Sandford, whos as it should seem have given timber to the reparation of the church.

[14] MS: 'Walls'.

[15] Askham Hall, then seat of the Sandford family. Although much of the material on Askham is devoted to the Sandfords, Machell fails to mention a contemporaneous MS bound into his own research (see MS.VI.540-69), written by Edmund Sandford c.1675. This work was later edited by R.S. Ferguson and published as, *A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland*, CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890).

[16] The 16th-century Sandford of Askham arms are described as, 'Per chevron Sable and Ermine two boars' heads couped Or.' During the reign of Edward II, Robert de Sandford bore 'Ermine on a chief indented Sable three boars' heads couped Or.' See *CFH*, 294, but see also I.361, where the boars' heads are 'tusked'.

[17] These are the duplicated initials of Edward Dudley & Thomas Sandford. Nicolson and Burn add the date 1593 after the initials, viz. 'The church is a small old building, with two little bells. Upon the timber in the body of the church, are the letters ED, TS, 1593; for Edmund Dudley and Thomas Sandford who probably gave timber for the repair thereof. And upon one of the coupling beams are the letters JB, supposed to mark the timber contributed by John Bradley of Knipe.' *N&B1*, 422. The Dudleys/Suttons (Barons Dudley) were connected by marriage (in 1512) to the Threlkelds of Yanwath. It is this branch of the Dudley family and its connection with the Sandfords with which Machell is concerned. Richard Dudley (d. Temple Sowerby 1593) married Dorothy, daughter of Edmund Sandford of Askham. His son and heir, Edmund Dudley, was therefore Thomas Sandford's first cousin. Edmund Dudley died c.1614. See W. Jackson, 'The Dudleys of Yanwath', *CW1*, 9 (1888), 318-32.

I finde in Edward the 1ᵗ time? there was a chantry founded here by the Askams, Lords and Patrons of this place; maybe this quire is it; my evidence is out of Haltons Register.[18] Robertus filius Henrici Henry. Almanac for 1674. 24‡.[19]

[Machell's Notes: I.359]

*{They bore rushes on St Peters day.}
†(Note this should be extra ecclesiam.)[20]
‡{This is Aska[m]}

[I.360]

In the southwest corner, the Sandfords of Helton bury, which now are degen[erated] into country people but without controversy of same fam[ily]. Under the south window is an arch over a gravestone, upon which is this inscription:

+ WILLS: DE S ANTONE

{In the quire, in digging a grave lately was found a stone coffin, and the covering being a broad through stone, this inscription:

+ IHES DEC CLAWORGH: i.e. Johannes de Claworgh.}

[Vicarage]
The vicaridge house was built by \ Lancelot Hutchinson / there being over the door this inscription:

PAX HUIC DOMVI
LHM.[21]

He is the present incumbent. The impropriation belongs to the Sandfords of Askam, who are allso patrons in 1362. It was a Rectory, a test […][22]

[**Villages and Lordships**]

Villages. 2: Askham, Helton with halfe of Helton Dale.[23]

Lordships. 3: [1.] Askam 2. Hilton, 3. Sattera Parke.
3. Askham, formerly belonging to the Swinburnes, now to the Sandfords.[24]

Q? I have it. Castlesteed in Yeanwath Wood in Barton. X
Q? I have it. A place in Yeanworth Wood called Maudlin Chapple, & a Well called Mag[dalen] or Holly Well.

4. There is 1 millne at Askham, a duble one.
5. A chaple in Askham Hal*.
6. Rarities: the marble quarryes beneath the church, and pearles found of the bigness of a pea in horse mussels which are in Lowther river.

[18] Bishop Halton's Register, see above.
[19] 'Robert the son of Henry; see my Almanac for 1674, page 24.'
[20] Note, this entry should be among those related to the outside of the church.
[21] 'Peace be to this house'.
[22] Names here, but obscured by the binding, appear to be of those who acted, 'as witness the deeds'. In 1680 the Sandford family sold the tithes to Sir John Lowther, see John F. Curwen, *The Castles and Fortified Towers Of Cumberland Westmorland and Lancashire North-of-the*-Sands, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913), 239.
[23] The word 'Winder' appears here in the margin, but it is very faint.
[24] MS: 'Askham, formerly belonging to the Swinburnes, now to the Sandfords. ~~There is a fortification near Askham Hall~~.'

7. Manner houses ~~onely~~ \ 1. / Askam,[25] to which there is one demane and one demane at Hilton, where there is a place called Hall-Steeds.[26] There has bin allso a chaple, as appears from a place called Chaple Yeat.

[Machell's Notes: I.360]

*Sed non dum vidi.[27]
{N[ote]} At Helton Tithebarn End is a stone seat where he who comes there is to stay till all the rest come up to him, where they confer about their affairs and so part home. It is looked upon as a great piece of rudness not to performe this cerimony.
Askham Hall. Idonea dates from Helton as I s[uppose].[28]

[I.361]

Over the gate of the gatehouse.
Over the great gate.[29]

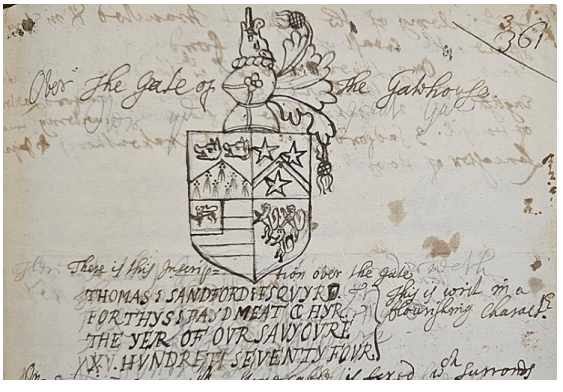


Figure 1.2.2. Askham Hall, gate inscription. I.361.

There is this inscription over the gate; this is writ in a flourishing character

THOMAS | SANDFORD | ESQVYRE.
FOR THYS | PAYD MEAT CC HYR.
THE YER OF OVR SAVYOVRE
X.V. HVNDRET SEVENTY FOVR[30]

On 2 pins upon which a stone cable is fixed which surrounds the arch of the gate; on the one TS; on the other AS, for Thomas Sandford and Ann Sandford his wife.

In the chapple, the East window has 2 lights. In the first is ~~St Simon, I thinke, with our saviour in his hand~~ \ the Trinity; / in the 2nd is the Virgin Mary with Our Saviour. On the wall above the[se] are 2 escutchions in stone.

[25] Askham Hall was enlarged by Thomas Standford in 1574: Curwen, *Castles and Fortified Towers*, 347-49.
[26] MS: 'to which there ~~are~~ \ is / ~~2 demanes and~~ one \ dem[ane] / and one demane at Hilton, where there is a place called Hall-Steeds.'
[27] 'But I have not yet seen it.'
[28] The last word in this sentence is partially obscured by the binding.
[29] The second phrase is in blue pencil; it was probably written on the spot.
[30] This has been inked over an originally pencilled version.

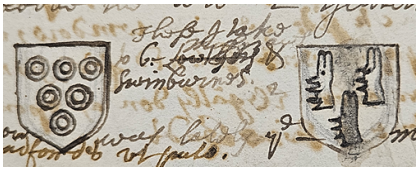


Figure 1.2.3. Askham Hall Chapel, East Window. I.361.

These I take to be ~~Lowthers~~ \ Musgraves / & Swinburnes. This pale must be taken away
In the first window was lately the Musgraves arms impaled by the Sandfords ut puto.[31]

In the Hall

In the East window the midle light is this coat, viz. quarterly: 1. Parted per cheveron Sable & Ermin. 2. Bores heads couped Argent! Tusked Or. \ The paternal coat of the Sandfords. / The 2nd Sable 3 lyons rampand Argent caud[32] inflexed Argent. By the name of English. The 3d, as the 2nd; the 4th as the 5th; the creast[33] on a wreath \ Azure & Sable. / On a close side helmet a borehead couped erect Or tusked Argent gor~~ge~~ \e/d with a falchion of the same.

In plasterworke Southside wall: 3 escutchions

The 1. quarterly of 8.
1. The paternall coate of the Sandfords
2. English
3. ~~Lancaster~~ Crakenthorpe, with a floredelise for distinction
4. Lancaster
5. English
6. Sandford
7. Lancaster
8. Crakenthorpe.

The 2nd quarterly of 4.
1. Sandford
2. English
3. ~~Lane~~ Crakenthorpe
4. Lancaster

The 4th is impaled
The 1t is Sandford quartering English, Crakenthorpe & Lancaster
the 2nd Hutton of Hutton John quartering Barwise

[I.362]

The sealing of the Hall is branched & in every space the crest of the Sandfords. On a livery cubbord which stands in a lodging roome above the parlour are 4 coats: 1t. Sandford quartering English; the 2: Crakenthorpe with floredelies quartering Lancaster of Howgil; 3. Sandford by it selfe; 4. Crakenthorpe[34] impaleing Lancaster of Howgill.

[31] '…impaled by the Sandfords, I think.'
[32] Tails.
[33] Crest.
[34] Followed here by a tiny fleur de lys sketch.

The kitchen back door



Figure 1.2.4. Kitchen doorway stone, Askham Hall. I.363.

This stone stands att jaume of the low end doore as you goe the back way into the kitchen*.

[Chapel]
There is allso on the Chaple, above the East window, which I should have taken notise of before, 2 scutchions – one on each side the litle window – which tho very rude, yet I suppose were intended for Swineburnes, which are \ else / where more elegantly don; as upon their Seale in Edward 3. time: 3 Swine heads. The same coats allso have bin upon the Cross which stood in the midle of the Towne, one upon one side and the other upon the other, thus.



Figure 1.2.5. Coats of arms on Askham Cross. I.362.

[Dining Room]
There is allso upon a mullion on one of the windows of the gatehouse dineing roome – On a scutch. a lyon rampant (maybe) alluding to the Englishes, who tho in their coat they bear 3, yet in their Seale Ancient they bare onely a single lyon rampant

[Stable Door]
There is H.M. in a roundel above the stable door, which was don by one Humphery Musgrave related to this house

[Machell's Notes: I.362]

*The family of the Sandfords. Concerneing it Mr Edmund Sandford informes me that one T. Rud of Sandforth has many writeings concerning the Sandfords.[35]

[I.363]

by their match with Musgraves as you may see in the pedegree; from whome to this day it is called Humphrey Stable.

[35] Edmund was a common name among the Sandfords but presumably this was Edmund Sandford the antiquary, see fn. 15, above.

[Sandford Deeds]

5º Richard 2d [1381-82]. Edmundus de Sandford make a conveyance of all his lands & tenements with appurt[enances] in the villages of Heton Flechan, Ascum et alibi in com. Westmerland Kt.d.[36] ut puto post marritagium.[37] {William s[on] of Sir Edmund & Idonea.}

8. Richard 2nd [1384-85]. Idonea, formerly the wife of Ed~~ward~~\mund/ Sandford, Knight, makes Adam de Crosby & Thomas de Barton for attorneys ad recipiendum serviciam nomine ~~meo~~ \ suo / et nomine Will[ielmi] de Sandford filij et heredis praedicti. Edmundi, Anno regni Richardi, regis Angiae et Franciæ octavo.[38]

9º Henry 4. [1407-08]. William de Hoton in foresta & William de Bolton doe quit clame to William de Sandford Chivalier, totum, usquæ aliquam in hab. potestatem in manerio de Ascome cum molendino ejusdem. Et omnibus alis terris & ten[ementis]. In conveyance dated eodem anno Alan Kirkbride releases to them ½ man[or] & village of Heton Flechan quæ / {fuit Sir Thomae Lengleys}.[39]

10. Henry 4. [1408-09]. Idonea Ughtreth, nuper uxor Thomae Ughtreth, militis.[40] Bound in a bond of 200 for performance of indenture to William Sandford, Knight. {Sir William marr[ied] Margaret.} ~~16.~~ \ 13. / Henry 4th [1411-12]. The manner of Ascome is info\e/fed upon William Sandford, Knight, & Margaret his wife, & their heirs by William de Woodside, capel; Thomas Jackson, & Adam Bro[wha]n. (John Lengleys filius et heres Domini Robert Lengleys, 1399.)[41]

[Will] of Idonea Ougthred

2. Henry 5th 1414. The~~r~~ will then dated; her executors being Robert Brut, armiger, who married Johane, her daughter; & Johan Sandford, filius Sandford, brother of Sir William {Sir William Sandford, son of Idonea; John, son Idonea} \ upon / which will she lyes this imposition:

> …Item onoravi Dominum Willielmum Sandford, filium meum et ipse onoret filios suos et filios filiorum, ut exhibeat et exhibeant presbiteram Idoneum celebrandum in ecclesia de Ascome in perpetuum pro animabus benefactorum nostrorum et omnium fidelium defunctorum sub poena benedictionis meæ vel maledictionis.[42] Apud Cranestie in Com. Northampton.

---

[36] 'And elsewhere in the county of Westmorland.' 'Ktd' is an insecure transcription because the second letter is blotted. Machell used similar letter groups (see a reference to Yanwath in Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.734) such as KαT, an abbreviation of the Greek adverb, κα/τω, meaning 'below', or, 'in the lower part'. In this instance, the probable context (the Bottom of Westmorland) is consistent with a reference to 'below', but the Greek abbreviation is unclear and appears to be carelessly written.

[37] 'After the marriage, I think.'

[38] 'Attorneys to receive service in his name and in the name of William de Sandford, son and heir of the aforesaid Edmund, in the eighth year of the reign of Richard, King of England and France.'

[39] 'William de Sandford, Chivalier, in its entirety, as far as he has any authority in the manor of Askham along with its mill. And all other lands and tenements. In conveyance dated the same year Alan Kirkbride releases to them … which was of Sir Thomas Lengleys.'

[40] 'Recent wife of Thomas Ughtreth, knight.'

[41] 'John Lengleys, son and heir of Lord Robert Lengleys, 1399.'

[42] 'Item. I have done honour to Lord William Sandford, my son; and he himself should do honour to his own sons and the sons of his sons. And he should ensure and they should ensure their forbear Idonea is commemorated in the church of Askham in perpetuity for the sake of the souls of our benefactors and all the faithful dead. Under the penalty of my blessing or malediction.'

This was made about the 2nd of Henry 5th [1414-15]. There is a shedule of her Estate in Westm'land, which I hold wo[r]th inserting.[43] Viz.

> MS. "I Dame Edone Sandforth ... (it seems it was made before she marryed Ugtred) ... maketh her remembrance": 'of all my landys in Westm'land the wyche ys myn heritage; That is to say the tone halfe off the towne off Helton Flechne wych the p\a/tenance; That is to say Helton Dall with the Skewegh. Item Land in Carholand; Item Land in Butterwyke; Item the manner of Knype; Item Satrow Parke wyth the browne more;[44] Item the depeynge; Item the Court yard with the Rod-banke and the Schaype Cott;* halfe the mylne of Helton; Item Stockthwaite and

[Machell's Notes: I.363]

*{is an hamlet.}

[I.364]

> Wyth wath; Item 2 acrs of Land in the Whale that lyeth by the beke; Item a Barwayne at Helton towne head. And these parcells above sayd is myne anerytance be my Lord my father, the which my Lady my graname gauffe my fder and to hys hayres; Item I have in Ascome 8 oxgangs of Land and halfe the mylne Cong~~ing~~ynd[45] to the same the wych my Lord my father purchassd of Syr Hew off Lowther and gayffe it to me; Item stockyng the manner and the Lands and the Towne of Ascome, the wych that my Lord my husband and I p\a/chesed* that cost us viij hondreth marks and 50, of the wyche my therd as I had in Syr Thomas Ughtred dayes†. And fore these landes of Ascome the chyld suld be ward gyff the law: will I 'and for noe' nother lands that myne is'‡.

{William, brother of Sir Edmund}

5. Henry 5th [1417-18]. Mention of William de Sandford who paid rent to Idonea, widow of Thomas Ughthred, Chevalier, for a farme holden pro termino annorum⸸.[46]

6. Harry 5. [1418-19]. She was a widow to Ougthred, anno 1420 \ 8. Henry 5. / She made an other will, where in she gives her body to be buried in the church of St Peter Leye and her best habit by name – the principle, which was a mantle||. To Idonea Sandford¶ her best black bed with the appurten[ances]; to the mother of Robert Brette, all her gounes & curtles; to Johane her daughter unam peciam argenti sine cooperculo.[47] If Idonea Sandford dye, provided allwayes that Idonea outlive me. To Idonea all my chifts & juells. I will allso that Robert Sandford, my heir, shall have those 8 oxgangs of land & halfe the milne in Ascome, which my father bought

[Machell's Notes: I.364]

*(Sir Edmund & Idonea purchased Ascome of Syr Robert Swyneborne.)
†(It seems this was made after the death of Sir Thomas, her 2nd husband, after which she reassumed the surname of Sandford & used both promiscuously as in the will she is called Utghtred.)
‡It seemes his father was not lyable to wardship for anything which he had.
⸸This William I take to be \ the younger / brother of Sir Edmund, put him downe so with [blank] insteed of lines.
||(NB) {that daughter of Lady Idonea. Idonea and Johane. Robert Sandford my heir and filius Will. Befor she calls him not son and yet had a son called John.}
¶(I suppose eldest daughter.)

[43] See an exact copy in *N&B1*, 424-25.
[44] This word is blotted, making the transcription unsafe.
[45] Probably 'conjoined'.
[46] 'For a term of years.'
[47] 'A silver object without a cover.'

[I.365]

{Robert obliged to found a chaple}
of Hug de Lowther, upon condition that he shall found one chapple; ad celebrandum missam pro anima patris mei et antecessorum meorum[48] in the chaple of St Mary de Ascome, and if he found one, a certane distribution of 10^{s} pro anima patris prædicti Roberti & antecessorum suorum.[49]
But if he will not doe soe, yet the forsaid oxgangs &c. shall be sold & said denarios inde receptæ ponant ad usum interiendum unum capellam et ad faciende um distributionem supra dictas.[50]
Executors: John Pykwell; John Yorke, chaplain vicar ecclesia S[anc]ti Pet[rus]; John Macel; Robert le Superviser.

9. Henry 5th [1421-22] Robert Sandford is seised of all lands, tenements, rents & reversions & services left by Lady Ugtrich with the appurtenances in the county of Westmorland. Witness inter alios Johane Sandford & William Barton. This John was his brother or uncle.

3. Elizabeth. 1560. Elizabeth Sandforth of Graystoke, in which she onely mentions her ~~sister~~ daughter, Dorath Dudley & Thomas Sandford Esq. whome she makes her executor. I take it to be \ Askham / purchased about the 46th of Edward 3^{d} [1372-73], by Sir Edmund.

Sandford; Idonea: the matches of Sandforth è pedigree
1. Ed\mund / younger brother to William married Idonea, daughter & heir to Sir Thomas English, Knight, which Thomas was son of Robert English, who was son of John, Lord of Little Askeby. And Idonea daughter & one of the heirs of John (~~Lord~~) \ Lord / Morvil, Lords de Hilton & Askam. This Edmund was knighted after or upon his marriage.

[2.] Sir William Sandford, Knight, son & heir of Sir Edmund [and] Margaret 13. Henry 4. [1411-12].

{Sandford, English, with Thornburg}
3. Robert Sandford, son & heir of William & heir to Idonea \ yet liveing / 8. Henry 5. [1420-21]. Ut a testamento patet:[51] marryed Elizabeth Thornburg vixit Robert,[52] 38. of Henry 6. [1459-60].

{With Musgraves & English}[53] {S. Sandford & English with Musgrave}
4. Thomas Sandford, son & heir to Robert, marryed Margaret, daughter to Musgrave.

{S[andford] & Eng. with Cu[rwen]}
5. William Sandford, son & heir to Thomas, marryed Mabell, daughter to Sir Christopher Curwen, Knight.

[I.366]

6.[54] Edmund, son & heir to William, marryed Elizabeth Warcop, daughter to Warcop of Smardale, who bares 3 covered cups Argent with a crescent of the same for distinction.

7. ~~Edmund~~ \ Thomas / Sandford, son & heir to ~~Will~~ \ Ed. / married Grace, daughter to Ambrose Crakenthorpe de Howgil. She had 2 sisters: Margaret and Ciscel. Ambrose was brother to Anthony

[48] 'One chapel to celebrate mass for the soul of my father and of my ancestors.'
[49] '… for the soul of my father the aforesaid Robert and of his ancestors.'
[50] '… and they shall place the said profit of the sale, to the use of founding a chapel, and to making the distribution, as stated above.'
[51] 'As he makes clear from his testament.'
[52] 'Married Robert'.
[53] The rest of this margin comment has perished.
[54] Originally placed after 9, but with a ring around it, probably to show that it was a misplaced afterthought.

Crakenthorp ~~who dyed~~ sonne of [blank] Crakenthorp & [blank] Lancaster, whence they quarter the coate of the Lancaster de Howgill, who dyed without Isue & left the estate to his 3 nieces. The 3[d] brother had Howgill by gif of his mother*.

8. Thomas son & heir to Thomas Beareing married Ann, eldest daughter of Cuthbert Hutton of Hutton John & had Isue Thomas†.

9. Thomas Sandford‡ son & heir to Thomas, married Martha the daughter of John Witherington Knight, who bears quarterly Argent & Gules a bend Sable on the 1[t] & 4. He had Isue Thomas, John, Edmund. Thomas dyed young. Edmund never marryed. But John, the 2, succeded in the estate. 4 sisters: Anne dyed a nun. Elizabeth maryed to Thomas Hilton de Murton Great. Martha, Margaret & Dor[athy] dyed unmarryed.

10. John marryed Mary, the onely daughter of Edward English of Eglinby de Carlile Esq. His Isue, Mary dyed an infant. Thomas, a Captain for the King ~~the~~ Charles the 1[t] in 48. Duke Hambletons was the 1[t] protestant of the family. And ensigne in Carlile to Sir Philip Musgrave, the governers company in King Charles 2 times. He married Elizabeth, the \ eld[est] / daughter of William Orpher de Plumbland Hall (Esq.) alias dict[55] High Close, and had Isue 1. William, 2. John, a merchant, Thomas, dyed a youth. ~~4. Bridget~~ d[yed]an infant. Mary & Elizabeth, twins, living. \ Bridget /. Mat[ilda], d[yed] an infant. Ephraim⸸.

[Machell's Notes: I.366]

*{Hence Sandford. Query English with Lancaster & Crakenthorp. It should be Crakenthorp & Lan.}
†{Hutton. Query: a fess between 3 cushons Argent tasseld Or.} Q[uery] 1. his mone.[56] 2. English. 3. Lancaster. 4. Crackenthorp.
‡{Thomas Sandford of Askam Esq. dyed the 17 of February 1676 & was buryed the 19[th] in Askam church.}
⸸{Or ples Sable a † with a mullet in Dexter port.}[57]
The Thwates matched with the Sandford: se their armes.

[I.367]

A Note of Sir Edmond Sandford

Alice, the onely daughter & heir of Gilbert Lord Sandford, Lord Chamberlain of the Queen Elizabeth and Lord of Hormead in Hartfordshire, was wife unto Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, her son & all Earles of Oxford* ever since stiled Lord Sandford. She dyed at Cawfield 9. of September in the 6[th] yeere of Edward 2[nd], anno domini 1612†. Gundred, the daughter of William the ~~of Will the~~ 2[nd] Earl of Warren & Surrey, was wife unto Roger, Earl of Warwick, after whose death she was remarried to William of Lancaster, Barron of Kendal, a virago of a manly currage who cast the garrison of King Stephen out of the Castle of Warwick & delivered it to Henry Duke of Normandy, the son of Maud the Empress, in the year of our Lord 1252‡. Sockbridge & Howgill both Lancasters and younger brothers of the Lords of Kendall⸸. Thomas Sandford of Askham, great grandchild of Sir William Sandford, the 1. Lord Wharton, and Reynold Carnaby of Northumberland marryed 3 sisters of Warcop, de Warcop tower in Westm'land, chevalier‖. The now Duke of Newcastle, the late Lord Witherington's grandmother, were coheir of Sir Reynold Carnaby, and their posterity have his lands to this day. So as the Duke of Bowzar[58] (& Newcastle) stand in the 4[th] degree in Consanguinity, the Lord Wharton, Lord Witherington and Thomas Sandford of Askam Esq. stand in the 5[th] degree to my

[55] 'Also known as.'
[56] Unclear word.
[57] The rest of this comment has perished.
[58] 'Bolsover'. In 1621 William Cavendish (1592-1676), was created Earl of Newcastle upon Tyne and Baron Cavendish of Bolsover. He succeeded his mother as ninth Baron Ogle in 1629. A noted royalist, he fought in the Civil Wars. He became Marquess of Newcastle upon Tyne in 1643 and was elevated to the dukedom of Newcastle upon Tyne in 1665. See Newcastle, Dukes of, *Encyclopædia Britannica*, 11th edn, Vol. 19 (Cambridge, 1911), 470.

Trees[59] illustrious Lord Dukes grace, who therefore allwayes gives a singular respect to Mr Sandford of Askam, who is allso descended on the femal side from Lanc. Lord of Kendall. The creast is sometimes placed in crownes which in former times the servant of this family used to wear in their bleue liveries. De hi[…] quere.[60]

[I.368]

These blew coates used to serve up the boore head with a song on Xt Xmas.[61]

[Machell's Notes: I.367, 368A]

*{This is from a place so calld; nothing to this family.}
†Note: this is inconsistent, for she could never live 300 yers.[62]
‡{? This may be put (if true) in Lancasters pedigree.}
⸸{Of which, query.}.
‖(De hoc dubito,[63] for it is of Smardale in the pedigree which was drawne by Lord Whartons \ Stuart / se this in Whartons pedigre)

[I.368A]

It should seem of the pedigree that the estate came not from the Swinburne but English.
Q. Whether Morvill was Lord? Nisi villæ et manner[ij].[64]

[I.368B]

Matches of the Sandfords of Ascome[65]

Sandford de Askham Esq	Morvil daughter de Helton & Askham	English of Litle Askby
Sandford &	Thomas, dominus Morvil	Joh. English
Sandford &	Idonea, filia Johanis de Morevil	Rob. English of Litle Askby
Sandford &	Sir Thomas English	
Edmund Sandforth, younger brother to William	Idonea English, daughter & heir of Sir Thomas	

[59] Unclear word.
[60] 'Uncertain about this.' The text has perished here, at the page foot.
[61] The Sandford arms contain boars' heads: see I.159 above, and see *CFH*, 294. The remark is reminiscent of part of Walter Scott's poem, *Marmion*. '…Then was brought in the lusty brawn / By old blue-coated serving-man / Then the grim boar's head frown'd on high / Crested with bays and rosemary.' Sir Walter Scott, *Marmion, A Tale of Flodden Field* (Edinburgh and London, 1808).
[62] Indeed! The sixth year of Edward II was 1312-1313. Perhaps Machell read 1312 as 1612.
[63] 'I am doubtful about this.'
[64] 'Nisi': unless; if not. Machell appears to query whether Morville was a titled lord or was merely lord of the town and manor.
[65] This title has been moved from MS.I.368A.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 3]

[Parish of Asby]

[I.353][1]

Askeby Parish [Notes]

There belongs to the parish church of Askeby
Askby Winderwath, Askby Coatsforth, Asby Little.

I should have thought that it had taken its denomination from Ashes, it being a place where that sort of wood might formerly abound \ and only now groweth / but I dare not verify such conjecture since I find frequently writt in old evidences not Ashby (as now they write it) but Askeby.

{Magna Askeby} {Catellus Anglicus}
Exchambit terras in ~~veldri~~ \ Magna / Askeby, cum Willielmo filio Willielmi Anglici. s.d. (apud Crak[enthorpe]) vel Askham potius.[2]
Askeby Magna is called Askeby Vetus in an Evidence s.d. (penès Sandford).[3]

{Little Askeby manner; English; Sandford}
Little Askeby is a manner & belong'd formerly to the Englishes; for I finde a deed wherein John, the son of Rob Lengleyiss[4] makes over to Henry de Sandford parson of Croseby Garret his manner of Little Askeby, dated att Sandford 34. of Edward 3. [1360-61]*.

Family of Askebyes
Robert de Askeby 27. Henry 3. [1242-43] è cart antiq. penes Com[t] vel Blenkinsop.[5] Family of Askebyes.†

[Machell's Notes: I.353]

*(May be there were som Sandfords at Sandford then. Sed vide in Askham parish.[6] Wheyther seated there.) Hæ è Ca[r]tis penes Sandford de Askham.[7] Se more of Askeby Super in Apleby St Lawrence sub tit Berewyse family.[8] Sed. 0.[9]
†{!} Query: For a Bounder - gleebe - tythe in kind & prescriptions. For more qu? in the following page, where you meet with this make an q[uery] of Mr Musgrave. What Branch he is – what matches & pedigree. See more over leafe where there is the present state of the parish.
See – also – in my V. Booke of Collections, the Several Inquisitions – where you may learne by whom the Lordships were held of old.

[1] Also numbered p.5.
[2] 'Roger son of William Catullus exchanged lands in Great Askeby with William son of William English. Undated (at Crakenthorp) or rather Askham.'
[3] 'In an evidence without date in the custody of Mr Sandford.'
[4] This unclear word has been altered but undoubtedly refers to the family of L'Engleys or English of Highhead, members of which were connected to the Sandfords of Askham: see *CFH*, 204.
[5] 'From an ancient charter in the possession of the Countess or Blenkinsop.'
[6] 'But see in Askham Parish.' Part 1, Ch.2, Askham, details coats of arms and inscriptions related to the Sandford family.
[7] 'These from deeds in the possession of Sandford of Askham.'
[8] 'See more of Asby above in my section on Appleby St Lawrence under the heading Berewyse [Barwis] family'. See Part 1, Ch.1, Town and Parishes of Appleby, I.231, I.303, III.55.
[9] 'But [found] nothing'.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 4]

[Parish of Bampton]

[I.369][1]

To Bampton Church doe belong Bampton-Cundale and I thinke part of Smardale & Wasdale if they doe not rather belong to Shap parish.[2] I finde one of the name of Bampton (but without a par[ish]) in a deed sans date, whose family I suppose were seated here then and had their name from the place.

Deeds

Christopher Culwen dyed seised of the manner of Bampton Knipe as of fee in his said manner, held of the King[3] in Capite[4] by Knights Service and the rent of [blank] & 10d per Annum for Cornage to the King at the usuall termes. Servicium faciendum sec[u]tum ad com[item] ded[it] dom[ino] Reg[i]. &c. Which Christofer dyed the 6th of Aprill 14. Henry 7. [1498-99]. To whome his son \ Sir / Thomas succeded. 'Et valet per annum 40li. Et quod Henricus Clifford, miles, asserendo predictum manerium de eo teneri per servicium militare recepit redit et servicium manerij prædicti de prædicto Thoma Culwen filio, sed quo titulo ad tunc ignorabant.'[5]

{John Chapman. Roger Chapman}
8. Ed. 2. [1314-15] John, son of Roger Chapman, exchanged Totum de Tene[me]ntum suum et terram cum pertinentiis in villa de Louth[er] qual with Hugo de Lowther & Margaret, his wife, pro toto tenement[o] terris et prato in Bampton Cundalle vocat[um] le Wrindland.[6] That messuage 7 acres of Land & 3 acres of medow sold to Henry s[on] of Simon. 39. Ed. [2.] [1365-66].

Bampton Cundale. Bampton Patrick.
Knipe Antiently & till the 12. of Henry 7. [1496-97] (à Sandford) dub[ito] tamen An non Gnype antiquis et hic a me falc Script[us].[7]

---

[1] Also numbered p.7.
[2] The church was appropriated to the Abbey of Shap about the year 1170, confirmed to the abbey by Robert de Chauncey, Bishop of Carlisle, in 1263, and by Bishop Ralph de Irton and the Prior and Convent of Carlisle in 1287. The abbot and monks of Shap were to serve the church as hitherto, with two or three of their canons, one of whom was to be presented to the Bishop as vicar, another to be responsible in temporals. They were also to maintain a secular chaplain to hear confessions, etc. John F. Curwen, *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 245-55.
[3] MS: 'Kink'.
[4] 'By the head'. Tenure in capite [in chief] was an ancient feudal tenure whereby a man held lands of the king immediately. It was of two sorts, the one, principal and general, or of the king as the source of all tenure; the other, special and subaltern, or of a particular subject: https://dictionary.thelaw.com/capite/.
[5] 'And it is worth 40li per year. Also he renders that which Henry Clifford, knight, received, claiming that the aforesaid manor is held of him through knight's service, and also that the service of the aforesaid manor is held of the aforesaid Thomas Culwen, son; but by what title till then they did not know.'
[6] 'John, son of Roger Chapman, exchanged all his tenement and land with its appurtenances in the village of Louther with Hugo de Lowther & Margaret, his wife, in equal exchange for the whole tenement, lands and meadowland in Bampton Cundalle, called le Wrindland.'
[7] 'Knipe Antiently & till the 12. of Henry 7. (See Sandford records). I doubt however whether this were not Gnype to the ancients, but here written by me as found.'

{Curwen}
Sir Christofer Curwen, Knight; Ed[ward] Curwen Esq., witness at a deed of S[ale] of one T[enement] in Bampton Skowes,[8] sold to Sir Xt,[9] dated at Thornthwate 1. H. 6. [1422-23].

{Beauchamp of Knype s.d. Morvil}
Patritius the Son of Thomas who was Lord of the Manner of Hepp now Shap: conveyd by a Deede s.d. to John de Morvilla & his heires &c. all his Lands att Knype (Kýnpē) which belongd to Roger de Bellocampus cum omnibus pertinentijs & with all his land on both sides the water of Lowther belonging to the said village excepting the mill 'cum secta sua. Rendendo Inde Annuatim, S$^{c.}$[10] &c. IIII sagittas ferri infra nundinas St Laurentij de Apleby apud manerium meum de Heppe pro omnibus servicijs, salvo forinsæco.'[11]
+ Sigillum Patritii Filii. Thomæ – writ about[12] (penes Mr Sandford}.[13]

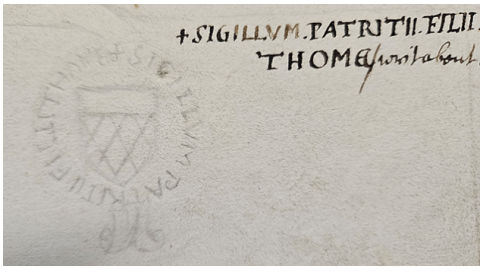


Figure 1.4.1. Pencil drawing. 'SIGILLUM PATRITII FILII'. I.369.

[I.370][14]

[Name of the Parish]

This parish takes its name from the Town of Bampton where the church stands, & worthy remarkd for the birth of Mr Richard Jackson, born near the church at the North Side of it; who was sometime Usher, after Schoolmaster here; whence he remov'd to the free school of Kendal: & from thence for his great ~~renown~~ \ fame / in teaching, was the 1^{t} master chosen to Apleby by Queens College in Oxford after the ellection was confer'd on the College: & the sallary high\ly/ Augmented by many worthy & noble Benefactors once Scollars there. He lyes Buried at Apleby at the East end of the church: ubi vide plura.[15]

[8] Skews.
[9] Sir Christopher Curwen.
[10] Assessments: taxes.
[11] 'Roger de Bellocampus, with all appurtenances & with all his land on both sides the water of Lowther belonging to the said village, excepting the mill with its approach way. Rendering thence annually S$^{c.}$ &c. IIII arrows of iron within the market-days of St Laurentius of Apleby at my manor of Heppe in return for all services, excepting foreign [service].'
[12] + Seal of Patritius, son of Thomas, written about it.
[13] 'The deed is in the possession of Mr Sandford.'
[14] Also numbered p.30.
[15] 'And here see more.' For Richard Jackson see Lionel Budden, 'Some Notes on the History of Appleby Grammar School', *CW2* 39 (1939), 227-61, at 240-1, 261. Jackson was headmaster at Appleby, 1671-1686.

[Machell's Notes: I.370]
A.D. 1693, T. Burneyates, the Oxford Carrier,[16] brought from thence a~~n~~ ~~g~~ muscle with a large pearle in it to Archdeacon Nicholson, which he tooke up there out of the river. Test[ament] W. Nich[olson].[17]

[I.370A]

{Dr Mills Letter}[18]

[Letter from Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, 20 September 1686.]

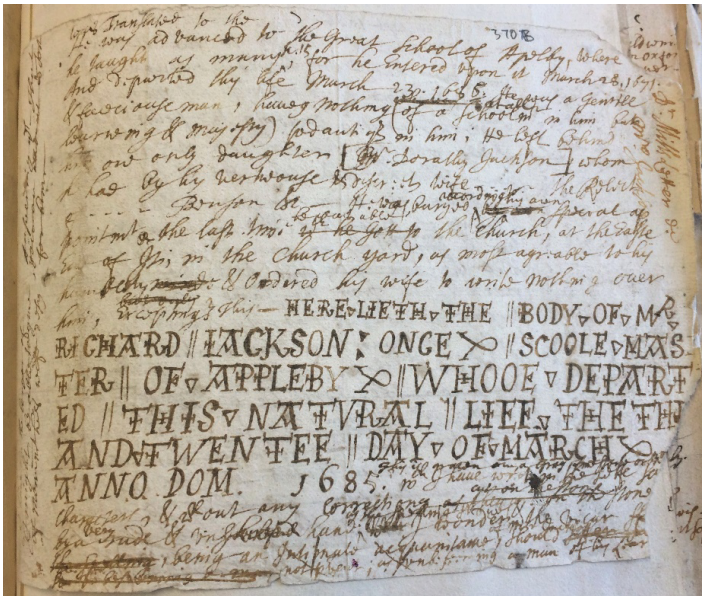


Figure 1.4.2. Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, St Edmund Hall, Oxford, 20 September 1686. I.370A.

20 Sept. 1686.
{I have bin the longer of answering yours that I might be able to give you an account what sort of monument his wife desi[re]s for him.}
Sir
I have so much regard to the memory of Mr Jackson, that I will not discourage you from your grateful designe of erecting his monument. In order whereunto, leaveing the polite description to yourselfe who can best performe it; I shal only acquaint you – That he was the Son of one Thomas Jackson, a Substancial man once, in the parish of Bampton & County of Westmorland; who, haveing a Soale more large than his purse \ fortunes, / his Son was reduced to such necessity that ~~the same Mr, who~~ he

[16] For Burnyeats, see Machell's correspondence with Dr John Mill in Part 1, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.
[17] A later addition in different ink. The river is probably the River Lowther at Bampton; mussels were found downstream at Askham: see 1.360. Note that Machell wrote William Nicolson's name as 'Nicholson' twice.
[18] Machell's copy of a letter sent to Dr Mill, Principal of St Edmund Hall Oxford, concerning Richard Jackson.

seemes to have gleaned his Greek & Latin from the Same Sharpe Instructer that Persius, his crow & parret learnd theres.[19]

His fathers 1[t] wife was your own near relation, but he was Son of the 4[th] & last \ wife; / Borne at an house in Bampton Grange on the north side of the church within heareing of the min[ister];[20] & was educated first under one Mr Atkinson; afterwards under old Mr Wilkinson, both of them ~~ministers~~ \ Vicars / and Schoolmasters there; To the latter of which he became Usher, & after his dicease, succeded ~~him~~ as schoolmaster ~~at Bampton free school~~, for about 14 years.
Hence he removed to the Free School of Kendal, where he taught 15 years; & Thence for the Eminence of his learneing \ & modesty, / which was taken notice of in the most famouse university, [I.370B][21]
he \was translated to the / was advanced to the Great School of Apelby, where he taught as many \ Sc. 15 [years] / for he entered upon it March 28, 1671, and departed this life March 23 1685.[22]
He was a Gentill & faeciouse[23] man, having nothing \ ~~which was~~ at all / (of a schoolmaster in him but learneing & majesty) pedantique in him. He left behind him one only daughter (Mistress Dorathy Jackson) whom he had, by his verteouse & discreet wife [blank], the relict of [blank] Benson Esq.

He was buryed \ according / ~~by~~ \ to his / own special appointment the last time ~~when he Gett to~~ \ he was able / the church, at the easte end of it; in the church yard, as most agreable to his ~~humble~~ humblety ~~minde~~. & ordered his wife to write nothing over him \ ~~but only~~ / excepting this:

> HERE LIETH THE BODY OF MR RICHARD || JACKSON: ONCE || SCOOLE MASTER || OF APPLEBY || WHOOE DEPARTED || THIS NATURAL || LIEF THE THREE AND TWENTEE || DAY OF MARCH ANNO DOM. 1685.

This is graven on a Gray lime stone or [through][24] which I have writt in the selfe sa[me] characters, & without any corrections as they are on the stone; \ cut on the stone by a \ very / rude & unskilled hand; \ as the spelling shows; / & I wonder the Vicar, being an intimate acquaintance of Mr Jackson, should not prevent [it] as unbeseeming a man of his Learning.[25]

---

[19] The reference is probably to the Roman satirist Persius, who was widely read in the 17th century, see Shadi Bartsch, *Persius, A Study in Food, Philosophy, and The Figural* (Chicago, 2015). Machell was clearly thinking of the prologue to Persius's satires:

> What teaches the parrot to squawk: 'Hello!'
> And urges the magpie to try human speech?
> It's that master of arts, and dispenser of skills,
> Hunger, expert at trying out sounds nature denies.
> For if there's the gleam of a hope of crafty gain,
> You'll hear crow-poets and magpie-poetesses
> Singing in praise of Pegaseian nectar.

Here, Persius is saying that, as a lowly, plain-talking speaker of truths, he has learnt his craft by necessity through hunger, i.e. singing for his supper. His skills come from wily, native cunning, like an animal that mimics human speech for food. So, the quotation appears to fit Thomas Jackson's son well.

[20] MS: 'Borne at an house \ in Bampton Grange ~~it within heareing of \ the church~~ / on the north side ~~of It~~ of the church within heareing of the min.'

[21] The reverse of I.370A.

[22] MS '168~~6~~5.'

[23] 'Facetious'. Of style, manners, etc.: polished, elegant, agreeable [now obsolete]. *OED*.

[24] Editorial suggestion; the word has perished.

[25] MS: '& / I wonder the Vicar f[perished] ~~the spelling~~, being an intimate acquaintance \ of Mr Jackson, / should ~~suffer Jackson so unbeseeming a man~~ not prevent; as unbeseeming a man of his Lear'.

{If you do resolve to make him a monument, there is one Inconvenience that I must acquaint you with; It is like to be exposssd, as he \ him[self] / was, to Stormes & Tempests, & pass the Censure &c. for it must be on the outside the church.}[26]

[26] Dr Mill, principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, showed interest in Richard Jackson because Mill was born in Hardendale in Shap Parish, the son of Thomas Mill (born c.1617-19, died c.1707), a weaver. When the family moved to High Knipe in Bampton parish, Mill was educated at Bampton School. See S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5–1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 5]

[I.743]

Collections \ for / Barton Parish in the Westward

[I.654, I.654A]

[Machell's Draft Plan and Queries relating to Barton]
1. Distance.
2. Description– what sort of Building – whence stone, slate &c.
3. Armes \ &c / in it.[1]
4. Scite – How wooded? – How watered? Trees fish fowle.
Other rarityes; how descent.
5. The Names of places & Things remarq.: dem[esne] – field – com[mon].
6. The Descent.
7. The Pedegree.

Query – distance of the church from Penrith Church, Askham, Browham, Clifton, Lowther, Gresmere, Bampton, Kendal. & their bear[ing] also from the chappels of Martindale & Patterdale.

Barton Church standeth from
Penrith Church – S by W – 3 miles.
Browham Church alis Ninechurch – W. 5 miles.
Clifton Church – N.W – 3 miles.
Lowther Church & Askham \ Church / N.N.W. 3 miles.
Bampton Church. N. – 4 miles.
Kendal Church – N. by N. – 18 miles.
Gresmere Church in Kendal – N.E. – 16 miles.
{ex inform [Blank] Pearson Medicinae Profess. et Tho. Webstar, Senescal Curiae de Barton.}[2]

Martindale Chapel in this parish – N. by E. 5 miles.}
Patterdayle Chapel infra Barton – E. by N. 9 miles.} I take them both to lye in one line. TM.[3]

! ! ! Where – Lowther drowneth/looseth it selfe in Emote.

N.B. So many families of which free [blank] the rest arbitrary all holding of [blank] Hall being the manner house – which [I must] describe; to which they doe pay.

{See the Bounder in Gressmer paper, more correct.}

[I.688]

A Free School in the high road from Penrith (I thinke ¾ W. ab Ecclesia, built as appeareth by these fig[ures] over the doer in 1649 – {query: if notes; q. my visit.}

Sth East from the church about a bow shot is a good stone house with a court before it; which doth belong to Theodore Sisson: a Ratable freehold.[4]
Above that Southwards ½ a mile from the church, is ~~Houses~~ a place calld Celron[5] {Celron in Low Winder} which only hath 2 \ in / dwelling Houses. And yet somwhat higher a mile from the Church, stands the Hamlets of Winder – Both so calld because of their high & windy location; which are distinguished by High & Low becase tho both stand very High – High Winder is in the more lofty place

[1] Machell originally ordered point 4 before point 3, but then placed an arrow between them to redress the error.
[2] 'Information given by […] Pearson, Professor of Medicine, and Thomas Webster, Steward of the Manor of Barton.'
[3] Text refers to Martindale and Patterdale chapels.
[4] The 'good stone house' is Kirkbarrow (formerly called Barton Kirk). The Sissons sold it to Simpson of Carleton Hall, Penrith, c.1759: *AWL*, 272.
[5] Celleron.

[Barton Parish]

[I.661]

[Barony]
Barton is vulgarly called a Barony, & so it is writ in their Court Rolls* wherein are first called Tenentes manerijs de Barton Infra Baroniam de Barton:[6] 2. Tenentes ~~infra~~ manerijs de Martindale et Fusedale infra Baroniam praedicta.[7] 3. Tenentes manerijs de Patterdale et forestæ de Grisdale infra Baroniam praedicta,[8] and there are 3 Juries, & a grand Inquest, when they keep their Courtes, which are both Leet & Baron†. Yet I am not satisfyed whether it be not called so only from Baron Dakers holding these m[anors] under him? Hoever, the present Lord thereof, the Earle of Sussex. takes waif & stray[9] in al the said Libertyes, excepting in private Lords demaines.[10]

[Machell's Notes: I.661]

*{a T. Webster Senesc.}[11]
†{?}

[I.662]

{Extent}
This parish extends it selfe in length from the place where Emote & Lowther meet, which is ~~at~~ the NE. point, to the Top of Cammerton Builds[12] in Kirkston in the S.W. to the number of 13 or 14 miles; all along by the Bankes of Emote, the Great Lake of Ulswater & several rills which power themselves until they feed that great Body – And one halfe of the Parish is replennishd with wood to the great admiration of the beholder; the other with rugged and rocky mountaines to the jaless[13] astonishment of the beholder, where the people [in a] very large sense live, as it were, in another world, being (but for the water that invites men up in summertime) a desert & unfrequented place (I had almost call'd it an inaccessible place) and therefore abounding with Foxes & Wild Cats (near as big as they are); with Badgers & Martes; Goates & Great Staggs – as hereafter shal be sheone; And yet even here has bin produced men of prodigious parts & prety.[14]

{Division} {Constablewick}
The parish is divided for the better \ execution of civil affairs / into 5 or 6 Constablewicks – Sc. 1. Emote-bridge. 2. Yanwath. 3. Sockbridge with Tyrrel, Thorp & Celron & (part of Mr Davis's) High Winder.[15] 4.

---

[6] 'Tenants of the Manor of Barton within the Barony of Barton.'
[7] '2. Tenants of the Manor of Martindale and Fusedale within the aforesaid Barony.' Here, a margin comment notes, 'a fusil spindle'. The word is from Old French 'fusel', ultimately from Latin fūsus: spindle; in heraldry the heraldic lozenge originally represented by a spindle covered with tow for spinning. Presumably, Machell was referring to the meaning of the place-name, 'Fusedale'.
[8] '3. Tenants of the manor of Patterdale and Forest of Grisdale within the aforesaid Barony.'
[9] See the English Glossary.
[10] This is repeated, with the addition of a question mark, on MS.I.669: '{?} Barton is said to be a Barony, de quo quære? and so by consequence to have VIII? manners as members of it – However tis \ for / certane \ affirmed / that my Lord of Sussex takes waife & stray all over the Barony excepting in Private Lords Demaines.'
[11] The end of the line is obscured by the binding but the translation is probably, 'as said by Thomas Webster, steward'.
[12] Camerton Bields.
[13] Presumably, 'jealous'.
[14] MS: '& sever Rills, which \ power ~~into it &~~ themselves, ~~until It~~ / feed that great Body – ~~which has excellent Gravels near to the Shoare~~ \ And / One halfe ~~there~~ of the Parish ~~whereof~~ is replennishd with wood to the great ~~satisfaction~~ \ admiration of the beholder / the other \ with rugged and Rocky /mountaines to the jaless astonishment \ of the beholder / where the people \ who are of a very large ~~in a wilderness desert~~ sense / live as it were ~~divided from~~ in another world ~~the rest of mankind in another world and are generally of a large sense in an~~ being (but for the water that invites ~~people up~~ \ men up / in summertime) \ a~~n~~ desert & / unfrequented place. ~~Part of the country. I had almost call'd it an inaccessible place.~~ and therefore abounding with \ foxes & / wild cats near as big as they are) \ with / Badgers, ~~& goates~~ \ & / Martes; Goates & Great Staggs – as hereafter shal be sheone; ~~yet it hath produced more~~ \ And / yet even here has bin produced men of Incredible\ prodigious / parts & prety.' Because much of this passage has been altered and struck through, the transcription is occasionally imprecise.
[15] MS: 'The parish is divided for~~ Civil Government~~ \ the better / execution of ~~National Laws~~ \ Civil affairs / into \ 5 or / 6 Constablewicks – Sc. 1. ~~Yanwath~~ Emote-bridge. 2. Yanwath. 3. Sockbridge with ~~its hamlets of~~ Tyrrel Thorp & {Celron & (part of Mr Davis's)} ~~and~~ High Winder. ~~& Celliron~~;'

High Barton, which \ also / includes ~~Barton &~~ Powley. 5. Martindale. 6. Hartsop & Patterdale. And conteineth in it 6 or 7 manners.

{Manners}
{Sc. Manner 1. Yanewath Manner. 2. Sockbridge Manner (which are in the parish but not in the Barony) 3. Barton Manner. 4. Martindale Manner. 5. Hartsop Manner. 6. Patterdale; query 7. of Winder.}

And into these Manners.
1. Barton alias High Barton, not for distinction from any other ~~part~~ towne \ or place of that name with / in the parish, but only because it stands above (or Higher than) the church ~~or~~ more up the water*, & Extends it self, ~~as far by land as the rill calld~~ westward as far by land as the Rill called Swarthbeck which divides it from Martindale; and by water it continueth in it from the church to [Blank].[16] I can not say properly (tho the name importes \ as much / it) that there is such a Towne ~~there~~ within the manner \ as Barton; / nor indeed anything like \ to a town or / a village \ in it / excepting Pooley; all

[Machell's Notes: I.662]

*(Jo: Patteson).
If High Barton be not all above Pooley, Low Barton well beneath it? Query: if any part of the manners of Barton below the church.

[I.664]

the Rest being straggling[17] Houses, and therefore you may with justly reason wonder why this manner is called Barton, & how \ it / cometh to give name to the church, to a parke near Pooley \ calld Barton Parke, / and to [the] whol parish – of which I shal briefly give thus Conjecture*.

[Machell's Notes: I.664]

*{See on the account. See on the other side.}

[I.670]

For we have moreover at the East End ~~of it~~ \ thereof / where the water\ Rill / run\neth / out out of the Ditches ~~in a little rill~~ a Nab of Ulswater call'd the, Hau-Bar – which ~~showes~~ \ bespeakes / It the scite of the Manner House or Hall as wee call them. And the parke near adjacent \ on the S. Side of it* / confirmes the same \ this conjecture / and seems to have bin contiguouse to it; tho now divided by a Close or 2, & the Highway to Martendale.[18]

{ratio nominis}[19]
And this may help to finde out the reason why this parke & parish is called Barton – namely from the word Bar; which signifyes a strong Gate or Entrance with \ a / Ditche and drawbridge; as the great gates at Yorke are all called Barrs; and so the houses near this Strong Barr (though scattered and dispersd \ abroad / here & there) might be called Bar-town – query: opidum ad Barram[20] {which the Greekes well express by the word ἔπαυλις i.e. ad ~~in Greeke~~[21] ad atrium}[22] \ for our English word Town, / the Towne or Village near the Hall Barr.

[**Barton Church**]

Thus Haveing found out – formd o[u]r reasons for the name of the parish \ of Barr-Towne {or Barton} / let us goe to the Church – which is \ a very / large, but Low Building, haveing a Square plane Batled Steple ~~short & thick~~ with 2 Bells ~~in it~~ \ therein / in the midle of the Ile & 2 Rowes of Pillers on ~~the In Side~~ \ either Side of the Body] / which is in Length from the W. End to the Arch of the quier, about 27 yards, & \ the

[16] MS: 'Swarthbeck which partes \ divides / it from Martindale; ~~and up~~ \ and / [~~up the lake as far as Patterdale~~ \ by water. and continueth It from the church to [Blank].'
[17] MS: 'Strangling.'
[18] The following sentence (not transcribed), written in smaller handwriting in different ink, appears to be an addition, but a blot covers most of the text. It begins with the words, 'out of which.'
[19] 'Reason for the place-name.'
[20] 'Town at the bar.'
[21] There is an illegible scored-through word here.
[22] 'Which the Greeks well express by the word steading or courtyard.'

inside / The Quire ~~it~~ 7.[23]

	Body	Quire
length	27	7
breadth	14	6

In all, XXXIV, & Broad in the Body about 14, \ in / The Quire 6 – at the North Side of the great quier is a porch which belongeth, ~~now to the Lowthers of~~ to Sockbridge \ hall / ~~but formerly to the~~ the Lancasters there / which was built I doubt not by one of \ the Lancasters / of that name who who builded the Tower & Hall at Sockbridge,[24] there being the very same sort of window in that & in this.[25]

[Machell's Notes I.670]

*(being the Chiefe part of the Demane?)

[I.660]

{1. The Patrone}
The Patrone of this Parish is Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet – who injoyes ⅔ of the wool & lamb[26] and Easter Boke[27] in Hartsop, Sockbridge, Yeanwath & Bridge and hath the tyth corne of Sockbridge also*. Mr Dawes of Barton Kirk has ⅔ of Wooll and Lamb & Easter Reckonings in the part calld High Barton, which was purchased (with the House & Lands called Barton Kirk) by Dr Dawes of one of the Hudsons. Mr Davyes of Winder[28] has ⅔ of the Martindale Wool, Lamb & Easter Booke. The Vicar the Rest [Blank] † has 2 partes of the wooll & Lamb & Easter Boke; & the Reader ~~of~~ at a chappel[29] which they have there, has the other 3rd part for which he payes as an acknowledgement to the Vicar of Barton 4li per Annum; all which deductions do prick very sore on the parsons side‡.[30]

Rate
Barton is a Vicaridge Rated in the First Fruits Office at 11li:1s: 0. Payeth Tenths to the King 1li: 2s: 1qa,[31] and to the Bishop for Procurations & Synnodals [blank]. It ~~is said at first to have bin~~ \ was / appropriated to the Prior & Convent of St James de Carta, in the Diocess of Yorke,[32] in 1318 – by Grant of John Halton Bishop of Carleol⸸; But the Impropriation is ~~in several persons~~ \ in Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet, & Mr ~~Tho~~ Daws of Barton Kirk I thinke.[33] / And the Vicary it selfe is parted into 3 several Cantons \ if [I] may so call them / whereof the Incumbent has onely one third, if he have so much; ~~the Remainder being in laymens hands~~. I speake not only of Wool & Lamb &c. but even of the Easter Booke it selfe; which pricketh sore on the parsons side.

[The Church]
{The Church ~~as I~~ is dedicated to St Michael the Archangel, a low but Large Building haveing 2 rows of pillars in the body of it; and 2 Iles or allyes extending to the flankes of the Chancel, & lookeing into it under 2 or 3

[23] This passage is difficult to read as the ink has bled heavily from the reverse side of the page.
[24] A margin comment, partly perished, gives similar information: '{and who may seem to have had a great hand in building or repairing the …}'
[25] Some of this passage, particularly the margin comment, has perished.
[26] MS: 'The Patrone: The Patrone of this Parish is Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet – The Patrone is Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge; ~~whose father Sir Christopher who~~ Injoyes ⅔ of the wool & lamb'. A stray note on MS I.665 also refers to this: '+ who were also \ joynt / Patrones. presenting by Turnes: But now the Patronage is wholly & solely in Sir John Lowther – who also injoyes ~~some repar~~ ⅔ of the wool & Lamb & Easter Booke, in [blank]'.
[27] Easter Book: see the English Glossary.
[28] Winder Hall. See CAS(C), D/Hud/7/4 for Davies and Thomas Dawes of Barton Kirk (1730s).
[29] Martindale Old Church.
[30] MS.I.381 contains a later note on the patron: 'The church is St Michael as they say. Sir John of Sockbridge now sole patron. but formerly belonged to Daws \ de Barton Kirke / in his course \ or turne / as (joynt) impropriators \ with him.'
[31] 1¼ d. Tenths amounted to £1 2s 1¼ d. For the meaning of 'First Fruits and Tenths', see the English Glossary.
[32] In Warter, E. Yorks.
[33] Lancelot Dawes lived at Barton Kirk, now Kirkbarrow, on the main Penrith-Pooley Bridge road: see Hyde & Pevsner, 145. Rev. Dr Lancelot Dawes (1580-1654) MA, DD: Queen's College Oxon; vicar of Barton 1608-54; rector of Asby 1618-54; prebendary of Carlisle Cathedral 1619-54; canon 1619-54). CCED; see also Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History*, 145. Dawes was also co-founder of Barton Grammar School, with Gerard Langbaine, and Provost of Queen's College, Oxford. See A. Bickley & S. Wright, 'Dawes, Lancelot, Church of England clergyman'. *ODNB*.

arches – And in the midle betwixt the body & Quier \ Chancel / is a fair Stone Tower but with low flat Batlements, \ on the outside / & uncomly Arches on the inside: but for which it might be easily converted into…[34]

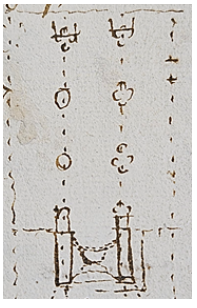


Figure 1.5.1. Margin sketch plan of Barton Church (1.) with tower and interior arches. I.660.

[Machell's Notes: I.660]

*{?}
†{?}
‡{Consider if this may not better be referrd to the Account of the several Townships.}
⸸è Registo Halton penes Episcopum.[35]

[I.379]

Barton Kirk Without: [The Porch]
1. Over the porch. a coate which I take to be 3 bucks heads cab.[36] This I take to be the Bartons, who in all probability were formerly Lords of Barton, whence they tooke the Srname de Barton*.

[Machell's Notes: I.379]

*But query, for I finde they belong to Hartsop-hall, which is in the S. West point of this parish {6[0] Stephen 1141. 1151.}[37]

[I.671A]

This porch has an E. window, the same worke which Sockbridge had over the church porch, which is an addition but very ancient. On a through before the church porch

ANO DOMINI 1615 ON
THE XVII DAY OF JVLY
WAS THE BODY OF
STEVEN SISSON OF CEL
RON BURYED HERE[38]

[34] Approximately three words at the page foot are illegible.
[35] 'See Halton's Register in the custody of the bishop.' MS.I.654A contains more on this source: 'See the Appropriation by John Bishop of Karliol to the Priory & Convent of the monastery St James de Wartera in the Diocess of Yorke for keeping poore Travaillers out of all nations & the loss then sustaind by the Scotch invasion provided they allow a 3r part to a Vicar. AD 1318. They have a pension out of Clifton Church Askham. Haltons K. Reg. 17, 212, 224. 29 also.'
[36] 'Caboched/cabossed': trunked; no part of neck visible, Smith, *Place-Names*, 67.
[37] King Stephen's 6th regnal year was 1140-41.
[38] 'Celleron'. Members of the Sisson family appear to have put down roots in Westmorland when Cuthbert Sisson (d.1609) bought Kirkbarrow from Lord and Lady Arundel in 1583, see *CFH*, 308-09, but there is no mention of Steven Sisson in this entry, nor in Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes*, which lists Sisson inscriptions at Barton from 1758-1860, see 97.

[I.671]

Arms & Monuments[39]

The Coates of Armes, ~~which I met with~~ in and about the church are these –

1. Over the porch, which has bin added since the church ~~in stone~~ was builded, but is very Ancient

[I.673]

Over the Portch, on the outside in stone



Figure 1.5.2. 'Over the Portch on the outside in Stone'. I.673.

[I.671]

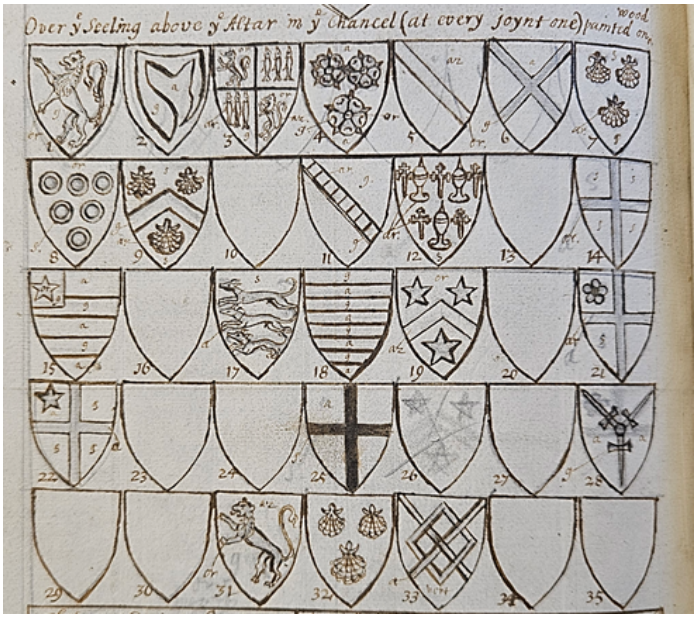


Figure 1.5.3. Chancel Ceiling, Barton Church. 1.671.

[39] The text on Barton Church, below, is a 'fair copy' made by Machell after working on two other drafts (I.379-I.381), which he then scored through. In essence, these drafts are almost the same as the 'fair copy', so have not been transcribed, apart from information relating to the porch (I.379).

Over the Altar upon the sieling of it –
[Second row, second from left] Piercy. Earle of Northumberland quartering Lucy.

[I.671A]

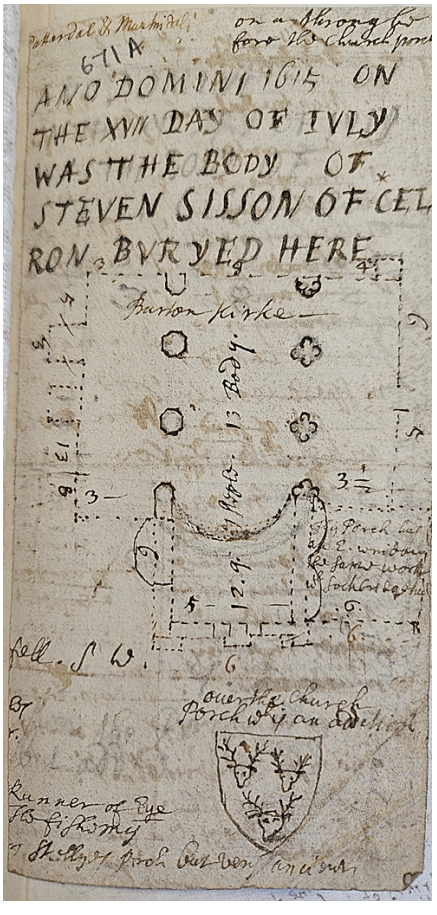


Figure 1.5.4. A measured plan of Barton Church (2.), with the west end at the top, the east end at the foot and the steeple in the centre. I. 671A.

[Machell's Notes: I.671B]
Qu. of Mr Fletcher for a Greek epitaph which was som time in Barton Kirk of Dr Daws.[40]

[I.673]
Over the Seeling above the Altar in the Chancel (at every joynt one) painted on wood.

Those on the right hand (or north side of the quier) are not here in their right scituation; for they stand on the seeling with their bases downwards & their chiefs erected towards the ridge. Those in the midle are in their right position & stand upon the ridge from E. to W., as in the most noble & most honourable place. Those on the left hand (or south-side of the quier) are designedly misplaced here also, for they stand on the seeling with their points downwards toward the wall, and their heads erected towa\rds / the ridge.

[40] Lancelot Dawes: see below. MS.I.668 also refers to a 'Qu[ery] of Lawyer Fletcher for Greek Epit.'

a: The single Coate may import that som of the [blank] to whom it belonged builded the Portch; which lookes very ancient, tho it be an additional \ piece of building / as appears by the casmes betwixt it and the church. The other may seem to be plac'd on the seeling for Ornament Sake, som of them being the Armes of such familyes as had lands in the Parish: & the rest of Nobility & Gentrie related unto them, or much honoured by them; who might perhaps also contribute somewhat to the finishing of it. And I have marked them out with figures, in lineal order, for the Readers advantage; without any regard to dignity or hon[ou]r.

1. Earle of Arundel	8. Lowther	19. Crakenthorp
2. Threlkeld	9.	21. Moresby
3. Piercy E. of Northumberland	11.	22. Orpheur
Quartering Lucy.	12.	25.
4.	14.	28.
5.	15. Lancaster	31.
6.	17. Machel	32. Lord Daker*
7. Strickland	18.	33. Salkeld

The rest quite lost & many of \ the others / defaced.[41]

[Machell's Notes: I.693A]

*{Penes J. Tho. p.48. p.32.}
Lord Daker of the North – quarterly. 1. 9. 3 escallops Argent. 2 chequie Or & Gules.
Lord Daker of the South – beares Azure 6 Lyons Rampant with cauds inflexed Argent.
P.32 at – Lib. oblong. Armor[ial] penes Mr Jo. Thwates de Apleby.[42]
[P.]44. Lord Scayles bears Gules 6 Escallops Argent 3.2.1.

[I.674]

Inscriptions on gravestones within the Chancel

[1] HERE lyes the Body of Mary Dudley daughter / to Christopher Dudley Esq*. and to Agnes / Dudley his wife; who dyed of the Age of 2 years / and was interred October. 28. 1629†.

A Chronograme
Under this stone although her Body lyes –
Yet doth Her Soule sore-up above the Skies.

[2] In the midle near the Altar steps. {All in Capitals.}
HERE lyeth the Body of / Lancelot Daws M[aste]r of Arts / Eldest son of Lancelot / Daws Doctor in Divinity: / Who was maryed to / Mary Whelpdale daughter to Mr William / Whelpdale of Penrith,[43] / & was here interr'd the 9th /day of May in the 35th year / of his Age. / 1653.[44]

[3] On the other Side of the Quier. {All in Capitals.}
Here lyeth the Body of Daniel / the son of Daniel Fleming / of Skerwoth in the County / of Cumberland Gent. who / dyed the 23 of January / 1657. being in age about 37 years.

[4] Upon a Brass plate, on the North Side of the East-window. {In large Italian.}

Hic jacet Francisca Daws filia / Thomae Flecher de Strickland Armigeri / natu maxima, perquam charissima quidem / Et perdilecta Uxor Lanceloti Daws de / Barton-Kirke Generosi. Quae huic mundo / Spe multò melioris, vicessimo tertio Februarij valedixit; Año / Etatis suæ XXIII. Annoque Domini 1673.[45]

[41] Much of the information on this page also exists in draft form: see MS.I.725E.
[42] [Machell's] 'Oblong book. Armorial in the custody of John Thwates of Appleby.'
[43] William Whelpdale, 1576-1652. See Michael A. Mullett, *A New History of Penrith III: Penrith in the Stuart Century 1603-1714* (Carlisle, 2018), 27, 31, 144.
[44] William Nicolson recorded the same data during his visit to Barton church in 1703, Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 124.
[45] 'Here lies Frances Dawes, daughter of Thomas Fletcher of Strickland Esquire; she was his eldest daughter and exceeding dear to him, / and beloved wife of Lancelot Daws of Barton Kirke, gentleman; who bade farewell to this

Under this Stone (Reader) Interr'd doth lye
beauty, & vertue's true Epitomy.
At her appearance the Noone-Sun
blush'd and Shrunke-in, 'cause quite out don.
In her Concenter'd did all graces dwell
God pluck'd my Rose that he might take a smel‡
Ile say noe more: But weeping wish I may
Soone with thy dear Chaste ashes com to Lay.

Sic efflevit maritus.[46]
Phineas Briggs – Eborac. Sculps.[47]

[Machell's Notes: I.674]
*Dudley: A lib. Armorial oblong p.102. penes Mr Thwates de Appelby.[48]
†{It should be all in capital letters like of first word. These stroakes /// shew the length of each line.}
‡This expression in reference to God I do not approve of; It seems too irreverent; might it not better be apply'd to death thus – Death pluck'd my Rose onely to take a smell.

[I.675]

Arms & Monumental Inscriptions at Barton Church



Figure 1.5.5. Arms at Barton Church. I. 675.

1. The first is Lancasters Arms inversed ex incuria opificis.[49] They are cut in stone on the Southside of the West-End window; & opposite to them on the other side of it, is an Inscription of close-written characters, which I cannot well reade but guess it to be 'Johes Lancaster'.[50]

world in the hope of a far better one, in the year of her age 23, and in the year of Our Lord 1673.' For Thomas Strickland, lawyer, see I.678.
[46] 'Thus wept her husband'.
[47] 'Phineas Briggs, York, sculpted this.'
[48] 'From an oversized armorial book in the possession of Mr Thwates of Appleby.' MS.I.742 gives the Dudley coat of arms and its source: '{Lord Dudley beares. Argent a Lyon Rampant with his Caud reflexed Vert langued & armed Gules. L. Arm. Pene J. Th. p.63.}'
[49] 'Inversed due to the carelessness of the painter.'
[50] See also I.381.

2. The Second is Lancasters Arms on a Grave-Stone which lyes near the Pulpit on the Southside of the Body of the Church. There is in the midle of the saide Stone a Cross floorye[51] or Rose and on the left side the fashon of Sword; much like unto that which I have described in Ormside-Church and therefore purposely omitt it here.[52] It hath also had an Inscription about it, in large Text Letters, but so much worne out that I can not read them.

3. The third is Stapleton impaleing a defaced coate.

4. The Fourth is Lancaster. They are both placed together towards the East end of the South-Ile, or Alley, under the Springer at the East-end of the old flat Arch which lookes into the Chancel: opposite to which in the midle of it lyeth a Gravestone with a fillet of Brass inscribed as followeth: Here lyeth William Lancaster. Son of Xtofer. On whose soul Jesu have mercy.[53]

5. The Fifth is Lancaster, placed bewixt 2 other blanke Scutchions, just at the Capital of that Demi-octagonal Pillaster or Column which adjoyneth the East-end-wall of the Chancel & supporteth the later but more lofty Arch of Lancasters Quier.

6, 7. The Sixth & Seventh are Lancasters agane, under each Springer of the old flat Arch on the S Side the Chancel, & at the E. end of the S[ou]th Ile; which has bin divided into 2 quiers, in the lower of which, now belonging to Winder, is a monument or chest of white Stone: haveing on the West-end of it –

8. W.D., for William Davyes,[54] who was buryed here in 1674.[55]

[I.379]

Lancasters Quire
In the sealeing over the Aultar are Severall C[oats] of Arms[56] many whereof are defaced, but those that appeare are as followeth:

In the midle close to the window at the joynt, an Escutchion Argent with 3 Roses in [pile][57] Gules. Seeded Or. [That] which is to the North Side is 4^{rly}: 1. Or, a Lyon rampant Az[ure] ~~or Vert~~. 2. Gules 3 fishes salient, i.e. palewise Argent. This I take to be Piercy Earl of Northumberland quartering Lucy.[58] The 3^{d} is Argent a Manch Gules \ Threlkeld. / On the South the quarter is lost. The 2nd Argent a saltier Gules. 3^{d} Sable 3 Escallops in pale Argent (Strikland?).

On the 2nd rale. in the centere – Gules a Bend gobonated Argent and Gules. 2. [Blank] 3. Sable ~~a salt[ier]~~ [chevron][59] Gules betwen 3 Escal[lops] Argent. 4th. Or 6 Annulets Sable \ Lowther. / South side. 1. Sable 2 cups betwene 3 [daggers][60] Argent.

[Machell's Notes: I.379]

*But query, for I finde they belong to Hartsop-hall, which is in the S. West point of this parish.[61]

[51] Fleury.
[52] See I.646B, 648, 649.
[53] No dates are given, but Nicolson and Burn contend that this William Lancaster was the father of Lancelot Lancaster, fl. 33 Henry VIII [1541-42]. See *N&BI*, 401, 405. 'On whose soul Jesu have mercy', is thought to have been a particularly Roman Catholic phrase at this time: see Michael Mullett, *A New History of Penrith II: Penrith under the Tudors* (Carlisle, 2017), 42-3.
[54] MS: 'Stone: with {Haveing on the West-end of it. W. D. for} 8. W.D., for William Davyes,'
[55] See *N&BI*, 405.
[56] MS: '~~On the n. side is Lanc. quire~~. In the sealeing over the Aultar are Severall C[oats] of Arms.'
[57] Here, Machell has drawn an inverted triangle.
[58] MS: 'this I take to be ~~be Dudley and Browham~~ {Piercy Earl of Northumberland, quartering Lucy.'}
[59] This is represented in the MS by an inverted V.
[60] Here, Machell has drawn a dagger.
[61] In the margin here, is a date: {6^{0} Stephen 1141.1151.}

[I.380]

5th & 6th gone.
8. On the 3d Rale. The centere Barre of 8 Gules & Argent. N[orth] 1. 2. 3 gon. On the south – 1. Or a \ [chevron][62] / between 3 mullets ~~Sable~~ vel.[63] Azure \ Crak[enthorpe] / 2. [Blank] 3. Sable a † with a cinquefoyle in dexter part Argent.

9. On the 4th rale (the cent[re]?) Argent a † Sable. N[ote] 1. f. from it [Blank]. 2. 3: gon. fret.[64] Sth side 1. gon. 2. [Blank] 3. Argent? 3 daggers Gules \ Stapleton. /

10. On the 5 rale are remaineing 4 Escutchions but I can make nothing of them.

11. Note Lancasters quire & Ile. On the North Side the Chancell & Church. Upon the piller next the East wall 3 Escutchions and upon that in the midle ~~whereof~~ \ the other / 2 are blanke. Upon a demis octagonal column are 3 Escut[ch]ions, 2 of them Blanke as at fig. the 15. – above the Altar. But on the 3rd is Lancasters armes.

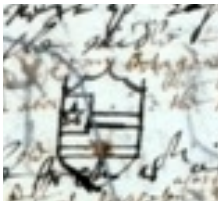


Figure 1.5.6. Lancaster Arms. I.380.

12. Under the \ old / Arch which is at the Low End of the Quire \ nearer the Screen & directly opposed the Lancasters quier on the S. side / are 2 Escutchions. The 1t is Stapleton \ as at f:28* / Impaleing a blanke or defaced Coat; & the Second is Lancaster as before. These 2 are at the \ E[ast] / springer of the great old Arch, which as it seemeth had bin Lancasters quier before the other was added to it.



Figure 1.5.7. Coats of arms, low end of the quire. I.380.

The 1t is Stapleton, peradventure impaleing Lancaster. The 2 is Lancaster. viz. Argent 2 Barrs with a ~~quarter~~ \ ca[n]ton / Gules charged with a mullet Or.

13. On a through in the Ile opposite to the great Arch in text Letters:

Here lyeth \ William Lancaster son of / Xtofer on whose Soule Jesu have mercy.[65]

[62] This is represented in the MS by an inverted V.
[63] 'or'.
[64] Here, Machell has drawn a fret symbol.
[65] See no.4, above.



Figure 1.5.8. Sketch of the 'through' at number 13. I.380.

South Quire.

14. At each end the Arch, Lancasters Arms. In it is a Tombe or Through of whyte Stone, lately erected for Mr William Davyes of Winder, son to one of the Doctors \ Daws / Daughters and one \ Will / Davyes – upon the West End thereof.[66]

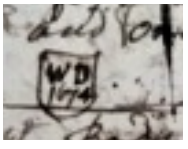


Figure 1.5.9. Barton Church: 'W.D. 1674'. I.380.

15. On the South Side, in the Body near to the pulpit a grave stone with crosse rose. Lancasters Armes on the right & a great Sword on the left side therof as sword & shield: and something about that stone in old great text but so defaced that I cannot read it.[67]

[Machell's Notes: I.380]

*N.B. 28. The Lancasters Armes being upon the pillers & other partes of the Church doe seeme to bespeak them the builders of it {or at the least noble Benefactor in the alteration and repareing of it.}

[I.381]

16. In the west window stone worke, on the Right side (1[t] south) Lancasters Armes inversed – on the other side the name of [Blank] in close {characters?}[68] which I cannot read: maybe John Lancaster.[69]

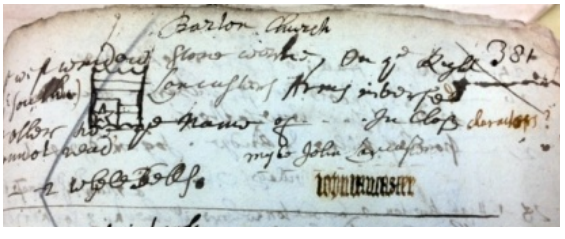


Figure 1.5.10. Small sketches: 'Maybe John Lancaster'. I.381.

[I.373][70]

16. of King James, Lancelot Lancaster of Sockbridge Esq. TB. Vixit 16. of Jac [1618-1619]. He maryed Frances Tankard eldest d[aughter] to T. Tankard de [Blank] in Yorkshire; Sister to Eliz. Blenk[insop] & had no Isue so that the Estate came to Xter Lancaster of Creaktrees Justice of Peace, his brothers son, who tooke to wife Eliz. the d[aughter] of Tho. Tankard Son of Thomas T. by whome he had noe Isue male but severall daughters.

1. Frances m[arried] to Sir Xtoper Lowther Baronett de St Bees & Whitehaven. who payd the other sisters portions & had the Estate. & Hartsop allso.

---

[66] There follows a shield with 'WD 1674' written upon it.
[67] MS: 'that it cannot be read it.'
[68] 'Characters' is written in the margin in different ink, with a question mark after it, suggesting a later correction.
[69] See also I.675.
[70] Also paginated p.9.

2. Eliz. m[arried] to William Hoton de Penrith & Gale.
3. Barbarie m[arried] to One Davyes of Winder
4. Mary m. to [Blank] Hymor de [Blank] Cumberland.

[I.381]

{[Roger de] Lancaster, Emoth}
I find one Lancaster de Emoth*. 6. Edward 4^{t} [1466-1467] – Roger de Lancaster – Brother to Willielmus, last Baron of Kendal by the halfe Blood; for he stiles him his brother in his grant to the Monks of Furness, being a witness thereto. [He] held the manner of Barton in Com. Westmerland by the gift of William his brother, and also of Patterdale in Com. West'. He was Sherif of Lancashire ~~from~~ \ in / the 49. of Henry 3. [1264-1265], and in the 3rd of Edward I. [1274-1275], obteined of that King a Confirmation of Rydale†, \ the which forrest / which is set downe by Meetes & Boundes as also of the whole purparty of Amelsale (nunc forsan Ambleside) & Loughbriggs, (now Loughrig.) with common of pasture betwixt [blank] & Gressemere, with all his cattle - which before that was granted unto him by Margaret de Brus & ~~excellent~~ one of the daughters & coheires of Peter de Brus, & Helewise de Lancaster, eldest \ of the 3 sisters / sister of William de Lancaster \ Barron of Kendal / the 3. of that name ~~Barons of K.~~ who dyed without Isue; Which Hellewise was widow of Rob. de Ros of Warke‡. This Roger ~~had Isue~~ maryed Philippa, \ the / eldest daughter and one of the coheires of Hugh de Bolebeck of [blank] in Com. Northumberland. Dyed in the 19. Edward 1. [1290-1291] leaveing Isue – John, who was summond in the 22. of Edward 1. [1293-1294] (amongst diverse other persons of note) to attend at Portsmouth on the 1^{t} of September, well provided with horse & armes, &

[Machell's Notes: I.373]
*(Sandford. Cartis de Askam) e *Baronagio Angliae*, p.423.[71]
†{forsan de Rydal, see Rot Pipe Cart. 3. Edwardi m. 11}
‡{Query} Tamen if this Roger was not a Bastard Brother of this said Will – see in *Monast. Angl.* Vol. 1, p.708.[72]

[I.374]

thence to sael with his Majesty into France. In the 25. of the said Kings reign [1296-1297] he was concernd in that expedition against the Scots, being of the Retinue of Brian Fitz Alane of Bedale in the County of Yorke; And agane in the 34. As likewise in the 3. 4. & 8. of Edward 2. [1309-1311; 1314-1315], in the 11th of whose reigne he was imploy'd in guarding the Marches of Scotland [1317-1318]. And haveing bin summond to Parliament from the 25. of Edward 1. to the 3. of Edward 2. inclusively [1296-1310], he departed this life in the VIII yeare of King Edward 3. [1334-1335]; then seised of the Manner of Rydale and diverse other Lordships in the County of Westmorland: as also in the Countyes of Northumberland & Essex, leaveing Richard, the Son of Richard de ~~Pair~~ Plaiz his next heire, then XII yeares of age*.

[Machell's Notes: I.374 & I.381]
[I.374]
*Haec omnia e Dugdalli *Baronagio*,[73] to which Sir Dan. Fleming has added this note: Vide – Lib E. folio 34. a. Db. 2. 9 – which are Bookes in his Study which I must see.[74]
[I.381]
17. 2 whele bells.[75]
18. Barton Vicaridge.
Vic[arage] house. It is a new house lately built by Dr Daws. & over the doore is this inscription: LD {i.e. Lancelot Daws} NON MIHI SED SVCCESSORIBVS.[76] 1637.
Mr Harrison, vicar? Enquire.
19. The church is St Michael as they say. Sir John of Sockbridge now sole patron. but formerly belonged to Daws \ de Barton Kirke / in his course \ or turne / as (joynt) impropriators \ with him.[77]

[71] William Dugdale, *Baronage* (see Abbreviations).
[72] William Dugdale, *Monasticon* (see Abbreviations).
[73] 'All of these things from Dugdales *Baronage.'*
[74] Daniel Fleming and Machell, both antiquaries, corresponded over methods and sources considered suitable to expedite Machell's History; Machell borrowed books from the older man. See 'Letter from Sir Daniel Fleming. 9 February 1693/94', Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, II.145. See also Editor's Introduction.
[75] The bells were operated by a wheel over which the bell-rope ran.
[76] 'Not to me but unto my successors.'
[77] Machell's numbering system continues on I.381 below.

[I.676]

So much may suffice of Barton Church; which, if wee looke into the Rock from whence it was huen I thinke wee may finde it on Barton Fell, where there is a Quarry of Good hewing-stone, & exceeding white, & easy to be transmitted from thence to the circumjacent partes of the Parish, being West from the Church about 2 miles{near to which place is a tarne called Grisdale, wherein there are Troutes the fishing of which belongs to one Mou[n]sey, a Tenant here.} & there [is] Limestone all over the Lordship.

Haveing don with the church it remanes that wee speake of other place in the manner of Barton

[Vicarage House]

~~About~~ 200 yards \ W. / from the Church, \ a little inclineing towards the N. / stands the Vicaridge House, an Handsom new Building with a portch at the Enterance, and a Study above \ over / it. Erected by Dr Lancelot Daws of Barton, as by this Inscription over the Dooer –

L.D.
NON MIHI SED
SUCCESSORIBUS
1637[78]

[Barton Kirk. Lancelot Daws. Michael Hudson]

And a little beyond (in the same Beareing) is a large (but irregular) Hall-like house calld Barton Kirk (from its vicinity to the Church & Vicaridge) which was builded also (as I conjecture) by the said Lancelot Daws; Borne in this Parish, educated at Queens College in Oxford where he was fellow, and afterward tooke his D[rs] degree at [blank] in Scotland.[79] He was a Learned & Ingenious person; as appears by several \ Bookes / which He publishd Sc.* and left a Plentiful Estate behinde Him; which is much to be wondered at, considering that he was only born to a smal Tenement, and for a long time had no more but this Vicaridge, of about 50[li] per Annum to live upon; out of which he educate a great many children, preferd 6 daughters to considerable fortunes giveing each 400[li] apiece, & several Portions of 60[li] to his poore Relations: which yet I thinke he could never have don had not providence advanced him afterwards to be Rector of Ashby,[80] where he also builded the greatest part of the Parsonage house; & in the End to be a Prebendary of the Church of Carlile.[81] He was alwayes hospitable to Schollars & Strangers, but made his own children live near[82] & frugally. This estate he purchased

[Machell's Notes: I.676]

*'?'[83]

[I.678]

(amongst many more* of other persons) from one of the Hudsons; & it was the birth place of Michael Hudson Master of Arts, sometimes fellow of Queens College in Oxford†; & Chaplaine & Convoy in the Northern Parts to King Charles the 1[st] in the late Civil wars, on whom he attended in his march to Hull; & there by misfortune being taken Prisner, was cast in to the mote & Barbarously murthererd: For whilst he attempted to save his life by swimming to the shore, & put forth his hand to catch hold of the weeds which grew about it, a Butcherly Soljer cut ~~of his~~ \ it of with a / swo\r/d; and then He tacking about agane, & puting forthe the other hand, had that cut of likewise; after all which, he threw himselfe upon his back and swiming in water & blood to the shore with his ~~formost~~ \ head formost as the manner is, / had his braines beaten out with the But of a Musket‡.

---

[78] 'Lancelot Dawes, not to me but unto my successors, 1637'.

[79] See Nicolson & Burn for a similar paragraph: *N&B1*, 405-06.

[80] Asby: Dawes was rector there from c.1617 but in 1647 (during the Civil War), when accused of simony and forced by the (puritan) Committee for Plundered Ministers to choose between the vicarage of Barton and the rectory of Asby, he chose Barton. See 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80–1655)'. *ODNB*.

[81] Carlisle Cathedral.

[82] 'Near': 'Niggardly, stingy, mean'. *OED*.

[83] Lancelot Dawes's publications include, *Gods Mercies and Jerusalems Miseries* (1609) with an epistle, dated 27 June, dedicated to Henry Robinson, bishop of Carlisle; and, *Sermons Preached upon Severall Occasions* (1653). For these volumes and Dawes's biography, see 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80-1655)'. *ODNB*.

This House (with all the Estates that were purchased by Dr Daws) is now the Inheritance of Thomas Daws, a Schollar at Appelby, whose Pedegre followeth.

				Lancelot Daws of Barton Kirk. Dr in Divinity	=	Amy the daughter of Mr Fairfax, Rector of Cald-beck in Cumberland
1. Lancelot Daws M[r] of Arts, whose monumented inscription is in Barton Church quire, see before fig. [Blank]		=	Mary, the d. of Mr Whelpdale of Penrith; remaryed to Tho. Fletcher of Strickland, Barister at Law	2. William Daws of Barton Kirk maryed –	=	Margaret the d. of [blank] Mawson of Penrith in Cumberland
Tho. of Craketrees in West-morland	William of Timparon Cumb-erland			1. Lancelot Dawes of Barton Kirk, the eldest son of William, maryed Thomas Daws aet [blank]	=	Frances the daughter of T. Fletcher of Little Stricland, Barister at Law; being a co-heiress
Lancelot Daws						

[Machell's Notes: I.678]
*{Creak Trees? Ashby Grange? Regil. Something in Penrith.}[84]
†The College Bokes.
‡Public fame.[85]

[I.373]

{**Places [in Barton Parish**]}

To Barton church doe belong Barton, Bridge aliis Yeamond Bridge \ or Emont or Emote or Emoth / Hartsop, Lowinder, Martindale, Patterdale, Powley, Sokbridge, & Yeanwath.

[I.381]

[Lordships]
There are 3 Lordships with manner houses. Sokbridge. Yaneworth. Powly Hall. Hartsop Hall*.
20. Sockbridge the Ancient Seat of the Lancasters now extinct tho there remaine some of the name. It now belongs to Sir John Lowther junior,[86] who married with a Lancaster?[87] William Lancaster of Sockbridge can give an account of them. Hartsop allso \ being / in Patterdal[e] belongd to them & now to the Lowthers. Lowther has some \ Tenements / in Low Barton.

[84] His biographers report that Dawes 'also bought land in the nearby parish of Crosby Ravensworth, including Regill Grange and half the demesne in the manor of Regill.' 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80-1655)'. *ODNB*. See also I.377 below.
[85] Michael Hudson (1605–1648), born in Penrith [? See Machell, I.678] was a Church of England clergyman and royalist agent. He attended Queen's College, Oxford, as 'a poor child' in 1622, BA 1626, MA 1629, fellow 1630 (alongside another Westmerian, the logician, Christopher Airay). While a fellow, Hudson seems have tutored Prince Charles. After receiving various livings, Hudson joined the royalists after the battle of Edgehill, then moved to Oxford to be with the king. By royal order he was granted the degree of DD in 1643, becoming one of the king's chaplains. The king 'usually called him his plain-dealing chaplain, because he told him his mind, when others would or durst not' (Wood, Ath. *Oxon*., 3.233). In 1645 he was ejected from one of his livings for non-residency. His subsequent career as an agent for Charles I was full of danger: he was imprisoned, escaped (allegedly in disguise) and raised troops to fight for the king in Lincolnshire. Parliamentarians besieged him at Woodcroft Castle, Peterborough, fighting him through the house and out on to the roof. 'Although the details of Hudson's actual death in the moat on 6 June 1648 owe more to later royalist hagiography than historical truth, his fanatical generosity in support of his king is not to be underestimated.' See N. Cranfield, 'Hudson, Michael (1605-1648), Church of England clergyman and royalist agent'. *ODNB*. Note that Hudson died near Peterborough, not Hull.
[86] 1655-1700.
[87] The Lancaster male line failed in 1640; Machell queried whether Sir John Lowther's wife was a Lancaster. See *AWL*, 182.

21. Yaneworth, formerly to the Dudleys: quite Extinct. \ Anciently to the Yanewoth. (Sandford W[estmorland) / that Daughter whose mon[ument] I have spoke of; and sold by her father to Sir John Lowther of Lowther now Lord thereof. There are 2 demane: the High & the Low.
Two[88] Villages: 1. Yaneworth where the Hall: the other ~~the~~ Bridge. \ Commonly called Emont Bridge. / Near the Bridge are these 2 famous Antiquities, viz. Maybrough & Arthurs-Castle. {Se §31.}[89]

22. Powley Hall \ in High Barton / belongs to Lord Dakers. To him \ allso / belongs High Barton, Powley, Martindale, & Patturdale.[90]

23. In High Barton is Trostermont† \ some call it Crostormont.[91] / Here was borne Dr Hudson at the house which now belongs to Lancelot Daws which together with the impropriation was bought of the Hudsones‡. Dr Langbane, borne at More-End in High Barton near Powley⸸.

24. Martindale – Dr Daws borne there: a chaple there.[92]

[Machell's Notes: I.381]

*(<u>& forsan Barton Hall: X query</u>)[93]
†{Trostermont in High Barton: a round hill tre[n]ched. Said to be the Castle of Trostermont, one of the[94] alias Crostamont. Note.}
‡q.? {The vicar has ⅓.}
⸸(Dr Airay in Low Barton?)(…)[95] at a place called Seller.[96]
{A free school in High Barton, vid. §26.}

[I.382]

25. Hartsop Hall; to Sir John de Sokbridge.
26. 1 Free schoole in High Barton founded by Dr Langbane: Dr Airy & Daws benefactors.[97]
27. Powley Milne & Bridge. Sogbridge Mill.[98]

<u>Villages & Hamlets</u>
28. 1. High Barton., 2. Low Barton where the Church. \ a manner, the demane [and] Powley; / 3. Sockbridge. 4. Yeaneworth. 5. Eamont. 6. Winder a village. 7. Hartsop Lordship, Martindale Lordship, Patterdale a Lordship.

29. Barton is a Barony \ puto scriptis Sandford?[99] / Powley Dem. is the chief demayne as the Dem. of Barton. To it belongs \ High B[arton] & Low Barton. / The Manner of Hartsop. Manner of Martindale. Manner of Patterdale. Yeamount, <u>Sokbridge & Yaneworth are in the parish, not in the Barony</u>*.

---

[88] MS: '2'.
[89] 'See paragraph 31', has been added to the margin.
[90] MS: 'To him \ allso / belongs High Barton, Powley, Martindale, & ~~part of~~ Patturdale. ~~Some of them belonging to Bar. Lowther & som~~ to ~~Arundell~~.' A deleted note on Lowther and Arundel, property owners in High Barton.
[91] It is now Cross Dormont.
[92] Because the page foot has perished, the bottom line cannot be transcribed.
[93] This section has a cross and underlining in different ink. Perhaps Machell was able to answer his own question.
[94] The text here has perished.
[95] This phrase is blotted, but appears to be KIT. Machell used similar letter groups (see a reference to Yanwath on I.734 in this chapter) such as KαT, an abbreviation of the Greek adverb, κα/τω, meaning 'below' or 'in the lower part'. In this instance, the context (Low Barton) is consistent with a reference to 'below', but the Greek abbreviation is unclear and appears to be carelessly written.
[96] Celleron.
[97] For a similar note, see I.377, I.688.
[98] Sockbridge.
[99] 'Perhaps in Sandford's writings?' Machell's contemporary, Edmund Sandford, wrote, 'A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumb'land', c. 1675. The MS is contained within Machell's Volume 6. It has been published as: Edmund Sandford, *A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland*, CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890).

30. In High Barton a parke now disp[arked]. Barton Church appropriate to the Prior & Convent of St James de Carta Ebor Dioces. 1318. Given by \ the grant / John Halton wh[en] Bishop of Carlile, ut è registrario suo Apud Rose penes ep[iscopum].[100]
Barton vic[arage] as cler-value in the Kings booke. 11^{li}: 1: 0: \ 10^{th} / 1: 2: 1: q^{a}.[101]

The parish of Barton, December 22 1674.

[Machell's Notes: I.382]

*Informatione John Patteson.[102]

[I.377]

[Eminent Men]

1. Eminent men hath this parish produced: \ all contemporaries / sc. Gerard Langbane,[103] Dr of Divinity Provost of Queens College in Oxford & whose books & reputation to this day bespeake him a man of Universal Learneing: who was maryed to ~~Widow Potter~~ \ Elizabeth widdow to Dr Potter his predicessor, / & had Isue Gerhard \ Langbane / placed somewhere in Oxfordshire*. He Lyes buried in Queens College Oxon – whose monument gives ~~you~~ this fairther[104] account concerneing him: \ of him: /
Dr in Divinity in Scotland – Vicar of Barton Kirk in Westmorland†.

2. The other was Lancelot Dawes, Vicar of Barton, parson of Ashby Kirk in Westmorland \ and Prebendary of Carlile / where lyes buryed,[105] – haveing left a plentiful Estate \ behinde him betwixt 2 & 300 li p.a. / ~~of his owne acquireing to his deseendants~~ {He bought Barton Kirk, Creaktrees, an estate in Penrith, Askby Grange, Rig}, which is much to be admired considering that he was \ only / borne ~~but~~ to 13 or 14 per annum & for Long time had but that Vicaridge of about 50^{li} & \ educated & / brought up & preferrd 6 daughters \ very gentieley, / to each of which he gave to the value of 400 li besides several portions to his poore relation[s] of about 60 li apiece. \ He was very generous & hospitable to strangers, & charitable to the poore: but made his own children live near & sparingly.[106] /

3. Dr Airay, who was Principle of Edmond Hall in Oxford \ born at Low-Winder in an House which is over the Sike and west from the Hall[107] – which is a Good Tenement held now under Davis‡.

4. Michael Hudson, fellow of Queens College, & Chaplain & Convoy in the northern partes to King Charles 1 in the \ late / Civil warrs; who being taken at or near {unto} Hull (as I have heard) was cast into a mote, where he swam for his Life, & comeing to the Banke, the Hand ~~which~~ \ he / put forth \ to catch hold on som thing / to save his life was cut off by a soljer; after which he Tackd abo[u]t agane, & putting out his other hand ~~had~~ \ he / ~~that~~ cutt off \ that / allso; Then throwing himselfe upon his Back, he swam in \ blood & watter / his blood, & when he greaw faint, comeing to shore, had his brains beaten out with a musket but. And they hedged a Bloody Sacrifice of the Rebells cruelty, & remaines a Example of Fidelity & Loyalty to all posterity.[108] He was Born at Barton Kirk, that Estate being purchased from the Hudsons by Dr Dawes.[109]

---

[100] 'John Halton when Bishop of Carlisle, as evidenced in his registry at Rose in the possession of the bishop.'
[101] MS notes on I.715C provide, 'High Barton: a manor W. ab Ecclesia. a sort of Dale extending from the church to Martindale from which tis divided by Swarthbeck which runns into Ulswater over against. excepting Pooley is a member of it which is a pretty com'[illeg.]
[102] 'From the evidence of John Patteson.'
[103] Gerard Langbaine D.D. (1608-1657), son of William Langbaine; Fellow and later Provost of Queen's College, Oxford; co-founder of Barton Grammar School.
[104] Originally 'farther account', but an 'i' added later in different ink.
[105] Lancelot Dawes 1580-1653/4. See above, and see *CFH*, 85.
[106] Repeated text, see I.676, above.
[107] Adam Airay, B.D. Principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, 9 Mar. 1630/1 until his death, 16 Dec. 1658. See H.E. Salter and Mary D. Lobel (eds), 'St. Edmund Hall', in *A History of the County of Oxford: Volume 3, The University of Oxford,* (London, 1954), 319-35, British History online.
[108] Repeated text, see I.678, above.
[109] The line below this, at the page foot, has perished

{Also Fellows of Queens College in Oxford: L. Smith, Law[rence] Smith,[110] Will Lancaster,[111] [Blank] Teasdal.}[112]

[Machell's Notes: I.377]

*Of? {Baldwin near Oxford et quer.}[113]
†{? Send for a draft of his picture & monument}
‡Witnesses Jam[es] Dobson of Wether-melock. King of Patterdale.[114] Christopher Lancaster of Hartsop.

[I.679] [115]

Other places of less note in this Lordship, and yet not to be passed by in silence, haveing given birth to learned men are:
Pot Howskil – Launcelot Smith, Fellow[116] – which were called [of] late Potshowskil.[117]
Bower banke – which is a good House at the E. End of Pooley, & in a manner ajoyneing to it Lawrence Smith, who sold it to his Brother Will the Keeper of Martindale.
Moore End near Pooley – W. ab Ecclesia ½ a mile Dr Langbane where Langbanes yet.[118]
Winder – in manner of W[inder] Dr Adam Airay Principal of Edmund Hall in Oxford; whose father is said to have com out of Kentmere in the Barony of Kendal.

[I.687][119]

[**Barton School**]
[Results of an Enquiry, returned to Thomas Machell in 1673]

Westmorland Barton
For Mr Richard Jackson Schoolmaster of Appleby.
These p. p. p. with hand.

[I. 680][120]

The present estate of the free schoole of Barton in Westmorland, in order to an enquiry beareing date from Oxon, August 16th 1673.

Enquiry First: Who Founders?
Replied: The Reverend Gerrard Langbaine D.D. Provost of Queens Colledge in Oxon, & the Reverend Lancelott Dawes D.D. Fellow of Queens Colledge in Oxon.

[110] Laurence Smith, servitor at Queen's College, Oxford, from1660; BA 1665; MA 1668; rector of Knights Enham, Hants, 1675-1708. Leonard Smith of Appleby, matriculated 1674 aged 18; BA 1678-79; MA 1681; vicar of Newbold-Pacey Warwickshire (in the gift of Queen's College), 1689, *OAD*. See also CCED.
[111] William Lancaster of Sockbridge, matriculated 'pauper' Queen's College, 1670, aged 20; BA 1674-75; MA 1678; BD 1690; DD 1692; provost of Queen's College 1704-17; vice-chancellor 1705-09; originally 'a little petty schoolmaster in Westmorland'; vicar of Oakley Bucks 1682; vicar of St Martin-in-the-Fields 1692; archdeacon of Middlesex 1705; died 1716-17. *OAD*.
[112] Five Teasdells/Teasdalls, from Cumberland (1) and Westmorland (4), matriculated at Queen's College between 1596 and 1685. John Teasdell: BA 1602, became vicar of Appleby (1611) and Lowther (1613). Lancelot Teasdell of Sockbridge MA 1684, became rector of South Weston Oxon (1691) and of Distington Cumberland (1692). William Teasdall of Stockbridge, son of Christopher, matriculated in 1685 aged 16; BA 1690; MA 1693-94. Robert Teasdell of Westmorland matriculated in 1615 aged 17; BA 1617. William Teasdell of Cumberland matriculated in 1572. *OAD*.
[113] 'And query this.'
[114] John Mounsey of Patterdale Hall, see I.714, below.
[115] The contents of this page were written in pencil; they are now too faint to be read easily.
[116] Lancelot Smith, servitor of Queen's College, matriculated 1655; BA 1659; MA 1652, *OAD*.
[117] Pots house gill: a field in the Parish of Barton: *Westmorland Place-Names*. Nicolson & Burn refer to this place as 'Pothowscale': *N&BI*, 407.
[118] Another MS reference (I.677), gives 'At Moore End. West ab Ecclesia ½ a mile Dr Langbane born.'
[119] The page contains a scrap of paper pasted onto it, containing the address of Richard Jackson, who sent Machell the material on Barton, below.
[120] The results of the Inquiry were written in another hand.

2. When Founded?
Replied: In the year of Our Lord God 1649.[121]

3. How Endowed?
Replied: With twenty pounds per Annum which was given as followeth; viz. the said Gerrard Langbaine gave the sume of five pounds and fiveteen shillings \ yearly / out of an estate purchased at Culgaith & the interest of sicety \ fifty[122] / four pounds more unto the said schoole. The said Lancelott Dawes gave twenty shillings to be pay'd out of his part of the tythes of Barton \ yearly / & the interest ariseing from thirty pounds of money. The Reverend Adam Airey D.D, Fellow of Queens Colledge in Oxon, gave the interest of one hundred pounds of money to the use aforesaid; and the Parishioners of Barton gave the interest of thirty pounds for ever, collected among them before the Schoole house was built.

4. What School-master? & succession of masters?
Replied: John Martin A.B. of Queens Colledge in Oxon, first after the foundation of the said Schoole, whom Thomas Preston A.B. of St Johns Colledge in Cambridge did succeed; William Lancaster his successor; & Christopher Mickleston, the immediate predecessour of William Airey present School-Master there.[123]

5. What Exhibitions?
Replied: Noe exhibitions in either University.

6. What Governours, Patrons & Visitors?
Replied: Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet; Sir John Lowther of Lowther Baronet; Daniell Fleeming of Ridale Esqr; John Harrison present Vicar of Barton; William Dawes senior; Theodorus Sisson; William Smith senior of Bowerbanke; George Mounsey senior; Thomas Winter, gentleman; William Smith of Potshouscale; William Sisson of Crostormount, & William Smith of Brow yeomen, Parishioners of Barton aforesaid.

9. What Libraries?
Replied: Noe libraries therein, or in any town thereto adjoyneing.

Barton June 30th 1676.

[I.682]

The Foundation of Barton School & electing of Supervisors and Governors[124]
{After the Endowment there was also provision for supervisours in these word[s].}[125]
Whereas the Parishioners of Barton have agreed & consented together for the building & erecting of a publick Schoole at Barton: & for that such Foundation cannot subsist & continue without Order & Government to be observ'd in & about the same; It is therefore thought fitt, that for the use of the Parishioners in generall, & for the avoyding of such inconveniences as might happen to arise by the different opinion of a multitude, & for the better ordering and governing of the said schoole: That the seven men herein nam'd & appointed, & their Heirs successively be & remaine as Supervisors & Governors of the Schoole. That is to say, Mr Lancelott Dawes, Mr Francis Sisson, Mr William Davis, Steven Mounsey, William Smith, Lancelott Smith & William Langbane*. & whatsoever they the said seven men, or the Major part, shall conclude & agree upon touching & concerning the benifitt & advantage of the said schoole, the same to be observ'd for good & binding for all others. And forasmuch as diverse well-dispos'd persons

[121] A note in the MS (I.715A) gives: 'Barton: There is a free school, in the high road from Penrith to Pouley, W. ab Ecclesia ¾, founded by [blank] and build, as appears by these figure writ over the door in – 1649.' Another reference, but scored through (MSI.715C), gives, '~~a School free (ab Ecclesia W. ab Ecclesia) ¾ of a mile~~.'
[122] 'Fifty', in another hand.
[123] William Lancaster taught in Barton between 1668 and 1670; William Airey was licensed on 15 November 1672; he taught in Barton until 1691. CCED. Christopher Mickleston (presumably teaching there, c. 1671) has not been found in the bishop's register for that period.
[124] The main text on this page is the copy of a deed and is in a hand other than Machell's.
[125] In Machell's hand, written in pencil.

whose hearts God hath stirr'd up towards the setting forward of so necessary & pious a work, have allready to the good Example of others, out of their Christian care for the Education & Instruction of Youth

[Machell's Notes: I.682]

*{Fo[u]nders & Benefactors} {And to these have been added since I know not, I suppose in a complement.}

[I.683]

in Religion & Learning, chearfully & charitably contributed to that use of the said school. It is thought fitt that the Names of all those who have given any thing to the same, together with the sume or gift so given, to be carefully Recorded & Registered in the Schoole-Book as Authors & Benefactors to the said schoole that the Memory of those who have so generally deserv'd well may not be rak'd up in the Ashes of Oblivion for whom Posterity may have cause to give God thanks.

The Names of all such as have given & contributed to the Use of the Schoole of Barton together with the Sume or Gift so given.

Imprimis. Lancelott Dawes D.D. & Vicar of Barton, gave twenty shillings per annum to be pay'd by his heires out of the Tithes of Barton-Kirke yearly for ever. And also, five & twenty pound in money: the use whereof to be imploy'd to the said School for ever.
Item. Gerard Langbaine D.D. & Provost of Queens Colledge in Oxford gave thirty pound: the use whereof to be & remaine to the use of the said schoole for ever. Also, the said Dr Langbaine

[I.684]

purchas'd a Farme at Culgaith in Cumberland at the value of 20^{li} per annum, ten pound whereof to bind two Apprentises within Barton Parish; the rest to the use of the foresaid schoole of Barton for ever; paying the Lords yearly Rent for the Farme at Culgaith.
Item. given by C. Airay to the schoole of Barton the sume of a hundred pound, the use whereof to go to the schoole for ever. Whereof allowd to Peter Burnyeats for the Carriage the Sume of three pound & for other expenses six shilling six pence; the Rest being in the Hands of the Men whose Names follow. viz.

William Smith of Winder	63 06 00}	
Francis Sisson	12 00 00}	0: 7: 6. not accounted for
Lancelott Smith of Pottshowskell	11 00 00}	
Humphrey Langbane	10 00 00}	

Others contributed to the building of the schoole (& the overplus to be employ'd to the use thereof) besides their Labour in Leading, Wood, & Stones & other materials

Mr Wm Davis	5. 0.0.	Stephen Sisson	2. 0.0.	Edw. Winder	0.13.4.
Mr Franc. Sisson	4.0.0.	Tho. Mark	1.10.0.	Edw. Hodge'son	1. 0.0.
Mr Humph.Wharton	3.0.0.	Wm Harrison of Ellerbeck	5^{li}.	Lancelot Airay	1.10.0.
William Smith	3.6.8.	Wm Dawson	2. 0.0.	Lancelot Prudday[126]	1. 0.0.
Lancelot Smith	3.0.0.	Edw. Browne	1 .0.0.	Jo. Smith	0. 6.8.
Mr Tho. Mounsey	2.0.0.	Tho. Mounsey	1.10 0.	Edw. Rukin	0. 5.0.
Stephen Mounsey	3.0.0.	Jane Richardson	1 .0.0	Rowland Guddall	0. 5.0.
Wm Harrison [perished]		Edw. Lancaster	0. 6.8.	Lanc. Lancaster	0.13.4.
Wm [perished]		Wm Bird [perished]		Wm Nicolson	0. 6.8.
The sume is	[£]46. 6.[127]				

[I.660]

[The Perambulation of Barton Parish]

Bounder

Note. This Parish is Bounded on the East with Browham & Clifton \ & Lowther / being divide from them by the River Lowder, on the SE with Askham & Barton, on the S. with \ part of / Kendal and ~~Winder mer~~ \ Gresmere parishes, / on the W. with Crosthwate \ & Graystock / parish in \ the County of / Cumberland, on

[126] A letter 'e' here appears to have been changed into 'a'.
[127] Of the two illegible amounts, one sum given could be 10 shillings.

the North-west & N – with ~~the Parishes of~~ Graystock & Penrith \ in the said county* / ~~being~~ divided from them by Glenkeün-Beck, Ulswater, & Emote, the perambulation being as followeth – Sc.

{Perambulation}
The tract of ground which belongs to this church.
Beginning over against the Church in the midle of Emote, & thence descending N^wd^ to Skirsgill well, near Yeanwath hall, where \ the Barony of / Graystock ends &\ the Parish of / Penrith begins†; Thence ~~this~~ downe the midle of the said River till Lowder discharge it selfe

[Machell's Notes: I.660]

*{? Q. of Daker.}
†(Query of Daker, where it begins & ends.)

[I.661]

to the head or Runner of Eymote, all the East Side or halfe of Ulswater being accounted in the manner of Barton; But the fishing is in som \ of the / Tenants who pay quit rent for it. Thus, it is now; but (if a man may speake what is rational) it seemeth to me that the side of Ulswater which lyes contiguouse to the manner of Martindale has belong'd to it; but both these being in the same Lords possession, & the Court kept in Barton, it has thence bin reckoned within Barton manner.

[I.655A]

Via & media quibus ad Terminum perducitur[128]

{Terminus a quo} {Terminus ad quem}[129]

Beginning over against the Church in the midle of Emonte and descending thence N.E. till you com at the place where Lowther Beck runnes into Emot where Browham begins.[130] Thenceforward S. up the River Lowther till you com at the Bridge, where Clifton enters. Thence S.W. up Lowther Beck till you com at Yanwath wood head \ a little / beneath Lowther mill. Thence westward (up by the Hedge of Yanwath Demaine till you com at a Grassing which is in Ascom demaine called Pow-dun*.[131] Thence W. up by the wall of Sockbridge Demaine to a close in High Winder called Holl-Gill.[132] Thence directly west by a wall to the Towne of High Winder – Thence S. West~~ward~~ over the fell in a direct line to Cloven Steane on a Browside called Seat-head. Thence S.W. in a streight line to ~~wh~~ an heap of stones called White Rayes. Thence S.W. by a streight line \ lineally/ to \ an heap of stones on / Hewskill-howes. Thence \ directly / S.W. to the Top of Whiteston Moore.[133] Thence S.W. (by a streight line) to a Raise of stones called Lambert-Lad. Thence – S. West (by a streight line) to Sandford Steak wher Askam ends & Barton begins in the point from Barton Kirke? Thence S.W. \ to / a place calld White-Raise. Thence S.W. by a st\r/eight line to Camerton Bield where Barton leaves of as Kendal comes in†.[134] Thence Westward by a streight line to Jack-brigg \ where Kendal leaves, & Wind'mer. / Thence W. by a direct line to a strait place between 2 dales‡ called the Threshward. Thence N.W. to \ Camerton Bield on / the top of Kirkston \ where Gresmere comes in. /

[128] 'The way and means by which it reaches the end.'
[129] 'The Starting Point … The End Point'. Three or four words are illegible here; they could read: '& measurement [?] miles', but the page here has perished.
[130] MS: 'Beginning anenst the church at Emot Side; \ over against the Church in the midle of Emonte / and \ descending / thence N.E. till \ you com at the place where / Lowther Beck runnes into Emot. Where Browham begins.'
[131] MS: 'Thence westward (up by the ~~wall of Askham till~~ \ Hedge of / Yanwath Demaine till you com at a Grassing ~~called Pow-dun~~ which is in Ascom demaine called Pow-dun.'
[132] MS: 'Thence \ W. / up by the wall ~~inclose~~ of Sockbridge Demaine to \ a close ~~called~~ / ~~Hollgill~~ in High Winder – called Holl-Gill.'
[133] A line of text here has been thoroughly crossed through and is therefore unclear.
[134] MS: 'where Barton leaves of \ as ~~Winder~~ Kendal comes in / ~~at the [blank] point from B[arton Kirk]~~ {Query where other parishes com in.}'

Thence Westwards along the Height (as heaven water \ deales /) to / Dove Cragg;[135] Thence W. (as Heaven water deales) to \ ~~Sinke~~/ Glencove. Thence W. by a streight line \ as heaven water deales to Greatrig Head on / the Top of Fairfield. Thence N.W. by a streight line to the head of ~~Gr~~ Grisedale Tarn.[136] Thence N. in a direct line to an heap of stones on Erward Tove or Edward Dove \ where Crosthwate p[arish] \ in Cumberland / enters at the [blank] point. Thence as Heaven Water deales to the top of \ a / Broad Crag ~~top~~ called Elvellin⸸.

[Machell's Notes: I.655A]

{Marking of sheep. Scot[tish] – keeling of sheep. Keela ome – is Read lead or Rud – Keela vert is Black lead –}[137]
A Carne of Stones (in Scotch) is an he\a/p of stones for a memorial.
{Dr Balfour a physitian in Edenburrow, an antiquarian;[138] by Mr William Duglas; lawyer at the bar of […][139]
*{Thereof in Scotland Powdan and Powdonnet.}
†{Query where other parishes com in.}
‡{Sc. Ha[r]tsop & Troutbeck in Windermer}
⸸{Mr Mounsey} {Query of X. Lancaster of Hartsop to Ulswater Head.}[140]



Figure 1.5.11. Text written in several different directions and text crossed through. I.655B.

[I.655B]

{till you com below Wethermelock over against the foot of Ranyas which runneth on the E. Side of it, where the Parish of Daker runs in*.}[141] Thence N. (as Heaven water divides) to Whitston Edge. So on by the same direction to the Lower End of Sticks-Moss. Thence N. (by a streight line) to the head of Glennkeu\n/-Beck† \ where Grastock parish begins to joyn of it. / Thence E. down the Beck into the very midle of Ulswater. Thence agane down the midle of Ulswater & thence down the midle of the said Lake and the River of Emote which runs out of it till you com at the place where you began and where Daker ~~endeth~~ & Penrith adjoyne.

[Machell's Notes: I.655B]

*By Mr Dobson & Th[omas] Atkinson his shepherd, called the Prince of Shepherds by Mr Lancaster of Hartsop.
†{? sayes there is gle[n] Co in the higlands.}

[135] Machell used braces here to show that the information in the last paragraph had been provided by his informant, Mounsey.
[136] A line below this one has been heavily scored through.
[137] In the left-hand margin, written at right-angles to the page. Keel, or ruddle, is red ochre, used especially for marking sheep; it is also the name of the mark thus made; red keel is ruddle, black keel is plumbago: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online.
[138] Probably Dr Andrew Balfour (1630-94): physician; collector of botanical samples; experimenter in science and medicine; prominent member of Edinburgh's learned society; private museum, gallery and library owner; a founder of the Royal College of Physicians of Edinburgh in 1681. See Royal Society of Physicians of Edinburgh, https://www.rcpe.ac.uk/heritage/college-history/andrew-balfour.
[139] The rest of this margin comment is obscured by the binding
[140] It appears that Machell needed to enquire further (of Christopher Lancaster).
[141] Top L.H. margin: the page is damaged; it has been repaired in the past.

[I.664]

[**Pooley**]

{Manerium de Barton. Lord Sussex.}

The village of Pooley at the foot of Ulswater, which is the chief place in the Manner of Barton, taketh its name from being scituate nearer to that great poole and doth but consist of [blank] families.[142] [It] seemeth to be of Late Erection; whether \ the / people \ at first / haveing flocked thither either for promoteing the fishing trade or perhaps for vendeing them: for (by Tradition) it formerly has bin a Little Market, there yet remaneing a fair \ stone/ cross in it \ with stepps or seats all round about it, / with the Dakers armes at the top of which on west side of the [cross] are Dakers Arms. Sc. 3 escallops (and those too have relation to fishing) on the S.W. side of it; which Cross was lately put in \ to / repare by the \ now / Earle of Sussex (descended from Dakers on the mothers side,) \ the Lord of the Manner and of most \ part / of the parish; / as by[143] these Letter[s] cutt on the fan (or Weather Cock as they commonly call it) \ upon the Top of it / may more fully appear:

THOMAS EARLE OF SUSSEX MAY. 2. 1679.[144]



Figure 1.5.12. Sketch of the Dacre Arms on Barton Cross. I.664.

This place \ then / lying at the foote of the lake & head of the river which is called Emot from its isuing here out of the mote,[145] might be very proper for the said Imployments either of fishing or vending \ of fish / &[146] might occasion a concorse of people & to have taken the name of Pooley from its vicinity to that great poole or lake whereon it standeth ~~or from~~ now*.

And another Reason {!!!} of this part of the manner being more frequented \ & so groweing populous / may be from its nearness to the Manner House, whose \ great / estate here \ laid / calls upon to adorne the Countrey. I do not mean that \ pittiful / cott which they call Pooley-Hall \ at the E. End of it, / where they keep their Courtes; a Scandal to the noble Lord who ownes it,[147] the manner being in reallyty the worst ~~house I saw~~ \ in the Town, / whose walls are clay & whose cover, Thatch – But that on [blank][148]

[Machell's Notes: I.664]

*{Consequences: som number of house more than at first.}

[I.663]

The village of Pooley* at the foote of Ulse-water \ which is the chief place in the manner of Barton[149] / taketh its name from being scituate near that Great poole \ or lake / And is a very sweet situation; haveing,

[142] MS: 'The village of Pooley \ ~~which is scituate~~ at the foot of Ulswater / which is the chief place in the Manner of Barton, taketh its name from being scituate ~~on the~~ nearer to that great poole, and doth but consist of [blank] families.'
[143] In the margin of the MS: {'which with the'}.
[144] See *N&BI*, 411.
[145] MS: 'and It is calld This place \ then / lying at the foote of the lake & head of the River which is called Emot from its isuing here out of the mote'.
[146] Here, a blot covers two words.
[147] MS: '~~which is~~ a scandal to that \ the / noble Lord who ownes it.'
[148] The narrative stops abruptly here.
[149] For an earlier draft see I.664.

besides its native Imbellishments of wood & water, a great accession of Borrowed Beauty from Dunmallard Hillin the County of Cumberland:[150] to which it is adjoynd by a \ Stone / Bridge,[151] where formerly was but a Stanke and a plake;[152] ~~which~~ serveing at once both for passage and fishing; and this was placed above the \ Stone / Bridge, not in the manner of a Diagonal (as the new one below) but like ~~the~~ 2 radij \ of a Circle / or Limbes of a Triangle \ tending to / meeting in the Center after this manner, \ /[153] as the remaneing Stones doe yet testify. And it tooke the name of Stanke: a stando from stanching, staying or stoping the water & makeing it stand, so that of old there was a place here calld Pooley Stanke‡. ~~The~~ But the Village it self seemeth to be of Later Erection, the people at first flocking together; either for promoteing the fishing trade or perhaps for vending them.

[Machell's Notes: I.663]

{Pooley gave name to a family.}
*{Sold free 6 or 7 years since by my Lord of Sussexs. i.e. from services & arbitrary fines, to a peppercorn. But Eller Beck, Woodside, above Pooley, was ancient free-hold. Query: if any part of the manors of Barton below the church.}[154]
⸸{Query: what more.}
‡{The proprietors of the New Stanke are – Mr Hudelston of Hutton John in Cumberland; Will Smith of Bower banke, now keeper of Martindale.}
{Beneath Pooley, i.e. Ab Ecclesia, families 11 or 12. In Pooley, families 16 or 17. Above Pooley families 15.}

[I.661]

In Pooley [blank] above Pooley 13 families ~~and~~ they are all lately (except 2 or 3 not of ability) purchased into a sort of freedom & for which they pay~~e~~d 30 years rent to the now Earle of Sussex, for which they are exempt from al Service except Suit of Court, paying only their old rent to their Lord & a Pepercorne in the name; which saves them (being in the nature of Tenancy) from serving in the County Court.
{This water affords – Chars, Skellyes,[155] Troutes, Gray troutes a yard long and as much about Perch, which they call Bass, Eales but not large, for the channel is Stone and Gravel.[156]
The Duck and Mallards build & bread: Lough ducks, \ black / Scaroes[157] & \ gray / Cormorands, Teales & widgeons do frequent.

[Machell's Notes: I.661]

(The story of Lord Whartons at Onbur in Bucks not far from Wickam.)[158]

[150] Dunmallard or Dunmallet, see 1.666.
[151] See N&BI, 411.
[152] Plank.
[153] Here, Machell has drawn two lines.
[154] This margin comment is partly obscured by the binding.
[155] 'Skelly': The freshwater herring. *OED*.
[156] See a similar list in *N&BI*, 407.
[157] 'Black scaroes'. Possibly the European Shag, known in Orkney and Shetland as the Scarfie. It is part of the cormorant family. See M. Cocker and R. Mabey, *Birds Britannica* (London, 2005), 38.
[158] Thomas Wharton (1648-1715), 1st marquess of Wharton, was a son of the puritan Philip 4th Baron Wharton. An MP for seventeen years (1679-96), Thomas Wharton used his first years as MP to encourage Whig opposition to James II's government. Before the Glorious Revolution he was in close contact with army officers, including his brother Captain Henry Wharton, who were conspiring against James. He spent his early life at Upper Winchendon, a Wharton estate in Buckinghamshire, continuing to live there even after inheriting manors in Buckinghamshire, Yorkshire, Cumberland and Westmorland. Machell, a staunch Tory and defender of the Church of England, was not a fan of the Whartons (see Editor's Introduction) so, here, he was probably referring to Thomas Wharton's scandalous youth. Before his first marriage (1673), Wharton was challenged to a duel by a disappointed rival … and lost. In June 1682, Wharton, his brother Henry and some friends were entertained at Bray House in Great Barrington, Gloucestershire. One night, 'after several hours of drinking, the group broke into St Mary's parish church where they rang the bells, cut the bell ropes, broke the cover of the font and the desk of the pulpit, and ripped the church Bible. Then, as the actions (to paraphrase Wharton's later apology) grew worse in the execution than they had been in the design, the revellers relieved themselves in the church. They might have contrived other enormities if the clangour of the bells had not brought out an unamused crowd of villagers who chased them back to Bray House.' J. Kent Clark, 'Wharton, Thomas, first marquess of Wharton, first marquess of Malmesbury, and first marquess of Catherlough (1648-1715), politician'. *ODNB*.

[I.666][159]

[Dunmallet]

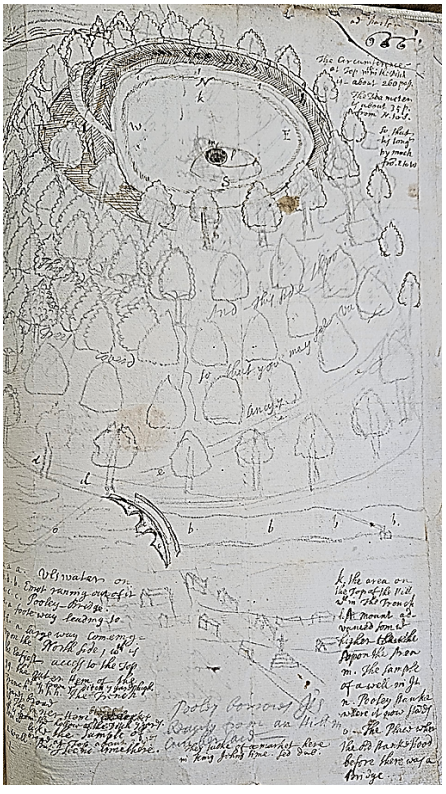


Figure 1.5.13. Dunmallet, Pooley, 'Bridge' and Machell's notes. I.666.

The circumference at Top within the Ditch is about 260 passes. The diameter is about 35 p[asses] from N. to S. so that 'tis longer by much from E. to W.
[Left] This side Thick with Trees coverd. [Right] And – This side thin so that you may see vacencyes.

[Key to the Plan]

aaa. Ulswater on [which Dunmallet stands.]
bbb. Emot running out of it.
ccc. Pooley-Bridge.
e. foote way leading to
ff. a large way comeing upon the North Side, which is the easyest access to the Top.
gg. the Outer Hem of the Trench \ which is from the ditch 7 yards high. /
hhh. The Trench 6 yards broad.
iii. The Inner Hem, which is from the hollow of the Ditch 7 yards;[160]
joyned like the sample of a wall \ broad at Top about 3 yards. / But I see no lime there.
k. The area on the Top of the Hill within the Trench.
l. A mount advanced somewhat higher than the S. upon the Area.
m. The Sample of a well in it.
n. Pooley Stanke where it now stands.
o. The Place where the old Stanke stood before there was a Bridge.

[159] Most of the sketch of Dunmallet is in pencil: only the hill's top ditch and the bridge have been inked.
[160] MS: 'The Inner Hem \ ~~broad it~~ / ~~which looks~~ which is from the hollow of the Ditch 7 yards.'

Pooley borrows its beauty from an hill in Cumberland – They talke of a market here in King Johns time, sed dub.[161]

{Trostermont}[162]

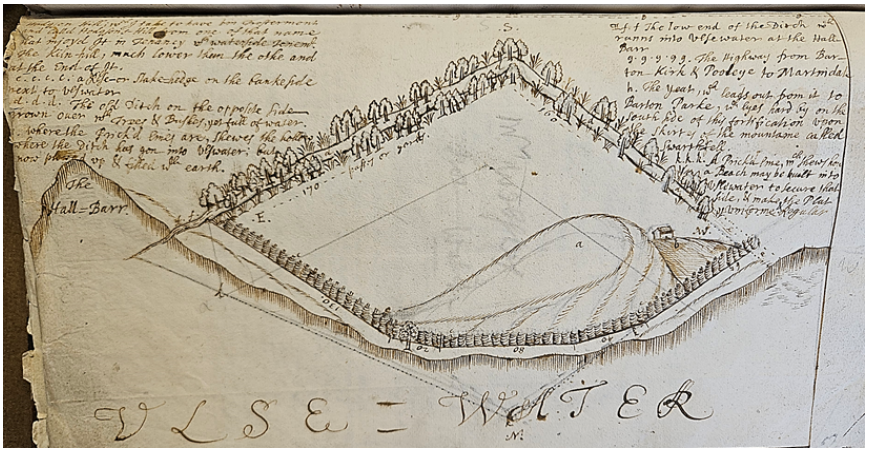


Figure 1.5.14. Sketch of Trostermount, now called Hodgson's Hill, Pooley. I.692.

[I.690]

Bearing ancient and Noble fortifications \ a sight of which I here present you / called Trostermont, or Tristermount; ~~from Tristra~~ {where I could wish a fair manor house, if not rather ~~on~~ bearing upon Dunmallet, tho out of the County. If there be water (as there formerly seemes to have bin) by the sample of a well on the very top of it, I know a great difficulty may be opposd that it is inaccesab[le]; but that might be helpd by a Skew walke or passage, which would make it at once both delightfull & Easy. \ There being / however most excellent gravel, Tristermont may be restored with about as much facility – the ditches thereof being mostly open & yet filled with water – and might be reduced to a Regular ~~near it~~ Platforme by build[ing] a beach[163] into Ulswater where the pricked [line] standeth.}[164]

[I.692][165]

Hodgson Hill, which I take to have bin Trostermont and calld Hodgsons-Hill from one of that name that injoyd it in Tenancy with Waterside Tenement.[166]
The Kiln-hill, much lower than the othe[r] and at the End of it.

c.c.c.c.	A Rise – or Stake-hedge on the bankeside next to Ulswater.
d.d.d.d.	The old Ditch on the opposite Side – grown over with Trees & Bushes, yet full of water.
e.e.	where the prick'd lines are, shewes the hollow where the ditch has gon into Ulswater; but now plowed up & filled with earth.

[161] 'But I doubt it.'
[162] Named Trostermosit or Triestmont on 17th-century maps, and also Hodgson's Hill: OS Map Grid Reference, NY46402332. There are earthwork remains. Gale Bay Moat, Barton, has been described as a probable fortified manor house; a moated site is mentioned in a 14th-century marriage settlement by Sir W. Strickland on his son Thomas. The site is also extant on Machell's plan, above. It consists of a triangular area of five acres with its base on the lake facing NW and its two sides isolated from the mainland by an obtuse angled ditch, 10 yds wide and 894 yds long, with the ends entering the lake: http://www.gatehouse-gazetteer.info/English%20sites/4653.html
[163] MS: Beech: see I.692.
[164] See note k. on the plan above.
[165] Compass points and the measurements in paces are given at the corners; in the centre of the sketch there is a pencilled comment, 'Mr Websters not wa' [the rest is illeg.] Thomas Webster, a steward at Barton Manor Court, was one of Machell's informants.
[166] Waterside Tenement is a farm, now called Waterside House. It is about half a mile south of Hodgson's Hill. See Ordnance Survey 1st edn (1859-1863) Westmorland, sheet VII.

f.f. The low end of the Ditch which runns into Ulsewater at the Hall-Barr.
g.g.g.g.g. The Highway from Barton Kirke & Pooleye to Martindale.
h. The yeat,[167] which leads out from it to Barton Parke, which lyes hard by on the South Side of this fortification upon the skirtes of the mountaine called Swarth-Fell.
k.k.k. A Prick'd line, which shews how a Beach may be built into Ulsewater to secure that Side, & make the Plat uniforme \ & / Regular.

[I.715C]

I could recommend this place to my Lord \ for antiquityes sake / to Build a Manor House upon;[168] or ~~any where~~ \ som other / near to the church \ & / fronting Eastwards, for so it would have a dilicate prospect of that woody vale on the Bankes of Emote. But if there be water, as there seemeth ~~to~~ have bin a well, on the Top of Dun Mallard, tho out of the Lordship – That! with a skew walke …[169]

[I.690]

This Tristermount is thought to have taken its denom[ination] from Tristra – one of King Arthurs Knights ~~as is believed~~, and therefore the rather, because the Round Table – of which order he was – \ is / in this parish – concerneing which I shal speake more fully in ~~it proper place~~ the Manor of Yanewath. Yet this place I confess[170] is now commonly /calld Hodaston Hill. & \ there is / a Tenement near ~~it calld~~ \ thereunto / which bears the name of Tristermont.[171] But the Reason of both may \ seem to / be this: that Tristermont was the 1st Tenement erected thereabout, ~~which might take its~~ \ & tooke that / name from its vicinity to this fortification. And Waterside-Tenement being perhaps \ at first / a part \ or parcel / of it (as tis onely now divided ~~at present~~ \ from it / with a ~~thin~~ slender rise Hedge;[172] or however \ being / a New Improvement[173] by the water side\ and near thereunto, / this hill might be called Hodgsons Hill \ in after Times / from som of that name being owner of it; and the first built House \ might still / retaine the old name of Tristermont tho the Hill had lost it. And this diserves the \ greater / regard, because it is thought to have that name.

But to put the question quite [out] of dout: There is no likelyhood that such a ~~single~~ \ smal / Tenement should be rema[r]ked by all Geographers as Tristermont we alwayes finde is; there must be som mount extraordinary in it & there is no Hill of Note hereaboutes excepting this, which might bear \ challenge / that name ~~or give this denomination~~ as haveing ~~som~~ \ any / resemblance \ & likeness / of a Mount \ or fort. And that which makes it more Remarquable is it[s] scituation on the Banke of Ulswater & its fortification on the other side of it; ~~as you may see in the platform~~ \ into which the water might be / easily rased, as it certanely was with the old Stanke at Stanke, which stood a good[174] above. Nor is this all.

[I.691]

For our English word Town \ certanely / cometh ~~from~~ \ of / the Saxon word Tuwne \ (& so the lawmen yet pronounce it) / which signifyes an Hedge; \ quae in principio sepibus pro muris uterentur;[175] / and was not anciently taken when (as now \ it is /) in a strict sense for a Number of Houses standing together in neighbour row, but for any improvements ~~enclosed~~ with Houses built on them, being in the Liberty of a Manor or Lordship \ Township; / for what is How-Town (hard by in Martindale) but 2 or 3 Houses with inclosures about them? Thus, in Ireland, if they build ~~a farme~~ \ but an / House, with necessaryes \ to it / at a Countrey farme,[176] they call it a Towne: as Garyes Towne, Machels Towne \ & many others / near to Ardale Sc.

[167] Gate: see the English Glossary.
[168] Machell was referring to the earl of Sussex, lord of Barton.
[169] The end of the sentence is obscured by the binding.
[170] MS: 'Yet this place ~~is commonly, I must confess~~ \ I ~~must~~ confess'.
[171] MS: '~~Is called Tristermout by reason of the former objection may probably be that waterside tenement wherein his mount stand might first be taken up by one Hodgson having layd in common & at large before~~.'
[172] 'Rise' is a dialect word for underwood, brushwood or thorns: Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 5, 126; see Machell MS.I.692.
[173] Newly enclosed land.
[174] Words here have perished.
[175] 'which in earliest times they used as fences in place of walls.'
[176] 'Necessaryes': things that are indispensable, essential or requisite [as, in this case, farmbuildings etc.]. *OED*.

[I.693A][177]

Now the Reasons why I conclude this place to be Trostermount (for so the Countrey peple call it, & not Crostermou[n]t as writt in the maps) are these that follow –

1. Because there [is] no other mount to be found hereaboutes; nor near to the Tenement calld by that name excepting this onely.
2. Because this is nex adjoyneing to the House & Tenement which is calld Trostermount, being only divided by a stick hedge. & is no more but a single Cott – not worth the notice of a Geographer.
3. Because this Waterside Tenement may be ergo supposed, either to have formerly layd in common at the side of \ the water adjoyneing / this Tenement calld Trostermount \ and gave the name to it, / or to have bin part & parcell of it; being till this day only divide by a \ slender / Rise[178] dike.
4. This may seeme to have bin the Site of the Hall or manor house till let in Tenancy; from the water adjoyneing called Hall barr & from its vicinity to Barton Parke which is still the chief parcell of the Demaine.
6.[179] \ & why / this Bar might give name [to] Hall Bar: a Landing Place, Creeke or Nib of water att the Hall gates – so Barr is so used in the city of Yorke B. where their principal strong and great gates are all called Barrs as Bowder Bar &c.}

Why might not Barton be so called ~~so~~ of old quasi opidum ad Barram, \ as the Heralds speake; / as much as to say the Towne near the Barr, before Pooley was builded & tooke its name from \ the scituation at the poole.[180] /

[I.671B]

T. Webster, Senescallus Curiae,[181] informes me that there were at Tristermount 3 Tenements anciently, Sc. {?} Nether Tristermont (? where the Mount Standeth): Farther Tristermont, a little above, and Crookedike Tenement adjoyneing to them, which were injoy'd by Customary Tenants belonging to Graystock Castle in Cumberland, till they were exchangd for other tenaments in the Barony of Graystock which did belong to the Lord of this manor. And upon that reason, the Rents, which the said \ 3 Tenements / pay to the Lord of Barton, are calld by the name of Arundell Rents, because they formerly did appertaine to the Earle of Arundel, whose Armes are Gules, a lyon rampant and with caud[182] inflexed Or; which you may see amongst the Armes over the Altar in Barton Church at Fig. 1.[183]

[I.696][184]

Winder

There are 2 Winders, the High \ of which in Sockbridge / and the Low \ Winder / ~~both which~~ \ of which in this place. They both / may seem to have bin one manner; but now they are so divided an Parcelld into other Lordships where they answer Court doing Suit & Service, that there ~~now~~ remaneth but 5 or 6 familyes ~~one~~ \ 2 / of which ~~is a~~ \ are / ratable freholds, in that which wee call the Manner of Winder (commonly Low-Winder,) where the Hall standeth. It is a pretty good dwelling House, ~~but far from any regularity~~; S. from the church about a Mile ~~distance~~; & the few \ Customary / Tenants it hath are all of 'em arbitrary. Adam Airay, Doctor in Divinity & Principal of Edmund Hall in Oxford, who built the Tower there, & the Great house over against the Angel; was born at a Tenement over the Sike, standing West from the Hall. about a Stonecast.[185]

[177] This page consists of a scrap piece pasted onto a larger page; it contains text running in four directions and intertwined.
[178] MS: 'Rese.'
[179] Point 5 does not appear.
[180] A further phrase in the MS appears to be 'being scituated at the Poole of […]': the last word is illegible because it is squashed between two lines of text going in opposite directions.
[181] Steward of Barton manor court.
[182] Tail.
[183] See I.671-73, above.
[184] I.693B contains rough sketches, scored through.
[185] An earlier MS note [I.655B] provides similar information.

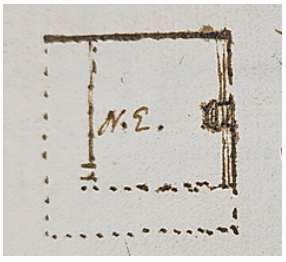


Figure 1.5.15. Sketch Plan of Winder Hall. I.696.

It came to the Davises (as I am told) by purchase (not long agoe) from \ one of / the Stricklands \ whose Armes wee finde placed over the Altar at Fig. 7.[186] / which purchase was made by Mr John Davis, a Master of Art's & som times Schoolmaster of the free Grammer School of Blenkow in Cumberland; {who [blank] Lancelot new builded the house as appears by these Letters above the Hall doer –

LAVS DEO
L.D. AD. 1612.
{? = to Lancaster}

whose descendants are marshalld in the following Pedegree. And now it belongs to Mr John Davyes whose pedigree followeth.

Mr John Davyes
William Davyes of Winder = [Blank] d. of Dr Dawes of Barton Kirk
William Davyes of Winder Obijt 1674 = Elianore d. of Christopher Teasdale of Knipe-hall
[1] William, infans [2] Annas, infans 1689

c. Mr Dobson Steward of Sockbridge[187]

{This place I doubt not, but as it gave name to, so it might belong to a family of the Winders – one of which I finde witness at a Deed Anno 4^0 ~~years in the time of Ed.~~ Richard 2. [1380-1381] of John de Dufton, Chaplain to Eleanore, relict of William de Wibergh, & by the name of Gilbert de Windergh.[188]

[Machell's Notes: I.696]
{<u>In High Winder</u>} q[uery] {115 families vix credo.}[189]
{There are 3 houses in Winder at a place calld Celron; which do Suit and Service at Sockbridge Hall.}

[I.715C]

<u>Low Winder</u>: a manor \ ab Ecclesia S. 1 mile / V or VI families of which 2 are <u>Rateable</u> freeholds. The rest Arbitrary to Mr Will. Davis of Low-Winder Hall, who has a demane belonging unto it.[190] It came to the Davise's, by purchase made from the Stricklands as tis say'd by Mr John Davis a Master of Arts & Schoolmaster of Blenkow.

[186] An identical note has been written in pencil beneath this information and also in the margin. For Figure 7, see I.673, above.
[187] 'With Mr Dobson, keeper of the pedigree.'
[188] The last line of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[189] 'There are 115 families in High Winder: I scarcely believe it.'
[190] See also I.696.

[I.698]

Martindale {Val Sancti Martini}[191]

{Chappel south-west ab Ecclesia}[192]



Figure 1.5.16. Sketch of Martindale Chapel; its dimensions in paces: l[ength] 22, b[readth] 6, and its bell. I.698.

The manner of Martindale, which semeth so called either from the plenty of Martes that were in it or from an old chaple they have in that place dedicate to St Martyn;[193] which standeth S.W. from the Parish church about 5 \ miles.[194] / {It differs little from a Barne but in the Seates, a Bell hanging at the W. End of it, & a Standing Stone instead of a Font, upon which they place a Bason of water when they Christen their children.} It is a Low and old fashond Building with one bell in it – \ & hath neither a Porch, Ile, nor Piller / simplicitas formae antiquitatis.[195] Nota.

[The Chapel Reader. Narrative I.][196]
~~And here~~ There \ is / little remarquable in or about it, but a neat chappel yard; which by the peculiar care & Industry of one old gentleman \ Sir Richard[197] / the Reader, is kept as clean & neat as a bowling-green; in which particular he is so very \ extreamly / curiouse, that he will not suffer a mole to cast in it but setting all other occasions appart \ aside / he will watch & kill her with his own hand: & if his Cow (which doth sometimes g\r/aze there) leaveing any excrements \ unseamly thing / behinde her, he will take care to remove it him selfe with al possible diligence. And it is his practice every Monday, by times in the morneing, to goe round about the chaple-yard with an hammer in his hand; & if he spies a Stone or a Slate out of due course, or faln down by accident, he will presently mend it; In so much, that the people have not bin troubled with any repares in that stormy place (though they owne the ~~expenses~~ \ charge / to belong to themselves) in \ the compass of 50 or / 60 years ~~compass~~. Heu Pietas! Heu Prisca Fides![198] Within the limits of myne owne memory, all Readers in chappels were called Sirs, and of old have bin writ so, as whence I suppose such of the Laity as received the Noble Order of Knight \ hood / being called Sirs too,

[191] The valley of St Martin.
[192] Machell is describing Martindale Old Church at the foot of Howe Grain, which was rebuilt c. 1633 (Hyde & Pevsner, 513), south-west of the hause. At the top of the hause stands Martindale New Chapel (St Peter's), built 1880-2: Hyde & Pevsner, 512.
[193] MS: '~~N. West from the church a Court [?] miles lyeth~~. The manner of Martindale, which semeth so called, either from the plenty of Martes that ~~are~~ were In In it; or from an old chaple they have in that manner \ place / dedicate to St Martyn.' St Martin (316/336-8 November 397), was the third bishop of Tours. Feast Day (Martinmas) 11 November.
[194] From the parish church of Barton.
[195] 'The simplicity of an ancient form.'
[196] A note relating to the reader on MS.I.699 reads, '{The Reader} He hath a Little house and a Garth belonging it with a stipend of about 6li per annum, laid upon the tenements.'
[197] Richard Birkett, curate of Martindale, 1633-99; see his tombstone in Martindale Churchyard, 'He dyed on the 25th of December in the 95th year of his age anno Domini 1699.' Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662,* 2, 1232.
[198] 'Alas devotion! Alas old-fashioned faith!'

[William Nicolson's Note]

{An additional Note of Bishop Nicolson}

{for Since I can remember there was no't a Reader in any Chappel but was called Sire of old. there were …}[199]

[I.700]

for distinctions sake had Knight writ after them, which had bin superfluous if the Title of Sir ~~were~~ \ had bin / peculiar \ as it seemeth to be now / to them alone. {Here understand me, in English only; for in Latine the word Dominus being proper to a Lord Knight & Gentleman, the word Miles, or Eques, is added for distinctions sake. & to very good purpose.}

But now this Sir Richard is the only Knight-Templar, if I may so call him, that retaines the old stile; \ which / being in other places much \ laid aside and / grown out of use.

{Indowment: Richard Birket the Reader ætat. circiter 74.[200] A great benefactor.}

The ancient Stipend which belong'd to this chappel was XX nobles yearly,[201] out of which Sir Richard has thriven so well that in my Lord Bishop Ranebowes time[202] he was able and willing to give to this Chaple as an Augmentation of the Readers Sallary 100[li] ~~which is well secured~~. And hereupon he got the chappel and for the performance of parochial rights as Chrisening & Burying;[203] the mother Church still receiveing the foes as if they continued to performe them there; and for this Ease which he has procurd them, they gave \ him / allso a little smal fee (of I know not what) \ upon these occasions / besides the Vicars dues & dutyes. ~~And~~ The Chaplaine here is alwayes put in by the Viccars appointment or approbation. {And they may afford him a good reward, for while they buryed their dead at Barton, every Tenant com that would; man & wife, had 3d a piece for attending the Corps, payd in hand at the church stile: which was a great charge to the poorer sorte.}[204]



Figure 1.5.17. Martindale Chapel Plan. I.655B.

[199] This is a margin comment titled, 'An additional note by Bishop Nicolson'. Nicolson clearly intended his interpolation to extend Machell's text, which has a pencilled note below it (still in Machell's hand), which reads, 'But was called Sir – and of old [blank].' Part of Machell's text above the interpolation has been given a pricked line to show dissatisfaction with it, suggesting that Nicolson intended his interpolation to clarify Machell's statement.

[200] 'Aged about 74' when he gave the endowment. According to Birkett's will, the £100 was given by a deed dated 1682: see Richard Birkett 1699, CAC(C), PROB/1699/WX6.

[201] £6 13s 4d.

[202] Edward Rainbow: bishop of Carlisle from 1664 until his death in 1684: Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History*, 142.

[203] In 1682, Richard Birkett petitioned Bishop Rainbow for the enclosure and consecration of Martindale churchyard; in 1683, another petition requested right of burial. See CAC(C), DRC5.5, a Petition and Instrument of Consecration. The first mention of this church, which was even then an established landmark, is in a deed of gift from William de Lancaster to his half brother Roger de Lancaster of the Forest of Martindale that can be dated between 1220 and 1247: DLons.L5/1/BR/12. Box 451. See also F.W. Ragg, 'de Lancaster', *CW2,*10 (1910), 395-494, at 436-37. It has been assumed that Richard Birkett rebuilt the chapel in 1633, the year in which the Baptism Register for Martindale was also begun; but Machell writes of repair rather than rebuilding, which suggests that the chapel might have been rebuilt before Birkett's induction. There is no mention of the rebuilding in the inscription on Birkett's tomb in the graveyard; neither did Birkett mention rebuilding it when he built a wall at his own expense to enclose the Martindale churchyard before applying to the Bishop (see above) for the consecration of the churchyard and the right of burial there. Birkett highlighted the building of a wall in his petition to the Bishop, who referred to it in his reply (and had even ascertained its dimensions): CAC(C), DRC 5/5. Act Book 1682-92. If Birkett highlighted the building of the churchyard wall, how much more would he have made of rebuilding the chapel? This information owes much to the late Jane Penman's research for her book, *A History of the Martindale Churches: their Pastors and their Flocks* (forthcoming).

[204] 'Charge': the meaning here relates to importance or weight, as in 'having a charge of money about me'. *OED*.

[I.655B]

[The Chapel Reader. Narrative II.]
Martindale Chaple:[205] and old Chaple, remarkable only for the neat keeping of the ch[apel] & chapel yard the heredat[206] of which is to be given to the present Reader; whom they call Sir Richard according to the ancient Stile of the Northern Countrey, who till of late all wayes gave to their Chaplanes & Reader the Title of Sir fixed to their names. But he is now the onely Knight Templar (I may so call them) that is left in the Countrey still reteneing that Title.[207] He is so neat \ & curiouse / ~~about the chaple In & chapl yard~~, that will suffer a slate to fall downe but he putts up with his owne hands; & every Monday in the morning, he goes round ~~& round the chaple yard~~; \ the walls /~~&~~ with an Hammer in his hand & if \ he findes / a stone\ ~~be~~ / out of place or falne \ down / by accident; he mends it himself, \ which is deemd [his] own[208] in so much that the People have not been troubled with any repare. /
If a mole cast in it, he never cieses to watch and attendes till she be taken; & if his cow which grasses som times in the Chaple yard, doe dung therein, he perfectly minde to sweep it away. Hie has served the place [blank] years; and tho his salary, all things considered be by X X [blank][209] – he is growne so rich of it as to be a considerable benefactor [to] the ~~sed~~ Chaple & those that shall succeed him ~~in it;~~ \ there, / having got it consecrated for buriing &c. to with[in] a yard of the chappel walls, for the ease of the people, & left for ever 6^{li} as an augmentation of the sallary for the comfort of the succeding Readers: & the mother church is no way damaged, for the people are bound to pay their full dues for burial &c. as the[y] did.

Machell's Notes: I..655b & I.656]
{*By Mr Dobson & Tho. Atkinson his shepherd, called the prince of shepherds by Mr Lancaster of Hartsop.}
{? sayes there is gle[n] Co in the higlands}[210]
{1 koyn is most on a corner stone.}[211]

[I.704]

[The Chapel Reader. Narrative III.]
The Readers Sallary
He hath a little House by & a Garth or Yard belonging unto it; & 4 dayes mowing which is meeted out – that is to say
In Corneholme 1.[212]
In Wholl Acre 1.
In the Rigg 1.
In Hall-How 1. {ergo an Hall}![213]
All which, with a Rentcharge of eighteen pence got \ of / every Tenement of 10^{sh} Rent; & so proportionably out of other Houses, amountes to XX nobles per Annum.[214]

[I.710]

The Descent of the Manner[215]
This Martindale was of late years in the Hands of Sir Thomas Sandford of Howgil, who had a lease of it from [blank]

[I.671B]

!!! Martindale – in 4 quarters[216]

---

[205] Below the heading is a struck-through plan of Martindale chapel.
[206] 'Heredat', an abbreviated form of 'hereditat': 'he inherits'; in this case, the bishop's grant to Birkett to minister at the chapel.
[207] Knights Templar: see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore, I.482-83, I.485.
[208] Problematical interlineation here makes 'deemd' and 'own' unsafe as transcriptions.
[209] See Narrative III: 20 Nobles.
[210] Margin near top LH: very damaged.
[211] Written in the top RH margin.
[212] 1 day.
[213] The potential site of a manor house.
[214] Noble: An English gold coin first minted by Edward III, usually valued at 6s. 8d. (half a mark). *OED*.
[215] A crossed-through note (MS.I.715A) gives, '~~Martindale – query if a manner. The Earle of Sussex~~'
[216] MS.I.671B. Rough notes here are as follows: '1. Howgrane where the chaple at the foot of which by Ulswater Side is an Hamlet of about 9 or 10 famili[e]s called in Speed *Cronicle* the City of Sandwike. With the 2nd 4^{r}. 3. At a Ground,

[I.700]

Martindale is divided into 4 Quarters:

1. Howgrane, in which {the Chappel standeth and wherein Dr Dawes was borne, at a little Tenement called Maud-Slack \ West a Capella / now sold to the Lancasters: He was wontt in his childe hood, to goe unto the hill against which his \ house / standeth & cast ~~little~~ stones downe the chimney into the pot, with several other roguesh tricks; an unhappy boy – but made a good man.[217] {¾ N.W.}
And [Howgrane] hat[h] [blank] families in it, most of them being of the same Tenure with the Tenants of Barton. But the purchase was hard on their sides because before that they payed but only a 2d fine within the forrest & a 4 penny fine in all other parts of the manner; & yet the purchase was at 30 years rent.[218]

{2. Sandwike, at the foote of Howgrane, and by Ulswaterside \ N.W. a Capella ¾; / an Hamlet consisting of about X families, which they will needs say is calld in Speeds *Cron*, the City of Sandwike; but, there is no place here for a City to stand on.

{3. The 3rd is a Grane[219] which runs South out of Sandwike & is called Bowerdale[220] from at west ½ mile.}

[I.699]

4. The fowerth is Fusedale \ N. a Capella 1 mile / which runns up Southwards by Fusedale-beck to the spring-head S.E. from the Chapel 1 mile ½.

[1.700]

I cannot finde any vestigia of a manner house; \ unless Hall-how may direct me to one at the Dale head / the keeper house ~~forresters~~ being the best, which doth belong to the Earle of Sussex. But there were Gentlemen of the name of Martindale to whom this Coate of Armes did belong[221] \ at Fig. 1. / ~~But the c~~ as likewise of the name of Browne as by this Coate \ at Figure 2. / & the names stil remane &c.[222] But the Chief Estate which I can finde did belong to the~~m~~ \ Brownes / here, in this Place. A Tenement of about 10li per Annum called Thrang-Cragg S.W. from the Chapel ¼ of a mile. But they were forresters also & ergo possibly might be Gentlemen, transplanted hither upon that occasion from som other place. Perhaps from Matterdale, for to them this Coat of Arms did belong.[223]

S. out of Sandwik called Bowerdale strike S. wardes up to […] 4. Fusedale which ~~joynes~~ runns \ up / by Fusedale Beck S. which springs […] ~~Swarth beck~~. E. a Capella […].' I.699-700 contains the finished version.

[217] MS I.699 reiterates: '1. – made a Good man.'

[218] MS: 'But the purchase was hard on their sides ~~as~~ because, \ before that / they payed but \ only / a 2d fine within the forrest, & a 4 penny fine in \ all other / parts of the manor ~~without it~~; & yet the~~y~~ ~~payd~~\urchase was at / 30 y rent.'

[219] Grane: 'An offshoot, branch; an arm (of a cross)': *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.

[220] Boredale.

[221] The Martindale arms are quartered by Musgrave on a shield carved above the entrance to Johnby Hall, dated 1583, with the names William Musgrave and (his wife) Isabel Martendal. See *CFH*, 222.

[222] These figures are somewhat obscured by the binding; see below.

[223] Christopher Browne of Matterdale was buried there in 1677. His arms, Argent three bars Gules over all a bend Azure, see *CFH*, 42. Machell mentions James Browne of Martindale: a captain in Oliver Cromwell's army (I.630, Brougham). This family's part in the Civil War is described in gossipy terms by James Clarke in *A Survey of the Lakes of Cumberland, Westmorland, and Lancashire* (Penrith, 1787), 36-37: 'At How-Town was born James Brown, who, being obliged to fly his country for deer stealing, entered the army under Cromwell, and was by him soon advanced to the rank of captain: He made himself very acceptable to the Usurper, by taking prisoner Sir Timothy Featherstonhaugh at the battle of Worcester. The same Brown had a brother named Richard, whose son James likewise served under Cromwell. Richard, however, being loyal, that he might prevent any others of his sons from entering the service of the parliament, sold How-Town, and purchased a customary tenement at Knott, in the manor of Water-Millock.' The book is described as mixture 'of hearsay and legend … allowing Clarke to expound his often-fanciful theories on their authenticity and their origins.' See https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/sites/default/files/westmorland_case_study.pdf, Appendix 1B. If there were two Roundhead family members named James Browne, the family position of the James Browne under discussion on I.630 (Brougham) is not made clear.



Figure 1.5.18. Coats of Arms: Martindale family and Browne of Matterdale. Margin of I.700.

[Machell's Notes: I.700

{Note. 6 bridges repared by themselves.}

[I.654A]

[Martindale Forest]

In the forrest of Martindale there are Tenants bound to assist the Lord in hunting & turne the read Deere on the Tops of the mountains into the forests; whom they call strones,[224] & have for their paines xiii[d] every iiij in drinke &c.[225] They appear upon summons; & if they doe not, they are fineable for it at the Court Baron.

[I.698]

{The Tenants payed a rent of 2s per annum for meal to feed their Lords dogs wherewith they hunted & killed their marts.}

[I.699]

The forrest is bounded about with walls; and is well replennished with ~~a~~ large ~~sort of~~ Read-dear, as also with Goates; & there are ~~also~~ in it Brocks, Martes, & Wildecats, which yield Sport to the Hunters; but none to the Shepherds.

There is a place in the midle Bannerdale called Lords Seat (a chair of stone on the Top an Hill) S. by West 2 miles from the Chappel. And hear they say the Lords usd to sitt & see their greyhounds course the read Deere.

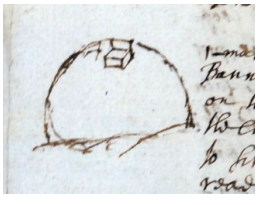


Figure 1.5.19. Lord's Seat, Bannerdale. I.699.

[224] Strones: Nicolson and Burn and the *OED* derive the meaning of this word entirely from Machell; i.e. 'In Martindale Forest, Westmorland, one of the tenants bound to assist the lord in hunting and turning back deer to the forest'. *OED*, and see *N&BI* (410-11), which quotes Machell almost verbatim. This meaning might have sprung from its Scottish form: 'a strone (also stron) is a headland or promontory, especially one that ends a range or ridge of hills, a snub of land'; as in, 'Bold Tushilaw, o'er strone and steep, Pursues the roe and dusky deer.' *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.

[225] The numbers appear to be XIII, and iiij (13 and 4), but in *N&BI* the numbers given are 8 and 4. See *N&BI,* 411. Machell's representation of 'X 'resembles 'V'; perhaps he made a hurried correction.

[I.704]

The Tenants of Martindale tho Customary were at a fine certaine before their purchase.[226] For those in the forrest were only lyable to a Two penny fine – i.e. for every penny \ rent / they payed 2d, & those which were out of the precincts of it payed a fowerpenny fine And they \ generally / payed ~~moreover~~ a certain rent of 2s per Annum which was called meal silver, for feeding the Dogs which their Lords usd to keep to kill their marts withal.

[I.671B]

[**Martindale: Rarities in Nature**]

[1. The Great Thunder Shower]

The great Thunder Shower 2 or 3 Briggs & a Barne […][227] foundation & all at Sandwike*.[228]
{This till of late (& all Sussex's Estate puto} was in the Crown. i. Sir Thom. Sandford of Howgill Castle had a Lease for Lives of it, jurae uxoris.[229]

[I.699]

*Yet this ~~wee must grant~~ \ must be granted – / That it is no so great as it has bin formerly, for the great Thunder Shower in [Sandwick] ~~besides 2 or 3 bridges~~ demolished a Barne 12 yardes long which stood in this place, & swept away the very foundation of it with 2 or 3 Bridges of Considerable Strength north from hence about ½ a mile.

{At Hellin-Hag by the side Ulswater is an hollow place in the rock like a pott, which (for the most part) hath water in it.[230] It is about a yard in diameter, and as much in depth↓; at the head of which[231] springs Bowerdale Beck W. from the Chappel about a mile.}

[2. Juniper]

On the Top of Pless Fell[232] 3 miles West from the Chaple & said to be in the Libertyes of Martindale, Juniper groweth – And underneath it on Patterdaleside are IX or X familyes, arbitrary Tenants to the E. of Sussex – q[uery] which chaple they use to Bury at &c.

[I.704]

[3. Tarns and wild fowl]

In Martindale there are diverse Tarnes: as Angle Tarne, where Gravyes,[233] Sheldrakes and Seamaws[234] breed; ~~upon whose young ones~~ the Eagles in sommer do frequently prey \ upon the young Seamaws / haveing little or no regard to the old ones. {The like in Ulswater.} Another Tarne on the Top of \ Great / Dod‡ which hath no fish in it but is a refreshment to the wild beasts & is a refuge for wild foole.
There is also great store of Green and Gray plovers & mooregame in it:[235] & ~~also~~ Fieldfairs at the time of the year. But there is scarce a Tree to be seen or heard of in it, unless it be a little Shrub Ewe which growes here

---

[226] 'Before their purchase of the freehold.'
[227] Several words here are obscured by the binding, but note the information on I.699.
[228] The two asterisks in these passeages were placed by Machell to join information placed on two separate pages, each relating to the effects of the thunder-storm at Sandwick.
[229] 'In the right of his wife.'
[230] Kailpot Crags?
[231] At the head of Boredale.
[232] Place Fell.
[233] Discussion of birds at Windermere in *N&B1* (185), is as follows: 'Waterfowl in great plenty resort to this lake, especially in winter, such as Wild Swans, Wild Geese, Duck, Mallard, Teal, Widgeons, Didappers, Gravyes (which are larger than ducks, and build in hollow trees)...' This text has been taken from Machell, II.340. Regarding 'gravy', the following quotation is helpful: 'The Goosander is still called the ' Gravel-duck ' ('or gravy'…) on the shores of the English Solway. I believe that the name refers to the fact that this species often rests on scars of gravel in the bed of the estuary when the tide is out. It may include some further reference to the species obtaining trout in well-shingled pools in preference to a muddy bottom. At all events the Goosander is often called a Gravel-duck.' See H.A. Macpherson, *A Vertebrate Fauna of Lakeland: including Cumberland and Westmorland with Lancashire North of the Sands* (Edinburgh, 1892), 306.
[234] 'Seamew'. In the 17th century: 'sea-maw'. *OED*.
[235] In Martindale.

and there; & Juniper on the Top of Pless-fell W. from the Chappel 1 mile and ½; & som little plantations \ of ashes (or sicamoore trees) / about their dwellings.

{Quarries of Slate}
There is in Pless Fell \ al[ia]s Place Fell / W. from the Chappel about 2 miles ~~indifferent blew slate~~ indifferent good Slate of black blewrish colour ~~which by reason of Ulswater~~ \ by the side of Ulswater which by reason thereof / may be easily brought \ down / into the Countrey. The like ~~is also~~ at Brockcrag; but not so good neither so accessable (for the Countrey), because they Ly farther of from Ulswater \ Sc. a 2 mile and of / ~~are nearer the Chaple side being s.w. from it about 1 mile~~ \ S.W. from the chappel / yet may the[y] be of good use to the neighbourhood.

[I.699]

And at Banerdale within this forrest S.W. from the chappel 1 mile & ½, is a mine of [blank] discovered 9 inch thick; & I my selfe saw in Creüka-beck Wath in the way to Hartsop a veine of Lead-Spar, but in what Lordship I have not yet learned†.

[Machell's Notes I.699 & I.704]

[I.699]
†{? Q[uery] where it stands: what part}
[I.704]
‡{Many round topd fells of that name which are craggy, not picked like others: ergo Explane it.}

[I.706]

Patterdale {Vallis Sancti Patricij}

[Patterdale Chapel]

{St Patric's Well in the Demaine of Pat.}
The manner of Patterdale, Taketh Its name from the Chaple there, ~~dedicated~~ at the High end of Ulswater S.W. from the Church about 8 miles; which I take to be dedicated to St Patrick;[236] and therefore the Rather because There is (in the Highway to Penrith N. from the Chaple about 2 Bow Shots, and halfe as much from Patterdale Hall) a Curiouse Spring Covered ~~over~~ with a broad blew-Slate, and calld by the name of St Patrick's Well.

{Patterdale Chapel description}
This chappel being remote from the church; the weather sometimes very Tempestuous {& water unpassable at P[atterdale] S[pring]} \ may seem to have had Parochial rights from the very beginning. It hath little more of Elegance in it[237] than Martindale Chappel, save only \ a / porch ~~and a little~~ on the S. Side of it, & a little ~~outshut~~ quier \ shuttinge out / on the north ~~side of it~~; which apperteineth to Patterdale Hall and may seeme to bespeake the old proprietors \ possessors of that estate / if not founders \ of; / yet at the least the chiefe benefactours to \ this / ancient fabric.

{The Ew. Tree}
The Antiquity of which may in som part appear from an old Ewe-Tree (now much in decay) whose body extendeth almost to 4 fathem, & whose branches reacheth, in the diameter [blank]

[236] According to T.H.B. Graham and W.G. Collingwood, it is doubtful whether St Patrick was the true patron of some dedications in Carlisle diocese. Patterdale was more probably the 'dale of [a man named] Patrick [or Patraic]' [possibly of 10th century Norse-Irish descent], whence the dedication of the chapel and well. The dedication has also been attributed to St Swithun. T.H.B. Graham and W.G. Collingwood, 'Patron Saints of the Diocese of Carlisle', *CW2*, 25 (1925), 1-27 at 12, 15.
[237] MS: '{But hath little more in it} It hath little more of Elegance In It…'

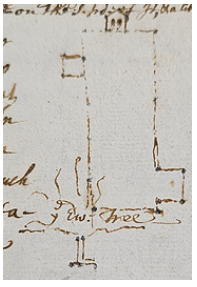


Figure 1.5.20. Sketch of Patterdale Chapel and yew tree. I.706.

{Cross}
But there is nothing else of Remarqe \ in or / about it save onely the fragments of an old cross, curiously-carved.

[I.725C]



Figure 1.5.21. Patterdale Chapel Plan. I.725C.

[Body of the chapel measures] 7 [paces N. to S.] 18 [E. to W.] 5.
[In the quire] Patterdale Hall [seats].
A Beam end with these figures, 1663. There has bin a Beautiful Cross in this place; as appears by a piece[238] which is neatly carved yet standing up; and another part of it lying in the Chaple.
Martindale chaple is yett a very ancient building as appears by an Ewe Tree at the west end of it now much in decay, whose body is near upon 4 fathom \ about. / And the Branches extend to 22 passes; which will make the Diameter of at lest 66 (a vast circumference for a Tree to spread) which stands at the S.E. corner of it.

{The Endowment}
What the ancient endowment of this chapel was, I can not learn; but it hath (now) belonging unto it a Piece of Glebe \ land / with ~~the~~ \ a / Third part of the Wool & Lamb & Easter booke in Patterdale onely, amounting in all to about 18^{li} per annum, for which he payes as an acknowledgement (and to Indemnify the mother church) 4^{li} per annum to the Vicar of Barton for the Time being; who is oblieged to preach at this chappel 4 Times a year. And they have a Sallary of 5^{li} per annum \ besides quarteridge[239] / payd by the neighbourhood out of a School Stock ~~besides quarteridge~~ to any one who shal be imploy'd as a School-master \ there; / which the reader also injoyeth \ himself, according to Canon[240] as an augmentation of his S[alary] / if he be in health & willing to Teach*.

[Machell's Notes: I.706]
About 60 families of which 3 are free but under rate. This must be in the whole.}
*{Richard Grisdale now master, the reader being sick.}[241]

[238] MS: 'Pieces'.
[239] Quarterage: payment made quarterly: a contribution, tax, or other charge paid by a person every quarter. *OED*.
[240] 'According to Canon Law': the 151 canons of the Church of England, 1604-1606. See https://www.anglican.net/doctrines/1604-canon-law/
[241] In the Commonwealth Survey of 1657, Peter Birkett, ordained in 1623, is listed as the reader at Patterdale; he held the living until his death in 1671/2. Nightingale suggests that he might have been related to Martindale's Richard Birkett, who is listed as reader at Patterdale in 1691. See Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1230; CCED.

[**Manor of Patterdale**]

[I.708]

There are 2 Manners within the precinct of the Chaple: Sc. - 1. Patterdale 2. Hartsop.

[Wild Cats]
In this manner are Great Store of wilde catts; almost of the bigness & colour of a fox but Branded ~~and stroked over with~~ here and there with Blak Strokes a thwart their Bodyes; for the Skin's of which if kild in Season; i.e. they have xii[d] a piece: and as much for their heads, which is payd by the Churchwardens.

[I.707]

It seems the Hunting of the wilde cat was looked upon in former ages as a noble Sporte; for John the Brother of William Lord Ros* who was Constituted by King Edward 3. in the 10[th] his Reigne [1336-1337], Admirall of the Seas from the River Thames Northwards, amongst other Libertyes Granted unto by the said King – had that of Hunting the Fox, Woofe, Hare & Cat through out the Kings Forrest of Northamptonshire†.[242]

[Machell's Notes: I.707]

*(Baron of Hamlake – T.M. puto)[243]
†Note: ergo – wolves then – No wonder wee have \ so many / places called from Cats.

[I.708]

[Martes][244]
They have also in their craggy mountaines great store of Martes which are Excellent furr; (also Badgers and Foxes more than enough){Not to mention foxes}[245] al these Creatures being fatall enemyes to their Ews and Lambs – And it is believed that they \ have / had formerly wilde Bores in this Dale and partes adjacent, from the names of ~~several~~ places taken from Swine: as Grisedale & Stibarrow*, the latter of which is a monstrous strong Rock in this Lordship on the West Side of Ulswater; & in the way to Barton & Penrith – where there is a Strait passage about 2 yards broad, haveing an High hanging-rock on the one side, which threatens passengers to fall upon them \ but above all a Lowther or / Lancaster, if you give credit to Gillimans prophecy.[246] & on the other a deep & steep precipice into Ulswater, which plums in that place (as the people tell me) ful 60 yards. Here a few men may defend the passage against a great army; which the neighbourhood did in 48 {in the late Civil} – for they Mortessed \ boared/ a hole through a \ an oake / tree which stood upon the Brinke of the ~~Uls~~water, & drive a Bar through it into the Rock on the other side.[247] & so posted themselves that they diverted the who[le] Scottish Army from coming amongst them, and turned them off into Bampton Parish where they had a sore Skirmish as shal be declared in due time & place.

And here there hapned 2 very strange Accidents. one of which ~~was~~ \ is / that a Scotch pedler \ 8 / year agoe in the Sommer time {now 1689. St James};[248] he, resting himselfe with his pack upon his Shoulders, and lying & lokeing upon the fish which were sporting (see p.712)[249]

[Machell's Notes: I.708]

*{Stybarrow.}

[I.712]

themselves in the water below; haveing reached too far, was through the weight of his pack behinde him cast down headlong into the \ deep / water, & yet scap'd with life.

---

[242] MS following, in pencil and scored through: '~~But Gillimans prophecy as they will tell you [illeg.] above all a Lowther & Lancaster if that will give credit to Gillimans prophecy~~.' I.708 contains the corrected text.
[243] 'Perhaps. [Signed by] Thomas Machell.'
[244] See the English Glossary.
[245] This comment is almost certainly in William Nicolson's hand.
[246] See I.340 [Appleby] 'Gillimans wife, aliis Mother Shipton, as has bin said, deliverd this rime when she passed over that beck.'
[247] They bored a hole through an oak tree on one side of the road, and through it they drove a [metal] bar into the rock opposite.
[248] St James's Day: 25 July.
[249] The 'ing' ending and bracketed instruction are written in a hand resembling William Nicolson's. Further instruction (II.712) urges the reader to '{Turn back to p.708.}' These pages are brought together in this edition.

The other was in the Late Sharp Winter that one John Dobson (son of James Dobson of Wethermelock), who for that reason has \ caused the Countrey to / repare the way since) fell in \ (~~here~~) / on horse back; \ And whilst /a neighbour (who was there with him & saw him sinke) was lamenting the loss, saying 'alas I shal never see him more!' he popt up \ agane / by the side of the Rock; and getting \ hold / of som shrubs that grew there, he unexpectedly answer'd him ~~agane~~; \ thence / 'yes, thou may com to see mee agane, but will never see my horse agane.' Yet the \ Horse also, / after he came from the bottom \ of the water, / swam to a shallow part of the shore, & so (with Gods help) they were both preserved*.[250]

{Ulswater: Ile of Cherry Holm}
~~And~~ Som part of this water \ (Sc. the W. Side) is said to be / also in the Manor of Patterdale, together with an Ile called Cherry Holme near the head of it; which was so named from a Cherry Tree (in the memory of man) growing therein; being a place of deligh[t] & pleasure, to which they goe with their fishing Boates. And here, at the very head of the Lake; where the River I, comes into the Mote, (whence I take it, the \ stream / below which Isues out ~~of it~~ \ at the foote of Ulswater / is called Imote) are taken at Michaelmas (but out of season) great store of noble & prodigiouse Troutes called Gray-Troutes, as read and as large as an ordnary Salmon: nay som has bin taken a full yard long and as much in circumference†, which tho they swim all over the water, yet I refer them to this place especially, because they are mostly taken here. I have also seen & eaten of them.

[Machell's Notes: I.712]

*From his fathers and his own mouth.
†Mr John Mounsey who tooke them.

[I.714]

{**Patterdale Hall***}

{And hardby this place on the West Side of the abode a Bowshot here of[f] ~~the poole~~ Ulswater and about a bowshot}[251] North from the Chappel, yet a little inclineing to the west, stands Patterdale-Hall, & fronteth towards it. A pretty tite house, \ considering these partes / with a Court & Orchard; and little Terras walke at the doer where you enter the House, ascending to it by 5 or 6 steps. On the West Side of it is nothing \ else / but vast ~~great~~ Rocks & Mountaine, 2 of the Greatest in the North of England (Crosfell & Skidda only excepted) being in this manner†. But those that are adjoyneing this House (especially that \ near / Mosedale beck which lookes like a delicate piece of Arras,[252] & has a walke in the midle of it) – are prettily covered over with wood, in which amongst other sortes of Birds, the Sparrow-hawke delighteth ~~for~~ to bread \ dwell build;[253] / But the Opposit Side is a verry craggy and amazeing prospect; & yet even there (i.e. upon Pless-fell) doth your Juniper grow.

But the principal things I thought worth my notice at Patterdale-Hall were 2 Escutchions over the doer in the 2 Angles of the Lintal Stone – And a pretty rustick sort of Pavement in the Hall floore, made of the Sherds and fragments of Slates pitched on Edge; which, as I doe not dislike it within-doors, for a common roome; so I highly commend It for an Outer court; to those that shal have occasion to use It‡.[254]

[250] MS: '& so (with Gods help) they ~~both escaped~~ \ were both / ~~saved.~~ (b) preserved. {~~Propheey~~}.'
[251] Represented in the MS by a small sketch of a bow.
[252] 'Arras': a rich tapestry fabric originating in Artois, France, in which figures and scenes are woven in colours; also, cloth of arras. *OED*.
[253] Three alternatives are given here.
[254] MS.I.715A gives a scored-through draft of this paragraph, but with a different emphasis. Viz. 'But the principal things I though[t] worth my notice at Patterdale Hall, was 2 Escutchons over the doer in the 2 Angles of the Lintal Stone, and a pretty rustic sort of pavement in the Hall floore, made of the Sherds & fragments of Slates, pitched downe or ad vale by Edge, which looke well here but would better becom an outer Court.' See the Figure on I.715B, below.



Figure 1.5.22. Two escutcheons on the lintel over the door at Patterdale Hall. I.714.

[Mounsey Family]
A great part of this Hall was \ of / or Beautified by Mr John Mou[n]sey in 1677,[255] whom they commonly call King a Patter dale, being \ the most jolly / a free princely man in this part of the Countrey, who lives as it were in another world, and hath no man near him greater than himselfe.

[Machell's Notes: I.714]
*Bring in Sparrow Hawkes when you speake of the wood about the House – & there mention also the bonny Rock with a walk about the midle of it.[256]
†{Catstee-Cam; Elvel–in & Edward Dove.}
‡{George Scot & John Robinson of Troutbeck in the Barony of Kendall did the worke for 6d or 8d a day.}
{Were there viii, ix or x families.}

[I.715A]

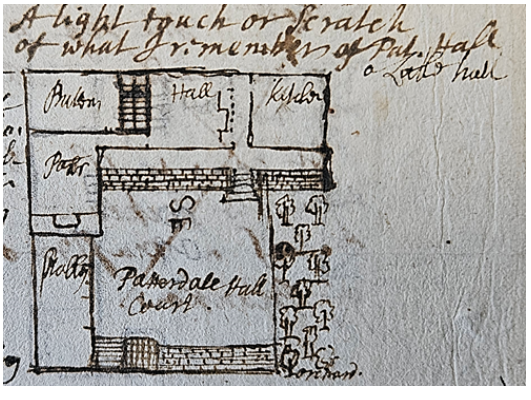


Figure 1.5.23. 'A light touch or scratch of what I remember of Patterdale Hall: a Little hall'. I.715A.

[Mounsey Descent]

1. Thomas Heir of Crosdormont now sold. 2. George Mousey of ~~Crosdormont~~ = Joan Collin of Tongham near Gilford in Surrey
a Tenant Right Stuart at Graystock to Ann Countis of Arundel
|
Cudbert now of Stainton; Franc; Thom; Will; George; John King in Patterdale = Dorathy Harrison of Glencoyne
|
1. John, an attorney; 2. George; 3. William; 4. Thomas; 5. Jonathan; Mary = John Watson of Grised[ale]; Cath. = Jo. Harrison of Bleawth; Joan mar. to Jo. Threlkeld of Nelhouse in Pat.; Dor[athy]

[255] For more on John Mounsey's inheritance, see I.176, below. See also, W.P. Morris, *Records of Patterdale, Historical and Descriptive* (Kendal, 1903).
[256] A note, placed originally on MS.I.713.

[I.715B]



Figure 1.5.24. Patterdale Hall Floor slates. 'These do very well – for an Hall flooer, But would be better for a Co[urt]' I.715B.[257]

[I.716]

The Pedegree of the Mou[n]seys of Patterdale is as followeth. – begineth at the*.

1. Thomas Mousey heir of Trostermont who sold it away			2. George Mounsey Stuart at Graystocke to the Countess of Arundell		=	Joan Collin of Tengham near Gilford in Surrey				
				I						
6. Cuthbert now of Stainton	5. Francis	4. Thomas	3. William	2. George	*1. John Mousey, now living aet 60	=	Dorothy Harrison of Glenkëun			
	5. Jonathan	4. Thomas	3. William	2. George	1. John an Attorney at Penrith		Mary = to Wilson of Grisedal	Katherine = to Harrison of Bleawth	Joan = to Threlkeld of Nelhouse	Dor[othy]

{Glen ridden falsely writt in the map: Glenk roden}
In the manner of Patterdale N. from the Hall about [blank] is a little Gill called Glen ridden from the Scottish word glen, which signifies \ a Gill or Hollow, / and Ridden – the name of the River which rises at Catstee and runns thence Eastwards with a swift & quick stream into Ulswater. It hath som wood growing about it & amongst the rest som Shrubs of Ewes*; and [though] the place be but of smal compass it conteineth in it about 20 families, one of which is a freehold, Sc. Cuthbert Mou[n]sey. The rest are customary, but ~~all at fine certaine~~ purchased to a fowerpenny fine† of Mr Richard Threlkeld of Patterdale & Thomas his son; excepting only 5 or 6 \ of them / who still remane arbitrary ~~to Mr Mousey~~.[258]

These and the rest of Tenants [are] in the manner of Patterdale & doe all Suit & Service at Patterdale Hall to Mr John Mou[n]sey the present Lord, whom wee may call \ properly enough / Johanes de Montibus from the place he lives in (Except for VIII or IX on the East side of Ulswater;[259] 5 which \ do / belong to my Lord of Sussex \ and / are perhaps in \ verge of / Patterdale, ~~together with those in Grisdale but not in the manner~~ but not strictly now in the manner because they do Suit {& Service at Pooley; for the division betwixt this & Martindale is upon Plass-fel as heaven water deales; so that these Tenants are in Patterdale manner but answer for themselves at the manner of Barton, as being Tenants to my Lord of Sussex.)}[260]
The Estate of [John Mounsey's] Ancestours was at Tristermont in the Lordship of Barton, which was sold by his unkle Thomas Mounsey, brother to [Blank]{who was the heir of it;[261] And George the 2nd Brother of

[257] Machell would have preferred to see the tiles in an outer court: see I.714 and I.715A.
[258] 'Arbitrary': see the English Glossary.
[259] MS: '(~~for these~~ \ for / VIII or IX on the East side of Ulswater.'
[260] Because it moves to and fro between body text and margin, and has several interlineations and crossings through, the narrative here has been rearranged to make best sense of the material.
[261] MS: 'The ~~Paternal~~ Estate \ of his Ancestoars / ~~which he was borne to~~, was \ at / Tristermont in the Lordship of Barton \ which was sold by his unkle Thomas Mousey ~~the elder~~ brother to {who was the heir of it.'

Thomas, being Steward at Graystock \ to Ann Countess of Arundell, / left so much behinde him when he dyed, that Joan his widdow purchased this Lordship of Patterdale for John her son in his minority of one Mr Thomas Threlkeld, Lord of Patterdale, in whose name & Family it had continued (as is believed) many hundreds of years;[262] yet I finde no Coat of Armes in the Hall or Chappel of Patterdale relateing to them. But they may seem to be descended of the Threlkelds of Yanewath.[263]

[Machell's Notes: I.716]

*{Query of M[ano]r. How it stands – & if ruf Rock […]}[264]
†{how – 4[d] or?}
{In Kiple-Cove, Read-Tarne & Glenridden: only Trouts}
{William de Lanc[aster] de Kendal gave Patterdale to Roger de Lancaster and Margaret de Ross gave him Ridal. temp. Ed. 1. out of Fleming Pedegree in Dugdale.}

[I.717]

{Glenkeun}
Near to Glenridden V[ale] lyeth Glen keun a little further to the North; as much as to say a glen in a corner, Keun, Coyn or Corner being one & the same. There is a Beck ~~in the head of this~~ call'd by this name, which springs at the very head of this dale, & runneth thence Eastwards into Ulswater (and this is 2 miles N. from the chappel) att the foote of which are 2 or 3 familyes which live in Westmorland i.e. on this Side the River, \ Glenkeun which parteth the Countyes / & so pay all dues and dutyes to Westmorland; yet doe they Suit and Service to Graystock, haveing lands on both sides; for which they pay an Arbitrary fine (& the best good they have in the name of an Heriot) \ to Graystock Castle. / ~~at the times accustomed~~ Yet for their houses & Lands on this Side, they being adjoyneing to the manner of Patterdale may ~~be supposed to have bin~~ seam to have bin bought-of from thence; and by the vicinity of their other Lands annexed to Graystock, which now through Custom is rendered [blank].[265]

[I.718]

Grisedale in Paterdale
Near Patterdale Chappel, at the W. end of it lyeth a little hollow or Gill, which they call Grisedale which (as has bin said) is calld in the Court[266] by Name of a Forrest; thoug[h] a very smal one, for there are but 9 or 10 familyes in it, of the same Tenure with the rest of the Tenants which belong to Barton: {& may seem to be parcel of the manner of Patterdale.} The word Grice or Grise is yet in use amongst northern People to signify swine; & it may well seem to have taken its name from being frequented with the wilde Boares, which are Beasts of the Forrest: {& perhaps there have bin deer \ also / for there is a place in it calld Glemara Park.}

[**Eagles**]

{Of Eagle Crag in Patterdale}
In the very head of this dale is a Rocky mountaine which they call Eagle-Crag because the Eagles are wont to nest; near unto which there is a lead mine.
About the year 1679, one Christopher Dawes, 24 years of age, spying an Eagle in the bottom of this Dale which was feeding on a sheep; and either for want of aer to waft her, or by haveing filld her belly too full, was not able to rise: he struck freely at her with his fell-staff {a sort of pike staff 2 yards long, with a pike of Iron in the End to stick in the ground & secure you from falling when you go up or down a mountain} & broake her wing; upon which she betooke herselfe \ for shelter / to a great stone, and thence made her Salleys as she saw occasion, wounding him in the leggs with her Tallons, & beating him briskely with her

[262] See *CFH*, 234.
[263] MS: 'that Joan his widdow purchased this Lordship for John her son in his minority, of one Mr} ~~But in his minority his mother Jane Mounsey purchased for him this~~ Lordship of Patterdale: of one Mr \ Thomas / Threlkeld \ Lord of Patterdale / in whose name & Family It had continued (as is believed) many hundreds of years; yet I finde no Coat of Armes in the Hall or Chappel, \ of Patterdale / relateing to them ~~or Any other family that livd in these partes~~.' William Threlkeld's marriage to Isabel Hastings brought estates at Yanwath, Crosby Ravensworth, Tebay and Roundthwaite into the family. In 1341, William Threlkeld bore … a maunch … in chief six annulets. In 1344 he sealed a charter with a shield displaying … three maunches (CAC(C)/ DLons/Early Deeds/T22). When sheriff of Cumberland, William's Arms were given as Ermine a maunch Gules. See *CFH*, 339.
[264] Four words follow, but the ink is too faint to allow their accurate transcription.
[265] The text stops abruptly here; no text on surrounding pages continues it.
[266] Court Rolls.

wings. But at last when he had no other shifts,[267] he fel down upon her with his whol body; & tooke her alive.

{Deepdale}
And higher up; Sc. 1 mile S. from the chappel is a place called Deepdale, from the lowness of the scituation, in which are 10 families of Arbitrary Tenants, who also pay their best beastes as an Heriot; & though they be not within the manor, yet they hold of the Lord of Graystock in the County of Cumberland. & 2 miles further S. \ from hence / in an huge Rock which is called Ling-Cove, & stands west from Hartsop about a mile, are large Eagles bred. This place is thought to have bin formerly a manner of itselfe; for there is a Demane, a place call'd the Parke, and another place in it call'd the Hall \ Green / where it is supposed the mannerhouse stood, \ which is / S. from the chaple about 1 mile.

{Of taking another eagle, 1669}[268]
In 1669, one William Thomas of Deepdale Bridge End, being but a youth of 17 years old, Encountor an Eagle on the like occasion, but shee it seemeth was not able to flye by reason her feathers were moulted[269] & spent by {hatching: see p.724.}[270]

[I.724]

{See above p.718; account of taking an Eagle)[271]
hatching her Young ones, for it was about midsomer tide. He chased her several times round a stone; and at last tooke her by falling upon her, but not without som loss of blood.

[I.718]

Mr Mounsey, to whom she was brought alive; & who kept her a week and kild her afterwards by running a penknife into her heart; and gave the Coat of her to Thomas Smyth a Newcastle merchant, for 3^{lb} of Tobacco.

[I.724A]



Figure 1.5.25. An eagle displayed: inked on the left, pencilled on the right. I.724A.[272]

[267] 'Shift': available means of effecting an end. Often in phrase, (to have) no other shift. *OED*.
[268] This heading is written in another hand.
[269] MS: 'mouted'.
[270] The margin heading and note are in another hand (probably William Nicolson's), but the narrative throughout is in Machell's hand.
[271] Written in two different hands.
[272] The eagle 'displayed' is reminiscent of medieval heraldic eagles, well known to Machell.

A sort \ of / eagle called an Iron \ or Earn or Erne[273] / here; in Scotland a Naron, being of a Blackish brown Colour.[274] From the point of one wing to the other – 6 foot 4 inches. From the End of the Becke to the point of the Tale, 3 foot 4 inches.[275]
~~I know not that this belongs to p.723~~.[276]

Hartsop

[I.655b]

[Machell's Initial Notes]
The Hall under a High Banke of wood. Hartsop Wood.
~~Low~~ Nether Hartsop Beck ½ a mile N.E. is the chief hed of Emot & springs ~~as I~~ near Jackbrige in this Lordship. No brig now. Bruder Water 4 miles every way.
Hartsop. A Mart ciesed a wether on the Top of Lingy-Crag\ adjoyning/ an high mou[n]tane, which sat upon his neck, till the wether ran down to Bro\w/n heath in the bottom\ or field/ and there killd him – being ½ a mile.

[I.720]

{In Hartsop – about XXIX freeholds lately purchased of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Baronet.[277] & about XI or XII Customary Tenants who pay fine Arbitrary, and for their Heriots the best Sheep they have; as the other did before their purchase; inf. Mr Dobson. Sure he means of all that appear at H[artsop]}
{?}[278]

Manor of Hartsop
In the head of this Dale lyes the manner of Hartsop, which is divided into Nether Hartsop, consisting of about 15[279] familys (near unto which, up in the mountaine at a place calld Jack-Bridge, \ where there is no Bridge now / springs the Chief and Principal head of Ulswater); & Upper Hartsop which is an Hamlet of about 5 families at the South Side, but East Side of Broader-Water,[280] which is a Lake about a quarter of a mile in diameter, & as long as broad, spring at [blank], and thence coming downe by Hartsop Hall in a smal rill which because in this place it extendeth it selfe into a large compass \ Sc. 1 quarter every way / is call'd Broader Water, wherein are Gray-trouts†, Chars &c. as you have in Ulswater, into which (haveing joyned with the Rill that comes ~~down~~ from Nether Hartsop a little below the Village or Town and takeing in several other Becks or Brookes)[281] it runns \ near Patterdale chaple / 2 miles below; and in this course twixt the head of Hartsop & the head of Ulswater, 5 stroane[282] bridges were driven down by the thunder shower.}

{Hartsop hall, a little black ruinous house} [Narrative 1.]
Upon this lake is kept a fishing boate both for profit & pleasure; which belongeth the farmers of Hartsop Hall, which is the \ manor house of this Lordship. / It is a little low ~~dwelling house~~ \ blackish building on the W. Side of the Head of Broader Water, S. from the chaple about 2 miles and \ S.W. / from the Parish Church of Barton 10 miles ~~S.W.~~. {It stands ½ S.W. from Nether Hartsop.} It fronteth Eastward (if it may be said to have any front) towards Upper Hartsop; & standeth under a lofty Banke of wood on the west side, which

[273] Interpolation in another hand.
[274] In Scotland: erne; herne, eyrn (e, eirn-, airne) an eagle (*Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online). In England: earn, ærn, arn(e); also, ern, eerne, eren, erne. *OED*.
[275] 'Or Earn or Erne': this addition might have been written by William Nicolson or a contemporary.
[276] In another hand, possibly Bishop Nicolson's.
[277] MS.I.715A contains this note: 'Sir John of Sockbridge his 34. Ten. sold free'.
[278] That is, to do suit there.
[279] The number appears to have been added later, supplanting a line of text which has been almost completely erased.
[280] Brothers Water.
[281] MS: 'and takeing in Several Other Becks or Brookes … in haveing taken into it many other brookes'
[282] '5 stroane bridges.' 'Strone' means, to urinate; a gush or spurt of any liquid: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online. Perhaps Machell meant 'strong' or 'stone'. Elsewhere, he described the bridges as being 'of considerable strength.' Viz. '… for the great Thunder Shower … demolished a Barne 12 yardes long which stood in this place, & swept away the very foundation of it with 2 or 3 Bridges of Considerable Strength north from hence about ½ a mile.' (See I.699). Elsewhere, he tended to distinguish between wooden and stone bridges.

hides a great part of a Rugged fell that over tops it. But there is little \ ~~either~~ / in or about it which may bespeake it a Gentlemans Seate – excepting only – these Badges of Honour,[283]

[I.722]

~~From~~ the latter ~~of the which~~ if it be not the Crest of their \ Coat of / armes, may have relation to the Family of Dakers, whose Armes are 3 Escallops. But the other is certainely the Armes of the family which belong'd to this place; for they are quartered with the Lancasters of Sockbridge at Sockbridge Hall, tho with som little difference, for \ only / there, upon every one of the Staggs heads, is placed a Mound Royal.[284] \ But / here is one also (but that \ if it may be called one, for / they looke liker unto Bezants in this plasterworke charged with Crosses) in the fess point.[285] And what is more strange, in that on the porch at Barton church (which is the oldest there \ by much /) is none mound at all.\ But only 3 Staggs or Hartes heads cabbosed.[286] / However I conclude from this beareing (for want of better Instructions at present) that the family which was seated hear, & transplanted hence to a better Soyle at Sockbridge Hall, was called by the \ Sir / name of Hart-sop*. At the Court Barron which is holden here appear (besides the Tenants of Hartsop) VII Customary Tenants from the Town of A\m/bleside in the Barony of Kendal, & XII from Troutbeck; which I take to be purchased by the owners of Hartsop out of those manors, and in after ages to be fixd to this place through Custom & Curtesy.

[Machell's Notes: I.722]

*{Sed tamen qu.?}[287]

[I.725A][288]

[Hartsop Hall. Narrative 2.]
Hartsop Hall is a little old black building \ under a very high banke of wood called The Parke? / Nothing rema[r]kable in it \ to bespeake it a Gentlemans / but this Coat of Armes, & good Beames & Joystes over the parlour! It fronts E. \ ward / and stands at the upper End of Brother Water[289] at the S. End on the W. Side. There is a place like an oven, but with a little Ledge or Seat, lik[e] a Bedhead, which they [say] was used to hide the Papist Preast!!! if not upon som other occasion.



Figure 1.5.26. Hartsop Hall sketches. I.725A.

[283] See a coat of arms on I.725A, below.
[284] Mound Royal: an orb surrounded by a cross (Smith, *Place-Names*, 229).
[285] Bezant: gold coin struck at Byzantium or Constantinople similar to the Roman solidus; varying in value between the English sovereign, half-sovereign or less; current in England until superseded by the noble, a coin of Edward III. *OED*.
[286] 'Cabossed': borne (as the head of a stag or bull) full-faced; cut off behind the ears to show no part of the neck. *OED*.
[287] 'But, on the other hand, query?' 'Nothing definite appears to be known about this family.' *AWL*, 150-51.
[288] In the margin: two sketch plans of Hartsop Hall; coat of arms on the closet partition; plaster work in the parte loft.
[289] See reference to Broader Water (I.720).



[Key]
a. Hall.
b. Melldoers[290]
c. Chamber
d. Stable
e.f. Butterys
g. Parlour closset h. Parlour.
In the Parlour
In Plaster on the closet Partition. The Same was lately in Glass in the Hall window.

Figure 1.5.27. Hartsop Hall Ground Plan. I.725A.

[I.726]

In the Demaine which belongs to this House, Lead Oare has bin gotten; and in diging for it a sort of mineral of the colour brick.[291] {There are also blew slates extraordnary fine, 3 feet long & 2 broad; which bear water well, in Upperdale S.E. from the chappel about 3 miles; & in Netherdale in the same beareing 2 miles from the chaple; which may be transmitted into the Countrey by boats down Ulswater.} It is preety well wooded considering the place, and amongst other Trees affordes good Store of small sh\r/ubby Ewe, which with due care, would grow up to Trees.
A mile south from Hartsop hall is a place called Aisdale, or Haisdal; from Hais-water*, a Tarne that affordes Troutes, Skellyes & Eales. And in Angletarne Between Hartsop & Martindale† are 2 little hills whear Sea-maws, ducks and other such fowle \ are wont / to build & bread.

[Machell's Notes. I.726]

*{Hawswater in Hawsdale?}
†(query: in which?

[I.725A]

[Upper Hartsop]
At a little distance \ & / the breadth of a medow, lyes Upper Hartsop – of about V familes – in the road from these partes / to Kendal; and Nether Hartsop; consisting of [blank], which both together make [blank], lyes in another grane of fells at the foot of Great Dod? coming in betwixt them.

[I.726]

[Marts]
They have great Store of Marts hereabouts, som of which are very perniciouse, not only to their Lambs but old Sheep too; for not long agoe ~~there was~~ one of them seised on a Good Strong-Weather,[292] leaping unto his neck on the Top of a mountaine \ which is / on the East Side of Nether-Hartsop called Lingy-Crag; & Stooke so fast with its tallents upon him that though he bounced, ran, down the Skar, \ which is ½ a mile high, / yet he never lost his hold; and \ when / he came at a place in the bottom which is called Brown-Leath, there he killd the Weather outright; which is very much for such a small creature to do – yet these unlucky vermin do bring sua commoda secum;[293] for the[y] get large prices \ 6 shillings a piece / for the skins ~~of them~~ .[294]

[290] '*Mel* being an old word which signifies *between*; so the passage betwixt two doors is called *Meldoors*': *N&B1*, 545. See 'mell passage' in William Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 107.
[291] MS: 'and \ in diging for It / a sort of mineral in digging for It of the Colour brick.'
[292] Wether: castrated male sheep.
[293] 'They bring their advantages with them.'
[294] MS.I.725A contains another version: 'This place affo[r]ds great Store of \ Clean / Martes; which are Excellent firr, the skines being worth for the most part 6^{s} a piece: But they are a fatal foe to their Lames; yea their larger sheep are obnexiouseto them; for being a very nimble Creature & haveing long clawes, the[y] leap pon the neck \ back / \ shoulder/ of the[m]; & keep their hold till have woryed them; of which there hapned a notable instance [blank] here in this place.' See also Patterdale (I.708).

Of Ulswater & Imote

{The course of Emote or Eyemote}
The head of Emote must be fetched from the Highest or Greatest Spring; and that is at Kirkston Fell* in the Manor of Hartsop, which divides the countyes of Westm'land & Cumberland.
Thence it runns ~~into Broder Water~~ on the East Side of Hartsop hall into a lough called Broader Water. being called Hartsop beck till it comes there, and agane afterwards; haveing received Haiswater into \ it / a little below Hartsop, it carryes the name of Hartsop beck till out of the Lordship†. Others say it springs at Jack Brig, and is called Hartsop Beck till out of the Lordship; that it meets with Deepdale-beck, which comes E. into it from Glencone, & so carryes the name of Deepdale beck till it comes to Goldrel brigg near Patterdale Chappel‡ where Grisedale Beck comes in from the W.; & hence it is called by the name of I (or e as \ wee / commonly use to pronounce it here in these partes) from the streightness of it here; as the River X on which Excester stands is so calld from the figurlet which it hath of that letter.

[Machell's Notes: I.726]

*dub? {?}[295]
†{Query: where the other Hartsop beck comes in by Haiswater; which is said to be the great current & to spring at Jack Brigg?}
‡{?}

[I.727]

Thence N.W. to Sockbridge \ & / so on to Yane[wath] & Bridge, which 2 Lordships wee shall now discourse of, as thence by Brow[ha]m Castle, Nine Churrch & Horneby where it looseth it selfe in the noble River Eden.

[Machell's Notes I.727]

Memorandum to mend the map according to this [following] discription of Ulswater.

[I.728]

Hartsop, Ulswater & Imot
And this is the first fixed name that it hath. Thence it runns Northwards for a Quarter of a mile into the Great lake which is now called Ulswater – perhaps from one Ulfe in the Time of the Saxons: but anciently seems to have bin calld Imote, i.e. the lake of the River I; & the water \ stream / which runneth from \ the foote / of it is called Imote Water to this very day. I know I might deduce from e Lacu,[296] \ as / much as to say, out of the mote; e: Latine signifying out. But it \ is / unbeseeming to make a hotchpotch of English & Latine, ~~for~~ to finde the original of an English ~~River~~ name.

{House Holm}
Hence it runneth (though it cannot but ~~by the effects~~ be seen ~~for~~ to run, being much more like a Sea than a River) to Pooley-Stanke: first of all northwards 1 mile & ½ or nearupon 2 miles till you com at a place where Glenkeun-beck \ run[s] by Bro / ~~Uls~~water, which partes the 2 Countyes of W[estmorland] & C[umberland], ~~&~~ comes in from the west & is just over against the Iland which is called House-holme, \ which is the 3 Iland in this water, / because there has bin an House upon it, as there is likely to be agane; for the Honourable Charles Howard Esquire, has leas'd (or purchased it as I have heard, for the Tythe of Daker or \ rather / the arrears) of my Lord of Sussex, & intend to build and make it a place of delight & pleasure ~~tho it be in Westmorland~~ which without that agreement he could not have don because it is on Westm'land Side.[297]

[295] 'Doubtful.'
[296] 'Out of the lake'.
[297] This appears to be a reference to Charles Howard (1630-1713) the fourth son in the family of nine sons and three daughters of Henry Frederick Howard, fifteenth earl of Arundel (1608-1652). Charles Howard earned a reputation as a gifted garden designer, as Machell's comment on House Holm possibly becoming a place of 'delight and pleasure' under his care, suggests. For Howard's protracted claim to the Greystoke estates against his older brother Henry, sixth duke of Norfolk, see M. Hunter, 'Howard, Charles (1630-1713), landowner and natural philosopher'. *ODNB.*

{But in this course there are 3 Ilands}[298]
1. Cherry Holm,[299] so calld from a Cherry Tree grown in it; distant from the high end of Ulswater \ a mile & ¼ or above / & being on the East Side of Ulswater must belong without doubt to the Lord of M[artindale.]

2. Wall holme over against Stibarrow: so called from a wall it has had about it,[300] som of which is yet to be seen; distant from Cherryholm about 2 Bowshots and \ from the head a mile and ¼ and somwhat more. / This belongs to the Lord of Patterdal, being on the West Side, & near to His Manner.

3. Is House Holm[301] ~~as above~~ – near the East Side & so belonging to my Lord Sussex but now in possession of Mr Howard, Lord of Graystock. This is distant from the High End \ of Ulswater / 1 mile & ½ or maybe 2 miles; and from Wall Holme ¼ of a mile.

From hence the water turnes in a Bow above 2 miles* to \ a / Crag near How-Town. Thence (directly N.W.)† to Dunmallard, 3 miles in length & in breadth about 1 mile – for cert[ain] 950 yards. Thence on the East of Dunmallard, & West of Pooley.

[Machell's Notes: I.728]

*{?}
†{query, if not N.E}

[I.729]

Thence to [a] River which comes out of [blank] called Emote at the foote & head of it, & from Pooley till it is lost in Eden. It runneth Nor west to the manner of S\t/ockbridge; \ commonly Sock / & so on to Yeanwath & Bridge (which 2 Lordships I am next to treat of as the only remaneing partes of this Parish) \ & under Emote Bridge; / And thence by Browham Castle, Nine Church & ~~Yeawat~~ Horneby, where it looseth it selfe in the noble River Eden, haveing divide the 2 sister Countyes from Glenkeun-beck all along to this place. But before I proceed to S\t/ockbridge & Yeanwath, one word or 2 of the fowle & fish which Ulswater affordes.

[I.728]

{It affordes fowle of diverse sortes; as wilde ducks, wild geese somtimes, cormorants which are black, and also several sortes of fish; as Skellyes which are shaped like Herring; Pearch or Bass? Eales, \ Charrs / Troutes, and amongst them the most noble fish cald the Gray-Trout, as big as a Salmon. & there has bin, somtime, Salmons here. But they will not thrive, for in a short time they spend themselves & grow poore and loosey.[302] The fishing of it is in the \ som of the / Neighbourhood on either side for which the pay a certaine Rent to the Earle of Sussex as Lord of Barton &c. – And Mr Howard \ of Graystock / as Lord of the Lands on the other Side.'}

[298] MS: 'In which course it hems in 3 ilands. But in this course there are 3 Ilands.'
[299] 'Holm' has been superimposed over 'Iland'.
[300] MS: '2. The Second is – Sc. near the E. Wall-Holme 2. Wall holme \ over against Stiburrow / so called from a wall it has had about it,'
[301] House Holm is now known as Norfolk Island, named after the Duke of Norfolk.
[302] Lousy: covered in lice.

[II.438]

The forme of the lake called Ulse-water

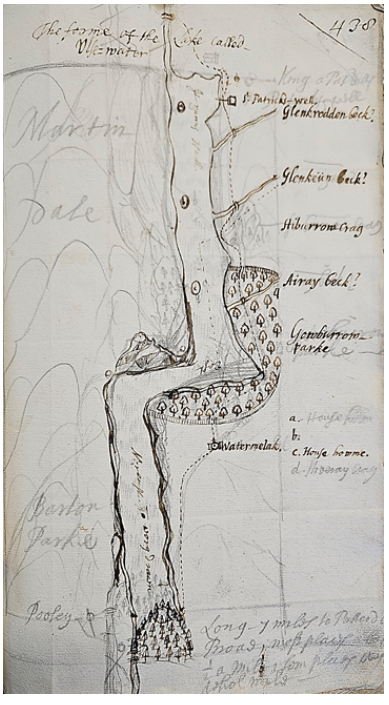


Figure 1.5.28. 'The forme of the lake called Ulse-water.' II.438.

[On the left]	[On the Right]	[Islands]
Martindale	King o Patterdales	a. House holm
Barton Parke	St Patricks well	b. [Blank]
Pooley	Glenkrodden beck?	c. House howme
	Glenkeün beck?	d. Stiveray Crag
	Stibarrow Crag	Watermelak
	Airay beck?	
	Gowbarrow parke	

Long 7 miles to Patterdale; Broad most places about ½ a mile; som places a whol mile
It runs North, East, North-east – ergo wrongly drawn.[303]

[I.725D]

[Sockbridge]

Tis sayd the whole parish \ excepting Patterdale / belongd to the Lancasters of Sockbridge – And that they had free Chase from Emot brig to the Top of Kirkstone fell S.W. \ 14 miles. / And that Martindale & High Barton were given to a younger brother*.

[303] The map contains other errors, which the reader will note.

{Descent}
This was \ purchased / in Reversion after the death \ of Christopher Dudley Esq.[304] / and his wife, by old Sir John Lowther of Lowther, the Rich Arbitray to the present Sir John of Lowther.[305] So the Brigg allso; where is one freehold Mr Rowl. Burrow \ Rector of Browhum & Clifton, /[306] lately purchased.

[Lordship Notes]
There are 3 Vill. in this Lordship – Sc. Sockbridge Thorp & Tyrrell. And High Winder, IV fam[ilies], som of which appere \ at Sockbridge and are free. /
1. Sockbridge – W. from the Hall about a bowshot conteineth in it ~~about~~ XII familes; ~~wher~~ all sold free by the now Sir John Lowther when he came ~~first~~ to years; and so all the other Tenants in the Lordship, & at Hartsop also. The old Rent remaneing. Courts Baron &c. All rateable. Lofthouse – Will[iam] Lancasters an \ ancient freehold at the high End. /
2. Thorp – west ab aula and beyond Sockbridge about the same dist[ance] that Sock[bridge is] from the Hall. IV fam[ilies], all free &c.
3. Tirrell \ is a place wel stor'd with Limestone, which supplieth Penrith / lyes ab aula [blank] & hath about XI [families.]
4. Lancelot of Lancaster = 1. Francis = to Sir Christian Lowther, father […][307] with whom he had Sockbridge, Hartsop & Weatby.[308]
{Lancaster, Fellow of Q[ueens] C[ollege] borne at a house at West Row.}[309]

[Machell's Notes: I.735D]

*de quo qu[aere.]

[I.730]

[Manor of] Sockbridge[310]
The manor of Sockbridge conteineth now in it ~~a~~ the village of Sockbridge; ~~which is almost a Square~~; W. from the church, & conteineth in it about XII families \ all Customary & Heriotable Tenants / ~~who not long agoe had~~ \ till of late that they / purchas'd their freedom of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge Hall, which is East from Hence about a Bowshot. And here at the very corner house of the West Row, at the South End of it, was Mr William Lancaster borne, somtimes Schoolmaster of Barton Kirk & now fellow of Queens College in Oxford. I take the ancient name of this place to be Stockbrige; so calld from a \ wooden / Bridge ~~that place~~ \ hereabouts, though / there be none now.

{The village of Tyrell, The Hamlet of Thorp, & som part of High Winder!}
2. The Village of Tirell, which lyeth a little South E. from Sockbridge & extendeth almost to the outer gate of Sockbridge Hall, conteineth in it about 10 familyes; \ all purchased free at the same with Yanewath, / & standeth mostly upon a limeston, as all the Rest of this Manner doth: But here it is got in such aboundance & so very fine, that they com as far as Penrith for it; ~~and are~~ \ which Town is supply'd / for the most part supplyed from hence. This Town may seem to have given name to the worthy and ancient family of Tyrill~~s~~ in the Countyes of Oxford & Buckingham: one of which \ name / had the misfortune by [blank][311] which I am the rather induced to believe, because \ I / finde not another Town of that name in England, and am well assured it gave name to a family – Henricus de {Tirill, being witness amongst other neighbouring Gentlemen at a Deed without date. But Sir Radulf[us] de Notyngham, then Sherif of Westmorland, was witness with him, by which perhaps the date may be found – In which Deed one Gilbert de Engayne de Clifton Grants to

[304] Christopher Dudley, the last male heir of the Dudleys: 1607-1660. See *CFH*, 97.
[305] Sold in 1654: *N&B1*, 413. 'Arbitray': 'arbiter'; in law, relating to, or dependent on, the discretion of an arbitrator, or other legally-recognized authority. *OED*.
[306] Rowland Burrow or Borrow was rector of Brougham (1661-1708) amd Clifton (1668-1708). CCED.
[307] A word has perished here.
[308] The MS is too damaged to transcribe accurately here, but contains: 'Eliz = [perished] Hutton 3 Barbery to [perished] Davis of Winder in the B… = Margareta'; see I.373 for another version of this information.
[309] In the left-hand margin. The text here is either faded, damaged or lost.
[310] There is a small square sketch of the Sockbridge area deep within the top left margin of this page.
[311] One whole line is left blank here.

Tho. Niger of Kaliel & that his wife[312] ½ a carucate, which is 7 oxgangs[313] of Land, in Clifton, free from Suit of Court, moulter & pannage,[314] paying therefore the rent ad nat.}[315]

3. Thorp is a little Hamlet ~~of a bout IV families West from Sockbridge~~ \ which / lyes as much \ farther / west beyond Sockbridge as Sockbridge is west beyon the Hall. There are at least 70 places in England which beare ~~the~~ that name; & it signifyeth \ in the Saxon Language / a Towne or Village; thoug[h] this indeed be but a smal one, ~~consisting~~ for it hath only 4 houses in it; but they are all lately purchased free of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge ut supra.[316]

4. High Winder, another Hamlett of IV familyes, som of which \ onely / appear at Sockbridge ~~Court~~; but are ~~also sold~~ free as the rest. 3 belong to the Lord of Barton and som I thinke to Winder-hall. There is one Airay a freehold here*.

[Machell's Notes: I.730]

*Query: if the Doctors Family.
{query: Hall Hew or Hewafter –}

[I.732]

Sockbridge Hall is the manor house; which standeth North from the River Emot about a Bowshot & as much E. from the Village of Sockbridge – It is not so large nor standeth so well as Yanewath Hall doth; \ for [it] fronteth S. / a little, inclineing to the W. It is scituate upon a descent, in so much that you goe downe 3 descents in the very Court ere you enter the Hall.[317] Yet there is a rare[318] fir tree growing without the Court Wall which renders it somwhat more gracefull.[319] – But if ever this be made a Stately house indede – they must build front to the river of Emote; carry the way in a streight line by the end of the house; and turne the Courtes and as far as the outer gate into Gardines & Orchards. But as it is now, the house is builded with a Little Quadrangle in the midst of it,[320] which as you enter through a smale passage you have the Hall doer opposite to you, over which is a slender old Tower haveing upon it these Coates of Armes. –

On the Seeling in Plasterworke, in the Old Dineing Roome at Sockbridge
Lancaster quartering the heiress of Hartsop Impaleth this quarterly Coat as followeth

1. A cheveron charged with 3 anuletts, between 3 escallops. Tankard.[321]
2. A cheveron charged with 3 floredelices.[322]

[Machell's Notes: I.733]

? q. of Mich. Hudson fel[low] of Queens – if not of this par[ish][323]

[312] Names here are unclear.
[313] Oxgang: unit of land an ox could plough in a ploughing season.
[314] Payment for swine; access to wood nuts.
[315] 'Ad nat' = ad naturam: according to the natural terms at which produce was sold.
[316] As stated above.
[317] Other relevant notes are as follows: MS, I.725D: 'Sockbridge Hall, within a bowshot of Emote, not so large as Yanewath but built with a smale quadrangle, which on the inside is Garreted, all but the side where you enter, and hath a Little Tower opposite to the enterance; where you goe into the Hall. It fronts S. a little declineing to the W. with 3 descents in the Court.'
[318] The word here is indistinct.
[319] MS: \'Yet there is a […] fir tree / Trees growing without the Court Wall which renders it somwhat more gracefull.'
[320] MS: '{But as it is now the house is builded with a} It is builded with a Little Quadrangle in the midst of it,'.
[321] Tankard arms.
[322] A note (MS.I.725) offers further data: 'In the old dineing Roome in 2 panes of Plaster work – 1. Lancaster quartering (? Hartsop as I take it) with a florished MaT & Crist a Lyon Couchant with Tayle turned up betwixt his legs. 2. in another Lancaster with Lyon in Canton.'
[323] See I.678.

[I.733][324]



Figure 1.5.29. Small piece of paper affixed to the page.
'On the Seeling in Plasterworke, in the old dineing Roome at Sockbridge'. I.733.

[I.725D]

a. In Plaster worke upon the Partition in the \ New / Dineing Roome

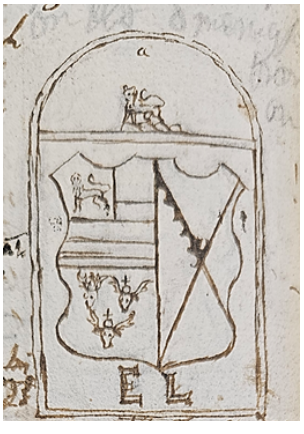


Figure 1.5.30. Plaster work on the partition of the new dining room at Sockbridge Hall. I.725D.

2. [Arms]over the Tower Dooer very ancient (Lancaster impaleing Singleton)

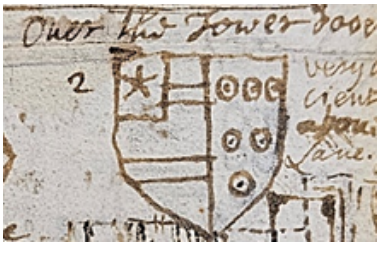


Figure 1.5.31. 'Arms over the Tower Door'. I.725D.

The same in a little window in a quarry[325] in the dineing roome, where the Mullet and an[nulets] are Or; the rest, blanke.

[324] The scored-through sentences in the margins of this page of notes have not been transcribed.
[325] Here Machell has drawn a small diamond shape.

[Plan of Sockbridge Hall]

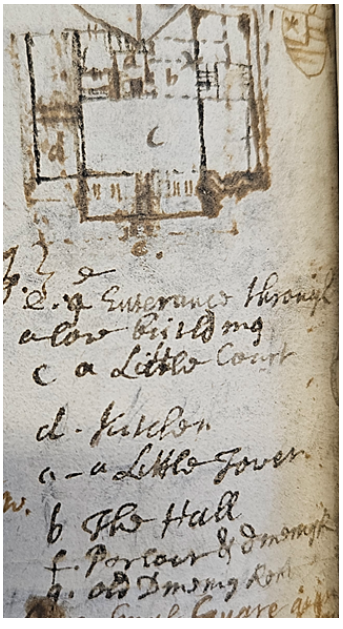


Figure 1.5.32. Plan of Sockbridge Hall. I.725D.

[Key]
e. The Enterance through a low building
c. a Little Court
d. Kitchen
a. a Little Court
b. The Hall
f. Parlour & dineing room
g. Old Dineing Rom



Figure 1.5.33. On the 'Great Hall window', Sockbridge Hall. I.725D.

On a Smal Square quire in the Great Hall window:
1. Lancaster Argent q[uartered]*
2. Argent [&] Gules; 3 stags heads with a globe & cross; betwixt them a Mound Royal.[326] Hornes Gules.
3. As second &c.
The Impale Argent a saltire ingraled – which is inscribed on a Noble window of 7 great lights and 14 little ones &c. The like work in the church. The same agane in the Dineing room.

[326] Royal Orb.

[Machell's Notes: I.725D]

*query whether a Mullet.

[I.725C]

{Sockbridge in Barton Parish}
On a great Beam in Sockbridge Hall



Figure 1.5.34. Coats of Arms on a 'great Beam' in Sockbridge Hall.[327] *I.725C.*

{f m. Ex Incuria opificis. inversa capita}[328]

[I.734]

Yanewath

The Manner of Yaneworth conteineth in it 2 Pretty Villages, Sc. Yanewath \ & Bridge / which seem so called from their several passages over Imote, of which there are 4 within the compass of this Parish:[329] Sc. Yean Stanke, Yane Stock Brigge, Yane Wath, & Yeane Stäne-Brigg. i.e. one Stanke, one Stockbridge, one Wath, and one Stone bridge; whence these Several Townes Received Several names: Sc. – Pooley Stanke – Stockbridge or Sockbridge; Yanwath or Yane Wath, & Brigg or Bridge, which is so called, KαT,[330] because it is the most eminent passage over this River; for which Reason it is called The Bridge.

{Ab Ecclesia}

[327] The exclamation mark was placed on the third coat because it is upside down, see f.n. below.
[328] 'From the carelessness of the artist, the heads are upside down.'
[329] MS: 'which seem~~eth~~ so called from ~~a wath or forde there Over the water; for it Seemeth formerly, there are 4 passages over Imot which in the Compass of~~ \ from their several passages over Imote of which there are 4 within the compass of this / Parish.'
[330] KαT: Kα/T[ω]. In several places in the MS, Machell follows the phrase 'Barony of Westm'land' with the letters KαT. The vowel is clearly written as the Greek letter alpha. This suggests that all the letters are meant to be read in the Greek (not the Roman) alphabet and that the word is abbreviated from the Greek adverb κα/τω meaning 'below'. Classical Greek authors sometimes used this word in a geographical connection to mean 'lower' or 'south'. It is likely that Machell's meaning is similar and that this is a way of referring to the 'Bottom' of Westmorland. See its use in Machell's Preface, I.148, I.44C.

1. Yanewath is a pretty smal village of about 12 families; all Customary Tenants pay in fine arbitrary*, & doing Suit at Service of Court at Yeanwath-hall, which standeth at the North End of the Town a little on the West Side of it, on a High banke by the River of Imote, opposite to which the chief entrance standeth somewhat inconvenient, for it affords no access to the \ house, / which, ~~if you~~ if the owner desire to have at the best advantage, it might be don by turneing the front to the west side where the Orchard plat is, & carrying the way streight from the wath up ~~from~~ to the Town by the great gates, which ~~if it were mine I should chose to place there~~ \ should be there placed / opposite to the unbuilded ~~of the Court as now~~ \ side[331] as it now / standeth. There is an old Chaple over the gate to which ~~there is an ancient Round fortification at the wood end~~ to which you ascend by a pair of Stairs out \ of / the Court side, in which they have not observed to place the Altar Eastwards but rather contrary. It hath not any Coates of Armes in it. But in the House are these that follow.

[Machell's Notes: I.734]

*{? and if heriotable}

[I.736]

Arms in Yanewath Hall

In the Hall Outshot window



Figure 1.5.35. In Yanwath Hall 'Outshot window'. I.736.

2. Clifford quartering Vessey quartered.[332]
3. Clifford with a fild of 3 Lamb[el].[333]

In the plasterwork over the dineing-room chimney



Figure 1.5.36. 'In Plasterwork over the Dineing-Room chimney.' I.736.

[331] Machell has drawn a small square to the right of 'side'.
[332] The next word is illegible.
[333] Written in faded pencil but probably 'lambel' (label): a narrow band across the shield from which three short bands protrude at right angles (see Figure 3 on I.736); see A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 154.

In plasterwork over the ceiling.



Figure 1.5.37. In plasterwork over the ceiling. I.736.

[I.737]

Yanewath hall is a Tower-house, pleasantly scituated upon the very Banke of Emote, on the S. East side of it; but so near the precipice that there \ is count'd / no handsom access unto the House. It is built with 3 sides of a Quadrangle, hath a delicate prospect when you are at it, and hath the grace of a little Castle when you are distant from it. Over the Gate as you enter are the Remaines of a little chapple, where the Screen is yet standing; And there is one very Beautiful Tower at the South Corner with Turrets & Batlements very graceful to behold.
The Town standeth as I remember N. & S. at little distance above the Hall, & hath about 12 familyes in it {XII fam}.

{The Plateforme of Yanewath-Hall. 1689}



[Key]
a. The Entrance.
bb. The Mel-dooers or passage through towards the Towne.
c. The Kitchen
d. The Hall
e. [Blank]
f. The Dineing-Roome up above Stairs.
ggg. Offices.
h. The Platforme of a wall representing a Tower as you enter on the front.
i. The place where the Chapel standeth over the gate I[t] lookes S.W.
kkk. Stables &c.

Figure 1.5.38. Annotated plan of Yanwath Hall. I.737.

[I.725D]

{Yanewath arbitrary} {Parochia Literatorum}[334]
There is a Place at the End of Yan-wath wood where it joynes upon Askam, about a mile S. from the Hall, calld Castle-Steeds; where Trenches & Bulworkes doe yet appear. And East from thence ¼ of mile by the water side, the foundation appears of an old ruin'd chaple called Magdalen Chapel, as old Mrs Sanford sayeth.[335] XI or XII fam[ilies] purchased from [blank].[336]

[I.738]

There is an ancient Round-fortification called Castle Steeds at Yanewath Wood End, S. from the Hall about 1 \ mile / and near the New-bridge which Sir John Lowther of Lowther builded in [blank] for his own convenience to conjoyn the 2 manners. The Antiquity of it may appear from old Oakes, Elms & Crabtrees which grow on the Rampires and ~~have~~ other wood which has coverd it over, in so much that I labourd through many difficultyes before I could gane this platforme of it.

[I.738A]

Castle-Steades in Yanewath-wood

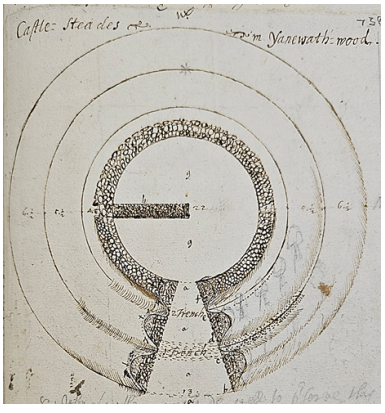


Figure 1.5.39. Castlesteads at Yanwath Wood. I.738A.

[Key]
(a.a.a.a.) The Enterance on the E. Side haveing a Ridge of Stones on either side like a foundation.
(b.) The first Burworke; which is from the rise of the plane to the Crist 7. Passes from the Crist down to the bottom of the ditch 5. From c. to d. the 1st ditch.
(d.) The second Bulworke, which is from the bottom of the ditch to the Crist, 7 Passes or Yardes. From e. to f. the second ditch.
(f.) The 3rd Burlworke with a Ring of Stone like a foundation \ on / it.
(g.g.) The Area being in diameter 22 \ p[asses] / and somwhat hollow.
(h.) A Ridge of Stones, like \ as of / a foundation wall to suppor[t] the Timber*.

Machell's Notes: I.738A]

*{Memorandum: To measure it agane – because I have counted the 1t Trench to 13 Score & 13 passes; which if true it must be oblong. The Best way will be to measure from the Center & over the Bulworks, noting the distance twixt the place of Remarke – as before.}
{N.B. All the Bulworkes seem heaps of stones; tho none appear so but the inmost; the rest being covered with a Green Swarth or Earth for the most part. It is all grown over with \ old / Oakes, Ashes, Aum, Crabtrees & Thorns.}
{Sir John Lowther might doe well to preserve this monument of Antiquity, as makeing it into a Somerhouse or place of Pleasure.}

---

[334] 'Parish of educated men.'
[335] Machell appears to have placed an 's' at the end of 'Mr', but see I.740, where he claims that 'old Mr Sandford of Askam hall' gave him the information 'by tradition'.
[336] MS: '~~In Yanewath there are~~ XI or XII fam. ~~all Customary & Herriotable, till most of them were of late~~ purchased from'

[I.740]

Sir John Lowther of Lowther to whom this Lordship of Yanewath belongeth,[337] & opposite to whose \ ~~Lord~~ / House this fort standeth, might make it a delicate place of pleasure without altering the ancient figure of it; by cutting a vist[a], & planting a walke of Trees from hence to Lowther-hall, and makeing it into Arboures & walkes, with a wall about, as to him shal seam meet: for the soyle is so fertill, & withal so warme by the wood round about it, that I should \ not / dispare of planting a \ little / vineyard here, neither of eateing of the fruits of the vineyard if it were managed to the best advantage by a skilful hand.

{Quarries of very white heweing stone[338]

And there are great encouragements to it, He haveing 2 quarryes of curious white stone which will endure the tooles of the mason, just hard at hand; The one at Hews Crag ~~which is~~ by the water \ side / over against Clifton Church ~~and Hall~~; the other upon the Common of Yanewath and near Lowther bridge: & there is Limestone enough in the Lordship – almost in any place. However, Tirrel is not far remote.

East from this Fort a ¼ of a mile by the water side \ River of Lowther /are the foundations of an old Ruined Chappel; which was calld St Magdalens as I am informed*. Which is all I have to observe in this place.

[Machell's Notes: I.740]

*Old Mr Sandford of Askam Hall by Trad[ition].

[I.194]

Yanewith was held by Sir Lancelot Threlkeld de Johe Baron de Graystock per servicio militare. Viz, per homagium &c. et reditum 8s & 8d per cornagium Johanis; et Johannes Baron de Graystock tenuit idem manerium per confamilia servicia de Henrico Domino de Clifford.[339]

{Bridge or Brigg?}

2. The other Village which belongs to this Lordship is called The Bridge, & by som, Yanewath bridge {?} the reason of which I have given you before.[340] It lyeth E. from the church \ of Barton / and consisteth of about XII familyes all ~~Arbitrary~~ \ Customary / Tenants to Yanewath Hall \ at a fine arbitrary / excepting one; which is Mr Rowland Burrow of Browham, Rector there and of Clifton parish: who \ lately / purchased his \ Tenement / free & has built ~~thereupon~~ a very good house \ upon it in 1687, ~~haveing~~ / with curiouse gardine and orchards about it.[341]

All this village have a Privilege of Turbary upon Barton Fell,[342] for which the[y pay] 2^{d} an House.

There are near this Village (that I may not say – contiguouse to it) 2 ancient & noble fortifications, both of them Round but of different figures.

Maybrough Castle & Round Table[343]

{Maybrough Castle*}

The One, is at the West Side of the Towne – called May-brough-Castle; which has but one enterance like an

[337] C.1654, by purchase from Christopher Dudley (1607-1660), the last male heir of the Dudleys: see *N&B1*, 413.

[338] This is written in ink over a pencilled comment: 'Convenience of quarryes'.

[339] 'Yanwath was holden by Sir L. Threlkeld from John, B. of Greystoke through military service; Viz through homage etc. and a rent of 8/8d through cornage of John. And John B. of Greystoke held the same manor through family services from Henry Lord Clifford.'

[340] See I.734, above.

[341] The house is Mansion House, which has 1686 on the lintel: see Hyde & Pevsner, 711. Near to the text, Machell wrote in pencil, 'The Draught': i.e. space for an intended sketch of the house.

[342] For turbary, see the English Glossary.

[343] The heading has been moved from MS.I.654A.' For Dugdale, see Machell's notes: I.742.

horse shoe on the East Side of it, consisting of one single rampiere of Stones {pibles} heaped up together & grown over with wood: young ashes mostly; out of which (Camden tells us)[344] Penrith Castle was builded.[345]

[I.742]

{King Arthurs C. King Arthurs O Table}
The other at the South end of the Village called \ by som / King Arthurs Castle; But (by som) K. Arthurs Table; ~~where a Parliament sat in~~. The rema[r]kable thing I finde of it upon Record – is that a Parliament sat in this place.[346]

[Machell's Notes: I.742]
*Maybrough Castle – See my Miscell[any] p.236; also MS. Folio part [Blank]. {Also, Mr Dugdalls Visit[ation.}

[I.375][347]
These are by Emote Bridge in the parish of Barton. The Round Table standeth NW[348] from the Chappel of Browham. And Maybrough Castle alijs King Arthurs N.W. from it.

[I.378]
Arthur Castle alias the round Table is upon a Level, mounted above the high banke of Lowther. The entrances are N. & S., & opposite to the S[outh] Entrance about 10 sc[ore] distance is an other rotundo made of pebles about 4 passes in bredth, in hight 1 or 2, which has an Entrance or Space just opposite to the Entrance of the round T[able]. But noe egres. The Diamiter of the circle within the rim is about 4 sc[ore] & 10 of my ordnary walking pases, so that the circumference must be about 14 sc[ore] yards within rim.[349] The enterance of the round table is in Breth about 5 or 6 pases. The old man sayd it was a justing place[350] in King Arthurs Time*.

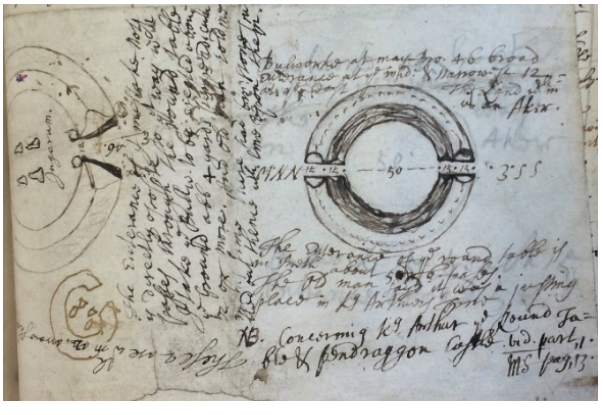


Figure 1.5.40. Machell's sketches of Maybrough and 'Arthur[']s] Castle alias the round Table'. I.737.

[344] See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 776: 'Not farre from the confluence of Eimot and Loder, where is seene that round trench of earth, which the countrey people tearme 'Arthur's Table', stands Penrith, which is … commonly called Perith: a little towne, and of indifferent trade, fortified on the west side with a castle of the Kings, which in the reigne of King Henry the sixth was repaired out of the ruines of a Romane fort thereby called Maburg…'
[345] MS: 'The One, is at the ~~South~~ West Side of the Towne – called May-brough-Castle which has but one enterance \ like an horse shoe / like an Horse Shoe ~~and~~ \ on the East Side of it consisting of / one single rampiere of Stones {pibles} heaped up \ together / & grown over with wood \ young ashes mostly / ~~The other of~~ \ Out of which (Camden Tells us), Penrith Castle was builded.'
[346] See Machell's Preface, I.34 and II.479, for more on King Arthur and his round table.
[347] This highly damaged page has been partially restored.
[348] Unclear. Machell made alterations to his original direction marker.
[349] A line of text below this one has perished.
[350] 'Jousting place.'

[Maybrough]
The enterance if I mistake not is directly oposite to that way which passes through the round table. I take the Bullw[ork] to be erected above the ground abb[out] 4 yards perpendicular or more. And old man told me in his time there had bin stone pulled out thence with lime upon them. These 2 are within an arrow shot. Bulworke at May-Bro. 46 Broad enterance at the inside, & narrowest 12 at the least. The Land within is an Aker.

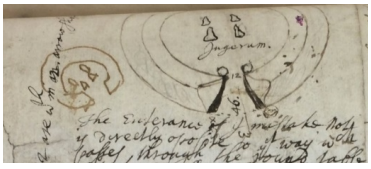


Figure 1.5.41. Maybrough. Sketches of four standing stones. The larger circle contains the Latin word 'Iugerum'. I.375.[351]

[Machell's Notes: I.376]
*N.B. Concerning King Arthur the Round Table & Pendraggon Castle: vid. part 1. MS pag.13.[352]

[Rarities in Nature at Yanwath]

[I.654A]

N[ote] The river which is now called Emot is call'd Aqua de Amoth. in Carta Bricij de Penrith qua dat locum vocat. Sain Wilfry Holme, Abbi et Monact. de Holm Coltram: è Registro de Holm.[353]
There grow upon the Bankes of this river about Yanewath &c. Barberryes naturally; great Eales in Ulswater; as in Haus-water. Rasps naturally on the Banks of Ulswater. Cullenbines[354] on the Bankes of Lowther in Yeanwath wood.

[I.671A]

[**General notes and Informants' reponse to queries**]

{Runner of Eye. The fisheing […][355] skellyes, perch. […]}[356]

[I.671B]

Eagles often prey in somer at Angle tern upon young Seamaws.[357]

[I.715C]

{In Graisdale Loudore also cop[per].}

[I.654A & I.654B] [358]

In the W. Ward – Desiderata or farther Query?
The Descents of Hartsop Patterdale Barton Yean[wath] &c. – Mr Dobson.

[351] 'Iugerum': Roman measurement of 28,800 square feet – just over half an acre.
[352] MS I.382 contains Machell's note: 'Memorandum. The stones at Shap; the stones at Sandford.'
[353] A citation of the register of Holm Cultram as proof of Eamont's being called (in Latin) 'the Water of Amoth'. 'About 1250 [the monks of Holm Cultram] received from Bricius of Penrith the land and pasture of St. Wilfrid's Holm at Bramwray on the Eamont,' See Francis Grainger and W.D. Collingwood (eds), 'Records: The Abbey in the thirteenth century', *Register and Records of Holm Cultram,* CWAAS Record Series 7 (Kendal, 1929), 126-36.
[354] Columbines.
[355] Words here are obscured by the binding.
[356] This and other notes are partly covered by the binding.
[357] Other rough notes include fragments at the right-hand side of the page but obscured by the binding at the end of each line. MS: 'Swarth beck, springs at Leade … and runs 1[t] N. then N.W. into … against Wethermelock. {springs of bow[shot] a capel[la]} {Howgrane … Added 4 … holme 1 … The Value of… In the f … the store of … St Martin… is One R… The most… Chaple (…) with a single … yard, w … If a mo … cow dung …'
[358] I.654A is a scrap page measuring 12cm x 19cm. I.654B was originally part of the same page but at some point it was cut in half. Much text has perished or is illegible.

[I.657B][359]

Qu. Antiq.

1. Quiete ab omnibus servicijs et a seculari servicio et demanda.[360]

2. Si praedictus A. vel heredes sui forefecerint verbo vel opere q[uo]d non sit Blodwita[361] et convicti fuerint dabunt sex denarios et emendabunt cuj forefecerint, et si sit Blodwita et convicti fuerint dabunt xij denarios et emendabunt cuj forefecerint.[362]

3. Faciendo (tamen) forinsecum servitium – (q.?!!!) quantum pertinet duas Bovatas Terræ.[363]

[I.725B][364]

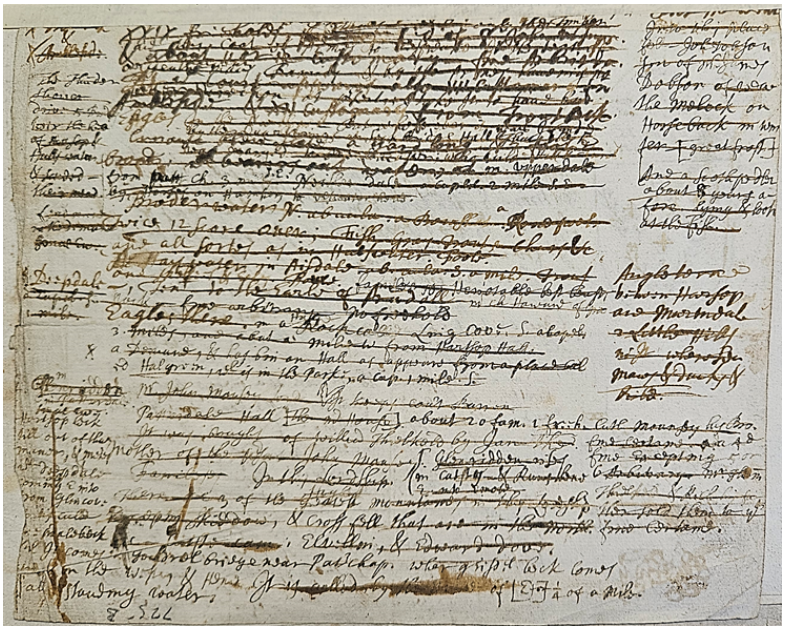


Figure 1.5.42. Page of notes on Hartsop and Patterdale, written up elsewhere and then scored through. I.725B.

[I.725C]

{Yanwath Bridge. Hartsop. Low-Winder. Martindale. Patterdale. Powley. Sockbridge. Yanwath. See the Easter Bookes; query of Halls.}

[359] Latin passage in another hand, apart from the last few words.

[360] 'Free from all services, both from secular services and charges.'

[361] Bloodwit: a fine for drawing blood.

[362] 'If the aforesaid A. or his heirs are guilty in word or deed of that which is not Bloodwit, and have been convicted, they shall pay six denarii and shall make reparation to he whom they have injured, and if it is Bloodwit, and they have been convicted, they shall pay 12 denarii and shall make reparation to him whom they have injured.'

[363] 'By doing foreign service' [the text then changes to Machell's hand, using exclamation and question marks] 'query, as much as relates to two bovates of land.'

[364] A page of notes on Hartsop and Patterdale, written up elsewhere and then crossed through here, as in the illustration. For Machell's Hartsop queries see I.725H.

{Queryes}[365]
Dr Dawes – Epitaph – Greeke – Lawyer Fletcher[366]
How many places in Barton Parish are called Manners in Lord Sussex Court Rolls}
& whether Sockbridge & Yanewath be in the Barony? If it be one? No. } Mr Thomas Webster
Query also how they & wee came to Kirkoswald & Lazonby. }
Prospect of Pooley under Dunmallard.
Som of that ore, which William Smith found? – Jane Jackson.
Whether the Armes in the small Sq[uare] quarry in the great hall window {Sockbridge} be with a Mullet or Lyon. Answer – a Martlet.[367]

[I.725D][368]

{! Hews Cragg very white E. ab Ecclesia 1m. over aganst Clifton! Yanewath Moore fine white Gravel Stone & hewing ston ¾ East ab Ecclesia near Lowther berg Round Table & Castlesteeds & Maybrough. Yan-wath wood large with Oakes}[369]
{Martindale 2 miles a Cap[ella]. Pless indifferent slate […]}[370] Query: of eagles there.
Dr Dawes borne in Martindale \ at Maud Slack a little tenement now sold to the Lancasters /, where many yet, an unhappy boy but made a good man.[371]
A Capella put in by the vicars approb[ation] by Sir John of Sockbridge. The sallary: about £6 per annum laid upon the tenement an house & garth; Dr Richard Birket the present reader.
Martindale, a forrest of red deare & wilde goates – Lord Sussexes.
Brook Crag, a course blew slate ab Ecclesia 4 miles brought with cartes, from Cap[ella] north-east a mile.
Place Fell by Ulswater side, better blew slate, a Capella 2 miles west.
The chief place of the Br. was Thrang-Cragg, from the chappl ¼ S.W. 10li but for […][372]

[I.725F][373]

Further Queries in Barton Parish
1. How it standeth & at what distance from Penrith \ S. by W. – 3 miles / Browham: \ W. 5: /Clifton: \ N.W.3 / Lowther: \ N.W, – 3 / Askham: \ N.W. 3. / Bampton: \ N. 4. / Kendal: N. by N. 18 {right} Gresmere N.E. 15[374] & ~~their beareings~~ from Martindale \ N. by E. 5 from / ~~&~~ Patterdale chaples. E. by N. 9.

2. N.B. How the fishes in the Coat of Arms standeth {palewise – & are Argent in Gules}
\ The Greek Epitaph!! /[375]

3. If Barton be a Barony? {Court Leet & Baron, Stile a Barony in ancient Court Rowles.
1 Manner de Barton infra Baronia de Barton.[376] Manners de Martindale et Fusedale infra Bar. praedict.[377]
There were 3 Tenements – Sc. – Trostermont \ neither and further / Crookedike adjoyneing to them.
Customary Tenants formerly belonging to Graystock – & the Rents are calld Arrundel rents exchanged for other lands in Cumberland in Graystock Barony.[378]

---

[365] Queries: some for Machell himself; others for his informants.
[366] Thomas Fletcher of Little Strickland, see I.678.
[367] A fragment in the bottom right corner here, appears to contain the words, 'row... w... black … shun 2 ordnary cuts.'
[368] All the text on this page of the MS has been scored through.
[369] Top r-h margin.
[370] In the left-hand margin and crossed through; there is more text but it is scored through and damaged.
[371] 'Unhappy' in the sense that he caused 'trouble or mischief', or was 'naughty'. *OED*.
[372] The last word is indistinct.
[373] Almost all of the text on this page of the MS has been crossed through.
[374] Unclear number, crossed through.
[375] Machell needed help with the translation, see I.671B; see also I.725C, where Machell suggests asking Dr Dawes and Lawyer Fletcher (Thomas Fletcher of Little Strickland).
[376] 'Within the Barony of Barton.'
[377] 'Within the aforesaid barony.'
[378] The term 'Arundel rents' refers to rents collected by the earls of Arundel and their successors. Dynastic marriages had resulted not only in an accumulation of titles, but also of land and property, including the manor of Greystoke in Cumberland. For example, Henry F. Howard (1608-52) was fifteenth earl of Arundel, fifth earl of Surrey, and second earl of Norfolk. His father was Thomas Howard (1585-1646), fourteenth earl of Arundel; his mother was Lady Aletheia Talbot (died 1654), a goddaughter of Elizabeth I. See J. Elzinga 'Howard, Philip [St Philip Howard], thirteenth earl of

What Lordships held under it & how? \ Who takes wafe & stray / & their descents of the manners & ped[igrees] of the owners.
Which bookes publishd by Dawes; Langbane?

4. Where lead & copper-ore be in Grisdale at the West En[d] of Patterdale chaple – if any houses \ X[379] / in it & to what Lordship it belongs? To Patterdale but the Tenements are L. Sussex.

? 5. Whethe[r] a Cave in Glencoue, or any other part of the Parish. Or at Edward Doue.
{Manner de Patterdale which (the forrest of Grisdale) \ payes a free rent / – a lead mine in Eagle Crag – the Tenement Lord Sussex. Glemera Parke there about X. 3 Juries, & a Grand jury.}

? 6. Who has the Tythe-Corne of the parish. Query of William Smith. Who the ⅔ of wool Lamb & Easter b[ook] – in the other partes of Patterdale besides Hartsop.

\ Winder hall / ~~How far~~ Barton Parish borders on Daker – a loco ad locum,[380] & if Daker & Skelton be not in the Barony of Graystock?
{From Rampsbeck on the east side of Wethermelack – till you com at Daker beck-foot, where it enter Emote which parish of Daker is not in the Barony of Daker.}

Barton Kirk was the late Lanc[elot] Dawes. The only son or childe of this father – If the Dr did not purchase something at Asby Grange & Regill, & what?
{No.[381] Will. Thom[linson] at Creaktrees – which now belongs them.}

To whom the rest of High Winder– to Mr Davis. Aray a freehold?
besides Celron are Tenants? – 3 Tenants to Sussex.

[I.725G][382]

A view of Winder Hall, The descent of it – Davis pedegre from W. Jo? Davis: Master of Arts & Schoolmaster.

{William Davis = Elleanor. daughter of Christopher Teasdale of Knipe
|
Will. infans Annas infans}[383]

Martindale
How Long Sir Richard has served in Martindale {50?} & disc[ription] of the Descents of Manners.
Was Martindale 4^{d} fine only, 4^{d}, & the forresters 2^{d} fine onely, 2^{d}, before the purchase: – or were 4 & 2 times the rent? – x^{s}
Will Smiths are. {Yes}

{! In Hellin Hag N. a Sandwike ½ a mile a Hollow place in the rock with water in it resembling a pot or head about a yard diameter – and as much deep.}
{Martindale Tenants payd also a Rent of about 20^{s} per Annum meal – to feed his dogs for killing the Marts.}

How far & in what beareing does Maud-Slack where Dr Dawes was borne lye from Martindale Chappel? – {west ¼ of mile.}

How lyes Sandwike from the Chapel?
{N.W. a Capella ½ a mile & more}

Arundel (1557-1595), magnate and alleged traitor'; and G. Goodwin & J. Peacey, 'Howard, Henry Frederick, fifteenth earl of Arundel, fifth earl of Surrey, and second earl of Norfolk (1608-1652), nobleman.' *ODNB*.
[379] X (10) added later.
[380] In places.
[381] This is followed by an unclear interlined word.
[382] Much of this page has been scored through.
[383] All text in this paragraph has been lightly scored through.

How Bowerdale – {W. a Capella – ½ a mile}
How Fusedale – {N. fr[om] Capella – 1 mile.}

By what Statute is 1^{s} per head paid for wilde cats; & who payes it!
Whether James Dobson did not mend the way at Stybarrow upon his sons[384] falling into the water? Don by the Countrey upon complaint.

{! a place called Lords Seate on the Top of ~~a~~n \ little / Hill in the midle of Bannerdale; with a ~~Seat or~~ Chair of Stone called Lords Seat – a Capella S. by W. 2 miles – Here they say the lord usd to sit & see their Greyhounds Course the Read dear.}

Patterdale
Is there any cave about Kiple-Cove? How lies it & Read Tarne from Patterdale Hall? & are they in the manner?
How far is Catstye?

Is the 4^{d} fine in Glenridden only fower pence; or 4 Times the rent?
{It is 4 times the rent.}

If XII families in it, or all Patterdale?
Is it Lingcove or or Glincoue where Eagles build.
{! Before Martindale Chapel was consecrated every Tenant – man & wife had 3^{d} a piece paid at Chapel Stile for their paines.}

[I.725H]

Hartsop
{Twixt Patterdale and Martindale as heaven water deales.}
{Place Fell Tenements which are in Patterdale Manner – but answer for themselves at Barton being Tenants to my Lord of Sussex.}
{?} How many familyes in Nether Hartsop / Upper Hartsop.
Are there Gray-Troutes & Charrs in Broader-water?
Does Kirkston fell in Hartsop divide Westm'land & Cumberland?

Yanewath families?
Are they Heriotable – no. Fine cert[ain] or Arbitrary? yes.
Is it called Yanewathbridge or Emotbridge?
Writ? Yamonbrigg – Every house payes 2^{d} for Turbary on Barton fell. to the Lord of Barton.

Sockbridge
Was not Will. Lancaster schoolmaster at Barton? Yes.
{?} Whether the Armes in the Smal Square quarry in the Great hall-window be with a mullet or lyon?
My inke hornes.[385]

{N.B.} How Lord Dakers came to Kirkoswald & Lazenby, & how the Tenements are sold?
{Was forfeited by \ Leonard / [Dacre][386] by Attorney to the Crown in Queen Elizabeths Time – Granted by Lease to Sir George Dalston in dower with his daughter upon the death of R[387]Dakers 10. of K. 1.[388] The …

[384] MS: 'soons'.
[385] Possibly used when making drawings at Sockbridge Hall?
[386] A word here is obscured by the binding.
[387] The rest of this word is obscured by the binding. It could refer to Randal Dacre, who died without issue in 1634. His tombstone at Greystoke is inscribed, 'Randal Dacre Esq. sonne & hyre to Francis Dacre Esquire, deceased, being the youngest son of the last Lord William Dacre, deceased, being the last hyre male of that lyne; which said Randal dyed at London …' See Burke's *Genealogical History of the Dormant, Abeyant, Forfeited and Extinct Peerages of the British Empire* (London, 1866), 153.
[388] Charles I.

Line. Francis Leonard [Lord] of (Herst-Monceux) the[389] as heir general. & The Earle of Sussex his son.[390]}
Mr Tho [blank] has a ped[igree] & Lawyer Dalston has a booked case of it.
Tenement Sold ~~free~~ in 77 or 78 to a pepercorne fine West'land & 1[d] Cumberland – remaneing a Customary Estates – with grant of woods, green hews & Heriots – due only from a widow only for which she injoy […][391]

[389] This word is partially obscured by the binding.
[390] Francis Lord Dacre (died 1662) had a son, Thomas, who married Lady Anne Fitzroy, natural daughter of Charles II and Barbara, Duchess of Cleveland. Thomas was created earl of Sussex in 1674. As Lord of the Bedchamber to Charles II, he quickly ran through his inheritance and was obliged to sell Herst-Monceaux: Arthur Collins, *A Supplement to the Four Volumes of the Peerage of England* (London, 1750), 500.
[391] The rest of the sentence is obscured by the binding.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 6]

[Parish of Brough under Stainmore]

[**Machell's Initial Notes**]

[I.389]

{Extent paroch.}
Burgh is ~~a parish~~ of a very large extent by reason of its libertyes upon the great fells or wastes, and is supposed to be 3 score miles in circumference following the bo[u]nders.[1]

[I.438]

For the bounds of the Parish of Brough joyneing on Mickleton in Yorkshire see Ryleys *Pl. Parl* page 658.[2]

[I.389]

{Descrip[tion] Church} The church, to which were appendant 2 chaples, both gon to decay.[3]

{Villages appertaneing & what observable in them}
And to this church doth belong –
1. Castle Brough otherwise called Church Brough, and Anciently Over Brough.
2. Markett Brough, anciently Under Brough.[4]
3. Hellebeck.
4. Oxenthwate. Here is a fine quarry att an hamlett in Stanemore called Oxenthwate, which is supposed the stone which built both the Church and Castle wer fetched and there are Cole pitts which yeald the best Coale in all Europe.[5]
5. Eywbanke or Iubanke.
6. Stanemore, a kinde of ~~a~~ dale where the houses stand remote one from an other.
7. Sowerby juxta Burgh.

{Number of Lordships; of which in particular}
The Lordships in this parish are \ Brough, Ewbanke, Hellebeck, Sowerby, Stanemore. /

1. **Brough, to which belongs both the vills of that name.**

[I.393]

[**Church; Chapels**]

[St Michael, Brough]

The Steeple[6] at Brough Church was built the 4. or 5th of Henry 8. [1512-14], and the stone led from the

[1] MS.III.384 contains another draft. Viz. 'Brough is a Large Parish & therefore the greater by reason of its extraordinary extent upon the fell; it reach from ~~in~~ [blank] in the east to [blank] in the West [blank] mile and from [blank] in the north to [blank] in the South [blank] miles the whole circumference is supposed to be about 3 miles. There are in it these Lordship:1. Upper Brough, which belongs to [blank] 2. Underbrough, which belongs [blank] 3. Helbeck, which belongs to [blank] 4. Stanemore, which belongs to [blank].'
[2] William Ryley the elder [Lancaster Herald] and William Ryley the younger, *Placita Parliamentaria Or Pleadings in Parliament, with Judgments thereon in the Reign of Edward the First and Edward the Second … Containing … Statutes, Ordinances, Provisions, Inhibitions, Forms of Writs on several occasions, Prohibitions, Proclamations, with the Confirmation of Magna Charta and Charta de Foresta. As also of some other Records taken out of the Tower of London which prove the Homage anciently due to the Kings of England from Scotland, and the Establishment of Ireland under the Laws of England* (London, 1661).
[3] MS: 'The church is to which belongs \ were appendant / 2 chaples both gon to decay.'
[4] See *N&B1*, 577.
[5] MS: This passage on Oxenthwaite can be found upside down on MS.I.389, headed 'Barton Parish' but used instead for notes on Brough. MS III.384 contains a precis: 'Oxenthwate, an Hamlett where the quarryes is, whence the stones of the Castle & Church were brought.'
[6] I.e. the tower.

Quarell[7] By Thomas Fudergil, William Jackson junior, Thomas Jackson & William Rud, who were bound to Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. in 10li for performance of that & other Articles relateing to the Steple which Thomas gave allso in his will 1522, iiij marks with lime & other necessaries to the building of an Ile from the end of Our Ladye's Ile unto the revestry.

{Lights: 3 – Lady, Rood, St Michael light}
He caused that window wherein the Blenkinsops Armes now are consisting of 3 lights to be made, where he ordered that a closset should be made before St James. So that it seemes Brough Church had its greatest ornaments about this time There was a singing schoole of Our Ladye's Chaple at Brough at this time allso, & a master that taught.
The north Ile was called Our Lady Ile, or Lady Porch, & the little Quire where the Blenkinsops sat was called the Clousett, wher stood an Aulter to the Virgin Mary in time of superstition & popery.[8]
{The Tower was demolished & the timber sold by Thomas, Earle of Thanet, in 1685 or 1686? when he was repareing Ap[pleby.}

[I.423]

In St Michael att Brough.[9]
(i.e.) 1. the Quire: 2. the Church.
In both. 1. Windows 2. Monastij.
Note. Take 1^{t}. East window. 2. The right-hand side. 3. The left: i.e. south.

In the East window which has 3 lights.
The 1^{t} Virgin Mary; the 2nd the Crucifix; the 3^{d} as I suppose the other Mary. Above the Cruxifix has bin the Armes of Cliffords, a part of the check[10] rem[ains] yett. And writ underneath all in text letters.[11]

> Orate pro a[n]ima Magistri Thomae Ryge quondam vicarii istius Ecclesie et pro animabus parentum benefactor[um] p[a]rochianorum \ suorum / ac omnium fidelium defunctorum quorarum animas prope. Deus an[no] D[omi]n[i] M: CCCC XXIIII[12]

In the window next south side 3 lights:
In the 1. att the Top an Escutcheon Azure with the hands & feet of Our Saviour saltier wise \ Argent / and a hart in fess po[i]nt Gules. They are the 5 Vulnera,[13] in honour of which the pap[ists] keep a festival. In the midle of the said ligh[t] are the Lady Mary with a crowne on her head in blew robe under which some little children ~~praying to~~ \ kneeling before / St Michael and underneath a scrowle from St M. in text: Ora pro nobis St Michael.[14] St Michael is pictured with green wings, a scarlett robe above a white one, as St Mary has allso, and a pair of scales in his right hand; in one scale a catt or a

[7] Quarry.
[8] See *N&B1*: 'Adjoining to which Ile, from the east end thereof towards the vestry was a little quire called the closet', 572.
[9] Machell began with the east window in the chancel and continued south, west and north. See *N&BI*, 572-73, where, in a description of the church windows, it was noted that Machell had 'a peculiar taste that way [and] took a particular account of so much as there was remaining thereof, about the year 1675.'
[10] 'Chequy': a method of partition of a field on a coat of arms: A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 98.
[11] 'Text letters'/ 'Textura'. One of a group of typefaces first used in the earliest printed books, distinguished by narrow, angular letters and a strong vertical emphasis; also, the manuscript hand on which these typefaces were based. *OED*.
[12] 'Pray for the soul of Master Thomas Ryge former vicar of this Church; and for the souls of his predecessors, the benefactors and parishioners, and all the faithful dead. Let God be with their souls. 1424.' This date is problematic, as on I.171 (see below) Machell referred to Rigg as alive in 1522. If he had died in the 16th century, then Machell has omitted a numeral: 'C'. In 1703, William Nicolson saw the inscription as, 'Orate pro Anima Magistri Thomæ Ryge quondam Benefactor et parochianorum suorum ac omnium', but did not continue further (See Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48), leaving Nicolson and Burn to remark that the date was illegible 'in Bishop Nicolson's time': *N&B1*, 569.
[13] 'Wounds'.
[14] 'Pray for us St Michael'.

Lyon. Underneath in a Roundell the Resurrection of Xt.
In the midle the Virgin Mary praying in the same Robes with the former & yallow haire, with St Michael as I suppose from his roobes behind her \ with hand erect desjoyned / but that there are no wings; & above her head Our Saviour with a globe in his left hand, butt all much defaced. Something there has bin both under and above uniforme to the other, but are broke & gon.
~~In~~ the 3d. In the midle a Bishop with a Booke in his right hand, a crosier cross in his left. a read cope with golden edge under which blew fringed read & green & under that white. Above his head is an escutcheon with all the instruments of our Saviours persicution, & under neath in a Roundell, Queens College Armes.[15] And upon a sc[r]owle wrapt about the round ~~wreath~~ \ rodd: / Meus Jhe \ est / amor.[16] & the same Inscription \ under though[17] both windows. /[18]

In the 2nd South window \ over the doore / are 2 lights. In the first Virgin Mary \ Virgo Deifera[19] / with our Saviour in her right arme & a sceptre in the left hand. Underneath, this Coat of Armes, Argent a † Sable*; and on a scrowle wrapt about a Rod in [a roundel][20] Karl. Karlil[21] repeated above a T.
In the next St George; what was beneath is go[n] but above is an R, answering the T for Thomas Rige. Underneath both, the same inscription compleat as before.

On the 3d, St Edward the Confessor in the 1t. Nothing on the next. Above both, T.B. Underneath it nothing but the fragments of the same inscription, as above.[22]

[Machell's Notes: I.423]

*q. if Ryggs.

[I.424]

There is besides in this quire on the N. side thereof, a fair through with a Brode marble stone neither pollished nor inscribed where a vaulte has bin sup[posed].
On the south side the Aultar a strait marble stone thus inscribed.

> Here lyes Mr | Gabriel Vin | cent Stuart | to the R[ight] H[onourable] Ann Clifford | Countiss Dow | ager of Pen | Brooke Dorsett | and Montgomery | and Chief | Director of all | Her buildings in the North | who dyed [in] The Romane | Tower of | Brough Castle | Like a good | Xtian the |12th of February | 1665. 1666. | Lookeing for | the Second Comeing of | Our Saviour | Jesus Xt*.[23]

[15] Here follows a 1½ cm square sketch of the arms. Queen's College, Oxford, had the advowson, with rectorial rights to much of the parish. See Margaret E. Gowling, *The Story of Brough-under-Stainmore* (Kirkby Stephen, 2011), 44, 100. Robert de Eglesfield, founder of Queen's College, served as an MP for Cumberland in 1328, but at some point he decided to take holy orders. On 28 March 1331, the year in which we first find Eglesfield as a king's clerk, Edward III decided to present him to the first void benefice in the king's gift worth over 20 marks; accordingly, in July 1332, he was admitted to the rectory of Brough, said at the time of his resignation in 1344 to be worth £53 16s. 7d. p.a. Only an acolyte when admitted to Brough, Eglesfield was ordained deacon in December 1332 and priest in February 1333, in each case by the bishop of Carlisle. Remaining in royal service, Eglesfield did not reside in Brough. See J. Kaye, 'Eglesfield [Egilsfeld], Robert [Robert de Eglesfeld] (c. 1295-1349), founder of Queen's College, Oxford'. *ODNB*.
[16] 'My Jesus is love.'
[17] Transcribed as seen.
[18] Some words in this interlineation are unclear. William Nicolson described Eaglesfield's arms, which he saw in a quire window near the image of St Michael, as 'Three Spread Eagles, Gules, in a Field (as I take it) Argent,' *Misc. Accts*, 47.
[19] 'Virgin, God bearer [Mother of God].'
[20] Here Machell used a circle symbol.
[21] 'Karl Karlil' refers to bishops of Carlisle, see *N&B1*, 572.
[22] Some of the text at the page foot has perished.
[23] See Machell on Appleby (I.296), where he denigrates Vincent's work on the church of St Lawrence: '[Lady Anne Clifford] had a \ very / great opinion for \ his / skill in Architecture (as may be seen by his monument att Brough). But he had none att all as appears by his works.'

In Blenkinsop Quire

1. Above the 5 vulnera (In the Little E. window – Father Son & Holy Ghost ut opposite stand Mary.)
2. ~~In~~ the N. window \ has / 3 lights. In the 1[t] Virgin Mary ~~above which~~ or rather St Catherine tho she be crowned for she has in her left hand a Catherine wheale; her hair yallow, her Out robe white, her Inner yallow floored.[24] Above, the Arms of the Blenkinsops quartered.[25] 1. Vert frette Argent, which I take to be Salkeld; the 2[nd] Vass[26] de Vallibus. Argent a Bend boerd Counter Compone[27] Or & Gule.[28] 3[d]. Helbeck, Gule 6 Annuletts Or within a border ingraled Argent (which I take to be Vipont). In the next a Bishop in white with a Cross crosier; above ~~which~~ Blenkinsops armes \ i.e. / Argent a fess between 3 garbes Sable. On the fess a Cres[cent] for descent of the ~~1[t] or~~ 2 house. In the third a maiden saint all in wite powderd with flooredelys. Pinion'd about her Armes. Over the brest.[29]

In the Body of the Church

The 1[t] south window i.e. the upper window in dimond squares, IHS, i.e. Iesus Hom[inum] Sal[vator], in yallow Letters \ all over.[30] / In the underneath has bin 2 saints in either light & some inscription under them but all defaced \ & obliterated & broken. / Betwixt this and the next window is a monument in the wall with a through comeing oute, the supporting side being hansome cutworke.[31] It is reported to be maide for One Brunskill who lived on

[Machell's Notes: I.424]

*Memorandum: writ in Capital Letters.

[I.425]

Stanemore in the remotest part of the parish and \ had / a great many cattle. One time it hapned that his bull fell a bellowing, which in that Country they call cruneing. Whereupon he said to one of his neighbours, hearest thow not how Loude this Bull crewnes; if they should all crewne together {!} might they not be heard from B[rough] hither? He answerd ~~this~~ yess. Well then said Brunskill. I'le make them all crewne together; & he sowld them all; \ & / with the prise whereof he bought 4 bells now in Brough Church* the greatest of which is 15 or 1600 weight.[32]

In the great ally near to the reading deske is a gravestone, and upon a piece of brass ~~with~~ this inscription in text.

> Hic jacet Thom B\l/enkinsop armiger de Helbeck et Katarina uxor ejusdem q[i] q[id].[33] Thms obijt X[0] die julij anno domini MLL[0] LXXIIII[0] quorum animabus pepercit Deus[34]

[24] Flowered.
[25] Here Machell drew a small sketch of the arms' shape.
[26] Two letters superimposed here make the word unclear, but it probably refers to the family of Vaux.
[27] Counter-Compony: a border, bend, etc., which is composed of two rows of checkers of alternate tinctures: https://heraldry.celticradio.net/history.php?id=4.
[28] Here Machell drew a small sketch of checkers.
[29] When William Nicolson visited in 1703, he noted that though the Quire was 'in a position quite unbecoming', there were 'two large and handsome seats' at its entrance: one erected by Thomas Gabetis (died 1694); the other by the vicar, Christopher Harrison, who had placed it there in 1682. As Machell did not comment on these seats, it would seem that he visited the church before 1682. See *Misc Accts*, 47-48.
[30] A Christogram popularised by St Bernardino of Siena in the 15th century. He and his followers often showed IHS on a background of rays of the burning sun. See Don C. Skemer, *Binding Words: Textual Amulets in the Middle Ages* (State College, 2006), 115.
[31] The next [short] word is blotted.
[32] See this tale repeated in *N&BI*, 571.
[33] The meaning of the shortened word is unclear but might be 'quoque', meaning 'also'. In 1703, William Nicolson rendered this part of the inscription simply as 'uxor ejusdem Thome': 'wife of the same Thomas': see Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48.
[34] 'Here lies Thomas Blenkinsop, squire, of Helbeck and Katharine wife of the same Thomas, who died 10th day of July in the year of the Lord 1674, on whose souls God has had mercy.' Quoted in Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I* (Kendal, 1888), 128.

Vereor ne abusive (nisi sit MLL. LXXXIIIJ) for they have not bin so long there.[35]

The Reading Deske there (which is a very hansome one with a canopie over it) was given by one Cuthbert Bucle Lord Major of London†. He was borne upon Stanemore in this Parish and founded a schoole there endoweing it with about 10^{li} per Annum \ & another in Brough, ni fallor[36] – Mr Harreson.[37] / He was a Benefactor to Queens College in Oxon ni fallor; vid. Stows *Cron*.[38] His name is upon the deske thus: by Cuthbert Buckle. Anno domini 1576‡.

2. – In the 2 S. window 2 Lights. In the 1^{t} St Peter {?} & under him the Virgin Mary \ & / ~~and~~ a boy praying ~~with~~ with scrowle from his mou[t]h: mater dei.[39] & under them both: Sancta Maria ora pro nobis.[40] In the next light Our Saviour sitting a chare. All up and down JHS.

3. \ In the 3^{d} which is beyond the pulpit. 3 lights. / In the 1^{t} light. St John. Underneath, St Michael in white with yallow edgeing & yallow wings; in the one s\c/ale a child; in the other a dragon or Devel. In the next, Virgin Mary with Xt in one hand & septer in the other, in white; under, a monke prayeing with this scrowle: fili dei miserere mei.[41]
In the 3^{d} St Xtfer under which somthing defaced. Under itt writt Orate pro a[n]i[m]a D[om]ini Thome Rud Qui istam fenestram fieri fecit↓.[42]

4. – In the fourth south window, all Saints their picture & names & scaleing ladders from the 7 sacriments.

[Machell's Notes: I.425]

*Memorandum: I have an account of the steple building & Bells makeing – q. here they agre?
†(Note, vide Johe. de Vorags A\u/rea Legend.)[43]
‡If this was not the same with the Buckels J.M. of Wender marryed with.
↓{Thomas Rud, they say, was vicar here.}

[I.426]

In the 5th Sth window 2 Lights – In the 1^{t} St John Baptist; In the nex[t,] St John Evangelist with dragon in cup.[44] Under the Baptist, STE JOHE \ i.e. St Johanne. / Above them in a little part of the window Virgin Mary sitting on a throne.
In the 2 lesser lights on each side, the 1^{t}. HIS, the 2nd, M[ary].

In the 6. nothing.
{Ult 6} In the steeple window St John with the cup, & in a little vacancy, Musgraves armes.

Take this range 1t.
5.[45] – In the west end window a great R for Rigge.

[35] 'I am concerned that this is incorrect. (unless it be MLL. LXXXIIII).' Machell's initial reading of the text seems to suggest 'MLL^{0} = millesimo' and 'LXXIIII = septuagesimo quarto': 1074. This could also be read (loosely) as 1274. Machell then corrects the date to 1084 or 1284, but this is equally problematic because the Bellasis transcription of the date (copying Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48) is 1674. Clearly, something is missing from the inscription.
[36] 'Unless I am mistaken.' The Free Grammar School in Brough was founded as a chapel by John Brunskill and Thomas Blenkinsop in 1506, see I.393 and I.431; see also *N&B1*, 573-75.
[37] Machell's informant was Christopher Harrison, vicar of Brough, 1664-95. CCED.
[38] In 1591, 'Mr Alderman Buckle' of London presented a copy of the King's Bible to Queen's College, Oxford, 'though membership of the college is not thereby inferred.' See J.R. Magrath, *The Queen's College*, 2 vols (Oxford, 1921), Vol. 2: 258, 266-69.
[39] 'Mother of God.'
[40] 'Saint Mary, pray for us.'
[41] 'Son of God have mercy on me.'
[42] 'Pray for the soul of Lord Thomas Rud who had this window made.'
[43] Jacobus de Voragine (c.1230-1298), *Legenda Aurea* (The Golden Legend): 13th-century book on the lives of the major saints. The first dated editon was published in Barcelona in 1494.
[44] In a chalice.
[45] MS: 'Ult 5'.

On the North Isle.
4. – The 1ᵗ window toward the west end, 2 Lights. In the first a saint defaced; in the second, with Inscription, St John Cryzostem.[46] He has a furr about his neck, a read cope with […][47] sep.[48] upon a blew vesture. Up & down, IHS & M in distinct panes.

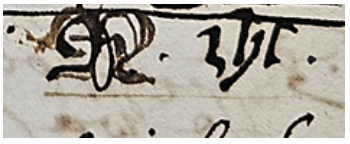


Figure 1.6.1. 'IHS & M'. I.426.

3. – The 2nd window 2 Lights. In the 1ᵗ these Lett[ers] in text: Petere may \ be / St Peters picture. In the second, St John of Beverlay in text underneath his picture.[49] \ Here & there / ~~He~~ sparsim[50] M and IHS.
2. The 3d. 2 lights. In the 1ᵗ the Angel Gabriel saluteing the Virgin who has bin placed in the next light; from his mouth a scrowle inscribed, Ave gracia plena dominus tecum.[51] In the next has bin the Virgin Mary, the Holy Ghost ascending, and Xt with a cross descend[ing], the picture quite defaced. But the scrowle, confusedly changed, leaves this inscription – e~~x~~ce fiat mⁱ scdm vʳtm tuu {i.e. ecce fiat mihi secundum voluntatem tuum ...}.[52] Above all in the interspace an escutcheon Or, with a hammer & pair of pincers Sable.
1. In the 4th. 3 lights, the 1ᵗ St John Baptist. 2nd has bin (ut puto)[53] the Virgin Mary with a ball in her hand and underneath a little crucifix. In the 3d St John with the Cupp. In the 2 greater vacancyes, the 1ᵗ. Argent, the cross over which the spear & spunge saltierwise betwixt 2 whips saltierwise on the right & 3 dyce in 3 angle with 3 nales Sable, the rest Or. The other Argent Crowne of Thorne staves & money Or. Sparsim JHS. M.[54]

In the Vicarage House[55]
{Robert Eglefield}
On each side the Gate right hand IHS, & under that T.R. for Thomas Ryge, who built it and the wall on the other side, M. In the parlour the College Arms[56] & an Eagle with this Le[m]ma[57] – nosce te ipsum.[58] St Ellens picture with a chaple & crosses. In the hall, Bishop Rob. Armes impaled to Carlile.[59] 1. Carlile. 2. Azure a pike bendwise Argent on a fess of the 2nd a red rose between 2 roundlets Gules; eagles in severall parts.[60]

---

[46] Lived AD 347-407. Archbishop of Constantinople.
[47] See the Eastern Orthodox cross in Figure 1.6.1, beneath.
[48] As St John Chrysostom died on 14 September 407, 'sep' could represent a shortened form of 'sepultus est': 'he was buried'. In the Eastern Orthodox Church the feast days of St John Chrysostom are 14 September, 13 November and 27 January; the 'sep.' here might also refer to this saint's September death and feast day.
[49] St John of Beverley d. 721, was bishop of Hexham, then of York. https://beverleyminster.org.uk/saint-john-of-beverley/.
[50] 'Here and there.' Machell provided the translation as an interlineation.
[51] 'Hail Mary full of Grace; the Lord is with thee.'
[52] 'Lo, be it unto me according to thy will.'
[53] 'As I think.'
[54] 'Here and there, JHS. M.'
[55] When William Nicolson visited the house in 1703, he described it as, 'still low, moist and smoaky', Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48.
[56] Queen's College, Oxford, see below.
[57] 'Lemma': motto appended to a picture. *OED*.
[58] 'Know thyself.'
[59] Henry Robinson, bishop of Carlisle, 1598-1616.
[60] The text has perished at this point but Nicolson & Burn continue it as, 'being the arms of Eglesfield', *N&B1*, 573. This agrees with Machell's margin comment, 'Robert Eglefield' [plus two illegible words] on I.426, above. William Nicolson described Eaglesfield's arms (in a quire window near the image of St Michael) as 'Three Spread Eagles, Gules, in a Field (as I take it) Argent,' Nicolson, *Misc.Accts*, 47.

[I.171]

Vicar of Brough

John de Marton	3^{0} Rich.2	[1379-80][61]
Joh Hugon Vic. perpet.	3^{0} Henry 5	[1415-16]
John Pennener	2^{0} Hen.6	[1423-24]
Thom. Rud	25. H.6	[1446-47]
Rood	2 Ed.4	[1462-63]
Thom. Rigg 1522	4^{0} H. 8	1532[62]
John Conyers ~~Rector~~ Parson	14. H.8	[1522-23]
Mr Tompson V[icar]	H.8	1536[63]

[I.389]

The famous R[obert]. E[aglesfield] Chaplaine to Q[ueen] Philippa cousine[64] of King Edward 3. who was founder of Queens College in Oxford, was once Rector there.[65]

[I.422]

[Notes on Tithes]

{Brough. See more sub Tit. Apleby} Ad Rectoriam[66]

This Account was sent up to Queens College at Oxon By Mr Hexteter[67] as I take it Mr Richardsons predicessor 1623 concerning the Tythes.[68] Sc. In kinde all the wooll Lamb Corne and 4^{li}: 13^{s}: 5^{d} per Annum by an ancient prescription for the corne of Helbeck and hay of All Stanemore. About the same time wool was sold as I remember for 8^{s} a stone: And Tythe Lambes for 2^{s} 6^{d} a peece. {Tell Mr Harrison of this.}[69]

This paper is now in Dr Haltons custody: Provost of Queenes. April 26. 1678.[70]

---

[61] Also recorded by John F Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward): St Michael, Brough', *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*. CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 94-109.

[62] Henry VIII's 4th regnal year was 1512-13.

[63] Robert Thompson, incumbent from 1535: see John F Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward): St Michael, Brough', *Later Records,* 94-109.

[64] Philippa of Hainault, wife of Edward III, was also his second cousin.

[65] Robert Eaglesfield founded Queen's College, Oxford, in 1341; he was rector of Brough from 1332 to 1344. He did not live in Brough, though he visited the hospital of St Nicholas, Carlisle, in 1335: J. Kaye, Eglesfield [Egilsfeld], Robert [Robert de Eglesfeld] (c. 1295-1349). *ODNB*.

[66] 'Concerning the Rectory.'

[67] David Hechstetter BD was vicar of Brough from 1611 until 1623. CCED. He matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1594; BA. 1596-97, see *OAD*. The family came to Cumberland as mining consultants from Augsburg: W.G. Collingwood, *Elizabethan Keswick: Extracts from the Original Account Books, 1564-1577, of the German Miners in the Archives of Augsburg*, CWAAS Tract Series 8 (Kendal, 1912), 120-25.

[68] William Richardson was rector of Brough from 1623 until his death in 1664. The Commonwealth Survey of 1657 relates the following: 'That the right of presentation to the church is in the Provost and Fellows of Queen's College, Oxford. That Mr. William Richardson is present incumbent there and hath for his maintenance the glebe land which is worth £10 by the year and the tithes of calves with all other small tithes and dues within the parish of Brough which are worth £16 by the year. That all the rest of the tithes within the said parish do appertain to the said College and are worth £60 by the year.' See www.british-history.ac.uk/n-westmorland-records/vol8/pp94-109.

[69] Christopher Harrison MA was vicar of Brough from 1664 until his death in 1695, having been previously preacher at Crosby on Eden. CCED. He was admitted servitor at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1649, BA 1651, MA 1653-54, fellow 1654, incorporated at Cambridge 1658: see *OAD*. See also Bishop's Register: CAC(C), DRC1/4/245: Institution of Christopher Harrison to Brough.

[70] Timothy Halton, (bap. 1633, d. 1704), was the second son of Miles Halton (1599-1652) of Greenthwaite Hall, high sheriff of Cumberland, and his wife, Dorothy (1608-1697), daughter of William Wybergh. He was baptised at Greystoke in 1633, educated at Blencow Grammar School, and in 1649 entered Queen's College, Oxford, where his tutor was Thomas Smith, later bishop of Carlisle. He was a friend of Joseph Williamson (1633-1701), later Secretary of State, and Thomas Lamplugh (1615-1691), later archbishop of York. Halton was elected provost of Queen's College on 7 April 1677. See A. Hegarty, 'Halton, Timothy (bap. 1633, d. 1704), college head'. *ODNB*.

[I.185]

[**Chapel: Further Brough**]
There was a chaple att Brough in Henry 3. time as I take it, for Sir Michael Harcla is witness. And it should seem to have bin founded by Thomas de Musgrave (as appears from these words if they may denote any more than patronage)
Thom. fil Thomae Musgrave salutem. Sciatis me &c. dedisse. Deo et beat[e] Mar[iae] Virg[inis] & capellæ meæ de Burgo sub Stanemor, & Dom[ino] Will[iamo] de Askaby capellano et successoribus suis ibidem. Deo servientibus quos ego et Heredes mei ad predictam capellam presentare voluerimus om[n]es terras prata &c. subscripta.[71]

The Late Chapple was founded by Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., who gave the ground, & John Brunskale, who built the same, as appears [in] the licence of Will. Bishop of Carlile for erecting of the same, dated 1496, 19 June.

[I.393]

It was founded intentionally 1493, 7. Henry 7. by Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., who gave the Tenement whereon it stands, called Gib Garth, to John Brunskale upon condition that he should build a Chaple there att his owne proper cost & an Hospice or harbour with 2 Bedes in it for Strangers (or pilgrims) and other poore people and maintane and repare the same for ever, paying to him & his heires 2^{d} rent at Pentcost yerely; and upon defalt of repareing & mantaineing the said Chaple, Harbour & Beds, as before specifyed, that the Tenement should revert to Thomas and his heires as formerly. It was build to the honour of the Blessed Virgin & St Gabriel the Archangel, & consequently dedicated to them allso, as is apparent from the foresaid writeing.[72]

[I.413]

{St Marys Chaple at Brough founded}
\ T.B. Esq. / He gave a tenement in Brough called Gibgarth to John Brunskale, upon condition that he should build thereupon a chaple in Hon[our] of the Blessed Virgin Mary & St Gabriel the Archangel: reseveing to him selfe & heirs 2^{d} rent at Penticost if demanded ~~upon~~, and allso that he should build an hospitum with 2 Bedds in the same to harbour strangers & other poore people, \ all / which were to be kept in repare {!!! !!!} by Brunskale & his heires; otherwise to revert to him & his heirs: dated 1493. Regnald & Robert Warghethecop Esqs witnesses inter alios. 7. Henry 7. [1491-92] vixit 17. Henry 7. [1501-02]. {He dyed about 1. Henry 8.} [1509-10].

[Machell's Notes: I.185]

[Further notes on the Chantry Chapel, above]
And there was a little hospitall allso, which was built for poore travaliers relief, because of the Storme Tempest &c. which were so frequent upon Stanemore, & they who putt to their helping handes & were pen[itent] were to have 4 dayes pardon. The chapple allso was built in consideration of the church being so remote from the Through Road Towne, that priest might be &c.
9. Ed. 4. [1469-70]. T. Mauchel – Thomas Lancaster came then about? (at least was then) \ to / att Brampton.

[I.390]

Burgh Subtus Stanesmore [Lordship and Castle][73]

{Lordship of Brough: wat villages in it; what the demane & manner house?} {who inhabitants?}

[71] 'Thomas son of Thomas Musgrave. Greetings. Let it be known that I etc. have given to God and the blessed Virgin Mary and my chapel of Brough-under-Stanemor & to Lord William of Askaby, chaplain, and his successors there, servants of God (whom I and my heirs have willed to present to the aforesaid chapel) all the lands, meadows etc. listed below.'
[72] Presumably the writing referred to was the deed of gift of Gibgarth; for evidence relating to the history of this chapel, see Gowling, *Brough-under-Stainmore*, 70-71; Gowling quotes 1506 as the date of its endowment by John Brunskill as a 'separate institution [from St Michael's Church] …connected with the holy well of St Winifred.'
[73] 'Brough is commonly expressed by the description of Brough under Stanemore, to distinguish it from the same name, of which there are many', *N&B1*, 577.

{8. Edward 2. [1314-15] est ibidem unum castrum &c.}[74]
There is there One Castle, with[in] the precinct of the trenches whose Herbage valet per annum, vj^{s} viii^{d}. ~~Cl~~ iiij \ xx /[75] Acres of demane land, 22 whereof at the least are each of them worth per Annum 9^{d}, & they amount to vj^{li}, xiij^{s}, iiij^{d}.[76] {?} lx Acres of medow, Each whereof valet per Annum xij^{d} per Acre, et est Summa lx^{s}. 2 Parkes whose Herbage cum Omnibus &c.[77] valet per Annum Cls;[78] Allso free Tenents who pay by the yere X^{s}; and Other free Tenents who pay per Annum 17^{s} 2^{d}.

There are allso 20 Oxgangs of Land worth 4^{s} per annum an Oxgang, and they amount to iiij^{li}. And x Tofts Cotterell[79] which are yerely worth 6^{d} per Toft, & summa est 5^{s}; And One Bakehouse which is worth with the measureing of the corne of the village 40^{s}. And One watermill burned & valet per Annum vj^{li}, xiij^{s}, iiij^{d}. Allso the Constableship is worth per Annum 40^{s}. Allso the profitts of the faires are worth per Annum x^{s}. There are Allso there 52 inferiour Burgages, 24 Tofts & one halfe; And they Are Burned, Each whereof valet per Annum xij^{d}. & they amount to 24^{s} 6^{d}.

Allso there are there upon Stanemore, Vaccaries which are Burnt, each whereof, with the middow ajoyning, valet per annum 10^{s}, and they Amount to C^{s} (so that there wer 10 vaccaries). Allso Alane de Cabergh Nicholas de Musgrave & Geofray de Tesedale Hold there 4 closes of new improvement & red[dit] per Annum Cxv^{s}, ~~&~~ q$^{a.}$[80]

{Agistamentum}[81]
And the Adjoyst[82] there is valet per Annum xi^{s}.
The pleas & perq[uisites] of the Court:[83] xiij^{s} iiij^{d}.
Summat[im] Totalis: xlix^{li} xviij^{s} iiij^{d} q^{a}. utrum de tot[ali] & demidi dubitat? [84]

ex ead[em] escæt cap Apud Ap 8. Edward 2. [1314-15]: in Tur London[85]

Sowerby Juxta Burgh[86]
Ibidem unum Capitale messuagium &c. There is there one Manner-House, which is worth by the yere: 0: 1: 0

xx/v[87] Acres of Land de Demane worth per Annum viii^{d}[88] an Acre & summa est	2:13: 4
xvi Acres of ~~dem~~. medow, worth in the yere per Acre, 18^{d} and summa est	1: 4: 0
2 Free Tennents who pay per Annum	0: 0: 7
xvj Oxgangs of Land quar quel valet per Annum 5^{s}.[89]	4: 0: 0
x messuages Cotterell, each whereof valet per Annum xij^{d} & summa est	10:10: 0

[74] Inquisition Post Mortem, Robert de Clifford, 8. Ed. 2. 1314-1315. 'There is there one castle etc.'
[75] This number represents four score = 80.
[76] £6 13s 4d.
[77] 'With all its appurtenances.' Another reference to parks in MS I.262B, provides, 'A place called Brough Parke of the dem[ain] lands belonging to Brough Castle, 1637, p.212. L[iber] 3.' For evidence of deer parks (including Brough Park) in Brough Parish, see Haydn Charlesworth, 'The medieval Parks of Brough-under-Stainmore', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 169-90.
[78] '150s.'
[79] Tofts Coterell: Homesteads and lands of cottagers. *OED*.
[80] 115s ¼d.
[81] Grazing.
[82] Agistment?
[83] Manor Court.
[84] In sum total, £49 18s 4¼d. It is uncertain whether this refers to the whole or the half.
[85] From an eschaetor's survey of Brough Parish taken in 8 Edward II (1314-1315), now in the Tower of London.
[86] Sowerby near Brough.
[87] The arithmetic only works if the sum represents 80 acres at 8d per acre (= £2 13s 4d) but the numbering suggests 25 acres. However, the price of viii per acre is unclear.
[88] Partly crossed-through numeral.
[89] 'Worth each year per annum.'

1 water mill, worth per Annum 2: 0: 0
And there is there 1 vaccarie worth per Annum 1: 6: 8
Summa est: xi^{li}, xv^{s}, vij^{d}

Ex Eodem Escheato? sed utrum de toto an de demid[io] Dubit[o].[90]

[I.389]

Brough Castle

And the Castle is the manner house, which (as Apleby) has bin a seat of The Morvills, after of the Viponts and in particular of Idonea de Labourne, 2 daughter of Robert de Vipont, to whose portion it fell, and that time is said to have bin in its prime. But after was governed for the most part by a Constable which Constablewik in [blank] time, was vallued upon inquisition att 40s. And one del Stanes had the place of old under the Cliffords. But in the yere [blank] it was passed to T.B.[91] de Helbeck Esq. \ & his heires / as way of lease for 500 yeres, so that it was never very much inhabited by these noble familyes which were owners of till of late that it was rebuilded by the Lady Ann Clifford, last of that name, who repared this & all her other Castles and lived in them all by courses; by that means distributing her benefitts and spending Her money with a great equality in all part of the country. And least it should falle to Ruine Agane, and the Glory thereof be quite Extinguished, I have presented you with a draught and plattforme.[92] But Quod nitet interius nulla Tabella [infert].[93]

[I.392]

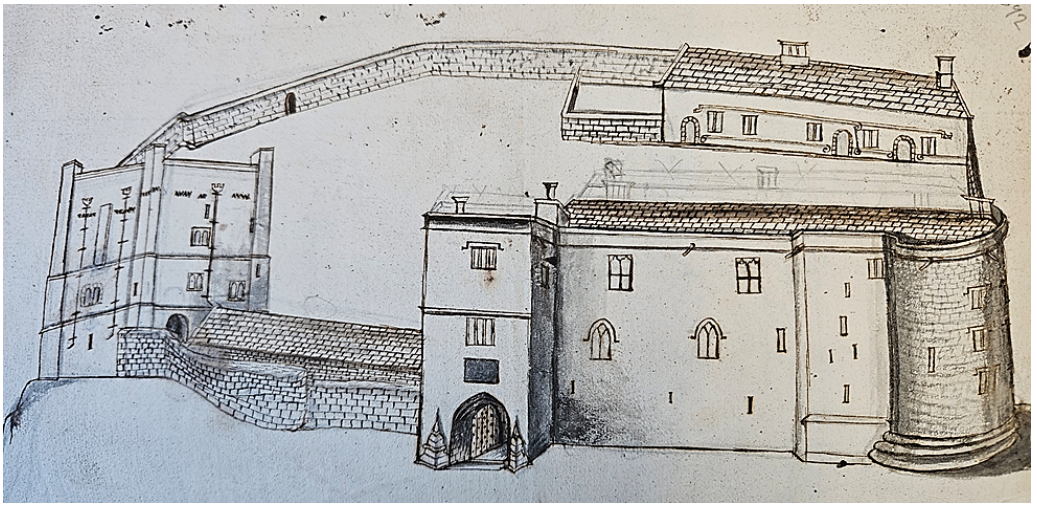


Figure 1.6.2. Elevation of Brough Castle. 1.392.

[90] 'But whether this concerns the whole or the half I am not sure.'
[91] Thomas Blenkinsop.
[92] For Machell's elevation and plan, see I.392, 392A.
[93] ''What shines within no picture can represent.'

[I.392A]

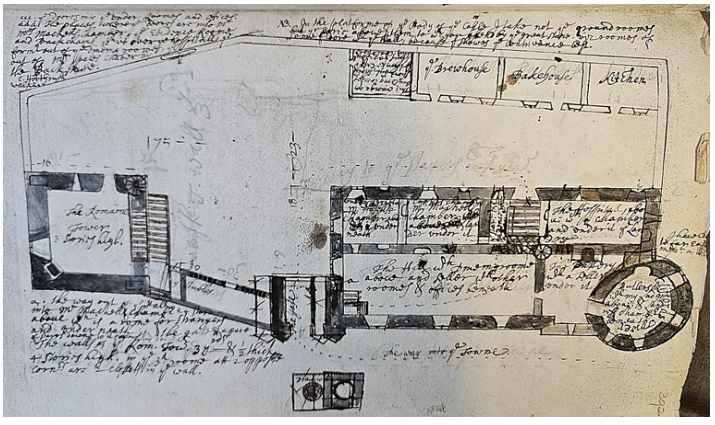


Figure 1.6.3. Plan of Brough Castle. 1.392A.

[Key to Machell's Plan of Brough Castle]

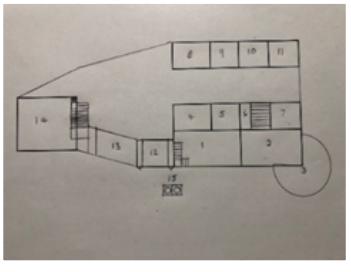


Figure 1.6.4. Key to Machell's Plan of Brough Castle (above).

[1.] The Hall with Dineing roome above and seller with other roomes & offices beneath.
[2.] The Buttery with a seller under it.
[3.] Cliffords Tower: Butlers ch[amber] with my Ladyes above & Landress chamber beneath.
[4.] Undersecre[tary] Mr \ W. / Hasells chamber abo[ve] with one underneath.
[5.] Cookes chamber (Mrs Machells ~~with a~~ chamber) ~~above~~) & larder under it.
[6.] The stare & Evidence room[94] above.
[7.] The Hospitall above with a chamber, and under it the Lau[n]drye.[95]
[8.] This range of Building comes short, but should, I think, extend thus far without this coale hole.
[9.] The Brewhouse.
[10.] Bakehouse.
[11.] Kitchen.
[12.] The Gate.
[13.] The Stables.
[14.] The Roman Tower, 3 storyes high 16 yards.[96]
[15.] Draw-well.

[94] The archive and strong room of the castle.
[95] There is a virtually illegible sentence in the margin here.
[96] 16 yards square.

The Romaine Tower, 3 Stories high
a: The way out of the Hall into Mr Machells Chamber è a stare,[97] above which is a rome for strangers, and underneath is the gate & a pare of stares downe to it from his doore.
[b.] The walls of the Roman Tower 3 yards & ½ thick, 4 stories high. In the 3^{d} roome att 2 opposite corners are 2 clossets in the wall.
ccc: The doores into the under roomes and offices.
ddd: The places where the doores are into Mr Machells Chamber, the evidence roome and Back chamber which is over the hospitall, the former out of the dineing roome, which out of Mrs Pates chamber by the Back stare.[98]
e. Hobthrush Walke.

[Machell's Notes: I.392A]

'About the T. Wall 3 Yards'; 'The Way to the Mayors Aula.'[99]
N.B. In the platform of the body of the Castle I take not the ground rooms but the storie above them, to which you ascend by the great stare, viz. rooms of same floore with the hall, because that showes the contrivance best.

[I.394]

The Castle within the walls cannot be extended, by reason that the cost bestowed thereupon exceeds the profit*.
There was then a Garden without the Castle, the Herbage whereof was extended to 1^{s}[100] per Annum†. In the 13. yere of Henry 8th 1521, the Ancient Castle of Brough under Stanemore was by a causualty sett on fire 2 yeres befor the death of Henry Lord Clifford, surnamed the shepherd, a little while after he had kept a great X^{t}mas there, so as nothing was left but the bare walls.[101] And so it lay, till built agane by the Lady Ann Clifford, Countiss D[owager] of Dorsett &c. [who] built it agane on the Old Foundation, so as she lodged 3 nights together ther, i.e. 16, 17, 18 of September, 1660: 1^{t} night in Cliffords or the Round Tower, the Other 2 in \ Tower called the / the Romanes.

[Machell's Notes: I.394]

*{1. Edward 3.} (N. It seemes they were all putt in repare then.)
†This should be Browham.

[I.395]

The outworkes are square, 7 s[core] & 10 passes in lenth, 5 sc. in bredth, measureing upon the top of the workes. Some other at the south end.
The court is about 91 passes in lenth. Considering allso the thickness of the walls = whereof the maine castle take up in lenth 28 p.; the stables 30; one side of Tower 16; Twixt the stable end an Tower wall 14 p.; the distance twixt stable end next Castle & the Castle about 8. {add 2}

Castle	28	}
Gate	5[102]	}
Stable	30	}94*
To the Tower	14	}†
Tower	16	}

The Bredth of Court from the Inside of the Court wall to the Outside of the gate, 41. Thus, from the outmost part of foreside the gate to corner of the Castle 18; from thence to the wall 23‡.

[97] In Lady Anne Clifford's accounts of 1665, Henry Machell (uncle to Thomas) is described as steward of Lady Anne's house and gentleman of her horse: see Jessica Malay (ed.), *Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writing, 1590-1676* (Manchester, 2018), 226.
[98] Frances Pate was Lady Anne Clifford's senior gentlewoman. She was left £50 in Lady Anne's will. Another gentlewoman attendant was Susan Machell (sister to Thomas). See Malay, *Lady Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writings*, 227.
[99] Written in pencil.
[100] The numeral '1' is partially obscured by a line.
[101] Machell was referencing Henry Clifford, born c.1454, whose youthful history was the stuff of novels. See Part 1, Ch.1, Town and Parishes of Appleby, I.254 (Generation 8 of the Cliffords).
[102] The numeral '5' has been superimposed on another numeral.

The tower walls are 3 yards thick. 4 sc[ore] & 15 steps up to the leads.
Walls thick in the round tower aboute 2 yard & ½.

[Windows: Coats of Arms]

Helbeck
Azure on a cheveron Argent 33 foyls Sable between 3 woulfes head Chiped Or.
Wife: Rayner of Lincolnshire, Ermin on a chief Azure. 2 starrs of 6 points Or.
Has 2nd Ewbanke coats Sable, 3 cheveronells in bass brased Or. On a Chief 3 harts. Crest a draggon head Or on a crownett Gules langed \ of the 2nd G[ules]. /
1. Blenkinsop Impaleing [blank], writ underneath Thomas Blenkinsop [blank] and Margaret, his wife, 158[blank]
In the midle higher Light, Blenkinsop quartering as at the church[103] Blenkinsop & Salkeld, 1586. ~~The House~~ Over the gate, 1588; over the great roome chimney H.- B. 1589.[104]

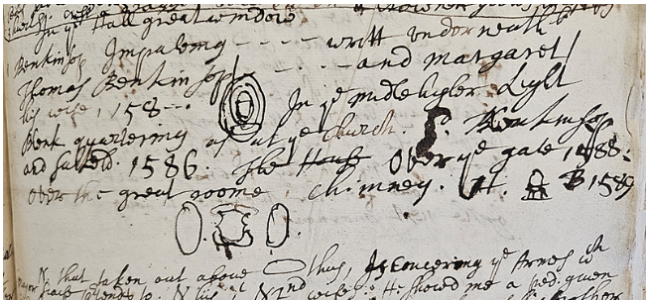


Figure 1.6.5. Sketches. I.395.

Note. That taken out above thus,[105] is concerning the arms which Major Scaife pretends to, & his 1t & 2nd wifes. He showd me a pedigree given in by his Brother of Winton last Visitation to Dugdale, Norroy,[106] as far as his brothers could remember, 4 or 5 generations. And he noted upon't that Mr Dugdale said the Scaifes had bin Gentlemen for 5 or 600 yeres {query a D[omi]no Dugdall}. That the[y] payd 25s fees to the said Sir Thomas Dugdale. The[n] he payd 26d for that Extract. Now I have heard on the contrary: that Mr Dugdall declared that he never ~~knew~~ \ heard / of a Gentleman of that name, & dismissed Major with a check, for he had that command under Oliver Cromwell in that Horrid rebellion & Civil War.[107]

[Machell's Notes: I.395]

*I tooke the whole to be but 91.[108]
†Rest no more; it is in a Direct Line.
‡Observe all this in drawing the platform over agane.

[103] The next word is blotted.
[104] There follows a roughly sketched coat of arms.
[105] See the small sketch in the figure above.
[106] William Dugdale was Norroy, King of Arms.
[107] On 13 July 1680, the Justices of Westmorland sent a letter to the Lord Chancellor protesting against the appointment of Arthur Skaife as a Justice. They remarked that Skaife 'was extraordinarily active in arms against the Crown, was a purchaser of Crown lands, and is a very different kidney from the gentlemen who have been put out.' A draft of this letter is excerpted in J.A. Bennett and R. Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890), 169, with an accompanying note stating that, after the receipt of the letter, Skaife was 'turned out'. For more on Major Arthur Scaife and the Civil War, see Gowling, *Brough-under-Stainmore*, 67, 76-7.
[108] The sum in the table totals 93.

[I.396]

When the great Breach in Cæsars Tower ther[109] was made up by the Countiss of Penbroke, the Lady Ann Clifford, 16 [blank][110] in the highest story about 3 foote & ½ from the floore, (Sc. Brest high) was a whole ~~discovered~~ to be seen exactly in the midle betwixt the out & inside of the wall, about 9 inches diameter & plastered smoth within with lyme & sand and this was supposed by the workmen to have gon all along the sides of Tower from corner to corner. But of what use it was they could not conjecture; may be it was for to whisper & give notice from the opposite corner (in which there are clossets) of the approach of an enemie. But there were none in the Turrets or any other place that \ the workmen could discover. T. Yare one of the carpenter[s].[111]



Figure 1.6.6. Margin sketch. Impression of the old roof of the Roman Tower at Brough Castle. 1.396.

And they say allso that old Roofe had not bin made neither flat nor Ridged, but with a gutter quite contrarie way, & appeared & doth still appeare from the table of stone to cast of the water from the walls to the Roofe (i.e. to receive water in case of a siege?).[112]

[Hobthrush Walk]

There is a place calld Hobth\ r /osh Hole, in the Court Wall of the Castle, Noreast & not far from the Tower, so named they say from a spirit that used to walke there, concerning which they relate many

[109] Machell probably meant the 'Roman Tower' at Brough. 'Caesar's Tower' is at Appleby.

[110] Lady Anne Clifford had the castle restored during 1659-62. See Gowling, *Brough-under-Stainmore*, 70.

[111] T. Yare was Machell's informant.

[112] The received view is that a roof of this form was installed by Lady Anne Clifford, but Machell's text and the structural evidence together show that the succession of roofs was as follows: 1. c.1130s: steeply pitched with central ridge well down below the parapets, with built-in roof-crease (which can only be original). 2. Later Middle Ages: replaced by a central-valley roof, as shown by the 12 corbels on North and South, which can only have carried wall-purlins carrying the tops of rafters descending to the valley. This is the 'olde roof', as described to Machell after the event by Lady Anne's workman (or others reporting their former findings) of which he identified traces, and of which - clearly intrigued - he added a reconstruction drawing in the margin of his MS (I.396, above). 3. April-September 1660 (for this date see Malay, *Lady Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writings*, 152-53): a wholly new roof, very low-pitched, installed at higher level, allowing for a new floor (a fourth level; third floor) to be added underneath it but still within and below the parapets. New windows were cut through the East and West walls to light it, and access to it hacked through from the original newel. The interpretation offered by the on-site interpretation (visited 5 May 2023); the published guidebook: Henry Summerson, English Heritage Guides: *Brougham and Brough Castles* (London, 1999); and website (accessed 9th May 2023), appears, therefore, to be incorrect. However, Machell's view that the reason for the 'olde' roof's form was to collect water is unfounded – any form of roof can be designed to do this. The 'table of stone', which he would have seen within the newly re-roofed building and partly obscured, must refer to the original tabling of the 1130s. I thank Dr Edward Impey FSA FRHistS, Master and Director General Emeritus, Royal Armouries', for sending this summary of his research, after visiting the site on 5 May 2023 (ed.).

stories, & this amongst the rest, That wen the people, who had corne in fields ready to be Inded,[113] if you brought a gift to this Hobthrosh walke, the[y] would be sure without further trouble to have it all in their barn by the next morning.

[I.427]

Ad Brough

The Old Charter of Brough[114]
Sent to the Earle of Thanet by Thomas Machell Rector of Kirkbythore, 24 Feb. 1684

{Carta R. Ed. VI}
Edwardus Sextus dei gratia Anglie Francie et Hybernie rex fidei defensor et in terra eclesie Anglicane et Hybernie supremum caput. Omnibus ad quos presentes littere pervenerint, salutem.
Inspeximus Litteras patentes domini E- nuper regis Anglie progenitoris nostri factas in hec verba, Edwardus dei gratia rex Anglie dominus Hybernie et dux Aquitanie, archepiscopis episcopis abbatibus prioribus comitibus barronibus justiciariis vicecomitibus prepositis Ministris et omnibus Balivis et fidelibus suis, salutem, Sciatis nos de gracia nostra speciali concessisse et hac carta nostra confirmasse dilecto et fideli nostro Roberto de Clifford quod ipse et heredes sui imperpetuum habeant unum mercatum singulis septimanis per diem Jovis apud Manerum suum de Burgh subtus Staynmore in Comitatu Westmerl' et unam feriam ibidem per quatuor dies duraturam, videlicet per duos dies prox' ante festum sancti Matthei Apostoli et in eodem festo sancti Matthei, et per unum diem prox' sequentem, Nisi mercatum illud et feria illa sint ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum et vicinarum feriarum, Quare volumus et firmiter precepimus pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quod predictus Robertus et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant predicta mercatum et feriam apud Manerum suum predictum cum omnibus libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus ad hujusmodi mercatum et feriam pertinentibus, Nisi mercatum illud et feria illa sint ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum et vicinarum feriarum sicut predictum est. Hiis testibus venerabilibus patribus H. Lincoln Episcopo Cancellario nostro: R. Episcopo Sarumi, Johanne de Elcham, comite Cornub., fratre nostro Carissimo: Rogero de mortuo Mari, Comite Marchie. Willo de Monte Acuto: Olivero de Ingham, Hugone de Turpliton seneschallo Hospitii nostri et alijs. Dat per manum nostram apud Northampton secondo die Augusti Anno regni nostri quarto. INSPEXIMUS etiam litteras patentes domini R. nuper regis Anglie progenitoris nostri de confirmatione facta in hec verba. Richardus dei gratia Rex anglie et Francie et Dominus Hybernie omnibus ad quos presentes littere pervenerint salutem, INSPEXIMUS quandam cartam domini H. fil Regis Johannis quondam Regis Anglie progenitoris nostri factam in hec verba. Henricus dei gratia, Rex Anglie dominus Hybernie Dux Normanie, Aquitanie et Comes Anjou. Archepiscopis Episcopis Abatibus prioribus Comitibus Baronibus Justiciariis vicomitibus prepositis ministris et omnibus Balivis et fidelibus suis, salutem Sciatis nos concessisse et hac carta nostra confirmasse dilecto et fideli nostro Reginaldo fil Petri quod ipse et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant liberam Warrennam in omnibus dominicis terris suis Manerii sui de Wyghton. Dum tamen terre ille non sint infra metas Foreste nostre Ita quod nullus intret terras illas ad fugandam in eis vel ad aliquid capiendum quod ad Warrennam pertineat, sine licentia et voluntate ipsius Reginaldi vel Heredum suorum super forisfacturam nostram decem librarum. Concessimus etiam eidem Reginaldo quod ipse et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant apud predictum Manerium suum de Wyghton unum ~~mercat~~ mercatum singulis septimanis per diem Jovis, Nisi mercatum illud sit ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum. Quare volumus et firmiter precipimus pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quod predictus

[113] Brought in.
[114] See William Whellan, *The History and Topography of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmoreland* (Pontefract, 1860), 730, which refers to Edward VI confirming the grant made by Edward III in 1330, hence the transcript of the Inspeximus Charter of Edward VI (26 February 1549) seen here. See also W. Douglas Simpson, 'Brough-under-Stainmore: The Castle and the Church', *CW2*, 46 (1946), 222-83, where Simpson notes (228) that details of the 1330 charter are to be found in the Calendar of Charter Rolls Vol. IV, 186, and that there is evidence for the market's earlier existence, as appears from a bond registered on 1 August 1281, citing the Calendar of Ancient Deeds, Vol. IV, 26 No. A6332. [For charter rolls see *British History* online.)

Reginaldus et Heredes sui imperpetuum habeant liberam Warrennam in omnibus dominicis terris suis Manerii sui de Wyghton Dum tamen terre ille non sint infra metas Foreste nostre

[I.429]

Ita quod nullus intret terras illas ad fugandum in eis vel ad aliquid capiendum quod ad Warrennam pertoneat sine licentia et voluntate ipsius Reginaldi vel heredum suorum super forisfacturam nostram decem librarum, et quod habeant ibidem unum Mercatum singulis septimanis per diem Jovis, Nisi Mercatum illud sit ad nocumentum vicinorum mercatorum sicut predictum est. Hiis Testibus venerabile patre Waltero Eborum Archepisco: Magistro W. de Kilkenny Archidiacano Coventr: Radulpho fil Nicolai Johanne de Lexington, Roberto de Muscegros, Roberto Walerand: Radulpho de Wanney: Willo de Chaenny et alijs. Data per manum nostram apud Shyreburn Septimo die Januarij anno regni nostri Vicessimo sexto. Nos autem concessiones confirmacionem voluntatem et preceptum prædicta et omnia et singula in Carta predicta contenta rata habentes, et grata et pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quantum in nobis est, dilecto et fideli nostro Stephano Leserop[…] Chivaler fil Richardi Leserop[…] Chivaler, et Militente uxori ejus, Ac dilecto Armigero nostro Thome Brounsfete et Margarete uxori ejus nunc tenentibus Manerij predicti tenore presentium concedimus et confirmamus, prout carta predicta rationabiliter testatur, et prout prestatus Reginaldus et Heredes sui ac alij tenentes Manerij predicti hujusmodi Warrennam et mercatum hactenus racionabiliter habere et tenere consueverunt. In cujus rei testimonium has litteras nostras fieri fecimus patentes. Teste me ipso apud Westmonasterium octavo die Novembris Anno Regni nostri quarto decimo. Nos autem Cartas et litteras predictas ac omnia et singula in eiusdem contenta rata habentes et grata, ea pro nobis et Heredibus nostris quantum in nobis est acceptamus et approbamus ac Carissimo consanguineo nostro Henrico Clifford Comiti Cumbr' ut consanguineo et proximo heredi predictorum Roberti de Clifford et Thome Brounfleete nunc tenentibus predictorum Manneriorum de Burgh et Wyghton et Heredibus suis tenore presentium ratificamus et confirmamus prout Carte et littere predicte in se racionabiliter testantur: et prout idem comes et Heredes sui tenentes Maneriorum predictorum hujusmodi libertates, et liberas Consuetudines hactenus racionabiliter habere et tenere consueverunt In Cujus rei testimonium has litteras nostras fieri fecimus patentes Teste meipso apud Westm' vicessimo sexto die Februarij Anno regni nostri tertio

W. Ermysted
Exam per nos
W Ermysted }
Willus Brytyn } Eticas[115]

[115] 'Edward VI by grace of God king of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, and supreme head of the English and Irish church. To all to whom this present letter shall come, greetings.
We have consulted patent letters of the Lord Edward, lately king of England and our forbear, which read as follows: Edward by grace of God king of England lord of Ireland and commander of Aquitania, to the archbishops, bishops, abbots, priors, earls, barons, justices, sheriffs, royal officials and to all bailiffs and their subjects, greetings. Know that we, through our special grace, have granted and by this charter of ours have confirmed to our beloved subject Robert de Clifford that he himself and his heirs in perpetuity may have a market every week on a Thursday at his manor of Brough under Stainmore in the County of Westmorland and a festival in the same place of four days duration, that is, for the two days immediately before the feast of Saint Matthew the Apostle and at that same feast of Saint Matthew, and for one day immediately following, unless that same market and that festival be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants and neighbouring festivals; wherefore we wish and we have issued firm instructions on behalf of ourselves and our heirs that the aforesaid Robert and his heirs may have in perpetuity the aforesaid market and festival at his manor aforesaid with all liberties and free customs pertaining to a market and festival of this kind, unless that market and that festival be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants and neighbouring festivals, as has been said previously.
With these witnesses: the venerable fathers H. Bishop of Lincoln our Chancellor; R. Bishop of Salisbury; John de Elcham, the earl of Cornub, our most dear brother; Roger of the Dead Sea, the Earl of Marchis, Will[?] de Mount Acutum; Oliver of Ingham; Hugo of Turpliton steward of our Hospital; and others; dated by our hand at Northampton on the second day of August in the fourth year of our reign. We have consulted also for confirmation patent letters of Lord Richard lately King of England our forbear, which read as follows: Richard by grace of God king of England and of France and Lord of Ireland, to all to whom these letters shall come, greetings: we have consulted a certain charter of Lord Henry son of John former king of England our forbear, which reads as follows: Henry, by grace of God king of England lord of Ireland commander of Normania, Aquitania and earl of Anjou to the Archbishops Bishops Abbots Priors Earls Barons Justices Sheriffs royal



Figure 1.6.7. Copy of Brough Charter Seal. I.429.

officials and to all Bailiffs and their subjects, greetings. Know that we have granted and by this our charter have confirmed to our beloved subject Reginald son of Peter that he himself and his heirs may have in perpetuity free warrening in all his demesne lands of his manor of Wyghton, as long as those lands be not within the boundaries of our Forest in such a way that no one may enter those lands to hunt in them or to catch anything that pertains to warrening without the licence and will of Reginald himself or of his heirs on penalty to us of ten pounds. We have granted also to the same Reginald that he himself and his heirs may have in perpetuity at his aforesaid manor of Wyghton a market every week on a Thursday, unless that market be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants. Wherefore we wish and we have issued firm instructions on behalf of ourselves and our heirs that the aforesaid Reginald and his heirs may have in perpetuity free warrening in his demesne lands of his manor of Wyghton and a market every week on a Thursday, unless that market be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants. Wherefore we wish and we have issued firm instructions on behalf of ourselves and our heirs that the aforesaid Reginald and his heirs may have in perpetuity free warrening in all his demesne lands of his manor of Wyghton as long as those lands be not within the boundaries of our Forest in such a way that no one may enter those lands to hunt in them or to catch anything that may pertain to warrening without the licence and will of Reginald himself or of his heirs on penalty to us of ten pounds, and that they may hold there a Market every week on a Thursday, unless that Market be to the detriment of neighbouring merchants as has been said before. With these witnesses: the venerable father Walter Archbishop of York, Master W. de Kilkenny Archdeacon of Coventry, Radulph son of Nicolas, John of Lexington, Robert of Muscegros, Robert Walerand, Radulph of Wanney, Will? de Chaenny and others. Dated by our hand at Shyreburn on the seventh day of January in the twenty sixth year of our reign. Moreover, we have granted and confirmed, by the meaning of the present document, the grants, confirmation, will and instructions aforesaid, holding as ratified and acknowledged the contents in the aforesaid Charter, all and singly, both on behalf of ourselves and our heirs, as far as in us lies, to our beloved subject Stephanus Leserop[…] Chivaler son of Richard Leserop[…] Chivaler and of Milicent his wife, and to our beloved Squire Thomas Brounfsete and Margaret his wife, now tenants of the aforesaid manor, just as the aforesaid charter duly records, and just as the lessee Reginald and his heirs and other tenants of the aforesaid manor have been accustomed hitherto to have and to hold warrening and a market of this kind. In testimony of which matter we have caused these letters of ours to be patent. Witnessed by myself at Westminster on the eighth day of November in the fourteenth year of our reign. Moreover, holding as ratified and acknowledged the Charters and aforesaid letters, and the contents of the same all and singly, we accept and approve them on behalf of ourselves and our heirs, as far as in us lies, and to our dearest relative Henry Clifford earl of Cumbria, as the relative and immediate heir of the aforesaid Robert de Clifford and Thomas Brounfleete, who now occupy the aforesaid Manors of Brough and Wygchton, and to his heirs, we ratify and confirm [them] by the meaning of the present document just as the aforesaid Charters and Letters in themselves duly record; and just as the same earl and his heirs who occupy the aforesaid manors have been accustomed hitherto duly to have and to hold the liberties and free customs of this kind. As testimony of which matter we have caused these letters of ours to be made patent. Witnessed by myself at Westminster on the twenty sixth day of February in the third year of our reign.'

[IV.33]

{Castletowne}
At the Bridge End next to Market Brough near the way which leads you into the wath there is a little spaw[116] well, about 1 foot and a ½ diameter, which hath formerly been much frequented and resorted unto. It will, with a little gale putt there into,[117] turne into the colour of clarrett wine which the river-water which runns within a yard of it or thereabouts will in no wise performe. \ The top stone of the well is that I suppose att the next house back doore. / There is the like att Pendraggon Castle about the same distance from the River Eden on the left hand as you go to Pendragon over the Bridge.

[III.103]



Figure 1.6.8. 'Brough Spaw Well at the N. side of the E. end of the bridge as you goe to the Church Town.' III.103.

[IV.33]

{Brough Town Bridge}
Upon Brough T[own] Bridge on the side towards the mill and castle are 2 Coates of Arms, which are Here sett downe and underneath these figures, […][118]

[Carle-Steayne]
The Market-place goes from the Bridge up to a Little Cross, a little on this side whereof as you goe up the Towne towards Stanemore is a great coble stone supposed to be 100 st[ones] weight, which they calle the Carle-Steayne for this reason because (as they say) there was a great lusty fellow who undertoke to carry that about the street upon condition it might be made free as far as he went with it: and haveing carried it about that part on both sides beyond the Bridge, and comeing up with it thus far on the right hand row, it burst him there, whereupon they tell me the houses so far on that side are free and the other not. Sed de Hoc q. plura?[119]

Opposite to the † on the right hand as you goe for Stanemore on the Back Side of the House, is a little ro\u/nd well covered over with a milstone, up at the eye of which the[y] take their water and this is

[116] The word 'spawe' is a variant of 'spa': a medicinal or mineral spring or well. *OED.*
[117] 'Gale' is the bog-myrtle, Myrica Gale, also called sweet gale. Gale-beer can be made from twigs of sweet-gale. *OED.*
[118] Here are placed two blank shields.
[119] 'But enquire more into this.'

called St Marys or St Winifrids, and many have com'd on pilgramage in time of Popery, and the Vicar of Brough had a Diploma from the pope to receive the oblations of all pilgrims there. This may be true, for Mr Har.[120] sayes he has seen the Diploma, & I have seen a writeing wherein is declared that a Chapple and Hospitall for pilgrims was founded there by Mr Blenkinsop of Helbeck and one Brunskale, the former whereof gave Land and the other building.

[I.548]

{Brough} Moss akin to Buckshorne – maden hair at Gill Brigg in Brough {an Amulet: against the heart burn.}

[I.392A]

[Lordships]

The manner or demane of Helbeck

A Great Part of Brough (under re[n]tel) belongd to the Blenkinsops: 16. Elizabeth [1273-74]; viz. 20 Burgages held by Ann, Countiss of Cumberland, as of her ~~demane~~ \ manner /of Brough by fealty & yerely rent iiij^{d} in fre sockage, & 5 Messuages. C. acres of land; 3 Acres of medow; 40 Acres of pasture with the appurtenances specially belonging to & usuall enjoyd with the said messuages, with certane Lands in E[a]st Stanemore Held of the Crowne in fre sockage, worth per Annum 26^{s} 8^{d}.
The Manner or demane of Helbeck cum pertinentijs[121] and one Messuage or Tenement & 4 Acres of land; 10 Acres of medow, 20 Acres of pasture in East Stanemore. Held of the Countiss of Cumberland by the service of 1 Knights fee & 6^{s} rent to the said Countiss for Cornage*.

[Machell's Notes: I.392A]

*{N[ote] This is strange, when Tenent de Rege per seviture militare[122] were not included in the grant. Allso the Corne mill of Helbeck; 29 messuages; 30 gardens; 300 Acres of medow; 200 of pasture; 40 of more.[123] May be he means Orton.

[I.184]

The Boundary of the Lordship of Helbeck
As it was rid by Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., 19 day of August, 22. of King James, 1624, as I have seen it subscribed to by 11 witnesses there present. Beginning at Christcroftgate by Salmon House.
From Christcroftgate (which is at Brough towne end towards Helbeck) adjoyneing to Salmons House. Thence following the street to Lowgillgate adjoyneing to the streat from Lowgillgate to Whittbeck to an hedge leading through Nettlepott, an soe following to an hurrock {a little heap for a boundary} of stones upon Yornatt How Head. From thence to an hurrok of stones betwixt Yornatt How Head lineally leading to a place called the White Stones, from thence to an hurrok upon the old street {which goes to New Castle from Warcop & other places} crossing the winderigg, and so to the high end of Johnson Skar. From thence to an hurrock of stones upon Little Turplacks {a green hill so called} & so to the Hare Cragg. From thence lineally to a crooked seale in the Force Beck. From the crooked seale to a place called the Hirds House upon the east side of Cunnepott-beck.[124] And from thence lineally to a place called the Dry Sykes; and so to Swindall Head. From thence following to Brough Bridge as it is marked forth with walls, hedges and other fences, and so returneing to the place of beginning called Christ Croft.
In the presence of us {Knight; gentlemen} Edward Osbaldeston, Henry Machell, Edward Warcop, Francis Osbaldeston, Will Blenkinsop, Thomas Nicolson, Thomas Nicolson Junior, Thomas Waistall, John Cragg, Will Johnson, Michael Waistall, Arthur Collinge.

Compertum eft per quandam Iquisitionem captam apud Kirkby in [blank] in Westmorland 18 die maij anno R.R. Henri 7^{i} 19^{0}.[125]

[120] Christopher Harrison, vicar of Brough.
[121] With all its appurtenances.
[122] 'Tenants of the king by military service.'
[123] 'Of moorland.'
[124] Connypot, meaning 'rabbit pit'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*: Brough.
[125] 'It was found in a certain Inquisition taken at Kirkby in Westmorland, in the 19th year of the reign of Henry VII, 18 May [1504].'

Coram Edwardo Redemayne et Willielmo Hudeston Armigeris, commissionarijs ejusdem Domini Regis, virtute litterarum patentium ad inquirandum pro dicto Domino Rege de diversis articulis in eadem Commissione contentis et specificat[is] aliter ejsdem commissionarijs in hac parte directis, & eadem inquisitione consuet[e] ac in favore \vel Commissione / domini Regis rato nutis per sacramentu[m] duodecim &c.[126]

Quod Thomas Blenkinsop was seised as of his demane as of foe of & in the manner of Helbeck with the appurtenances in the county of Westmorland & dyed seised thereof; & that he held the said manner of our Lord the King in capite by knights service & per the rent of 6 shillings per annum ad cornagium dicti Domini Regis, at the termes of paise & Michael the archangel yerely to be payed;[2] and allso by service ad faciendam sectam ad com[itatum] dicti domini Regis com' Westmorland de mense [in] mensem at the Kings Castle in Apleby in the County aforesaid yearly to be held.[127] And that the foresaid manner with the partinences is worth by the yere beside \ above / reprises £40. And that Henry Lord Clifford had & rec[e]iv[e]d all the Increase and p[r]ofit of the said manner during the minority of T. but by what title they knew not. & that he received the profits of the marriage of Thomas the son, by usurpation of our Lord the King &c. This was appealed in Chancery & the right of Lord Clifford ma[in]taned: se the same roll.

[I.394]

In the Lordship of Helbeck were 22 tenents: Rent fin[e] 19^{li}:12: ix.,[128] beside moulter farme not fineable;[129] boone dayes of mowing & shereing with boone coles, beside rent on Helbeck fells for Common there by one William Rud of Sandford, for which he payed 20 yeres rent for a fine. These all belonged to the Blenkinsops of Helbeck, till sold by [blank].

In the Lordship of Brough were 25 tenents fineable rent: 11^{li}: 5: 10,[130] beside multer farme not fineable, Boone shereing, Boone Coales.[131] These allso belonged to the Blenkinsops de Hellbeck, and the Totall of the Boone days shereing by the tennants of Brough & Helbeck, 53. The Total of the Boone dayes mowing due by Helbeck tennants & one of Brough, 21. The Totall of the Boone Coles due by the tennants of both places \ loads /41.

[I.171]

[Notes on Helbeck]
There was iron got in Helbeck intak, and a forge att Brecanber, both in the demane of Hellebeck.

Tomgillbeck hill att Swindale (in which \ lead & coles) / in Helbeck Lordship. This is Swindaell Beck in Under Brough. Comes out of Tarne Close in Helbeck Lordship upon the fells beyond Helbeck Hall, N.N.E. The other springs in Allgill in the Lordship of B. f. Mr Blenk[insop.]

{Regill in Crosby Ravensworth; Slegil in Morland; Ellergil in Gaisegil; Tybay; Raisegill}

There were \ 2 / allabaster pictures \ well cutt / \ painted / \ & gilded / found in the garden of John Water the elder, being the next \ dwelling / house but one to Brough Towne end toward Helbeck, which as

[126] 'In the presence of Edward Redemayne and William Hudeston, Esquires, commissioners of the same Lord King, by virtue of letters patent to make enquiry on behalf of the said Lord King concerning various articles contained and specified in the same Commission, addressed to the same commissioners in this part, and in the usual manner surely willed by the same inquisition in the favour of or by commission of the lord King, under oath 12 etc.'
[127] '... and allso by service of paying suit at the court of the said lord King [in the] county of Westmorland from month to month at the Kings Castle in Apelby ...'
[128] £19 12s 9d finable rent.
[129] Moulter or multure was the payment of a fraction of grain ground, to the lord of the mill or the miller. The proportion exacted was higher for those farmers within the lands of an estate on which there was an obligation to grind corn at a certain mill than for those who came voluntarily from without its jurisdiction: *Dictionaries of the Scots language*, Online.
[130] £11 5s 10d.
[131] For the meaning of boons and boon days, see the English Glossary.

now, Geofray Aiskells, Sadler. 1. was a Crusifix; the other St Michael goreing the divell; 3. Ascention & Resurrection; 4. The Sokeges[132] visitation of Christ in the manger.

What other Lordships in Brough Parish

{Sowerby}
Upon the sale of Sowerby[133] (the deed[134] of which hath bin in my hands & is now by my means by the gift of Mr Frances Blenkinsop, in the Hands of the Honourable Lady Ann Clifford, Countiss of Penbroke) Dominus Robert Clifford was oblieged and granted the same by his writeing to Sir Thomas de Hellebeck, Knigh[t], reasonable sustinance dureing his life, viz. for him selfe cum uno Armigero et \ tribus equis / et 3'bus Garcionibus: [with] one Squire \ & 3 horses / & 3 Groomes (nisi potius boyes.)[135] But in the deed of saile it is onely expressed cum 3'bus equis.[136]) And allso with 2 robes & 2 cell[ata] befitting a knight, to [be] payd yerely{?}[137] for the performance of which on Lord Roberts behalf, his manner of Winton was lyable to distraint. And this pention comes under the notion of a foefarme*.[138]

[Machell's Notes: I.394]

*N.B. Compare with this the notes out of the deed in Blenkinsops pedigree.
{29 messuagia ac medietas of a watermill[139] in Coatsflat, with certane S[blank]

[I.396]

Ewbanke Hall
Ewbanke or Iewbanke[140] Hall, att a place upon Stanemore called Ewbanke, was formerly the seat of & gave name to a family so called, some of the name yett remaneing but in no great repute, being but as countrymen. The estate was sold to the Cliffords & now remanes in the possession of the Countess of Penbroke who was Daughter & sole heire of George \ Clifford / Earl of Cumberland. The Ewbankes Arms you may se blason above on the other side the lease. The Countiss was wont to say that the 1^{t} of That family came in with the Conqueror.

[I.399]

[**Scots Jurisdiction**]

It cannot be that Westmorland and Cumberland were under the Scotch jurisdiction in the Conquerors time*. For William the Conqueror \ King of England, Duke of Normandy / founded the Nunery near Croglin which belongs now to the Grahams of Nunery, in the 2 yeare of his reigne†[141] with freedome of Toll all England Over, and that they might have all liberties and Bloodwites in like manner, sayes the Charter: As is granted to Our monastery of Westminster: & with free warrant for Court Leats and Baron‡. Of Our free good will and grant as may it thinke or Eye may it see or pen may it write.[142]

---

[132] Sophoi: Greek word meaning wise men (sages). See Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.640.
[133] Brough Sowerby.
[134] MS: 'dead'.
[135] 'Or rather, boys.'
[136] 'With 3 horses.'
[137] The sallet (also called celata) was a combat helmet: Arthur Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 312, 314.
[138] Fee-farm: see the English Glossary.
[139] 29 messuages and half of a watermill.
[140] Written by Machell as 'Iewbanke' or 'Jewbanke'.
[141] This is the Convent of Benedictine Nuns at Armathwaite, Cumberland. Like others of his time, Machell incorrectly traced the foundation of the nunnery to an early date, but it noe appears that, following the depradations of Scottish raids, the nuns 'reinvented' the date of their founding charter to 1189, see f.n. below.
[142] This charter is now recognised as a forgery, even though it was confirmed in 1480 by Letters Patent of Edward IV. By this so-called charter, William Rufus was supposed to give the nuns land near the nunnery, comprising 216 acres in the forest of Inglewood on the north of Tarnwadelyn [close to High Hesket, Cumberland]; common of pasture throughout the forest; sufficient wood for their buildings; an annual rent of 40s. from the king's tenements in Carlisle; and freedom from toll throughout the whole of England. But the earliest notice of the nunnery's existence can only be dated to c.1200 in a charter of Roger de Beauchamp to the priory of St. Bees, where it is stated that the land he gave to that monastery was near the land of the nuns of 'Ainstapillith' [Ainstable]. After the nunnery had suffered heavy losses during the Scottish wars, Edward II granted them pasture for their cattle in Inglewood Forest. In 1331 they were excused the payment of £10 due to

[Machell's Notes. I.399]

*{Yes; in 1072 i.e. the 7. William the Conqueror he gave Cumberland to Malcolm king of Scots}[143]
†I fear it is a mistake for William Rufus.

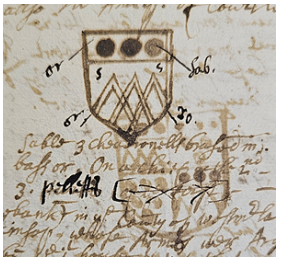


Figure 1.6.9. Court Leet and Baron Arms. I.399.

‡Note hence also the Antiquity of Court Leat & Baron: Sable 3 chevronells brased in the bass Or on a chief of the 2nd 3 pelletts.

[I.403][144]

Audi[145]
Quæ de sepulturâ dextræ manûs et Gladij Regis Scotorum, Eugenij filij Aidani, in Morâ Lapidea (i.e. Stanemoor) habet J. Fordun in *Scoto Chron lib. 3*. cap. 33. Nam ut in futurum Regni Gentes ipso Defensore, licet mortuo, nunquam careant, Ligijs majoribus sub fide juratâ præcipiendo Testamento constituit, quòd, ad eorum firmam de cetero Tutelam, in extremis ad Austrum Regni finibus, eo defuncto, dextram statim ab humero decisam, ac signo leonis bellico decoratam, habentem manu gladium, sepelirent. Hujusmodi tamen Regiæ manus Sepulturam Eugenio Regi Congalli filio, non isti, Chronica quædam adscripsit. Arbitrio Lectoris, an isti debeat adscribi, an alteri potius, relinquatur.[146]

[III.93][147]

Burgh subtur Stanesmore

These are the boundes of Stainmoore[148]
First it begins at the cheife of Hernehill, & from thence to Backstonefell & soe to HughSete Morvyll and from thence to Ferrerwith-sike and soe to the white stone of Esegill & from thence to Aygill poole & soe to the Rere-crosse & from thence to Yelissike Head & soe over to Soutergillhead & from

the Crown because their lands and rents had been greatly destroyed by the wars. The total ruination of the nunnery and its need to recoup its losses appears to have been the reason for the forged charter. See 'Houses of Benedictine Nuns: The Nunnery of Armathwaite', in J. Wilson (ed.) *A History of the County of Cumberland: Volume 2,* Victoria County History (London, 1905), 189-192.

[143] The interlineation and marginalia, written in different ink from the rest of the page, are clearly additional.

[144] This page has been completed in a clear and regular hand which is almost certainly William Nicolson's.

[145] Beginning with 'listen', Bishop Nicolson's note may be translated as, 'J. Fordun in his *Scoti Chronicon Book 3*, Chapter 33, has some material about the burial of the right hand and sword of the King of Scots (Eugenius son of Aidan) in the Moor of Stone i.e. Stanemore. For, so that the future races of the realm need never lack him as defender, though he now be dead, he so decided (the greater part of his liege subjects' loyalty being sworn to him in writing) that further to confirm his custody of them in the far south of his realm, that they should bury his right arm, at once after his death, in the ground, and his warlike seal [or standard] of a lion, with his sword in his hand. However, another chronicle ascribes this to Eugenius son of King Congall, not to him: let it be left to the judgment of the reader whether it should be ascribed to him or rather to the other.' See William F. Skene (ed.), *John of Fordun's Chronicle of the Scottish Nation,* tr. Felix James Henry Skene (Edinburgh, 1872), Book 3, Chapter 3, 110-12.

[146] MS: From 'habet J. Fordun' to 'relinquatur' is underscored.

[147] This text on 'the boundes of Stanemore' is written in another hand.

[148] There are two texts with the same meaning on this page; both relate to the Bounds. The first is written in Latin (not transcribed); the second is written in English and transcribed above. III.93-III.97 is written in a hand that is not Machell's; its use of 'Ff' to signify 'F' has not been adopted here.

thence to Caldfell-howe & soe goeinge up by Philipp Sike unto the ~~said~~ end[149] towards the west of Mickil-fell & from thence to the end towards the north of Litle Fell, from thence to the cheife of West Swindale, and soe discendinge to the bounder of Helton &c.

[III.95]

The bounder of Stainmoore ridd by the R[ight] Honourable Thomas, Earle of Thanett Island, &c. in his owne person, the 11th and 12th dayes of September in the 36th yeare of our soveraigne Lord Charles the Second, &c. Anno Domini 1684.

1. Beginning at Winton Brigg Stones.
2. From thence up the sike near the southend of Winton Mill to Fletchers Close Nooke.
3. From thence up Whingill Beck to Whingill Head.
4. From thence along a little wall called Winton (Ringdike) to Stainbank-Head.
5. From thence to a grey stone neare the east end of Coatgarth House.
6. From thence alonge Langrigg Skarr to a gray stone within Hartley Yate.
7. From thence to Raven Scarr.
8. From thence up Hernegill Beck to Hernegill Side.
9. Thence to a great stone on Low Grayrigg.
10. Thence to a great stone on High Grayrigg.
11. Thence (up the north end of Greenside) by the Mayor Potts.
12. From thence to an hurrock of stones on Bassen Fell Side.
13. From thence to a meare stone on the southside of the nine-standers.[150]
14. From thence to an hurrock of stones an the midle of Benty Bats.
15. From thence to an hurrock of stones at the south end of Benty Bats.
16. From thence (directly east) to the two becks meetinge in Whitsundale.
17. Thence to a little tarne called Brownber-Tarne.
18. From thence directly to Hugh Seate Nabb.

[III.96]

19. From thence to Cocklake Rigg.
20. From thence to Tackland Tarn.
21. From thence to Yard Loupe.
22. From thence to Drygill-Head.
23. From thence to two Graystones on Taylor rigg.
24. From thence to the white stone in Easgill.
25. From thence over Blacksike Brigg to Aygill Poole Foote.
26. From thence to a gray stone in Whartgill Head.
27. From thence to a white stone in White Bancke.
28. From thence to Reare crosse.
29. From thence to Beldhow Hill.
30. From thence to Risebrigg-Sike.
31. From thence to Mickledod.
32. From thence to great ragged stone where Blackbeck and Bowder beck meete.
33. From thence to the eastend of Pined Hill.
34. From thence to the head of Potters Reede.
35. From thence to the foote of Brordstone-Greene.
36. From thence to a great stone at the eastend of Dowcragg.
37. From thence to a great cloven stone in the Bowght of Dowcragg.
38. From thence to the head of Rowton Sike.
39. From thence downe Rowton Sike to the foote thereof.
40. From thence to an hurrock of stones at the east end of Lee Fell.

[III.97]

41. From thence to the foote of Mastersike where it meets with Forcebeck.

[149] Here are two star symbols, signifying a gap in the text.
[150] 'Nine Standards'. See S. Walker, *Nine Standards: Ancient Cairns or Modern Folly?* (Kirkby Stephen, 2008).

42. Thence all alonge up Mastersike to an hurrock of stones in the Bowght[151] of Mikle Fell.
43. From thence to the head of Birksike.
44. From thence downe Birksike all alonge till it meete with Mazebeck.
45. From thence up Mazebeck till it meete with Swarthbeck.
46. From thence to an hurrock of stones on Arneside rake.
47. From thence to an hurrock of stones at the north end of Litle Fell.
48. From thence to the head of Cicygill Sike.[152]
49. From thence downe Cicygill Sike to the head of West Swindale.
50. From thence downe Swindale Beck to Swindale Foote neare Hilton Towne End. […][153]

[I.401]

{Spitle}[154]
At Spitill on Stainmore is the fragment of a Cross, by us called Rere Cross; by the Scotts Rei Cross[155] (as one would say the Kings Crosse) \ or rather a Lapis Nulliaris,[156] and there is another in the street above Bowes / and another, at Spittle house in the same street, which Hector Boetius (a Scottish writer)[157] recordeth to have bin a mere stone betwixt England and Scottland – But certaine the man was too kinde to his Country – for wee never read that ~~Scotts~~ Malcolme King of Scotts (in whose time, according to Boetius it should have bin erected) had any ~~thing~~ \ part / of Westmorland much less the whole; nor indeed, if wee come too particulars (tho it be said that he had Cumberland) shall wee easily finde that he had any more than 12 villages there.[158] My reason is, because when he had an Advantage of King William Rufus att Chester in the west, the English fleet being scattered & ~~destroyed~~ \ shaken / by a violent Tempest, & the Army destroyed by Hunger & cold, yett he demanded no more upon Articles of Peace than those 12 villages which he formerly held of the Conqueror in Cumberland; & I thinke he would ask no less than he had title too). \ There is a place in Cumberland, I thinke at Plumpton, called The 12 Townes Rent.[159] /

[IV.34]

[Oxenflat]
Colepits in Brough parish 6 m[iles]? from the Towne, a fine quarrie whence the stones of the Castle.

---

[151] A 'bought' is a sheep or cattle fold: Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 1, 355.
[152] Cicygill? Possibly Strice Gill, Skirrygill, Siss Gill in Musgrave: See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 74, 359.
[153] A set of initials, which are difficult to decipher, has been placed here.
[154] Spital.
[155] See John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britain Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans* (2nd edn, 1623), 9, 442: 'But Malcolme wisely considering the current of warre, and that the occasion thereof was not for his owne subjects, but for a sort of forraine fugitives, beganne to thinke,that the wrongs there in done to another hee could hardly brooke himselfe, and sent therefore to William, proffers of peace; whereunto lastly the English King inclined, and hostages delivered upon further Conferences, what time (as I take it) upon Stane-more, not far from an homely hostilerie called the Spittle, a Stone-Crosse (on the one side of whose shaft stood the picture and armes of the King of England, and on the other the Image and armes of the King and Kingdome of Scotland, upon that occasion called the Roi-crolle) was erected, to shew the Limits of either Kingdome; some ruines of which Meere-marke are yet appearing; for King William, granting Cumberland unto Malcolme, to hold the same from him, conditionally that the Scots should not attempt anything preiudiciall to the Crowne of England, (for which King Malcolme did him homage, saith Hector Boetius the Scottish writer).'
[156] 'A Stone of No Importance.'
[157] Hector Boethius wrote *Scotorum historiae a prima gentis origine libri xvii* (Paris, 1527): see N. Royan, 'Boece [Boethius], Hector (c. 1465-1536), historian and college head'. *ODNB*.
[158] MS: '(tho it be said that he had Cumberland) ~~any more than 12 smale villages~~ shall wee easily finde that he had any more than 12 villages there tho it be said that he had Cumberland) ~~any more than 12 smale villages~~ shall wee easily finde that he had any more than 12 villages there more than 12 villages there'. See the *Chronicle* of Hector Boethius, translated into Scots: William Stewart, *A Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland or a metrical version of the History of Hector Boece II* (London, 1858), 501: '…peax this time was maid, Northumberland with Ingland suld remane, and Cumbria and Westmurland agane to King Malcolme tha suld again restoir.'
[159] See Machell's Preface, I.42, in which he remarks, 'London or Oxon Lib. – p.5b. *Ypodigma Neustriæ* by Walsingham, concerning 12 Towne in Cumberland granted to the Scot, query an 12 et nihil amplius.' ['Whether 12 and no more.']

[IV.73]

{Oxenflat herewith the quarry}
In Stanemore dale are 3 or 4 Houses called Oxsenflat formerly, as is \ probable / supposd Oxenthwate; which place gave name to a family whereof the last as I suppose, whose name was John, haveing no Isue gave to Thomas Derby son of Thomas Derby \ Parson of Browham / 4 messuages & 20 acres of land in Brou[gham] anno 50. Richard 2. [1381-82].

[I.401]

[Antiquities in Brough Parish]

Below Rerecross Crosse upon the High way stood a little fort of the Romans built square,[160] which att this day is called Maiden Castle; but wherefore or upon what occasion I am utterly ignorant.\ Yet it may be Roy-Cross, not from this occasion, but rather from an ancient tradition of a combat here betwixt 2 Kings, or one at lest, with another Champion whose name was Rothinger, whom Westmer King of this countrey, slew – whence this: Here King Westmere sloe King Rothinger. /
\ Or rather it was reard as a meare stone, (for to that end it serves betwixt the 2 Countreys – & thence calld rere Cross either because in the riere of Westm'land – or because it was rered upon that account. /

A Brough (in times past called Brachium) the VI cohort of the Ne\r/vians lay in Garrison. And not long since the Statue of Aurelius Commodus the emperour was digged up,[161] which statue of his may then seem to be erected when he priseing himselfe more than a man, proceed so far in folly that he commanded himselfe to be called the Romane Hercules, son of Jupiter, for he was portraied in the Habit of Hercules, with his right hand Armed, Holding a Clubb: & this hath appeared by a mangled inscription found lying under the same statue: Speed of the West Rideing of Yorkshire.
{Not[e] that Speed take this all out of Camden & placeing it after Maiden Castle, one would thinke it were Brough under Stanemore. But it is by Bainbridge[162] in Richmondshire. §7.}[163]



Figure 1.6.10. Maiden Castle. 1.401.

[Machell's Notes: I.401]
{Not one of the IIII Great Roman ways, see Blounts *Nomo Lexicon*, sub. tit. Watling St.}[164]
{Some more of this way in my notes for Ogleby.}[165]

[160] Machell drew the shape of a square here.
[161] Lucius Aelius Aurelius Commodus, 161-192. Roman Emperor 177-192.
[162] MS: 'Bant bridge'.
[163] As Machell notes, this is taken from Camden on Richmondshire: see *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 728D-E.
[164] Thomas Blount, *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670).
[165] John Ogilby was the king's cosmographer from 1671. His publication of *Britannia … an illustration of the kingdom of England and dominion of Wales: by a geographical and historical description of the principal roads thereof* (1675), was chiefly a road atlas based on contemporary and collaborative research. It was followed by *Mr Ogilby's tables of his measur'd roads … with other remarks … to which is added, A true account of the*

{Roman Campe: Here King Westmer slow the king Rothingar see MS, part 1t. When after aiges begin to consider how our young prodigal Gentlemen by coming up to London & playing the foole there destroy their estate: they will rather thinke that the ancestors erected this as a ne plus ultra to eldest sons, who except they be sober ou[gh]t never to travil beyond this.}

[I.436A][166]

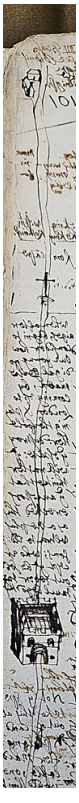
Of Maiden Castle upon Stanemore

The Transverse from S. to N. within the Bulworkes to the 1[t] Throne trench 10[sc] by 10 [paces]. The Diameter 35 & thence to the opposite Bulworke 35. Note: The Throne is situate in a super eminent place.

Of Hills & Enterances

2 fair enterances & hills equidistant on the west side; 2 fair ones and one supposed on the south side with Hills before them. 2 fair Enterances And Hills apparent on the North; one sup[posed] on the east side the Highway.

Note: This Campe should seeme to have bin made before the Roman settlement in this Ile, to witt in time of their wars: And the Roman Way being made after they came to a settlement was brought through it, by which means there were breaches made, and it became somewhat defaced as appears att this day.



The North Side Diment[ions]

From the turn[167] to the 1[t] enterance 3 score [paces] the enterance 12. Thence to the 2 enterance, 50, the enterance 9. Thence to the Great Breach through which passes the Roman way (called the Street) 3 score & 4.

Thence to the Way it selfe 18. But nothing of an Hill except that little hollow by the way side may be thought to have bin one. Thence a Thwart the Roman Way 20 [paces]. Thence to the Turne, 3 sc[ore paces] – where now is a Breach. In all [blank] The turne is 12 [paces across.]

The Left Hand or West Side

To the 1[t] ent. 3 score; The ent. 12. Thence to the 2[nd] entr – 5[sc] – 10; The ent. 12. Thence to the Turne 30. In all [blank]. The Turne it selfe [blank]

The South Side from West to East

Thence to a Breach where no Hill appears 16. Yet there is something like the vestigia of one near the Corner. The Breach it selfe 6. Thence to the open place where the way comes through 23. Thence to the way 9 – The Way it selfe 18. Thence to the 1[t] ent. 24 – The Ent. 12. Thence to the 2[nd] ent. 3 sc – 15 – The Ent. 12. Thence To the Turne 30. In all [blank]. The Turne it selfe 30. Thence the Right hand or East side where I began …}[168] Thence

{Thus to the 1. enter 3 score – 12. The ent. 12. To the 2[nd] 3sc. 12 (over against which [is] the mount) the enterance 12 &c. as before.}

Figure 1.6.11. Route over Stainmore. 1.401.

markets and fairs, &c. collected in his survey (1676). *Britannia* marked the first major advance in cartography in England since the Tudor period. It was republished in 1698. See C. Withers, 'Ogilby, John (1600-1676), publisher and geographer'. *ODNB*. See also the Editor's Introduction.

[166] On MS.I.384, a note reads, '2 Hils & Entrace Equi-dist on the left 2 fair one upon the south from S to N. To the 1[t] throne trench 10 sc[ore] & 10 [paces] the circum 35 there to the bulw. 35. From S to North 40. from right to left 80. Bulwork broad 7.'

[167] Here Machell has traced a curve with his pen.

[168] Two words here, at the page foot, are very unclear.

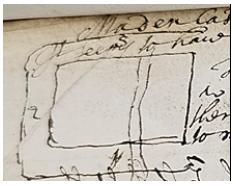


Figure 1.6.12. Margin sketch plan of Maiden Castle. I.436A.

{Maiden Castle is somewhat oblong. From north to south, diam. 40 [paces]. From east to west, 50; the bases of the Bulworke in breth, 7. It seems to have had a wall or trench, \ at a little distance / on all sides except the west where is deep descent. The Way seem to have bin carried about it on the E. side. to N. There is an Heep of stones about 12 sc. north from the Castle in the Highway, supposed a Berry.[169] And there is another beyond the Spittle in Yorkshire. This Spittle, now an alehouse, belonged formerly to Marrik Abby,[170] which is at the foot of Swadell.[171] Capt. Danby has a record out of *Doomsday Booke* of the bounds of Yorkshire.}

[I.436B]

Maden Castle (upon Stanemore). An oblong,[172] from east to west 50 passes; from N. To S. 40. The Basses of the fort in Breth 7. The Hight – about 3 (?)

The Campe

It has this forme, and the dimentions as followeth.

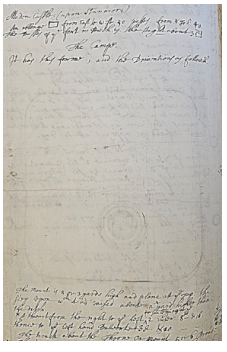


Figure I.6.13. Faint lines of a pencilled plan of Maiden Castle. I.436B.

The Mount is 2 or 3 yards high and plane att the top*. The step upon which it is raised aboute ½ a yard higher than the ditch. The trench about the Throne or Mount, 5 or 6 broade. The ½ yard pace upon which it is raised, in bredth 5 or 6†; the Mount 13 or 14 Diam[eter]. From the throne trench to the † ten.

From S. to North the Right ha[n]d or Easterly Bulworke is thus: to the 1^{t} entr. 5 sc. 10, the entrance 12‡. To the next entr. 3 sc. & 7. the entrance, 12. To the 3^{d} entrance 3 sc. & 6, the entrance 12. Thence to the Turne 40. And the turne it selfe twenty.

---

[169] A barrow. *OED.* A fortified enclosure: https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/, e.g. Berry Castle (Somerset), Berry Ring Hill Fort (Staffordshire).

[170] Marrick Abbey, former priory of Benedictine nuns, Swaledale.

[171] Swadell = Swaledale. 'The spittle ... was a charitable institution, and belonged to Marryke Abbey in Yorkshire; and after the dissolution the tenants applied it to the purpose of an inn. But since the turnpike was made it is become useless in that respect, as there is no need for the traveller to halt between Brough and Bowes; for whereas it took up six hours in travelling thirteen miles, the same can now be performed with more ease in an hour and a half.' *N&B I*, 578.

[172] Here Machell drew a rectangle, ½ cm x ¼cm.

[Machell's Notes: I.436B]
*A thwart from the right to the left \ to same begining at the / 2 Enter[ance] 8 score – &16 [paces] thence to the left hand Bulworke 3 sc. & 10.
†This I take [to] be the diam[eter] from E. to west.
‡Note a mistake here, stand in a rectangle.
Note, The Antiforts or hills which are copped, are about 12 [paces] in diam[eter] answering to the enterances from which they are distant about 12 or 13. The b[ases of the] bulworkes in bredth 9 with a little wing […] entrance, but […][173]
{N.B. On the S. 2 hills. On the left-hand \ west / 2. On the right i.e. E. [blank]}

[I.431]

The Two Scholes in the Parish of Brough[174]

There are two Free-schooles in the Parish of Brough in the County of Westm'land: the one in the towne called Market-Brough and the other in \ the / forrest of Stanemore.

[**Brough Free School**]
That in the towne of Brough was founded by John Brunskals of the same place. He by the assistance succour & ayde of Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. and other benefactours \ (which Thomas gave a tenement) / about the year 1506 founded an Oratory or chappell dedicated to our Lady St Mary the mother of Christ, and to St Gabriel the Archangell w[h]o by the sufferance of our Lord God did shew many faire and diverse miracles as a chart under the hands & seales of Roger Bishop of Carlisle,[175] and Richard the Abbot of Shapp dos expresse and affirme.[176] Two priests were founded to sing & to pray in the said chappell for evermore for the soules of all the benefactours of the said chappell that were departed from the world & for the welfare of them that were alive. The one of the said priests, was to teach Grammar, the other to instruct children willing to le\a/rne songs freely without any sallary from them. The foundation of this chappell was assented into & confirm'd ~~by~~ both \ by / the Bishop of Carlisle and the Archbishop of Yorke, and yet afterward opposed by the minister of Brough; who conceived himselfe much prejudiced thereby, and particularly in respect of the oblations which were given from him to the said chappell; whereupon he sett up the crosse & light\ed / up candles in the chancell at midtime of the day, caused the bells to be rung, and cursed with bell book & candle all those that should ~~give any~~ receive any oblations of ~~those that~~ \ such as / resorted to the said chappell or should give any encouragement unto the same.[177] Brunskales the founder \ informes & / complaines at York ag[ainst] the Minster. \ ~~One~~ / Mr Rasebeke obtaines a sharp citation against him, ~~censureing~~ \ styleing / him ~~as~~ hominem perditum & sufflatum diabolico veneno[178] for opposeing soe good a worke; notwithstanding which Mr Rasebeke appeales ad sedem Apostolicam,[179] and an agreement

[Machell's Notes: I.431]
{See my notes. Tis there in 1493. T.B. Esq.[180] prearticled with John Brunskale Anno 7^0 Henry 7. [1491-92] for the building of St Marys chapel, T.B. Esq. gave a Tenement in Brough call'd Gibgarth to John Brunskale: upon Condition that he should build thereupon a Chaple in Honour of ~~TM~~ the Blessed Virgin Mary, & St Gabriel the Archangel; reserving to himselfe & his heires 2d Rent, payable at Penticost if demanded: And allso that he should build an hospitium with 2 beds in the same, for harbourings strangers & other poore people. And that they

[173] This sentence has partly perished.
[174] Body text on this page was written by Machell's informant, Richard Jackson; interlineations are Machell's.
[175] Roger Leyburn, bishop of Carlisle, 1503-1508: see David W. V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142.
[176] See *N&BI*, 574, for a partial transcription of this information.
[177] This was the ceremony of excommunication.
[178] Translated in *N&BI*, as: 'an abandoned wretch and inflated with diabolical venom' (574).
[179] Translated in *N&BI*, as: 'to the Pope' (574); literally: 'to the Apostolic Chair'.
[180] Thomas Blenkinsop.

should be kept in repare by the said Brunskale & his heires forever […][181] revert to him & his heires.[182] Dated 1493. 7^0 Henry 7. In pursuance of which […][183]

[I.432]

\ was / made betwixt the founder & him by a composition of twenty shillings yearly to be paid to Mr Raisbeke and his successors, the ministers of Brough. Thus, then the chappell it continued till the time of the Dissolution of Abbeys and Chanterys under Henry 8^{th}. ~~Ask which t~~ And the priest then that taught to sing being removed \ & his office taken away; / the other that taught Grammar was thought fitt to remaine as master of a \ free / schoole and by Commissioners Sir Walter Mildmay[184] & Robert Keybury Esq. order was taken, and maintenances provided & settled for this purpose. Soe that there is now a salary of 7^{li} 11^{s} 4^{d} paid yerly to the Master of the School by the Kings auditours, they receiveing all the rents & revenews which formerly belongd unto it as a chappell – and \ which was / given unto it by its founders and benefactours.

This is all the Endowment which at present it hath,[185] saveing only a convenient ~~house~~ dwelling house and a garden, which was given by Mr John Beck, one of the scholars of it. But it was formerly very bountifully endowed by severall noble & Generous benefactors as the Erles of Cumberland \ Henry & Thomas / Edward Musgrave Esq~~uire~~, of Hartley \ Esq. & / William Musgrave the son of Richard of Brough – Thomas Blenkinsop Esquire, Hugh Newton & severall others, w[h]o gave lands in Brough, and Stanemore, & Morton, & Yanewath & Mekil-Strickland,[186] & Bampton & Cundale & Mekil Ashby, all in Westmorland, and in Penrith in Cumberland, and West Laton in Yorkshir, & Bernards-Castle in Yorkshire, the Bishoprick of Durham.
There are no exhibitions at all belonging to it, nor any libraries, but only some few bookes given of late ~~by~~, which are not very considerable. The governours of it when a chappell was here: Abbot of Shapp & his successours, and since it is supposed

[I.433]

that power is in the King – Severall ~~you~~ \ well / learned masters there have been of it. At the time of the foundation of the chappell the two chaplains wer Robert Hutchinson & William Chapman – Mr Daniel Exhetter. John Benson.[187] Since the Dissolution John Beck,[188] and after him another of that name, and Mr Thomas Wilson &c.[189] It has been formerly in good repute, tho now by reason of licensing ~~repp~~ \ a M[aste]r unlearnd & / unfit for it, gone into disrespect & decay.[190]

This information I had from Mr Christopher Harrison vicar of Brough under Stainmoor.[191]
Richard Jackson.[192]

[181] Words here have perished.
[182] Translated in *N&BI*, as: 'the land to revert to the said Thomas and his heirs.' See 574.
[183] Words here have perished but in *N&B1* they are given as, 'He, the said John Brunskill, founded an oratory or chapel'. See 574.
[184] Sir Walter Mildmay (1520/21-1589) was an administrator and founder of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. See L. Ford, 'Mildmay, Sir Walter'. *ODNB*.
[185] MS: '~~Et the endowment of this schoole is~~ This is all the Endowment which at present it hath.'
[186] Great Strickland. 'Mekil, mikil, meckle mickle' = Great or large in size, bulk, or stature; also designating a particular place, building, etc. (now only in place names). *OED*.
[187] The names of Exhetter and Benson were added in Machell's hand.
[188] Curwen referred to a 'John Boke' 'Grammar school and Incumbent', in the *Valor Ecclesiasticus* of 26 Henry VIII, 1535. See *Later Records*, 94-109.
[189] Thomas Wilson (deacon) was curate and schoolmaster at Brough School from 1664-67. CCED.
[190] Between 1681 and 1692 five successive schoolmasters taught at Brough school. CCED.
[191] This sentence has been written in an entirely different hand from the rest of the passage on Brough Free School. Christopher Harrison was vicar of Brough under Stainmore from 1664 until his death in 1695; before 1664 he had been a preacher at Crosby-on-Eden. CCED.
[192] Machell's informant, a schoolmaster at Appleby Grammar School, 1671-84. CCED.

[I.433B]

The 2nd Schole in the Parish of Brough [Stainmore]

[I.434][193]

Sir Cuthbert Buckle Knight (late Lord Major of the Citty of London) in his Last Will and Testament dated the 28th day of June 1594*, gave one Annuity of 8li per Annum to be issueing and payable out of the Estate at Spitle (which then was his) for and towards the maintenance of a School-Master to be imployed to instruct children on Stainemoore to Read Write Cypher and cast account; he was borne on Stainemoore and got his Learneing near or about the place where the school now is.[194]

The schoolhouse was builded about the year 1607 at the charge of the neighbors & inhabitants of Stainemoore. And they paid six pounds for 3 Roods of ground for the school to be builded on,[195] and for the schollers libertie,[196] and gathered other money amongst them for a standing stock for maintaining it, so that the building & upholding ever since was at theire charge save that when it was last repaired – id est Anno 1673 – the Right Honourable the Countess of Pembroke gave 3li towards the same. There has beene no other benefactors so far as I know.

Mr Robert Bovell was the first schoolmaster for he began in 1608 and continued till about 1652. Mr William Waller succeeded him and continued about 6 years or thereabouts.[197] And ~~my self~~ \ Thomas Wastell / entered in 1659 and continued since which is about 17 yeares.[198]

I finde other two schoolmasters mentioned which received 14li of the Annuitie; but I suppose they were before the schoole was builded, and had it out of the Arreare which was recovered in the Chancery Suit. There Names, Cuthbert Aiskell, & Edward Waller.

The Executrix & Supervisors appointed by the said Sir Cuthbert used all the meanes they could to prevent the sallary and utterly to defeat Stainemoore of the benefit of the said Sir Cuthberts Will, which caused a great Chancery Suit, and was recovered by Decre[e] there in Easter term in the 43. of Elizabeth [1601], before the Honourable Sir Thomas Egerton Knight, Lord Keeper of the Great Seale of England ~~And~~ \ in[199] / the High Court of Chancery.[200]

[Machell's Notes: I.434]

*1593. Sir Cuthbert Buckle, Vintoner; son to Christopher Buckle of Brough in Westmorland.
Lord Maior for part of the year & Sir Richard Martin, goldsmith, the rest.
Mudy *Chron Successe* p.606.[201]
Hereby hee seemeth to have dyed Lord Maior in 1693.[202]

[I.399]

[**Brough: Families and Descents**]

[Ewbank]

1. Thomas \ de / Iewbanke (lord of Iewbank) in the County of Westm'land, marryed the daughter of Sir John Blenkinsop; whose Armes wer Argent \ a frete between / 3 garbes banded Sable (This I take to be the 1t house & not that of Hellebeck) and they had Isue.

[1.] Sir John de Iewbanke, Knight

[193] Apart from the title and interlineation in Machell's hand, the text on this page was written by Thomas Waistell, schoolmaster at Stainmore School from 1671 until at least 1689. CCED. Machell added Waistell's name in an interlineation, to explain Waistell's use of 'my self'.

[194] Cuthbert Buckle, born Stainmore, was Lord Mayor of London in 1593, dying in 1594 during his mayoral year: Vanessa Harding, *The Dead and the Living in Paris and London 1500-1670* (Cambridge, 2002), 209, 252.

[195] 3 roods = ¾ of an acre.

[196] The children's play ground.

[197] William Waller was recorded in 1670 as schoolmaster of Kirkby Stephen Free Grammar School: CAC(C), DRC5/3 (Correction Court Act Book).

[198] The dating suggests that Waistell sent his report to Machell circa 1676.

[199] This word is in Machell's hand.

[200] Sir Thomas Egerton (1540-1617) Lord Chancellor, became first Viscount Brackley. See J. Baker, 'Egerton, Thomas, first viscount Brackley. *ODNB*. Waistell's hand ends here. Buckle's executrix (his wife, Elizabeth) and son contested his will unsuccessfully. See CAC(K), WDD/11, title deeds and other papers relating to Stainmore Free School (from 1601).

[201] Anthony Munday (bap. 1560, d. 1633), *A Briefe Chronicle of the Successe of Times, from the Creation of the World to this Instant* (1611).

[202] '1693' is clearly an error. He died in 1594.

2. Sir John de Iewbanke Super Stanesmore in Westm'land, Knight, marryed Julian, the daughter of Thomas Lowther, Knight, whose Armes were Or 6 annulets Sable, and they had Isue:

1. Robert de Quo Infra[203]
2. John
3. Thomas
4. Mary
5. Ann

3. Robert \ de / Iewbanke Esq, marryd Jane the daughter of John Musgrave Esq. whose Armes were Azure 6 Annuletts Or; and they had Isue:

1. Sir Richard de quo infra
2. A[n]thony
3. Margaret
4. Jane

4. Sir Richard de Iewbanke Knight: married Isabell the daughter of Sir Thomas Curwen, Knight, whose Armes were Azure a chiefe Or, over all a lyon rampant Argent gutte Gules, and they had Isue 3 sonns.

5. Thomas de Iewbanke Esq. marryed Margaret the daughter of Sir John Huton, whose Armes were Argent Barry of 6 Argent & Gules on a Canton Sable, a † Argent. And they had Isue:

1. Leonard
2. Henry
3. Ralphe

6. Leonard de Iewbanke Esq.marryed the daughter of Thomas [H]untershells Esq. who bore for his Armes [blank] and they had Isue:

1. John
2. William

John de Iewbanke

[I.400]

7. John de Iewbanke Esq. married the daughter of Alexander Mashings Esq. ~~and had Issue~~ whose Armes were Gules, 3 [?] Azure, Argent & Gules[204] and they had Isue:

1. Sr Alexander
2. [Blank]

8. Sir Alexander de Iewbanke[205] Knight, marryed the daughter of Sir Hugh Balioff (pro Balioll forsan) of Barnard Castle, whose Armes were Gules a saltier Argent, over all 2 swords in pale hilted Or. and they had Isue:

1. Daughter and sole Heire.

9. [Blank] the daughter and sole Heire of Sir Alexander Iewbanke, Knight, was marryed to Robert Lord Vipont. Lord of Westmorland, whose Armes were Gules 6 annuletts Or. And they had Isue: 2 daughters and Heires*.



Figure 1.6.14. Arms of Sir Alexander Ewbank. I.400.

[203] 'Robert, of whom below.'
[204] Machell drew a tiny sketch of the coat, which appears to show an inescutchion within a bordure.
[205] Name repeated in interlineation above.



Figure 1.6.15. Arms of Vipont and Ewbank. I.400.

[Hilton]
Sir Alexander Hilton Knight marryed one of the daughter & heirs of Robert Lord Vipont. ultimo Edward 3. 1377. And had Isue Sir William*. This was Hilton of Hilton Castle in Bishoprick, whose Armes were Argent 2 barrs Azure, sed de Hoc q?[206]
{Hilton of Hilton Castle: pedigree of 29 or 30 Generations + before the Conquest. Mary maryed to Robert.}
{Sir Robert Hilton Knight had Isue William and Robert†. William Hilton Esq. at the Conquest marryed Benedict, the daughter & Sole Heir of Germaine Tyson, who bore Vert 3 Lyonsells rampant Argent crowned coller & Lined Or in […][207] foysted[208] CC.[209] Robert 2nd Son of Sir Robert marryed the daughter & heir of Richard Bacon Esq. in Westmorland & so it tooke the name of Hilton Bacon‡.}

Dalton of Yorkshire, Azure, a Lyon rampant ~~reg~~ gardant Argent langued armed & membred Gules, married Dorathy, the daughter of William Hilton Esq.

Horseley of Horseley married Elianore an other of the daughters, and his Armes were Argent 3 Horse heads errased Argent. Bridled Sable.

Richard Conyers \ Esq / beares Azure a manch Or. He was Lord of Harden.

N.B. Sir William Hilton of Hilton, Knight, 22. of Richard 2. [1398-99], marryed Jane the daughter & sole Heire of Robert Stappleton Esq.⸸, whose Armes were Argent a Lyon Rampant Sable langued membred and Armed Gules. And they had Isue Sir Robert, Jane & Margarett. This Jane might allso have quartered her mother Coat, who was daughter & heire of [blank] Redware Esq. and bore for his Armes 3 dagges meeting with their pumells in fess and pointing to the angles of the scutchion Gules. And the foresaid Sir William Hilton was son of Sir Alexander who marryed with one of the Heiresses of the Viponts, whence he may allso Quarter Vipont.

[Machell's Notes: I.400]
*{? vide Robert Vipont in Apleby.} I cannot finde (by their evidences) that any of the Viponts matched with this Heiress of the Iewbankes, nor can it be, except Robert the last was 2c[210] maryed, 29. Henry 3. [1444-45]. & here are proven 8 generations upwards.[211] N.B. I doubt of this. Therefore, for the confirmation or disproofe, se the last Heire male of the Viponts de Apleby Castle. Se Hilton pedigre penes of Robertum de Morton for the date of this pedigree, which cleare somthing as to this doubt.}
†This cannot be, for Robert had but 2 daughters wee read, betwixt whome the whole barony of Westm'land was divided.
‡In another hand late writ & very improbable.
⸸If this be the Stapleton of Edenall as I thinke it is, se a pedigree of them for X or XI generations.
Sir Ralph Lumley bore Argent a chevron Gules between 3 martlets Vert.

[206] 'But check this'. See *CFH*, Hilton, 158-59.
[207] The next two words are unclear; they appear to be '3 ange'.
[208] 'foysted': inserted.
[209] Counter-charged?
[210] Twice.
[211] MS: '& Here are proven Her 8. Gen. upwards.'

[I.402]

{Hellebeck}	
Thomas de Hellebeck	Temp. John [1199-1216].
{wido fil Thomae \ de Hellebeck, /	3.[212] Johanis Reg. [1201-1202]
{Ds wido de Hellebeck	Temp. Johan
{Robert de Hellebeck	Temp. John \ 11. Henry 3. / [1226-1227]
{Robert de &c.	23. (27?) Henry 3.
{Thomas de Hellebeck	26. Henry 3. [1241-1242]
{Thomas de Hellebeck miles	36. Henry 3. [1251-1252]
Thomas de Hellebeck	14. Edward 1. [1285-1286]

Collected out of MS Booke of evidence (penes Commitissam – Cumb[erlan]d as I remember).[213] ~~Robert de Hellebeck~~ The\re/ were of the name remaneing, 19. Edward 1. [1290-1291], for then I finde one Simon de Hellebeck a Tenant in Brough to Idonea de Labourne. 1 of the Daughters & coheirs of Veteripont.

[I.405]

In order to a Pedigree of the Helbeck

1. Thomas de Helbeck, son of Thomas de Helbeck; he was Lord of Helbeck and gave some parcell there to Edmund his son & Isabel de Shikeburne, but this Edmund was not his Heire. This was in the time of Sir Michael de Hardclay. In a bord[ure].[214]
2. Thomas son of Thomas de Helebeck, married Avicia, the daughter of Adam de Hennecaster & Isolda his wife as should seem from the said Isolds ~~giving~~ releaseing her clame to 1 messuage and 2 Oxgangs of Land in little Strikland.

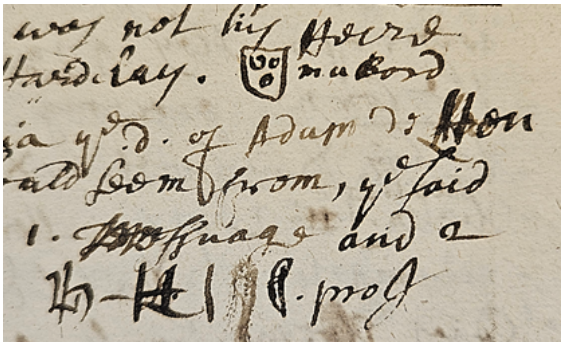


Figure 1.6.16. Symbols relating to the marriage of Thomas de Helebeck to Avicia. I.405.

3. Isabel Shikeburns lease 28. Edward 3. [1354-1355] H. J. Dom. Thoma de Hellebeck, Henry de Warthecop, Gulfride de Tesdale, Henrico fil Hamundi, Henry de Melmorby.
4. Thomas de Hellebeck married Avice & had with her by inheritance Lands in little Strikland, Overton & Silokwater, to all which Rich[ard] de Musgrave quitts clame. H. J. Dominus Michael de Harcla, Johe de Rossegill, Thomas de Derwentwater militibus; Roberto de Morvil tunc vicecom Westmorland, Adam de Haverington {Harington}, John de [blank], Sir ~~Thomas~~ de Hellebeck.

[212] A blot occurs before the numeral '3'. If 3. John, the regnal year would be 1201-02.
[213] 'From out of a book of evidences belonging to the Countess of Cumberland, as I remember.'
[214] Here there is a sketch of a coat of arms less than 1cm square, containing three annulets.

5.[215] Thomas de Hellebeck, the son of Hammon held Lands in Richmondshire & Westmorland by a Knights service; Thorp pro quarta parte militis & Hellebeck & Suarrabi et Hascam quæ est excambium pro Burd per idem servitium iisdem terris pertinens.[216] This is ancient.
6. Sir Thomas de Helebeck had a daughter caled Alice married to Robert, eldest son of Sir Richard son of Henry de Suleby when he was under aige; and Sir Edward settled upon his sonn all his land att Apleby, his demane. Rent Homage & services.
7. Adam de ~~Hellebeck~~ a wit[ness] at Slegil sd. Thomas son of Thomas, gave to his daughter Margaret, Hoton Super Wyske.
8. Sir Thomas had a sister named Dionysija, married to [blank] de Nubigin, & she had a brother called Robert, & they had a daughter (ut puto) named Isabel, married to Patritrit de Castle Car\r/ock of whome they gave Nubigin Rasebeck Keld ~~with~~ \ also / Cowflat with ½ the fulling mill.
Sir Thomas de Helebeck & Alan de ~~Helleb~~ Clerke (? 29. Edward 1.) 1302.
(27. ut put) Henry 3[d] [1242-1243], witnesses to Agnes de Lancasters comp. Radulfus de Notingam, Vice Comite Westmorland. Robert de Askeby, John de Morevill, William de Derwentwater. Dominus Willielmus de Goldrington, William de Warthecop, Roberto de Renegil.

[I.406]

{Brantun}
11. of Henry 3. [1226-1227]. Thomas de Musgrave & Isabel his wife aggrement with William de Morvill, about Morvils grindeing at their mil of Brampton ~~for their tenure of an oxgang of land late of Walter de Morvill~~ who confessed that he ought to grinde there. Whereupon they granted to the said William \ multuram Bladi / free moulter of all the Corne growing upon 14 Oxgangs of land in Brampton to him & his heires. S. X. Bov[atæ] quæ fuerunt Richardi Tanlibon (or Tanliaton \ Tanliston /!). 2 q.f. Walteri Morevil, I½ q.f. Thome de Branton. Paying to T[homas], Isabel & heirs yerely for the multer aforesaid duas eskepas multuræ Auene, et 2 eskepas siliginis*;[217] ½ at Pase,[218] the other att Michaelmas. To them or the Heires of Isabel, Domini Richard de Danecurt, Robert de Verter[i] ponte fil[ij] Domini Ivon[is] de Verteriponte, Walter de Strikland, Robert de Hellebeck†.

It seems by this that the Musgraves married an Heiress from B., whose name was Isa[bel] forsan Brampton; and probably Richard Talibon an other whose daughter was probably married to Walter Morvil, father of William, by whome had XII Oxgangs of Land.

{Fothorg\ill/}
I finde that Henry Clifford Junior Knight, Son & Heir apparent of Henry Clifford Knight \ then / was Lord Clifford, gave to one Rowland de Fothergill his servant, a yerely rent or Annuity triginta et 3[a] solidorum 4 denariorum Sterlingorum 4[0] Henry 8. [1512-13].[219] This may show the begin[ning] of Fothergill.

{Warcop of Colby}
Sir Thomas Wharton bore a plane maunch. 22. Henry 8. [1530-31].
T. Warcop of Colby & Barnaby his son & heire apparent 33. Henry the 8. [1541-42] charged with T. B. de Hellebeck, 1 Tenement in Sandford and a parcell of land & medow in Ellerker apud Crakenthorp, of the yearly rent of 3s 4d. for a tenement in Colby.

[Machell's Notes: I.406]
*{Maybe Scepps: as Squire from Esqr. Q. quotiens}[220]

[215] MS: This passage begins with a scored-through phrase which is partially illegible, thus not transcribed,
[216] 'Thorp for a fourth part of a knight & Hellebeck & Suarrabi and Hascam, which is in exchange for Burd, for the same service pertaining to the same lands.'
[217] '10 bovates which were of Richard Taleboyes […], 2 of Walter Morevil, 2 of Thomas de Branton, paying to Thomas, Isabel and heirs yearly for the multur aforesaid, 2 skepps of […] multur, and 2 skepps of winter wheat: half at Easter, the other at Michaelmas.'
[218] Easter.
[219] 'Triginta Solidum et 3' = 33 gold coins of the Roman empire [originally worth about 25 denarii each, or, later, one shilling each] and 4 denarii sterling.'
[220] 'Query, how often?'

†Note: Ivo de Veteripont lived here then. May be a son ~~Robert~~, or John de Veteripont. sed de hoc dub????[221]
I thinke Lord Dakers has & had ½ of the mill called Coatflat in Overton in Henry 4 time & maybe ½ of the manner of Orton?
{NB} Where Homages is due, the Land is holden by Knights service. *Coke upon Littleton*. 5 Chap. de Sockage. Grand Sergeanty is \ not / Knights service but no tenure in sockage. I must either read *Coke upon Littleton* before I write, or have beside me Cowells *Interpreter*.[222]

[I.407]

Witnesses at the Deeds of the Blenkinsops de Hellebeck
Thomas deed to Will. D°[223] Michael de Hartla, D^no^ Roberto de Musegrave, Johane de Helton, Roberto de Loncaster*, Richardo de Musegrave, Henrico de Warthecop.
Isolda de Heneca[s]ter. Test. Michaele de Hartla,[224] Williamo de Strikeland, Johan\e/ de Rossegille, militibus. Roberto de Morvile, Richard de Musegrave, Johane de Helton, Henry de Wardecopp, Johe de Cracanthorp, Willielmo de Eadem,[225] Adam de Derwentwater, Adam de Haverington.
Isabel de Slikeburne in the 28. Edward 1. [1299-1300] Let to farme to Robert, the son of Thomas de Hellebeck 2 Oxgangs of land in Hellebeck, paying to her & her Heires 9s per annum. Witness Sir Thomas de Hellebeck.
Lanhetons Quit clame to Thomas de Hellebeck. H. T.[226] D° Willielmo de Bampton Vic. Westmorland, D° Robert de Askeby, D° Johane de Morevil, D^no^ Richard de Suleby, Thoma de Musgrave tunc Senescallo Westmariæ,[227] William de Warthecop, Johe de Burton, Hugo Carpenter, Richardo filio Beatrice,[228] William de Soureby.
Robert Franceyes gift of 2 oxgangs in Ascome. H. T. Rad[ulphus] de Notingam Clerico vic. Westmarie. John de Askeby, John de Renegil, Grekborio de Wale.
To the \ Marriage / Agreement twixt the son of Sir Richard Sal[keld] & the daughter of Sir Thomas Hell[beck] D^no^ Willielmo de Dakir, Johane de Morvill, Thoma de Musgrave tunc vicecomite Westmarie,[229] Henrico de Sandlay, Willielmo de Wartcop, Willielmo de Soureby
Thomas, son of Thomas de Hellebeck, gave Hoton Super Wyske to Margaret, his daughter (a man[or]) It seemes his father married one Agnes to whome he found de dote[230] 5 marcs (a great joyture!) out of the said manner.[231]
Donisya Newbigin. H.T.[232] Willielmo filio Herm […][233] tunc vicecom Westmerie, Thoma fil Gospatritij, Thorfin filio Roberti, Roberto fratre ipsius Donisyæ, Roberto filio Petri de Sulleby, Henric de Cundale, Roberto de Raysegil, Johe de Morvilla, Gilberta de Engayn, Johane Taleboys, Herm le Nair, Hugone Ulfe, Yvone le Mercer – s.d. HT. D^ns^ Michaele de Harla & Johane de Rossegill m[iliti]bus. Johane de Helton, Richard de Wartecop, Henrico de Wartecop, Alano de Keldelyth, Roberto filio Thomas de ~~Regd~~ Raydal. D° Roberto de Askeby, D° Thomas de Hellebeck, Thoma de Musgrave tunc vicecom. Westmerie, Alexander de Newby, Simon de Dufton, Thoma de Goldrington, William de Daekyr in Closeclif, Thoma Templeman, Ada filia William, filij Araldi de Barton. s.d. the

[221] 'Sed de hoc dub.' 'But of this I am doubtful.'
[222] Edward Coke, *The First Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England. Or, a Commentarie upon Littleton, Not the Name of a Lawyer Onely, but of the Law it selfe* (London, 1628). Often referred to as *Coke upon Littleton*, it is a commentary on Thomas Littleton's treatise on land tenure. John Cowell, *The Interpreter: Or Booke Containing the Signification of Words: Wherein is Set Forth the True Meaning of All, or the Most Part of Such Words and Termes, as are Mentioned in the Law Writers, or Statutes of This Victorious and Renowned Kingdom, Requiring Any Exposition or Interpretation. A Work not Onely Profitable, but Necessary for Such as Desire Throughly to be Instructed in the Knowledge of Our Laws, Statutes, and Other Antiquities* (1607).
[223] Domino: Sir.
[224] Variant of Harcla.
[225] 'William of the same place.'
[226] 'With these witnesses.'
[227] 'Then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[228] 'Richard son of Beatrice.'
[229] 'Then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[230] 'For dowry.'
[231] Sarcasm here: 'Big Deal!'
[232] Witnesses.
[233] Following the word 'Herm,' Machell has written, '(form)The stroke is onely to show the name.' Machell has underscored 'Herm' but no other stroke is visible.

Daughter of the wife of Robert Fossatoris de Laissinbij.
Anno 1302. A French deed of Robert de Cliffor[d].

[Machell's Notes: I.407]

*{Note. Lon.}

[I.408]

{29. Edward 1. [1300-01]}. H.Test. Sir Michael de Hartclay, Sir Thomas de Hellebeck, Sir Robert de Engleys, Sir Robert de Askeby chevaliers, John de Helton, Henric de Warthcop, Gilberto de Querton, Nicolas de Musegrois, Thoma Bouchet de Souleby.

Pedigree of Helbeks
{Hammon, Thomas; Sir Thomas*}
Thomas, father Sir Thomas he passed the Lordship to Richard Blenkinsop & Isabel so that nec ego nec heredes mei,[234] so that it should be in theirs not his h[eir].
1. Hammon: he had Isue Thomas
2. Thomas de Hellebeck son of Hammon married as I guess from Rulos Surrender the daughter of Rulo.[235] He had Lands both in Richmondshire and Westmorland. Torp per quartam partem militis,[236] & Hellebeck and Suarrebij[237] & Hasc'um[238] which was an exchange for Buro[239] by the same service belonging to those lands. He had Isue Sir Thomas de Hellebeck.[240]
3. Thomas, son of Thomas de Hellebeck, afterwards Sir Thomas. He marryed Avicia, daughter of Adam de Henecastre & Isolda his wife, and bore for his Armes 3 Annulets within a Bordure ingraled; vixit 1302, 29. Edward I. And had by her Lands \ 1 messuage & 2 oxgangs / in Little Strikland, Overton & \ in / Sillock Water {or Wath} to all which Richard de Musgrave Quits Clame. Teste interali' D° Michael de Hardcla.
He had \ 3 / sons Thomas and ~~Willia~~ \ Edmund† / {All} and ~~3~~ 4 daughter: Alice an Isabell \ & Margaret & Agnes ut puto. Edmund, the 2nd son, was marryed [to] Isabel de Slikeburne \ a widow 1326. March. / And had some lands in viledges granted by his father in the Lordship of Hellebeck, who had Isue Edmund.[241]
Alice was married to Robert, eldest son of Sir Richard, son of Henry de Suleby, befor he was at aige, haveing as I conceive, for her portion 110 markes. Upon which marriage Sir Richard de Suleby settled all his demane Lands ~~tenants~~ \ Rents Homage / & Services there unto belonging, which he had in Apleby. Isabell the 2nd daughter was married to Patritius de Castlekarock & had her dowry Lands at Sunbigin, Rasebeck, Keldelith, & Coatflat, with ½ of that fulling mill. 3. Margaret had for her portion the mannor & Lordship of Hoton Super Wyske (? in Yorkshire) intaled upon her heires males, otherwise to revert upon him & his h[eir].
4. Thomas, eldest son of Sir Thomas, married Isabel daughter of [blank] & had Isue Isabell as I suppose, for Thomas makes over his whole estate to Richard \ de / B[lenkinsop] & Isabel his wife.

[Machell's Notes: I.408]

*{Memorandum. To preface with those Hellebecks I finde witnesses in my long booke. But the first I finde mentioned \ there enterd in this parish / in the evidences \ ~~ad finem~~ sup[ra]? / is Hammon.}
†Write the Isue as the other is writ.
{26. Edward 1. [1297-1298]. Sir Thomas de Hellebeck sold Sowerby to Sir Robert Clifford for 115 marcs. The said Sir Robert being oblieged to give to Sir Thomas 2 of his Knights Robes every yere durante vita, & in time of war with the Scots; to carry him with him. And in time of peace ~~Secum tenere~~ dictum Dominu[m] Thomam ad

234 'Neither do I nor my heirs': deed of resignation.
235 This sentence has been transcribed as seen.
236 'Torp by a quarter of a knight's fee.'
237 Sowerby.
238 Askham.
239 Brough.
240 Here, Machell has written an unclear phrase, which appears to be 'v.II'.
241 Here, Machell wrote the numeral '6' in the margin.

omnes adventus suos secum tenere cum tribus equis ubicunque fuerit. D[ic]tus Dominus Robertus in Anglia secum tenere forfect[um] ~~in C~~ C.li.[242]

[I.409]

4. ~~Thomas of Hamon~~ \ by his first wife[243] & / had allso (by a 2nd wife* as it should seem \ may he had / but this wife / Dyonisija, married to [blank] de Newbigin and an other allso whose name was Robert \ vixit XI. Henry 1. [1110-11]. / He farm'd a messuage & 4 oxgangs in Hellebeck \ (of his nece) / Isab. Slekb.
Alane, 3 son of Sir Thomas, was a Clerke & had for his maintenance to him & his heires 1 messuage & 4 oxgangs of Land given by the said Sir Thomas in the vil. & Lordship of Hellebeck. He lived till the 5. Edward 3. [1331-32]; he had Isue, a son called Allan, vixit 1349: 23. Edward 3.†.
Agnes, 4 daughter as I suppose, was married to William de Lancaster, and recoverd all her lands in Strickland in Kendall of T. Hel. & Isabel his wife, for defalt of her porti[on] which in her widowhood she surrendered to them for a ~~yerely exhibitio~~ \ annuity / of 5s dureing life, about the 27. Henry 3. [1242-43].

5. Isabel, daughter & heir as is supposed of Thomas de Hellebeck son of Sir Thomas, marryed to Richard \ de / Blenkansop, upon whome and his wife the whole mannor of Helebeck with all its appurtenances was settled & to their Heires after them, jure hereditario.[244] Excepting the lands & Tenements held by Isabel de Slicburne & Edm[und] her son, and one messuage in the possession of William the son of Hugo, of the yerely rent of 10s, which Alan de Hellebeck payed for the 4 oxgangs of land which he holds in the said manor.[245] The seale is 3 Annuletts, & a file of 3 lamb[el][246] (which shoes his father liveing) about which is writ a mix character: SIGILLVM THOME DE HELLEBEC. But I cannot certanely say that ther is any border ingraled.
{26. Ed. 1. [1297-1298]}[247] {Sir Thom de Hellebeck who sold Sowerby to Rob Cliff[ord] father dead ut puto.}[248]



Figure 1.6.17. Sigillum Thomas de Helbeck, 26. Ed. 1. [1297-98]. I.409.

[Notes on] Pedigree of the Blenkinsops of Hellebeck[249]

{Robert, Richard & Isabel} The Storie
It is reported that Richard Blenkinsop who married Issabel was one time ~~walking~~ \ rideing that way / with his greyhound / ~~with~~ \ following h sliped away there from & rann into an house in ~~Hellebeck~~ \

[242] 'And in time of peace, the said Lord Thomas in all his appearances to keep his men with him, along with three horses, wherever he was. The said Lord Robert kept with him in England a forfeiture of £100.'
[243] He had Isabel 'by his first wife.'
[244] 'According to the law of inheritance.'
[245] The word 'manor' replaces Machell's illegible word.
[246] Lambel = Label: a charge consisting of a narrow band across the upper part of the shield, having three (or sometimes five) short downward projections with a rectangular or dovetailed outline, most often borne as a temporary mark of cadency distinguishing the arms of an eldest son during the lifetime of his father. *OED*.
[247] Nov.1297-Nov.1298.
[248] In the MS, all the margin comments on this page occur twice.
[249] See I.405-408 and I.409-18.

Brough / whither he following found the dogg laying his head upon the young gentlewomans lap & the makeing much of it. upon this he fell in love with her and at last marryed her. This is ~~constantly~~ \ frequently / reported to this very day.

1. Richard de Blenksop tooke to wife Isabell the daughter of Thomas de Hellebeck & Isabell his wife; I finde them marryed Anno 1^0 Edward 1^t. [1272-1273]. He lived in the 10. ~~Ed~~ Edward 2. [1316-1317]. He was Coroner of Westmorland Anno 1320, i.e. 13. Edward 2. vixerat 18. Edward 2. P[uto] et 20.[250] Vixerant una cum Isabel Sclikburne[251] Anno 1326, i.e. 1. Edward 3. R.B. Dom de Hellebeck, 2. Edward 3.[252] He had Isue. Isabel was Lady de Hellebeck (vidua) 5. Edward 3. Ergo her Husband dyed then abouts.[253] Richard Blenkinsop Coronator Westmariæ 19. Edward 2. [1325-26].

2. {Thomas & Ellen}
{dilecto Vallerio (seu Valletto) nostro R.B.}[254]
Thomas de Blen~~k~~\c/ansc/op. 5. Edward 3. [1331-1332]. T.B. 1349: 23. Edward 3. There was one Robert de Blenkinsop whome I take to be brother (or rather uncle) to this Thomas (maybe his father's elder Brother for those Blenkinsops of Hellebeck bear a crissant for difference) to which Robert Ed. King of Scots (i.e. a Baliol) gave all the Lands & tenements of Ughtartyre,[255] with all the Appurtenances to the value of 20 marks per Annum: which Lands came into the hands of the said King Edward by the for-fature of Sir John Saniclere,[256] a latte Enemy & Rebbell to the said King‡. Dat apud villa S^{ti} Johanes de Perth ~~King~~ 27. Septe. Anno Reg 7^0 13. Edward 3. i.e. 1339.[257]

[Machell's Notes: I.409]

*{whose name Agnes de Skrevyn; vide}
†{The writ formerly had 40. Edward 3d.} [1366-1367]
‡If so be, this were not Crowne lands or previously[258] bestowed.

[I.439]

Brough parish vid. pedigree of Helbeck

Carta pro marcat & ferijas Apud Burgh subtus Stanemore per Edward 3. Aug. 2. reg. ejus 4^0

Edwardus dei Gratia Rex Angliae Dominus hiberniae et Dux Aquitannie, Archiepisc. Episcop. Abatibus, prioribus, Comitibus Baronibus Justiciarijs, vice-comitibus prepositis ministris et omnibus Balivis, & fidelibus suis salutem: Sciatis nos de ~~de~~ gratia nostra ~~nostra~~ speciali conscessisse et hach Carta nostra confirmasse dilecto o fideli nostro Roberto de Cliford, quod ipse & hereded sui imperpetuum habeant vanum marcatum singulis septuimaris per diem Jovis, Aput manum suum de Brough subtus Stainmore in Comitate Westmorland, & unam feriam ibidem par quattuor Dies Duratur. viz. par duos dies proximos Antefessum ~~habeant unum mercatum singulis~~ Sancti Matheij Appostuli, & qui in eodem festo Sancti Matttheij & par unum diem proximum, Nisi marcatum illud & feria illa sint ad nocumentum vicinorum Mercatorum & vicinarum Feriarum &c. His Testibus Henry Lincoln episc. Cancellario nostro, R Episcopo Sar. &c. – et alijs. Datum per manum nostrum apud Northampton 2^{d0} die Augusti; Anno Reg. nostri $4^{0.}$ Confirmd By King Edward 6. – Queen Elizabeth regni. Ejus 44. 21 Decembris.[259]

[250] 'He was alive in 18. and, I think, 20. Edward II (1324-1327).'
[251] 'They were alive at the same time as Isabel Sclikburne.'
[252] 'R.B. was Lord of Helbeck in 2. Edward III (1328-1329).'
[253] 'Isabel was Lady of Helbeck, widow in 5. Edward III (1331-1332); therefore, her husband died around then.'
[254] 'To our dear Vallerio (or Valletto) R.B.' 'Richard Blenkinsop'. Presumably this is a quotation from Machell's source.
[255] Possibly, 'Auchtertyre'.
[256] Sinclair.
[257] [Document] 'dated at St John's town of Perth, 27 September 1339 (13 Edward III).'
[258] 'Previously' replaces a word obscured by the binding.
[259] 'The King to Robert Clifford. A weekly market on Thursdays in his manor of Brough-under-Stanemore; and one fair there, lasting four days, namely the two days nearest the Feast of St Matthew the Apostle (21 September), the feast day itself, and the day immediately after it; unless that market and fair should damage

[I.410][260]



Figure 1.6.18. Arms, top-left margin. I.410.

{Ellen de}
T. \ de / B. de Johanna, filia Ada[m] Geteman totam placeam suam in Burg: 14. Edward 3.[261] He was at full yeres 'un[i]t[at]e no[vi]ssime',[262] which I suppose is the 19. Edward 3. [1345-1346]; as appears from his Lett of Attorney for possessions de Heleb[eck]. {He had office Thomas de Blenkinsop. Will. Capellanus.}[263] He had at the same Lett of Attorney, 6 Annulets within a bordure ingraled and writt about thus: S. THOME DE BLENCANSOP, 24. Edward 3. [1350-51]. 28. Ejusdem. 29. Edward 3. [1355-1356] all his Lands [&] Tenements in Hellebeck, Overton, Souleby and Brampton were given to Him by Joh[n] Raynald Vicar of Burgh & William de la Ferm', Chaplane, to hold for his life, paying to them \ & their Heires / yerely 12d. Thomas fil Richard de Blenkinsop: 32. Edward 3. in Burgh.[264] His wife was Ellen vid. Thomas, 41. Edward 3. [1367-1368].[265] \ She had 30s by compotus[266] for jointure per Annum out of the Demane. /

{Thomas & Katherine}
3. Thomas Blenkinsop, son of Thomas, had all the Lands & Tenements which were infeoffed upon ~~Them~~ \ The Vic[ar] and Chap[lane] of Brough / By T.B., his father, by a deed dated 43. Edward 3. [1369-1370] to him and Katherine, his wife. \ He had a brother? William, a Chaplane in 9. Rich. 2.[267] / This Thomas de Blenkansopp had the office of Constable of Brough Castle granted to him & his heires in the 4. of King Richard 2. [1380-1381] for the space of 600 yeres, with all its appurtenances, easments & commodityes. By Roger de Clifford, Lord of Westmorland, as appeares by his deed or charter dated at his Castle of Brough, Sunday before the feast of St James the Apostle, Anno K. Richard 2[t] quarto[268] from which date the lease tooke its force. T.B. 8. Richard 2. T.B. 12. 18.[269]

other such nearby; etc. Witnesses: Henry, Bishop of Lincoln; our Chancellor; R, Bishop of Sarum etc.' This is a calendared version of the two market charters of Brough (1330-31). The full Latin text was sent to Lord Thanet in 1684/5 and is to be found on I.427-9, above. See 'Charter for Market and Fair, 2. August 4. Edward III (1330-1331).'

[260] MS: '{~~This I sup. was his wife her seale}~~' A small coat of arms has been scored-through here.

[261] 'T. de B. had from Johanna daughter of Ada[m] Geteman all her place in Burgh, 14. Edward III (1340-1341).' 'Ada' is unclear.

[262] ''Newly in agreement'. The supposition is that Machell copied these two words verbatim from the document.

[263] Capellanus: chaplain.

[264] 'Thomas the son of Richard de Blenkinsop [is found in a deed of] 32 Edward III in Burgh.'

[265] Widow of Thomas.

[266] Compotus: a calculation, a reckoning; an account; a record of accounts. *OED.*

[267] 1385-1386. MS (omitted): ~~there was One William Blenkinsop \ 9 Richard 2 / of whome I have taken notice, which might be brother to Will to this Thomas~~.'

[268] 'Sunday before 25 July 1380 (the 4th year of King Richard).'

[269] 'Thomas Blenkinsop was alive in 8, 12 and 18 of Richard II: 1384-1395.'

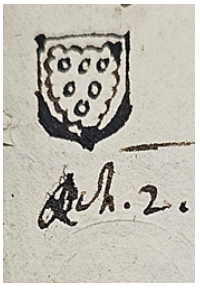


Figure 1.6.19. Blenkinsop: Thomas and Katherine's Arms. I.410.

In the 19. of Richard 2. [1395-1396], the said Thomas de Blenkinsop de Hellebeck ~~infeofed~~ possessed his son William, and Maud the daughter of Richard de Salkeld in diverse Lands & Tenements in the village of Overton. His son, Robert de Blenkinsop & Richard Talbot de Burgh bein attorney, 19. Richard 2.

{1. William 2. Robert 3. Isabell 4. Richard. All lived 3. Henry 5. [1415-1416]}
{5. Margaret, who lived 12. Henry 6. [1433-1434]}
{6. Catherine married to Robert de Langton son of Mr Gulfrid de Langton, who had Lands & mannors in Yorkshire, Richmondshire} \ & Bishoprig about the 9. Richard 2. [1385-1386].
Thomas the father of William bore for His Armes: 6 Anulets within a Bord[ure] ingraled.



Figure 1.6.20. Haverington Arms. I.410.

It should seem that he marryed a daughter much about this time whose name was Isabel to Sir ~~Will~~ \ Nicolas de / Haverington Knight; for he & his wife were possesed of Lands and Tenements in Hellebeck, till the[y] released the same, Anno Richard 2^{d} 13^{0} [1389-1390], upon Consideration of a Bond of 100 marks \ portion puto,[270] / 40 whereof were received, as appears by his \ re/lease on Friday next before the feast of \ the Nativity / St John Baptist, 14. Richard 2. [24 June 1390], Haveringtons sea[l] thereto annexed as a frett of 6 with a file of 3 Lamb[els] and writ abot[271] S NICHOLAI DE HAVERINTON. I suppose He lived at Farleton (or Ffarlton) in Lonesdall. for bothe the writeing are dated there.

{William & Maud 19. Richard 2. [1395-1396]}
4. William son of Thomas ~~Blen~~ de Hellebeck married Matilda, daughter of Richard de Salkeld, and had settled there upon him \ by his father / the 20^{th} part of his whol demane in the village of Overton, [I.411]
with one place in the same village caled Rasegillhall, with lands, medows and closes adjacent. 16 Tenements being of T[enure] ad voluntatem[272] reserveing the Mill & mouter.[273] Dated 19. Richard 2. They had also Anno 8^{0} Henrici 4. [1406-07] severall lands Tenements in the Lordship of Hellebeck with Housebote & Haybote, i.e. wood allowd for moderate reparation of their Houses & ~~Harness as~~ carts & the like: as doth more particularly appear from a deed of that date. They were marryed durante vita patris, whom I finde yet living 2. Henry 4.[274] [I also find] Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. William his heire & Robert – 3^{d} Henry 5. [1415-16]. This the 1^{t} time that I finde him writt Squ[i]re.

[270] 'For a portion, perhaps'.
[271] The MS then contains an inscription which has been scored through and repeated.
[272] 'Tenure at will.'
[273] Multure.
[274] 'They were married during his father's lifetime, whom I find yet living, 1400-1401.'

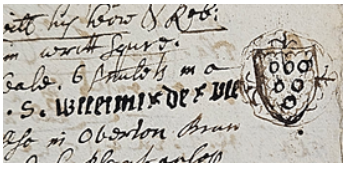


Figure 1.6.21. Arms of William de Blenkinshop. 1.411.

William de Blenkansop bore allso on his seale 6 Annulets in a Bordure ingrald and the circumscription, S. WILELMI ˣ DE ˣ BLENKENCOP ˣ 3^{0} Henry 5. [1415-1416]. He had Lands allso in Overton, Branton, Musgrave & Apleby. ibid. I meet with one John Blenkansop pentioner in the Abby of Shap presented by that fraternity for Holy Orders to John Bishop of Carlile. 1426. Henry 6. 4^{0}.[275] The words are: vestre diocesie clericum & presentem Exhibitorem.[276]
{Henry 5}
It seemes that he had a Brother also, whose name was ~~Thomas~~ \ Richard / who had for his maintenance 3 messuages, 3 Oxgangs of Land in Sunbigging durante vita; which were to revert to John de Preston Justice of P[eace] \ one of the Kings Justices / & John de Preston of Warcop. (Justiarius domi[n]i Regis[277] to which Joh. of Warcop to other quitted his clame. 6. Henry 5. [1418-1419]). He had allso all the Burgages with woods wastes of Roger Bowett of Brough, 2. Henry 6. [1422-1423], which were granted to William Blenkinsop, elder Brother of Richard & heirs male in reversion by John Preston of Warcop: & upon default of his heirs males, to Richard & his heirs male forever? 12. Henry 6. [1433-34]*.
T.B. 36. Henry 6. [1457-58] {?}†.
Richard letts his lands which he had of the g[ift] of their father \ Thomas / in Brough Orton Brampton & Crakenthorp, for the life of Richard. 23. Henry 6. [1444-1445].

An Abstract of the family of Blenkinsop
{1. Edward 1.} [1272-1273].
1. Richard (to whome Robert is sup[posed] brother) married Isabel de Hellebeck. Daug[h]ter & heir of Thomas: by whome he had Isue Thomas de Blenkinsop.

{5. Edward 3.} [1331-1322].
2. Thomas son & heir of Richard married Ellen de [blank] By whome he had Isue Thomas de Blenkinsop, & William, who was a Chaplane. Walter?

{43. Edward 3.} [1369-1370].
3. Thomas \ de / son & heir of Thomas \ Sc. he is writ Esq. 3^{0} Henry 5. [1415-16]. He was Constable of Brough & married Katherine [blank] By whome he had Isue. 1. William. 2. Robert. 3. Isabel. 4. Richard. & 5. Margaret.[278]

{19. Richard 2.} [1395-1396].
4. William son & heir of Thomas. married Matilda, daughter of Richard de Salkeld & had Isue: Thomas & ~~William~~ Richard.[279]

{25. Henry 6} [1446-1447].
5. Thomas \ Esq. / son & heir of William \ Blenkinsop Esq. / farmed of his father (25. Henry 6.) the

[275] William Barrow was bishop of Carlisle from 1423 to 1429. The other possible contenders are John Ross (or de Rosse), bishop from 1325 to 1332, and John Kirby, bishop from 1332 to 1352, these particular bishops living a century earlier than Machell's MS suggests. See Bishops of Carlisle 1292-1556, British History online.
[276] 'Clerk of your Diocese and present appearer.'
[277] 'Justice of the Lord King'.
[278] MS: 'He ~~maryed Katherine~~ was Constable of Brough & married Katherine [blank] By whome he had Isue. 1 William 2 Robert 3 Isabel 4 Richard & 5 Margaret. ~~& Thomas Called Thom Blenkinsop senior wife Katherine~~.'
[279] In the margin of the MS at this point is: '{vixerat 28. Henry …}' but the page has perished.

manner place & manor of Helbeck for terme of life. rent 10 m^{rcs} {per Annum} ~~I suppose he marrye about that time but with whome I know not.~~ He is the 1^{t} that tooke name of Blenkinsop without de annexed: & tis observable that in same writeing[280] William the father is writ, de, & Thomas the son without it. But both writ Esqs. it is 1^{t} too in English.[281] He had Isue, Thomas. He ~~I thinke~~ it was that had lands at Kirby Super Wiske 40^{s} rent: his wife estate there.[282]

[Machell's Notes I.411]

*N[ote:] this Richard was son of William and Matilda his wife \ 5. Henry 6. [1426-1427]. / Whether if this an other Generation.

†If this was T., father of William, he must 106 yeres old.

[I.412][283]

5. Thomas Blenkinsop de Helbeck (the 1^{t} time I finde it so writ) was possessed of the manner of Raysegil hall with the demane &c., with Lands & Tenements in the village of Overton & village of Tebay &c. which he passed to William Birbeck, vicar of Overton, & Rch. Warton, Chap[lane]. 33. Henry 6. [1454-1455]. Howbeit I finde him a witness 25. ejusdem. And William Blenkinsop Esq. lett to farme unto Thomas Blenkinsop Esq., his son, 25. Henry 6. [1446-47], His mannerplace of Helbeck with many lands & closes thereto belonging for time of his life: yealding & paying to the said William yerely \ for the mannor &c. / X marces. {N.B.} This T. Blenkinsop Esq. (for now I observe de to be left out) had Lands & Tenements in Kirkeby Superwyske of 40^{s} rent, 36. Henry 6. [1457-1458].[284]

{Edward 4} i.e. 2. Edward 4. [1462-1463].
The manner of Raysegill hall & the demane with all their lands Overton & Tebay were infeofed upon Thomas de Hellebeck and Katherine his wife by the Donation of William Birkbeck vicar of Overton & Rowland Warton, chaplane to them & their heirs forever. 33. Henry 6. [1454-1455]. This I take to be son & Heir of Thomas.

{5.} T.B. son of William forsan lived at ~~Stillington~~ \ de Hellebeck / in Yorkeshire, vixit 8. Edward 4th. [1468-1469]. Hence collect. T.B. senior – Brother to William – married with Katherine ~~his wife~~ & had Isue William, upon whome after the death of his father and mother the Lands at Slegil* in the Hamlett of Newby were setled for his life, after which the[y] were to revert to T.B. Blenkinsop junior, Cosan to T.B. aforesaid: & in case he dyed without heir that then they should remane to Catherine and her he[i]re lawfully begot in per[pe]tu[ity]. This T.B. Senior seeme to have had the desposal of his nephew, for I finde to him bound Richard Salkeld de Colby & Rowland Vaus Esq. in 100^{li}, for performance of Mar[riage] Covenants between T.B. Junior and Margaret, the daughter of the said Richard Salkeld.

{6.} T.B. Esq., son of ~~Will~~ \ Thomas maryed Katherine (Curwen or Leigh may be)†. & had Isue[285] 1. Thomas. 2. William, who ~~lived~~ with him & his mother, were infeofed in Lands in Slegill a[nd] Hamlett of Nuby for their lives successively, yet so that after the decease of William it was to revert upon Tom B. junior, co[n]sanguineo et Heredi dicti Thomæ?[286] son & heir of the said Thomas \ the / senior; and in case he dyed without Heirs that it should come to ~~Marg~~ Katherine & the heir of her Body lawfully begot. Dated 10. Edward 4. [1470-1471]. It seemes all this while, old Thomas was living, haveing some lands in Helbeck, Brough &c. remaning in his hand. 25 Henry 6. [1446-1447].[287]

---

[280] Four interlineated words are difficult to read here; they have been omitted.
[281] Machell placed an asterisk here but there is nothing in the margin to indicate a note or further comment.
[282] The page has perished here.
[283] Text on I.412 provides another version of I.411, as does most of I.413.
[284] The following crossed-through sentence, '~~He had a son ut put. Thomas B Esq, witness with him 1461~~', has been omitted.
[285] MS: '& had Isue & Had Isue'.
[286] 'The blood-relative and heir of the said Thomas.'
[287] MS: 'It seemes all this while old Thomas was living, haveing some lands in Helbeck, Brough & remaning in his hand ~~& William lived at Rasegil & Let the Demane & much of Helbeck to T. His son~~ 25 Henry 6.' See below (I.413).

{7.} T.B. junior, son of T.B. senior & grandchild to T.M. ~~Catherine~~ \ Margaret / daughter of Richard Salkeld de Corby, with Richard & Rowland Vaux Esquire were bound in a Bon[d] of 100 li to performe the covenants 19. Edward 4. [1479-1480]. And

[Machell's Notes: I:412]

*{Memorandum: X Acres of Land […][288]
†He was senior in respect of his altery[289] \ both lived at Hellebeck; howbeit old Thomas was alive / for they are poss[ess]ors in trust for his son.

[I.413]

the next yere following I find T.B. of Helbeck Esq. gives to Thomas B. the son of Thomas Blenkinsop his son, & Margaret his wife, daughter of Richard Salkeld, some lands he had still reserved & kept in his owne hands, part in Hellebeck & Brough part in Sandford: viz. 13 Acres of med[ow] with all his Lands, Tenements & Rents with their appurtenances in Murton. Bolton, Asbycotysforth, Asby Winderwath & Ormshed. 1 yerely rent of iij^{s} & 4^{d} issueing out of a Tenement in Colby &c. – X Ac. pat. in. C. 10. Edward 4. [1470-1471].

6. Thomas Blenkinsop \ Esq. / son & heir of Thomas married Katherine the daughter of [blank] and upon it had Raysegil hal with its appurtenances 33. Henry 6. [1454-1455]. He had Isue Thomas {? John} and William, whome he infeofed Land in Slegil for his life of the decease of his father & mother, the revertion being in Thomas, ~~his son~~ Consang. et heres dicti Thomæ.[290] They are both witnesses, 1461. i.e. 2. Edward 4. by the name of \ Thomas / Senior & Thomas Junior.

{9 Edward 4. 1469}
7. Thomas son & heir of Thomas Blenkinsop Esquire marryed Margaret, daughter of Richard Salkeld de Corby \ 9. Edward 4. [1469-1470] / vid. sup. (7)[291] and had Isue.
He married Margaret, daughter of Richard Salkeld of Corby & Tryarmaine; whose other daughter Katherine was 1^{t} marry to Sir [blank] Curwen, & afterward to Richard Ducket Esq. They had Isue Thomas Blenkinsop & ~~Margaret~~ \ Cristibel / Blenkinsop who was married to Robert Helton of Helton. & John (ut puto) who is one of the Donors in the infeofment of 1 Tenement in Hilton; 4 in Dufton; 1 in Bongate with Hodgeclose; a rent of 4^{s} per Annum out of a burgage in Apleby pos[sess]ed by Joan Lowson widow of Edmund: to the said Robert de Helton & Christobel his wife: & their heires legetimate. There is John allso a witness & J. a son*, 8. Henry 8. [1516-1517]. John Hilton, whome I take to be father of This Robert, received C^{li} in part of a greater payment of Margaret Blenkinsop viduæ, 8. Henry 8.

7. Margaret had Isue by Thomas as appears by her will 1522.
1. Thomas. 2. Gorge. Annuity of 40s. 3. [& 4.] John & Gabriel designed for the university. 5. Christobel married to Robert Hilton. All her sheep & 2 kine. 6. Ann, Portion 100 marc \ 2k. / 7. Esabel. All seem to be marryed but Ann.

8. Thomas married Elayne forsan Leigh; for John Leigh with others was made feofe in trust by him. They had Isue – from Margaret: William / 1. Thomas. 2. Bar[bara] 3. Dorathy.[292]

[Machell's Notes: I.413]

*1. must be put where the father, & other with the son.

[I.414]

{<u>Thomas Blenkinsop & Margaret Salkeld: 9. Edward 4.</u> [1460-1470]}
Thomas Blenkinsop, son & heir of Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. \ sirnamed Junior / in his fathers &

[288] Followed by five illegible letters.
[289] The word 'altery' is unclear, but the sense of the word is 'of age'.
[290] 'Kinsman and heir of the said Thomas.'
[291] 'See above, 7.'
[292] Two scored-through dates, '~~1396-1460~~', appear here, at the page foot.

Grandfathers life time marryed Margaret daughter of Richard Salkeld de Corby about 9. Edward 4th. [1469-1470]. I take her to have bin an Haress probably both to Salkeld & Vaux, for Rowland Vaux Esq. stands bound with Richard Salkeld in a bond of 100li to Thomas Blenkinsop senior in relation to the marriage of Margaret Salkeld to Thomas Blenkinsop junior. And the Blenkinsops quartering the Vauxes coat with whome I find not they had any match, & Rowland Vaux being conserned in this Marriage makes me believe that Salkeld had marryed his daughter & heir whose daughter & cho-h[293] this Blenkinsop marryed; and ergo the rather because I finde in the widowhood of Margaret: she & her sister, dame Katherine Culwen then wife of Richard Ducket Esq., had Sir Thomas Daker Lord of Daker & of Graystock bound in a Bond of 100li for sufferance of their peaceable entrance occupation & injoyment of all and every parcel of the Lands & Tenements of the moiety of Trevermane & Morthuate[294] in Cumberland; dated 13 of May Anno 2. Henry 8. [1510].

{St Maryes Chappel}
This Thomas prearticled with John Brunskale Anno 7. Henry 7. [1491-1492] for the building of St Maryes Chaple as before, and left his wife Margaret a widow about the beginning of Henry 8., his son being underage in the Custody I thinke of Lord Daker, for he clamed money for his marriage as appears from the Condition of the foresaid Bond. They had Isue
1. Thomas of whome in the next section.
2. George \ ~~afterwards a Priest~~ / to whome his mother left out [of] her owne lands or Brugh Close an annuity of 40s, & 4 m[arks] his Brother left him per annum. \ He came to be priest & to this Sir John & his Brothers T.B. the eldest gave 4m. a pece annuity. /
3. John [&] 4. Gabriel \ mort. 1581 / \ Thomas gave 40s annuity / Both designed if docill[295] for the university.
5. Christbell married to Robert Helton de He[l]ton, whose portion was above 100 m[arks] beside several tenements as before: ~~her mothers whole stock of sheep with 2 cowes & their calves at herd.~~
6. Ann who had 100 marcs by will for her marriage. \ She was married [to] Christopher son of John Crakenthorp of Newbiggin & had 100m. in land Joynture with the revertion of the whole estate intaled upon the heires male: which was 40 mar[ks] per Annum in Westmorland & Cumberland, Anno 1523. 14. Henry 8. /
7. Esabel or Isabel: who I thinke was married.[296]

Thomas sirnamed Junior dyed as is said about the 1t of Henry 8. [1509-1510]. Margaret his widow: 1522: i.e. 13. of Henry 8.

{Thomas Blenkinsop & Ellen}
Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. son of Thomas sirnamed Junior did very much prosecute that particular Intrest, tooke Care about the repare of the church of Brough, the building of the steeple &c. {19. Henry 7. [1503-1504]}. But in the 16. Henry 8. [1524-1525] was imploy in the Kings warrs against the Duke of Albany and set forward 19. of October in the said yere; leaving all his land, \ as well those which he had by his mother as paternall Estate / of all which he was then possessed, to his wife & \ Sir / Thomas Rigg Vicar of Brough, till such time as his heire came to Aige, to be imployed for marriage of his other children and payment of debts. John Leigh, Gawen Eglesfield & others being feofees seised of his Lands for performance of his will, most of which was writ with his owne hand very legible & schollerlike. He tooke to wife Ellen daughter of [blank] ~~forsan~~ Leigh about 2. Henry 8. [1510-1511]. [297]

[293] Co-heir.
[294] Triermain and Moorthwaite.
[295] Apt to be taught; ready and willing to receive instruction; teachable. *OED*.
[296] There follows a note relating to the Crackenthorps: {'Crakenthorp Henry who had Isue Xtopher Ann Frances &? John Crakenthorp who had Isue Xtopher Ann Frances & John?'}
[297] In the left-hand margin, running at right angles to the page at this point are two seals with comments: {'At her will'} {'At her sonn's \ 1t / will'}.

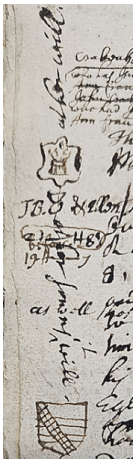


Figure 1.6.22. Seals: 1.'Used by Thomas Junior's widow at her will'; 2.'Used at her sonn's will'. I.414.[298]

[I.415]

In recompense of his good & Laudable service to Henry Earl of Cumberland Lord of Westmorland, Skipton & Vescy & Gardian of the west marshes[299] of England towards Skotland, he was gratifyed at the Donation of the said Earl Henry with the Custody wardship & marriage of William Skarbu\r/gh,[300] son & heir of Richard S[karburgh] gent. of Gloseburn in Yorkshire. 17. Henry 8. [1525-1526] T.B. Esq. payd 10^{li} per Annum to Sir William Bastoign in the County of Bedford Knight out of Little Corby & Warwyckbriggs in the right of dame Elizabeth, his wife*. He lived to make an other will Anno 1536 at Newcastle and if he dyed there as is supposed, he was buried in the Austin Fryers {X}[301] within a clorsett[302] before the <u>rood</u> {27. Henry 8. [1535-36].} It seemes his wife and some of his children dyed before him. \ He was under shireve of Westmorland and actual Constable of B C[303] XXI. Henry 8. [1529-1530]. / He had

1. Thomas son & heire of whome in the next section.
2. Barn\ab/as as I suppose – who dyed in his minority.
3. [Blank] f. Agnes: who was marryed to John Wharton, whose daughter Agnes Wharton was then about to be marryed with [blank] son & heir of Robert Helton son of Richard Helton, to whome he gave towards her marriage XX^{li}.
4. Dorathy married to –
5. Richard Blenkinsop, a servant the right Honourable Henry Earl of Cumberland. 32. Henry 8. [1540-1541].

{<u>T.B. & Magdalen Musgrave, 24. Henry 8.</u>} [1532-1533]

9. Thomas Blenkinsop the younger, as appear by Articles twixt T.B. the Elder Esq. & Sir Edward Musgrave, was marryed to Magdalene youngest daughter of Sir Edward Musgrave of <u>Hartley</u>†, betwixt 24 of November & the Feast of the Translation of St Thomas the apostle, 24. Henry 8. [1532];[304] haveing settled upon him 20 marks per annum to them & their heires for ever in consideration of 100^{li} portion. And that in case of His fathers marriage, that young couple should live

[298] Note the wheatsheaf.
[299] The western marches of the borderlands.
[300] The centre of this word is blotted.
[301] A large cross: a sign used by Machell to mean, 'wrong' or 'check this'.
[302] Closet: 'a private chapel, or reserved area of a church, for the use of a lord, monarch, etc.; (also) a private pew. Now obsolete'. *OED*.
[303] Brough Castle.
[304] The feast of St Thomas the Apostle was originally celebrated on 21 December.

either at Corby or Helbeck pro ut melius videret expedire.[305] He gave 26^{s} 8^{d} towards the building of the Bridge att Brough: whence it is that his Armes are placed there upon, together with the Cliffords att whose cost I suppose it was compleated in ~~whole or in part~~ 1558; This gift being made by will in 1545 upon his goeing to serve the Kings majesty against the Scots. He was possesed of Raisbeck \ in the Lordship or parish of Orto[n] / & in case he should dye in that Expedition left his Brother Richard Blenkinsop, his 2 uncles \ George & / John ~~and George~~ priest, together with his cosan Sir Richard Leigh priest, in trust to take up the rents there of which were 13^{li} or thereabout which were to be imployed to the best advantage towards the profit & use of all his smale Children daughters, for as many of them as came to yeres. He gave to his sister Dorothy 3^{li} \ 11s / 8d[306] to be payd at her setting up house when her father in law dyes. & to Anne Helton (forsan Agnes daughter of Wharto[n]) when she setts up house at Barton,[307] 40s. \ He had Isue /

1. Thomas whose wardship he desired might be purchased by his good Lord Harry Earl of Cumberland & Grace his wife, from [whom] he feard not to meet with favour.[308]

[Machell's Notes: I.415]

*Might not this Elizabeth be a 3^{d} sister of Salk[eld]? {She was dead 24. Henry 8. [1532-1533]}
†{è obligat;[309] she was liveing 13. of Elizabeth [1570-1571]}

[I.416]

Thomas had issue {his wife dyed before him.}

1. Thomas, a child when his father went to wars & therefore he desired that his good Lord Henry Earl of Cumberland & Grace his wife would purc\h/ase his wardship into their Hands.
2. John: Illegitimate, to whom he lef all his lands in Traddallmane with yerely 40^{s}. Mathew, stuard to Lord Wharton. \ Charles a servant to the Countiss of Cumberland. /

{2. Charles son to whome his father gave an annuity of 10^{li}. 3. & youngest Mathew. 5 marks per Annum.}

~~3~~. He had many smale daughters – 5.
3. [Blank] marryed to William Farrand of Carleton \ hall / near Skipton Esq., whose armes are [blank]
4. Margaret to Hugh Machel of Crakenthorpe Esq., about 18. of Elizabeth [1575-1576].
5. [Blank] To Thomas Bellingham of Gathorne near ~~Warcop~~ \ Askby / Esq.
6. [Blank] To John Eglanby[310] of Carlile in Cumberland Esq. whose armes are [blank]
7. [blank] the youngest to Lancelot Pickering of Crosby Esq.

{~~10. Eliz. Vixit, mortuus est 11. Eliz […]~~ obijt. 4 maij 13. Elizabethae 1571. Thomas junior was then 34.}[311]

They were all under aige in 1576 \ 18. Eliz. / & the father was dead then. I finde Pickerings acquit[tance] 4. Quene Elizabeth for part of portion: 1562. Each of them, portions 100^{li}. Inde dub? 40 forsan.[312]

{Thomas & Margerie 2^{0} and 3^{0} Philip et Marie [1553-1556]}[313]

10. Thomas son of Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. marryed in the time of his father (who notwithstanding his former will made upon his goeing against the Scotts returned agane in saifety) with Margarie one of the daughters of William Wykecliffe ~~Esq.~~ of Wykeliffe in the County of Yorke Esq., in the 1 & 3^{d} of Philip & Mary, haveing settled upon them for terme of their lives & to their heires after them \ beside the revertion of p[ortion] / an estate of the clear yearly value of 13.vj^{s} 8^{d} ~~besides the revertion of~~. By Thomas Blenkinsop the Elder, whereof all the lands which he had in Corby ~~should~~ \ were to /

[305] 'Whichever was more convenient.'
[306] Unsafe transcription; '11s' is an unclear interlineation: the rest is clear.
[307] Barton or Burton: 'u' and 'a' are written very similarly in Machell's text.
[308] The next sentence begins 'Mary d.' but the text here, at the foot of the page, has perished; some margin comment is also illegible.
[309] 'By an agreement.'
[310] Aglionby.
[311] '~~10. Elizabeth lived; she was dead by 1571, aged 11.~~'
[312] 'I doubt this; 40 shillings perhaps.'
[313] The reign of Philip and Mary lasted from 1554 to 1558.

be parcel or part and that whilest the[y] lived in the house with him they were only to receive 10^{li} per Annum, the residue of the foresaid Estate remaneing to Thomas their father in consideration of their Boording with him* ~~upon Consideration of~~, which Articles of marriage, William Wikelife Esq. did pay to the said Thomas Blenkinsop Esq. 200^{li}. The land he setled upon them were his whole part & proportion of the castle or Manner of Corby with the appertinences in the County of Cumberland, and all his lands Tenements & hereditaments whatsoever with their appertinences in Corby aforesaid, and in Warwykebrigs Cal\w/d-cotes[314] & Cald\w/cote Bankes, Eglanby, & Murthwate, excep ½ the fishing of Corby upon the River Eden, & 3 parts of ½ the watermill of Corby divided into 4: and allso all & singular Burgages, messuages, Lands & tenements in the City of Carlile in the County of Cumberland aforesaid, 2. & 3. Philip et Mariæ [1555-1556].



Figure 1.6.23. Seal of Thomas Blenkinsop. I.416.

John Leigh of Isham Cumberland. Tho. Rookeby of Mortham \ com / York Esq. expounders of Articles & all doubts arriseing in the said covenants.
His Isue [Version 1]
1. Thomas whome tis sayd dyed an infant.
2. Henry of whome in the next section.
4 daughters. to whome he allotted for portion 66^{li} 13^{s} 4^{d}.
5. Fraunces his son. 10^{li} annuity except his mother then with child should bring forth a son, & if so either was to have 6: 13: 4 Annuity durante vita.[315]
6 [Blank] a daughter. She was to have 66:13: 4 as the rest of her sisters had. è Testa. – 15. Elizabeth.[316]

[Machell's Notes: I.416]

*{Thomas dyed about ~~Anno 15~~ 16. Elizabeth [1573-1574].} {Margarie was alive 41. Elizabeth [1598-1599].}

[I.417]

The Isues of Thomas & Margery [Version 2]
1. Thomas who tis said dyed an Infant.
2. Henry, of whome in the next section.
3. Fraunces to whom was left an annuity of 10^{li} per Annum.
4. Barbary married to Mr Robert Ward of Bows in the County of Yorke whose Armes were ~~were~~ Vert a Crosse flore Or charged with a crescent Gules, for distinct[ion].
5. Katherine married to John Warcop of Warcop \ T[ower] / County of Westmorland Esq. whose Armes you have elsewhere.
6. Magdalen} ~~mar~~ \ dyed / unmarryed att a great Aige.
7. Joan }
8. Elizabeth, who dyed ~~very young~~\ unmarryed / livd in 12. of King James [1614-1615] then 27 yeres of aige.

[314] Caldcoats.
[315] 'Annuity during his lifetime.'
[316] 'From his will 15. Elizabeth' [1572-1573].

{Henry Blenkinsop & Elizabeth Tankard}
11. Henry Blenkinsop de ~~Blenkinsop~~, sonn & heire of T.B. Esq & Margarie his wife being under aige was a ward \ in custody of Sir Simon Musgrave / and there was payd for the fine of his marriage 40^{li} ~~sterl[ing]~~ for the payment of \ 10^{li} / whereof Sir Simon Musgrave of Edenall Knight, Ingeram of Plumpton & William of Moreton were bound in bond 21. Elizabeth [1583-1584]. He marryed Elizabeth the daughter of Thomas Tankard of Burrowbrigg in the County of York, Esqr. haveing with her 500^{li} portion, upon which agrement all the paternall Estate of the Blenkinsops were intaled upon the heires males forever. \ And 46li per annum Joynture upon her for life. / This was don in the 26. of Elizabeth [1583-1584] about which time they were marryed. He sold his part of Corby with other his land in Cumberland to the Lord William Howard and others joyned with him for 770^{li}, Anno 3^{0} Jacobi [1605-1606] {He dyed 18 January 1613 – 47. Jacob.} Lancelot Lancaster of Sokbridge marryed Frances Tankard who was Eldest daughter of Thomas Tankard and sister to Elizabeth Blenkinsop. The Tankards Armes are Argent a cheveron between 3 escallops Gules charged with 3 annulets Or.

There Issue[317]
~~1. Thomas~~
1. Katherine. who dyed unmarried at a great aige.
2. Dorathie a nunne att Lis\b/on in Portigall.
[3.] Jane. married to One \ T. / Bird of Colby in Westmorland.
4. Thomas son & heir of whom in the next section.
5. Fraunces. who was never married and is now liveing.
6. Elizabeth. who dyed in Yorkeshire unmarried.
7. Margarie married to Rober Cawell of Bought in Lancashire, Gent.
12. Thomas son & heir of Henry Blenkinsop Esq. and Elizabeth his wife was under Aige when his father dyed, and by that means became ward to the Countiss of Cumberland: for whose composition was payd 200 m^{rcs}. He was a very hansome & proper Old Gentleman att the writeing hereof. He was marryed On Midsomer day 1618 to Ann Osbaldeston, daughter of Sir Edward Osbaldeston Knight of Osbaldeston in the County of Lancaster. whose Armes were Argent a mascle[318] between 3 annuletts Sable. And that Her portion was 600 li & her jointure 60li per Annum with the whole Estate in revertion upon the heires male. This Thomas passed away all the lands in Orton & Slegill to The Tenants & others.
Their Isue
1. Frances [blank] of whom hereafter.
2. Henry. who dyed an infant.
3. Mary. who dyed about 20 yeres of Aige.
4. Elizabeth who dyed about 16.
5. Thomas, an ingeniouse Gentleman for any sort of mechaniks.
6. John who dyed an infant.
7. Henry who dyed an infant.

[I.418]

8. Ann. unmarryed.
9. Dorathie. –
10. Katherine. –
13. Frances Blenkinsop. son and Heire of Thomas Blenkinsop Esquire and Ann his wife, is now liveing with his father but not as yett marryed.

As to my Conjecture of quartering Vaux
16. Edward 2. [1322-1323], Rowland de Waus[319] son & heir of Robert de Waus of the coun\ty/ of Carlile; which Rowland was of Tryarmane, had to wife Johanna [blank] which Rowland of Tryarmane gave to Rowland de Waus son of Randulph de Waus of the County of Somsett for the Terme of his

[317] This is the first occasion on which the spelling of the word 'issue' is as we would expect. Probably Machell's note-writing style encouraged him to abbreviate the word to 'isue', elsewhere.
[318] A blot covers the symbol placed here, which is possibly a mascle.
[319] Circled in the MS.

life, all his part of his lands & Tenement at Pury and Fod[d]ingdon, besides Babecary in the County of Som[er]sett,[320] paying to \ rendering / Rowland de Waus de Tryarman & Johanna his wife h. ex. ass. 6li. Ster[ling] yerely, for 5 yeres. and rendering after 5 yeres expired to Rowland & Johanna &c. 10li ster[ling] Annuatim att Purij. & sic quandam Johannam his wife.[321]
28. Edward 3. [1354-55]. Rowland de Vaus gave to Rowland \ and / his son the Manner of Torcrossoke; which manner was conveyed by Richard de Richmond to Sir Andrew de Harcla Earl of Carlile. Anno 1322. (15. Edward 2.) witness to Harcla Richard de Denton Knight? (& later allso) Thomas de Neuby (sed com. Cumb. ni fallor \ dat / Carlile).[322]

43. Edward 3. [1369-70], Tryarmane Enfeofd for life upon Johanna, Rel[ict] Rch. de Vaux for life. Then to come unto John de Vaus son of Rowland the Brother of Rich. & his heires.

50 Edward 3. Ranulph de Dacre, don. de Westm'land releaseth all clame of the manner of Kirkoswald to Johan, widow of Rich. de Vaux.
{12. Hen. 6. Rowland Waux Armigerer lett land in William Holme dated at Carlil.}



Figure 1.6.24. Vaux Seal. I.418.

The Coats of the Blenkinsop Matches, some whereof tho possably Authentique enough[h], I can not prove by evidence.
1. R.B. & Isabell Hellebeck The Coat ported per pale. i) Blenkinsop. the 2nd Gules, 6 annulets within a bordure ingraled Or.
2. T.B. with Margaret Salkeld: The 1t Blenkinsop. the 2nd Vert a frett of 8 Argent.
3. T.B. with Katherine Vaux: The 1t Blenkinsop. 2nd Argent a Bend checquer Or & Gules by her name of Vaux. But this I doubt of, rather supposeing that [Blank] Salkeld who was marryed to [Blank] Blenkinsop was daughter & co-heir[323] of Richard Salkeld by [Blank] His wife; which wife was daughter & heir to Rowland Vaux. For Thomas her son was the first that I meet with who bare the Armes quartered as they are in the window of the Quire in Brough church, placed there by his appointment.
4. T.B. & Katherine Wharton: The 1t Blenkinsop – 2nd Sable a maunch Azure.[324]
5. T.B & Ellen Leigh. The 1t Blenkinsop – 2nd Argent 2 barrs Azure over which a bend counter compone Or & Gules.
6. T.B. & Magdalen Musgrave. 1t Blenkinsop 2. Musgrave.
7. T.B. with Margarie Wikelif. The 1t Blenkinsop, 2. Argent a chevron between 3 crosscrosslets Gules.

[320] The medieval manors of Pury (later, Perry) and Foddington lie in the parish of Babcary, Somerset: see *Victoria County History – Somerset*, Vol. 10, Babcary, 101-21.
[321] 'Annually at Pury & thus for as long as Johanna, his wife…'
[322] 'But unless I am mistaken, County Cumberland, date Carlisle.'
[323] MS: 'choree'.
[324] The word is represented by 'az'; rest of it is obscured by the binding.

8. Henry Blenkinsop with Elizabeth Tankard. 1[t] Blenkinsop, 2. Argent a chevron between 3 escalops Gules charged with 3 \ annulets Or. /
9. T.B. with Ann Osbaldeston: 1[t] Blenkinsop, 2[d] Argent a lozenge[325] between 3 hartes Sable proper.

[I.431A][326]

[Further notes on Heraldry]

{These Broughs I doubt had nought to do here}[327]
Hic jacent Johanes de Brough armigeri & Katerina uxor ejus, qui Johanes obijt x[0] die mensis Januarij Anno millesimo CCCC[o] xij[o] quorum animabus propiciet Deus Amen.
Hic jacet Willielmus Burgh, filius et heres Johanis Burgh qui obijt qua[r]to die Novembris Anno Domini [M]CCCC xlij; et Matilda uxor eius que obijt xij[0] die mensis November Anno Domini [M]CCCC XXXII; et Willielmus Burgh Armiger filius et heres praedicti Willielmi qui obijt ultimo die mensis December Anno Domini M[0] CCCC lxij[0] et Elena uxor ipsius Willielmi filij Willielmi praedicti qui obijt xx[0] die mensis Junij, Anno Domini Millesimo CCCC xliij[0] quo[rum] animabus propiciet Omnipotens Deus.[328] The 'n' a saltier chargd with 5 swa[n]s, a fess ingralld.[329]

[I.438A][330]

And in Poland, they have their Castelians Captaines or governours of cityes, of whom there be there 87 which are under their respective Palatin:[331] Casimir king of Poland being Elected to the crown Anno 1645, did by a Dispensation from the Pope marry the Relict of his Brother & predecessor, Ladislaus a French Lady, p.28.[332] & Sobieski he made his Grand Marshal.[333]
Casimirs Resignation Speech – I would say more, but I am hindred through want of memory, & that tenderness of my heart which suffereth me not to speake fa[r]ther to you but with Tears.
Oathes: The Polander tho pap[ist] put this clause in the End of their oath of confederacy for preservation of the King & Kingdoms 'I will truly & sincerely observe this &c. in brotherly unity, without any mental reservation or hope to be dispensed therefrom. So help me God.'
Sable, the name of some sort of sword in Poland. General Sobieski going[334] to incounter the Turkes marched with his drawn s[word].[335]
Will de Ireby tunc de Westmorland Tho: fil Thome, Henrico de Su[leb]y

[325] Machell drew a lozenge symbol here.
[326] Small scrap page. On its reverse (I.431B) are three rough sketches of coats of arms and the text: 'Ad Brough sed non subsaxeto; Ingraled twixt 6 floredeluces as first. 3 as second 4; Over the porch now Sir John Lawsons; These I think are in Ca …rig Church.'
[327] Written at right angles to the rest of the text.
[328] 'Here lie John de Brough Esq, and Katerina his wife, which John died 10th day of January in the year 1412. God shall have mercy on their souls Amen. Here lies William Burgh, son and heir if John Burgh, who died the 4th day of November 1442; and Matilda his wife who died the 12th day of Novermber 1432; and William Burgh Esq. son and heir of the aforesaid William, who died the last day of December 1462; and Elena the wife of the same William, son of the aforesaid William, who died the 20th day of June 1443. Almighty God shall have mercy on their souls.'
[329] Written at the foot of a damaged scrap of paper, this final sentence is very unclear.
[330] Small scrap page, 9½cm x 12cm, torn from an address sheet of a letter. On the reverse is part of an address, 'For Thomas Machell of Kirkby Thore', with a note in Machell's hand, 'In his hand &c. ibidem 98.'
[331] Here, Machell referred to his source, 'p.20 of Sanderbey Redde vinus marriage.' but the letters are blotted and unclear.
[332] John II Casimir Vasa, 1609-1672, was king of Poland and grand duke of Lithuania from 1648 until his abdication in 1668, after which he lived in France, where he joined the Jesuit order. See Daniel Stone, *The Polish-Lithuanian State, 1386-1795* (Washington, 2014), Chapter 10.
[333] John III Sobieski, a war hero who was eulogised by William Wordsworth in 'Siege of Vienna Raised by John Sobieski', was elected king of Poland and grand duke of Lithuania in1674. He died in 1696. See 'Catholic Encyclopedia', https://www.newadvent.org/cathen/14061c.htm.
[334] MS: 'being.'
[335] See n.348: on Sobieski.

[I.438B][336]
Forinsecum servicium quantum pertinent ad illam medietatem. Hijs Testibus Tho. filio […][337] tunc Vic. Karliol William de Ireby, tunc de Westmaria; Thoma filio Thome. Henrico de Soulby; Rogero de Bellocampo; Roberto de Hellebeck; Johe de Ormesheved; Willo filio Simonis; Simone parsona de Burgha; Simone Brithon; Johe filio Johanes de Helton; Alano filio Richardi Leingth\w/m. et alijs. Hujus Origo extat in Libro Pergam' – in camera cartam' de castro de Apelby.[338]

Note: There were 2 Robert de Veteriponts – 1ᵗ sheriff Anno 10. Regis Johis. [1208-1209]. This must be either – in the time of King John – for the 1ᵗ Robert lived till the 12. Henry 3. [1227-1228] then John [de Veteripont] to the 26. [1241-1242]. Then Robert to the 49. [1264-1265] e ult[imo] Veteripont – or in the time of Henry 3rd.

[**Accidents and Calamities**[339] **in Brough Parish**]

[III.75]

Bondgate[340]
Anthony Stephenson & his wife found a man in the last great snow save one in a gill above Burton & Hilton {in Burton Lordship about 15 years ago} calld Greena Gill, lying & moaning in the snow; who gave this account concerneing him selfe. That he came from Durham to the Nether pit on Stanemore to see som of his acq[uaintance] working there: & thence intending for High Ubanke he missd his way or was misled for a \ whole week / together \ twixt Sunday & Sunday / never resting eating nor sleeping \ all the while; / nor knowing whether it was night or day all that time but that \ there / was something like a black dog sometimes running befor him. His legs were so perishd with the cold that they wer ~~both~~ cut of just under the knee about 3 monthes after.

{A millston carried over Wharton Park wall without injureing it}

[III.105]

[A breech of a gun in the throat of Cuthbert Comston]
(On the 18. of March 1688) Cuthbert Comston of Brough Sowerby, a blacksmith by traide, ætatis circa 50,[341] having a swelling like a boyle on the knot of his t\h/roat, {?} came to Dr Ubancke of Market Brough, January 3. 1688, to desire his advice; who, trying with an instrument, found that there was a piece of iron in it, and at length after much search & inscission in that desperate place, discovered it to be the britch[342] of a gun for evulsion of which he put a peg through the britch skrew hole to prevent its regression[343] & then contrived the instrument, which I call a levator from the use he made of it, to thrust betwixt the gula [and] \ aspera astena or wind-pipe / & bretch the notches on the end, being to secure the said gula, thropleˢ[344] artery from retireing backwards whilst he made an inscission on the left side, cutting 2 fixfaxes[345] & several other vessels & veines, & cut so far into the

[336] Scrap page, 9cm x 14cm. 'Extracted from a deed relating to foreign service, with witnesses: Thomas, son of John the present Sheriff of Carlisle, William de Ireby then of Westmorland, Thomas son of Thomas, Roger de Bellocampo, Robert de Hellebeck, John de Ormesheved, William son of Simon, Simon the parson of Brough, Simon Brithon, John son of John de Helton, Alan son of Richrd Leingtham, and others: From a Book in the charter room at Appleby Castle.'
[337] A blot obscures two words here.
[338] 'Foreign service as much as applies to that half. Witnesses as follows … The original of this exists in a book pargum in the document room of Appleby Castle.'
[339] For this phrase, see 'Method' in Machell's Preface: I.42A, I.154, I.127, II.533.
[340] The title is 'Bondgate', but the event occurred on Stainmore.
[341] 'About 50 years old.'
[342] Breech.
[343] MS: 'of \ a / gun, for ~~extracting~~\ vulsion / ~~of which~~ he ~~to good~~ put a peg through the britch skrew hole to prevent its regression.'
[344] 'Gula': gullet, thropple or thrapple = windpipe. *OED*.
[345] MS: 'being ~~to prevent being~~ to secure the said gula \ thropleˢ artery / from ~~slipping &~~ retireing backwards whilst he made an inscission on the left side, cutting ~~the~~ \ 2 / fixfaxes.' 'Fixfax': the thick tendon in the neck (usually of cattle or sheep). *OED*.

esophagus that both meat & drinke were emitted at it, {? Creed barly}[346] which were brought away by the

[III.106]

ciringe[347] in dressing.
{Then taken out}[348]
An[d] on the 18 March he got it out in the presence: Rich.Wastall and his daughter; Richard Burton & his wife & 2 sons; Robert Nicholson; Michael Hodgson, and severall others of Brough.

{A fillet of lead protrude[d] every day farther & farther}
And several persons of good credit & quality saw the small end of the britch while it was in \ his throat / & stook out like a boane: sc. Mr Fox \ Mr Harrison / Mr Ferdinando Hudleston of Peckwel in Yorkshire, Mr Gal[frid] Hay of Brough Castle & Mr Pale of Brough, Mr Hugh Row {43 years practice} & severall others.

{14 weekes fed of a Ciringe}
And that which is more to be wondered at, the patient had this distemper on him & knew \ not / what it was nor how he came to it, from ~~Easter~~ \ the / Tuesday before Whitsuntide. Only by the cure the occasion was discovered; for in shooting at an hare, which it seems he had kild for they found blood & garbage, he was beaten backward, his right struck out or rather in, & the gun britch lost, which he knew nothing of till the doctor found it. It had passed in this interval round about his neck beyond the veterbra & so under the left ear, till it fixed upon his throat [see Figure below].

a. The figure of the gun-britch in its full proportion, weighing ijss & half a drachm {2 ounces ½; ½ a drachm.}[349]
b. A levator made of wood by Dr Ubanke, being \ somewhat / convex ~~& hollow~~ on the bacside of it & concave or hollow on the foreside with 7 or 8 nicks at the end.

[III.107]



Figure 1.6.25. 'Gun britch' and 'levator'. III.107.

[Additional Material attached to Brough Parish]

[I.397]

A Relation of a Spirit which appeared last X^tmas in Langedale parish of Stainthrop[350] near Barnard Castle in the Bishoprik of Durham, 1674.[351]

[346] 'Creed barly': as in 'to cree wheat or Barly &c., to boil it soft (1691)', thus, soft barley emitted from the oesophagus. The sceptical reader might wish to take 'creed barly', with its question mark, to mean 'belief, barely'. For both meanings, see *OED*.
[347] Syringe.
[348] This margin heading appears on III.105.
[349] 'Drachm' a Greek coin; also, 'a weight approximately equivalent to that of the Greek coin: in Apothecaries' weight = 60 grains, or ⅛ of an ounce, in Avoirdupois weight = 27⅓ grains or 1/16 of an ounce'. *OED*.
[350] MS: 'Stanithrop'.
[351] According to Henry Mayhew's conversations with nineteenth-century street-sellers of chap-book literature, people, particularly women, greatly enjoyed seduction and murder stories: see Barry Reay, *Popular Cultures in England, 1550-1750* (London and New York, 1998), 51-52. For the popularity of sex and courtship in chap-books of the 17th century, see Margaret Spufford, *Small Books and Pleasant Histories: Popular Fiction and its Readership in seventeenth-century England* (Cambridge, 1981), 156-93. There are many modern studies of late-17th-century ghost stories; see, for example, Jo Bath and John Newton, 'Sensible Proof of Spirits: Ghost Belief during the Later 17th Century', *Folklore 117*, 1 (2006), 1-14.

It was the Appartition of one (Francis) whose maden name was Ripton. She marryed a young man whose ~~name~~ was \ called / William Sidgeswick in the Langedale \ aforesaid / and by him had 2 or 3 children whome he left very young to the care & custody of Frances his wife when he dyed, upon her resolveing & promising not to marry any more, His estate att that time personall & reall being vallued att the rate of 500^{li}, which he did not question but she would imploy to the best advantage of herself and children.

Howbeit she marryed some time after to the son of Captane Cutbert Appleby the chief man of that dale, and dyed before any settlement was made upon \ those / her children by her first husband, haveing allso left hid under a spar or ribb of the house, 20^{li} tyed up in a nightcap with a taylours messure, which \ she / hid and kept private from her 2nd husband in her life time, to help her children with, in case he should not take sufficient care & make competent provision for them.

Butt after she was dead it seeme he tooke butt verry little notice of her smale chil[dren] but ~~compacted with his father so as to~~ deprived them of all rather than increase and augment their fortunes. Whereupon his late wife appeared unto one Dawson, formerly a servant of hers in her 1^{t} husbands times, & bid him not be afraid, for she was such an one and would not harme him, butt told him that ~~her husband was not kind to~~ she had hid so much money in the place aforesad, with the other circumstances I have related, & bid him acquaint her brother Ripton of it, or take it himselfe, and se that it was imployed for the advantage of her children.

But the man it seemes, metting with her husband first,[352] told him the storyes, and [when] Ripton went to seek for the money, it was gon; and Thomas Sigeswick, her 1^{t} husbands brother, comeing there accidentally, saw the measure laying upon the parlour, which made suspect His brother Appleby had seised on it, which proved very true; for the spirit appeared to the man agane and told him whatt her husband had don but bid tell him that if he would not restore it ~~& take more care of~~ she would make him have hott keeping of it, & if he ~~did not tell him~~ \ should not tell her husband / she would te\a/re him in pieces \ as smale as flesh to pott. / And he thereupon forewarned her husband, who was allso often times frightend from that time forward with flashes of fire about his house and elsewhere; yett he kept his hold and would not confess nor part with the money.

[I.398]

For in this manner they continued till Christmas that he went to feast att his father house. And att night he ~~refused to~~ disclared that he would not goe home upon any termes to his owne house; which his father wondered att & having[353] heard of these flying storyes & observing his sonns timerouseness, sayd unto him, 'Certanely, son you have don som mischief or other, in wronging your late wife or \ her / children, that make [you] so afraid; what is it?' But the other denyed. ~~In the mean time~~ & the Spirit appared that same night to Dawson agane, and told him that he who was her husband was with others att cards in his fathers house. and they wanted light, but she would give them light enough; and so left him & went to her husbands house wher the children were by the fier and she stayd some time & bid them nott be affraid.

All this while the company continued carding, & att 12 a clock they parted and went to bed; his son refuseing, as I said before, to goe to his house tho near att hand: \ which his father wondered att &c. / And there was a woman who had a young childe in bed in the house, who by her childes frowardness was awaked out of sleep, & saw a great light pass by her window 3 times. one after another. with some intermission; & the 3^{d} time shone so clear upon them that saw both her child & selfe in bed. Whereupon, being sore frighted she knocked – but that would not awake the house. Therefore, she arose and gott them up as speedily as she could; but in the mean time, the barn which was near to the house was sett on fire which they endeavoured to quench butt in vane, for it kindled att one part whist

[352] MS: '1st'.
[353] MS: 'have'.

they were att an other, and lastly the house was fyered allso and burned, stick & stower,[354] little or nothing being saved that was in it – and it was the finest house in all the dale.

The next day she appeard to the foresaid {Dawson} agane, for they were growne familiar, and told him she had fired the house, but that now they would meet upon such a day & take care for settlements upon her children. After which she hoped she would rest & truble them noe more, which was don accordly, and all things have bin very quiet since.

[354] 'Stick and stower': all the parts or materials of a thing, especially a building or other structure, the whole of a thing; also used adverbially: totally, completely'. *OED*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 7]

[Parish of Brougham]

[I.440]

The Lordship or Manner of Browham – antique Burgham – was of old but one Entire Manner but became div[id]ed in to severall parcells Sc. in the time of King John or Henry 3rd.
1. Into 2 equall partes. By Gilbert de Burgham, who gave halfe of the village of Burgham \ cum pertinentijs &c. in molendino et alijs / {Advocatus ecclesiæ},[1] to his Lord – Robert de Veteriponte – of whom he held it in Drengagio~~m~~, that the other halfe might be free from that service.[2]

[I.441][3]

[Manors and Demesnes]

Thomas Brouham Esq. was possessed of Browham in the 41. of Elizabeth [1598-1599].
Note there are 2 Demanes and manners of Brouham. 1. of The Hall in Browham Towne; the other of the Castle, but noe more. \ Mr / James Bird ~~has~~ late bought of Tennants and added much Land to \ his owne tenement, well walled about / which he calls a demane.[4]

Est ibidem unum castra' &c. {8. Edward 2.} [1314-1315]

There is there one Castle with \ xx / viii Acres of Land[5] worth per Annum 4d an acre.[6]	
And the same doth amount	2:13:4
4 Acres of Medow \ 24. in the 19. Edward 3. [1345] / 12[d] per Acre worth by the yere	2: 0:0
There are noe messuages there, but onely 3 Coterell.	
(For Do. Robert non fuit Dom vilae)*[7] & each of the Cotterells valet per Annum 1s.	0: 3:0
1 watermil & valet per Annum 20s.	1: 0:0
1 Parke Inclosed, whose herbage is worth per Annum	5: 0:0†
And the Herbage without the parke (cum Agistamento et alijs proficijs in Bosco de Quinfel)[8] is worth by the yere	19:13:4
1. Turbarye, & valet per Annum 4s.	0: 4:0
Allso the pleas and perquisites of the Court valet per Annum	0: 13:4‡
Summa est	18:17:0⊥
1. Edward 3.[9] [1327-28].	
\ xx / viij[10] & 18 acres of Arable Land (Acr. xd per Annum) et summa est	7: 8:0
\ xx / iiij[11] acres \ & xiiij / of demane-medow (Acre 1s per Annum), et summa est	4:14:0
2 Free Tenements in Drengage (in drengagio) et valet per Annum &c.	0: 3:0
placita et proficua Curiæ valent per Annum	1: 0:0!

[Machell's Notes: I.441]

*{Lord Robert è Lord of the village.}

[1] 'With its appurtenances etc. in the mill {with the advowson of the church}.'
[2] For drengage, see below.
[3] Also numbered p.11.
[4] Note that 'Mr' appears to have been added later to James Bird's name: he was not considered worthy of the title, 'Esq.'. In MS.I.480, 'The demesne walled' appears in the margin.
[5] 8 score = 160.
[6] For a history of Brougham Castle, see James Simpson, 'Brougham Castle', *CWI* , 1 (1870), 60-70.
[7] '(For Lord Robert was not lord of the vill)'.
[8] 'With agistment and other profits in the wood of Whinfell'.
[9] MS: '1. Edward 3 ~~Thus seemes to have bin putt in repare, for It is not extended for this reason: custos qui ponitur &c.~~'
[10] 8 score.
[11] 4 score.

†(Note it belongs immediately to Brougham but Brouham to Apleby.)
‡Note hence that by Court here at Kings Meburne &c. is meant (I suppose) Court Baron.
⸸N.B. ut tot. And demid. dub.[12]

[1.442A]

Another Filed[13]

		s	d
Vacationis[14] Tempore 1679:	Thomas Machell Clericus con[tra] Michaelem Robinson et Gulielmus Jackson.		
	Pro confec[t]ione Remissionis Judicis a quo et cetera cum eadem per post	02	9
Term Michaelmas 1679	Pro feodo procuratoris	05	00
	Pro Citac[i]one et cetera cum eadem per post	01	07
	Pro Procuratorio et exhibic[i]o[ne] eiusd[em]	02	10
	Pro Cer[at]o accito Citac[i]onis et p[er] con [silium]	01	6
	Pro Confecione articuloru[m] et admission[e] eorum	03	6
	Pro Copijs eorundem et imposic[i]one Regi	02	6
	Pro Feodis Advocati et procuratoris	15	00
Term Hilary 1679	Pro Citac[i]one pro parte	01	03
	Pro Cer[at]o accito et p[er]con[silium]	01	6
	Pro Juramento d[omin]orum Robinson et Jackson	01	02
	Pro copia eoru[ndem] consens[a]	01	00
	Pro tri[bu]s comput[is] con[tra] testes	01	03
	Pro tri[bu]s per post	03	03
	sum[m]a 02	19	1[15]

Johan Tessadale,[16] widow, seisd in her demaine as of fee of & in 4 messuages 100 Acres of Land in Browham in the county of Westm'land & of the 3 part of the said Town & manner of Browam, gave it by deed, Henry VI. [1422-1461] to Henry Bird & Johan his wife, daughter of the said Johan who had Isue John who had Isue William Temp. Henry 8. [1509-1547].[17]

[12] N.B. 'As the total and a half? I'm not sure.'
[13] This set of figures is in a different hand.
[14] 'Belonging to an old vaccary.'
[15] With thanks to Richard Brockington for assistance with some of the legal terms used in this invoice, the translation is as follows:

For completion of the judges written grant by whom etc., with the same, as follows		02	9
For the Procurators fee		05	00
For summons etc. with the same, as follows		01	07
For the Procurator and his maintenance		02	10
For sealed citation of summons and per counsel		01	6
For completion of articles and their admission		03	6
For copies of the same and lodging them with the King		02	6
For the fees of the Advocate and Procurator		15	00
For summons on behalf of the party		01	03
For sealed citation of summons and per counsel		01	06
For the oath of Masters Robinson and Jackson		01	02
For an agreed copy of the same		01	00
For three accounts against witnesses		01	03
For three as follows		03	03
Total	02	19	01

[16] Joan Teasdale: see *AWL*, 32.
[17] This paragraph is in Machell's hand.

[Drengage relating to Brougham]

[I.440]

{Drenges & drughes were Lord & Freehold restored to their estates after the Norman Conquest[18] ~~upon their~~ doing som sort of Drudgery for them. T.M. For this, take 1[t.] Sir Edward Cookes note below and then this whol account.}

Now the service of Drengage (Latine: Drengagium vel servitium Drengarij) was a kinde of vassalage; yet not ignoble (as Spelman observes from this expression in *Domesday* - Tit. Lestresc. Roger Pictaviens. Neuton: 'Hujus manerij aliam Terram xv homines quos Drenches vocabant pro xv manerijs tenebant.'[19] Whence, sayes hee, The Drengi, Drenges or Drenches, were 'genere vassalorum non ignobilium, cum singuli qui in *Doomesday* nominantur singula possiderent maneria.'[20]
But if there had not bin somthing of trouble \ inconvenience / in this sort of Tenure, it is not likely that Gilbert de Burgham, would have purchased off at so dear a Rate as halfe of the Manner. Ergo quaere?[21]

Yett it is to be noted concerning this service that 'eorum omnes eorumve Antecessores, qui è Drengorum classe erant, vel per Drengagium tenuere, sua incoluisse patrimonia ante adventum Normannorum.' Spelman.[22]
For the Drengi, sayes an ancient MS, were Tenentes in Capite – such as at the coming of the Conqueror, being put out of their Estates, were afterward upon complaint unto him, restored thereunto; for that they being before Owners thereof, were neither in Auxilio nor Consilio against him, of which number was Shar\ne/burn of Norfolk.[23]

Sir Edward Cooke *Upon Littleton*: fol. 5[th] b., sayes Dreuchs are 'fre Tenants of a manner;'[24] misprinted doubtless for Drenches (the Typographical error is very obviouse, for in ancient Charters they made no difference twixt n & u), ut in Cartis Machellorum.[25] And I doe not doubt but they were freeholdes, yett there is something more than so in it; somthing ~~service~~ \ of Drudgery / which seems the reason why one part of this manner \ was / given for the liberty and freedom of the other.

And wee have a sleight instance \ here of / in one Gamilbere, who was bound by this service to shooe the Kings Horse: 'In Cukeney manebat quidam homo qui vocabatur Gamilbere et fuit verus Dreynghe ante Conquestum, tenuit duas Carucatas terræ de Domino rege in Capite pro tali servicio de ferrando

[18] Drengage was the tenure or service of a dreng. A dreng was a free tenant (specially) in ancient Northumbria, holding by a tenure older than the Norman Conquest, the nature of which was partly military, partly servile. See Maitland, 'Northumbrian Tenures' in *English Historical Review. V*., 632. *OED*. Ferguson observed that a mere trace of Drengage is to be found in Cumberland, two tenants only, but it existed in Durham and Northumberland. See R.S. Ferguson, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1905), 94.
[19] 'In this manor 15 men whom they called Drenches held other land -15 manors, in fact.'
[20] 'A type of vassal, but not ignoble, since individuals who are named in *Domesday* possessed individual manors.' Though Machell references Sir Henry Spelman and *Sir Edward Coke on Littleton* in these passages, the explanation he gives of drengage and its examples may be found almost verbatim in Thomas Blount [1618-1679], *Nomo-Lexikon: A Law-Dictionary, Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, As are Found Either in Our Common or Statute, Ancient or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Law-Books, Charters, Ancient Deeds, And Manuscripts, Wherein the Words are Used* (London,1670). Blount quotes from Spelman, Dugdale and *Coke on Littleton* in this text, see DR-DU.
[21] 'Check, therefore.'
[22] 'Yett it is to be noted concerning this service that all of them or their ancestors who belonged to the Drenge class or who held their tenements through Drengage had cultivated their patrimony before the advent of the Normans.' See Henry Spelman, *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1687; 1st edn, 1626, completed by William Dugdale, 1664), 184. Machell writes 'eorum', while Spelman writes 'eos'.
[23] For this period in the history of the Sharnburn Family, see 'Historia Familiæ de Sharnburn', *The English Works of Sir Henry Spelman* (2nd edn, London, 1727), 189-90.
[24] See Thomas Coventry, *A Readable Edition of Coke upon Littleton* (London, 1830), Ch.IX, Section 73.
[25] 'As in the Machell charters.'

Palefredum Dom. Regis super quatuor pedes de Cluario Dom. Regis quotiescunque ad Manerium suum de Mansfield jacuerit, & si inclaudet[26] Palefridum Domini Regis, dabit ei Palefridum quatuor Mercarum.'[27] *Mon. Angl.*[28] 2 2se fol. 598 a. {?}[29]

[I.442]

[Brougham Castle]

Roger de Clifford, 9 hereditary shireve of Westmorland, built the greatest part of Browham Castle* next to the East, wherein his Owne Armes & his wives cutt in stone are joyned together. His wife allso – who was Maud Beacham daughter of Thomas Earl of Warwicke – in time of her widowhood built and repard much about this Castle, for it was her Joynture†. She lived much here & made Mauds Poole which retaines her name to this very day.[30]

The Scotts had don so much mischief in these parts about in the time of King Richard 2 or before‡, that this brave Castle of Browham and demane thereto belonging was given by Jurors who were Gentlemen of Great Quality and Trust (as William de Threlkeld Knight, William de Wherton, Thomas de Warthecop de ~~Lamersett~~ Lambersete, John Mauchael, John de Lancaster de Brampton, John de Helton de Burton & alijs), to be worth nothing \ per Annum / att all; {whereas formerly Cs. per Annum}[31] because, say they, it lyeth alltogether wast by reason of the distruction of the country by the Scotts: and that the whole profitt of the Castle and manner aforesaid is not sufficient for the Reparations and saife keeping of the said Castle for that present yere, which was the 4. of Henry the 4. [1402-1403], the Inquisition being taken att Apleby November '37, upon the Death of Matilda Beauchamp,[32] who was sometime wife to \ Lord / Roger Clifford.

[Machell's Notes: I.442]

*{Brougham Castle see more in Apleby.}
†p.293. L.D.
‡(vide Speed de Hoc)[33]

[II.480]

[Notes on Roman Antiquities]

Pleasantly situate on the Bankes of Emote after it has received Lowther to convey it away to the River Eden.

[26] This should be 'inclandet', but Blount's *Dictionary* gives 'inclaudet'.
[27] 'In Cukeney there lived a certain man who was called Gamilbere and was a true Dreynghe before the Conquest; he held two carucates of land from the Lord King in Chief for such service, for shoeing the palfrey of the Lord King, all four feet, at the forge of the Lord King whenever he lay at his manor of Mansfield, and if he should lame the palfrey of the Lord King, he would give him a palfrey worth four marks.'
[28] William Dugdale, *Monasticon*: see Abbreviations.
[29] Machell has questioned the citation but it is correct according to Blount's *Nomo-Lexikon*, 'Sir Edward Coke, *on Littl*[*eton*] fol 5. b. sayes, Dreuchs are Free-Tenants of a Mannor: misprinted doubtless for Drenches. In Cukeney manebat quidam homo, qui vocabatur Gamilbere … & si inclaudet Palefridum Domini Regis, dabit ei Palefridum quatuor Mercarum.' *Mon. Angl*. 2. p. fol. 598.a.
[30] MS. I.394 contains another short reference to Brougham Castle gardens: 'There was then a Garden without the Castle, the Herbage whereof was extended to 1s per Annum. This should be Browham.'
[31] 'formerly [worth] 100 shillings per annum'.
[32] Matilda also known as Maud. She died in 4. Henry IV [1402-03]. See *N&B1*, 280.
[33] 'See Speed on this'. John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britain Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans* (2nd edn, 1623): 'The Scots entring about that time with fire, and sword into Cumberland and Westmorland, and the forrest of Inglewood, drove away much Cattle, slew the Inhabitants, rifled the booths and houses of Perith in the Faire time, killing and taking many, and driving away the rest.' See 732 (15).

At this Castle of Browham the River of Low[ther] & Emot meet. A little above which, near Browham, it continues betwixt the bridges of Emote and Lowther the distance of a Quarter of a mile. \ Near Clifton Cross* / are great heapes of stones which I thinke have bin Sepulcares used by the Romanes.[34]

{Brovonacum: whether ever at Browham or at Lowther}
~~If I be not mistaken~~ The Roman way passes from hence to Browham, formerly Brovonacum which has bin very large as as the rubbish plow'd up all from thence ~~up~~ to the Castle & so along ~~where~~ the Demaine. For they digged up the stone wherewith the wall was maide att any place where they had occasion, & there […][35] they found these 2 \ famouse / monuments which are sett in the wall; there was allso \ found as I was informed / a large white stone ~~which was~~ writ ~~upon~~ from End to End but unluckily \ [un]happily / Broake by a careless ~~masson~~ \ waller / {?} who to further his worke, beat it all into pieces ~~with his hamer~~.'

[Machell's Notes: II.480]
*Se Dugdale *de Warwickshire* C.1. Knight Low.[36]
{Berryes[37] – Clifton.}
{The figure digd up who by his shymar or roabe seems to be a p[riest] or a bishop: Coles *Dict.*}[38]

[I.445]
That stone which was found near to Browham Castle and is erected in the fence walls of the Demain resembles Julius Crispus,[39] son of Constantine (called the Great) by Minervina, ~~who was~~ his concubine*.[40] ~~yet~~ He is said to have bin baptised \ at Rome / with his father Constantine, & made Cesar by him, concerneing whose \ Baptism / Sabellicus relate (~~who is~~ an historian of great \ approv'd / ingenuity)[41] that the glorious font, ~~which was~~ errected ~~at Rome~~ for that purpose, continue there in being till his time.
His father afterwards put him to death, \ the reason whereof was not made known / & this peradventure might have bin his monument; for a large long white stone, all ingraven with Letters, was digged up in the same place with it; which while som \ admirers / were ~~admireingly~~ gazeing upon it, was dashed all in pieces by the rude hand of an unlettered waller, who, consulting only his owne private gane, ~~hath Robbed the public of so great a treasure~~ \ in haistning his worke / hath brought such a Loss upon the public, \ these especially that delight in Antiquities / as may be lamented, but never can be repared agane.

[Machell's Notes: I.445]
*{See Speed p. 260, §7. 261 §18. as may better appear by this Inscription, stampd upon his coyne when his father was pleased to create him Cæsar; supposed to be at the same time, that they were both Baptised at Rome, in that stately font which Sabellicus speakes \ as / said to be erected for that very purpose, & which was remaneing in Rome till his time.}

[34] This is a precis of the passage in the MS, as many interlineations and crossings-through have been found difficult to analyse.
[35] '& there' has been scored through and an illegible interlineation substituted.
[36] William Dugdale *Warwickshire*.
[37] Tumuli.
[38] Shymar: 'a short vest, formerly a bishop's long robe.' See Elisha Coles, *An English Dictionary, explaining the difficult terms that are used in divinity, husbandry, physick, phylosophy, law, navigation, mathematicks, and other arts and sciences …* (London,1684), SIG-SIN. See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.267, for more on this figure.
[39] MS: 'Resemblance of Julius Crispus.'
[40] MS.IV.81, also contains this passage. It is entitled, 'Antiquityes found on Browham Castle Demane'.
[41] Marcus Antonius Coccius Sabellicus (1436–1506) was a Venetian historian known for his universal history, *Enneades sive Rhapsodia historiarum* (1498).

[**Nine-Church**][42]

[I.441]

To Nine-Church doth belong Browham, Browham Castle, Hornby Hall, Moorehouses, Woodside.

[I.442]

The parish church now standing and lately Repaired (or rather Rebuilt) by the Countisse of Penbrooke, is called Nine Church. Concerning which name there are severall conjectures*.[43] But the most probable is from Ninianus†, to which saint there are several churches \ & chapels / dedicated in Scotland ~~which tho in Latin~~ but called in their tongue St Ringing,[44] in Latin Ninianus, as Mr Bruce, Curate of Pamber in Hantshire and a Scotchman, inform's me‡.[45] The Town was depopulate \ & demolished after the Countiss of Penbrooke dyed, / by James Bird of Browham an attorney at Law (who bought the Tenements) about 1679⸸.[46]

[Machell's Notes: I.442]

*See my Note de Westm'land in Generall to Oglebyes Queries. Note. d.[47]
†Vide ibidem[48] \ and my little booke of Westm'land.
‡{???} {St Ninian: 1ᵗ Bishop of Galloway è Spotswood.}[49]
⸸Q. of E. Sleddall; see the pedigree.

[II.479][50]

Nine Church: [the name]

I was of opinion that Nine Church took its name of St Ninian, and to that effect sent a letter to Archdeacon Musgrave, afterwards Dean of Carlile,[51] desireing him to enquire of his friend, one Mr Savage,[52] sometime parson there, what he could say of it. And received an answer dated from Edenall December 15, 1673, in these words:

ad altera[m] Itunæ ripa[am].[53]
Your apprehension of Nine Church is right, for not onely his name, Sc.

---

[42] St Ninian's Church, Brougham.
[43] When attempting to ascertain the age of the first Ninekirks chapel, Canon Bouch had a similar difficulty. 'No instance of a medieval use of the name Ninekirks has so far been found. Its first known occurrence is in an entry in the episcopal register of 1583, noting the appointment of an incumbent to "the rectory of Browgham alias Ninekyrkes". The first known attempt to explain the name is found in Thomas Machell's manuscripts, volume I, 442: "The parish church . . . called Nine Church concerning which name there are several conjectures—see my note. d. Westmorland in general to Oglesby's queries. But the most probable is from Ninianus to which saint there are several churches dedicated in Scotland." Unfortunately, the note under reference has not yet been found (all who have had the joy and the exasperation of toiling through the six wonderful but ill-arranged and usually almost, and sometimes wholly, illegible volumes, will sympathise), but its substance seems to be given in the following entry in the Hill MSS. (v. 3), which must suffice for the time being: "Machell when speaking of Ninechurch says it had that name from St Ninian, a Scotch Saint, according to tradition or from that church being eight times demolished and rebuilt the nineth time." C.M.L. Bouch, 'Ninekirks Brougham' *CW2,* 50 (1950), 80-81. That even the incomparable Canon Bouch missed the passage is not at all surprising.
[44] St Ringan.
[45] Andrew Bruce, priested 1674, curate of Pamber, diocese of Winchester, 1667-1717. CCED.
[46] MS: '1670 9'. See I.630 for a plan of Brougham before the demolition.
[47] For Machell's collaboration with the cartographer, John Ogilby, for the purpose of creating a questionnaire to send out to informants, see the Editor's Introduction.
[48] 'See the same source as above.'
[49] John Spottiswood (Spotswood), *The History of the Church of Scotland: beginning the year of our Lord 203, and continued to the end of the reign of King James VI.* (1655).
[50] Much text on this page has been overwritten and is very difficult to read accurately.
[51] Thomas Musgrave, Archdeacon of Carlisle, 1669; Dean in 1684; died in 1686. CCED.
[52] Arthur Savage, ordained Deacon at Rose Castle, 1637; Rector of Brougham, 1643 to 1662. Also, second prebendary Carlisle Cathedral and Rector of Caldbeck from 1665 until his death in 1701. CCED.
[53] 'On the other bank of the Eden.' The church stands in a bend in the River Eamont, close to its confluence with the River Eden.

[II.480]

De Ninianus, but his picture also, was seen by Mr Savage on the partition betwixt the chancel & body of the Church, who refers you to the *Aurea Legenda*,[54] for an account concerneing that same*.

[II.479]

{Cl did he so vix credo}[55]

Non procul a Nine Church a Hypogeum Mirificum magno labore excavatum vidimus, ubi Gygantem nescioquem habitasse somriaru[n]t accolæ. Januaque dehinc ferrea ad Carleolu' translata fuisse asserunt par e Camd[en] p.150.

Bona e[t] de gygantibus digressio p.248.

Huc annect[ere] mereor etiam Pagan[a] magna ossa apud Orton reperta, et oblong[um] illud mon[umentum]{P?} In Perith church yard inclaruisse comprobant Romanorum num[m]i pavime[n]ta ~~tessillata~~, et marmora inscripta subinde effossa quæ cum in ignaros inciderint, non minimo antiquitatis damno com[m]inuta perieru[n]t. sed de Kirkbythore:

{cl} Inscriptiones etiam saepius effodiuntur quas tamen nobis invidet rusticorum imperitia. de Silcester, 135.

Dicit se vallu[m] militare juxta Comibleton in suthria Bensbury vocatu[m] forma orbicular[i] constructum vidisse, 155. Monumentu[m] Saxonicum ut creditur.[56]

[II.480]

[Machell's Notes I.480 & I.518]

*{This was before the church was pulld down & rebuilt by A.P.}[57]

[I.518] Qu. in the Registry at Carlile; whether it be the church or chapel at Browham which is dedicated St Wilfridd.[58]

[I.442B]

{**The Foundation of Browham Chappell**}

An agreement of the Spiritual part and Temporal part for the great ease of the parson of Browham & the parishoners* – That from thenceforth all manner of Sacraments of the church shall be administered at the chappell of Browham except Burial and on X^{t}mas Day in the morning – song & mass, & then after to goe to the Church to the high-mass & offering – & so 3 day mass at the Church. & 2 of the last at the Church with mattens, & so on.

~~On~~ Easter Day in the morning, mattens with Resurrection, & one soling[59] mass for servants & old aged persons, & sick p[ersons]; all the Residue to goe to Church[60] to the high-mass, & so mass on the

---

[54] Jacobus de Voragine (Archbishop of Genoa), compiled the <u>*Legenda Aurea*</u> (*The Golden Legend*), which detailed the lives of the Saints). Published in 1470, it was translated by William Caxton (1st edn, 1483). For a modern edition, see F.S. Ellis ed. (Edinburgh, 1900, 1922, 1931). St Ninian is <u>not</u> found in Caxton's edition, but, as early publications on the lives of the saints had very similar titles, Savage might have been referring to a volume by John of Tynmouth (d. 1290?) and Wynkyn de Worde (d. 1534?), <u>*Nova legenda*</u> *Anglie. Sanctilogium Angliae, Walliae, Scotiae, et Hiberniae* (1515), 29. See an updated Latin edition: *Nova legenda Anglie* (*Vol.II*): as collected by John of Tynemouth, John Capgrave (1393-1464, Wynkyn de Worde and Carl Horstmann (Oxford, 1901): chapter entitled, 'De Sancto Niniano Episcipo et Confessore', 218-24.

[55] '{That he did so I scarcely believe.}'

[56] 'Not far from Nine Church, we saw an amazing Hypogeum, carved out with great labour, where the inhabitants fancied that some giant or other had lived. And its iron door, they claim, was moved from there to Carlisle. The same in Camd[en] p.150. Also, a good digression on giants at p.248. I ought to connect with this as well the huge bones from Pagan times found at Orton, and that long monument in Penrith church yard. Roman coins testify that it was famous,[as do] tessellated floors and marble inscriptions excavated there which, since they fell into the hands of the ignorant, have been broken and destroyed even though the damage done by time was minimal. But of Kirkbythore: Inscriptions are quite often dug up which, however, the ignorance of the country folk keeps from us: 'Of Silcester', 135. He says that he saw a military wall near Comibleton in Suthria, called Bensbury, constructed with a circular design, 155. A Saxon monument, so it is believed.'

[57] Anne, Countess of Pembroke: Lady Anne Clifford.

[58] This sentence is in Machell's hand.

[59] Mass of Consolation.

[60] The parish church.

Monday at the Church; Tuesday & Wednesday at the chapel. At the X Days 2 dayes procession at the chapel & 2 at the Church. At Whit Sunday [&] on Munday, mass at the Church; on Tuesday & Wednesday at the chapel. On Sundayes & every principle feast & double feast – mass at the Church. All single holidays – mass at the ch[urch] with mattens & eveing-song. Mass on the week-dayes at the chapel when parson or his chaplain is disposd except Wednesday & Fridayes in Lent; & then at the Church.
The parson shal finde 2 sureties afore St Wilfrey[61] on his own proper costs, as appeares by a Composition registred in a Port[io]n[er]s[62] booke; for the which services Thomas Reading Lord of the manner of Browham gave & Granted unto the chapel of Browham & the Parson of the church & his successors – one Tenement as it lyes at the west end of Browham with the Garthes above the chapel within the precincts of the wall & no farther; with the woods & the wasts & all the commodityes within belonging; with one acre of Land Arable on the south side as the plow head goes & no farther, upon condition that the parson & all his successors perform &c. Or else to Revert. These being witnesses:
William Engane & Maud his wife; William Hill Chaplain; Thomas Briton, parson of the church of Caldbeck; Thomas Mercer, chaplain; John Weston, chaplain, William Hornby, Henry Sheeling de Browham, Stephen Meyburne chaplain, Thomas Whinfel chaplain, Henry Kirkby chaplain, Parson of Marton; John May, vic. of Morland; Edward Shelly, parson of Browham; Richard Tyndall; John Tyndall; Simon Hawell; William Haywell, with many others then present.

[Machell's Notes: I.442B, I.444A, I.447]

*{Memorandum that Mr Bird sayes he has the original.}
[I.444A] Q. of Christopher Bartons wife of Dokera,[63] whose maiden name was Casades. What Mr Bird had of her about Armes.
[I.447] & there is a place by the Chapel near the waterside called Hell Dungeon, which I should see – being informed thereof p[er] Du[d]ley Walker, Curate of Troutbeck.[64]

[Hornby]

[I.442]

{Names. Hornby}
I finde William de Hornby witness att a Deed att Crakanthorp Hall which concernes the Crakanthorpes 49. Edward 3. 1375.

[I.447]

I suppose Hornby Hall may have ~~bin~~ formerly belongd to a family of that sirname; for I finde William de Hornby Executor amongst others, to William de Sandford 49. Edward 3. [1375-1376] (è Cart. apud Askam).[65] \ It contin[u]ed in the name of Birkbeck till about 1695, that Katerick made an end of it by gameing & foolery.[66]

[61] St Wilfrid's day (12 October).
[62] A portioner: person who receives a share; in the Christian Church, the term relates to any one of two or more incumbents sharing the duties and revenues of a benefice. *OED*.
[63] Dockray.
[64] Dudley Walker: curate at Troutbeck, 1663-1701; curate at Grasmere, 1701-1712, Chester Diocese, CCED.
[65] 'In a deed at Askham.'
[66] Machell was correct in describing Catterick Birkbeck (bap. 1668) in this manner. He failed to obtain his deceased wife's fortune, lost money to a cardsharp, and continually involved himself in lawsuits. He borrowed money from Thomas Benson, a Penrith Quaker, assigning Hornby to him as security, and finally sold Hornby to Thomas Dalston of Penrith, who had been his guardian during his minority. By 1699 he was in the Fleet Prison, where he seems to have passed most of the rest of his life. His will was made in 1722, and proved in 1733. See Robert Birkbeck, *The Birkbecks of Westmorland and their Descendants* (London, 1900), 27-29.

[I.448]

Hornby is an Hall, the seat of the Birbecks: a worthy & ancient family of which was Mr Simon Birbeck, minister of Fawcet, a Learned man who writ diverse Bookes – one of which was dedicated to his kind nephew, Lancelot Machel of Crakanthorp Esq.[67]
In the House is much curiouse carvd work, especially the Chimney piece in the Dineing Roome*.[68]

[Machell's Notes: I.448]

*è lib. Pock[et][69].
{Quaere: of Procter Bir[beck] for. the Pat[ent] of A[rms] Test. E.M.}

[I.444A][70]

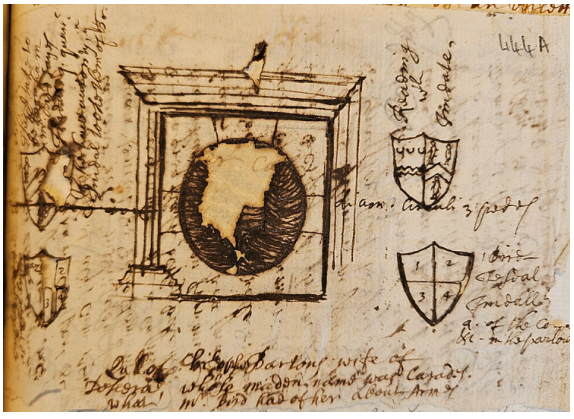


Figure 1.7.1. Chimney piece in the dining room at Hornby Hall. I.444A.

[I.443]



Figure 1.7.2. Matches. I.443.

Cosan Birbeck of Horneby has matched 11[families] as 1ˢᵗ Birbeck. {with:}[71]

[67] Simon Birbeck or Birckbek (1583/4-1656), of Hornby in Lancashire, was a student at Queen's College, Oxford, from 1600 (MA 1607; BD 1616). He remained at Queen's College as a fellow and was ordained, after which he became a noted preacher and disputant. In 1617 he was made vicar of Gilling and the chapel of Forcet in Yorkshire, through his patron: his kinsman, Humphrey Wharton. His work, *The Protestant's Evidence* (1634), argued the historical continuity of contemporary Church of England doctrine. See R. Bayne & R. Armstrong, 'Birckbek, Simon, Church of England clergyman and religious controversialist.' *ODNB*.
[68] See the illustration on I.444A.
[69] 'From my pocket book.'
[70] The reverse of this page [I.444B] contains Latin text concerning 'Gilbertus de Burgham'. As it is incomplete and much damaged (the ink from the illustration on I.444A having leaked into it) it has not been transcribed.
[71] 'Cousin Birbeck of Hornby has matched eleven [families] as first Birbeck [impaled] with'

1. Clifford, base born[72]
2. Salkeld, de Rosgill
3. Denton, de Cardew; haveing 3 martlets in chi[ef]
4. Sandford de [Blank]
5. Wharton de Kirkbythore
6. Lancaster de Sockbridge
7. Lancaster de Brampton Westmorland
8. Lancaster de Bra[mpton]: cohearre in[73] puto dub.[74]
9. Labourne de [blank] Com. Lancastriensi, whose armes are an escutcheon Ermin (3.2/3.2) with a Border S[able] charged 6 Owles Argent 3 in chief two in ~~fesse~~ fess, & 1 in bass.
10. Poole de Peak in Com. Darb[y] whose armes are in a field Azure a Chever[on] betwixt, 3 (D^{ts})[75] Cressents Or.
11. Caterig[76] de Caterig brig. Com. Ebor: a co-heiress, with whome he had the estate.

[I.441]

[Whinfell Forest]

Memorandum: That I heard it credibly affirmd by Persons of Quality that the Bretheren in Whinfell forrest[77] wer of such huge bulke that two gentlemen on Horseback might have rid, one of one side and the other of the other side, well mounted, & held up their switches, the topps whereof could not be diserned by either of them on the other side the tree (7 or 8 fath.).

There was an other tree lately blowne downe, to wit in the memorye of most men now liveing, which was hollow within & decayed on it one side, so that there was a very fare enterance into the stump where 9 men on their horse bakes ~~stood~~ were all at once; where 2 \ were / men of good Credit and Quality, viz. Sir Thomas Wharton, whome I heard relate it, and Sir Philip Musgrave: both of them grave and juditiouse persons.[78]

[I.442]

At Whinfel are 600 Acres of wood in Herbage and sale of underwood worth per Annum 7^{li} 3^{s} 7^{d}.

[On Trees]

[I.448]

In the *History of the West Indies* there is mention made of a Tree whose trunk or Body was 87 f. about; which is 29 foote Diameter.[79] And Mr Smyth in his *Improvement of England*, London \16/73,[80] is of opinion that there have bin trees as great in England; haveing heard of an Oake fell'd in Hantshire about 1664 conteineing in timber & wood 50 load*; of an Arme of an Oake not far from Horsham in Sussex \ where one of my name & family lives &c. / blown downe by winds in 64, conteineing 13 Loade of wood & Timber; And on the 26 June eadem Anno[81] in the Forrest of Ales-

[72] A tiny sketch of a coat of arms has been placed here.
[73] A tiny sketch of a coat of arms has been placed here.
[74] 'But I think doubtful.'
[75] Symbol unknown to this editor, perhaps meaning 'decrescent' (crescent pointing to the right).
[76] Catterick.
[77] Brethren: large trees in Whinfell forest. See II.483.
[78] Machell cross-references this information in MS I.448: '{Whinfell Forest.} There was a tree blown down in hollow of which 8 or 9 Gentlemen on their horse-back were all att once: see – elsewhere.'
[79] Gonzalo Fernandez De Oviedo y Valdes (known as Oviedo), *La Natural hystoria de las Indias* (*The Natural History of the West Indies*) (1526-35), printed in English (1555-56). See a translation by Sterling A. Stoudemire (University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, 1959).
[80] John Smith (or Smyth), *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods, experienced in 30 years' practice. 6 vols* (London, 1670).
[81] 'In the same year.'

Hoult, he measur'd an oake then standing 36 f. compass at 5 f. distance above the ground, the Diameter whereof is 12 foote.

[I.447]

Cesars Tower at Apleby had formerly bin built with very Good Timber, but when the Late Countess of Penbroke (Last of the Cliffor[d]s) went about to Repare it, shee could not finde Timber sufficient for Dormers, & ergo was forced to build ~~in~~ a wall in the very midle of those most spacious Rooms, with 2 stacks of chimneys {which bespeaks Mr Vincent – her Stuart & chief sur[veyor] of her buildings. / & she intitled him upon his grave stone in the parish of Brough.} A very ignorant & unfaithful man who could not take time to sea[r]ch an se to Joynt his timber therein, which meas[ured] short.[82] Howbeit I have bin informd that

[Machell's Notes: I.447 & I.548]

*(q: How much a Loade?) {As much as 5 or 6 horses can draw – F. Godson; but write to know it.}
[I.548] Browham: Lang Lowpe. Hartshorn: great oake.

[I.448]

Ferdinando Hudleston of Millum Esq;[83] had 2 Trees in that ~~said~~ Lordship, in each of which was 32 yards of Timber in Lenth; which Trees they say grew upon the Top of an Hill. Such as these might have serv'd Mr Vincents Turne, & saved a Good house. But the Greatest in bredth that wee have had lately was in Whinfeild.[84]

Mr Smyth is of opinion that som of our oakes have stood from the 1ˢᵗ Creation of the world; and that many ~~of them~~ \ for certain / have ~~certainly~~ continued from the next sommer or spring after the Deluge – for which he gives his Reasons, from p.77 (which is in the latter end of his III Booke or chapter) beginning thus: It is my opinion that there are Oakes – to the 80th page at the words – Many more proofes &c.*. He thinkes those Fir-Trees \ found in the ground / in Lancashire & Shropshire (because none grow there) to have bin left at the General Deluge. Blown down when the earth was \ molifyed, or / soften'd by that strong winde, Gen[esis] 8. V[erse] 11; when the tem[pest] left blowing & waters fell, they sanke in the mud. So the See by its Tides cast sand & cover'd them. Ibid. This may be applyd to the great oakes found. But it may be solved without going so far {for why might [not] firrs grow naturaly there as well as in Scotland? Or have bin planted as they are with us now at B. K. H. &c. & grow over with moss & c[ommon] earth &c.}
{But Evelin talks of firs in Cumberland},[85] ~~and this is~~ \ in confirmation of which may be added that there is a place there / {a place call Old Fir Banke}[86] \ not unlikely upon that occasion.' & I myself ~~have~~ found fir vessels of great antiquity; and bigger than wine pipes in a well \ at K[irkby Thore] in W[estmorland], where they served insteed of the wall on the / inside thereof.}

[Machell's Notes: I.448]

*Which if thought necessary (as it is pleasant) may be tran-scrib'd.[87]
There are stones pitched on Browham Common. Draw them out, & see what I have said in Shap.
– All the Countiss \ monumental / Pillar[88] – & many other remarques of Antiquity. See my pocket Book & vide the stones.

[82] For Machell's poor opinion of Vincent as an architect, see Part 1, Ch.1, Town and parishes of Appleby, I.296; see also Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.424.
[83] Ferdinando Hudleston (1577-c.1645) of Millom, Knight of the Shire for Cumberland, 1623-24. *CFH*, 171.
[84] Whinfell.
[85] John Evelyn, *Sylva, or a Discourse of Forest Trees* (1664), Book 2, Ch.3, Section 12.
[86] This place is in Westmorland (i.e. Firbank and Firbank fell), unless the reference is to Firtlefeild in Egremont, Cumberland: see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[87] Machell's citation of pages in John Smith's *England's Improvement Revived* (London, 1670), Vol.3, 77-80, is entirely accurate; he was clearly familiar with the book in question.
[88] That is, all the faces of the pillar.

[I.445]

Bird of Browham

[**Pedigree: Notes**]
Imma: iuxor [blank] daughter of James Bird of the Hill & Pinfold, Browne Cot & Hair's Tenement, & 2 Tenements at Moore Houses which were afterwards John Pattesons, whose son Thomas sold it to Ja[blank].[89]

[I.447][90]
Bird of Browham has gott a large pedegree entered in Dugdal; beginning at Henry Bird – who had Isue William \ Bird / of Little Croglin in Cumberland &c. out of an old parchment pedigree wherein there are matches but noe farther place of Aboade mention'd till you come to [blank][91]

[I.628]

[**Pedigree**]{Secretum}[92]

James Bird	= Dorathy. The 3rd daughter of John Sanderson of Penrith, Tanner.	
Immanuel Bird of the House next to the Pinfold house on the left hand as you goe to Penrith*.	= maryed a daughter & choheir of one James Bird of The Pinfold, who [b]ought also The Hill House, the cottage which Browne farm'd, and Huers Tenement & 2 Tenements at Moore Houses, all which he purchased & gave to his daughters – Sc. Bird & Patteson†. But what the other had I am not informed.	The other 2 daughters were maryed, to Pattison, and another to Bradley of Knipe.
Thomas Bird of the next house to the Pinfold; a small cottage with a rood of Land belonging to it, which was all the Estate he left to his son⸸.		

I have no account of his descent & parentage or place of his Birth, but that he was a Lucky Bird & began his fortunes in the world \ [la]boris abilis[93]/ with three hen chickens‡.
And this being the original of Mr James Bird. Query whether three hen chickens had not bin a more proper Coate for him than 3 demi Lyons. But that he is a Bird of Prey; He had the Confidence to boast of the Antiquity of his family to old Sir John Lowther, a wise & sober Gentleman (~~& the great advancer of the Lowthers Estate~~) affirmeing to him that there were Birds at Browham ever since the

[89] See I.628 for more on James Bird. He was lawyer and, later, steward to Lady Anne Clifford, purchasing her third part of Brougham Hall and manor after her death in 1676, thus becoming the first person to hold the entirety of the building since the medieval de Brougham family. Mark Thomas, *A History of Brougham Hall and High Head Castle* (Chichester, 1992), 10-14.
[90] Also numbered p.12.
[91] See Dugdale's pedigree of Bird of Brougham in Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St. George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle & Kendal, 1891), 11. In this pedigree, the Birds emerged from Little Croglin, but from c.1295 the head of the family lived in Perith (Penrith). Birds first appeared in Brougham in the 17th of Henry VI. [1438-39]. These details were taken by Dugdale from a family 'vellum' detailing the Bird descent. According to Dugdale, proof, in the form of original records, was only available to him from the date 1587.
[92] 'In secret'. The pedigree is drawn out on a sketch of a fruit tree.
[93] 'Capable of work.'

Conquest; to which Sir John gravely replyd, 'Yes, I believe it, an longer too; yea, ever since Adam' – meaning of featherd fowl.[94]
{1691}? Sept. circa 20. James, the eldest son & heire of James, hangd for cutting his wifes throat in Kinsington Fides near London.[95]

[Machell's Notes: I.628 and IV.125]

*Query what it was worth.
†{Ed. Sled[dal] May 6. 1688.} {The other 2 daughters were maryed to Pattison and to Mr Bradley of Knipe.}[96]
‡{Teste Thomas Meason of Moorhouses, per Ed. Sled[dal].}[97]
⸸Witness Immanuels \ 2 / sisters, now poore widdows in the Hospital of Appleby: per Edward Sled[dal].
IV.125. [Note on the Threlkeld descent in Cumberland with this addendum]
{Mem[orandum]. I gave this Note to James Bird of Browham an Attorney, who entered it into his Booke of Evidences. But never mentioned from whome he had it. Tulit alter ho[no]res. It was when he first kept court at Apelby Castle for the Earle of Thanet.}[98]

[Editorial Addition][99]
'The Speech of James Bird, Gent. Who was Executed at *TYBURN,* on Friday the 18th Day of September, 1691. for the willful Murther of his Wife *Elizabeth Bird.'*

'Mr. Sheriff.
I Know it hath been expected by this Company, that I should give some particular Account to the World of this Fact for which I dye: It is from God alone from whom I must expect a Pardon, and God only knows how far I am concern'd in it; so I shall not trouble my self with any Publick Declaration of the matter here, but this far I take my self obliged to let the World know, That it hath been Deposed by Mr. Willis, That my Father should desire me to get my Wife made away; but I do protest, solemnly, and as ever I hope for Salvation in and through Christ's Merits, That my Parents were no ways concerned in it; nay, so far were they from knowing of it, that they did not know that I was Married to her, till I was carried before the Justice of Peace.

It hath been also urged by several, That my Father's Severity had caused it, but those are altogether false Suggestions, for my Father hath been always a Kind and very Indulgent Father to me. Another thing is, That my Father had made away, or given his Estate from me; but that is not true, for I saw his Will, after he had Information given him of my Marriage, and I found that he had given his Estate to me, leaving but very small Portions to the rest.

[94] MS: 'Yes, I believe there have bin Birds there \ it an longer ~~than so,~~ too; yea / yes ever since Adam, meaning of featherd fowl.'
[95] Added in pencil.
[96] MS: 'The other 2 daughters were maryed to Pattison; and another to \ Mr / Bradley of Knipe.}'
[97] 'Witness: Thomas Meason of Moorhouses through Ed. Sled[dall].'
[98] 'Tulit alter ho[no]res': 'Another took the credit'. Machell is quoting from Suetonius' *Life of Virgil*, Ch.1. The story went that Virgil had composed some lines in praise of Augustus and placed them by night over the gate to the emperor's palace. Augustus enquired who the author was but Virgil was too modest to speak up and an inferior poet, Bathyllus, claimed them and was handsomely rewarded. Provoked, Virgil wrote the verses again on another part of the palace and below them the lines: 'Hos versiculos feci, tulit alter honores' – 'I wrote these verses, another took the credit.' He then wrote the beginning of another line but left it incomplete. Augustus asked Bathyllus to fill in the gap but he proved unequal to the task, and eventually Virgil completed it, in lines that were an indictment of the dishonest Bathyllus. See William Nicolson's references to Bird as agent to Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge in 1704: *Misc. Accts*, 124.
[99] *The speech of James Bird, gent Who was executed at Tyburn, on Friday the 18th day of September, 1691. for the willful murther of his wife Elizabeth Bird* (London, 1691). The speech has been added to the body text because of Machell's very clear interest in the iniquities of the Bird family.

Mr. Sheriff, I shall not make any Reflections upon any Magistrate; I pray God that they may not deserve any.
As for the Witnesses that swore against me, particularly, as to what Mr. Holdernes swore, I have so much Charity for him, as to believe that he did see such a Man walk up and down the Field in the Grass; and I must say, That they deposed nothing, as to that, but what was really true, And I must do Justice also to the Constable and my Father, that as I am a dying-man, the Crevat was the same that I was taken in, and there was not any Art or Skill used, (I dare say it upon my Salvation) to take out any Blood that was in it.

Mr. Sheriff, I shall not Reflect upon the Judges of the Court, though perhaps they were a little hard; and as to any one else that was accessary to the Murther, I know of none: But Mr. Sheriff, Let not any one seek Vengeance, elsewhere, but let my Blood satisfie for it: And let the Queen and the Judges be satisfied in what I have said, as I hope they will; and that is all that I have to say, Mr. Sheriff, as to this matter, only I desire the Prayers of all good Christians.
And Mr. Sheriff, If any thing be made publick concerning me, I desire that you would do me Justice in it.
Then he Prayed again for himself, and immediately after he was turned off.'[100]

[I.630]

Browham demolished

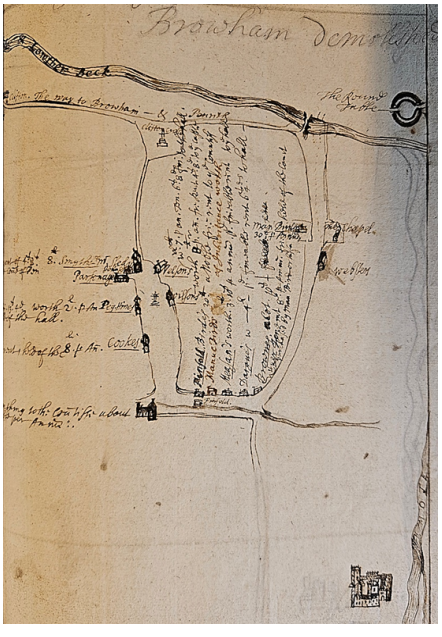


Figure 1.7.3. 'Browham demolished'. I.630.

{The Title – Because this Town is now demolish'd, I have taken occasion to draw an Imaginary Platform of it; partly by memory & partly by the best of information which could be gott of one who formerly lived in the place: these Tenements – all purchasd off about 14 or 15 yeares since in 2 or 3

[100] Printed for W. Humphries (London, 1691), see *Text Creation Partnership* Online.

years time by J. Bird. The houses demolished one after another & turn'd into walls, by which he is made a great improvement but is becom like a pelican or an owle in the desert}*.[101]
I have taken occasion to draw a Plan of this Town though not worthy notice but for it being lately demolished.

[Key]
1. Mr Birds House. 30li per Annum.
2. Brownes about 10s [and] Huer Tenement 8li per Annum freehold of the Court; purchasd by Mr Bird or his family.
3. Dargue's w[orth] 4li paid fineable rent 6¼ d to Hall.
4. Measan's worth 3li 10s per Annum paid fineable rent to the Hall.
5. [Im]manuel Birds. Of Inheritance worth [blank]
6. Pinfold [house near] Birds. 20li – a noble free rent to the Countiss Penbrooke.
7. The Pinfold.
8. [House paying] something to the Countiss about a noble per Annum.
9. Cooks [paid] free rent held of the C[ountess]. Worth 8li per Annum.
10. Peg Hines. Worth 2li per Annum – rent fine 13s 4d – held of the Hall.
11. Parsonage.
12. Smythes or Mr Sleddalls. Worth 8li per Annum – free rent of 4s 8d held of the Countiss of Penbrook.
13. Nelsons – worth 7li per Annum; Tenement is of 6s 8d fineable rent to the Hall.
14. Wilsons. Worth 8li per Annum – free rent 4s 8d to the Castle.

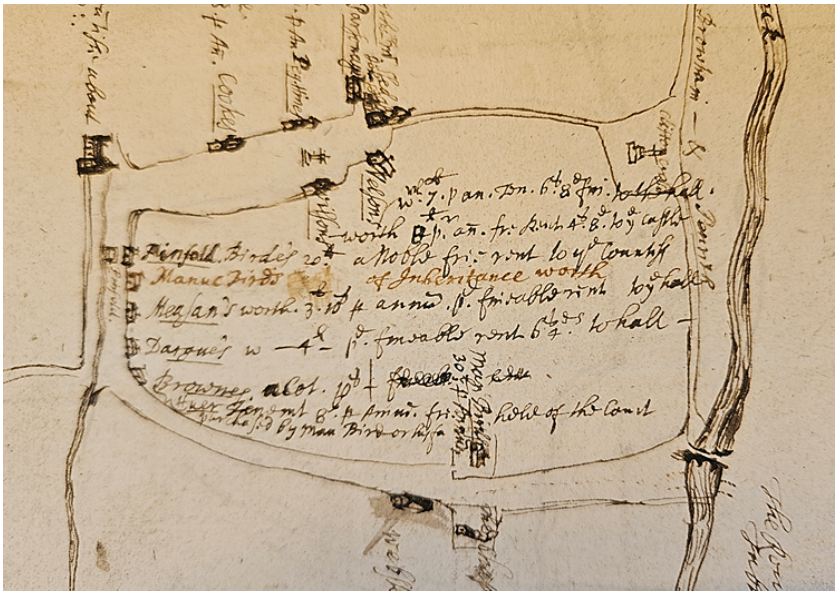


Figure 1.7.4. 'Browham demolished', detail. I.630.

N.B. – All the free Rents were paid to Browham Castle, & all the fineable to the Hall, before the Countess of Pembroke purchased it. The Hill House held one Acre Tenant right rent; all the rest free

[101] Psalm 102.6. 'I am like a pelican of the wilderness: I am like an owl of the desert.' Verse 8 reads, 'Mine enemies reproach me all the day; and they that are mad against me are sworn against me.' (*AVB*). Machell was not a fan of Mr Bird…

hold, paying a Rent to the Countiss of about a Mark per Annum†. The Hall ~~bought by Mr~~ house & other Tenement, were wo[r]th 50^{li} per Annum but 500^{li} debt upon them, which J.B. tooke upon himselfe with all the Land paying out to his father for life, 10^{li} per Annum‡.
One Hodge[102] of Browham Hall had 2 daughters Co-heires, one maryed to Browham, the other to Hodgson, from whom it was bought by one Wright, a farmer at the Castle houses & manager of [the] foarge. Alexander his son sold it to James Brown of Martendale, Capt[ain] for Ol[iver] who …[103]

[Machell's Notes: I.630]
*{This Account taken from Mr Ed. Sled[dal] (an inhabitant som time there) Nov. 26. 1686. The Hill House consisted of an chamber, a fore house,[104] meldoers,[105] &c. & a Bire.}
†For a farther inform. about the rents see Court Rolls.
‡{The Hall. Ex inform. Mr Ed. Sleddal, Nov. 26. 1686.}

[102] The word is blotted.
[103] The rest of the page has perished. For James Browne of Martindale (possible son of Richard Browne of Thrangcragge) see Richard Browne's will: CCA(C)PROB/1630/WX18, and see I.700 (Barton).
[104] A 'fore-house' is an outer apartment by which a house is entered; in Scotland, the but of a but-and-ben. See *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[105] The 'mell-door' or 'amell-door' (amell = between) in a Cumberland or Westmorland farmhouse is the space or passage between the inner and outer doors. The word 'mell', in the sense of a boundary, is commonly used in these counties: see Robert Ferguson, *The Northmen in Cumberland and Westmoreland* (London and Carlisle, 1856), 167. 'Mellom' means 'between' in Norwegian.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 8]

[Parish of Cliburn]

[I.449][1]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

To Cliburne Church Belong: 1. Cliburne; 2. Winderwath, & maybe Whinfell Parke if not rather to Ninechurch. Aske Gilmore?[2]
The family of the C[l]ibornes: Robert de Cliburne, testis [a]pud cart. d. 1320.[3]
The Town is divided into 2 parts. one called Cliburne Talboyes. the other? Enquire of Thomas Moore.
[III.113]
A chaple \ once / at Winderwath on the S.W. side of the Hall.[4]
[III.117]
{Intelligent Informers}
Thomas Moore, Richard Dalton, William Lambert

———————

[III.117]

[**Parish of Cliburn**]

[Name]
Cliburne may seeme to \ take its name from the brooke that runes by it under a cliff or rock whereon the towne stands.[5] Query, Aquae ad Clivem,[6] though the water now beareth the name of Leeth & formerly Lowth from its lowness there.[7]

{Value}
Cliburne is a little Rectory in the donation of the patron, bishop of Carliol, which is rated in the First

	li
Fruits Office	9: 1: 4.
& payeth xth yearly unto the king	0: 16: 1¼
And to the sayd bishop for Procurat[or] & Synodal	0: 3: 0

[The River Leith]
The water Lowth runs on the w. end of the towne. Now calleth Leeth.[8] It springs near ~~Strickland~~ \ Shap & runns downe by ~~Guruns~~, ~~Keld~~, Thrimby \ Grange / Chapel where great store of craw fish[9] […] {Above Thrimby Grange, the best craw fish and most plent[iful]} [to] Great Strickland Mill near Hackthorp end; so, twixt Melkinthorpe & Great Strickland Hall – commonly calld Melk[inthorpe]

---

[1] Also numbered p.13.
[2] Recent notes on the manor's history describe it thus: 'The manor of Cliburn comprised two divisions: Cliburn Talebois and Cliburn Hervey, named after their owners; subsequently held as one manor by the Cliburn family from the 15th century until sold (1654). Manor and demesne were bought from Edward Lee by Sir John Lowther 1667 and descended in that family. The detached portion at Winderwath was a separate estate, passing from the Cliffords to Thomas Braithwaite before 1612, then passing to the Wyvill family before 1658 until they sold it in 1787 to Hasells of Dalemain.' https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn.
[3] 'Robert de Cliburne was witness to a deed dated 1320.'
[4] 'Medieval chapel at Winderwath, recorded 1343.' https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn.
[5] MS: 'Cliburne may seeme to \ take its name from the rock or clif at the south-east thereof / over the stream or burne which runeth under it. to take its name from the brooke that runes by it' [followed by 1½cm illegible, scored-through text] 'under a cliff or rock whereon the towne stands.' There is an almost illegible margin comment beside this text. MS: 'Q. Clif bur cour … Cliburne}' [followed by 4cm, also illegible, scored through.]
[6] 'Query, once [called] Clivis.'
[7] Nicholson and Burn derive the name from Cleburn or Cleyburn: a brook running through a course of clay. *N&B1*, 457.
[8] MS: 'The water Lowth runs on the w. ~~side of~~ \ end of it / the towne. ~~The river Leith~~. Now called Leith.'
[9] Crawfish: crayfish. 'Middle English, craveys. 1500s, crafyshe. 1500s, craues, craves, cravish. 1600s, crawfish. 1700s, cra-fish'. *OED*. 9cm of illegible text following this word has been omitted.

Hall – Cliburne, Gilshaulin,[10] Cliburne Mil, where Livernit receives it. ~~Its bigger than Shap where you meet it.~~

{Divis[ion]}
It is onely 1 Constablewick, which consistes of 2 Lordships: Sc. Cliburn & Winderwath.
Cliburne is divided into Cliburn Harvy – which is the freeholders – and Cliburne Talboys – the Hall & tenants.
Davy Dicks Divel.[11]
{John Cooper W., Jo Bolton W., Will Warton W., Richard Moore W.,
Isaak Meekes, Thomas Lambert, Thomas Browne, under W.
Edward Worceman & Thomas Dalton under W.}
All under the Earl and som allso of the Hall. Thomas Brown under tenant.

[III.113]

		s.	d.
Both partes pay Nowtgel[d].[12]	Talb[ois]	12	4
	Har[vy]	8	10

{**Church**}

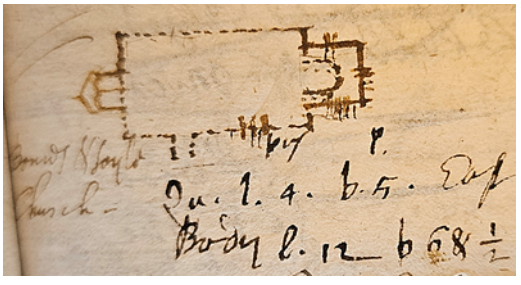


Figure 1.8.1. Cliburn church plan. III.117.

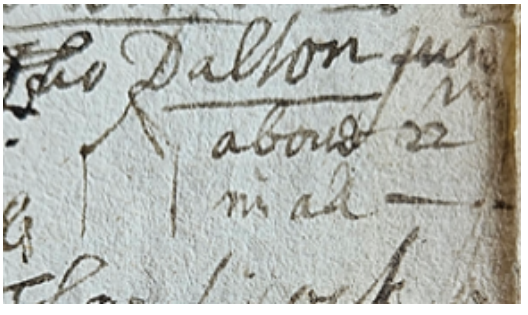


Figure 1.8.2. Sketch of the gable end of Cliburn church. III.117.

Quire: length 4, breadth 5 p[aces], East end window twix 4 & 5 inches broad, in height 39 inches.
Body: length 12, breadth 6 & ½ [paces]. A semi-circ[ular] plane arch betwixt, & no pillars. 2 bells.
Above 22 [paces] in all.[13]

[10] Gilshaughlin.
[11] Richard Dalton, one of Machell's informants: see III.119, below.
[12] This is written over 'Oxgeld'. Both mean a rent-payment in cattle; a tax levied on cattle. *OED*.
[13] In the MS, this sentence is placed alongside a tiny drawing of a gable end.

{Incumbents}
{Mr May – a Prebend;[14] Mr Fleming;[15] Mr Tully, Prebend of York;[16] Mr Ardrowe, Prebend;[17] Mr Fenwick;[18] Mr Spooner;[19] Mr Shepherd.[20]}

The parsonage house stands adjoyneing the churchyard on the N. side the churchyard at 20 yards distance; an old house but a pleasant situation on the banke of Leeth.

St Michel's Die Thankes. There feast was on [St] Michael Day.[21]

[III.117]

{Towne; Fam[ilies]}
The towne is extended from N. to S., & conteineth in (with the outhouses upon the Ling) about 42 familyes ~~in Cliburn & Cliburn Ling~~.

[Cliburn Hall]



Figure 1.8.3. Plan of Cliburn Hall. Margin. III.117.

III.115

Cliburne Hall was rebuilded or rather augmented with a piece of new building, as is clearly visible to the eye, by Mr Richard Cliburne, the owner thereof, in 1577; of which this inscription in golden letters imbossed upon a stone, & the coates of armes above the Hall dooer, not graved but only shadowed with painteing, doe remain as a monument.

[14] William Meye (Mey) MA, rector Cliburn 1587; Prebendary Carlisle Cathedral: canon of second canonry (1595-1625) and treasurer, 1610; died 1626. CCED.
[15] Richard Fleming MA, rector Cliburn 1626; died 1639. CCED.
[16] Timothy Tullie: ordained 1638; rector of Cliburn 1639; rector of Middleton-in-Teasdale 1660; prebendary of York Minster (Givindale); died 1700. CCED. During the interregnum Timothy Tullie conformed to the puritan religion of the Commonwealth, becoming a sequestration commissioner for Cumberland in August 1656. Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 1, 173-75.
[17] John Ardrey BA, rector Cliburn, 1664-73. CCED.
[18] John (or William) Fenwick, rector Cliburn, 1673-87. CCED.
[19] Nathaniel Spooner MA, rector Cliburn, 1687-89. CCED.
[20] Richard Shepherd, rector Cliburn, 1689-1739. CCED. A close friend of Thomas Machell, he was an executor of Machell's will, see R.S. Ferguson, 'Wills relating to the Dean and Chapter Library at Carlisle. Wills of Rev. T. Machell, Bishops Smith and Nicolson, and Joseph Nicolson', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 1-12, at 4. The epitaph to Shepherd in the chancel at Cliburn is as follows: 'H.S.E. [Hic Sepultus Est] Reverendus Vir Richardus Shepherd, Hujus Parochiæ Per Annos 50 Rector, Parvuli scilicet Gregis Pastor fidelis, vigilans, Veræ Religionis cultor assiduus, Qui primævæ Pietatis, Probitatis, Charitatis, Præclarum Exemplum Posteris Relinquens. Obiit 11° Oct. A.D. 1739, Æt[ate] 86'. Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I* (Kendal, 1888), 174.Translated as, 'Here lies buried the Reverend Richard Shepherd, Rector of this Parish for 50 years, faithful and vigilant Pastor albeit of only a little flock, an earnest promoter of true religion, who died leaving to posterity an outstanding example of antique piety, probity, and charity, on 11th October A.D. 1739, aged 86'.
[21] 29 September.

Rychard. Clebūr. thus. they. did. me. Cawle.
who. in. my. time. bealded. this. haule.
The. year. of. Our. Lord. God. who. list.
For. to. neam. 1577.
R. d. mayson.[22]

And in the 2 Angles of the Lintal over the doore, are the quartered coates single: Sc. 1. The paternal '~~opposite~~ on ~~the~~\ your / right hand.', and 2. Cross on the left.[23]



Figure 1.8.4. Arms over a door at Cliburn Hall. III.115.

Succession of proprietors.
Tim[othy] (son of Edm[ond] son of Thom[as]) sold it to Mr Colli[ng]wood, a Bishoprick Gentleman,[24] who sold it to Mr Roger Soray,[25] who yet lives at Broughton Tower in Cumberland; a part soljer, who exchanged it with Mr Ed. Lee of Broughton for Broughton Tower; which Lee mortgaged it to old Sir John Lowther of Lowther, whose grandchilde now injoys it.[26]

[Cliburn Parish]

4 Lords, Sc. John Lowther, Lord of the Manner; Earle. 2 tenants by tenant right & all the freehold[ers] \ appearing there to / answer at Woodside court.

[III.113]

It seems by the Lord[ship] & all the freehold[er]s appearing at Woodside that they hold of the forrest of Oglebird.

[III.117]

Cliburne Harvy
[The freeholders of Cliburne Harvy] were ten[an]ts to the Warcops & bought themselves free of one of the Warcops, being the freeholders above mentioned. These answer at Woodside & al the rest of the freeholders, even the Lord himselfe (by which it appears to be part of the Forest of Whinfell).

Added: Midtowne Tenements, freehold 10 acres bought by Mr Edm. Cliburne of John Warton. Som sold of agre. Hugh Licock \ or Hughs Tenement / sold by the same, and same property \ both 20 / by Common.[27]

[22] But see 'Rychard Clebūr thus they me cawl Wch in my tyme hath bealded ys hall, the yeare of owre lorde God who lyst for to neam 1567. R.D. Mayson', in Francis Haswell, 'Cliburn Hall', *CW2*, 12 (1912), 126-30, at 127. See also *N&B1*, in which the inscription is said to have been copied from the inscription over the hall doorway at Newbiggin, 460; and see Michael Taylor, 'On some of the Manorial Halls of Westmorland', *CW1*, 2, (1876), 251-59, at 256. Machell's version differs, particularly in the date and the word 'list', which could equally well be read as 'left'.
[23] Above the panel are the initials R.C. and a cartouche of the arms of Cliburn quartering Kirkbride, referring to the marriage of Robert Cliburn with Emma, daughter of George Kirkbride of Kirkbride, in 1507: Haswell, 'Cliburn Hall', 126-27.
[24] I.e. a gentleman from the Durham diocese. Until 1882, the diocese stretched from the Tweed to the Tees (Northumberland and County Durham), plus Alston in Cumberland. Before 1837, Crayke in Yorkshire also belonged to it: Durham University, https://libguides.durham.ac.uk/asc-churches-and-religion/bishops
[25] Sawrey.
[26] See this information in greater detail in Haswell, 'Cliburn Hall', 128-30.
[27] This has been a difficult passage to unwrap; readers might wish to arrange it differently.

An Lycocks lands, bought free of the B[irbecks] of Hornb[y] & now sold freeholds parcells. {Thomas Lycock a freehold which was ne[…][28] but purchasd of Birbeck.}

Item: Winderwath. 1 Hall. Gilshauglin. one farme house belonging Mr Dalston, sold of the demaine. Where Appelby Market was somtime kept: Sc. in the year [blank] som of the Clib[urnes] or Wha[rco]ps or perhaps of the Fal[lowfields] being then Maior of the town and the P[lague] rageing therein.[29]

[III.1I8]

B[ounds] {Compare & X}[30]

[Bounder. Version 1.]
E. & S. \ & W. / bounder with Morland. On the north [with] a part of Lowther, Clifton & Browham. Beginning ~~under the church~~ \ where Browham parish joynes / at Entery Nab a little above the wath into Whinfell.
Thence westwards up the Entery Sike to Peetmoore shaw \ Peatmoreshaw. /
Thence norwest on the outside of Whinfell Wall to Parke-yate.
Then N.W. by the ~~same~~ wall to Meburn-Moss-Neuke*.
Thence S. by the outside of the said \ moss / to Brighill † \ a cross cut in the ground / and thence W. by a casten ditch to a place \ on the midle called Yeake-Tree Hill.
Thence W. by the same ditch to Sandwath Cross at Menkinthorp Field Neuk \ where Clifton parish ~~comes in~~ & Lowther parish & Cliburne meets. /
Thence ~~eastward~~ \ S. / down Sandwath Sike to Cliburne Crooks.
Thence \ E. / downe the water of Leath to \ the / foote of Gilshaughlin \ at Pilgrim Sike Foote. /
Thence S. up […][31] \ Pilgrim Sike to the head of Mickle-Gill. /
Thence S. up the said sike to Edmond Steemsons at Woodside.
Thence S. up the said sike \ where Morland parish comes in / to a place called the † in the Streat betwixt Morland & Strickland Magna.
Thence S. […][32] \ up the highway which leads to Nuby / to Addison Closes.
Thence E. downe Melay-Sike to a bur trey bush[33] in Greengill Sike \ set for a bounder. /
Thence E. cross the church way from Strickland to Morland to a great \ stone calld / the Greystone in Heening.
Thence N. by a wall till you com at Walker well.
Thence N. by \ an / earthen hedge to Abey-yeat.
Thence N. the said hedge to a yeat \ at the S. / south side of Leath-water which is commonly called / Jack Gap.
Thence E. downe Leathwater to Cliburne Mil and \ so / to Livernit.
Thence N.E. downe \ the river / Livernit to the Entery Nab where wee began.[34]
But note, at Jud-Crooke, close on Bolton side, the water is in this parish. & Readpot Close on this side with som other lands adjoyneing is claimed by Bolton in Morland parish. Note also that the manner of Winderwath by its known meets & boundes (though cut-of by Whinfel) is in this parish.[35]

[28] A word here is unclear.
[29] See *N&BI,* 460. For Machell's other references to Appleby market's temporary removal to Gilshaughlin in 1598, see I.293 and II.481. See also Henry Barnes, 'Visitations of the Plague in Cumberland and Westmorland', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 158-86, at 175-77.
[30] Two bounders presented here were offered by Thomas Moore and Davy Dick, alias Richard Dalton.
[31] 11cm of text here is illegible.
[32] 3cm of text here is illegible.
[33] Elder-tree: burtre, burt-tree, burtree, bourtre, boretree, bortery. 1700s to 1800s Scottish: bourtree, bourtree bush. *OED*.
[34] MS: 'Thence N.E. downe \ the river / Livernit to the Entery Nab ~~Robinson Foote on which which are on chaume side of the water but Bal of~~ where wee began.' The binding is close to the text here, making it difficult to decipher the words. Version II (III.119 above) is more legible.
[35] See III.120 and I.449 for similar information.

[Bounder Informants]
{Thomas Moore 71. A rider in [the] Cliburne[s] time. & the E[arl of] Thanet who gave him 2s. And Davy Dick 67 ætatis.}

[III.119]

[Bounder. Version 2.]
Cliburne is bounded on the E., S. & W. with Morland parish, & on the North with som part of Lowther, Clifton & Browham, the perambulation being on this wise:
1ˡ you begin at the Entery Nab, a little above the wath into Whinfell, where Browham parish adjoynes on the North side.
Thence you goe westwards up the Entery Sike to Peatmoreshaw.
Thence N. west on the outside of Whinfel Parke wall, to \ a gate called / Parkeyeate.
Thence N.W. by the said wall to […][36] Meaburn Moss Neuke by the township of Meaburne, which is so called from being farmed.
Thence southwards, by the outside of the said Moss, to a cross which is only cut in the ground, called Brighilcross.
Thence westwards by a casten dike till you com at a place on the midle of the ling called Yeaketree-Hill.
Thence W. by the said dike (or ditch) to another cross cut in the ground, called Sandwath Cross where the parishes of Cliburne, Lowther & Clifton meet altogether at Melkinthorp Field Neüke (& q. of Browham).
Thence southwards, down Sandwath Sike to Cliburne Creüks.
Thence eastwards down the water of Leath (alias Cliburne-Beck) to the foote of Gilshaugeleing {alias Gilshelvering from a Rubish shelvering Skar}[37] where Pilgrim Sike cometh into it.
Thence southwards up Pilgrim Sike to the head of Mickle Gill, & so on to Steemsons House at the Woodside, where Morland parish adjoynes.
Thence southwards up the said sike, to a place which is called the Cross in the Streat, which is between Great Strickland & Morland.
Thence southwards up the highway which leads ~~eth to~~ \ towards / Nuby, to Addison-Closes.
Thence eastwards, down Melay-Sike to a Burtree bush in Green-Gill-Sike.
Thence eastwards, cross the church way from Strickland to Morland, to a great stone called The Grey Steane in Heening.
Thence northwest, by a stone-wall, to Walker-Well.
Thence northwards, by an earthen hedge, to Akay-yeat.
Thence N. by the said hedge, to yeat or gate at the side of Leethwater, which tis commonly called Jack Gap.
Thence eastwards, down the water of Leeth, to Cliburn Mil where it taketh Livennet.
Thence N.E. taken the river Livennet to the Entery Nab where you began.

{Attested by Thomas Moore ætatis 71, who rid this bounder both heretofore in the time of the Cliburnes; as also of late, with Thomas, Earle of Thanet, who gave him 2s.}[38]
{Attested also by Richard Dalton, commonly called Davy-Dick, ætatis 67.}

[III.120]

But note here that Jud-Crooke Close (on Bolton side the water) is in this parish; and Read-Pot Close on this side Livennet, with some other lands adjoyneing unto it, are claimed by Bolton in Morland parish.
But that which is most to be wondered at, is the upper end of Whinfel Forrest \ which is said to be in the parish of Browham & / intercepteth this, ~~pr~~ and cutting through, as it were in the midle, so that Winderwath, tho it be in the parish, is ~~quite~~ out of the bounder, being nowhere contiguous or adjoyneing to Cliburne. But the boundes of the forrest \ which runns thro 2 parishes / & the greatness of the Lords & owners of it, who were patrones of Browham, may seeme to have ~~caused this altera \~~

[36] 4cm of scored-through text is illegible here.
[37] See *Westmorland Place-Names*, Cliburn, which includes the seventeenth-century name 'Gillshaflinge': 'Gil' = ravine; and 'Shauchling or Shaflinge': 'infirm in gait', related to Scots dialect, 'shauchle'.
[38] '2s' is indistinct.

~~made great strange~~ / made this strange alteration \ innovacon, / & drawn the whol forrest into that parish wherein they had the greatest interest, & custom now hath confirm'd it unto them. So that – Here wee must note that the manner of Winderwath, by known meets & boundes (though cut-of by Whinfell) is in this parish.

[III.117]

{Curosityes of Art or Nature}

[II.460]

{! Cliburn Ling}
Cliburne Ling – a fine plane moore where theres a horse course, formerly so famous that when they would commend a good horse, indeed they usually say, Hees as good an horse as ever ran oe're Cleberne Ling.[39]

[III.113][40]

A horse course on the Clib[urn] Ling – 2 miles long Turnstoope.[41]
As Go[o]d as ere ran, 'ore Cliburne Ling.

Trougil[42]
A Shaw* a little S, from the church, is said to have bin haunted with faries; & Davy Dick[43] sayes he has heard them battle al the night ooer; where there is a place also, call'd Guy Gurlin Haw,[44] a cave which will hold 20 horse, and another almost as big, where they say were iron doers.
{And they tell a story of one of the Lamberts, that when he was plowing near to that place, he heard something cry: I ha broken my peele;[45] & finding a peel ly[ing] in the furrow†, he naled [it] together & threw it down agane where he found it. And when his plow brought him, he returnd to the same place agane [and] he found it was gon, & a great loaf of bread layen in its place, as a gratuity for this frie[n]d[ly] office, which I leave to the relaters &c. my op[inion].}

There is an irregular rume, sort of anear unto Whinfell, wherein som foundations of wall do appear – a mile E. from the church[46] […] which stands upon an hilly nab which is almost compassed, except the N. side, with the water of Leath.

Cleane & foule Martes on Burke Rean[47] ¼ [mile] from the church by Leath Side.
Great store of read stone all over the parish.
Blew & white clay, excellent, at Common Holme ab Ecclesia ¼ west. The tenants: arbitrary.

Clib[urn]-Shaw by the mil – a small warren planted by Davy Dick[48] – & there 3 hillocks of stones and earth {which some call Coves}, 2 on the right hand of the highway which leads from hence to Apleby, & one on the left.[49]

---

[39] MS: 'they would commend a good horse \ indeed / they usually ~~say doe it proverbially thus~~ \ say / hees \ as good an / ~~the best~~ horse \ as / ~~that~~ ever run oe're Cleberne Ling.'
[40] This page has been altered and added to several times; it displays a minimum of three changes of ink.
[41] 'Turn-stoop': the turning post or pillar in a horse race; from 'stoop': a post or pillar. *OED*.
[42] Trough Gill.
[43] Richard Dalton, one of Machell's informants: see III.119.
[44] Perhaps this was in the deep valley of Gilshaughlin Gill.
[45] Peele: a shovel or shovel-shaped implement. *OED*.
[46] MS: 'There is ~~one~~ an irregular rume, \ sort of a near unto Whinfell / wherein som found of wall do appear a mile E. from the church ~~near Whinfel by Lord Seat~~' [followed by 2cm of illegible scored-through text].
[47] Birkrane or le Birkgilly Birkrane, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[48] Because rabbits are not native to Britain (they were introduced by the Normans) they were initially badly adapted to the climate, so artificial warrens or 'pillow moulds' of dry, drained soil were made and enclosed to keep out predators, see Jeremy R. Robinson and Kevin Grice, 'Cunswick Hall: An archaeological and historical survey of a Lakeland manor', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 149-68, at 153-56, particularly Figure 6, an illustration of a medieval warren from Queen Mary's Psalter [BL, Royal MS, 2B, VII].
[49] 'Cove' or 'couve': in Old English, an inner chamber, bed-chamber, cell. *OED*. The MS repeats this sentence, but it is crossed through.

Ann, wife of William Warton, now living, had 3 children at birth, daughters, 12 years agoe.

[Machell's Notes: III.113]

*{May 13. 90. Shaw? as Peatmoss-Shaw, Cliburne Shaw. Hanging Shaw?}[50]
†(Query? What said of it.)
7 yards a perch.[51]

[50] Shaw: a thicket, a small wood, copse or grove. *OED*.
[51] Official measurement (2022) gives a perch as 5½ yards or 16½ feet or ¼ of a surveyor's chain.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 9]

[Parish of Clifton]

[III.121]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

The parish of Clifton taketh its name from the town or village where the church standeth, which is seated ~~up~~ at the high end thereof, & the end of an hill at the N.W. end of it.

{Intelligent Informers: Schoolmaster, Gentlemen, Shep[herd]}

Clifton is a little Rectory in the gift of the bishop of Carleol for the time being, valued in the First Fruits Office at: 8: 3:4
which payeth tenths every year to the king: 0:16:4
And procurations &c. to the bishop: [blank][1]
There are some prescriptions for [blank][2] in this parish; the rest is payable to the church in kinde.

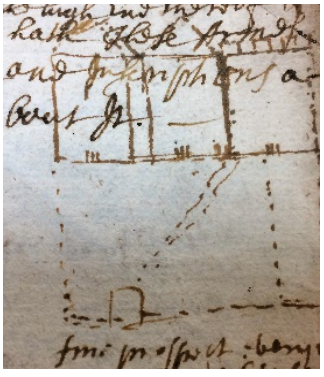


Figure 1.9.1. Sketch plan of Clifton Parsonage House. III.121.

{Parsonage house – a little mean building yet much betered by Mr Burrow – at the N.W. corner within 10 yards puto.}[3]
{Fine prospect every way for wood & fields at the N. west corner of the church yard.}
{Highway only twixt the outer C[ourt] & church yard.}
{Note. A Roman monument.}

{Clifton Manner. Bounds & Soyle}
Begin in the midle \ of Lowther Beck / over against the \ west end of / the church, thence northwards till you come at the foote of a close called Broadwath.[4] Thence N.E. to the Close Neuke. Thence S. up the ~~said dike of~~ \ Broadwath Dicke / to Midle Close, formerly call'd Lowther Brig Close. Then S. by Midle Close Dike to Clifton Cross. Thence E. up Howrig Lonen to Howrig Yeat. Thence E. to the 3 great steanes upon Gledhill at Green Sikes. Thence E. to the passage over the fosse at Cliburn Race Foote called Sandwath. Thence S.W. up the said sike to Gilbrow. Thence agane S.W. up the sike to

[1] In 1535 Synodals were valued at 3s, Procurations 2s. 8d: see John F. Curwen, *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 296-301.
[2] Prescriptions for grain (£7), hay (5s), lamb and wool (13s 4d): see Curwen, *Later Records*, 296-301.
[3] Roland (or Rowland) Burrow (or Borrow) was rector, 1668-1707. CCED.
[4] MS also gives, 'Beg[in] in Lowther Beck, directly W. from the church. Thence N. down the river.'

Trainsat[5] Head at {Hackthorpe Field Nooke (not to the Moss)}. Thence N.W.by a gill & row of stones to Scotclose Neuke. Th[ence] N.W. by Clifton Field Dike to Skelling. Th[ence] N.W. between Skelling & the Wings following Lowther Dike till you com at Lowther Beck ~~over against~~ above ~~the~~ a great Skar on Yearwith Side called Clifton Fitts near Clifton Well.
Testament: Thomas Boake & Henry [Penrith] […].[6]

{Divis[ion]}
It is but one constablewick, together with Clifton Dikes. One manner and one parish.
1. How many, & who ancient freeholds?

{Church & School}
Church Body. Length 13; Breadth 5.
Quire. Length 10; Breadth 4.
With a quire added to the N. side: long 8, breadth 4 […][7] having a long & low arch betwixt them which belongs to the Hall.
Rale & ballaster & som good wanscot, som with ballasters about them.
Sc. Wibers in the Body.[8] The Rectors & Bird in the quire.[9]

{Hath these armes and inscriptions about it}
Armes: Engane; Fallowfield,[10] but one esc[allop][11] which is yellow in a black [Blank]

{Hall}[12]
The Hall is a tower \ house N.W. ab Ecclesia about a stone cast, with 2 additional pieces of building fronting with their gables to the church front.[13] Farther of from the Tower is an ancient ~~table of~~ stone above the high~~est~~ window \ cut by hand / with letters defaced, \ which formerly had an inscription upon it / & 2 Geniis, one on either side of them. There are only in it 2 Escutcheons of Iron on[14] the hall doer; another on the starecase doer of the Tower in which the r[in]g hangs for ~~turne~~ lifting up the Latch or Sneck; and there are cut the Enganes Armes, Sc. 6 cross-crosslets[15] & a fess Indented is stamped on it but not cut through like the rest, which may seeme to import that som of the Enganes built the tower or at least the 2 part of the house.
In the Dineroome, in a Piece of old wainscot over the chimney, som Anticks & birds carved in friese,[16] & amongst them Enganes Armes.

[5] Known as Trainford Brow. Tranthwayt, 1378. Tranthwaite, 1733. A crane-haunted clearing. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[6] Some text in this sentence has perished; for the full names of Machell's informants relating to the bounder see III.129.
[7] A word here has perished.
[8] The family of Wybergh. For their origin and connection with the Engaines of Clifton Hall, see *CFH*, 375-6.
[9] Bird family (1683): see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I* (Kendal, 1888), 176. On visiting the church in 1703, William Nicolson commented, '… (the present Incumbent) Mr Burrow … has made one good Seat for his own family, and allow'd Mr Bird (tho he has no Estate in this parish) to erect another for the occasional use of his.' See *Misc. Accts*, 68.
[10] A shortened word here is very faint.
[11] A word has perished here, but it appears that one of the escallops was missing, See III.123, below.
[12] This is preceded by another margin heading: '{Town. Fam[ilies]}', which is blank.
[13] MS: 'The Hall is a tower \ house N.W. ab Ecclesia about a stone cast, with 2 additional pieces of building ~~fronting~~ with \ their / gables, & in that which is ~~more remarke~~ \ to the church front.'
[14] MS: 'on on'.
[15] Machell has here drawn an image of cross crosslets fitchées.
[16] Anticke: a grotesque or fantastic ornamental representation of a person, animal, or thing; decorative painting or sculpture consisting of the interweaving of human and animal forms with flowers and foliage. *OED*.

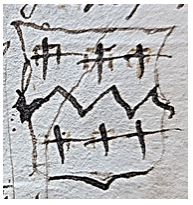


Figure 1.9.2. Engayne Arms (1). III.121.

{Curiosity}
{Marble rock in High Or, S.W. ¼ of, & then 9 W. […]}[17]
{Limestone in the fields next to land the S.W. ab Ecclesia – ½ m.}
{Rare Huen stone N.W. ab Ecclesia, ½ a q. over against Hews Crag; also, gri[n]de stones very large, & grane stone flags & slate of a white thread […][18] all by Lowther Bankes.}
{Wild cats & brockes in the rocks by the water.}[19]

[Further Notes]

[III.155]

{Ratio Nominis}[20]
The parish of Clifton taketh its name from the towne of Clifton where the church standeth, and that, from the cliffs or rocks near adjoyneing upon the bankes of the River Lowther \ q. oppidum ad clivem[21] / for there are 2 of principal note: ~~for~~ the one is of marble out of which doth isue 6 or 7 springs, which are impregnated with medicinal qualityes, and ~~yet~~ \ are / yet commended for cureing several sortes of diseases; the other is of curiouse white huwing stone of a very great \ fine / the like of which I have [not] seen in any other part of this country \ except the Heights in Ormside Parish 3 miles from Appelby / 3m. distant ab Ecclesia.

{Ecclesia}
The church standeth at the head of the towne, at the N. end thereof, and hath very Little in or about it, which may deserve our observation but that it is well seated within, \ the altar railed / and the rafters ~~are~~ \ all of them / cupled at top, one into another, which is rare in these parts.[22] Yet wee may not pass by these armes and monuments.
The parsonage house joynes the church yard at the N. East corner; a small pauper building but suteable to the preferment.[23]

{Divisio. Speciatim cum observ[atione].[24] So many free; rents arbitrary; all tenants to Clifton Hall.

[III.156]

{Clifton Hall}
All the tenants did formerly belong to Clifton Hall, which standeth at the N. end of the towne on the west side thereof & near to the church. This anciently belong'd to the Engaynes[25] and came to the

[17] The rest of this sentence has been obscured by the binding.
[18] Some text here has been obscured by the binding.
[19] Brocks: badgers. Compare with the extended text on III.130 See the similarity in *N&BI*, 414: 'Clifton is said to have been so called from two very remarkable cliffs above which it stands … one, of hard stone like marble, about half a mile south-west from the church; and the other, of a fine free stone, about half a mile west from the church, and is called Cat-Scar, from a number of wild cats frequenting that place formerly.'
[20] 'Reason for the name.'
[21] 'The town by the cliff.'
[22] MS: 'which is ~~unusual~~ \ ~~very~~ rare / in these parts ~~this part of the nation~~.'
[23] MS: 'The parsonage house joynes the church yard \ at the N. East corner, / a small pauper building but ~~large~~ \ suteable / enough for \ to / the preferment.'
[24] 'Especially with due observance.'
[25] MS: 'It anciently belonged to This anciently belong'd to the Engaynes'. For the origin of the Engaynes/Engaines in Burgh by Sands, Cumberland, see *CFH*, 102-03.

Wibers by marriage of one Elleanore Engane, whose armes are both in the house & church. In Registro de Holm inter cartas de Edenhall, I finde mention of Gilbert, son of Robert de Engayne de Cliftonâ;[26] Whose seat it hath bin, & how descended from family to family.

[Curiosity]
June 11: I found in Lowther Wood by the rivers side, to my admiration, very fair blew collimbines in great abundance,[27] the natural product of the soyle; and was informed that there were great plenty \ both / of blew & white one, by banke sides of the said river in the Lordship of Clifton, & there are blew ones, as I saw myself, on the other side in Yanwath Wood.
Memorandum: There are in Yeanewath Lordship, on the bankes of Emote near to the Hall \ and likewise at Skirsgill / great plenty of barberryes which grow there naturally in the woods;[28] & so there are raspes on the bankes of Huls Water,[29] as they informed me at Skirsgill. Temp. supra. dicto.[30]

[III.122][31]

[B. Draft Narrative.] Of Clifton Parish

{Ratio nominis}[32]
The parish of Clifton taketh its name from the town or village wherein the church standeth[33] \ at the N. end thereof, / which is but a little inellegant building on the outside, yet \ ~~pretty~~ / very neat & well seated within, having rale & ballasters before the altar.[34]

{1.} Church

Long	Body	13	In all: XXIII [paces]
	Quier	10	
Broad	Body	V	
	Quier	IV	

The porch or quier on the N. is long VIII; broad 4. A tympanum with 2 little bells.}

{**2. Patrone**}
And on the north \ side / behind a long arch, is a quier or porch which belongs Clifton Hall,[35] whose first proprietours may seem to have bin the founders of the church[36] \ al /though the patronage be (at this time) in the bishop of Carlisle.

[3.] The things remarkeable in and about it are these \ before yo[u] / that follow

[III.123]

[i.] The Chancel
In Clifton chancel are 3 little windows in the E. end, in the 1[t] whereof is the picture of a woman with a dejected countenance and hands a crossd, \ having yellow hare, blew coat & white mantle with \ golden yellow bace, / under which \ is / this coate of armes and inscription upon it.[37] The field Gules. The Charge Or. The Inscription: Helynor Ingayne.

[26] 'In the Register of Holm [Cultram] among the Edenhall deeds, I find mention of Gilbert, son of Robert de Engayne of Clifton.'
[27] Columbine plants are also known as Aquilegia.
[28] The berries of the Berberis Vulgaris.
[29] Ullswater.
[30] 'At the abovesaid time'.
[31] MS. III.157 and III.158 contain short notes relating to Clifton: '{A good method}'; '{Clifton Dugdal. Clewrth Hall.}'
[32] 'Reason for the name.'
[33] Virtually illegible text [11cm] has been scored through here.
[34] Virtually illegible text [10cm] has been scored through here.
[35] Virtually illegible text [7cm] has been scored through here.
[36] MS: 'of it of the church.'
[37] MS 'above it \ upon it. /'

vid. Fig. 1.

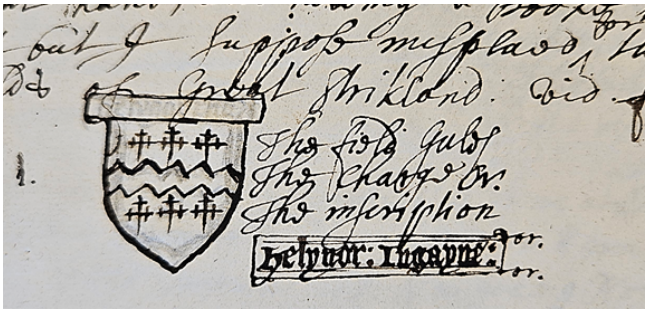


Figure 1.9.3. 'Helynor Ingayne'. III.123.

In the 2 or midle window a crucifix much defaced.
In the 3[d] a boy or man leaneing his cheek upon his right hand and holding a booke in the left \ read coat, yellow mantle / and above that but I suppose misplaced \ for it should be underneath, / the armes of the Fallowfields of Great Strikland: The field, Sab[le]. The charge, Or. Vid. of 2.

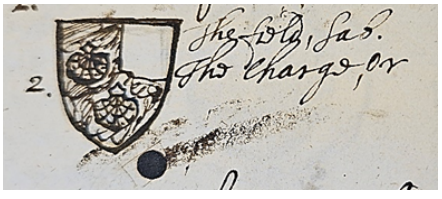


Figure 1.9.4. Fallowfield of Great Strickland Arms. III.123.

[ii.] [Stones]
[Fig.] There is a round stone layes loose in the quire, which is supposed to have bin the top of the cross; And a piece of \ it / sett up at the east end of the church in the yard, supposed to be the neck \ & body; / that head having the same sort of letters upon it. I can read one side the round stone these words: hic iacet Nicolas; but nothing on the other: vid. Fig. 3.[38]



Figure 1.9.5. 'vid. Fig. 3'. III.123.

If the neck doe not answer the body of the cross, it has bin a piece of an old grave stone*.

[Through Stones]
There is also a through stone with a cross upon it an[d] a chalice on one side thereof; & something else now obliterated on the opposite side on the north side Communion Table.

[38] C.M.L. Bouch refers to the loss of this crosshead in 'The Church and Churchwardens accounts of Clifton, Westmorland', *CW2*, 49 (1949), 156-65, at 161.

On a through stone before the quire doore is in[39] great Roman character: J. Svton Bachelor of Arts. of the Aige of 21. Dyd the 4. of May 1619.[40]
In the church yard on the north side the chancel is a little slaite through stone with a crosse flowry and a sword on the left side thereof.

[Machell's Notes: III.123]

*Query: If the church be dedicated to St Nicholas, & if so note that the burying places of the martyrs were used of old for their assembley, and hither they brought their children to be baptized. {These places and areas they called martyria}. *Episcopalia* of H. Compton, Bishop of London: Letter to his Clergy 1686. Letter 1.[41]

[III.122]

{iii. Dedication to St Nicholas}
The last [thing remarkable] may seem to be the head of the cross which sometimes stood in the church yard till men grew so zealous \ that I may not say furiouse / against ancient rites that they thought they could not follow their \ right /j[udgment] unless they first of all take up the cross in a litteral sense. The inscription which you see here upon it is HIC JACET NICOLAS,[42] from whence I collect the church may be dedicated unto St Nicolas, tho I dare not affirme that Holy Marty[r] was buryed here, notwithstanding wee read that the martyria or burying places of the Holy Martyrs were used of old for their public assemblyes and thither their children were wont to be brought, that they might be baptiz'd*; which was the original of many churches, where the word martyrium doth signify not only martyrdome but a church or temple dedicated to martyrs. Altar impersitum cinenbus martyris †[43] Enough to ground my conjecture upon.

And these are all the things remarkeable in Clifton church, save onely in Weber's[44] Quire and the Church quire there is a great text M writ {in read},[45] here and there single by itselfe, which has bin don when the church was plastered; in the painteing there being also branches in red in both places but drawn by a rude and unskilfull hand. \ I doe suppose it stands for Mary, in commemoration of the Blessed Virgin. /



Figure 1.9.6. The letter 'M' in Clifton Church. III.123.

[Machell's Notes: III.122]

**Episcopalia* \ Honourable viz. / Henrici Compton Episcop[i] Lond[inii], quibusdam epistolis clero Dictatis episcop[ali], edit[a] Londini 1686.[46]
The 'Episcopalia' of Henry Compton Bishop of London, in certain letters written to the bishops clergy, published at London 1686.
†*Digest e Dict*. Gouldmanie.[47]

[39] MS: 'a'.
[40] This is quoted in *Bellasis I*, 182: 'J. Sutton, Bachelor of Arts, d. ye 4 of May 1619.'
[41] Henry Compton (1621/2-1713), *Episcopalia, or, Letters of the Right Reverend Father in God, Henry, Lord Bishop of London, to the clergy of his diocess* (London, 1686). This is a collected edition of the letters and addresses of Henry Compton, bishop of London. See Andrew Coleby, 'Henry (1631/2-1713), bishop of London'. *ODNB*.
[42] Here lies Nicolas.
[43] 'These places and areas they call martyria.'
[44] Wybergh.
[45] MS: '{in read} ... ~~in red~~.'
[46] '*Episcopalia* of H. Compton, Bishop of London: Letter to his Clergy 1686. Letter 1.'
[47] Francis Gouldman, *A copious dictionary in three parts: I. the English before the Latin; II. the Latin before the English; III. the proper names of persons, places, and other things necessary to the understanding of historians and poets* (London, 1664).

{Mr Dugdall also visited this church, 1664: Sc. his booke (ergo in the Heralds College, London) whether he have anything that I have omitted.}

[III.122]

{4. Parsonage House}

At the N.W. point of the \ Quier or / Chancell (at about 12 yards distant \ from it / ~~or little more~~) stands the Parsonage house: a smal timber building which hath little more but its large and fair prospect to commend it unto us; yet has of late bin somewhat improved by Mr Burrow, the present rector.

{Value and dues out of it}	li. s. d.
This parsonage is rated in in the First Fruits office at	8: 3:4
and payeth yearly, tenths to the king	0:16:4

And to the bishop for procurations and for synodals.[48]

[III.124]

[5. The Manner and Descent; Engayne]

Williamus Wiberge maryed Eleanore, daughter & heir of Gilbert de Engayne de Clifton, Edward 3.[49]
Engham de Clifton bore for his coate these armes, 9[0] Richard 2. [1385-1386].
È sigillo apud cartam penes T. Sandford \ de Ask[ham] /Arm[iger].[50]



Figure 1.9.7. 'Seal on a deed in the possession of T. Sandford'. III.124.

[III.125]

Afterwards, som debates ariseing concerneing the bounder on Lowther side, twixt Richard Lowther of Lowther Esq. & Thomas Wibergh of Clifton Esq., it was agreed by mutual indentures betwixt the said partes made 15th April {5[0] Elizabeth 1563} and mutually signed & seald to each other; whereof I have seen Mr Lowthers part, with his hand \ name / subscribd, & this seal appendant to it, wherein it was agreed betwixt them:



Figure 1.9.8. Seal of Richard Lowther. III.125.

1. That whereas the 2 Lordships adjoyne at \ a place which is called / Tramfits, they shall there be markd by a cross made & graven in the earth, called Tramfit Cross; and in goeing northwards from

[48] See above, III.121.
[49] For a brief overview of the descent, see the Cumbria County History Trust: 'Manor of Clifton given by Sir Hugh de Morville to Gilbert Engaine in reign of Henry II; carried by marriage of Eleanor daughter of Gilbert Engaine to William de Wybergh of St Bees 1365; descended in Wybergh family until c.1920.' https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/clifton.
[50] 'From the seal of the deed in the possession of T. Sandford, Askham, Esq.'

the said Tramfits Cross unto the north part of Neither Skellands,[51] where the said Lordships are, & shal be divided by one old ancient Rayne.[52] And from the north part of the saide Nether Skellands (following the said Rayne between the said Nether Skelland and Clifton Field towards the west unto the foote of Overskellands; and from thence following the hedge betwixt) lieveing Eshelay Moore, unto Buckholm*,[53] & so lineally N. by the hedge of Buckholm as the same is now staked, hedged & geathered unto a double ditch, set & made above Cattcrag†, to be fenced by the ~~owners of~~ Lowthers forever. And further covenant & agree together for themselves, their heires, Executors and assignes, that each of them in their own Lordships will permit & suffer so much of the Moore as layd then unclosed to lye so forever, and not to inclose any part of the Moore, waists or Common of Lowther or Clifton, but that it shall lye as free common of pasture for the beastes & cattle of the Inhabitants of both,[54] the Townes & Lordships as well of Clifton as of Lowther from henceforth for evermore, without let, interuption or disturbance of either party &c. {to which indenture} they interchangeably subscribed their names & affixed their seales.

{Yawenwith, Tirell}
A deed whereby Gilb. Engaỳne de Clifton does grant to one Thomas Niger de Kalo, & Christian his wife \ & to their heires / (which I suppose ergo the daughter of Gilbert) ½ a carucate of lands, which is 4 oxgangs, free from suit of court moulter & pannage,[55] paying the rent dues R[a]dulf de Notyngham, tunc vicecom Westm'landie‡; Domino Thoma de Hellebeck; Domino Roberto de Haskeby; Domino Johe de Morvill; Domino Roberto de Yawenwith; Odardo de Bruham; Henrico de Tirell et alijs.

{12. Edward 2.} [1318-19]}
Robert de Askeby & Margaret his wife gave to Gilbert son of Richard Engayne of Clifton a toft & croft & all their land there, to be held for terme of the life of Margaret De Askeby, their daughter. Rent: a rose, on the nativity of St John Baptist[56] \ ! / T.[57] Domino Hugone de Lowther; Domino Jo. De Rosgil, militibus; Hen. De Warthcop; Gilberto Engayne of Clifton. \ Teste G. Eng. De Clifton, ergo not the same. /

[Machell's Notes: [III.125]

*{?}
†{A crag in Yea[n]wath Wood so called from wild cats frequenting it in former times.}
‡{? Date}

[III.128]

Anno 8[0] Edward 2. [1314-1315]
A fine & recovery in crastine Sancti Martini apud Westmorland,[58] at Westminster between Gilbert Engaỳne, quer[entis],[59] & Richard de Wethermelock, vicar of the church of Arturet – de forc[iamentum],[60] concerneing the manner of Clifton with the appurtenances excepting vj messuages & 120 acres of land in the same manner, by which it is settled upon the said Gilbert for term of life; afterwards to Gilbert his son & Joan his wife & their isue, for want of which \ to the right heir of Gilbert, / Gilbert Engayne does grant the remainder of a moietie of the manner of Clifton to Will Engayne, his brother (as I understand it) after the death of Gilbert, their father. Tis a French deed, sans

[51] 'Skelland': land on the shelving terrain (old Norsk). There is a Skelland Pond in the parish of Lowther, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[52] A rain[e] or reyne: a strip of land, a ridge; a division between fields or between strips of land in a field. *OED*.
[53] Buckholme Wood, Lowther, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 184.
[54] MS: '~~of both~~ of both …'
[55] For carucate and oxgang, moulter and pannage, see the English Glossary.
[56] Rose-Rent: a rent of a rose on the Feast of the Nativity of John the Baptist: 24 June.
[57] Witnesses.
[58] 'On the day after the Feast of St Martin' [11 Nov.]; therefore the event occurred on 12 Nov.
[59] Plaintiff.
[60] Deforce: a legal term, meaning to withhold (property, especially land) by force or violence, as from the rightful owner. See Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (London, 2nd edn, 1732), DE. It appears, therefore, that Richard of Wethermelock was in unlawful possession.

date, but attested by Sir Thomas du Stirkland, Sir Hugo du Lowther, chevaleres; John Fils Robert du Stirkland, ~~Sir Hugo du Lowther~~: ergo this is about Edward 2.

{Temp. Edward 2. vel. 3.}
A settlement made of ~~the~~ \ his whol / village of Clyftone by Gilbert, the son of Gilbert de Engayne.

{Gilbert de Engayne
|
William Gilbert, fil. Gilbert = Joan
|
Henry de Engayne = Joan d. of Robert Lowther
of Halton in Northumbria}

[III.129]

{6. The Boundes of the parish: **The Perambulation}**
Clifton is hem'd in on the \ N. & / E. with the parish of Browham, on the south with Lowther, and on the west with Yanewath in Barton parish.
1. Begin in the very midle of Lowther Beck over against the W. end of the church near to Cat-Skar on this side of the water & Hug[h]s Crag on the other.
Thence N. \ wards / down the midle of the beck till you com at \ the foote of a large / ~~a~~ close below Lowder \ Bridge / and over against the Round Table in Yamont: being call'd the Breadwath.
Thence N.E. to the said Close-Nooke, and thence southwards up Breadwath-Dike till you com at a close formerly called Lowther-Brig-Close but now Midle-Close*.
Thence southwards by Midle-Close-Dike to {Clifton Cross} where Clifton & Browham & the bridge-lonens meet.
Thence eastwards up Howrig-Lonen to Howrig-Yeat, & so on to the 3 great steans upon Glead-Hill at a place call'd Grene-dikes.
Thence agane eastwards to a passage over a little sike at Cliburne Ling Foote, & near the Race Post call'd Sand Wath.
Thence S-West up the said sike to Gillbrow, & so on \ (still up the said / sike) to Hackthop-Field-Neuk at Trainfat-Head†. Thence N. west by a gill & row of stones to Scot-Close-Neuk.
Thence westward, by Clifton-Field Dike to Skellins.[61]
Thence N. west ~~betwixt~~ (between the said Skellins and a place called The Wings (gallicè Le-Wings)[62] by Lowther-Dicke, following the \ hedge / till it adjoynes the River of Lowther above a great skar on Yeanwath Side called Clifton-Fitts; & near to another on Clifton Side call'd the Hee-Skar i.e. High Skar.
Thence into the midle of the River Lowther & so down the river till you com at the place where we began‡.

[Machell's Notes: III.129]

*Query: if it cross not the way a Capel[la] a pont.[63]
†{q. why not to the †?}
‡This perambulation given in by old Thomas Boake æt. 90, and He[n]ry Penrith, his son in law. This they give it in now, but an ancient Bounder (in a deed sans date) caryes it farther on Lowther Side "versus campum de Hackthorpe usq[ue] Tramfit Cross"[64] & a later agreement twix Richard Lowther of Lowther Esq. & Thomas Wiberge of Clifton Esq. {which beareth date the 15th April 5[0] Elizabeth [1563] confirmes the sames & fixe the boundes for succeeding ages in these following words.}[65]

[61] Skellands.
[62] 'In French, Le-Wings.'
[63] There is a note written here, in pencil in another hand, which translates 'a Capella a pont' to 'from the chapel to the bridge'.
[64] 'Towards Hackthorpe Plain as far as Tramfit Cross.'
[65] See the bounder in Latin, below.

[III.128]

[Bounder, 15 April 1563.]
To Henry, his son and Johan his wife (the daughter of Robert Lowther of Halton in com[itatu] Northumbrie) & the isue of their bodyes lawfull to be begotten; for want of which, to Reverte to him & his right heires. Hijs testibus: Joha[nn]e Berwic; Joha[nn]e de Harryngton; Joh[ann]e, filio Roberti de Str [Blank] Joh[ann]e de Bradley et alijs, wherein is this Bounder per has scillicet divisas. C.[66]
Incipiend[o] apud pedem de Bradwathe v[er]sus Croseholme
Sequend[o] metas inter Browham et Clyftone ex parte australi usqu[e] ad viam apud Browham Bank End
Et sic sequend[o] dictam viam usqu[e] ad tres magnas lapides apud Graydike Greyndikks (on Clifton Moore)
Et sic a dict[o] Greyndikks sequendam dictam viam ex parte australi usqu[e] ad Sandwath (at Cliburn Ling End)
Et deinde sequendo [quenda]m torrentem qui currit ex parte occidental[i] inter territoriam de Melkanthrope et Cliftone-more usq[ue] Thornegat, Newnhowe
Et sic sequendo dictum torrentem versus campum […][67] de Hackthorpe usq[ue] Transit Crose
Et a dict[o] Transits C. ad Borialem partem de Nether Skellands
Et sic sequend[o] metas inter Nether Skellands et campum de Clyftione ex parte occidentali usq[ue] ad pedem de Over Skellands
Et deinde linealiter sequend[o] metas inter Lewings et Eshele moram distendend[o] in aquam de Lowther
Et sic per medium dicta[e] [a]quae usqu[ue] ad pedem de Bradwathe prædict[o] Habend[o] &c.[68]

{**7. The Division**}
The division into Manners, Townes & Hamlets of Clifton, & 2 other improvements or rowes of houses dispersd here & there upon \ the hedges or ditches of the More, whence they are called Clifton Dikes and are divided into the 2 partes, the High & Low Dike.

[III.130]

[**Clifton**]
Clifton is a considerable village of XXV familyes or thereabouts. It lyes on east side of the River Lowther. It taketh it name from those rocks or cliffs near unto and above where it standeth quasi villa ad Cliburn, that is to say, the Town by the Cliff,[69] there being 2 very remarkable cliffs, one of marble, out of which there springeth 7 medicinal wells that will [cause] vomit, and purge by urine, especially if you drink freely of them; & will cure sore eyes, ulcers & scabbs.[70]

[66] 'By these dividing points. To wit …'
[67] Latin text (3cm) has been crossed through here.
[68] 'Beginning at the foot of Bradwathe towards Croseholm, following the boundary-marks between Browham and Clifton on the south as far as the road at Browham Bank End. And so following the said road as far as three great stones ... at Greendykes. And so from the said Greendykes following the said road on the south side as far as Sandwath (at Cliburn Ling End). Thence following [a certain] torrent that runs from the west between the lands of Melkinthorpe and Clifton Moor as far as Thornegat, Newnhowe. And so, following the said torrent towards Hackthorpe Field as far as Tramfit Cross. And from the said Tramfit Cross to the north part of Nether Skellands, and so following the boundary-marks between Nether Skellands and Clifton Field on the west, as far as the foot of Over Skellands. Thence in a straight line following the boundary-marks between Lewings and Eshele Moor, extending to the Water of Lowther. And so along the centre of the said water to the foot of Bradwathe aforesaid. To have & to hold etc.'
[69] An almost identical paragraph on this page is as follows: MS 'The parish conteines but one Lordship in it ~~of Clifton which conteineth in it about 25 families~~ \ being /… Clifton is a village on the East side of the River Lowther, which takes its name from the rocks \ or cliffs / above which it stands quasi villa ad Cliburn…'
[70] See *N&BI*, 420: 'Dr Todd makes mention of a fountain near the bank of the river Lowther in this parish, of christilline limpid water, strongly impregnated with steel, nitre and vitriol, which was of great benefit to persons afflicted with ulcers and fore eyes, and scorbutic complaints.' Dr Todd was Hugh Todd, archdeacon of Carlisle Diocese, see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, from I.481.

{Marble & medicinal waters S.W. ab Ecclesia ¼ of a mile}
1. A slender spring or current of light water, good for the eyes.
2. & 3. Have the greatest current, the one being smooth the other ruff.
4. A little slow rust spring & the 5. much like it.
6. A murmuring spring which coms down the rocks & is smooth like the second, but much sweeter water.
7. is the sweetest of all, & a quick spring, being emitting where the Skar is faln in. This standeth paralel to the S.E. end of the town of Clifton, \ a ¼ m. S. W. from the church / and of a more which is called High Skar, where now there lyeth a large piece of marble, big enough for a \ through or / gravestone & wherein there groweth great store of liverwort & maden haire \ with which the limestone that lyeth above in the town fields[71] {S.W. about ab Ecclesia about ½ a mile} may seem to impregnate ~~the water with their several vertues~~ the veines of water which breath and blead out of this \ ~~very~~ / rock.

{White hewing stone, grindstones, flag & slates N.W ab Ecclesia ½ q.}
The other cliff is of excellent good hewing stone,[72] som of it being extraordinary white, & the rest here & there struck with a dash of pale read or blew, but all of it hath a very fine \ great / grane and will rise in \ large / stones. There are also in it both slates & flags of a whiteish read colour; so sound & fine withal that they get the best & largest of them ~~flags~~ to make grindstones ~~of~~ which are thought the \ best in the / North of England. And this standeth also on the bankes of Lowther, \ but / paralel to the N.W. \ end / of the Town of Clifton, and is called Catt-Skar, from being formerly frequented with wilde kats. And this I take to have bin the mother of the Church & Hall, so I doe not doubt but one ~~or both~~ of these ~~famous~~ cliffs has bin the Godmother of the village of Clifton, and gave name unto it.

This town extendeth itselfe from S.E. to Norwest, which end being the higher hathe the Church & Rectory & Hall placed there at a very small distance one from another; for the Hall standeth N.W. from the church about 100 yards as I take it, there being but the breadth of an highway betwixt the church yard & the Hall fould \ outer court. /[73]

Long	Body	13	Passes
	Quire	10	in all XXIII[74]
Broad	Body	5	
	Quier	14	

{There is also a quier on the N. side behind a long porch which belongs to the Hall & is l[ength] 8; broad circa 4.}
The situation is pleasant enough, were it not for a little descent from the church to the gate, for it ~~hath~~ stands on[75] a large prospect of wood & fair fields on every side. {And there are 2 trees, the one sickamore, the other a walnut of \ incredible / bigness, which shewes the benignity of the soile, and if groves & walkes might be made here…[76]
The Rectory or Rectors house is a little mean ~~forest worke~~ building, but much bettered by the present

[71] Similar MS references on this page have been removed from this edition, e.g. MS: '{There groweth on it plenty of liverwort and madenhare}' 'Limestone in the field S.W. ab ecclesia ½ a mile.'
[72] MS: 'The other cliff is of excellent \ good hewing / ~~hewing~~ stone, ~~fit for hewing~~ & ~~walling~~.'
[73] MS: 'This town extendeth itselfe \ ~~standeth on a riseing banke~~ / ~~in length~~ from S.E. to Norwest, which end being the higher hathe the Church & Rectory & Hall placed there, at a very small distance one from another; for the Hall standeth N.W. from the church about 100 yards, as I take it, ~~The church is obscure on the outside, but pretty neat & well seated within, have ingrale and ballasters before the altar.~~ there being but the breadth of an highway betwixt the church yard & the Hall fould \ outer court.'
[74] This information occurs in the margin.
[75] MS: 'on on'.
[76] Machell's horticultural ideas have been obscured by the binding here, but see Sir John Lowther's land at Yanwath, where Machell envisaged the changes he could make to the grounds in Part 1, Ch.5, Barton: Yanwath, I.740.

incumbent, Mr Rowland Burrow. It stands from the N.W. point of the Quier about 10 or 12 yardes, & hath a large & pleasant prospect.

[III.131]

{Manner House}
Clifton Hall which is the ancient manner house, [is] pleasantly seated were it not for a sort of descent down to the house. It standeth on an hill fronting S. East towards the church, and hath a fair [blank][77] It \ consists of a Tower & 2 other buildings, which front with their gables towards the church / & has bin builded at 3 several times: the Tower first, the midle building next, & the outmost the last. And tho they talke much of the ancient ~~court~~ house \ of Elianore Engaynes – which was made of spiles[78] / {by which they mean sheathes daubed with morter ~~or clay betwixt~~,[79] whence there are no vestigia of the foundations}~~very~~ \ which, as they say, stood / in Coat Garth on the same side but at the contrary end of the town where there yet is the fashion of an old fish pond fed with a spring;[80] which place is parcel of the old demane of lands – Yet I am persuaded that the tower was builded by som of the Engaynes before her time; being induced thereto by an iron scutch[eon].[81] \ And the same arms agane / carved in wood upon a piece of old wainscot friese which was lately over the dineing roome chimney in the said tower but now is removed; the figures of which you shall have by & by.

[III.133]

The second part may seem to be built by som of the Engaynes,[82] because there is an iron scutchon like to the other, in which the latch \ ring / of the out doer hangeth, \ having the armes of Engayne upon it, / tho I grant it might be translated hither from som other part ~~of the house~~.



Figure 1.9.9. Engayne Arms (2). III.133

The 3rd, which is builded in the same forme, may seem erected by som of the Wibers because it is newest; tho there is not any part of the house which hath the armes of Wiber upon it.[83] But there are several blanke escutchions above the little loope window intended for arms, and a very ancient Roman inscription placed above them. At each end of it is a Romane genius.[84] But alas! The letters are so much decayed \ eaten out by the teeth of time / that though they appear pretty fair at a distance \

[77] MS: 'Clifton Hall, which is the ancient manner house, pleasantly seated, ~~but~~ \ were it not / for a sort of descent ~~unto it~~ \ down to the house. It standeth on /~~on the top~~ an hill, ~~which yields a large prospect of well wooded fields all round about~~ \ fronting S. East towards the church and hath a fair,' The sentence stops abruptly here but the information continues on the next line.
[78] 'Spile' (northern dialect and Scottish): a splinter, chip, or narrow strip, of wood; a spill. *OED*.
[79] 'Sheath': to cover (a ship, a door, roof, etc.) with a sheathing of material e.g. '1627 … casing the hull [of a ship] under water with tar, and haire, close covered over with thin boards fast nailed to the hull'. *OED*.
[80] MS: '…an old fish pond ~~which hath a good spring running into it~~ \ fed with a spring /.'
[81] MS: 'Yet I am persuaded that the tower was builded by som of the Engaynes before her time ~~or else by he[r]selfe before her marriage~~ being induced thereto by an iron scutch ~~with the armes of England~~ \ ~~affixed to the latch of the stair foot doer / upon the doore latch as you goe up the stairs into enter the Hall & the old tower. And by Englands armes~~.'
[82] MS: 'The second part \ ~~also of whose~~ \ ~~end of~~ / ~~gabel stands to the front~~ / may seem to be built by som of the Engaynes.'
[83] MS: 'The 3, \ which is builded in the same forme / may seem ~~erected thereof~~ \ erected by som of the Wibers because it is newest; / tho there is not any part of the house which hath the ~~Wibers~~ armes ~~upon it~~ of Wiber upon it.'
[84] MS: 'But there are several blanke escutchions above the highest window thereof; \ little loope window intended for arms / and a very ancient Roman inscription placed above them; ~~and~~ at each end of it \ is / a Romane genius ~~as this figure sheweth~~.'

I found them like painted letters; for yet could / not discover so much as one word \ when / I got a ladder and \ had / taken the paines to climbe up myself and came nearer unto them.[85]

[III.33A][86]



Figure 1.9.10. Inscription frame 'upon the gable end of Clifton Hall'. III.133A.

[Machell's Notes: III.133A and III.133B]

Make these duble.[87]

[III.133B] Mount it up to the inner corner.[88]

[III.131]

[Clifton Dykes]

Clifton Dikes, which is divided into the High-Dikes: being a row of stragling houses in the dikeside, extending S. from the sike at Clifton Town End towards Lowther Hall & consisting of \ about / 9 familyes; and Clifton Low-Dikes, which are built on an hedge beginning at the foresaid sike & turning eastwards & then northwards & the N. West by Howrig Street, wherein are conteined XII or XIII. And all these, except Remye's tenement and some ancient freeholds, were purchased free of the late Sir John Lowther of Lowther, Baronet, at 50 years purchase rent. But \ were customary tenants at an arbitrary fine / before they were mortgaged to the said Sir John \ & did suit & service / to Clifton Hall. {And 2 corner houses in the skirts of the Lordship: Sc. 1. Browhow at Cliburn Brig End? 2. Howcasl, now demolished, instead of which is an house calld Stub Close.}

[III.137]

{Clifton-High-Dikes}

The 2. place in this Parish & Lordship is Clifton-High-Dikes, which beginneth at the S.E. end of the village of Clifton where there is a sike that crosseth the streat and extendeth southwards by the dike side towards Lowther Hall, conteineing [in] it about 9 families of stragling houses.

{Clifton Lowdykes}

The 3. is calld Clifton-Low-Dikes, which beginneth at the same ~~end~~ \ place / beyond the said sike but extendeth eastwards & then twines about towards the north until it comes into Howrig Lonen \ Streat; / in which[89] there are xii or xiii families dispersd here & there.

{? The Moore Houses}

Lastly there are 2 little houses, set as it were for clames & bounders in the skirts of the parish: one cald Brown-Howe, near to Sandwath at Cliburn Ling End which is mentioned in the perambulation; and the other, How Karle which is lately demolished and instead thereof is an house newly builded, which is called Stub-Close.

---

[85] Machell also wrote (MS.III.133B), 'This is upon that gable end of Clifton Hall under the little loop window opp. the front side opposite to the church. The letter[s] appear pretty faire at a distance, but when I got a ladder & I climed up to it, I could read nothing.'

[86] Scrap page, 9½cm x19cm.

[87] Written in pencil below the centre of the sketch.

[88] A pencilled note.

[89] In Clifton Low-Dikes,

{**The Tenure**}
And all these familyes together with the tenants of Clifton, whether free or customary – the latter of which are called Natives in their ancient writeings (of which the reason shal be given elsewhere) – ought sute & service to Clifton Hall and payd several bouns, one of which was to goe to St Bees with man & horse to fetch salt from thence or other necessarys, once every year; for which most of them would compound with the balif for halfe a crowne when he went to warne them, which would be som time in deep of winter. But som would rathe[r] choose to goe, and then they had 12d \ apiece /of the Lord[90] and bread & chease when they returned. Henry Penrith (who with his father-in-law, an ancient man)[91] gave this account, was the last that went \ upon that occasion / & carried salt from St Bees to Lowther at the command of the late Sir John Lowther; who presently, after falling in suit with the customary tenants abou[t] a fine upon the death of Mr Thomas Wiber who had mortgaged them to him many years before & never redeemed them, sold them all free \ excepting one Remy / for 50 years purchase: that is ~~to say~~ 50 times double their \ ancient / Rent, which Rent still remanes to the Lord in being*.[92]

[Machell's Notes: III.137 and III.139]

*{?}
[III.139][93] Add here the bounders
~~Ancient freehold~~
~~Q. de … Brough Bolton. Testis Briget Teasdale sold it & built the Hall. Her weight~~
~~Thomas = Katherine Wilson~~
~~Ch. Sets Bolton to~~
~~at the Dor Helton wid~~
~~70 his aut Geoffrey = Isabel Pattrickson~~
{Dor = Helton miles}

[III.135]

[**Christopher Airay**]
And these are all the things that I know of in the village of Clifton that deserve observation excepting only that it was the birth place of my worthy kinsman, Mr Christopher Airey,[94] sometimes fellow of Queens College in Oxford. And in his youth (whilst Taberder there) the ingeniouse author of ~~the~~ *Fasciculus Logicorum*, whence he removed to be parson or vicar of Lemmington in Hampshire, where he maryed & had several children, both sons & daughters \ whereof John / the eldest of which, was brought by me \ ~~at my own cost~~ / in Queens College ~~being my kinsman for his and my grandmother on the mother side being 2 sisters of the name of Smyth~~ \ for my mothers sake, being related unto her, she and his father being sisters children.[95]

[90] MS: 'of the lord ~~of the lord~~.'
[91] Henry Penrith's father-in-law was Thomas Boake, described by Machell as aged 90: see above, III.121.
[92] According to Graham Fairclough's analysis, 'Twice married and twice widowed, the right of inheritance remained firmly in [Elianor Engayne's] hands until at her death it passed to her son by her first marriage (in 1364) to William Wybergh, then of St. Bees. His heirs held the Hall until late in the nineteenth century … The manor, however, with the exception only of the Hall and its demesne, was mortgaged in the middle of the seventeenth century by Thomas Wybergh to Sir John Lowther in exchange for a series of loans of money amounting by 1654 to £846 10sh … [The] Wybergh … family were apparently in a difficult financial situation (perhaps worsened by the Civil War, in which Wybergh's Royalist sympathies caused him to be … fined as a delinquent) for most of the seventeenth century: perhaps until 1706, when an agreement between the grandsons of Sir John Lowther and Thomas Wybergh finally settled the long dispute over ownership of the manor in Lowther's favour, in exchange for a "gift" of £400 to Wybergh.' Extracted from Graham Fairclough, 'Clifton Hall Cumbria. Excavations 1977-79', *CW2*, 80 (1980), 45-68, at 46.
[93] Scrap page, 26cm x 17cm. The scored-through text has been written roughly in pencil.
[94] MS: '…village of Clifton ~~Takes its name from the town of Clifton where the church stands~~ \ that deserve observation excepting only that it was the birth place of my worthy kinsman / ~~In this towne was born~~ Mr Christopher Airay…'
[95] Christopher Airay (c.1600-1670), *Fasciculus praeceptorum logicorum: in gratiam juventutis academicae compositus & typis donates*, published anonymously in 1628 (2nd edn, Oxford, 1633): see also John Stephens, 'Airay, Christopher'. *ODNB*.

Christopher Airay = Elizabeth Smyth of Browham
|
Christopher = Ann, maryed to Jo. Harisō.[96]
|
John.

John Sledall Gent = Jane, sister to Elizabeth Smith
|
Tho. Ob. s. p. Roger. Edward.
Lancelot Machell of Crakenthorp Esq. = Elizabeth, d. of Thomas Sledal & Jane Smyth, his wife
|
Hugh. Thomas. Lancelot.
Machell de Crakenthorp

[C. Evidences: Deeds and Pedigrees]

[III.139]

Extractes è Cartis Wi~~rg~~\ber/iorum de Clifton in Westmorland[97]

[III.140][98]

Locorum Cartorum Virorum[99]

Out of my manuscript folio concerneing the heraldry of W[estmorland] & C[umberland]

{33. Edward 3.}
One Thomas Dengayne, dominus de Blaterwick in festo Santi Dustani, Anno 33. Edward 3.[100] sealed with a fess between cross-crosslets fitchées, 4 of which were above the fess, 3. 2. & 1 beneath it*.

[Machell's Notes: III.140]

*MS T.M. p.113.

[III.141][101]

{21. Edward 3.} [1347-1348]
Gilbert, son of Gilbert Engayne, grants to Henry, his son, and Joan, the daughter of Robert de Lowther de Halton, & the heires of their bodyes viii messuages xiii oxgangs* of land, with the appurtenances, in the village of Clifton, which the said John de Lowther held for 6 years next ensuing, paying to him a rose rent on St John Baptists Day &c. Ĉ[102] Johe de Berwis, Johe de Haverington, John fil Rob. De Stirkland, Jo. de Bradeli, Rob. Buteler et alijs.

{31. Edward 3.} [1357-1358]
Gilbertus fil Gilberti Dengayne grants to Lord Roger [Clifford] Lord of Westmorland, by indenture the services of John Richardson, [Blank] Grymkyll, John Grymky'll de Clifton, Gilbert Johnson,

[96] Harrison? The letters of the shortened word are unclear.
[97] 'Extracts from the Deeds of the Wyberghs of Clifton in Westmorland.'
[98] It is helpful to read this and the following pages on manorial descents and property inheritance alongside *N&BI*, 416-19; Nicolson and Burn plundered Machell's information (as they admit in *N&B1*, 416: 'Several of these instruments were copied by Mr. Machel from the evidences at Clifton Hall'). They then added the fruits of their own research because, as Machell lamented (MS. III.147), 'Here 84 years ev[idences] are wanting.'
[99] This page, the previous page, and others to III.149, originally contained a running-heading, spread across the top of each page, viz. 'locorum, cartorum, virorum' [of the place, of the deeds, of the men]. It has been retained here, but deleted elsewhere.
[100] The feast of St Dunstan, 19 May 1359.
[101] Scrap page, 26cm x 17cm.
[102] Witnesses.

Rytorson[103] de Clifton, & John Storaur cum eorum corporibus et eorum sequelis {ergo Natiur}[104] for the lifetime of the said \ Lord / Roger & to the heires of the said Roger for the lifetime of the said Gilbert if the said Lord Roger dye before him. Ĉ. Thoma de Clifford, Tho de Sandeford, Hugone de la Waur, Will. de Corbrig, Henrico de Mallerstang et allijs.[105]

[Machell's Notes: III.141]

*{N.B. 2 oxgangs to a tenement.}

[III.143][106]

{38. Edward 3.} [1364-1365]
Die lune proxima ante festum Santi Marci Evangeliste,[107] William Engayne gives to William* de Wybergh, one moite of the manner of Clifton &c. which he had by the grant of Gilbert his brother for his life time to have & hold the same dureing the life of the said Gilbert. Ĉ. Domino Thoma de Stirkeland; Domino Will. de Thrilkeld militibus; Henrico de Thrilkeld tunc. Vic. West.;[108] Thoma de Sandford et alijs.

On the feast of the invention of the Holy Cross†,[109] Gilbert Engayne releaseth & quitteth‡ clame to William de Wybergh his heires & assignes, all his right & clame in ½ of the Manner of Clifton with its appurtenances &c., which William his brother had by his gift for the terme of the life of the said ~~Will~~ Gilbert. He grants also to the said William, omnes bondos et nativos ~~suos~~ meos \ bondage men / et eorum sequel[as],[110] sayeth he as well by his owne propart as of the propart of the said William, S. test. sed sigilest appeus.[111]

Die lune proxima ante Dominicam in Ramis Palmarum,[112] Gilbert the son of Gilbert Dengayne of Clifton in the County of Westmorland gives to William Wibergh an Elianore his wife and to their heires & assignes, one yearly rent of 24li sterling⸸ out of all his Lands & Tenements in the village of Clifton & in any appurtinences whatsoever thereto belonging in equal portions one halve at Pentecost, the other at St Martins in the winter.[113] To hold the same forever with power of distress for arrears. Ĉ Will. de Threlkeld; Thoma de Stirkeland, militibus; Henrico de Threlkeld, tunc Vice. West.; Tho de Blenkinsop; Thoma de Sandford; Robert de Ormesheved; Wilo de Crakinthorp; Wilo de Warthcop; Willo de Horneby; Thoma de Eterby p'sona ecclæ de Burgham.[114]

[Machell's Notes: III.143]

*William {?} de Wybergh
†{?}
‡{?}
⸸{q. the rent of Clifton.}

[III.144]

The Pedegree of the Wibers of Clifton, extracted out of their ancient evidences. T.M.*

William Wybergh, the 1ˢᵗ of this family, maryed = Elianore, the d. & heiress of Gilbert de Engayne of Clifton

[103] Unclear word.
[104] 'Both in their own bodies and those that belonged to them; therefore, Natives.' This was the service of drengage: see English the Glossary.
[105] See W.R. Whatton, 'On the Ancient Tenure called Drengage', *The Gentleman's Magazine, July 1821*, 30-34, who quotes these deeds (using *N&B* as his source) at 32-33.
[106] Scrap page, 26cm x 17cm.
[107] 'On the Monday before the festival of St Mark the Evangelist.' (The festival was on 25 April).
[108] 'Then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[109] On the legend of its discovery by St Helena, mother of the Emperor Constantine, in c.327: see Alban Butler (1711-73), *The Lives of the Saints* (London, 1866) Vol. 5: 'May'. The feast day was held on 3 May.
[110] 'All my bondmen with all belonging to them.'
[111] 'No witnesses, but the deed is sealed.'
[112] 'On the Monday before Palm Sunday.'
[113] 11 November.
[114] 'Parson of Brougham Church.'

She seemeth to have bin remaryed to: = Thomas Lowther of Askom. It seems by this she maryed agane to Thomas Lowther of Askom.

|

Thomas Wybergh of Clifton Esq., 17. Edward 4. [1477-78]

|

Thomas Wybergh Leonard Wybergh (Chaplains)

William Wybergh, son + heire apparent of Thomas Wiber Esq. maryed (17. Ed. 4.) = Margaret, the daughter of John Wharton Esq. of Kirkby Thor

[Machell's Notes: III.144]

*q. if they came out of Kentmere?

[III.145]

{39. Edward 3. [1365-1366]}
Gilbert fitz[115] Gilbert Engane obliges himselfe in 20 levers[116] of silver to Richard the son of Richard, fits Stephen (forsan Stephenson of Clifton) to which a white seal with a coat of armes but not discerneable.

{Gilbert D'engayne de Cli[fton]

|

William Wybergh = Elianore Engayne}

{40. Edward 3 3^0 Maij [1366]} {Natives}
Gilbert D'engayne gives to William Wybergh and Elianore his wife & the heires of them lawfully begotten, his whol halfe of halfe of the manner of Clifton in Dominico & in Servicio eum servivijs liberorum Tenentium et cum nativis et eorum sequelis ad dictum meietatem medietatis prædicti maner' pertinentis, and with 7 messuages and 14 oxgangs or bovates of l[and] with their appertinences. Ĉ. Domino Jac. de Pykering milite; Henrico de Threlkeld, &c.[117]

{40. Edward 3.} [17. October 1366]}
Ad fest. Sancti Laurence[118] a French deed importing that Gilbert Dengayne gave to William Wybergh the 4th part of the manner of Clifton, and the 4th part of the miln at Clifton &c. for the terme of the life of the said Gilbert.

{47. Edward 3.} [1373]
At the feast of St Martin in winter,[119] a French deed importing that Adam de Corry tooke to farme of William de Wybergh & Elianore his wife, their manner of Clifton for vii years.

{4. Richard 2. [1380-81] Natives}
John de Dufton, Chaplain, gave to Elianore, who was the wife of William de Wybergh & Thomas de Lowther ~~cartae desiderantur spatium 87 annor[um]~~ of Ascome[120] his man[or] of Clifton cum Redittibus et servicijs liberorum; & nativis* et eorum sectis et sequellis & with the miln, with meadows woods etc. which he had of the gift of the foresaid Elianore to have all the foresaid, to their

[115] Fitz: Anglo-Norman word for 'son' in patronymic designations, in which it was followed by the name of a parent in the uninflected genitive. Some of these survive as surnames, e.g. *Fitzherbert*, *Fitzwilliam*. *OED*.
[116] From Livre: any of a number of coins or units of account used in France from the 8th-18th centuries. *OED*.
[117] 'Gilbert Dengayne gives to William Wybergh & Elianore his wife, & the heirs of them lawfully begotten, his whol halfe of halfe of the ma[nor] of Clifton in Demesne service with the service of the free tenants, and with the natives in their followings that belong to the said half of the half of the aforesaid manor, and with the mes[suages] and 14 oxgangs or Bovates of L[and] with their appertinences. Witnesses: Lord James of Pykering, Knight, Henry of Threlkeld etc.'
[118] MS: 'Ad fest. Sancti Laurence ~~Ad fest. Sancti Laurence~~.' At the feast of St Lawrence. [10 August].
[119] 11 November.
[120] Nicolson and Burn agree that in 1380-81 Elianore was a widow, having been married twice: *N&BI*, 417.

heirs & assignes of le cap. Lord of the fee etc. with general warranty to the said Elian[ore] & Thomas, their Heires and assignes for ever. T[estibus] d[omi]no Gilb[er]to de Culwen milite, Hugone de Salkeld, Joh[ann]e de Bradeley, Gilb[er]to de Wyndergh, Henrico Watson, etc.[121]

[Machell's Notes: III.145]

*{Natives. {~~1, 22, 14, 9 38~~} {18, 14 [?] 36}

[III.147]

Engaynes seale de Clifton apud carte penes Thomas Sandford de Askam.[122]
{14. Richard 2. Oct. 4. [1390]}
William Engayne[123] gives to William Ferrour[124] of Clifton all his lands & tenements, meadow, wood, pasture &c. in the village of Clifton, to have & to hold of &c. forever, with general warranty. Ĉ. Domino William de Threlkeld; Domino Xtho de Moraceby: militibus alijs, with the same seale as the first.

{14. Richard 2. 6. October [1390]}
Thomas de Lowthre de Ascume releaseth to William Ferrour of Clifton all his right &c. – which he had &c. – in all lands & tenements &c. which the foresaid William had of the gift & feofment of William Engayne in the village of Clifton &c.

{17. Edward 4. 14. of May [1477] Dryngage acre}[125]
Edward Wherton, Rector of Merton,[126] & William Marshall, Chaplane, gave to William Wiburgh, son & heire apparent of Thomas Wybergh of Clifton, Esq. and to Margaret his wife, the daughter of John Wherton of Kirkby Thore Esquire, 2 tenements in Clifton with lands & meadows adjoyneing to them in the tenure of Thomas Raper at \ our / will, with their appertenences. One acre of land in Clifton called Dryngage acre {!} with its appurtenences, & one parcel of demane land in Clifton called Over Scalebergh &c.; All which were lately had of the gift of Thomas Wybergh. To have & to hold. And the foresaid tenements, lands &c. to the foresaid W. Wybergh & Margaret his wife & the children lawfully begot betwixt them; and for defect thereof to remaine to the foresaid T. Wiber & his heires forever. Ĉ. Lancelot Threlkeld milite; T. Wherton armiger &c.

{15. Henry VII} [1499-1500][127]
T. Wybergh armiger in an obligation to stand to an award about som lands in Clifton controverted by Lord Dakers.

[Machell's Notes: III.147]

	~~8~~
~~H. 4~~	~~14~~
~~H. 5~~	~~9~~
~~H. 6~~	~~36~~
	~~17~~
This should not be crossed out.	

Here 84 years ev[idences] are wanting.

[121] '~~The deeds are missing for a period of 87 years~~ of Ascome his man[or] of Clifton with rents and services of the free tenants; & with the natives and their suits of court and followings & with the miln, with meadows woods etc. which he had of the gift of the foresaid Elianore to have all the foresaid, to their heirs & assignes of le cap. Lord of the fee etc. with general warranty to the said Elian[ore] & Thomas, their Heires and assignes for ever. Witnesses Lord Gilbert of Culwen, Knight, Hugo of Salkeld, John of Bradeley, Gilbert of Wyndergh, Henry Watson, etc.'
[122] 'Engayne seal of Clifton on a deed in the possession of Thomas Sandford of Askham.'
[123] Uncle of Elianore, see also *N&BI*, 418.
[124] Second husband of Elianore, see also *N&BI*, 418.
[125] 'Drengage Acre'.
[126] Edward Wharton, rector of Long Marton.
[127] 1499-1500. A line of illegible scored-through text (5cm) follows here.

{Edward 5. Richard. Desideratum.}[128]

[III.148]

{Wybergh}	William Wybergh \ Esq. / son of William Wybergh of Clifton Esq.: 2^0 Henry VIII	= Margaret [Blank]
	|	
	John Wybergh, son & heir of William: 5. Henry VIII	
	|	
{? Jeffry Wiber}	Thomas Wibergh, son & heire of John and cosan & heire of William: anno 5^0 Henrici VIII. Tooke tow.[129] He is writ ~~esq~~ gentleman 25. Henry VIII, but Esquire afterwards: Sc. 37. of Henry VIII, 4. of Edward VI & the 1^t of Queen Mary, & anno dom. 1558.	= Elizabeth the daughter of Jeffray Lancaster of Melkynthorp, gentleman {He is writ sometimes Wyberght, sometimes Wybergh: Sc. a. 37. Henry VIII!}

[III.149]

{4^0 Maij 2. Henry VIII} [1510]
Thomas Wybergh, Leonard Wybergh, chaplains, and John Vaux, Gentleman, release clame to William Wyberght, son of William Wyberght of Clifton in the county of Westmorland Esq., for terme of life in 3 tenements in Clifton.

{15 Maij 5. Henry VIII} [1513]

William Wybergh of Clifton Esq.	= Margaret
|	
John Wybergh & William {3 more}	6. H. 8.
|	
Thomas Wybergh, s. & h. of John & c. & heire of William[130]	= Elizabeth Lancaster of Melkynthorp

A covenant of marriage between William Wyberght of Clifton Esq. and Geffrey Lancaster of Melkynthorpe, gentleman.[131] That Thomas Wybergh, cosan & heire of William Wybergh and son & heire of John Wyberght, son & heire of the foresaid William Wyberght, shall wede Elizabeth Lancaster, daughter of the said Jeffray – X^{li} portion.

{March 25. 8. Henry VIII [1534]}
An award ~~betwixt~~ of the right honourable Henry Earle of Cumberland betwixt Sir John Lowther, Knight, & Thomas Wibergh, Gentleman; that he should keep his inclosed groundes, any pretences of Sir John Lowther notwithstanding.

{1. January, 37. Henry VIII. [1546]. Thomas Wyber Esq.}
Thomas Wyber~~gh~~ of Clifton in the county of Westmorland Esq., lets a lease of all the High Close to Roger Lancaster of Clyfton, Gent. And Edmond Smith, yeo[man].

{14. Feb. in anno 4. Edward VI. [1550]. Thomas Wyber Esq.}
Henry, E[arl] of Cumberland (whose seale appendant is a draggons head issuing out of a coronet, as is

[128] Desired, because there is a gap in the evidences.
[129] 'Tooke tow' is joined with a curved line to the word 'gentleman' in the adjacent column.
[130] The descent is placed in a margin.
[131] Before this sentence there is 2cm of scored-through illegible text.

yet used) exchangeth 2 roodes of land in the High Close with Thomas Wyber of Clifton Esq., for 3 rood of waistland on the sou[th] part of Clifton.

{13. Feb. 1^0 Marie. [1554]}
Thomas Fallowfield de Magna Strykland,[132] armig[er], et Edward Fallowfield, fil[ius] et heres gener[osus] ten[ura] et fir[ma] oblig[ati].[133] Thomæ Wyber de Clifton, armiger; et Edward Birbeck de Horneby Esq. in 200 marces to keep them harmless from an other bond.

{14. December 1558. Thomas Wyber}
Thomas Wyber of Clifton Esq. letteth Brownhow to John Cowper for certain years.

[III.150]

An addition to the pedigree by the information of old Thomas Boake ætat. 90.[134]

Thomas Wyber = Matilda (daughter of Jo. Irton) whose unckle Mr Irton* of Isell gave her a portion.
|
1. Thomas Wyber (of Clifton Hall) = daughter of [blank] Salkeld
2. William — Ann W.
3. Redman — Katherine: wife of Captaine Nysbut, a Scot
4. John
5. Anthony

|
1. Thomas Wiber, an attorney at law = Mary, the daughter of Lancelot Symson of Penrith, an attorney at law by [blank] d. & h. of Musgrave of Musgrave Hall in Penrith aforesaid
2. Readman — Isabel
3. William — Elizabeth
|
1. Thomas Wiber ætat. 4^r ann. 1689
2. Mary

[Machell's Notes: III.150]
*Argent a fess Sable & in chief 3 martlets Gules.
Barrs of 6 Or & Sable upon the second and last bar. 3 mullets of the first. Lib. Arm. Penes J.T. p.21. But in my booke, which I got of old Fawcet, it is Barrs of 6, Or & Sable. There are mullets of the 1^t upon the second & 4^{th} bar, which difference mayhap by blazoning at large thus: he beareth bars of 6, Or & Sable; 3 mullets of the 1^t. But in Mr Knight booke, which I most incline to because the armes there quarter Engaine & ergo certainly belong to this family, namely:

[132] Great Strickland.
[133] 'Thomas Fallowfield of Great Strickland, Squire, and Edward Fallowfield his son and heir, Gentleman, bound by an agreement on their holding and estate.'
[134] This pedigree contains additions (in round brackets), taken from a pedigree: MS.III.153, which has not been transposed because it is identical to this one, apart from the additions.



Figure 1.9.11. Wybergh Pedigree. III.150.



Figure 1.9.12. 'In Mr Knight booke … the armes there quarter Engaine & ergo certainly belong to this family' III.150.

[III.153]

{8. <u>The descent of manner</u>} {See Inquisition temp. Edward 3. [1327-1377].}
I am to enquire whether there was not a family here of the name of Clifton befor Engayne came; which family seems to have held in drengage & to have passed off some certane lands to be free of \ from / that slavery, ~~for~~ which tho the Wibers came to injoy by purchase or otherwise in \ after / ages; yet the name stil continued; for in the settlement upon the marriage of ~~the marriage of~~ Thomas Wiber of Clifton Esq. & Margaret, the daughter of John Wharton Esq., Lord of the manner of K[irkby Thore] there is mention made \ amongst other things / of one acre of land in \ the Lordship of / Clifton calld Drengage Acre {ex inf. autograph penes Thomas Wiber, dat 14. May, 17. Edward 4. [1477].}[135]

[III.154]

So much concerneing the parish of Clifton, which is but one constablewick, having 2 constables belonging there: one out of Clifton & another out of Clifton Dikes.

[135] Ex autograph in the custody of Thomas Wybergh, dated 14 May Edward IV [1477].

[Machell's Notes: III.154]

Query of whom descended Geffry Wiber, the attorney at law?[136]

{Brownhow at Cliburn Ring; Gilbrow at Melkinthorp Town End ~~and~~ Sub Close (How Carle\s/, formerly a dwelling).}

{Cat Skar is in Clifton outer the […][137] and a little lower on the […] side is Hews Crag.[138] The other Hee Close Skar}

{~~Brow hal~~: Roll – Hodgson – Tabot H. sold it.}[139]

[136] See pedigree, III.148.

[137] The text here has perished.

[138] Hughs Crag: see III.129, 'Perambulation', above.

[139] A short paragraph below this one gives the following, 'Court Ga[r]th where [3 words illegible] at S. corner of the Town – a pond near it.' The words (placed at the foot of the page) are very faint.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 10]

[Parish of Crosby Garrett]

[III.166B]

Crosby Garret



Figure 1.10.1. Directions from Crosby Garrett Church. III.166B.

[Machell's Initial Notes]

Schoole.
So called from the place where the church standeth &c.
Soyle in general.
Manner of tythe.
Glebe.
Val[ue] of land.
It is bounded on the N. with [Blank].
Little Musgrave a part of this parish which cannot com to the church, but there [is] another parish.[1]
N.B. A close at the W. e[nd] of the glebe belonging to Great Musgrave ~~to on~~ the other side of Eden, called Step Ends does belong \ pays / to this parish of Garrat.

[I.453][2]

To Crosby Garrett church belongs Crosby Garrett, Little Musgrave &c. I should have thought that it had bin Called Garrett from the Hill on which the Church stands: but I finde it in old evidences Crosby Gerrard. Query? whether the church be not dedicated to some Saint of that name.[3]

[III.166A]

Crosby consists of about 40 families: freeholds III, some by indenture at 8^{d} fine, the rest arbitrary \ and 3 stragling houses. / has had a demaine – as appears by the groundes calld the <u>Maines</u> {as Brough Manes, Sowerby Manes, Kaber Manes} west ~~side~~ end of the church. But no Hall ever heard of. They talke of the Crosbyes having bin anciently Lords of the place. But tis certaine the Musgraves have long injoyd it by the armes on the Quier. It now belong to John Davison of Blakestone in Bishop,[4] Esq., who had a mariage by Mary, daughter & heir of Sir Richard Musgrave, eldest son of Sir Philip, who purchased it before of his father. Court Barron \ in / any house of the lordship –has weifs, strays & boons &c.[5]

---

[1] Crosby Garrett parish comprises the townships of Crosby Garrett and Little Musgrave, but they are separated [thereby forming a 'detached parish'] by the intervening chapelry of Soulby. See Samuel Lewis, *A Topographical Dictionary of England comprising the several counties, cities, boroughs, corporate and market towns, parishes, and townships* … 7th Edn (London, 1848), 734.
[2] Also numbered p.14.
[3] See *N&BI*, 530, for textual similarities.
[4] Bishopric of Durham.
[5] For the meaning of the terms 'waif and stray', and 'boons', see the English Glossary.

[III.166B]

The Perambulation

Crosby Garret is bounded on the north & east with Kirkby Stephen parish, on the S. with Raveonstondale parish, and on the W. with Orton, Little Ashby & Warcop parishes.
Beginning at Waterhouses, thence \ S.E. / down the highway (which leads from Ashby to Kirkby through Soulby cow pasture) to Crosby mill; Thence S. up Smardale beck to Smardale stone-bridge, where Russendale[6] parish comes in, joyning to this and Kirkby Stephan. Thence W. (up a little runlet or rill of water called Scale beck) to a rock calld Cowlin stone alias C\r/oblinstones. Thence S.W. through Hufell mire, streight over to the beginning of moss to old dike-steed.[7] Thence S. west by the said dike \ steed / till you com at Raset Sike*. Thence W. down the said sike till you come at Blew Tarne[8] alias Sunbiging Tarne, a ¼ of which is due to this lordship – Thence N. \ where Orton found ~~in~~ & Asby com in by a streight line to Keldhead where Ceüke Beck springs. Thence N.E. down the ~~Keld Beck~~ said beck to Waterhouses where wee began.

And note as above:
{Divisions I} There are 2 Lordships in this parish: Sc. Crosby & Little Musgrave.
In Crosby is the church & a school in it, part being set of[f] by that purpose by Dr Potter, bishop of Carleol.[9] It seems calld Crosby from an high cross at a place calld Langcross, 3 twelve score [paces] E. from the church in Kirkby way.[10]
The church dedicated to St Andrew is a pretty stone building but without a steeple, on the top of an high mount or hill.[11]

{Church}[12]
{Body 13, quire 10: Long.
Body 10. Qu. 6: Brod.
neat low but substantial pillars.
Arch[es] betwixt, 3 circular.[13]
Musgraves Armes in stone, old – west End of the quire.}[14]
{James Scaife.}[15]

[Machell's Notes, III.166B]

*{Note here that Crosby clames Raset Pike &c.}
{Succession & family of Musgrave.}
{How many freeholds in W[arcop] & quote Lord Whartons tenements.}[16]
An account of Stean Rase.
Query of Marshalls priviledge in Kirkby [Stephen] and the L[…][17] stone in the church.

[6] Ravenstonedale.
[7] MS: 'streight over to the ~~old dike~~ \ ~~end of~~ beginning of / moss to old dike-steed.'
[8] Blea Tarn.
[9] Barnabas Potter, bishop of Carlisle from 1629 to 1642: David Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142.
[10] The road to Kirkby Stephen.
[11] The church is indeed on top of a steep hill. It has a small 13th-century tower (an enclosed belfry) corbelled out over a middle buttress: see Hyde & Pevsner, 307.
[12] Information relating to the church is written in pencil and obscured by the right-hand margin.
[13] The text here has perished in a fold of the paper, but see below.
[14] This last phrase is placed near the binding and is partly illegible.
[15] Machell's Informant.
[16] This note is written at right-angles to the page: some unclear words have been omitted.
[17] Unclear word.

[III.166A][18]

[The Church]

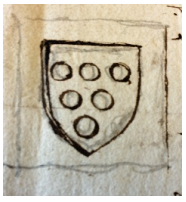


Figure 1.10.2. Musgrave Arms. III.166A.

At the N. end, on the side of the Town.
The Church \ is / dedicated to St Andrew (on which day their feast was kept).[19] It is a pretty \ tite / building on the top of a very high hill or mount, ergo sometimes calld Crosby Hill, but in writeings Crosby Garret; perhaps upon the said occasion, the tops & highest rooms in houses being called garrets. There is no steeple, but 2 little bells hung in [blank]; a clock in the church; one row of pillars with 3 circular arches – the pillars low but thick & substanciall & well carved on the capitalls. It is long in the body: 13 passes, broad 10; the quier long, 10, & broad, six; the seates in the quier well wainscoted & the altar raled. At the east end of [it] on the outside above the window are Musgraves armes which looke almost as old as the church. It stands ~~east~~ \ W. / from \ K[irkby Stephen] 2 miles; from Apelby S.E. 6; from Brough S.W. 4 miles. / {Bea\c/on hill S.W. ½ mile ab Ecclesia.}

{The parsonage house is S. west just under the hill within a stone throw.

[Tithes]
{Hay money for corn tithe. Sad!}[20]
{Nout Geld & sergiant oates[21] by som; all but demane.}

[Chapel]
There has bin a chaple on this side the water directly west from Smeardale Hall[22] distant ½ a quarter, at a place called Chapple Well, which springs in the chaple [garth].[23] It will cuer ever[y] scab on man or horse. T.[24] The ruines of which [chapel] do yet appear \ about 1 yard high in som places: 17 long, 5 brod. The well springs on the S. side at 6 yards distance on the right hand the way to Smerdale. / But no houses near it, which makes me suppose it to have bin an hermitage. There are steps over to it from Smardale Hall.

[School]

The schoole is a little piece taken of \ the church / at the W. end of north Ile, & enclosed with good wainscot raile & ballister, which is rather an ornament to the church than otherwise; which was formerly don by the permission of Bishop Potter. The endowment, being 5^{li} 6s and 6d per annum, was

[18] Scrap page, 37cm x 21cm, folded into the volume
[19] 30 November.
[20] A very poor exchange.
[21] Nout geld was a manorial rent, originally paid in cattle, but often commuted. Sergeant corn was a feudal levy paid in corn. *OED*. It was typically paid by all customary and freehold tenants: Michael Bush, *The Pilgrims' Complaint: A Study of Popular Thought in the Early Tudor North* (Abingdon, 2009). Nicolson and Burn refer to it as 'the serjeants oats or bailiff corn', *N&B1*, 292.
[22] Smardale Hall.
[23] MS: 'There has bin a chaple \ on this side the water directly west from / Smeardale Hall \ distant ½ a quarter ~~at the beckside within this lordship in~~ \ at a place called ~~Chapple Garth~~ / Chapple Well, which springs in the chaple.'
[24] Perhaps Testis, i.e. witness.

settled upon it by one Mr Fallowfield, Rector of Crosby,[25] and several others in the town & parish in manner following:[26]

[III.165]

To the School of Crosby Garret

Imprimis Anno Domini 1629.[27]	
\ Given the / 12[0] April, by Richard Fallowfield, }	
Parson of Crosby Garret 3[li] : use to goe to the maintenance of a schoolmaster there}	3. 0. 0.
and when there is no schoolmaster, to be given to the poore. }	
The said 3[li] remaine to the said use for ever. }	
Item by	
{Henry Robinson to the same use	0. 6. 8.
Thomas Wilson	0. 13. 4.
James Skaife by an order to the same use	0. 10. 0.
Margaret, wife of James Richardson	0. 6. 8.
Margaret Skaife	0. 13. 4.
Thomas Johnson by order the same of	1. 0. 0.
Ed. Skaife	1. 0. 0.
John Skaife, parish clerke	0. 10. 0.
The overplus of the schoolhouse moneys by consent	0. 6. 3
Humphrey Bell	1. 0. 0.}

1648.
Given by John Symson of Sandford to the use of the school at Crosby-Garret and Warcop, 5s per annum, to be paid one year to Crosby and another to Warcop, due \ to be paid / every Candlemas out of the lands of Rob. Peart & Bartholmew Skaif of Sandford. And for want of a school at Crosby the said 5s to be payed to Warcop. And for want of a school at Warcop to be payed to Crosby Garret. The first year of the payment to Crosby was in the year of our Lord, 1648.

1662. April 26.
Given by [Blank] Richardson at his death to the use of the school, 2[li], & for repareing the wooden bridge in the way to Smerdale, 1[li].

1664. June 7.
Given by James Richardson, balif, by his last will & testament for keeping a school master for advanceing learneing, 2[li].

1667. April 8.
By Reginald Robinson in his last will &c. unto the schoolstock & poore of Crosby Garret, 10s: Sc. 5s to either.

1668.
Per John Skaife by his last will &c. to the school stock, for advanceing learneing, 1[li], & to Smerdale wood-bridge, 10s.
1668. February 6.
By the general consent of all the inhabitants of Crosby Garret (except James Bell, Thomas Taylor, Thomas Robinson of Pots & Henry Robinson) to the schoolstock of Crosby Garret for the advanceing of good learneing, 4[li] 4s,[28] which they received of George Richardson of Mazin-slack for his

[25] Richard Fallowfield, rector of Crosby Garrett from 1595 to 1636. CCED.
[26] MS: 'which was formerly don by the permission of ~~Endowmt~~ Bishop Potter. The endowment, ~~whereof was settled~~ being ~~about~~ 5[li] 6s and 6 per annum, was was settled upon it by one Mr Fallowfield, Rector of Crosby, and several other in the town & parish in manner following.'
[27] Most of this table is reproduced in *N&BI*, 532.
[28] 4 guineas.

priviledge in the fell or common of Crosby Garret, and for a little parcel of ground for a garth beside his house. & it is the desire of the said inhabitants that the said summ be imployed for the maintenance of a schoolmaster at Crosby Garret for ever. 1676.

[III.166]

1676. July 6.
Given by Elizabeth Robinson, widow, & Reynald Robinson, administrators to the above said Henry Robinson to the schoolstock of Crosby Garret &c., 5s 4d, being the whol which the said Henry Robinson received & reserved of his part of the sum received of the said George Richardson &c. {See more & below.}

1682. April 17.
Given by Reynald Robinson (younger brother of the foresaid Henry) unto the schoolstock &c. by his last will &c., 10^{li}, & 10^{li} more \ the use thereof / to be distributed every Easter to the poore of the parish.

1683. April 17.
Given by ~~George Robertson~~ \ James Bell / by his last Will & Testament, 50s to the use of the schoolstock and 50s more to the poore.

1676.
William Robertson by his last Will & Testament 10. 0. 0.

1684.
Given by Thomas Bowland by his last Will & Testament &c., 40^{li} to the use of the teaching schoolmaster of Crosby Garret forever, and 40^{li} to the use of the poore.

Out of the Register Booke

The use of the whole stock now, at 6^{li} in the hundred, comes to	5^{li} 4s 0d.
To which add Sandford every other year	0. 5. 0

And they agree give him quarterage, 1s 6d per annum towards his table.
Which I mention at large as an honourable memorial of their pious intentions; & to \ be / a precedent of the like munificence for advancement of learneing in other places.

Schoolmaster: Richard Lademan,[29] who succeeded Edw. Cleseby, who succeeded Christopher Granger, 24 years master.[30]
Mr Dento[n], rector, succeeded ~~Musgrave~~ \ Edmond Maleveres[31] / who succeeded Fallowfield.

[III.163][32]

{Little Musgrave Lordship}

There is a \ little / demane belonging to it. They have built a little house on part of a purchased tenement, where they keep Court Barron and have weif & stray. Boones &c. accustomed.
They say that Little & Great Musgrave were both one lordship till Sir Phillip dyed – that he gave Little Musgrave & Soulby to his son, Sir Christopher.[33]

[29] Richard Laidman was licensed schoolmaster on 3 June 1691; Edward Cleasby was schoolmaster from 1678 to 1689. CCED.
[30] Christopher Grainger was schoolmaster at Crosby Garret from (at least) 1664 to 1675. CCED. CCED records for this school begin in 1664.
[31] Edmund Mauleverer (or Mauliverer) succeeded Richard Fallowfield in 1662 but resigned in 1663. Machell noted the appointment of Thomas Denton (1663-91) but failed to mention that Denton succeeded a parliamentary appointee, Christopher Jackson: see *N&BI*, 531; see also Bishops' Registers, CAC(C). DRC1/4: 'Maulverer's surrender of Crosby Garrett to Bishop Stern' (p.238), and 'Denton's admission and institution into the Rectory of Crosby Garrett, November 1663' (p.239); see also CCED.
[32] Great and Little Musgrave entries are both on this page.
[33] Sir Philip Musgrave, 2nd Baronet (1607-1678).

{There is a bottom sometimes standing with water that comes down from Bleatarne to Little Musgrave, where it is somewhat mossy, so might give name from the 1ˢ intack draining the moss. No Hall in memory. N. east from the church about 2 miles.}
There is a bridge between Little & Great Musgrave: Sc. at Great Musgrave.

{Families & Houses}
Families: 11 \ or 12 / families, of which freeholds, 1 freehold (besides the Lord), the rest arbitrary to Christopher Musgrave of Hartley Castle who hath also a little house here, 2 storyes high (covered only with straw), which was purchased lately by Sir Philip Musgrave. The lands perteineing serve for a demaine but where the old Hall & old demaine stood is not now known. {3 houses on the east side & 9 or 10 on the west.} And 3 stragling houses: Plulands,[34] Ulbanke,[35] Tuet Hil.[36]

[Things Remarkable]

[III.166A]

[Stone]
{Quarries of limestone which rise as large as a table. Cowling stone; rud huen.}[37]

[III.163]

[Fairy Beads]
[1.] Pitts of rud near Tuet Hill N.W. with fairy beads,[38] mostly read clay; & som blew & white clay in the mires under the blew.

[I.539]

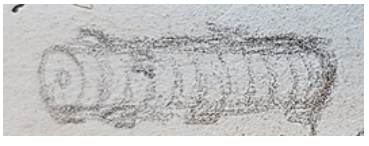


Figure 1.10.3. 'Fairy Beads'. I.539.

[2.] {The krest[39] of a Tobaco pipe stopper[40] and reserved for that use, which have knots like bristles of a Rudd snagged of, & therefore greatly resemble wood. But grow in small joyntes fixed one to another like an heap of cakes, ~~whence~~ which without much[41] force may [be] divided; & therefore th[ey] call em Fairy bedes.}

[III.163]

[Great Store]
Crosby Common feeds sheep in winter & fats them in sommer, & is such sound earth that they never rot on it.

---

[34] Plowlands.
[35] Hull Bank.
[36] Towfit Hill.
[37] See 'a rock calld Cowlin stone alias C\r/oblinstones.' III.166B.
[38] Fairy beads: the disc-shaped ring-like stem ossicles of fossil crinoids (encrinites). *OED*. 'The remains of encrinites are in some places so abundant as to form thick beds of limestone… and when these, hard as marble, are polished they present a most beautiful surface …The little joints of the stems are often found detached, with a hole through the centre; these are known as Fairy Beads, and as St Cuthbert's Beads; and when strung together were used as a rosary': William and Robert Chambers (eds), *Chambers's Information for the People, 5th Edn, Vol. 1*. (London and Edinburgh, 1874), Geology, 28.
[39] The word is indistinct. It is possibly a variant of 'crest', the head, summit, or top of anything. *OED*. But query this (as Machell often remarked).
[40] Machell is probably referring to a pipe tamper. The first recorded examples were made in the 17th century. Although wood and bone examples are common, 'It would be surprising if, apart from the materials mentioned, almost anything that could be cut, moulded or generally fashioned had not at some time or another been made into tobacco stoppers that now lie neglected, their purpose unknown.' Roger Fresco-Corbu, 'Stoppers for the Pipe Smoker', *Country Life*, 8 June 1961, 1343-45.
[41] MS. 'must'.

{Great store of crawfish (!) in Crosby mil beck near the mill. & more plenty in Ceüke beck.

[Birds]
Bitterns that build in the bog called Sods, W. of the town.
Sparrow hawks build in Milflat wood S.E. 1 mile.}
Wild duck build in Sunbigines Tarn, Smerdale Gill.
Morecocks on Crosby Fell.

{About 20 years [ago], Lancelot Lancaster sayes that he was [asked] by a neighbour to shoote a strange bird which was feeding on a dead horse in Sods Close, which ~~he broke~~ beat all the doggs off from the horse. He broke his wing with shot, but could not take hold on him till he pressed his wing down with the but of his gun – and so tooke him up & tyed up his bill. He was as bigg as a goose \ & much like one / but his beake was like a bitterns in shape, only thicker & shorter – of the colour of a goose bill.[42] His neck was as long as a goose neck but as thick as a mans leg, being extended with the carion that he had devoured. The colour of his neck & body \ & tale / was white, his wings very black. His legs coulered & webd like a goose. {John Wilson, living, took it for an eagle and calld him to kill it.}[43] {Memorandum that Thomas Hutchinson of Little Musgrave killd an osprey of[f] the Quire of Great Musgrave. It had one foot with the talons like an hawk; the other webbd; above 50 years since.}

[III.164][44]

The same men, Hutchinson & Wilson, saw a white raven, as white as milke, which they could not believe to be one, tho he[45] had the shape, but yet his crookeing as he flew convincd them – 20 years since.

[III.166A]

[Bones]
{A little flat at Hen-Fell yate on the right hand as you go to Kendal, S.W. ab Ecclesia. Bones found in it \ about 4 yards about / Eadem temp. Richard Granger.[46] \ & west from this ¼, Raset Pike,[47] clamed here bones as many as filld his breches to Eden Hall by Sir Philips man.[48] Michael Scots made Apr'an string.}[49]
{A man in Crosby calld Lancelot has 24 fingers & toes compleat & perfect. The redundance is in the little toes.}[50]

[42] MS: '… but his beake was like a bitterns \ in shape only / ~~but~~ thicker & shorter & ~~yallow like~~ \ of the colour of /a goose bil.'
[43] Perhaps (noting the next sentence) this was an osprey.
[44] MS.III.165 contains the following struck-through numbers: {7.84, 5.82, 6.83, 7.84, 8.87, 9.88, 9.76, 1.27, 2.9.8, 3.62}.
[45] MS: 'the'.
[46] 'At the same time': informant: Richard Granger.
[47] Rayseat.
[48] A complicated margin-note, which could perhaps read: 'Bones found in it at the same time [as] bones found west from this a quarter [of a mile at] Raset Pike, as many as filled his breeches, [and taken] to Edenhall by Sir Philips man: ex inf. Richard Granger'.
[49] 'Michael Scots made Apr'an string.' This is difficult; some readers will understand the meaning of it, but this editor does not. Was Machell referring to 'a prang', i.e. a forked tool like a hay-fork (see *OED*) to carry the bones? Alternatively, was the string from around the knees of someone's breeches used to carry the bones to Edenhall? Many thanks to Haydn Charlesworth for the last (highly imaginative) theory.
[50] 'Redundancy': superfluity, excess; abundance. *OED*.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 11]

[Parish of Crosby Ravensworth]

[I.457]

Crosby Raven
{See a description inter quaeres}[1]

[**Machell's Initial Notes**]

{Parts of Crosby}
To Crosby Ravensworth Church belong Crosby Ravensworth \ with / Banke and Row, Birbeck Fells, \ Salter Ing houses / Maulds Meaburne, & Regill.

The Church is dedicated to St Lawrence (Mr Sanderson)[2] – & the impropriation was purchased by the Bellinghams of Gathorn in the time of Henry 8. or Edward 6. But Sir Philip Musgrave of Musgrave & Hartley has the presentation to the vicaridge. On the east this parish is the parish of Askby, west Shap, north Morland, south Oreton.

The name
Robert de Crosby conveys land in Gasegill Field lyeing betwixt the Rivilett of Hellergil & Southepoll; this in the time of Richard de Blenkinsop who lived Anno 1. Edward 1. [1272-1273].

Lordships 1. Regill \ & Regill Grange / [2.] Mauds Meaburne. [3.] Crosseby.

{Meabourn} {Thornburrow family}
I finde one Rowland Thorburrow de Meaborne Esq. But whether it be of Meaborne \ Kings, / or if soe whether of this which is Mauds M. or of Kings Meaburn \ in Morland parish / [I] have not yett determined; neither in what Kings Reigne have I sett downe in my notes except Temp. Richard 2. [1377-1399]. Circa forsan 9. ejus Regni, sed q.? if the Act for esquires was made so soon.[3]

1. {Regill}
Reagill was anciently writt Renegill & gave name to a family. Robert de Renegil, 27. Henry 3. [1242-1243] {test. è cart. Antiq.}[4] Regill with the g\r/ainge belonged formerly to Shapp Abby; & now since the desolution, to the Whartons ~~Barrons~~ of Wharton Hall, Barons of this kingdome.

2. Mauds Meaburne, belongs now to the Lowthers.[5] Dr Addison \ borne there. /

3. Crosseby Ravensworth, Banke & Row, which \ are / parts of the same Lordship, belong[ed] formerly to the Pickerings (there is a parke there). Afterwards to the Lowthers of Lowther, & old Sir John bestowed it in Dower with his Daughter to Mr Dodsworth of Yorkeshire; & he dyeing lately Anno [blank][6] gave it to one Baly the son of Mr Baly of Penrith, a practitioner in physick who lived att Penrith & was commonly called Dr Baly; which Baly was his servant; & behaved himself so well that tis ~~master~~ thought he could not bestow it better.

[1] 'See a description among the queries.'
[2] Machell's informant. For confusion relating to the dedication of the church see *N&B1*, 495.
[3] 'Around his 9th year [1385-86]. But query if the Act for 'Esq' [as style] was made so soon.'
[4] 'Witness: an ancient deed.'
[5] In 1587 the Lowthers tried to build a Court House on Meaburn Green, but the tenants, led by one Bess Fletcher, pulled it down and attacked the builders. J.T Relph, *Chronicles of Crosby Ravensworth* (Crosby Ravensworth, 1992), 25.
[6] Sir John Lowther lived from 1605 to 1675.

[I.458]

No chapels.

In this parish are these villages – 1. Crosby Ravenswath; 2. Maulds Meaburne 3. Gilse, a little village. 4. Oddendale, a dale. 5. Harberwen, an Hamlet of 9 or 10 houses. 6. Wickerslacke, an Hamlet of 8 or 9. 7. Regill, a little village, whereto Grainge [is] the demaisne. 8. Drivevers[7] – an hamlet of 4 or 5 – & Gathorn Hall belonging to the Bellingham[s] – Mr John Lowther maryed the Heiress – & Craketrees, a single house freehold of 40^{li} per annum, which ~~as I remember~~ belonged to Lancaster. Mrs Lancaster a widow lived upon it in the time of King James [1603-1625], her eldest son then liveing upon an estate which he had at Sockbridge; by whome I suppose it was sold to Dr Dawes, & so was Regil-Grainge much about the same time by Mr Thomas Wharton, who or whose ancestour had it of the House of Wharton.

{The Rectory}
There is 5^{li} 10. 8^{d} paid since the sale of the kings foe[8] farme Rents by James Bellingham of Leavins Esq. out of the Rectory of Crosby Ravensworth: è Lit. à M^{ro} Jacson de Schol. Apelbiæ: Dat. May 12. 77.[9] {?} q. What foe farme Rents.

[III.171][10]

I.
Crosby Ravens.

Crosby is a vicaridge in the diocese of Carleol rated in the First Fruits Office at 7. 13. 4., payeth tenths 15^{s} 4^{d} & for procurations & synodals [blank][11]

{1.} Parish Bounder

{East}*
It is bounded on the east with the parish of St Laurence Apelby, ~~from which tis divide~~ beginning at Seat Hill and thence proceeding to Gathorne groundes \ in a direct line / till you com at the wall calld Harding; thence by hedges and walls till you com at a Sike which runns by Gathorn Hall {½ a mile below it} where Asby parish begins; so up the sike till you com at Gathorn-Ash-Trees; thence up the moore in a streight line to the 2 standing stones; thence up Ashgate to an hill called Lingy-Low, & so to Scar-Top, a little S.E. from Pickering Close†. On the south it is bounded with Orton parish beg[inn]ing at the Scar-Top aforesaid & so directly westward by the S[c]arr Top as heaven water divides till you com at the 4 or 5 great stones which are a little westward from Bousfield hamlet. Thence by a direct line over the more, to Sprotkeld ~~House~~; thence (following the way directly over the moore) to \ an house called / Higher \ or Over / Scales {one house so called}. Thence downe the lane to Birkbeck and so up the water of Birkbeck till you com at an hamlet called Scoutgreen inclusively‡. So up to the force, an from the force by the wall to Gibson-Hill; thence directly over the fell to the Cloven-Stone on the top of Stakely & thence directly \ westward / over the moss & through the midle of Demmingfield Close \ called Demming Dubs / to the other sike; thence up the said sike till ~~Kendall road~~ \ the road twixt Shap & Kendall / cross the said sike {where Shap parish begins.}

{West}
On the west \ it is bounded / with the parish of Shap from the said sike, following the said road down toward Shap to a place called Broken Cross; thence directly northwards to Wastell Beck; thence down

[7] Dryevers.
[8] Fee Farm: see the English Glossary.
[9] 'Taken from a letter from Mr Jackson of Appleby School, dated 12 May 1677.'
[10] Also numbered p.1. Pages III.171 to III.178 are slightly smaller than most pages in this volume (29cm long as distinct from 30cm; 18cm wide, as distinct from 19cm), suggesting that they once formed one of Machell's 'little books'. Their marginalia are too close to the binding to read clearly.
[11] Synodals 4s and Procurations 2s 8d (totalling 6s 8d): 'Valor Ecclesiasticus', 1535; see John F. Curwen, *Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 302-24.

the said beck to Wastel Foot, where it enters Birkbeck; thence by a way to the house calld Beck Head within this said parish; thence along the wall belonging

[Machell's Notes: III.171]

*?
†{Clerke Birkbeck sayes they goe beyond the bounds of.}
‡{Memorandum: the foote of Birkbeck fell is in the parish of Orton, though in Crosby Lordship.}
{~~Sprot, hare, fary-stones, freeholds, course of river Livennet head~~, fairy stones}
{Crosby. Patrone Sir Philip Musgrave, sayes Dug[dale's] booke, but query? if not a mistake (for I take Mr Belingham) for Crosby Hall}.

[III.172]

to the grounds of the said house and div[id]eing them from Gaud busk grounds till you com at an highway called Galloway Gate (which heads from Regil towards Kendal);[12] so northwards by the said way till you com at Annawell* in the parish of Shap. Thence \ agane / on the said way till you come at ~~a sike about 6 score yards of called~~ Fawmer Skar; thence directly north to Newintake-house \ inclusively; / thence by the walls about the grounds of the said house inclusively till you com at Sand pot ~~by~~ \ at / the starting stone of Stricklandhead Rase; so ~~directly~~ downe the said Rase till you \ com / to Castlehows house at Regil-Skar; thence westward ~~by a wall~~ on the road twix Apelby & Shap till you com to Trainrig-Beck; thence down the said beck till you com at a stone on the more with a † upon it where the Lordships of Regill, Newby, Shap & Little Strickland do all meet together.

[North]
It is bounded on the north by Morland parish from the said † by &c.†[13] to Kiveriggs Stone; thence eastward on an hill Dowpin-Side, by a long row of stones \ directly after / to Lile-Intack at Threeplands; thence by the wall of the N. side of the Lile-Intack, to Threepland-Gill-Sicke; thence down the said sike to Lowend-Well; thence eastward by an hedge till you com at Regil-Mask; & so on by the same hedge down Regil-Mask (to page 177).[14]

Machell's Notes: III.171]

*{The[y] say is calld from an old woman calld Annas who was drowned [in] it, which is said to eb & flow.}
†(?)

[III.177][15]

inclusively till you com at Lowmore; thence from the Dike-nooke directly east by the way \ which leads from Maske-end / to High Whitbur \ till you com at Livennit; / thence ~~from High Whitbur~~ down Livennit to the foote of Lile-beck – Thence up Lile-beck to Crabstack-grassing. Thence by an Hedge on the N. Side of Crabstack-grassing till you com at an Highway (which leads from Kings-Meaburn to Dryvivers yeat). And so up the said way till you com at Seat-hill where wee began*.

[2. The Church]

{Body 31; Quier 13}
This church lyes S.W. from \ the town of / Appelby at iiij miles distance.
The church &c. \ dedicated to St Leon\ard /, is white huen stone / & is a fair building with a tall steeple or tower, having 3 good bells & a clock in it. The body of the church is in length about 31 yards \ broad 15,[16] / with 2 iles & 2 small pillars & 4 pillasters on either side; & resemble a † by 2 other arches riseing off pilasters[17] afore the quier doer, which opens the view into the 2 iles. The Quire is about 13 yards long.

[12] Galloway Stone: The name suggests a link with Scottish drovers and might have been be a marker for droves crossing Crosby Ravensworth fell, heading south. See Peter Roebuck, 'Cattle-droving through Cumbria after the Union: the Stances on the Musgrave Estate, 1707-12', *CW3,* 12 (2012), 143-58, at 143-44.
[13] Here, a 6cm gap suggests a blank space to be filled in later.
[14] This page reference appears to be in Bishop Nicolson's hand.
[15] Also numbered p.3.
[16] The numeral '5' has been superimposed over another numeral, possibly '3'.
[17] MS: 'pillallaster.'

In the East window are these Coates of Armes
1. Parted per pale: 1. Argent a saltier \ manch[18] / Gules; 2. Ermine a chiefe & frette Gules; which I take to be Threlkeld & Thornburrow.
2. Parted per pale: 1. Defaced, 2. Thornburrow ut supra.[19]
3. In a small quarry lately put in – Bellinghams arms \ of Gathorne Hall / (now also of Levins \ who are ~~now~~ the patrones & impropriators in right of that house) / Sc. Argent, 3 bugles Sable tipd Or, lined Gules.



Figure 1.11.1. Crosby Ravensworth Church. East Window. III.177.

On the north side of the quier under an arch betwixt the Lords quier & it, is a fair through erected of Hewn stone on the sides, with Escutchions upon it but no arms \ at all; / & a large gray ma[r]ble on the top 3 yards long & a yard & quarter broad, \ which seems to be the founders.

The church yard is very spaciouse & level \ conteineing about 2 acres & / sett about with trees; & there are 2 stone coffins \ in it / which ~~appears out of the ground~~ \ peepe above / ground, one on the N. & the other on the South side, \ which hath bin the fashion of burying here. / {2 crosses in it, one of them opposite to the quier and the other east from it near the low end of the church yard. And talke of another; from which multiplicity of † it might take its name, Crosby.} And a fryery adjoyneing the N. side of the church yard.[20]

[Machell's Notes: III.177]
*[Informants] Mr William Wilkinson; Lanc. Thwaites.[21]
{Out of the Haltons & Kirkbyes Register, p.141: I finde anno year 1311 Pontificatus,[22] that John Abbot of Whitby and his convent had then obt[ained] the parish church of Crosby Ravensworth to their own proper use & would thereby[23] intruede into the chu[rch] & manner of Oreton & the houses and close of the Prior and Convent of Coningsheaved & the great & smal tithes thereto belonging.}[24]

[III.178]

[3.] {The division into manners}

There is in this parish 4 constablewicks: 1. Crosby Ravensworth; 2. Maulds Meaburn; 3. Banke & Raw; 4. Birkbeck Fell; yet but 3 entire Lordships.

[18] 'Manch' has been written directly above 'saltier' in different ink.
[19] See the Latin Glossary.
[20] 'There is a tradition of a friary having adjoined the eastern end of the churchyard, and there appears to be remembrance of it in the names, Monksgarth, Monks-barn, and Monks-bridge', C.J. Gordon, 'Crosby Ravensworth Church', *CW2*, 8 (1908), 203-33, at 207.
[21] These two men gave Machell the bounder information. William Wilkinson was vicar of Crosby Ravensworth, 1685-1708. CCED. In 1696, he joined the anti-Jacobite 'Association' for the protection of William III: Curwen, *Later Records*, 302-24.
[22] 'In the pontificate of' [following word illegible]. The pope in 1311 was Clement V.
[23] This word is unclear; 'thereby' approximates to the meaning.
[24] The monks of the abbeys of Whitby and Conishead argued over the appropriation of Crosby Ravensworth church by the Abbot and Convent of Whitby. In June 1311, a tithe dispute relating to Orton, claimed by the said abbot in right of the abbey's impropriation of that church, was agreed with the prior of Conishead. The Bishop of Carlisle then absolved the prior of Conishead from the sentences of excommunication and interdict which he had incurred. See the Register of Bp. Halton, CAC(C), DRC/1/1, 141. See also, Curwen, *Later Records*, 302-24.

Lordships or manners: Sc. Crosby, Mauds-Meaburn \ or Mauldis / & Regil, \ & 2 small hamlets / adjoyneing to them as if the former had bin members of it & belonging to it […][25] Bank and Raw*.

Crosby, where the church stands, is a considerable village \ of itselfe, pleasantly standing in a woody gill, / haveing the church, a free school & the manner house. In it a stone bridge & 2 milnes. The school is a neat little handsom new building at[26] the E. end of the church yard, 2 storyes high &c.

The Manner house \ Hall / is a fair Tower house \ overshadowed with Trees / ~~The enterance~~ [It] had formerly a mote round about it & it is hard by the church. In the Tower where you enter are 2 fair windows \ one above the other, / ~~with neat work about them, and this~~ \ of no vulgar workmanship.[27] / Ballasters at the Top insteed of Battlements, and Coate of Armes above the arched dooer†.
And at the turneing end of a Rolle which runns above the Arch over the dooer are these letters ingravd \ ~~but / lately cutt in the old~~ worke: ID FD, for John Dodsworth & Frances Dodsworth, who repared the said Tower & cut these letters in the old worke, which by the coate seems to have bin erected long since by some of the Pickerings.
In the upper room is an Impaled Coate of Lowther with Fleming: Sc. Or, 6 anulets Sable Gules, a fret Argent, with their ~~propr~~ \ mantles & / crists, and in a scrowle under neath \ are these figure denoteing the year / 1617 {when that glass was placed there & perhaps that new building added, 1617.}



Figure 1.11.2. Crosby Ravensworth. Manor House Arms. III.178.

This house is said to be haunted with a spirit which is onely discovered by ~~its operations~~ \ the effects of it, / as knocking at dooers & opening them, opening the casements, displaceing of trenchers; which it one time did: laying them in thres triangular wise al over the flooer. Mrs Dodsworth, the present lady thereof, affirmes that it tooke her on\c/e by the finger when she was in \ her / bed. But no harme is don by it, nor was it ever visible to any but to one Mary Mather, about 60 years since, who (go back to page 173)[28]

[Machell's Notes: III.178]

*Gentlemens houses?
†Courts le[e]t & bar[on]?

[III.173]

is sayed to have seen it in the shape of a man. And the \ first / beginning of this disturbance was said to be occasioned thus. There came a young gentleman that clamed the estate, & laying there al night, his clothes were found in his chamber next morning but his body was gon.[29] And it was supposed that he was murthered, being never seen more. And there is this probability in it; that when Mr Gabettas

[25] Several words here are obscured by the binding.
[26] As this word is blotted, the transcription is approximate.
[27] This passage is repeated, with added information, in *N&B1*, 499.
[28] This note is in Bishop Nicolson's hand.
[29] MS: 'There came a young gentleman that ~~layd~~ clamed ~~to~~ the estate \ & laying there al night / ~~and~~ his clothes were found \ in his chamber next morning / but his body was gon.'

sub sherife of Westmorland[30] farmed[31] the house & filled up the mote afore the court dooer about 25[32] years since, the bones of a man was \ were / found in the banke, which being so near to the church yard, it cannot be thought that a man who dyed his own natural death should be buryed there.

Other hamlets belonging this Lordship are:
Gilce,[33] about 7 houses \ 1 mile S. from the church. /
Olendale alias Odendale[34] \ 1 mile S.W. / about 8 houses.
Harberwen 1mile W., 4 houses.
Blasterfield, a single house 1m. S.
Birkbeck-Fells, 20 houses, 2 miles & ½ S.W.
\ And / the Lodge – a single house 1 mile S. which \ the / last has bin formerly of the demaine, & well stord with deer. But now is sold of and a freehold estate of 120 li. per annum. {Blacklocks} There is black game in it.

{[4.] Raritye}

In the grounds belonging to the Hall, Sc. Bowlands, an hare was shot \ som few years ago / which ~~had~~ gave milke at 3 pups, one in her bag, downed,[35] & 2 knitt;[36] which Lanc. Thwates, a young man now living & an excellent rural poet, disbelieving, was convinced of the possibility of it by killing one himselfe 12 years agoe on a Whitsunday Eve at \ a place / Milbanke

[III.174]

(with a Grahame), which gave milke at 2 pups, had 2 downed over which movd and were quick, & 3 that were knit like little \ young / mice.[37]

[5.] And other remarquable?

The river Livennet springs in this Lordship at Crosby Gill Head \ about / 1 mile and ½ S. from the church at a place calld Blackdub, where King Charles 2 ~~got his din~~ \ sat down & dined / when he brought in the Scots ~~about~~ \ 16 /51 and dra[n]ke of that water.[38] It hides itselfe here & appears agane at 40 yards distance; thence it runns to Crosby \ where a stone bridge calld Monke bridge.[39] / Thence to Mauds Meaburn near to the Hall. ~~Of Cap. Lowther~~ Thence by Kings Meaburn \ where / a wood bridge. ~~Thence~~ \ Thence by Wood Head to / to Cliburn Mile, where a wooden [...][40] Thence into Eden by Julian Bore[41] in the forrest of Whinfell.

[30] Thomas Gabetis. See the 'Catalogue of Sheriffs', in Machell's Preface, VI.595.
[31] Leased.
[32] The second numeral is blotted.
[33] Gilts. Originally this name would have appeared to be 'the Gills' – 'the ravines', and to have referred to the usable land below the exposed limestone between Crosby Gill and Ravens Gill or to Ravens Gill itself. But the later forms seem to indicate a manorial name: Gillses etc., from the surname Gills; this would account for the adaptations to Gilce, Gilts, which have been influenced by dialect. A gilt or gilse is a 'young sow'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[34] Oddendale.
[35] Downed: covered with fur.
[36] Knit: having been conceived. *OED*.
[37] European brown hares are able to develop a second pregnancy while the previous litter is not yet delivered. 'This super-conception increases their reproductive success.' Source: 'Superconception: European brown hares, while pregnant with one litter, can start a new pregnancy', *Science Daily*, 22 September, 2010.
[38] The monument, carved by Thomas Bland of Reagill, is on Crosby Ravensworth Fell. On it is inscribed (in upper-case): 'Here at Black Dub the source of the Livennet King Charles the II regaled his army and drank of the water on his march from Scotland August 8 1651'.
[39] Monk Bridge, over the Lyvennett, to the north of the Vicarage: see Curwen, *Later Records*, 302-24.
[40] This word is partly obscured by the binding; presumably Machell was referring to another wooden bridge.
[41] Bower.

[6. Freeholds]

Freeholds: about 41, & most of them ancient yet doubtless purchasd.
Mr Robert Scaife of Blasterfield.
In Crosby: The Vicar; Lanc. Iön: under val.; James Fayrer; Tho. Lamb; Ed. Lamb; James Lamb obijt; James Wilkinson; Henry Dent; Will Thwaites pater; Lanc. Thwaites & Lanc. Thwaites of Holm Yeat; John Wilkinson; William Addison; John Iőn.

[Machell's Notes: III.174]
{A coyn of Richard found when I was there in the street: Feb 23 1688/9.}[42]

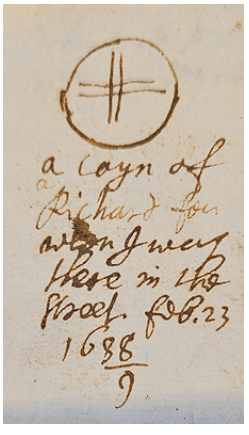


Figure 1.11.3. 'A coyn of Richard found … in the street. Feb. 23 1688/9'. III.174.

{? Query if there be not a campe or something like one in Youe-Close in Crosby demaine.}[43]
An uping stone called […][44]

[III.175][45]

Thomas Fa\y/rer; John Robinson; ~~Robert Scaife of Blasterfield~~.

About 20 in Birkbeck fels: {old all ~~purchased~~}

In Odendale: John Thwaites; Richard Iőn; Tho. Gibson; Tho. Dixon; Tho. Atkinson; Anthony Atkinson; John Rig: under val.

In Herberwen: Anthony Smith; Ed. Atkinson; James Kitchen; Lanc. Haton.

In Dalebankes: James Langhorn; Will Fa\y/rer; the heiress of Slakes.

[42] 'There' i.e. Crosby Ravensworth.
[43] Ewe Close: '… an ancient rectangular embanked enclosure and settlement site (certainly in use during the Roman period) on the course of the Roman road', *Westmorland Place-Names*. MS.III.176 repeats Machell's query about the camp.
[44] Scored-through text measuring 3cm is illegible here.
[45] Also numbered p.6.

[7.] The descent of the manner}

Lancelot Pickering*, son of Thomas, sold \ the Lodge†, being 120 li. per annum, to Mr Wilson / of Dallin Tower, who gave it in marriage with his daughter to Curwen Ralisons father.[46] And \ who repared the tower estates before he sold the manner to Sir John Lowther of Lowther about 44 years ago, who gave it [in] mariage with his daughter, Frances Lowther, to Mr John Dodsworth. He was a younger son of the Dodsworths of / Watless in Yorkshire, 4 miles from Richmont, who had isue: John, & Frances who dyed young.
And John the elder being an Oxford scholar went from there to the Ins of Court & afterwards dyed at Watless, leaveing this ~~whol~~ estate to Mr Frances Bayly \ 2 / son of Dr Baly of Penrith, sometime his servitor, & steward afterwards: \ a noble gift of a master to a servant. / Which Frances maryed one Mrs Mary Purl\e/y,[47] a Lincolnshire gentlewoman, by whom \ he had isue: / Margaret Baly, the now heiress thereof. The said Mary, her mother, was remaryed to \ one / Mr Robert Dodsworth, a Lincolnshire gentleman and ministers son, who holds \ it now / in the right of his wife, & has isue with her: George, John \ Rob. Obijt / Charles & James, twins.

[Machell's Notes: III.175]

*He maryed a Londoner.
†{Query of lodge.}
{A medicinal well near Sales in Birbeck Fell for sore eyes, scurvy &c., & seems to com of an iron mine. Slate, limestone & freestone all over.}

[III.176]

II

Mauds Meaburn [Notes]

½ mile N.E. the Hall is the manner of Meaburn Hall, a parke replenished with deer.[48]
{Lowther armes in glas?}
Captain Lowther brought pheasant into this country but has lost them all.
His tenements are generally freeholds, in number about 50 or 60.
And here was Dr Adison born, Dean of Lichfield. {Dr Adison born at Mauds Meaburn Hill.}[49]
{Here are coals within a bowshot; quarryes of white freestone, slate.}

{Descent}
It was purchased by \ Gleed[50] Sir John Lowther / in 8 tenements as they say, which make the demanes; and there was one Fletcher, next neighbour to the Hall, who built himselfe a fine house, part of which stands yet in the court, calld Fletchers Hall; who broke himselfe by it, & so sold his estate to the said Sir John. From him it descended to old Sir John \ the rich /and by him given to his 2nd son, Mr Richard Lowther, the now owner of it, who maryed Barbary, daughter of Mr Pricket of Rissel Castle in Yorkshire, by whom he had isue: 1. Richard, 2. Mary, 3. Frances: ob. s.p.[51] 2. Robert, Christopher, Mary.

[46] Robert Rawlinson, father of Curwen, see below.
[47] See *N&B1*, 499.
[48] This information is at the foot of III.175, but more properly belongs to III.176.
[49] Lancelot Addison (1632-1703), born at Maulds Meaburn; son of Lancelot Addison, 'a minister of God's word'. Matriculated at Queen's College Oxford 1650-51; BA 1654-55; MA 1657; DD 1675; prebendary of Salisbury 1678; dean of Lichfield 1683, *OAD*.
[50] Having a cast in one or both eyes; squint-eyed. The word can be transferred to character: *to gang gleed*: to go wrong. *OED*. Sir John Lowther had a reputation for being grasping in business dealings, see C. Phillips, 'Lowther, Sir John, of Lowther, first baronet (1605-1675), landowner and local politician'. *ODNB.* During the reign of James I, dissension was particularly strong between the Lowthers and their tenants in Crosby Ravensworth, 'the lords claiming an absolute estate in the tenements and the tenants insisting on [their] inheritance according to the custom of the manor. After various litigations [the] lords and their tenants came to a compromise.' See *N&B1*, 501, which quotes the terms of agreement.
[51] All three of whom died without issue.

{~~Crosby~~: acres by estimation onely, Mr Bellingham, patrone & impropriator?}
{A freehold ¼ west ab Ecclesia. A demolished chaple at Crake-Trees \ in the Lordship of / [Blank] Dr Dawes bought of Christopher Lancaster, Justice of the Peace: s.p.? Or by him of Pickering. 30. H.8. [1538-1539]. Q. It a freehold}

[III.174]

An up[p]ing stone called my Ladyes Moat,[52] {in Meaburn Lordship} erected by Anne, Countess of Pembroke 30 years since, where she could see 3 of her own castles. Here was a parke at Crosby Gill, ~~replenished~~ with deer belong to Crosby Hall – but now to Mr Curwen Rallison.[53]

[III.176]

III

[Reagill Notes]

{1mile N.} Regill is a manner where a <u>ruind chaple</u>, as by the names of <u>Chappel</u>gards & Chaplela[n]ds. It belongs to my Lord Wharton, where they have long bin Lords. One Mr Thomas Wharton sold ~~one ½ of~~ Regil Grange, which is supposed to be the manner house, & ½ of the demane, to Mr Lancelot Dawes, who had isue, William, who had isue, Lancelot, who had isue ~~she~~ by Fran[ces] daughter of Lawyer Fletcher & of Little Strickland, Thomas the heir & Lancelot. The other ½ sold to Gleed[54] Sir John Lowther and now it belongs to Meaburn Hall.
{Regil town is about ½ of a mile from the Hall or Regill Grange, and about a mile & ¼ from the church. Here was Mr Randal Sanderson born, who gave 6 score li.[55] & hereby erected a free-school for that Lordship.
{<u>Freeholds</u>} Mr Nicholas Thomlinson of Threeplands; Will. Wilkinson; Henry Wilkinson; Thomas White; Thomas Harrison.

{IIII}

Bank [Notes]

{12 score E., Banke \ 4 houses / is tenant right belonging to Gathorne Grange – the house of Mr Bellingham, which is in Asby Parish where they do Suit & Service. The Row at Brig End, E. 3.}[56]

[52] I.e. a mote, raised up for viewing or mounting.
[53] Curwen Rawlinson, see *N&B1*, 499-500.
[54] Second use of 'gleed'. See above.
[55] £120.
[56] The rest of this margin comment is obscured by the binding but appears to mention church lands. According to *N&B1*, Bank and Row belonged to the Threlkeld branch of the Pickerings but was sold to the Bellinghams of Over Levens, who sold it to Colonel James Grahame/Grahme: *N&B1*, 501-02.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 12]

Parish of Dufton

[I.461][1]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

To Dufton parish church belongs Dufton. Dufton gave name to a Family: Simon de Duftona. Cotemp. & testis cum Thomas de Helebeck & Thomas de Muse-grave Vicom. West. s.d. sed circa 36. Henry 3.[2]

Sir X[t]opher Clapham tooke a Lease of the Lordship of Dufton (Temp. Oliveri Tyran?)[3] for 99 yeares, wherein the clause of waste being omitted,[4] ~~& the~~ he cutt downe all the wood called Dufton Wood, and sold it as I have bin informed, for more than the whole purchase cost him \ whole estate was worth. /

The Lordship seemes to have belongd to the Grastocks Barons of Graystock, & from them to have passed to the Dakers of Kirkoswald in Cumberland {Gen. de Dacres vide Inter Clifford in Apelby}[5] by reason of an heiress of the Grastocks matched into that familye. See the Armes in the church & at Kirkoswald Castle over the Gates, where they are quartered.

[I.276A]

Remarke [that] in Dufton Lordshipp, Precincts of three Dioces: viz. Bishopprick,[6] Chester & Carlisle, and three Lordships and three Parishes doe meet at a place calld Cauldron Snout in Tees Water.

[III.162A]

[The Church]

Ad Dufton church:	The body – L[ength] circa 10. B[readth] 8.
	The quier – L[ength] circa 8½. B[readth] 7.
	Little bells.
	Stales.[7] 2 yards full + Hecks[8] least.[9]
	high-backs ½ yard.
	Pasturage – a yard.[10]
	Low pars[onage]18 yards & 12 broad.

Parsonage S.W. ab Ecclesia about 40? at the foote of the banke on which the church stands.

[Comments relating to the images on III.162A]
Arms at the] 1[st] corse next the screne [Top left] Azure Gules.
And another of this second three escallops. [Centre right]
A Recapit[ulatio]: I have shewne you that

[1] Also numbered p.17.
[2] 'Witness with Thomas de Helbeck and Thomas de Musgrave, Sheriff of Westmorland [in a deed] sans date but c.36 Henry III (1251-52).'
[3] 'In the time of the tyrant, Oliver [Cromwell]'. During the Commonwealth, 1649-1660, no regnal date was applied. However, Oliver Cromwell assumed the title of 'Lord Protector' in December 1653. He died in September 1658; his son Richard was proclaimed Protector the next day but resigned in May 1659.
[4] There appears to have been no explicit ban in the lease on 'wasting' the property.
[5] 'General information on the Dacres, see among the Cliffords in Appleby.'
[6] Diocese of Durham.
[7] 'Stales': stalls. Old English: stal; Middle English–1600s: stalle; 1500: stale. *OED*.
[8] 'Heck': the lower half of a door; also, an inner door. *OED* .
[9] Unclear word.
[10] 'Pasturage' looks like 'passage' at first sight, were it not for Machell's indication that the word is abbreviated. William Nicolson discussed a suit brought by the patron and others, relating to the rector's 20-year 'claim to some pasturage', see Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 48-49.

3. Gules a dolphin Argent
Gules 3 escallops Argent. H. Lancaster with Lyon
Sable a single escallop & HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE
On the […[Or an escutcheon, an hand holding a dolphin. […][11]



Figure 1.12.1. Arms at Dufton Church. III.162A.

[III.161]

Dufton Parish

One constablewick consisting of Dufton; one vil. calld Keescliff:[12] \ but one row of houses, / the tenants of which belong to Mr Burton of Brampton,[13] but answer in the court of Dufton; & 2 or 3 houses at a place cald Birkdale, all within this Parish & Lordship. One gentlemans house lately erected: Dufton Hall. A school.

[Dufton Town] {Spring}
Tis a well built town & indiffirently Regular, having a venell of water which comes in near to head of the towne \ where the new Hall standeth / & so runns down the street to the low end thereof, where the old Hall hath stood. & serves all the town with water runing just before their dooers. And there is this remarkable in it; that after the current comes down from the fell, it seems in the crofts to run against ~~banke~~ \ fall / contrary to nature; & yet the bankes which containe it on both sides, & the current it selfe, is there very shallow.

[Machell's Notes: III.161]
{These are fell bred & forrest like people, not halfe so civilisd as the rest.}
{Get the will.}
{There was never man rid through Keescliff but he broake his neck.}

[11] The page foot has perished here and the text is tiny. As a result, the transcription here is incomplete.
[12] Keisley.
[13] See Long Marton Parish.

[III.162A]

[Knock]
Knock stand E. & W. At the east end are iiij tenements thought to have bin Knock Gill Hall. The being the fashion of a ditch & ramp[art] about the ground whereon it stands. And the other lands which belongs to them extendeth themselves as far as Knotgill, and are yet calld the Demain Lands. There is also a place calld Chaple F[l]at, where it is said Knock Chaple stood, p[arish] D[ufton] ch[urch].

[III.159]

The Boundary of Dufton

This parish is bounded on the south west with the Lordship of Brampton in Marton parish (being divided from it with the River Troutbeck from Millelay Foot at Brampton Pows (where the 3 Lordships of Marton, Brampton & Dufton meet, and not far from the Parsonage house of Long Marton), ascending eastward up the said River till you com at Flakebrigg by Espland Foot which is in the way that leadeth twixt Dufton & the Burrow of Apleby & near Brampton Hall.
Thence on the S. & the south east with Flakebridge Wood \ in Bongate parish, / from which tis divided by the said River Troutbeck (called here Burthet-Beck)*, till you com at a place called Murton-Knows. \ It bordereth pon Morton Lordship. / Thence agane with ~~the Lordship of Murton~~ the said parish, \ being divided from it / by the said Troutbeck (\ which / is called here Keyseley Beck) \ until you ascend to / Hi-keup-head where the said river springs & thence agane with the ~~said~~ Lordship of ~~Dufton~~ \ Murton / till you com at Masebeck[14] at a place which is called Dobson Mea Foote,[15] \ being divided from it / by a streight line or band of stone which is called Hirds. Thence again by Masebeck aforesaid, descending eastwards to Swathbeck-foote, where it comes into Masebeck. Thence agane on the south easte with the great Parish and Lordship of Brough, being divided from it by the foresaid Masebeck to Birkesike Foote where it comes into Masebeck.[16] Thence agane on the south easte with the parish of Rumabald Kirk†, being divided by Masebeck to a place which is called Caldron Snout where 3 countyes, 3 bishopricks, 3 parishes & 3 Lordships meet‡. On the East & North easte it is bounded all along with Midleton parish ~~from Caldron~~, \ in the Bishoprick of Durham, / being divided from it by the River Teas, ascending northwards up the said river from Caldron Snout to \ the foot of / Crooke Burne ~~fel~~, where it runns into Teas ~~ther~~ \ where / 3 countyes meet \ together. / {Sc. Westmorland, Bishoprick, Northumberland.} Thence agane on the N.E. with a place calld Tine Head

Machell's Notes: III.159]

*{T\h/wait, q. Birch Thwaite}
†{Reinbaldi Ecclesia}[17]
‡{Sc. Westmorland, Yorkshire, Bishoprick, Carlile, York & Durham; Dufton in Westmorland, Rumakirk in [Blank],[18] Midleton in Bishoprick.}

[III.160]

in Alstan parish in the County of Cumberland (or Northumberland)*; being divided from by the Teas aforesaid, still ascending northwards till you com at the foot of a little rill called Fel Troutbeck, which is the very N. point of this parish.}
Hence on Nor'west it butts upon Milburn \ Chapel Fell / in K[irkby Thore] parish, being divided from it by ~~the rill calld~~ Fell-Troutbeck \ aforesaid / till you com a t a place called Moss Burne \ or Mose Burn / Foot, where it enters \ Lile-Tees / ~~Troutbeck~~. Thence agane on the N. West with the Lordship \ of Knock / in Marton parish, from which tis divided with the (River?) Mosburne, \ ascending westwards up the said River / till you com at a rock calld Overhurth; whence by a streight line \

[14] Maizebeck.
[15] Dobson Mere Foot.
[16] MS: 'Thence \ again / by Masebeck \ aforesaid / descending eastwards to ~~Trout b~~ to Swathbeck-foote, where \ it comes into / ~~enters~~ Masebeck. Thence agane on the south easte with the great parish and Lordship of Brough, being divided from it ~~with the river~~ \ by the foresaid / Masebeck \ ~~aforesaid~~ / to Birkesike Foote where it comes into Masebeck.'
[17] Romaldkirk: the church dedicated to St Rumwald or Romald. See *Westmorland Place-Names*. Machell suggested that the church might be dedicted to St Reinbald, an 11th-century German saint.
[18] Anciently in Yorkshire, now administered by County Durham.

ascending westward / to an harruck[19] of stones upon Knock Fell called Knock-aäld-man†. Thence by a streight line descending westward to ~~a place~~ Swindale-Beck-Head. Thence by Swindall beck descending westwards to Knock Gill. Thence agane ~~descending south-west~~ by Swindale Beck (which is here calld Knock beck) descending S.W. down the said Rill to Marton Park Head over against Dufton church. Thence on the west ~~which the Lo~~ it is bounded upon the Lordship of Marton in Marton parish, & divided from it by the said Swindale Beck (which is called here Marton-Parke-Beck) till you com at the place called Millelay-foot, where wee began.
March 22. 1686. Will. Atkinson.[20]

[Machell's Notes: III.160]

*{q. which?} Northumberland, sayes Towen.
†{This is denyed by Rob Thornton of Knock who [says] it is quite out of their Lordship. Swindale Beck sp[ringeth] here near Rundall Tarne,[21] & runeth westward \ downe the gill] / to behind Knock Town. Thence \ S.W. / down Knock Gill by Dufton church, so to Dufton mill and thence into Troutbeck at Milelow[22] Foote.}
{Query: of its bounds p[er] Towan.}

[III.161]

{**Rarityes**}

(Rarityes in nature)
Junipers at Flaskey; a pasture belonging to Dufton betwixt Dufton Pike and Knock Pike: it \ see in the mergin. /
In Dufton wood, at the point of Windy Banke Brow, builded an osprey which had eeles & troutes & other fish & rabits in the nest when I was a boy.[23]
{A forrest called Meldon, which is a great fell next Teasdall \ forrest / divided by Tease.[24]

[Wells]
There is a petrifying well {upon Meldon} called {the Black Well of Meldon}[25] whose water is so extreamely cold that a man (they say) can not hold his hand in it,[26] while you go [to] the doer. It lyes N.E. to Dufton church – that corner of the quier pointing to it – & it turns all the moss for 40 yards to stone, which is like to / Smithy-sinders \ or pumice / or rather sponges, but whitish in colour.[27]
There is another well beyond Hikeup Head at ½ a mile distance E. from that place, which they call Marle Well. It tastes of iron \ this would prove medicinal / & tinges the bankes & places adjoining with a rusty colour. As like […]}[28]

{Pretiouse stones; milstones; coale}
There are also good milstones got there at Milston Sike, above \ twice / 12 score [yards] from it \ & great store of free stone & flaggs. /
Also coale unwrought, which serves for lime kill[n]s; & great store of lead as got in these mountanes, and smelted at a miln near to the church a little above it.

[19] A way-cairn, appearing in Machell's MS in several forms including hurrock and harrock (Machell's representation of the letters 'u' and 'a' being identical much of the time).
[20] This is probably William Atkinson, schoolmaster at Dufton between 1664-65 and perpetual vicar of Morland from 1680/1; he died in 1721. CCED.
[21] Rundale Tarn.
[22] Millaley.
[23] 'When I was a boy' has been added in different ink.
[24] Otherwise known as Meldon Hill, Dufton.
[25] MS: 'There is a petrifying well on Meldon called petrifying. {There is a well called the Black Well of Meldon.}'
[26] Two unclear words here appear to read, 'I [...] sond times.'
[27] As this passage has been written next to a ragged margin and is partly overwritten, the transcription offered is tentative. Beneath the same passage there is an unfinished sentence: 'It is 4 miles from the [blank].'
[28] This is followed by approximately 32 words of well-scored-through text.

{Generall}
{In Browham the great tree – p[articulars] nature &c. & Harts horn tree in Whin fell; chimney piece in Hornby dineing roome.}[29]
Wild ducks nest at Crack at Snittlemire and at St Nicolas (mire). Bogg.
Raspberryes \ & hind berryes / at Scale Houses in Murton Demaine.[30]
Bleaberryes at Meal Fell.[31]
Temeberryes[32] in the spring head at the S. end of Flakebrigg by \ the / Murton-beck side.
Crackthorp: epithimum, golden globes, burd eene,[33] melilot[34] ~~hart,~~ add[er]stong[ue].[35]
(No elmes naturally in this county but I suppose it exottick.) Awme or witch hassel.[36]

Langton, J[oh]n Hill sayes, was a Lordship forfeited by rebellion: all the men hang'd: ~~the man~~ where Wright lived on his own doer cheekes. Dakers Roade.[37] The army came up to that moore but never crossd Eden.

[29] For the chimney piece at Hornby Hall, see I.444A (Brougham); see also, Michael Taylor, 'On some Manorial Halls in Westmorland', *CW1*, 04 (1880), 392-99.
[30] The hindberry is a northern name for the wild raspberry, cf. German 'himbeere'. *OED*.
[31] The blaeberry: the common name in Scotland and the north of England of the bilberry or whortleberry. *OED*.
[32] This word appears to read as 'temeberryes' but the actual berry has not been ascertained.
[33] Birds eye: the name of a plant. Used chiefly with reference to plants having flowers with a distinctive central marking; cf. eye. *OED*.
[34] Plants of the genus Melilotus, characterised by trifoliate leaves and long racemes of small flowers, usually yellow or white, which smell of newly mown hay when dry, and are sometimes grown as forage and green manure, and as bee plants; especially the yellow-flowered M. officinalis, the dried flowers of which were formerly used in making plasters, poultices, etc. *OED.*
[35] As 'hart' is placed next to adder's tongue (a fern) Machell might be referring to the hart's tongue fern, though 'hart's trefoil' is another form of melilot.
[36] Even before the ravages of Dutch Elm Disease, the English elm (genus ulmus) was more common in southern England and the Midlands than in the north. As the wychelm or witch hazel (ulmus glabra) is hardier, it has always been able to grow further north than other varieties. See Della Hooke, *Trees in Anglo-Saxon England: Literature, Lore and Landscape* (Woodbridge, 2010), 262-63.
[37] For more on this reference to Dacre's Raid (for example, 'The owner of Wrights house they say was hang'd on his own dooer post, & many more of them.'), see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes, I.341.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 13]

[I.496]

[Parish of Kirkby Stephen]

[**Miscellaneous Notes and Queries**]

[III.190]

A free school at K.
All pay noutgeld: query.
{An acre 22 broad & 11 scale long. Meadow 13. 4d; Arable [blank] Pasture 15.
Kirkby Stephen hath {Waif & stray afore their tenant, all but Weatby, where my Lord of Thannet.}
[III.221][1]
Query of Will. Barnard, a bonderman.[2]
~~Russendale. Hare birth~~

{Name}
The church dedicated to St Stephen giveth name to the town.
The parish of Kirkby Stephan takes its name from the towne where the church standeth.[3]

{Bounds} It is bounded on the [blank]
{Division; constablewicks} Within this large circumference are conteined
? Manner Sc. Kirkby Stephan, next [blank]
{School; church} locus ad Ecclesiam Stephani, which is [blank]
{Schoolhouse & masters}
{Vicaridge house; Incumbents} Near to this [blank] stands the vicaridge house.
Things remarkeable in the manner
Where [blank] free [blank] customary [blank]
{Rarityes of the manner}
{Lords & manner houses
{The Lords. The manner house & chief lord. The chief [blank]}
TP his armes & pedigree.

———————

[IV.529]

[1.] [How Kirkby Stephen became a Vicarage] e Registro de Wed'hal[4]

It seemeth that Kirkby Stephen and Morland were both Rectories \ till / in the time of Hugo Bishop of Karliol about the beginning of King Henry the 3rds reigne {anno 1220}. That Hugh Bishop of Karleol \ de assensu / gave & confirm'd them (de assensu capitali Karleolens' ecco),[5] {and the chapels thereto appertaneing, belonging together with all their appurtenences} to God & the church of St Maryes Yorke, & \ to / the monkes serveing God there, & \ to / their successors. To have and enjoy them to their owne proper use and behoofe for ever. Yet so that the church of Kirkeby Stephan – with its appertinences, was to be imployed to the proper uses of the moncks of Yorke, for the support of poore people, and strangers (Sc. peregrinorum) \ or pilgrims as some / which perhaps would rather have it translated); And the church of Morland with its appurtenances, to the proper use of the moncks of Wederhal (which is a cell of the said church of St Maryes Yorke) for their support. And that when

[1] Beneath the ink on this page there are pencilled notes relating to the dimensions of Kirkby Stephen church.
[2] 'Reference to Will Bernard of Kirkby Stephen as a 'bonderman', occurs on MS.III.181. Since the word, 'bonderman', was first noted in the nineteenth century, Machell probably meant 'bounder-man': a man who sets or marks out boundaries. *OED*.
[3] MS continues: '{Value}It is a vicaridge rated in the 1ᵗ fruits office at [blank] pay first [blank] tenth [blank] & synodals {Patrones} The patrones [blank] ~~The incumbents~~.'
[4] For these Wetheral Priory register entries, see J.E. Prescott (ed.), *The Register of the Priory of Wetherhal*, CWAAS Record Series I (London, 1897).
[5] 'With the assent of the bishop of Carlisle.'

these churches should become vacant by the death or removal of the rectors then in them of the said churches, who at that time were incumbents there; it should be lawful for the foresaid moncks to retaine them freely to their proper use; with\out/ the disturbance or contradiction of any one whatsoever […][6] Yet so that they should appoint therein suitable vicars (Vicarios idoneos nobis,[7] sayth he; et successoribus nostris presentandos);[8] yet so that they should place therein well qualified vicars to be presented to him and his successors – who should receive, each of them, out of the profits of their several churches for ever – C. shillings;[9] and be oblieged to take upon them the cure of soules from the hands of him & his successors

[IV.530]

and be oblieged et de spiritualibus [pro]videre.[10] Which, because it is an excellent piece & shews the stile of that Age it was writ {Circa anno 1220}, I thinke fit to subjoyne.

Confirmatio (Hugonis) ep[iscop]i Karl[eolensis] Sup[er] Ecclesiis de Kirkeby Stephan et de Morland cum capellis ad eas pertin[entibus]
Hugo dei gratia Karl[eolensis] ep[is]c[opus] Omnibus Xti fidelibus has Literas inspecturis et audituris s[a]l[ute]m in d[omi]no.
Quoniam ex officio nobis injuncto subjectorum nostorum, et maxime religiosoru[m] tenem[entorum] utilitati providere Et eorum bona augere et confovere, Noscat universitas vestra quod nos divina ducti pietate, de assensu capitali Karl[eolensis] Ecclesiae, concedimus et presenti pagina confirmamus Deo et Ecclesiae Sanctae Mariae Ebor[ac]um, et monachis ibidem do[mino] servientibus, et in posterum servituris, Ecclesias de Kirkby Stephan et de Morland, cum omnibus capellis ad eas pertinentibus, et cum omnibus aliis pertinentiis suis in proprios usus ipsorum, habendas et possidendas in perpetuum. Ita Sc[iatis] Quod Ecclesia de Kirkeby Stephan cum suis pertinentiis cedat in usus proprios dictorum monachorum Eboracum ad sustentationem pauperum et peregrinorum. Et –
Ecclesia de Morland cum suis pertinentiis in usus proprios monarchorum domus de Wederhale. Quae est Cella Ecclesiae Sanctae Mar[iae] Eboracum, ad eorum sustentationem.
Decedentibus vero, ut cedentibus parsonis et Rectoribus predictarum Ecc[lesi]arum, qui nunc in eis sunt constituti. Liceat praefatis monachis libere et sine alicujus contradictione ut impedimento eas sibi in usus proprios retinere.
Ita tamen quod in eis vicarios idoneos constituant nobis et successoribus nostris praesentandos qui

[IV.531]

{Circa annum 1220} de proventibus ipsarum C Solid[os] singuli ipsorum de singulis Ecclesiis praecipiant in perpetuum. Curamque animarum a nobis et successoribus n[ostris] percipere et de spiritualibus providere teneantur. Ut autem haec nostra consessio et confirmacio perpetue firmitatis robur obtineat, hoc praesens scriptum Sigilli n[ostri] inscriptione duximus commun[io]re. Hys testibus – domino J. Abbate de Fontibus. R. Decano; & magistro J, Romano Canon' Eboracum
Act xiij kal novembr'Anno Incarnationis Domini. M.CC.XX[0].[11]

[6] A line of largely illegible text follows here.
[7] 'Vicars suitable for us.'
[8] 'and who can be presented to our successors.'
[9] £5.
[10] 'Be obliged to provide for spiritual things also.'
[11] Confirmation of Hugo, Bishop of Carlisle, over the Churches of Kirkby Stephen and Morland, along with the chapels affiliated to them. Hugo, Bishop of Carlisle by grace of God, to all Christ's faithful who shall see or hear these Letters: greetings in the Lord. Since, through the office enjoined upon us to provide for the benefit of those subject to us and most especially the religious houses, and to increase and cherish their goods, know ye all that we, guided by divine mercy, with the full assent of the Church of Carlisle, grant and by this document confirm, to God and to the Church of St Mary at York and to the monks there who serve and who in future shall serve the Lord, the Churches of Kirkby Stephen and Morland, with all the chapels affiliated to them, and with all their other appurtenances, for their own uses, to have and to hold in perpetuity.Therefore know ye that the Church of Kirkby Stephen with its appurtenances is to give precedence for their own uses to the said monks at York for the maintenance of the poor and of travellers. And – the Church of Morland with its appurtenances, [likewise] for their own uses to the monks of the house of Wederhale, which is a daughter-house of the Church of St Mary at York, for their maintenance. And as they fall vacant, as the parsons and Rectors of the aforesaid

Thus, Kirkeby Stephan became a vicaridge,

[IV.531A & D]

{Cart. 28 or 31 as latelyer noted; fol. 19}
and all the grants, collations & confirmations of churches, pensions, rents, possessions, procurations and other Benefits in the Diocess of Karleol. And specially the Confirmations of the churches of Kirkby Stephan & Morland made to the Abbot & Convent of St Maryes Yorke, as is conteined (in authenticis) in the authentic Grants of the venerable father Hugh Bishop of Karleol, are confirmed by Bishop Bartholomew, Prior of St Maryes Karleol and the convent of the said church. Hiis Testibus Magistrro A. de Kirkby tunc offic. Karliol; A. de Esptric Decano Cumberland; Odard clerico, S. Subpriore de Wederhale; et alijs.

[IV.531A]

Anno domini 1261, 44. Henry 3.
Pope Alexander iiij non[is] Julij, Pontificatus sui anno iij^{0} . About which time these forsaid grantes seeme to have bin made – granted by his Bull to the Abbat & Convent of St Maryes Yorke.[12] That in the churches & chappels which were canonically annexed to them for their proper use & wherein there were no taxed vicaridges, nor perpetual vicars had been instituted within the memory of man; but were served by their own chaplains – That they should continue to do so still; & That no vicaridges should be taxed out of them or perpetual vicars instituted into them against their wills ~~unless in small places~~ nonwithstanding any

[IV.532]

Indulgence Granted to any by the apostolic see, or hereafter to be granted of taxing \ perpetual vicaries & instituteing perpetual vicars / churches & chapels, which religious men have for their own proper use when in the precincts of their cityes or diocess; Or any Letters or Indulgences from the said See obtained or to be obtained (nisi eadem impetrande de Indulgentia hujusmodi plenam et expressam fecerint mentionem)[13] unless they make full & express mention of a Libre indulgence of obteineing the same {?} Which he concludes with a Comination against any one \ all those / that shal infringe the said Conformation, or boldy oppose it; That they shal incur the high indignation of Almighty God & of his Apostles St Peter & St Paul. Datum Anagnie iiij Non. Julij. Pontificatus ejus anno vi^{0}.[14]

But this notwithstanding, the Abbots of Yorke were stiffly opposed about the Taxation of the church of Appelby if I be not mistaken. But query if they were not anciently Taxed, and not within the verge of this Grant?

[III.211]

[2.] Kirkby Stephan Church, its dimensions & porches {July 4^{0}}

The church, dedicated to St Stephen, giveth name to the Towne – And is [a] large ~~building~~ \ but humble building / with a Lofty Tower of good astler worke[15] with a clock & [blank] Bells in it. The Body of the church \ in the midle ally / is about ~~35 yardes~~ \ ~~or 37~~ 37 / in length \ besides the Tower / with 2 Rowes of round pillars, 6 in a Row, round & plane of a midling size; and the 2 Iles are about

churches who now are constituted in them retire, the aforesaid monks are to have licence, freely and without anyone's contradiction as an obstacle, to retain them for themselves for their own uses. In such a way, however, that they establish suitable vicars for presentation to us and our successors, who {about the year 1220} from their revenues are to receive, each of them from the individual churches, 100s in perpetuity. And they are to be bound to recognise and undertake the care of souls, from us and our successors. Moreover, so that this our grant and confirmation may forever have security and validity, we have made this present document more public by the impression of our seal. Witnesses were these: Lord J. Abbot of Fontes, R. the Deacon; & master J. Roman, Canon at York. Act 13, Kalends of November, in the Year of the Incarnation of our Lord, 1220.'

[12] 'In the year of the Lord 1261, 44. Henry 3. Pope Alexander IV on the 4th July, in the third year of his Pontificate. About which time these forsaid grantes seeme to have bin made - granted by his Bull …'

[13] '… unless in petitioning the same they make full and express mention of an indulgence of this kind.'

[14] 'Dated: at Anagnia, four days before the Nones of July in the sixth year of his Pontificate.' Anagnia is an ancient town south-east of Rome. The Nones of July was the seventh day of that month.

[15] 'Astler:' a former usage of the word 'ashlar'. 'Ashlar-work' consisted of masonry constructed of square hewn stones, as opposed to 'rubble-work'. *OED* .

35. & on the N. side Ile is a Quier projecting, which belongs to Smerdale Hall. {Long 6; broad 7: i.e. from S. to N.} The whol bredth of the body from one side to the other is [blank].
{In the 3rd window counting from the doer – at the top in one of the corners is a plane manch.}[16]
{Cliffords armes in the E. window midle light.}

{Hartley Quier}
The Quier is in length 15 passes or yards; In bredth 7? Haveing on South, Hartley Quier, which extends in Length from the screen or body of the church Eastward 9 and in Bredth 8 \ which lookes through one Arch onto the great Quier[17] / wher in[18] are 2 monuments, one under an Arch in the S. side wall, with Musgraves Armes on the pitch of the Tabling,[19] & \ a blew / marble Through (as they call them here) \ with Musgrave Armes upon the Edge of it / with this inscription [blank]
The other in the \ midle of the /screen which divides it from the Quier. Sc. a man in armour with a sword at his right side ~~& his dagger~~ on his left \ something like a broken spear or truncheon, / under his head an old fashon'd helmet[20] & a Lyon couchant at his feet, Laying upon a Table of stone erected like a through having sides of niched worke (this is all of Huen stone) & has bin \ long / taken for Sir Andrew Hartleys effigyes;[21] but ~~by~~ \ I have discover'd it / this Escutchion[22] on the hilt of his Dager. I discoved it to be one of the ~~Musgraves~~ {rather Clifford & Vipont} And above, on the Timber are Musgrave \ Armes / impald Clifford, & Musgraves armes impaleing {?} And in truth this may seem to have bin builded by som of the Musgraves upon their Accession to Hartley Castle.

[I.578][23]

In Hartleys Quier which is on the south side of the church:[24]

Hic. jacet. Ricardus Musgrave
Miles ~~Mus~~ Int Elizab* uxorem suam et + Thomam filium et + hæredem eorum qui obijt
ix[0] die Mensis Novembris Anno Domini
M[0] CCCC[0] lxiiij[0]. Cujus animæ propitietor {?} amen.[25]

{Note. The g in Musgrave is like a Text a, without the transverse stroake: & so is the q. in qui.}



Figure 1.13.1. 'In Hartley's choir which is on the south side of the church'. I.578.

Under the rim or edge of the stone are 6 Annulets. Above the arch is Musgraves Armes: Sc. 6 annulets supported by a Lyon Seiant,[26] and a Pelican feeding her young ones. And on the side of the Table stone, which is marble, Musgrave Armes within a plane shield.

[16] 'Maunch': a charge representing a sleeve, esp. a medieval hanging sleeve.
[17] Chancel.
[18] In the Hartley quire.
[19] Or 'Tablings'.
[20] 'an old fasho\n'/d hel~~d met~~\ met'.
[21] See *N&BI*, 541, for a similar description.
[22] Here there is a tiny sketch of an escutcheon.
[23] This page contains pencilled text overwritten in ink, as if a note page had been worked up later. Not all the pencilled text has been recorded here as it is either too faint or placed too far into the page gutter.
[24] Written in pencil with the added comment, 'se p.290 or p.209.'
[25] 'Here lies Sir Richard Musgrave between Anna his wife and Thomas their son and heir, who died on 9 November 1464, on whose souls may God have mercy {?} Amen.' See *N&BI*, 541.
[26] 'Sejant': in a sitting posture; especially of a quadruped; sitting with the fore-legs upright. *OED*.

In the roofe are:[27]

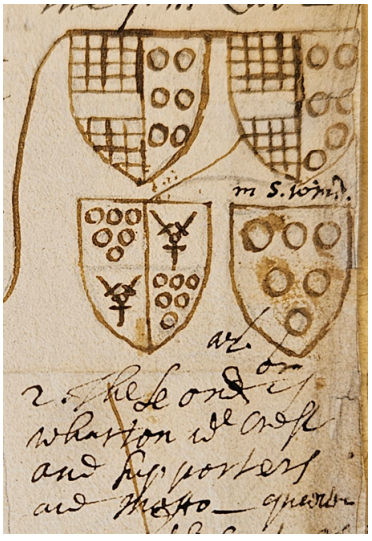


Figure 1.13.2. Coats of Arms. The top right is labelled, 'In S. Window'. The ground of the bottom-right shield is labelled 'Azure', the annulets, 'Or'. I.579.

On Lord Whartons Mon[ument]
1. At the W. end are 3 Coates of Armes: Sc. Wharton quartering $^{1}{}_{1}$} Thre Lyons rampant in chiefe & \ a quarterly coate; Sc. 3 Escallops in Bass†.
The second ‡.[28] The third as the second. 4th as the 1t. Then Wharton agane with an orle. Then the other.[29] Thirdly Bend. 4. A quarterly Coat with 3 garbes in the first quarter.
Fifthly a saltier in the undercourse. 6. A Bend between 6 martlets. 7. \ Or / a fret \ 2. / 8ly. \ Argent / 2 Lyons passant\ Gu[les.] / 9tly. \ Argent / a Lyon Rampant (Gu[les.])

[Machell's Notes: I.578 & III.222]
*{Tis Elizabeth in the Pedegree; see my book.}[30]
†{Note I think the escallops are rather ermins.}
‡{? What in the 2nd!} {2. The second is Wharton with crest and supporters and motto – quartering a quarterly Coat.[31]
1. Three Lyons rampant in chiefe, & 4 escallops in bass, 2. Quartering a Bend &c.
3. The third is Wharton quartering the same quarterly Coates […][32] Note that here ar onely 3 ~~escallops~~ \ ermins / impaleing a Coate of Quarters: Sc. 1. a Lyon Rampant; 2. 3 Bends. 3. a Chiefe and Saltier.[33] 4ly (in the Lower Course) on a fess 3 florrdelus;[34] 5. A Bend twixt six martlets.}
[III.222]: Query: monuments, inscriptions & armes above Hartley quier. In Lord Whartons. William Wharton of Mallerstang. Piper + walke.

[27] Here, Machell has drawn a distinct line leading to his sketch of four coats of arms, although the top right is labelled, 'in S. wind[ow].'
[28] Here there is a tiny descriptive sketch. An orle is a narrow bordure following the outline of a shield but not extending to its edge. *OED*.
[29] MS: '{?} ~~These Impaleing a Coate of' …~~ {?} ~~sc. 1. a Lyon Rampant; 2. another~~.' This scored-through text is barely legible.
[30] According to Nicolson & Burn, the inscription (which Machell seems to have found difficult to decipher, see Fig. 1.13.1) presented as 'Elizabetham': *N&B1*, 541.
[31] MS: 'quartering a quarterly Coat ~~of 3 Lyons Rampant in chief … d quartering a Bend~~.'
[32] A word here has perished.
[33] Saltire: see the English Glossary.
[34] Fleur de lys/lis. 1600s: flower de luce (plural, luces). *OED*.

[III.211]

{Wharton Quier}
On the opposite side is Wharton quier, much of the same bigness but divided by a screen under 2

[III.212]

Arches with a piller in the midle, in the center of which is placed a large Through with the Armes & Quarterings of Lord Whartons family on ends & sides of It {& round about the edge is this inscription} [blank].[35] And above on the table is [blank] Wharton[36] with his 2 Wives, one on the right hand & the other on [blank]. This monument also is \ but / of huen stone: materiam supe[rab]at opus.[37] And all about are[38] seates of wainscot, rale & ballasters, locked up; that I could take an exact account of it.[39] Beneath this Quier is a vault to Bury in and Tis said before the makeing of It, that they buryed under a great marble Through near the church doer; and there is this probability of it that on Edge of the Tab[l]e, about the midle of it, is an Escutchion with a manch upon it; which shews however, that it has belongd to som of Whartons.
Nor is it any derogation to them to be buried, since it shews their humility; & beside till of late it was not permitted to Bury in the church no not in the church yard.

[I.573][40]

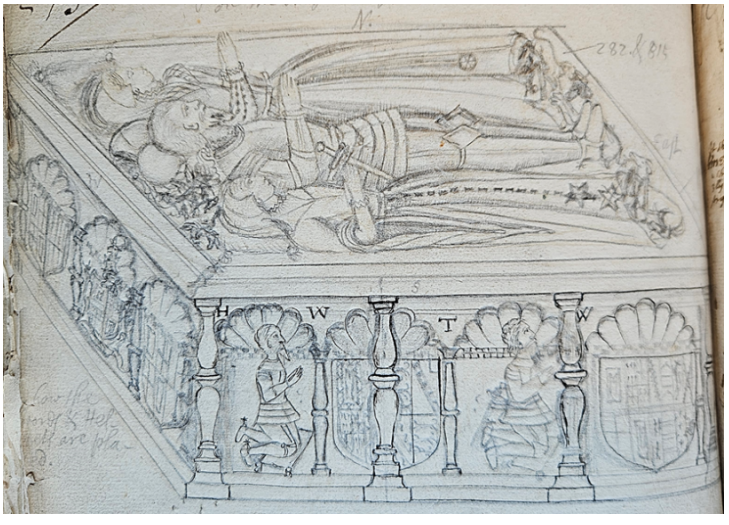


Figure 1.13.3. Wharton Tomb. 'In Wharton Quire which is on the N. side of the chancel. How the swords and helmets are planned.' I.573.[41]

[35] 'Thomas Whartonus jaceo hic, hic utraque conjux; Elionora suum hinc, hinc habet Anna locum. En tibi, terra, tuum, carnes ac ossa resume; In coelos animas, tu Deus alme, tuum.' See *N&B1*, 540.
[36] Thomas, first Lord Wharton: see *N&B1*, 540.
[37] Quotation taken from Ovid, *Metamorphoses* 2.5. The context is a description of the Palace of the Sun, which is made of precious metals, stone, ivory etc.; but when Vulcan engraved an image on the palace doors, 'materiam superabat opus': 'the work transcended the material.'
[38] MS: 'and'.
[39] Written as seen, although perhaps Machell meant 'that I could not take an exact account of it'.
[40] MS.I.572 contains a tiny drawing of a head, similar to the figures on the tomb on the Figure on I.573.
[41] The numbers 282 and 815 appear to the right of the drawing. Note the praying hands, which do not exist today, the arms having disappeared from the elbows down. In 1871, Rev. J.F. Hodgson described the tomb as 'pitifully mutilated', due, he thought, to a 'sudden and violent catastrophe such as the falling of the roof of the chapel', severing all the hands and forearms from the bodies: J.F. Hodgson, 'Kirkby Stephen Church' (read there in 1871), CW1, 4 (1880), 178-249, 206.

[I.574A][42]

In Wharton Quire, which is on the north side
A large Monument \ on / the Table of which (being 2 yards square) are 3 figures: of a man & 2 women at length*. This is supported \ with / VIII Ballisters, one at each corner & two & two on either side, S. & N.[43]

At the west end are 3 Coates of Arms, Sc.
I. Whartons with the Accession of the Bordure Invecked &c. Quartering a Quarterly-Coate, wherein the 1t \ [&] 3 / is 3 Ermins in Bass and 3 Lyons rampant in chief†. The 2 \ & 4 / Quarterly (Gules & Argent) a Bend \ Bendlet or fillet / Or &c. Then Wharton agane in the 3rd Quarter, & the Quarterly Coate \ agane / in the 4th. These (as Whartons \ quarterings /) impale another Coate of 9 quarters: 5/4: Sc.
1. (Azure within a Bordure Ingraled) a Lyon rampant (Or)‡.
2. (Gules within a Bordure ingraled) a Lyon rampant (Or).
3. A Bend sinister, bendy.
4. A quarterly Coate with 3 garbes {Gules, 3 garbes Or} in the 1t quarter?
5. (Gules), a saltier (Argent).
6. In the Lower Row (Argent) a Bend between VI martlets (Gules).

[Machell's Notes: I.574A & I.574]
*Sc. of Thomas the 1t Lord Wharton & his two wifes. About which is writ on the edges thereof begining at the west end: Thomas Whartonus.
†{It should have bin Ermin, in a chiefe Azure; 3 Lyons rampant Argent.}
‡{These are the Armes of Ann his 2nd wife: Sc. Ann the daughter of George Earl of Salop. Note. But they are in the ped[igree] Gules: a Lyon Rampant in bordure Or. Q. if not Bendy of 10 – as at Wharton Hall. fig. 3. This for dignityes sake is placed 1t – allthough the Armes of the 2nd wife – on a rafter at her head where she lyes on his left.}

[I.574]

7. (Or) a Frett (Gules).
8. (Argent) 2 Lyons passant (Gules).
9. (Argent) a Lyon Rampant (Gules).

II.

In the midle of this west-end is Wharton with its Quarterings as before; only differing in this: That here (in the Quarterly Coate which he Quarters) are 4 Ermins: whereas the others had only three. But both are errours \ in the Graver / for the field should be Ermin. This is also adorned with Crist & supporter (as in Bloomes *Guillams* which may be drawn out at any time)[44] and with the motto, which at Wharton hall appears to be this:

PIEA SVR EN FAYTS DARMYS {or LE SYR &c.}[45]

III.

Wharton with his Quarterings, as before (but with 3 Ermins only in the 1t quarter of the Quarterly Coate) impaling a Coate of 5 Quarters: Sc.
1. Argent. A Lyon Rampant S[able] (which is Stapletons); {The armes [of] Elionor, a 1t wife}; the

[42] The text here is written in ink over text in pencil, now obscured.
[43] A second tomb of Wharton and his two wives is to be found in the village church at Healaugh near Selby in Yorkshire, where the manor house also belonged to the Whartons. Sir Thomas Wharton's will ordered his body to be buried at Healaugh but W.F. Hodgson argued that his actual resting place is the tomb in Kirkby Stephen Church, see Hodgson, 'Kirkby Stephen Church', 244-45.
[44] Richard Blome, *A Display of Heraldry: manifesting a more easie access to the knowledge thereof than hath been hitherto published by any, through the benefit of method; whereunto it is now reduced by the study and industry of John Guillim, late Pursuivant at Arms.* (5th edn. London, 1679).
[45] The motto is, 'PLEASUR EN FAYTS D'ARMYS': Pleasure in feats of Arms: see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes II* (Kendal, 1889), 138.

sec[ond] wife of Wharton;[46] & the rest are the quarterings thereto belonging. {These I take\ are / to be the Lord \ Wharton / & his 2 wifes.[47] They [blank]}
2. Thre[e]-bends.
3. A Chiefe & Saltier.
4. (In the Lower Course) \ Argent / on a fess \ Azure / 3 floredeluces \ Or. /
5. Argent, a Bend, between 6 martlets \ Gules. /

[I.576]

On the S. side – supported with 4 ballisters whereof 2 are at the Corner – are 4 niches, & in the 1[t] an old man with a \ long / picked[48] forked beard in Armour & Sword, being The Lord Wharton kneeling upon a cushion in a praying posture – with his \ fetherd / helmet before him and above it, H.W. at each triangle.
2[d]. Whartons armes as before quartering a quarterly coate, of 3 Lyons Rampand and 3 ~~escallops~~ \ Ermins / in the first; Quarterly, a Bend in the second. The 3[rd] as second: the 4[th] as the first – impaleing a Quarterly Coate of three hounds […][49] courant in the first, a bend in the second: \ with a cant[on] in sinister point / a Bend charged with a crescent in the top between 6 martlets: \ the 3.[50] / The fourth as the first*.
3. An old Knight with a picked beard not so much forked, & a side helmet before him, above which is T.W.†.
4. Wharton (as before) impaleing a quarterly coate of 8.[51] The first being a bend: The second a fess between 2 cheverons: The 3[rd] a Lyon Rampant crowned. The 4[th] a saltier ingraled: The 5[th] 3 fishes: The sixth 3 barrs: The 7[th] powdered floredeluces: the 8[th] an eagle and childe.

The East End[52] hath 3 scalloped niches, over which a S[croll] in which is writ as followeth –



Figure 1.13.4. Wharton Tomb East End: detail. I.576.

GENS Whartona genus. Dat honores dextera victrix
In Scotos. Stapletona domus mihi quam dedit uxor
Elionora facit ter bina prole parentem.
Binam adimunt teneris. Binam iuvenilibus annis.
Fata mihi. Dat nomen avi mihi bina superstes.
Anna secunda uxor celebri est de Gente Salopum.[53]

[46] This phrase is unclear.
[47] This sentence is written very faintly in the margin.
[48] 'Picked': having a sharp point; spiked. *OED*.
[49] An interlineation here appears to be, 'or nigh', but it is unclear.
[50] 'In the third quarter.'
[51] Machell's no. 4 contains tiny sketches of five of the heraldic symbols mentioned in the passage.
[52] The east end of the tomb in Wharton's Quire.
[53] 'The Wharton family triumphs by its strong right arm against the Scots, and the house of Stapleton gave me my wife Elianor, who brought forth six children; two of them died young, two in youth; two survive me; Ann is my second wife from the famed family of Shropshire.' Quoted in *N&B1*, 541.

[Machell's Notes: I.576]

*{For Henry Wharton knight who marryed Jane the daughter & heir of Thomas Maleverer of Allerton – says my Pedigree – but makes him younger brother of Thomas Lord Wharton, & son of Thomas the 1ᵗ Lord Wharton.}

†{for Thomas Whartons eldest son (says my Pedigree) of Thomas the 1ᵗ Lord Wharton, by Elionora Stapleton his 1ᵗ wife; who maryed Ann the daughter of Rob. Ratclife of Sussex: Argent a Bend, graled Sable.}

[I.577]

On the north side [of this tomb]

Appear 4 Ballisters to support the great Table stone, one at each corner and 2 in the midle space betwixt them. Here ar 4 niches also and in the 1. a Coate quarterly: The 1ᵗ a fess fusilly. The 2ᵈ 3 Barrs with a Canton in chief point: Third as second: 4ᵗʰ as 1ᵗ {These must be the armes of Will. Pennington, who maried Johanna daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton} impaleing Wharton, quartering a quarterly coate as before. The 1ᵗ\ 3 / Lyons & \ 3 / Ermins*.

2. In the next [niche], a Gentlewoman praying versus orientem (as they are all)[54] with her booke open before her and above, in the triangles,[55] J.P. ~~which seems to be by her dress one of his wifes~~ for Johanna†.

3. In the Third [niche], 1ᵗ Musgrave ~~quartering~~ \ 2ⁿᵈ / a Quarterly Coate of 3 daggers in the first & 3 annulets in the second &c. {?} These must be the Armes of Sir Richard Musgrave, who maryed Agnes the 2ⁿᵈ daughter of Sir Thomas Wharton. Thirdly ~~Mus~~ the same quarterly coate agane; & 4ly a Cross flory impaleing Wharton, quartering the quarterly Coates (as before) of the Lyons & ~~escallops~~ Ermins &c.

4. [niche]. Another lady praying as before, haveing buttons downe her sleves in severall rows (the other haveing lace, and both, ruffs about their hands & necks). And above is A.M., perhaps for Agnes, the daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton‡ 38. Henry VIII [1546-47], married to Ri. Musgrave son of Will.[56]

About the stone on the Edge thereof begining at the west end is writ

{w. side}† THOMAS Whartonus Iaceo HIC. hic utraque conjuns
{s. side} Elionora suum hinc. hinc habet Anna locum
{e. side}[57] En tibi terra tuum. carnes ac ossa. Resume
{n. side} In coelos animas tu deus alme. tuum.[58]

On the Friese of the screne above the Ballasters are several plane manches as at fig. 3.

[Machell's Notes: I.577]

*N.B. A note that in all the Coates the Manch is charged upon a projecting piece invecked which stands higher than the Border.

†{Uxor William Pennington: see my Booke of Pedigrees}.

‡See M Ped[igree], (but the M.\ now / are not le[gible].

[I.580]

Opposite to this, under an Arch in the South wall of the said Quier

Under the Arch Betwixt the Chancel and Hartley quier; said to be Sir Andrew Hartcley, Earle of Carlile. X.[59]

---

[54] 'Facing east, as are they all.'

[55] Instead of writing text, Machell here inserted a triangle symbol.

[56] MS: 'And above is A.M., perhaps for ~~AgNus~~ {A.M. Agnes: the daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton, 38 Henry VIII} married to Ri. Musgrave son of Will.'

[57] In the margin here is a small sketch resembling a bow.

[58] [West side] 'Thomas Wharton here I lie and here my wife' [South side] 'Elianora has her place, as does Anna' [East side] 'See. Earth receive again these flesh and bones' [North side] 'Thou Lord gently receive these souls into thy heavens.' See *N&B1,* 540.

[59] The 'X' demonstrates disagreement. Both the cross and the passage that follows have been formed by a different hand, a reminder that later antiquaries consulted Machell's MS while it was housed in Carlisle Cathedral library. One possible contender is Bishop Lyttelton (bishop of Carlisle, 1762-68), who, for example, borrowed Machell's MSS Volumes 3, 4 and 6 between 31 July and 15 August, 1764. See CAC(C), DCHA/5/6/1/15. Library Register 1703-1873.

X. Harcla Earl of Carlisle was degraded from his Earldom & Knighthood & afterwards beheaded for High Treason. Tis not likely therefore that his sword would have been represented on his monument, much less his Coat of Armour on his Breast. In Heylins *Help to History*,[60] we have a coat of arms very different from this ascribed to Andrew Harcla: viz. Argent, a cross Gules with a martlett in a canton Sable.[61]

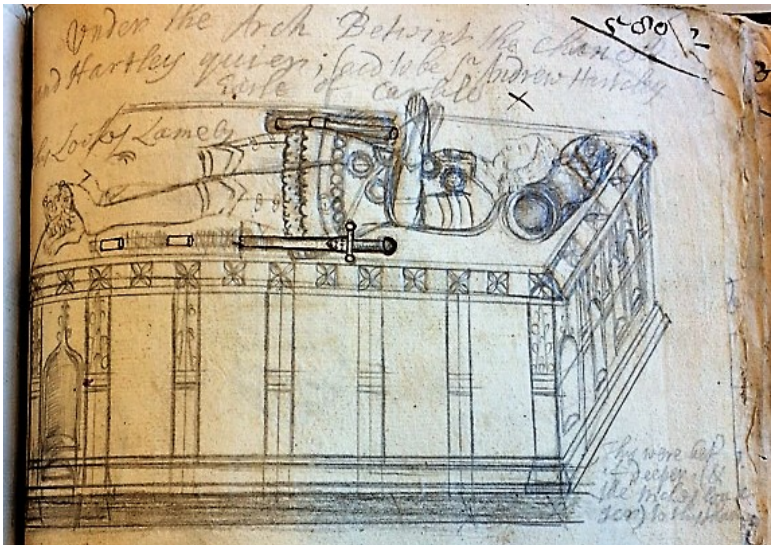


Figure 1.13.5. 'Said to be Sir Andrew Hartcley, Earle of Carlile'. 'X'. I.580.[62]

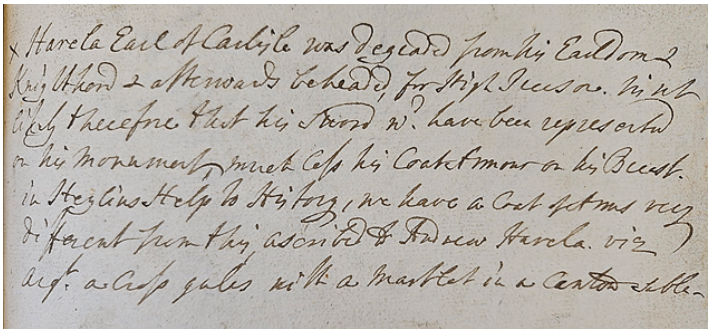


Figure 1.13.6. Example of the hand of a later writer who questioned the provenance of the monument above. I.580.

[60] Peter Heylyn (1599/1600-1662), historian, Anglican polemicist; supporter of Archbishop Laud: Ἡρωολογία *Anglorum; or, A help to English history. Containing a succession of all the kings of England, the English, Saxons, and the Britons, the kings and princes of Wales; the kings and lords of Man, and the Isle of Wight. As also, of all the dukes, marquises, earls, and bishops thereof. With the descriptions of the places from whence they had their titles. Together with the names and ranks of the viscounts, barons, and baronets, of England, by Peter Heylyn, D.D. Prebendary of Westminster* (1641).

[61] The other hand ceases here. From stylistic evidence, J.F. Hodgson assigned the tomb to Sir Richard Musgrave, d.1469. Traditionally, the occupant had killed the last wild boar on Wild-boar Fell, and, when the tomb was opened during the rebuilding of 1847, the tusk of a wild boar was found. Two bodies had been interred, but only one within a lead lining. Hodgson imagined the unwrapped figure to be Musgrave's wife. See J.F. Hodgson, 'Kirkby Stephen Church', 200-03.

[62] 'X' refers to comments made in pencil, below.

[Machell's Notes: I.580]

This looks lamely.[63]
This were better if deeper (& the niches longer).[64]

[I.582][65]

[Armorial Glass in Kirkby Stephen Church]

[Key]
In the quier
1. East window.
2. South window.
3. On Wharton Skreen.
4. South window in the church.
5. On the Northside the vestry enterance.

Over the steeple doer[66]
1. Clifford Lord of Westmorland.
2. Forsan Craven & Musgrave quarterly.[67]
3. [Blank] of Smardall hall.
4. Musgrave and Ward.
5. Wharton & [blank] for Salop. Perhaps for the 2nd wife but that it [is] a Lyon Rampant within a Bordure.

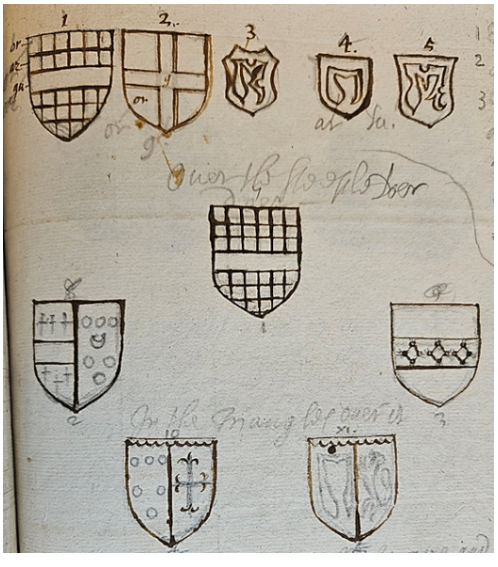


Figure 1.13.7. Armorial Glass in Kirkby Stephen Church. I.582.

[63] Written above Machell's unfinished sketch of the right leg. 'Lamely': 'in a lame manner; with halting steps or limbs; haltingly; imperfectly, defectively, inefficiently.' *OED*. Did Machell mean that his sketch of the limb was imperfectly drawn, or that the limb itself was defective? Presumably, the former.
[64] Pencilled comment relating to the bottom right of the monument. The last three words [not transcribed] are, 'to this […]'.
[65] MS.I.581 contains a sketch of an unattributed coat of arms (not shown here).
[66] The 'steeple' is the tower.
[67] This is an editorial suggestion, based on almost illegible material.

In the triangles over it[68]
This, by the impaleing of Musgrave and Ward, shows that the steple was built since that match, for about that time, which was in the Reigne of Henry 7.; or more likely in Henry the VIII time at the desolution of the Abbyes: And these gentlemen whos Armes are here placed were the builders or chiefe Benefactors to it.

_____

[III.221]

[3.] {Market}!

Kirkby Stephan with the manner affordes a market towne & the most considerable buildings It is a market towne by Grant &c. and conteineth in it [blank] families.

[I.569]

Roger (2 son of Robert de Clifford, Lord of the Honor of Ableby, who allso came to the same dignity after the decease of his Brother Lord Robert Clifford) in his Brothers life time, obteined of King Edward 3., 2 weekly marketts & 2 fares for the Town of Kirkby Stephan.[69]

[III.180][70]

The market (they say) was on Fridayes at Kirkby, till changed in Queen Elizabeths time to Monday.

[III.190]

Munday Market; Fair: Whitsunday & Luke.[71] A fair 2 dayes afore St Luke; another on St Luke; another every Whitsun Wednesday & Thorsday.[72] And for Thorsday, two dayes till St Luke. & generilly beasts all the year.[73]

[IV.537]

{Ad Kirkeby Stephen ad Reg. de Wederhal}[74]
{Anno Reg Regis Ed. XX^{0}. anno gre. 1291}Hugone de [blank] Cressingham clro Will. de Ormesby et alijs justiciarij Itinerantibus.}[75]

{Fol. 121 b.}
The Abbat of St Maryes Yorke was summond to answer to our Lord the King in a Quo warra[n]to habere clamat mercatum in Kirkby Stephan sine Licentia et voluntate D[omi]ni Regis et progenitorum suoru[m] Regum Anglie etc.[76] And the Abbat came by his attorney & sayd that he did not clame to have any mercat in the said village. And Thomas de Culwenne & the rest of Jury upon Enq[uiry], found for the Abbat: That he did \ never / not hold any mercat there nor receive any profit by the said marcat. Ideo q[uo]ad hoc ad p[re]sens inde sine die etc.[77]
But this action I suppose was wrong, laid upon a mistake of \ Kirkby Stephan for / Kirkby Lonesdale; where he held a marcat and cast the king in it at the same Assise, as may be seen in K. Loansd.
N.B. Here note the Assises were then after Michaelmas; I suppose because, being a leisure time & after the corn & hay was in, the people might better attend the judges at the generall session of Assise.

[68] See nos 4 and 5 above, Steeple Door.
[69] This is recorded in *N&B1,* 544; a footnote gives 'Dugdale MS' as the source.
[70] Material taken from a page of rough notes in Machell's Vol. III.
[71] St Luke's Day is 18 October.
[72] MS: 'Weds. Another every Whitsun Wednesday & Thorsday.'
[73] *N&BI*, 544, provides a clearer picture: 'And King James the first, by his charter [10 March, 3rd year of his reign] granted to George Earl of Cumberland (instead of the aforesaid market and fairs) one market on Monday in every week, and two fairs yearly: one on the Wednesday, Thursday and Friday after Whitsuntide, and the other on two days next before the feast of St Luke and on that feast day.'
[74] See Prescott (ed.), *The Register of the Priory of Wetherhal*.
[75] 'In the 20th year of the reign of Edward […] in the Gregorian year 1291, Hugh de Cressingha[m] being chancellor with de Ormesby and other circuit justices.' (Edward I reigned from 1272 to 1307).
[76] 'By what authority he claimed to hold a market in Kirby Stephem without a licence and at the will of the Lord King and his forefathers the Kings of England etc.'
[77] 'Therefore, this matter [was adjourned] thence for the moment, with no fixed date for resumption.'

[4.] Kirkby Stephen School

[III.179]

! A free school at Kirkby. Mr Rawlet late minister writ several books?[78]

[III.198]

Concerning Kirkby Stephen School 1676
Westmorland. Kirkby Stephens & Parish
These and the notes of Apleby school to be restored to T. Machell fellow of Queens College in Oxford.[79]

[III.195]

The Free Grammar School of Kirkby Stephen[80]
Founded by Thomas Lord Wharton Barron of Wharton the County of Westmerland as appears by the Letters Pattents made the 22th day of November in the eight yeare of Queene Elizabeth [1565]; by which letters pattent she gives power to the said Thomas Lord Wharton to settle the said schoole out of his Rectorey and impropriation of the parish of Kirkby Stephen; and the revenues of the said schoole to be 26li 6s 8d.,[81] paid, but the same to be sett and paid by the said Thomas Lord Wharton as he shall thinke fit to nominate and appoint as also to make fit and wholesome Statutes and Constitutons for the said Schoole as may be thought fit by the bishope of the diocese of Carlile.

And afterwards the said Thomas Lord Wharton vizt in the tenth year of the said Queene [1567-68] makes Constitutons and Statutes for the said schoole and appoints 12li in the \ yeare / to be paid yearely out of the said Rectory at Whitsontyd and Martinmas by eaquell porthens to the Schoolmaster for his wages and power to appoint and make choyce of one of his schollers for an Usher who shall have xxvjs viijd and paid him out of the said rectory and 6li 6s 8d a yeare to the poore of the Parish and Towne of Kirkby Stephen aforesaid and for repaier of the schoole and 6li 6s 8d to two schollers of the said schoole as exebitions to mentaine them at eather universetey of this Land. Two said schollers first to be chosen out of sutch schollars as are or was borne of the Lord Whartons lands and for want of sutch schollars then to two of the said schoole to be chosen by the Lord Wharton or the schoolmaster for the time being and no schollars to have the said Exhibition above the space of seven years*; nor aney Usher to continue above the space of the \ said / yeares.
But of late yeares things have been otherwise ordered and the former Constitutions not regarded but 20li a yeare paid to the Schoole master and nothing to the poore of the said parish or towne nor aney thing paid to aney schollars as an Exhibition at eather Universetey so that there hath beene for many yeares 6li 6s 8d paid detained by the now Lord Wharton and is at this day contrary to the letters pattent aforesaid for the letters patent settles 26li 6s 8d to be paid to the use of the School master and the poore of the parish and repayer of the School-house and no otherwise; and this to be paid to the Governors of the said Schoole and they to pay the same to the Schoole master and poore as sett downe by the said Lord Wharton in his Constitutions.

Scholmasters
The first was one Mr Edward Minyes borne at Castlehill neare Eadenbrough in Scottland who fled hether in the time of Edward the sixt for his religion, being then of the Reformation as appears by a writing I have by me, he being my great grandfather by my mother.
After him one Mr Hinth, but for the rest I finde nothing of them till 1622 that Mr Richard Barlow was elected School master.
Jan.1t 1629 Mr William Shaw elected.

---

[78] *N&B1*, 538: 'In 1673, John Rawlet, M.A. was instituted [to Kirkby Stephen parish] on a presentation by the same patron [Philip Lord Wharton]. This Mr Rawlet was author of a volume of divine poems; and of a book yet well known by the name of *The Christian Monitor*. His character as a most exemplary pious and good man remaineth to this day.' He was vicar from 1673 to 1680. CCED.
[79] Only the last sentence of this passage is in Machell's hand.
[80] 'A History of Kirkby Stephen Free Grammar School', written in 1676 using original documents and sent to Machell at Queen's College, Oxford, by George Fothergill, 'Clerk of the Peace of the County of Westmorland'.
[81] See *N&B1*, 542.

June the 28th 1630. Mr William Morland elected.
December 17th 1633. Mr William Williss elected who contained till the yeare 1674.
Now Mr Samuel Shaw who was elected 1675.[82]
I find little to be reported of any of them while School masters; onley the first eminent for knowledge in the Grammer and that he had great store of gentlemens sons his schollers out of Westmerland and the adjacent countreye whereof he tabled at least xx in his owne house.

Governors†
Sir Philip Musgrave of Hartley Castle, Baronett; Richard Musgrave Esq., his heire apparent; John Rawlett, now vicar of Kirkby Stephen;[83] Christopher Harrison, Vicar of Brough;[84] John Ardra, Rector of Musgrave; [85] Thomas Denton, Rector of Crosby Garret;[86] Robert Skaif of Winton, Gent.; and George Fothergill of Tarn-house, Gentleman.
No libraryes nor manuscripts belonging to the said Schoole, nor neare adjoyning that's publiq.[87]

This account I had from Mr George Fothergill clerk of the peace for the county of Westmorland. Turn over.[88]

[Machell's Notes: III.195]

*{exhibition for 7 years.}[89]
†{Alter the order.}

[III.197]

An Exhibition granted by Mr John Knewstubb[90] for two schollers in the Colledge of St John the Evangelest in Cambridge; [deed] dated the 7th of October 1623, betweene the said John Knewstubb of Cockfeild and John Garden of Mayland in Essex of the one p[ar]tie and the Master, Fellows and Schollers of the said Colledge on the other p[ar]tie; they give to the said Colledge an annuity of eleaven pounds yearely to be payed forth of certaine lands called Squires, Squeers or Squers in the parish and feilds of South Minster and Steeple in Essex, to be disposed on as followeth: twenty shillings yearely to the Colledge & 10li for the Exhibition of two poore Schollers commonly called Subsissers,[91] to either of them 5li; the one a Scholler borne and brought up in the parish of Kirkby Stephen and of Mr Knewstubbs name and kindred, next, of kindred only; and for lack of such, any other that hath beene of one whole yeare in the Schoole of Kirkby Stephen and for lack of such, any other to be taken forth of the Schoole of Appleby, the nomination of which scholler to be allwayes by the Vicar and Schoolmaster of Kirkby Stephen for the time being, in a letter subscribed with both their hands and sent to the Master and Felowes of the said Colledge and the said 5li to be paid yearely till the said Schollers be of the time and standing to take the degree of Master of Arts and shall be capeable or have for their better maintenance any Schollership in the said Colledge […][92] And the

[82] According to CCED, Samuel Shaw was vicar of Kirkby Stephen from 1681 until his death in 1700. Another schoolmaster not mentioned by Fothergill was Robert Bulfield or Burfell, who was master from 1673-75, after which he became a schoolmaster in Carlisle. CCED.
[83] Vicar, 1673-81.
[84] Christopher Harrison was vicar of Brough, 1664-95.
[85] John Ardrey was rector of Musgrave, 1671-84. CCED.
[86] Thomas Denton was rector of Crosby Garrett, 1663-91. CCED.
[87] The style adopted suggests a response to Machell's questionnaire.
[88] This sentence is written in Machell's hand.
[89] The margin comment is in Machell's hand.
[90] *N&B1*: 'This John Knewstubb was born at Kirkby Stephen, fellow of St John's College [Cambridge] and rector of Cockfield, where he died in the year next after establishing these exhibitions.' Nicolson and Burn go on to list Knewstubb's publications and monumental inscription, *N&BI*, 543.
[91] 'Subsizers' or 'subsizars': At Cambridge University, this was an undergraduate receiving financial assistance from their college. Some colleges, including St John's, Trinity, and Emmanuel, distinguished between sizars and subsizars. Subsizars were not entitled to specific endowments, but were maintained by Fellow-Commoners and Fellows. Originally the subsizar was required to perform various domestic services within the college. The category eventually fell out of use, although not before the middle of the 20th century. *OED*.
[92] Here, some scored-through text (3cm) is illegible.

other 5[li] to a Scholler borne in the Parish of Cockfeild in Suffolk or else such of the Schoole of Sudbury, or else in Bury in the said Countey[93] with the like conditions for his kindred.[94]

[Machell's Notes: III.197]

{Exhibition 5[li] till 7 yrs.}[95]

[5. Kirkby Stephen Parish]

[I.496]

To Kirkby Stephen Church belong Kirkby Stephen. Hartley, Keyber,[96] and the Outsides: Mallerstang, Smardale, Souleby, Wateby, Wharton, Winton.

[I.568][97]

[A. Value.]

Winton anno 8 Ed.2. [1314-1315]

Est Ibidem unum Capitale messuagium &c.	
There is there one manner house downe 19. Ed. 3.[98] worth per Annum	0: 1: 0
xxv Acres of Demane land, worth 6d per Acres Annual, S.e,[99]	2:10: 0
xx Acres of Demane me\a/dow, each worth per Annum 1s, su est	1: 0: 0
Hee (Sc. Robert de Clifford) hath allso there Foreland and wast which is worth by the yere	0: 5: 0
There allso free Tenents which pay per Annum	0: 6: 4 {ob q[a])
xxviij oxgangs of Land quor quod lib valet per Annum 5s, S.e	7: 0: 0 {7li}[100]
x messuages cotterall quor quod lib valet per Annum 1s, e.s.	0:10: 0
2 water Milne Burnt, quod valet per Annum	4: 0: 0
Ex Inq[uisition] Cap apud Apleby anno superdicto summa	xv[li], xij, 4d – ob q[a]
Vid Apleby	

{8. Ed. 2. [1314-15]}

There is there One Messuage Capital or Mannor house which is worth per Annum	0: 1: 0

19. Ed. 3.

70 Acres (19.Ed. III) of Demane Land att 4d per Acre; valet per Annum	0:16: 8 {ac. 67}[101]
2 acres & ½ of medow quarum quelibet Acra,[102] valet per Annum 16d, sum est	0: 3: 4 {idem}[103]
A certaine marish[104] held by Henry de Warthecop quod valet per Annum	0: 8: 0
{pasture called Kirkbycorne} 36 oxgangs of Land quarum quelibet	

[93] Bury St Edmunds.
[94] The contents of III.197 were copied almost verbatim by N&B; see text and acknowledgement in *N&B1*, 543: 'From an account in Mr Machell's collection, in the handwriting of Mr George Fothergill of Tarn-house, who was then one of the governors of the school.'
[95] Note in Machell's hand.
[96] Kaber.
[97] Also numbered p.22.
[98] 1345-46.
[99] 'Suum est.'
[100] The 0 in the shilling column has been heavily drawn to cover a numeral beneath, now illegible.
[101] 67 acres in the time of Edward III.
[102] 'Of which each is worth.'
[103] 'The same.'
[104] Marsh.

valet per Annum [blank] & sum est	9: 0: 0 {32}
x Messuages Coterellorum,[105] each worth	
per Annum 1s, et sum est	0:10: 0 {40 cott.}
1 water milne, et valet per Annum vi^{li}	6: 0: 0 {20s}

[Mallerstang] {Pendragon} {8. Ed. 2.}[1314-1315]

Allso there is there in the Vale of Mallerstang	
One castle which is called Pendraggon ~~worth per Annum~~	
1 vaccary, held by Andrew de Hartlay[106] & red[it][107] per Annum	0: 0: 6
6 vaccaryes more, which are worth per Annum 20s a piece, & sum est	6: 0: 0
Allso Joyst[108] there, is yerely worth 6^{li}	6: 0: 0
1 Turbarie ibidem. valet per Annum 6s 8d	0: 6: 8
Allso the pleas & perquisites of the Court amount yerely to	0:13: 3
Note Here Pendragon & Kirkby Stephen: sum est	xxix^{li}. xix$^{s.}$ vj^{d}.

(0[109] both under one [blank] But whether this be the whole or ½ dub
Ex eodem escheato {1. Ed. 3.}[110]

[III.222]

[B. Division.]

Constablewicks	Chaples	Gentlemens Houses
Mallerstang	Chaple	Pendraggon
Wharton & Neatby[111]	Wharton Hall	Wharton Hall
Kirkby Stephen	Church	
Hartley	Castle	Castle
Soulby	0	0
Smardale	0	Hall
Wateby	A school	
Winton	A school shut	Scaife
Keyber & the outsides	0	0
Q. Rookeby	0	0

[III.181]

[C.] The Bounder*

West-pit House to Water-Houses exclusively 10. It is bounded on the N. with Musgrave \ & part of Brough / parishes; on the East, with the remainder of Brough in Westm'land / ~~Ruma Kirk~~ & Bowes parish[112] in Yorkeshire; and on the S. with Grinton & Aiskar[113] parishes in the said county;[114] on the West with Gastil in the said County;[115] and Russendale & Crosby parishes in Westmorland, the Perambulation of which goeth thus:

Perambulation

[105] Cottars' houses.
[106] A blot covers the last letter.
[107] The return per annum.
[108] Agistment.
[109] The 0 is followed by a blot.
[110] 'From the same escheat.' Escheat: document relating to the lapsing of land to the Crown or to the lord of the manor, on the death of the owner intestate without heirs. *OED*.
[111] Nateby.
[112] MS: 'parish~~es~~'.
[113] Aysgarth.
[114] Marginalia here are partly obscured by the binding.
[115] Garsdale.

Begin at the foote of the river Below[116] where it enters Eden near to ~~Mr~~ Blands House, which is in Little Musgrave & a ¼ of a mile above the church. Thence \ E. / up the river till you com at the head of Heaning Wood[117] where Brough parish coms in {all the while divideing it from Musgrave parish}. \ Thence up the said river / till you com at the foote (of that water which runns under Buckle Bridge†.)[118] Thence S. up the said water till you com at Woofa Gill-head‡ where Potter-beck comes into it. Thence E. ~~till you~~ up Potter-beck till you \ com / at the foote of the hill calld Moulds by the said water. Thence S.E. to the top of the said hill, & so on by the coale-way to Westland Pit House, commonly calld the Hither Pit House, where Brough & Bowes & Grinton parish meet[119] (all this wile divideing it from Brough) {& thence S.} up then [blank]⸸.
Thence westward in a direct line to Browneber-Edge‖. \ And so / ~~thence~~ lineally to the \ the midle of the / Nine Standers on Caudber Edge;[120] thence S. on Caudber Edge till you com at \ an hurrock voc[atur][121] / Caudber ~~Standers~~ Standerd; thence W. down Lady Dike till you com at Lady Bog; & so on in a streight line to \ an hurrock of stones calld / Hollow-mill cross.

[Machell's Notes: III.181]

*Kirkby Stephen. Will. Bernard – a bo[u]nder-man.
†Called?[122]
‡{Query, as writ of Will. Shat.}[123]
⸸{Enquire of Robert Moss of Hĭggerscale.}[124]
‖Here Swadal clames to Brownbur Edge \ as Hewdal / and Winton clames to Wittsundale head, which is ½ a mile one into another.

[III.182][125]

(a.) Thence agane W. to a gray stone at a place calld Fells End; \ thence S. to Uldal gill head; / thence agane W. to an hurrock of stones on the top of Fells End; thence S. on Mallerstang Edge as heavens water divide to the top High Seat. This Swalldal clame.
(b.) Thence S. lineally from Uldal Gill head to High Seat Top. Thence as heaven water divides, to Hugh Morvils* Seat.Thence S. to a standard ½ a mile of; where Grinton \ Aiskar / & Kirkby parish \ meet / – all this while divideing it[126] \ from the said / Grinton ~~parish in~~ \ in the county of / Yorkeshire. Thence from the said Standard, lineall[y] descending \ W./ to Lile Helgil head (~~where Eden springs~~). Thence W. in a streight l[ine] to a stander of stones at the South end of ~~Litle Baughil~~ \ Swarth Fell / where Aiskar & Gastil \ & Russendale / meet (on ~~Baughel~~ \ Swarth Fell / Edge.) / Thence[127] to a place called Galloway-gate \ ~~where Gastil & Russendale meet~~. / Thence N.W. (by a streight line) to the S.

[116] River Belah.
[117] MS: 'Thence \ E. / up the river till you \ com / [3cm crossed through: illeg.] ~~and so up the water~~' at the head of Heaning Wood'. Haining Wood, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 61.
[118] In 1594, Sir Cuthbert Buckle, Lord Mayor of London and a native of Stainmore, left £20, 'to mending of highways between Mayden Castle and Bayllye Bridge.' This is the low road from Stainmore to Kaber and Belah Bridge. Buckle's Bridge is probably now called Oxenthwaite Bridge: *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[119] MS: 'where Bro ~~then directly~~ ugh & Bowes & Grinton parish meet'.
[120] The nine standards (standers) are a set of boundary markers on a hill (Nine Standards Rigg on Hartley Fell) between Winton and Hartley. Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 29.
[121] 'called.'
[122] Here, there is an unclear margin comment, 'Lo[r]d Ten[emen]t there'.
[123] Woofergill is on Stainmore, close to the river Belah, near High Ewebank: Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 60; OS Ref. NY 85349 09433.
[124] 'Heggerscale', Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 5.
[125] Machell used inverted commas to surround this text from the page top down to the place named as 'Dowfin Stye'. From this point, the text (except the last two lines marked (d.)) is scored through. This edition's transcription disregards all scoring-through here. The letters (a.), (b.), (d.), and the inverted commas, suggest that Machell was copying text written by his informants.
[126] Dividing the boundary.
[127] The direction (N.S.E or W.) is covered by a blot.

end of Wilbright Fell.[128] Thence (by the \ N. West / edge of the said fell) to an upping stone†[129] calld the Countiss-Mount \ on the nab / at the E. end of Wilbert-Fell†.[130]
[c.] Thence N. (over the edge of the said fell) to Whitewalls. Thence agane N. (by a streight line) to Dowfin Stye. Thence again \ N. / (lineally descending) to ~~Coalgill~~ \ Langil / -head. Thence N. down the old Cartway till you com at Tarnmire hole near Tarnhouse. Thence W. (~~by~~ down the Tarnmire Sike) to the till runs.
Thence N.W. (in a direct line) to Scandal Beck head, Thence agane N.W. down Scandal beck from the [blank].[131]
(d.) From S[ou]th Runnkeld N. in right line to the Build {a shield for sheep} on Astfell[132] Edge: Thence N.W. as heavenwater divides, to

[Machell's Notes: III.182]
*{Calld?} {H. was to finde out a hill out of which 3 rivers sprang – for his pen[ance]. & so sat down there. T.}[133]
†{These marks are right.}[134]
{Q. if Will Wallers of Stanemore at Swinstaywath has found an image of stone lately there.}

[III.189]

a little Hillock or Hurrock of stones called Hound-Tuft: thence N.W. (on the edge of Astfel) to Russendale High-parke-gate. Thence W. to Gerrards-cross in the parke wall. Thence W. (by the parke wall) to Smardale bridge where Ravenstondale Parish & Crosby Gerard meet. Thence down the river to ~~Soulby~~ \ Crosby/ miln*. Thence ~~west by the way~~ \ N.E. to Soulby mill / by the way down the said river† – & thence W. to Waterhouses[135] by the outring of Soulby Cow pasture til you com at Gallansy Yeat& so up the Lonen stil westward till you com at Waterhouses \ were Asbby parish coms in. / Thence N.W. to ~~Oglebrow~~ \ Ugly Brow,[136] / all along down Waterhouse beck till you com at Uglybrow where Musgrave parish comes in.
Thence N. to High-Hobkins house by Graskill Closes hedge & to Graskil House (belonging to Will. Robinson); thence N. by a streight line to Great Howgill Sike at the place where Apleby way crosses. Thence N. (down the said sike) to Low Hobkins house.[137] Thence \ N. / by ~~a streight line~~ the outside \ ring / of Low Hobkins grounds to a place called Dubber Dike, where a sike runneth out of this Parish. Thence N. (to the W. corner of) Musgrave Intack. Thence N. (by the ring dike of Musgrave Intak)[138] till you com at Sandrig Sike; then N.E. (by the same dike) till you com at the low end of Long Selmer, where that dike ends.
{Thence S.W. down Langil to Slapewath, Scandal beck; thence W. (down the said water) to Scandal-brig: Thence [by] Birkby Way to Terne-we\a/tho\a/ld: Thence S. ~~down the~~ (by a streight line) to the

[128] Wild Boar Fell. Known also as Wilbrichfell; Wilberfell; Willbor-fell.
[129] Upping-stone: a horse-block, a mounting-stone. *OED*.
[130] Just below the summit of Hugh Seat are the remains of a stone pillar (the Lady's Pillar), inscribed with the characters, 'AP 1664': Anne Pembroke (Countess of Pembroke).
[131] This paragraph is scored through and placed within a rectangular box drawn strongly in ink.
[132] Ashfell.
[133] Hugh Seat is named after Sir Hugh de Morville, one of the four knights who murdered Thomas Beckett in Canterbury Catherdral in 1170. Sir Hugh, as Lord of Westmorland, was also the lord of the manor of Mallerstang. Hugh Seat is situated just above the source of the River Eden.
[134] Here the inverted commas end and the scoring-through begins, continuing to the page foot.
[135] MS: '~~Thence W. by the way \ N.E. to Soulby mill / down the said river~~ & thence W. to Waterhouses'.
[136] 'Ugly', from Old Norse 'uglu': owls.
[137] MS: 'Thence N. \ ~~up~~ / to ~~an house called~~ High-Hobkins House ~~by~~ by Graskill Closes hedge to ~~Apleby gate & so~~ to Graskil House (belonging to Will. Robinson); thence N. to ~~Low Hobkins house~~ by a streight line. ~~Thence N. down the sike~~ to Low Hobkins house.'
[138] A margin comment is obscured by the binding here.

Watersmoote[139] at Ingfoot Close, which belongs to Tern House; thence N. up the said water to Southaning Keld from whence it springs.}[140]

Thence \ S. / (by an hedge) to the N. corner of Hard Dales dike; thence N.E. by another dike to a mossy pasture called Sods.[141] Thence E. (by Noble dale Hedge) to Blands Yate. Thence E. by the out Hedge of Blands pasture to Eden. Thence N. down Eden to the foot of Below,[142] where we began.

[Machell's Notes; III.189 and III.194]

*{??} {w. Len. Wharton}[143]
†{~~Query of John Barnes of Soulby Arch~~[…][144] ~~Franke, John Harrison~~}
[III.194}! Query. William Waller of Swinesty near Brough for the bounds and an image of stone.
Query for Kirkby Stephan bound[er] at Soulby: of John Harrison or John Barnes, & do Winton fre[s]h!

[D. Hills, Fells and Pikes]

[III.180]

[Crocklam Castle][145]
On the N. side of the church, Crocklam Castle (a round hill) plane on the top, being about 1 acre of ground now held in tenancy under Apleby Castle. Tis ½ a mile S. by S. from the church.

[III.183]

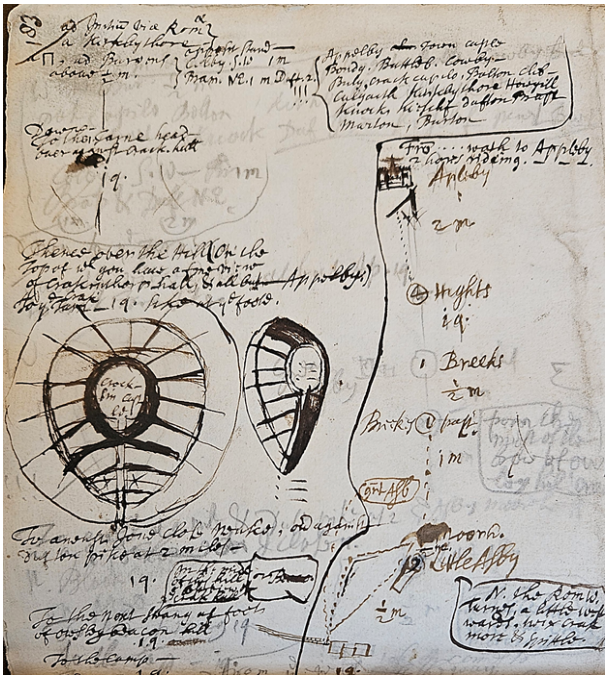


Figure 1.13.8. Crocklem Castle and the Roman Way. III.183.

[139] The beginning of this word is obscured by the binding.
[140] Machell placed this paragraph (another section of the bounder) in the margin here, though it is not obviously linked with the body text. As some of it is obscured, the transcription is not entirely secure.
[141] In the margin: 'to Sodds'.
[142] River Belah.
[143] Witness.
[144] The rest of the name is illegible.
[145] Croglam, Croklam or Croklenn Castle: earthwork with a circular embankment; see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 9.

[III.188]

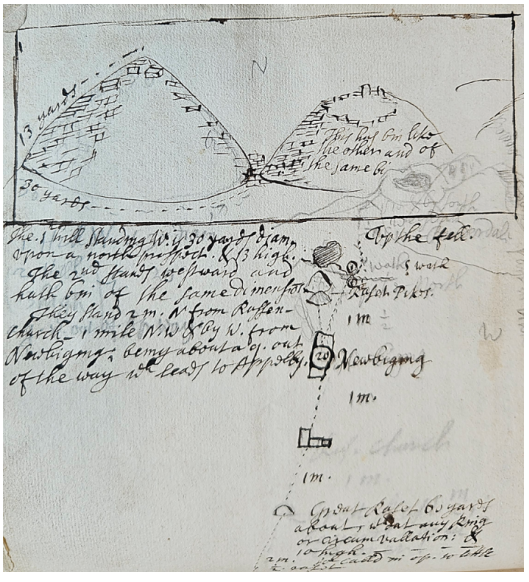


Figure 1.13.9. Fells and route map: Fells south and south-west from Rayseat. Wildboarfell, Bouderdale, Newbiggin, Great Raise. III.188.

The 1[t] hill standing W. is 30 yards diameter upon a north prospect & 13 [yards] high. The 2[nd] stands westward & hath bin of the same dimension. They stand 2 miles N from Russen[dale] Church,[146] 1m. N.W & by W. from Newbiging; being about a q[uarter] out of the way which leads to Appelby.

Up the fell

|

? wath

|

Raset Pikes

|

1 mile

|

20. Newbiging

|

1 mile

|

Russendale Church

|

1 mile

|

Great Raset 60 yard about without any ring or circumvallation; & 10 high – so called in opposition to Little Raset

|

2m ½

|

Kirkby Stephen

[146] Ravenstonedale Church.

A Prospect of the fells S. & S. West from Rasett[147]

Wilborefell; Weesdale[148] S.W. & by S.; Bowderdal S.W.



Figure 1.13.10. Wilborefell, A Prospect of the fell S. & S. West from Rasett Pikes. III.188.

[I.569]

When Wildbore Fell has \ got / a cap
Westmorland \ will have / a swat.[149]

Spoke concerneing a Cap of mist arriseing upon the top of the said mountaine, which by observation, betokens raine.

[III.179]

When Wilber Fell has a Cap –
Kirkby Stephan bewar of a Clap – Sc. wett

They observe here when Mallerstang Force yells upwards it will be raine – when down the river, fair – when in the midle, a breack or alteration of weather. Obser[ve]d at Wharton.

[III.190]

[6. Lordships]

In this parish are 7 or 8 [Lordships]

A. Kirkby Stephan

which has 2 Lords, keep 2 Courtes, both Leet & Barron, severally, so that it may be called 2 Lordships by decentabant,[150] Sc. Lord Thanet & Lord Wharton. And Sir Christopher Musgrave has some tenants there who answer at Hartley. To Lord Wharton, 2 freeholds: William Marshall & Franc[is] Blenkinsop. It is said that Marshall has privilege of wood in Flake[brigg], & deer in Whin[fell], & to keep a cuple of hounds.

[147] Rayseat.
[148] Weasdale.
[149] MS: 'Westmorland ~~beware of~~ \ will have / a swat.' 'Swat' is a Northern dialect name for 'a heavy fall'. *OED*.
[150] 'Suitably be called.'

B. Hartley

[Notes]
S.E. [ab Ecclesia] ¾. Freeholds, none. Tenants 8[d] fine purchased W. About 26.
{And de Harclay[151] tenuit H[artley] et Smardale, 8. Edward 2. [1314-15.]}
Helgilhow from Hartley E. ¼ mile II; Coate Garth, 2 single house N.E. 1 mile; Castle Demaine parke with deer; Court Baron; bounds.{Read freestone, coale, limestone.}[152]{Millstones.}

[Machell's Notes: III.190 & III.180]
Only speckled marble: query.
Houses in Kirkby. Waif & stray, Lord Thanet. Kirkby house to Lord Thanet.
[III.180] Kirkby [Additional Notes]
{There is many familyes – about 160.}
There is one Marshal a freehold[er] who has a grant from my Lord Thanets ancestours, which I would see {Q.?}
{Here was a capital messuage or manner house: 12. Edward 1. [1283-84] III V.5}
The Musgraves has but about 6 tenements exchanged for. One Ledells Tenement under purchased free[hold] of Sir Thomas Wharton in the ill times of Sir P. Musgrave.[153]
Lord Thanet: halfe the towne, a Court Baron customary \ XXIV. /
Lord Wharton: the remainder, a Court Leete, XVIII \ purchased by indenture to a 10d. fine. /
Memorandum: to enquire if they h[ear]d Lord Whartons tenants were ever free, by being [tenants of] Church lands, from answering in any other courts in the county.
Query of a religious house at Tinklar Hill, where tis sayd a market or general meteing of chapmen was formerly kept. T.?
Query of Bench – in my com pli of W.[154]

[III.233]

[Hartley Castle]

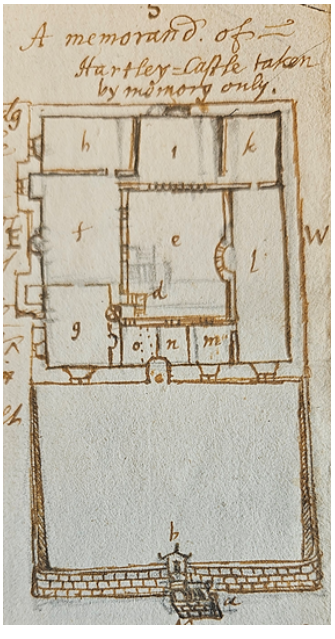


Figure 1.13.11. 'A Memorandum of Hartley Castle'. III.223.

[151] This phrase is written in tiny script, making its transcription unsafe.
[152] The rest of the phrase is obscured by the binding.
[153] See Machell's description of the fortunes of Sir Philip Musgrave during the Civil War and Cromwell's Protectorate on I.590, below. See also A. Marshall, 'Musgrave, Sir Philip, second baronet (1607-1678), royalist army officer and local politician'. *ODNB*.
[154] Written as seen.

A memorandum of Hartley-Castle taken by memory only.
a. The Enterance into the outer Court up by a Stair.
b. The Outer Court
c. The Enterance through an Arched Porch into an Inner Court or Quadrangle
d. The Stair (with Ballasters up to the Hall)
e. The Inner Court or Q.
f. The Hall, under which: g. The Buttery. The Kitchen marked g. Celler's &c.
h. The Chappel.
i. The Dineing Roome.
k. The withdrawing R.
l. The Gallery
m. n. o. Lod[g]ing Roomes.

{An august building}
Hartley Castle is a noble old building upon the edge of a fell and overlookeing the village of Hartley, the town of Kirkby Stephan and many other \ countrey / villages; with fair fields & meadows which lye thereabouts. And on the back side is Hartley-Parke, well replenished with dear, which extends itselfe up unto the fells which are exceeding \ rich / in lead mines, but it lies more frequently in bellyes than veines, which makes it more difficult to be discovered.[155]

[I.586]

Harclay Castle was the seat of the Hardclayes.

Michael de Hardclay. 6. or 9. of King John [1204, 1208]	}	Clifford
John de Hardclay. 13. of King John [1211-1212]	}	
Michael de Hardclay, knight. Temp. Henry 3. [1216-1272]	} obsev'd è Cartis per T.M. vel Machell	Machell[156]
Michael de Hardclay. 22. Henry 3. [1237-1238]	}	
Michael de Hardclay. 14. Edward 1. [1285-1286]	}	Blenkinsop

[I.584]

Nest of Howles as it were hatching
These stones were digged up out of the Lead mines in the Lordship of Hartley, with several of the same sort. In the upper part they very much resemble howles, both in the shape [and] colour, but the ground work is a contexture of Bright Spangling Long Stones some like Cristall, but some more dull with intermixture of yellow. Iam penes sunt Dominus Philip Musgrave apud Edenall in Cumberland ubi ipse vidi.[157] Here, nature has framed an \ ingenious / emblem how to get Riches; namely by Learning; for the Noctua, the Howle or Night-Bird sitting upon these pieces of spar, seemes to hatch Lead, and a wholly Belly of it was found in the place where these stones were taken.[158]

[155] See John F. Curwen, *The Castles and Fortified Towers of Cumberland, Westmorland, and Lancashire North of the Sands*, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913), 207-08.
[156] Observed by Thomas Machell in charters relating to either Clifford, Machell or Blenkinsop.
[157] 'These have long been in the custody of Sir Philip Musgrave at Edenhall in Cumberland, where I myself have seen them.'
[158] See Robert Plot, *The Natural History of Oxford-shire: being an essay towards the natural history of England* (1677). 'Plate 3. Stones relating to Air, or to the Watery Kingdom, no.7: an owl's head shape seen in flint.'



Figure 1.13.12. Stone 'howles'. Pencil and ink drawing. I.584.

[I.569B]

March 28 1694

1 – A stone of the colour and like of scales of a Tortoise – long – 8 – inches, broad 6 in ½; in weight [Blank] found on Hartley fell in the hollow parts around glistering seames.

2 – A strange Stags horne, curled like rock-worke & in the velvet head, as appeard by som pieces of skin plucked of, thick at the riseing of the brow antler xi inches in circumference high, following the process of bending – 26 inch onely – the brow Ankler branched out 6½ inch and was in circumference 9 inch & ½ and almost as thick at the end – thick above the branch of the brow ankler, xi inch in circumference The up[per] Ankler branchd 5 inch and in circumf. ix. thick above said Ankler x [inches], & about 9 under the Top Branch – where a point is cut of. Found about Wharton Hall – & now in cust[ody] of Dr. T[illars].

[Machell's Notes: I.569A] [159]

The horne & stone at Dr Tillars: The first – got of a man at Neatby. the 2 – at Hartley Fell.

[I.569C]



Figure 1.13.13. 'Stone like a tortoise; strange stags horn'. I.569C.

[159] Scrap page measuring 16cm x 21cm.

[III.190]

C. Mallerstang[160]

[Notes]
A chaple S. [Ecclesia] 3 miles. Free[holds] none. Arbitrary, about 50 or 60*. Lord Thanet. Pendragon demolishd by him about 1685. {Millstones.} No demaine. Court Baron at Snasefield. Corn at Mallerstang Foot. N. from the castle is one Tumulus of Stones but no gutter about it. A chaple. S. ¼ E. from castle. A well ½ mile E. the castle[161] cald Comekirk well cures the scratches or any itch: Len. Wharton.[162]

[III.192]

Mallerstang [has] a chaple where school is taught. The inscription over the school. Indowment of both, if any be bore. {No freeholds} A castle.

[II.480]

[Pendragon Castle]
It is supposed to have bin built in or before the time of Uter Pendragon, and this for those times a very elegant & well

[II.481]

con[t]rived piece, being tower in castle and having a gallery quite \ all along / about the top of the castle. The windowes are so contrived on the highest romes, ~~as that you may escape~~ \ as to prevent / the danger of arrows; and the walls are att least 4 thicke, whose forme & plat is here represented. See my oblong pocket booke.[163]

[III.215][164]

The Bounder of Mallerstang
Ridd by the Right Hon. Thomas, Earle of Thanett Island &c.in his owne person the 17th day of September in the 36th yeare of the raigne of our Soveraigne Lord Charles Second &c. Anno' Domini 1684.
1. Beginning at Water yate Skarr.
2. Thence through Sopkeld otherwise Killingclose to a place where a crab tree formerly stood & was marked by Henry Lord Clifford, great grandfather to George, late Earle of Northumberland, as his Bounder, neare which place in the yeare of Our Lord 1651 when these bounders were ridd for the Right Honourable Ann, late Countess Dowager of Pembroke, stood an ash tree, which upon that occacon was marked with A.P. as a bounder marke.
3. Thence through Ash Bank (which is alsoe part of Sopkeld) where an house formerly was built, through which house the Bounder went.
4. Thence to the foot of Naitgill.
5. Thence up Naitgill by Ravenskarr to Kitchingill Foote.
6. Thence up Kitchingill to Tailebrigg Sike.
7. Thence up Tailebrigg Sike to the row of caves.
8. Thence to the Ginglinge cave.
9. Thence through Lamps mosse to a gray stone in Carelesse-Bank on the North-East of Fell end.
10. Thence to the ~~end the~~ \ lower / end of Seavyman in Ulgill Head.
11. Thence to the North end of High Seate.
12. Thence as Heaven Water deales to the South end of High Seate.
13. Thence over Little Sleddall Head to Gregory Chappell.
14. Thence alonge Gregory band to an hurrock of stones at Langill Head.

[III.216]

15. Thence to the hight of High Seate Morvell.
16. Thence as Heaven water deales to the Skarth of Skailes.

---

[160] MS: '3. ~~Pendragon~~ Mallerstang'.
[161] MS: 'a castle.'
[162] Several margin comments here, including a query related to the river Eden, are obscured by the binding.
[163] For Uter Pendragon see also, I.31-33. A fuller description of Pendragon Castle can be found at the end of a draft letter from Machell to Dr John Mill (Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, IV.82).
[164] This page is not in Machell's hand [It is possibly the neatest bounder description in all 6 volumes. Ed.]

17. Thence up Capell-May-Sike.
18. Thence downe Capell-May-Sike to Withow sike.
19. Thence to White Birke.
20. Thence up Stubbing rigg to Midle gill otherwise Smithygill Howe.
21. Thence up an hurrock of stones at the East end of Swarthfell called Swarthfell-Pike.
22. Thence to an hurrock of stones on Galloway Gates.
23. Thence as Heaven Water deales to Bland Stone.
24. Thence to an hurrock of stones on Scandall-Head.
25. Thence to the pike on Wildbore Fell.
26. Thence to the top of Mickle ark
27. Thence alonge Stony gate to Mere Pott.
28. Thence to the great cave in Greenelowhead.
29. Thence to the head of Fothergill beck.
30. Thence downe Fothergill Beck to Eden water.
31. Thence up Eden water to Wateryeate Skarr.[165]

[I.568]

The Forest of Mallerstang belongs to the Castle of Pendraggon in which castle are \ certane / edifices or buildings which cannot be extended by reason the cost on them bestowed exceeds the profit of the same. In the forrest are diverse vaccaries and other profitts of herb, which are in the hands of tenents att will and by the yeres att the Termes of St Martin & Pentecost: 30:0:0.
Notwithstanding in the yere 1333, Edward Baliol King of Scotland came from thence into Westm'land in a friendly manner to Robert Lord Clifford as before in the relation concerneing him wee have specifyed, and

[I.569]

lodged with him in his Castles of Apleby Browham Brough and Pendraggon; yett some 3 yeres before the death of Robert Lord Clifford, which was Robert the 2nd in 1341, this Castle of Pendraggon in Mallerstang was Burned By Scotts who were of the contrary party to \ King / Edward aforesaid, in an Inroad \ which they / made ~~att that time~~ i[n]to Westm'land; from which time till of late it lay wast & desolate the very \ way / too it being become inaccessible by Coach or Carryage, or allmost by an Horseman till the Honorable Lady, the Lady Ann Clifford, Countess Douager of Dorsett Penbroke and Mongomery, of whom wee have so oft spoke for her many noble workes, tooke in hand to Repare it; {Kirkby Stephen pag. 1}[166]And the first man that past those strate,[167] was ~~Squire~~ \ Lancelott / Machell of \ Crakenthorp Esq., a man \ whose person & family and very name for the antiquity thereof, / highly beloved of the said Countesse; who in his owne person, with his draughts & servants brough[t] the first s[t]ik of Timber to repare of this castle.[168]

This Robert was the first Clifford who injoyed it in his proper right, for till then it belonged to his Great Aunt Idonea. And it is observable that as it was destroy'd in his time, being the first, so it was repared in her time, being the last of the name of The Cliffords that were owners hereof. And from the said year \ 13 / 41 it was not inhabited, till 1661; in which yere on the fourteenth of October The Lady Ann Clifford came with here family and lodged here for 3 or 4 nights; and has lived in it severall times since. It is a very neat building for a thing so ancient, the plattforme & front of which I have here presented [and inscribed as follows]

> To the honourable Ann Clifford. Countess, d[owager]of D[orset] P[embroke] & M[ontgomery], T.M. presenteth this draught & platforme of her Castle of Pendraggon.[169]

[165] A scored-through squiggle beneath the 'perambulation' text is possibly a mark to demonstrate that the bounder description had been examined.
[166] Part of this margin comment has perished.
[167] 'Strate', as in 'street': a paved road, especially a Roman road; a highway. *OED*.
[168] MS continues: '~~and it is observable That as it was~~'.
[169] The plan was not inserted.

[IV.37]

Multitude of Vaccaries

[In the mid-13th century Book of Knights Fees, the collectors say] that two natives in the manner of Kirby Stephan through poverty by reason of raseing there farm [rents] are departed & gone. Allso they say that the vale of Mallerstang is much decayd by the multitude of vaccaries and chiefly by the archery of Roger the Forrester & other archers of Lounsdale for default of the priors and want of custody. Item. Purprestures[170] have bin made in many places within the forests of the Marches through backdated permission from the Prior.

[III.179]

Of the River Eden [1.]

The River Eden springs at Hew Seat in Mallerstang Lordship. Runs \ W. to Mallerstang dale head / under Helgil Brig, so calld from the deepness of the channel between 2 great rock so near together that an horse may leap over it, so down E. to Mallerstang dale head. Thence N. on the West side of Pendragon Castle, which is moted, Let Uter Pendraggon &c. Thence through Wharton Parke, 6 score yards on the E. side of the Hall to Stenk\ereth / ~~and~~ (stone) bridge on the E*. Thence E. on the West side of Hartley Castle at 24 score distance. Thence westward from Force mil to Eden wood bridge near Kirkby. Thence (N.) under the vicaridge within 10 yards of it – ~~and near~~ \ on the / E. side the town to the Low-mill. Thence (N.) to the new (stone) bridge.

[Machell's Notes: III.179]

*{T. One Cowkernal[171] comes up every fasten-dayes-eve in the morning, & combes her head with a golden comb.}

[III.180][172]

Thence N. by turneings on the West of Winton, ¼ mile. And so N. \ leaveing Souldby ½ mile on the west / to Soulbeck foote \ in the West /which comes from Smerdale. Thence by turning N. to Heaing Foote where this parish begins.

The farther course of Eden [blank][173]

[III.213]

Of the River Eden [2.]

{[Informant] Ed. Addison who lived within 2 miles of HewSeat[174] at Birtil in Yorkeshire æt 22.}

This river springeth in an hill call'd HewSeat \ upon Mallerstang Fell / on the top of which is a small square mount to which you ascend by 7 or 8 stares, which is the bounder marke of the \ 2 / countyes {built by the C. P.}[175] And the spring head of Eden is about 5 or 6 score yards below the said mount in the West side of the said hill, which is Westmorland side. {On the S. West side that ward of Mallerstang.} And on the opposit side of this hill about the same distance from the said mount, & not above 60 yards apart one from another, as likewise from Eden, rise Eure & Swall;[176] the former of which runs down Wensedale, the latter down Swadale. {The fel on one side is called Mallerstang Fell, the other Sleddal Fell}

1. It runs westward from the springhead under Helgill brig \ 1 mile / into Mallerstang-gill \ Head ¾ [mile] / thence northward to Kirkby Stephen. Thence N.W. to Musgrave. Thence N.W. to Appleby &c.

[170] 'Purpresture': illegal enclosure of or encroachment upon land or property belonging to another; appropriation of land or property for private purposes, often retrospectively confirmed for payment. *OED*.

[171] Possibly a 'cauk' or 'caukrum': a frightful object; a scare-crow. See Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary 1* (London, 1898-1905), 544.

[172] On this page, inked text is interspersed with, and sometimes covers, text written in pencil. It has been transcribed only where legible. The pencilled text appears to have been an early draft.

[173] Presumably, Machell meant to continue the course of the Eden elsewhere.

[174] High Seat.

[175] Countess of Pembroke.

[176] Ure and Swale.

[At Mallerstang the river runs as follows]
{To the chaple 2 miles \ a st[one] brig / to Pendragon Castle 1 mile. Lammerset 1 mile. A wood bridge. Wharton Hall ½ mile a wood brig above. Stengthrith stone bridge. A mill 1 mile. 2 milns – Kirkby Bri[g] of wood 1 mile. New Bridge Stone ¼} {From Pendragon Castle to Kirkby 3 ~~length~~ miles.}

[Machell's Notes on Mallerstang: III.190 & 192]

Accident: Mrs Braithwhate, the wife of Captain Braithwhate, being under som melancolly, lept of the \ very / top of this castle at the W. corner, by which her back & thigh were broken and she dyed 3 dayes after.
[III.192]
A white slate & hewen [quarry] ¼ E. from the chaple.
Coale 1 mile S.W. at Wilbert Fell, and much {limestone. Lead at Bel.[177] ¾ N. \ & at / Birket N.W. ¾.}

D. Wharton (& Neatby)[178]

Free[holds] none. S. [ab Ecclesia] 1 mile. Tenements purchased to a 10[d] fine 80 years agoe of Sir Thomas Wharton, son of Lord Phillip and father of the present Lord Phillip {where Lammerset Hall also: an Hall of Lord Wharton East from Wharton}. \ Hall in a grove of trees, a chaple.[179] /

The Town: demolished by Wharton Hall \ L[ord] W[harton] / & the tenants dispersed to Wharton Dikes ½ mile S. & S.W. from the Hall. XVI ancient tenements & 4 cotts*. Court ~~leet &~~ Baron at Kirkby Wharton & Neatby. One free.[180] About 3 [freeholds] belonging to the Warcops. & there is an hill calld Barnard Hill†. A strong tower house with a doore barrd with iron & 24 I. & T.s upon [it] for names of desc[endants] in that family. The Dalstons of Dalston had [it] by marriage with an heiress thereof; & exchanged with Wharton for the tythe [of] Soulby, so now it is part of Wharton demaine.

[Wharton] Parke. Ash; no oakes but 2.

In Wharton Dikes 1688, where there are but 20 houses, 12 of them (women) are widdows. And in the said place there ~~are~~ \ were / heiresses in 1680. Eliz[abeth] Grasson[181] of W. D. ~~a woman~~ brought to bed of 3 children about 30 year since. {~~Hard birth~~.}

[Machell's Notes: III.190]

*Vide Item. Lammerset Hall, anciently an Hall and demaine of itself.
†Query of the name.[182]

[III.194]

L[ord] W[harton's] Injeniouse[183] coale works.
A new house built by him. Writ over the dooer:

Give me leave, when I may goe in;[184]
When I come forth free from all sin.
March 7[th]: this House was begun.
Ended December 6. L. \ W. / M.

with an hou[n]d & hare, for his love to hunting.

[177] Great Bell.
[178] Nateby.
[179] Marginalia here are obscured by the binding.
[180] Presumably, Nateby contained one freeholder.
[181] Grayson.
[182] Bermer Hill and Scar = Burnmye, Burnemoor. See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 84.
[183] A word here is obscured by the binding.
[184] MS: 'I ~~when~~ I may goe in'.

Good houses
Lord Whartons. Lockwhate[185] at Neatby: Lord Whartons.
Scaifes & Shuts in Winton.[186]

[Machell's Notes: III.179]

{A chaple in Wharton Hall.}
{Thomas de Musgrave infra et held ½ R. anno viii Edward 2. with Great Musgrave, Morton and a pro part of Sandford: p. 63 M.V. Query of the other ½?}

[III.192]

In the parke as you goe from [Wharton] Hall towards Kirkby is a flat limestone with an hole in the midst like the impression of a mans shoe.
And at Stengthret[187] bridge in Neatby Liberty is a round deep hole in the limestone channel, like to [a] Ketle. No quarry (but limestone).
Old Mich, father of Lenerd – a great archer – shooting at 11 score, the adverse party threw in an arrow within a ¼ of the prick & he {came with one arrow towards 4 inches & so toke him out, & then with the other he tooke him out too & so up'd the game*.}

[Machell's Notes: III.192]

*{? N.B. query of John Wallar of Ewans in Winton.}

[III.202]

Wharton Hall

Key
a. The Gate house with a Tower above
b. The Slaughter.
c. [Blank]
d. The kitchen over which a Tower.
e. The Buttery
f. The Hall, to which you ascend by steps.
g. A Parlour or Bedchamber; a Study or Evidence Room.
h. The Dineing Room
i, k, Bedchambers. Over which a great Tower.
l. The Gallery: at the end of which is a Chappell.

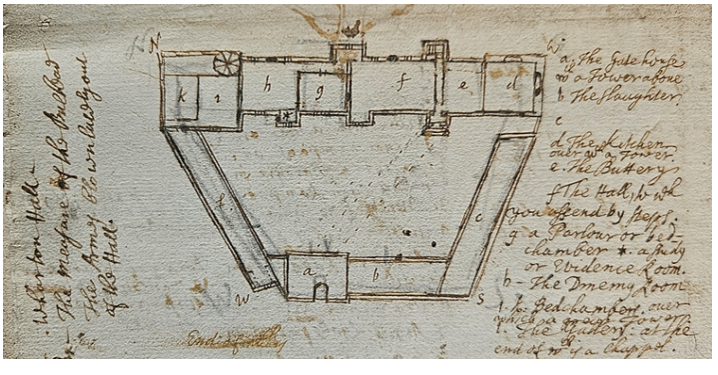


Figure 1.13.14. Plan of Wharton Hall. III.202.

[185] Lockthwaite.
[186] See III.185, below (Winton).
[187] Stenkrith.

[Machell's Notes III.202]

The measure of the Bulhead.
The armes blown lately out of the Hall.

[III.201][188]

[Armorial Glass in the Gallery]

[a. and b.] 2 windows on the East side

(a.)

Wharton impaleing a Quarterly Coate. Azure a manch Or, charged with anulet Sable. The 2. quarterly Sc. thus, the 1. obliterated but seems barry Azure & Argent; the second, Argent a chiefe with 3 bars* gemmews Or; the third as the second; the fourth as the first. The 3[r] quarter in the impale is as the second; the 4[th] as the first.



Figure 1.13.15. Machell's Figure (a.). III.201.

1.13.15.

(b.)

b. Quarterly of xi. The
1. Azure in a bordure engrailed[189] a Lyon rampant Or.
2. Gules in a bordure ingraled a Lyon rampant Or.
3. Bendy of 10 Gules & Argent {had it been a. & g., it were Talbot: see *Guillam* p. 277}.[190]
4. Gules, 3 garbes Or.
5. Azure, 5 ragged staves barwise Argent {Barry of 10 Argent & Azure. 12 martlets of the first: 3 2. 2. 2 & 1 Indented}.
6[th]. Or, a chiefe /\/\/\ Azure.
7. Argent 2 Lyons passant Gules.
8. Gules, a saltier Argent.
9. Argent, a bend between 6 martlets Gules.
10. Broke out & now a blank \ but / Or a fret Gules.
11. Argent a Lyon rampant Gules with tale reversed Gules.

[188] As much of this page was completed in pencil and then written in ink, some of the text was duplicated. Such duplications have not been transcribed.
[189] Machall drew a heraldic symbol here, meaning 'engrailed'.
[190] Richard Blome, *Guillam's, A Display of Heraldry* (1679).



Figure 1.13.16. Machell's Figure (b.). III.201.

This seemes the father of Lord Whartons wife. See at (d.) of the 2nd wife. {It is so of the 2nd wife, Georgius Comes Salopiæ.[191] See my booke of ped[igrees]: Wharton. But the field is there Gules.}[192]

(c.)

In the 3rd window an other coate set in a garter without a crownet.
Quarterly of V. The first quarter is quarterly, Sc. 1t. Vert a Lyon rampant Azure {!} (false heraldry);
2. The English armes \ uncoloured / within a bordure Ermin & Argent. 3rd Argent 3 fishes saliant Or;
the 4th barry of 5: Azure and Or.
The second [quarter] is Azure, a fess fusile Or.
{?}The 3rd barry of 6 Or (if not rather tenne) & Vert, a bend Gules.
The 4th 3 Lyons passant Argent and the field so too. Over all, a bend Azure.

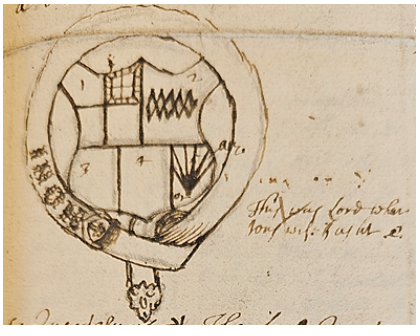


Figure 1.13.17. Machell's Figure (c.). III.201.

This was Lord Whartons wife as at e.?

(d.)

The window nex the chapel on the West side.
[Quarterly] The 1t Gules 3 Lyons passant gardant Or, with a file of 3 lambeaux Argent.
2. Gules between 6 croses {crosslets fichee? if Sharp} a bend Argent charged with a scutcheon of the Scots arms.
3. Checkey, Or & Azure.
4. Gules, a Lyon rampant Argent.

[191] George, Earl of Shrewsbury.
[192] Pencilled note in Machell's hand.



Figure 1.13.18. Machell's Figure (d.). III.201.

{This, I take it, belongs to the Howards, Dukes of Norfolk & Earles of Arundell. But Note the crosses fitchy &c. should be in the 1[t] quarter, for so they bear them now: see Bloms guide in *Honour Civil & Military*, f.32.}[193]

[III.203]

[Armorial Glass] in the Dining Room

In the Great window next the Court – upon a shield like that (a.) is a plane Manch:
And on another of the same fashon in the same window is an Impaled: c. Or, a fess fusile Azure which is quite contrary to that at (c.)

(e.)

The second window from the chapel on the west side
1. Whartons Armes with the accession of the Bordure \ invecked / Quartering a Quarterly coate: Sc. First, Ermin on a chief Azure 3 Lyons rampant Argent: Secondly, quarterly Gules & Argent, a bend Or. Third as Second; Fourth as first; which coate is born agane in the 3 & Whartons in the 4[th]; & these Impale~~ing~~ the ~~ten~~ \ 11 / Quarterly. As at (b.) in the foregoing page. Which is the Armes of the 2[nd] wife of T[homas] Lord Warton, with D[aughter of] L Comiti Salopice.[194]



Figure 1.13.19. Machell's Figure (e.). III.203.

(f.)

In the 3[rd] window is ~~Wharton~~ 1. A shield of the same fashion with that at (a.) but florished at both ends (as the other should be for it is defective) wherein are these (c.) Sc. Quarterly Sable: a plane manch by the name of Wharton. {?} Quartering the same coate as before at (e.) Sc. Ermin on a chief ~~Gules charged~~ \ Azure / 3 Lyons rampant Argent &c. Impaleing this coate: Sc. Argent a Lyon rampant[195] Sable charged on his brest with a mullet of five \ points / of the first {which is Stappeltons, his 1[t] wife.}

[193] Richard Blome, *An Essay to Heraldry, in Two Parts. The First Containing ... the Body of Heraldry; the Second, Honour Civil and Military; Being a Treatise of the Nobility and Gentry of England ... The Whole Illustrated with ... Sculptures, Etc.* (London, 1685).
[194] '… and daughter of the Earl of Shrewsbury.' See also, '(b.)'.
[195] Here, the MS has a small sketch.

(g.)

In the other Great (Dineing Room) Window

Cliffords coat quarterly of ix impaleing another quarterly of 6. In Clifford the 1ᵗ is checky Or & Azure a fess Gules. The 2nd Azure: 3 burneing chained bullets Or. 3. Vert. 3 flames Argent. 4. Gules 6 anulets Or. The 5th is quarterly Or & Gules in a bordure Argent & Azure. The 6. Sable a bend fleury Or. 7. Barry of 6 or & Azure, in a canton Gules[196] Or. 7. Or a cross Sable. 8. Argent on a chief indent Gules an annulet betwixt 2 mullets of 5 pointes Or.[197]

II. The coate impaled is quarterly of 6: the 1ᵗ Azure a tower Argent, having a cupole[198] above the battlement, 2. Barry of 8, Or & Gules, a crescent in chief of the second.

III. Gules 3 fishes palewise Argent.

IV. Sable a griffin rampant {? one foot up}[199] between 3 crosses Argent.

V. Sable 3 tents or rather towers with pyramidal tops ~~Argent~~ & a mullet of 5, in chief Argent.

{VI. Argent, a[200]Gules, chargd with 5 mullets of 5 pointes Or.}

The supporter: a dragon Gules with crooked tale & eagles feet, & a goat Argent. The crest, a dragon's head Gules out of a coronet Or, & on a wreath, a goat standing Argent – Armed Or.

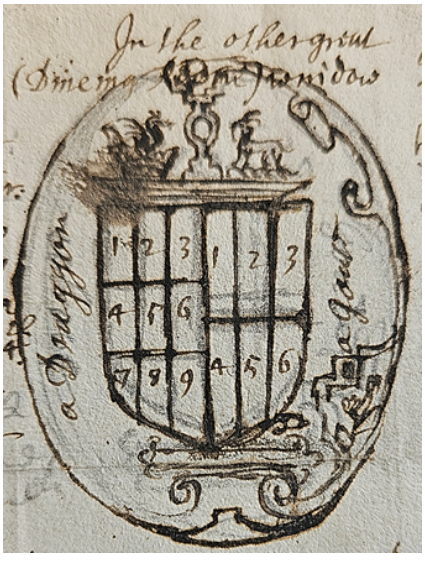


Figure 1.13.20. Machell's Figure (g.). III.203.

(h.)

In the midle light is Cliffords 9 quarterings. The supporters a dragon Gules & a wolfe waved Or, Argent & Azure. The crest a helmet on a coronet & above that a dragon Gules isueing out of a coronet Or.

(i.)

In the other light is Wharton with the bordure, quartering a quarterly c[oate]: Sc. Ermin on a chiefe Gules. 3 Lyons rampant &c. – as before – the III The same agane & the IIII Wharton. These quarterings of Wharton do impale Clifford with the 9 Quarterings as afore. The supporters a white Bul with a crown coller \ & armed / Or, & a read Draggon. 2 Crests in 2 Ovals: 1. A Bulls head errased Argent \ crown / collered & armed Or. 2. as before: Sc. a dragon out of a crown.

---

[196] Here Machell has drawn a cross crosslet.
[197] Machell has omitted no.10.
[198] Cupola.
[199] As it lies close to both sets of text, this comment could equally well refer to the foot of Coat (i).
[200] Here Machell has drawn a cross crosslet.

[III.205][201]

(l.)

In the great window, which looks out of the hall into the court.

There is Whartons armes with crest & mantle quartering a quarterly coat: Sc. Ermin on a chief Azure, 3 Lyon &c. as before. The manch is without any bordure; the mantle Argent & Gules; the crest on a wreath Argent and Azure, lying on an helmet; a Bulls head errased Argent, with a crown coller Or, topping and mane Sable. {This is Whartons Armes with the Quarterings before he was Lord.}

(m.)

In the first window on the opposit side next to the doer which leads to the dineing rome are three plane shields, the first Clifford, as here. II. Azure a manch Or. III. Azure a bend Or.

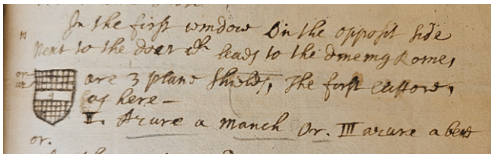


Figure 1.13.21. Plain shield, Clifford. III.205.

(n.)

In the next window on the other side the chimney, are 3 like the other: sc. 1. Gules, 6 Lyons rampant Argent; II Argent, a Lyon rampant Azure; III Azure fretty Argent.

(o.)

In the lesser window next the court have bin 3 (but now there remains 2 only.) The 1 is Gules, 3 cushons Ermin tassled Or. II [Blank]. III Azure a chief with 3 cheveronell brased Or.

(p.)

And in the end window has bin 3 alsoe: 1. Quarterly, Sc. First or a Lyon rampant, Azure; secondly Gules 3 fishes ~~III~~ Argent; third as second; 4th as first. II: gon. This, I am told, was the fishes single: per Len Wharton.[202] III: Quarterly: Sc. first Argent a bend Gules, charged with three garbes I thinke, of the first; the second I suppose has bin the same with the third; the third is verry. Sc. Argent & Azure.[203] ~~Azure & Argent counter compond~~.

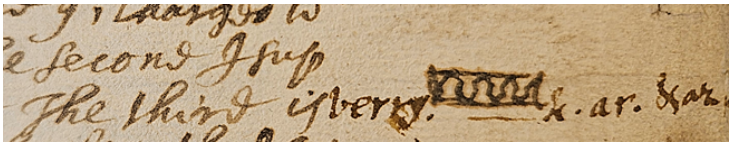


Figure 1.13.22. Image at foot of page after 'verry'. III.205.

The fourth I suppose as the first, but broken & gon.

[III.207]

In the parler are 6 coates: Sc. in the upper lights of the great window which looks into the court.

(q.)

{1553} Musgrave with Quarterings Impaleing Wharton with Quart[erings].

1. Musgrave Or, 6 anulets Or. 2. Stapleton ~~quartering Vipont~~ being 3 daggers Gules on a field Argent impaleing Vipont, which is on 6 anulets Gules. 2. 2. &c.

These impale Wharton with the bordure Or, charged with 9 saltiers of Lyons pawes Gules, which is in

[201] On MS. III.205 is the sentence '{Memorandum: the gallery has on the plaster …1594.}', but some of the text has perished.

[202] Witness: Leonard Wharton.

[203] See *Fig.1.13.22*.

the 1ˢᵗ Quarter. {Query whether the bordure ingraled.} In the 2nd quarter is a quarterly coate: Sc. Ermin on a chief Gules &c., as before in the Gallery; the 3rd as second; 4th as first.

(r.)

The second shield is Wharton (quartering as before) with a file of 3 lambeaux impaleing this quarterly coat of 8: Sc.

I. Argent a bend ingraled Sable.
II. Or, a fess between 2 cheverons Gules.
III. Argent, within a border Azure, a Lyon rampant Sable crowned.
IIII. Argent a saltier ingraled Sable.
V. Gules, 3 fishes Argent {111}.
VI. Argent, 3 bars Gules.
VII. Or, pouderd with floredelices Sable. {calld (in short) Ermineis}
VIII. Argent, an eagle Sable with a childe proper in his clawes, in swaddling-clouts[204] Gules.

(s.)

The third shield is the Kings Armes, with a florish about them like a wreath, with an imperial crown on the top. & on the binders at either side of the wreath is writ DIEV EST MON DROIT. {the Kings Armes is also in the drawing Roome.}[205]

(t.)

The fourth is Wharton quartering the quarterly coat as before, with a Bear {rather a Lyon […]}[206] Gules in a net Or {?} for one supporter, & a Bul (as before) for the other; the mantle Argent & Gules & the crist, on a wreath Or & Gules a Bulls head &c. {& this motto underneath: -LESYR EN FAYTS DERMIS.}[207]

(v.)

The fifth is Wharton Quarterly as aforesaid – Impaleing a Quarterly coat of 4, whereof the 1. is a Lyon rampant Sable. The 2. is quarterly of 4: first, Argent a bend between 6 martlets Gules, the second Argent a fess Azure charged with 3 floerdelices Or &c.; III. Argent 2 bends Gules; the IIII as first!

(w.)

The VI is a quarterly coat: Sc. 1 Argent a fess

[III.208]

fusilee Azure. II. Barry of 6 Argent & Gules, a canton of the second; the 3rd &c., impaleing Wharton Quartered with the Quarterly coate as before.



Figure 1.13.23. Wharton Hall Parlour. Musgrave Coat of Arms. III.207.

[204] Cumbrian dialect for cloths or clothes.
[205] 'God and my Right' is the motto of the reigning monarch.
[206] The word following 'Lyon' is very close to the page edge. It possibly reads as 'seiant'.
[207] The Wharton motto is, 'PLEASUR IN ACTS DARMYS': pleasure in acts of arms. See *CFH*, 362.

In the Study or Evidence Rome

(x.)

Carved in wood, the plane manch; a fret & chief impaleing Wharton; Cliffords armes & quartering. And in glass, Vert a Lyon rampant Azure with quarterings & garter as in the Gallery {false heraldry.}

Below Stairs

(y.)

In the great roome \ over against the grate / in a shield florish at both ends like that in the dineing rome, Musgrave impaleing the plane manch.

(z.)

Over the hall porch, the Armes have bin carved with the quarterings crist & supporters, mantle &c., but the Armes are washed out. The supporters here are a Lyon \ in a net / & a Bull {?} with a Long Tayle collered about his neck as they may be see in my Bloomes, *Guillam*. {&c.}[208]

Over the Great Gates on the outside of the House

Whartons Coat at large with saltiers of Lyons pawes in a border ing~~raled~~\vecked! / which I have not observed afore. {It is not so in Bloomes edition of *Guillam*. Query: ergo if in other coates within the house.} The coat is quarterly: I. The manch in a bordure &c. II. Quarterly, Sc. first Ermin – 3 Lyons rampant &c; secondly, 4 quarters with a bend on the second; III, As the second; IIII, as the first. The crist – on a wreath upon an helmet a Bulls head errased, with a crown coller. The supporters, a Lyon in a net & a collered Bull, the motto underneath (in florished letters) PIEA SVR \ EN. / FAYTS. D'ARMYS.[209] And, ANNO DNI.1559. But the building looks older by much.

[III.190]

E. Weatby[210]

[Notes]

W. [ab Ecclesia]1 mile. Most free[holders] purchased about '86, ix or 10. The rest arbitrary, about 4 or 5. It belongs to Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge, now Lord. No manner house but query of a castle on the E. of the town. And t[alk of] a market town before K[irkby Stephen]. vix credo[211] \ Hen. De Warthecop [had] ½ & Warthcop, 8. Edward 2. [1314-15].[212] / No boons. A free schoole. \ ½ Wateby held by Beauchamp. / Andreas de Harcla sen. Harcla et Smardale: 8. Edward 2. See MS Part III, pag. 27.

[I.496]

Half of that Lordship sometime in the possession of the Beachamps: vid. p. 33 col. 1 ad fine.[213]

[III.192]

[School]

Weatby a free school. The account of it is in som part of this paper.[214] Limestone only. The manner house seems to have bin a castle in the intack call'd Carny Castle at this day, an abbreviation of Carnaby, whom they say Lord Wharton took prisoner; formerly said to be the seat of one Torphin de Wateby {There are the vestigia of a little \ street or town / on the ridge of the hill between \ the schoole / & the village. They talke of it being a city or great towne.} Now xiv or xv families {of

[208] Richard Blome, *Guillam's, A Display of Heraldry* (1679).
[209] 'Pleasure in acts of arms', see above.
[210] Waitby.
[211] 'I scarce believe it.'
[212] Three illegible abbreviated words here: omitted.
[213] There appears to be no reference to Waitby and the Beauchamps on p.33 of any of Machell's 6 volumes. MS. III.190 gives similar information in highly interlineated note-form. Legible words are, '5. Weatby. W. 1m. Most free. Purchased about '86. IX or 10. The rest arbitrary: about 4 or 5. It belong to Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge, now Lord. No manner house – but query of a castle on the E. of the Towne. And T. a market Towne before K. Vix credo. No bounes. A Free School.\ Hear de Waitbye cap. ten. & wurthe cap. 8. Edward … ½ Wateby held by Beauchamps.'
[214] Now placed together here on III.192 and III.194.

which all freehold, but one hath som tenant right, purchased fr[ee][215] of Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge about the year 1686. The demaine is divided amongst tenants. They say the demaines were free from suit in the sherifs Turn.}

[III.194]

Over the dooer of Wateby school, a pretty little building in a wald gardine[216] on a blew marble stone:

> THIS ~ SCHOOLE ~ BUILT ~ BY ~ Mr James Highmoore. Born in Waitbye
> clothworker ~ in London for / the use of Waitby ~ & Smardale /
> ANNO ~ DOMINI ~ 1630

Mr William Howgil, the master, sayes there [is] xi^{li} per annum laid to it, out of 400^{li} & above, given by the founder for that use & the use of the poore widows of those places. 12 twopenny love[217] being ordered by his will to be distributed every Sunday to xii widows being 60 year of age & upwards.[218] It is called Waitby from its scituation in hollows 'll[219] by pooles & plashes of water. Soulby has water runns down the Town.[220]

[III.180]

[Torphin de Wateby]

Robert =
|
Torphin =
|
Hugo Gornegan = Maud fil Torphin
|
Hugo fils Gornegan

King John anno ejus 5^{0} [1203-1204] granted the wardship of Hugo the son of Gornegan & Richard ~~to~~ Sirninton, to Robert de Veteriponte. And Maud, the widow of Henry Jernegan, released her dower in Karthorp (near Tanfield in Yorkeshire) to the said Robert, who had the custody of her son by the said Kings grant. And this Maud was daughter of Torphin de Wateby granted all her lands in Westm'land to Robert de Veteriponte in the 8th of King John [1206-1207] & she was remarried to Hugo de Burgo, who likewise confirmed it, s.d.[221]
Sir John Lowther of Sockbridge circa anno 1686 sold 33 tenants free at Wateby,[222] as I have seen out of a court roll in Mr Dobson house.

[III.190]

F. Smerdale[223]

[Notes]
W. 2 miles; no free[holders] – arbitrary – X houses, formerly the said Warcops; now Sir John Dalstons of Dalston ut sup[ra]; an Hall & demaine. Boon plewing,[224] her[iot] shereing,[225] coales. Andrew de Harcla senior [had] Hartcla & Smardale in 8. Ed. II. [1314-1315]. Nothing but limestone.

[III.226]

Tenements: x. all arbitrary
There is a fine plane on the back side next the towne for a gardine or an other court.

---

[215] This word is partly obscured by the binding.
[216] MS: '\The ~~othe~~ side of the other / Over the dooer of Wateby school, a pretty little building in a wald gardine.' Here, Machell has drawn a sketch, ½cm square.
[217] Loaves of bread.
[218] Copied almost verbatim by N&B: see *N&B1*, 557. Highmoore becomes Highmore in *N&B1*.
[219] 'All'? 'Filled'?
[220] The word 'Town' is an editorial suggestion.
[221] 'In a deed without date.' See *N&B1*, 555, for an almost verbatim paragraph.
[222] Tenements as freeholds.
[223] Smardale.
[224] Ploughing.
[225] Customary shearing.

[III.221]

Smerdale belongd to one Warcop who had 3 daughters, one maryed to Bowes of Streettham, another to [Blank], another to Dalston.

[III.225]

[Smardale Hall]

Smardale [Hall] on an easy ascent pretty pleasant. Stands at the N.E. on the West side & fronts West. A large coat at the top of the tower, quite defaced but said to be Smardals whose heiress was maryed by Warcop.[226] {Maden Hare on the tower & at Wharton}

There has bin formerly a large coate of ~~armes be~~ armes betwene 2 Battlements on the Top of the tower fronting westwards, which was said to be the Smerdals whose Heiress was married into the family of the Warcops. \ & the Smerdals built the tower,[227] {the Warcops all the remainder of the house.} It[228] is now quite defaced through the violence of weather & injury of time, but seems to appear in the last quarter annulets [be]neath. Above, supported by the head of an angel, is this, probably Warcops.



Figure 1.13.24. Angel and Coat of Arms, 'probably Warcops'. III.225.

Agane under the ends of tableing ~~tableing above~~ which goes over the window. Cushons Ermin. Underneath the ends of the tableing, which goes over the window are the 2 coats also cut in stone This [Coat 2] is defaced but it appears like 3 cupps.

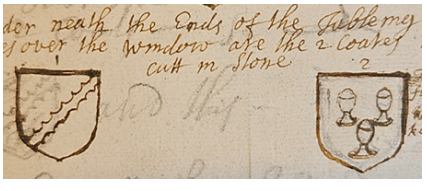


Figure 1.13.25. Coats of Arms. 'This is defaced but it appears like 3 cupps'. III.225.

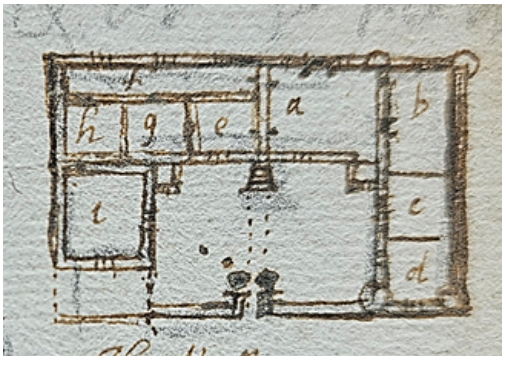


Figure 1.13.26. Plan of Smardale Hall. III.225.

[226] There is more pencilled text after this point, but it is illegible.
[227] MS: '& the Smerdals to built the tower.'
[228] The coat.

Key
a. The Hall.
b. The Dineing Roome
c. The withdrawing Room.
d. A Bed Chamber.
e. The Gallery
f. The Buttery
g.h. Lodgin Roomes
i. The old Tower.

[Armorial Glass]

In the hall (which is a lofty spruce litle roome with an arched cieling of plaster frett worke well wainnscotted with a 2 doored screenes to which you ascend on the outside by a pair of staires) are these coates of armes, painted in glass.

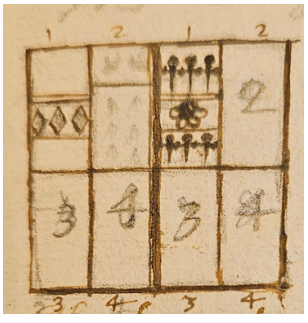


Figure 1.13.27. Armorial Glass in the Hall. III.225.

[Sinister Side]
I. Argent on a fess Gules, 3 cushons Ermin, tas[selled] Or. 2. Ermins palewise in 3 rows: on a chief Sable 2 bores heads coupd Argent. The 3[d] as the second. 4 as the first.
Impaling quarterly: Sc.
[Dexter Side]
I. Argent between 6 [cross-crosslets] Sable, a fess of the second charged with a cinqfoil of the first. The second Azure 3 Talbots ~~stored~~ gardent Argent. The three, Gules, 6 Lyons rampant Or. 2. 2. & 2. The 4[th] as the first in the Impaleing.



Figure 1.13.28. 'The same agane.' III.225.

In the Gallery End window 1620.
Dalstons coate quarterly of 6: Sc. I. Argent a cheveron ingraled Sable, 3 Hawkes heads erased proper i.e. brown, beaked Or.
II. is Argent a cross ingraled Vert between 4 anulets Sable.
III. Sable 3 coverd cups Argent.

IIII. Sable 3 cushons Ermin tass[elled] Or. The 7 Sable. 3 boares heads couped Argent langed Gules tusked Or.
V. Sable a cinqfoile Argent impaleing a quarterly coat of 4: 1. Argent a fess /\/\/\ between 3 cock heads errased Argent. 2. Within a bordure ingraled with a /\ betwene 3 escal[lops] Or. 3 as 2. 4 as 1. {Mantle Argent & Gules; Crists – an Hawkes head erased & a cock.}[229]



Figure I.13.29. Armorial Glass in the Gallery end window. III.225.

[III.190]

G. Soulby

[Notes]
N.W. [ab Ecclesia] 2 miles. 1 freehold, rest arbitrary: about 59 or 60 \ all but 2, which belong to Sir Dalston & answer at […][230] / [The rest] belong to Musgraves of Hartley time out of mind. Thomas de Hellebeck dimed de Souleby, 8. Edward 2. [1314-1315].[231] Noe demaine nor Hall but [there] has bin a chaple [during the time of] Sir Phil. Musgrave. No quarryes but [there is] limestone {Note. A well at Brough [in Soulby] cures the ague.}

[III.180]

The Tythe Barne of Souldby exchanged (with the owners of Smardale-Hall by Lord Whartons Ancestour) for Lammersit Hall in Wharton Parke. H. Raw.[232]

[III.194]

Soulby Chaple
(where never any before) built at the cost of Sir Phil. Musgrave in 1663, and endowed by him salvis indemnitate & privilegys matricis eatæ,[233] with 20^{li} per annum land in the Lordship of Soulby, & ten pound more lett out in the Town for the use of the Chappel in order to Repares.

[229] Some of the faint pencilled notes beneath and beside the text on this page have not been transcribed.
[230] The rest of the phrase is obscured by the binding.
[231] 'Dimed': to take a tenth part of, to tithe to the church or a temporal ruler. *OED*.
[232] Informant: Hugh Raw.
[233] 'Saving the interests and privileges of the mother-church.' See Carlisle Diocesan Bishops' Register: CAC(C). DRC1/4, 244-48.

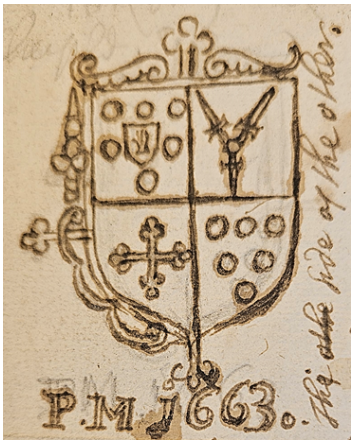


Figure 1.13.30. In Soulby Chapel. III.194.

[Soulby: Description]
It is a large \ irregular / village of about 60 families and has severall hansom fair houses in it. Has had an Hall South \ E. / from the chaple in the gro[u]nds calld Hall-Gards \ up and over / {the water[234] on the right hand as you goe to Kirkby. ~~Som~~ \ All / Sir Christophers tenants [as] chief Lord, but 2 to Smerdale to Sir William Dalston.}
And there are lands called the Demaine held now in Tennancy – But one freehold belonging to \ one / Unthanke, who has left 2 heiresses, all the rest Customary, some fine certain – purchased a good while agoe to an 8^{d} fine payable at the 1^{t} Lammas & Candlemans after it falls as by Indenture. The rest are fine Arbitrary.
It stands upon a fine level. Has wief & stray. And the river runs through it & sometimes overflowing the bankes […][235]

[I.496]

[Soulby Family]
Sulleby (now Soulby) gave name to an ancient family.
Henricus Sulleby, temp. Johannis[236] }
Robert de Sulleby Temp. Regis Johannis} ex Cartis Antiq. peres Comitatis Cumb. vel Blenkinsop[237]
Henricus de Sulleby 22. Henricus 3^{i}.[238] }
Gervasius de Sulleby 38. Henricus 3.[239] }

[I.497]

Sowelby is Anciently writ Sulleby, and that was ancient family of that name Lords of the place, 3 Generations of which were mention in one writeing, all the par[tic]ular writeing indeed which I have yett mett with concerneing them.

Henry de Suleby; Sir Richard de Suleby[240] Robert de Suleby
Robert de Suleby married Alice eldest daughter of Thomas de Helleb[eck] And because I am very much pleased with the Indenture of marriage between the said Robert which is so consise & full withal that it may either be a pattern or shame to the Clerkes in our days who spend so much time Inke and parchment with I know [not] how many impertinent Tautologies, and it is as followeth:

[234] A phrase here is obscured by the binding.
[235] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding. The river is Scandal Beck.
[236] 1199-1216.
[237] Document from the time of King John. 'From the ancient deeds in the possession of the Countess of Cumberland or Blenkinsop.'
[238] 1237-38.
[239] 1253-54.
[240] MS: 'Sir ~~Edward~~ \ Richard / de Suleby.'

Omnibus Xpi fidelibus ad quos hoc presens scriptum pervenerint Dominus Richard fil[ius] Henrici de Suleby salutem eternam in Domino Noveritis me concessise et dedisse, et hac mea presenti \ mea / carta confirmasse Roberto filio meo primogenito & Allicie fil[ie] Domini Thome de Hellebeck primogenite, in maritagio totam terram meam de Apilby cum pertinentijs quam habui vel quam habere potitus tam in Dominico quam in servicio tam in reditu homagij quam in omnibus alijs servitijs sine ullo retenemento. Tenendum et habendum eis et Heredibus suis in feodo et hereditate, de corpore eorum procreatis, libere quiete pacifice et integre cum omnibus libertatibus communibus et assi[gn]amentis ad predictam terram spiritu[ali]bus, de me in tota vita mea. Reddendo inde annuatim mihi pro omnibus servicijs ac[cust]o[mabil]ibus et demandis mihi tangentibus [...] [vj] sol[idos] & viij denari[os] Omnes vero prædicte Terre cum omnibus suis pertinentijs prefato Thome de Hellebeck et assignatis suis usque ad legitimam etatem predicti Roberti remanebunt. Et si contingat quod dictus Robertus infatus recesserit omnes predicte terre cum predictis homagijs et alijs servicijs prefate Allicie in tota vita sua remanebunt. Et si contingat quod dicta Allicia descesserit ante quam heredem cum predicto Roberto habuerit omnes predicte terre cum omnibus suis pertinentijs in manu prædicti Thome et assignatorum suorum, usque centum et decem marcas de predictis terris et tenementis perciperint, remaneant et omnis exitus predictarum Terrarum a principio quo habuit [saissinam] in predictis terris computatur dicto Thome et assignatis suis. Et si contingat quod Robertus decesserit antiquam de corpore suo cum dicta Allicia heredem percreaverit prefatus Thomas vel Allicia qualiscunque in predictis terris saissinus fuerit totam prefatam formam ut superscriptum est mi[hi] et heredibus meis annuatim persolvere debent usque ad termimum perfixum, et ego vero Ricardus et Heredes mei omnes predictas terras cum homagij redditibus & alijs servicijs predictis Thome et Allicie contra omnes gentes warantisabimus ac quietabimus \ per / predictam firmam. Et ut hec donatio et Concessio rata et stabilis permaneat, tam dictus Richardus quam dictus Thomas Sigilla sua his scriptis, subalternatione apposuerunt. Hijs Testibus Domino Willielmo de Daker Johanne de Morvill Thoma de Musegrave tunc vicecom[ite] westmarie persona de Crosseby Gerard Willielmo Roberto fratre suo. He[n]rico de Sandes[?] Willielmo de Wartcop, Willielmo de Soureby et alijs.[241]
✝ SECRETUM RICARDI[242]

[241] 'To all Christ's faithful to whom this present charter shall come, Lord Richard son of Henry of Suleby sends eternal greetings in the Lord. Know that I have granted and given and by this my present charter have confirmed to Robert my first-born son and to Alicia the first-born daughter of Lord Thomas of Hellebeck, in their marriage, to hold the whole of my estate of Apilby, with its appurtenances, which I have held or are under my control, as much in demesne as in service, as much in rendering of homage as in all other services, without any reservation. For them and their heirs born of their bodies to have and to hold in fee and inheritance, freely, quietly, peaceably and fully, with all common liberties and ecclesiastical appointments to the aforesaid estate that concern me during my whole lifetime, by rendering yearly to me [?] shillings and 8d for all the customary services and charges that appertain to me [...] Furthermore, all the aforesaid lands with all their appurtenances shall remain with the aforesaid Thomas of Hellebeck and his assigns until the coming of age of the aforesaid Robert. And if it should happen that the said Robert dies in childhood, all the aforesaid lands with the aforesaid homages and other services shall remain with the aforesaid Allicia for the whole of her life. And if it should happen that the aforesaid Allicia dies before she has had an heir with the aforesaid Robert, all the aforesaid lands with all their appurtenances shall remain in the hand of the aforesaid Thomas and his assigns, up to a limit of a value of 120 marks from the aforesaid lands and tenements, and all revenue of the aforesaid lands from the beginning when he had seisin in the aforesaid lands are reckoned to the said Thomas and his assigns. And if it should happen that Robert dies before he has produced an heir with the said Allicia, the aforesaid Thomas or Allicia, whichever has seisin in the aforesaid lands, must discharge yearly to me all the aforesaid agreement as written above, up to the fixed limit, and truly I, Richard, and my heirs, will guarantee to Thomas and Allicia against all people and will discharge all the aforesaid lands with rendering of homage and the other aforesaid services for the fixed payment. And so that this gift and grant may remain fixed and secure, both the said Richard and equally the said Thomas have placed their seals to this document, one after the other.
With these witnesses: Lord William of Dacre; John de Morvill; Thomas de Musgrave, then Earl of Westmorland; the parson of Crossby Gerard William; Robert his brother; Henry of Sandes; William of Wartcop; William of Soureby, and others.'

[242] Personal seal of Sir Richard de Suleby.

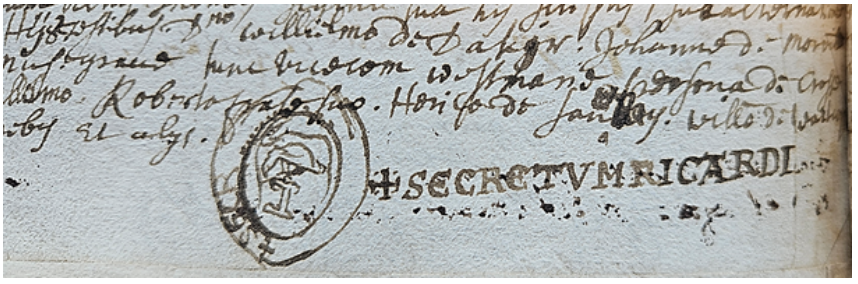


Figure 1.13.31. Seal of Sir Richard de Suleby. I.497.

[III.190]

H. Kaber

[Notes]
N.E. [ab Ecclesia] 2 miles; about 20 houses, most freehold. Lord of Thanet. \ 8. Edward 2 [1314-1315] Ten [held by] Alanus de Kabergh / No house; no demaine. Doukintre:[243] II freeholds II N.E. ab Ecclesia, Idem. {Free stone near the first. A free school. Founded 6 years ago by Thomas Waller of that Towne, & endowd with 8[li] per annum.}

[I.496]

The manner of Kaber in the 19. of Henry 7. [1503-1504]
As appears by inquisition [it] was then in the possession of Thomas son of Peter Roose held of the King in capete by Knights Service and 7s 8[d] rent Cornage to the King att Pasce & Michaelmas. & doeing service at the county court of Westm'land from moneth to moneth att the Kings Castle of Apleby: valet per Annum 8[li].
Peter dyed 8. of July, 15. Henry 7. [1500]. Thomas being then 24 years old. And Henry Lord Clifford tooke of Thomas after the death of Peter rent & other services by reason of the mannor aforesaid by affirming that Peter held the said mannor of him by Knights Service &c.[244] as in the forme of the inquisition e Blenkinsop de Helbeck on Burgh parish.

It seemes by Lord Cliffords answer to inquisition aforesaid, that Cabor and the other demanes mentioned in the Inquisition were not held of the King in Capite, but of Lord Clifford in Knights Service & by homage service & scutage; & he had the wardship & marriage[245] of minors, except they held some lands e[l]sewhere of the King in Capite, in which case their lands onely were seised as to the profits & Isues by the under or inferiour Lord, as ½ of Overton held by Lord Daker.

{Fulthorp of Caber 19. Henry 7. [1503-1504]]
This Caber was held as is declayred in my Lords reply before it came into the hands of Roos by One Alane Fulthorp 19. Henry 7. & Christofer his son after him. It should seme allso that John Mauchael held the same Lordship suceding John his father at the time of the takeing of this inquisition which was Anno 19. Henry 7. If there be not a mistake for Crakenthorpe which should be insteed of Cabergh. Yet if it be a mistake it is agane repeeted in my Lord Cliffords Answer {tis sure a mistake for Crakenthorpe payd that rent} yet he sayes that Thomas Roos injoyed the mannor of Cabergh, die Captionis ejusdem,[246] & ergo Fal[se].

{2. Henry 5. [1414-1415]} Thomas de Fulthorpe, brother of Sir William Fulthorp. quit clamd his Land Tenaments Ser[vice] in Kirby Superwyske. 2. Henry 5.

---

[243] Duckintree. The entry on Duckintree – closely written, blotted, interlineated – is insecure.
[244] MS: 'And Henry Lord Clifford tooke of Thomas after the death of Peter ~~tooke~~ rent & other services ~~of the forsaid Thomas~~ by reason of the mannor aforesaid by affirming, That Peter held the said mannor of him by Knights Service &c.'
[245] MS: 'warshaip & mar.'
[246] From the day of taking over.

The Countis of Cumberland holds land in Caber called Wadsons Lands, and does customarily give (as they say for the same tenure) a som[er][247] to Underbrough on the Ascension Day i.e. Hallow Thorsday, which \ any / yong men from any Country may run for, & he that comes 1st to it has the tree to him selfe, which [he] may sell or use as he thinks most fitting.

[III.179]

I. Heggerscale

[Notes]
3 miles East of Ecclesia. No hall nor demaine. About 8 h[ouses] Most of them freeholds & have also Tenent right. Lord Thanet. A corne mill. Wrensid[e] 4 miles ab Ecclesia. Same Tenure.

J. Rookeby

[Notes]
Rookeby & Rookeby Skarth. No hall nor demaine. East [ab Ecclesia] 2 miles. ~~About~~ \ 7 or / 8 houses. All freeholds with Tenant right also. Lord Thanet. And Read Yëat, E. ab Eccelsia 2 miles & ¼. Houses III as the other Tenure. Limestone. Red frestone. Coales bad.

[III.179]

[K.] Winton

[Notes]
N.E. ab Ecclesia 1 mile. Houses – about 60 {all but one} freeholds. ~~Lord~~ Earle of Thanet. Who answer at Brough. Sir Christopher Musgrave answer at Hartley. Sir William Dalstons answer at Smerdale. Lord Wharton {???}. Freeholds. There is a schoole.

[III.185]

[Winton: Description]
Winton is a well-builded village, haveing a quarry of \ good / huing stone at the East end thereof within 12 score yards distance (which quarry is also usefull for grindestones) and very good slate at Williamsons Gil, which is but 3 miles S.E. from the Towne; and yet their houses are most of them Thatched. There are betwixt 50 & 60 families within this village, of which there may be about 18 freeholders who allso hold other Tenant right \ lands, / ~~some of which pay a Quit Rent to Hartley Castle, na,ely a red rose~~ of which VI \ valluable / Sc. Robert Skafe, Willam Shutt {Richard Munkhouse, Thomas Morland, Thomas Tunstall & Robert William[son], who has a free Tenant under him. Som of the freeholders as partners in Wilkinsons Tenement at the high end of the S. side row, pay in their courtes a red rose quit \ rent / to Hartley Castle, namely a red rose?} But the most doe hold of Appelby Castle and pay Tenants Rent; which is so high that I thence conjecture they have bin first rased out of the demanes when the mannour house was pulld down & demollished. Which house, as it seemeth, hath stood in the upper end of the towne, i.e. the East end, for there are about X acres of land call'd the Hall Crofts, & XL acres calld the Hall Leeses now, and anciently possest by the Williamsons, freeholders in this Towne, which names doe shew them to have bin parcell of the demanes. And in a place which is called Horne Crofts, adjoyneing Hall Lees, carved ~~hewen~~ stones have bin diggd within memory of man, and / ~~as also~~ slates\ the last year were / ~~have bin also~~ got out of the ground as likewise several years before* which seam the Remanes of the old manner House. But now the Principal house in the Town, to which they give the name of an Hall for the goodness of it, is Mr Robert Skaifes sometimes

[Machell's Notes: III.185

*{Rob. Williamson: where?}[248]

[III.186]

Fellow of Queens College in Oxon & now Rector of Sparshold[249] \ in Barkeshire / being the Chiefe of that name.
2. The next is the house of Mr William Shut, and the third is:

[247] Summer tree: 'originally and chiefly Scottish; a high pole set up during festivals held in the summer, especially at midsummer'. *ODNB*.
[248] 'Witness: Rob. Williamson. Where was this?'
[249] This is 'Sparsholt'; see below: 'Mr Robert Skaife of Winton Hall \ Rector of Sparsholt'.

3. The school-house, built by his Unckle, Mr William Morland, \ as the chief Benefactor / principal promoter with assistance of the rest of the towne,[250] about 30 years since; in memory of which there is this Inscription ~~upon~~ over the Dooer.

W M
1659
{i.e. William Morland.}

It hath no Indowment, but they give their Schoolmaster 1^{s} per quarter for every scholar,[251] & his meat weakly from house to house.[252]

[Tenure]
The Customary Tenants doe belong to diverse [landowners]: namely to
1. Lord Wharton of Wharton Hall – about 5 or 6, who Answer at Kirkby [Stephen Manor Court] and pay a fine certaine by ancient purchase. (Mr Will. Shut inform[ant])
2. To Richard Burton of Brampton[253] Esq. – 2 or 3, who are Arbitrary Tenants.
3. To Mr John Lowson of Battlebrough in the Burrow of Appleby, about 2 or 3, who are Arbitrary also.
4. Sir [blank] Dalston of Smerdale &c. 2 or 3 Arbitrary.
5. Mr Robert Skaife of Winton Hall \ Rector of Sparsholt &c. / fower or five, Arbitrary.
6. But the chief Lord in this manner of Winton is The Earle of Thannet, Lord of Westm'land, & at whose Court in Brough Castle all the rest of the Tenants doe Suit & Service, being Arbitrary Tenants, & formerly Answered, but it was a great wrong, both there & at Kirkby.

[I.568]
{There are Scaifes now, men of no great account, yet the best of the name in these our days – the […] Warcop Tower being a younger brother. I find mention of one in Inq[uisition] Clifford; 31. Henry VI. [1452-1453]. Bart. Agreement with Apleby. One John Sc[aife] inter Armiger.}[254]

[L. Lammerside Notes][255]

[I.496]
I thinke Lammerset hal is in this parish, of which place I finde This [in ancient evidences]: Thomas Warcop de Lambersate Esq., forsan? temp. Richard 2.[256]

[I.586]
Lambersett hall was formerly a seat of the Warcops. Thomas de Warthcopp de Lambersete – a Juror in the Inquisitio de Matilda filia Beauchamp Relict Clifford 4. Henry 4. [1402-1403].[257]
Item. John de Lancaster de Brampton & John de Helton de Barton.
Thomas War~~th~~cop de Lamberset: 3. Edward 4. [1463-1464].
Vide plura in parochia de Warthcop.[258]

[III.199]

[7. Kirkby Stephen Families]

{Pickerings Machels Crakenthorps}
By Information of old Isbell Wharton of Wharton Dikes – aged 93 at Simon & Jude next ensueing,[259] in this year of Our Lord 1689.
Taken July 8 eodem anno per T.M.

[250] MS: 'Mr William Morland, \ as the chiefe Benefactor / principal promoter ~~with~~ with ~~whatever~~ assistance ~~he could raise in the neibourhood~~ of the rest of the towne'. N.B. Machell sometimes placed pricked lines under words and phrases under reconsideration.
[259] The Feast of St Simon and St Jude is on 28 October.

Hiltons	Mr Christopher Pickering of Threlkeld in Cumberland		One sister = to Machell of Crakenthorp who had =		Another to [Blank] Dalston of Castlethwaite in Graistock Cumberland			Another to Crakenthorp of Newbigin, whence the Crakenthorps	
Rowland Skaife had also an estate in the Woulds of Yorkshire	A nat[ural] daughter Frances for whom he purchased the Lordship of Ormsheved and bestowed her therewith on Ciprian Hilton		One of his daughters maryed to Rowland Skaife of Blasterfield & of Winton, which he bought of one Hilton. He had Isue by Mistress Machel		Pickering Dalston | William who sold it to Williams[260] yet left a son now at London. = He afterwards maryed to his 2nd wife [daughter] of Mr Barton who sold Ormside-Hall by ~~whom have~~ had ~~sonns~~ | 2. Row-land | 2. Arthur ad Helbeck	1. Robert | Robert | Robert | 1. Robert now owner of land at Winton	Anna		
Hartley 50li	Jane Skaife who was maryed to Hugh Hartley of Melbeck near Kirkby Stephen: an ancient family, by whom she had Isue 8 children: 4 sons & 4 daughters		Elianore, married to Francis Skaife, the younger brother of Miles of Ashby-Grange, who sold it to [blank] whence the Skaifes in Cumberland ~~Rob~~ ~~Arthur~~						
Whartons	1. Rowland. s. prole	3. Hew s. prole	4. Robert obijt natas	2. Edward Hartley of Melbeck	1. Elizab--eth obijt in nupta	2. Annas maryed to Thomas Raw of [Blank]		Isabel maryed to Michael W. of Wharto-n Dikes	4. ?

[252] I.e. Whittlegate, explained by the Cumberland poet, Robert Anderson: 'In some parts of Cumberland [the school-master] not only receives quarter-pence, but is provided with victuals at the homes of his scholars, which he visits in succession. This whittle-gait (as it is called) subjects him however to the toil of travelling.' R. Anderson, *Ballads in the Cumberland Dialect with Notes and a Glossary* (Carlisle, 1805), 144.
[253] In Long Marton.
[254] 'One John Scaife is among the Esquires.'
[255] Lammerside.
[256] Lammerside Castle was rebuilt and strengthened in the 14th century to provide protection against Scots raiders. It is situated between Pendragon Castle and Wharton Hall, see Hyde & Pevsner, 511.
[257] 'Thomas de Warthcop of Lammerside was a juror in the inquisition on the death of Matilda, daughter of Beauchamp, relict of Clifford.'
[258] 'See more under the parish of Warcop.' (Part 1, Ch.23.)
[259] The Feast of St Simon and St Jude is on 28 October.
[260] As this name is placed very close to the binding, it could read as 'Williamson'.

Hugh Hartley of Melbeck | Hugh Raw, now of Kirkby | Lucy Mompl 1. Leonard maryed to [?] had isue Hugh = Mrs Barbara C

3. Robert	2. Edward	1. Hugh, the present heir of Melbeck, an Oxford scholler now liveing	Isabell = 1. To John Fetherston, a younger son of Sir Timothy of Kirkoswald in Cumberland 1. Wharton Fetherston | Wharton 2. Remary to Mr [Blank] Toping soljer, 1689

[III.210]

The Affinity & Consanguinity of the Scaifes, Hartleys & Whartons to
The Machells of Crakenthorp & Hiltons of Ormside & Crakenthorpes of Newbiging.

It will not becom to boast of this family but I dar[e] aver, that there is not a Gentleman in Either County of any Antiquity that is not related to the Machells of Crakenthorp. He is not a gentleman that is not of kin to the Machells of Crakenthorp.

[I.588]

[Musgrave Pedigree]
{I have extracted a Pedigree hence; yett the notes may conduce to an historicall account of places. T.M.}

1. Thomas de Musgrave maryd [blank] and had Isue
   - i. Thomas.
   - ii. Richard, who maryed & had Isue ~~Richard &~~ Thomas. He maryed Hilary & had Land in Sandforth & Great Musgrave sine die.[261]

2. Thomas de Musgrave; \ son of Richard / maryed & had Isue {Edward 1.} [1272-1307]
   - i. Nicolas? purchased Lands in Soulby: 1. Edward 3. [1327-28] And had isue:[262]
   - ii. Dominus Robert de Musgrave (vixit 16. Edward 2.) [1322-23]) who was Quere son of Stuart; dyed 39. Henry 3. 1255.[263] So Mathew Parisse.[264] {His wifes name was Agnes, daughter of William E. Ferrars & Darby by whome he had Maybell.}[265]
     1. Richard. (2. of Edward 3.) [1328-29] to whom Robert conv[ey]ed Land in Soulby (17. Edward 2.) [1713-14] He had Robert (vixit 3. Edward 3.)
     2. Robert (16. & 17. of Edward 2.)

[261] MS. '1. ~~Thomas~~ \ Rech / ii. Thomas. Richard, who maryed & had Isue ~~Richard &~~ Thomas [blank] he maryed Hilary & had Land in Sandforth & great M.S. sine die.' 'Sine die': for a period of time with no fixed end. *OED*.
[262] MS. 'Nicolas? purchased Lands in Soulby: 1 Edward 3. And had isue … Nicolas de Musgrave maryed purchased Land in Soulby – 1 Ed. 3 & had issue.'
[263] This page is very jumbled. Machell has drawn curved lines to show which pedigree belongs to which person, but it is obvious that these particular dates do not fit together well.
[264] Matthew Paris (c.1200-1259), *Chronica Majora, a universal history* (in several parts) *from the Creation to 1259*. Bound with the third part is the *Historia Anglorum* (1250-55).
[265] MS: '{~~He had a daughter named Mable~~. His wife's name was Agnes, daughter of William E. Ferrars & Darby by whome he had Maybell.}'

3. John & Thomas & Edward (2. & 3. of Edward 3.) [1329-30].
6. Isabell, Christany & Johanna.
Robert de Musegrave conveyed Lands in Souleby to Richard his brother (17. Edward 2.) [1323-24]

3. Richard son of Nicolas maryd [blank] and by her he had Isue ~~Robert~~
1. Robert att full aige (10. Edward 3.)? [1336-37]
2. Thomas forsan Post Sir Thomas
3. Richard

4. Robert son of Richard maryed I thinke Johanna the daughter of Johanna Mountney after whose death he was to injoy Crosby Gerrard, Souleby & Little Musgrave; but in case he dyed \ without Isue / those lands should revert to the right heires of Johanna (10. Edward 3.) [1336-37]. She had lands in Crosby Overton, Little Musgrave & Souleby, & Kirkby Stephen (11. Edward 3.) [1337-38]. He was living 29. Edward 3. [1335-36].
1. Agnes, daughter to Robert & niece to Richard {?} to whome she conveys lands [at] Souleby (21. Edward 3.) [1347-48].
2. William.

5. William son of Johanna, marryed & had Isue
1. Thomas, who was ~~s. &~~ heire to Johanna.

6. Thomas de Musegrave, son of William & heir of Johanna (vixit 30. Edward 3.) [1356-57] granted Souleby & Kirkby Stephan to Thomas de Musegrave Chivalier (30. Edward 3. {Mort. 8. Richard 2. 1384.} He lived in [both] the 30th & 47 of Edward 3.[266] I finde mention of Isabell his wife in the 31. Edward 3. [1357-58] and in the 47. He is writt Lieutenant. He had Isue [blank] \ He marryed Margaret one of the daughters & coheires of Sir William Ros of Yelton Knight {and had Lands by her, viz. Haut […][267] Wisseld & Collawood that I thinke was M. de Musgrave. Vide in the Church.} He was Lord de Hartyl[268] Thomas sirnamed the Young.

7. Thomas de Musegrave the Younger married (?) Johanna the daughter of Sir Thomas de Musegrave who granted to him & herr \ & their heires / all his goods moveable & immoveable (Anno 3. Richard 2.)
1. Thomas.

[I.589][269]

8. Thomas de Musegrave (afterwards Sir Thomas) Lord of Harcla, marryed Mary the daughter of John Vaus, widow of Thomas Holland Earle of Huntington. She dyed the 16. of Richard 2. 1392. He dyed in 1409 in the [10th-11th] Henry 4. And after as I suppose Elizabeth dyed & one of the co-heires of Sir William Fits William (ii. Henry 4.) [1400-01].
1. Richard (vixit 11. Henry 4.) [1409-10].
2.? Thomas, who maryed Alice
3.? William to whom \ William / Lord Dacer Warden of the West March.

9. Richard de Musegrave \ after Sir Rich. / son of Thomas de Musegrave Knight Lord de Harcla, maryed Elizabeth the ~~daughter of~~ sister of Sir Edward Bethan de Bethan She dyed 12. of the Callends of Feb. 1419 (3. Henry 5.) He dyed 9 of November 1464 (5. Edward 4.)
? 1. Thomas \ son & heir, / who maryed & dyed durante vita patris.[270]
? 2. Henry, who maryed Mary, one of the daughters & heires of Stap[leton] ut infra.
? 3. William, to whome Lord Daker vid id supra (vixit 17. Henry 6.) [1438-39].

10. Thomas, son & heir of Sir Richard \ de / Musegrave Knight, maryed Johanna one of the daughters & Heires of William Stappleton & Margrett his wife and Henry de Musegrave maryed an other whose name was Marg[aret].
Thomas dyed, Jan. 3 1447 (26. Henry 6.) Johanna {sine die} was liveing a widow in the 34. Henry 6. [1455-56].

---

[266] 47 of Edward III = 1373-74.
[267] The rest of this word is blotted.
[268] The transcription of this word is insecure.
[269] The whole of this page has been lightly scored through.
[270] See the Latin Glossary.

? 1. William Musgrave Esq. (13. Edward 4.) [1473-74].
? 2. Richard
? 3. Nicolas brother, betwixt whome & S \ James / Robert) having […][271]
? 4. Cuthbert Musgrave (5 Henry).

[I.589]

11. Richard Musgrave Esq. had variance with the Bishop of Carlile for the patronage of Musgrave Church, 8. Henry 7. [1492-93]. He was knighted afterwards. That he was son of Thomas appeares out of my notes from the Heralds Office & that he had isue Jane, at forsan if Jane be interlined out of Blenkinsops Pedegree.

Edward: I meet with Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq. and John Musgrave of Hartley Knight (7. Henry 7.) [1491-92].
Alexander (43. Henry 8.)?!! [272]
? Edward?
Jane
? John?
? Cuthbert?

12. Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq. He lived in the 7th & so on to the 14th of Henry 7. [1491-99]. & so did Sir John. Query whether he was not a priest & brother to Edward {was living 33. Henry 8.} This Edward had variance with T.B[lenkinsop] about the Bounders of Musgrave & Helbeck fells 17. Henry 7. [1501-02]. This Edward, as appears by my Booke, married Joan daughter & co-heire of Sir Christopher Ward Knight (of Givendale ut puto)[273] and by her had Isue

1. William, after Sir William, who maryed Elizabeth the daughter of Sir Thomas Carwin, & had Isue Richard who maryed \ Ann / The daughter of Thomas Lord Wharton & had Isue Thomas, & Elianore who was maryed to Robert.
2. Edward, who dyed without Isue.
3. Simon, who after the decease of his nephews became h[eir].

[I.591][274]

4. Madalen (25. Henry 8.) [1533-34]. She was maryed to Thomas Blenkinsop of Helbeck, and had Isue by him, besides 5 daughters maryed to 5 Esqs. viz. to Mauchell of Crakanthorp, Pickering of Crosby [Blank][275]

13. Simon Musgrave 3 son of Sir Edward; And att lenth Sir Simon, uncle to the last Sir Richard succeeded to the anceant lands of his Ancestours: as next heire maile. He maryed Julian Elicar of the county of Yorke and by her had Isue 4 sonns and one daughter.

1. Christopher
2. Thomas, \ Captane of the Beauchastle, / who maryed: 1. Carnaby, widow of Witheringtone & mother to Sir Thomas. 2. A Scotchwoman \ There is one Thomas Musgrave now liveing at Beau[…][276]
3. Richard who maryed [Blank] of Norton Conyers the sister of Sir John Dalston of Dalston, had Isue Sir Thomas \ and Sir Richard / but now extinct except Simon […][277]
4. John, who maryed \ Mabel / the daughter & heire of M. of Haton and had Isue William & John, but the Estate settled of a younger brother, uncle to Mabel.
5. [Blank] who was maryed to Sir Nicholas Curwen of Workington.

---

[271] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[272] Machell clearly acknowledged this as an impossible date. Henry VIII died in the 38th year of his reign, in January 1547.
[273] 'Ut puto': see the Latin Glossary.
[274] Also numbered p.3.
[275] A note on MS.I.579 reads: 'Maudlin Blenkinship daughter of Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq. and \ great / Grandchilde to Lord Clifford & Lord Dakers, Had 5 daughters by Thomas Blenk. her Husband – maryed to 5 esquires – Machel of [blank]'.
[276] The rest of the sentence is obscured by the binding.
[277] MS: 'believeing wh[…] was son to Sir […]' The rest of the sentence is obscured by the binding.

14. Christopher son & heir of Sir Simon, maryed Jane the daughter of Sir Henry Curwen of Workington, & sister to Sir Nicholas, so that this was a dubble match. This Christopher dyed before his father, and lef Isue, son & 3 daughters.

1. Richard.
2. Julian, maryed to John Skelton of Armathwate Esq.[278]
3. Mary who dyed unmarryed.
4. Margarett who was maryed to Frances Whitfield of Whitfield (in Cumberland).

15. Richard Musgrave son & heir of Christopher att the aige of fowertene yeres, maryed Francis, the daughter of Philip Lord Wharton, By Fraunces, Daughter of Henry Clifford Earle of Cumberland, and Aunt to Henry Last Earl of Cumberland of That name of The Cliffords. This Richard was by King James Created Knight of the Bath, and afterwards Baronet viz.[279] He dyed att Naples in Italy about the aige of 81, & there he was buryed. He had Isue by her 1 son & 1 Daughter.

1. Philip \ then 7 yeres old /afterwards Sir Philip.
2. Mary who dyed unmaryed ætatis suæ 20.[280]

16. Sir Philip Musgrave Baronett, son & heir of Sir Richard about the 19 yere of his aige maryed Julian the youngest daughter

[I.590][281]

of Sir Richard Hoton Knight of Goldsbrough in Yorkshire, being one of the Judges of the Common Pleas. He was Active and stiring in defence of his Prince King Charles the 1[t] in those Cruell unnatural and most bloody Civill Wars, and dureing the excile of King Charles suffered abundantly both in body and Estate, as indee[d] all the Gentrery in these parts did likewise: But after the restauration of King Charles 2 he was rewarded by being made Governour of the City of Carlisle (& Lieutenant of the 2 sister Countyes Westmorland & Cumberland) haveing allso other offices and imployment by which he retrieved his far spent Estate, & restored his family to a most florishing Condition: being yett liveing & Knight of the Shire for this County of Westmorland.[282] He had Isue by Julian his wife

1. Richard, who maryed Margarett, 1 of the daughters of Sir Thomas Harrison in the County of York Knight {By Margarett, one of the daughters of Conyers Lord Darcy, of Hornby Castle in Yorkshire} whose armes are Azure 3 demy Lyons Or; & by her had Isue
    1. Margaret, who dyed young.
    2. One son who dyed an infant.
    3. Mary.
2. Phillip, who dyed about 20 yeres of Aige att Paris in France & was buried att Share[n]ton a Protestant church.
3. Christopher Musgrave Captane of a Company in the City of Carlile; he maryed, 1. Mary one of the daughters & heires of Sir Andrew Cogan of Grenwich in the County of Kent; whose Armes are Gules 3 Laurell leaves slipped, and by her he had Isue
    1. Phillip.
    2. Christopher.
    3. Mary.

    This Christopher was afterwards Knighted in 1671 by King Charles the II[283] and maryed to his 2 wife, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir John Fra[n]klin & sister to Sir Richard of More Park in Hartfordshire, by whome he had Isue
    1. Richard, who dyed an Infant.
    2. John.
    3. Elizabeth.
4. William dyed about 1 yere old and was buryed att Edenall.

[278] Of Armathwaite Castle, Cumberland, see *CFH*, 309-10.
[279] Machell left two pecked lines here, for extra material, not given.
[280] 'In the 20th year of her age.'
[281] Also numbered p.4.
[282] See Sir Philip's will and inventory of his residences, CAC(C), PROB/1677/WINVX58.
[283] In the MS, Machell wrote, 'Charles the 1[t].'

[I.590A][284]

5. Simon: who was unfortunately drowned when swimming for divertisment & Recreation in the parish of Wicam, and was buryed in the church.[285]
6. Thomas,[286] brought up in Queens College at the University of Oxon where he tooke his degrees of Bat. & M. of Arts; and after he had bin severall yeres fellow of the said College was removed thence unto his own Country, being parson Great Salkeld & Archdeacon of Carlile. He marryed Mary an other of the daughters of Sir Thomas Harrison, whose elder sister was maryed to his eldest brother; He was maryed September 28, 1674.
7. Frances onely daughter to Sir Phillip was maryed to Edward Hutchinson \ Esq. / of Wicam Abby in the County of Yorke, whose Armes are Ermin, a Griffin Erect or Rap., and by him had Isue: Edward, Julian, Frances, Philip, Richard, William.

[I.590B]

Thomas Musgrave Lord of Hartley	(47. Edward 3.) [1373-74]
dyed –	(8. Richard 2.) [1384-85]
Edward Musgrave of Hartley Esq.	(7. Henry 7.) [1491-92]
? John Musgrave of Hartley Knight	(14. Henry 7.) [1498-99]
Sir Thomas Musgrave gives Mark 20	(3. Richard 2.) [1379-80] to Thomas Musgrave younger, his daughter Johanna.

[I.592]

[Machell's Notes from Flowers *Visitation of Yorkshire* (1564/68) and Brooke's *Cataloge of Nobility* (1616)]

[1.] Flowers *Visitation of Yorkshire* 1564 \ 1568.
From this Thomas & Johanna Stapleton descended these severall Family from the younger brothers.
3 Musgraves of Haton, from the 4th Brother, yet in being.
Musgrave of Penreth, from the 2nd Brother; extinct now for want \ male Isue. /
Musgraves of Crookedake from the 3d; extinct in an Heiress maryed to Sir John Balentine a Scotchman \ & / 2nd Brother there.
There was an award by the Duke of Glocester (20. Edward 4. [1480-81]).[287]
She is writ in her will Jane, anno 1540, wherein she bequeaths amongst other things, to every servant a whole yeres advance and what it woth takeing notice of, to Katherine Allyne her old servant a sufficient living for Terme of her life out of her own Lands at Gyvadall; & the said will is confirm'd by her husband.
Sir Edward & Sir William, father & son, exchanged Lands with Sir Thomas Wharton Knight. One of the King Councill & Gardian of the West Marishes of England in the 33. of Henry 8. [1541-42].
(Hugh Machell Crakanthorp Esq. was appointed an assistant to him \ by a special warrant / under the said Kings signet & signe manual.)[288]
Richard was at full aige (37. of Henry the 8. 1545), & entered upon his lands at Martinmas. He was maryed 38. ejusdem; dyed 10 of September (~~which 5 Hen 8~~) 1555 at Edenall & was buryed there.
2. & 3. Philip & Mary [1555-56], He maryed Agnes, for so she is called in Musgrave writeings – who was daughter to Thomas 1t Lord Wharton & had Thomas who dyed about the aige of 12 or 13. & Elionore maryed to Robert Bowes of Aske in the County of Yorke. Agnes his widow was afterwards maryed to Humphrey Musgrave, of the House of Haton.
[Blank] Marshes pay 100li for work don at Beaucastle (25. Henry 6.) [1446-47]). He had Isue, Richard borne in 1423 (2. of Henry 6.)

[284] Also numbered p.5.
[285] End of MS.I.590: 'Simon unfortunate druned when swimming for recreation.'
[286] The 5th son.
[287] The beginning of this sentence is obscured by the margin.
[288] 'Sign Manual': an autograph signature, especially that of the sovereign authenticating a document. *OED*.

[I.593]

[2.] In Brookes *Cataloge of Nobility* [1616][289]
I finde one Robert Musgros (if it be not a different name) son of Richard Lord Derhurst[290] who maryed Agnes daughter of William Earle Ferrars & Derby, by whome he had Isue Mabell, who was maryed to Henry Lord Stafford (è Record 26. Henry 3. [1241-42].)
In the 6. of Edward 3. [1331-32] some Lands [at] Souleby to Robert his son, & Rich. M. had 1. the manner of Souleby (6. Edward), which he conveyed to \ the Lady / Matilda Bedall. I thinke he marryed Johann Beaucham* Sc. 12. of Edward 3. [1338-39], & had Isue William who had Isue Thomas de Musegrave, who granted Souleby and Kirkby Stephan to Thomas de Musegrave Chivalier (Anno 30. Edward 3. [1356-57]).
Sir Thomas (17. Edward 3.) [1333-34]. He was, I thinke son of Richard.†

[Machell's Notes: I.593]
*Quaere? See if here be not a mistake, about the 2 Johannas: 1. wife to Richard & the other to Robert the son of Richard. And whether the 2. Thomas & Sir Thomas, were upon that account of 2 familyes; the one Great Musgrave & Hartley afterwards, the other Little Musgrave.
†Thomas & Nicolas: Brother Edward 1, and sons of Richard.
A free warrant from King Edward ~~2~~ \ 1. / (39. of his Reign in England. In France 19.)[291] Unto T.M. & his heires forever for the Lordships & Grounds of Musgrave Soulby & Crossby, that none should fowle or destroy game.
Sir Andrew Har[c]lay created Earle of Carlile 14. Edward 2. [1320-21]. Executed, 1322.
It is writt \ de / Mussegrave & \ de / Musegrave in writeings sans date.

[8. Things remarkable in] Kirkby Stephan Parish

[III.181]

{1688} \ 3 years since / there dyed an old woman at Blackskar in \ the Lordship of Stanemore. / This parish ab Ecclesia 4 miles N.E. Her name was [blank] Brunskill, who lived to 108.
At Coatgarth \ on Stanemore / in the parish of Kirkby & Lordship of ~~Brough~~ Winton \ ? / dyed one [blank] Morland, a widow, 4 years since, of 109. I saw her \ my selfe / when my Lord of Thanet rid the bounds: ætat 107.[292]

[III.190]

A quarry in Kirkby, Neatby & Wharton parish of white & read marble which endures fier well.

[III.193]

Mr Heugh Raw – informes me that in Dow-Mea on Kirkby fell 3 miles S. from the church, is found in the peat moss a great plenty of firr, insomuch that\ they / scarce can digg or grave for it.[293]

[III.194][294]

Story of a late conjurer in Kirkby.[295]

[289] Ralph Brooke (c.1553-1625), herald, *A catalogue and succession of the kings, princes, dukes, marquesses, earles, and viscounts of this realme of England, since the Norman conquest, to this present yeare, 1619: together, with their armes, wiues, and children: the times of their deaths and burials, with many their memorable actions* (1619). A subsequent volume (1622) addressed errors in the first edition.
[290] Perhaps, 'Deerhurst'.
[291] There are inaccuracies here. Edward I ruled for 35 years but Edward III ruled for 51 years. His 39th regnal year in England was 1365-66; his 19th regnal year in France (1358-59) was not his 39th regnal year in England; it was his 32nd regnal year in England.
[292] 'When she was aged 107.'
[293] Dig for peat or turf.
[294] This page has been divided into four parts, only one of them facing the reader; the others upside down or at right angles. They have been transcribed in their relevant quarters.
[295] A 'conjuror' was a wizard/witch: one who dealt in the black arts. Reginald Bainbridge, the learned schoolmaster at Appleby, was accused of this by some, see part 1. Ch.1. Parish and Town of Appleby, II.507.

! Query. Midwife: Isabel Pinder near Newbiging in Russendale.[296] Send to the minister to Soulby, Winton, Waller.[297]

[III.192]

Hither Pit, Winton: [A Frightening Tale]
In the libertyes in the Hither pit {about 6 years since} where they wrough[t] from on[e] shaft to another; as they wrought, they heard som thing ~~still~~ \ now & then / working before, picking is Its neer & ~~pullen down~~ \ huing coals. / ~~but sayes nothing till~~ One time the Tralers boyes which draged the coles to the ~~pit~~ \ shaft / mouth where candles smoke upon the side of the worke \ ings (c.), / saw something like a little woman coming out of the \ aforementioned / side wo[r]king (c.) with a candle in her hand, at which, they being very much affrighted, ~~they~~ shout out & cried[298] & came to the ~~pit~~ \ shaft / to be drawn up, & durst not stay one after another but came all up together. As soon as they were \ up, / Mr L. Wharton, \ the farmer of the pit, / ~~being at the Banke~~ being calld from the house by som at the pits who told him the[y] were crying & frigh[t]ed, came to the pit, where presently he heard a great \ shrill / shrike, like the voyce of a woman in a great fright; & the

[III.191]

wo[r]kemen within {4 or 5 hewers, 5 trailers}, onely heard \ at the same time / a great rumbling noyse, upon which and the boyes not coming againe, they supposed that som had faln into the pit and so came to see. And Mr Wharton in the meantime ~~being~~ thinking that som of the workmen were killd, sent one Joyn Boyes into the pit, & there the workmen & he met together – & so they made haist to be wound up, one after another.

[III.192]



Figure 1.13.32. Small sketch of the Hither Pit. Letters a. to f. denote areas mentioned in the text. III.192.

Key to sketch
d. e: old shafts
a-e 100 yards.
f. Whitehold […] Shaft[299]

[III.191]

The next day, tho very unwillingly, they set upon their worke againe, but heard nor see nothing till \ about / 3 monthes after. {There 20 years but onely visible in a light.}

[296] This lady is mentioned in Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale, in connection with the birth of a hare to a female parishioner, Ellin Hardlow (see III.307). Though no one is openly blamed, the allusion is reminiscent of contemporaneous tales about healers. Midwives, like other women healers of the 17th century, were vulnerable to accusations of witchcraft. See Jessica Nelson, 'An examination of witches in the 17th century', National Archives, 8 April 2021, at https://blog.nationalarchives.gov.uk/an-examination-of-witches-in-the-17th-century.
[297] The name 'Waller' could refer to Machell's informant William Waller of Swinesty near Brough, see III.394, above.
[298] Crayed.
[299] Part of this name is obscured by the binding.

Then, workeing a drift to Whitehold-[…]-shaft, which was an old pit full of water, in order to getting the water out of, for ganeing the field that was 50 years drownd; When he came near the pit, the sp[irit] ~~wrought~~ \ seemed to {always wrought} on one side while he wrought the other {to prevent danger} wrought and rumbled to their great amazement{[It] tooke caps of, blew out candles all by single; seen by Rob who went ½ way with him} till at length he strikd through & cryed, the hole's mine – make a hole with the end of his pick, out which the water spouted over his head and presently stop'd agane, which he, supposeing might be don by som dirt & so made it bigger that he could put in his pick-shaft & his hand. ~~And~~ But he, when he found that he could feel the water by putting his hand into the body of it & \ yet / not make it run, he began to grow fearfull, & so came away with all the rest with him, rideing the shaft one after another. The Bankeman being last, thought som thing behinde gave a pat on his back, upon which he grew sick; & so continued for 24 hours.[300]

Then they went from the shaft d. to f., to see how it emtiyed, & it was gon, tho 5 fathom deep to the very mud; but while \ they / lookd on, the mud began to rowl & loyle, & so the pit \ filld / agane with water, {the other shaft (d.) bein cover'd with water \ also / up to the roofe.} And the next \ day / when they went to worke, it was all gon out of both shafts. Then they wrought for draneing another old shaft & it was sometimes workeing afore them, and when they came at the \ old / shaft & had let of the water, in rideing the shaft they found som dead bones like legs & arms bones.}

[III.179]

For a fortnight after,[301] it was heard some times to moane above ground about the pit house. & since that time it ceased, and hath not troubled the works ~~since~~. It went away with a fearful shrike, & frighted 2 familyes out of their sleepe.
Attested by L. Wharton. Joyn Boys of the workman that did.
Richard Bower of West Pit House, now living there.
It[em.] L. Wharton asserit.[302]

[300] An MS margin comment here gives, 'Som time seen before. Both thought one time her coates touched his back.' The text on this page is jumbled with interlineation and marginalia. The transcription aims to reproduce Machell's narrative as accurately as possible, given the difficulties.
[301] MS: '\ + and ~~after~~ /'
[302] 'L. Wharton declares likewise.'

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 14]

[Parishes of Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

[I.335]

[Kirkby Thore]
It is divided into 3 Constablewicks, in each of which 2 C[onstablewicks are] part of the Hamlets: Sc. Kirkbythore & Hale (Grange of Hale) \ ~~where the~~ / & a place cald Spittle (built as tis thought of old for an harbour for pilgra[m]es & travallers).

Milburne & Grange, to which also belongs Kirkhouse, held in ten[ure] of the rector of K[irkbythore] an Gullom Holm – where there is an house or 2 held of Hougill Castle. Temple Sowerby, within which township & at a little distance is Acorn Banke – a pleasant seat lately erected – which is the chiefe place of Dalston of Westm'land, \ a young branch of the Dalstons of Dalston Hall in Cumberland, / who came from Uldale & placed themselves here, whose armes are [blank].

{The rectory}
{A manner in it selfe yet within several tenements, haveing tenements both her[e] and at Kirkhouse & Sowerby.

The Hall
An ancient seat of the Whartons but later to Mr Humphrey Wharton, Cou[n]sellor at Law, by purchase from his cosan & chiefe,[1] John Wharton Esq. who left 2 daughters ~~here maryed~~ Jane the [blank] maryed to Thomas, 2 son of John Dalston Esq. of Acorn Bank, & [Blank] maryed Anthony Hutton Esq., Justice of Peace in the county of Cumberland. His Arms are [blank]{!}

Chaples
[1.] Milb[urn] – anciently endowed, beside what was setled by the inhabitants at the 1st foundation with iiij markes per annum by Robert de Veteripont, son of Johus, to whom &c. was first granted anno [blank]; but which ex gratia are \ somwhat / augmented by the incumbent.
2. Sowerby, with iiij l[i] per annum[2] payable by the town augment[ed] ex gratia by the incumbent. {!}

[Machell's Notes: I.335A]
{Vicar of St Michael – val[ue] an[num] £20: 12: 9½: Episc. Carliol.
Rector, Newb[y] – £04: 14: 0: Mr Crak.}

[The Parish of Kirkby Thore]

[Presented by Thomas Machell in seven narrative drafts]

[I.508]

1. The Rectory or Vicarage: value & Patrone	5. Soyle, & products above & underground as: Wood, water, springs, mines of lead coale stones &c.	Subdivision from into Constablewick, Villages, Hamlets and Private Seats with the names of the Gentry who are owners of them, & their Armes
2. Incumbents since the Restaur[ation] of King: Ch. 2		
3. Charityes	6. Things extraordinary in art & nature	
4. Bon dayes[3]		

[1] See reference to the Whartons as 'chiefe Lords' on I.769, below.
[2] £4 per annum.
[3] Boon days: see the English Glossary.

[I.744][4]

[Introductory Notes on Method]

{A Method for Westmorland General [and] Kirkby Thore parish […]}[5]
Mem[o]r[andum] – Sowerby Charter.[6]
1. de Fam. Macheloram p.1 in cartis affixis[7] is purely Topical relateing to the fam[ily] MS

	[Page]		
Totales Libri[8]	2.	}	
A Preface	4.	}	
Method	5.	}	
Of Westmorland in General	6.	}	
& its Division into 2 Baronies		}	
Of the Barony of Westmorland		}	
Its division into ~~parishes Wards~~	7	}	
Of the Parish of Kirkby Thore	10	}	Parvi puto nunc?[9]
Of Whelp Castle –		}	
& the Catuli	5	}	
The posterity of Car.	20.	}	
Letter from Dr Mill	21. 22.	}	
Fragments of Whelp Castle		}	
where discovered	24.	}	
A farther Discription of			
Kirkby Thore Parish	a 28. ad finem.		
Cum Indice.			

[**Narrative 1**]

[Kirkbythore Church and Parish]

[I.768]

{This Church}
{Valuated}It is rated in the 1[t] Fruits Office at payeth the xth to the King – and to the bishop for Proc[urations] and Synodals.[10] And hath 2 Chappels appendant to it; Milburne and Sowerby, of which I shall speake in their proper places.

[I.745]

{Sowerby Chaple}
Norwest from the Church of Kirkbythore lyes the Chaple of Sowerby; which ~~has 2 L~~ appeares by the stones in the wall to have bin built out of Whelp Castle.

[I.768]

{The church is a pretty imbattled building with a comly tower \ and a great clock & bels* / dedicated to the service of God under the name of St Michael the Archangel. Tis well flagd & strawd \ & neatly adorned / on the inside \ & set / but with railes afor the ~~High~~ Altar, haveing a cup for balls: & a font

[4] The page is headed with the following scored-through text: '~~This Inscription Belongs to the Inscriptions Sent to Oxford An Account of them being taken out of it~~,' referring to inscriptions sent to Dr John Mill at Oxford (see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence).
[5] There are several illegible words here.
[6] This list and its margin comments are written at right angles over text in red crayon; further text has been written over this, causing the 'finished' text to be barely legible in places.
[7] 'In the charters attached.'
[8] 'Totales libri': 'all books.'
[9] 'Now perhaps, of little account.'
[10] See the English Glossary.

whereof [there is][11] a dove appendant to the cover, with a running fountaine to baptize infants in when there is occasion. And the people are suitable in their uniformity.
There are & h[ave] bin since I can remem[ber], these things of note in & about it.
1. The quire.
2. B[…]s. & font.
3. Wharton Porch, where a chantery.
4. On the outside the vestry.
5. The banck side of the church.
6. On the top of the steeple which last shews when the steple was built, that som of the Whartons (the Lord or parson) were chief benefactours.
To this church ar 2 chap[els] belonging. de Qui~~bus~~.}[12]

{The Parsonage house} stands near the Church, almost contiguouse, at the Norwest corner, the new part of which was lately built by one Parson Lowther of the house of Ingleton in Craven in Yorkshire. And here in the dineing roome is a late device \ chimney / I have made to carry the ashes down by a funnel under the grate behind one of the wings of the hall chimney; where there is a doer like an oven mouth to take them out at leisure time.[13] \ I only mention for the good of others. / And by this means the sinders are saved with an iron grate above the funnels & the harth always clean.

{The Indowment. Tithe in kind or not?}
The Rectors receive tithe in kinde of all things in this pr[ec]inct but excepting milk; but in the chappelryes, they pay onely for their tithes.

{The Patronage} of this Church & Parsonage was anciently in the Kirkbythores, Lords of the Manner till [blank] de Kirkbythore son of Gamel &c. gave it freely to Robert de Veteripont from whom it descended to the Cliffords & so to the Tuftons Earles of Thanet and now Patrones thereof; And as it came to these noble familyes by the gift of a Gentleman of this Country so have they freely bestowed there presentations to it upon Gentlemens sons \ and persons of note / [as] may be seen by this succession†.

{Succession of R[ectors]!} Richard Evanwood, Abbot of Shap & Chaplain to King Henry 8.[14]
A Clifford.[15] T. M. Fellow of Queens College Oxford & of the Philosophical Society – Chaplain to King Charles 2 & member of the Convocation of York.}[16]

[11] Two words are illegible here.
[12] 'About which …' Machell did not finish his thoughts.
[13] MS: 'Where in the / And here in the dineing roome is a late device \ chimney – I have made / \ ~~worth mentioning~~ which I made, / to carry the Ashes ~~out of It~~ down by a funnel under the grate, behind one of the wings of the hall Chimney; where there is a doer like an oven mouth to take them out ~~once in year without ever troubling of the dineing roome~~ \ at leisure time'.
[14] 'Richard Evenwode was the last abbot; he signed the surrender under the name of Richard Baggot. However high the abbey may have stood during its early period; corrupt times had been fallen upon under the rule of its last abbot. Richard Evenwode was an absentee. He was rector of the rich living of Kirkby Thore to which he had been presented by his patron, Henry earl of Cumberland, under a contract, which, if legal then would not be now, to pay the previous rector a pension of £30 a-year on his resignation of the living. He also schemed the appropriation of this rich living to the abbey. The transaction was almost complete when the dissolution took place, after which he secured a pensionof £40 a-year: the remaining canons receiving pensions from £4 to £6 each.' This passage has been calendared from G.F. Weston 'The Præmonstratensian Abbey of St. Mary. Magdalene at Shap, Westmorland. Part I.—Historical', *CWI,* 10 (1899), 286-298, at 298. See Part 1, Ch.22, Shap, III.317-322; see also *N&BI*, 373-74.
[15] CCED lists clergy from 1568 but the name, Clifford, is absent
[16] Thomas Machell was appointed in 1677; he was rector until his death in 1698. CCED lists at least 10 clergymen at Kirkby Thore from 1568 until the year of Machell's appointment.

{Division}‡[17]
{Other Places in the Manner}
There are in this Lordship besides the village of Kirkbythore, a place calld the Spittel, an harbour perhaps for wayfareing men.[18] N.W. ab Ecclesia ½ a mile, a freehold estate (~~which belongs to Mr John Hall, now under-sherif of the County of Westmorland~~). And ~~another~~ a little Hamlet about N. or N. west; called Hale Grange which is part in the Lordship & Parish of Kirkbythore & part

[Machell's Notes: I.768]
*{A Great Bell, brought as they say from the Abby of Shap: which is not improbable R. Even[s]wood last Abbot of Shap & Chaplain to King Henry 8. been Rector here.}
†{Thus far is General but q. if it will not com in best near the Par[ish] of Kirkbythore.}
‡{Not well I think here but after the Bounder.}

[I.769]

in Newbiging, the Lordships & Parishes being there divided by the Black Sike;[19] that on this side payes all tithes in kinde to Kirkbythore & that on the other to \ Parish of Newbiging. /

{4. Halls or Manner Houses}

[i.] Burwen Hall
Burwen Hall at the East corner of the High Burwens, \ built I suppose before / where Whelp Castle stood; which differs little from a country house; but that it hath this Badge of Honour – on the North side of it.
[ii.] Wharton Hall
Kirkbythore Hall; otherwise calld Wharton Hall because the Whartons built all or most of it; as appears by these Armes on the outside of the cross ~~building~~ \ House / which is indeed the main part of the ~~Hall~~ building. And within it are these Coats of Armes.[20]
Both these places belong to the Whartons who are Lords of the Manner or \ rather / the chiefe Lords; for the \ family of / Crakenthorpes of Newbiging* & the \ Rectors or / Parsons of ~~the Parish~~ Kirkby as Lords of the Manner / have also their tenants & franchass[21] in it. And Crakenthorpe tenents doe suit and service & answer at Newbiging by ancient usage, tho they be of this Lordship †.

{5. The Descent \ Succession / of the Manner & men of note}
This Lordship hath descended & passed through severall familyes, ~~of the~~ \ tho the / Whartons \ of K. / have taken themselves to be the \ first proprietors of it / and this their chiefe house of that name beside; ~~and the Lord Wharton to be their~~ for Wharton Hall is the chief house from whence they [blank]. But it is a mistake, as their Armes ~~both~~ on the church & the Hall \ ends / doe ~~suffieiently~~ testify and the following pedigree will further evince. And besides, it is clear that this Lordship ~~was once with~~ has passed through severall familyes \ since the Norman Conquest, / as first the Kirkby Thores were owners of it; then the Collisans; then the Whartons. And the proprietor, Mr Humphrey Wharton \ of the manner of Gilling in Yorkshire / Baristar at Law, had it by purchase of ~~his cousin~~ John Wharton Esq. who had 3 daughters, and to raise their fortunes, cutt of the Intale & sold the Estate to the said Humphrey, being his relation, to the disinherison[22] of Philip his brother; which if his Ancestors had don so before him had never come to him. {The daughters were Jane; Ann.}

{Other things of note}
There is nothing more of remarque in this ~~manner~~ \ Lordship / but a Tumulus or 2 upon the High More, such as Sr Dugdal[23] called Berryes or Buryes; but wee – Burrows or Broughs, whence the word

[17] A sentence has been scored through here.
[18] See 'Spittlehouse', I.482, below.
[19] For 'sike', see the English Glossary.
[20] There are no images on this page.
[21] A form of 'franchise': 'freedom; exemption from servitude or subjection'. *OED*.
[22] Disinheritance.
[23] Sir William Dugdale.

Brow, where probably som batle was fought and the dead interd there, which is from the church a mile N. West – and as far S. East.
In Howgil Sike is a curious veine of Plaster Pa[ris] fit for statuaries, far too fine for ordinary.[24] {And som veines of go[o]d clay both blew & read, of which I suppose the bricks & urnes which are found at Whelp Castle had bin made.}

[Machell's Notes: I.769]

*{which extends almost to K[irkby] takeing in Whtaker[25] as I conjecture, sed q.}
†{Lands given to Holm. But an agreement with the Rectors that they should have the decimam garba[rum] – i.e. the Tithe}[26] decimas obtulerunt?????[27]
{Spittle House the descent]}
{Hale Hamlet, the desent.}
{6. The Pedegree & Armes of the Present Proprietor}

[I.770]

Milburne in Kirkbythore Parish[28]

{Milburn Chappel}
N. East from the Church about 2 miles is the Chappel of Milburn, a pretty large building – having 2 bells in it, one of which was lately give[n] by the Lady Bridget, relict of Sir Thomas Sandford of How[gill Castle].

{2. Indowment}
The Indowment – which belongs to the Chaplain or Reader – is utterly lost; nor can I finde any footesteps unless it may be this [blank] but since the late troubles it is discontinued & never like to be restored unless that great family shal of their good thinke fit to pay, so that the Rector hath nothing now but £5 per annum, which Rector of Kirkbythore who placeth him there of his own bounty {Patronage}, is pleasd to give him – Tho by the foundation of all Chapels of Ease the mother church should be kept indemnifyed. All this Chappelry payes tithe in kinde excepting for hay, for which they pay in a small prescription with their Easter Books.[29]

{Monuments}
In the Chappel is one Monumental Inscription of one of the ladyes of Howgill Castle, ingraven as folloeth on a piece of brass in Howgill portch[30] [blank] And in the Chappel yard is the figure of a monke in his habit; som of Shap Abby as I suppose, who were obliged to read prayers there \ for the / said sallary.

{The Divis[ions]}
To this Chapelry belongs
1[t]. The Hamlet of Kirkhouse, held in tenancy by rent & fine arbitrary of the Rectory & Rector of Kirkbythore.
2. The Hamlet of Gullom Holm.
3. The village of Milburne &
4. The village of Mill[burn] Grange, which are all held of Howgil [Castle] \ by the same ten[ure]. /

[24] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[25] Whiteacre. 'v. hwīt, æcer'.Whitacre Crag is in Shap parish, *Westmorland Place-Names*. 'Sed q.': 'But query'.
[26] The 'decima garbarum' is the 'great tithe': the tithe of grain.
[27] 'They presented the tithes????' Machell questions this strongly. Perhaps he was amazed that the land holders had complied.
[28] MS: '~~Of the Chapel & Chapelry of~~ Milburne in Kirkbythore Parish.'
[29] See Machell's research in MS.V.279-87: 'Midsummer Easter booke for Kirkbythore 1607.' See also MS.V. 445-48, 'The Declaration of all Issews, Profits & Commodities coming & rising off the Parsonage of Kirkbythore in Rents, Tyths, Oblations, Wooll, Lamb, Hay, Corne & Grain and all other Spirituall duties, for one whole yeare, ending at the Feast of St Marke the Evangelist in the yeare of the Reigne of our Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth Decimo Quinto {1573}.'
[30] Part of the church.

{Grainge}
This ground was [blank] and being under the same Covenant doth & hath alway payd tithe in kinde.}[31]

[I.771]

[Things of note]
{Green Castle} At the head of Grange Beck {E. from the chapel [blank] mile} near an place called Green Castle, which is a round fort with deep trenches about it on the south end of Dun Fell, was this Altar found – erected formerly by the Romans.

DEO SILVANO[32]

which confirmes the opinion of Sir Thomas Smith that our mountains were formerly clad with wood.[33]And West from thence is a place called Silveray-Band*, as if there had bin silver mines there – But however there are very rich lead mine which will turne to silver.

{A quary of read [stone]}
There are coles but of little use, the vaine being smal and very poore upon the same fell. But \ the Royalty of / these are in Appelby Castle as part of the ancient forrest of Milburne, & not in Howgil [Castle]. And if any desire the ancient Bounder of the forrest of Milburne [blank][34]

{Manner House}
The Manner House is Howgill Castle {East a cap. 1 mile} which I reduced[35] from an old darke[36] house to all the beauty which it now hath at the cost & desire of my dear kinsman Sir Richard Sandford, who was barbarously & cowardly stabd†. The walls were of old and are yet in som places. Neer to it a little West is Marbil Skar, a Roc of Plaster in that deep gill behind the h[ouse] which gives name to the place.

{The ped[igree}{Armes} {The Succession of Lands & Men of renoune}
This House & Manner were once in the hands of an ancient family called de Stutivil; then in the Lancasters; & then in a younger, Sc. a 4 brother of the Crakenthorpes of Newbigin, who married the Heiress & placed the Armes honoris ergo in the 1ᵗ Quarter; [37] and at last in the Sandfords who now possess it.

[Machell's Notes: I.771]
*{Silveray-Band. Memorandum: The story of the Toad. in a Letter to Mr Houghton, com by \ him to / the R.S.}[38]
†See in my letter to Mr Adam[s]: Concerneing the Parish of Kirkbythore}[39]

[31] This unclear line was squeezed onto the MS page foot.
[32] 'To the God Silvanus' [of the woodland].
[33] This reference might relate to the diplomat, Sir Thomas Smith (1513-1577), a former dean of Carlisle (see Machell's Preface, I.1616-17), secretary of state and supposed author of *A Discourse of the Commonweal of this Realm of England* (published posthumously in 1581); but although this volume discusses the pros and cons of enclosure, deforestation does not figure to any large extent. Another candidate (but with a different first name) is John Smith/Smyth (c.1607-1673) author of, *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods experienced in 30 years' practice*. 6 vols (London, 1670). Machell quotes this particular author's work on trees in part of his Preface, 'Woods upon the fells' (I.69).
[34] The text breaks off here.
[35] Remodelled. Machell was responsible for the remodelling, see below, I.563-65.
[36] MS; 'drake.'
[37] 'And placed her Arms in the first quarter of the shield in her honour.'
[38] R.S.: Royal Society. There are two toad stories in this chapter; this one is entitled, 'Milburne in Kirkby Thore (1692). A Live Toad found in limstone spar 15 fathom deep', see I.541A, below.
[39] For Adams, see I.565, below, and see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.512-523.

[**Narrative 2**]

Kirkbythore Parish

[I.548]

[Memoranda and Method]
{In this method I could speake of all my heads: 1. Church – Parsonage, Patrone; 2. Constablewicks & Lords[hips]; [3.] Gentlemens houses & Armes.}
Memorandum: to add an account amongst the extraordinary things of nature – in Cow-Sonsy[40] – her who lived to the age of 120 \ or 28. /
Double claw gilly floores at Shrovetide.
And at Crakanthorp, old \ Thomas / Walker 112; his wife 109.
{Crakanthorp} Great burr from C. woods;[41] building there when it was a wood.
Herinsews in Flakebrig: the Osprey in Dufton Wood; sparrow haukes.
Rasp-berryes at High Close by ~~in Sowerby~~ the side of Eden; belonging to Winderwath & ergo in the Parish of Cliburn.[42] Bleaberryes at [blank] on the fell.

{Kirky Thore. General}
Skarrots[43] at Howgill; hart grass: a sort of moss like to Buckshorne.[44] Maden hair at Argill Brigg in Brough {an amulet against the heart burn}.
Wild Ducks build on Traneberry Mire, which is a peat moss belonging to the Lord of the Manner & near to the Hall.
No Pheasant; no elme.

[III.79]

Maiden hare
Juneper berries
Scurvy gras[45]
Bleaberyes
Globes
Buckthorne undergrows Old Oake Trees.
Harts e\a/se
Ladys mantl
Wilde Time
Burd Een

[I.548]

To the General may be referd Q.C.O.[46] belonging to these 2 sister Countyes, which for knotty logicians, profound phi[losophers] & solemn Divines is not inferiour to any in England: in primi witness Crack[enthorpe …][47] & many Bishops of this last age.

{Generall Highways}
Michael Scot is said with the help of the Divel to have pavd twixt Lond[on] & Carlile, but a fiction.}

[40] See below, I.538-546.
[41] Named in John Gerard, *The herball, or, Generall historie of plantes* II (1595), 664, as the Great Burre Dock, Lesser Burre Dock or Clote Burre.
[42] The detached portion of Cliburn parish at Winderwath was transferred to Brougham CP in 1935: Cumbria County History Trust, 'Draft History of Cliburn', https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn; see also *N&B1*, 400.
[43] Possibly skirret or skerret, a form of parsnip; as in 'roasted potatoes, or boild skerrets are your onley lofty dishes', in G. Markham and L. Machin, *Dumbe Knight* (1608). *OED*.
[44] Buck's-horn: old name for various plants based on the shape of the leaf or the appearance of branches. *OED*.
[45] Scurvy grass: 'A cruciferous plant, *Cochlearia officinalis*, believed to possess anti-scorbutic properties.' A drink or 'ale' was made from it, as in, 'Scurvy-grass drink began to be frequently drunk in the mornings as physic-drinke'. *OED*.
[46] Perhaps, 'Qu coram nobis resident': 'which things remain before us'.
[47] Two words here are illegible.

[I.549]

A description of the Parish of Kirkbythore in Answer to Mr Adams, his Queryes,[48] which are as followeth

1. Whether it be a Rectory or Vicaridge what Rate, & who Patrone.
2. Incumbents since the Restoration of King Charles the 2[d]? {0}[49]
3. Charrityes? 0. In this Parish there is a Rent Charge laid on The Powes, a parcel of Mr W[harton's] demaines, of 5 markes per annum is distributed to som \ certain familyes: but being it is payable to the viccar / of Warcop & distributed by him & his c[urate], I refer you to a further accou[n]t of this charity there.[50]
4. Boundaries of the Parish with:
5. The nature of the soyle, with product above & underground as corn, hay, woods, waters, springs, mines, lead, coale, stones {interlaced, interspersed, impregnated}
6. Anything extraordinary in Art or Nature.
7. The division of the Parish (which he calls a subdivision)* into Constablewicks, Villages, Hamlets and private seates, with their names and the names of their owners with their Coates of Armes.

[Machell's Note: I.549]

*{It is parted into, subdivided, distributed. This divideth itself.}

[I.550]

{Concerneing the Parish of Kirkbythore {October 1686}

§1. {& the Patrone}
Kirkbythore is a Rectory rated in the First Fruits Office at 37 [li] 17[s] 8½[d],[51] the Patronage whereof is in the right honorable Thomas Earle of Thanet[52] by descent from his ancestours on the mothers side, the Viponts & Cliffords who were Lords successively of the Honor of Appelby & Barons of Westmorland. For Adam, the sone of Waldeve de Kirkbythore (who was son of Gamel son of Whelp the Lord of Whelp-Castle* (as I take it) at or before the Norman Conquest,[53] gave the advowson of Kirkbythore Church [to] Domino Roberto de Veteriponte, by deed without date† in which is mention of the 2 Chapells of Sowreby & ~~Myleburne~~, as members thereof; witness (inter alios)[54] Johanne Mauchell.

§2. Thomas Machell {Incumbent since the Restoration of King Charles 2.}
And one Thomas Machell (late-fellow of Queens College in Oxford, ~~&~~ Chaplain in Ordinary to King Charles the second, now {this 1[t] October 1686} fellow of the Philosophical Society in the said university) is the present Incumbent; being a second brother of the ancient family of the Machells of Crackanthorpe, the next Lordship adjoyneing‡; who are descended from the abovesaid John, & in all likelihood[55] (as may be collected for the affinity of their name & seat,[56] by ancient tradition & deeds without date which I have seen) from the aforesaid Whelp as the Common Ancestor both of the Machells & Kirkbythores, the former retaineing their ancient name with a mark of disfavour, perhaps from the Conqueror, as having opposd him in defence of their Countrey (for they were call'd Maulchiens \ Malchiels & Macha'els / & adher'd to that sirname as their greatest glory (stil holding \

[48] See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.512-523.
[49] William Walker was the first incumbent listed in the parish register following the Restoration. Machell became rector after Walker's death (1677). CCED. Machell refused to acknowledge Walker's predecessor because he had 'bin imposd on the Parish by an High hand in Olivers time', see I.554.
[50] See I.528.
[51] For the First Fruits Office, see the English Glossary.
[52] This was Thomas Tufton, 6th earl (1644-1729), MP for Appleby in 1668. https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/tufton-hon-thomas
[53] MS: 'For Adam, the sone of Waldeve de Kirkbythore (who was son of Gamel son of Whelp the Lord of Whelp-Castle (as I take it) \ at or before the Norman / the Conquest ~~defended perhaps of the old Roman Cambi, as the Altar & Urns & Coynes digged up to this very day in the Rubbish of that ancient & Noble structure may seem to intimate~~'.
[54] 'Amongst others.'
[55] MS: '& in all probability\ likelihood /'.
[56] MS: '(as may be collected \ ~~I do recollect~~ /for the near / affinity of their name & seat…'

therewith / at the least by capitulation), the Lordship of Crakanthorpe idqe non per Drengagium, sed per nobile cornagis servicium sicut ipsi Normanni);[57] the latter changeing it & insteed thereof assumeing the sirname De Kirkbythore, which is long since extinct‡.[58] The name accordeth, for I have seen it written Mulwhelp. The lands which lie near\est / to \ Whelp Castle / lie on the south side fore the Demanes of Hall Malchaels ~~of Crakanthorp~~, as appears by this gift of them to the Priory of Carlile, mention'd in the foundacon charter. And that ancient monastery, which is publishd in Dugdalls *Monasticon*, and the medow (under it) \ on the S.E. / (which is supposed to have bin contiguouse till intercepted by the millrace), is calld Machells Ing to this very day.

[Machell's Notes: I.550]

*How calld of old.
†{Autograph est penes Comitem Thanet \ Baronem / Dominum de Westm'land apud Skipton vel Apilbeiae castra.}[59]
‡Malchenes, & in Latin, Mali Catuli, per chartas Antiquæ Machellorum Familiæ.
⸸Which ~~they held som time after; which~~ are long since extinct, the heiress being marryed \ as appear by their \ pedigree / to one of the Whertons (~~of Wharton Hall~~) whose descendants (~~al~~though the first Line be cutt of) are Lords of the Manner \ ~~of it~~ / to this very day.[60]

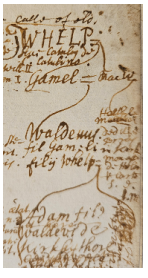


Figure 1.14.1. Sketch of the Whelp Descent. I.550.

[The Genealogies of the Whelps and English Royal Families Compared][61]

How calld of old.	
{Temp[ore] William Conq[ueror] [1066-1087] vel ante.[62]	Whelp sive Catulus de C. Catulino.[63]
Temp[ore] Will. II. et Hen. I. [1087-1135]	Gamel = Mach. – Halth de Machael.
Temp[ore] Stephani Regis [1135-1154].	Waldevus fili[us] Gameli, filij Whelp – dedit terras in Kirk. Monast[erij] de Holm. Per carta[m] s[ine] d[ie] J.M.[64]
JM plenæ ætat[is] 25. Hen. 2.[65] quia jura[mentum]cum patri prestitit.[66] Debita autem conventio cum patri ne affidaverat adquietare monachis de Holm terras quasdam an[no] D[omini] 1179.[67]	Adam fil[ius]? \ et heres / Waldevi de Kirkbythore.}[68]

[57] 'And that not by drengage, but by the noble service of cornage, just as the Normans themselves'.
[58] MS: 'The latter changeing it ~~their Ancestours name~~; & insteed thereof assumeing the sirname De Kirkbythore ~~from this other Lordship which they longtime after; but now are extinct~~ {which is long since extinct}.'
[59] 'The autograph/signature is in the keeping of the Earl of Thanet, Lord (Baron) of Westmorland, at Skipton or Appleby Castle.'
[60] On I.151.
[61] The Latin text around and below this genealogy list (not transcribed) is jumbled in parts, but much of its content appears on I.530.
[62] 'In the time of William the Conqueror or before.'
[63] 'Whelp or Catulus of C. Catulinus.'
[64] 'Waldevus son of Gamel, son of Whelp – he gave lands to the Church of Holm Monastery. From an undated charter J.M.'
[65] 'JM being adult, 25. Henry 2.'
[66] 'Because he took an oath with his father.'
[67] 'Moreover, a covenant was contracted with his father not to swear to yield up certain lands to the monks of Holm, A.D. 1179.'
[68] 'Adam son? \ and heir / of Waldevus of Kirkbythore.'

[I.530]

This Adam seemeth to have bin at full age Anno Domini 1179: 25. Henry 2. (who was in the 3rd descent from the Conqueror); for then he una cum patre Waldevo debita conventione affidav[it] monachis de Holm Cultram illo & adquietare de quibusdam terris in Kirkbythore.[69] Ergo Whelp his great-grandfather, must be in (or before) the time of the Conqueror: *Reg. de Holm Cultram*.[70]

{William Conqueror – William and Henry – Stephen Maud – Henry 2. – Richard 1.}
{Whel[p] Gamel Waldeve Adam}

[I.551]

§3. [Other Incumbents of Kirkby Thore]

Other incumbents since the Restoration of King Charles the II there have not been any but William Walker, Master of Arts of Christs College in Cambridge & somtimes schoolmaster of Gigleswick in Yorkshire; a man skilld in physic, and wel deserveing in other respects if he had not bin imposd on the Parish by an High hand in Olivers time, instead of Mr Lancelot Lowther (~~a very brave Gentleman and~~ an eminent preacher) who was turn'd out of place ~~in the late Rebeliouse times~~ \ in those most dismall & rebelliouse times / for his ~~true~~ \ great / loyalty to King Charles the First & his fidelity to the Church of England.[71] And though it be beyond the due bounds & limits of this enquiry to add any more,[72] yet haveing a catalogue of severall other Rectors by me, I shall not scruple to make mention of them; being generally persons of good ranke & quality. For before Mr Lowther, was one Thomas Warcop Master of Arts: a younger brother of ~~a very good~~ \ an ancient family / in this County of Westm'land, \ tho now in decay / the chiefe of which is ~~Mr~~ Thomas Warcop of Colby \ Gentleman / Alderman of Apleby. Before whom if I be not mistaken, was one Mr Clifford; of the Cliffords of Apleby ~~Egth~~, Earles of Cumberland, Barons of Westmorland, & Patrones of this Parish.[73] And before ~~him~~ (tho I cannot say in immediate succession) was Richard Evenwood, somtime Chaplain to King Henry VIII & \ last / Abbot of Shap.[74] In Ed. 4ths time Mr Henry Wherton, a younger brother of Gilbert de Querton Lord of this manner (of the same blood which now Lord Wharton) was Rector here, & before him {who if I mistake not new modeld the church} in Henry VI time, Roger de Crakanthorp, of a very ancient & worthy family – The Crakanthorpes of Newbigin –who deriv'd that sirname from the Town of Crakenthorp, where they held certain lands, many hundreds of years since, of the Machells of Crakenthorp;[75] as appears by writeings ~~wh~~ I have seen without date; which they answered for till ~~Queen~~ X. Elizabeths Time [1567-1568], & possibly are a branch of that family called de Crakanthorp for distinctions sake.

---

[69] 'For then he, together with Waldeve his father, as part of his agreement, vowed to the monks of Holm Cultram that he would make over to them all his interest in certain lands in Kirkby Thore.'

[70] See F. Grainger and W.G. Collingwood (eds), *The Register and Records of Holm Cultram*, CWAAS Record Series VII (Kendal, 1929).

[71] Rev. Lancelot Lowther. The records are muddled, to say the least, because there were two Rev. Lancelot Lowthers in Carlisle Diocese at this time, resulting in conflicting biographies in CCED, *OAD* and Nicolson and Burn. B. Nightingale considered the matter fully and decided (but not confidently) on the following: 'A Lancelot Lowther was instituted to Kirkby Thore in 1629. The son of William of Ingleton, who was the 8th son of Sir Richard Lowther, he held Kirkby Thore in plurality with the rectory of Workington. When the Roundheads forced him to surrender one of these livings he chose to keep Kirkby Thore, where he was recorded as rector in 1654.' Machell was certain that Lancelot Lowther was sequestrated fom Kirkby Thore for his beliefs, yet Nightingale notes that he was able to move smoothly to the rectory of Long Marton, where he died in 1661, after which his wife petitioned Charles I for financial relief following his 'sufferings'. See Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 1*,* 1165-1169. The other Lancelot Lowther was the son of Christopher Lowther; he held the rectory of Addingham from 1646: *Ejected of 1662*, 1, 351-53.

[72] A margin comment, scored through at this point, repeats the previous sentence.

[73] Nicolson and Burn refer to Roger de Clifford as rector of Kirkby Thore in 1343 and 1345. Ralph de Brantingham was presented to the vacant rectory in right of Robert, son and heir of Robert Lord Clifford, then an infant and ward of Edward III: *N&BI*, 373.

[74] See 'Narrative I', I.768, above.

[75] The passage in the MS repeats itself in prolix fashion; an edited version is offered, above.

[I.552][76]

In the 48 yeare of Edward 3. [1374-1375], I finde William de Corbrig was Parson here. And \ I finde / before him in a writeing (sans date) one Mr Adam de Kirkbythore (official of Carlile)* who perhaps was son of the forenam'd Adam[77] who gave the Advowson of this church to the family of the Viponts. And these I have \ bin / the more willing to mention, to show how worthy & ~~indeed~~ truly generouse the Noble Patrones of this Parish have bin, who as they receiv'd the Donation at first by way of free gift from a Countrey Gentleman, soe have they been ready upon all occasions to bestow the same freely upon Gentlemens sons (& for defect, upon some other worthy & eminent persons) who liv'd in this Countrey; so that this may be called the Gentlemens Parsonage, as tis now the most noble & genteel preferment in the County of Westmorland, being much improved in many respects by the present Rector.[78]

But these Incumbents, having bin generally of \ very / good ~~ranke &~~ quality & liveing accordingly; has given occasion to \ a / shrewd \ reflection / remarque ~~which is almost grown up \ in / to a Proverb~~ {by way of comparison betwixt this Parsonage & that of Newbiging, which is but a small one} \ in / that there never was a Poore Parson of Newbigin ~~which is but very small preferment~~ nor a Rich one of Kirkbythore.[79]

§4. [Bounder][80]

It ~~This Parish~~ lyeth on the East side of the Great River Eden† {which divides it all along on the West from som part of the Parish of Milburne, the Forrest of Whinfell, & Bolton Field in the Parish of Morland. Sc. – from the foote of Blenkarne Beck below Eden Bridge up the said river to Old Troutbeck Foote near Machells Well 3m.}[81] On the south side it is bordered with the Lordship of Crakenthorp in the Parish of St Michaels ~~de~~ Apleby, (vulgo) \ commonly called / Bongate \ Par[ish] / from which 'tis divided by (with stones pitched up \ by the 2 gurges[82] / in the ancient channel of the River Troutbeck and also som part of that river) ~~from~~ \ Sc. from the place called / Old Troutbeck Foote where it has formerly run to Kirkbythore Bridge{within ½ mile & a quarter.}[83]

On the South-east & East[84] it boundes upon Marton & Dufton Parishes, being divided from them by Troutbeck aforesaid (from Kirkbythore Bridge {1m.} \ where we left of / ascending eastwards to Howgill-Sike Foote \ (1m.) / thence ascending by Howgil-Sike northwards {1m.} to Annet-Well \ Head / where it first springs \ 1m. / Thence by a Bow-line (towards the N.) to Nichorson Cross{½ m.} takeing in the hill where it hath stoode {½ m.}. Thence agane by a crooked line‡ to Swinside Head \ 1m. / (a pasture at Grange, now belonging to Howgil Castle). Thence

[Machell's Notes: I.552]

*Cui Will. Ma. Catulus \ Dom. / de Crak. Terras dem[ainias] s.d. \ [per] cartam / Testis apud cartam Adami filij Liolfi de Kirkbythore s.d. in Cartul[ario] de Holm C[ultram.}[85]

†{~~The fish of which hath time out of minde belonged to This Rectory, & soe doth stil~~ which payes Tythes to the P. haveing ever done so time out of minde.}

‡{A streight line ascending N. to the S. corner of Long Holme: ½. Thence by Longholme Dyke to Grange Beck at \ a place / Stank Head ½. {½? Query of this by Knock bounder: whether the same with Stank Head.}

---

[76] The following comment appears at the head of this page: '& this disp. I wish they w[ould] sh[ow] a bet[ter] or[i]g[in].' To what this refers is not known, though it might allude to the catalogue of rectors, first mentioned on I.551, above.

[77] MS: 'whom I take to \ perhaps was son / son of the forenam'd Adam ~~de Kirkbythore~~.'

[78] Another passage full of repetition, now removed; 'the present Rector', of course, was Thomas Machell.

[79] For Machell's financial problems, see 'A Narrative about a Chapel at Sowerby' below, from III.229.

[80] This is one of several versions of the bounder of Kirkby Thore; as all differ slightly, they merit comparison; see also 530B-32; 552-53A.

[81] MS continues: '§4. ~~To [blank] Parish is Bordered {3m. 2m.}~~'

[82] Gurges: whirlpools. *OED*.

[83] Another passage full of repetition, now edited out.

[84] An interlineation placed here is largely illegible.

[85] 'To whom William Malus Catulus, Lord of Crakenthorp, [gave] demesne lands \ [in] an undated deed / Evidence in a deed of Adam son of Liolfus of Kirkbythore, undated, in the Register of Holm Cultram.' See Grainger and Collingwood (eds), *Register and Records of Holm Cultram*.

[I.553]

{2m.½} by \ Swinsey-Beck or / Grange-Beck (otherwised called Burney-Beck) to \ Nuckerdale Head near a place / an Hill calld Green-Castle, where it takes its rise; \ 1. / Thence \ directly / by a settle or hollow (which takes in High Dunfell) \ on the outside the skirtes of [blank] to Dalesikehead 100 yards down it / to the head of Fell-Troutbeck Rill \ where Dalesike runes into it (1m.). / Thence, by the said rivillet till \ it / receives another call'd Moss Burne (3m.); & haveing don soe divides this Parish \ all along / on the East from \ the Parish of / Dufton {until you} descend to Trout-Beck-Foote where it enters the Teas.[86]

On the East & N.E. it is bounded with a place called Tine-Head in the Parish of Alstan \ ? / & County of Cumberland* (from which 'tis divided by the said River Tease: from Fell-Troutbeck-Foot up to Fall Cragg). \ & / here the Parish of Kirkland ~~first~~ begins, ~~which~~ \ and / hemms it in all along on the North side (as the utmost ~~Limit~~ \ Parish / of the Countye of Cumberland) \ & / from which tis divided by the said River Teas from Fall-Cragg aforesaid, to the ~~spring-head~~ \ place where it springs / at Cross-Fell Nooke†; \ & / thence by a settle call'd (as I take it) Blenkarne-Dale twixt \ the mountan / Cross Fell & The Lower-Dunfell to the springhead of Blenkarne-Beck {rogat L. Rob.}[87] Thence, by that river (excepting where its course hath bin altered) till it enters ~~into~~ Eden not far from the Bridge where I take in \ (designedly:) /

[§5.] The Parish of Newbiging

The parish of Newbiging, being of old (as I am informed) a Canton of this & passed off \ from it by a Legal Consent‡ / {within which circumference} for a certain Quit-Rent of Ten Groats per Annum with Altar service 2 dayes in the year at Kirkby Thore Church (a considerable rent in the dayes of old, when the whole Rectory of Kirkby Thore upon inquisition in the 8th year of Edward 2. was but valued \ return'd / at xx/iiij marcks).[88] But on the other hand, the Rectors of Newbiging clamed as \ their / due (when they came to assist at the Altar \ there /) to have a Dinner for themselves & their Doggs (a tradition of such undoubted credit that Mr Barrow late Incumbent of Newbiging, sent word to the Rector of Kirkby Thore that now is, upon his first enterance, that he ought him that homage, & would com & pay it;[89] but death prevented him while the other was absent in his year of Grace at Queens College in Oxford.[90]

[I.501]

{Old Mr Barrow Rector of Newbiggin, 2 dayes in the year, Easter & Michaelmas. & ~~he~~ was to receve from the Rector of K[irky Thore] when he did the said service, his Dinner – one Day dinner.} {Thomas Langhorn præter is to have Mr Barrow […] assist on an Easter Day.}[91]

---

[86] MS: '{until you} \ descend / com to Trout-Beck-Foote where it ~~takes~~ \ enters / the Teas ~~which~~ \ ~~springs not far hence, & enters the sea haveing passed Newcastle at T~~ /'

[87] MS: '… to the springhead of Blenkarne-Beck \ ~~which is / otherwise called Dunfell-Beck~~) {Ask L. Rob}.'

[88] 24 marks. A charter of Hugh de Temple Sowerby was witnessed by Walter, rector of Newbiggin. Walter appears in the Coram Rege Rolls in 1258–59, when an action was brought against him and one other person by Robert de Veteripont because 'they entered his park of Whinfell and there took stags and bucks without his leave'. John, son of Roger de Lancaster, by his will dated January, 1353/4, left a bequest to the church of St. Edmund de Newbiggin and Robert, rector of Newbiggin, was one of the witnesses. See J.F. Curwen, *Later Records of North Westmorland* (Kendal, 1932), 183-85.

[89] MS.I.554: 'In which boundary I have designedly taken in Newbigging \ on the north side the Parish / It being of old (as I am informed) a Canton of this & passed away [blank]'

[90] A margin comment originally placed at the top of I.554. According to CCED, Christopher Barrow was rector of Newbiggin from 1664 to 1680. The term, 'year of grace', refers to the career trajectory of Oxford fellows in Machell's time and beyond. Fellows were obliged to remain single during their tenure, but in most cases, those who married were allowed to remain as fellows for one year; their year of grace. See James E. Thorold Rogers, *Education in Oxford* (1861, Frankfurt, 2022), 249. Additionally, any fellow who inherited property or was appointed to a parish worth more than a certain value had to resign his post, usually after a year's grace: see Robin Darwall-Smith, 'The Problem of Georgian Oxford', *Histories of Universities XXXV/I* (Oxford, 2022), 17.

[91] 'Thomas Langhorn, præter, is to have Mr Barrow [two words illegible] assist on an Easter Day.' The only Thomas Langhorn in Carlisle diocese (known to CCED) was the perpetual vicar of Stanwix, who was also a minor canon of the cathedral; he died in 1614. CCED.

[Machell's Notes: I.553]

*{Query whether Tinehead in Alstan Moore be in Cumberland or in Northumberland. Ask w[hat] Tod?[92] & L. Robinson thinke. The Southwest of Tinehead is in Northumberland, the Norwest in Cumberland in Alstan Parish.}

†{Where ~~that great river~~ \ it first / springs & \ after many meanders & windeings / dischargeth itself into ocean beyond Newcastle at Tinmouth Shields.}

‡{[Quo] Warr[anto.]}

{There is another Beck called Dunfellbeck which springs betwixt the 2 Dunfells & runnes west twixt Milburne & MidleTong & is all in the Parish to Midletong Foote where it enters Blenkarne-Beck. In this Bounder I have designedly taken in QV,[93] the ~~smal~~ Parish of N[ewbiggin.]}

[I.553A]

[Conclusion of the Boundary]

& on the West it divides by the River Eden from som part of the Parish of Cliburn, Julian Bower in the Forrest of Whinfell & Boltonfield in the Parish of Morland: Sc. From the foote of Blenkarne Beck below Eden Bridge all along up the River to Old Beck-Foote near Machells Well, where we first began.

[I.554]

{§6.} Parish of Newbigging [continued]

And here I thinke fit to enter this caution that the parish of Newbiging, by its ancient Boundes, cannot extend so far on the more as the Right & Priviledge of that Lordship now doth; because they gained a considerable accession \ from off ~~K. Moore~~ / Kirkbythore More; by grant from the Cliffords many hundreds of years after that Lordship became a distinct & absolute Rectory, so that its limits upon the said moore are \ or should be / according to the ancient Bounds of that Lordship.

But to returne ~~agane~~ to my subject, Kirkbythore Parish:

{§7. Nature & top[ography] of the soyle, above & underground}

The soyle thereof is of several sortes;[94] in som partes read sand, in others yallow; here black mold, there brown; in som places gravel, in ~~& in~~ others clay, both read & blew: But for the ~~generally~~ \ most part it is very / fertile, especially for corne, which yeildeth best of any in the countrey.

[II.529]

Ad Howgil Castle: The oate stalke that was shown me att Howgill Castle was 2 yards & ½ long.

[I.554]

The \ high / moores & mountaines affordes good fuell & pasture for sheep,[95] which are generally sound; \ & / the lower for cattle {!!!} but the want of \ cow / pastures \ for the common sort / is the greatest defect, which by improvement might easily be helped. It hath bin formerly well replennished with wood, most part of the Parish being a Forrest old; but now there is little unless it bee in the Chapelry of Sowerby & the Lordship and Chapelry of Milburn,[96] which are \ far / remote from Kirkbythore Town (A wilfil wast makes a woeful want)[97] & the only fuel ~~which~~ they now have remaneing (excepting coals which they fetch from Hartside \ at 10 miles distance / are turfes & peates.

{Under §8.}

But yet in the mountains there are out-bursts of coales which might \ prove peradventure/ ~~be~~ of great use unto all the neighbour-hood; & of great advantage to the Lords of the Fees if they would but sinke for them; whilst in the mean time they \ lye neglected & / onely serve such \ poor / countrey people as can pick them out for burneing of Lime-Kil[n]s. {A good fuel; & are so likewise the breed & plenty of

[92] Unclear word.

[93] Quod vide: 'which see'.

[94] MS: 'The soyle ~~of~~ \ thereof / The Parish of Kirkbythore is of several sortes.'

[95] The pecked line demonstrates that Machell was in two minds about keeping this phrase but it reappears in §8. at the foot of I.554.

[96] MS: 'but now there is little, ~~I may say none at all except~~ \ unless it bee / in the Lordships of \ Chapelry of / Sowerby, & \ the Lordship {of Chap.} / Milburn'.

[97] A proverb first recorded in 1576, J. Speake (ed.), *The Oxford Dictionary of Proverbs* (Oxford, 2015), 346.

fowl. The high moore & mountaines aford good fowl which are called here black cock or gorr fowls, as likewise plovers both green & gray, & are a very sound pasture for sheep which seldom faile: & so likewise are the lower for cattle.}[98]

[I.555]

{§9. [Silver Mines]}
On these mountains allso there are silver mines, as som do imagin; being thereto induced partly by the names of certain places upon the Fells which are called Silveray & Silveray-Bands; partly by an old Rimeing Prophesie of Mother Shiptons (called here Gillemans Wife from her former husband as they relate)[99] who passing these mountains & taisting the waters which isued from them is said to have deliver'd these \ promising / verses:

> They that are awn'd to open Dun'fel sneck
> May measure out their silver in a Peck.

{Awned: i.e. appointed or permitted by good evidence.}
{Sneck: the latch of a dooer, with which it is shut & by which it may be opened, aluding here to riches shut up in the chambers of the earth.}
{A Peck is a measure here conteineing \ 4 or / 5 gallons, the former being called a Ryes Peck, & used for ~~the latter~~ measureing Rye \ & / Wheat, Beans & Pease, the latter a Bigg Peck with which they measure their Bigg or Barley, & all other sortes of corn or grane: 4 of each sort make an Apleby Bushel.}

{§10. [Lead Mines]}
Here are also lead mines which discover themselves in the […][100] bankes of the rivers ~~& sikes~~. But the most remarkable {?} is that below Dunfell at Silveray-Band: a very rich one now wraught under & farmed by the Marquess of Winchester of the Earle of Thanet as Lord of those Wastes, being within the Bounds in the forrest of Milburn.[101] {And if these Noble Persons would pay the tythe freely of what they get there, it would cross the old proverb, & make a rich Parson of Kirkby Thore.}[102]

{§11.} And in the very skirtes of the mountaines there is plenty of limestone; & freestone alsoe of \ a / readish colour, which this parish affordes in great abundance excepting \ only / ~~the Lordship of~~ in Kirkbythore \ Lordship / where there is ~~not any~~ \ none. / But that defect is supplyed by Nature (if Arte would put to her helping hand) \ as she hath don formerly / in a very large veine of curiouse blew-clay, like unto marle, near Parsons Close at the East-end of Kirkbythore Towne,[103] which would (I believe) make as good brick as any in the world; & likewise all sortes of earthen vessels: for I doe suppose that those ~~strong bodyed~~ \ curiouse / bricks which ~~are~~ \ the plow casteth up at the place calld the / ~~at High~~ Burwens (where Whelp Castle stood) with the urnes & pots which are found thereabouts; were ~~all~~ made of this clay.*

---

[98] MS: '{A good fuel; ~~good store as to fowles~~ & plovers both green & gray & are a very sound pasture for sheepe so likewise is the & breed plenty of fowl, which are called here, black cock or gorr fowls, as likewise plover green & gray rarity. The High moore & mountaines aford good fowl: gorr fowle; and plovers both green & gray, & are a very sound pasture for sheep which seldom faile: & so likewise are The Lower for cattle.}'
[99] Mother Shipton (*floreat* 1530) was a largely legendary prophetess and supposedly ugly witch from Knaresborough. An anonymous pamphlet, *The Strange and Wonderful History of Mother Shipton* (1686), explained that she was baptised by 'the Abbot of Beverley' as 'Ursula Soothtell' (in later versions 'Southiel' or 'Sonthiel') and at the age of twenty-four she married a carpenter from York named Toby Shipton: A. Kellett, 'Shipton, Mother'. *ODNB*.
[100] Some interlineated text (2cm) is illegible here.
[101] Several repeated sentences have been deleted from this passage.
[102] See above (I.552), Machell's wry comment that, 'there never was a Poore Parson of Newbigin … nor a Rich one of Kirkbythore.' For the intense frustrations felt by Machell on the subject of his income and its control, see below, III.231, onwards.
[103] MS: 'like unto Marle; \ [2] / at the east-end of Kirkbythore \ Towne / near \ [1] / Parsons Close'.

{§12.} Rivers and Springs

Besides these advantages,[104] this parish is also also extreamly well watered with rivers & springs, a great cause & argument of a fruitfull place. The former may be seen by the boundary of it, being almost incompass'd with rivers ~~of water~~ \ ~~which are~~ / well stored with fish \ especially troutes; / the latter is obviouse to

[Machell's Notes: I.555]

*{N.B. For I do suppose that those ~~fine coloured~~ \ curiouse / bricks which the plow casteth up in Whelp Castle Ruines \ and made of this clay / & which may be counted among the rarityes of this County, not only because of their fine contexture colour & hardness, but allso because there are none \ other / found in Westm'land interlaced; nor never were except~~ing at~~ \ those / Mr Camden ~~speakes~~ at Apleby calld Brittish Brickes \ of / which I never yet was so happy as to meet with a sherd.}

[I.556]

every eye: there being not a Town nor Hamlet in the Parish that doth not afford a great many springs. But the most remarcable are these that follow:

i. Machells Well which springs in the very South point of this Parish at a place called Sowber, & runns into the ancient channel of Troutbeck near to the place where the 3 Lordships of Crakanthorp Bolton & Kirkbythore meet, as hath bin said, 3 several Parishes.[105] {This yeildes a most delicate and wholsom water; which hath bin successfully taken in Feavours, a small taist of vinegar being mixed \ there /with.}

ii. Hippocrene:[106] an ancient well lately discovered by the foote of an horse.[107] It is in the ~~very high street~~ \ Downe End / of Kirkbythore \ near / to the Bridge ~~end~~, & by the side of the \ great / Romane-Way which leadeth from Apleby to the City of Carlile*: in which was found urnes & several curiouse fine earthen vessels with greyhounds & other figures upon them; ~~with~~ the cusp of a spear; and sandalls whose soles were struck ful of nales & sow'd together, not with thread but \ with / leather; Most of which were \ carefully / preserv'd ~~&~~ design'd & discrib'd in a \ late / letter ~~writt~~ to Sir William Dugdall by the present Rector, which letter being printed \ (~~without his privacy~~) {for the rarity of it} not only at London, but at Oxford allso amongst their *Philosophic Transactions*.[108] I need say no more concerneing this fountaine: but that it is also near to ~~the~~ \ a / place where 3 Lordships meet (in 3 several Parishes); Sc. Crakanthorp Brampton & Kirkbythore.

iii. Dobkill-How Well: which is in the street call'd Wharton End, directly opposit to Kirkythore Hall & in the way to it;[109] concerneing

[Machell's Notes: I.556]

*{I have mentiond Paulinus in that relation,[110] è Speed p.171. There was another Bishop of Nola in St Augustine's time, p.277, §10.}[111]

---

[104] MS: '~~Besides all these helps~~ \ besides these advantages /'.

[105] MS: 'Crakanthorp Bolton, & Kirkbythore (~~in 3 several Parishes~~) meet ~~altogether~~ \ as hath bin said / 3 several Parishes.'

[106] Hippocrene: 'a spring on Mount Helicon: fountain of the horse, so called because it was fabled to have been produced by a stroke of Pegasus' hoof. The Hippocrene spring was sacred to the Muses; its waters were said to imbue the drinker with poetic inspiration'. *OED*.

[107] Machell described how this well gained its name in a letter to William Dugdale, 25 March 1684, and read out at the Oxford Philosophical Society the following month: 'Your love to Antiquity, and my Obligations to you are such, that I cannot omit to give you an Account of a strange Well, discovered here about a week since by the foot of an Horse which stumbled upon it; and therefore may be called the Fountain Hypocrene.' *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 554-8 https://royalsocietypublishing.org/toc/rstl/1684/14/158.

[108] For more information on Machell's letter, see I.534; see also, Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.200.

[109] The first part of this sentence was originally placed at the foot of I.556.

[110] See Machell's Preface, I.136.

[111] The reference to Paulinus, bishop of Nola (died c.422), is correct, see John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans*… (London, 1611), 277; see also, 334-35. For Speed's references to Paulinus Suetonius, see *Historie of Great Britaine …*, 170, 197-99. Paulinus,

[I.557]

which, and a place near the miln called Stack or Stake, which growes ~~excellent~~ \ very good / oates, they have that saying (as if Bacchus & Ceres had combin'd together to make the Town charming, delightful & pleasant):[112]

> No Kirkbythore hater can the village forsake
> If he taist Dobkil-water & a Banack of Stake.

{v. Potts-Well,[113] which springs on the North side of Kirkbythore thereof in a pasture call'd Potts, & seemes to proceed from som sort of mineral. It promiseth coale in the places adjacent, as som do believe,[114] and has bin accounted of singular vertue in cureing old sores.}

vi. Marble-Skar-Well, in the Chapelry of Milburne, near Howgil Castle, which hath 2 heads; the higher ~~one~~ whereof supplyes the Castle \ for their necessary uses / & lower is said to be good for sore eyes – & so likewise is:

vii. Lucyes-Well,[115] near Acorn Banke in the Chapelry of Sowerby; so calld from Mrs Lucy Dalston, late wife of the present John Dalston Esq. (& the last of the Fallowfields of Strickland in Westm'land) who used to visit it, & recom\m/end it to the blear eye'd Leahs, as good for their sight.[116]

I would mention no more, but that other 2 lye just in my way; Sc. Aplegarth Well at the North end of Sowerby, & The Strand at the South end;[117] the latter of which is excellent water; & both of 'em good (as all ~~for water~~ others are) for watering \ of / cattle and promoteing good Huswifery.

{**Castrum Catuli. Ruin of Whelp***}

Other ~~such~~ things within this Parish which deserve observation for their curiosity in Art or Nature† are Whelop Castle as Camden (see Camden [blank)[118] calls it in the *Dictionary*, Whealp,[119] or rather (as we being more surely taught out of ancient records)[120]
The main body of it has stood (as I guess from the ruines underground) in a place call'd the Burwens, on a riseing hill at the banke of Trout-beck & not far from Eden, having an easy ascent \ unto it / on every side; but a large champion prospect[121] with fair fields & meadows under its walls,

[Machell's Notes: I.557]

*{From ~~out~~ that ancient & long since honourable family.}
†{§13. not to mention what I have spoken \ before / concerneing Hypocrene, which justly requires to have a place here.}[122]

secretary to St Ambrose, was encouraged by Augustine to write the 'Life of St Ambrose': see Michael J. Walsh, *Dictionary of Christian Biography* (London and New York, 2001), 959.

[112] MS: '\ ~~pleasant, charming~~ / ~~delightful and charming~~ delightfull and pleasant.'

[113] Machell has omitted iv, continuing on to v.

[114] MS: 'It promiseth Coale ~~as som do imagine~~ \ ~~as hath bin thought~~ / in the places adjacent; as som do believe,'

[115] MS: '~~Is~~ 7 Luceys-Well'.

[116] 'Blear-eye'd Leahs': See Genesis 29.17. *The Wycliffe Bible* (1394). 'But Lya was blere iyed, Rachel was of fair face, and semeli in siyt.' Other versions change 'blear-eyed' to 'tender-eyed.'

[117] The list of wells also appears in MS I.534 and I.556.

[118] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637) describes the place as 'Whealop', 'Whellop' and 'Whellep', see 761.

[119] A small amount of interlineated text here is almost illegible.

[120] MS: 'or rather (as we ~~wel It~~ being more surely taught out of ancient Records) ~~And the Curiosityes which It yet doth afford~~).' See I.535 for another version which completes the sentence.

[121] For the meaning of 'champion country', see the English Glossary.

[122] There are many references to the fountain hypocrene in Machell's volumes, for example, see I.556, below; see also a letter from Machell to William Dugdale in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.200.

[I.558]

the like of which is not to be met with in the County of Westm'land: & has bin rendered yet more delightfull by the 2 famous forrests of Whinfel & Milnburne; this, on the North-east, & just at hand; that, on the West, at about a miles distance; both stored with wood & well replenished with Read-Deer & fallow; as the former continues to be, at this day.[123]

§14. The square inclosure called High-Burwens seems to have bin the area of it, conteineing VIII score yards in diameter; now plowed & cultivated: & the outer buildings \ mantle & gardines / to have run down along by the River Troutbeck at the least as far as the Fulling Milne,[124] {or rather over the Roman-Way, because on the other side of that Street when they dig'd the foundation of a little kill or dwelling house near to the bridge on the left hand as you goe towards Carlile,[125] they found vessels of brass, fine earthen ware also \ som of it mounted […] white and read,[126] / & a Bar as thick as any man's leg, but so tender'd with rust that it fell all in shivers:[127] which makes me suspect that it might \ there enter and / extend hither, & taken Hippocrene*. See §17.}
{Hence the Castle or outbuildings at least have runn along.} Thence \ it has gon up the West side of the said / ~~up the~~ Romane-Way call'd The Street (which leadeth to Carleol) about VIII score yards: & so up agane in a streight line to the West point of the foresaid area {all which circumference 9}. For in all these places the vestigia of it {have bin discovered by conduits \ underground / for water; fair pavements of floors;[128] & tiles & slate shut off from the house, with ~~had~~ iron nales in them, by which they ~~were~~ \ have chiefly / hung. But most of all by brick & stone walls, all underground,}[129] the brick ones they say (which is no vulgar observation) being a yard thick.

[Machell's Notes: I.558]

*{Let this a local description}. Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis.[130] This will com in better after.[131]

[I.559]

Tho I must confess the impression in som looks rather like an excavation with repeated strokes[132] \ & desined for ornament, representing waves \ like that within which in Leenster is called Irish Stick.[133] / They are to be seen \ in the Hall, Church & Parsonage / almost in every house in the Towne, their Coyne \ stones / & Jaumes being generally of them; since for want of timber they left of the ancient Forrest work, & the stud walls were plasterd both on the inside & out as I am informed,[134] with a mixture of lime, gravel, sand & bricks, beaten small 3 inches in thickness, which is almost as hard as a pow.[135]

---

[123] See I.509 for a similar narrative.
[124] An asterisk (see '*') leads the reader up the page to text in the top right-hand margin.
[125] MS: 'when they dig'd the foundation of a little ~~kill (a dwelling house \ near~~ /) house near to the Bridge, ~~and~~ on the left hand as you goe towards Carlile'. See a similar sentence in a letter to John Mill in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, IV.82.
[126] A tiny interlineated word here in this margin passage has been impossible to transcribe.
[127] 'Shivers': fragments, chips, splinters. *OED*.
[128] MS: 'Flowers'.
[129] MS: 'by walls \ which / underground, both \ by / Brick & stone \ walls all underground / {toomes,}'
[130] 'Here had stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' Compare Ovid, *Heroides* 1. 'Letter from Penelope to Ulysses', 1.34: 'hic steterat Priami regia celsa senis.' 'Here stood the lofty realms of old Priam.'
[131] See also, Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.248.
[132] MS: 'Tho \ I must confess / the impression / in some, \ in others / ~~seems~~ \ looks / rather like an excavation with repeated strokes.'
[133] Leinster, Ireland. Decorated 'wave mouldings' have been common from the time of the Ancient Greeks; see F.C. Brown, F.A. Bourn & Hermann V. von Holst, *Study of the Orders* (Chicago, 1906), 198.
[134] MS: '…they were left of \ the ancient / Forrest work \ ancient way / & betaken themselves ~~freed of their ancient as have betaken to stones, & left of the work and betaken themselves to build with stone tho never so mean ways of forest worke buildings; The only example~~ & The stud walls were plasterd both on the Inside & out ~~which remaneth of that sort being at the Hall~~.
[135] 'Pow' (pol, polle): the human head; the head of a sheep; a death's head; a skull, and applied to the corresponding part of inanimate objects, e.g. (1) the blunt or rounded part of an axe-head, hammer-head. Hence powie, a smith's hand-hammer; pow-axe: a pole-axe. See *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.

§15. The 4 Angles of this High Burwens, do look exactly {?} (as I have observed in other Romane fortifications) to the 4 Cardinal Pointes of ~~the~~ Heaven, Sc. E. W. N. & S.; One fair enterance being very discernible ~~by~~ \ betwixt / 2 houses (which stand a sloape, & seeme as it were, to give way unto It) ~~betwixt the~~ in oriente est iteo, directly northeast, & openeth ~~North & postern pointe towards Milburne Forrest~~ \ towards the Forrest of Milburn; & the other I thinke has bin opposite to It ~~faceing Schole Stret~~ \ in occasu Brumali;[136] / in the S.W. fronting & opening to the High, & perhaps there {has bin more ~~North & South~~ other 2 gates in the other 2 sides opposeing each other}. Near to the former of these 2 portes at the East corner \ angle / &c. and near to the latter, as it were directly opposite to it at 30 yards distance, was a subterraneaneous vault discovered at Coppins Hill which is in the upper end of that Street &c.*.

At the East Angle \ of this area / was lately found the figure of a woman down to the waist (more Romano) carved in stone. And likewise, an Altar about 30 yards from it, in the Low Burwens: but both defaced; the ruines whereof are preserved & kept at Crakenthorp Hall†.

Near the South Angle at Coppin Hill (in the High Street){near to the well which sprinketh[137] there} near the South Angle at Coppin Hill (in ~~Burwen~~ \ the High / Street), was lately discovered \ discovered not many years ago / a vault \ underground having water therein / full of water, with stairs down into it, a Doer at Each End & a shelf or seat made of huen stone on either side besett all with urnes {!} which I take to be a Roman Sepulchur; & a little below in Blackets Burwen, where they yett continually digg up huge stopes,[138] a chamber underground‡, the top of whose chimney did not extend \ entirely / to the surface of the earth; it have being buryed in the ruines. & in the window was a bottle of glass & a gold ring. Near the West corner (besides flagged floores which are \ were / here very common), a potful of Romane Coynes.

Machell's Notes: I.559

*{Here take in my Paper of the Vault.}[139]
†{Here the story of the Vault would com well in and possibly there have bin 2 gate more[140] opposed to ~~each other~~ \ 2 / on the other side.}
‡{Being all in order her[e] the chan[ne]l for water – hyppocrene. The kiln near to the bridge & mill. Hyppocrene & just be for that &c. §16.}[141]

[I.548]

In Blackets Burwen was found a whole roome steed under ground as being I suppose coverd with rubish – for the top of the chimney was underground. In ther in a window was a Glass bottle & a stone Ring,[142] the stone of which was sold to the Lapidaries for gold \ as I have bin told. / Also, a large Rowler of Stone, now at N. Halls, Milburne Chapple.[143]

[136] 'in occasu Brumali Africus' is the west-south-west wind: see Pliny the Elder, *Natural History 2*. 46, §119.
[137] Sprink: a body of water issuing from a source, *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[138] Stope: a step (as in a mine). *OED*.
[139] See Machell's 'Subterranean Passage found near the site of Whelp Castle', in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, beginning at VI.281.
[140] Two interlineated words are illegible here.
[141] This margin-comment is unclear, therefore unsafe.
[142] See I.559.
[143] MS. continues, 'Milburn Chaple at whose font the solem & public administration [of] Private B[aptism] all set to be mentioned for which, tho it be no more than duty, yet perhaps is more than ordinary & [blank].'



Figure 1.14.2. ‘ Vault underground … at Coppin Hill’. I.548.

[I.557A][144]

The 4 Angles &c.
Near to the former of the 2 portes at the East angle of the said area was lately found the figure of a woman &c. – And near to the other supposed enterance (as it werr directly opposite to it) a subterraneous vault was discovered at Coppin Hill

[I.557B]

~~which is~~ \ a place / in the upper end of that Street which lyeth betwixt the Roman-Way & the High Burwens; & seemes to be commonly so called for Copped-Hill, \ as / ~~the place~~ being advanced to a more than ordinary heigh[t] and eminence in respect of the other end of the Street (tho much inferior to the foresaid area) by the ridge of this valt & the rubbish stones which were scattered about, the digg \ ~~seeking~~ / for which was an occasione of this \ fritening / discovery: – For while a laburour struck with a gavelock[145] betwixt 2 great stones (the lime giving way) it flew out of his hand; & they then heard it plunge into water beneath \ them; / which made them ~~more~~ earnest to dive \ farther / into it. And as I gather from those that were present & made use of the stones, the figure of it did resemble a truncke \ ~~wherin open ats end~~ / the lid whereof will describe the Arch ~~to you~~, & the sides the side walls &c. – see my Paper.[146] But to give a yet livelyer description ~~of it~~[147] I shall expose the idea of it naked to your view in this following figurre: where the earth is supposd taken ~~from it~~ \ quite away of – the carkass of stone only remaneing.

[I.560]

[§16.] So, the Romans gave a final farwell* never meaning to returne agane; burying part of their treasure in the Earth, whereof much hath bin found. Roman coynes were dig’d up \ in High-Burwens / about 40 years since, which they foolishly gave their children to play with; & so lost them all;[148] yet many have bin discovered ~~since~~ \ of late; / som of which \ are / in the possesion of the present Rector. There are also innumerable fragments of bricks, broken urnes & other fictilia[149] ~~which the Plow casteth up in all these Places, all~~ dispersed up & downe where Whelp Castle stood, all which doe loudly proclame it Romane. ~~Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis~~’.

& the 2 Roman Wayes which meet at this Towne, the one calld The Street (which I have traisd from Royston[150] to ~~Careil~~ \ Carleol; / and the other called the Maden-Way which comes from \ Caer vorran by the Picts Wall 20 miles from hence / & terminates here &c.† \ may be recorded amongst the things extraordinary relateing to it / & bespeake \ opinion / it a place \ Town / of more than ordinary estimacon & traffique in the time of the Romans; as Camden affirmes it to have bin before ~~them the principle~~ in the time of the Brittans, by the name of Gallacum,[151] which was the Chiefe Towne of the Brigantes (i.e. ~~in Westm’land~~ of these 6 northern Countyes) which were the greatest people ~~at that~~

[144] See I.499 for identical text on Burwens, deleted from this page.
[145] ‘crow-bar’.
[146] Paper printed in the *Oxford Philosophical Society Journal*, see I.534.
[147] MS: ‘\ you yet a more m… [word obscured by the binding] /’.
[148] This remained in Machell’s memory, as he also mentioned it on I.499 and I.506, and in a letter to Dr Mill in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, IV.80.
[149] ‘Fictilia’: earthenware; see the Latin Glossary.
[150] Royston is in North Hertfordshire.
[151] See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 761E.

~~Time~~ in the British Ilandes; ~~Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis~~ \ who did over spread on those northern countyes / partes which are now called by the names of ~~Lancashire Yorkshire Richmond Westm'land Cumberland & the Bishoprick of Durham~~ {Yorkshire, Bishoprick,[152] Lancashire, Westmorland, Cumberland & Northumberland}‡.

{Caer Vorran I suppose was builded by Var[r]onius, who was Præfect or Captain of the XX Legion called Valens Victrix, \ and from him / by the Britannes intitled Caer-Vorran. He incamped here ~~abouts~~, probably on Castrig, with Lucanis Præf. the Captain of the 2nd Legione called Augustus ~~Hi. cohort~~ whose soljers posibly paved this way. But then why the Maden-Way? Perhaps from those XI thous[and] virgins sent over with Ursula to be maryed with their countrymen in Amorica or Little Brit.[153] In f. XC see p.280.}[154]

Which things being considered, [it] may not [be] improbable that the proprietor of this ancient Castle (with the lands round about ~~it~~, whom the Saxons call'd Whelp \ in Latin, Catulus / might be a Branch of the old Romane Catuli, left here in trust with their British bands ~~where~~ when the Romans made their recess into Gaul, Anno Christ 443 \ in about the year 440, then destitute of aid, / there being but the space of \ about / 600 years \ (and many familyes have continued so long) / ~~from~~ betwixt their departure and the Norman Conquest \ Sc. 627 years / (dureing which time the Saxons who came in to aid the Britans & such of the Romans as were left behind) \ trusted with them / against the \ violent / incursions of the Picts & Scots, made themselves masters of al these nations, & altered the names both of men & places, as appears to this day‡.

[Machell's Notes: I.560]

*{Anno 395: into Italy under Suetonius after Honorius sent them a legion: Speed. 277.} {The 1t assay by Cæsar was in Anno Mundi 3873, ante Christ '54. From Cæsars invasion to the days of Valentinian the III wherein the Romans did quite abandon it, 500 years: p.278, p.2, Speed. Kingdoms & empires seldom exceed 500 years: Speed, p.278. 1. 2.}

†{Speed p.479, 6: Valentianian sent Gaslio of Ravenna, a most valiant man with a Regiment or Legion of soljers, who, after they queld the Scots & Picts, was recald; who taught them the use of their armour and weapons, and to strengthen their fortification & wall of turfs, which now they began to build with firm stones, 8 in thickness & 12 high &c.‡} {Quaere of this, for in Speedes Table – p.171– it is not added, but belongs to the Ottadini with other places in Scotland. Those he mentions are who inhabited the places which we now calle Lancashire Yorkshire Richmondshire Westmorland & Cumberland & The Bishoprick of Durham.} {! ! !}[155]

‡{Vortigern invaded 440; Hengist & Horsa [44]6.}

[I.561A][156]

Aur[elius] Alexander Severus Imp. XXVI Anno XLI 225, had a \ fam[ily] / councel amongst whom this triumvirate extraordinary: Catilius Severus vir omnium doctissimus; \ Ælius Severianus \ vir / omnium Sanctissimus; Quintilius Caius Marcellus omnium ~~optimus~~.[157]

---

[152] County Durham: see the English Glossary.

[153] Brittany.

[154] The story of St Ursula and her 11,000 virgins appears in several medieval writings, including Geoffrey of Monmouth, *Historia Regum Britanniae* (*History of the Kings of Britain*), c. 1136, and Jacobus de Voragine, *Legenda Aurea*: 'The Golden Legend' (Barcelona, 1494), Ch.153. For a modern edition, see de Voragine, Nickel and Rainer, *Legenda Aurea* (Ditzingen, 1988).

[155] Note Machell's reliance on John Speed's, *Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans…* (London, 1611). In Speed's table of ancient inhabitants (171), for example, the Brigantes are placed in Lancaster and the Ottadini in Northumberland, while spaces allotted to the inhabitants of Cumberland and Westmorland are empty. Machell's other references to Speed in these notes might also be questioned.

[156] Scrap page, approx. 9cm x 9cm, with interlineation difficult to disentangle from the body text and therefore insecure.

[157] The precise Latin wording here suggests that Machell might have used Isaac Casaubon's *Historia Augusta* (1603) as a source. A compilation of the works of several authors of late antiquity, the volume includes the *Life of Severus Alexander* by Aelius Lampridius, in which Catilius Severus is described as '*vir omnium doctissimus'*:

They lived under the command of the Romans till the 430 year after Xt* when the Roman Empire declineing was forced to call home their Garrisons, & having before exhausted the strength of this Kingdom left it a prey to the Picts – whereupon they [were] forced to crave aid of the Saxons & Angles near the confines of Denmark ~~to whom they became~~ \ who after they had chased / away their enemyes drove[158] the Britt[ains] or [those][159] who would not live under their laws, [into] corners & passes, & subjection.

[Machell's Notes: [I.561A]

{My Maps of England p.11. Xti 440.}

*{Will[iam] ingresses 1067, which was after it 400. 627 X.[160] The Romans persist 627 years.

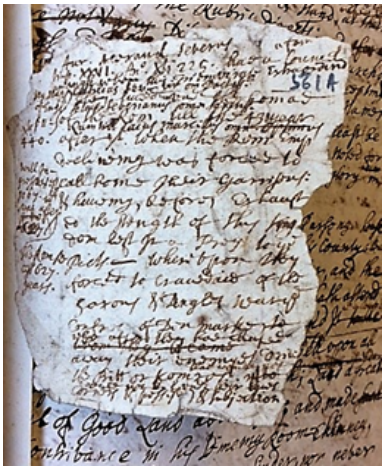


Figure 1.14.3. A scrap page, typical of those numbered in the 20th century when pasted into the volume. I.561A.

[I.561]

[§17.] [The name of Whelpdale]

{That might Catulus be changd into Whelp more Saxonico, & Castrum Catulinus. So that which before was called Catulus was now called Whelp. Castrum Catulinus: Whelp Castle. Abalaba: Apelby. Brovonacum: Browham.}

For tis then Aballaba was called Apelby, either from the plenty of apples, for being the place of appeals, or courses of Judicature – Verteræ Burgh, from being a Burrow. Brovoniacum, Burgham, not unlikely on the same occasion an Gallacum. Kirkbythore as it is at this day, from a Temple it seems here erected to the Honour & Worship of their god, Thor, i.e. Jupiter [which] into our Thorsday commeth. And \ has / perhaps the whol bottom of the County of Westmorland \ before the Conquest, might be \ was / called Whelpdale; from this ancient seat which seeme to have bin the ~~most noble place in it~~ \ comanding place of it / & the sirname of Whelpdale ~~may be described~~ \ might take its beginning / from their ancestours \ about the Conquest at some remarkable / living at some noted place \ in / of this valley {at the time of the Conquest}.

Quis autem res tam antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?[161]

---

the most learned of men (see 597). However, as Lampridius was much quoted, Machell could equally well have found his source elsewhere.

[158] MS: 'drive.'

[159] 'Those' replaces an illegible word.

[160] This information is repeated on the same page of the MS.

[161] 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?' Possibly this is intended to be a quotation from Livy, *The History of Rome*, Bk I.3.2, though the wording is slightly different. Obviously, the question struck a chord as Machell used it four times in his narrative sequences on Kirkby Thore.

[VI.622B]

[Letter to Machell from A. Smal[…] 11 June 1672][162]

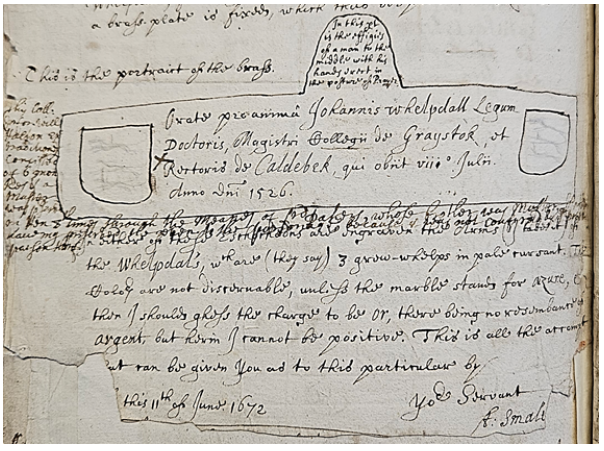


Figure 1.14.4. Letter to Machell from A. Smal[…], 1672. VI.222B.

Sir
I find that one Roger Whelpdale Provost of Queens College in Oxford was preferred to the Bishopriqs of Carlile about 250 years ago in the Reign of King Henry the 5th.[163] But no monument of him can be found in the Church; nor is it probable that he was interred there. Fo\u/r I never heard of any Bishop of Carlile stooped so low as to take up the Parsonage of Graystock, save only Bishop Robinson, successor to Bishop Whelpdale both in his provosts place & in his see.[164] That which your friend intends is (I suppose) a monument for another Whelpdale, for whose memory upon a fair marble in this Church a brass plate is fixed which thus bespeaks the Reading.
This is the portrait of the brass.
In this Pl[aque] is the effigies of a man to the middle with his hands Erect in the Posture of Prayer:

> Orate pro anima Johannis Whelpdall legum
> Doctoris, Magistri Collegii de Graystock, et
> Rectoris de Caldebek, qui obiit viii[0] Julii
> Anno Domini 1526.[165]

[162] This page is torn; some text is missing. Although the signature seems to read 'F. Smal…', the writer is almost certainly Alanus Smalwood DD, rector of Greystoke, 1663-86. See CCED. The diagonal line in front of Smalwood's initial might suggest 'A', but this is conjectural.
[163] Roger Whelpdale was bishop of Carlisle from 1419 until his death in 1423. See David W.V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142. Said to have been born of a Cumbrian gentry family near Penrith [see VI.662A, below] he was educated at Oxford, was a fellow of Balliol College before 1400, then successively fellow, chamberlain, treasurer, and in 1404, provost of Queen's College. He was senior proctor of the university in 1403–4. He was in London when he made his will, on 25 January 1423, and died there on 4 February following. It seems likely that he was interred in St Paul's Cathedral in London: Henry Summerson, 'Whelpdale, Roger (d.1423), bishop of Carlisle'. *ODNB*. The confusion over Whelpdale's burial place is shared by Thomas Fuller in *The History of the Worthies of England* (1662), known as 'Fuller's Worthies'; see later edn (London, 1811), Vol. 1, 23. Machell used 'Fuller's Worthies' regularly in his research.
[164] Henry Robinson (1551/2-1616), provost of Queen's College Oxford from 1581, bishop of Carlisle from 1598, was reputedly a native of Carlisle. An evangelical pastor, his ministry emphasised preaching. On receiving the living of Greystoke *in commendam* (i.e. a vacant benefice commended to a cleric until an incumbent was provided) in 1609, he preached regularly there, as seen in the churchwardens' notes. Bishop Robinson's monumental brasses (in Queen's College Oxford and in Carlisle cathedral), praise his part in the religious and secular life of the far north of England. See Margaret Clark, 'Robinson, Henry (1551/2–1616)'. *ODNB*.
[165] John Whelpdale LLD, died 8 July 1526, was master of the College of Greystoke and rector of Caldbeck.

In either of these eschucheons are engraven the Arms of the Whelpdals, which are (they say) 3 grow-whelps in pale currant. The colors are not discernable, unless the marble stands for Azure. & then I should ghess the charge to be Or, there being no resemb[l]ance of Argent, but herin I cannot be positive. This is all the accompt that can be given you and to this particular by
Your Servant
A. Smal[wood]
this 11th of June 1672.

(Infor[mant] Will Halton ex-traditione) This College consisted of 6 monkes & a Master, was preservd in Henry 8th times through the meanes of Lord Dakers whose brother was Master,[166] having preserved the revenues[167] [of] the parsonage because it was not confirmd by the pope.[168]

[VI.622A]

Andrew Whelpdale Rector of Newnham in Hantshire & somtime fellow of Queens in Oxford, a younger son of [Blank] Whelpdall of Penrith & Skirsgill,[169] sayes that the Ancient Seate was Frenchfield, a little farme over against Buly Castle on Cumberland side, not far from Carleton; & that his Ancestour was 2nd brother to that house. (de quo quaere?)
But that estate in my time: Will. Whelpdall – an hatter in Penrith, & a very mad fellow.[170]

[I.561]

§18. **What is now Modern**

But now to pass from things which are buried in their own family ruines to what is now modern and near to descernable.[171]

[**Parish Church**]

The next ~~thing~~ \ place / here which deserve observation is the Parish \ Church, / which seems by \ the stones whereof it is builded in & roofed out / its walls to have bin builded out of Whelp Castles Ruines \ as most of the houses on this Town have bin. / Tis an hansom but elligant building[172] \ with a fair strong tower adornd with a clocke […].[173] /

---

166 Two words here are illegible.
167 This word could equally well be 'revents'. 'Revent': to sell again; to sell on. *OED*.
168 'When the legality of seizing the rectory and its profits on the king's behalf came to be reviewed in court, it was argued by the incumbent that … the church was indeed made collegiate, but it was by the pope's authority only; that they had no common seal, and therefore were not a legal corporation. As judgment was given against the king, the church continued rectorial and parochial … Lord Coke was of opinion that the king's title failed owing to the fact that the church was made collegiate by the pope's authority only, without the royal assent.' J. Wilson (ed.) *A History of the County of Cumberland*, 2. Victoria County History (London, 1905), 204-08. See also *N&BII*, 363.
169 John Whelpdale, 1611-64. See C. Roy Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45: Appendix II (124-25) and Appendix IV (128).
170 From as early as the 17th century, 'as mad as a hatter' is thought to have referred to hat-makers suffering from mercury poisoning; see Ann M. Carlos and Frank D. Lewis, *Commerce and a Frozen Sea: Native Americans and the European Fur Trade* (Philadelphia, 2010), 22. The Anglo-Saxon word 'atter' meaning 'poison', is closely related to the name of a poisonous snake, the 'adder', suggesting that the saying might be much older. Machell was related to the Whelpdales, as noted, above.
171 MS: 'And \ but / now; is to pass ~~from these ancient matters~~ \ from things which are buried in their own family / ruines \ to what is now modern and near 2 descernable / to what is more modern.'
172 MS: 'Tis an hansom \ ~~structure without / brick structure~~ \ but / elligant building.'
173 A word obscured by the binding could be 'board'. MS.I.527A offers, 'But now to returne from things in their own ruines or rased out by the conquering swords to what is more moderne and more descernable. The next place here which deserves observation is the Parish Church, which seems by the stones whereof it is made {to have bin ~~builded~~ \ raised / out of Whelp Castle ruiness: 'Tis an hansom ~~structure~~ \ edifice / on the outside tho not very large, adorned with a well proportion'd Tower & a Clock whose hore-bord faceth the Town, which strikes on the Loudest Bell in this County ~~which~~ (called Great Tom).'

[I.561A]

An hansom structure and on the outside, though not the very large, haveing a well-proportion'd Tower which conteines the greatest best sounding bell in the County, called Great Tom, & a Clock on the outside of, whose hoore-board looks to the towne as [blank] But its greatest glory (as \ doth / best becometh the beauty of Holiness)[174] is on the inside, where

[I.561]

the beauty of it (as doth becometh best the worship service of God), is on the inside[175] – where all things are neat and in very good order: the floores of the Church \ & Quire / well flaged; the seats (which are generally made of wainscot) and all other things thereto appertaineing, regular & uniform.

{Bason, laver, fountaine}

A dillicate Font where \ at the Rectors charge ~~of the personal cost of the Rector~~ which he [had][176] / made of huen stone, the designe of which to have a fountaine p\l/aying up in the bason and a dove appendant to the cover \ of it, / which (when it ascend by the help of a pully whose counterpoyse is hid in the steepel tower), will seem to stand hovering over the water – a Proper Emblem ~~of what is conveyed to m[an] kinde in Baptism~~ \ is in that Sacrament* {!!!}

{The counterpoise goes up in the steeple where it is not seen: a proper emblem of the Holy Ghosts descending upon & sanctifying of the baptismal water to the mystical washing away of sin.}[177]

The Quire is neatly both sealed & seated with very good wainscot & the Altar raled in with wreathed ballisters at the Rectors gift; where (instead of Balls) he hath placed Cupps which are very beautifull & noe less significant than of the Cup of blesing in that other Sacrament which is there administered thrice in the year.[178]

The Altar, also Pulpit & Organ-loft, are of very good workmanship, being curiousely carved. And here are Prayers on Wednesdays, Fridays & Satterday nights, every Holliday & Holiday eve; with Catekiseing \ on / every Sunday, unless prevented by important occasions.

[174] The treatment of this line from Psalm 96.9 (*AVB*) exhibits Machell's late-17th-century embrace of Archbishop William Laud's vision for the Church of England, see Kenneth Fincham and Nicholas Tyacke, *Altars Restored: The Changing Face of English Religious Worship, 1547-c.1700* (Oxford, 2007), Ch.8.

[175] MS: 'The beauty of it (as doth \ becometh best / become the house \ service / \ worship / of God) is on the Inside'. Sentences such as this demonstrate Machell's experiments with alternative drafts.

[176] This word is obscured by the binding.

[177] 'The font, bearing Machell arms, was completed May 8th, 1688, as the register records. Along with the pulpit, communion table and rails of carved black oak, it was the gift of, 'the father of all Westmorland and Cumberland antiquaries, the Rev. Thomas Machell, who held this rectory from 1677 to 1698.' He was buried in the south side of the chancel. The pulpit bears the date 1631, which seems to indicate that Machell was a collector of pre-existing carved oak, rather than a designer of new work. Outside the rail surmounting the communion balusters runs an inscription, which in its present position reads thus: COLLEGII REG: OXON: SOCIUS. AN: R: CAROLI II XXXV: REG: MA: A SAC: ET I ECCLÆSIÆ DE KIRKBYTHORE D.D: THO MACHELL RECTOR.' See John Heelis, 'Kirkby Thore Church', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 314-22, at 319-20.

[178] MS: 'The Quire is neatly both sealed & seated with very good wainscot & the Altar raled in with wreathed ballisters at the Rector's gift ~~which also~~; where (instead of Balls) ~~upon the Pillasters~~ he hath placed Cupps; ~~upon the pillasters~~ which are very beautifull & noe less significant than of \ the cup of blesing in the other Sacrament, ~~which is there administered in the other sacrament~~ / That other sacrament which is there administered thrice in the year'.



Figure 1.14.5. Sketch of Kirkby Thore font cover with added scrap page. I.561.

[Machell's Notes: I.561]
*{See Whitsunday, Annuc[iation] & Public Baptism}

[I.562]

And no child was ever baptised privately in this Rectors time, but it was publicly brought to the church som Sunday following (if it liv'd so long) to be received into Christs flock after that solemne & religiouse manner which the Church of England hath thought fit to.[179] It be no more than duty doth strictly request, yet is fit to to mention for ex[ample's] sake, yet I fear (if other places were searched) it may pass for a rarety.[180]

[Machell's Notes: I.475-476]

This being found at Kirbythore, Enquire after the name of Shandos. He beareth Azure the Image of the Virgin Mary with her child in her arms, standing in the Sun. For bearing of these Arms great dissention did arise between Sir John Shandos an Englishman, and the Lord Claremount a Frenchman, they both bearing the same armes alike. After a challenge thereof made by the one to the other, it was tryed at the end of the battle of Poyctiers, where the Lord del Claremount was slaine & lost his banner by right of Armes: p. 79. 2. *The Union of Honour*.[181]

[179] Machell's insistence on obedience to canon law is notable in his parish registers: see R. Bower, 'Notes on the Kirkbythore Registers', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 372-86, 375. Machell's clear views on church baptism, seen in the passage above, were a response to the popularity of non-emergency private baptism. This was a debateable issue in 17th-century England, not only because of the growth of conconformity, but also because some wealthy families belonging to the Established Church had begun to favour private baptism. See Yudha Thianto Tjondrowardojo, 'Stories Baptismal Registers Told: Private Baptism in Seventeenth-Century England', *History*, 95, 2 (318) (April, 2010), 177-93.

[180] Further text continues in the margin as follows, MS: 'Prescribe \ all which / I ~~heartily~~ wish may not pass for rarityes, being no more than which duty requires; yet I all wh (though it be no more than duty, yet ~~perhaps it is more than~~\ extra /ordinary & fit to be mentioned for examples sake.' All of this has been lightly scored through. As the first part of this passage is blotted, its transcription is insecure.

[181] James Yorke, *The Union of Honour* (London, 1640), see 80 (b.).



Figure 1.14.6. Image of scroll. I.476.

The Armes in that book did not differ, save that the rayes here in this figure are direct & oblique, issuing immediately from about her, with a particular ray also about her head & about our Saviour, she standing in an half moon. But in the Escutcheon the rayes issue from an Ovall wherewith she is encompassed, & no rays are seen except of the Suns, & those all direct. And beside she has the a † in her hand. In this she has none.[182]

[I.563]

[**Kirkbythore Hall**][183]

The next Curiosity (if it may be so called) is at Kirkbythore Hall, where there is a piece of old forrest-worke building: a common thing once, when this \ part of the / country was full of good timber; but now (& in the ages to com) it may pass for ~~a Rarity~~ \ Rare / & therefore the rather ought to [be] mentioned because it shows us what manner of buildings was (for the most) use'd here of old: & prevents an objection which m~~ight~~\ay / be made against the 'Greatness of this Town \ & Apelby & other like whose ruines are not now to be found / ~~hereto~~ fore, & of others likewise by showing how easily they might be consumed (tho never so great) & reduced to ashes which the winde scattereth whersoever it listeth & yet leave~~s~~ no ruines or vestigia behind it,[184] which are not common in other countryes. {So London \ before the fire / Yorke, Apleby; & most of the townes in England \ whose ruines are not now to be found, formerly were paper buildings.[185] And Apleby, whose ruinouse heapes are scarce to be seen, undiscerneable.}[186]

Here \ at this Hall / is allso an Altar (dig'd up out of Whelp Castle ruines) which Sir William Dugdall hath taken notice of ~~in his visitation~~,[187] and therefore I need not say anything of it.[188]

{Near to this Hall, in \ a peatmoss / calld Traneberry Mire[189] wi[l]d duck doe frequently breed & brood. & on the \ high / moore is a sorte of wild folle call'd Black Cocks or Gors \ which are not common in other countries. / This is [the] Seat of Hum[phrey] Wharton of Gilling Esq. Barister at Law (by purchase from John Wharton, his Liefe[190] Late Lord of the manner, who dyed without any male Isue: \ Wharton / armes are Sable a manch Argent.[191]

---

[182] The MS does not contain this image. The description is reminiscent of Revelation 12:1, 'And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars.' (*AVB*).
[183] For a history of Kirkby Thore Hall see Michael Waistell Taylor, 'Manorial Halls in Westmorland', *CW1*, 12 (1893), 24-27.
[184] MS: 'reduced to ashes which the winde bloweth \ scattereth / whersoever it listeth & \ yet / leave~~th~~\s/ no (ruines or) vestigia behind it.'
[185] 'Paper buildings': made of wood, easily burned.
[186] MS: 'and Apleby, whose ruinouse heapes are not \ scarce / to be seen undiscerneable.}'
[187] The next word (possibly 'writ') is blotted.
[188] An unfinished reference to 'Cowsonsy' has been deleted from this part of the MS; for the main narrative, see below, I.538 onwards.
[189] Traneby Mire. See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 120.
[190] 'Lief': Beloved, dear, agreeable, acceptable, precious. *OED*.
[191] MS deleted: 'Here &c.': an unfinished sentence.

[Arts and Employments]

Yet before I leave of this Town, once famous for traid; I must \ will / observe \ to you that in this village (as if the Genij of the Place ha~~d~~s not left it & forsaken it utterly) there are above 30 Artes and Imployments present and practised at this very day. As first the \ most beautifull / incomparable Art of Arcetecture: which (amongst many others) the present \ Rector / hath ~~som~~ knowledge of – the Hildegastics[192] of these partes. \ See Fullers *Chronicle* p.102.[193] / He and one \ Christopher / Adison (borne in this Town and contemporary with him) being the first Introducers of Regular Building[194] into these ~~Northern~~ Parte. Hutton Hall in the County of Cumberland was alterd by Addison; Rose Castle

[I.564][195]

in Cumberland, Cæsars Tower, Howgill Castle & Crackenthorp Hall in the County of Westm'land by Mr Machell; [196] & the Organ Loft in St Lawrences Apelby of The Dorrick order,[197] which has extraordinary fancy in it, the Guttae & Trigliphs being rendered musicall & the fluteings turnd into organ pipes, was designd by him, & the ~~work~~ \ Joyners / men taught to worke by the scale.}[198]

[VI.622K]

[Rose Castle, Cumberland]

A Platforme of Rose Castle in Cumberland wherein what is coloured read was found in repare by Bishop Stearne first Bishop of Carlisle after the returne of King Charles the 2[d] from his exile; whence he was translated to the episcopal See of Yorke. What is colour'd black was repaired by Bishop Stearne. What is gray were the old walls pull'd down by him in order to his repaires. And what remains white, were the old walls standing when Bishop Rainbow entered upon it.



Figure 1.14.7A. Machell's plan of Rose Castle post 1660. VI.662K.

[192] Here Machell is comparing himself with Hildegast, the Frankish polymath noted for improving his country's architecture: see Machell's Preface, I.145.
[193] Thomas Fuller, *The history of the worthies of England* … (1662). I find nothing helpful in Fuller's description of Cumberland and Westmorland, apart from his recognition of the excellence of Lady Anne Clifford's Hospital: see 1840 edn, Vol. 3, 310 (Ed.)
[194] Building in the classical manner, as opposed to traditional or vernacular architecture.
[195] See I.539, below, for comparison.
[196] Machell altered a part of Rose Castle for Thomas Smith, c.1684. See Part 3, Ch.3, VI.205.
[197] Influenced by Vitruvius, Andrea Palladio (1508-80) was an Italian Renaissance architect who promoted Classical architecture (including the Doric Order, the earliest and plainest Greek style). See *The Four Books of Architecture* (Venice, 1570). Book I was published in English in London in 1663. See the edition by Adolf K. Placzek (ed.), *Andrea Palladio*, *The Four Books of Architecture* (New York, 1965), Part 5.
[198] Triglyph: a member or ornament in the Doric order, consisting of a block or tablet with three vertical grooves or glyphs (strictly, two whole grooves, and a half-groove on each side), repeated at regular intervals along a frieze, usually one over each column, and one or two between every two columns. *OED*. For more on Machell's architectural skills, see John Rogan and Eric Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', *CW2*, 55 (1955), 132-53, at 141 and 148. Their judgments go some way toward validating Machell's own opinion of his architectural skill: 'It is his versatility that stands out above all. He was an archaeologist of exceptionally wide interests and precision of mind, a more than competent architect in a period when the north of England was not well supplied with architects.'

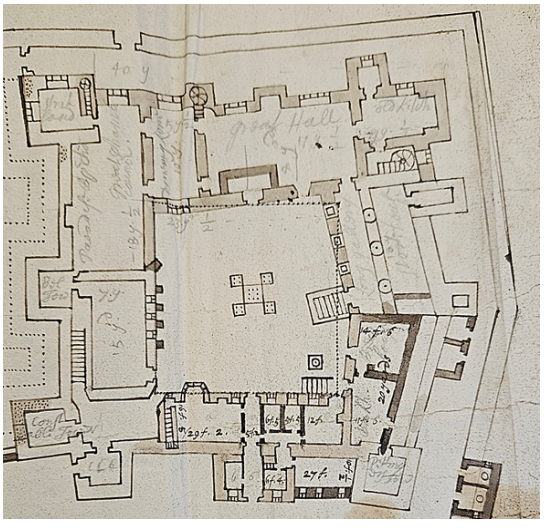


Figure 1.14.7B. Detail from Machell's plan of Rose Castle showing 'what is coloured read'. VI.662K.

[I.564]

The other Artes, Professions & Traides \ which are in this valley / I shall run over ~~by way~~ (for brevityes sake) by way of Alphabet – which are as followeth – namely that of a Baker, Basket Maker, Blacksmith, Bruer & Butcher. Carpenter, Clogger, Cobbler, Currier & Cooper. Joyner, Fuller, Glazier & Knitter. \ Lastmaker, Mason / Maltster,\ Mealman / Mercer, Midwife, Milnwright ~~&~~ Milner. Piper, ~~Schoolmaster, Schoolmistress, Shoemaker~~, Skinner ~~&~~ Spinner. {Spurrier} Tanner, Taylour, Thatcher, Waller, Weaver ~~&~~ Whitesmith \ & Wheelwright &c. \ To which wee may add tho out of course: a Schoolmaster & a School Dame; / which I thought fit to observe as a Rarety relateing to Artes, the like of which is scarce to be found \ through the kingdom of England / in a country village.

[Rarities in Art and Nature]

{Some things which ar Rare}
And here I cannot but take notice also of som little things which are Rare in Nature, which showes the benignity of the soyle & air. This present Rector had in his flore gardine not many years since, doubl gilliflores at Shrovetide.[199] And the last year in 1685, he had a Dazy which is \ was / 4 inch & ½ about in circumference, the diameter being 3 inch and ½ by the application of an inch rule.

{Now I shall pass to the Chapelry of Milburne}
{where in the way hard by [the] Hall wee meet with a rampart or fortification &c.}

[Howgill Castle]

The next thing remarquable is Howgill Castle in the Chapelry of Milburne,[200] being a great \ fair / building which standeth high \ in the eye of the Country / on the skirtes of the mountanes, and hath a large prospect \ in the view of all roades; 2 overlooking at most the whol C[ountry] / to the South & South-West; \ But / the other side, being shutt up with mountaines & a large \ great / grove of trees, \ afords none at all / wherein it standeth. The walls were formerly (& yet are) of prodigiouse thickness;[201] {the Picts Wall was but 8f.; this,10 and ½} And underneath which the Dwelling house \ all arched with stone / \ to which you ascended by / ~~a pair of stairs on the outside, were cellars & great~~

[199] The period before Lent in the Christian calendar.
[200] MS: 'The next thing remarquable is ~~this Parish~~ Howgill Castle in the Chapelry of Milburne ~~& also Remarquable~~.'
[201] MS: 'The walls were formerly (~~of them~~, ~~are~~ yet \ are /) of prodigiouse thickness.'

~~vaults all arched with stone~~; which was the old way of buildings in these partes, whilest they livd in continual feuds with ~~Scotland~~ \ the Scots. / & which served not only for the proper use which now they are put to, but to keep their horses & cattle secure in the times of invasion \ and to have them near them. / A method ~~which old~~ I could alwayes approve of in these northern climates as most warm & convenient & which saveth the cost of \ a great / many roofes in outhouses & stables: were it not

[I.565]

for the unpleasant smells which the ordure & fewmes of cattle & horses are apt to send up to the higher roomes. But this Castle is now most successfully altered with much art & smale cost from an old & irregular piece of building to a \ very / ellegant ~~structure of the Ionicke & Dorrick Orders~~ & uniform structure, the front of which, being a Great Hall with a dineing Roome over it betwixt 2 stately Towers is adorn'd with a Portch & Belconys \ in the midst of the Dorick Orders / of ~~The Doric~~ & Ionic Orders: on either side which are 2 \ setts / rows of windows, double Transom, ~~which are finely~~ \ curiously / carved: \ with a per of windows in the roofe. And before them & at the top, with rails & ballasters instead of batlements. From the midst of the Hall you ascend up to the Dineing Rome by a spacious stair with a square pit or newell – the first hanging stair that I know of in the County of Westm'land.[202]

This was the Seat of the late (unfortunate but worthy Gentleman) Sir Richard Sandford \ Baronet / who was barbarously murthered at London in 1675, being stabed into his stomack \ & / thorow the midriff ~~&~~ to the back bone, ~~& wound on both sides~~ before he got time to draw his sword \ which yet he did intend to do when his caul was hanging out of the wound. / An tis now the inheritance of Sir Richard \ Sandford / his son & heir, who was borne (as 'tis said) about the same time that his father was slane\ by a L[ondon] Hector[203] in 1675 ere his sword was unsheathed, whom yet he resisted ~~such and~~ with undaunted courage & his caul hang out of his wound.[204]
He beares for his Armes: His armes are parted per cheveron, Sable & Ermin, 2 boares heads ~~couped~~, in chiefe ~~Argent~~, couped Argent {?}

[Acorn Bank]

The last but not the least to be noted is Acorne-Banke in the chapelry of Sowerby whose situation, is \ being / much like Howgil; \ but much more confined indeed / in a Gro[ve] but more sweat & pleasant; & \ in / as \ being / much as was 'tis nearer the heart of the Countrey, & ~~hath a full prospect of~~ \ lying exactly opposite to / The Forrest of Whinfel; which gives a great beauty & ornament to It. But that which is most to be noted here is a curiouse additional piece of building of a Parlour and Dineing-Room {so well contrived not a dooer, nor stair excepting \ one / but were all made serviceable – and that too might have bin useful, ~~if the directions had bin followed exactly; as they were given~~} the outside of which

[I.566]

~~all~~ [is] of \ red / free-stone,[205] well wrought & pollishd, & placed according to the Tuscan manner with excavation betwixt every course.[206] This is the seat of John Dalston Esqr, now of Millnrigg (tho his eldest son live[s] here at this time) and his Armes are [blank]

---

[202] MS: '{~~And you ascend by a spaciouse stair~~} & here and here was the first hanging stair that I know of in the County of Westm'land. \ From the midst of the Hall you ascend by a spacious stair. /{~~And here is a large \ fair / stare, by which you ascend from the midle of the Hall up to the dineing Rome – which was the first hanging stair \ of that sort / in Westmorland~~}To which you ascend, haveing passd through the Hall by a spacious…'.
[203] Ruffian.
[204] A margin comment repeats the narrative. For another description of the crime, see MS.I.540. The murder occurred on 8 September 1675; the murderers, Henry Symbal and William Jones, were executed; a printed account of the murder was published in 1680: See *N&B1*, 388.
[205] MS: 'freed-stone'.
[206] The Tuscan order of the five Classic orders of architecture is the simplest; it was delineated by Palladio (1508-1580) in *The Four Books of Architecture* (Venice, 1570). Machell admired Palladio, see above, I.564. Here, Machell appears to refer to Rusticated Tuscan Stonework, which is associated with stones cut with a deliberately rough surface and wide sunken joints between blocks. Interest in this building style has been associated with William Thackeray (*fl.*1670-82), mason and carpenter of Torpenhow, who, despite Machell's

[Flora]

I shall conclude \ this section of Rarityes within Art & Nature / with ~~this~~ observation which is rather general to the whol county than peculiar and proper to this parish alone: that ever in their medows, commons and wastes, they have such dilicate floores growing as are of the greatest esteem about London:[207] namely Panseyes or Hartsease, & Golden Globes, to which may be added \ as / a competitour with London-Pride, the Northern Bird Eye, which grows \ growing / with many floores on a stalke & is of a purple or rather pinke \ like / coulour with a speck of oringe or yallow in the midst{called here Lockeran Goldings because their leaves are contracting together like a padlock}, concerneing which (& The Merchy Golding \ Golden Globe /) they have this rime, saying:[208]

> Lougherty[209]-Goldings & Bonny Bird-eene,
> Are the finest flowers that ever were seen.

[I.566]

[Civil Government]

For the Civil Government of this Parish it is divided into 3 Contablewicks (Sc. K. Milb. & S.)

1. \ The Constablewick of / Kirkbythore, which consists of \ the Lordships of K, Sc. the Town & / som part of the Hamlet of Hale \ so far as is in K. / & the Lordship & Town of Kirkbythore; wherein \ herein / there is but one Gentlemans seat (besides the Parsonage), ~~which is~~ called Kirkbythore Hall; \ concerneing which I have said something [of] it, / which belongs to Humphrey Wharton Esqr. of Gilling in Yorkshir – whose Arm's are Sable a manch Argent.

2. Milburne, which conteineth \ in it whol / the Chapelry of Milburn, and consists

[I.567]

of Kirkhouse (a small Lordship or Hamlet held of the Rector of Kirkbythore wherein the Chappel of Milburne standes); Gullom Holm (another small Hamlet), & of Milburn & Grange – 2 hansome villages; all which, (excepting Kirkhouse aforesaid) do appertaine the Castle of Howgill, \ which I have mention'd amongst the Raretyes which this Parish affords, / which is the seat of Sir Richard Sandford, a Minor, & Baronet – whose Arms are blazond parted per cheveron Sable & Ermine 2 boares \ heads in chiefe couped Argent. /
{And there also liveth in the Town of Milburne, Mr Lancelot Machel, 3 son of Lancelot Machel Esq. of Crakenthorp Hall; whose Armes are Sable 3 greyhounds courant Argent in pale langued memberd & armed Gules collar with a 5 pointed mulet for his distinction as a younger brother.}[210]

3. Sowerby, which consists of the Chapelry ~~&~~ Lordship of Sowerby; being \ all / but one Town \ & Lordship / the chief place whereof is Acorn Bank, ~~The only Gentlemans house in this~~ part, concerneing which I have spoken before – which is the seat of John Dalston Esq. \ sonn of John Dalston of Milrigg Esq. in the County of Cumberland, / sometime Burgess of Apleby, & ~~now Justice of the Peace~~ who was in both the Countyes of Westm'land & Cumberland, whose Armes are Argent a cheveron ingraled betwixt 3 dawes heads errased Sable.[211]

FINIS

---

claims to the title (see I.538, above) is regarded, by some, as the first architect of formal (Classical) building in Cumbria. See Blake Tyson, 'Some Cumbrian Builders, 1670-1780', *CW2*, 96 (1996), 161-66, 180.

[207] MS: 'That \ ever / in \ their medows commons and wastes, they have \ grew such dilicate floores are of / such floores ~~growing~~, as are of the Greatest esteem about London'.

[208] A margin comment here offers: '{in praise of which in whose co[illeg.]}'.

[209] Machell has written, 'lockeran', in the margin here.

[210] MS: '& for distinction with a 5 pointed mulet for his distinction as a younger brother.' Lancelot was Thomas Machell's younger brother.

[211] For branches of the Dalston family see Francis Haswell, 'The Family of Dalston, *CW2*, 10 (1910), 201-70.

[**Narrative 3**]

The Parish of Kirkby Thore

[I.508]

[Method]

1. The Rectory or Vicarage: value & Patrone.	5. Soyle, & products above & underground as: wood watere springs mines of lead coale stones &c.	Subdivision from into Constablewick, Villages, Hamlets and private Seats with the names of the Gentry who are owners of them, & their Armes.
2. Incumbents since the Restaur[ation] of King: Ch. 2.		
3. Charityes.	6. Things extraordinary in nature.	
4. Bon days.		

[I.500]

{Unde dict. !!}[212]
The Parish of Kirkbythore is so call'd from the \ Place / Town wherein the Church stands ~~which is~~ which word seems to be of Saxon original, taken from Kirk \ which signifyes / a church by a place, & Thore which \ was / one of their Gods, whence wee have our Thorsday & implyes as much as the place where the Temple of Thore was erected.[213]

{Before which, Sc. when the Romanes invaded Britain, it was calld Galla\c/um, being the chief of the Brigantes who were possessed of all those Countyes which are at this time known by the names of Yorkshire, L[ancashire], B[arony] W[estmorland] & Cumberland and the Bishoprick of Durham which W., E. and N.; & Newbigin, the Lordship on the North with \ Culgath with / part of Kirkland; on South and South-west with Whinfell in Browham and Bolton in Morland.}[214]

It is anciently writ Kirkbythor in writeings without date \ before dateing of writeings was in use, / and afterwards Kirkbythore. Now it \ is vulgarly / called Kirkbythure ~~vulgarly~~ \ but never writ soe. / It is in the Diocese of Carlile, Barony of Westm'land, & in the East Ward of the same.

[I.530][215]

Of Kirkbythore
Kirkbythore is a Rectory rated in the First-Fruits Office at $37^{li}\ 17^{s}\ 8^{d}\ ½$, the Patronage whereof is in the right honourable Thomas Earle of Thannet by descent from his Ancestors on the mothers side: the VIPONTS & CLIFFORDS, who were Lords successively of the Honour of Appelby & Barrons of Westm'land. For Adam the son of Waldeve de Kirkbythore, who was son of Gamel son of Whelp the Lord of Whelp Castle at or before the Norman [Conquest] gave the Advowson of Kirkbythore Church [to] Dominus Roberto Vetriponte by a deed without date*; in which is mention of the two Chappels of Sowreby & Milneburne as members thereof; witness (inter alias) Johanne Mauchell.[216]

---

[212] 'Unde dictum': 'whence it is said'.
[213] 'Village with a church', kirkju-bȳ. The affix (Thore, from the Old Norse *Þórir*) is doubtless the name of some early unidentified owner'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[214] This margin passage is muddled, having been much overwritten and crossed through.
[215] Narrative text on I.530-I.541 was repeated by Machell in various degress of completeness in other drafts. See 550-69; 528-29; 530-530A; 500-501; 465-66; 504-05 (all Vol. 1).
[216] This paragraph has been written in Machell's neatest script. An earlier version (scored through once, as was Machell's habit when a draft had been superseded) appears on MS.I.333: 'Kirkbythore is a rectory \ rated in the 1st fruits office at £37 17s 8½d / the patronage whereof belongs to the right honourable Thomas, Earle of Thanet (as Lord of the Honour of Apleby and Baron of Westmorland) by descent from his ancestors \ on the mother's side / the Cliffords & Viponts; for Adam the son of Waldeve \ who was / ~~the~~ son of Gamel the son of Welp \ (who was Lord of Whelp Castle) / and the advowson of the said church – Dominus Roberto de Veteriponte {whose descent was married to Cliffords} by a deed S.D. in which is mention of the chapples of Sowreby & Milleburne as members thereof: witness inter alias Johne Mauchael'. Almost exactly the same material appears on I.530.

{Present Incumbent}[217]
And one Thomas Machell{late fellow of Queens College in Oxford; Chaplain in ordinary to King Charles the Second & now fellow of the Philosophical Society in the said University}is the present Incumbent, being a second brother of the ancient family of the Machells of Crakanthorpe (the next Lordship adjoyning) who are descended from the abovesaid John; & in all likelihood[218] \ probability / (as may be collected by the neare affinity of theire name & seate by ancient Tradition & by Deeds without date (which I have seen†) from the foresaid Whelp as the Common-Ancestour both of the Machells and Kirkbythores; the former retaining their ancient name with a mark of disfavour;[219] perhaps from the Conquerour as having oppos'd him in defence of their Countrey (for they were called Maulchiens, Malchaels & Macha'els‡. & adhered to that sirname as their greatest glory (still holding therewith the Lordship of Crakan Thorpe at the least by Capitulation) Idq[ue] non per Drengagium; sed per nobile Cornagij servitium, sicut ipsi Normanni),[220] the latter changeing \ it, / & instead thereof assuming the sirname De Kirkbythore, which are long since extinct, the Heiress being married (as appears by their pedegree) to one of the Whartons \ of Wittall / whose descendents (allthough the first line be cut of) are Lords of the Mannor to this very day.[221]

Other Incumbents since the restouration of King Charles the Second
William Walker
There have not been any but William Walker, Master of Arts of Christs Colledge in Cambridge & sometimes Schoolmaster of Gigleswick in Yorkshire;[222] a man skilld in physick, and well deserving in other respects if he had not been imposd on the Parish by an High hand in Olivers time, instead of Mr Lancelot Lowther (an eminent preacher) who was turn'd out of place in those most dismall & rebellious times for his great loyalty to King Charles the first & his fidelity to the Church of England.[223]

[Machell's Notes: I.530]

*è Cart. Antiq. Machellorum familiæ.[224]
†Ibidem.
‡Ibidem.

[I.535A]

[Testimonial. MA Degree. 1651.]
April 19 1651
Wee are content that Mr William Walker have a Testimint according to the usual forme for Masters in Arts.
S. Bills, R. Widdrington, J. L. Moze, Hu Bethel, Will. Owtram, G. Rust, J. Sedgwick, Dan Bull.
Christs College.

[I.531]

The late incumbent was Mr William Walker, Master of Artes of the same College \ Christs College / with H. More,[225] Cambridge \ April 19. 1651. / Who succeeded Mr Lancelot Lowther {of the

[217] This heading appears on I.531.
[218] The pecked line suggests that Machell preferred his second choice, while allowing both to remain.
[219] The name means, 'bad dog'.
[220] 'And that not by drengage; but by the noble service of cornage, just like the Normans themselves.'
[221] Another version of this paragraph appears in MS.I.531. 'And Mr Thomas Machell A.M., late fellow of Queen's College in Oxford, & chaplane in ordinary to King Charles 2, now a fellow of the Philosophick Society of Oxford, is the present incumbent, descended (as is more than conjectured) for I saw very ancient deeds, which being a second brother of the ancient family of the Machells of Crakanthorp, descended (as is more than probable by deeds I have seen &c.) from the said Whelp \ Catulus alus / {Roger Malus Catulus} who seemes to have bin founder of this \ parish church [which] is dedicated to St Michel the archangel / chantry: the only lasting chantry in this parish. Unless wee esteem the skirts of the Donation of Halthe Machael &c.'.
[222] William Walker became chaplain to the bishop of Carlisle in 1665: see Bishop's Register, CAC(C), DRC1/4, 299.
[223] Lancelot Lowther, rector of Kirkby Thore (1629). For more, see Kirkby Thore Narrative 2, I.551, above.
[224] 'Noted in the Machells' ancient deeds.'
[225] Henry More was a student at Christ's College Cambridge from 1631 to 1639, thereafter becoming one of its fellows; see Richard Ward, *The Life of The Learned and Pious Dr. Henry More, Late Fellow of Christ's College in Cambridge. To which are annex'd Dives of his Useful and Excellent Letters* (London, 1710).

Lowthers of [Blank]} \ a worthy / turnd out by the rebels for his loyalty to King Charles I, & his fidelity to the Chuch of England. Who predecessor was Mr Thomas Warcop, ~~M.A~~. a gentleman of this country, of a very good family {tho now ~~obscure~~ \ in decay, / the chief of which, a Mr Thomas Warcop of Colby in Westmorland, Alderman of Apleby. And before him (tho ~~tis~~ not likely by immediate succession) was Richard Evenword, Abbot of Shap alias Hepp \ for so it is writ in ancient records / in this County ~~of Westm'land~~.

[I.530]

And though it be beyond the due limits of this enquiry to adde any more ~~other Incumbents~~; yet having a Catalogue of severall other Rectors by me*, I shall not scruple to make mention of them; being generally persons of good ranke \ note / & quality.[226] For before Mr Lowther was one Thomas Warcop Master of Arts,[227] a younger brother of an ancient family in this County of Westm'land tho now in decay; the chiefe of which is Thomas Warcop of Colby Gentleman Alderman of Appelby. Before

[Machell's Notes: I.530]

*è penes Rectorem.[228]

[I.531]

whom (tho I cannot say in immediate succession) was Richard Evennwood sometime Chaplaine to King Henry VIII & last Abbat of Shap*.
In ~~Henry~~ \ Edward / IV time Mr Henry Wherton a younger son of Gilbert de Querton, Lord of this Mannor (of the same blood with the now Lord Wharton) was Rector here†. And before him in Henry VI. time Roger de Crakanthorp‡ of a very ancient & worthy family – the Crakanthorps of Newbiggin, who deriv'd that sirname from the towne of Crakenthorp, where they held certain Lands many hundreds of years since of the Machells of Crakenthorp, as appears by writeings↓ ~~which~~ I have seen without date, & possibly are a branch of that family called de Crakenthorp for distinctions sake.

In the 48 yeare of Edward 3. [1374-1375], William de Corbrig‖ was Parson here. And I find before him in \ a / writeing (sans date) one Mr Adam de Kirkbythore¶, officiall of Carlile who perhaps was son of the forenam'd Adam, who gave the Advowson of this Church to the family of the Viponts. And these I have been the more willing to mention, to show how worthy & truly generouse the noble patrons of this parish have been, who as they receiv'd the Donation at first by way of free gift from a Country Gentleman; soe have they been ready upon all occasions to bestow the same freely upon Gentlemens sons (& for defect, upon some other worthy & eminent persons who livd in this Countrey). So that this may be called the Gentlemens parsonage, As tis now the most noble & Genteel preferment in the County of Westm'land, being much improved in many repects by the present Rector.

[Machell's Notes: I.531]

*è Cartis penes Rectorum.[229]
†è General prædicta.[230]
‡è Cart. Antiq. Machell.
↓Ibid.
‖è Coll. T.M.[231]
¶In Cart. Antiq. Mauchelel et enim Will. Ma-Catulus, Terras Quasdam de miset (per nomen Mr Adæ de Kirkbythore) s.d. [232] Qu. Tamen, If the official was not Kirkeby only?[233]

[226] Here, Machell has chosen one word over another, marking the discarded word with a pecked line.
[227] Thomas Warcop, instituted as rector in 1597; died in 1629. CCED.
[228] 'In the rector's keeping.'
[229] 'As shown by deeds in the rector's keeping.'
[230] 'From things aforesaid in general.'
[231] 'Thomas Machell's Collections.'
[232] 'Noted in the Machells' ancient deeds, without date, wherein William Malus-Catulus was lessor of certain lands in the name of Master Adam de Kirkbythore.'
[233] 'Query, however, if the official was not Kirkeby only.'

[I.333]

{Charitys}
{Per annum antient sallery from the inhabitants, 12 November, 3. Henry 7. [1487]. So payd to Rob. Hodgson 4s added by \ arbitratation / between former incumbent […][234] Rector ~~upon an arbitration~~ \ to be paid / out of his good will & Godly devotion.}

[I.528]

[Charities Continued][235]
There is a Rent-charge of 5 markes per Annum out of the Powes, a place in this Parish being of the demanes of Mr H. Wharton, Lord of the Manner of Kirkbythore, which is distributed to certain familyes in that Town & elsewhere according to the will of the Donor, who was one Mr Knipe, vicar of ~~Knipe~~ Warcop. But being intrusted with the vicar & churchwarden of the said Parish, & this haveing a very small interest in it, I shall refer you for a farther account ~~of~~ concerneing this matter to the Parish of Warcop.[236]

[I.501]

[Kirkby Thore Church]
The Church is commonly calld Kirkbythore but ~~seems to be~~ \ is / dedicated to St Michael the Arch-Angel, for on that day they keep there feasts,[237] though \ being a very much civilised people / without any games: ex informatione Lancelot Robinson de Kirkbythore, 1678, August 6.

[I.468]

In Kirkbythore Church[238]
In the midle ~~window~~ are Cliffords Armes as before wanting the Coat bordered Verre – supporters a draggon Gules and a leopard crowned & chaned Or. The crest is a draggon in a corronet (sed: Gules dragon, corronet Or). The mantle Argent dubled Gules – The motto DES OR MES.[239] On the right hand Or 6 annulletts Sable. Query. On the left: Argent a manch Sable.
On \ top of / the steeple the south side: Wharton impaleing Lancaster cutt in stone.
In the Quire wall: 1. Machells 2. Wharton & Machell; 3. Wharton & Lancaster 4. Clifton & Vipont – all in stone. & in the East Window the Paternal Coate of the Machells in glass – Item Whartons in glass.

[I.470][240]

In the Little Quire in the first point of the East window are Argent a maunch Gule[s] with a lobe of 3 points Vert. \ fil nat.[241] Max Thu[rl]keld de Mellerby. / In the midle point Argent a manch Sable. In the last Sable a manch Argent (Wharton) without distinction.
On the wall under the left corner of the window is this Coate: a fess between 3 water jugs, the field Vert.
8th. Barr\wise/ of 6 Or and Azure with a cantone in dexter charget with a † crosslet of the first.
9th. Tis parted per fess Gules and Argent two mullets in chiefe pierced of the field Or and an annulett of the same.

In the 2d window
The highest are Cliffords.
On the top of the 2d window.
1t is parted per cheveron Argent and Sable with 9 gutta's Or, 2 wreaths of 5 roses in chiefe propper.
2. Sable mullets of 5 Or with a border ingrailed[242] of the same.
In the 4. Cliffords.

---

[234] One word here is obscured by the binding.
[235] There are two small sketches (3cm x1cm and 1cm square) of windows here.
[236] See Part 1, Ch.23, Warcop, from I.315.
[237] 29 September.
[238] Ink has been superimposed over pencil on this page. Pencilled text is illegible apart from '1624', at the foot.
[239] Over the gatehouse of Skipton Castle, the motto is given as 'Desormais' = henceforth. See *CFH*, 66.
[240] This page has been written in ink superimposed on text written in pencil, now illegible.
[241] 'filius naturalis': illegitimate son.
[242] Here Machell repeats the 3-on-3 image, but reverses it.

In the 5th. 1t point, Sable a manch Argent (Wharton) with a martlet[243] for distinction. 2 point, Lancaster & Crackanthorpe with flore de luce.[244]
11. Window Top: 1. Sable a manch with martlett; the 2 matched with Lancaster.
{In the East End window, Machells Armes and the same in stone with the Races[245] also Machell & Wharton.}

[Machell's Notes: I.484}

Of the church: se for the Visitation in my Long booke. Dugdall allso has it in his visit of Westm'land 1664.

[I.465][246]

To Kirkbythore Church belong Kirkbythore, Hale, Temple Sowerby & Acorn Bank, Howgill Castle, Milburne & Grange,[247] \ & the Hamlet of Julian Bowr, / of which Howegil Castle [is] the Manner House, \ [&] the lenth of Kirkhouse with som ten[emen]ts; all parts belongs to the Rector of Kirkbythore. Milburne & Temple Sowerby are not Churches but Chaples, as is evident from the first conveyance of the Advousons thereof from ~~John~~ \ Adam / de Kirkythore to Robert de Veteripont \ in a Deed S.D. but about the 6t of King John [1204-05]. / Howbeit in regard of their great distance from the mother church they have liberty to bury &c. there \ which any bishop may at pleasure / conferr upon any chapple by consecratio – salva indemnitate matricis ecclesiæ – tamen non debent: see Cam[den], so that they may properly be called parochiall chappls or Chapples of Ease. S[ine] altea tamen &c.[248]

[Parish Value]

{Kirkby Thore}
Gleba Ecclesiæ Kirkbythore valet per annum 4s 0d. There is allso a wast[e] upon the more whose Herbage ~~Ling and Turbari~~ (Bruera)[249] Brouse and Turbary is worth:

By the yere, 13s 4d {Quaere: what rent nowtgeld}	0:13: 4
John le Bray holds one water mille valet per Annum	0: 8: 0
And he hold one waste near Marton church, which is called the Trostbanke, & is worth by the yere	0: 2: 0
And he has allso Joynts[250] & herbage on the mountane of Milburne which is worth by the yere	0: 13: 4
Allso Mr Henry le Barkley holds a close upon the wast[e] and it is worth by yere	0: 12: 0
John de Lancaster hold 1 close also there eodem mod[o] & valet \ per Annum	0: 10: 0
	Summa 2: 16: 8

This was held by Robert de Clifford sed an fuit ta[n]tu[m] demid[ium] quaere?[251]

{Temple Sowerby}
Idem Dominus Robertus had in the village of Temple Sowerby 1 messuage & 12 acres of land valet per annum 0: 12: 0, que fuerunt Templarior[um]? et obijt Seisitus, et valet per annum in omnibus exitibus:[252] 8: 0: 0

Summa 8:12: 0

[243] Martlet: the heraldic swallow: see the English Glossary.
[244] Fleur de lys.
[245] 'Race': a course, a line; e.g. in 1570, 'Of the auncient Mathematiciens, a line is called the race or course of a point'. *OED*.
[246] Also numbered p.19.
[247] MS: 'Kirkbythore ~~Grainge~~, \ Hale, Temple Sowerby & Acorn Bank, / Howgill Castle, Milburne, ~~Temple Sowerby~~ & Grange'.
[248] MS: 'altea': Machell probably meant 'altare', so that the text translates as, 'while preserving the immunity [i.e. rights] of the mother church; however, they ought not to: see Camden, so that they may properly be called parochial chappls or Chapples of Ease. Without an altar. however etc.'
[249] Bruery: heathland used for grazing. *OED*.
[250] Joynts: portion. *OED*.
[251] '... but check whether half was as great as this?'
[252] 'The same Lord Robert had in the village of Temple Sowerby 1 messuage & 12 acres of land worth 12 shillings annually, which belonged to the Templars. And he died possessed [Sc. of this?], and it is worth annually in all its profits 8. 0. 0.'

{Omnes rectores & capellani Arcidiaconis su[n]t subjecti tam in morum connectione quae in ecclesiarum visitatione denom[inatarum] abstante exceptione quae facta fuis[se] proponitur de antecessoribus nostris Baldwine & Huberto occasione capellaru[m] \ de Harkintun & Lamheth quas / {ipsi in præjudicium cant. ecclesiæ construere nitebantur +}[253]

These are all out of the inquisition taken at Apleby Monday next after the feast of St Bartholmew the Apostle[254] in the 8. yere of Edward 2. [1314-1315.] The contents whereof are comprised and may be fo[u]nd in their order if looke in that yere: 1. In St Lawrence Parish Apleby; 2. in Brough under Stanemore; 3. In Sowerby eadem parochial; 4. In Winton in parochial de Kirkbythore; 5. Kirkby Stephen; 6. Langeton infra parochial St Michael de Apleby; 7. Meburne Regis in parochia de Morland; 8. Broughton in ista parochial; 9. Kirkbythore & Sowerby sicut hic.[255]
Et sum[mus] extent[us] Totius Rotuli eccept[ione] feod[orum] & advoc[antiarum] Ecclesiarum est,[256]
C \xx/iiij – \xii/vij – lib. viij & v[d]? {?}

[I.466]

Roger de Clifford was seised \ in his demane as of foe[257] / of certane tenements in Temple Sowerby the day he dyed as his escheats by annulling or makeing voyd of the Templers; which tenements he (thence forward) held of Our Lord the King in Capite by Knights Service, and there are there 16 oxgangs of Land in the hands of the tenents att will, and pay yerely at the feast of Pentecost & St Michael: 3: 4: 0
Allso 8 cotages: which pay yerely att the said feasts 1: 0: 0
There is allso 1 watermill worth yerely 4: 0: 0
Pleas & perquisites of the Court worth yerely 0: 6: 8
Roger Clifford Knight dyed not seised of any \ other / Knights foes in Westmorland; but of the Advowsans of Kirkbythore, Murton and Browham, rated by the yere of the New Tax*.

Kirkbythore	C[s]	}
Murton	50[s]	}†
Browham	5 marcks	}

[Parochial Chapels]

{Milburne Chapple}
In Milnburne Chapple there are not any Coates of Armes in the windows, tho the glass hath bin formerly painted; neither are there any monuments excepting this one in the Sandfords Quire:

> SACRVM MEMORIÆ Annæ Sandford uxoris Richardi | Sandford de Howgil Castle Armigeri Quæ in vita | sua honestè pie qs vixit priumsqus fecit finem stetitqus | Circa 38 Annos uxor ejusdem Richardi et habuit | 18 liberos obytq? vicessimo nono die mensis Januarij | Anno Domini 1605 atatis suæ circa 58 annis‡.[258]

[253] 'All the rectors and chaplains of the Archdeacon are subordinate, as much in the conforming of their customs as in the visitation of the churches mentioned above, allowing for an exception which it is suggested had been made by our ancestors Baldwin and Hubert on account of the chapels of Harkintun and Lambeth which they themselves were striving to construct, to the detriment of the church at Canterbury.' Machell is referring to Archbishop Baldwin (1185-90) and his successor, Hubert Walter (1193-1205), who encountered opposition to building projects at Haddington and Lambeth, see 'Colleges: College of Lambeth', in H.E. Malden (ed.), *A History of the County of Surrey Vol. 2* (London, 1967), 127.
[254] 24th August.
[255] 'Kirkbythore & Sowerby the same as here.'
[256] 'And the entire extent of the whole roll apart from fees and advowsons of churches is'
[257] 'Fee'. Machell understood 'fee' as derived from 'foedus': a contract or agreement; thus, he often wrote 'foe' when discussing fees, e.g. 'knights' foes.' The derivation of 'fee' is also said to be the Saxon 'fee' (cattle or goods of any kind): in Low Latin, 'feudum'. See H.J. Todd (ed.), *A Dictionary of the English Language by Samuel Johnson; with numerous corrections …* (London, 1818), FEC-FEE.
[258] 'Sacred to the memory of Anne Sandford the wife of Richard / Sandford of Howgill Castle Esquire who in her lifetime / lived honourably and devoutly. / She was the said Richard's wife for 38 years and bore him / 18 children. She died on 29 January / A.D. 1605 aged about 58 years. /'

{In Milburne Quire}

Here allso lyes buryed Mr Hugh Machell, 4th[259] son of Hugh Machell of Crackenthorp Esq. {who dyed [blank] but without any monument}.

[Machell's Notes: I.466]

*What new Taxe?
†How is this? {K[irkbythore] in those days worth 2 of Murton, which I cannot understand how it could be, unless The Lead mines payd their Tythes to it.}
‡Note that it is \ all / writ in the great character which [I] have in the beginning, & the long strokes are limits of every line, but there are none of them in the Inscription.

[I.498]

{To which I shall by reason of add, both because off affinity & consanguines, the Armes of Mr L. Machell of Milburne aforesaid 3 son of Lancelot Machell Esq. lately deceased; the which are Sable 3 greyhounds courant in pale Argent collard Or. L. membr. – & armd Gules – with a mullet.}

[I.485]

[Temple Sowerby]

{Sowerby: commonly called} Temple Sowerby, ~~\ or / Sowerby Templariorum~~ not from the \ Temple or / Church \ standing there, / for it is but a chapel appendent to the church of Kirkbythore; But \ from / the Templars, a sort of Religiouse Knights of old, to whom a great part of the Towne did belong, whence it was called for distinctions sake from another Towne of this name on Brough Parish: Sowerby Templariorum, & Temple Sowerby \ as it is to this day. /

These Templars had 900 manners or Lordships belonging them, whereof this was one; & succeded the Order of St Johns of Jerusalem who far exceeded them in their Endowments (which perhaps was a cause of their \ ruin & / overthrow.) {?}

[I.482]

Spittlehouse

{è Lib. voc. *Marmora Oxoniensia* Edit. Oxon 1676, p.26 & 27 per ex MS de Rebus at Hospitallarios Spectantibus. Xti1446.}[260]

The Templars formerly whilst they ~~stood~~ \ continued / and Hospitallers after them, did formerly enjoy in all their houses the extraordinary priviledge of an Asylum (which Houses were commonly called Spittel houses). And in the 4th year of Henry IV [1402-1403] in the moneth of July one John Gore was arraigned for felony before William Hankeford and William Shrene – Judges at Whinchester – who pleaded that the Court was ousted of jurisdiction in his Case – because haveing fled for the said felony to a priviledged place of the Prior and Brothers of the Hospital of St John of Jerusalem in England called Spittal House, in Burghton (quae quidem domus privilegiata existit sicut ceteræ domus ejusdem privilegiatæ existunt)[261] he \ was / fetched from thence by the Constable and others against his will. And William of Wakefield, Proctor of Hospitallers, alledged for them and on his behalf that the said house was formerly the Templars; And the Priviledge granted to them by Pope Inocent[262] & to the Hospitallers by Pope Urban II[263] doth absolutely forbid (under the penalty of an anathema not to be

[259] 4th has been written over 2nd or 3rd.
[260] 'On [various] matters but regarding the Hospitallers. A.D. 1446.' The book is by Humphrey Prideaux, entitled, *Marmora Oxoniensia ex Arundellianis, Seldenianis, aliisque conflata recensuit & perpetuo commentario explicavit* (Oxford, 1676). The Arundel Marbles are a collection of ancient Græco-Roman marble sculptures of subjects such as Cicero and Eros, housed in Oxford. Amassed in the early 17th century, they were displayed in Arundel House, where they inspired Humphrey Prideaux's book, which is a catalogue of this collection and others. Spittlehouse is indeed discussed on pages 26-27; Machell translated text from these pages to form his following paragraph.
[261] '…which is, indeed, a Privileged house, just as other houses of the same [order] are Privileged.'
[262] Both the Knights Templar and the Knights Hospitaller were military orders of great wealth and power, thus incurring the jealousy of rulers. The Knights Templar order was dissolved between 1307 and 1312. See Keith Bate, M. Barber and R. Horrox (eds), *The Templars. Selected sources translated and annotated* (Manchester, 2002), 59-65.
[263] The Knights Hospitaller movement began quietly in Jerusalem shortly after 1070, but grew quickly. In 1113 Pope Paschal II (1099-1118) awarded the order papal protection and privileges. After the Templars were

repeald) that any should lay violent hands upon such men as fled their for saifty or upon their goods within the precinct of their houses; & that the Templars, & ~~Hospitallers~~ after them the Hospitallers also, from the time of the first granting thereof till that time present, allwayes injoyd & used the same; that if any guilty of felony or any other crime whatsoever should fle unto any of their houses, they should \ there / obteine an inviolable peace as if they had fled to the Holy Church itself – which things being put upon the Inquest were found to be so. And by the advice of the Kings Judges of both Benches his Sergeants at Law & others of Kings skilful Counsel, it was adjuged that the Hospitallers ought to enjoy the said priviledge, & that Gore should be restored to the said place againe. & he is restored by the Sherif of the County. And such an one I take this Spittle House to have bin {tho I have no authority for it}

[I.483]

being so near unto Sowerby, which borrows part of its name from the Templars; and did all or most of it belong unto them. And after that Order was desolved, which was in [blank], and Hospitallers succeded them some few years after in their Lands and imunityes, I suppose this Spittle House has bin builded, tho it be in the Lordship of Kirkbythore & not in Sowerby. {This however is referrable to Temple Sowerby by good Authority.}

[I.484]

The Pows, Inges, are so called from Pow (an ancient word yet used in Lancashire) for a beck or rivilet \ whence our vulgar word poole / & Ing which signifyes a bottom-meadow. So that importes as much as – the meadows by the water sides. There is a Romane forte \ almost trenched about / on the E. end of Milburne Fell, which is called Green Castle from the verdure of it*, opposite to which on Knock Fell Eastwards is an Hurrock of stones called Watch Currock.

[Machell's Note: I.483]

*I would see it nearer than I have don.

[I.486]

ad general in Westmorland. Howgil Castle. Lancaster. Sandford
[Notes on Manors and Descents]

[I.484]

{Man. de Milnburne; Howgil Castle.}
The manner of Milneburne.
Finde Lancasters at Howgil Anno 1^0 Rich[ardus] 2. [1377-1378] (è cart apud Crackanthorp.)

Wharton of Kirkythore
Henricus de Querton test.[264] at an evidence of Sir Thomas) 17. Edward 3. [1333-1334].
Barwise. 17. Edward 3. But after which of the family I know not.
Thomas Wharton Esq. test. 34. Henry 6. (but whether of this?) 34. Henry 6. [1455-1456].
Gilbert Wharton of Kirkbythore; Collector (with others) Henry 7. of the subsidie for King Henry the 6. or the 7. See more at Wharton in Kirkby Stephen Parish.

{Lancaster of Howgil}
Miscellanea lib.10. p.78, penes Mr Sheldon:

Robert Crackenthorpe
= Elizabeth \ 2^{nd} / d. & coheires

dissolved, their assets were awarded to the Hospitallers, though it is unclear whether the Templars' fortune ever reached them: see Helen Nicholson, *The Knights Hospitaller* (Woodbridge, 2001), 1-16, 48.
[264] 'Witness'.

D[omin]i Johannis Lancaster de Rydall militis et habuit in partem suam maneriu[m] de Mylneburne[265]	{Mylburn}
Johannes Crackanthorpe de Helgill in Com west. Edward 4. = filia	
Ambrose Crackanthorp de Helgill obijt s.p.	Anthonius Crackanthorpe obijt 11. Henry 8. [1519-1520]

Willielmus de Corbrig parsona ecclesiæ de Kirkbythore anno 48. Edward: è Carta Apud Skipton This must be Edward 3. for no other Edward reigned so long.[266]

[I.488]

{Proofes}

[Sandford]
Sir Walter de Sandford of [Blank] in Westmerland Knight anno 15. Edward 2. [1321-1322] served that year in Parliament for the County of W. {Extract[um] e MS nominum diversorum Militum et Baronettorum;[267] ad Lit. S. {Pg. 94.}
Sir Robert de Sandford of [blank] in W., Knight anno 16. Edward II [1622-1623], was likewaise Parliament man for that County.

{Isue}
The 16. [1322-23] & 19. [1325-1326] of Edward 2. & son I presume of the said Walter.
Sir William Sandford of Askham in Westmorland Knight (son of Edmund who was younger brother of William who purchased Askham & left it to his said brother Edmund, whose Isue male have ever since injoyd it) was probably related to the said Sir Robert and Sir Walter; & had Isue Robert, who had Isue:

MS. A.41		Thomas = who maryed Hutton of Hutton John in Cumberland, who had Isue
	3. Richard 2 [1379-80]	1. Thomas = who had Isue John = And he Thomas = father of the now William Sandford of Askham Esq.
2. Sir Richard Sandford of Hougil ut infra	1.Sir Thomas Sandford of Howgil Castle in West. Knight, anno [blank]. He was son & heire of Richard, who was 3 brother of Thomas S. of Askham, who maryed Hutton, & he dyed without Isue[268]	
MS. A.4. et MS. E.30.	Sir Richard Sandford of Howgil Castle Knight, anno 21. of King James the First [1623-1624], was younger brother of Sir Thomas aforesaid & High Sheriff of Cumberland in the said year = who had Isue	
MS. A.41.	Sir Thomas Sandford of Howgil, Baronet August 12 XVII (Car.1.[1641-1642] = no.346) who had Isue	

[265] 'Robert Crakenthorpe = Elizabeth 2nd daughter and coheiress of Lord John Lancaster of Rydall, Knight, and he/she? had for his/her? part the manor of Mylneburne.' [It is unclear who the subject of 'habuit' is. Is it Robert, or is it Elizabeth, and was Mylnburn her inheritance, or her dowry?]
[266] 48th year of Edward III: 1374-75.
[267] 'Taken from a manuscript of the names of various Knights and Baronets.'
[268] Here Machell placed a sketch of a skull.

MS. A.41.	Sir Richard Sandford of Howgil Baronet &
MS. A.41.	who had Isue Sir Richard now a minor, anno [blank]

[I.489]

[de Lancaster]
{MS. N.47; MS. A.368, 412, 418} Sir John de Lancaster Knight, anno 10. Henry 4! [1408-1409] was son and heire of John, who was eldest son of Sir William.
{MS. A.57, 58, 124, 140; DB.421; MS. p.36, 74} Sir William de Lancaster, Knight, anno Henry I. who probably (by [becoming] Governer of Lancaster Castle) did first assume by the Kings Licence the sirname of Lancaster & was also stiled Baron of Kendal in Westm'land: was before that called de Tailbois; being the son & heire of Gilbert, who was eldest son of Ketel (The Curwens) of Workington (being descended as som thinke from the second son) who was son & heire of Elthred, who was eldest son of John Tailbois.
{MS. A.142} Sir William Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Henry 3.[269] stiled William de Lancaster the 3[d] & Baron of Kendal, was son & heire of William above. {N.B.} Sir William de Lancaster Knight anno Henry 3. stiled William 3 and Baron of Kendal, was son & heire of Helewise, daughter & heire of Sir William next aforsaid.
{MS. H.58, 365, 401, 418} Sir Roger de Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Henry 3. was brother to Sir William next abovsaid by the halfe blood; & he had granted to him & his heires the Manner & Forrest of Rydel in Westm'land (which he held in Capite), the Manners of Barton Paterdale &c. in the same County, and the Manner of Ulverston &c. in Lancashire where he was High Sherif anno 49. of Henry 3. [1264-1265].
{MS. A.58 365 366. Db 423 – MS. E.34, MS p.77} Sir Jo[hn] de Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Edward I. He was son & heire of Sir Roger aforesaid, & Lord of Rydel &c. which were granted to his father. Summond as a Peere to Parliament from the 25. Edward I. until the 3. of Edward 2. inclusive [1296-1310], he dyed without Isue male Anno 8. Edward 3. [1314-1315], leaveing the Manner & Forrest of Rud[270] unto Anora his wife for her life; the remainder to John de Lancaster of Howgil Castle in Westm'land & his heires – the next heire male of this family.
{MS. A.58. 365 367 MS D. 79} Sir Jo[hn] de Lancaster Knight, 4. Edward 3. [1330-1331], son & heire of William who was younger brother of Sir John abovesaid, was Lord of Rydell Howgil &c.
Sir William de Lancaster Knight anno [blank] Edward 3. son & heire of Sir [blank]

[I.490]

To sift out the truth of this following relation & separate what is authentic in it from what is doubtfull or false, see Lancaster & Sandford m[anuscripts] in Kirkbythore; Sandford in Ascam. {ex informatione Johis Stabley Sept. 18. 1691.}

{Howgill} {Crakenthorp}
Anthony Crakenthorp next akin to A[m]brose Crakenthorp de Howgil had only 3 daughters: Ann, Mary & Cicily.
1. Ann had Howgil for her part and maryed = Mr Thomas Sandford (whom he sayes he knew & that he wore a bib in his old age) and had Isue Richard, after made Baronet = widow \ of [Blank] / Pen[ington] he thinks, whose daughter Pudsey maryed {It must be Richard for Thomas Sandford of Howgil to whom Richard succeed was his elder brother & both sons of Richard; & they could not have it by succession; but of the inheritance a patre vel a matre.}[271]
2. Mary had (sed queris) Newbiging for her propart;[272] and maryed an Crackanthorp. Hee sayes that Banke-Hall also belongd to them, being at that time 5 free tenements of the Manner of Skirwith & that

[269] Henry III reigned from 1216 to 1272.
[270] Rydal.
[271] Father or mother.
[272] 'Pro partibus Liberandis' is an ancient writ for the partition of lands between co-heirs, Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (London, 5th edn, 1744), PR.

the 3 sisters set at stoolle ball on Kirkland green[273] & being won by Mary, so it came to the Crakenthorpes of Newbiging.
3. Cicily had Skirwa\i/th Lown –? I thinke, & Parson-Close for her propart:
{It came to the Fleminges by purchase – being bought of Hut[ton] of Hutton hall by the \ great / grandmother of The Sir Daniel = & Monkhall in Cumberland, whose father was

William F. = Alice Kirkland.
|
Daniel Fleming = Isabel Brathwait.
|
Sir Daniel = Fletcher.}

[4.] And Mary = \ Mr / Thomas Midleton of Barnard Castle \ Midleton Hall opposite to Brig Streat. / St Nicholas Apleby Bolton & Skirwith Tithes. Meale Arkes at Carlile.[274] Mr Tholded[275] \ of Stanford / married his daughter; \ he had 500li per Annum in Westm'land & Cumberland. /

{Stavley of Rippon-Parke}
Hee had 4 or 5 sons & 2 or 3 daughters, Sc. one married to = Bellingham of Levins; another, Henry Staveley of Grange = 1. John of Grange. Ann daughter of Thomas.
{Query of Mr Carlton[276] for Lord Stavely of Denton Castle in Yorkshire.}

{Skirwith}
John at Skirwith {unde forsan these Staveley.}

[I.492]

{Hutton in the Forrest}
Purchased by Sir Richard Fletcher, grandfather to this Sir George, 1611.[277]

{Carleton}
{Ashby Parish, Bellingham, Gathorne}

[I.494]

{ad Lancaster: MS. F. 92; A. 145, 367} Sir William Knight 5^0 Richard 2. [1381-1382] was son & heire Sir William next aforesaid.
{MS. N.17; MS. A.168 412 418} Sir John de Lancaster Knight anno 10. Henry 4. [1408-1409] son & heire of John, who was eldest son of Sir William next abovesaid. He dyed before the 21. of Henry 6. [1442-1443], for then his Estate was divided amongst his 4 daughters & coheires.
Sir Thomas le Fleming of Cunningston Hall in Com. Lanc. Knight, haveing maryed Isabel, 1^t of the [blank], the Manner & Forrests of Rydal fel to him, where he & his heires males ever lived except sometimes at Cunningston Hall the more ancient seat of that family.

[I.528]

[Bounders]

[Bounder One]
Noe-thus, he sayes:
This Parish lyeth on the East side of the Great River Eden, which divides all along on the West from ~~som part of~~ \ a place calld Winderwarth[278] in / the Parish of Cliburn \ ~~& from~~ from / the forrest of Whinfel & \ from / Bolton Field in the Parish of Morland; beginning at the foote of Blenkarne-Beck below Eden Bridge, & thence ascending to Old-Troutbeck Foote (near Machells Well) where it hath

[273] A ball-game similar to cricket, in which the batsman stands in front of a stool which the bowler tries to hit. A popular game in the north of England, in the past it was often played by girls. See Joseph Strutt, *The Sports and Pastimes of the People of England* (London, 1876), 165-66.
[274] A meal ark is a large wooden bin or hutch for storing meal. *OED*.
[275] The transcription of this name is insecure.
[276] Carleton: steward to Lord Thanet, see below, V.449.
[277] 'This Sir George', was Sir George Fletcher (1633-1700) of Hutton-in-the-Forest, MP for Cumberland from 1661 to 1700; Sheriff of Cumberland in 1657/8 and 1679/80: see https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/fletcher-sir-george-1633-1700.
[278] Winderwath.

formerly run into Eden. Thence on the S. \ it is bounded / with the Lordship of Crakanthorp in the Parish of St Michaels Apelby (commonly called Bongate Parish) \ and divided from it / by stones pitched up in the old beck steed till you com at Troutbeck, & so by that river up to[279]

[I.529]

{Kirkbythore bridge, where the Romane Way ~~striketh~~ \ intersecteth / ~~thorow~~ the river, near the fountain Hypocreen \ & / where the Three Lordships of Kirkbythore, ~~Bongate~~ \ Crakanthorp / & Brampton meet.[280] Hence again on the S. SE. & East it is environed with Long Marton Parish & divided from it by the said River Troutbeck, ascending Eastward betwixt the Low Burwens (or skirts of Whelp Castle & Machells Ing) to Howgil Sike Foote \ where the Lordships of Kirkbythore Brampton & Marton meet all together. / Thence by Howgil Sike ascending N. to Annet Well Head where it first springs*. Thence by a Bow-line towards the N. to Nichorson †, takeing in the Hill where it hath stoode.

Thence by certaine & well known boundaryes divideing it from the Lordships of Merton & som part of Knock till you com at a place called Swinside-Head. Thence by Grange Beck to Nuckerdale Head near a place called Green Castle, otherwise called Burney-beck, ascending N.E. where it \ first / takes its rise. Thence by a Settle (or Hollow \ place /) which takes in High Dun-Fell to Dale-Sike-Head ~~which is~~ (called by som, Fell Troutbeck Head) \ which is / not distant above \ the space of an / 100 yards from Burney Beck Head. Thence by this Fell Troutbeck (so called for distinctions sake from the other Troutbeck which wee spoke of before),[281] descend N.E. to Moss-burne Foote \ a little Rill which comes ~~there~~ into Trout[beck] / where the Lordships of Milburn, Knock & Dufton meet alltogether. & ~~Hence thus far~~ \ all this while / it is compassed with \ Long / Marton Parish. Thence it is bounded on the E. \ side thereof / with the Great Lordship & Parish of Dufton, ~~&~~ \ being / divided from it by \ the foresaid / Fell Troutbeck ~~aforesaid~~ till it runns into Teas. Thence agane on the East & N.E. with a place called Tinehead som of which (if I be not mistaken) lyes in Northumberland & som in Cumberland & in the Parish of Alston: being divided from \ them / by the River Teas ascending &c. to a place calld Fal-Cragg – where the Parish of Kirkby Stephan & Kirkland meet \ all / together; & hence it is bounded on the north side thereof with the Parish of Kirkland {in the County of Cumberland?} & divided from it by Teas aforesaid,[282] ascending W. to Crossfell Nooke where ~~this great river~~ \ it first / springs ~~which carryes ships at Newcastle & Tinmouth but here maybe stopd with an Hat Crown~~. Thence by a settle called Blenkarn Dale twixt the Lower Dunfell & the High mountain Crossfel (~~commonly called Blenkarne Dale because it is the Bound of that Lordship~~) to the spring head of ~~Dunbeck~~ ~~commonly called~~ \ Dunbeck on / Blenkarne Beck. Thence by the said Beck \ descending Westward as it runns / all along by the coastes of Cumberland) till it ~~runns into~~ \ enters / Eden \ near to the Bridge / where wee first began.

[Machell's Notes: I.529]

*Quaere: of Stanke Head, if not the same.

[I.531]

[Bounder Two]

This Parish lieth on the East side of the great River Eden which divides it all along on the West from a place called Winderwarth in the Parish of Cliburn, from the forest of Whinfell & from Bolton Field in the Parish of Morland; beginning at the foote of Blenkarne Beck below Eden-bridge & thence ascending to Old Troutbeck Foot (near Machells Well) where it hath formerly run into Eden. Thence (on the South) it is bounded with the Lordship of Crakanthorp in the Parish of St Michaels Appleby commonly called Bongate Parish, & divided from it by stones* pitched up in the old Beckstead, till

[279] The rest of MS.I.528 contains two scored-through drafts (not transcribed) relating to the bounder; these are presented as a 'fair copy' on I.529.

[280] MS: '& Brampton meet ~~in Kirkbythore, Bongate & Longmarton Parishes, with the last of which It is Invironed on the S. & south-east~~.'

[281] MS: '(~~which is~~ so called ~~for distinction that it may be~~ for distinctions sake ~~ed~~ from the other \ Troutbeck / which wee spoke of before).'

[282] MS: '& hence ~~in the 2 parish~~ ~~Lordship~~ {it is bounded} on the north ~~It is bounded by~~ \ side thereof / with the Parish of Kirkland {in the County of Cumberland?} & divided from it by ~~The~~ Teas aforesaid,'

you come at Troutbeck; & soe by that river up to Kirkbythore Bridge where the Roman Way in\ter/secteth the river near the fountaine Hypocreen, & where the three Lordships of Kirkbythore, Crakanthorp & Brampton meet. Thence again ~~by~~ \ on / the South, South-east, & East it is environd with Longmarton Parish & divided from it by the fair river Troutbeck ascending eastwards (betwixt the Low Burwens – or skirts of Whelp Castle – & Machells Ing) to Howgill Sike foot where the Lordships of Kirkbythore, Brampton & Longmarton meet alltogether. Thence by Howgill Sike, ascending \ north / to Annetwell Head where it first springs; thence by a Bowline towards the North to Nichorson Cross, takeing in the hill where it hath stood; thence by certain & well known boundaryes which

[Machell's Notes: I.531]

*But note here: that there is a place beyond the said Boundare which payeth Tythe to Kirkbythore by ancient prescription time out of minde.

[I.532]

divides it from the Lordship[s] of Marton & Knock till you come att a place called Swinside-Head. Thence by Grange Beck – otherwise called Burney Beck – ascending North-east to Nuckerdale Head, neare a place called Green Castle where it first takes its rise. Thence by a settle (or hollow place) which takes in High Dun-fell to Dalesike Head (called by some Fell Troutbeck Head) which is not distant above the space of 100 yards from Burney Beck Head. Thence by this Fell Troutbeck (soe called for distinctions sake from the other Troutbeck which we spoke of before) descending North-east to Mossburne Foote (a little Rill which comes into Troutbeck) where the Lordships of Milburne, Knock & Dufton meet altogether; all this while it is encompass'd with Longmarton Parish. Thence it is bounded on the East side thereof with the great Lordship & Parish of Dufton, being divided from it by the foresaid Felltroutbeck till it runs into Teas. Thence again on the East & North-east with a place called Tine-Head, some \ part / of which* lies in Northumberland & some in Cumberland in the Parish of Alstan, being divided from them by the river Teas; ascending North to a place called Fall-Cragg where the Parishes of Kirkbythore, Alstan, & Kirkland meet altogether. \ & / hence it is bounded on the North side thereof with the Parish of Kirkland in the County of Cumberland & divided from it by Teas aforesaid, ascending West to Crossefell Nooke where it first springs. Thence by a settle called Blenkarn Dale twixt the Lower Dunfell & the high mountain Crossefell to the spring head of ~~Dun Beck~~ Blenkarne Beck. Thence by the said Beck (descending westwards as it runs all along by the coasts of Cumberland) till it enters Eden neare to the Bridge ~~where we first began~~; where I take in (designedly) the Parish of Newbiggin; being of old (as I am informed) a Canton of this, & passed of[f] for a certain Quit Rent of ten groats per annum with Altar Service 2 dayes in the yeare att Kirkbythore Church. But on the other hand, the Rectors of Newbiggin claimed as theire due (when they came to assist at the altar there) to have a dinner for themselves & their doggs! A tradition of such undoubted credit that Mr Barrow late incumbent of Newbiggin, sent word to the Rector of Kirkbythore that now is,[283] upon his first entrance; that he ought[284] him that Homage,[285] & would come & pay it; but death prevented him while the other was absent in his yeare of Grace att Queens College in Oxford.[286]

And here I thinke fit to enter this Caution, that the Parish of Newbiging by its ancient bounds cannot extend soe fare on the Moore ~~of Kirkbythore~~ as the Right & Priveledges of that Lordship now doth; because they gained a considerable accession from off Kirkbythore Moore by grant from the Cliffords after that Lordship became a distinct & absolute Rectory; soe that its limits upon the said Moore are or should be according to the ancient bounds of that Lordship.

[Machell's Notes: I.532]

*(if I be not mistaken) {Quaere of this?}

---

[283] The first mention of a church at Newbiggin appears in a charter of Hugh de Temple Sowerby (1258-59) witnessed by Walter, rector of Newbiggin: Curwen, *Later Records*, 183-85; see also I.553, above.

[284] Owed.

[285] MS: 'that he ought him that ~~he ought him that~~ Homage.'

[286] The text here refers to Thomas Machell. A simpler version of this narrative appears on MS.I.505. See also I.553, above.

[Highways and Bridges]

[I.548]

{Generall Highways}
Michael Scot is said with the help of the Divel to have pavd twixt Lond[on] & Carlile, but a fiction.}

[I.464]

{Kirkbythore Bridge}
There was anciently a bridge at Kirkythore built of wood, pons public,[287] continued (as Sir Francis Drakes ship did, with many reparations) since the Romaines were here;[288] for it is the passage of the Roman Way. In 1676 this bridge wall [was] built with freestone very fair & handsom. But fell in winter 1677 by violence of the water. I had an account concerneing its fall February 7th 1677/8.[289] Shortly after, it was rebuilded as it now standeth.

[I.474]

The building of Sowerby Bridge 1575.[290]

[I.471-473]

{Westm'land} Elizabeth regni, 1575.[291]
The fre grante and benevolence granted towards the buyldyng of Temple Sowrebye brege, by the gentilmen and freeholders whos names here after particularlye ensuyth.

{Easte Warde}	{Mydell Warde}	{Weste Warde}	{Lonisdayll Warde}	{Kendayll Warde}
Syr Symonde Musgrave knyghte	Rychard Lowther Ar. xl. s[292]	Syr Henry Curwen Knight	John Meddelton Ar.	Thomas Bonytyn Ar
Thomas Warcope Ar[miger]	Lancelot Pyckryng Ar.	George Salkeld Ar.	Rychard Myddelton gen.	[?]m Bellyngham Ar
Henry Crakanthorpe Ar[miger] xl. s	Rycharde Cleburne Ar.	Edward Lanchester Ar.	Thomas Warde gen.	James Layburn, Ar
Humfray Musgrave, Ar.[293] xl. s	Thomas Fallafeld Ar.	Rycharde Dudlay Ar. xxvi. s viij d[294]	George Mansare gen.	Rychard Duckat Ar
John Wharton, Ar.	Thomas Wybare Ar.	Maystras Sandfurthe	Wyllm [Blank]	Wylliam Gylpynge gen. for his house at Sokbrege

[287] A public bridge.
[288] MS: '~~which I believe to have~~ continued (as \ Sir Francis / Drakes ship ~~did~~ with many repa reparations) since the Romaines were \ here /.' The sea-captain and destroyer of the Spanish Armada, Sir Francis Drake, was involved in many raids and voyages of exploration. He circumnavigated the world between 1577 and 1580, and went on expeditions, for example to the West Indies between 1585 and 1586. This activity led to ship repair and even scuttling amid heavy fighting. Mary Frear Keeler, *Sir Francis Drake's West-Indian Voyage 1585-86* (Farnham, 1981), 31, 36, 38, 62, 72, 105, 160, 283-85.
[289] This would have occurred soon after Machell had become Rector of Kirkby Thore.
[290] The following subscription list for the building of Temple Sowerby Bridge is not in Machell's hand.
[291] 1575 = the 18th year of Queen Elizabeth's reign. Much of this title has perished. The whole document (now paginated I.471-I.473) has been greatly repaired; some words and figures are missing.
[292] 's' throughout this table = shillings.
[293] Hidden by repair to the volume; the amounts (if any) given beside the next six names are unclear.
[294] 26s 8d.

Richard Sandferth, gen.	Thomas Byrkebecke, g.	George Hudson, gen.	Xtofer Mayr g.	James Harryngton gen.
[Ed]munde Dudlay, gen.	[Edmu]nd Slyngesbre, gent.	Maystras Th[?]	Edwarde Baynbrege, gent	Roberte Bendlayte Ar
Hughe Machell, gen.	[Nichol]as Brovann[295]	Wylliam Hutton of [B]oullay, gent.		Rowland Philepson gen.
John Southait, gen.	Thomas Byllynghame gen.			Wyllm Philepson gen.
Cuthberte Barton gen.	Ambros Lanchester gen.			Walter Chamber gen.
Androo Helton gen. x. s	Anthoni Warton gen.			Rychard Bryskell gen.
Thomas Helton, gent. vi. s viij d[296]	Fra[n]ce[s] Warcope g.			Randall Wasshyngton, ge.
Lancelote Boste, g.	John Crakanthorpe gen.	.		Rychard Tunstall gen.
Mylys Skayf, gen. vi. s viij d	John Rygge gen.			Wyllm Bayteman gen.
Anthoni Knype, gen.	Henry Backhouse gen. Iiij. s			Lancelot Dockray gen.
Edwarde Warcope, gen iij d[297]	George Backhouse gen.			[Jo]hn Collyngson gen.
James Warcope, g.	Thomas Birde yoman			Thomas Sleddell gen.
Hugh Warcope, gent.	Rychard Nevyson yoman			James Strykland gen.
Bartholymew Helton, g.	John Blamyer yo			Gylbert Wylson gen.
Barnabe Machell, g. 1d	Wylliam Robyson yo			Steven Feld, gent.
Edwarde Boste, g. iv. s	Alexander Gowlyng, yoman			Steven Bamonteson, ~~gen~~ \ yom. /
John Hartlay, g.	Henry Lowys			Wyll Foxe yoman
Mylis Baynbrege g.				Cristofor Haskregge yo.

[295] Brougham.
[296] 6s 8d.
[297] The amount of shillings is obscured by a piece of paper pasted to the page.

John Baynbrege, senior, g.	v. s	Oswalde Bethom yoman
John Baynbreg Junior, g	v. s	
Ranalde Hartlay g.		
Robert Skafe, yoman	v. s	
John Smyth		
Henry Shawe yoman		
Jenken Bell yoman		
Wylliam Halle yoman		
John Dobson yo	Iij. s iiij d	

[III.261]

The Roman Way from Kirkbythore Bridge to Brough Town End

It goeth from Kirkbythore bridge in a streight line S.E.

	Miles & ½	Quarters & ½
1. To a Dikestead in Machels Banke, where the Roman urnes & ashes were found	0	1 q.
To the know or pitch of the hill	0	1 q.
To Maiden Hold, which stands directly like Appelby Tower E. W. N. & S.		
To the Roman camp which flankes the way at about 20 yards distant from it: the fower corner if I may so call them (being rebated), standing directly East, W. N. & S. And opposite to the West corner of it stands Boldton Chapel at ½ a mile distance; & Marton church som what more from the East corner. Near this place I measur'd the way to be 7 yards broad.	0	1 q.
The camp is about 11 score in length.	0	½ q.
Thence to the riseing of Owsley .	0	½ q.
Thence up the hill to over against Beacon on Owsley where you have a fair view of Crakenthorp Hall to the front; and at a distance if you looke about you may see Buly Castle, Howgil Castle & many other places.	0	½ q.
Thence to Annest Johny Close Neuke	0	½ q.
Thence down the hill to the turnpike	0	1 q.
Thence to the top of the Banke End (which is over against Crakenthorp Hall at ½ a mile distance) (Opposite to which on the other hand is the West end of Brampton, above ½ a mile distant.)	0	1 q.
Thence to White Burwens, an irregular fort on the North E. side of the way about 20 yards distant from it, where ye see Appelby, Buly, Hougil Castles, Crakenthorp Hall & many other places, being a stately prospect.	0	1 q.

[III.259]

Thence to the gallows.	½	0

Thence down to Annetwell St (Philip Machell)		
in Battleburgh Head at a ¼ distance.	0	½ q.
Thence down to the way which leads to Slape Stones.	0	½ q.
Thence to the way which leads down to Bongate		
& Howgate Foote.	0	½ q.
Thence to the yeat of Bong[ate] moore (opposite to which is		
Appelby Castle at ½ a mile.	0	½ q.
Thence to the Tarne Head hill, where there are 3 little		
hillocks, 2 on the N. East side, and 1 on the S.W.		
like burying places.	0	1 q.
Opposite to these on the N.E. side is Marton		
about 2 miles distance, which you hardly can see;		
and Langton in the same condition, ½ a mile of.		
Hence to Couplan Beck bridge	½	0
where Aske com from the East into it. But \ C B /[298]		
it com there from the North. Beyond the said beck		
& sike, 40 yards from the high way has \ bin / a round tower.		
Thence up to Sandford Thorne where you see on the S. West side,	0	1 q.
Ormside church and Little Orme som what South from there		
at a mile distance. And on the other side 2 miles distant under the fell		
stands the town of Hilton.		
Thence \ down /to the broken caseway over against	0	1 q.
New Hall (at a quarter distance)		
Thence to the ring of stones 20 yards on the N.E. side	½	~~0~~
of this Roman Way, opposite to which on the same side		
\ but invisible / is Overton, 1 mile ½, and Sandford		
on the other side: mile ½.		
Thence in score yards off, is a burg of earth, & 2 more 40		
yards beyond that		

[III.260]

where \ 2 of / adjoyne the way on N.W. side.		
{?}& so down to Sandy Sike	0	1
{1} Thence up the next hill till you com at the descent there of [blank]	0	1 q.
{?} Thence down to the little sik[e] where the way seemeth to have runn	0	½
streight along through the meadow, where it is lost till you come upon		
Warcop Moore & follow the road which turns out a little through a lane		
{over against Wharton Hall: qts[299] 1.q.} on the N.E. side till you come		
at Milbeck. .	0	1
Thence the way incline a little till you com at a sike.[300]	0	1
Thence up to the yeat;	0	½
Here you may see the towne & tower.		
Thence to the next yeat	0	1 q.
but it goes through the dike 20 yards on the N. East side.		
Thence to the next yeat, another	0	1 q.
but it runs through the pasture neates[301] 49 yards N.E. from the yeat.	0	1
Thence to the water which crosses the way, opposite to which lyes	0	1 q.
Flitholm on the S.W. (at ½ mile distance). And		
Thence to Bulleston Sike (opposite to which stands Helbeck Hall	0	½ q.
at 1 mile \ or / ½ N. East from here.		

[298] Coupland Beck.
[299] A shortened form of 'quarters'.
[300] MS: 'Thence, ~~a little incline~~ \ the way incline a little / till you comat ~~the pasture yeat~~ a sike.' For 'sike' see the English Glossary.
[301] Cattle pasture. *OED*.

From Bulleston Sike to the Castle-way about 6 score yards, & thence to to the N. of Market Brough. In all: 0 1
N. the way turns a little S. from Warcop Milbeck to the pasture yeat. Thence agane S.E. till you come at Helbeck Water where it makes an obtuse angle, turning more southerly than before.
[…][302] is about 1 q. long. II 11½

[I.464]

[**Antiquities**]

Kirkbythore 1686. December 16 about 40 years since, an \ earthen / potfull of Romane Coines found behinde Micell Bensons house (& several behinde Howsons & Blecket Burwen); in the Gards – walls & flags; behinde Thomas Soulbyes – flags got in the midle of his croft stones in the Loning on the left hand by Stanebrig;[303] stones in the midle of Jacksons Croft & Loaneing. It had gon along the midle the Croft by the Square of Burwens.[304]

{Reformatio errorum laudabilis}[305]
Præsertim cum talis exemptio potius fuerit velamen malitiae quam libertas, & audaciam frequentius præstitet delinque[n]di. Exordium post salutationem sic incipit. Sicut ea quae rationabiliter provisa fuerint & statuta Robur obtinere debent perpetuæ firmitatis, sic si q[uae] sint contra rationis tramitem attemptata, digna correctione conve[n]iu[n]t emendari.[306]

[I.485]

[Spittlemore]
There is a so[r]t of a Round Intrenchment upon the moore called Spittlemore; somewhat inclind to a Triangle Curvilinear, & much of the Forme with that which is ~~upon~~ betwixt Brampton & Crakanthorp; but that it has not a [blank]. It is about 86 yards in Diameter and hath been enterance in at the East point & another at the West, with flankes (ergo out works) \ one / to the S. round to W. extending thro North, which branch to the N.E. \ which points to the rise. / The figure is thus:

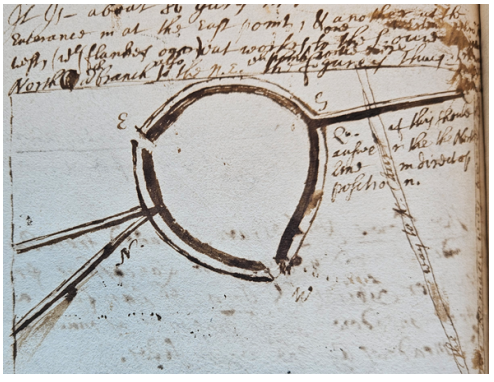


Figure 1.14.8. 'Earthworks; The road to K. church; The Romane Way towards Apleby'. I.485.

[302] An abbreviated word here appears to be 'Pno'.
[303] Loning/lonning: a lane. William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997).
[304] A margin comment here offers, '{Tr. a row of shops twix Stanebrigs & the water – from father to son.}'
[305] 'The amendment of errors is praiseworthy.'
[306] 'Especially when such exemption has been more of a pretext for bad character than a freedom, and too often has lent boldness to wrongdoing. Thus, after the greeting, does the preface begin. Just as those things which have been reasonably foreseen & ought, being established, to possess the strength of enduring stability, so if any have been attempted contrary to the path of reason, they are fit to be set right by well deserved correction.'

[Machell's Note: I.485]
*Query if this should answer the north line in direct opposition.

[I.509]

[High Burwens Roman Fort]
{§1.} The like of which is not to be met with in the county of Westm'land: & has bin rendered yet more delightfull by the 2 famouse Forests of Whinfell & Milburne. This on the \ N. / East and just at hand; that on the West at about a mile distance: both stored with wood & well replenished with reade \ dere / fallow-~~deere~~, as the former continues to be at this day. The square calld High Burwens whose 4 angles point directly E. W. N. and South,[307] as I have observed other Roman fortifications to have don, seemes to have bin the area of it, conteineing 8 score yardes in diameter now plowd & cultivated; & the outer buildings to have run down by the river at the least as far as the bridge & fulling mill by Troutbeck, thence to the Roman Way so call'd The Street bout 8 score yards[308] – & so up agane in a streight line to the square of the area: {See §6.}[309]

{§3.} For in all these places the vestigia of it have bin discovered by walls & pavements & coines; a vault with altars, brick, urnes & other fictilia.[310] The 4 angles of this High Burwens do point exactly (as I have observ'd in other Romane fortifications) to the 4 cardinal points of Heaven \ Sc. E. W. N. & S. & the 2 doers have bin as I take – exactly opposite one to another. / And at the East angle was lately found the figure of woman, downe to the ~~paps~~ \ waist / more Romane, carved in stone; and likewise an Altar about 30 yards from it \ in the Low Burwens / but both defaced; the ruines whereof are preserved & kept at Crakanthorp Hall.[311]
{At the South Angle (where Coppin Hill & Burwen Street) was lately discovered a vault with stairs into – & a doer at each end, having &c. \ a shelfe or seates on either [side] beset all with urnes. / At the West were beside several floores – flags – there was a pot full of Roman Coynes found [see] § 5.}[312]

\ §4. /And here both brick & stone. The brick ones they say (which is no vulgar observation) being a yard thick & so solderd with lime that it is impossible to ~~get them out whole~~ \ to sever them from it / without breaking in pieces: And the stones (of which the other are made) so prodigiously great & som of them huen with such monstrouse stroakes that it gives us occasion to admire \ their strength / rather than imitate their \ manner of / building. I have seen som taken out of a sinke \ ~~or channel for water~~ / which have served in length for the jawms of a dooer, & som of about a foote in thickness which seemed struck thorow with an hueing ax at one single blow. Tho in others it looks more like ~~continued~~ excavation about 40 yeares since &c. See §5.[313]

---

[307] MS: 'High Burwens, \ whose 4 angles ~~doe point direct whereof~~ / to point directly E. W. N. and South.'
[308] MS: '& the outer buildings to \ have gon / ran down \ ~~along~~ by the river at the least as far as the bridge & fulling mill / by Troutbeck ~~as far as the Romane Way,~~ \ thence to the Roman Way ~~towards Carelile~~ is so call'd The Street ~~up which Street is gon~~{!!!} about 8 score yards.'
[309] In the MS., the whole of §1. is underlined.
[310] MS: 'the figure of a woman coines \ a vault with / ~~bricks, urnes~~ \ & / altars, brick, urnes & other fictilia \ * / the figure of a woman * / \ ~~If they have not bin rather streets leading to~~'. Most of the next sentence is obscured by the binding but refers to 'lime' set 'almost as hard as a qu[ern] stone.'
[311] Similar text has been added to the margin of I.498. MS: 'Down to the paps ~~from the pe~~ more Roman lately found, the figure of a woman. ~~Hic steterit Catuli~~ All which do loudly proclame it Romane. ~~Hic steterit Catuli regia celsa senis~~. And The 2 Roman wayes which meet ~~here~~ \ at this J[unction] / ~~together~~, the one calld the Street which I have travelled the other calld […] Carlile Way, the latter of which terminateing ending [… The later called […] by them. The Maiden way calld Gallani & \ […] / do seem to confirme it & bespeak it a place in the Time of Rom[ans] of more than ordinary estimacon & traffique – as Camden affirmes it to have bin; the chefe \ or principle / towne of Brigantes before [several words struck through] the Invasion. These things considered it is not improbable.'
[312] Here, two sets of margin notes are written too close to the binding to be fully legible.
[313] An identical passage to §5 (MS I.537B.) has been deleted from this edition. Similar information is given at the foot of MS I.506 (placed here in this footnote for comparison): 'So prodigiously great, & som of them huen with such monstrouse strokes (as may be seen by the parts of their \ by the pointes & striation / that it gives us occasion \ at once / both to admire both their strength & art, their strength of nature. \ to admire their quality

[I.499]

& the repeated stroakes are designd for ornament representing ~~waves~~ rock worke, or rather waves, which I shall leave to the judgment of others.{!!!}They are to be seen in the Church, Hall & P[arish], which almost make in every house of the towne the\r/ coynes & jawms[314] out of W[help] Castle; being for the most common of them being generally builded of them,[315] since they have taken the method of building with \ coble / stone insteed of forest worke – which was the common way of olde, such as yet to be seen at Wharton Hall; and a piece of it is yet to be seen at in K[irkby Thore] Hall.[316]

{§5.} A potfull of Romane coyns were found here about 40 years since; which they foolishly gave their children to play with \ and so were all lost. / And since that, a vault was discovered in Burwen Street at Coppin Hill just afore the place where I suppose they entered the Castle \ in figure above[317] / which had water in it; a stare down into it, with a doer at each end, an a shelfe or seat on either side made of huen stone on which were placed two rows of urnes.

{§6} For in all these places the vestigia of it have bin discover'd
– by vaults under ground, both of brick and stone {see §4.} & so semented with lime being a yard thick (which is no vulgare Remarque).
– by conduits for water.
– tiles of slate which had bin fastend with Iron nails in them.
– fair pavements of floores.
– by a vault with a dooer in either end & stairs down into it; having \ a / shelfe \ or / an bench \ of stone on \ each / side sett about with urnes.
– and the vaults & altars – with Roman coynes, bricks \ which here have bin found dyged up. /

{§7.} Innumerable fragments of bricks & urnes & other fictilia, now dispersed about, which the plow casteth up every year – still to be seen – which almost cover the face of the Earth, do loudly proclame it a Romane building.[318]

[I.527B][319]

As also, by \ Coynes* / Altars & Urnes, with other fictilia daly found here aboutes (many whereof are preservd by the Rector) & in particular a silver one of Julia \ Ingenius / ~~Augusta~~ \ Augustus his daughter, / who lived before the Birth of Our Saviour.) All which do loudly ~~proclame~~ proclame it Romane ~~and bespeak this Towne~~ and the 2 Romane Wayes doe confirme the same; & bespeak this Town to have bin a place of more than ordinary esteem & traffique in the times of the Romanes, as Camden affirmes it to have bin before them (by the name of Gallagum) in the time of the Brittaines;[320] for it was the Chief Place of the Brigantes (i.e. to say, of all those territories which now are divided

---

both […] / I have seen som stones which only served on the sides of a sinke to convey the [blank] from the castle – 6 foot long \ as have served single for as monuments; / and other \ of a older / digg up but 2 yeares; each of which made [blank] cartfull when broken in pieces. I have seen som \ taken out of ditches from the castle / with all one length – served for jawnes of an ancient doer; & som \ of about a foot in thickness / which seem to be struck through a stone of about a foote & one single stroake with an huers ax{!} tho in others they appeard as ornaments {representing waved worke once in the Hall Chimney}.'

[314] Door jambs.

[315] MS from this point: '…~~since from forest worke, they have changed to stone buildings to build with stone ever since they ch[anged] their method of building, since for want of timber they have changd theyr method of former building Insteed of forest worke such as is yet to be seen at the~~…'

[316] MS: 'a […] which was the common way of olde, such as yet to be seen at Wharton Hall […] and a piece of it is yet to be seen at in K. Hall.'

[317] There is no illustration on this page.

[318] Sections 5, 6 and 7 have been amended; repeated passages have been deleted. See MS.I.499.

[319] '~~Are not only by these, but~~ as also by Coynes, Altars, & urnes (with other fictilia) ~~all which do~~ loudly proclame it Romane. And the 2 Roman wayes which meet at this ~~town~~ \ Place / \ Town / ~~seem to Confirme It, & bespeak It a Town. The Maden Way way & the Kings Street on High Street, the former of which doth Terminate here may {so was borne} seeme to confirme~~' This passage also appears on I.535.

[320] 'If I might without prejudice to the Judges of antiquitie, I would say it were Gallagum mentioned by Ptolemee, which Antonine nameth Gallatum…', see Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 761D.

into 5 shires \ Countyes / calld by the names, of Westm'land, Cumberland, Yorkshire, Lancashire & the Bishoprick of Durham). These greatest people in this British Iland.

[Machell's Notes: I.527C][321]

*Som of which are hereabout daly found, & som of them now preservd by the present Rector – who has one of Antoninus Pius.[322] And another of Julia, daughter of Augustus – who reigned when Our Saviour Christ was or before Christ was borne – besides many others. Put this in the margin.

[I.528]

I was informed Feb. 3. 1686 by John Langhorn, Joyner & carpenter, that [he] has seen walls of brick in Bleckatt Burwens up by the water side about 16 inch broad, after this form at f[igure] v. [below] so soldered with lime that they [blank] And that he was 26 years of age when he observed them.
{Also of a Pretiouse stone sold per block to Mr Dalston?}[323]
I have drawne another forme pectinatus,[324] which will make a wa[ll] of the same sort of bricks in a narrow compas.And both seem to me to be as excellent as they are strange, having never read nor heard of the like. The Cunei[325] in round Towers but not square.

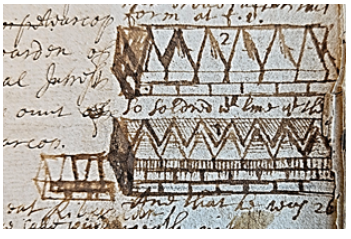


Figure 1.14.9. 'Forme pectinatus'. I.528.

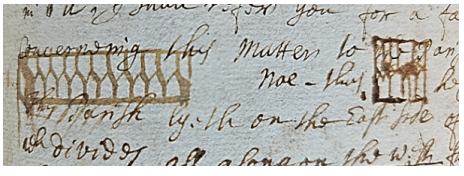


Figure 1.14.10. 'a & b; 'f.v.': examples of Machell's sketches. I.528.

[I.527A]

Which things being considered, it may not be improbable that the Proprietour of this ancient Castle with the lands round about, whom the Saxons calld Whelp, might be a Branch of the old Romane Catuli left here in trust with som British bands when they made their \ last / recess into \ Italy / their own Country; It being but about 600 years (and many Familys have continued so long) betwixt their departure & the Norman Conquest: Dureing which time the Saxons, who came in to aide the Brittans (& such of the Romaines as wee may suppose were left behind \ either / by reason of ~~their~~ marrage or otherwise) against the incursions \ violence / of the Picts & Scots, made themselves masters of all these nations; Altering the names both of men & places to their owne Country fashon; as appears to this day. Thus might Catulus by an easy & natural transmutation be chang'd into Whelp, & Castram

[321] This page was originally the right-hand side of I.527B but has been numbered separately by a modern archivist. How the two parts became estranged is not known.
[322] MS: 'Dayly fou / som of which \ are / here about daly found, & som of them now preservd by the present Rector – who has one of Antoninus Pius, & ~~another of Julia Augustus \ d. of Augustus / his daughter, who reigned before the Birth of Our Saviour, besides many others~~.'
[323] There is a sketch of a stone in the MS here, ¾ cm at its widest point.
[324] 'Pectinated': having narrow projections or divisions set closely in a row like the teeth of a comb. *OED*.
[325] 'Wedges': see Machell's drawing, *Fig. 1.14.9.*

Catulinum into Whelp Castle; as the old Aballaba was \ by them / chang'd into Apelby, & \ as / Brovonacum \ was turnd / into Browham. And, perhaps, this \ whole / Bottom of Westm'land might (before the Conquest) be called Whelpdale from this ancient \ seat / which seemes to have bin the commanding place of it. And the sirname of Whelpdale be assumed hence from their Ancestours liveing (about the Conquest) at som remaquable place in this valley: Quis autem &c.[326]

[Kirkbythore: In Nature and in Art]

[I.501]

The soyl is mixed: in some place \ red /clay, in som red sand, in some gravel, & som places a black mould. It affordes quarreyes of huen stone & limestone \ in the Lordship of M[ilburn], / though at a great distance from it. / Tis most part arable and ~~pretty~~ \ very / fertill, \ especially for […] about Kirkbythore, / but little woodland excepting \ the Lordship of Milburn & The Lordship of Sowerby at Acorn Banke, the Howgil ~~Lordship~~. The fuel it affords is turves & peat \ for the most part; as likewise peat at the fell sides, but \ their / coals fetch'd from \ Hartside at / markets {or Apleby} ~~& wood from Whinfell~~.
{Juniper!!!}[327]

{A[328] general custome of the ~~Parish~~ County.}
Att midsummer: rush bearing and garland[s], hollyes in bonefires, & midsummer eve a bonefire.

[I.548]

[Note on the name Burwens]
Note that \ all which circumference & several parcels conteined therein [are] calld by the / general, North of Burwens, and take \ their / particular denominality from their several owners. All the places described at sect[ion] [blank] are calld Burwens & take several & particular names from the several persons who now doe injoy them – as […][329] Burwens, Stabligs Bur[wens] […][330]and so opposite Bensens Berwens & Soulbyes Burwens &c.

[I.506]

[High Burwens]
In nature there is a place calld the High Burwens, a square inclosure of, thought to be the area of Whelp Castle, which is by nature a \ most / sweet situation, being betwixt the rivers of Troutbek & Eden, \ on the bankes of, not far from / \ neare upon a long hill / & betwixt 2 forrests of Whinfell & Milburne.[331] Composed about with Champion Groundes on every side, glades aford a delicate prospect in the very heart as it were of the Country, which was the site of Whelop Castle as Camden calls it,[332] but Whelp, as wee, being more suerly instructed out of ancient records.[333]

Note. Here are hereabout vast walls \ Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis[334] / both of brick & stone discoverd under ground, the brick which is wonderfull above a yard \ thick / & so semented to gether with lime thach that I could nevere meet with a whol one there.

---

[326] MS: 'And the sirname of Whelpdale, ~~may probably seeme to \ have / bin~~ \ be assumed/ assumed \ hence / from their Ancestours liveing (about the Conquest) at \ som / Remaquable place in this valley. But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?'
[327] In the MS, this memo is placed in the margin of the following page.
[328] 23 June.
[329] Possibly, 'Jacksons', but the word is unclear.
[330] Unclear words.
[331] This complicated sentence demonstrates Machell's use of alternatives as he worked to describe the site of Whelp Castle. Words that have been scored through in the MS have been allowed to remain here, as no version of the sentence makes perfect sense without them. The word 'long' is an insecure transcription.
[332] Camden gives the spelling as 'Whealop-Castle' and 'Whellop', and, in the margin of the page, 'Whellep': see *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 761.
[333] MS: 'Composed about with Champion Groundes on every side \ glades aford a delicate prospect / in the very heart as it were of the Country ~~Bottom of Westmorland~~ which was the site of Whelop Castle as Camden, calls \ it, / but Whelp, as wee, being ~~right~~ more suerly \ instructed taugh / out of \ ancient / records.'
[334] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' An oft-repeated claim based on Ovid, *Heroides 1*. 'Letter from Penelope to Ulysses'. See I.558, above; see also I.509, below.

{!!!} A pott full of Roman coynes ~~have bin found~~ \ were here found / about 40 yeares, which they foolishly gave ther children to play with. 2 altars lately \ dug; / inumerable fragments of broken urnes \ an other of excellent fictilia[335] / ~~all which bespeake the building of Ancient Rome~~. Since that, a vault \ was discover / under ground \ in the midst of Castle Street / with a stare into it that we are chief to admire theirat[336] a doer at each end \ having shelves on either side / ~~with~~ seates on the sides set with Urnes, all which do loudly proclame them Roman. […][337] Hic steterit Castri Catuli Regia.[338] High as they call it.

And the Romane Wayes: the Street and Maden Way, end at this place, at this Towne meeting together, & the last entry here \ in this Town / do seem to confirme it, & bespeak it a Towne in the times the Romanes of more than ordinary esteem & accompt, estimation & traffique.

Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis. Altar, coines, urnes; besides those sandal discoverd in the fontane Hypocreen, & the ~~fontane~~ \ well / itselfe, which are printed in the *Oxford Transactions*[339] – may be recounted as extraordinary. & of Later Times, som pieces of building: 1ᵗ. The Church, which on the inside &c. The foundation, of tower, flags, of body, on pavement. 2. Howgil Castle, the walls whereof were lately alterd. 3. The parlour & dineing roome at Acorn Banke.

[I.507]

{S.W. G[ate]}
Near the South angle or rather betwixt it and the principle gate […][340] was lately discovered in the High Street a vault underground in figure oblong & arched over; which having water therein with a dooer at each end with stairs to descend by into it & a shelfe or seat (on either side) made of huen stone & set round with urnes.[341]

[I.509]

Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis {!!!}[342]
\ Which / these things considered; it is not improbable that the 1. Proprietor {!!!} of this Ancient Castle \ with the lands circumjacent / whom the Saxons call'd Whelp (in Latine Catulus) might be ~~descended~~ \ a branche from the old Romane Catuli* 'left here in trust ~~amongst therc~~ \ with their bands / British when the Romanes made their recess \ into Italy; / it being but the space of [blank] years, betwixt their departure and Norman Conquest. Which is no extraordinary duration of ~~a family~~ \ time / if wee compare things past with the present.[343] And perhaps the whol Bottom of Westmorland ought \ from hence / ~~thence~~ be called Vallis Catulnia, ~~from this chief seat in it~~; and the Whelpdales deserve \ assume / their \ ancient / sirname \ de Valle Catulnia from ~~liveing~~ their ancestours living at some remarquable \ place in this vala / habitation therein. Quis autem rem, tam antiquas, pro certo affirmare audet.[344] The like of which is not to be found in the County of Westm'land & has bin rendered yet

[335] 'Earthenware.'
[336] Several words here are obscured by the binding.
[337] There is interlineation here, but it is illegible.
[338] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of Catulus.'
[339] See Part 3, Ch, 3, Roman Antiquities.
[340] An interlineation here is illegible.
[341] MS: 'which having \ water in / water therein: \ with / a dooer at each end, \ with / ~~with~~ stairs ~~down~~ {to descend by} into it, & a shelfe or seat (on either side) made of huen stone & set round with urnes, besett all \ round / with urnes which had water in it, a dooer at each end with stairs to descend by and a shelfe or seat on either side beset all with urnes.' A line has been drawn through this paragraph but, although it repeats what has gone before, it is easier to read than the same material in a previous paragraph (MS: I.507).
[342] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' Yet another of several repetitions of the phrase comparing the lofty realms of Priam to Whelp Castle (see above). Perhaps the three exclamation marks at the end of this iteration suggest that Machell was aware of the irony in the comparison; alternatively, they serve to exhibit his family pride.
[343] Interlineation of 5cm is illegible here.
[344] 'Quis autem res tam antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?' = 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?' A favourite saying of Machell's; possibly a slightly different wording of a passage in Livy, *History of the Romans*, Bk I.3.2.

more delightful & pleasant by the 2 large woody forrests of Milburne & Whinfel: that at equal distance on the East & the other on the West at about half a mile from it; both full of wood & replenished with read dear & fallow; as the latter continueth in as to this very day. The like of which is not to be found in the ~~Bottom~~ \ County / of Westmorland & has bin rendered \ yet / more delightful & pleasant by the 2 \ large / woody forrests of Milburne & Whinfel ~~and on~~ \ that at equal distance / on the East & the other on the West at about a mile distance \ about half a mile from it / ~~&~~ both \ full of wood & / replenished with read dear & fallow; as the ~~same~~ \ latter / continueth\ in as / to this very day.

~~There is a Place~~ \ The Square[345] / calld the High Burwens \seems to have bin the area of it, conteineing ~~about~~ 6 score yards in diameter now plowd & cultivated, which is full of broken \ urnes, / bricks & slates, & which that have bin[346] of lime ~~allmost~~ as hard \ almost as a qu[ern] stone it selfe Hic steterit &c. / The angles of it \ thereof as I have observd all Rom[an] fortifications have don, / doe point \ looked / directly ~~East~~ to the 4 cardinal Pointes of the World. & at the East corner was lately found the head of a woman (more Romane to below the paps) ~~carved in~~ \ [an] image of a roman cut in silver†,[347]& likewise an Altar about thirty yards from it, both which are now at Crakanthorp Hall.[348]

[Machell's Notes: I.509]

*{Who had long bin true to Romanes Intrest – dureing which time The Saxons who cam in to aide the Britanes, and such of the Romanes as were set amongst them, against the \ valore[349] of / Picts and made themselves at lenth masters of both.}

[I.530A]

[**Narrative 4]**

Of Kirkbythore Parish or Kirkbythure[350]

This Parish taketh denomination from Kirkbythore \ where the church stands / (~~so it is writt in all ancient records)~~, which word seems to be of Saxon original, taken from Kirk, ~~which~~ signifying a church, by a place, & Thor which was one of the Saxon gods whence wee have the word Thorsday and implies as much as the Place where the Templ of Thor was erected. And this Thor was the same with \ the great god / Jupiter amongst the Romanes, \ by whom when they first invaded Britain, / in whose time this Towne was called Gallagum, a place of no […][351] {But now a Temple is erected therein to the Great God Jehovah which is in honour of the Arch Angel ~~St~~ called St Michael, and is a Rectory.}

[I.530B]

At which time the Romanes subdued the Brttaines, but before the Saxona in the time of the Romanes & Brittaines, it was Gallatum or Wallatum – perhaps from Livius Gallus or Wallus {? or from Galli or Walli, the names of the Britt.} of whom wee read that Asclæpiodotus Duke of Cornwall prevailed \ in fight / against Alectus & him; and when he had slain him, threw him into a brooke, from then thence called Wallus Brooke & now Wallbrooke. This Asclæpiodotus was \ afterwards / said to be pronounced King of the Britaines & to have bin slane by one Coel Earle of Colchester, who succeed[ed] him circa anno Christ 262: *Chron. Temp*. p.494.[352] {This was in the time of Di[o]clesian [&] Max[i]m[ian]us q[uo]d Ide[m] de hoc [Sc. tempore] et ante.}[353]

---

[345] MS. Machell drew a square shape here.
[346] Some text is obscured by the binding here.
[347] The subject continues on I.527A.
[348] A complicated paragraph comprising much reordering and scoring-through.
[349] Insecure transcription of this interlineated word.
[350] In the MS, 'or Kirkbythure' has been scored through.
[351] The rest of this sentence has perished.
[352] Asclepiodotus appears in medieval British legend as a native king of Britain. Geoffrey of Monmouth's Chronicle, *History of the Kings of Britain* (1136) portrays him as a Duke of Cornwall who was raised to the kingship of Britain (c.296) in opposition to Allectus, a Roman who oppressed the people.
[353] 'This was in the time of Dioclesian [&] Maximian which [was] the same thing from this and before.' Perhaps Machell is referring to the fact that Diocletian, who was proclaimed emperor in 284, took Maximian as co-emperor in 286; thereafter Diocletian ruled the western empire, Maximian the eastern empire. (From 293 two

[I.533]

§. But to returne to Kirkbythore Parish.
The soyle thereof is of severall sorts: In some parts read-sand, in others yellow, here black mold, there browne; in some places gravell, in others clay both read & blew. But for the most part it is very fertill, especially for corn, which yieldeth best of any in the Countrey. The high moores & mountains affords good fuell & pasture for sheep, which are generally sound; and the lower for cattle. But the want of \ cow / pastures for the common sort is the greatest defect, which by improvement might easily be helped.[354] It hath bin formerly well replenished with wood, most part of the Parish being a forrest of old: But now there is little, unlesse it be in the \ 2 / Chapplerys of Sowerby & the chappelry of Milburne, which are fare remote from Kirkbythore Towne; & the only fuell which they now have {remaining} (excepting coales, which they fetch \ are fetched / from Hartside, att 10 miles distance) are turfes, & peates. But yet in the mountains there are out-bursts of coals which might prove of great use unto all the neighbourhood & of great advantage to the Lords of the Fees if they would sinke for them; whilest in the meane time they lie neglected, & only serve such poor countrey people as can pick them out thence for burning of Lime Kilns.

In these mountaines alsoe there are silver mines, as some doe imagine; being thereto induced partly by the names of certain places upon the fells which are called Silveray & Silvery-Bands, \ & / partly by an old rimeing prophecy of Mother Shiptons[355] (whom they call here Gillemans wife from her former husband as they relate) who, passing these mountains & tasteing the water which issued from them; is said to have delivered these verses:

> They that are awn'd to open Dunfell-sneck*
> May measure out theire silver in a peck†.

Here are alsoe lead mines, which discover themselves in the bankes of the rivers, but the most remarkable is that below Dunfell att Silveray-Band,[356] a very rich one; now wrought & farmed by the Marquess of Winchester of the Earle of Thannett as Lords of those Wastes in the forrest of Milburne.[357] And in the very skirts of the mountaines there is plenty of limestones, & freestone alsoe of a reddish couler, which this Parish affords in great abundance, excepting \ only in / Kirkbythore Lordship only where there there is not any. But that defect is supplied by nature (if Art would put to her helping hand as she hath formerly done)[358] in a very large veine of curiouse blew clay like unto marle, neare Parsons Close at the East end of Kirkbythore Towne; which would (I believe) make as good brick as any in the world; and likewise all sorts of earthen vessels: for I doe suppose that those curiouse bricks which the plow casteth up at the place called Burwens where Whelp Castle stood, with the urnes & pots which are found thereabouts, were made of this clay.
Besides these advantages:
§. This Parish is alsoe extreamly well watered with rivers and springs, a great Cause & Argument of a fruitfull place. The former may be seen by the Boundary of it, being almost incompass'd with rivers \ of water / well storr'd with fish, especially troutes

[Machell's Notes: I.533]
*The latch of a dooer with which it is shut: alludeing here to riches shut up in the chambers of the Earth.
†A measure here conteineing 5 gallons.[359]

---

further delegates were appointed, so that the whole empire was divided into quarters, under the 'Tetrarchy'.) The words 'et ante' perhaps refer to the two years when Diocletian was sole emperor.
[354] By 'improvement', Machell probably meant 'enclosure'.
[355] She is said to have lived at Knaresborough near Harrogate in Yorkshire.
[356] Silverband.
[357] Farm: a fixed yearly amount paid by a tenant in money or in kind (especially in grain) as rent for the use of land or property, or as tax; an amount received as revenue for letting or subletting land or property. historical after the 18th century. *OED*.
[358] The numerals 2 and 1 have been placed over the last two words to show that they should be read: 'done formerly'.
[359] For more on Mother Shipton, see I.555.

[I.534]

{which hath given name to the River call'd Troutbeck}
The latter is obviouse to every eye; there being not a Towne nor Hamlet in the Parish that doth not afford a great many springs. But the most remarkable are those that follow:

Machells Well, which springs in the very south point of this Parish att a place called Sowber, & runs into the ancient Channel of Troutbeck, neare to the place where the three Lordships of Crakanthorp, Bolton & Kirkbythore \ meet / as hath been said. This yields a most delicate & wholesome water, which hath \ been / successfully taken in feavers, a small taste of vinegar being mixed therewith.

Hyppocreene, an Ancient well, lately discovered by the foot of an horse. It is in the ~~verge~~ downe end of Kirkbythore, neare \ to / the Bridge, & by the side of the great Romane Way which leadeth from Appleby to the city of Carlile. In which was found urnes & severall curiouse fine earthen vessels, with greyhounds & other figures upon them; the cusp of a speare; & sandalls whose soles were struck full of nales & sow'd together, not with thread but with leather; most of which were carefully preserved, design'd & describ'd in a late letter to Sir William Dugdall by the present Rector, which letter being printed not only att London but at Oxford alsoe amongst their Philosophicall Transactions* I need say noe more concerning this fountaine: but that it is alsoe neare to a place where three Lordships meet (in three severall Parishes) Sc. Crakanthorp, Brampton & Kirkbythore.

Dobkill-How Well, which is in the Street call'd Wharton End directly opposite to Kirkbythore Hall, & in the way to it, concerning which & a place neare the Miln called Stack or Stake (which growes very good oates) they have a saying, as if Bacchus & Ceres had combind together to make the towne delightfull & pleasant

> Noe Kirkbythore hater can the village forsake
> If he tastes Dobkill water & a Bannock off Stake.

Pots-Well, which springs on the North side of Kirkbythore in a pasture call'd Potts & seems to proceed from some sort of minerall. It promiseth coale in the places adjacent as some doe believe; & has been accounted of singular virtue in cuering old sores.

Marble-Skar-Well in the Chappelry of Milburne near Howgill Castle; which hath two heads \ or springs / the higher whereof supplieth the castle for necessary uses,[360] and the lower is said to be good for sore eyes. – And soe likewise is

Lucies-Well, near Acorn-Banke in the Chappelry of Sowerby, soe called from Mrs Lucie Dalston (late wife of the present John Dalston Esq. & the last of the Fallowfields), who used to visit it & recommend it to the blear eyed Leahs as good for theire sight.[361]

[Machell's Notes: I.534]
*{*Philosophical Transactions* April 20 1684 p.555. A letter from Mr Thomas Machel of Kirkbythore in Westm'land to Sir W. D. March 25 1684, concerneing som Antiquities found there.}[362]

[I.535][363]

[Rarityes in Nature & Arte]

[360] Machell redesigned Howgill Castle for William Sandford; see a description of this in Howard Colvin, *A biographical dictionary of British architects, 1600-1840* (London, 1978), 531-32.
[361] For the 'blear eyed Leahs', see I.557, above.
[362] *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 554-8, https://royalsocietypublishing.org/toc/rstl/1684/14/158; See also Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.
[363] On this page of the MS there are pencilled comments, now illegible, and a sketch similar to those on I.528.

[I.534]

{which hath given name to the River call'd Troutbeck}
The latter is obviouse to every eye; there being not a Towne nor Hamlet in the Parish that doth not afford a great many springs. But the most remarkable are those that follow:

Machells Well, which springs in the very south point of this Parish att a place called Sowber, & runs into the ancient Channel of Troutbeck, neare to the place where the three Lordships of Crakanthorp, Bolton & Kirkbythore \ meet / as hath been said. This yields a most delicate & wholesome water, which hath \ been / successfully taken in feavers, a small taste of vinegar being mixed therewith.

Hyppocreene, an Ancient well, lately discovered by the foot of an horse. It is in the ~~verge~~ downe end of Kirkbythore, neare \ to / the Bridge, & by the side of the great Romane Way which leadeth from Appleby to the city of Carlile. In which was found urnes & severall curiouse fine earthen vessels, with greyhounds & other figures upon them; the cusp of a speare; & sandalls whose soles were struck full of nales & sow'd together, not with thread but with leather; most of which were carefully preserved, design'd & describ'd in a late letter to Sir William Dugdall by the present Rector, which letter being printed not only att London but at Oxford alsoe amongst their Philosophicall Transactions* I need say noe more concerning this fountaine: but that it is alsoe neare to a place where three Lordships meet (in three severall Parishes) Sc. Crakanthorp, Brampton & Kirkbythore.

Dobkill-How Well, which is in the Street call'd Wharton End directly opposite to Kirkbythore Hall, & in the way to it, concerning which & a place neare the Miln called Stack or Stake (which growes very good oates) they have a saying, as if Bacchus & Ceres had combind together to make the towne delightfull & pleasant

> Noe Kirkbythore hater can the village forsake
> If he tastes Dobkill water & a Bannock off Stake.

Pots-Well, which springs on the North side of Kirkbythore in a pasture call'd Potts & seems to proceed from some sort of minerall. It promiseth coale in the places adjacent as some doe believe; & has been accounted of singular virtue in cuering old sores.

Marble-Skar-Well in the Chappelry of Milburne near Howgill Castle; which hath two heads \ or springs / the higher whereof supplieth the castle for necessary uses,[360] and the lower is said to be good for sore eyes. – And soe likewise is

Lucies-Well, near Acorn-Banke in the Chappelry of Sowerby, soe called from Mrs Lucie Dalston (late wife of the present John Dalston Esq. & the last of the Fallowfields), who used to visit it & recommend it to the blear eyed Leahs as good for theire sight.[361]

[Machell's Notes: I.534]
*{*Philosophical Transactions* April 20 1684 p.555. A letter from Mr Thomas Machel of Kirkbythore in Westm'land to Sir W. D. March 25 1684, concerneing som Antiquities found there.}[362]

[I.535][363]

[Rarityes in Nature & Arte]

[360] Machell redesigned Howgill Castle for William Sandford; see a description of this in Howard Colvin, *A biographical dictionary of British architects, 1600-1840* (London, 1978), 531-32.
[361] For the 'blear eyed Leahs', see I.557, above.
[362] *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (1684), 554-8, https://royalsocietypublishing.org/toc/rstl/1684/14/158; See also Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.
[363] On this page of the MS there are pencilled comments, now illegible, and a sketch similar to those on I.528.

Caervorran in / Northumberland \ neare the Picts Wall / & terminates here); both \ which / may be recorded amongst things extraordinary relateing to Art, doe confirme the same & bespeak this Towne to have been a place of more then ordinary esteem & traffique in the time of the Romanes; And Camden affirmes it to have been ~~called by the~~ \ called / then (by the name of Gallagum) in the time of the Brittaines.[370] For it was the chief place of the Brigantes (that is to say, of all those territories which now are divided into v. ~~shires~~ \ Countyes / called by the names of Westm'land, Cumberland, Yorkshire, Lancashire & the Bishoprick of Durham) & they the most numerous & flourishing people of all the Brittaines.) Which things being considered, it may not be improbable that the proprietor of this ancient Castle with the lands round about, whom the Saxons calld Whelp, might be a branch of the old Romane Catuli left here in trust with some Brittish bands when they made their last recesse [I.536]
into Italy, it being but about 6oo years (& many families have continued soe long) betwixt their departure & the Norman Conquest; dureing which time the Saxons who came in to aide the Brittaines (& such of the Romanes as we may suppose were left behind either by reason of their marriage or other wise) against the incursions of the Picts & Scots, made themselves masters of all these nations, altering the names both of men & places to their owne Country fashion; as appears to this day.
Thus might Catulus (by an easy & natural transmutation \ or translation rather /) be changed into Whelp, & Castrum Catulinum into Whelp Castle, as the old Aballaba was by them changed into Apelby, & as Brovonacum was turnd into Brougham.[371] And perhaps, this Bottom of Westm'land might \ also / (before the Conquest) be called Whelpdale, from this ancient seat, which seems to have been the commanding place of it: And the sirname of Whelpdale may probably seem to have been assumed from their ancestours living (about the Conquest) at some remarkable place in this valley
Quis autem res tam Antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?[372]

But now to returne from things which are buried in their owne ruines (or eased out by the conquering swords), to which is more modern & more discernible.

{2.} [Parish Church]
The next place here which deserves observation is the Parish Church, which seems by the stones whereof it is made, to have been ~~rased~~ \ builded / out of Whelp Castle ruines. 'Tis an handsome structure on the outside tho not very large, adorned with a well-proportioned Tower & a clock (whose hour-board fronteth \ towards / the Towne) which strikes on the loudest bell in this County (called Great Tom)*. But its greatest bea\u/ty & ornament is (as doth best becom holiness) on the inside, where all things are neate – the floors of the Church and Quire well flagg'd; the seates (which are general made of wainscot) & all other things thereto appertaining regular & uniforme; [a] delicate font made of huen stone at the Rectors charge, wherein he designes to have a fountaine playing up in the bason & a dove appendant to the cover of it, which (when it ascends by the help of a pully whose counterpoise is hid in the steeple) will seem to stand hovering over the water – a proper emblem of the Holy Ghosts descending-upon & sanctifying the baptismall water to the mystycall washing away of sin.[373] The Quire is neatly both sealed[374] & seated with very good wainscot, the Altar rail'd in with wreathed Ballisters (the Rectors gift alsoe), where instead of Balls upon the pillasters he hath placed Cupps which are noe lesse signifficant \ than the former emblem, representing to us / the cup-of-

[370] See Camden: 'But tract of time hath quite out-worne the old name, and it is at this day Whealop-Castle. If I might without prejudice to the Judges of antiquitie, I would say it were Gallagum mentioned by Ptolemee, which Antonine nameth Gallatum, the distance of journies accord so well, and the name doth not altogether gainsay. For what words the Britons began with Gall, the English turned into Wall.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland, 1637, 761E.
[371] MS: '& as Brovonacum ~~inter textæ~~ \ ~~was changed into~~ / \ was turnd into / Brougham.' The Roman site of Brougham has been traditionally named 'Brovacum' and 'Brovoniacum': see Samuel Timms, *The Family Topographer: a compendious account of the anciemt state of the counties of* England, *VI, Northern Circuit* (London, 1837), 3.
[372] Repetition of, 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?'
[373] The font is still extant; it bears the date 1688 and Machell's arms. Hyde & Pevsner suggest that the carving was done by Edward Addison: *Hyde and Pevsner*, 473.
[374] It has a ceiling.

blessing in the other ~~great~~ Sacrament \ of the Lords Supper / which is there administer'd.[375] The Altar, alsoe Pulpit & organ-loft are of very good workmanship, being curiously carved.[376] And here are prayers on Wednesdays, Fridayes & Saturday nights, every Holyday & Holyday-eve, with Catechising on every Sunday unlesse prevented by important occasions. And as the materiall Church (or fabrick) deserves observation for its uniformity, soe likewise the reall Church (or people) doe deserve commendations for their conformity.

[Machell's Notes: I.536]

*Memorandum, found.

[I.537]

For they ~~all~~ \ generally / kneel & stand, repeat & answer at their devotions as the Rubrick directs. And for dissenters from the Church of England, there are not any (in all this great Parish) excepting one family, which consists of two persons whose names & persuasion I shall not mention, least being affected with this singularity & noted for it, they should thence take occasion to glory in what is truly their shame.[377]

{3} [Parsonage House]

The third thing of note is the Parsonage house,[378] which is one of the fairest in all this Countrey, but oweth its beauty to the late Mr Lowther[379] & the present Rector, the latter of which hath altered it all from top to bottom & conjoyn'd it with a small Court ~~in~~to the Church, which may serve the house instead of a Chapple upon all occasions; adorn'd it with an orchard & olitory-garden;[380] laid a great deale of glebe land about it; and made a contrivance in his dining-room chimney that they waste not one cinder, nor never carry \ any / ashes out of it; an invention therefore worthy observation because it may be of singular use in all other places where they burn coale. It is done by a funnel under the grate, which goes downe (in the figure of a cone invers'd) behind the corner of the hall-chimney: haveing a searcher (of small iron-barrs) at the top of it to divide the cinders from the ashes, and a door of stone at the bottom (like an ovens mouth) to take them out at once in a yeare, which in the meane time is close daubed \ up / & stopp'd to prevent \ the / inconvenience which would thence arise by the stoaring up of the dust & ashes at the Hall fireside {incommoding his family by the hall fire.}[381]

He hath alsoe contriv'd an octagonall deske with a small writeing table running beneath it, by means whereof he can consult many authors at once without moving his foot, & compare them together with a turne of his hand*.[382]

---

[375] The altar rails are still extant, with an inscription declaring Machell's gift, dated Caroli II 35, i.e.1684; see Hyde & Pevsner (473), who suggest that the blocked-up windows in the chancel were originally inserted by Machell but that his insertion appears to have weakened the structure, Hyde & Pevsner, 473.

[376] The pulpit (1631) predates Machell.

[377] The information (scored through) also appears on MS.I.562. MS: 'And as <u>the material</u> church (or fabric) doth deserve commendations for its uniformity, so \ likewise / the <u>Real Church</u> (or people) doe deserve commendations for their conformity (which by Gods assistance the present Rector hath brought them up to). They all knele & stand \ repeat & answ[er] / at their devotions, as the Rubric directs; And [there] are not any Discenters from the Church of England (<u>in all this great Parish</u>) excepting 2{!} ~~(which are both of a family)~~, 2 persons whose names & perswation I shal not mention, least (being affected with this singularity & noted for it) they should thence take occasion to glory in what is most truly their shame.' Machell's attitude is typical of a 17th-century Church of England rector, and most of the local gentry agreed with him. See Peter Lucas on Sir Daniel Fleming and Sirs Philip and Christopher Musgrave, in, *The Rise of the Quakers: Revaluing the place of Preston Patrick in the early movement* (Kirkby Lonsdale, 2017), 165-6.

[378] In 1703 William Nicolson regarded the rectory as 'in the best repair of any in the Diocese', see Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 28.

[379] Rev. Lancelot Lowther, rector of Kirkby Thore from 1629. For details see Kirkby Thore, Narrative 2, I.551, above.

[380] A kitchen or herb garden.

[381] This margin comment also appears on I.563. There are two almost identical passages elsewhere in the MS (I.508 and I.562); see also a draft of the material on I.768.

[382] The asterisk leads to more text on Machell's study furniture on I.562.

[I.562]

{*Also, A Reading Desk in his study, which, being octagonal, by turneing it round wil bring 8 folios or 16 folios to hand to examine at and quot of, to aprise ascending.}

[I.563]



Figure 1.14.11. Study desk. I.563.

1. The Writeing Deske.
2. The Turneing Desk for Bookes with pin-holes in the standing post to advance or settle it.[383]



Figure 1.14.12. Dining-room chimney 'contrivance' and study desk. 1.562.

[383] Similar material appears on MS I.537: 'He hath also contrived in his Study or Library an octagonal deske and a writeing table which standeth under it; whereby he can consult many authors & compare them together by a turn with his hand.'

And in his gardine which his study looks into, \ which being a piece of ground ornamented (forced),[384] doth show the benignity of the air & soyle to be extraordinary.

[I.537]

And as Art (in this place), so Nature alsoe hath sported herselfe; having gratified him with two rare productions: a dasie, four-inch and an half in circumference but the last yeare; & severall gilly flowers full blowne at Shrovetide about two yeares before, without any help of stercoration[385] \ or dunging, / or other improvement; which shows the benignity of the aire & soile to be more in this County than has been reported by other authors.

[I.563]

{Pine Trees placed in the midst of his grass plats; but being else where in the country, I shal not ent[er] them.}

[I.537]

{§4.} [Kirkby Thore Hall]

The next Curiosity (if it may be soe called) is att Kirkbythore Hall, where there is a piece of old forrest worke building – a common thing once when this part of the Country was full of good timber. But now (& in the ages to come) it may passe for a rarity, and therefore the rather ought to be mentioned because it shows us what manner of buildings was (for the most) used here of old, & prevents an objection which may be made against the greatnesse of this Towne \ & Apelby / & others alsoe (whose ruines are not now to be found) by showing how easily they might be consum'd (tho never soe great) & reduced to ashes (which the wind scattereth wheresoever it listeth,[386] & yet leaves noe ~~Ruines or~~ \ ruines / vestigia behind it). Here is alsoe an Altar (digg'd up at Whelp Castle) which Sir William Dugdale hath taken notice of & therefore I need not say any thing of it.

[I.538][387]

[Cow-Sonsy]

But amongst these old things at Kirkbythore I cannot forbeare to give an account (as a thing which is not common in nature) of the great age & wit of a certain Alewife who lived in this Towne at Coppin Hill, in perfect understanding & strength till she was one hundred & twenty yeares old: some say, one hundred & twenty-eight. {Testament Thomas Soulby a very honest & sensible person; also, John Hill, & common fame say that she lived to 128.}

She frequently travail'd to London on foote \ & could thread a needle to her dying day. / {Her father (they say) lived to an 140 & she thought that she should have livd as long.}

Her name was Sanderson \ K. Smith / {? If not Katherine Smith, so says Criss, her made} But in a by name, to please themselves & vex her withall, they call'd her Cow-sonsy; which signifies a good Lucky-beast but deprived of that which should be at once its Armes & ornament (namely the hornes): tho perhaps they alluded to her want of haire in her extreame old age; for they call them cowd alsoe whose haire is come of, by Art or Accident.

But she revenged herselfe upon one man; who (coming with a great many friends to drinke at her house; & being deformed with a wen on his forehead, yet had the face to play upon her &c.) call'd her Cow-sonsy; to whom she replyed, it was better to be Cow'd & sonsy than Horn'd & unlucky; which was a severe reflection upon him, not only in respect of the wen which grew on his forehead, but some other excrescences, which (as it was said) his wife gave occasion to bud in that place. She liv'd to [be] a proverb; for now we say (of those that are old, & not likely to die in our thanke) I thinke he'el be as old as Cow-sonsy, with which I thought once to have concluded my observations concerning this place.

[384] 'Forced': of plants, a crop, etc. Made to bear, or produced, out of the proper season. Alternatively, fortified, made strong against attack. *OED*. This is interesting, as Machell goes on to say that his plot was not dressed with manure or other improvement.

[385] Dressing with manure.

[386] See *AVB*: John 3:8.

[387] As versions on MS I.564 and MS.I.146 tell the same tale, they have been deleted from this edition.

[I.545A]

The Old Song of Cow Sonsy[388]

[I.545D]

1. Cowsonsy was a dainety dame.
All Kirkbythore can tell the same.
At Coppin Hill she once did dwell,
And there she brewd Good Ale to sell.

[I.545A]

2. Where som Good fellows met together
~~It~~ Twas John Sanderson brought them thither.
There was Will Parcivel & John Nansy,
That came to drink with old Cow-sonsy.[389]

3. Ned Willan was their at that time
When they as thus did make this rime
Let us be merry every one
Cow Soncys to her chamber gone.

4. Mic~~hael~~ Atkinson ~~he began to~~ \ there / laught
& said Nedd Addinson should goe daft.
\ But / strike up Piper & play us a strake[390]
To dance it for Cowsoncy sake.

5. Sais Cow you are much given to scorn,
I'le dance your strake my self to morn.
& soe she did as her son did say
She danced it in the break of day.

[I.545C]

6. [First line perished] born
With an hair codpiss set before
& ever she cryes O Siss & Jock,
Ist not well danced without a smock.

7. Siss & Jock lay in the same room
& swore that she had neatly done.
To dance again she up did start
And thundered out a Rousing fart.

8. This fart did Siss & Jock soe fray,
They durst noe longer sleep that day,
But up with speed they both did high,
& swore it thundered in the sky.

---

[388] I.545A initially gives a truncated version of the first two verses: 1. Cow Sonsy is A dainety / She doth her guests / O'eth Copin Hill she / & their she brewed. 2. We are good fellows met together / here John Sanderson brought us hither / heres Will Persavell & John Nancy/ is cos med to drink with old Cowsancy.' Roughly pencilled alterations to the poem have not been transcribed. The song appears on both sides of two small scraps of paper, originally one sheet, now numbered I.545 A to D. The verses are written as follows: 1-2: I.545D; 2-5: I. 545A; 7-10: I.545C; unnumbered: I.545B and C. Verses on I.545D appear to be in a different hand from the rest but most text is in Machell's hand. The narrative which names Cow-Sonsy as Sanderson first occurs on I.538.

[389] Another version is given here: MS: '2. We are good fellows met together; here John Sanderson brought us hither; heres Will Persavell & John Nancy; is comed to drink with old Cowsoncy'.

[390] To blow a horn; to make a start. *OED*.

9. This suddain chance made Cow think shame;
She thought herself she was to blame,
& earnestly did Jock intreat
That he must needs her counsell keep.

10. But Jock did like a scurvy lad,
he told his father all he heard.
His father in a merry vain,
Told it to the next he met again.

[I.545B]

Now of my rime I make an end.
Noe harm at all I did intend.
I spent but ten-pence, that was all,
When I did her Cowsoncy call.
Finis.[391]

Dame Topock said they did her wrong,
She was not mentioned in the song.
She could dance as well as her sister Cow,
For anything that she did know.
She danced about till she did stink,
Her only son was Captain Spink.

[I.538]

[Arts & Imployments]
Yet before I take leave of this Ancient Towne once famous for trades, I must observe to you that in this village (as if the Genij of the place had not left, it & forsaken it utterly) there are above 30 Artes & Imployments professed & practised at this very day. As first, the most Beautiful Art of Architecture, which (amongst many other) the present Rector hath some knowledge off, he & one Addison (borne in this towne & contemporary with him) being the first introducers of regular building into these parts.[392] Hutton Hall in the County of Cumberland was altered by Addison;[393] Rose Castle in Cumberland, Caesars Tower,[394] Howgill Castle & Crakanthorp Hall in the County of Westm'land by Mr Machell.[395]

---

[391] Clearly not quite finished, for an addition appears below.
[392] Comment on Machell as architect has not necessarily taken him at face value. For instance, 'Revd Thomas Machell misled posterity by his claim to have introduced "regular" building to Cumbria. While William Thackeray (fl. 1670-82), mason and carpenter of Torpenhow, has now taken over that important role, it is possible that further research might discover an earlier builder to wrest it from him' – see Blake Tyson, 'Some Cumbrian Builders, 1670-1780', 180. See also Hyde & Pevsner on the church at Kirkby Thore: 'Thomas Machell … may have put in the large square windows in the chancel: blocked now, having visually weakened the structure.' It is also suggested that Edward Addison might have carved the font: Hyde & Pevsner, 473.
[393] The East Front of Hutton-in-the-Forest [not Hutton Hall, Penrith] was built c.1680 by Edward Addison (1656-1705), almost certainly to the design of William Talman, architect of Lowther Castle where Addison was clerk of works. https://hutton-in-the-forest.co.uk. See also Hyde & Pevsner on Hutton-in-the-Forest. [It] 'is an object lesson on how the [17th] century moved from Jacobean to Baroque without seriously going classical.' Hyde & Pevsner, 415.
[394] Part of Appleby Castle.
[395] E. Bellasis noted that Thomas Machell, 'was naturally inclined to the art of drawing, a great lover of antiquities and not only skilfull in the liberal arts but mechanical also, his judgement was such that all sorts of ingenious tradesmen w[oul]d say it was a pity that he had not been of each of their professions.' He also quotes the Hill MSS, IV.132: Machell 'was a passionate admirer and promoter of the pseudo classic and Palladian architecture'. See 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886). 416-67, at 445-46 and 447n. More recently, Machell has featured in Howard Colvin's *Biographical Dictionary of British Architects 1600-1840*, in which he is credited with the design of the east range at Appleby Castle of 1686-8, 'in a handsome classical style', as well as the 'regularisation' of Howgill Castle for William Sandford and improvements elsewhere. See H. Colvin, *A Biographical Dictionary of British Architects 1600-1840* (3rd edn, Newhaven, 1995), 631-32. [I should like to thank Dr Edward Impey for introducing me to Colvin's work, Ed.]

Organ Loft. St Lawrence Appleby[396]
And the organ loft in St Lawrence Appleby of the dorrick order (which has extraordinary fancy in it, the guttæ & triglyphs[397] being renderd musicall & the flutings turn'd into organ pipes) was designed by him, & the ~~joyoneres~~ \ joyners / taught how to worke by the scale.

[I.548]

Organ & Organ Loft: where the Triglyphs or Apolloos lyers are elegantly turned into {Panonick Organs & the guttæ or bells into the ends of wind instrument, the fluteings into Organ pipe appositely significantly into the extremityes or endes of winde pipes} which are incomparable if they had follow'd the directions exactly.[398]

[I.538]

But neglect […][399] {The worke is thereby rendered more mean than it ought to be.}[400]

[I.539]

The other Artes professions & trades which are in this village
I shall run over (for brevities sake) by way of alphabet, which are as followeth – namely that of a Baker, Basket-maker, Blacksmith, Bruer, Butcher, Carpenter, Clogger, Cobbler, Currier, Cooper, Joyner, Fisher, \ Fuller, / Glazier, Knitter, Last Maker, Mason, Malster, Mealman, Mercer, Midwife, Milnwright, Milner, Piper, Shoemaker, Skinner, Spinner, Tanner, Taylor, Thatcher, Waller, Weaver, Whitesmith & Wheelwright; to which we may adde tho out off course (because not fit \ proper / to be mix'd with the rabble) a schoolmaster & schooldame, which I thought fit to observe as a rarity relateing to Artes, the like ~~of~~ whereof is scarce to be found through the Kingdom of England \ in a countrey village. /

[Howgill Castle]
The next remarkable place in this Parish is Howgill Castle in the Chapelry of Milburne, being a faire building which standeth high on the skirts of the mountaines in the eye of the Countrey & hath a large prospect to the South & South-west, but the other side being shut up with mountains & a great grove of trees wherein it standeth. The walls were formerly (& som yet are) of prodigious thickness – to wit 10 foote & ½ in breth, (which exceeds the dimension of The Picts Wall, for it was only eight \ or nine foot /); & underneath the dwelling house (to which \ they / ascended by stairs on the outside) were vaults & cellers arched over with stone, which was the old way of building in these partes whilst they liv'd in continual feuds with the Scots & served not only to the proper use which now they are putt to, but to keepe their horses & cattle secure in the time of invasion. A method which I would alwayes approve of in these northern climats (as most warm & convenient; & frugal \ allso / withal, as saveing the cost of a great many roofes in out-houses & stables) were it not for the unpleasant smells which the ordure & fewmes of cattle & horses are apt to send up to the higher rooms. But this castle is now

[396] For the organ at St Lawrence, Appleby, and Machell's part in its purchase and installation, see Arnold Mathews, 'St Lawrence's Church, Appleby', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 396-403. For example, 'Copies of a correspondence are preserved between Dean Smith and Hugh and Thomas Machell, the one of Crackenthorpe Hall, mayor of Appleby, the other rector of Kirkby Thore (the antiquary); by which it appears that the gift of this "old organ" from the cathedral was made at the solicitation of the brothers Machell ; — that the expenses of putting it up were borne by subscription among the mayor and aldermen ;— and that by particular request of Dr. Smith, it was set up in the church during the mayoralty of Hugh Machell in 1683.' (p. 402). 'In another letter Thomas Machell was advised to have "the posts in new wood, thrown and coloured, which may be had with a reabore," (whatever that may be.) It is believed that those very posts may still he seen in a yard in Appleby, now (alas !) supporting only a waterbutt.' (p. 403). The significance of this gift in terms of Tory/Laudian politics is explored by Michael A. Mullett, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby in the Era of Lady Anne Clifford, 1649-1689*, CWAAS Tract Series 25 (Kendal, 2015), 85-88.
[397] For the meaning of triglyphs, see Kirkby Thore Narrative 2, I.538, above.
[398] I.548 contains a series of notes, mostly relating to aspects of Kirkby Thore parish. Its passage on St Lawrence Organ loft is jumbled and repetitive but has been transcribed here in readable form.
[399] An illegible pencilled note in the MS margin follows here, but see the following sentence for the probable meaning.
[400] This sentence takes the form of a pencilled note above the main text of I.539, following the word 'neglect' and the illegible note on the previous page.

successfully altered (with much Art & smal cost) from an old & irregular piece of building to a very elligant & uniform structure;[401] the front of which being a great Hall with a dineing room over it 'twixt two stately Towers, is adorn'd in the middest with a porch of the Dorrick & a Bellcony of the Ionick order, 'on each side \ of which are / two rowes of windowes double transom curiously carved, & at the top ~~of all~~ \ there / is raile & ballisters instead of battlements.[402] You ascend (having pass'd through the midst of the Hall) by a large hanging stair with a square pit or newell which lands at the dineing rome; and it was the first of that sort in Westm'land. And within this chapelry a quarry of red [blank][403]

[Acorn Bank]
The last but not the least to be noted is Acorn Banke in the chappelry of Sowerby, whose situation is much like Howgil

[I.540]

in a groave of trees under an hill, & tho more confined yet more pleasing \ & / dilicate, as being more neare to the heart of the Countrey & directly opposite to the Forrest of Whinfell, which gives a great beauty & ornament to it. But that which is most to be noted here is a curiouse additionall piece of building of a parlour & dineing room, the outside of which is of red free-stone, well wrought & polish'd & plac'd (according to the Tuscan manner) with excavations betwixt every course;[404] with which I conclude this section of Raritye in Nature & Arte.[405]

[Further 'Raritye in Nature']

[I.541A]

Milburne in Kirkby Thore (1692). A Live Toad found in limstone spar 15 fathom deep.
May 30. 1692. Thomas Blemire of Apelby butcher, informeth and offereth to depose the same upon oath, that working in the lead mines at Silveray Band \ on Milburne Fell / in the Parish of Kirkbythore, & haveing sunk 15 fathom deepe, they found in a rock spar (which they clave with a wedge & a great iron mell) a live toad, the place wherein she lodged being a round hole in which he could turne his \ double'd / hand. The said Thomas struck in the mell, & Ed. Threlkeld of Dufton \ now living / held the wedge. But as soon as she was carried up {in the kible to open aer, she dyed. This is True & I will swear it. Tho: Blamiere.}[406]

[I.541B]

! Ad Milburn a toad 15 fathom deepe.
{Eye witness of it: Tho. Shelding, Stuart;[407] Rowland Hall; Will Porter, dead; & 9 or 10 more.}
See a let[er] of it to Mr Houghton at Numb. 5.

[I.544A]

[Strange Birds]
Kirkbythore: Mr Charles Dalston informes that he had a white sparrow taken at Ackorn Bank mill \ when he was a boy / {April 1672 info capta: Charles Dalston ætat 26}[408] And that there was a crow taken at Ackorn Bank, haveing iiij feet, the skin whereof hung in the hall for many years after, when he was a stripling!

---

[401] Altered by Machell and Edward Addison, see Hyde & Pevsner, 523; see also, Colvin, *Biographical Dictionary of British Architect*s (1995 edn), 631-32.
[402] For more on the architecture, see Hyde and Pevsner, 522-23; John F. Curwen, *The Castles And Fortified Towers Of Cumberland, Westmorland And Lancashire North-of-the-Sands*, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913), 281-283; see also Denis R. Perriam and John Robinson, The *Medieval Fortified Buildings of Cumbria,* CWAAS Extra Series 29 (Kendal, 1998).
[403] The sentence ends abruptly here, but in the margin is a much-faded pencilled comment which begins, 'which Southern people call more improper by the name of…' The rest of the comment is illegible.
[404] In the 1670s, John Dalston chose William Thackeray, builder, of Torpenhow, to extend the building, Hyde & Pevsner, 633.
[405] But see pages below.
[406] Signed by Thomas Blamire; the list of eyewitnesses is on I.541B.
[407] Steward.
[408] Information given by the captor: Charles Dalston, aged 26.

Of a white sparrow – a crow with 4 legs, & [blank] [409]
Quaere of a magpie of strange colours at Johnby: T. D. {T. Dalston 50.}

[I.547]

Memorandum: On May Day 1687, being Sunday, in goeing to Sowerby Chaple, I saw in Moore Acres in Kirkbythore field, a raven menalled[410] or speckd with white both on the body, wings & tale, the speckes being about as big as a pea.

[I.548]

[Other Rarities]
At K[irkby Thore] Parson[age] last year, a dasy 1 inch and a half in diameter which [was] 4 inches & ½ about.
The barr of Iron & other things found, in digging – the little house on the left hand as you goe to Penrith.



Figure 1.14.13. 'The little house on the left as you goe to Penrith'. I.548.

[I.540]

§. [Civil Government]
For the civill government of this Parish, it is divided into three Constablewicks: Kirkbythore, Milburne & Temple Sowerby.

[1.] Kirkbythore consisteth of the Lordship or Towne of Kirkbythore with som part of Hale; wherein there is but one Gentlemans seat (besides the Rectory) call'd Kirkbythore Hall; which belongs to Hum[phrey] Wharton Esq. of Gilling in Yorkshire, whose Armes are Sable a manch Argent.

2. Milburne, which conteineth in it the Chappelry of Milburne; & consists of Kirkhouse (a smal Lordship or Hamlett held of the Rectory of Kirkbythore) where the Chapel standeth; Gullom Holm (an other smal Hamlet); & Milburn & Grange (2 handsom villages) which are all belonging to Howgil Castle – the seat of Sir Richard Sandford Baronet; who was borne (as 'tis said) in the very same hour his father was [murdered]. Thence in 1675 our valiant Gent dyed, being barbarously stabed ~~in 1675~~ by a London Hector[411] (in 1675) ere his sword was unsheathed, whom yet he opposed[412] with undaunted courage, even after his caul came out at the wound.[413] He bears for his Arms, parted per chevron Sable & Ermine, 2 boars' heads in chiefe couped Argent.[414]

[409] This information is repeated on MS I.544B.
[410] Menil or meanel: adjective relating to a spotted, speckled or dappled animal. *OED*.
[411] Hector: 'a swaggering fellow; a swash-buckler; a braggart, blusterer, bully. Frequent in the second half of the 17th century; specifically, a set of disorderly young men who infested the streets of London. *OED*. The original Hector was the eldest son of King Priam of Troy, see Homer's *Illiad*.
[412] MS: 'resisted \ opposed /.' Another instance in which Machell allowed an alternative to remain while underlining another with a pecked line. This transcription has chosen the interlineated word.
[413] Sandford was killed in Whitefriars on 8 Sept. 1675, by Henry Symbal and William Jones, who were executed shortly afterwards: See John Burke, Sir Bernard Burke, Bernard Burke, *A Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies of England, Ireland and Scotland* (London, 1838), 467.
[414] Similar text appears on MS.I.507: 'This was the seat of the late unfortunate \ but worthy / Sir Richard, who barbarously slane (by 2 Ruffians) at London where he faught with the pudding hanging out of his belly …'

{L.M.}[415] \ Unto which I shall add the Arms of Mr Lancelot Machell of Milburn ~~aforesaid~~ (third son of Lancelot Machell Esq. \ of Crakanthorp Hall Kirkbythore, lately deceas'd /). The which are, Sable; three greyhounds in paile courant, Argent; coller'd Or with a mullet in chiefe for distinctions sake of a younger Brother. /

3. Sowerby: which consists of that Chappelry, being one entire Lordship, the chiefe place whereof is Acorn-Banke, the Seat of Christopher son of John Dalston of Milnrigg Esq.[416] somtime Burgess of Apleby,[417] whose Arms are Argent a cheveron ingraled between 3 dawes heads errased Sable armed Or; & for distinction of a second house, a cresant charged upon the cheveron.

FINIS

[**Narrative 5**]

Of Kirkbythore Parish

[I.754]

{§1.} The chiefe Town of this Parish wherein the Church standeth, is Kirkby Thore, near to the conflux of Troutbeck & Eden.

{Name olim}[418]

It is called Gallagum*[419] and \ by som / Gallatum quasi \ Vallatum / Vallo Cinctum,[420] though wee do not now finde the least example of a Trench about it, but at the Burwens (or old Castle-Stead) which Camden calls Wheallop,[421] that there may be som ~~comfort in the sound of the words~~ \ harmony twixt it and Gallatum, the name of the Town. /

{§ 2.} {Whelp Castle}

But wee (with all due respect and reverence to so grave an Author – and upon better grounds) do with the vulgar call it Whelp Castle; which he comes very near in his merginal note (where he puts down things in their natural sounds) for he calls it Whellep!!† Which is a large square fortification nobely seated in a plane Champion countrey on every side,[422] wherein these rem[ains] of Roman Antiquityes have bin discovered.

When once the Romanes had made themselves masters of this Towne‡ (in order to which wee finde they had severall Campes & Retrenchements; as may be seen on Crakenthorpe Moore, S. from hence about a mile; at Brant Crooke in Marton-Field S.E. from hence about the same distance; and on the Hale More, almost as far North),[423] they made it a Collony and fixed a standing Quarter here for their Horse-Guards. As \ may / appear from \ this Inscription upon / ~~of~~ stone lately digd up without of the foundations of a Romane Temple, as wee suppose ~~This inscription ph o~~ (for it had bin compassed about with pillars) whereof this was one of the many p[l]inths: DEO ALA –⸸ As also from ~~a~~ \ the / Paved Casway \ now / calld Maiden Way, leading from hence to Caerverron on the Picts Wall (where the foote were ingarrisond) to facilitate & hasten their march unto the frontiers upon all occasions. And upon some glorious expedition in which they have had, another ~~Altar~~ was erected, found about

---

[415] Machell was referring to his father, Lancelot Machell (c.1617-81), and his brother (also named Lancelot), see Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', 110-44. See also Angus Winchester, 'Machell, Thomas (bap. 1647, d. 1698), antiquary. *ODNB*.

[416] Millrigg, near Culgaith. The house was built in 1597 by the Birbeck family. The Dalstons of Acorn Bank purchased it in 1661. A datestone of 1669 records its refurbishment: Hyde & Pevsner, 318.

[417] A note on a scrap page (I.535B) gives the following. MS: 'The seat of X D. Esq., the son & heire of J. D. Esq., who was a member of the 1 Parliament of King Charles for the Burrow of Apelby. Machell.'

[418] 'Once named.'

[419] This word was written as 'Gallatum', but then corrected to 'Gallagum' using heavier ink, see Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 761.D.

[420] '…as if walled, or surrounded by a wall.'

[421] In Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 761.

[422] For 'champion', see the English Glossary.

[423] MS: 'in Marton-Field, ~~another Camp which is a mile also~~ S.E. from hence; ~~&~~ about the same distance. And ~~other one~~ on the Hale More, almost \ as far / as much North).'

the same time.[424] Fortuna, which had bin a Plinth to one of those Columns (whereof there were many) surrounding the Temple. As also from a paved casway 10 DEI FORT Sp.[425]

[Machell's Notes: I.754]

*{Gallagum Ptolemæi, q[uo]d Antonino Gallatum. suffragante Intineraria distantia, nec prorsus reclamante nomine; quae enim a Gall Brittanni inceperunt, in Wal Converterunt Angli. Sic Galloru[m] Wallingford et val sever – wall sever &c. dixerunt.}[426]
{Camden sic scribet – Flumen Eden, "fertur in Occasum – per Kikbythuer, sub quo magna Rudera velusti Oppidi visuntur."}[427]
†ut: see a letter to Adams.[428]
‡{The manner of these Romane Buildings I shall farther discribe at Plumpton in Cumberland, when I come to speake of that Place;[429] for their I descovered the fairest footsteps of the way and method of placeing their fabrics (such is mor[e] Graecorum)[430] from the foundations which yet are apparent.}
⸸{Found in 169 – at [?] & now in my Cast. but ded[icated] to Crakenthorp Hall. Add DEO ALÆ.}
{Whellep} Romanique numi subinde eruuntur Wheallep Castle Hodie Nuncupant (in Margine) Whellep ... nota scribuntur [nomina?], si per Antiquitatis præt[erita] rem liceat dicerem esse."'[431]

[I.754A]

[The Circuit of Gallatum][432]
{!!!} Now, as to the precincts of this ancient town; if I were to trace it out by guess of it I should begin at the Tithe Barne & thence pursue the Rampiare & Ditch till it come at the settle in Parsons Croft. Thence Southwards down the said settle towards the Hall till you [come] to Dob Kill well in Allan Mire. Thence down the current of the said well to the River Troutbeck. Thence \ Westward / down the river to the Romane Way, Bridg[e]s & hippocrene. – And a little below that, turneing N. by old T. Stead till it turns agane Eastwards at the foote of Water Man Crof[t]; Thence directly North up the current

[424] MS: 'And upon some g~~ood~~ \lorious expedition in which they have ~~happy expedition they~~ had another ~~Altar~~ was erected, found about the same time.'
[425] The sentence following reads, MS: '{And may very well be […] to this place, being the only place of rest, which is to touche them.}', but, as it has been written in pencil and overwritten in faded brown ink, this is an unsafe transcription.
[426] This is a direct quotation from Camden, *Britannia* (1607 edn). It translates as, 'The Gallagum of Ptolemy, which to Antoninus was Gallatum, a name supporting and not directly contradicting the distant links; for what [words] the Britons began with 'Gall', the English converted into 'Wal'. Thus, they called Galldriu[m] Wallingford, and Valsever Wallsever etc.' See also Holland (1637 edn), 761D.
[427] 'Camden writes thus: "the River Eden flows westward – through Kirkbythore, under which can be seen great building stones, as if of a town."' Camden's Latin is as follows, 'Intento hinc cursu in occasum aestivum fertur fluvius per Buley castrum episcopi Carleolensis et Kirkby Thore, sub quo magna rudera vetusti opidi visuntur …' Machell's quotations from Camden's Latin occasionally only approximate to Camden's text.
[428] See Part 3, Ch.2: 'Correspondence with John Adams, cartographer. 1686/7.'
[429] Plumpton (between Penrith and Carlisle on the A6 road) is the site of the Roman camp Voreda or 'Old Penrith'. Machell mentioned Plumpton in Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities,VI.245, IV.82; in Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.401 and I.417; and on MS.IV.76A.
[430] A word placed between 'such' and 'is' is unclear but the comment appears to mean, 'In the manner of the Greeks'. A note written along the left margin of I.745A asks, 'Query Where should this come in?'
[431] 'And Roman coins are recovered from under there. Today they name it Wheallep Castle.' (In the margin, 'Whelllep') '... known [names?] are written, if, with the passing of Antiquity, I may be allowed to say it.' Again, the Latin presented in Machell's notes only approximates to Camden's text in *Britannia.* See Camden, *Britannia* (1607 edn).
[432] I.745A and I.745B are scrap note pages, 9cm x 20cm., with text written in several directions across and along each page. A note written along the left margin of I.745A, asks, 'Query. Where should this come in?' [a question that might well have been asked by this oft-perplexed editor. The hand appears to be that of William Nicolson but the sentiment is one that I share. Ed.]

[I.754B]

of Kelke to Stean Brig; & so agane Northwards up Kelk Meadow \ Bottom / to Slan Flatt. So on Northwards down Haneing, & about the Coste of Little Hall to Kirk – Ing – Runnet[h].[433] Thence \ Sc. / up Kirk to the Tithe Barne. This I should take to be the circuit of Gallatum.[434]

[Machell's Notes: I.745A and I.745B]]

{There is a short account of Roman Inscriptions in my [blank] and which I read thus: Forta valla (sive vallati N[omen] sacru[m]),[435] wherein ~~the N of the Ancient T is light touched~~ there seemeth to be a light touch of the Old Gallatum.}[436]

{I had not known that Honourable person – Roger Machell, at least no[t] so much as I know of him \ now / but from Roger Head in the High Demaine, being the only thing here that reteineth his memory: and what is published of him in [blank]}

[**Narrative 6**]

[Further Notes on the descents of the Machells, the Kirkbythores and the Catuli]

[I.508]

Ad Crakanthorp; et deus \ tam / patriae quam paterni domus o[r]namenta[437]

3[0] Ed. 2. [1309-1310]	John de Kirkbythore Partes de Kirkbythore	Thomas Mauchel	Robert de Newbiggin
3[0] Ed. 2.	John de Kirkbythore Ten[t] m. de Kirkbythore	Thomas Machell ten. Crakanthorp	Robert de Newbiggin tenet Newbiggin
43 Ed. 3 [1369-1370]	John de Kirkbythore Ten[t] M de Kirkbythore	John Mauchael tenet m. de Crak.	William de Crakanthorp, ten. m. de Newbiggin Johes (de) Crakanthorp & de Newby
10. Henry 5th {!} He reigned but 9.[438]	Johes de Kirkbythore, m. de Kirkbythore	John Machell m. de Crakanthorp	{Joh. Crak. Esq. Rec[eiver] and stuart for R.3. In MS5, p.84.

Out of the pedigree Gilbertus de Wherton

Joan fil William Collynson de Kirkbythore 2. Henry 4. [1400-1401]	Obijt 14. Hen. VI = Johanna, relicta et superstes 15. Hen. 6. [1436-1437]	=Johannam fil. et heredem [blank] Kirkby [blank] de Kirkbythore	I doe believe that Gilbert de Querton maryed the heiress of John de Kirkbythore: It agrees so well with the inquisitions – John de Kirkbythore being seised thereof in the last of Henry 5th, & she left a widow, Anno 16. H. VI. [1437-1438]
Henry 4. reigned 12 years after:[439] Hen. 5. 9.[440]	Scribitur Joanna fil William Collynson de Kirkythore, 2 Hen. 4 ~~et fill~~ abbi Joana fil. et hær. Kirkby de Kirkbythore		
Hen. VI. [1422-1461]	Et Johanna fil. et haer. of Kirkby of Kirkbythore, relict et superstes, 15. Henry VI. [1436-1437]	= John Wherton de Kirkbythore, 18. and 20. Hen. [1439-1442]	

[Machell's Notes 'de Kirkbythore'. I.484] [441]

Walderi de Kirkbythore

---

[433] This word is partly obscured by the binding.
[434] MS 'Gallagum' (the 'g' has been overwritten with 't' to form 'Gallatum'.)
[435] 'The name of the walled [Sc. town]'.
[436] Machell here seems to say that 'Gallatum' sounds similar to 'Vallatum'.
[437] 'At Crakanthorp: and God is as much the embellishment of the fatherland as of a father's house.'
[438] Henry V died in the 10th year of his reign, in 1422.
[439] Henry IV reigned from 1399 to 1413.
[440] The 9th year of Henry V was 1421/22.
[441] Taken from a short set of notes on MS.I.484.

|
Mr Ada[m] fil[ius] Walderi de Kirkbythore 6^0 Joh. [1204-1205] ut supponitur è MS carta Com. Pemb.}[442]
|
Gilbert de Kirkbythore: 14. of Edward I. [1285-1286]
|
John de Kirkbythore: 43. of Edward 3. [1369-1370] è cart penes Mr Blenkinsop.[443]

[I.544B]

The Ancient family of the Machell of Crakenthorp {are} in all likelihood (as may be collected the near affinity of their name & seate by ancient tradition & deeds without date which I have) descended from the foresaid Whelp as the common ancestour both of Machells & Kirkbythores*; the former reteineing their ancient NAME, with a marke of disfavour, perhaps from the Conquerour \ as haveing opposed him in defence of their country; / for they were call'd Malchens, Malchaells & Machells, & adhered to that name of their greatest glorie, still holding there with the Lordship of Crakenthorp \ at the least by Capitulation / Idq[u]e non per Drengagium sed per nobile cornagij servicium sicut ipsi NORMANNI;[444] the latter changeing it & instead thereof assumeing the sirname de Kirkbythore {which is long since extinct.} But however it was, this is most certaine that the Machells of Crakanthorp have [blank]

Machell's Notes: I.544B]

*Speak of Whelp of Whelp Castle; sayeth what to say hon[oura]bly.

[I.757]

[Narrative 7]

The Shorter Way for the General History (the other being more fit for a Private Booke of the Family) is this that follows

The Castle at this end being called Whelp Castle, & the Gill at the other end under Caer Verron bein[g] called Glen-Whelp, so that Whelp is the same with the English Saxons that Catulus was amongst the Romans. But upon their recess and \ the others […][445] / they chang'd the names thereof of places & persons into their own language;[446] whence the ancient Abalaba was called Appelby; Bælineum, Balineum; Bravoniacum as Browham; & thus Gallagum, of which wee are treating, was called Kirkbythore.

And there was one Whelp \ Vir / Lord of this place about the time of the Norman Conquest \ as we find / which if Camden had know he would not believed, since [Whelp] quite eclipsed the ~~Ancient~~ old name of the Towne.[447]

{The Family of Catuli with Cæsar}

For the Catuli were an ancient, famous and florishing family amongst the Romans, of which there were no less than 5 Consuls, and one of them – a \ most / famous oratour before Tullies time – was Quintus Luctatius Catulus, brother to Caius Julius Cæsar[448] who first entered Brittaine and alterd his sirname into \ that of / Cæsar upon an extraordinary occasion que Cæsus ex utero matris fuerit, from being cut out of his mothers \ womb.[449] / But his nephew Augustus, who was call'd Cæsar also \ and at a greater distance from then / had a Greyhound stamped \ upon / the reverse of his coynes & ~~medals~~; a Proper Emblem of his original \ descent at being descended of the Roman Catuli. /

---

[442] '…as may be supposed from a MS document of the Countess of Pembroke.'
[443] 'From a charter in the possession of Mr Blenkinsop.'
[444] 'And this not through drengage but through the noble service of cornage, like the Normans themselves.'
[445] This word is illegible.
[446] MS: 'they chang'd ~~to the~~ the names thereof of places & persons into ~~other names of~~ their own language.'
[447] This paragraph is followed by '~~§4.~~', struck through.
[448] MS: '~~And (That~~ was Quintus Luctatius Catulus (~~of which sir names most of them were~~) brother to Caius Julius Cæsar'.
[449] See below: I.758.

{And} Note ut Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons, who succeeded them here & changd the names of persons and places into their own language; whence Gallatum was cald Kirkbythore from their \ Saxon God / Great God \ Thor whose Temple was here / which they worshiped here. And a famous one it should seem to have bin which gave name to the place \ since it quite traduced / and quite obliterated the ancient name of it. This Thor was worship[ped] after this manner. But the Castle they called Whelp Castle, as it is to this day. And there was one Whelp &c.[450]

[Machell's Notes: I.757]

{Write in this paper Referrenda}[451]

[I.758]

{And the Catuli were famous with them \ 5 consuls / Cæsar himselfe who 1[t] entered Brit. being one of that House. But he changed his Sir name into that of Cæsar, ab eventu quodam Extraord[inario] (ab utero matris Cæsus fuerit)[452] from being cut out of his mothers womb.[453] And Augustus his nephew (who continued the sir name of Cæsar) also had a greyhound stampd upon his Coyn, a proper Emblem.}[454]

[I.756]

August[us] Cæsars haveing a Greyhound upon his Coyn.

Augustus Cæsar, Nephew to Q[uintus] Luctatius Catulus, the Brother of Julius, had a Greyhound stampe: all Confirmations that som of the Catuli were here before him and might now […][455] Which is not a thing to be wonder'd at – for the Rom[ans] certainely were not exhausted but they left som men of Note to lead the Brittaines & defend the frontiers, who intermaryed & continued amongst them. {Rex Scot. 1135.}[456]

[I.758]

§3. [The Maiden Way]

{This maiden of which I now spoke calld Maiden Great & Maiden Gall in deed without date – goes directly N. over the m[ountains] from K[irkby Thore] to a fort cald Caer Verron near the Picts Wall.} And Though there be An old wifes fable of a Westmorlands Gentlemans who \ ~~liv'd Hear / in this Country~~, \ that / making This \ casway / way for the love a maide That lived in Northumberland: who would not have him when he had don't until he could set It up on end. ~~Yet~~ (leaveing such storys with their relaters) I do conclude It {to be a worke of} The Romes, and \ that it was either / Don by Varronius because his name~~s~~ is not onely \ preservd / in the Fort of Caer Verron \ by the Picts Wall whither it leads / but inscribed allso upon a Read Rock near to this place called Crawdundale in the Parish of Newbiging. By which it should seem that Varronius \ rught[457] / caus'd this ~~name~~ \ way / to be made.[458] {Where at a Little […][459] House I found this ~~inscription~~ fragment of an Inscription, the Insc. being burn'd out by use as the stone behind the fire.}

[450] See the first part of I.757; the phrase also occurs on I.761-2; twice on I.767.
[451] With regard to the term, 'Referrenda', the title on the previous page, I.756, is, 'Referrenda. Kendal Barony. Gallana Anglie opidum nunc Killenton near Kendal in Westm'land', but the page is otherwise empty.
[452] '.... from an extraordinary occurrence (he was cut from his mother's womb.)'
[453] The name 'Caesar' is from 'caesaries' meaning 'red-haired'.
[454] See MS.I.757for a similar paragraph.
[455] The rest of the sentence has perished.
[456] The king of Scotland in 1135 was David I (1124-1153). Pasted here is a scrap of paper containing notes which have been included in this edition elsewhere. The paper is torn, suggesting a longer text.
[457] 'wrought'.
[458] For analysis of this inscription, see Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.193-97.
[459] This word is blotted. It begins with 'D' and appears to have 'ing' at the end, although even this is partly obscured by the binding.



Figure 1.14.14. Inscription. I.758.

§4. Or \ else / perhaps, som of The Catuli might be concernd in this negotiation*, since the castle \ which ~~standeth~~ stood / at this end of the casway \ ~~was by the Saxons~~ / is called Whelp-Castle \ q. castrum Catulina. / And the Gill by Caer Verron\ the way under Caer Verron / at the other end of it is called Glen-Whelp†.
The 1. that I meet with of this \ ancient / name in the \ Romane / History, was called C. Luctatius Catulus; And was Consul of Rome with A. Posthumus Albinus, anno ~~Urbis cond. 511 & anno~~ mundi 3723 \ et Urbis conditie 511‡ / of whom tis related or rather of Quintus Luctatius Catulus⸸, Consul of Rome with Manlius Actius the next year following, that with 300 Roman ships he vanquished 600 of the Carthaginians, with Amilcar their admiral,[460] & 15 of his original {2. Anno mundi 3724.}

[Machell's Notes: I.758]
*Or perhaps som of the Catuli might have an hand in it.
†And from this Glen Whelp might possibly arise the name of Whelpdel} {Eutropius. 1.2} {for Whelp is the same with the English Saxons as that Catulus was amongst the Romans.} {See Glen in Ray & Skinner}[461]
‡Convallis Catuli Anno Mundi 3723 {Eutropius p.2.}[462]
⸸Take which you please, the mistake is not great nor much material.

[I.759]
at the Ægêan Isles 'twix Cicily and Affrica. And so put an end to the 1ˢᵗ Punic-War. A man of no less mercy than valour; for at their intreaty he granted them Peace upon the condition that they should quit all that part of Spain which lyes beyond Iberis, and surrender unto him the Isles \ of Sardinia & / of Cicily, which was don accordingly.

The next was Quintus Luctatius Catulus,[463] brother to C. Julius Cæsar,[464] whose mother Popilia was prima pro rostris laudata mulier apud Romanos*.[465] & although Cæsar {who tooke the name Cæsar ab eventu quodam extraordinario q[uod] cæsus ab utro matris fuerit[466] being cut out of his mothers womb.} And although Cæsar changd {his name and began a new family, yet Augustus his nephew, as remembering the House from which he sprang, had a Greyhound stamped upon his Coyn.†}[467]

[460] Hamilcar Barca.
[461] John Ray, *Collection of English Words* (1674) 2nd edn, enlarged (1691) [the first dialect dictionary in a European language: see https://academic.oup.com/book/9269]; Stephen Skinner, *Etymologicon Linguae Anglicanae* (1671).
[462] Eutropius (*fl.* CE 363–387), *Breviarium Historiae Romanae* (*Summary of Roman History*).
[463] Quintus Lutatius Catulus: Roman politician, died 61/60 BC: https://www.britannica.com/biography.
[464] MS: 'The next was Quintus Luctatius Catulus, Brother to C. Julius Cæsar {~~who tooke the name Caesar ab eventum quodam extrao. from being cut out of his mothers womb~~} (who ~~I treated before~~)'.
[465] '… the first woman among the Romans to be lauded from the public platform.'
[466] 'From an extraordinary occurrence, that he was cut from his mother's womb.'
[467] A small amount of this text is missing; much is squeezed into the margin, some of it crossed through.

This Catulus was a famous Orator before Tullies time;[468] of whom he writes (as of one of his masters) in his 2 *Booke de Oratore* {Cicero *de Orat*. L.2. p.177},[469] and brings in Antonius speakeing thus of Him, "Confidentius loquor qu[ando] Catulus auditor accessit: cuj non solum NOS, Latini sermonis; sed \ etiam / GRÆCI ipsi, solent Linguæ \ suæ / subtilitatem elegantiamque Concedere."[470] Where he calls him Senex Quintus Catulus; and so he might well, being Consul of Rome with Caius Manlius when Cicero was but VI years of age, anno mundi 3864, urbis conditæ, 652.[471] And the next year following he was Proconsul (Caius Marius, & Marcus Aquilius being Consul at that Time) when he, with Marius vanquis'd the Cimbers. Ubi Catulus felicius pugnavit, sayes Eutropius.[472] But after this, upon a sedition ariseing in the City, Marius

[Machell's Notes: I.759]

*{q. whether it will com in better here, or before.}
†{see Leighs *Accedence of Arm[orie].*}[473]

[I.760]

(being then in greater Authority and perhaps not well pleased with his Noble Character) commands him to dye, the citizens intercedeing invane; and caus'd him to be stifled in bed with hot burneing coals. But his death was after revenged by Sulla,[474] who slew Marius Junior. Concerneing which Lucan writeth thus: Quid sanguine Manes Placatos referam Catuli?[475]

{Popularity}
But Catulus his son was so much esteem'd of amongst the ROMANES that when Sylla was dead and he recommended great Pompey unto them as their onely General; asking them if they would continue (In uno Magno Pompeio omnia reponere)[476] to put all their trust in great Pompey alone? They all cryed out with one consent saying, In Te O Catule*! In Thee O Catullus. He was Consul of ROME with Marcus Lepidus Anno m. 3888, urbis conditæ 676. And subdued Lepidus when he went about to revive the ashes and blow up the sparks of the late Civil Wars after Syllas death: Yet \ he / would ~~he~~ not Triumph in the Blood of his \ own / Countrymen, ~~but returned home~~ \ and therefore caused /a small sword only \ to be / caryed before him \ at his returne, / resembling rather a Mourner than Conquerour. He was

[Machell's Note: I.760]

*{Valer. Maximus p.389.}[477]

[I.761]

contemporary with Tullius Cicero, and saved the Capitol when ~~It was~~ set on fier. And left this noble character after him that, 'He was a man of no less Integrity, than of gravity, and of Authority amongst his Citizens.'
Lastly, \ one / Sextus Ælius Catulus was Consul of ROME with Caius Sensius Saturninus in the VI year after CHRISTS nativity, which was Anno Mundi 3968 & urbus conditæ 756.

[468] Marcus Tullius Cicero.
[469] Cicero (106-43 BC), author of *De Oratore*.
[470] '"I speak with more confidence whenever Catulus has approached to listen: not only do we acknowledge his subtlety and elegance in the Latin language, but so do the Greeks themselves in their own tongue."'
[471] 'The year following the foundation of Rome.' [The official Roman chronology.]
[472] Eutropius, *Breviarium Historiae Romanae*.
[473] Gerard Leigh, *The Accedence of Armorie* (1563).
[474] Lucius Cornelius Sulla, 138-78 BC.
[475] 'Why should I mention the departed Shades of Catulus, appeased by blood?' Lucan (Marcus Annaeus Lucanus, 39-65 AD), *Pharsalia*, or, *De Bello Civili* (*On the Civil War*).
[476] 'To place everything in one man, Pompey the Great.'
[477] Valerius Maximus was a Latin writer and author of a collection of historical anecdotes: *Factorum ac dictorum memorabilium libri IX* (*Nine books of memorable deeds and sayings*), also known as *De factis dictisque memorabilibus* or *Facta et dicta memorabilia*.

Now, what Catulus was with the Romans, the same was WHELP with the English Saxons who succeded them here till the Norman Conquest ~~for about~~ and changed all the names of ~~Cityes &~~ places \ & persons / (or at least most of them) into their Own Language: so making use of the Roman Temple which I spoke of before; or (perhaps) erecting a new one here to \ the honour of / their great God Thor~~e~~ (whence we have the word Thorsday) they called the Town adjacent thereto Kirkbythore;[478] but the castle wherein wee suppose it had stoode by {Castrum Catulinum} they called Whelp-Castle as it is to this day.[479]

[I.762]

Now, as Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons – so this castle might be called Whelp Castle from som of the Catuli by whom it was built; and by whom perhaps the way might be made.[480]

§5. And there yet rem[ained] one of the Catuli whom the Saxons calld Whelp, Lord of this place and parts adjacent (vir magni nominis et Authoritatis)[481] about the time of the Norman Invasion. But wee cannot sup[pose] It ~~builded~~ \ erected / by him, being a Romane structure & long before his time; but rather by som of the Romane Catuli, from \ whom / he \ might spring / may seeme to have bin descended; for there was but 626 yeares \ and many familyes have lasted so long / betwixt the recess of the Roman Armyes ~~who doubtless left to in men of note to instruct lead the Brit~~ and the Norman Conquest \ invasion / […][482] and doubtless when the [Romans] build the Picts Wall, put the Brittaines to defend it.[483]
{The Brittons to defend themselves, and doubtless when they left their colonyes they would put them in a defensive posture and leave some trusty Rom[an] to head them, who settled & intermarried amongst them.}[484]
But for ~~what was~~ things that were before the Conquest wee are much in the Darke*, as Sir William Dugdal himselfe doth planely confess;[485] (and for my \ own / part I must \ freely / declare) that I never \ yet / saw, an Original Evidence, ~~whither~~ in the Tower or ~~anywhere~~ \ elsewhere / that I could be assurd was the ~~afore the Conq~~ \ beyond that date / ~~w the Conquest~~, which makes me conjecture \ conclude / That the Normans took care to call in ~~& cancell~~ all former Deeds Charters & Evidences, to the End That all holding of Them, It might make their government more suer & absolute. \ to ~~destroy them~~ all when they alterd the government & make oer still more firm & secure. /

§6. This Whelp \ or Catulus as / it should seem, had Isue 2 son, for the \ very / name doth witness \ ~~repeates the~~ / \ proclameth / the one; and this Descent \ which I have subjoyned / will evince the others, Haeth & Gamel; whereof the former being removd \ from hence / was called Le Maschael – & Malus Catullus† q[uo]d instar ferocissimi in hostes sevijt.[486] The others of in mane peaceable temper, continued here \ a name less injourious races imply called Gamel, son of Whelp & C. / who at last assumed the sirname of Kirkbythore‡.[487]

---

[478] MS following: '~~as tis writ to this day And the Maga …within Latin~~'.
[479] A similar paragraph to that of §5, placed here in the MS, has been deleted from this edition. An additional margin note, '{N.B. The ringstone found with a man upon it, hideing his head as it were in the […] with a […] at his foote; as like wise the pot sherd found in the well […]}', is too close to the body text to allow accurate transcription.
[480] MS: A similar sentence appears on I.767.
[481] 'A man of great reputation and authority.'
[482] This is followed by 7cm of illegible text.
[483] MS: 'and doubtless ~~the Remnants~~ when they build ~~Walyes (even in those dayes have besides~~ the Picts Wall put the Brittaines to defend ~~the land~~ it.'
[484] Another MS margin comment reads: '{The hard task of def[ending] themselves & secureing the frontier. The Roman \ Emperor / would not leave them defenceless without som men of note \ & qu. / to lead and instruct them & [blank]}'
[485] MS: '\ doth planely / doth confess.'
[486] '... because he raged against the enemy like the fiercest of men.'
[487] MS: '~~& by the pane of Gamel~~ son of Whelp & C. who at last assumed the sirname of Kirkbythore' [followed by 2cm of illegible text].

{ad Crak[enthorpe] Mal.}
That the Mul, Mau or Malus is beyond dispute of Norman imposition; & a note of hostile & invi[n]cible \ valour / courage⸸, and affixd to the names of persons of the greatest quality amongst the Normanes. So: Malgenes, Maugerns, Malus Gerus – Gerus itselfe being a common name, as in the Deed of W. Malus Cat[ul]us, so the[y] olim calld the Best and Bravest: in[fra] malia[m] Terram Geri.[488]

[Machell's Notes: I.762]

*~~I could never meete with any \ original / Evidence~~, {only King Edward the Confessor Ch. and that is an extract of an original.}
†{which I have seen (in the evidence of booke of the family of Crakanthorp) translated.}
‡{And see this more large in my Booke of Rom[an] inscription.}
⸸{Malpus locus inaccessibilis – Malcheal Cat[ulus] Invincibilis Catulus.}[489]

[I.763]

{Catulus vulgo Whelp = dictus}

1. Haltheus = Eva
Ma – Catulus = Lat.
Sive[490]
Mal – Whelp [=] Saxon
Malchene [=] Gal.
Le Ma\u/lchael [=] Norm.
{Whose descendants were soon hereafter sealed with a figure \ fierce dog / (or som such creature) with a forked tail in a rappid rampant & ravenous posture.} {Leaping as it were, upon his prey.}[491]

{Try and examine if they will fall righ[t]}	Willelmus Ma-Catulus	Umfridas Macatulus et Malchal dictus	Alexand.	
	Galfridas Macatulus			
	Willelmus Machael [fil Galf. Mc]	Thomas Malchael fil Galf. Mc	Henricus	Alexand.
Roger Malus Catulus Dom[ini] custodis mag[num] Ang[liae] sigill[um] but vice-[?] dictus	Alexander Mauchall, Miles	= Domine Dolata de hereditate Johannis		
	Johes Mauchel, fil Alex.			

[488] '... as in the Deed of W. Malus Cat[ul]us – so they once calld the Best and Bravest within the land of the Mali, "Geri".'
[489] 'Malpus: an inaccessible place – Malcheal Catulus: Catulus the invincible.'
[490] 'Or.'
[491] On MS.I.767, a scribbled, faded, pencilled note appears to read: 'A signet of a dog at his foote and the […] I trust as ensigne'.

[I.372A]

M[ANU] ROG[ERI] MAL[I] CAT[ULI] [DOM[INI] CUSTODIS MAG[NUM] ANG[LIAE] SIG[ILLUM] [492]



Figure 1.14.15. The Great Seal of England, kept by Roger Malus Catulus. I.372.

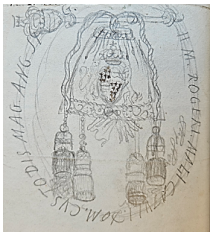


Figure 1.15.16. The Great Seal turned through 180 degrees. I.372.

[I.763]

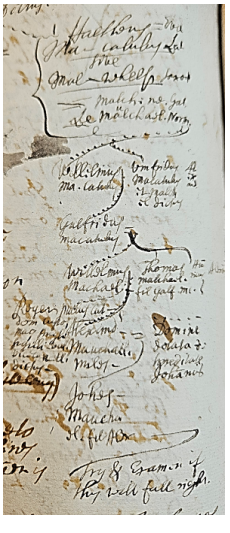


Figure 1.14.17. Machell descent. I.763

[492] 'The great seal of England, by the hand of the Lord Keeper, Roger Malus Catulus'. When turned through 180 degrees the image clearly shows a royal emblem with orb and crown, supported by lion and unicorn, with other emblems on the coat of arms, all suspended from a sceptre by four ropes with tassels. 'Because the tassel was commanded by God to be worn on the borders of all Jewish garments, it became not only an emblem of Christianity but also one of authority, repute and majesty': https://www.heraldryclipart.com/symbolism/t.html.

2. Gamel, the son of Whelp who have Isue = Whealdeve, who had Isue ~~Gil~~b. Gibert, who first assu[m]ed the local Sirname of de Kirkbythore, according to the Norman fashion.
I once thought the Machells had com'd in with the Conquerour ~~& bin and deseended of those Lords that eame in with the Conquest~~, there being a notable city in Flanders and an ancient barony belonging thereto called Machellen,[493] now corruptly Malines. i.e. the city of Machell, as Antwerpen is the city of Antwerp. But ancient Tradition will have it otherwise, that they are descended of Whelp of Whelp Castle; and upon the desolution thereof; whether it has bin thus or soe I dar not determin, quis enim rem tam antiqua[m] pro certo affi[r]me affiimare audit,[494] removed to Crackenthorp, another Lordship belonging unto them.[495] But there is this confirmation of it, that I finde them antiently writ Mali Catuli in deeds without date, which by their character (being the same with *Domesday Booke*) may seem nere the Conquest. And the reason why the epithe[ton] Mal was added to Catulus, is thought to be the same with that of destroying the Castles: being of the opposition made against the Conqueror {as those who adhered to King Charles I in the late Civil Warrs were called maulignants on the like occasion – in which they gloried.}

But the Castle was ruined: And out of its ruines (as planely appear yet by the stones & the hewing of them) \ exactly like to those since dug up / were builde the Church, the Old West Tower in the Parsonage House with the 2 Halls, the Chappel at Sowerby, and all the coynes for the most part of the H[o]uses & Barnes in Kirkbythore. For the Town, wee suppose, standing so near the forest of M[ilburn] was for the most part forrest-building, as som part of Wharton Hall yet remaineth.

[I.767][496]

ad Machell
So that Malus Catulus is the same in effect with the old Roman name Luctatius Catulus; for that is described as a Luctando cum hostibus[497] \ from fluency with them.[498] / Thus, a Malo hostibus inferendo,[499] from Mauling their enemyes – which are very agreeable.[500] And as the old Romans had ther 3 name so gave Hee.

{!} For there was one Whelp, Lord of this place about the [time of the Norman Conquest][501] from whom; or rather from some of his Ancestours (for it was built long before his time) we may boldly conclude it was called Whelp Castle.

Now \ what / Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons; who calld it Whelp Castle. And there was one Whelp, Lord of this place and the Parts adjacents (vir magni nominis et Authoritatis)[502] about the time of the Norman Conquest. But wee cannot suppose it erected by him, being a worke of the Romanes, ~~and~~ long before that time his days; but rather by some of the Roman Catuli, of \ whom / perhaps he might be descended, for it was but 600 years and Many familyes have lasted \ continued / so Long upon the same place; Betwixt the Recess of the Romane forces & the coming in of William the Conqueror \ Norman Conquest / &c.– ut §. Quis autem res tam antiquas &c.[503]

[IV.10]

[Final Word on the Machells, the Catuli and Whelp Castle]
It is a received tradition that they came from the Catuli; which family tis thought resided at Whelop or Whelp Castle which may seem to have had its name from the owner as Catuli Castrum, which being

[493] Mechelen, in the province of Antwerp.
[494] 'For who dares to assert such an ancient matter with confidence and certainty?'
[495] MS: '\ removed to Cr., another Lordship belonging unto them / were translated to Crakenthorp.'
[496] Also numbered p.26.
[497] 'For that is described as "striving with the enemy."'
[498] Some words here are obscured by the binding.
[499] 'Thus a "savage attack on the enemy."'
[500] Machell opines that the two phrases agree linguistically.
[501] Some words here are obscured by the binding.
[502] 'A man of great fame and authority.'
[503] 'Quis autem res tam Antiquas pro certo affirmare audet?' 'But who ventures to pronounce for certain on matters so ancient?' Machell hedges his bets once more, see I.509.

turned into English is Whelp Castle, and malus, though a bad word, yet added for honour. The house stood on those fields which are now ploughed land twixt the highway to Carlile from Appleby and the larger part of Kirkby Thore called the Burwens. Most of the houses there are built out of the ruins of it and I myself have seen hewn stone of an incredible bigness diggd up there within these few years, of which you have mention in my Tract of Places.[504]

[III]

[The Parish of Newbiggin]

[I.567]

[Linking paragraph from information on Kirkbythore]
{Next to this Parish on the N. side as has bin say'd,[505] lyeth the Parish & Lordship of Newbiging whose very site, as well as Tradition, bespeaks it as a Canton & member of this: tho long since cutt of I make no doubt, in a legall method and for a sufficient consideration; so that tis now a Distinct ~~Rectory~~ \ Parish / & such I finde that above 140 years since it was the Grange of Hale in a Deed.}

1. Next to the parish of Kirkbythore on the northside (as has bin said) lyes the Parish of Newbiging which tho it seem to be a member and Canton of the \ This / other; yet it is and has bin a distinct ~~rectory~~ \ parish / (~~paying~~ \ payeing / the homage wee spoke of before)[506] ~~many hundreds of years~~ Examp. \ time out of mined above 140 years & perhaps much longer. But so long for certane; because I finde in the XXXV year of King Henry VIII [1543-1544] the Grange of Haile is said to be in the Parish of K & N. It is rated in the First Fruits Office at 4^{l}. 14. 0.; being one of the smalest in all the County;[507] yet they boast that there never was a Poore Parson of N. nor a Rich one of K;[508] which, if it be true must be attributed to generosity of Kirkby Thore Rectors whose gentlemen lived accordingly, & the frugality of the c[urate] ther, who. [blank] & not to satiety,[509] as som would have it.

2. The present Rector is one Mr Dawson, bred up a Chaplaine at Temple Sowerby \ under the Rector of Kirkbythore / in Kirbythore Parish: a very honest & regular man.[510] & before him was one Mr Barrow who was very famous for teaching Arithmatic.[511] The Patronage of it & the Corne Tythe (paying out {only a certane} sum of money) are vested in the Lord of the manner*.

[Machell's Notes: I.567]
*{Cart. Penes Richard Crakanthorp de Newb. An dat Aug. 28 XXV[512] of Henry VIII e Hale \ Gr[ange.] / It is mentioned there to lye in the Parishes of K. and Newbiging: see All the Book.[513]
[VI.186D] {Newbiging East Ward. The Church & Hall visited by Dugdale.}[514]

[504] The 'tract of places' is presumably text describing parishes, which forms the largest part of this edition.
[505] Next to Kirkbythore.
[506] See I.532-53 (Kirkbythore).
[507] For the First Fruits Office, see the English Glossary.
[508] MS: 'It is rated in the First Fruits Office at 4^{o}. 14. 0. being one of the smalest in the \ all / County ~~of Westmorland~~; ~~&~~ yet they boast ~~of it affirme \ ing the fact~~ / That there never was a Poore Parson of N. nor a Rich one of K.' See above, I.552.
[509] MS. 'satatety'.
[510] Thomas Dawson: schoolmaster of Orton (1666); ordained deacon (1670); curate of Temple Sowerby (1670); schoolmaster of Temple Sowerby (1680); rector of Newbiggin (1681-98); died 1698. CCED.
[511] See I.624.
[512] Partly perished; the date could be XXXV, as above.
[513] Illegible last few words; the edge of the margin has perished.
[514] This note has been taken from MS.VI.186D.

[I.567A]

The Bounds of Newbiging Parish

3. The Parish of Newbiging is bounded on the North with Kirkland Parish in Cumberland, being divided from it by Blenkarne Beck from \ the place where it enters / Bramry[515] Pasture \ the place where it enters / descending W. \ to the Demane hedge of / Ackeron Banke[516] {down Craw[dun]dale to Newbiging Miln & so on} Thence on \ the / W. S. ~~S.W.~~ S.E. & N.[517] it is hem'd in \ on every side / with Kirkbythore Parish & divided from it by the \ out \ most / hedge of Acorn Banke demane to Holtsey Dike Nooke, where it meets with Hale Sike. Thence by Hale Sike ascending Eastwards till you com at the place where it enters Potts Pasture. Thence by Hale \ Dike / Hedge & Blacklees \ Dike / Hedge ~~till you com at the place called~~ \ to / Cowgill Foote {Ancient, if it be a not a solicisime to call it so}. Thence by the settle of the said Gill \ intersecting the Maiden Way / (which crosseth the famous Maiden Way describeing a St Andrews X)[518] to Kirkhouse Mill. Thence by Lile-Beck ascending E. to a place calld Bull Meadow in Milburne Field. Thence by The Ri\n/g Dike or outmost hedge of the said field (which [hedge] is \ alwayes[519] / maintained by Newbiging men), to Bramry Dike Nooke. Thence by Bramry Dike till you com at the River where we began.[520] {Within which circumference the soyle is [blank]}

[I.567B]

[Alternative description of part of the Bounder]
Thence on the S. & S.E. by K. P. by Hale Sike or Potts Sike, from the said Corner of Holtsey Wood, ascending Eastwards & \ almost / to Potts Yeat. Thence agane with K[irkby] Moore on the E. from which tis divided by an hedge or dike – up to Hale – & thence by Blacklees Dike till you come at a place calld Cow-gill Foote. Thence by Cow-gill (a settle which sometimes runns with water \ & crosses the Maidens / till you com almost to Milburne \ Kirkhouse / Mill. Thence by Lile Beck ascending Eastwards to a Place calld Bull Meadow which is in Milburne Field. Thence by Milburne Ring[521] & thence by Bramry Dike by B.[522]

Very good corne, moehay[523] & pasture.[524]
It hath bin formerly \ well / replenished with wood but ~~Then~~ now there is little ~~but~~ \ excepting only / in the New Parke: which often is ~~ash~~ birch and oake. But here is great plenty of quality huen stone of a red \ brickish / coll[our] which is digg in 2 Quarryes – the one at the corner of the New Parke whence I suppose most of the stones in the Hall have bin ~~taken~~ conveyed – the other at a Rock in Crawdundale whence the stones of Whelp Castle seemes to have comd, where there is ~~yett a~~ \ to be seen / old Romane Inscription – which Camden hath taken notice of \ expolyshd[525] / in his *Britannia*. Sc. as followeth [blank][526]

---

[515] 'Bramery': Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 126.
[516] Acorn Bank.
[517] These compass points are unclear, much of the text has been scored through or altered.
[518] Shape of St Andrew's cross: a saltire, like the letter X.
[519] There follows an illegible word, which was thought to suit the subject better than 'maintained', as demonstrated by Machell's use of a pecked line.
[520] The next passage has been deleted as it is repeated on the following page.
[521] Word partly perished, probably 'dike'.
[522] The page has perished here. There is a sketch of part of the parish boundary walk in the left-hand margin.
[523] Mowhay: *OED* gives the meaning as 'A yard or enclosure containing mows; a stack yard.' However, the context here appears to be of a mown hay-crop.
[524] Two further lines of text have been almost obscured by the binding; MS: ' … the last but Tenants hands scarce ~~excepting~~ \ save / in \ amongst the / ~~the hands~~ \ tenants hands / ~~of the Lord of~~ the…'
[525] Perhaps, 'exposited': to reveal, exhibit, show clearly; to expound. *OED*.
[526] Camden's transcription was given to him by Reginald Bainbrig, headmaster of Appleby School, as follows--- 'VΛRONIVS/ ----ECTVS LEG. XX. V. V./----ΛEL. LVCΛNVS/----P. LEG. II. ΛVG. C. That is to say … Varronius Præfectus legionis vicesimæ valentis victricis ... Ælius Lucanus Præfectus Legionis Secundæ Augustæ, castrametati sunt … Varromium captaine of the xx. Legion valens Victrix…'

6. This is a place at unity in itself and admitts no division, being one town one ~~Lordship~~ Constablewick one Lordship; & in it only one \ ~~having in it~~ / Hall [or] Gentlemans Seat in [the] Parish.{A good old fashond building, with Turrets & Battlements – The seat of Richard Crakanthorp Esq. \ who original I have builded[527] here; / a very worthy & sober Gentleman and a ~~very~~ good Churchman who seldom absents him selfe from Prayers which they have 3ce a week, Sc. on Wed & Friday, Eucharist; Matins: Sunday, Wednesday & Friday \ secundum usu[m] Ecclesiæ Marie / de K.}[528]

[I. 624][529]

Newbiggin Parish

[Author: Rev. Christopher Barrow, Parson of Newbiggin]

1677

Newbiggin soe writt in Ancient Record is a Parish consisting of the Towneship of Newbiggin and of part of the hamlet of Haile; It is within the Diocese of Carlile and in the East Ward of the Bottome of Westmorland. It is bounden South and West with the Lordships of Kirkbythore and Temple Sowerbie, on the East with Milburne and on the North with the Lordship of Culgath.

At the North end of the Towne runs a little beck which descends from the high mountaine Crosfell. This beck from its first riseing untill its fall into the river Eden divides the twoe counties Westmorland and Cumberland. Upon the Rocks in the banks of this beck in a place called Cradundle neare Newbiggin were formerlie seene characters and ancient inscriptions which are now defaced saveing one which has certaine letters and characters scarcelie to be discerned; but I suppose Camdin makes mention of them in his *Britania*.[530]

The forme of it is for the most parte oblong, and is in Circumference about three myles; the qualitie of the soyle in generall is a Redish clay not verie fertall, it consists much of arable land and pasture ground. It hath noe mynes or quarries but of stone, no fewell but what they gett upon the moores.

Item: Coles from Hartside.[531]

The Church is called the Church of St Edmund, dedicated as is supposed to that Saint. It hath neither Spire nor Steeple and but twoe litle bells, It is a Parsonage but the meanest in Westmorland or as is verilie thought, in all the North.[532] The tythe corne belongs to the Lord of the mannor by the prescription under the yearelie rent of ix^{li} \ vj^{s} / and viii^{d}[533] and in horse grasse to the Parson of the Parish. The gleebe land is verie small indeed, and the Parsonage \ house / a thatched one; it stands at the north west end of the Towne neare to the church.

The mannor house is in the north end of the Towne close by the beck; it is the seate of that ancient and worthie familie of the Crakanthorpps Lords of the Mannor and patrons of the Church.

Cetera ignore.[534]

Per me Christo. Barrowe Rectorem ibidem.[535]

[I.626][536]

Newbigging Parish [Notes][537]

Newbigging church belongs Newbigging. It is called Ecclesia St Edmundi de Newbiggin in an evidence, penes Lancelotu[m] Machel de Crakanthorp dated 1375 49 Edward 3.

---

[527] One word is illegible here.

[528] 'Following the use of the Church of St Mary of Kirkbythore'.

[529] Written in another hand, apart from the title. The author was Rev. Christopher Barrow, see I.567. CCED notes that Barrow was rector of Newbiggin from 1664 to 1680; he would have been alive to answer Machell's queries, sent during the 1670s.

[530] Clearly, Barrow had decided to leave secondary-source research to Machell.

[531] In Machell's hand.

[532] See Machell on the comparative wealth of Kirkbythore and Newbiggin incumbents: I.567.

[533] £9 6s 8d.

[534] 'The rest [of the information requested] I do not know.'

[535] 'By me, Christopher Barrow, rector there.' The word 'Crawdundle' is written in pencil in another hand near the foot of the page; for Crawdundle and Varronius, see III. 283.

[536] Also numbered p.29.

[537] The notes are in Machell's hand.

This place gave name to an ancient family:
Johannes de Newbigging, circa 6. Johanis [1204-05])
Robert de Newbigging, 14. Edward 1. [1285-1286]) T.M. e Cartis Antiq.[538]
It passed to the Crakanthorpes after by marrying an Heiress {Emma, the daughter of Robert de Newbigging.} I finde mentioned in evidences as witnesses & otherwise John de Crakenthorp vicecom. Westm. 21. Richard 2 [1397-1398]. Carte de Berwise, penes Mr Blenkinsop 21 R. 2.[539]
One John de Crackenthorpe the younger was Receiver to the Lady Elizabeth (Piercy) widdow of John Lord Clifford, of her proffites in Westmorland è cavit \ Comi / 5^0 Henry 6.[540]

[Mr Barrow's Cat, Dick.]
There is a most memorable story concerneing a cat in this parish*.
One Mr Barrow an ancient gentleman \ & Rector here / famous for teaching the Art of Arithmatick,[541] was a lover of cats and had 2 which he kept \ about him: / one calld Thom \ or Dick – if not 3 / the other Jeffrey ~~of which~~ \ & Sc. Dick, / being more bold than welcom \ one time / with his masters Trencher, receved a sharp rebuke for insolence \ being knockd of the board / which he tooke so ill that he appeard noe \ more ~~for som dayes after~~ in his presence for 2 or 3 dayes / but came at last under the Table with somthing in his mouth which they tooke for a mouse (not regarding it \ 2 / much) \ But / he lep up with it behinde his masters Chare & drop'd in his Tankerd which he usually kept in an hole of the Chimney \ to drinke when he pleased; / which being discovered \ som espying, / ~~when~~ they ~~searched what it was~~ \ looked what it was & / it proved a \ great / toade, ~~which som doe imagin to be don in malice; & for this the cat lost his life~~ \ and because it was judged to be an act of the cat of *propense mallise*,[542] they condem'd him to dye, and chopd of his head. /

Art.
There is a \ small / rock by the \ on the left side the / river, a little above the miln at a place call'd Cawdundale, wherin wee yet finde in fair & deep caracters but uneven lines this Inscription. VERONIVS &c. which I have explaned in K[irkbythore],[543] speakeing there of the Campe which lyes near Hale: I thinke in this parish. And on the moore above it which belongs to Nubiging called [blank] is a large round trench

[Machell's Notes: I.626]

*{Query of Rowly Hodgson?}

[I.627]

which may seeme to have bin one of the Brittish fortifications out of which Var[r]onius ~~seems to have put the~~ (enca[m]ping at the other place) may seem to have chas'd them & so left that Inscription as a memorial to after ages: But these[544] places seemeth since to have bin translated into sheepfoldes or Leckes[545] for milking there ewes, which hath bin in practice hereabouts in the memory of man.[546] & the people payd a prescription rate in the Easter books; iiij^d a score, as I have bin informed by Christopher[547] Teasdale of Kirkhouse near Milburne for the Milke Tythe of them.

[538] 'Thomas Machell – from ancient deeds.'
[539] 'In a Barwis deed at Mr Blenkinsops.'
[540] 'From a copy deed of 1426-27.'
[541] Rev. Christopher Barrow, rector, 1664-1680. Barrow was followed by Thomas Dawson in 1681 (CCED). Machell portrays Barrow here as an ancient, historical figure but he used him as an informant in the 1670s, see I.567A (above).
[542] 'Intentional malice', see Richard Burn, *The Justice of the Peace, and Parish Officer*, Vol. 2 (1780), 490.
[543] See above, III.283.
[544] MS: 'this'.
[545] The meanings of 'leck' are many and various but as Machell linked the word to sheepfolds, a leck here may mean: 'an assembly area where animals carry on display and courtship behaviour', c.f. Swedish '*lekställe*: mating ground'. *Merriam-Webster Dictionary*, Online.
[546] MS: '~~was~~ \ hath bin / in practice ~~in these~~ hereabouts ~~som 60 years~~, in the memory of man:'
[547] MS: 'Xt'.

[I.620][548]

Ad Newbiggin [Hall]

My Cosan Crakinthorpe de Newbiggin have in their dineing roome 23 matches[549] direct & indirect, som whereof are amongst my paper of Armes. That Hall was built Anno Dom. J. Xti, 1539.[550]

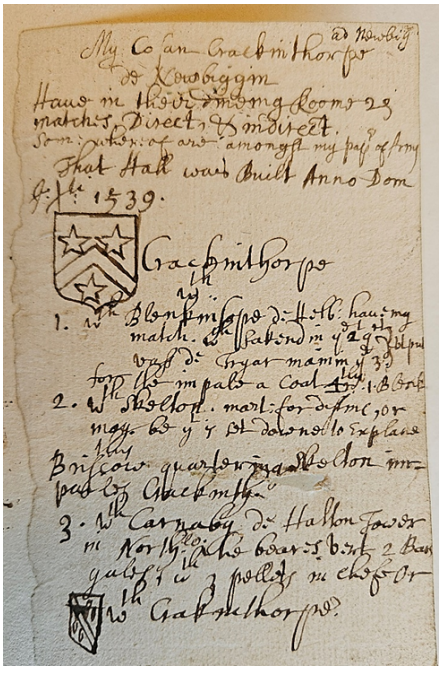


Figure 1.14.18. Crackenthorpe Hall Coats of Arms. I.620.

Crackenthorpe with:
1. Blenkinsope de Helbeck haveing match with Savend in the 2[d] quarter, Voss de Tryarmain in the 3[d.] for they impale a Coat quarterly 1 Blenkinsop. {ut put[o]}[551]
2. With Skelton, marte for distinction, or may be that is set downe to explane this: Briscow quartering Skelton impales Crackinthorp.
3. With Carnaby de Halton Tower in Northumberland; he beares Vert 2 bars Gules, with 3 pellets in chefe Or[552] with Crackinthorpe.

[Machell's Notes and Illustrations: I.649A]

In Newbiggin Hall. {House builded 1539}
In the dineing roome [Arms of] 23 matches direct & indirect.
[top left shield] G[ules] 3 annulets Or [foot] Vert.
[top right shield] G[ules] lyon Or.
[shield 2] † is Vert, bottom Argent. Sawkeld of Rosgill.

[548] This page is headed 'Musgrave P. &'. The text reads, 'ad for townes', pag[es] sequent.' The rest of the page is blank, but a scrap page 7cm x 12cm has been pasted onto it. The contents contain information on Newbiggin.
[549] Matches: marriage alliances.
[550] Here Machell drew a small sketch of a coat of arms, headed, 'Crackinthorpe'.
[551] 'So I think.'
[552] In the MS here, is a tiny sketch of a coat of arms.

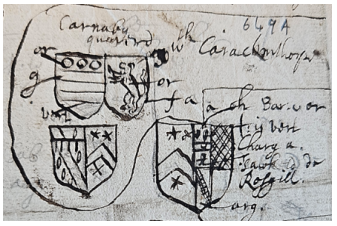


Figure 1.14.19. Newbiggin Hall. 'Carnaby quarterd with Crackenthorpe'. Arms of Salkeld of Rosgill. I.649A.

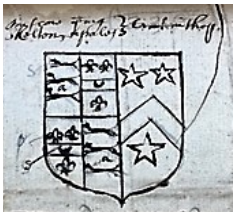


Figure 1.14.20. Newbiggin Hall. Brisco quartering Skelton impaling Crackenthorpe. I.649A.



Figure 1.14.21. Newbiggin Hall. Crackenthorpe: fleur-de-lys Or; Bird Or on ground Gules. I.649A.



Figure 1.14.22. Newbiggin Hall. 'Warcop' Argent on Sable, fess Argent. I.649A.



Figure 1.14.23. Newbiggin Hall. Argent a bend chequy Or and Gules. I.649A.

[I.649B]

My Drin[553] Coin was found at Scitter beck – by Cockermouth.

[553] Uncertain shortened word; possibly a form of the word for a Roman coin, 'denarius'.

[III.283]

{Ad Newbiging} [at Crawdundle]
On the upper rock

LEG II AVG XXIΛ/
{i.e. LEG 2 Aug. or XXI Aug. 20. But the A is not struck through}[554]

On the lower rock at Crawdundell, Sep. 19. 1690.[555]

C. VΛRRONIVS.
ESSVS . LEG XXVV
AEL . LVCANVS
R . LEG II AVG Ç Î

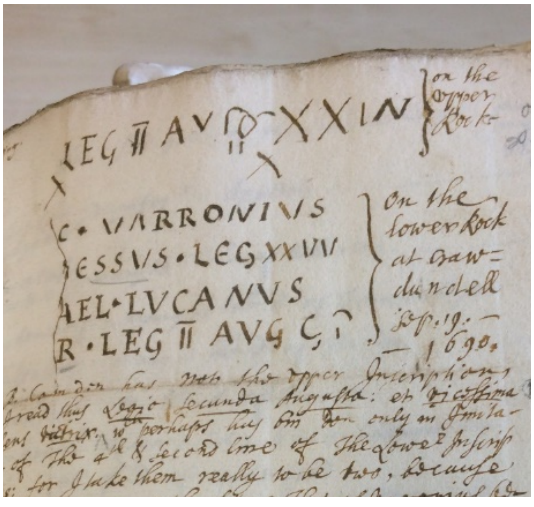


Figure 1.14.24. 'On the lower rock at Crawdundell. Sep.19.1690'. III.283.[556]

[554] The XXI Legion Augusta was never deployed in Britain and the number that reads as 20 is very unclear. If, however, we read Camden's transcription, given to him by Reginald Bainbrigg, headmaster of Appleby School, the inscription appears to be '----VΛRONIVS/ ----ECTVS LEG. XX. V. V./----ΛEL. LVCΛNVS/----P. LEG. II. ΛVG. C. That is to say … Varronius Præfectus legionis vicesimæ valeriae victricis ... Ælius Lucanus Præfectus Legionis Secundæ Augustæ, castra metati sunt … Varronius captaine of the XX. Legion Valeria Victrix…' Apparently misreading the inscription, Machell has read XX. V. V. as XXI, misinterpreting the letters that follow. See above, fn.526.

[555] See *N&B1*, 371: 'Upon the rocks at a place called Crawdundale in this parish, were formerly found characters and ancient inscriptions, all of which are now obliterated, and mouldered away by length of time. Mr Camden takes notice of one, the former part whereof was not legible, but in the other part was to be seen the name of Varronius commander of the 20th legion; and another, in which was the name of Ælius Lucanus commander of the 2nd legion. The 20th legion, he says, was quartered at Deva, now called West-Chester; and the 2nd legion was quartered at Isca, now Caerleon, in Wales; and might be drawn into these parts, for the defence thereof. The exact time hereof is not easily to be set down; yet in order to the pointing out the very time, Mr Camden observes, that there was to be seen in a rock near adjoining, in capital letters, the name of Cneius Octavius Cotta, consul (CN. OCT. COT. COSS.) yet in all the consular rolls he owns he could meet with no such name. … One might be tempted to conclude that some part thereof might be owing to strength of imagination. It is a soft. mouldering stone. And if an inscription which was legible in Camden's time, is not now at all to be found; it seemeth as unlikely that an inscription made (372) in the Roman times should continue in the days of Camden. And it is not impossible, but that the whole might be the work of the ingraver who cut the inscription over the hall door, or the amusement of some labourer at a vacant hour in quarrying stones in the rock there.'

[556] Note the wavy vertical line on the left of the inscription on *Figure 1.14.24*, drawn to demonstrate that only the right-hand side of the inscription can be seen.

N.B. Camden has not the upper Inscriptions which I read thus:

Legio Secunda Augusta et vicessima valens victrix
{or I. AV [blank] XXI. AV}[557]

Which perhaps has bin done only in imitation of the 4th & second line of the lower Inscriptions; for I take them really to be two because of the difference of the letters; that of Var[r]onius being \ a /more antique, & unellegant \ letter / as may be seen by compareing V. A. R. IV, E. L. & G.; for Camden observes that \ within this iland / from the time of Severus till Gordian and afterwards, the letter A[558] was always writ ~~within this iland without~~ in the Romane Inscriptions without ~~the~~ transverse or coupling-stroake.[559] And so it is in that of Var\r/onius, but otherwise in that of Lucanus? That of Varronius, Camden reads thus: Varonius præfectus legionis vicessinæ valentis victricis.[560] But the word p\ræ/fectus or –ectus (however the alteration came) is not visible now, but planely essus.
That of Lucanus he reads in this manner: Ælius Lucanus præfectus legionis secundæ Augustæ, castra metati fuit – or som suchlike thing.[561] {but you see the ct}.[562]
For the legio vicissima valens victrix {the twentyeth valent conquering legion} which quartered at Deva (now called Westchester), and the legia 2da Augusta, which quartered at Isca, now Ca\e/rleon in Wales, being called against the enemy in these parts, may seeme to have made their station here & to have pitched their standing tents. See this confirmd at Kirkbythore*.
{As to the Time which he thinks is decipherd in these capital letters CN. OCJ. COJ. COSS; placed as he tells us on a neighbouring rock (which pair of Consuls are not to be found in the books of the Fasti,[563] & therefore the letters seeme to be useless as to that effect),[564] I can say nothing of it, neither have I yet met with that Inscription or will any other but what engravd upon the upper rock, as which, see above.}[565]

[Machell's Notes: III.283]

*{Which might very well be; but besides this, I reason to think that the Romanes used to leave Inscriptions upon rocks that furnished for the stone which wee finde yield them stone for their public building.}

[III.285]

[The Crackenthorpes]

The Pedigree of the Crackenthorpes*
Robert Lord Dapifer[566] de Appleby, Lord of Newbigging†.
Lawrence Crakenthorp (Temp. H. 2.)‡ = maryed the daughter of Wharton.⸸
John Crakenthorp = maryed the daughter of Blennerhasset.
John Crakenthorp = maryed the daughter of Barton.
Thomas Crakenthorp = maryed the daughter of Vaux.
Robert Crakenthorp = (temp. Ed. 2. & Ed. 3. ~~Lib. Nigro~~) Agnes the daughter of Wakerfield.

[557] AUGUSTA.
[558] Three pencilled interlineated words here are illegible.
[559] Camden gives the inscription in full. As Machell suggests, he observes that 'from Severan unto Gordian and afterwards, the letter A. in all the inscriptions of that age, everie where in this Iland, wanteth the overthwart little line or stroke, and is made thus, Λ.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 762.
[560] 'Varronius, Commander of the 20th Legion, strong and victorious.'
[561] The writer of the inscription must have included the conjunction 'et' (or similar word meaning 'and'), since the verb 'metati sunt' is plural, the subjects being Varronius and Lucanus. The intended reading is, 'C. Varronius Commander of the XX legion Valens Victrix and Aelius Lucanus, Commander of the Second Augustan Legion marked out this camp'.
[562] Margin comment beside, 'or some such thing'.
[563] Fasti: 'A calendar or calendars, indicating the days on which business could be lawfully transacted, and the festivals, games, historical anniversaries, etc., celebrated on each day of the year. Also: an official chronicle or chronological list of consuls, magistrates, triumphs, etc.'. *OED*.
[564] In ancient Rome, years were named after pairs of consuls.
[565] Pencilled marginalia here are damaged, thus illegible.
[566] 'Dapifer': the official title of a steward in a medieval English nobleman's household.

Robert Crakenthorp (temp. Ed. 3. Libro Nigro)[567] = Emma the daughter of Threlkeld.
William Crakenthorp = the daughter of Grimston.
Jo. Crakenthorp = the daughter of Brisco 13. Richard 2. [1389-90].
Jo. Crakenthorp = Blenkow & dyed 14. Hen. 6. [1435-36] Lib. Nigro.
William Crakenthorp \ his brother / = the daughter of Sandford & dyed 17. Hen. 6. [1438-39] Ibid.
Jo[hn] Crakenthorp = Elizabeth daughter of Leyburne‖.
Jo[hn] Crakenthorp = Isabel daughter of Musgrave. He made the rental the 12. of Hen. 8. [1520-21].
Christopher Crakenthorp = the daughter of Blen~~ner~~kinsop of Helbeck Temp. Hen. 8. & had Isue Henry his son & heire. And John Crakenthorp of Strickland.
Henry Crakenthorp of Newbiging Esq. maryed = 1. Dalston, = 2. Sandford, = 3. Carnaby, = 4. Winifrid, sister of Sir Christopher Pickering, Knight, by whom he had Isue = Christopher; William, a parson; Richard; Henry; Ann, maryed first to John Pennington of Seaton, secondly to Sir Richard Sandford of Howgil Castle; Francis, maryed to Lathes {Lathes of Lathes near [Blank] in Cumberland and of Dalehead}; Winifrid, maryed to Sir Richard Fletcher of Hutton.
Christopher Crakenthorp Esq. the eldest son of Henry maryed Mary daughter of Sir James Bellingham of Levins, Knight. And had Isue Henry maryed to Fetherston who dyed s[ine] prole;[568] Richard; Frances; Isabel; Dorathy, maryed to John Philipson of Calgarth Esq.; & Elizabeth maryed to Birbeck of Orton. {Examined.}[569]

[Machell's Notes: III.285]

*{Out of Sir Daniel Flemings MS in folio MS A. p.105.}
† {This I take to be of the sirname of Newbiging. M[emorandum]}
‡ No.
⸸{M[emorandum] This can scarce be.}
‖ {Mem[orandum] Sir Robert Crackenthorp of NK. 5. of Hen. 5. [1417-1418]}

———————

[III.287]

Richard Crakanthorp aforesaid Esq. = maryed, first, Mary, the daughter of Sir Christopher Dalston of Ackorn Bank, Knight; secondly, Lettice, daughter of Lougher of Parton in Staffordshire and relict of Thomas Denton of Warnel Esq. By his first wife he had Isue Henry who dyed young; Christopher, John, Thomas & William, Mary & Barbara. And by his second wife he had George, James, Richard, Francis and Lettice.
Christopher C~~h~~rakanthorp (dict.)[570] Esq. obijt March 31 1669 = maryed Ann, the daughter of Robert Rawlinson of Cark Esq., & by her had Isue Richard, Robert, Christopher & Mary.[571]

The Crakenthorps of Little Strickland
John Crakenthorp of Strickland, Gent (who was second son of Christopher Crakenthorp & Mrs Blenkinsop, Tem. H. 8. TM)[572] = maryed Mabel, daughter of [blank] Cowper, & had isue Christopher; Richard (a doctor & famous scholar); George, a parson; & Anthony who has Isue John and Christopher: which Christopher has Isue Barnerd, now of Newbiging.
Christopher Crakenthorp, son of John = maryed Barbara, daughter of [blank] Ward of Yorkshire, and had Isue Richard; Thoma[s]; Frances, m. to Petty, who had Isue by him; Ann maryed to William Aray of Shap, who had Isue Richard, John, Barbara, Ann, Isabel, Dorathy, Mary and Margaret.
Richard Crakenthorp, son of Christopher aforesaid = maryed Elizabeth Fairer \ of Warcop Tower / & had Isue Christopher; Ann, maryed to John Wharton of Kirkbythore Esq.; Grace, maryed to Watson; Barbra, maryed to Winter; Elizabeth; & Mary to Adam Thwat.
{Christopher Crakenthorp, son of Richard maryed Jane, daughter of Andrew Hudleston of Hutton John Esq. and had Isue Richard, Andrew, William, Jane, Ann.}
{Richard Crakenthorp, son of Christopher [blank]}

[567] 'See the black book.'
[568] 'Sine prole': childless.
[569] Examined for accuracy.
[570] 'Aforesaid.'
[571] For the Rawlinson descent (from the reign of Henry VII) and intermarriage with the Crackenthorpes, see Thomas West, *The Antiquities of Furness* (Ulverston, new edn, 1805), 317-20.
[572] TM: Machell's initials.

Examined.

[III.288]

{Mr Rawlinsons note who made this extract: MS A. Fleming. At p.106}[573]
I do not finde the name of Crakenthorp in any deed before William Crakenthorp in the time of Ed. 3. But I finde Alexander Crackenthorp, a younger son of Mauchael (or Malus Catulus), Lord of Crakenthorp, 12. Ed. 3. [1338-1339]* from whom it is probable the name came to the Lords of Newbiging by marriage, Mr Crakenthorp having ancient lands in Crakenthorp, lately sold†.
And before Edw. the 3. time they were stiled only as thus, viz. Lawrence, son of Rob., Domin. de Newbiging; John, son of Lawrence, Dom de Newbiging; and not by the name of Crakenthorp till Ed. 3. time‡.
I doe take it that the original grant of Newbiging was either from Walden, son of Gamel or from Gamel, son of Whelp, to Robert, Dapifer[574] de Appelby, which grant Waldeve confirm'd by Deed to Lawrence⸸. Or else from Mowbra, Earl of Westmorland‖.

Over Newbiging Hall door, cut in stone

> Christopher Crakenthorp men did me call
> {!} who in my time did build this hall {?}
> and framed it as you may see.
> In one thousand five hundred thirty & three.

The new Tower is said to have bin builded by Henry Crakenthorp, who had 4 wives.
Examined by Sir Daniel Fleming & TM.

[Machell's Notes: III.288]
*{It is long before, S.D. and in the same hand with *Doomsday Book*, TM.}[575]
†{So, see […], in which apeareth not much mistaken save in the Time; for that with Bro of Mauchael was long before K. Ed. 3., there being these descents betwixt {William fil William, fil Alexander de Crakenthorp} and this, who was first concerned at Newbiging, le Alexander de Crakenthorp.}[576]
‡No Sir. Newbiging ~~TM~~ continued in the \ sir / name of the Newbigings till about this time, that Robert the son of Robert de Crakanthorp maryed Emma the daughter of Robert de Newbiging.}
⸸{It may be so. He was son of Gamel, son of Whelp, Lord of Kirkbythore, and, as it seems by this, of Newbiging […]}[577]
‖T.M. No Sir. Mowbray was indeed Earle of Northumberland but never of Westm'land.[578]
All these notes & pedegrees were in the proper hand writeing of Robert Rawlinson Esq., from whom Sir Daniel Fleming had them. N.B. But there are many mistakes to my knowledge \ in them / which may hereafter be corrected by me, Tho. Machell.

[**IV**]

[**Difficulties]**

[Thomas Machell, the Chapel at Temple Sowerby and the Dalstons of Acorn Bank][579]

[573] Robert Rawlinson of Cark Hall, lawyer, JP and royalist sympathiser, who died in 1665, aged 55. See West, *Antiquities of Furness*, 319.
[574] 'Steward.'
[575] Machell remarks here that, though undated [S.D.], the deed was written long before 12. Edward III [1338-1339], as the hand has similarities to the writing in *Domesday Book*.
[576] The binding is very tight here; the marginalia are difficult to read; thus the the transcription is questionable.
[577] The last word is unclear.
[578] This is the second, 'No Sir', interjection on this page, as Machell disagrees with 'Mr Rawlinsons note who made this extract: MS A. Fleming at p.106'; see also his criticism at the foot of III.288.
[579] See William Nicolson's 1703 view of the difficulties at Temple Sowerby in *Misc Accts*: 'At the Institution of the present Rector (Mr Wickins) a Tripartite Indenture was executed by the Patron (Lord Thanet), the Ordinary and himself; whereby £25 was allowed as a standing salary for ever to the curate of Sowerby… so that the Parson's Revenue is now less (by a round Subtraction of £50) than it was formerly. The late Bishop, Dr Smith,

[III.242]

A Narrative about a Chapel at Sowerby[580]

[III.229][581]

June 5 1697
A
NARRATIVE OF
The Matter in Contest
About
THE CHAPEL OF SOWERBY
within the Parish of
KIRKBY-THORE
in Westmorland
TO
The Right Honorable
THOMAS
Earle of Thanett
PATRONE
of the said
Parish-Church
T. M. R[ector]

[**A. Correspondence 1.**]

[Letter from Thomas Machell to Lord Thanet, 5 June 1697]

[III.231][582]

My Lord
It is from the Honourable Peers of this Realm that men expect justice and finde it too without partiality and therefore appeales are made unto them ~~when they think themselves injurd by other judges~~ \ from other judicatures. / And truly for my part I had and yet have that assurance in your Lordships goodness (so eminently zealous of doing what is right unto all) that I thinke you would doe not wrong unto any if your Lordship were truly informed of matters: soe that one who is not in your Lordships favour may yet expect justice, if not mercy from you.
{A promise of the patrone.}
And therefore when your Lordship told me (you had been informed) that I did not allow sufficient maintenance to my curate at Sowerby {a false informacon grounded upon a vulgar error} which was a great reflection upon me having 3 places as your Lordship was pleased to call them, I craved leave to tell you that your Lordship was misinformed \ in the matter / for I had but one place, and being Resident within my parish, was Curate my selfe. That I was not under any just-obligation to finde them a minister at my own charge, it being but a chapple within my parish. And that if he had not sufficient maintenance (tho perhaps I was able to prove the contrary) the fault was in the towne, not in

promis'd me that he would never agree to any such proposal; but on a letter from the Archbishop of York… he changed his thoughts, and comply'd… My Lord Thanet tells me that his Under-Sheriff … pretends to shew an old Conveyance in a Testament in Sowerby, whereby the Rector is farther obliged to repair the Quire part of that Chapple. Mr Machell would never own any such Obligation; nor can it now be thought reasonable since the whole Tyth of that Hamlet will not always pay the Curate his £25. However, the East End of the Chapple is now ready to drop down; and I cannot yet foresee on whom the Charge will fall…' Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 29.

[580] This is the title Machell gave to his narrative, the nature of which was to demonstrate his financial and other difficulties relating to Temple Sowerby Chapel. See William Nicolson, above; see also Paul Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint: July 2d.1690', *CW2*, 89 (1989), 279-81.

[581] Pages III.229-58, are of a uniform size but are almost 2cm shorter than the other pages in Volume III, demonstrating the binding of different sets of papers into the MS.

[582] The underscoring and margin comments are presented in different ink. As the letters are copies of the originals, it appears that Machell did this to highlight his main points and grievances. In this edition, Machell's margin comments have been utilised as sub-headings.

me; for chappels are to maintain their owne chaplaines at their own proper cost. And Your Lordship may please to remember that I told you further there was an old salary of 5^{li} 5^{s} 5^{d} or thereabouts due from the towne (called priests wages) which they had withdrawn and misapplied since I came to this place, reducing the same to lesse than 30^{s} per annum. And now, they thinking to take an advantage of your Lordships proneness to works of piety, & of my unhappiness in being out of your Lordships favour, indeavour to force me (by your Lordships \ greatest influence / over me) to make restitution for the wrong they have done. To which your Lordship was pleased to reply that you would assist me in recovering of it.

And thereupon I told Your Lordship I would shew you such things next time I came as should give your Honour satisfaction in all these particulars. And if I did not make it out that there was such a sallary due from the towne I would allow what Your Lordship thought fit to impose upon me. But in the meantime, your Lordship was pleased to come to Sowerby, where when the Sheriff suggested to Your Honour that the sallary I insisted upon was for a school master & not for a minister, I appealed to their own Register booke in their own custody whether it was not still called Priests Wages, Church Wages and Curates Wages. And Your

[III.232]

Lordship was soe just in the matter as to call for the booke and carry it with you to be examined by your Lordships Chaplaine.[583]

{A conditional promiss of the incumbent grounded upon the former promiss} {the Grand Query proposed}[584]

But when I came to waite upon your Honour with some hopes of redress, I found your Lordship was soe full of business that you could not have leisure to stay till your Chaplain came out of town, that he might be examined as to what he had met with, much less to consider (with due deliberation) what was laid before you on my behalf. But of ~~the~~ \ your / piety which they ~~would have had~~ make noe small advantage off) would have had me consent without more adoe to allow the curates 10^{li} per annum: to which I demurrd till Your Lordship should have consulted your Chaplaine & be better informed where the fault lay. And when your Lordship had discoursed him about it, the causes being of ecclesiasticall cognizance & depending much on the Canon Law (which Your Lordship does not pretend to) you were pleased to tell me when I came to take leave, that you did not understand the matter and would therefore remit it unto the Bishop (to whom I will freely submit myself as the most proper judge within his own diocese.) And will enter in bond (if the town or Mr Sheriff for them will doe the like) to stand to his Lordships determination both as touching the Sallary & Reparation of the said Chappel (if they be not satisfied with what I have \ already / proposed concerning the latter: Sc. whether or how farr the same doth belong to them or to me! And whether the chapelry or I am in fault, if the Reader have not sufficient maintenance.[585]

For truly (my Lord) (however I may be represented) it has been a very great trouble to me; as Your Lordships Chaplaine may inform you from severall letters I have formerly writ upon that occasion & which I have shewed him; that having long since provided materialls, I could not have liberty to repare the said Chappel upon any faire terms, nor get the salary thereto belonging restored and secured as it ought to have been because they pretended to be exempt from all Episcopall Jurisdiction. Soe that if I should have presented them for it, they would not have appeared at all, but at their own Court where the parties are Judges and where I could expect noe redress. But if they referr the cause to the Bishop & bind themselves to it and his judgment, the controversie may be determined by consent of both parties without much expence of bringing their priviledge into dispute.

[III.233]

In order to which I begg of your Lordship (since your Honour was pleased to offer your assistance in it) that the Register-booke of Temple Sowerby, to which I appealed for the matter of fact, may be

[583] Lord Thanet's chaplain was Rev. John Grandorge, son of Christopher, of Irby, Yorks, paup. St. Edmund Hall, matric. 16 July, 1687 aged 17; B.A. 1691, M.A. 1693-4; B.D. from Magdalen Coll. 1706; D.D. 1708; rector of Hartfield, Sussex, 1698, and of Ashurst, 1707; prebendary of Canterbury 1713; chaplain to the Earl of Thanet; died 17 Jan., 1729, aged 60. *OAD*.

[584] More margin comments written by Machell.

[585] For the meaning of the term 'reader', see the English Glossary.

secured in your Evidence roome at Appleby Castle; and that you would order & direct Mr Carleton[586] to call for an Evidence at Temple Sowerby (having 3 seales appendent) about the maintaining and hiring a Chaplaine in the time of King Henry the 7th, which is fit to be kept with your Lordships writings concerning the Rectory of Kirkbythore, if it can be had, and may be found either in the hands of John Parker of Temple Sowerby or some other person to whom Mr Sheriff (I suppose) can direct; if it be not their interest to conceale it rather, which two things being of unquestionable truth and authoritie, will plainly discover that the Chapplery was obliged heretofore to maintain their own Chaplane, & I could wish them in Your Lordships custody, lest they be injur'd or put out of the way, when there shall be occasion thereof at a reference, or at a commision for pious uses, as Your Lordship shall please to direct, which I hope you will doe with all possible speed, lest in the interim the Chapel should fall, which I should be heartily sorry for.

In the mean time I freely confess & agree with your Lordship, that if I were bound to find them a curate at my own proper Charge (as your Lordship supposes); and I did not allow him a competent maintenance, I were much to be blamed and did not deserve your Lordships favour. But then (on the contrary) if Chapelries are to maintaine their own Chaplaines at their own proper cost, without the least diminution or damage of the rights & profits of the mother-Church. And if the Inhabitants of the said Chapplerie misimploy or diminish the ancient sallary which belong'd to their Chaplaines without the knowledge or assent of the minister of the mother Church; if he gives more, and they give less then they ought to doe, then the fault (I conceive) of the want of maintenance is on their side and not on his. And truly, My Lord, I can see noe reason but the want of Right information, why any minister should be censur'd & deem'd an ill man (which is my sad fate) for not allowing a sufficient maintenance where he ought to give none ~~at all~~;

[III.234]

much lesse why I should make amends ~~rather~~ for what the inhabitants of Temple Sowerby very unjustly (& indeed sacreligiously)[587] have taken away, as the Sheriff ~~and~~ himselfe hath som time Confessed.
{Testament: Mr Watson, formerly Reader of Sowerby, now curate of Bondgate.}

[III.235]

{Canon Law}
And for the truth of all these matters, I refer my selfe to what Your Lordships Chaplaine hath seen with his own eyes, not only concerning chappells in generalls both in the Canon-law and elsewhere but of this Sowerby in particular in their Register-Booke & some other papers which I would willingly have shewen your Lordship according to promises if it had been your pleasure to looke upon them or to heare them read.
And if your Lordship, in your journey to Skipton (which I wish may be prosperous) shall happen to \ lodge at / Kendal or Kirkby, in both which parishes are diverse ancient (but ill-indowed) chappells, your Lordship may find (upon enquiry) a great many instances of what I assert: that chappells ought to be endow'd & repair'd as they were built "sine juris prejujudicio alieni" (without any injuries to another mans might), or "salva indemnitate matricis ecclesiæ" (the mother church being kept indemnified). For truly (my Lord) it is not lawfull to build (much lesse to consecrate) any chappell but under these covenants & considerations: as the canon-law sheweth.

{de Capella de Berwis in parochia St Lawrencis de Apelby}
And I have an authentick original testament (with a large seale appendant) concerning the building of an ancient chappell within this Diocess now fallen to the ground) which confirms the said law to have been practicable here amongst us as further sheweth that the Chaplaines in all succeeding ages were bound to take an oath of fidelity unto the minister of the parish church "de conservando matricem ecclesiam in omnibus ipsam contingentibus totaliter indempem". i.e. of keeping the mother church in all things whatsoever ~~indemnified~~ thereunto appertaining, wholly indemnified. Soe that Your Lordship plainly see it was never intended that a parish church should be charged with maintenance for any chappell. But the same was fixed upon the Inhabitants for whose ease it was built.

[586] Steward to Lord Thanet, see below: V.449.
[587] Transcribed as seen.

[III.234]

{Note. This was not included in that which was sent.}
And the Canon Law enters this caveat against it, where chapels \ are / founded for a community (as it seemeth to be in the case before us) cavebunt enim hi, ut injuriose veteribus[588] Ecclesijs de jure Parochiali nequaquam exsistant; ~~& gives this Reason (which is common to all)~~ i.e. They must take special care that they be not injuriouse to the mother churches in reference to their Parochial Rights. And gives this Reason (which is common to all),

[III.235]

'nec enim quod? eis ob nietatem indulgetur, ad aliorum injuriam fecti debet'. For it is not meet that what (in pure piety) is indulged for their ease, should become a burthen and \ or / dis-ease unto others. And now My Lord (having shewen you this much) I hope Your Lordship as you are Patron will thinke it your province (upon 2^{d} thoughts) to patronize & defend the just rights of the Church

[III.236]

Parochiall which is your Lordships, from the unjust incroachments of the sub-parochiall (or Chappels of ease) which cannot properly be called yours, and will be lesse soe when once indowed (which God forbid) out of the Rectory, which Your Lordship may see is provided against not only by sanctions of the Canon Law but by an oath alsoe; and which I make bold to remind you of, lest Your Lordships piety should be prevail\e/d on to bring a Rent-charge upon my successors by the cunning & crafty insinuations of those who will not stick at any thing for their own advantage*.
But before you doe soe (for I know you will not doe an ill thing et id tantum possumus quod jure possumus),[589] your Lordship might doe well to enquire of those who are versed in the Ecclesiasticall law, how farr a patrone has power to dispose of the rights of his Church?
But what (my Lord) if after all this there be noe cause at all of complaint, as to the matter of fact? What if I really (whilest I thinke my selfe oblieged to do nothing \ att all /) have made the place better vijs et modis[590] than what your Lordship (whilest you supposed me to be under some legall-obligation of maintaining a curate) would have required? Surely, then, there is more in the matter then Your Lordship perceives.[591]

[Machell's Notes: III.236]

{*For they can present agane when they please, tho they suffer the rectors to do it at present because they have made it not worth acceptance but for his augmentation and kindness.}

[III.236A][592]

And certainly, My Lord, to give a young man the Chapel of Sowerby with its ancient sallary (though he gets little of it:) 2^{li} per Annum of my own, as an Augmentation thereunto; the benefit of teaching a School, with meat, drinke & lodgeing, and 20^{s}, besides other gratuities, for teaching my children; and good education which is better than all \ this, / though I should not boast of it but that they have compelld me to glorie. {I have bred up iiij or v notable minister under me, & som have quited preferment of 10 & 20^{li} per annum to com to this place, which could not be for the sake of the town & what they get there.}[593] Certainly, these must be much better for him than X^{li} per annum. But this I have don: And do it at present. But I doe it Ex gratia and not ex debito,[594] lest I

[III.237]

draw a Rent-charge upon my successors.
And this I take to be the true reason of this grand complaint. For the Sherriff would have a good swingeing sallary \ now that theirs is gon / charged on the rectory per fas aut nefas,[595] & settled upon this Chappell of Sowerby, which he hopes to effect by the grand interest he has in Your Lordship & striking now while the iron is hot. And when that is done he can bring the Chaplaine (whose sallary will be noe more precariouse) to his own beck \ and being the factotum amongst the neighbourhood,

[588] MS: 'veteriribus'.
[589] 'And we can only do what we lawfully do.'
[590] 'In ways and means.'
[591] A margin comment here forms a query in Latin but as some of it has perished it has not been transcribed.
[592] Scrap page, 20cm by 11½cm, numbered and placed within the volume but not bound into it.
[593] Another margin comment on this page cites a series of page numbers, but they are unclear.
[594] 'Voluntarily, and not from compulsion.'
[595] 'By what is proper or improper' = 'by any means, regardless of legality or ethics.'

can / appoint him too when he has a mind,[596] by vertue of the forementioned evidence in the time of King Henry the 7. And another instance in the Register-booke \ of Temple Sowerby / whereby it appears \ that / they hired \ as well as maintained / their own Chaplane; and soe may make him teach \ schoole / at ~~Temple~~ Sowerby. And then the Rector of Kirkbythore, who (if this be done must pay all the salary) could not have the benefit of having his children taught at home but must send them thither, which would be a very great hardship upon him but well for the Sheriff and all his posterity. And if he can but gaine this one point of your Lordship and me, he has done a great worke, and will not need to aske any more. But I hope your Lordship will give me leave to dispose of my own as I have a mind; for charity ought to be free and not forced. & set the saddle upon the right horse, causing them to make restitution who have done the injury; for \ Your Lordship may see / it is not my fault, if the Reader have not sufficient maintenance.[597]

FINIS T.M.

[III.239][598]

[Letter from Thomas Machell to John Grandorge, chaplain to Lord Thanet, 5 June 1697]

Kirkby Thore
June 5th 1697
Sir
I would have waited upon my Lord som part of his journey but that it was not his Lordships pleasure, & therefore sent the papers inclosed upon Friday morning. But his Lordship (it seams) was gon so early that my man came too late & so brought them back, which I was heartily sorry for. Pray Sir, be so kinde as to give 'em his Lordship with my most humble service, and tell him farther that Temple-Sowerby will restore the Priests-Wages which they have unjustly taken away (& which Mr Sheriff can doe if he pleaseth with a word of his mouth). I will add unto it on his Lordships account (if he be not convinced of the illegality of the demand) whatsoever in reason can be expected from
Your most humble servant
Tho: Machell

Pray Sir, peruse & correct the ~~narrative~~ \ inclosed, which was sent in haist / and let me know what his Lordship sayes to it. Give my service to Dr Mill when you come to Oxford and forget former quarrels.[599] Remember me likewise to honest Will Sherwin[600], and let me hear \ from you / whether he receivd my directions or noe about som arreares of rent at Highworth,[601] which are due to me from one Widow Dring[602] near the Highcross; and if he have, what is don in that manner.

[596] 12cm of text has been scored through here.
[597] The letter seems to have first ended after the word 'injury'; the rest is in larger script, apart for the interlineation: 'your Lordship may see'. The sense towards the end of the letter is of rising indignation, with a calmer ending.
[598] This is Machell's covering note to Grandorge, sent with his letter to Lord Thanet. John Grandorge, then aged 27, was chaplain to Lord Thanet, who had ordered him to enquire into Temple Sowerby chapel rights: see III.232. Grandorge's reply appears on III.418A/B.
[599] Dr Mill was principal of Grandorge's old college, St Edmund Hall, between 1685 and 1707. He was the son of Thomas Mill of Shap, and entered as a plebeian into Queen's College on 14 Nov., 1661, aged 16 (as Milne). B.A. 1666; M.A. 1669; B.D. 1680; D.D. 1681 (as Mill). Machell had sent Mill his article on Roman inscriptions five years previously, see Part 3. Ch.3: Roman Antiquities; see also correspondence which enlarges on the relationship between Machell and Mill in Part 3. Ch.2; see also OAD.
[600] William Sherwin was at that time vicar of Headington, Oxford: son of William, of Oxford city, pleb. Magdalen Coll., matric.1683, aged 14; B.A. 1687; fellow Merton Coll. 1688; M.A. 1691; vicar of Headington, 1693; rector of Collingbourne Ducis, Wilts, 1700; canon of Chichester 1703, until his death on 14 May, 1735, see OAD.
[601] A town in north Wiltshire near Swindon.
[602] Or 'Drines'.

[III.418A]

[Letter from John Grandorge to Thomas Machell, 5 July 1697]

For the Reverend Mr Machel
Rector of Kirkbythore near Appleby in Westmorland

[III.418B]

Lincoln College[603]
July 5th 1697
Reverend Sir
I received yours with the papers relating to Temple Sowerby and acquainted my Lord therewith at Skipton Castle, who was pleased to have them perused by a clergyman, viz. Mr Pemberton of Bradford in Yorkshire, for he was at that time to wait upon his Lordship, and (considering the character he has in those parts and the good opinion my Lord has of him) I thought I could not serve you better than in moving that he might examine the case and give his thoughts to my Lord: who told me, after all was over, that he thought things were at a stand, and nothing at present could be done except it should be immediately left to the Bishop and the deed with three seals brought to light; which when my Lord pleases to take notice of after my return into Kent I will take care to acquaint you with it, for I fancy his Lordships business was so great in Craven that Mr Pemberton would scarce, since I came away, meddle any more in it; but if he has, and to any purpose, I will as soon as I can inform myself give you an account thereof.
Since I came hither I was with Mr Sherwin about your business, who tells me that it is a thing so much out of his way that he cannot possibly think of serving you in it, and that some time since \ he / mentioned as much to Mr Adkinson or Mr Waugh of Queens and thought that they had given you to understand as much. So that as far as I can perceive you must rather commit it to the care of some attorney or friend near the place, or here as you are acquainted, for Mr Sherwin is a man of so much business that it must not be expected from him. I am
Sir
Your most humble servant
John Grandorge

[III.243][604]

[B. Machell's Evidence]

[B.1.]

Observations and Queries
concerning the Register of the Chappel of Temple Sowerby
in the Parish of Kirkbythore

1. Query: Where is the parchment register mention'd in page 128. Whether this account as it is here be given up to & ingrossed by the Bishop or Chancellour \ see ibid. The Chancellour sayes he hath one of X^{t} Bar.[605] / {Note. Mr Dawson.}[606]
2. Query: Whether it be not brought to the Parish Church once in year & ingross'd there, or if it ought not to be soe? {Mr Dawson.}
3. Memorandum: to have what is material transcrib'd, & attested (for what is therein contein'd) to be a true copy.

Ad pag. 2.
{1631} 1. Note the 1^{t} page seems to be an order for the Readers wages to [be] levyed upon the Inhabitants; with several receipts, according to that agreement. Query if Mr Dawson could ever read it. The thing should seem to have bin writ in 1630 or however in 1631: see pag. 2. {Mr Dawson 1630, 1631.}

[603] Oxford.
[604] Also numbered p.1.
[605] Answer to Machell's query by Christopher Barrow.
[606] For Thomas Dawson, rector of Newbiggin (1681-98), former curate/schoolmaster at Temple Sowerby, see Newbiggin (above), I.567.

2. An agreement between the church-wardens of Temple-Sowerby Church with the rest of the neighbours and John Brice for annual repairs of the windows: p.2. {(2.) v. p.2. 1618. 1631. 1609/10.} p.9. Anno Domini 1618 (I wonder at this, because the second page is 1631 – but if what is writ upon the first leaf may have bin inserted afterwards so that the Register doth truly begin at page the 3rd in 1609.) Note that the family of the Dalstons who came but lately into the parish have endeavord to draw to themselves the right of the Rector in appointing his own Reader by getting a poor ignorant man to subscribe to this forme at pag. 9th: I. Michael &c.[607]

[III.244]

{!! Note.} I Michael Wilkinson, Clerke, do hereby acknowledge that I am hired to serve the Cure at Temple-Sowerby Church until All Hallow Day next coming,[608] & no longer, unless I can hereafter gain the consent & good likeing of Sir Christopher Dalston, Knight, and the greater number of my parishioners in the town of Temple-Sowerby, in witness thereof I have hereunto sett my hand the 21 Day of December 1618.[609]

{1618. p.1} Memorandum: that som way be thought on to have this publiquely revoked & cancell'd; if it be injuriouse to the church. Note: he calls it a \ Cure / church; & calls them his parishioners & submits himselfe to the approbation &c. Maybe they have rented the tythes and bin obliged by the bargain to finde a Reader.

N.B. The ~~neigh~~ Church (or rather Chapel Wardens) are to finde Communion-Booke,[610] Bible, Book of Homilyes,[611] pulpet cloth & table-cloth.[612] See a receit of them by Micael Wilkinson, 1618. p.9.

Query: What is meant by the old stock, new stock, marke? What by his house? An non.[613] George Parker? What the jury has to doe with the church affairs and where? Item of the stock anciently belonging to his house, see page 24, 25, 26.

{1638.} A note of the church-stock in (as I take it) 1638. under 3 heads or stiles: Sc. stock anciently belonging to his house: old stock: new stock, see p.25, 26.

{1640.} A note of the old/new church stock for 3s the pound and the pledges for new security (as I suppose) in 1640. pag. 29.

[III.245][614]

{?! Note.} Memorandum Mr John Dalston of Acorne Banke & Mr William Walker Rector of Kirkby Thure, did grant & appoint a seat (or stall) in the Quire of Temple-Sowerby Church for the use of Christopher Lowson, John Bleamire and Robert Hodgson, in lieu of another seat which Mr Dalston had of them: 1662. See pag. 38.

Query: what did Mr Dalston had to doe with the quire, being no patrone. 2. Whether he & Mr Walker could make this order (excepting only for Mr Walkers life) without the consent of the patrone & Ordnarye.[615] Item: when Mr Dalston built & his quire and with whose consent?

{1617. 1664. 1622.} A note of old/new stock Feb. 15. 1664. at 3 [s] & 2 [s] \ 1617. p.97, 98, 99 / \ 1622. p.101 / Query: what is meant by marke? See page 49, 95.

---

[607] References to members of the Dalston family appear more than 20 times throughout this chapter, but without comment. This section describes Machell's side of his distressing rift with John and Christopher Dalston, which centred on the patronage, finances and oversight of the chapel at Temple Sowerby. Machell's forbearance to comment adversely within his official 'history' is at variance with the negative remarks, veiled or otherwise, he often visited on his peers.

[608] 1. November.

[609] One Michael Wilkinson was curate at Barton (Patterdale Chapel) from 1606 to 1608; another Michael Wilkinson was ordained at Rose Castle, Carlisle, in 1618. See CCED. No other records are available from CCED.

[610] *Book of Common Prayer*.

[611] Homily: a religious discourse addressed to a congregation; a sermon; especially a practical discourse with a view to the spiritual edification of the hearers. In the Church of England specially applied to the discourses contained in the *Books of Homilies* published in 1547, 1563 (with additions up to 1571) for use in parish churches. *OED*. See also http://www.anglicanlibrary.org/homilies/. Machell refers to the 'homily desk' in Part 2, Ch.3ix, Staveley, II.113.

[612] Altar cloth.

[613] 'Is it not.'

[614] Also numbered p.3.

[615] 'Without consent of the bishop.'

Memorandum: that the Jury of Temple Sowerby doe finde that John Stable hath 2li the poor-stock, belonging to the town which was due at Candlemas last and to be paid at Candlemas next, paying 4s for the same to the poor of the foresaid town. Witness our hands: John Gowling, George Pa[r]ker &c. p.49, 95 (anno 1662.)
Query: Where and by whom this Court was held? How this comes under their jurisdiction? What is meant by Poor-stock, & how it differs from Church stock?
Memorandum: The Jury aforesaid doth unanimously agree that if any having the

[III.246]

Church-stock doe not pay it or ingaige security for it, paying the consideration that the Churchwardens & other officers doe proceed to levy it by way of distress[616] within 14 dayes after the quarter dayes. Provided if the Church-wardens, the Baliff and other officers appointed by the Church-wardens then being doe omit the prosecution of this their office, that they shall be able to answer the Court holden at the worshipfull John Dalstons Esq. at Acorn Bank, for their neglect: p.50.

Feb. 15. 1666.

{1666.} Memorandum: The Jurors of Temple-Sowerby do finde John Stable to have 2li of the Poore stock, for which he is to pay 6s at the Feast of St Thomas before Christmas next,[617] which he is in arrearages. And every yeare dureing the term he hath it, he is to pay 1s 6d per pound at the Purification of Our Blessed Virgin (commonly call'd Candle-mas Day)[618] into the hands of the Church-wardens to be distributed according to their prudent direction: John Gowling, Edward Cale &c.
An account of the dues belonging to the Curate of Temple-Sowerby. Robert Brockell, curate: see page. 56 \ 93. / I do not understand it, but it seems to be 1: 5: 0½ per quarter.
Item at All Saints 1664.[619] Lammas quarter 1664.[620] see page 86, 87.
{!!! Note.} Arrearages due to Thomas Barnet, Curate, at Candlemas 1665. p.100. Item for the Church-stock May the 4th 1662. A particular note of quarterage due to the Curate; in all 1:6s: 4 qu. \ see p.114. / Item in 1661. \ p.115; / 1660. \ p.116; / 1659. \ p.117; / 1658. \ p.118; / 1657. May 1, \ p.119 /}
A note

[III.247][621]

of the Church-stock (old/new/marks: 2s & 3s per pound), page 88, 89, 95.
Thomas Barnet, Curate of Temple-Sowerby, May 29 1665. p.99.
Due to Mr Walker for Easter Reckonings p.92. And to his curate ibidem. {Note.}
Query: What for gardens; tythe-hay; more-spot; communicants. Foales? Calves? Lams. Chese or other tythes.
{1661. 1665. 1622.} Thomas Lumley, Curate, 1661. pag.100. Thomas Barnet Curate 1663. p. ibid, & June 12. 1665. p.105. A Note of Church-stock in 1662.
The 17. day of October 1624. {Note.}it is agreed before Sir Christopher Dalston Knight an William Teasdall & John Pattison, that Robert Gowlings house and garth, and one Rig of his lying on the mooreland near the leaning ditch shall be charged with 26s viijd of the church-stock, and if the said Robert Gowling shall sell the said Rigg, that then 1li of the purchase of the said Rigg to be paid to the Church; & the other vjs viijd remain to the house & garth of the said Robert Gowling or his assignes: Robert Gowling marke p.103.
{1662.} A Note of the Church-stock old/new in 162. (pro 1662. ut opinor)[622] Richard Fawell being then Church-warden.
A Note of the Church-stock old/new, 3s & 2s per li 1657. alledgeing that the one pound is of the Church-stock. Memorandum: I could never get more of Rowland Lowes than 15d a quarter & 5s per annum.

[616] Distraint.
[617] 21 December, the traditional day for giving to the poor.
[618] Candlemas day is 2 February.
[619] All Saints Quarter begins in November.
[620] Lammas: the Feast of First Fruits, 1 August.
[621] Also numbered p.5.
[622] 'As I think'. Machell was of the opinion that this date was 1662.

[III.248]

A Note of Church-Stock in 1655. old, new &c., p.108.
I received ~~nothing~~ of Mr Lough no tyth hay-silver since Mr Walker came to Kirkby Thure: Thomas Lumley, p.112.
If therefore, prescription be here pretended, it is forfait: T.M.

Rents 13^{s} & 4^{d}

	Li	s	d
Mr Dalston, for the White-Stones:	0	5	0
Mr Christopher Lough, for the Acres Close	0	3	4
Robert Pattison att present, for an house and ground, of which his brother John Pattison is the heire	0	4	8
George Parker, for Moorelands Close	0	4	0
{1675.} Henry Jackson, for one house that he bought of John Pattinson, belonging to the Rectory of Kirkby-Thore, purchased with 4^{d} rent in 1675.	0	0	4

This last 4^{d} was that I suppose which Mr Walker was so long afindeing. T. M.

Tythe hay-silver, as it was set down by the Jury at Acorne-Banke {I never finde any mention of till this time.}

[III.248-49][623]

	Li.	s.	d.	Ob.[624]	Qu.[625]
John Pattison			2	ob	
John Atkinson			2	ob	
Daltons House			2	ob	
Christopher Lowson			2	ob	
John Lowis & Thos Spooner		3			
Richard Loweis		3			
Stables House			2	ob	
*George Parker			4	ob	
*Robert Pattison			1		
*John Stable			4	ob	
Stephensons House		3	0		
*William Teasdal			1		qu.
John Bleamire			2	ob	
George Haron			2	ob	
*Mr Lough			2		qu.
Fargus Thomson			1		qu.
Thomas Fawset & John Gowling					
Sowerby House			3		
Mr Dalston pro Sanwath			3		
Acorn Bank demeisne		5			
*John Gowling			4	ob	
*Robert Teasdal			2		qu.
Robert Hodgson			2	ob	
Thomas Teasdall			2	ob	
Mr Hall			4	ob	
Mr Hall pro Moore Spot			6		
Parson Closes which usually hath bin received with the Easter Reckonings of those who	2	0	0		

[623] The asterisks on these pages were placed here either by Machell or some other person; they have nothing to do with this edition's choice of symbols for delineating Machell's textual notes.
[624] ½d.
[625] Farthing (¼d.)

collect moneys for his more-farme and
Whin-silver {?}[626]

{1665.} Receiv'd of Edward Cale 2[s] for the Parsons Close Anno Domini 1665. è pag.112-113:
A Note of Church-stock quarterly May 10, 1656. another, 1655. another, 1654. another, 1653.

A True Note of the old Church-stock 3[s] per pound, being perfected the 2[nd] day of Feb. 1651. In all

	Li.	s.	d.	
	8	5	0	
Item: a note of the old bem.	14	10	4	
Both together	22	15	4	È pag. 125, 126.

A particular note of the church-stock quarterly in 1652.[627]

{1639.} Anno Domini 1639.
Church-wardens John Hall and Edward Cale: burials, wedings & Christenings as they are in the Parchment Register-Booke.

Imprimis receiv'd of 29 houses.		vi[s] & ij[d]	
Item: dispurs'd for bread & wine at two severall times.		3[s] & 6[d]	0: vij[s] 0d
Item: for washing the surplices & table-cloth.		ii[d]	
Layd forth to John Bryce for upholding the church window.	xij[d]		
For delivering a note of our Register-Booke	ij[d]		

[III.250][628]

Receiv'd of the Church-stock [Blank]
whereof wee have paid to Sir Edward ~~2vs~~ 26[s]. So there remaineth overplus vj[s] xiiij[d], whereof (laid) out three shillings & 2[d] to make up for bread & wine, and the rest being 3[s] & 4[d], wee do pay to the next Churchwardens and wee do also deliver the next churchwardens one silver bowle, one Communion Booke, one Bible, one Homily Booke, one Table-cloth, one surplice and one flagon. (All this at p.128.)

Receiv'd of Robert Pattison for a burial	3[s] 4[d]
Laid forth to John Brash, glazier	12[d]
Item: For a pair of bell strings	15[d]
Item, Thomas Pattison, for his fathers burial	3s 4[d]
Item: Laid forth when wee tooke our oaths at Apelby[629]	8[d]

{Note.} Item: Receiv'd more than Sir Edwards wages for 3 quarters, 9[d] in the quarter, & for one quarter, 6[d]. p.129.
{Note.} (All Saints quarter 1650. (it seems to be for curates wages)
{1628.} The accounts of the church-wardens John Pattison & John Browne for the year of Our Lord God 1628.
{Note.} Gathered for the Preasts-wages quarterly, John Pattison, 6[d], John Atkinson, 15[d] &c. pag.142.
{1632.} 1632. a Note of the new Church-stock

[III.251][630]

A True Count of John Brown & [blank] Pattison, church-wardens for the Year of Our Lord 167 (for 1667)
{N[ote] That was in Sir Christopher Dalstons time vide infra[631] and may be in \ 1620. or / 1621. for 1622. follows.}
Imprimis collected of all that hath the Church-stock according to the rate & custom.

[626] Machell has questioned this. Whins (gorse) were used by farmers as livestock bedding. As such they were a crop like any other. https://www.dailypost.co.uk/news/local-news/farmers-return-gorse-cutting-help-2683219
[627] Machell underscored this text to separate it from the text below.
[628] Also numbered p.8.
[629] Oaths of allegiance and supremacy of the Church of England.
[630] Also numbered p.9.
[631] 'See below.'

{Note.} Out of which wee have paid the Curate all for one year, & xl^{s} which the Parson did pay, and wee finde 3^{s} 8^{d} remaining to the next church-wardens to be set forward to the use of the Church {Curate, not the master, for the proof being but 40s. See below 19s, where the letters stand an in a ranke. See also p.139!!!}
And William Teasdall younger, Thomas Walker, Thomas Atkinson, Andrew Stephenson payd nothing.
Item: receiv'd of xxx viij houses, every one, for bread & wine, whereof wee dispurs'd ij^{s} x^{d}. And iiij^{d} remain to the next Church-Wardens. And Thomas Walker & Andrew Stephenson payed nothing.
Item: for repareing of the Church of xxx […] houses vj^{d} a piece, which is xix^{s} and [blank][632]
Thomas Walker is nothing. {!}

Out of which sum wee have dispurs'd		
for the [blank]		viij^{d}
for a Register		6^{d}
For limeing the church,	vj^{s}	viij^{d} {q? ubi}[633]
for lyme carrage	xij^{d}	
for slate	viij^{d}	
for [blank]		iij^{d}
for hair		ij^{d}
for (spelks)[634] and strings	xij^{d}	

which is xvij^{s} & j^{d}, out of the which remaine ij^{s} v^{d} {pag. 132}

Item: Receiv'd for Prisners & Soljers money {these are sesses for lame Soljers & Prisners} of one & thirty \ xxx / houses, ij^{d} an house, which is in all v^{s} & ij^{d}, and there remaneth vj^{d} to the next Church-wardens; and John Dalton, John Lowis younger, Thomas Atkinson & Thomas Walker payed nothing. {forsan quia paupers}[635]
Receiv'd of Sir Christopher Dalston Knight for Christopher Phillips burial in the church, iij^{s} & iiij^{d}.
Receiv'd for a tree, xxiij^{d}, out of which payd 8^{d} for the lodging of 3 travellers, which were to be lodged in the Churches account: È pag.~~132~~ 133.[636]

[III.252]

Anno 1621.
The account of Richard Stable and Robert Parker (it seems writ by the hand of Michael Wilkinson. Compare with pag. 9)
Receiv'd by George Parker & his fellow, xij^{d} whereof layd out by us to maintaine the church wages: viij^{d}. And wee received for prisoner money ij^{d} overplus, which wee dispursed for washing the surplice and wee deliver to our successors Richard S [blank] & his fellow:
Item: we deliver to them one silver cup with a covering, one hand-bell and one order in [blank] made & agreed upon with a [blank] within Temple-Sowerby {È pag. 133.}

The Account of Richard Fawell, Churchwarden Anno 1622.

Imprimis receiv'd of xxvj tenents at iij^{d} a piece	vj^{s}	vj^{d}	
Item: of vij cottagers at ij^{d} a piece		xiiij^{d}	
John Dalton, William Sowerby, Thomas Walker,			paid
Robert Gowling younger, Hugh Baxter			nothing
Item: of Richard Stable & his fellow late churchwardens		v^{d}	
Item: of xxx viij houses, every one j^{d} for bread & wine	iij^{S}	v^{d}	
Item: of John Pattisons wives[637] burial in the church	iij^{s}	iij^{d}	

& Dispurs'd:

[632] 38 houses would yield 19s at 6d per house.
[633] Query, when?
[634] Thin strips of wood. Splinters are locally called 'spelks'.
[635] 'Perhaps because they were paupers.'
[636] Taken from p.133.
[637] His wife's burial.

for mayson work	5^{s}		
for lyme		vij^{d}	
for leading stone		vj^{d}	
att the visitation[638] at Apleby		x^{d}	
for mending the glass-windows		xj^{d}	{È p.135}
Item: for a General Chapter at Browham		j^{d}	
Item: for washing the Surplice & Table-cloth		ij^{d}	
For a Court entering for Alexander Gowling		ij^{d}	
& deliver up* 3 bookes, a silver cup, an hand-bell			{È p.136}

It seems there was no Church-stock then. Query de curates wages. Anon church wages supra.[639]

[III.253][640]

The Account of William Teasdall, churchwarden as above 1623.

First collected by me of 28 tenents 2^{d} a piece for repareing the church-leads: it comes to	iiij^{s}	viij^{d}
Whereof dispurs'd to a plummer	3^{s}	6^{d}
More dispurs'd for bell strings		viij^{d}
More at the General Chapter		iiij^{d}
To John Lowis for service to the plummer		iiij^{d}
More laid out for Bread & Wine		iij^{d}
		&c.

In calce paginæ[641] receiv'd of Robert Dalton iij^{li} of his church stock, which I deliver'd to John Hall
Writ to supply the defect {p.137}
More of the Church-wardens spared of Sir Edwards wages: xij^{d}; and deliver'd as before to the next Church-wardens {p.138}

The account of Humphrey Gowling & Thomas Haron:
Church-wardens, collected by us 1624.

For old arrearages for Prisners and Soljers money	x^{s}	
Whereof dispurs'd to the Heigh Constable for the same	ix^{s}	iiij^{d}
Item: Laid out at the Visitation		xij^{d}
Item: At the General Chapter[642]		iiij^{d}
Laid vj^{d} more than wee receiv'd		
Item: iiij^{s} of the Church-stock Haron had besides his Old stock		
{1^{t} mention of Church stock but presupposing it}		
Payd iij^{s} iij^{d} for Roger Stable {p.138}		

[III.253-4]

Church-wardens 1625.
William Teasdal junior, Robert Gowling senior

Receiv'd of John Pattison xx^{s}, which was given by Richard Stable ~~at his~~ desceased, to the use of the Church: pay as above the xxxi^{t} day of July 1625.	
1625. Item: Receiv'd of John Lowson, the sum of	xx^{s}

[638] An ecclesiastical visit to examine the state of a diocese, parish, religious institution, etc.; a visit paid by a bishop or archdeacon [chancellor of the diocese in the case of Carlisle Diocese]; a meeting or gathering of persons concerned in such a visit. *OED*.
[639] 'Are not these the church wages, above?'
[640] Also numbered p.11.
[641] 'At the foot of the page.'
[642] Presumbly, this is a deanery meeting [?]

Ould Church-stock
~~Laid out of this so receiv'd to William … old stock~~ ~~xx~~
Receiv'd of John Hill for the Ould Church-stock xx^{s}
[&] of the new stock xl$^{s.}$
Receiv'd of Annas Sowerby Ould stock xx^{s}
Laid out of this so receiv'd: xx^{s}
To William [Blank] ~~ould stock~~ xx^{s}
[Blank] Hodgson ~~ould stock~~ xx^{s}
Michael Hodgson surety
[Blank] Teasdall iiij^{li}
xx^{s} is of the Ould stock (the rest of the new)

{p.139} Anno Dom. 1627. Ould stock after iiij^{s} the pound. And other money for ij^{s} {p.140.}

1629.
John Pattison, John Atkinson junior: Church-wardens.
Wee receiv'd at the last church-wardens hands ij^{s}
{Note.} Laid out by us in charges ij^{s} &[643]
{!} Item: spared of the church-wadges ii^{s}
Deliver'd by us to the next Churchwardens,
Richard Fawel & Robert Dalton vj^{s} vii^{d}

[p.]141. 1628.
The Account of the Church-wardens John Pattison & John Brown for the year of Our Lord God 1628.
{Note.} gather'd for the Preast Wages quarterly
John Pattison 6^{d} &c.
John Atkinson xv^{d} &c.{p.142-143}

All Saints Quarter 1650. p.141.

[III.255][644]

Item: wee deliver'd to the next Church-wardens; a Bible, a Nomine Booke {for homily},[645] a Booke of Common Prayer, with surpleths and Table-cloth, ut suppleat[ur][646] p.144. in capite.[647]
A Note of the New Church-stock 1632. {p.144}
A Note of church-stock for Candlemas quarter 1649. {p.146}
A particular note of the Church-stock Candlemas {p.148}
Receiv'd more than Sir Edwards wages iij^{s} for iij quarters, & 9^{d} for one quarter, which wee tooke 1^{s} j^{d} for Bread & Wine, & wee spared 2^{s}.
Laid forth to the plummer for mending the church leads v^{s}
Glasier xij^{d}
Laid forth at Apleby when wee tooke oathes viij^{d}
Item: at one visitation ix^{d}
Item: at the last General Chapter iiij^{s}
Bell string for washing surplice & table-cloth &c. {p.149 ultim.}[648]
Chappel ought to be & originally was endow'd by those who build them; and not withstanding them they ought to repare to the parish church. They are chappels of ease, not of idleness. Not church. Quia[649] no presentation nor induction to

[III.256]

them as churches but onely as apurtenances & chappells.
2. If churches I have no title to them for I am no[t] qualify'd to hold 3 churches nor yet 2. But they are chappells:

[643] The rest of this line is obscured by the binding.
[644] Also numbered p.13.
[645] A book of scriptural openings such as, 'In the name of the Father', used for sermons and discourses addressed to congregations.
[646] 'As should be supplied.'
[647] At head of p.144.
[648] Ultim: 'last entries.'
[649] 'Because.'

1. Because so they are mentioned to be in an Evidence penes Honorablem Venerab. Johes Tufton, Armig[er], wherein Adam de Kirkbythore grants the advowsan thereof to Robert de Veteripont, anno 4^0 vel 5^0 Johannes [1203-1204].
2. Because the inducti to this day runs cum Capellis de Milburne & Sowerby.[650]

Object

They are call'd Churches, & the overseers of them, Churchwardens.

Answer

That make nothing against Evidence. People are apt to miscall chappells & confound them with churches, so the High Field at Crakenthorp is call'd the Kirkbankes, & yet the place where the chappell stood, the Chappel Garth; and the well near adjoyneing, Chappell well.

Object

But they bury, Christen & mary there: ergo a church.

Answer

Tho they doe so, this makes it not church but onely a chappell of ease; for this may be don by consecration to any chaple, as in colleges; & the Bishop of

[III.257]

Carlile is now about to make Raughton Chappel one of this nature: so l[…]ng chappel.[651]

Query

Who to repare the quires in chappells. What obligation to preach? Once in the month.
What sortes of tythes due?
What fees for christening, churchings, burying, marriages?

Memorandum: Mr Dalston pretends[652] prescription for tythe calves in his demeisne 10 groates a calfe, sed de hac q.[653] For:
1. Mr Dawson, Reader, sayes Mr Walker declared that he would \ not / stand with him for it because he was a Gentleman; and one of whom he receiv'd ~~many~~ \ his / dinner when he preached there.
2. The demaisne is of short continuance being tenanted lands given to the Lord for freeing[654] the other halfe {But he sayes they are not}. And besides, since the division,[655] many of the tenements have been purchased and so added lately to the demaisne. Now, if the tenents were lyable to pay in kinde, why not the Lord who injoys those tenements.
3. Kirkbythore, Hougil & Grainge, which are far more ancient, pay calves in kinde: why, then, not this?

Machell's Notes: [III.258]

Though Temple-Sowerby pretend an exemption from the Bishops Court, yet tis evident from the Register that the church wardens as they call them there, have frequently appear'd and bin sworn at Apleby.[656]
My Lady Sandford pretends that Grainge is only to pay 5^{li} and no tythe corne in kinde but [blank] now living has led tythe corne from of the place. Her ground is because twas chantery land but so was som at Apleby.
Memorandum: There is one place my Lady Sandford holds for which the prescription money was not paid: ergo forfait. Query: Mr Hall.

---

[650] 'Because the induction to this day is for the parish with its chapels of Milburn and Sowerby.'
[651] One word here is unclear. Raughton Head chapel was rebuilt before 1678 and re-consecrated by Bishop Rainbow on that date: Hyde & Pevsner, 583.
[652] Claims.
[653] 'But on this matter, I question.'
[654] Enfranchising.
[655] 'Division': enclosure of common land, often by private arrangement, much of it in the seventeenth century. See J.R. Wordie, 'The Chronology of English Enclosure 1500-1914', *The Economic History Review 2,* Vol. XXXVI, 4, (Nov. 1983), 483-505.
[656] Temple Sowerby held the status of a probate peculiar. 'Certain parishes, manors and liberties were exempt from the jurisdiction of the bishop and archdeacon in whose diocese and archdeaconry they were situated. They were subject to the probate jurisdiction of others when a testator had goods in more than one diocese of the northern province or in more than one jurisdiction (e.g. goods in both a peculiar of Dean and Chapter and in the jurisdiction of the archbishop). Then, the Prerogative Court of York had the right to grant probate. See Borthwick Institute. https://www.york.ac.uk/borthwick/holdings/guides/research-guides/probate-courts/

Temple Sowerby & Milburne \ pretend to / prescriptions for hay, but Kirkbythore payes all in kinde.
The whole quire with all the seats under the organ belong to the rector of Kirkbythore.
Enquire the day of paying prescriptions.

[V. 289]

[B.2.]

A true and perfect Abstract out of an old Register Book of Temple Sowerby In the County of Westm'land[657]

The first page of which book hath the number 1. upon it, but part of the said page cannot be read but towards the latter end thereof it hath these words:
Receivd of John Stable Anno Domini 1646. &c.; and the last page of the said Book hath this number 149. upon it, besides other things inscribd.
1. In page 97. 98. and 99. a note of the Church Stock in the year of our Lord God 1617.
Uxor Pattinson – xiijs iiijd. The whole township is set down.

2. In page the 9th.
I, Michael Wilkinson, Clerke, do hereby declare that I am hyred to serve the C[ure] at Temple-Sowerby Church until All Hallow Day next coming, & no longer, unless [I] can hereafter gain the consent & good lykeing of Sir Christopher Dalston, knight {N.B.} and the greater number of my parishioners within the town of Temple-Sowerby, in witness thereof I have hereunto sett my hand the 21th Day of December 1618.
Michael Wilkinson
Witnesses: John Lowson, William Gouling

3. In page 134. Anno 1621

The Accompt of Richard Stable and Robert Parker received by George Parker and his fellow	12d
Whereof laid out by us to maintaine the Church wadges	6d
And we receivd for Prisoner Money {N.B.}	2d overplus
Disbursd for washing the surplice &c.	[Blank]
we deliver to our successors Richard [Blank] and his fellow (&c.)	[Blank]

4. In page 135.
The accomt of Richard Fawell Church warden both receivd and laid forth in the year of Our Lord God 1622 as followeth

First. Receivd of 26 tenants 3d apiece	6s	6d
Item. Receivd of 7 cottagers 2d apiece		14d
John Dalton &c. paid nothing		
Item. Received of Richard Stable and his fellow late Church wardens		5d
Item. Received of 38 houses every one a penny for bread and wine	3s	5d
of which summe he laid out 2d more then that came to	3s	5d

Anno Domini 1623. In page 137 and 138.
5. The accompt of William Teasdale Church warden as above.

First. Collected per me of 28 tenants 2d apeice for repairing the Church Leads comes to	4s	8d
Whereof disbursed to a plummer	3s	6d
More disbursd to Bellstrings		8d
More at the generall Chapter		4d

More of the Churchwardens spared of Sir Edwards wages 12d and delivered as before to the next Church wardens	12d

[657] This section contains a mixture of Roman and Arabic numerals. Here, for simplicity, Arabic numerals are used throughout.

[V.290]

In page 139.
6. Churchwardens Anno 1625.
William Teasdale junior, Robert Gowlin[g] senior
Receiv'd of John Pattison xx^{s}, which was given by Richard Stable deceased, to the use of the Church paid as above the 31th day of July 1625.
Receiv'd of John Lowson, the sum of xx^{s} Ould Church-stock.
Receiv'd of John Hall xxs of the Ould Church-stock, & xl^{s} of the new-stock.
Receiv'd of Annas Sowerby xx^{s} of the Ould stock .

In page 140. Anno Domini 1627.
7. John Hall and Edward [Blank} Church wardens.
Receivd by us at the hands of William Teasdale junior the [sum] of foure pound whereof xxs of the old stock after iij^{s} the pound and iij^{li} for ij^{s} the pound.
Delivered to Thomas Haron William Gowling pledge new Stock.
Item. To Edward Stable iij^{li} viz. of the Old Stock xx^{s}.
Item. xl^{s} of the new stock.
And the said Edward Stable doth lie in pawn for the same one Rood[658] of his [land] next unto George Parker.

8. In page 142.
The account of the Churchwardens John Pattyson and John Brown year of our Lord God 1628.
{N.B.} Gathered for the Preasts Wages [this] quarter.

John Pattison		6d	
John Atkinson		20d	
John Dalton		6d	
Robert Dalton	2s	9d	
John Lowson	2s	0d	
John Lowes		6d	
William Gale		3d	
Rowland Lowes	2s	6d	
Richard Lowes		3d	
Edward Stable	2s	6d	
George Parker		6d	
William Newman		3d	
Robert Parker		15d	
Richard Stable house		6d	
Richard Fawell		6d	
William Stephenson		6d	
[Blank] Teasdell		6d	
[Blank] Blemar		12d	
Thomas Haron		12d	The said Thomas 6 pence at Sent Ellennors Quarter[659]
Humfrey Gowling		6d	
William Teasdall the elder	6d		
William Teasdall junior		3d	
Elizabeth Browne		3d	
Robert Gowling senior		12d	
William Gowling		6d	
Michel Hodgson		21d	
Elizabeth Sowerby		6d	
[Blank] Teasdell		3d	
Christofer Dalston		6d	
[Blank] Hale		6d	
[Blank] Pattyson senior		3d	
[Blank] Browne		6d	

[658] One rood = ¼ acre.
[659] The feast day of St Eleanor, aka St Helen, is 18 August.

[Blank] Grainger	3d
[Blank] Cole	}
Elizabeth Smith	} paid nothing
[Blank] Gowling	}

[V.291]

In page 141.
9. Received by the said Churchwardens 40s of William Stephenson of the Old Stock whereof delivered the same 40^{s} to John Lowson Anno 1629.

John Pattinson junior, John Atkinson Churchwardens.

Wee received at the last churchwardens hands	2s
Laid out by us in charges	2s 10d
{N.B.} Item. Spared of the churchwages	2s

In page 128.
Anno Domini 1639.
10. Church wardens John Hall, Edward Caile.
Buryills weddings and Christnings as they are in the parchment Register Booke.
The account of the said Churchwardens for their year.
Imprimis. Received &c.
Item. Received of Cycily Lowson of the old stock xx$^{s.}$ at Lammas 1639.
The same letten then to John Robinson xxs unto May-day then next after, paying to the next Churchwardens.
Item. Received at All Saints of Thomas Pattinson for Robert Parker of the new stock xls the which was letten at the same time to Robert Dalton xx^{s}.
Item. To Robert Hodgson and John Speight the other xx$^{s.}$
Item. Received for the Church stock this year [blank] Whereof we have paid to Sir Edward {N.B.} xxvi$^{s.}$, so there remaineth overplus, vi^{s} & vi. Whereof we [laid] out three shillings 2$^{d.}$ to make up for bread and wine & the rest being iij^{s} and iiij^{d} we do pay unto the next Church wardens.

11. in page 129 Anno Domini 1642.
Churchwardens John Atkinson and John Pattyson.
Laid out for bread and wine two several times, vis iiiij^{d}.
{N.B.} Item. Received more then Sir Edwards wages for 3 quarters 9^{d} in the quarter and for one quarter vi^{d}.

12. In page 112.
I received of Mr Lough no Tythe Hay Silver since Mr Walker came to Kirkbythore [signed] Thomas Lumley.

13. in page 108 1655.
{N.B.} A note of the Church stock old and new [let for] 3^{s} per pound and 2^{s} per pound together with the old marks.

	Old Stock	New stock	Old Mark	Yearly	Quarterly
	li	li	s. d.	s. d.	s. d.
Mr John Hall	2	4	13. 04	16. 0	4. 0
John Pattinson	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
John Atkinson	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
Margaret Dalton	1	3s 4d	13. 04	5. 4	1. 4
Christopher Lowson	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
John Lowes	0	0	13. 04	2. 0	0. 6
Thomas Spooner	0	0	0 0	1. 0	0. 3
Rowland Lowes	1. 6s. 8d	0	13. 04	5. 8	1. 5

[V.292]

Memorandum that I never could get more of Rowland Lowes then 5^{s} a year [he] alleging that the 1^{li} he has is of the new stock.

Lancelot Lowes For which stock he has pledged his Acre on Moorlands which was formerly bought of Edward Stable.	0	1. 10s. 0d.	0	3s 0d	9d
Widow Lowes	0	0	0	1s 0d	3d
Richard Stable	0	1. 0s. 0d	13. 4	4s 0d	1s 0d
[Blank] Parker	0	15s 0d	13. 4	3s 6d	10½d
[Blank] Pattinson for houses	6s 8d	0	0	2s 6d	6d
[Blank] Stable	6s 8d	2. 2s 1d	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
Richard Fawcett	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
[Blank] Fawells houses	0	0	13. 4	2s od	6d
[Blank] Fawcett	0	10s 0d	0	1s 0d	3d

Memorandum that John Gowling gent. had one pound of the New Stock and lett William Fawcett have halfe of it.

William Teasdale	0	£1 0s 0d	13. 4	4s 0d	1s 0d
John Bleamire	0	£1 0s 0d	13. 4	4s 0d	1s 0d
John Ions House	0	4s 0d	13. 4	2s 0d	7d
John Gowling	0	10s 0d	13. 4	3s 0d	9d
Mr Christopher Lough	0	£2 0s 0d	13. 4	6s 0d	1s 6d
Robert Teasdale	0	0	0	1s 0d	3d
Fergus Thompson	0	10s 0d	0	2s 0d	6d
Thomas Fawcett Jun	10s 0d	0	0	2s 6d	7½d
Jennet Gowling	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
Robert Hodgson	13s 4d	£1 0s 0d	13. 4	6s 0d	1s 6d
John Speights house	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
George Haron	10s 0d	0	13. 4 & the house he is in	3s 6d	10d
Edward Cale	0	0	0	1s od	3d
Robert Pattinson	15s 0d	15s 0d	0	3s 9d	11d
Edward Mayson	0	0	13. 4	2s 0d	6d
John Walker	0	0	0	1s 0d	3d
John Gowling	0	0	0	1s od	3d

14. In pages 56 and 57

An exact account of the dues belonging to the Curate of Temple Sowerby

	Old Stock	New Stock	Old Mark	The Quarter
John Pattinson	0	0	6d	6d
John Atkinson	0	£1 0s 0d	6d	1s 6d
John Dalton	0	0	6d	6d
Christopher Lowson	0	0	6d	6d
John Lowis	0	0	6d	6d
Richard Lowis	0	0	6d	6d
Widow Ion	4s 0d	0	6d	6d
George Parker cum f.	0	15s 0d	6d	10½ d
Mrs Barnet	0	0	3d	3d
Alice Thompson	0	0	3d	3d
John Stable	6s 8d	£2 2s 1d	6d	8d

[V.293]

Thomas Fawell	0	7s 1d	6d	2s 5d
William Teasdale	13s 4d	£4 6s 8d	6d	2s 5d
Mr Gowling	0	0	6d	6d
James Haron	0	£1 0s 0d	6d	1s 0d
George Haron	10s 0d	£2 0s 0d	6d	1s.10d
Mr Lough	0	£2 0s 0d	3d	1s. 3d
Robert Teasdale	0	0	3d	3d
John Bleamire	0	£1 0s 0d	6d	1s. 0d
Thomas Lowson	0	0	6d	6d
Richard Lowson	0	0	6d	6d
Thomas Fawcet	£1 0s 0d	0	0	6d
Thomas Spooner	0	0	3d	3d
Henry Gowling	5s 0d	5s 0d	6d	9d
Robert Hodgson	0	0	6d	6d
William Hodgson	0	0	6d	6d
Mr Hall	£6 0s 0d	0	6d	4s. 6d
Edward Caile	0	0	3d	[Blank]
John Speight	0	0	3d	3d
John Walker	0	0	3d	3d
Jo. Gowling carpenter	0	13s 4d	6s 3d	7d
Robert Brockell, Curate				

15. In page 119. N.B. May the 1t. 1657. Quarter Wages

[Column 1]		[Column 2]		[Column 3]	
John Pattinson	6d	Widow Stable	6d	Jo. Gowling	3d
John Atkinson	6d	George Parker	6d	Mr Loughs house	6d
Vidua Dalton	8d ob	Item. Pro Jo. Gowling	6d	Item [Blank]	1s 0d
Christopher Lowes	3d	Item. Pro himself	4½d	Robert Teasdale	3d
Christopher Lowson behind in 1d	6d	Item. Pro Robert Pattinson	3d	Fargus Thompson	6d
John Lowes	6d	Item. Pro William Hodgson	3d	Thomas Fawcett	7½d
Thomas Fawell	2d	John Stable	1s 9d ob	James Gowling	6d
Thomas Spooner	3d	Richard Fawell	6d	Robert Hodgson	1s 6d
Rowland Lowes	1s 3d	Item. [Blank]	3d	A.M. paid	6d
Vidua Lowes	3d	William Teasdale	1s 6d	George Haron	10½d
Lancelot Lowes	9d	John Bleamire	1s 0d	Mr John Hall	3s 6d
		John Ion	6d and 1d	Robert Pattinson	11¼d
				Alice Thompson	3d
				Edward Caile	9d
				John Walker	3d
				Edward Mayson	6d
				John Gowling (behind in 9d)	3d
				James Haron	

16. In pages 106. and 107. there appeareth another note of the said Church Stock taken the 16th of November Anno Domini 1657.
17. In page 118. N.B. May the 4th 1658.
Quarters wages mentioned with small alteracon of names and summes divided & crossed out
18. In page 117 May the 4th 1659.
The like names, with some small alteracon of names and summes divided & crossed out.
19. In page 116, May the 4th 1660.
The like names with some small alteracon of names and summes.
20. In page 115, May 4th 1661.
The like names with some small alteracons of names and summes.

[V.294]

21. In page 114. May 4th 1662. Quarter Wages. N.B.

[Column 1]		[Column 2]		[Column 3]	
John Pattinson	6d	Richard Fawell	6d	Robert Hodgson	6d
John Atkinson	6d	Thomas Fawell	2d	Richard Lowson	6d
Christopher Lowson	6d	William Fawcet	6d	Sowerby House	6d
Vidua Dalton		Item. For himself	3d	Mr John Hall	3s 6d
John Lowes	6d	William Teasdale	3s 2d	John Speight	3d
Thomas Spooner	3d	John Blamire	1s 0d	Robert Pattinson of Woods	11¼d
Lancelot Lowes	9d	George Haron	10½d	Edward Caile	9d
Stables houses	6d	Item. John Ion	1d	John Walker	3d
George Parker	6d	John Gowling	3d	Browne houses	6d
Item. [Blank]	4½d	James Haron	3d	John Gowling	3d
Item. Pro Jo Gowling	6d	William Hodgson	3d	Item. For himself	4d
Robert Pattinson	3d	Mr Lough	1s 0d		
[Blank] Gowling	3d	Fargus Thompson	6d		
John Stable	1s 9½d	Thomas Fawcet	7½d		
		Jannet Gowling	6d		
					11s 4½d
				In all:	£1. 6s 4½d
				Robert Teasdale	3d

22. {N.B.} In page 38. 1662. Memorandum that Mr John Dalston of Acorn Banke and Mr William Walker Rector of Kirkbythore did grant and appoint a seat for stall in [Blank] of Temple Sowerby Church for the [blank] of Christopher Lowson, John Bleamire, Robert Hodgson, in lieu of another seat which Mr Dalston had of them.

23. In page 110. May the 4th 1662. Robert Hodgson paid in 1^{li} of the new Stock and 13s 4d of the old Stock, which was received by William Teasdale who is to pay for it accordingly. I say received of the Churchwardens John Pattinson and John Stable and delivered to the said William Teasdale.

24. {N.B.} In page 87. La[mmas] Quarter [16]64. The like names as formerly in ’62. with some small alteracon of names and summes.

25. {N.B.} In page 86. All Saints ’65. The like names with some small alterations of names and summes. {N.B.} Arrearages due to T. Barnet at Candlemas ’65.

	s.	d.	
John Atkinson	4	0	received 2s 6d
Widow Dalton	1	0	
John Dal[ton]	1	0	
[Blank] Stable		6 ½	
James Haron		6	
William Teasdale	3	2	
John Bleamire	6	0	received 5s 0d
George Haron	5	0	
Thomas Fawcet	1	2 ½	
William Hodgson	1	6	
Mr Hall	12	6	
Mr Lough	2	0	
Richard Lowes		6	
Robert Willison		6	
Henry Gowling		6	
John Walker		9	
John Gow[ling] carpenter	1	9	

For his son	1	6

26. {N.B.}in page 111. Arrearages due at Lammas '65. for Churchstock.

	s.	d .
John Atkinson	3	6
Widow Dalton		6
John Dalton		3
Richard Lowes		4
George Parker	1	10 ½
George Haron	1	3
Thomas Fawcett	1	7 ½
Jen: Gowling	1	0
Robert Hodgson		3
John Stable	5	3
Thomas Fawell	3	10
James Haron		3
William Teasdale		4
John Bleamire	4	0
William Hodgson		6
E. Caile		9
Jo: Speight	1	0
William Fawcet	2	6

27. In page 113.
Tithe Hay Silver as it was set down by the Jury.

	s.	d.
John Pattinson		2 ½
John Atkinson		2 ½
Daltons houses		2 ½
Christopher Lowson		2 ½
John Lowes	3	0
And Thomas Spooner		
Richard Lowes	3	0
Stables house		2 ½
George Parker		4 ½
Robert Pattinson	1	0
John Stable		4 ½
Stephensons house	3	0
William Teasdale	1	0
John Gowling		4 ½
Mr Lough	2	0 ¼
Robert Teasdale	2	0 ¼
Fargus Thompson	1	0 ¼
Thomas Fawcet and Jen: Gowling	[Blank]	
Robert Hodgson		2 ½
Thomas Teasdale		2 ½
Sowerby House	3	0
Mr Hall		4 ½
Mr Dalston of Sanwath {N.B.}	3	0
Acorn Bank Demane	5	0
Mr Hall for Moorfoot {N.B.}	1	6
John Blamire		2 ½
George Haron		2 ½

Parsons Close: 2s, which usually hath bin received with the Easter Reckonings of those that collect moneys for Moor Farm and Whinsilver.
Received of Edward Caaile 2^{s} for the Parsons Close Anno Domini 1665.

28. In page 104 and 105. There appeareth another note of the said Church Stock.

29. In page 149, being the last of the said Booke.
Churchwardens names rent out.[660]
First, received (&c.)
{N.B.} Item. Received more then Sir Edwards wages 3^{s} for three quarters and 9^{d} for one quarter [from] which we took 1^{s} 9^{d} for bread and wine and we spared 2 shillings.

30. In page 132.
A true count of John Browne and [Blank] Pattinson Churchwardens for the year of our Lord God 167[blank]
{N.B.} Imprimis. Collected of all that hath the Church Stock every quarter according to the rate and custome out of which we have paid the Curate all for one year &c. xl^{s}, which the parson did pay and we finde 3^{s} vii^{d} remaining; the next Churchwardens to be sett forward to the use of the Church and William Teasdale the younger, Thomas Walker, Thomas Atkinson and Andrew Stephenson pay nothing.

[V.296]

Item. Received of xxxviij houses, every one [blank] for bread and wine [Blank]
Whereof we disbursed ij^{s} x^{d} and iiij^{d} remaining [to] the next Churchwardens; and Thomas Walker and Andrew Stephenson paye nothing.
Item. For repairing the Church [received] of x – houses vi^{d} apeace which is xix^{s} & Thomas Walker is nothing. Out of th[is] summe we have despursed for the [Blank] viij$^{d.}$ for a Register vj^{d}, for lime the Church vj^{s} viij^{d}, for lime carriage xii^{d}, for slate viii^{d}, [blank] iiij^{d}, for hayre 2^{d}, for spe – strings xij^{d}. Which is xvij^{s} j^{d}, out of which remain ij^{s} v^{d}.

Item. Received of John Hall and John Teasdale being the last Churchwardens	4s 0d
Item. Received of Alexander Gowling of the Old Church Stock	16s 8d
{N.B.} Item. Received of Sir Christopher Dalston Knight for Christopher Phillips burial in the Church	3s 4d
And for Jane Pattinson daughter of [Blank] Pattinson the like, which is	6s 9d

{N.B.} The which we have delivered to John Dalton to bear wages for to the use of the Church.

[V.298-299]

[B.3.]

A true and perfect abstract out of an old Register Book of Temple Sowerby in the County of Westm'land

The first page if this book hath the number (1) upon it but part of the said page cannot be read, but towards the latter end thereof it hath these words:
"Received of John Stable Anno Domini 164[blank] and the last page of the said Book hath this number (149) upon it besides other things inscribed."

In page 135 and 136
a. The account of Richard Fawell, Church warden, both received and laid in the year of Our Lord 1622. as followeth.

Imprimis. Received of 26 Tenants 3d apiece	6s 6d
Item. Received of 7 cottagers 2d apiece	14d
Item. &c. John Dalton &c.	paid nothing
laid by the said Church wardens as followeth:	
Imprimis, laid forth for mason work	5s 0d
{N.B.} Item. At the Visitation at Appleby	10d
{N.B.} Item. At a General Chapter at Brougham	1d
Item. For a Court-entering for Alexander Gowlyng	2d

[660] The churchwardens' names were torn out.

In page 137 Anno Domini 1623.
b. The account of William Teasdale Church warden as above:
Imprimis, collected &c.
Thereof disbursed &c.
{N.B.} More at the General Chapter 4d

In page 138. 1624
c. The account of Humfrey Gowlyng and Thomas Haron, Church wardens
collected by us &c
{N.B.} Item. Laid out at the Visitation (&c.)
Item. At the General Chapter

In page 128 Anno Domini 1639
d. Church wardens John Hall and Edward Caile
Burials, weddings and Christenings as they are in the parchment Register Book
The Account of the said Church wardens
Imprimis. Received (&c.)
Item. Disbursed (&c.)
and for delivering a note of our Register Book 2d

In page 129 Anno Domini 1642
e. Church wardens John Atkinson and John Pattinson
The Account of the said Church wardens for this year:
Item. Received (&c.)
Laid forth (&c.)
{N.B.} Item. Laid forth when we took our Oaths at Appleby 8d

In page 149, the last of the book. f. Church wardens names rent out
Imprimis received (&c.)
Item. Laid forth at Appleby when we took our oaths 8d
Item. At one Visitation 9d
Item. At the General Chapter 4d

This is a true copy, witness our hands the 15th day of August Anno Domini 1678.
John Pattinson.
Jonathan Greene.

The words written above as copy agree in every respect with the same books shown me by the Revd Thomas Machell, Rector of Kirkby Thore in the Diocese of Carlisle, and were transcribed at his bidding on his authority as above. Collated per me, Henry Pattinson (signed) Notary Public in Carlisle as deputed in the kingdom.

[V.454][661]

[B.4.]

Rectory of Kirkby Thore[662]

The Declaration of all Issues Profits and Commodities coming and arising of the Parsonage there, in Tithes, Oblations,[663] wool, lamb, hay. Grain and all other spiritual duties for one whole year ending at

[661] A collection of pages on tithes.
[662] Part of a sequence on MS.V.445-59, in which the 1573 extract was bound in front of that of 1572. In this edition the spelling and punctuation have been modernised.
[663] Oblation: the presentation of money, goods, property, etc., to the Church for use in God's service, especially for the maintenance of ministers, services, religious communities, etc., or for the relief of the poor; (also) a donation or bequest of property for such a purpose; a customary offering made on a particular occasion, especially at the Eucharist.

the Feast of St Mark the Evangelist in the year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth 1572.

In rents and farms of the glebe lands paid by the tenants there	3	9	4
In the price of 48 stones of tithe wool at 4s 10d the stone	11	4	0
In the price of 111 tithe lambs at 1s 6d the piece	9	16	6
In the price of 33 tithe lambs at Howgill at 1s 4d the piece	2	4	0
In the price of one Tithe calf rated at 2s 0d	0	2	0
In the price of 88 hens at 3d the piece	1	2	0
In the value of the hay of the glebe land	2	4	0
In the value of the tithe hay	0	13	4
In the value of the tithe hay letter	1	3	0
NB In the value of the churchyard at Sowerby	0	1	0
In the value of the oblations at Kirkby Thore this year	1	1	8½
In the value of the broken tithes there this year	2	3	7
In the value of marriages, churchings and burials there	0	3	7½
In the value of Oblations at Temple Sowerby	0	14	8½
In the value of broken tithes there	1	3	3
In the value of marriages, churchings and burials there	0	1	0½
In the value of oblations at Milburn this year	0	16	0½
In the Value of marriages, burials, mortuaries and churchings there	0	8	3
In the value of broken tithes there this year	2	11	0½
In the value of one pension coming forth of the Parsonage of Newbiggin due yearly to be paid at the Parsonage	0	3	0
In the value of 240 eggs at 12 the penny	0	1	11½
In the value of 26 tithe geese at 6d the piece	0	13	0
In the value of 4 tithe pigs at 6d the piece	0	2	0
NB In the value of tithe hemp and line	0	3	4

[455]

NB in the value of the tithe of Temple Sowerby mill for multure of all the grain there yearly	0	3	4
NB in the value of the tithe multure[664] of the Corn Mill of Milburn this year	0	1	0

Glebe Lands

In the price of the wheat of the glebe lands	Nil		
In the price of the rye 5 quarters and 6 bushels, at 2s 6d the bushel	5	15	0
In the price of 7 bushels of peas at 2s 0d the bushel	0	14	0
In the price of barley, 9 quarters and 4 bushels at 2s 6d the bushel sold	9	10	0
In the price of oats, 12 quarters and 6 bushels at 1s 4d the bushel	6	16	0
In the price of rye straw, 72 threaves at 3d the threave[665]	0	18	0
In the price of barley straw 220 threaves at 1d the threave	0	18	4
In the price of oat straw, 240 threaves at 2d the threave	2	0	0
In the price of peas-straw, 18 threaves at 2d the threave	0	3	0

Kirkby Thore

In the price of wheat, 6 bushels at 3s 8d the bushel	1	2	0
In the price of rye this year, 6 quarters at 3s 0d the bushel	7	4	0
In the price of peas, 4 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0	8	0
In the price of barley, 14 quarters and 1 bushel at 2s 8d the bushel	15	1	4
In the price of oats, 14 quarters 3 bushels at 1s 4d the bushel	7	13	4
In the price of wheat straw 12 threaves, 1d the threave	0	1	0
In the price of rye straw 55 threaves at 3d the threave	0	13	9
In the price of bigg straw, 213 threaves at 1d the threave	1	1	1
In the price of oat straw, 190 threaves at 2d the threave	1	15	0

Temple Sowerby

[664] Multure, see the English Glossary.

[665] A threave or thrave: two shocks or stooks of corn (or pulse), generally containing twelve sheaves each, but varying in different localities; hence used as a measure of straw, fodder, etc.. *OED*.

In the price of wheat there	nothing			
In the price of rye, 2 quarters at 2s 8d the bushel	2	2	8	
In the price of peas, 11 pecks at 2s 0d the bushel	0	5	6	
In the price of barley, 7 quarters and 7 bushels, at 2s 6d the bushel	7	17	6	
In the price of oats there, 6 quarters, 2 bushels at 1s 4d the bushel	3	6	8	
				[V.456]
In the price of peas, all the straw there this year, nothing, because the tenants there had it for leading the tithe-corn, threshing winnowing and reparation of the Tithe Barn	Nil			
Milburn				
In wheat there, nothing	Nil			
In the price of rye, 4 quarters 2 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	4	10	8	
In the price of peas, nothing	0	0	0	
In the price of bigg, 7 quarters 3 bushels at 2s 6d the bushel	7	7	6	
In the price of oats, 9 quarters and 1 bushel, at 1s 4d the bushel	4	17	4	
In the price of straw there, besides leading, mowing, threshing, winnowing and reparations of the Tithe Barn, is letter for 6s 8d	0	6	8	
In the price of the tithe corn of Howgill	1	6	8	
The whole sum of the aforesaid year	136	5	0½	
Whereof paid for serving the cure at Kirkby Thore £6 18s 4d [and] to Sir John Spedding, curate at Milburn £4 13s 4d	11	11	8	
NB Also paid for bread and wine for serving the whole parish for receiving cross in the year	1	0	0	
NB Also paid at Appleby the 14 of August to Sir Robert Pearson Dean of Westmorland for Visitation money 19s and 8d and for senaidge {synod} 4s 0d and for the Curate 4d	1	4	0	
NB Also paid to Roger Warcop for rent called nowtgeld	0	1	4	
Also paid in necessary expenses in collection of tithe wool and lamb within the parish this year	0	2	2	
Also in the fee or wages of the proctor there this year	10	0	0	
Also paid to Edward Richardson and his son, for helping to get the tithe hay	0	5	0	
Also paid to workmen in harvest for helping to mow, lead threshing, winnowing and dighting within the barns of Kirkby Thore this year	3	4	4	
				[V.457]
Also paid for the reparation of the Parsonage with slate lime, wood and other necessaries, as locks, keys, theaking the barns and others	2	6	8	
Also paid for scouring and laying of the hedges about the orchard and the Long Garth	0	8	4	
Also for shearing the corn on the glebeland this year	2	9	2	
Also paid for the first part of the subsidy for the Parson as appeareth by Acquittance thereof	3	8	3½	
Also paid to the Parson as appeareth by acquittance	10	0	0	
Also paid for the Tenths of the same Parsonage	3	15	9½	
Also delivered unto Hugh Warcopp for following the suit at York upon one letter from Ranold Hartlay	1	10	0	
Also paid for a servant for his board wages after 1s 8d a week for one whole year	4	6	8	
Also paid unto him for his wages	0	16	0	
Also paid unto him a livery price	0	10	0	
Also paid to one for driving the plough	1	5	0	
Also, for filling the coupe, harrowing and scaling dung	0	4	0	
Also hay eaten with the oxen that ploughed the glebe land and the horses that harrowed	2	4	0	
NB Also rye straw delivered to Appleby to Raynold Hartlay				

for theaking at the castle, 44 threaves, at 3d the threave	0	11	0
Also, rye straw theaked at Kirkby Thore this year, 20 threaves at 3d the threave		5	0
Also spent with the oxen, oat straw 362 threaves at 2d the threave	3	10	0
Corn sown at Kirkby Thore of the glebe land this year			
rye 16 bushels 2 pecks at 2s 6d a bushel	2	1	3
Also, in haver sown 4 quarters and a half at 1s 4d the bushel	2	8	0
Also, in peas 6 pecks at 2s 0d the bushel	0	3	0
Also, in bigg, 2 quarters at 2s 6d the bushel	2	0	0
Total of payments	63	10	8¼
And thus, is owing	72	14	4¼

[V.458]

Acquittances referred to in the foresaid Accounts, and tacked to the foot of the Roll are as followeth:

Received the 18. day of October £3. 8s. 3½d. 1571. of Mr Humphrey Musgrave farmer of the Parsonage of Kirkby Thore for the first part of the subsidy of the said parsonage £3 8s 3½d. due to the Queens Majesty the first day of October last before the date hereof. In witness of the same I have subscribed my name the day and year abovesaid. And received for half year senage 2s od.
per me Robert Pearson Dean of Westmorland.

On the 17th January in the 14th year of the reign of Elizabeth [1572] Queen of England, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith &c.
Received the day and year above-written of Humphrey Musgrave Esq. by the hands of Reginald Hartlay in part of payment of a reckoning for the Parsonage and Rectory of Kirkby Thore, the sum of ten pounds. In witness whereof, I have hereunto set my seal and subscribed my name the day and year first above written.
per me Robert Warcoppe.[666]
Sealed and delivered in the presence of Mr William Musgrave William Middleton Henry Lomm.

Kirkby Thore Rect[ory] 22. January in the 14th year of the reign of Queen Elizabeth of England &c. [1572].
Received three pounds fifteen shillings ninepence halfpenny farthing £3 15s 9 ¾d for the tenths of the said Rectory due to the Queens Majesty at Christmas last past &c.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

[V.459]

Acquittances Referred to in the foresaid Accounts and pinned to the foot of the Roll as followeth:
7th October in the 14th year of the Reign of Elizabeth Queen of England &c. [1571-1572].
Received £3. 8s. 3½d. for the second part of the subsidy due unto the Queens Majesty the first day of this October now past past for the Rectory of Kirkby Thore &c. £3. 8s. 3½d.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

At Rose [Castle] 12th March 1572.
Received of Reynold Parkin servant to Mr Register of Carlisle for the tenths of the Parsonage of Kirkby Thore within the Diocese of Carlisle due at Christmas last past the sum of three pounds fifteen shillings ninepence halfpenny farthing. £3. 15s. ¾d.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

The Acquittances are pinned to the Roll.
7th October in the 14th year of the reign of Elizabeth Queen of England &c.
Received £3. 8s. 3 ½ d. for the second part of the subsidy due unto the Queens Majesty the first day of this October now last past for the Rectory of Kirkby Thore &c. £3. 8s. 3 ½ d.
Received per me Jo: Barness.

[666] Here, there is a seal.

[V.445]

[B.5.}

Rectory of Kirkby Thore

The Declaration of all Issues, Profits and Commodities coming and rising off the Parsonage of Kirkby Thore in Rents, Tithes, Oblations, Wool, Lamb, Hay, Corn, and Grain, an all other Spiritual Duties for one whole year ending at the Feast of St Mark the Evangelist in the fifteenth year of the Reign of our Sovereign Lady Queen Elizabeth [25 April 1573.]

N.B. Imprimis. In rents and farms of the glebe lands by the tenants there	3. 9. 4
Item. In the price of 32 stones of tithe wool at 5s 0d the stone	8. 0. 0
N.B. Item. In the price of 64 tithe skins	0. 18. 0
Item. In the price of 57 lambs at 1s 4d the piece	3. 16. 0
Item. In the price of 23 tithe lambs at Howgill at 1s 4d the piece	1. 10. 7
Note the price. Item. In the price of one tithe calf	0. 2. 0
Note, not Dem; note price: Item. In the price of 88 hens at 3d the piece	1. 2. 0
Item. In the value of the hay coming and growing of the glebe land	2. 4. 0
N.B. Item. In the value of the tithe hay letter to divers persons	1. 3. 0
N.B. Item. In the value of the tithe hay in my own hands	0. 13. 4
N.B. Item. In the value of hay in Temple Sowerby Churchyard	0. 1. 0
Item. In the value of oblations of Kirkby Thore	1. 2. 2½
Item. In the value of broken tithes there	1. 18. 1
Item. In the value of weddings, churchings and burials there	0. 3. 4½
Item. In the value of oblations of Temple Sowerby	0. 13. 6
Item. In the value of broken tithes there	1. 0. 0½
Item. In the value of weddings, churchings and burials there	0. 1. 0
Item. In the value of oblations at Milburn	0. 16. 8
Mill. Item. In the value of broken tithes there, with 1s 0d for the Mill	2. 12.10
Item. In the value of churchings, weddings and burials there	0. 4. 1½
N.B. Item. In the value of one pension coming forth of the parish of Newbiggin and is yearly paid to Kirkby Thore	0. 3. 0.
Item. In the value of 200 tithe eggs, at 12 eggs the penny	0. 1. 8
Item. In the value of 24 geese at 5d the piece	0. 10.0
Item. In the value of hemp and line within the parish	0. 3. 4
Item. In the value of 3 tithe pigs at 6d the piece	0. 1. 6
Mill N.B. Item. In the value of the tithe of Temple Sowerby Corn Mill	0. 3. 4
The Sum £32. 14s. 0d	

[V.446]

Glebe Land

Imprimis. In the price of tithe tithe wheat this year	Nil
Item. In the value of rye, 5 quarters 2 ½ bushels, sold at 3s 2d the bushel	6. 13. 0
Item. In the value of peas 6 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 12. 0
Item. In the value of barley, 13 quarters and 7 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	14 16. 0
viii B[ushels] Item. In the value of oats, 13 quarters 4 bushels, at 1s 6d the bushel	8. 2. 0
Item. In the value of 50 threave of rye straw, at 3d the threave	0. 12. 6
Item. In the price of barley straw, 200 threave at 1d the threave	1. 0. 0
Item. In the price of haver straw, 152 threaves at 2d the threave	1. 5. 4
Item. In the price of peas straw, 12 threaves at 2d the threave	0. 2. 0
The Sum £33. 2s. 10d	

Kirkby Thore

Imprimis. In the value of wheat, 2 bushels at 3s 8d the bushel	0. 11. 0
Item. In the value of rye, 4 quarter and 3 bushels at 3s 2d the bushel	5. 10.10
Item. In the value of peas 5 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 10. 0
Item. In the value of barley at 2s 8d the bushel	13. 6. 8
Item. In the value of oats, 16 quarters 4 ½ bushels, at 1s 4d the bushel	9. 18.10
Item. In the value of wheat straw, 10 threaves at 1d the threave	0. 0.10
Item. In the value of rye straw, 63 threaves at 2d the threave	0. 10. 6
Item. In the value of barley straw, 220 threaves, at id the threave	0. 18. 4
Item. In the value of oat straw, 192 threaves at 1 ½ d the threave	1. 4. 0

{Note price of length and not in short}
Item. In the price of peas straw, 10 threaves at 1d the threave 0. 0.10

The Sum £32. 11. 9d[667]

Temple Sowerby

Imprimis. In the value of wheat there this year	Nil
Item. In the value of rye, 3 bushels a4 3s 4d the bushel	0. 10. 0
Item. In the value of peas, 6 pecks at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 3. 0
Item. In the value of barley, 6 quarters 1 bushel at 2s 8d the bushel	6. 10. 8
Item. In the value of oats, 6 quarters 4 bushels at 1s 6d the bushel	3. 18. 0
N.B. Item. In the value and price of all the straw, nothing; for the tenants had the same [in return] for threshing and leading the corn	Nil

The Sum £11. 1s. 8d

[V.447]

Milburn

Imprimis. In the value of wheat this year	Nil
Item. In the value of rye, 6 ½ bushels at 3s 4d the bushel	1. 1. 8
Item. In the value of peas this year	Nil
Item. In the value and price of barley, 8 quarters 2 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	8. 16. 0
Item. In the price of oats, 8 quarters at 1s 6d the bushel	4. 16. 0
Item. In the price of all the straw there, besides leading, mowing, threshing and winnowing	0. 6. 8

The Sum £15. 0s. 4d.

Howgill

Imprimis. In the value of the tithe corn at Howgill	1. 6. 8.

The Sum £1. 6s. 8d.

Total Sum £125. 17s. 3d.

Whereof paid for serving of the cure at Kirkby Thore	6.13. 4
N.B. Item. Paid for serving of the cure at Milburn	4.13. 4
N.B. Item. Paid for bread and wine for serving the whole parish 3 times in the year	1. 2. 0
Item. Paid to Roger Warcopp for nowt-geld	0. 1. 4
Item. Paid for necessary expenses in collecting the tithes within the parish this year	0. 2. 4
Item. Paid for the fee of the Proctor, and wages	10. 0. 0
{Cross} Item. Paid for bread and drink that the parish had in the Cross Week[668]	0. 1. 8
Item. Paid for helping to get the tithe hay	0. 5. 0
Item. Paid to workmen in harvest for helping to lead corn, for mowing, threshing and dighting	3. 13. 0
Item. Paid for the reparations of the parsonage about the house	1. 6. 8
Item. Paid for making hedge about the fields	0. 3. 0
Item. Paid for weeding of corn of the glebe land	2. 8. 6
Item. Paid for the second part of the subsidy as appeareth by the acquittance	3. 8. 3½
Item. Paid for the tenth of the same Parsonage as appeareth by the acquittance	3.15. 9½
Item. Paid for the senage of the same Parsonage	0. 4. 0

[V.448]

Item. Paid for Proctor expenses	0. 3. 1
Item. Paid for a servant that was kept at Kirkby Thore for meat, drink and wage	5.12. 8
Item. Paid for one for driving the plough that ploughed the glebe land	1. 8. 0
Item. Paid for driving the plough in rye seed-time	0. 4. 2
Item. Paid for helping to fill dung in the cowpe	0. 2. 0
Item. Paid for scaling dung and harrowing	0. 2. 0
Item. Paid for hay spent with oxen and horse that occupied the glebe land	0. 4. 0
Item. In rye straw that theaked the house at Kirkby Thore, 40 threaves at 3d the threave	0.10. 0
{?} Item. Spent with the oxen in oat straw 280 threaves at 2d the threave	2.13. 4

[667] Machell notes here, MS., 'N. price at length & not in short.'

[668] The Feast Day of the exaltation of the Holy Cross takes place on the 14 September (27 September in the Julian Calendar). Anglicans call it Holy Cross Day. It is sometimes known as Holy Rood Day. See the *Common Worship Calendar* (2000).

Item. Spent in bigg straw 156 threaves at 1d the threave	0.14. 8
Item. Corn sown at Kirkby Thore upon the glebe this year in wheat 10 pecks at 3s 8d the bushel	0.11. 8
Item. Rye sown, 15 bushels at 3s 4d the bushel	2.10. 0
Item. Peas sown, 2 bushels at 2s 0d the bushel	0. 4. 0
Item. Oats sown, 4 ½ quarters at 1s 6d the bushel	2.14. 0
Item. Bigg sown, 17 bushels at 2s 8d the bushel	2. 5. 4
Summa Totalis £52. 1s.6d	
Soe remaining to be paid £73.15s.9d.	

The Roll is Indorsed on the Back, Anno Domini 1573. Kirkbythore

[V.449]

[C. Correspondence 2.]

[Letter to [Thomas] Carleton concerning the foregoing Rolls][669]

July 2nd 1698

Mr Carleton

I thank you for the Rolls you showed me at Appleby of the issues and profits of Kirkby Thore Rectory in the 14. and 15. of Queen Elizabeth A.D. 1572. 1573. and of the disbursements which were then paid out of the same; by which it appears:

1. That the old rents and farms of the Glebe Lands (which I take to be fineable Rents) were per Annum, 3. 9. 4.

But now they are only iii^{li} & viij^{s}, i.e.

In Kirkby Thore	1. 4. 1
In Milburn Chapelry (i.e. at Kirkhouse)	1. 10. 7
In Sowerby Chapelry	0. 13. 4

In all: £3. 8s. 0d.

{1s. 4d old Rent lost}

Soe that one Shilling and fourpence is somewhere concealed of the old Rent, which I do not know \ how / to discover: for I had not soe much as one scrap of paper of my predecessor (Mr William Walker) which belong'd to the Rectory; whose easinesse has create me a great deale of trouble, and whose kindness (I feare) to old Mr Dalston (who gave him a Parsonage) has given occasion to some incroachments upon the Church*.

{Mortuariss lost in Sowerby}[670] {Sowerby Chancell wholly invaded}

For (not to mention the losse of mortuariss in Temple Sowerby which sprang from hence, for all the parish has without doubt been of one piece) I find they disposed of seats in the Chancel about 30 years since (without consent of Patron or Bishop) which young Mr Dalston does now insist on: And \ which / might I suppose be justifiable during the life of the said Incumbent (for the Rector pro tempore[671] may dispose), but I think no farther. However, they have advanced soe farre upon this concession, that I have not soe much as a place for my servant or Parish Clerke within the said Chancell; nor indeed soe much room as to kneel at the Altar when I officiate: and yet they expect that I should repaire the said Chancell for them at my own proper cost. Concerning which I alwayes made them this modest proposal (which my Lord of Thanet approved of, and so did the Chancelor of York before him) That if they would quit their pretensions to it, soe that none might sit there but by the consent of me and my

[669] This letter was written 4½ months before Machell's death on 11 November 1698. 'Mr Carleton' was frequently mentioned by Machell in relation to Appleby Castle (see above, III.233) Thomas Carleton (1660-1731), of an Appleby family, was steward at Appleby Castle for Lord Thanet from c.1690. The Red House (No. 30), Boroughgate, Appleby, was built for him in 1717: https://britishlistedbuildings.co.uk/101146473-the-red-house-appleby-in-westmorland. For more on this letter and the reasons for it, see Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint', 279-81.

[670] Mortuary: a customary gift, formerly claimed by the incumbent of a parish from the estate of a deceased parishioner; (also) this type of gift. *OED*.

[671] 'For the time being.'

successors, I would repaire it; or if they would repaire it I would quit mine; because they pretend the Chapple is too little for them.
My Lord was pleased to order Mr Sheriffe to Acquaint my cousin Mr Christopher Dalston with this proposal; who declared himselfe willing to Release his pretensions to the said Chancell in the hearing of my brother Hugh Machell, and \ of / Mr Sheriff, who doubtlesse acquainted My Lord with his Answer. In order to which I drew an Instrument and shewd it to you.[672]

[V.450]

But he dyed somewhat suddainly before we could have an opportunity of sealing the same. But now the young Gentleman will yield to nothing, soe that I feare the Chapelle must fall; for tho I offered him to give leave that his pew (which is soe thrust out of his Quire that it possesses one-third of the Chancell) should stand soe far in it as the Altar service and uniformity could possibly allow of; provided he would repaire soe much of it: he scornes the proposall, and will not reccede one Inch from his Right as he pleases to call it, tho the altar thereby is shut out of its place.[673]

{5s 0d finable rent attempted to be turned into freehold in Sowerby}
Nor will he rest here and be content with taking from me that part of the Chapple which he calls mine (Sc. the Chancell), but goes about to disinherit the Church of its ancient indowments by converting 5s 0d of the foresaid ancient finable rent into a free-rent, for under that notion he tenders it to me and bids me prove that his ancestors ever paid any fine to Mr Walker or any other, which is impossible for me to doe: but this I can prove, that it is parcell of the foresaid Marke Rent and that other parts of it have been fined to me since I became Rector of Kirkbythore, which I hope is enough. However, I have Assessed my fines and demanded 18 years Rent in arreare, and given him notice, as you may see by the papers inclosed: But I have no witnesses that Applegarth is part of the Tenement (tho it be mentioned in the Admittance) but only by heare say, from father to son: quere therefore if it be safe to mention the same. And if it be not; whether I should not Admitt him (de Novo) to White Stones only of the said yearly rent (which the whole Jury has agreed to) {Query?} and thereupon give him fresh notice.

{Multure Tithe of Sowerby Mill lost}
Secondly. By the said Rolls it appears that 3s 4d was formerly paid to the Rectory of Kirkbythore, as the value of the Tythe of Temple Sowerby Mill for moultor of all the Grain there yearly. This is now lost; for what was paid in Mr Walkers time I cannot tell anything or nothing; and not only That; but all other dues (excepting only Tythe Corne and some wooll) have been detained from me this 18 year. And now the Executors of Mr Dalston are not willing to pay it. And the Heire (you will see by the papers inclosed) will not pay me one Groate without compulsion; and I am not able to contest it with him for he threatens to spend 500^{li} before he consent to pay me one farthing except the 5^{s} as a free Rent as is aforesaid, and that without paying any arrears.

[V.451]

{Salary of Sowerby Chapel lately imposed upon the Rector}
3. Lastly it appears by the Disbursements in the said Rolls that there was not \ then / one farthing payd out of the Rectory of Kirkbythore towards the maintenance of the Chaplain of Sowerby.
Soe that what is charged upon it since, is by Incroachment, and condiscension of the former Incumbents, which one would thinke should not bind his successors: which note should be Added (as a confirmation) to what I formerly writt to My Lord upon this subject. And soe much for Sowerby

{Newbiggin Pension} {Of 3s Acquittances lost}

[672] For more on Machell's problems with 'old Mr Dalston', see Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint', 279-81.
[673] This was not a rare occurrence. As late as 1816, a similar situation was noted at Walton in Cumberland, where the patron had 'shortened the Chancel one half … there is no way to the communion table but by his seat and all who take the sacrament must kneel in it.' See Jane Platt (ed.), *The Diocese of Carlisle 1814-1855: Chancellor Walter Fletcher's 'Diocesan Book' with additional material from Bishop Percy's parish notebooks* (Woodbridge, 2015), 100.

There is alsoe Charged in the said Rolls amongst the profits of Kirkbythore Rectory, 'In the Value of one Pension coming forth of the Parish of Newbiggin as it is yearly paid to Kirkby Thore, iij^{s},' which I have demanded but never received, having noe living witnesse to prove the payment before my time. Soe this I suppose will alsoe be lost (amongst many other dues I could mention) unlesse My Lord interpose his authority by sending either you, or some other, to enquire into them and make demands of them; which will Terrifie more than anything I can doe; for as long as they thinke that I am out of his Lordships favour, they will not much care what wrong they do \ to / me; and thus the Parsonage must suffer at Last.
I would gladly have My Lords advice; and know his pleasure what he would have me doe in these matters; and how farre he will please to Interpose his Ius patronatûs.[674] For if he is willing to let them passe, I shall doe soe too, who am
Your very affectionate Servant
Thomas Machell

[P.S.] I doe intend to agree with Sir Richard: as soon as ever he comes in the Countrey, having lost and expended as much in defending the Rights of my Church as would have purchased the Inheritance \ forever / of the Tythes I contend for. But say nothing of it.

[V.452A]

[The receipt for the loan of the Rolls above]
14 January 1697.
Then had borrowed and received by me Mr William Burton, Chaplain to Mr Thomas Machell \ Rector / of Kirkbythure, out of the Evidence Room at Appleby Castle two paper Rolls being accounts of the Rectory of Kirkbythure aforesaid for the 14 and 15 years of Queen Elizabeth: Which Rolls I doe hereby covenant & promise to return Safe & Intire to Mr Carleton to & for the use of the Right honorable Thomas Earl of Thanet within ten Days next ensueing, Wittnesse my Hand the Day and Year abovesaid.
William Burton
Test.[675] Richard Monkhouse

[674] 'Right as Patron.'
[675] Witness.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 15]

[Parish of Lowther]

[III.40]

[Initial Notes and Queries]

1. How many villages, towns or hamlets, single houses, and how from the church, E. W. N. S.
2. In each area.[1]

i. How many families.
[ii.] How many free, Customary, fine cert[ain] or Arbitrary.[2]

Things remarkable in art:
1. As gentlemens houses, church, chaples, antiquities ~~&c.~~
2. In nature: as herbs, springs, mines.
3. Who Lord or Lords of the manner.

Bounder: 1. Wilkinson; John Crags of Parkeside.[3]

[III.34A]

[River Lowther]
See the cource of the river from Shap.

[I.596]

{Lowther Church & Lowther Hall [were] visited by Mr Dugdall. You may meet with all the Armes and what else is remarkeable in his *Visit[ation] of Westm'land 1664*, in the Heralds College, London;[4] which may save me a Labour of drawing them, for if any man have a minde to print a booke out of these Notes, the Gentlemen of that office,[5] as they have bin extraordinarie Civil to me, will not to be unkinde to him. & I doe Conjure him to present them with a Booke for their Library in my behalfe, tho unknowne by name.

{Hackthorp also belongs to the Lowthers, where it is said an spirit walked not many years since, which ~~somtimes~~ appeared in ~~the shape~~ diverse shapes, of a Colt, an Ass a Buck &c. {He began to pirchase 5 year agoe – & got al but Newtons in 3 years space}.[6] Inf. J. Wib[ergh] Jan. 27 1686. Memorandum. The Strange Robery.

———————

[III.37][7]

Lowther Parish Part 1.

It is a Rectory, rated in the First Fruits Office at £5 6s 2½d,[8] the tenths of which is 2:10: 8^{d} $3q^{a}$,[9] and payeth \ yearly to / the bishop for ~~yearly~~ procurations & synodals, 0:4:0*.
The patrone is Sir John Lowther of Lowther.

---

[1] MS: 'In each ~~instans many Lords~~ \ area.' /
[2] A Fine was an amount paid for admission to a lease but distinguished from any rent to be paid under it; a Fine Certain was a fixed sum. *ODNB*.
[3] These were Machell's bounder informants.
[4] See Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615 and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891), 84-85. Dugdale recorded the pedigrees in 1664 and 1665.
[5] The Heralds' Office.
[6] Presumably, Machell is referring to information about Sir John Lowther, given to him by J. Wybergh.
[7] This page has been added to at different times, using at least four different shades of ink.
[8] The 'Valor Ecclesiasticus', 1535, gives £25 7s 2½d, see John F. Curwen, 'Parishes (East Ward) St Michael, Lowther', *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 325-34.
[9] £2 10s 8¾d.

{Bounder}
It is bounded on the E. with Whinfel Forest in the parish of Browham; on the S.W., Morland; on the west with Askam divided with the river Lowther; on the north, with Clifton.

{Division into Constablewicks}
It is divided into 2 Constablewicks: Sc. Lowther, Hackthorp & Whale for the one; & Melkinthorp for the other.

{Lordships}
And conteineth in it {2 Lordships}: 1. Lowther; 2. Hackthorp†.

{Site}‡
There is a place calld Castle steeds, a round fortification which may be supposed to have bin cast up by Loather, sometimes King of the Scots; & to have imparted his name to the town which was build hard by it;[10] which, after the Conquest, according to the custom of those dayes, gave name to the family which is now calld Lother, for they were ancient writt de Lowther, their name.[11] This village stood twixt the hill & church but now is removed, and better built, to the top of the hill.[12]

[Machell's Notes: III.37 & III.41B]
*{R. Threlkeld. Pension 6s 8d to the Dean and Chapter.}[13]
†{q. of W. Atkinson.}[14]
‡{Site?} They talke [of] a place on the N.W. side of the Hall a little above the Bridge called Castle Steeds at the end of the avenue which runns from the Rectors house. {& there is rud stone at the steps by the new parsonage.}[15]
[III.41B]. Castlesteed. Whether Lowthair (King of Scotland?) might not come here in time of war as erect this fort in defence of himself & his fol[lowers?[16]

[III.45]

[Ancient Site]
A round fortification above the rock at Lowther on the left hand of the new road, 22 [paces] diam. single rampire, calld Castle Stead. The same area with that at Yanewath, but have only one single ditch & an inner rampire.[17]

[III.37]

{Church}
Lowther Church visited per Sir William Dugdal, that take the dim[ensions].[18]
Bells &c. 1 bell; 3 pillers on either side the south octagon; the N. circular with carved capitals […][19] extending to the Cupilo. It is in lenth [blank], from the W. end to the Cupilo or Cross Ile, 14; broad 14 passes. The Cross Ile long 6, broad 16 [passes]; the quire long 8, broad 5 [passes]. The altar, 3 steps, with Rale & Ballaster, wainscoted with cedar Rale high, & a cedar screen or tympanum behind it, the

[10] Lowther was named from the river Lowther (Lauder, Luder, Lawther etc.) see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 182. See also, *N&BI*, 428: 'The name is British, and signifies clear water.'
[11] The rest of this sentence has perished. The spelling of 'Lowther'/ 'Lother', is exactly as Machell wrote it.
[12] In the MS here there is a 1cm square sketch of a structure, with points of the compass added. The village was removed c.1682 by Sir John Lowther, see Hyde & Pevsner, 508.
[13] Richard Threlkeld matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1664; BA 1668; rector of Lowther, 1676-95. CCED.
[14] William Atkinson was one of Machell's informants; see numerous references throughout this chapter..
[15] Rud/rudd: a soft red stone used in the north for marking sheep or colouring steps, floors etc. Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), 5, 175.
[16] There was no king of the Scots, nor of the Picts, named Lothair/Lowthair. One Lothair I (795-855) was Holy Roman emperor (840-855). Lothair II (835-869) was the king of Lotharingia (Lorraine) from 855. See https://www.britannica.com/biography/Lothar-I.
[17] All the text on this page is contained within a single scrap measuring 4½cm x 11½cm, pasted onto the page.
[18] Dugdale's visit is dated 24 March 1664. See Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees*, 84.
[19] A line of struck-through illegible text, here, amounts to 6cm.

Table Ewe inlaid. (A Large flaggin with the Lowthers armes, mantle &c. Cross & 2 chalices given by Sir John & Lady.) {All in silver & gilt.}
Ministers. Lowther, Teasdal, Smyth, & Richard Threlkeld present.[20]

[Lowther Family History]

[I.594]

{ad Lowther} out of a Booke of Knights penes D. Dan. Fleming.}[21]
Sir Geffrey de Lowther of Lowther, Knight anno 5^0 Henry III [1220-21]. He entered as som thinke (after he was Knighted) into Holy-Orders, Magister being placed before his name: MS A^0 70.}[22]
Sir Hugh de Lowther of Lowther aforesaid Knight anno [blank]. He was son of the said Sir Jeffrey de Lowther, Attorney General anno 20. Edward 1. [1291-92] & summon'd by the Kings writt to be at the Parliament holden at Northampton Anno [blank] Edward 2. {Bl. verbo waif Pb 132. Dn 58.}
Sir Hugh &c. Eldest son of the said Hugh &c. {MS A.70; MS C. 59; Do 40; MS C. 59. MS J 43; MS P 37, 38. Gms A. 142, 143, 149; C. &c. fol 47.}



Figure 1.15.1. Lowther Arms 1687 (Or, 6 annulets Sable). III.41B.

{ad Cumber[land]}
Sir William de Osmolderlow (or Osmotherley) of [Blank] in Cumberland, Knight, anno 5. Henry 6. [1426-27]. He was descended from the Osmundeleri Lanc. whose ancestours being a younger son or Brother of Sir John le Fleming, Grandson of Sir Michael and liveing at Osmotherlaw in Lancashire, assumed that sirname, as usually younger Brothers then did from the place of their habit[ation]: {MS B. 45, 46, 77, 78; MS C. 3, 37, 38, 57, 62.}

{ad Cumberland et Appelby Castle}
Sir Hugh Morvil of Brough on the Sands in Cumberland Knight anno [blank] Henry 2. He was one of the 4 Knights who killd Thomas Beckett – Archbishop of Canterbury.[23] He left Daughters his heires.

———————

[20] Clergy at Lowther from 1610 were Christopher Lowther (1610-57), William Smith (1664-76) and Richard Threlkeld (see above). CCED.
[21] Fleming Papers. For Sir Daniel Fleming's Research Notes, see CAC(C), D /Lons/L/12/2/1: Vol. A. Pedigree of Families connected with Lowther.
[22] Liber A. f.70 = Book A., folio 70 of the Fleming research notes. See D /Lons/L/12/2/1: the Lowther pedigree, 1220-1 to 1697.
[23] Thomas Becket was murdered on 29 December 1170.

[I.596]

{Familia de Lowther}
Their Armes are Or 6 Anuletts Sable; for confirmation or proofe of which beareing I have seen the impression of a Seale of the Lowthers with Annulets (apud Cartam[24] penes Thomas Sandford de Askham, Armiger),[25] 35[0] Edward III [1361-62].

[I.725C]

? Gleed Sir John of Lowther dub[ito][26]

Sir Christopher = Frances Lancaster

Sir John now L. = Jane, daughter of Sir Thomas Lee whose mother being a widow was maryed to old Sir John Lowther of Lowther

Frances. Maryed to Richard Lamplugh of Ribton in Cumberland

[Sir John Lowther 1655-1700]
Sir John Lowther of Lowther s[econd] Baronet, was borne at Hackthorp Hall A.D [blank] Educated at Queens College in Oxford, whence he went to Travail in France, where he became an Accomplished Gentleman. [27]
When King James the 2, being a Papist, came to the Crown & was driveing furiousely to bring over the Kingdom to the Romish persuation by discourageing the Church of England – for which he set up an High Court of Justice C. L.[28] – and incourageing not only the papists but all sortes of phanatticks[29] with places of Trust; calling in Charters & granting new ones by which the \ firm / Churchmen wer all laid aside & new ones at pleasure put in their steds; Garisons put into the Houses of P[arliament]; the Peanall Laws struck at with open face; & writts of sum[mons]. After all things were thus prepared for a new Parliament, to confirme all things as the King would have them, the Prince of Orange came into England with a smal Army of about 12 thousand, yet found so many friends that he gained the Crown without a Battle; of which number was Sir John Lowther, who boldly seised a ship

[I.598]

load of Armes,[30] which were sent by King James for Ireland – beying yet in the Throne: – & was very Active, after King James was slipd into France, in Rase the Cou[n]try by a Posse Com[itatus],[31] for suppressing the Irish Conflagration (as was pretended),[32] \ of which I was so fermly persuaded that I

[24] MS: 'C~~h~~artam.'
[25] 'In a deed in the custody of Thomas Sandford of Askham Esq., 1361-1362.'
[26] Machell questions the soubriquet, 'gleed'. He thinks it doubtful. The meaning of 'gleed' is to have a cast in one or both eyes; to be squint-eyed. *OED*. Sir John was also referred to as 'glaucus', see III.34A. For a further (negative) meaning of 'gleed', as applied to Sir John, see Part 1, Ch.11, Crosby Ravensworth, III.176.
[27] Sir John Lowther, 2nd baronet (1642-1706),
[28] From c.1570 the Crown used the English Court of High Commission to check heresy and enforce official forms of worship. It was abolished in 1641, but in 1686 James instituted 'The Commissioners in/for Causes Ecclesiastical', seen as a revival of the old Court of High Commission. It was discontinued in 1688, and abolished in the Bill of Rights, see Frank L. Cross, Elizabeth A. Livingstone (eds), *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church* (3rd edn, Oxford, 2005), 772.
[29] Dissenters.
[30] On 9 December 1688, Sir John Lowther heard that a ship moored at Workington (base of the Roman Catholic, Henry Curwen) contained a cargo of 500 muskets with bayonets and ammunition, taken from Carlisle Castle to be sent to James II's forces in Ireland. Lowther and his supporter, Andrew Hudleston, took a number of their tenants to Workington, overpowered the ship's crew, and impounded the arms. Through this action, Lowther allied himself with those who were desirous of gaining office in a new Protestant government. See Michael A. Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c.1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 148.
[31] Raising the county as a Posse Comitatus: the legal power of sheriffs and other officials to summon armed citizens to keep the peace: see David B. Kopel, 'The Posse Comitatus and the Office of Sheriff: armed citizens summoned to the aid of law enforcement', *Journal of Criminal Law and Criminology*, 104 (4), 1973, 761.
[32] Here, Machell shows his commitment to Sir John Lowther and the Protestant cause amid anti-Catholic rumour relating to the Irish. On 26 November 1688, Sir John Lowther proposed calling out the militia to seize Carlisle for the Prince of Orange. Instead, his political opponents, Sir George Fletcher and Sir Christopher Musgrave,

went my selfe; / not to aid the P[rince] nor of the K[ing] – but to supp. those R[ebels] by stat[ute] who were burneing the K[ing] as the publecens said};[33] for which purpose he marched & headed the Countrey as far as Kirkby Lonsdale in Westm'land, a manner which he had lately purchased. Whereupon he was made Viscount Lonsdal in May 96, after he had bin som considerable time Vice-Chamberlain of his Majestyes Household & ~~one of~~ a Privy-Counsell, which latter had bin conferd by King William immediately after the Revolution.[34]

[Development of Lowther village]

Lowther was a little village ~~of that name~~, which gave name to the Parish & the family of the Lowthers. It consisted of an Hall, the Church & 17 Houses \ Tenements & Cotts. / \ Parsonage house & scoole […][35] / All which were purchas'd off \ or ~~exchanged~~ \ by the / now Sir John Lowther, from the Respective Tennants \ at honest rates /& pulld down & demolished to inlarge his \ deere parke / demanes.' & ~~because they were in the front of his house~~ [to] better the Prospect of his house, about the year 1682*. He built a Bridge there in 1684† at ~~cost~~ the Countreys cost.[36]

The Commons were divided twixt him & Bird of Browham & The Lordship of Clifton;[37] the 2 former of which livd like Lords of themselves‡, i.e. without any Tenants about them.
He puld down a great part of his H[ouse]. After he had pulld down The Town, he likewise pulld down the parsonage house, which was a very mean one, & built a better, (not) in its steed but near the River; & commuted the Tythes &c. Lastly, he altered al the old house, which he had left standing, much for the better in 1685. & lastly pulld down all or

[Machell's Notes: I.596]
*Query of Mr ~~Atkinson~~ \ Threlkeld / & Mr William Atkinson; as also the number of the houses {?}
†{?}
‡{wrong.}

[I.597]

most of the Church & rebuilt it agane in a better forme, 1686, with a Cupilo over the steple, which standeth in the midst of the church. [He] raled in & wainscoted the Altier place, & inriched the same with Noble communion plate.[38]

_____

recruited 3,000 men to guard the area against King James's demobilised Irish soldiers, during a national 'Irish panic' sweeping England in mid-December, 1688. See Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration*, 147. When he was obstructed by local rivals, Lowther appealed to Lord Danby to help take the Carlisle garrison. His request was denied, with the consequence that the town surrendered to Musgrave but Danby reportedly assured Lowther that he would be appointed governor of Carlisle. This promise was kept early in 1689; Lowther was also named as vice-chamberlain and appointed lord lieutenant of Cumberland and Westmorland. See https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1690-1715/member/lowther-sir-john-1655-1700.

[33] This refers to the burning of King James's effigy, as the press [publecens/publicists] reported. Machell remarked that he felt he should step in, not as an Orange man, but to maintain law and order. 'P' refers to the Prince of Orange rather than 'Parliament', as parliament was not then sitting, having been dissolved by proclamation in 1687. See Robert Beddard, *A Kingdom without a King: The Journal of the Provisional Government in the Revolution of 1688* (Oxford, 1988), 197; see also *London Gazette*. 30 June 1687, 1.

[34] A shorter version of Lowther's career at this point appears on MS.I.597: 'Upon the Revolution, he (haveing boldly seised a ship load of Armes going for Ireland in the declineing of King James 2) was made Vice Chamberlaine to King William & Queen Mary, and a Privy Councellour. & in Anno Domini 1696 – the latter end of March – when the Parliament riss, of which he was a notable member, he was created Lord Viscount Lonsdale.' Note the discrepancy in the two passages between the month (March or May) in which Lowther was made Viscount Lonsdale, see J.V. Beckett,' Lowther, John, first Viscount Lonsdale (1655-1700)'. *ODNB*.

[35] Repetition of the number of tenants, deleted in this edition.

[36] At the cost of the county. It was a public bridge.

[37] Enclosure by private agreement of the landowners.

[38] See the Consecration Deed (1666) in the Bishops' Register: CAC(C), DRC1/4, 407.

[III.41A][39]



Figure 1.15.2. West end of Lowther Church, sketched on the reverse of a letter. III.41A.

[III.41]
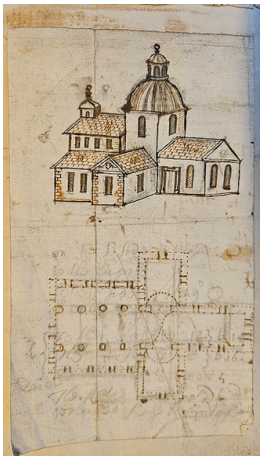


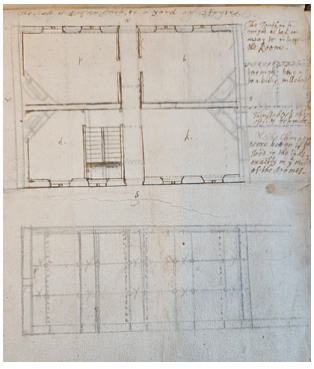
Figure 1.15.3. Lowther Church. III.41.

[III. 34]

The Platforme of Lowther Parsonage, May 17 [16]90.

The scale is ¼ of an inch to a yard or 3 foote.

[39] This page was previously used for rough pencilled notes, which are just visible, though virtually illegible. They appear to describe the church, as in the notes on III.37. The reverse forms part of a letter, partially transcribed on III.41B. The subject concerned appears to have been given 30 shillings a month… and that's the most we can do for him'. It goes on to mention that, 'the misery… of the Irish … is very great'.



[h.] The part[ition] in h. might be taken away to inlarge the roome.	
(2.) Here might be a buttery.	Here [might be] a milke house.
Then [there might be] stables & other offices behind.	
Note. The chimneys were better if they stood in the ends exactly in the mid[dle] of the Roomes.	

Figure 1.15.4. 'Platforme of Lowther Parsonage'. III.34.

[III.37]

[The Town of Lowther]
The town of Lowther, which stood betwixt the church and the Hall, conteined formerly, xvii family [as follows]
Begin about the Hall on the west side of it, about 200 yrds \ above. /
1. Richard Wilkinson; \ 1. Anenst him,[40] Christopher Ritson.
2. John Wilk[inson] of Dale. Anest the Hal behind the Crofts James Wilk[inson] of Penfold.
3. John Workman {near the Hall; John Wilk behind it.} 3. Richard Stephenson below the out court.
4. Lancaster.
5. Chappelhowe.
6. Mary Ritson, a cot.
7. Robert Lowther.
8. Hugh Newton \ yet standing. /
9. (200 yards o[f]f) the Rectory.

The other side.
Over against Hew Newtons,
2. Margaret Ritson; 2. John ~~Tompson~~ \ Hutchinson / against Rob. Lowthers.
3. Rob. Thomson against Chappelhows.
4. Francis Harison: a cot. over against Chappelhows.

Then a wall to the orchard.
Now only 2:
Wid[ow] Wilkinsons: now sold to Sir John, and Workmans (not down), now sold to him – & Hew Newtons: unsold. & a new parsonedge house.
{?} There is a row of new houses from the school to the manufacture?

A manifacture, shoomaker & lace maker.
A public stonebrids to Askam. A private stone brids to Yanewath per Sir John, 1694.
At Lowther, a Parke on the south side, replete with deer.
Gravel in the field twixt Church & Hall.
Lowther Moore. T[enants] 6. All arbitrary.

[Machell's Notes: III.37]
Memorandum: Lowther Church & Hall were visited by Sir William Dugdall; ergo an account of the Monuments or Arms, at least, may be had in his Visit[ation] of Westmorland in the Heralds Office.
{Living: Mr Atkinson.} {Understanding men. Mr William Atkinson.}[41]

[40] Anenst, as in, 'Anent': in line with; alongside, beside; even or level with.' *OED*.
[41] Understanding men: men of intellect; intelligence (*OED*), therefore, useful as Machell's informants. William Atkinson (died 1721) was perpetual vicar of Morland from 1680/1. He had been schoolmaster at Dufton

{By Lowther out the west runs [the river] Lowther bout a bow shot.}
? \ Sir / Richard Lowther, Warden of the Marches. {So of the west.}
{Descent of the manner: 20. Ed.1. [1291-1292] One Hugh de Lowther Sequitur pro dom[ino] Rege. Blunt *Nomo Lexicon* sub verb. waifs.}[42]

[I.598]

House[s] Demolished & the Lands purchased or exchangd per Sir John Lowther
{infomt Jo. Wiber. 27 Jan. 1686/7}

On the right hand.[43]
1. Rob. Tomson 4li
2. Fran. Harrison 8s
3. John Hutchinson 5li
4. Will. Rutson 1li or a marke

On the left hand from the Hall.
1. Rich. Stephenson a cot.
2. [Blank]
3. [Blank]
4. Christ Rutson 1li per Annum
5. Rob. Lowther 12li per Annum
6. Hugh Newton would not 10li
7. The parsonage house Removd.

Item: beyond the Hall – southwards – twixt the Hall & gardine as you goe for Kendal.

On the right hand.
1. Rich. Wilkinson per Annum 8li

On the left hand.
1. John Wilkinson per Annum 8li
2. Jo. Warkeman farm[er] to Christopher Rutson 3li
3. Jo. Wilkinson senior about 8li
4. Christoph Rutson 8
5. [Blank]
6. ~~Jo. Crag of said Park foote~~ there![44]

between 1664 and 1665 (CCED); he gave Machell advice on the Dufton parish boundary in 1686: see Part 1, Ch.12, Dufton, III.160.

[42] Machell was referring to Thomas Blount's, *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670). Under 'waif' Blount writes as follows: 'Waifs, Things lost and Estrays must, by the Lord of the Franchise where they are found, be caused to be cried and published in Markets and Churches near about, else the year and day does not run to the prejudice of him that lost the M. Briton. cap. 17. Plac. coram Joh. de Berewel & Sociis suis Justic. Itin. apud Salop. in Octab [8th/7th day after the feast of] Sancti Michaelis. 20 Ed. 1. Rot. 29. in Dorso … Et Hugo de Lowther qui sequitur pro Domino Rege dicit quod Wayf est quoddam grossum de Corona, ita Coronae Domini Regis annexum, quod nullus eo gaudere possit, nisi inde habeat speciale War|rantum] a Domino Rege vel antecessoribus suis concessum.' [Translated as] 'And Hugh Lowther, arguing on behalf of the Lord King, says that a waif is something included in Crown possession, belonging to the current monarch in such a way that nobody can have enjoyment of it unless he has a royal warrant specially granted by the Lord King or his ancestors.' See also, 'waif' in the English Glossary.

[43] The village would have been laid out in this way before demolition.

[44] Perhaps the deletion was unnecessary, as John Crag was: 'there'.

[III.37]

[Lowther School]
{A scholl at Lowther by Richard Lowther; 10li per annum; free.}[45]

[III.45]

[School Inscription]
Hanc scholam erexerunt Johanes Lowther miles Barronettus Richardus Lowther armiger et Johanes Teasdale ecclesiæ rector anno salutis 1640 regis Caroli 16.[46]

[III.37]

{Hall and other Gentlemens Houses}*

The Hall
The Hall stands a little S.E. from the church \ on an hill /.
The Parsonage S. west in a bottom. \ The Parsonage stand at the S.E. corner of the church yard.[47] /

[Machell's Notes: III.37]
*Hall? The Hall visited per Dugdall; yet take the scenography & situation.

[III.34A]

It is seated on the side of an hill {a bow-shot south of the village}, having a pleasant prospect to Whinfel and a good part of the country. The windows double tra[nsome]s; 2 storyes compleat, beside the garrets. Over the court doer are placed these armes, which belong to the Lowthers, the now owners thereof.



Figure 1.15.5. Lowther Arms. III.34A.

It is reported to have com'd to them in the Rebel[lion]-time, the 1[t] of that [family] being Sir John Lowther, sirnamed Glaucus*. Here was the present Sir John Lowther borne: one of His Majestyes – K.W.3[48] – most honourable Privy Council, & Governor of Carleol.

[Machell's Notes: III.34A]
*But of this qu.? And also, whose it was before.[49]

[45] A Free School.
[46] 'This school was erected by Sir John Lowther, Knight and Baronet, Richard Lowther Esq. and John Teasdale Rector of the Church, in the year of our Salvation 1640, and of the 16th year of the reign of King Charles.' John Teasdale was rector of Lowther, 1613-56. See Curwen, *Later Records*, 325-34; see also, *N&B1*, 439.
[47] Machell appears to be referring to the old parsonage here.
[48] King William III. William and Mary assumed the throne in 1689.
[49] 'Glaucus': glaucoma, or glaucosis, a fault in the eye when the Crystalline Humour is chang'd into a grey or sky-colour [Glaucus is Greek for grey-green]; also, blindness from glaucoma. *OED*. See also 'gleed', III.725c, above.

[III.42, 43]

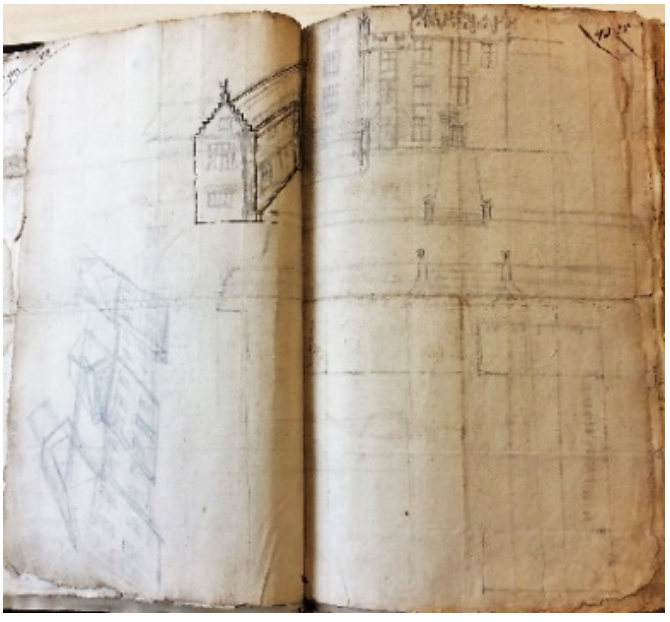


Figure 1.15.6. Lowther Hall. III.42-43.

[III.45]

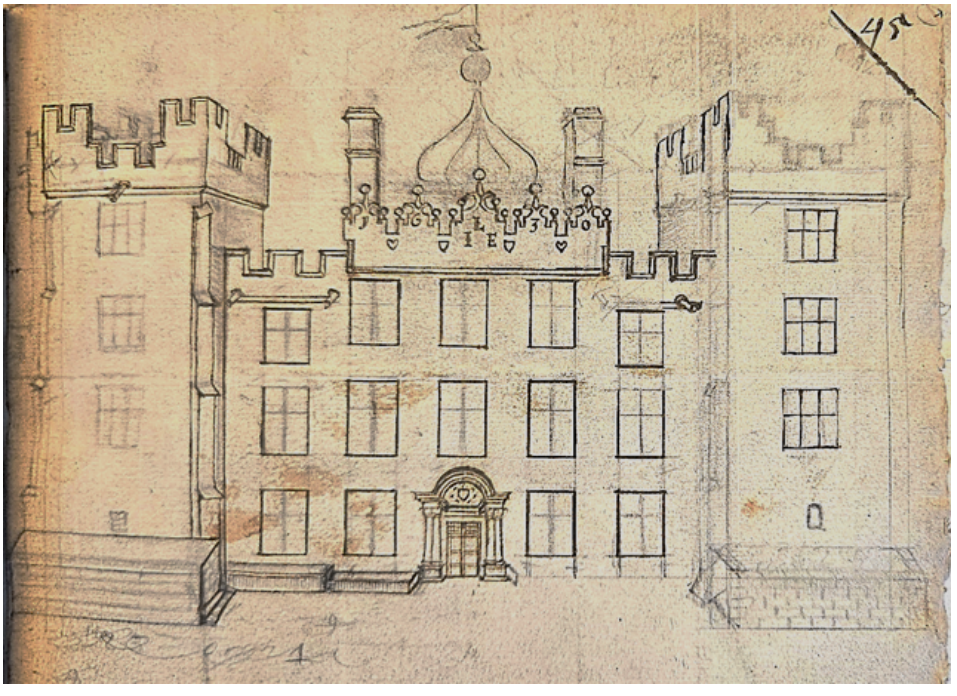


Figure 1.15.7. Lowther Hall. III.45.

[III.47]

Gallery – 8 broad without.
Stable ends 8 outsid & turne[50] 6.
End \ front / broad outside 20.

[III.48]

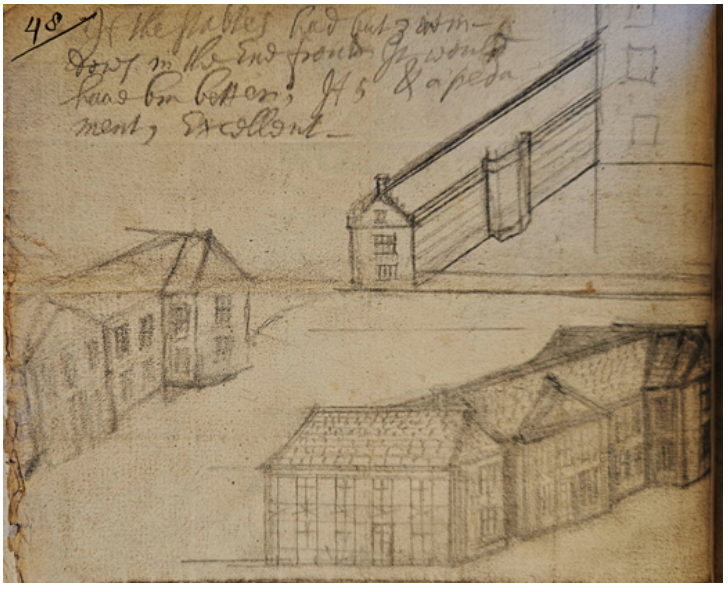


Figure 1.15.8. At Lowther Hall. III.48.

If the stables had but three windows in the end front, it would have bin better; if 5 & a pedament, excellent –

[III.49]

[Details relating to the sketches above]
Walkes 8 yards broad
The outer court on the outside: twice 37 broad & to the stable end, 19; the stable end, 20.
The front of the stables, 1ˢᵗ projecture 9 \ the returne 6 / to the midle of the stable & court 15 &c.
The stables wide on the inside, in all 7 passes; of which the walke 2 & ½, stall 3½, manger with boxes and racks, 1 pass.[51]
The Gallery on the outside in breadth, 8; in [blank] length, of which in the court.
The front of the dwelling house: The Tower, 11; thence to the midle of the hall door, 9. &c. As much more on the other side.

[III.51][52]

[Sketch Notes]
Lowther parish west-wards.
Lowther Parish.
Qu: for a draught of the new house.

[50] Unclear word.
[51] This could equally well read, '2 pass'.
[52] After the heading, 'on Lowther', the page is empty, apart from a pasted scrap-page, the reverse of which demonstrates that its contents were written in another hand on part of a letter dated 1689.

[III.35]

Lowther Parish Part 2.

[Perambulation]

A quo[53]	medium[54]	ad quem[55]
Askham Bridge twixt Askham & Lowther	From the new parsonage house over against Ascom Hall, directly northwards down the River Lowther	till you com at Clifton fits dike near Clifton Wells
Thence S.E.	up the outside of Buckholm dike	to Skelholm dike
Thence N.E.	down the said dike	to TranefatNooke
Thence S.E. & E.	along a gill	till you com at an house cal'd Noonhow Nëun how / along ~~the said dike~~ Trainfat dike to Hackthorp Field
Thence N.	along Hackthorp dike	to Waterfall Brigg
Thence N.	down Hackthorp-beck	till you com at Menkinthorp Hall
Thence N.	along the hedge by the south side of the short wood	to an house called Howcarld
Thence N.E.	by the outside of Melkinthorp Field Dike	till you com at Sandwath
Thence S.	by Melkinthorp Field dike	to Cliburne beck
Thence S.W.	up the said beck to Menkinthorp Hall and so on	to Waterfal Bridge near to Hackthorp Hall?
Thence S.E.	up the said beck	to Thrimby Poole
Thence S.W.	from the head of the said pool on the outside of Lowther Old Park	till you come at Whale more Head
Thence W.	by Whale Field dikes	to Whalebeck Head
Thence westward	down Whale Beck	to the river Lowther
Thence no[rth]wards	down the said river by Jonee Crags house	to where wee began

June 14 1692: This is a true bounder of Lowther parish: John Crag.[56]

[Machell's Notes: III.35]

Cliburne Beck springs at Sleddale Foote; thence on the south side of Shap; thence twixt Little [Strick]land & Thrimby; thence on the east side of Hackthorp ½ q; thence N.W. of Great Strickland ½; thence twixt

[53] Whence.
[54] Route.
[55] Whither.
[56] The signature is in a different hand from the rest of the sentence; it is presumably that of John Crag, the man who was 'there', on I.598 (above), Machell's bounder informant (see III.40).

Menkinthorpe and Great Strickland hall; thence turning W. & S. side of Cliburne; thence at Cliburne Mill, into Livennet.
{Q. Where the becks spring from &c.}
{Bridges: Clib. Brig, St[one]; Faw Brig, St[one; Hackthorp [Brig], w[ood.]}
Hackthorp Hall. Stricklands? Won at cards or dice.[57]
Whale – a m[anor]. Hugo de Whaile.
Ex inform. Johannis Cragg.

[III.39]

{Hackthorp}
S.E. [of the church] a mile.13 or 14 [families]. The Hall at the S. end. 1 freehold: Rich[ard] Willan. Valu[e] [blank]]. The rest arbitrary to Sir John Lowther. A parke at the S. end, desparked. The now Sir John Lowther borne there; \ bred at Queens College in Oxon; / Lord Lieutenant of the Countyes of Westmorland & Cumberland, being custos rotulorum[58] in the former and Vice-Chamberlain of [blank][59] & a Privy Councellour.

[III.34A]

In Hackthorp, 3 Bowshots S. wards from the Hall, is the appearance of an old Towne, & they call the grounds, Ald-Gards. Gleed[60] Sir John got it in Rebellion times. Over the court gate in a plane shield, Lowther Arms.

[I.598]

[Whale and Whalemoor]
[Whale.] {A little S.W. ab Ecclesia 1 mile. families, 9 or 10; Whale is in the Lordship of Lowther, a Little Hamlet of about 10 houses, all customary Tenants. 6 Tenements, 4 Cots.
Whale more. 5. All custom[ary] {to Sir John Lowther}. Item: Whale more.[61] 5 houses, of which 4 Tenements, 1 Cot.

[III.39]

An horse race used to be kept on Whale More, a runne 4 miles. Begun & left of[f] per Sir John Lowther.

[I.598]

Lowther Dikes
5 Tenements & 2 Cotts.

[III.39]

{Melkinthorp}
A little more easterly, 2 miles [from the church]. Families, 15 or 16. Freehold 1. underv[alue] Simon Pattison. The rest arbitrary to Sir John. Strickland Beck S. of it.

[III.34A]

Melkinthorpe Hall
In vide Melkinthorpe hall, as I remember thus.

[57] In c.1361-62, Sir Thomas de Stirkland held the hall under the barons of Kendal. It was bought by the Lowther family in 1535. The house noted by Machell was built in the early years of James I: see Michael Waistell Taylor, *The Old Manorial Halls of Westmorland and Cumberland*, CWAAS Extra Series 8 (Kendal, 1892), 95, 97. There is no mention here, or in *N&BI* (441-42), of its having been won by gambling.
[58] 'Keeper of the Rolls': the principal Justice of the Peace of a county, who has nominal custody of the records of the commission of the peace. The function is usually fulfilled by the Lord Lieutenant.
[59] He was vice-chamberlain of the king's household.
[60] Another reference to 'gleed', see I.725C, above; see also 'glaucus': III.34A. For a further (negative) meaning of the word 'gleed', as applied to Sir John Lowther, see Part 1, Ch.11, Crosby Ravensworth, III.176.
[61] Whalemoor.

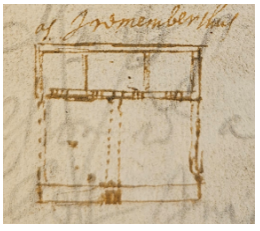


Figure 1.15.9. Sketch plan of Melkinthorpe Hall. III.34A.

[III.37]

{Curiosityes in Art or Nature}

{Blew slate from Mosedale in Shap; red from Pen Fell.}
{Marble quarryes near the river twixt Lowther Hall & Askam pulld down. Freestone whiteish red in the banke above it.}
{All the Parish limestone.}
{A fish pond S[outh] end of the parke, 1 mile, replen[ished] with pikes, troutes & redy ducks.}

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 16]

[Parish of Long Marton]

[Machell's Initial Notes]

[I.602][1]

Merton: from a mere or pond at the north end of the Town. {Or rather Martin, a Sancto Martino nisi ei ob nominem Eccles[iae] after[wards] Dedicatus Honor manerio orato.}[2]

[I.606]

To Marton church belongs Longmarton, Brampton, Knock.

[I.607]

The Parish of Long Marton containes in it 3 Lordships: Sc. the Lordship of Longmarton, the Lordship of Brampton & the Lordship of Knock. And \ besides these / one Gentlemans house lately built called Brampton hall.

[IV.36]

Ad Merton Parke[3]

19th of Edward II. [1325-1326.][4]

Marton it seems being a manner did then belong to John de Veteripont or his heir, for we suppose dead before the Inquisition was taken. Concerneing this they say that certain Berciaria of 4 score feet in bigness[5] were alienated by the Prior, and the Parke destroyed by dogs & nets & want of inclosure. It seems this place has bin plentifull of sheep & replenishd til then with deer. That the little Vivary or storepond is destroyd but there is taken from thence as much as can be taken by laying a long net without use at sea 30 or 40 fa[thoms] long & the Great Vivary is much impoverishd of great fish. It seems that there were 2 fishponds here; maybe the Tarn & the parsons[6] pond, except there be som in the Parke. There is a place called Docka tarn in the Parke behind Hollin Hill & another at Croft Foot.

[I.603]

[Notes on Tumuli]

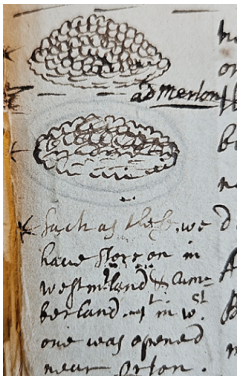


Figure 1.16.1. Margin detail: images of tumuli. I.603.

[1] 'Or rather Martin, from St Martin, unless, because of the name of the church, it was an honour conferred upon it afterwards, with the consent of the manor.'
[2] The church is dedicated to St Margaret and St James, *N&BI*, 359.
[3] This heading has been transferred from MS.I.603.
[4] The text relates to comments on Machell's research in pipe rolls, begun on the previous page.
[5] Bercaria, berciaria: sheep folds. See, for example, Richard Britnell (ed.), *Durham Priory Manorial Accounts, 1277-1310* (Woodbridge, 2015), 293.
[6] MS. 'persons.'

{*Such as these we have store in Westmorland & Cumberland. 1ᵗ in Westmorland, one was opened near Orton, & in Marton Parke are 2 trenched about. There are allso some near Lowther Bridge. And in Cumberland, very many in Lazonby fields.}

{S. H. Blunt, p.36}[7]
The Philippick fields must needs be the Campaigne[8] betweene Thermopilæ and Philippolis, being about 40 or 50 miles long; for according to tradition of diverse there inhabiting, and all Concordance of storyes, it was built from that City by Philip & thence had its denomination. They are famous for the Roman Civill wars, there decided in two Battle; The 1ᵗ between Cæsar & Pompey and the other between Augustus and Marke Antony, against Brutus and Cassius: The plane, but that it is a Valley, much resembles O[u]r Downes of Marlborough*, where the Saxons, as tis thought had a great Battle; for just in that manner there yett remained the heaps where the slane were buryed, and good part of the trenches: The two Battles were fought 16 or 18 mls asunder, as appeares by the sepulchres and the trenches; Cæsars was next the Hill, the other nearer Philippolis, which for want of Other Authority I conjectured thus: First in Cæsars Battle there dyed but 15 thousand 200; In the Other allmost twice as many. This proportion is made good in the heaps, those towards Philippolis being greater and much more in number than the other: Then Cæsar writes that after Pompey and the main of his Army was fled, a residue not yett dispursd retired to a Hill 6 miles of which had a river run under it; This squares right with a Hill on the south side of Pota\r/zeek, a little towne between the 2 camps; ~~and little towne~~, but for this circumstance not worthy speakeing on consisting of about 4000 houses. Further on Eastwards, upon the same plane are the monuments of Brutus and Cassius his defeature. The Tumuli are many; some great some smale, more or less close together, as the slaughter hapnd, & reach at least 8 or 9 miles in both in lenth extending as it seems & […][9] did towards Philippolis, now Phil[ibee.]

[Machell's Notes: I.603]
*{See Dugdall *Warwickshire* in verbo Low in Knight Low.}

[I.601A][10]

[The Church]



Figure 1.16.2. Arms 'in Martin Church window'. I.601A.

[7] The following passage was copied almost verbatim from Henry Blunt, *A Voyage into the Levant. A Briefe Relation of a Journey lately performed by Master Henry Blunt Gentleman from England by the way of Venice, into Dalmatia, Sclavonia, Bosnah, Hungary, Macedonia, Thessaly, Thrace, Rhodes and Egypt, unto Gran Cairo: With particular observations concerning the moderne condition of the Turkes, and other people under that Empire* (1636), 35-37.
[8] Champion country: a large expanse of open country, as distinct from mountains and woods; see the English Glossary.
[9] Words here have perished.
[10] A page measuring 15cm x 20cm, containing a fine drawing of a coat of arms. An unfinished pencil sketch of a coat of arms may be found close to this one on MS.I.601.

These Arms are in Martin Church window in Westm'land.[11] To whome they belong I am alltogether ignorant. The Blackbird (for such I take them to be) in dexter point seemes misplaced, according to Leigh Gerrads rule.[12] Luskin, Mayor of London, b[ore] Gules on a cheveron Argent between 3 falkons volant Or, 3 escalops Sable.

[Machell's Notes: I.601A]

{This is the nearest beareing that I meet with: Repertorye[13] G15 ~~fol~~ p.244.[14] Herald College. Lovekins arms.}

[Notes in another hand: I.601A]

{He is called in some Lists, Lovekin, in others, Lewkin, & was Mayor in 1348, 1358, 1365, 6.}[15]
{Lovekins arms are emblazoned 3 rising eagles in some Lists of Mayors.}[16]

[I.606]

§1. The church stands in the fealdes of Brampton att a considerable distance from any of the villages that belong to it {may be tis dedicate to St Martin but it takes it name from Long Marton where the parsonage house is, & the place to which it is nearest situate.}
Concerneing its founder I know nothing, but there is a Tradition about the building of it; that it was first designed to have stood at Long Marton upon the Hill by the parsonage house and that severall attempts were made of erecting it there but all in vaine, for ~~as often~~ what they built up o'th day was Cast downe o'th night; which I lieave to Relators, & Rather believe that it was placed there for the better satisfaction of the Town of Brampton, being a Great part of the parish, & yett not to[o] near that, least Knock should be att too great a distance. The Patronage of it is in the Hands of the Barons of Westm'land, & so was the Lordship of Longmarton & Knock of old.
There are not any monuments remaneing within \ it now / and onely these escutchions which I here present you.

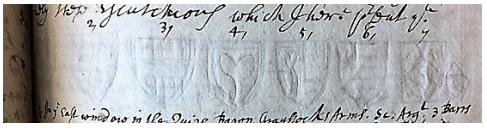


Figure 1.16.3. Faded pencil sketches of escutcheons in the windows of Long Marton Church. I.606.

In the East window in the Quire.
1. Baron Graystocks Arms: Sc. Argent 3 Barrs Azure, overall 3 Chappletts of Roses in triangle Gules.
2. Dakers.
3. In the s\o/uthside window next to the Aultar an Ancient scutchions for the Cliffords Armes, Barons of Westm'land: Sc. Cheque Or & Vert (soe it is there but it should be Azure) a fess Gules.
4.[17] In the North window of the quire, 1. Lancasters, Sc. Argent 2 Barrs Gules, on a canton of the 2nd a mullet – 4. Lancaster in pale, Sc. Sable a manch Argent.[18]

[11] See I.606, section 5, below.
[12] Machell was referring to *The Accidence of Armorie*, by Gerard Legh/Leigh (London, 1563, & later editions). Leigh was a member of the College of Heralds.
[13] Repertory: repository or catalogue. *OED*.
[14] The College of Arms was founded in 1484; it creates and maintains official registers of coats of arms and pedigrees. https://www.college-of-arms.gov.uk/.
[15] Sir John Lovekyn was a London fishmonger who was four times Lord Mayor of London (in 1348, 1358, 1365 and 1366): C. Welch, & R. Axworthy, 'Lovekyn, John (d. 1368), merchant and lord mayor of London'. *ODNB.*
[16] These comments (a later attempt at detecting the ownership of the coat of arms see *Figure 1.16.2*) are not in Machell's hand but could be in the hand of either Bishop Charles Lyttelton or William Nicolson, both of whom amended parts of Machell's text (see Part 3, Ch.1, Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland). Sir John Lovekyn was a member of the family which endowed the chapel of Kingston Grammar School in the 14th century. The school coat of arms is that of the Lovekyn family and is similar to Machell's sketch, see https://www.kgs.org.uk.
[17] MS: Numbered '5.'
[18] MS: Numbered '4. Lancaster in pale. ~~d by Wharton~~ Sc. Sable a manch Ar.'

5. In the little quire on the South side of the pulpit, Argent on a Cheveron between 3 Blackbirds Sable 3 annulets ar[gent].[19]

[I.607]

All in the North quire window.
4. Wharton: Sc. Sable a manch Argent.
5. Wharton Impaleing Lancaster: Sc. Argent & Gules.
6. Lancaster single.
7. In the little South Quire beyond the pulpit.
8. Sir Thomas Burtons of Brampton.[20]
{They may all be seen in libro oblongo miscellaneor MS}[21]

[I.609]

[Machell's notes on the Lancaster, Brampton and Morvil Families]

John de Lancaster de Brampton, a Juror in the Inquisition de Matilda Beauchamp Relicta [blank] Clifford 4. Henry 4. [1402-03].
[Blank] de Lancaster [blank] 33. Henry 6. [1434-35].

{Brampton a name}
Thomas de Brampton ante 11. Henry 3. [1226-27] in cartis Alic è lib. Oblong.[22]

{Morvil}
I finde the Morvils (An ancient family in the north) som of them to have lived att Brampton, but where or in what Quality I know not.
William de Morvil qui vixit 8. et 13. John [1206-07, 1211-12].
Walterus de Morvil de Brampton {!} Temp. John [1199-1216].
\ Walter de Morvil. 11. Henry 3. [1226-27] successit W. /
John de Morevil. 22. Henry 3. [1237-38].
John de Morvil. 36. Henry 3. [1251-52].
Robert de Morvil vicom. Temp. Henry 3. [1216-72].
Robert de Morevil. 14. Edward 1. [1285-86].
The Antiquity of the name will appear from these instances: but what there relation are, I confess myself ignorant.

[I.606][23]

{Brampton; Lancaster}
13. Henry 8. [1521-22] Edward Lancaster of Brampton, Gentleman, had 2 messuags, 24 Ac[res] of Land, 4 Acres of medow, with common of pasture for beasts without number belonging thereto; with common of Turbaries, common of esto\v/ers, common of piscaries, & the 4th part of the mill in the Towne & field of Melkanthorp; which he sold unto William Lancaster, son & heir of Christopher Lancaster of Deepdale for xx markes{?}[24] which he held by the gift of his father & Brother for Term of life. And he was allso obliged to promise his Elder Brothers release of Clame to those lands, and grant the revertion for ever more to the said William.

[I.607]

{Brampton Lordship}

Brampton so called from [Blank] was formerly an entire Lordship of itselfe, haveing Dufton on the East, Crakenthorpe on the West, Longmarton on the North, & Lancton & Bongate on the South. The village is seated in a fruitfull but sandy soyle, have a River running all along the skirts of it on the East side, & is accommodated with a water mill close att hand. The common is well stored with Lyme

[19] The last (perished) word could also be 'Azure'.
[20] See below.
[21] 'They may all be seen in the oblong book, Miscellaneous MS.'
[22] In the deeds of Alic. In the Oblong Book.
[23] Also numbered p.24.
[24] 'xx' is partly obscured by the binding. Whatever the sum, Machell seems to have questioned it.

stone,[25] & affordes Good Cattle for their pasture; upon which a Race is usually run every St [Blank] day for [blank]. ~~And~~ This more or common is divided on the west with the great Romane Way, & upon the very skirts of it is a Round trench or fortification &c. called White Burwens, the out workes of which runn downe in to Crakenthorpe More; which I take to be British, & made \ in defence of Kirkbythore Gallatu[m] / to oppose the Romanes when they first came into Westm'land, incampeing upon Stanemore. Se the figure of it.

[I.610]

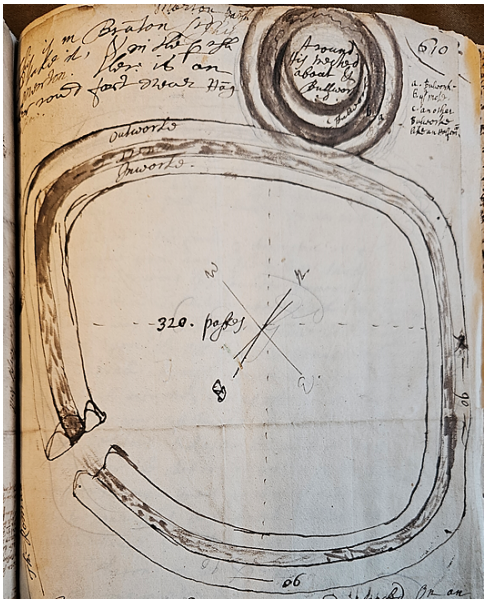


Figure 1.16.4. White Burwens..'a. Bulwork; b. the mote; c. another Bulworke like an halfemoon'. I.610.

This is in Brampton Lordship I take it; & in the parish of Merton there is an other round fort near Ha[n]ging Shaw. This is called White Burwens; and is p[l]aced on an High hill att the corner of Mr Machells Grassing, hard by the Roman-way on the left hand[26] as you goe to Kirkbythore. And att Kirkbythore, where Old Whelp Castle formerly stood, the place is called Burwins to this day; where there was lately an House called Burwens hall, belonging to the Crakan[t]horps, to whome a 3^{d} of Tenements in Kirkbythore doe belong. And the Common called Sowerby Moore in which the Inhabitants have a privaledge by reason of a certane sum of money payd yerely to the Crakanthorps of Newbigging. The Outworkes of this (if not the whol body) is in Crakanthorp & Bongate Parish.

[I.607]

(There is another roundworke on the side of the Banke towards Brampton field, vid. [blank] \ There is likewise another Round forte near Hangingshaw†. And allso a place called Castrig, vide [blank]. It is not well knowne att this day where the manner house stoode,[27] but it was Anciently the seate of [blank]. In [blank] Time it belongd to the Lancasters‡; which ~~family &~~ was extinct \ they say / in 3 daughters, coheires, whereof the eldest was maryed to Birbeck of Hornby with part of the Ten[ements]; another to Backhouse of Morland (~~with~~ another part);[28] and another with the Powes (a piece of ground which layes along by the water side from the field end beneath the church to

[25] MS: 'The common ~~which joine to the Common of Crackenthorpe~~ is well stored with Lyme stone.'
[26] MS: 'on the left on the left hand.'
[27] The manor house of Brampton.
[28] For the marriage of Dorothy, daughter of George Backhouse, to John Skelton of High House, Cumberland, see Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615 and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891), 126.

Kirkbythore Bridge)[29] to Mr Wharton of Kirkbythore, to which family the Powes now belongs, 1664. Upon which account I suppose the Armes of Wharton impaleing Lancaster were putt up in the Church window, & the same armes are cutt in stone upon the Battlement of Kirkbythore Steple↓. If wee may believe the

[Machell's Notes I.607]

*{vide in Cap. de Barton.}[30]
†q. whether in this parish.
‡Descended from a younger son of Lancasters of Socbridge {è Ped. Birbeck in *Visitat West*. per Dugdall 1664.}[31]
↓{Lancasters there 33. Henry 6. [1454-55] è C. apud Crak.}[32] {I mete with Agnes de Lancaster 37. Henry [1252-53], but of what place I know 0. Se Sockbridge in Barton parish & Howgil in Kirkbythore.}

[I.608][33]

enterance[34] which the Birbecks (who maryed one of the Heiresses) have made in Dugdall, it hapen'd to be extinct about the end of Queen Elizabeth*; and peradventure about the Time that the Birbecks matched with the Cliffords. For the Cliffords doe now possess that partition of Tenements which the Birbecks held; & they possess Hor[n]by, partly (may be) upon consideration of the marriage dowry; and partly in exchange for the said Tenements†. As for the Demaisne, tis divided allso into 3 partitions and now in the hands of Christopher Dobson, Robert Richardson, and Ann Walker, widow (1664); knowne by the name of the Demaisne Lands.

[Brampton Hall]

But before I lieve Brampton I must take notice of a very fair house, which (because there is no other) now bears the name of Brampton Hall, placed on the east side at the Highest [point] of the village, with faire gardens att about a mile distance from the Church & 2 from Apleby – the market & shire towne.[35] It was built by [blank] Burton who was descended, as I am inform'd,[36] from Pierce Burton of Bishop-Burton in the County of Yorke; a Gentleman of about 40^{li} land per Annum, & related as it should seeme from their Armes ~~to the~~ (which are Argent a Bend[37] Sable) to the Burtons of Kens[l]ey, in Com Ebor‡. But their Original (as to this county) was from ~~Parson~~ Burton, parson of this parish,[38] a most welthy man & noble housekeper whose grandchild Mr Thomas Burton, was the great stay & support of the Loyal Party during the Tyranny of Oliver Cromwell, being then Knight of the Shire & seemingly a Roundhead, that he might be more capeable of doeing the Cavaliers a greater kindness;[39] and in a word behaved himselfe so well that he was Knighted by King Charles the Second after his Returne to the Crowne from banishment.[40] What more may be said of this famly take briefly in the following pedigre.[41]

---

[29] Meadow Powes: a field in the parish of Kirkby Thore, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 120.
[30] 'See the chapter on Barton.'
[31] From the Birkbeck pedigree made by Dugdale on 22 March 1664: see Foster (ed.)*, Pedigrees,* 12.
[32] 'According to a document at Crackenthorpe.'
[33] At the foot of this page is written, 'p.3 of Marton'.
[34] Entry.
[35] MS: '~~It was built by [Blank] Burton~~ placed on the east side, at the Highest of the village with faire gardens, att about a mile distance from the Church \ & 2 from Apleby, the market & shire towne. /'
[36] MS: 'It was built by [blank] Burton whose ~~by three~~ \ was / ~~seeme to be~~ descended \ as I am inform'd. /'
[37] Here Machell drew a symbol to represent a heraldic bend.
[38] Richard Burton LLD, rector of Long Marton (1598-c.1608); rector of Ormside (1606-35). Richard Burton, rector of Dufton (1625-26), was probably his son: Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662,* 2, 1147-48.
[39] MS: 'that he might ~~the better sup~~ be \ more / capeable of doeing the Cavaliers a greater kindness.'
[40] Thomas Burton (fl.1656-68) wrote a diary in which he recorded his political career. See J. T. Rutt (ed*.), Diary of Thomas Burton*, 4 vols. (London, 1828). Machell wrote more kindly of Burton than of other so-called trimmers, despite the fact that Burton became MP for Westmorland in the Second Protectorate Parliament (1656-8). Cromwell's government accused him of disaffection, but he was among the Westmorland ejectors and in 1657 acquired a portion of the manor of Brough, sequestered from the recusant Blenkinsop family (a 'business' mentioned in the diary). Burton sat in Richard Cromwell's parliament (27 January to 22 April 1659). He then officially changed his affiliation to Charles II, after which he gained the honours that Machell cited here. I. Roots, 'Burton, Thomas (fl. 1656-1661), diarist'. *ODNB*.
[41] No pedigree was added.

[Machell's Notes: I.608]

*{See p.6, *Visit. West.* 1664. But there is no such thing in Whartons \ enterance,[42] / so that I suppose twas longer agoe (? Quaere ideo.[43])

†{?} (sed de his Quaere.)[44]

‡Se Flowers *Visitation of Yorkshire* 1564, wher 4 descents of Burton of Kens[l]ey named. I thinke Burtons is one of those corrupt ped[igrees] and it is to be noted of the Heralds that Wallop of Hantshire beares the same Coate.[45]

[Knock]

[III.162A]

Knock stands E. & W. At the E. end are iiij Tenements thought to have bin Knock gill hall, the being thee fashion of a ditch & Rampiere about the ground whereon; and the other Lands which belongs unto them extend themselves as far as Knock gill; and are yet calld the Demain Landes. There is also a place calld Chaple Fut, where it is said Knock Chaple stood – parish Dufton church.

[I.605][46]

The Lordship of Knock [Bounder]

On the North with Milburne in K[irkbythore] parish, \ being divided from it by a streight line / from Dumbalraise where Knock & Milburne & Martin Lordships meet, \ ascending / to the standing stean on Oaketree Hill (½ a m.); thence by a Dike steed to Casay flat Side, & so on by Caseflat dike Top to a Lane called Outgang-End as you go in to Grange, ¼. \ Thence / by ~~Lan~~ a dike on the out side Lang-holm to a place calld Stank head, ½. Thence up Grange Beck \ N. East / to Nu\c/kerdale head near unto Green Castle. 5 \ m. / \ where it springeth. /

Thence by a settle to Dale Sike head (100 yards); thence \ E. / down Dale Sike to Fell Troutbeck head* where Dale Sike runs into (1 mile).[47] Thence down Trout Beck \ N.E. / to Moss Burne Foot (3m.) where it meets \ in a Point / with Dufton parish – from which tis divided on the East by Mosburne aforesaid†, to the spring head (3 mile). Thence in a streight line \ S. / over the moss to Swindale head (3m.) Thence (by Swindale Beck) S.W. to Knoc Gill head, 4 \ m.[48] / Thence to Chaple Wath \ 1m. / where you pass the water twixt ~~Marton~~ \ Knock / & Dufton \ near Dufton Kirk / where 3 Lordships meet – Knock, Dufton & M[arton]. Then on ~~the S &~~ S[outh] with Long Marton – from which tis divided by ~~Mar~~ Knock field Dike to Hund-hill, 1m. Thence by a streight line to standing stean on Ebrun Thorne, ¾. Thence by a streight line to Dunbulraise, ½ a mile‡.

On the Top of Knock fell towards the west end is an Hurrock of stones which is called Watch Currack. No Bounder – It is opposite to Greene Castle.

[Machell's Notes: I.605]

*{5 mile but Sanderson says 2.}

†{Towan sayes by Mosburn to Over Harth 1½. Thence in a [blank] W. 1½. Thence by a [blank] to –Swindale beck head, 1m. is just one jump.}

‡Qu. of Marton parisheners & Grange.

{Sanderson says that Grange hath Common without Casaflat dike. Q. ergo of T. Westm'land.}

{Qu. Grange & Dufton.}

{There are Great store of Transparent blew stones of an azure colour digd out of the Grouves. Mr Hall & his shepherd.}

[42] See Foster (ed.) *Pedigrees*, 141-43.

[43] 'Therefore, look further.'

[44] 'But on this, look further.'

[45] See C.B. Norcliffe (ed.), *The Visitation of Yorkshire in the years 1563 and 1564 made by William Flower Esquire, Norroy, King of Arms* (Harleian Soc. XVI, London, 188), Pedigree of Rychard Burton of Kensley, 46.

[46] This page was bound upside down; at some point it was repaired and some words are illegible.

[47] MS: 'where \ Dale Sike / ~~it~~ runs into ~~Trout Beck~~ (1 mile).'

[48] MS: 'Thence (by Swindale Beck) S.W. to Knoc ~~Town~~ \ Gill / head, 4 \ m. /'

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 17]

[Parish of Morland]

[III.269]

There are 8 villages & Lordships in the parish.
{Morland, Bolton, Kings Meaburn, Newby, Great Strickland, Little Strickland, Slegill, Thrimby}[1]

[III.263][2]

It is a vicaridge, rated in the First Fruits Offices at 11: 18: 0, the tenths ~~of which is~~ 1: 3: 9½ farthing;[3] and it payeth to the Bishop for procurations \ 4^{s} 4^{d}* / & synodalls \ 4^{s} / & hath in glebe thereto belonging [blank].[4]
The patrones of it are the Dean & Chapter of Carleol, who presented Mr \ William / Atkinson, the present incumbent;[5] who hath in glebe lands about \ 30 or / 40 acres, \ Sc. in / Briggals VI acres[6] and hath Tythe in kind ~~& prescription~~ \ in the garthes of Morland & Bolton. Tythe hempe & line in the same Townes / allso in the fields. 10 Groates for hay at Trantra[ms]. A \ small / prescription for it ~~the rectory remaneing in the Dean & Chapter~~, at Thrimby;[7] tithe hay in kinde at Slegill, & a 3rd at Little Strickland, the Dean & Chapter having the rentes ~~therefore payable to the vicar at Little Strickland~~. Wool & lamb in kinde through the parish.[8]

{Division}
It is divided into 8 Constablewicks: Sc. 1. Morland; 2. Kings! Meaburne; 3. Newby; 4. Sleagil; 5. Little Strickland; 6. Thrimby; 7. Great Strickland; 8. Bolton. And into [blank] Lordships†.

[Bounder][9]
The parish of Morland, so called (as other are generally) from the town where ~~it~~ the parish church standeth, is bounded on East with Kirkbythore & Bondgate parishes, from which tis divided ~~from~~ \ by / the River Eden; on the South East with St Laurence Appleby‡. Thence up the outside of Leaseclose,[10] takeing it in & the whol Lordship of Meaburn Regis. Thence up to {Drivivers yeat with a long tabb;[11] on the South with Crosby Ravensworth parish, being divided from it by Lile Beck till it enters Livennit. Thence up Livennet to Regill Rales; thence by an hedge called Turnbank Dike to Regill Mask End. Thence \ by an hedge / up the Mask Side to Aughtwood Gill in Threeplands. Thence up the Gill to Pluverigs wherewith Shap parish meets, which hemms it in on the S., being divided from it by stones &}[12] line markes, to a place called Brunns, ~~a quarter of a mile~~ near Shap Towne End.

---

[1] MS.III.612 provides a similar narrative.
[2] As this page has undergone partial repair, causing some illegibility, three sets of marginalia have been omitted.
[3] £1 3s 9¾d.
[4] The Court of First Fruits and Tenths was established in 1540 to collect from clerical benefices certain moneys that had previously been sent to Rome. First fruits were the first year's profits owed by the new holder of a benefice; tenths were 10 percent of the annual income, due each year: https://www.britannica.com. The Office of First Fruits and Tenths, and its successor, the Office of the Governors of Queen Anne's Bounty, administered the income from clerical taxation following the Reformation: https://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk.
[5] William Atkinson was presented to Morland in 1680/1; he died in 1721. He was schoolmaster at Dufton between 1664 and 1665 (CCED) and gave Machell advice on the Dufton parish boundary in 1686: see Part 1, Ch.12, Dufton, III.160.
[6] The text is very jumbled here but appears to continue, 'Mr Atkinson will give [blank].'
[7] MS: 'A \ small / prescription for it ~~the rectory remaneing in the Dean & Chapter~~, at Thrimby.'
[8] This passage has been crammed into a tiny space and is much scored through.
[9] In a note on MS III.270, Machell wrote, 'Morland Parish: Query for a bounder; more perfect account.'
[10] Lees Close.
[11] 'Tabb': in Cornish dialect, a tab or tabbun is a piece of turf, see F.W.P. Jago, *The Ancient Language, and the Dialect of Cornwall* (Truro, 1882). In Midlands dialect, a tab[b] is the tongue of a shoe or boot. Tab is also interchangeable with 'tag': an appendage; the tail-end. *OED*.
[12] A mended tear in the paper has made the next word too faint to decipher.

[It is bounded] on the West with Bamton \ ~~& Lons~~ / parishes, being[13] divided by ~~Bank~~ [Blank]; on the North W. with Lowther parish by Gunner Keld Watter (or Melkinthorp beck) till it runns into Cliburn beck⸸. On the North with Cliburn parish, from which tis divided by Cliburne beck till it enters Eaden near Gillian Bower[14] over against Sowerby.

[Machell's Notes: III.263]

*?
†{? Q. families in each freehold.}
‡ From which, query of Henry Dent of Meaburn if it be not divided from Sweetmilk Sike from the river up to Buly Castle.
⸸ Sed query?
{The townes & Lordships}[15]{1 dedication; 2 descriptions by pillars; steple, bell, repares, monuments, Armes in number. What familyes in belonging.}
{What remarkeable in nature. Birds, fishes, in the mines.}[16]

[III.612]

Townships

[1. Morland]

Church
Morland, where the church standeth, being a fair large building in the manner of a † with 2 rows of pillars, 3 in a row, & tower steple with a \ leaden / spire or broach upon it,[17] and in good repare. No armes nor monuments in it, but a label of brass on the tomb stone of Vicar Blithe,[18] with this Inscription [blank].
There are herein besides, the vicaridge house, in whose window is the Armes of Vicar Burton quartering [blank][19]

[IV.494A]

{ad Morland. Reg. de Wed.}[20]
{Fol. 23a.} Walter Bishop of Carlile was at variance with Abbat & Convent of Yorke; as I take it, about the moncks of Wederhal not expending the profits of Morland Church within the diocess: whereupon he excommunicatd som of the moncks: But on Munday next after the feast of St Agatha,[21] it was composed in Alverton church by delegates appointed in formation as followeth: Sc. That all the goods of the Church of Morland & other churches of the house of Wederhal granted to their use within the Diocess of Karliol should be expended in the house of Wederhal, & should not be by their authority transferred from thence to any other persons or places but should goe to the use of the monks that were perpetual resident there. Saveing to the said Abbat & Convent out of the said Churches their ancient & accustomed pensions. And they were farther to promiss and grant to the said Bishop. That when the House of Wederhal should chance to be destitute of a Prior, the said Abbat & Convent would present to the said Bishop & to his successors a monck fitly qualified to preside over the House of Wederhal, who shal doe Canonical Obedience to them, & receive the Cure of Soules

[13] MS: 'been.'
[14] Presumably, Julian Bower. There is a field near Morland called Julian Flatts: see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[15] This margin comment is: (a) partly perished, and (b) partly obscured by the binding.
[16] Several words here are obscured by the binding.
[17] Broach: a church spire, see W. Papworth, *Gwilt's Encyclopaedia of Architecture* (1867), iii. 959: 'The most frequent spire is that called a broach when it does not rise from within parapets, but is carried up on four of its sides from the top of the square tower. *OED*.
[18] John Blyth, vicar of Morland, died in 1563. CCED.
[19] Presumably this is Pearse Burton, who entered Queen's College, Oxford, 'serviens' in 1650. CCED. According to Nightingale, he was instituted to Morland in 1654 and died in 1667/8, 'much lamented' after serving 13 years in the parish. Nightingale comments that he was probably the son of Richard Burton, rector of Dufton; he was baptised in Dufton in 1632. Pearse Burton remained in place during the Interregnum and after the Restoration: Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1181-4.
[20] 'Information about Morland taken from the Register of Wetheral Priory.'
[21] The Feast of St Agatha is on 15 February.

from their hands: And shall never be removed in their whole life from the administration of the said house, without a just & reasonable cause, to be shewen to the Bishop sine strepitu judiciali.[22]

[IV.494B]

And on the Other Hand, it was agreed that those moncks whom the Bishope said he had excommunicated should goe privately to him & beg the benefit of Absolution; & that he should restore to the Prior of Wederall his sequestration which he had caus'd to be made upon Morland Church without contradiction or delay. And induct him into the corporal possession of the said church.

{Robert Bishop of Karliol}
This Robert (successor to the said Walter in the Sea of Karliol […], haveing seen & considered, confirmed the said agreement.[23]

[IV.495]

[Capella de With]
Collocatio[24] Capel Sancte Marie in Lewyth […] parochia de Morland A.D. 1405
[Register of Wetheral Priory] folio 146B.[25] {It seemeth to have bin an hermitage.}
About 19 years {1424} after [this collocatio], a difference arose between the Prior of Wetheral to whom the fruits of the parish church of Morland did of old appertane, saveing a Portion for the vicar, et Dominus Johannem Richemont, perpetual vicar of the said church {vicar de Morland not de Richmond!}

[IV.496]

concerneing the receiveing & takeing of oblations in the chapel of Wythe, in honour of the Blessed Virgin Mary, erected & builded within the bound & limits of the said church of Morland. & concerneing the title right & possession of ½ an acre of land lying upon Litel Aynesbergh & butting upon the Common Banke within the territory of the said vill which had long bin disputed & controverted but was then composed by the mediation of William by divine permission Abbat of St Maryes at Yorke, to whose decree (in alto et Busso: from top to bottom} they were bound to submit. Who ordered \ after examon[ation] of many witness, & sight of evidences / that:
The Prior of Wederhall, should have \ & enjoy all / the oblations & halfe acre of land peacably & quietly without any disturbance from the said vicar; saveing always to the said vicar \ that if the said Abbat / could finde any real composition in the Archives of his Monastery, which he faithfully promised to search & seeke after when he could be at leisure, by which it might appear that the oblations offered in the said chaple did belong unto him, the said vicar of Morland, that he would deliver him a true copy of it, & then it should be lawfull for him to receive the said offerings as is promised, & use them according to his own discretion, notwithstanding the foresaid Agreement. And that if any difference should arise for the future betwixt the said partyes, they should refer it to 2 Learned Lawyers (i[ll]os viros in jure egregie et profunde instructos),[26] who, if they could not make an Agreement, the said Prior & Vicar should stand to the order of the said Abbat without any farther process at law. To which the said Prior & Vicar consented, et fide sua media concordarunt: &c. – Data et acta fuit h[ac] in Ecclesia parochiali de Moreland predicta anno ab Incarnatione Domini secundum cursu[m] et computationem Eccl[esi]æ Anglicanæ M0CCCC0 vicessimo quarto, mart[i]ria p[ro]p[ri]æ vc vij0 mensis Julij die xva. Presentibus inter alios William de Crakanthorp Senescallo Prioratus nostri de Wederhal, et alijs.[27]

[22] 'Without any legal formality.'
[23] For this agreement, see MS.IV.494B.
[24] 'Collocatio': putting together; setting up; placing.
[25] See the Latin text of this Collocatio deed on MS.IV.495.
[26] '2 Learned Lawyers (those men who are exceptionally and profoundly learned in law)…'
[27] 'To which the said Prior & Vicar consented, and made an agreement with a sworn oath etc. It was given and enacted in this parish Church of Moreland aforesaid, in the fourteen hundredth and twenty-fourth year from the Lord's Incarnation, according to the reckoning and calculation of the Anglican Church, the five hundred and seventh from the martyr-foundation of their own, on the fifteenth day of the month of July. Present among others William of Crakanthorp, Steward of our Priory of Wederhal, and others.'

[III.612]

[Gentlemen's houses]
[1.] The Broad Fauld belonging to the Backhouses, being tenement held of the Dean & Chapter & 13^{li} per annum freehold called The Wood Wooding & the Ashes: long enjoyed by that name.
[2.] The Low Hall, alias Powdonat, an hansom little house belonging formerly (as they say) to the Musgraves, who are said to have \ had / a 3^{d} of the Lordship, & the Deane & Chapter the other 2; But did belong in the memory of man to one Henry Backouse, who had isue, ~~John~~ George, who sold it to one Mr ~~James~~ Farer who[se] wife was maryed to one Charles Kiplin; which Charles sold it to one Mr Adamson, and he to John Routlege, and he sold it to Mr William Atkinson, who now injoyes it freehold.
[3.] Other freeholde
Robert Backhouse 8^{li} per annum; William Lambert of Kemplees 11^{li}; Henry Licot of Yeatelands; Thomas Robinson of Akey-Yeat; & R. Jackson of Morland. And other small freehold under value.

[I.613]

[Backhouse Family]
There is a Family of Backhouses taken to be very Ancient. The Armes belonging to this name – of which there be severall yet in the south of England – are [see illustration below]. And the Crest an Eagle volant Or, desplayd \ vert / with a serpen wave proper Inflexing its head and tayle towards the Eagle.



Figure 1.17.1. Backhouse Arms. I.613.

[I.611B-I.612][28]

Ex Inquisitione post mortem Lanceloti Backouse capt[a] apud \ Temple / Sowerby 4^{0} May 35^{0} Elizabeth Coram Johanne Scenas Armig[ero] Escheat dicte Reginæ.

Medietas manerij Morland cum pertin[entijs] ac etiam Bosc[us] et sub-Bosc[us] Com[itatus] vocat[us] Morland wood continent[es] per estimac[i]o[n]em Quinqueginta acras Terræ plus minus tent[ae] per Lancelotum Backhouse gener[osus] per feofamentu[m] Joh[ann]is Sowthaick Armigeri: Ac etiam {Joh[ann]is Sowthait} una pasture vocata wood house end-close Cont[inens] i ac[ram] terræ: una parcella Prati Juxta dict[am] Clausura[m] una Acrea Arabilis et Prati vocat[a] Stanelands de Quibus obijt Seisitus in Man[nerio] de Morland et de Brampton; Ac etiam de 3a parte unius messuagij et obijt seisitus unius Cottagij in Dufton. quarum Brampton et Dufton habuit per Chartam Indentatam Bigetae Bachouse viduæ dat[am] 20 Feb: 3^{0} et 4^{0} Phill[ipi] et Mariæ factam Edwardo Birkbeck de Hornby Generoso et Joh[ann]i Back house Clerico. Heredibus et Assignatis suis ad usum Dictæ Briget[ae] pro Termino vitæ. Post ad uso usum – Henrici Backhouse et post Hæred[ibus] masc[uline], ad usum Gilberti Bac[khouse] alter[ius] fill[ij] et Heredibus masc[[uline], pro def[ectu] ad usum Anthon[ij] Bac[khouse] alter[ius] fill[ij] et Hered[ibus] masc[[uline] Rectorum haeredum Dict[ae] Brig[etae] pro Defect[u] Ad usum Rectorum hæredum Dict[ae] Brig[etae] Jurati dicunt Quod
Predict[a] medietas man[erij] de Morland et cætera premissa in Morland præfatus Lancelotus Bac[khouse] tenuit tempore mortis suæ de Dom[ina] Regina in Capite. Viz per servici[a] vicessimæ partis unius feodi Militis et valet per An[num] in omnibus exitibus ultra Reprisas 22s.
{Man[erium] Morland Tent[um] de Rege per servic[ium] Mil[itare]] 20 pars feodi Militis}
{Man[erium] Brampton Tent[um] de man[erio] de Dufton}

[28] Page measuring 23cm x 27cm, consisting of one sheet glued onto pages on either side of the gutter. The top right of the sheet holds a reference code in another hand.

P[re]dict[am] 3 part[em] manerij de Brampton et caetera p[re]missa cum suis pertinentijs in Dufton praefatus Lancelotus Bac[khouse] tenuit de Dom[ina] Regina ut de man[erio] su[o] de Dufton per fidelitatem sectae curiae, et Reddend[o] Inde Ann[ua]t[i]m ad Festum Sancti Andreae Apost[olici] 1/3 Libri de piperis 1/3 duorum denariorum pro tertia parte libri de cumino; et 1/3 duorum solid[orum] pro omnibus servicijs etc. et valet in omnibus 3li-10s-0d ^{d}.[29]
{De sus Lanc. Backhouse obijt seistus 29. Septem. 34. Eliz. [1592]: et Robertus B. Frater et hæres ætatis 21. Annorum et 40. dierum.}[30]

Ambrosius Lancaster de Brampton Armiger =
_____|
|
Brigeta Lancaster Nupta3^{0} et 4^{0} Phili et Mariæ [1556-57] = Robert of Backhouse defunct superstes,

Henricus Backhous. Gilbertus B. Antho. Backhouse.
Filius et haer.[31]
|
Lancelotus Bachouse de[32] Robertus Bac.[33]
Man' de Morland et 3^{a} parte
man' de Brampton

[I.612][34]

[**2. Sleagill**]

I take Slegill to be an hamlett of Newby in the parish of Morland. It belonged to the Blenkinsopes of Helbeck till sold of by Mr Thomas Blenkinsop about the yere [blank] to [blank]. They had 16 tenements in this hamlett, which payd finable rent 5^{li} 12^{s} 2^{d}.
I finde Slegil anciently an Hamlet of the vilage of Newby; yett it was a Lordship & here was a manner house which was the Seat many yeres agoe of the Family of the Slegills. For I finde Adam son of Robert de Slegill [conveyed] certane Lands in Dominico Suo in Territorio de Slegil:[35] to William Prodome of Newby for the service he had don him, to him & his heirs forever.

[29] [Lancelot Backhouse died owning] 'half of the manor of Morland with its appurtenances and also the wood and underwood called Morland Wood containing by estimation 50 acres of land be it more or less, held by Lancelot Backhouse, Gent. by the freehold conveyance of John Southaite Esq. and also one pasture called Woodend Close containing one acre of land, one parcel of meadow next to the said close, one acre of arable and meadow called Stanelands: of all of which he died possessed in the Manor of Morland and of Brampton. And also a third part of one house and one cottage in Dufton, which estate in Brampton and Dufton he held by deed of indenture by Bridget Backhouse, widow, dated 2 February 3 and 4 Philip and Mary (1556-1557) to Edmund Birkbeck of Hornby, Gent. And the Rev. John Backhouse, their heirs and assigns, to the use of the said Bridget for her lifetime, and after that to the use of Henry Backhouse and his male heirs, to the use of Gilbert Backhouse his second son and his male heirs, to the use of Anthony Backhouse his other son and his male heirs, and failing these to the use of the right heirs of the said Bridget. The jurors say that she said half of the Manor of Morland was held by the said Lancelot Backhouse at the time of his death, from our lady the Queen as tenant in chief by service of one-twentieth of a knight's fee, and its annual net value is 22s 0d. The said one third of the Manor of Brampton and the other premises with their appurtenances in Dufton were held by the said Lancelot Backhouse from our lady the Queen as of her Manor of Dufton by fealty of suit of court, and by rent of one third of a pound of cumin, and one third of 2s 0d for all services, payable on the Feast-Day of St Andrew the Apostle [30 Nov.] yearly; and is worth in total £3 10s 0d.'
[30] 'The said Lancelot Backhouse died possessed, 29 September 34. Elizabeth [1592], and Robert Backhouse his brother and heir, was then of the age of 21years and 40days.'
[31] 'Son and heir.'
[32] An interlineated Latin sentence here is illegible.
[33] 'Ambrose Lancaster of Brampton Esq. married Bridget. She was widowed in 1556-1557 and later married Robert Backhouse and had children: Henry, Gilbert and Anthony. Henry's children were Lancelot of Morland and Brampton, and Robert.'
[34] Also numbered p.26.
[35] '…in his demesne in the territories of Sleagill.'

[I.614][36]

[Families: Notes]
Slegill Robertus had isue Adam; and [Adam] by Xtian had John: 4. Edward 3. [1330-31].
Prodome: Will Prodome de Sclegill h[ad] issue: Will & Adam. Will son of Will, 1320.
John Prodom & Johan his wife.
Windesor. Will de Wyndesore de Morland. & I read of one of that Sirname Thomas de Morland who held Land \ as Tennant /of Gilbert de Sclegill.

[Slegill Family][37]
Sclegil. Robert de Sclegill had Isue, Adam, who marryed Xtian \ 13. Edward 1. [1284-85] / an[d] had Isue John, 4. Edward 3. [1330-31]. ~~Adam 15. Edward 3.~~ 12. \ Gilbert, Senesc[hal] Westm'land.[38] / Adam de Sclegill, 45. Edward 3. [1371-72].

[III.612]

Robert de Slegil had isue Adam [who] m. Christiana.\ s.d. / Will. de Wyndesore \ junior / a witness.
Gi[l]bert de Slegill gave to Adam the son of Robert de Slegille ~~gave~~ 2 oxgangs \ & 3 acres / of Land in the Lordship of Slegill by a deed s.d., paying to him & his heires 9[d] att the faere of St Lawrence of Apleby and doeing foreigne ser[vice], so much as belongs to so much. Witness: Sir Thomas de Lowther, Willielmo de Goldrington, Alano de Berwise, John de Barnes,[39] Stephano de Neuby.
Adam the son of Robert de Slegill granted to John de ~~Staffelld~~ Staffolld & also his wife and their heires his manner of Sclegill with all apurtenances ut in moris et marisiis &c. in wardis relevijs et eschettis et cum servicio 2[d] et una sagitta Barbellata a Roberto le spencer pro terra sua in Slegil et cum servicio unius Bacine Zinzibris; annu[u]s Reditus a Willielmo Prodhom. Testibus Robert le Engleys, John de Rossegill Richardo de Musegra militibus.[40]
These Slegils had in their seale a grahund takeing an Hare.
John de Slegil 19. Edward 2. [1325-26], gave some medow and waste in Slegil Field to Robert de Botiler & Alice his wife (f[orsan] his sister).

[IV.523]

{Fol. 111; Cart. 238 Regis. Wed.}
Mary the relict of Gilbert de Sclegil in his power & lawfull viduity granted, remised & forever quitted clame to God & St Mary & the Abbat of St Mary York & monks serveing God in the said Abby, all her right to clame which she had in mess[u]age with the appurtenances in Sclegile which Gilbert de Sclegile gave them &c. Hijs Testibus – Domini Michael de {Harrcle; Domino Tho. De Derwentwatrerl Domino Will. de Stirkeland militibus; Roberto de Warthwick, Walter de Windeson, Willo filio ejus, adam de Haverrington, Stephano ad Porta et alijs.

[I.614]

[Prodome de Sclegill]
Will. Prodome de Sclegill.
Will (& Adam) son of Will. 1320.
John m. Johanna 9. Edward 2. [1315-1316].[41]
Will Prodhom \ Preudhom / 4. Edward 3. [1330-1331].
Richard Prodhom 43. Edward 3. [1369-70] convey Slegill L[a]nds[42] to John de Kirkbythore.
John Purdhome a witness 36 Edward 3 [1362-63].

The Prodoms had in Slegil 2 messuages, 4 Oxgangs ~~of Land~~ sexaginta et octadecem Acr[as] Terrae, 24 Acras prati: 3 acras Bosci In Slegill Hamletto de Neuby[43] and some Acres more, as appear by a

[36] Also numbered p.27.
[37] See also MS.IV.523.
[38] Gilbert, Steward of Westmorland.
[39] Or possibly, 'Barwes'.
[40] 'In moor and marsh &c. In wards, reliefs and escheats, and by service of two pence and one barbed arrow by Robert le Spencer for his land in Sleagill, and by service of one basin of ginger as annual rent from William Prodhom; witness Robert le Engleys, John de Rossegill, Richard de Musgrave, Knights.'
[41] 9. Edward II. might be incorrectly transcribed; the regnal year is blotted.
[42] Or possibly 'Lordship'.
[43] '60 and 18 acres of arable land, 24 acres of meadow, 3 acres of woodland in Sleagill, a hamlet of Newby.'

lease for life of John and Johan Prodom of the said Lands to William Prodom 9. Edward 2. [1315-16], which Lands Will. Prodom gave Mr John Prodom & Johane, 9. Edward 2.
Richard Prodham, 43. Edward 3. [1369-70], passed his Lands to John de Kir\k/bythore. Adam de Slegil gave possession as attorn[e]y.
Will de Newby s.d.

Barwys de Slegill
1. Alane son of Alane de Barwis s.d.
2. John
3. Hugo de Barwys son of John. 28. Edward 3. [1354-55]; he maryed Margaret: John Tom. Rob.
4. John son of Hugo [blank] 36. Edward 3. [1362-63].
(Margaret Barwise of Fishburn 7. Henry 6.) [1428-29] .
5. Richard m. Margaret d[aughter of] John de Kirkbythore 3. Henry 5. [1415-16].
Richard B. 21. Richard 2. [1397-98]
10. Edward 4. [1470-71] the Blenkinsop[s] had Title.

Alan de Berwis gave to Alen his son & his heirs of his lawfully espoused wife all his Lands with the Apurtenances and free services which he had in Slegil; paying to him & his heires a penny silver per Annum rent & doeing forrane service tantum quaestum.[44] [Witness] T. Thomas de Musgrave tunc vice com. Westmorland.[45]
Anno 5. Edward 1. se Apleby. Hugo de Berwys, 36. Edward 3. of Slegill. Hugh the son of John de Berwis, 28. Edward 3. de Slegil.[46]

[I.615]

[3. Meburne Lordship]

There are Towne which bear the name of Meaberne. I read of one Rowland Thornburrough de Meubône Esq., which I take to Meaborne, but whether \ Kings or / Mauds which in Morland parish I cannot tell. I thinke was in the time of King Richard the 2nd but am not certaine.

[I.613]

There are diverse places of this name: 2 in Westmorland. Kings Meburne, which I take this to be R[egi]s.) and Mauds Meburne, which is in Crosby Ravensworth parish. And I fear that Milburne is sometimes so ~~called~~ writt, which bredeth some confusion. It is Meburne Regis.

{8. Edward 2. [1314-15]} Est Ibidem unum Messuagem Capitale &c.[47]

There is one manner house which is worth per Annum	0: 2: 0
C \xx/iiij Acres of Land,[48] qu\el Ac., valet per Annum 4d et suma est	3: 1: 4
x acres of [blank] the Herbage of which is per Annum	0: 1: 0
xxij Acres of medow, quelib. valet per Annum 14d et summa est	1: 5: 8
2 Free Tenements, which pay per Annum	0: 8: 0
44 Oxgangs of Land, each worth 5s per Annum, & summa est	11: 0: 0
42 messuages coterell,[49] worth per Annum 1s apiece, summa est	0:16: 0

[44] 'As needed.'
[45] 'Witness, Thomas de Musgrave then Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[46] 'In the 5th year of King Edward I [1276-77] see Appleby. See also Hugh de Berwys 36. Edward III. [1362-63] of Sleagill, Hugh the son of John de Berwys 28. Edward III. [1354-55] of Sleagill.'
[47] Capital messuage: see the English Glossary.
[48] 180, i.e. 100 and 4-score acres: see L. C. Hector, *The Handwriting of English Documents* (London, 1958), 40.
[49] 'The houses of cottagers.'

Note. Here is a mistake, for either there are but 32 messuages
at 6^{d} per messuage which was the usuall rate at these Times
or else the sum should be 42 shillings.
1 water mil, worth per Annum 3^{li} 6^{s}: 19. Edward 3. [1345-36].
Allso pleas and perquisites of Court, worth there 0: 5: 8

Summa 22^{li} 13^{s} 0

Dub. An de toto vel demadio?[50]
vid in Ap[pleby] anno 8. Ed. 2. [1314-15].
N[ote.] The mill must be the rest.

{1. Edward 3.}
The \ herbage of / Manner house att Meburne was extended as appeares by Inquisition, 1. Edward 3. [1327-28] att 3 shillings; but 217 Acres of demane Land by reason of the destruction which the Scotts had made – layd waste & untilled for want of Tenents – and was not worth anything save only in Herbage.[51]

[I.613]

[4. Manner de Newby][52]

There were of the sirname of Newby remaining in the time of King James,[53] of whome I finde mention amongst the writeing of the Sledalls, penes Lancelotam \ ~~Machell~~ / de Crakanthorp &c. Armigerum.[54] ([Also] Alexander de Newby with Sir Thomas de Helbeck and Thomas de Musegrave Vicecom West' testes s.d. Sed per Thomas Musg. Vicecom. Anno 36. Henry 3. [1251-52].)[55]
See an Account of Newby & Nevinsons in the beginning of this booke.[56]

[I.155]

{1. Nomen Unde?}[57]
Newby \ is a Saxon word & / may be rendered ~~in Latin~~: Novus Locus,[58] for the name implyeth no more than a new place: How be it in all antient evidences that I have mett with it, is still writt Newby notwithstanding that they were in Latin \ take in the 7.8 head here: here is nothing rem[embered] &c. /

{2. Appurtenentia}[59]
It conteines in it, besides the village it gives name to, the Lordship & [blank] and has anciently belonged \ if I may so conjecture / to a family of that name; for there were of the Newbies till of late yeres differsed in this country \ viz. in the reign of King James the 1st / {of whome is mention in Sleddals writeing, penes Lancelotus Mautcel de Crakenthorp, Armiger, but there being many places of that name, I dar not affirm their ~~pr~~ relation to this place more than another} who are \ always / writt in Latin ~~writeing~~, de Newby, & therefore \ seem to / ~~must needs~~ take their sirname \ of Newby / from hence, as many other familyes have don from the place of their residence. \ Yet there are places so calld, that might give name to such & such family. /

3. Incoli Antiqui cum Insignijs[60]
Howbeit in after times it was conveyed from family to family ~~for~~, and in 23. of Henry 8. I finde it belonged to one George Vernon of Nether Hadden in Derbyshire Esq., of whome Richard Nevinson

[50] 'Dubious. Is this the whole or the half [of the total]?'
[51] Herbage: grazing.
[52] This title has been removed from MS.I.155.
[53] James I. 1603-1625.
[54] 'In the possession of Lancelot de Crackenthorpe Esq.'
[55] 'Witness in an undated deed with Sir Thomas de Hellebeck and Thomas de Musgrave, Sheriff of Westmorland. But see Thomas Musgrave Sheriff, 26. Henry III.'
[56] For deeds relating to Newby, see MS.IV.503-07.
[57] 'Name whence?'
[58] 'New place.'
[59] 'Things belonging.'
[60] 'Inhabitants from an earlier age with their emblems.'

of Kemplees, yeoman, farmed one messuage in Nuby of the Stones, together with a wood called Neuby-Wood, & a parcel of ground called Forty Penny Farmold; which were afterwards taken out of his hands & lett in farm to Robert Cliburn & Isabel his wife, anno 32. of Henry 8. [1540-41] for 20 yeres, by the said George (who sealed with a bores head errased.)[61]
{And the name of Vernon is not a stranger to this country, for in the 15. of Edward 1. one Isabell Vernon, who quartered Hartley, & I thinke Skelton, & whose armes were frette with a canton in the textual point) was a sharer in Henry Harclays lands, Sc. Crakenthorp writings.}

{4. Incoli moderni cum Insig. et genealogia.}[62]
And about that time, one Thomas Andlay writt \ a letter / to my Lord of Cumberland[63] on the behalf of \ the said / Richard Nevinson, desireing him that through his means \ & assistance / the poor man might be secured from the perill & danger of Edmund Cliburne, his friends and adhere[n]ts. But in the 4. and 5. of Philip and Mary [1557-58], I finde Richard Nevinson of Newby Stones, yeoman, \ which was the same man possessed

[Machell's Notes: I.155]
N.B. This [page] must be corrected (because not exact) according to Method.

[I.156]
of \ a certaine / lands \ & / tenements rents & services in Newby \ Stones / which he intaled on Richard his \ 1. / son & his heires male, or for defect on Stephen \ his 2. / and his heires male, & for defect of heires male of Stephen, upon the […][64] heires of the foresaid Richard Thomas Sandford de \ of / Askome, & Thomas Blenkinsop de \ of / Helbeck Esqs, being feofees in trust for execution thereof. \ ~~there is nothing &c.~~ / From this Richard N. is desended Mr John Nevinson of Newby \ aforesaid / now liveing, as will ~~more planely~~ appear from the following Pedigree;[65] and the armes they preten to are Argent a cheveron charged with a mullet of 5 between 3 eaglett displays […][66] Azure. In Dugdal visit[ation]. Sed non prob.[67]

[I.614]
[Further evidence concerning the Nevinson Family]
3. Henry 8. [1511-12]. Richard Nevinson of Kemplees yeoman, in contest with Rowland Rigg. He farmed a messuage in Nuby in the Stones in the County of Westm'land, of George Vernon of Nether Haddon in Derbyshire Esq., together with a wood called Newby Wood and a parcel of ground caled the Forty Penny Farmald, which were ~~lett by~~ taken out of his hands and left to Rob. Cliburne & Isabell his wife Anno 32. Henry 8. [1540-41] for 28 yeres by the said George Vernon Esq., who sealed with a Bores head errased.

And I finde one Thomas Audelay write to my Lord of Cumberland in behalfe of Sir Richard Nevinson whome he compasionatly termd a pore man more than once: and desired that through his means he may be freed from the dang[er] of one Edmund Laburne, his friends and Adherents.
But in the 4. & 5. of Philip & Mary [1557-58] I finde Richard Nevinson of Newby Stones, yeoman, possessed of Lands Tenements Rents & Services in Newby, which he Intales upon Richard his son & his Heires male. Or for defect on Stephen his son & his heires male. Or for the defect upon R.T. Sandforde de Ascome & Richard de Hellebeck, feofes in trust. He had a daughter called Marion married to Rowland Robinson of Newby.

[Machell's Notes: I.612]
{N!} I wonder that I meet not with Newby amongst the manners in Cliffords evidences.

---

[61] MS: 'which were \ afterwards ~~his han~~ / taken out of his hands & lett \ in farm ~~hld~~ / to Robert Cliburn & Isabel, his wife, anno 32. of Henry 8. for ~~the terme~~ of 20 yeres, by the said George ~~Vernot Esq.~~ (who sealed ~~his grant~~ with a bore's head errased).'
[62] 'Modern inhabitants with their emblems and descent.'
[63] Henry Clifford, second earl of Cumberland, 1517-1570.
[64] Unclear word.
[65] See below.
[66] The last word of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[67] 'But not probable.' See another version of this information below, I.614.

[I.156]

Nevinson de Nuby

5. Insignia in col. modem			Richard Nevinson of Kemplees: 23. Henry 8. obijt circa 4. & 5. Philip & Marie		The crest a leopard passa[n]t	
	2. Stephen, to whom the estate of Nuby was to descend for defect of isue male of Richard, his brother		1. Richard Nevinson of Newby, eldest son and heire to Richard		Marian, maryed to Rowland Robinson of Newby in 3. & 4. of Phil. and Mary	
6. Genealogia incol. modern ?	2. Jane maryed to Richard Bowerbanke of [blank]		1. Richard Nevinson de Newby ~~qui novum edificium struxit: vocat Newby Hall~~	{Mayplate daughter of one of the prebends of Carlil. Another to Kirkbride}	N.B. 2. First generations proa[v]ed out of evidences in the custody of Mr Frances Blenkinsop sup[er] of Brough. The other by information of the present aige.	
8. Locus Capitalis[68] that milia tria distat ab Ecclesia1 mille et amplius[69]	2. Stephen never maryed: was sirna[m]ed 'The Long' for his taleness of stature		Edward Nevinson de Newby, justitiarius pacis qui Nuby in dedificium struxit circa 1645[70]	= Susan, daughter of Sir Christopher Dalston of Acorn Banke	3. Ann, maryed to Thomas, 2nd sonn of Sir Christopher Dalston de Acorn, & had isue	
	3. Richard, Mercator apud Kendal[71]	2. Ann, maryed to Mr Hugh Machel of Crak. Hall eldest son of L.M. Esq.	1. John Nevinson de Newby generosus[72]	= maryed Elizabeth Garth of Heedbur'	4. Edward, an apprentice to a vintner at London	5. Margaret, maryed to Walton, tanner in Pen[rith]

7. Loci et res notatu digniores in manerio[73] The manner house, as aperes, fore one built by R.N., 1645, 2 miles ab ecclesia. There is nothing that I know of remarkable in this Lordship but that it lyes all upon a slape limestone,[74] especially in the street of Newby, whence it is called Newby Stones, and coales that not of the best sort are gott.

[68] 'Main seat that is three miles and more distant from the church.'
[69] 'Distant from the church 1 mile and more.'
[70] 'Edward Nevinson de Newby, justice of the peace, who built a hall at Nuby, circa 1645.'
[71] 'Merchant at Kendal.'
[72] 'Gentleman.'
[73] 'Places and points noteworthy in the manor.'
[74] 'Slape' can mean slippery or smooth. *OED*.

IV.509]

[5. Strickland]

Strickland Chapel

Strickland Chappel was a chantery founded by Sir Walter de Stirkeland, salva jure jurando matricis ecclesie de Morland indemnitate,[75] about the time of King Richard 1. For Sir William de Stirkeland great-grandchilde of the foresaid Sir Walter, confirmed the gift of his great grandfather Deo et Sancta Marie et Abbi Sancta Marie, Ebor'[76] & to the monks of Wederhal & St Beeys of Coupland – anno 1292, Sc. 2 of Ed. 1. And I will transcribe the original charter for the excellency of it, because it shews what dependence all chappels have, or should have, on their mother churches.[77]

[Machell's Notes: IV.509]

Qu. Whether it be the same with that which is lately repared & indowed by Mr Fletcher, 'twixt Little Strickland & Thrimby.[78]

{No. It seemeth to be in Magna Stirkeland per cartam Willielmi infra & to be serted in Curia de Styrkel ut infra in 2^0 carta; i.e. in the courtyard or fold.}

[III.263A]

[Melkinthorpe Hall, the Manor House of Great Strickland]

Ad Morland Parish March 18 1688/9

Armes in Melkinthorp Hall, being the manner house of Great Strickland.



Figure 1.17.2. Arms at Melkinthorpe Hall. III.263A.

In the Nursery painted 1. Azure. 2 Argent. 3 Argent. 4 as the 1.
The first is in the nursery painted on the wall, and is the Armes of Musgrave Quartering Ward & Stapleton.
2. In the closset of the said nursery, being a rude essay by the same hand, of the Fallowfields Armes and to each of these are 2 rabbets for the supporters.
3. Upon a wooden chimney piece in the Parlour, being the Armes of Dalston of Ackorn Banke impaleing Fallowfield by reason of a match with that family. Note, there ar 2 crists, the 1. a daws head ariseing through a crownet from of a wreath; 2. a boares head couped.

[75] 'Saving the rights of the mother-church of Morland by indemnity.'
[76] 'To God and St Mary and the Abbey of St Mary at York.'
[77] See 'Charters in the Register of Wetheral Priory relating to Walter Strickland', below, IV.509.
[78] Thomas Fletcher, a lawyer, was responsible for the restoration of the chapel. The commemorative stone is dated 1695 but the restoration seems to have taken place in 1681. See 'Strickland, Little', in *An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in Westmorland* (London, 1936), 221-22.

[Machell's Notes: III.263B]

{Melkinthorpe Hall commonly calld: but properly Great Strickland Hall.}

{Query for an account of rare herbes in Westmorland from Mr Dalston, & my booke of *Cristianography* by Paget,[79] which he had from Mr Fletcher.}[80]

[I.615]

[Strickland Families]

Walter de Strickland. West' 11. Henry 3. [1226-27]. Se more in the Barony de Kendal.[81]

Richard Crackanthorp.

{Strickland} Parvy[82] gave life as I have bin informd to that famous & learned & Ingenious writer Dr Richard Crakanthorp who writ [blank] &c.[83]

[I.265]

[Crackenthorpe of Little Strickland Pedigree.] March 6 1688/9 by Grace Watson[84]

? 1. Richard Crakenthorp of Newbiging Esq.	2. Christopher Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, gentleman. Tooke to wife =	[Blank] the daughter of [blank] Salkeld of Rosgil Esq. & had issue					
2. Thomas obijt sine prole	Richard Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, gentleman, who marryed =	Elizabeth, daughter of [blank] Farer of Crosby Ravenwath, by whom he had	Ann = wife of Will Vary of Shap		Barbara maryed to [blank] Petty of Kaber		
	Christopher Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, Gentleman, who tooke to wife =	Jane, daughter of Andrew Hudleston of Hutton John Esq. & had isue	Ann, maryed to John Wharton of Kirkby -thor Esq.	Grace = John Watson of Deepa bridge near Kendal	Barbara = to [1.] Winter of Morland; [2.] idem to [Blank] Hudson	Mary maryed to one Adam Thwait of Russen-dale.	
Andrew Crakenthorpe	1. Richard Crakenthorp of Little Strickland, Gentleman, who maryed	[Blank]					

[I.615]

{Fallowfield of Strickland}

Fallowfields lived sometime at Strickland juxt Melkinthorpe, who tooke their names from Fallowfield ~~in~~ town so called in Northumberland \ not far from Hexham / on this side the Picts Wall near upon the midle thereof. They had bin \ sometime / majors of Appleby, as is usuall with the gentry of best repute in this Country. & their Armes were upon one of the pillers in the Butterhouse att Appleby, with the

[79] Ephraim Pagit, (c.1575-April 1647*) Christianographie, or, a Description of the Sundrie Sorts of Christians in the World* (1635).

[80] Thomas Fletcher, lawyer, of Little Strickland. See Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.678.

[81] See Stricklands of Sizergh etc. in Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, from II.163.

[82] Little Strickland.

[83] Richard Crakanthorpe (bap.1568, d.1624), Church of England clergyman and logician, was born at Little Strickland and baptised at Morland, the second son of John Crakanthorpe and Mabel Cowper. According to Anthony Wood, he was admitted aged sixteen to Queen's College, Oxford, as a 'poor serving child, then a tabardar', in 1583 (Wood, *Ath. Oxon*., 2.361). At Queen's he came under the influence of the puritan John Reynolds, whom he described as 'a walking library of all learning and all knowledge' (*Defensio ecclesia Anglicanae*, 494). He proceeded B.Th. in 1597 and fellow in 1598. Anthony Wood remarked that Crakanthorpe, 'being a noted preacher, and a profound disputant in divinity … was admired by all great men, and held in veneration, especially by the puritanical party, he being himself a zealot among them.' (Wood, *Ath. Oxon*., 2.361). Such was his reputation for preaching that in 1600 he was selected to convert Catholic prisoners in York Castle. Renowned as a teacher, he was unusual in leaving traces of his teaching methods (Queen's College, Oxford, library, MS.196). See A. Cambers, 'Crakanthorpe, Richard'. *ODNB*.

[84] Grace Watson nee Crackenthorp, who married John Watson of Deepa bridge, Kendal. See pedigree, I.265.

late addition of a Bores head in a Canton? The last of this Family was Lucy the daughter of Richard Fallowfield Esq.; who was maryed to John Dalston of Acornebanke Esq. to whose fortunes she brought (all things considered) an accession of 6 or 7000 pounds, & was mother of one or two and twenty children by him, but most of them dyed. Both she and her husband are now living, 1675. And Christopher their eldest son maryed to Mary the sister of Sir George Fletcher & has Isue by her.

[IV.509]

[Charters in the Register of Wetheral Priory relating to Walter Strickland]

{Carta 213 Folio 100}[85]

Omnibus Xti fidelibus ad quorum noticiam presens scriptum. Walterus de Styrkeland miles eternam in D[omi]no Salutem.

Noveritis me promisisse pro me et heredibus meis indem\p/nitatem matricis eccle[siæ] de Moreland in Omnibus, pro Cantaria habenda in Capella mea qua[m] habeo in Curia mea de Stirkelaund, qua[m] cantaria[m] tam R Abbas et conventus S[an]c[t]e Marie Ebor[aci] Patroni ejusdem Ecclesiæ, quam Michael tunc temporis Vicarius ejusdem – mihi concesserunt. Ita quod Capellanus meus, quicumq[ue] pro tempore deserviet illi capellae, jurabit fidelitatem et obedientia[m] vicario matricis Ecclesiæ de Morelaund & Rectoribus ejusdem Eccle[siæ] qui pro tempore fuerint, et illis præsentabitur, et per eos in capella serviet. Ita tamen q[uo]d ego et heredes mei tam capellae, quam capellanis, in omnibus competenter providemus.

Iurabit autem Capellanus meus, in Capella mea ministrans, quod nullum p[ar]ochianorum de Morlaund, nec aliquem extraneum, recipiet ad confessionem, vel ad alia divina officia, vel sacramenta, in prejudicium Matricis Ecclesiæ de Morlaund, et Rectorum ejusdem q[ui]que tempore fuerint.

[IV.510]

Et quod Omnis Oblationis obventiones qualescumque fuerint, et undecumq[ue] provenierint, fideliter et integre sine aliqua detentione Matrici Eccle[siæ] persolvet, et fidelis tam matrici Eccle[siæ] p[ræ]dictae quam Rectoribus ejusdem in Omnibus existet.

Preterea, ego Walterus Juravi, pro me et heredibus meis, quod sicut prædictum est, nullum p[ar]ochianoru[m] vel aliorum p[er]mittam admitti ad divina officia, vel oblationes vel obventiones a capellano meo ibidem detineri.

Preterea juravi pro me et heredibus quod fideliter p[er]solvemus Matrici Ecclesiæ omnes decimas domus meae, tam majores qua[m] minores, tam animalium qua[m] servientiu[m]

Preterea juravi quod ego et uxor mea cum familia mea debitis et consuetis solempnitatibus, sc. die Natali, Purific[ationis], Resurrectionis, et Assumptionis, cum debitis et consuetis oblationibus, et obventionibus, Matrice[m] Ecclesia[m]prædicta[m] visitabimus.

Preterea juravi pro me et heredibus meis quod si ego vel heredes mei, vel cap[e]llanus noster aliquando contra aliquem articulum in hoc scripto insertum, in aliquo excesserimus, & post p[ri]mam admonitionem competenter non satisfecerimus super prædicto excessu, licebit rectoribus vel vicarijs Matricis Eccle[siæ] qui pro tempore fuerint, me, et capellanu[m] meum, per sententiam Excom[m]unicationis sive suspensionis in me et capellanu[m] meu[m], et etia[m] in capella[m] mea[m] ferenda[m], omni appellac[i]one et cavillac[i]one, sive quolibet juris remedio remotis, ad condignam compellere satisfactionem.

Juravi etiam pro me, et pro dictis heredibus meis q[uo]d nunquam aliquid impetrabimus contra matricem Ecclesia[m] quo minus hoc præsens scriptu[m] ratum et stabile permaneat in perpetuum. Q[uo]d si aliquo casu impetratum fuerit, auctoritate præsentis scripti, irritum sit et inane

[IV.511]

Insuper autem, præter predictam Iuratoriam cautionem, per sigillum meum huic scripto appositum me et heredes meos ad omnia suprascripta fideliter observanda in perpetuum obligavi.

Hijs Testibus: Radulpho Priore; Magistro G Archid[iacono]; D[omi]no W. offic[iali] karliolensi; Ric[ard]o Brun T[home] fil[io]; Johannis tunc vicecomitibus Cumberland et Westmarie; {!} Michaele et Waltero vicarijs de Appelb[y] et de Morlaund; Rob[er]to de Castelkairoc; Thom[a] De Louther;

[85] These and other charters relating to Morland in MS.IV.490A-523, were transcribed by Machell [and others] from those in the Register of Wetheral Priory. Machell praised the excellence of the first, see above.

Ada[m] de Slegyle; Steph[an]o et Rob[er]to de Newby; Thoma de Aslachby; Ricard[o] Overstrang'; et alijs multis.[86]

[Machell's Note on the Charter above]

This R. Abbas mentioned in the Beginning of the Carta must either be Rob. in the time of King Richard 1 & King John, his brother; or Richard Abbat in the Time of King Henry I.
The Sheriffs names will help me nothing, for the[y] begin only in the catal[ogue] from the Time of Henry 2. There is one Thomas de Clifford, & Rob. de Brun – Sheriffs of W. Cumberland, Anno 1^0, 2^0 Edward 3 {?} But this will not do. See ergo the confirm. Chart.

[IV.511]

{Cart. 214. Folio 101. 15 or 16 Henry 3.}

The same Sir Walter Stirkeland Knight, gave to the Church of St Mary Yorke and to the Prior & Monks of Wederhal iiii acres of Land in the Territory of Stirkeland, Sc. ii Acres & one Rod, & X. perches (1 Rodum et 2 Preacas) in Alderderiding et V. Rodas from the Towne head towards the West. & they abut upon Leyreberch; & 1. Rod & ½ upon Ulfangeberch, & ½ a Rod under Sheretofts &c. in pure & perpetual Alms &c. with all Commons, Liberties & Easement &c. Sc. so much as may belong unto so much ground excepting only his owne proper wood; & That it may be lawful to him & & his heires to till that Land when it is divided betwene him, the said Walter, & Roger son of Waldeve, non-obstante ista carta. And that the corne growing upon the premises & another ½ acre which Sygerit a widow gave unto them, should be ground multer free at his miln of Stirkeland, with warrantis contra omnes hom[ines].[87]

---

[86] 'To all the faithful in Christ to whom this present writing comes, Walter of Strickland, Knight, send eternal greetings in the Lord. You know that I have promised, on behalf of myself and my heirs, the endorsement of the mother church of Moreland in all matters, for holding a chantry in the chapel which I have in my court in Strickland, which chantry both R. the Abbot and House of Saint Mary of York, patrons of that church, and likewise Michael, at that time its Vicar, granted to me. It shall be in such a way that the chaplain, whoever at that time shall officiate at that chapel, shall swear loyalty and obedience to the Vicar of the mother church of Moreland and the Rectors of that church, whoever they are at the time, and he shall be presented to them and shall officiate through them in the chapel. It shall be in such a way, however, that I and my heirs shall make suitable provision in all matters, for the chapel as for the Chaplains. Moreover, my Chaplain, ministering in my chapel, shall receive none of the parishioners of Morland, nor any outsider, to confession or to other divine offices or sacraments to the detriment of the mother church of Morland and its Rectors, whoever they shall be at the time. Also, that he shall discharge the payments from every offering, of whatever kind they shall be, and wherever they shall come from, faithfully and honestly, without retaining any, to the mother church, and shall be true both to the aforesaid mother church and likewise to its Rectors in all things.
Moreover, I Walter have sworn, on behalf of myself and my heirs, that, just as it has been said earlier, I shall allow none of the parishioners or other people to be admitted to divine offices, nor for payments or offerings to be kept by my Chaplain there. Moreover, I have sworn, on behalf of myself and my heirs, that we shall faithfully pay the mother church all the tithes of my house, both the greater and the lesser, of animals and equally of those who do service. Moreover, I have sworn that I and my wife, along with my family, will visit upon the aforesaid mother church the due and customary offerings and payments. Moreover, I have sworn, on behalf of myself and my heirs, that if I or my heirs or our Chaplain at any time, in any way, transgress against any clause included in this document and, after a first admonition, fail to make proper atonement for the aforesaid transgression, the Rectors or Vicars of the mother church who are incumbent at the time shall have licence to compel me and my Chaplain to deserved penance, through sentence of Excommunication or Suspension against me or my Chaplain and applied even against my chapel, without any appeal or objection or any legal remedy at all. I have sworn also on behalf of myself and my said heirs, that we shall never make any claim against the mother church that would prevent this present document remaining fixed and valid in perpetuity. But if in any event a claim shall be made, by the authority of the present document it should be invalid and vain. Moreover, besides the aforesaid solemn oath, by my seal attached to this document I have bound myself and my heirs to everything written above to be faithfully observed forever.
Witnesses: Radulph the Prior; Master G the Archdeacon; Lord W, officiating at Carlisle; Richard Brun son of Thomas; the Johns who were then sheriffs of Cumberland and Westmorland (!); Michael and Walter, Vicars of Appleby and Morland; Robert of Castle Carrock; Thomas of Lowther; Adam of Slegill; Stephen and Robert of Newby; Thomas of Aslachby; Richard of Overstang; and many others.'

[87] Literally, 'with guarantees against all men' (i.e. with guarantees that no man may gainsay these provisions).

Hiis Testibus: Walter de Stirk. Mil; Radulpho Priore; Magistro [?] Archid; Domino W. offic' Parl; Rico Brun' & Thom fil Johanis vicecomitis de Cumberland et de Wesm'landia; Robo de Casteljairoc fre' suo [Sc Walteri]; Ada[m] filio freo; Walter decano Westm'landie; Michele vicario de Morlaund; Johe filio William; Thoma de Louther; Tho Strancigena; Adaa[m] & Rob filiis suis; Hug; Francis […]; Ada[m] de Slegill; Stepho. et Rob. de Newby.

[IV.513]

{Cart 215 fol. 201b.}
Willielmus de Stirkeland miles doth confirm & grant to God & St Mary & the abbat of St Maryes at Yorke & monks of Wederhal, & of St Beys in Coupland, all the lands that they then had of the gift & concession of Sir Walter de Stirkeland his great grandfather, & all other his ancestors in the village & territory of Great Stikeland* and doth quit clame unto al the said premises, which he \ or his h. / might have by any manner of way. Exceptis o[b]v[entientibus] [?] om[ni]b[u]s et Beneficijs addend[is] &c. – Datum apud Appilby in Westm'land die Iovis IX[a] post festum Sancti Wylfridi Archiepiscopi anno gre[goriano] m°, cc°, nonaginta secundo. {1292. 20. Ed. I.} Et An[n]° R[egni] Regis Eduardi vicesimo. [88]
Hijs Testibus: Michael de Hartclay; Thoma de Derwentwater; Hugone de Multon' militibus; Rob[er]to de Warthwic; Will[iam]o de Wyndsover', Will[iam]o fil[io] ejus; Ada[m] de Haierigton'; et multis alijs.

[Machell's Notes: IV.513]

*{This show it to be Stirkeland Magna.}

[IV.512]

The Descendants of Sir Walter Stirkeland from the foresaid Charters

Walter de Styrkeland Miles =
|
Adam fil Walteri =
|
Robertus de Strikeland Miles =
|
Willus de Stirkeland Miles 1292: 20. Ed. I.

Forsan sorore[m] Roberti. De Castelkairoc[89] inde frat[er] dict[us] int[er] testes

Note also – There then was a Deane of the Denary of Westm'land q? What the Rural Deanes were? See Godolphin.[90]

[6. Thrimby]

[IV.519]

Thrinneby
The name of this Towne, and of the family which tooke their name from it, was anciently written \ Turneby / Thrinneby; Thrineby & Thyrneby: contractly[91] now Thrimby.

{Willielmus de Thrinneby}
|
Johanes de Thrineby = Alicia, forsan e com Salopiæ}[92]

[88] 'With the exception of all payments [?] and benefits to be added etc. Dated at Appelby in Westmorland the ninth day after the feast of Saint Wilfred Archbishop in the Gregorian year 1292 and in the twentieth year of the reign of King Edward.'
[89] 'Perhaps the sister of Robert of Castel Kairoc. Thence the said brother among the witnesses.'
[90] John Godolphin (1617-1678), *Repertorium canonicum, or, an abridgment of the ecclesiastical laws of this realm, consistent with the temporal wherein the most material points relating to such persons and things, as come within the cognizance thereof, are succinctly treated* (1678). Machell studied Godolphin's volumes while staying at Rose Castle. See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, II.367, where Machell writes to the bishop's secretary because, 'I left your Godolphin's 2 volumes in my chamber at Rose: & I fear the Extract which I made out of them (my man neglecting to put up that paper amongst my other things) might be left there also…'
[91] 'Contractly': a form of 'contractively'. *OED*.
[92] 'Perhaps from the county of Shropshire.'

{Fol. 102b. Carta 217.}[93]
II. And John the son of William de Thrinneby, \ granted, / gave & confirmed Deo et Ecclesiae St Mary Ebor[aci]. Et Ecclesiae S[anctae] Trinitatis et Sancti Constantini de Weddhal & monachis &c. A certain parcel \ part / of land of his toft of Thrinneby, conteineing fower pertches & ½ in breath. & vj in Length, with a grange scituated thereupon (tenend[um] in pa[ce] etc. adeo libere integre & quiete sicut aliqua terra liberius et quietius alicui domui religionis poterit dari vel concedi)[94] \ & / free from moulter, with free ingress & egress through his own croft \ when his / after the corne was inded. With general warranty et omnes homines.
Hiis Testibus: Thoma de Musegrave t[un]c vic[ario] Westmer[iae]; Domino Walter[o] Vicari[o] St Michael de Appelby t[un]c Decano; Dom[in]is Joh[ann]e de Morevill & Rob[erto] de Stirkland militibus; Ric[ard]o de Aquila vir[o] de Moreland; Domino Nicho[la] Rectore Ecclesiæ de Cliburne; Hugone Capellano; Gilb[erto] de Slegyle; Rob[ert]o Francissco; et Hug[one] de Tylia et alijs.

[Machell's Notes on the Pedigree and Charter above]
1. N.B. This Robert de Stirkeland, may probably be son of Adam & grandchild of Walter in the foregoing pedigree.
2. N.B. As to the date; if it be so; this was before the 20. Ed. 1. [1291-1292], for William de Stirkeland, great grand to Walter, was living then.
3. As to Tho. de Musgraves being sheriff of Westmorland. I finde one of that name neare 50 years after, Sc. the 16. & 17. Ed. 3. [1342-1344] But there might be another Thomas before. The best way to finde out this difficulty is to have recourse to confirmatio charters {?}[95] Qu? Ideo.[96]

[IV.520]

{Thirneby; cart 220, fol. 104}[97]
There were also lands in Thrimby, belonging to the Priory or Convent of Watton. And a difference ariseing betwene them and the rectors of the church of Morland, concerneing theire deteineing of certaine tithes as well as their lands which were farmed out, as of those which were in their own hands, in prejudice of the privilege granted by the Apostolic See. (1) For the heareing \ & decideing / of which, A. Abbat of Melsa H. Prior of Bridlington, & Mr R. de Longyngton mere delegated (a sum'pontifice) by the popes appointment. In whose presence this composition was in the conclusion amicably made. Sc. – That the foresaid Convent of Watton should pay for the future to the rectors of Morland the tythe of all their Corne within the said parish without any exaction or reteinure as well \ both / of their lands let & \ valett / to be let; or by what title soever held, or to be held for the future by them in the parish of Morland.
Except one carucate of land which they hold in Demaine in Thirneby. For the tythes of which they were to pay to the church of Morland and the rectors, one marc of silver yearly – halfe at Easter & halfe at Martinmas.
And the proctors of the House of Watton (whom they had autherised on this behalf) by the content of the said Convent, & the rectors of the church of Morland by the consent of the Abbat & Convent of St Maryes Yorke, swore each other upon the Evangelists, that this should be firmely observed forever. And the delegates confirmed this agreement by affixing their seales, together with the Seale of the Convent of Watton.
N.B. it is an excellent well pen'd composition, & worthy trans[cription].

[93] An extract from a deed concerning a dispute with the Convent of Watton over land at Thrimby. For other charters from the Register of Wetheral Priory relating to Thrimby, see MS.IV.517-19.
[94] '…thereupon (to be held in peace etc. as freely, fully and peaceably as any land can be freely and peaceably given or granted to any religious house).'
[95] 'Confirmation of the Charters'. The term – Confirmatio Chartarum – is applied specifically to the confirmation of Magna Charta and the Charter of the Forests by Edward I in 1297. *OED*.
[96] 'Query, therefore.'
[97] Another of Machell's deeds, copied from the Register of Wetheral Priory.

Bewley Castle
Beauly Castle might probably, ere I turne to the Bishops, gave name to family [Blank][98] whose arms are Argent a cheveron betweene 3 rookes head erased Sable beaked Gules. Lib. Arm. Penes J.T. p.126.[99]

[IV.521]

[7. Meburn Regis]

Mem[orandum] quae finalis Concordia cora[m] Judicibus com[m]uniter dicitur finis factus Carta Joh[ann]is de Ravensby de quadam placea in Meaburn Regis ubi Grangia sita est.[100]

{Fol. 110 b.; Cart. 237}[101]
Wherein John, the son of Walter de Ravensby, caritatis intuitu et pro salute animarum antecessorum et successorum suorum) gave, granted & confirmed, in pura[m] &c. to God & the Abbot of St Maryes Yorke, & the moncs of St Trinity & St Constantine of Wederhal – one place (unam placeam) in the end of his croft which he held of the Bishop of Karliol in Meburn Regis (versus aquilonem de longitudine quinquies viginti et 12 pedum. Ab aquilone v[er]sus austrum infra fossatas cum fossatis ad utrumque capud, {!} Et de Latudine ad Capud versus aquilonem quinquaginta duorum pedum; et de latitudine versus austrum septuaginta duorum pedum infra fossatas cum fossatis ex utraque parte).[102] Free from al secular service & exaction in puer & perpetual almes forever. And for that the said Abbat of St Mary Yorke and the moncs of Wederal had received him & the souls of his ancestor & his successors into their prayers. He & his heires did therefore warrant the said pece of land with all the libertyes & easements contra omnes Gentes in perpetuum &c. Hiis Testibus {Dominis Roberto de Ravenswithe, Tho. Derwentwater, militibus; Johe de Helton; Robo de Slegille; Allno le Butifer; Waltero de Boulton, Hugone de Colleby et alijs.}

[III.267]

[8. ad Bolton]

[Wybergh of Bolton Pedigree]

Geffray Wyber, a second brother of the Wybers of Clifton, bought that ancient freehold which is called Bolton Hall, with other tenements and som tenants there; & maryed	=	Briget, the onely childe of Robert Teasdale of Dufton & Sowerby, who is said to have given her her weight in silver nomine dotis.[103]
{vixit circit? 70 annores}[104] Thomas Wyber of Bolton, temp. C. I; sold it to his fathers sister, Mrs Dor[othy] Halton, relict of Mr Miles Halton of Graystock who was steward there to the [blank] and tooke to wife one	=	Katherine Wilson, daughter of [blank] By whom he had [blank]
Mr Geffray Wyber, an attorney at law of [blank] in London, who plac'd himself there and maryed	=	Isabel, one of the daughters of Mr [Blank] Patrickson of [Blank] in the county of Cumberland.

[98] Family of Bewley.
[99] 'Book of Arms at the house of J.T., p.126.' See MS.IV.497, where Machell inferred that Bewley Castle was in Appleby parish. This had been an object of disputation but by 1777 it was agreed that Bewley Castle should be part of Morland. *N&BI*, 456.
[100] 'Memorandum of the final concord [made] before the judges which is generally agreed [to be] the boundary, in a deed of John of Ravensby concerning a certain place in Meaburn Regis where the Grange is situated.'
[101] From Machell's deed collection, copied from the Register of Wetheral Priory.
[102] 'For the sake of charity and for the salvation of the souls of his ancestors and his successors gave etc. ... [a place with measurements of] five times twenty and twelve feet towards the north; from north to south within the ditches, including the ditches at each end; and in breadth to the northward end fifty-two feet; and in breadth southward seventy-two feet within the ditches including the ditches on each side.'
[103] 'By way of a dowry.'
[104] 'He lived about 70 years.'

[I.615]

Name of Bolton:
Arnold de Bolton
William son of Arnold de B[olton]
Testis cum Tho. de Hellebeck & Tho. de Museg. Vicecom s.d. circa 36. Henry 3. [1251-1252]. tunc enim \ M. / vicecomes.[105]

[I. 595]

Bolton Chapel in Westm'land[106]
Porch: lef[t] \ side / a man with a mell right h[and]; an Ax left.[107]
Back doere: 2 Horsemen, one with a Colour,[108] combating, & an Inscription.[109]
E. window: 2 Coates:
1. Argent 3 Bars Gules; on a canton of the 2 a cnq[110] of the 1^{t}.[111]
2. Argent a Br.[112] Ingraled \ & / charged with an half moon of the first; in Chief an escalop of the 2nd.[113]
In the church y[ard] [an effigy of] a woman at length.[114]

[I.612]

Bolton Hall
Bolton Hall is now possesed by one Halton. I meat with one bishop of that name amo[n]sgst \ Blenkinsops writeing (de Ellergill), \ and finde Thomas de Halton a witness to a deed / 34. Edward 3. [1360-1361], but whether he be any thing related to or descended from either I know not.

[I.615]

Bolton Ouse Fauld. See Good: *Antiq*. Jew in fine Cap. 4 Liberi 5 cedere de statu ad fam. Mach[ell].[115]

---

[105] 'A witness with Thomas de Hellebeck and Thomas de Musgrave, sheriff, undated, c.36 Henry III. For there was then a Musgrave sheriff.' Machell does not name a Musgrave in his list of sheriffs in the reign of Henry III, identifying only Veteripontes and Cliffords: see the Catalogue of Sheriffs in Part 1, Machell's Preface, from VI.593.

[106] Two deeds (1326) relating to Brampton have been recorded on MS.IV.497-501. Sadly, Machell wrote at the end of the second deed, 'Time & ill-usage has defac'd the rest, being only 2 lines, and in halfe at best.'

[107] In 1926, this figure was described as follows: 'The left one bears a figure, with a hammer in one hand and an axe in the other; while the right one has a strange figure with wings, perhaps an angel.' See T.A. Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', *CW2*, 27 (1927), 188-94, at 190.

[108] A flag.

[109] Described by Carmichael as, 'On the north side of the church, over what was a Norman doorway (now a window), is a stone slab built into the wall, commemorating a tournament. The age of this stone is told by the curious kite-shaped shields and lances which the knights carry. They were peculiar to the time of Henry II (1154-1189). The slab is of red sandstone, 26 by 162 inches, roughly chiselled but deeply cut, having a frame in high relief round the picture. Adjoining this slab is another (on the right), apparently the companion to it, built into the wall, measuring 21 by 132 inches and bearing an inscription in uncial letters, hitherto unexplained.' Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', 189.

[110] Cinquefoil.

[111] For a description of this particular coat of arms see *CFH*, 'Derwentwater', 90.

[112] Abbreviated word. Possibly 'bordure'.

[113] Carmichael gives the history of one of the windows, as follows, 'The little round-headed window, over the priest's door, contains some ancient glass, representing a shield (turned upside down) with the arms of Radcliff (Ratcliff) and Derwentwater. The Derwentwaters, from the time of King John (1199-1216), held the manor of Bolton, while the ancestors of Sir John de Derwentwater (about 1326) founded the chantry in this church; hence the presence of the arms aforesaid. The Ratcliffs succeeded the Derwentwaters as lords of the manor of Bolton.' Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', 192.

[114] This was described in 1926 as, 'Upright against the wall on … the south side of the church is placed the stone effigy of a lady with hands clasped on the breast; the details of the dress seem to point to the time of Edward III (1327-1377). The pillowstone indicates that the original position was horizontal, not vertical, and very probably rested in the chancel on a raised altar-tomb.' Carmichael, 'Bolton Church', 189-90.

[115] Thomas Good (1609/10-1678), Church of England clergyman and Master of Balliol, Oxford, published only one volume, *Firmianus and Dubitantius; certain dialogues concerning Atheism, Infidelity, Popery, and other Heresies and Schismes that trouble the peace of the Church and are destructive of primitive piety* (1674): J. Jones, 'Good, Thomas (1609/10-1678)'. *ODNB*. Why Machell might have associated Thomas Good's work on heresy with the inhabitants of Bolton Ouse Fauld is worthy of further study.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 18]

[Parish of Musgrave]

[III.271]

This parish is bounded from the North to the E. with \ ~~a part~~ / Rumakirk parish in Yorkshire* \ and from E. to South[1] with the parish of Brough; from S. to West with part of Kirkby [Stephen] & part \ of Crosby [Garrett]; / from West to N. with Warcop parish.

[III.282]

Musgrave
S.E. from Appelby 5m.
S.W. from Brough 1m.
N. a Kirkby 2m.
N. a Kendal 16m.
N. ab Orton 10m.

[III.279][2]

{Great Musgrave}[3]
Great Musgrave lyeth East from Little Musgrave on the other side of the River Eden, being distant from it about ½ a quarter of a mile, & the lordships ar joined \ together / by a wooden[4] bridge near to the church, which standeth humbly at the skirt of an hill wheron the towne is built.[5] It is slated over & has small bells which hang in a tympanum. On the North side of it is an old Hall house, which belongs to one Spencer.

[I.622]

[Musgrave Church and Parish]

[To] Musgrave church belongs Musgrave Great, Flithome, [Lang]rig.

[III.273]

The church is a little one, having 2 little bells hanging in a timpanum; the body being in length 12 yards, & the quire 8, & both of a bredth. Sc. about 4 yards and an halfe. On the south side of the body of the church is a fair quier, having an arched doer to enter into it, & another arch, which gives light into the church, under which, I suppose, som ancient monument hath formerly layde \ stood. /

[III.279]

{Parsonage}
The parsonage house stands E. thereof about 30 yards distant,[6] there being but a passage from the Town to the bridge which divides the church yard from the Parsonage fold. It is a strong house, & pleasantly scituate, having curious walkes (~~near it~~) on the other side Eden, & woods on this.

[Hall Crofts 1.][7]
And the like advantage of situation has another great house on the N. side & nearer the church, which belongs to one Spencer. It is the farest house in the Towne, & I am apt to thinke it has formerly bin the Hall sold of with other lands in freehold or \ otherwise / passd of in tenancy (as ~~other~~ \ diverse / lands were at Brough & Winton on the like occasion) upon the Musgraves removeing to Hartley. For tho there be a place near the miln which is called Hall Crofts, where Sir Christopher now is building an house & where I once was of opinion that the Hall might have stood, I am now rather inducd to believe that the said crofts have taken their name from one Hall, a tenant, of whom som part of them were purchased, than from their having belong'd to the Hall or manner house of ancient demaine.

---

[1] MS: ' \ and ~~part of Trough Warcop~~ / from E. to South ...'
[2] This page reworks I.163 margin, III.271 and III.273.
[3] Little Musgrave lies in Crosby Garrett parish: see III.163-64.
[4] MS; 'woned.'
[5] MS: '~~This village is scituate on the top of an hill att the skirt of~~ which standeth ~~the church~~ \ humbly / at the skirt of an hill wheron the towne is built.'
[6] A note on MS.III.272 offers, '{The parsonage house 40 yards W. ab Ecclesia: a good house on the banke of Eden, & pleasantly situated.}' Note the slight difference in distance from the church in these two passages.
[7] The texts, Hall Crofts 1. and 2., offer different narratives relating to Hall Crofts.

[III.273]

[Hall Crofts 2.]
[The arched door at the church] is now used in common for the parishoners, but seemeth formerly, when there was a manner house here, to have belongd to the Lord of the Manner, which is thought to have stood a[t] a place near to the milne called Hall Crofts, wher Sir Christopher Musgrave is now building an house upon 4 tenements purchased by his father; but there being one Hall, the owner of som at least of those crofts makes the thing dubiouse. Yet it might be so still, for the first of that family might take his name, John de Auly,[8] from he being possesd of the Hall in tenency.

[III.273]

[Church: Quire]
In the quier is a through of \ blewish / gray marble, with the figure of a shaven monke grav'd in brass, in his robes & coape, holding up his hands in a praying posture, & this Inscription over his brest betwixt the 2 shoulders. REPO &c. –i.e. Reposita ē ħ spes. Mea in sinu meo*.[9] And in 4 roundells, one at each corner, the upper part of an angel, with this label: IHU i.e. Jesu Mercy. & on the left side, Mercy Jesu. And in brass under his feet, this Inscription: ORATE &c. id est Orate pro anima m[agist]ri Thomæ Oudo quondam re[c]tor[is] [blank] domi[norum] epi[scopi] et Archdiaconi Carl[iolensis] officialis qui obijt XXII […].[10]

[Machell's Notes: III.273]

*{In the register when he was rector.}

[III.272]

This Oudo, it seems sometimes rector here, was official, both to the bishop of the Diocess & to the Arch-Deacon. By which it appears the Arch-Deacon then had som jurisdiction, however it came to be lost afterwards; for An Official to a Bishop is a Bishops Commissary, which differs from a Chancellour who hat[h] a General Jurisdiction in being restrained to som certaine places & som certaine causes according to the Bishops limitation; whence the law calls them officiales forraneos; quasi astricti cuidem foro Diocesios Vicariatim,[11] they being to exercise their authority in such remote places from the Bishops consistory, as that his Chancellour can not without too great a prejudice call his subjects to it. Or in such places as are the Bishops Peculiars, & exempt from the Archdeacons jurisdiction*.

[Machell's Notes: III.272]

*{Godolph[in] *Reper[torium],* Cap.10, §1.;[12] out of Ridleys VI, W. Part 2, Cap.2, p.3} {a. Gloss[ary] in Chem. de Rescript.}[13]
{The canon \ canon 127 / sayes no person may be an Official or Commissary under the age of 26. He may be a Dr or Batchelor of Divinity (or by the 21. Henry 8. [1529-30], a Doctor of the Civil Law) or at the least a Master of Arts or Batchelor of Law.}

[III.273]

[Church Windows]
In the East window \ light / a man in armour with a Brown circot & sword hanging before: hilt Or; handl Argent; belt & scabberd Blew; his helmet round like a cap, beset with a bordure Sable, studed with cross crosletts Or; on his right hand an hawke; On his left a shield 3 inch½: Argent, Or. [14]
{In the 3rd light, Or, between 4 Besants {?} Sable charged with 4 cross crosslets, & plane cross Argent.}

---

[8] Aula = hall.
[9] 'reposita est haec spes mea in sinu meo': 'my hope reposes in my breast', (*AVB*), Job, Ch.19, v.26-27.
[10] 'Pray for the soul of Master Thomas Oudo, once rector … officer of the Bishop and Archdeacon of Carlisle, who died on 22 [...]' See *N&B1*, 588.
[11] 'Officials from outside; as if restricted to a certain sphere of jurisdiction, deputising for Diocesan.'
[12] John Godolphin (1617-78), *Repertorium canonicum, or, an abridgment of the ecclesiastical laws of this realm, consistent with the temporal wherein the most material points relating to such persons and things, as come within the cognizance thereof, are succinctly treated* (1678); for Machell's reliance on Godolphin, see Part 1, Ch.17, Morland, IV.512; see also Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, II.367.
[13] Sir Thomas Ridley, *A View of the Civile and Ecclesiastical Law* (London, 1607). 'Rescript': a copy; rewrite. *OED*. 'Chem' is followed by a blot.
[14] There follow 2 sketches of coats of arms, the first labelled, '3 inch½', the second, 'in the third light'.



Figure 1.18.1. Musgrave Church. East Window Images. III.273.

[III.275]

In the S. window next the body of the church in the E. angle [are the following shields][15]



Figure 1.18.2. Musgrave Church. South Window Images. III.275.

1. Argent a fess Gules, charged with 3 cushion Ermin tassled Or.
2. Gules – 6 annulets Or. Musgraves. In the midle space between the 2 lights.
3. In the top of the 2nd light. Argent, a cross Gules, charged with [blank] O Azure.

[III.277]

[Permission for the alteration of the Tithe Barn, Musgrave Rectory]

'Whereas the Right Reverend Father in God Thomas by divine permission Lord Bishop of Carlisle hath authorised and appointed me Thomas Machell Rector of Kirkby Thore in the County of Westm'land, to view the defects of a certaine Tithe-Barne at the rectory of Musgrave in the said county, & grant such order for altering and rebuilding the same as to me that seem meet: I, having viewed and considered the same, do hereby permit the Reverend Mr Christopher Thorneton, Rector thereof, to pull down & rebuild the Tythe-barne aforesaid;[16] provided he make it 22 yards long betwixt the gabels, and mount the side-walls 10 quarters high above the floore on the inside thereof, & under the sparrs which are fixed to the principals for supporting the Ealing.[17]

Given under my hand & seal this 16th March at Musgrave aforesaid, in the year of Our Lord 1688/9.

Thomas Machell.'[18]

{A True Copy.}

[Machell's Tithe-Barn Notes: III.276]

An estimate of the contents of the Barn

6 quarters high, 5 yards broad.

34 – to XX 11.[19]

Deduct 12 yards.

Once over 18 square, so XII over

about II score yards & 6 score.

In all 17 score.

Ad […][20] High I yard.

Which is over – 5 yard.

---

[15] MS. 'In the S. window next the body of the church in the E. angle ~~oppos~~.'

[16] Christopher Thornton, son of John, gent., of Dent; attended Sedbergh School; sizar (aged 19) at Magdalene, Cambridge, from 1672; B.A. 1675-6; M.A. 1679. Rector of Great Musgrave, 1684-1720. Buried there 5. Feb. 1719-20. CCED.

[17] An ealing or iling was a dubbing, or lean-to, of a barn. See an investigation into the Tudor meaning of the word in *Notes and Queries, Vol. 11*, Series VIII (12 July, 1913), 29.

[18] Here Machell has sketched a circle to mark the place of the seal in the original document.

[19] Eleven score.

[20] Here follows an unclear word.

22[21]
x5. Sc. 10.

[III.163][22]

[Hall Garth Demesne]
At Great Musgrave there is a place called Hall Garth which is a demesne land.

Per Acre	Arable	A Noble
	Pasture	
	Medow	15 or 20s.

A days mowing an Acre & plow by computation

Musgrave Parish. The Perambulation.

[III.271]

Begining ~~at Lowgil beck foot where it enters Eden~~ at Eden Clint, 1 mile N.W. from the church; thence \ N. / from the side of the River Eden up the west dike of Eden Flat, till you com at the houses on Henvever-Hill, which are in this parish.
{Burtergill}

Thence N. E. by dikes & merestones throw Low-gil beck & the High Street, \ at the E. end of Brough hill in the parish of Warcop, / til you com at Burtergil Houses \ which are in / Warcop parish \ also. / Thence N. (up Musgrave peat lonen) to Midle-Fell Thorne; thence N. (in a streight line) till you come at \ to an hurrock of stones called / Rëaven St\e/anes; thence E. lineally to \ the N. end of / Green Turpluck? {N.~~ end~~ of Warcop ~~Green Turpluck spring~~}*

{To Hare-Crag Fauld: a sheep fold}
Thence N.E. in a direct line to Hare-Crag-Fauld, which is a sheepfold call'd by that name. Thence N.E. in a streight line to Crevy Pot; thence N.E. in a direct line to the Read Seal in Force beck \ where Warcop ends & Rumakirk begins. / Thence S. by a streight line to the top of Heürds; thence lineally towards the S. till you com at Tarne-House. Thence S. by a direct line to the Cloven Stean on the north side \ of / Hard-Ro\a/ds. Thence S. up the said Road, to \ an hurrock of stones on / Johnson-Skar. Thence lineally to \ an hurrock &c. / the top of Browne-bur; thence S. in a direct line to an hurrock of stones on Ke\a/y-Skar top.

[III.272]

Thence S. by a streight line to Netle Pot-Scroggs,[23] where Lowgil beck springs. Thence S. downe Low-gil beck Sike, alias Woodend Sike, to \ High / Low-gil beck Yeat; thence S.W. down Lowgill beck to Lowgill Ing Dike; ~~Thorny Mire Dike~~; Thence S. down the said dike to Parcy (wood) brigg. Thence S. down Thorney-mire Dike to Swindal beck. Thence south by hedges & certaine well known land-marks divideing the fields till you com [to] Below-beck near the S.E. corner of Henin wood.[24] Thence W. down the said beck to the River Eden. Thence N. down ~~Eden~~ the said river by the church & parsonage till you com at the Clint where wee began†.
Per Ed. Bousfield & Mr Christopher Thornton.

[Machell's Notes: III.271 and III.276]

*? {Warcop?}
[III.276]
Musgrave parish: Thomas Wallot, bounder.[25]

[21] 22 yards long between the gables. Therefore, 1 chain long.
[22] Also on this page of the MS: 'Frances Scot of Sebram known to Mr Thomas Denton, son of Richard \ Denton of Greenfoot / and Ann Mason in Cumberland descended of [Denton of] Warnal.' '{Richard Granger testamento Denton.}'
[23] Potte: a pit or hole, see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 62. Scroggs: stunted bushes, brushwood or underwood. *OED*.
[24] Haining Wood.
[25] This unclear phrase appears in the margin at right angles to the body text and extremely close to the binding.

[III.280]

[Families and Tenants]

Fam[ilies] [Blank]; Freehold [Blank]
The rest are Arbitrary, under Sir Christopher Musgrave; all save one, who holds of & payes to the Rectory – a Noble [in] rent, with an arbitrary fine upon the alienation or upon the death of the parson or tenant*.

[Machell's Notes: III.280, 281, 282]

*{Infor. Mr Thorneton, who had 30s fine of the present tenant, tho he offered him at first but 1d.}
[III.281]
See of Musgrave in Brough parish.
[III.282][26]
A Cap[ut] of; q[uery] er[g]o an Hall. X.[27]

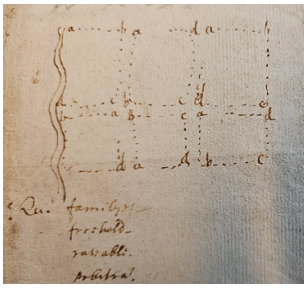


Figure 1.18.3. Sketch containing six square plots: 3 above 3, each labelled a, b, c, d. III.282.

? Query: familyes, freehold, rateable, arbitrary? Mos: how far of.
! If \ this family / the family of Musgrave had given name to the villages & not the villages to them – their ancestor would have bin writ Le Musgrave, no[t] de Musgrave. So of Lowther, Wharton and al names taken from places after anciently writ with de prefixd to them. Query if [the name comes] from a sort of men planted here who first taught the countrey the use of peates & graveing of mosses.[28]

[Birds]

[III.163]

In great Musgrave parish, in the Healin wood, great store of herrinsues build.[29]

[III.281]

Hawkes & Ospreys in Great Musgrave.

[26] This page also contains an unexplained diagram of squares containing the letters a, b, c and d: one on each corner of each square, see *Fig. 1.18.3.*
[27] 'Head of, query, therefore a Hall.' This is followed by a cross to suggest that the unnamed building could not be designated as a hall. Unlike the rest of the page, the passage is written roughly in pencil, and may even not belong to the series of notes.
[28] Graving: to dig, form by digging; now rare except in dialect, e.g. to grave peat(s), to grave turf. *OED.*
[29] Herrinsues: herons.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 19]

[Parish of Ormside]

[I.634][1]

Ormside P[arish]

To Ormside belongs Ormside great, Ormside little.
Tis Anciently writ Ormsheved and gave name to a family, Sc. Hugh de Ormesheved test. apud Cart. Berwyse penes Mr Blenkinsop, 17. Edward 3. [1343-1344].[2]

[III.291]

[Bounder of] Ormside Parish Feb. 28. 1688/9. Thos.[3]
It is bounded on the N. with St Lawrence and part of St Michaels, Appelby; on the E. with Warcop parish; on the S. with part of Warcop & Ashby parish; & on the west with St Lawrence, Appelby, the procession or perambulation being as followeth:

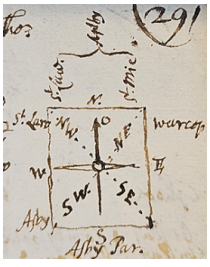


Figure 1.19.1. Ormside Parish Bounder. III.291.

1. \ They / begin at Stainmore Sike Foote, where it runns into Eden. Thence Eastward (up the River Eden) to Cowpland Beck foote, where Bondgate parish ends & Warcop begineth.[4] Thence agane up Eden S.E. to a woody banke calld Thrucklebanke, at the dike foote. Thence S. (up the said dike, takeing in Thrucklebanke) to an house call'd Rotmorehead. Thence S.W. (up an old dike-stead) to Horngil bottom dike {Biggabanke}. Thence S.W. (up Horngil dike) to Slikarstack House, \ where Warcop parish ends & Ashby begins. / Thence W. (by the outside of Crawhill hedge) till you com at Watergil-sike. Thence W. (up the outside of Breken-foot wall, which belongs to Breeks \ in this parish /) till you com to Goodal-hill. Thence westward by an hedge till you com at Asby-Mill. Then N.W. down Ashby-beck, till you com at Rutter-mill \ where Asby parish [ends] & Appleby coms in. / Thence agane N.W. til you com at Rutter wall Neük. Thence N. up Rutter-wall, till you com at Bread-mer-sike; thence N. down the said sike till you come at Stanemore-gill-head. Thence N. downe the outside of Stanemoregill hedge till you com at \ to a yeat c~~alld~~ / Luckenflat Newke. Thence N. downe Stanemoregill Sike aliis Gilbeck to the sike foot where it runns into Eden & where you began. {[Informant] Thomas Yair.}

{Division}
In this parish there are 2 Lordships. Sc. Great Ormside & Little Ormside, which are both but one Constablewick; Great Ormside pleasantly scit\u/ated on the S. side of the River Eden, & having a current of water which \ springs at the head / [and] runns downe the towne, \ being / very \ commodious, / beneficial to all the inhabitants.

---

[1] Also numbered p.32; it contains only the heading 'Ormside'.
[2] 'Witness to a deed of Berewyse at Mr Blenkinsop's. 17. Edward III.'
[3] Thomas Yair, who gave Machell the bounder information.
[4] MS: '{~~To Thrucklebanke~~}1. \ They / begin at Stainmore Sike Foote, where it runns into Eden. Thence Eastward (up the River Eden) to~~o woody banke call'd Trucklebanke~~ Cowpland Beck foote, where Bondgate parish ends & Warcop begineth.'

[I.634]

[I. Great Ormside]

[The Church]
N.W from Ap[pleby] 1 mile.

[III.291]

The church stands opposite to the Hall on the top of a mount, being a ve\ne/rable structure for

[III.292]

its sea\m/ing antiquity, yet humble & low.

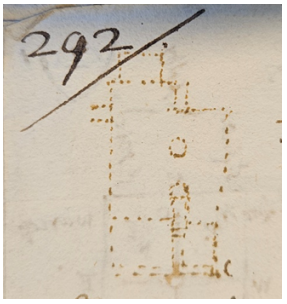


Figure 1.19.2. Sketch plan of Ormside Church. III.292.

It has ~~but 2~~ a tower steeple of the lowest size, with 2 little bells. It is in length 9½ & in breadth 5½, the quire long 10½, broad 6. The steeple has bin added to the body of the church but long agoe, for it seems as ancient as the church.[5] {It has 1 comly round pillar with 2 round arches which \ tho low yet / looke very strong, & beautiful enough, but short of Crosby.[6] Behinde this is placd Hilton Porch, which they call so from the Lord of the manner, where lyes the body of Sir Christopher Picker[ing] under a through with this inscription on a label of brass.

[I.646B]



Figure 1.19.3. Brass at Ormside Church. Sir Christopher Pickering. I.646B.

[5] Machell's hunch was correct. The nave and chancel were erected in the late 11th century; the defensive west tower was built c.1200, although the bell-cote predates the tower. See Hyde & Pevsner, 557-58.
[6] Crosby Garrett.

[I.648]

In the first and Lesser Brass is this inscription:

Lo Here Interr'd lyes underneath this stone
True wisdom, ver[t]ue, Justice, al in one

Sir Christopher Pickering Knight, who after he had / been 5 times High-Sherif of Cumberland / dyed 14 of January Anno Domini 1620 aetatis suae 76.[7]

In the second and larger Brass, which was added since upon the Death of Mr Ciprian Hilton, this:

Interr'd within this could urn here lyes
This Countryes loss, but heavens Eternal prise:
Cyprian Hilton of Ormside for renowned fame
He may be Justly stiled the glory of his name
Pious, Prudent, Charitable and Just
And trewly valiant too. Now Here
Hee's clad in dust.
Deceased December 22
In the year of[8]

[III.392]

There hath bin formerly a north wing or Ile, but tis now contracted to a single quier behinde one arch. On the N. side the quier is a vestery with a whispering hole.

[I.634]

N[orth] a whispering place out of the vestery into the chancel; for confession as I suppose.[9]
A strong but Low Steple with flat Batlements. Bells in it. Built as an addition to the Church but very ancient.

[III.292]

[Ormside Hall]
The Hall is a tower house & good old building with a fine gardine on the back side of it, an a well that springs out under the kitchen, of excellent water, both \ for / taist & clearness. It is the manner house of this Lordship, and now belongeth to Ciprian Hilton of Ormside Esquire.

[I.634]

The Hall repared & much Bett[ered] by Mr Cyprian Hilton, circ. Anno 16~~85~~. 86-87, 88.

[III.292]

[The Height]
There is in this town, beside the Hall & parsonage house, about 20 families, and an hamlet called The Height, so nam'd for the high scit\u/ation of it), ~~conteineing 4 more~~ about a mile of[f], directly southward, conteineing 4 houses. \ W[h]ere excellent hewing & walling & flaggs stones are easily got, so[me] of which are as white as chalke. /

[7] 'At the age of 76.' Sir Christopher Pickering was High Sheriff of Cumberland on four occasions (1590, 1601, 1607, 1611), see *CFH*, 262. He became MP for Cumberland in 1597, deputy warden of the west march in 1601 and a commissioner for the borders in 1608. See 'Pickering, Christopher 1556-1621.' *History of Parliament* Online. His natural daughter, Frances, married as her second husband, Cyprian Hilton: see III.392.

[8] The rest is obscured by the binding but the monument itself reads, 'in the year of our Lord, 1652.' A later inscription in this church is to Cyprian Hilton, died 27 December 1693, but as Machell does not mention it, he probably visited the church prior to this date. For these inscriptions see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes: being the heraldry, epitaphs, and other inscriptions in the thirty-two ancient parish churches and churchyards of that county*, 2 (Kendal, 1888) 224; see also *N&BI*, 516.

[9] A hole through which one whispers, as into the Roman Catholic confessional; see the 'A prospect of the ruins of Godstowe Abbey', in John Stevens, *The History of the Ancient Abbeys, Monasteries, Hospitals, Cathedral and Collegiate Churches; being two additional volumes to Sir William Dugdale's Monasticon Anglicanum, Vol. I* (London, 1722), facing 532.

[Breekes][10]
And a single hall-house, which is calld Breekes, about a ¼ of a mile farther south: a freehold estate, formerly sold of the Demane by Thomas Barton Esq. to his brother, William who (by Ann \ his wife / the daughter of Mr Ubanke of Appelby) had Isue Robert, who maryed Ann Barton, the daughter of Mr Barton of Kirkby Hill in the county of Yorke and had Isue Robert, s. prole,[11] & Thomas, an attorney now living; besides 2 daughters. Robert the father sold it to Mr John Patteson, an attorney of Penrith,[12] the now owner of it \ who has almost finished. /

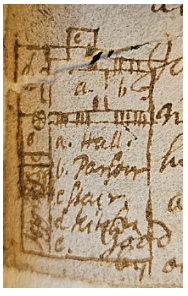


Figure 1.19.4. Margin sketch plan of Breeks or Breaks Hall. III.293A.

[III.293A]

[Breaks Hall]
Breakes[13] is a fair house now almost finished. Built by John Patteson, an attorney at law. 3 stories high with 5 windows or appertures. \ Each course / in the front. Good white stone, & flaggs hard by on the Heights.

{Freeholds}
Besides him,[14] there are 8 or nine freeholds, having bought themselves free, and som others that are under value. The rest are arbitrary, & all answer court at the manner house.

{Descent}
Great Ormside formerly belongd to one Sir Christopher (~~who was 5 times High sheriff of Cumberland~~) \ who bought it [from] Thomas Barton Esq. obijt 14 January 1620? ~~who never marryed~~. And never marrying, bestowed it on Frances his natural daughter married [to] Mr John Dudley of Dufton, who had a demane there and came of Dudleys of Yeanwath hall; who dyed without \ any / Isue by her; who remarried to Ciprian Hilton of Burton & Hilton Esq. {circa 70 years since. Who had Isue Christopher, who maryed Mistress Barbara Brathwaite of Warcop & had Isue Ciprian, now lord thereof.}

[III.293B]

[Antiquities found at Ormside]
Found on Sunday 2 of November 1689, behinde Ormside church in the River Eden on the side next the church. Drawn Dec. 5, 1689.

[10] Breaks Hall.
[11] 'Sine prole': without issue.
[12] John Patteson died in 1705. *CFH*, 255.
[13] Brec, Brekis, Breakes: land broken up for cultivation. See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 89.
[14] John Patteson.



Figure 1.19.5. Finds from the River Eden at Ormside. III.293.

[Key]
a. A thuribulum or censer, as I gather from the form of it and the 3 loopehols. It has bin guilded and is in height 3 inches; in diameter more than 5. Ergo in circumference [blank]. It is of brass.
b. An ~~plane~~ euare of plane brass, about 7 inch high, wide at the mouth near 3 inches, the belly in circumference 13.
c. A brazen morter, high 3 inch & ½, the diameter at top 4 inch & ½; at the bottom, 3 inch.
d. A pewter bason, in depth 3 inch, in diameter 8 and a quarter; at the brim, one.
f. A cullender of the like size.
e. A small pewter florepot, in height 6 inches & the belly in circumference 10, the mouth in diameter 2 inch & ½. \ Of which there were 2. /
There were also a case of brazen weights & 2;[15] 2 brazen candlesticks: a less and greater; 2 pewter candlesticks: a less & a greater; 2 pewter flaggons*: a less & greater; several plates of pewter†; a small lead [vessel] for boyleing meat, which weighed 2 stone & 10 lb.

[Machell's Notes: III.293B]
*On the great flaggon handle: F.D. for Frances Dudley who was married to Ciprian Hilton.
†Upon a platter S. \ H. / F.; on another, S^{t}. M.
{5 li.
100 boards 7 yards long, 6 broad, 3 high
6 li
From Brough far to much}

[III.293]

II. Little Ormside

The other Lordship is Little Ormside {S.E. ab Ecclesia ½ mile} where there is neither Hall nor demaine. It stands on the west side of Horngill-beck, which springs in little Ashby, and consists of about 9 or ten families, VI of which are freeholds votable.[16] The rest are arbitrary & som of them have som parcells of freehold. They answer court at Gathorn Hall, their Lord being Allan Bellingham Esq. who[se] chief seat is Leavins. The freehold tenants purchased their freedom from one of the Salkelds, who also had 2 tenents ~~whom~~ under him in Great Ormside ~~Lordship~~ \ Town, / whom he also sold free. And therefore I guess that Little Ormside did belong to the Salkelds ere the Bellinghams had it.

[Notes on Things Remarkable in Nature and in Art]

In Great Ormside
Freestone white quarrye S.W. from the church ½ a mile towards Ashby. \ Query: if not that on The Heights / out of which they thinke Apleby Castle was built – The read quarry a little above it.
Has no waife & stray.
In the Eastward, 1 demaine.
A fine cross in the N. end.

[15] Transcribed as written.
[16] Having the right to vote. *OED*. After finding that elections increasingly involved voters of 'low estate', a statute of 1429 decreed that only freemen who owned freehold land (that is, not leased from the land's owner) worth 40 shillings had the vote. See 'the 40-shilling franchise' in https://www.parliament.uk.

Lile Ormside
Truglebanke[17] Closes, sparrow hawkes; wild ducks in Hobloc Close near the beginning of the Bounder.

{In Art}
A good house at Breekes.
{ad Warcop, Mr Ciprian Hilton?}The story of William Wharton, now of Mallerstang, led from Piper † in Warcop parish to Cautley Spout in Russendale on the edge of Yorkeshire near the houses calld Cautleythwaite: Fell End Angle.
{ad Bondgate?} Query the story Anthony Stephenson of Hilton Dikes, concerneing a man led out of Bishop[ric] thither by an apparition in the shape of a bleu dog? [18]
Query of John Hill: of Crakenthorps walke.

[17] Trickle Banks.
[18] Machell wondered whether to place the first story in Part 1, Ch.23, Warcop, and the other in the section on Bondgate in Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 20]

[Parish of Orton]

[III.295]

This parish takes its name from Orton, the principle place where the church standeth. It is a vicaridge in the diocess of Karleol and in the ~~west~~ \ E. / Ward of the ancient Barony or Bottom of Westmorland. {Church 6 miles S. from Appleby & 10 N.\E./ from Kendal.}

[Bounder]

{N[orth]}
It is bounded on the N. with Crosby Ravenswith and Asby parishes. Beginning at Bousfield How (an hill by Penrith road which leads from Kendal);[1] thence, by a streight line Eastwards to Prid-hurrock[2] upon Orton Scar; thence by a direct line E. to Howgatefoot where Ashby parish comes in; thence by a streight line over Castlehow bottom till you com at the \ head of / Grabbergill.[3] Thence to Midle Busk ~~near~~ \ in / Lile Ashby-hause*.

{E[ast]}
On the East, with another part of Asby parish, from the said Midle Buske by the peat way to the midle of Sunbiging \ tarn / where 3 parishes meet. Sc. Orton having ½, & Crosby ~~Ga~~ \ Garret / Asby the other halfe of it†. Thence to the […][4] \ mere / stones called Meer Slack, where Russendale parish comes in; from which tis divided by a streight line S.E. to Hauskew-wood Neük‡. Thence down the nether side of Street Close to Bouder Dale beck foot S.E. from the church in the low end of Russendale,[5] where it enters Leun. Thence up the said beck to Bouderdale Head where it first springs, divideing it from Russendale; thence on the [Blank] with Setber↓;[6] from the said place ~~to the~~ by the ridge of the fells to the markes of Cables in Langdale fells \ as Heaven Water deales. / Thence agane as Heaven Water, to a steän that lyes in Blakethwaite Bottom; thence by a direct lyne to the Black Force in Ka\r/rigill watter.[7] Thence down the said water till it run into Leun‖.

{W[est]}
On the west with Kendal parish; from the said place, up the Leün till you com at Burrow Water Foot, so up the said water to the higher Burrow brig. Thence by Penrith way to Deming Dub. {Thence N.E. by the way which leads to Sawter wath. Thence in a direct [line] N.E. to Bousfield.}
On West with Kendal and Shap beginning at Low Burrow Bridge; so up[8] […] to Deming Dubb. Thence in a direct line West to the Cloven Stone on Stakely. Thence in a streight line E. to Gibson hill. Thence S. Eastward to Scout Green; \ 3 houses / thence down Birkbeck to Overskales. Thence up Sprokeld Sike, to Penrith highway where it springs. Thence {N.E. by the way which heads to Sawter Wath.}[9] Thence in a direct N.E. to Bousfield¶.

---

[1] MS: 'Beginning ~~at Crookdale House at a house place called Deming Dubs (an house so called) At Scar Top near Lingy Law hill. Thence as in the Bounder of Crosby, till you com at \ Howgate / Midle Busk in Lile Asbyhause~~. Beginning at ~~Howgate~~ Bousfield How (an hill by Penrith road which leads from Kendal).'
[2] Possibly 'Pind', or 'Pinde': hill, See Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 78.
[3] It is possible that Machell scored through the 'r' in this word.
[4] Here is an unclear word or symbol.
[5] MS: 'Thence down the nether side of Street Close to Bouder ~~beck foot to Bounder Foot~~ Dale beck foot \ beck / S.E. \ from the church / in the low end of Russendale.' Russendale (Ravenesdal, Raustandal(e), Ranestandale, Raunstandale, Rastendale, Rasstayndale and other variants) is now known as Ravenstonedale (valley of the raven stone) see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[6] Probably 'Selsmire' or 'Selmire', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 48.
[7] For 'Black Force', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 53.
[8] Here, the page foot has perished; one line of text is illegible, apart from the words, 'to High'.
[9] Probably, 'Salterwath', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 47.

[Machell's Notes: III.295]

*{Jo. Teby of Sunbiging. Jon War of Rus[sendale]}
†{Query if Russendale claimd none of this tarn.}
‡{Query? Right sayes Mr Procter.}
⸸{?}
‖{John Hewthwaite of Kelleth.}
¶{W. Kenyon, Oliver Thornbur, […]}[10]

[Orton Church and Bells]

[I.637]

John Bartholemew Prior of Carlile Confirm'd Orton in Westmorland (in the Time of Bishop Hugh) to the Prior of Cuinstead.[11] MS Cumb. part 1[t,] p.48, §3.[12]

[I.638]

To Orton Church belongs Orton, Bretherdale, Langdale, Raisebeck, Tebay.

[III.299]

The church is dedicated to All Saints & called Allhallows {on which day their feast was kept}[13] and is a fair Building made of white huen-stone, having a Tall Steple (yet not so high as it should according to agreement, ~~for~~ for they say its dimensions were to be taken from Kirkby Stephens.) There ~~are~~ \ is a clock in it; / Bells ~~it~~ pretty large & tunable, which are said to com from the Abby of Shap at its desolution, the greatest being caryed to Kirk[by]thore. And hereupon the Steple was built about 80 years since; before which time they shew a pit at the S.W. corner of the churchyard, over which they [the bells] hung in frames upon the ground \ with an hovel above them / & tis reported that they made a greater noyse in that place than they doe in the Steeple.

[I.638][14]

The Bells at Overton[15] which are 4 in number were made att Nottingham by John Wolley Bellfonder, for which he had in consideration of Carrier and all, 76[li] sterling: by the Hands of T. Blenk[insop], Lancelot Lancaster, [Lanc]elot Lowther of the County of Westm'land Esqs. John Thornburrow, Rowland Thornburrow & Oliver Crosland yeomen, in the name of all the parishoners. The Base bell being to be like in Sound to the 3[d] Bell of the Abby of Shap, & the other 3 Solem & Swete, consonant thereunto, ~~&~~ as appear from ~~the~~ \ an / Indenture dated the 4 of April, 21. Henry 8. [1530].

[III.299]

[Orton Church]
It much resembles the church of Crosby To which they report (but on what grounds I know not) it once belonged as an Appendant Chapple. Only tis, the pillars ~~fewer~~ thicker, the arches fewer, & the church Lower. It conteines in Length the body of it \ al of / 30 yards; the Quier Twelve; in all 42 yards. The Bredth of the body, have[ing] 2 Iles & 2 Rows of pillers, is about 19 yards.[16] But the North Side Ile seemes to be ad[d]ed at the same time that the Steple was built. Or, however, after the other part. And the whole is lately put in repere, painted & Bea\u/tifyed by Mr Kenyon[17] & his parishoners.
There is only one monument ~~in the~~ which is in the quire, a through (as wee call them) in the South Side \ thereof, / erected under a Low & mean Arch, suitable to \ the materials of it / for it is ~~of no more but~~ ruff stone & no way beautifyed. Yet I make no q[uestion] it has bin for a Priest or som man of account. The church is on a Hill \ side / & there has bin an handsom walke as it yet appears about the churchyard, at the E. End of which is a Close calld Priors Garth belonging to the vicaridge, wherein is

[10] The end of this list is obscured by the binding but could read as, 'Mr Birbeck … Constable'.
[11] Conishead.
[12] Machell cited his copy of John Denton's MS 'History of Cumberland', part of his collection of documents bound into VI.146-76 (not transcribed). For the actual text, see Angus J.L. Winchester (ed.), *John Denton's 'History of Cumberland*, CWAAS Record Series 20 (Woodbridge, 2010), 90.
[13] All Hallows/All Saints feast day is 1 November.
[14] Also numbered p.33.
[15] Overton = ancient name (e.g. 13th century) of Orton, see III.300, below. See also, Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 42.
[16] A note on MS.I.650 offers, '{Orton. Church. 2 rows of pillars, 3 of each side}'
[17] Roger Kenyon appointed in 1663 (CCED); died in 1703 aged 85; married for 60 years. His wife survived him. *N&BI*, 484.

som appearance of Ruines,[18] which make them suppose a Priory [and] a close. But it was onely som little cells belonging to the Priory of Connishead, concerneing which there was som dispute in the year 1311 twixt the Prior [and] Convent of the said Priory. & the […] Convent of […][19]
The parish is a viccaridge, Rated in the First Fruits Office at [blank].[20] The Impropriation & patronage is in the parishoners, purchased by them about 80 years since.[21] It hath wool & Lamb in kind; Hemp & line 1d. Tythe Geese, \ chickes / ~~& poltry~~ & Grise.[22]

The vicaridge house is East from the church about 10 yards, & hath a rill of water running ~~und~~ before it. […] a Beacon […][23]

[I.650]

{Oreton Parish}[24]
He [George Fothergill] once stood to be vicar of Orton & prejuditious parish gave [it] to another far inferiour to him for learneing.

[18] MS: 'at the E. end ~~Qu ut chaples~~ of which is a Close calld ~~Monkflase~~ \ Priors Garth belonging to the vicaridge wherein \ is som / appearance of ruines…'
[19] The page ends here; almost all text has perished. On the dispute, John Curwen wrote: 'But there was also a chapel here appropriated to Whitby, for in 1310, William prior of Conyngesheved, Richard de Gosefeld canon of that house, and others, were charged with entering the abbot of Whitby's Chapel at Overton, co. Westmorland, carrying away his goods, and assaulting his monks, men and servants. Cal. Pat. Rolls, 1310, p. 255.' J.F. Curwen, *The Later Records of North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 195-213.
[20] Curwen quotes the 'Valor Ecclesiasticus', 1535, in which the gross value was then £17 7s 4d. See Curwen, *Later Records*, 195-213.
[21] B. Nightingale noted an occurrence after the advowson had been bought by the parishioners. Quoting from the Orton Parish Chest, he wrote, 'On the death of Mr. Corney in 1643, Edward Birkbeck the elder of Orton, William Thomson of Cotflatt and Robert Whithead of the Park, being parishioners but not feofees, took upon them-selves to drawe or cause to be drawne a representation, to which they set or caused to be sett, the hands of divers parishioners without theire knowledge privety or consent, whereby [Alexander] Fetherston-haugh, who was chaplaine to Sir Henry Strahn (?) the elder, in service with the parliament [the parliamentary army] was presented and thereupon got induction [institution] without the consent of the feofees who had chosen another minister, George Fothergill. This action caused great strife and confusion in the parish and forced the parishioners and feofees to be at great charge and trouble with keeping out of the Church the said Fetherstonhaugh, who came in a forceable manner with Robert Whithead and divers others and did break open the Church door to take possession thereof, insomuch that the feofees and the parish were forced to watch the Church … for the space of nine weeks or there-abouts, and the minister who then officiated there was forced to preache in the Churchyard for Six Sabath days together, leaste the said Fetherstonhaugh should after the breaking of the doore, men-taine and continue his possession therein, which did not only occasion Expense to the sum of one hundredth pounds or upwards, but also did endanger the losse of the advowson contrary to all right and equatie and to the losse and damage of the parish to the vallew of six hundreth pounds.' Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1203. See also *N&BI*, 483-84.
[22] Grice are pigs. The Commonwealth Survey of 1657 lists the tithes as, 'Wool and lamb and other small tithes worth by the year £58, and likewise the glebe land which is worth by the year £4': Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[23] The page foot has perished here.
[24] Much of the text on this page is scored through, viz. MS: ~~'Ravenstonedale Parish The church has belonging to it Ravenstondale~~ […] 3 Angels [angles].' The sentence transcribed appears to allude to Machell's previous bald account of the purchase of the Orton parish advowson, see Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662*, 2, 1203, above. George Fothergill (vicar chosen by the feoffees) was born in Westmorland, educated at Sedbergh School, and attended St John's, Cambridge, from 1623: B.A. 1627-8; M.A. 1631. He was Vicar of Pontefract, 1641; Vicar of Orton, 1643-63; Rector of Warsop, Notts., 1663-83. He died Aug. 23, 1683, see Cambridge Alumni at Ancestry.co.uk. Nicolson and Richard noted that Fothergill was ejected in 1662 for not complying with the Act of Uniformity. He conformed soon afterwards and was presented to the living of Warsop in 1663. He was followed at Orton by Roger Kenyon: *N&BI*, 484.

[Orton: Constablewicks]

Constablewicks	Chapels	Gentlemens Houses
Orton	0	Mr Petteyes
Rasebeck		
Tebay		
Langdale		
Bretherdale		

[III.302]

[Orton Lordship: Freeholds]

There are some freeholds in it, but most undervalue.
1. ~~Roun~~ Tybay: about XVIII [houses] where there is a free school ab Ecclesia 1 mile ½ S.
2. Rounthwate: S. 2 miles; about X houses, where query of a well which emits ore, colours the sand & the teeth of the sheep which are inclined to feed there about,[25] of a golden […][26]
3. Burrowbrigs: S. 3 miles; II houses.
4. Gasegill-Row: about VIII or IX houses; S.E. 2 miles.
[5.] Ellergill: II; 2 miles S.E.
They pass by surrender in court. The customary tenants here have 3^{d} till they mary, but otherwise not.[27]

[I.638]

[Orton: Land Ownership and Descent]

The Blenkinsops of Hellbeck were possessed in this parish of Overton in an ancient Estate of 29 messuages & halfe the \ water / mill ~~in Coteflat, Gasegilbar~~ with certane lands in the Hamlet of Raisebeck, Stonebigging, Raysegil Hall, Coatflat, Gasegill, Tebay, Ellergill, Langdall & Stack Bridge (alias Flakebridge), holding by Soccage & fealty and the yerely rent of one grain of Cloves (gariophili);[28] sed de quo Ignor.[29]

The Lordship of Raisebeck conteined in it, as appears from a survey take about the yere 1626:

1. Sunbigging in which 8 Tenants	)
2. Raisebeck in which 12 Tenants	)
3. Skarside in which 3 Tenants	)
4. Chapple 1 Tenant	) All fineable Rent
5. Coatflat 6 Tenants	)
6. Raisegill Hall 4 Tenants	)
7. Kellett 5 Tenants	)
8. Coatflat Mill 40^{s}	)

And the whole fineable rent in the Lordship of Raisebeck was $13^{li}\ 11^{s}\ 0^{d}$, besides a Multer farme that was due but not fineable,[30] & a running Grissome.[31] These belonged all to the Blenkinsops in 1626, since which time they were sold by T.B. Esq.

[I.641]

These lands which the Blenkinsops held in Overton seme to me to have formerly belonged to one Adam de Heniscastre. for T. de Helebeck, as you may se in the pedigre, had the same by Avicia his wife who

[25] MS: 'sheep which are in^{cl} feed there about.'
[26] The last word is obscured by the binding; presumably it is 'hue', or 'colour'.
[27] 'The customary tenants have thirds until they marry.' Thirds: the third of the personal property of a deceased husband allowed to his widow. Also, the third of his real property to which his widow might be legally entitled for her life. *OED*.
[28] 'Gariophili' or 'gariofle': a clove. *OED*.
[29] 'But of this I know no more.'
[30] 'Multure'. Tenants compelled to use the lord's mill and to pay him toll for it. A 'farm' is a lease of it.
[31] 'Gressam': an entry payment when entering on a tenancy. *OED*.

was daughter to Hene\s/castre. Certane lands at Sunbigin, Rasebeck, Keldeth,[32] Coatflat, which have the fulling mill there, was given in dower with Isabell 2nd daughter of Thomas & Avicia, to Patritius de Kastle Carrok; Howbeit whether for want of Isue or how otherwise I know not, they reverted upon the Blenkinsops, for that family held them till of late yeres: The Boundary whereof ran in this manner–

S[i]cut quoddam siketum inter Overton et Raysebeck descendit per medium Free[ermire] descendend[o] in le Bibeck & itatem per medium le Bibeck descendit et Ita per medium Tybay ascendit usq[ue] le Scoddigate de Hanster, Sc [perished] irdalbeck descendit in Tybay, et ita ascend[it] per rectas metas et divisas inter Raven Ranstindall Cross[e]bygr. et Parvam Askeby et praedictam hamletta[m] in praedicta villa de Overton usq[ue] altum del Sker & Ita sequendo altum del Sker per rectas metas et divisas inter Magnam Askeby et grangiam ejusdem et p[r]edictam Hamlettam usq[ue] le Hundehow & Ita descendendo del Hundehow per pronpinquiorem via[m] in predictum siketum descendendo per medium Freeremire. [Blank] salvis tamen Nobis etc. witness T[estibus] Dns Michaele de Harclas & Johan[n]e de Rossegil militibus Johan[n]e de Helton R[i]ch[ard]o de Wartcop Henrico de Warthecopp Alano de Keldelyth, Roberto filio Thome de Langdal et alijs.[33]

[I.638]

½ of the manner of Overton, 19. Henry 7. [1503-04] was in the possession of Thomas Daker, Lord Daker, son & heir of Hum[phrey] Lord Dacre,[34] which is held of the king in Capite by Knights Service paying 2s 6d rent for Cornage & doeing service ~~at the~~ ad Com. dicti domini regis Westm'land de mense in mensem apud castrum Domini Regis de Apleby. & the said ½ valet per Annum, 10li.[35]
And Thomas ~~Blenkinsop~~ \ Beauchamp / was then seised of in his demane as of fee, halfe the manner of Wateby* & Overton, which is held of the King in Capite by Knights Service & rent to the King for Cornage, 11 shillings \ XIs 1d. / & unius denerij & by doeing service &c. & \ that the halfes of the said manner / valet per annum 10li.[36]
And that Henry Clifford Knight, affirme the said Halfes to be holden of him by Knights Service. {The Cliffords made noe pretence to Dakers estate.}

Thomas ~~Blenkinsop~~ \ Beauchamp, / father of this Thomas, dyed seised of the sam ½, 1t of May, 10. Edward 4. [1470]. And Thomas Beauchamp his son & heire, being then above the aige of 33 yeres, had & received the increase & profits of The foresaid Manner from the Time of his fathers death \ and had & received the same from the time of the takeing of the said inquisition, and did possess the same manner until then; and that Henry Clifford Knight by affirmeing the foresaid ½s of the foresaid manners to be held of him by Knights Service, received the rents and services of the forsaid medeityes[37] of the foresaid Thomas Beauchamp, the sonn. But by what title they knew not.

[Machell's Notes: I.638 and I.639]

*Wateby is in Kirkby Stephen parish.
[I.639]

[32] 'Kelleth' or 'Keldelith': 'slope with a spring', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 43. Nicolson and Burn differ from Smith: '…two Saxon words, 'keld' which signifies a well or spring, and 'lyth' which signifies light or soft: *N&B1*, 485-86.
[33] 'It descends like a syke between Overton and Raysebeck through the middle of Freemire, descending into le Bibeck and so it descends through the middle of le Bibeck and so it ascends through the middle of Tybay as far as the Scoddigate of Hanster […] descends into Tybay, and so ascends through the right markers and boundaries between Ranstridall, Crossbyg[arrett] and Little Askeby and the aforesaid hamlet in the aforesaid vill of Overton as far as the heights of Sker and so following the heights of Sker along the right markers and boundaries between Great Askeby and its grange and the aforesaid hamlet as far as le Hundehow and so descending from le Hundehow along the nearer road to the aforesaid syke descending through the middle of Freeremire [Blank] Apart from us, however, the witnesses are Lords Michael de Harclas and John de Rossegil, Knights; John de Helton, Richard de Wartcop, Henry de Warthcopp, Alan de Keldelyth, Robert son of Thomas de Langdale, and others.'
[34] Machell rarely spelled 'Dacre' in this way, usually referring to 'Lord Daker', but see the note on I.639.
[35] 'At the court of the said King at Westmorland from month to month at the King's castle of Appleby. And the said half is worth £10 per annum.'
[36] 'unius denarij' = 'of one penny', i.e. cornage of 11 shillings & one penny.
[37] Moieties: halves.

Rent belonging to Ga\y/segill Hall, as appear from a Rental taken the 30. Henry 8. [1538-39] ~~Att~~ out of Raysebec, Sonbyngyng[38] \ & / Cottflatte: in all 12^{li} 18. 3.
33. Henry 6. [1454-55]. It is writ the manner of Rasegill Hall with the whole Lordship, but then the lands & Tenements in Overton Teby seem dist[…][39]
I finde Margaret de Dacre dame de Gildesland in a Fre[nch] writeing in the 16. Edward 3. [1287-88]. But before that [Blank] was Lord of Gils[land] as then may [be seen] amongst the Barwises [records] in Apleby.

[III.300]

[Lordships]

There are 4 lordships: Orton, Tebey & \ hamlets / Langdale & Bretherdale.

I. Orton

Orton\ well Scituate in a Bottom on Springs. /Anciently Overto[n] from its Scituation from Apleby, being over the Fell. {Apleby road comes by this town to Kendal, with bridges convenient.} It is a market Town, they say, by Ancient charter*, their market day Wednessday, anciently Friday, and they have a fair the Friday afore Whitsuntide, and after that each fortnight market day till midsommer. Their Acres are by Estimation, & should be 7 yards broad & 7 score long: Value per annum, ar[able] 10s; med[ow] 10.[40] past[ure] 0.

In Orton: The Church, Vicaridge, School.
The Tenants are Generally freehold, about six score, who purchased themselves of my Lord Arrundell as Chief Lord,[41] & the Blenkinsops of Helbeck as ~~mean~~ a Co-partner, at 60 years purchase, about 70 years since. {An court of Arundell.}They [pay] nout geld to Apleby Castle 5^{s} 1^{d} in the Town of Orton Some pay fineable rents to others \ that paid the purchase / that could not purchase themselves to be free, Sc. 4: to Mr Birke, Oliver Whitehead, George Fothergil & Thomas Birbeck. They have a Court Barron, Leet? kept in any place of the Lordship that the Steward appoints. No manner house in memory of man†.

There also belong to Orton manner:
1. S\c/arside. IV [houses]\ ½ mile E. / an hamlet.
2. Rasebeck. XII [houses] \ 1-mile E. /
3. Sunbiging hamlet. \VI [houses] \ 1 mile ½ E. /
4. Kelleth. VIII [houses] \ 2 miles S.E. /[42]
5. Rayne. Houses \ II. 1 mile ½ S.E. /
6. Rasegil-Hall. \ 1 mile S.E. II [houses] /
7. Coatflat. V [houses] \ Mr Birke / 1m. S.
Bousfield.VI [houses] \ ¼ N.W. /
Parke. IV [houses] \ ¼ N.W. /
Scales. \ 2 miles S.W. / IV [houses] Most of them freeholds.[43]

[Machell's Notes III.300]

*{? Mr Birbeck.}
†{No toll.}

[38] Sunbiggin.
[39] The word are obscured by the binding.
[40] No denomination of coin given.
[41] As the tenant purchase had occurred 'about 70 years since', it is probable that the then Earl of Arundel was Thomas Howard, 14th earl (1585-1646). This Thomas Howard had commercial interests in the north; his mother was Anne Dacre, daughter and coheir of Thomas, Lord Dacre. See R. Smuts, 'Howard, Thomas, fourteenth earl of Arundel, fourth earl of Surrey, and first earl of Norfolk (1585-1646), art collector and politician'. *ODNB*.
[42] Marginalia here, relating to Kelleth, are obscured by the binding.
[43] Roman numerals represent the number of tenements.

[I.640]

{Hall; Petty}[44]
Here is an House lately built, finer than the rest, & ergo called an Hall, tho that be proper to manner houses only, and so used originally. It is the dwelling of a good substanshall & honest familie of the Pettyes (freeholders? there). There is a pedigre (& very fair one & of many descents) sign'd by Mr Dugdall (but I have heard himselfe complaine of his rashness in dooing of it) which deduceth them from one Sir Oates Petit Knight: Lord of Ardever in Cornwall, whose Coat was Argent; a Lyon Rampant, Gules; Langed & membered Azure, with a Pheon in dexter point (as I remember of the 2nd). Mr Petty of ~~Lincolns~~ \ the / Inner Temple has the pedigree & is of the same familie with the Pettyes of Oreton; for they of Oreton came lately from about Skipton in Yorkeshire, where this Petty was borne.[45]

[I.641]

{Sunbiging}
In Sunbiging, T[homas] B[lenkinsop] had 3 ~~Messuag[es]~~ & 3 oxgangs of Land: ped. Henry 5.[46]

II. Tebay

[III.301]

Tybay: S. ab Ecclesia 1 mile ½.

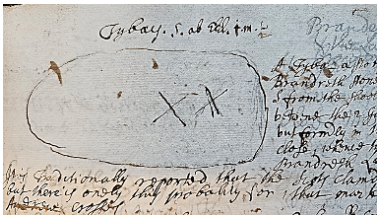


Figure 1.20.1. Brandreth Stone. III.301.

Brandereth Stone[47]
At Tybay a stone called Brandreth Stone[48] \ about / 6 score yards S. from the s[c]hool, in the hedge between the 2 Gallober Closes[49] but formerly in the farther close, whence the lands are Brandreth Lands. It is Traditionally reported that the Scots clamd thus far, but there is onely this probality: for that [the] markes are 2 St Andrew crosses.

[III.298][50]

[Tebay School]

Westmoreland
Tibay in Orton parish
For his honourable friend
Mr Jackson, Schoolmaster at Appleby, this.

[44] Sometimes referred to as Orton Old Hall, or as 'Petty Hall'.
[45] John Curwen described this hall as 'a low two storeyed building. Over the front door appear the initials and date: G.B. 1604 M.B., commemorating the rebuilding by George Birkbeck. In the 17th century the Hall was purchased by the Petty family. A panel over a fireplace bears the Petty arms, disallowed by Dugdale, viz.: three castles with a pair of compasses, together with the initials and date C.M.P. 1689,' Curwen, *Later Records*, 195-213.
[46] 'In a pedigree of Henry V's reign.' It is instructive that there is no mention in this chapter of one of Sunbiggin's famous sons, the Quaker, George Whitehead (1637-1724). See Nigel Smith, 'Whitehead, George (1637–1724), Quaker leader and writer. *ODNB*.
[47] Ink superimposes pencil in notes, here. After 'Brandereth Stone & the lands', the rest of the line is illegible.
[48] 'Brandreth Stone': 'a granite boulder set against a field-wall, 500 yards N.N.W. of the modern church, is about 3¾ft. by 2½ft. It has no indications of working except a small rough cross on one corner. There are said to have been two crosses; the stone was reputed to have been a boundary-stone between the English and Scots.' British History Online, *An Inventory of the Historical Monuments in Westmorland* (London, 1936), 225-26.
[49] In Tebay. 'Gallaber' (now 'Galloper'), see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 52.
[50] This page is made from the addressed and sealed page of a letter written by Roger Kenyon, incumbent at Orton.

In answer to query, Aug. 16, 1673.
Sept. 13, 1673

This free school of Tibey in the parish of ~~Oveton~~ \ Orton /and Countie of Westm'land founded there in the yere of Our Lord 1672. Mr Rob[ert] Adamson born of the sayde parish the foundre thereof \ endowing it / qualifying it with about 13[li] per annum forever. The first and present schoolmaister there Mr Robinson. The Feofies appointed for tyme being for the right ordering and governing this sayd schoole:[51]
Rog. Kenyon, cleric[52]
Mr Tho. Birbeck[53]
William Adamson[54]
Tho. Denison[55]
Rob. Wilson[56]
Jo. Thornborow[57]
Tho. Atkinson, Dr
Tho. Crosbie
Sir, Yr servant and cordiall well-wisher
Rog. Kenyon[58]

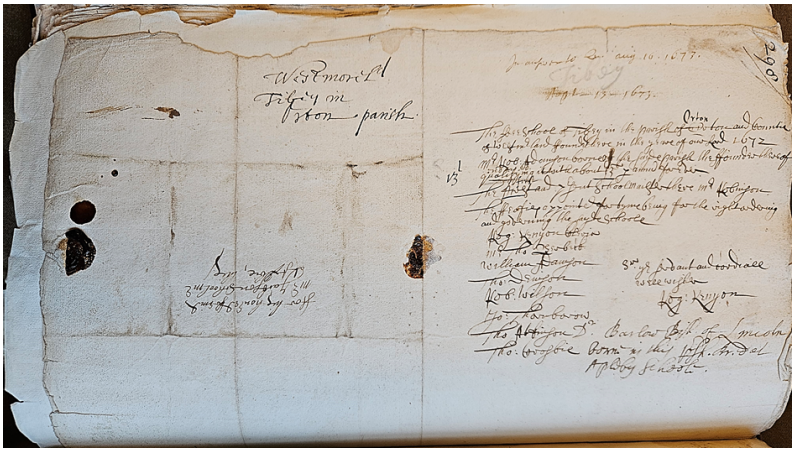


Figure 1.20.2. Letter, 1673. III.298.

[51] Tebay School was 'founded and endowed by Robert Adamson on 30 April, 1672. He gave certain houses and 24 acres of land called "Ormandie Biggin" and "Blackett Bottom," in the manor of Grayrigg for the maintenance of a schoolmaster. He stipulated that all his relations and friends, all inhabitants of Roundthwaite, all poor people in the parish of Orton, all foreigners whatsoever and all contributors to the school should have their children taught free.' Curwen, *Later Records*, 195-213.
[52] Roger Kennion/Kenion/Kenyon: incumbent at Orton from 1663 until his death in 1704. CCED.
[53] Two men named Thomas Birbeck are named in the Orton Town 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73: Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[54] William Adamson is named in the Tebay 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73, Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[55] Two men named Thomas Dennison/Dennyson are named in the Birkbeck Fells 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73, Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[56] Robert Wilson is named in the Bretherdale 1669-1672 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73: Curwen, *Later Records,*195-213.
[57] The name John Thornborrow appears in the Langdale and Raisbeck Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n. 73: Curwen, *Later Records,* 195-213.
[58] Sent by Roger Kenyon (perpetual vicar of Orton. CCED) to Mr Jackson, schoolmaster at Appleby. Jackson acted as Machell's informant in 1673.

[Machell's Note: III.300]
Barlow, Bishop of Lincoln, born in this parish, bred at Apleby schoole.[59]

[III.301]
Over the school, which is 2 stories high with convenient Romes above for a Schoolmaster, is this Inscription.

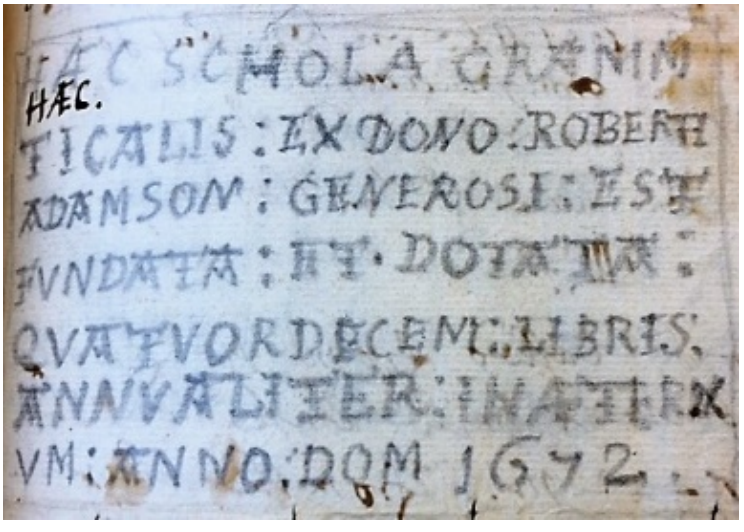


Figure 1.20.3. Inscription, Tebay School. III.301.

HÆC SCHOLA GRAMM
TICALIS: EX DONO. ROBERTI
ADAMSON: GENEROSI: EST
FUNDATA: ET. DOTA PA:
QUATVOR DECEM. LIBRIS:
ANNUALITER: IN ÆTERN
VM: ANNO. DOM 1672[60]

Adamson, born in Roundthwate, indowed it, But it was built by the Inhabitants of Orton parish, Mr Kennion, the Vicar, labouring in it for a Subscription; & those who subscribed and their posterity & the founders Kindred are free, the rest not.[61] The 1ˢᵗ schoolmaster was Edward Robinson,[62] succed[ed] by Mr William Noble, the present Schoolmaster.[63]

[Castlehow]
About the same distance directly N. in a place called Castle Gre[en] is part of a Round Mount with a Trench on the outside and hollow in the midle, which is calld Castlehow, the Remainder being worn away by Violent Incursions of the River Leun. And there is another Hill calld Castlehow near Greenholm about halfe \ mile / west from hence, on the S. West of the River Beck near to the place where it enters Leün. But hath no appearance of Trench about it. Castlehow seames a mou[n]t of war,

[59] This comment is in Machell's hand. For Machell's treatment of Thomas Barlow, see I.639 and I.642A, below.
[60] 'This Grammar school is founded from the gift of Robert Adamson, gentleman, and endowed with fourteen pounds a year for ever, in the year of our Lord 1672.'
[61] See above, III.298, 'Tebay School'.
[62] Edward Robinson appears in the Orton Parish School records in 1675, and at Warcop Parish School in 1680. CCED.
[63] William Noble is listed as schoolmaster from 4 June 1680 to 13 May 1708. CCED.

and there 2 great mountanes, one calld Jeffrey Burrow,[64] S. of Rownthwate, and the other, Lords Seat in Lan[g]dale Lordship. But on what occasion it is not know.
Here is no manner house nor never any footsteps of one in the memory of man.[65] It is held of Lord Wharton, by fineable rent; much of it purchased to an 8^{d} fine, but som arbitrary, & it payes nout geld to Appleby Castle.[66] It is in the East Ward & Barony of Westm'land. No bounds. Court Baron is kept at Gasegill, but ancient[ly] at Greenh[olm].

[I.641]

[Ellergill]
A Tenement called Ellergill in the Hamlet of Gasegill in the village of Tybay, belong'd 2. Henry 5. [1414-15] to Thomas de Apleby vid. Apleby,[67] & was enfoeffed upon him & his wife. Att Apleby Anno superdicto. William Mauchell inter alias.[68]
Ellergill notwithstanding should seem to have bin a Lordship, for there was Capitale Messuagium [i.e.] a manner house, 10. Edward 2. [1316-17]. And a family of that name. For William the son of Th[…][69] de Ellergill made over the same to Richard de Blenkinsop & Isabel his wife*, with all his lands and medows with there appurtenances there. And allso the Homage & Service of Richard, son of Robert de Gasegil, i.e. all the clame & right which he had to all the lands & Tenements, wards & relieves which might fall to him in the same paying to the Lords of the Fee xxii^{d} pro Omnibus servis.[70] [Witnesses] Robert le Engleys, Robert de Askeby, John de Rossegill militis, Henry de Warthcop Vic. West.,[71] William de Helton, Henry de Ha[…][72] Thomas filio de Robert de Langdal (Keldelyth gave name to a family William de Keldelayth) And Richard the son of Robert Gasegill, conveyd to the foresaid Richard de Blenkinsop all his houses toftes lands & Tenements cum pertinentijs[73] in Ellergill.

1. Edward 1. [1272-73]: John de Ellergill had Isue
William de Ellergill

\ Keldellyt. 1. Ed. 1. /
Alan de Kellet [had Issue]
William de Kellett

Robert de Langdale

Richard de Gasegil [had Issue]
Robert de Gasegil. 10. Edward 2. [1281-82]

Lang gill?
This place & parish is honoured \ as Appleby School / with the birth of Dr Thomas Barlow somtimes Provost of Q[ueen's] College in Oxford &c. whose picture [is on the facing page].[74]

[64] 'Gefferyes Hill' or 'Jeffrey's Mount', see Smith, *Place-Names 2*, 53.
[65] Footsteps = foundations.
[66] Nout geld: a toll on cattle.
[67] 'See my chapter on Appleby'. The information does not appear in Machell's chapter on Appleby.
[68] 'In the year above said, witnessed by William Mauchell amongst others.'
[69] The name is obscured by the binding.
[70] 'For all services.' Some text here is obscured by the binding.
[71] 'Sheriff of Westmorland.'
[72] Blotted word; perhaps 'Haverington.'
[73] 'With their appurtenances.'
[74] See I.642A. Thomas Barlow (1608/9-1691), bishop of Lincoln, was born at Long-Gill, Orton, son of Richard Barlow (d. 1637). He was educated at Appleby grammar school. He matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1625, aged sixteen, later becoming a Taberder. He graduated BA in 1630 and MA in 1633, when he was also elected fellow of Queen's. See John Spurr, 'Barlow, Thomas (1608/9-1691)'. *ODNB*.

[Machell's Notes: I.641]
*Not[e] that there is no more to be gathered from Helbecks conv[eyance] than this. But this may be added, that they used the same seale as an in fal. Argent.)[75]

[III.302]

III. Langdale

Langdale: so called from the length thereof, being above 4 mile lonke[76] on the S. side of Leun: 2 miles S.E. from the church.

{Freeholds}
It is a lordship, belong to my Lord Wharton. 5 or 6 freeholds & som under vallue; the rest: som arbitrary & som fine certaine. Testibus Oliver Thornburrow.

{Rarities.}
More game.
No ox-geld paid that he knows on.[77]

{Descent}
Nothing.

{Hamlets 4.}

[1. Langdale]
{Low end of Langdale is an ancient hall-house pleasantly scituated. It lies upon the beck side near unto […][78] Leun, said to have bin the hall or manner-house, and so indeed it appears to be, both by the window in the W. end of [it] being castle-wise [and] from the arched timber. Belonged to one Langdale lost at Co[…][79] now Oliver Thornburs.}

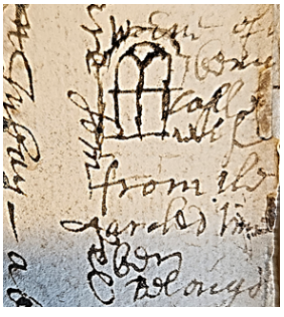


Figure 1.20.4. Ancient Hall house with window 'castle-wise'. III.302.

[I.640]
There are many places which bear this name, & ergo I shal not deduce the original of Sir Marmaduke Langdale from [the]nce, because I know well he nor his ancestors had never title here: And I shall take occasion from the pla[ce] here to insert his pedigre, in regard he had a [tit]le from this County being Lor[d] Westmorland*.

[Machell's Notes: I.640]
*See my Little booke of Familiyes & places.

[75] The meaning of 'in fal argent' or 'in ful Argent', is unclear. An infula is a heraldic symbol signifying a cap, as in 'Argent, an infula embowed at the end gules, turned up in form of a hat': https://www.heraldsnet.org/saitou/parker/Jpglossa.htm.
[76] 'Long.'
[77] Otherwise known as nout-geld (see the English Glossary).
[78] Words here have perished.
[79] Some of this margin sentence has perished; some is unclear.

Memorandum. There is [an] excellent pedigree (as I remember) in a visitation of [the] Shires penès Mr Knight juxta Novum Exchange, in […]am Yard[80] {which he promist to give with all his books to St Johns in Cambridge.} I have this account allso out of Flower *Visitation of Yorkshire* 1563. Vide etiam in Libro and MS Genealog.[81]

[III.302]

2. Coatgill. IIII houses 2 miles ½ S.E. from the church.
3. Flakebridge. IIII [houses] 2 miles ½ S.E.
4. Lang gill.

1 single house, the lands of which are some free, some fineable \ & has a mill there belonging unto it. / It is said one of the Lords bestowed it on a Barlow that was his servant, and her[e] was Born the learned Dr Barlow, Fellow and after Provost of Queens, and now Bishop of Lincoln – who did not read the Declaration – nor injoyne it [on] his clerge; only dispersd it, as James Birke his Steward assured his friends in Letters from Bucsden.[82]

[I.639]

[Oreton. Thomas Barlow, Bishop of Lincoln]

In this parish was born \ of mean parents / T.B.[83] Provost of Queens College in Oxford. He had his first Education at Appleby School whence he came to Oxon and there improved himselfe so much that he got the repute of one of the most learned men of that Aige his excellence consisting in Controvert Divinity. He was translated from the Provostship to the Bishoprick of Lincoln, reconting from his Consecration on the 27 of June 1675.

He had many good qualityes, but Courted Fame so much that he would doe anything allmost to cheat the world into a good opinion of him, being not in the least coveteouse of money but shamefully gready of common reputation and popular applause; one that could rub of[f] any shame with a few fawneing words and fair pretences full of promises, but very barren & empty in performance {a man whose deed consists all together in words & Liberality in promises; for when he hath said, he hath don, & you gett no more}. He was in crafty witt subtill enough; in speach pleaseing, in entertainments liberal, & beloved of all but those that knew him; \ to his friends treacherous, to his foes Irreconcileable. / Thus, he was before Consecration. God make him better for the Time to come*.[84]

[Machell's Notes: I.649]

*{Tho this be true I will not allow of it; Charity covers a multitude of faults.}

---

[80] 'Near the New Exchange.' The name of the yard is obscured by the binding. In V.2C Machell wrote, 'I sent you a letter (since my notes) & desired you to consult a little booke in 4^0 call'd the *Visitation of Cumberland and Northumberland*, which Mr Knight has, who is the kings chirugion, & lives behind the New Exchange.' Mr Knight was the king's surgeon.

[81] 'See likewise in [my] book and MS of genealogy.'

[82] In his later years (even while bishop of Lincoln) Thomas Barlow lived in Buckden, Huntingdonshire. While Machell's criticism of Barlow in the paragraph below is swingeing, the point he is making here relates to Barlow's attitude to the (1687-88) Declaration of Indulgence (greatly opposed by many Anglicans because it granted tolerance to various Christian denominations), see Scott Sowerby, *Making Toleration: The Repealers and the Glorious Revolution* (Cambridge, Mass. 2013), 171. When the bishops were told by James II that they should order the Declaration of Indulgence to be read from all the pulpits in their dioceses, Barlow's response was to equivocate – knowing that such equivocation left room for clergy NOT to read it. A letter to one of his clergy dated 29 May 1688 remarks that, 'whether you should, or should not read them, is a question of that difficulty, in the circumstance we now are, that you can't expect that I should so hastily answer it'. He would not seek to persuade or dissuade the writer. 'Only this I shall advise, that, after serious consideration, you find that you cannot read it, but reluctante vel dubitante conscientia, in that case, to read it will be your sin, and you to blame for doing it.' See John Spurr, 'Barlow, Thomas (1608/9-1691). *ODNB*. It was behaviour such as this that persuaded Machell that Barlow was a no more than a casuist.

[83] Thomas Barlow.

[84] Gibson's extended edition of Camden's *Britannia* (to which Machell contributed the additional Westmorland section) alludes only briefly to Barlow: 'The river Lune rising a little above Russendale, runs by Lang-gill, where Dr Barlow late Bishop of Lincoln was born, in April 1607.' See *Camden's Britannia newly translated into English, with large additions and improvements; publish'd by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695), 'Additions to Westmorland', 811-12.

[I.642A][85]

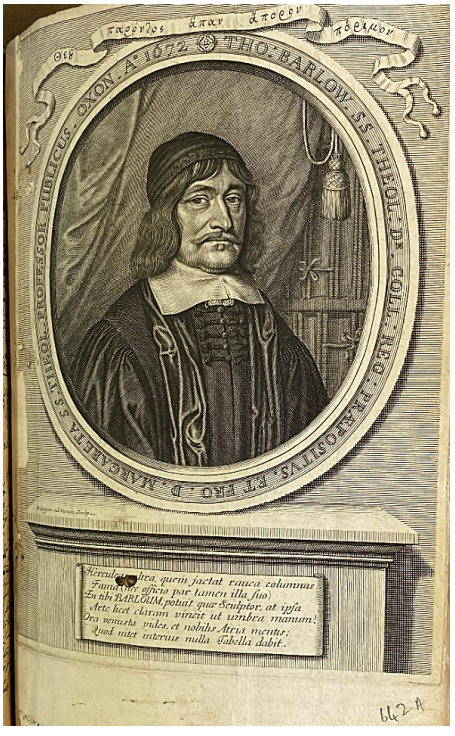


Figure 1.20.5. Engraving. Portrait of Thomas Barlow D.D.
Provost of The Queen's College and Lady Margaret Professor of Divinity, Oxford, in the year 1672. I.642A.

[Legend]

THO BARLOW SS THEOL DR COLL REG PRAEPOSITUS ET PRO D MARGARETA SS THEOL PROFESSOR PUBLICUS OXON AO 1672
THOMAS BARLOW SANCTISSIMAE(?) THEOLOGIAE DOCTOR COLLEGII REGINAE PRAEPOSITUS ET PRO DOMINA MARGARETA SANCTISSIMAE THEOLOGIAE PROFESSOR PUBLICUS OXONIENSIS ANNO 1672[86]

[Verses]

Herculeas quem jactat ultra rauca columnas
Fama (nec officio par tamen illa suo)
En tibi BARLOUM, potuit quae Sculptor, at ipsa
Arte licet claram vincit ut umbra manum!
Ora Venusta vides, et nobilis Atria mentis;
Quod nitet interius nulla Tabella dabit.[87]

[III.303]

[85] This page consists of a copy of David Loggan's engraving (27cm x 17cm) of Thomas Barlow, bound into this part of Machell's MS. The original (240mm x 171mm) was created in 1672. It is displayed in the National Portrait Gallery; see its website online. The Greek text above Barlow's head translates as, 'God being present, everything impossible [is] possible.' The pagination at the foot on the right is 20th century.
[86] 'Thomas Barlow Doctor of Sacred Theology, Provost of The Queen's College, and Lady Margaret Public Professor of Sacred Theology at Oxford in the year 1672.'
[87] 'Behold before you the man whose reputation Fame (though not equal to her task) loudly broadcasts beyond the Pillars of Hercules: BARLOW, such as the sculptor could render him. Yet in the very work he overshadows the artist's hand, illustrious though that be! You see a gracious visage, and the portals of a noble mind; what shines within no image will portray.' Compare with Machell's wry conclusions on I.639, above.

IIII. Bretherdale

The Lordship of Bretherdale: so called, they say, because of 3 bretheren to whom it belongd*.
It has 2 villages or hamlet:
1. Bretherdale. 3 miles S.W. from the church; about XI house; excellent churchmen for freq[uenting] the church & paying their tythes.
2. Dalehead. 3 miles &c. S.W [ab Ecclesia]; about V. houses and som other stragling houses.
No freeholds: customary tenants, arbitrary under my Lord Wharton. But tis said to have belong'd to Byland Abby† or som other religiouse place & so had priviledge of Sanctuary, & keeps Court Leet & Baron at Robert Brinslesses, being Baly[88] at the Dale Foote. They [take] up waif & strayes for Lord Wharton her[e]. They pay nout geld to Apleby Castle‡. Blew rag'd slate: 3 miles S.W. Store of small ash, birkes[89] & underwood. And peets. Som tenants there belong to Crosby Ravensworth but the fines of both Lords I am not assied of.[90]

[Machell's Notes: III.303]

*[Witness] T.
†{?}
‡{Query of George Wilson of Bretherdale.}

[I.406]

[V.] Raisbeck

Raysebeck in the county of Apleby.[91] XXXIII. Henry VIII. [1541-42]. Blenkinsops.
T.B. in his will, amongst his other gifts to religious societyes, Anno 1536. gave 6s 8d to the fryars of Apleby. Month-mynde was a monthly commemoration on which a Trental of mass[92] was sung for the soule of the dead: 37. Henry 8. [1545-46].

[III.205]

[Things remarkable in Orton Parish]

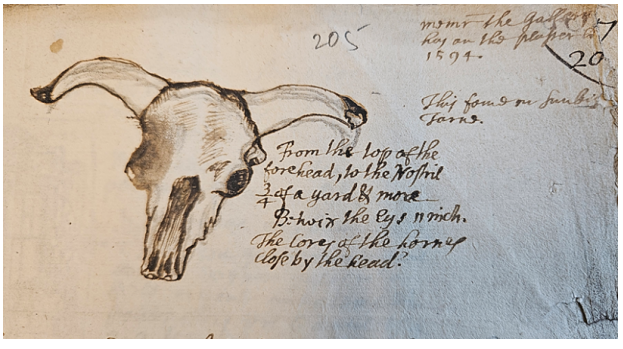


Figure 1.20.6. 'Found in Sunbiging Tarne'. III.205.

This found in Sunbiging Tarne. From the top of the forehead, to the Nostril ¾ of a yard & more – Betwix the eys 11 inch. The cores of the hornes close by the head?

[88] Bailiff.
[89] Ash and birch trees.
[90] Perhaps, 'apprised'.
[91] In the Barony of Appleby.
[92] A 'month's mind' is a requiem mass celebrated circa one month after a person's death in memory of the deceased. Trental: a set of thirty requiem masses, said on the same day or on different days; also, the payment made for this. *OED*.

[III.300]

At Fribigins,[93] 1mile E. from the church, a spring which turnes or breakes milk into a curd.

An horse rase at Beck, 1 mile ½, which is 3 mile turn stoope,[94] every Michaelmas Day for a Flag[on] &c. Given by the neighbourhood.

[III.474A]

There is a well \ on the moore / in a place called ~~on the moore~~ Crosslack, 3 quarters [of a mile] south from the church & within a bowshot of Coatflat, which springs in a bog & is coverd over with a blew skin. The taist differs little from common water, but that it is a little brackish. It is said to cuer soer legs & that it would colour silver like brass, the latter of which I tried to effect but it would not performe it; whether the season of the year was over, it being in October, or the report be false, I would to be farther enquireing.

[III.302]

[Rarities in Nature in Orton Parish]

The River Leun has troutes & som salmon. No limestone in the lordship, which is strange.
Daker hens in this & Orton, like a ~~partridge~~ 2[d] chicken of a blackish brown with white feathers in the wing, and each much like one. In winter they feed in the diches; in sommer in the corne. They have feet like an hen but somthing webd & are amphibious.[95]

[III.300]

Sunbigin Tarn: trouts & eales in great store.
The whol Lordship upon a limestone.\ \Blew /slate at the head of Bretherdale 2 miles W. from the church.
Oker in Orton Skar ½ mile E.[96] {Orton S\k/arr for twice 12 s[c]ore[97] the Glittering clints,[98] being stones that have holes of about a foot more or less, & deep beyond view.} In the S[k]arr are Dotterells, & great store of Moore Game on the Commons \ Lings /. Fine haut land.[99]

[I.639]

[Orton Customs]

They have \ a/ Custom in this parish on the 12[th] Eve, which they call the seeking of the flower in the well; which is performed in this manner:
The mades in the parish dress up a Baby of Cloutes,[100] which they are to hide by some spring well in the parish; & the men, seeking it, if they doe not finde it befor 12 a Clock, are to treat the maides; if they doe, the maides treat them.

[I.640][101]

Allso they use Rush bearing, the maids tyeing [a la]rge nosegay att each corner of the sheet; which [the] young boys ~~can~~ \ endeavour to / snatch away from them ere they gett into the Church; & the made[s] strive to secure them; which if they doe they sett [them] up in the place where their household sit [as a] trophy upon a great victorie.
The former of these Customes is in imitation [of] the Sages seeking Our Saviour,[102] like as the Holly allso, which is not so practicable in this place. And the other has relation to St Johns being in the wilderness & prepareing the way of Our Saviour, making the paths straight. [Testator] L. Blenkinsop.

---

[93] Frere Biggins. According to Nicolson and Burn, 'Below Frerebiggins there is a place called Frere-mire and there is a parcel of turbary called Frere-moss which probably received their names from having belonged to the Friars: see *N&B1*, 482.
[94] A stoop is a marker post. *OED*. Thus, a turn stoop shows where to turn back to the start.
[95] The daker-hen is a corncrake. *OED*.
[96] Presumably ochre: natural earthy material or clay, rich in iron oxides; ochre varies in colour from light yellow to deep orange-red or brown. *OED*.
[97] Unclear text.
[98] Clints: hard or flinty rocks, projecting on the side of a hill or river, or in the bed of a stream. *OED*.
[99] Haut: upland. *OED*.
[100] Clout: cloth, see William Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 33.
[101] Because parts of this page have been damaged and repaired, some words are now lost.
[102] See Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.171.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 21]

[Parish of Ravenstonedale]

[I.652]

Ravenstonedale Parish, so calld from the dale wherein the church standes doth comprehend in it Ravenstonedale, which is divided into 3 angles.[1]

[III.305]

{1. Division}

Russendale, anciently ~~&~~ writ Ravstonedale, is but one Lordship, divided in 4 angles. 8 score familyes.

1. Russendale Town \ stands / S.E. 7 from Appelby; Kendale is S. west from it about 14 miles & Sedber S.E. from it 7; Kirk[by Stephen] N. from it, 3 miles. Above XX houses.

2. Newbiging.[2] 1mile N.W. from the church: a little village, well watred. Tarn House: a gentlemans house.[3] Tennant right, about XVI, and other stragling houses. At Tranny Hill House at the far end of Newbiging was born the President of St Johns in Cambridge[4] about 10 year agoe: Thomas Fothergil, a countrymans son, who f[ounded] the school.[5] There is an hamlet near, a little N., calld Brownbur \ or rigg / or som such like, in the way from Kirkby Stephen to Kendal.[6]

A mile & ½ N.W. from Newbigin, the left hand of the way to Appleby

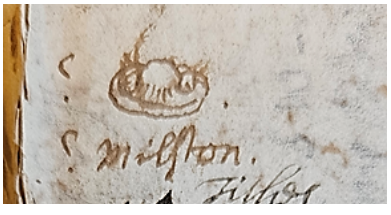


Figure 1.21.1. Sketch of a feature 'a mile & ½ N.W. from Newbigin, the left hand of the way to Appleby'. III.305.

[1] A geographical 'angle' is point of land; a cape, a promontory. Also, more generally (without reference to shape), an outlying region or district of a country, city, etc.; a remote or outlying spot; any section of a larger region. *OED*. Ravenstonedale had four angles or constablewicks: Town Angle, Fell End Angle, Newbiggen Angle and Bowderdale Angle, see III.305 & III.310, below. See also W. Nicholls, *The History and Traditions of Ravenstonedale, Westmorland* (Manchester, 1877), 52.

[2] Newbiggin-on-Lune.

[3] Owned by the Fothergills.

[4] MS: 'C~~h~~ambrid.'

[5] The Fothergill family's fame was summed up by Clement Jones in *A Tour in Westmorland* (1948). 'No record of Ravenstonedale would be complete without mention of the Fothergill family … Fothergills have been resident here for four centuries, and many of them have risen to distinction. In the reign of Henry VIII, Sir William Fothergill was standard bearer to his neighbour Sir Thomas Wharton at the battle of Sollum [Solway] Moss [1542]. George Fothergill of Tarn House, who died in 1681, was Clerk of the Peace for Westmorland. Thomas Fothergill of Brownber, who founded the endowed school at Ravenstonedale c.1688, was master of St. John's College, Cambridge … The Fothergills were large landowners and had three separate estates in the parish - Tarn House, Brownber and Lockholme.' Clement Jones, *A Tour in Westmorland* (Kendal, 1948), Ch.6.

[6] Brownber. It is interesting that Machell did not appear to recognise the name, as it is given in the answers to his queries on III.310. It is instructive that Machell also failed to mention a famous resident of Brownber: Elizabeth Gaunt, the Baptist daughter of Anthony Fothergill, who was the last woman in England to be burned at the stake (in 1685, at Tyburn), having been implicated in the Rye House Plot to murder Charles II and his brother, James: see Melinda Zook, *Protestantism, Politics and Women in Britain, 1660-1714* (Basingstoke, 2013), 50-54.

3. Bouderdale. 1 mile &c. W.; stragling houses: about XXX. Leun springs hear, above half a mile distant from Lang\ gill*/ where Bishop Barlow was born.

4. Fell End Angl. 2 \ or 3 / miles S.E.†.

[2. The Church]

The church is an old \ conventual Church / Building,[7] 30 yards long from the Steeple exclusively to the east end of the Quire, & 12 yards broad, with a row of 3 substant[ial] round pillar & 4 arches just in the midle. On the south side of the Altar is a piece allotted by dispensation of Bishop Potter for teaching \ a / School.[8] {The Steeple low, & bro[ad] which makes it seem the low[er]. 3 good bells in it: pretty tunable (a Gallery) & clock.}
And on the N. side has bin a large Quadrangle, the inner court being 20 yards square, as may yet be seen \ by the Ruines, / the bredth of the rooms about 6 or 7 yards, with vaultes underneath them, som of which are yet very visible, next to the Quier, with ribed arches. & a doer appears on the outside of the church, where they have had an enterance.[9]

{Dedication?}
{The Prior & Convent of the monastery of Watton in the Diocess of York ordinis de Sempyngham,[10] who had possession of & shewd their Title to the church there to John Bishop of Carliol, whereupon he absolved them a[b] impetitione officij 1^{0} Jan[ua[ry. Cause 4^{0} Halt[on], p.357 […]}[11]

A spatiouse piece of plane level ground behind these ruines is calld the Orchard. Over the water on the East side of it, som houses & closes called the Waincards, \ forsan Wain-gards Closes, / and over the way, on the W. side of it, 2 large pieces of ground \ Closes / calld the Colt Parke; and beyond this a bridge which is called Cowhouse Bridge; above

[7] Conventual: of or belonging to a religious convent. *OED*.
[8] Barnaby Potter DD (bap. 1577, d. 1642), bishop of Carlisle, son of Thomas Potter, mercer and alderman of Kendal, Westmorland. He graduated BA from Queen's College, Oxford, 1599, proceeded MA 1602, and was elected fellow in 1604. In 1616 he was elected provost by the fellows of Queen's, which post he held for 10 years. A persistent Calvinist, he was nevertheless liked by Charles I, who appointed him chief almoner to the Crown in 1628. He was consecrated bishop of Carlisle in 1629, but resided much of the time in the South of England. See A. Hegarty, 'Potter, Barnaby (bap. 1577, d. 1642), bishop of Carlisle'. *ODNB*.
[9] There is a Latin phrase in the margin here: 'Dominus religiosus, …ue mannerij' but it is too close to the gutter to be read accurately.
[10] 'Of the Order of Sempringham.' The Order of Sempringham (Gilbertine Order of Canons Regular) had its origin in 1131 when St Gilbert of Sempringham (1085-1189) left the household of the bishop of Lincoln to return to serve the parish church of Sempringham, of which he was rector. The only completely English religious order, it closed during the Dissolution of the Monasteries. The life of St. Gilbert is recorded in Dugdale's *Monasticon*. VII, 5-29, but the original source for all accounts is the *Vita*, written shortly after Gilbert's death in 1189 by a canon of Sempringham and presented to the Pope along with accounts of miracles so that Gilbert might be declared a saint, which he was in 1202. The *Vita* was probably exaggerated to emphasise the obstacles that Gilbert overcame to be worthy of sainthood. See a Latin version through the BL Online, and an English translation in Raymonde Foreville and Gillian Keir (eds), *The Book of St Gilbert* (Oxford, 1997.) I owe much of this information to the generosity of Jackie Wedd of Ravenstonedale Parish History Group (author of *Ravenstonedale and the Gilbertines*, forthcoming), for which I thank her.
[11] The page has perished here; the text is unclear. The date (possibly 1327) is too indistinct to quote with certainty. 'Impetitio' is a Latin legal term which means 'action to establish claim, or interference with title', see R.E. Latham, *Revised Medieval Word-List from British and Irish Sources* (Oxford, 1989: 1st edn, 1965), 237. Disputes between the see of Carlisle and the priory (under the priory of Watton, Yorkshire) occurred during the late 13th century, when the bishop of Carlisle absolved the priory of Watton of an accusation of interference: 'ab impetitione officii'. See the Deed, 'magistri de Sempyngham', in W.N. Thompson (ed.), *Register of John de Halton* (London, 1913), 211-12. The bishop of Carlisle concerned was Robert de Chause (Chauncy: bishop of Carlisle c.1258-78) but the deed was recorded in Bishop Halton's Register (1292 to 1324), see CAC(C), DRC/1/1. See also P. Turnbull and D. Walsh, 'Monastic Ruins at Ravenstonedale', *CW2*, 92 (1992), 67-76, at 67.

[Machell's Notes: III.305]

*{?}
†{Orton Bound[er]} Query the course.

[III.306]

and beneath the which bridge are to be got large blew marble-stones – which will rise of great Length & Breadth for grave stones – in the Town End beck which runns by E. end of the church. And there is another beck calld Caudbeck where they may be got also out of the river. {N.B. The lower bridge at Mallerstang Town is all of marbell, & so most part of that angle.}

[III.308]

[Presentation]
Russendale, a Peculiar.[12]
Lord Wharton: Lord; Bishop: patrone; parson: vicar. No institution nor induction.

[III.306]

{Nominatio Incumbentis}[13]
Know all men by these presents that I, Philip Lord Wharton, Baron of Wharton in the county of Westm'land, do hereby constitute, authorise and appoint Anthony Proctor Clerke,[14] to be Curate of the church of Ravenstonedale in the said county of Westm'land. And to officiate there, & to take & make probat of wills, & exercise all rights & jurisdictions, & to receive all profits of the curate or curacy there belonging, dureing my pleasure.
Given under my hand & seal at Arms the 24 day of June in the 25 year of the Reigne of Our Sovereign Lord Charles 2, by the Grace of God, of England, Scotland, France & Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith &c. Anno q' Dom' 1673.
P. Wharton.[15]

{Tithes}
Corn, woll, lamb &c. in kinde, and money for hay; due to Lord Wharton \ some time. / 420 lambs, 21 calves per annum. 30 li per annum corne. Hay under 20 li for half annum. The costs, he has settled more on the minister of Russendale, but not taken effect. Threshfield near Skipton 12^{li} per annum exhib[ition].

[III.308]

Glebe
One Green gave 2 acres the orchard.[16] One Chamberlin ~~the money that purchased the Orchard~~ \ ~~2 acres~~ / {2 acre ½, & ½ \ r[ood] /} 6^{li} per annum, for which he payes old rent but no fine. {Both of this parish.} His predecessor Mr \ Thomas / Dodshun,[17] had 20[li]; & so Mr Procter till Mart[inmas] [16]88, now 8^{li}, surplice fees & prob[ates] of will by right.

[12] 'Russendale Peculiar' appears at right angles to the text on this page. A 'Peculiar' is an ecclesiastical district (usually a parish) outside the jurisdiction of archbishop, bishop or archdeacon. Peculiars were entitled to hold their own courts and before 1858 they proved wills of people who owned property in their respective districts. See Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (London, 2nd edn, 1732), PE.
[13] Text of the deed of appointment of the curate of Ravenstonedale by the patron, Philip, Lord Wharton.
[14] For Anthony Procter's answers to Machell's queries, see below, III.309-11.
[15] The MS depicts Lord Wharton's seal here, but it is too close to the gutter to be reproduced clearly.
[16] MS: '1 Green gave 2 acres the orchard.'
[17] Thomas Dodgson was ordained deacon in 1624. He appears in Ravenstonedale parish records of in 1628 and 1636; he was was buried in 1672/3. Anthony Procter was curate of Ravenstonedale from c.1673; he became rector of Dean in Cumberland in 1689. In his early career he seems to have been a nonconformist and it is instructive that he was appointed to Ravenstonedale by Lord Wharton. See R.W. Metcalfe, *The Ravenstonedale Parish Registers* (Kendal, 1894), Vol. III, Introduction, v-vii. In a biography of Wharton, Bryan Dale opined that although Wharton was a puritan, he was not necessarily Presbyterian in the strict sense, being drawn to Protestant Dissenters generally, including Independents and others. For example, in the Westminster Assembly of Divines, Wharton acted with the Independents in opposition to the Presbyterians. See Bryan Dale, *The Good Lord Wharton* (London, 1906), 130.

[3. Other Buildings of note]

[Tarn House]
The best house in this angle and the whol parish is Tern House, belonging to the Fothergills, with a neat & uniform hall, & the only slated house in the Lordship, there being no slates to be had in the parish.
These Armes are over the tower at Tern House, and the letters underneath them: G. F. – I. F. 1664.[18]



Figure 1.21.2: Tern [Tarn] House. Coats of Arms. III.306.

[Key]
1.
2.
3.
4. The same as the 3rd.
5.

[Machell's Notes: III.306 and III.307]
Query of Mr Shaw: what fellowships in St John's College Cambridge belonging to Westm'land or if confined to any particular place or school there: Mr Calvert, schoolmaster.[19]
{Query of William Wharton of Mallerstang: his strange passage from Piper Cross to Cautley-Spoote in Russendale.}
[III.307] {Feb. 26 1688/9} {Mr Proctor, Rector of Mallerstang; [Testator:] George Haton of Wharton.}

[III.308]

[Meeting House]
In Russendale Town, S. ab Ecclesia ½ a quarter of a mile, near the midle of ~~it is~~ the East Row stands ~~a meeting house, being~~ an house lately purchased & put in repare by Philip, Lord Wharton & his discenting tenants in 1691 \ for a meeting house which is / vastly distant from the church but not far from the alehouse.[20] A man was slane \ at the repareing of it / by a piece of timber, so that its

[18] Dated 1664 on a door lintel. Marginalia here provide two pencilled sketches with initials G.F. & I.F. (George Fothergill and his wife Julian).
[19] James Calvert: deacon 1685; priested 1689; master of Ravenstonedale Free Grammar School, 1684-89. Possibly a graduate of Pembroke College, Cambridge (entered 1682, BA 1683-84). See CCED, & Cambridge Alumni Online at Ancestry.com.
[20] Philip, fourth Baron Wharton (1613-1696), the prominent parliamentarian and nonconformist, enabled Christopher Jackson (ejected from Crosby Garrett church after the Act of Uniformity) to build a meeting house at Ravenstonedale in 1662. Lord Wharton then bequeathed £100 in trust to purchase land in the dale to provide an income for him and his successors. Wharton Hall, approximately four miles from Ravenstonedale village, was a rendezvous for the ejected ministers in the district, who presumably preached in the meeting-house: see Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 47, 119; see also S. Kelsey, 'Wharton, Philip, fourth Baron Wharton, politician'. *ODNB*.

foundation, like that of old Roome,[21] was not without blood. Thus, the Lord Wharton continue in blindness – in hunc usque.[22]

4. {The Parke}

{A parke with high wall, 10 feet high, ½ a mile long, ½ mile broad; [valued at]100^{li} per annum; never stocked with deer.}[23]

[III.307]

They tell a story here (& confirm it in the Lordship of Wharton by general tradition) that one old Wharton toke the town field to make the parke on, & ~~put~~ \ gave / the tenants ~~of to~~ \ land in / other part of the common.[24] And when it was walled, rideing to see it & going over Asfell on a vere fair, sunshineing day, he complained it was misty, that he could not see, & were struck blinde so that he could never see it, but rid to the wall & struck upon it with his stick, & so never saw it. {There has bin about the parke very high walls}. A very foolish tale.[25]

And that he had a footman called Gerrard, who was to run the bounder of Russendale \ twixt sun & sun / and began at the place where the cross stands on Parke wall, N. from Russendale about a mile from it; and came within the time, but being \ far / spent, he came so near as to throw his staff to the place where he began, & there fell down dead; upon which occasion that cross was erected and is called by the name Gerrard Cross to this very day*.

{Parke in fables}

A gentleman hunting with hounds in Newbiging Field, found an hare in Russendale Parke an ran her / E. unto the Lee lands, where a woman was skaleing mould hills.[26] & they, running in amongst the hounds to catch the hare, it lept into the woman's skirt [and] got into her lap; and he, comeing in, tooke it from her & carried it home, not know[ing] her to be with childe.[27] But the woman was afterwards ~~brought in bed of~~ \ delivered of / an hare {Partus Leporarius[28]}, the foote part like an hare foot, part like a child; nor known whether male or female, but went longer than ordinary by 8 or 9 weeks. About 26 years agoe. {Ellin Hardlow. Of Nether. 1^{t} bir[th], 6 children after.}[29]

[5. Hills and Fells]

{Raset Norwest Angle} {White limestone stones}

At Raset Pike[30] – a hill somewhat resembling the roof of an house – which lyes from the church 2 mile & ½ N. & in Appelby Way†, one Thomas Scaife of Crosby Garret, having dreamed of tresure ~~found~~ hid in that hill, he got som neighbours to goe along with \ him, / & digging several hoales therein, he found a stone coffin made with 3 stones like to a sheep trough \ & another laid over / wherein were ashes & \ som / boanes of a man, like the links of a man's back, & som round ends of

---

[21] Ancient Rome.

[22] 'Right up to this moment.' Wharton died in 1696, see n. above.

[23] The deer park was created by the first Lord Wharton in 1560: see Mark Blackett-Ord, 'Lord Wharton's deer-park walls', *CW2*, 86 (1986), 133-39, at 133. For the manner in which it was enclosed, see also Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale,* 24-27. The wall was nine feet high.

[24] Nicholls remarks, 'Many of the honest yeomen were uprooted to secure the park, for at that time it was the most thickly populated part of the parish, and they were compelled to be satisfied with parcels of land widely separated from each other and to live in a very precarious way … In reading the old records, I have been impressed with the fact that the appropriation of the land was a sore trial.' Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 27.

[25] This sentence was written in a different hand, probably that of William Nicolson. See the Editor's Introduction; see also Adam Fox, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and Social History* 3 (2012), 329-47, at 343.

[26] 'Skaling' mole hills: scattering or dispersing them. *OED*.

[27] MS: 'A gentleman hunting with ~~greyhound~~ \ hounds / in Newbiging Field \ found an hare in Russendale P[ark]e an ran her / E. ~~of the hare~~ unto the Lee lands, where a ~~man &~~ woman were Skaleing mould hills, & they running in amongst the hounds to take \ catch / the hare, it ~~lept into the woman's skirt~~ \ got into her lap / and he, comeing in, tooke it from her & carried it home, not know her to be with childe.'

[28] 'Delivery of a hare.'

[29] Another related margin comment has mostly perished.

[30] Rayseat Pike.

b[one] not reduced to ashes, which, when they broake them, they were somewhat reddish within. The coffin was all white within as if it had bin don over with plaster, and the ashes were white‡.[31]

[Machell's Notes: III.307]

*[Testators] {George Haton, Len Wharton.}
†{?}
‡Seen & relate by George Haton, Wharton.

[III.308]

{Great Raset}
There is an hill in this parish, called Great Raset, which is in circumference about 60 yards, & is called Great for distinctions sake from Little Raset, which lyeth from it N.W. ½ a mile & is onely a bounder marker. For at this Little Raset (if I mistake not?) the Lordship of Smardale which lyeth north of it, the Lordship of Kirk[by Stephen] & Wateby on the east, & the Lordship of Wharton, which is E. & South E., all meet together *.

[Wild Boar Fell]
{Dowfin sty: a lingy place.}
A wild boar. A dog dowfin.[32]
Wilbright-Fell, the Countis seat. She made a chape[l] of huen stone there; now pulled down.
The place at Chapple was at Newbiging, at a place calld Chapple, but a barn built of the stones.

[6. Things remarkable in the Parish]

{Lapis Igneis}[33]
John Hunters man of Bowberhead, going to fother the cattle on a snowy morning, saw something like a coate of fier lying near the cowhouse, which for fear ~~of~~ that mischief might be don by it, hasted to put ~~it~~ out. But when he came at it ~~he~~ found it to be a stone of the bigness and shape of a goose egg, but transparent & representing diverse coulours to the eyes when he held it betwixt him & the light. But when it lay at a distance in a window or any darke roome, it shined like fier†.

Molae trusatiles[34] in a gill a mile S. of Russendale – a little milston worn out – a kanke[35] by the water. Firr rootes also, about 9 yards spred, & oake in the mosses.

[Machell's Query: III.308]

*Query the whether at the great [or] Little Raset.
†{Mr Waller. Query farther of Mr Waller, who inform'd him; for I have enquired at Bowber and they know nothing of it} Tis said that old Mr Fothergill saw it, but how it was lost I cannot tell. Query: of John Hunter.
Query of a bulls head found in a peat moss at Russendale; yet to be seen at Wharton Hall.[36]

———————

III.305

{Customs & Privileges}
A childe, 7. set tenant.[37]
A man dying & leaveing a minor (under 16); if it dye afore 16 tis infant forfeit.
If a man die without Isue & make no will, tis forfeit.

[31] For descriptions of remains found on Rayseat see III.309, below; see also Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 106.
[32] Dauphine Stye. The mountain at the head of Ravenstonedale 'bears the name of Wild-boar Fell, and is 2,323 feet high. The name is supposed to be derived from the wild boars which used to abound there; and in confirmation of this there is a road just under the summit called Dauphine Stye.' Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 104.
[33] 'Firestone.'
[34] Hand (push, pull) grain-mills.
[35] Possibly 'cank' or 'cankstone': a hard, ferruginous sandstone. *OED*. Termed also a 'useless mix of rotten stone found in quarries' by Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary* (London, 1898-1905), I, 505.
[36] Cf. Part 1, Chapter 20, Orton, III.205.
[37] Unclear numeral.

They may have a jury of assent & consent to end any differences betwixt 2 tennants: summoned and sworn by balif.}[38]

[III.309][39]

[7. Machell's Ravenstonedale Parish Questionnaire answered by Anthony Prockter, curate, and George Fothergill]

An Answer to the First Querie

{1. Ratio Nom[in]us}[40]
The parish commonly called Russendaile is (and anciently haith beene) written Ravenstondaile. There is a stone in a place of that parish called Scanda, having the print of a raven's foot upon it, and a hill adjoyning to it called Ravens Seate-hill, from which it's said the parish haith taken its name.

{2. Perambulatis; boundes}
The parish is a peculiar within the Diocess of Carlile and bounded as followeth, vizt. Begining at a place called Bouderdaile south west, and as the watter of Bouderdaile runns till it comes into the watter of Tebey and by or through Asancions and so to Blatarne;[41] thence unto Rassett[42] (wheare a great many dead mens bones have beene digged out of two round hills) where severall tomes[43] of a rude fashon doth appeare and ~~great~~ bones (both men's skulls and other bones) found of an extrordinarie strength and greatness.[44] \ It / doth appear the bodeys have not beene buried east and west but round about each Hill the heads all lying upwards towards the hill tops {N.B. ad Rassett} and as far as haith beene discovered their hands have been laide upon there brests.[45] There remains noe tradition \ or tract[46] / what the place haith beene. The hills are in form of a piramid or some thing ressembling a sugerlofe (onley broder cas[t]en at the basses). And so along to Couling-Stones adjoyning upon the parish of Crossby Garret upon the North; from thence to Sceat becke, and so into Smardaile becke, till it come at Smardaile-Flatt; and from that, till it come on the highest place on Asfell,[47] and so to Tarnewath hole adjoyning upon the parish of Kirkby Stephen upon the East; from thence (as Kirkby Stephen Way goes) till it comes at Scandaile-watter and up that watter as it assendeth unto a pathway that goes to Mallerstang-Scarth, and then on the top of Will-brough or Wildbore Fell, and so on to the head of the watter of Uldaile; and as that watter runns till it comes into the watter of Rathay upon the South, which devids it from the parish of Sedbergh and also which \ it / divides Westm'rland from Yorkeshire; and so to betwixt Walkingham and Keldon and so \ to / the head of Bouderdaile where wee begane.[48]

Answer to the Second Querie

{3. Figura}[49]
The forme of it is ovell, or oblong; and it is about 5 miles in length from Rathay[50] bridg to Bouderdaile-foote; and in bredth from Asfell upon the North-east, to the bacside of Greene-bell upon the South-west, about two miles and a halfe.

---

[38] Ravenstonedale was a parochial peculiar; it made its own probate rules; see fn.12.
[39] This page is Curate Proctor's answer to Machell's set of queries, therefore not in Machell's hand. It was countersigned by George Fothergill, a leading inhabitant.
[40] Meaning of the place-name.
[41] Asancions [Ascensions] is unclear.
[42] Rayseat. NY693084.
[43] 'tombs'.
[44] See Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 106.
[45] For this description, see also Camden, *Britannia* (Gough edn,1789), 162: 'At Rasate in Ravenstonedale parish, not far from Sunbiggin tarn, are two tumuli, in which have been found many skeletons laid round about the hills, with the heads all lying upwards towards the hill top, and the hands on the breasts.'
[46] These interlineated words are unclear.
[47] Ash Fell.
[48] Question marks appear in the left-hand margin relating to text from 'Mallerstang-scarth' to 'from Yorkshire'.
[49] The shape of the parish.
[50] The text has perished here, but the word appears to be 'Rath/Roth' followed by 'ay' = Rathay/Rothay.

Answer to the 3 Querie

{3. Solum}[51]

The soyle is of severall sorts, and the worth accordingly, but for most that upon a lime ston, and in some places yields lead oare, marle of severall ~~cabels~~ colours, and fullers earth. The soyle in genrall more apt for medow and pasture then corne. Peats and turfe for fyring good store; about a mil[e]s[52] distance from it, sevrall villages or hamlets.

[III.310]

Answer to the 4th and 5th Queries

{4. Dedicatio}

The church is said to be dedicatted to St Oswould, \ and is / but antient bulding covred with lead, \ haveing / one row of pillars, a square steeple, ~~and have~~ \ with / 3 bells \ in it. It was / indowed, as it seames by some evidence without date, by one Thorfin or Thorphinus, son of Robert, the son of Copsus.[53]

{Copsuss
|
Robert
|
Thorphin}[54]

And the whole parish made a sanctuary and, confirmed by Pope Celestine 2th,[55] and Honorius the 3d,[56] who also mad it tyth free*, ~~and~~ belonged to the abbey of Watton. This sanctuary extended to the bounds of the whole parish† and was indowed with a great many freedoms and privileges extraordinary, the most whereof \ are / now extinct.[57]

{6. Delatio et?}[58]

The whole rectory is an impropriation belonging to the Lord Wharton, who allows the Curate \ a stipend / of 20li per annum and the surplice fees and fees of the Peculiar, amounting to about 5li per

[51] Latin: 'ground'.
[52] Unclear word.
[53] Interlineation to this point is in Machell's hand, editing Procter's text.
[54] In Machell's hand. According to Nicholls, 'Documentary evidence shows that in the year 1336 the manor of Ravenstonedale, with the advowson, was given by one Torphin to the Priory of Watton, of the order of Sempringham. Burns and Nicholson … say, "The tenor of Torphin's grant, including the manor, with the advowson appendent, is set forth in an account given to the Rev. Thomas Machel by Mr. Anthony Prockter, curate of Ravenstonedale, and Mr. George Fothergill of Tarn house, as also in a manuscript, written in the year 1645, by Anthony Fothergill, of Trannahill, great grandfather of the late Mr. Anthony Fothergill, of Brownber, whose account was taken from an office copy of the charter of donation remaining amongst the evidences in the tower or palace of the late abbey of St. Mary, without the walls of York; which tower was blown up with gunpowder by Oliver Cromwell in the year 1644, and this, with many other valuable charters belonging to the religious houses, was thereby destroyed and lost. The said charter was in English as follows: Know all men present, and to come, that I, Torphin, son of Robert, son of Copsus, have given, and by this my charter confirmed to God and the blessed virgin, and all the holy men serving God in the monastery of Watton, all the whole vill. of Ravenstonedale, with that part of the vill. called Newbiggin, with the boundaries and limits thereof, as well without the vill. as within; that is to say, from the head of Beversdale, as the water of Beversdale runs, till it comes into the water of Tebey; and from thence by Hanscus to the Blea Tarn; and from thence into Rasett, and so to Couling stones, and from Couling stones to Skeat beck runs into Smerdale beck; and so by Smerdale beck till it comes to Smerdale flatt, and from thence till it come to the highest place on Ash Fell; and so to Tarnwarth hole; and from Tarnwarth hole, as Kirkby way goes, till it come at Scandal water, and so going up that water into a path-way that goes to Mallerstang scarth; and then on the top of Wild-boar Fell to the head of the water of Ulnedale; and as the water of Ulnedale runes till it comes into the water of Rothay, and as the water of Rothay runs till it come betwixt Washingham and Keldon, and from thence to the head of Beversdale."' Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 17-18; *N&B1*, 518.
[55] Pope, 1143-44.
[56] Pope, 1216-27.
[57] The privilege of sanctuary was abolished in criminal cases in 21. James I. c.28 §7 (1625): *OED*.
[58] Delatio: 'grant/stipend'.

annum. The vallue of the whole tythe is about 120^{li} per annum and haith belonged to the Lord Whartons family ever since the desolution of Abbeys.
There is also belonging to the curats maintenance 5^{li} and given by \ Mr / George Fothergill of Tarnhouse inn Ravensondaile and charged pon his customary rents of his mannor of Bleaytarne in the parish of Warcop. Also, a parcell of ground adjoyning to the back-side of the church, called the Orchard, given by Anthony Fothergill of Tranyhill[59] and one Bovell and others in Ravenstondaile to the church ther. And also 2 acres scituate on a hill called Haber in Ravenstondaile Towne Field, and halfe an acre in a place called Muffell-Gill given to the church forever by one William Chamberlain of Waingarths.[60]

6th Querie answered

{Domus rect.}[61]
There is a Curat's house near the church in the northend of the towne of Ravenstondaile, which house is thatched with stray,[62] in tollarable repayer; and one barne latley builded near to the watter called Scandall, three miles distant from the market of Kirkby Stephen. There is a parke within the said parish, belonging to the Lord Wharton, inclossed with a fayer stone wall neare 4 yards high, a mill adjoyning to it. The whole parish is but one mannor and houlden of the Lords Wharton, who haith priveleg of keeping Court Leet and Court Barron \ & probat of wills. / Ther is also adjoyning to the backside of the church, some vaults and ruiens of out buildings, which \ as / tis said did belong the Sanctuary.

Chapter 2th Querie 7th

{Divisio}
The lord haith wafieffes, strays, fellons goods and customary finable rents, but no Aincent Mannor house. The parish is devided into 4 constablewicks (commonly called angles). There is a free school belonging to the said parish, lately erected and endowed by Mr Thomas Fothergill, lately President of St John's Coledg in Cambridge (who was borne at Brownber in the said parish) and others of his name and kindred, the stipend amounting to 20^{li} per annum and upwards, which tooke its beginning the 8th day of January Anno Domini 1676, and Mr John Metcalfe, the present schoolmaster, was presented to the same by Mr Fothergill abovesaid.

[Machell's Notes: III.310]
*{? This is not so for they pay […] in kinde … moneys for hay. TM. See my other notes.[63]
†I doubt of this. It might […] the church & Religious house adjoyneing}[64]

[III.311]

{? Notatu dignum motu}[65]
There is a spring or well at the north end of Nubigin Town[66] in the said parish, formerly called St Helen's well (whear an ould chappell is said to have stood) that ebs and flowes every day; and another about halfe a quarter of a mile from Tarnhouse on the west side in the said parish, of a bituminous tast, which haith beene found medicinable for several sores and diseasses.
There is also a tarne or lough at Ravenstondale Towne head, that haith store of perches and eles in it. It is said to be 7 fathoms deep.

[59] Trannahill.
[60] In 1651, a case brought before Ravenstonedale Peculiar Court concerned William Chamberlain, who had left his tenement to his son Stephen on condition that he paid £60 out of it towards the maintenance of the minister. This money was to be invested in a way that Stephen Chamberlain and the jurors thought fit, which was in land in Hober and Mufflegill; the Lord's rent on it was to be 2s per annum. It was later alleged that Stephen Chamberlain had retained one rood (¼ acre) from the minister, the Rev. Mr Dodson., whereupon the jury, deciding against Stephen Chamberlain, requested him to yield the rood: Nicholls, *Ravenstonedale*, 56.
[61] Rectory house.
[62] Scottish: 'strai, stray'; English dialect: 'strey' = straw. *OED*.
[63] This margin comment is partly obscured by the binding.
[64] This comment is partly obscured by the binding. The binding is particularly stiff here.
[65] 'Worthy of note in its motion?' This question was posed by Machell in the margin.
[66] Newbiggin-on-Lune.

It's likewise said the precincts of this parish is free from all veniomus stinging or bitting creaturs.[67] There are in the High Street leeding from Kirkby Stephen to Sedbergh (near Rathay bridg), maney Great Stoons sett in a circle, and by some called one of King Arthurs Round tables.

In all the rest[68] wherein we are silent, you may take it for granted wee had nothing to say pertinent or warrantable.
Anthony Prockter, Curatt
George Fothergill, ~~Clerke of P~~

[III.312][69]

8. [Notes on] Ravenstonedale Parish; brought to me at Xmas 1679[70]

Q. The mon[ument] in the church. Stone. John Hunter (80) of Brownber Head.
Birth.[71] Isabel Pinder Near Newbiging. Raset.[72]
? Lapis Igneus.[73] Jon Hunter of Bowerbanke.
? Partus Leporarius[74] Isabel Pinder near Raset & Newbiging.

Ravensheved:
Ravens stone?
Ravensworth?

Raset
Raset, 60 yeare about, calld Great Raset in opposition to another (½ a mile N.W. from hence) calld Little Raset. At this the Lordship of Smerdale on the North; Wateby \ & / K. on the East; Wharton E. & S.E.[75]

[67] A mark of sanctity: cf. St Patrick.
[68] Referring to other queries.
[69] This page is the reverse of a page of Proctor's answers, later used by Machell when scribbling his responses.
[70] This page is headed 'Antiquities of Ravenstonedale 1677', in Proctor's hand, but instead was used for Machell's notes. Additionally, there is a pencilled draft description of Ravenstonedale Meeting House, not transcribed because it appears in ink on III.308,
[71] MS: 'John Hunter (80) of Brownber Head. Birth …? for John Hunter of Brownb~~anke~~\ err /'. See III.308.
[72] Isabel Pinder. For another reference to this lady – 'Isabel Pinder, midwife, near Rasset and Newbiggin' – see Part 1, Ch.13, Kirkby Stephen, 'Story of a late conjurer in Kirkby', III.194.
[73] 'Firestone.' See III.308.
[74] 'Delivery [birth] of a hare.' See III.307.
[75] This sentence is written faintly in pencil and crossed through. One word is very unclear.

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 22]

[Parish of Shap]

[III.313]

[Notes on] Shap. Parish. Abby.

The Parish of Shap, anciently Hep from the plenty of \ heps alias / choupes growing in that place;[1] {or rather from the Saxon Chepan or Chep: a market}[2] is bounded on the E. [blank]; on the west [blank].[3] To Shap Church belongs Shap, Hardendale, Rosegill, Sleddall, Waistall, Mardale and Shap Abby.

[Division, ab Ecclesia]
The Lordship of Shap; Manner of Sleddale \ S.W. 1 mile & ½; / Thorneship hamlet ½ a mile {?}; Keld \ hamlet ½ a mile. /

[Fair]
The 1[t] fair at Shap was the 23 of September 1687.[4]

[Town of Shap. Dr John Mill]
The town of Shap gave life to the learned Dr John Miln, somtimes fellow of Q[ueen's] Coll. in Oxford \ Prebendary of ~~Chi~~ Exeter / & Chaplain in Ordinary to K. Charles the 2[nd] & afterward Principle of \ St / Edmon[d] Hall \ Oxon, & Parson of Bletchington near O[xford].[5] He maryed Pric[i]la,[6] one of the daughters of Sir Edward Palmer of [Blank] Baronet about the beginning of April 1684, who dyed within a year, and left him a good estate in money but not any Isue.

[III.313]

[The Church]

The steple \ is towerwise / within 4 passes square, having a clock & 3 bells in it,[7] \ but the battlements, both of it & the church, {so exceeding low that the des[…]}[8]
The body of the church is in length 16 paces, broad 12, with a row of 3 smal round piller, 2 pillasters, & betwixt them 5 halfe round arches. And at the end of the S[outh] Ile is a large pew called Resgil Quier \ & / in the E. window of the same quier is a piece [of] broken but late painted glass, the remainder or fragment of a coate of armes: namely: On the Crist of an Helmet, a Semidragon Vert isuing out of a wreath Argent & Vert*. & something like the paw of a Drag[on] seemes to have bin in the Scutchion also. The pavement is with irregular limestone: Rep[air] indif[ferent].

---

[1] Choop, Choup, Chupe: the fruit of the wild briar, or dog-rose. *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.
[2] This margin comment is written in a different (possibly18th-century) hand.
[3] Shap: hēap 'heap, pile', might denote 'a heap of stones', from the ruins of an important megalithic monument, a stone circle, which lies on the main road up Shap Fell a mile south of the town, and a line of stones, amongst which are Goggleby Stone and Thunder Stone. 'The change of hēap or hēp to Yhep, Yhap and then to Shap, arises from stress-shifting in the diphthong and the substitution of Sh - for Hy': see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[4] 'A charter for a market and 3 annual fairs (23 & 24 April, 1 & 2 August, 17 & 18 September) was obtained on 24 June 1687, by Philip Lord Wharton, and on 14 December 1687, Lord Wharton, in consideration of one year's customary rent paid by the tenants, granted freedom from toll to them and their heirs.' *N&B1*, 477.
[5] John Mill was rector of Bletchingdon near Kidlington in Oxfordshire from 1682 to 1707. Oxford Record: Mill, Queen's Coll., matric. 14 Nov. 1661, aged 16 (as Milne); BA 1666, MA 1669, BD 1680, DD 1681, as Mill; principal St Edmund Hall 1685-1707; biblical critic 'known as Dr Mill'; chaplain to Thomas Lamplugh, bishop of Exeter, and minor canon 1677; chaplain in ordinary to Charles II; canon of Canterbury 1704; died 23 June 1707. CCED.
[6] Priscilla. See Machell's correspondence with Mill: 'Dr Mil about his marriage with Priscilla the daughter of Sir Edward Palmer', in Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.313B.
[7] In the MS, this sentence is repeated.
[8] The margin comment comes to an abrupt halt here.

The Quier is l[ength] 10; broad 6. The East […][9] window stands irregular to the N. side & not in the midle, & has 3 lights in it – in the 2 first of which are these coates of arms. [1st] Argent, Gules.

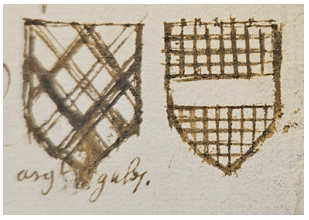


Figure 1.22.1. Shap Church. Coats of arms. III.313.

[Machell's Notes: III.313 and III.315}

*(Q. if not Lowther? Non.)
[III.315] [10]
b.12}
l. 16} round pillars x3
l. 16}
b. 6} steple 4 sq. 3 bells, clock
east windo[w] 3 lights to the N. side.
In the [first coat of arms] Argent & Gules.
In the [blank] Clifford.
Rosgil Quier: in the end of the Ro are helmet with a Semidragon Vert isuing out of a wreath Argent & Vert.

[Shap Abbey]

[I.312A][11]

The seal of Shap (and Shap Abbey) impressd, is to be found in a green box with a draw lid in the Evidence Chest at Apalby.

[I.165]

Ad Shap Abby: Sigillum Commune \ mon / beate Mariae Magdal. De Hepp. Penes Lancelotum Mauchel de Crakenthrop Armiger. Appensum Literis. Testim. Thome Sawleman clerici.[12]

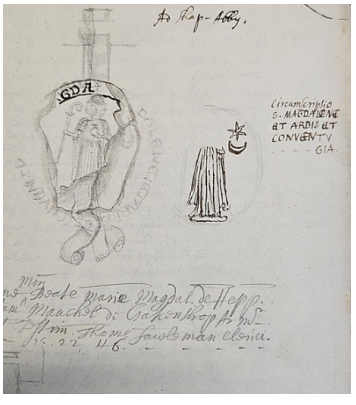


Figure 1.22.2. Seal 'Ad Shap Abbey'. I.165.

[9] There are 2cm of illegible text here.
[10] A page of pencilled notes, gathered for the information on III.313.
[11] A small slip of paper pasted to a letter cover; text possibly written in another hand.
[12] 'In relation to Shap Abbey, the common seal of the monastery of the Blessed Mary Magdalen of Shap. In the possession of Lancelot Machell of Crackenthorpe, Esquire; compared with the letters in the testimony of Thomas Sawleman, cleric.'

[Bells]
The quantity of the bells att Shap Abby may be guessed att from Overton bells, the greatest whereof was but consonant to the 3rd bell att Shap. But as to number of them I know not anything.

[I.185]

[Abbot of Shap]
The Abbot of Shap was I finde usually writ Lord Abbot. He kept 5 horses in his stable, as appear from an inventory which I have seen.

[I.312]

{Advowsons of Shap Abby; Tur. Lond.}
It appear by inquisition (in bundello escaet de anno 18 Edward 3) that the Advousans of the Abby of Hepp, together with the churches of Kirkbythore, Marton & Browham, did belong to Robert de Clifford.at: 1444 i.e. 22. H. 6.

[I.311]

[Foundation of Shap Abbey]
I suppose that Shap Abby as well as other places was allmost demolished in the time of King Edward the 2. [1307-1327]. And Robert de Clifford, bestowing on it the advousan of Warthcop, was looked upon as the Founder. For upon the back of that parchment roll in Scipton Castle, elsewhere spoke of, which was an Inquisition bearing date 43 Edward 3 [1369-1370], is this remarke:
'Anno Domini MCCCxiiii in vigelia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ quæ tunc Dominica dies erat, in crastino Commissum est prœlium Inter Regem Angliæ et Regem Scotiæ quo prœlio Dominus comes Glouĉinæ, et Robertus de Clifford et alij nobiles quam plures interfecti sunt & comes de Hertford et comes de, et ~~comes~~ [blank] et Dominus Johannes de Ferrars et multi alij magnates capti sunt. Sicque Rex Scotiæ (viz.) Dominus Robertus Bruce in Bello prævaluit & Rex Angliæ dectus Edwardus devictus est, cum partibus vix evasus. Iste Roburtus contulit nobis ecclesiam de Warthcop Anno Domini MDDDvi et erat filius Rogeri Clifford junioris, fundator hujius monasterij et reputatur (frosan pro) Reparator. {Vide Gospatricius, sed nescio an quid ad rombum Præfatio MS fol. 54. Answer nihil iste enim fuit filius Maldred (ut ibi apparet) hic filius Orms.'}[13]
But it was founded (long before this time) by Thomas, {cald Mack} the son of Gospatric, the sone of Ormes,[14] and was rated at the desolution, 166: 10^{s}: 6^{d} ob. [see] Speed.[15] I have an inventory of goods in Carta Machellorum*.

[Gospatrik, earl of Cumberland]
A little after William was crownd (which was in 1066)[16] and had re\c/onciled himself to the Kentish men, [Gospatrick, earl of Cumberland] was one of those \ great ones / which [William] tooke along with him into Normandy to secure peace in England†.

[13] 'In the year 1314, which in that year was a Sunday, on the following day was joined a battle between the King of England and the King of Scotland, in which were slain the Earl of Gloucester, Robert de Clifford and very many others of the nobility, and the Earl of Hertford and the Earl of [Blank], and Lord John de Ferrers and many other powerful men were captured, so that the King of Scotland (to wit, the Lord Robert Bruce) prevailed in this war, and the King of England (the said Edward) was overcome, and with difficulty escaped with his party. This Robert [De Clifford] gave us Warcop Church in the Year of Our Lord 1306 and was the son of Roger Clifford the younger, founder of this Monastery and thought to be its restorer (perhaps). {But I do not know whether the Preface of MS Folio 54 is anything to the point. Answer. No! For the one was the son of Maldred (as there appears); the other, the son of Orms.}' [The battle was Bannockburn].
[14] Dugdale's *Monasticon* epitomises information relating to the foundation. 'This Priory (of the Order of Premonstratenses) was first founded in honour of St. Mary Magdalen at Preston, by Thomas Son of Gospatric, and by him endow'd with divers Lands; among other things he gave the Canons here as much Wood as they would take out of his Woods, and to grind at his Mill toll-free. The said Thomas gave them also Pasture in and about Swindale, for sixty Cows, twenty Mares, five hundred Sheep, &c. With other Possessions in the Territory of the Town of Heppe where this Convent was new erected. Confirm'd by Robert de Veteriponte. Valued at 154li. 17s. 7d. ob. per Annum.' See Dugdale, *Monasticon*, 594-95.
[15] £166 [MS: 1~~0~~66] 10s 6½d. See Speed, *Historie*, Book 9, Chap.21, 'A Catalogue of the Religious Houses, Colledges and Hospitals sometimes in England & Wales': Westmorland.
[16] This date appears to have been added later.

[Machell's Notes: I.312]

*{Tamen dubito – vide in cartis de Hep collect è Dugdal *Monasticon*, et in collect meis Shap p. – è Registro de Wed[derhal]. P.1b et 14a.}[17]

This monastery, seated near to the river Lowther (alias Sleddall), was founded by Thomas the son of Gospatrik, the son of Orms, where there is a fountain or spring that ebbs and flows many times a day: S[peed] & Ca[mden]. {Orms = Gospatrick. Temp. Conq[uest].[18] = Thomas}

†Speede p.416 ~~cap 2~~ §9, in his Account of W[illiam] C[onqueror] circa anno 1606.[19]

Vocatur monasterium Beatæ Mariæ Magdelenæ de Hepp, in carta penès Lancelotium Machel armigerium ubi etiam videre è sigillum commune istius monasterii, sed paulisper an fractum. Dat. 1444 (Cur. 22. Henry 6.) vide in hoc libro St Lawrence, Apleby.[20]

[Machell's Collection of Shap Abbey Charters, some copied from Dugdale's *Monasticon*][21]

[VI.307][22]

Prioratus de Heppe in agro Westmorlandensi Carta fundationis eju\s/dem jmo apud Preston*.[23]

{e Dugdale, *Monasticon Anglicanum* 2. P.594. This is onely epitomiz'd.}

Thomas filius Gospatricis dedit et concessit et hac praesenti carta sua confirmavit Deo et Sanctae Mariæ Magdalenæ et Canonicis de Preston, qui sunt de ordine Præmonstratensi, in liberam, puram, et perpetuam elemosynam, pro Salute animæ suæ, et sponsæ suæ et omnium Antecessorum suorum, unam portionem terræ suæ in Preston in Kendale, ad faciendum quandam mansionem Canonicorum (viz.) totum dominicum parcu[m] meu[m] subtus Lackslot[24] et in Lackslot usq[ue] viam quæ venit de Prestonuthreedas inde sequendo viam de Holme; et ita sequendo viam de Holme usq[ue] ad Sicum, quæ venit de Hasaldmire; et per ipsum Sicum usq' aqua[m], quæ est divisa inter duas Prestonas, & ita ascendendo usq' ad prænominatam via[m] de Lackslot.

---

[17] 'I doubt this, however: see in the Shap charters extracted from Dugdale's *Monasticon* and in my collections from the Register of Wetheral [Priory].'

[18] Here, several words have been crossed through and awarded a question mark. The words 'Temp Conq[uest]' have been added in different ink.

[19] The passage quoted by Machell appears to be this: 'All things established for Englands securitie, and subjection now to the Normans; hee ordained his halfe brother by the surer side, Odo Bishop of Bayeux (whom he created Earle of Kent), and his cosen William-Fitz-Osburne (by him made Earle of Hereford), to bee Governours in his absence over the Realme; and in the Lent following sailed into Normandy, leading with him many pledges for their fidelity, besides other Nobles, especially such as he feared to be too potent; amongst whom, Stigand the Archbishop of Canterbury, the two great Earles Edwin and Morcar, Edgar surnamed Etheling, Fretherik Abbot of S. Albans, Agelnothus Abbot of Glastenbury, Waltheof the sonne of the warlike Siward Earle of Northumberland, Roger Earle of Hertford, Rainulph Earle of Cambridge, and Gospatricke Earle of Cumberland, were the men of greatest note.' See Speed, *Historie*, Book 9, 416.

[20] 'It was called the Monastery of the Blessed Mary Magdalen of Shap: see deed in the custody of Lancelot Machell Esq., where one can also see the common seal of that house, but only in small pieces; dated 1444 (22. Henry VI.). See in this book, St Lawrence Appleby.'

[21] Not one of this collection of charters is in Machell's hand. There is no known original charter, although the cartulary of the abbey was at Naworth Castle in the possession of Lord William Howard, when, in June 1638, Roger Dodsworth made copies of 59 charters. His manuscripts are now in the Bodleian Library, Oxford (MSS. Dodsw. 1-76, 78-115, 116-20, 120B, 121-61). Copies of the Shap charters are in Dugdale, *Monasticon,* and in *N&BI*, 469-71. In addition to the Dodsworth copies there are approximately a dozen abbey charters, or copies thereof, in the Lowther Papers (for example, DLONS/L/5/1/33/1,3), some of which were transcribed and translated by Frederick Ragg, and printed in CWAAS *Transactions*. For example, 'Two Documents relating to Shap Abbey', *CW2*, 9 (1909), 271-281; 'Shap and Rosgill and some of the Early Owners', *CW2*, 14 (1914), 1-63; 'De Culwen', *CW2*, 14 (1914), 343-427. A distillation of these sources written by Harry Hawkins, 'Records of Shap Abbey', remains unpublished in book form but is available in Pdf at harry.hawkins68@btinternet.com. I am very grateful to Harry Hawkins for this and much else, Ed.

[22] Also numbered p.1.

[23] 'Priory of Shap in the land of Westmorland. Foundation Charter of the same, though kept at Preston.'

[24] Insecure transcription. There is a field near Shap named 'Langesclac', but no other name listed in *Westmorland Place-Names* (either in the Preston area near Kendal, or in Shap rural), fits this particular word formation.

Præterea dedit eis tota' terra' subtus viam de Nathsudden usq[ue] Stainbridge usq' ad Brackenthwait, sicut Sylvas dividit & planum, et ita usq' ad terram Richardi filij Siguth, et sic ad viam quæ venit de Stainbridge usq' ad divisam de Farleton; id est totam terram quæ fuit Michalis filij Helenæ, et ita sequendo divisam de Farletone usq' in divisam inter duas Prestonas†, & ita ascendendo usq' ad praedictam viam de Wathsudden, excepto dimidio prato de Miresbrigge, & decem acras apud Siggelthwait ad salu[te]m eoru[m]. Et totam terra[m] de Sursu[m] Wathsudden silicet ubi Capella fuit infirmorum habebunt etiam de bosco suo, quantum voluerint capere, & nunc habuerint, sine visu forestarioru[m] suorum et cortices lignoru[m] quæ praeciduerint ipsoru[m] erunt. Concessit etiam eis libera[m] communiam infra metas de Preston, cu[m] omnibus alijs assiamentis & libertatibus quæ pertinent ad predicta[m] villam de Preston, in bosco & in plano, in vijis & in semitis, et in aquis et in molendinis, et pasturam porcorum suoru[m], sive plenagioru[m], & decimam panagij mei. Et molent et molendinu[m] meu[m] sine multura, quando venerint, et tam[?] Mezca fuerit evacuata; Et equu[m] proprium habuerint molendinarium, / ad meu[m] molendinu[m] cessabunt hominu[m] p[rae]nominatum, / volo quod p[rae]dicti canonici habeant & teneant eam in pace et plenarie et honorifice, in libera[m], pura[m] et perpetua[m] Elemosynam, sine omni seculari servitio consuitudine et exactione. Et ipse et hæredes sui warantizabunt eis hanc donantionem contra omnes homines imperpetuu[m]. His testibus &c.[25]

[Machell's Notes: VI.307]

*{Vel exemplari penes Jacobi Bellingham […] durat. This at Preston: a friary or Priory as I sup[pose], belonging to the other.}[26]

†{forsan sic vocat Preston Ulfred & Preston Patric quer. Tamen.}[27]

[25] (Translation, mainly taken from H. Hawkins, 'Records of Shap Abbey', 46, including a comment on a corrupt section of the Latin text): 'Thomas son of Gospatric has given and granted and by this present charter confirmed to God and to St Mary Magdalen and to the canons at Preston who are of the Premonstratensian Order in free, pure and perpetual alms for the salvation of his soul and those of his wife and of all his ancestors one part of his land in Preston in Kendale for making a house of canons, namely: all my demesne park below Lackslot and in Lackslot as far as the road which comes from Prestonuthreedas [Preston Richard?], and then following the road as far as the road which comes from Holme, and so following the road from Holme as far as the stream which comes from Hasaldmire, and by the same stream as far as the water which is the boundary between the two Prestons, and so going up as far as the afore-named road from Lackslot. Moreover I have given them all the land below the road from Wath Sutton as far as Stainbridge, and all the land from Stainbridge as far as Brackenthwait as it separates the woodland and the open country, and so as far as the land of Richard son of Sigith, and so to the road which comes from Stainbridge as far as the boundary of Farletone, that is, the whole of the land which belonged to Michael son of Helen, and so following the boundary of Farletone as far as the boundary between the two Prestons, and so going up as far as the aforesaid road from Wath Sutton, except for half the meadow at Miresbrigge and ten acres at Siggethwait for their welfare, and all the land above Wath Sutton, that is, where there was a chapel for the sick. They shall also have from my woodland as much as they wish to take and now shall have without the permission of my foresters, and the bark of the trees which they have cut shall be theirs. I also grant them free common within the boundaries of Preston, in woodland and in open country, in the roads and the paths, and in waters and mills, and pasture for their pigs or pannage, and the tithe of my pannage. And they shall grind at my mill without paying multure whenever they come and the hopper is empty, and they shall have their own mill-horse at my mill* […] I wish that the aforesaid canons should have and hold this [land] in peace and in full and honourably, in free, pure and perpetual alms, free of all secular service, custom and exaction. And he himself and his heirs will guarantee this gift to them against all men forever. These being witnesses, etc.'

'*… [The text here from "et equum …" to "… prenominatum" is corrupt. Possibly "equum" (horse) has been read for an original "quum" (= "cum", when) and the following words have been modified to fit this sense, though "cessabunt hominum prenominatum" makes no sense as it stands. Since the mill was fairly certainly a water-mill the use of a "mill-horse" seems strange. Perhaps the original sense was, "… and when they have their own milling at my mill, other men will cease in favour of the aforesaid". This requires only minor changes to the endings of the words in the text, and these endings were usually indicated only by superscript or subscript signs that were easily misunderstood.'

[26] 'Or in a copy in the possession of James Bellingham ... it survives. This at Preston: a friary or Priory as I sup[pose], belonging to the other.'

[27] 'Perhaps by this he means Preston Ulfred and Preston Patric – but check.'

[III.317][28]

Convenc[i]o: Inter Chr[ist]oferu[m] Curwen milite[m], et Hugo[n]e[m] Salkeld: 7. H6. 1428 { p[er] Tho: fil[ium] Gospatr[icij]}[29]

Universis sanctae matris Ecclesiæ filijs, presentibus et futuris, cartam istam visuris vel audituris, Thomas filius Cospatricij sempieternam in domino Salutem: Noverit universitas vestra, me dedisse, concessisse, et hac mea praesenti carta confirmasse Deo et ecclesiae beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ de valle Magdalenae, et canonicis Premonstratensis ordinis ibidem Deo servientibus, totam terram quae fuit Karl, scilicet per has divisas: de vado de Karlewath, ascendendo per Lowther apud Austrum, usque ad Langeschabeck, et sic ascendendo per Langeschabeck, usque ad semitam quae venit de Kendall, et sequendo semitam illam versus Aquilonem, usque dum veniat ad Stanirase iuxta Rafland,[30] et ita per semitam illam usque ad Rasatt, et sic descendendo extra nemus, usque ad magnum lapidem ubi homines solebant facere Lestablie, et ita descendendo usque in Lowther, et sic ascendendo per Lowther, et ultra, usque ad divisas de Rossegill penes orientem, de longo in longum, apud Austrum per supercilium montis de Creskeld et sic, usque ad Almebanke. Preterea, dedi eis vallum cum Bruhuto in orientali parte contra ecclesiam suam, tendens in longum per supercilium montis usque ad domum quae fuit quondam Willielmi King: et ita usque ad terram quae fuit Matthei de Hepp, et sic descendendo versus occidentem usque ad predictum vadum de Karlewath. Dedi etiam eis communem pasturam cum hominibus meis qui manent in Rasatt, et pasturam in Thanibord, et in Swindall ex utraque parte, usque ad supercilium montis desuper Briberh, et ex altera parte de Swindall, ultra Theniheved, ex utraque parte, ubi voluerint, et usque in Sleddall, per ita et eo amplius quod animalia sua cum voluerint et opus fuerit, possint die et nocte, infra dictam pasturam moram facere, et ad abbatiam, et ad vaccariam suam, cum necesse fuerit, ire, et redire, cum libero introitu et exitu. Hanc praedictam pasturam dedi eis et concessi, scilicet, vaccis sexaginta, et equabus sylvestribus viginti, et quinque centum ovibus, cum sequela trium annorum, et quinque carucatis boum. Praeterea dedi eis Trubarram, et Peteram, et Quarreram, ubicunque invenire poterint in territorio villae de Hepp, et viam liberam eundo et redeundo ad turbariam et peteram et ad Quarreram praedictam, et ad Abbathiam suam: Dedi etiam eis licentiam capere neccesaria, ad abbathiam suam, in bosco meo, ad aedificandum, et Comburendum, et Claudendum, ubi melius voluerint, et invenire potuerint, et cetera necessaria, sine visu Forestariorum, cum omnibus Communibus, aysimentis, et libertatibus predictae villae de Hepp pertinentibus; haec omnia supradicta dedi Deo et praedictis Canonicis, habenda et tenenda, in puram, liberam, et perpetuam elemosinam, pro salute animae meae, et sponsae meae Gretiae, et heredum meorum, et omnium antecessorum et successorum meorum. Et ego et heredes mei warrantisabimus omnia supradicta predictis Canonicis, totia omnes gentes imperpetuum. Hiis testibus etc. – 2. Dugd[ale] *Mon[asticon*], 594.[31]

---

[28] This charter was also copied by another hand on MS.VI.307, 309.

[29] 'Agreement between Christopher Curwen, Knight, and Hugo Salkeld. 7. H6. 1428. {Made through Thomas son of Gospatric}'. A grant made on the removal of the monastery to Shap from Preston in Kendale; see also *N&BI*, 470.

[30] There is a tumulus there, known as 'Stainraise in Ralphland': John F Curwen, 'Parishes (West Ward): St Michael, Shap', *The Later Records Relating to North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby*, CWAAS Record Series 8 (Kendal, 1932), 358-76.

[31] '{[In] Covenant between Christopher Curwen, Knight, and Hugo Salkeld, 7. H6: 1428: Charter of foundation of the monastery of Shap by Thomas son of Gospatrick.}' "To all the children of holy mother church, present and future, who shall see or hear this charter, Thomas son of Gospatrick gives eternal greeting in the Lord. Your company shall know that I have given, granted and by this my present charter confirmed to God and to the church of the blessed Mary Magdalene of the vale of Magdalene, and to the canons of the Premonstratensian order who serve God there, all the land that was Karl, that is to say, along these boundaries: from the ford at Karlwath, ascending by [the river] Lowther on the south, as far as Langeschabeck [now Lanshaw Hill] and so ascending by Langeschabeck as far as the track that comes from Kendall, and following that track towards the north right till it reaches Stanirase next to Rafland [now Ralfland] and so along that track as far as Rasatt [now Rayside], and so descending outside the wood as far as the great stone where men were accustomed to perform Lestabilie, and thus descending right down to the Lowther, and so ascending along the Lowther and beyond, as far as the boundaries of Rosgill on the east side, lengthwise to the south over the crest of the hill of Creskelde Sike [a field in Shap parish] as far as Almebanke [now Elmbank]. Moreover, I have given to them the boundary-wall with a hedge on the eastern side, opposite their church, extending lengthwise over the crest of the hill as far as the house that once belonged to William Kinge: and so as far as the land that belonged to Matthew of Hepp,

[IV.76A]

{Shap, Culwen, Lowther}
The Baliwick of the forrestry of Shap \ with pasture & the tenements & forest being formerly given to Thomas de Preston of Shap \ & his heires / by Sir Gilbert de Culwen, was made over to Hugh de Lowther, Lord of Lowther, 23. Ed. 3. [1349-1350]. Witnesses, Thom. De Strickland, Thom. Le Engleys, Willielmus de Threlkeld militibus, Johe de Harrington de Thrimby, John de Harrington de Saldecotis, Roberto de Buteler & Henry de Culndale, Johe de Bradley & alij.

[Machell's Notes: [IV.76A]
N.B., I take this Culwen who \ 1st / gave this gift, to be the same name with Curwen nowe. {It is so.} & their ancestors were the founders of Shap Abbey for [they have] the same Armes, & for a controversy about 18. Hen. 8. [1526-1527] about 3 messuages in Shap between John Curwen Esq., late of Caton in Lancashire, & the Abby of Shap, whereof 2. wer adjudgd, by the arbitrator, to Curwen, & 1. to the monastry.

[III.318]

{Carta fact[a] monachis de bella landa} {Not in Burn}[32]
Eboracensi Archiepiscopo totique Cap[ito]l[i]o S[anct]i Petri et o[mn]ibus S[anc]te ecclesie filijs Thomas fil[ius] Gospatricii salutem. Sciatis me dedisse et hac mea Carta confirmasse deo et sa[nc]tae Mariae de Bellanda tota[m] illa[m] p[ar]tem terre mee de Hepp que inter has divisas continetur: A Slegeterna us[que] Turneterna[m], et inde us[que] Blaterna[m], sursum p[er] sicum, us[que] ad Capud eiusdem sici, et inde p[er] divisas, quas ego cu[m] monachis p[er]ambulavi, ex occidentali p[ar]te de Tringefell p[er] fundu[m] de Langesclac, us[que] ad vadu[m] de Thornbec et inde us[que] ad fossa[m], in qua alba spina statt : et inde ex occidentali p[ar]te de Wrainsedre, us[que] ad occidente[m] p[ar]tem de heppeshaw : et inde us[que] ad p[ro]pinquiore[m] semit[am] ex oriente de withcastelgila et p[er] semita[m] illam us[que] blabec, et sic sursum p[er] blabec us[que] ad viridem plateam, ultra scaturiginem de Blabec : et inde sicut aqua cadit de Musseto inter Wacedalia et Sleddalia, us[que] Ierlesett ita q[uo]d Ierleseta erit monachor[um], et inde p[er] ciliu[m] de Ierlesleta us[que] ad Capud de haropes [Harrop Pike] et greneopes [Grenopes], quamdiu vallis durat versus Le West, us[que] ad magna[m] rochera[m], et inde p[er] ciliu[m] mont[is] us[que] ad Capud sup[er]ius de Borhra, us[que] ad via[m] magna[m] que venit de Kendala versus westmerland, et p[er] eande[m] via[m] us[que] Wascedala bec, subtus wascedala terna, et deorsum p[er] wascedala bec[k?], us[que] ad Capud inferius de wascedala bec. Et inde per divisas, quas p[er]ambulavi inter Hepp, et Crossby, us[que] ad Caldegata, e p[er] Caldegata[m] versus Le Northe, us[que] ad magnu[m] lapide[m] que[m] ostendi eis metam et inde p[er] magnos lapides in fundo vall[is] us[que] Slegileternam. Hanc donacione[m] eis dono, et confirmo, in pura[m] et p[er]petua[m] elemosina[m] soluta[m] p[ro]pria[m], et quieta[m], ab o[m]ni terreno servicio, et exactione seculari libera[m] a me, et ab he[re]dibus meis et omnibus alijs he[re]dibus cu[m] omnibus que inter has divisas continentur in terra,

---

and so descending towards the west, as far as the aforesaid ford of Karlewath. I have given to them also common pasture along with my people who remain in Rasatt and pasture in Thanibord [now Tailbert], and in Swindall [now Swindale] on either side, as far as the crest of the hill above Briberh [now Binbarh, a field in Shap Parish] and on the other side of Swindall, beyond Theniheved [now Thengeheved, a field in Shap parish] on either side, wherever they wish and right into Sleddall [now Wet Sleddale] and even further, on the understanding that they may be able, by day and night, to let their beasts linger within the said pasture when they wish and as need be, and to go and return between the abbey and their vaccary when necessary with free entry and exit. I have given to them this pasture aforesaid and indeed I have made a concession for sixty cattle and twenty fell-pony mares and five hundred sheep, along with their offspring of three years, and five teams of oxen. Moreover, I have given to them turbary rights and peat rights and quarrying rights wherever they are able to find them in the lands of the village of Hepp, and free passage for going and returning to the aforesaid turbary, peat and quarry, and to their abbey. I have given to them also licence to take what is needful for their abbey in my woodland for purpose of building, for fuel, and for enclosure, wherever they choose and are able to find it, and other necessities, without supervision by my foresters, with all the common rights, easements, and liberties pertaining to the aforesaid village of Hepp. All of the above I have given to God and to the aforesaid canons, to have and to hold, in full, free and perpetual charity, for the salvation of my soul and that of my wife Gretia, and the souls of my heirs and of all my ancestors and successors. Both I and my heirs will guarantee all the above to the aforesaid canons, against all men, forever. Witnesses as follows etc." 'See Dugdale, *Mon[asticon]*, 2, 594.' [See also *N&BI*, 471.]

[32] A pencilled note in an unknown hand, written after the publication of *N&B 1 & 2*. in 1777.

et aqua, in bosco, et plano, in vijs, et semitis, in pascuis et pasturis, et o[mn]ibus alijs aisiament[is], et libertatibus, cum feris et avibus, sine o[m]ni detentamento ad faciendu[m] inde quicque voluerint imp[er]p[etuu]m: [....] hec etiam dedi eisde[m] mo[n]achis Communia[m] pasture in Withcastelgila inter semita[m], et magna[m] via[m] que transit [.....] Kendala, ad Capud de West de Withcastelgela, et liber et exitus et introitus illic sibi, et averijs suis, us[que] ad pastura[m] sua[m] et ita q[uo]d inter has p[re]d[ic]tas vias, nec ego, nec he[re]des mei, sed nec monachi edificabimus, sed inter nos Communes Remanebunt: dedi etiam eisde[m] mo[n]achis, Maneriu[m], et cetera aisiamenta ad illum locum necessaria per totu[m] boscu[m] meu[m] de Ragerthescoch imp[er]p[etuu[m]. hanc donac[i]on[em] feci eis p[ro] salute a[n]i[m]e mee, et patris, et matris mee, et omni[um] antecess[orum] meorum, et he[re]du[m]. Et ego, et he[re]des mei, hanc donac[i]onem manutenebimus illis et warrantisabimus [....] eos heredes imp[er]p[etuu]m. Et si aliquando eveniet q[uo]d non possi[mu]s ego vel here]des mei donac[i]o[n]em ista[m] illis warrantisare, dabimus eis esiament[um] ad valencia[m], et omnia aisiamenta in terrura de Hepp antequam disseisiont[em]: his testibus Rob[ert]o Decano Eboracensi, widone m[a]g[ist]ro scholar[um], Geraldo Canonico, Meinardo, Stephano de Roma, Canonicis, Ric[ard]o Noblet, Alano, Capellanis Nigello de Molbrai, Rogero de Damill, Alano, et Adam filijs Gospatricij, Murda[n]o Decano, Vmfrido Makaell.[33]

[VI.309, 311]

Carta Roberti de Veteriponte de sede & loco vallis Magdalenæ

{ex registro Abb. de Hepp, nuper penes Dominus William Howard de Naworth. Ibid. p.595.}[34]

---

[33] 'Charter made for the monks of Byland.'

"To the Archbishop of York and the entire Chapter of St Peter and all the sons of the Holy church, Thomas son of Gospatrick send greetings. Know that I have given to God and St Mary of Byland, and have confirmed by this my charter, all that part of my land of Shap which is contained within these boundaries: From Slegil Tarn to Turne Tarn, and from there as far as Blea Tarn, up the syke as far as the head of the syke, and from there along the boundaries which I walked with the monks, from the western side of Tringfell along the bottom of Langesclac as far as the ford of Thorny Beck and from there to the ditch in which stands a white thorn-tree. From there, from the western side of Wreynsethe as far as the western side of Shapshaw; and then to the nearer path coming from the east from Wichcastel Gile, and along that path to Blea Beck, and so upwards along Blea Beck to the green level beyond the springs of Blea Beck. From there, as the water falls from the Moss between Wasdale and Sleddale as far as Yarlside [Earl's Seat], in such manner that Yarlside shall belong to the monks, and from there along the brow of Yarlside up to the head of Harrop Pike and Grenopes, as far as the valley extends towards the west, up to the great rock. From there along the brow of the hill of Yarlside to the upper head of Borren Crag as far as the high road that comes from Kendal towards Westmorland, and along that road to Wasdale Beck below Wasdale tarn, and then below Wasdale Beck as far as the lower head of Wasdale Beck. From there along the boundaries which I walked between Shap and Crossby as far as Caldegate and along Caldegate towards the North, as far as the great stone which I indicated to them as a marker, and from there, by the great stones in the valley bottom, up to Slegil Tarn. [...] This gift I give to them and I confirm it, in full and perpetual charity, to possess peaceably without imposition, free from tenant service and from civil dues on my part and on the part of my heirs and all other heirs, along with everything included within these bounds, in the earth and water, in woods and fields, in roads and paths, in grassings and pastures, and all other easements and liberties, along with the beasts and birds, without any restriction, to do there whatever they wish, in perpetuity: and this also I have given to these same monks, namely common of pasture in Wichcastel Gile between the path and the highway that crosses from [...] Kendal to the head of the west of Wichcastel Gile, with free exit and entrance there for them and their beasts to their pasture, and in such a way that neither I, nor my heirs, nor yet the monks, shall build between the aforesaid roads, but they shall remain common between us. I have given also to these same monks a manor, and the other easements necessary for that place through the whole of my woodland of Ragerthescoch in perpetuity. This gift I have made them for the salvation of my soul, and that of my father and my mother and all my ancestors and heirs. And I and my heirs shall hold to this gift for them, and we shall guarantee [...] those heirs in perpetuity. And if ever it shall happen that we are not able, I or my heirs, to safeguard this gift for them, we shall give them compensation to its value, and all easements in the land of Shap before the dispossession.

Witnesses: Robert, Deacon of York; Wido, master of the school; Canon Gerard; the Canons Meinard and Stephanus of Rome; the Chaplains Richard Noblet and Alan; Nigel de Mobrai; Roger de Damill; Alan and Adam, sons of Gospatrick; Deacon Murdanus; Umfrid Makaell."

[34] This epitome is taken from Dugdale's *Monasticon*. It is also reproduced in *N&BI,* though with some differences in tenses and spelling, see *N&BI*, 471-72.

Robertus de Veteriponte dedit & confirmavit deo & beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, de valle Magdalenæ &c. Sedem & locum prædictæ vallis Magdalenæ in territorio villæ de Hepp cum omnibus pertinentijs et rebus suis, quæ continentur in Cartis Thomae filij Gospatricij et in Cartis Thomae filij Thomae, filij sui, quas de p[re]dictis om[ni]bus habent: Et totam villam de Renegill cum o[mni]b[u]s pertinentijs suis (etc) sicut etia{m de Maulds Meab[urn]} carta Matildis matris meae, et confirmatio Hugonis fratris mei, quas inde habent, melius testantur. Dedit etiam dictis Ecclesiae et Canonicis, villa[m] tota[m] Grangia de Milleburne, sicut Monachi de Holmo, melius eandem villam, aliquando tenuerunt, cum Grangia vocata fuit, cum om[ni]b[u]s pertinen[tij]s alijs et rebus etc. Quam villam Nicholaus de Stuttevill sibi dedit et confirmavit sua charta, qua[m] cartam habet, et p[re]dictis canonicis dedit (&c.) Dedit etiam dictis Canonicis omnes decimas sibi pertinentes omnium molendinorum suorum, de tota Westmeria, et omnes decimas novationis bestiarum, quae captae erunt, de caetero, in om[ni]b[u]s forestis suis in Westmeria, per se, vel per homines suos, de domo, vel de Manerijs suis, sive per arcus sive per canes (etc.). Testibus Gilberto filio Rogeri, filij Reinfredi*; Wydone de Hellbec; Willielmo filio Ranulphi; Eudone de Bellocampo, tunc Vicecomite Westmarie; Henerico de Redeman, Seneschallo de Kendall; Radulpho Daincurt; Anselmo de Furnesio; Henerico de Cundall; Willielmo de Morvilla; Willielmo Anglico; Willielmo de Thirneby; Johanne de Hardela; Alano Pincerna; Waltero de Meaburn. data apud Cliburne Anno decimo tertio Regis Johannis octavo Kal: Maij die Sabati.[35]

[Machell's Notes: VI.311]

*A \ great / family in or about Kendall. See my collections out of the Records in the Tower p.4. 5. 6.

[IV.32]

[Gift of part of Knock to Shap Abbey]

'I John de Veteripont, have given to the Canons of Shap one piece of my demesne land in the field of Knocksalcock; witnessed by Thomas the son of John then my Sheriff, Geoffrey de Neovile, Henry de Suleby, Robert de Hellebeck.'[36] It seems Knock did anciently belong to Viponts & from them it came with other Lands by marriage to the Cliffords

[IV.38]

Robert de Veteripont dyed about the 12th year of Henry III [1227-1228]. John de Veteripont his son & heir, dyed about the 26 year of Henry III [1241-1242], buryed as is supposd at Shap; leaveing his son a ward who continued so some years, being committed to the care & custody of the Prior of Carliol, as appears before, out of the Inquisition. His son was Robert.[37]

[35] 'Robert de Veteripont gave and confirmed to God and the Blessed Mary Magdalen of the Valley of Magdalen etc. the seat and place of the aforesaid Valley of Magdalen in the territory of the vill of Hepp with all appurtenances and matters which are contained in the charters of Thomas son of Gospatrick and in the charters of Thomas son of Thomas, his son, which they hold of all the aforesaid. And the whole vill of Renegill with all its appurtenances (etc.) just as also the charter of my mother Matilda {of Maulds Meaburn}, and the confirmation of my brother Hugo, which they hold from there, surely testify. He also gave to the Church and Canons the whole vill of the Grange of Millburn, just as the Monks of Holm at one time surely held that same vill, when it was called Grange, with all appurtenances and other matters etc. This vill Nicholaus of Stuttvill gave to himself and confirmed by his charter, which charter he holds and has given to the aforesaid canons (etc.). He also gave to the aforesaid Canons all the tithes relating to himself from all his mills in the whole of Westmorland, and all the tithes of the re-stocking of the beasts which should be caught, from the remainder, in all his forests in Westmorland, by him or by his men, at home or in his manors, whether by the bow or by dogs (etc.). Witnesses: Gilbert son of Roger son of Reinfred; Wydo of Hellebeck; William son of Ranulph; Eudo of Beauchamp, at that time earl of Westmaria; Henry of Redeman, Steward of Kendall; Radulph Daincurt; Anselm of Furness; Henry of Cundall; William of Morvill; William English; William of Thirneby; John of Hardale; Alan Pincerna; Walter of Meaburn. Issued at Cliburn in the thirteenth year of King John, on the eighth of the month of May, Saturday.'

[36] Translated from Machell's original Latin text.

[37] This particular passage (bound into Volume IV) has been epitomised in this edition.

[III.322]

Carta Rob[er]ti de Egglesfeld[38]

Rob[ertus] de Egglesfeld omnibus amicis suis et ho[min]ibus terrae suae tam [?] quam [?], salute[m]. Sciatis me dedisse et concedisse et hac p[re]senti carta confirmasse Dolphino filio Gilmichaelis de Egglesfeld una[m] carucata[m] terrae in Egglesfeld cu[m] om[n]ib[u]s p[er]tinentijs in bosco in plano in p[as]c[u]is in pasturis in om[n]ib[u]s ais[amentis] et lib[er]tatib[u]s p[er]tinentib[u]s ad eandem terra[m] tenendam de me et h[er]edibus meis [libere] et q[ui]ete annuati[m] reddendo xij den[arios], sex ad pentecosten et sex ad fest[u]m s[an]cti marti[ni] p[ro] om[n]i servicio q[uo]d ad me p[er]tinet excepto q[uo]d medietas h[uiu]s carucatae dabit mult[uram] et faciet opus molini et altera medietas lib[er]a erit et soluta ab op[er]is molini multura et dom[inu]s eius molebit ad molin[um] meu[m] sine multura. Set si p[ro]no[m]i[n]at dolphinus ut h[er]edes eius alieni ext[ra] dom[um] sua[m] comoda[verint] sive aliq[uo] alio mo[do] tradiderit de illa dimidia carucatae q[ua]m lib[er]am tenet ab op[er]e molini et mult[ur]a, quere[n]t ei molinu[m] ubicunque volueri[n]t. Et hac autem donac[i]one ut rata sit et stabilis p[re]vibat[us] dolph[inus] dedit mi et sol[vit] et absolute dimisit mi et he[redibus] meis ip[s]e et heredes eius q[ui]cq[ui]d iuris ut siq[ui]d iuris clamav[er]int ut undique heredes debueri[n]t in aliq[ua] alia t[er]ra in Egglesf[eld], quare volo et p[er]cipio ut sepedictus Dolph[inus] et h[er]edes ei[u]s h[abe]ant et teneant p[re]fata[m] terram de me et h[er]edibus [meis] [in] feodo et h[er]editate lib[er]e et q[ui]ete et honorifice p[er] p[re]d[i]c[tu]m servici[um] faciendo forinsec[um] serviciu[m] quantum p[er]tinet ad unam carucata[m] terre

Hijs testibus: Armo de [?] tu[n]c senesc[allo], pat[r]icio] brun, Ricardo de Merton, Simone de Ros, Joh[ann]e de Dene, Gerardo de Bramthait, Thoma M[a]rescaldo, Th[oma] de [?], Walt[er]o fil[io] Trotan, Ketello fil[io] Ald[er]j et Michaele f[rat]re eius, Walt[er]o cl[er]ico cu[m] multis alijs.[39]

[38] Written in an unknown hand and part of Machell's Shap Abbey collection. As it relates to Robert Eaglesfield's possessions in Cumberland, it is unclear why it was placed here. Eaglesfield founded Machell's alma mater, Queen's College, Oxford, as related by Sir Daniel Fleming: 'Egglesfield gave name to an ancient family of which was Robert de Egglesfield chaplain to Queen Philippa wife of Ed. III who founded upon his own ground Queen College in Oxford recommending the patronage thereof to his Lady the Queen and the succeeding Queens of England, endowing it with revenues for the maintenance of a provost and twelve fellows.' See G.F. Duckett (ed.) *A Description of the County of Cumberland taken in the year 1671 by Daniel Fleming*, CWAAS Tract Series I (London & Kendal, 1882), 11. Machell refers to the founding of Queen's College elsewhere in his volumes; see, for instance, his Preface, I.748.

[39] 'Robert of Eaglesfield sends greeting to his friends and to all men [...] of his land. Know that I have given and granted and by this present charter confirmed to Dolphin son of Gilmichael of Eaglesfield one carucate of land in Eaglesfield with all its appurtenances in woodland in field in grassings in pastures in all easements and liberties belonging to this same land, to hold from me and my heirs freely and peaceably, by rendering yearly 12 denarii, 6 at Pentecost and 6 at the festival of Saint Martin, in return for all service which pertains to me, except that: half of this carucate shall give payment and shall do the work of the mill and the other half shall be free and released from payment of the work of the mill and its lord shall grind corn at my mill without payment. But if Dolphin declares that his heirs from outside his own house shall profit or if in any other manner he hands over from that half of the carucate which he holds free from the work of the mill and from payment, they shall seek a mill wherever they wish. And so that, by this gift, it may be authorised and fixed, the aforegoing Dolphin has given to me and paid and entirely surrendered, to me and my heirs, whatever rights, or if any rights, he himself and his heirs shall claim, as his heirs from anywhere are owing in any other land in Eaglesfield; wherefore I wish and order that the oft-mentioned Dolphin and his heirs should have and hold the aforesaid land of me and my heirs in fee and inheritance, freely and peaceably and honourably by the aforesaid service, by doing foreign service as far as pertains to one carucate of land.Witnesses: Armo of [?], at that time steward; Patrick Brown; Richard of Merton; Simon of Ros; John of Dene; Gerard of Bramthwaite; Thomas Marescald; Thomas of [?]; Walter son of Trotan; Ketell son of Alder and Michael his brother; Walter the cleric; with many others.'

[I.312]

[Standing Stones near Shap Abbey]

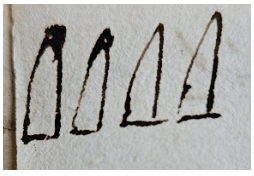


Figure 1.22.3. Standing Stones, 'near to Shap Abbey'. I.312.

Jacob sometimes dwelling about the Tower Eder {Ender puto?}[40] (which stands 7 miles south off \ from / Jerusalem) buryed Rachel his wife about a quarter of a mile distant from the place, and for a monument pitched 12 stones upright upon her grave*. And we have one not much unlike this near to Shap abby, where it is thought som notable act of atchievment has bin don; for theire are huge stones in forme of pyramids, some 9 foot high and 14 foote in lenth thick rainged for a mile directly in a row and equally distant, which might seem to have bin pitched there purposely in memory thereof; but what the act was is not knowne but quite worne out \ of minde / by the injoury of time†.

[Machell's Notes: III.312]

*{!} *Itin.* Script. de Bethlehem p.422.[41]
†Speed & Camden.[42] {See the explication of this: MS of Cumb[erland], part 1st, pag.2.} Memorandum to draw them.

[III.313]

Shap Abby [buildings]
N.W. \ 1 mile / in a little blinde gill \ not worth the name of a vally / on the west side of the River L[owther] where the tower & East End \ of the [abbey] Church / are standing, and a […][43] little farme house, which has bin formerly som of the Offices; a mill & 2 bridges: the higher, wood, and the lower, stone; having one arch, just below the ruines of an old bridge somewhat nearer the abby; the pillar whereof in the midle of the water is yet remaining. & hence assends a lane N. east which leads to an house called Grange House, which belongd to the abby & is not distant ½ a mile from it.

[40] 'Ender, perhaps.'
[41] 'Itinerary written from Bethlehem, p.422.' Many pilgrims and travellers to the Holy Land wrote travelogues/itineraries, one of which, written in AD 333 and printed in 1538, was eventually added to the Antonine Itinerary. Other itineraries include that of Bishop Arculf (AD 700): '… the tomb of Rachel, rudely built of stones, without any ornament, presenting externally the form of a pyramid.' Benjamin of Tudela (AD 1163) described Rachel's monument as '… the monument which points out the grave of Rachel. This monument is constructed of eleven stones, equal to the number of children of Jacob'. Sir John Maundville (AD 1322): 'From Jerusalem to Bethlehem it is but two miles … And in that way is the tomb of Rachel, the mother of Joseph the patriarch, who died immediately after she was delivered of her son Benjamin; and there she was buried by Jacob her husband, and he caused twelve great stones to be placed over her in token that she had borne twelve children* (*two children … but by them she had twelve grandchildren).' See Thomas Wright (ed.) *Early Travels in Palestine* (London, 1848), ix, 6, 86, 164.
[42] 'Hard by Shape, in times past Hepe, a little monasterie built by Thomas the sonne of Gospatrick, sonne of Orms … there be huge stones in forme of Pyramides, some 9 foot high, and fourteene foot thick, ranged directly as it were in a row, for a mile in length, with equall distance almost betweene: which may seeme to have beene pitched and erected for to continue the memoriall of some act there atchieved; but what the same was, by the injurie of time it is quite forgotten.' See Camden, *Britannia,* tr. Holland (1637), 762; see also *N&B1*, 477; and see James Simpson (vicar of Shap), 'The Antiquities of Shap in the county of Westmorland', *Archaeological Journal* 18 (1861), 25-38.
[43] Text measuring 1½cm is illegible at this point.

[IV.vii]

[Dissolution of Shap Abbey]

[Addition 1. Anno 30 Henry 8 A.D. 1540.][44]
[Commissioners' preliminaries for the Dissolution of Shap Abbey &c.]
Our duties in most humble wise to your Lordship premised, pleaseth it the same to be advertised that upon Friday being the 9th day of this instant month of January we did repair to the King's Highness's town of Carlisle whereas the Warden with other the gentlemen of those parts did meet us in two miles without the town, garnished and accompanied with a goodly sight of horsemen and spears; and the mayor with his brethren the Aldermen did also very worshipfully entertain us both with their behaviour and presents also. And all the Borders in those parts are in very good order and quietness insomuch that in that behalf we are so bold as to make report of the same to your Lordship. We have also in executing the King's Highness's Commission, there entertained the Prior according to your commandment by the contents of your letter directed unto us in his favour, as we trust he will report unto you; and we have fully put into execution the Commission directed unto us of all other the monasteries in Yorkshire, Westmorland, Cumberland and the Bishopric of Durham; the Monastery of Shap only excepted, whither we do intend to repair upon Tuesday next ensuing, and from thence towards Westchester and from thence to Shrewsbury; and so to Wenlock, which is the last House in our Commission; and thence straight to London, and we think that it will be about the beginning of Lent before that we come thither; at which time we shall declare unto your Lordship all our proceedings, with which we trust that your Lordship will be contented. And thus Our Lord ever preserve Your Lordship in much honour.
At Carlisle the 12th day of January.
By Your Lordship's command, Walter Hendle, Richard Layton, Thomas Legh, Richard Watkins
Unto the Right Honorable my Lord Privy Seal be these d[elivere]d.

[**Addition 2.**]
Rymer, Tom. XIV, p. 663 et 668. *Fœdera*.[45]
Omnibus &c. Richardus Baggot Abbas Monasterii Beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ de Heppa, alias Shappe Ordinis Præmonstratensium in Com Westmerl. & ejusdem loci Conventus Salutem in Domino sempiternam. Noveritis &c. In quorum Testimonium Nos præfati Abbas & Conventus huic præsenti scripto nostro Nomina nostra manibus propriis subscripsimus, Sigillumque nostrum Commune apposuimus. Dat. In Domo nostra Capitulari decimo Quarto die mensis Januarii, Anno Regni prædicti Invictissimi Principis & Domini nostri Regis Henrici Octavi Tricesimo primo. Et memorandum quod Die & Anno prædictis venerunt prædicti Abbas & Conventus in Domo sua Capitulari apud Heppa prædictam, coram Richardo Layton uno Clericorum Cancellariæ dicti Domini Regis, & Recognoverunt Scriptum prædictum ac omnia & singula in eodem contenta in forma prædicta.[46]

---

[44] Though added to the MS after Machell's death, these two extracts have been allowed to remain here as useful additions to Machell's own Shap Abbey collection.
[45] Extract from Thomas Rymer, *Fœdera*, Vol. 14 (London, 1712). During the early 18th century many official documents were officially transcribed and published in Thomas Rymer's *Fœdera*. Volume 1 was published in November 1704; further volumes appeared at regular intervals: Volume 14 was published in 1712, see A. Sherbo, 'Rymer, Thomas (1642/3-1713). *ODNB*. As the extract could not have been added before Volume 14's publication in 1712, this suggests the earliest possible date for the first binding of Machell's volumes; yet Nicolson had written and dated his 'Introduction' to Machell's Volume I in the flyleaf of the bound volume on 10 August 1711 (see Editor's Introduction). Perhaps the *Foedera* extract was added later, in a rebinding exercise, or perhaps the difference in dating might be explained by the change from the Julian to the Gregorian calendar. Although this was made officially in 1752, many 17th-century writers had already adopted it.
[46] 'To all etc. Richard Baggot, Abbot of the Monastery of the Blessed Mary Magdalen of Hepp, also called Shap, of the Order of the Premonstratensians in the county of Westmorland, and the Members of this House of the same place, send eternal greetings in the Lord: You know etc. To the testimony of which we the aforesaid Abbot and Members of the House, have subscribed our names in our own hands in this our present document, and we have affixed our common seal. Dated: In our Chapter House on the fourteenth day of the month of January, in the thirty-first year of the reign of the aforesaid most invincible Prince and our Lord King Henry VIII. And it should be noted that on the day and in the year aforesaid, the aforesaid Abbot and Members of the House came, in their own Chapter House at Shap aforesaid, in the presence of Richard Layton one of the clerics

[IV.76A]

[Machell's Notes on the last Abbot of Shap Abbey]

Kirkbythuer. 31. Hen. 8. [1539-1540]
I finde Mr Richard Bagget otherwise Evenwood, parson of Kirkbythure. ~~Maybe it is as Mr Harrison said~~. He was abbot & parson & [in] his time it was given appropriate to the abbey, salva vicaria,[47] by Henry Earl of Cumberland, the true & undoubted Patron, with the consent of the King Hen. 8. He tooke care to procure [it] to himselfe during his life nat[ural] but providence prevented its being a vicaria by dessolution of abbys.

[III.319] [48]

Articles of instrument from the Abbott of Shapp to Thome Jolye
Concerninge the apparacion[49] of Kyrkby Thore.[50]

Inprimis. The said abbot doth send to the same Thomes iiij deids unseald concerning the same apparacion.
Item. His other instrument sealed by the jentylmen, Church wardens & other of the saide parishinge in the name of the whole parishinge
Item. To remembere my Lord of Cumberlande for sealinge of his deide of grant under the seal of his armes for your going up.
Item. To remember my said Lord (forsomiche as my lorde bishop of Carliell comith nott down) to write a loving letter for sealing of his deide & for the redy expedicon & settinge forwardz of such busynis as appertanyth to him in that behalf.
Item. A like letter to Mr William Hogyll, Archidiaconery of Carliell, for the sealing of such wrytyngs as belongith to his office.
Item. To remember all other writings nott yit maide nor sealed eyther[51] by the Kings highness my Lorde of Cantorbury, or any other necessary or regnisit to be hade in the premisses
Item. I do sende you by my servant this berer the residue of the fyne to the King's hig[h]nis for the same Kyrkbithore, x^{li}.
Item. I do send you over & beside the said fyne with this same berer for dispachinge other chargiezs as sealing of wrytyngs with other necessariez appertaining your discrecon to be payede & laide down appon a rackonyng thereof to be made by you of the same 10^{li}.
Item. That you remembere to thanke Mr Hughes for his payns heretofor taking in these premiss & desyer him of his goode continuance in the same & according to Mr Blenkansops premiss & that he shall have such a nagge as I truste shall content him to be delyvrde at such tyme as you thinke goode to sende for the same.
Item. Desireinge you to remembere a promise to be obteyned that I may have & perceive the frutts of the sam Kyrkbithore duringe my lif nat\ ur /al in discharge of my pensione.
Per me Ricard. Abbote.

---

of the Chancery of the said Lord King, and acknowledged the aforesaid document and the contents in it, all and singular, in the form aforesaid.'

[47] 'Excepting only the vicarage.'

[48] This page is written in an unknown hand.

[49] 'Appropriation.'

[50] For this text see *N&BI*, 373-74, where it is quoted verbatim without citing Machell as a source. These are instructions from Richard Evenwode, Abbot of Shap (after 1526, Rector of Kirkby Thore), to his agent. The appropriation was on the verge of completion when the Abbey was dissolved in 1540.

[51] Here there is an interlineated 'T' with a rising and falling wedge on either side, written in yet another hand, but with no obvious relation to the text.

[VI.310]

See in my collection out of the Registry of Wederhall[52]

= Matilda de Veteriponte
|
Robertus de Veteriponte anno 13. regis Johannis [1211-1212]

Ivo de Veteriponte

Gospatricius
|
Thomas filius Gospatricij =
|
Thomas fil = Thomæ files sui circa 13. regis Johannis
~~Thomas filius Tho~~

Grecia uxor ejus

[VI.370]

Registrum de Wetherhal \ Priory / nuper penes Mr Howard de Na[worth] Registrum Abbatiæ de Hep – penes Mr Howard p.2 \ pa. hujus 23 / p. Cartularium de Lanercost – penes Mr Will. Howard 14.[53]

Index

A-G[54]

H. Hep Abby p. 2. When or by whom founded uncertain, but supposed to be by Tho. Son of Gosp. Bec. Rob. de Vet. Confirmed the suite of it and all other things which was concerned in the Ch. of Tho. Son of Gosp. & Thomas, son of Thomas, his son. 13^0 Johan, ergo founded 3 generations before, as I suppose. There was one Mettheus de Hep mentioned in the boundary (p.2. Col.1) is said before it to have \ had / lands there […] & the monks themselves had lands there also before the Ch. of T. fil. Gosp. Contra suam, wherefore I say it is uncertain.

I-Q [Blank]

R. Religiouse Houses in Westm'land: The Abby of Shap, p.2, coll.2. The Priory of Preston, Ibid, Col.1. Mem. also, a Priory at Apelby; & see my collection Cart. Crak. Query also if they did not belong to Whetherall.

Shap, see Hepp

T-V[55]

Westm'land & Cumberland: see Religiouse Houses therein, their dedications, foundations, orders & values at the desolution. Speed. Sub Titilo Carliol p.288; Westm'land, 199.[56]
X-Y [Blank]

[I.311]

[Rosgill]

I finde Thomas Salkeld junior, Lord of Rosgill, 8. Edward 4. [1468-1469] in a deed of 12 acres of land in Ormesheved, together with a tenement by William Bryce to ~~his~~ Thomas Salkeld senior. Witnesses inter alios William Salkeld, Roger Salkeld 1st. Richard Redman Abat of Shap, J. Brystbeck.

[52] MS.IV.407 to IV.532.
[53] Some of these page numbers are obscured by the margin; thus they are insecure.
[54] Left blank.
[55] Left blank.
[56] See 'Catalogus Religiosarum Ædium ex Anglico Ioannis Speed, Latinus', in N. Harpsfield and E. Campion, (ed. R. Gibbon), *Historia Anglicana Ecclesiastica* (Marcus Wyon, Douai 1622), 750 (Carliol), 776 (Westmorlandia).

Cristianis, wife of Hugh de Salkeld had a son called Hugh, who had Rosgill by deed of his mother, & I thinke this after the date of the form[er], tho sine die, for I finde Ormesheved mention'd therein […][57] Gilbert, the son of Gilbert Culwenne, Knight (I will not be soe ridiculous as to / derive this from Conran King of Scots (p.35 MS 1st part) released & quit clamd to the Abbat & Convent of ~~Shap~~ Hepp, all the right which he had in all lands & tenements in Shap, which he had the gift & infeofment of Hugh de Lowther, Knight, in the vill. of Shap. Viz. which, the said Hugh, he had of Thomas de Preston, dated apud Hep de temp. 34. Edward 3. [1360-1361].

[I.188]

{Culwen}
Gilbert the son of Gilbert de Culwenne Knight, released clame in some Tenements in Shapp &c. 34. Edward 3.and sealed with a frett & chiefe charged with a crescent. This I take to be the same as Curwen & descend from Gospatricus.

[I.311]



Figure 1.22.4. Gilbert Culwen, sigillum. I.311.

[Machell's Notes on Rosgill: I.311; I.313]
If Rossegill be in Shap Parish, memorandum that I finde John de Rossegill witness to a deed with Sir Michael Hardclay, who livd about the 20th (as I take it) of Henry 3rd [1235-36], for he was father to Sir Andrew. [I.313][58]
Rossgil I finde writt \ Rosegil, temp. Henry 3. [1216-1272] / Roskeld in the 5. Edward 4. [1465-1466] Sc. Salkeld nuper de Roskeld.[59] Query: when Salkeld left it & whether there be a spring, well or keld adjoyning? The manner belongd to Patritius the son of Thomas &c. vide ante in manerio de Bampton,[60] Sub Tit. Knype. Ubi sigillum ipsius occurrit.[61] One of the name de Rosgil in hoc libro.[62] Family de Rosegill, John de Rosegill K[nigh]t, Temp. Henry 3. [1216-1272].

[57] As the paper here has perished, one word is illegible.
[58] Also numbered p.38.
[59] 'Salkeld, lately of Roskeld.'
[60] 'See above, in manor of Bampton.' See Part 1, Ch.4, Bampton, I.369.
[61] 'Where his seal occurs.'
[62] 'In this book.'

Part 1. Barony of Westmorland

[Chapter 23]

[Parish of Warcop]

[I.315][1]

To Warcop belongs
1. Warcop, Bleatarne, Burton, Sandford.
Isabel, widow of Roger de Clifford, obteined licence from King Edward 1.18. [1289-1290] to bestow the advousans of Warcop upon the Abbot & Convent of Shap (de Hep) in fre Almes after the Statute of Mortmane.[2] Hiltons, I thinke, were at Burton Anno Edward 1. 21. [1292-1293], for the indenture whereby the wardship of Johan, daughter & heir of William de Sulleby was committed to John de Helton & Agnes his wife, was dated there. Hilton of Burton & Hilton, se p.3. Cr. 1.

Name of Warcop
Warcop (anciently Warthecop) has given name to a family in this County whose Armes allude to the name, as tis of later yeares falcely writ Warcop & storye (which I lieve to others) of the Ancestor being cup-bearer to William the Conqueror.
William de Warthcop test. 27. Henry 3. [1242-1243], vide Lamberset in Kirkby Stephen.[3]
Thomas de Warthcop of Lambersete, vide 4. Henry 4. [1402-1403].
Thomas Warthcop de Lamberset: 3. Edward 4. [1463-1464].

[I.586]

[Lammerside Hall]
Lambersette Hall was formerly a seat of the Warcops. Thomas de Warthecop de Lambersete, a juror in the Inquisition de Matilda filia Beauchamp relict Clifford. 4. Hen. 4.
Item. John de Lancaster de Brampton & John de Helton de Burton.
Thomas Warthcop de Lamberset – 3. Ed. 4.

{Burton}
Burton gave name to an ancient family.
Afterward it came to the Heltons. Family of Helton: John de Helton de Burton, juror in inquisitione de Matilda Beauchamp, relict [...] Clifford. 4. Henry 4. [1402-1403].
{See \ more / in Bongate parish & Ormside parish.}

{Sandford}
This place gave name to an ancient family:
Robert de Sandeford temp. Johannis Regis Angliæ [1199-1216], Willielmus ejus filius.[4]
Thomas de Sandford. 15. King John [1213-1214].
Richard de Sandford. 14. of King Edward I. [1285-1286]*

[Machell's Notes: I.315]
*(è cartis antiquis penes Comitissa Cumb[erland]., vel Blenk[insop], vel utrisque.)[5]

[I.317]

The Roman Way

{☞The Romane Way which leads towards Apleby}
{The Romane Way towards Brough ☜}[6]

Castle near Coupland Beck Bridge

[1] Also numbered p.39.
[2] For the statutes of Mortmain, see the English Glossary.
[3] Lammerside: see 'Lammerside Notes' in Part 1, Ch.13, Kirkby Stephen, I.486, I.596.
[4] 'William, Robert's son.'
[5] 'From ancient deeds in the possession of the Countess of Cumberland, or Blenkinsop, or both.'
[6] In the MS, this heading is placed vertically down the page.

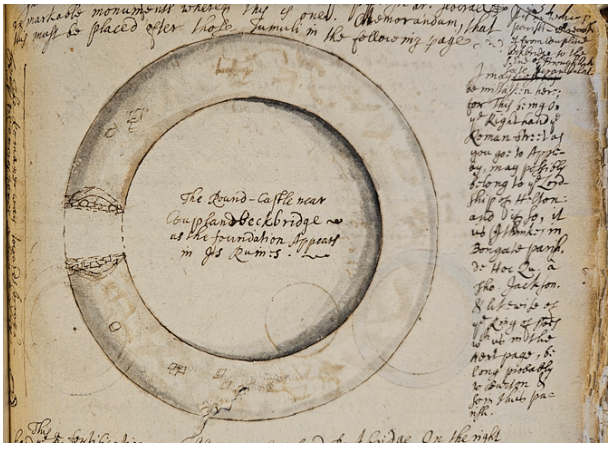


Figure 1.23.1. 'The Round-Castle near Coupland Beckbridge as the foundation Appears in Its Ruines' I.317.[7]

In the Lordship of Sandford in Warcop Parish* are severall remarkable monuments, whereof this is one†. This a Fortification or Castle near Coupland Beck bridge on the right hand \ the Roman Way as you goe towards Apleby / the diameter whereof within the walls is 40 passes[8] and the breadth of the walls, if the rubbish upon the ruines thereof hathe not considerably contributed therunto, 10 yards; so that the whole circumference must bee about 9 score passes. There have bin a great many cart loads of stone lately digged out of the foundations there of a read colour for the most part and very strongly cemented with lime and sand‡.

Over against this but nearer to the Bridge & water close by the Romane Way, is a square which I take to be the vestigia of an Hospitall with the Garden thereto belonging, for I have rett in old writeings of one hereabouts.[9]

The whole platt is about 30 passes within the hedges, which have bin duble-diked so that the whole extent thereof has bin much about 6 score passes within the hedges. The House has stood nearer towards the Roman Way, on which side ther has bin onely a court wall before it without any hedges. And ther have bin great store of sheep folds hereabouts all along from the Hospitall up the hill close by the edge of the Romane Way.

[Machell's Notes: I.317]

*{It is in Warcop parish, which reaches from Coupland Beckbridge to the south end of Brough High […][10] See Sc. Perambulat[ion]. I may ~~perhaps~~ be mistaken here; for this being on the right hand the Roman Street as you go to Appleby may possibly belong to the Lordship of Helton, and if so, it is I thinkes in Bongate Parish: de Hoc. Q. à Thomas Jackson;[11] & likewise of the ring of stones which is in the next page, belong probably to Burton, & so in this Parish.}

†Memorandum: that this must be placed after those tumuli in the following page.

‡March 15, 1688. I saw stones diged up cemented with lime ~~T.M~~.

[I.318]

Near to Sandford field corner after you are over the little Brooke and has mounted the hill, on your lef-hand close to Romane Way are 3 or 4 Tumuli whereof 2 are large ones, and the other which lay betwixt them are very much \ defaced, / one of them being scarce disernable now to be of that sort. The 1st is 4 score & eleven passes about, measuring in the midle of the Trench, and therfor the circumference must be more by the out side the Trench, but not very much, for the Trench is not above one passe broade; the 2nd not above 40. The 3rd being disfigured I tooke not much notise of, but the 4, which is highest, is in circumference 4 score & 6 and the distance twixt this & the 1st is 54 passes.

[7] Note that the tear at the bottom of this sketch represents damage done to the paper, not a deliberate mark.
[8] For 'passes', see the English Glossary.
[9] Whether 'seen writ' or 'read', the meaning is still clear.
[10] The page has perished here.
[11] 'About this, query of Thomas Jackson.'

The figure with these tumuli is the same with those I showed in Marton Parish; onely they differ in this: That these are wholly of the earth and the other are of cobbles & pible stones.[12]

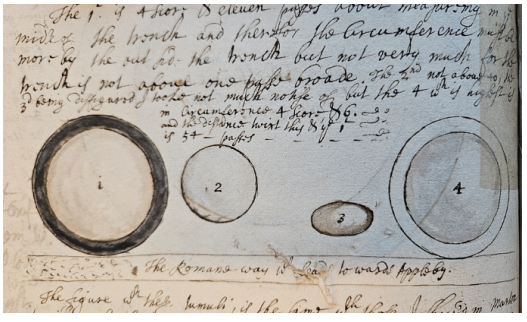


Figure 1.23.2. Warcop tumuli and 'the Romane Way which leads towards Appleby'. I.318.

About 6 score passes from the 4th tumulus is an other monument \ on the right hand the way at a little distance over about 2 yards / of orbicular forme also;[13] but is onely a ring made of earth and stones a little surmounting the level it is reared upon, and there are pitched severall great stones allmost att equall distance, and some agane of a lesser sise are placed betwixt them after this manner following:

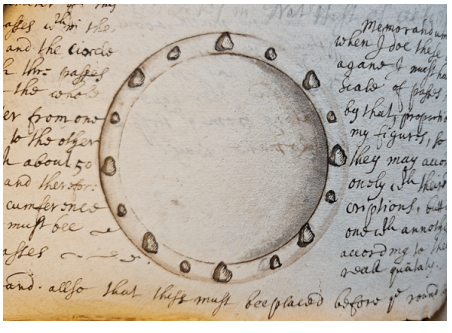


Figure 1.23.3. 'A ring made of earth and stones'. I.318.

The diameter of this is 24 passes within the circle, and the circle in bredth three passes so that the whole diameter from one out side to the other is much about 50 passes: and therefore, the circumference of it must be 150 passes.

[Machell's Notes: I.318]

Memorandum: that when I doe these over agane I must have a scale of passes, and by that proportion all my figures so that they may accord not onely with their discriptions, butt allso one with annother according to their real quantity.

Memorandum allso that these must bee placed before the round castle.

[I.322]

[Warcop Hall]

The Hall is a ~~very~~ sweat seat very much improved with gardens & orchards by Mr Richard Brathwate.[14] There is a grove beyond the houses & gardens about 12 score distant, with a fish pond att the end thereof.

[12] Pible or pibel: (middle English) pebble stone. *OED*.

[13] Orbicular: round; circular.

[14] MS: '~~that [in…us] Gentleman~~ Mr Richard Brathwate'. The unclear word is possibly 'ingenious', as Machell regularly used it as a compliment when he deemed individuals inventive.

[I.319]

In the dineing roome att Warcop Hall are these coats of arms.



Figure 1.23.4. Coats of arms at Warcop Hall. I.319.

Upon the 1st is a rude helmet & over that, upon a wreath, a grahund couchant collered with a line from the coller surrounding his body. And under-neath, the motto CVM SPE AC ML: ME TV in a kind of long scrowle; & under-neath that these letters S^{r}T^{B}E, for Sir Thomas Brathwate & his lady.
This coat of the Brathwates is wrong don through the ignorance of the workman, for the armes are crosletts upon a cheveron \ & the grahound couchant. / Sir Thomas B. marryed the daughter of Sir John Dalston of Dalston,[15] which Sir John marryed a Warcop, whereupon they had Smardal Hall &c. \ where the Dalstons sometime lived / & hereupon it is that Warcops Armes are here inserted – not for any match with the Brathwates*. The Brathwates of Burneshide are of a younger house, for Richard of Burneshide was younger brother to Sir Thomas. Both ~~sons of Thomas Brathwate~~ \ forsan of Robert ut infra / sic. inform. Richard Brathwate.[16]
The 2nd is Sir Thomas Dakers his coate, of Abbey of Lanercost, and was put up here I suppose upon his marrying a Brathwate, daughter to Sir Thomas.[17]

[Machell's Notes: I.319]

*Note: To ancient arms there belongeth no crest; in that grant of a crest by Edmond, Knight Norroy dated 22 of November in 34th of Queen Elizabeth 1591, in which he grants to their ancient armes (which were Gules on a cheveron Argent 3 cross croslets fitche Sable, to which he added as followeth:
To Thomas Brathwate of Warcop in the County of Westm'land, Gentleman, son & heire of Robert Brathwate of Ambleside in the county aforesaid, Gentleman: which Robert was the son of Richard Brathwate in the said county, Gentleman; who was descended of an ancient house & family long time bearing Armes, that is to say i.e. Gules &c. have granted unto the said Thomas Brathwate, Gentleman, to his said ancient arms by way of or increase – upon a helme on a Torse,[18] white & black, a grayhound couchant Argent, his coller & line Gules mantled Gules, dubled Argent. But noe devise, tho I meet with one after put up in the dineing roome.

[Warcop Church]

[III.327]

The \ body of the / church: long 19 passes \ broad 12 / having one Ile with 2 pillars & 3 arches. ~~The~~ \ and 2 / portches opposite; that on the S. belonging formerly to Warcop Tower, but now the People by the permission of Mr Fother[gill], late owner thereof, who gave them leave to place their seates there upon the condition of repareing it. The other on the N. side belongs to the House of Burton within this Parish and the Chancel is Long – 13 passes – & in breadth 6. So, the whol Length is XXXII passes or

[15] Sir John Dalston of Dalston Hall, 2nd baronet (1639-1711), Sheriff of Cumberland 1686: See *CFH*, 83.
[16] 'Perhaps of Robert, as above. Information from Richard Braithwate.'
[17] MS: 'his coate of Abber Lennarcost and was put up here I suppose upon his marrying a Brathwate, daughter to Sir Thomas.' Presumably this was Lanercost Abbey, as c.1630 Henry Dacre of Lanercost married Dorothy Brathwaite of Warcop; Henry Dacre was knighted c. December 1633: see Henry Summerson, 'Dacre Family 1542-1716'. *ODNB*.
[18] Torse: a wreath; a twisted roll of fabric laid around the top of the helmet and the base of the crest. See A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 402-06.

yards; the whol Breadth across about XX broad with these porch[es] ex transverso,[19] being built in manner of a †. And at the west end is a Timpanum[20] with 3 little bells hanging in this wise, which is very pleasant & delightful to loke upon in passing the road. There is maden hare on the church walls.[21]



Figure 1.23.5. Church bells, Warcop. III.327.

[I.320]

Warcop church has had [in] it windows of painted glass but they are now utterly defaced, there being only remaining: In the West End 2 windows whereof take this account:
The 1st, which is next the porch, has 3 lights toward the top of 1st, an Escutchion in a plane Roundell Black and white, in which are 3 Horse shoes. This I take not to be any coate because there are no proper colours, the field and charge being both of a colour, i.e. Argent; But onely a fancy for some benefactor, perhaps a smith who has bin at the cost with glase[22] that window;[23] \ except it be for Warcop for they bare 6. S. in a field Argent, 3 peradventure formerly, as Viponts & Hellebecks did.



Figure 1.23.6. Four coats of arms in Warcop Church windows. I.320.

In the 2nd, which is a faire great one, are 3 lights, and in the tops thereof 3 Coats Armes holden by Angells. In the midst Warcop impaleing [blank], and on the right hand Musgraves. On the left hand Threlkeld with a mullet for distinction, impaled by[24] the:
1. Azure, 6 annulets Or.
2. Per pale: 1. Sable 3 cups Argent; 2nd. Sable 3 haukes.
3. Argent a manche Gules upon a mullet of the 1st. This is impaled.

[19] Crosswise.
[20] Timpanum or tympanum: the area enclosed by a pediment, whether triangular or circular, often adorned with sculpture. *OED*.
[21] Similar information about the church (written in pencil in note form) is given on MS.III.327: not transcribed.
[22] Glazing.
[23] Horseshoes are fairly common heraldic symbols; see Fox-Davies, *Heraldry*, 202.
[24] Here there is a small sketch of a coat of arms, almost obscured by the binding.

[Hiltons Quire]
In Hiltons quire, which is on the north side of the church, is a through with a marble upon it whereon has bin 2 Escutchions in brasse & Bras inscription of some buried there \ but lost. / W[e]st side severall gravestone carved in the old fashon with cross & rose towards the head. On the outside above the window this:



Figure 1.23.7. Nevill Coat of Arms, Warcop Church. I.320.

which I take to be Nevill, Earle of Westmorland.
There are 2 little bells belonging to this church.[25]

Parsonage House
The ~~parsonage~~ \ vicaredg / house has bin moted about with all the garden, orchards, barne &c. in an oblo[n]g figure, and some can ~~yet~~ remember a drawbridge to have bin at the gate.[26] Over the doore of the right side is IHS, i.e. Jhesus hom. Salvator.[27] Un the other side, is great M for Maria.[28] The present vicar: Mr Crow.[29]

[Chapels]
To this church has belonged the chaple of Sandford and of Bleatarne: inform[ant] Mr Crow, vicario.

In this parish were 4 villages: Warcop, Sandford, Burton, Bleatarne; 6 Gentlemens Seats & one abby, the stones whereof some would make us believe built Hartley Castle.

[I.321]

In Warcop
A fair bridge near the tower \ over Eden, / & a mile near the hall upon the little beck, the Castle, the ancient seat of the Earles of Westmorland*.
? 3. The Hall, the seat of the Brathwate of Warcop; their armes [blank]
? 2. The Tower, the seat of the Warcops of Warcop anciently, now of Fairer. The arms [blank]

Sandford
In Sandford \ a chaple. / New Hall by the mireside: an old house now being in the possesion of the Warcops.

[25] Machell's error; there are three, as his sketch on III.327 shows.
[26] See *N&B1*, 602, for similar text.
[27] IHS: Iesus Hominum Salvator - Jesus, Saviour of men.
[28] MS: 'On the other side great is M. for Maria.'
[29] Charles Crow, vicar of Warcop, 1663-82. CCED.

One Hall, now demolished, in the midle of the towne; anciently the seat of the Sandfords \ to which family it gave that sir name above 300 yeres.[30] / The Lordship is now turned into freehold, sold by Andrew Wharton, part whereof belongs to Richard Brathwate of Warcop Esq.[31]

[VI.462A][32]

Memorandum: A horse rase at Sandford More, where the forrest of Coppland[33] was formerly, which belongs to Ap[leby], for a plate, att the cost of the major[34] of the towne. It is to be delivered in Apleby to him that wins it. This horse rase, upon the Wednesday before Whit Sunday.

[I.321]

Burton

Att Burton, one Hall belonging the Hiltons of Hilton, Burton & Ormside.

Bleatarne

\ Chaple / There is one Mr Midleton lives there. The towne is a lordship & belongs now to Mr George Fothergill of Tarnehouse in Russendall.[35] Her[e] they say has bin a Abby†. It is supposed, or at least pretended, to have belonged to Byland Abby in Yorkshire \ near Thirske / Informante: Richard Brathwate, Armig[er]. As to the particular fam[ilies] vid [blank]

[Machell's Notes: I:321]

*Query? Their armes.
†sed de hoc q. plura.[36]

[I.336]

An annuity of 8li per annum paid out of a place calld Burton Powes to the Power[37] of Warcop minister; church rates of Warcop Parish of 5 marke*.

The Castle

The Castle at Warcop has conteined above an acre of land, and some part of the walls which I have seen digged five passes broad of fair hune stone wrought with a broad pick & well cemented with lime & sand.[38] It is now a tenement payd 4s 6d fineable rent to Mr Brathwate. The house, most of it built out of it, & many of a huen stone remane in the hedge wall; and they say Kirkby church tower was built of stones fetched from hence, and that this was the Seat of the Earles of Westm'land: temp. Henry 8. Mr Brathwate, Mr Farer etia[m] informa[nte].[39]

---

[30] The seat of the Sandfords, later of Askham Hall. Edmund Sandford (historian of the Cumberland gentry) was Machell's contemporary; a copy of his small book (1675), is bound up in Volume 6 of Machell's History (VI.539-67), as 'A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumb'land', though Machell does not appear to have known that Sandford was the author. William Nicolson rectified this situation by adding a note in the Index to Volume 6: 'Mr. Edmund Sandford, Great Uncle to W Sandford, Esq., the present proprietor of the House of Askham, and Chief of the name 1709.' See the published text in R.S. Ferguson's scholarly edition, *A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities & Familyes in Cumberland by Edmund Sandford, circa*, *1675,* CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890).

[31] MS: 'In Sandford, 2. \ a chaple / one Hall now demolished in the midle of the towne, anciently the seat of the Sandfords \ to which family it gave that sir name above 300 yeres. / The lordship is now turned into freehold sold by Andrew Wharton, part whereof belongs to Richard Brathwate of Warcop Esq. now being 2. New Hall by the mireside an old house \ 2 / in the now \ 1 / in possesion of the Warcops.' Machell clearly decided to reorder his paragraph by numbering where he wanted his sentences to be placed.

[32] Also numbered p.101. This page is torn at the foot.

[33] There are two words here, one superimposed over the other.

[34] Major = mayor.

[35] Ravenstonedale, see Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale: III.308. See also *N&B1*, 616.

[36] 'But about this, more information is required.'

[37] To the poor? Or to the use of the minister?

[38] Repeated in *N&B1*, 606, which reports: 'Mr Machel says that he had seen some of the walls dug up, which were fifteen-foot-thick, and of fair hewn stone, well cemented with lime and sand.'

[39] MS: 'This was the Seat of the ~~Nevills~~ Earles of Westm'land: Mr Brathwate, Mr Farer etia[m] informa[nte]., temp. Henry 8', translates as, 'This was the seat of the earles of Westmorland in the time of Henry VIII; Mr Brathwate; Mr Farer also gave information.'

Warcop Hall was purchased to the Brathwates & dem[ained] with tenents from Sir Simon Musgrave,[40] Lord Philip Wharton[41] & Sir John Lowther,[42] Joint Lords, as I suppose, by marriage.

[Machell's Notes: I.336]

*But nothing to those.

[I.322]

Warcop Tower

The tower I suppose to have bin built either by Lowther or Musgrave upon the division of the Lordship & marriage of 3 coheires (ut puto),[43] for there are above the midle window in the front thereof these 2 coates



Figure 1.23.8. Warcop Tower window. Coats of arms. I.322.

which tho they be not impaled yet I take the one to be husband and the other wife. But because both Musgraves & Lowthers bear 6 annuletts and there are no colours to distinguish them by \ upon the stonework / I know not which family to fix it upon. But for the 2nd coate it is certanely Warcops, and one Edward Warcop liveing there in my time. It is onely a freehold estate now, whatever it has bin formerly, and does sute & service at the Court Baron of Mr Brathwate who has allso som tennants yet in Sandford, and soe has Mr Burton.

[Machell's Notes: I.322, 324A & 325]

Query? What fineable rent Warcop.
{Parish of Warcop. Memorandum: to see stones on Sandford more and to mention the horse rase & hospital if there.}



Figure 1.23.9. Margin sketch beside a description of Thomas Warcop of Colby. I.333.

[40] Sir Simon Musgrave (1579?-1658), of Fairbank.
[41] Philip Lord Wharton (1613-96), Westmorland's leading puritan baron: see Part 1, Ch.21, Ravenstonedale. See also G. F. Trevallyn Jones, *Saw-pit Wharton: The Political Career from 1640 to 1691 of Philip, Fourth Lord Wharton* (Sydney, 1967).
[42] Sir John Lowther II (1605-75).
[43] 'As I think'.

[Further Notes: I.333 & III.326B]
{Memorandum: to see the account of Bongate, Apleby}
{Wheatfloor, white of egg & will joyn pot.}
{Boundarys, see my paper}
[III.326B]
Mr Thomas Burton Chancelour of Carleol 1581.
Mr Knipes will kept at Warcop.

[III.326B]

[Warcop School]

February 8. 1640.
John Simpson of Sandforth[44] by his last will & testament bearing date as above said doth give a legacy of 5s per annum to be paid every other year to the schoolmaster of Warcop, & in case there be no schoolmaster there, it to go to the schoolmaster of Crosby. The same is to be paid by Barthol[omew] Scaife & Robert Peart[45] both of Sandforth, & to be paid to the church-wardens.

[III.326D][46]

Ad {Warcop school founded. {Crosby-Garret school.}[47]

[III.327]

Warcop Parish {Petrified Shokles}[48]

There is a cave in Midlefell {North-east from the church at 1½ m. distance} found by Mr Hough Raw of Kirkby [Stephen] in sinked \ ing / a shaft for lead-ore, after he had sunke 12 fathom deepe – in lengthe 20 yards, in breadth 5 or 6 yards, about 7 foote high – a flat celing with ~~shockells of~~ petrified shokles*, som as thick as a mans legg, which stood like pillars on a round bassis upon the ground; others of the like, the thickness of mans arme; som like a staff; som like candles; som like a tobacco-pipe; & other shorter like shockells of ice so thick that a man could not pass betwixt them, but they broke like ice.[49] There was a lime stone above it & a peat moss hardby, & out of a \ black / cranny came a drop of water which had framed the condensed and petrified liquor into the forme & bigness of ~~a~~ glass bottle~~s~~, 4 being larger than quart bottles, others less, the necks about 1-inch ¼, with an hollow at the top where the water passed, like the mouth of a bottle. These were as hard as flint stone. Mr Raw thought the workemen had got bottles there & was strangely surprised when he went to ciese on them & could not remove them from the ground.

[Notes: III.327]

*{They were masses of stalactites.}[50]

[III.329]

[Burton and Burton Hall]

Burton, so calld from the plenty of birches* that gro there aboutes, is a smale hamlet at the skirt of Romanfell, consisting \ only / of 3 or 4 houses which lye~~s~~ dispersedly and are customary tenants to Burton Hall, an old ruinous building \ on the E side of [blank] sike or beck / which fronteth southwards & hath but a narrow & confined prospect, impeded by a barne which standeth opposite to the court gate. The main of the house is a great Hall & ~~drawing room~~ parlour, and above them, a dineing roome & drawing rome. At the east end is a ruined chappell adjoyning to the house, and at the

[44] Sandford.
[45] 'Peart' is unclear; the name could well be 'Grant'.
[46] Reverse of III.326B.
[47] See Crosby Garrett: III.165, 166, 166A.
[48] 'Shokle'. '1500s schokle**,** (1600s sheckle**),** a lump of ice; an icicle. Scottish and northern, now rare'. *OED*.
[49] In the margin at this point is a fairly illegible note, which appears to read, '[?] N. there bottles} enters 6 ascend to hall.'
[50] 'This margin comment was added later in another hand; it appears, from various examples in the volumes, to be Bishop Lyttleton's.

west an additional building by Mr Thomas Hilton in 1622, as appears by those figures under the water table of the upper story;[51] & also these letter $I^{H}M$ for John & Mary Hilton: & this coat of arms.



Figure 1.23.10. Coat of Arms at Burton Hall. III.329.

There is nothing more remarquable in or about the house but this coate of armes in glass, in the \ great window of the / dineing roome.



Figure 1.23.11. Coat of arms in the great window of the dining room at Burton Hall. III.329.

The blazon:
1. Sable: a fess Argent between 2 saltiers in chiefe & 3 annulets in Bass, Or.
2. Argent: 3 wings [blank] Gules.
3. Azure: a bend Argent between 6 martlets, Or.
Under it – John Hylton and Mary his wife.

An this other [is] on ~~south west~~ the highest stone of the S. West angle of the great window, wherein the oblong is but a lacuna, or piece left unfinished by the carver.

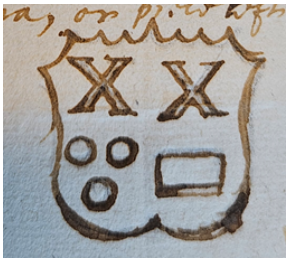


Figure 1.23.12. Detail on 'the highest stone of the S.W. angle of the great window' of Burton Hall. III.329.

[51] 'Water table': a drip moulding, i.e. a horizontal projecting ledge or moulding with a sloping top, set along the side of a wall to throw off rain. *OED*.

This Burton Hall is the ancient seat of the Hiltons ~~of Ormside Esq~~; and now belongs to Ciprian Hilton of Ormside Esq. by descent from his ancestours.
The Owners
1.Hilton of Burton, 2., 3.

[Machell's Notes: III.329]

*{? of burrs.}

[III.326A]

[Landholding]
1. In Warcop, fam[ilies] 52, of which freehold 4. Lords: Mr Brath[waite] & Vicar. 4. 1 hall, 1T[enement].
2. In Burton ½ mile N[orth ab Ecclesia]. Fam[ilies] 12.
3. Of which freehold 2. Lords: Mr Hilton.
4. In Sand[ford] W[est ab Ecclesia] ½. Fam[ilies] 31. Freeholds 19; and Lords: Mr Wharton. Apleby school 2?
5. Bleatarn S.W[est ab Ecclesia] 1 [mile]. Fam[ilies] 22. Freeholds 7. Lords: Sir Christopher Musgrave. Gentlemens houses 3.
In Sandford Lord Wharton 1 tenement; Mr Burton 5 tenements.

[Machell's Notes: III.326C] [52]
Query: How many familyes; number of free[holders]

[The Bounder]

[III.336A][53]

[1.]
From Greskelde or Grasgil all along down the water call'd Ormside beck, adjoining to the parish of Asby 'till it comes to a place called Crooks; from thence down the said water thro' Horngil & from the north corner thereof in a direct line on the east side of a hill call'd Brackenber by an old mound or dyke, & so thro' Thricklebanks to Peter-Wood adjoining to the river Eden; bounded all along by the parish of Ormside.

[III.338][54]

[2.]
For his most honoured friend Mr Thomas Machell
At Kirbethure
These.

[III.337][55]

Sir
After my servise presented unto you, these are to aquainte you that acordinge to my promise I have done my indevor to gitt you this abstracte of Warcop parishe. Sir if I may any further be serviseable to you, you may frely command him who is yours to serve you.
Nicho[las] Harrison.

A Perfect Bounder of Warcope Parishe
Beginning on the North with Bongate Parish from which tis divided from Cowplanbeck, from the foote where it runs into Eden, you ascend CB[56] where it runs into Eden, to George-gill-sike foot all the way to Umfregd Heade & so up the Storth-Sike & through Lowgill banke;[57] thence in a dyrecte

[52] Scrap page measuring 4½cm x 2cm: possibly the smallest page in Machell's MS.
[53] Scrap page measuring 8cm x 21cm; written on lined paper in a hand resembling that of a second bounder provider, see foot of III.337.
[54] Address sheet of the letter from Nicholas Harrison.
[55] Boundary text written and signed by Nicholas Harrison, with annotations in Machell's hand.
[56] This is Machell's text, apparently correcting Harrison's first line which reads, MS 'Beginning at Cowplanbecke foote'.
[57] Machell's text corrects that of Harrison in this paragraph. MS: '\ Beginning on the North with Bongate Parish from which tis divided from Cowplanbeck / from the foote ~~adjoyning to Bongate parish~~ where it runs into Eden, you ascend CB adjoyning with Eden \ where it runs into Eden / you ~~by George~~ \ to George-gill-sike / on the N.

line up Wastergill to the top of Romanfell; & so over Romanfell to Swindaille-Fauldes; then descends \ downe to Sisegill foote; thence ascends up Sisegill (in a dyrecte line) to \ currock / top of the littell fell; thence in a dyrecte line ~~from lile fell~~ through Phillops-read-mose* on the north of it, to Arnside Boore,[58] adjoyninge all this way to Bongate parish \ on the north of it. / And so from thence easteward up the Mickell Fellend to a curack \ of stones / on the sunn-side of the Mickellfell and there adjoynes on the east side with Rumachurch {Rumakirk} parishe \ in the county of York / {on the S. with Musgrave parish.} And from thence descends downe southward in a dyrecte line by the Haire-Crage to a sealle-tree[59] neare Force-becke & adjoyning on the sunn side to Musgrave parish;[60] and from thence forward (in a dyrecte line) to the Raven-Crage; & from thence ~~decending downeward~~ (in a dyrecte line) to a thorne-tree ~~in~~ growing in a crage in Midellfell Side; & from thence descend ~~downward~~ to a house calld Towansons house in a dyrecte line, & all the way adjoyneing to Musgrave parish; & from thence† to the South end of Broughhill; & from thence in a dyrecte line westward to the A[le] house of one Steadmans. And from thence (in a dyrecte line) by a burtere-tree[61] in the Sand Field[62] to Eden; & from thence in a dyrecte line over Eden to a wathe upon Bleatarne-Maske called Sandwath adjoyninge to‡ \ Soulbe parish on the south side⸸. / And from thence in a dyrecte line westward to a place called Horngill adjoyning on the west to Ormside parish; & from thence in a dyrecte line northward to a place called Blacksike foote‖ adjoyninge to Eden. And so ~~eastwards~~ downe Eden all the way to Coppelenbeck-foot ~~in a dyrecte line~~ where we began.

[Machell's Notes: III.337]

*{?}
†(by what)
‡Adjoining to the parish of Crosby Garret on the south side; & from Sandwath to Grasegill, where it adjoins to the parish of Kirkby Stephen; from thence down the rivulet ~~to Horngill~~ where it adjoins to the parish of Asby, to Horngill; from Horngill, adjoining on the west to Ormside parish, to a place called Black Sike, adjoining S[E] to the river Eden, & so down Eden all the way to Coppelenbeck foot, where we began.[63]
⸸On the S. Soulby. No parish}
‖Query foote? {which runs down into Eden?}

Curruck, commonly called Hurruck, from Hurles, which signifies to throw and ruck or rick, a stack, heape or cock of hay, which it resembles. {From leading in a cart or waine.}[64]

On the top of Brough fair-hill are 2 or 3 tumuli upon one of which the fair is wont to be proclaimed. And it is somewhat odd that Brough fair should be kept so remote from the town of Brough, being [blank]? miles distant & in another parish: Sc. in Warcop.

[III.339]

Blea-Tarn

Blea-Tarn is an hamlet rather than a village, the houses lying confusedly scattered, which are in number about XXII: 22, of which ~~they~~ are[65] freeholds VII, the rest arbitrary to Sir Christopher

~~& North East~~ with Bongate parish from which tis divided by Cowplan beck from the foote; thence up George Gill Sike \ ~~adjoyning to Bongate parish all the way~~ to Umfregd Heade & so up the Storth-Sike & through Lowgill banke.' The body text above attempts to offer an accurate version of this difficult passage.

[58] Boore? There is a field in Warcop known as 'Boron Brow': see *Westmorland Place-Names*. Alternatively, in *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online, a 'bour' is an elder tree, a dwelling place, an inn. *OED* suggests a boar, but see below, fn.61.

[59] Sealle tree. Old English 'sealh' or 'sallow': a willow tree. *OED*.

[60] Sun side: the side of a place or object which receives or tends to receive the most sunlight. *OED*.

[61] Possibly the 'borra' or 'bour' tree (*Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online); 'bour' or 'burtree'. *OED*. All are Scots or Northern English words for the 'elder tree'.

[62] A field in Warcop called 'Sand Pen' is noted in *Westmorland Place-Names*.

[63] Another version of the latter part of the bounder, not in Machell's hand and not in the hand of Nicholas Harrison, who provided the bounder information from the top of III.337 (excluding Machell's interventions and interlineations).

[64] Currack or Currock: a pair of open wooden or wicker frames slung pannier-wise on each side of a horse, for carrying a load of corn, hay, or other bulky material. *OED*.

[65] Some text (4cm) has been crossed through here and is therefore illegible.

Musgrave of Hartley Castle,[66] purchased lately of Mr George Fothergil of [blank] in Russendale, whose familyes you have an account of in Hartley & Russendal, as their fixed seates.
This place is seated (for the most part of it) on the sunny side of a banke, betwixt which and the common or pasture adjoyning, is a ~~wetish~~ \ wet / bottom, standing sometimes of the year with water in manner of Tarne, whence it may seem to be called Blea-Tarne.

[Machell's Notes: III.336]

Blatern – Musgrave
Chapel
Common i.e. Musgrave

[III.333]

[County Court ruling relating to common pasture at Bleatarn and Musgrave belonging to Byland Abbey in Yorkshire] From a copy taken by Mr George Fothergill of Tarn House.[67]

Hec compositio facta est inter Thorphinum filium Roberti et Robertum filium Petri et Monarchos de Beghland et Wallenum de Wardcop et Rob[ertum filium fidis. De calumnia quam Robertus filius Petri habuit de Communi pasture inter Blaternam & Musegrava. Quod pro pace ista remanebit Roberto filio Petri in proprium octoginta due acre terre. Scilicet a spina super Hobergham in transversam del Sijc Subtus Manrebergha usque ad ductum versus Musegravam. Et a predicta Spina totum remanebit Monachis in proprium versus grangiam et usque ad ductum juxta Capellam per divisas quas fecerunt et perambulaverunt; et averie Roberti Musegrave nunquam infra has divisas intrabunt nec Averie Monachorum infra proprium Roberti. Robertus etiam habebit unum exitum averijs de Musegrava super Manrebergham inter culturam Monachorum et vallem subtus Hobergham. A divisis quas fecerint et perambulaverint juxta pratum. Et inde habebit Robertus Communem pasturam usque ad vivarium et inde usque ad viam Super Cressekelde que vadit versus Appelb et usque ad quadradriam, et inde usque ad caput vivarij per divisas quas perambulaverunt et fecerunt. Totum hoc erit in Communam pasturam averijs de Musegrava, et averijs Monachorum . Sed monachi arabunt culturam juxta fossatum molendini usque ad vivarium, sicut perambulaverunt et divisas fecerunt. Et habebunt culturam suam super Maurebergh & pratum in proprium sicut habuerunt ante istam compositionem, et nichil amplius ibi

[III.334]

Arabunt. Et Averie de Musegrava in his locis nunquam intrabunt. Et Thorphinus et Robertus coram conprovincialibus affidaverunt quod ipsi et heredes eorum tenebunt hanc compositionem fideliter et sine malo ingenio in perpetuum. Sed si contigerit quod Averie de Musegrava intrent in proprium Monachorum dabunt unum denarium pro 20 averijs secundum consuetudinem Provincie Similiter dabunt monachi si averie eorum intrent proprium Roberti. Hec compositio facta fuit in Curia Domini Regis apud Appelby coram Williellmo filio Huei ballivo, et Murdaco decano, et Thoma de Hellebec, et Thoma filio Gospatricij, et Roberto de Kabergh, et Johanne Tailleboys, et Conano de Aske, et Williellmo de Ascheby, et Richardo Anglico, et Henrico de Cund[le], et Stephano de Tyrnaby, et Rogero Winkenel, & Roberto filio Richardi, et Williellmo de Lather, et Thoma fratre ejus; et Huberto Clerico, Michaele de Harclay, et Waltero filio ejus, & ceteris probis hominibus qui tunc fuerunt ibi presentes.[68]

[66] Hartley Castle was the chief seat of the Musgraves before the marriage of Thomas Musgrave (d. before 1467) to Joan (born c.1414), elder daughter and co-heir of William Stapleton of Edenhall. See *CFH*, 237, 322-23.
[67] This sentence was originally placed on the following page.
[68] [Not in Machell's hand] Translation of the agreement of Thorfinn and others with the monks of Byland Abbey and others (see also *N&B1*, 615-16): 'This peace-settlement was made between Thorphin the son of Robert and Robert the son of Peter, and the monks of Byland and Wallen de Warcop and Robert son of Fidis, concerning the ill-feeling suffered by Robert the son of Peter relating to the common pasture between Bleatarn and Musgrave. It is agreed that Robert the son of Peter shall have for his own use 82 acres of arable land, viz. from the thorn-tree above Hobergh, across the sike below Maurebergh, as far as the water course leading towards Musgrave; and from the said thorn-tree towards the Grange, and to the water-course near the chapel, all shall be the monks' property, by the boundaries which they have made and walked; and the draught beasts of Robert Musgrave shall never enter this land, nor those of the monks enter the private land of the said Robert. And Robert shall have one outlet for the draught beasts of Musgrave upon Maurebergh between the monks'

cultivated ground and the valley below Hobergh, by the bounds which they will have made and walked next to the meadowland. And Robert shall have common of pasture thence as far as the fish-pond and thence up the road above Cresskeld which goes towards Appleby, thence to where the four roads meet, and thence to the head of the fish-pond by the bounds which they have walked and made. All this shall be in the common pasture for the draught animals of Musgrave and of the monks. But the monks shall plough the farmland near the mill-ditch as far as the fish-pond, on the bounds that they have walked and made; and they shall continue to have as their private property their farmland above Maurebergh, and the meadow just as they had before the making of this agreement, and they shall not extend their ploughland there; and the draught animals of Musgrave shall never enter these places. And Thorphin and Robert have sworn their oath in the presence of the district's inhabitants, to uphold this agreement faithfully, they and their heirs, without evil intent, for ever. But if it should happen that the draught animals of Musgrave should enter the monks' private land they will give one penny for 20 draught animals according to the custom of the district. Likewise, the monks will give [the same] if their own draught animals intrude into Robert's land. This agreement was made in the Court of Our Lord the King at Appleby in the presence of William the son of Hugh the Bailiff, Murdo the deacon, Thomas de Hellebec, Thomas son of Gospatric, Robert de Kabergh, John Tailleboys, Conan de Aske, William de Ascheby, Richard English, Henry de Cundale, Stephen de Tyrnaby, Roger Winkenel, Robert son of Richard, William de Lathes, Thomas his brother, Hubert the Clerk, Michael de Harclay, Walter his brother and other honest men then present.'

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 1]

[II.1]

Pars 4ª. MS.
Collect[iones] Antiq[us] Comitatus Westmarie
{T.M. Vol. II}

sive

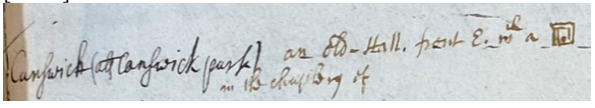
tract. specialis de Baronia de Kendall.

Commonly called The Baronie for distinctio[n] from the Bottome of Westmorland

[1. Villare Alphabeticum relating to the Barony of Kendal]

[II.3]

[A.] Index. Paroch. Manner houses marked xx.[1]

Town or Place. Barony. Ward \ et locorum. /	Parish	Lordship
⊙Ambleside. Part in Windermer & part in Applethwayte	in the parish of Gresmere Windermere	payd
⊙Burnashed	Kendal	
1[t] to Bur: til Ed. 2., then to Belling. till Hen.8. vide notes on the ped.[2] Then to Machel. Then to Brathwate		
⊙Bethom. To the Bethoms […][3]	Bethom	
⊙Barbon in	K. Loansdal	
⊙Brigstere	Kendal	
⊙Burton. A market town & parish	Burton	
⊙Cunswick (alias Cunswick park)	Kendal	
an old hall. Front E. with a gatehouse.[4] In the chapelry of [blank]		
		
Figure 2.1.1. 'Cunswick, an old Hall.' II.3.		
⊙Chapellon (no Chapple. Ith Ing? Holme. Mr Phill[ipson]	? Kendal	
~~Claperiet in the~~ map pro		
⊙Clapper-yeat	Gresmer	
(Mr Phil.) at Windermer Head near Am[b]leside		
⊙Crosthwaite	Heversham	
⊙Crossecrake	Kendal	
Casterton	K. Lonsdal	
⊙Crooke (alias, nuper, Thwatterden hall)	Kendal	
⊙Cowgarth or Calgarth	Windermer	
St Catherines	Windermer	
an old demol[ished] Chaple near W[indermere]		
Dockeray, an Hall house at the N. end of K.	Kendal	
⊙Delake		
	Kendal	

[1] Manor houses do not appear to have been marked with 'xx' here, though some of the text is obscured by the binding. Machell's other symbols, such as ⊙ and 0, denoting size of settlement, have been reproduced as Machell drew them, together with further symbols such as 'x' and '#'. See another experimental approach to recording settlement in Machell's Preface, I.41A.

[2] 'See notes on the pedigree.'

[3] There is an illegible sentence here.

[4] Note the tiny image. The gatehouse is all that is left of the 17th-century hall and its earlier buildings. For Cunswick Hall, see Jeremy R. Robinson and Kevin Grice, 'Cunswick Hall: An archaeological and historical survey of a Lakeland manor', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 149-68.

Delaker	
Farleton	Burton
Firbanke alijs Frithbanke	Kendal
Fawset	
Forresthall (~~dub an non in Baron de Apleby Mr Phil~~)	Kendall
Grayrigg	Kendal
Gresmere (vulgo Grosmer Mr Ph.) a village & parish	Gresmire

[II.4]

Halling hall	Kendall
Hay	
Hayfell, a common belonging to the corporation of Kendal	Kendal
Hutton ith' Hay, a village	Kendal
Haverbrake (alijs Dallan Tower nup[e]r)	Bethom
Heversham village & parish	Heversham
Hellsington village ad Helston Leathes	Kendal
Helston Leathes	
? Hinkaster vil.	
Holme, village & parke belongs to Peston, \ oth' manner /	Burton
? Holmesvales	
~~Howhar (in Lane puto~~)	
Hutton new vil.	Kendal
Hutton Old vil Parke opinor[5]	
Hutton Roofe – Hall	
X Hutton Ith' Hay supra. Ham.	
Hugill vil. in Ing Chapelry in	Kendal
⊙Kendall - a Market Town & Parish	
# Kendal Castle	
Kirkland by Kendal vil. At the S. End.	
Kentmere – a Chapelry Hall & Hamlet in	Kendal
Kent Flu	
Kettle – forsan Strickland Kettel	
Killington – Vil. & Chap. & Hall in	Kendal
Kirkby Loansdale – a market T[own] & Parish	Kirkbyloa[n]sdale
St Katherines, a chap. near Cawgarth in	Windermer
Langdale (~~an in Kend?~~) great & little in	Gresmer
0L~~anrigg~~ or Lambrig vil & parke	Kendal
Leavins hal or Upper Leavins h[all]). Nether Leavins hall to Preston oth[er] manner {not vill but manner house}	Heversham
Long-Sleddall vide Sled.	Kendall
Leaun flu	
Loansdale – Dale in the S. part of Kendal Barony	Kirkby Loansdale
Loughrigg in	Gresmer
Lupton Lordship	Kirkby Loansdale

[II.5]

Mansergh	K. Loansdale
0Meathop (or Methop)	Heversham P.
⊙Midleton manner – vill	Kirkbylonsd.
Millthorpe (v[u]lga \Mil/Throp)	Heversham
Natland Vil. \ Natland forrest /	Kendall
Neather ~~Stanley~~ (pro Staveley x) Vill. vid Staveley & Upper Staveley a vill: a vill. & Chap. formerly a manner!	Kendall
New Hutton vill –	
~~Ova~~ map. (pro Owva \8va /) a Marish & Hamlet	Hersham
Parkes how many?	
Patton Village and Hall	Kendal
Preston (Patrick)	?
⊙Preston (Richard) query an in Bethom vel Kendall (Chapple)	

[5] 'Opinor': as I think.

Q.	
Rydall	Gresmer
⊙ Sellside (or Selsed-hall) Ham. & Chapple in	Kend.
Sidghwick or Seggeswick village	Kend.
Sisergh, an Hal or Manner – Siser fellside an Ham.	
St Catherines (vide Cather.) near Caugarth Hall	Wind'mer
? Skeelmere. ~~Hall & Hamlet~~ pro Skelsmere Hall	~~Kendal~~ R.

[II.6]

⊙ Sledall Vill. Sledall Long (vid. Long Sl.) village	Kendall
⊙ Staveley (Over) (Nether & hall) formerly a market.	Kendall
Staveley Chaple	
Skelmirgh (& Skelsmerhal) vil. ad Labourn	Kendal
Ska\w/(l)thwayte Rigg. Ham.	Kendal
Strickland Vil.	Kendal
Stricland Rog[e]r. Ham.	Kendal
Stainton & vill. ~~& demaisne~~	Heversh.
Sellett hall & demaisne	Hershom
# Troutbeck	Windermer
Undermilnb[e]ck (~~et Overmel.~~) alijs under Milbeck	Windermer
Under Barrow (from Barowfell a vill –)	Kendall
\ barrow ie brow, contra[6] of burrow	
⊙ Witherslack vil. In	[Blank]
⊙ Whinfell vil or Hamlet	Kendal
⊙ Watland forsan per Natland	Wind'mer
⊙ Windermere – a Lakeside Parish – Windermerwat[e]r a lake 10 miles long)	Wind'mer
Winstar Chapple in	K?
~~⊙ Whinfell~~	

[II.7]

Index nominum[7]

A
Bateman
Bellingham
Beck
Bethom
Brathwayte
Bradley
Briggs
Byndlose
Carus
Chamber
Curwen
Duckett
Fisher
Fleming
Gilpin
Guy
Godsave
Harrington sive antique Haverington for ad Bar[ony] De Kend.
J
K
Labourne
Lancaster

[6] This word is unclear but is probably a shortened form of 'contraction'.
[7] 'Index of names.'

Langdale?
Leauins.
Midleton

[II.8]

N
O
Phillipson
Preston – of Biggins hall Westm'd. 4 descents. Heralds office visit. Durham p.16.
Q
Readman
Rosse
Sandes
Sedgewick
Sleddall?
Strikland
Stockdal
Thornburrow
V
Winsor
~~Woulston~~
Willson

[II.354]

{!!! Methodas}
et
de Baronia de Kend. In Genere
e Referenda e Lib Sir Dan. Fleming[8]

[II.356]

The
Barony of Kendal And
Division thereof
Into
Kendal Ward and
Loansdal Ward

Anno Domino 1692

[Miscellaneous Notes relating to the Barony of Kendal]
In describing of Chappelry consider How they ly, that you may proceed in som orderly method – either Round or Lengthway.
In describing of Places – give 1[t] Their site & beareing; 2. What they have bin of old: 3. What they are now. With The places of note, tenure & Customs.
And also the same with the Coate marked 3. And for the Crist a Demy-Horse with a Ducal Crownet Coller – Az[ure] belonging to Bindlose.[9]

[II.1][10]

A O from Windermer

x.1. Kentmere	p.43	
x.2. \ Long / Sleddal)	p.41	
3. Selside	p.39	0:0:6
1. St Johns ruin in Skelsmer	p.5	0:0:2
2. Burneside	p.31	0:6:2

[8] Here Machell demonstrates his dependence on Sir Daniel Fleming's research library.
[9] Written on a small scrap of paper (11cm x 6cm), attached to the foot of II.356.
[10] In the MS, most of these notes are written around the edge of the title-page of the 'Barony of Kendal' section, at the beginning of Volume II.

Laid at Hooke nose[11]
3. Staveley p.51 0:0:2^{d} & 6^{d}
4. Ings p.53 2^{d}.
Windermer given Tho. 2^{s}.6 & 1^{d} ob, & 1^{d}.

{Old Peter Birket of Hugill by Ing Chappel says that Cawgar[t]h was formerly the Birkets of which he has seen deeds.}

1. Natland. Mr. Wilson yeoman (Sheph[erd) olderly hooke nose.)[12]
2. Maidenhead.
3. Hutton. Mr. Nicholson good like Mr Edmondson. Dawson down locked (Th. Strikland) at the Brig end.
4. Kirkby. L. at Mr Briges. Mr Hen[ry] Denton wifes. Mr Applegarth will.}[13]

N.B.

Mr Robert Phillipson of Cawgarth informed mee that there are 2 Foes[14] in the Barony of Kendall, Sc. the Marquess foe, & Richmond foe; under which foes all there lands thereabout are held. He told mee also, of a particular exemption which the people in his parish have from being cited to Richmond; they being to make there appearance att the spirituall court at Kendall. {Charta penes Mr Phillipson.} Of these things I was inform'd by him at London. March 1675/6.[15] Sed de his quaere plura? [16]
vix creditur a T. Dixon.[17]

{Stone moss makes corke for dying; an ill purple. Made out of old oake trees; a brown. Wooddus i.e. wood wast; yallow.}

[II.2]

Worth of Land
{Under Barrow} Att Underbarrow in the parish of Kendal, there is meadow called Grigs-medows worth 50s per annu[m] an acre; & belongs to tennent.
Measure of land see in Gresmere – page 1^{t} there.

[11] The phrase, 'hook nose', is written twice on this page, even though Machell seems to be describing two different men. The phrase appears again in Machell's narrative on the Chapelry of Burneside, in a description of his informant there. 'N.B. Tho. Dennison of Lo\w/thwate late Balif: Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer' [II.91]. This would be the 'hook nose' at whose house he 'laid', as told here on II.1. The phrase is indicative of Machell's interest in physical details of appearance.
[12] Machell met Mr Wilson ('a courteous gentleman') at Natland, during his 'Itinerary' or tour of the Barony of Kendal in 1692: see Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.382.
[13] Machell listed three points but wrote four. As they are all difficult to decipher, the transcription cannot be accepted as completely accurate.
[14] A version of 'fee', from the Latin 'feodem' and Middle English, 'fe, feo, fey'; the term – either fee or foe –is used by Machell in relation to feudal landholding and obligation: see the English Glossary.
[15] Notes relating to Machell's visits to London are scattered throughout the volumes. He worked on ancient deeds relating to Cumberland and Westmorland in the Tower of London and elsewhere from at least 1674 to the time he finally left Oxford for his rectory at Kirkby Thore: see the footnote below. See also Part 3, Ch.2, Machell's Correspondence; and the Editor's Introduction.
[16] 'But make further inquiries about this?'
[17] 'T. Dixon's information is scarcely credible.' Thomas Dixon was a contemporary of Machell at Queen's College, Oxford. Son of Thomas Dixon of Windermere, he matriculated, 1664-5, aged 15; B.A. 1669; M.A. 1672-3; B.D. 1682, *OAD*. In a letter to Daniel Fleming, 5 November 1677, Dixon remarked, 'I suppose you have heard that Mr Machell is upon his year of grace, having got Kirkby Thure in the north. I have taken in his friend Mr Nanson of Appleby in his room.' See Maxwell Lyte, Stanley Hughes Le Fleming, James Arthur Bennett and Richard Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890), 139. Philip Nanson, son of Robert of Appleby, went to Queen's College Oxford; matriculated 1665 aged 18; B.A. 1669-70; M.A. 1673; fellow 1674; rector of Dogmersfield Hants, 1680, *OAD*. Prior to 1680, the rector was Andrew Whelpdale (died 1678/9), whose widow, Elizabeth, presented Nanson to the living. In 1680, Elizabeth married Thomas Machell and left Hampshire for Kirkby Thore. See C. Roy Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45, at 116.

Measure of Corn. Value
A bushel at Kendal is 20 Gallon. At Oxon but 8. Kirby Loansdale – 24 Gallon.
Measure of Hay. Value
About Kendall the measure by trusses. A trusse is an horseload – 30 stone more or lesse.
There is land by the river side twixt Kendal & Kirkbyloansdal which will bring forth corne for 3 or 4 yeares. & when they fallow it shall bring forth hay the very next year. An acre brought forth 26 bushel of Big the 1[t] year;[18] and the next year 30 truss of hay.

[II.11]

[3. Correspondence relating to Machell's Research at Kendal]

[Letter to Thomas Machell from his relation, John Thwaites of Appleby.]

Dear Cosen
My kind respects salute you. I have endeavourd to satisfie your desires to give you an account of the Charter of Carlisle (a.) & Kendall & their Immunityes,[19] but cannot prevaile therein.[20] In a paper inclosed, I have given you an account of ours, and an answeare from Thomas Jackson of Dufton to one of your Queries: All your frends here are in good health. My wife & daughter doe present ther love & service to you, and soe doth,

[Machell's Notes: II.11]
{a. I know not when its Charter was granted but Henry 1. made it an episcopal sea. Write Mr Edmondson about Carlile.}[21]
{Referate ad Kendal}[22] Memorandum. It was Emma Tyson a bakers wife in Kendal who hindered her husband when he was redy to shoot the King, for which she is to be had in everlasting remembrance. A relation of which intent when the King was passed through the Towne, came to his & Prince Ruperts eare; where upon the Prince would have the Towne have sufferrd as much for this disloyalty as Appleby formerly had don for its fidelity to Kings of England. But the king sayd noe, it should not be burned, all should not suffer for one mans sake & bes[ee]ched God to forgive him.[23]

[18] Big[g] = barley.
[19] Earlier Crown grants of a market and fair were confirmed by Elizabeth I's charter of incorporation in 1575, and by Charles I's charter of 1636, giving Kendal the right to name an alderman as mayor. A new charter was granted in December 1684, giving the Crown increased powers over the corporation in line with Tory policies: C.B. Phillips, 'The Corporation of Kendal under Charles II', *Northern History* 31 (1995), 157-77, at 171. See also Cornelius Nicholson, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood: with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 2nd edn, 1861 [1st edition, 1832]), Ch.5: The Corporation.
[20] In some parishes, Machell experienced difficulty in securing information. In a letter to Daniel Fleming, 1 August 1677, he wished that all were as ready to assist him as was Fleming. 'Many are cold. If this continues I shall have to retire from the whole enterprise.' See Lyte, Hughes et al (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall*, 139.
[21] According to R.S. Ferguson, the first two Carlisle charters (Henry II and Henry III) were burnt, leaving the city with no title deeds. These charters were followed by others: in 1293, 1316 and 1353. Ferguson lists 11 subsequent charters from the reign of Richard II to that of James I. Charles I's charter of 1638, known as the 'governing charter', set out how the city was to be governed. Such charters had generally expanded Carlisle's powers of self-governance, but in 1664 Charles II's amendment to his father's charter exemplified the Crown's effort to increase royal control of borough personnel after the Commonwealth era by requiring officers to take the oath of obedience and supremacy, and the town clerk and recorder to be approved by the Crown. Thwaites probably wished to see this particular charter; the tenor of the letter suggests a period in the early 1670s when Machell was beginning his research. See R.S. Ferguson and W. Nanson (eds), *Some Municipal Records of the City of Carlisle*, CWAAS Extra Series, 4 (Carlisle, 1887), Ch. I: The Corporation and Charters. See also Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c.1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 11-14. For the surrender and re-grant of this charter in 1684, giving the Crown powers of removal and appointment of corporation personnel, subsequently allowing James in 1688 to eject opponents of his toleration policies and install supporters, see Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution*, 97-117.
[22] 'Keep this for the Kendal section.'
[23] In 1651, Charles II and his Scottish army stopped to rest at Kendal on their route south to the Battle of Worcester. Regarding Emma Tyson, local tradition has it that 'when Charles II marched his army into the town … a baker named Tyson attempted to assassinate him.' See the *Westmorland Gazette*,

{Kendal gives Title to the Eldest son of the Duke of Espernon[24] in France; who is called Duke of Candalle: Out of a *Geographical Dictionary* Translated out of Mounsier du Val, London 1678.[25]
But query if no such place as Candalle in the Kingdom of France. Qu. also which the Duke of Yorkes children by Chancellor Hides D[aughter] was Duke of Kendal, of the Heralds. Qu. also of the Duke of Cumberland.}[26]

[II.14]

[Letter to Thomas Machell in an unknown hand.]

Mr Thomas Machell
One of the Fellows in Queenes Coll
This.
In the 1ᵗ year of R[ichard]1. [1189-1190], in consideration of 60 marks payd to the K. by this Gilbert was acquitted for himselfe & his heires from a certaine Tribute called neatigeld,[27] which he used to pay out of his lands of Westmorland & K[endal] (note the destinction), & from suit to the County Court, Hundred Court, & Titheing. Likewise, from Aid to the Sherif & all his Bailiffs &c. Dugdale *Baronage* (1.Vol.?) p.422.[28] But it seems this would not hold for William the son of Gilbert.

This descent there	Ivo Talboys = Ethered = Ketell Gilbert = William = who probably as governor of Lancaster Castle did first assume the sʳname of Lancaster.	Gundred wid. of Roger Earle of Warwick, daughter to William, 2 Earle of Warren	Temp. Stephen
	|	|	
	William de Lancaster fil. Et heres = 2. Helewise de Stutevil fil	[Blank] d. marryed to Richard de Morevil	
A charter from suit of Com. Court	Gilbert = filius Rogeri Fitz Remfride. 1. R.1. [1189-90] & anno	Helewise de Lancaster – T[emp]R.1.	

https://www.thewestmorlandgazette.co.uk/news/18291644.nostalgia-famous-visitors-kendal-centuries. This appears to be true, but the rest of Machell's tale has been embroidered, for, according to Roger Bingham, 'Charles II came through in 1651 but by that time Rupert was in exile…' Roger Bingham, *Kendal, A Social History* (Milnthorpe, 1995), 353.

[24] Épernon.

[25] Pierre Duval (1618-83), *A Geographical Dictionary, In which are Described the most Eminent Countreys, Towns, Ports, Seas, Streights, and Rivers in the whole World. Very Useful for the Understanding of the Modern Histories* (Paris, 1651; 1st English edn, 1662; 3rd edn, 1678).

[26] James II married twice; first to Anne Hyde, daughter of Edward Hyde, duke of Clarendon. Anne produced eight children, only two of whom (both female) survived infancy. Of the male children, the third, Charles (1666-1667) was created Duke of Kendal, but lived only 10 months. J. Miller, 'Anne [née Anne Hyde], duchess of York (1637-1671), first wife of James II'. *ODNB*.

[27] Neat/nowt/neot geld: see the English Glossary.

[28] Written in Dugdale's *Baronage* as, 'This Gilbert in 1. Ric. 1. in consideration of sixty marks of Silver, then paid to the King, was acquitted for himself and his heirs, from a certain Tribute called Nutegeld, which he did use to pay out of his Lands in Westmorland, and Kendall; Also, from suit to the County-Court, Hundred-Court, and Tithing. Likewise, from Aid to the Sheriff, and all his Bailiffs. And moreover obtained a Grant of Free-Forest in Westmorland, Kendale, and Furnesse in as ample manner, as William de Lancaster Son of Gilbert … enjoyed the same; and by those very Bounds: Also, that Forest which King Richard had granted to him and his Heirs in Kendale, with six pounds Land … and that whatsoever was wast in the Woods of Westmorland, and Kendale, in the time of the before-specified William de Lancaster, the Son of Gilbert, should continue so still.' Dugdale, *Baronage*, Book I, 421.

ejus[dem] obtend a grant durante bene placito Regis of the custody of the Hon. of Lancaster. Obijt 4^0 Hen. 3. [1219-20][29]

1. William = filius Gilberti – vulgo W de Lancasters. Anno 4^0 ad 30. Hen.3.[30] In which year he had the custo[dy] of that Honour of Lancaster to his trust S.P.[31] So his Lands descended to his next Heires, Peter de Brus & Walter de Lindesey.	Agnes de Brus	2. Roger brother | Helewise de Lan--caster maryed to Peter de Brus	Alice maryed = to Walter de Lindesay

[II.9][32]

[4.] The Barony of Kendall*

[Written in another hand, with Introduction and Notes by Machell]

It is devided into two Wards or hundereths, which is kno\wne/ by the name of Kendall Ward and Lonsdall Ward, to which there is to either of them one High Constable and to Kendall Ward 39 Petty Constables, and to Lonsdall ward 12. vizt.

Kendall Ward

Gresmire	Kentmire	Greyrigge	Beathom or Farleton
Langdall	Long Sleddall	Lamb rigge	Milthroppe Hev[er]sham
Rydall & Loughrigg	Over Staveley	Docker	& Hav[er]bracke
Ambleside	Neither Staveley	Skelsmergh & Patton	Hincaster
Troutebecke	Underbarro\w/	Strickland Roger & Kettle	Leavens
Applethwaite	Crosthw[ai]te & Lyth	Scalthwatrigg	Stainton
Undermilne becke	Witherslack Meathopp	Hay & Hutton ith' Hay	Sidgewike
Crook	Ova[33]	New Hutton	Natland
Hugill	Fawcett Forest	Old Hutton & Holmscales	Helsington
	Whinfell & Selside	Preston Patrick	Kirkland
		Preston Richard	

Lonsdall Ward

Killington	Midleton	Kirkby Lonsdale	Lupton
Firbanke	Barbon	Hutton roofe	Burton
Dillicar	Mansergh	Casterton	Holme

Parish Church viz.
Gresmire chapels of ease, two.
Windermire, one church of ease called Troutbecke Church.[34]
Kirkby Kendall, Thirteene Chappells of ease.

[29] 'And in the same year, obtained a grant during good pleasure of the king, of the custody of the Honour of Lancaster. He died 4. Henry 3.'
[30] 'In the 4th to the 30th year of Henry III.' 1219-46.
[31] He died without issue.
[32] Tabulation in this page is in another hand but it was headed and annotated by Machell. The page, 35cm x 30cm, forms a large folded sheet inserted into the volume vertically and read crossways. The text then continues to II.11.
[33] Ulpha.
[34] MS: 'Windermire, one church of ease called Troutbecke Church. Windermire, one church of ease called Troutbecke Church.'

Heversham, one church of ease called Crosthwaite Church.
Beathome, one church of ease called Wither[slack] church which church was given by Doctor Borrike[35] Deane of Pauls and consecrated by Bish\ope /~~Phipps~~ Wilkins late bishop of Chester in the yeare 167[?][36] – ask Mr Dixon.[37]
Burton chapel, none.

{Markett Townes}
As for the towne of Kirkby Kendall, it is the Eminent towne of this Barrony, both for resort of people as alsoe for trade, the manufacture whereof (which is the main cause) is a sort of woollen cloth commonly called and knowne by the name of Kendall Cottons,[38] by which the whole Parrish hath beene formerly imployed with makeinge thereof. And now of late the ingenuitie of the people hath sett up and found out a trade of makeinge a sort of stuffes which is called Kendall druggetts, which brings in money, very great store, to which is added to trade of Knitinge of Gerses[39] stockins which at this time doth keepe a great many children at worke†.

Kirkby Kendale – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Ambleside – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Burton – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Kirkby Lonsdall – 2 fairs in the yeare.
Milthroppe \ noe Markett / onely one faire which is kept upon the first day of May constantly.

[Machell's Notes: II.9]
*{vid. MS. T.M. part 5. p.11[a]. 13[b]. 23[a]. 37.}
†{p. 71.}

[II.10B]

[Rivers and Bridges in Kendal Barony]
You have in this Barrony two very fine large and wholesome Rivers which are called Kent & Loyne. And as for Kent it derives its name for Kent meare (of which I shall let you know hereafter). It hath two other smale rivers which cums into it about a mile above Kendal aforesaid, vizt. Mint and Spritt. And in the river of Spritt there are very great water fall which is called Garnett watter fall, by which the people doth commonly take notice when as sounds thereof is heard downe wards, that towards Kendall, they \ know / that it will be faire weather.

And in Kent, beneath Kendall about three myles, there is another such water fale which is called the \ force / and when as the sound thereof is heard topwards then they expect to […][40]
[It takes] it name from the place of it[s] spring until it coms into the sea which is below Milthropp. Upon which river stands
A. eleaven corne milns, vizt: at Burneshead two; at Kendall two; at Helsington Laths two; at Hawes one; at Lakerige two; and Force two.

[35] Witherslack's original church (St Mary's) was destroyed in the Civil Wars. In his will, John Barwick (dean of St Paul's, London, died 1664) left money to provide a burial place in Witherslack, the village of his birth, as a means of avoiding difficulties when funeral corteges were obliged to cross the estuary to the mother church in Beetham. The new church (a chapel of ease to Beetham) was consecrated in 1671. Hyde & Pevsner, 696. *N&BI*, 232.
[36] John Wilkins, bishop of Chester, 1668-72. See J. Henry, 'Wilkins, John (1614-1672), theologian and natural philosopher'. *ODNB*.
[37] Presumably this is Thomas Dixon, see above, II.1.
[38] That is, woollens.
[39] 'Gersey' or jersey or jarnsey: Wool which has been combed and is ready for spinning, used especially in reference to the knitting of stockings and other worsted articles. *OED*.
[40] A repair in the MS here has resulted in 13cm of largely illegible text.

[B.] And over the said river is 9 bridges. Vizt. […][41] Barly Brigge,[42] Boulston Brigge, Burneshead Brigge, Stramondgate Brigge, Neither Brigg,[43] Millne brigge,[44] Hawes Brigg, Fforce Brigge[45] and Leavenes brigge.

And for the river Loyne it hath its beginning or spring from a place in the bottome of Westm'land called Birkbeck fells. The towne of Kirkby Lonsdall stands upon it and Lancaster; at which place or there abouts it goes into the sea. And over it is 7 briggs, vizt. Streight brigge, High Loynes brigge, Firbanck brigge, Low Loynes brigg, Murthwate brigge, Kirkby brigge & Lancaster brigge; but Lancaster brigg is within said county of Lancaster.

[II.10C][46]

{Kendall Ward}

Manner houses	Demesnes	Parkes & Forrests
Kentmire	one	one
Staveley	one	one
	Troutbecke parke	
Rydall hall	one	
Conswicke	one	one
	Witherslacke parke	
Syzer	one	one
	Brigstere parke	
	Lakerigge parke	
	Natland parke	
Leavens	one	one
Forrest	one	one forrest
Burneshead	one	one parke called Cowhunhead
Skelsmergh	one	one
Grayrigge	one	one forrest
Docker Demesne	one parke	
Lambe rige	Parke onely	
Preston	one	
Bethome Hall	one	

{Loansdal Ward}

Manner houses	Demesnes	Parkes & Forrests
Killinton Hall	one	one
	Dillicar Parke	
Midleton Hall	one	one
Casterton	one	
Burton	–	–
	Holme Parke	

{Halls}
Bigins Hall, Underly Hall, Ambleside Hall, Calgarth Hall, and Crooke Hall.

[People]
Wee looke upon these to be Anciently[47] of good family in this barony. Vizt. Midleton of Midleton, Layburne of Skelsmergh, Strickland of Sizer, Gilpin of Kentmire – which is now gone out of the name. Bellingham of Forrest, Phillipson of Calgarth, Brathwaite of Burneshead.

[41] Here is one illegible crossed-through word.
[42] Barley Bridge at Staveley.
[43] Nether Bridge.
[44] Now, Miller Bridge.
[45] Force Bridge, Sedgwick.
[46] This page is in the same hand as that in the previous page.
[47] This word is unclear.

The Commonaltie of this barony is a people very well bred and goes very hansome and decently in their apparel; brings up their children very well in soe much that very many of them is fit for the universitie before the[y] leave schoole.

[Meres]
This Barrony of Kendall of ours have fouer meares or standing waters. Vizt. Winder-Meare, in which is a fish which is called Chares which is said there is not the like of them in England; this watter or meare is in length seaven miles or there abouts and about a mile broad; Which said watter hath beene of late frozen over soe strongly that the inhabitants have led timber over it with draughts of eight beast a peece in.[48]

[II.10D]
There [is also] Kentmire meare or watter which has very great store of trouts in it; alsoe Langdall watter & Gresmire watter. In the Barrony about: Langdale, Loughrigge, Ambleside, Troutebecke, Ridall; and there about is mount[ains], in which places the[y] keepe very many sheepe. We have in and about Kendall good store of arable grounds, and in Lonsdale ward there is more; for the most there is pasture and arable; they breede there very good cattell.

[Beacons]
{For Beacons wee have onely three; that [is] Whinfell, Kendall & Fareleton. Wee \ have / some salt made with us at a place, Meathopp.}[49]

[5. Notes on Baronial Families]

N.B. Ivo Talebose held lands in Norfolk. Tempus Conquest Williel[mus] Talebose [held lands] in Lincoleshire.
Azeline uxor Tailgebosch[50] in Boching hamshire.
Johannes Tailebois witness to a deed sans date of Will[iam] Mauchael of Crackenthorp; testis item Robertus, fol. Copsie.[51]

È MS Cumberland part 1, p.19, §2.
William de Lancaster was a great Baron: & a great commander under King Henry the 2nd in the wars against David King of Scots, & Earle Henry his son in Cumberland & the parts thereabouts; And helped the recover[y] the Countyes of Northumberland & Cumberland from the Scots which King Stephen had given them.

See in the pedigree of the Barrons of Brough on the Sands in Cumberland – tis said that Richard de Morvil, a 2 brother, maryed the daughter of William de Lancaster proxima 16. Henry 2. [1169-1170]. If this was Helewisia, Reyn-feyd maryed her a widow when she was at least 55 years of aige – Query ergo if he had not 2 daughter. Hew Morvil, nephew of this Richard, maryed one Helewish, with whom he had Kirkoswald & Lastrigby – But she is sirnam'd de Stutevil. Se the pedigree of Stut.[52]

[II.15][53]
That Barony of Kendal was given to (a.)[54] Ivan Tayleboys Earle of Anjou (by William the Conq.) who was the 1t Baron of Kendall ~~which~~ I read of; which Ivo~~n~~ had isue (b.) Eldred, who had isue Ketellus, to whome William Meschens gave (for services) Kelton-Salter, Workinton & Salterby, not long after the Conquest; which were ~~as I take it~~ in the Barony of Eggermont or Cowpland in Cumberland. And William the son of Gilbert de Lancaster who was (c.) lineally descended (i.e. by the mothers side)

[48] A team of eight oxen.
[49] Whinfell is in the Barony of Westmorland; for a fuller list of beacons see Machell's Preface, II.454.
[50] MS: 'Ta~~lebois~~ilgebosch.'
[51] 'Witnessed in the same way by Robertus in the book of Copsie.'
[52] Machell's notes on baronial families on II.10D are in his own hand; the rest of the page is in another hand, the owner of which appears to be the informant who provided answers to Machell's queries.
[53] Also numbered p.11.
[54] Machell's own numbering system for notes: see 'Machell's Notes' at the foot of this page.

from this Ivo Taleboys, held the said barony in the 11 year (d.) of Henry son of King John (i.e. Henry the 3[d]) [1226-1227], att which time there was som difference betwixt him & Robert de Veteripont Lord of Honour of Appleby & Baron of Westmorland, about sute of court att \ the County Court / Apleby, which \ William / de Lancaster Baron of Kendal denyed to pay; but ~~they aggred upon~~ an \ aggrement was made / betwixt them at Apleby in (e.) Quindensis S[ti] Hillary;[55] wherby the said William stood oblieged to doe sute &c. in the County Court of Robert de Veteripont, by himselfe or his stuard*.
Martin Patishill, John de Sauul,[56] Will de Insuela, Richard Duckett: Justitiarijs (intelligo itinerantibus enim 4[r] fore solebant.)[57]

This William had a daughter & heire whose name was Helwisia, maryed to Gilbert fils Reynfed some years before this, Sc. anno 8[0]. regni Johannis† [1206-1207]; and was (as is expressed in an Evidence dated die Sancti Hillaris, undecimo Hen. 1. (pro 3[1] procul dub[i]o na[m] eadem est carta ni fallor)[58] the son of Gilbert, the son of Roger, the son of Kenefrid (Kenefrid di filus). But not withstanding this heiress, I finde one William de Lancaster descended possibly of an uncle to this William, possesed of the Barony of Kendal in the reign of (g.) King Ed. 1. \ Hen. 3: the same man may be, / as appears out of the Booke of Knights Foes in Westmorland mentioning allso Roger de Lancaster de Baronia de Kendal, & Walter de Lancaster de eadem;[59] the particular whereof I shall here insert because it shows planely how & by whome the Knights foes in this county were held & how many of them.
And thus, it is Walterus de Strickland & Robertus de Hellebeck: collectores reditus computati de auxillio assiso, et collectione, in hac comitatu Reddunt Computum &c.[60] They give an account of 8 markes for 4 foes, of John de Veteripont, for his Barony of Westmorland (this was in the second place) & of 4 markes of 2 foes of William de Lancaster for his Barony of Kendall. And of 2 markes of one foe of Ralph de Aincourt, and this must be all the same, William injoying his lands during his life tho Helwisia was his daughter & heire ‡.

[Machell's Notes: II.15]

{(a.) 2 Lib carta MS penes Comit Penb.}[61]
{(b.) MS Liber Antiquit. Cumberland: c.d.e.f.}[62]
(g.) x é inquisition post mortem Willielmi de Lancaster Talber fits Reyfeyd} {! x}
*{It must be in the reign of Hen. 3. for John de Veteripont dyed about the 26. of Hen. 3.}
†{See Sir Daniels book 57. MS A, & Dug[dale's] *Baronagium*. Will. 3. de Lancaster in lib. Feodum militum in scaccario sub custod. Rememoratoris Regis.}[63]
‡ {Inde forsan distinctio feodum}[64]

{Ivo Taleboys=
Eldred ~~Tal~~. =
Ketellus ~~Taleboys~~}
{Ketefridus = ?
Rogerus = ?
Gilbertus =
Willelmus de Lancaster vixit temp Hen. filis Joh. sc. 3[1]
= Helwisia m. to Gilbert fits Reynsed 8[0] Johanis}

[55] 'In the fifteen days after St Hilary's Day'. St Hilary's Feast-day is held on the Sunday nearest to the 13 January each year.
[56] Unclear word.
[57] 'Justiciaries (I assume itinerant, as there were four of them).' Machell includes an unclear Latin word in this phrase.
[58] '(As is expressed in an evidence dated St Hilary's Day, 11. Henry I. ([erroneously] for III.): 13 Jan. 1226-27, beyond doubt, for it is the same document, unless I am mistaken).'
[59] 'of the same'.
[60] 'Collectors of the revenue calculated for aid of the assizes, and collection in this county.'
[61] 'See the 'Book of Deeds' in the custody of the Countess of Pembroke'.
[62] 'See a manuscript, Book of Antiquities in Cumberland, c, d, e, f'.
[63] 'In the Book of Knights' Fees in the Exchequer in the custody of the King's Remembrancer.'
[64] 'Hence, perhaps, the distinction of the fees.'

{See more of the name of Tayleboys pag.7, part 5æ MS Westmorland.}[65]

[I.171]

Thomas Taylboys of Hurworth, his seale: had Westlaton by deed of Alice Blount the daughter of Warrin de Wassington, 5. Richard 2nd [1381-82], which I thinke came to the \ Wil. / Threlk. of Mel. \ Esq. / about the 16. of Henry 6. [1437-38], who conveyd them to Rookeby of Northum[berland] Esq.

[II.16]

And Patrick the son of Thomas de Baronia de Kendall {i.e. Patricius de Cullewen qui vixit temp Henry 3. & Ed. 1.}. And 4s for the 10th part & 20th part of one foe of Roger de Lancaster de eadem. And of 16d &c.*. (May be som lands about Midleton) For his grandfather Gospatric son of Orms changed Midleton in Loansdal, with which William de Lancaster, for Workington in Cumberland; & tis not unlikely that he had other lands in the Barony of Kendal. Whence it appeared that in the Bottom or Barony of Westmorland are conteined 4 Knights foes. In the Barony of Kendal in all 3 with 18, 20th parts; and one tenth of a Knights foe†. But of these, 2 foes only ~~entre~~ [in the] \ hands of the / Barony; the rest parcelled out in little cantons as hath bin showne. And that wee may the better understand the quantity of these estates it may here be not amisse to reminde you of the meaning of a Knight foe (wich is so much), vide in progress notes in Spelmans *Glossarie*,[66] & Blounts *Law Dictionarie*.[67]

[Machell's Notes: II.16]

*vide pag.23. MS Antiq. West. Part 5.
†Inde forsan distinctio feodum Marquess Richmo[n]d.[68]
The [blank] came to the Roses concerneing whom see MS. Cumb. Part 2. p.3.
Par[r] of Kendal. See the pedigrees.[69]

Lancashire Road

1. Natland
2. Crosscrake S. & by E.
3. Hutton
4. Burton. Preston church in Burton
5. Kirkby Loansdell
6. Beathom
7. Dallan Tower Mr Bankes at Kirklands
8. H[e]v[er]sham.
9. Leavins
10. Sisars

Cockermouth Road

1. Burnashed & Hall
2. Staveley church
3. Ings church.

Kentmere

Penrith Road

1. Selsside
2. Skelsmire & Hall

Selside Hall
Sleddal
Kentmer
Ambleside
Gresmere

3. Windermer

Winstar Chap.

[65] This note appears on MS.I.171.
[66] Henry Spelman, *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1626, completed by William Dugdale 1664). For 'fee' or 'foe', see the English Glossary.
[67] Thomas Blount, *Nomo-Lexikon, A Law-Dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670).
[68] 'Hence perhaps the distinction of the fees, the Marquess fee and the Richmond fee.'
[69] On MS.V.125-26.

[II.17] [70]

6. Parish of Kendal [Things of Note]

Kendal from Kent dirives its name,
And Kent from Kentmere springing fountain came.
{Poet Brathwat} [71]

It hath on the E. \ Orton, / Sedb., & Kirkby. S. {Kirkby, Burton, Heversham; W. Heverham & Windermer; N. Windermer & Gresmer.}

[Church]
Payes – Tenths. IX li od money.[72] Query of Synodals.
It is appropriated to Trin[ity] Colledge in Cam[bridge] by exchange of colledge lands as tis saied? Which K. H. 8. And they have all the advowsons of the vicar.

{An old Rithme}
{Henricus Octavus
Tooke more than he gave us.} [73]

There are in the precincts of the mother church, the town of Kendal, ~~which payes~~ the tenancy whereof is distributed amongst diverse Lords: The Queens – Graham – \ Mr / Topham of Aglethorp near Bolton Castle in Yorkshire. {Ephraim Sandford, Jack Aglionby} They pay no fines in Kendal but only their annual rents calld the Lords Rent.

{Things of Note}
1. Dockeray Hall – Cald Stean \ in the midst of the town instead of a cross.[74] / An house near it in the West Row; now converted to a dwelling house called St Anns ~~Ha~~ Chapple; & which by its windows & fabric seems to have bin one. {Trad[ition} Mr Shepherd.} & Another stood at the Bank head upon an Hill call'd Chaple hill – pulld down by the now Richard Weshtor who bought the Close – q. of Stephen Rowlandson.}

The hospital & library – Allhallow Chap. now converted to a dwelling.

Castle How Hill – a mount on the ~~edge~~ \ west side /of a square fort, as it should seem by the bulworkes \ & trench / which yet do appeare upon the north of the Bowling Fell. \ I can see no signes of a Roman forte.

---

[70] A note-page on which Machell has written his 'music' expenses. 'Music: 1s expend. 1s 6d; more 6d; more 10s.'
[71] Richard Brathwaite of Burneside (1587/8-1673): see Part 2, Ch.3i, Burneside, II.93; see also Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.319, II.339.
[72] Od[d] money: possibly a surplus over a definite sum of money: additional, extra; e.g. from 1657, in *Misc. Sc. Hist. Soc.* VII. 14, '3 pund sterlinge and som od munie'. *OED*.
[73] Quoted by Adam Fox as an example of a 17th-century historical aide memoire: Fox, *Oral and Literate Culture in England, 1500-1700* (Oxford, 2000), 26. The rhyme is said to have been coined at Eton College after an exchange of lands during the Reformation, during which Eton narrowly escaped being closed down but in return lost St James's Priory in London to Henry VIII: see the *Aylesbury News*, 19 July 1856; see also M.R. James, *Eton and the King's Recollections, mostly trivial, 1875-1925* (Hastings, 2017), Ch.24. In 1858 James Payn referred to it as 'a monkish couplet' when discussing the Reformation and the monks of Furness Abbey: James Payn, *Furness Abbey and its Neighbourhood* (Windermere and London, 1858), 23.
[74] Cald Stean: 'The Town's Cross, or Market Cross, stood opposite the covered market, an obstruction in the street. There remains a remnant of it in a stone at the corner, vulgarly called "Cold Stone", where the charters [etc.] were usually proclaimed. Cold stone is a corruption of "call stone"; an appendage common to most ancient towns; all public matters were "called" there, prior to the institution of "bellman".' See Nicholson, *Annals of Kendal*, 127.

{It might be a battery against the Castle since Gunns were invented – & there were pieces of Musket Barrell found therein.[75] They have hills somthing like this at K[irkby Lons]dal & Setber (which they say were made against Scottish invasions) called Castlehows to[o]. But no signe any castles there. They could not wall the town, rather the}[76]

The Castle & Castle Parkes, of which the upper & nether graveships are a part, are in the proper præcincts of the mother church.

Familyes, Kendal: People all freeholds.

Strickland Gate		119
Kendal Highgate		090
Stramongate		091 {in all 300}
Kirkland	about	85 Blindbeck – mentiond in Kirkland.
Kendal Parke at Upper Grave		03
Nethergrave		04
Helsington W. & b[y] S.1m.		31
New Hutton E. & by S.1m ½.		26}
Old Hutton E. & by S. 2m.		38}as Hutton Chaple
Hutton ith Hay 1m. E.		35}

[In Nature]
{Bleaberryes which [they] call here Bilberryes. Raspberryes common. Curranberryes in gardens.[77]
Crone Berryes browne, as big as strawberryes.}[78]
Trout – Taken with angle by Mr George Sedgewick? 16?
Betwixt Watercrooke & the bridge, an ell long.
Lizards – as long as a Tob[acco]-pipe – black?

[II.19][79]

[Notes on Kendal Parishes]

In the Barony of Kendal are 6 parishes, besides Kirkby Loansdale which I take to be in the Barony allso? {It is.} Sc.
V. 1. Kendal (commonly called Kirkby Kendall).[80]
R. 2. Windermere (which pay a pension to the vicar of Kendal having been chapels olim). I have it but?
R. 3. Gresmer. I have it but q. Ambleside.
V. 4. Kirkby Loansdale. Slender. View the ch[urch].
V. 5. Burton. Done. I have it. I have viewd.
V. 6. Bethome.
V. 7. Heversham.
? Query: if Warton Church in Kendale – mention'd inter Recorda: {see my MS. VI. p.70}
[Answer.] It is in Lancashire, 10m. from Kendal (only mistaken to be in Kendal because it belongs to the Barony of Kendal as I suppose).
{They come to Kendal to chose Crowner[81] for that side the fell.}

[Notes on Kendal Church]

{When the feast or wake kept [?]}

[75] See II.369C.
[76] The rest of this sentence (at the page edge) has perished.
[77] Possibly, the currant bush, as in a 1649 'Survey of the Manor of Wimbledon': 'The borders of which grass plots are coran trees'. *OED*.
[78] Possibly, the croneberry (cranberry) bush: a dwarf shrub, *Vaccinium Oxycoccos*, a native of Britain. *OED*.
[79] Also numbered p.13.
[80] V. = Vicarage; R. = Rectory.
[81] Coroner.

The church is dedicate to [Blank][82] & is commonly known by the name of Kendal Church from the towne adjoining; but the houses thereaboute separated by Blind Beck (a little rivulet which runs but sometimes) ~~and~~ are of a distinct jurisdiction. By whome the church was founded I have not yet learn'd, but they say there was a chaple before the church was built [which] stood N. West from the church ~~& distant from it~~ near the head of Well Sike in Kirkland; allso from which ~~chaple~~ \ place / there is a lane which leades to the great street called Cappelane from the said Cappela.\ But this, I take it, has rather bin the / Chappel of som Religious House.
{No. Som private chaple for mi[…],[83] this being a P[arish] church.}

The church is very spaciouse, having 2 Iles on each side the body thereof & such like in the ~~Quire~~, \ Chancel / where they obteine the name Quires.[84] And the utmost on the south side is called Lord Parrs, the inner on the same, Strickland; the utmost on the north side, Bellinghams, & the inner on the same is called \ the / Alldermans \ Quire / because the Aldermen satt there \ as they do yet, / before it ~~was made~~ \ became / a Maior Towne.[85] \ Monuments, see in Dugdalls *Visit[ation*] 1664.[86] / The Patrone hereof is Trinity Coll. In Cambridge, to which place it is impropriate, & they present a vicar to it.[87]

{<u>The vicaridge house</u> is within 10 yards of [the] church, adjoyneing the church yard wall on the S. side near the S.W. corner of the church.}
{<u>The school house</u> stands a little without the N. side wall of the church yard near the N.W. corner of the church.}
{<u>Church monuments and armes</u>: see in my bundell.}[88]

[II.14]

The rus[h]bearing is on St James day;[89] yet some thinke it is called Trinity Ch[urch.]
In Kirkland in K[endal], dead mens bones [at] a place cald St Maryes; covered with the rubbish.

[II.19]

<u>Kendal Parish: Chap[els] of Ease</u>[90]
~~The par~~ It has 13 Chaples of Ease belonging to it: Sc.
1. <u>Natland</u> distant about a mile \ S. & by East.[91] / }
2. <u>Crosscrake –</u> about two S.E. & by East. } with both in a row
3. Hutton Caple – about 2 & ½ \ E. / inclineing to the S. /
IIII. Underbarrow – about 2 miles & ½ \ W. /
V. Crook Chaple 3 miles distant \ W. /
VI. Staveley 4 miles distant \ N.W. /
VII. Inges-Chaple 5 miles distant \ N.W. /

[II.20]

VIII. Kentmire Chaple – 7 miles distant \ N. West & by N.}
VIIII. Sleddal Chaple 7 miles distant? \ N. / {Mr Farrington?}[92]

---

[82] Kendal parish church is dedicated to the Holy Trinity.
[83] This word has perished.
[84] Kendal Church is one of the broadest in England, having five aisles. It is the largest church in Cumbria: Hyde & Pevsner, 428.
[85] Kendal was granted a mayor in 1636, see https://www.kendaltowncouncil.gov.uk/heritage.
[86] See Joseph Foster, *Pedigrees recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891).
[87] For another version of this comment, see II.17, above.
[88] See in Part 2, Ch.2, Kendal Town.
[89] 25 July.
[90] For a history of the Kendal chapelries, see John Hodgkinson. *The Greater Parish of Kendal, 1553-2002 during the patronage of Trinity College Cambridge* (Kendal, 2002), Ch.4.
[91] MS: '\ (~~X) ab ecclesia S. & by East~~ /.'
[92] 'Mr Farrington' was one of Machell's informants; In Machell's Itinerary (Part 2, Ch.10, II.389) Farrington was the school-master at Kendal; in his chapter on Burneside chapelry (Part 2, Ch.3i, II.91) Farrington was the curate of Burneside chapel.

X. Burniside 2 miles (½) North-West? \ by North. /
XI. Skelsmir~~e~~ 3 miles distant N.\ St Johns Chapel whereby Milbeck springs, now demolished. /
XII. Grarig Chapple 4 miles distant \ N.E. / {25 l[ong], 7 broad}.[93]
~~XII~~ (Preston Chaple \ in Burton / about 4 & ½ \ S. / East).
XIII. ~~Delaker~~ \ Selside / Chap. 3 miles distant \ N.E. from Kendal 5.[94]
XIV. Winster Ch. VIIIm. ab Ecclesia W.

Concerning all which we shall speake in their proper places.
{Q. Mr Farrington nos 9. & 12.} (Query: if one at Hutton roof, 7m. from Kendal near K. Loansd.}

[Lordships]

Sc. Bounde in this parish of Kendal are 14 Lordships.
1. Kirkland by Kendal \ so called / has a court kept once in the year, at a common hal or courthouse where the tenants doe suit & service & are not finable at the death of the Lord. They belong to Bellingham of Leavins \ Col. Ja. Graham; 4^{r} Baronny, the Queen ¾; / but I cannot finde that there is any demaisne or manner house. The soyle is a limestone but there is no Common belonging to the place.

[Places remarkable]

1. Abbats Hall, which formerly belongd the Phillipsons of Crooke \ now to Ch. Wilson, tanner, & has anciently bin a place for ~~som Abbots~~ residence \ of som monks; / query? whether the Abat of Shap \ or York / had any thing to do here.
2. The Anckerress \ N. W. a bow shot / where the Well Sike springes \ which runs down Kirkland / and semes by its name to have bin a place of Ancorites.
3. A Courthouse, about 8 score 2 stone casts N.
[4.] The Town Jaol, ~~where they kept thieves debter & vagabonds & till they can conveniently be removed to Apleby~~, is the Court Lofts, the Town Court over against it, by Cald Stean in the heart[95] of the T[owne].

[Villages, gentlemen's houses and manors]

Brigstear. This place being out of the Maiors Liberty is much resorted to by tradesmen that are not free of the Towne: who therefore give good rents for their house & set up here.

Blindbeck which divides it from the T[own], is remarkable in this: that it never runns in a shower though the raine falls 3 day. But after it ceaseth, the current bursts out like a torrent & continues sometimes 2 or 3 d[ays] ~~raines~~ \ according to the continuance of the Ranes; & is an infallible prognostication to the inhabitants, when its begin to flow, of fair weather ensuing.[96]

{Manners}
1. Kirkland
2. Burnised
3. Kentmere
4. Crooke
5. Grarig: Dugd. & F.[97]
6. Preston?
7. Sisers

[93] Probably, paces.
[94] The distance appears to be 3 miles, as the numeral '3' on the same line overwrites the numeral '5'.
[95] Machell has placed a symbol here, shaped like a heart.
[96] Machell breaks off his description of the fourteen Lordships here, returning to it later in the narrative.
[97] Machell is referring to two of his sources: 1. Dugdale, probably *Baronagium*; and 2. a manuscript of an Inquisition (MS.TM 4) in his family collection. See Machell's Notes, on II.357.

Gentlemans House:
1. Helston Leathes[98]
2. Crooke[99]
4. Tranthwate
5. Staveley &
6. Cunswick
7. Kentmere
8. Burnished
9. Skelsmegh hall
10. Grarig
11. Preston
12. Spittle H.
13. Docker H.
14. Whitehal }
15. Blackhal } in Kendal
16. Sleddal Hall by Kendal att Stramongate Bridge
17. Forest Hal
18. Halling Hall
Selside Hall

[II.22][100]

[7. Barony of Kendal: Introductory Narrative]

Locorum.[101] Virorum.[102]

The more southerly part of Westm'land is called the Barony of Kendal and vulgarly the Barony only. It lies betwene the river of Lone or Leün & the lake \ Water / of Windermere; fertill enough in the Bottoms & valleys; but elswhere full of rocky mountanes which yet afford good pasture for sheep; but has noe ~~any~~ mines\ in it / that I hear of.

It takes its name, sayes the learned Camden, from the River Kan quasi Vallis ad Kanum;[103] which I could willingly assent to ~~him in~~ if \ being this countryman[104] / I did not know the name of that river to be Kent & the place \ calld / Kentmere ~~from~~ \ out of / which it ~~descendeth~~ \ cometh / whence the Bottom groundes on each side the river is called Kent-dale, & for smoothness, Ken-dale. I could indeed have wished it otherwise, for the sake of Concangij – an old Brittish people whom he sought long after and at first placed here;[105] ~~a notion that author was once~~ \ being very fond of \ the notion at first / & would have bin more so, had he discovered those noble remains of \ a / Romane Station which I ~~found~~ \ met with / at Water Crooke, & yet want a name for ~~since he has thought for the place then elsewhere, Sc. 1~~[t] \ But afterwards he translated them ~~to the Cangii~~ hence / into Somersetshire by Ochy-hole, where several townes \ seem to / carry in them the name of that people as Canings, Cannington, Cangton, Winicanton &c.

Haulton. And then of Chesher, somewhere about Haulton ~~by the~~ not far from the sea which lyes towards Ireland, there being a leaden inscription discover'd with CEANG upon it. But as he hath don, so I leave every man to make his conjecture whether those or this was the ancient seat of the Concangijs.

[Machell's Notes: II.22; II.357]

[98] Helsington Laithes.
[99] Machell omitted no. 3.
[100] Also numbered p.15 and arranged in three columns. For earlier drafts see I.43A, 44A, 44B, 44C: all scribbled on scraps of paper. Each draft eulogised the north, which Machell regarded as superior to the south of England.
[101] Places.
[102] People.
[103] As if 'valley sloping to Kan'. See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759C.
[104] 'Being a man of this county'.
[105] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759F.

{See the places agane – there is something of joyning with the Brigantes. But at the last he fixes them in the C[ounty].}[106]
[II.357]
I must begin the History of the Barony of Kendal from Dugdal *Baronagium* & my Inq. MS TM 4.
And note upon Will[iam] de Lancasters buying of Nutegeld, & \ Suit of / Court – was null & voyd & Agreed Wast' – see MS TM. 4. Kendal.
Then the note of the mariage, afixd to the following page, of the coheires &c.

[II.358]

{1. In General}

{Bounder}
The more Southerly, but more mountainous Part of the County of Westmorland,[107] is the Barony of Kendal; which is divided from the Barony of Westmorland commonly called the Bottom of Westmorland by a Ridge of Mountaines \ as heaven water deales / from Glenkwen Beck in the West, by Kirkstan in the head of Hartsop \ Dale / and so on South East till you com at Burrow beck; which divides them agane till it Runns into Leün, on the East Side of W. This Part is commonly calld the Barony, for Distinctions Sake from the Bottom of Westm'land; & Kendall Barony from the Castle of Kendal which is Caput Baroniæ or the Chiefe Seat there, of which all the rest may seeme to have holden*.

{What it affordes}
{Few or no mines, little corne but plenty of pasture for sheep on the m[ountains] & for cattle in the Dales! And is much inriched by the Kendal Trade which hath bin the Rise of diverse good families.}
{N[ote.] Few Roman fortif[ications] in it; only at Ambleside & Watercrooke & perhaps at Loansdale. For these mountainous parts they left to Brittanes: & only had these for little Garisons to keep the country in subjection.}

{Cap. Mess.}[108]
This Castle is situated on the East-side of the river Kent, just over against the Town of Kendall. {It is moated about with very deep Trenches & is situate on a fine round hill}[109] which stands on the West Side, having a pleasant and delightful prospect of the Town with the water & meadow, though confined with the Mountaines on the E. & W.; and was heretofore so surrounded with Trees standing in the midest of a Parke, that no part of the House but a single Turret could bee seen afar off. But now there is neither Wood nor Deere. And the very Castle is become a Ruin;[110] which has bin the seate of som noble familyes & wherein the famous Queen Katherine was born, the 6 & last [wife] of K. Henry the 8., being the daughter of Sir Thomas Par, & sister to William Marquess of Northampton – whom the said King maryed at Windsor Castle in 1543,[111] being then the Relict John Lord Latimer &c.†.

---

[106] Machell was correct in finding Camden's understanding of the Concangii faulty: see *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759F. He placed them in Somerset (231) and then, quoting Ptolemy and Tacitus, in Cheshire (43, 611). Tacitus seems to have been the original source for Machell's query relating to Concangii involvement with the Brigantes: see *Britannia* tr. Holland, 611E.
[107] Here, in a rare occurrence, Machell spells the word in full as 'Westmorland'.
[108] Capitale Messuagium: chief house on an estate; mansion-house of a manor.
[109] MS: 'The castle ~~is situate~~\ stands upon a Round Hill in the midst of a Parke, ~~facing~~ & hath an easy ascent of that to which it is fronted / on the East-side of the River Kent, just over against the Town of Kendal. {~~It is moated~~ about with very deep trenches (~~an fronts to~~)}.'
[110] MS: 'having a pleasant ~~prospect but somewhat somewhat confined~~ \ and delightful prospect of the / Town of Kendal with the water & m[eadow] ~~confined both of water & meadow and of the Town~~ \ though confined with the Mountaines on the E. & W. / and was hertofore so surrounded with ~~wood~~ \ Trees / ~~It~~ standing in the midest of a Parke; that no part of the House, but a single \ Turret / could bee seen ~~for It from~~ afar off; But now [Blank] ~~But there are neither Trees nor Deere~~ \ now / But now There is neither wood nor Deere, ~~now~~ And the very Castle is become a Ruin.'
[111] MS: 'T~~his Anciently held~~ which has bin the seate of som noble familyes & wherein ~~Queen Katherine~~ \ the famous Queen Katherine was born / the 6 & last of K. Henry the 8 ~~was borne~~ being the d[aughter] of Sir Thomas Par, & sister to William Marquess of Northampton – whom the said King maryed, ~~in her viduity being wife (to John) Nevil Lord Latimer~~ at Windsor Castle in 1543.'

[Machell's Notes: II.358]

*{? See Camden in Lancashire de Furness.}
†See Speed p. 105. 6.[112] {Consider whether better here; or in the Parish of Kendal to speake of the Barons.}
{Descent. John Nevil.}[113]

[II.359B]

[Dockray Hall Coat of Arms]
In Plaster over the Hall chimney at Dokeray. The supporters are 2 Cat a Mounts.[114] The Bearing 0 if not broken of.
N[ote] There the same with Crist and Supporters neatly cut in stone, in a side wal versus orientem.[115]
It is said once to have belongd the Dockerayes whose Armes these were – after to the Swainesons; & thence to the Brathwates of Burnishead; & by vertue of a m[arriage] from them, is now in the hands of Sir John Otway*.



Figure 2.1.2. 'In Plaster over the Hall chimney' at Dockray Hall. 'R \ W / S. 1621.' II.359B.

[Machell's Notes: II.359B]

*Q. if not to the Weshtons by R \ W /S.[116]

[II.360][117]

Ad Richmond foe*
Anno reg 22 whose D[aughter] Margaret was married unto Edmund E[arl]of Richmond: who had the said Lands (which Bedford enjoyd) granted unto him by Act of Parliament. 33. Hen. 6. [1454-1455].
1. Jo Be[d]ford (son of John of Gaunt) was made E[arl] of Somerset, & had Isue John Duke of Somerset; whose d[aughter] Margaret Countess of Richmond & mother to Kg Hen. 7. held these Lands dureing his Reigne; & was wife to Staneley E[arl] of Darby.
{John of Gaunt
|
Jo[hn] Be[d]ford E[arl] of Somerset
|
Jo[hn] E[arl] of Somerset

[112] Speed, *Historie*.
[113] John Neville, 3rd Baron Latimer (1493-1543), married Katherine Parr as his third wife in 1534, previously having married Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Edward Musgrave of Hartley and Edenhall. See Machell's scored-through text in a footnote above. See also Keith Dockray, 'Neville, John, third Baron Latimer (1493-1543), nobleman'. *ODNB*.
[114] Wild cats.
[115] 'In a side wall facing east.'
[116] For Sir John Otway, see Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87; see also Part 2, Chap.4, Beetham, II.278.
[117] Scrap of paper approx. 18½cm square added during a rebinding; damaged along the right-hand edge.

Margaret C. of Richmond}

ad Killington.	Tho. De Pickering went to Killington Hamlett &c. 3. Ed. 2. MS. A. 129 Sir Daniels.[118]
ad Windermer	St Mary Holm: 6li per Annum out of Richmond fee. To the Stuart 5li, Land Sergiant 10li, sometimes of Troutbeck fees 43s. Richmond Borwick Bowbear of Troutbeck: 3: 1: 6d.
Crooke	Simon de Gripe tenet iiij partem Hamletts de Crooke in […][119] + servicium 5s 11d ad Cornagium;[120] et Reddit per pa[s]ture 6s per Annum.[121]
Ad Marquess fee	X?[122] Phillipson of Calgarth Esq. was made Recei[ver][…][123] of the \ Rents of the / Lands granted in farme to Sir William Parr (who was made Marq. of Northampton by King Ed. 6. & had these Lands granted unto him). He was attainted 1^{0} Mariæ & dyed without Isue, save of Ann his sister & heire who was married to William Herbert E. of Penbrooke & after Earle of Huntingdon, who had onely Isue – Elizabeth maryed to Ch. Somerset 1^{t} Earle of Worcestershire w[h]ose […][124] posterity held the Castle & Parke till of late years, that was sold to Sir Frances Anderton of Lostock in Lunedal Baronet.

[Machell's Notes: II.360]

*Sir Daniel MS A.\ p. / 129 – Kg. Hen. 6. (after the death of John Duke of Bedford) gave them to John Duke of Somerset. Bring in before this my Inquisition de Kendal (MS. 5.) p.62. §1.

[II.361]

The Tenants of Great Langdale appear at the Queens Court Baron in Grasmere: And there are no Freehold Lands but som of Mr Leonard Bensons of Elterwater water which House is in Basebrowne.[125]

[II.362]

[8.] [Notes]To make out the hist[ory]of the Descent of this Barony

1. Camden – County.[126]
2. My Inq. MS Antiq. West. pt 5. John Duke of Bed[ford] held a moyity[127] of the manner of Kirkby (in Kendal not Loansdale) by the service of one Knights fee which lately belongd to Dame Philippa Sc. Duchess of Ireland, wife to Rob de Vere, E. of Ox. & Duke of Ireland, but divorced from him for lack of children.[128]

~~The other parts in severall others there mentioned. This is done in the margin.~~[129]

[II.361]

De Lancaster.

Gulielmus filius ~~Reinfridi~~ Gilberti filij Reinfridi = Helevisia ~~de Lane~~ Agnetam de Bruise
Obij[t] sine pr[ole]

[118] A manuscript belonging to Sir Daniel Fleming.
[119] The following word has perished.
[120] Cornage: see the English Glossary.
[121] 'Reddit': renders; gives back.
[122] Christopher.
[123] The paper at the margin is damaged; the unfinished date 14[…] occurs here; also, the numeral, 27.
[124] The damaged edge of the page here contains 'his son - - ton in – q. wh[at] of Sir'.
[125] This paragraph has been crossed through.
[126] This word is unclear.
[127] Moiety: a small or lesser share, portion, or quantity (see the English Glossary).
[128] Repeated below at the page foot.
[129] There is a note here in red pencil, overwritten in ink, which appears to read, 'referr ending'.

Qua ra[ti]one 3es sorores dicti Guelielmi
1. Helevesia duxit Petrum de Brus seniorem
2. Alicia duxit Gulielmum de Lindsey
3. Sarota duxit Alanum de Multon[130]

Petrus de Brus Senior, genuit Petru[m] et iiij filias
Petrus Junior obijt s[ine] p[role] {Petrus de Brus 2[us] obijt A.D 1267.}
Prima soror \ Petri / \ Margareta / duxit Robertum de Wark {Sc. Rossum}
2[a] Sc. Agnes duxit Walt Fauconbrige \ berge /
3[a] Lucia – Marmaducum de Threng.
4[a] Ladarnia – dom[inum] Joh[ann]em de Staveley alias de Bellaragum. sive Bolton*{sed de hiis, & see Camd. *Brit.*}[131]

[II.362]

{M[anor] de Winandermer Casterton et ½ M[anor] de K[irkby] Kendal were in Ed. 3., who gave them for Term of Life to Johanna the wife of John de Coupland. The reversion to Ingelram de Coucy E. of Bedford & Isabel his wife, the said Kings Sister, & to their heires Esc de Anno 49. Ed. 3. [1375-76]. In the 6. year of K. Hen. 6. [1427-28] ~~Lord~~ John Duke of Bedford (who was 3. Son of K. Hen. the 4[th], brother to K. Hen. 5[th], Uncle to K. Hen. 6. the whole time he was Regent) & Regent of France in the time of his Nephew, K. Hen. 6., Duke of Anjou ~~& and other Places~~}, and amongst other titles, Earle of Kendale &Vicount Beamont; held the moity of the Manner of Kirkby Kendal (not that in Loansdal) with all its app[urtences] & members, by the Service of one Knights fee. Ex. Inq. Capt. Ad Apalby Temp. H. 6. See my MS of Antiq. of Westmorland pt. 5, belonging to Dame Philippa Duchess of Ireland, wife to Rob de Vere Earle of Oxford and Duke of Ireland, from whom she was divorced for lack of children.[132]

Their other moyity was had as followeth – Sc.
1. Thomas Parr, Son & Heir of Joh. Parr deceased \ held of the King in capite / ¼ Manner of K[irby Kendal] per serv. ¼ of one Knights fee, & this sometimes belongd to Tho. Ross Knight.
2. Tho. Lumley, ward to the King, son & heir of John Lumley Knight deceased, \ held of the King in capite / the moyity of all those Lands & Tenements &c. in Kendal, which sometimes belongd to Tho. De Thyvenge, parson of the church of Bethom, 1 serv. ¼ of a Knights fee. & is parcell of the ~~fore~~ said Manner.
3. Walter Pennardine Knt. &c. John Elerkar held \ of the King in capite / the other moyity of the said Thomas Th~~o~~yvinges \ Lands / per serv. ⅛ of a Kt fee parcell of the same Manner.
4. Tho. Stapleton, ward to the Kg & son of Brian Stapleton diseasd, held \ of the K. in capite / Kentmer in Kendal, parcel of the said Manner per serv. ¼ feodi militis.[133]
5. John Lancaster Knt (? ward to the King) \ held of him in capite / Rydal in Kendale, Parcell of the said Manner per serv. ¼ feodi militis.
6. Tho. Strikland Kt. held of the aforesaid Thomas Lumley ⅓ part of a Knights fee in Helsington, Haversham, Burton, Longher, Whale, Hacthorp & Strickland-Ketilke.
(And there are no more Knights fees or parcels of Kts fees within Westm'land – but the iij Knights fees in the Bottom of W.)

---

[130] 'De Lancaster. William son of Gilbert son of Reinfrid = Helevisia de Lane Agnes de Bruise
He died without issue. For which reason three sisters of the said William: 1. Helevesia married Peter de Brus senior. 2. Alicia married William de Lindsey. 3. Sarota married Alan de Multon.'

[131] 'Peter de Brus the Elder, was father to Peter and four daughters. Peter the Younger died without issue {Peter de Brus the Second died A.D 1267.} The first sister \ of Peter / \ Margareta / married Robert de Wark {Sc. Rossus}. The second, that is Agnes, married Walter Fauconbrige \ berge /. The third, Lucia – Marmaduke de Threng. The fourth, Ladarnia – Lord John de Staveley alias de Bellaragum. or Bolton {but of these, see Camden's. *Britannia*}.'

[132] MS: 'See my MS of Antiq. of Westmorland pt 5 ~~which tells us also that it~~ lately ~~belongd~~ belonging to Dame Philippa Duchess of Ireland, ~~who was~~ wife to Rob de Vere Earle of Oxford and Duke of Ireland, from \ whom / she was divorced for lack of ~~Isu~~ children.'

[133] 'Knight's Fee.'

This was in the Time of H. 6. who (after the Death of John Duke of Bedford) gave Bedfords moyity to John Duke of Somerset, Anno Regni Ejus 22^0 [1443-44];[134] who Daughter Margaret being maryed to Edmund Earle of Richmond, he had the said Lands leised upon him by Act of Parl[iament]. & the said Margaret Countess of Richmond, daughter of Jo[hanna] Duchess of Somerset (son of John Bedford,[135] son of John of Gaunt) & mother to Kg H. 7. held the said Lands dureing his Reigne; whence they came to be called R[ichmond] fees.

II.365[136]

Out of a copy of an Inq[uisition] penes Dom[inum] Danielem Fleming militem. Ex Bundello Escheatore de Anno 49. Ed. 3. No. 29.
Die Sab[bati] prox[imo] post festum Corp[oris] Xt. Joh[ann]e Savill Escheatore – per Sacramentum Thomæ de Redeman, Rogeri de Levens, Rolandi de Thornburg. Joh[ann]is de Chambre de Kendal, Rob[er]t[i] de Docura. Rich[ard]i Carous Will[ielm]i Dannis Rich[ard]i Walker Will[ielm]i de Gilpin, Rogeri de Strickland, Henrici de Griype et Joh[ann]is de Strickland.[137]

{Manerium de Wynandermer valet 144 li.}
{Johanna, quæ f[uit] uxor Joh[ann]is de Coupeland} tenuit ad terminum vitæ suæ in concessione Domini Regis[138] […] cum membris et pertine[n]tys suis – Sc. Hamletta (a) de Langden! Loughrigge Grismer, Hamelside Troutbeck Applethwate Crosthwate, Strickland Kett. (b) et Hoton (c); et {M[anerium] de Casterton, m[anerium] de Ki[r]kby in Kendal} cum pertinentys. Ac etiam medietatem cum pertinent[ijs]. Revertione inde (post mortem prædictæ Johannæ) Domino Ingelramo de Coucy Comiti Bedfordiæ et Isabellæ uxori ejus, fil[io] Dicti Domini Regis et heredibus &c.[139]

{a. ergo those are but hamlets, & members of the manner of Winandermer.
b. forsan Ketell.
c. Not Hoton Roof, for that is below.}
{N.B.} Extenta foedorum militum quae fuit uxor[is] Joh[ann]is de Coupland defunct[i] ad Terminum vitæ. Iidem Juratores dicunt sup[er] sacramentum suum Quod –[140]

{Manerium de Bethom}
Radulphus de Bethom […] Tenuit de eadem Johanna manerium de Bethome cum pertinentijs per homagium et fidelitatem et servicium, 32s per Annum, ut de manerio suo de Kirkeby in Kendal.[141] & (T.M.) Note she had but ½ of the said manor of which these & the rest are members.

{Nicholas de Haverington} {Manerium de Farleton}
Tenuit de Rad[ulph]o de Bethome manerium de Farleton &c. per Homagium et fidelitatem et

[134] MS: 'This was in the Time of H. 6. ~~(& the copy out of which I tooke this Inq. was examind in the Enq. – but I have neglected the particular dates~~) who (after the Death of John Duke of Bedford) gave Bedfords moyity to John Duke of Somerset Anno Regni Ejus 22^0.'
[135] Part of this word is blotted; its transcription is unsafe.
[136] A note in William Nicolson's hand at the top of II.363 urges the reader to begin the Inquisition at II.365.
[137] 'Out of a copy of an Inq[uisition] in the possession of Lord Daniel Fleming Knight. From an Escheator's bundle of the year 49. Edward 3. no. 29: On the Saturday next after the feast of Corpus Christi, John Savill being Escheator – on the oath of Thomas de Redeman, Roger de Levens, Roland de Thornburg, John de Chambre de Kendal, Robert de Docwra, Richard Carous, William Dannis, Richard Walker, William de Gilpin, Roger de Strickland, Henry de Griype and John de Strickland.' Escheator: see the English Glossary.
[138] The following word is too blotted to be legible.
[139] '{The Manor of Windermere is worth £144}{Johanna, who was wife of John de Coupeland} held at the end of her life by grant of the Lord King with their parts and appurtenances – Sc. the Hamlets (a) of Langden (!) Loughrigge Grismer, Hamelside Troutbeck Appelthwaite Crosthwaite, Strickland Kett. (b) also Hoton (c) also {the Manor of Casterton, manor of Ki[r]kby in Kendal} with their appurtenances. And also a moiety with appurtenances by reversion thence (after the death of the aforesaid Johanna) to Lord Ingelramus de Coucy, Earl of Bedford, with Isabella his wife, son of the said Lord King, and to his heirs etc.'
[140] '{N.B.} Value of the knights' fees which belonged to the wife of John of Coupland deceased at the end of her life. The same jurors say on their oath that [blank].'
[141] '{Manor of Bethom} Radulph of Bethom [...] He held of the same Johanna the manor of Bethom with its appurtenances by homage, loyalty and service at 32s a year, like his manor of Kirkby in Kendal.'

servicium, ij merc. per Annum; ut de manerio suo de Bethome et Idem Radulphus ultra de Eadem Johanna [blank]? per Idem Servicium.[142]

{Will[ielm]us Windesore}
Tenuit de prædicta Joh[ann]a {manerium de Haversham Morland et Grarigge}? Per homagium et fidelitatem et per servicium, 13s 4d per annum ut de manerio suo prædicto de Kirkby-Kendal.[143]

{Mattheus de Redman} {manerium de Levens et Lupton}
Tenuit de prædicta Joh[ann]a (per hom[agium] et f[idelitatem] et ser[vicium] ij merc) ut de manerio suo prædicto.[144]

{Tho: Adamson} {Tenementa in Midleton}
Tenuit diversa Tenementa in Midleton de prædicta Joh[ann]a per h[omagium] et fid[elitatem] et per servic[ium] iiij Solid per Annum ut de ma[nerio] suo prædicto.[145]

{Radulphus Lasells}{manerium de Barburne 30s 7d}
Tenuit de Eadem &c. per hom[agium] et fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 8d ut de manerio suo prædicto.[146]

{Hugo de Moresby} {manerium de Hoton Roof}
Tenuit de Eadem &c. per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 8s per Annum ut de manerio suo de praedicto.[147]

{Tho. de Redman?} {diversa tenementa in Kirkslack per Annum (ubi?) }
T[enuit] de Eadem, diversa tenementa in Kirkslack ut de hereditate de Sturnel, per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et servicium, 3s 4[d] ut de manerio suo prædicto.[148]

[II.363]

{Willi[elm]us de Boardale. Man[or] Inter Hartsop & Martindale}
Tenuit de Eadem diversa Tenementa ut de m[aneri]o suo predicto sub. Villa de Kirkby 16d.[149]

{Simon de Heversham}
Tenuit diversa Tenementa &c. in Hoton Roofe per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] 3s 4d ut de man[erio] suo de Kirkby.[150]

---

[142] '{Nicholas de Haverington} {Manor of Farleton} He held of Radulph of Bethom the manor of Farleton etc. by homage, loyalty and service, at 2 marks a year; like his manor of Bethom, and the same Radulph, his overlord, of the same Johanna [Blank]? by the same service.'
[143] '{William Windesore} He held of the aforesaid Johanna {the manor of Haversham Morland and Grarigge}? by homage, loyalty and service, at 13s 4d a year, like his aforesaid manor of Kirkby-Kendal.'
[144] '{Matthew de Redman} {the manor of Levens and Lupton} He held [it] of the aforesaid Johanna (by homage, loyalty and service, at 2 marks), like his aforesaid manor.'
[145] '{Thomas Adamson} {Tenements in Midleton}. He held various tenements in Midleton of the aforesaid Johanna by homage, loyalty and service at 4 shillings a year, like his aforesaid manor.'
[146] '{Radulph Lasells} {the manor of Barburne 30s 7d} He held [it] of the same [lady] etc. by homage, loyalty and service at 8d, like his aforesaid manor.'
[147] '{Hugo de Moresby} {manor of Hoton Roof} He held [it] of the same [lady] etc. by homage, loyalty and service at 8s a year, like his aforesaid manor.'
[148] '{Thomas de Redman?} {various tenements in Kirkslack per year (where?)}He held of the same [lady] various tenements in Kirkslack, as of inheritance of Sturnel, by homage, loyalty and service at 3s 4d, like his aforesaid manor.'
[149] '{William of Boardale. Man[or] between Hartsop & Martindale.} He held of the same [lady] various tenements, like his aforesaid manor at the town of Kirkby, at 16d.'
[150] '{Simon of Heversham} He held various tenements etc. in Hoton Roof by homage, loyalty and service, at 3s 4d, like his manor of Kirkby.'

{Prior de Watton et Johanna de Haverington} {Man[erium] de Thornby}[151]
There is Thornton near Ingleton which holds of Kendal.}
Tenuêrunt de Ead[em] Per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 5 merc per Annum, ut de ma[nerio] suo de Kirkb [y]
{Matthew de Redman} {med[ietatem] villæ de Quinfell et diversa tenement[a] in Selsa.}[152]

Tenuit medietatem villæ de Quinfell et diversa ten[emen]ta in Selsat[153] per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] Et serv[icium] viijs 2d per Annum ut de m[anerio] suo de Kirkby {med[ietatem] villæ de Quinfell et diversa Tenementa in Selsa[t] per Hom[agium] et fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] viijs 2d per Annum ut de ma[nerio] suo de Kirkby {Margareta quae fuit = uxor Rog[er]i de Lancastre} {Diversa Tenementa in Bravandesdale forsan pro Ravensdale. There is Bannerdale}
Tenuit de Eadem, ut de man[erio] suo de Kirkby per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et service[ium] 7s per Annum.[154]

{Rob[er]tus de Bellingham}
Tenuit Diversa Tenementa in Strickland de Eadem Joha? Ut de ma[nerio] suo de Kirkby per hom[agium] fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] viijs per annum.[155]

{Rob[er]tus de Strickland}
T[enuit] Diversa Ten[emen]ta in Strickland Ketell per fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] 8d per Annum.[156]

{Rob[er]tus de Docura}
Tenuit de Eadem, diversa Tenementa in{Kirkby in Kendal}ut de m[anerio] suo de Kirkby per fid[elitatem] et serv[icium] 7s.[157]

{Adam Thorstarson}
Tenuit unum Tenementum in{Strikland Kettell}de Eadem, ut de m[anerio] suo de ~~Kendal~~ Wynandermer per fid[elitatem] et servic[ium] XXd per An[num].[158]

{Gresemer (Chapel)}
Item dicunt q[uo]d Eadem Johana obijt seisita ad Terminum vitæ suæ ut prædictum est de advocatione Capellæ de Gresemer quæ Taxatur ad Xli. Et de Avocatione Capellæ de Wynandermer quæ Taxatur a[d] Cls.[159]

---

[151] '{The Prior of Watton and Johanna of Haverington} {Manor of Thornby}'. The Priory of Watton in the East Riding of Yorkshire was founded in 1150, see Michael Stephenson, *The Gilbertine Priory of Watton*, Borthwick Paper 116 (York, 2009).
[152] 'They held of the same [lady] by homage, loyalty and service at 5 marks a year, like the manor of Kirkby {Matthew de Redman} a moiety of the town of Winfell and various tenements in Selsat ...' The last word here is obscured by the binding.
[153] Selside, Kendal: historical name, Selesat(e); see *Westmorland Place-Names*, Selside Hall.
[154] 'He held a moiety of the town of Winfell and various tenements in Selsat by homage, loyalty and service at 8s 2d a year, like his manor of Kirkby {a moiety of the town of Winfell and various tenements in Selsa[t] by homage, loyalty and service at 8s 2d a year, like his manor of Kirkby {Margaret who was wife of Roger de Lancaster}{various tenements in Bravandesdale perhaps for Ravensdale. There is Bannerdale}'
[155] '{Robert de Bellingham} He held various tenements in Strickland of the same Joha[na] like his manor of Kirkby by homage, loyalty and service at 8s a year.'
[156] '{Robert de Strickland} He held various tenements in Strickland Ketell by loyalty and service at 8d a year.'
[157] '{Robert de Docwra} {Kirkby in Kendal} He held of the same [lady] various tenements, like his manor of Kirkby, by loyalty and service, at 7s.'
[158] '{Adam Thorstarson} {Strickland Kettell} He held one tenement of the same [lady], like his manor of Kendal Wynandermer by loyalty and service at 20d a year.'
[159] '{Gresemer (Chapel)} Likewise they say that the same Johana died possessed at the end of her life as said previously of the advowson of the Chapel of Gresemer which is assessed at £10. Also of the advowson of the Chapel of Windermere which is assessed at 150s.' The amount (150s) is unclear.

Et de Advocatione Capellæ de St Mary Holm (Chapel) infra Lacum de Winandermer, quæ nihil valet quia terra de Qua prædicta Capella: fuit Antiquo Tempore seisita est in manum Domi[ni] et jacet, ~~et jacet~~ infra Parcum del' Calvegarth {Therefore Windermer is part of et in Calvgarth parke – [er]go nihil.}[160]

Reversio omnium praedictorum Ingelramo de Coucy Com[iti] Bedford, et Isabell[ae] uxori ejusdem et Heredibus de Corporibus eorundem exeunt[ibus] totaliter spectant Ex concessione Domi[ni] Regis sicut patet per cartam sua[m] In cujus rei Testimonium Juratorum prædict[orum] sigilla sua apposuimus.[161]

Examd per D[ominu]m Dan[ielum] Fleming. Convenit cum Recordo – Gulielmus Ryley. 6^0 Aug. 1692.[162]

[II.366][163]

And of the aforesaid Thomas Parr

Of the said Thomas (who as it first seems had Kendal Castle with the Parke adjoyneing) descended Sir Thomas Parr of Kendal in the time of King Henry viij. who had isue Sir William Parr, & Katherine \ as after Q[ueen] / Par, \ the / 6^{th} & last wife of King Henry viij, whom \ is said / they ~~suppose~~ boast to have bin borne in this place.

The 14. of May in 27. year of Hen. 8. [1535] Christopher Philipson of Calgarth Esq. \ of whom is descended Sir Christopher Phil. of C. / was made Receiver of the \ Rents / of those Lands ~~hereabouts~~ which were granted in farme to Sir William Parr (but what they were I have not ~~s. or~~ heared) \ who was made Lord Parr,[164] say Hollines,[165] translation by K.H.8. {MS A. p.129 penes Dom Dan. Fleming militem};[166] who being created Marquess of Northampton (Southampton sayes Speed)[167] by King Ed. 6. had the said Lands Granted \ unto / him – ~~but being both attainted in the 1st of Queen Mary & dying without Isue~~.[168]And from this William as I suppose came the Marquess fee in contradiction to the Richmond foe, which are the 2 honors in K. Barony. ~~This William~~ He was attainted, Mariæ, & dyed without isue, leaveing Ann his sister and Heire, who was maryed to \ the / Lord Will Herbert \ then / Earle of Penbrooke & after of Huntington, \ by / whom \ he had / isue onely one daughter \ named / Elizabeth, who was ~~given in mariage to~~ \ wife of / Ch. Somerset first Earle of Worcester &c., In

[160] 'Also of the advowson of the Chapel of St Mary Holm (Chapel) within Windermere Lake, which has no value because the land of this aforesaid Chapel was of old possessed and in the hand of the Lord and lies within the Park of Calvegarth {Therefore Windermer is part of and in Calvgarth park –therefore nothing.}'

[161] 'The reversion of all the aforesaid belongs to Ingelramus de Coucy Earl of Bedford and to Isabella his wife and to the heirs that issue of their bodies, by grant of the Lord King as is clear through his charter. As testimony of the aforesaid jurors in which matter we have appended their seals.'

[162] 'Examined by Lord Daniel Fleming. It agrees with the Record – William Ryley. 6^0 Aug. 1692.'

[163] A page of notes, many altered or extended. Some text overwrites previous text written in pencil. The second and third paragraphs have been scored through; interlineations have been added in both pencil and ink. Accordingly, some words are illegible.

[164] Above this phrase is an illegible pencilled comment.

[165] Machell was referring to Raphael Holinshed, *Chronicles*, *the firste volume of the chronicles of England, Scotlande, and Irelande conteyning the description and chronicles of England, from the first inhabiting unto the conquest : the description and chronicles of Scotland, from the first original of the Scottes nation till the yeare of our Lorde 1571 : the description and chronicles of Yrelande, likewise from the first originall of that nation untill the yeare 1571 / faithfully gathered and set forth by Raphaell Holinshed.* (London, 1577; enlarged 1587).

[166] MS. A. was held in Sir Daniel Fleming's extensive and well-catalogued library/muniment room. As Fleming explained in the third person in his memoirs, 'MS. A. This is a large Manuscript in Folio, bound up in White Velume, with MS. A. writ in the first Page thereof, containing divers *Pedigrees &c with Rentals* and other Memoires collected out of the Evidence belonging unto Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Knight.' See Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack, *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), Appendix B, 344-46.

[167] Speed, *Historie*.

[168] There are pencilled corrections above the crossed-through words, but they are illegible.

whose posterity the castle & parke have \ still / ~~continued~~ (till of late years) continued, that ~~It~~ \ then / was sold to Sir Fran. Anderton of Lostock in Lancashire {who now holds the same, sayes Dugdal.}[169] But the ~~Barony~~ Title of Baron ended the line of the Lancasters \ then Mr Camden affirmes that thither devolved from / the Rosses upon the Parrs in the Barony of Kendal;[170] (from ~~the Ba~~ / Dugdal. *Baronagium* p.423 at §2 the line of this will […][171])

[Herbert Silver]
I finde there was a sort of duty to the Sheriff of Westmorland from the Barony Kendal & Loansdal Ward calld HERBERT-Silver, which it seemeth being left unlevyed in the time of K.H.8. by Sir Roger Bellingham, then Sh. of W;[172] whereupon King H. ~~Hen the 8th~~ isued out a Special Præcipe vel mandate, order, p[re]script in the 14. year of his Reigne [1522-23],[173] on the Behalfe of Hen. Lord Clifford for the payment thereof; which Henry allso let to farme to Sir Thomas Parr in the 3 year of the said Kings Reigne, the profits of his Shrivalty \ of Westm'land arriseing / in the Barony of Kendall for iiij li per Annum. See MS T.M. V. Antiq. West. p.62.[174]
But this \ Herbert Silver / cannot take name from the Lord William Herbert as ~~some there~~ payable out of the Lands \ which he held, / because it was not leised \ there / till the 1t of Queen Mary. Query if it be not Halbert Silver or Harbour Silver?

[II.368][175]

Of the Marquess & Richmond foe

{General Custom of Richmond & Marquess f.}
{The Tenants of Barony & Lordship of Kendal to pay fines certain, Sc. for 2 years old Rent upon ~~death~~ \ change / of the Lord by death; & 3 years old Rent upon change of the Tenant by death or alienation. Except Ambleside and Troutbeck which pay but 1. years rent upon change of Lord by death; 2 years Rent upon change of Tenant by death or alienation}

Nota – out of the Decree (penes Domini Danielem Fleming Militem[176] out of MS F. which I would peruse for the freehold estates – & to finde out the True exteant of the Barony) made in the Court of Chancery Inter Sir John Walter Knight Attorney General of ~~the most~~ the most excellent Prince Charles Complanant, & Gawen Brathwate & others the Tenants of the Barony & Lordship of the Kendal Defendents Inrolld in the said Court. Begining thus –
"Whereas on the 28th of October 1619. Sir John Walter &c. for the sum 2700 li.
That the eldest sister &c. ut supra – That the eldest daughter/ sister/cosan inherrits without copartnershipp – in Tenancy to pay for their several Tenements several certain yerely Rents and fines certain,[177] i.e. every of them: 2 years old Rent only for a fine upon change of the Lord by death, and 3 years old rent only for a fine upon change of every Tenant by death or allienation; except the Tenants of the Townes of Ambleside & Troutbeck, who are to pay fine certaine likewise, viz. every of them 1 years Rent only upon change of Lord by death; & 2 years Rent (upon change of Tenant by death or alienation) for a fine.

[169] A crossed-through interlineation here states, 'Dugdal says that'.
[170] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759, D-E: 'By … Peter Brus his daughter, the sister and heire of Peter Brus the third, came this Barony to the Rosses of Werke, and from them by right of inheritance this possession was devolved upon the Parres, of whom Sir William Parr was made Lord Par by King Henry the eighth.'
[171] Some blotted words here are illegible.
[172] MS: 'HERBERT-Silver ~~which it seems, which it seems was left~~ which being left [illeg.] unlevied \ in the time of K.H.8. / by Sir Roger Bellingham, ~~when UnderSherrif~~ \ then Sh. of W. /'
[173] 'A special Praecipe'. The meaning of "Praecipe" is given in the three English synonyms Machell then offers: 'mandate, order, prescript.'
[174] A reference to Machell's library of manuscripts.
[175] This is a page of notes, many of which have been altered or extended. Some of the text overwrites previous text written in pencil
[176] 'Knight' from Latin, 'miles'.
[177] 'Fine Certain': a fixed sum. See the English Glossary.

{The Custom of Widdowhood & Heriots General in these foes – Richmond & Marquess foes.}
And upon the death of every Tenant dying siesed of a Tenement, leaveing a widow behind him, An Heriot, for which she is to enjoy her Husbands Customary Estates dureing her widowhood only. Decreed on Thorsday 4. of November Anno Jac. $1^{\cdot}$ 17^{0} [1618].
The Prince, then Lord of the Barony i.e. of the Marquess & Richmond foe thereon, who was to Receive of his said Tenants such Heriots, Suites of Court, dutyes & services as is therein specified & being Subject to such other Customs as have bin used in the said manners.

[II.370]

[9.] The Division of the Bar[ony]

This Barony of Kendall for the distribution of Civil justice is divided into 2 Wards \ or Hundreds,[178] / Sc. Kendale Ward & Kirkby Ward, which have 2 High Constables – Sc. one in each of them and these of Kendal Ward.

1. Of Kendal Ward & the Parishes in It
Kendal Ward ~~is~~ so called from the Chiefe dale of that corpus of the said Dales,[179] Sleddale, Windermer, Grarigg &c.[180] And is divided into Parishes. Sc.

1. Kendal	a Vic[arage]
4. Windermer	a Rec[tory]
5. Gresmer	a Rec.
2. Beathom	a Vic.
3. Hersham	a Vic.
6. Burton & Loansdall	both Vic.

In which there are 39 Constablewicks being confu[se]dly intermix'd in several parishes, which I shall therefore not mention;[181] & so proceed to speake particularly of the Respectives Parishes with the manners &Townships conteined in them.

[Machell's Notes: II.370]

[Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction]
{As to Ecclesiastical jurisdiction \ it apear / is all within the Diocess of Chester, but for in 2 Denaryes: Sc. Kendal & Lonesdal: And accordingly, it is divided \ for the better diff[erence] / into 2 Wards of the same names: Sc. Kendal-Ward & Kirkby W.} {Qu. if Loansdal be a distinct Denary from that of Kendal. [It is] so in Adams *Villare*.}[182]
Qu. of Kendal it selfe, if not a distinct Constablewick from that of Natland.
{I am of opinion, that before the Town of Kendal [k]new great Trade, & by that means made the Neighbourhood populous – it was no bigger in effect than Loansdall Ward. But since that time it has bin deforested & so well peopled that it had many chaples, & 2 of those chaples now converted into parish churches. Put them in order as they fall in Parishes & chap[els]. as in Loansdal Ward,} that I may proceed to speake of those respective parishes. And of Kendal.[183]

[178] MS: 'This Barony of Kendall ~~for~~ the ~~better~~ distribution of \ Civil / justice ~~in both kindes~~, Is Divided Into 2 Wards \ or Hundreds. /'
[179] MS: 'Kendal Ward ~~is~~ so called from ~~the Towne of Kendale, the chiefe Place in It and of the whol Barony~~ \ the Chiefe dale of that corpus / of the said Dales.' The word 'corpus' is unclear.
[180] Here, Machell added marginalia but then corrected himself: '{& forrest like ground, store moores & mountains – No not soe for wee speake of the Barony \ ward / only & it[s] division.}'
[181] MS: '\In / which ~~are subdivided into~~ \ there are / 39 Constablewicks being confu[se]dly intermix'd in several parishes ~~which I shall content myself to mention & so~~ which I shall therefore not mention.'
[182] John Adams, *Index Villaris, or, an alphabetical table of all cities, market-tons, parishes, villages, private seats in England and Wales* (London, 1680, reprinted with additions, 1690 and 1700).
[183] The last sentence is preceded by seven lines of text, crossed through. A table of parishes has been started here. It contains the names, 'Kirkland Kendal, Helsington, Natland, Sedgewick, Stainton, Levins'; but although the table is numbered 1 to 29, it is otherwise blank.

[II.372]

[2.] Of the Parish of Kendal & the Chapelryes & Manners there

The parish of Kendall is a large tract of ground, and hath bin larger; for it formerly conteined in it also both Gresmer & Windermer which are now distinct Parishes & the only Rectoryes in the Barony of Kendal, paying yet to the Vicars of Kendal an Annual Quit Rent – 1 marke per Annum every Easter.

{Bounder}
But the Parish of Kendal as it now lyeth, is Bounded on the N. with [Blank]

[Chapels]
To this church and belonging within which Libertyes are conteined XIV Chapels. Sc.
1. Kentmer at the head of the River
2. Chapel I'th Ing upon a Beck that runs into Kent
3. Staveley (upon another?)
4. Burnaside; at the meeting of Kent & Sled.
5. Sleddal up the River
6. Selstrad near the River Sled.
7. Skelsmer – down near the Riv. Sleddal
8. Grayrig up Grang-beck from Grarig by a road through Kendal to 9.
9. Hutton. Thence by Milthrop Roade to
10. Cros-crake. Thence by Kendal Road to
11. Natland. Thence by Windermer Road to
12. St Katherines Under Barrow. Thence by the same to
13. Crooke Chapel – Thence to a sort of dependant ch[apel].
14. Winstar chapel (near) adjoyneing to which is

Windermer Parish – One of Those Rectoryes which depend upon Kendal (as having bin formerly a chapel unto it. In which has bin
1. St Maryes \ !!! /chapel; thence up the lake to
2. St Catherines; thence up the River Trout[beck] to
3. Jesus Chapel,[184] which adjoynes upon Ambleside, part of which is in this parish Under Stock, & part in
Gresmer Parish –The other Rectory which belongd to Kendal Church heretofore as one of her chapells but the d[aughter] is now afore the mother. It hath appertaineing:
1. Up the water Rothey, Gresmer Ch.; thence down.
2. Ambleside. Thence up Roathey [to] Lang dale.

[II.373]

So down Windermer into the Sea, or where it meets with Kent Sands – to the Parish of Bethom.
Thence up the water to Heversham Parish – correpte[185] Hersham – which hath ? fam[ilies].
Chapels: both parochial: 1. Witherslack up Winstar. 2. Up a mos to Crosthwaite*.

And so much of Kendal Ward. Now wee will proceed to speake of Kirkby [Lonsdale] Ward – which lyes on the East Side of the Barony of Kendal.

[Machell's Notes: II.373]

*Memorandum – to place it in the map.

[184] For Jesus Church at Troutbeck, see Hyde & Pevsner, 640.
[185] 'Shortly', 'briefly'.

[II.374]

[3.] Of Loansdale Ward[186]

Loansdal Ward \ which is Loansdale of the River Loane / so called from the Chief dale in it & thus of Loan, which springs.
Kirkby Ward is so called of the Town of K.[187] being the Chiefe Place in it, lying distant from Kendal [blank] miles South East*.

This Ward is divided into 2 Parishes onely, and those not very great ones. Sc.
1. Kirkby Loansdale
2. Burton

And those subdivided for Administration of Civill Justice into XII Constablewicks. Sc.
1. Kirkby Loansdal }
2. Delakar[188] }
3. Firbanke }
4. Killington }
5. Midleton } in Kirkby Loansdal Parish
6. Barborne }
7. Manserge }
8. Casterton }
9. Hutton Roofe }
10. Lupton }

11. Burton } In Burton Parish
12. Holme }

Which I shall speake of more particularly under their Respective Parishes, & 1ᵗ of Loansdal.

{Ad Kendal}
And the reason why Kendal Ward is so \ much / greater, may possibly be that it was formerly most of it forrest, uninhabited.[189] And being disforrested since the division into wardes & now growne more populous, whereas it had but 3 Parishes formerly, now it hath 5, with a number of Chappels belonging unto it.}

[Machell's Notes: II.374 & II.375]

*(Describe the Town so placed at, which stands on the banke of the River Loune in the Road towards London)
{non –} And {This is much the better ground. & better may [blank]}

[II.375][190]
If I might not com under his Bo[…][191]
I would not com under his Belt.

[186] MS: 'Of ~~Kirkby~~ \ Loansdale / Ward.'
[187] Kirkby Lonsdale.
[188] Dillicar.
[189] This is followed by approximately nine illegible words, thoroughly crossed through.
[190] This page is empty, apart from the presence of a small rectangular scrap of paper (5½cm x 3cm) affixed to the centre.
[191] The last word of the first line of this proverb is heavily blotted; just conceivably it might begin with 'Pre' for 'Presence', or if 'Bo' it could be 'Board'.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 2]

Kendal Town

[II.23][1]

Platform of Kendal



Figure 2.2.1. John Speed's Map of Kendal, scale about 2.5 miles to 1 inch. From Speed's Theatrum Imperii Magnae Britanniae (1611-12)*. II.* 23.[2]

[Kendal Castle Notes]
Castle – from the gate NND to the turret SSO – 70 yards.
The buildings (a) are on the wrong side of the Castle yard.

[II.26]

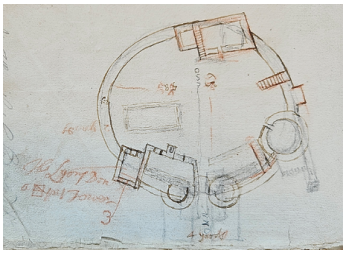


Figure 2.2.2. Machell's Plan of Kendal Castle. Detail. II.26.

[1] This page contains a print of John Speed's illustration of Kendal Castle (plus a key). A number of faint pencilled notes on local descents (such as Parr) below it, have not been transcribed.
[2] For a coloured version of this map, see The Armitt Library: ALMC2008.14.5, or, *The Counties of Britain: a Tudor Atlas by John Speed* (London, 1988), 182-83.

{Thomas Smith Shoomaker}
Ditch 5
Advance 5
.
.
.
. 17

[II.27]

[Notes on the Town of Kendal]

{A most famous Town for its Industry and the Wollen Trade.}[3]

[II.10B]

The said towne of Kirkby Kendall is seated upon the west side of the river Kent with a very faire old and very ancient castle on the east side thereof; which said Castle belongs to the Lord Parr of Ragland in Wales,[4] whose anchestors was borne here.

[II.27]

[Description of Kendal, taken largely from Camden's *Britannia*]
On the western Banke of this River standeth Kendal, or rather, as it is anciently writ – Kirkby in Kendal. i.e. Ecclesia in Valle ad Kent.[5] Which consists of 2 streets considerably long, intersecting each other – Lanificij gloria & industria ita præcellens, ut eo nomine sit celeberrimum[6]– so excelling for industrie & the woollen \ trade / that in this respect it is most famous. For the inhabitants \ thereof do / vend their cottons into most parts of England. And for the better incouragement whereof, Queen Elizabeth ~~1ᵗ of an~~ made ~~this laborious & thriveing Town~~ It a Corporation. And afterwards King Charles the 1ᵗ for \ Its / the Better Government and Regulation made it a Maior Town &c.[7]

[Machell's Notes: II.27]

*The church stands as is described before.[8]
Corne paid: some in kinde, some Meal Silv[er.][9]
Hay: som in kinde &c. Hay Silver.

[II.10A][10]

[Kendal Corporation]

The government of this Corporacon was formerly by an alderman, twelve brethren, one recorder, two serjants at mace & twenty foure burgesses & three constables. But now, since the yeare 1636, it is governed by a maior {Mʳ Thomas Sleddall first maior} a recorder, twelve aldermen (whereof the two senior[11] aldermen are justices of the peace within the same), one towne clerke, one sword bearer, two serjants at mace, two chamberlains, three constables, twenty burgesses or common counsel men. The maior is elected every yeare forth of the said aldermen, upon Monday before Michaelmas day, and sworne the Monday after. They have within themselves seseions quarterly, three weeke courts and tryalls common[12] every 9 or 12 weeke; which court will carry noe more but 20li. As alsoe the Court Right and Bylaw Court which they keepe accordingly twice every yeare.[13]

[3] Another note reads, {Kendal Church gives […]to Kirkby in Kendale ~~Town~~}; some of the words are unclear.
[4] Raglan, Monmouthshire.
[5] 'The church in the valley of the river Kent'.
[6] Camden's description of Kendal, *Britannia* (1587), 518. Machell gives the translation. The next sentence also quotes Camden, see *Britannia* tr. Holland, 759.
[7] 'Regulation' = of Kendal's cloth manufacture.
[8] Information on Kendal church is given throughout Volume II. See below.
[9] Meal-silver: see the English Glossary.
[10] The text on this page is not in Machell's hand.
[11] The page has creased here; a word, which could be 'senior', is unclear.
[12] Court of Common Pleas: see *N&B1*, 68.
[13] For Kendal Corporation's Royal Charters, 1575 and 1636, see *N&B1*, 68; and see Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.11.

[II.250]

Fairbanke mayor of K. 1693.

[II.27]

[Sandes Hospital]

There is in this Town a Pretty Library founded by – Mr Sandes – in his Hospital.

[II.26]

[1. Hospital Notes]
8 Widdows 1 sh[illing]
East of the Castlehow hill
Library. Schoolmaster.

[2. Sandes: Arms]
He had no Armes when this was built; but afterwards made use of Sandes – his Coate of Armes of Hawkeside – a practise too frequ[ent] & which ought to be punished. & Mr Sandes, thinke to get som thing of him for this usurpation, reminde him of this; telling that he had used [blank][14]



Figure 2.2.3. Kendal Hospital. Arms. II.26.

[II.27]

He was a man of accute wit, {as may appear from the Answer he gave to Mr Sandes of Hawkside in Lancashire;[15] questioning him for assumeing[16] a Coat of Armes on a Seale; being Armes to which he had no manner of Title (being but meanly descended), for which he told him he could bring him in Trouble,[17] \ thinkeing / thereby to bring suit to a comp.[18] 'Thou shalt never trouble me nor thyselfe,' replyed old Sandes about such a matter; 'for as for thy Armes, I leave the[e] them to get thy living \ by; / & for thy Coate, I would not be in it for 100 li.'}[19]

[II.31]

[Machell's Queries: sent out to his informants]

{Kendal – Qu. of Mr Farrington}[20]
In the East window of the Quier called Parrs; what colour are the water-budgets.[21]

[14] The text ends abruptly here but takes up the narrative again. below, II.27.
[15] Hawkshead.
[16] This word has partly perished.
[17] In trouble with the heralds at the Heralds' Office.
[18] Perhaps, 'compertorium': a judicial inquest in the civil law, by delegates or commissioners, to find out and relate the truth of a cause. *Jacob's New Law Dictionary*: CO.
[19] The following page [II.29] contains only one sentence, 'Kendal Parish: see more in my Itinerary.' Machell was referring to his tour of the Barony of Kendal, in 1692, see Part 2, Ch.10.
[20] For Farrington, see Part 2 Ch.3i, Burneside, II.91.
[21] Water budget: a bottle in which soldiers formerly fetched water to their camp. In heraldry it was also called a water bouget and represented a pair of water bags suspended on a yoke. *OED*.

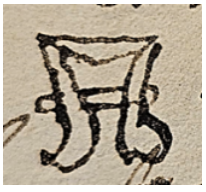


Figure 2.2.4. Water-Budget. II.31.

And what colour the field? – In the Coate inversed? Q. also, if the same Coate be not in the 4th Quarter. And if the 2nd quarter be not in a bord[ure]. {N. Those at Sizerge has no Bordure.}
What Armes are on Judge Nichols Monument in the said quier; Scratch them out as well as you can with a pen, & send me them, with their proper Colours?

{Upper Levins. Mr Guy – or – Mr Webster}[22]
What Colour are the Bores Heads in Sandfords Armes the 4th Course in the End window?
Are there any more Coates of Armes in the House, than those in the Lower Hall, The upper Hall & parlour dineing Roome. And if there be can you finde what are called Becks Arms which are lost out of the 6th Course in the Bow-window which is in the Dineing Roome?[23]

{Under Levins – Mr Webster}[24]
Qu. whether Prestons Armes in the 1t Impaleing of the 4th Coate of Armes in the Dineing Roome window, have a Crescent in Chiefe; as well as the other Impaled with it?
And if Preston impaleing Curwen be not in the Hall window as well as Dineing Roome.
Allso. In what place or Roome is the Coate of Preston impaleing Bradley, & what are the Colours in Bradleys Armes ther?

{Hersham School – Mr Green}[25]
The Armes & monuments
Is not Kings Exhibition in Q[ueen's] College.
The vertues of the medicinal well; who & when cured by it & of what diseases.
How far distant ab Ecclesia E.W.N.S.?

[II.30]

[Kendal Church]



Figure 2.2.5. View of Kendal Church from the west; small sketch 4cm x 4cm, pasted onto II.30.[26]

[22] For Henry Guy of Watercrook, see Part 2, Ch.3vii, Natland; see also Eric Birley, 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook' *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94-104. For 'Mr T. Webster', see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, and Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.389.
[23] Beck, later Alcock-Beck, see *CFH*, 383. One 'Thomas Alcock Beck' (1795–1846) was the author of *Annales Furnesienses* (London, 1844).
[24] For Under (or Nether) Levens, see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.163.
[25] Green was the master of Heversham School, see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.169; II.174.
[26] Written in ink over pencil.

[II.39]

Kendal Church
8 Pillars in a row, of which 4 rowes.
51 Long; 36 Broad.
5 Large Bells.[27]

[Kendal Church Monuments]

[II.14]

Before the high Altar
Under the Comm[union] rale

> PATER ROBERTUS DAWSON Episcopus / Clonefertensis et Ducensis Hibernicus. Qui obijt die Decima tertia / Ap - / Rilis – 1643.[28]

Upon a piece of Brass one foote long affixed to an old marbel stone, which lyes in the midle as you ascend up to the Altar: HIC IACE.[29]

[II.35]

[Quires]
These are: Lady, Alderman, High, Lord Parr quier*.

In the Castle Quier, Vulgo' Parr's
In the East window of the said Quier Is this Quarterly Coate of Armes Inversed.



Figure 2.2.6. Parr's Quire. II.35.

On the North Side is the following Monument, all of Gray-Marble. [with coats of arms 1. 2. 3. 4.]

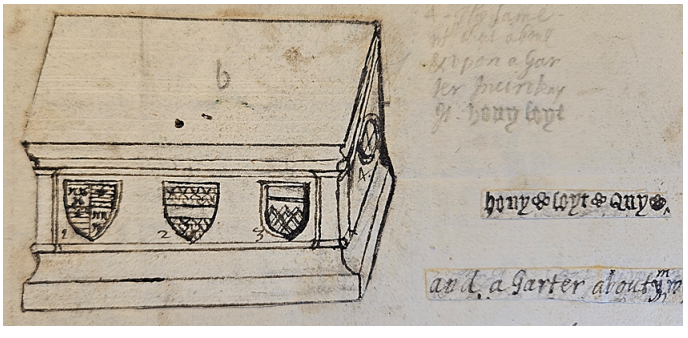


Figure 2.2.7. Monument, north side of Parr's Quire. II.35.

4. The same with that above. And upon a Garter incircling it. hony coyt

[27] MS. II.33 gives the same information: '4 rows of viij pillars \ each; / Long 51, Broad 36; Bells 5 large,' In this version the length was originally 50 but was overwritten to become 51.
[28] 'Father Robert Dawson, bishop of Clonfert and a duke in Ireland, who died 13 April 1643.'
[29] Part of 'here lies'.

And a garter about them with HONY. COYT. QUY.

And near unto it, in the N.E. corner, is a Black Marble Monument set up in the Wall which gives an Account of: Sr Augustine Nicholis[30] of Faxton in Northampton-shire Knight (2nd son of Thomas Nicholis Esq.); who was of the Midle-Temple London and Reader there in the last of Queen ELISABETH, of whom He Received his Writt of Serjiant at Law. & was afterwards Sergiant to Prince Henry & the Queen, his mother.[31] And \ one / of His Majesties Justices of Common-Pleas and Keeper of the Broad-Seal to Prince CHARLES; who having bin a Reverend & Just Judge IV years; fell under the heavy burthen of it here (at Kendal) sitting then Justice of Assize. Anno Domini 1616. 3^0 August XIV^0 Regis JACOBI [1616-17] & 77 ætatis."[32] On which are these Arms:
[On the left-hand coat:] virtute non vi.[33]



Figure 2.2.8. Part of the monument of Sir Augustine Nicholls of Faxton. II.35.

[Machell's Notes: II.35]
*1a. Mr Farrington. Write for the Colours of the Sheld & Waterbudget.}

[II.36]

In Sizergh Quire commonly called Stricklands Quire
which lyes betwixt Parrs and the High Altar on the South Side, there is in the East window a Fragment, i.e. a Quarter of a Coate of Arms, misplaced through the Glaziers ignorance, as if inversed, which I have here rectifyed.



Figure 2.2.9. In Sizergh or Strickland's Quire. II.36.

Upon an Alabaster Stone[34] set in a wooden Post on the N. Side of the Lady Quire near the foote of Bellingham Tomb.
1. Ermin & Gules.
2. Argent on a c~~rown~~ charged with b. gl.; a + of the 1^t.
3. Argent. Gules. Argent.
4. Or. & Argent.

[30] For the English judge, Sir Augustine Nicolls/Nicholls (1559-1616), see W. Prest, 'Nicolls, Sir Augustine'. *ODNB*; see also *N&BII*, 76.
[31] Anne of Denmark (1574-1619) was wife to James I (VI of Scotland). Their first surviving son, Henry, born 1594, died in 1612. See M. Meikle & H. Payne, 'Anne [Anna, Anne of Denmark] (1574-1619). *ODNB*.
[32] 'And 77 years of age.'
[33] 'By virtue not violence.' In the margin here, written in faded pencil and mostly perished, is the following, '{Qu. of the Ke[perished] if true see these Antiq. For They are wrong h[perished]}'
[34] MS: 'Upon an Stone[2] Alabaster[1],' The numbers indicate that the writer wished to reverse the word order.

5. Argent. Sab[le.] Gules.
6. Argent. G[ules.] Argent.[35]

[II.36A]

1. At the Spring, or footing of the Arch 'twixt Parrs and Stricklands-Quier, at the End next the East, are these Coates of Armes in stone; whereof the second is defaced by setting up the Screen or Partition.



Figure 2.2.10. Between Parr's and Strickland's quire. 3 coats of arms in stone, one defaced. II.36A.

2. On the N. side of the said Quier is a Gray-Marble Tombe supported with Hewne Stone.

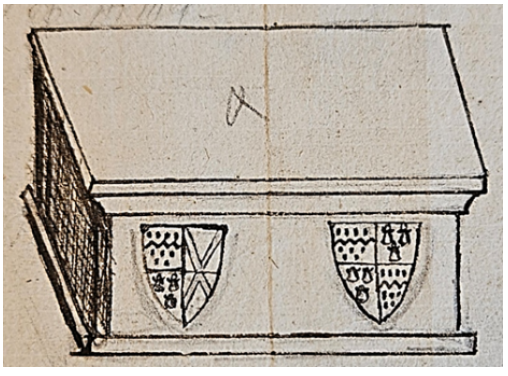


Figure 2.2.11. 'North side of the quire: gray marble tomb supported with Hewne Stone.' II.36A.

[II.359A]

In Stricklands-Quire, which lyes betwixt Parrs and the High Altar, there is a Monument like to the former,[36] of a Gray Marble but \ also / supported with Hewen-Stone. On the side of which are these Coates of Armes:

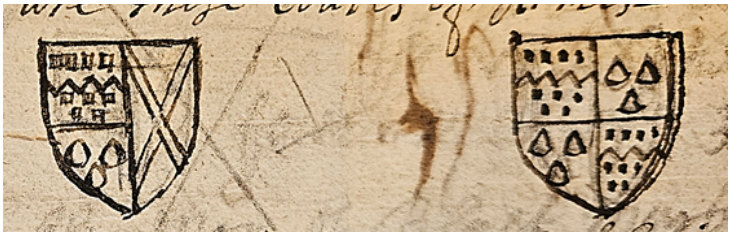


Figure 2.2.12. Coats of Arms. II.359A.

3. A dilicate Table Monument of Curiouse Black Marble inlaid with white, stands under the window; being supported with 4 speckled Pillars. And having beneath it the Figure of a Childe in Alabaster wrap'd in his shroud; & above (on the Table) this following Inscription:

[35] This paragraph has been cut out of a piece of paper, 7cm x 6½cm, pasted onto this page.
[36] This probably refers to the same monument; the coats of arms are the same, although the sentences were written on two different pages of notes: II.359A and II.36A.

Gualterus filius natu maximus Thomæ Strickland de Sizerge Militis. Obijt 20. Sept. 1653.[37]

And at the corner is this Coate of Arms.

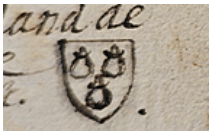


Figure 2.2.13. 'And at the corner is this Coate of Arms'. II.36A.

[II.36B][38]

Of Goods & Chatells

To ~~pd~~ a deed of gift \ of goods & chatels / 20 April – 21. Ed. 3. [1347] of Will. de Strickland to Will. de Crakenthorpe. This seal is appendant;



Figure 2.2.14. Seal to a deed of gift, 21. Ed. III. 'which is not much unlike this in Strickland's Quire'. II.36B.

which is not much unlike this in Strick[land's] Quire; ergo this Seale may seeme to have bin the antient Coate – & that in after times they have varyed from it by the errour or ignorance of painter or carver! {An see at in a Roundel upon the nale ad Ellerkar.}[39] The scallops I take to be the Coat of Armes of som other family resideing at Sisiers before the Stricklands, who heiress being mary[ed] by Strickland he might thence be oblieged to assume these Armes – as in the case of Lucy &c. Those who lived near to fisheryes often tooke the escallop of Dacres &c.

[II.37]

In the High Quier: vulgo' Bel[linghams]

(c.)



[37] 'Walter, the eldest son of Sir Thomas Strickland of Sizergh, knight, who died on 29 September 1653.' According to Bellasis, the date is 1656: see Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes: being the Heraldry, Epitaphs, and other Inscriptions, in the Thirty-two Ancient Parish Churches and Churchyards of that County, Vol. II.* (Kendal, 1889), 62, for the complete inscription. Machell omitted the inscription around the edge of the top slab, which Bellasis gives as, 'This pure refined structure does containe / Natures compleatest peece where every graine / Waits for a glorious union and appeares / Shrind in Parentall Sighs and Marble teares.'

[38] Text here is written on the reverse of a sealed letter paper.

[39] This information does not appear on accounts concerning Ellerkar (in Crackenthorpe Lordship) elsewhere.

(d.)



(e.)

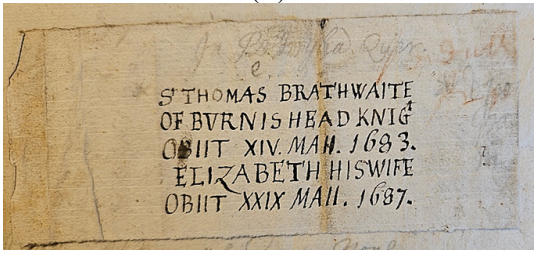


Figure 2.2.15. Pasted images of monument and inscriptions, c., d. and e. II.37.

(c.) In the Lady-Quier. On the S. Side, a Gray Marble Stone formerly inlaid with Brass & susteined with Hewn-Stone.

(d.) [Coat of Arms and Inscription]

[Arms]
2. Argent on a Chief chargd with 4. g. a + of the 1^t.[40]
3. Argent. Gules. Argent.
4. Or. Argent.
5. Argent.
6. Argent. Gules. Argent.[41]

Inscription*

On earth three \ score / & ten years spent
or nigh thereabouts. This Lyffe
changed | Dame Thomasin Thorn
burgh hence went | Heavenly
Joyes to joy expected | wife
to Sir William Thornburgh,
knight | whilst on earth he was

[40] Written faintly in pencil, and unclear.
[41] Written faintly in pencil ,and unclear; the last word could be ‘Azure’ or ‘Argent’.

remaynynge | Sir Robert
Bellingham Gentle Knight |
Hir father was; with whom,
Ending | she desired, sepult
ed to be | As here Hir corps,
hir hope fruing[42] underlyeth
as youe may see | Hir Spirit
with the blessed beying the elevent[43]

(e.) In Bellingham Quiere

SR THOMAS BRATHWAITE
OF BURNISHEAD KNIG^{T}
OBIIT XIV. MAII. 1683.[44]
ELIZABETH HIS WIFE
OBIIT XXIX MAII. 1687.

In the Aldermens Quier. None.

[Machell's Notes II.38]

*{I had as good draw the mo[45] about this inscription.}
In the Lady Quier
This Quire was rebuilded by [Blank]
1. Armes in the windows if any.
2. Thornburgh monument & Armes.
3. Brathwaite Monument.

[II.39]

High Quier
On a white marble Monument set up in the wall at the Vestery doore, is this inscription.



Figure 2.2.16. Marble monument near the vestry door. II.39.

[42] Bellasis interprets this as 'serving': see Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I*, 66.
[43] According to Bellasis, the inscription continues, 'the eleventhe of August she expired a yeare of Christ on thowsand fyve hundreth eightie too this world she left (there of not loth) almightie God hir sowle receave to hevenly blis she humblye craved.' Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I*, 66. See also the pedigree of Thornburrow of Selside, Part 2, Ch.3viii, II.404.
[44] Bellasis gave his age at death: 'et ætatis suae LXVI.' Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes I*, 11.
[45] The monument.

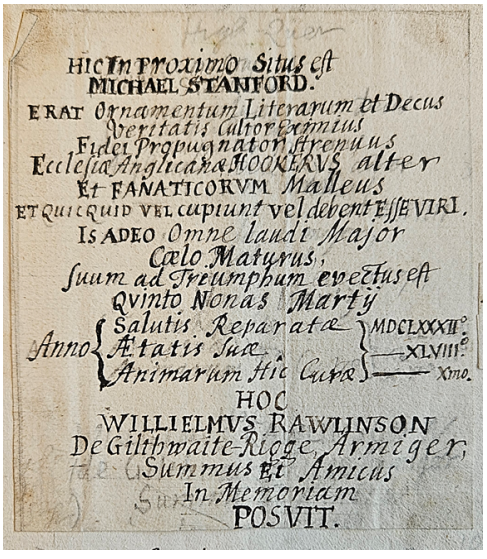


Figure 2.2.17. Memorial to Michael Stanford. II.39.

Hic in proximo situs est
MICHAEL STANFORD
Erat Ornamentum Literarum et Decus
Veritatis Cultor Eximius
Fidei propugnator strenuuus
Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ HOOKERUS[46] alter
Et FANATICORUM Malleus
ET QUICQUID VEL capiunt vel debent Esse VIRI
Is ADEO Omne laudi Major
Coelo Maturus,
Suum ad Triumphum evectus est.
Quinto Nonas Martij

Anno {Salutis Reparatæ } MDCLXXXII^{0}
{Ætatis Suæ } XLVIII^{0}
{Animarum Hic Curæ } Xm^{0}.

HOC
WILLIELMUS RAWLINSON
De Gilthwaite-Rigge, Armiger,
Summus Ei Amicus
In Memoriam
POSUIT.[47]

[46] Richard Hooker (1554-1601) author of, *Of The Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity,* 8 vols (1594-1648).
[47] 'Near this spot lies MICHAEL STANFORD. He was an adornment and glory of Literature, a distinguished follower of Truth, a vigorous protagonist of Faith, a second Hooker in the Church of England, and a hammer of FANATICS, and one who was whatever men wish or ought to be. He was borne up to his triumph in Heaven in due time, already far honoured, on the 6 March in the year of our Redemption 1682, in the 68th year of his age, and the 10th year of his cure of souls here. This monument was placed here to the Memory of his greatest friend, by WILLIAM RAWLINSON of Gilthwaite Rigg, Esquire.'

{[Arms] a gorge[48] or waterbudget.}

[Thomas Sandes]
In the Body of the Church, upon the iiijth Pillar in the second North-Side Alley, is a very fair monument made of white marble with som black veines upon it, in memory of Mr Tho. Sands who founded the Hospital & Library in Kendal. Being a \ very / fit emblem of his life; which though the Author of his Epitaph has don what he can to make it all white, yet diverse black strokes & staines were found in it; for he got his welth by Sequestration;[49] and had no Armes but what hee tooke up against the King, tho his monument is adorn'd with the Arms of the Sandses of Cartmel to whom he had not any relation. Yet to give him his due he did many good & charitable Acts: Had it not bin ~~because they were~~ don with ill-gotten goods \ for which cause / I shal take no more notice of him. But that he dyed A.D. MDCLXXXI. Aetat Suæ LXXI. Died in 1681, aged 71.

[II.39A]
G[ules] a fess charged with 3 Escallops a. betwene 3 [lozenges] Pierced of the field within a bordure Or charged with ooo Gules.

[II.40]
There is also in the Body of the Church hard by, upon a plane Grave Stone in memory of a worthy Gentleman who sometimes served the Countess of Penbroke.

MR GEORGE SEDGWICK OF COLLINFIELD
1685. ÆTATIS 67.

[Machell's Query: II.40]

Q. for Mr Guyes on Brass.[50]

[II.41][51]
[Dr Hay]
Dr. Haius[52] {He tooke the sirname Gray from a Brother in Law of that name who designed to make him his heire}.



Figure 2.2.18. Seal detail. University of St Andrews. II.41.

[48] Gorge? 'G. Legh, *Accedens of Armory* (1597), 103: He beareth Sanguine, a Gorge, Argent. Thoughe this seeme unlikely to be a water-budget, yet hath it long time bin so taken, and so blazed, and neuer of anie other fashion, then ye see in this escocheon.' Thus, a gorge appears to look like a water budget. *OED*.
[49] Sequestration (in law): the appropriation of the income of a property in order to satisfy claims against the owner; especially ecclesiastical; a writ diverting the income of a benefice to the advantage of the creditors of the incumbent; a writ of Chancery empowering commissioners or a sheriff to seize the property of the person against whom it is directed. *OED*. In 1643, Parliament set up a Sequestration Committee in every county to confiscate the estates of Royalists who fought against Parliament. Gavin Robinson, *Horses, People and Parliament in the English Civil War: Extracting Resources and Constructing Allegiance* (London, 2012, 2nd edn, 2016), 100.
[50] Machell was seeking the epitaph of William Guy of Watercrook, thrice mayor of Kendal, who died in 1683 aged 84: see Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes II*, 27; see also *N&BI,* 78-79.
[51] Paper 7cm x 18cm, cut from another source and pasted onto the page. Contains a seal.
[52] Dr Hay.

Dr Haius in Artibus m[agister …] was Doctoratus Medicinæ Gradû auctus et ornatus; made Dr in Phys[ic] in the University of St Andrews in Scotland in 1683.[53] Ex chirographo dat Andreanopli X^0 K. Octorbris anno Æ C. M.DC.LXXXIII;[54] the original of which under the seal of the said university, I saw at Kendal 25º July, 1692.

This family was rased from the valour & conduct of one Haius & \ his / 2 sons, who by their Personal Valour, tho but husbandmen then, were the occasion of a great victory over the Danes at Loncarty near St Johnstons; for which they \ were / advanced into the Nobility, endowed with lands which som of the name enjoy som parcells of till this day.[55] And has given for their Armes, Argent 3 escutchons field Gules, p.183. {Quæ insignia (sayes Buchanan) hoc opinor indicant salutem publicam trium hominum singulari in prœlio vi[r]tute fuisse defensam.}[56] {Initio R[egni]temp. Kennethi 3^{t} qui obijt anno DCCCC. XCIIII.}[57]

[Machell's Notes: II.42]

Kendal: charters, marcet, fair.

See Marc[et] in Parchm[ent Book].

{Kendal Charter: see more in the Parchment Book. Mr Farringtons? Sp[r]int}

[II.43][58]

Kendal. Kirkby in Kendalia

{1. Charter of the Free Burgers of Kendal}

"Petrus de Brus tertus. Confirmes liberis burgensibus suis partis suæ de Kirkeby in Kendalia omnes libertates et liberas consuetudines quas habuerint de dono Willielmus de Lancastria avunculi sui sicut carta ejus testatur. Tenendas &c. integre et in pace in perpetuum sine contraditione sui vel heredum suorum, with warrantis." Testibus: {Domino Gilberto de Lanc.; Lamb[er]to de Langtona; Adame de Henecaster; Alano filio Delfini; Rogero de Brunolvisheved;[59] / Randulf de Pattona; Johe de Kentemere; Toma de Howijs; Nicilao de Lee, clericus; & multis alijs."}[60]

{2. The Seal ut Brus his Charter}

The seal is green wax, 2 inch & ½ diameter, having a man on horseback with a sword in his right hand & a shild upon his breast, on which there appears to me a lyon rampant, & is writ about SIGILL … … O C … DERCI.

{3. Fairs & Markets}

They have weekely a Satterday merkat & 2 fairs per annum: Sc. 25 April \ being / St Mark; 28 of

---

[53] 'Dr Hay Master of Arts [words blotted] was made a Dr of Medicine, elevated and decorated in the profession, made Dr in Physic.'

[54] 'Seen in a chirograph deed dated at St Andrews, 10 days before the kalends of October, 22 September AD 1683.' A chirograph deed is a medieval document written in duplicate or triplicate on a piece of parchment with the Latin word chirographum written across the middle, then cut through to separate the parts. *OED*.

[55] For the Hay family's involvement in the battle of Luncarty (c.990), see *The New Statistical Account of Scotland by the Ministers of the Respective Parishes: Vol. X Perth* (Edinburgh and London, 1845), 174-75, quoting the author, George Buchanan, for whom see below.

[56] 'Which insignia (says Buchanan) show I think that the safety of the realm was due to the signal excellence in battle of three men'. George Buchanan (1506-1582), *Rerum Scoticarum historia* (1582), translated by J. Fraser in 1690 as *The History of Scotland … Faithfully rendered into English* (British Library). Buchanan was Scotland's foremost humanist scholar of the period. *ODNB*.

[57] [The family was extant] 'at the beginning of the reign of Kenneth III. He died in 994.'

[58] An unclear pencilled note appears on this page: MS. 'Mr Far[r]ington. Saint Nicholas [two words illeg.] in Felside ab Ecclesia N.W. 2 bowshots.'

[59] MS: 'Rogero de Burrol \ Bruno /sheved … Brunolvisheved'.

[60] 'Peter de Brus the third confirms to his free burgesses of his part of Kirkby in Kendal all the liberties and free customs which they should hold by gift of his uncle William de Lancaster, as William's charter testifies. To hold etc. undiminished and in peace for ever without interruption from him or his heirs, with warranty. Witnessed by Gilbert, Lord de Lancaster, Lambert de Langton, Adam de Hencaster, Alan the son of Delfin, Roger de Burneside [?] Randolf de Patton, John de Kentemere, Thomas de Howys, Nicholas de Lee (cleric) and many others.'

October being St Simon & Jude. And their forthnight dayes continue ~~from St Marks Day throughout the year~~ \ betwixt them. /

{4.[61] Pretended Charter & priv[ileges]}
The[y] talke of another more antient charter from John of Gaunt[62] ~~but nore not so kinde as to let me see it~~;[63] and say they have power by their later charters to acknowledge stat[ute] merchant,[64] & to keep a Quarter Sessions within themselves distinct from the County; the Maior, Recorder & 2 senior Aldermen being Justices of Peace by virtue \ there/of; and that they pay a Charter Rent (as tis vulgarly called) to Mr Topham of Aglethorp in [Blank][65] which was purchased out of the Crown. But (haveing not seen their Authority for any more of their Charters) I can only relate these things upon here say.}[66]

{5. Their Trade}
Their trade consists of \ 1. / Kendal-cog-ware, alias cottons; \ & 2. / of Lindsey woolses[67] or Kendal stuffs, which are otherwise \ called / Kidderminsters from being sold there; & \ 3. / of stockens, which be lately comdup. And all these wares are sent upon to London every weeke by 4 Kendal carryers, which set out from thence every Monday by turnes.[68]

[II.46]

Charity

[1.] [Letter to Thomas Machell from Thomas Gilpin]

To Mr Maitchell
Kirbe Thuer
Present

[II.45][69]

{Ad Kendal town puto et fam. Gilpenandi}[70]

Skelsmirgh Hale: Sep.

Hon. Sr
Your delegent enquirie after antient remarkable passages heare; I remember that a predecessor of ours cald Nicholas Gilpin (Stuard to Mr Alan Belingham purchaser of Leavens) toke a loane[71] of the said Mr Belingham, of certaine Lords Rent belonging to the chapel of St Ann in Kendall, the yearly rent of $3^{£}$ 7^{s} 8^{d}, for the tearme of 1000 years at the price of 30 years purchas. & by his last will dated in 1561 leaves it to 2 Gilpins the nearest of his kinrid; & at their death to apoynt other two of the nearest of their kinrid ~~and name~~ to distribute it to the poore in Kendall, the nearest of the kinrid, and name at their discretion; which dole hath continued ever since from ancestor to heire; and none comed into my hand & Robert Gilpin my brother (none in Kendall) & if you please to place this amongst the rest of your great paines & to let me know if this comes to your hand it wil be a great keinds to Sir

[61] MS: '3'.
[62] John of Gaunt, duke of Aquitaine and duke of Lancaster, styled King of Castile and León (1340-1399), prince and steward of England, was the fourth son of Edward III (1312-1377) and his wife, Philippa of Hainault. See S. Walker, John, duke of Aquitaine and duke of Lancaster'. *ODNB*.
[63] For Kendal councillors' reluctance, see John Thwaites to Machell, Part 2, Ch.1, B. of Kendal, II.11.
[64] 'Statute merchant': bond of record acknowledged before the chief magistrate of a trading town, by which a creditor has the power of seizing a debtor's lands in case of default. Cf. statute staple: a bond of record, acknowledged before the mayor of the staple, by which a creditor has the power of seizing a debtor's lands in case of default. *OED*.
[65] For the Tophams of Aglethorpe in Coverham in the Honour of Richmond, see Dugdale, *Visitation of Yorkshire* (Clay edition, Vol. 3, 1919), 448-49.
[66] See fn.63, above. Machell and his informants appear to have found difficulty in gaining information from councillors.
[67] Linsey-woolsey was originally a textile material woven from a mixture of wool and flax (linen). *OED*.
[68] See *N&BI*, 66, for a list of 354 weekly pack-horse carriers.
[69] II.45 is a small page, 15cm x 18cm, comprising a letter.
[70] Machell marked the letter on II.45 with this heading, translated as, 'Kendal town perhaps Gilpin family'.
[71] Loan: gift or grant from a superior; obsolete term. *OED*.

Your obliged servant
Thomas Gilpin.[72]

[II.47] [73]

[2.] Foundation of Kendal Hospital

This Indenture made the 6[d] of September in the Two & Twentieth yeare of the Reign of our Soverainge Lord Charles the 2[d] [1670] by grace of God King of England Scottland France & Ireland defender of the Faith, between Thomas Sandes of Kirby Kendal in the County of Westmorland Gentleman of the one party; And the Major & Aldermen & Burgesses of the Borough of Kirby in Kendal in the said County of Westmorland on the other party. Witnesseth that whereas the said Tho. Sandes hath gained a considerable share of his temporall Estate by bying & selling of Woollen Cottons commonly called Kendal Cottons & by his frequent trading therein & being mindfull to set apart one convenient dwelling house within the Burrough of Kirby Kendal aforesaid for the use of 8 power widdowes womin successively for ever for to exercise Spin\in/g & Carding of woule & weaveing of Rawe peeces of cloth for cottons, called Kendal Cottons aforesaid; And also for the use of one Schoolmaster forever, There to read & say prayers constantly morning & evening in the said house befor the said Widdowes, & also there to watch & instruct, power chil[dren] until prepared for the Free Schoole of Kirby Kendall aforsaid or elsewhere; And being also mindfull to setle certaine Landes Revenues & hereditaments hereafter mentined, expressed for the better manytenance & subsistence of the forsaid persons & to & for the use heareafter in the presents mentined & declared. This Indenture therefore wittnesseth that the said Tho Sandes for the consideration aforesaid \ & in consideration / of the speci\all/ trust & confidence that he the said Tho. Sandes, hath & Reposeth in the said Major, A[ldermen] & Burg[esses] & there sucesersours & for diverse other good causes & considerations here unto moveing, Hath given sold & concined & conveyed:

[II.49]

And by there presents, doth for himself & his heires give granted & Enfeoffed sold consined & conv eyed, unto the said Major, Al[dermen]: & Burr[gesses]: & there sucessours for ever, al that Burgage & house messuage & Tenement, two Gardens & one Croft \ with the appurtenances / scituate lying & being upon the West sid[e] of one gate or street called Highgat within Kirby Kendall aforesaid, now or late in the Tenuer or occupation of the said Tho. Sandes his Assignes or Ass[ociates]. Being of the Antient Yearly Rent of sixteen shilling all that messuage & Tenement Lands Closes Grou[nd] with the appurtenances scituate lying & being in Skelsmerge in said County of Westmorland commonly called Edgerbank, And the Moyetis\ & / one half of all the messuage & tenement apurtanance lying & being at Wasdallhead in the said County holde of Christopher Crackenthropp Esq. of the yearly Rent in the whole of nine shillings eleven pence latly by the said Thomas Sandes purch. To him & his heires of Tho. Gilpine of Barkergarth within Houldernesse in the County of York, one other messu[age] & tenament with apurtenances lying within Strickland Roger in the County of Westmorland aforesaid; att a place there called Baxton-Holme, together with one fulen Milen thereunto, which he the said Tho. Sandes purched to him & his heires of one Peter Colinson. And also one Close of Arable medow there unto adjoyning with appurtenances commonly called Kettle Croft, likewise also purchased by him the said Tho. Sandes to him & his heires forever of Ed. Holme & James Atkinson. All which

[72] Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall acted as Machell's Skelsmergh informant: see II.119-20. Machell wrote a short note relating to the substance of Gilpin's letter in his Itinerary: 'To refer Gilpins charity to [Blank]': Part 2, Ch.10, II.414. Thomas Gilpin was referring to a charity known as Gilpin's Rents, 1561. William Gilpin, steward to Alan Bellingham of Levens, purchased from him rents belonging to the Chapel of St Anne, of £3 7s. 8d. a year, at thirty years' purchase; and by his will, dated 1561, bequeathed the same to two Gilpins: 'the nearest of his kindred, successively to distribute the same to the poor in Kendal, of his name and family for ever.' Apparently the documentary evidence relating to this charity went missing but the rents were regularly collected and distributed until 1804. See Cornelius Nicholson, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 2nd edn, 1861), 211-12.

[73] II.47-65: copy of the foundation deed of Kendal hospital, written in another hand with interlineation by Machell. A few words of the deed (crossed-through in the MS) have been omitted from this edition. For another Kendal charity see I.342A.

messuage Landes & Tenements are now in the tenure \ & / posesion of him the said Tho. Sandes his Assignes farmers & Tenaments together also with all houses, Edifices,

[II.51]

Buildings Barnes Stables Orchards Gardens Landes medowes pastures Crofts Curtlags Comons of pasture Turbary Mores Moses Hedges fences ditches woodes and the ground & soyle thereof provledges, Advantages Emoluments Members Jurisdictions & apurtances whatsoever, unto the said Burgess-house messuage & tenement in Kendall afor\said / \ the / said messuage & tenement called Edge bank said messuage Tenement of Barton-Holme, & the said Close called Kettle Croft. The said fulen milen and the said Moyety of messuage Tenement of Wastdall head. and to all & to every the before granted premises with \ the appurtenances / or to any of them belonging, lying or in any wise apurtaning. And al the estate right Tytle Interest use possesons clame & demandes whatsoever of him the said Tho. Sandes, of, in, or to the same evry or any of them with all, Evidences Excerpts Muniments & writtings which he hath or may lawfully come by touc\hing / & conferring of the same, And all those goods \ Utensills of house / hold stufe Husbandry-geare of him, the said Tho. Sandes, being & remaining about the said Burgage house, messuage & Tenement \ mentioned / inn a Schedule to these presents annexed, To have & to hold of the said Burgage house & tenement two Gard[ens] & one Croft within Kirby Kendall afor said, the messuage & tenement with the appurtences called Edge-banke, the moyety of the said tenement on Wastdall head; The said Messuage & Tenement with the appurtenances lying att Barton Holme; with the fulen milne thereto belonging, the said Close called Kettle Croft, And all & singler premises with apurtenences thereby, granted barganed & sold or to be hearein or heareby granted & sold with there or evry of there right or members & appurtenances whatsoever, unto the said Major Alder[men] Burgesses there sucessors \ to / the use & behoofe of them & there \ sucessors / for ever.

[II.53]

Neverthelese, upon special trust & confidence \ & / the intent that all the Rents Issues & profits of all & singler the houses in Landes, Tenaments & [here]diments & other premises with apurtenances, before heareby granted & bargained is sold & shall for ever heareafter from time to time, & truly & faithfully be distributed & Imployed by the said Major Al[dermen] Bur[gesses] & there sucessors forever. To & for of Reparacion & Continuance of the said Burgage \ & other Houses / belonging unto all & singular that be foregranted premisses & paying such asesments as shal be due \ & imposed upon the same / other then are to be payed by the sevrall Leases thereof; And for & towards the maintenance of the said power widowes & Schoole Master of and in that said Burgage for the time being at all times heareafter & from time to time, forever according to the true \ intent & meaning / of the said Tho. Sandes & the Tenor & purport heareafter, in these presen\te/ specified, And to no other Trust considerate, intent purpose Imployment whatsoever. And the said Tho. Sandes doth hereby manifest, publish & it is fuly & absolutely bye the said partyes to there presents condescended into agreed upon, for themselves & for heires of the said Tho. Sandes, And the sucessers is the said Major & Aldermen & Burgesses by these presents; & the true intent & meaning of them \ & of / there presents \ is /in maner & form following. That is to say thear shal be 8 power widdowes wom[en] of the age of fifty two yeares \ or upwards / who have been of a good \ carriage / reputation, also bene exercised in carding or spining of woole & weaving of Raw peces \ of cloth / to be fited & prepared for cottons, aforesaid; chosen out of the \ places / Townes & Hamletts heareafter mentined, That is to say, 3 of 8 wid[ows] to be chosen out of Strickland-gate within the Burrow of Kirby Kendal & 3 other of the said 8 wid[ows] to be chosen out of Stramengate & Highgate in the same \ Burrow / & one other of the said 8 wid[ows]out of the Hamlett of Strick[land] Roger & Strickland Kettle within the Burrow \ of K[endal] / & one other of the 8 wid[ows] out of Skelmerge & Paton in the same Burrow & the like proportion to the places aforesaid for ever heareafter

[II.55]

\ shall be / observed & kept, in chosing any one or more of the said wid[ows] upon the vacancy of the former; provided that if at any time \ when / occasion requires, there cannot be had is chosen if like proportion \ of widdows / out of the places \ aforesaid / as before is specified & intended. \ Then / said number of the 8 wid[ows] shal be made up out of the foresaid places Tow[ns] stre[ets] Ham[lets] in l[ike] \ respect / proportion \ to the aforesaid / as neare as may be, which election \ is now already made by the said T.S. / And it is intended & meant that the power of election shall be in the Tho. Sandes during his life, And after his decease there orders ensuing shal for ever heareafter be observed,

& kept by the Major, Aldermen & Burgesses \ & there sucessors / of any vacancyes, shall nominate duble the number of the widows which are to be chosen out of the place Towns & Streets & Hamletts respecting unto the said Major, Aldermen & Burgesses & \ there / sucessors And that out of the number so nominated & proposed as aforesaid shal chose & elect the said wid[ows] & so many of them as shal make up the said number of wid[ows] 8; & for want of such nomination of the said overseares of the power of the places, that then the said Major Senior Al[dermen] Viccar & Schoolemaster for the time being or the major part of them (whereof the major to be one) shall according their best discretion choose & elect the widowes according to the true meaning of these presents, & every widow hereafter to be chosen shal within a month after the death \ departure or deprivation / or if other of any of the said 8 wid[ows] & there sucessors, And the said 8 wid[ows] elected by the said Trustees & there sucessoures \ shall have assiyned them by the Trustees / convenient Rome & places in that said Burgess house which shall \ hereafter / be called an house of Manufacture for carding & spinning of woule,

[II.57]

\ working, weaving and / making of Raw peces, as aforesaid \ & for their habitation / and also the said 2 gardens to be equaly devided amongst them \ for to manure improve sow & use to their own best / advantage & that the said Romes & gardens \ & the profits thereof / to goe the 8 wid[ows] & there sucessors for ever for the intents aforesaid. And the said 8 wid[ows] \ & their sucessors / evry Saturday morn in evry week for \ ever / have payd them 12 \ pence / a week of lawful English money by the said Trustees & their sucessors by such persons as they shall apoynt out of the Rent Issues & profits of be foregranted, \ Premisses / towards there mantenance & for the better encuragment of them in the work of manufacture, And also shall \ hereafter / have payed them yearly evry year forever upon the Eve of the feast of the Assention of our Lord & Saviour Jesus Christ & upon the Eve of the feast of Penticost 8 pence more against ether feast to make up there \ severall / allowance fouer Markes apece (per annum); And that also that evry widow shall have brought them yearly forever in that week next befor the Nativity of our Lord & Saviour Jesus Christ by the Lessees \ & / under Tenants thereof theire Assigne or Assign\es / of the said Messuage Landes & Tenament appurtenances scituate lying & being in Skelsmerge & Strickland Roger aforesaid: One good horse-load of wood, & unto the Schoole Master (there, for the time being) & his successors, fouer good horse load of wood. Two whereof to be feuel for his \ own / chamber, & two whereof to be for feuel for the Library of ~~well disposed~~ \ where the Bookes of / peple there ~~they may~~ \ to / be placed; \ viz. / 8 loades of wood \ thereof / to be brought by the tenant or farmer of the lands in Skelsmerge, & the other \ 4 / by Tenants in Strickland Roger, And that the said Schoole Master & his sucessors

[II.59]

shall att least evry quarter of any yeare bestow twel[ve] pence in peats, to be for fewell in the said great Rome for Airing that said Rome & for beter keeping \ of / the Books there in place & \ due to be placed / from harme, And that weekly allowances of 12p which shal grow due from the time of death \ departure or / deprivation of any of those wid[ows] aforesaid until the election of the other \ widow / in her or there place or stead, shal goe & accrue to the use of the suceding widows respectively to be elected there \ as / aforesaid, And the said Tho. Sandes doth \ hereby / manifest \ & / declare his minde to be, & it is fully & absolutely by all the said partyes to these presents, condescended unto \ & / agreed upon \ for themselves & their heires & / there sucessours by these presents, And is the true intent & meaning of them & of these presents in maner & firme following \ viz. / That they shall have \ but one / a fit & neat person both for learneing & good maners chosen by the said Sandes during his life, & afterwards by the Major Senior Aldermen Viccar & Schoole Master for the time \ being / or the major part of them \ whereof the maior to be one, / to Read & say prayers unto the said wid[ows] in the said Burgess house evry day for ever att such \ at such times & seasons as in a Table of Order hereunto annexed is set down. /[74] And to teatch children there, in good Literature, until they be fitted for the Free Schoole of Kendalle, or else where. And the aforesaid Tho. Sandes dureing his life & the said Major senior Aldermen Viccar & Schoole Master for the time being or the major part of them. Whereof the major for the time being to be one,

[74] Much of this interlineated sentence is blotted.

[II.61]

shall after the death of the said Tho. Sandes forever hearafter elect ever[y] other Schoole Master of the like Qualification aforesaid within one month after the death, departure or deprivation of the former Schoole master or as sone as conveniently they can; the said Schoole Master & his sucessours to be elected as aforesaid shall have the benefit of one convenient place within the said Burgess house for to teatch, in which shall be called by the name of a Schoole house; And the benefit & use of one Chamber adjoyning to the said Schoole house for his and there habitation, And that the said Schoole Master shal have & his sucessours shall have the Custody & keeping of the Library erected in the same house & shal keep the same decently & the Bookes there \ put / shal preserve as well as he can \ from / inbezelment & Coruption & shal be careful all the orders both relating to himselfe & the said widows (which shall apeare in a Table of Orders hearunto annexed) And all other Orders heareafter to be made touching the said house & the government thereof by the said Thomas Sandes during his life and or by the said Trustees & there sucessours after his death well & truly from time to time; & att all times forever, to be observed keept. And that also the said Schoole Master & his sucessours shall have to his & there owne use & benefit the Remainder of all the Rents Issues Revenues & profits yearly & evry year for ever of all the before heareby granted premises after the weekly allowances \ & / all other if before heareby mentined Alowances for the said wido[ws] the Rent or Rents due to the respective Lord or Lordes out of all the before heareby granted premises the Reparation of the Burgage house;

[II.63]

And the Rest of the house belonging unto all and singler if before hearby granted premises, & such assesments as shall be due for & inposed upon if same (other then such as the under Ten\n/ants or Leases of the Landes & Tenaments in Strickland Roger & Skelsmerge by these presents granted & mentined now are or hearafter shall be bound to Repare & pay \ when / need requireth,) are first discharged & reducted; And that from & after the time the death, departure & deprivation of the former Schoole Master, the said Trustee & there sucessours or such \ person or / persons whom they shall nominate & appoynt shall pay or cause to be paied out of the yearly Revenues & profits of the before granted premises, The said weekly allowances & other the before hearby mentined allowance\es / unto the said wid[ows] according to the proportion in maner hearin before specified. And to see the houses aforesaid kept in good repaire, And it is fuly condescended unto and agreed upon by the said parties to there presents, And the true intent & meaning of them \ & / of these presents is, that it shal not be lawful at any time or times heareafter to the aforesaid Trustees[or] theire successours to charg convey imploy or convert the said Land or Tenaments premises with the appurtenances or any part thereof or the Rente, Issues & profits thereof, or of any part thereof, to any other use intent or purpose whatsoever therat befor hearein is specified & declared, And further it is \ fully / agred upon by all the said parties to these presents, And it is the full intent & meaning thereof that it shal & may be lawful for the said Tho. Sandes during his life & after his decease, for the said Trustees & those sucessours the maior part of them from time to time as they shal thinke meet) to make new Orders for the better Government of the said house Library & Widowes

[II.65]

& Schoole Master & there & his succcessours. Provided always & it is the true intent & meaning of these presents, that it shall & may be lawful to & for the said Tho. Sandes & his assignes at all tymes heareafter & from time to time during his life, to cut down take & carry away all such Timber & trees & other woodes whatsoever growing, upon any part of the before granted premises he shall thinke fit, with free Egress & Regress for taking & carrying away the same, Any thinge hearein contained to the contrary in any wise notwithstandinge.

In Witnesse whereof to the other side of these present Indentures remaineinge with the said Tho. Sandes; The said Major Aldermen & Burgesses have caused the seal of the said Corporation to be heare unto put the day & the yeare first above written. Anno Do. 1670.
Sealed with the Towne Seale & delivered by Thomas Fisher Esq. then Major, for & on the behalf of himselfe &c. in the presence of us, vizt:
William Brownsword
Thomas Jackson
James S. Simpson

Stephen Birkett
George Holme
Richard Appleby

[Machell's Notes: II.66]

The foundation of Kendall hospital with the library.
See the Gassendus de libra et Asse Romana.[75] Dr Gray.[76]
See the B. of pedegrees.

The [shield upon the] hospital at Kendal
S
T K
1661[77]

[II.67]

Constitutions & Order Table Observed in the Hospital

Every sister:
To hold her place onely during pure viduity[78] & exciser spinning & carding & making of raw whites (sine impedimento legali).[79] Not to be absent all night out of the house without the like cause – and to be 2ce at prayers every day (except Sunday & holidays when they shal goe to church) to hear divine service read by the schoolmaster without like cause to be allowd of by the said Reader and to behave her selfe decently & reverently \ otherwise. / For the 3[rd] offence in any of these cases (after 2ce admonition given by the founder or feoffees in trust \ she is / to be deprived.

Item. That none of them fall out with or abuse one another but be assistant both in sickness & health, nor shal lock or open one anothers dooers without consent but in case of great danger.
Item. By turns to cleanse the streat & backside of the house every week. & every one to cleanse their owne dooers. Nor no uncleanness by them or the Master, Sc. subpoena deprivationis[80] after 2ce admonition & to husband \ dress / \ cultivate / their gardnes every year upon pain of forfeiture: to the most careful \ widow / by the judgmente of the persons aforesaid.

Item. That they have no reteine[rs] unless one in som case of necessity & that a female to allowd of when they are sick by the said partyes upon pain of deprivation; if not removed within a fortnight after notice give by &c.

Item. The fore dooer not to be opened till 6 a clock in the morning betwixt the 11th March & Michael[mas] nor stand open betwixt that spacke after 7 a night. And from Michaelmas

[II.68]

till the 11th of March – not to be opened before the day breake, nor unshut after the day is gon; unless upon extraordinary occasion at the discretion of the schoolmaster subpoena deprivationis.

Item. That the schoolmaster & his successors be payd afore hand half a years rent for distributeing to the widows accord[ing] to the grant, for which at his first enterance he shall give good security to the said persons to distribute the salary. And that what remains with him over & above not disposed of as it ought to bee, shal be deliverd to the said persons to be deliverd in case of a vacancy to the succeeding schoolmaster to be distributed according to the donors intent.
And what shall in charity be given to ~~any of~~ the said widdows joyntly shall be deposited in the Poore mans box in the said house & divided without partiality amongst them \ & the schoolmaster / on Xt

[75] Pierre Gassendi (Petrus Gassendus), 1592-1655; philosopher and scientist. Machell was referring to the weight of Roman coinage. Gassendi's attempt to ascertain the value of the Roman libra using a congius (a measure for liquids containing the eighth part of a Roman amphora, or about seven pints. *OED*), is described in Antoine-Yves Goguet, *The Origin of Laws, Arts and Sciences, and their progress among the most ancient nations Vol. III* (Edinburgh, 1775), 252-53.
[76] Dr Gray: Dr Haius. See II.41, above.
[77] In the MS, this is placed within a shield.
[78] Widowhood.
[79] 'Without legal impediment.'
[80] 'Upon pain of deprivation.'

Eve, & the eve of Penticost. & 6d per Quarter to \ be / deteined out of their salary towards bying of \ blew / gownes for Sundays & holliday; & what is awanting to be made up by the schoolmaster & Reader [with] forth of the overplus, of the revenues and rents isueing out the lands – which at the departure of any of them is to goe to her successor.
The schoolmaster carefully to reade divine service 2ce every day in the schoolhouse \ sine impedimento legali[81] / at 7 in the morne & 5 in the evening twixt Easter & Mich[aelmas] & at 9 in the m. & 3 in the Evening from thence til Easter except Sundays & holydays when he & they are to goe to church. & to instruct them in the Principles of Religion & holy living & shall (& to) teach poore boys gratis to write & read, to keep the\ booke[s] in the / library & a catalogue of them – & suffer men of

[II.69]

quality to have free accesse to, & study \ & peruse / any booke therein, & register the names of succeeding benefactors.

Item. To inform of any offence don by any of the wid[dows] & keep the manufacture in good repare, & the messuages belonging thereto, which the under tenants are not bound to repare, & pay the wid[dows] their sallarys – and the chiefe lords of these lands their rents, & such Sesses as shall fall due for him.
And these orders \ to be read (I sup[pose]) / to the widdows monthly; & if he offend against the said orders he shuld be punished according to the merit of ~~his~~ \ each /offence, \ or / by Deprivation by the judgement of the said Mr Sands and after his Death the major part of the feofees.

Item. For Strickland Roger, St. Ketle, Skelsmerge & Patton (whence the lands lye which belong to this Hospital) when occasion shal be of Electing a wid[dow] forth of the said places – if there be not in them a \ widdow / qualified according to the orders of the house / the trustees may choose ~~out~~ \ forth / of ~~either~~ \ any of these / places, a single woman aged above 50 of good demeanure & reputation, & that worketh wool &c. ~~&~~ \ who is / not to mary. Subpoena deprivationis.

Item. That the apparel, beding & household-stuf of any ~~widow~~ \ person /dying within the said H[ospital] (or so much as possibly can be spared by the next of kin) shall remane to the successor or so much \ of them / as such person shal need – she paying for them as the rest of the widows shall appoint & judge fit.

[II.71]

Kendal Castle

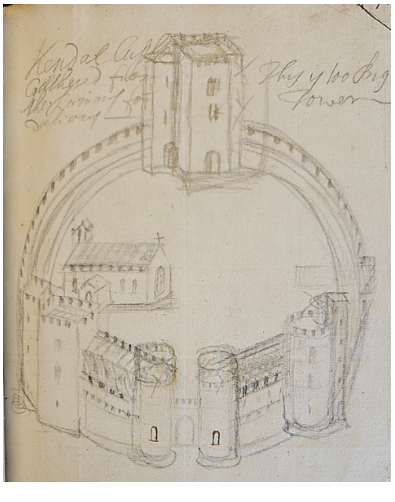


Figure 2.2.19. Kendal Castle. II.71.

[81] 'Without legal impediment.'

Gathered from the Ruines Foundations. This is too big a Tower.[82]

[II.75][83]

This place has been honoured by give Title both to D[ukes] E[arls] & Barones.
The Duke of K. was the fowerth son of James Duke of York, afterwards King of England.[84]

> Cambridge is Dead & Kendals Rideing Post.
> What fitter sacrifice for Denham[s] ghost.[85]

{Spoken upon occasion of som injury don De[n]ham even unto death*.}

The Earles were 3.
Sc. 1. John Duke of Bed[ford`] was by his br[other] King Henry the Vth made Earl of Kendal.[86]
2. John Duke of Som[er]set.[87]
& 3. John de Foix (of that illustrious family of the Foxes[88] of France) who King Henry the VI advanced to that honour for his faithful service in the French wars. Whence perhaps it is that som of this family yet in France are called de Candalia.

{Kendal Castle. Caput Baroniæ}[89]
These were only titular but the barons were purely her owne†; the \ 1[t] / of which is said to have bin Ivo Talbois – whose descendent William, by the consent of King Henry 2. called him selfe Will[iam] de Lancaster. Whose nece & heiress married Gilbert the son of Roger the son of Reinfrid. By whose daughter (the son of William being dead) the inheritance passed to Peter Brus Lord of Skelton, & Will[iam] Lindesay – from whom by the mothers side Ingelramus, Lord of Couscy in France, is said to be descended, by the account which we meet with in the History of Furness Abby. {See in the Inq[uisition] This Ingelramus maryed King Ed. the [blank] d[aughter] & was to have part of Kendal.} But by the daughter of Peter Brus, this Barony came to the Rosses of Werke; and by them the Honour lay

[Machell's Notes: II.75]

*de q. qu[ery]?}[90]

---

[82] Machell's comment on his sketch of Kendal castle.
[83] Also numbered p.19.
[84] The Duke of Kendal (1666-67), third son of James II and his wife, Anne Hyde, died aged only 10 months.
[85] This epigram was written by the poet Andrew Marvell (1621-1678), see G.A. Aitken (ed.), *Satires of Andrew Marvell, sometime Member of Parliament for Hull* (London and New York, 1892), 62. Marvell disliked the Earl of Clarendon and his son-in-law, the Duke of York; the lines were published after the death of the Duke of York's infant son (the Duke of Kendal) in May 1667, and during the grave illness of another young son (the Duke of Cambridge, who died in June 1667). The 'ghost' was that of Lady Denham (wife of Sir John Denham (1614/15-1669), surveyor general of the works), with whom the Duke of York was having an affair. When she was said to have been poisoned by drinking a cup of adulterated chocolate, Marvell accused the Duchess of York of the crime (though John Aubrey claimed that she was poisoned by the Countess of Rochester). See an account in the *Spectator*, 15 February 1873, 210. The Duchess of York was said to be haunted by the ghost of Lady Denham, and is rumoured to have bitten off part of her tongue in fear during the ghost's visitation. See Brendan O. Hehir, *Harmony from Discords: A Life of Sir John Denham* (Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1968), 207.
[86] John of Lancaster (1389-1435) was the third son of Henry IV. On 16 May 1414, he was created Duke of Bedford and Earl of Kendal, and on 24 November, Earl of Richmond. See J. Stratford, J., 'John [John of Lancaster], duke of Bedford (1389-1435), regent of France'. *ODNB*.
[87] John Beaufort (1401-1444), duke of Somerset, won favour from Henry VI, who saw him as a surrogate leader of the 'royal' army in France and awarded him the Barony of Kendal with lands to the value of £400 per annum. See G. Harriss, 'Beaufort, John, duke of Somerset, magnate and soldier'. *ODNB*.
[88] MS: 'Fuxes'. Jean de Foix (c.1415-1485), knight of the garter, was Captal (ruler) de Buch in Gascony; he was made first Earl of Kendal (Gallicised into 'Comte de Candalle') for services to Henry VI in France during the Hundred Years' War. See Douglas Richardson, *Plantagenet Ancestry: A Study In Colonial And Medieval Families* (Baltimore, 2nd edn, 2011), 284.
[89] 'Chief seat of the barony.'
[90] 'Of which, query.'

†{e Camdeno ni fallor.}[91]

[II.77][92]

in the Right of Inheritance, the Honour descended upon the Parrs whose Castle opposite to the town (the River Kent running betweene them) was grown old & decayd in Camdens time: & nothing now, but the carcass of it, is to be seen.[93] This castle is the Caput Baroniæ which has descended &c. ut ante.[94] And of this house was Katherine Par Queen of England, the 3 & last wife to King Henry the VIII.

Kendal Castle ~~now~~ \ was lately / in the hand of Sir Charles Anderton of Lostock in Lancashire.[95] Purchased of Lord Herbert, Marquess of Westm'land,[96] with the Parkelands adjoyneing thereto ? of George Walker of Kirkland Ralf*.[97]

The Marquess of Westm'land is now Duke of Burford.[98] [Informant] Mr Shepherd.[99]

{Church}

A large church with ~~an H~~ 4 r[ows] of pillars viij in a range – 3 of which make up the chancel which has consisted of iiij heretofore. An high steple with 5 noble bells†.

{Dedication}

The greatest bell is called St Michael {ergo the church‡. The rush bearing is St James⸸, & on that day they set up their poll.

{Beacon}

On the top of Dobfrier - on the W. side of the town: blewish gray-marble there for grave stones. All there Porise limestone.[100] No freestone nearer than Hutton Roofe. Blew slate from Kentmer & Ambleside. Gravel.

[Machell's Notes: II.77]

*?

†Mon[uments] & monumentall inscriptions, see in my papers – as also the length and breadth.

‡So, at Apalby: their greatest bell was calld St Lawrence. Which was lately cast into the least. Send to see the inscription about it?}

⸸ideo q.[101]

Q? of Mr Joseph Dawson, when and where the swallows!

---

[91] 'Out of Camden, unless I am mistaken.' Machell is correct: see *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759D-E.

[92] II.77 is also numbered p.21.

[93] 'As for the Castle, the ancient Seat of these Lords, standing over against the towne, it runneth to decay through age and neglect.' Camden, *Britanni*a tr. Holland (1637), 759E.

[94] 'As before.'

[95] Sir Charles Anderton, 2nd Baronet, was born in 1657, the son of Sir Francis Anderton, 1st Baronet, and Elizabeth Somerset. He succeeded as the 2nd Baronet of Lostock, Lancashire on 9 February 1678 and died on 30 December 1691. http://www.thepeerage.com/p12319.htm.

[96] There were close familial relations between the Parrs and the Herberts. Anne Herbert née Parr (c.1515-1552), countess of Pembroke, was the second daughter and youngest surviving child of Sir Thomas Parr (1478-1517) and Maud Green (1492-1531). Her elder siblings were Katherine (Queen of England) and William Parr (Marquess of Northampton). Sometime after November 1537, Anne married William Herbert (1506/7-1570), second son of Richard Herbert (d.1510) of Ewyas, Wales, a gentleman usher to Henry VII. Within months of the marriage of Henry VIII and Katherine Parr, William Herbert received a knighthood, and, with Anne, was granted estates in Wiltshire. The Herbert star was to rise. In 1551 Herbert was made lord lieutenant of Wales, and next day was promoted to Earl of Pembroke. See N. Sil, 'Herbert, William, first earl of Pembroke (1506/7-1570).' *ODNB*. See also, S. James, 'Herbert [née Parr], Anne (c. 1515-1552), countess of Pembroke. *ODNB*.

[97] The transcription, 'Ralf', is insecure.

[98] On 18 September 1691, the Hon Sir Vere Fane (1645-93) of Apethorpe, Northamptonshire, and Mereworth, Kent, succeeded his half-brother, Charles (1635-1691), as fourth earl of Westmorland, http://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1690-1715/member/fane-hon-sir-vere-1645-93. His father, Mildmay (1602-1666), was the first of the family to be styled Lord Burghersh. See S. Wright, 'Fane, Mildmay, second earl of Westmorland (1602-1666)'. *ODNB*.

[99] For 'Mr Shepherd', see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.525-26.

[100] Porous limestone.

[101] 'For this reason, query.'

[II.369B]

[Civil War at Kendal, 1646][102]
And in the breakeing out of the Civil War circa Anno 1646 – when the soldjers cast a Trench upon the Top of the Mound \ at Kendal, / they found in the earth som broken pieces of Musquet Barrells which confirmes my opinion that it was cast up as a Mount or Battery against the Castle.[103]



Figure 2.2.20. Mound at Kendal. II.369C.

[II.122]

[Machell's Checklists][104]

See in Kendal
X Docker Hall which q? & John the Philos!
? Mr Farringtons Narrative about the Sprint River.
X Thornbur Arms.
X Inscription Dr Gray.
Si[?][105] write.
Most knowing men.
q. Strange Aciden[t]s by Thunder or any curiosityes.
? Epitaph ad Hersham. Mr Green farmer.
X Families in the Chapels of Kendal.
The Method from Hersham or Bemol[106]– consider curiosityes before descents of Manner is the Better way.
X Mr Mayor Church Benefactor.
Fam[ilies] in the chaples of Kendal.
Hospital Monuments.
Bensons House Adjoyneing the wall.



Figure 2.2.21. Kendal Church. 'In Strickland, quier window'. II.122.

[102] This date appears historically incorrect because the First Civil War began in 1642. The numeral '6' has been created by heavy overwriting of some other digit. The reason for this is unclear.
[103] Roger Bingham suggests that the event Machell described here probably took place in the autumn of 1643, Roger Bingham, *Kendal, A Social History* (Milnthorpe, 1995, reprinted 1996), 354.
[104] This note page has been used as a check list; many of the entries have a cross beside them. X appears to denote a task completed.
[105] Unclear word.
[106] Unclear, shortened word. Bethom (Beetham)?

	X Kendal Church – p.12. 13	4^s 6^d & 4^s & 2^s
Lancashire Road	X Natland p.23	4
	X Crosscrake p.25	0: 1^s 6^d
	X Hutton Ch. p.27	0: 2^s 6^d
	X Preston Church in Burton p.2	
	- ~~Christopher~~[107] ~~Hopkings at Holm~~	0: 2^s 6^d
	X Levins & 10 Sizars. Ibid.	

Item.
K. Loansdal \ in Bundello / Bethom \ in Bund. / \ Dallan Tower /Hersham. Crosthwate in Bundello.[108]

Cockermouth Road	Burniside 31
	Staveley p.51.
	Ings p.53
	Ambleside in Gresmire p.33
	Windermere \ parish & in Bundello / p.35
	X Crooke Church p.37 a. b.
	X Winstar – Winstardale
Penrith Road	Selside Chapl. 39.
	Longsleddal q? Ch. – 41.
	Kentmer Chap. p.43.
Apalby Road	Grarig p. 45. Lamrig & in Bundell
	Underbarrow 47. a. b.
	Ings Chaple p.49} Ings & Hugill
	Witherslack p.22. P.

Guide – 0: 5: 0 &

Dokar & Dillikar Referend p.47
Skalethwate Rigg Ref. p.49
Skelsmergh & Patton p.51.

[II.77]

So much for Kendal. Now to chapples which are in this parish.

[107] MS: Xt.
[108] In bundello: 'in a bundle.'

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3i. Parish of Kendal: Burneside]

Burnaside Chapel & Hall

[II.91][1]

Initial Notes
Burnaside Chapel & Hall, 2m. ab Ecclesia N.W. & by N.
Fam[ilies]. Strickland Roger [&] Strickland Kettle} 72.
In Casting Lotts, those that get the worse (in this Barony) say the[y] have got Kettleside – But if it relates to this place is not known.

[Burneside Chapel]

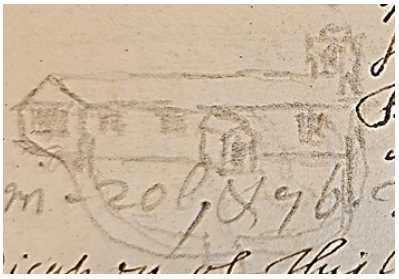


Figure 2.3i.1. Pencil sketch of Burneside Chapel. II.91.

Within, 20 L[ong], & 7 b[road]. Tis boarded & in pretty good Re[pair]

1. Dedication
The Dedication of this chapel is not known, nor can it be discovered. Q. of the churchwardens in the chest. There is a well, now calld the millers, formerly St Oldswalds[2] well {a Capella 30 yards N.E. but the bell is St Gregory. Ed. Tovey Schoolmaster – no salary – has his vic[tuals] and get 30 per Annum.}[3]

[2. Places in the Chapelry]
There is the foundation of a chapel scarcely discoverable at a Place called Chaple le Wood[4] near Hundhow – a Capella 1m. N.W. & from the Hall 1m. W. \ There is Tenant right house, formerly called Strickland now Godmond Hall, near unto it, which has an Old Tower.
Both side of the cappelry are calld Strickland, yet when they are particularly mentiond, that on the S. Side is calld Strickland Keattal, that on the N. Strickland Rogeras. But when you speake of the Chapelry it is calld by one name, Burnaside Chapelry.

[3. Endowment]
The Chaplin is Mr Alex. Farington (Schoolmaster of Kendal. It hath noe house belonging it but an Ancient Sallary of about 6 li per Annum, q[uery]of Mr Farrington.)[5] Antiently, 20 nobles, lay'd upon the Chaplery by seates ~~in the quire~~.[6]
Burnsite seat 10s.

---

[1] Also numbered p.31. a margin comment in Machell's hand states, MS. 'N.B. See Staveley Chapel in the parish of Kendal & mem[orandum] the elaf skin.'
[2] The church is dedicated to St Oswald.
[3] '30' is unaccompanied by any information on its value.
[4] Chapeltree Wood: Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 158.
[5] Alexander Farington, born c.1660, son of Lawrence Farington of Preston; graduated Oxford BA 1680; headmaster of Kendal Grammar School aged 21 in 1681 until after 1691; vicar of Penrith from 1695 until his death in 1699. CCED; see also *OAD*, although both fail to record Farington having been chaplain at Burneside.
[6] A noble was worth 6s 8d (a third of a pound).

[2.] The next seat ~~9s & […]~~
3. 1 & 6 an house.[7]
Next xvi[d]. Next 14[d]. Next 10. & so on to the lowest seates, which are 4[d] a seate for man & wife.

The people has the Recommendation and the vicar the Approbation of a Chaplain. But they give a voluntary augmentation for Preaching & 5 markes per Annum out of Lands in Stavely, given by Mr Rob. Kitchen, Alderman of Bristol, for a preaching minister; for defect to a Decon; for [defect] to a School; for def[ect] to the poore: \ a / tradition.
{Sir Barthol. Jennings, in Memory – a Reader only.}

[4. Tithes]
For Corne they pay Meale Silver to the farmers under Trinity College, being Sir John Otway;[8] Hay Silver to the Vicar with their Easter Reconinges & all other smal Tithes.[9] Wool in kinde to Rectory. For a Tithe Lamb, a prescription of 14d – (5 is 7d and 6 is 1s.)[10]

[The Chapelry]

{5. Bounds}*
It is Bounded on the E. with ~~Grarig divided~~ Skelsmegh – by the Bounder there taken; on the S. with the precincts of the mo[ther[church to the Lib[erties] of Kendallà from which tis divided by Acke End Sike; on the west with Underbarrow (?) divided by Caple rig†; on the N. with Crooke & Long Sleddall.

Machell's Notes: [II.91]

{*N.B. Tho. Dennison of Lo\w/thwate late Balif: Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer.}

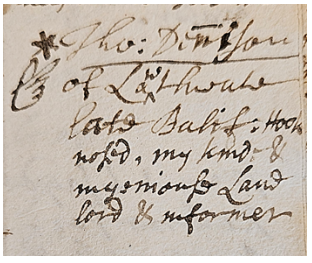


Figure 2.3i.2. Thomas Dennison. 'Hook nosed, my kinde & ingeniouse Landlord & informer.' II.91.

[II.92]

{Lords of the Marquess foe & Richmond foe, Lumley foe.}[11]
He[12] sayes the last of the Lancasters, Baron[s] of Kendal, had Isue 4 daughters (the Booke shews their names), whereof one dyed unmaryed. The other 3 were: one of them maryed to the Duke of Richmond, & those that held under him were calld Richmond foe.[13] Another to the Marquess of

[7] The numerals here are unclear.
[8] For Sir John Otway see Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[9] Meal-silver: see the English Glossary,
[10] In the margin here, Machell listed more headings which he incorporated into text on II.92-94.
[11] William II de Lancaster (d.1184) left a daughter, Helwise, who married Gilbert Fitz-Reinfred. Their son, William, assumed his mother's name, de Lancaster, but failed to produce an heir, so in 1246 the barony descended through his sisters to his nephews, Peter de Brus (d.1272) and Walter de Lindsay (d.1271). The Lindsay half of the barony became known as the Richmond Fee, while the Brus share was further divided to become the Marquis and Lumley Fees. See Sarah Rose, 'The Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 15 (2015), 45-56.
[12] Presumably, Thomas Dennison.
[13] In 1531/2, John, Lord Lumley, agreed with Henry VIII to exchange his part of the barony for land in the South. Henry granted the Lumley lands to his natural son, Henry Fitzroy, duke of Richmond. See Rose, 'Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 48.

Northampton (forsan Par), and those under him were calld Marquess foe.[14] The third was maryed to the Lord Lumley and those under him were calld Lumley foe, which last was in Bellingham & is now in Mr Graham.[15] Being quarter Barron.
The other 3 are in the Crowne – whereof 2 partes were calld Richmond foe, & the 3 – Marquess foe*.

{Manner Houses and Halls}
There are in this Chaplery = 1. Burneshead. 2. And the Queen \ Dowager / has some Tennants in Strickland Roge[r], & som in Kettle†.

Manner of Burnaside

{Tenants}
The Tennants are generally Customary, Arbitrary & Heriotable: Excepting 4 or 5? that have long agoe purchased themselves to a Fine Certane.[16] {The boones purchased of[f] to a certane sum of money calld Service Money.} ~~And~~ Sir Christ. Phillipson ~~was~~ is called as a freehold[er] of this manner, perhaps for Helsfell; & Mr Strickland for Garnet House. None keeps any Courtes but Mr Brathwate, who keeps a Court Baron at Burnshead Hall. The Queens Tennants which hold 11 or 12 Tenements in Strickland Roger, being Marquess foe, appear at Kendall.

[Machell's Notes: II.92]
{*He has a Booke of it. Richmond Foe. Memorandum: Tis said Katherine Par [was] Borne in Staveley Park; her mother being taken ill a hunt[ing]. Inform[ant] Capt. Leonard Airay.}[17]
{† Strickland Kettle is said to be so calld from an hollow place below the Bridge ~~a~~ near that side of the water.}

[II.94]

{Burnaside Boones}
They pay Hens & Capons to Burn-hall: There were Bellinghams, the ancient Tenants; Knipes & Batemans, which 2 last ran into Bellingham agane; & are now Grahams. Test. Ch. Phil[lipson].[18]

[II.93]

[Burneside Hall]
The Manner House is B[urneside] Hall where the Courtes are kept: which formerly belongd to Sir Roger Bellingham who had a son calld Robert who lived at Milhow by Burnaside hall, where 3 ladyes, his daughters, were borne – amongst whome tis said the Estate was divided. \ This is Tradition only. / ~~Afterwards~~ \ The Ped[igree] sayes in, / it was in the Machells [possession] in the Time of Queen Mary, as the people talke of it yet †.
{2 Pond[s] afore the gate with a bridge betwixt, & 2 Ilands with 2 Plane Trees. Stored with Tench Trout & Eale.} {More game[19] but scarce on Potter fell.}

[14] On the death of Thomas de Ros, the fee passed to the Parr family through the marriage of his granddaughter, Elizabeth de Ros (d.1395) to Sir William Parr (d.1404). The Marquis fee descended through four generations before coming to William Parr (d.1571), brother of Queen Katherine Parr, who was created Baron Parr in 1539, earl of Essex in 1543, and marquess of Northampton in 1547. This division of the barony obtained its name from the last title. See Rose, 'Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 48.
[15] The de Thweng family owned land in Kendal Barony in the 14th century. At the death of the last male de Thweng (1374), it passed to three female heirs, then to a grandson, Robert de Lumley, and then to his brother Ralph (1383). This portion of Kendal Barony became known as the Lumley fee. It was purchased piecemeal by the Bellingham family. In 1689, Alan Bellingham (d.1693) sold it to Colonel James Grahme (d.1730). See Rose, 'Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 47-48.
[16] Paid a lump sum for the property. For 'fine certain', 'heriotable' etc., see the English Glossary.
[17] Katherine Parr was born either at Great Kimble, Buckinghamshire, or Blackfriars, London. See S. James, 'Katherine [Kateryn, Catherine] [née Katherine Parr] (1512-1548), queen of England and Ireland, sixth consort of Henry VIII'. *ODNB*.
[18] 'Witnessed by Christopher Phillipson'.
[19] Moor-game birds: grouse, particularly the red grouse. See F.T. Buckland, *Birds and Bird Life* (London, 1863), 81-89.

[Helsfell Hall]
There is another Hall cald Helsfell Hall: An Ancient freehold – Long in the Phillipsons {All the Free Holds & the Lords of Bur[neside] pay Free Rent to the Queen circa 30.}

{Waifes}
{The Queens Balif take up all except in the dem[aine] of Burnashed.}

[II.94]

[Strickland Roger and Strickland Kettle]
All the freehold in Strickland Roger was formerly given by Robert de Mustel to Gi[l]bert de Lancaster for his homage & Service, paying 4^{s} viii^{d} Rent yearely to Lord Gilbert son of Rogeri. And then it was only calld Strickland, without the distinction (from a copy of the Deed).

[II.93][20]

And Halfe a Duszen in Strikland Kettle or thereabouts, being Crown Tenant & of Richmond foe, appear there also: being Customary Tenants & Heriotable, but at Fine Certane. Sc. 3 years old Rent on the Death or Alienation of \ every / Tenant. ~~&~~ \ Rent / upon the Kings Death onely double the ~~right~~ Rent. And these have belongd to the Crowne ever since the Rebellion in Queen Elizabeth Time?[21]
Mr Bellingham had, & Mr Graham now has, 4 Tenants in Strikland Roger; & som in Strickland Ketle. who are Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable, but free from bonds. And these appear at Crooke beyond Staveley at som of the Tenants houses ther where the Lord doth appoint.

[Machell's Notes: II.93]
{(Ambleside Ch[urch] – a Gresmer 2 m ½ N.W.) See Gresmer in my paper – & memorandum, it payes a portion to Kendal there.}
† Query if Fitswilliam never had it for he was owner of Cowan Parke \ Head / \ A[nswer]. / It was Purchased by Mr. Thomas Brathwate a Lawyer. Who has Isue:
1. Thomas to whom he gave Warcop.
2. Rich[ard] \ the Poet / to whome he gave Burnishead. which Richard had Isue Sir Thomas Brathwate who had Isue Thomas Brathwate Esq. the present proprietor.
Poet Brathwate q. what books he writ.[22]

[II.94]

The River (Spri[n]t) from Sleddall ends ¼ m. S.E. from the Chappel, dischargeing itselfe into Kenet ther.

[Bridges]

[Sprint]
Wadshow
Chap-Brig. A wood bridge had below […] abov.[23]
Bitchill Brig.
Another [of] wood, called Brigend.
Another of wood calld Dalend-Brig.[24]
Another below calld Garnet brig: Garnet Stang
W. Sprint.

{Kent}
S. Stram[on]gate: stone
Milbrig W. Kendal
Netherb[rig] stone
Haes-brig by Sisar: stone
Forcebrig: stone
Levins b[rig].: stone
All these last:[25] Kent.

[20] Also numbered p.33.
[21] Machell was referring to 'Dacre's Raid' (1569), a result of Leonard Dacre's 'double dealings' with government and rebels during the Rising of the North. See R. S. Ferguson *A History of Cumberland* (London, 1890), 249-50; see also Machell Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby Town and Parishes, I.341, III.55.
[22] Originally placed on MS II.94. For the poems of Richard Brathwaite (born Burneshead Hall, second surviving son of Thomas Brathwaite, barrister, and Dorothy Bindloss), see J. Sanders, 'Brathwaite, Richard (1587/8-1673), poet and writer'. *ODNB*. Sanders argues that although Brathwaite's works became unfashionable, his '*œuvre* is evidence of a gentleman's literary activity in the 17th century as well as of particular approaches to social and political issues.' See also Machell, Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.319, II.339.
[23] Text is crammed into the gutter of the page here; some words are unclear.
[24] Dale End bridge.
[25] From Stramongate onwards.

{Curiosities in Art, Nature}

On Potter Fell at a place calld Laythwate (an even piece of ground) are 2 Round Cirques of Stone about a Yard above ~~ground~~ the surface of the Earth and a~~bout~~ an Arrow shot distant from one another.

{? A calfe in Underbarrow 6 years agoe, would have sucked with each mouth; which they kild.}

Robert Hodgson the informants former \ servant / is above 100 years of age; & mowed & \ sheard / reaped the last year; & goes a foote to Kendal market.

{Limestone plenty in Strickland Kettle but none in Roger. Rags & Rag slate.}

Cowan Head Parke, had formerly dear as is reported; & there yet remanes the walls of an old lodge. Clean marts & wildcats. The wood demolished all but Rammell – i.e. Garding or Rise.[26]

They digd for Lead at Potter-Fell, but found none but a little white spar.

{Great store of Crevesses in Ackeron beck which comes from Potter Fell to Bowston bridge. Trouts & eales.}[27]

{Sledall. Store of peat & wood. Som Juniper – Laurels & Bayes. Raspberryes. Ble[berryes] a[nd] som straw[berrye]s.}

[26] Rammell? Longsleddale has Ramslack Gill, a ramm = hollow. Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 163.
[27] Crevis or crevice: the crayfish. *OED*.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3ii. Parish of Kendal. Crook and Winster]

[II.99][1]

Crooke Chappel in Kendall
15 Oct. 91

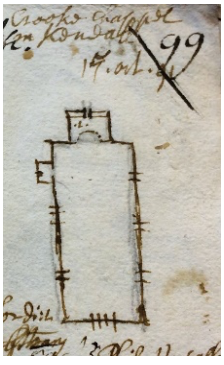


Figure 2.3ii.1. Plan of Crook Chapel. II.91.

{A Curvitate forsan montium circum ambientium}[2]

Crooke Chapl. W. from K. 4 miles. 20 yards long – is 7 broad – a Tower with 1 Bell. In neat repare excepting the floore. Qu. if they bury &c.

Bounded on the S. with Underbarrow; the \ W. / with Windermer Parish; on the N. with Stavely in Kendal; on the E. with Strik[land] chapelry.[3]

{Sall[ary] 3li per Annum – at a Certane Rent from every house. But the Quakers making ill payment,[4] he only receives about 40s – a small subsist[ence] where 4li is p[ai]d for diet.
{Mr Dennison a pretty neat young man & writes a good hand.}

There [are] 2 hamletts in it. One called Crooke,[5] where the Tenants are Arbitrary. It belongs to Mr Graham. Queen none: nor Sir Ch?[6] And another cald Winstar – distance a Capella 1 mile ½ West. The Tenants mostly belongs to John Phil[ipson] of Calg[ar]th.

{Crooke Hall}

{Phil[ipson's] Hall cald Crooke Hall may seem to have bin the manner house in. And it hath som Tenements belonging unto it; but they all appear ~~to inda~~ \ at / Mr Grahams being lately purchased of Mr Bellingham. And this is the Seat of Sir Christopher Phil[ipson].} Sir Christopher Phillipson informeth me that Crooke Hall was formerly called Thwatterden, of which, & to whom it belongd, see more at Windermer in the Account of the family of Phillipsons.[7]

---

[1] This page was written using several shades of ink; it was clearly added to several times.
[2] Crook is so called, 'possibly from lying within the curve of the surrounding mountains.'
[3] Burneside.
[4] That is, refusing to pay tithes.
[5] MS: '~~But~~ One ~~Hamlet~~ called Crooke.'
[6] Sir Christopher Philipson (1646-1709) of Crook Hall; elected to Parliament for Westmorland in 1679; defeated in 1681 and 1685; knighted by Charles II in May 1681; died in debt due to straitened circumstances. He was the last male of the Philipson line at Crook Hall. See Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall* from *1633 to1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), 450.
[7] See Windermere Parish, II.309A-312, 323, 330-334, 338-339, 343. For another account of the Philipsons, see E.W. Brunskill, 'A Westmorland Family: Fortunes of the Philipsons', published as a series of three articles in the *Westmorland Gazette*, 3 September 1927, 24 September 1927, 1 October 1927.

And to this Hall there are yet belonging 14 Customary Tenants – arbitrary & heriotable – who pay Boones also – as shearing &c. – to Sir Christopher Phillipson [in] person {ipse dixit.}[8]

{Gent. Houses}
Crooke Hall – Sir Christopher Phillipson. No more freeholds.
{Qu?} q. what freeholds in Crooke: how many fam[ilies]? Winstar: how many fam[ilies]? In all 34 fam[ilies].[9]
Which customary tenants – to whom. Where they Answer?
What Manner House, Hall or Castle in Winstar – none.[10]

{Rarityes in Nature}
One Robert Browne of this place lived to 120 yeares of age; of which all the neighbourhood & Sir Thomas Brathwate his selfe \ being curiouse in these things / was satisfied by undenyable circumstances which the man could Remember. He was buried about 20 years ab anno Dom.1672.

[II.97][11]

[Further Notes]

In Kendal [parish]. Fam[ilies] in both – 34.

Crooke Chappel I have, & they talk [of] Winstar-Chappel being an Appendage to it*.
Both Crooke & this has but one chapel-warden, & these pay the Sallary, 4li: 15s: 0d., of which 12s per Annum is in Land; and one Mr \ Rich. / Dixon clames the chaple yard†.
13s per Annum in Stock. The rest is [charged] at so much an house, som paying 12 some 9s, according to a ancient Booke which they have amongst the[m]; now in custody of Richard Grisedal \ now / Curate there.[12]

The Chappelry
The Chappelry Recommends & the Vicar of Kendal Approves of the Chaplain there. And part of the Hamlet of Cartmel Fell \ in Lanc[ashire] / payes to the Chaplain but is not in the Lordship of Winstar, nor Parish of Kendal, but in the Chapelry; it being only for Ease of the neighbourhood, which pay all their dues to the respective Parishes.



Figure 2.3ii.2. Winster Chapel. II.97.

{Winstar Chap[el]
15 [long] 8 [broad]; 1 Bell; a large steple.[13] {About 30 year since the stones fell upon Sunday morning. And som of the stones fell upon ~~Agnes~~ Ann Comston. But she was not harmed.}

[8] 'As he says himself.'
[9] This phrase, written in pencil, is Machell's answer to his question, after due enquiry.
[10] This word is written in pencil – another answer to a query.
[11] Also numbered p.37.
[12] Richard Grisedale: ordained deacon; curate and schoolmaster at Crook Chapel (1692-1733). CCED.
[13] MS: '1 Bell – a large ~~with the~~ steple.'

[School]
6d per quarter of all the chap[elry]. For teaching of the rest, 12d or as they can agree & so doe farmers.}

[House?]
The House is Cawgath in Windermer Parish, a Capella 3m. N., where they pay Boone\s/‡.[14] Each Tenement One. Rents Fines & Heriots. But have a Court Barron kept at Winster in any [house] which the Stuart appointes. Ergo no manor house.

{Bounded}
It is bounded on the E. ~~S. & N.~~ with Crook Chaple[ry] \ in Kendal / to the repare of which it has payed of late⸸, & from which tis divided by the Bounds of the Lordship; on the ~~SW &~~ S.E. & S with Crosthwate in Hersham, divided by the B[oundary] of the Lordship; on the S. West with Cartmel fell Chaple[ry] from which tis divided by the River Winstar which divides the County yet so that Hight of Cartmell[15] payes sallary to it – & belong to the chaple but neither to the Parish nor County; on the West with the Highe End of Cartmel fel; on the N. with Windermer parish||.

{Mr Rich. Dixon & the Schoolmaster, Informers}

[Machell's Notes: II.97]

*q[uery]? How.
† de quo qu?[16]
‡ Shearing & Capons.
⸸{no but a gift given?}
|| {Forsan High End being near adjacent payes to the salary & have rights in the chappl.}

[14] MS: '? The ~~Manner~~ House is Cawgath \ in Windermer Parish a Capella 3m. N. a Capella / where they ~~appear, &~~ pay Boone & Capons.'
[15] 'Cartmel Height': Cartmell Fell's high ground and its inhabitants.
[16] 'On what grounds?'

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3iii. Parish of Kendal: Old and New Hutton]

[Old and New Hutton]

[Initial Notes]
2m. E. Ecclesia inclining S.
{Ex[penses]: 0:0:3 more.}[1]

Families
Old Hutton 38.[2]
New Hutton 26, a Capella E. ½ m. Hutton ith Hay 35,[3] a Capella ¼ m. N.W.
No freeholds. These 2[4] belong to the Church. Both Queens tenants pay rent heriot; best land good.
Fine 3 pl[…][5] upon death of Queen.

Tithe: Meal silv[er];[6] no hay.
& Holm Scale 14; in Burton parish but in the chappelry & Constablewick of Old Hutton ratio.[7]

[Chapels and] Scholl Endowment
The mother churches are kept indemnify.[8]

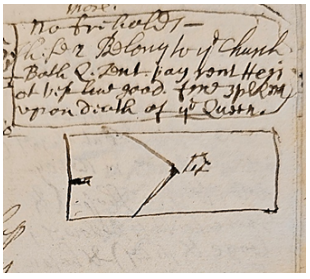


Figure 2.3iii.1. Hutton Chapel. II.87.

Rushbearing – on St James day.
One Bell.
In the Chapleyard ~~at~~ \ near / the West End of the chaple Mr Henry Bateman of Bleas[9] within this chapelry gave Floddenhill to it – worth about 6 or 7 per Annum.[10] And every house payes a proportion according to their Estates, amount to above 5li per Annum, which is the Ancient Sallary time immemorial.

A chappel, at St Sunnendayes Water, W. Capella ¼ [known] onely by tradition. And one ~~at~~ \ near / Hutton a little beyond the Bridge End – And an old stone house has belongd to the chaple with freestone windows & Iron bars with great plankes. {James \ Dawson / has seen the timber on it.}[11]
Bou[n]ds

[1] This appears to be a note of expenses made during Machell's Itinerary; see also Part 2, Ch.3vii, Natland, II.79.
[2] This number has overwritten '26'.
[3] Hutton i' th' Hay: a hay was an enclosed space; enclosure; park. From Old Engish *hege* or *haga*. *OED*.
[4] New Hutton and Hutton ith Hay.
[5] Unclear word.
[6] See the English Glossary.
[7] By reason (of its proximity).
[8] Indemnified against loss of dues from the chapelries, which were semi-autonomous entities.
[9] Bleaze Hall.
[10] Flodding hill, also Floddenhill, was glebe-land. A field in the parish of Kendal is called Flodder; there is also a Flodder beck. See Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 128. As Machell's 'r' often resembles his 'n', this word could be either Flodden or Flodder.
[11] James Dawson was the miller whose ingenious machinery captivated Machell, see below, II.88.

On the East side Killington Chappel; on the S. to Preston Ch[apel] in Burton; on \ S. & / West Crosscrake; North, Grarig chapelry.

The Lordship of Hutton
The Lordship of Hutton onely consisting of Old Hutton & Holm Scale.
Tythe Corne – None but Tithe Meal Silver 7 or 8^{d} for 10li per Annum. No hay nor Hay Silver. Payable to Trinity College & leasd by Sir John Otway.[12] But wool in kinde & xiiij^{d} a Lamb to the Vicar.

Hall & Gentlemens houses
A place on the Com[mon] called White, N. a Capella ½. But no ap[pearance] of any building – But there is a House calld the Town House a Capella ¼ N. which is supposd from the name to have bin the Manner – & now it belongs to Mr Pricket.[13]

[A Lightning Strike]
In ~~Cockhead~~ \ Cocklehead[14] / pasture a Capella 1m. N.E. – where they get Peates or Turfe – 10 years agoe – \ an houre / after a Great Thunderclap & a shower, a streame of lightning came unperceiveably upon 3 men, a woman & a Dog (but seen by others), which struck one man Dead – Rich[ard] Whitehead – & a Dog dead. & the 2 men & woman

[II. 88]

were struck astonishd as dead; & when the[y] came to them selfes, they found them selves burnd in a wonderful manner. The womans feete at the toe \ underneath / & the heal were burnd with the stockings – the shews being unharmed – And their clothes were burned as with tobacko ashes or pale shot. There came out of the wounds \ of the womans toes / like White Sand – Agnas Gilpin, cur[e]d by Mrs Bateman, being the party informed of this; in presence of diverse witness who remember the Accident.[15]

[Becks and Tarns]
Cockhead beck comes from the peat moss by Beathom Hall on the N. of it, & so to Milthrop Sands. St Sundayes runs by Bleas-Hall at the W. side of – & to Milthrop.[16]
Hud-Ridding-Tarne [17] \ a Capella ½ m. E. / b[readth] – 200. l[ength] – 200. Pikes, troutes, which [fetch] 1d & 2d a piece – like charrs. Eales. Tench lately put in.
Lang-Tarn a Capella 1m. N.E. l[ength] 200 – b[readth] 100. The same except Tench – Many pikes & large – som a yard long.

[12] Sir John Otway: c.1620-1693. 1st son of Roger Otway of Birkside Hall, Middleton, Westmorland by his 2nd wife Anne, daughter of John Mayer, headmaster of Sedbergh School. Educated at Sedbergh 1631-36; St. John's, Camb., adm. 3 June 1636, aged 16, BA 1640, MA 1643; Gray's Inn 1638; fellow of St. John's, Camb. 1640-3. Otway's ancestors (Visitation of Yorkshire, 1664), had been settled at Middleton for four generations. Though Otway was born at Birkside Hall, his father acquired Ingmire Hall, which became the family residence. Otway embraced an academic career but in 1643 after rejecting the Covenant he was expelled from his fellowship. He served with the royalist forces in the first Civil War, after which he qualified as a barrister and succeeded in living down his Cavalier record so well that the Rump made him a J.P. and a militia commissioner. As an intimate friend of the royalist agent Dr John Barwick on the one hand, and the brother-in-law of two roundhead colonels on the other, he rendered important services in winning over George Monck and the Irish brigade to the Restoration. See *History of Parliament*, Online. See also Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[13] Prickett: a lawyer and governor of Hutton School, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2 Ch.10, II.387. Alan Prickett Esq. of Natland Hall is listed as a recorder of Kendal in 1673, see Cornelius Nicholson, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 2nd edn, 1861), 176, 287. See also *AWL*, 239.
[14] Cocklea Wood and Cocklehead are referenced in Smith, *Place-Names I,* 127.
[15] For another version, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.383.
[16] St Sunday's Beck (OS Grid: SD545885) runs into Stainton Beck. Near Milnthorpe, Stainton Beck joins Peasey Beck to form the River Bela. https://co-curate.ncl.ac.uk/stainton-beck-st-sundays-beck/.
[17] Hoodridding, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.

~~Lill~~ Toft Tarne – a Capella ½ E. l[ength] 150[18] – b[readth] ½ as much. Trout Eales & no pikes. & Cocland water has the same fish.
Ponds.

[In Nature]
Martes of both sortes.
Raspberryes in abundance all over.
\ No / limestone – Blew hard walling stone. Gravel.

[Mill]
{!!! A Mil at Brig End – E.? from the Chap. – 1m. Preast Mill – A most ingenious Mill which does not only grinde on the inside but turns 3 grindestones in the Cog-hole, which is a shop – (& there he has his Bellows, forge & Stiddy[19]) – & has an engine for ~~grindeing~~ Boare of Gunns.} & Rasor-Grindstone & Glazeing wheal.
{In the ~~Low~~ \ High / Mill is a Sweap or Horse, which being made with long Polls & Running on an Axel Tree, takes up a load of corne, as shut of horseback & pulls it up to the Hopper; where opening the poake,[20] it runns in of it selfe and is discharged into the Arke of the Low Mill which receives the meal. And there they have a dressing cive[21] which moves by the wheale & water as of it selfe. And for meldar,[22] a pipe to Discharge unto the outside where a Hoval 2 coll[ecting] fann[s].}[23]
Per James Dawson {Born at Preston nere by the Chaple-cock. […]}[24]

[Bateman of Blease Hall]
They were all in Tenancy, Rent Fine Heriot & dues, but purchased themselves free \ above / 60 years since, to a foe farm as they call it – paying their ancient Rent only. Purchased of Mr Vaughan of Derwen near Yorke, there being no freeholds before. There were 4 purchasers that cheated the tenants – Reserving these Rents to themselves; & within a few years, X or so – they fell into Decay – & now there is not one of those names to be found or heard of. But they sold of[f] the Rent, which was Resold – and at length came into the hands of Roger Bateman of Bleas Hall. Yet they do not Esteem him Lord of the Manner.

Mr Hen[ry] benefactor to the chapel = d. of Mr Rawlinson of [Blank][25]
|
Roger B[ateman] = Knipe. Broughton.
|
Mr Hen[ry] B. = Mrs Allison {1w[ife] Mr Hen. Bateman. 2 wife.}
= Mrs Standard
|
Jane

{Bleas Hall ½ a mile S.W. a Capella., on the Banke of St Sun[day's Beck]: a little house before the purchase.}

[18] 150 superimposes 200: perhaps 200 was an earlier estimate.
[19] A 'stiddy' is an anvil: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[20] A bag, as in 'poke', formerly used as a measure of quantity, varying according to the quality and nature of the commodity. *OED*.
[21] A sieve, for sifting any dry material, liquid, etc., also specifically for separating the finer from the coarser grains of some loose material: *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[22] Meldar or melder: the quantity of corn taken to a mill by a customer to be ground at one time, *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online.
[23] A hovel was a receptacle for grain; fans were winnowing devices. *OED*.
[24] The rest is obscured by the binding but the words might be, 'watches' and 'joyner'. The passage radiates Machell's enthusiasm for all things mechanical; see references to his study desk, his font-cover, his family nick-name: 'Thomas the contriver', and much more in Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.537, I.561, I.563; Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, III.82.
[25] In the MS here, one other pedigree was attempted, but crossed through.

[Old Hutton School]

[II.88B] [26]

Westmorland, Old Hutton
To Mr Jackson Cheif Master of the Free School at Applebie
These

[II.88A]

Old Hutton School

Sir
Upon the Reseipt of yours & Mr Wase's paper;[27] upon enquiry I found that our School writeings were in Mr Stanfords hand of Kendall, who at that very juncture of time was gone a journey to London, so that I could not possibly give you an exact account till his Return, then upon examination we found something disputable who should be the right governours, for though we had them by our writeings particularly appointed & named, yet the death of some, & others that are become concern'd in paying the school wage (who cannot be properly governours) put us to some trouble in giving you the precise number; but now though all Mr Wase's introgatories are not Answerable, yet as many as are, you have truly given in as follows by
Sept. 16. 76.
Yours to serve you to's power
Edm. Lodge.

1. The Free Grammer School of Old Hutton in Westmorland founded Anno 1613.[28]
2. The founder: Edward Miller of K. Kendall yeoman.
3. Endowed by his last will with 20li a year.
4. The present schoolmaster Edmund Lodge.
5. The governours. Allan Prickett Esquire, Roger Bateman, Henry Wilson Gent, Robert Robinson, William Speight, Thomas Robinson, Mathew Mitchell, John Gathorn, James Dawson, James Beck yeoman. Nicholson.[29]

[II.88]

[Further Brief Notes]
There is a woman here called Margaret Whitefield above 100. & many live long.
{A journeyman for 40d. & 59d. worke.}
{Killington has it fee simple.}

[II.89]

Preston Ch. a Burton 3m½ N. & N.E. See Mr Tim Bankes at Crooklands.
Kirkby Loansd. See 8 E. & 6. S.
The papers Mr Briggs.
Bethom vide p. [blank]
6m. S. & 6. W.
Mr Jackson Dallem Towers.
Hersham 4m. a Kendal S.
Mr Farmer.
Levins.
Sizars.

[26] Letter (1676) to Richard Jackson, Appleby schoolmaster, from Edmund Lodge, relating to Old Hutton School.
[27] Christopher Wase's Westmorland Schools Survey (issued from 1673) was contemporaneous with Machell's research. See P.J. Wallis, 'Westmorland schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey', *CW2*, 67 (1967), 168.
[28] This text is not in Edmund Lodge's hand; the writer was probably the recipient, Jackson.
[29] This name was added in Machell's hand. Nicholson was the curate and schoolmaster at Hutton, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.382.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[II.121][1]

[Chapter 3iv. Parish of Kendal: Ings and Hugill]

Ing-Chappel

{Ings & Hugill}

35 [families]
There is a Ruine of an old Chapl. Calld St Anns \ at / Gers garth, i.e. grass yard: a Capella ¼ N.W.
{Mr Robi[n]son Curate - I was not in this Chapel; neither was he at home.}[2]

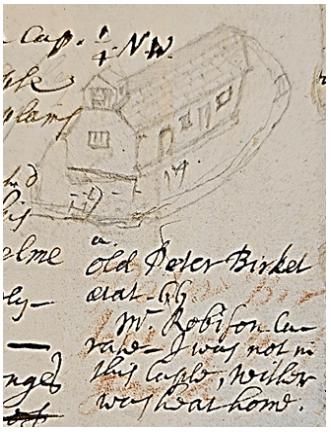


Figure 2.3iv.1. Chapel at Ings. II.121.

[II.121]
It is an Appendant to Stavely chapl where the people have Seates, Christen & Bury, & pay something to the Chaplains Sallary. It was not known by what name it was Dedicated but their Rush bearing formerly was on St James his day.[3] The Bell was given 15 years agoe by Mr Helme of Totron alijs Higher fair banke; \ ½ of / which was lately Mr Gayes – & is now sold to Mr Robinson the curate. The House ~~ner~~ \ adjoyneing / the chapl yard on the West belongs the chaplaine (or curate) & an Ancient Sallary was 7 nobles[4] \ 2: 6: 8 / of which every house payes a proportion on, greater or less according to their seates; which sallary was Augmented with 5 markes per Annum, pay'd yearly at Michaelmas by the Kings or Queens Auditors, and 12li per Annum given by Mr (Rowland) Wilson of \ the Low Hall in / Grass Garth, where he was borne,[5] & who first Advanced the familyes of the Wilsons. This was given towards the maintaineing a Free School at the Ings, in consideration of which he teaching all the chapelry free; without any Quarterpence.[6] But of strangers, he has as they can agree. They pay their corne [tithe] in Meal Silver[7] to Sir[8] the farmer \ or farmers / under Trinity Colledge in Camb[ridge] They pay Hay Silver with their Easter Reckonings to the Vicar = Wool in kinde to the Rector; & for Lam[b] – a prescription of 14d for every Tithe Lamb.

---

[1] Also numbered ~~p.49~~ [crossed through] and p.53.
[2] Written in ink over red crayon. Machell often used red crayon when out and about. As he related, when he visited Ings chapel, the curate was not at home, so he could not gain the information he needed. He returned the following year to complete his task.
[3] 25 July.
[4] MS: 'Ancient Sallary ~~of 5 marke per Annum~~ was 7 nobles.'
[5] For a fuller but slightly contradictory narrative, see below, II.413.
[6] See *N&B1*,140.
[7] See the English Glossary..
[8] In the MS, this word is encircled but no name is given.

{Manner}
There [are] 3 Lords that keep each a Court Baron at their Tenants House – Sc. 1. The King or Queen. 2. Collonell Graham of Levins. & 3. Mr Bra\thwates/ of Burnaside.

{Tenur}
de 1[0].[9] The Kings Free Holdes \ are /
Peter Birket of the House in Grassgarth next to St Anns Chapl (who say all the Hamlet belongd to his Ancestors, de quo que.?[10]) {Old Peter Birket ætat 66.} Roger Harrison – who holds a Tenement in Ruston. {An house at the high end of Garth – east from St Anns about 40 yards, which belongs to Mr Crisp of Low Hall, who had them both by his \ grand / mother – who was Brave[11] Wilsons daughter.} The rest of the Kings tenants are Customary: at Fine Certaine, Sc. ~~2d fine rent~~ \ years rent at / death of the Lord & 3 yeares Rent upon death or alienations, & heriotable.

2. Mr Grahams Tenants are Customary \ at / Fine Arbitrary & Heriotable. Purchasd of Bellinghams.

3. Mr Brathwates are Customary &c. Not known of whom purchased.

The Sh[eriff] Has W[aif] & St[ray]: Q. of Lords.[12]

[II.413]

[**Text added in late March 1693**]

Since this, I visited it in the End of March 1693. And it a good handsom chapl well seated & in Good Repare. All which was don. & the chapel itselfe they say builded by one Rowland Wilson, a Poore boy in this ~~Parish~~ \ Hamlet / who went into the S[outh] to try his fortune, & when he came at London had nothing left but a Groat in his Pocket; yet afterwards came \ rise / to a Great Estate, by the Blac[k]well hall traid, as som \ doe / Report.[13] & disposd of much of it to Piouse uses – for \ he / built (or at least Repar'd) & endowed this chapel in th' Inges, setting upon it for Reading prayers & Teaching School there, most part of the Tenement calld Low-hall which he builded himself. As appears from som sentence writ on the wall in the Best Chamber, where with much adoe I made out these lines, which shew that he was a labourer at first in the County of Kent.

> Thys hous was buylded by me Rowland Wilson Laborer into Kente
> As God had appointed my life to be Spent.
> Being of the age of XX …

By this I hopd to have found out his age – there being som lime daubd over the figures – But (alas) it had broke out before, so that it could not be retrievd agane. & by this it should seem he was only a Labourer. Tis said that when he had builded this house he dined in this Roome all the neighbourhood in a most sumptuouse [manner] haveing wine of all sorts. & that he would not (such was his humility) sit down amongst them, but stood at their backs to serve & wait on them. Thus, God Exalteth the humble & meeke.

[9] 'Concerning the first'.
[10] 'Concerning which, enquire'.
[11] This word appears to be 'Brave'. Presumably, this was Rowland Wilson, see below.
[12] For the Sheriff of Westmorland's claim for waif and stray, see Part 2, Ch.3ix, Staveley, II.414.
[13] Blackwell Hall in the City of London was the centre for the English wool and cloth trade from the middle ages until the 19th century; cloth manufacturers and clothiers from provincial England brought their material to Blackwell Hall to sell to merchants and drapers: see N. Bateman, 'From rags to riches; the wool cloth trade and Blackwell Hall, c 1450-1790: a brief survey', *Post-medieval Archaeology* 38.1 (Museum of London Archaeology, 2004), 1-15.

[II.428]

March 29 1693

Coat-how; Low-hall

~~Thys \ hous / was byelded by Mr Rowland Wylson labourer in Kente as God has appointed my life to be spente being of the age of ȝȝ~~

[II.413A]

{Insert at Vol. 2 p. 413.}[14]

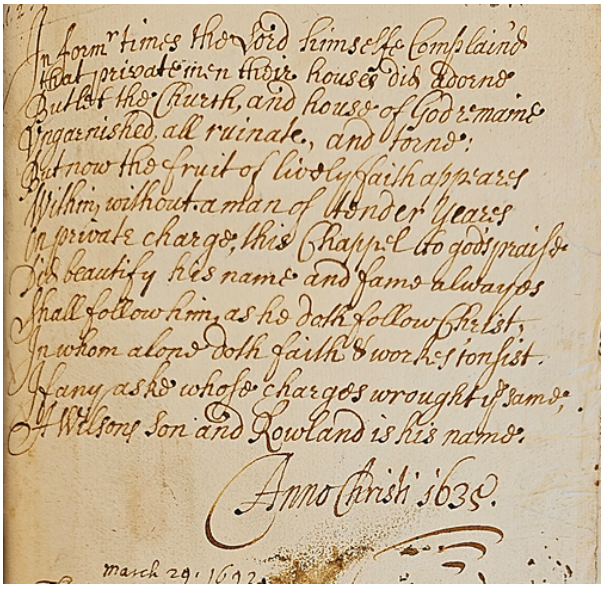


Figure 2.3iv.2. Lines on Rowland Wilson, copied by James Robinson, chaplain. II.413A.

In former times the Lord himself complain'd
that private men their houses did adorne
But let the Church, and house of God remaine
Ungarnished all ruinate, and torne:
But now the fruit of lively faith appeares
Within, without, a man of tender yeares
On private charge, this Chappel to God's praise
Did beautify his name and fame always
Shall follow him, as he doth follow Christ,
In whom alone doth faith & works consist.
If any aske whose charges wrought ye same;
A Wilsons Son and Rowland is his name.
Anno Christi 1635.[15]

March 29 1693[16]

These verses were formerly writ on the place where the Kings Armes now stand betwixt the chancel & body of the chapel; but being obliterated had bin utterly lost, but that they were preserved by

[14] Written later in a different hand. For discussion on when the volumes were bound, see Editor's Introduction.
[15] This poem was written by James Robinson, chaplain. He is recorded curate at Staveley Chapel from 1676 to 1701, and curate at Hugill Chapel, where he was also schoolmaster, from 1701 to 1712. CCED.
[16] The handwriting from this point is Machell's.

Mr James Robinson now chaplain there, who writ them \ down / from the mouth of ~~one of the Inhabitants~~ \ a neighbour / who had got them memoriter[17] when he was a boy.[18]

[II.414]

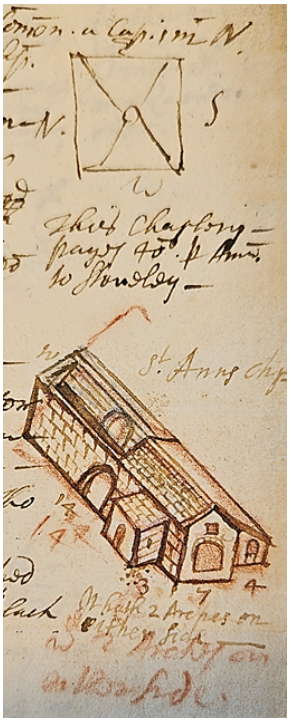


Figure 2.3iv.3. St Ann's Chapel Ings from the south-east; sketch in red pencil and ink. II.414.

[Notes on] Ings Chapel and Chapelry]

It hath 2 Arches on either side.
{This chapelry payes 40s per Annum to Staveley.}
{Custom}
The wid[ows] have the 3[19] of the Personal Estate – and all the tenant right land of her Husbands dureing pure viduity.
{Manner Houses}
None that are known of.
They teach the School at the Chappel Ith Ings.
No hall but Low hall that bears that name. A pond at Low Hall in Mr Wilsons time.
{Bounds}
It is bounded on the E. with Sleddal chapelry. And divided from it South with Staveley Chapelry; from which it is divided by the Bounder of Staveley. On the West with Windermer parish; from which tis divided at Broad gates – a Tenement in Hugill; on the North with Kentmere – divided ~~they know not how~~ by Kentmer Parke ~~parke~~ \ wall. /

[Things of Note]
An heape of stone called White Rayes upon Hugil Common, a Capella 1m. N.
Raspberryes.

[17] 'By heart.'
[18] Traces of further text appear at the foot of the page, but the words have been removed by cutting during the shaping of the paper.
[19] Third.

Limestone none, but fetched 4 miles on Horseback. Ragg enough – Black blew slate – of Rag – a Capella ½ E. at Ruston.

[Things General]
24 li per Annum.
A vi[n]tner gave 190000 li. For […][20] Abby of St Martins in Kent.[21] Had but 4d in his Pocket when he came at London – Lost in a Guiney Ship 7000;[22] & by Sir Thomas Fairfax 7000 lent money.[23]
Qu. of another St Anns in Kendal Town?
To refer Gilpins charity to [Blank][24]

[II.437A]

[Further Queries]

March Ult[25] 1693 coming from Ridall q[uery] Rothydale
Query of a place in Cartmel called Ulverston or Ouston (memorandum: the river Ouse, Ousepit; & a place called Ulsthwate near Ubarrow in Sleddal, or near Kentmer Hall, where the Knipes – Sir Daniel Fleming.

[20] Unclear word.
[21] St Martin's, Canterbury, became a parish church after the dissolution of the monasteries. Possibly, Machell was referring to St Martin's Priory, Dover. In the dissolution events of the autumn of 1535 the Priory was closed; the lands passed to the Archbishop of Canterbury and were leased to various tenants. https://www.dover-kent.co.uk/st_martins_priory.html.
[22] A Guinea Ship: From the 17th to the 19th centuries, slave ships were specially built or converted for the purpose of human trafficking to and from the Guinea coast in West Africa. See John Atkins, *A Voyage to Guinea, Brasil and the West Indies,* 2nd edn (London, 1737), 176-80.
[23] Sir Thomas Fairfax, 3rd Baron Fairfax (1612-1671), born in Denton, Yorkshire. Commander-in-chief of the Parliamentary army during the Civil Wars. https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thomas-Fairfax-3rd-Baron-Fairfax-of-Cameron.
[24] See Gilpin's letter to Machell, Part 2, Ch.2, Kendal Town, II.45, 47.
[25] 31 March.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3v. Parish of Kendal: Kentmere]

[Kentmere]

[II.105][1]

{Fam[ilies] 31.}

[Kentmere] Chapel

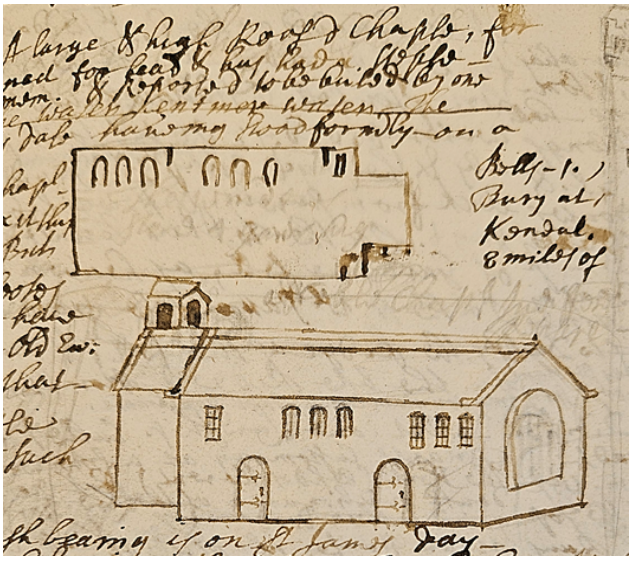


Figure 2.3v.1. Kentmere Chapel. II.105.

Long on the outside 32. b[readth] 12.
A large & high roofd Chaple, formerly designed for lead & has had a steple – but non in mem[ory] – & reported to be builded by one Aray of this dale, haveing stood formerly on a place calld Chapl how betwixt this & the Hall. But this Chapl lookes so ancient, haveing allso an old ewe tree in it, that there is little ground for such reports.
Bells – 1.
Bury at Kendal 8 miles of[f].
The windows stand 4 yards high!
Their Rush bearing is on St James day.[2]

[Reader's Salary; Tithes]
No house belonging to the Reader – but he has the Chaple, the Yard, & a Sallary of 6^{li} per Annum, at 1s every noble Rent. Called by the name of Sallary. The Inhabitants recommend the Reader & the Vicar approves. They pay meal money to the College for their Corne; & Hay Silver to the Vicar for hay;[3] & wool in kinde to the College.[4] But Lamb per 4d a Tithe lamb &c. 1d a sheep for all sold after Candlemas.

---

[1] Also numbered p.43.
[2] 25 July.
[3] Meal and hay silver: see the English Glossary.
[4] The Parish of Kendal was under the patronage of Trinity College, Cambridge. See the plaque outside the parish church, which states, 'In 1553 Queen Mary gave the living to Trinity College, Cambridge.' See also John Hodgkinson, *The Greater Parish of Kendal, 1553-2002*, *During the Patronage of Trinity College Cambridge* (Levens, 2002).

Kentmere Hall



Fig 2.3v.2. Kentmere Hall. Ab Ecclesia Kendal 8m. N.W & by N. II.105.

The Hall is an old building with a Antique Tower standing under a mo[n]strouse craggy mountaine yards from the house, out of which Kentmer water springs.[5] This Hall belongd to 2 Sisters. Sir Christopher bought ½ of Mrs Copley of Hawkside Hall. Mr Carus of Sellet near Kirkby Loansdall has the other in marriage with Judah Nicholson.[6]



At Kentmer Hall in the Hall window: Fide non Fraude

[Key]
1. Or [&] G[ules]
2. Arme & gauntlet Argent.
[Helm] Or & Sab[le]
3. [Plumes} G[ules] A[rgent] g. a. g.
Shield [chevron] Erm[ine] [3 bores heads] G[ules] Erm[ine]
[motto] FIDE NON FRAVDE

It is reported that the 1t Gilpin was a Scotchman, who comeing into Sleddal and killing a wilde-boare there, \ others say in Gilpinbeck which tooke name from thence, / the King bestowd Kentmer hall upon Him*, and that they were great commanders against the Scots. [The hall receives] 42li Rent per Annum†.

.

Figure 2.3v.3.'Kentmer Hall; in the Hall window'. II.105.

[5] A scored-through comment near the beginning of II.105 states: '~~They call the water Kentmere Water~~.'
[6] See Judith Nicholson on the page below.

[Machell's Notes: II.105]

*In Skel[s]mer re T. Gilpin Informant.[7]
†Informers. Stephen Cowpathwate a countryman. John Grisdale Chaplane or Curate.

[II.106]

[The Manor]

{The mere}
{Kentmere Water – alias Braid Watter, & sometimes the Tarne – hath a Boate. It belongs to the Hall – L[ength] ¼ l[eague][8] & 200 Broad – Troutes & Gray Troutes? ~~Pike~~ Eales & Tenches. It hath store of Swans in winter: 37 at a time. Great Store of w[ild] Duck.}

{Kendal from Kent dirives its name.
And Kent from Kentmere's springing fountains came.
Brathwate}[9]

{Kent has 2 Heads – one little one ½ m. west from the Hall in the top of the Clints which runs on the West End of the H[all]. The Other Chiefe head 3 miles North a Capella at a place calld Grove head & Stephens Cross Grove where it may run thro a q't pot.[10] Thence S. to Kentmere (3m.¼) Thence S. to Stavely & Strickland &c.}

{Templehurst [Park]}

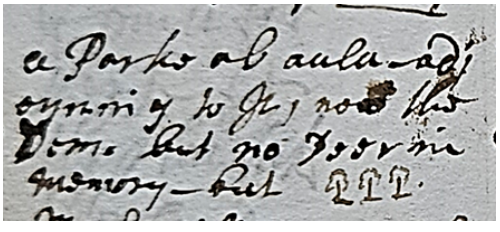


Figure 2.3v.4. 'No Deer in memory - but trees'. II.106.

{A Parke ab aula adjoyning to it,[11] now the Dem[esne] but no Deer in memory – but trees.[12] Marle in ground 2ce 12 sc[ore] N.W a Capella.[13] White clay. No, it will not melt.}
{Limestone all over. Blew Slate 2m. N. a Capella. 1[d] a stone & 16[d] a load. Very fine.}

{! No Orchards \ no / Juniper! Bleaberryes & Straw berryes. Peats with[in] ½ a m. plenty.}

[Bounds]
It is bounded on the E. with Sleddall chapelry fro[m] which it is div[id]ed by the ridges of Green Quarter fell & Hallowbanke as heaven water divides. On the South Side with Stavly & the Ings chapelryes, divided by Black beck from Stavely, & Howgil Ford from the Ings. On the W. It is

[7] Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall. See his letter to Machell relating to Gilpin's Rents of 1561: Part 2. Ch.2, Kendal Town, II.45. For the Gilpin family, originally of Kentmere Hall, see Machell's Itinerary: Part 2, Ch.10, II.400.
[8] A league was 3 miles.
[9] This rhyme first appears in Part 2. Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.17. The poet was Richard Brathwate of Burneside (1587/8-1673), see Part 2. Ch.3i, Burneside, II.93.
[10] Quart pot.
[11] 'A park extends from the hall adjoining to it.'
[12] Here, Machell has drawn a symbol consisting of three deciduous trees, see Figure 2.3v.4.'No Deer in memory – but trees'. II.106.
[13] Twice 12 score = 480 [yards] north-west of the chapel.

bounded with the Top of Garburne fell, as heaven water divides. On the N. with Patterdale, from which tis divided by the ridge of the fell; & Mardall in Shap by the like Ridges. Noe Hurrocks.

Division [Lordship]
[It has] but one Lordship calld Kentmere – The Tenants customary at a Fine Certain of double the Rent (besides the Rent) but none they say upon death or alienation of the Lord, nor no consent requird to their Deeds. They keep Court Barron at an house of Mr Fishers purchased of T […][14] – pay no Bownes – but heriots, Sc. the best quick[15] – & if none, a competent summ as required.[16]

[II.105]

The Tenants sold to Fisher of Stean Bank green near Kendal.

[II.106]

It was purchased by the Fishers of Stean banke green[17] (as tis said) of Sir John Lowther, called the Gleed[18] – Sc. This Sir Johns great grandfather – & by them? of the Stapletons of Templehurst in Yorkshire (Tr. old men);[19] & so is now in Mr John Shepherd sometimes scholar of Queens College in Oxford.[20]

[Airay and Gilpin Families]

{D. Ayray Provost of Queens, borne at Long houses a Capella ¼ m. S. Gave for a monthly sermon 40li per Annum.}[21]
Oliver Gilpin[22] is reported to be borne at Laythait in Stricland Roger, which place ~~in memory~~ belongd to the Gilpins – But ~~old Barnard~~ old Barnard Gilpin the famous Preacher in Hen[ry] the 8th Time &c. is said to have bin born at this Hall.}[23]

The Hall & Demaine was Anciently in the Gilpins, yet is reported to have bin Tenancy & sold to a Free Rent of [£]10 per Annum payable to the Lord of the Soyle, dischargd from Heriots & all other dutyes.[24]
It passed from Xt[opher] Gilpin, to Nathaniel Nicholson of Hawkside Hall,[25] who daughter he had maryed – from whom it came to his eldest son Daniel – who mary Bridget daughter of Mr Pennington of Seaton– & had only 2 daughter:
[1.] Beatrix maryed to \ 2 attorneys / 1[st] to a younger son of / Mr Sands of Grathwate whose child died: afterwards into Mr John Copley a younger brother of Gosphath near Eggermont – by whom she had – 1. a girle. 2. John. But sold her part to Sir Xt[opher] Philipson. circa 1692.

---

[14] The rest of the word is obscured by the binding.
[15] As in 'alive'.
[16] 'They pay no boons but they do pay heriots'.
[17] Stainbank Green, see Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 121-22.
[18] Gleed: having a cast in one or both eyes; squint-eyed. *OED*. For another possible (negative) meaning as applied to Sir John Lowther, see Part 1. Ch.11, Crosby Ravensworth, III.176.
[19] Traditional lore, remembered by the old men of the chapelry.
[20] The only documented John Shepherd at Queen's College, Oxford, took his MA in 1575; however, a Robert Shepheard, son of Christopher of Kentmere, took his BA at Queen's in 1674-75, *OAD*.
[21] Henry Airay (c.1558-60-1616), an eminent defender of evangelical Calvinism in Oxford, was born, probably at Kentmere, the son of William Airay (d. 1596?) who was either the brother-in-law or a favoured servant of Bernard Gilpin (1517-1583), the Apostle of the North; so-called for his notable preaching and charitable activities. At Queen's College, Oxford, Airay was mentored by Henry Robinson (bishop of Carlisle from 1598) who, in 1599, ensured that Airay would follow him as provost of Queen's. By his will, proved 1616, Airay left land in Garsington to the college; £40 to support the schoolmaster of Kendal; £40 for a preacher in Kentmere chapel; a gilt bowl of 30 ounces to his successors in the provostship; his books to the college, and a number of lesser legacies. See A. Hegarty, 'Airay, Henry (1558/60-1616), college head'. *ODNB*.
[22] MS: '~~Barnard~~ \ Oliver / Gilpil'.
[23] Oliver Gilpin was the fourth son of William Gilpin, who lived during the reign of Edward IV. [1461-1483]. For this and the Gilpin family pedigree, see *N&BI*, 136-37.
[24] The Lord of the manor is the Lord of the Soil of the manor of common right. See J.H. Thomas, *A Systematic Arrangement of Lord Coke's First Institute of the Laws of England…Vol. 3* (Philadelphia, 1836), 458.
[25] See *AWL*, 216.

[2.] The other heiress was Judith Nicholson m. to Mr George Carus of [Blank] & had 7 or 8 ch[ildren] Boys & girles.

[II.107][26]

[General Notes]
Apalby Road Grarig Church.

Fam[ilies]	Grarig	41.
	Whinfell	34.
	Lamrig (parke)	21. q. if in this chapelry.

[26] Also numbered p.45.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[II.103][1]

[Chapter 3vi. Parish of Kendal: Longsleddale]

Long Sleddall Chapel? & Hall?

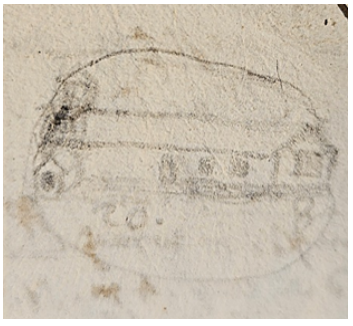


Figure 2.3vi.1. Longsleddale Chapel. II.103.

A fine little Dale wooded on both sides with young trees.
{Fam[ilies] 39.}

[Chapel]
L[ength] 20; b[readth] 8. Bell 1.[2] Good repare all but seats & flags. Their rushbearing is on St James his day.[3]

{Tithes}
For Tithe Corne they pay Meal Silver[4] – everyone a particular sum according to the Ancient Booke – which is due to the College: Sir John Otway Leasor.[5]
Hay money is payed to the vicar with all small tithes.
Wool in kinde: every 10th flees \ to the Coll[ege.] /[6]
iiij is 2d.
V. is ½s.
6 is 1s.
vii. is xii ob[7]
So on ob[8] advance to 10.
Lamb: a prescription of 14d. A Tithe lam – half a L[amb]. And so for od[d] ones, as \ is / of wool.
[Informants] {a. Jonathan Haton chaplaine}[9] b. Xt[opher] Tod.

{House & Sallary} {Out of the B[ook]}[10]
There is no House belongs to the Curate but in former time times there was one on the back side of the Chappl. The ancient Sallary is 5li per Annum known by the name of Sallary. ~~According to the~~ [Chapel goers pay] accord to their forms in the Chaple, the 1 forme being 3s; the 2nd, 2s viijd; the 3d, 2s & 4d; the 4, 1s 10d; the 5., 1s viijd; 6., 1s 5d. (They Generally Cottagers) as 1s 1d – sits as they will.

[1] Also numbered p.41.
[2] Notes written in red pencil.
[3] 25 July.
[4] See the English Glossary.
[5] For Sir John Otway, see Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87; see also Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[6] Trinity College, Cambridge: the patron.
[7] Presumably, 12½d.
[8] Presumably, ½d increase each time up to 10.
[9] Jonathan Hayton was curate at Longsleddale (1682-1691) and schoolmaster there (1682). CCED.
[10] The Easter Book.

{Patron}
The Hamlet Recommends & the Vicar of Kendal approves.

{Boundes}
This Chappelry is Bounded on the E. with Selside Chaplry; from which tis divided by the top of Hallfell & Whiteside; on the S. with Strickland Roger in Burneside Chapl (Kendal), from which tis divided by the top of Potter fell as Evenwater[11] divides. On the West it is adjoyned with Stavely & Kentmer, from which it is separated by ~~a Wall~~ the outside of Gowderbarrow wall, & from Kentmere by the outside of Cockley fell wall. On the North it is Bounded by Mardell belonging to Thornthwate, divided by the tops of the Mountaines to the Standing Stone on the top of Gate Scarth{q. in what parish.}[12]

[II.104]

{Division into Manners &c.}

{Sleddall}
There ~~are~~ \ is / in this Chappelry but one Entire Lordship called Long Sleddall, wherein the Tenants are generally Customary, Arbitrary & Heriotable: Excepting 2 that are at Fine Certane paying only double their Rent, Sc. Kilstone & Tenterhow.[13] And 3 freeholds, Sc. Moorthwates, Dale End & Nether house – a Capella 1m.½ S.

{Customs}
Noe Boones,[14] being formerly cut of[f] for lack of being furnished with a Bul a Bore & stone Horse.[15] The wifes have all that their husbands dyed tenants of, dureing celibacy.[16]

{Lords}*
The Lords of this Manner were anciently the Thornburrows – sold by them to Sir James Bellingham of Upper Levines: And some, Sc. 5, were the Harringtons of Woolakes in Cumberland.[17] But Bellingham only kept Court Barron here. An Allane (the son of James, the son [of] Alane of Gathorne, son of Sir James the purchaser) sold his Tenements & Royallty to Collonell James Graham.[18] And Harrington has his Tenements still, who neither appear by himselfe nor his Tenants. \ The Kings has som Right in Tenement of Sadgill, and appear at Sta[…];[19] and also Graham.[20] / No Manner house[21] belongs to Mr Graham, nor no Demane Lands except Iron-craw {vulgò Arn

[11] 'Heaven water', a watershed; see the English Glossary.
[12] The site of the margin comment is close to a reference to Mardale.
[13] For 'arbitrary', 'customary' and 'heriotable', see the English Glossary.
[14] Boons and boon-days: see the English Glossary.
[15] 'A bul, a bore and stone horse'. In Scots, a 'stane hors' is a male horse: uncastrated, entire. See *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*, Online. All three here are male animals, needed for mating. If the tenants were not paying boons for the reason stated, it sounds as though it was the lord of the manor's responsibility to provide these male animals (bull, pig and horse) for use by the community (the 'parish bull' is a known example), and the boons were paid in recognition of this. My thanks to Angus Winchester for this suggestion.
[16] In their widowhood until remarriage.
[17] Wooloaks, or Woolakes, at Hesket-in-the-Forest near Penrith: see A.M. Armstrong, A. Mawer, F.M. Stenton & Bruce Dickins, *The Place-Names of Cumberland* 1 (Cambridge, 1950), 204-05.
[18] MS: '~~By Alan, son of~~; And some ~~them~~ Sc. 5 were the Harringtons of Woolakes in Cumberland – But Bellingham only kept Court Barron here. (~~who~~) an Allane (the son of James ~~of Gathorne~~ the son Alane of Gathorne son of Sir James the purchaser – sold his Tenants & Royalty to Collonell James Graham.'
[19] This word is obscured by the binding but is probably 'Staveley'.
[20] Written at right angles to the rest of the text. James Grahme (Graham) (1650-1730) of Levens was the second son of Sir George Grahme, baronet (c.1624-1658), of Netherby, Cumberland, and his wife, Lady Mary Johnston. A favourite of James II, James Grahme held posts at the royal court. He bought Levens for £24,000 in 1688, after which he was involved in several Jacobite plots. He was MP (for Carlisle, then Appleby, then Westmorland) between 1685 and 1727. See E. Cruickshanks, 'Grahme, James, courtier and politician'. *ODNB*. See also, Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c. 1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 143-44.
[21] MS: '~~Manner House~~ No Manner house.'

Craw}[22] may be thought soe, being mostly forrest ground – a Capella N. 1m. & ½ above Little London.[23]
There is another place call'd EwBarrow Hall†, with free lands thereto belonging – which tis said payes 1s per Annum to the Crown. And belongs Mr Harrington, the Lord of those Tenants above specified: But neither these nor Iron Craw lands being tax'd with Dem[esne] in the Booke of Rates, wee know not well by what name to call them. I[24] never Remember waife & stray taken up by any. But the Chief Manor House is Selside Hall, where they formerly did suit & service till the Tenements were sold, the Demane being Reserved to Mr Thornburrow.[25]

[Rivers]
{Sleddal Beck alias Spret[26] Springes in Wrang Dale head, a Capella 4m. N.W. Thence S. on the West End the Chaple [and] Eubarrow Hall – Thence S.[27] on the East of Burniside Hall. & ½ a mile below in Heg Holme it enters Kent.}

[In Nature]
{Store of Clean Marts & fowle; foxes too many. Wild cats = plenty.
Skettles \ Water:[28]/ a standing pool, l. & b. 200, a Capella N.W. 2m. Pikes – Eales, perches or Bass.
Great store of moore game.
Some swans. An Airy[29] of Spar[row] H[awks] at Hall Wood by Ewbarrow.
No Juniper? Nor orchards.
Raspberryes near the Chapl. Bleab[erries] Str[awberries] {Memorandum: Whorlehow,[30] a woody hill}
{Som Free Stone near Stockdale alias Little London.
Plenty of Lime Stone being like wad before burning.}[31] 4 or 6 inches thick & more. Broader than a table, a fine blew, ergo marble.
{Fine Blew Slate} Wrangdale, a Capella 4m.
Plenty of peat but not near.

[Machell's Notes II.104]

*q[uery] of Laburnes ¼ Lords[hip]}
†{An ancient Tower, the walls 2 yards thick. Given to a Godson by the ~~Laburnes~~ \ Harringtons[32] / and so not forfeited with Harrington Estate being in a childe.[33]}

[22] Ancrow Brow: Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 160-61.
[23] Stockdale in Longsleddale was also known as Little London, or Li'le Lunnon: See William Parson and William White, *History, Directory, and Gazetteer, of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland, with that Part of the Lake District in Lancashire, forming the Lordships of Furness and Cartmel* (Leeds, 1829), 652.
[24] This letter could be 'I' (possibly Machell's informant) or 'T' (Testators/witnesses); the letter is unclear.
[25] The last three words here were added in pencil. Thornburrow [?] has been shortened to 'Thub'.
[26] Sprint.
[27] This letter is unclear.
[28] Skeggles Water?
[29] Aerie or eyrie: the nest of a bird of prey, especially that of an eagle on a mountain; more widely, a nest of any large bird, especially one that nests high on cliffs or in tall trees. *OED*.
[30] Whirl Howe. In 1577 it was called 'Wharlehowemyer, meaning a circular mound, this being a small tumulus near the Sprint at grid 83–485053': Smith, *Place-Names 1*,164.
[31] 'Wad' is plumbago or black lead.
[32] Unclear word: blotted.
[33] The estates of minors were subject to the Court of Wards and Liveries: https://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/help-with-your-research/research-guides/land-inheritance-court-of-wards-liveries-1540-1645.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3vii. Parish of Kendal. Natland and Watercrook]

[II.79]

Natland Chaple

(See som Notes of Watercrooke)

{Natland July Friday after the fast, 1692}[1]

{Ex[penses]: 0:7. More: 0:0:6.}[2]

Initial Notes
1 mile \ ¼ / ab Ecclesia S. & by East.
{!} Fam[ilies] 33. Buly sayes but 30.
{?} Ward. Kendal Ward – & \ so / all the parish.[3]

[II.81]

{Natland Chappelry in Kendal. This 17.[4] Oct. 91}

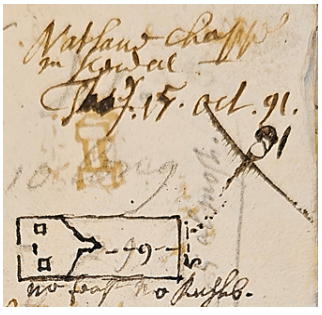


Figure 2.3vii.1. Natland Chapel. II.81.

10 long, 5 almost [broad]
No feast, no rushb[earing]} {? What salary, how raised, who presents.}

[II.79]

{Chaple}
Long 9, broad almost 5.[5]

[1] National fasts were held in England from Tudor times. Fasts were intended to win God's favour and avert divine judgement by staging days of mortification and prayer. An annual calendar of fasts and thanksgivings was established at the Restoration, after which the English were required to gather in their churches three times a year on the anniversary of significant occasions in the country's history. On 30 January they fasted to atone for the execution of Charles I in 1649. On 29 May they gave thanks for the return of Charles II in 1660. 0n 5 November they celebrated the discovery of the 1605 Gunpowder Plot. These occasions provided opportunity for mass propaganda, and after 1688 they were adapted to carry a Williamite message. In 1689, after the start of the war with France, it was decided that a public fast be held on 5 June to secure God's blessing on England's armies. In 1690 a royal proclamation ordered that a fast be held on the third Wednesday in every month for the duration of William's war in Ireland. Monthly fasting was revived in 1691 to cover summer campaigning against France. Fasts were held on the third Wednesday of each month from April to October 1691. Monthly fasts were repeated in 1692 between April and October; in 1693 fasts began in May and the day was moved to the second Wednesday in each month. See Anthony M. Claydon, *Courtly Reformation: Williamite Propaganda after the Glorious Revolution in England* (A thesis submitted for the PhD, London University, 1993), 105-06, 111.
[2] Expenses incurred during Machell's Itinerary in July 1692.
[3] Two notes on Watercrook are contained on this page: 'See som notes of Watercrook' and '{Papers}'.
[4] '7' appears to have been superimposed on '5'.
[5] Note the slight difference in chapel length.

1 Little Bell.
No chaple yard now nor formerly.
A School somes times Taught \ in the chapel / but no Sallary.
There was a chappel formerly which was faln into decay – to repareing of which Miles Troughton of Kendal – a Burgess Cordwender[6] – gave 3. Who only had one Close calld Yorkfield.
5 years since it was repard – this 1692. And som now Liveing can Remember prayers & Seates in the o[l]d chaple and prayers Read their by their Schoolmaster, having 4rge[7] of the P[arish] nothing a Vic[arage].

[Manor]
No court service.
Tythe ~~hay &~~ Corne in Kinde in dry Stooke. No Hay – nor nought for it.
Peates at Sinderbarrow 3m. west a Capella.
Iron tis thought in Helm or Natland fell ½ q. of m. a Capella E.

[Seals]

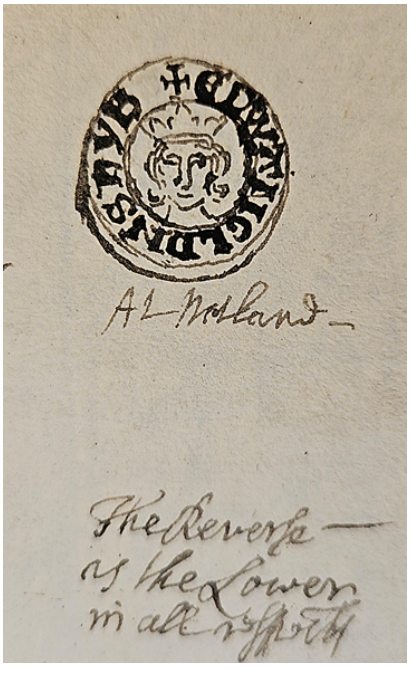


Figure 2.3vii.2. 'At Natland, the reverse as the lower in all respects.' II.79.

[6] Another form of the word, 'cordwainer': a shoemaker. *OED*.
[7] Quarterage of the parish: a payment made quarterly [by parishioners]. *OED*. It is similar to 'Quarter-pence', a payment by parents towards the schoolmaster's salary. For example, 'The parson, with the parish-officers, as assessors, were, on the appointment of each new master, to fix the rate of quarter-pence, which was to be not less than 2d. nor more than 4d. per week', this quotation taken from a speech by Lord Brougham in Parliament, 28 June 1820. See Hansard, 'The Education of the Poor' (Volume 2), column 77. https://hansard.parliament.uk/Commons/1820-06-28/debates/7d773019-40a4-4b69-9808-cae8fe59798c/EducationOfThePoor.



Figure 2.3vii.3. 'Found at Broadflat S. a Capella 12 score, in May 91.' II.79.[8]

[II.80]



Figure 2.3vii.4. 'Found near Mr Guyes ¼ m. N. a Capella. 16 years since.' II.80.[9]

[II.81]

{Natland Chappelry}
is bounded on the N. with the mother church of Kendal from which it is distant about 1 mile; on the E. with Hutton Chappell; on the South with Hersham parish; on the West with Underbarrow chapelry in this parish of Kendal. It is but one hamlet constable wick & Lordship ~~wich of~~ \ consisting / of about 30 families* & one entire manor ~~the tenements of which~~ \ in which / there is a parke yet remaneing, tho long since disparked, of about 80 acres ~~of ground~~ walled 6 quarters high,[10] which I looke upon as

[8] Placed underneath the second seal sketch.
[9] Henry Guy of Watercrook: see Eric Birley, 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook' *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94-104.
[10] A quarter is 9 inches, i.e. a quarter of a yard: https://www.kylesconverter.com/length/quarters-to-inches.

the ~~Maner House de~~ manner, the tennants of which being all customary ~~and heriotable and~~ \ the land was heriotable & the tenants / paying to their lord an abitrary fine, & for want of a manner house ~~amongst them made their~~ appearing at Sisars. and paying all ~~their~~ dues & dutyes as bondes: reaping, plowing, harrowing, mowing, bounder-dutyes, pout hens & the like ~~to Sisar Hall~~ till they bought themselves free of Sir Thomas Strickland[11] ~~60~~ \ 16 / years since at 60 years purchase;[12] so that now they are freehold[er]s \ new freeholders / {Sc. 16 ab anno 1691.}[13]

[Machell's Notes: II.81 and II.82]

*{3 held yet in tenancy under Mr Pricket; purchase of Sir Thomas}[14]

{They call their gravel which they mix with sand, sammell.}[15]

{Swinefoot clawes dryed & powdered (Mr Thomas Shepherd seman). Take for the stone.}[16]

[Watercrook]

[II.82]

{My journey from Watercrook}

West 1 q[uarte]r [mile] – Helston Leaths Hall (Note about a mile from the one fell to the other) Fertil at Kendal and banky, except N.E. end of the towne where the plane is above ½ a mile \ almost a mile / and here at Watercrooke where there is a pretty pice of plane ground[17] on which the Romanes may seem to have incamped 1[t] and afterwards to have built a colony.) Thence up the fell Bradleyfield. Thence down Barrow Fell to Underbarrow \ a pike of / rocks & wood, and on the right hand Harringtons of Witherslacke. Thence over an other lesser fell to Crosthwaite. Thence over the pow to [Blank] and so back to Crosthwaite Chapel. So back N.W. [to] Underbarrow Chapel: Ew,[18] well, juniper. Thence N. to Crooke \ chaple – seates:[19] Sir Xtopher Phillip[son].[20] / Thence East or S.E. to Kendal; thence S. to Watercrook.

[II.81]

[Watercrook. Narrative 1.]

The most remarquable place for antiquity that I finde in this, is at Watercrooke[21] {a Capella circa ½ m. and as much S. from Kendal church; which situation as it should seem the Roman soldiers having observed, tooke advantage of it, and placed a fort or station here}* ergo a piece of good land as most in this Barony, and a sweet situation which takes its name from the \ River / Kent almost surrounding it like \ after the manner of / an horse-shooe, as the River Eden doth som part of Appelby; which the Romans ~~takeing~~ \ ~~offering~~ /~~advantage~~ observing this sweet situation and advantagiouse crooke of the water ~~of~~ have ~~thought fit to~~ sat down and ~~placed themselves here~~ due builded a colony (the main fort (of which vide*) rather than in that larger plane which is at the N.E. end of Kendall.)

---

[11] Sir Thomas Strickland (1621-1694) of Sizergh (MP for Westmorland in 1661) and his wife, Winifred Strickland, née Trentham (1645-1725), were Roman Catholic Royalists who fled to France following the collapse of King James II's regime: see J. Callow, 'Strickland, Thomas John Francis (c. 1682-1740), Roman Catholic bishop of Namur and diplomatist'. *ODNB*.

[12] '60 years' purchase': sold at 60 times their annual rent as customary tenants, see George Miller, *On Fairness and Efficiency: the privatisation of the public income during the past millennium* (Bristol, 2000), 230.

[13] A note on MS.II.82 underlines this: '{Tenants of Natland now free.}'

[14] Originally placed on MS.II.82. See Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87, for more on Pricket, a lawyer; see also Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.387. For the Pricket pedigree, see *AWL*, 239.

[15] 'Sammel: hard loamy gravel', William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 140.

[16] A remedy for kidney stones etc. 'The stone: a hard morbid concretion in the body, esp. in the kidney or urinary bladder, or in the gallbladder'. *OED*.

[17] MS: 'glound'.

[18] Yew tree.

[19] Unclear word.

[20] Sir Christopher Philipson (1646-1709) of Crook Hall was deputy lieutenant of Westmorland. See Part 2 Ch.3ii: Crooke, II.99.

[21] MS: '~~And amongst these tenements there is one~~ The most remarquable place for antiquity that I finde in this is at ~~place of neck & called~~ Watercrooke.'

{Urnes a fathom about at Watercrook}
For that it has bin a Roman colony, station or hold, appears from several fragments of Ro[man] brick, \ part of / which was stampd with the tread of a Lyons paw. And Urnes, and earthen potts with romane floore potts, one of which had this broken inscription: SILLA forsan pro Drusilla; and Roman plaster upon the walls, which were facd on both sides & run with cement and stones and Rubish in the midle – Artificial stone of a great sise.

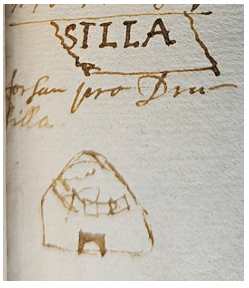


Figure 2.3vii.5. 'A piece of a pot with this broken inscription', and an 'oven' at Watercrook. II.81.

An oven underground, being build with bricking tile on the inside and being cupled into another, run over with cement ½ foot thick. I think the bottom paved with Br[ick] a foote broad & 3 inch thick

[Machell's Notes: II.81]

*{Q. Different. Colonia et Statio}[22]

[II.82]
som of which [bricks] were stampd with a Lyons pawe \ of which I saw one; / a floore of stone flags supported with collums made of art-ficiall stone & set upon an underfloore of Romane cement made with pounced Brick,[23] which I take to have bin som sort of sepulcher. ~~with this inscription thrown down & coverd with 3 other~~.

{Wall}
There were also in the walls great coines[24] of artificial stone as well of huen stone, which were in length [blank] in breadth [blank] in depth [blank] and are now in the N. corner of the granary end. The walls were about 3 foote thick: huen on the outsides but fild up in the midle with rubbish cem[ent] and unhuen stone; and the partician walls were plastered with three coates: the 1^{t} course cement 3 i[nch], the midle finer \ 2 in. / & the outmost finest of all about 1 inch well mixd with brick. Great stones at the oven mouth.

{Floore}
1. Roman cement floore
2. Pillars cast of Artificial Stone
3. Flaggs laid upon & supported by them.
4. Floores he sayes agane.
Then another roome with a Rom[an] floore layd in three course. The 1^{t}, cement of lime & sand with som pounced brick about 9 in[ch]. Then a course of Gr[a]vel & pebbles, about 4 [inch]. Then a course of true Rom[an] cement with great store of pounded brick in it, about 3 [inch]. In all 16 inches.

{Sinke}
And from hence went a sinke of the same like materials, being good Romane cem[en]t which held water in it as it were stone.

[22] See II.83.
[23] Pounced brick: Powdered brick. *OED*.
[24] Quoins.

{Repositories}
And from that, turning square a trough or spout made of hewnstone, \ in the second course / to another roome where was discovered a ~~course~~ \ row / of Ovens as they doe termed them: but were only Holes with mouthes like to Ovens, divided by a thin brick betwixt them, & stood in the form of a cimicircle, which I take \ to have bin / to be rather Repositories for the urnes and monuments of the disceased, though there was nothing att all remain'd in them. I saw there were also several \ fragments / urnes and \ earthen / plattens, amongst was one had written there \ SILLA / But before ~~these things~~ all this that hath \ bin / mentioned, there were diged up These Things or Remarqable [blank]

[II.83]

[Watercrook. Narrative 2.]

N.B. Query of Tim Bankes of Crookelands, Steward of Courtes in the Barrony. Master of Arts.[25]

At Mr H. Guyes[26] of Watercrooke, which is S. from the church about ½ a mile, there are the fou[n]dations of \ an / an old Rom[an] fort as may be discovered by a Great Bulwarke (where the markes of the Trenches do yet appear) 7 score yards square, wherein the foundations of houses are found in great abundance, which wee may conclude were demolished \ destroyd / by fier from the black / sooty colour of the mold casten up within these pr[e]cinct of the Fort, which is contrary to the Soyle of that Country.

It Standeth in a field call'd the Crooke, conteineing viii Acres \ about 60 yards from the dwelling house / and beside the Artificial Strength of it, is surrounded with water on every side except the South E., whence it is called Water Crooke.[27]
The Angles of this Fortification are rounded of[f] (more Romano than I have observed in other places \ at Kirkby Thore, Crackenthorpe & the Pi[cts] Wal /) and diagonal lines being drawn through the Square will point directly to the East, W. N. & S. so that the sides are S. East \ & / N. West; N. East \ & / South West.

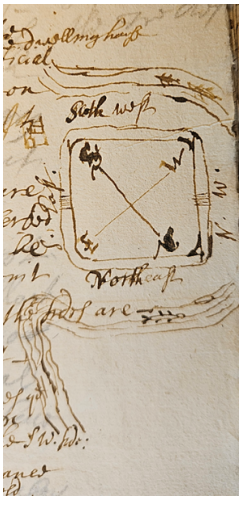


Figure 2.3vii.6. Watercrook Roman fort. II.83.

(Near the S. corner at 60 yards distance stands the now dwelling house \ calld Water Crooke, the Seat of &c. / flanking almost with the S.W. side) and near the N. corner at 70 yards distance are lately

[25] Scrawled in pencil at the top of the page.
[26] Henry Guy of Watercrook, see 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook', *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94.
[27] For a Roman inscription found at Watercrook in 1688 and recorded by William Nicolson, see Eric Birley, 'A Roman Inscription from Watercrook', *CW2*, 55 (1955) 46.

discovered the foundations of an old \ som old outer / Roman buildings \ 2 or 3 / in a brest – 1 extending in lengthw[ise] towards the S.W. with 3 roomes on a flooer of 5 yards square,[28] \ & fronting & / flankeing with the N. East side \ of the Great Romane fort / where several fragments of Roman Antiquities have bin discovered.

{Let this be last for the Inscription sake}
In the 1ᵗ roome, which lyeth N.E. was an Oven found, as they informed me, floored with Bricks of 1 f[oot] diameter & 3 inches thick, which they have imployd to the same use as formerly \ one of which was impressd of a Lyons paw as true and exact as if a Lyon had trod on the clay before it was baked. / But the arching was made on the inside \ concave / with thin Brick in tiles fixed one into another, and on the convex with Roman cement a foote thick, ~~so fixed them together~~ which so incorporated the whole mass together that ~~to stooke & to close them~~ no one single tile of whol and entire that they could procure ~~without breakeing~~, but brooke them in pieces.
Near the oven mouth \ were / 3 large flags caer\le/sly laid upon another, & the Lowest had \ the / inscription on the face Turned downe wards. The stone was flags – supported.[29]

[II.84][30]

That this has bin a Romane station and that the Legio Vi Victrix (the Victorious Legion) fixd in this place; & that Aelius mentioned both in the great Inscription and the little Altar, did sacrifice here.[31]



Figure 2.3vii.7. 'The Little Altar', 2 ft 1/2 high. II.82.

June 26 1692
The rest sent and I may [send] other collections of \ finds & / Inscriptions to Dr Mill of Edmund Hall Oxon to be returned.[32]

[28] Machell drew a square symbol, here.
[29] See *N&BI*, 105.
[30] Contains pencilled notes, most illegible, on Natland and Watercrook.
[31] A scribbled pencilled note, very unclear, particularly the word, Aelius.
[32] See Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3viii. Parish of Kendal. Selside and Skelsmergh]

[Selside and Skelsmergh]

[II.101][1]

In Penrith Road. Anciently Selshead: Selside* Chapel & Hall 3m. N.E. a Kendal.
{Fami[lies]} Selside – & Fawcet Forrest – 44.

[The Chapel]
Outside L[ength] 12 B[readth] 8.[2]

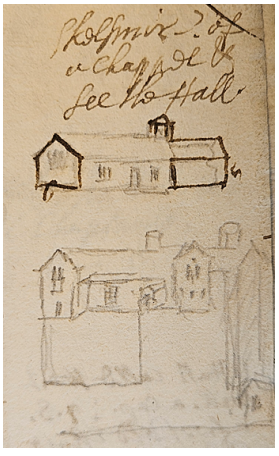


Figure 2.3viii.1. Selside Chapel and Hall. II.101.[3]

{? Dedicated}
The Dedication of this Chapel is not known, but there is a place in the Hamlet of Skelsmergh which belongs to & \ is / distant from this chapple about ½ a quarter S[ou]th West calld Patterdale,[4] whence it may be supposed \ to be / St Patricks Chapl. \ See the Rea[der]? / [5]

{2. House & Sallary}
There is no House belongs to the Reader: but ~~an ancient~~ Sallary of 5 marke \ 3: 6: 8 / per annum laid according to the Priority of Seates; so that those that sit within the quier pay 1s 8d per annum;[6] thence to the Bellroape 1s per House = & beneath the Bellroape 8d per House. {Mr Will. Thornborrow; Anth. Hall. Brackenrigg.}[7]

---

[1] Also numbered p.39.
[2] According to the sketch, 7 + 5 = the full length (12); '5' represents the length of the chancel.
[3] The chapel at Selside was described in 1709 as joined to cow-houses and stables at Selside Hall. The lower drawing appears to be a mixture of two attempts but must be the Hall with its cross-wings, so the top drawing represents the neighbouring chapel: see LANCAT, ARR/2/4/5/3, Faculty Cause Papers, c. 1709, 'Selside: petition to demolish and rebuild the chapel which is now ruinous; the present building is also joined to cowhouses and stables so the entrance to chapel has become noysome and offensive'. My thanks to Tony Cousins for this information.
[4] The Patterdales were fields on top of Skelsmergh Fell, where Watchgate water works are now situated.
[5] 'See the Chapel Reader.' Possibly Machell planned to check the dedication. Selside is dedicated to St Thomas.
[6] There is a blot over this figure. '1' is visible but might well have been changed to or from '2': unclear.
[7] Brackenrigg is a house in Selside, formerly a farm. The Hall family were occupants in the 17th century; see CASCAT, WDX 25, Whitwell and Selside. Land Tax 1647 etc. The 1647 Land Tax cites 'Robert Hall for Brackenrigg'.

{3. Patrons}
The Inhabitants Recommend a Reader to the Vicar of Kendal ~~Church~~; who has the Approbation ~~of him &~~ Confirmation of him.

4. Tithes}
Corne Tithe is payd in Kinde to ~~Trinity Coll~~ Mr Rowland Thornburrow of Me~~thap~~dup?[8] in Witherslack & Parish of Bethom: who payes a certaine Annual Rent of 3li 13: 4 to Trinity College in Cambridge for it (but doth not hold it by lease as they say, but by Inheritance. The Lady Thomasin Thornb[orrow] gave it by will to her eldest son Will. by the name of Tithe of Inheritance, & the lessee of the Rectory commensd a suit for it about 6 years agoe: but thought fit to let it fall.[9]
Hay money is paid to the Vicar of Kendal, with all other smal dues – Lamb 14d a Tythe Lamb. & wool in kinde to Sir John Otway – who farmes All the Rectory of the said College.[10]

[5. Bounder]
It is bounded on the East with Grarig Chapel: from which tis divided by Whin fell Beck: on the S. with Skelsmer\gh/ Chapl: divided by walls & waters. On the west it adjoynes on part of Skelsmergh – & the foote of Sleddal: divided from them by the outside of Catbarrow Wall – On the N. with Shap – & Orton parish in the Bottom of Westm'land; from the former of which (Sc. Shap) it is divided [by] Borrowbeck; & from the latter, Sc. Orton, by the same beck.

[Machell's Notes: II.101]
*{Skelsmir? Of a chappel & see the Hall.}[11]

[II.102]
{6. Division into Manors}[12]
It is divided into 2 Lordships – 1. Seshead[13] & 2. Fawcet Forrest:

{7. Tenure. Customary Fre Boones}
In Selside the Tennants are Customary; \ All but Mr Thornburrow \ who ret[ains] the demaine. / Thomas Cock is free[hold]/ \ & / as many as belong to Coll. Graham[14] are Arbitrary & Heriotable. But all Mr \ Rowland / Thornburrows \ Tennants / are at Fine Certaine (Sc. double the rent) excepting the Tenements of Brackenrig & Greengate Foote. And Mr Wilsons tenants are all Fine Certaine – Sc. an 8d fine – i.e. viii times double the Rent. The Wid[ows] pay the Heriots & have all the Estate their Husbands dyd ciesd of as Tenantright Land, so long as she continues in pure viduity.[15]

{Fawcet Forest}
The Tenants are Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable; But there are parcells ~~which Dispersd towards~~ which lye at Green \ Side / which pay noe Heriots \ nor Serv[ices] more than appear [at the Manor Court] / but [pay] a certaine free Rent amongst them all, of 12li per annum. These belong to

[8] Meathop Hall was a Thornburgh seat in the 17th century; for the Thornburgh family of Selside see *AWL*, 295.
[9] Lady Thomasin née Bellingham, wife of Sir William Thornburgh, d. 1582.
[10] Farmes = leases. Sir John Otway's reach is also mentioned in Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.359B); the Kendal chapelries of Longsleddale (Part 2. Ch.3vi, II.103), Burneside (Part 2, Ch.3i, II.91) and Hutton (Part 2, Ch.3iii, II.87); the parish of Beetham (Part 2, Ch.4, II.278); the Parish of Grasmere (Part 2, Ch.6, II.125-26); and the Parish of Windermere (Part 2, Ch.8, II.318).
[11] See Machell's Itinerary (Part 2, Ch.10, II.406); see also Blake Tyson, 'St. John's Well and Chapel, Skelsmergh: their location and present condition', *CW2*, 98 (1998), 156-67.
[12] For the text of a medieval deed relating to Selside see MS.IV.139.
[13] Machell might have intended to use an earlier version of the Selside name, e.g. Selsed(e) and Selshed(e).
[14] For Colonel Graham (Grahme), see Part 2. Ch.3vi, Longsleddale, II.104.
[15] 'As long as she does not remarry.'

Mr Graham & Forrest Hall (which has halfe of the forrest lying in [the] Demane) is the manner house which has bin in the Bellinghams time out of mind being their first Seat[16] when they came hither.[17]

{8. Lordship & Descent}
There are 3 Lords, each of which keeps a Court Barron, ~~&~~ \ whereof / the Forest is Court Leet & Barron – Sc. Rowland Thornburrow Esq. whose \ grandfather William / sold those Tenants – which Mr Graham has – to Sir James Bellingham: And those of Wilson, to Henry Wilson of Underley. ~~whose~~ And [Blank]* Son of Thomas, Son of Henry the Purchaser, doth now enjoy them.

{9. Manner Houses & Halls}
But the Rest he reserved ~~being intaled~~ with the Demaine & Manner house which he afterwards sold to his Cosan William Thornburrow, father of Frances, father of William, who now doth enjoy them; At w[hose] House the Tenants of Sleddall[18] formerly appeard \ & / Patton[19] & Whinfell (& som of Skelsmer belonging to Mr Rowland Thornburrow) did & do yet appeare at this Hall by the consent of the owner of it.
{1. Hall calld Whitwill,[20] a Capella ¼ q. S. A freehold Estate belong Mr W. Thornburrow after his mothers death; anciently the Thornburrows. 2 ew trees near the Hall} Cos[in] Thornburrow† \ workes / watches & silvere plate.[21]

{No Juniper. Raspberryes alias hawberryes. Strawb[erries] Turfes peat at hand & plenty, but in som parts scarce. No limeston but fetched from Skelsmer 1m. S., & coale from Regil. Rag stone – Fawcet Forrest manner. Slate a Blackish blew – ruff & heavy, 1m. N.W. on Whiteside‡.}

{10. Curiosityes}
Isabell Warriner of Bowthwate[22] – a Capella ¼ m. S.E. – dyed about 4 years agoe; being of the age of 106. & after she was 100 years old, she skaled \ all the / swathes ~~for a~~ \ in a day / that 2 mowers mew[23] & could thred a needle to her dying day having never usd spectacles.

The Dem[aine] is all called the Parkes & replenishd with wood & Deere in the mem[ory] of man.

[Machell's Notes: II.102]
*{q. If not the Land oner Harry.}
†{Pedigree.}[24]
‡See Shap Kirk Booke.
{Briam Thornburrow alias Sheepshanks in Kirkby Lonsdal. Picklock.}[25]

[16] Alan Bellingham (c.1517-1578) acquired and lived at Forest Hall, but the family had been in the area much longer. See Tony Cousins, 'Fawcett Forest', VCH Draft parish/township histories (2017), https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/sites/default/files/fawcett_forrest_draft_full_history.pdf
[17] A heading: 'Customs', has been left blank.
[18] Earlier name for Longsleddale.
[19] Paton.
[20] Whitwell.
[21] George Thornburgh, brother of William, was apprenticed in London as a Westminster watchmaker: see the Thornburgh pedigree, Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.404; see also LANCAT, DDTY/1/2/4: Lease of messuage and tenement at Lindall by George Thornburgh of Laisterfields, Westminster, co. Mddx, watchmaker etc. 19 Jan. 1704/5.
[22] Bouthwaite is still a Selside farm.
[23] In one day she spread out all the lines of hay that two mowers had mown; for skale/scale, see William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 141.
[24] See the pedigree in Machell's Itinerary (Part 2, Ch.10, II.404).
[25] This snippet of information, which relates more to Kirkby Lonsdale, probably occurred to Machell as he described the profession of his 'Cos Thornburrow'.

[Machell's Notes II.115]

In Kendal
Docker: & Dilliker f[amilies] = 25. In the proper place?[26]
Scalthwate-Rigg in the precincts of Kendal Church: f[amilies] 18. Q. in what Chapel – if not Selside.

[26] Docker and Dillicar belong with Grayrigg.

[Skelsmergh]

[II.119]

F[amilies]50.



Figure: 2.3viii.1A. '{St. Johns Well Running through Skelsmer Chaple from E. to W. Raspberry & Maden Hair grown out of the walls.}'

The Chapel {On the outside long 12 By 7½ [broad]} is Dedicated to St John Baptist; And a well springing out the East of it (which runns quite through the Chaple, into the High way which leads from Garth Row to Kendall) calld St John Well. It was standing about 50 years agoe, and the Runnell of the water was planked over & som Seates Remaneing in the quire – But has not been used in the memory of man. Yet The Great Bible was seen by the Informer {Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall farmer æt 70}. And an Image of St. John with a Great Long beard. {Tithe}

{Tithe}
They pay their Tithe thus – Corne in kinde to Lesses of Trinity College in Cambridge – farm'd by Mr Laburn of Witherslack – Hay S[ilver] nothing at all. Wool in kinde to the Rectory; for a Tithe Lamb 14^{d} &c. All other small Tithe to the Vicar of Kendall.

{Ind[owment]}
No House ever Belongd to the Chaplane nor no Chapl yard. But an ancient Sallary – The Sum unknown. So much an h[ouse] But whether proportion'd by Rent or Seates is not now [known]. Xtpher Gilpin (father of Thomas, who lived to 95 years of Age a strong & active man to the last) told his son Thomas That he had seen It. { Thomas Gilpin of Skelsmergh Hall farmer aet 70.} The Vicar is supposed chose the ch[aplain] whom they calld priest, & one Sir Uter Gilpin was chaplain here before the Reformation; as appears by Will drawn by his hand. {not viewd.}

{Bounder}
It was Bounded on the ~~N. with Selside~~ East with Grarig Chaple[1] (being divided from It) in The S. with ~~the manner~~ Scalthwaterig belonging to the Mother church of Kendal divided by Mint-Water. On the W. with Burnaside chapelry from which tis divided by Sleddall Water, allis Spret[2] (as is supposd by a

[II.120]

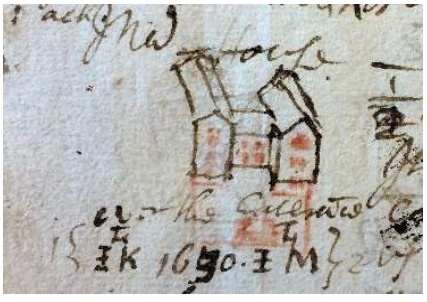
Bridge of that name as you go hence to Burnaside on the N. ~~& W~~ \ E. / Sledal & Selside: from the formers of which It is divided by Sledal Beck: & from the Latter – By the Bounder of Selside. & note That Skelmer were in the Note of the Chaplaines Sallary, by which it appears to have belongd unto them alone. according the foresaid Bounder.

{Lordship}
It is one Entire Manner or Lordship calld Skelmirgh[a 3] The Tenants are generally Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable; Except about 9 or 10 is Freehold Lands Sc ~~Doding Green~~ \ Mr Ro[bert] Stephensons, / Milbeck \ Mr Peter Mawson / Milbeck & Gilthwate Rig \ Lawyer Rawlinson, / Mast hill \ Thomas

[1] Chapelry.
[2] Sprint.
[3] i.e. Thomas Gilpin as before, aged 70.

Cook / and severall others. Gilthwate Rig is of the Marquis Fee & holds under the Queen. For Tenant Right estates the Widow has It all dureing her pure viduity.

{The Manor}
The Manor was anciently in the Labourns from whom a Parcell of the Tenants were transmitted to the Bellinghams of Levins; & by the late Mr Allan Bellingham to Coll. Graham: Another parcel to the Brathwates of Burnaside who hold them still. The Bellinghams kept a Court Barron ~~at any place~~ formerly in memory of […?] at the Chappell: & since the demolishing thereof, at any of his Tenants House. ~~But the Courtes were anciently kept at the Ha~~. The Manner House is Skelsmer hall a capella a ~~¼~~ ½ m. S. near a mire or moss on the S. West of It called the Car. Whence possible It was called Skelmire, & perhaps from Scales[4] formerly upon their common, which was formerly large. This House with the Demaine was Reteined by Mr Labourne when he sold the Tenants (who suffered for Popery in Queen Elizabeth's time),[5] & Is now the Joynter of Mrs Labourne[6] after whose discease It descends to Mr George Labourne, now of Wither Slack, the chief of that family.



Over the Enterance: J \ L / K 1690 J \ L / M
1. John Laybourne & Katherine his first wife.
2. For John & Mary his second wife.

Figure: 2.3viii.1B. Skelsmergh Hall.[7]

{Tarnes}
Brabbon Tarne belongs to Graham a capella ¼ S.E. L[ength] 7 score br[eadth] 7 score but much growne up now.
Great Tarn to Graham. Had a Eal arke. L[ength] 400 b[readth] 400 a capella S.E. ¼ [mile] stored with Tench, Eal & Roach. {[They]Water The Chap[elry?] well by help of a sleuce above tarnes 2 mils with a mile of the head.}

[Notes]
{Gilthwate Rig is an ancient h[ouse] formerly belongd to Mr Richard Ducket descended from Grarig – who sold it to ~~The~~ Edward Turner Alderman of Kendal who resold to Sir William Rallison, a lawyer, now one of the Lords Com[missioners] for the Broad S[eal.}
{John Gilpin of Garthwain[8] in this manor – livd to 100 years of age – he died about 40 years Ab Anno Domini 1692.}
{Meadow from 10[s] to 20 – Arable from Idem– Pasture = a. 8 to 12.[9] Free Stone in the River Mint Read [stone] a capella ¾ [mile] S. Peates scarce and far afield but the Halls moss bough[t] in Crook Dale. Hay Straw & Raspberryes. Lime stone plenty Rag [stone].}

[4] Scales were huts or shielings constructed for the watchers of cattle in summer: *OED*.
[5] Informant: Thomas Gilpin, as above.
[6] Jointure: The holding of property to the joint use of a husband and wife for life or in tail, as a provision for the wife, in the event of her widowhood: *OED*.
[7] The date appears as 1690, but has been altered. The hall is older than this. There is a C15 Pele tower, a late C16 south wing, a wing to the east of the early C17 and a later extension: https://historicengland.org.uk/listing
[8] Perhaps, 'Garthwham'.
[9] Meadow from ten shillings to 20 per acre per annum; arable, from the same; pasture from eight to twelve shillings per acre.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3ix. Parish of Kendal. Staveley]

Staveley Chapelry

[II.112]

[Notes]

Staveley Chapel[ry]
is Bounded on the East with Sleddal Chappel[ry] and is divided by the Ridge of Potter fell; on the S. with Underbarrow Chapel, divided by the Top of Rod-Rad (on which stands the signe of Rod-Rad but in Burnaside Chapelry; on the West with Crooke Chaple[ry], divided by \ the Ridge of / Brackenthwate fell; on the N. with Kentmire Chaple[ry], being divided by ~~Kno~~ \ Black / beck which runns by Milrig.

{Thinges of Note in Natur}
On Friday the 8 of July 1692, at Birkfield in Over Stavely – ~~as belief~~ e Capella E. 1m. {Richard Stephensons sons cow – a Quaker –} a calfe was calved, haveing 2 Heads – 4 Eyes – 2 Mouthes – & 3 Eares, the Heads being joyned together & the 2 ~~Head~~s Eares in the Midle Knit together by nature the Hollows inward, & seemd even down. It was with great difficulty pulld from the cow by the Help of Roapes & was alive, but the woman who assisted at it told me they killd it with working & helping the cow, which is now recoverd.[1]

There is a Parke called Staveley Parke wherein Staveley Hall stands, now all in Tenancy: Customary. ~~Arbitr~~ & Heriotable; & all the Lords have Tenents in it. Not replenishd in memory, but there are clean martes & wild cats, foxes, otters &c.[2]

Sheckles-Water, 11 score every way, is a Tarne – a Capella = 2m. N.E.; & lyes in 3 Lordships. Sc. Kentmer, Sleddal & Upper Staveley. Stored with Bass, Pikes, Eales – moore-game som.

{Ing-beck} has 2 heads: one at Hewgil a Capella 2m. N.W. Another – out of Applethwate fell in Windermer par[ish]. The head at Hewgil at High house* (formerly the Brathwates of Ambleside) runs thence S.E. to the Chaple of Ings on the westside; thence E. To Stavely, where it meets with Kent.

{Some Ewe at Burntknot. Store of Juniper; some Holly large – Raspberryes & Straw[berryes]} (& blea[berries] som).

Red stone none. Blew rag enough. Black blew Rag Slate – a Capella ½ m. W. at Rasell.
Turfe near but scarce. Meadow from 15 to 20s. Arable from 5 to 13s: 4d. Pasture from 3s to 6s.

[II.113]

Soyle: gravel.

[Machell's Notes: II.112]

*{Where the other branch meates it.}

[II.113][3]

A Paroch. Staveley Chaple

Ab Ecclesia N. & b[y] W. 4m.
{Bells.[4] Steple 4½. Body 27. Total 31½. Broad on the outside, 11. [Roof] lead.}

---

[1] Also noted on MS.II.113: '{Qu. of a Calfe Mo[ou]t[h]}'.
[2] MS: 'Not replenishd in memory, ~~But ther was \ is / if a place which~~.'
[3] Also numbered p.51. Note pencilled comments in *Figure 2.3ix.1*
[4] Three bells: *N&B1*, 140.



Figure 2.3ix.1. Staveley Chapel. II.113.

Fam[ilies] – Over Staveley 31
Nether Staveley 38
A pretty village; neat chaple in a plane; church yard a † at the gate, & a s[tone] bridge hard by.[5]

{In the East wind[ow]}



{The 1. \ being in the midle light [of the] E. w[indow] / is Standley. Sc. Ar[gent] a Bend – chargd with 3 Bucks, head cab[ossed] Or. & a mullet in chiefe for distinction &c. with its quartering impaleing Harrington.
The 2. Is Parr? in the 2nd light of the S. quire window; & there was another of these lately in the 3rd light of the East window.
The 3. Is in the South window next to the quire; & so is the 4th. And in the opposit window on the North side are 2 of the same; as at fig. 4th.}

The Dedication of this Chaple is not now known: But from this Inscription about one of the Bells I take it to ~~be~~ \ have / be[e]n St. Margarets.

\ Margeretam / CONCREPAT Illa Divam voce sonoram.[6]

And about the Greatest is writ: in the Name of God Amen – 1589.
The Communion Table is raled in, & there is besides a Pulpet, an Homily Desk on the left hand without the Quier dooer – octangular with Rale & Ballister in the forme of a Pulpet; with a Turneing Desk upon it for the Booke to Lye on.[7] \ It was made in 1618 & the Com[munion] T[able] Raled. / The walls are in Canonical Repare and so are all things about it.[8] But the Seats are old, & the floore of Blew rag[stone] – like unto marble, but in uneven & unequal courses.

Figure 2.3ix.2. Arms in Staveley Chapel East Window. II.113.

[5] The MS here also contains a pencilled phrase, 'a village; a † afore the steeple'.
[6] 'Let it make Blessed Margaret resound with its sonorous tones.' The modern church (consecrated 1865) is dedicated to St James, but the older church, dedicated to St Margaret, was founded by Sir William de Thweng in 1338; only its tower (1589) and churchyard remain, Hyde & Pevsner, 628-29.
[7] See Machell's turning table in his study at Kirkbythore: Part 1, Ch.14, I.537.
[8] Canonical repair: 'in conformity with, or having reference, to ecclesiastical edict or canon law'. *OED*.

50^{s} every good Friday given to the poore of Nether Staveley chapel chiefly by Mr Fleming; and Householders chargd upon Broadfold Ibidem – is 10^{s} per Annum yearly to the poore of the Brow & Gate chargd upon Longclose by [blank]

(William Harrison of Bampton Schoole – Curate – or Chaplaine – shewd me a pice of fire stone found in Borradale fells in Cumberland.)[9]
{The inhabitants cho[o]se [a curate or chaplain] & the vicar of Kendal approves.} There is no Dwelling house belonging him, but an Sallary \ ancient Ras'd by Seates / of XX nobles (6:13:4), and 10^{s} per annum (given by Hen[ry] Nicholson late of Pik'd-how in Over Staveley) for a yearly sermon on St. Thomas Day.[10] But hee teacheth School in the Chappel by permition; for which he has 1^{s} per Quarter, & of some 18^{d} as they can agree. But for the Tithes: they are payable to the Rectory & Vickaridge of Kendall thus.

{Division}
There are in this Chappelry,
3 Courtes Baron kept by 3 Severall Lords; & the Tennaments lye intermixt & dispersed;[11]
& Thre Hamlets belonging to it. Sc. Upper Staveley & Nether Staveley: in Mr Brathwate Poem called Staflay – from a woman laying down her Staff.[12] The 3rd, Hugil. & the Tenants intermixd.
[1.] The chiefe Lord is the King: & his Tenants are of the Marquess fee. (The rest hold?) all customary, fine certaine – 1d at the Death of the Queen, & 3 penny, i.e. 3ple[13] the Rent at death or alienation of the Tenant, & Heriotable; & Has Waife & Stray in that Lib[erty].
[Informant] Mr Gay.

[II.114]

2. Is Coll. Graham, who purchased late of Mr Allane Belingham which family had long enjoyd them; & are all Customary, Arbitrary & Heriotable (No Boones) – No Freeholds.
3. Mr. Brathwate of Burnaside; purchased of Gilpins of Kentmer Hall, as is reported about 100 years agoe. No freeholds – but all Customary fine arbitrary & Heriotable. & No Boones. All pay Greenhew,[14] & the Lords clame the wood – & they have House Hedge & Harrow boote,[15] & crop for the fire on their own Tenements. They all take Wafe in their Respective libertyes: & the Sherif of Westmorland has clamed of late – and appointed a Deputy.

[9] William Harrison appears in CCED as schoolmaster at Staveley in 1677 and curate there from 1712. He resigned in 1724. CCED.
[10] 21 December.
[11] A margin comment here is largely obscured but contains the words, 'William Rob … in Staveley'.
[12] Richard Brathwate (also spelled as Brathwaite, Brathwait and Brathwayte) c.1587/8-1673, poet. His father, Thomas, was a barrister and recorder of Kendal, who inherited the family estate at Burneside. Richard Brathwate was his second surviving son. In two of his poems, Brathwate speaks of Kendal as his 'native place.' According to Anthony Wood, he matriculated as a 'gentleman's son' and 'became a commoner of Oriel College A.D. 1604, aged 16'. He remained at Oxford for several years, enjoying a scholarly life, until his father desired him to take up the law. He was sent to Cambridge, and on leaving he removed to London, where, according to his own account in 'Spiritual Spicerie: containing sundrie sweet tractates of Devotion and Piety' (1638), he devoted himself to poetry and dramatic writing. After his father's death in 1610, he inherited his estate. For this account, and a select list of his poetry, see Edmund Gosse, Braithwaite Richard, *Dictionary of National Biography* (Archive Edition), *1885-1900.* Vol. 6. See also his volume of Latin and English doggerel verse, *Barnabæ Itinerarium, or Barnabee's Journal*, under the pseudonym 'Corymbæus' (1638; reprinted as *Drunken Barnaby's Four Journeys to the North*, during the 18th century). Brathwate's authorship of this work was ascertained by Joseph Haslewood, who edited the work in 1818.
[13] Triple.
[14] Greenhew: the right to cut greenery for fodder.
[15] House, hedge and harrow boots were 'estovers': the right to cut wood for repairs. The Old English word for estover was bote or boot, meaning 'good'. The various kinds of estover were house-bote, cart or plough-bote, hedge or hay-bote, and fire-bote: *The Tradesman's Lawyer and Countrey-man's Friend* (London, 1703), 206.

[Houses]

~~The Old Hall~~ ~~calld~~ Staveley Hall \ in Over Staveley, / a Capella ¼ m. N. has bin called the Manner House of Upper Staveley, which now is falln – nothing being standing but the wall which belongs to Mr. Will. Birket being on his Tenement – & in that part which belongs to the Crown.

Another calld the Old Hall in Nether Staveley, a Capella 1m. S.W. Nothing standing but the vaults & walls – which belongs to Mr Brathwate: & another calld Hall within 2ce[16] 12 Score [yards], with a Demane in the Libertyes of which both Halls are conteined. & belongs Mr. Brathwates. This Estate belonged once to the name of Carus. And the Court is kept here for Mr. Brathwate or at any of his Tenants houses.

There are other Houses calld –
In Nether Staveley
[1.] John Philipson of Calgarth Esq. at Hollin How where a Hall of that name.
(2. E[s]q[ui]r[e] Bra[thwate] a Law[yer])
3. Xt[opher] Philipson of the Ashes & Roberth both freeholds, but no Hall.
4. Henfield – Broadfold no H[all].
5. Henry Mackreth – Crag & Sandy Hill, no H[all.
6. Robert Chamber Goosegreen Yeat, no H[all].
7. Roger Harrison of Stockbridge No Hall.
8. Rob. Harrison – Moss Side No H[all].
9. Mr Gay \ Far / Fair Banke, an Hall,[17] & Mr Sands [owner] \ of / the other halfe, by marriage of the d[aughter] & h-eir] of Mr. Will. Knipe.

[In Over Staveley]
Freholds in Over Staveley – none.

In Hugil. Freeholds:
1. Peter Birket – Grestgarth.
2. Roger Harrison – Ruston.[18] Qu. of whom they Hold.

[II.472A]

[De Thweng; Market]

De Thweng[19] {Tome 2.[20] of Dugdalls *Baronage*, p.30.}[21]

2. Marmaduke de Thweng brother & heir of Rob. Summond to Parliament 35. Ed. 1. [1306-1307] till the 16. Ed. 2. [1322-1323]. Justifibly dyed that year.	= Isabell d. of Will. de Ross of Igmanthorp in Com. York.	Robert de Thweng.
|		
William to whom his father gave Lands in Hesslington, Kirkeby in Kendal, Warton & other places with the manor of Thweng. 16. Ed. 2. [1328-1329] ætatis 30.		

[16] Twice.
[17] Machell's informant, see II.113, above.
[18] Now known as High and Low Reston, *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[19] William de Thweng [died 1340-41], lord of the manor, owned a park and a hall at Staveley: *N&B1*, 138.
[20] Volume 2.
[21] For references to the de Thweng family, see Part 2, Ch.1, Burneside, II.92 and fn.

{Staveley made a market town 2. Ed. iij. [1328-29]}

This William Thwengs died in the 2nd of Ed. 3. Obtained a grant for a mercat every week upon the Friday. And a fair yearly on the Eve day & morrow of St Luke the Evangelist[22] – at Staveley in Kendal in Com. Westmorland. And he was summond to Parliament 12. of Ed. 2. [1318-19]: but never afterwards.[23]

[22] Feast of St Luke: 18 October.
[23] Nicolson and Burn referenced John Denton when reproducing some of this information (see *N&BI*, 140), but it can also be found here, in Machell II.472A. Machell owned a copy of John Denton's MS: see MS.VI.146 -76.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 3x. Parish of Kendal. Underbarrow]

Under Bar[row]

[II.109]

Ab Ecclesia W. 1m.½. See my Paper. Fam[ilies] 74.

[II.111]

[Name][1]
{Barrow […][2] Barrow? Barrowby.
Brough Brou.
Thorow. Through. Throw.
Thornbrough, brow, burrow}

Underbarrow Chapel[ry] Bounder
2m & ½ West ab Ecclesia.[3] Joynes on the East to \ West part or Lordship / Kendal, the mother church; on the South to Brigstere in Kendal; West on Crosthwate in Hersham parish; North on Crooke and Staveley Chaplryes.

{Underbarrow Chappel in Kendal 19. Oct. 91.}

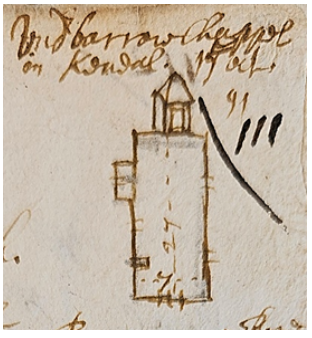


Figure 2.3x.1. Underbarrow Chapel. II.111.

Sall[ary] xi^{li} per Annum at so much a seate \ ab antiq. / a certaine rent upon every house.

[In the Chapel yard are] 6 ewe trees, 3 on each side. & one before the Gate, 24 yards in Diameter paced underneath.[4] & 3 or 4 Seates one above another like the staires of a Crosse.[5] These trees doe so shelter and over shadow the Chappell & yeald such a verdure & gloomy shade that it makes it looke \ solemn / like a place of devotion, and if it were a burying place (as it is not) might well be called a gloomy sepulcher.[6]

~~Tis~~ Only one Hamlett belong \ to this chaple / & the Tenents are part the Queens who Answer at Kendal and part Mr Grahams, who Answer at Hels[ing]ton Leathes. & the Queens [tenants pay] \ Fine / Certain. The other are {as in Crosthwate} so that that there is no Manner House; nor Houses of note

[1] Underbarrow: 'under beorg'; (land) under the hill. The hill is one of those like Knott or Helsington Barrows, forming the long ridge between Underbarrow Beck and the Kent, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[2] Followed here by three unclear words, 'a Bord …'
[3] See II.109, where the chapelry is stated as being 1½ miles from the parish church.
[4] MS: 'pavcd underneath.' Paced or paved?
[5] Machell appears to refer to a Calvary Cross: in heraldry, a cross set on three steps. *OED*.
[6] Scored-through notes on this page, relating to the above, are, '~~A Gloomy Sepulcher~~; ~~X The Chapel len 27 broad 7~~.'

{excepting 2} \ tho many fair houses, som of which have assumed the naim which may seem / to hav bin a Manner House but hath no tenants now appear here.[7]

Cunswick

E. a Capella 1m.½; now hath no tenants. Now Mrs Bradleys dureing her life; is then Mrs George Labourne of Witherslack \ in which name fam[ily] it hath long continued. / A little above the house northwards is a Tarne.

Men of note

[1.] {Bishop Labourn; sent about by King James 2. Brother of George.
2. Another they say like to be Cardinal sed q[uery]!} [8]

Tranthwate

E. a Capella ¼ m. A small estate with som \ few / tenants which belong to \ one / Thomas Bateman & \ hath bin pretty / long in the name, but of no great accounte.

Mangy-well.[9]

N.W. a Capella 1 quarter [mile]. Cures the Itch.[10]

The foundation of a chaple within 3 yards of it. This has bin an Hermitage (as I suppose) in the Times of Popery.

This abounds with Juniper instead of whins all over the Lordship – & hath a Long-Skar which extends its selfe from N. South on the Top of a very high mountaine; which I suppose has bin calld Barrow – corruptly from Burrow, whence our Brow, & has given name to the place which lyes beneath it calld Under Barrow. A little below this notable precipice is an Long Hutt[…][11] of wood, which belongeth to Mr Grahame \ presently to Mr Bellingham; / and here and there are divers little Tufts of Trees, with many Hollyes, Ewes & the like below in the chapelry, which being intermixt with \ craggy / rocks \ which are there very plentifull, and pieces here [&] there of green ground / makes it very delightfull on a sun-shine day. But how \ well / it becomes it[s] winter garment I cannot tell.

[7] The text here is very disjointed; the last word is unclear.

[8] The history of the Leyburn (Labourne, Layburne) family parallels difficulties experienced by the Roman Catholic Church in England in the 17th century. Cunswick-born John Leyburn, President of Douai College in 1672, served as James II's Catholic vicar apostolic and bishop from 1685 to 1688, during which time, he organised the funding of Catholic chapels, clergy and education. In July 1687 he began a national tour to dispense the sacrament of Confirmation to Catholic laity. This involved 12 confirmations at Corby in Cumberland, 23 at Greystoke, 28 at Sizergh, 37 at Dodding Green near Kendal, and 161 at Witherslack: see Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c. 1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 119-120. As Alison Wright has remarked, 'It gives an idea of how close-knit this community was that only six of the sponsors of the communicants mentioned out of the 45 on his progress were not related to him in some way, or neighbours in the North West or had not been educated at Douay.' Alison Wright, 'Loyalty and Tradition II: Networking among the north-western Catholic Gentry, 1640-1720: The Case of the Layburnes', *CW3*, 14 (2014), 103-24, at 113. The efficiency of Bishop Leyburn's social and political networking in 1687 can be gauged from *The Diary of Dr Thomas Cartwright, Bishop of Chester commencing at the time of his elevation to that see, August M. DC. LXXXVI. And terminating with the visitation of St. Mary Magdalene College, Oxford, October M. DC. LXXXVII.* (Camden Society, London, 1843). The last Leyburn to inherit Cunswick was another John Leyburn. He joined the 1715 Jacobite rising at Preston, where he was taken prisoner. In London, he was tried and attainted for treason, although not executed. See Alison Wright, *The Layburnes and their World circa 1620-1720, The English Catholic Community and the House of Stuart*, PhD Thesis (University of St Andrews, 2002), 25-27.

[9] Mangy: suffering from, or having the appearance of suffering from, the mange; of the nature of or caused by the mange; formerly also, scabby. *OED*.

[10] The itch: a contagious disease in which the skin is covered with vesicles and pustules, accompanied by extreme irritation, now known to be produced by the itch-mite; scabies. *OED*.

[11] Insecure transcription; possibly a shortened form of a longer word.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 4. Beetham]

[II.265][1]

Bethom Parish {In Kendal Barony}

[II.276]

[Beetham Church]



Figure 2.4.1. Beetham Church. II.276.

L. 36 outside. B. 19 outside. 2 Rows of 6 p[illars.] 3 Bells.

[II.267]



Figure 2.4.2. 'In the High Quire on the South Side in wainscot: F.D. 1614'. II.267.



Figure 2.4.3. 'In the East window of the great Quire'. II.267.

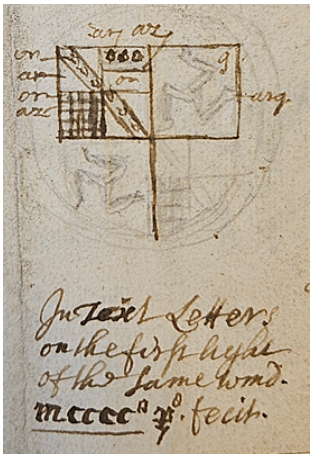


Figure 2.4.4. 'In the E. Window of the S. Ile quire. In Text Letters on the first light of the same window'. II.267.

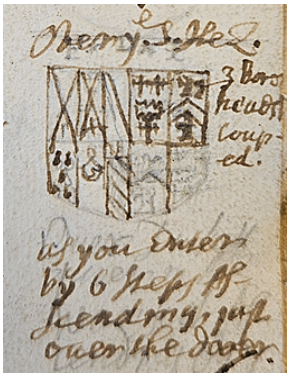


Figure 2.4.5. 'Over the S. Ile Q. as you enter by 6 steps Ascending, just over the dooer. 3 Bores heads couped'. II.267.



Figure 2.4.6. On the South Side. II.267.[2]

[2] Sir Thomas Middleton of Middleton Hall and Anne Beetham, his wife, c.1490. The effigy was badly damaged in 1647, see Hyde & Pevsner, 150.



Figure 2.4.7. 'In a midle window in the S. Ile.' II.267.

Note. A Brown Bulls head errased with a Ducal coller is in several Quarries of this window.



Figure 2.4.8. Beetham Church memorials. Foot of II.267.

This Pendent Coate is in the 2nd window on the North Side Ally. In which allso I Read These names.

Rogerus Lewyns | in artibus magister[3] | Reginaldus Lewyns | in Theologia bachalar'[4] | Jacobus Lewyns | vicarius de Cantley.[5]

And on another fragment beneath it.

Elizabetha Lewyns. | Isbella. Sebolla. Margareta. Edwardus. Johannes.[6]

[II.269]

The church is dedicate to Saint Leoth, or Lithe*.

{A Proverb: To St Lithe of Bethom, with many man Lates – from coming Pilgrimage for their absent friends.}[7]

[3] 'Master of Arts'.

[4] 'Bachelor of Theology.'

[5] 'Vicar of Cantley'.

[6] See Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.390, commenting on the name/meaning of Lewyn: 'Upper Levins Hall formerly writ (as I gather from the Inscriptions in Bethom church windows) Lewyns {q. le-vines – but it is writ in Ed. 3. time, Levens, Sc. Inq. in Part General} & belonging to an \ ancient / family That tooke name from Hence.'

[7] Nicolson and Burn have little to say on this, except, 'The church, according to Mr Machell's account, is dedicated to St Leoth or Lyth, otherwise called Lioba or Liobgytha; but according to Mr Brown Willis it is dedicated to St Michael. It is a vicarage in the patronage of the crown and in the presentation (under the crown) of the chancellor of the duchy of Lancaster.' *N&B1*, 217-18.

It is a neat building – Ruf cast all over on the Out Side; & pla[s]terd within with sentences &c.[8] – & is decently kept. The Church yard is pretty spatiouse & plane considering the country; and the places adjacent, notwithstanding the craggy fell which lyes above it towards the west, are very delightfull by reason of the woods & water.

The Parsonage House is on the N.E. side of the Church yard; which was formerly calld the College of St Maryes in Eccles[ia], & belongd to the monastry of St Maryes Yorke. But at the Desolution in the Time of King Hen. 8 it was held to the Crown. It is said that King James 1^{t} bestow'd it upon the Duke of Lenox – who Lett it in Lease to the Labournes of Wilder Slack; & was afterwards purchased \ in / to a fee farme by Sir Francis Ducket \ to his own use / {4^{0} Jacobi}[1606-07], paying yearly to the Crown therefore – 25^{li}, and to the vicar 13^{li} per Annum, & is now in the hand of Mrs ~~Hilton~~ \ Elizabeth / Hilton, widow \ and sometimes / Relict & 3^{t} wife of James Ducket of Grarig Esq. who[se] father Anthony sold of[f] The Tithe Barne of Farleton to the Wilsons of Underley of Helslack & Storth \ to Hugh Tomlinson, Yorke, who sold it / to Mr Ralph Buskell. & Whatside Tithe Barne he gave to Will his Eldest Son, by the 2nd ventor;[9] who sold it to John Girlington of Thurland-Castle in Lancs. Esq.
The College extended to above the dove cote as by the foundations doth yet appeare; and the old Vicaridge House, to which a new house (lately built by Mr Hilton) is now annexed, stood behind the old Parsonage House adjoyning unto the Church yard wall[10] {in memory.} But the Vicar now has not any House but what he farmes in another Town; Nor Church yard nor Glebe – nor so much as Smal Tithe, but surplice fees \ only /and the said salary. The King present to it.

[Machell's Notes: II.269]
*{See the *Aurea Legenda*}.[11] Lioba or Liobgytha. See Cressys *Ch. History of Britain*, lib. 24, cap 4, p.626.[12]

[II.274B]

The Indowment & patronage of the Vicars of Bethom: the Vicary of Bethom Contested

[II.274A]

May 18 1668
The Inhabitants of Bethoms Case[13]
The Rectory of Bethom fell into the hands of the Crown in K. Edward the 6th [1547-1553] upon the disolution of the Chantry of St Maryes of York, after which time the King had and his successors hath to this day the presentation to the Vicarage; which vicar stands charged with first fruits 13^{li} 7^{s} 6^{d} & Tenths 1^{li} 6^{s} 9^{d}; Subsid[i]es 2^{li} 8^{s} 0^{d}, besides pensions synodales and proccurations; which argues the vicarage to be endowed*. That the Rectory continued in the hands of the Crowne till the 4th yr King James [1606-07]; the Crowne Leaseing it from 21 yeares to 21 yeares under the fee farme rent of 35^{li}

[8] At this time, parish church interiors were often adorned with painted religious texts, e.g. Grasmere, Kendal, Beetham and Kirkby Lonsdale. See Andrew White, '"For his extraordinary paines in beutifying the church." The work of James Addison of Hornby, church painter', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 191-200.
[9] Or 'venter'; an obsolete word meaning one who sells or offers for sale; a vendor. *OED*.
[10] MS: 'And the old \ Vicaridge / House is now annexed stood behind the old Parsonage House ~~in~~ adjoyning \ unto / the ~~Court w~~ Church yard wall.'
[11] 'See *The Golden Legend.' Aurea Legenda* was a collection of hagiographies of the greater saints of the medieval church, written c.1260 by Jacobus de Voragine; it was one of the first books printed by William Caxton in English, appearing in 1483 and reaching its ninth edition in 1527: see Sherry L. Reames *The Legenda Aurea: A Re-examination of its Paradoxical History* (Madison, Wisconsin, 1985).
[12] The notes are not in Machell's hand and the style resembles William Nicolson's. 'Cressy's *Ch. Hist. of Britt.*' refers to Serenus Cressy, *The Church-history of Brittany* [Britain] *from the Beginning of Christianity to the Norman Conquest under Roman Governours, Brittish Kings, the English-Saxon Heptarchy, the English-Saxon (and Danish) Monarchy, from all which is evidently demonstrated that the present Roman Catholick religion hath from the beginning, without interruption or change been professed in this our island, &c.* (1668). St Lioba was a mid-8th century English nun; sometime after carrying out a missionary journey to Germany for St Boniface, she established a religious community there: see Robert Ellsberg, *Blessed Among Us: Day by Day with Saintly Witnesses* (Minnesota, 2016), 559. The church at Beetham is now dedicated to St Michael and all Angels.
[13] Not in Machell's hand, apart from margin queries.

per annum, paying 13li per annum to the Vicar as an Augmentation to the vicarage; and it was constantly leased by these words ~~totali~~

> "Totam illam Rectoriam de Bethom in comitatu Westmer[iae] et terris Gleab[alib]us et al[ijs] profittuis eidem Rector[i] Spectand[is]."[14]

By the grant the 4th yr K. James to Sir Francis Duckett, the Rectory is granted – reserving the antient Rent and payment to the Vicar – by these words.

> "Omnia et Singula Capella Cemiter[ium] mess[eria] molendin[um] Domos, Edificia Structur[as] horrea, stabula, hort[os], pomaria, Gardina, shopas, Cellar[ia], Sollar[ia], Terr[as] tenendum prat[a] pascua pascuar[ia] commun[ia] Terris Gleab[alibus], vias vaccua sum[ma] vasta jampna et Bruer[ia], moras moriscos aquas piscarias piscares boscos subboscos decimas Gerbar[um] Blador[um], Granor[um] et feni et lana[e] Lini et Cannabis et agnellorum nec non oblationes et obventiones ac omnes alias decimas quascunq[ue] tam majores quam minores."[15]

The K[ing] within this 4 yeares, presented one John Brockbank Clerke to the Vicarage;[16] who will be found to have it by reason of the great Impositions that are annually upon it. The K. could but grant quantum in se;[17] he could not grant the Church rights, whether it were possible to quash the grant in toto or in parte,[18] if the Vicaridge was endowed with lands, tythes or other rights. The Kings grant […][19]

[II.274B]

The Kings grant cannot take them away. But til it be known what the Endowment of the Vicaridge is, I cannot give any certane opinion, but conceive it is fit to search for the Endowments of the Vicaridge, which, appearing the granting of things there to belonging in the Patents, cannot prejudice the Vicar. Fran: Lindley.[20]

[Machell's Notes: II.274A]

{*I doubt that soe in tem. H. 8?}[21]

[II.270]

[Beetham Parish]

{Tithes}

The Tithes are in the said Mrs Hilton, or rather in feoffes in Trust for raseing Portions to her 3 Daughters \ which she had / by Mr Ducket as it [was] appointed by their father – and the over-plus to goe to the mother.

Corne hay & wool, Salt, fish, pigg, goose, & all but Lamb is payd in kinde, except som places where they pay a modus;[22] & for their Tithe lambes they pay 7d a piece. {T.}

---

[14] 'All that Rectory of Bethom in the County of Westmorland and with its glebe lands and other income to be expected by the said Rector.'

[15] 'All and singular along with the chapel; churchyard, harvests, mill, houses, buildings, structures, barns, stables, potagers, orchards, gardens, workshops, store-rooms, upper storeys, arable lands, tenant-holding, meadows, pastures, common pastures, along with the glebe lands; ways, bare heights, wastes, furze-brakes, heaths, moors, marshes, waters, fisheries, fishings, woods, underwoods, tithes of sheaves, standing corn, grain, hay, wool, flax, hemp, lambs; also all offerings and income and all other sorts of tithes whatsoever, both greater and smaller.'

[16] John Brockbank[e] was ordained deacon in 1662, priested in 1663, appointed vicar of Beetham in 1664, appointed curate of Witherslack chapel in 1671 and is also recorded as schoolmaster at Witherslack Grammar School from 1684 to 1701. His CCED record ends in 1701.

[17] 'So far as in him lies'.

[18] 'In whole or in part'.

[19] Two lines of text at the foot of this page have been scored through; much is illegible because foot the page has been cut through. This was clearly intentional because the text continues seamlessly on II.274B; this time in Machell's hand.

[20] This last is apparently the opinion of learned counsel (Francis Lindley), but written in Machell's hand.

[21] Margin note in Machell's hand.

[22] Modus. In full, *modus decimandi*: a method of paying tithes other than the one which is usual or prevalent; especially a money payment made in lieu of a tithe. *OED*.

{Bounds} [23]
It is bounded on the East with Hutton Roofe \ in K.[24] / & Burton parish, which runs quite through ~~Burton~~ touching on Hutton Roofe. Which part is called Farleton & Akebanke. On the South it is hem'd in with Warton Parish in Com. Lanc.[25] – & divided from it as in the Generall Bounder of Westmorland. On the West, with Cartmel in Lancashire, by the said Bounder. On the North with Heversham parish – from which it [is] separated – from Powbrig to Bachouse Neuke by a streight line. & so by the like, to Milthrop Bridge – thence to Abs Well by the Water Beethae.[26] Thence ~~to~~ by Levens Close & Belliside hedge to Akenthwate Land,[27] which land follows to Whasset Yeat; Thence by the Ringd Okes of Bethom Lordship \ to / Overthwate Bridge.

{Division}
It is divide into the Preci[n]cts of the Mother Church and the Chappelry of Witherslack aliis Wilder Slack.
In Bethom are 3 Lordships:
1. Bethom ~~wher~~ within 40-yard of the church on the S. side.
2. Haverbrack – wherein the Church stands.
3. Farleton – E. from the Ch. 2m.
And in the Chappelry ~~Ease~~ the said One:
4. Sc. – Witherslack – N.W. 4 miles.

Rosemary Generall [in the parish]

[Arnshead Tower]
There is also a Place calld Arnshead Tower 2m½ SW ab Ecclesia. The Earle of Darbyes.[28]
N.B. Arnshead[29] Tenants appear now at Bethom but anciently there was \ & yett is / a Tower House calld Arnshead Tower with Demane Lands belonging to it,[30] now Let out in Lease for Lives by the Earle of Darby, lord of the same: to whose Ancestors it was given on {forfeiture of Sir Thomas Broughton, who had Wither Slack also – But takeing up Armes with Martin Swarth (whence Swarthmoore near Ulverston in Furness) & advancd as tis said as far as Trent,}
[II.271][31]
{they were discomfited; he, flying, dyed in obscurity & his Estate was Leased. Some will needs [have] him to buried in the Common of Witherslack at a place calld Broughton Stone.}[32]

{Arnside had Deere 12 years agoe. Wild cats. Goates in Arnside. Brocks. Foxes.}[33]

[23] Here Machell has placed a compass drawing with the church at the centre. Although this was his usual practice when describing parish bounds, such sketches are only occasionally reproduced in this edition.
[24] Kirkby Lonsdale.
[25] 'The county of Lancashire'.
[26] River Bela.
[27] Ackenthwaite.
[28] In the MS, this sentence appears on II.271.
[29] Arnside.
[30] Arnside Tower was burned down in 1602; see Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 65.
[31] Also numbered p.39.
[32] Machell is referring to the Battle of Stoke Field, 1487, in which Sir Thomas Broughton and other English landowners sought, with the Earl of Lincoln and German troops under Martin Swartz, to replace Henry VII with a usurper (Lambert Simnel). The main army landed at Furness, pitching its tents at Ulverston near Swarthmoor. Swarth moor means 'black moor' (see *Westmorland Place-Names*), though Machell derived it from the man, Swartz. Sir Thomas Broughton and Swartz were killed in the ensuing battle of Stoke Field, but a rumour spread that Broughton had escaped to live in concealment among his tenants at Witherslack; hence Machell repeated the local story that Broughton had been buried on Witherslack common. See a longer version of this tale in William Howitt, *Cassell's Illustrated History of England II* (London, 1858), 82-83.
[33] There are two more entries here, which appear to be 'Gentes' [perhaps Goates] and 'Martsil.' These creatures have not been identified, though Machell frequently referred to 'martes', i.e. martens or polecats [otherwise known as pine martens]. *OED*.

[Lordships]

1. Bethom Lordship
F[amilies] 85. Hale f[amilies] & Whasset 39. \ both a Towne. /
The College. A Schoole built 60 [yards] S. from the Church. Built out \ of the use of the / Church Stock – about 1663 – & the Sallary at present is the use of 100$^{li.}$ let out by feofees who elect a Schoolmaster.[34]
{Mr Leighton, Parson in Essecks, born in this parish.}[35]

Beathom Tower \ 1¼ S. / destroyd in the Civil Wars.[36] Now demolishd as the Manner House. {traditionally calld Bethom Castle.} But the Court is kept at the School; in [which] regard the Earle of Darby Lord of the Manner, gave a Ginny & Timber for the Building of it.[37]
Helslack Tower 1m. S. ab Ecclesia – demolishd.[38]

Cappleside Hall ¼ N.E.[39] {formerly} Buskils, then Prestons by purchase. Now Lord Cliffords. The Descent on the other Side.
{Margaret Hind[40] dyed a yeare since, being 106. Thom. Johnson yet living, 103 & yet sets netts.}

2. Haverbrack
F[amilies] 11; Wattress f[amilies] 3; Sandside 4.
Dallan Tower is the Manner House – But they never keep Court.
There is a fort calld Castle Tower a Dall[am] ¼; a[l]most as big as the Round Table.[41]
Ponds at Dallan Town. Troutes & Eales.
All Customary, Fine Arbitrary \ & Heriotable / except the Rectory which is 1d fine at death of ~~the vicar &~~ \ the impropriator / & a 6d fine upon Descent or alienation. Wid[ows] p. have halfe for life.[42]
Lord [has] Waif & Stray.

3. Farleton
F[amilies] 31. Overthwate & Akebank all one L[ordship] 29.[43]
No manner – A Beacon on Farleton Knot – where there are 3. There is a Place calld Chapl. hill where it is said a Chapl. has stood: – 2 m \ E. / ab Ecclesia & about a Quarter of a m. from Farleton.
Arbitrary & heriotable; no freehold.
In Farleton dureing pure widow[hood] they have all the Estate of their husbands – otherwise loose all.
Lord [has]Waif & Stray.
{The Descent}[44]

---

[34] For the building of the school and master's house, see 'Inventory of the sums subscribed by the parishioners for the building a school [25 April 1620] & [house] for the use of the Master [1647]', in John R. Ford (ed.), *The Beetham Repository*, *1770*, *by the Rev. William Hutton, Vicar of Beetham, 1762-1811*, CWAAS Tract Series 7 (Kendal, 1906), 52-56.
[35] Ambrose Leighton MA (Christ's College, Cambridge), born at Leighton Beck, rector of Little Yeldham in Essex, gave a donation of £20 to Beetham School in 1663, see *The Beetham Repository 1770,* 71.
[36] This comment was repeated in the MS at the page top. The tower was destroyed in 1644. William Hutton gave a colourful description of its fall: 'Fairfax … came … to dislodge some Scotch men who had seiz'd it: and this he did, and threw down the East wing about their ears. A few were kill'd, and the rest after possessing it two or three months and slaughtering the sheep of the neighbourhood made their escape.' See *The Beetham Repository 1770*, 93.
[37] Machell was referring to the sum of one guinea; for 'ginny'. *OED*.
[38] Hazelslack Tower, a pele tower built in the 14th century; in ruins by the 17th: Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 70.
[39] The earliest date of a specific reference to a hall at Cappleside is 1585. It was demolished shortly after 1687, apart from the southern tower which was converted into a barn in 1763, and was ruinous by 1862, see Historic England Research Records, https://www.heritagegateway.org.uk.
[40] Unclear word.
[41] Dallam Tower: a pele tower was built on the site c.1375 but demolished when the present house was built in 1720-23. There is a plan of 1614 showing a house with formal gardens on the east and west sides: http://www.parksandgardens.ac.uk. https://www.heritagegateway.org.uk
[42] Meaning: 'widows in pure viduity have half their husbands' estate for life'.
[43] This number is on the far right of a page which has perished at the edge.
[44] Descent of the lordship.

It was in Judge Hutton ~~who was born in Be~~ & descended by a D[aughter] upon Collonell Bierly of Grange in Yorkeshire.[45]

4. Witherslack
F[amilies] 37; Me\a/thop 7 & Ou\l/vay 3.[46] {which are in the Lordship but not in the chappelry.}[47]
Arbitrary & heriotable.
{[The Lordship] is supposed to have come with Bethom to the Earle of Darby – The House \ & Demane / sold circa 1660.}

Witherslack Hall was the manner [house] but the Demane being sold of, the Tenants appear any where in the manner where they are sumond. Dr Barwick, Dean of St Pauls, was borne hard by the chaple at a Place calld ~~Fellend~~ \ Halecat; who founded & endowd the Chapel & Schoole.[48]
Joh[n] Labourn – a Romish bishop. George his ~~brother~~ \ unckle / President of Dowa.[49] Nicholas – brother to the Bishop Procurator Ibidem.

Witherslack Park which is part of Witherslack demane is replenished with deer. Polecates.

Witherslack Well \ calld Holly well / purges by it, & urine & vomit, and is saltish & cures wormes.

Slate limestone and rag[stone].

[II.272]

[Descents]

{Descent of Bethom}
It was anciently in the Beathoms & after in the Standleys Earles of Darby, who made a foole of the heire and beg.[50] the Estate {Trad[ition]}.[51] And is now in William Earle of Darby, of Knowlesley in Lancashire.[52]

[Descent of] Haverbrack
\ In Haverbrack a Knight Templar[53] & Heversham / was in 2 Lords[hips]: the Prestons & Thornborrows – then purchased by 3 Londoners – Merchant & Knights – in hopes of a lead mine. Then sold to Mr Hen. Parker, second Brother to Lord Morley. & by him to Mr Edward Wilson & Thomas Wilson joynt purchaser, who outliveing him got the whol.
They[54] appear by consent at Heversham Hall. & now in the Home of Ed. Wilson – Justice of Peace.[55]

---

[45] For 'Colonel Bierly' [in 1697] see *The Diary of Abraham De la Pryme, the Yorkshire Antiquary*, Surtees Society Vol. 54 (Durham, 1870), 137.
[46] 'Oulvay' is Ulpha.
[47] See also II.265, above, which remarks that Witherslack is a chapelry in Beetham Parish & Kendal Barony.
[48] For John Barwick (1612-1664), dean of St Paul's, see Part 2. Ch.7, Heversham, Heversham Free School, II.164; and see below, II.275-76.
[49] The English College at Douai was founded by William Allen in 1568 for Roman Catholic exiles from Protestant Elizabethan England, where it had become treasonable for Catholic priests to celebrate Mass. There, English students could train as priests. The 'College des Grands Anglais', as it became known, was key to the English mission for the re-conversion of England: see *Independent Catholic News*, 2 Oct. 2018. George Leyburn was president from 1652 to1670. He resigned in favour of his nephew, John, president 1670-1675/6. For more on this family, see Part 2, Ch.3x, Underbarrow, II.111; Beetham, II.280A and II.280B. See also *AWL*, 189.
[50] 'Beggared the estate'[?]
[51] A reference, perhaps, to the attainder of Richard de Bethom after the battle of Bosworth, and the grant of part of his estates to the Earl of Derby, which led to a dispute between Thomas Middleton and the earl, so that the manor remained in the possession of Middleton until his death in 1517. From Whitsuntide 1525, for one year, the manor was in the hands of the crown. See William Farrer and John F. Curwen (eds), *Records Relating to the Barony of Kendale II,* CWAAS Record Series 5, (Kendal 1924), 211-38.
[52] William Richard George Stanley, 9th earl of Derby (c.1655-5 November 1702).
[53] A Knights Templar estate.
[54] The tenants.
[55] As these blotted notes are obscured by a modern repair to the binding, some have been omitted.

[II.273]

[Wilson Descent]
James ob. 1692 S.P.[56]
1. Ed. Wilson of Dallan T. Esq.? Just. of Peace = Jane d. of Gawen Brathwate of Ambleside Hall Esq.
|
Ed. Wilson of Park house in Tunsdl[57] Parish = Katherine d. of Sir Daniel Fleming of Ridal, Knight in Lancashire
|
Daniel aetat 12; Edward aetat 13

Milnthorpe

On Millthrop[58] Bridge a stone erected; somewhat resembling a Rom[an] Altar – with this Inscription {In Capital Letters} Fear God – Honour the King 1684.
A little above the Bridge is a Paper Mill; formerly an Iron Forge.[59]
My Lord Bishop of Carlile, Dr Thomas Smith, informes me that the fam[ous] Mathematition Dr [Blank] Rawlinson fellow of Queens Coll. (& Tutor to the E. of Northumberland, in which family he mostly lived? T.M.) was borne in this village.[60]

[II.280]

[Witherslack in Beetham Parish]

Wether-Slack in Bethom
It is in the ped[igree] Woder-Slacke but perhaps by the dialect as Wolsor.

[II.275]

Witherslack Chapel
{Chap[el] Long within, beside the steeple, 26. Broad, 7. 3 Bells in it.}

In the East Window, which is very ornamental, having 5 double lights.

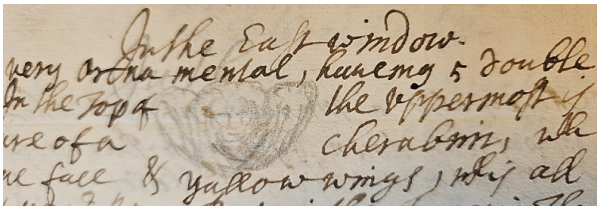


Figure 2.4.9. 'Cherubim' in Witherslack Chapel East Window. II.275.

In the Top of the uppermost is the figure of a cherubim, with humane face & yallow wings, which is all in that upper row. But in the Lower; the midle most has: ~~I~~HIS in a circle \ globe of Blew / with Rayes of Glory about it – yallow & orange – and a scrowle with this Inscription

> THIS is my Body. | THIS is my blood.
> Mathew XXVI 26 | Mat XXVI. 28

On each side of which in the top of the next lights, are the heads of 2 cherubimes joyneing together & peeping as it were into that mystery. & At the tops of the 2 outmost lights, are These Coates of Armes.

[56] James died childless.
[57] Tunstall.
[58] Milnthorpe.
[59] Information repeated in *N&BI*, 201.
[60] Richard Rawlinson (c. 1616–68), born at Milnthorpe; plebeian at Queen's College, Oxford; matriculated 1636 aged 18; MA 1643; DD 1681. A royalist and a mathematician, he drew a plan of the garrison and fortifications at Oxford for Charles I; he was rector to the Duke of Newcastle. *OAD*.



Figure 2.4.10. Witherslack Chapel. Coats of Arms, 1 and 2. II.275.

1. Is a Quarterly Coate as followeth – of William George Richard Earle of Darby – wherein the 1. is Argent a Bend ~~Gules~~ \ Az[ure] / chargd with Bucks heads cabashed, 2. Gules – 3 Armd Legs & feat in Triang[u]ler Unity Argent. 3. is Gules – 4 Barrs Argent & a chief Or, chargd of all with a Lyon Rampant of the 3. (Sc. Or. Crowne of the first, Sc. G[ules].) The 4. is Quarterly ~~Or &~~ Gules & Argent, in a quarter of the 1., a Mullet of the second. The 5. Or a cheveron Gules betwene 3 eagles displayed Az[ure]. The 6. is Azure 3 flooredelices Or. The 7. the same with a Battoun Gules. The 8th is Or a serpent Azure devoureing a Childe from the feet upwards = the Impaled Coate which ought to possess halfe the field – Azure an Eagle volant Or. The Crist is upon a Ducal cap \ G[ules] / lined Ermin – an Eagle & Cradle Or, with a Childe wrapt in scarlet, & Tyed Or. & the mot[to] SANS CHANGE.[61]

[2.] The other Coate is the Deanery of St Pauls. Sc. Gules 2 swords in Saltier with Pointes to the Pointes of the Escutchion – hilted Or. In chief a Cross couped[62] of the 3rd Impaleing = Dean Barwick, which are Argent, a Reade Rose proper between 3 Beares heads erased proper bridled Gules, and this mot[to] Adversis servata fides.[63]

These of the Earle of Darbyes are painted agane on the Back Side of the Commandments & towards the Chancell. And these of the Deanes on Each Side of them in Diamond frames writte in triangles,[64] with Scripture Sentences on the Back side of the Creed & Commandments.

{Foundation}
Over the little dooer beneath the said Co[mmandments] in stone is writ

> REVEREND John Barwick S.T.D. Born in this | Hamlet, late | Dean St Pauls | Built this Chappel A.D. 1664

There is a [weather] Cock also, & a font in it.

[II.276]

There is also a monument of white marble which was sent down by Dr Barwick his brother*, who now lives with the Countess of Albimarle.[65]

---

[61] Without changing.
[62] Here, Machell appears to have drawn a tiny symbol of a cross couped: a cross rendered with arms of equal length; but its small size makes recognition difficult.
[63] 'Faith maintained in adversity.'
[64] In the MS, Machell has drawn a triangle.
[65] In the 1650s, Peter Barwick married Anne Sayon, merchant's widow and kinswoman of William Laud. See P. Elmer, 'Barwick, Peter (1619-1705), physician'. *ODNB*. There is no mention here of Peter Barwick ever having

REVERENDUS &c
Reverendus admodum et Primævæ Pietatis vir,
Johannes Barwick, S. T. D.
Hic in vicinâ natus,
Qui post operam indefesso studio navatam,
Afflictiones infracto animo Toleratas,
Res tandem, licèt summè arduas, feliciter Gestas,
Pro Collapso Regni et Ecclesiæ Statu,
Ad CURAM et Dignitatem Decanatus
Primò Dunelmensis, Deinde Paulini,
Meritò Evectus
HANC ÆDEM
In Dei honorem et suorum gratiam,
Structam et Dotatam voluit
et Bonorum Residuum Egenis Legavit
A.D. 1664[66]

{Dedication and Consecration}
By John Cestriensis – which was Bishop Wilkins – by his Instrument of Consecration. Date 22 Junii {Iovis} 1671.[67]
In nomine Dom[ini] Amen cum nuper Eruditus et Discretus vir &c. – ex fundo – pia devotione \ præ /nob[ilis] Domi[ni] D. Caroli Com[it]is Darbiæ – Witherslake – being Indowed with 26 sterling ad minimum[68] pro Presbytero seu Ministro Ordine presbyterij constituto for Praying, Preaching, Administering the Sacraments & Burying the Dead. Cæteraque &c. – quæ in alijs cap[itibus] recte fieri possint.
"Consecram[us] et Dedicamus per nomen Capellæ Divi Pauli in villa de Witherslake \ p[ar]ochiæ de Beethom / nominand[um] et appelland[um] fore decernimus et nominamus &c. – salvo semper Jure et Interesse matricis Ecclesiæ de Beethom prædict[o] In omnibus suis Decimis privilegijs et Com[m]oditatibus Ecclesiasticis quibuscunque Juribus Etiam nostris &c. – Reservatus – pro Archidiacae Richmo[n]diæ 1s p[er] annum ad festum Pasc[ae]. pro synodalibus 2s pro Procurationibus Triennale – Episcopo Cestriensi. {The minister to be Examined, Licensd & Admitted by the Bishop} {Absque ulla Diminatione vel de falcatione Juris Ecclesiastici Decimarum o[b]lation[um] vel obventionum quarumcunque ad dictam Matricem Ecclesiam de Beethom praedict[am] – seu ad vicarium ejus pro tempore existentem spectand[arum] et pertinend[arum] precip[it]em? in futurum.} [69]

---

lived with a Countess of Albimarle; the Countess of Albemarle [?] was not made countess until 1701 (after Machell's death). The first Duchess of Albemarle died just after her husband (General Monck), in 1670. Christopher Monck, second duke of Albemarle (1653-1688) had a wife, the (mad) duchess of Albemarle, who married Lord Montagu, convinced that he was the Emperor of China, in 1692. See 'Lady Elizabeth Cavendish', *The Peerage.com*.

[66] 'That much revered man of outstanding piety John Barwick D.D., born in this neighbourhood, who, after working with unflagging zeal and perseverance, enduring afflictions with unbroken spirit, found a happy issue from all these troubles of collapse of the Kingdom and Church, deservedly was translated to the Position and Dignity of Dean, first of Durham, then of St Paul's. This building erected and endowed to the honour of God and the delight of his people, was his wish; and he bequeathed the rest of his goods to the poor. A.D. 1664'. See *N&B1*, 233, which gives the history of Dr Barwick alongside this inscription.

[67] Thursday 22 June 1671. John Wilkins was Bishop of Chester from 1668 until his death in 1672. CCED.

[68] The ending is blotted.

[69] 'In the name of God, Amen. Whereas of late that learned and discreet man etc., at the expense and devoted piety of the most noble Charles [?] Lord Derby, Witherslack being endowed with £26 sterling at the least for the priest or minister in the Holy Orders of priest duly constituted for Praying Preaching Administering the Sacraments & Burying the Dead, and other things etc. in other areas which can rightly be done by him –We consecrate and dedicate by the name of the Chapel of St Paul in the Township of Witherslack and Parish of Beetham, to be named and called [as now] we do decree and name it etc. Saving always the rights and interests of the mother Church of Beethom aforesaid in all its tithes, privileges and ecclesiastical easements whatsoever, according also to our rights etc. – Reserved for the Archdeaconry of Richmond 1 shilling per annum at the Feast

[Machell's Notes on the Barwick Family: II.276 & II.278]
*{Peter Barwicks wife brought forth a daughter = Sir Ralf Dutton of Gloucestershire}[70]
[II.278]
{1. Nicholas. 1 s[on] & 2 d[aughters] 2. Will 3 d[aughters] & 1 s[on].
John. Doctor. Dean of Durham then of Thersfielde – he kept a Curate.[71]
{John Barwick Dr in Divinity [died] in a consumption. [He requested] to be buryed with as much privacy & little pomp as may be.}
Peter = Ann. 1 d[aughter]

[II.277]



Figure 2.4.11. Witherslack Chapel and East Window. II.277.

{2. Foundation; Dedication}
It began \ to be built / in 1664. And was consecrated to the service of God & for Parochial uses by the name of St Paules \ Chappell / June 22 1671 – by Doctor Wilkins Bishop of Chester, Dr Thomas Smith afterwards Bishop of Carlile being present at it. {After consecration, all that pertained to the old Chapl[72] [was] added to the New by an Instrument under the Hand & Seal of John Cestriensis, Sc. Dr Wilkins Bishop of Chester; Bearing Date 26 June 1671.}

{Parsonage Vicarage} {to teach scholars}
The Chaplaines house {a Capella circa 30 yards} is on the S. side of the same chapl. & is Designed

of Easter; for synodals, 2s, for the proctors, payment for a triennial mass for the Bishop of Chester. The minister to be examined, licensed and admitted by the Bishop and receive that profit without any deduction or shortfall of tithes, offerings or sources of income whatsoever in Church Law belonging and pertaining to the said Mother Church of Beetham aforesaid – or to its vicar incumbent at the time, or right into the future.' See *N&B1*, 231: The chapel of Witherslack 'was consecrated by Bishop Wilkins… by the name of the Chapel of St Paul in the town of Witherslack in the parish of Betham, with a clause, as is usual in like cases, that the same shall be in no wise prejudicial to the mother church'.

[70] Dr Peter Barwick (1619-1705). 'Of his four children (three daughters and one son), only one daughter, Anne (b. 1662), survived him. She married Sir Ralph Dutton of Sherborne in Gloucestershire in 1679'. P. Elmer, 'Barwick, Peter, Physician'. *ODNB*.

[71] Dr John Barwick (1612-64), is remembered as a royalist spy under Charles I. After the Restoration he was appointed Dean of Durham Cathedral, then Dean of St Paul's in 1661. See J. Elligott, 'Barwick, John, Dean of St Paul's'. *ODNB*. For a colourful description of Dean Barwick's life and connections with Beetham, see the *Mail* (Cumbria) 26 May 2019, which reports, 'The Witherslack farmer's son born in 1612 was "quite a character" … He managed the correspondence of both Charles I and Charles II, was imprisoned in the Tower of London for being a Royalist spy, and became Dean of St Paul's Cathedral in London. When he died in 1664 [he] left money for a church and school to be built in the village where he grew up. His brother Peter – a doctor who rose to be physician-in-ordinary to King Charles II – ensured his wishes were carried out, with St Paul's Church consecrated in 1671. "Lots of people in Witherslack know the name Dean Barwick – we have the school and the Dean Barwick Trust – so it's known in the village but kind of forgotten in other ways," said the vicar.'

[72] MS: 'After consecration on [Blank] all that pertained to the old Chapl…'

for a Schoolhouse as well as a Dwelling house, the Chaplain being obligd to teach gratis the children of the said Inhabitants, but foreigners[73] as they can agree with him*.[74]

{Patronage or Disposal}
The said Dr John Barwick \ Dean of St Pauls / reserved the disposal thereof to him selfe – dureing his life and after his death. And after his \ whose / death It was to be in the disposall of \ transmitted to / feoffees in Trust who Recommend one unto the Bishop \ of Chester, & he admits as to him seeth good (with the approbation of the vicar of Bethom†) dureing his life; who was born at Halecat (a Capella circa 200[yards]) & who founded both the Chaple & Schoole; the Earle of Darby Lord of the Manner allowing so much of the Common \ Town green / as was ~~necessary~~ \ sufficient / for a chapple yard, & the Schoolhouse to stand on.

{Old Chappel Sallary}
There was an old Chapel heretofore near Witherslack Hall adjoneing the gardine \ not 20 yards S. from the Hall – & ~~a Sallary of~~ \ xx nobles / 6: 13: 4, belonging unto it, which was payd by all the Inhabitants by known proportion \ according as they sat higher or lower / {no Inhabitant being abov 3s nor non under 1s 6d except the Lord, who was [charged] 1. 6. 8. out of his Rents} by the name of Sallary.

{Endowment}
(& there was an House about a m. S. from this chapel, which belongd unto it, which he holdes) which was annexed together with the said old Sallary to the N[ew] Ch[apel] [75] \ because the owner of Witherslack hall would sell no ground for a ch. yard. / & as a further Augmentation, the Dean of Pauls[76] [gave] 26 per annum payable by the said Trustees.

[Machell's Notes: II.277]

*(The Armes are in another Paper.)
†{It should have bin but this is now of q.}
{Will at S.P. Dat. 21 October 1664. Obser[v]e the clause for keeping the Mother Church Indemnifyed.}

[II.278]

Out of the Will[77]

4 li for Repares [to] Utensils & Ornaments every year by the Chaple wardens with consent \ the advice / of the Curat.
10li per annum for the following uses. Sc.
1. To place apprentices. {bond with}
2. Mend highways.
3. To give as portions in marriage with made[s] borne in the chapelry – by such Orders as his executors exp[r]ess in the settlement.
He also gave 300 [li] to St Johns in Cambridge for the Library or som other public use.
100li towards the Rep[are of St Pauls Church London besides what he gave with the Chapter for that noble use.
Item, 40li worth of Bookes to Sedber School Library. The rest to the poore.
(To each of his brothers & Mary the daughter of Peter, 100li. George son of Will. his brother 200. & the 3 d[78] of Will. 100li apiece. 500 in all to Peter.

[73] People from outside Witherslack.
[74] MS: '& is Designed ~~as well~~ for a Schoolhouse as ~~for that purpose~~ \ well as / a Dwelling house, the Chaplain being obligd to teach gratis the children of the said ~~of the~~ Inhabitants ~~to be taught gratis for others~~ but foreigners ~~& they a~~ as they can agree with him.'
[75] MS: '(& there was an House \ about a m. S. / from this chapel \ which belongd unto it / ~~belong'd the Chaplane, but a mile S from the old Chaple~~, which he holdes) ~~together with the said old Sallary~~, \ which was annexed together with the said old Sallary / to the N[ew] Ch[apel].'
[76] MS: 'Dean of Polls.'
[77] Out of John Barwick's will.
[78] Three daughters.

Historia Bizantini Parisijs – to the Archbishop {of Cant.}[79]
The Works of Kg Marter, 2 voll. in folio to ~~Sir~~ John Otway Esq. \ as / now Sir J. Otway \ as a memor of his thankfulness / for the great paines & Her[t] he underwent at his Intreaty towards the Restoration of the said King.[80]

Given by Peter B[arwick] Dr in Phis,[81] Brother of the said Dr Barwick:
All the furniture of the said chapel, Sc. an Hanging behinde the Altar made of read leader, & a covering for it of the same to be usd every day. Allso printed Tammy[82] of Purple & Read with read silke fringe, for festival time, Sundayes & Hollidayes, with a cushion & purple cloth of the same . Also, Damaske of the same for Communion, with a large Green flowerd Silke cushon for the Pulpat upon great occasion.[83]– These given before the Consecration*.

Tis the best glaz'd[3] flaggd[1] & plaster[2] of any ~~church or~~ chapl in the Barony of Kendal;[84] & the windows thereof – which are very good ones – have bin kept whol for 21 years by the caer of Sir John Brockbank, 1st Minister,[85] with the expence of 10d.[86]

[Machell's Notes: II. 278[
*{Query of Dr Thomas Fuddergill President of St Johns i.e. pert[aining] to the matter. Was tutor to Dr Barwick.}[87]

[II.279]

{New Chap[e]l Sallary}
Tithes out of the Rector of Lazenby & P[l]umpton, & Hareskew[88] in Kirkoswald Parish*; in the ~~said~~ County of Cumberland \ which Purchase in Kirkoswald was made after the Dean was deceased because the Rectory of Lazonby did not answer the Rent which he had designed.[89] / {To whom he gave also 40 per annum out of the Rent Charge.}[90]
And £10 per annum for the marriage of poore mades borne in this chapelry– And for putting out Apprentices & mending the highways; \ & £4 per annum for the Repares of the Chapl & Schoole / to p[ay] a Chapl[ain] thereto annext to the chaple of W[itherslack] and to Endow & make it Parochial. The ressidue of the said Rents if any be (after necessary charges deducted out of them) to be disposed \ as the said x li / to any of the said uses.

---

[79] Archbishop of Canterbury was then Gilbert Sheldon (1598-1677). Several books have been published with the title, 'Byzantine History'. As the book named here was published in Paris before Barwick's death in 1664, it might have been the *Historia Bizantina* of George Acropolita (b.1220), an edition of which was published (in Greek and Latin) in Paris in 1651.
[80] Sir John Otway (c.1620-93) of Ingmire Hall, Sedbergh. For his academic and parliamentary career, see History of Parliament Online; for more on Barwick's will see J. Elligott, 'Barwick, John (1612-1664), dean of St Paul's'. *ODNB*.
[81] Physic.
[82] Tammy: a fine worsted cloth of good quality, often with a glazed finish. *OED*.
[83] MS: 'All the furniture \ of the said chapel / Sc. an Hanging ~~& Covering~~ \ behinde the Altar / made of read leader, & a covering for it of the same to be usd every day. Allso \ printed Tammy / of Purple & Read ~~Tamy printed~~ with read silke fringe for \ festival time / Sundayes & Hollidayes\ with a cushion & purple cloth of the same /Also – Damaske \ of the same / for Communion ~~Times~~. ~~And a Pulpat Cloth & cushion of the said Read & Purple Stuff for every Sunday~~ with a large Green flowerd Silke cushon for the Pulpat upon great occasion.'
[84] Note that Machell changed his preferred word order by using the numbers 1, 2 and 3 to guide the reader.
[85] John Brockbank (as vicar of Beetham) became the first minister of Witherslack, see II.274A, above.
[86] MS: 'the windows \ thereof which are very good ones / have bin kept whol for 21 by the caer of Sir John Brockbank, \ 1[st] / Minister thereof ~~have bin kept whol~~ for 21 years, with the expence of 10d.'
[87] This is problematic because no Dr Thomas Fuddergil (or even Fothergill) was ever president of St John's College, Cambridge [see https://www.joh.cam.ac.uk/masters-st-johns-college-cambridge]. An alternative might be Dr Thomas Morton (bap.1564 d.1659), a moderate Calvinist who rose to become bishop of Durham; he was an alumnus and fellow of the college. John Barwick was his chaplain, his executor and preached his funeral sermon. See B. Quintrell, 'Morton, Thomas (bap. 1564, d. 1659), bishop of Durham'. *ODNB*.
[88] Now, 'Haresceugh'.
[89] In the MS on II.278, this scored-through text appears in the margin: {~~Plumpton near Kirkoswald was added after the Deans death because the Rectors of Lazonby did not answer the Rentel he designd~~}.
[90] '40' might have 's' for 'shillings' above it, but it is squeezed onto the end of a line, and is unclear.

{Curate 26 s[hillings] (per annum) if in Order of Priesthood Teaching a School. But not preach unless sufficiently inabled & licenced per Episcopum ei Cestrensis [91]

[Machell's Notes: II.279]
*{Purchased I thinke of Sir Thomas Dakers in his brother Peters name}

[II.279]

[Witherslack Chapelry]

{The Bounds} {Division into Manners]
It is Bounded on the E. with Lithe in the Chaplry of Crosthwaite & Parish of Heversham; from which tis divided by a Little \ Rill / at Far Fell end. On the South by Meathop & Oulvah[92] in Bethom precincts. By which tis divided by the Moss; as the Lordships \ goe there / divide: on the West by Cartmel in Lancashire \ from which it is separated / by the River Winstar – on the N. with Crosthwate, \ in Heversham Parish, / by which tis divided by the Bounds of Powbanke in Crosthwate. It is one Entire Lordship,[93] \ for tho / some of the Lordship that are in Heversham Parish are by ancient custom obliged to pay Sallary to the other places as being permitted to come to the Chaplaines for their Ease & Convenience, \ yet are they within the chapelry of Witherslack, pay[ing] a salary here & for their Ease frequenting this Chapel; though they pay all their dues to the church of Heversham {S[c]. Pow Bank & Far Fell End alias Heefell.}

{Descent of the Manner}
This Manner is said to have formerly bin the Broughtons of Broughton Tower in Kirkby in Furness & opposite to Millum, the River Duddon running betwixt them. But is now in the Earle of Darby.

[II.280A]

{Labourns Pedigree}[94]
The Armes in Parchment are quarterly,
1. Azure, 6 lyoncells Argent Langued & memb[ered] G[ules]. By the name of La-born.

---

[91] 'But not preaching unless sufficiently enabled and licensed by the Bishop of Chester.'
[92] Ulpha. Machell's version is much altered and overwritten.
[93] MS: 'by which tis divided by the Bounds of Powbanke in Crosthwate. {Is in the Lordship.}\ ~~There is but one Lordship~~ that chapelry / It is one Entire Lordship, But…'
[94] The Leyburn (Labourn, Labourne, Layburne) family was closely aligned with the Roman Catholic Church in England during the 17th century. John Leyburn (1620-1702), vicar apostolic of the London district, was the fourth son of John Leyburn of Cunswick Hall, Beetham (where he was born), and his wife, Catherine Carus. A nephew of Dr George Leyburn, president of the English College at Douai, he was educated there and followed his uncle as president in 1670. He resigned in 1676 and moved to Rome to become secretary to Cardinal Philip Thomas Howard. Cardinal Howard, at the request of James II, recommended Leyburn as vicar apostolic of all England, to which the pope agreed. He was consecrated at Rome with the title of 'Bishop of Adrumetum, in partibus.' [Vicars apostolic were given titular dioceses in areas in Asia Minor etc – 'in partibus infidelium' – that had fallen to the Turks.] See T. Cooper & G. Bradley, 'Leyburn, John (1620-1702), vicar apostolic of the London district. *ODNB*. Bishop Leyburn served as James II's Catholic vicar apostolic from 1685-88, organising the funding of English Catholic chapels, clergy and education. In 1687 he toured England to dispense the sacrament of confirmation to Catholic laity. This involved 12 confirmations at Corby (Cumberland), 23 at Greystoke, 28 at Sizergh, 37 at Dodding Green and 161 at Witherslack: Michael Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c. 1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 119-120. Alison Wright has remarked on how close-knit this community was: 'Only six of the sponsors of the communicants mentioned out of the 45 on his progress were not related to him … or neighbours in the North West or had not been educated at Douay.' Wright, 'Loyalty and Tradition II. Networking among the north-western Catholic Gentry, 1640-1720: The Case of the Layburnes', *CW3*, 14 (2014), 103-24, at 113. Bishop Leyburn's social and political networking is noted in *The Diary of Dr Thomas Cartwright, Bishop of Chester commencing at the time of his elevation to that see, August M. DC. LXXXVI. And terminating with the visitation of St. Mary Magdalene College, Oxford, October M. DC. LXXXVII* (Camden Society, London, 1843). The last Leyburn to inherit Cunswick was another John Leyburn who joined the 1715 Jacobite rising and was captured at Preston. In London, he was tried and attainted for treason, but not executed. Alison Wright, *The Layburnes and their World circa 1620-1720, The English Catholic Community and the House of Stuart*, PhD Thesis (University of St Andrews, 2002), 25-27.

2. Argen[t] a Bend Sable chargd with 3 Annulets Argent which a Trifol. S[able] in sinister point.
3. Gules 3 bores heads Couped Or langued Azure.
4. as the 1.
The Crist on a wreath Argent & Azure. An Hauk Regardant Azure.
A maid \ G[ules] hair Or / riseing out of a coronet with a Diamond ring in her right hand.

TO HIM THAT DESERVES IT BEST.

Trad. {Which Coate was subscribed to by Will Ryley, Norroy, King at Armes & coll[ected] out of an old Ped[igree] Somerset cxiii.}

Witham = Labourn.
Or a Bend Gules betwene 3 (eaglets say they but rather blackbirds) Sable.
A Coate produced of 6 quarters –
1. Witham.
2. Gules a Chief Argent.
3. Argent a fess Gules charged with 3 escallops Argent \ betwene 3 parrots prop. /
4. Argent a Chevron between 4 [cross-crosslets] Gules.
5. as the 3.
6. Argent a Chevron Sable chargd with Bucks heads cab[ossed] Argent.

[Machell's Notes [II.280A]
An Eccho from the Green Hill before the Hall.
Well whom Witherslack passeth by being [blank]

[II.280B]
Out of an Old Eaten Parchment Roll, Intitled, 'Certain notes taken out &c. and in the memory of man, of matches of the ancient house of Leybourne.' {[Arms] Azure 6 lyoncells Argent.}
Rogerus de Leyburn Tenuit in Com West. Castrum de Burg sub Staynemore manerium de Morton, de Appelby, de Meaburn, de Clinton, de Kirkby Stephan, Castrum de Mallerstang, forresta de Whinfell. Eyworth in Cartat' Beds, Anno Regni Regis Edv. 1. xij^{0} [1283-1284].

{Labourns Pedegree}				James Layburne[95] of Cunswick Esq. =	Jane d. of John Bradley of Bethom			[II.280A]
				William of Cunswick =				
	George Dr of Divinity & President of Doway	Thomas = Mary d. of [Blank] Bradley of Arnsides	Nicholas	1. John Leyburne = of Cunswick = who had by his 2nd wife had isue	[1.] Katherine d. of Xt. Carus of Halton near Lancaster [2] M. d. of Will. Croft of Claughton in Lancashire	Frances = George Dabrish-court of Stratfield-sea[96] in Hantsh.	Dorathy = Weaver	Elizabeth m. to Ant. Ducket of Grarig

[95] In remarks related to a review of Jane Ewbank's *Antiquary on Horseback* (1964), the CWAAS *Transactions* reviewer (T.G.F.) commented on Machell's inaccuracy here. 'James Leyburne of Cunswick Esq. who heads the pedigree is stated to be the father of William Leyburne who married Jane, daughter of (John) Bradley of Beetham. Yet does not all the evidence go to show that William's father in point of fact was Nicholas Leyburne (born 1516) who married Elizabeth daughter of John Warcop of Smardale Hall? (vide William Wiper, "The Layburnes of Cunswick", *CW1*, 10 (1889), 124-57'. See this review in 'Recent Publications 2, *Antiquary on Horseback* (1964) T.G.F.', *CW2,* 64 (1964), 414.
[96] Stratfieldsaye, Hampshire.

		3. Charles	2. Nicholas Vice-President of Dowa		1. George de quo infra	Many daughters wherof 1 Frances only is living &c. unmaried			
5. William Obijpa…	4. John Bishop of Adrumetum	3. James, Governour of Fair Castle in France	2. Thomas Lab. of Witherslack = Dorathy d. Will Lasselles of Breckinbrough in Yorks.	William Layburne of Cunswick obijt durante vita patris	= Elizabeth d. of [Blank] Thomlinson a Londoner Remarried to R.B. [97] 1 Girl dyed in minority	Lucy = Thomas Kitson of Killington	2. Elizab. = to [Blank] Wiseman in Mary Land	1. Jane = Richard Sherburne of Hesum[98] in Lancashire	
[Children of Thomas Laybourn of Witherslack, and Dorathy]									
	1. John dyed unmaryed	2. Katherine maryed = to Dr Marmaduke Witham of Clif in Yorks.	2. Elizabeth innupta- ad huc[99]		3. Ann	4th daughter			
Co-heireship Son of John abovesaid									
			George L. of Witherlack & of Neateby in L. heir of Cunswick		= Ann Stanley of Dalgarth in Cumberland				
James	Nich.	George	John aet 23		4.	3. Ann	2. Kath.	1. Mary,[100] to Marmaduke Tunstal of Baringham	

Juliana filia Thomæ de Leyburn = uxor de Hastinges filij Comitis Penbrockie Anno R. Regis Ed. 3. 1^0 [1327-1328]. Or, a manch Gules impaleing Leyburn.[101]

Idonea de L. Uxor Johannis de Cromwell tenuit manerium de Leyburn in Com. Nottingham conjunctim cum marito sue,[102] – Argent a Chief Gules over all a bend Azure*.

Juliana de L. Uxor Willielmus Clinton Comitis Huntingdoniæ. Anno R.R. Ed. 3. xlj^0.[103] Of whom my Lord Fitzwilliam, Earl of Southampton & the Fitzwilliams of Strotsburgh are descended – Argent 6 cross crosslets[104] Sable: on a Chiefe Azure 2 mullets Or pierced Gules – impaleing &c.

{Dom. Jacobus de Leyburne}
Anna filia Domini Jacobi de Leyburne, Nupta Willi[am]o Domino Montegomerico. 1557.[105] Argent a Bend Azure charged with 3 Buckes heads cabossed Or: & in Chiefe a crescent[106] Gules. Impaleing.

[97] R.B. was Roger Bradley; see 'Recent Publications 2. *Antiquary on Horseback*', *CW2*, 64 (1964), 414.
[98] Heysham.
[99] 'As yet unmarried.'
[100] Mary died without issue and was buried at Spofford on 25 June, 1705. See 'Recent Publications 2. *Antiquary on Horseback*', *CW2*, 64 (1964), 414.
[101] 'Juliana, daughter of Thomas de Leyburne, wife of Hastings the son of the Earl of Pembroke, 1. Edward III.'
[102] 'Idonea de Leyburne, wife of John de Cromwell, held the manor of Leyburn in Nottinghamshire conjointly with her husband.'
[103] 'Juliana de Leyburne, wife of William Clinton, Earl of Huntingdon in 41. Edward III.' [1367-1368].
[104] Cross-crosslet symbol.
[105] 'Ann daughter of Lord James de Leyburn, married to William Lord Montgomery. 1557.'
[106] Crescent symbol.

Elizabetha filia Dom. Jacobi \ de / Leyburne militis, nupta Domino Thomæ Dacres de Septentrione Anno 1558.[107] Gules 3 escallops Argent impaleing.

dicto Elizabetha L[eyburne] relicta Thomæ de Dacres de Septentrione 3 uxor Thomæ Ducis Norfolciæ. Anno 1567.[108] Gules a Bend (betwene 6 cross-crosslets[109] Argent) Chargd with the Scotch Escutch[eon] Gules & Or†.

[Machell's Notes: II.280B]

*{This I take to be Idonea de Veteriponte 1. Maried to [Blank] Leyburn by whom he had those lands in Westm'land above said. See Clifford [pedigree].}

†{N.B. This signifieth ale or nothing to the Labournes of Witherslack & Cunswick; onely we may suppose that they have bin of Kin to, & came into Westmorland with this Labourne who was married to Idonea de Veteripont, but they are not descended from him, for he dyed S. P.[110] & his wife was remarryed to Cromwell S. P. so that all returned to the Cliffords.}

[II.284]

{Tenure}
All Customary ~~few~~ Arbitrary & Heriotable to the Earle of Darby

[II.272]

{Bethom} Mostly customary – Except 4 or 5 Freholds. The Lord has Waif & Stray.

{Custome}
Of a man marrying an Heiress & \ she / set him Ten[an]t. The Estate goes to his Heir not hers. The widowes pay Heriots - & has halfe, dureing (pure) widow[hood].

[II.272]

{Bethom}Widow duering p[ure] viduity [enjoy] ½ the Estate.

[II.281][111]

{Tithe}
2 Houses ~~that~~ \ whose lands / adjoyning on the Parke payes corne in kinde: at Beckhead. Sc. John Pow & Frances Bowes. All the rest of the Chapelry pay Prescr[iption] Hay. Also prescription Hay money. Wooll in kinde, & Lamb. 1d Tythe Lamb, ~~& they Reckon~~ (for 1– ob, 2 – 1d, 3 – 1d ob. &c.)

For 0d. A custom that if they sell afore Candlemas the Buyer is to pay the Tithe – & if after Candlemas the seller payes – which Holds in all Goods*. And for sheepe tis a penny a sheepe.

{Manner House}
Witherslack Hall was anciently the manner house (but the Court is kept in the School) where there are Coates of Armes. No.[112]

[Machell's Notes: II.281]

*{?} But q[uery] when it commences.

[II.277]

[Witherslack Hall]
{Wideslack hall; one little wooded \ Parke / & all about Trees of Laurell as high as the house.}[113]

[107] 'Elizabeth, daughter of Lord James de Leyburne, had married Lord Thomas Dacre of the North in 1558.'
[108] 'The said Elizabeth, widow of Thomas de Dacre of the North, was third wife of Thomas, duke of Norfolk, 1567.'
[109] Cross-crosslet symbol.
[110] 'Without issue.'
[111] The page top begins, 'The School is in the papers taken there.' [Where is not known.]
[112] 'No' was written in different ink.
[113] Written in pencil and scored through.

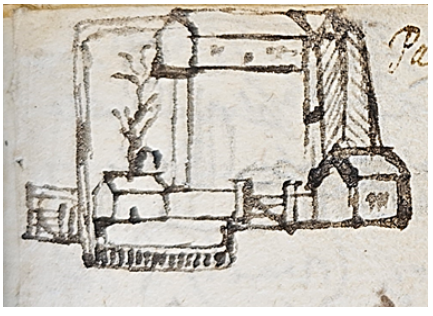


Figure 2.4.12. Witherslack Hall. II.277.

[II.281]

There is an Ile calld Holme below Medop, a Bethom 4m. W. ~~S.W.~~ twixt Arnside & Cartmell – sometimes in Westmorland & payes Sesses to it; sometimes in Lancashire and payes Sesses to it – whence som call it the Floateing Iland. But all the mistery is in the Bonder Beck calld Pull, which is Pow, which sometimes Runes on the one Side of it; sometimes on the other.

{Eminent Men}
Dr \ John / Barwick – Dean of Durham & St Pauls – Dr Peter Barwick his Brother Dr in Phisic/ John Labourn Bishop of [Blank] Sir Thomas Broughton.

[Rarities of Art and Nature]
In Yeakwood in Witherslack near Jacks beck a Capella ½ m. S.E. on the ~~left hand~~ N. side the Way to Kendall, where there are 2 long stones set on Edge.

{Parke}
Witherslack having Fallow Deere, Goates. Many clean & foule marts. Many wild cats {8d a Skew-Cat,[114] 3s a mart, foul mart 8d.}

Heston Tarne – Twixt Lancashire & Westmorland 200 yards long & as broad – lyes in the Pow. Water is 14 fathom deep & has in it Pikes Buss & Eales – a Capella ½ a mile N.W. & is part in Lancashire part here. 6 or 7 Swans at a Time. Ravens in Whittbarrow.

[II.280B]

{A Cave} at Howridden \ i.e. Hill Ridden / a Capella 2m. N., & from the Hall 1m. N.; a Strait Entery so that you goe \ in / sidewas. But within is a [square][115] Roome 3 yards & more, & an Hole descending god knows how deep; as by stones into water. In the Entery are 2 little wells which petrify.

[II.281]

{Witherslack Well}
There is a well calld the Holy Well a Capella 1m. South

[II.282]

which hat[h] don diverse Cures: and thereupon hathe received its name, as having som thing of Sanctity in it. {It was found by accident, by Ann the daughter of Mathew Layfield one of th[ose] who getting strawberryes ~~about~~ \ in / this place in 1656 and being thirsty dranke of the water and wondering at the brackishness of it (& the manner of its operation) told her father, who tried the Experiment first himself & then Recommended it to other. Upon which it grew famous having don many cures & these more Especially:}[116]

[114] Skewbald cat.
[115] Sketch of a square shape.
[116] This narrative is repeated, lightly scored through, on MS.II.284; it has been omitted from this edition.

Method for [describing the curative properties of] wells

1. Anno Domini
2. Person
3. Place
4. County
– Age
5. Distemper
6. The method of cure
[7.] What remarquable in it

{§1} Circa 1671.
Katherine \ Borwick – now Katherine / Hartley~~son~~ of Halecot in Witherslack (who~~se~~ was neece to Deane Borwick) \ and at whose house I lodged / being then about the age of 9 yeares, was so very feeble for halfe a year, that she could not goe 20 yards without resting. And with Drinkeing 9 cups of the said water, her face and all her body turn'd yallow: upon which she tooke a Drinke for the Jaundice, and so Recover'd: But doth belive the well would have ~~don It~~ \ cured her / without the said drinke.

{§2} Anno Domini 1674
Robert Warton of Sidgewick in the Parish of Kendall ætat 18. Being pained at his stomack, and so very feeble that they were forced to carry him the water because he could not walke to the well; drank thereof till It ~~caused~~ \ made / him ~~to~~ vomit; & cast up 5 wormes out of his stomack all hared over like unto ulboades (as they call 'em here), which are your Palmerswormes,[117] being in length one inch & ½. After which he Recovered Speedily; and in a weekes time could walke a whole mile.

{§3} A.D. 1678
A woman of Gresing\h/am in the County of Lancaster (whose name I have not) Being in a Timpany,[118] was cured thereof in 4 or 5 dayes by drinkeing this water; in so much that she ~~could~~ \ was able to / Shear (or Reape corne) in the next Harvest following. Vide (4).

(§4) Anno Domini 1689.
John Watheman of Carneforth in the Parish of Warton & County of Lancaster; being 50 yeares of age, was cured of a Leprocy or Long-runing Itch, by batheing herein & drinkeing the water. (Vide 5°)

{§5} About a year since – Sc. A.D. 1691.
It brought a worme \ in shape / like a fluke from a man \ by / purgeing; ~~by flooke~~ which worme was above 2 inches in breadth, & somwhat longer than it was broad, The Colour Yallow; & the Back all plated like the End puding[119] of an Horse when he dungeth. After which the man became very well.[120]

{§6} {1692}
And this very last f[r]om about 3 weekes afore I was there – A woman of Russendall in the Bottome of Westmorland

[II.283][121]

having an akeing in her arme, and no use of it; at the first drinkeing (it caused her to vomit & remov'd the Paine into her neck; & before she came from ~~It~~ \ the well / she could hold the pot in her hand, & in

[117] Palmer-worm: A small terrestrial invertebrate with many legs; a centipede or millipede, a woodlouse, a caterpillar. *OED*.
[118] From the 16th to the 18th centuries, a morbid swelling or tumour of any kind was known as a timpani. *OED*.
[119] End-pudding = rectum. See Bertil Hedewind, *The Dialect of Dentdale in the West Riding of Yorkshire* (Upsala, 1967), 326.
[120] A fluke is a parasitic worm of several species, found especially in the livers of sheep and so called from its resemblance to a fluke or flounder. *OED*.
[121] MS.I.283 contains a first draft of the cure-narratives on II.281; it has been omitted from this edition.

three dayes time was \ perfectly / well {ab Hinc 3 weeks}.[122] There is a well near it Turnes peat into Stone.

[Other Rarities of Nature in Beetham Parish]

{Winstar flu}
The River Winstar Runns into the Sea twixt Lindal & Meathop – a Capella 2m. S. It springs about Winstar Chaple & comes on the W. side of Calmer Hall & so W. from this Chap. ½ mile. {The Brigges first, then the Brierlyes}[123]

[II.284]

{Notable Springs}
Beckhead, a broad flowing spring in the road from Kendal a Capella 1m. E. Drives a Mill within 2ce[124] 12 score [yards.]

{Rare Woode}
Hundreds of Ewes,[125] som [of] them large ones, at Arnside Parke & Hagg. & at Slack head young ones, & elsewhere.[126]
Large Ewe 5 fathom[127] (in the parke near the Hall & plenty of Ewes up & down, tho now much destroyed – Juniper everywhere which they hear call Savin.[128]
Savons; great store all over especially at Witherslack.[129]
Holly Store, Box, Laurrell & Bayes \ Rosemary / in gar[dines].

{Fruites}
Raspberryes (bleaberryes few) Strawberryes enow. Wineberri: gardines onely.
Good store of Orchards all over.

{Earthes}
Fuel plenty – in the mos[s]. S.W. a Capella ¼ mile
All the parish richly provided of Turfe & peat and near at hand.[130]

{Stones}
They have a sort of stone, like Rockwork, as if it were made of petrify'd water, of a white brownish colour, & just like the Artificial Stone at Water Crooke, & Plumton in Cumberland.[131] This they call marle. But have no pit marle. They sell it to Kendal to scower wooden vessel. It is at Far \ Hee / Fell End in Witherslack, just ~~betwixt~~ on the Edge of Heversham Parish.

[122] 'She was perfectly well three weeks afterwards.'
[123] Machell's meaning: Cowmire Hall belonged first to the 'Brigges', then to the 'Brierleys'. Cowmire Hall was owned by the Briggs family. Thomas Briggs' daughter and coheir, Agnes, married Sir Richard Hutton (c.1594-1645) of Goldsborough, Yorks. The Goldsborough estate eventually came to their grandson Robert Byerley, MP for Knaresborough from 1695 to 1714. See https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1604-1629/member/hutton-richard-1594-1645. In the margin at this point there is a heading, 'Armes', but there is no further text.
[124] Twice.
[125] Ewe = yew.
[126] This line has been removed from notes on MS.II.272.
[127] In circumference.
[128] 'Savins': small bushy junipers, Juniperus sabina, native to Europe and Western Asia, with overlapping scale-like mature leaves and blue-black berry-like cones. Later, more fully: savin juniper. *OED*. Savin coal was fine charcoal made from juniper wood, prized in the making of gunpowder, see William Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 141.
[129] This line has been removed from notes on MS.II.272.
[130] This line has been removed from notes on MS.II.272.
[131] Voreda = Old Penrith.

A Veine of Spar 2 yards broad & above 50 long a Capella ¼ m. S. called Halecat – The House, Rakefoot house.
Limestone all over. No fre stone.[132]
Blew walling stone, & black blewish Slate near Blea Cragg Brigg, ¼ [m.] W. a Capella.
They fetch their Hewing Stone from Hesum[133] in Lancashire 12m. S.*.
Mr Bellingham sought for a gold mine at the South End of Whitbarrow 7 \ 8 / yeares since: But lost all that he had before he found any.
{Memorandum: a white huen stone quarry just now discovered in Lythe S. a Capella Crosthwaite 1m. – & from Heversham iiij N. ad Crosthwaite.}[134]

[II.272][135]
In Hale Moss, white marle ab Ecclesia 1m. S. where there are diver[s] pitts calld Roche pits.[136]

[Fish]
Beethom Hall: There are ponds formerly stored with tench.
The Lord of Darby has the fishing (except with the Rod) in his own Lordships.
In ~~Kent is~~ Beethom is taken Salmon, Sallans,[137] morts,[138] sprots,[139] Troutes, Eales, Smelts,[140] Forke Tales,[141] The like & more plentiful in [the river] Kent. Pike are yard longe.

Great Store of Duck & Mallard, Teal, widgeon. Quantityes wild geese.
Lizards Black.

[132] This line has been removed from notes on MS.II.272.
[133] Heysham.
[134] In the MS, Machell added a codicil to this information, 'But Note in the margent above a white hewn stone quarry lately discovered.'
[135] A note page, presenting transcription difficulties; the ink has blotted in many places.
[136] This phrase is unclear. 'Roche' could be a name for a large piece of stone, a boulder; or it could represent alum, especially rock alum. E.g. in 1700, 'C. Leigh, *Nat. Hist. Lancs*. iv. 76: Allum may be divided into three Classes, the Roch, the Feather'd, and the Trichites.' All *OED*.
[137] Insecure transcription. No fish of this name has been found, although a 'solan' or 'sollen' is a gannet. *OED*.
[138] Mort: a young salmon, especially a young salmon in its third year. *OED*.
[139] Sprot: a sprat (*Sprattus sprattus*, family *Clupeidae*); also, occasionally, a smelt. *OED*.
[140] Smelt: a small fish (*Osmerus eperlanus*) allied to the salmon, emitting a peculiar odour; the sparling or spirling. *OED*.
[141] Forktail: a name given to the salmon in its fourth year. *OED*.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 5. Parish of Burton]

[II.296]

{Burton Parish in Kendal}

[Machell's Initial Notes and Queries]
Burton Parish in Kendal, & Preston Chapel.
Q. for L. & B. of the church, a bounder & things of note.
Dalton Hall.
Holm parke house.
Qu. of Richard Claughton Balif of Burton. Thomas Jackson his brother in law, Stuart of Dalton.
Draw the Steeple.
See the Easter Booke.[1]
The old Ruine.
Qu. of James Dawson for the Tenure & Succession of Holm Skale.
Of Mr T[…][2] Banke about Claythorp descent &c.
Mr Wood ~~vicar~~ Schoolmaster. Send Word to Mr Thomas Wood Schoolmaster of Burton.
Mr Batty Curate.[3]
Mr Usher[wood] Vicar.[4]
The Town of Burton is distant ab Ecclesia about [Blank] m. S.

[II.287]

Burton Parish; Preston Chapelry

Burton Parish, so called from the Town where the Church stands, is in Chester Diocess, & Barony of Kendale. It is bounded on the East with Kirkby Loansdale parish; on the West with Bethom & Heversham; on the North with Kendale; & on the South with Warton in Lancashire {from which tis divided by Heerin-Sike. This divide[s] the countyes not the parishes.} Yet there is a little Town in Lancashire belonging to it, which is called Doulton.[5]
The form thereof is oblong extending it selfe from (some stragling houses called) Holm-Scales in the North to Hearin-Sike in the South about 6 miles;[6] and from Dawkton in Lancashire in the East, to Halemoss in the West about 2 mile broad.
The Soyle is a blackish clay & blackish sand but for the most part limestone; & affordes both woodland, arable, pasture & meadow: neither very fertill nor very barren. Their fuell is peat, which are fetch'd from a place calld Burton Moss, about a mile from the Church. They have used no Hollyes in memory of man;[7] neither now doe they make any bone fires on Midsommer eve;[8] But on St Jam[es']s day[9] they have a Rushbearing, the young mades who performe the solemnity being entertaind with musique, &c. and such sort of Junketts as the countrey affordes, and there they dance about the May poll; but none of their mirth is sufferd to be acted in the church or church yard. {Dr Am[…]er[10] found som, being in the Black Book at Yorke.}[11]

---

[1] An account book for recording money paid at Easter by parishioners to the incumbent of a parish. See S.J. Wright, 'Easter books and parish rate books: a new source for the urban historian', in David Reeder (ed.), *Urban History Yearbook* (Leicester, 1985), 30-45.
[2] The name could begin, 'Trin' or 'Tim', but the word is unclear.
[3] CCED records show only that one William Batty was ordained deacon at Rose Castle, Carlisle, in 1638.
[4] John Usherwood, Vicar of Burton in Kendal, 1691-1694. CCED.
[5] Dalton [in Furness]. Machell originally used the spelling Doukton, but erased the 'k' and added the 'l'.
[6] As the numeral is blotted, it is difficult to decipher. Ewbank (p. 46) and Godwin (MS) read it as '6' but it might be '4'. See Jane M. Ewbank (ed.), *Antiquary on Horseback. The First Publication of The Collections of the Rev. Thos. Machell Chaplain to King Charles II Towards a History of the Barony of Kendal*, CWAAS Extra Series 19 (Kendal, 1963), and see Jeremy Godwin, Machell MSS, CAC(C), DX 1974/H9410.
[7] The reference is to the custom of burning branches of holly at Christmas time. See Machell's Preface, I.81-82.
[8] Machell refers to bone fires or bean fires (burning bones of dead dogs or horses). Machell's Preface, I.82.
[9] 25 July.
[10] Parts of this name are obscured by the binding.
[11] An almost illegible margin comment. A 'Black Book' could be a record book or ledger (bound in black) relating to finance or administration (as used in cathedrals etc.); but if this comment is understood in its context, it might refer to the recording of unacceptable practices, in which case a 'Black Book' recorded names of people

[The Church]

{L[ength] 33. Br[eadth] 16 on the outside.}
The name of the Church is said to be St Hellens there being a well about 3 score yards northeast from the church which bears that name; howbeit, the feast or wake \ Rushbearing / being yearly celebrated \ observed / on St James his day, it may more probably be dedicated to him. It is built of stone with a Square Tower having 3 bells in it, and in the body of the church ~~are of stone~~ \ two / row of pillers.
{1 Oratory, now ~~Leighs~~ Daltons Quire wainscoted by Sir Peter Leigh – 1628 on the end of the North Ile;[12] 1 in the end of the South Ile – wainscoted by Sir John Preston – of H[olker] 1634.}

II.290

Church visited in a preamble: visited 16 Sep. 1678.



Figure 2.5.1. Small sketch of Burton Church. II.291.

II.289

In the Body
On the screen – 1.[13]

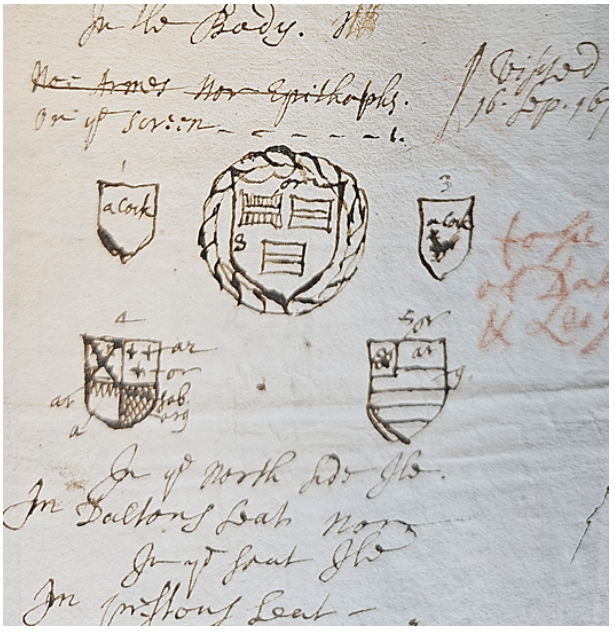


Figure 2.5.2. Burton Church Arms, Sketches 1-5. II.289.

In the North Side Ile in Daltons Seat Non. In the gr[e]at Ile in Prestons Seat [see below]

liable to censure or punishment. The name was allegedly given to an official report prepared in 1535-36 for King Henry VIII, after an investigation into the condition and administration of the monasteries. *OED*.
[12] Sir Peter (Piers) Leigh of Lyme Hall, Disley, Cheshire.
[13] '~~Nor Armes nor Epitaphs~~. On the screen – 1. On the Screen.' To the right of these coats of arms is an unclear note in red crayon referring to the 'crest' of Dalton and Leighton.
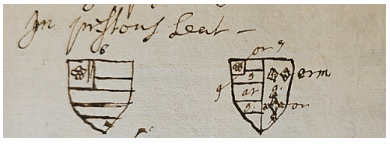


Figure 2.5.3. Arms, Sketches 6-7. II.289.

On the Capital of the \ farthest / pillar on the South Side the Chancel – is this Coat of Arme which seems to have bin the founders*.

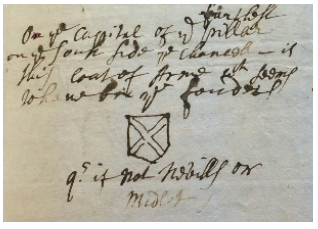


Figure 2.5.4.'Arms on the Capital of the farthest pillar.' II.289.

[Machell's Notes: II.289 and II.290]

*q? if not Nevills or Midletons.

{Leighs. Mr \ James / Moore sayes are in Wiggin church on an ~~Pennen~~ escutch[eon] A bloody hand in medio Gules he thinke. Q. of Tho. Jackson of Dalton,[14] Stuart.}

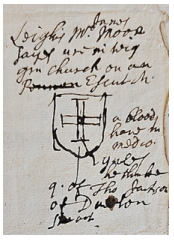


Figure 2.5.5. Leigh Arms. II.289.

[II.290]

At Burton Armes

Prestons has tenants & held in – Preston C H. Holmbeck 1 per mile ab Ecclesia w.

[II.291]

{Court Baron at Burton}

{Anywhere pro arbitr[i]o Senescalli.[15] – for there is no manner house.}

[II.287]

[Families] {Out of the East[er] B[ook]}

1. Burton ½ query S. ab Ecclesia = (47) fam[ilies.]
2. Claythrop[16] NE ab Ecclesia ¼ m[ile]
3. Holm = N. ab Ecclesia 1 mile (34 [families])
4. Dalton ab Ecclesia S.E. 1 m[ile] – f[amilies] 20*.
5. Preston Patric fa[milies] 50

[6.] Holm Scales – most of it free purchased time out of mind. How many Tenements? – fam[ilies] 12 Very poore –

[14] A blotted word, some letters illegible.
[15] 'At the discretion of the steward'.
[16] Clawthorpe.

The old Vic[arage] ~~sold of~~ deteined in the 8th of King James I [1610-11], there being a contest betwixt Mr [?] Midleton, the Patrone,[17] \ & Curwen [who] dyed in the R[oad] from Lond[on] s[ine] suspitione veneni.[18] /
{An ancient Hall on the side of the Church yard – now too converted to Tenency, where Ruins yet appear.}

[Machell's Notes: II.287]

*? Memorandum, they talke of one end of Dalton being formerly calld High Burton; [er]go Alter if so the Bounder.

[II.288]

Ex Informatione John Lucas of Holm ætat. 44. Richard Claugh~~th~~ton ætatis 45.

[Tithes.1.]
The Place is a Vicaridge, the Great Tythes being impropriate, and now belonging to Sir Thomas Preston of the Manner in Lancashire.[19] But the Smal Tythes belong to the Vicar, such as calves pigs geese wool & lambes; but many of them are not payed in kinde; for if there be X calves, he has 4s for his Tythe; if V, 2s; if under then he has paid ~~him~~ 2d½ for every calfe.
{In kinde for the 1t year}
So for lambes, \ the 1t 2 years in kinde, / he has 10d for the tenth Lamb ~~& so a penny a Lamb be they more or less~~ \ as in other places.[20] /
But there is no Glebe except the church yard, which makes the place very inconsiderable, not much exceeding 30li per annum; and which to be pittyed as well as admir'd, there is not an house to put his head in.
{Lord Montgomery has [tithe of] Burton, Holm & Dalton: Lord Clifford has Tith of Preston Patric & Holmskale. But Montgomery [has] the Manner house & Demane of Preston Patric} [where] there is one chapel called Preston, belonging to the parish. Distant ab Ecclesia 3 miles Norwards.

[II.291]

[Tithes. 2.]
{Hay} In Burton they Pay ~~hay~~ to the Vicar 8d per Annum, for leeses – for their meadowes – so much a piece, as in the Vicars Composition Booke. Corn as in the other paper.
Wool in kinde all the parish over – to the Vicar by flece = the Parishioner having 2 head choyces before he ~~begin~~ takes his if they be ten; if 9 the same; if at 8 [the same]; but at 7 they take 3 & he a flece, pay[ing] them nothing. If 6 they take 3 & he a flece out of the Remander; If 5, he takes up halfe a flece; if iiij – he has 1d a piece & so on to 1[at] 1d. Lambe as in the other paper. & This is general over the Parish.

[Burton Market and Cross]

[II.296]

[Burton Market]
Burton was made a Market Towne ~~The~~ by a Charter from King Charles the 2. in 1661. The market to be kept every Tuesday, & 2 fairs every year, Sc. on St George his Day[21] & St Bartholomew.[22] Procurd by Sir George Mildleton \ Kt & Baronet / Lord of the Manner, & of Leyton in Lancashire – with Toll & 1d a Beaf;[23] & a Quart a Loade for whea[t], Peas, Beans & Barly;[24] & nothing more, how much

[17] The first name is unclear. According to Nicolson and Burn, the advowson in the reign of Elizabeth I was granted to Edward, earl of Lincoln, and Christopher Gough, gentleman. Soon afterwards, the advowson was in the hands of the Middleton family of Leighton in Lancashire, the last of whom was Sir George Middleton. In subsequent years it passed through many hands. See *N&BI*, 235.
[18] 'Without suspicion of poison.'
[19] The beginning of this sentence appears on MS.II.287.
[20] Other sentences on tithes and impropriations relating to milch cows, such as '…a cow in milk there 2 years in kinde; after, as in other places, 5[d] …[etc.]' are obscured by the binding.
[21] 23 April.
[22] 24 August.
[23] A 'beef' was an ox. *OED*.
[24] MS: '& a Quart ~~at a Load~~ a Loade – ~~& no more for~~ for ~~whea~~ whea Peas Beans & Barly.'

soever he bring in on that day. & for Oates 3 handfulls, as at Kirkby Loansdal. & Stallage,[25] ½ if all their goodes present[ed] to sale be worth 13s½.[26]

[Burton Cross]



Figure 2.5.6. Burton Cross. '3 yards & ½ y[ard]. 6 stairs, 10 inch hig[h]' Drawing in red pencil. II.290.

[II.288]

[Lordships]

There are 4 Lordships in the Parish: Burton; Holm \ ab Ecclesia 1 m N.; / Preston [Patrick]; Dalkton. & Note that Farleton \ in Bethom / comes in between Holm and Preston, cutting the parish into 2 parts.

[III.321][27]

Carta Antiqua

[Charter of Richard I, confirming to Gilbert, son of Roger, son of Reinfred, and to his heirs, a carucate of land and a fishery at Levens; four carucates of land at Farleton, four carucates of land at Beetham; four carucates of land at Preston and in Holm; two carucates of land at Burton; one carucate of land at Hincaster; one carucate of land at Preston; and three carucates of land at Hopperton.]

{Cart[a] eiusdem Gilb[ert]i}
Rich[ard]us dei gr[ati]a Rex Ang[lie] etc. O[mn]ibus fidelibus suis Sal[u]t[e]m: Sciatis nos dedisse, et concessisse, et prouti Carta mea Confirmasse Gilb[ert]o fil[io] Rogeri, fil[ij] Reinfr[edi], et heredibus suis, unam Carucata[m] terre in Levenes cum piscaria eiusdem Vill[ae]. et 4 Carucata[s] terr[e] in Farleton, et in Betene, et 4 Carucat[as] terr[e] in Prestona, et in Holm: et 2 Carucat[as] terr[e] in Berton et una[m] Carucata[m] terr[e] in Hennecastre, et una[m] Carucata[m] terr[e] in Prestona, et 3 Carucat[as] terr[e], in Hopp[er]etona [?], et una[m] piscaria[m] qua ad easdem terr[as] p[er]tin[et], pro homagio, et Servicio suo, et pro ut sterlingone[s] quas nobis dedit. Scilicet ei et heredibus suis tenere, de nobis et heredibus meis in Feodo et he[re]ditate, cum o[mn]ibus p[er]tinen[tij]s suis p[er] Serviciu[m] unius Feodi militis p[ro] o[m]ni Servicio : Quare Voluimus et firmiter p[re]cipimus, quod p[re]d[i]c[t]us Gilb[er]tus et heredes sui h[ab]eant et teneant p[re]d[i]ct[as] terr[as], de nobis et he[re]dibus meis in Feo[do] et he[re]ditate, bene, et in pace, libere, et quiete, et honorifice cu[m] o[m]nibus libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus in eccl[es]ijs in bosco in plana in vijs et semitis in piscarijs et vivarijs in stagnis et aquis et molendinis in pratis et pasturis in Burgo et extra Burgum, et in o[m]nibus locis, liberas et quietas, de geld [tax] et Denegeld et de Montegeld[28] et de Hornegeld[29] et

[25] Stallage was a tax or toll levied for the liberty of erecting a stall in a fair or market. *OED*.
[26] 13s 6d.
[27] In the MS, this charter is placed in Volume III, among various Shap charters.
[28] Tax on animals brought back unsold from market.
[29] Cornage.

de Blodwithe et de Frithewite[30] et de Seirwitha [?] et de Ferdwitha[31] cum Soca et Saca[32], et Toll, et theam […?], et insangthe […?] et cu[m] o[m]nibus libertatibus et liberis Consuetudini[bus], que ad easde[m] ter[ras] p[er]tinent.
Test[ibus]
Ld Dunelmensis Etc. et multis alijs: Is erat tenor Cart[e] me[e] in primo Sigillo meo Q[u]e quia aliquando p[er]ditu[m] fuit et du[m] Carti essen[t] in Alemania in aliena pot[es]tate constituti mutatum est: huius autem Innovac[i]o[n]is testes sunt hij Ld Sarum Ep[iscop]us, Unnanus [?] Archiadiaconus dereb. R. I. et B. Capellani.[33]

[II.288]

{**1. Burton Lordship**}

The Lordship of Burton is a sandy soyle & hath much lime \ stone / in it, but no wood worth speaking of. Their measure of Land is 6 yards & ½ to the Rood; & 4 Roods to the Acre*. And their Arable & pasture is generally worth per annum 7s; meadow 10s; moss 1s {[Lord of the manor of] Burton has bin always know to take stray good.}

{Tenants & Tenure}
There are no \ valuable / freeholders in this Lordship. The Lord payes a free-rent of 31s \ to Crowne anciently due / to Kendall Castle of which he holdes the tenants by an Agreement with the Lord & Decree in Chancery. [They] pay Rent & fine certain, which fine is only double the Rents, & Due upon death of Lord & change of Tenant.

{Court & Court House. Q. If not the Vicaridge. The people call part of it the Vicaridge.}

The Lords House is called Claythorp hall† & part Fryer Flatts, not far from the church, on the North Side of it, to which there is a Demain belonging, farm'd for about 40li. It is good land and of all sortes excepting woodland. Another place calld Burton H[all] \ 80 yards from the church / {which pays Rent to the King. Held by Jo. Lucas, one Thomas[34] and others.}

{Descent of the Manner}
It belonged ~~anciently~~ \ formerly / to the Midletons, Sir George Midleton of Leightone in Lancashire (2 mile hence) who daughter & \ heir / Mary Midleton, transferrd the Right (by marryage) to the

[30] Fine for breach of the peace.
[31] Fine for not doing military service.
[32] Suits and jurisdiction.
[33] 'Richard by the grace of God King of England etc. sends greetings to all his loyal subjects. Know that we have given and granted and thus by my charter confirmed to Gilbert, son of Roger, son of Reinfred, and to his heirs, one carucate of land at Levens along with the fishery of the same Vill and four carucates of land at Farleton, also at Betene [Betham?], and four carucates of land at Preston and in Holm; also two carucates of land at Burton and one carucate of land at Henncaster [Hincaster] and one carucate of land at Preston and three carucates of land at Hopperton [Hoppergate?] and one fishery which pertains to the same lands, in return for his homage and service and likewise the money which he has given us. Indeed, [we have granted] to him and his heirs to hold [them] from us and our heirs in fee and inheritance with all their appurtenances through the service of a fee of one soldier for all service. Wherefore we have willed and we have strictly ordered that the aforesaid Gilbert and his heirs should have and hold the aforesaid lands from us and my heirs in Fee and Inheritance, well, and in peace, freely and undisturbed, honourably and with all liberties, and with customary freedoms in the churches, in the woodland, in the field, in the roads and the paths, in the fisheries and fish-ponds, in the pools and waters and mills, in grassings and pastures, in the Town and without the Town, and in all places freely and peaceably; in matters of tax and Danegeld, of Montegeld and Cornage, of Bloodwit, Frithwit, Seirwit, and Ferdwit along with suits and jurisdiction, and Toll and […?] and […?], and with all liberties and free customs which pertain to these same lands. Witnesses: Lord Dunelm Etc. and many others. This was the sense of my charter under its first seal, which, because it (Sc. the seal) was at some time lost, and as long as the charters were in Germany, being in the power of others, it was changed: however, the witnesses of this confirmation [sc. of the charter] are these, The Lord Bishop of Salisbury, Archdeacon Unnanus [?] dereb… [?], R. J. and B. Chaplains.' [The last few words here are uncertain.]
[34] The rest of this name is obscured by the binding.

Oldfields of Sommerforth in […], whose son George is present […][35] thereof & his mother at present Patron.

[Machell's Notes: II.288]

*{yards – rods; 6 – perch; 4 – a rood; 4 – an Acre. This to the General}
†{which has bin called the Parsonage house […] Moore house}[36]

[II.291]

[Bounder]
It is bounded on the East, with Hutton Roofe in the parish of Kirkby [Lonsdale]. Accord[ing] to the Bounder of that Chappelry: On the South with Warton P[arish] in Lancashire, being divided from it By Dalton Parke fence \ & Deerslat[37] / on the W. with Bethom P[arish] ~~being distinguished~~ which strikes quite through as like a Tonge – adjoyneing \ on the / East to Kirkby Parish: By a Ring fence commonly knowe = On the N[orth] – when, this Parish comes in agane, with Hutton Chapl in Kendal parish.



Figure 2.5.7. Orientation diagram from Burton Church. II.291.

See It[inerary][38]

{Soyle}
{Generally Limestone excepting Preston}

{Division} into \ Chapelries & / Lordships}
Wee have Burton, Dalton & Holm. The chaple & manner of Preston Patric, & the Hamlet of Holmskale. {See the E[aster] Booke for fam[ilies.]}

Burton
In Burton is the Lordship of Burton & the Hamlet of Caythrop. Som good Houses in Burton lately built – a Free School near the Ch. yard wall on the E. side thereof. Sallary about 5li 10s 0d per Annum – given by several of the Town. a Grammar School = when it shall be taught by a Master of Artes there is 10 li per Annum given by John Hutton of Hindon in Bishoprick, being Borne here in Holm: But while it is not so taught

[II.293]

as above said, it goes to the poore of Burton & Bethom as by his Will {In Registry at Richmont of which diverse [persons] have copyes.}

[Machell's Notes: II.292 and II.293]

Claythorp answers at Heston – at the Manner house there {Claythrop ab Ecclesia ½ m. NE}
{Tr[adition}: [Burton] Anciently to Studleys of Hornby L. ~~formerly~~ belongd to the Midleton of Leighton. Now to Oldfields of Sommerford in Cheshire.}
[II.293]
They clame a Beacon on Farleton Knot: Sc. that which is next \ S. / to Holm Parke.
Homeskale – q. the Tenure – Lords & […]?[39]

[35] Some words are obscured by the binding.
[36] Some of this note is obscured by the binding.
[37] Deerslack, Deerslet, Durslett: flat meadow frequented by deer, see *Westmorland Place-Names*. The word following this is unclear.
[38] 'See Itinerary', is written below the compass diagram. See Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary.
[39] An illegible word is followed by Machell's question mark.

Claythrop \ all / Customary Tenants fine Arbitrary Heriotable – Belinghams til ~~of~~ 1689. Now Col. James Graham.

[2.] Holm

All Arbitrary, one halfe Heriotable the other not – for formerly this Lordship was divided twixt Tonsdal[40] & Preston, whereof Tonsdal were & are free of Heriots to this very day; but are deeper charged in their Rents, so that they are knowne & distinguishd by the Rentalls, but not otherwise; lying sparsim.[41] In Holm \ & Burton & Claythorp & Dalton / the Widdowes enjoy but ½ [of the deceased husbands estate] dureing non-couverture.[42] But in all the rest ~~them~~.[43] But in Preston Patric, as there for Holmskales qu[ery]*. But a 2nd wife &c. has but the 3rd.
Anciently the Prestons of the manner & Tunsdalls, but afterwards came into Prestons hand only, & is now in the Lord Montgomery†.

[Machell's Notes: II.293 and II.294]

*Qu[ery] of Holm Skale.
†{They are said both Howcar & Mon[tgomery] to have come out of Ireland. Query.}
[II.294] Oldfield of L[eighton] has[44] an house ¼ [mile] NE over against Moss Loan. 100 Acres.[45]

[II.295]

Holm takes Stray. 5 or 6 Freeholds. Ab Ecclesia 1m. Northwards. Lawyer Pinder Inherited 60li.
{Holm C. Barronial. No Manner House – Holm pays 4s per Annum for all their hay.}
{Holm Soyle} Holm is much of the same quality, but hath som wood in it, most of which is Ash.

{Bounder, Tenants & Tenure}
On the East it hath Kirkby [Lonsdale] Lordship; on the West Bethom; on the north Heversham. & no manner house but old Lodge in the parke, which parke is well stored with fallow Deer, being a mile long & about 3 in circumference, And there is no Demain unless this be one, which for the most part is course earth.
{Holm payes a Rent [to] Col. Howard; Rent to som of that n[ame], & another Rent 3li to the Crown.
{None pay to the vicar, but 15s to the Impropriator.}

{Descent of the Manner}
It belongs to Sir Thomas Preston [Lord] of The Manner – But now to the Lord Montgomery.

[Holm: N[otes] G[eneral]}
Foul & clean marts. Wild cates & foxes; to[o] many all over.
{White marle plentifull in all the Mosse 1 yared deep.}
Bayes & Laurell pretty common in Gardine.
Store of Orchards. Raspberry Crouneberryes.[46]

[3.] Preston Patric

3 miles Northw. [Ecclesia]. Preston hath on the East, Kirkby [Lonsdale]; on the West Burton; & Heversham, N. Kendal on the South. It hath one \ little / parke, but now disparked*. The manner house is Preston hall†.

{How now disposed of}
It belongs to Sir Thomas Preston [Lord] of the Manner.

[40] Tunstall? See Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 60.
[41] Latin: 'scattered'.
[42] 'Non-couverture': the legal position of a widow; the opposite of 'coverture': the condition or position of a woman during her married life, when she is by law under the authority and protection of her husband. *OED*.
[43] Transcribed as seen.
[44] An unclear word (in red pencil) follows. It could be 'bu[ilt]'.
[45] Notes in red pencil placed at the top right of the page.
[46] The crown berry: a lingonberry or cranberry. *OED*.

Holmskale‡ distant 5m. N. East. {Holmskales joynes with Preston Patric in the payment of the said 15 li.} {They pay hay T[ithe] \ in / Burton.}.

[Machell's Notes: II.295]

*~~No~~ \ a / Demain unless ~~this~~ a Parke.[47]
†See my other paper.
‡q. if a Lordship.

[II.293]

Preston Chaple
Anciently to Preston of Preston Patrick, which [family] was extinguished in 2 daughters co-heire. One maryed to Preston of Howkar, the Preston other manner, & hence the names [of Preston] & Richard{Trad[ition}. Now in the Lord Montgomery.

[II.300]

Sir Thomas Preston
1. Mary P. maryed to Herbert Lord Montgomery.
2. Ann P. maryed to Lord Clifford*.

[Machell's Notes: II.300]

*{Ex infor. George Hilton[48] who calls him Hugh Lord Clifford, but q. if not […][49]}

[II.297]

Preston Chap. in Burton Parish
The Hall stands in a Bottom; the chaple upon an Hill. A fine Dale from the Hall west[wards] & South west & N. west. An Inscription above the Dial with the chaple wardens names {Mr Usherwood Mr Batty}[50] & the Year of Our Lord 1685.
{L[ength] 23, b[readth] 8} outs[ide] S. Quier. Wardens}
In what Saints name this chapel was dedicated is not certainly known; but there is a well about 200 yards E. \ wards / from it cald St Gregoryes well, which gives occasion to suppose it was dedicated unto that Saint{?}[51] Howbeit their Rushbearing is at St James tide.[52]



Figure 2.5.8. Chapel and Hall at Preston Patrick. II.297.

[47] Possible meaning: but no demesne unless this park[?]
[48] The surname here is unclear. If the informant had been George Hilton of Beetham (1673-1725), he would have been only 19 years old at the time Machell visited the area. For George Hilton, Jacobite and diarist, only son of Thomas Hilton (1651-1691), of Hilton House, Beetham, see https://www.cumbrianlives.org.uk/lives-index/h.html, Hilton, George.
[49] The name is obscured by the binding.
[50] CCED records show only that John Usherwood was vicar of Burton-in-Kendal, c.1691-94, and William Batty was ordained Deacon at Rose Castle, Carlisle Diocese, in 1638.
[51] For St Gregory's well, see Peter Lucas, 'A South Westmorland Medieval Holy Well? The Case of St. Gregory's Well, Preston Patrick', *CW3*, 14 (2014), 125-38.
[52] 25 July.

[Tithes]
The Corne Tithe is pay'd in kinde to Trinity College {?} in Cambridge & Leas'd by the Lord Montgomery in right of his wife, one of the Daughters & Coheires of Sir Thomas P[reston] of the Manner in Lancashire. \ [Lord] Clifford has Demanes & Hall & Holme Parke in Holm in Burton and Nether Levins in Hersham. / The hay tithe is pay'd in prescription money unto the College.[53] The wool & Lam is pay'd in kinde unto the Vicar which when they compound after 2 years at 10d a Lamb. but the wool \ always / in specie.[54]
There is no House belonging to the Chaplain, but \ a / Sallary of 5 marke per Annum payable out of the Respective Tenements proportionably according to an ancient settlement charged upon them [is] payd.

[Bounder]
It is bounded on the East with the Lordship of Lupton in Kirkby L[onsdale] parish; on the south with Farleton in Bethom parish from which tis divided by Farleton Beck; on the West with Preston Richard in Heversham P[arish] [from which it is divided] by Gate beck water; on the N. with Old Hutton Chapelry in \ the parish of / Kendal ~~Parish~~.
It is one Entire Lordship calld by the name of Preston Patrick. The occasion of which

[II.299]

is by Tradition that the 2 Prestons – Patric & Richard (whereof this lyeth on the East Side of Gatebeck, the other on the West), were formerly given to 2 Sons of those names*.

{Tenants. Vall.}[55]
The Tenants are Generally (excepting only 3 or 4 free holds) Customary Tenants payin[g] fines Arbitrary, Boones & Heriots, and Waife & Strayes &c. in the Lord of the Manner. And the Tenants have the Customs of the Barony of Kendal in relation to their Widdowes & heiresses.

{Lord[ship]}
They hold of Preston Hall {E. a Capella ¼ m.} where Court Baron is kept; which now belongs to the Lord Montgomery in right of his wife. There are other places calld Hals: Sc.
[1.] Braken Hal. N.E. a Capella 1 mile, a freehold Estate ~~Chan~~nel hall a Customary Tenement under Wharton who has a 3[rd] part of the Lordship, but no Demane Lands†.
[2.] Preston Parke {N. a Capella ½ m.} in the midle of the chapelry standeth; in the North End of which the ~~Ruines of the~~ Keepers house standeth yet know[n] by that name; & [the park] has bin replenished with fallow Deer & wood in the memory of man.

{Ponds [and rarities in nature]}
There are ~~9 or 10~~ several ponds lying together in a place calld Moss Ends {a Capella S. ¼ m.} which afford Eales & Tench.
There is plenty of Black Cocks, & Gray hens with their pootes[56] on Preston fell {E. a Capella 1m.}
There is an Ewe Tree in the Chaple yard – very old & decayd – which shews the Antiquity of the Chaple. Not much wood of any kinde excepting fruites which are very plentiful. Strawberryes ~~resb~~ common.
They have little fuel – And that only turf fetched from Preston fell about a mile of.
Their Stone is generally a Blew Ragg; but yet there is Lime Stone near the West End of the Chapel in Preston Parke.[57]

[Machell's Notes: II.299 and II.300]

*de quo qu?[58]
†{? q. how he came by them?}

[53] MS: 'The hay is pay'd in prescription money, ~~part~~ to \ unto / the College ~~& part to the vicar~~.'
[54] 'In kind'.
[55] Value.
[56] A gray hen is a female black grouse. Poots, poults, or pullets are young domestic fowl, or simply, game birds, irrespective of age. *OED*.
[57] This sentence is placed at the top of MS.II.301.
[58] 'Query this'.

[II.301]

[Preston Hall]
It has bin in the Prestons time immemorial, & gave name unto them – but was odly Quitted by Sir Thomas Preston (who being a Priest before it fell to him by the death of Sir John Preston his Brother) maryed & had Isue 2 daughters (maryed to the Lords Montgomery & Clifford);[59] and being in widowhood, was over persuaded by the Romish priest that the Estate would not prosper unless he returnd to his \ former / function \ ~~agan~~e / upon which he settled it on his 2 da\u/ghters, have[ing] first given his Estate in Lancashire calld the Manner (formerly an Abby)* unto the Jesuites, & so went beyond Sea, putting a period to \ the continuation of / that ancient family upon this Estate. Upon this Grant to the Jesuites discovered by Oates \ & others, / there was a Trial in the Exchequer Tempore Carl. 2.[60] And it was adjudgd forfæted to His Majesty who ces'd upon it & granted a Lease for yeald of the same to Mr Thomas Preston of Howkar Esq.[61]

[Machell's Notes: II.301]

*{No}
Corne; Big vjs.[62] – 0 […] Gal 24 PB.[63]
Arable 2. From 10-20
Meadow 1.
Pasture from 5 to 10.
Fam. 10 to 20.

[II.302]

Gatebeck – so calld at Preston – & Cocklet Tarne
It springs at Lilly Tarne in Killington Lordship – the South ¼ m. off the East Side of Benrig (3. [miles]). Thence S. West ~~to Coe~~ through Branthwate (2.) Thence Through Brigg End ½ m. Thence W. to Beckside Mil \ (4.) / which is on the E. side; thence W. to Low Bleas {½ [mile]} which stands on the N. (Bleas H. ½ m. North from it). Thence S. by the W. Side {2m.} of Gate beck. Thence S. ~~Through~~ \ inter[64] / the 2 Prestons {1m. to Pesza-Brig.[65] Thence W. on the N. Side of Ourthwate[66]

[59] 'Maryed to the Lords Montgomery and Clifford', is encircled, and in the margin is written, '? Place this elsewhere'. '[In]1647 Sir Thomas Preston of the Manor and of the Abbey entered the Society of Jesus; he died at Watten in 1709. Between these dates he created trusts giving the whole of his estates to the Jesuits. Titeup and other property was vested in the name of his sister, Lady Catherine Stourton, and, probably by this means, was secured to the Jesuits when the principal trust (illegal because of the anti-Catholic laws) was discovered either by Titus Oates or by enquiries set on foot by the heir-in-tail, Thomas Preston of Holker. As a result, the rest of the estate was forfeited to the Crown.' F.J. Butler, 'Chronological Record of Tytup Hall and Bibliography of Father West, S.J.', *CW*2, 42 (1942), 180-82, at 181. Titus Oates was an instigator of the Popish Plot panic of 1679, which exploded in response to allegations of a Jesuit conspiracy to murder Charles II, restore the Roman Catholic faith as the state religion and establish a French-backed tyranny under James, duke of York. Richard Cavendish penned a highly coloured demolition of Oates's character: 'Titus Oates, fantasist and virtuoso liar. A former naval chaplain, expelled from the service for homosexuality, he was in his late twenties in 1677 when, "lulled asleep by the allurements of the Popish Syrenes" as he later put it, he was received into the Catholic church. He went to the English Jesuit College at Valladolid in Spain, where he was described as "a curse" and soon expelled, then wheedled his way into a Catholic school at St Omer in France, to be quickly expelled once more. Deeply dislikeable, ugly, foul-mouthed, unsuccessful and painfully poor, he seems by this time to have been bent on revenge on the world that had rejected him, and he came back to England with the tale of a sensational conspiracy.' See *History Today*, 55, 7 (July 2005).
[60] In the reign of Charles II.
[61] See Butler, 'Tytup Hall and Bibliography of Father West, S.J.', *CW2*, 42 (1942), 181; see also, Anne C. Parkinson, *A History of Catholicism in the Furness Peninsula, 1127-1997* (Lancaster, 1998), 33.
[62] Barley, 6 shillings.
[63] These notes on crops were written in large, pencilled script, much of which is unclear.
[64] Inter = between.
[65] Pesa Brig = bridge over Peasey Beck: see Emanuel Bowen and Thomas Kitchin, *A New Map of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmoreland Divided into their Respective Wards, scale about 4 miles to 1 inch* (London, 1760).
[66] Overthwaite.

{2m.} Thence W. through Bethom {1m.½} (the Church on the South Side). Thence W. by the ~~west~~ \ South / End of Milthrop {1m.} ~~by the same~~ in to the Sea.}

[II.295]

[4. Dalton]

Da(uk)ton. Writ Dalto[n] 60 years ago. 1. mile S.E.[67]
[Dalton Hall] Over the Hall dooer

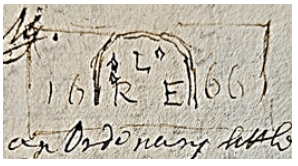


Figure 2.5.9. R \ L / E, 1666, 'Over the hall door'. II.295.

{How it came Dalton.}

Lee of Lime.
In Lancashire. Belongs to Mr Lee \ son of Sir Peter, of Lime in Cheshire / which I shall not touch upon being out of the County.[68]

Peter Leigh of Lime in Cheshire
|
Richard L. of Lime – who built the house.
|
Peter L. of L.

Near the Sea; an ordinary little Hall; The Demaine well wooded. [They say] that Martin Swarth came in at Peel[69] and destroyed the old House, but built agane in Mem[ory].[70]

[General Notes]
A parke at Dalton destr[o]yd time immemorial – foul & clean marts. Well woode[d] is Dalton parke.
Gray Slate in Dalton ab Aula 1m NE at Russbrig.
Dalton a Court Barron – 1 or 2 freeholds.
{Q. of the bounder, of Thomas Jackson Stuart at Dalton Hall}
Dalton tenants are Leasers for 3 Lives.
It is said that Leighton & This [Lordship] belongd to 2 Coh[eirs.] The Lady Midletons – & yet they both came by marriage.
Mem[orandum] a part of the Ruine appear like a Castle wall yet about a yard high {2 m[iles] W. above Yellan.}[71]

[67] Dalton: 'Valley farmstead': dæl, tūn, in allusion to the valley between Dalton Park Wood and Dalton Hall: *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[68] See II.287.
[69] Piel island, Morecambe bay: the location of Piel Castle.
[70] For Martin Swarth (Swartz), see Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.270-II.271.
[71] Yealand.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 6. Grasmere Parish]

[Grasmere]

[II.156]

[Machell's Contents Page] [1]

[All numbers refer to paragraphs marked '§' on the following pages]

{Gresmer Church}

Bounders	4
Dedications	§13 from; a well 16 in Margine
Dimentions of the Parish	10
Discription: Bells a paper	§12
Endowment	§22
Fam[ilies] in it	§6
Marts & wild cats	29
Of Easter Booke (ad Margin)	§7
Parsonage house	§16. 21 }
Patroneage	20 }
Incumbents	22 }
Soyle	32
Stile Arm[es] mo[numents]	27
The fig[ures]	§13 in Marg[in] 33

{The Parochial Manner of Gresmer}

Consistes of Grasmer, Loughrig	24
Tarne	30
Easdal & Coldal Tarne	16[2]

1. Gresmer

Gresmer. Why	24
Bounds	25
Copper	26
Court Baron	35[3]
Custom	38
Descent of the manner	40 & a Paper
Dumbal raise	25
Eagles &c.	31
Hal-steads	27
Long lived men	29
Lord[ship]	36
School	26
Soyle	32. 30
Tenure	37

[1] Editor's Note. Machell wrote this chapter as a series of notes in numbered sections, introduced by a Contents page. Although most of the paragraphs were numbered sequentially, they were not necessarily positioned thematically; neither were they always labelled correctly. Where paragraphs on the same theme were separated, this edition brings some of them together. Additionally, discrete narrative elements – described by Machell as 'Papers' and positioned randomly – are now inserted between relevant paragraphs, to illuminate particular notes. N.B. Not all of Machell's projected 'Papers' were actually written.

[2] Machell numbered this incorrectly; he placed these tarns with the others at §30.

[3] Machell numbered this incorrectly; he placed information on the Court Baron at §39.

2. Loughrig.
Loughrig. Why? 35. 63.
Cite 41
Descent 46
Discrip. 42[4]
Manner house 47. 48
Rarityes in margine[5]
Tenure 45[6]

3. Great Landale.
Why. Infra?[7]

Ambleside Chapel

(Some in Windermerside) §11[8]
Bell 72
School Endowment Discrip. 74[9]
Clappergeat?[10]
Dedication? Discrip. 71
Made Parochial 20. 72. 90
Marc[et[fairs & charters §17
Paper Mil 18
Rarityes 77. 78. Fig. 79
Tenure of Ambleside 17. 18

Manner of Ridal
Armes §5 & 9
Crist & motto ibidem.[11]
Bounder 62
Descent of the manner 66
Discription of the manner – extent 61
Lordship: Priviledges, M. house, Gardens, Orchards, Easnot, Mill, Grotto[12] Trees frutes, herbes 65
Name 61
Pedigre 76
Rarityes [&] tenure 64. 66
Village 63

Great Landale Chapel

Fig. & Descript. 34
Rud 16
Bounder 80
Endowment. Disposal. Succession. School [blank]

[4] §42 refers to Base Brown, now known as Baysbrown: *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[5] Find most rarities at §18.
[6] §41-50 relate to Baysbrown.
[7] See §51.
[8] More correctly at §9, 20, 66, 90.
[9] More correctly: {(74) Disposal} i.e. 'The Curate is recommended by the majority, and approv'd by the Minister. He teaches for 6d per quarter of the tenants: & of other what can get.'
[10] See §6.
[11] The MS strikes through 'Armes §5 & 9. Crist & motto ibidem', but the Fleming arms are indeed to be found on §5 & 9.
[12] MS adds, 'In margine'.

Division into 1. Great Langdale, 2. Little Langdale 3. Basebrowne: ~~32 a paper~~

1. Great Landal, Why	
Chaple School & Sallary	27. 32 – a paper
Tenure	32 a paper
Breathey Head	52
2. Little Landale. Why	
Bounds	56.
Breathey head	52
Descent	(Site 41. Ten. 45.) 60.
Extent	48[13] 51
Hardknot & Wranose	ibid. & 53. 54. 55[14]
Iron ore	in the margines & at 52[15]
Lingmer Tarne	30
Old Chap & Hall	51
Soyle	57
Tenure	59
3. Base Browne. Why	
A sword	79. 32. – a paper.
Descent	42. 44. 46. 50.
Elterwater house	48
House	44. 47. 48. 49
The Bounder of Westmorland Continued	89. 91. 92.

[Machell's Notes: II,156 & II.157]

Ridell in Yorkshire. Dugd[ale]
[II.157]
Langdale forsan Longedal.
Dugdal. *Bar[onagium]* p. 423.
Gresmer Parish.
Qu.{Bounder} farther 1692.

[II.123]

[The Parish of Grasmere]

[§1-9. Machell's Initial Notes and Queries]

[§1] {Read over the places marked thus & get them Answered.} {The Easter Booke}
N. The King of Patterdal calls it Garsemer.[16]
Mem[orandum] the Courses of Rivers. Upon the old Q[ueries] I should Alter this Method & put the Mannerhouse &c. according to my second paper of Queries.

§2. N.B. In what Lordship or Township – Parish & Chapelry.
Clappergate. Basebrowne. Elterwater 9m. Landale Chap.
A place calld Cawsa in Windermer – in which Hamlett; how far ab Ecclesia said Capella & what akin to the family of Philipsons ad §60.
Fine Certane Arbitrary[17] in Ridal.

[13] This information is at §58.
[14] Hardknott and Wrynose can be found on §52, 54, 55.
[15] In the margins of §41 and 51.
[16] Unclear word.
[17] Two Latin words: 'ad h…' appear here, where the page-edge has perished.

1. Grasmire R.[18]
2. Windermere R.
3. Kirkby Kendal V.[19]
4. Hersham V.
5. Beathom ~~Wether church. When built?~~ \ V /
?6. Burton. V.
~~?~~7. Kirkby Lonsdal V.[20]

Note ad Westm'land General – and 25 in the Bottom of Westmorland.
§.3. In all 32. Speed says but 26.

[II.150]

In Gresmere Parish are[21]

Church & Chappelry	& Familiyes E.W.N.S.
1. Gresmer Church. Mr Loic[22]	Mannor of Gresmer & great Landal
2 Ambleside Chapple L.B. Ded[ication] Indow[ment] Bells Armes Bounder fig.	The whole Town in the Mannor of Windermere yet the chapples above the Stock in Gresmer Parish
3 Langdal Chapple[23] The same as in Ambleside	Mannor Little Langdale. Great. the Q[ueen][24] Baise Brown q. of Bass or Pearch in it?

The Armes of Gresmer church & Ridal are done: & the Pike jaw at Ambleside, per Dugdal.[25]

[II.123]

§.4. Note General ad Gresmer ad Windermere
Measure of Ground about Kendal. Sc. in Grasmer & Windermer.
6 yards & ½ square T[h]ey call a Fall of Ground.
40 Fall make a Roode.
84 Roode – make an Acre.
Gresmer Church hath had
1. – Ambleside Chapel; 2. – Great Langdale; 3. – Lile Langdale

[18] Rectory.
[19] Vicarage.
[20] Numbers 1-7 have been crossed through.
[21] Above this line of the MS, the sentence, 'See the Easter Booke?', has been written and crossed through.
[22] 'Loic' This name refers to John Ambrose, an absentee incumbent, who, nominated by the Flemings of Rydal, was rector of Grasmere both before the Civil War and after the Restoration. During the Interregnum this situation was complicated by the competing influences of the Presbyterians and the Flemings. Ambrose was a nephew of John Fleming of Rydal Hall, whose sister Dorothy (his mother) had married the lord of Lowick. Ambrose inherited the lordship and Lowick Hall by surviving five brothers. He died in 1684 and was followed as rector by Henry Fleming. See M.L. Armitt, *The Church at Grasmere: A History* (Kendal, 1912) 82, 162. For analysis of the clerical changes in Grasmere during this period, see Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662,* 2, 1059-70.
[23] An unclear word here could be a shortened form of 'bounds.'
[24] After 1688, Mary II, wife of William of Orange (William III of England).
[25] See Part 2, Ch.8, Windermere. Fishing was important to monks and population alike, as seen in this extract from William Dugdale's *Baronagium*. 'William de Lancaster the third, [temp. H. 3.] for the health of his Soul, and the Soul of Agnes his Wife … gave to the Monks of Furnesse, all his Lands of Scathewaite, and Egtone; as also four Boats, one to carry necessaries upon Thurstan-Water [Coniston], another to Fish therein; a third to be used on Wynendermere, for carriage of Timber and other commodities, and a fourth to Fish in that Meer. And bequeathing his Body to be buried in the Quire of the Abby of Furnesse, near to the Tombe of William his Grandfather, departed this life without issue.' Dugdale, *Baronage*, 422-23.

[II.124]

{Flemings Armes}[26]



Figure 2.6.1. Seal stamped with the Fleming Arms. II.124.

§.5 [Notes on the seal containing] Flemings Armes.[27]
1. Gules a fret Argent, Single in the Study. Per nomen Fleming.
2. Argent, on a Bend Sable. 3 Lozenges (or fusils) of the 1ˢᵗ charged with as many (Saltiers forsan) Gules. Per N. Urswick of Conyston in Lancashire: and this is impaled[28] with the former Coate in the Study.
3. Argent. 2 Barrs Gules on a Canton of the 2nd a lyon passant gardant Or – Lancaster.
4. Gules ~~ar~~ frettee Argent – Hudleston.
The rest are the Coates with the H[udlestons]; then Quartered. Sc.
5. Argent a Bend inter 2 Mullets Sable – Millum.
6. Argent a Cheveron inter 3 Bullock heads cabbosed Sable. Boyvill.
7. Parted per fess Gules & Argent. 6 martlets coun[ter]ch[arged]. – Fenwick.[29]
8. Argent a Lyon Rampant, Sable. Armed & Langued Gules – Stapleton.
9. Argent a Lyon Rampant, Azure armed & Langued Gules – Fauconbridge.
10. Barry of 8, Or & Gules – Fits Allan.
11. Sable a fret Or – Maltrevers.
12. Parted per pale Or & Vert a cross moline Gules (alias Argent & Gules) a [cross crosslet][30] Or – Ingham.
13. Azure a fess inter 3 Leopard heads Or – de la Pool.
14. Parted per pale Argent & Gules, a Bend counterchargd Cha[…]cer.[31]
15. The 15 as the 1ˢᵗ. Sc. Fleming.

These are in the parlour 2ce.[32] One of them being with the Crist, placed there 1617. The same agane above, sine Crista.[33] The motto – PAX COPIA SAPIENTIA.[34] Sometimes, Sapientia Pax Copia, when over the Crist which is a Serpent nowed,[35] with a Garland of Olives & 3 vines in her mouth all prop[er]. Under Sir William Dugdals owne hand in his visitation, at Kendall 20 March 1664: per me W. Dugdal, Norroy, King of Armes.[36]

[26] The Flemings of Rydal Hall.
[27] Red seal, containing 15 coats of arms, affixed to the top left hand of the page.
[28] MS: 'implae'd'.
[29] In 1690 John Fenwick of Northumberland bought New Hall in Over Burrow, Lancs, see *AWL*, 115-16.
[30] Machell has drawn a cross crosslet here.
[31] Part of this name is obscured by the binding.
[32] Twice.
[33] Without the crest.
[34] 'Peace Plenty Wisdom'.
[35] This is often described as a 'serpent erect tail nowed', the tail being interlaced in a knot. See S.C. Fox-Adams, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 257.
[36] See Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St. George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891). Dugdale's visits were made in 1664 and 1665.

{In the Hall}
1. Fleming Impaleing Ducket with quarterings.
2. Fleming Impaleing Kirkeby of K. in Lanc[ashire] Sc. Argent 2 Bars Gules, on a Canton of the second a cross moline Or.}

§6. [Families][37]
Grasmere 78. Loughrig F[amilies] 27. Clappersgate 4. Ridal F[amilies]14. Elterwater F[amilies] 9.
In Langdale Chapel: Little Langdale F. 25. Great Langdale F. 47. Ambleside 29 f.

[Assessments]

§7. [Easter Book Tithe Assessments]
Stiles[38] – 1, Clerke 1[d]
Smook,[39] ob[40]
(garth \ i.e. gardine / 1[d]) Hay money.
Corne money.
Newcle[41] 2[d]
Why[42] 1[d] ob
Hand: a whol Calfe – 5 groates
& milke \ money / beside oblations 1[d] ½.
Bees 2[d] per hive disposd.
Foles 2[d]
Chick[ens] a brood ½.
(Easter Eggs)[43] 2 for an hen. 1 for a chicken.
Geese and Grise[44] in kinde.

§8. The[y] sett down their Assessments not in writeing but on a stick thus:

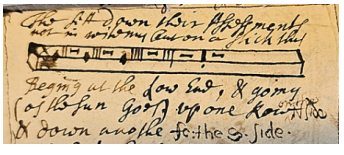


Figure 2.6.2. Assessment Stick. II.124.

Beg[inn]ing at the Low End, & going (as the sun goes) up one Row \ on the / N Side & down another[r], Sc. the S Side. X is the 1[t] house. A notch, ~~& strokes drawne with a knife stands for~~ through is 4s. Halfe through 6d. A Rake or Scratch with a knife is 1d. A pop with the point on the underside is ob[45] &c.[46]

[37] In the MS at §6., the following sentence has been scored through: '{~~MS A p.106~~ …~~John Crack Mabel of …Cooper Xtopher 2 Richard 3 George 4~~ … ~~See the Pedegree to this Richard Ibidem~~.}'
[38] Perhaps, 'stile-boot': wood claimed of the Lord by an owner of lands within certain manors, for making a stile. *OED*.
[39] 'Smook', 'Smuik': to suffocate by means of sulphur; a term applied to a mode of destroying bees to gain their honey. *OED*.
[40] A halfpenny.
[41]' Neucle' and variants of this word = a newly calved cow. *Dictionary of the Scots Language*, Online.
[42] Perhaps 'Quey' (pronounced 'why'). In the north of England and Scotland, a quey was the name given to a young cow before it had calved, i.e. a heifer. *OED*.
[43] Paid to the clergyman at Easter.
[44] Young pigs.
[45] Ob = ½d.
[46] For the use of tallies at Langdale, see Bill Bevan, 'Nick Stick Seat, Great Langdale', *CW2*, 89 (1989), 281.

§9 {19 fox skins being in the Hall. Laurrell in large trees. Maiden hare, a Grottoe, 2 Parkes – 2 orch[ards.]}

[Machell's Notes: II.124]

{King of Patterdal for the continuation of the bounder.}[47]

[II.125]

Grasmere Parish

{East of the Church T.}
{Consider if it may not be convenient to End with Ambleside in Windermer & begin with it in Gresmer, being in both parishes}
{~~q. Dumbal Raise~~}

{§10. Length & Bredth}
Is in the Diocess of Chester & in Kendal Ward; it takes its name from a village called Grasmere \ Grismer antique / \ & Grosmer / where the church stands & conteins in lenth from Stockbrige in ~~Hole~~ Ambleside to \ Dumbal / ~~the~~ Rais (the top of a mount which parts Westm'land & Cumberland) 6 miles: In bredth from the top of Ridal Fel to the \ River / Brathey (which separates Westm'land from Lancashire) about 5 miles & ½ by common estimation.

§11. Ad Windermer
{2 Bags of Coyns, whereof 6 Gold coins, 66 Silver, & 250 in Brass Coper &c. Given the 6. of Nov, 26. Car. 2. Anno Dom. 1674, to Doctor Barlow Provost of Queens for the Library of Oxford – which he received at the hands of Sir Daniel Fleming. July 03 1685. Collected & purchased in several places by 1. Thom. – 2. Gawen – & [3.] Thom. –}[48]

§12. Bound[er]
It is bounded on the East by Patterdale (a chappelrae belonging to Barton-Kirk \ ~~Westmorland~~,) / from which tis divided by the very ridge or top of the mountains \ as heaven water deales; / on the West which part of Lancashire \ Sc. Furness fells / from which tis divided by the River Brathey; on the North with part of Cumb'land, from which tis divided by the Ridge of the Mountaines calld Langdale Fells, \ as the heaven water deales / ~~runns of to each side of the mountain~~; on the South with the parish of Windermere in the County of Westm'land \ from which tis divided by Stockbrig Water & the Boundes of Windermere. / It consists of Arable pasture & meadow, but ~~a great~~ \ the most / part is mountainouse. Sc. the ~~commons~~ moores or Commons.

[II.132C]

[Paper 1.] The Bells at Gressmere

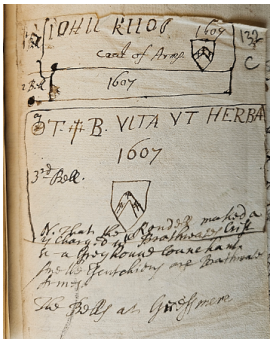


Figure 2.6.3. Bells at Grasmere Church 1607, with Arms and Inscriptions. II.132C.

[47] The king of Patterdale was John Mounsey of Patterdale Hall, see Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.714.
[48] Thomas Dixon (father and son) and Gawen Brathwaite.

3rd Bell. T.† B. VITA VT HERBA 1607[49]

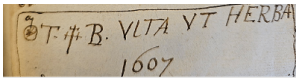
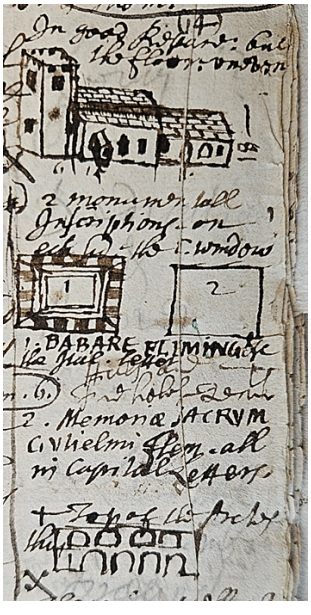


Figure 2.6.4. Grasmere Church, 3rd Bell Inscription. II.132C.

N[ote] that the Rondell marked a. is charged with Brathwates Crist, Sc. a Greyhound Couchant. And the escutchions are Brathwates Armes.

[§13-16] Grasmere Church and Parsonage]

§13, §14. {The Church} See 33.



The Church is a stone building with a Square Steepl or Tower; and is commonly calld Grasmere church from the towne where it stands, but is dedicated to St Oswald.
[Length of quire] 11; [of body] 15; [south side of steeple] 6; [breadth of quire] 18.[50]
{In good repare: but the floore uneven.}
[It is] \ built like a dou[b[le church,[51] with a row of 4 pillars & 5 arches; & above them 4 other arches meeting at the {Top of the Arches}.

{2 Monumentall Inscriptions on each side the E. window.
1. BABARÆ FLEMING &c.[52] The italic letter.
2. Memoriæ SACRVM Gulielmi Flem.[53] All in Capital Letters.}

Figure 2.6.5. Grasmere Church. Memorials and Arches. II.125.

\ A fine level Church yard. / {There is a well about a Bowshot W. ab Ecclesia calld St Oswalds, whence we suppose the church.} The Dale little but level meadow ground excepting one Hill calld Butterlep How & a little crag by it, a mere.

[49] 'Vita ut herba': life is as grass. Psalm 103, v.15: 'As for man, his days are as grass: as a flower of the field, so he flourisheth' (*AVB*). This is an anagram of the Braithwaite name. See Part 2. Ch.9, Windermere, II.351.
[50] Measurements in yards: see illustration of the church.
[51] A double nave.
[52] See the complete inscription in *N&B1*, 171. Barbara Fleming (née Fletcher) 1634-75, was the wife of Sir Daniel Fleming and the eldest daughter of Sir Henry Fletcher of Hutton-in-the-Forest; after her marriage in 1655 she produced 15 children, dying soon after the birth of the final child. See Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), 413, 426.
[53] See the complete inscription in *N&B1*, 164. William Fleming (1609-53) of Skirwith, Esq., was the father of Sir Daniel Fleming. see Sowerby and McCormack, *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 397, 431-32.

§15. Armes
Q. What Armes Monumental Inscriptions &c. They are to be Had in Mr Dugdalls Visitation of West. & Cumb'land 1664. att the Heralds College near St Pauls London,[54] which may save me a Labour. Patronage §20.[55]

[II.128]

{Armes} & Monuments in the church. One in painting on the wall being of Flemings with the Crist &c. & another in the East window under an Inscription in Glass: which is Fleming & Kirkby – Sc. Argent 2 bars Gules, on a Canton of the second – a Cross Moline Or. But they are in Dugdalls *Visitation* {or Mr Fleming Rector will send them.}[56]

[II.125]

§16. The Parsonage house
W. ab Ecclesia about 40 yards:[57] See §21. Endowment §22. Sessments §8. […] of Easter b. §7. Fam[ilyes] §6.'

Ambleside

§17. {Ambleside Market is kept in that part which is in Windermer – ad Windermer.}
At Grasmer formerly, was a sort of Commerce held amongst the Neighbourhood ~~Inhabitants~~ in the manner of a market – kept upon Mondayes (as they have now at Bowness on Fridays). But by the consent of the people ~~there~~ it was Transferd to Ambleside as the more Commodiouse place;[58] w[hi]ch Towne obteined a charter to hold one market:

die mercuri qualibet septimana, et duas ferias annuatim Quaru[m] una in die Mercurij proxim[a] post festum Penticostes, et altera ad Decimum octavum diem Octobris (per ordinem Parliamenti) et curiam Pedis pulverizati – temporibus feriarum predictarum ibidem p[ro] eisdem Tenent[ibus]. Ad usum et com[m]odum Inhabitantium. Testibus nobis ipsis etc.[59]

And King James the 2. By his Letters Pattent of July 25 Anno Domini 1688 & the 4th his Reigne, Granted to Brathwate Otway Esqs,

[II.126]

& Francis Topham Esqs and others, inhabitants of the said Town:

{Ambleside Charter by K. James 2.} N.B. See Bloms *Britannia*.[60]
"Quod ipsi unam mercatum die Mercurij apud villam de Ambleside sub loco vulgo vocat[o] The Stock etc. tener[ent] ac duas ferias quolibet anno ten[erent] ibidem quaru[m] unam die Mercurij Proxim[o] sequen[te] post festum penticost[es] et sup[er] crastinam istius diei. Alter[a] die Sancti Luc[ae] Evangelist[ae] (si non iste dies non nisi sit dies Domenicus) et si sit, die Lune prox[imo] sequent[e] et in Crast[ina] istius diei incipiat ac per totos illos dies duratur[a] in perpetuum : ac etiam una[m] feriam sive nundinum super quemlibet diem Mercurii in qualibet ... septimana, & a die Mercurii fest[i] Penticostes ad diem S[anc]ti Lucae Evang[elistae] & John … et profec[...] inde pro venien[...] sibi et heredibus suis percipiend[...] etc.

[54] The College of Arms.
[55] See II.127.
[56] For Dugdale's Visitation, see II.124, above. For Henry Fleming, rector after the death of John Ambrose in 1684, see II.123, above.
[57] Machell lists where similar information can be obtained, such as the parsonage house: 'See §21. Endowment 22. Sessments §8. of Easter 9. Fam[ilyes] 6.'
[58] See *N&B1*, 188-9.
[59] 'On a Wednesday in any week, and two fairs annually, one of them on the Wednesday next after the Feast of Pentecost, and the other on the eighteenth day of October (by decree of Parliament) and a Court of Piepowder – at the times of the aforesaid fairs in the same place on behalf of the same tenants. We ourselves being witness to the use and convenience of the Inhabitants etc.' See also the extended charter below.
[60] 'Ambleside, seated near the great lake of Winander, hath an indifferent good market for wool, yarn and provisions, on Wednesdays.' Richard Blome, *Britannia, or, a Geographical Description of the Kingdom of England, Scotland and Ireland* (1673), 235. There is no description of the charter.

Pro emptione et venditione omnimodum omnimodum uberiorum, pecorum, bonorum Mercionum, merchandizorum etc – et teneant et custodiant curiam Pedis Pulverizati[61] tempore respectivarum feriarum. Consensia eorum Brathwate Otway etc. – et Heredum et Assignatorum suorum in ea parte Assignan[tium] et App...and[...] una cum omnibus Libertatibus ratio… …Tolnet, Theolon, Stallag, Piccag. furium a...ciament[...] et omnibus alijs etc. – ad curiam pedis pulver[izati] pertinento.[62]

{Ambleside Tenure}
The Tenants are all Customary under the Crowne & appear (but have a distinct jury) at the Court Baron holden at Gresmer. q. if both above & beneat[h] the Stock.[63]

§18. {Rarityes}
{Paper Mill in Gressmer Parish. Ages, see §29. Tarnes 30. Eagles 31.}
There is \ in Ambleside / (a Capella ½ m N.) on the River Scandall – which divides it from Ridall, a Paper Milne for Browne paper.

[II.127]

[Parish Church and Chapelries]

§19. {Division into Chapelryes}
There are 2 chappels belonging to this church: 1. Ambleside & 2. Langdale,[64]

§20. Ambleside Chapel [Patronage]
the ~~latter~~ \ former / of which [chapels] is lately made a Parochial chapple: ~~of a noted~~ \ in 1674 by a grant from the Bishop {of Chester, who referr'd it to the 2 parsons of Grasmere & Windermere, provided they should loose nothing of their dues or Rights. It is in good Repaire, & the Towne of Ambleside \ presents, / repares the chaple & raises a stipend for the ~~minister~~ \ chaplan, / out of every Tenement proportionately. He allso increaseth his Revenu by teaching School. ~~The parsonage is worth by common estimation about 30li per Annum, &~~ the Right of Patronage is the Famaly of the Flemings of Ridal.[65]

§21. Parsonage of Gresmer.
The Parsonage house (~~for tis commonly calld~~) \ 40 yards W. ab Ecclesia / was an old stone building hard \ close / by the church in the midle of the Towne \ hamlet; / and seated upon the ~~banke~~ \ N. side / of the Raisebeck (which runns ~~by~~ \ by the church & near / the end of the house.) \ But is lately Rebuilt

[61] Court of Piepowder: a summary court formerly held at fairs and markets to administer justice among itinerant dealers and others temporarily resident. Word origin: 'a wayfarer; dusty foot.' *OED*.
[62] 'On Wednesday in the town of Ambleside below the place commonly called the Stock, etc.; and two fairs every year, one on the Wednesday next after the Feast of Pentecost, and on the Feast of St Luke the Evangelist, Sundays excepted (if it fall on Sunday, to be held on the following Monday and on the day after), to begin on those days and be held for ever after; and also that one festival or fair may be held on any Wednesday in any second week between Pentecost and St Luke's Day for those who come, by him and his heirs etc., For the buying and selling of all kinds of produce, cattle, goods, commodities, merchandise, etc. – and let them hold and keep the court of Pie-powder at the time of the respective fairs. By agreement of these Brathwate Otway etc. – and of their heirs and assigns during the time of each fair at the house of the Steward of Mr Braithwaite, Mr Otway etc.; For the maintenance and use of the poor living in the same town of Ambleside. Without making a computation for the king.'
[63] The boundary of Windermere parish is at a place called the Stock. All below the Stock is in Windermere parish; all above the Stock is in the parish of Grasmere: see *N&B1*, 188.
[64] MS: '2. Langdale, & 1. Ambleside.'
[65] According to Nicolson and Burn, 'The curate, Mr Machel says, is recommended by the majority of persons paying the said salary, and approved by the rector. But Sir Daniel Fleming, who was patron of the church of Grasmere, says, the curates of this chapel have been nominated by the patrons of the advowson of Gresmere, in which parish it is seated.' *N&B1,* 189.

by Mr William Fleming in 1691.[66] / \ It is / at 6 mile distance from ~~Ambleside which is th~~ Hawkside in Lancashire, which is the nearest market.

§22. Indowment [income, rents]
\ Glebe 5 acres & the Church yard. /
Corne in kinde to the Rector in Gresmere, \ but for hay, prescription money; / In Ambleside ~~so much a Tenement~~ for hay & corne, money calld Field-Tithe – so much a Tenement according to their Rent ~~q. what Stipend?~~ But in Langdals, Loughrig & Ridal, Prescription \ & boon / for Hay & 1d a Stooke for every 10th Shock of Corne.
Wool & Lamb
Wool in kinde all over the parish, except Ambleside Hall & Ridal Hall, which Prescribe for all Tithes; & for Lambs a tenth Lamb.

Allow 14 succession of parsons?
Mr Wilson before the Civil wars.[67] Mr Ambrose ~~the~~ Lord of the Manner of Loic \ or Lowick / in Lancashire the present Incumbent.[68]

Mannors & Townships in this Parish

§23. Division
Townships & Mannors
sub Ecclesia. Gresmer manor; Ridal manor.
sub Capella de \ part of / Ambleside; de Landal: Magna, Parva.[69] {Home Bearthay.}
There are 4 Mannors & Townships in this Parish, Sc. Grasmere, Little Langdales, Ridall \ & Base-Browne. / And part of Ambleside – Grasmere Lordship.[70]

§24. [Parochial Manor of Grasmere]
Gresmere & Great Langdale & Loughrig Grasmere.
Grasmere \ or Grossmere – q. Great-meere – / takes its name from a great lake \ or / mere near adjoyning commonly called Grossmere from Reason of the plenty of grass which grows upon the Banks thereof [and] from it[s] comparative greatness with that other of Ridal upon the same River.[71] / {NB The King of Patterdale calls it (cum vulgo) Garsmer – i.e. Grassmere.}
This Lordship is in lenth, from[72] Elterwatter ~~to the top of it is 2 miles in bredth~~ Bridge in the W. to the top of Grasmere fells in the East (3 miles); in bredth, from Ridal Waterhead in the South to the top of the Rais in the north (2 mile); the circumference 11: see 32.[73]

[66] The rector of Grasmere, 1685-1728, was Henry Fleming (1659-1728), second son of Sir Daniel Fleming and younger brother of William Fleming. Sir Daniel was still living; he died in 1701. See Sowerby and McCormack, *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 428-29.
[67] Henry Wilson, rector of Grasmere (1628-39): St John's Coll., Oxford, 1623; BA 1626-27. CCED. Ousted from his cure in the first Civil War, he died penniless in 1647, having borrowed money from the family at Rydal Hall, who regarded him as their ally during Grasmere's Presbyterian ascendancy. In 1646, parliament named him 'a notorious malignant and articled agent', possibly referring to his journeys on behalf of the Flemings. See Armitt, *The Church of Grasmere*, 78-83; see also Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662, 2*, 1059-70.
[68] John Ambrose (died 1684) succeeded to the manor of Lowick in 1666. He was a senior fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. See *Victoria County History, County of Lancaster* Vol 8 (1914), 360-62. Ambrose was also a (largely absentee) rector of Grasmere, both before and after the Restoration. See above, II.150.
[69] 'The townships and manors of Grasmere are under the care of the parish church. Ambleside and Great and Little Langdale are under the care of Ambleside chapel.'
[70] MS: 'There are 4 ~~Lordships or~~ Mannors \ & Townships / in this Parish, Sc (Grasmere \ Bais-Browne /) \ Great Langdale / Little Langdales & Ridal, \ & Base-Browne / ~~of Windermere &~~ And part of Ambleside ~~Sc the North End which belong to this {parish because part of the Mannor of Windermer of which see these~~.'
[71] As one line (c.18 words) of this sentence has been thoroughly scored-through and partly overwritten, it has been omitted from this edition.
[72] 3cm of illegible text has been crossed through here.
[73] This is not mentioned in section 32 (II.129C).

§25. {Gresmer Bounds} [Dunmail Raise]
It is bounded in the East with Patterdale, being part of Barton parish; on the west with Little Langdale; on the N. [blank].

[II.132B][74]

Dunbal Raise Stones
From Wiburne[75] in Cumberland

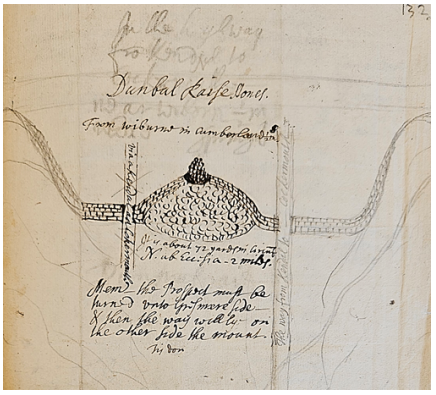


Figure 2.6.6. 'Dunbal Raise Stones'. II.132B.

In the highway from Kendal N. to Cockermouth, Dunbal Raise Stones* from Wiburn in Cumberland, ½ m. It is about 72 yards in Circumference. N. ab Ecclesia 2 miles. Memorandum – the Prospect must be turned unto Gresmere Side & then the way will lye on the other Side the Mount.[76]
Tis don.

[Machell's Notes: II.127B]
*{Q. Dumal Rase: Se a Note in Camden of Cumberland. Did Regulus[77] ibidem the[…][78] See all M.S. Cumberland per Denton.[79]

[II.132A][80]

Rex Edmundus adjutorio Leolini Regis Dernetiæ fretus Cambriam totam Cuctij omnibus spoliavit, &c. (Duobus filijs Dunmaili eiu[s]dem provinciæ Regis oculorum luie privatis) Regnum illu Malcolmo Scotorum Regi, de se tenendum concessit, ut Aquilona res Angliæ partes terra inarique ab hostium adventantium incursione tuenetur.'[81]
Might not this be the occasion of that great heap of Stones on the Confines of Westm'land & Cumb'land called Dunmale Raise Stones, at the head of Wythe-burn near Gresmere. Camden: de Cumbrianis Rasibus.[82]

[74] On M.III.156, Machell names this particular page, p.2.
[75] Wythburn.
[76] The 'prospect' refers to Machell's sketch.
[77] Regulus: 'a petty king or ruler; a sub-king.'
[78] 'Did Regulus then […]' The last word has perished.
[79] An edition of Denton's 'Cumberland' can be found in MS.VI.1.146-76.
[80] A small page: 12cm x 8cm. The reverse reads, 'ffor Mr Thomas Machell Recktor of Kirkbythure' (address part of a letter).
[81] 'King Edmund, by the helpe of Leoline Prince of South-Wales, wasted and spoiled all Cumberland, and having put out the eyes of both the sonnes of Dunmail King of the same Province, hee granted that kingdome unto Malcolme King of Scots, to be holden of him, that he might defend the North parts of England by land and sea from the inrodes and invasions of the common enemies.' See 'Cumberland' in Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1610), 787. Camden attributes the passage to Florilegus, the 'floure gatherer of Westminster', once thought to be the author of *Flores Historiarum* (who probably never existed). The work has been linked to Matthew Paris's *Chronica Majora*, and to Westminster Abbey, where it was partially written. S. Lloyd & R. Reader, 'Paris, Matthew (c.1200-1259), historian, Benedictine monk, and polymath'. *ODNB*.
[82] 'Of the Raises of Cumbria.'

[II.128]

§26. Gresmer School
A School erected circa Anno 1685 in the Church Yard at the N.E. corner. Builded by the Towne & Endowed by Mr Ambrose, Late Rector here, who gave 50li. And Anthony Dawson of Gresmere who gave 7li. The use[83] of which is for the maintenance of a Schoolmaster, who has also 9d per Quarter, or as they can agree, of every Scholar.

§27. Hall [Halsteads]
A place calld Ha[l]steeds ¼ m N. from the Church lately full of Borrans[84] = Now in Tenancyes divided amongst them. There is an ~~Hall~~ Hill near it call'd Butterlep-How.

§28. [Great Langdale Chapel] {Note. See also the paper on the other side marked Thus ~~I I~~.}[85]
Att Great Langdale there is \ a / Chaple ~~of ease but~~ in very good Repare, where they have prayers every Sunday & hollyday at the cost & charge of the neighbourhood in that Dale; who also ~~instruct~~ \ have their / their children instructed by Him, for which they pay him according to agreement; The Stipend for officiateing there is rais'd by proportion upon every Tenement, & is call'd by them the Priests Sal\u/d {Sallary Saled, or Salid} \ i.e. ut opinor[86] The Prieste's aide. /
q. to that monument Arms Inscription: None.[87]
§29. Gresmer ætas.[88]Miles Birket of Wrea in Gresmer (c.d.e.) buryed 50 years since, lived to 100 & 6. Old Mr Gawen Brathwate came to see him maw[89] after he was 100 – & gave him 1s for his panes. Test. Herd.[90]

§30. Tarnes
Gresmere \ Tarne / – ab Ecclesia \ halfe / ¼ S.E. an Ile in it of acker of ground. Large Pikes tench Trouts Eales.
Easdale Terne 2m. N.W. [ab Ecclesia] Bass, Trouts, Eales.
~~Currell~~ CodaleTerne, nothing but Eales – tis above Easdale Terne.
(N. Lingmer Tarne[91] in Little Langdale a Capella 1m. West, has tench in it, put in by Mr. Gawen Brathwate or Solomon Benson.)

{Rivers [and Meres]}
Rasbeck springs at Rasegil head – ab Ecclesia 2m. N.E. comes down \ almost to Dunmail Rase; thence West down the Dale & / by the S side of the Church & Parsonage runns into Gresmere Water – & about a bowshot \ below / into Ridal &c.
Gressmere is long 1m. b[road] ½ m. Ridal Water l[ong] ½; b[road] ¼ inde Gresmere.

§31. Gresmere
Eagles Build in Blea-Crag. 2m. ab Ecclesia N.W.
More of more game.[92] Q. in what Chapelry or Lordship.
Marts & wild cats – som.

---

[83] I.e. the interest from the capital.
[84] Borrans = burgæsn: tumuli or cairns: *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[85] See II.129B, {Great Langdale Chapelry}, below.
[86] 'As I think.'
[87] A scored-through sentence here comments, '~~Sent to Mr King at the Heralds Office, or Mr Fleming parson of Gresmire~~.'
[88] 'Period of life.' Machell aimed to research long-lived people; see 'curiosities in nature' passages, throughout.
[89] 'Maw': To cut (especially hay, also corn etc.) with a scythe; in contradistinction to cutting or sheering corn with a hook. *Dictionary of the Scots Language*. Online. More simply, 'maw' and 'maa' are Cumbrian dialect words for 'mow'. William Rollinson, *Cumberland Dictionary of Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 103, 106.
[90] John Herd, Machell's source. See II.154: '§89. Bounder of Westm'land', below.
[91] Lingmoor Tarn.
[92] A moor of moor-game, i.e. grouse, particularly the red grouse.

{Codded Arsmart in the Highway.[93] Rosem[ary].}
{Good Blew Slate ½ m. S.}
{Peate 1 mile. plenty; Lead in – None found; Copper at Hawhead ¼ S.E.}

[II.129]

[Paper 2]
[Bensons in Grasmere Parish]

{Fold House}
There is a place in Lough Rigg, call the Fold house (a freehold estate which has of old belonged to the Bensons.) One Francis? Benson of this Place maryed a daughter of Gilpine of Kentmer Hall, & had ~~isue~~ iiij daughters; whereof one was maryed to Judge Hutton,[94] another to Mr Brathwate of Ambleside, a Third to Davis of Winder in Barton, & the 4th cald ~~Frances~~ \ Margaret / to Michael Benson of Coat-how: Old black Michael maryed fair Margaret.
{Richard Hutton married Agnes, daughter and coheir of Thomas Briggs of Cowmire. Of the Huttons of Huton Hall, Penrith.}



Figure 2.6.7. {'Ergo this Coat, had he 2 wives – for Briggs was one of Calvmir.'}. II.129.

It now belongs (if I be not mistaken) to one Bernard Benson. And diverse Coates of Armes are there (as I am informed) which I must see: for those do not imply it the best house of the Bensons.[95]
There is Clan of this name in Gresmer parish \ This of the Fold. / Sc. Benson of the High Close; a Third at Coat-How, all in Lough-Rigg; a 4th at Elterwater; & a matter of 15 or 16 more familyes dispersed here & there about the parish: But none of any great account.
To Coat-How belongd the Tith[e] of Crosthwate, some Tenants in Lough Rig; of which High-Close & the Fold bough[t] themselves free of Thomas Benson about 40 years since (ab anno 1692). L. Benson the Informant sayes Coat how & the Fold paid a Rent & were Customary Tenants to it. {How can this

[93] Codded Arsmart = *impatiens noli-tangere* or touch-me-not. The name refers to the explosive release of seeds from the seed pods when touched, rather than to any irritant properties of the plant. John Gerard, *The Herball Or Generall Historie of Plantes* (1597), 361.
[94] Possibly Sir Richard Hutton (bap.1561-1639) of Hutton Hall, Penrith. He originally studied for the Church at Jesus College, Cambridge, but was persuaded to change to law, entering Gray's Inn in June 1580. By 1592, he had become escheator of the West Riding of Yorkshire, purchasing Goldsborough manor while continuing to buy land in Cumberland and Westmorland. He accumulated honours and offices as a member of the Council of the North (1599); serjeant-at-law (1603); receiver-general and chancellor of the bishopric of Durham (1608–09); and recorder of York, Doncaster and Ripon (1608-10). His rise was assisted by powerful clients and friends, including George Clifford, third earl of Cumberland. There is a dichotomy between the official biography and Machell's assertion that 'judge Hutton' married a Benson. The biographers claim that Hutton married Agnes, daughter and co-heir of Thomas Briggs of Cowmire, in 1591, and, on sketching a coat of arms (*Figure 2.6.8.*), Machell, too, saw a connection to that family. See *CFH*, 177; see also W. Prest, 'Hutton, Sir Richard (bap.1561, d.1639), judge'. *ODNB*.
[95] MS: 'for those do not imply (them then the best of) \ It the best house of / the Bensons.'

be? That High Close & the Fold should be purchased free of T.B. of Coathow; and[96] yet Coathow & the fold pay a Rent and be Customary Tenants to It.}
There are Bensons (of Bensons Hall corruptly) near Kendal: on the right hand of the Road to Apalby, who are descended of the Fold house. N.B. Dorathy Benson of the High Close, has a silver seale of the same Armes as Bensons of Dodsford, which L. Benson caryed to him, which differ from those at Amb[le]side impaleing B[rathwaite].[97]

[II.129C]

§32. Soyle. Grasmire Vall.
{?} The Soyle is sufficiently fertile for hay, corn, meadow, pasture ~~& som wood~~. But hath little wood, or other fuel, there peats being plentiful but so far of[f] that poore people can hardly \ procure them. / There are 3 villages in this Lordship; Grasmore, Great Langdale & Loughrigg. Grasmere: the houses most slated, which is got upon the common.

§33. Grasmere Church
Fam[ilies] 78.
The parish church stands in Grasmere; ~~& it is al~~ where allso is[98] an high stone bridge of one single Arch \ over / the River, \ which / affords Trout ~~pike~~ & eales; & the Mere (or Lake there) are pikes allso in it.

§37. Tenure Grasmere
The Lord has Rent Fine & Heriot \ waif & stray; / & the Tenants ~~hold according to the custom of the Mannor, &~~ have one notable Custom or Priviledge –

§38. Customs of Grasmere
– That if a man marry a wife who is heire of a tenement, alltho she dye without Isue the estate shall goe to him & his heires & not to hers; which is more than Curialitas Angliæ: The Curtisye of England.
The Tenants are Admitted & pass away their Estates by which freehold & where they appear.

[II.369B]

Ad Gressmere
I heard this custom proved in Court at Appelby Aug. 29. 1690 – before Justice Dolbin.[99]
That if a Man maries an heiress in Gresmire – 1. He was thereupon admitted Tenant and might aleen[100] the Land to whom he pleased – if Land purchased by a virgi[n] afore marriage. But it did not appear that it was so wher Lands fell to a feem covert,[101] or were given to her after Mariage, as that judge observed.

[II.131]

§39. Court Baron
The Queens Stuart, or his Deputy, ~~keeps a Court Barron~~, (these lands being settled upon her in joynture) keeps a Court Baron once every year at som of the Tenants houses in Grasmere, for mannor house there is none. & all the Tenants doe Suit & Service there – But there is a Court Leet allso kept at Kendall by the Queens Stuart (every thre weeks)* for all the Crown Tenants; ~~app~~ & \ som of / these appear there ~~once in~~ 2^{c}ye[102] in the year.

[96] MS: 'any'.
[97] For the pedigree, see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.167.
[98] 4cm of crossed-through illegible text follows here.
[99] This was probably Sir William Dolben (bap.1627, d.1694), judge, knighted in 1677: S. Handley, 'Dolben, Sir William (bap.1627, d.1694), judge'. *ODNB*.
[100] 'Aleen' = Alien, frequently in form Aliene: to transfer or surrender ownership of (property rights); to make over to another owner. *OED*.
[101] 'Feme Covert': a married woman, considered as under the authority and protection of her husband, and (formerly, in English common law) as having no separate legal identity or rights to her own property; opposed to *feme sole*. *OED*.
[102] Twice.

§40. Descent
The ancient Proprietors of this Lordship (as is said) were the Duke of Richmond & Earle of Marquess (forsan Marshes), whence the 2 different foes; & that they were forfeited to the Crown. Sed de hoc Quære. {Non se Sense[runt] ergo Qu.?}[103] {See my map of England.}
The Kings Arms & pedigree I have.

[Machell's Notes: II.131]

*{Kendall. This cannot bee, for they are kept but twice.} {Sc. 2 in a Constablewick.}

{Great Langdale Chapelry}

[II.150]

§70. [Notes]
{Qu. In the Chappelry of Langdale} Qu. of the Division from Lancashire, from the head of Brathey (or Skellet beck) to the Shire Stones and thence to Dunbalraise Stones – See it in Great Langdale Chapelry.

Out of Dugdal *Monasticon* p.708.
Divisio Montanor[um] Furnesij – per Registro Abbatiae de Furnesio f.130
Henricus Rex Angliæ et Dux Normaniæ et Aquitaniæ et comes Andegaviæ archiepiscopis (etc) salutem. Sciatis me concessisse et carta mea confirmasse conventionem quæ facta fuit coram me, inter monachos de Furnesio, et Willielmum filium Gilberti de Montanis [de] Furnesio. Quæ talis est. Montana de Furnesio dividuntur a Kendala, his terminis, sicut iuratum est præcepto meo [iura]mento xxx hominum. Desicut descendit de wremeshales in Langdene-little; et inde in Helterwatra: et inde per Braitha in Winedermer: et inde in Levenam: et inde usq[ue] mare. etc.[104]

[II.153]

§79. Langdale Chapel



L[ength] 26 [yards] Br[eadth] 9 [yards]
Under a Cragg. Ewe trees near the west end. In pretty good r[epair]but for the floore ~~& the~~ Eagles & Ravens build very frequently in many places of this chapelry.
{Dedication} The dedication is not known.

Figure 2.6.8. Langdale Chapel. II.153.

§80. [Langdale] Bounder[105]
This Chapelry is bounded on the East, with ~~Ambleside~~ with Loughrig in this parish of Gresmer, from which tis divided by the Meere Sike; on the South \ with / Fourness fell in Hawkside in Lancashire,

[103] 'They did not agree with each other; therefore query it.'
[104] 'In the register of the Abbey of Furness f[olio] 130. Out of the "Division of Mountains" p.708 – Henry King of England and Duke of Normandy and Aquitaine and Earl of Anjou sends greetings to the archbishops (etc). Know that I have granted and by my decree have confirmed the agreement which was made in my presence between the monks of Furness and William son of Gilbert concerning Furness Fell. It is like this. Furness Fell is divided from Kendal by these boundaries, as it was sworn under my direction by the oath of 30 men. It runs down thus, from Wremeshales to Little Langdene; from there to Helterwatra; from there through Braithsa to Windermere; and from there to Levens; and from there right down to the sea. etc.' See William Dugdale, *Monasticon… Vol. V. Abbeys* (London, 1846 edn), 248-49.
[105] Under this word are scored-through headings, Disposition, Division, Descent, as if drawn up, then discarded.

divided by the River Colleth {? Course};[106] on the West with [Blank] in Cumberland, from which it is divided by the River Dudden; on the \ Nor West with Crosthwate in Cumb. / North with Gresmer the Mother Church from ~~the former of which~~ \ both which / it is div[id]ed as heven water deals.
{q. if Bale Brown be in this Chapelry.}

[II.129]

§34. Great Langdale
Fam[ilies] 47.
At Great Langdale there is a little Tarne with Trouts & Eales in it. So calld from the great long Dale. Som lands in it calld Gilpin Lands, the Tenements whereof belong to Miles Atkinson of the High house in Hugil in the right of Mr Brathwate his wife; & to one Thomas Benson of the High Close. Yet do Suit & Service at Gresmer Court. Great Langdale is about 2 miles from Hawkside Market.[107]
{See §53 Rasps & Bleaberryes.}
{Slate allso here.}

[II.129B][108]

{Divisions}
There are in this Chapelry, 1. The Township of Great Langdale, if it may be so calld, which is in Gresmer Lordship.[109] 2. The Manor of Little Langdale. 3. The manor of Base Brow.

[II.129C][110]

[Bounder]
On the North with the Fells twixt Westmerlnd & Cumberland; & on the South with Ridal, from which tis divided by [Blank]

[II.129B]

{Great Landale Chap[el] Endowment}
~~H~~[111] This chapel hath belonging to it an House a Capella about 20 yards being the next but one: & ½ an Acre of Meadow. S.E. a Capella about 30 yards of adjoyneing the Highway. – Allso 5^{li} & a Marke old Sallary & more, which has been formerly Sest* of Bordering People in Lancashire & elsewhere. Which is Charged upon their Several Tenements according as the Seates which are allotted thereto; as they are higher or lower in the Chapl. The highest being 2s a Seate – Their wives Seates Being free in at it. & a Schoole taught by Him at 6^{d} near the Chapelry; & forreigners as they can agree.

Machell's Notes: II.129B
*It is disposed of by Sir Daniel Flemming & the In[habitants] the parsons approveing.[112]

[II.129C]

§35. [Loughrigg Tarn]
{A mile to Langdale chapel; 1 mile ½ from [Grasmere] church; 3 miles from Hawk[side].}
And at Lough-rig a great one of a mile in Circumference which they fish with botes & take great store of Pikes & Eals \ & Trouts. This Tarne, which the Scotch cal a Lough, on which the Towne stands, gives name to the place. \ There is a great ridge of a fell from this lough called Lough Rig. / There are slates got on the hight over against Ridal in the comon belonging to this place. This Lordship being Crown land, & ~~ergo held of none. But~~ it is said to have escheated to the King; and is a mixt foe.

§36. [Lordship]
For there \ are / som Tenants in Grasmere hold (according to the Custome of the mannor) of Richmond foe, & som (according to the Custom of the mannor) of Marquess foe; yet appear but at one and the same court \ Sc Grosmer / & likewise at Great Langdale, & (Quaere de) Lough-rig.

---

[106] River Colwith (1722), Collath (1800), Callah, also Colwith Bridge (1794). See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[107] Hawkshead.
[108] Reverse of II.129A, bound into the volume by modern paper tape.
[109] MS: 'There are in this ~~Lordship~~ \ Chapelry/ ~~the manor of~~ \ (the ~~Lordship~~ Township of) / Great Langdale if it may be so calld \ which is in Gresmer Lordship.
[110] The left-hand-margin text on this page is illegible; the rest is caught in the binding.
[111] A continuation symbol; see §28 on II.128, above.
[112] MS: 'appro~~bation~~\veing. /' The word, 'Sest', is probable here, despite being blotted and unclear; the meaning of 'ses' or 'sess' is, 'to assess or determine officially the amount of (a tax, contribution, wages, or prices)'. *OED*.

[II.129A]

The Tenants of Great Langdale where the said chapel stands, appear at the Queens Court baron in Gresmerr. And there are no freehold lands (yet q. of the Haa Steads & Chaple in Litle Langdale which I remember are now purchased free) But som of ([…] ? vix)[113] Leonard Bensons of Elter-water which is in Base-Browne.

[II.129][114]

Lough-Rigg is an Hamlet of it selfe, opposite to Ridall on the other side of the River [Blank] which being conjoined with a wooden-bridge make as it were one entire village; yet are in 2 mannors, & (q. of) chapelryes.

[II.131]

The Lordship of Bais-Brown in Great Langdale Chapelry[115]

§41. Bais-Brown

Bais-brown is a little Lordship laying betwene Little & Great Langdale, conteining in Lenth from [Blank} in the [Blank] to [Blank] And is bounded on the \ N. & / East with Great Langdale in the Lordship of Grasmere; on the North with Great Langdale; on the West with Little Langdale; [116] q. how separated. On the South with Lough-rig, from which it is separated by [blank]?

[Minerals]

{Fierstone at Rusbriggs amongst the blew Slate
At Wranose a Capella 3m. W. – Iron ore plenty; & 2 miles thence S. at a place cald Greenburne in Lancashire, Copper[117] plenty.}

§42. Bais-Brown

{¾ m \ West / from Langdale Chap.; 3 \ West / [from the] Church; 4 ½ N. to Hawk.}
It containes nothing in it, but ~~the Hamlet~~ Baise Brown, which is rather an Hamlet than village (for they count none villages but such as are a Constablewic of themselves) \ the houses lyen dispersed. It is a Clay-ground & consists mostly of meadow & pasture.

§43. Village

There is nothing but a forge remarkable in it, and \ yet / the Lordship neither affords Iron nor Coale; the 1[t] being fetched out of Cumberland, & the latter from Lancashire.
{Blea Tarn – Tench, put in at first by old Gawen Brathwate.}

§44. Descent. See §46.

It is held of [Blank] and payes quit rent. It ~~descent~~ descended to Miles Atkinson by Dorathy his wife, daughter of Robert, yongest son of Gawen Brat\h/waite Brother of A[m]bleside, who gave it to him.

[II.132]

§45. Tenure of Baise-Brown

The Tenants are Customary (at a Fine Certane) at Doubl the Rent: & it is in dispute whether Heriotable or not. The ~~manner~~ house is \ calld / Baise Browne – an Ordinary House & has a Demane made out of several parcels[118] belonging unto it. ~~which to~~ \ The Tenements / formerly in the Bensons

§46. Descent

& sold by John Benson to Thomas Brathwate about 100 years agoe; in which name they continued till they came into the Hands of Miles Atkinson by his marriage with Dorathy the daughter & heir of

[113] Transcribed as seen; there is an unclear word before the question mark; 'vix' is a Latin adverb which can mean 'scarcely' or 'with effort'.
[114] Scrap page measuring 19cm x 13cm. Added to on several occasions in various shades of ink.
[115] Baysbrown: also known as Basebrun; Basebrown(e); Bays(e)browne; Baisbrowne. See *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[116] MS: 'on the North with Great Langdale ~~allso q? How or with what separated~~ on the West with Little Langdale.'
[117] MS: 'cope'.
[118] This word is obscured by the binding.

Robert Brathwate of High house in Hugill – brother & heire of Thomas, son & heire of Gawan, son of Thomas Brathwate of Ambleside, the Purchaser.

§47. [Tenements] Baise Browne house – see §49.
As for the House; it was made out of several Tenements. Purchased of Tenants by Mr Gawen Brathwate, & so made up into a Demane which came to Miles Atkinson, as the Tenements aforesaid. {There are Tenements in Great Landall ~~afor~~ cald Gilpine Lands, the tenants of which are the said Atkinsons & Thomas Bensons of High Close & doe Suit at Grosmer.}[119]

§48. Elterwater House
There is no other freehold but Elterwater House (vulgo Hall) which was made of Tenements united together & after purchased into freehold, doing Suit of Court onely & paying 20s Rent \ now / to Miles Atkinson of Baseburne It was sold by [Blank] Benson to [Blank] Benson the now owner of it. This perhaps being in Baise browne Lordship, may give name to the place where the Tenants live – which is called Elterwater in the Easter Booke, where there are 9 familyes. I thinke they are in the Chapelry of Langdale for Mr Benson of Elterwater Hall went with me thither and was one of those that gave Informacion. q. tamen.[120] Yes. It is soe.[121]

[II.133]

§49. Baise Brown House
The Cheife house {? What the name it?} stands on an hill side with a medow before \ it, / down the midle of which runs a little-brooke which upon a great Rane over flows the meado\w/ & makes it very fertile. The house is on the west side the ~~meadow~~ River, which springs ~~an~~ \ near / Langdale Steäke {a stone set up for a way marke} & runs down hence into Elterwater Tern, being the chiefe head of it from which it is fed. \ & / Thence it descends into Breathey att \ a / little distance. The House is from Langdale Chaple 1m.; from the parish-church 3; from Hawkside market 4.

§50. The descent of Baise-Brow
It was formerly the Seat of the Bensons, and sold to Gawen Brathwaite of Ambleside Esq. about 30 years agoe; & ~~is~~ now belongs to Robert Brathwate of High-house in Hugil in the parish of Kendal, who was a younger son of Gawen. – (whose mary d[aughter] = a country fellow.)[122] There Armes & Pedigre I have.
{Marts & Wild cats all over}

{[Notes on the] Freehold}
It hath considerable free hold. There but so many freehold, the other tenants. The[y] are admitted by [blank] & pass their estates by [blank]. The tenants ~~pay~~ \ are lyable to / Rent, Fine Certane ~~& Heriots~~; \ in dispute / ~~except such as have bought themselfes free, onely paying a Rent. I thinke there are scarce so many Tenants as to make up a Jewry so that no Courts \ Baron / are kept there~~. {There need not be many to a Court Baron. See Kitchen of *Keeping Courts*.}[123]

The Manner of Little Langdale

§51. [Manner]
The Manner of Little Langdale {in the same chapelry now}[124] \ The Chapel demolished. To which perhaps som part of Furness.[125] / It takes its name from a little dale which extends it selfe along from

[119] They attend the manor court at Grasmere.
[120] 'But query.'
[121] At the foot of the page is a small piece of paper, pasted onto the page, comprising faded pencilled notes.
[122] Whose daughter married a country fellow.
[123] John Kitchin, *Le Courte Leete et Courte Baron & Hundred Courte &c., Collect by John Kitchin de Grais Inne, an apprentice in Ley* (London, 1592 & later editions).
[124] In the same chapelry as Great Langdale, Baysbrown and Elterwater.
[125] Perhaps once attended by people from some part of Furness.

north to south, & is ~~litt~~ calld little in oposition to great Langdale – \ alias Mickle Dale[126] / of which we spoke in the \ 2 / Grosmere ~~parish~~ Lordship. It conteines in lenth from the Bridge below the Mill which is near ~~the forge~~ Baisbrowne forge \ to the fell foote from S. to north. 1 mile and ½. / & in bredth from one fell top to the other E. to West 1 ~~of a~~ mile.[127] ~~The whole circumference~~

[Chaplemire]
There is a place calld Chaplemire in Little Langdale chapelry {1½ m. a Capella S.W.} where tis said a chaple did stand, which was removed and adjoyned to that of Great Langdale,[128] & the sallary Annext. & a Place near it called Hall Steads being a Close, ~~now~~ in Tenancy, now purch[ased] f[ree].

[Little Langdale Notes]
{They have Waif & Stray}
{Eagles & Ravens build all over the chapelry.}
{Iron ore at Wranose – a Capella 4m. N.E.}

[II.134]

§52. [Breathey Head] Breathy[129] springs in 2 sever[a]l-heads.
At Wrynose Top in Little Langdale – thence E. by the Iron Forge calld Hacket. & Colloth[130] mill (for cloth) till it meets the other head in Elterwater Tarne {q. Ealtern Water} which springs in the head of Great Langdale alias MickleDale – & thence runns E. on the S. side the Chaple – to the said Terne: Thence E. on the N. side of Brathay.[131]

§53. Rasp[berries] – Bleaberryes in Great Langdale
Ewes[132] ~~saverin~~; Juniper – Rose-mary – Lawrel & Bayes \ Box / in Gardines

§54. §55. [Wraynose & Hardknot]
Wraynose, from the crookedness of the way which leads from little Langdale up into Cumberland by the Shire Stones & so \ directly / up Hard-knot. ~~&~~ They are each of mile high. There is Reine & Storme there when none att all in the lower part of the country. On Wrynose there ~~are~~ \ is a / little pieces of wall built in manner of a T., hard by the High way, which hath bin about 2 yard high; but are \ now / not above 1 & ½ {4 yards in a Branch} a little beyond the Shire Stones but in Cumberland. There are allso of the like form in the High way over the mountains which leads from the high end of Ambleside into Patterdale ~~& so to Penrith in Cumberland~~ so to Bo\a/rdal & so to Barton Kirke & so to Penrith in Cumberland, which they call Cammerton builds, ~~being~~ from one Cammerton of I suppose, either the Builder or Contriver of them\ or build them. / There use is to defend & Shield from the great Stormes of raine winde & snow on those lofty mountains; which they will secure on one side or other wherever the winde sit*.
The mountains are so hye that this Rithme is commonly spoke of them.

God Bless us & Saine[133] us ~~from~~
From Hart-knot & Warynose
And they faw down theil main[134] us.

[126] Mickleden ('large valley') is at the very head of the Langdale Valley beyond Dungeon Ghyll, just below the Pike o' Stickle axe factory location. It is in the chapelry of Langdale and parish of Grasmere. *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[127] The distance appears to have been originally written as ¼ mile, but then altered to 1 mile.
[128] Its duties and congregation were then adjoined to Great Langdale chapel.
[129] River Brathay.
[130] Colwith.
[131] 'North' is blotted.
[132] Yew trees.
[133] 'Sain': to make the sign of the cross on a thing or person as a consecration or blessing; or for the purpose of exorcising a demon, warding off the evil influences of witches, poison and so on. *OED*.
[134] 'And if they fall down they'll main us.' 'Main': to maim or mutilate, *Dictionary of the Scots Language*. Online.

Hardknot, so to Eskdale, so to Raven Glass att the Sea Side.

[Machell's Notes: II.134]
*{They are but sheep builds or Shields or perhaps for Travailers.}[135]
{Ashe.}

[II.135]

§56. Bounder of Lile L[angdale] Lordship
It is bounded on the East with ~~the Lordship of~~ Great Langdale, from which tis divided with the Ridge of the fell which lyes betwixt them commonly calld [Blank]; On the West with Furness Fell, part of which (with som by houses) are in this Lordship \ ~~commonly calld Tilburts Thwaite~~ / for it reacheth as far as the Top of Wranose or Wranose-hight, one of the highest mountains ~~&~~ \ in / Westm'land: where are 3 long stones pitch'd up at about a yard distance & a spring ~~in the midle of~~ \ near /them which are calld the Shire Stones; being the place where thre countyes meet, Sc. Westm'land Cumberland & Lancashire.

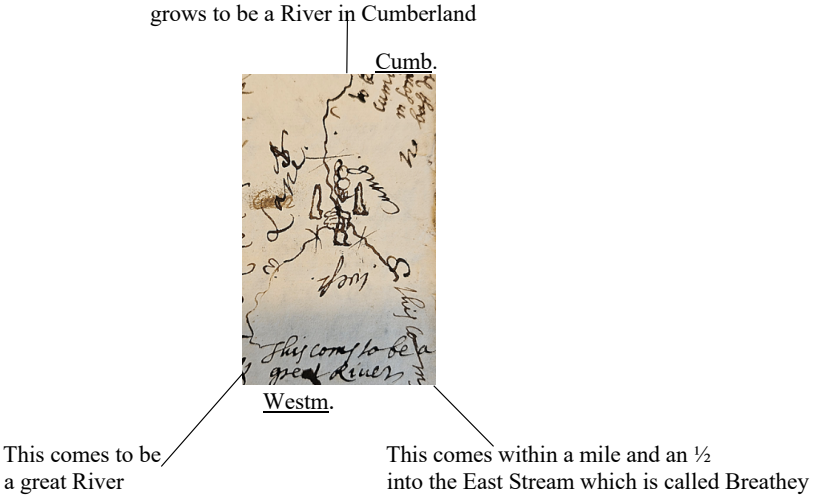


Figure 2.6.9. The three Shire Stones and the rising of rivers. II.135.

& the spring sends forth thre veines, which are partitions to the 3 countyes, 2 of which make 2 considerable Rivers, Sc. E. & N.W. 1. called Brathy, 2. calld Dudden [which] grows to be a River in Cumberland, which in summer time you may cross dry shod.[136] In winter in great sto[r]ms & showers it tears down Rock & Crags as big as horses, to the great amaisment & terrour of the Beholders.[137] This coms to be a great River, while this coms within a mile and a ½ into the East stream which is called Breathey.[138] {Alter this to bring it in at the last.}
On the North, it[139] is bounded with part of Wraynose, being divided from Cumberland by the Ridge of the mountaine; On the South its bounded with Lough-rig & part of Lancashire, from both which it is ~~parted~~ \ divided / with the River Breathey.

§57. Soyle of Little Langdale
It is no very good soyle, yett hath som good meadow in it, with som pasture & arable but in little parcels more like gardens then fields; & very little or no wood in the Lordship. Yett they are so careful of keeping their corne & hay dry while it is in the Shock or Cock,[140] that they bring out all their bedclose & through over them upon the approach of a Shower of Raine: & bring it in without

[135] 'Bield': a refuge or place of shelter. *OED*.
[136] The last few words have perished at the page edge.
[137] Written at the page top; it appears there upside down.
[138] Adapted from the information Machell provided on his map. See *Figure 2.6.10.*
[139] Little Langdale.
[140] Stook of corn. At this point Machell has written, {'This must be out'}, in the margin.

helpe of Horse, in Burthens upon their Backs. \ More Scotorum, venter Magistri Artium ingenij quibus Largîtor.[141] /

[II.150A]

(57) If Ridal be not in this Chapelry?[142]

[II.135]

§58.[143]
It has no villages in it, being onely a Dale, excepting onely that there are 2 or 3 houses out of the dale called Tilburth-Thwait \ in Lancashire / as was said before, on Furness Fells, which doe Suite & Service at the Court of Langdale; & they are 2[144] mile distant from Great Langdale Chaple, 4 from the parish church & 4 from Hawkside Market. {They are in another parish, Sc. in Lancashire: q. what parish church: Ulv[er]ston, Hawkside or Conished;[145] & what Lordship.}

[II.136][146]

[Notes]
? q. of a place in Westmorland called Cawsa[147] – Jo. Philipsons[148] and what he is to the other familyes. {Brathwate} – from Breathay-Thwaite forsan som better so called – by the River Breathey. Or Brea Thwate from the Banke of the River called a Brea.[149]
Rydale – from Rotheydale. – Rotheey: bestow.[150]

[II.137][151]

§59. Tenure of the Langdales [152]
Of whom it is held? \ by / Knt Rent.[153]
The Lord hath Fines Arbitrary, Heriots Rents Waifs & Strayes,
\ There are [blank] freeholds which appear in it & the other / Tenements[154] hold by Custom of the Manner, their Estates descending from Ancestor to the Heir Generall. & doe Suit & service at the ~~Manner House~~ best house in the manner calld Fell-foote in Langdale, \ which is / the same distance from Ch. & M. There is no demaine now nor manner house.
{? How doe they admit to estates & pass the M. away}

§60. Lands of Little Langdale
The Lordship. It belongs to the family of the Penningtons of Moncaster in Cumb'land; and is thought to have don of old – Sir William Pennington is the present proprietor about ~~20~~ \ 22 / years of aige; & ~~lately~~ made Baronet since he came to his estate. {The most part are purchased free about 7 years (ab 1692) of Sir William Pennington who has sold the Rest, being Customary Tenent to Jo. Philipson Proprietor of Cawsa in Windermer parish ~~whose Armes & pedigree you have before~~}.[155]
N.B. Q. whether I have his Armes & pedigree or whether it be in Dugdal. Dugdal has Pen[nington] of Seaton.[156]

---

[141] 'In the manner of the Scots, for whom the stomach is "Master of the Arts", a bestower of ingenuity.' [I.e. Necessity is the mother of invention.]
[142] Here Machell refers back to §57.
[143] Text written beside this numeral is largely obscured by the binding.
[144] Overwritten and difficult to read. Machell first wrote ½, then turned the '1' into '0' to make 0/2.
[145] Conishead is a chapelry of Ulverston.
[146] This (otherwise conventional) page has information on Braithwaite and Rydal written on a small scrap of paper pasted onto it.
[147] Machell thought this place to be in Windermere: see II.123, II.137.
[148] See §60, below.
[149] 'Brea': a hill or hillside; the high ground adjoining a river bank, *Dictionary of the Scots Language*. Online.
[150] Rothay's probable meaning is 'Trout river', from Old Norse, 'rauđi': 'the red one', which was used as an appellative for the trout. See Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 12. For Machell's understanding of this, see below, II.138.
[151] Most of the left-hand margin of this page is obscured by the binding. Visible words have been transcribed.
[152] Here, in the margin, there is a folio number: {f[olio]25}.
[153] Free rent by knight's service: scutage (see the English Glossary). Sergeanty/serjeanty: a form of feudal tenure dependent upon rendering a personal service to the king. *OED*.
[154] MS: 'in it & the other / The Tenements'.
[155] William Pennington (c.1655-1730) was created baronet in 1676; he was High Sheriff in 1685, see *CFH*, 258.
[156] For Pennington of Seaton, see *CFH*, 258-59.

Of the manner of Ridall

§61. Ridall
The Manner takes its name from Rydale or may be \ from / Wry-dale because the Parke & Demaine lands wry[157] or Tur[n]e them ~~them~~selves in betwixt 2 \ mountaines / fells.
{Vallis in curvato forsan,[158] if it should not rather be Ridell and so called from a family of that name which came in with the Conquest. See Batle Abbey.}[159] {Ergo the Roll is suspicious.}[160]
{q. if it be ever writ Wridale in Evidences or Roathadale from the River which [was a] common way of naming places.} It conteines in Lenth (from the little Stone bridge att Ambleside field head, \ South / to Grasmere from Ridale Water on the west, to the Ridge of Ridal Fell East – 1 mile & ½. In circumference [Blank].

§62. Bounds
It is bounded on the East with the Lordship of Hartsop, from which tis divided by the Ridge of ~~Patterdale~~ \ Kirkstone Fell; / on the West with Loughrig ~~Lands~~ from which tis divided by the River ~~Ridal~~ Roathey; on the North with Grosmere, from which tis divided {?} by a ~~wall on the~~ streight line from Stean Stone to the old wall & to the Scar Top; & on the South with ~~the Lands of~~ Ambleside \ fields / from which tis divided by ~~the~~ Scander beck {?}
It is generally good Land, both Arable & meadow & pasture, and very well wooded ~~both~~ with Timber & underwood {oak; Ash &c.} especially ~~up~~ the Demaine Lands.
{See}Armes &c. Hujus §5 & 9.[161] In the Study Parlour Hall.

[II.138]

[Notes]
In a peat moss upon Lough-rigg Fell was once found a crude canoe made of a hollowed trunk of a Tree.
{Rothey-dale Correpte Roydale, & Corrupte, Ridale.}

Memorandum.
In Ro~~a~~they (which runs by Ridal being cald Ridal [beck] there & receives that name afterwards) and in Breathey, there is this Remark~~e~~able – That where \ they / run both (~~almost~~) together into the head of Windermer Water, in that Lordship, 2 several sorts of fish come out of that lake and follows the several streames. Sc. Troutes & Rase (or Case) a fish like a char \ sort of char / so that for several miles you shal finde none but Case in Breathy, & none but Trouts in ~~the other~~ Rothey, the Reason of I shall impute in the margent to Nature of the fish & currents of the water – for the Trout loves a streame, the char a calme; & therefore Brathey being a calme water, abounds with the charrs; & Rothey being fierce, abounds with Troutes – And Sir Daniel Fleming have a Lock on either River [which] abounds with them both.

[Rydal]

[II.139]

§63. Description villæ
{Fam[ilies] 14} There are noe villages ~~But~~ \ save the Hamlet / Ridall onely;\ tis only one / in this Lordship. {~~at vill~~} But on the other side the water, as if it were one Town, is Lough-Rig which wee spoke of before, & they 2 make 1 Constablewick.
The houses in Ridall are all of stone. And there is a wood bridge over the River betwixt it and Loughrigg, & a stone bridge by Ridall hall over a little brooke, being the High way to Ambleside

[157] 'Wry': to wend or to swerve and turn aside. *OED*.
[158] 'It perhaps means, the curved valley'.
[159] The Battle Abbey Roll is a commemorative list of the companions of William I, once held in Battle Abbey, Hastings. It is known from 16th-century copies in Leland and Holinshed, but neither list is regarded as accurate. Camden and Dugdale suggested that names were added by the monks. See Catherine Lucy Wilhelmina Powlett, Duchess of Cleveland, *History of Battle Abbey* (London, 1877), 325-28.
[160] See Machell's Paper on the Ridells (II.140), for another version of this sentence.
[161] 'Of this, see sections 5 and 9.'

where the Hall appears well.[162] There are quarryes of slate att White-Moss near unto the Town; by reason of which convenience most of their houses are slated. ~~There are none but the~~ \ There is nothing of Note / but the Mannor House of which anon. All the Demaine Grounds are very well wooded with Oake, Ash & plenty of ~~and allso with~~ underwood.
It is held of [blank].

§64. Tenure
The Lord has Rent \ fine Certaine or Arbitrary? / heriot, waifs & stray {?} with Service & Boons from his Tenants. And there are [blank] freehold. And the Tenants hold by the Custom of the Manner. ~~Appearing at the Lords Court Baron~~ {The rest hold by [blank].}

§65. [Old Hall; Manor House]
\ There is a place called the Old Hall, ab aula[163] ¼ S. & from the Chap[el] 3m, on the right hand to Ambleside by the High way whence Sir Dan[iel] lead stone to build a barn. /

The Manner house is called Ridall hal.
{3m. from the church; 1m.¼ to Ambleside Chapel; 4m. from Hawkside.}
\ The hall is a good old house / ~~Stone building~~ (3 storyes high) \ said to be built at 9 times; more of convenience than usually; / situate upon the side of ~~a little hill or~~ Banke, so that you ascend from the highway (which lyes west of it \ windeing up by degrees / ~~up~~ to the house; on the east side ~~of which~~ is a little brooke with a stone bridge over it, which turns a corne mill belonging ~~to the Hall~~ \ adjoyneing to the Gardene. / And the other River \ Rothy / runns by the hyway on the west side the house at about the distance of 2^{ce} 12 score [yards];[164] on which there is store of Pike Eal Trout & Pearch, which are \ taken / with a waterlock made over the River. In the other are Troutes and Eals only ~~but no pikes att all~~.

[II.149][165]

There \ are / fine ~~Gardens &~~ Walks about the house & tis well fence'd with trees planted on every side {most of which are Black Cherrys which Sir Daniel Fleming has ~~reard~~ in his Time reared from stones.} There are large trees of Lawrell almost as high as the Hall – A Row of Scotch Firrs in the walk next the House – maden hair great store upon the walls there. Coded Arsmart in the Hole next the Bog House – Peaches growing upon Standards not plashed[166] – a Grotto in the orchard with a Catadupe}[167]
There are 2 parkes, called the High & Low Parke. The High Parke is distant about ½ a mile \ N.E. / & is very well wooded with timber trees Ash &c.

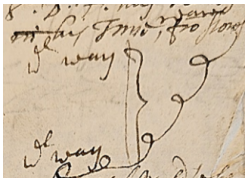


Figure 2.6.10. {'Which Way - Which way'}. II.149.

[162] MS: '~~Ridal is a pretty populous place & theire houses~~ \ The houses in Ridall are / all of stone: And there is a ~~stone~~ \ wood / bridge over the River betwixt it and Loughrigg: & a stone bridge by Ridall hall over a little brooke ~~calld~~ ~~which turns a \ corn / mill belonging to the Hall~~…'
[163] '… from the hall'.
[164] 480 = twice twelve score.
[165] Much margin comment on II.149 is obscured by the binding; it has not been transcribed.
[166] 'Plashed': bent down and interwoven (stems partly cut through) so as to form a hedge or fence. Cf: pleach. *OED*. Machell preferred to see the peach trees grown as standards.
[167] 'Catadupe': a cataract or waterfall. *OED*. Machell was referring to Rydal Hall's grotto, the subject of one of Wordsworth's poems. '…Then, while I wandered where the huddling rill / Brightens with water-breaks the hollow ghyll /As by enchantment, an obscure retreat / Opened at once, and stayed my devious feet'. See William Wordsworth, 'An Evening Walk', in *Poems in 2 Volumes, Vol. 1* (London, 1815).

{Which way – Which way}[168]
The Low Parke is distant about a mile \ S. / & the Lower part of it is good arable medow & pasture, ~~but~~ \ & / the higher clad with great Oakes and other wood; But there are no Dear in either of them. There is one Demain of which the parkes are parcel.
{I was pleased to see The Hall Richly hung; with 18 or 20 fox skins stufed – an argument of a Good Common Welths man and a great Pa[t]riot.}[169]

[II.139]

The Hall though placed amongst rocky mountains on the right hand & left, yet hath a most pleasant & delightfull aspect towards the S.S.E. of the Gardine, meadowes, woods & \ Windermere / water for 6 or 8 miles with Scotch firs, squirrels, Codded Arsmart (a yallow flore) & rill of water running fiercely through the Gardine & Bog house & driving a mill.

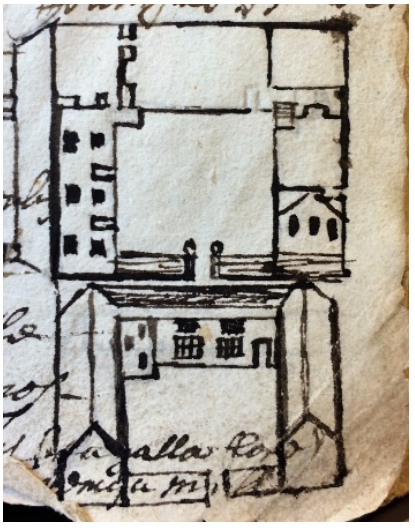


Figure 2.6.11. Rydal Hall. II.133.

[II.149]

§66.[170]
No freeholds but the Lord. \ But there are som Customary Tenants from Grasmere & Loughrigg who appear at the Court. / The present Proprietor is Daniel Fleming Esqs {Now Sir Daniel Anno Domini 1692. Their ancient estate is in Lancashire}, who came to the estate upon defect of the male of [Blank] Fleming who \ as may be seen by the following pedigree / had 1 Son that dyed unmarryed &

[168] See *Figure 2.6.11*. Machell was possibly unsure of the geography of these two parks.
[169] Fox-hunting became popular during this period, possibly because hunters had made virtually every other huntable species extinct, but arguably because foxes were genuinely regarded as pests. James II was a keen fox huntsman, both in England and in exile, see W. Speck, 'James II and VII (1633-1701), king of England, Scotland, and Ireland'. *ODNB*. Machell complained several times in these texts that there were far too many foxes in Westmorland. Of Patterdale, he wrote, 'Badgers and Foxes more than enough, al these Creatures being fatall enemyes to their Ews and Lambs' [Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, I.708]. According to the *OED*, a 'Commonwealth's Man' at that period could be described as, 'a man who is devoted to the interests of a commonwealth: a patriot [a term now] obsolete'. *OED*. The apparent meaning of Machell's remark, then, is that Daniel Fleming killed foxes for the common good. But the phrase, 'Commonwealth Man', had deeply political meanings. In the 17th century it referred to a follower of Cromwell; in the late 17th and 18th centuries a 'good commonwealth man' was a Whig radical retaining the political objectives of Cromwell's Commonwealth, predictably derided by Tories. Thus, Dryden in 1681, 'Never was patriot yet, but was a fool', and Johnson's, 'Patriotism is the last refuge of a scoundrel'. As a High Tory, did Machell quietly deplore Fleming's role with Sir John Lowther in bringing down James II, leading to this wry comment; or, as a great admirer of the gentry, and of Daniel Fleming in particular, are his observations simply to be taken at face value? My thanks to Professor Emeritus Michael Mullett, the instigator of this debate.
[170] Text within the margin is obscured by the binding here.

2 daughters – One maryed to Sir Jordane Crosland of [Blank] in Northumberland; The other to Mr Collinwood &c. – There ped[igree] Arms &c. I have. See hujus §5.9.[171]
There is allso in this ~~Lordship~~ \ parish / part of Ambleside, Sc. the North End of it: But that being in the Lordship of Windermere I shall refer it to thither as its proper place \ It is treated of there / beside those in Windermere Parish below the Stock.

[Machell's Notes: II.149]

Qu. whether Brathwates House be in Windermer or Gresmer.
Memorandum – That Brathwate is a numerous name in Furness fells, \ near adjoyneing /most of the familiyes being of that Sirname; but none has arrived to the Reputation & degree Gentlemen except those of this House. Whence – The Bra-

[II.140]

[Paper 3.]

{ Descent of Ridall}
This Lordship & Mannor House (now removed)[172] may seem to have formerly belongd to the Ridals; and to have given name to that Ancient Family; which is said to com in with the Conqueror (in Battle Abby) And of which name I finde one Stephen Ridel, Chancellor to Earle John, who was brother of King Richard 2. (*Hollinshed*, p.130. Col. 2).[173] But whether \ & how / he was related to this place & family I may \ dare / not determine. {But he could not com in by that name; which render the Roll[174] \ not / a little suspicious} See something of the Flemings & Harringtons in Camden: of Lancashire, p.682.[175]

[II.143][176]

[Letter to Thomas Machell from Daniel Fleming]

For the Reverend & his much honoured friend Mr Thomas Machell, Rector of Kirkbythore, these at Kirky-Thore.

[II.145][177]

Rydal, Feb. 9. 93/94
Sir
Having often occasion to consult Dugdale's *Baronage of England*, I hope you'l be pleased to return mine hither as soon, & as safely, as you can. I am glad to know that you, Mr Arch-deacon[178] and Mr Todd[179] are concerned for Westmorland, Northumberland & Cumberland in the new edition of Mr Camden's *Britannia*;[180] not doubting but that those three counties will be very well done. I long to hear of that book being published. I have here sent you a copy of a pedigree, which I omitted to deliver unto you at your being in this country, and which is more correct than that which was more

[171] For the Fleming pedigree, see II.141-42. 5:9 refers to arms at Rydal Hall: see II.124.
[172] Removed to its present site.
[173] A crossed-through margin note on MS.II.139 gives identical information. John Holland, first earl of Huntingdon and duke of Exeter (c.1352-1400) was the second son of Thomas Holland, earl of Kent (c. 1315-1360), and Joan (d. 1385), daughter of Edmund of Woodstock, earl of Kent. John was half-brother of Richard II, son of Joan and Edward, the Black Prince, whom Joan married in 1361 after the death of Thomas Holland. M. Stansfield, 'Holland, John, first earl of Huntingdon and duke of Exeter (c. 1352-1400)'. *ODNB*.
[174] Roll of Battle Abbey, see above: II.137, §59.
[175] See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 755D: 'More Eastward standeth Aldingham, an ancient hereditament belonging to the family of Haveringtons, or Harringtons, unto whom it came from the Flemmings, by the Cancefields; and whose inheritance descended by a daughter unto William Bonvill of Somersetshire; and at last by him unto the Greies, Marquesses of Dorset.'
[176] Letter address-sheet, 15cm x 19cm.
[177] II.145 comprises a letter from Sir Daniel Fleming, referring to his family pedigree, for which see II.141-42.
[178] William Nicolson, future bishop of Carlisle.
[179] Rev. Dr Hugh Todd, canon of Carlisle cathedral (4th canonry), 1685-1728. See David W.V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 146.
[180] The editor was Edmund Gibson (1669-1748) born in Bampton, graduate of Queen's College, Oxford, antiquary, bishop of Lincoln (1716), bishop of London (1723). Gibson's edition of Camden's *Britannia* was published in 1695: see D.J.W. Mawson, 'Dr Hugh Todd's account of the Diocese of Carlisle', *CW2*, 88 (1988), 207-24, at 220 fn.4.

hastily taken here by Sir William Dugdale. I wish we had any thing in these parts that would invite you to cross our mountains, your company being very acceptable unto
Sir
Your most faithful servant
Dan: Fleming.

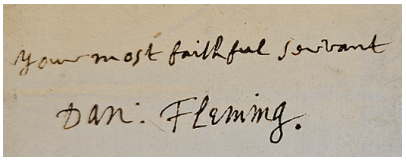


Figure 2.6.12. Daniel Fleming's Signature. II.145.

[II.141-142][181]

The Pedigree of the Flemings of Rydal Hall in Westmerland

Sir Michael le Fleming, Knight {he lived at the time of the Conquest &c.} being related unto Baldwine the 5 Earl of Flanders was sent into England with some forces to assist William the Conqueror the said Earl's son in law. This Michael had given him by King William, the Castle of Gleaston and Caernarvon, with the Lordships and Manors of Aldingham, Bec\k/ermet &c. in the Counties of Lancaster and Cumberland. He married [Blank] the daughter of [Blank] and had isue

{Henry 2 &c.} Sir William le Fleming, Knight, Owner of Gleaston Castle Aldingham Mitchel Land &c. in Lancashire who married [Blank] and had issue	Sir Richard le Fleming Knight, his 2nd son, who had Caernarvon Castle Beckermet &c. in Cumberland and Lancashire who married [Blank] and had issue	Daniel le Fleming Anselm de Furness Jordan de Furness Godith le Fleming	
{Henry 3} Sir Michael le Fleming Knight who died without issue	Alice le Fleming married to Richard de Cancefield who became heir to her brother	Sir John le Fleming Knight, who married [Blank] daughter of [Blank] and had issue	
		Sir Richard le Fleming Knight, who married Elizabeth daughter of Adam de Urswick and heir to Adam and Jo. Her brethren, by whom he had the manor of Coniston &c. in Lancashire, and by her he had issue	
{Edward 1}		John le Fleming who married [Blank] and had issue	
{Edward 1 &c.}		Raynerus le Fleming who married [Blank] the daughter of [Blank] and had Issue	Hugh le Fleming his second son who had issue Mary, married to Ralph de Frisington in Cumberland
{Edward 2}		Sir John le Fleming Knight, who married [Blank] daughter of [Blank] and had issue	
{Edward 3}	William le Fleming who died without issue	Sir John le Fleming Knight his second son who married [Blank] daughter of [Blank] and had issue	Joan le Fleming married to Jo. Le Towers of Lowick in Lancashire
{Edward 3 &c}		Sir Richard le Fleming Knight married Catherine	Robert le Fleming his 2nd son

[181] Pages written in a hand which appears to be that of Sir Daniel Fleming.

		daughter of Sir John de Kirkby knight and had issue		
{Richard 2 &c.}		Sir Thomas le Fleming Knight married 1t Eleanor daughter of [Blank] 2ndly Isabel daughter of Sir Thomas Leyburne Knight and had issue by his 2nd wife	- Jos le Fleming - James le Fleming -Richard le Fleming, Bishop of Lincoln - Robert le Fleming, Dean of Lincoln - Joan le Fleming	
{Henry 4 7c.}		Sir Thomas le Fleming Knight married Isabel daughter and coheir to Sir John de Lancaster Knight, by whom he had the Lordship of Rydal &c. in Westmorland and he had issue	John le Fleming his 2nd son	
{Henry 6 &c.}		John Fleming senior Esq. who married 1. Joan daughter of Sir [Blank] Broughton Knight 2. Ann daughter of [Blank] and by his former wife he had issue	William Fleming his 2nd son	
{Richard 3 &c.}		John Fleming Junior Esq. who married Joan daughter of Sir Hugh Lowther Knight & had Issue		
{Henry 8}		Hugh Fleming Esq. married Joan daughter and co-heir of Sir Richard Hudleston of Millom Castle Knight and had Issue	- Agnes Fleming married to Richard Ducket Esq. - [Blank] Fleming married to Richard Kirkby Esq. - Margaret Fleming married to Thomas Stanley Esq. - [Blank] Fleming married to William Bardsey Esq. - [Blank] Fleming married to [Blank] Thwaits Esq.	
		Anthony Fleming Esq. married 1. Sir Jeffrey Middletons daughter and had no issue 2. Elizabeth daughter to William Hoton Esq. 3. Jane daughter of John Rigmaden Esq. By his 2nd wife he had issue	- Thomas Fleming - David Fleming - David Fleming - Joan Fleming married to Lancelot Lowther gent.	
Elizabeth		William Fleming Esq. who married 1, Margaret daughter of Sir John Lamplugh Knight 2. Agnes sister of Sir Robert Bindloss Knight. By his 2nd wife he had issue		
James 1 &c.		John Fleming Esq. who married 1. Alice daughter of Sir Francis Ducket Knight and had no issue	- Thomas Fleming 2* - William Fleming 3* - David Fleming, 4, who	- Joseph 5 - Dorothy Ambrose. - Mary Senhouse.

		2. Bridget daughter of Sir William Norris Knight of the Bath Sir Thomas Bolds widow and had no issue 3. Dorothy daughter of Sir Thomas Strickland Knight of the Bath by whom he had issue	married Isabel daughter of James Braithwaite Esq. and had issue	- Grace Barwise. - Eleanor, Lady Lowther.
Charles 1 &c.		William Fleming Esq.*	Bridget Lady Crosland. Agnes Collingwood	
Charles 1 &c.		William Fleming Esq. next heir male to William Fleming Esq. next abovesaid, married Alice daughter of Roger Kirkby Esq. and had Issue	- John 2 - Thomas 3 - Jos. F. 4 - Dan. F. 5	- Agnes Dudley - Dorothy Hudleston - Mary Browham
Charles 11 &c.		Sir David Fleming of Beckermet &c. aforesaid, knight married Barbara eldest daughter of Sir Henry Fletcher Baronet and had Issue	- Roger F. 2 - Will. F. 3 - Jo F. 4	- Jo F. 5 - Isabel F. - Alexander F. 6
James ii &c.		William Fleming Esq. 1	- Henry F. 2 - David F. 3 - John F. 4* - Thomas F. 10*	- Fletcher F. 11 - Catherine Wilson 1 - Alice F. 2 - Barbara Tatham 3 - Mary Bouch 4

In this pedigree I have omitted divers things for brevity sake which you may see at large in MS. A. page 59, and MS. P. Leaf 1. &c.[182]

> Nam genus & proavos, & quæ non fecimus ipsi,
> Vix ea nostra voco.
> Ovid.
>
> Nil decus aut splendor, nil Regia nomina prosunt,
> Splendida Divitiis nil juvat ampla Domus.
> Omnia fluxerunt, virtutis sola remansit
> Gloria, Tartareis non abolenda rogis.
> Ibid. 722.[183]

[II.140]

The [old] Hall is said to have formerly stood on the top of a woody hill on the left hand as you goe to Ambleside about [Blank] from it; & Sir Daniel Fleming tells mee he fetched stones from som ruines there to build with […][184] See more of Ridal Hall in my Itinerary.[185]

[182] See Daniel Fleming's MSS: D/Lons/L12/2/1 and 15: the latter consists of 2 volumes.
[183] 'Birth and ancestry, and that which we have not ourselves achieved, these things I scarcely call our own.' 'Not honour nor splendour nor a royal name profits us; a great house of magnificent wealth cannot help us. Everything alters; the glory of virtue alone remains, not to be extinguished by the funeral pyres of Hell.' From Ovid, *Metamorphoses* Bk. 13, lines 140-41, 722.
[184] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[185] See Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, from II. 382.

[II.150][186]

[Windermere]

§70[A].
In Windermere the Best Arables is worth 20^{s} or 30^{s} per Annum
The Midle for 15.
The worst pasture – is worth 5.
Informante T. Dixon Senior



Figure 2.6.13. Windermere. Islands near Bowness. II.150.[187]

[Ambleside]

In Ambleside the most of the familyes are of the Mackriths, but none of the quality of a Gentleman.

[II.151]

Ambleside Chapel in Gresmire is parochial.

[186] Most of the right-hand margin of II.140 is obscured by the binding and cannot be transcribed.
[187] See also II.313.

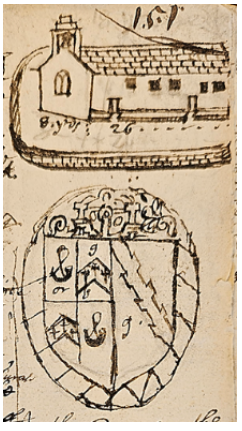


Figure 2.6.14. Ambleside Chapel, ‘ In the Quier on the right ha[n]d window near to great East window’. II.151.

In the Quier on the right ha[n]d window near to great East window. The 1ᵗ is the Coat of Bentham in Yorkshire. 2. Brathwate of [Blank] Impaleing Penruddock.
[Breadth] 8 yards [length] 26. {In Good Repare all but flags.}

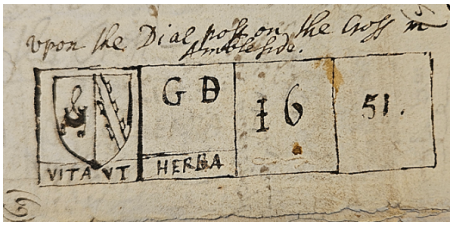


Figure 2.6.15.‘Upon the Dial Post on the Cross in Ambleside’. II.150.

§71. Bounder of Ambleside Chapel
It is bounded on the E. with Troutbeck Chapelry in Windermere divided by Wansfel wall – (made by the 2 Hamlets); on the S. with ~~windermer~~ Holbeck-gill & Windermer water – divided by ~~the bottom of the water of~~ Holbeck Sike; on the W. ~~with the~~ & N. with the proper precincts of the mother church, divi[d]ed by Rowthay &. Scandal beck.
To whom it is Dedicated is not known, but they have their Rush beareing about St James tide.[188] So has all places I thinke in the Barony.

§72. Made Parochial
It was made a burying place (~~about 15 years since~~) by Bishop ~~W~~ Pearson. Sc. 10 of July 1676.[189] Upon a Petition to the said Bishop suggesting that the Inhabitants within the said chapelry within the Parishs of Gresmergh & Windermer [190]



Figure 2.6.16. Inscription on ‘Ambleside Chappel Bell’. II.150A.

[188] 25 July.
[189] John Pearson (1613-86). In 1662, Pearson became master of Trinity College, Cambridge; he was bishop of Chester from 1672 to 1686. See H. Quehen, ‘Pearson, John (1613-1686), bishop of Chester’. *ODNB*.
[190] The inhabitants in the chapelry had leave to use it for this purpose. See below, §90.

[II.154]

§90. were far distant from the said churches, & by reason of the heat in sommer & great snows & sudden Inundations of water in winter, could not without great difficulty & danger carry their dead thither for Burial, Earnestly requesting Liberty to Bury & Baptise at the said Chappelry.[191] And promising to pay all ancient & accustomed dues to the Parishes of Gresmergh & Windermergh.
In consideracon of the promises, & of the Consent of the said Rectors given to the said Petition, [the Bishop] issued out an Order impowering the Inhabitants of said Chappelry to Bury their Dead & Baptise their children at the said chapple. Provided they continued to pay all ancient & accustomed dues whatsoever to the Parishes of Gresmergh & Windermergh as before and not otherwise.

Given under our hand & seal the 10 of July – in the Year of our Lord 1676. & in the 4 year of Our Consecration – John Cestriensis.[192]
Sub Sigillo.[193]

[II.151]

§73. Indowment
The ancient Sallary was abo[u]t 14li per Annum, given by the charity of well disposed persons ~~to~~ in a curate laid upon the respective Tenements, ~~at so much yearly, for which they mortgage a~~ parcell ~~of land~~ pledgeing their Lands by Certaines Deeds for so much of it as they receivd. Which writeings were in the hands of Thomas Brathwate Esqs. \ And ordered by Jo[hn] Cestriensisto (i.e.) be deposited in such a persons hand or place as the majority may com to them. Dated under his hand & Episcopal Seale the 3. July 1674 & the 2nd year of his Consecration. / D. Pearson, who also gave license to bury there.}

§74. Disposal
The Curate is recommended by the majority [of the inhabitants], and approv'd by the Minister. He teaches for 6d per quarter of the tenants: & of other what [he] can get.

[II.152]

An inscription brought from Borwens

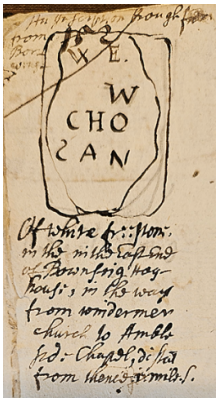


Figure 2.6.17. Inscription from 'Borwens'. II.152.

Of white freestone in the East End of Bownsrig Hog-house,[194] in the way from Windermer Church to Ambleside Chapel, distant from thence 1. Mile S.

[191] Requesting the Bishop of Chester.
[192] John, Bishop of Chester.
[193] 'Under my seal.'
[194] According to the *OED*, hoggs/hogs are pigs, but see *The Cumbrian Dictionary*, where hoggs, hogs and hoggets are terms used for yearling sheep. As weaned lambs, they would have sheltered against the winds of winter in a hoggas/hoggast/hogus (hog house). Rollinson, *Cumbrian Dictionary*, 82.

[II.153]

§77. [Rothey]
Rothey ends in this Chapel[ry] by running into – Breathay: at a place called the Ee or Eye, where it stands like a pool.

§78. Rothey alias Rase Beck
It spring in Grossmere \ near Dumbal Rase whence it runs S. / ~~Thence~~ See there §31. Pearles are said to be in the foote of Breathay,
Great store of Holly – & large all over; Rosemary Lawrell & bayes \ & Curran[t]s / in their gardines – Rasp[berries] common in the fields, & Strawb. & bleab.; Store of Orchards; with Black & Read Cherryes.
Blew Slate good & plentifull, & Blew Lime Stone in great postes, but will not rise in beds. Peat plenty – by Cove moss – a Capella 2m. N. Wood plenty.

§79. A sword at Elterwater Hall
[From pommel to hilt] 1 foot 2 inch [From hilt to point] 40 inch and one inch broke of

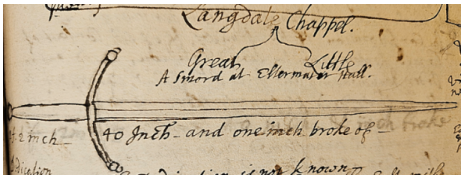


Figure 2.6.18. 'A sword at Elterwater Hall'. II.153.

{Ad Generalem}

§76. {Ad Generalem Westmeriæ Disc[riptionem]}
The Bounder of Westmorland from Windermer – water head – westwards 7 miles to the Head of Breathay \ Brathy / (which at several places assumes several names) till you com at three Stones standing like the feet of a Brandreth[195] on the Top of Wranose (all along divisening from Lancashire).[196] And here the 3 countyes of Westm'land, Cumberland & Lancashire meet: & where Cumberland comes in.) Thence N. on the Ridge of Bowfell in a streight Line {to Langs […] beck head.} {Thence westward in a streight line to […] den granes, 1m.}[197] And so ~~dow~~ (Eastwards) down the said Beck to {The Gate Foote*. Thence Southwards up Mear Sike to the Back of Stickle (a little Crag) 1m. Thence ~~Eastward on the Ridge of Blakerig as heaven water divi~~ \ thence ½ m / {to the Hee-Rase: q. if not Dunbal R.}
Test. Mr Benson of Elterwater, the Curate and others.

[Machell's Notes: II.153]
*But note that Borradale pretends to have a right to the Gate head.

[II.154]

§89. Bounder of Westm'land[198]
a. Mr Henry Fleming Rector
b. Thomas Knot Schoolmaster
c. John Herd
d. John Hawking
e. Michael Knot
& a Bounder in 1639.

[195] 'Brandreth': gridiron; tripod or trivet of iron; originally a grate supported on three legs on the hearth. *OED*.
[196] MS margin adds,'{to the head of Breatha (calld by several names) till you com at the [perished] of Wranose, where it springs.}'
[197] Parts of the margins here have perished
[198] A list of Machell's informants.

From the Hee \ High / Rase SE on the top of the fell as Heaven Water deals to Sergeant Crag ½ mile.
Thence – even N. (by a Streight Line) to the 3 Standing Steanes 1m.
Thence N. (in a Streight Line) to the – Lang-hil oth'moor ½ a m.
Thence N. (in a Streight Line) to the – Master Cragg – ½ m.
Thence NE (in a Streight Line) to ~~the High~~ Glead Pike – ½ m.
Thence N. (in Streight Line) to – Lower Glead Pike – ¼ m.[199]

§91. Bounder of Westmorland [continued]
From the lower of Glead Pike directly East ~~to~~ (downe a Sike & wall) to \ an Hatterell[200] of st[ones] calld Dunball Rase ¼ m. /
Thence, E. up the said Walls & the Peatgate \ to / Great Riggald Kno[tt] ¼ m.
Thence E. (up the said Peatgate to the Bounder Stones \ which stand near together on Willy-wise moore ¼ m. /
Thence, E. (In a streight Line, \ to the / Top of Skelly Stone \ ¼ m. /
Thence S.E. (in a streight Line) to the Dike head: an old \ Casten-Dike / where Patterdale comes in and adjoynes on Cumberland \ ¼ m. /
Thence, directly N. (on the ridge of the mountanes as heaven water divides) to Lile-Cove head, a place like a cokpit calld Cauk cove (¼ m.).
Thence N. (by the Ridge of the mountanes to The Midle Cove (like C[ove] Head or Caud[ale] Head) ¼ m.[201]
Thence N. (by the Ridge of the mountanes to Great Cove […][202] alias Blea-berry C[ove] ½ m.
Thence N. (by the Ridge of the mountanes to the Top \ Man / of Helvellin ¾ m. {Qu. In Patterdale.}
[II.155]

§92. Co[n]tin[uation] of the Bounder of Westm'land. Ad Gresmer.
From the Man {an heap of Stones} on ~~the~~ Helvellin head \ down / N. \ as heaven water divides / to the top of an hill calld The {Top of the Raise 1m ¼.} Where Glen Kuen […][203] comes in.
Thence \ down / N.W. in a Streight Line to the Top o th' Sticks. ¼ m.
Thence \ up / N. in a direct line to an heap of Stone on Stiveray \ Stiresay / Dod. ¼ m.
Thence \ down / Northw[est] by the Ridge or Edge of a fell calld Green Side to / {Withysike head} takeing in Lencoun alias Glenkoine dale head where the Beck springs. ¾ m.
{Thence down the said \ Sike / to the middle of Ulswater – King of Patterdale sayes those within the course of that Sike are in the chapelry of Patterdale & pay county sesses for bridge (with them), for Westm'land & their Constables appeared the Sessions for Westm'land.}
Thence – N.E. to the midle of Ulswater – Ushewater 1m.½
~~But Query where that part of a Tenement called Lencoune on this {?} side the Beck~~.
But Query \ whether / the Withysike at Gowberay new parke yeate be not reputed the Bounder of Westm'land.
Thence \ N.E. / downe the midle of water till you be over against How Towne (2½ m.)
Thence N. to Pooley – 1m. ½.
Ulse water ~~6~~ \ 7m. / Long. & Broad – ½ a m. – & 1m.
Harrisons & Wilsons} \ most / generally in Patterdale.[204]

[199] 'Glead': the kite (Milvus regalis). Now chiefly northern and Scottish (in form gled). Also locally applied to such birds of prey as the buzzard, osprey and peregrine falcon. The kite is sometimes distinguished as the fork-tail(ed), red, or salmon-tailed gled, while blue, brown and white gleds are hen-harriers. *OED*.
[200] Hatterel, or hatterell: A confused heap; a jumble; a large number, *Dictionary of the Scots Language*. Online.
[201] Much of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[202] Two unclear words.
[203] An unclear interlineated phrase follows here.
[204] Sentence written roughly in red crayon.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 7. Parish of Heversham]

[II.159]

Hersham Parish Baronia de Kendale

Hersham General Account.[1]

Hersham alias Heversham hath
1. Hersham which hath The church.
Free School.
Hersham Hall.
with their Raritys of any sort
1. The Parish Church wherein are
1. Hersham Parish Church
2. Crosthwate, a Parochiality
2. Crosthwate Chapel, wherein are [Blank][2]

[II.160]

Heversham – Mr Farmer Vicar.[3]
Qu. A Medicinal well there = pergeing by stoole & urine, good for.
See som part of Hersham parish in the Lordship & Chapelry of Witherslack.
Also a quarry in †thwate Chapelry.
See ibidem in margin.

[II.161]

[Heversham Church]



Figure 2.7.1. Heversham church. II.161.

This church was burnd dow[n] about 90 years agoe. 40 [long] 23 [broad].

{Dedication}
It seems from the well[4] 200 yards distant N. West \ ab Ecclesia / calld St Maryes well, to be dedicate to the Virgin Mary. But the Rush bearing is on St Peters near Midsommer.[5]

[1] This heading was originally placed on MS.II.163.
[2] Crosthwaite and Lyth.
[3] George Farmer, ordained priest (Lincoln) September 21 1689; vicar of Heversham, 1691-1724; buried at Heversham, 7 February 1723/4. CCED. *N&B1* lists Farmer as vicar of Heversham from 1692, see *N&B1*, 198.
[4] MS: 'weall'.
[5] 29 June.

{Indowment}
The Vicaridge House is distant westwards about 6 score yards – And the Patronage is in Trinity College in Cambridge, who have allso the Rectorye. The Vicar has Tithe hay \ in kinde / of the soale medows of the Ancient Demane of Heversham hall; and Tythe Corne in kinde of all the said Demanes, but nowhere else. But has Prescription money for hay in severall places elsewhere in the Parish.[6] And all other small Tithes; as also wool in kinde ~~al over~~, & 10d a Lamb – & 1s 6d ~~groates~~ a Tith Calfe throughout the Parish. The Impropriators have Corne in kinde but no Tithe of Hay.

{Bounder}
It is bounded on the E. with Preston Chappelry in the parish of Burton – divided from it by Beetham alias Hotton \ beck /or Lilly Beck. On the S. with Bethom: divided from it by Kent; & Sam Poole. On the west with the Chappelry of Wither-slack, divided by the Ridge of Whit-barrow to the Fell end. On N. with Cartmell fell Chappelry from which 'tis \ divided by the River Winstar*. / It has but one Chappelry calld Crosthwate Chappel.

In the East window of the S. Ile or Alley: Richard Buskel 1601[7]



Figure 2.7.2. Heversham Church East Window. 'Richard Buskel 1601'. II.161.

In Prestons Seat in the S. Alley [and] Three more Thus.



Figure 2.7.3. 'In Prestons Seat' and 'Three more thus'. *II 161.*

[6] Prescription money: money paid according to ancient or continued custom, especially when regarded as authoritative. *OED*.
[7] Buskel or Buskell. '…1602 Richard Buskell, gent., lately deceased, long before his death was seised of the manor of Eversham, a capital messuage called Evershamhall, 6 cottages, 72 a. land, and of one burgage or messuage in Kendal; that on the marriage of his son Thomas he settled the premises upon the issue of that marriage; that the said Thomas died in his said father's lifetime; and that Jasper, son of the said Thomas, is heir of the said Richard and is now aged 15 years and 2 months.' William Farrer and John F. Curwen (eds), *Records Relating To the Barony of Kendale II*, CWAAS Record Series 4 (Kendal, 1924), 141-67. 'In 1613-14, Jasper Buskell, counsellor-at-law, conveyed to Edward Wilson of Nether Levens, gent., the capital messuage of Heversham Hall and the demesne together with his manor of Heversham.' *N&B1*, 201.

In Hersham Church[8]
Heversham Church. l[ength] 40. b[readth] 23. See also in the General Account for Armes.
{On a Pillar. Mem[orial] Mr Henry Bellinghams lady.}
{Bellinghams [Arms] with Quarterings in the farthest window of the N. Ile.}

Above a Capital of a Pillar in the N. Ile



Figure 2.7.4. 'Above a Capital of a Pillar in the N. Ile'. II.165.

On the E? window of the north Ile.



Figure 2.7.5. 'On the E? window of the North Aisle'. II.165.

[8] On II.165, some inked comments and three inked margin sketches are superimposed over pencilled text and sketches which are now almost illegible.

On a Marble-Grave-Stone in Prestons Pew. S.



Figure 2.7.6. 'On a Marble-Grave-Stone in Prestons Pew S.'. II.165.

[II.161]

{Lordships}

1. Heversham & Milthrop \ d[istant] 1m. S. /
2. Leavins Up[per] \ 1m. N. /
3. Preston Richard.
4. Sisars \ 2m. N. / consisting of: Sidgewick \ 2m. N.E. / Hencastar \ 1m. S.E.[9] / Staneton \ 2m. E. /
5. Crosthwate & Lythe in the Chappelry of Crosthwate. N.W. 5m.
6. Nether Levens.

[Quarters]
1. Crosthwate – has in the Chaple Quarter 64 f[amilies]; in Lithe 52; Townend Quarter 45.
2. Milthrop has in that quarter 80; in Akenthwate 17; Rowell 8; Woodhouse 20; Heversham 27.[10]

[II.162]

3. {Sidgewick 39; Hinkister 30; Mabbin Hall and Leesgill 16}
{Quarter calld the West side of Kent 59 ; Brigsteer 17.}
4. Preston Richard 66; Milton 19; Staniton 60.

[II.161]

{I. Heversham Manner House Court}
{A Parke but no Deere in them} \ d[istance] ab Ecclesia 200 yards W. /
The Manner House is Heversham Hall, where a Court \ Leet / & Court Baron is kept.

[II.162]

{Descent}
Formerly belongd to the Bouskill (and Milthrop allso, which was said formerly to be a member of the manner but is not so now) from whom it was sold[11] with a 3rd part of the Tenants by Richard B[ouskill] to Mr Edward Wilson of Nether Levins about 50 years since {ab Anno 1692}.[12]
And Parke House – d[istant] ¼ m. S. – was sold with Heversham Parke, an other Parcell of the Demane, by the said B[ouskill] to Sir James Bellingham of Upper Levins 2 years afore. The former remane in Mr Edward Wilson, son of Thomas ~~Son~~, kinsman to the said Purchaser, on whom he bestowd it. The lat[t]er is passed by Mr Allan \ Bellingham /(son of James, son of Allan, son of James the Purchaser) to Col[one]l James Graham, circa anno Domini 1687.

[9] Unclear compass direction.
[10] In the MS, the Lordships were renumbered, the new numbers being superimposed over the first.
[11] MS: '~~It is said~~ formerly ~~to have~~ belongd to the Bouskill ~~with Milthrop to~~ and Milthrop allso, which was said formerly to be a member of the manner but is not so now – from whom it was sold ~~B to Mr Edward Wilson~~.'
[12] Machell wrote this in 1692. For more on the descent of the manor, see above, II.161.

{Tenure}
The Tenants are most of them customary at Fine Arbitrary & Heriotable – there being only about ~~6~~ 12 \ consid[erable] / freeholds.

[II.163]

{II. Preston Richard} I have it.[13]

[II.162]

{III. Upper Leavens}
Manner House is Upper Levens Hall {Court Baron} which was purchased either by the said Sir James or Allan his father of Mr Readman of Thornthon near Engleton Yorkshire. & was sold by young Allan aforesaid to the said Mr Graham.
{1 Parke stord with deer, & Kent runs in the midle & a Catadupe at the head.}[14] {Clean martes there.}
The Tenants are mostly Customary

[II.163]

at Fine Arbitrary & Heriotable; & but few freeholds in it.

{IV. Manner of Sisergh}
The Manner House is Sisors Hall. ~~Where~~ \ but / they kept their Court \ Leet & Baron / at Croscrake Chappel. Till they bough[t] themselves free of ~~Mr Walker~~ Sir Thomas Strickland[15] about 18 years since {ab A.D. 1692} & were Arbitrary & Heriotable as other Tenants. Now the Royalty & all is in the Tennants but \ they keep no / Courtes; but the Manner House & Demanes continue still in the name of the Stricklands & is in Kendal Parish.

[II.164]

{V. Crosthwate ~~Lordship~~ & Lith \ Manner /}
Has no Manner House, nor Demane Lands now appertaneing to it \ but tis said ~~ther~~ Calmer Hall was the manner house. / It was & is part in the Crown & part in Mr Graham, who have 2 Stuarts & joyne together in keeping a Court.[16] But the Queens Tenants are at Fine Certaine, Sc. Double the Rent at the Death; & 3ble[17] upon descent or Alienation. But the other are Arbitrary & Heriotable. The Queens part still remanes in the Crowne: But Bellinghams part is transferred by purchase to the said Mr Graham.

[II.163]

{VI. Under Levins Lordship}[18]
The Manner house is Nether \ Under / Levens Hall – (which has 2 Demanes, one of which is called Ninesergh.) And the Court is kep at the Hall*. It was anciently in the Prestons in the Manner of Furness in Lancashire, and fell by Descent to Sir Thomas by the Dea[th] of Sir John his elder

[13] In the MS, Machell left space here for information on Preston Richard, but did not use it.
[14] The rest of this margin note is blotted.
[15] The royalist Sir Thomas Strickland (1621-94) J.P., of Sizergh Castle, was captain of foot (1642) and lieutenant colonel (1644) in the first Civil War. His estate was settled on him before the second Civil War, in which he fought and was fined £943 on an annual income of £397. After the Restoration he became MP for Westmorland (1661-77). A Roman Catholic, from 1675 he did not attend the House: the Speaker was not informed of his recusancy until Sir John Lowther III was of age to succeed to the seat. Sir Thomas was disabled from sitting in 1677. Financial need compelled him to alienate his Yorkshire estate and salt farm to his cousin Sir Roger Strickland. In 1687 James II offered him the governorship of Carlisle, but he had expected 'something more suitable', so was sworn in as a Privy Councillor. Having entered exile in 1688, he died in France in 1694. https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/strickland-sir-thomas-1621-94.
[16] 'James Grahme (Graham) (1650-1730), MP for Carlisle (1685-87), was keeper of the privy purse, first to the Duchess, and then to the Duke of York (1679-88). One of the court's 'Anglican-Tory circle', Grahme and his brother, Viscount Preston, entered the Jacobite underworld in 1688. Preston's capture in 1690 led to Grahme's arrest and seizure of his Westmorland estates 'upon the notion of his being a papist'. He was released but pursued again for 'abetting and adhering to his Majesty's enemies'. From the mid-1690s, Grahme lived quietly at Levens, purchased for £24,000 in 1688. Although he claimed to have experienced financial problems associated with his loyalty, his estates are estimated to have been worth over £1,000 p.a. in the 1690s. He was mayor of Appleby (1705-06, 1717-18), and MP for Appleby (1702-1708) and Westmorland (1708-1727): http://www.histparl.ac.uk/volume/1690-1715/member/grahme-%28graham%29-james-1650-1730.
[17] Treble.
[18] MS: '{VI. ~~Nether~~ \ Under / Levins Lordship}.'

Brother.[19] And now by Marriage of the one of his Daughters,[20] is the possession of the Lord Montgomery.

{Tenure}
The Tenants are Customary Arbitrary & Heriotable except som freeholds.
This I hear is lately purchased of my Lord [Blank] by Mr Wilson of Dallan Tower {Som[time][21] in 1694}

[Machell's Notes: II.163]

*{q. if Leet.}

[II.164]

{Heversham Free School}

At Heversham ab Ecclesia 200 yards NE is erected a free Grammar School founded by Mr Edward Wilson of Nether Levins*, as by the figures over the Door in 1613.[22] And endowed by him with 20li per Annum & 2 Exhibitions of 6.1.3 4d a piece – the one to Queens College in Oxford, the other to Trinity College in Cambridge. And there is another Exhibition given by one Rig sometime Stuart of Levins, of 10li per Annum in the Hands of the College. The 2 former is limited to such Boyes as goe from this School their parents being poore; the other chiefly for those of this School, or from any other according to the Discretion of the said College. {Dr Bor \wick/ Dean of St Pauls;[23] & Dr Borwick, a physician, his Brother;[24] Dr. Rawlinson Fellow of Queens College[25] – all educated here.}

A place \ in Heversham /of from the [church] ½ a quarter [mile] NE – calld Battle Place but on what occasion is not known†.

[Machell's Notes: II.164]

*{There he farmed only, & tho he had many, never lodged in an House of his own.}
†[Source:] {The woman that lives in it.}

[19] Colonel (Sir) John Preston (1617-1645), son of Patrick Preston of The Manor, Dalton-in-Furness, succeeded his father in 1642 (baronet, 1644). A recusant family, the Prestons' large iron interests in Furness allowed them to raise a fighting force against the Parliamentarians. In 1644 Colonel Preston was wounded, fighting in Furness. Sir Henry Slingsby noted, 'His horse kill'd, and it may seem that being down, some of the foot ... gave him a knock on the head ... He lay in a swoon ... many days ... his perfect sense and understanding he recovered not for half a year after.' He was dead by the end of 1645, after which his estates were partially sold to settle the debts of John Pym: a fierce enemy of Catholics: P.R. Newman, D.Phil. Thesis, 'The Royalist Army in Northern England 1642-45' (Two Vols., University of York, 1978), Vol. 2, 166. See also, Anne C. Parkinson, *A History of Catholicism in the Furness Peninsula 1127-1997* (Lancaster, 1998), 30-33.
[20] MS: 'And now by Marriage of the one of this of his Daughters'.
[21] Or 'Sommer'.
[22] Founded in 1613 but with later endowment, see below.
[23] John Barwick (1612-1664) was born in Witherslack in 1612, third of five sons of George Barwick, a husbandman. He entered St John's College, Cambridge, in 1631; graduated BA,1635; elected fellow of the college, 1636; MA, 1638. An Arminian and a Laudian, he was ordained deacon in Lincoln Cathedral in 1640 and in 1641 was made canon of Durham Cathedral and chaplain to the bishop. A devoted royalist, he was ejected from his fellowship in 1644, upon which he went to London to be chaplain to Thomas Morton, bishop of Durham. He was said to be a secret royalist spy, communicating with the king in Oxford. After the regicide he was imprisoned for high treason but freed on bail in 1652, after which he negotiated with people of influence for the return of the monarchy. In 1660 Charles II awarded him a DD. He was appointed dean of Durham Cathedral on 1 November 1660 and dean of St Paul's in 1661. He died of consumption in 1664. J. Elligott, 'Barwick, John (1612-1664), dean of St Paul's'. *ODNB*.
[24] Peter Barwick (1619-1705), physician, was born at Witherslack, a son of George Barwick (see above). Like his brother, John, he was educated at Sedbergh School and at St John's College, Cambridge, where he was admitted sizar in 1638; BA, 1642. In 1647 he became MA and studied medicine. In 1651 he attended Charles II at Worcester. Throughout the Interregnum he and his brother continued to support the royalist cause. In 1655 he received his MD and became a member of the Royal College of Physicians. After the Restoration (1660) he became a medical advisor to the king: P. Elmer, 'Barwick, Peter (1619-1705), physician'. *ODNB*.
[25] For Richard Rawlinson, see William Poole, 'A royalist mathematical practitioner in interregnum Oxford: the exploits of Richard Rawlinson (1616-1668)', *The Seventeenth Century* 33, 5 (2018), 557-86.

{Goates in Whitbarrow.}
{Dr Sands Archbishop of York in ? – was Vicar here.}[26]

[II.170]

[Letter to Thomas Machell from Edward Wilson of Nether Levens]

Chester Dioces
Heversham Free School was founded by Edward Wilson of Nether Levens, owner of Heversham Hall in the Barony of Kendall & countie of Westmorland, gentleman, in or about the yeare of our Lord 1619,[27] & by him endowed with Severall Burgage lands to the yearely value of 21^{li} -03^{s} -10^{d}, & with a yearely Rent Charge of 3^{li} issuing out of other Lands within the same Barony; & by his Last will & testament with 2 Exhibitions of Twentie Nobles a yeare – th'one to Queenes in Oxon, th'other to Trinity College in Cambridge – yearely for ever, besides tenn poundes yearely for ever to the poore of the said parish. Schoolmasters have been severall; of greater remarke = One Rowland Lucas of Christs College in Cambridge Master of Arts, whoe was Schoolmaster there to Peter Borwicke Dr of Phisicke; to Dr Rawlinson \ Fellow of Queens College Oxon / famous in the Mathematikes & tutor to the last Earle Percy & severall others of eminent learning. The present Schoolmaster is Mr Thomas Lodge. The feoffees of Heversham Schoole at present are 12: to witt Edward Wilson Esq, grand child of him the said Edward, & Patron thereof; Sir John Ottway Kt; James Bellingham Esqs; Curwen Rawlinson Esqs;[28] Mr Thomas Bigge Vicar of Heversham; Edwin Saule; Anthony Saule; Rowland Parke; Thomas Benson; Geoffray Park; & William Holme.

This for Mr Christopher Wase from \ Mr / Edward Wilson.[29]

[II.166]

[Rarities in Nature]

{Fowle} ~~Swans~~ willd \ swans / (20 together) are some times in winter seen \ here / aboutes. & wild gees usually on the mosses at the said season. Scarples,[30] Sheldrakes, plenty of wild Duckes by 100 together, Teales & Widgeons & Didappers.[31]
{Springs Petrefying} In \ Upper / Levins Parke ½ a m. ab Aula, ther \ is / a well called Makerig well. Turnes Moss into Stone: Sic dict[um] \ forsan / quia fabricus lapides fabricando Lapides.[32]

{Trees} 2 Rare Trees in Levins Parke –? q. how great.[33] Ewe Large & plentifull all over the parish, \ Sweet / Savin \ i.e. Juniper / all over, Lau\r/ell & Bayes & Rosmary great store.

---

[26] Edwin Sandys (1519?-1588) was born at Esthwaite Hall near Hawkshead. Cambridge BA (1539); DD (1549); Cambridge vice-chancellor (1553); Bishop of Worcester (1559-70); Bishop of London (1570-76); Archbishop of York (1576-88). Sandys's name appears in CCED as vicar of Heversham from 1551-1554. See also P. Collinson, 'Sandys, Edwin (1519?-1588), archbishop of York'. *ODNB*.
[27] Edward Wilson of Nether Levens Hall, founded a Grammar School on Heversham Head in 1613, see R.D. Humber, *Heversham: The Story of a Westmorland School and Village* (Kendal, 1968), Ch.1. In 1619/20 an Indenture was made between Wilson and Thomas Kilner of Helsington, yeoman, Edward Fisher of Kirkby Kendall, clothier, Thomas Wilson, clothier, and Robert Crosfield of Stricklandroger, yeoman, to provide further for the school. See Farrer and Curwen (eds), *Records Relating To the Barony of Kendale II*, 141-67.
[28] Curwen Rawlinson (1641-1689), Gentleman, of Cark-in-Cartmel, entered Queen's College, Oxford, in 1656-7; married the niece of General Monck, duke of Albemarle, in 1672; became MP for Lancaster in 1689. The only member of his family to enter Parliament (as a moderate Tory), he died at Warwick in 1689. When his sons died without issue, the property was divided by the heirs of his sisters, see *OAD*; see also https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/rawlinson-curwen-1641-89.
[29] For Wase, see P.J. Wallis, 'Westmorland schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey', *CW2*, 67 (1967), 168-85.
[30] Unknown, but possibly scart/scaurt: cormorant or shag; or, scaurie or scorie: the young of any type of gull, see Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary, being the complete vocabulary of all dialect words still in use, or known to have been in use during the last two hundred years* (London, 1898), 245, 248. The *OED* suggests, scaup duck, scoter duck, scale-drake (sheldrake).
[31] Dabchicks. *OED*.
[32] 'So called perhaps because the stones [are like a] craftsman, fashioning stones.'
[33] The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.

{Fruite} Rasberryes plentifull ~~& Currants~~ Great store of orchards.

{Fuele} Turfe or Peat – ab Ecclesia \ ¼ / W[est] near [Blank]

{Stones} Firestone \ i.e. Sulphur / on Hersham head ab Eccleia ½ quarter m. North.
Limestone plenty. Except \ in / Preston Richard.

{Heversham Long Lives; 100 y.}
Agnas Story of Heversham buryed here 9 years agoe, was above 100 years of Aige.
Ed Saul & his wife – about 20 years since lived to make up together above 200.[34]
And there is \ one / Thomas Benson at Levins Parke now living {1692}, who is above 100 old. He frequently Angled & hunted on foote, & came to the Church 2ce a day on foot,[35] within these three yeares. Has \ house / ab Ecclesia ~~a~~ \ 2 / m. {from which Bensons name is desended; a notable family in [Blank] as appears by this pedegre}.[36]

[II.167][37]

[Benson Family Pedigree]

A Pedegre shewn me by Lancelot Benson of Ambleside, who was Born Elterwater Hall, 2 son \ (& Brother of Michael) / of Mich, son of Mich. of the same. {See the Northumberland Booke in the Heralds Office London.}This ped[igree] was taken by Mr King, Deputy to Mr Sandford, Somerset Herald – the last visitation of Northamptonshire, 1683. & entered in the Northumberland[38] Booke – being compared by Mr Lane.[39]

Benson Descent.

		Richard Benson of Heckam, alias Hersham† near Kendal in Westmerland	= Katherine daughter of Greenwood*		
George B. merchant ob. S.P. 1642	Nicolas B. 6th son & Hugh Benson Son 7th	Richard B. of Alesbury in Bucks Obijt 1639	= Martha d. of Richard Taylor of How in Hambledon Pasture Bucks	2. Will B. killd at Ostend[40]	3. Hen. B. Sine P.
	1. Will Benson Isue Rich. Benson of Chadshunt in Northampton Now living in 1691	2. Henry Benson of Charwelton in Com. Northants Esq? Ob. 1664	= Francis elder coheire of George Dumbleton of Dumbleton in Glos Esqs.	3. George B. of Towchester m. = the 2nd coheire of Dumbleton Obijt 1687	Mary

[34] In the 1669-71 Hearth Tax Roll, Lay Subsidy 195, n.73, m.3., 'Widow Saul' paid tax for one hearth. See Farrer and Curwen (eds), *Records Relating To the Barony of Kendale II*, Heversham and Milnthorpe hearth tax roll, 1669-71, 141-167. Machell's informants, Anthony and Edwin Saule, were feoffees of Heversham School, see below, II.170, II.174.
[35] MS: 'He frequently Angled, & hunted ~~upon his feet~~ \ on foote / & came to the Church 2ce a day on ~~his~~ foot,'
[36] See II.167.
[37] For other Bensons, see Part 2, Ch.6, Grasmere, II.129.
[38] Machell appears to have written 'Northumberland' over 'Northamptonshire'; unsurprising, given the similarity of the county names and the fact that the Bensons appear to have lived in both counties.
[39] The name 'Lane' is an insecure transcription; it is the last word at the (damaged) page foot.
[40] The siege of Ostend, in which an army of about 20,000 royal troops confronted a garrison of about 5,700 defenders, took place from July 1601 to September 1604, during the Revolt in the Netherlands. See Werner Thomas, 'How a defeat became a victory: the siege of Ostend in contemporary Dutch war coverage and post-war chronicles (1601-15)', in Raymond Fagel, Leonor Álvarez Francés, and Beatriz Santiago Belmonte (eds), *Early modern war narratives and the Revolt in the Low Countries* (Manchester, 2020), 125-45.

		Rich. Benson of Charwelton Esq? ob. 1671	= Ann d. & coheire of John Wirly of Dodford in Northumb. Esq.	George Benson of Little Boyton in Northumb'land	= [Miss] Knight of Stapton & had [Blank]
	2. Rich. Benson of Sulby, celebs[41]	1. Hen. Bens. of Dodford Esq. ~~obijt~~ now living 1671	= Eliz. eldest d. of Thomas Lord Gray of Grooby, eldest son to Henry Earle of Stamford[42]	George Benson now living 1691	
	Anna Maria Benson obijt 1674	~~Anna Maria~~ Christiana Elizabetha Benson. Borne in Bourges in France. Now living 1691		Jane Gray Benson, born 1685 at Dodford now living 1691.	

{Mich. Benson of Elterwater}
|
{Mich. Benson of Elterwater}
|
{Mich. Benson of Elterwater}
|
{1. Mic. Benson who sold it to 2. Lancelot Benson of Ambleside}

[Machell's Notes on the Benson Pedigree and Arms: II.167]

*A mistake; suerly never so called.
†Never of any account there. Yet there is one Benson an old man in that Parish, above 100, who had a son at Oxon.
{N. If these Bensons came from Hersham, it shew they neither had armes then, because they differ.}
{But N[ote] These arms differ much from those of the Bensons impaleing Brathwate of Burnaside. T.M.}



Figure 2.7.7. Benson Family Arms. II.167.

[Left] A seale – Benson quartering Dumbleton.
[Right] Benson quartering Whirly.
[Centre] Argent on a Bend (inter 3 goates heads \ errased / Sable langued G[ules] armed Or & S[able]) 3 Escallops of the 1st. The Crest a Goates head S[able] chargd with an Escalop Argent.

[41] 'Unmarried.'
[42] Thomas Grey, Lord Grey of Groby (1622-1657), was MP for Leicester during the English Long Parliament, a member of Cromwell's New Model army, and a regicide. He was the eldest son of Henry Grey, 1st earl of Stamford, and Anne Cecil, daughter of William Cecil, 2nd earl of Exeter. E. Bradley & S. Kelsey, 'Grey, Thomas, Baron Grey of Groby, regicide'. *ODNB*.

[II.169]

[Further Notes and Queries relating to Heversham]

Westmorland Heversham Free School.
Mr. Brigs Vicar.[43]
The Free School at Heversham: The Schoolmaster August 1692 – was Mr [Blank] Green, an Apalby scholar – who promised to send me the Monumental Inscriptions,[44] & som Armes to be drawn by Mr Webster.
? q. How the Church was Build and repared?
Qu. of the Medicinall well. How far distant ab Ecclesia. E.W.N. or S. with its vertues, & names of People cured by it, & of what diseases, with their age Condition & place of Aboad.

[II.171]

Preston Richard in Heversham

{ab Anno 1692}
{Soyle – sandy & limestone}
{B[ounded] on the East divided by Preston Patrick divided by Gatebeck on the S. with Farleton in Bethom divided by St Sunday which is here called Deepthwate beck, 2 waters meating on the West with ~~Milthrop & in~~ Hersham parish – d[ivided] by Deepthwate or St Sundayes becks: on the N. with Holm Scale divided by Gatebeck – so that there is not 2ce score [acres] of Land uncompassed about with water.}

Preston Richard is an Hamlet on the N. side {of St Sundaye which is here calld Deep Thwate Beck} ~~Of~~ \ & the West side of / Lilly-beck alias Gatebeck, consisting \ 1 / of free-hold[ers] which bought themselves free of Sir John Lowther of Lowther about 18 years since. {They bought themselves free paying only the old Rent & Suit of Court to him.} (who purchased halfe the Tenants of Mr Preston of Howskar[45] \ & / allso Kirkby Tenants with all the Demane lands which he had there). The other halfe are Customary Tenants: Pay fineable Rents at Fine Arbitrary but no Bonds & Services; & pay Greenhew 2d per Annum (they never heard of Cornage.) The Widdow has the whol Estate if she neither Mary nor Miscarry dureing her life, or else she looses it \ all. / But in freehold the W[idow] has her thirds dureing her life whether she marry or not {but 2nd &c. has but halfe.}

The \ Free / Tenants \ appear / at any House their Lord doth appoint within his Libertyes, he having no Manner house of his own. And the Customary Tenants \ likewise / appear at any house ~~of their~~ Lords ~~which he shal~~ \ doth / appoint within his Libertyes \ for the same reason / And both Lords have liberty of Waife & Stray upon the Common as they com \ 1t / to them or upon the Remand[er] as they happen to be in the Lands of their Tenants.

{Manner House}
The Manner is held of the Earle of Darby as Capital Lord; & formerly payed a noble Rent to him. But Penningtons Ancestors bought of their halfe; and the \ other / halfe is still continued upon the Tenants of Sir John Lowther. It is said heretofore to have belongd to the name of the Bensons, whose manner house (lately Customary ~~Land~~ \ Estate now Sir John Lowthers part purchasd free* /) is called Auld Hall (where Courtes were kept), of which Mr Bankes has seen Courtes Roll & Thomas Fletch[er] hath heard so reported. And is said by 2 Daughters & Coheirs, to [have] passd in marriage to 2 different Lords – And the Prestons of Howcar; & Penningtons of Moncaster (who hold

[Machell's Notes: II.171]
*Time. Query – how long free the Bensons?

[43] Thomas Briggs (Bigge or Big) was presented to Heversham vicarage in 1638, although his name does not appear in the parish registers until 1641. He was sequestered c.1645 but continued to live in the neighbourhood and was restored to the vicarage in 1663. He died in 1676. See Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662, 2,* 972-74, 977-79. See also CCED; and see *N&B1*, 198.
[44] In Heversham church.
[45] Holker.

[II.173]

one halfe still) have continued Lords of it time immemoreal; till now of late that the Prestons sold their part to Sir John Lowther of Lowther in Westmorland*. {annis ab hinc 20*.}[46]

There are Trenches & Bulworkes upon Milton More {ab Ecclesia 1m. S.E. ab Aula S. ¾} of diverse forms, of which 2 are hills cast up with Trenches about them 6 or 8 yards diameter & 1 yard high, which I suppose to have bin Tumuli. There ~~are~~ is a Square one 7 Score from thence towards the S. East about 8 yards broad & 16 long. Another like the Carpenters Square – haveing 2 sides only – 40 yards North from the former – But of what use they can not imagin.
A place calld the Deere Parke adjoyning the old Hall – now in Tillage & \ ½ of it / a customary estate – as has bin sayd.

Holme Moss Tarne – 60 Broad & \ ½ a quarter mile long {ab Aula N.E. ½ m} has Eales only in it And in Holm Moss ½ in the Lordship ~~&~~ ½ in Holm in Burton parish – in a Dike Gutter 2 yards wide, not cast above 2 years before – an Eal was taken – 1691, about 3 quarters long & 9 inch about, 1m. from Parke ½ m. West. In which they say is white marle[47] & many pikes. {Mr Moore.}

There were Swanes formerly kept on the foote of Deepthwate; which sat & bread there but they belongd to Nether Levins. Gate beck ends in Deepthwate, a m[ile] S. below the Old Hall - well stord with orchards. Rasberryes up & doen,[48] but few.
Their Fuel Turfe or Peat ~~scarce &~~ 3m. West ab Aula at Foulshaw. Large gray Limestone in great plenty all over.
{Tenants & Tenure is before the Descent of the Lordship.}

[II.174]

[Machell's Notes. II.174]

1f	1f
1f	2f

Frame: 3 inch; 2 inch: ½ ciferd off

{Hersham: Mr Farmer vicar. Anthony Saul. James Beck. James Hinde. Mr Green Schoolmaster}[49]

[II.175]

[Upper Levins]



Figure 2.7.8. Upper Levins Hall. II.175.

[46] 'Twenty years ago from this present date.'
[47] 'White marle': an earthy deposit, loose and unconsolidated, comprising clay mixed with calcium carbonate, formed in prehistoric waters; used to improve the texture of sandy or light soil. Also, a calcareous deposit found at the bottom of present-day lakes and rivers, composed of the remains of aquatic plants and animals. *OED*.
[48] 'Up and down.'
[49] Machell's informants.

Arms at Upper Levins Hall
{N.B. Many of the Caps supernumeraryes may be omitted}[50]

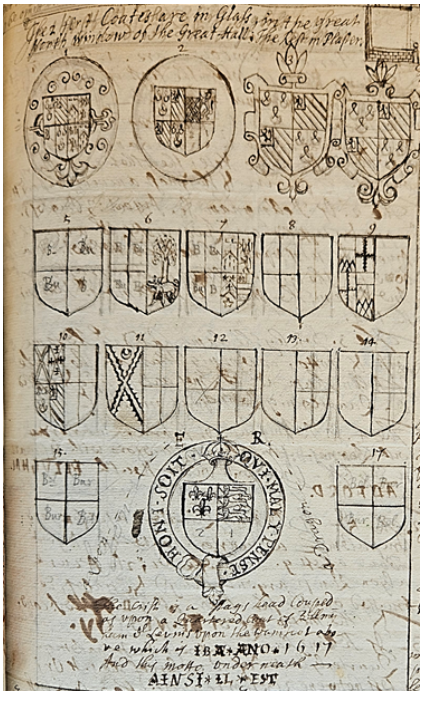


Figure 2.7.9. Arms at Upper Levins Hall. II.175.

[On the 'Royal' Arms, placed centrally, supporters are dexter, a lion; sinister, a dragon].
The Crist is a Stags head couped as upon a Quartered Coat of Bellingham with Levins upon the wainscot above, which is, IBA*ANO*1617. And this motto underneath: AINSI*EL*EST.[51]

The 2 first Coates are in Glass, in the Great North window of the great Hall; the Rest in Plaster.
1. The 1^{t} is Bellingham whose armes are Argent 3 Bugles Sable tiped [and] tined [blank] quartering Levines who bears armes ~~Barry~~ Argent \ 3 Bendlets / Gules on a Canton of the 2nd, a Lyon Rampant of the 1^{t} = impalein[g] Sandford ~~&~~ quaterd with English whereof the former is parted per the cheveron S[able] & Ermin, 2 Boares head couped Or. {N[ote]} latter is Sable, 3 Lyons Rampant Argent.}
2. The 2nd is Bellingham with the said Quartering Impaleing = Curwen (Argent a frett Gules over all a chief Azure) quartering a Lyon Rampant. Argent debruised of [a billet][52] Gules by the name of [Blank]
3. 4. N. Al the rest are in Plaster above the wainscot, whereof the 2 first, marked 3 & 4, are on each \ side / the dooer as you enter; And are the same with Bellingham &c. – as at fig. the 1^{t} without the Impaleing.
5. The 5th is \ the Same with / Bellingham Quartering Levins.
6. The 6th Bellingham with Quarterings – Impaleing a wilde bore leaning against a Tre: by the name of [Blank]

[50] Placed in the top left margin and unclear, but perhaps, 'Many of the headings in excess of the required number may be omitted.' [?]
[51] 'So it is.'
[52] Machell provided a small sketch of a billet, instead of the word.

7. The 7th is Bellingham with the said Quarterings Impaleing Sandford with its 3 quarterings, whereof the 2nd is English, the 3 is Crackenthorp with a floredeluce chargd upon the cheveron for a younger House: And the 4 is Lancaster of Howgill Castle.
8. The 8th is Bellingham Quarterly &c – Impaleing Curwen with its Quarterings as at Fig. 2.
9. Is quarterly Sc. 1. 3 cheveronell Brassd in Bass and a chiefe – by the name of [Blank] Quartering a † Ingraled = Impaleing Bellingham with quarterings as above.
10. is a Saltier – quartering in the 2 quarters a Saltier betwene 4 Cross ✠. In the Third Bellingham; in the 4th Levins = Impaleing Bellingham quartered ut supra.
11. The [11th] is a Saltier ingraled, with a [crescent][53] in Chief = Impaleing Bellinghams Quarterd ut [supra]
12. 13. 14. Are Impaleing of B[ellingham] with Blankes.
15. 17. Bellingham with Burn[eside]} quart[erly] ut supra.[54]

[II.176]

{Bellingham Quartering}
18. In the Parlour window are 1. Bellingham Quartering Burnaside wherin the first is Argent, 3 Bugles. Lined & Tipped of the Field – {And on a Scrowle on one side
AMICUS AMICO ALANVS – on the other BELLIGERVS BELLIGERO BELLINGHAMVS}[55]

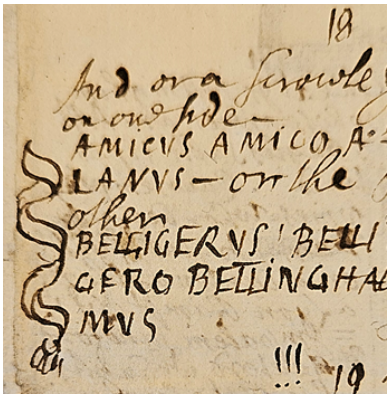


Figure 2.7.10. Scroll 'in the parlour window'. II.176.

The Second is Argent – ~~on a qua~~ 3 Bends Gules, on a Quarter of the 1t a Lyon Rampant of the second – (N.B. where Note, the other was Barry {!!!} but this is fairer – & this the most ancient Coate in the Hall.)

{Bellingham Single}
19. The 2. is Bellingham Sc. Argent: 3 Bugles S[able][b] Tippd & Tasselld Or,[a] Lin'd Gules.[56] With a wreath Argent & Gules upon a side faced Helmet, & above for the Crist, a Staggs head erased Or, And herein, the motto is the same with that in the Hall.

[53] See *Fig. 2.7.11.*
[54] This paragraph is crushed into the bottom right of the page and heavily abbreviated.
[55] At the end of the 18th century, the window was noted by Capt. Joseph Budworth (1756-1815), aka (from 1811) Joseph Palmer, who used the pen-name, 'A Rambler': 'This couplet was made upon Alan Bellingham, who purchased Levens, alluding to his social, and, at the same time, martial disposition.' A Rambler, *A Fortnight's Ramble to the Lakes in Westmoreland, Lancashire, and Cumberland* (2nd edn, London, 1795), 19. The play on words could, perhaps, be translated as, 'Alan's a mate to his mates; Bellingham's a bastard to bullies.' (My thanks to the incomparable Jane Penman. Ed.)
[56] Note that Machell decided to order the sentence differently using superscript a. and b.

{With Quarterings}
20. The 3. don by the same hand, with the same Crist & motto, excepting that on the scrowle is Bellingham with Lines gules, Tip'd & Tasseld Or, Quartering Burnasides in the 1[t].
21. The 4. is Bellingham ut supra. Quarterly with Burnaside = Impaleing Sandford with its quart[erings] Sc. English. And writ underneath BELYNGHAM SANDFORD.
What color are the Bores heads – with Sandford {?}[57]
22. The 5[th] is Belling[ham] Quartered as aforesaid Impaleing = a Quarterly Coate of [Blank] Argent ~~above~~ \ on / a frett G[ules] a Chief Az[ure]; 2ly. Azure a lyon rampant Argent langued &c. Gules. debruised on the Shoulder with 3[58] \ billets / of the second. The motto SI JE NESTOY {with Curwen}.[59]
23.\ The 6. / is Bellingham quarterly as aforesaid, Impaleing a quarterly Coate of 12. Whereof the 1. is Or; a fess betwene 3 Crescents Gules. The 2. Or a cross Sable. The 3. Argent; a chevron[60] Azure betwene 3 Roses {with ?} Gules seeded leaved propper. The 4. Argent, {great many quarterings…)[61] a fess Gules charg'd with a mullet Or, betwene 3 Birds Vert. The 5[th.] is Argent, 2 Barrs wavy Azure. The 6. Gules a cross[62] Moline Or, I think Invecked. The 7. is Sable a Bend fleury[63] Argent. The 8. is Azure a fess ^^^ Ermin, between 6 Cross Crosslett Argent*. The 9. is Azure a Chief Argent chargd with 3 chapletts of Roses Gules. The 10. is Argent a fess, betwene 6 floredelices Sable. The 11. is Ermin on a Canton Gules an […][64] Or pierc'd of the field. And the 12. is the same with the first, under which are these figures – 1613.

[Machell's Notes: II.176

*three & thre.

[II.177]

{Bellingham with Burnaside ut infra}
24. In the Bow window in small Quarryes are these Coates of Armes [see figure below]. Sc. 1. Bellingham – Argent, 3 bugles Sable tiped Lined & Tassled Or (N.B. which differ from all the foregoing Bearings) ~~and on one is writt~~ Impaleing Argent 3 Bars.
25. and a Chanto[65] Gules chargd with a Lyon Rampant Argent. And on one side is writ Bellingham, on the other Burnaside.

{With Salkeld}
26. The 2. is Bellingham as aforesaid, Quartering Burnaside (~~which I calld before Levins, till I saw this: ergo Qu~~) Impaleing Azure frette Argent – On the one side of which is writ Beling[ham]. On the other Salkeld.

{With Barburne}
27. The 3. is Bellingham quarterly \ ut / supra – Impaleing Argent 3 chaplets of Roses seeded Or & writ &c. – sc. on the one side Bellingham & on the other side Barburn.

{With Tunstall}
28. The 4. is Bellingham ut supra Impaleing Sable 3 Combes Argent, & writ by it Tunstall.

---

[57] Written in different ink in Machell's hand, as if added later.
[58] Machell drew a small rectangle after this word.
[59] Machell's execution of 'JE' is overwritten and blotted but William Nicolson rendered it clearly when he wrote in his diary on 20 Sept. 1702/3, 'In the great Dineing-Room at Levens (and the Lodgeing-Room at the end, where I lay) are the Bellingham Arms with their matches with the Fords &c. in Glass, & well carved in wood, with this motto. – *Ainsi il est si je nestoy, 1595*. The Crest a Buck's Head, and, in one place, two Stags supporters.' See Bishop of Barrow-in-Furness [Henry Ware], 'Bishop Nicolson's Diaries, Part II', *CW2*, (1902), 155-230, at 208. Translation: 'So it is as if I'm not there.'
[60] Here Machell drew a chevron symbol.
[61] The rest of this comment is obscured by the binding.
[62] This has been drawn as a cross-crosslet.
[63] Here Machell placed a tiny sketch.
[64] Here Machell placed a small sketch of a shield.
[65] Canton.

{With Gilpine}
29. The 5 &c. ~~is or~~ \ Impaleing / Or a Bore passant Sable, & writt by it Gilpine.

{With Beck?}
27. The 6 Bell[ingham] &c. – Impale[ing] [Blank] & writ by it Becke. But the armes are faln out.

{With Sandford}
28. The 7. is Bellingham &c. Impaleing Sandford, as in the Glass before at fig. 21 & writ – Bell[ingham] &c. Sa\n/dford.



Figure 2.7.11. Figures illustrating text. II.*177.*

{With Salkeld}
29. The 8. is Bellingham &c. – Impaleing Argent a frett Gules \ charg'd with a / Chiefe Azure – Quartering the Lyon Rampant Argent debruised of more than 3[66] \ billets / Gules, in a field Azure. But no name writ.[67]

30.}
31.} Over the 2 Dooers in it, are cutt in wood, Bellingham Quartering Burnyside.

32. And over the Chimney Piece – 1. The Royal Arms with Lyon & Dragon for supporters – & these fig[ures] 1595.

33. – 2ly. The Coate Crist & Motto AINSI. IL EST.[68]

34. – 3. Bellingham Quartering Burnaside, the Same Crist & motto & 2 Stags for Supporters.

35. – Bellingham with quartering ut Ante[69] = Impaleing as at fig. 22. SI JE NESTOY.

[II.178]

In the N[orth] Servants Hall in stone Lintal over the chimney and above in wainscot, Bellingham quartering in the 2 place; the frett & Chiefe 3. Burnishead – 4. a Lyon Rampant.

[66] Here, Machell sketched a rectangle.
[67] But he has written 'Salkeld' in the margin.
[68] Partly blotted.
[69] As before.

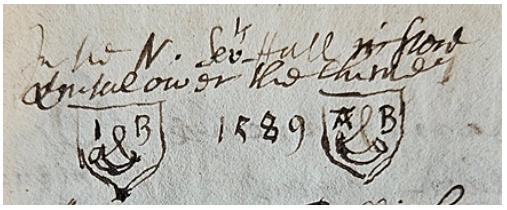


Figure 2.7.12. Bellingham coat of arms in wainscot. II.178.

Collonell James Graham \ Privy Purse to King James 2 / Brother to Sir Richard Graham of Netherby in Cumberland, Baronet & afterwards Created Lord Preston by King James the 2nd upon his Returne from an Embassy in France. Beareth Or on a Chiefe Sable Thre Escallop Shels of the first (charged with Ulsters Armes in the fess) & with his distinction for a younger Brother.[70] They are said to descend of a Second Son of the Earle of Monteith in Scotland, who about the Time of King Henry 4. maryed the Lady Ann Vere, daughter to the Earle of Oxford:[71] Bloomes *Guillam*.[72]

[II.179]

[Under Levins]



Figure 2.7.13. 'Under Levins Hall'. II.179.

[Notes]
[On sketch] Alter this side*.[73]
Mary Preston = Lord Montgomery.
Arms at Under Levins Hall {N.B. These may all be be don in 2 Rows of 5 a piece The key head say it belongd to Brigs or Redman!}

[70] Graham/Grahme, of Levens: see above, II.163.
[71] 'Though Malise, earl of Monteith, is said by some authorities to have married, first, Ann Vere, daughter of Henry, earl of Oxford (see Wood's Douglas' *Peerage*, vol. ii. p. 228), there was never, however, an earl of Oxford called Henry … All that is positively known of his wife or wives is … it appears that his widow was called Marion …' Sir Harris Nicolas, *History of The Earldoms of Strathern, Monteith, and Airth* (London and Edinburgh, 1842), 25-26.
[72] John Guillim, *A Display of Heraldry* (London, 1610). Enlarged editions were published by Jacob and Richard Blome after the author's death in 1621, e.g. John Guillim, *A Display of Heraldrie… The fourth Edition… Printed by T. R. for Jacob Blome* (London, 1660). In this volume, Vere or de Vere appears on 7, 9-10, 176; on the last of which is the comment, 'The Boare hath been much honoured by being the crest of an Earle, which seemeth to be given to the House of Vere, because Verres is the name of a Boare in Latine.'
[73] See the asterisk to the right of the sketch.

Arms at Under Levins Hall
In the Dineing Roome there:



Figure 2.7.14A & 14B. Arms at Nether Levens Hall. II.179.

[Under Fig 4.]
The 2 Argent, a Black Ram Pas. S. Horn'd & hoof'd Or. On a Chief of the 2nd garbs of the 3rd.
1. Is Prestons. Sc. Argent 2 Barrs Gules: on a Canton of the 2nd a Cinquefoile Or, pierced of the 1t.
2. Preston ut supra. & Curwen which is Quarterly; in the 1t & 3rd Argent a fret Gules. Over all a chiefe Azure. In the 2nd & 4th Azure a Lyon Rampant Argent. Debrus'd of a Billet Gules as in Upper Levens
3. Is Preston, & the Impaleing broke out.
4. Is Preston Impaleing Preston of Bi'ans (a younger house) who bear in the 2nd & 3rd Quarter Argent; A Ram passant S[able], Arm'd and hoofed Or.[74]
5. The same with the 4th in the ~~great green~~ Ladyes chamber or Withdrawing Roome. In a smal Quarry.[75]
6. The same with the 1t.

[74] Bi'ans could be Biggins i.e. the Preston Family of Biggins Kirkby Lonsdale: see *AWL*, 238.
[75] This paragraph is repeated in the right-hand margin.

7. Preston Impaleing Thornburrow who beareth Ermin Frettè & chiefe Gules.
8. Preston Impaleing Readman, who beareth Gules: three Cushions Ermin, Buttoned and Tassaled Or. If they be not Rather Pillows. Concerneing which add the account which Guillam hath published of the occasion of this Coate of Arms at p. 228. If it be not already added elsewhere.
9. {?} Preston Impaleing Bradley who beareth \ a fess / between 3 cross cross[l]ets fitche S[able] which as I remember is in the Hall window: As also
10. {?} Preston Impaleing Curwen as in the (2nd above) But with this Difference That the 1t & 4th Quarters are Freettè. Which gives us occasion to q? farther into this Coate.

{Descent of the Hall}
This Hall did antiently belong to the Readmans, as tis reported, & may partly appear from the Coate of Armes in the Roome which is called the Green Chamber.[76] Of whom they say there were Three sister, one whereof was maryed to {or had} Heston Leathes. Another to Upper Levins, & the 3r. This – {de quo Qu?}[77]

[II.181

Epitaph to an unknown lady

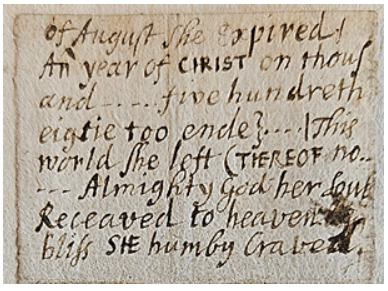


Figure 2.7.15. Slip of paper 4cm square: epitaph to an unknown lady who died in August 1582. II.181.

Of August She Expired |
An year of CHRIST on thous
and … five hundredth
eightie too ende} … | This
world She left (THEREOF no …
… Almighty God her Soul
Receaved to heavenly
bliss SHE humbly Craved.

[Machell's Notes: II.181]

Referenda.
Levines – A Rume Oval – & a dropping well. See MS. Y. \ Sir Daniel Fleming.[78] /
This Nether Levins came by marriage of Sir Thom. Prestons Daughter to the Lord Montgomery who sold it to Mr Preston of Dallen Tower circa 1695.[79]
{Cawmer Hall the Briggses in Crosthwate Chaple in Hersham.}[80]

[76] The Redman family owned Levens until 1562. Matthew Redman (b.1528) died without issue; his sisters (probably his co-heirs) included Matilda (d.1624) who married, 1. Christopher Irton of Threlkeld; 2. Thomas Leigh of Isel; 3. Sir Wilfrid Lawson. See *CFH*, 275.
[77] 'From whom was this story?'
[78] Written on paper, 15cm x 4cm, pasted to the page, reminding Machell to research Daniel Fleming's papers.
[79] A note, probably added, contains '98' [possibly 1698, the year Machell died] and 'I Do', plus 3 or 4 letters now illegible but possibly 'WME', followed by 'T.M.' [Thomas Machell].
[80] For the Briggs family of Cowmire Hall, see H.S. Cowper, 'The history of the house may be disposed of in a few words. It was owned by a family called Briggs, who seem to have lived there at the end of the sixteenth century, and probably built the tower. They entered a pedigree of two generations in the 1615 Visitation of

[II.183]

Sisargh

[Initial Notes]
{Siserge – The Descent of the Man[or] – Mr S. Strickland marriage & Dower – Marq[uess] & Richmond Foe.}
The Stricklands came from Micle Strickland, \ & / Little Strickland Melkinthorp \ Hall in / Morland. And maryed here with one of the Daughters of Dainecourt[81] (who give the 3 Water Budgets – perhaps it should be Par) by which they had the manner of Sisar, Lordships of Natland Sedgewick Stenton[82] & Henkister[83] on the West Side of Kent: So \ old / Mr Shepherd quondam Stuart to the family.[84]
{St James Chapl.}



Figure 2.7.16. 'Silver found About Siserge Hall 15 years since'. II.183.



Figure 2.7.17. 'Silver found there at the same time.' II.183.

Westmorland, but as the family ended in daughters, Briggs of Cawmire is heard of no more.' H.S. Cowper, 'Cawmire or Comer Hall', *CW2*, 1 (1901), 119-28, at 119, 122, 125-26, 127.
[81] D'Eyncourt.
[82] Stainton.
[83] Hincaster.
[84] 'Old Mr Shepherd, formerly steward to the family.'



Figure 2.7.18. 'Silver which came out of Yorkeshire perhaps from about Fountains Abby near Rippon'. II.183.

[II.185]

At Sisargh Hall
In the Dineing Roome Window. The Same with that in the Hall, at the Letter. C.[85]
And a dilicate Chimney-Piece of Wainscot with these Coates of Arms



Figure 2.7.19. Sizergh. Arms on 'a dilicate chimney piece of wainscot' in the dining room'. II.187.

The 1[t] marked (g) is Stricklands quarterly coat Impaleing a Quarterly Coate.
(h) Strickland quartering 3 Coates – Sc. 1. [Blank]
(h) Supporters & Crist as att (e.) in the Parl[our.]

{1.) Is Strickland with the said quarterings impaleing a 4[rly] Coat. Sc. 1. A bend ingraled betwixt 6 martlets.
2. A Cinquefoyle pierced betwene 8 crosses florry, the 1[t] with a Crescent charged upon it?

X. A Curiouse Chimney Piece of Carving.[86]
In the Kitchen window the same with that in the Hall marked (b).

[85] The heading and body text are superimposed upon notes made in pencil.
[86] Marked with a cross because Machell had repeated himself.

[II.187]



Figure 2.7.20. Arms in the Hall at Sizergh Castle. II.187.

In Sisergh Hall on the East Side the Hall Skreene.
N. The (a.) is in wainscot on the Hall Screene.
(b). In the 1. window on the East Side of the Hall.
(c). On that side also. In the next
(d). is of Canvas set in a frame, which hangs against the wall above the wainscot, behind the End Table & gives us the colours.

(a.) Not in colours but Blazoned below at ~~fig~~ d.
(b.) A Quarterly Coate the 1[t] & 4[th] Argent a Fess Danse inter 9 Billets, 3. above 3. & 2. Below, Sable, by the name of [Blank] The 2[nd] & 3[rd]. Sable 3 Escallops Argent by the Name of Strickland which is Quartered by the former = Impaleing Or a Fess of iiij Fusils Azure by the name of [Blank]
(c.) The same Quarterly Coate with (b.) Impaleing another Quarterly Coate whereof the 1[t] and third is [Blank] Thre Gorges or water-budgets – by the name of [Blank] Quartering in the 2 & 3[rd] Argent, 2 Barrs Azure the Higher charged with a mullet of the 1[t]. \ But note those in Par C. are in a B[ordure] [invected].[87]
(d.) Quarterly. The 1 & 2[nd] as above (onely 9 billets) The 3 Gules on a Saltier Argent a Mullet Sable The 4?

[Funeral Escutchion]
There is an Escutchion from som \ funeral / Sc. Azure a lyon Rampant Gardant betwene xi [cross crosslets] Argent langued &c. Gules.[88]

[Chimney Piece]
(e.) In the Parlour is a Curiouse Bold well carved Chimney Piece of noble foliage, better than I was able to describe, being so much in haiste: and in the Midle this Coate of Armes.

[87] Here, Machell drew a series of small semicircles with the points turned inwards.
[88] The cross crosslets are represented by a symbol.



Figure 2.7.21. Detail of the parlour chimney piece (e); arms under a window of the tower (f). II.187.

(e.) Strickland and his Quarterings as at a. & d. iiij times over in the 4 Chiefe Quarters alias Stricklands Quarterly Coate, Quartered.
(f.) Stricklands quarterly Coate & Crist in stone; under the second window of the great Tower, which is on your Right-hand as you enter into the house.

[II.190A][89]

Crosthwate Chapl in Hersham Parish

{[Notes] Thors 17 day Oct. 91}
There is one chappelry called Crosthwate-Chappel.
It hath an handsom square tow[er] and 3 Bells in it. / \ quier leaded. /
[Length of body] 20 [breadth] 8; [length and breadth of quire] 8.[90]

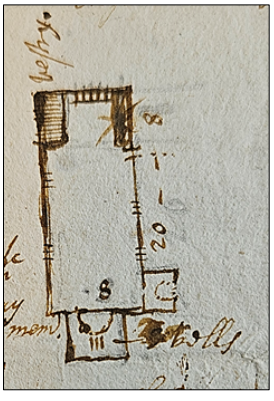


Figure 2.7.22. Plan of Crosthwate Chapel. II.190A.

{2. Bounder}
It is bounded on East with the Chappelry of Hutton; South with Heversham – the Mother Church; West with the Chapelry of Cartmell Fell; [91] N. with the Chapelry of Underbarrow, from which divided by Winsterbeck.

[89] II.190A consists of a full-sized page, bound in at right angles to the volume. It has been heavily overwritten with paragraphs woven through one another, and is a fine example of Machell's handwriting at its most obscure…
[90] Measurements taken from the sketch of the chapel.
[91] This is St Anthony's: built as a chapel of ease to Cartmel c.1504 to fulfil the will of Anthony Knipe (d.1500). See Hyde & Pevsner, 273.

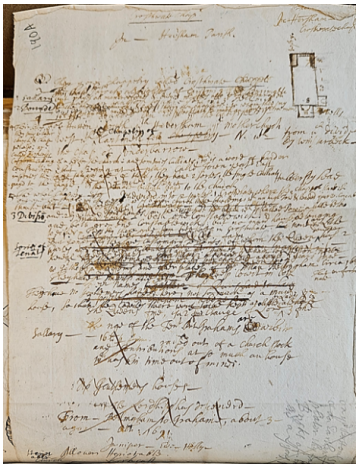


Figure 2.7.23. Example of Machell's MS. II.190A.

{3. Sallary}
This chapel hath Parochial rights of Cristening & ~~of~~ Buriing &c. But payes all manner of dues & dutyes with sesses[92] also, for Reparation to the Mother Church, & finds their own Chaplaine; to whom they pay 16li per Annum raised out of a Church Stock and contributions at so much an house which has bin time out of minde.[93]

{4.} [Culliats]
Their sesses whereof they pay to their church & chappel also are called Kirk Casts (from casting of a Sess for the church. And sometimes Culliats, which is a word of harder construction but begining at a place calld Town Yeat \ from the Ch. ¼ mile thence / imports the same thing; and of these they have 2 Sortes: the Single Culliat payd to the chapel, & the double Culliat payd to the church.[94]

{5. The whol Chappelry}
To which divided into 2 partes. 1. Crosthwate where the chapel standeth, and 2ly, Lithe; but one Constablewick and but 1 Lordship, where is a fair church-like building with a high Tower & leaded quire Circa 60f.

{Division; Sortes of tenants}
Both are one Constablewick; but no manner house to either. They say there are som freeholds in Crosthwate, not any in Lithe.[95] Som \ 24 / houses on the west side the beck {a little below}, which is calld Powe. But generally they are Customary Tenants of whom the Queen \ douger[96] / has 2 Partes.[97]
They keep Court in both. They have 2 Stuarts.
They have no Gentlemens houses here, not so much as a manner house, so that the Courtes were wont to be kept at a little ale house. The Queens Fine is a 2^{d} fine [on] change of Lord; 3^{d} Fine [on] change of the Tenant but Grahams are Arbitrary. All over, Heriotable.
The Lordship descended from Bellingham to Grahame, about 3 agoe – Oct. 1691.

---

[92] Assessments. *OED*.
[93] One of two matching sentences referring to the salary per annum; the second has been omitted.
[94] In the margin Machell has written, 'Hubbersty Head'.
[95] MS: 'They say ~~Crosthw. Vel capel~~ there are som freeholds in Crosthwate ~~but~~ no~~n~~t any \ in / Lithe.'
[96] Dowager.
[97] Here, several scored through lines are almost illegible (see *Figure 2.7.23*). One line refers to a sale 'of Levins and other places by Mr Allan Bellingham circa 1689, that unfortunate… purchased about 3 yeares since … Mr James Graham', a reference to the sale of Levens Hall. This last sentence was reprised at the page foot.

[Rarities]
{Juniper ewe holly}
{On the Bottome […] of an Earthen plater this fragment.}
{Bricks a foot broad with a Lyons paw.}[98]

[II.191]

Calmire }
Cawmer} Hall[99]



Figure 2.7.24. Calmire Hall. 'Old Ivy Building'. II.191.

Belonged to one Bierly who sold it to Henry Nuby, father of William Nuby the present proprietor.[100]

Arms in the Hall

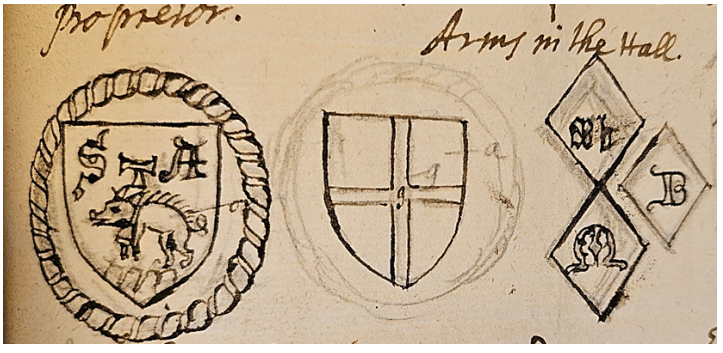


Figure 2.7.25. Arms containing 'wantaracks' at Calmire Hall. II.191.

In the Clay Roome windows are Escutchions in Glass – one with these letters [see *Figure 2.7.27.*] in Chiefe; the M. & B. in yallow, the wantarack[101] in black; & a man in yellow with a Pike Staff on his right shoulder & a whip in his left hand driving 4 Pack Horses. In anothe[r], I.B. in Chief & a spining wheal with cardings – & a Basket with wool & hand cards Or. In several other quarries M⚘B,[102] another sort of wantarack.

[98] The last two sentences were written in pencil on a corner of the paper; they clearly belong with comment on Roman antiquities elsewhere in the volume.
[99] Cowmire (or Cawmire) Hall.
[100] For Bierly, see Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.398; see also Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.271.
[101] 'Wantarack' appears to be a name for a merchant's mark, i.e. an emblem or other distinctive figure or device adopted by a merchant and placed on the goods sold by him (in the Middle Ages often used as a quasi-heraldic symbol, e.g. on seals or monuments). *OED*.
[102] The symbol chosen here merely approximates to that in Machell's sketch, see *Figure 2.7.28*., 'another sort of wantarack.'

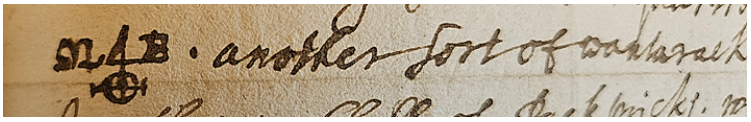


Figure 2.7.26. Calmire Hall. 'Another sort of wantarack'. II.191.

In another, a Shaff[103] of Pack pricks,[104] which \ shews / by what trade he inriched himselfe.

[Machell's Notes: II.191]

{Winster. q. of Mr Rich. Dixon.}
? Sold the Tenants free. Will Nubyes wife sayes shee thinks it belongd to Crosthwate & Lithe; an that the people thereabouts go[e]th both to Crosthwate and Car[t]mel Chapel. But q. if they bury there?[105]

[II.85][106]

Croscrake in Hersham

ab [Ecclesia] 3m. S. & by East; where the minister is Mr Farmer.[107]
{Families} about 40 and above. Crosthwaite.
{Croscrake is [also] 1 or 2 houses in Staneton}
Ward [blank]
[Chapel] Long 9, broad 5 but has bin much longer. No bell.

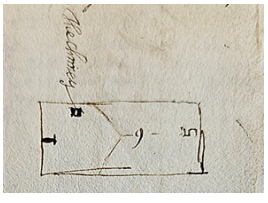


Figure 2.7.27. Crosscrake Chapel. 'The chimney is made in the corner, yard long in the lintal – which lyes a yard high, & a yard above that the funnel goes out'. II.85.

{Sallary} None, nor prayers read. Thomas Wells, master. John Hinde aetat 79.[108]
50 well fac'd children.
1. No dedication.
2. Once a bell. But now none. Nor place for a bell. The bell sold to make a school house, repard 8 years since by a contribution. Ruind in the Civil Wars. They gave 12d per annum.
[3.] No quire. No seates.

[Bounder]
Bounded on the East with Preston Chapelry; South, the parochial church; on the North with Natland Chapelry; on the West side with Sisars Chapelry.
It is a Constablewick: one Constablewick, one Lordship – if it be not the same with Sizars and a member of it. The [tenants] were customary under Sir Thomas Strickland of Sizar & payed Rent, fine

[103] 'Shaf(f)': sheaf or bundle. *OED*.
[104] Pack prick: a skewer, probably made of wood; it secured the pack cloth in which goods were wrapped. *Yorkshire Historical Dictionary*. Online.
[105] The next page contains at its foot a number of faded notes written in pencil. Almost all are illegible.
[106] Also numbered p.25.
[107] George Farmer. Trinity College, Cambridge, 1683; Pembroke, 1684; Matric. Trinity, 1685; Scholar, 1687; B.A. 1687-8; M.A. 1691. Priested (Lincoln) 1689. V. of Heversham, 1691-1724; buried at Heversham, 7 Feb., 1723-4: *Ancestry.co.uk. Cambridge University Alumni, 1261-1900*. In 1696, Farmer signed the Anti-Jacobite 'Association' for the protection of William III: Kendal Indictment Book, 1692-1724, in John F. Curwen (ed.), *Records Relating to the Barony of Kendale III*, CWAAS Record Series 6 (Kendal, 1926), 222-33.
[108] James Hinde was one of Machell's informants, see II.174.

service & heriots. But purchasd the fee simple at 60 years purchass, according to their annual, to a peppercorn upon demand.

{Tythes}
Tythe Corne to Siser in dry stooke – som payes hay money for their board – i.e. Bottom Meadow, nothing for the rest, & the Hay money of these that doe pay to the vicar. 4d c[h]urching. Strickland farmd of Trinity College. But now the lease in Mrs Dalton.

{Castlehead} On the back of Natland a Capel[la] almost 1m. N.

{Fuel}Peates which they call also turves. Limestone all over. Gravel enough.

Som wildcats, & marts of both sortes.
In the Strickland of Sizars time out of minde.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 8. The Parish of Kirkby Lonsdale]

[II.199]

[A.] {N[otes] Generales an Divis. Kirkby L.}

{Sat. July 1692}
Manner 1. Kirkby Loansdal. Sir Joh. L[owther].[1] Kirk[by] Court Leet & Court Baron.
2. Lupton \ Lordship. / Sir C. Musg[rave][2]
3. L[ordship] Hutton. Parke H\ouse. / Sir Thomas Wentworth.
4. Mansergh \ Lordship. / Mr Tho. Godsalve.[3]
5. Barbon. Sir Rich[ard] Shotleworth.[4]
6. Casterton. Queen Dowager.[5]
7. Midleton \? Jo[hn] Hebleth & thwate & James Crag. By marriage Midletons.[6]

II.200

[1.] {ad Kirk[by Lonsdale]}

Free Stone out of Lancashire at Sellet ½ m. S. Great Store of Walling Stone & lime; Gray Slate from Gragarth – by the County Stone {ad Casterton} E. ab Ecclesia – 1[7] mile – in Casterton q[uery]?
Plenty of peat all over the parish
Som wild cats, Badgers & foxes. Otters.
Wild Ducks bread on the Mosses. Bitters bread on Kirkby Moore[8] – Squirrel & Hedhogs plenty.
{K[irkby] [pays] Boone hens & 1[d] a Cock – Plowing Harrowing & Shearing formerly.}
Chaplanes admitted without the Vicars hands, who approves or rejects.

[II.199]

The Town & Lordship of Kirkby-L. or Manner of K.L. consistes of [9]
[1.] K[irkby Lonsdale] 60 f[amilies] {a library in that church} {Mr John Briggs Vic.}[10]
[2.] Upper Biggins \ S.W. ½ m. Lower Biggin[s] \ ¼ Ibidem. 10 f[amilies] both Hamlets.
Biggins \ Hall / in Upper Biggins is the manner house {one of these belongd to the Applegarthes 2 or 300 years agoe & was lately sold to?}
[3.] Tearne Side W. 1m. – 13 f[amilies] – a Chappel there formerly. Man[or[house] Underley Hall – & Far Underley – Mr Wilson {Wild cherries in the fields.} Flags[11] in Ternside.
[4.] Kestwick N.W. 1m. f[amilies] 25 & Dane\s/Biggins hall.
[5.] Spittle – which payes no Tithe.

---

[1] Sir John Lowther (1655-1700) of Lowther, 2nd baronet: see Part 1, Ch.15, Lowther, I.725C.
[2] Sir Christopher Musgrave (1631-1704) of Edenhall.
[3] Thomas Godsalve bought the manor of Mansergh some time before 1664. On his death in 1696 it passed to his son Thomas Godsalve of Rigmaiden, gent. https://www.british-history.ac.uk/kendale-barony/vol2/pp374-397.
[4] The manor of Barbon was held by the Barbon family from the late 12th century, descending by marriage to the Lascelles family by 1239. In the mid-15th century it passed by marriage to the Pickering family whose heir Francis Vaughan held it into the later 16th century. By 1588 it was held by Sir Richard Shuttleworth of Gawthorpe. 'Interim Draft history of Barbon': https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/barbon.
[5] Charles II gave the Richmond and Marquis Fees (including the larger part of the township of Casterton) to his wife, Catherine of Braganza. In 1669 she granted a 96-year lease to Edward Wilson of Park House, Burrow (later of Nether Levens), on condition that Edward's three sons should still be alive at the end of that period. See *N&B1*, 249-50.
[6] See Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.385.
[7] This numeral is almost covered by the binding; it could equally well read as '7'. The distance from Casterton to Kirkby Lonsdale is 2.2 modern miles, according to Google Maps.
[8] 'Bitterns breed on Kirkby Moor.'
[9] Near this line, a separate phrase gives, 'a large & [blank]'. Presumably, Machell was referencing one large settlement and several smaller ones in the lordship.
[10] John Briggs of Lancaster entered Peterhouse, Cambridge, in1666, aged 18; he migrated to Clare College in 1667; took his B.A. in 1669/70; was made deacon,1670; priested, 1671. He was preferred to the rectory of Heysham, but was deprived for simony in 1674. He was then presented to Kirkby Lonsdale (2 Nov. 1676) on the death of Henry Hoyle, the previous incumbent. See R.P. Brown, 'The Vicars of Kirkby Lonsdale', *CW2*, 29 (1929), 166-92, at 188 . See also below, II.261.
[11] Flagstones.

[II.208][12]

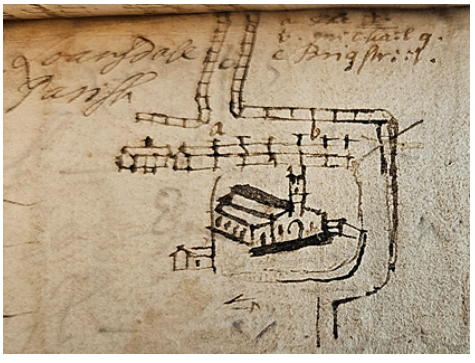


Figure 2.8.1. 'Kirkby Loansdale Church, Michael gate and Brigg Street.' II.208.

Kirkby Loansdale Church. Parish. Charter. Schoole. Cross. Gibbet.
a. The †
b. Michael g[ate]
c. Brig Street
q. of Mr Brigs where his fire stone was found. The farmer at Midleton says sulphur will do the like.

[II.202]

{Kirkby Manner}
A Court Leet & Barron. Waifes & Strayes. The Baly for the Time being Corroner: electing & swearing their Constables & all other officer.

[V.53]

Deans Biging was the old Manner house; & now held with the Demane Lands by Free Tenent. The Lord[ship] formerly in the Caruses – Then Curwens tis thought by marriage – Then Witheringtons by marriage – Then to Preston of Howkar[13] by purchase – Then to Lowther of Lowther by ~~marriage~~ \ purchase / about 20 year agoe.

[II.202]

Abbots-Hall belongs to the College[14] and is said to be a Priviledged place. \ It stands at the S. East corner of the church yard, an ordinary house. /[15]

Ten[ures]: Som Free, som Copy, some Customary at fine Arbitrary - & som of them Heriotable.

A moat of water near the vic[arage] 100 yards ab Ecclesia. N[ow] calld – Castle hill & said to be cast up as a Defence against Scottish Invasion. {& a little below this nearer the water standeth the School which is a good Building 2 stories high & kept very neat by Mr Farran or [Far]rer the Schoolmaster there.}[16]

Terribanke Tarne {L[ength] 2ce. xii score;[17] b. 12, Sc. Broade.} Reported that Brass & P[…][18] were found); ab Ecclesia 2m. N.W.

---

[12] On the right side of this page, pencilled text in pencil has been overwritten and is now illegible.
[13] Holker, Cartmel.
[14] Trinity College, Cambridge.
[15] An additional sentence, written in different ink. Presumably, Abbot Hall was seen as an ordinary dwelling rather than an 'ordinary house', which in the 17th century referred to a drinking house regarded as a step-up from the common ale house. See Anna Groundwater, 'Ben Jonson's Walk', University of Edinburgh, 15 July 2013: https://www.blogs.hss.ed.ac.uk/ben-jonsons-walk; see also *OED*.
[16] According to Machell, the name of the schoolmaster at Kirkby Lonsdale was 'Farrer'. Two people of this name appear in this chapter: Joseph Farrer and S. Farrer. Both acted as Machell's informants, their names recurring regularly throughout.
[17] Length: twice 12 score = 480; breadth: 12 score = 240.
[18] The word is obscured by the binding.

Terribanke Tarne (& Burrow beyond Leun),
Were the 2 farest cityes in all Xt Doome.[19]

Troutes (Eales) large, at the head of Underleigh beck (& by Keastwick). Un[der]leigh hall is on the N. side.
Kirkby [town] & Lordship, Casterton, Lupton, Barbon & Mansor. ~~Close~~ \ And / Churchwardens here, being 7, & com to the Mother Church.[20]

[II.203]

Here in this Parish They call a Conjurer a Scoomer, or Corruption perhaps of Schemer.[21]

[II.204][22]

[Monuments]
An Altar above a yard high, dig'd up in a Banck call'd Abbots Brow adjoyneing the N. East Side of the Church-yard, circa 1684, & now lying in the High Street for a Seat at a Doore.



Figure 2.8.2. Altar at Kirkby Lonsdale, used as a door seat. II.204.

Memorandum. There is a Stone like an Altar \ lately / set up on the Bridge,[23] with a Dial upon it, & an Inscription upon the Three Sides. Which that they may not amase men hereafter.[24]

KIRKBY L | FEAR GOD. HO | LOANSD
WARD | NOVR YE KING | AL WARD[25]

See more in my Papers [sent] to Dr Mil.[26]

[19] Christendom.
[20] A scribbled note at the page foot.
[21] Conjuror: one who practises conjuration; one who conjures spirits and pretends to perform miracles by their aid; a magician, wizard. *OED*.
[22] Text on this page is in landscape form, in 3 columns.
[23] Known as the Devil's Bridge. In 2010, Historic England described it as 'one of the finest medieval bridges in England' https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/list-entry/1086899?section=official-list-entry)
[24] Amase or amuse? Because of Machell's formation of 'a' and 'u', this sentence could equally well read, 'that they may not amuse men hereafter'.
[25] 'Kirkby L. Ward. Fear God & Honour ye King. Loansdal Ward'. In 2010, Historic England transcribed the sundial's inscription as, 'N: CONSTABL C: LONSDALE WAR'; 'FEARE GOD HONER THE: 1673'.
[26] For Kirkby Lonsdale antiquities and Dr Mill, see Part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.257.



Figure 2.8.3. Carus with Curwen descent. V.53.

[II.205A]

[Notes on Wilson of Underley]
(No Armes that I know of ~~of~~ (& Dug[dale] has disclamed them sed […][27] Yet I saw an Escutcheon which they had assumed at one of their funeralls – Sc. Argent! A wolf (Rampant) Sable with a flordeluce in Chiefe G[ules]. Inter 2 O[28] Azure), which I only mention as a Private memorandum but will take no notice at all of Armes where I know there are none.[29]

[II.205B][30]

Wilson of Underley. Never heard of.[31]
Edward W. of Kirkby yeoman & as of
1. Thomas Wilson (of ~~Helm End~~ Kerkby) = Margaret B. of Steabankes & had for her portion Helm End. Sister to Wilsons wife of Dallam Tower.
Henry Wilson Just[ice] of Pea[ce], to whom Mr Henry Wilson of the Blackwell Hall Company gave Underley. He dyd […][32]

[27] 'But …'. The following word has been obscured by the binding.
[28] The circle drawn here suggests 'annulets'.
[29] Machell was disdainful of those whose arms were suspect: see Editor's Introduction.
[30] A group of very rough notes, difficult to interpret, written on a small scrap of paper. See *Figure 2.8.4.*
[31] A revealing statement, given the importance of the Wilsons in the town of Kendal, see fn.32, below.
[32] For the Wilsons: kin of 'the rich clothier of Underley', see R. Percival Brown, *Edward Wilson of Nether Levens (1557-1653) and his kin*, CWAAS Tract Series 12 (Kendal, 1930), 3ff. Black Hall (69. Stricklandgate) is

Edmond of Wor[…]par in Yorkeshire.
Thomas Wilson = Jane, daughter of Miles Penington of Seat[on]. Esq.[33]
Thomas Miles.[34]

[II.208]

H. Wilson of Underley buried the 29 May 1684.



Figure 2.8.4. Machell's use of small scraps of paper. II. 205B.

[II.202]

[2.] {Lupton}

A Lordship – N.W. ab Ecclesia 2m. Stragling. It comes to the Church [at Kirkby Lonsdale] and are nearer to it then any Chapel.
Thomson Houses }2 f.
Lupton Row } [In all:] 56 f[amilies.]
? Mr Thom. Heblethwate is to informe of Fellowships & Exhib[itions] Given by one Lupton.
1. Hall Lupton Hall – belong to the Huttons (by Purchase From?). Richard Hutton Barrister at Law the last owner of it.
Tenants – Now in Sir Xt. Musgrave by Gift from Mr Hutton.
Lupton Moor. Juniper.
Lupton Tarne – ab aula ½ m. N.W. A smal Tarne affording large Round Troutes shaped like a maccrel & read like a char – 1 foote long.[35]

[II.199]

[3.] Hutton Roofe[36]

20[37] f[amilies] an Hal. & Newbiging \ Ham[let] a Capella N. 1m. / 8 f[amilies.]
Se\a/lford. A single h[ouse] a Capella N.E. 1m.
Winyeates. 4 or 5 f[amilies] 1m.½ N.W.

{Hutton Chaple had 6 li per Annum Chaple Stock. Capella. Manerij.[38] Now 4 or 5 li. Manner house.}
{Hotton is a Chapelry and a Lordship, & Parkhouse is said to be the manner house, which belongd to

a 16th-century building. In 1575 it was the home of Henry Wilson, First Alderman (Kendal's equivalent of mayor), https://www.lancaster.ac.uk/quakers/links/kendal_black_hall.html. In the City of London, the Blackwell Hall Company was the national centre of the wool and cloth trade; here, cloth manufacturers and clothiers from the provinces brought their material to sell to merchants and drapers. See Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.413. See also *N&B1*, 248.

[33] For the Penningtons of Seaton see *CFH*, 259.

[34] There is an interesting but almost illegible comment here: 'q. How he was an [...] a poore boy not worth 40s.' R.P. Brown, discusses discrepancies in the interpretation of the Wilson family history in *Edward Wilson of Nether Levens and his kin*, 3 ff.

[35] Many fish found in UK waters are round fish, i.e. cylindrical – round in the centre of their body, tapering to a tail. Examples include cod, bass, whiting, pollack, mackerel, red mullet, gurnard, bream, trout. https://www.directseafoods.co.uk/fish-glossary/round-fish/.

[36] MS: '{Hutton Roofe ~~& Casterton~~}'.

[37] The numeral '2' has a circular blotted shape next to it: possibly the numeral '0'?

[38] 'Chapel of the manor.'

the Prestons of the Manner in Lancashire,[39] & now – by marriage of 2 to coheires – part to the Lord Montgomery. It formerly belongd to Judge Carus {Temp Ed. 6. [1547-53], & was purchasd to the Prestons \ & Bellinghams. / No Armes in.

The upper part of the parke belongs \ now / to Sir Thomas Wentworth – which he had in marriage with Mistress Elizabeth, daughter of Sir \ Hen[ry] Bellingham. & was purchased {by Bellingham of Rig[maden], who purchased of Miles Man.} The ~~other~~ \ nether / park is \ the E[arl] of / Montgomery – which came to them by Prestons d[aughter].
{Spittle – an house in Hutton a Capella 1m. ~~SW~~ N. – for wid[40] – payes no Tithe.}
{Tenants}The Tenants have purchased [blank]
{Sir John & all [the tenants] are the (Kings) Queens Tenants.}
The Tenants are all Free[holders] & have bin time out of mind.

[Rarities]
{The fl[umen] Kear[41] sp[rings] in Cowan Moss, a Capella S. 1m. [and runs] by Borick hal in Lancashire & into the Sea at Warton Sands.}
Good flags. Troughs[42] & Hewn Stone & Lee stone[43] a Capella 1m. S.W.
Hanging Stone[44] 3 yards diameter; not half a yard Bass.[45] S. west side of chapel.
Cole at Casterton, a Capella 3m. East. Colepit Hills [belong] to the K[ing].

[4.] {Lordship Mansergh}

Mansergh belongd as tis said to the family of that name; after was in Brownsword & Symson of Kendal by marriage of [Blank] & purchasd of them lately by Mr Tho. Godsalve, a merchant. The Tennants all fineable, & some Heriotable[46] & som Freehold Estates.
No manner house – a place calld Rigmaden hall & wood where there are mart and Goates.[47]
It belong formerly to the Wards – moriâ.[48]

{Rarityes}
In 7 Acres Close, being the vicars, & places adjoyneing upon Limestone ground {S. ab Ecclesia 11sc[ore]} ar cast up in molehills pieces of Transparent Stone of Several Shapes – Cutt like Diamonds – & are so Hard as to Cutt Glass: white. {A shilvering stone only, with shinie partickles in it.} {This is only Spar, a mark of Lead Ore.}[49]
Large fresh museles calld Horse Muss about (Rigmaden) {3m. N. ab Ecclesia.}
{Raspberryes all over & Curraberryes Generally.}

[39] MS: 'Hotton is a Chaple is a Lordship (~~& no more in it~~) ~~Sir Thomas Wentworth Lord~~ & Parkhouse is \ said / the manner house, which belongd to the Prestons of the Manner in Lancashire.'
[40] Widows?
[41] River Keer.
[42] This word could be 'throughs', with a missing 'h'.
[43] Limestone?
[44] There is a field called Hanging Stone near Kirkby Lonsdale: see *Westmorland Place-Names*. Alternatively, hanging 'coal' is a common type of coal, Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary 3* (London, 1898-1905), 53.
[45] Bass: a miner's term for dark coloured shale; a form of impure coal. *OED*. See also Robert Plott, *Natural History of Staffordshire* (Oxford, 1686), iii. 131: 'Bass or freestone above, and Ironston or earth, below.'
[46] One illegible word has been crossed through here.
[47] References to the presence of goats appear twice on this page.
[48] Moriâ: post-classical Latin for folly or foolishness. In medicine: impairment of the intellectual faculties; mental dullness; retardation. *OED*.
[49] Two margin comments have been added in different ink. The word 'shilvering' can be traced to 'shelyng' and 'shelyng'/'shelving stone', dialect words for a type of blue slate. See Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary 5*, 376-77, 385. The other comment says that the rock is only spar.

[II.201]

{L[ordship] Mansergh. V[u]lgo Manser.}
An Hamlet which on the N. side the [town of Kirkby Lonsdale].
F[amilies]. In all circa 30 fam[ilies]? & Manserge houses V. f[amilies]
{Manser Hall freehold […];[50] but no m[anor]}
{Wid[ows]?}
Manner House: Rigmaden Hall \ Mr Godsalve there Lord – 3 or 4 freehold, the rest Customary, no heriots. Boones.
Nether Hall \ ad / Cooke, Vintner. Freehold.
Hegham Hall (John Andland, Jo. Walker).
Great horse matches at Blackbrow in Manser a Rigmaden ¼ S.E.[51]

[5.] Barbon

[Barbon Well & Holms Well]
Within Barbon Libertyes at the Lords Seate is a well cald Barbon well (by som Dent well & Makeber well[52] from a M[ountain] of that name out of which it springs) belonging to Barbon, a Capella 5m. N & by [blank]; a Dent 3m. SW; a [Barbon] fell 3m. Has cured:
1. Scale heads – in 3 weeks.
2. A frettish, or chilness or numness like a dead palsy – occasiond by Buges[53] \ or otherwise. / George Woodhouse \ at Casterton / who could not stir his fingers \ & was ill all over, was cuered in forthnight by drinkeing & hot bathing with Linnen Raggs: John Addison of Casterton a Streain in his side with a Lift after a quarter of a year Ilness, was cured with once coming. James Fawcets wife, being very weeke & sore paind in her back for ½ a year ocasiond through childe bearing. was cured by cold bathing & drinkeing in a forthnight or less. It tastes of iron, colours stones yallow, purges & vomits. Helps Hearing.
~~Christ~~ Holms well in Holm meadow near Beckfoot cures Sore Eyes & dimness. A Capella 1m. West.

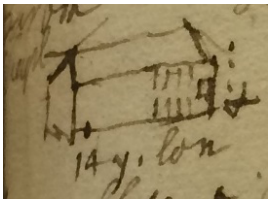


Figure 2.8.5. Barbon Chapel. II.201.

Barbon Chapl
14 y. lon[g] 4 [wide]. No Bells.

Barbon \ the East side the W[ell][54] / an Hamlet. Barbon & Beckfoot: f[amilies] 30.
& Fel House \ alijs Underbanck / 1m.½ N.E. F[amily] 1. No M[anor] H[ouse]. Anciently the Midletons,[55] & for diverse Generations to the Shutleworths of Fawcet in Yorkeshire. Purchased by Shutleworth.[56]

[50] Indistinct word which might be 'Harling' i.e. roughcast.
[51] For horse racing at Mansergh, see Emmeline Garnett, 'Mansergh', in F. Edmonds and S.A. Rose (eds), *The Victoria History of the Counties of England: A History of the County of Westmorland, Volume I* (Martlesham, forthcoming).
[52] In Machell's MS, the letters W and M are sometimes used interchangeably. Machell is probably referring to Wakeburgh well and Wakeburgh Scar. See II.214; II.223; II.231; II.234B.
[53] Bug: an insect, as in this quotation from 1594: 'This medecine caused many times, a certaine blacke bugge, or worme to come forth which had many legs, & was quicke.' All *OED*.
[54] An editorial suggestion, as Machell wrote the letter, 'W' only.
[55] MS: 'Anciently the ~~Thorstats~~ the Midletons.'
[56] See Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.384.

Bar[bon] Parke = no dear in mem[ory] but \ clean & / foul marts. But d[eer] 80 years since – Fallow & read. {Applegarth pond & Close behind the Chaple on the Parke edge: i.e. no H.}[57]
Woods cut down in Barbon Parke & ~~much~~ som remaneing.
It was purchasd by Midleton, of on[e] Vernon or Vaughan \ about / 80[58] year since, but enjoyd by them a few years onely, having Borrowed money of \ Serg. / Judge Shutleworth, to whom it was Transferd. The Judge gave it his Nephew, Richard Shutleworth of Gauthorp = Barton of Barton of Gauthorp near Preston in Lancashire. {[Informant] Robert Ustinson Balive.}

Sir Richard had:
1. Rich.
2. Col Nic[olas]
3. Col. Eutred
4. Maj. Barton
5. Cap. Edw.
6. Cap. Willk[…][59] at Lancaster
7. Mr John [Blank]

Richard = [Blank]
|
[1.] Nicolas [2.] Richard = Margaret Tempest of Old Durham.
|
Sir Richard, Knight.

[Tenure]
Tenants. All fineable Arbitrary. No Heriots. Boones.
{Wid. ½. Unmarried or miscard}[60]
Free-holds ~~Jas Gibson.~~ Wid[ow] Baly. Wid[ow] Gibbnson. 6 or 7 [freeholds]
{Feoffees: Rob. Moore, Jo. Atkinson, John Bainbrig & Jos G. = Sam. Gibson, Minister: Pay a Rent to the King & Q? as h. of K.C.[61] and ancient Sallery, 3:12:0 per Annum, payd out of the Chaple Stock. & 6^{d} per ¼ in the Town & 12 out Townes & 4 meales a week.}[62]

Raspberryes
Cole on Barbon fell – 2m. E.
Brown Slate 5 m \ N & 6 / E – at Weyber. \ Turf / peets – Ibidem. 3m.

[II.200]

[6.] Casterton

Uper: ab Ecclesia 1m. \ N / E. Church. 24 f[amilies.]
Lower: ab Ecclesia 1m. E. 17 f[amilies.]
and Chapel Houses 2. f[amilies] – an Hamlet.
The Hall \ & Demane / was the Manner House [and] belongd to the Davenportes, \ then to the Bellinghams / now to Sir John Lowther by his fathers marriage with Mrs Elizabeth Bellingham. But the Lordship is in the Queen Dowager. The Tenants pay Rent & Fine Certain of 3 years – & Heriots 40^{s} by Decree in Chancery. Green hew 1d. for Spelkes & Prods.[63]

[57] This comment is written at right angles to the main text, tucked away in the left-hand margin; it has been difficult to transcribe with accuracy.
[58] Or '70': the text is unclear, the numeral '7' (or '8') having been altered.,
[59] This word has partly perished.
[60] Miscarried.
[61] The king and queen at this time were William III and Mary II; perhaps K.C. is King Charles and Machell's 'h' stands for 'heirs', underlining William and Mary's legal status.
[62] Meals for the chaplain.
[63] 'Spelk': a thatching rod. 'Prod': 'any of various pointed instruments, as a skewer, a poker etc. *OED*. See also, 'prod' as in 'proddle': 'to make holes in something', William Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 125.

[II.223]

{Hall}
Casterton Hall is an old ruinous building, now only fit to conteine a Farmer. But formerly the Seat of Sir William Davenport, a Judge in this nation. {& lately purchased by Sir John Lowther \ and lately Baronet / of Lowther}[64]

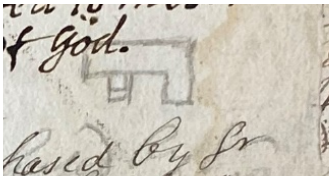


Figure 2.8.6. In the margin, sketch of Casterton Hall. II.223.

{Well}
And here I was told of a medicinal well called Dents Well, alias {Wakeber} in the very parting of Yorkeshire & Westmorland, as much frequented within memory of man as the well in Fourness is at this day,[65] but now not regarded.

[Brigs]
{Mem[orandum]. Brigs hall in Burrow now Mr Fenwick who came out of Northumberland. Col. Brigs has by his wife 15 sons and 7 daughters.}[66]

[II.216]

Burrow – is the same with Barrow in the Lancashire Dialect, which the people in Kendal participateing of, call their Brows Braws; Burrows Barrows – Inde Under Barrow, Whitbarrow, Oxenbarrow – Clea-barrow.

[II.200]

ad Casterton \ Ease/Gil kirk. East from the hall 2 mile. – see Camden.
Ginghrig Caud.

St Comes Chapl. ab Ecclesia 1 m S.E. ~~within park road~~ \ beyond Kirkby Bridge 12 score. / demolishd and gone yet bearing his name. & also calld Chappel houses – ~~and a well~~ a Sancta Columbo.[67]

[II.223]

{St Comes Chaple} in Loansdale
There is a Place call'd Chappelbeck-close on the left hand of the High way from Kirkby to London, where A~~nd~~ Chappel hath stoode. {There are 2 houses called Chappel houses at a place near unto them.} But the ground is now plowed; And a well near onto it, call'd St Collmes ~~well~~ a corruption as wee suppose of Colums and that of Columbus,[68] the [saint] in whose name {it may to have bin first of all consecrated to the Service of God.}

[II.200]

[7.] {Lordship of Midleton}

Midleton is scattered above & below the Hall.
(Holme) part of Midelton \ viii of them / – 66 [families].[69]

[64] Added later in pencil and inked over.
[65] 'The well at Fourness': the medicinal 'Holy Well' at Humphrey Head, near Cartmel, known as Cartmel Well.
[66] This is a pencilled note in the lower-right margin; some of it is too faint to read. The '7' daughters might be '9'. There are 8 other words, but they are almost illegible. More pencilled notes occur at the bottom of the page at right angles to the rest. Scored-through, they, too, are also illegible.
[67] St Columba was also known by the Old Irish name of Colum Cille, meaning, approximately, 'Church Dove'. M. Herbert, 'St Columba (c.521-97), monastic founder'. *ODNB*.
[68] St Columba.
[69] Middleton consisted of 66 families, eight of which lived in Holm.

Midleton [Chapel] was built in memory {Capt. Ed. Man. endowed?} Consecrated by Bishop Bridgeman.[70] But there was an old one before & is in the Hall.[71]
{Sallary?} – A Sall[ary] Sett \ in / land.

{Manner house}
Midleton Hall & Demane – now in Joseph Heblethwate = maryed 11 [blank] Midleton.[72]
James Cragg = Mary Midleton, Sisters & A[f]ter heires to Mr David [Middleton], 3 son of John M[iddleton] Esq.[73]

{Ten[ure]}
~~All~~ freeholds = time out of minde \ for about 80 years / having purchased their freedom of Mr Ed. – father of the \ said John / Lord – they keep a Court.
John =[74]
|
Col. Wil. Edw.
|
John = Cole
|
David
obijt inuptus.[75]

{Armes at} Midleton Hall, & 1 or 2 tenants.
Sergeant Moore – borne at Bainsbank in Midleton, now living.
Read shining Dust & other oare {A gold mine opened?}
Knoutberry-Hill upon Midleton fell, near which they grow; a Capella – 1m. ½ E.
Parke at Midleton – no dear but in mem[ory]
{Mr Bainbrig of Hawkins a freehold in Midleton; a coat of Armes – Sc. 3 Blackbirds. F. Argent.}[76]

[8.] Killington

L. Killington Ham[let and] Chaple[ry] – f[amilies] 32. {M[anor] h[ouse]} – Killington Hall \ & Parke / belongd to the Kitsons of Warton in Lancashire in memory of man. Now it belongs to Tho. Heblethwate, by marriage?
{Ten[ures]} All freeholds time out of minde.
{Parke} No dear in mem.; full of Holly but shrubs.[77]
More game – & Blackcocks on K[illington] fell a Capella S.W. ½ m.

[II.201]

[9.] {Firbancke Chappel}

F[amilies] 35. No Demane lands known – not calld a Manner nor Lordship.[78]
{? Tenants} – all free. {[Informant] Mr Applegarth.}

[70] John Bridgeman (1577-1652), bishop of Chester from 1619.
[71] The advowson is in the [owner of] the hall.
[72] Possible meaning 'married twice', secondly to […] Middleton [?]
[73] Almost obscured by the binding are the words, '& Cole of Coate in Lancashire'.
[74] For the full pedigree, see II.243, below.
[75] Died unmarried.
[76] For the Bainbrigs, see R.P. Brown, 'Bainbrig of Hawkin in Middleton, Westmorland', *CW2*, 24 (1924), 123-49; and 'Thomas Langton and his Tradition of Learning', *CW2*, 26 (1926), 192, 208.
[77] I.e. shrubby.
[78] MS: 'No Demane lands know – not calld a Manner nor Lordship – nor ~~known whether it should be~~ referd M H?'

[10.] [Rarities in Nature]

[II.214]

Kirkby Loansdal Parish
[A woman] circa 80 ætatis, so lame that she could not goe about the House; & Renewd her Strength & sight of a sudden; had fresh hair white as a child, and a new set of teet[h] – and could goe to Chapham Church on foote – She went to shew herselfe abroad about 9 year agoe & was never heard of since. {Mr Tempest Husband an […][79] witness.}[80]
Vicaridge.[81] A miserian[82] – & white flore-de- lueys.[83] & Imperial Crown: A flore.[84]

Underleigh; a fine Seate
Lawn [&]
1. Arbor Vitæ – one on each hand as you enter through the Court. & in the Vic[arage[Garden.[85]
2. Buck-horn Tree by the garden dooer as you goe into the Turret gardine & at the Vic[arage].
3. The steps up the Mount, 66 & are 4 or 5 Inch High \ & maden hare in the steps. /
4. The Turret 2 stories high.
5. A Cock of the wood, being as big as a goose, brown like an Eagle & shapd like Moore game.
6. A Crokadil – 1 yard ½ or more.[86]

[Machell's Notes: II.214]
{The Master! (Thomas Holm of Barbon.)}

[II.203]

[B.] Kirkby Lonesdal Parish in the precincts of the Mother Church & the number of chapels

[II.213]

[1. Church: General Description] {July 16 1692}

Saint James his Church (as is supposed from the rush bearing used upon that day) hath a Steeple, 22 yards & 2 foote in Height, with a fair carved gate to enter into it. This Church in Length on the Out Side about 40 yards. The Breadth 24. And at the far \ East / End of the North Ile is Midleton Quire, where ~~is~~ are the ruines of a fine Monument made Alabaster of a Readish brown colour with these Coates of Armes, Sc. of one of Midletons & his wife cut in Alabaster {which the 1ᵗ Coat Impald shews to be} which was the Effigies Edward Midleton Esq. and [Blank] his wife.
The ~~Outer~~ \ South / Portch was builded by one Mr Baynes of Hegholm Hall (as by these verses which hung about 40 years agoe over the dooer.

This Portch by Baynes 1ᵗ builded was
Of Hegholm Hall they were.
And after sold to Christopher Wood
to keep in good Repare.

[79] Two words are illegible here.
[80] The story is repeated on MS.II.219.
[81] In faint pencilled letters under this heading are the words, 'It has great Parke at 18d – Endowments of Chaples.'
[82] 'Miserian', mentioned by John Evelyn as a flower suitable to be sown in a hot bed in spring alongside myrtles and nasturtiums, see John Ingram (ed.), *Elysium Britannicum, or The Royal Gardens* (Philadelphia, 2001), 109.
[83] White lily. See Frederick Barlow, *The Complete English Dictionary: Or, General Repository of the English Language*, Vol. 2 (1773), LIM-LIN.
[84] The crown imperial was a fritillary beloved of George Herbert: see Henry Nicholson Ellacombe, *The plant-lore and garden-craft of Shakespeare* (2nd edn, 1884), 104.
[85] Tree of life: the evergreen thuja.
[86] The crocodile or krokedail was either the holly (*Ilex Aquifolium*) or the stems of *Clematis Vitalba*: Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary 1*, A-C, 801.

And is repared as you see & kept in order good –
By the true Owner now thereof, the foresaid Christopher Wood.[87]

There is a ring of 3 Large Bells; & they are so expert as to Ring 29 Changes upon them.
The patronage & Impropriation thereof belongs to Trinity College in Cambridge, & is held in ~~by~~ Lease by Sir Thomas Strickland[88] – 1^{t} fruits 20^{li}.

[II.214][89]

[Clock] A clock in the church with 2 Horeplates – S. & West.[90]

[II.205][91]

[The Church: Further Details]
{St James day Rushebearing.[92]
22 yards l[eng]th
a fine corte gate
a fine flaged walke
3 great Bells: 7 Ringes, 29 Changes.}



Figure 2.8.7. Kirkby Lonsdale Church; margin sketch. II.205.

[II.219][93]

{July 16 1692}
Midleton Quier, which is the East End of the N. Ile {6 Collumns in a Row}
Here is a Fragment of an \ Allabaster / Monument of a Duskish Read Color – having bin formerly the Effigies of a Man in Armour with his Sword girt about him, laying on his back with hands erected & his head resting upon an Helmet. & by him the figure of his wife.[94] And at the head or West End of the Monument are 2 Coates of Armes and on Each Side 2. & has bin (I guess) as many more.

[87] Compare the versions in Rev. Canon Ware, 'Notes upon the parish church of Kirkby Lonsdale', *CW1,* 1 (1870), 189-203, at 198; and in R.P. Brown, 'Christopher Wood's inscription in Kirkby Lonsdale Church' *CW2*, 25 (1925), 321-30; see also *N&B1*, 246.
[88] Sir Thomas Strickland (1621-1694) of Sizergh was a committed Royalist and Civil War commander. After the collapse of King James II's regime, he and his wife fled to France. See J. Callow, 'Strickland, Thomas John Francis (c. 1682-1740), Roman Catholic bishop of Namur and diplomatist' [son of Sir T.]. *ODNB*. See also Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.163, n.15.
[89] The reverse of II.213; it is divided into three columns, each of which is paginated (213, 213A, 214).
[90] Hour plate: the dial-plate of a clock inscribed with figures denoting the hours. *OED*.
[91] Other than the sketches and margin comment, this page is not in Machell's hand. The porch inscription on this page of the MS is virtually identical to that on II.213, so has not been transcribed.
[92] 25 July.
[93] The whole of this page has been overwritten. The base text is in pencil and mostly illegible. The images were drawn in pencil and then inked over.
[94] See *N&B I*, 246.



Figure 2.8.8. Arms in the Middleton Quire of Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219.



Figure 2.8.9. Second coat of arms. Middleton quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219.

The 1. was Midleton single with a Crist, defaced. The 2. Midleton impaleing Tunsdal. Which by the Pedegre will sho which of the Midletons it was.

On the South Side the Monument.



Figure 2.8.10. Coats of arms on the south side of the monument in the Middleton quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219.

On the north side



Figure 2.8.11. North side of the monument in Middleton Quire in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.219.

[with] An English Inscri[p]tion in the old Text Round.[95]

[95] The text has perished here, but the remaining words say, 'In Casterton Piew in the S. Ile – on wainscot A.D. 160 [blank] is this Coat…'



Fig 2.8.12. 'In Casterton Piew in the S. Ile – on wainscot.' II.219.[96]

1. The Crist Stags head Co[llared] Or.
(2.) Argent a /\ charg'd with a Crescent Or between 3 [cross crosslets fitchy][97] Sable.
2. Azure a Lyon Rampant Vert.
3. Vert. A Bend Argent charged with 2 Rows of Ermins.
? 4. Or A Bugle Sable.
(5.) Argent. 3 Bends Gules on a Canton of the 2nd a Lyon Rampant of the first.
6. The sixth, as the first.}

[Library]
At the East End of the N. Ile is erected a Library above a Little Place for the Vestery – being only \ a Loft or Gallery / of wainscot, with one Row of Seates & Read[ing] Deskes placed before them; under which are classes for the Bookes.[98] This Library pulpit & New Loft, together with the School house, were founded by Mr Henry Wilson of Underley who gave to the colleges – 1000li. Besides 35li yearly to 7 poore Scholars going to Queens College in Oxon. And to this church & Schoole 240li[99] – To the poore / of Kirkby Loansdal Lordship 500 li. Besides making other gifts to […][100]

[II.220] [101]
In the Top of the Midle high window \ light / in Casterton pew: Gules 3 cushons Ermin. But not Tasseld. I take it for a Readman. {inde forsan colligatur – Readmans aliquando Casterton habuiss[e]}[102]



Figure 2.8.13. Redman Arms in Casterton pew in Kirkby Lonsdale Church. II.220.

On an Alabaster Monument, being a Table of black marble betwixt 2 monument \ white marble / columns in the South Ile.

[96] The text has perished here.
[97] Machell has drawn a sketch here, rather than using words.
[98] 'Classes': a set or category of things having related properties or attributes in common grouped together, differentiated from others under a general name or description; as in 'classified'. *OED*. See also *N&B1*, 248.
[99] This phrase is almost hidden in the binding. The sum has hitherto been judged to be 24li, but there is a nought after the '24', which suggests that the sum is 240li. The amounts given here do not quite concur with Nicolson and Burn's data, see *N&B1*, 248.
[100] 1¾ lines of text at the foot of this page have perished.
[101] The whole of this page has been overwritten. The base text is in pencil and mostly illegible. The images were drawn first in pencil and then inked over.
[102] 'Perhaps it might be adduced that the Redman family once owned Casterton.'

FÆLICI &c. fælici memoriæ Elizabethæ Carus, filiæ et heredis Thomæ Carus, Nicholai Curwen Equitis Aurati uxoris. Matri Suæ | Optimè meritæ merens filia Maria | Henrico Witheringtono Nupta, Hoc Sacrum Posuit. [103]

And under neath on a Smaler Table of Black Marble also:

Hic Requiescit ab Ano no Domini 1611. Ætatis suæ | 51. Donec Postrema lux refulgeat.[104]

And above all is this Coate of Arms



Figure 2.8.14. Curwen with Carus coat of arms. II.220.

Which is Curwen, with its quarterings, impaleing Carus with its Quarterings.[105]
1. Argent a frett Gules, ch[arged] with a chief.
2. Is Azure, a Lyon Rampant Argent gutteed Gules.[106]
3. Azu\re/ a cheveron \ Ar[gent] / charged with Thre mullets Gules.
4. Argent 3 bares Gules, on a canton of the 2nd a sparrowel[107] Or, piercd. In the Chiefe a crescent montant[108] for distinction of another house.
5. As the second.
6. As the first. N[ote] Ergo A[rgent] impaleing.
7. Argent a Ram Sable Hornd Ore a chief of the 2. Garbes of the 3.[109]

[II.208][110]

Kirkby Loansdal Parish conteineth in it
1. The mother church.
2. St Coomes chapel.[111]
3. Barbon Chapel.
4. Midleton Chaple.
5. Firbanke.
6. Killington.
7. Hutton Roofe.

[103] 'To the happy memory of Elizabeth Carus daughter and heir of Thomas Carus and wife of Sir Nicholas Curwen Baronet. Her daughter Mary wife of Henry Witherington set up this sacred stone, grieving for her best-deserving mother.'
[104] 'Here she has reposed since A.D. 1611, aged 51. May the final light shine again in and on her'.
[105] The MS here contains a list, written in pencil and scored through: '~~1. Argent 2. 3. 4. 5. Azure a Lyon Rampant Argent 6. As the 1.7. Argent 3 calfes sable~~.'
[106] Here, Machell has sketched a droplet symbol (goutte).
[107] Spur rowel.
[108] Here, Machell has sketched a crescent symbol.
[109] The rest of the phrase is obscured by the binding.
[110] In the MS, each chapel's name is followed by the words, 'in which', with no added text.
[111] St Columba or Colum Cille.

[II.205] [112]

[2. Information supplied by Machell's Informants, with Machell's queries and notes]

[i.] The Parish of Kirkby Lonsdale, Countie of Westmorland

is in form oblong on the S. part abutting upon the north of Lancashire and extend its bounds northerly to Couperethwaite in Firbank being X miles in length and from the East bounded upon Yorkshire, and extends itself iiij miles westward bounding upon Kendall parish northerly and upon Burton parish southerly. It is divided into 6 Constablewicks* (vizt) 1^0 Kirkby Lordship, 2^0 Casterton cum Hutton roof, 3^0 Barbone cum Mansergh, 4. Middleton, 5. Killington cum Firbank, 6. Lupton; and further accompt [is given] as per inclosed paper of Kirkby Lonsdale parish†.

Of the Town of Kirkby L.[113]
Kirkby Lunesdale, being the Chiefe Towne from whereof the parish has its denomination; and the Dale from the River Lune which has its rise by a small Spring, X miles above the head of the parish, continues its course through the parish being X miles in lengthe and emptyeth it selfe at Lancaster or Lunecaster X myles below the parish. The River is large and al along butiffyed with great plenty of wood; and ~~furnished~~ \ enriched / with abundance of fish and \ great / variety of Salmon, Trouts, Eeles, Pikes, pinks, and greate store of salmon Friye called Smelts.

{Site of the Church}
The Church situate upon the Bank of the river, a very pleasant, \ in / a large Levill and incomparable Churchyard, butyfyed with curious walks, planted with wood; the Church three rowes of Collumns and well butified within but most of the antient monuments defaced; a slender square steeple. Iij Bells: about 100 yards East from the Church upon the River bank a very fine Free Schoole‡ founded in 1628 by Mr Henry Wilson of Underley, who alsoe gave to Church, Colleges, Schoole and poore, and other pious uses, neare 3000^{li} a particular whereof [blank][114]

[Machell's Notes: II.205]

*{q. whether Lordships.}
†{q. How Casterton & Hutton roof & allso Lupton stand apart from Kirkby & on what side of the water. See the bounders in the other paper.}
‡{A further account (if servicable) take from Mr Wase of […]}[115]

[II.206]

{The Marcat e Registro de Wederhal f. 121}
Hen. III (per Cart dat. Anno Regni sui [Blank] et [Blank] Granted to John de Kirkby parson of the church of Kirkby in Lonesdale, that he and the succeeding parsons of the said church, should have forever one fair there upon the Church Land; to continue 3 dayes every year – Sc. on the Eve, upon the Day, & the day after, the Feast of the Nativity of the Bl[essed] Virgin Mary.[116] And one Market on Thorsday every week nesc[essary] &c. But the Parsonage being after appropriate to the Mon. of St Mary of Yorke, a Quo Warranto[117] was brought against the Abbot of York {Anno Dom. 1291 XX Ed.} concerneing the same 1, who said that he clamd ~~it~~ \ to have a fair & m[arket] there / as parson of the Church, Reciteing the Charter above said. And he clamed Emendas assisæ panis et cerevisiæ fractæ Tu[m]brellum et pillorium tanquam annexas et pertinentes Mercato.[118]

---

[112] The main text below the heading is in another hand. The sketch and margin comments are in Machell's hand.
[113] A margin note gives, MS: '{Kirkby Loansdall Towne in the Tower? 48 Charter –}', but some of this comment has been obscured by the binding.
[114] See above, II.219.
[115] Although the final words are unclear, this is a reference to Christopher Wase's schools survey. See P.J. Wallis, 'Westmorland schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey'. *CW2*, 67 (1967), 168-85.
[116] From 7 to 9 September.
[117] A writ of, 'by what authority'.
[118] 'And he clamed amends for the breach of an assize of bread and ale, [and the use of] tumbrel and pillory, as being annexed and pertaining to the market.' The Assize of Bread and Ale (Latin: Assisa panis et cerevisiae)

And at length it was agreed by the Kings Counsail that the foresaid Abbot should enjoy the fair libertyes & those things which belongd to a marcat & fair – salvo jure Dom[ini] Regis et heredum suorum.[119] And a Precept was given to the Sherif to permit the same &c.

[Fairs]
{1 fair on Shear Thorsday ie Mau[n]dy Thorsday; 1 on St. Thomas Day;[120] & one every forthnight day from Hallow Thorsday till Michaelmas. The Lord of the Manner has all the Tolls both of Faire & Market.}

{Abbats [Hall]}
There is a place calld Abbats Hall standing on the Southwest side of the church yard. Which with the Impropriation & Advowsan of the church now belongs to Trinity College in Cambridge.

[II.207][121]

If Servicable may be had, and what further knowne.[122]

{Market & Faires}
The Towne is a Markett weekly, upon Thursday, and two faires yearly; both faires and market afford a great store of Cattall and all sorts of graine in great plenty; Buildings pretty good; quantity of stone and timber within the parish; oakes* and ashes, of which in some parts are found that will never worme eate, which is very rare in ashen wood†. For fewell, plenty of wood, turffs, peates, and coales all within the parish and two miles of the Towne.

{Ad Kirkby Town} {Kirkby Bridge}
Through the Towne the high roade from Scotland and northest of Cumberland and Westmorland to London, and over the bridg called Kirkby Bridge, famous for its strength and building, consisting of iij Arches all founded upon \ a / roky Base, naturaly grounded in the middle of the river.
As for Gentry I can give very smale account but what I suppose may be better had out of Dugdall.

{Note. Gen[eral] of the parish of Kirkby}
The parish generaly of a good soyle, redish and black mould, all sorts of graine, greate store of Lime-Stone, Free Stone and Slate very convenient; greate store of p[lea]sant springs but none phisicall; every part furnished with Small Rivelets emptying into the river, and all furnishd with fish from thence.

[Machell's Notes: II.207]

*{at Barbon Park.}
†{?!!!}
The Vic[ar's] House on the N. of the church yard – Mr Briggs. 1m. West Tearnside-Chapl (1 m west ~~½ N \ W. & SW /from the church~~.) – Lately demolished by Richard. Balif.
Hutton Roofe – W. ab Ecclesia 2m. and more; Midleton Chapel 3m. N \ E / ab Ecclesia. Killington 4m.[123] N.; Firbank 7m.[124] north; Barbon chapel 2 m \ N / E by N.[125]

was a 13th-century law which regulated the price, weight and quality of bread and beer manufactured and sold in towns, villages and hamlets. It was the first law in British history to regulate the production and sale of food: Henry de Beltgens Gibbins, *The Industrial History of England* (London, 1897), 245-46.

[119] 'Saving the rights of the Lord King and of his heirs'.

[120] 21 December.

[121] Continuation of II.205, written in the same hand. Machell provided the margin comments.

[122] Heading of a note from Machell's informant.

[123] This could also be seen as '5'.

[124] Overwritten. Could be '1m.'.

[125] All of these distances are placed at the foot of the page and are either indistinct or partly perished. They are therefore insecure.

[II.209][126]

[ii.] Mr Aplegarth

{Parish length & Bredth}
Kirkby Lonsdale Parish lyeth upon the east side of Kendall barony. From Kirkby Church \ in the South / till Couperthwaite in Fir banke \ northwards / in the same parish is in length nine myles; in breadth foure myles.

{Bounder?}
Bounded on the East side whereof with Yorkeshire all along; on the ~~South~~ \ north and northwest side / side with Kendall Parish, and Burton parish; the South parte abuttinge upon Lancashire: The river Lone from whence the Dale has its name runninge downe the very midle of the parish from Midleton Head to Kirkby Church.

{Lordships}
It is devided into six divisions: Kirkby Lordshippe; and Casterton and Hutton Rooffe, another; Barbon and Mansergh, another; Midleton the fourth; Killington and Fir banke the fifth; and Lupton the sixth the ~~smallest~~ \ least / parte by some small quantity.

{Gen[eral] Tithe*}
All the parish pays Tyth Corne in kinde except Killington and Firbanke which pays Composition money called Tyth meale silver; as the rate is Dated the Saturday before midsummers[127] \ day / and the Saturday after: every yeare.
The Patronage is impropriate, belongeing to Trinity Colledge in Camb.

{Tenure}
The Tenures ar mixt: in Kirkby Lordshippe some Coppie holds and some free \ customary; / in Casterton and Hutton Roofe, Customarie Lands and Free holds; in Barbon, Customarie lands; and Mansergh, freeholds. Midleton all freeholds, onely oweing Suite of Courte to Midleton Hall. Killington and Firbanke all free holds; longe since belongeing to the mannor-house called Killington Hall and in ancient time of the Pickeringe lands the Eschutchion of that house being three fishes \ no that cannot be,[128] / as they are to be found att this day in a glasse window of the said house.

{Lupton} And Lupton all Customarie Tenants:

{Hutton Ch. Barbon C. Kil. Ch. Firbanke !!!}
A Chappell of Ease in Hutton Roofe; an old ruined Chappell in Barbon; a chappell where they bury in Midleton; and one of the same quality in Killington where they bury; and a chappell in Firbanke dedicated to St Martine; \ and / within an indifferent distance of the said Firbanke Chappell there is a Springe wel which kills keads (as comonly called by the Country people) if any be got into a mans eare, by dropping \ the / water therein: It has beene reported that \ formerly / very many have come farre for that end and found helpe by the water and lyeing of the ground in that Chappell; for certaine truth the ground upon the fell under which this well aforesaid riseth does not suffer one keade to live upon the sheep that there pasturs in the Summer: my owne sheep goes in the same place and I cann witnesse itt.[129]

[Machell's Notes: II.209]
{Q. of fir roots found in the mosses about K.}
{*Giles Balif æt 70. Will. Willan. 37 – of Hutton Roof.}[130]

[126] Smaller page, 18cm x 20½cm: main text not in Machell's hand; margin comment in Machell's hand.
[127] 21 June.
[128] Interlineation here by Machell.
[129] 'Keds' or 'keads' are sheep lice and parasites: Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect*, 89.
[130] Informants.

[II.213] [131]

[iii.] Ad Bounder of Westm'land[132]

Yorkshire in the East is divided from it Thus:
Beginning at Holmwater foote; thence Eastwards up Holm water to above Holm.
{? From Holm Beckfoot to the County Stone.}
From Holmwater above Holm.
Up a gill by the east side of Midleton Fell to the hanging stone in in Berkine where Barbon be.
{Q[uery] County Stone ~~on the top of Gragerth~~\ inter Weber and Gragerth.}

{A Bounder from Barbon Pike to Langfoot Side as followeth} {N.B. This is Good}
Thence \ W. by S. / from Gragerith go down a Gill to a \ cave /calld Easgill-Kirke* (where such a parish or Lordship begins.)
Thence Westwards inclineing to the S. by. St Coomes Chappell house (divideing this Lordship from [Blank] in Lancashire &c.)
Thence Westwards in a directly over Leune to \ an Ash Tree in \ medow / Cansfield Closes.[133]
Thence W. Cross[in]g Lancaster Road, in \ a / streine[134] to a Great Stone in a field calld Thirnby.
Thence W. By the fence \ or hedge / to Thirnby Well.
Thence W. (in direct Line) \ over the fields / to a well in a meadow twix Biggins-hall in W. & Sellet Hall in Lancashire.}
Thence W. (over the fields in a streight line to {North Neuk of Cartar-Intack now Jacksons.)
Thence West (up ~~the~~ the Dike twixt Brabon Intack in Lancashire & Langfield in Westm'land & to the top of Langfield hill.)

[Machell's Notes: II.213]

*{q. of a story in Camden}[135]

[II.214]

Ra\w/tha Water devides Westmorland from Yorkeshire from the Stean-brig at the N. End of the foremire SW by the River Leun to the foote of Ra\w/tha.
Thence (up Rara beck) and by South to where Midle[ton] comes in to Higher Holme \ takeing it in; /
Thence E.S.E. (by as Heven Water divides to the Hinging Stone where Barbon comes in.
Thence S.E. (by a streight Line to Willy mount Rase \ at the W. End of Green head. /
Thence W.S.W. (in a direct line to the Lords Seat: a chare made with 3 stones upon an Hurrock at the N.E. End of Wakeber near the well.
Thence S.E (up a Sike to Mear-Häu, a round Limeston hill.
Thence S. (up the said Sike to – ergo – Milstone-Pike where Casterton comes in
Thence in a direct line streight – County Stone whe[re] the Countyes of W. Y. & L. meet all together.

[II.215]

{Ad Bounder} {Hutton Roofe}
§ The Bounder of Westmorland from Hutton Roof Lordship to Winstar beck head; & thence to White Scout head.
From the Top of Langfield Hill (where Hutton Lordship begins) S. up the Out Side of Whittington Intack Wall till you com ~~at~~ to the Dike Nook of Haber.

---

[131] Although of the usual size for this volume, this page has been pasted in at right angles to the rest.
[132] This bounder information is in note form and has been scored through. In the margin is written 'ad bounder infra'.
[133] Here there is a tiny sketch of a tree (¼cm x ½cm) surrounded by grass.
[134] 'Streight line'.
[135] Camden remarked of this area, 'Above the Spring-head of Lone the country spreadeth broader and the hilles shoot out with many turnings, betweene which there lie some vallies mervailous steepe and deepe withall, with many hollow places in maner of caves.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 760C. The 'story', however, might have come from Camden's previous chapter on Lancashire, in which, describing the shores of Windermere, he wrote, 'And a little village standing hard by carieth the name thereof. In which Eathred King of Northumberland in the yere of Christ 792, when he had by force fetched King Elfwolds sonnes out of Yorke and slue them, that by his owne wickednes and their bloud he might secure the Kingdome to himselfe and his.' See Edmund Gibson (ed.), *Camden's Britannia* Vol. 2, 2nd edn (London, 1722), 978.

Thence directly S. downe by an old Casten Dike to the Head of Këür-beck.
Thence, Westward down the said Beck to Mort Intack Nooke.
Thence agane Westwards down the said Këur to the Low Nooke of Hawkrig alias Hawkside hill* at Roand well.
Thence – even West (in a streight line) to Walker Pots ~~Under there to~~ Cragg-house on the South Side of it. {Crag house payes Rent & cesses in Lancashire}.
Thence, N.W. (in a direct line) to Heap of Stones twixt Lowthate and Ploverlands. Where Burton parish comes in but q. whether Burton clame not to Walker pots.
(Thence q[uery] in Burton. And memorandum to enter a note about Dalton.)

Where Burton comes in
Thence W. (up Roand Well Sike) to Roand-Well Head (They call Rowled Roand vulgo here.) Thence West (in a direct line) to the South End of Pickle-Hill.[136]
Thence N.W. by ~~a Common fence~~ \ the Out Side of Dalton / Ring fence to Storth-Stile.
Thence \ directly / W (by the foote way) to Peac\r/oft hedge.
Thence directly S. (in a streight line) to the Highway twixt Burton & Dalton.
Thence W. (down the Highway) to the East point of Lan\g/ran Close.
Thence W. (~~down~~ \ up / the said Hedge about 100 yards to a Gray Stone on the N. side of a well.
Thence Southward 200 yards to the S. point of Langran close.
Thence Southward (by a quick wood \ hedge / to the East corner of a common field belonging to Burton, calld Boun-Town.
Thence S. (by another like fence) to a close calld Slaks.

[II.217]

From Sc. Slacks
From thence S. Eastwards following the fence on your left hand till you com at ~~Dickni~~ Dickin yeat.
Thence West (downe the lane from Dalton to Burton) till you com ~~at~~ \ to / a place calld Ou-fangs.
Thence W. (by a fense on the left hand) to Herrinsike.
Thence \ W. / up the said Sike \ about / 100 yards till you com at Dearflat Meadow.
Thence Directly Nor[th] (up Dearflat fence) to The Highway twixt Burton & Yellan.
Thence W. – followin[g] that Land to Yellan head.
Thence N. up Yellan head fence to the South corner of Bread Lands.
Thence W. down Broad Land Dike {where Dalton & Burton comes in}to Hilderstone Dike.
Thence ~~N~~ W. Jump over the Moss in a direct line to 2 or 3 Houses calld Leyton Beck where Bethom comes*. So calld from the river Betha – which springs at Lilly tarn. And runs by the East end of the Church. Then N. down from the Hall to Milthrop Bridge.
Thence west by north of Dallan Tower and ?11 score[137] beyond it turnes Southwards into the sea.
From Levton Beck (SW) downe the said Beck to south corner of Ivy-meadow; thence S.W. (by Midle Barow wall) to South side of Midlebarrow; thence W. (in a Streight Line) in the \ field / to Arnes head well; thence N.W. by the South Side of Arneside Park[138] to a Skarr calld Black Steäne.; thence N.W. (by a Streight Line) Over the \ Eye Ea† to the / foot of Lindal Pow. Thence N. up the River Powe to the Powbank? which I thinke is Winstar beck foote.

Machell's Notes: II.217]
*Qu. of Ed. Garnet of Bethom, Thomas Hudson of Haverbreek beyond Bethom.[139]
†{The Eye of Kent so calld there.}
{Bethome: Thomas Hudson, Samuel Dowker.}[140]

[136] MS: 'Thence West (in a direct line) to the South End of Pickle-Hill Heap of Stones twixt Lowthate and Ploverlands.'
[137] Yards.
[138] 4cm of text is thoroughly scored through and illegible here.
[139] Machell queries whether this bounder is correct.
[140] It has been partly hidden by the binding but the name could be 'Bowker'.

[II.218][141]

{White Skout Sicke}
Thence up the said Winstar beck till you com above Winstar chaple at the place where White Scout Sike comes into Winstar betwixt the 2 mills.
Thence Westwards to White Skout head where it springs*.
From Preston Chaple to Hutton S.E. 3 m – Thence to Dalton Hall S.W. 1 m & ½; Thence to Burton 1m. N.W.†.

[Machell's Notes: II.218]

*Qu. If Winstar beck be not the Same with Lindal Pow –
†So far as Burton is concernd, given in by Valantine Armorer; Rich. Claton Landlord 2s 6;
& Balif.
John Lucas Senior of Holm; John Lucas Junior; Roger Hind. Spent at Crookelands – 0-2-6.[142]
See the outmost parishes and their Bounders & thence Extract the General Bounder.

[II.221][143]

[iv.] Kirkby Lonsdale Schoole [Henry Wilson][144]

Sir
In answer to your desires in your letter sent me (touching the Free Grammar Schoole of Kirkby Lonsdale in the county of Westmorland) I give this narrative of what I know and have heard of the same*{i.e. Mr Richard Jackson Parson of Whittington near Kirkby Lonsdale from whom together with Mr Henry Wilson Justice of Peace I had this information}[145] my selfe being borne in that towne November the 11th 1602 and am now aged yeares seventy and three;[146] my father was a feofe or governor among others of that schoole many years, and myself one since his decease.
As for the rise and original of that schoole, I have heard it was thus, viz, that one whose surname was Godsalve borne at Newton of the Parish of Whittington in the County of Lancaster gave one hundred pound toward a free schoole to be disposed as the parson of Whittington (called Parson Bland) should hold fitting, and being borne att Kirkby Lonsdale, that towne being an ancient market towne, but a mile from Whittington proposed his willingness that the said hundred pound the gift of the said Godsalve should goe towards the foundation of a free grammer schoole at the said Kirkby, provided Kirkby Lordship or the parish would add to it another hundred pound which was done accordingly, at which time one Mr Tenant having purchased two manners in the north riding of the county of Yorke called by the name of Beadall and Scotton, did for the said two hundred pounds grant a Rent Charge of twenty pounds upon the said two manners yearly for ever unto the Governors of the said schoole to the use of him who was elected by them master of the said schoole and to be paid yearly at two payments viz at Whitsunday and Martinmas[147] by equall portion or within ten dayes after either of those two festivalls under a nomine poena[148] of fortie shillings in case the same was unpaid as aforesaid; but now that rent charge is paid by Sir Henry Tompson of Yorke who lately purchased the mannour of Scotton of the heires of the said Mr Tenant, and he duly payes the same within the times limited, the deeds to shew the same are extant and kept with the letters patents in the thre and thirtieth yeare of Queen Elizabeth[149] granted to the four and twentie feoffes Governors of the said schoole and all the other writings ~~belonging~~ relating to the said schoole in a chest kept in the Vestry of the church of the said Kirkby Lonsdall. Alsoe there was given by the Lady Curwen who was heire of the said mannour of Kirkby Lonsdale certaine parcel of lands called the Masters lands scituate nea[r] the Biggins, and the wast grounds of the old Schoole house, and the new Schoole house was erected upon

[141] Note-page containing several shades of ink as well as red pencil (overwritten).
[142] The sums appear to relate to Machell's expenses during his Itinerary; see the letter from Gibson, schoolmaster, below, II.225.
[143] The page is not in Machell's hand; it is a letter written by Henry Wilson, school governor, descendant of Henry Wilson who gave money for the new school building.
[144] The contents of this letter also appear in Brown, *Edward Wilson of Nether Levens and his kin*, 55-57.
[145] Machell placed an asterisk here, referring to a margin note which is now obscured by the binding.
[146] He was writing in 1675.
[147] 11 November.
[148] 'A named penalty'.
[149] 30th year of Elizabeth I's reign, 1590-1591.

\ it / worth per annum fortie shillings and upwards to the use of the said Schoole master, as the deed kept in the said chest will shew, the old Schoole house being but a mean thatchd house. Mr Henry Wilson of Blacwell hall in London being borne in Kirkby Lonsdale and sometimes being a Scholler there, ~~and the said Henry Wilson made a small library in the Church of Kirkby Lonsdale over the vestry and gave some bookes~~ caused it to be taken downe and at his owne proper Costs erected the now new Schoole house. The same is two stories high: In the lower story are two large rooms devided, the East end thereof for the head master to teach in, the West end for the Usher,[150] for the maintainance and wages of which Usher in regard the whole former Rent and Revennues went only to the former grammar master, the said Mr Wilson by his last will and testament gave the consideration mony of 120^{ff} yearly to be at two payments to him that should be Usher with 120^{ff} principall,[which] together with other monies to pious uses are laid upon a part of the Demean lands belonging to Thurland Castle in the

[II.222]

parish of Tunstall and County of Lancaster as will appear by Deeds kept also in the chest of the Schoole evidences. And in the upper story of the said new Schoole house there are two very large rooms and divided with a convenient study distinct for the head master. And there are for the rooms both above and below for either place at the west end a faire free stone chimney and the whole schoole house is adorned with sutable free stone windows both above and below, and the whole roofe is covered with slate.

Alsoe for the encouragement of schollers to come to the said schoole there was given by the last will of Mr Thomas Wilson, a parson in Norfolk, ~~being~~ younger brother to the said Mr Henry Wilson, 200^{ff} to be layd upon land; the consideration whereof was to goe to the master and fellowes of Christs Colledge in Cambridge, to the use of three poore schollers in three Exhibitions at 5^{ff} per annum to each of those sc\h/ollers, which ~~scoll~~ schollers was to come from the said Schoole of Kirkby, and to be students in the said Christ Colledge, and the said schollers to have the same yearly payd them till they weer of standing to commence Master of Arts, if they soe long continued, which 200^{ff} was laid upon a mansion house and land in a place called Bulbanke near a towne called Wraton in the parish of Melling, County of Lancaster, as will appeare by the deeds in the chest of the Schoole Evidences.

{Exhib. Kendal}[151]

And alsoe Mr Henry Wilson by his last will and testament gave by way of rent-charge out of the tyth corne and graine arising within the Liberties of Farleton of the parish of Beathom and County of Westmorland the summ of thirtie five pounds yearly to be paid to seavn poore schollers, four of them to be sent out of the said free schoole of Kirkby Lonsdale and the other three out of the free schoole of Kendal and thus to be students in Queens Colledge in Oxford and the said schollers to be from the Counties of Westmorland or Cumberland as will appeare by the said will.

Alsoe the said Mr Henry Wilson ~~gave~~ made a small library in the Church of Kirkby over the Vestry and gave severall books.

And as for the names of the schoole masters; in my time were as followeth. Viz. they who teached in the old Schoole house where I had my learning was Mr James Redman ~~Clarke who was Curate under Mr Waterhouse~~.[152] And since the new Schoolhouse was erected after the decease of the said Mr Redman succeed one Mr Hodgson and after his decease one Mr John Leake until he removed to be vicar of Tunstall, and after him ~~succeed~~ succeded ~~one~~ Mr Henry Carr and after his decease Mr William Carr and after him Mr John Tatham and after his decease Mr Edward Bainbrigg and after his removeall into Ireland succeded Mr Francis Jackson and when he removd to be vicar of Warton after him succeded Mr Robert Garthwaite and when he removed to Newcastell, succeded Mr Robert Gardiner and after his resignation of it to the Governours there is elected one Mr Miles Farrar; and

[150] Usher: see the English Glossary.

[151] In Machell's hand.

[152] Note that Machell scored-through the final phrase, but see the following quotation from R.P. Brown in, 'The Vicars of Kirkby Lonsdale', *CW2*, 29 (1929), 177: 'Thomas Machell (MSS. ii, 221) preserves a letter from an aged correspondent in which it is stated, but doubtfully, that Mr. James Redman was this vicar's [Waterhouse's] curate.' NB, in the MS the relevant page is II.222.

after Mr Guy had resigned up his Usher place, the Governours elected one Thomas Atkinson to be Usher.
This narrative I have from Mr Richard Jackson parson of Whittington; and as for my uncles Henry Wilson and Thomas Wilson it is all according to their last wills which I have perused and compared.
Witness my hand
Hen: Wilson
I have put upon the file the original from Mr Jackson.

[v.] Barbon [Samuell Gibson, Schoolmaster]

[II.226]

To Mr Tho. Maychell att Kirkby-Thore neare Appleby Westm[r]land
To be left at Mrs Catherine Forths in Kendall
For the virtue of the well – send Qu[ery] – after the method for Witherslack in Bethom parish.[153]

[II.225]

Sir
To my promise on your request I have Endeavoured to acquire the pedigrees of Shutleworth in his Lordship of Barbon, formerly in the possession of J. Heighington of Holderness neare Hull; next Jno. Middleton of Middleton and from him to Judge Shutleworth for the sum of 1400[ll –] But further I rest in yours.
I have solicited diverse persons about aged persons, & finde but 2, viz / son to Sir Jiffrey Middleton aged 111, rocked in a Cradle before his death – John Garnett of Casterton one m[ile] from Kirkby – E. be. S.,[154] a prophessier,[155] aged 120, laid under a ~~Bed~~ Table all night – [his relatives] – supposeing him dead. Next morning revi[v]ed, got out of the house naked & ran [to] an old chapel St Cumes alias Comes[156] above a mile (& about ½ a mile) E.S.E. of K. & there was found with lifted up hands kneeling before the Alter & died within 3 days.
The reliques of an old chapel at Ternside a mile from Kirkby W.
Wegboure[157] well workes by Urin; disolveth the Stone & purgeth the Gravell i[n] the Blader; staineth wood, earth or stone a deep Orange.
Holme middow. Holme well cures the Itch, kills wormes within the bodys of men women & children, but not so strong in its taste & opporacon.
Mill Beck in Middleton runs as Heaven water devides, workes made on Each Side to keepe it[s] Course; A great Stone lying in Barbon dale in the High way to Dent with a perfect print of a Hors Shooe upon it. Some Prime Trees alias Prim & Juniper.[158]
Birds or fowles has none [but] which are common; not worth \ mentoning;[159] /
Barrick Hall late in the possession the ancient family of Manserghs, ancient as said before the Conquest. I [went] to Enquire for some coates of armes or other engraven worke but found none worth observaton.
Neeth Hall[160] formerly belonging the said Mansers; a great many white Fox gloves.

I shall not inlarge further Sir as being in hast in hopes these will finde safe returne & what you are awanting in our parts may assure [your] selfe in what I am Sir
Your humbly devoted
Sam Gibson
Barbon 5th August 92.

[153] This note is in Machell's hand.
[154] East by South.
[155] Prophesier: a Puritan preacher. *OED*.
[156] St Columba.
[157] 'Wegboure': unknown to this editor. Perhaps it is Borrowegan, near Kendal.
[158] Prim = privet: genus Ligustrum. *OED*.
[159] This word was written above another, now scored-through and illegible.
[160] Nether Hall?

Sir I desire your pardon being short in some things & not so full as intended; likewise of a Direcon' to you which I hope yo'le (att the receipt of these) be pleased to honoure me with –

[II.229][161]

{July 19, 1692} Barbon
The schoolmaster at the chaple there, Samuell Gibson, born in the Town, being about 24 years of age being at Chaipha in Asia 20m.[162] from Jerusalem, in 1687. Had these markes impressd & Tingd upon his Armes, as fair as they are herein expressd: for his safer {better} passage in his Travels amongst the Christians where ever he came and Testimony of his haveing bin there.

The figures were pricked out with a forked instrument like 2 needle points set in wood about ½ a quater of an Inch in length by the Impression with the woden printes, being wett & strewed \ pounced / over with Gunpowder beaten to dust as he doth imagin, & tyed up in a Rag. And after all Rub'd it over with som liquid matter (which he takes to be vinegar & Gunpowder but I rather thinke it som strong sort

[II.231][163]



Figure 2.8.15. Samuell Gibson's Christian Tattoos 1. *II.231.*

[II.230]

of Spirit as Aqua Fortis;[164] for it Stung Exceedingly: & the[y] did not touch it with their fingers but Rub'd it in with the Ends of the [instrument] wherein the needle points were set. It was don by a Nazarene[165] & caused his Armes to be very sore & swell exceedingly for 4 dayes after which the pain Abated & they heal'd of themselves.
They must be printed off [in my book] with Blew inke.[166]

[161] A piece of paper, 14cm x 20cm. In Machell's hand.
[162] The second numeral is blotted, making the distance unclear. The town appears to be Haifa, in Hebrew, Hefa, but named Caiphas by the Crusaders, who conquered it in 1100. The distance by road between the cities today is 94 modern miles: https://www.distancecalculator.net/from-jerusalem-to-haifa
[163] A piece of paper measuring 14cm x 20cm. See similar illustrations in Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.384A.
[164] Aqua Fortis: early scientific name of nitric acid, a powerful solvent and corrosive; a term also used of other powerful solvents. *OED*.
[165] Inhabitant or native of Nazareth.
[166] For more on these tattoos, see Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.384, II.384A.



Figure 2.8.16. Samuel Gibson's Christian Tattoos 2. II.231.

[II.205]

[Notes on Barbon]
{I suppose this Lordship [of Barbon] as it gave its name to the[m] so it was possesd by the family of the Babournes which was in being & in good reputation about the time of Richard II: for Richard de Bellingham grandchild of Robert and Christian de Burnishead marryed Ann the daughter of John de Barbourne & had isue Sir Robert Tu[n]sdel of Thurland Castle, the next neighbouring place to the Lordship of Barbon.}

[II.227]

Barbon Chap. In Lonsdale
1. Thre Water Budgets by the name of Parr Quartering 2 Barrs and a mullet, by the name of [Blank]
2. [Blank] 3. [Blank]
4. Par[r]. Quartering that with the Mullet in the 2nd. That with the cheveronells in the third. The 4th as the 1st.

[II.231]

Lizards – Black brown 4 or 5 inch at Wakebur fell – E. a Capella 2m.

[vi.] Middleton. Joseph Heblethwaite Senior, James Cragg Junior, superstito.[167]

[II.235]

Midleton \ Ch. / in Loansdale. Midleton Chapelry; One Entire Lordship.
1. Midleton Hall – Hawkin Hall. Bainbrig.
Bainbrig Rector of Clipston in Northamptonsh.[168] {Ætat 80ti}[169] fello of S.[170]

Over the Hall doer: Argent betwene 3 martletts a cheveron Sable, chargd – & with 3 ~~Bucks~~ Stags heads cabboshd Or – The Crist a Staggs head Errased Or.

The chapel was built by the Inhabitants \ upon ground given by Mr Xt. Bainbrig a minister; /{finishd in 1634 as by a stone † in the chapel; which was formerly on the East End of it having these figures}[171] & Indow'd with 100li or thereabouts, which yielded 8li per Annum Intrest and ~~about~~ 2 years \ after / Anno Domini 1635 it was Consecrated [by] John (Bridgeman) then Bishop of Chester,

[167] 'Surviving'. This heading appears on MS.II.241.
[168] Christopher Bainbridge, son of Edward Bainbridge of Long Marton. School: Kirkby Lonsdale. Christ's College, Cambridge from 1632; B.A. 1635-6; priested 1638; M.A. 1639; B.D. 1661; fellow 1637-44; ejected during Interregnum; vicar of Caldecote, Cambs. 1661. Rector of Clipston, Northants. 1667-99; d. 1699. CCED.
[169] Aged eighty.
[170] Fellow of [?].
[171] Figures not given.

die solis Xvij[0] Maij.[172] by the name of Capellæ Spiritus Sanctie;[173] reserveing to the Bishops of Chester the Nomination of a Prea[cher] to officiate therin {who also gave 40s towards the building thereof} & also 1s per Synodalibus et 1s 4 per Procurationibus[174] every Triennial Visitation – The original of which I saw in the [possession of] Mr John \ More / of Grimes[175] near the said chapel, with a Broad Seal appenda[n]t. {Anno Consecrationis suæ euj}[176] {per Ed. Russell Notary Public.}[177]
It was afterwards made a Buriing place by Bishop Wilkins about 20 year since.[178]

[II.237]

In Strange Gothick like letters yet lately don Sc. – A.D. 1674 – Upon a grave stone in Midleton Chapple in the Alye before the quire doore:
Sept. 19. 1674.

Here I remane and hith'ward do tende
All who theire span of dayes in Vertue spend
Tho –| Bain
mas –| brigg

[II.235]

{The Sallary was laid in Land being advanced 60 more} They pay Tithe in kind; all but Hay for which a Composition.



Figure 2.8.17. Margin sketch, 3cm x 1cm. Middleton Chapel [length]19; [breadth] 8. II.235.

[Middleton Chapelry]
It is bounded on the East with Dent in Sedber parish; on the S. with Barbon Chap[elry];[179] on the west with Killington \ Ch[apelry]; / on the Nor West with Firbanck \ Ch[apelry]; / & on the N. with Howgil Chaple[ry] in Sedber.
It [is] one Entire Lordship. They[180] are Generally freeholds. But appear at Court Baron ~~The~~ held of Midleton Hall which Holds of Kendal, & by Attainder of the Barron, came to the Crowne, & so The Lordship payes a Rent to the Crown. Midle[ton] Hall is the Manner House – where the Court is kept.

[172] 'On Sunday 17 May.' Bishop John Bridgeman (1577-1652) was bishop of Chester from 1619.
[173] 'By the name of the Chapel of the Holy Spirit.'
[174] '1s for synodals and 1s 4d for subsistence'.
[175] Grimes Hall.
[176] 'Dated in the year of his [the Bishop's] consecration the sixteenth.'
[177] [This original was] 'prepared through Ed. Russell, Notary Public'.
[178] John Wilkins (1614-1672), theologian, natural philosopher and a founder of the Royal Society, was bishop of Chester from 1668 to 1672. An anti-Laudian Churchman and parliamentarian, and effectively excluded from active participation in ecclesiastical politics after the Restoration (since he seemed a turncoat to all sides), Wilkins unhesitatingly accepted the Act of Uniformity in 1662 and tried to persuade moderate dissenters that it was in the best interests of the Church: J. Henry, 'Wilkins, John (1614-1672)'. *ODNB*.
[179] MS: 'It is bounded on the East with ~~Sedber~~ \ Dent in / Sedber parish; on the S. ~~with Tunsdal~~ \ ~~& Whittington~~ / ~~in Lancashire~~: with (~~Burton & Kendal~~) Barbon Chap[elry] ~~with Preston Chap in Burton & Hutton in Kendal~~.'
[180] The tenants.

[Middleton Hall]



Figure 2.8.18. Middleton Hall. II.241.

[II.242]

Midleton Hall on a fellside clad with wood. 3 rows of trees afore the door & a Parke above. Built castle like but ruinous.[181]

[II.241]

In the Dineing Roome W[ain]s[cot]



Figure 2.8.19. Middleton Hall. In the Dining Room wainscot. II.241.

[Notes]
[Coat 1] Argent & Sable – Midleton
[Coat 2] Midleton impaleing Lowther, Sc. Or, 6 anulets Sable
[Coat 3] [Midleton] Impaleing a quarterly [coat] In the Stn[182] a wooden escutcheon belonging to the chimney.
[Coat 4] On the Arch of the Hall chimney. Katherine 4 d[aughter] of W. Conyers of Marsk, w[ife] of Thomas Midleton de Aplegarth in Midleton.
5. John Mid[leton]
6. Sir Geffray[183]
7. Thomas Mid[leton]

Upon an old Wooden Tablet decayed:

[181] For Middleton Hall's history, see Garnett, 'Middleton', *Victoria History ... of the County of Westmorland, 1* (forthcoming).
[182] Unknown shortened word, possibly 'stone'.
[183] Pencilled letters here are illegible.

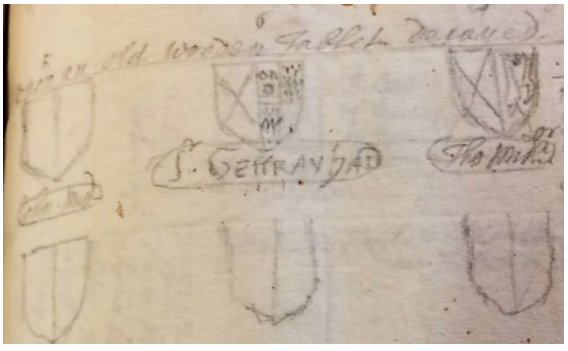


Figure 2.8.20. Dining Room Middleton Hall: Arms on a wooden tablet. II.241.

Hic iacet Katherina filia 4 Gulielmi Conyers de Marske Armigeri, Quæ uxor fuit Thomæ Middelton de Applegarthe, filij 2. Galfridi Middelton de Middelton Hall Equestris Ordinis, pro servitio suo fideli Illustrissimus ille Marchio de Northampton Dominus Par Eidem Thomæ Grangiam et | Tenementum illam de Applegarth Remunerabat […[Ano Dom 1569 […] Ætatis suæ 53 et iacet in (Ecc)[le]sia Parochiali de Prædicta Marske. [184]

[II.236]

[Hawkin Hall]

'A pretty new house call'd Hawking-hall … I have given you the platforme \ & manner of it.'[185]



Figure 2.8.21A. Elevation. Hawking Hall. II.236.

[184] 'Here lies Katherine, fourth daughter of William Conyers of Marske Esq., who was wife of Thomas Middleton of Applegarth the second son of Galfrid Middleton of Middleton Hall, Knight. For his faithful service the most excellent Marquis of Northampton Lord Par rewarded him with the said grange and tenement of Applegarth […] A.D. 1569 […] In the 53rd year of his age, and he lies in his parish church of Marske aforesaid.'

[185] The quotation is taken from Machell's Itinerary, Part 2, Ch.10, II.384.

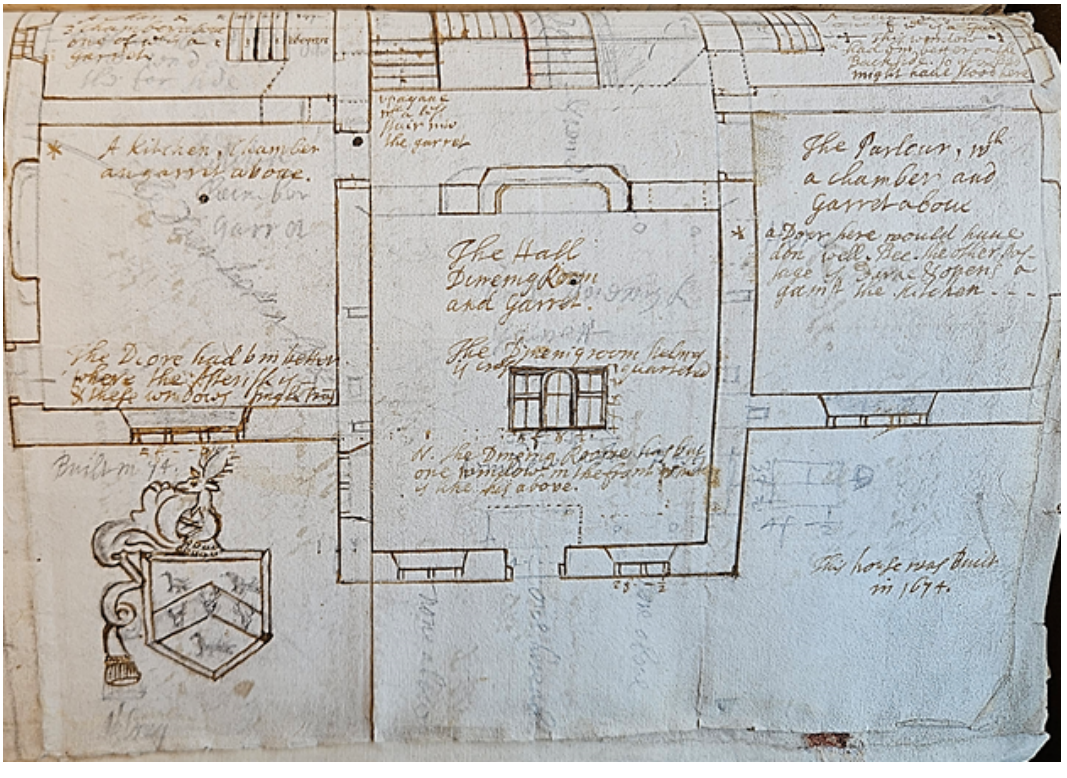


Figure 2.8.21B. Plan. Hawking Hall. II.236.

[Notes on the Plan above]

This house was built in 1674 {Set this front out ½ a foot}
A cellar & 3 chambers above one of which is a garret.
A kitchen chamber and garret above. The Dore [lower end left] had bin better where the Asterisk is & these windows single transom.
[Stairs] up agane with a less[er]stair into the garret.
The Hall, Dineing Room and Garret. N[ote] The Dineing room sieling is cross quartered. N[ote] the Dineing Roome has but one window in the front which is like this above: 5 feet & ½ long; 4 feet & ½ high.
A cellar & 3 chambers one of which is a Garret. This window had bin better on the Backside so that a Bed might have stood here.
The Parlour with a chamber and Garret above*. A door here would have done well bec[ause] the other passage is Darke & opens against the Kitchen.

[II.243]

[Middleton Family Pedigree]

Edward Midleton =
|
John Midleton =
3. John a Capt.[186] 2. William a Coll. 1. Edward Midleton = Bridgett d. of Binlos of Borwick in Lanc. |

= 2nd wife Joan Eld. Sis. of Sir G.M. of Leighton

d. Joan m. = John Lupton cordwinder	George	Char.	Will.	Edw.	Robt	Thom. ob. s. p. [childless]	Geofrey	1. John M. [see below]

1. John M = Mary Cole of Coate near Halton in Lancashire

Rob. Innupta [unmarried]	David Innupta	Edw. d. Sine Prole [childless]		Briget m. To Josua Heblethwate of Dent Yeoman	Mary m. to James Cragg of Dent Yeo.			
	d. Agnes m. to Rob. Cooke yeom.	3. Jos. 9	2. Ed. 12	1. John aet 18				

Isabell	Briget	Rebecca	Mary	Agnes	3. David 1.	2. James 5.	1. John æt 21

[Bainbrig of Hawkin Pedigree]

Dr. Bainbrig. Xtr Bainb[rig] 1st Benefactor to the chapel.		=	Widdo Moore	
	1. Edward B.	=	[?][187] d. of Mr Rich Barton Rector of M.	
Xtopher fellow of Xts Coll. Camb. who builded	1. Thomas = 2. Margaret d. of Arthur Dixon of Plu[m]gards by Kendal	=	1. [Blank] Robson of Edenall in Cumberland	
2. Alice	1. George		1. Edward	2. Xtpher

[186] Captain.
[187] Covered by a blot.

[II.239]

Doctor Bainbrig Master of Christs College in King Ch.1. Time; who maryed at 60 years of age & had 19 children. Borne at Hawkin.[188] {Tradition}[189]

Roger Moore Sergiant of Law, now of Holmhouse in Whitington parish, was borne at Bens Banke.[190]

And John More afore mentiond, who \ was / sisters son with the said Sergeant, being 64 years of Age tho an intelligent person & a man of great business: was never so many miles from home as he is years old.

Capt. John Midleton, a soldjer in the Low Countryes, was slane in the Service of K.C.1.[191]

And Collonel Will. his Brother was not slane in that Service.

{N[otes] G[eneral]}

~~Trees~~ Linwood (Tilia?) Lindenwood a sort of tree like the Plane Tree but the leave much less.[192]
Cherryes near Blackbeck {and at Barbon twixt Brigford & in Scarford}.
Rasberryes (vulgo – Hineberryes hic)[193] Cnoutberryes at Knoutberry hill – Knotberryes (forsan Chamæmorus).[194]
Midleton Deere Parke Disparkd about the year 1640 {gradually destroyd}.
Som Juniper but not sweet (which they call Savin).
Ewe – at Esheholme, but scarce enough.
Holly large & plentifull – Sparsin.[195]
Peets 3m. E. a Capella. Barkin Edge.
No Limestone none.
If all be gold that glisters – See Euerbeck N.E a Capella. 2 mile & ~~2~~[196]
Good Salmon all over Leun.
Store of Clean \ foul / marts all over the woods.
More [blank] wild cats than some Rats.[197]

[188] Thomas Bainbridge was the 12th Master of Christ's College, Cambridge, 1622-1646, see https://www.christs.cam.ac.uk/masters-christs-college-1505.
[189] The following note is derived from research by Christopher Gathorne, included by R.P. Brown in, 'Bainbrig of Hawkin in Middleton, Westmorland', *CW2*, 24 (1924), 134: 'Edward Bainbrig married Ann d. of Mr. Richard Burton Rector of M[arton] 1591-1641; … his father Christopher married "Widdo Moore"; and … his son Thomas' first wife was a Robson of Edenhall. To the name of Edward's son Christopher, Machell appends the remark "who builded". This ought to be conclusive that Hawkin was rebuilt, not by Edward's father but by Edward's son. Caution however seems necessary, for Machell describes the elder Christopher as Dr Bainbrig (which he was not), and the Edenhall marriage is not found in the register of that parish.'
[190] Bains Bank. A margin comment close to this text appears to be 'Tem. Will. 3'. As William III reigned from 1689 to 1702, this interpretation must be in error.
[191] KC1 = King Charles I. English soldiers fought in the Eighty Years' War (1568-1648), otherwise known as the 'Revolt of the Netherlands' against Spanish rule. See Anton van der Lem and Andy Brown, *Revolt in the Netherlands: the Eighty Years' War, 1568-1648*, E book (28 February 2019), 9781789140880.
[192] Linden trees are of the *Tilia* genus.
[193] 'Commonly called hineberries here'.
[194] The genus *Chamaemorus* includes the knotberry: see *Philosophical Transactions, Giving Some Accompt of the Present Undertakings, Studies and Labours in many considerable parts of the* world, eds John Martyn, James Allestry, Henry Oldenburg: Vol. 61, Part 1 (1771), 365.
[195] Sparsim: scattered; dispersed here and there.
[196] Machell also refers to 'read shining dust' above, see II.200.
[197] Unclear passage. Because Machell's distinctions between 's' and 't', and 'a' and 'o', are sometimes unclear, this sentence could equally read, 'more wild cats than tame rats.'

[II.252]

[vii.] [Gervase Benson][198]

Westm'land
Gervase Benson Esqs one of the justis of peace for the sayd County, to the Sheriffe of the sayd County & alsoe to all Bayliffes Constables Officers & Ministers of the publique peace and chiefly to the Constables of Brough & Helbecke within the sayd County greeting.
Forasmuch as Francis Blenkinsope and John Bragge have personally appeared before me at Killington in the County aforesaid and have found sufficient suretie for themselves and also for Thomas Blenkinsoppe younger & Mary Bragge wife of the sayd John Bragge.
That they the sayd Francis Blenkinsoppe John Bragge Thomas Blenkinsoppe younger & Mary Bragge shall well & truly keepe the Peace of the Commonwealth towards all and cheifely towards John Machell of Appulbye. And alsoe that they shall personally appeare before the justics of the peace at the next generall sessions of the peace to be holden for the said County. Therefore on the behalf of the keepers of the lybertie of England by authoritie of parliament I command you and every of you that you utterly forbeare & surcease to arrest, take, imprison or otherwise by any meanes (for the sayd occasion) to molest the sayd Francis Blenkinsoppe John Bragge Thomas Blenkinsoppe younger Mary Bragge and if you have (for the sayd occasion & none other) taken or imprisoned any of them that then you doe cause such person or persons to be deliverd and set at lybertie without further delay. Given at Killington aforesaid under my hand & seale the Third day of Aprill in the yeare of Our Lord 1652.
Ger: Benson.

[Machell's Notes: II.252]
[Query] of Mr Heblethwate; q. what G. Benson had to do there?[199]

[viii.] [Firbank. Killington. Joseph Farrer, Rob. Johnson.]

[II.245]

Firbanke Chapel in Lonesdale Parish
{Firbanke alias Firth Banke in a deed 1586.} {S. Farrer has seen it writ – Firthbanke alias Thure-banke}
{L 20? B. 7? 1 Bel} {L. 14 B. 6}[200]
The Chapl is calld St Martins Chaple; their Rushbearing on Whit Sunday. But the Antient \ ch[apel] stood] / in a close calld Chappel Garth (this being built by the Inhabitants of the same materials feched away by them because the chappelyard was clamed by som in Killington). Adjoyneing to which are 2 Close mentioned in their ancient Bounders (tho now clamed & enjoyd by Killington) calld Priestfields.
The Impropriation is in Trinity College who have Wool & Lamb in Kinde; (wooll unsen).[201]But neither Corne nor hay – but Meal money & (Hay Silver) as it rules in Kendal Market according to the

[198] Gervase Benson (d.1679), JP and sometime mayor of Kendal, whose nonconformist and political inclinations led him to invite the Lancashire parliamentarian forces to Kendal. He was known as 'Colonel Benson' in 1645 when he was in command of Kendal's local garrison. He had a house at Borrett (a farm between Brigflatts and the edge of Sedbergh). In his journal, George Fox, leader of the Quaker movement, described meeting Benson at Borrett in 1652, following Fox's vision of a large number of people waiting 'to be gathered' in South Westmorland. 'And the next day [6th June] I went to a Separate meeting [of people who had left the Established Church] at Justice Benson's: where the people was generally convinced [had embraced Quakerism]: & this was the place that I had seen a people coming forth in white raiment. A mighty meeting there was and is to this day, near Sedbergh, which I gathered in the name of Jesus.' Benson became a prominent English Quaker; his understanding of laws on tithes and oaths made him highly useful to Quakers on trial for non-compliance. See John L. Nickalls (ed.), *The Journal of George Fox* (London, 1975), 106; see also C. Phillips, 'Benson, Gervase (d. 1679), Quaker leader'. *ODNB*. The letter above (see *Figure 2.8.22*), was written just two months before Benson met George Fox.
[199] The query is in Machell's hand.
[200] The second measurement is written in pencil beneath the first.
[201] Possibly 'unseen'.

highest Rate, Saterday afore midsomer & Saterday [after], but the money not payable till Mich[aelmas] day.[202] This Lordship & Killington payes together the Rate of 6 Sc. & 5 Bushel oat-meal Winchester measure ~~which is to Bushell~~.[203] And of this, Firban[k] is only a third part. The hay silver is halfe to the Rector & halfe to Vicar; and these 2 being joyned together in their corne are therefore divided in their Hay Silver – so that the Vicar has for his halfe the Hay Silver of Killington & the Rector for his part, this of Firbanck {and this division goes through the parish according to such proportion as has bin anciently agreed upon.}

There is ~~House for~~ \ a Schoole house adjoneing. / The Chap~~lain~~ hath an endowment of iiii marke per Annum laid upon their Respective Tenements,[204] & there was a like proportion payd by Killington men as far as a place calld Walkergards – 4m.½ S. from this chaple. It is gatherd by the name of Chaple Sallary [and] gathered by the Chaplain whom they provide – the vicar approveing. They allow him 5^{li} more for Teaching, & the Chaple Stock, <u>being 5 nobles</u>. & Quarter pence as he can agree. {10^{li} – to use; Given as an Augment[ati]on to the Chaplaine by John Symson, Anno 1689; Anthony Ward 40s in 1691.}

It is bounded on the East with Sedber in Yorkeshire & divided from it by the River Leun; On the S. with Killington Chappelry – [divided] by Sever Beck; but they clame a piece within the beck where the Chappel [s]tood.
They Hold of the Crow[n] as the Lord of the M[anor].

[II.247]

<u>Firbanke Ch. in L.</u>
On the West [bounded] with \ Lamrig in / Grarig Chappelry divided by Galloway-gate from […][205] to Burton. On the North, with Dillaker in the said Chaplry divided by Dillaker [beck]. It is one Entire Lordship; with Cooperthwait adjoyneing unto it: which formerly ~~was~~ belongd to an abby – of Gervise as they thinke in – Yorkeshire.[206]

They were all customary tenants & Heriotable formerly \ & payed Boones & Services / but were purchased free by the respective Tenants; ~~But~~ of Edward Ward of Firbanke yeoman & Roger Dawson of Kendal, Draper, in 1586, 29 of Eliz, as by an original Deed I have seen of one Thomas Newbys {dat 20 Febrie XXIX of Eliz.}[207] wherein is Recited:
"That whereas Francis Vaughan of Sutton upon Derwent in the County of York Esqs, by his Endenture &c. bearing date XXX of August in the 26 of Queen Elizabeth,[208] & other Asurances in Law for 1000li. payd to him; Did convey unto the said party &c. forever the Lordship & hamlet of Firbank alias Firthebanke with all the Rights members & appurtenances in Firbank alias Firthb. within the County of W. & All their Messuages Tenements &c. then or late in the several Tenures [and] possessions of certain persons in the said Indenture named or their Assynes. And all <u>other</u> lands &c. which ~~the said~~ was his the said Francis Vaughan in Firbanke, as by the said Indenture Ap[peareth] the true Intent of which Indenture was – That the said Ward & Dawson their heires &c. should convey unto every [one of] the said Tenants & their heires & Assignes for ever (as aforesaid): Each their owne Tenements, together with an Equal part or portion of the moores wastes commons pastures perquisites & profits of Courtes, & of all other Privileges liberties & Franchases parcell of or belong unto the said Lordship proportionably: & accord to the Annual Rent of any such Messuage or Tenement." And accordingly, they were conveyed to the respective Tenants by the said partyes. And

[202] 29 September.
[203] A Winchester bushel was a measure of capacity used for corn, fruit, etc., containing four pecks or eight gallons. *OED*.
[204] A mark = two-thirds of a troy pound of pure silver or two-thirds of a pound sterling. 4 marks = £2 13s 4d. https://www.nottingham.ac.uk/manuscriptsandspecialcollections/researchguidance/weightsandmeasures/money
[205] A crossed-through, unclear place-name occurs here.
[206] Jervaulx.
[207] 20 February in Elizabeth's 29th regnal year would have been in 1587.
[208] 30 August in Elizabeth's 26th regnal year would have been in 1584.

in the End of the Deed is conveyed to every [tenant] the wood growing upon his own Tenement. {The King has Waif & Stray.}
{Ann Lady Knevet is concerned in the original grant. Farrer will send word.}[209]

[II.248]

Crock-principals so called.[210]

[II.249]

They hold of the King as the Lord of the Manner did, paying amongst them 7 Groates per Annum which is ~~by~~ 1[d] per house;[211] which Rent was formerly payd by the Lord.
Cowperthwate belongd to a Religiouse h[ouse]? & pay compos[ition for] Meal [tithe]
They appeard here before at Killington Hall.

{Lamrick [had] an old Tower in a place calld Fri[…][212] demolished a[bout] 10 years ago, a Capella 1m. S. It belongd Grarig – it was onely for a Parke house & for fawning[213] the deere.

There are 3 stones by Gallaway yeat on Firbanke Fell having crosses on them – calld by the Name of Goody-Cross*. The old Widdow[s] in memory were all calld Guddyes here – [Goody Cross stands] where Firbanke, Lamrig & Hutton Lordships meet.

No Buriing place here, but with leave they bury & pay the due to both Churches. & som at Kendal.

No Parke – Martes of both sortes.
Good salmon – as far as Rean[214] in Orton Parish in the River Leun; allso Trouts & Eales –
\ an[d] He[a]r of / Hawkes in Goody-Wood – while it was standing†.

Great store of More game – Black cock & Hen called Ore-gam - & more \ cockes, poutes, / Hens &c.
St \ Martins / Well – in Firbanke – kills keads.[215]
Som Holly & Box – large in gardines, alas none in the hedges.
Peat or Turfe – 1½ m. West.
A place calld Marle-pits – hard by the chapl within the bottom on the S. West side
A Well, at Party-haw – ¼ [m.] S. West a Capella – which petrifies moss – like Rotten free stone – & kills the grass. No limestone none. Blew Rag.
They have no manner house – But appere at Killing[ton] Hall which formerly ~~yet~~ to the Pickerings – After to the Vaughans – & now to the Tenants themselves.

[Machell's Notes: II.249]

*{forsan pro Goodwin}
†{40 year since.}

[209] One of the Farrers was acting as Machell's assistant and informant here.
[210] A crock/cruck: one of a pair of curved timbers forming, with other pairs, the framework of a house. *OED*.
[211] The groat was equivalent to 4d. It was in general circulation until 1662. See https://www.nottingham.ac.uk/manuscriptsandspecialcollections/researchguidance/weightsandmeasures/money.
[212] The paper has perished here.
[213] Fawning or Fownyng = birth of fawns; as in 1579 (Reg. Privy C. III. 173): 'During the present seasoun of fownyng of the deir.' *Dictionary of the Scots Language*. Online.
[214] Rayne.
[215] Sheep-lice: see the English Glossary.

[II.258][216]

[ix.] [Thomas Heblethwaite]

To Mr Thomas Machell Parson of KirkbyThure at Appulby or elsewhere with care
These
Present
Westm'land

[II.257][217]

Sir
I made enquiry of severall persons how this County of Westmorland boundered on the west of Yorkshire till it came to Lancashire but finding them to differ soe much in their accompts I could not tell what to make of them and therefore shall not trouble you therewith. As for the Consecration of Killington Chappell I cannot give you any further accompt thereof.

{Ad Killington}[218]
As for Killington Hall I finde that 28^0 Elizabeth [1585-1586] Francis Vaughan of Sutton upon Darwen Com Ebor Esq. did convay it cum per.[219] unto one Robert Waidson gent. & his heires & assigns and about five yeares after Mr Waidson convayed the same to Radcliffe Ashton of Preston in Amoundenes Com Lancaster & his heires & assigns.
And that Mr Ashton 15^0 Jacobi of England I & 50^0 of Scotland [1617-1618] convayed the same to Thomas Kitson senior of Warton Com Lancaster af[ores[aid] gent. & his heires which said Mr Kitson was my mothers father. And after the Decease of Thomas his Son by a settlement made by him the same discended & came to mee. And I am apt to believe about the same time the said Mr Vaughan sold all his tenements in Killington & Firbanke into fee simple. Sir I begg your pardon for giving you this trouble; the rest is the tender of my humble service to yourselfe and to all your friends that enquire after
Deare Sir
Your assured friend & servant
Thomas Heblethwaite
Killington 8^0 August 1692

[Machell's Notes: II.260]
This T. Heblethwaite (for giveing Sir Joh[n] Lowther a double vote against Sir \ Xtopher / Musgrave) was made Justice of P[eace] through his Intres[t] 1696.
[Note in a later hand]
(which quashed all his merit with T.M.)[220]

[II.253]

[x.] [John Heblethwate and Joseph Farrer]

Killinton Chapel in Lonesdal 6m. N. ab Ecclesia {l. 20. b. 6: 2 little B[ells.]}
{Mr Slater Chaplaine.[221] John Jackson schoolmaster: 20s per Annum & 1s per quarter & meat house per house} {Sallary of the chapel about 19 li per Annum charged proportionably upon their Estates & is immemorial and out of 100^{li} chapel stock.}
{Mr J. Heblethwate is to informe of fellowships or exhib[itions] given by the Heblethwates.}

[216] A wax-sealed paper, the reverse page of the letter on II.257.
[217] This page consists of a letter written by Thomas Hebblethwaite, with later comments written by Machell and William Nicolson.
[218] In Machell's hand.
[219] Shortened Latin form: 'with its appurtenances'.
[220] This later bracketed remark is in a hand very similar to that of William Nicolson.
[221] William Slater is recorded as chaplain of Killington Chapel in 1712. CCED (Online records here are sparse).



Figure 2.8.22. Killington Chapel. II.253.

This Chapl (if wee may conjecture from the Rushbearing which was formerly us'd) is dedicated to the Service of God by the name of St James. In the East end thereof in the 1^{t} light is this coat of Armes. Marked – (1.)



Figure 2.8.23. Killington Chapel. 'Arms marked (1.)'. II.253.

One Walker & his wife. Both of them buried under one stone at the East of the chapl.
'James | Walker and | Mabil his | wife | strange yet true to hear | They lived together either of them, (about) 100 year. – 1637.'

JAMES WALKER & MABIL HIS WIFE
THESE WORDS ARE TRUE YET STRANGE TO HEAR
THEY LIVED EITHER OF THEM 100 YEAR 1637[222]

They pay Meal Silver for their Tithe Corne: & wool & lamb in kinde to the College, or their farmers. But no \ Tithe / hay. The rest of their Tithes are payd in kinde to the Vicar of Kirkby.

It is bounded on the East with Sedber Parish, & part of Midleton chappelry: on the S. with Midleton & Kirkby: On the N. with Firbanke \ Chaple: / & on the West with Old Hutton in Kendal.
It is one entire Lordship & consisted of freehold & customary Tenants. But those that were customary excepting ~~som few~~ (one which Holds of Mr Thomas Heblethwate) are all purchas'd free of one Mr Vaughan Lord of the Manner? paying only 1^{d} per house for their Quit Rent due to the Crown – {fine Cert. no boones nor service} They have nothing to doe with the Marq[ess] & Rich[mo]nd foes but hold of the Crown: & have no Court kept.

[II.333]

{Killington}
A man of the Bap[tist] ch[urch] that ever I mett with of that inployment, amongst his neighboures injurious one to them in this: that he does not marry, that they may have more of so good a Breede.

[Killington Hall]

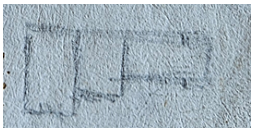


Figure 2.8.24. Sketch plan of Killington Hall. II.253.

The mannerhouse is Killing\ton Hall, ~~at~~ near the W. End of which / an ancient Tower house & much decayed, but is now a[t] Repars by the said Mr Heblethwate the owner of it.

[222] Written in the left-hand margin. The epitaph is repeated verbatim as a note on MS. II.254.

[Arms in the Hall]
2. Over the \ 2nd / Garret window in the Advancd part of the Hall



Figure 2.8.25. Killington Hall garret window. II.253.



Figure 2.8.26. Killington Hall. 'Over the hall door now a window'. II.253.

{3. Over the hall doore now a window, 3 Chevins,[223] by the name of Kitson, 3 fishes Argent on a ch[ief] Or, a Lyon Rampant Sab[le] Inter 2 ograses[224] charged with 2 Anchors Or: whence the colours of this other may be set.}[225]

[Land at] Killington – W. a Capella adjoyneing to the Hall, has had Deere in it as appears by the Leapes, but has not bin stock'd in the memory of man. There martes of both sortes, Broks. There is another called Stone Parke; both which belongs to Mr Heblethwate.
Store of more game, as Black Cocks, More Cocks & Partridges \ & gray hens. /
Lilly Tarne – 1m. ¼ N. a Capella. l[ength] 200 – b[readth] as much[226] – hath Trout Pike & Eal, but not so big as Mr Heblethwate['s] the ~~owner of it~~. the Informer \ testify. /
Lang Tarne – 1m. ¼ W. l[ength] 11 score – b[readth] – about 6 Sc[ore], affords the like; & belongs to him; & [is in] the Lordship of Old Hutton.
The Hall-beck which runns by the Hall on the S. End therof & thence takes its name, springs on Killington Fell a Capella 1m. N. & Runns through Killington by the Hall & Chapel. & discharges itselfe ½ a mile into the River Leun above Julian Ford S. East a Capella.[227]

[II.255]

Holly – good store in Killinton Parke. But few orchards. Wineberryes – Crône berryes (a white berry speckled with browne & read like a magpies eggs, in shape & colour, but no bigger than a wood strawberry; they grow on small stalkes like bent & are good to preserve).
On the mosses – Raspberryes every[where] Few bleab[erryes] Strawberryes plenty.
Peate or Turfe plenty – within a mile W. on Killington Common. No lime stone! Blew Raggstone for w[orking] – all over Kirkby Lonsdale Parish.[228]

[223] Chevin: a fish, the chub. *OED*.
[224] Ogress: 'a sable roundle', A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), 151.
[225] This margin material has been overwritten in ink; the last word is unsafe.
[226] Length and breadth, each 200 yards.
[227] The bottom left-hand margin contains information written in pencil, which begins 'Richard' but is highly blurred and therefore illegible.
[228] MS: 'KLP'.

{August 20. 1692.}
The Man'r was in the name of Vaughan about 80 years since – & was sold – Ut Supra – to the Tenency.[229] The Royalty remaned in the Crow[n]. Demane & manorhouse was sold to Mr Ashton of Cuerden in Com. Lanc; from the Ashtons to Mr Thomas Kitson of Warton in Lanc. \ above / 70 year agoe. In which name it remaned till of Late that Thomas Kitson son of Thomas, the purchaser conveyed it by deed – to feofees in Trust for the use of Mr T. Heblethwate \ his sisters / son {?} the present proprietor. Of which he send me a particular account.
{Firbank was purchased 2 yeares afore this [sale], by which the date may be found} {Jos. Farrer says it was before that in the Pickerings.}

Pedegre of Heblethwate
{Warton?}

Thomas Kitson of Killington purchaser	=	Elizabeth Croft						
1. Thomas Kitson obijt sine prole	=	Lucy \ d. of John / Labourn Esq	Jane	=	Robert Midleton of Leighton a younger brother of Sir George	Elizabeth Kitson	=	Robert Heblethwate of Killington
							|	
1. Thomas Heblethwate to whome Thomas his unkle conveyed the Estate	2. Henry	3. John	Robert	James	6 [Blank]	1. Ann	3. Dorithy	2. Elizabeth

[II.256]

[Machell's Notes: II.256]
Pickatree.[230] Black head, back; Tales wings of same colour; speckld with 3 yal[low] str[ipes] – neck & thighs read; Belly yellowish.

[II.261]

[xi.] [Information provided by an unknown informant]

Hutton Roof Chapelry in Kirkby Lonsdale Parish[231]
{Chap. L. 13, B. 6. Never had a bell. Indifferent Repare. Mr Giles Baly Chaplain 16 years here}
It was builded at the cost of the Lordship Anno 1610; as appeares by a stone on the Top of the E. End of the said Chapel on the outside with those figures upon it. And is supposed to bear the name of St James his Chapl from their Rush bearing about that time.

[229] Tenantry.
[230] A pickatree is a woodpecker. From its description here, Machell may well be describing the Great Spotted Woodpecker.
[231] MS: 'Hutton Roof Chapelry in Lonsdale Parish Hutton Roof Chapel in Kirkby Parish.'



Figure 2.8.27. Hutton Roof Chapel. II.261.

There is no Dwelling House belonging to it. But a salary of iiij per Annum,[232] begun by the Town at the Consecration & augmented to the said sum by som of the Inhabitants by their lasts Wills & Testaments. Which is now in a Stock called the Sallary put out by feofees – Sc. Edward Man, Edward Burrow, Thomas Loansdal & John Green; & their Heires successively. The Town provides [the chaplain] ~~and~~ & the Vicar \ has the /[233] Approbation upon any vacancy.

Corne is here payd in kinde to Trinity Colledge in Cambridge, or to their Leaser Sir Thomas Strickland or his Assigne. And the hay is payable in kinde, but they compound for about 6d or 8[d] an Acre as they can agree, {Mr Hoile med som pay 12d}[234] & halfe of the hay is due to the college & halfe to the Vicker. Wool & Lamb in kinde to the College but other small Tithes are all due to the Vicar. {The said informant, sed q.}[235]

This Chappel[ry] is Bounded on the East with Kirkby Lordship; on the \ South / Lancashire (as in the Generall Bounder); On the West \ with / Burton (from the Heap of Stones at Plover lands to the Standing Steän; \ thence to the Brig at Wood Yeat Green not far from Cow Brow'; / On North with Lupton in Kirkby [parish], from which tis divided ~~from standing stean~~ by Lupton Beck.
It is now esteemd but ½ of a Lordship as joyn'd with Casterton beyond Leun. But a Court was formerly kept in this place; & they never \ of old / appeard at Casterton.
Divers sortes soyle but mostly lime stone.
{Names of place. Newbigin (6.)[236] a Capella ½ m. NW; Winyeats (4.)[237] W. a Capella ½ m.
Hootton R (20.)}[238]
{Barre-heams at Lupton – Bar-hims at Kendal– what wee call Barghhams.}[239]

[II.238]

Bind-weed leavs bruised & applyed with a Clout[240] will take away the pain [informant] Baly.[241]

[II.263]

Hutton Roof Chap. in Lonesd.
There is a place called the Parke {onely slatt hedg'd}[242] and an \ obscure / House called Park-House: {a Capella ¼ S.} which is supposed to have bin the Demane \ if there was any / which lately belongd

[232] No denomination given.
[233] These words have been placed above three other words, all scored through and illegible.
[234] Henry Hoyle appears to have been notoriously venal. According to John F. Curwen: 'in 1675 Thomas Moore, of Hutton Roofe and Dorothy Middleton of Lupton, were prosecuted in the Bishop's Court at Richmond, by Henry Hoyle, priest of K. Lonsdale for small tithes, and in the latter end of the year were cast into prison by a writ de Excommunicato capiendo where they remained till the priest died, after whose death (in 1676) they were kept in prison by John Newton of K. Lonsdale, the priest's proctor, till he also died, and then they were set at liberty after four years and seven months imprisonment'. John F. Curwen (ed.), *Records Relating To the Barony of Kendale, III*, CWAAS Record Series 6 (Kendal, 1926), 278-91.
[235] 'But query this informant's information.'
[236] 6 families.
[237] 4 families.
[238] 20 families.
[239] Bargham: collar of a working horse. *OED*. Machell notes its different pronunciations in Lupton and Kendal.
[240] Cloth.
[241] See II.261: Giles Baly, chaplain of Hutton Roof.
[242] This word is unclear; it might be 'slatt': made either of hurdles or slats of wood (*OED*), but it could be an abbreviation of some other word.

to Sir T. Preston of Preston and Man[or] which they say* \ now / belong to the Lord Montgomery or the Lord Clifford by marriage of his daughters†.
Martes of both sortes, Badgers, & Foxes too many, wild cates – Partridge.
Large Laurel Tree in the House calld the Haw – formerly ~~Mr~~ Captaine Mans & his ancestors, but sold by him to one Bateman who resold it to Mr Thomas Cole of Coate near Halton in Com. Lanc.
Fuel scarce, Flaws[243] – ¼ S. a Capella,[244] on the Common.
Plenty of Lime al over the Lordship; no Blew Ragg. Whiteish brown free stone; good store {½ S a Capella} {Sc. on the Common} Also Gri[n]dstones & flags at the same place.
They tried for Cole in Mr Coles lands S.E. a Capella ¼ m.

[Storth]
There is a place calld Storthe[245] ½ m. a Capella N.E. payes no Tithe.
There are som Customary Estates in the Town which lye in parcells in severall mens hand. But Generallity bough[t] themselves free a long time since, even beyond memory – But of whom or when is not knowne but they have heard of a Court.
The Kings Balif takes Waif & Stray – And they pay a Quit Rent unto the Crow[n] as the Chief Lord thereof. They have no Lord now but The Queen & themselves.

[Machell's Notes: II.263]

*{?}
†{q. which?}
{Park-House is thatched}

[II.233]

[xii.] [Machell's Further Queries of his Informants]

Further q[ueries] in K. Lonsdal Parish.
The Bounder of it, & that side of the Barony from the Holmwater foote.
Who bought Underley of Apple Garths – & who Wilson bough[t] of

Midleton.
How the Tenents hold in freedom yet keep a C[ourt]; in whose n[ame] now called?
how Endowed – the Chap[el] l. b.[246] – by whom built.
Armes at the Hall

\ Lord[ship of] / Firbank \ Chapel / If anciently a Chaple alias to which [chapelry] they belong
If an Hall or have Steed[247]
Free or Customary. Who Lord?
Who owes & how Rigmadon Hall[248] a manner house or freehold only?
Nether Hall
Hegham Hall?

The Lord of Mansergh? Tenent free or Customary.
1. q[uery] of a Chaple \ l. b. / Encl. &c.
2. Query if Carus Arms be a cheveron Argent ch[arged] with 3 Mul[lets] G[ules] in Azure.
3. The hall or Manner house.
4. Who Lord & how poss[esse]d.

[243] Flaws. The name once given to thin layers of heath cut for fuel: *Yorkshire Dictionary*. Online. The *OED* gives, 'a flaw of peats': the quantity got in a season. *OED*.
[244] MS: 'a Capel ¼ S. a Capella.'
[245] Unclear word.
[246] Length, breadth.
[247] Homestead.
[248] 'Who owes [suit of court] and how Rigmaden h[olds]. A manor house or freehold only?'

[II.234B][249]

Q[uery] of M. Moore[250]
The meaning & difference of Marquess & Richmond f[ees].
Why do you call it a Foefar[m] Rent?
How this T[own] is situated si in Medio Vallis de Loan.[251]
If the Lord have the Liberty of Waife & Strays.
The Suggestion for having a chaple.
The Salvo Jure. in Ecclesiæ how Express'd? & Read \ a / allou[d][252]
Pick lock.
Whose Barbon before the Midletons.
Colonel Brigs of Burrowby.[253]
Barbon Beck springs at the head of Barbondal in Wakeber & Berkin fells a Capella 3 miles N. by E. & Runs downe twixt the Parke & Spring till it coms on the N. of Bar[…][254] near which dist[ance][255] W. it is lost in Leun.

[II.218]

[Tithes]
{Hay.}[256] The Vicar has some Tithe Hay in Kinde in Keastwick & Underley, & \ ½ ~~part~~ / of Hutton Roofe – & som hay money ~~Sc. 10 groats~~ in every Hamlet – The Impropriator has the rest.
{The Tithe Corne.} The Tithe Corne & meal money[257] \ goes / all to the coll[ege].[258]
{Wool.} Wool & som lamb in kinde to the Impropriator. Are Piggs?

[249] II.234B is a scrap page, 8cm x 18½cm; its text comprises queries added on several occasions, as seen in the colours of the ink used.
[250] Possibly John Moore, see II.239.
[251] 'If in the middle of the Lune Valley'.
[252] 'Saving the parish church's right: how expressed and read aloud?'
[253] Colonel Edward Briggs, commander of the Lonsdale Trainbands during the Civil Wars, lived at Burrow Hall. His children's baptisms are recorded at Tunstall church from 1651 to 1663. See W.H. Chippindall, 'The Tatham families of Burrow, Tunstall, Cantsfield and Lowfield', *CW2*, 33 (1933), 98-112, at 98-99.
[254] Perished.
[255] The next word is too blotted to understand.
[256] Begins with illegible pencilled comments, partly obscured by the binding.
[257] Hay-money and meal-money: see the English Glossary.
[258] Trinity College, Cambridge.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 9. Parish of Windermere]

[II.302A]

Kendal. Windermere Parish

[II.304]

{Referr Hither my Itinerary for description of Places}[1]

The Parish of Windermer is Divided into

1. Precincts Peculiar to the Parish Church wherein ~~are~~ is	St Martines Church}	Bowness Orrest head Under Milbeck Aplethwate now since the dissecration of St K[atherine's] Ch[apel]	Church, Parsonage, School: [all] in Bowness. Under Melock Brant Fel Old Field Lickbarrow Thornburtt Lindath Storrs
2. The Precincts Peculiar to the several Chapelryes	St Maryes Chapl}	The Lady Holm which I take for an hermitage only. Said to be in Clavegarth Parke tho in Windermer Water	Are returned
	St Katherine Chap.}	Aplethwate Calv-garth But both now belong to St Martin Ch[urch]	Langholm 3. Ladyholm 2. Windermer Water 3. Aplethwate 4. Calv-garth[2] 1. Greene
	Jesus Chapl}	The Vill. of Troutbeck Part of Orrest	Blumen Chapel School Parkehouse Dod moss Spyehow Wandale Raise Lowick how Old Parke Battlehow
	Part of Amb[le]side Chappelry below the stock is in this Parish. And all Ambleside is in This Lordship – But not in this parish. Ergo Treat of it here as a Lordship & There Too as a Chap[elry]		Ambleside Borhanes See the latter end of Gresmer

[II.306]

Windermere [Notes]
{N.B. See my Itinerarium for Descent.}
{1. Undermilbeck f[amiles] 17.
2. Applethwate f[amilies] 60 & Lime~~thwate~~ fit (no Lime but 4 or 5 houses.
3. Troutbeck f[amilies] 47.
4. Ambleside below the stock (i.e. The Bridge) f[amilies] 43.

[1] Machell here refers the reader to his Itinerary, see Part 2, Ch.10.
[2] Here, the MS continues, '~~Langholm & fish fowle~~.'

Note. There is in the Bottom of W[estmorland], Winder & Windermer, wath: q. why so called.[3]
Note. Sunningday.}

[II.95][4]

[Church and Tithes]
Windermer (parish church) T.M.
N.W. by West: Mr Wilson.

[II.306]

{[Church is] L. 30 – & steeple 5. Broad 20. Bells 3 – & a Clock. Organ, Clerk Salary.}

{§ Comput[us]-Pascalis}[5]
{Stiles,[6] Hort.,[7] & Cerev farr[8] tantqua[n]t oblat. 1d. ob;[9] lac. (neuk) 1d.[10] Stript abs ½ a calf 1s. 6d;[11] & Arr. 1d;[12] Apes[13] 1d under nu[mber] 6. ½ a cast at 5, for which somes is groates sometimes 3s. Has bin Tythe pullits 1d = under number; over 1d or 2 [...]}[14]

[II.311]

Item. Eggs – at Easter for every hen 2; every chick 1 egg; Every cock 1; & for tithe \ of / chick 1d.[15]

[II.306]

[Composing the Narrative relating to Windermere Parish]

{N.B. Memorandum – when I compose – to begin with places nearest the church & E. Sc.1. Bowness &c. 2. Undermilbeck. 3. St Catherines. 4. Troutbeck. 5. Ambleside. And so enter upon Gresmer. And see my Itinerary.}

[Notes for the Narrative, divided into Sections]

{§1. Name}
The Parish of Windermere (anciently call'd Winnandemere) takes its name from a great mear or lake att the south \ west side / ~~end~~ of the Parish. It is in the Diocess of Chester & in Kendal-ward.[16]
1. Speake of the mere \ or rather \ in Aplethwate, / the parish by it. /

{§2. Boundes}
It is bounded on the East with Kentmer (a dale in the Parish of Kendal) from which tis divided by the Ridge of the mountaine called Blewgill-head; & with the Top of Pike-of-Yoake & the Top of the Hight of Garburne-mosse.[17] & so on South-east by the Wall of Kentmere Parke. On the west with the Parish of Hawkside[18] \ in Lancashire / from which tis divided by the far side of Windermer-water, so

[3] Winder is in Barton parish; Winderwath is in Brougham. A.H. Smith quotes alternative meanings. High Winder = 'wind-swept shieling, one offering shelter from the wind'; Winderwath = 'Vinand's ford' (the ford would have been one across the Eden); Windermere = 'Vinand's lake'. See *Westmorland Place-Names*; see also Smith, *Place-Names 1*, 18.
[4] Also numbered p.35.
[5] 'Easter Reckonings'; see Grasmere Easter Offerings, Part 2, Ch.6, II.124.
[6] Stile-boot, see Grasmere Easter offerings, Part 2, Ch.6, II.124.
[7] Garden produce.
[8] These two Latin words are unclear. Machell was possibly referring to ale and corn.
[9] 'Just as an oblation of 1½d.'
[10] 'Milk from a newly calved cow.'
[11] 'Stript': to extract (the milk from a cow's udder). *OED*. Thus, half the milk stripped from a cow with one calf. Mary Armitt referred to a 'strip-milked cow, or stripper' as one that is nearly dry: M.L. Armitt, 'Ambleside Town and Chapel: some contributions towards their History', *CW2*, 6 (1906), 38.
[12] 'Arr' could be interpreted as a shortened form of the Latin word 'arrergium', meaning 'arrears', but this does not sit comfortably in the context. The precise meaning is unknown to this editor.
[13] 'Bees'.
[14] A word or symbol here is unclear; the whole Easter-offerings section has been crammed into a margin.
[15] This sentence has been scored through. Compare with a similar scored-through sentence on II.306, below.
[16] An interlineated phrase here possibly offers, '1t the bounder', but the words are faint.
[17] MS: '& so on south-east ~~through the midst of~~ \ by the Wall of Kentmere Parke ~~so on southwards~~.'
[18] Hawkshead.

that the whole lake is within this Parish \ & the county of W[estmorland.] / {The oblong Figure.}[19] On the North with \ Grasmere from which tis divided by / the River which Runns under Stock-bridge through Ambleside Towne. On the South with \ Cartmel fell from which it is divided by the Bounder sike from the place where it comes into Winstars; thence to Crooke in Kendal-parish, from which tis divided by Gilpin-beck.

[II.306]

It conteins in Lenth from Gilpen-beck bridge in the South to Stockbrige in A[m]bleside \ in the / North \ about / 6 miles. And in Bredth from the sand-bed on Furness Fell side in the West to Garburne moss in the East – 5 miles. In circumference about 26 miles. ~~query not counting~~ \ Besides 5 miles of water which shoots down \ in a direct line / betwixt the 2 parishes of Hawkside & Cartmel in the county of Lanc[a]ste[r] which belongs to this parish.

{§3. Soyle}
It is generaly ~~a very~~ \ mountainouse except upon the \ S. East / banke of Windermer. / ~~Good soyle for corne & Hay &c~~. & good pasture, being mostly a Redish \ black / mould but somwhat sandy near the Lake; & is pretty well wooded; They Generally burne ~~peat &~~ wood, & peat of \ the latter of / which they have great plenty, within the parish.

{§4. Rush bearing}[20]
On St James day[21] the young people of the parish use to bring Rushes to straw the church withal, in white sheets with flores & garlands; & formerly they used sommerings or sommer Games; since King Charles the 1[t] came to his crowne[22] there was a great contest betwixt Aplethwate & Under milbeck (2 hamletts in this parish) which should outvy one another in Garlands & sommer rods \ which are long polls like fishing rod Butts{as high as the church adorned with floores & painted figures}there being an 100 or above \ in show / on each side, with all sorts of pastime, musique & dancing.

[II.307]

[Windermere Church]

{§3.[23] Presentation}
This Church was formerly a Chapel ~~Presentative~~ Appendant to the Great Church of Kendal to which it payes [Blank] per Annum. By vertue \ where / of (with the consent of the Bishop & Patrone, as I suppose, of the vicar of Kendal, to whom it is yearly payd to this day) it became Presentative. In the 49. of Edward 3. [1375-76] I finde that Johanna Late wife & Relict of John de Coupeland, dyed seised ~~there~~ of \ the Advowsan thereof / for the Terme of her life, by the name of Capella de Gresmer – The Reversion being in Ingelram de Coucy & Isabel his wife \ who was the Kings daughter / by grant from the King, and therein it is Taxed at 5[li] per Annum. or ~~Cl~~s.[24]

{§4. Ratio Nominus Kirkeby}[25]
I believe that of Old, this Barony of Kendall especially this more northern Part, was mostly forrest & not much inhabited. That in the most populous & plentifull partes of the said Barony, Churches were Builded, ~~And~~ \ Sc. Kendal & Kirkby; / that after this ~~their Builded~~ \ when / the People began to Build near ~~unto~~ them, & therefore the Rather, ~~because~~ Because That Markats were anciently kept in the Church Yards, \ Now / such Places \ as these / they commonly called \ by the names / Kirkebyes – i.e. Building near & about the churches: whence Kirkby in Kentdale & Kirkby in Loansdale. The former of which had a large precinct.[26]

[19] Here, Machell appears to refer to his map of Lake Windermere on II.313, below.
[20] A pencilled note here reads, 'Ded[ication] Gen[eral] Custom].'
[21] 25 July.
[22] In 1625.
[23] The section numbering repeats the numbering above.
[24] Transcribed as seen. £5 per annum = 100s.
[25] 'Reason for the place-name Kirkeby.'
[26] Smith gives the meaning as follows: 'village with a church = kirkju-bȳr. Like Kendal (that is, Kirkby Kendal) and Kirkby Stephen, this place was the head of a large ecclesiastical parish. The affix is the name of the valley e.g. Lonsdale.' See *Westmorland Place-Names*.

{Note 5. How Chapels became Rectoryes}
Afterwardes, as the Parish grew populouse & people began to spread[27] themselves, They for their Convenience Builded Chappels of Ease – of which Those that were the farthest Remote, Sc. This of Windermer (& the other of Gresmer); compounded with the Incumbent of Kendall, to Take the cure of soules upon them, and for a certaine Annuall Rent in Lew of all Tythes, to becom a distinct, though not an Independent Rectorye. And now these are the onely Rectoryes left in the Barony, The Church of Kendal on which they Depend being a Viccaray onely.
Inq. Ex bundello Eschaetor, de isto anno N^{0}. 20. hujus copia est penes Danielem Fleming de Ridel Militem.[28]

[II. 308][29]

{Windermere Church. [Arms, Stained Glass and Inscriptions]}



Figure 2.9.1. Windermere Church. II.308.

{Long 30 & steple 5. Broad 20. 3 Bells & a Clock. & Organ formerly. Q. organist salary.}

[Windows][30]
{3 windows of 5 lights & 6 above of 3 lights.}[31]

{N[ote] In the Upper Lights}
In the High Quier window is the Passion of Our Saviour with St George, St Mary, S. [Blank] & St Katherine & the C[oats] of Armes in the second upper light.

[27] MS: 'speard'.
[28] 'Inquire of Escheators bundle no. 20 of that year [presumably 49 Edward 3, as seen earlier on the page], a copy of which is at the house of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal, Knight.'
[29] A page slightly smaller than most (3cm x 18cm). At the top left is the pencilled phrase, 'ad p.2'.
[30] For the windows, see *N&BI*, 178.
[31] Text written in ink has been superimposed on a pencilled note; most of the pencilled text is therefore illegible.



Figure 2.9.2. Windermere Church. Arms in the upper lights. II.308.

In the Second Upper Light.
Coat B: Ground A[rgent] bend Gules {B. Ursick of Conyston at 3 lights and so these perhaps.}
Coat C: Ground A[rgent] and Sable.
Coat D: Dexter half, ground Gules fret A[rgent]; Sinister half, ground A[rgent] fleur-de-lys Gules.

In the Third Upper Light.
Coat E: Ground Sable fret A[rgent.]
N.B. [Coat] F. is parted per Pale: 1. Argent [blank] 2 Barrs, & a [Blank] in Dexter Point Gules = Impaleing G[ules] 6 (squirrells as I guess) Or \ ra[m]pant[32] / Argent.
H. Is Quarterly First \ & Third / Barry of six Argent and Azure, 3 [annulets] in chiefe Gules. The second & fourth I know not what. But it appears to be Bendy of six Or & Gules a Ly[on] Or Ra[mpant] Argent.
N[ote] ad H.
I sent up the schoolmaster Thomas Hob to view these Armes nearly by the Help of a Ladder; & Hee sayes the second & 3 Quarters are 6[33] Gules, but it appears to the ey at a Distance a Lyon Rampant Sable.
In the Fifth Upper Light
I. is the Royal Arms with a file or 3 Labels Argent writ about in Text with Hon y Soit &c.[34]
L. is a Quarterly Coate: The 1[t] & 4[th] as that marked A. The 2[nd] & 3 is Argent 2 Barrs, & 3 a[nnulets] alias ♦[35] G[ules].}

[32] This abbreviated word is unclear.
[33] Here, Machell has drawn a symbol resembling an annulet.
[34] 'Honi soit qui mal y pense': shame be on him who thinks evil of it, is the motto of the Order of the Garter. Machell did not mention Coat K. which, taken from the Figure, might be written as, 'K. has a cross saltire engrailed Sable charged with a mullet of 5 points.'
[35] Lozenges.

At the Low End of the Longer lights
M. is Quarterly. The first and fourth ~~the same with that marked C. being~~ Sable 3 Lyons Ramp[ant] Argent; The 2nd and 3rd the same with that marked C.[36]
P. Parted per pale. Or & Vert a Lyon Rampant Gules, over all a chief Azure. S. the same agane.[37]
T. The same with the Coate impald at D.
V. an Escalop Argent in a piece of glass inversed, which may seem to have bin a partes of the Stricklands of Sisargh broke & misplaced: being now where the Head of the Crucifix has bin.

In the South Ile Quire on the S. Side[38]



Figure 2.9.3. 'In the South Ile Quire on the S. side'. II.308.

[II.309A][39]

The Authors Epitaph upon Himself, made in the time of his sickness[40]

A Man I was wormes meat I am | To earth return'd from whence I came |
Many removes on earth I had | In earth at length my bed is made |
A Bed which Christ did not disdaine | Although it could not him retaine |
His deadly foes might plainly see | Over sin & death his victory | &c.
Here must I rest till Xst shall let me see | His promised Jerusalem & her felicity |
Veni Domine Jesu veni cito[41]
Robertus Philipson Gent. xiiij[0] Octobris Anno salutis 1631 Ætatis suæ 63.[42]

{Thake flese away}[43]

[36] N and O are not described, but, as seen in the Figure, are probably, N: gules 3 bulls' heads. O: ground gules, fret azure with a label of 5 points alias file of 5 labels.
[37] Q. and R. are not described, but are probably, Q: Gules 3 cushions lozengewise Or. R: Argent a fess Gules between 3 birds Sable or Brown.
[38] Perhaps this coat could be described as, ermine, fretty Gules, below a chief Gules.
[39] A small page, 12½cm x 15cm; the reverse holds part of a letter in another hand.
[40] The epitaph is not in Machell's hand, but he added '&c.' to the fourth line.
[41] 'Come, Lord Jesus, come quickly.'
[42] The spelling here does not copy the original accurately. For instance, the inscription, as seen in the church, contains 'meate', 'altho', 'deadlie', 'plainlie', 'sinn', 'victorie', 'Christ', 'felicitie'.
[43] Written in Machell's hand. If 'thake' (N.B. Machell's letters can often be misread, particularly his 'a' 'o' and 'u'), then this phrase might be interpreted as a saying or proverb. The dialect word 'thake' can mean 'thatch' but it can also mean, 'waste corn left in the fields unraked'; thus, 'straw flees away' might possibly refer to the fleeting nature of life. See Joseph Wright, *The English Dialect Dictionary 6* (London, 1898-1905), 73.

[II.310][44]

{Vis[i]ted 1[t] Aug. 1692 T.M.}
In the ~~fourthe~~ \ second / Long Light of the East Window of the High Quier, is a Man & Woman, in their Circ-Coates of Armes; & writ above in Text letters – Will Thornborr & his wife; in the next som Priests. In the 3. 4. 5. & 6. som of like sort but Letters gon which should have discovered them.
X. The Coate marked X is in an High window belonging to the midle Ile; which is so obscure & at such a distance, that I am not able to make anything of it.
Y. The Coate marked Y, and those 2 that follow are in the side window next to the Quier in the North Ile; concerneing which they have a Tradition – That a Shereman,[45] a Smith and a Carryer were buryed there.



Figure 2.9.4. Four Coats relating to the woollen industry. II.308.

On a window in the S. Ile next the Quier dooer is writ in Text Letters if I mistake not – Anno Quingentissimo Vicessimo Terti[0] i.e. 1523 – which shews the Time when these windows were don.
There is on the N. side of the Large East window, a monument set up of Black Marble, with the following Epitaph made by Mr Robert Philipson of Calgarth in the Time of his sickness

> A man I was, wormes meat I am,
> To Earth Return'd from whence I came
> Many Removes on earth I had
> In earth at length my bed is made

{Qu. If the cherveron in the Arms upon this mon[ument] be not chargd with a crescent.[46] And Indeed I wonder the Armes are not granted so by the Heralds since they came of a younger bro[ther] of Thirlewal Castle &c. see S.7.}

[II.311]

Memorandum de Ecclesia.
There were 3 window beyond the portch, of 5 lights a piece, & a Quier doore betwixt the 2 last – And 6 windows above of 3 lights apiece – which must be noted if I draw it againe.
{! Lett this be the stile} – The East Window of the High Quier is said to have com'd from [Blank] and hath 2 Rowes of Lights.
In the second upper Light are these Coates of Armes. A.B.C.D.
In the 3[rd] upper light are These. E.F.G.H.
In the 5 upper light These. I.K.L.M.N.O.P.
In the 6 upper light These. Q.R.S.T.U.

[44] N.B. Much of the following is a repetition of Machell's earlier observations on the church glass, left in this edition to demonstrate Machell's research and writing process.
[45] Shearman (shereman: Middle English to 1600s) a man who shears woollen cloth. *OED*. See Machell's sketch of the shield.
[46] Here, Machell has drawn a crescent.

In the \ Lower / Lightes which are much Longer are – 1[t]. St George on foote. 2. St Mary. 3ly. The Passion of our Blessed Saviour; 4. St Martin forsan & 5ly, St Catherine. And which being the S[ain]ts in whose names the Church & chaples are dedicated {which are in the parish perhaps the less reason to believe they fetched from.}[47]

At the foote of the said Lower Lights these figures of Gentlemen & their Ladyes praying in their Circoats \ of Arms / Sc. in the:

2	4	5	6

{Write this underneath the said Coates of Armes – Then add the figures}

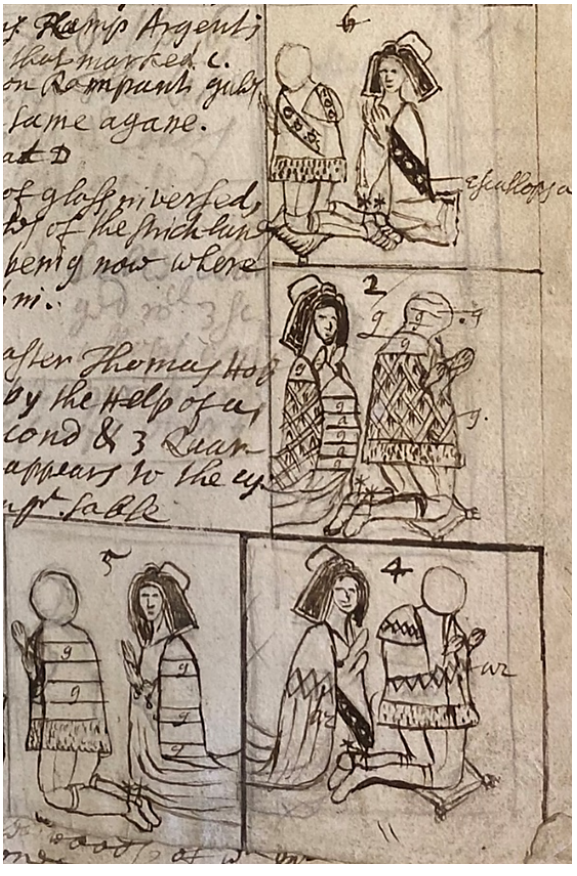


Figure 2.9.5. 'Gentlemen and their ladyes' at the foot of the lower lights. II.311.

Note. Ad – H. I sent a young man up a Ladder to give me a farther account of these Arms, & hee Tells me they are as followeth: But he having no manner of skill in Heraldry, I have drawn them as they appeared to the eyes.

[47] Much of this margin comment is obscured by the binding.

[p. 312A]

[Bells]



Figure 2.9.6. On little and middle bells at Windermere Church. 312A.

On the Little Bell: CW. PC. IW. MG. TE. NE. TP. WM. Gloria in excelsis Deo 1666. W.S.
On the Middle Bell a Rose; a key – on a scutcheon.
Great Bell:

[II.312b]

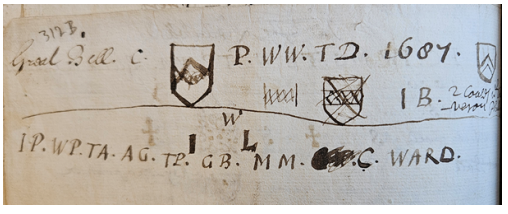


Figure 2.9.7. Windermere church. On 'The Great Bell'. II.312B.

Great Bell. C.P. WW. TD. 1687.
IB – 2 Coates with cheveron Phillipson
I \ W / L
IP. WP. TA. AG. TP. GB. MM. C.[48] WARD.

[II.312]

Windermere
The Parish Church is in Bowness, \ which is part of Undermilnbeck / but goes by that name ~~of Windermer Church~~ \ because the lands [create] a Bow into the water;[49] yet the great lake being so remarkable that it gives name both to church & parish.

{§6. Dedication St Martin, & there is a well}
~~The dedication of the Church is not certainely known; but by the Rushbearing & sommer games which were kept on this Day it should see to have bin Dedicated unto St James~~.
{But it is dedicated unto St Martin – see Troutbeck Chapel.}
{No. It is St Martines Church, as I finde in the Licenceing for Burying granted to the chapelry of Jesus in Troutbeck A.D. 1563. And there is Martin well 100 yards East ab Ecclesia.}

{Church}
It is an ha[n]som Large Church having 2 rows of Pillars in it, & 2 Iles besides the Body of it, & [the roof] is Leaded all over. The steeple is a square Towre with 3 \ gret / Bells ~~&~~ \ a Clock / {given by Richard ~~&~~ Shaw & Martin Suart of Undermilnbeck} & a Saints Bell ~~in it~~. And there was an Organ In the Church which cutt in piece in the warrs time by the Roundhead Party; this parish being \ always / very loyal to [the] King their Lord and Master.[50]
There is but one monument of \ black / marble sett up in the wall, with this Inscription made by Mr R. Philipson himselfe in the Time of his sickness.

[48] MS: Illegible letters before 'C' are scored through and blotted; one letter might be 'W'.
[49] Blurred interlineation: 'create' is an editorial substitution containing similar letters.
[50] See *N&BI*, 178.

A man I was worms meat I am | to earth return'd from whence I came
Many removes on earth I had | In earth at length my bed is made
A bed which Christ did not disdain | Although it could not him retaine
His deadly foes might planely see | Or'e sin & death his victorie
Here must I rest till Xt shall let me see / His promised Jerusalem & her felicity.
Veni Domini Jesu veni cito | Robertus Philipson Gent. xiiij^{0} Oktobris Anno salutis 1631
Ætatis suæ 63.[51]

{There are allso several Coats of Armes of Lancashire familes brought hither (as is thought) from Furness Abby.[52] Sed de hoc dub.}[53]



Figure 2.9.8. Margin drawing of the Philipson monument in Windermere Church. II.312.

{§7. Chappels}
There is but one Chappel in this parish – Troutbeck – which is ~~a~~ parochial ~~one~~: And som of this parish have liberty to bury &c. at Ambleside chappel, \ a part of Ambleside are in the chapelry & ar part of there, / provided they pay their dutyes to their \ mother / church; Sc. \ the Inhabitants of / the Low end of Ambleside beneath Sockbridge, \ concerneing which / see \ more / in G of M'.[54] \ But there were [an]other 2: One in Windermer water in Lady Holm dedicated to the V. M., & another near to Calgarth called St Katherines, now turned into a Dwelling House. /

{§8. Endowment}[55]
This Parish is a Parsonage (& is worth about 60li per annum) but the Minister receives his Tythes of all things by Composition,[56] save Geese & Grice;[57] & hath Eggs at Easter: for an hen, one egg; a chick 2 egg \ a cock one egg; Tithe Chick 1d Teste ipso.[58] / {Bees, for which they sometimes pay 3^{s} 6^{d} a cast: & sometimes more. The parson has 4d a Boate Prescriptions for the Tithe of fish every year.}

{§9. Custome}
The Patronage ~~was lately~~ in Gawen Braithwates of Ambleside & his son Thomas after him: & Phillip Fox of Crooke who are joynt Patrones present in joynt Turnes.
Memorandum. Formerly in the Crown. Query. How it came to Them.

[51] 'Come, Lord Jesus, come quickly. Robert Philipson, Gentleman [who died on the] 14 October in the year of salvation 1631 in the 63rd year of his age.'
[52] See *N&BI*, 178. See also Edward Bellasis, *Westmorland Church Notes, being the Heraldry, Epitaphs, and other Inscriptions, in the Thirty-two Ancient Parish Churches and Churchyards of that County, 2* (Kendal, 1889), 36, which cites R.S. Ferguson's research on this window.
[53] 'But of that I doubt.'
[54] 'G of M' might be Geoffrey of Monmouth, *Historia Regum Britanniae* (c.1136).
[55] Most of this margin-heading is obscured by the binding.
[56] Composition: an agreement for the payment of a sum of money in lieu of the discharge of some other obligation, or in a different way from that required by the original contract. *OED*.
[57] Grice = pigs.
[58] 'As I, myself, testify.' But see II.311 above, which is slightly different.

{§10. Parsonage} {New Hall no Hall}
The Parsonage house is called ~~the~~ Hall, there being no other Gentleman's house in the village of Bowness. It is distant from the Church ¼ of mile \ S.W. / & from Hawkside in \ Furness in / Lancashire 4 miles, from Kendal 6. \ from Ambleside? / The house is an ~~Hansom~~ stone building & slated all over & in good repair.

{§11. Glebe}
I[t] stands upon a little hill; so that you come to it (on every side) by an easy assent; and it is rendered more pleasant by reason of Windermer water on the North & West side ~~of it~~, upon the Banks of which the Gleeb Land. Hobby Hawkes build in the glebe woods, of which one Wilson had one time 3 young ones.

[II.316][59]

[The glebe land] lieth for a mile in Lenth, ~~a Corner of which~~ \ being near about 40 Acres / reaching from the house to the water side, where the Minister of the Parish has his Pleasure Boate \ for recreation. / There is a very good Garden & orchard, & ~~good~~ store of Pollards ~~fire wood~~ upon the Glebe land which serve for fewel \ ~~with other Timber Trees~~. / There are about 40 Acres of Land belonging unto it {? For the Tarrier[60] Mr Dixon} which amount to the vallue of 30[li] per Annum. A part of it was formerly rebuilt by Mr Richard Archer, somtimes fellow of Queens College in Oxford;[61] And another part of it, by Mr William Willson[62] formerly Taberdar of the same College,[63] now the ~~present Incumbent~~ Rector thereof. [64]
Query. Ut Tenants: what their Rents – free or fineable; fines Certaine or Arbitrary. This before the Glebe & house.

{§12. Sub division}
This Parish is but One \ entire / Lordship, call'd by the name of Windermer Lordship, & there are \ also / some Tenements in Crooke in \ the parish of / Kendall ~~parish~~, which belong unto it. {they are onely in the Constablewick} Sc. 14 Tenements ~~and~~ which lye on this side Gilpin Beck. Or rather this with the Parish of Grismer and all but one manor \ & hath other members. For I find in the said Inq[uisition] Anno 49. Edward 3. [1375-76] that Johan the w[idow] of John Cowpland was by the grant of the said King ciesed for the Terme of her Life of the Manner of Winander worth per Annum 144[li] with its members & appurtenances; Sc. Hamletta de Langden Loughrig, Grismer Hamelside, The King is Lord \ of it / but the lands are ~~the Queens joynt~~ \ now settled on the Q[uee]n ~~and he has~~ / who Rentes, \ Certaine / Rents Certain of every Tenement, with different fines in different places.

---

[59] Also numbered p.4.
[60] 'Tarrier'. From Latin, *terrarium*, and French*, terrier*. A register of landed property, formerly including lists of vassals and tenants, with details of their holdings, services, and rents; a rent roll; in later use, a book recording the site, boundaries, acreage, etc., of lands belonging to a private person, or a civil or an ecclesiastical corporation. Also, an inventory of property or goods. *OED*.
[61] Richard Archer, son of Edward Archer of Kendal; matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1628, aged 18; BA 1630; MA 1632; fellow 1633-46; BD 1642. Rector of Windermere 1645-62. *OAD*; see also E.J. Nurse, *History of the Parish Church Windermere* (Bowness-on-Windermere, 1908), 21-22.
[62] William Wilson, son of Thomas Wilson of Kendal and Dorothy, daughter of Henry Fisher of Bradleyfield. At Queen's College, Oxford, from 1648; BA 1654; afterwards incorporated at Cambridge University. According to State Papers (1660-61), he was 'presented to the Rectory of Windermere in 1657 but could not be legally instituted on account of the late tyranny till 1660'. In 1662 he married Elizabeth, daughter of Samuel Sandys, of Esthwaite. See Nightingale, *Ejected of 1662,* 2, 1045-46; Nurse, *Parish Church Windermere*, 22.
[63] Taberdar: see the English Glossary. See also Anthony Wood, *Athenæ Oxonienses Athenae Oxonienses: An Exact History of All the Writers and Bishops Who Have Had Their Education in the University of Oxford; To Which Are Added the Fasti, or Annals of the Said University*, I (London, 1691-92), 348: '…in 1583, he was made Pauper Puer, or Tabardus or Tabardarius; that is, a Tabarder or Tabitter, so called because anciently they wore Coats or upper Gowns, much according to the fashion of those belonging to Heralds.'
[64] MS: Scored-through passage at the beginning of this sentence:{'~~It is thought to have bin an appendant of Kendal Tower. It yet payes.~~'}

{Troutbeck, Applethwate[65] Strickland Ketel et Hoton} {the reversion to Lord Ingelram de Coucy Earle of Bedford & Isabel his wife the said Kings daughter.}[66]

{§13. Tenure}
He has also Heriots, Waifs & Strayes; & keeps Court Barron ~~at the schoolhouse in Bowness~~ \ every year. / The Tennants \ allso / appear (2 out of every Constablewick) once in the year at the Balifs command, at the Kings Court-Leet in \ the Town of / Kendall. ~~But there are no freeholds \ or Halls / in the Lordship~~. {But N[ote] here is no mention of Ridal – so that it was no part of the Manner} {q.? see after on the particulars; these are freeholders} {see S.33.}[67]
It affords Good store of \ blackish / Blue slates, peets & firewood near Ambleside – ab Ecclesia 4m. N. {see §.33}.

[II.318[68]]

{§14. Mannour House}
There is neither mannour house nor demaisne lands in it; but the Kings Stuart keeps Court every year, or his Deputy for him, at the Schol-house in Bo\w/nesse Windermer. But how these lands came to the Crowne, by Escheat or otherwise, q.?
? T[h]ere appear [Blank] so many freholders. {Cowgarth a free Demane; Old Field a freehold – & great [blank]. The Iland a Crown Rent not fineable. […][69] free rent.}
There are 4 villages in this Lordship, & each of them distinct Constablewicks, Sc. Ambleside, Troutbeck, Aplethwaite. And Undermilnbeck whereof Bowness is part.

{§15. Ambleside f. 43}
Ambleside formerly Hamelside {43. Edward 3. Inq.}[70] is all in \ within / this Lordship tho but part thereof within the Parish. It is 4 miles distant from Windermer church, & 4 from Gresmire but has a Chaple within it selfe \ on Gresmer side of the Stock brig; / & \ is / 3 mile from Hawkside market but 10 from Kendal ~~and is an entire Constable wick of it selfe~~. The \ few house it hath / ~~houses~~ are all of stone & Generally slated. It is situate upon the High end of Windermerwater whych lyes ~~at~~ \ near / the South end of ~~it~~ \ the village; / & the Great Roade twixt Kendal & Cockermouth \ in Cumberland /goes quite through it \ & so thorow Gresmer by Dunmale Rase. / There is one Chaple parochial in it which ~~wee spoke of before in~~ \ must be refer'd to / Gresmere parish. ~~And One side~~ They say there was a Castle at head of the Water and 4[r] of a mile ~~below~~ \ West of / the Towne the Ruines of which doe yet appear.
{It is now called Borhans – anciently AMBOGLANUM according to Camden.[71] Forsan ad Latus Amboglanæ vel Amblosheved, i.e. collis Amboglanæ, on the side or skirts of which it standeth.}[72]
{Whence I should have thought the vil. of Ambleside to have taken its name, Quasi ad Latus

[65] Some scored-through place-names are illegible here, although one word might be 'Crosthwate'.
[66] In the MS the following scored-through passage appears here: '~~It takes Its name from the Great Lake of Windermer And is the same \ whole / length bredth & circumference with the parish except \ with / 14 Tenements \ more / at Crooke \ in the parish / of Kendal parish by the on this side Gilpin beck, which are taken {into it over & about the parish}~~ ~~There are good Blew slates got in the manner & in great plenty~~.'
[67] Section 33.
[68] Also numbered p.6.
[69] Illegible word which begins, 'leu ...'
[70] Inquisition of 43 Edward 3 [1369-1370].
[71] From Camden: 'At the upper corner of Winander-mere lieth the dead carcasse, as one would say, of an ancient City, with great ruines of walls, and many heapes of rubbish one from another remaining, of buildings without the walls yet to be seene. The fortresse thereof was somewhat long, fensed with a ditch and rampire; for it tooke up in length 132. Ells, and in bredth 80. That it had beene the Romanes worke is evident, by the British bricks, by the mortar tempered with little peeces of bricke among, by small earthen pots or pitchers, by small cruets or vials of glasse, by peeces of Roman money oftentimes there found, and by round stones as much as by milstones or quernstones, of which layed and couched together they framed in old time their columns, and by the paved high waies leading unto it. Now the ancient name thereof is gone, unlesse a man would ghesse at it, and think it were that Amboglana, whereof the Book of Notices maketh mention, seeing at this day it is called Ambleside.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 760B.
[72] 'Perhaps Ambleside is derived from the side of Amboglanum or Amblesheved i.e. the hill of Amboglanum on the side or skirts of which it standeth.'

Ambloglani[73] – if I had not met [it] writ by the name of Hamelside in antient writeings.}[74]

There is allso a fair house called Ambleside hal belonging to the Brathwates \ but Tennent Right Lands / ~~tho there {be \ som few / Tenants belonging to it;}~~ But ~~now~~ \ lately / in debait betwixt Sir John Otway[75] & Mrs Dorathy Sands, sister to Mr Thomas Brathwaite lately deceas'd S.P.,[76] \ that is now in Sir John Otway Jane uxor {by a Decree.}[77] Whose Arms and Fam[ily] I have them.
{See a pikes jaw \ in / Dugdal who I thinke visited the place.}[78]
{According to the custom of the mannour of Richmond foe} the Tenants in this village hold their Land of the King as a Rent & fine certaine: Sc. Twopenny fine \ i.e. double the rent / upon change of Tenant; & one penny fine \ i.e. as much as the Rent / upon change of the Lord; i.e. paying over & above the Rent at change of Lord; and twice as much as the rent at the change of Tennant.[79] The Common is all Improved.[80]

{Ad p. 3.} [II.314]

Windermer Water

It is 10 miles Long & 2 miles Broad, yet under one Arch. Backbarrow Bridge {com Lanc.} strideth over it all with one single Arch.[81]
The fishing is divided into 3 Cubles as they call them:[82]
1. The High Cuble, from the water head to the Char-bed. ½ a mile above Calgarth.
2. Midle-Cuble, from thence to below the Ferry.
3. The Low Cuble, from thence to Nuby.
The Breadth of the water From Bowness to the Ile 27 score.
The Iland Broad?
Thence to Furness ¼ – 22 score.
At Calgarth it is Broade, 2 miles. Above it is generally 1m. & ½ – which is the Generall Breadth.
N.B. For a Map & full D[e]scription of Windermere water, vide in Windermer Parish p.3 & 13 & 20 & 22 & 23 & 31. And in Gresmer Parish – p. Ult §68 – v[ide] Windermer Gresmer par. p.10.
Camden in 'Lancashire', p. 681,[83] sayes that the Britans defended themselves a long time in Furness fells being a sort of natural fortifications. But nothing being Inaccessible to the Conq[uering]Saxons. For \ wee gather / that in the 228 year from \ after / their arival, the Brittans continued in this place; ~~from~~ Because then Egfridus King of Northumber[land] gave to St Cuthbert the Land called Carthmel. and all the Britanes therein. These he takes to be the Setantij, & Windermer water (lacus totius Angliæ maximus)[84] – formerly Wynander mere, & in the Saxon Winpadre mere – to be the Setantiorum

[73] 'As [being] on the side of Ambloganum.'
[74] These references to Amboglanum are written (amongst and between data on other topics) in the right-hand margin of MS.II.318.
[75] For Sir John Otway, see Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87; see also Part 2, Ch.4, Beetham, II.278.
[76] Without issue.
[77] 'Now in the ownership of Sir John Otway's wife, Jane.'
[78] William Dugdale, *Monasticon*: on Furness Abbey. See below, II.313.
[79] MS: 'i.e. ~~dubbling on Tennant held Rent the Rent upon change of a Lord~~ \ their Rent / paying over & above the Rent ~~its full vallue~~ at change of Lord; \ and twice as much as the rent /~~& duble its vallue~~ at \ the / change of Tennant.'
[80] 'Improved' probably means 'enclosed'.
[81] MS: 'Yet ~~all this water passeth~~ under one Arch ~~at a place calld~~ \ Back / Barrow Bridge {com Lanc.} strideth over It all with one single – Arch.'
[82] The word 'cubble' (variously spelt cable, cobble, coble, couble, couple, cubble and cuble) relates to Windermere fisheries. Windermere was divided into three sections, each one called a cubble. *The English Dialect Dictionary* suggests that a cubble was a short flat-bottomed rowingboat, or, as much as could be fished by one rowing boat. Certainly the word infers an area of water. See Charlotte Kipling, 'The Commercial Fisheries of Windermere', *CW2,* 72 (1972), 156-204, at 164. Jane Ewbank (ed.), *Antiquary on Horseback. The First Publication of The Collections of the Rev. Thos. Machell Chaplain to King Charles II Towards a History of the Barony of Kendal,* CWAAS Extra Series 19, (Kendal, 1963), 87, transcribed the word as 'cable' but Machell's vowel seems to be open rather than closed.
[83] 'Lancashire': a chapter in Camden's *Britannia.*
[84] 'The greatest lake in England'.

Winn: The lake of the Setantij[85] {And I mett with som Britanns – Sc. men of that name (?) in Cartmel fells at this very day; But for certane in Carthmell. & perhaps those battles were fought by them at Woundale &c.}

[II.313][86]

A Prospect of Windermer from Troutbeck Towne End.

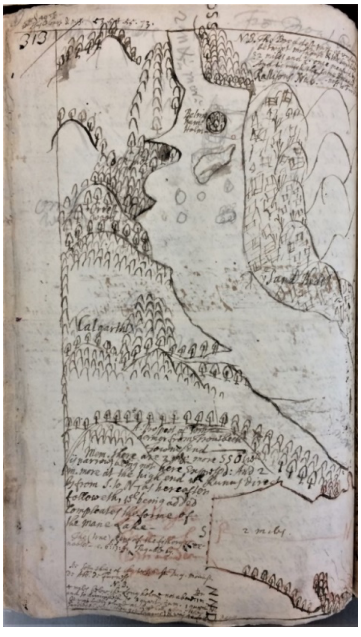


Figure 2.9.9. 'Windermere Water'. II.313.

See §49; to which This belongs: & p.13, 53. 54. 55. 73.
Memorandum, there are 2m. & ½ more SSO[87] (which is narrow) being not here expressd: And 2m. more at the high end which runns directly from S. to N. – as hereafter followeth – which being added compleates the forme of the mane Lake.
N.B. The Broadest part of Windermer betwixt Milhouse & the Sandbeds, which is ?2 miles and ½ once measur'd by a line. And tis much the same Breadth from Bowness to Furness.
N.B. 4 miles below the Long holme, not above 1m. \ Br[eadth], / and so diminisheth to 3 quar[er], ½ a m[ile], 1 quart[er] &c. It was lately plumd at Read hall above the sandbeds (where they get charrs) & was 40 f[athoms] deep.[88]

The (true) Rent of the fishery is XX nobles,[89] i.e. $6^{£}\ 13^{s}\ 4^{d}$. Payable by [Blank] See something of this Water in Dugdale *Monasticon*, de Abb[ey] de Furness.

[85] 'Forness-fells. Among which the Britans lived safe a great while, trusting upon these strong natural fenses: although the victorious Saxons made way through all in the end. For in the yeere 228. After King of Northumberland, gave unto Holy Saint Cuthbert the land called Carthmell, and all the Britans in it (thus we finde written in his life) … if you read in Ptolemee … the Setantians Mere, as some copies have; and not … the Setantians Haven, I durst boldly avouch that these Britans here were called Setantii …. For among these mountains the greatest standing water in all England, now called Winander-mere'; in the English Saxon Winpadre-mer (haply of his winding and turning in an out) lieth stretched out for the apace of ten miles.' Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637),755A-B.
[86] Ink superimposed on pencil. The northern part of the lake. For another map of this lake see II.150.
[87] SSO = Southwards, also seen at the head of the map. NND = Northwards, is seen at the foot of the map.
[88] Windermere lake is 10.5 miles long, one mile wide, and 220 feet deep: https://www.visitcumbria.com. A fathom is 6 feet, therefore Machell judged Windermere to be 240 feet deep.
[89] 20 nobles. 1 noble was equivalent to 6s 8d, thus 20 nobles equalled £6 13s 4d.

[p. 316A]

[General Notes]

N[ote] ad Furness fells, Kendal in Gen[eral], Gresmer
Occar – for use money in Conyston in Furness fell
I gang &c. to pay my occar.[90] a. Sir Dan[iel] Flem[ing]

Gree – In use the same place they have custom that the eldest brother that succeeds his Father in a Tenant Right or Customary Estate shall pay to \ such of / his Brothers – 3 Years Rent; which is called their gree or Portion.[91] a. Sir Dan[iel] Flem[ing]

[II.317]

Qu. If Calgarth be not in Aplethwate? And if so, whet[h]er it has not formerly bin the manner house for Windermer & Gresmer. For it is said – in the Inq[uisition post mortem] of 49. Edward 3. [1375-76] that Johan the late Wife of John Coupland Deceas'd, obijt seiseita ad Terminum Vitæ suae – de Advocatione Capellæ de St Mary Holm, infra Lacum de Winandermer; quæ nihil valet quia Terra de qua [præ]dicta Capella fuit, antiquo Tempore sesita est in Manu Domini; et jacet infra Parcum Del Calv-garth.[92]
If he mean by Terra, the Land on which it stood, it is strange how an Iland \ in soe deepe a Lake / should be within the Parke of Calvgarth: but if there be a word anwanting so that by Terra de qua prædicta Capella[93] we may understand Dotata fuit,[94] than it is easy enough to imagin that the Indowment lyeing in the Parish of Calvegarth & being cies'd \ long agoe / into the Lordship, it was worth nothing. Yet this Lord still seemes to have bin [in] the King. Because the Advowson was in him – & he was Lord of this Manner of Windermere, whereof Aplethwate is expressly a parcel. Tho I confess – the Argument will not always hold from the Patrone of the church to the Lord of the Manner.

Memorandum. To Enquire of a store[95] about a Hagworme[96] who bit a man in the legg – of which he could get no cure; and about a year after, the hag worme came to the doer, & the man ordered them to set it open; & so it came to his leg which he exposed, & licked it, & went away, after which he mended forthwith. Told me at Mr Prestons of Howcar,[97] I thinke per Mr Marsden.

[90] 'I go etc. to pay my occar.' The *OED* and *Dictionaries of the Scots Language* Online refer to 'occar or 'oker' as 'the lending of money at (excessive) interest, usury; interest gained from this'; and 'the taking of (more or less excessive) interest or the practising of usury.' The word was meant to be derogatory.
[91] 'Gree': to make (persons) pleased; to reconcile, conciliate (several persons, or one with another); also, to arrange or settle (a matter). *OED*.
[92] 'Died seised for her lifetime of the advowson of the chapel of St Mary Holm in the Lake of Windermere, which is worth nothing because the land in which the said chapel was, in ancient time was the Lord's land; and falls within the Park of Calgarth.'
[93] 'Land from which the said chapel.'
[94] 'Was endowed.'
[95] Story.
[96] Hagworm: a northern name for the adder or viper but in some districts applied to the grass snake and in others to the blindworm. *OED*.
[97] Holker.

[II.319]

{§7.}[Informants] de Troutbeck: Mr Walker curate[98] – George Brown yeoman.[99]
Ad Kendal et Kentmere. Poet Brat:[100]

> Kendal from Kent derives Its name
> & Kent from Kentmeres springing fountaine came.

!!! The true rent of Winandwater is XX nobles i.e. 6:13:4.
See Dugdal de Abb[t] of Furness for Windermer Water.[101]
Sheep feed on the tops of Trees on \ this place / Furness Fell. All their great water passeth Arch (at Backbarrow Bridge in Co. Lanc.)

[Troutbeck]

{Mr Walker, curate; George Brown, yeoman}

{(§19.) Bounder of Troutbeck Chapl}
It is bounded on the E. by Kentmer in Kendal from which tis divided by the Ridge of Applet\h/wate Fell, as heaven water deales. On the S. with the Mother Church as far as \ the Nether / Orrest ~~comes as of~~ \ divided / by the libertyes of those 2 Houses which pay to this chapl; & so by Windermer Water which divides from Lancashire. On the W. with Ambleside divided by [Blank] from Windermer Water up Holgate Gill; & so along by a wall made by both Townships to Kirkston. On the N. with Patterdale in Barton divided by \ a wall / on Kirkston, & so NE. over Cowdalmor to Th\r/eshhold mouth, as heaven water deales.

{(§20.)}
{George Robinson of Troutbeck, buried 50 years agoe was above 100; & Peter Longmire never dranke ale in his life – Big bread[102] – who was buried the next year after, was above 100!!! §42.}[103]

Q. of the Consecration (& Endowment. both of church & chapl – & how Chargd or Rased.)

{(§21.) ~~Chappel~~ The Hall of Troutbeck.}

---

[98] Dudley Walker, listed as curate of Troutbeck, 1663-1701, and curate of Grasmere, 1712. CCED.
[99] Townend, the home of the Browne family, is well known through its National Trust status and the preservation of the family's large collection of documents at CAC(K): boxes coded WDTE. The history of the Brownes of Troutbeck has been well rehearsed; for their activities in the 17th century, see M.A. Parsons, 'The Brownes of Townend and the Township of Troutbeck 1500-1750', *CW3*, 2 (2002), 171-82, in which this yeoman-family's rising prosperity and social aspirations are discussed. For example, George Browne of Townend (1626-1703) was High Constable of Kendal Ward in 1667; see also *AWL*, 56.
[100] Poet Brathwaite (Richard Brathwaite/Brathwate). This aphorism also appears at the beginning of Machell's chapter on Kendal Barony: Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.17.
[101] There is little information of this nature in Dugdale's (English, abridged) *Monasticon*: see Vol. 1, Furness, 88-89. Thomas West, who wrote extensively on Furness and the Abbey at the end of the18th century, remarked that Dugdale was 'totally silent as to the edifice itself, of which a much greater part was entire in his time than now is.' West's book contains a copy of a deed made in 1240, of William de Lancaster III, eighth baron of Kendal, in which the monks of Furness were to have two boats (one a fishing boat) and 20 nets on Windermere, 'without any opposition from me or my heirs: but if any servant belonging to the monks, who shall have the care of their boats on the said waters, commit trespass in my forests, he shall be punished at my discretion; and if such servant refuse to give and make reasonable satisfaction, he shall be dismissed, with the loss of his wages, by the monks, from their service.' Thomas West, *The Antiquities of Furness* (London, 1774), Dedication to Lord George Cavendish; 35. This deed is discussed (along with several others) by Charlotte Kipling in 'The Commercial Fisheries of Windermere', *CW2*, 72 (1972), 156-204, at 157-58.
[102] His diet was bigg (barley) bread.
[103] Some discarded notes follow. MS: '{~~L. 23 b. 8 inside & steeple 2; walls~~;} {~~Troutbeck~~} …~~ school~~.'

{(§22.) Chapel}
{See §25. 26. Mr Parson Carus, supervisor}[104]



Figure 2.9.10. Margin sketch. Troutbeck Chapel. II.319.

{An Ewe Tree afore it of 9 or 10 branches. sub umbra 9 yardes diam.[105] & in the body 3.
[Chapel measures] Long. 23. Steeple, 2. Wall, 1.
Broad, 8. Wal. 1. Inside m.}

There are \ diverse / medows \ & Arable Land / in Troutbeck calld The Hall Ings – now in Tenancy. Query where the Hall stood? & the ruines of an old house upon a Riseing ground in the midle thereof in memory of man, & bequeathes […][106] o' the Reparation of the said church / 13s 4d, & to the Rep[air] of ours, 3s 4d.
Anno 1558. George Browne (father of Thomas, father of George, father of George, father of George 3^{d}, orderd his body to be buried at Windermer church by his will dated as above,[107] who gave a legacy of iijs 4d to Sir Edward Whitlock.[108] And in another 1566, Agnes, wife of the said George Browne, gave her body to be buried in the Chaple of Troutbeck, & to it ~~as my~~ \ for her / bequest ~~for~~ & burial, 6^{s} 8^{d}. So that it was consecrated \ as a burying place / betwixt the years 1558 & 1566. And George Browne informes that in the Instrument of Consecration it is called Capella Jesus infra parochiam St Martini.[109]
{N. a winde linen;[110] a Bushel Windermer.[111]}

{(§23.) Indowment ~~4li: 10s: 0~~ of the Chap.}
Indowment – The Ancient sallary ~~7 per Annum~~ \ 4li: 10s: 0[d] raised by the Inhabitants according to the priority of seates; the highest seate being 1^{s} 8^{d} & so by degrees to 6^{d} a seat, which is the lowest; & when any is admitted on death of another into the Chancell, which is don by Trustees or Collectors of sallery, the party [pays] 2s Admittance money, which goes to the Church stock. {After improved by the Chaple-stock & som bequests of which Francis Borric gave 20^{li} – & 100 to the poore of the parish {to 7^{li} per Annum – & at Length to 10^{li} – see §27.}
The Burial in the Chancel is 8s; in the Body 3s 4d – towards the Chappel stock, which stock \ being augmented by the / Parish Church.

[104] In 1558 Adam Carus supervised the will of George Browne, the Troutbeck yeoman: II.319, II.320, II.322.
[105] 'Its shade is 9 yards in diameter.'
[106] A word here is illegible.
[107] MS: 'Orderd his body by will (of this date) to be buried at Windermer church. by his will dated as above.'
[108] Reader at the chapel, see below, II.320.
[109] 'And George Browne informes that in the Instrument of Consecration it is called the Chapel of Jesus within the parish of St Martin.'
[110] Linen winding-cloths: grave-clothes. See K.V. Iserson, *Death to Dust: What Happens to Dead Bodies?* (Tucson, 1994), 452.
[111] Machell's Preface refers to a Windermere bushel as a 'wandell'. See 'Strange Words', II.353.

{(§24.) School}
The Schoole was erected – which stands E. a Capella 20 yards 2 storeyes high – & 12 yards long; & with the Consent of John Bishop of Chester (Bridgeman)[112] had 5 per Annum of the stock setled on it, to the Curate if he will Teach according to Cannon,[113] or in case of refusal – whom the Parson & Churchwardens should nominate & the Bishop approve. {Per Licentiam Episcopi Cestriensis at Chester Pallace 7 Aug. 1639.}[114]

[II.321][115]

[Petitions to the Bishop of Chester]

To the Reverend Mr Thomas Machell
Rector of Kirkby thore
In Westmorland.
These.

This paper came inclosed in a Letter to me with the direction to be sent to you. I have taken the first opportunity to get it transmitted, and I hope it will come safe to your hands. Which is all at present from
Sir
Humble servant & nephew
R. Borrow.

[II.320][116]

[Petitions to the bishop of Chester] For Burying, Celebrateing the Sacraments[117] – Hearing the word.}

[1.] {1562} William Lord Bishop of Chester at the petition & supplication of the Inhabitants of Troutbeck & Aplethwait Grants with the Consent of Adam Carus Rector of the Parish Church of Windermeer, as also with the consent of the Parishoners there; That their Priest lawfully & canonically ordained may preach the word of God, Administer the sacraments &c. And that the people of Troutbeck & Aplethwait may resort to the said Chappell by the name of Jesus Chappell to hear &c. so that it be no prejudice hurt or Impediment to the Parish Church of Windermeer aforesaid &c. In witness whereof to these presents we have put our Episcopall seal the 18th day of July Anno Domini 1562 in the 2d year of our Consecration.[118]

[2.] [Licence to bury the dead] {q. if this be not \ an Instrument of / Consecration.}
Mathew Lord \ Arch / Bishop of Canterbury at Inhabitants motion giveth Licence to bury their Dead at their own Chappell by the name of Jesus Chappell, & to Celebrate both the Sacrament & other sacred rites, & to hear the Word of God &c. Provided always that the aforesaid Church of St Martine of Windermeer do suffer no damage or detriment hereby in any of its rights profits or dues, but that the dues of the said Church & of the Incumbent of the same in all things may always be safe & sure; save only the Liberty of Bapt[ism] & Bur[ial] aforesaid &c. Given under our Seal of Authority the last day of the month of April in Anno D. 1563, & in the 4th year of our Consecration.[119]

---

[112] John Bridgeman (1577-1652), bishop of Chester, 1619-1652.
[113] Canon law: the 151 Canons of the Church of England, https://www.anglican.net/doctrines/1604-canon-law.
[114] 'According to the licence of the bishop of Chester, dated at Chester Palace 7 Aug. 1639.'
[115] Text at the page-top was written by Dudley Walker, curate, in the form of a signed statement on behalf of George Browne. Machell annotated it (see the heading and margin headings) and resumed his narrative below.
[116] The reverse of II.321: the other side of the letter from R. Borrow.
[117] MS: 'For Burying ~~The Priest~~ Celebrateing the Sacraments'.
[118] William Downham, bishop of Chester (1561-1577). Adam Carus, rector of Windermere (1548-86), was the son of William Carus of Esthwaite, Whinfell, and his wife Isabella Laybourne, daughter of Thomas Laybourne of Cunswick. In 1558 he supervised the will of George Browne, of Troutbeck (see above). In 1568 he was an arbitrator in a dispute between James Cookson and Thomas and Christopher Browne relating to land of the Hall in Troutbeck. The first consecration deed of Troutbeck Chapel (18 July 1562) states, as Machell noted above, that all was done with 'the express consent and assent of that worshipful man Adam Carus, clarke, Rector of the Parish Church of Windermere.' See Nurse, *Parish Church Windermere*, 18.
[119] Matthew Parker, archbishop of Canterbury, 1559-1575.

The 7th of Aug. 1692, by Dudley Walker Curate there & George Browne. (A substantial & understanding Inhabitant.)[120]
Certifyed out of the records of the Chapel. This came to my hand from the said partyes Aug. 31 1692. T.M.

It was a chapel long before they obtained the favour of Parochial Rightes. But was onely used as an Oratory then, for they Christned & buried at the Parish church, having onely here a Licensd Reader whom they called a Sir. As appears by the will of one George Brown (a substantial yeoman of this place ~~of~~ \ from / whom the Present George Browne of Troutbeck, an Ingeniouse Countryman, is the 5 in Descent) which beareth Date A.M. 1558. Wherein he makes Mr Parson Carus ~~supervisor~~ Rector of Windermer, a supervisor; & gives, with his body to be buryed there, to the Repare of the said Church – 13s 4d. And to the Repare of Ours (meaning this Chapel) 3s 4d.[121] And to Sir Edward Whitlock (who was Reader here) 3s 4d. And Agnes his wife (the first that I finde was buried here) gave her body to be buried in

[II.321]

Troutbeck Chapel, & gave to it for her bequest & burial 6s 8d – anno Dom. 1566.[122]

[II.322][123]

{Ambleside}

Som of the Tenants have dotes of wood in other Tenants grounds,[124] which they may not be hindored or disturbed of or [Blank] the Tenant by survey about the Demain & woods. I wish I could see the M[anor] Booke shew Demaine & Lordships.

{~~Refer~~ this to Troutbeck}
There is a place called the Old Parke at the Low end of Ambleside, Att Holbeck bridge; which extends itselfe in lenth 2 miles all along by Windermer to Troutbeck bridge; but is now all inclosures, & possesd by the Tenants \ of Troutbeck / But no Remarkes of Antiq now remaining, only there is a poole which they call the old Casway. But see Camden & Speed.

Troutbeck ab Ecclesia 3m. N.E. {The Towne a Capella ¼ m. N. West; & the schoole ly[eth] N. It is a mile long but not with \ a / continued range of Building. The Houses are fair stone building and most of them slated.} {On the edge or Top of an Hill.} {What fuel.}

{(§25.) Troutbeck §87.}
Troutbeck is a large village which takes its name from the River Trout beck running on the East side of it,[125] & which is so called from the plenty of troutes which are found in it; & som very large at Michaelmas T[ide].[126]

Places remarkable

{(§26.) Chapel}
Here is an old parochial chapple on the East Side the village calld Troutbeck Kirke And the Parish Church is within 3 miles. But Hawkside market is 5 mile distant, & Kendal 7. There is a Road goes by the church (where is a stone bridge of one large Arch) from Kendal to Patterdale & so to Penrith. It goes on the East side of it & through the Towne head!

[120] The last phrase is in Machell's hand.
[121] For the will, see also II.319, above.
[122] Text written by Machell, which appears on the address page of the letter.
[123] Also numbered p.8.
[124] 'Dote' grant of land, property, etc. *OED*.
[125] MS: 'Troutbeck is a ~~pretty~~ large village ~~on the West side of the little River called Troutbeck, whence It takes Its name, which springs in the fells at Trout beck dale head, which~~ \ which takes its name from the River Trout beck running on the East side of it.'
[126] Circa 29 September.

{(§27.) Schoole}
Here are the Church or Chaple aforesaid; a little schoole house \ near the E. end of the Chaple yard / built ~~by the neighbourhood~~ \ out of the church stock / where the chaplain teaches for ~~so much by the Quarter, but has no standing stipend save onely for Reading prayers~~ \ see the sallary / which is raised in part out of a Common stock & partly out of the several Tenements by an adequate proportion, notwithstanding which they pay their dues & dutyes to the Minister of Windermer (according to ~~composition~~ \ Law. /

{(§28.) Parke House §.32}
There is at ½ a mile distance & within the Constablewick an House called Parke house, which stands att the {south} side of Troutbeck-parke; which together with it was {given p.30.}[127]

[II.324][128]

{§33. Freehold}
given by King Charles the 1[t] to Mr Hudleston Phillipson for his good service in the \ late / Civil wars. And Confirmed by King Charles the 2[d,] \ to {Xtopher his son after Sir Xtopher} / which is free land pay\ing / 6d quitt-rent \ per Annum / to the King & {appears at no Court.} It was formerly held by Lease of the Crowne by the Harringtons of Woolyeakes[129] in Cumberland from \ whom / it passed to this ~~fami~~ Hudleston Phillipson. ~~who~~ He had a young Brother allso of great courage & vallour who was calld in a by name Robin the Divil.[130] ~~There is a stinted common belonging to the Towne, which is called Woundale, at a mile distance towards Patterdale~~.[131]

[II.323]

{(§31.)} A Tryal with Herd for Lowick-how{See §34. To which this belongs}

{§32. Parkhouse}
There is a Parke calld Troutbeck P. ½ a m. N. from the \ Hall / Inge![132] Belongs now Sir Xtopher Philipson at 6[d] or 1s. rent.[133] Rent: The Ing is amongst diverse Tenements at Free Rent.
Clean marts ~~which they commonly call by name martens~~ \ wildcats / Moorgame plenty.

{(§32.)[134] Flumen Troutbeck}[135]
Trout beck springs near the Parke a Capella 3m. N. There plum S. by the East side of the Chaple; & on the N. west side of Cowgarth Hall. They calld Cawgarth \ Gard net / formerly about Appleby and at Yanwath, sayes Mr Walker, Curate.

{§32.} [River][136]
It springs on the fells at Troutbeck dale head / & emptyes it selfe into Windermere water – 2 miles below \ the Towne, / beyond Calegarth. {Upon which River stand 4 mills – 3 Corne & 1 Paper. All which pay 3s 4d a piece free rent to the King for liberty of breaking the stream, being the Kings water. There is store of Trout & Eeles in the River & onely 2 stone bridges, the lower haveing 2 ΩΩ.[137] In Troutbeck. How ancient?}

[127] Machell's continuation of the text appears on MS.II.324; this edition has placed it here.
[128] Also numbered p.10.
[129] Wooloaks.
[130] See §52, below.
[131] Scored through lightly because the information occurs elsewhere.
[132] 'Ing' or 'Inge': a meadow, William Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997), 85.
[133] '1s' has been circled; presumably 1 shilling was the correct rent.
[134] Sic. Two sections 32.
[135] Two entries describe the river at Troutbeck.
[136] The first part of this heading is obscured by the binding.
[137] Tiny sketch of arches.

[§34.][138] [Tales of the Heard Family][139]
{There is another house by Troutbeck Parke \ within this parish / on the west side the becke, which lately belonged to a yeoman family of the Heards (gentleman but yeomen) with a little Estate or Tenement called Lowick-how;[140] \ & / which pays a rent to the other house & is held of it. But the Report goes That one Heard, a man of prodigious stature & of equal strength; before the union of the two Kingdoms of England & Scotland, upon an Incursion made by the Scotts[141] (who had advanced over Jacks Brigg, which is upon the mountains betwixt Kentdale & Patterdale) tooke his bow & his Quivers & went alone up ~~the midel of~~ an Hill call'd the Tongu'e in the midst of the parke to take a view of them. And as they were coming down the Scot Raike (which is a path ~~or Trac which~~ they wore in their march, retaning its name upon that occasion), he Bent his bow & shot freely at them, & they att him. But he so far outdid them, & he made such Execution & havock amongst & upon them (whist in the meantime all their arrows fell far short of him) that they thought it convenient rather to Retreat than hazard themselves with such terrible Archers as these. Upon which, tis Reported that the King sent for Him that he might /see him shoot.[142]

[II.326][143]

And a Bow being brought to him which was none of the weakest – he call'd it a spelke (which in his country languedge signifies a little stick split in the midle, {i.e.} such as they make for little boys to shoot with),[144] & said it was fitter for a child than a man; upon which they fetched him of the strongest they had. And Heard, calling for 2 of their longest arrows {takeing 2 of them} tooke both Bows in his hand together & at one single pull drew them quite threw the Bows.[145] \ Upon which / the King ~~& all about him~~ admired his strength and askd him \ what / victualls he was brought up with ~~&~~ the man reply'd: with Thick-gulls (which is an haisty pudden made of oat-meal & milke). {& souer-milke?} Then, the King bid[d]ing him, aske what he would have; And ~~fellow~~ \ he only / desird ~~to have~~ this little Tenement (called Looke-how) & had His request.
Thus the story goes, and it is very certaine that the estate ~~did~~ continues in that name to this day – Thomas Heard being in possession, who[146] has no son but several Daughters, the eldest \ was long since / marryed to one Thomas Birkett \ of Bowness, none of Troutbeck / an other prodigie who weighed near upon 24 stone, at 14[lb] to the stone. But has no Isue.

[II.323]

[More on Heard]
They report of this Heard in the Parish to this day that he would sitt downe at a marriage feast with the 1[t] Table,[147] & eat as they did with the same moderation; & pay his groat with them (which was the common ordinary then) when they riss from Table; But would sitt \ downe againe / with the next, &

---

[138] Not numbered in the MS, but Machell's notes on II.323 suggest that the subject of §34 was the Heard family.
[139] See Roger Bingham, *Kendal: A Social History* (Milnthorpe, 1995), 354-55.
[140] MS: 'which ~~formerly belongd to a~~ \ lately belonged to a yeoman family of the Heards with a little estate ~~gentleman but yeomen~~ or Tenement called Lowick-how.'
[141] MS: 'one Heard a man of prodigious stature & \ of equal / strength ~~equal unto it~~ Before the union of the two Kingdoms \ of England & Scotland, / upon an Incursion ~~of~~ \ made by / the Scotts (~~having notice given of their marching over Jacks Brigg upon the high street~~.'
[142] MS: 'And as they ~~came~~ \ were coming / down the Scot Raike (which is a path ~~or Trac which~~ they wore in their march, Retaning its name ~~from them to this day~~ \ upon that occasion, / he Bent his bow & ~~lett fly~~ \ shot freely / at them, & they ~~likewise~~ att him; but He ~~outshott them so far & did so much execution that he put them all to flight~~ \ ~~did then~~ But he so far outdid them, & he made such Execution \ & havock / amongst & upon them / (whist in the meantime all their arrows fell far short of him) that they thought \ it / convenient ~~rather~~ \ rather to Retire / to Retreat ~~back againe from them~~ than incounter such Archers \ than hazard themselves with such terrible Archers as these / Upon which, tis Reported that the King sent for ~~Herd~~ Him ~~And desired to~~ \ that he might /see him shoot ~~amongst his own Archers~~.'
[143] Also numbered p.12.
[144] In Scotland and Northern England, a 'spelk' is also a splinter. *OED*.
[145] MS: 'upon which they ~~brought another~~ \ fetched him / of the strongest they ~~could get~~ \ ~~proove~~ / \ had / And Heard calling for 2 of their longest arrows, {takeing ~~both hence~~ \ 2 of them /} tooke both Bows ~~together~~, \ in his hand together / & at one \ single / pull drew ~~both~~ them ~~Arrows~~ quite threw the Bows.'
[146] 6cm of heavily scored-through illegible text follows here.
[147] MS: 'They report of this Heard in the Parish to this day ~~with a great deal of~~ that he would sitt downe at a ~~great~~ \ marriage / feast with the 1[t] Table'.

doe the like with them. And so ~~until~~ till a 4th meal was made. & with these \ 4 meales / he would worke (or Travel) 4 dayes \ together / without eating or drinkeing. And they say he went to London after one of these feasts, from his own house (being 200 miles) in the strength of that meal \ or those meales. /

{(§31.)} A Tryal with Herd for Lowick-how{See §34. To which this belongs.}[148]
& Sir J. […][149] by a Tryal (it proveing to be a part of the Parke) & could shew no Grant \ he having no Grant to shew […][150] (he but having after varied the rent) did fairly recover it. /
Heard dyed 10 years agoe – ab Anno 1692.[151]

[II.326]

{T. But one Heard his descendant having no grant from the King ~~to produce~~ and different Rents having bin p[ai]d, he was ejected by Sir […][152] in a Triall at Apalby – above 10 years [ago]} \ and so theres an End of the Heards & their Heards. /}[153]

But to returne again to Troutbeck, after so long a digression.

{(§35.) Old Parke see §39. see p.19 in margin}
There was an other Parke \ heretofore / belonging unto it (but 2 miles distant) \ N. ab Ecclesia / but W. ad Capella called the Old-Parke whether stocked with deer or no I know not but now quite despark'd if ever it wase so & divided in \ several / Cantons amongst the Tenants. It extends it selfe in Lenth 2 miles from Troutbeck-bridge, all along by Windermer Water \ except where Cawgarth interposeth a little / to Hol-beck-brige halfe a mile from Ambleside: But there are no remarks of. p.14.[154]
{May not this be Calvgarth parke mentioned in Inq[uisition?]}

[II.323]

Art & Curiositves in Nature near Troutbeck

§29. Great store of Rosemary: some Ewe Trees – & a great one in the churchyard. Juniper store; Holly great store; & great Trees – The sheep feed on the Tops of Them. Laurel & Bayes in their gardnes. Raspberryes Natural (a generous reine[155] of Blackberryes) Bleaberryes Strawberryes Croneberryes. Fire stone in round lumps like brown hand balls. There is an Hill ~~Gat~~ called Gatlow-how near the place where wee suppose the manner house stood, which is an Arrow shot west from thence; whence tis supposed the[y] might have had the Liberty of Furcas within this Lordship.[156]

{Blew amongst lime stone in the forrest a Capella ½ m. west. but not plentiful. Good Blew slate in diverse places. Peat – a mile & ½ a Capella W.}
{? N.B.} A piece of Gold found 6 or 7 years since in a Peat moss calld Dod in Troutbeck forrest ¾ deepe, a m[ile] dist[ant] N.W. from the chapple; sold to Mr Cock \ old James / a Bookseller.[157]

[148] Copied from §31, above.
[149] The name is shortened and unclear.
[150] A word here is obscured by the binding
[151] Machell recorded this in 1692; Heard had died ten years previously.
[152] Unclear word at the page edge.
[153] Several illegible words continue into the margin.
[154] See II.328.
[155] 'Reine': the uncultivated grassy strip of land around a field or allotment, Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect*, 132.
[156] 'Furcas' = gallows. *OED*. Hence, the liberty of furcas, i.e. the right to erect gallows in the Lordship.
[157] The first of three references to Cocke's purchase (see also Part 2, Ch.10, II.424; Part 3. Ch.3, VI.259.) The activities of James Cocke, bookseller and mercer of Kendal, his wife, Mary, and another Joseph Cocke (perhaps a son) appear in Sir Daniel Fleming's correspondence and papers (1665-96): see Christine Churches, 'Daniel Fleming, Richard Scott and James Cocke: the making of a 17th Century English Provincial Library', Thesis presented as part requirement for an Honours Degree in History, University of Adelaide (1984), 34-44.

{(§30.) Woundale Rase ~~see also p. 36~~}
There is one in Woundale calld Woundale Rase – a mighty heape & no other stones near it (which is almost a wonder in this place) but upon what occasion is not known. Credibly possibly a monument of som that were slane &c. in this place.

{Spying-how; the Raise}
There was at ~~spring~~ \ Spying / how in Troutbeck forrest a Capella W. ½ a mile, an Heape of stones called The Raise which they Removed for making their fences about 70 years since; & in the midst of it they found a chest of 4 stones \ a one on each side & one on each end / with large bones in it, which \ may seem to have / bin a monument of {som scouts or watchmen here slane & burned …}[158]
{! Perhaps a vulneribus[159] for a Battle there. See [§]34 to which this belongs.}
{These stone Heaps or Raise's as here called are no other than the Welsh Carnedhs, which are described well in Rowlands *Mona Antiquity*; Borlases *Antiqu de Cornwal*;[160] & they being British sepulchres.}[161]

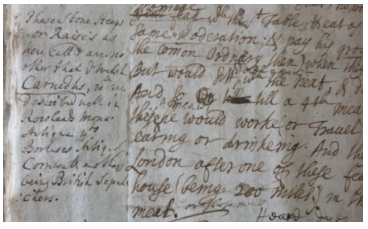


Figure 2.9.11. Margin Note: Bishop Lyttelton's addition to Machell's text. II.323.

Memorandum. Mr Wilson Parson of Windermer had 3 sons \ 2 alive / by his wife at a Birth.[162]
& Robert Borricks \ wife / of Troutbeck had 3 sons likewise – all alive.

[II.327]

Borrans at Ambleside, Windermer Parish[163]

Pieces of Glass found here ½ an inch thick; & 3 inches broad. Also several Leaden Bullents, like mustard balls, Coins of silver brass & gold sta[m]ped with Cæsars heads upon them.

This square fort is call'd Borrans-Ring from being surrounded with a Bulwork[164] & trench which do yet appear. The Inner Edge of the square has bin wall'd about & [there are] buildings in the midst amongst the Ruines, of which much hewenstone is found, \ which is great rarity in this Country. / Pieces of Brick & G~~alls~~las (as tis said) ½ an inch thick. & They tell me of Cannon & Musket Bullets which have bin found here but the Invention of Gunns being of late date I can hardly believe it; Unless som skermishes might have happened here in our Civil wars betwixt som partyes on camping here &\ in / the opposit mount. But of this nothing is said. {Query if been a Dwelling house here?

[158] The end of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[159] 'a vulneribus': literally, 'from the/their wounds'; figuratively, 'a loss in battle'.
[160] Henry Rowlands (1655-1723) *Mona Antiqua Restaurata: an Archaeological Discourse on the Antiquities, Natural and Historical, of the Isle of Anglesey, the Antient seat of the British Druids* (1723); William Borlase (1695-1772) *Antiquities, historical and monumental, of the County of Cornwall* (1754).
[161] This hand is likely to have been that of Bishop Lyttelton. Charles Lyttelton (1714-1768) was bishop of Carlisle from 1762 to 1768 and President of the Society of Antiquaries of London from 1765 to 1768. In 1764, Lyttelton borrowed Machell's MS.Vol.3 (July 31); MS.Vol.4 (August 7) and MS.Vol.6 (August 15) from Carlisle Cathedral Library: see CAC(C), DCHA/5/6/1/15. Library Register, 1703-1873. See Lyttelton's advice to readers of Machell's history in Part 3, Ch. 4: 'Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland', VI.432A-B.
[162] For Wilson, see fn.62, above.
[163] Waterhead, anciently Galava.
[164] MS: 'Bulwook.'

Which might scatter such things.} However tis certane that diverse Coins of Gold Silver & Brass have bin found hereabouts – of which a curiouse collection ~~is made~~ \ was made by Mr Brathwate & given by deed to the University of Oxford where now they Remane in the Public schools of the \ said / University of Oxford.



Figure 2.9.12. Borrans-Ring. II.327.

{See §43. §44. Note. It should stand of[f] the water as far as the 3*.}

[II.328][165]

Troutbeck

{1 years old rent onely for a fine upon change of the Lord by death: 2 years old rent onely for a f. upon change of every Tent. By death or alienation è Decreto Anno Jac primi 17^0 4^0 Novembris.}[166] ~~Of Antiquity about It~~ \ Of note – to be seen in or about it I saw / onely a little pool ~~about~~ \ in / the midle ~~thereof~~ which they call the Old Casway. But see Camden & Speed. And nothing but the name of a parke is \ now / remaining.

{§36.}
But there is allso a stinted Common belonging to the towne ~~or village of Troutbeck which is called~~ Woundale, laying towards Patterdal, at a full mile distance from the Towne. & a Common of pasture {by stint nearer to the Towne consisting of 3 Inclosures called by the names of the 3 Hundreds wherein store of Limeston slate turfe peat & Ling.}

{§37. Custom}
There are no fre holders.[167]
The Tenants hold only Richmond foe, pa[y]ing Rent \ & / fine \ Certaine every of them 1 year old rent onely / as in Ambleside*, with Heriots as they die, i.e. the best Beast[168] for all his Tenements, hold he never so many and the like ~~for a single one~~ \ if he have but one Tenement*. / And \ they say / If a man marry a Wife Heiress to a Tenement, it goes to his heires (if he have no Isue with her) & not to hers, which is general throughout the Lordship. Q. if not amongst all the Kings Tenants in other places of the Barony? But this is certaine out of a Decree Anno Jacs. Primi 17^0 [1619-20][169] shewd by Sir Daniel Fleming. That the Eldest sister d[eceased] of Co[n]san[guinity] being an heiress Inherits without any co-partnership in Tenancy held of the Richmond foe or Marquess foe – and upon d[eath] of every Tenant dying cesed of a Tenement leaveing a widow behind him, an heriot for which she enjoy her husbands Estate dureing her widow-hood onely.}
{* [&] *: Refer this to the general remarkes for the Lordship.}

[165] Also numbered, p.14.
[166] 'By death or alienation from a decree of 4 November in the 17th year of the reign of James I [1619-1620]'.
[167] MS: '\ There are ~~so~~ no ~~many~~ fre holders, ~~& the Rest of the~~ /.'
[168] MS: '~~best~~ best'.
[169] 'Decree in the 17th year of James I.'

[II.329]

[Woodlands]

{(§40.) Woods}
There is young Timber all Up & Downe, & ~~much~~ som old pollard which serves for fewell.
{(§41.) ad (§39.)}
They have Doates of wood in Troutbeck & Ambleside – on other Tenants groundes which the owner of the ground may not medle with nor disturb them of.

[II.328]

The Old Parke (which I take to have bin the Demain, & perhaps the ~~little one~~ \ other / too). {Refer this to the Old Parke [section] before.}[170] It was divided Equally amongst the Tennants by Survey, & they charged with so much Rent proportionably. And the wood likewise divided Equally accord to proportion; so that they who had lands without wood were to have a share (tho in other mens allotment) where wood grew; & hence I suppose it happens that to this day som Tenants have Right to wood in others grounds. When this partition hapned I know not, but \ there / are the Bookes of Survey in the parish (if they could be found) which would satisfy that query.

[II.329]

{Long lives ad Windermer &c.}

{(§.42)} {See §20 & referr to proper places}

Thom[as] Willan Parish-Clerke of Windermer was Buried 3 or 4 years agoe {ab Anno. 1692} on whom a good fellow made this epitaph.

"Hære lyes Tho Willan under this Ewe Tre.
who lived to bee 100 years & Three."

{Their Diet Imployments Exercise}

[Willan.] Perch sheepsheads & plucks – Haverbread; drinke good ale when he could get it. {Ferryman loved a glass of good Ale.}

George Robinson of Milbeck & Thomas Braithwate of the same, who dyed within a year one of the other & were Xtned together – lived to above 100 years. They were Buried with[in] these 3 years.

Robinson \ a fisher / seldom dranke any ale bein a waterman – but lived on the common country diet & much of Perch. /

Old Rob Brown of Crooke in Crook Chapelry buried 20 years agoe; lived to 120 years as all the neighbourhood & Sir Thomas Brathwate was convinced of by circumstances which he rememberd.}

Old Miles Jackson of Ambleside, buried about 14 years agoe; lived as the neighboures there Report 120,[171] \ which is a common thing in the parish. / But the Parsons of the Parish (before Mr Wilson the present Incumbent) never found out the wit to live half so long. 3 Remembrd [there] having bin 7 parsons there in the memory \ of man / & the longest liver enjoyed it not above 17 years – which was Parson Wakefield.[172] But Mr Wilson has had it 35 years & upwards, & is yet as like to live as to dye.[173]

{Martin Dixon & his wife of Parke ground near Calgath, lived near 6 score, & his wife to above 100. Buryed about a dussen year since. His Business was fishing: which trade (for chars)} they follow most in winter twixt Martinmas & Easter (being the only Season) & catch the most in the most stormy

[170] See II.322, II.326.
[171] 20 is superimposed over 60.
[172] James Wakefield, rector of Windermere (1627-44). Nurse, *Parish Church Windermere*, 17.
[173] William Wilson, rector of Windermere (1652-1705). Nurse, *Parish Church Windermere*, 17.

weather, & after the snows begin. {A fisherman seldom dyes under [his] appointed period of 70 years. Sir Xtopher Philipson never knew one [lost] by a su[dden] death.}[174]

[Borrans]

{§43. Borwen}
¼ mile N. from St Katherines Brow near Troutbeck brig on the E. Side of the River is a place calld Borrwens a (a Tenement of George Dixons, 3 younger Brother of Thomas Dixon somtime fellow of Queens College in Oxford, & now Rector of May-Hil in Hantshire.[175] [He] was Borne at Orresthead in Aplethwate – 1m. E. (ab Ecclesia) whose father Rased ~~a vast estat~~ \ above 1000. 1400 li / out of a Tenement of 16[li] per Annum) – near which is a place calld Battlehow.[176]
Another Borrans – in Aplethwaite (near High house in Ings Chapelry) a Tenement of John Wilsons. {Note} And \ ~~the sam~~ / Rowland Wilson was Born at [Blank] in the said chapelry of the Ings. And Rowland was his – q. what he Right[177] to? This was not Harry!

{§44. Batlehow}
{These places, & Woundale – & Spyinghow – may all importes som Battles fought hereabouts.}

[II.330][178]

Aplethwate Applethwate[179]

{§45. Aplethwate Schoole}
Aplethwate seems to have taken its name from the plenty of Aple trees (which have bin planted ~~hereabout~~ in their orchards, tho now there are ~~but few~~ \ not many, / and the bottoms thereabouts, which in their country Language are called Thwaites. {forsan (q.) the Weaites.[180] For there are plane valleys or howins,[181] down which a water course doth commonly go.} It is a long stragling ~~Town~~ \ Hamlet, / or rather a ~~Row of~~ \ number of single / houses rudely disposed \ & at a great distance one from another / extending it selfe 3 miles in Lenth \ & 2 in bredth. / The Houses are all built of a Ruff \ Ragg[182] / f\l/att stone and most of them slated, having their lands for the most part about their houses; which is the Reason why they are so far distant one from another.[183] It is an entire Constablewick & The River Troutbeck runns (at about eleven score ~~distance~~ \ yards / from their houses) at the High-end of the Constablewick called Line-fit, on the west side of it. & this part is within less than halfe a mile of Troutbeck ~~Kirke~~ Chappel, 3 miles from the parish church & 7 from Kendal the nearest market \ to but Ambleside. / The other end of it is within a mile of Winder-mer church, & som houses less; & 6 from Kendal. The Great Road twixt Kendal & Cockermouth goes through it, ~~extending it selfe~~ from Troutbeck-brig ~~towards the~~ \ running / South East.

[174] Words in square brackets are editorial suggestions; the original words are obscured by the binding.
[175] Thomas Dixon matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1664/5 aged 15; BA 1669; MA 1672/3; described as 'fellow of Queen's' in 1673; BD 1682; rector of Weyhill, Hants 1682-1708; DD 1685, see *OAD*; CCED. Machell wrote 'May-Hil', but both websites attribute this rectory to Weyhill, Winchester Diocese.
[176] See correspondence between Rev. Thomas Dixon and Sir Daniel Fleming in John Richard Magrath (Ed.), *The Flemings in Oxford: Being Documents selected from the Rydal Papers in Illustration of the Lives and Ways of Oxford Men 1650-1700, Vol. II, 1680-1690* (Oxford, 1913), 2, 7, 17, 18, 21, 24, 29, 33, 34, 37, 45, 47, 52, 53, 64, 69, 71, 74, 75, 78, 85, 88, 95, 104, 113, 124, 130, 136, 291.
[177] This word is badly blotted; the transcription is therefore insecure.
[178] Also numbered p.15.
[179] One written in pencil, the other in ink.
[180] Thwaite or thwate: a piece of ground cleared from forest or reclaimed from waste. *OED*.
[181] From 'howe': a hollow or valley. *OED*.
[182] Rag/ragg: see the English Glossary.
[183] MS: '(~~most of them~~ \ for the most part / about their houses, which is the Reason why they are so far distant one from another, ~~& take up so much ground. The River Troutbeck~~.'



Figure 2.9.13. Margin sketch of St Katherine's Chapel, Applethwaite. II.330.

{§45. St. Katherines-Brow}
And in this Road at a Place call'd St. Katherines-Brow \ ab Ecclesia 2m. / was an old chaple, now turn'd into a dwelling house {6 yards broad at the west end and 18 long}[184] but som part ~~very~~ fair \ enough / yet to discover that it \ had bin / a chapple; & the name of the place doth show the dedication.[185] {Hence perhaps St Katherine Picture in the E. window of Windermer Church} {But Aplethwate now is […] Troutbeck Chap[el] at least som part of it.}[186] {Mr Jo. Philipson – now of Cal garth – sayeth his Uncle Christopher Philipson (perhaps he meanes his great uncle) went to School at this chapel when he was a boy.}

Ad Calgarth – alias Caw-garth.

{§46.} {Caw-garth Hall}
There is allso an Hall on the West side of this place called Callgarth, a mile from the church & 7 from Kendal \ reputed to be in Aplethwaite & yet payes its Rent to the Kings ground of Undermilbeck / It is a fair stone building & in good Repaire. The situation thereof is very pleasant, being built upon a Level within 12 score of Windermer-water \ (on the east side of it) / a great part of which is within Prospect \ out of the Dineing Roome which is a fair one; / & is renderd more commodiouse by a Parcel of Fishing ~~by their own ground~~ belonging unto it. & ~~There are~~ very good gardens & orchard about (page 338).[187]

[II. 338]

Calgarth, i.e. the Parock within a Call,[188] \ whence som who have supposed it hath taken its name; for in several places they call their gardens by the name of Cal-garthes. And ergo I should have gladly received this op[inion] if I had not found it written Calv garth. Note de vaccarys.[189] / & there were stately woods belonging unto it but lately cut downe; in the places of which some young one[s] \ Tres / are growing.

{§47. No Tenants}
There is a Demain belonging unto it which lyes by the house, & the land very good both for meadow corn & pasture. But there are no Tennants belonging unto it: \ here but those at Winstar appeare at this place / but it pays a Rent. But they have Tenants at Winstar purchased to a fine certaine: But there being an Intale are Arbitrary & Heriotable.

[II.331]

{Descent of the Place}[190]
I am apt to believe that this Estate did formerly belong to the family of Cawgarths, who tooke name from hence and of which sirname there were som remaining not many years agoe; for Tho[mas]

[184] Dimensions taken from the sketch of St Katherine's Chapel, *Figure 2.9.13.*
[185] Two interlineated words are illegible here.
[186] Transcribed as seen; this unclear sentence is also blotted.
[187] The page number is a later addition, in another hand. Obedient to the advice given, this edition continues on II.338.
[188] Parock: an enclosed area of ground; a small field or paddock, especially one close to a farmhouse. *OED*. Hence Machell's reference to a garth (garden). 'Call' and 'ca' are dialect terms for either a cattle-walk or a calf, see Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary 1*, 477, 492. In *Westmorland Place-Names*, the name Calgarth is said to mean, 'Calf enclosure'.
[189] Vaccary: a place where cows are kept or pastured; a dairy-farm. *OED*.
[190] Here there is a ½cm sketch of a cross-crosslet.

Mackerith an Antient man now living in Ambleside was told by a neighbour who dyed about 40 yeares agoe[191] of one Caw-garth of the Water-head with a Remarquable Circumstance of him – That he / had an Excellent fishing {char fishing puto} in Windermer off ~~of~~ Sea-maw-Crag, which never could be met with ~~since~~ agane after he dyed; nor is it discovered to this very day. He told me also

[The Gargen]
another very Remarquable Passage (which I thinke fit here to Insert (though out of the County) for the rarityes sake;[192] of one Ellin the w[ife] of George Mackerith of Skelwith near unto Brathey in the County of Lancaster; who standing by whist they opening the Panch[193] of a cow at Martinman time in 1685,[194] had her hair all cinged with a flash of fier that came out Thence; & yet they found nothing extraordinary in it but a great hard lumb[195] or marg[…][196]
As to the natural cause: The natural cause hereof is said to proceed from an hot distember,[197] called the Gargen,[198] which is occasioned by Eating the Rootes or Slips,[199] branches, of the Ewe tree, or by Eating of Ackorns, as the same man informed.

[II.332]

[Calgarth Hall]



Figure 2.9.14. Draft sketch of Calgarth Hall, annotated, 'not right'. II.332.



Figure 2.9.15. Arms at Calgarth Hall, annotated, 'Set the[se] off a little wider one from another'. II.332.

[191] There follows 5cm of illegible scored-through text.
[192] As Machell also did when recording, 'A Relation of a Spirit which appeared last Xtmas in Langedale parish of Stainthrop near Barnard Castle in the Bishoprik of Durham, 1674'. Part 1, Ch.6, Brough: I.397-98.
[193] Stomach.
[194] Cattle breeding formed a large part of the economy of the far north of England but wholesale slaughter of cattle at Michaelmas (suggested in Machell's passage) is questionable as it was then possible to overwinter breeding animals successfully. During the autumn, butchers received only the animals that had been led south by drovers for final fattening. See A. F. Kinney, D. W. Swain, E. D. Hill, W. A. Long (eds), *The Routledge Encyclopedia of Tudor England* (New York, 2001), A7.
[195] Lump.
[196] The rest of this word is obscured by the binding.
[197] 'Distemper': a disease of dogs characterised by catarrh, cough, and loss of strength. *OED*.
[198] 'Garget': a disease among animals, especially cattle and calves: Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary 2*, 562.
[199] 'Slips': twigs. *OED*.

The Armes marked 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. Are in the Hall windows \ & all with compertments though omitted here for Brevityes sake. / whereof the 1. is Gules a cheveron betwen 3 Bores head couped Ermin Langued Azure {q. if not more Ermins} By the name of Philipson = Impaleing Azure – {upon a cheveron betwene 10 Cinfoyles Argent, 4, 2, 1, 2, & 1; 3 mullets Gules} a Cheveron Argent charged with 3 mullets Gules betwene 10 spurrowels of the second – 4, 2, 1, 2, and 1. By the name of Carus.[200]
2nd is Philipson with the same Compertments & so are the Rest though here omitted = Impaleing, Azure 6 Lyoncels Rampant Argent. By the name of Labourn.
3. The Third is Barry of Ten. Or & Sable a Canton of the second, by the name of Brigs.
The 4th Coate ~~has the like Compertment; and~~ is Philipson Impaleing = Gules 3 cheveronells braced ~~counter compony~~ \ vaire[201] / on a chiefe Or; a mullet \ piercd / of 5 pointes, Sable, ~~pierced of the chiefe~~. By the name of Wivel.
The 6th Carus Impaleing Wivel which is in plaster over the Hall Chimney where also Philipson single.[202]
The 7th is Philipson with the like compertment quartering Carus.[203]
The 6th is Philipsons Paternal Coates (which is also ~~in the Parlour~~ on the Hall Chimney don in plaster) ~~as like~~ with this motto above – FIDE NON FRAVDE[204] – where also is Carus Impaleing Wivel, both in plaster. & The same with the former is in glass in the Parlour.

{A stately dineing Roome is wainscoted about}[205]
There is a stately wainscoted Dineing Roome which looks into Windermere; & on the Chimney Pice; are these single Coates. 1. Philipson. 2. Wivell. 3. Carus. 4. Briggs.

[II.331]

{Windermer Parish Memoranda}

James Machel of Haverthwate near Ulverston/Ouston in Lancashire.[206] 3 miles below Newby Bridge a Ship Carpenter \ wood monger / & Merchant = One in Hutton a substantial man.

Old Mr Sands
To Mr Sands of Hawkside checking for assume his coat of armes & saying he might [cause] trouble. The other replyed, thou shalt not need; for thy Armes I will leave the[e] to get thy living with; for thy coate I would not be in it for anything.[207]
{The True & Modest account of Windermer}
Fower miles below this Ile – It is not above a mile at most, so on to 3 quarters, ½ a mile, 1 quarter &c. – It was \ lately / plum'd at Read Hill above the Sand beds ab Ecclesia 3m. NW. & was found there to be 40 fathom deep.

The parson has 4d per Annum for the Tithe \ of every board / per composition ab Antiquo.[208]
{5s free Rent paid by Sir Xtopher Philipson to the Crown for his Ile without Fine or Heriot which is paid, in which Aplethwate, & payes with it in all Tax[e]s.}
~~Borwens at Ambleside in in Windermer Parish where the coines are found.~~[209]

[200] 'Carus' was added in pencil. Part of this sentence was underlined with pecked lines; Machell often did this when he was unhappy with a passage as it stood.
[201] 'Vair' or 'vaire': one of the heraldic furs. *OED*.
[202] The 5th is missing.
[203] 'Carus' was added in pencil. Machell omitted the 5th. This 7th may be the original 5th.
[204] 'By Trust not Treachery.'
[205] This extensive margin comment is faded and scored through. Only the first sentence (given here) is clear.
[206] Old names for Ulverston include Oostan and U'stan: Rollinson, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect*, 115.
[207] For Sands, see Part 2, Ch.2, II.26-27, II.39. The story told here is explained more clearly on II.27.
[208] 'From an old composition.' Composition: see the English Glossary.
[209] The MS here contains a note relating to the Barony of Westmorland. MS, '{Memorandum ad Browham} Hel dungeon near The Chapel by the water sid.}'; not transcribed in the body text.

Ad §46. & see p. 21.

Calvegarth. [Philipson]

{Out of Sir Daniel Flemings Collection MS. A. p.50 ex originali}[210]
Note – Here is the grant & distinction of their Armes. This must be Added to the Account in my Booke of Pedegrees.
{18 May 1581 Rob. Cooke Clarency[211] confirm'd this coat, & gave this Xt[212] to Rowland P. alias Thirlwall: sc. G[ules] a Cheveron inter 3 Borrs heads coupes Ermin tusked de Or. Crist on an helm 5 ostridge feathers, Sc. 3 Argent & 2 Gules set in a Crown mural de Or.} {And to Miles of Thwatterden Hall, younger brother of Rowland, the same armes with a Bordure Gold, the Crist as the other, only 3 feathers Gules & 2 Argent. Mantle Gules. Doubled Or limned White.}



Figure 2.9.16. Calgarth Hall. II.333.

1. Christopher Philipson of Calvegarth Esq. J.P. = marryed Mary d. of Tho. Piercyhay Esq. = 2ly Ann d. of Rich. Burgh Obijt Sine Prole	4. Carus Ph. ob sine pro	3. Rowland ob s.p.	2. Robert obijt s.p.	5. John Philipson of Calvegarth Esq brother & heire of Christopher	= Dorathy d. of Xtopher Crackenthorp of Newbigging Esq	1. Ann w. to Hen. Ward of Rigmaden	2. Mary wife of William Shaw	3. Catherine W. of George Gilpine of Kentmere
7. Miles 6. William	4. Rowland 5. Carus vicar of Almundbury mar. = Dorathy High	3. John	2. Xtopher	1. Rob. P. of C. Esq. J.P. Hee dyed beyond sea	= Barbara d. of Will Pennington of Seaton Esq. obijt May 20. 1678	1. Mary	2. Ann	3. Margaret 4. Dorathy 5. Barbara
5. Rowland S.P. 6. William Philipson	4. Miles Pr s.p.	3. Rob. Philipson	2. Christopher Ph. maryed = Wharton	1. John P. of C. Esq.	= Mary youngest d. of Sir Rob. Paton of London Knight Feb. 15. 1688	1. Beatrice	2. Dorathy	3. Judeth

[210] For the Philipson pedigree in Sir Daniel Fleming's Book A, see CAC(C), D/Lons/ L12/2/1, 49-50.
[211] Clarenceux. Robert Cooke (d. 1593) was appointed Clarenceux King of Arms in May 1567: J. Day (2008, January 03), Cooke, Robert (d. 1593), herald. *ODNB*.
[212] Chart.

[II.336]

The Arms & Inscriptions

There is also writ upon the hall windows in 4 pains of Glass being oblong squares in capital letters Sc.
1. Robert Phillison | & Jennet Laibor | ne his wife. He dyed in Anno 1539 | The 22 of Dece | mber. 1579.
2. Rowland Phillis | on. And Katherine C | airos his wife. He dyed in Anno. 1516 | The 30th of awgus. 1579.
3. Robart Phillison | And Jennet Laibor | ne. his wife. He die | d in Anno. 1539. | the 22 of Dece | mber 1579.
{Note the 1 & the 3 are the same. The latter dates are the time when the glass was made}

And on the like pains in the Parlour:
C. P. who dyed in Anno Domini 1566 the 21 of August. On another, R. K. 1569.



Figure 2.9.17. On a silver tumbler, the Arms of Philipson. II.336.

And on a Silver Tumbeler – The Arms of P[hilipson] Impaled 2 Coates parted per fess as it were – 1. Ermin 6 Birds: - 2ly underneath That a Cheveron betwene three mullets pierced – which I suppose is intended for Crackanthorps but theirs are not Pierced. & ergo is a mistake of the graver.[213]

[Philipson Descent]

	Ann the d. of Richard Brough of [Blank] in Yorksh.	1. Christopher P. of C. Esq. J.P. 1= maryed Eliz. d. Sir Marmaduke Wivell of Burton in Yorkshire.	2. John Philipson of Calgarth son of Rowland	= Dorathy d. of [Blank] Crackenthorp of Newbigging Esq. Great Aunt to the Now Lord of Newbigging	[Blank] to [Blank] Gilpine of Kentmer	[Blank] to Ward of Rigmaden	
	2. John A merchant of Newcastle	3. Carus P. Parson of Almundbury in Yorkshire near Halifax	1. Robert Philipson of Calgarth	= Barbara d. of Miles Pennington of Seaton Esq. obijt May 20 1678	Mary To George Whinfel of Newcastle	Ann Maryed to One Gervice in London	
William	Rob.	2. Xtopher to Mrs Wharton	1. John Phillipson of Cowgarth	= Mary d. of Sir Robert Clayton of London 1. Mary 2. Jane	Beatrice	Dorathy	Judith

{Rowland of Calvgarth Esq. A.P. = Katherine d. & heire of Nic. Carus of Kendal 1. Xt & 2. John.}
{~~Tis said his Uncle Xtopher went to Schoole at St Katherines Chaple; perhaps he meant his great Uncle~~.}[214]

[213] The reference to the engraver's mistake appears to be a pencilled addition.
[214] See II.330.

Xtopher [Philipson] of Calvgarth[215]

{Temp. Marie & Eliz.}	1. Rowland		2. Miles Phil. of Thwatterden Hall Esq. J.P. Stuart (?) & Receiver of al the Crown Rents in the Barony	= Barbara Sister & coheire of Francis of Conishead in Lancashire	3. Clara N.B. take only the first line & leave the collaterals
Henry Jac	3. Miles, who had from his father The Moity of Conished which he sold & went to his sister the countiss [of Arundel][216] whose son Miles maryed Alderman Mawsons d. of London. Borne in Skelsemire qua nota. This Miles is now in Wiltshire	2. a Daughter who had to her 2nd Husb. One Arundel a count of the E[m]pire; who had one son whose descendent is in Herefordshire & 5 daughters maryed to great fortune 1. to the Earl of Shrewsbury 2. to the Earl of Somerset 3. to Lord Evers 4. to Sir John Fortiskew 5. […] of Wild Street London. […] by whom he had a D, who has to her portion […]	1. Robert P. of Thwatterden Hall Esq. J.P. Stuart (?) & Receiver of al the Crown Rents in the Barony	= Ann d. of ~~Sole heire of John~* ~~Latus of Whiteham park in Cumberland~~ 4. John P.LB.[217] Fellow of ~~Queens~~ \ Marton / College in Oxford[218]: whom offerd the presentation of Windermer to him but he Refusd	2. Elizabeth 3. Xtopher whose descendant is maryed to Ralfe Latus of Beckhall in Cumb. N.B. See the Pedegree of the Philipsons in my Booke of Pedegrees
			Christopher of Th. ~~P colonel under King Ch~~. Captaine of foote in Sweeden	= Mary the d. of William Hudleston Esq. of Millum Castle in Cumb.	
2. Robert = Ann d. of Thomas Knipe of Burblethwaite Inquire, near Witherslack 1. Robert | 1. Christopher 2. Clare			1. Hudleston Ph. Col[onel] under King Ch. I.	= Elizabeth D. of Allan Askeugh of Skeughsby in Yorkshire & from Yorke Eliz. to Latus of Witch. A younger brother	
2. Alan Capn of Foot in Flanders at the 1. Fraye of Mons – [sine] prole[219] 3. Robert Capt. Of a privateere in Jamecha not heard of these 14 yrs![220] + Miles at London unmarried.			1. Sir Christopher P.	= Clara the d. of Lyonel Robinson of Cowton Grange, near Richmond in Yorkshire. w. Francis Topham of Aglethorp near Midleham	

[215] This muddled pedigree is blotted (*Figure 2.9.18*, below); therefore parts of the transcribed pedigree have been left blank and even the transcription of the rest is insecure. See the pedigree (1615) of Philipson of Thwatterden Hall in Joseph Foster (ed), *Pedigrees recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891), 104.

[216] This information provoked negative comments from T.G.F. (reviewer of Jane Ewbank's *Antiquary on Horseback*, Kendal, 1963). 'On p.123 we are told that Miles Philipson sold a moiety of Conishead to his sister the Countess of Arundell, but neither Miles nor his sister ever owned a moiety of Conishead for it descended to their brother Christopher Philipson (died 8 March 1599/1600) who is omitted from the pedigree altogether.' See 'Recent Publications 2. *Antiquary on Horseback … edited by Jane Ewbank*', CWAAS Extra Series 19 (Kendal, 1963), in *CW2*, 64 (1964), 413-15, at 414.

[217] Bachelor of Civil Law.

[218] Merton College: see Foster, *Pedigrees*, 104.

[219] For Captain Alan Philipson and others mentioned here, see *N&B1*, 180-84. See also T.G. Fahy, 'The Philipson Family II: Philipson of Crook Hall', *CW2,* 73 (1973), 240. The siege of Mons took place in 1691 during the War of the League of Augsburg or 'Nine Years' War' (1689-97), see R. Foley, 'League of Augsburg War', *The Oxford Companion to Military History* (Oxford, 2001).

[220] For Captain Robert Philipson, see Fahy, *Philipson Family II*, 240.



Figure 2.9.18. Philipson Descent. II.338.

[II.341][221]

{Ad Calgarth, Crooke, Hollinhow}

[Phillipson Family]
The family of the Phillipsons are descended of an Ancient family of the Thirlewalls of Thirlewal Castle by the Picts-wall on the edge of Northumberland which adjoynes upon Cumberland: And are said to \ have com'd into Westmorland, and assumed this Sirname ~~of Phillipson~~ upon this occasion: There being a League betwixt the English and the Scots; & som Scottish Officers coming to search for ammunition in Thirlewal Castle would needs Rudely press into a Roome that was locked up: whereupon a younger son the Family kild one of the Officers;[222] which being a violation of the League betwixt them, he was forced to flye \ ~~for It~~ / & came to a place here in the Barony (in Nether Stavley) called Hollin~~s~~ How, then in the posesion of a certaine Tanner, who wanting Stock to traid withal. & the young Gentleman haveing money enough,[223] for his father had given him his portion with him, furnishd the Tanner upon the Condition that he might goe halfes – by which he increased his money considerably. \ At length [he] got that House / ~~that Estate~~ \ which was their 1^{t} Seat ~~said~~ in Com. Westm'land / and after made Suit of an Heiress whose name is supposed to be Thwatterden of Thwatterden-Hall, & marrying her, came to that Seat which is now calld Crooke Hall.
{Sure this has bin Robert Phillipson the 1^{t} of Hollin How circa 1456 as is computed. T.M. vulgo.}

[221] Also numbered p.21.
[222] MS: 'There being a League betwixt the \ English and / the Scots \ said / ~~& the northern being~~ & som ~~off the~~ Scottish ~~Gentlemen~~ Officers coming to search for amunition ~~said to be there~~ \ in Thirlewal Castle / would needs Rudely press into a Roome that ~~was~~ was locked up: ~~a son of~~ / whereupon a younger son the Family kild one of the Officers.'
[223] MS: 'Then in the / posesion ~~at that time by a~~ \ of a certaine / Tanner, who wanting Stock \ to traid withall & the / ~~&~~ young Gentleman haveing ~~considerable given in money which he brought a long with him he furnishd the Tanner & went halfes with him~~ \ money enough.'

Afterwards they \ are said to have / maryed the Heiress of Calgarth & \ so / had that Estate, both which are \ now / poss'd by the Phillipsons; Callgarth being Given to the Elder Bro: whence \ is descended / John Phillipson (Esq.) the present Proprietor ~~is Descended~~; and Crooke hall to a worthy Gentleman, Sir Christopher Phillipson the owner of it and of This Iland, with several other Places in the Barony of Kendal.
{See Thirlwall Pedigree for one Philip de Thirlewall about that time, or write to Mr King about it? Inde pro Crista coronam muralem.}[224]
{How they came to Calgarth & Thwatterden hall it doth not appear; But Xt[opher] Ph. Receiver to King Ed. The 6 in these northern parts (who dyed the 21 August. 1566) was the 1[t] of that name I finde at Calgarth. And Miles his 5 Son, but second*.}

[II.341A]

*Whose Mother was a Labourn of Cunswick, his wife a Briggs of Helsfell hall in Strickland Ketle; but neith[er] ~~of them~~ an Heiress: nor any before them, & therefore I guess he had it by Purchase or by gift from the King, being his Receiver. And Miles his 5[th] son, but second that had lived, was the 1[t] of this name at Thwatterden hall now called Crooke, which was either Purchased by his father or came by the marriage of Barbara Sandes sister & coheire of Frances Sandes of Conishead in Com. [Blank]

[II.341]

{The Phillipsons of Crooke were also owners of Helsfell-hall in Strickland Kettle, Purchased by Miles Great great grandfather to Sir Xt[opher] Phillipson. \ For Miles his mother was a Brigs of ~~now~~ Helsfell hall, but no heiress neither / And Troutbeck parke ~~both which he~~ \ as I / have said – & Lindith purchasd by the said Miles – being 3 Tenements – And Burblethwate demane} \ & 14 or 15 / Tenements which was Thomas K[n]ipes Gentleman of Cartmell in Lancashire & Langthwaite a freehold estate [and] some Tenements in Millum.
These had also formerly by marrying an Heiress of the Sands'es of Conyshead in the County of Lancaster, one moity of that Demane & one Doding the other ~~& they marryed an Heiress~~ Latus of Whitcham Hall in Millum; ~~but for a composition in money as is supposed~~. It remaned to one of that name & so doth […][225]

[II.339]

Windermer [Water]

~~There is a drye well in the Iland~~
St Johns well by the schoolhouse 3 yards, \ 300 yards / ab Ecclesia, the runnel of which comes through the Town within 60 yards in winter.[226]
Mr Wilson has seen 30 swans in \ a / flock \ in winter / and got no much as the Tithe of them, tho an excellent gunner.

{ad §52.}[Sparrow Hawks]
Sparrow Hawkes Build in the Iland. Mr Wilson has 3. & the Patterdale Eagle comes to fowle here. But build not in this country.[227]
Bald-Cootes alias Bellcouts[228] & cormorants too many for they destroy the eales abundantly. Sir Xt[opher] has seen 17 in a flock; & Xt[opher] Philipson of Burthwate, kill 2 at a shot; & holding one of them up by the feete, she disgorgd 4 Eales out of her stomack; no way injured \ disgested or putrifyed. /

[224] 'Hence a mural crown for a crest.' 'Mr King' was probably Gregory King (1648-1712) clerk to William Dugdale, 1662; herald, registrar of the College of Arms, 1684-1694: see J. Hoppit, 'King, Gregory (1648-1712), herald and political economist'. *ODNB*.
[225] The text here has perished.
[226] MS: '… the runnel of which comes through the Tow within 60 yards ~~of the chaple & Martin well within 100 ab Ecclesia~~ in winter.'
[227] In the MS, this paragraph also contains the scored-through phrase: '~~Hobbys upon the Glebe Woods~~.' A hobby is a small species of falcon, *Falco subbuteo*, formerly flown to kill larks and other small birds. *OED*.
[228] 'Bald Coot': coot (*Fulica atra*), named for its pure white wide frontal plate, with no feathers. *OED*.

Wild ducks in Great Plenty – also Skeldorkes {The Hen is the Gravy}[229] & White Sides, White Eyes; Lough Mallards by 100s in a flock. Goldins, Teales, Widgions, Toppins (an excellent fowle as large as a Duck),[230] Gants,[231] Didappers.[232]

Dr Rich[ard] Gardner
Dy-Dapper Dick, Dapper Dick Dapper dye
Dy-Dapper is seen in the fowl and for why.[233]

And divers others sortes of fowles, which they want names for. Wild geese – 60 in a flock. Parson Wilson.
{N. Gen. Juniper & ewe – up and down the parish – Tho now much destroyed. (Hollyes large & plentifull in the old park 3m. ab Ecclesia N.) Rasps – plenty. Croone berrys[234] Bog-berryes.[235] They burne mostly wood, peat being not plentiful.}

N.B. This Windermer-water doth properly belong unto Applethwate; for the whole Rents is charg'd upon it: & there the Pursevant[236] (If he finds no Boates upon the water \ to answer arrears[237] / will forthwith destrane.[238]

[II.340][239]

Aplethwate. Windermer-water.

The ~~broad~~ long Iland is in Aplethwate for it payes Rent & Sesses with it.

{§48.}[Applethaite Fell]
There is a Common \ without stint / belonging to this Hamlet called Aplethwait Fell, which joynes ~~to the~~ unto it \ on the east side. / There is \ Ling & Brackens / Quarries of Slate & Limestone; & Good Store of peet potts, whence they have their fuel. ~~Tho great~~ And another little common without stint ~~on~~ Sc. the fell call'd Scal-Knot {which joynes unto it on the S. E. side 1 mile long & 1 mile bredth in which is slate peets Turf & Ling.}

{§49. Windermere Lake see 50 & 51}
The Great Lake calld Winder-mer water \ is / on the west side of this Hamlet & \ the fishing held thereof / is farmed by several persons in it, as allso by som of Unde-miln-beck; who \ alltogether / pay 6^{li} per Annum ~~as an acknowledgement to the King~~ \ to the King, sayeth T.D. Balif. But XX[240] nobles

[229] This bird is possibly either, 1. The skelduck, otherwise known as the common sheldrake; or, 2. The gravel duck or goosander. See Wright, *English Dialect Dictionary* 2. 712 and 5. 461. For the gravy, see also II.340, below.
[230] 'Toppins': possibly 'tappens', named from 'the tuft or crest of feathers on the head of a bird; hence 'tappenie', a tufted hen', *Dictionaries of the Scots language*. Online.
[231] Gannets.
[232] 'Dab-chicks'. *OED*.
[233] The word 'didapper' (humorous, literary and rare) could be used to describe someone who (like the dab chick) disappears and then suddenly appears again, *Collins English Dictionary*. Online. 'Dapper Dick' appears also to have been the nick-name of local poet, Richard Braithwate, of Burneside Hall: see M.L. Armitt, 'Ambleside town and chapel', *CW2*, 6 (1906), 1-96, at 28; see also H. S. Cowper, 'Notes on Richard Braithwate of Burneside, the Poet and Writer, and his Portraits', *CW2*, 22 (1922), 78-84.
[234] Possibly the crown berry, which is a lingonberry. *OED*.
[235] Cranberries. *OED*.
[236] 'Pursuivant'.
[237] MS: 'arrers'.
[238] MS: 'destrane' = distrain: by the sale of chattels to obtain satisfaction for a debt, particularly for arrears of rent. *OED*.
[239] Also numbered p.20.
[240] 20.

i.e. 6:13:4, sayes Sir Xtopher; & others free Rent to the King for their / ferrying & fishing; & so it descends to them & their Heires. [241]
It is in Lenth 10 miles; in bredth ~~4 miles~~ \ about 2 or 2½*, / \ rather 10 long & One & ½ Broad / & in som places above 40 fathom deep.
{*Redbrow is said to be 7 score fathom 7 score y.}[242]

[II.338]

{Memorandum. The broadest of Windermere is from milhouse to the sand bed. It is much the same from Bowness to Furness Side – 2 m ½ once measured by a line.}

[II.340]

{Fish}
There are great store of Chars, both Golden Chars, & Red-chars \ & Case Charrs.[243] / Allso eeles. \ Common & Gray / Trouts. ~~Case~~ Pikes \ gret! / Perch. Silins & minnows.[244] Beäne prickts {i.e. Bone.}[245]

{Fowle}
And in the winter time ~~great store of~~ wild swan, \ wild geese, / Duck & Mallard, Teal, Wiggions, Bare-tales i.e. Didappers. Gravyes, which are larger than ducks & build in hollow trees.[246] \ And many others / whose names are not known to the inhabitants.

[II.336]



Figure 2.9.19. Cormorant seen at Windermere Parsonage. II.336.

[Cormorant]
A cormorant hanging in the parsonage house at Windermer. Long. 3f. 6 inches. Broad. 1f. besides the wings. They are larger than a goose & eat like read Deere baked. The feather are blackish.[247]

[241] Overfishing amid commercial interests was common to Windermere in the 17th century. See Parsons, 'The Brownes of Townend and the Township of Troutbeck, 173.
[242] Margin note written in pencil and crossed through; one of several illegible margin notes.
[243] 'Char': a small fish (*Salmo salvelinus*) of the trout kind, found in the lakes of mountainous districts in the north and in Wales, and esteemed a delicacy. 'Case Char': Arctic Char, *Salvelinus alpinus*. *OED*.
[244] 'Silins': sile or sil[l]: the newly-hatched fry or young of fish, *Dictionaries of the Scots Language*. Online.
[245] 'Bone prickets': small sharp points or spikes made of bone. *OED*.
[246] Possibly the gravel-duck, or goosander, see II.399, above.
[247] The sketch and notes here have been completed in ink over pencil and red crayon.

[II.340]

{§50.} [Storms]
There were 47 persons \ at Michaelmas tide / about 1634, drown[ed] in this water in passing the Ferry from Hawkside market homewards.[248] Som of the Horses got out after, but were so terrified with the storme & danger that they ran away 3 or 4 miles before they could be stopd.[249]
There was once a passenger who going[250] through this Part of the Country in Winter time into his journey to Cockermouth or som part of Cumberland in the Winter Season, & seeing a very fine plane before him all coverd with [snow][251] which was a very delightful object in this mountainous country, he entered at the Low end of it, takeing it to bee meadow, & rid all along for 10 miles together till he came att the very head of the water. And there he turned of to Ambleside, being in his road, & Enquired what spatious / meadow that was? that he gallop along for 9 or 10 miles.[252] The people wonderd & knew not what he meant till hee told them it was 10 miles

[II.342][253]

~~in lenth they discovered the mistake~~ \ by which they discovered the great mistake, / & told him what a danger he had escaped; upon which he presently fell in a Swoone: But recove[er]ed again.

{§51. Ilands in Windermer}
& so wee will lieve him on his journey. & Returne to the water – in which{there are diverse Iles, yet but 3 of note \ Sc. / 1. Bellingholm. 2. Longholm.[254] 3. Ladyholm.}
There are several little Ilands ~~in It~~. Sc. \ 1. / Rough-holme, \ 2. / Lady-holme, \ 3. / Hen-holme, \ 4. / Dixon holm {Boatma[n]s holme alias Crow holme, Bellingham Holme, Madenholm, Lingholm. Blakeholm,} 2 little holmes called Smale-holmes

{§52. Longholm & Aplethwate}[Holm House]
behinde the Long holme which had the one warren; which Long holme is 20 Acres of Land,[255] most of it Arable \ & formerly well wooded with oake / & a pretty house in it, \ called the Holm house, for which is paid a free rent of 8s per Annum, on which Aplethwate, with which it pay all manner of Dues.[256] /
[Robin the Divil]
It was besieged by Collonel Briggs in the Civil wars for 8 or 10 dayes till the siege was rais'd at Carlisle.[257] \ And then / Mr ~~Rob Phillipson~~ Hudleston Phillipson \ of Crooke to whom it belong'd / came from thence & Reli[e]ved his Brother Robert there. The next day being Sonday, Mr Robert

[248] The 'History of Kendal Church' gives the date as 1635, when on 18 October, 'The River Kent came into the vestry. 47 wedding guests drowned in the Windermere ferry sinking.' https://kendalparishchurch.co.uk/history
[249] See W.G. Collingwood, '"The Fatall Nuptiall," a Tract (by Richard Brathwaite?) on the Windermere ferry accident of 1635', *CW2*, 13 (1913), 147-59.
[250] This phrase replaces two words of scored-through, illegible text.
[251] MS: '~~And many others have bin cast away there.~~ There was \ once / a passenger \ who going / ~~travelling this way~~ \ through this Part of the Country in Winter time / into ~~Wales~~ \ his journey to Cockermouth / or som part of Cumberland \ ~~who being~~ / ~~ignorant of the Countrey~~ in the Winter Season & seeing a \ very / fine plane before \ him / ~~(for the water was frose over & coverd with snow)~~.'
[252] MS: '& rid all along ~~of it 10 miles in lenth~~ \ for 10 miles together / till he came att the \ very head of the / water ~~head where he turn'd of to~~ \ and there he Turned of to / Ambleside \ being in his road / & ~~dest~~ Enquired what ~~large~~ \ spatious / meadow that was? \ that he gallop along for 9 or 10 miles. /'
[253] Also numbered p.22.
[254] Now Belle Isle.
[255] MS: 'behinde the peat \ Long / holme \ which had the one warren; / which Long holme \ (is Tenant Right &) / is 20 Acres of Land'.
[256] The interlineation here is unclear.
[257] For 'Colonnel Briggs', see Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.234B and fn. The siege of Carlisle was raised in 1645: see Samuel Jefferson (ed.), *Isaac Tullie*, *A Narrative of the Siege of Carlisle, in 1644 and 1645* (Carlisle, 1840).

Phillipson with 3 or 4 more, Rid to Kendal to take revenge of the ~~Sequestrators~~ \ Committe men;[258] / passed the watch & rid in to the church up one Ile & down an other, to sacrifice \ on[e] of them / ~~or if he could have~~ {some of them if he could have met with any there}. [He] met with him whom I shall not name; but was dishorsd in his returne by the Gards, & his girths broke. But his partners reliev'd him by a desperate charge, & Robin in a trice clap'd his sadle on horseback & valting on to him without girth or stirrup, \ kild a Sentinal, / Gallopd away, & returned to the Ile by 2 a clock.
Upon this & such like adventures he was commonly calld Robin the Divil;[259] \ But / was Killd \ at last / in the Irish-warrs at Washford fight,[260] \ as is reported in the Roll of Crooke. This Ile is now possesd by \ Sir[261] / Xpher Phillipson Esq, son of Hudleston.[262]



Figure 2.9.20. 'Great Holm-house alias White-hall'. II.342.

Holm-house alias White-hall.
The rooms 5 Broad, 4 yards long something more.
Outside measure 10 Broad 14 & ½ or 15 L[ong] with the new window 16.

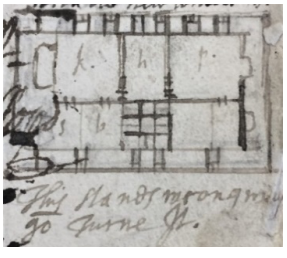


Figure 2.9.21. Plan of Holm-house (Whitehall). 'This stands wrong way; ergo, Turne It'. II.342.

An Hall 5. Kitchen 5 and Parlour 5 may do very well.

[258] The Parliamentarian Committee for the Sequestration of Delinquents' Estates was formed in 1643 to confiscate the estates of Royalists who had fought against the Parliamentarians in the Civil War. See 'Royalist Composition Papers', in David Hey, *The Oxford Dictionary of Local and Family History*. Online.
[259] Robert Philipson was a major in a Royalist regiment during the Civil War: *N&B1*, 142.
[260] Battle of Wexford (Ireland), 1649: a Cromwellian victory.
[261] Machell was here updating Christopher Philipson's title.
[262] 'Sir Walter Scott romanticised the Robin the Divil story in his poem, 'Rokeby'. Most of the sixth canto is devoted to Robert Philipson's famous ride into Windermere church, seeking out the unpopular Roundhead commander, Colonel Briggs. See *The Works of Walter Scott, Esq: Volume 9, Rokeby* (Edinburgh, 1813), Notes to Canto VI, 2, 411-13. For a fascinating description and analysis of this event, see Pauline Wharton, 'The True Story of Robin the Devil', https://paulinewharton.wordpress.com/the-true-story-of-robin-the-devil.

[II.343]

{§53.}Lady Holm
This Ile is N. ab Ecclesia ½ a mile; from the Long Holm ½ m N.E.
On a blew Table Stone a.
NOVIT. PAUCOS: SECURA QUIES: CHR: PHILIPSON 1631[263] being one line
On another Table below:
1605 NON EST MORTALE QVOD OPTO ChRISTOFER PhILIPSON[264]
He was said to retire thither on the Sundayes after Morneing Service till the Evenprayer.
In this [isle] are seve[r]al sorts of wood; a Ewe Holly Juniper Linwood Broome Sally[265] Hassell Ash Oacke Maple Aspe[266] Raspberryes Bleaberyes.

{§54.}[Pike]
A[…]?[267] 23. 1686 – a Pike was presented to Sir Daniel Fleming \ of Ridal / taken in a Net the day before, which was 1 yard & 6 Inches Long: and ½ a yard 3 inch & ½ in circumference at the thickest part: & which weighed 24 li & ¼ Wool \ & Butter / weight.

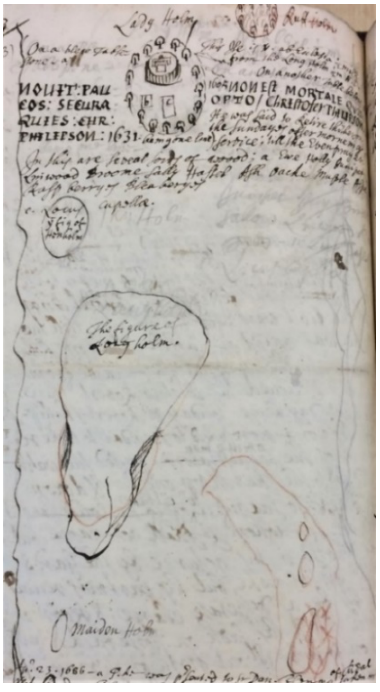


Figure 2.9.22. Windermere, showing 'Ruffholm, Ladyholm, Henholm, Longholm Maiden Holm'. II.343.

{§55.}Som Ilands with their position in Windermer to be compared & placed in the map.

[263] 'Few enjoy rest free from care Chr Philipson, 1631'.
[264] '1605. That which I long for is not a mortal thing.'
[265] Machell wrote 'sallow' in pencilled notes below this paragraph, but, in a later inked draft, he wrote 'sally'.
[266] The word is obscured by the binding; perhaps it is 'aspen'[?]
[267] This appears to be A[pril] but could also be A[ugust]. Machell's question mark suggests that he was unsure of the date. According to Charlotte Kipling, Windermere pike were caught throughout the year in the 17th century, unlike char, which were caught at spawning time, in either spring or autumn. See, 'Commercial Fisheries of Windermere', 168, 189.



Figure 2.9.23. Windermere.. Detail from the larger image on II.343.

[II.344]

{(§56.)} {? Cawgarth}
There is noe Freehold in this vill[age] but Cawgarth \ unless & the Iles may be so Accounted, which pay a free rent / which payes quit Rent to the King & appears at {Which Court?}
{q[uery] if he hold not Lady holm as free land of the King & an Appurtenance of Cawgarth} {Yes it is in the Park.}

{Tenure}
The Tenants or Inhabitants of this Village hold of their Lands according to the Custom of ~~the manner of~~ Richmond foe, paying \ to the Crown an annual / Rent fine Certane & Heriots which \ Heriot is / ~~One for all~~ \ the / best beast \ they have & which they pay for / for all they hold, as the former \ Tenants. / But their fines \ som what / defer; for these pay onely 2 penny fine at change of Lord \ i.e. 2 years rent in the name of a fine, / & 3 penny fine \ i.e. 3 years Rent, / at the change of Tenant. The reason why the others doe not pay so much is because they say \ these Estates were augmented whilst / it was forrest-grownd \ & ergo more rent & fine laid upon them. / They doe Suit \ & service / a[t] the Court Baron ~~at the~~ \ held for this Lordship in / Schoolhouse in Bowness & 2 &c. Appear at the Court Leet at Kendal once in the year, as in other places*.
{*This is a general note for the Kings Tenants, & all pay Greenhew.}

They have the wives Land to them & their Heires; & may give their Tenements by Will-writ, or deed, to any Stranger, from their \ owne / Heirs. But the widow enjoys at her husbands estate when he dyes seised viz. posessd \ in Tenancy of / dureing her ~~pur~~ viduity. ~~And for~~ And these are \ Reckond as / general cu[s]tomes amongst all the Kings Tennant \ both / in Grosmere & Windermere; ~~excepting for Heriots, for~~ \ But in matter of Heriots there is som difference: / those who hold by Richmond fee & Marquess fee are lyable to a duble Heriot if they have 2 Tennements of different Tenures. But if they have 20 of each \ of those Tenures, / they pay no more.
~~There are no freehold but \ Phillipson of / Cawgarth. Where both reside~~.

{§57. Windermer}
How what Rent is charg'd upon Aplethwate. If the Kings Pursevant finds no Boates upon the water or if any Boate be upon the water when they [are] not afishing he will distrane upon them, if they refuse to pay.

[p. 346][268]

Under-miln-beck – & Bowness

{§58. Undermilnbeck wherein is Bowness}
~~Bowness and~~ Undermilnbeck \ with Bowness which is part of It / make another Constablewick. N[ote.] I take Aplethwate to be divided into 2 partes: Sc. Overmilnbeck, commonly called Applethwate, & Undermilnbeck, wherein Bowness standeth. {q.} And it takes the name of

[268] The previous page (II.345) contains the following question, written in pencil: '? How springs & Runs Milbeck.'

Undermilnbeck from the ~~Mill~~ River above which comes from Aplethwate, divideing that place from this. \ Which drives a miln here. / The chapple of Winster is within this ~~Hamlett~~ \ Constablewick, / but, neither in the Lordship nor Parish – concerning which see more in Kendal parish.[269] It is distant from Hawkside market 4 miles & 6 from Kendal; from which it stands \ N. /W.

{§59. Bowness}
The Houses ~~Stand~~ \ are of a Ruff Thin stone, & stand, / stragling for the most part, except in Bowness round about the church where they are ~~more~~ \ about a dussen houses stand pretty / thick, & many of them are coverd with a \ Blackish / Blew Slate got in their own grounds. It is seated for the most part below the River which runns on the nor-east of it & so powers itselfe into Windermer Water which also belongs ~~to~~ \ unto / this Township in part, & here they have the Ferry Boate to convey the market folks \ & other passengers / from Hawkside to Kendal. In which passage those 40 people afore mentiond were drown'd & \ insumed / *Som of them as if they had forseen \ or presaged / the mischief; would not enter the Boate till hailed in & carried in the Arms of their friends & other acquaintance. {*either the other story must be brought in here: or this passage added There.}[270]
The Places of Chiefe Remarke are the Church, of which we spoke before in the General account of the Parish, The Schoole & The Parsonage House.

{§60. Windermer School in Bowness}
The School is a Stone Building 2 stories under Roofe & Broad 6, 13 yards Long, with a Chimney in the end of it & Slated al over, It ~~is close by the church and goes by the name of Windermer-mer Schoole~~. \ It stands S.E. from the church about 100 yards[271] / & goes by the name of Windermer-Schoole, of which see more in my Papers with Mr Waise.[272] It stand ab Ecclesia 80 yards S.E.

[II.345A][273]

A brief Account of Windermer School
Att Windermer (alias Winandermer) in the Barony of Kendall & County of Westmoreland, there is a free School, scituate ~~now~~ in the Town of Bownes near Winandermer Water & att a small distance from the church of Windermer. The stock belong\ing/ there unto, (which was att first £100 is now advanced to £200) began in King James's reigne[274] by the liberall contribution of some well disposed persons in the two Hamletts of Aplethwaite & Undermilnebeck: but the School-House was not built till about 40 years ago (Sc: circa anno d'1637) att which time another contribution was made by the two foresaid Hamletts for the erecting the said School, which is […][275] governed by 4 Trustees and 10 Feoffees. The Trustees att present are Robert Philipson of Calegarth Esquire; William Wilson Rector of Windermer, Thomas Dixon of Orresthead & Robert Birkett of Lickbarrow, whose respective Heires or successors are to be deputed to this office for ever. And the Feoffees are to \ be / chosen out of the rest of the most substantiall & able men in both the aforesaid Hamletts, and when one half of them is dead, the surviving half makes choice of such as are to compleat & fill up the number ~~againe~~: and then new security is drawne betwixt the Trustees & Feoffees, & so from age to age perpetually.[276]

[269] See Part 2. Ch.3ii, Crook and Winster.
[270] See II.340, above.
[271] The text has smudged here; an addition notes the school was 80 yards from the church.
[272] Christopher Wase (1627-1690) was a headmaster and classical scholar who conducted a national free-school survey titled *Considerations Concerning Free Schools as Settled in England*, published in 1678: see R. Hodges, 'Wase, Christopher (1627-1690). *ODNB*. For Wase's use of questionnaires and his connections with Thomas Machell, see P.J. Wallis, 'Westmorland Schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey'. *CW2*, 67 (1967), 168-85. References to Wase in Machell's volumes are found in Part 1. Ch.1. Appleby, IV.35; Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.170; Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.170; Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.205.
[273] A small (15cm x 19½cm) sheet, comprising a letter in another hand, addressed to, 'Westmoreland Winandermere in Winandermere parish.'
[274] James I: 1603-1625.
[275] There follows one illegible scored-through word.
[276] See *N&B1*, 179; their account of the early history of the school appears to be based on this description.

This came from Thom Dixon, father to Mr Dixon fellow of our house.[277] Now Dr in Divinity.[278] {The Usher whereof makes an annuall & standing pension for the schoolmaster who is att present Thomas Wells.}[279]

[II.346]

{Bowness}
There is one thing very Remarkable in Bouness, that most of the people are power \ cottagers 15d a year to the King / yet will not betake themselves to any imployment[280] excepting its ~~bee~~ begging: They \ inter / marry one with another; ~~as soon~~ will spend all they have in the wedding weeke & then goe a begging. & Bring up their children to the same ~~profession~~ \ Trade /, never permitting them [to] doe a dayes worke for pay.[281] There was \ onely / one man ~~onely~~ (as has bin observed these 40 years) that betook himselfe to workeing \ an honest imployment enough / & the 1ᵗ day he wrought he was sore exclamd against for breaking their Custom; His neighbours telling him 'twas never a good world since Bowness people went to wo[r]ke. But this is a rarity {the like of which I never heard of the like ~~in al my travail~~s except in Hantshire att a place called [Blank] where their about 100 Inhabitants of the same profession. Trade.}

[Dues and Duties]

[II.347]

{§66.}
? Lastly, there are in this Hamlet (But in the Parish of Kendal) 14 or 15 Tenements which belong to this Lordship on the same side of the water{what do they call the place} which hold of the King in the same manner, & injoy the same priviledges.

{§67. Green}
There are allso 3 Tenements at Green over against Lady-holm in this Hamlet & Lordship which Appear at Court paying (a smale quit rent &c. {q. of both & how much} & Green-hew to the King. But \ Heriots & / a fineable Rent by Composition to Mr Phillipson of Calgarth, which seems to make that a petty Lordship. And Mr Phillipson allso payes to the \ Kings / Grave[282] of Undermilnbeck, To be payd the ~~Kings~~ Auditors for the use of the Crowne, 26 Pounds yearly: as free Rent for his Estate.[283] {ergo he seems to be in Undermilnbeck & not in Aplethwate, q. ideo.}[284]
And He has \ also / Tenants ~~also~~ At \ a place calld / Winstar, which is a distinct Lordship ~~from this & in Kendal~~ \ & Chappelry in the / Parish of Kendal yet (perhaps for That Reason, because they are his) are put in this Hamlet. They do Suit & Service at they own Court Baron held in their own Liberty where the Lord doth \ pleaseth / appoint. Pay Boone Hens & Capons, Shearing ~~Sheep~~ &c. Rents, & Fine Certane by a Late Comp[osition][285] but it doth not stand good because ~~twas~~ \ the estate was under / Intale[286] & q[uery] f[or] Heriots. But these pay nothing at all to the King.

---

[277] In Machell's hand. Dixon was a fellow of Queen's College, Oxford: see II.329, above.
[278] Written in pencil. Dixon Junior became DD in 1685: see II.329, above.
[279] This margin comment is partly obscured by the binding.
[280] This word is scored through, but as Machell did not provide a substitute, it has been retained.
[281] MS: 'never permitting them doe a dayes worke ~~they may never so much~~ \ for pay / money ~~for it~~.'
[282] 'King's Grave': a steward, person placed in charge of property. *OED*.
[283] In his review of Jane Ewbank's *Antiquary on Horseback* (1963), T.G.F. was astonished at this large free-rental: 'That the then Philipson of Calgarth paid for his lands in Undermilbeck to the auditors for the use of the Crown, 26 yearly as a free rent for his estate seems quite incredible. This is, for the period, a huge sum, surpassing the entire rent-roll for Undermilbeck which in 1574 was 1q. 3s. 10½d. (RK ii 82), and it must be remembered that these were fixed rents. As an illustration of what the rents really were, I quote all the Philipsons occurring in the 1650 list of free rents in the Marquis lands: Mr Phillipson 6/9; Mr Philipson 1/6; Mr Philipson of Crook 3/2; Mr Philipson of Helsfel 6/8: for the Richmond lands of the same date we find among the freeholders, Christopher Phillipson Esq., 4/2.' See 'Recent Publications 2.', *CW2*, 64 (1964), 413-15. Machell's figure is very clear and Jane Ewbank's transcription is accurate.
[284] 'Therefore enquire.'
[285] A sum of money paid in settlement of, or by way of compounding for, a claim or liability. *OED*.
[286] Intail: the limitation or destination of a freehold estate or fee to a person and the heirs of his body, or some particular class of such heirs. *OED*.

[II.350][287]

Windermer [Notes]
? Easter Booke {A pensione paid by the Parson of Windermer of a Mark per Annum every Easter to the Vicar of Kendal – & Gresmer the like.}
{Church on the Outside: L. 30; Steple 5; B. 20; Bells 3 & a Clock.}

{§61. Bran Fell}
There is a larg Common belonging to this place, one part of which is calld Bran~~t~~ fell:[288] \ Sc. Undermilnbeck & Bowness / in which are quarrys of Ruff walling stone & store of fearn or Brackens; the other Lindeth & Crooke fell, where there are quarries of stone, Turfe & a Bad sort of peat with plenty of fearne & Furrs which they call Whinns. {& there is a place calld Sommering hill where they used to have their sommer sports.}

{§62. Old field}
There is a Freehold in this Township calld Old field which belongs to Xtopher Phillipson which does Suit & Service. Which is well wooded with Oake \ Timbers / Trees,[289] ab Ecclesia [Blank]

{§63. Lickbar-row} {e Lickbarrow distant} {Now General for the Lordship}
And there are ~~four~~ \ 5 / Tennement in a place calld Lic\k/bar-row within this Hamlet which do Suit & Service at the Kings Court Baron paying a smalle Quit Rent & Greenhew?? (as every one of the Kings Tenna[n]ts doe), being 2d \ a / Tenement \ in som places & others 1d; / & is supposed either to bee for Liberty of Common or (which is more likely) ~~for~~ of green wood; for to Hew & Cutt is the same thing. These \ 5 / Tenements of Lickbarrow pay Rent & Fine-Certaine according to Composition & ~~an~~ Heriots allso by Composition to Richard Ducket of Kendal an Attorney, to whom they were either sould or mortgaged by one Timothy Knipe or \ his / son William. They being bough[t] by Samuel Knipe father of Timothy about 36 years agoe of Anthony Garnet of Crosthwaite, since of Crooke ~~&~~ Lately deceasd.
{Martes plenty, their skins sold at 10 groats a skin. & wilde cats. Eels pike. & pearch 17 inch & ½ long & 14 about – Sir Xtopher Phillipson. Parson Wilson. Xtopher Dixon […] son 18.}[290]

{§64. Thornburrow Hall} {Thornburrow Hall Distant?}
There is allso an other Tenement which doth suit at This Court calld Thornburrow Hall. It pays a Quit Rent & Green hew to the King; & pays 5s per Annum Rent to the Lord Wharton of Wharton \ of Wharton Hall with / an 8d fine. \ This has belongd to & bin built by the Thornburrows, whence it is that wee have their name & Armes \ and pictures / in the Church windows.

{§65. Lindath; Stors}
There are allso \ 7 /[291] Tenements ~~& allso~~ at a place calld Lindath; & 5 at Storrs, with a parcell of Peat-moss; which do Suit & Service at the Kings Court Baron, paying quit-Rent & Green-hew. But were Fineable to a family of the Willsons formerly of Spittle in the parish of Kendal – paying a certain Rent with Heriots & a fine Arbitrary. It is redy to be sold. {Lindath & Storrs distant 1m. N.E. & belongs to Sir John, Mr Graham.}

[II. 352][292]

There are Lastly other Tenants in this Hamlett, Sc. att Winster, but they are of Winster Lordship where they do Suit & Service; \ Customary Tenants in Lordship will appear / ~~paying~~ paying Boon Hens & Capons & Boone Shearing or Reaping; (where Heriots?) & Rent & Fine (Certaine by a late

[287] Also numbered p.28.
[288] MS: 'There is a ~~great~~ \ large / Common belonging to this place ~~It is calld Bran Fell~~ one part of which is calld Bran~~t~~ fell (~~may be from the bigger Common called Bratts which is hard at hand~~.'
[289] MS: 'which is well wooded ~~with oake~~ with ~~Timber~~ oake \ Timbers / Trees.' The interlineation is unclear.
[290] These men were Machell's informants; there is an illegible word here between 'Dixon' and 'son'. because a repair has been made to the paper.
[291] There is an illegible crossed-through word here (possibly '6'), which the numeral '7' has replaced.
[292] Also numbered p.30.

Composition) but nothing Regi.[293] \ But it would not stand the Estate being intailed. & nothing to the King. / {These belong to Mr Phillipson of Calgarth who payes to […] Grave of Undermilnbeck 26li yearly to be payed to the Audit of the King. & 30 other Tenants.}[294]
All the rest of Tenements within the Hamlet are the Kings solely & held by custom of Richmond foe only. These Hold in the same Manner with Applethwate & have the same Priviledges. There are also in this Hamlet, but in the parish of Kendal, 14 \ or 15 / Tenements belonging to the Lordship or the same of the water, which hold of the King in the same Manner {& enjoy the same priviledges.}

And so I have don with the several Lordships & villages conteined in them all which pay dues & dutyes to the Minister of Windermer or Composition for them; whose place of Residence is att Bowness, and The House is called the parsonage house, alias The Hall &c.

[II.351]

{§68. Bowness}

Here was a market kept on the Sundayes, meat, cockle, sheepskins – Swills[295] – on the S. side the Church under the Ewe Tree about 50 years since. But no charter. & now a meeting every Friday.

They pretended to Armes q.?

	Arthur Wilson John Wilson		
3. Allane W. to whom Bartle gave it by will obijt May 2 1675. no mar.	1. Bartle an Attorney at the Kings Bench obijt sine prole[296]	2. John, who released his brother Alane n. h. pro.[297] now living. 10. 10 1676	= maryed at Stratford by London ubi vivit.[298]

Bounder

{§69.} [Sources of the Bounder]
{a. Christopher Roberts of the Bowness Green. b. William Robinson}

N.B. The County Bounder taken at Windermer.
From the foot of West ~~Sike~~ – Sike head betwixt the 2 mills at Winstar ¼ of a m. to the Sike head.
Thence agane W (by a streight line) \ to Blackbeck head which springs in ~~to the midle of~~ Rostet Moss.
Thence Westward down the said beck into Windermer water.
Thence S. by the Banke of Windermer Water to Newby Brigg.
Thence over the Brigg & up the Westside of the water – North – to the head of Windermer Water.

{Sir Daniel Fleming.} Qu. [1.] If these Townships in Windermer have several commons & Bounders or do all […] Intercomon.[299] 2. Whether they have district juryes?[300]

{§70. Ambleside}

Halfe of this Towne \ below the Stock is in this parish / although it belongs to the Chapelry of Ambleside which is in Gresmer parish. And the whol Town, even that within Gresmer, is holden to be

[293] 'Nothing for the king.'
[294] Parts of this margin comment have perished.
[295] Swill: a large shallow basket, made roughly with strips of oak, unpeeled willows, or the like; also, a basket in which fish are landed or carried to market. *OED*.
[296] 'Died without issue.'
[297] 'n.h. pro.': possibly, 'nulla hereditaria prole' = 'there being no offspring to inherit'.
[298] 'Where he lives.'
[299] Intercommon: to use a common mutually with the inhabitants or tenants of a contiguous township. See J. Kendrick Kinney, *A Law Dictionary and Glossary: Primarily for the Use of Students* (Chicago, 1893), 395.
[300] A remark in red crayon at the foot of the page reads: 'now is out y'

in the manner of Windermer {which shewes as if manner has bin afore parishes} The Market however is Reduceable hither, because it was kept below the stock, as is expressly declared in the Charter of Kendal. James 2.[301] But it was a Market \ some time / before; as appears by these charters – see Gresmer Parish §17. The Cross – see in Gresmer §69.[302] {Communicated me by Sir Daniel Fleming Ridal Knight.}
At the S? end of Ambleside & Head of Windermere is an old Rom[an] fort calld the Burwens &c. See p.13 Hujus.[303] Coins found there – See Gresmer Parish §11. And there seemes to have bin an old chapel here.

[II.353]

[General Notes and Queries][304]

{? The Hall at Bowness. Sir J. Ped[igree]. The Phillipsons came to [blank] Who had the Estates they now have & how.}
{Calld the Old Halsteed}
{Draught of the Cro[ss] & Bells}
{Armes at Calgarth}
{Com[mon]s of Ambleside}
{given to the library}
{N.B. of the 14 Tenements: what called. The distance of Stors &c.[305]

The Iland
From Bownes to the Ile 27 Sc.
The water ¼ of a mile; above a q[uarter]? say ½.

Fishing
1. High Cuble from the head to the charbeds off \ above / Calgarth ½ mile.
2. Midle-Cuble to below the ferry, The water ¼ of a mile.
3. The Low-Cubble at Calgarth 2 miles.[306]

{Windermer Parish conteineth in it –	}
1. Windermer Church with Bowness & Undermilnbeck	} Ministers de Windermer
2. St Katherines	}
3. Troutbeck Kirk chapel	}
4. Katherines Brow chapel[307]	}

[301] The market (weekly at the stock on Wednesdays, plus two fairs annually) was granted by James II on 25 July 1688: *N&BI*, 189.
[302] Grasmere §17 occurs in Part 2, Ch.6., on II.125-26; The sub-heading '§69' does not appear. The bell appears on II.150 in a section on Grasmere church. Machell was cross-referencing the third bell's inscription with the fact that, when, in 1650, Ambleside was granted a charter to hold a market (weekly) and two fairs (annually), the Brathwaite family was Ambleside's leading family, and, to celebrate the granting of the market charter, it is likely that Gawen Brathwaite (d.1653) provided the funds for the market cross and its Latin inscription, VITA UT HERBA (Life [is] as grass), which is both the Brathwaite family motto and an anagram of the surname. See Charles Nugent, 'Cross-Head of the 17th century Market Cross, Ambleside, bearing the initials of Gawen Brathwaite and the date 1651, later converted into a sundial.' Armitt Library and Museum Exhibition Label (2017). The stone head of the original market cross is exhibited in the Armitt. My thanks to Timothy Sykes for drawing my attention to this document.
[303] 'Of this section'.
[304] These notes are written haphazardly; text flows in three directions; sections overlap. It follows that some of the transcription here is insecure. Some sentences have been omitted.
[305] The sentence goes on: '{and in what lib. with Orrest}', but it runs into the binding.
[306] The rest of this passage is illegible because of damage and repair to the page.
[307] The rest of this section is obscured by the binding.

Ambleside.
Troutbeck.
Applethwate.
Bowness 12 or13 fam[ilies] together.
Undermilnbeck of which Bowness is a part.
Ad Crooke Hall; has 14 customary tenants. Fine Arbitrary & heriotable with Boone Shearing to Sir Xtopher Phillipson.
Barnside. Hay hens & Capon. Informant Xtopher Phillipson.
There were Bellinghams the ancient Towne Knipe tenants & Batemans which 2 last were run into Bellingham also & are now Col[…][308]

[308] This paragraph is scored through; close to the right-hand margin, it is partly illegible.

Part 2. Barony of Kendal

[Chapter 10]

[Thomas Machell's Itinerary: A Month's Journey in the North]

[II.376][1]

A Diurnal of Minutes taken in One Months Travaille through the Barony of Kendal from July the 5th to August the 2. 1692.[2]

{I leave these to Dr Thomas Guidot of Bathe for the use of my children.}[3]

[Remarques prefatory to the said Diurnal & to round off the forgoing Topography

These must be referrd to the Parishes Chaples & Ma[nners][4]

{Armes}

I like not the new invented way of discribeing the Colors in Coates of Armes by pointes & strokes all though it be ingenious enough, because it so much defaces the Bearings & therefore I rather follow the old way of an \ initial / letter for \ a / color {which you must call}

b for	blew	az[ure]
g	green	ver[t]
m	murrey	
r	read	gu[les]
s	Sanguine	
t	Tenn	
o or y	yallow	
A or w	white	

But Argent & Sable which is black & white need not be mentiond in writeing or graveing upon a white ground. Neither Or (or yallow, upon gold or Brass.}

{!!!} N.B. The Best Method in Particulars [of] Manners Townes & Places will be first to set downe.

1. Curiosityes in Art or Nature.
2. The Descent of the Manner.
3. The Descent of the Manner House & pedigree.

{!!!} N.B. In Viewing of Churches, Chaples and Halls.

1. Take Armes in glass (which view & enumerate) because they give the proper colours.
2. In plaster & stone.

N.B. ad J.P.[5] is the only way both to serve and in truth to command your country. And though som upstarts make use of this means \ onely / to advance themselves above the yeomanry, which make it more odiouse to ancient families; yet it \ is / by no means to be dispised: since it gives you a step

---

[1] Also numbered p.1.

[2] A diurnal is a journal: a day-book or diary of daily entries. *OED*.

[3] Dr Thomas Guidot matriculated at Wadham Coll. Oxford, 1656-57: B.A. 1659-60; B.Med. 1666; practised in Bath 1667; and London 1679: *OAD*. Guidot's publications include, *A century of observations; containing further discoveries of the nature of the hot waters at Bathe* (1686) and *Thermae Britanicae* (1691), see the British Library catalogue. As is well known, Machell left his papers to his wife and children, asking that they should be sent to William Nicolson, then archdeacon of Carlisle, 'whom I doe entrust to peruse the same and put them in order, and if the Gentlemen of the said Counties will be at Cost with the Cutts, that they may be printed to the use & benefit of my said wife & children.' See R.S. Ferguson, 'Wills relating to the Dean and Chapter Library at Carlisle. Wills of Rev. T. Machell, Bishops Smith and Nicolson, and Joseph Nicolson', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 1-12, at 4.

[4] Referred = cross-referenced.

[5] Justice of the Peace.

above your Eq[uals][6] as well as it doth them. & if you accept the Imployment, it often advances these very men who are your inferiours & whom you dispise, & sets them above you.[7]

{Kentmer (dale)}
is a pretty large plane, but the Bankes are more flou[8] & less woody than Sleddal is. Except on the W. side where the Parke is wooded.[9]
{Sleddal}[10]
Is a delicate dale, a River down the m[idst of] it and meadow & arable, & woods on both sides.

[II.378]

Qu[eries] left in the Barony

{Loansdale. Mr Aplegarth}
– Mr Applegarth is to send me a Bounder twixt Westmorland & the Bordering Countyes but no queries left.
Midleton. {Mr Heblethwate} of Killington. Qu. In Midleton, 1a.
1. A perambulation of the chapelry on that side next Yorkeshire from marke to marke, & how they bear E. W. N. & S. one from another. From Dent water foote {as far as you can carry it.}
2. The suggestions mentioned in the Instrument of Consecration, for having a Chaple \ & Burying / there, & the Salvo Jure Matris Ecclesiæ[11] in their very words. & N[ote] If any obligation to goe to the Parish Church as often as they can, according to the antient form.
3. What Distance Aplegarth lyes from the Chaple & Hall. E. W. N. or S. & the Conveyance of it from one family to another, to the present Proprietor. {1m. or more S.}[12]

Will. Midleton \ brother of Ed. / Col. in the Civil Wars – a you[nger] son of Midleton Hall = Dora[thy] daughter of Roger More of Bens Bank} |

2. George m. … Taile, a Londoner	1. Charles a merchant at London; owner of this estate m. [Blank]	[Blank]
Isue	Isue	

Killington.
The conveyance of the manner and of the manner-house from one fam[ily] to another as at Qu. 3.
Item, what fine certaine the Tenant payes you, with what Rents- Boones-Services?
Preston Richard {Mr Tim. Banks}
Mr Timothy Bankes of Crooklands in Preston Rich. prom[ised] me at the Assizes a MS of the Custom of Kendal.
Firback.
{Firbank well. John Robinson} Moss put in the well.[13] S. ¼ m. or above; to Rob. Johnson.

[II.379]

{Sizerge. q. of Mr Shepherd of Natland}
What are the supporters of That Coate of Armes which is on the screen of wainscot as you com into the Hall?
What is the colour of the 3 Water-budgets & the Shield they are in, in the 2nd window of the East Side of the Hall; And whose Armes are they said to be?

---

[6] Suggested word to complete 'Eq…'
[7] Machell referred here to the office of Justice of Peace or Magistrate. In the 17th century and beyond, the J.P. exercised local government at the monarch's command, accepting this responsibility as part of his membership of the 'elite' in society. In England, the landed elite monopolised government, combining social and official power and rooting it in the countryside where their mansions proclaimed their status. Hence Machell's dislike of 'odiouse' social climbers, who used the magistracy to gain social advancement. For analysis of these views, see Norma Landau, *The Justices of the Peace, 1679-1760* (London, 1984), 2.
[8] Perhaps, 'flowery'[?]
[9] Here instead of 'wooded', Machell has drawn a tree, as seen elsewhere in his MS.
[10] Longsleddale.
[11] 'Saving the rights of the mother church.'
[12] The following pedigree is repeated in the margin of this page of the MS.
[13] See below, the 'petrifying' well: II.386.

And whose it the other Quarterd with them?
Whose are the 3rd & 4th Quarterings in that Coate of Armes which hangs in a frame at the End of the Hall?
~~And~~ What color is ~~the field and~~ the cross flory & the field wherein it standeth?
And whether the Crist be not oake-leaves, & of what color?
1. Whose Are the Scallops.
2. Whose, the fess ^^^ betwene the Billets and How many of them.
Whose is that Quarterly Coate Impaled with Strickland – In the Third Shield over the Dineing Roome Chimney – Sc. – The Bend Ingraled betwixt 6 martlets? And whose that other quartered with it; Sc. The Cinq-foy[l]e[14] pierced betwixt 8 crosses fleury[15] \ the 1t charged with a crescent? / And what are their colors?
What is the Chaple cald. St James his [chapel]? & how far distant E. W. N or South from Sizerge Hall.
How is Sizerge writ in the ancientest writeings that you have seen?
Whose is that Escutchion which hangs at the End of the Hall – Sc. Azure \ blew / a Lyon Rampant gardant betwene XI cros croslets Argent, langed Gules &c.
Whether 4 or but 3 Billets above the ^^^^.

{Kendall q. of Mr Farrington}
In that Coat of Armes on the outside of the Tower?

[II.379B]

{Grayrig} {Sir D. Fleming MS Y}
Memorandum. In Dokear[16] was a Grange belonging to St Peters Hospital in York {ibid[em]!!!}[17]
Qu. of Probat of Wills in the Lords Court.[18]
Rich. Dukat of Fillingham maryed [Blank] Windlesore {Sir D. Fleming MS Y Ibidem.}

[II.380]

Grarig Chaple in my way is a large but low building conteineing within the precincts there of the manor of Grayrig which though it ly amongst the fells is rather to be counted hilly than mountainous.

[II.382][19]

Iter Boreale per Mensori[20] {1692 July 5.}[21]

Tuesday [5.] from K.

Directly S. to Crookdale hause head: Thence

Wednesday [6.]

A Fast at Kendal church,[22] {where after morning service I spent my time till the afternoon prayers in drawing out} som Coates of Armes & monuments.

Thorsday [7.]

My w[ay] Returned home wards.

---

[14] Unclear word.
[15] Here, Machell placed a tiny sketch of a cross fleury.
[16] Docker.
[17] Landownership: granted by William de Lancaster to the hospital of St Peter, York (later known as St Leonard's) for grazing horses. After the Dissolution, granted to Richard Washington, who conveyed it to Duckets of Grayrigg, who sold it in 1690 to the Lowthers: see *N&B1*, 109-10; see also https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/docker. 'Ibidem': the same source, i.e. Daniel Fleming.
[18] Docker claimed to be a manor peculiar, proving its own wills in the manor court. See *N&B1*, 109.
[19] Also numbered p.5. All interlineation and margin comment is written in pencil or in different ink from that of the main text.
[20] 'A month's journey in the north.' This is the beginning proper of Machell's Itinerary.
[21] Machell dated his Itinerary according to the Julian Calendar; the Gregorian Calendar was officially adopted in Britain in September 1752. https://www.nottingham.ac.uk/manuscriptsandspecialcollections/researchguidance
[22] For fasting in 17th-century England see Machell's short comment while visiting Natland: Part 2, Ch.3vii, II.79, with extensive fn.

Friday [8.]

{Natland}
(Tho. Smith hired for a Guide) {write to Dr Mill to be kinde to him & send him to the ch.}[23]
Set forward to Natland \ Chaple in Kendal Parish / where there is a little Chapel lately rebuilt; a Dillicate\ plane level / green with houses about it, whereof 3 or 4 are very good Houses. Here I met with one Shepherd, an ingeniouse man \ who had several coins which I drew out / & one [Blank] Wilson, a courteouse gentleman, & a good wife.[24]

{Crosscrake}
Thence to Crosscrake Chaple \ in Kendal Parish / which is in Staine-ton – a Place (comparatively with the rest of this Barony) not so very stony as to diserve that Denomination.[25] Here an ancient chapl is also re-edifyed, having a chimney in the N.W. Corner with a smokehole out of the west end of the wall about 2 yards high a terra. And here I saw a number of well fac'd children,[26] but no houses near it that I can remember.[27]
Thence: by the Maidenhead Inn, and through a Beck calld St Sunnandayes, to Hutton-Chaple, \ in Kendal Parish / in which the Timber stands like a Barne, but the walls &c. in good Repare, The floore Excepted, which is the Generall fail[ing] of Churches as well as Chapls in most parts of this Barony. The Freeschool (taught by Mr Nicholson Curate) stands in the Chaple yard, but the fence on the N. side being taken away, the owner of the Lands adjoyning will needs clame the ground whereon they both stand. A piece of sacraledge not to be suffered.

[II.383]

Thence accompanied with the said Curate I went to Bridgend in the said Chapelry: where I lodged all night at James Dawsons, an ingeniouse contry man who has made a milne which grindes Corne, Tempses[28] & Winnowes, & Turnes a Grindestone & polish wheale, & bores Gun-barrells; He having a Whitesmiths shop in his mill, in which he works Gun worke to Admiration, as also Clock work and Watch work – all which he tooke up of his own hand.
Here I saw a w[oman] who was struck with lightning, 2 men & a ~~wom~~ dog being slane in her company, & she onely Escaped.[29]

{Satterday}[9.]

~~He set me next~~ morn \ Thence accompanied with my Landlord I went next morn/ing to an old chapl upon the Hill. & thence to an alehouse on the moor side \ where we parted. He told me there was not a glass / window in this chapelry since he could remember, which continues like \ a Carr[30] dismantled of trees / forrest (there being only one \ other ale house in all / in the way) till I came at ~~Kirkby Loansdal~~ Kirkby Lonsdale, a pleasant dall well adorned with wood.

{Sunday}[10.]

Kirkby Loansdale \ parish church / where I tooke a generall account of that parish with the Armes & monuments & in the church, being kindely Entertained by Mr Briggs \ the Vicar / & his wife – a well bread gentle woman.[31] Here I preached 2ce on the Sunday, to an Orderly & Regular Congregation

[23] Written in different ink: an addition relating to his guide, Thomas Smith; 'ch' is unclear.
[24] 'Mr Shepherd of Natland' answered Machell's queries relating to Sizergh; see above, II.379.
[25] Staine = stone. *OED*.
[26] MS: 'Here an ancient chapl is also Re-Edifyed, having a chimney in the N.W. Corner with a smokehole out ~~of the face of the face~~ of the \ west end of the wall / about 2 yards high a terra. And here ~~were taught~~ \ I saw / a number of well fac'd children ~~as ever I saw~~…'
[27] '…but no houses near it that I can remember': an addition, written in different ink.
[28] Tempses from 'tempse': sieves or sifts. See George Meriton, *Nomenclatura Clericalis: or the Young Clerk's Vocabulary in English Latine …* (1685), 312.
[29] See a different version in Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87-88, in which, '3 men a Woman & a Dog … which struck one man Dead – Rich[ard] Whitehead – & a Dog dead – And the 2 men & woman were struck astonishd as dead, & when the[y] came to them selfes, they found them selves burnd in a wonderful manner'.
[30] Carr: wet boggy ground; a meadow recovered by draining from the bog, grown up with low bushes, willows, alders, etc. *OED*.
[31] For John Briggs, see Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.119, fn.

with whose desent behaviour at Church I was very well pleased. Here I had the Company of Mr Farrer the ~~worthy~~ Schoolmaster, & Mr Aplegarth who promised to give me an account of the Bounder of the County of Westmorland as divided from Lancashire.[32]

{Munday}[11.]

And on Munday morning; having given the vicar an Extract of their ancient Charter \ out of my Antiquities / I informd my selfe from Tempest Husband[33] – (being an Eye wit[ness] of an old w[oman] in Lancashire that renewed her youth);[34] And drawn out the Altar at Ademan dooer.[35] {Here I met with spar - & a mon[ument.] & Underley.}[36]

I went thence to St Coomes – & se[37] the ruines of an ancient chaple now an hutt of Trees – & Thence to Casterton hall \ in Westm'land / where I heard and saw little worth observation {which place may seem to derive its name from som castle or \ campe / formerly here; but [on] the strictest Enquiry imaginable I could hear of neither, nor of any of Arms,[38] Castors or Bevers in these partes.}[39] & so on to Parke house in Lancashire near unto Leck beck. Thence Tu[n]stall[40] – which was changed in Dru[n]ken Humor for Girleington, & where I drew out som Armes in the church & Inscriptions at the Vicar[age] House. & so Returned by Old Burrow whence the said Inscriptions were brought, where I met with a Roman Coine & saw Coll. Brigs.[41]

[II.384A]

{Arbor Vitæ; Travailers joy}

And so Returned to the Parke house where I lodged all night with my fellow collegian ~~and in this country my fellow travailer~~ Mr Ed. Wilson,[42] where is a gardine of physical herbs & plants and the largest Trees of Arbor Vitæ that I have met with; also, Travailers Joy & many other rarities.

{Tuesday}[12.]

{Barbon}

On Tuesday I returned out of Lancashire to the Chapel of Barbon, lately Rebuilt and to which one Shuttleworth Lord of the Manor some few years agoe offered to give 5 or 6 li per annum out of his Rents there. But the people had not the manners or wit shal I call it to accept of his profer; so that the Indowment is little or nothing.[43] {On the opposite side I saw Rigmaiden hall & Mansergh?}

{Here I met with a Living Inscription}

---

[32] See 'Mr Aplegarth' on II.378, above. See also Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.209.

[33] In 1695, 'Tempest Husband & Margaret his wife, his son Stephen, two daughters Ann and Margaret, his mother Ann Battersby', were included among Kirkby Lonsdale notables. See 'Recent Publications 2. *Antiquary on Horseback* … edited by Jane Ewbank', CWAAS Extra Series 19 (Kendal, 1963)', in *CW2*, 64 (1964), 413-15, at 415. Tempest Husband died in 1703. His will left goods worth £339 in two shops, and a house with fourteen rooms: Lancashire Archives (Preston) WRW/L, Tempest Husband, 1703.

[34] See Tempest Husband's tale in Part 2, Ch.8. Kirkby Lonsdale, II.214.

[35] A Roman altar, later used as a seat outside a door: See Part 2, Ch.8. Kirkby Lonsdale, II.204. 'Ademan' is an insecure transcription.

[36] This margin comment is very faint.

[37] There is a blank space here, followed by the word 'Hall' in faded ink; possibly part of an earlier draft, now overwritten.

[38] Unclear word.

[39] See Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.223.

[40] 'The castle was in 1643 gallantly held for the king by Sir John Girlington, its owner, but the Royalists having failed to relieve it, it was surrendered after a seven weeks' siege', see 'The Parish of Tunstall': *VCH: Lancaster*, Vol. 8 (London, 1914), 225-30.

[41] Space was left on the left of the page here, presumably for the arms, inscriptions and Roman coin mentioned in the text. For Colonel Briggs of Burrow, see Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.223, fn.

[42] Edward Wilson (1651-1720). Queen's College, Oxford from 1669; Gray's Inn, 1671; son-in-law of Sir Daniel Fleming. *OAD*. See also Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), 457.

[43] For Barbon, see Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.199 fn., and II.201.



Figure 2.10.1. Christian tattoos. II.384A.

Yet here I met with a pretty young man,[44] who teaches school in, & a great Travailler \ aet 24 / who was within 20 miles of Jerusalem & has the markes ting'd on his Armes. On the one Our S[aviour's] Resurrection;[45] on the other the Armes of Jerusalem as he calls them. {See before pag.381 & p.227}[46] And here I heard of a medicinal well that has don great cures especially for paines & aches by stranes.[47]

[II.384]

{Midleton; Hawking Hall}
{So called from its situation in the midst of Loansdale}
Thence I went to Midleton Chaple near to which is a pretty new house call'd Hawking-hall considerably large, & yet has but one pair of Principals in it. Which because it may be of ~~very good~~ \ som / use where Timber is scarce I have given you the platforme \ & manner of it.[48] / This was built by Mr Bainbrig, whose Armes are placed over the Enterance into the Hall. Here I lay all night, and had the converse of Old John? Moore, Brother of the Sergiant at Law, & very understanding, who shewd me the Instrument of Consecration, & of Samuel Moore his Ingenious son. {Rufus}

[II.385][49]

whom I found to be a very good botanist. There I also had presented unto me by an old Acq[aintance] of my father, a Piece of That Ore which they take to be gold, but I fear is too light for any such metal.

{Wednesday}[13.]

{Midleton hall}
The next morning I went from thence to Midleton Hall, an old Ruinouse Castle like house, & Exceeding black – having an ascent to the gate with 3 Rowes of Trees. Here has bin a chapel which is now ruinouse. I drew out the Armes with an Account of Midleton of Applegarth out of an rotton table

[44] Samuel Gibson.
[45] The depiction is of the Crucifixion.
[46] This margin comment is a cross reference in a later hand; the page references no longer fit the subject. See Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, Barbon, II.231 for other tattoo images The following extract from an early-19th-century travelogue discusses the practice of tattooing pilgrims: 'The inhabitants of Bethlehem … claim, almost exclusively, the privilege of marking the limbs and bodies of Pilgrims, by means of gunpowder, with crosses, stars, and monograms. A Greek servant who accompanied us thought proper to have his skin disfigured in this manner; and the wound was for many days so painful, and accompanied with so much fever that we had reason to apprehend a much more serious consequence than he had expected. This practice is very antient; it is noticed by Virgil, and by Pomponius Mela … but its origin may be found in more remote antiquity; and very often among the religious customs of the heathen nations.' E.D. Clarke, *Travels in various Countries of Europe, Asia and Africa. Part the Second: Greece, Egypt and the Holy Land, Part I* (2nd edn, London, 1813), 630.
[47] See Samuel Gibson's letter to Machell: Part 1, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.225, Barbon.
[48] See Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.236.
[49] This page is also numbered p.7.

of wood.[50] Went to visit Mrs Heblethwate the surviveing sister of the 2 Coheires, the other being dead. who was maryed to [Blank] \ Cragg.[51] / Both country men: And it troubled \ me much / to see so small \ a / difference betwixt a person so well descended, & a plane country wife.

{Gillianford. Killington Ch. Killington hall}
Hence I passed over Julian ford (q. what the[y] call the Higher) to Killington Chapl where I drew out one Coat of Armes which I take to be Pickerings tho the field be Argent. & Killington Hall stands over against the W. end of \ the chapl, / the highway onely lying betwixt them; where there has bin a pretty \ lightsome / Tower which is now onely walls. But rest is Rep[aired] by one of the Kitsons – whose Descendant Mr Tho. Heblethwate caused me [to] lodge all night in that House with his brother & farmer, & was very courteouse & civil to me, as he is said to be to \ all / his neighbours \ hood.[52] / At the East end of the said chapl. I mett with a great stone giving an account of a man & his wife who were each \ of them / 100 years ~~of Age~~ \ old. / Hence

[II.386]

{Thorsday}[14.]

{Firbank}
I went from Killington (where 4 or 5 houses stand together) to Firbanke alias Frith-banke Chaple – ~~where it seems~~ \ near which / formerly there has bin a Parke,[53] but now they cannot tell any thing of it. This Chapl now standing was lately built by the In[habitants], being Removed from the Edge of Killington field where it formerly stoode, all in one night by reason som of the Lordship clamed the ground whereon it stoode. But in all probability – by viewing the place & considering well of the pretended bounders – That place has bin really in ~~Killi~~ Firbanke Lordship: tho the ~~the~~ Grounds thereabouts might be sold to som of the Killington men, both the Lordships being under one Lord, & as far as I can learne doing suit and service at Killington Hall \ Court. /
{Firbanke is a stragling place.} {The persons I conversd with were – Mr Tibolds the Reader. [Blank] Farrer, father to the schoolmaster of K. L.[54] And both very notable understanding men.}

{Petrefying Well}
Here I met with a Well of Petrefying quality – having turned the moss which hung about it into hard stone much like a pumice. And there were 2 springs within 5 yards of one another whereof the one was cold & insipid, the other som what Brackish & warm. & there was a shiny sort of substance upon the gravell like to a jelly, which I take to be the seed or principle of coagulation & petrefaction; which any man near the place might do well to observe.

{Lilly Tarne from Sedgeflores; sed dub}[55]
Hence I went S.W. by Lilly Tarne where [Blank] springs, but has also another head at [Blank] so by [Blank] & by Bleas, \ on the r[oad][56] / from which place to Preston[57] is a pretty country \ & yields a good prospect, but the rest forrest like.

{Preston hall}
Here I saw Preston \ Hal / which gives name to that family – an old Rambling house with slender Tower over the Gate; the Lower Roomes all pavd with ~~cobles but not a~~ [blank] Thus, from small heads doe great Rivers flow. It stands in Boggy Bottom Ground. But the Chapl. a fair stone building

[50] Machell referred to this as an 'old wooden tablet' in Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.241.
[51] Bridget Middleton married Joshua Heblethwaite; Mary Middleton married James Cragg; both were yeoman of Dent, see Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.243.
[52] There is a scored-through interlineation here, but it is illegible.
[53] Though Machell indicated a note here, no footnote was given.
[54] Kirkby Lonsdale.
[55] 'The name Lily Tarn came from sedge flowers, but I doubt it.'
[56] Machell wrote only 'r.'
[57] Preston Patrick.

(in one of whose windows I espyed Prestons Armes) stands – Overs Read of a.[58]
The old maps of Speed, Camden, Norden[59] q. if not Killington Park.

[II.387]

{Chap[el]}
Alone in Parke on the Top of an Hill, & has a very pleasant prospect all round about,[60] except to the E. Near to the place ar som houses calld Crooklands[61] where I Lodged all night \ but ~~cannot say~~ rested not.[62]

Friday [15.]

{Caw braws; blew slate large}
Thence I went S.E.? by Caw-braw[63] where I saw blew slate so large that one ~~was~~\ of them / coverd a Porche, brought from about Ingleton in Y[orkshire].
And so to Hutton-Roofe \ Chapl. / an old ordinary building yet in pretty good repare & ½? a m. distant S. the village of H[utton] som few house (I know not whether all of a Row.)

{Hutton Knot}
Thence S.W. to Hutton Knot, a craggy mountain on which I had a sight of the \ main / ocean of Britain. Thence to Dalton \ in Lancashire but P.[64] / an iregular village. Thence to the Hall, a little farme \ house / but built on the Ruines of an old foundation which they say was demolishd.

{Burton in Kendal – where I lay but slept not hard all that night}
Thence to Burton, a small market Town – where there \ is / a good Cross & som good Ins lately built. Here I sat up late hunting the Bounder twixt W[estmorland] & L[ancashire] & was ~~satisfied~~ \ very well satisfyed / with the honest & diligent investigation of the Informers, being very scrupulous[65] not to take any more then their owne. Here I lay, but slepd not hard all that night. The church stands ¼ m. I thinke distant from the Towne.

Satterday [16.]

[Holme]
From Burton, I passed through a village called Holme, which stands on a plane, & hath a River Running through it whence the name Holme. Here Lawyer Prickets mother hath a good Country House.[66] Thence on level ground to

[II.388]

Betham
{A pleasant place by reason of wood & water, though over top'd with craggy fell on the west side whence you may view a great [expanse] of the sea.} Where there is a dillicate church in a fair level & large church yard. \ And / near unto the N.E. corner stands a fair house lately built \ by T.H. / & adjoyneing an old one which is the Parsonage; & lately belonging Cos. Tho. Hilton the Impropriator

[58] Information on the chapel is given in the first paragraph of II.387.
[59] 'John Norden (c.1547-1625) was an English cartographer, chorographer and antiquary. He planned (but did not complete) a series of county maps and accompanying county histories of England: the *Speculum Britanniae.* Several of Norden's county maps were included in the 1607 edition of William Camden's *Britannia*. In 1611 John Speed used Norden's maps of Surrey, Sussex, Middlesex, Cornwall and Essex in his *Theatre of the Empire of Great Britaine*, the first published atlas of the British Isles. Most maps of these counties published in the following 150 years were based on Norden's work. He is credited with key innovations in English cartography, such as marking roads, administrative units and hierarchies of place, and a grid-reference system. See Frank Kitchen,' Norden, John, (c. 1547-1625)'. *ODNB*.
[60] Here is another tiny drawing of a tree.
[61] Pecked underscoring suggests that Machell was unsure of the name.
[62] Although a word here is obscured by the binding, it is still clear that Machell did not enjoy a comfortable night's sleep.
[63] Here is another sketch of a tiny tree.
[64] In the parish.
[65] A scored-through word here is illegible.
[66] Here is another tiny drawing of a tree. Alan Prickett Esq. of Natland Hall was listed as a recorder of Kendal in 1673, see Part 2, Ch.3iii, Hutton, II.87.

sue uxoris:[67] being 4? w[ife][68] & relict of Mr Ducket of Grarig who settled it on her. Here I drew out the Monuments & Coates of Armes. And went hence (over an Hill as I remember) to

Dallan-Tower
A Pleasant seat, with fair Gardines about it. Purchased lately by one of the Wilsons; a man of great wealth who made diverse purchse here & elsewhere & yet never laid in an house of his own as I am very credibly inform'd. So that the Best way to get many Houses is to keep none:[69] a Paradox not so strange as true. It now belongs to Mr Ed. Wilson Esq. J.P. ~~who marrying into good family have gained the reputation of Gentleman~~ \ This a numerous name in the Barony {whereof this & [Wilson of] Underley are reckond the Chief, they having by mary into good family & exerciseing the Com[mission] of [the] P[eace], advanced themselves to the Reputation & port[70] of Gentlemen.}
The Tide comes up almost to the Gates. Near which there is the foundation of a Castle and \ one of these Catadupe – Mr C. speakes of.[71] / {But which he has m[isplaced], for this is in [Blank] the other in Kendal.}[72]

[II.388B]

{Dallan Tower}
The Redmans puto,[73] a square Ruinouse [building], the founds of a fort or castle hard by it {Sir Daniel MS. Y.}[74]

[II.388A]

Near which was lately Haver Brack hall; & a sq[uare] fort calld \ the / Castle! Tis calld Haverbeck in Dugdalls *Baronagium* p.421, which if right speld is either from the plen[t]y of oates growing thereabouts? Calld Haver [or] from averia signifying catle,[75] it being a place where their beasts were watrd. {Bethom also Buthum.}[76]

[II.388]

{Milthrop} {Salmon taken in the air}
Hence passing the Bridge whereon there standes a Dial Stone with Inscriptions upon, much like an Altar of the Romanes but importing no more but that it was, &c., I went to Milthrop, a small but long village place, the only Port that wee have in Westmorland. A little above the Bridge is a paper mill formerly an Iron Mil.

[II.389][77]

Yet paper white at 2 sheets 1^{d}. There is a Good Cross – & a fair once a year \ Sc. / on May day: which are all the things of note about It.[78] Vessells of 8 or 10 Tunn com in here. Hence, I went by on the left ha[n]d to

[67] 'In right of his wife.'
[68] 'His wife being the 4th wife' – but Machell is not sure.
[69] MS: 'Best way to get many Houses is to keep \ none / no house.'
[70] Possibly 'portance': carriage, bearing, demeanour, conduct. *OED*.
[71] Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 759F-760A, offers, 'Somewhat below the river Can, are two Catadupæ, or water falls, where the waters have a downefall with a mighty noise: the one is by Levens, a little village; the other more Southward, neere to Betham; which to the neighbour inhabitants are as good as true prognostications: for when that which standeth North from them soundeth more cleere and aloud in their eares; they look certainely for faire weather; when that on the South side doth the same, they expect no other than showers of raine, and foggy mists.' See also, John Speed, *The Theatre of the Empire of Great Britaine* (1611-1612), 85-86.
[72] Catadupe: a cataract or waterfall. *OED*.
[73] 'The Redmans perhaps.'
[74] 'Sir Daniel Fleming's MS Y.' MS.II.338A repeats this information: 'Dalla[n] T. formerly to the Readmans {Sir D.F.}'
[75] Averia: term for working animals (horses, oxen, etc.) See *Black's Law Diction*ary. Online.
[76] Buethum is a historical form of Beetham, see *Westmorland Place-Names*.
[77] Also numbered p.12.
[78] 'Vessells' has been superimposed on 'It'.

Heversham alijs Hersham
Where there is a fair \ parish / church, burn'd down to the ground about 100 years agoe, {q. how}[79] & now in very good Repare. I tooke som Coates of Armes my selfe here \ by the help of a candle / & Mr Green the schoolmaster after promissd to furnish me with the rest in which he imployes my friend T. Webster: & to send me the Monumental Inscriptions. The vicarage house – a pretty good fabric – is about 100 {?} west from the church, which I mention least it should chance to be lost as Bethom and Burton [vicarage houses] are at this day. Thence by night I went to Water Crooke and so on to Kendall where arrivd at 12 a clock oth night. The next day being

Sunday [17.]
I preachd Twice at Kendall in complement to Mr Mayor & the Vicar. And on

Munday [18.]
Munday I tooke a farther Account of the Town of Kendal, Church & Hospital & other places; & of their charter[80] \ Dokray hall. / And Mr Farrington the schoolmaster there, promissd me an Account of a spirit in his time which did strange things there. {Thus far the Less mountainouse part.}

[II.389A]

Docaray Hall
And ancient fam[ily] of the Docarayes now extinct {Ibid[em Sir Daniel MS Y.} Westm'land country people yet of that sirname.

[II.390][81]

Tue. 19. July 1692.
I set forwards from Kendale downe the west side of the River Kent (by Heslinton Hall,[82] which I viewd 2 years since & is now rebuilt by Coll. Graham) a most ruged way, the lands being full of uneven caswayes, Rocks & ruff cobles. {If Helston be the same, tis derived – q. Hill-stone – being a stony hill.}[83]

To Sizarge Hall
A Noble \ but irregular / old House surrounded with woods with a Parke at the Dooer; and the Court all sett about with Lawrell. There is the statelyest Kitchen {Open to the Top} here that I have met with: a good Hall {14 Long, 7 Broad, with a fine screene made A.D. 1618.} And 2 famous parlours or dineing Roomes which stand in the Body or front of the House. And hath with large wings isuing from it, which makes 2 sides of the great court, which fronted as I remember westwards.
They talk of the Assises having been here; but are lead (I suppose) into that Absurdity by the sound of Sizarge,[84] having not any other authority for it. And that the Stricklands[85] came hither from Strickland alias Menkinthorp hall in the Bottom of Westmorland; who having gotten a better Estate by marriage with the heiress of Sizarge, they gave the other to a daughter which he had out of wedlock.

I drew out the Armes in the Hall, Dineing Roomes, & the Kitchen windows, & Those on the Tower; & so passd on by the like Rugged way {to soften this description a little. But N[ote] they have a good way to Kendall through Natland Parke; & tis pitty the other were not blockd up for ever.}[86]

[79] See the church Vestry Book, 1601: 'Whereas it fortuned through the negligence of a careless workman, being a plumber, anno Christi 1601, on Wednesday being the first day of July, the Parish Church of Heversham, in the County of Westmorland was utterly consumed with fire and all implements, ornaments, books, monuments, chests, organs, bells and all other things were perished.' In R.K. Bingham, *The Church at Heversham: A History of Westmorland's Oldest Recorded Church* (Milnthorpe, 1984), 29.
[80] For the Kendal charters, see Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.11.
[81] Also numbered p.13.
[82] Helsington Hall.
[83] 'Hals' usually denotes a hause or hawse (a neck of land, a col, a pass). *OED*.
[84] Machell referred to the similarity in sound between Sizergh and Assizes.
[85] Strickland family: see *AWL*, 286-87.
[86] Different ink shows that this margin comment was added later.

(beholding whole fields of the Large Daryes)[87] till I came {?} to Levins-Brig, hard by which on the E. side of Kent is

Upper Levins Hall
formerly writ (as I gather from the Inscriptions in Bethom church windows) Lewyns {q. le-vines – but it is writ in Ed. 3. time, Levens, Sc. Inq[uisition] in Part General}[88] & belonging to an \ ancient / family That tooke name from Hence, the original of which I should have taken to come from the Plenty of Whyns in this Place if I had seen any store hereabouts; for Le-wyns seems to me, to import ~~no more than~~ The Whins: unless (which would be a wilde conjecture) wee should imagin plenty of vines to have grown in this place.[89] It is a fair Building \ & noble Seat / though no way Regular and of late much improved by the Alterations of

[II.391]

Coll. Graham, the Present Proprietor,[90] who after many descents of the Bellinghams whose Chiefe Seate was here, Bought it of Alane Bellingham Esq., that Ingeniouse but unhappy young man (who consumed a vast Estate in his youth) with the rest of his Lands in the Barony of Kendal. The Court groweth round about with Lau[rel]s and betwixt that & Kent were many statly & large grown Elmes – a Rarity in this Part of the Country (for I have not seen one any where else) – which Mr Graham was a cutting \ down / to open the prospect by which this fine seat will be rendered more pleasant but I fear more cold than it was heretofore. Here I met with many Coates of Armes in the Hall & Dines, both in Glass wood & plaster, being the matches of the Bellinghams, and was kindely R[eceive]d by Mr Graham (whose Seale of Armes, Match & Isue I want) but could not stay with him, for I posted thence over the Bridge down the River side, being very good way to

Nether Leavins Hall
which is an old Low sort of Building, with Low seiled chambers and Court Wall next to the river, the highway onely running betweene them, with battlements like a little castle \ haveing Land on both sides. / {Here as I remember Rich[ard] Wilson farmed.} Here I met with som Coates of Armes, which haveing drawne out, I went ~~through~~ \ up / the Parke, or field shall I call it, to a Little Hamlet or Row of Houses called Beathwate Greene at the foot of that spacious

[II.392]

Moss which lyes betwene Crosthwate and the River Kent, having Lythe on the one side & Brigsteere parke upon the other. The Tenements here I rem[ember] belong to Neither Levins. {There is a little wooden brig unto the moss which divides them from Lithe; whence perhaps tis called Brig Stree & corruptly by Brig Steere over Pull alias Pou unde forsan Poole.}[91]
And here I was told a very strange story of a Boy in this place about xj years old \ – the son of Widow Crosfield – / who going to Lithe with xviij[d],[92] to his sister (a nurse), was stopd at New-bridge by an Apparition in the shape of a soldier clothed in Read with a musket in his hand, a sword Girt about him, with Bundalereyes[93] & a Leathern pouch; which standing up in the midest of the water below the Bridge, forbid him to pass it while he was there; but incouragd him not to be afrade, told him what he had in his pocket & whither he was going; and that King William should after a sharp ingagement at Sea obteine ~~the~~ \ a great / victory: But that [he] be worsted on the Land, & afterwards prove very victorious, tho his sword should be broken; & in 3 years time give his enemyes (the P.) a very great overthrow.[94] And went away singing in a most melodiouse manner \ concerneing King William / in so

[87] Daryes: sometimes applied collectively to the milch cows on a farm. *OED*.
[88] This is possibly an Inquisition (concerning Levens and other manors) in the possession of Sir Daniel Fleming, in a bundle dated 49. Ed. 3, no. 29. See Part 2, Ch.1. Barony of Kendal, 'Notes To make out the hist[ory]of the Descent of this Barony', II.365.
[89] 'Leven' (Leune): name of a major river in the district. *Westmorland Place-Names*, Leven .
[90] For James Grahme (Graham) see Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.178.
[91] 'Brig-steere over Pull alias Pau, whence perhaps Poole.'
[92] 18d (1s 6d).
[93] A bandolier is a pocketed belt for holding ammunition. *OED*.
[94] MS: 'But that be worsted \ ~~of that part~~ on the / Land, & afterwards ~~though his sword should be broke~~ prove very victorious \ tho his sword should be broken / & in 3 years time put an End to the Warrs: {give his enemyes the P. a very great overthrow}.' 'P.' probably refers to Roman Catholics (papists).

much that [the] boy was ravishd at [it] & followed the noyse (wishing ~~to~~ \ he might have / hear it all the dayes of his life). & did remember som of the words of it, of which these are part:

– Nor Cannon Bullets pierce his horny hide –

{This I thinke pro[…]ed[95] not according~~ly~~ whether the [re]lation be true or false. There were other circumstances which I omit, of breakeing the water of the streame & appearing also in a Blew habit. & of another on the opposite side who appeard in Brown. But what I have said is the sub[stance] of the story (which the boy being Examed 5 or 6 times in the womans \ house / & one of these time by the Vicar of Kendal) did recount with all the circumstances of it and without variation. This was a month \ & 3 days / after the sea fight. & he no lyer. {He was examened 7 times in James Nicholsons, as Jane his wife informed me.}[96]

[II.394][97]

Hence wee passed by a Long Casway over the moss to the said Bridge where this was transacted, & here I saw most stately shrub Gale which growes in great Bushes & with ~~thick~~ \ som / stalkes ~~som~~ as thick as my thumb; but the arromatick smell like myrtle was much exhausted by the season of the year.[98] Thence I went under the Horrid long Rock which is calld Whitbarrow, till I came \ at / som Houses where a Rill of water descends from the Mountaine {where there are great Ewe Trees.} & here I espayed an Huge great Crag which seemd to have tumbled from the Rocks above, of a sort of stone which is here call'd marle, & which being beaten they use at Kendal (whither great quantityes are frequently sold) to scoure their Trenchers & Earthen Vessel. {I call it Rock-marle for distinction from Pit-marle, being a sort of clay.} It seems to be composed of the water \ & som sort of Limy & Earth / which of its own nature condenses & petrefyes, being like to a pumix*; & the very same, as near as I can guess, with that sort of stone which I saw at Water Crooke near unto Kendal and at Plumpton Castle not far from Penrith in the old Romane Ruines,[99] which I tooke [to] be Artificial Stone. & perhaps the Romanes, takeing their first Indications from nature, might frame the like \ with lime, sand & water. / That I confess at Watercrooke might com from hence. But without this hypothesis I cannot \ well / see whence they had those more Artificiall stones at Plumpton Castle; they would never bring them as far as hence. & know not any \ other / place in \ Westm'land or the whol of / Cumberland where there is the like {q. & trye if they will not bide fier in an hooden-oven}
{*Note there is a great affinity twixt this & the stones which I brought from Firbanke: onely that is lighter as being made of moss.}

[II.395]

The word Barrow (which I note here once for all) is without doubt of Brow \ Borrow contractly / which is Braw in the Lancashire dialect, as from that instance of the Place calld Cam Braw, which dialect is retained in this Barrony adjoyneing on Lancashire. And this Brow or Declivity of this white Rock is called Whit barrow, which is a[s] much as to say the white \ which is to say Whitebarrow / – so Underbarrow is under the Brow: & Lik-barrow the like &c.
Hence I passed through Rocks & Crags to Witherslack chapple.

[How to write about] Cures.
1. Person, 2. Place, 3. County, 4. Age, 5. Distemper, 6. In what time cured.
[Sc.] A.D. 1691.

[95] Word unclear.
[96] Prophecy was widespread in the late 17th century; both educated and uneducated people were likely to believe in it. The prophetic element of the soldier is especially interesting as it suggests contemporaneous chap-book prophecies which were cheap, popular and able to be passed round ale houses etc. Elements such as bridges and water were common in such episodes, and children seem to have been a popular vehicle for such accounts. The reference to the end of wars and of the Papacy is undoubtedly Apocalyptic and Millenarian in tone, and this seems to confirm the idea that the boy was a voice of prophecy. See Warren Johnston, *Revelation Restored*: *The Apocalypse in Later Seventeenth-Century England*, *Studies in Modern British Religious History 27* (Rochester, N.Y., 2011), 202. The significant point is that, as an antiquary, Machell faithfully recorded this, and felt able to uphold its veracity. My thanks to Professor William Gibson of Oxford Brookes University for providing these insights.
[97] II.394 is also numbered p.17.
[98] Myrica Gale: the bog myrtle.
[99] Voreda or Old Penrith.

[1.] John Jackson. [2.] of K[endal] [3.] in the county of W[estmorland] [4.] ætat 33. [5.] was grievously troubled with a pane in his Arme. [6.] & in a weekes time drinkeing 3 times a day, & as often bathd in, was perfectly cured.

[II.396]

{! And though this place be rocky & barron of all things but wood: yet is sought after & resorted unto for a famous well, which has don many cures & is ergo called the Holy-well}.
{Here I had a piece of the said Rock-marle bestowed upon me by the minister.}
Wetherslack Chapl: one of the neatest and best orderd chapls in all the Barony, lately built adorn'd by Dr Borwick Dean of St Pauls – who is writ Barwick, but Borwick I rather take for the name, there being a Place in the county of Lancaster \ & upon the […][100] edge of Westm'land / now \ is / the Seat of the Bindloses & not far from hence which beareth that name – He was Born at an House near to \ 200 yards west from / the said chapl, called Hale-Cot where I lodged all night.[101]

In these Rocky Countryes} where there is suc[h] abundance of craggy stones, such places \ as / are exempted from them are called Slaks \ or Gills / {so in Yorkshire, T. Allison.} And wee use the word yet much in the like sense when speak[in]g of Showry or Tempestuous weather. When there happens som intermitions \ or calmes, we commonly / say ~~that it slacks~~ \ the weather slackes or slakes. And there being 2 of these Slacks or Gills, one on each side of Witherslack ~~hall~~ \ Parke; / whereof that in ~~where it~~ \ which the Hall / stands is much the wider; \ & being first peopled it might thence be called Widderslack[102] & Witherslacke, & for Brevityes sake, Wither Clack, for Denominatio \ to both the Dales / sumitur à majori p[ar], and the denomination derived from thence to the whol Lordship.[103] {ratio nominis ad Aulam 3^0}[104]
Or it may perhaps be called Woderslak, as I finde writt in a Pedegree, from the Plenty of Wood; if it be not \ rather occasioned by a vulgar dialect usd in this contry, which turns I into O, as for Wilson – Wolson &c.

Wither Slack hall
to which I went, up a crooked Rake[105] \ ½ of which I was forced to walke for fear of it / & thorrow a Parke well stored with \ young / wood.

Wednesday Morning [20.]

This Witherslack is an \ low Black / old fashond house which is a Seat of the Labournes, & is now the portion of 3 coheires. It stands very pleasant considering the Rocks & montaines about it, som of which are pleasant \ Delightfull / to loke upon, \ being clad with wood, /and Returne a fine Ecco. There are Laurell Trees now in the gardine as high as the House, & Ewe has bin so plentiful here that the Hall yeat stoopes are made of that wood.[106]

[100] A word here is blotted
[101] For John Barwick (1612-1664), dean of St Paul's, see Part 2. Ch.7, Heversham, II.164.
[102] Wider Slack.
[103] 'The denomination to both the Dales is taken from the greater part and the denomination derived from thence to the whole Lordship.'
[104] Machell appears to have meant, 'the third reason for the name of the hall'.
[105] Rake: a slope. *OED*. The word was also used locally as an alternative for 'way', as in Lady's Rake, Keswick, and Rake Lane, Troutbeck. In 1717 a Troutbeck man was fined 3s 4d for driving cattle from his ancient out-Rake through the Middle Hundred and the Lowest to Skelgill Close, 'to the great disturbance' of his neighbours. The driving of cattle over unenclosed ground, or over ground allotted to another, was a serious matter and, possibly, each had his customary route or rake. See Mary. L. Armitt, 'Ambleside Town and Chapel: Some Contributions towards their History', *CW2*, 6 (1906), 1-96, at 12.
[106] 'Yeat stoopes': gate posts.

[II.398][107]

[Cowmire Hall][108]
From Wither slack I went through the woods by 2 or 3 houses calld [Blank] to[109] Car\l/-mir-hall. An old fashond house like to a monastery grown over with Ivy, which has vaulted sellers.

[II.398A][110]

Calmer hall belongd to Brigs who had 2 d[aughters]. One married to Hutton – Sir D.F.

[II.398]

{Armes} & here in the windows was much painted Glass: some with Armes which I scratched out;[111] & som with the pictures of Packho[r]ses & Carryers, Spining Wheales & flaughters,[112] with wantaracks[113] & other materials belonging to the Woollen Trade. & the Letters T.B. dispersd here & there, to shew that the former owners of this House \ perhaps the Briggs / advanced themselves by that manufacture.
{Descent}
For it descended by 2 d[aughters] and heires to one which was the w[ife] of Judge Hutton,[114] which by that means descended to Bierly, & [Blank] Bierly sold it of late to the present Proprietor. It is said heretofore, to have bin the manner house of Crosthwate & Lithe; & it standeth in Crosthwate Chappelry.
Hence I went over forrest like ground where som of the rock resembled those I have seen *Britannia* depicted upon, \ on the Title Page of Camdens *Britannia*, /



Figure 2.10.2. Frontispiece detail from William Camden's Britannia *(1600 edition).*

here & there adorned with Trees, to Winstar Chappel standing near the head of the Dale, having som good houses lying dispersed at a small distance from it. It is like the Building in ordinary Repare & has had a Sq[uare] Steeple, which fell upon a S[un]day in time of Service, & though some were touched yet none were hurt by it. The very c[hurch] yard is now clamed

[II.399]

by the [person living] next to it, who ought to be kinder; but the nearer the Church the farther from God. Nemo tam procul tamq[ue] propinquus.[115] I will not mention him least it should leave a Blot upon his very name, but ~~the matter~~ shall leave, & all such like to the Castigation of the B[ishop] of Chester whom it most concernes.
This Chaplry extends over the water into som part of Cartman fell[116] (which may more truly be calld Cartless fells, for there is not a cart us'd in this country) in the C[ounty] of L[ancashire] by reason of

[107] Also numbered p.21.
[108] See Part 2, Ch.7, Heversham, II.191.
[109] A few words are obscured by the binding here.
[110] Small scrap of paper, 18cm x 1cm, cut from a larger piece. A few traces of the missing text can still be seen.
[111] Which he drew.
[112] 'Flaughter' or 'flauchter': flat spade used in peat cutting, see *Dictionaries of the Scots Language.* Online.
[113] 'Wantarack' appears to be a word signifying a merchant's mark, i.e. an emblem or other distinctive figure or device adopted by a merchant and placed on the goods sold by him (in the Middle Ages often used as quasi-heraldic symbols, e.g. on seals or monuments). *OED.*
[114] For Sir Richard Hutton (1561-1639), descended from the Huttons of Hutton Hall, Penrith, see Part 2, Ch.6, Grasmere Parish, II.128.
[115] 'No one so far and so near.'
[116] Cartmel Fell.

visnage.[117] Yet tho they pay jointly to this chapl. they pay distinctly all dues & dutyes to their Respective Parochial Ministers to whom they belong.

{Windermere}
Hence I went on the Bounder Sike & over the Moore to Windermere \ Church and to the / Parsonage. & in my discent I had a most delightfull Prospect of the great \ Lake called / Windermere which gives name to the Parish. It appeard to the Eye like an Arme of Sea, the Bankes \ on this side / adorned with wood & on the other ~~with~~ Furness fells ~~on the other~~ being large Rocky Mountaines formerly well clad with woods but now divested in a great measure of them. In the midle of the Lake were here & there Rounds Hatts[118] of Trees in Little Ilands; whereof the Greatest, being Sir Xt. Phillipsons, is adorned with a neat dwelling house, Gardines, & Walkes of Trees set in Rows.
And the Parsonage House on this side the water makes a great shew, where I lodg'd all night {with ~~honest~~ \ Mr / Wilson, being Entertained with a set of musique: 2 violins & a bass viol.}[119]
{N.B. Why may we not suppose this county to have taken its name of Westmorland from this Western mere, being the noblest lake in all the kingdom & lyeing on the west side of this county.}
[II.400][120]

On Thorsday Morning [21.]
I tooke a Ring,[121] by Windermere church directly East up Orrest-head – where Dr Dixon \ friend & / now Rector of Way-Hill in Hantshire & my old Acquaintance, sometimes F[ellow] of Q[ueen's] C[ollege] in Oxon, whom I helped to Elect into that Society many years since {et voce et voto}[122] – was Borne & Brought up.[123]

[High House]
Thence by 2 or 3 houses (one of them a Wilsons) calld {?} to High house, lately a Seat of the Brathwates, now the poss[ession] of [Blank] on whom the young Gentlewoman (unfortunately) bestowed herselfe. Quid non speramus amantes.[124] Thence NE. through a \ wilder outer / Parke & \ so to / a wood on the Banke side as you descend to Kentmer Hall

Kentmer-Hall
Which is an old \ black / Building, having ~~an~~ \ a strange / Antick Tower of Raggy stone at the West end of, and a monstrous craggy mountaine behind it; \ which when clad with wood as it has bin formerly, hath bin pleasant enough. / But before a spacious meadow & the poole calld Kentmer, fed with a Rill on the W. side this Hall, but chiefly with another beyond the chaple.[125] On the right \ side / of this plane or meadow is an High Ba[n]k of wood: & on the other, Great fells but not Rocky.

[Gilpin]
It was anciently the Seat of the Gilpins, given (as is said) by the Crowne for killing a wilde Bore hereabouts (doubtfull whether at Sleddal or in Gilpine Beck) which som doe affirme had that name given to it upon this occasion. {Memorandum: the family Bar[nard] Gilpin, who are said to descend of a Scotch Ancestor who slew a wilde boare in the River now calld Gilpin beck, from that occasion as is reported.}

The chaple \ of Kentmer / is [a] large \ & / stately Building with Little windows placed very high, & has heretofore had a sq[uare] steeple. & not far from hence was Dr [Blank] Provost of Q[ueen's]

[117] Vicinage or visinage: proximity. *OED*.
[118] Or perhaps, 'hutts'. Machell's 'a' is often identical to his 'u'.
[119] For William Wilson, rector of Windermere, see Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.323, 329, 339, 345A, 350.
[120] Also numbered p.23.
[121] A circular trip.
[122] 'By speaking up for him and by casting my vote.'
[123] Thomas Dixon. See Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, Borrans, II.329.
[124] 'What do we not hope for when we are in love?' The undeserving husband would seem to have been Miles Atkinson of Base Brown, who married 'Dorathy, the daughter & heir of Robert Brathwate of High house in Hugill', see Part 2, Ch.6, Grasmere, II.132.
[125] MS: 'but chiefly with {another} ~~the River of Kent which comes with a Grane~~ beyond the chaple.'

College in Oxford Borne.[126] Hence wee went Eastwards over the mountaine \ and down a great precipice / to Sleddall.[127]

[II.402]

Sleddall, having 2 Hamlets at the head of it & several Hamlets dispersed here & there all down the Dall[128] in the midle of which stands a Little Chaple with a Court as it were on either \ side, / for the chapl yard does not surround It. This Dale is good ground, sound and fruitfull but not very broad. {Not ¼ m.} Having high mountains on either side coverd with wood, Ashe Oake & Ewe, but most of them young; which Renders it very delightful and pleasant. There has bin such plenty the last mentioned wood (tho now scarce enough) that there is ~~an old~~ \ a Tower / House near to the chaple calld Ewebarrow hall {i.e. Yewbarrow hall} which I take to have bin the manner house, for it has som Tenants which yet belong\ing un/to it. {Write to view for armes.} This I suppose to have bin formerly a Seat of the Sleddals, who tooke name from this Dale as Johannes de Sleddal, Thomas de Sleddale, Rogerus de Sledal: from whom it may seem to have passed to the Harringtons \ of Woolyeates[129] in Cumberland /{near relations to my honord father, for he securd himselfe in that family from being taken ward;[130] but in what degree they stood I know not} who enjoy the house yet, with som of the Tenants as hath bin said & have don of old.

[Selside Hall]

But the most part of them were Trans~~mitted~~\ferrd / to the Thornburgs of Selside \ hall, / where they appeared & did Suit & Service, being a little distant from the foote of the Dale. And where I tooke up my lodging all night.[131] This Selside Hall in the Maps calld Selstead.

[II.404]

Sir William Thornburrow = Thomasin daughter of Bellingham[132]

|

1. Will. Thornburrow of Selside & Hamsteed,[133] had Estate of 800 per Annum – 500 of which was in old Rents. but by profuseness & ill husbandry reduced to 100^{li} per Annum, so eclipsing the Glory of this florishing family. He had ~~Richard William~~ Isue 2 sons. {See the Armes & Ped. in my Book of Pedegrees. M.}[134]

		Will. Son of Sir Will. of Selside & Hamsteed	Nicholas 2. Son of Sir William Thornburrow Lived at Whitwill, the gift of his father
3. Nicholas m. in Ireland	2. Thomas	1. William of the same	2. Thomas (maryed in Lanc.) of Wilson House 1.

[126] Bernard Gilpin (1516-84), clergyman and preacher, was a younger son of Edwin Gilpin of Kentmere. In 1533, aged 17, he entered Queen's College, Oxford, graduating BA and MA. Ordained in 1542, he became archdeacon of Durham in 1556. Gilpin had been a fellow of Queen's College, but, despite Machell's assertion, he refused the provostship in 1561. In later life, his extensive preaching journeys made him legendary; he is known as 'the Apostle of the North'. D. Marcombe, 'Gilpin, Bernard (1516-1584). *ODNB*.

[127] Longsleddale. The MS margin here has a note: '{Memorandum: the Chan[cel] out of St Anns church see in Kendal Tow'.}'

[128] Machell had already made this comment at the foot of MS.II.400: 'Having 2 Hamlets at the head of it & severall houses dispers'd here & there all down the dale. {& is dilicately wooded on either side}.'

[129] Wooloaks.

[130] Ward: a minor under the control of a guardian. Wardship: the guardianship of a minor. In Feudal Law, the guardianship and custody of the person and lands of a minor, with all profits accruing during his minority. *OED*.

[131] This was Thursday 21 July.

[132] Selside Hall came by marriage to the Thornburghs or Thornborrows, an ancient and distinguished Catholic family from Yorkshire who settled in Westmorland c.1283. During the 13th and 14th centuries several were Knights of the Shire. Sir William Thornburgh (d.1552) married Thomasin (d.1582), daughter of Sir Robert Bellingham of Burneside. A thrifty woman, Thomasin kept meticulous accounts of her expenses. In Stockdale's *Annals of Cartmel*, an entry relating to this lady, dated 1579, lists, 'The holle yeare waigs of Dame Thomasyne Ladye Thornburgh of all her servants of Selsett'. See James Stockdale, *Annales Caermoelenses or Annals of Cartmel* (Ulverston and London,1872), 471. A descendant, William Thornburgh, was president of the Roman Catholic seminary of Douai in 1739: The Catholic Record Society, *Records, Volume 28: The Douay College Diaries: The Seventh Diary 1715-1778* (London, 1928), 221.

[133] Hampsfield

[134] See MS.5.139-41.

3. John obj. Caelebs	4. Franc. obijt C[aelebs][135]	2. Richard	1. Rowland of Medup = [Blank] Dikenson of Raseham in Lancs	William who purchased Hall of his cosan William		
	William	James	1. Rowland of Medup = Jane Brokeld of Claton in Lancs	4. § Frances	3. Nicholas Inn.[136]	1. William Ob Inn.[137] 2. James of Selside Hall who sold Selside Hall to his brother Frances & now farmes at Garnet fold adjacent – & had Isue, Nicholas \ at 19 / 2. John: & 4 daughters living – Sc. 1. Frances. Katherine Elizabeth Mary
		§ Frances the 4th son of William who purchased Selside, & was 2 son of Nicholas son of Sir William	= Fr[…] daughter of George Teale of Laburne near Midleham in Yorkeshire[138]			
George apprentice at London to a watchmaker		*1. William of Selside 16. 15 July 1692 {*[Pedigree] Taken 29 of July 92. From the said William}	= Mary \ onely / daughter of Mr William Hudleston of Hale in Newbigging Parish	Isabell	1. Agnes	

[II.406]

Selside-Hall, is an Old Manner-House flanked on the North Side the fold with an old Chappel contiguouse thereunto, which yet serve the neighboure[hood]. And is adjoyned within a walld parke which is the Demane and yet belongs to it. It was an ancient Seat of the Thornburrows once one of the most considerable familyes in the Barony of Kendal; whose Chiefe is removed to (a Freehold Estate ? in) Methop near Witherslack & yett reteineth some of the Tenants – the Rest being sold to [Blank][139] and the Manner House with Demaines to a younger Branch of the same family, being now poss[ess]ed by the Ingeniouse Mr [Blank] Thornburrow who was lately maryed to Mary the daughter of Mr William Hudleston of Hale in the parish of Newbiging, a younger son of Hudlestons of Hutton John in Cumberland, whose Descent I have taken. And thence

On Friday [22.]

Skelsmer-chapel[140]

I went downe the Hill crossing the Roade twixt Kendal & Penrith to Skelsmer chapel. Dedicated to the Service of God in the name of St John Baptist; as appears \ not only / by tradition but a well \ also / which springeth at the E. end thereof & Runeth under it, the floore formerly being coverd with Plankes. Called St Johns Well. It is now ~~demolish &~~ \ of late / falne to decay, the walls thereof onely Remane. But som yet living {Gilpin, farmer at the Hall}[141] remember it coverd & seates standing [in] it (x with the image of John the Baptist),[142] the Church Bible, and have seen a note of the ~~sallary~~ \ ancient salary which belongd to the C[haplain].[143] / But can give no Account how it was chargd, whether by Seates or Rents of Tenements as in other places. ~~Heu Pietas~~ But now it is lost, and the

[135] 'Died a bachelor.'
[136] 'Never married.'
[137] 'Died unmarried.'
[138] Words in this section are blotted.
[139] William, see the pedigree above.
[140] See Blake Tyson, 'St. John's Well and Chapel, Skelsmergh: their location and present condition', *CW2,* 98 (1998), 156-67.
[141] See Gilpin's letter to Machell, Part 2, Ch.2, Kendal Town, II.45, 47.
[142] The letter 'x' and the round brackets were added in different ink. The 'x' might denote that the text was meant to be deleted.
[143] Or 'chapel'.

People \ neglecting to repare their chaple, / are forcd to repare to the mother church.[144] Heu Pietas, Heu Prisca fides.[145]
\ Patton[146] is commonly joyned with it in the Easter Bookes, & they are contiguous. /
A little below in the Edge of a Parke once stored with Deere (for there were {or are} 5 oakes by the mire side which had Holes motessd[147] in them, where Racks had bin placed for feeding the Deere), stands Skelsmer-Hall.[148]

[II.410]

[Skelsmer Hall] {Nom[en] presens et discriptio Loci}[149]
A pretty Large House situate near to a mos or mire; whence perhaps tis called Skelsmire – & from Scales for sheep that have bin hereabouts.[150]
{Labourn antiq.}[151] Tis a Seat of the Labournes, and was lately[152] Rebuilded by Mr [Blank] Labourne in [Blank] as appears by the Initial Letters of his name & of his 2 wives set over the Doore as you enter the Hall.

{Descensus}[153] Hence over the Bridge we pased to

[II.409] [154]

Burneside: Burneside Hall



Figure 2.10.3. Burneside Hall. Margin sketch. II.409.

[144] Nice pun!
[145] 'Alas for piety! alas for the ancient faith!' Virgil's *Aeneid* Book VI.878; The Lament on Menelaus.
[146] Paton.
[147] Mortised: fixed or fastened firmly. *OED*.
[148] MS: 'A little below in the Edge of a Parke (once stored with Deere, for there were {or are} 5 oakes by the mire side ~~near which this~~ which had Holes motessd in them, where ~~tis said~~ Racks \ had bin placed / for feeding the Deere ~~had bin placed~~) stands Skelsmer-Hall.'
[149] 'Name and description of the place.'
[150] Scales: huts or sheds erected for tending animals on the fellside. *OED*.
[151] Some heading text is lost in the binding here.
[152] MS: 'lated.'
[153] 'Going down.'
[154] MS.II.407 contains one note: 'Sir John Machell \ a Sheriff of London r. q. Md / Born in Kendal & Descended of the House of Crakenthorp.'

Armes at Burnaside Hall. {Taken 20 July A.D. 1692}[155]



Figure 2.10.4. 'Armes at Burnaside Hall'. II.409.

[Names on coats 3-15 are as follows][156]

3. Braithwaite, Bindloss.
4. Braithwaite, Benson.
5. Bradley, Braithwaite.
6. Benson, Braithwaite.
7. Briggs, Braithwaite.
8. Braithwaite, Dalton.
9. Braithwaite, Lawson.
10. Lamplugh, Braithwaite.
11. Barton, Braithwaite.
12. Salkeld, Braithwaite.
13. Brisco, Braithwaite.
14. Askough, Braithwaite.
15. Braithwaite, Penruddock.

{I.} The I. in the New Dineing Roome. Gules a chevron Argent charged with 3 †[157] \ cross croslets fitche / sable: & in Chief for Distinction of a Second House a Crescent Or. The Crist a greyhound Seiant Argent coller Or Leashed Gules – by the name of Brathwate.
All the rest (except the 2 last, which are in stone above the Hall chiminey) are in the Gallary windows, & have all compertments about them & Inscriptions under them like:

{II.} The Coate marked 2. which is Brathwate impaleing Williamson; who Bears Argent Between 3 Trifoles slipt a cheveron {IX} ingrald S[able] charged with 3 crescents Or.
[IX] The 9 is Brath[wate] impaleing a Quarterly Coate whereof the 1^{t} \ & 4th / is Argent a chev. betwene 3 martlets Sable. \ By the name of Lawson. / The 2nd & 3rd Barry of 6 Argent & Azure 3 annulets in chiefe of the 2. &c. By the name of Lawson.
{XI} The XI. Barton bears (if this be right) Quarterly. Sc. 1. Ermin on a fess Gules 3 anulets Or; the second Pally of 6, Argent & Vert; the 3rd Gules between 2 Bends Or & Azure. 3 Lionsells passant Argent: the 4th gules a cheveron Argent charged with 3 harts, Inter 3 florr de luces Or.

[155] If Machell really meant this particular date (Wednesday 20 July), then he failed to explain how he had made these sketches among all his other activities on that day, see above. As the ink is different from that on the rest of the page, one could speculate that the date was added later.
[156] Surnames 3-15 have been reproduced in modern form.
[157] Cross crosslets image.

{In the old Parlour or Dineing Roome are the same with the 3rd & 9th upon the wainscot. And the same with the 1t in Plaster with a Crescent & the year of Our Lord 1641.

In the Hall upon smal Diamond quarries of glass, ar[e] two Coates the same with the 1t, charged with crescents.[158] And also the same with the Coat marked 3. Having for its Crist a Demy-Horse Couped with a Ducall flourished Collar Azure. Belonging to Bindlose of Borrick.
{The XIV [coat] is sable a fess Or, Inter 3 Horses sistant[159] Argent. By the name of Askough.
The XV Impaled is Quarterly sc. 1. Gules a Ragged Staf Argent. The 2. Sandford with Bores heads Or. The 3rd Sable 6 annulets Or. 2, 2 & 2 perhaps for Lowther. The 4th Azure a fess inter 3 martlets Or.
XVIII may sem to have bin the Armes of Sir John Machell in a Bord[ure.]}
{Coats 14 & 15 see Guillim.}[160]

[II.410]

Before the Court ~~gate~~ is a large pond intercepted with a passage or Casway \ Bridge / up to the gate, & on either side is a little Iland with a tree planted in it. It anciently belongd to a family of that name – whose h[eir] generall was maried to Bellingham. From the Bellinghams it pass to the Machell {of some of whom L.M.[161] is supposd descended – of Whinfell – hardby; {one of Machells of Crackenthorpe} & at length to the Brathwates in whom it now Rests.[162] But the Tenants (whose houses were very scarce \ here /) for I saw but few of them – were [Blank]

[Burneside Chapel]
Hence, I went over the Bridge to the chaple of Burneside, for it stands on the other side of Kent & is in pretty good Repare, the floores well boarded, both in the ally & under the seates; [a] rarity which I have not met with anywhere else.[163]

[Garnett House]
Near to this place stands Garnet House on the Top of an Hill, the heire of T. Striklands. & farther \ of[f] in a parke / by the waterside

[II.412]

a good ~~gentile~~ \ old / Country House with wainscot Rooms in it, where I lodged all night with Honest Denyson the owner thereof.[164] Whose parlour is paved with Diamond Sq[uares]; like ~~the king of~~ Patterdale-Hall, being don I believe by the same ha[n]d.[165] A thing not vulgar; for I have not met with it any where else.[166] All this a very pleasant C[ountry] {from below Selside.}

[II.411]

? View Forrest-hall.

---

[158] Here are inked passages, superimposing pencilled notes.
[159] From the Latin 'sisto': to stand still.
[160] John Guillim, *A Display of Heraldry* (London, 1610) with later editions.
[161] Lancelot Machell.
[162] A modern description of Burneside Hall, referring to Machell's visit, is in Hyde & Pevsner, 206-07.
[163] MS: '~~&~~ the floores well boarded, both in the ally \ & / under the seates; ~~which is~~ rarity \ which / I have not met with ~~in~~ any ~~other place~~ \ where else. /'
[164] Presumably, this was Friday evening, 22 July 1692, if we follow the last formal date on II.406 (Skelsmer Chapel), above.
[165] See Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, Patterdale Hall, I.714-715B.
[166] Garnett House is recorded in documents from the 16th to the 20th centuries. In 1517, Sir Thomas Parr of Kendal (1478-1517), father of Katherine Parr, bequeathed 'Garnettes House' to his cousin Richead Ducket for life. The Hearth Tax of 1669 records three hearths: in 1674 there were four. The will of George Gibson (1745) mentions a parlour, new parlour, hall, buttery, dwelling house (main room) and kitchen loft. The upper floor included a gallery loft, parlour loft, and hall loft. Outbuildings included a stable, lamp loft, cart house, cow house, barn and oxen house. See *Historic England*, 'Garnett House, with attached walls, gate piers and steps. Burneside, Kendal, Cumbria', https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/list-entry/1479032?section=official-list-entry. There is no mention here of honest 'Denyson' (or other similar spelling), who, from Machell's description, appears to have been a yeoman, not dissimilar in status to the 'King of Patterdale', see Part 1, Ch.5, Barton, Patterdale Hall, I.714-715B,

[II.412]

[Forrest Hall]
Near to this place is Forrest-Hall,[167] the first {?} Seat of the Bellinghams in this Countery, which I did not visit, hearing there was nothing Remarkable at it.[168] \ I went to it afterwards and can onely make this remarqe: that there was nothing Remarquable in it – q[uid] miror![169] / But went to ut infra*.[170]

Staveley Chappel[171]
which is a fair building like to a church, standing in a level place opposite to the Cross & at the Lower end of the village of Staveley,[172] which is pretty well sett with a Row \ two / of Houses and was heretofore a market Towne. There is a fine steeple at the West End of the said chapel, with 3 good bells in it. The Communion Table is raled in, and all other things excepting the floore (a common calamity} in very good order – having \ besides the Pews & the pulpit / one thing peculiar. Sc. an Homily Deske ~~or pulpit~~ made with rale & Ballaster, & a Turneing Deske for the Booke to lye on – ~~Beside the Reading pew & the Pulpit~~. The Chaplain here gave me a pice of ore, & shewd me a Jewill with pea[r]les appendant.
And I drew out the Coates of Armes, & went thence by Parke to a womans house* who helpd to pul a calfe from a cow which had 2 heads, 3 Earrs, 4 Eyes 2 mouthes & 2 noses & who told me the cow recovered.
{In the year of Xt / 1456. Amongst diverse prodigies hapning at Rome, is recounted \ one / of a Calfe that was borne with 2 heads – and 1499 of another at Crocovia[173] with one behind & another before. See *Func. Cron.* Sub verb – vitulus.}[174]

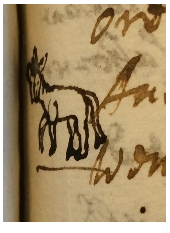


Figure 2.10.5. Margin sketch 1½ cm square: calf with two heads. II.412.

Thence up to \ Burnt Brow vel aliquando Tale[175]/ Birkets the Queens chief Baly; who I met not with; so Back agane & away to the chapel Ith Ings. But q[uery] if this was not in our way to Staveley.

The Chapel Ith Ing: vulgo Ing Chappel. So called from the Long Ing or Meadow near to head of which it standeth.

[II.413]

Ad chapl. Ith Ings [& Low Hall]
{L[ength] 7 body; 7 quire. B[readth] 6, sc. on the inside}

---

[167] Above the heading, 'Forrest Hall', Machell has placed a tiny sketch of four trees.
[168] MS: '~~which hearing that~~ \ which I did not visit, hearing / there was nothing Remarkable at It, ~~I did not Visit~~.'
[169] 'Why would I be surprised?'
[170] Ut infra = 'as below'. These words, and Machell's asterisk, refer to the village of Staveley and a paragraph about a calf with two heads, further down the page. A scored-through comment on Ings Chapel, MS: '~~which is so called from being situated at the Head of an Ing~~,' follows the phrase, 'ut infra'.
[171] There is no reference here to the fire which damaged part of Staveley chapel and three houses, recorded by Sir Daniel Fleming on 11 October 1684: see Sowerby and McCormack, *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 214.
[172] MS: '…which is \ a fair building / like to a church {standing} placed in a level churchyard \ place / opposite to the Cross & at the Lower end of the village {of the village of Staveley}.'
[173] Crocovia: Latin name for the Polish city of Kraków.
[174] 'Under the word, 'vitulus' [a bull calf]. In *Annals 15.*47, Tacitus described the birth of a monstrous calf as a portent of impending doom. '*Func. Cron.*' is unknown to this editor; the volume [Chronicle?] appears to have been written in alphabetical form, like a dictionary.
[175] 'Or sometime/formerly such a name.'

[II.416]

which I viewd on the out side, but could not enter for want of the Keys.[176]

[Hugill]
Hence – I went up a little higher to the N. West to Hugill – to the House of [Blank] Birket who told me his Ancestors had Caw garth; and that he had writeings which declared the same; but I saw them not and ergo onely gave him the hearing till farther enquiry can be made.[177] Here I met with J. Gowling my Quondam[178] parishioner. And ~~t~~his I suppose to have bin formerly the manner house if ever Hugil was a manner;[179] because St Anns Chappell, a large ancient Ruine, which hath had 2 arches & wings on each, standeth opposit to it in the very ~~fold~~ \ court yard / & hence without doubt came the name of Hugil, which is not worne out from amongst the vulgar sort \ of people / to this day.

[High House and Hag Worm]
Hence – wee Returned by the High-house & Orrest-head (where I saw an Hag-worm slane in the way, as thick as my finger and almost a foot long)[180] {of a \ raw / Blea-brown colour somewhat like a Stripd Eale or a Common Earthworm, but somewhat more browne}. \ This High-house belongd to the Brathwate[s], the heiress whereof bestowed her selfe on a Country fellow.[181] There are Armes in the windows & in a Parchment Roll of matches, but she[…]ing[182] them to my mem[ory], I passed them by. /

[Bowness]
Windermer Church*, which stands in a Large & Level church yard in the midst of Bowness – a small c[ountry] village having a Schooll house ~~& others~~ \ with 9 or 10? other houses / about it; where there is a sort of market or meeting \ place / lately begun. Here I busied my selfe till late at night in Drawing out som of the Coates of Armes & lay agane at the Parsonage house. Here Anno Xti 792 Eathredus King of the Nordan-Humbers[183] slewe \ murderd / the sons of King Elfwald, whom he fetched from Yorke that he might confirme the Kingdom to him in their Blood & his wickedness†.

[Machell's Notes II.416]

{*ad Viculum Windermere}[184]
†*Coenobii Hist. Melrosensis* p.682.[185]

[II.417]

{The Townehouse}
There was a market house – or rather – a meeting house builded there this last winter – 1692 – by Sir Christopher Philipson; the Parson of W[indermere]; & other subscribers of their friends & acquaintance, with som of the Town. It stand just opposit to the church on the S. side of the church yard.[186]

---

[176] Machell returned the following year. See Part 2, Ch.3iv, II.413: 'Text added in late March 1693.'
[177] For discussion relating to Machell's dislike of fake pedigrees, see the Editor's Introduction.
[178] John Gowling, had been churchwarden at Temple Sowerby chapel, part of the rectory of Kirkby Thore: see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, III.245, and numerous references to Gowling family members in that chapter.
[179] MS: 'And ~~which~~ \ This / I suppose to have bin \ formerly / the manner house ~~for that part~~ if ~~It~~ \ ever Hugil / was a manner.'
[180] Hagworm: a northern name for the adder or viper; in some districts applied to the grass snake and in others to the blindworm. *OED.*
[181] See Part 2, Ch.6, Grasmere, II.132.
[182] Unclear word.
[183] 'Northumbria', see Camden, *Britannia* tr Holland (1637), Cheshire, 603.
[184] 'In a lane at Windermere.'
[185] *Annalibus Melrosensis Coenobii* (MS. in the Cottonian Library) a document listing the Scottish kings; also quoted by James Ussher: see *The Whole Works of the Most Rev. James Ussher, Volume 6* (Dublin, 1639), 454.
[186] For a description of the market house, see Blake Tyson, 'The first Market House at Bowness-on-Windermere, 1692', *CW3,* 7 (2007), 107-12.

[II.420]

On Sunday [24.][187]

I Preached at Windermer for Mr Wilson, & was seised upon by my d[ear] \ kinde / Brother, Sir Christopher Phillipson, who tooke us prisoners & caried us over into his Ile, where I lay al night.[188]

[Munday 25.]

& Returneing next day to finish my work in the said church, wee kept very busy till 12 at night; and a storme arriseing wee lay together at the Parsonage \ house / but dined agane in the Ile of Sir Christophers.

On Tuesday [26.]

After dinner wee went to view the Lady Holm, where there is supposed to have bin a chaple, the ~~Ruin~~ foundation of which seemd to ~~be~~ appare,[189] & the very name bespeakeing \ as much / which I have \ had /since confirmed by Evidence that is undeniable. And I looke upon it to have bin an Hermitage wherein probably the 2 young pri[n]ces of whom wee have spoken where interr'd if not murthered.

[Cawgarth]

Thence I went up to visit Cau-garth – The only Seat excepting the Parsonage on the Bankes of Windermer.[190] {Is not this a comparison?} These 2 conteineing the best & planest gr[ound] thereabouts – well [191] There is in this house a good Hall & Parlour & an Excellent Dineing Roome which views the great lake; in all which places I drew out the Armes, and Returnd to the Iland.

On Wednesday [27.]

The Parson & I sett forward for Ridall, viewing in the way – 1[t] a pretty new house of one of the Phillipsons \ whose name is pretty common here amongst the vulgar.[192] & so are the Fishers; / Then St Katherines Chapel.

[II.422]

St Catherines-Chaple* \ in Windermer Parish /

Us'd of late years but now converted into a Dwelling house, yet so that by the figure & position of it being East & W. & an East Window like other chaples, now walled up, as well as by the name, confirmd it unto us that it has bin a chapel.[193] The Sallary which belonged unto it, is swallowed up amongst the Inhabitants, who have thought it better to spare their purses in paying the same & Repareing therof ~~chaple~~ than to spare their legs in Repareing to (Windermer) the mother church {which is [Blank miles] of.} It stands a little N. from Caugarth. But being thus lost, I did not thinke it worth my while to take the Limits & Bounder of it. Hence wee travaild to Troutbeck Chapel

Troutbeck Chapel[194]

\ which / is parochial (in Windermer Parish) and a pretty fabric in Hansom repare, having a steeple with Bells in it & a good chapel yard – near the East End of which stands the Free School. \ They are

---

[187] MS: 'On Sunday ~~Morning~~'. Presumably this is Sunday 24 July and Machell had spent Saturday 23 July at Staveley and Hugill, although there is no obvious statement of where he had spent the night.

[188] MS: 'I Preached at ~~Gresmer~~ \ Windermer / for Mr Wilson, & was seised upon by my d. \ kinde / Brother Sir Christopher Phillipson who \ tooke us prisoners / & carryed us; ~~Prisners~~ \ caried us over / into ~~the~~ his Ile, where I lay al night.' Once home to the Philipsons, this island (now Belle Isle) was first known as Winandermere Island, then Long Holm, then Curwen's Island, see P.J. Mannex, *History, Topography, and Directory of Westmorland; and Lonsdale North of the Sands in Lancashire* (London, 1849), 56.

[189] Probably Machell meant, 'To be apparent'; 'to ap[p]eare'.

[190] MS: '\ the Bankes of / on Windermer banke.'

[191] Figure 2.10.6. Another small sketch of a tree, Machell's shorthand form for 'well wooded' or 'well planted with trees'.

[192] Possibly Rayrigg Hall, a 17th and 18th century house belonging to the Philipsons, sold to the Flemings in 1735: see Hyde & Pevsner, 693.

[193] MS: 'as well as by the name ~~it bears It may be discoverd to have bin Demolishd~~ \ confirmd it unto us that it has bin a chapel. /'

[194] Jesus Chapel: see Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.312; II.320.

situated / in an hansom plane valley on the West banke of which stands the ~~village~~ \ Town / of Troutbeck – a Long Rambling disorderly village,[195] but with good houses in it – where I mett with one Browne, an Ingeniouse country \ man / who with Mr [Blank] a worthy man also – the Curate there – gave me a good account of al things.[196]
This place take name from a Little River which Runns by the church all along down the vale, which has plenty of Troutes & som very large one about Michaelmas Time.
At the S. end of Troutbeck being on the very Top of the Hill, I had a fine prospect of Winandermer \ Water, / & the windeing of it. And Thence wee went forwards to the Head of \ Windermer / Water†. {where I tooke the Dimentions of a Romane forte calld [Blank] Castle: & Thence to Ameside.}

[Machell's Notes: II.422]

*{A Phillipson learned at it.}
†N. Here the map must be corrected, for the head of Windermer Water reaches in a manner to Clap[pers]gate.}

[II.424]

This Ambleside
is a small market Towne \ at the head of ~~Ullswater~~ Windermer / on the East side of ~~It~~ and not much above a Bow Shot from it. Call'd Ambleside from the old Romane fort which was cald Amboglana, about which place many fragments of Romane Antiq[uities] have bin discovered. And amongst the Rest a piece of a Golden Bridle bit* & divers coines in gold, silver, brass, were bestowd of the Public Library in Oxford by a Deed from [Blank] Brathwate of Ambleside Hall,[197] where they are to be seen.[198]
This House of the Brathwates is called an Hall only from the goodness of it exceeding the common sort of buildings. But neither is nor ever was a manner house, for that Estate is composed of \ divers / Tenements united together and is still in Tenancy under the Crown.
This \ Town of Ambleside / was made a market &c. as in my N[otes]. And in the said Towne, but above the Stock, standes Ambleside-Chapel[199] – which is in very good Repare, & where I drew out this Coate of Armes. Which likewise is upon the Cross with the Brathwates motto.[200]
{[Ambleside Chapel is] in Gresmer parish tho the market be in Windermer – For Ambleside above the Stock, i.e. the Bridge which has bin formerly made of wood (whence our word stocks) is all in Gresmer, yet both in one Chapelry.}
In the Street hereof not long agoe a piece of Gold was found & disposed to one Cock of Kendal[201] which I must enquire if it was Romane†? And I heard of ~~memory~~ a Thunderbolt found hereabouts which I must endeavour to gett a sight of from my Lady Otway, the last of Bra[thwates] that ought[202] this hall.

[195] According to Hyde & Pevsner, the village 'ambles down braided tracks following the spring line'. Hyde & Pevsner, 641.
[196] Dudley Walker was curate of Troutbeck, 1663-1701, and curate of Grasmere, 1712. CCED. George Browne of Town End was descended from a well-known Troutbeck yeoman family. According to Hyde & Pevsner, the family was 'semi-gentry and the house has developed somewhat beyond the vernacular, in the provision of … George Browne's … library, for example.' Hyde & Pevsner, 641.
[197] Thomas Braithwaite, of the family of Brathwaite, was owner of the Borrans, site of the Roman Camp at Waterhead. Having made a collection of antiquities, 'he bequeathed to his son Thomas, to be preserved as family heirlooms, "mine ancient coynes of gold, silver, and brasse"'. Dying childless, son Thomas bequeathed his 'ancient medals and Roman Antiquities' to Oxford University, through the Provost of Queen's College. See Armitt, 'Ambleside Town and Chapel', 24-25.
[198] MS: '& diver coines in gold silver brass ~~which~~ were bestowd of (~~& are to be seen at~~) the Public Library in ~~the U. of~~ Oxford by a Deed from [Blank] Brathwate of Ambleside Hall ~~which is called so from the goodness of the building not that It is or ever was a~~ \ where they are to be seen. /'
[199] MS: 'And \ in the said Towne / ~~a little above the said Town~~ \ but above ~~& above~~ the Stock / standes Ambleside-Chapel.'
[200] The text implies an intended illustration, but it did not materialise here.
[201] For James Cocke of Kendal, see Part 2, Ch.9, II.323, fn. 174.
[202] Owned.

There \ are / som good House & Inns in this Towne and some good fellows which kept me longer than I intended from Ridall Hall (not for drinkeing but for companyes sake}[203] where I tooke up my Lodgings.

[Machell's Notes: II.424 and II.425]

*{So the vulgar calld it; but Mr Cock sayes it was only a mussy[204] piece of gold about 5 Inches long, & as thick as the small end of a Tobacco pipe, sollid & streight; for which he gave 34s. & sent a shilling to the Girle that found it at the head of Windermer Water. He had also \ from thence / a meddal of gold worth about 17s and 6d. – with Adrians[205] head & superscription ~~from the said place~~ \ upon it. / But he sold them both many years since, so that I could not see them.}

†Yes. Ut supra.[206]

[II.425][207]

{The fat ox in Yorkeshire}

Sir Edward Blacket Baronet kild at Newby near Rippon in November 1692 an Oxe; the 4 Quarters whereof onely, weighed 106 stone one pound and one halfe (at 14li to the stone) And it had 19 stone & 4 pound of Tallow therein (at the same weight).

Witness Sir Christopher Philipson & Mr Marmaduke Tunsdal, who saw it weighed. Out of Sir Daniel Flemings collections M.S.O. p.249.

[II.426]

Gresmere Parish

Ridal-Hall

About 1 mile N. from Ambleside Chapel stands Ridal-Hall, twixt Gilbeck & Roathy in a pretty little valley of meadows twixt it & the Towne, well wooded on both sides. Though surrounded [and] hem'd in with great mountains, it is yet a very pleasant Seate, so that tho you have a Great Cragg Mountaine above the House {which is called the Nab whence they can view the Castle of Lancaster?}, from thence you have a pleasing though narrow prospect for a great way of viewing som part of the head of U[l]sewater & the Western banks of it.[208] It is also adorned with good gardines & orchards planted all round so thick with Black Cherries, & those so high grown, that you can hardly see the house for them which is Res Viris ætatis \ in an other sense than Florus gives it.[209] / Sir Daniel Fleming \ who is no old man[210] / raised them all since he was marryed of Black Cherry stones.

In the Gardine a Runnell comes quite thorow it & the H[ouse] of office, which drives a mill \ adjoyneing thereto. / & in one of the Orchards by the Gilbeck side is a little Grotto or a house of Retirement, of one little Roome, \ wainscotted round, / whose window opposit to the Dooer opens directly upon a great force or fall of water, having onely a small poole betwixt them, which is very surprising.

[Machell's Notes: II.426]

{Sir Daniel describes it to be an ugly convenient building – i.e. an ill well contrivd house. T.M.}

---

[203] The MS continues with the following, mainly scored-through, text: '~~Which kept me the longer from Ridall Hall About a mile N. from Ambleside Chapel stand which stands about a mile above Ambleside Town. Ridal Hall on a little meadow on a pretty little well wooded Dale twixt Roathy,~~ & the little Rill calld Gilbeck ~~the~~…'.

[204] Mussy: untidy, rumpled [thus, messy]. *OED*.

[205] Hadrian's: Publius Aelius Hadrianus (76-138), emperor 117-138.

[206] 'As appears above'. The answer is written in different ink. Machell refers to this incident in Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.323. See also, Part 3. Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, VI.259.

[207] Text on the reverse of this page relates to Machell's dispute with Sir John Dalston (d.1692 aged 81) of Acorn Bank. He deleted it, recycling the paper to pen this note, taken from the Fleming MSS.

[208] This passage could be regarded as proto-picturesque. It has been calendared. The original is as follows: 'though backd with a ~~monstrouse~~ \ ~~very~~ / cragg~~y~~ ~~mountaine~~ & Hem'd in on mountanes on either \ surrounded with mountaines / is yet a very pleasant Seate, for About 1. M. N. from Ambleside Chapel stands Ridal-Hall, Twixt Gilbeck & Roathy ~~& Gilbeck~~ in a pretty little valley of meadows twixt It & the Towne \ hem'd in with great mountaines / well wood – on both sides so that tho you have a Great Cragg Mountaine above the House {which is called the Nab whence they can view the Castle of Lancaster?}, yet looking ~~to Ambleside~~ from thence you have a ~~very~~ pleasing \ though narrow / prospect ~~from the upper Roomes~~ \ for a great way of / viewing ~~Ulsewater~~ som part of the head of Usewater \ & the Western banks of It.'

[209] Res viris ætatis: 'which is a feature of age in men'. Compare Florus (*Epitome Rerum Romanorum* I.I.): 'Res erat unius ætatis, populus virorum.'

[210] Daniel Fleming was born in 1633.

{An hig[h] walke & low; a pond & a privy, are the accomplishments of a good garden sayes Mr Preston.}
{July 13.[211] New Orchard upon an hill top, a cirq' of Scotch firs with one in the center.}

On Thorsday [28.]

[Clappergate]
I went (accompanied with Mr Fleming, Rector \ Parson / of Gresmer,[212] & M. Miles Wright)[213] by Clappergate a small hamlet or village near to the Romane forte, which is thought to take name from the Gate of the Castle \ whereon the clapper or knocker did hang / opening that way – and They would ~~needs~~ persuade us that the very Hi[n]ges (which are prettily florishd) & the Rings upon the Porch & Quier dooer of Gresmer Church, came from This place.

[II.427]

Coathow
Coathow near Ridall, which is said to be the chiefe Seat of the Bensons, is in Gresmer parish […],[214] where there are som Coates of Arme. For Elter water house was a late purchase of VIII Tenements by one Michael Benson of this place; who laid them together & built that fair house whose 4[th] son George is said to have bin a Doctor in Divinity,[215] & to have maryed B[isho]p Kings d[aughter.][216]
{He was Baptized Octob. 2. 1583.}[217]

[II.429]

{Coathow in Gresmer – a free hold} {10 li per annum}

In the hall
3. The portcullis & crown Or \ in an Oval Argent. /
4. The flor de luce & crown Or \ in an oval […] /[218]
5. 6. Blank.
7. The Royal Crist be a Lyon on a crown.
8. Gilpines Armes – Or Sable.
9. & 10. Blank.
11. Blank.
12. 1569.[219]



Figure 2.10.7. Coathow. Arms in the Hall. II.429.

[211] Unclear; insecure transcription.
[212] Henry Fleming (1659-1728), second son of Sir Daniel Fleming. Queen's College, Oxford. BA, 1682. He resided at Queen's for many years afterwards. Although he preached a sermon as rector of Grasmere in December 1687, he was non-resident, employing John Braithwait as his curate. Henry Fleming became D.D., and also rector of Asby, in 1696, holding both benefices in plurality. See Sowerby and McCormack, *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 429.
[213] See below, II.436.
[214] Here there is an illegible blotted word.
[215] George Benson: Queen's College, Oxford; DD 1607; died 1647/48: see *OAD*.
[216] 'Bishop King': Possibly John King (died 1621), bishop of London, 1611-21. P. McCullough, 'King, John, bishop of London'. *ODNB*.
[217] See the Benson pedigree.
[218] This indistinct word abbreviates either 'azure' or 'argent'.
[219] The date is written inside a rhombus, similar to those in *Figure 2.10.7.*

In the Great Loft
Letters or lines Gules; wantaracks Argent; Pricks or quar[ters] Argent.
3. Lond[on].[220] Armes Argent & Gules.
[4.] Gilpine.
5. Portcullis Or with a crown above the Shield.
6. Armes of England with a crown about.
7. Argent the Yorke & Lancaster Rose White in Read cum Corona […][221]
8. Argent – a Port cullis Or, cum Corona ut supra.
9. The Lyon on a Ducal Cap.
10. Gules – a maiden head [at]tired with a chaplet of Roses, & Habited & tressed Or, within a Bordure neubulee[222] Argent.
11. Earle of Darby crest, Sc. the Eagle & Childe.
12. The year – Sc. πNN^0 1573.[223]
In the Parlour under it – the same.

Thomas B[enson] had iiij wives, and by som of them 3 daughters –
1. Mabell who maryed an Apothecary in London and had the Estate by purchase of her father before his death.
2. Dorathy \ 14 / who maryed one Thomas Benson of High Close. S.P.[224]
3. Isabel, who maryed Reginald Brathwate of Clappersgate.

[II.430]

[Iron Forge]
Hence wee went up by Brathay Beck – where there are Locks for fishing – to a Mill and House at [Blank] Brig, & so up on Lancashire Side through Furness till wee crossed agane to the Iron \ Forge / where the[y] usually have Incomparable Ale. Here I saw the \ double / Bellows & great hammer heat by the motion of wheales; but could not obteine any rationall account of the nature of Iron from the manager of it; whether they could make their Iron tuff if naturally Brittle by Intention of heat or maliation; And whether they could make Tuff Iron Brittle & worke into Steale, by Divers heates & Temperings of it.
Hence wee returned down the mou[ntains] (not being able for \ want / of Time to reach the Shire Stones),[225] to the Lough at Loughrig at the foote of Lile Langdale, where I saw a ~~sword at Benson Hall~~ \ two-handed sword, but none of the greatest that I have met with, at an House of ~~his~~ Bensons corruptly called Elterwater Hall. /

[Langdale Chapel]
Thence up the Beck to Langdale Chap[el], a long ordinary building at the foote of Great Langdale, being 2 \ chapls conjoined / in one. For they say the chapple ~~& Sallary~~ of Little Langdale was ~~brought to this~~ \ translated hither / and the Sallary with it annexed to this, which has made a pretty good endowment.
Hence (being benighted) we Travailed E. over the fell – by 2? places of the Bensons to the Bankes of Gresmere; & thence down along by the Edge of Loughrigg-fell for som miles \ together / in a Strait Track, their being a Great precipice all along on the left hand into the water, till wee came at \

[220] The ancient arms of the City of London were coloured argent and gules, as in 'Arms - Argent a cross gules, in the first quarter a sword in pale point upwards of the last.' See London Metropolitan Archives: the Arms of the City of London. Online.
[221] The symbols after, 'with a crown', are indistinct. They appear to read, '3. I. Sap.' Sapphires are sometimes used as heraldic symbols, see Jordan Walbesser, 'Of Camelopards and Camelopardels', in *Coat of Arms: The Annual Journal of the Heraldry Society*, 4th Series, Vol. IV. (2021), Arms of Cecil Thomas Crisp-Molineux-Montgomerie, Esq., 47. Nevertheless, this is merely a suggestion for the meaning of this unclear text close to the gutter.
[222] Nebuly.
[223] 'Anno 1573.'
[224] 'Sine prole': without issue.
[225] The Shire Stones: three shire stones (for Cumberland, Westmorland and Lancashire) on Wrynose-top.

Coathow / and \ here / there is a fearfull Rocky descent so that the Horses seemd to goe on their heads, the night being darke. Had it bin upwards[226] it might have bin counted a heavenly way for it, but being downw[ards] it seemd to me a little shought of hellish – {which, but that the Poets have tolds us – facilis descensus Averni,[227] I should have calld [it] a Hellish w[ay].}

[Machell's Notes: II.430]

{N.B. [Brathay is derived from] Breatheye, vide Greeke [and compare] Ritheye Rithdale Brath-eye Brath-thwate Brea-thwate Poole-eye Pooley. The Eye, at the head & foot of Ulswater.}

[II.431]

And we return'd to Ridal agane.
Hence

[II.432][228]

On Friday [29.]



Figure 2.10.8. Helm Crag. 'Atlas supporting the Hevens'. II.432.

Mr Henry Fleming the Parson of Gresmer – the only Minister in the Barrony of Kendal except Mr Wilson that was so civil as to accompany me through their parishes – went along with me up the N. side of Rothay to Gresmer church, in the way to which I espyed a mountain beyond the church called the Helm, on the Top of which there is a crag which looks like Atlas supporting the Hevens.[229] And leaveing that on the left hand, wee went up the Dale to an heap of stones on a fell betwixt 2 higher mountains \ on either side one /) called Dunbal-Raise; which partes the Countyes of W. & Cumberland near unto Wiborne[230] ~~in the said County~~: where there is a fair lake, being one of the heads of Derwent water.

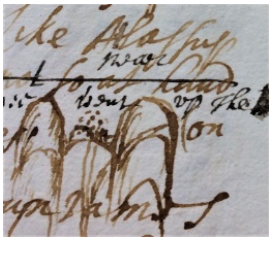


Figure 2.10.9. 'An heap of stones'. II.432.

[226] MS: 'there is a fearfull Rocky descent so that the Horses seemd to ~~stand~~ \ goe ~~on~~ / on their heads \ the night being darke. / Had it ~~not~~ bin ~~by way of Descent~~ \ upwards. /'
[227] 'The descent into Hell is easy', Virgil, *Aeneid 6,* 126.
[228] II.433 contains only, 'Kendal Barony. T.M.s Itinerary', a title-page written in pencil.
[229] MS: 'Mr Henry Fleming the Parson {of Gresmer} (~~who is all~~ the \ only / Minister in the Barrony \of Kendal / except Mr Wilson that \ was so civil as / accompany~~ed~~ me through his Parish \ their parishes /) went along with me up the N. side of Rotha To Gresmer church ~~& so up the Dale leaveing the Helm on the left~~ \ In the way to which I espyed a mountain beyond the church called the Helm, on / the Top of which ~~in the way from Ridal to Gresmer~~ \ there is a crag which / looks Like Atlas supporting the Hevens ~~But not so \ neare / at hand~~.'
[230] Wythburn.

Whence wee Returned by the way that wee ~~came~~ \ went, & / had a faire prospect of the Dale of Gresmer, a fine little plane mostly of meadow, whence it may be calld Grasmere. In the midle of which is a pretty mount or hill \ clad with wood[231] / which might have becomd a manner house, but that I can hear of none in this place.

{Church}
Near to this Hill ~~stands~~ \ in the midle if the Dale stands / Gresmer church, a fair large building in a large plane church yard; with a square tower or steeple & 4 Rowes of Pillars which have bin inlarged at several Times.[232]And a little distant from the West End of it stands the Parsonage-House

[II.434]

on a plane Level ground – ~~which was~~ lately \ Re /builded by the present Rector Mr Henry Fleming from the very foundation.

[Grosmer/Gresmer]
And a little below is a Great mear or Lake with an Iland in it of meadow ground, and a Barne built thereon. This mere is infinitely less [than] that great one calld Windermer, yet being much larger than the other mere upon the same River at the head of Ridal, it might from thence be called Grosmer, corruptly Gresmer \ from being the larger of the two. / Take which dirivation liketh you best, for both do agree the Nature of the place – Conveniunt Rebus nomina sæpè suis.[233]

[Sess Bills]
They have in this Parish {a peculiar way of makeing their Sess Bills,[234] not with paper & inke – but a stick & a knife: a very strange method;} yet I believe of great antiquity; for simplicitas formæ est Antiquitatis Argumentum;[235] and which I ~~believe~~ \ conjecture / till Pen & Inke became \ so / frequent in England has bin used all over, ~~which is by scratching~~. And the Gothes & Vandalls may seem to have used som such way of writeing when their Letters are called Sticken. However, since this is so great a rarity in so Learned age, Behold the Booke;[236] and let him that despiseth their Rural Simplicity, Read \ this / if he can: for any childe or Iliterate person in the Parish can read it of hand.[237]

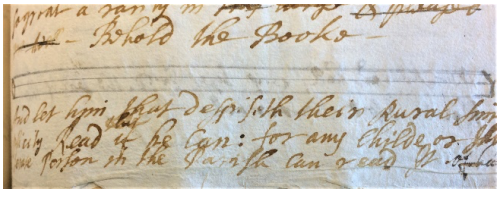


Figure 2.10.10. Grasmere 'Sess Bills'. II.424.

[II.435]

In this line is every house in the Towne and the sums they were assessed for Repares of the Church. \ 3 / pence, sixpence, ~~shillings~~ shillings, & halfe pence, Anno Domini 1691. And they will not admit of any other way.

---

[231] MS adds: '~~whose sides are yet replenishd with wood~~.' This scored-through phrase hints at deforestation, a distinctive theme throughout Machell's volumes.
[232] See Part 2, Ch.6, Grasmere, II.125; II.128; II.132C.
[233] 'Names often suit their subjects', or, 'There's often an agreement between names and things'. See Camden, *Britannia* tr. Holland (1637), 525C: 'For saith the Poet, Conveniunt rebus nomina sæpè suis. The names, as often times we see, with things themselves full well agree.' Here Camden was commenting on the name of Rutlandshire being based on the colour rud, roet or red.
[234] MS: 'Sess Bills': assessments or rates.
[235] 'Simplicity of form is an argument for antiquity.'
[236] MS: 'However, since this is so great a rarity in this ~~large & pleased me well~~ \ so Learned age / Behold the Booke.'
[237] This was a form of tally: to notch (a stick) so as to make it a tally; hence, to mark, score, set down or enter numbers etc. on, or as on, a tally. *OED*.

[Machell's Notes, II.435]

Ulvesthwaite near Kentmer Hall was, sayes Sir Daniel, the Seat of the Gilpines before Kentmer hall.
A note of the female poll formerly payed in ~~Gres~~ \ Winder /mer Parish and in what part of it.
The Antient Estate of the Flemings in Lancashire.
A N[ote] of the grant of Brath[wate] Armes
Mem. One of the L. a duel. & the Indenture –
Old [Blank] of Anwick in Northumberland. 100 y[ears]
A new set of Te[e]th & Hare 3 years since {ab 1692} Agnes uxor John Fulthrop through F[le]ming, informant.
Q[uery] of William Stanton, her landlord.[238]
There is spar a little below the summit […][239] Kentmere Beck.

[II.436]

Hence we Returned to Ridal that night and on

Satterday morning [30.]

I purposed to have Returned Home: But their happening a most severe Rane \ in that morning / I spent al the Day in studying with that Ingeniouse Gentleman & Industriouse gatherer of Antiquites, Sir Daniel Fleming, purposeing to preach the next day at Gresmer Church, or at Ambleside Chapel for his son Mr Henry. But the Raine continuing all the day over [and] **on Sunday** likewise, they would not suffer me to goe out of Dooers: & so I \ only / Red prayers ~~in the House~~ to the family. &

On Munday morning [1 Aug.]

I went by Ambleside, over Kirkston fell {having the company of Mr Fleming – Eldest [son] of Sir Daniel Fleming[240] – & my friend Miles Wright[241]} & in the way met with a piece of a Blew-marble rag veined with white {an Indication of more thereabouts} and as I remember a vaine of \ white / Spar on Troutbeck fell, which is a token of Lead Ore in that place \ and is all I met with re[garding] the rock. / This ~~fell~~ \ Kirkston fell / takes its name from a Ridged stone \ or cragg / like the Roofe of an House – like an house only at the N. End towards Patt[erdale] – which som have imagined (when churches were but Indifferent Buildings without Bells & Steeples) to be like a church.



Figure 2.10.11. 'Like an house only at the N. End'. II.436.

It lyes a Little on your left hand as you descend into Hartsop dale, where there is a square Lake, there river expanding into a broad [lake] called Broader-water.[242] & Patterdale, where the head of that great one \ & most famous lake in the bottom of Westmorland & 2nd in England / called Ulsewater, doth first shew its \ head / from betwixt 2 stons set upon edge & w[h]ere a spring calld St Patricks Well, which give name unto \ the Dale, / runns through the High way into the Lake.

[238] Two examples of Machell's fascination with regeneration in old age, to be seen throughout the volumes.
[239] The next few words are illegible because they are in faded pencil.
[240] Sir William Fleming (1656-1736), see Sowerby and McCormack, *Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 432-33.
[241] Unknown person, although one Miles Wright was admitted as sizar aged 19 at St John's College, Cambridge, 1630-1. Son of Stephen, tailor; ed. Sedbergh School. B.A. 1634-5; M.A. 1638. Deacon's orders, 1635. CCED; Ancestry.co.uk: Cambridge Alumni. In 1692 he would have been c. 80; an age not necessarily conducive to riding over difficult terrain … perhaps.
[242] Brothers Water.

Wee calld at Park house & parted at Gowbarrow, whence I went by Pooley & Lowther, Home; arriveing there later on **Munday at night**.

[II.437]

After my Journey

On Tuesday[243] I went to meet the Judges – On Wednesday Thorsday & Friday to Appelby & Thence to Blenkarn where I lay all night & came home on Sat[urday].[244]

[243] 2 August 1692.
[244] 6 August 1692.

Part 3. Further Collections

[Chapter 1]

Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland

[VI.429][1]

Writ 3 Indexes:
1. Of ~~proper~~ names.
2. Of places: referring to the places; to the parish; to the parish & Lordship.
3. Of things.

{N.B. Lett this[2] be red over with the Booke Misc. Papers, & referd}

Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of the County of Westmorland.

If any hereafter shall thinke fit to superstruct upon my Foundation; that he may not laboure invane, &, as wee say, actum agere,[3] is to bee noted that I have perused, as followeth:

1. Volumes of Mr Dodsworth's Collections of Yorkshire, out of which I have taken observations.[4]

2. Leland volumes and taken notes or referr'd to him.[5]

3. Cambden's *Britannia*, traced quite through, who follows Leland about Appleby, but neither \ of them / came att it. Speed, who follows Cambden.

4. The Heralds Office, and therein most particularly:
    1. 'The Visitation of Westmorland & Cumberland' by Mr Dugdal Anno Domini 16[blank]
    2. 'Visitation of Yorkshire' by William Flower, Norroy, 1663 -1664 circa. Anno 6 Elizabeth, marked (D.2) allso (D.1). {1563, 1564.}
    [3.] All Flower Norroys concessions.

5. Most of the Herald painters shopps & collection in London, and namely these:
    1. Mr Morgan's at Cambden's Head, behind the Old Exchange in Swithins Alley. Nothing there
    2. Mr Williams the midle most in Little Britane.[6]

---

[1] Also numbered p.65.
[2] The word following this one is blotted.
[3] 'To have all one's trouble for nothing.'
[4] The unpublished MSS were bequeathed to the Bodleian Library. Anthony Wood described how, in June 1673, 85 volumes of manuscripts arrived from York in a rain-soaked condition, and how he spent the best part of a month drying them out on the leads of the library roof. G. Parry, 'Dodsworth, Roger (bap. 1585, d. 1654), antiquary'. *ODNB*. See also https://archives.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/repositories/2/resources/7563.
[5] John Leland (1503-1552), *Itinerary*, originally published by Thomas Hearne (1770). See Lucy Toulmin Smith (ed.), *The Itinerary of John Leland in or about the Years 1535-1543*, 5 vols. (1907-10, reprinted 1964). Though a 'New Year's Gift' to Henry VIII (edited by Leland's assistant, John Bale) was published as *The Laboryouse Journey*, in 1549, no other Leland material was published until 1770. Nevertheless, Leland's notes circulated among serious scholars, including William Camden. In 1677, the last authenticated Leland MS joined others in the Bodleian Library (Bodl. Oxf., MSS top. gen. c.1-4; gen. e.8-15). As a fellow having already embarked on his own 'History', Machell would have been aware of these acquisitions. See J. Carley, 'Leland, John (c. 1503–1552), poet and antiquary'. *ODNB*.
[6] Now a street name, Little Britain was historically a small area in the City of London that specialised in book-selling during the late-16th and 17th centuries. According to *The Life of the Right Hon. Francis North*, it was then a 'plentiful and perpetual emporium of learned authors', and men 'went thither as to a market'. Izaak Walton (1593-1683) described meeting a bishop unexpectedly there: 'The place of our meeting was Little

3/4. The other 2 Herald painters shopps in Little Britane.
5. Mr Wallis behind the Old Exchange.
6. Mr Mole's in Chauncery Lane, who has not yet given his ans[wer] {?}
7. One on the other hand (ibid) near Lincoln's Inn.
8. Mrs Marshall's (formerly Parker \ alias Parkers / att Charing Cross. And
9. An other, over against Stanhop-House, withall in the Strand.
10. Mrs Smyth's, near St Dunstan's, on the other side the way; where I had a piece of a 'Visitation of Westmorland', taken (as I guess) much from old ped[egrees] about \ 1638 / 15 of Charles 1 {1638}, but by whom I know not.

Out of this I had much of my Collection of Pedegrees, this being the chief booke for the county of Westm'land that I have mett withall, & I left nothing of moment behind me: Feb 1^0 1675/6.[7]

6. All the MS Bookes of Heraldry, which are in the possession of Sergiant Knight, one of the King's Chirurgions,[8] who[se] grandfather was Norroy (who lives in Durham Yard att the high end of the New Exchange in the Strand), namely these:

1. A Book \ in 4^0 / intitled, 'The Visitation of ~~Westm'land~~ \ Cumberland' / (but nothing in it save Coates of Armes \ of Westm'land & Cumberland / & some short notes) taken, as I suppose, from windows, carved shields & monuments about the reign of Elizabeth. Arms et Authore incerto.[9]

[VI.430]

2. 'The Visitation of Northumberland',[10] per Richard S[nt] George, Norroy, 1615.

3. 'Visitation of Durham', eodem anno.[11]

4. 'Visitation of Lancashire': a good one (anno tamen & authore incerto). {This of Lancashire was taken 2 Generations before that of Mr Smyth's, which has som of the same pedegrees, with 2 descents more, as I observd.}

5. 'Visitation of Yorkshire' \ a good one / circa 1584, 1585: authore incerto.

Evidences of Ancient Gentry in Westmorland, serched

VII.

1. The evidences of the Cliffords in 2 volumes, collected by Mr Hayles, afterward Lord Chiefe Justice of England.[12]
2. The evidences of the Machells of Crakenthorpe.
3. The evidences of the Blenkinsops of Helbeck & Helbecks.
4. An abstract of contents of Musgraves evidences. Sed vid.
5. The evidences of the Sandfords of Askham.

Britain, where he had been to buy a book, which he then had in his hand.' See William Roberts, *The Book-hunter in London: Historical and other Studies of Collectors and Collecting* (Chicago, 1895), 171.

[7] He left nothing important when he left Oxford for Kirkby Thore.

[8] Chirurgion: surgeon. *OED*.

[9] 'Author uncertain.' 4^0 = quarto.

[10] MS: '2. The Visitat 2. The Visitation of Northumberland.'

[11] 'The same year.'

[12] Sir Mathew Hale/Hales (1609-1676), barrister, judge and author. Despite Hale's tacit sympathy for Puritans, made evident in the trial of John Bunyan in 1661 (Michael A. Mullett, *John Bunyan in Context* (Pittsburgh, 1997), 81-84), Charles II appointed Hale Chief Justice of King's Bench that year. Never accepted as wholly loyal to the laws of the established church, Hale survived an attempt to remove him in December 1672: he had refused to endorse the royal Declaration of Indulgence. He retired in February 1676. His famous law treatises, *Historia placitorum coronae*, and *History and Analysis of the Common Laws of England,* were both published posthumously in 1736. Alan Cromartie, 'Hale, Sir Mathew, judge and writer'. *ODNB*.

VIII. Halton's Register att Rose Castle, glansed into & som notes taken.

VIV. A MS Booke with the Coates of Armes of All the Nobility of England penes Episcopum Carliol, which run all over, & tooke notes, 1674.

X. 3 MS Miscellanies of Mr Sheldons of Weston in Warwickshire:
1. In quarto, marked thus.[13]

II. In folio marked χ, the III in folio marked thus.[14] {Now in the Heralds' Office, 1764.}[15]

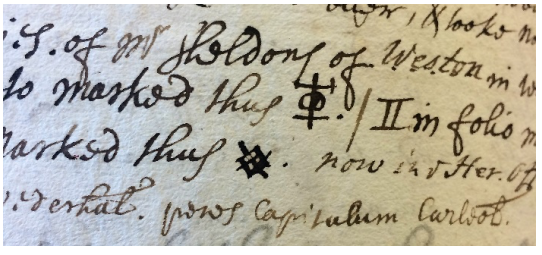


Figure 3.1.1. 'In folio marked thus'. VI.430.

Registrum de Wederhal penes Capitulum Carleol.[16]

The evidences of the Wybers of Clifton.

I Have Visited:

Askham
Appleby, but want the 2 great monuments
Bongate
Brough
Barton \ & / Bolton
Clifton
Dufton but not completely
Lowther by Mr Dugdall & the Hall
Morland & Bolton
Nubiggin
Kirkbythore, \Temple Sowerby / Milnburne & Howgill Castle, Acorn Banke
Warcop
See a farther account which I have don in a letter to Mr Adams, 1687 or 1688.[17]

[VI.431]

Books that may be necessarye, & other directions which may conduce to the farther illustration of the Antiquities of Westmorland

1. Spelman's *Villare Anglicanum*, for finding out townes the original or groundes of many sir names. {I have it.}

[13] The antiquary, Ralph Sheldon, bequeathed his MSS collection to the College of Arms. See Jan Broadway, 'Sheldon, Ralph (1623-1684)'. *ODNB*.
[14] See *Figure 3.1.1.*
[15] This margin comment is an addition.
[16] 'The Register of Wetheral Priory in the keeping of the Chapter of Carlisle.'
[17] See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence. Machell to John Adams, 26 Jan. 1686, discusses sources at length.

2. Goring's *Nomenclator*,[18] which shows the Romane townes, but is not of much use, being only a collection out of Camden.
3. Ignulphus or Ingulphus, who was secretarie to William the Conqueror: an author worth seeing.[19]
4. Prinns III volumes may conduce.[20]
5. The Scutage Rolls in the Tower; & bundells of Escheates, into the knowledge of which Mr Petty of the Inner Temple has promiss'd to introduce mee, if I goe up to London in vacation time. \ See allso the Pipe Rolls of Westmorland. /
6. Mr Petty's account of the limitts & bounders of Scotland & England (which may be touch'd att from Rear Cross). His account of *Doomsday Booke*, whether it have nothing of Westmorland, sub Tit. Eboracschyre, as may be hop'd from Brompton's *Cron*.[21] His copyes of a line or 2 of the usuall hand-writeings in each king's reign from the Conquest to John, which are generally sans date \ quere? / His references to an Index I left with him \ 14 / of February 1675/6 on purpose to be returned, with what observations occur in his reading. These things he promisd.[22]
7. Spelman's *Glossarium* for ancient law termes which occur in evidences;[23] & Blou[n]t's *Dictionarie*.[24]
8. The evidences of the ancient gentry of Westmorland, which I have not yet seene, Sc. Musgraves of Hartley \ & / Musgrave ~~& Edenhall~~, Crackenthorps of Newbiggin; Hiltons of Burton; Lowthers of Lowther.
9. Saxon Dictionary;[25] Skinner's Dictionarie;[26] & Dr Marshal account of the names in the Index.[27] Minsheus Polyglot Dictionary is a good booke too, but may be not for our purpose.[28]

---

[18] Thomas Gore, *Nomenclator Geographicus* (1667).
[19] Ingulph (Ingulphus) was made abbot of Crowland Abbey in 1087, after travelling to England with William the Conqueror. The Latin MS, 'Chronicle of Croyland Abbey', thought to be by Ingulph, was first printed (in part) in 1596, in Sir Henry Saville's *Scriptores post Bedam*; and in various later collections. Admired and thought entirely genuine by 17th-century antiquaries, the 'Chronicle' has since been exposed as the work of several hands: see Henry T. Riley (translator and ed.), *Ingulph's Chronicle of the Abbey of Croyland with the Continuations by Peter de Blois and anonymous writers* (London,1854).
[20] Prinn = William Prynne, *The History of King John, King Henry III and the most illustrious King Edward the I, wherein the ancient sovereign dominion of the Kings of England, Scotland, France and Ireland ... is asserted and vindicated* (London, 1670).
[21] 'Brompton's Chronicle': Latin chronicle (588-1199) preserved in Corpus Christi C., Cambridge, MS.96 (c. 1425), and in a later 15th-century manuscript (BL, Cotton Tiberius C. xiii.), named for the 15th-century John Brompton, Cistercian Abbot of Jervaulx (1436-1464), whom the 16th-century antiquary John Bale regarded as the author (see *Index Britanniae Scriptorum* – John Bale's *Index of British and other writers,* Oxford, 1902 edition). Machell possibly read it in Twysden's, *Decem scriptores* (1652). See E.D. Kennedy, 'Brompton's Chronicle', in G. Dunphy and C. Bratu (eds), *Encyclopedia of the Medieval Chronicle* Online (2016).
[22] William Petyt (Petit), lawyer; keeper of the Tower records from 1689. An esteemed scholar, he was famed for *The Antient Right of the Commons of England Asserted* (1680): J. Greenberg, 'Petyt [Petit], William (1640/41-1707), lawyer and political propagandist'. *ODNB*. For more on William Petyt see Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.640; see also Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, V.3.
[23] Sir Henry Spelman (c.1562-1641), *Concilia, Decreta, Leges, Constitutiones in Re Ecclesiarum Orbis Britannici* (1639); *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1626, completed by William Dugdale, 1664).
[24] Thomas Blount, *Glossographia* (1656).
[25] The first Anglo-Saxon dictionary was William Somner's *Dictionarium Saxonico-Latino-Anglicum, voces, phrasesque praecipuas Anglo-Saxonicas . . . cum Latina et Anglica vocum interpretatione complectens . . . Aecesserunt Aelfrici Abbatis Grammatica Latino-Saxonica cum glossario suo ejusdem generis,* 2 pts (Oxford, 1659), though Camden and others had produced Anglo-Saxon word lists before this. See Roberta Florence Brinkley, *Arthurian Legend in the Seventeenth Century* (Baltimore, Johns Hopkins, 1932). William Nicolson was also an acknowledged scholar of the Anglo-Saxon language, see Graham Parry, *The Trophies of Time: English Antiquarians of the Seventeenth Century* (Oxford, 1995), 344-45.
[26] Stephen Skinner, *Etymologicon Linguae Anglicanae* (1671).
[27] Henry Marshall (bap. 1621-1685) was an Oxford scholar, linguist and dean of Gloucester who contributed to scholarship on the Anglo-Saxon language, particularly in *Observationes in Evangeliorum Versiones perantiquas duas, Gothicas scil. et Anglo-Saxonicas* (Dortmund, 1665; Amsterdam, 1684),
[28] John Minsheu, *Ductor in linguas*, *Glosson Etimologicon* (1617).

10. Visitations of neighbouring counties into which many familyes transplant their selves; as Bishoprick, Yorkshire, Cumberland & Northumberland, where the pedegrees may possibly be entered. Divers of these I have tried.

[VI.432]

There is a booke worth looking into in the Heralds Office (butt not ~~part~~ \ directly / to my purpose) marked (L.15) Item: Lord Marshall's Booke marked (I.15), out of which I have taken som notes in reference to Heraldry.[29]

For explication of cornage (by which tenure most of the lands in Westmorland were held) vide Rot. Patents 22, Rich. 2 partem 3, memb.1[0] {Se all: se Law Dictionaries} Mr Leigh at the Heralds College.[30]

I must see in *Scaccario*[31] (penes Rememoratorem Regium)[32] the booke of Knights fees in Ed. Time {Given in temp. Ed. I} wherein is mention of William de Lancaster & John de Veteriponte, Lords of the Baronyes of Kendall & Westmorland. But I suppose it should be in Henry 3, for John Vipont dyed about the 26 of his reigne. However, the book is worth seing: Walterus de Strickland & Robertus de Hellebeck collectores.

In Mr Dugdall you may have a pedigree of 3 or 4 descents of the Fishers of Steanbankegreen, whose Armes are inserted there but no proofe exhibited.[33] They say that the 1[t] who raised this family above the ordnarie sort of yeomandry was a shireman[34] of Kendall whose industry \ ergo / is to be comended.[35]

There is also a pedegre of Steale of Kendal: a phisitian there; but his posterity is scarce yet arrived to the repute of Gentleman.[36] There is likewise of Scaife of Winton, & Armes entered but no proofe b\r/ought;[37] which 3 I thought not worth the transcribing. But tha[y] may be seene in Dugdall's Visitation of Westmorland (1664?).[38]

Som people out of Kent, Essex, Midlesex &c. were brought to inhabit the countyes of Westm'land & Cumberland under the conduct of Ranulph Mescheins, 1[t] Earle of Cumberland (in William the

[29] Earl Marshal of the College of Arms (Heralds' College), a hereditary position since 1672, held by the dukes of Norfolk. https://www.college-of-arms.gov.uk/About/01.htm.

[30] Sir Francis Leigh, *Of the Antiquity, Office and Privilege of the Heralds in England* (1575).

[31] The late-12th-century *Dialogus de Scaccario*, or *Dialogue concerning the Exchequer*, is the work of Richard Fitz-Nigel, treasurer of England (c.1195-8), bishop of London (1189-98). It takes the form of a dialogue in Latin between teacher and pupil, and is one of the principal sources of knowledge of Norman administration in England before Magna Carta. It has been repeatedly republished and translated: see Drabble et al, *The Concise Oxford Companion to English Literature* (3rd edn, Online, 2013).

[32] 'In the keeping of the Royal Remembrancer / Recorder.'

[33] Stainbank Green, Kendal Parish: see Smith, *Place-Names*, 1, 121. In Dugdale's 'Visitation of Westmorland' (1666), there is a reference to 'Nicholas Fisher, of Staine-banke-greene, in the Parish of Kendall, Esqr., now one of His Majestie's Justices for conservation of the Peace for the County of Westmerland, and an Utter Barister of Gray's Inne, setatis 51 annor., 20 Martij, 1664 …' 'Arms, Or. a king fisher ppr. Crest, a king fisher ppr., holding in the beak a fish argent. Respite given for proofe of these armes, but no proofe made.' See Joseph Foster (ed.) *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St. George, Norroy*, *King of Arms, in 1615 and by William Dugdale, Norroy*, *King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891), 48.

[34] Possibly 'Shereman': a shearer of woollen cloth. *OED*.

[35] The pedigree begins with, 'Henry Fisher, one of the first Aldermen of the Borough of Kendall', but there is no date. The first given date is a death in 1640. see Foster, *Pedigrees*, 48.

[36] 'Steele of Kendal: arms, a fesse engrailed fretted, between three fleurs-de-lis within a bordure. Crest: A wolfs head Sa[ble], gorged and fretted below the collar Az[ure]. Respite given for proofs of these arms but no proofe made.' Michaell Steele, the 'Doctor of Phisick', was aged 48 in 1664. see Foster, *Pedigrees*, 129.

[37] 'Scaife of Winton: arms, azure, on a chevron argent, between as many wolves' heads erased Or, three trefoil's slipped sa[ble]. Crest: A wolf's head erased Or, holding in the mouth a trefoil as in the arms. Respite given for proofe of these arms, but no proofe made.' Foster, *Pedigrees*, 120. See Machell's low opinion of the Scaifes in Part 1, Ch.6, Brough, I.395.

[38] The visitations were made in 1664 and published in 1666: see Foster, *Pedigrees*, 48.

Conqueror or Rufus, his time); which Ranulph was sister son to Hugh Lupus or Lou, first Earle of Chester (& near kinsman to William the Conqueror), so that he sent the best of his soljers & nearest relations in whose valour & loyalty he confided[39] most, into these northern & most remote partes: MS Cumb. Part 1[t] pag. 47. N.B. See ergo in the Tower about Ranulph Mescheines & William Rufus; allso Ivo Taleboys.

Registrum de Wetherhall penes Dom Willielmum Howard de Naworth anno 1638, folio 7. Radulph Mescheines \ de Bricasard / calls it his castle of Apelby in the charter, whereas he gives the advouesan of St Michael to St Mary, Yorke, to whom the castle descended .?*Mon. Ang.* […] I399 \ Laewrence /[40] Stainmore on the skirts of Yorkeshire & Westmorland given to Ranulph Meschiens ex vetusta membrana penes Henricum Ferri[e]r quadam de Desley q.? * ubi et quis. Et quid Amplius? *Baronagium* p.37a.{*in Hamshire puto. {His brothers, Will of Coupland & Geffrey of Gillsland, vide etiam Waltheof & Morvill Taylboys.}[41]

[VI.432, A & B]

[Bishop Charles Lyttelton's suggestions for further reading]

{This is writt by Bishop Lyttelton}[42]

Machel's MSS Collect[ion] Vol. 6, p. 432
For the Roman Antiq[uities] of Cumberland & Westmorland, see Horsley & Warburton's, *Vallum Romanum*, pr[inted] at London, 1753.[43]

[39] Unclear word.
[40] The feast of St Lawrence is on 10 August; Machell's date is obscured by the binding.
[41] 'Register of Wetherall in the keeping of Lord William Howard of Naworth, from the year 1638, folio 7. etc. From a certain ancient document in the keeping of Henry Ferrier of *Desley. q.? where and who? And something further? *Baronagium* p.37a.*In Hampshire, I think … See also Waltheof & Morvill Taylboys.' Dugdale's, *Baronagium*, 37A, comments, 'It is likewise recorded of this Ranulph; that being a person of more than ordinary valor, King William the Conqueror gave him that vast Mountainous Country, called Stanemore, situate on the skirts of Yorkshire and Westmerland, then possessed by Aliens, upon condition, he could recover it out of their hands; and that, by his singular courage, having beaten out those Foreigners, he Enfeoffed his two Brothers in a large portion thereof, viz. William of Coupland, and Geffrey of Gillesland; and a multitude of others within the County of Cumberland, amongst which, one Waltheof, a Man of note in that age, as also the Morvills, and sundry persons in Anandale, whose Estates, the King at his request confirmed.' William Dugdale, *The Baronage of England* (London, 1675-76), 37. Desley is unknown but Disley in Cheshire was named Desley in 1528: see *Survey of English Place-Names*, https://epns.nottingham.ac.uk/browse/Cheshire.
[42] Charles Lyttelton, Bishop of Carlisle 1762-68, was president of the Society of Antiquaries of London, 1765-68. See B. Nurse, 'Lyttelton, Charles (1714-1768), bishop of Carlisle and antiquary'. *ODNB*. This letter was obviously pasted into Machell's Volume VI after 1757 (the last published date of the volumes recommended by Lyttelton) but probably much later, see the Editor's Introduction. It is interesting to note that Lyttelton presented an annotated copy of John Denton's MS History of Cumberland (also in Machell Vol.VI) to the Society of Antiquaries in 1762, the year in which he became bishop. See Angus Winchester (ed.), *John Denton's History of Cumberland*, Surtees Soc. Vol. CCXIII and CWAAS Record Series 20 (Woodbridge, 2010), 200. See also, *Catalogue of the Society of Antiquaries*, MSS/0091, https://collections.sal.org.uk/mss.0091. For Nicolson and Burn's praise of Lyttelton as an antiquary, see *N&BII*, 299-300.
[43] John Horsley (1685-1732) wrote an account of his journey around Roman Britain, *Britannia Romana* (London, 1732). The section dealing with Hadrian's Wall was appropriated by John Warburton (Somerset Herald) in his *Vallum Romanum, or the History and Antiquities of the Roman Wall, commonly called the Picts Wall, in Cumberland and Northumberland* (London, 1753). See T. Woodcock, 'Warburton, John (1682-1759), herald and antiquary'. *ODNB*.

In this thereto also the new *Roman Iters of Brittain* in Richard Corinensis, printed at Copenhagen, 1753,[44] & published by Carolus Berham in very small 12mo;[45] a most curious work on which Dr Stukely has published 3 letters to the Antiq[uarian] Society in this year.[46] See also some Papers in the *Philosophical Transactions*, where some inscriptions are explain'd. Tis the same *Transactions* attend some curious accounts of storms & inundations & other ~~parts~~ \ points / of the Natural History of these counteys.

See the Harleian & Cottonian MSS in the British Museum for various matters relating to these countys, especially heraldical.

See Sir Joseph Williamson's Cabinet in the library at Queen's College Oxon.[47] Consult also Bishop More's MSS in the publick Library at Cambridge,[48] and the MSS of Bennett, and other Colleges there \ very like in Oxford. /

For the perambulation of Englewood and other forests in these countys, see the Tower records & those within the Closet at the old Chapter House Westminster, where also carefully consult the Indexes D, the

[VI.432B]

King's Bench and Common Plea Rolls, where many things are to be found of importance to one who describes the ancient owners of maners and lands here.

See the Index's and Calendars to the records kept in the Office of Augmentation adjoining to Westminster Hall, under Cumberland and Westmorland, where several interesting particulars occur.[49]

---

[44] MS: 'in Richard Creeshensis \ Corinensis / pr. at Copenhagen, 1753.'

[45] Book sizes: smaller formats include duodecimo, consisting of twelve leaves per sheet.

[46] The *Westmonasteriensis comentariolum Geographicum de situ Britanniae & Stationum quas Romani ipsi in ea Insula aedificauerunt*, was supposedly compiled in the second half of the 14th century by a medieval chronicler, Richard Coriensis, but this medieval history had been written by the literary forger Charles Bertram, who published it in 1757, alongside two genuine early medieval texts by Gildas and Nennius, as *Britannicarum gentium historiae antiquae scriptores tres*. During a lengthy correspondence, William Stukeley, a founder member of the re-established Society of Antiquaries (1718), encouraged Bertram to publish, thus adding weight to the work's supposed authenticity. It was accepted by many as genuine and utilised in various histories of Roman Britain until 1866: D. Haycock, 'Bertram, Charles Julius (1723-1765), literary forger'. *ODNB*. Twice in 1756, Stukeley read papers on Bertram's manuscript to the Society of Antiquaries, publishing them in 1757 as, *An Account of Richard of Cirencester, Monk of Westminster, and of his Works*: see Stuart Piggott, *William Stukeley: An Eighteenth-Century Antiquary* (London, 2nd edn, 1985), 126, 133.

[47] The Upper Library at Queen's College, Oxford, was built between 1692 and 1695 to house large donations from Thomas Barlow, one-time Provost of the College (later Bishop of Lincoln), and from Sir Joseph Williamson: https://www.queens.ox.ac.uk/library-history. Both of these men were Cumbrians known to Machell, who had been a fellow of Queen's College. For Barlow, see Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.639; I.642A; for Williamson, see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.517.

[48] John Moore (1646-1714), bishop of Ely, was a patron of learning. At his death his library was 'universally and most justly reputed the best furnish'd of any … that this Age has seen in the Hands of any private Clergyman.' Extracted from William Nicolson, *The English Historical Library* (2nd edn, 1714), xii. Following Oxford University's refusal to house the library, its almost 29,000 books and 1,790 manuscripts were given to the University of Cambridge in 1715, bringing its university library into international prominence. P. Meadows, 'Moore, John (1646-1714)'. *ODNB*.

[49] The Court of Augmentations, formerly held in the Old Palace of Westminster, was founded by Henry VIII during the Reformation to survey and govern all forfeited ecclesiastical property secularised to the use of the king. All records of judicial proceedings, deeds and resignations of abbeys, priories, lands, and their valuations, were kept there, as were the Parliamentary Survey records made under the Commonwealth, see *British History Online*, The Law Courts and Old Palace Yard, 560-67.

Consult Ray's *Glossary of Northern Words*.[50] The Glossary annex't to Kennett's *Parochial Antiquitys*.[51] Baxter's *Glossary: Antiq. Brit*.[52]

[50] John Ray (1627-1705), *A Collection of English words, not generally used ... in two alphabetical catalogues, ... northern ... southern counties, with catalogues of English birds and fishes, and an account of preparing ... metals and minerals* (1674). See Machell's Preface, II.353, II.488.
[51] Bishop White Kennett, *Parochial Antiquities attempted in the History of Ambrosden, Burcester, and adjacent parts in Oxford and Bucks* (1695).
[52] William Baxter (1650-1723), Welsh antiquary, linguist and grammarian, *Glossary of Roman Antiquities* (1726). See Thomas Hardy Rees, *Notable Welshmen 1700-1900, with Brief Notes in chronological order* (London, 1908), 25.

Part 3. Further Collections

[Chapter 2]

[Thomas Machell's Correspondence][1]

[A. Letters and Notes concerning Clerical Obligations]

[I.378]

[1.] [Preaching the Ordination Sermon at Dalston, while preparing to leave for Oxford, 1674.]

Crakanthorp. Feb: 22. 1674.
Master[2]
My Lord Bishop has commanded me on Sunday next to preach the Ordination Sermon att Dalston,[3] where I should be glad to meet with you; and therefore the rather because I am ready to take my Journey towards Oxford again. Pray tell Captain Fielding that I hope he will send a token (by you) to me, for his sonn.[4] I wish my occasions would have given me lieve to \ have / waited upon him, ~~before my return~~. But tho I cannot I hope his son will not fair the worse for it. I am so busye, partly with preparing for Dalston, and partly for Oxon, that I have not time to inlarge any further, and must therefore subscribe myself
Y. most humble servant
T.M.
Present my respects to your wife and family.[5]

[1] Correspondence between Machell and Dr John Mill on Roman antiquities has been moved to Part 3, Ch.3.
[2] 'Master' provokes questions. Who was he? The provost of Queen's College, Oxford, comes to mind, but at this point he was Thomas Barlow, future bishop of Lincoln, who never married. One person might fit the given facts: superior to Machell in rank; attending the ordination; able to take a message to Captain Fielding/Feilding; married with children. This could be Sir Christopher Musgrave, governor of the garrison at Carlisle Castle. See fn. 4, below. See also Michael A. Mullet, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c.1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022), 114.
[3] Edward Rainbow (b.1608) was bishop of Carlisle from 1664 until his death at Rose Castle in 1684, David Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142. The bishop's letter containing the command to which Machell refers, dated at Rose Castle February 1674-5, has been published in Edward Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 416-67, at 446. Viz. 'Mr. Machell, it had not been proper to have celebrated orders for yourselfe single if other inconveniences had not also deteined me from that office, but on Saturday last there was presented to me some necessity to give orders now to one for the service of the Cathedrall and St Cuthberts parish in Carlisle. I therefore consented you rather for your sake of which I have written to the Archdeacon to give you notice, and withall to desire you to give us a sermon at Dalston church, you shall be welcome to your chamber here, lett Mr. Sell or me know by a line or two that you have received this, remember my respects to your father. I commend you all to God's blessing and remain your very loving friend (Signed) Edward Carlisle.' Thus, Machell was ordained at Dalston in 1674/5, preached the sermon, and stayed the night at Rose Castle.
[4] Captain Feilding (or Fielding) was Basil Feilding, the lieutenant governor of the garrison of Carlisle Castle under the governor, Sir Christopher Musgrave. Active in civil government, Feilding was elected mayor of Carlisle, 1685-86, see Mullett, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration,* 60; see also Scott Sowerby and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021), 219, 239. Machell's letter suggests that Captain Feilding's son was then at Oxford. Of three students named Feilding at Oxford during the 1670s, the best candidate might be Basil Feilding, son of B. Feilding of Barnacle, Warwickshire, who matriculated at St Edmund Hall in 1671 aged 15 and became a barrister at the Inner Temple in 1683. *OAD*.
[5] By 1674 Machell had been a fellow of Queen's College for over a year (see A. Winchester, 'Machell, Thomas'. *ODNB*.) The copy of the letter illustrated above, in which his writing is superimposed on sketches of heraldic shields, suggests that he had been carrying out county research from at least February 1674.

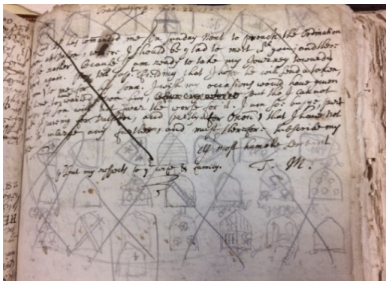


Figure 3.2.1. Machell's copy of his letter, superimposed on sketches of heraldic shields. The text was scored through to remind Machell that he had dealt with the subject. II.378.

[II.367]

[2.] [From Thomas Machell to the bishop's secretary, following a visit to Rose Castle, undated.][6]

Mr Secretary
I left your Godolphins 2 volumes in my chamber at Rose;[7] & I fear the Extract which I made out of them (my man neglecting to put up that paper amongst my other things) \ might be left there also – / Pray if it be soe; be pleased to send me That Sheet of Paper by this bearer; for I have present occasion for it, & you will obliege
Sir Your very affectionate friend to serve you
T. Machell
My humble duty & service to my Lord and his good Lady.

[I.604]

[3.] [Memoranda concerning a will, 1685.]

[A.] June 22 1685.
Memorandum that Grace ~~Crak~~ Watson, one of the daughters of Mrs Elizabeth Crakanthorpe of Kirkbythore who was buried this day, declared that the said Elizabeth Crakanthorpe, in the presence of her selfe & one Catherine Abraham of Kirkbythore, to whom she appeales as a witness in the Case made this verball will on Thorsday last. Sc. I desire you (speakeing to her daughter Grace) to divide what I have equally amongst you, to see you fall not out about it. & that she bid the said Catherine Abraham, see that They did not fall out about it. And at the request of the said Grace Watson I made this memorial to which the said Catherine has put her marke, the day & year above written.
Thomas Machell
— Katherine Abraham her mark
Richard Crakanthorp

[B.] June 22 1685.
Memorandum that Mary Adamthwaite one of the daughters of Mrs Elizabeth Crakanthorp of Kirkbythore, who was buryed this day, declared to me That her mother gave all she had left, to

[6] Machell copied his letters to others on used sheets of paper, as a record of his correspondence. The heading, 'Notes upon Camdens *Britannia*' appears at the head of this particular copied letter. The page was perhaps originally destined for Machell's antiquarian notes. Whether this letter was written after Machell's ordination is not known.
[7] John Godolphin (1617-1678): author of works on law and theology. Early theological volumes, *The Holy Limbeck, or, A Semicentury of Spiritual Extractions* (1650) and *The Holy Arbor … or, The Sum and Substance of Christian Religion* (1651), had Puritan leanings (when young, Godolphin supported Cromwell) thus not necessarily Machell's automatic choice. His final work, *Repertorium canonicum, or, An Abridgement of the Ecclesiastical Laws of this Realm* (1678), provides a comprehensive survey of English Church law: see J. Collins, 'Godolphin, John, civil lawyer'. *ODNB.* See also, Anthony à Wood*, Athenae Oxonienses: An Exact History of All the Writers and Bishops who Have Had Their Education in the University of* Oxford, Vol. 3 (1691), 1153.

Elizabeth Adamthwaite, daughter of the said Mary – in the presence of Richard Gowling, whom she cited for witness. And That she did it in these words following – \ For / The thing I have left, I doe not value if I give it her all (speaking concerneing the said Elizabeth in whose behalf Richard Gowling had spoken) & That this was declared about a month since, but the day they knew not. And at the request of the said Mary I made this memorial to which the said Richard has put his S[ignature] the day & year aforesaid.
Thomas Machell
Richard Crakanthorp[8]

[I.521][9]

[4.] [Visiting the Sick: Francis Gray, physician, to Thomas Machell, 8 June 1688.]

For the Reverend Mr Thomas Machell att Kirkbythore

[I.520]

Sir
I have so litle tyme to be with Mr Cole that it were next to sacriledge to rob him of any part of it which makes me beg your company here today. One visit while I stay will be of greater advantage [than] to give them two in my absence for this reason his case is indeed very dangerous & to most might appear desperate yet I hope to cure him by god's blessing & if you come over I hope to satisffie you that I go upon as rationall yea certaine grounds as any physician can have which when you shall declare to him will be no small satisffaction to him & his wife who needs some encouragement as wanting his masculine spirit.[10]
My service to Mistris Marshall & all yours I rest
Sir
Your most humble servant
Fra. Gray[11]
Brampton hall[12]
June 8 '88

[I.657A][13]

[5.] [Invitation to the funeral of Ciprian Hilton of Ormside. December 1693.][14]

Sir
It pleased \ god / yesterday afternoon to take my deare Master into his Mercie my misteris is extreamly weak. Shee beggs that yow and your lady would doe her the favour to be here on Friday at 10 of the clock at the funrall.
Sir from your humble servant
Sam Birkett
p[er] my mistress, Abigail Hilton[15]
Ormside Dec. the 28th [1693]

---

[8] For the Crackenthorpe descent, including Richard and Elizabeth Crackenthorpe, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin: III.285, III.287; for the influence of the Gowling family on the chapel at Temple Sowerby, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, III.243-253, V.290-296.
[9] Machell also used this page to make rough notes, i.e. 'Burrow Brig & to the right, Minship 1, Arkendale 1, Flasby 1, Goldsbrough 1, Ribston 1. From Bur br. to Cassel 5.'
[10] For 'Mr Cole' of Brampton Hall, see Machell's Preface, I.116A; for Brampton Hall, see Part 1, Ch.6, Long Marton, I.608.
[11] Francis Gray, physician and friend of Machell, see Part 3, Ch.4, Roman Antiquities, VI.301.
[12] See *N&BI*, 363.
[13] Letter written in another hand.
[14] For the Hiltons, see Part 1, Ch.19, Ormside, III.291.
[15] See the memorial brass in the north aisle of Ormside Church: 'Here lies interrd the body of Cyprian Hilton Esqre. of an antient family, whose Loyalty to his Prince, Zeal for the Establish'd Church, Love to his Wife and Children and Kindness to his Tenants are a lasting Monument of his Memory. He left behind him his dear Consort, Mrs Abigail Hilton, and by her a numerous Offspring, four Sons and five Daughters, all now liveing; and he in them. He dyed the 27th day of Decr A.D. 1693. in the year of his age 34. and is here intomb'd, in hopes of a blessed Resurrection.' See Nicolson, *Misc. Accts*, 40.

[III.155B]

[6.] [For Rich. Crakinthropp Esq. att Newbygin, Westm'land. [Undated.]

[III.155A]

[Information on Archdeacons]
And ~~both the~~ \ as the / Bishops said the Arch Deacon may have ~~their~~ \ his / official & sometimes they are joyned by several grants to the same person.
{Ibid §18.} But when the grants are to 2 distinct persons, in strictness & propriety of speake, he who is autherised by the bishops' commission, should be calld a Commissary; he who officiates for the Arch Deacon should be calld an official.
{Ibid §19.} They ought to be read in the Canon or Civil Law, for want of which they are deprivable.
{?} But now of late the Arch[16] is restored to som Jurisdections, more than induct into Benefices.

[III.162B]

[7.] 'A la[n]terne to our feet'.[17] [From a sermon on inattention to the Word of God: undated.]

… of precipices we are benighted with Sensuality and lusts. And the Word of God is a La[n]terne to our feet. Now if wee do not attend to this light but rather dispise and Trample it under foote, we Run on headlong to our owne destruction; and are therefore more miserable; because our folly (or madness) is such as not to deserve the least compassion. Our distruction is (as said of Israel on the like occasion) upon our owne heads; and who will pitty us?
When causual & accidental miseries fal upon men; wee have a fellow fealing in us of their calamityes. But when they do wilfully run into dangers and will not be ~~interrupted~~ \ warned nor hindred / from them by any that interpose them selves, they are destitute of pitty from others as they …[18]

[B. Correspondence on Personal and Family Matters]

[VI.520]

[1.] [Lancelot Machell to his brother, Thomas Machell. 3 March 1676.][19]

M[r] Yaward at the Blew bell in Wood street send to be there on Thorsday Night.
These to M[r] Thomas Machell fellow of Queens College in Oxford.
From Crakenthorp March 1676

[VI.517]

Deare Br.
I have thought it somewhat strange to be soe longe together deprived of your letters,[20] for since I left Oxon I have received nought from you, save those you sent by M[r] Dixson; & when he gave them to me he would not light, nay scarce drinke att dore, as it is well of observed by my uncle Andrew[21] – whisper that in his eare. {[Dixon] was telling of some papers that he would send me but since I have heard nought from him.}[22]

---

[16] The final part of this phrase is altered and blotted; presumably the meaning is, 'Arch Deacon'.
[17] Psalm 119. 105 (AVB).
[18] The page ends here.
[19] Lancelot Machell was the youngest of the three brothers. Hugh and Thomas Machell attended Queen's College, Oxford, but there are no records of Lancelot's attendance. Edward Bellasis described him as 'of Skipton castle, co. York, and Bewley castle, warden to Richard, earl of Thanet, who served six years (till 1675) in William Tichborne's troop.' He and his children and his wife, Elizabeth Walker (married 6 Nov. 1677 at Long Marton), are prominent in his mother's will of 1701, see Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', 443. For more on the Machells and their relatives, see C. Roy Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-44.
[20] The underscoring in this letter is in different ink, thus probably done by Machell.
[21] Andrew Whelpdale, son of William W. of Penrith, matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1643 aged 15; BA 1647/8; MA 1651; fellow 1651; vicar of Newnham, Hants 1658; rector of Dogmersfield, Hants, 1671. CCED. His sister, Susan, married one Roger Sleddall of Penrith; Sleddall's sister, Elizabeth, married Machell's father. The link was strengthened when Thomas Machell married Whelpdale's widow c.1680 after Whelpdale's death in 1678/9. This lady's father had held the advowson of Dogmersfield. For more detail see Hudleston, 'Machell, his wife and children', 112-16.
[22] Presumably, Lancelot Machell was referring to Thomas Dixon, a contemporary of Thomas Machell at Queen's College, Oxford, son of Thomas Dixon of Windermere. Both Dixons acted as Machell's informants:

I have been with the Man at Colby. And he tells me that he never had any thinge to doe with the family of Crackanthrop, nor with any save Cosen Hilton and something att Bleatarn where he finds mention of Bella=Landa. I have also distributed some of the Queeries, viz. to Bongate & Dufton, and will as soone as I can dispose of more of them, to other places.[23]

The Body of the Most Noble Vertious & Religious Lady Ann Countisse Dowager of Penbrooke, Dorset & Montgomery*, Daughter & sole Heir to the late Right Honorable George Clifford Earle of Cumberland, Baronisse Clifford of Westmorland & Vessy ~~the~~ Lady of the Honor of Skipton in Craven & High Sheriffese by Inheritance of the County of Westmorland who departed this Life in her Castell att Brougham in the foresaid County, the 22 of March 1675 having attained the Age of 86 years, the 30th of January before and was interred in S[t] Lawrence Church att Apleby the 14th of April 1676.
My Cosen Thomas Sandford of Ascun†. Dyed the 17th of February {1676} & was Buried the 19th ~~att~~ \ in / Ascum church.

My Father & Mother are very well, & all the rest of the relations heare, my Father has taken part of Howgill Demaine for Brother & sister to laie upon, in value yearely 18[li]; & I suppose one or both of my tenements & the house at Milborne, he intends them. My sister \ Susana / was telling me that she heard them say that they had a better right to those tenements than I.[24] Now I know not what to doe in this case for I would not willingly incur my fathers displeasure, neither doe I expect any great allowance from him yet I would not give away my right to those who I expect little favour from.[25] {Pray let me have your advice in this.}

Little Ann was 5 years old last New years day, but when Christened I know nott. Bettey is 3 years old the 10th May, when Christened I know nott. Mary was Borne the 25 of March & was Christened the 6th of April (76)‡.
I have not yet a trew Information of the Manner of my Cosen Braithwaits death.[26] My uncle William Atkinson

[VI.518]

takes it very unkindly that he never heares from you concerning his son. He tells me that he sent by Burnyeats 5[li] to be Drunck with M[r] Crosthwate, M[r] Mills. & your selfe,[27] therefore he is afraid that his son never told you nor any of them of it & this makes him something doubtfull that his son is Lavish; neither has he any account of the moneys that he gave him [to take] up with him which was 20[li] as I remember he told me.[28]
I know not whether you had best send my things downe; \ that I shall leave to yourself / {but however send for the trunck to Oxon: for I suppose it may be more serviceable to you then me for I have noe

---

see Part 2, Ch.1, Barony of Kendal, II.2; Part 2, Ch.6, Grasmere, II.154A; 154B; Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.329; Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.400.

[23] Note that Machell's brother was distributing Machell's queries to would-be informants in the spring of 1676; see more relating to Machell's informants in the Editor's Introduction.

[24] This illuminates the regular Machell family feuds, in one of which Thomas's mother and his sister, Susanna, 'appear in the most unfavourable light'. In a letter written by Thomas's brother, Hugh (1685), Susanna is 'accused of hating her brother Thomas, and mother and daughter appear to have joined in acting against him. Hugh, Thomas's elder brother, had displeased his father by marrying without his consent, and the father would have disinherited him in favour of Thomas, had not Thomas refused and persuaded his father to re-settle the estate in favour of Hugh.' Hudleston, 'Machell, his wife and children', 123.

[25] Family concerns and jealousies often concerned property; here they relate to the claims of Lancelot's eldest brother, Hugh, who inherited Crackenthorpe Hall; Hugh also encountered problems with his family, see Hudleston, 'Machell, his wife and children', 137-44.

[26] 'Cosen Braithwait' was mentioned by Thomas Machell in Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, I.280. For the Braithwaites of Warcop, see Part 1, Ch.23, Warcop, I.319.

[27] The sum of 5[li] is merely an editorial suggestion, as the text immediately adjacent has been heavily scored through. For Burnyeats the carrier, see Part 3, Ch.4, Roman Antiquities: E. Correspondence between Thomas Machell and Dr John Mill.

[28] William Atkinson junior of Morland matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1675/6 aged 15: BA 1681; MA 1684. He became the ensign of a company of scholars [sic] who took up arms against the Duke of Monmouth in 1685. He appears to have died at Oxford c.1700, without leaving a will. *OAD*.

need of it} for if my Lord doe nott consider what inconveniency he hath put me to I shall scarce truble my selfe till you git a place[29] & then if I may be any ways helpful to you, you may Assume your selfe of it without a complement. Pray give my regards of service to all friends in the south in particular to M^r^ Wyndham, M^r^ Secretary[30] & to my very good Uncle & Ant Andrew,[31] my Cosen John Machell & all my Cosens in Bucks - & tell my Cosen Jo that he is very much wished for heare in the north where he may be Assured of a free & harty welcome from my father; and my service to M^r^ Provist & all fellow friends in Queens desireing very much to heare from you I am
Sir
your Most Affectionate Bro
Lancellot Machell
Crackanthropp March the 3^d^ 1676/7

{Little Ann has hir Duty presented unto you & desires you will be pleased to send hir a Booke for upon my word she is a good Schollar. Burnyeats will inform you further.}
{Sister Susana remembers her love to you; she has not been ~~very~~ well. I Imagine it to be love – neither know I who it should be with unless Cosen John Machell, for when I told hir of him she recovered strangely & now is very well.}
{Pray remember my kind love to sweet-hart Johan –}

[Machell's Notes VI.517 & 518]

*{Countiss of Penbrok dead.}
†{The Sandf[ords] of Ask.}
‡{An[n] Machel, Elizabeth Machel, Mary Machel.}[32]

[I.313B]

[2.] [Dr John Mill of The Queen's College Oxford to Thomas Machell, 1683.]

These for the Revd Mr Thomas Machell, Rector of Kirkby Thore near Appleby, Westmorland.
Dr Mil about his marriage with Priscilla the daughter of Sir Edward Palmer.[33]

[I.313A][34]

Dear Sir
I receiv'd the favour of yours of Dec. 17th and have solicited the concern you engag'd me in; but ineffectually. Neither haveing any thoughts of changeing for a liveing in the north, at least wise not for so small a thing as yours in Hampshire is represented to be.[35] I wonder Mr Ward has not paid you

[29] 'til you git a place': 'until Thomas Machell is awarded a parish'. Machell was recently ordained (1674-5), when his brother wrote this letter, see Bellasis: 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', 447.
[30] A reference to Sir Joseph Williamson (1633-1701), diplomat and secretary of state, born at Bridekirk, Cumberland. After attending school at St Bees, he was recommended to Gerard Langbaine (born at Barton Kirk), provost of Queen's College, Oxford, as a deserving northern youth, entering Queen's College in September 1650. Williamson's time there made a great impact upon him; he was one of the college's most generous benefactors, sponsoring building work and awarding gifts including a massive silver trumpet used to summon the college to dinner. Importantly for the development of antiquarianism, he founded an Anglo-Saxon lectureship there, ensuring that his protégé William Nicolson (born at Great Orton, Cumberland) received the post. He attempted to become M.P. for Appleby in 1668, but failed to gain the confidence of Lady Anne Clifford. See A. Marshall, 'Williamson, Sir Joseph'. *ODNB*.
[31] Andrew Whelpdale and his wife (who eventually married Thomas Machell).
[32] These were Lancelot's children (Thomas's nieces), to whom his letter refers so fondly despite not knowing their baptismal dates. See will of Elizabeth Machell of Bewley Castle, 4 Jan.1700, in Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', 461.
[33] This comment was written by Machell. In May 1684, John Mill married Priscilla (1649-85), youngest daughter of Sir William Palmer of Old Warden, Bedfordshire, with a portion of £3,000. Mill had been Palmer's chaplain. The marriage was short: Priscilla died on 1 April 1685. S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5-1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*.
[34] Letter from Dr John Mill.
[35] Mill here refers to Machell's rectory at Dogmersfield. A Queen's College colleague of Thomas Machell, John Mill (1644/5-1707), was a Westmorland man, born in Hardendale in Shap parish, son of Thomas Mill, a weaver. When the family moved to High Knipe in Bampton parish, he was educated at Bampton School. He

a visitt since his comeing down.[36] I think our people of that country are under some unaccountably fatal oblegation of Barbarism. I have ever found them insensible of favours, in alle my experience. Under the Rose,[37] I have now re[s]olutions to marry my dearest Priscilla. From London, whither I go, God willing, the next week, you may expect to hear from
Your old friend and most unalterably faithfull servant
Jo: Mill
Bletchington March 24 1683/4

[I.667][38]

[3.] [Hugh Machell to Thomas Machell, Penrith, 16 July 1689.]

Penrith the 16th of July 1689
These for Mr Thomas Machell att Kirkby thore Westmorland.
1. Description of places and rarityes
2. Endowment & Benefactors: of Church – Chaples – Halls –
Sir
Yo[u]rs I received and delivered the inclosed and Cosn Brierly Assures me that he will either writte to you or me after thursday post, for then he expects an answer of his letter from London, he tells me that the Lord Hughet is very unwell in London.[39]
This with my service to you my Cozen I rest your Affectionate Cozen & servant
Hugh Machell

[III.41B][40]

[4.] [Thomas Machell to an unknown person regarding payments to a relative. Undated fragment.]

And the weekly or monthly contributions for the case of my cosan so long as they last and upon his notice what you pay to him shud be answerd here by Sr. Your most faithfull & affectionate servant
T.M.

[VI.622A]

[5.] ['Cos' Mary to Thomas Machell. Undated.][41]

Dear Cos Thomas both youeris I resaved[42] and hathe as faer as I can obayed your comandis: In the forst plasse spoken to my Ant consarning your linning. She has hear the last robe and bought sum for you! I have also sent you hear, all we can find consarning B[isho]p Whelpdal.[43] And for thoes oder things you writ for Last I will send you them vary shortly and wil writ to my ounkel to send you a vary good horss and if that will not dow I wil goe my selfe A pourpss to sarve you, in hopis it is for coming dowen on and if \ so / my Laber wil be vary well bestowed and I shal reste more satisfacshon \ in dowing of it / then I have now tiem to exprss so shall I tacke leive for the prssent and reman
Your onen cos Mary.[44]

---

matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1661 (BA, 1666; MA, 1669). Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5-1707)'. *ODNB*.

[36] Possibly William Ward, son of William of Kirkland, Westmorland; student at Queen's (BA, MA) 1666/7-1674; rector of Skelton, Cumberland, 1683-1711. *OAD*.

[37] 'under the rose': sub rosa = in secret.

[38] Letter from Hugh Machell to Thomas Machell, Penrith, 16 July 1689; short notes in Machell's hand are written on the outer cover.

[39] Probably Sir George Hewett of Pishobury (1st Viscount Hewett, 1652-1689), who for his services in Ireland was made Baron of Jamestown, co. Longford, and Viscount Hewett of Gowran, co. Kilkenny, in 1689. *British History online*, Hertfordshire, Sawbridge Parish, Pishobury, 332-47.

[40] Reverse of I.41A, with letter seal attached.

[41] At the foot of this page is the word 'London'; it is possibly part of a postmark.

[42] 'Both yours I received.'

[43] Roger Whelpdale was Bishop of Carlisle (1419 to 1423), while also Provost of Queen's College, Oxford (1404 to 1421). The name 'Whelpdale' was of personal importance to Machell. His wife, Elizabeth, was the widow of the Rev. Andrew Whelpdale, Rector of Newnham, Hants. Andrew Whelpdale was the son of William Whelpdale of Penrith. See above, VI.517.

[44] Below this letter, Machell wrote biographical information on Andrew Whelpdale and the Whelpdale family which contains a pithy remark relating to a 17th-century Whelpdale of Penrith; see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.561.

[C. Letters of thanks and apology from students at Queen's College Oxford]

[I.40]

[1.] [From George Tibbols to Thomas Machell, undated.][45]

Insignissime literarum patrone
Cum vestro labore simul ac exemplo bonarum artiu[m] studia promovere, et laudis praemio virtutem iacentem excitare non dedigneris, uti spero, mihi condonabis, quod hac impolita incompl[et]aque epistola vestris studiis moras inijcere ausus sum, nam iuxta proverbium praestat stultum quam ingratum agere. Multa beneficia vel insperata in me contulisti, quae trabali (qu[o]d aiunt) clavo memoriae infixa conservabo, eosque imitabor mendicos qui cum acceptae stipis mutua[m] referre nequeant, benevola verborum actione rependunt. Incredibilis illa bonitas vestra non solum merita, sed etiam vota longe superavit; quocirca non amicum sed genium, ac meum numen tutelare appello, ac me eternum adamantinis obsequij catenis tenebis obstrictum.
Clientulum tui ob servantissimum
Geo Tibbols.[46]

[I.56]

[2.] [Two letters sent to Machell, undated, which he later recycled as notepads.]

[2.a.]
Tanta (Dignissime Maecenas) candori vestro inest majestas, ut, vel Phoebi instar, omnibus im[m]o indignis benefacere gloriatur: adeo ut si flagitium perennem fere dignitatis demeretur eclypsin, ad vestrae tamen humanitatis asylum confugiens, impune condonetur. Non iratum Phoebum existimo cum nubibus obumbretur vultus: illius etenim fulgorem obfuscando, hoc saltem efficiunt nubeculae istae, ut splendidiores subinde nobis praeberet radios: nec Te infensum censeo, cum benevolentiae jubaris aliquantum denegetur influxus; ideo enim denegari existimo, ut aliquando latius effulgeat. Vestri ideo splendoris jubar tandem sibi oriturum exoptat. Servulus vester observartissimus.[47]

Joh[n] Scott[48]

[I.57]

[2.b.]
Vir Dignissime
Candoris aliquid (probe novimus) etiam cum maxime saeviat, praestare potest ipsissima severitas; ideoque non tam timore quam spe pleni vestram accedimus dignitatem criminis ignoranter patrati veniam impetraturi; vestrae enim excandescentiae, ut speramus, flam[m]a non adeo tota in vindictam

[45] George Tibbols, son of George Tibbols of Asby, Westmorland; matriculated Queen's College, Oxford, aged 16 in 1674; BA 1679. See *OAD*.
[46] 'Most distinguished patron of letters. Since by your labour and at the same time example you do not disdain to promote my zeal for the noble arts and to arouse latent virtue by the reward of praise, you will, as I hope, forgive me, because with this unpolished and unfinished letter I have ventured to cause a delay in your studies, for according to the proverb it is better to play the fool than the ingrate. Many and unlooked for benefits have you conferred upon me, which I shall preserve fixed (as they say) on the fast spike of memory, and I shall imitate those beggars who, since they are unable to make like return for the alms they have received, repay the kindness by act of words. That incredible goodness of yours has far surpassed not only my merits but also my prayers; for which reason I call [you] not my friend but my genius and my tutelary spirit, and you will hold me eternally bound by adamantine chains of gratitude. From the hand of your most obedient and insignificant client. George Tibbols.'
[47] 'Most worthy Maecenas, such splendour is there in your brilliance that it shines, even in the manner of Phoebus, to benefit all, nay, even the unworthy: to such an extent that if my wrong-doing should deserve a near eclipse of dignity, nevertheless, taking refuge in your humanity, it would be excused without penalty. I do not think Phoebus angry when his visage is darkened by gloom: for, by veiling his brightness, those little clouds do, after all, bring it about that straight afterwards he shows us more brilliant rays: nor do I judge you enraged when the stream of light of your benevolence is a little withheld; for I think it withheld only so that in due course it may shine more widely. Thus the brightness of your splendour desires finally to dawn again. Your most obedient servant. Joh[n] Scott.'
[48] John Scott (b.1659), son of Richard Scott of Carlisle. Matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, 1673, BA 1678, MA and fellow 1681. Vicar of Carisbrook 1689; rector of Shorwell 1697 (both Isle of Wight). Died 1697. *OAD*.

corripiatur, ut aliquantum non admittat favoris mixturam. Gratam ergo, precamur, impraesentiarum candoris vestri influentiam nos sentiamus; et si hic, qualis est error vestram adeo offendit dignitatem, ut crimen non nisi ampliori supplicio delendum judicetur; parcams tamen, et in posterum cavebimus ne demus laesum patientiae vestrae numen. Sentiamus.
Dignitatis vestrae
Cultores Observanntissimi[49]

Anth. Tonstall[50]
Barnard Gilpin[51]

[II.482]

[3.] [From John Cocke to Thomas Machell, undated.] [52]

To Mr Machell Dean of Queens College
Insignissime Vir
Incensum rei metuunt Iovem, nec aras appropinquare audent, ne ijsdem flammis, quibus adolentur sacrificia, perirent: pari ratione, supplex vester, temeritatis improvidae sibi conscius, advolvitur, vestra tamen clementia fretus: et inde est quo vester Ganymedes suum interpellat Iovem, quia candidiorem sperat. Meae stultitiae vestra facilitas evadat Asylum, meam quippe felicitatem vestra solum humanitate metior. Scio petentium desideria, regijs animis lenitatis Theatrum sternere, eosque raro aut nunquam repulsa pati, qui pudore suffusi limen intrare erubescunt. Tua proin clementia delicti nostri dissipetur nubes: non adeo (crede) errores depereo, ut lapsibus addam et pertinaciam; satis quidem ad poenam facit onerosa mei criminis recordatio. Nescit Epistola nostra tam graviter delinquere, ut culpas, quas admisi, stultitia mea patrocinando, studeret: nostrum vehementer triumphabit obsequium, si Maecenatis indulgentiam mereatur, quas si dignabaris, usque me cautiorem reddes
Tuae humanitatis
cultorem Humillimum
Johannem Cocke.[53]

[49] 'Most Worthy Sir, Real severity can mean a kind of fairness (we know it well), even when most harsh; and for this reason we approach your revered person filled not so much with fear as with hope, to implore pardon for an offence committed in ignorance; for may the flame of your anger, as we hope, be not taken up in vengeance so entirely that it admit not some admixture of goodwill. Therefore, we pray, at the present moment may we feel the gracious influence of your open-mindedness; and if this error, such as it is, offends your worthy person so much that the offence be judged discharged only by a heavier sentence, may you nevertheless grant pardon, and in future we will take care that we do not try your patience of spirit. Let it be decided. Most obedient servants of your Honour, Anthony Tonstall, Barnard Gilpin.'
[50] Anthony Tonstall, son of Nicholas Tonstall of Selside, Cumberland. Matriculated at Queen's in 1672 aged 17; BA 1677; MA and fellow 1680; canon of Exeter 1686; rector of Cheriton Bishop, Devon, 1687. Will proved at Oxford 1688. *OAD*.
[51] Bernard Gilpin, son of Alan Gilpin of Strickland, Westmorland. Matriculated at Queen's 1673/4 aged 18; BA 1678. *OAD*.
[52] John Cocke, son of J. Cocke of Kendal, matriculated at Queen's in 1672 aged 17. BA 1677; MA 1680. Vicar of Thatcham, Berks, 1687. *OAD*. For James Cocke of Kendal, see Part 2, Ch.9, II.323, fn. 174.
[53] 'Most Illustrious Sir, People fear Jove in his rage, and dare not approach his altars lest they perish in those same flames by which sacrifices are consumed. With like thoughts, your suppliant falls at your feet, aware of his rash forwardness but relying on your clemency: and hence is the reason why your Ganymede accosts his Jove, because he hopes him more radiant. May your graciousness offer sanctuary to my foolishness; indeed, I measure my felicity by your humanity alone. I know that, to regal spirits, the urgent requests of petitioners spread out a theatre for leniency, and that they rarely or never suffer rejection who, suffused with a sense of shame, blush to cross the threshold. Accordingly, through your clemency the cloud of our fault will be dispersed: I am not (believe me) so much in love with my mistakes as to add persistence also to my lapses; indeed, the burden of recollecting my offence makes for punishment enough. Our letter cannot stray so far from the mark that my folly should seek to furnish a defence of faults which I have admitted: our compliance will succeed completely if it should earn the indulgence of Maecenas, if such you deem fitting, until you render me more circumspect, one who most humbly strives for your gentle treatment, John Cocke.'

[4.] [From John Troughton to Thomas Machell, undated. Annotated by Machell.][54]

{Sat Sent. tis mouldy}[55]

Most Honourable Sir
Quod magnis licet devinctus beneficijs ad limen tuum, trepide procumbo, facit et Imbecillitatis nostrae, et dignitatis vestrae ratio; uti veniente numine fas est semper sacrificijs Onerare, non solum mos antiqua, sed ipsa ratio nos docuit ut ad numen non nisi reverenter recedamus, gratiorque aestimatus est iste horror qui sacro cordisque ac oculorum tremore te mitissimum fateatur; nunc vero causae propter quas te coli fas est (Vir Colende) sunt sumendae a tua Clementia, qua delicti nostri nubes dissipiatur, et ne posthac invenies me deliquentem, quin semper observantissimu[m] et obedientissimu[m]tuu[m] servitu[m]
John Troughton.[56]

[I.475]

[5.] [From Thomas Poole to Thomas Machell, undated.][57]
Insignissime Vir
Cum ut vestram recuperarem benevolentiam epistolam scribere subinde cogitarem, nigro carbone papyrum, non notare calamo in mentem venerit, nisi atramento atrata charta aeque depingeret peccati mei nigredinem, et actionum lituras. At […] dum vestram benevolentiam enixius efflagito, veniam pro se ipso precari meo opus est epistolio; meam tamen utrimque vestrae dignitatis placito submissionem testetur styli humilitas; et Tropis expertes lineae paenitentiae meae indigitent realitatem. fateor me in Te peccasse, crimen dolens, [...] sco, et a Te veniam exoro; nec vereor quin in hoc perinde ac reliqu[is] numen imiteris benignum condonando scilicet
servulo Tibi de [...] clissimo
Tho: Poole[58]

[D. Correspondence and Memoranda relating to Machell's Antiquarian Pursuits]

[III.41A]

[1.] [Anonymous letters to Thomas Machell, undated; later used as sketchpads.]

[1.a.]
Yuu'le ~~agr~~ pay him so much for the first moneth, and tell me, where I may repay it here in London, and to whom, it shall be done. I am glad to heare, you are well, and though providence hath placed us at great distance from one another, yet I shall be glad to heare from you […][59]

---

[54] John Troughton, son of James Troughton of Kendal, matriculated at Exeter College, Oxford, 1672/3; BA at Queen's, 1676 (just before Machell left for Kirkby Thore); rector of Brauncewell, Lincolnshire, 1680. *OAD*.
[55] In Machell's hand. Since the MS pages before and after this letter are blank, there is no clue as to Machell's comment, which, presumably, applied to the state of the letter [?]
[56] 'The fact that, while obliged by great benefactions, I fall in trepidation at your threshold, is brought about by recognition both of my weakness and of your high status; just as, when divinity comes it is right ever to load [it] with sacrifices, not only ancient tradition but reason itself has taught us that we should have recourse only reverently to power, and that sense of awe is reckoned more agreeable which acknowledges you most clement by a reverential trembling of heart and eyes. Now indeed the causes on account of which it is right for you to be worshipped (Worshipful Sir) arise from your Clemency, through which the cloud of our offence is dissipated and never after this will you find me offending, but that I am ever your most attentive and obedient servant, John Troughton.'
[57] Possibly Thomas Poole, son of Richard Pool of York, who matriculated at Queen's College, Oxford, in 1670; BA, 1674. *OAD*.
[58] 'Most Illustrious Sir, When I was thinking to write a letter that I might thereby recover your goodwill, it came to my mind to scribe the paper not with a pen but in black charcoal, thinking a page utterly darkened should both depict the blackness of my fault, and equally blot out my actions. But […] while it is your goodwill I more earnestly request, I must pray pardon for my letter itself; in both matters, however, may the lowly efforts of my pen, so please you, attest how I bow to your greatness; and its lines, devoid of rhetoric, proclaim how genuine my penitence. I confess that I have offended against you, lamenting my fault, [...], and I entreat your pardon; nor do I fear but that in forgiving this just as in other matters you will indeed show a kindly spirit.
Your most […] servant, Tho: Poole.'
[59] The note breaks off here because the paper has perished.

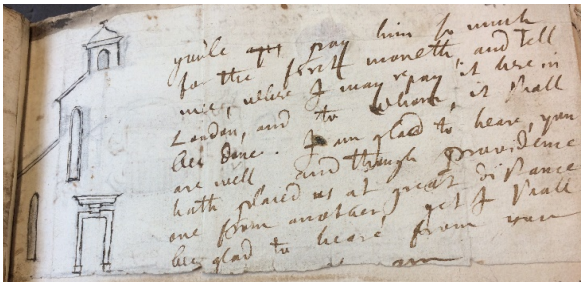


Figure 3.2.2. Letter to Machell, on which he sketched the west end of Lowther Church. III.41A.

[VI.482][60]

[1.b]

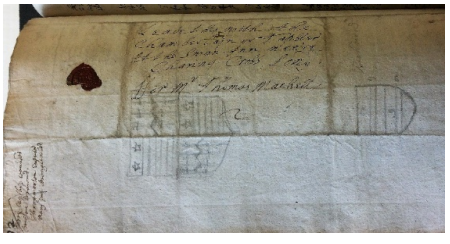


Figure 3.2.3. Letter addressed to Machell in London, later used as a sketch pad. VI.482.

Leave this with the Chamberlajn or Tapster at the Swan Inn ne'ere Charing Cross, London. For Mr Thomas Machel.
{Berry. Cap. ship wounded; bowson drownd;[61] Throgmorton executed;[62] Mary Put Brought in bed.}[63]

[V.2B]

[2.] [Thomas Machell, Memorandum: A trip to London, undated.]

Monday:
Dine with Mr Dean of Rochester.
Meet Nic. Lough at the Fleece Tavern in St Martins Lane att one a clock

Tuesday:
Meet Mr Glen at the Bull Head at Charing + [Cross] at 6. a clock at night.
– Mr Dugdall at 9. a clock in the morning.

---

[60] Re-use of mail stationery.
[61] Jottings in Machell's hand. They might all refer to events in 1682. In 1682 the Frigate, 'Gloucester', bound for Scotland with the future James II on board, ran aground and sank within hours. Some, including the captain, Sir John Berry, and the Duke of York, escaped in the long boat, but many drowned. See 'Two letters from Scotland giving a true relation of the unhappy loss of the Gloucester-frigot, whereof Sir John Berry was commander : with a particular account of the persons of quality drowned therein, and the miraculous escape of His Royal Highness the Duke of York.' *Early English Books Online*. https://name.umdl.umich.edu/A64017.0001.001.
[62] Francis Throckmorton was executed for treason against Elizabeth I in 1584, but the reason for Machell's note is unknown. Perhaps Machell was referring to Sir William Throckmorton, 4th baronet (1658-1682), who had been a scholar at Christ Church, Oxford, 1677-81; he was killed in a duel in 1682. See Jan Broadway, 'Throckmorton family (per. c.1500-1682), gentry'. *ODNB*.
[63] This 'Mary' might be Mary of Modena, wife of the Duke of York, who gave birth on 15 August 1682 but the infant lived only until 6 October. Mary suffered two further miscarriages: in October 1683 and May 1684. A son was born in June 1688. See A. Barclay, 'Mary [Mary of Modena] (1658-1718), queen of England, Scotland, and Ireland, consort of James II and VII'. *ODNB*.

– Mr Lough at 6. in the morning.
– Call upon Cosan Patteson & enquire for letter.[64] So att Dr Lamp.[65]

Wednesday:
Goe to Mr Glen.
To the Heralds Office.
Herald Painters.[66]

[3.] [Correspondence between Thomas Holford (Herald)[67] and Thomas Machell, 1676.]

[3a.] Thomas Holford to Thomas Machell, 13 May 1675/6.

[I.276]

These for Mr Machell, Fellow of Queens College in Oxford.
Direct your next to me: This from Mr Holford at Mr Balls in James Street in the Haymarket next dore to the Dancing Schole.

[I.275]

Sir. I thanke you for the discourse I re[ceive]d (by the hand of my cosen Sandford)[68] relating to the family of Bellingham, and had returned you an ansare sooner, had I been in towne when it arived. I here send you inclosed the things desired,[69] only that of Talboyse which I must deferr till a farther time, it being a thing of some difficulty to find; but I am apt to believe Mr Dugdale's *Baronagium Anglicae* will helpe you in that affaire. I shall be ~~verry~~ glad if I can serve you at any time; therefore you may at any time when you have occasion freely lay your concernes on him that is
Your very reall servant
Theo Holford
May 13th 1675/6

I shall, the next opportunity I have of writing to you, intreat the favour of you in a thing I am verry desirous to get of the Bishop of Lincolne.[70]

{Answered Trinity Sunday 1676} This was from Mr Holford, one of the Heralds in the Heralds College near St Pauls London.[71]

[V.2C]

[3b.] [Thomas Machell to Thomas Holford, Herald, Trinity Sunday 1676.]

Sir
I receiv'd this with the papers inclos'd for which I give you many thankes; but could wish you had us'd a compass in the roundalls.[72] I know your business you speake of is concerning your fathers picture, & if you please to give my Lord a line I will deliver it with all the advantage that I am able;

[64] A later reference suggests who 'Patteson' might have been: 'Burton's Itinerarium. Blatum Burgu[m] \ p. 114. / is taken by Josias Simler for Abalaba, a station in Cumberland, of which see more out of the *Notitia of the Western Empire*: Mr Pattison at the Read Hart in Fetter Lane.' See F.13 on I.174A.
[65] This might be a reference to Thomas Lamplugh DD, of Dovenby, Cumberland. Queen's College, Oxford, from 1634; DD 1660; principal of St Alban Hall, Oxford, 1664-73; archdeacon of London 1664; dean of Rochester 1673; archbishop of York 1688; died 1691.
[66] The artists of the College of Arms were known as herald painters.
[67] Thomas Holford was Blanche Lyon Pursuivant of Arms in Ordinary from 1686: https://www.british-history.ac.uk/survey-london/bk16/pp229-306#h3-0024.
[68] The reference is to the Sandfords of Askham, possibly to Edmund Sandford, author of 'Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland', now published as *A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland*, CWAAS Tract Series 4 (Kendal, 1890). See also Part 1, Ch.2, Askham.
[69] See information on the Bellinghams on MS.V.2-36.
[70] Thomas Barlowe (1607-91): see correspondence relating to Appleby Corporation, Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, I.279-82.
[71] In Machell's hand.
[72] Machell the architect!

The best way will be to have it copyed out here if we had a good painter, & I hope we shall have some betwixt this and Act. I sent you a letter (since my notes) & desired you to consult a little booke in 4^0 call'd the *Visitation of Cumberland and Northumberland*, which Mr Knight has, who is the Kings chirurgion,[73] & lives behind the ~~Old~~ New Exchange \ Lower. / The business was to examen that coate wherein Bellingham quartered with Barnisteed impaleth Leigh – impaleing Clifford, for in Leigh's quarterings I have drawne 3 Bendletts which as I remember should be Barruletts. Pray send me

[V.2D]

word how it is there & correct your owne. And you may be pleas'd allso, where I mention'd Patritius the son of Thomas, to add in the mergin (instead of – of this family was the founder of Shap Abby) \ the word / – which Patricius liv'd ~~in the~~ anno 40. Hen. 3. [1255-56] / 25. Ed. 1. [1296-97]. And this Thomas his father (son of Gospatritus, son of Ormus, was founder of Shap Abby. This with my service is all att present.

Sent to Mr Tho. Hollford an Herald
Trinity Sunday 1676.

[V.3]

[3c.] [Bellingham Pedigree: Part of Thomas Machell's Report to Thomas Holford, 1676.]

An Impartial account of the Pedigree & Armes of the Bellinghams of Westmorland, sent in a letter to Mr Holford of the College of Heralds att London {at the request of the said College being imployd to draw a ped[igree] & answer som doubts concerning the Armes of the said family by ~~the~~ Mr Petty.[74] Per M.}[75]

I were very unworthy if I did not all \ the service / that lyes in my power for any that belongs to the Heralds Office whence I have received so many civilites, and therefore have sent you, according to my promise (tho not so speedily as I could have wished being hinder'd by indispensable business) all that I am able att present to informe you concerning the family of the Bellinghams of Westmerland; for which I have a singular respect & to whom I am in some measure related; yet I shall deale truly with you & them; remembering what Aristotle said of his master; Amicus Plato, sed magis amica veritas;[76] and for the better discovery of the truth, I will:

1^t. Give you my judgment concerning their pedigree; & 2^{ly} what proofe I am able to produce of the true Coate of Arms belonging to the family, which is the whole business now in agitation.[77]

1. For pedigrees I have seen 3, and compared them together. One which you showed me in a Booke of yours, yet not without some manifest errors, & composed by I know not whom. But I take this to be the best and most Ancient of any of them, because the fullest \ tho / without date, for 8 generations; This being with Richard de Bellocampo.

2. Another (now in mine own custody) which I had out of a Booke of Mrs Smyths over against St Dunstans Church {London} who was sometime wife to an Herald painter. And this is also of

[73] John Knight (bap. 1622, d. 1680) was surgeon to Charles II. He was also a collector of manuscripts; his father, Thomas Knight (d. 1652), was a herald painter and servant to successive Garter kings of arms; it is likely that he was himself the son of Thomas, Chester herald (d. 1618), and grandson of Edmund, Norroy, king of arms (d. 1593), whose heraldic manuscripts were inherited by the surgeon in 1662 and were left by him to Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Extracted from C. Knighton, 'Knight, John, surgeon.' *ODNB.*

[74] 'Mr Petty' was a relative of the Pettys of Orton Old Hall (Petty Hall). There had been doubts about the authenticity of a Petty pedigree agreed by William Dugdale, placing the family's origin in Sir Oates Petit of Cornwall. Machell knew that 'Mr Petty … has the pedigre & is of the same familie with the Pettyes of Oreton; for they of Oreton came lately from about Skipton in Yorkeshire, where this Petty was borne': See Part 1, Ch.20, Orton, I.640. 'Mr Petty' was actually William Petyt (Petit) (1640/41-1707), born near Bolton Abbey, Yorkshire, son of William Petyt, landowner and lawyer of Bolton Abbey and Barnard's Inn. The son became a lawyer at the Inner Temple in 1664, keeper of the Tower records in 1689. An esteemed scholar, he was a student of English historical records and famed for *The Antient Right of the Commons of England Asserted* (1680): J. Greenberg, 'Petyt [Petit], William (1640/41-1707), lawyer and political propagandist'. *ODNB*. For more on Petyt's influence on Machell, see Part 3, Ch.1, VI.431.

[75] 'Per m[anum]': by hand.

[76] 'Plato, I love, but I love Truth more.' Or, 'Plato is my friend, but truth is a better friend.' The maxim is often attributed to Aristotle as a paraphrase of the *Nicomachean Ethics* 1096a, 11-15.

[77] The Report continues on MSV.3-36.

uncertaine Authoritie; but seems to be collected from the other, being not so full & compleat; yet it has the addition of Dates to the pedigree where the other wants them, but suspitiously inserted. This was (by computation) toward the beginning of Kg Charles the I[t], but has its faults also, and begins with the same Richard de Bellocampo.
3. The third \ as the former/ I have seen (sent up from Westm'land and now in that custody) which, pretends to more than either of the other; as having many notes concerning the family; but has indeed less of exactness \ in it / being \ as it seems by the dates therof / taken out of mine, but falsely writ, & voluntarie additions made unto it by I know not whom; yet this (notwithstanding the hand betrays it to be of yesterday, pretends higher than either of the other, beginning with Alano de Bellacampo[78] maryed to Beauchamp, Tempore Conquestoris;[79] whereas if the Author had understood himself, \ Bellocampo / Beauchamp were the same name; but that Bellocampo was not writ Beauchamp till of later years.

{Why the pedigrees (which shall be annexed at the end of this letter) are to be disallow'd of, from Alano downward & to Robert Bellingham who maryed Burnashed: Ratio 1.}

Now my judgement concerning these Pedigrees (if I

[V.4]

may be so bold \ as / to offer my judgement in a Business being your and my profession, and whereof that are judges) is plainly this; That none of the 3 can be authentic, at least no higher than Robert de Bellingham, who maryed with Burnished; for all above him are writ 'Bellocampo'. And my reasons are these:
1. Because they are all (not only of uncertaine Authoritye, but), very incongrouse; the 1[t] without date for 8 generations, but with collaterals (sisters of Roger de Bellocampo) whose names are not mention'd, but their matches are. The 2[nd] with date but \ without / those collaterals, as tho it were a compendium of the former. But the dates are very suspitiously inserted, there being no years but only the Reignes of Kings \ annexed / and those equally distributed \ for the most part. / The 3[d] without collaterals too, and with date also; yet that date differs from the Date of the former in Richard de Bellocampo, who is said \ in / the other to have lived in the time of Henry 2. & Richard the I. But in this latter (as tho it were a coppy and falsely transcribed) in the time of Richard de Veteripont \ where doubtless this meant / of those Veteripontes who were Lords of Westm'land; & besides, that they had not the Honour of Westm'land till the 4[th] year of the Reign of King John which is 2 descents after him. There was never such man \ in the world / as Richard de Veteripont that I could mete with, either in pedigrees or \ in / records, tho I have a most exact and particular account concerning that family.[80]

[V.15]

I hope the pains I have taken in it will not be disliked. Because of this greatness, but ~~rather~~ interpreted (by you) as an Argument \ rather / of the great respect I have for the family, and noe less desire of serving the office (and your self in particular) in all ~~that~~ I am able. Vive Vale. si quid novisti rectius istis, candidus imperti; si non; his utere mecum.[81]
T. Machell
Q.C.O. April 15. 1676.

[VI.253][82]

[4.] [Thomas Machell to Dr John Mill, 7 October 1692.]

To the Reverend Dr Mill, Principall of Edmund Hall in Oxford.
Sir
Pray give my service to Mr Wood[83] with the enclosed letter, which is (I assure you) no begging one; for I am long since broke off that trade. I beg'd books of him; & compasses, pencils & Indian ink

[78] Machell placed a cross above this spelling error, correcting it in the margin.
[79] 'At the time of the Norman Conquest.'
[80] Machell's analysis continues for 11½ pages; these have not been transcribed: see MS.V.3-36.
[81] 'Farewell and keep well. If you know anything better than they, frankly share [it]; if not, join with me in using these my researches.'
[82] Also numbered p.57.
[83] Anthony à Wood, Oxford antiquary; author of *Athenae Oxonienses: An Exact History of All the Writers and Bishops who Have Had Their Education in the University of Oxford* (1691-92).

(with other impliments) of a nearer friend a great while a goe, but never got any. If I were near Oxon, I would try my hand at my own country trade & help my selfe; for the takeing hand (they say) never wants! But spatiis disclussus iniquis - Prætereo.[84]
And so fare you well. T.M.
Oct. 7th 1692.

[5.] [Thomas Machell to Anthony Wood: Enclosed letter.]

To Mr Anthony Wood the Oxford Antiquary
My Old Friend
I thanke you for mentioning in your *Athenæ* the match of Mr Rowland Machell with Elizabeth, the sister of Dr Langton, Bishop of Winchester.[85] And because you take notice of severall lands in the County of Westmorland which the said Bishop gave them, I desire you to send me a copy of his will, or an abstract (at least) of the said lands, which will much oblige
Sir, Your very affectionate friend & servant
Thomas Machell

[VI.186]

[6.] [Thomas Machell's Memorandum of Needs, undated.]

I want:
A Welsh dictionary & Corrispondent
A book of Coynes; Indian Inke; a magnifying glass
A pair of divideing compasses[86]
A pollisher of my Coll[ection]
The Hebrew Inscript[ion], an account of it: And wee are the people of thy pasture, & sheep of thy hands:[87] a solisicme metathesis[88] – see in ancient copyes & consult Rabby[89] Hide.[90]

Query of Sir Joseph.[91] Whether Clericus Regis[92] & Clericus Regni[93] be not the Kings Secretary– as in this Express[ion]

---

[84] 'But, kept away by the envious miles of distance - I must let it pass.' Hurt feelings and barbed remarks are common features of Machell's correspondence with his former colleagues, yet the tone is often affectionate.
[85] Thomas Langton (c.1430-1501), bishop of Winchester, was born at Appleby c.1430. He graduated MA at Cambridge in 1456 and was a fellow of Pembroke College by 1462/3. A supporter of Richard III, he became bishop of Salisbury in 1483. After the battle of Bosworth, he was removed from his posts but pardoned. In 1487 he was elected provost of Queen's College, Oxford. Under Henry VII, in 1493, he became bishop of Winchester, richest diocese in England. Langton's will contains more than one hundred items. His money legacies amount to upwards of £2,000, including the provision of six exhibitions at Queen's. Richard Pace (d. 1536), whom he supported financially, remembered that the bishop 'befriended all learned men exceedingly, and in his time was another Maecenas, rightly remembering (as he often said) that it was for learning that he had been promoted to the rank of bishop'. See D. Wright, 'Langton, Thomas, bishop of Winchester and archbishop-elect of Canterbury'. *ODNB*.
[86] Note Machell's letter to Mill 7 October 1692: the 'no begging' letter.
[87] 'For he is our God, and we are the people of his pasture, and the sheep of his hand. Today, if you hear his voice'. Psalm 95.7 (AVB).
[88] Solecism is a term for deviation against the standard syntax formation in grammar. Metathesis (etymologically from Greek, literally 'a transposition') is an alteration of a word whereby letters, or syllables of a word are transposed, or shifted out of their natural position, as: 'prevert' for 'pervert'; 'Evandre' for 'Evander': https://www.ifioque.com/figures-of-speech/scheme/solecism.
[89] Rabbi.
[90] Machell was probably referring to one of many books authored by Thomas Hyde (1636-1703), Hebrew scholar, orientalist and Bodleian librarian; viz. *De Historia shahiludii tria scripta hebraica viz. Rabbi Abraham Aben-ezrae prelegans poema rythmicum, R. Bonseniora Ben-Jachiae facunda oratio profaica, liber deliciae regum prosa, stylo puriore, per anonymum Omnia ex Chartis MSS jam primo deprompsi & Latine vertit Thomas Hyde*, with Hebrew and Latin on facing pages (Oxford, 1689); and see Anthony Wood, *Athenae Oxioensis 4* (extended edition ed. Philip Bliss, London, 1820), 524-26.
[91] Sir Joseph Williamson (1633-1701), see above, VI.518.
[92] 'King's secretary.'
[93] 'Secretary of the realm.'

– datum per manum Mr Rogeri Mali Catuli clerici nostri.'[94]
A Little Booke of Fortification. Edmonds?[95]

[I.479]

[7.] [Correspondence with William Nicolson. 18, 19 January 1686.]

[7a.] [William Nicolson to Thomas Machell, 18 January 1686.][96]

Sir Jan. 18. 86
This comes (to thank you for your last kindness, and) to beg the perusal of those northern words which I gathered for you at Queens. I had a copy of 'em; but my friend has thought fit to keep them, with some others of my books, for his own use. I will thankfully return them, when I send for the old Register.[97]
You may remember I told you I had met with something relateing to the Welp's of Kirkbythore: and, tho' I could not then show you what it was, I have since read over again a great many Instruments (in the Holm [Cultram] Register) on that subject. I find a good share of your Town-fields has bin formerly in the possession of those monks: by the gift of Walden fil, Gamelli fil Welp, Lord of the place, and his Tenants. The places named in the several Instruments as boundaries of Donations, are: Keldes, Barnstathe, Sica regia, Pons Atulphi, Fons Bernulphi, Kirktoftes, Crossrig, Stodeholm major et minor, Goldelands, Crokelands, Sandwath,

[I.480]

Morlandes, Wartheberh, Hale, &c. One I fancy may seem to Justify Mr Dalstons plea for a peculiar at Soureby by this passage: Renuntiando omni privilegio tam fori Civilis quam Canonici mihi vel Heredibus vel meis Assignatis competenti.[98]
Another (if the men of the monastery come to recover their Rights) may doe some service to the Rector; and therefore I send you it entire:
Haec est conventio inter D[ominum] Abbate[m] et Conventu[m] de Holm et Ecc[les]iam B[ea]ti Mich[aelis] de Kyrkbythore. Scil[icet] q[uo]d p[re]dicti Abbas et monachi reddent decima[m] garbam p[re]dictae Eccl[es]iae de Kyrkbythore de omnibus terris quas in eadem parochia de [...] caetero adepturi sunt. dum tamen terre illae prius cultae fuerint antequa[m] ad eos pervenirent. Hijs etc. A[nn]o D[omin]i 1194.[99]

---

[94] '…given by the hand of Mr Roger Malus Catulus our secretary.'
[95] Machell was unsure of the name but he was possibly referring to Edmund Gunter (1581-1626), a designer of mathematical instruments with practical applications for a number of tasks, including surveying, for which he invented the precursor to the logarithmic slide rule. His publication, *A New Treatise of Fortification*, was later added to several of his other works by Samuel Foster (ed.), *The Workes of Edmund Gunter, Containing the Description of the Sector, Cross-staff, and Other Instruments; with a Canon of Artificial Sines & Tangent, &c. Much Enlarged by the Author. Together with a New Treatise of Fortification. Whereunto Is Now Added the Further Use of the Quadrant Fitted for Daily Practice* (London: Fr. Egleffeild, 1653). See H. Higton, 'Gunter, Edmund, mathematician'. *ODNB*.
[96] By 1686, Nicolson had been archdeacon of Carlisle for two years and was living in the archidiaconal rectory of Great Salkeld, c.11 miles by road from Kirkby Thore. See D. Hayton, 'Nicolson, William (1655-1727), Church of Ireland bishop of Derry and antiquary'. *ODNB*.
[97] This paragraph refers to a list of Cumbrian words made for Machell when Nicolson was acting as his research assistant at Queen's (for examples of such words, see Machell's Preface, II.353). Nicolson had lent his copy to a friend who had not returned it. In this letter, Nicolson asks if he might borrow the original document. For Nicolson's word-list, entitled 'Glossarium Brigantinu[m]', see, CAC(C), DCHA/11/10/1: 'Nicolson's dictionary of northern English (compiled whilst Nicolson was at Queen's College, Oxford, 1677)'.
[98] 'By renouncing all privilege both civic and canonical due to me or my heirs or my assigns.' For Machell's deep difficulties with Dalston over Temple Sowerby chapelry, see Paul Barker, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's Complaint: July 2d. 1690', *CW2*, 89 (1989), 279-81. See also, Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin IV: A Narrative about a Chapel at Sowerby.
[99] 'This is the agreement between the Lord Abbot and the Convent of Holm [Cultram] and the Church of the Blessed Michael of Kyrkbythore. Namely, that the aforesaid Abbot and monks will render the tenth sheaf of corn from all the lands of the aforesaid Church of Kyrkbythore which they are to acquire in that parish from the other [...] As long as, however, those lands were previously cultivated, before they came to them. To these etc. A.D. 1194.'

With my own & wife's hearty Respects to you and yours, I am, Sir,
your obliged faithful servant
William Nicolson.[100]

[I.481]

[7b.] [Thomas Machell to William Nicolson, 19 January 1686]

Jan. 19 1686

Sir
Your request is so reasonable, that I make not delay ~~ansering~~ granting it; But have sent the booke by your man, in hopes to receive it agane with Interest. I thanke you for Those hints in your Letter: But I had the chart[er] of Wald. ~~fill,~~ Gamel fill, Whelp, & the other of Holm (which I believe are the same with yours) a great while \ agoe; / yet any thing of That nature is \ welcome, & / kindely accepted.
Your affectionate friend & servant
T.M.
Husbanded til.[101]
Give myne & my wive's kinde love & respects to your wife & sister; & accept the same to yourself, ~~with many~~ wee shal be glad to see you here.
Can you grant me liberty of Rise or Gardfell in Morland – or Kirkander by Newbyging

[8.] [Correspondence with Hugh Todd, 23, 24 February 1686.][102]

[8a.] [Hugh Todd to Thomas Machell, 23 February 1686.]

[I.503A][103]

The Reverend Mr Machell
Rector of Kirkbythore
in Westmereland
This:

[100] Taken at face value, the fact that Nicolson referred to his 'wife' in January 1686 when, in fact, they married on 3 June 1686 [D. Hayton, 'Nicolson, William (1655-1727). *ODNB*] appears irrational, but Nicolson was using traditional Julian dating, which in the Gregorian calendar would be January 1687, 'new style'. The official switch to the Gregorian calendar took place in 1752, but well before that date many people were anticipating the change for the months January to March by using an oblique, for example, 14 February 1676/7, as seen in other correspondence in this chapter and in the edition generally.

[101] Presumably, Machell was referring to the word-list lent to Nicolson, which Machell had husbanded for some time, i.e. looked after carefully, and which Nicolson must now husband until it is returned to Machell.

[102] Hugh Todd DD (c.1657-1728) studied at Queen's College, Oxford. An antiquary and clergyman, Todd was born at Blencow, Cumberland. In 1684, be became chaplain to Thomas Smith, bishop of Carlisle, and vicar of Kirkland, Cumberland. In 1685 he was collated prebendary of Carlisle and presented to the vicarage of Stanwix, resigning that living in 1688 when he was presented to the rectory of Arthuret. Eleven years later Bishop Smith asked him to accept the vicarage of Penrith as well, and he held both livings in plurality until his death. A resolutely High Church Tory, Todd was frequently in controversy with William Nicolson (bishop of Carlisle from 1702). Their initial animosity, which predated Nicolson's shift from Tory to Whig, was probably due to jealousy between fellow antiquaries and professional rivalry. See Michael A. Mullett, *A New History of Penrith Book III, Penrith in the Stuart Century 1603-1714* (Carlisle, 2018), 114-21, for a full analysis of the history of this rivalry. After several petty squabbles, Todd and the absentee dean, Francis Atterbury, questioned Bishop Nicolson's right of visitation, insisting that the cathedral statutes which allowed it were invalid. In 1708 the court of common pleas upheld their contention, but not before Todd had been excommunicated by Nicolson. The ecclesiastical establishment, alarmed by the limitations placed upon episcopal authority, hastened to secure a parliamentary bill to re-establish the episcopal right of visitation. After its passage the sentence of excommunication was removed.' See David Mawson, 'Todd, Hugh (c. 1657–1728), Church of England clergyman and antiquary'. *ODNB*. See also C.M.L Bouch, *Prelates and People of the Lake Counties. A History of the Diocese of Carlisle 1133-1933* (Kendal, 1948), 296-302. Todd was an accomplished antiquary; along with William Nicolson and Machell, he contributed to William Gibson's edition of Camden's *Britannia*. See, for example, 'An Account of the Division of Cumberland by William the Conquerour amongst his Followers; taken out of two ancient Latin Manuscripts in the Library of the Dean and Chapter of Carlisle; carefully Collated by the Reverend Dr Hugh Todd', in *Camden's Britannia, Newly Translated into English: with large additions and improvements by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695), 'Additions to Cumberland'.

[103] The outer sheet of Hugh Todd's letter.

[I.502]

Worthy neighbour!
I had most certainly waited on you and your Lady at your house, in my Returne; but that the weather was so very bad, that I was not able to weather the Point. I ha' done my Penance for the Neglect, or whatever it was, and hope you'l not deny me Absolution.[104] I shall be mighty carefull for the future, and Question not but to gain my Reputation, if ever my business here will allow me to pay my Respects where they are so highly due. Whenever my chain is broke, or taken off, or any way loose: you shall be sure to hear on't.
Your Inventory of Learned Goods belonging to this Country[105] is very Large; and if any of them be moveable, I should be glad to see them at this Place, when you do my Lord the favour of a Visit: but, if they're fixt to the Freehold, be assurd that I'le come to view them;[106] but when I shall be able, is not so certain to me, as that I am with the greatest sincerity
Your affectionate Obliged Friend
& Brother, H. Todd.
Rose. Feb. 23 1686.

[I.503][107]

[8b.] [Thomas Machell to Hugh Todd, 24 February 1686.]

Sir
I Receiv'd your Complement stilo novo,[108] on the 23 Instant: But your Penance should have bin public & in the place where the Crime was Committed; & must be so (by a very hard entertanement here) before you can have a full Absolution. And ergo, though my Goods were not fixed, I should take an occasion to make them so; since I finde it may prove an happy \ effectual / meanes of bringing you hither, where \ yet / you may hope for all the favour That can be expected by such a Criminal. From, sir,
Your affectionate Brother and Servant
TM
Feb. 24, 1686.

Pray Give mine & my wife's due Respects to my Good Lord & my Lady Lowether; & lett her know That her God-Daughter's well, for whom I begg her Prayers & blessing. I hope to see you all very shortly under the Rose,[109] & then perhaps may step over with you to Mr Adams,[110] to whom in the meantime present my service, when your occasions call you to Carlile.

[9.] [From Sir Daniel Fleming to Thomas Machell, 9 February 1693/94.]

[II.143]

For the Reverend, & his much honoured friend Mr Thomas Machell, Rector of Kirkbythore thereat Kirkby-Thore.

---

[104] The letter is jocular, but Todd's use of these terms corresponds to contemporaneous rumours about his 'popish' views, expressed in the same year as this correspondence in a letter from Henry Fletcher to Sir Daniel Fleming (Oxford, 12 June 1686). 'We have a report here of Mr Todd's inclining to popery in several sermons in the country, and that the bishop has rebuked him for it.' See *The Manuscripts of Sir S. H. le Fleming, Esq., of Rydal Hall, Historical Manuscripts Commission. Twelfth Report, Appendix, Part VII* (London, 1890), 200.
[105] 'County'.
[106] David Mawson's assessment of Todd's antiquarian career is relevant here: 'Hugh Todd … has never really been accorded sufficient credit for his share in promoting the past. An able antiquarian, he was an energetic administrator, who, while a prebendary of Carlisle Cathedral, became a prime mover in re-establishing the Dean and Chapter library, which had been dispersed during the aftermath of the siege of the city in 1644-5. His bishop, Thomas Smith, and the Vice-Dean, Arthur Savage, were the first and largest benefactors of this new library, but where they made generous gifts of books and money, Todd for his part also deposited his own manuscript collections and accounts relating to the cathedral and the diocese'. D.J.W. Mawson, 'Dr Hugh Todd's Account of the Diocese of Carlisle', *CW2,* 88 (1988), 207-24, at 207.
[107] Machell's reply to Todd, copied onto the reverse of Todd's letter, continues the joke.
[108] 'In the new style.'
[109] At Rose Castle.
[110] John Adams, see the correspondence between Machell and Adams, below.

[II.145]

Rydal, Feb. 9. 93/94
Sir
Having often occasion to consult Dugdale's *Baronage of England*, I hope you'l be pleased to return mine hither as soon, & as safely, as you can. I am glad to know that you, Mr Arch-deacon and Mr Todd are concerned for Westmorland, Northumberland & Cumberland in the new edition of Mr Camden's *Britannia*.[111] Not doubting but that those three counties will be very well done, I long to hear of that book being published. I have here sent you a copy of a pedigree, which I omitted to deliver unto you at your being in this country, and which is more correct than that which was more hastily taken here by Sir William Dugdale. I wish we had any thing in these parts that would invite you to cross our mountains, your company being very acceptable unto
Sir
Your most faithful servant
Dan: Fleming.

[E.] [Correspondence with John Adams, cartographer. 1686/7][112]

[E1.] [John Adams to Thomas Machell, 18 December 1686.]

[I.522][113]

To the Reverend Mr Thomas Machell
These humbly present at
Kirkbythore

Carlile 18 December 1686

Reverend Sir
I hope that my misfortune will not be taken for a discharge of your kind promise, viz. to give me the Account of the Parish of Kirkbythore in the method I desired and to transmitt it to me with one of your proposals by the 12th of January next. the Account of Kirkland I have, and Ousby, Melmerby, and indeed all the Parishes of Cumberland are undertaken by several hands, I have made noe progress att all in the Bottome of Westmorland, having yet but two Parishes viz. St Wilfred de Burgham, {whether that be not the name of the chapple}[114] and the little Parish of Clifton, and therefore if you will procure me an Account \ of / the Parishes of Dufton, Long-marton, Newbiggin or any other Parishes in the Neighbourhood, or recommend ~~h~~ \ them / as you have opportunity to the Incumbents, I shall take it for a great favour. I saw Sir William Dugdale's *Warwickshire* at your house, and I have a great mind to bestow three Weeks upon that Book, I doe not think that there is an[other] of them in Westm' or Cumb', for I have made Application to the Bishop Mr Chance[...][115] who furnished me with *Monasticon Anglicanum* but want that. I know that the carriage […][116] troublesome, and that I am a prisoner and a stranger, and consequently I [shall] not take it ill if it be denyed me, but if you will favour me with the use of it for three Weeks I will give the Messenger who brings it a couple of shillings for the carriage and I hope not to die ungra[teful] for the kindness, and it shall be safely returned whenever you command.

---

[111] *Camden's Britannia … with large additions and improvements by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695).
[112] John Adams (b. before 1670, d. 1738), was a surveyor and cartographer who worked with his brother, William. In 1677 he engraved on copper a map of England and Wales (177cm × 176cm) based on older maps but with the distance of each town from its nearest neighbours 'entered in figures in computed and measured miles'. To work in conjunction with the map, he published (1680) the *Index Villaris, or, An alphabetical table of all cities, market-towns, parishes, villages, private seats in England and Wales* (reprinted 1690 and 1700). It was compiled from sources such as hearth tax returns, navigational works, and works to aid land travellers, notably those of John Ogilby. See E. Baigent, 'Adams, John, cartographer'. *ODNB*. Machell was inspired by the *Index Villaris* when planning his History: see Machell's Preface, III.vii, V.3-11.
[113] Also numbered p.52.
[114] A margin-note in Machell's hand. All underscoring in this letter is in the same ink as Machell's margin comment, suggesting that Machell himself underlined key points.
[115] The page here has partly perished. The bishop was Thomas Smith but Adams might have been referring to Thomas Tullie (chancellor of the diocese from 1683), who later became dean of Carlisle.
[116] One word following this, has perished.

From
Your obliged humble servant
John Adams.[117]

[I.524]

[E2.] [Thomas Machell to John Adams. 8 January 1686/7.]

Jan. 8 1686/7

Sir
Yours of December the 18th I did not receive till this morning, but heard something of it by Mr Archdeacon and Mr Robinson at Edenhall on Thursday, who required if I had not received a line from you. Had it come sooner I should not have been soe slowe in answering it but might have taken the advantage of Christmas to have promoted your publick designe, though your misfortune has prevented my hopes (& I feare, will your expectations) of any farther subscription in these parts.[118] But it shall never make me unmindfull (nor in truth never did) of the promise I made to give you an account of Kirkbythore Parish: only I thought there was noe haste of it, untill your inlargement, which I long to hear of;[119] Because your Mape (as you rightly propose) can never be truely & accurately done without an actuall survey of the Countrey. And I could wish that more than ordinary paines were bestowed on Westmerland and Cumberland, both because of my love to my native soyle; & because it may be of advantage to me, & save me a labour if ever I should be prevail'd upon to muster up my scattered papers & write the Antiquities of these two Counties, which I am much Importun'd for to doe by some of good note: But must confesse, that both in regards of my owne insufficiency, & for other reasons best knowne to my selfe, I am not forward to undertake it, yet may perhaps leave something behind me to after ages which they may receive with more candour & kindnesse than the present will doe: For things of this nature, if writ without adulation & flattery (as Histories should be) are never acceptable to the present age. And it is to be feared that even your Mapes may disoblige many by inroling some in the Catalogues of Gentlemen who perhaps are none, & leaving out others who really \ are. / As for the booke you desire to borrowe, I have herewith sent it to Mr Shepherd, a friend of mine, who lives in Carlile & will bring it to you; In Lieu of which I desire the perusall of your Collections in the Barrony of Kendall, (which I suppose to be long since finished by reason of the long acquaintance which you have had in that part of the County of Westm'land.) And I hope to returne them with some advantage; I intended herewith to have sent you the Parish of Kirkbythore which I have finish'd but being much troubled with the tothach[120] & my papers removed from place to place, I have either lost or someway misplac'd it. But however, I hope to send or bring it in

[117] In a letter to Daniel Fleming, written 12 March 1686/7, Adams expressed his candid opinion of Machell, while asking for Fleming's assistance at the forthcoming Carlisle sessions. 'Pardon me . . . for this rude scribble. I thought I should have died this Week and am now better and [. . .] like to live. It is my Earnest Request that you will favour an unfortunate stranger soe farr as upon his Account, to be at Carlile the evening before the Sessions and onely to appear upon the Bench upon the opening of the Sessions to do me Justice, and I hope my Affair will be dispatcht before the honorable Bench goe to dinner. My case I will send fully, by my boy, upon the 26th instant and then write more at large than my present indisposition will permit […] PS. How much Mr Machel resents my design the inclosed will declare, which I pray when the packet is returned make it a parcel, for really if he refuses his assistance I will print it and make a diverting piece of Raillary upon it …' See Blake Tyson, 'John Adams's cartographic correspondence to Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall, 1676-1687', *Geographical Journal* 151, 1, March 1985, 37.

[118] Subscription: raising money to publish by seeking subscribers to the volume.

[119] Inlargement: release from confinement or bondage. *OED*. In 1680, John Adams had published the *Index Villaris*, designed to be used with his large map, see above. After its publication, Adam prepared to write another book of maps which demanded a general survey of the country. He collected subscriptions throughout England towards its publication, and promised that the completed work would contain illustrations of country houses and towns painted by professional artists; but he delivered nothing. He was imprisoned in Carlisle when surveying Cumberland during part of 1686-87 – almost certainly for debt – for his survey appears to have placed him in financial difficulties. Blake Tyson (see above) sees his actions as those of a 'brave idealist struggling to fulfil a project obviously beyond the resources of a private individual, a whole century before the national effort to map Britain accurately'. Undeterred, while imprisoned Adams started to work on the history of Cumberland and Westmorland, utilising the books and manuscripts of local antiquaries. His letters to Machell boast of these contacts. As seen in his letters, Machell regarded Adams with suspicion, refusing to release his manuscripts to him. Tyson's article tells some of this story, but the correspondence with Adams in Machell's Volume I, explains it further.

[120] 'Toothache'.

convenient time if in the interim you doe not visit me, which is much the desire of ~~your friend & servant~~
Your friend & servant
Thomas Machell
I cannot, till I be free from this paine, take any care, either of your concernes, or mine owne.

[I.526]

[E3.] [Thomas Machell to Mr Shepherd, concerning John Adams: 8 & 17 January 1686/7.]

[E3a.]
Jan. 8.
Mr Sh[epherd][121]
I received a Letter on Satterday last from Mr Adams who desires to borrow my Dugdal's *Warwickshire* for 3 weeke's space. And I have sent it to you, hopeing that you will deliver it to him, & take care to transmit it to me. I could be a great Assistant to him if I [had] health & leisure, & might be anyway recompenc'd for it; but otherwise have business enough \ to doe / of my own. Be sure you take special care of my Booke; for I would not spare it but to such an one as him, whose misfortune as well as inclination (being at least a lover of Antiquities), makes me have the more kindeness for him. I am in great haist.
Your affectionate friend
Tho: Machell

[E3b.]
Jan. 17: This night a friend is com to my house who will bring the Booke to you, which has already layd a week at Nell Langhorn's. And I am glad of the opportunity, because it will save Mr Adams some money.
post script. com sensu.[122]

[I.513]

[E4.] [John Adams to Thomas Machell, 24 January 1686/7.]

To the truly Reverend and much esteemed Thomas Machell
Rector of Kirkby Thore Westmorland these humbly present
Post paid 2[d] Kirkbythore.[123]

[I.514][124]

Carliol 24 January 1686/7
Reverend Sir
Upon the 20[th] instant I received yours dated the 8[th] instant, together with D[ugdale] Vol. of Warwick from Mr Shepherd, & about an ~~other~~ hour after another from my Lord the Bishop to my great surprize: but upon recollection I apprehended that the reason was this. I did believe that my letter written to you before Christmas, had miscarried, and being an unfortunate prisoner, did distrust my Interest with you to obtain that book. Therefore, to support my credit, I did write to Rose the 15[th] instant humbly requesting that his Lordship's secretary would write to you in that Affair, and it seems

[121] Richard Shepherd was licensed as Machell's curate in December 1680. A Richard Shipherd [sic] is recorded as a schoolmaster at Carlisle Free Grammar School in 1682. In 1689, a Richard Shepherd became rector of Cliburn, remaining there until his death in 1739. These men appear to be one and the same, as a 'Mr Shipherd the trustee' is mentioned in a letter written by Machell's brother, Lancelot, relating to Thomas Machell's will. It appears, then, that Richard Shepherd (Shipherd) was probably living in Carlisle when Machell needed help to deliver his book to John Adams. See Hudleston, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children, 122, 136; see also Kirkby Thore; Carlisle Free Grammar School; Cliburn. CCED.
[122] Latin abbreviation: 'with consent'.
[123] 'Rates for carrying letters: For the port of every Letter not exceeding one sheate to or from any place not exceeding fowerscore English miles distant from the place where such Letter shall be received Two pence' From 'An Act for Erecting and Establishing a Post Office' (1660): Statutes of the Realm, Vol. 5 (1628-80), Great Britain Record Commission (1819). *British History online* https://www.british-history.ac.uk/statutes-realm/vol5/pp297-30.
[124] Some parts of this letter have been underlined in different ink, probably by Machell.

his Lordship having the Book himselfe (which was more then I did know) did take the sending the same to me to be the more expeditious way. So that now having two books, I begg leave to keep yours untill I see or hear from you, I will return my Lord's and have another in Lieu thereof, which I the rather desire because in the close of your letter, you hint that you will send or bring the Account of Kirkby Thore, and I assure you, upon my Faith, that I shall esteem an intimate acquaintance with you as the greatest happiness I cann meet with in the North of England.
As to my inlargement, if the person that putt me in prison did write to the sheriff to set me free, yet I would not leave this City until the 25th of March 1688, which is near a year and quarter. Pardon me (worthy sir) that I acquaint you I have openly declared to my Acquaintance here and sent letters to severall of my correspondents, that I have undertaken (to the best of my industry and \ according to the / information I shall receive from men of candour and honesty) to publish a Treatise of the Antient and Moderne state of Cumberland as an evidence of my Vigilie in prison. I long to show you my Apparatus, which is first my collections out of *Mon. Angl.*,[125] which Volumes have perfectly reconciled me to the Antiquary learning, which before I slighted, regarding it nothing but the modern state, secondly by the collections of Mr Denton of Cardew written tempore Elizabeth, which I conceive are considerable, and, third, A Treatise of Tenant-Right, cornage tenure, Border Service, the union of the kingdoms and manner of Country keeping, & remarks upon the stat[ute] to prevent Great Theft and rapine in the Northern parts, all written by Thomas Denton of Warnell Esq., who was with me last night and promised me the full perusal thereof;[126] \ ~~with~~ / which together with the promised Assistance of Mr Archdeacon & Mr Todd,[127] will be materials to build something rough or a model at least, and if I may prevaile with your selfe to digest methodise, smooth and polise the promisses, probably I may bring all to a happy conclusion. As to change (though a prisoner) my own fortune is not soe narrow but that I shall find enough to goe through this worke, and I resolve not to putt the Gentlemen of this or your County to one farthing charge, for a substantial reason expressed in your letter, viz. I will doe it without adulation and flattery, for instance, in speaking of the family of Lowther of Lowther for the sake of a considerable estate in Burgh Barony &c. & for that he is the chief of Lowther of Whitehaven, I will reject as foolish and idle a tradition in that family that 30 males all K[nights] or B[arons] (whereas the father of Sir John now living was neither, because he died in vita patris) were in a lineal descent from father to son married to

[I.515]

soe many wives, and because he has given me the names of the wives, therefore the tradition is true, but say I very false, for either Sir John shall Acknowledge that ~~four~~ six or 7 of his Ancestors married two Wives, or that soe many younger brothers came in for want of issue by the elder, and if this be not granted I will explode his Account as frivolous, and take occasion from thence to putt this Test or Siboleth[128] upon all pedegrees from the Conquest to this day that if the number exceeds 25 descents, that pedigree is mistaken, for I never yet mett with an Authentick pedigree that did reach 24, and as I take it, the daughters of ~~an~~ \ our / King Aurange & Denmarke are the 21st descent from the Conqueror, this I rather hint & offer to your thoughts as a novelty which when I discoursed with Sir William Dugdale he could not make it sink into his head, but that the descents might be about forty, though in all the pedegrees he produced, the number fell out still \ to / between 18 and 24. Yet I doe confess that there may be about 40, nay 50, of a name that shall inherit an estate*, especially if such cases happen as in the surname of Valence where 5 brothers (which I call but one Descent) successively inherited & all died s. p., and I pray God the like instance may not be neerer home in the family of Tufton, Earl of Thanet &c.

---

[125] Dugdale, *Monasticon*.
[126] For John Denton (c.1561-1617) and his distant relative Thomas Denton (1637-1698), see M. Wane & A. Winchester, 'Denton, John (b. in or before 1561, d. 1617), antiquary'. *ODNB*. For Machell's own copy of John Denton's manuscript: 'An accompt of the most considerable estates and families in the county of Cumberland', see Machell MS.VI.146-76. For published transcriptions of John and Thomas Denton's Histories, see Angus J.L. Winchester (ed.), *John Denton's History of Cumberland*, Surtees Soc. 213, CWAAS Record Series XX (Woodbridge, 2010); Angus J.L. Winchester and Mary Wane (eds), Thomas Denton: *A Perambulation of Cumberland, 1687-8, including descriptions of Westmorland, the Isle of Man and Ireland*, Surtees Soc. 207, CWAAS Record Series XVI (Woodbridge, 2003).
[127] Archdeacon (later bishop) of Carlisle, William Nicolson, and prebendary of Carlisle, Hugh Todd. For their feud, see above.
[128] Shibboleth: The Hebrew word used by Jephthah as a test-word by which to distinguish the fleeing Ephraimites (who could not pronounce the sh) from his own men the Gileadites (Judges 12. 4-6). *OED*.

Another instance I shall give in the family of Fletcher of Hutton, that the flourishing fortune of that family ~~is owing~~ is a debentur to god's blessing upon the ~~honest~~ endeavours of Richard Fletcher of Cockermouth mercer or Chapman about the later end of the Reigne of Queen Elizabeth and beginning of K. James, his Reigne. but I will forbear to call him petty-chapman as I find him in Denton the Antiquary's book sub lituto. Villa Wythope, hodie Widhope, and without flattery I will express this in honest civil plain English. And I will not scruple to tell the world that Henry Dacre Esq. is the 6th son in descent from a natural son of the Lord Dacre. Ex pede Herculem &c.[129] And perhaps when I have finished the Treatise I may proceed in the Map.[130] I humbly ~~tak~~ thank you for all your favours and long for your Account of Kirkbythore. It is not soe Bulky but It may be sent by post, but if brought by your selfe the favour would be so much the more to

(Reverend Sir)
Your most obliged
humble servant
John Adams
{*Have ever bin of the same opinion in the main tho not critically Ped. up to that number}[131]

[I.516]

[E5.] [Thomas Machell to John Adams, 26 January 1686/7.]

Kirkbythore
Jan. 26 1686

Sir
Yours of the 24th of this Instant I did not receive till The last night, having bin from home. As for my booke, it shall be att your service, either till I come downe for a Monthly space, tho' I cannot well spare it. I am much obliged to you for the greate esteeme you are pleased to have of my acquaintance, & wish I may deserve it at your hands: but to deale plainly & ingeniously with you, it cannot be expected from me (tho' I will not discourage you) that I should be as forward in promoting This, your private designe, as I am in your publick; because it intrenches upon my owne province; and I should be blamed by many of my friends and acquaintances (especially att Oxford who claime some sort of right in my labours) If I should communicate what I knowe & have writ, concerning the Antiquities of Westmerland and Cumberland to any stranger; & he his Assistant, in fishing (as we say) before my owne net. Your apparatus is very considerable: all which (excepting Mr Dentons booke, which that worthy gentleman was pleased to proffer me, & which I knew I could have att any time) I might have showne you in my owne study: Sc. An Extract of all that relates unto these two Countyes out of Dugdal's *Monasticon*;[132] a transcript of Mr Denton's *Antiquities of the County of Cumberland*: & another essay of the same nature (Begun but not finished) in a smarter style \ as prepar'd for the Press; Another cursory & ingenious account upon the same subject in a more jocose stile/ by an unknown hand.[133] And besides all these I have many more, which I shall not scruple to mention to you. Sc. A Collection of all or most of the Coates of Armes, together with the pedigrees, of the Gentry in these parts; which I extracted in my younger years (with much paines & ~~at~~ \ no little / Cost,) out of all the bookes in the Heralds' Office; Mr Sheldon's Library; Dr Knights study; & all that the Herald painters afford \ ed / in London, & Yorke: which I designd to correct & adjust by the writeings & evidences of the surviving families. I have alsoe ready ~~by me~~, an exact account of the foundations & endowments of all, or most, free schooles in the Diocesse: the valuation & present patrones of every parsonage & vicarage in it. A booke of the Sheriffs of Westmorland & Cumberland from the days of K. Henry the second till of late years, & a platforme of Appleby (the shire towne of Westmorland) drawne by my self, with an account of its Antiquities all the inscriptions att the school-house there (excepting ones which I could not come att): all the Monuments which are in Camden,[134] & severall Altars, Coynes &c: which have been found since.

[129] 'Ex pede Herculem': Literally, 'Hercules is measured from his foot;' less literally, a guess or an assumption, or an extrapolation about the whole from the part.
[130] Machell has added a question mark in the left-hand margin at the beginning of the sentence 'and perhaps …'
[131] Machell's margin comment.
[132] Dugdale, *Monasticon*.
[133] Machell was possibly referring to Edmund Sandford's, 'A Cursory Relation of All the Antiquities and Familyes in Cumberland', a copy of which can be found in Machell's MS.VI (540-69).
[134] See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1637), 761-73.

I have alsoe reade over All or most of the writeings which did belong to the family of the Cliffords of Apelby Castle, Barrons of Westmorland & Earles of Cumberland; with some others alsoe of very ancient & worthy families (besides our owne), from which I have many remarkable passages. And not to mention what supplies are afforded out of the severall Register Bookes of Bishop Halton, \ the / Priory of Weatherhall, & the two famous Abbyes of Holm & Hepe.

[I.517]

I have alsoe perused *Doomesday Booke*, & the Red Booke, which are in the Exchequer; Inspected Rolls-Chapple & the Tower of London, which were (long since)[135] laid open to me by Sir Joseph Williamson, then Secretary of State & fellow (with me) of Queens Colledge in Oxford; who would take it unkindly if I should not make some use of that favour, but bestowe the printes of it upon another.[136]

And ~~that~~ \ least / I might have missed of any thing worth observation, in my general viewe: I tooke the paines (after all this) to examine no~~n~~ lesse than \ 62 / folio \ & Quarto MS / in the possession of Sir William Dugdale, which were collected (as I suppose by Mr Prin) out of the Tower;[137] And Thence extracted such notes, as I thought made for my purpose. To conclude, I have alsoe a greate many draughts (by my owne hand) of severall Castles, fortifications & other Antiquities which occur in these Counties; And in truth want not anything which I can thinke of, excepting one booke I have long hunted after, called *Cronicon Cumbriæ*; I doe not mean that page which we meet with in Wetherhall Register, but a MS Booke bearing that name, which Sir William Dugdale first told me of, & which (or should be) in the possession of a Northern Gentleman who has bin long time out of the kingdom. {Sir Henry Goodrick; it was old Sir Henry.}[138]

These are my materials: & if I had met with a kind reception among my relations (the Gentry of the Countrey) & but any returne (tho' never so sleight) from the Country Ministrey, to the Queries I sent there (which were design'd partly to assist Dr Plot my friend and consociate in his Natural History; partly to gather where ancient writeings, & other ancient Antiquities might be seen by me; but principally, to gaine the Topographies (or locall description) of these two sister-counties to which I might refer my collections. I have long since finished what you are beginning (& what I have made such progresse in) tho' I am not hasty to appeare in print for the reasons I gave you in my former letter; But whether you thinke it worthe your while to proceede or not, I highly applaud your ingenious humor in sleighting Fables, & rejecting scurrilliry. For men should be cautious (strangers especially) that they be not imposd on. & truth is noe worse for being attyr'd in a comly dresse. Gentlemen should be gently dealt with, & what ever seems to reflect upon them should be related with candour & modesty, which I ever propose to my selfe, as a Rule.

What you observe concerning pedigrees, you may remember I concurr'd with you in it, at the first proposall before you made your Notion knowne to me, declaring the space of thirty years a convenient distance for a descent, which (in the maine), agrees with your Test.

[I.518]

And tho' I doe not confine my beliefe in this affair to the criticall number of soe many descents from the Conquest till now, because some may marry sooner than others, which makes a great difference; yet I doe declare, that I never observed above twenty-five in any true pedigree, whose epocha begins from the Conquest. But you must expect to meet with many that are false & spuriouse; for I have read somewhere (& I thinke it was in the Heralds' Office, or Dr Knights study) that there was a mendicant, illiterate fellow, went about in these parts makeing false pedigrees: & I have found it true by experience, having had occasion to correct some of them for the Heralds themselves; who were pleased to thinke me (how truely I question) the most proper man for that undertaking, as being borne in the same Countrey, & one who had applyed my selfe in my younger yeares, to understand the Antiquities of it. And therefore the rather, because I confined my roaving fancy (not dareing to

[135] Brackets added in different ink.

[136] Sir Joseph Williamson (1633-1701), see above, VI.518.

[137] William Prynne was Keeper of Records in the Tower of London from 1660 to 1669: William Lamont, 'Prynne, William (1600-1669), pamphleteer and lawyer.' *ODNB*.

[138] The margin comment relating to Sir Henry Goodricke is written in pencil in a hand other than Machell's. It probably refers to Sir Henry Goodricke of Ribston Hall in North Yorks, MP for Boroughbridge from 1673 until his death in 1705, apart from a period spent as British Envoy Extraordinary to Spain (1679-1683). J. Davies, 'Goodricke, Sir Henry, second baronet (1642–1705), diplomat and politician'. *ODNB*.

lau[n]ch out into the ocean as you have done) within the Brëas of Westmerland & Cumberland,[139] to the former of which I was endeared by the fathers side; to the latter by the mothers; & to both by the ancient estate & patrymoney of my progenitors {Sc. The Lordship of Crakenthorp in Westmerland beyond[d] any record. And Lazenby & Kirkoswald in Cumberland, ~~from~~ where wee have yet Tenaments from about the Reigne of King Edward 2.}
You see Sir how free I am with you; & I hope you will not take it ill (for the reasons alledged) to be denyed my helpe & assistance in your new designe; which is in a manner Actum agere;[140] but if I can serve you in the other (which is worke enough for any one man to complete in one age) you may command, Sir,
Your very affectionate friend and servant
Thomas Machell[141]

I do intend, shortly, to wait on the Bishop, and then (if I can) will pay you a visit. & because you cannot come to Kirkbythore, will make Kirkbythore come down to you. In the mean time I must reminde you of my former request, about you[r] Collections in the Barony of Kendall, concerneing which you gave me no Answer.

Qu[aere] in the Registry at Carlile; whether it be the church or chapel at Browham, which is dedicated St Wilfridd.[142]

[I.512]

[E6.] [John Adams to Thomas Machell, 7 February 1686/7.]

Carliol. 7 Feb. 1686
Reverend Sir
I send you this after the next post after the receipt of yours of the 26th instant and humbly thank you for your ingenious freedome in plainly declaring what I am to trust to, if I proceed in the description of Cumberland in the way of an Antiquary: and all that I shall at present say upon that Account, is, that then I must bewaile my own misfortune, in wanting the help of so able an hand, and must be content to offer some slight touches of the first century after the Conquest, whereas if I might have had your Aid, the body of my discourse would probably have growne to perfect simmetry, in full proportion and Garniture, whereas now, being left forlorne, I much doubt I shall fright the world with my spectrum, and I think myselfe obliged to Acquaint England that the Chasme of five hundred years in my work will be supplied by an excellent pen and, probably, be hereafter sent for a Token to their children's children.
Worthy, Sir you put me in hopes of seeing you in Carlile, and if then I doe not satisfye you that there is a necessity upon me to appear in print (unless I will absolutely give over all thoughts of my survey) and that the Territory where providence has (against my will) placed me is as proper a subject for my discourse as any other, I will be ready to desist, and bestow my Industry elsewhere. The modern Account, if I mistake not, you think falls within my proposals, and therefore I desire that you will according to your kind promise be pleased to bring or send me the Account of Kirkby Thore, ~~as~~ as alsoe your promised paper of Queries in lieu of my proposals. As to your Volume of Warwick, It is at your service againe with my thanks, for I have leave to keep by me my Lord's Book, and It shall be delivered acording the first order therein sent to
Reverend Sir
Your most obliged and faithful humble servant
John Adams 2/87

[139] 'Brea' as in 'brae': a steep, a slope, a hillside; in the north a 'hill' is always a mount with a summit, and with slopes or 'braes' [breas] on all sides of it. *OED*.
[140] 'Actum agere': to have all one's trouble for nothing.
[141] Here the handwriting changed, as if Machell had signed the letter and added a postscript.
[142] This sentence is placed below the postscript, but, unlike the letter, has been written in Machell's usual hand.

{Four days since I received Sir Daniel Fleming's remarks upon the Barony of Kendal and, indeed, all Westmorland but cannot part with the manuscript out \ of / my custody unless I have his directions therein.}[143]

[F. Personal Notes, reused by Machell as note-paper for his research]

[III.51]

[F1.] [London visit, 1689.]

London, September 9th '89.
Yesterday orderd that Dr Bury be thanked for his sermon and desierd to print it.[144]
The Ingrost Bill[145] intituled an Stat[ute] declareing the rights of the Subs […][146] & settling the succession of the Crown read thrice & past the House.[147]

[II.341B]

[F2.] [Part of a torn letter relating to a Court Case, 1692.]

Administrations to take that they appear at Appleby the 14th of June hopeing you will grant the desine of Sir your assured servant William Smith.[148]

Appelbye the 26th of May (92)

Sir our Court day is Tho[rsday] 15th of June
I heard noe thing of your Corant Nomine […][149]

[I.509B][150]

[F3.] [A haberdashery shopping list, undated.]

8 yrds ½ qtr black serge[151]	2s 4d
½ yrd Drught[152]	9½
2 yrds dimitte[153]	12d
6 yrds firritt[154]	2s

[143] Fleming was a supporter of Adam, subscribing to his published work: see Tyson, 'John Adams's cartographic correspondence to Sir Daniel Fleming', 21-39, particularly at 37; see also Sowerby and McCormack, *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming*, 180-81, 193-94.
[144] Possibly Dr Arthur Bury (1623/4-1713) of Exeter College, Oxford. A Royalist, in 1648 Bury was deprived of his fellowship, but after the Restoration Charles II ensured that he become rector of the college. Machell would have admired Bury's loyalty to the Crown but a year after delivering the sermon that apparently pleased Machell so much, Bury was accused of writing anti-trinitarian literature and deprived of his office. As Machell was such a conservative figure, this aspect of Bury's theological position would clearly have displeased him. Hence, the attribution of Arthur Bury is tentative. See J. Benedict, 'Bury, Arthur (1623/4-1713), college head and writer on theology'. *ODNB*.
[145] Engrossed or ingrossed: written out large, written in a legal hand; expressed or incorporated in a legal document. *OED*.
[146] One word is illegible here.
[147] The Bill of Rights 1688: 'an Act declareing the Rights and Liberties of the Subject and Setleing the Succession of the Crowne': https://www.legislation.gov.uk/aep/WillandMarSess2/1/2/introduction.
[148] William Smith was *cler. Pocciatem*, the town clerk of Appleby. He was mayor in 1667 and 1673 and a supporter of the Tufton candidate in the 1679 election, see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, III.55, I.209, I.211. See also https://applebytown.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/MAYORS-OF-APPLEBY-PDF.pdf.
[149] 'Current nominee'. the next words are obliterated by a hole in the paper but begin, 'Coming up your […]?
[150] Reverse of 509A: a haberdashery list.
[151] A woollen fabric. Before the 16th century it was mentioned chiefly as material for hangings, bed-covers etc.; afterwards it was said to be worn by men and women of the poorer classes, perhaps rather on account of its durability than of its price, which seems not to have been extremely low. *OED*.
[152] 'Drugget': a heavy cloth of wool, or of a mixture of wool and silk or wool and linen, used chiefly for clothing. *OED*.
[153] 'Dimitte' (dimity): a stout cotton fabric woven with raised stripes or fancy figures; usually used undyed for beds and bedroom hangings, and sometimes for garments. *OED*.
[154] 'Ferret': a stout tape most commonly made of cotton, but also of silk; then known as Italian ferret; also ferret ribbon. *OED*.

white Inkle[155]	2[d]
browne Inkle	2[d]
3 yrds blacke Riben	2
5 yrds black gallowne[156]	2s [?]
1 centrum pines 7	
1 centrum pines 6[157]	
1 qtr ½ silke 6, white filliting[158]	3[d]
1 f. thred	
6 hookes	1½
2 f. browne thred,	
2 f. blacke thred,	
4 Glover thred […][159]	
Coate prices ~~2~~ \ 1 /	
3 dozen Curtine Ringe,	3
1 yrd Linn[en]	12
Lac'es	1

[I.3]

[F4.] [An Oxford [?] Ribbon Seller, undated]

~~Smyth a ribben seller in Inges~~ […] ~~Entery Magdalen parish~~[160]

[I.553B]

[F5.] [Invoice, Spring 1686.]

That his mother had 8? given by him – Ergo: a mort. If he was at Cost with housekeeping; or

Became part in it; q. of Sand[erson]	0: 3: 4.
My foe[161] for his brothers will	
so due upon his mothers account	0: 2: 0.
My foe for her will	0: 2: 0.
My foe for her Apprisements &c.[162]	0: 2: 0.
Inventory due for her mortuary	0: 3: 4.[163]

[F6.] [Invoice, March 14 1686/7.]

Thom. Bushby clames since his time 12 month malt sold & B	5: 6.
Oates drying L.[164] Bushels at 1	0: 4: 2.
Malt[165] at twice xxiv \ at 4[d] /	0: 8: 0.
Big Malt xi & ½ }	
& — vii ½ } xix at 4[d]	0: 6: 4.
Mor B \ Feb. 86 / xiv at 4	0: 4: 8.

[155] 'Inkle': a kind of linen tape, used for various purposes. *OED*.
[156] 'Galloon': a kind of narrow, close-woven ribbon or braid of gold, silver, or silk thread, used for trimming articles of clothing; a trimming of this material. *OED*.
[157] 'Centrum': 'the centre', from which comes the word 'concentration'; thus, one could loosely give the meaning as, 'a packet of pins size 7 and a packet of pins, size 6', see William W. Smith, *A Complete Etymology of the English Language* (New York and Chicago, 1873), 307.
[158] 'Filleting': a woven material for binding; tape; a band or bandage. *OED*.
[159] The last part of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[160] Anthony Wood's *Antient and Present State of the City of Oxford* refers to 'Magdalen Parish' and to Inge's or Igge's Hall. Brasenose College's full name is 'The King's Hall and College of Brasenose in Oxford (see https://www.bnc.ox.ac.uk/about-brasenose/history/archives/history). Anthony Wood also refers to Oxford's lanes and passages (often between the colleges) as 'entries', Anthony Wood and J. Peshall, *The Antient and Present State of the City of Oxford* (Later Edition, London, 1773), 51-52.
[161] Part of this word has perished.
[162] Apprisement: the action of setting a value upon; appraisement. *OED*.
[163] The rest of this invoice has perished at the page foot.
[164] Unclear symbol.
[165] An unclear word appears before 'malt'.

Wheat 2 pecks at 2s	0: 3: 8
~~B Malt a Bushel~~	~~0: 5: 6.~~
& 2 more Borrowed	
Eggs 1s	0: 2: 0.
	1:14: 4

[I.767A] [166]

[F7.] [Candle Requirements. Undated]

T.M.
E Lib V.[167] Jo. Middleton
Tui Nov. 3.
Chandles bespoke of him.
Nov. 7. Ric[eive]d from him upon the Bargain aforesaid Lib VI of Candles. Qu. how much tallow delivered to Nell Langhorne.

[I.324A]

[F8.] [Receipt, 1678.]

Marton 1678[168]
April 20th
Received of Robert Appleton the sum of ten pounds in full for halfe a year's augmentation due & ended.
Lady Day last I say received by me Henry Allain, vicar of the same: £10.

[I.442B]

[F9.] [Machell's Expenses at York, 1679/80.][169]

{Enter} A note of expences at York sent to me Feb. 6th – 1679-80.

Sum tot. (Beside my Letters)	2-19-01
more To Council	0-10-00
more given	0-01-00
more spent	0-03-06

[V.18B]

[F10.] [Fragment of a letter (from an anonymous correspondent) to Thomas Machell: written on the reverse of V.18A]

But you and I shall talke more of it when I see you here, which is much the desire of [Blank]
My brother is bringing up his eldest for to study the law some time this summer. I wish that could help to a rich heiress, he being a very pretty youth and the chiefe of their family.

[III.90A]

[F11.] [Address Page]

For John Jones at the Signe of the Angell in Petty France West, London.

[166] The reverse of this page is paginated VI.767B. It contains one part of a household shopping list (not in Machell's hand) with prices. For example, 'rasons 5d; currants 5d… Brandy 2-4 was 3 – 2s 7d.' Unfortunately, only the right-hand half of the information has been retained, as the page had been cut to perform other uses. Consequently, it has not been placed in the body text.
[167] 'Libra', a Latin word for pound, both weight and money; the weight measure was usually shortened to 'lb'.
[168] MS: '1768', but as the text is in Machell's hand, the numbers have presumably been transferred.
[169] See also MS.V.312A, 'Bills of expences of Doctor Henry Machell, his owne hand or his mans as I suppose.'

[I.176B]

[F12.] [Evidence of multiple use.][170]



Figure 3.2.4. Evidence of multiple use. I.176B.

Remember Hodgsons Letter.[171]
John Dalston Booke.

[II.36B]

[F.13] Paper scrap, 18cm by 14cm: the reverse of a sealed letter. Comparisons made between two seals, one of them in Kendal church, are written on the reverse.

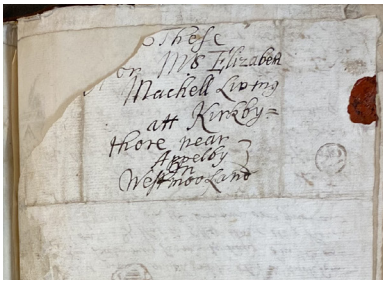


Figure 3.2.5. Letter addressed to Mrs Elizabeth Machell. II.36B.

'These for Mrs Elizabeth Machell living att Kirkby-thore near Appelby In Westmooland'.[172]

[I.174A]

[F.13.] [Personal and antiquarian memoranda, together on the same page]

Burton's Itinerarium. Blatum Burgu[m] \ p. 114. / is taken by Josias Simler for Abalaba, a station in Cumberland, of which see more out of the Notitia of the Western Empire: Mr Pattison at the Read Hart in Fetter Lane.
Mr John Hixon in St Anns Lane near Westminster has an organ cost 60li and offers to sell it to Skipton for 30li. See it for his servant E. Gudgeon.[173]
Write to my mother about the boy-riket syrrup. Sell Corne.
! Quaere de serv[itio] forinseco. Serv[icium] seculare. Lib[eratio] ab omni serv[icio] secul[ari].[174]

[170] The main image is one of Machell's maps, but who drew the fishing net is a mystery. On the reverse (MS.I.176A) is a map of Appleby with the name 'John Machell' written near the margin. It is not Machell's hand and appears to be an immature signature.
[171] In Machell's hand.
[172] Written as seen.
[173] For Machell's part in the purchase and installation of an organ at St Lawrence, Appleby, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.538, I.548.
[174] 'Ask about foreign service'. 'Ask about secular service'. 'Ask about freedom from all secular service'.

Quid in Blatum-Burgum nomen dant – loco in Apeby vulgo vocato Battleburgh. Per metastasin Literarum T.M. Ibi enim est vetus A[pleby]?[175]

[I.174B]

Caryer: White House, 27 April.

[175] Here, Machell wants to know about the origin of the name Battelburgh and whether it is actually the name of old Appleby. Machell has used the term 'metastasis' in place of the more commonly used 'metathesis', to comment on the transposition of letters in words. He seems to be thinking particularly of the T in Blat / Battl and the M in Burgum, which has not actually been transposed but simply changed. [Is it a coincidence that T.M. are his own initials?]

Part 3. Further Collections

[Chapter 3]

Roman Antiquities

[VI.214]



Figure 3.3.1. Roman Finds. VI.21.

[A1. 1684][1]

[Thomas Machell's research findings presented in a letter to Sir William Dugdale]
[Published in *Philosophical Transactions*, 14 April 1684]

[VI.200]

Here put in the let[ter] to Sir William Dugdall.[2]

[*Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158 (20 April 1684), 555-58.][3]

A Letter from Mr. Thomas Machel of Kirkbythore in Westmorland to Sr. W. D. March 25, 1684. concerning some Antiquities found there.

Your love to Antiquity, and my Obligations to you are such that I cannot omit to give you an Account of a strange Well, discovered here about a week since by the foot of an Horse which stumbled upon it; and therefore may be called the 'Fountain Hypocrene.' Tis in the Street of Kirkbythore by the Bridge-end, on the North side of the River Trout-Beck, the Antient Boundary twixt the Lordship of Crackanthorp (my Brothers Estate) and this of Kirkbythore, and is about ten yards distant from it, in the common Road; and as many yards distant from the Great Roman Causey which leads to Carlile, and goes betwixt it and a place called the Burwens, being part of the Ruines of Whelp-Castle, on the East side of it: And 'tis very strange that a Well should be digged so near to the River, unless perhaps the Castle-walls have gone betwixt them and the way run through it; as at Maiden-Castle on the top of Stanemore.

It hath been covered with a Plank of wood about nine inches thick, in the fashion of a Potlid: but decayed and macerated to the colour and consistance of a Peat, or Turf; insomuch that I could hardly conjecture what wood it was made of but I suppose Oake. And above this was gravel and pavement about a yard thick, which (being tendered by the late great Frost and swelling of the Spring): easily gave way to the Horses foot.

Instead of wall were two large wooden vessels, one upon another, like Hogsheads or Wine-pipes with Bung-holes in them, about three inches Diameter: and the plowings for the heads were fair to be seen. They were made of Firr (whencesoever they came), above an inch thick each of them in depth, by a Perpendicular, 6 foot at the least at the heads, in circumference no less then 8 foot, being in Diameter 2 foot and 8 inches; and in the middle 10 foot and 4 inches, being in Diameter no less then 3 foot 5 inches and ⅓. The wood was found but withal very spongy by reason of the water. At the bottom about 5 yards deep, were 4 Planks of wood laid quadrangular wise, supported with a stone at every Corner, to bear up the Fabric and let in Water through the gravel and sand, which lay loose in the bottom about a yard deeper, as was tried by a Spit, and these also found (though the Cover was rotten) because not so much exposed to the Air.

The men that scearched it, having my permission (for it lies on my side of the high way) flattered themselves with great hopes of some Treasure when they saw the Hogshead set on end: and their expectation was therefore the stronger because they could not possibly imagine that a Well should be placed in an open Street in a publick high way and so near to the River, but they only found Fabritian

[1] In this chapter, Machell's research results are presented in approximate date order.
[2] A pencilled note of instruction which was not followed at the time, but see Machell's draft letter at A2, below (VI.280). His actual letter was printed in *Philosophical Transactions 14*, 158, 555-58, in 1684. The version presented here is a downloaded transcription of the letter with accompanying illustrations as they appeared in the journal.
[3] https://royalsocietypublishing.org.

Plate:[4] old earthen-Vessels, with pieces of Urne, one piece of a drinking glass and several Sandals, which may serve to bespeak the Antiquity of it, for sure 'tis long since any Sandals were worn in this Country.

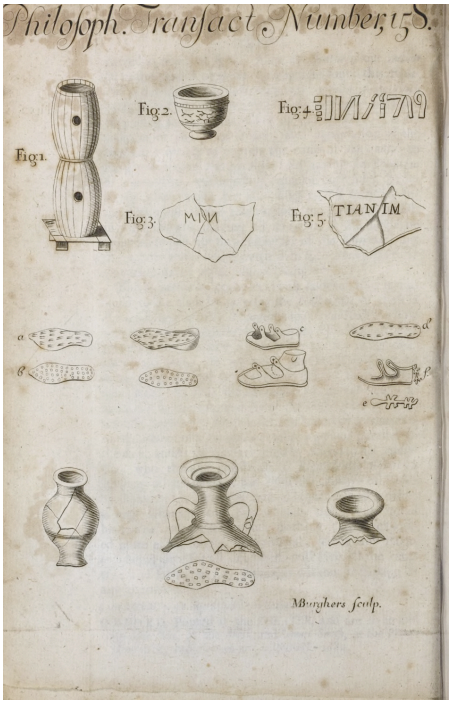


Figure 3.3.2. Illustration from Thomas Machell's letter to William Dugdale, March 25 1684, 'which was published to my unknowledge & printed at Oxford, amongst your Philosophic Transactions, *Apr. 20 at p.555.'*

The earthen-Vessel were of very fine Metal (if I may so call it) of a Brick like colour, and in several Forms: But the most (and most remarkable) were, like a Bason or Posset-Cup, the Bowl, semiglobular; the foot, a Ring: Some were in Diameter about 8 inches, and in depth on the inside, more then 3½, some more, some less, as appeared by the Fragments which came to my hand. They were (for the most part) very finely imbossed, but three more especially, viz. 1. One with a Vine branch, having a Figure in every turning, and in the first place a naked Man standing alone upon his left foot, the other leg cross, and holding his left hand down towards his back, his right towards his belly, with a branch of Lawrel of 3 sprigs in it, one of which turns up to his face-wards over the crooke or bending of his Arm; and at his feet is a Branch of a Blossom or Flower. In the next is a Vine-leaf, 2 Blossoms at the bottom; and at the top 2 Peacocks regardant. In the next is Victory (as 1 take it), viz. an Angel or Genius holding in its right hand (the Arm stretched out, and the face looking towards the Man) a Garland of Lawrel; in the left, a Sprig of the same; and two sprigs likewise are at the foot with Flowers or Blossoms, and one Flower in the middle betwixt the Garland and one of those sprigs. In the next is a Vine- leaf the same as before; in the next is Victory, and so by turns, till it ends with a Vine-leaf next the Man. And upon it are also some Goth-like Characters of the lesser

[4] 'Fabritian'. Gaius Fabricius Luscinus (Fabritius) the Roman censor of 275 B.C., was a model of the old Roman virtues of austerity and incorruptibility. Despite his public eminence, he chose to live in simplicity and poverty. As censor he sensationally excluded a patrician ex-consul from the senate for possessing 10 Roman pounds (c.3.27 kg.) of silver tableware. Dante took up the theme: 'O good Fabricius, you who chose to live with virtue in your poverty, rather than live in luxury with vice.' (*Canto XX* 24-27). Fabrician plate, therefore, would be plain earthenware, rather than silver etc. See *Oxford Classical Dictionary* Online.

sort,[5] but dim and obscure. Another of these Pots is adorned with Circles and Semicircles; in one of these Circles is the Figure of a Man sitting on a Plinth or square stone; in all the rest are fluttering Genii. In some of the Semicircles are Lions and Goats (or some such like Creatures) here one, there another; all single and current; and near the bottom are Stags in Course and Gray- hounds pursuing, with an Inscription (in a Goth like Character of the greater sort), which see Fig. 4. This may be Paulini.[6] An Inscription with the like Characters is to be seen at Burrowbrigg and publisht by Dr. Lister.[7] And they have been careful in preserving these; for this and some other, having been broke, are crammed (or rather soldered) with lead.

The third sort is yet far more beautiful then any of the rest, being adorned with Gray-hounds very well moulded, and in full pursuite of Stags and Hinds and the Wild Boar; upon which I discovered the same Inscription as in the other. And tho I am not so vain as to say this relates to our Coats of Arms, yet having so near an Affinity with it, both in Creast and Charge (a. the Stags head, b. 3 Gray hounds current.[8] c. Whelp Castle being found at the place which we came from (as is said and believed) I cannot but take some notice of it; and have lent you a piece to look upon, which will (without doubt) give you more satisfaction both for the matter and colour of it, then any Description in writing can do. But I desire you to return it again.

There were several other broken Inscriptions; and one above the rest upon the bottom of a plane Dish or Platter (on the inside of it) writ in this manner, Fig. 5. But whether it stands for Vespatian imperator or Domitianus, or neither of them, I cannot tell.[9]

As to the Glass, there was but a very small fragment of it, 1 can scarce guess the Figure, but I think it a flute Glass made like a Tunnel or Spire inversed. But this is remarkable, that it hath been as thick as a Barly Corn.

The Urns were of a leaden colour inclining to black; one had been large, 2 inches thick in the side of the Pot, but how big I know not, for there was a sherd only brought to me like half of a Shield; I have now the top also, being in Diameter from outside to outside 7 inches, of which the Roll is 2 inches and the Mouth 3 inches. The Neck yet streighter, and only thick there, one third of an inch. The Figure of which you have. And many such are found at this Town, some of which have Ears or Handles as thick as my Arm-wrist, and their Heads and Mouths much of this bigness, but thicker and stronger, such as that Fig. 6. into which I could not thrust in my hand. But the other was almost intire and whole, tho a very small one in depth or height 8½ inches, the Diameter of it 6½ inches, which is in Circumference 19½ wide; in the Mouth almost 3½; in the Neck somewhat more then 2½ by the Diameter: the bottom well nigh as big as the top, excepting the Ring; and the Body in thickness the fifth part of an inch: but thicker somewhat at the top and the bottom.

But Sandals were most admired by me, because I never saw any before. There were some for Men, some for Women, and some for Children; all shap'd by their feet, spreading more to the outside then to the inside: and some were very large and some very crooked as this in the Cut. The leather was Fresh, of which they were made, but very tender when it came to be spread upon a Last. Each consisted of three principal parts; an upper leather (or rathe[r] heel piece with 2 Tabs on each side) an inner Soal, long 11½ inches, broad 3¾[a]; of 3 or 4 Soals hitched together with leathern thongs, and an outer Soal[b] of 2, stuck full of Nails with little round heads (so decayed and rotten that I could scarce

[5] 'Goth-like': gothic. In 17th-century writing and printing, the term 'gothic' was used to mean written characters resembling black letter, and, later, to distinguish them from roman and italic characters. *OED*.
[6] 'Dr Lister observed that one inscription in the margin might be Paulini, probably the potter's name, being the same which he had found on other pots', see VI.268, below.
[7] Martin Lister (bap.1639, d.1712), physician, naturalist, Royal Society member: J. Woodley, 'Lister, Martin'. *ODNB*.
[8] 'Current': courant; running.
[9] Roman emperors: Vespasian (ruled 69-79) and his second son Domitian (ruled 81-96). https://www.britannica.com/biography/Vespasian. https://www.britannica.com/biography/Domitian.

discern them to be Iron) plated on the inside. And to the upper leather (3 fold in the heel piece[c]) is fixed betwixt them and sowed with leather, or rather tacked, which the Iron Nails do help to defend. Yet I think some Womens (of the better sort) had no Nails at all.[d] And of these there is one well worth the observation, of Spanish-like leather and curious workmanship, being exactly stitch'd down round about the fore piece long 2⅓ inches with a pretty Label[f] of the same piece hanging from it, for fashion sake surely; since 'tis too slender to be of any use. As small in the string as the 1 5[t] part of an inch. The Tongue at the end broad half an inch, long one inch, betwixt the two flourishes, which is the length of the small string, 8 parts in 10 of an inch, the two flourishes take up the rest.[d] The Figure of which you may see.[e]

When I first discovered them, I thought peradventure, that the people here in former times might have worn such Shoes as they do in Ireland and the High lands of Scotland, which they call Broagues: and that these might be such; but having the opportunity of discoursing an Highlander that travelled by, while we were digging: and another Gentleman the very next day, who had travelled those Countryes; I was fully satisfied that they were not Broagues; for those (they say) have but one single Soal, and these have six, And so I leave them and the whole matter to your Consideration.

[A2. 1684]

[Thomas Machell's Draft letter to William Dugdale, with notes]

[VI.280][10]

To Sir William Dugdall

Kirkbythore in Westmorland
March 25, 1684.

Sir

Your love to antiquity & my obligations to you are such that I cannot omit to give you an account of a strange well, discovered here about a week since by the foote of an horse, which stumbled upon it & therefore may be called the Fountaine Hypocrene.

'Tis in the street of Kirkbythore by the Bridge-End on the northside of the river Trout-Beck, the ancient boundary 'twixt the Lordship of Crakanthorp (my brother's estate) & this of Kirkbythore, & is about 10 yards distant from it {Cf. It hapned when the water being high, otherwise 20.}in the ~~highway~~ common roade, & as many yards distant from the Great Romane Casway, which leades to Carlile & goes betwixt it & a place calld the Burwens, being part of the ruines of Whelop Castle, on the east side of it. And tis wond[er]ful strange that a well should be digged so near to the river! Unless perhaps the castle walls have gon betwixt them & the way runn through it, as at Maiden Castle on the top of Stanemore.

It hath bin covered with a plank of wood above nine inches thick, in the fashion of a pot-lid, but decay'd & macerated to the colour & consistence of a peat or turfe, insomuch that I could hardly conjecture what wood it was made of, but I suppose oake. And above this was gravel & pavement, about a yard thick, which (being tendered by the late great frost & swelling of the spring) ~~easily~~ gave easy way to the horses foot.[11]

Instead of walls, were 2 large wooden-vessells, {as at f.1.} one upon another, like hogsheads or wine pipe[s], with bung holes in them about 3inch diameter, & the plowings for the heads were fair to be seen. They were made of firr, whencesoever they came above an inch thick, each of them in depth, by a perpendicular, 6 foote at the least; at the heade in circumference no less than 8 foote, being in diameter 2 foote & 8 inches; and in the midle, 10 foote & 4 inches ~~in the circumference~~, being in diameter no lesse than 3 foote 5 inch & ⅓. The wood was sound, but withal very spongie, by reason of \ lying so long in / thee water. Att the bottom (about 5 yards deep) were 4 plankes of wood laid quadrangular wise, supported with stone at every corner, to bear-up the fabric and to let in water through the gravel & sand, which lay loose in the bottom, about a yard deeper, as was tryed by a spect. And these allso sound (though the cover was rotten because not exposed so much to the aire.)

[10] Also numbered p.79.
[11] Margin comment here: {easi, easy}.

The men that search'd it (having my permission, for it lyes on my side of the \ high /way), flattered themselves with great hopes of som treasure, when they sawe the appearance of an hogshead set on end. And

[VI.279]

their expectation was therefore the stronger because they could not possibly imagine that a well should be placed in an open street in a public hig-way, & so near to the river. But they only found Fabritian-Plate: old earthen-vessells with pieces of urnes \ and pieces of a drinkeing glass. / & sev\er/all sandalls, which \ may / serve to bespeak \ discover / the antiquity \ of it / for sure tis long since any sandalls were worn in this country.

[VI.278]

[2.] But the sandalls were most admired by me because I never ~~saw~~ \ see / any before. There were som for men, som for women & som for children, all shap'd by their feet, spreading more to the outside than \ ~~to the~~ / ~~side~~ inn \ side: & / som were very large & som very crooked \ as this in the margent. / The leather was fresh of which they were made, but very tender when it came to be spread upon a last. Each consisted of 3 principle partes: an upper leather (or rather a heale piece) with 2 tabbs on each side; an inner soale of 3 or 4.

[VI.277][12]

{a.} An inner soale of 3 or fower soales stiched together with leathern thongs, &
{b.} An outer soale \ 1 of 2 / Q. of 2 folds of l[eather] stuck full of nales \ b. / with little round heads (so decayed & rotten that I could scarce descerne them to be iron) plated on the inside.
{c.} & so the upper leather \ 3 fold in the heal piece c. / is found betwixt them & sowed with leather, or rather tatched,[13] which the iron nales do help to defend.
{d.} Yet I thinke som womens (of the better sort) had no nales att all. \ d. / And of these there is one well worth observation, of Spanish-like leather & curiouse workmanship, being neatly stich'd down, round about the fore peace ~~& have formerly carved about the […]~~ with a pretty label \ of the same piece hanging down […][14] / for fashion sake surely, since it is too slender \ g. / to put on the shooe, or for any other considerable ~~be of any~~ use, the figure of which you may see in the marg[ent] \ e. / When I first discovered them, I thought peradventure that the people here in former times might have worn such schooes, as they doe in Ireland and the Highlands \ of Scotland, / which they call Broagues, & that these might be such; but having the opportunity of discou\r/seing an Highlander that travaled \ was pasing / by while wee were a digging; & another gentleman the very next day who had travaild those countreys, I was fully satisfied that they were not Broagues; for those (they say) have but one single soale, & these have six. And so I lieve them and the whole matter to your consideration*/ desireing you to returne this letter with your thoughts concerneing them; for I had not time to write it ~~further~~ fair over because the carryers are a going to Kendall, where my friend lives, by whom I must send it; and because he was coming up to London & was resolved to call for the writeings which I left long since with Mr Kings. I would not let let such an occurance pass without your notice, and so writ it in haist, which I hope will excuse the unhansomness of it, and all other faileings. M.
Sir, Your most faithfull and affectionate servant
Thomas Machell
Amphora non meruit tam pretiosa mori.[15]

[Machell's Notes: VI.277]

*{Thus far was printed to my unknowledge and without my permition in the *Oxford Philosophical Transactions*, April 20 1684, p.555, in 4^0.}

[12] Also numbered p.78. This and the next leaf were placed in the volume upside down.
[13] 'Tache' or 'tatch': to fasten, attach, fix, secure. *OED*.
[14] The 6cm of scored-through text following, has been omitted from this edition.
[15] 'convivae meruere tui fortasse perire: amphora non meruit tam pretiosa mori.' Martial *Epigrams I* (18), translated as, 'guests deserved to perish, but so costly a jar did not deserve to die'. See D.R. Shackleton Bailey (ed.) *Martial. Epigrams, Volume I: Spectacles, Books 1-5*, *Loeb Classical Library 94* (Cambridge, Mass.,1993.)

[VI.278

{3.} The third sort is yet far more bea\u/tifull than any of the rest, ~~being~~ adorned with greyhounds, very well moulded & in full pursuit of stags ~~& hinds~~ & the wilde boare ~~likewise~~ upon which I discovered the same inscription, as in the other.
{a. The stag's head; b. 3 grey hounds currant (Argent in a field Sable) c. Whelp Castle}
And though I am not so vaine as to say that this relates to our \ f[amily] / Coate of Armes, yet having so near an affinity with \ it / both in crest & charge, & being fou[n]d at the place which we <u>came from</u> (as is said and believed), I cannot but take some notice of it, and have sent you a piece to looke upon, which will (without doubt) give you more satisfaction, both for the matter & colour of it, than any description in writeing can do. But I desire you to returne it agane.
{And they have bin careful in preserveing these vessels} there; for this and som other having bin broake, are cramed (or rather solder'd) with lead.}

{<u>More remarqebl than al the rest</u>}
There were severall other broken Inscriptions, & one above \ all / the rest upon the very bottom of \ a / plane dish or plater (on the inside of it) writ in this manner: {TIAN. IM.} But whether it stands for Vespasian Imperator or Domitianus \ per incuriam ogrificis[16] / or neither of them, I cannot tell.

{<u>Glass</u>}
As to the glass, there was but a very small fragment of it. I can scarce guess the figures \ ther of / but I thinke \ it / a flute \ -glass made like a turrell[17] / or spire inversed. But this is remarkeable, that it hath bin as thick as a bar'ly-corne.

{<u>IV. Urnes</u>}
The urnes were of a leaden-colour inclineing to black.
One had bin large: 2 inches thick in the side of the pot, but how bigg I know not, for a sherd onely was brought to my view – rough – and to me like halfe of a shield. But afterwards I got the top of it, which was about 7 inch in diameter on the out side the rims, the roll 2 inches thick, and the mouth about 3 inches over: the figure of which you have at this mark: x.
And many suchlike are found hereabouts, som of which have ears or handles as thick an arm wrest, and there heads & mouthes much of this bigness but thicker & stronger, such as that which is marked, into the mouth or neck \ which / I could not \ perforce / thrust my hand.}But the other was almost entire ~~& whole~~, though a very small one; in depth or height 8 inch & ½, the diameter of it 6 inch ½ which is in circumference 19½; wide in the mouth almost 3 & ½; in the neck somewhat more than 2 & ½ by the diameter. The bottom might well [be] nigh as big as the top, excepting the ring. And the body of one sid the shel of it twas \ in thickness / the fifth part of an inch, yet thicker somewhat at the top than the bottom.

[VI.279][18]

{2. <u>The earthen vessels discribed</u>}
The earthen vessels were (& most remarkable) were like of very fine mettall (if I may call it) of a brick-like colour, & in severall forms; but the most (& most remarkable) were like \ to a baron or a / posset-cup, the bowle semi-globular, the foote a ring. \ Some others were / in diameter about 8 inches & in depth on the inside more than 3 & ½, \ som more, som less, / as appeared by the fragments which came to my hand. They were (for the most part) \ very / finely inscribed, but 3 more especially:

{2} Sc. one with a vine-branch, having a figure in every turning; & in the 1[t] place a naked man standing alone upon his left \ foote, / the other leg cross, and holding his left hand down towards his back, his right towards his bellye with a bra[n]ch of lawrell of 3 spriggs in it \ one of / which turns up towards his facewards over the crooke or bending of his arme. & at his feet is a branch of lawrell & a blossom or flower.

[16] 'Through the carelessness of the letter-writer.'
[17] 'Turrell': a cooper's auger (hand tool used for boring holes in wood). *OED*.
[18] A piece of paper pasted onto this page contains the note, 'The Brittans were subdued by the Romanes under his conduct: see Speed, 170.' John Speed's *Historie*, Ch.48, 170, discusses Julian the Apostate, emperor 361-63.

In the next is a vine leaf, 2 blossoms at the bottom, & at the top, 2 peacocks regardant. In the next is Victory (as I take it).[19] Sc. an angel or genius holding in its right hand (the arme stretched out \ & the face looking / towards the man) a garland of lawrell; & in the left, a sprig of the same; & 2 sprigs likewise are at the foote, with flores or blossoms, & one flore in the midle betwixt the garland & one of those sprigs. In the next is a vine leafe, the same as before. In the next is Victory, & so by turns till it ends with a vine leaf next to the man. And upon it, are \ allso / som Goth-like characters of the lesser sort, but dim and obscure.

Another of these potts is adorned with circles & semicircles. In one \ of / these circles is the figure of a man sitting on a plinth or square stone. In all the rest \ are fluttering / geniuses. In som of the semicircles are lyons & goates (or som such like creatures); here one, there another, all single currant;[20] & near the bottom are stags in \ full / course, grayhounds pursuing \ them, / with this inscription in a Gothlike character of the greater sort, which you see in the margin.

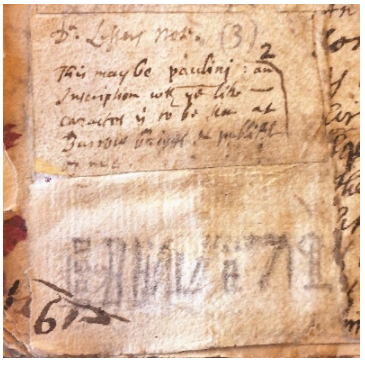


Figure 3.3.3. Machell's sketch of an inscription and reference to Dr Martin Lister's note on Paulini. VI.279.

[A3.]
[Dr Martin Lister, 1684][21]

{III […][22] Dr Lister's note (3) 2}
This may be Paulini. An Inscription with the like caracters is to be seen at Burrow briggs & publisht by me.}[23]

[VI.278]

An inscription with the like characters is to be seen at Burrow brig & publishd by Dr Lister.

[Extract from the *Transactions of the Royal Society*, 1684]
['Dr Lister produced a letter, which had been written by Mr Thomas Machell of Kirkby-thore in Westmorland to Sir William Dugdale, dated March 25 1684, concerning some antiquities lately found there; as some old earthen vessels with pieces of urns, one piece of a drinking-glass, and several sorts of sandals. The figures of all these were carefully delineated, together with the inscriptions. There was also a piece of a broken vessel shown, of a reddish colour; the relief upon it being greyhounds in pursuit of stags. Dr Lister observed three sorts of materials used for urns in the North country. 1. A fine red earth like a bolus. 2. A blue clay mixt with coarse sand. 3. A blue clay with finer sand and

[19] A faded margin comment in pencil reads, MS: 'If I mistake Vol 10.' But the reading of '10' is debateable.
[20] Currant: courant; running. See above, Machell's letter to Dugdale published by the Royal Society, in which this word is written 'current' (fn. 8). Three greyhounds courant were part of the Machell arms.
[21] See above, VI.200.
[22] 3cm of scored-through MS text has been omitted from this edition.
[23] See, *The History of the Royal Society of London for improving natural knowledge, from its first rise, in which the most considerable of those papers communicated to the society which have hitherto not been published are inserted in their proper order, 4* (London, 1757), 286 (Transactions of the Society, 1684).

micae: specimens of which were shown. He observed that one inscription in the margin might be Paulini, probably the potter's name, being the same which he had found on other pots. This conjecture was confirmed by Mr Richard Waller from a book written at Nimeguen by Smetius on the antiquities of that place.']²⁴

[B.]
[1684, with additional material to 1694]

[B1. <u>Notes on earthen vessels found at the well or 'Fountaine Hyppocrene</u>]

[VI.275]²⁵

<u>Of Hyppocrene</u>

H	B	L							
32	38.2	72							
	<u>32</u>								
	6.2			07:22:120			7:22	120	
	0.<u>7</u>			22: 7:120					
	4.34						22.7	120	
	<u>32</u>							[x]7	
	36.34		3.65		4.5			22)840	(38.[1]
			x2		x 2			<u>4.6</u>	
			7.30		9.0			180	
			<u>255.50</u>		315.0			<u>176</u>	
		Beer	<u>262.80</u>		324.0	Wine		4.0	

Qu.: <u>What quantity the vessells held?</u>
Ans.: 262 gallons, 3 quarts & cott[yle], Beer-Meas[ure].²⁶
Or 324 gallons tonne meas[ure]. Which 324 gallons is one hodgshead & 9 gallons above the common tunn of corne,²⁷ 252 of which is now in use, the hodgshead thereof goes at the rate of 63 gallons.
Mr Hilliyard sayes that the largest \ vessell ~~the largest vessel~~ / that ever he met with \ was / 300 gallons for Hereford Shire sider.
!!! N.B. <u>The Quality of vessells in the wooden-well</u>.

[24] Johannes Smetius (1599-1651) and Johannes Smetius (1636-1704), *Antiquitates Neomagenses. Sive notitia rarissimarum rerum antiquarum, quas in veteri Batavorum Oppido studiose comparavit Johannes Smetius, pater & filius* (Noviomagi Batavorum: Ex typographeio Regneri Smetii, 1678). Roman antiquities in the vicinity of Nijmegen (the Roman Oppidum Batavorum, home to Legio X Gemina) were gathered by Johannes Smetius (senior), who published a book listing these finds in 1644. His son, Johannes Smetius, continued in his father's footsteps by producing the illustrated catalogue, *Antiquitates Neomagenses*, containing 4,500 antiquities, in 1678. See R.B. Halbertsma, *Scholars, Travellers, and Trade: The Pioneer Years of the National Museum of Antiquities in Leiden, 1818-1840* (Abingdon, 2003), 10-11.
[25] Also numbered p.76.
[26] A 'cotyle' or 'kotyle': a small vessel, a liquid measure of about half a pint. *OED*.
[27] Tunn: a measure of weight, now generally 20 cwt., in Great Britain legally 2240 lbs (variant of ton); or a large cask or barrel, usually for liquids e.g. wine, ale, or beer, or for various provisions (variant of tun). *OED*.

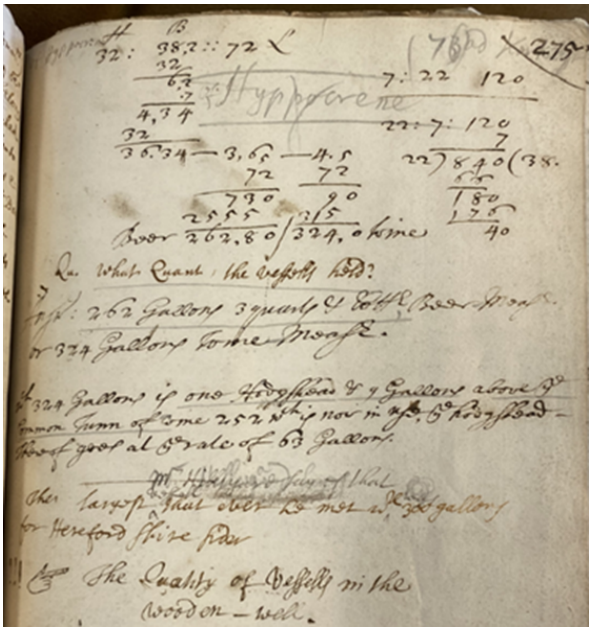


Figure 3.3.4. Vessel Quantities. VI.275.

[VI.276]

See an extract about this well at p.15 & place this letter there.[28]
The cuts sent to London to be inserted in Camden's *Britannia*.[29]

[VI.304]

Hyppo Creene

{a} A golden seale with a blewish agat set therein and a Cæsar's head (perhaps [blank]) ingraved upon it, which was found in Broades-Gardine near the southwest wall of the city of Bath in Sommersetshire, circa 1682 (it was purchased for a ginney & shewn to me by Mr Ed. Addison, August the 12, 1694)[30] near the very place where the excresence growth of a stony substance, upon the said wall.
{b.} (b) is the impression of the said seale.
{c.} A sardonyx stone with a Cæsar's head (perhaps Claudius) found in Walcot Fields near Bath amongst Romane ruines 1691 set in a signet by Dr Guidot. This is the impress ma[r]ked (d.)[31]

[VI.235]

[C. 1687-91]
[Various Drafts relating to {things found at Whelp Castle}

[C1.]

The following Rarities [were] found at Whelp Castle about 5 years agoe amongst the Rifled foundations thereof, whereof the 1ˢᵗ (Marked (a.) is the Shadow & representacon of a most Solid ~~wall~~ & Substantial wall, the like of which I never yet met with \ in any building antient or modern, / being (murus quadruplex) a four-fold wall, Made up of 4 walls Jump'd together & as it were united into

[28] See VI.205.
[29] Camden's *Britannia newly translated into English, with large additions and improvements; publish'd by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695), to which Thomas Machell contributed, see VI.281.
[30] Edward Addison (1656-1705), architect; see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.538.
[31] Thomas Guidot wrote a number of treatises on Bath and its mineral waters, including, *de thermis Britannicis tractatus. Accesserunt observationes hydrostaticae, chromaticae, et miscellaneae unius-cujusque balnei apud Bathoniam naturam ... exhibentes. (Observationum centuria, pleniorem in thermarum Bathoniensium naturam inquisitionem complectens, etc.)* (London, 1691).

one, which, whether it was for preventing the danger that might happen from Earthquakes, Instead of Those Spiracula\r/ (or windpipes) up the midst of Their walls,[32] which Vitruvius (If I be not forgetful) [VI.237][33] doth som where direct: (if my memory fails not} Or whether 'twas onely for Strength & Defence, I leave others to judge. But it seems to have \ bin / a most excellent way against the Battering Rams, us'd ~~in those days~~ \ of old / & might hold out \ for ought I know / a Considerable Time (for anything know) ~~were~~ against our Canon; because ~~of~~ \ thô / a breach were made in the first wall, or Perhaps in the Second, The Rest might stand firm, having no dependence One upon the other.

They were made of Hewn Stone, ~~&~~ each being 2 foot & 4 Inches ~~in~~ breadth, so that the whole was 9 foot & 4 Inches. The utmost wall was Strongly Cemented to the very foundation with the best Roman-mortar (a Composition \ made as I guess / of Lime Gravel and Brick). The other 3 had their foundations, ~~first~~ laid \ first / in Clay, & then in a coarser sort of Lime, And underneath all was a Pavement of Cobles, to make the foundation more firme & durable – An Invention \ of which / I once \ imagind my self / thought my self \ to have bin the / master[34] ~~of~~ (takeing my Hint from the Casways in London, which support ~~such~~ vast burthens, notwithstanding the Shoging of Carts & Carriages;[35] whence I concluded they would bear greater weights in a foundation where they might lye at rest from all such disturbances). But I found my mistake in 2 Instances here […][36] & in a 3[d] at Kirkbythore Church, when I caused Them to flag it & to level the threshold; Which being builded out of These Ruines (as the Hall & towne are) they ~~have~~ \ had / learn'd from thence how to lay Their foundation firm & secure \ which is made of pebbles; / Which againe was forgotten in after ages; but now is revived. This four-fold wall had a sinke passing Through it (as you se at this Marke (+) which was laid at the Bottom with a sort of Gutter Tiles marked Thus [+ +][37]

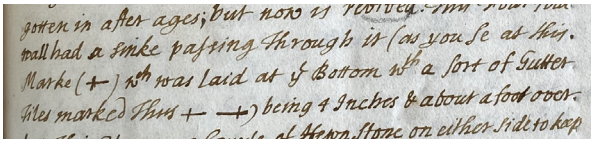


Figure 3.3.5. Symbols used by Machell. VI.237.

being 4 Inches & about a foot over. & at Their Edges was a Course of Hewn Stone on either side to keep in the water which ~~it~~ ran in That Channel. There is a Returne {b*} in the said wall (which had been formerly sought & wrought out) near the Angle or corner, whereof on the Inside (which I have marked Thus with an (*) Asterisc) we found that Broken Piece of an Altar –

FOTVNÆ SERVATRICI

which is so easy & fair to be read that it needs no manner of Explication save that the letter F, being a wanting in the beginning of the first line, must be supplyed.[38]
And thus, I have don with the 4 fold wall, which was near \ to / the Angle of the high Burhanes {c.} towards the South.

[32] Spiracle: from Spiraculum = airduct. A pencil sketch of the walls in the left-hand margin is very close to the binding; it has not been reproduced.
[33] Also numbered p.43.
[34] MS: '{My selfe haveing bin the first finder out}.' Written in a pencilled scrawl in the margin.
[35] To shog: to shake or roll (something heavy) from side to side; to jolt or jar (some one or something); to shake off a load. *OED*.
[36] Here, there is illegible margin comment roughly written in pencil.
[37] See *Figure 3.3.5* for the shape of Machell's symbols here, and for Machell's attractive, legible handwriting.
[38] Much of the information written here in a legible hand can be found in note form in VI.236A: not transcribed.

The 3[d] thing \ c. / of note marked (c.) is a wall {pipe wall} 2 foot & 2 inches broad (the 2[d] Instance of a Pav'd foundation, of the same materials with the former; but with this Remark,

[VI.239][39]

That under the foundation thereof was found Leaden-pipes VIII inch in Circumference; The connecting or joyning of which together is very Observable; for thô the Plummer had shewn himself an \ most / Excellent Artist in soldering up the sides of the pipes, yet they were not soldered one into another (as the manner now is)[40] but made with broad Brimms like unto Sawcers & so Nail'd together: which is fitter for us to admire then imitate. This wall was discovered nearer the midle of the said High Burhanes, Running a long from S. East to N. West, & was pursued to within 10 yards of Burhan-Hall-Lane, where They found the End of it by a Returne which was made in the wall {d.} somewhat towards the North.

{Pillar Wall and Inscription}
And Paralel to it was another foundation of Plane Hewnstone, breasted on both sides as a perpen wall, but with vi. Projectures like the Bases \ or plinth stones / of Columms, each of which was of one entire stone – I foot in depth & 2 in Diamiter every way. The Interspaces betwixt the Projectures were in Length x foot & in breadth 1½ f. And Before it became \ lay / a Conduit of Stones about a yard broad, & Excavated (like Spouts) in the Midle; which so flowed with water (though the situation be somewhat High) That it hindred the Workmen from rasing the stones, & set them \ all / wet shod. The Wall was laid in strong Lime & Sand, som of which (continuing yet moist, because of the water) was clammy & soft & seem'd to be mixed with the powder of Marble or som other hard stone, & with pounded \ pounced / brick: {Testae Tunsae}[41] The old composition that the Romans made use of in mixing the mortar for plastering \ of / walls & laying of \ of / floors \ Are / divers pieces of {old plaster} which were also found here,[42] being variegated in such a manner (with the Said Composition, & Pible stones polished, & with small lumps of Brick) That they seem'd to Resemble our Speckl'd Marble, & were in a manner as hard as a stone, though they had lain so long in the Earth.

{e.} But that which gave me most Satisfaction was This Piece of Inscription on the 2[d] Plinth Stone (the other part of it being taken away \ in former ages / when they Rifeled so deep into the foundations.)[43]

ELL ˆ EQQ ˆ LLAVRELIVS ˆ M
ARCVS ˇ DEO ˇ ALÆ ˇ VSLLM

The Latter Part of which I read Thus: Aurelius Marcus Deo ALÆ \ or Decurio Alæ if the Romans had such an officer.) / votum solvit libentissime merito.[44]
f.f. And near unto it was found a Piece of (the Scapus Columni) or Shaft of a Pillar, fluted on One Side with a Single Gutter &

[VI.241]

having a Mortiss \ Motess / at the End thereof,[45] 3 Inches Square, as at f.f. From \ all / which Together I do Conclude that this hath \ formerly / been a Temple, & of that \ very / sort which the Greeks (& the Romans after them) called Peripteros; from being surrounded with a Row of Pillars; six of which were placed in that End they design'd for the Front, 6 in the other End, & ix on Each Side; which with

[39] Also numbered p.45.
[40] MS: 'as the manner is \ 2 / now \ 1. /'
[41] 'Lime, sand, and pounded pottery', see Vitruvius: 'After finishing the plank flooring, lay a second plank flooring over it at right angles, and nail it down so as to give double protection to the framework. Then, mix with new broken stone one third the quantity of pounded tile, and let lime be added to the mixture in the mortar trough in the proportion of two parts to five.' Morris H. Morgan (Translator & ed.), *Vitruvius Pollio, The Ten Books on Architecture* (Cambridge, Mass. 1914), Book 7, 1, 5-6.
[42] The interlineation in this sentence was added in pencil to correct the text; it has faded and is almost illegible.
[43] MS: A pencilled cross has been placed over the beginning of the text in round brackets.
[44] 'Aurelius Marcus, to the god of the cavalry unit, or decurion of the cavalry unit, pays his vow most gladly and justly.' Pencilled notes in Latin at the foot of the right-hand margin, have faded illegibly, thus not transcribed.
[45] 'Mortise' (mortas, mortase): a cavity, hole, or recess into which the end of some other part of a framework or structure is fitted so as to form a joint. *OED*.

the Angular Ones made xi. But we may Reckon \ account / them accounted \ Reckoned / before, in the Front & Rear; for they are the same Columns, though faceing 2 wayes; {for} “Periptores”, (sayes the Learned {architect}Vitruvius,[46] in his 3d Book, *de Deorum Immortalium Ædibus Sacris*: erit Illa, quae habebit in fronte et postico senas columnas; in lateribus cum angularibus undenas \ nas /; ita autem sint hae columnae collocatae, u\t/ intercolumnij latitudinis intervallum, sit a parietibus circum ad extremos ordines columnarum, habeatque ambulationem circa cellam aedis.[47]

[VI.234A]

There were VIII yards of a Conduit bared, being stones of about ½ a yard broade. The hollow 4 inch & ½ in breadth & 3 inch & an half in Deepness, & something Strater at the Bottom than Top.
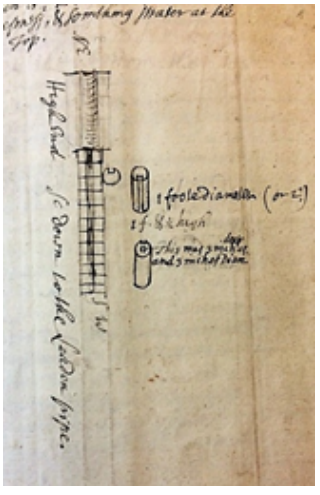


Figure 3.3.6. Pillar Shaft. VI.234A.

[Labels on the image above]
High End Sc. down to the Leaden pipe
1 foote Diameter (or 2?)
1 f. & ½ High
This was 3 Inches \ deep / and 3 Inches Diam.

[VI.234]



Figure 3.3.7. Peripteros: Ground plan. VI.234.

[46] MS: ‘Sayes the Antient Vitruvius.’When editing this page, another hand disagreed with the description ‘Antient’, replacing it with ‘Learned’.
[47] ‘A temple will be peripteral that has six columns in front and six in the rear, with eleven on each side including the corner columns. Let the columns be so placed as to leave a space, the width of an intercolumniation, all round between the walls and the rows of columns on the outside, thus forming a walk round the cella of the temple.’ See Vitruvius (ed. Morgan), *The Ten Books on Architecture*, *3*, 2, 5.

[VI.240]



Figure 3.3.8. Four-fold wall, pipe wall, pillar wall and altar. VI.240.

[VI.241]

{Distance as to Column Shafts}
I cannot indeed Justly say that all these Rules were Exactly observed; for the Intercolumnium (or Interspace betwixt these Pedestals ~~or Basses of pillars~~) was but 10 foot (or xi at most if we reckon to the Shafts of the Columns). But the distance betwixt them and the back-wall (which I take to be part of the Ambulationes Circa Cellam Ædis)[48] was 3 foot more {perhaps 4 foote more, so 15 in all.} But then I find that Th[e]se Directions (in every Circumstance) were not always observed, since Vitruvius himself has left us one Instance in the forequoted place, of the Temple of Vertue, made by Mutius sine Postico, which is a greater Irregularity than to set of a wall, 2 or 3 {3 or 4} foot to inlarge a walk by It. So That This maketh Nothing against our opinion That it was such a Temple, There being so many remarkable Circumstances to Confirme us in It. & the \ very / Platform which is in Vitruvius (& sheweth us what such Templs were), will (if Compared) make it more ~~clear~~ \ Evident. / But Then you must not look on my draughts as drawn by the Scale, for I think it unnecessary: Nor expect that any thing \ which that as here re/presented by me (by my own handy work) should be performed in {Exact} full Proportion, unless it be Coynes & \ Seales & / som other \ such / things as admitt of Miniture; Yet I have don Them in such a manner \ & with so much Resemblance) as may give Satisfaction to any Beholder, though the Rule of Proportion {of one thing to another} be not duly observ'd – Peripteri Fundamenti ICHNOGRAPHIA. Ex qua ad totius Ædis

[VI.243]

Orthographiam facillimè periti architecti peruenire possunt. È Lib. III! M. Vitruvij *de Architectura*, Cap 3ino {vide hujus p.6. 7.}[49] By this it is Evident to any man's eye \ beholden / that the wall we are treating of has been the foundation of such a Temple as is here described. And we find by the letters on the foundation, that it was erected by

AURELIVS MARCVS DEO ALÆ
To the tutelary God of the Roman horse

[48] 'A walk round the cell of the temple', From Vitruvius (ed. Morgan), *The Ten Books on Architecture, 3*, 2, 5.
[49] 'Plan of a Temple Foundation. From which skilled architects can very easily arrive at an elevation of the whole building.' See Vitruvius (ed. Morgan), *The Ten Books on Architecture 3*, 3. The reader will note Machell's frequent references to Vitruvius. On MS. VI.264, for example, he referred again to Book 3: 'Peripteri fundamentum Ichnographia é lib 3. M. Vitruvii de Architectura, Cap. 5. See it at p.48.'

the Troops which they placed on the Right & Left Hand about their Legions being called Alæ from (Ala, a wing) because [they] covered & protected their Infantry (or legions of foote) as the wings of a bird do the Body of it. But who this Aurelius Marcus was, is not so Easy a thing to Determine \ matter to discover, / for I am in a doubt whether the names may not be transpose'd, so that we might read MARCVS AVRELIUS for Aurelius Marcus, and thus apply it to
{1.} Marcus Aurelius Antonius Verus, the Adopted Son of Marcus Antonius, who came to succeed him in the Roman Empire, but was truly son of Ælius Verus. For his stile is MARCO ÆLIus AURELIUS, as we sometimes find \ it; / and ELI in the beginning of the said Inscription may seem to favour it \ This opinion; / or whether the names may not stand as they are. {Or may \ it / not be Aurelius Flavius about CCLXIX years after Xt Nativity? The letters LL being for FL}
{2.} And so to be applied to that once famous but unfortunyt MARCVS, Lieutenant of Brittaine under Honorius at the Declining of the Roman Empire*, whom the armies in Brittaine (fearing least the flames of their Neighbours being all set on fire by the Goths & Vandals, might at length flash out & take hold of them, Elected Emperour, & paid him obedience for a while at the first; but not long after put him to Death. This I should take to be the man (if his Prænomen could be discovered to be \ have bin / Aurelius, concerning which my Author is silent†) because he lived & dyed in this Iland, & presently after the Romans were forced to betake themselves home, leaving onely (as may well be supposed) some few Men of Note to head the Britons (who intermarried & continued amongst them) & som (doubtless) here. For, as it appears by its fourfold wall to have been one of their Strongest Forts, and by this example \ Temple / to have been most Commodious \ Garr[ison]. /

[Machell's Notes: VI.243]
*{This lieutenant was Calphurnius Agricola, whose name was inscribed upon an altar at the Picts Wall perhaps for [blank] ELI}
†{May not this be Aurelius Optatus, as being so called from this election?}

[VI.245]

So it must be of Consequence, be the longer Retained, & upholden by Them.

[C2. Further Notes]

{Unde K.[50] It was caled Gallup & Catuli Gnolea}
But when the Saxons came ~~in~~ to \ this Island to / assist them against the Picts, & They & (Their religion) prevail'd, so far as to overspread the whole Nation & give language to it; They \ may / seem to have Placed their mighty God Thor here in This \ very Roman / Temple whence the Town took its name[51] {of Kirkbythore}, & perhaps the like was ~~scarce~~ \ not thereat / to be found […];[52] whence it is that we have ~~so~~ many Thoresbyes {i.e. places where the image of Thor was erected:[53] i.e. a place where there was a temple} & \ not a / Kirkbythore ~~but one~~ \ save this one onely. /

{Romane Castles}
A little farther from this Noble Temple, towards the south west, we met with diverse floors & c[h]ambers under \ the / ground; for your Romane Castles were not a continued Pile of Building, but rather like to to a little Towne within it self \ having severall / as I shall shew when I come to speak of Plumpton Wall, / where There are the fairest vestigia of it That ever I met with; & yet dark enough. Some of these floores were flagged with stone, & som Paved with Brick, better then \ any / we meet with nowadays. For our workmen Generally are so Penurious, & do things so sleightly to gain the more by Them, that in Process of time they lose the Perfection of all arts & Trades \ facultyes. /

{Bricks of}
Two of These Pavements made of Brick I have \ {here} / describ'd at the letter (h.), which for the

[50] 'From what place Kirkbythore?'
[51] MS Margin: '{might be called}'.
[52] Interlineated words here, written in faded pencil, have not been transcribed.
[53] In the MS, here, there is an illegible word and a group of scored-through words.

most part are x inches square & 2 inches deep; thô I met with som that were ½ inch Thicker & a foot Diamiter every way, which is just a quarter of the Semi te\t/radoron[54] that was used in building amongst the Greeks, whereas the Roman building brick was the διδωεον – so call'd for consisting of 2 palms in breadth & as much more in length – which Vitrivius explanes to be Longum Pede, Latum Semipede, a foot long & ½ foot broad.

{Size}
& in the unfolding of his Scheams of these measures, he shews us what is meant by a Palm (which the Greeks call δϖεον). Namely the breadth of a man's 4 fingers; & I do observe that 2 of these palms (at the thickest part of my fingers \ next to the Palm / when the hand is expanded) are just ½ a foot; from whence I collect that a midle sized man amongst the Romans was \ of / no larger \ taller / then we are \ at this day / & that the Gigantic Ideas & fancies men entertaine {concerneing} \ thus / of them, do only proceeed from Their noble Acts Recorded in Story; nor does the world grow

[VI.246]

old in Th\is/ sense, but all things continue Now as they were then \ in those dayes, / which is no unpleasant speculation.

[C. 1687-88 with additions to 1692]

[C1.] Subterranean Passage found near the site of 'Whelp Castle'

[VI.281][55]

A platform of an arched Su[bterranean] Vault at Kirkbythore.

{This platform was cut out & sent to London to be inserted in Cambden's *Britannia* 1694 per T. Machell.}



Figure 3.3.9. 'A Platform of an Arched Subterranean Vault at Kirkbythore.' VI.281.

[54] Semi tetradoron: Vitruvius explained that the tetradoron was a brick four palms square (in Greek, 'palm' means 'the giving of gifts' and the gift was always given in the palm of the hand). He explained that there were also half-bricks. 'When these are used in a wall, a course of bricks is laid on one face and a course of half-bricks on the other, and they are bedded to the line on each face.' See *Vitruvius* (ed Morgan), *The Ten Books on Architecture* 2, 3, 3-4.
[55] Also numbered p.81.

The remarquable places
(a.a.a.a.) The area or flower.[56]
(b.b.b.) The two scatchments.
(c.c.c.c.) 2 rowes of stones of \ each / a yard long, such as the side-walls are composd-of.
(e.e.e.) The stairs ascending up under the arch towards High Burwens.
(f.) The surface of the earth & a sight of the heavens under the arch in that ascent.
(g.g.g.) The Arch it selfe made of fine stones.

This vault was accidentally found in seekeing for stones at Coppin-hill (so called corruptly as I do suppose ~~for~~ \ from the word / Copped-hill) the place being advanced to a more than ordinary height & eminence by \ reason of / this Arch, and the rubbish ~~which was~~ \ which lay / about it. It is in the upper end of that street which lyeth betwixt the Romane Way and the High Burwens, where we doe conjecture that the main body of Whelp-Castle stood, & not 40 yards from it, where whilst a labourer was striving with an iron gavelock[57] (so they call a craw in this country) / to get up a stone, it slipt out of his hand & it was heard to plunge & dash into water, which gave them occasion to dint[58] deeper in it.[59]

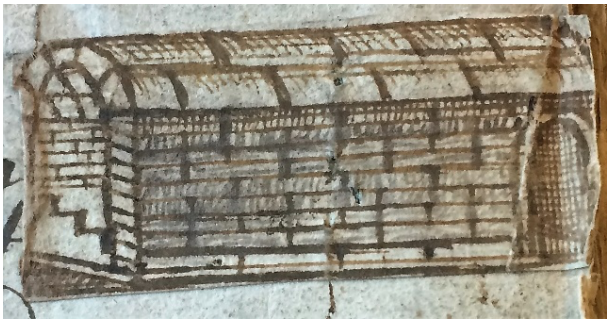


Figure 3.3.10. Vault Detail. 'The figure of it resembled a trunke'. VI.281.

& as they informd me, the figure of it resembled a trunke, the lid of which discribeth the Arch, & the sides – the sidewalls – being in breadth about 4 foote & ½; in length 15. That end which pointeth \ down / to the High Street to the Romane Way was not solid-wall, but of loose stone & rubbish; & the other end which was next to the Burwens (~~a far higher place than Coppin-hill~~) ascended by stairs under the Arch, each step consisting of one entire stone, of which six in number & perhaps many more, for they could not finde the bottom of it \ then / with a long iron gavelok, after they had cleared as low as the scatchment,[60] but \ still there remained / soft mud & rubbish,

[VI.282]

which, with fragments of earthen potts & glasses & boanes \ of / monstrous bigness \ incredibleness for men's bones – if they ~~be~~ \ were such / the materials with which it furnished withal – the water above them ascending as high as the stair{?}

[56] 'Floor'.
[57] Gavelock: an iron crowbar or lever. *OED*.
[58] 'To dint': to impress or drive in with force. *OED*.
[59] MS: 'whilst a labourer was strive with an iron \ ~~craw or~~ / gavelock, ~~for~~ (so they call a craw in this country) to get up a stone ~~he lost his instrument~~ {it slipt out of his hand} & it was heard to plunge \ & dash / into water ~~beneath~~, which gave them occasion to seeke \ sinke / further into it \ dint deeper in it. / ~~as they tell me~~.'
[60] Probably 'scarcement' also 'skersment', 'skarsment': a plain flat set-off or rebate in a wall or in a foundation or bank of earth; also, a flat ledge projecting from the face of a rock. *OED*.

{But I will yet give you a more lively representation thereof, of proposing the idea […][61] of what hath bin said. [I] have exposed the idea \ of it / naked to your view in this following scheem, wherein the earth is suppos'd ~~bin a~~ [to] be taken quite \ a/way from it on every side, the stony-carkass thereby remaining.}[62]
The side walls were faced with stone with great dents in them (as is elsewhere described), and backed up with earth,[63] \ each stone consisting of one foot in thickness & about 3 in length / which rose from the scatchment in regular courses (all of a bigness to 10 quarters as height) up to the springers. I doe suppose that the scatchment was only to support & strengthen & keepe the saide walls from shifting in being ~~backed with~~ \ forced by the / earth. And there was on the left hand by the south west corner of an arched dooer-steed of about a yard wide. Above these walls \ by the south west by the south west corner of an arched dooer-stead of about a y[rd] wide / an Arch was erected, which consisted only of 5 stones in length: Sc. 2 springers with 2 seconds next unto them & a sprin[g]ling stone \ to binde them / in the midst {?} an so they proceeded (in the like order) from \ one / end to the other end. But to give you yet more clear comprehension of it, behold the figure.[64]

Thus, I have described it as well as I could by mere information. But to discover what it hath bin is an harder taske. Some thinke (by the boanes & blackish mudd wherewith it was filled) that it had bin a sepulchre; but the great store of urnes which are found ~~which are~~ heareaboute, \ which e.e.e.e. / do persuade the contrary. I rather take it either to have bin a port to the castle, unto by which they ascended by the said stairs in the end; & the lefthand dooer ~~a lodge thereunto~~ to have bin for a lodge \ to it /. Or else I gues it to have bin a Bath, fountain or well, having 2 descents: one by the dooer on the left hand (from som \ small / appertments); the other, by the great stair in the end \ ~~of the vault~~ / (from the main castle). The deepness of the pitt perswades the former; and the position of the stair & whol fabric (being directly opposite to the midst of the castle) doe perswade the latter. But in things so abstruse, it is \ hard / to define \ determin. / I therefore leave it to the judgement of others to make such conjectures as they thinke more rational.

[VI.283]

Yet the principal entrance seems to have bin on the opposite side (the house here opening wider & wider to the right hand and left). And we found another in 1692 by the plin'thes of the gate postes, about [blank] of distant near to the midle of Burhan Hall lane, with the foundation of a wall all along, with a conduit under it being 2 yards distant or thereabouts from the said lane.

[VI.285]

De Templo Alæ
{This referd to in the foregoing treatiss at [blank] p. [blank] yet I will not throw it away, there being a coyn mention'd therein, & som other notes which be not here.}[65]

[C2] {1687} {The Pillar W[all} [Machell's Fair Copy][66]

1. The Foundation
On December the 12th 1687 by digging for Stones in a Place calld Highburwens at Kirkbythore in the County of Westm'land (suposd to be the Scite of Whelp-Castle), A foundation of huen-stone was there discovered, plane on both sides but with six Projectures,[67] each (of which was of) one entire-stone, a foote in depth and 2 foote in Diameter every way. The Interspaces betwixt these Projectures

[61] Several centimetres of this margin comment have been erased and overwritten; the ideas expressed appear to be different versions of the same material.
[62] See MS.I.509A, which gives similar information.
[63] MS: 'The side walls were ~~onely~~ faced with \ ~~ruff huen~~ / stone ~~& backed up with earth, the stones roughly huen~~ with great dents in ~~to~~ them (as is elsewhere described) ~~each being about~~ \ and backed up with earth / ~~a free foote in thickness & full yard in length~~.'
[64] See the figures on VI.281.
[65] For Machell's notes, see VI.234-45, VI.286-87, VI.289.
[66] The calligraphy on VI.285-88 is immaculate, contrasting greatly with Machell's notes and drafts elsewhere.
[67] There is a line of illegible scored-through text in the MS here.

were about 10 f. & in bredth one foot an Halfe \ and in length 10 foote / in manner of a Perpen-wall;[68] & before it came a Conduit of stones about a yard broad, and \ Excavated {holloed} like Spoutes / in the Midle, which so flowd with water (thô it be on an Hill) that it hindred the workmen from takeing them up \ raseing the stones, / and set them wet-shod. The wall was laid in strong lime and sand, som of which (continuing yet moyst by reason of the water) was clammy and soft, and seemed to be mixed with the powder of marble or of Coble Stones, and Rubbish of brick; The old composition which the Romanes made use of in mixing their morter.
And (some few days after)[69] under the foundation of another wall (which ran parallel to it at about 5 yards distance) Leaden-Pipes were discovered[70] curiously soldred, & 8 inch in circumference. But the connecting of them together was \ something / most remarkable; [71] for they are not soldred one into another, but made with broad brimms like unto Sawcers, and so nailed together, which is fitter for us to admire than imitate, the figures of both I shall \ here / present you with,

[VI.286]

though not by scale (for that is not necessary). ~~Neither have I leisure at present to do justice.~~ Yet in such a manner as shal \ may / give satisfaction to every eye {the Beholder}, tho the rules of proportion be not \ duly / observed.
The first is a wall of 2 f[oot] & 2 inch broad with 2 Leaden-pipes joyned at [letter] (a); the other, a wall with 6 Projectures for so many Pillars, on each of which wee suppose one hath stood.
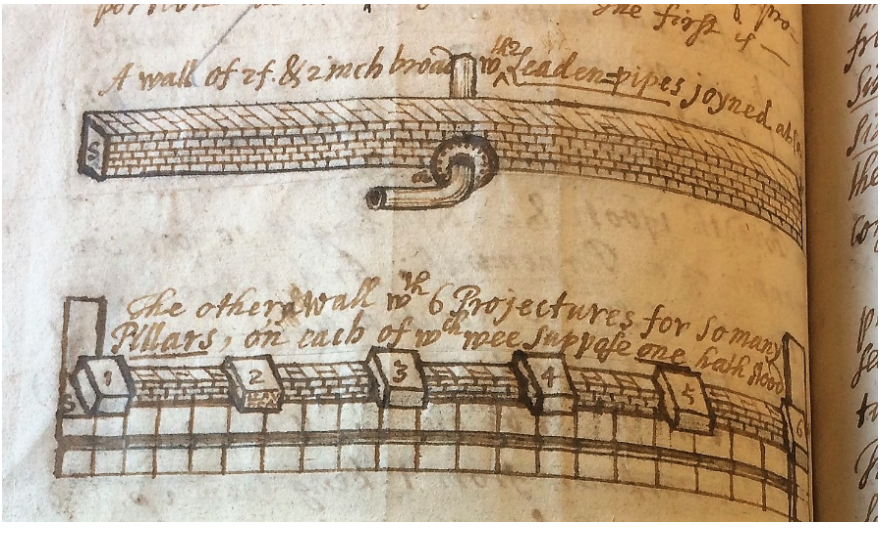


Figure 3.3.11. 'A wall of 2 f[eet] & 2 inch broad with 2 Leaden-pipes joyned at (a); the other, a wall with 6 Projectures for so many Pillars, on each of which wee suppose one hath stood.' VI.286.

And on the second of these projectures was this inscription:

[68] Perpen: a stone running through a wall from one side to the other and having two smooth vertical faces; a perpen (or parpen) wall could also be a mason's term for a wall of a single stone in thickness. *OED*.
[69] Here, two-thirds of a line consists of thoroughly scored-through illegible text, but a margin comment, in another hand, asks, 'The pipe wall?'
[70] A margin comment here offers, 'We found.'
[71] MS: Written as, 'remarcable', but the 'c' was changed to 'k' by another hand.

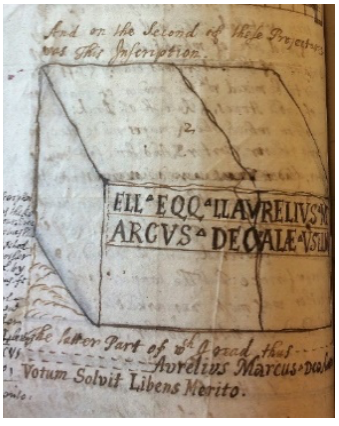


Figure 3.3.12. 'And on the second of these Projectures was this Inscription.' VI.286.

What if the whol should be thus read

(... A …) ELL (US) Equester Quirinalis Libert[is] Libertabusque
AVRELIVS MARCVS DEO (sive DECurio) ALÆ Votum Solvit Libens Lubens Merito.}[72]

The latter part of which, I read thus:

… AURELIUS Marcus. Deo Alæ Votum Solvit Libens Merito.[73]

There is an inscription to M. Aurelius the Romane Emperour, erected by M. Aurelius Philo at Apalby School, Fig. 3; and another Iovi opt[imo] Maximo[74] by Aurelius Fabius, F[ig.] 5.

[VI.287]

The manner of the Platform doth (in my Thoughts) bespeak it a Temple or Place of Worship within this great Fort;[75] and of that kinde which is called Peripteros from being surrounded about \ with a row of / Pillers, six whereof were plac'd in the front, and Six in the Rear; & nine on each side, which, with the Angular ones, made eleven. For whosoever consulteth Vitruvius will be of this minde.

And, By the inscription (reverently placed on a Foundation Stone) it should seem to be Dedicated (DEO ALÆ) to the tutelary God of the Romain Horse {if there was such a deity}; their Troopes, which they placed on the right and left hand about their Legions, being called Alæ from ala: a wing, because they covered and protected their infantry \ or legions of foot / as the wings of a Bird do the body of it {doth her body}. And the Author of this Temple is (here) said to be AURELIUS MARCUS, who seems to have vow'd it upon some hazardous Expedition in case his troupes returned victoriouse; as by the event it appeareth they did.

But it is not so Easy a thing to determin who this Marcus should be? Whether Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Pius (the word being Transpos'd) Emperour of Rome about the CXXXIXth year of Christ's Incarnation,[76] one of whose Coyns I have in Silver,[77] found near to this place about a year since? Or

[VI.288]

Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Verus (commonly called Marcus Aurelius) the adopted son of M. Antonius, to whom he succeeded about CLXII; {An. Xt. 162}) but was the son of ELLVS Verus which theletters ELL in the beginning of the foresaid Inscription may seem to favour. Or Marcus

[72] 'Aurelius Marcus, to God (or Decurion) of his cavalry unit, willingly, gladly and justly pays his vow.'
[73] 'Aurelius Marcus, to the god of his cavalry unit, pays his vow willingly and justly.'
[74] 'To Jupiter best and greatest.'
[75] A pencilled margin comment reads, MS: 'This seems so as ~~it has bin~~ here hewhead, as here we finde them some pieces of shapes of shafts of coll[umns] being here also found with holles.'
[76] A.D. 139.
[77] In the MS there is a rough sketch of two blank circles and a margin heading, 'A Coyne.'

Aurelius Flavius Claudius? Or his brother, Quintilius, about CCLXIX? {An. X^ti 269} Or Marcus Aurelius Valerius Probus, about CCLXXVII? Or Marcus Aurelius, sir-named Carus, in the year CCLXXXII?
{*!!}[78] Or lastly, one MARCUS, a Lieutenant of Britaine under Honorius at the Declineing of the Romaine Empire, when the Goths & Vandalls would needs overrun it about 396 years after Xt birth {CCCXCVI}, upon which the soldiers who lived here in Britaine (distrusting the conduct of young Honorius) elected Him Emperour.[79] \ But / presently after put him to death? This I should take to be ~~author of it~~ \ the man / ~~above all the rest~~ (if his prænomen could be discover'd to have bin Aurelius) concerning which my instructor \ author / is silent, because he lived & dyed in this Iland where (for ought I can read) the Rest never came; and presently after the Romains Retired. So, the least Antiquity can be assign'd \ this Romane Temple / is M.CC. LXXXXI years. {M.CC.XCI. 1291.}

[VI.289][80]

[C3.] Of the Temple of Alæ.

{Note. The M[emorandum] notes, & what is at the end with the paper pind to, may yet be serviceable} {A duplic[ate] being the 1^t draught.}

Of the Temple of Alæ
On December the 12, 1687, by digging for stones in a place call'd Highburwens at Kirkythore in the county of Westmorland (supposed to be the scite of Whelp-Castle) a foundation of huen-stone was \ there / discovered, placd on both sides (within & without), but with 6 projectures ~~at 2 foot distance after this maner~~, each of which was one entire stone, a foote & in deepth & 2 foote in diameter every way.
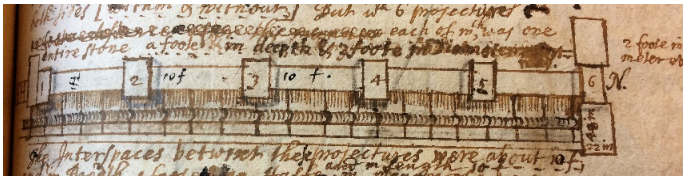


Figure 3.3.13. 'Interspaces between Projectures.' VI.289.

The interspaces betwixt these projectures were about 10 f[oot] and in bredth 2 foote & an halfe \ and in length 10 f[oot] / in manner of a perpen-wall; & before it came a conduit of stones, about a yard \ broad & / hollow in the midle \ excavated like spoutes / which soe flow'd with water \ (tho it be on an hill) / that it hindered the workemen from raiseing them \ up[81] / of the ground† \ & set them wetshod ~~though it be on an hill~~. The wal was laid in strong lime & sand, som of which (continuing yet moyst by reason of the water) was clammy & soft, & seemed to be mixed with the powder of marble or \ of / coble-stones. {And som few dayes after, leaden-pipes were found \ discoverd / under the foundation of an other wall which ran parallel to it at about 5 yards distance.}

†The 2^nd projecture was (in the front) inscribed as followeth:
The latter part of which I read thus …. Aurelius Marcus, Deo Alæ, Votum, Solvit, Libens, Merito.[82]

[78] A later hand, probably not Machell's.
[79] MS: 'about the year \ after Xt's nativity / ~~of Christ~~ 396 \ years after Xt birth /{CCCXCVI} ~~whereupon~~ \ upon which / the soldiers \ who lived / here in Britaine (Distrusting the Conduct of young Honorius) elected Him Emperour;'
[80] This is another draft of the content on VI.285-88.
[81] As in the previous draft, this word replaces a longer, illegible word.
[82] Continues on VI.291.



Figure 3.3.14. 'The 2nd projecture' inscription. VI.289.

[Dimensions written on the sketch above}
[Left side] 2 foote deep. [Right side] 1 foote and 10 inch.
[Front] One foot ~~and an halfe~~ and one halfe – rather 2f.
[Depth] 1 foote.

II. The maner of the platform does (in my thoughts) bespeak it a temple or place of worship within this ~~strong~~ \ great / fort; & \ one / of that kinde \ or sort / which is called Hexastylos \ Peripteros /from having six pillars in the front \ & rear / of it \ & on each side / {from being surrounded about with pillars, 6 whereof were plac'd \ XI / in the front, & 6 in the rear, & 9 on each side ~~which with those in the[…]~~[83] ~~made the said 11 which the angular one made~~} For whosoever consulteth Vitruvius will be of this minde.[84]

[Machell's Notes: VI.289][85]

{What remanes at the ends seemed to me only returnes, & supplement at the corners for strength.}
It was length way in the wall a f[oot] & ½, & in breadth 2 f[oot] as all the rest were.[86]
{Query: if this may not be Aurelius Optatus? So calld peradventure from the soldiers electing him Emperor.}
{se 220. His coyn. N.B. Antoninus Pius is stiled Marcus Aurelius Antoninus, whose lieutenant was Lollius, p.220, 2 & 5., in whose time the dike was cast twixt Carleile & Tine.[87]
{EQQ 237. Forsan (A)eli(us) Equest. Quirinalis. Libertis Libertabusque Aurelius Marcus Decurio-Alæ votum solvere libentissime merito. LL? ante Aurelium.}[88]
Marcus Lieutenant [pres]ented emperor by […] The armies there. 276. 5. Ibid. Speed.[89]
Marcus Aurelius the emperor […] parentage 221. & hon-rable titles 223. 12. His […] aise, 224. 12
Unhappy in his son. […] \ 247. /248. 249.
† Such a cross as this in the stones found at Kirkbythore […] After erected in The Picts Wall by Aulus […] ens who perhaps was A Christian) see Speed 222 […] -our M. Aurelius con-vincd by miracle[90] enco […] his edict & Lucius our 1ᵗ Christian King encouraged the […] See also what Trebellinus & Pertinas […]

[83] There is one illegible word in this scored-through passage.
[84] This paragraph was written on a piece of paper (19cm x 7½cm), pasted to the foot of VI.289 over Machell's text, much of which is now hidden.
[85] The dotted lines in this section represent text hidden by VI.292B. Part of it appears to echo text on VI.291 relating to a Christian miracle.
[86] The following sentences are covered by a piece of paper pasted over them, obscuring a significant part of the text beneath. Parts obscured are shown by: […].
[87] A Latin phrase here begins, 'non sed murus p[…]'; the last word is unclear. For Lollius, see VI.291, below.
[88] 'Perhaps Aelius, a Quirinial knight. To the freed men and the freed women. Aurelius Marcus Decurion of the cavalry unit pays his vow most willingly and justly. LL? Before Aurelius.'
[89] John Speed, *The Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans. Their Originals, Manners, Habits, Warres, Coines, and Seales: with the Successions, Lives, Acts, and Issues of the English Monarchs from Julius Caesar, unto the Raigne of King James of famous Memorie* (London, 1611 and many other editions).
[90] Machell is referring here to Speed's description of a Christian miracle: 'Aurelius the Emperour … was inclosed about with his enemies, called the Quadi, and suffered great mortality both by Pestilence and much by want of water, whereby himselfe and Host were almost consumed. At which time many Christian Souldiers

[VI.291]

And, by the inscription, it should seem to be dedicated (DEO ALÆ) TO THE TUTELARY God of the Roman Horse; their troupes which they plac'd (on the right & left hand) about their legions, being called Alæ, from ala: a wing, because they cover'd & protected their infantry, as the wings of a bird do the body of it. And the author of this temple is (here) said to be AURELIUS MARCUS, who seems to have vow'd it upon some hazardouse expedition in case his troupes returned victoriouse, as by the event it appearse that they did.

But it is not ~~a thinge~~ so easy a thing to determin who this Marcus was; whether Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Pius (the words misplaced \ transposed / ~~who was~~ Emperour of Rome about the 39th year of Christ's Incarnation, one of whose coyns I have in silver, found near to this place about a year since; whose Lieutenant \ Legate / Lollius \ Lieutenant of Britaine / built a turfe-wall to divide the province & to impeach the incursions of the Barbarians \ people / after he had reduced the Brit~~ains~~ish \ provinces / to their wonted subjection. {Julius Capitolinus.}[91] {This lieutenant was Calphurnius Agricola, whose name was inscribed on an altar at the Picts Wall.} {Marc Anthony}[92]

Or Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Verus (commonly called M. Aurelius) \ the adopted / son of M. Antoninus, to whom he succeeded in the Empire about 162. But was the son of Elius Verus, which the letters ELI \ prehab for ELI / may seem to favour in \ the beginning of the foresaid / inscription: Marcus Aurelius Flavus Claudus \ LL being for FL. / Or his brother Quintilius about 269 ~~or 71~~. Or M. Aurelius Valerius Probus, about 277, or M. Aurelius

[VI.292]

sirnamed Carus in the year 282 {whose other names are not discovered to us in history.} Or lastly one Marcus, a lieutenant of Britaine under Honorius at the declineing of the Roman Empire, when the Goths & Vandalls would needs runn it, circa an X^t. 396. Whereupon the soldjers in Britaine, distrusting the conduct of Young Honorius, elected him Emperour, & presently after, put him to death. This I should take to be the founder of this ancient Temple, above al the rest \ (if I could trade his prænomen, Aurelius, / because he livd & dyed in this Iland, where (for ought I can read) the rest never came, & presently after the Romans retir'd, so the least antiquity can be ascrib'd to it \ assign'd it / id M.CC.XCI years \ 1291. /

{May it not be Aurelius Oplatus, so calld perhaps from the soljers electing him emperor. If I could finde his other name to have bin Aurelius? See Sabellicus, *Enn.*7 Lib. 9.}[93]

A better account was sent to Oxford to Dr Mil[l] Jan. 13. 1688, to be return[ed]; wherein of the lead pipes.[94]

[C4.] Addend[a]

{!!!} And from hence it may seeme that in the Declineing of the Roman Empire this place was so large and so considerable that a whol wing of the Romain Horse kept their station here; for the

being in his Campe, and commanded (as Ionas was) to call upon their God; they fell prostrate on the ground in prayers, & obtained of him so plenteous a shower of raine, as therewith after five daies extreamest drouth and thirst, the whole Army was refreshed, and the Quadi contrariwise by Thunder and Lightning were quite dispersed and overthrowne. This wonder (saith Eusebius) is reported even by those Historians who favoured not Christianity, and the prudent Epistle of the Emperour himselfe (which hee wrote to the Senate for confirmation of this miracle yet extant) doth warrant the same: whereupon he both mitigated the rage against Christs Professours, and (by testimony of Apollinaris) named that Legion of the Christians, for an everlasting remembrance, The Lightning Legion.' Speed, *Historie of Britaine* (London, 1611; this edn, 1623), Book 6, Chap. 19, 221. Eusebius of Caesarea (c.260-c.339) was a historian of Christianity.

[91] Julius Capitolinus was one of the supposed authors of the *Historia Augusta*, presented as a series of imperial biographies by six writers. A critical edition published by Isaac Casaubon in 1603, gave it its name: see Andreas Mehl (tr. Hans Friedrich Mueller), *Roman Historiography: An Introduction to its Basic Aspects and Development* (Oxford, 2014), 171.

[92] Added in pencil.

[93] Marcus Antonius Sabellicus (Italian; 1436-1506), *Enneades sive Rhapsodia historiarum* (1498). Machell probably took this reference from Speed, *Historie of Britaine*, see 1623 edn, Book 6, 179.

[94] Roughly written in pencil. The 'better account' is the fair copy of VI.285-88, see above.

Temple shews it to have bin more than a moveable Quarter; and that Marcus himselfe, the Lieutenant of Britain, resided then here that he might be in readiness to send his Instructions with his troops of horse out upon all occasions to assist the Infantry upon the frontiers;[95] to which purpose also the Maden-way, which leades from hence to Caer-varon at the Picts Wall, may seeme to have served, & give som colour to this conjecture.

[VI.292A]

[Notes] Ad Templum \ Dei / Alæ
What Rem[ains] at the Ends, semes to be returns and additional[96] suppliments for supporting the Coynes[97] & strength[ening] the foundations of them.
{Peripteros[98] 6 Coll; Pseudoperipteros[99] 8 col.}
Ergo if 10f in leng. The walke would be but 10 – Ergo if 10f in leng. The walke would be but 10 – sit inter collumnij latitudinis \ intervallum / Quorum inter collumniorum et imæ lassitudinis. collumnæ spatium; ergo XXf. II.[100]

[VI.292B]

The mannor \ verg[101] / of the platform does (in judgment) \ my thoughts / bespeak it a temple or place of worship, ~~within~~ and of that sort which is called Hexastolos, from hence the precincts of this ancient fabric, which has bin in 6 pillers in the front of it, for whosoever constructeth \ erected / DEO ALÆ – to the tutelary God of the Romaine Horse – their troupes which they placed (on the right hand & left about their legions, being call de Comitibus,[102] see Speed, p.222, or Capitolinus Valerian 2.2.[103] Vitruvius will thinke so with me, be of my minde. And by the inscription, which I read that[104]

[D. Ring Stones, 1687/8]

[VI.246]

[1] {A Cornelian ring stone with a seal cut upon [it] found in a lump of Roman [s]tone by the temple f. 1687/8, Feb.}
[2.] {A Sardonix ring stone with a seale cut upon it, found in Bleckats Burhans 30 March 1687/8.}
[3.] Lastly – those Ovals at the foot of the Table mark'd with the letters (h. i. & k.) are several Ring Stones found hereabouts & in my Possession; whereof the 1[t] part, which is marked h., is either a Ruby or Deep Cornelian (but pardon me if I mistake in these things \ matters that I know not / being no profest Lapidary; Having \ and has / the Figure of a man upon it, with a Dog at his foot, a trident or forked-Mace in his right hand (with a Mantle hanging down from that arm, & in his left I do not know what). But Because the Impression quite alters the Posture and may yield \ far / greater Satisfaction to the Inquisitive than my Scratches[105] can do, I have thought fit to add it.
Which whether it may be some of Their Lares,[106] which the Romans worshipd ~~or the Saxon God Thor~~, or may have relations to som of the Catuli, Let others Conjecture. I know nothing of it, but That

[95] MS: 'in readiness to send ~~aid and~~ \ his / Instructions, ~~and~~ with his horse \ ~~guards~~ \ troops / of horse out upon all occasions / to assist the Infantry upon the frontiers ~~on emergent occasion~~.'
[96] MS: 'adionals.'
[97] Wall Quoins.
[98] 'Peripteros': a temple or other building surrounded by a single peristyle or row of columns; the encompassing peristyle itself.
[99] 'Pseudoperipteros': a form of temple or other building with free columns forming a portico in front (and sometimes in the rear) as in a peripteral building, but with the rest of the columns engaged in the walls instead of standing free.
[100] 'The walk would be but 10 feet in length, if we assume an interval of a column's width between; and between these columns, a space for the plinth at the base of a column: therefore 20 feet II.'
[101] An indistinct word, added later. Because 'mannor' is underscored by a pecked line, Machell seems to have preferred to write, 'the verge of the platform', i.e. 'boundary, border, edge'.
[102] 'The ranks of the companions.'
[103] The life of Valerian I appears in the *Historia Augusta*, 2, 98-102 (supposedly written by Trebellius Pollio).
[104] Here, the fragment ends.
[105] An interlineation here, written in thick pencil, appears to say, MS: 'I am able to draw here thought fit to subjoyn the Inscription.'
[106] 'Lares': Roman family spirit-deities, worshipped as guardians, patrons or protectors.

it was stuck in a Piece of Roman ~~Plaster~~ \ morter or cement / amongst the Rubbish of the Temple Describ'd; & That there was another found also (within ½ a yard of the same place, which I never saw, being carelessly lost by an unhappy boy; & I have h\e/ard of a third[107] taken up som 40 years since, of the same sise & colour, which was offer'd in Sale to Mrs Dalston of Acorn Bank, but not purchased by her. {So I was informed by her daughter Duket, Feb. 9 1688, T.M. She told me also of a booke 550 yeares of age, found in a wall at Burhans hal, with curious lining, which Dr Smith, B[ishop] of Carlile, bid 10s for.}[108]



Figure 3.3.15. Seal Ring Stones. VI.246.



Fig 3.3.16. A sardonix ring stone with a seale cut up on it found in Bleckatt Burhans, 30 of March 1687/8. VI.246.

The 2[d] Oval, which is mark'd with (i), is without doubt a Sardonyx Stone: Of a Duskish colour on the inside (which is the Reverse). But on the Outside, round the Rebate, a little Readish like a man's naile & veined with black & yellow strokes as small as an hair. But then the small Oval, wherein the figure of a man standeth, pointing as it were to the ground with a rod in One hand, & in the other holding an Helmet (or som such like Thing) is now become (through long Continuance) like Discolered Ivory; wherein are som little Transverse, blackish st\r/okes; which to Dissemble & alter the Graveing (\ as /

[107] MS: 3[d].

[108] Thomas Smith, bishop of Carlisle from 1684, was an enthusiastic collector of books. A fellow of Queen's College, Oxford, from 1639, he built up a substantial library, helpfully inscribing his books with his name, the date purchased and the price. On his death in 1702 he left a number of these books to the cathedral library. See David Weston, *Thomas Smith 1614-1702, Dean of Carlisle: 1672 to 1684, Bishop of Carlisle: 1684 to 1702* (Carlisle, 2020), from 56. The Philemon Holland edition of *Britannia* (London, 1610), consulted by this editor, was published in 1637. Purchased by Thomas Smith for £1.10s. in 1656, it remains in Carlisle Cathedral Library (CCL, 6A. 9.7).

to outward appearance) That it seemeth more like a worm than a man, But yet the Impression thereof is Delicate – & was formerly better.
{Have […][109] to London. Som little injuryes to be set on gold.}

[VI.244B]

[Instructions relating to the] Ring stones found in Whelp Castle ruines, 1687.

[VI.244A][110]

Memorandum:
To get these stones sett in 2 seal-rings firmly & handsomely with this inscription on the inside of them: Lapis inventus apud Whelp-Castle. 1688.[111]

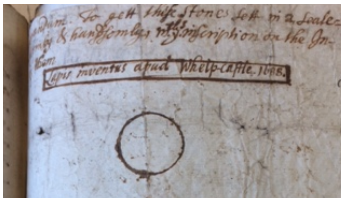


Figure 3.3.17. 'Lapis inventus apud Whelp-Castle. 1688.' VI.244A.

Enquire into the value of the stone; what the figures ingraven is? And have it weighed before you carry it to a goldsmith. That when it is don, you may know what weight of gold the ring is by subducting the weight of the stone, & by this means you will not be cheated. But you may do well to get my cosan Framptons assistance, or Mr Shepherds, to both whom I pray give my service.

[VI.244][112]

		LI	O	d	Gr[113]
The gold of the tow rings is	=	00		04	06
				6	
Which is		00 =		17	00
LI					
The stones w. (H) ii (Gr) 8 the fashioning		1		07	00
	Graving	1			
{6 –15[0]}					
Which is a penny weight					
eighteen grains					
		01		04	00

March the 10th 1690/1
Rec[eive]d of Mr Thomas Machell by the hands of Mr Shepard, one pound four shillings.
By me Geo: Brooke.

[VI.247]

For lending this, & the other stone on the opposite page, lately to London to be put in gold rings, they unluckily broke a piece out of this, which makes the 2d impression of it worse than the former.

{A Cristilline Stone found at the S. west corner of the High Burhans where Whelp Castle Stoode, in 1691.}
The last marked (k.) was a Christalline Stone, much thicker & larger than the other, which for that

[109] The following word in the MS is indistinct. From the context (see following pages) it appears that Machell sent the ring-stone to London to be set in gold.
[110] Piece of paper, 14½cm square, attached to the main page.
[111] 'Stone found at Whelp Castle, 1688.'
[112] Piece of paper, 14cm x 9½cm, attached to the main page.
[113] Machell appears to refer to Troy weight, a standard system of units of mass originating in the French city of Troyes during the medieval period, primarily used in the precious metals and precious stones industries. Troy weight units are the grain, the pennyweight (24 grains), the troy ounce (20 pennyweights), and the troy pound (12 troy ounces). *OED*.

Reason was unfit for a Ring; neither was there any thing graven upon it, which makes me ~~think~~ \ suppose / that it has been a Locket, for wearing upon a ladyes arm only. It was found at High Burhanes, on the S. west side, near the South angle, & was kindly given me by (Susan Dobson) {A good wife in the town; a neighbouring woman};[114] and many such Stones have been found hereabouts. Yet (which is most strange) I never h\e/ard of a Ring, saving one about 60 years since, which was taken up in Bleckats Burhanes (as they now call them) & sold at first hand for a small price, but at the 2[d] hand for 60[li],[115] as I am inform'd, the Stone being a Diamond. & truly if it had such virtue as is ascribed by Dioscoridesto such kind of stones:[116] That being born upon the left shoulder it was good against strife, contention (~~or hideing~~), the ring might be richly ~~valued~~ worth the money. Or, if it would take away fear & melancholly & strengthen the Heart (as the greatest Naturilists say that it will) were but now in some mens hands of my acquaintance.

[Machell's Notes: VI.247]
{in K.: stuck in the Plaster of their Chamber Wall for their private devotion.}
{One found formerly (as Mrs Elizabeth Ducket informed me Feb. 9 1688) of the size with the Cornelian & offerd in sale to her mother Dalston, but not Purchased by her. Query: whether they have not bin their Signa or Simulation Deorum: see Vitruvius.}

[Conclusion]
Thus have I exposed \ un/to your view a most Noble Treasury of Choyce Antiquities, which was opened on the 12[th] of December, 1687, by \ in / seeking for stone in the High Burhans – the Place which I always assign'd for Whelp Castle; & it gave me abundant satisfaction therein, shewing the Riche\s, / Strength & Magnificence of a most Sumptuous Palace, thô long since Destroyed & Buryed under Ground. & the plenty of water which so flowed upon them, the Leaden Pipes which went under the wall, with the Conduit & Channels which I have mentioned within & without

[VI.248]

do show that it hath been vere' Castellum: a Castle Indeed. Which is further confirmed by a Stone I met with in the Side of an house on your left hand as you goe up the town, with this Inscription, but (like the Castle) turn'd upside down:[117]

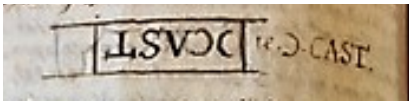


Figure 3.3.18. 'With this Inscription, but (like the Castle) turn'd upside down.' VI.248.

Whence we may Conclude –
HIC STETIRIT CATVLI
REGIA CELSA SENIS[118]
Here stood
WHELP=CASTLE

[114] MS: '{A good wife in the town; a neighbouring woman} a neighbouring wife.'
[115] Machell placed numerals 1, 2, 3 above words in this passage to change the order; the text is transcribed as seen but if the alteration had been made the text would have read, 'but for 60li at the 2[d] hand.'
[116] Pedanius Dioscorides (c.40-90 AD) was a Greek physician travelling with the Roman army, whose fundamental work is known by its Latin name, *De Materia Medica* (c.77 AD). The work describes how to make medicine using almost 600 plants and minerals. www.britannica.com/biography/Pedanius-Dioscorides
[117] MS: 'by a stone I met with in the side of an house on your ~~right~~\ left / hand as you goe ~~down~~ \ up / ~~from hence towards~~ the ~~bridge~~ \ town, / with this inscription, but (like the castle) turn'd upside down.'
[118] Compare Ovid, Heroides 1. 'Letter from Penelope to Ulysses', 1.34: 'hic steterat Priami regia celsa senis.' 'Here stood the lofty realms of old Priam.' Machell was referring to Ovid speaking of ancient Troy, but adapting the line to refer to, and give lustre to, his own family by association with King Priam of old.

[VI.viii]

[E. Discoveries, 1687–1692]
[E1. From William Nicolson's List of the Contents of Volume VI]

A collection of Roman Inscriptions (with a discourse on them) sent to Dr Mill in 1692, p.181 to 249. Some draughts referr'd to are wanting here; but are in a fairer transcript in 4to, which was the Book sent by the author to Oxford.

[VI.181]

[E2.] {Out of my collection of the antiq[uities] of W. & C.}
A Booke of Antient Inscriptions sent to Dr Mill
Principal of Ed. Hall in Oxon in
1692
With the Cuttes[119]

[Note] I write antient with a (t) not a (c) because it comes from the Latine antiquus: T.M.[120]

[VI.189][121]

Inscriptions at Apulby
{Stephanus è *libro Notitiarum*}[122]
At Apalby (the antient Aballaba, reckon'd amongst the great cities of old, and yet the County Towne of Westmerland) are divers Inscriptions both Antient and Modern. There was One at the Castle (grav'd upon Brass) in the Tower call'd Cæsars: which evil hands have depriv'd us of. But there are yet Severall about the Schoolhouse, being the Collection of the learn'd Mr Bainebrig, Schoolmaster here in Camdens time, whereof Some are Topicall, the Rest translated hither by Him from other places {of which tis Reported (& by some believed) that He left a Spell or Inchantment upon Them; That no man could read them unless he lay 3 days & 3 nights upon his Back.}[123]

[a.] On the Front of the little Schoolhouse (vulgarly calld the Gardine House from its Situation in the midst of a Gardine, & which is allover adorned with Inscriptions) are these purely Topicall. Whereof the 1st (marked a.) shews the situation of the Towne \ chiefe street / of Apalby: "Quam circumfluit Ituna": which Eden Incompasseth, & the Antiquitie of it, as having been a Roman Station. As also the devastation Thereof by War & Pestilence. And that the Market was translated thence, to a Place call'd Gilshaughlin, which is iiii or v miles N.W. from Apalby. And the Reason why it was Their, rather than any other Place, is Probably This; That some of the Fallowfields (whose Seat was hard by at Great Strickland Hall, commonly call'd Melkinthrop Hall) might at that time be Maior of the Town. Note: C.C. in the end of the 1st line stands for Circum.; F.F. in the ivth for Funditus; F., in the end, for fuit. All the rest is easy enough.

{b.} The 2^{d}. Marked b.) Gives an account of the Foundation of this little Schoolhouse; for there was a School long before this – ex fundatione Burgensium de Apalby;[124] as I have shewn in my Treatiss

[119] 'With the engravings.' Cut: a design cut or engraved upon wood, copper, or steel; the impression from this; an engraving, a plate, now restricted to engravings on wood, those on metal being called plates. *OED*.
[120] Another note here, remarks, 'Cornage' [commuted] 'consisted of "Eundo cum regis exercitu contra Scotos in vantgard[ia], et redeundo in reregard[ia]. T.M. É Tur. London"'; which translates as, 'going with the king's army against the Scots in the vanguard and returning in the rearguard' [N.B. The most dangerous position in each case.] 'T.M. From the Tower of London.'
[121] Also numbered p.3.
[122] 'Stephanus, from *The Book of Lists*.'
[123] For similar information see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, II.507, II.509.
[124] 'Founded by the burghers of Appleby.'

of it. The only difficulty in this Inscription is F.F. for fundati fuêre; & in the VI[th] line H.M.O.B. &c. i.e. Hoc Monumentum ob Ma\e/rita[m] Præstita[m] Riginaldus Bainebrig Posuit.[125]
{c.} The 3[d] (marked c.) sheweth how Mr Bainebrig Dr LL taught School Here, till the Great School was builded by Him & Hoc Monumentum Sibi Vivens Posuit.[126]

The rest which follow are on the Same Front; whereof som perhaps were found about Apalby & Therefore not marked with any Townes Names (which I have Noted with an Asterisc) do sufficiently testify. And yet some suchlike may be Published in Camden,

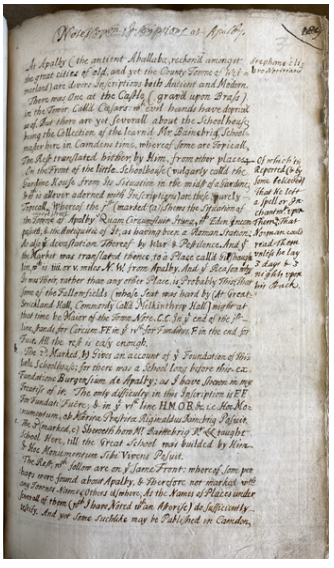


Figure 3.3.19. Fair Copy of Machell's work on Appleby Inscriptions sent to Dr John Mill at Oxford. I.189.

[VI.191]

forasmuch as 'twas usual with the same Legions to leave the same Inscriptions behind them in severall places. Note, the 4[th] Inscription is Pub[lished] in Camden, but with this variation in the ivth line: II. UVG. F. And there is also one like the 5[th], but not so perfect, in Ædib[us] Howardorum de Naworth.[127]
I wonder much at this Second Stone having Legio Septima Victrix upon it. Because I never remember my selfe to have met with such a Legion as This in any other Inscription or Author. Blatumbulgulium is Bulness, vulgo Bowness in Cumberland, where the Picts wall begins.[128] Æsica is the ruines of an old towne, so call'd, near Netherby upon Esk in Cumberland, where a piece of Roman Gold (I think

[125] 'Reginald Bainebrig set up this monument in honour of the estimable Margaret.' This was Lady Margaret Russell (1560-1616), daughter of Francis Russell, 2nd earl of Bedford, wife of George Clifford, 3rd earl of Cumberland and mother of Lady Anne Clifford.
[126] 'He set up this monument to himself in his lifetime.'
[127] 'At the seat of the Howards of Naworth.'
[128] Camden wrote in *Britannia*, 'Promontoriolo huic incumbit antiquum illud opidum Blatum-Bulgium (fortasse a *bulch* Britannorumquae *interstitium* sive *divortium* sonat)' which translates as, 'Upon this standeth that ancient towne Blatum-Bulgium (happily of *bulch*, a British word that signifieth *a separation*).' According to Bulmer's *History and Directory of Cumberland* (1901), 'There is some uncertainty as to the name by which this station was known to the Romans. Camden, from a resemblance of sound in the names, says it was the Blatum Bulgium of that people; but Horsley, Hutchinson, and others affirm that it was the Tunnocellum of the Romans, and that it was the eighteenth station on the wall, being occupied, according to the Notitia, by the Cohors prima Ælia Classica.' T. Bulmer & Co., *History, Topography, & Directory of Cumberland* (Preston, 1901) 32.

of Nerva but the letters are dim) was found \ the / last year; {penes Hugone' Todd}[129] about the bigness of a Roman penny.

Chesters.
There are 3 places of This Name in Northumberland, as I have observed in my Pervestigation of the Picts-wall; whereof 2 of Them are upon the said Wall, one being 2 miles distant from Hexam near Wallic Grange, which therefore I call Chesters by Wallic; the other near Woa-Town (not far from Cærvorran & Thirleway {Castle which therefore I call Chester by Woa Towne.} The 3^{d} (not far ~~distant~~ S. from it, where I suppose ~~this~~ stone was found) is call'd Chesters-Iverton, or Chesters on Caudley, so I thought fit to distinguish.[130]

8. There is an Inscription, much like unto this, published by Camden apud Whitley Castle yet with considerable variacions; for that begins thus: IMP. CAES. L. … This, CAES. IVL. … That erected by the COH. III; this by the II NERVIORVM. That at Whitley Castle; this at Alsten-moore: with divers others. But one may serve to explaine the other. Note in This, That DV stands for D·V, i.e. DIVI per implicationem & reduplicationem litera I.[131] And yet Alsten-moore is in the way which leads from Whelp Castle at Kirkby-thore to Cævarron on the Top of Glen-Whelp near the Picts-wall; which is an antient Roman Cas-way paved with Pebles & call'd Maiden Way {for Mr Camden was imposed upon by the bordering Troopers, both as to the matter & Termini of it when they made him believe it was paved with flint & extended to Maiden Castle on Stainemore. By which it appeareth that he never came to the Bottom of Westmorland (the best part of the county) and therefore no wonder he gives so slight a relation of it.}
{via virginea ducit a Castro Catulino, ad Convallem Catuli juxta Cærvorran ~~via virginea ducit ad convallem~~ Catuli.}[132]

9. There is One like this in Camden, At Rochester, but This differs from it, 1. By Implication of Letters in the 2^{d} & 3^{d} lines, which in That are at Large; 2. By Variation of Mood in the fourth; 3. By wanting of the Transverse Stro\a/kes over N. & H. in the beginnings of the 5th & 6th; 4^{ly} by the Redundance of a Leaf after C. in the 5th also; and by several Periodical Points diversly dispers'd. The like differences may be observ'd in the Rest that Occur in Camden, but I pass them over for Brevities Sake.

[VI.193][133]

The 14th in Number (as they stand in the wall) is placed at d.

{15 & 16} The xvth & xvith are in Mr Camden. But then his letters are not so Genuine. For these (as I take it) may be Originals. The only difficulty is in the Subscriptions; whereof the 1st is Hic lapis invent[us] est Brovonaci[134] i.e. at Browham. The other, Hoc Monumentum est Gallagi,[135] i.e. At Kirkbythore, where Whelp-Castle stood; for Tho' Mr Camden calls it Wheallop to bring it as near as he can to Wallatun and so to Gallatum, yet we (with all due respect & reverence to so Great an Author)[136] being better informed by antient writeings, do with the vulgar call it Whelp-Castle. {For there was one WHELP (sic Anglo-Saxones dixêre CATVLVM)[137] Lord of this place at or before the Norman Conquest.}

[129] 'In the possession of Hugh Todd', see Machell's correspondence, Part 3, Ch.2, I.502, I.503A.
[130] For analysis of this paragraph and Machell's association with Hadrian's Wall, see Eric Birley, 'Notes: Thomas Machell and Hadrian's Wall?', *CW2*, 51 (1951), 181-82.
[131] 'Divi, by implication and by reduplication, of the letter 'I'.'
[132] 'The Maidens Way leads from the castle of the Catuli to the valley of Catulus, by Caervorran.'
[133] Also numbered p.7.
[134] 'This stone was found at Brovonacum.'
[135] 'This monument is at Gallagum.'
[136] MS: 'with all due reverence \ 2 / & respect \ 1 / to so great an author'.
[137] 'For this is what the Anglo-Saxons called Catulus.'

[VI.214]



Figure 3.3.20. Inscription '16. ad App[leby].' VI.188.

[VI.186D]



Figure 3.3.21. 'The xxth is design'd by Mr Bainbrig as a fairer copy to preserve the Memory of Those Inscriptions upon the Rocks which are at Crawdundale.' VI.186D.

20. The xxth is design'd by Mr Bainbrig as a fairer copy to preserve the Memory of Those Inscriptions upon the Rocks which are at Crawdundale in Newbigin Parish, as appears by the letters which he has caused to be graved under them & which I read Thus: Qvæ. Svpra SCRIPTA SVNT APVD Crawdundale. But when I went to view the Place, I found The Original (which much surprised me.) \ Thus / exactly:

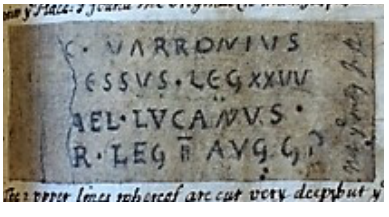


Figure 3.3.22. Varronius Inscription. VI.193.

The 2 upper lines whereof are cut very deep, but the lower are don with a lighter hand \ & / in a much finer and more Polite Character; which maks me suppose them severall Inscriptions: Whereof that of Varonius seems the more antient, The Letters Λ. E. C. L. & V, carrying (as it were in their very foreheads) the Prima Literarum Elementa, before they \ were / jump'd together in Forme, & arriv'd to perfection. And the Judicious CAMDEN observes, That in this Iland from the Time of Severus til Gordian & afterwards, The Letter A was always writ (in Roman Inscriptions) without the Transverse or Coupling stroake. And so it is in that of Varronius; But otherwise in that of Lucanus. And as to the former He Readeth it Thus:

[VI.195][138]

Varronius Præfectus Legionis Vicessimæ Valentis Victricis.[139] But the word Præfectus, or –Ectus, is not visible now (however, the Alteration came or the Mistake was committed) but planely ESSVS. The Latter he Readeth after this manner: Ælius Lucanus Præfectus Legionis Secundæ Augustæ, Castra metati sunt,[140] or som such like thing (But you se the Characters). And Then, He tells us "That the LEGIO VICES-SIMA VALENS VICTRIX (which quartered at DEVA, now called West-Chester) and the LEGIO[141] SECUNDA AVGVSTA (which quartered at ISCA now CAERLEON in Wales) Being call'd against the enemy in these Parts, may seem to have Pitched their Tents Hereabouts, which is not unlikely. But I do observe That the Romans were wont to leave very many Inscriptions behind them upon such Rocks as afforded them Stone for their Public Buildings: whereof This is One; as appears by stones which are yet Digged up out of the Foundations at Kirkbythore & which (we are satisfied) came mostly from Thence.[142] And doubtless there have been more Letters \ here, / though now Done away. For in a Rock just above this (looking for OCTO. COT. COS. which Camden mentions in vicina Rupe;[143] not now to be found) I met with another, which is as followeth and which he hath not.

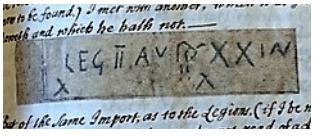


Figure 3.3.23. Inscription not known to Camden. VI.195.

But of the Same Import as to the Legions (if I be not mistaken with the former), for we do not read of Legio Vicessima Prima. Nor will the various forms of the A (in the same Line) favour such reading.

{Appleby}

But to Returne againe to APALBY. I hope it is possible (by these little Hints that I have given) To Read all the lines which are writ on this house, without the Trouble of lying 3 days & 3 nights on your Back, As a Counter Charm against Mr Bainebrigs Reported Magick; who being a Learned Ingenious person, & understanding the use of the Globes

[VI.197][144]

(with some other things which \ yet / are not vulgar) is therefore look'd upon as a Conjurer, but was in Reality a very good man; as appears from his Building The Famous Schoolhouse (wherein they now teach) with the Help & Assistance of some Benefactors. On the Front of which he hath placed These Inscriptions.

{1.} 1st over the school door: Whereof (as I take it) the 1st is Read Thus:

---

[138] Also numbered p.9.

[139] 'Varronius, Prefect of the 20th Legion, Valens Victrix.' Camden (followed by Machell) named the 20th Legion as 'Valens Victrix' instead of 'Valeria Victrix.' RIB 998 (Roman Inscriptions of Britain) gives: 'Gaius Varronius [.]essus legionis XX Valeriae Victricis | Aelius Lucanus | cornicen legionis II Augustae C[…]; translated as, Gaius Varronius [.]essus, (soldier) of the Twentieth Legion Valeria Victrix. Aelius Lucanus, cornicen of the Second Legion Augusta.' https://romaninscriptionsofbritain.org/inscriptions/998. According to RIB, 'The surviving portion is now built into the west wall of the barn at Underwood Farm, Milburn, 4.8km. north of Kirkby Thore. The rest is now lost.'

[140] 'Ælius Lucanus Prefect of the 2nd Legion Augusta moved camp.' For a fuller discussion of Machell's transcription and interpretation, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, III.283.

[141] MS: 'Legio \ EGIO. /'

[142] MS: 'Thence Hence.'

[143] 'On a neighbouring rock.'

[144] Also numbered p.11.

"Haec Schola Anno Quinto Jacobi Magnæ Britanniæ Regis a Riginaldo Bainebrig Scholarcha Ejusdem, Domino Autore, Fundata fuit. 1607";[145] wherein S. standing for 5 (which figure it somewhat represents) is chiefly remarkable.

2. The II[d] is a Fragment, Translated hither by Mr Bainebrig from Bowes in Yorkshire, which Place was antiently call'd Lavatris, perhaps a lavando (and Bowes a Baijs) from the Roman Baths that were builded there. It is Published in Camden with a Remarke on another Inscription, which gives light to this & to my Conjecture Concerning the Antient and Modern name of the Place whence it came. "Imperante Severo (sayes he) Cum Virius Lupus Legatus, et Proprætor Britanniæ esset, Cohors Prima Thracum Præsidium a(pu)d Bows egit; Cui Balneum (quod etiam BALINEVM dicitur) restituit (vi ignis exustum)". Ut patet ex inscriptione quae hinc Cottingtoniam, ad Ædes Roberti Cottoni; translata est.[146] In which is added CVRANTE VAL. FRO[N]TONE &c.[147]

{4} The IIII[th] is so eassie, that He who runns may Read.[148] I shall therefore need to say nothing of it. But there is another Inscription on the North end of the same Schoolhouse, Over the Door of the highest Story, Design'd for a library, which gives an account of the kind Assistance Mr Bainebrig met with in his Designe of Building This school, from the noble family of the CLIFFORDS of Apalby which is now Extinck; and the letters in a manner worn out but \ that / I took care to preserve them formerly, which is (as I read \ them /) De Schola Bene Meruerunt, Franciscus Nobilis Comes Cumbriæ Dedit Ligna: Margareta Comitissa Cumbriæ; Clarissima Fæmina, Saxa Dedit.[149]

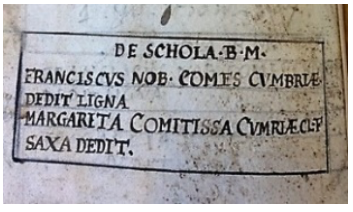


Figure 3.3.24. Appleby School; Clifford Inscription. VI.186B.

[145] 'This school was founded in the 5th year of James King of Great Britain by Reginald Bainebrig, Teacher, inscribed by the Head-Master.' (i.e. Inscription set up by Bainebrig himself).
[146] The passage in Camden's *Britannia* is as follows: 'Imperante Severo, cum Virius Lupus legatus et propraetor esset Britanniae, cohors prima Thracum praesidium hic egit, cui balneum (quod etiam balineum dicitur) restituit, ut patet ex hac inscriptione quae hinc Cottingtoniam ad aedes clarrissimi et eruditissimi viri Roberti Cottoni ordinis equestris translat'; which translates as, 'Whiles under Severus the Emperour Virius Lupus ruled as Lieuntenant Generall and Propraetor of Britaine, the first Cohort of the Thracians lay heere in garison: for whose sake he reedified the Bath or Hote house, as appeereth by this inscription, which from hence hath beene translated to the Cottingtonian, unto the house of that right worshipfull and learned Sir Robert Cotton, Knight: See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1607), Latin translation, Dana F. Sutton, Yorkshire, 64. https://philological.cal.bham.ac.uk/cambrit. The Latin in Machell's MS translates as, 'During the reign of Severus when Virius Lupus was legate and governor of Britain, the First Cohort of Thracians did garrison duty at Bowes; for these men he restored the bath-house (which is also called a hot-house). It had been destroyed by a serious fire. As is apparent from an inscription which has been transferred from here to the Cottington [library collection] at the house of Robert Cotton.'
[147] The inscription given by Camden is as follows,
'DAE … FORTVNAE / VIRIVS LVPVS / LEG. AVR. PR. PR. / BALINEVM VI/ IGNIS EXVST- / VM. COH. I. THR- / ACVM REST-/ ITVIT. CVRANTE / VAL. FRON- / TONE PRAEF - - - / EQ. ALAE VETTO'. See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1607, Latin translation, Dana F. Sutton, Yorkshire, 64, https://philological.cal.bham.ac.uk/cambrit. CVRANTE VAL. FRO[N]TONE translates as, 'under the supervision of Valerius Fronto.'
[148] A biblical quotation: Habakkuk 2.2.
[149] 'They have deserved well of the school: Francis noble earl of Cumberland gave the timber; Margaret Countess of Cumberland, most illustrious lady, gave the stones.'

[VI.199] [150]

And there was also another House (with a little Gardine) at the South end of the Great School, Design'd for the Usher by Mr Bainebrig,[151] whereon was this writ: Reginaldus Bainebrig Hoc Ædificium Hipodidascalis Dono Dedit In Perpetuum.[152] But this House of the Ushers was demolished upon the erecting of a new dwelling house for the use of the master, over the door of which is writ thus:

[VI.198A]



Figure 3.3.25. Appleby School Inscription; Thomas Smith and Ran[dal] Sanderson 1671. VI.198A.

[VI.199][153]

Which shews it was built at the cost of Thomas Smith, Dr in Divinity (then Dean, now Bishop[154] of Carlile, who was born at Whit-Wall not far from Apalby), and of Rand[all] Sanderson, Master of Arts (then rector of Way-Hill in Hantshire, born at Regill in Westmorland), who had been Fellows of Queen's Coll. Oxon, & scholars here.[155]

There is but one inscription more (that I know of) in Apalby, which is this above the gaol-door:

PORTA (2) PATENS (3) ESTO (1) NVLLI CLAVDATVR HONESTO.[156]

And thus having finished all the Inscriptions that are in This PlaceI shall proceed to Kirkbythore, which has bin another Roman Station. But by the way shal \ also / take notice of this Romane Camp & other antiquities in the Lordship of Crakenthorp.

{Crakenthorp}

The Roman Way (called Via Regia in Deeds, S.D.)[157] Leads by Abalby to Kirkbythore all along Down Crackenthorp moore; At the Low end of which, on the South \ We[st] / side, the way, is a large Roman Camp of Quadrangular form (but that the Corners Thereof are abated) & having 3 Gates on

[150] Also numbered p.13.
[151] Usher: an assistant to a schoolmaster or head-teacher; an assistant-master. *OED*.
[152] 'Reginald Bainebrig gave this building as a gift to the Ushers, in perpetuity.'
[153] VI.198 contains text in faded pencil beneath an otherwise empty square containing the words, 'Place here the Camp on Crackanthorp moore.' The faded text reads, 'When Marius or Morus, King of the Britans & General of the Roman forces had conquerd the Picts, on the top of St[anemore] where had ful another […] of \ the very / same forme, […] Morus advanced thus far.'
[154] MS: 'Bibshop'.
[155] 'Randall Sanderson of Westmorland. Plebeian. Matriculated Queen's College, Oxford, 1628; BA 1632; MA 1636. Delegate of the Parliamentary Visitors, 1647. Rector of Weyhill, Hampshire, 1650-79; Canon of Sarum, 1662'. *OAD*.
[156] Two possible translations of this common inscription: A. 'Let the door stand open, let it not be closed to any honourable man.' B. 'Let the door stand open to none; let it be closed to the honourable man.' [An ironic twist, possibly suitable for the doorway of a prison.] By numbering the first three words, Machell seems to have been aware that the translation is open to question. This inscription also appears in Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, II.521.
[157] SD: without date.

every side, with Bulwarks afore them; which is a Mile Distant from Kirkbythore, & therefore supposed to be cast up against it.
When Galgacus*, Prince of the Caledonians, That Noble General (from whom it may seam to be call'd GALLAGVM if he may be supposed to have marched thus far) Advanc'd his Army against the Romans under the Command of Julius Agricola (of whom we find mention in the 4th inscription at Apalby School) And gave him 2 Battles. In the 1st of which he was pretty \ somewhat / successful, falling in upon their Camp, where the IX LEGION lay; Yet was Repuls'd ~~again~~ by Agricolas horse. But in the Latter, He was utterly Ruin'd; for 10000 of the Brittaines fell in it \ that conflict / & but 00300 Romans.[158] After which they were Absolute Masters \ of them; / this being the last effort of the
[VI.205][159]
Brittish valour; the last field that was fought.)

[Machell's Notes: VI.199]
*{The Camp: I fear this of Galgacus is not consistent, tho it is not improbab[le] that the Pictish Britanes held this part of England which is now cald Westm'land till the Battle of Manus.}

[VI.202]

Crackenthorp in St Michael's Apalby vulgo Bongate.[160]
The figure of an Urne found amongst severall others in a hole of Ashes at a place call'd Machells Bank in the Lordship of Crakanthrop, & near Kirkbythore, within x yardes \ on the left hand / of the Great Romane \ Way / which Leadeth thither.

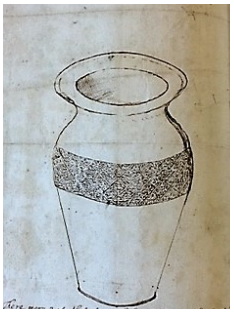


Figure 3.3.26. An urn found at Machell's Bank. VI.202.

High 4 \ in[ch] / & 1/5; the d[i]am[eter] in the mouth as here, 2 inch. The brim as here ½. The diam[eter] at bottom 1 \ inch / & 6 partes (in 10) a little thicker than a 5s piece. Of a blackish earth,[161] light & sponge, not sounding. There were 3 of these Urnes (whereof this was the least) which stood Contiguouse ~~in~~ Triangular ~~form~~ wise.[162] But in Such a Repository as I have not heard of, & perhaps was never observed before. For they were hid in a Circular hole or pit of Clay (made for the purpose) 6 foote in Circumference & about 3 in[ch] depth, the sides whereof were perpendicular. And herein they were compassed & covered \ over / with burn'd-boanes ~~a sort of black ashes~~ \ and ashes, / laid within a foote of the Surface of the Ground; The Remainder being ~~covered &~~ cloas'd up with earth. And in the 2 Greter were ashes & boanes; But in the Lesser (which is here described) Black ashes only.
And at about 40 or 50 yards destance (by the wayside also) was another Repository

[158] One altered numeral is unclear: the number of men slain could have been 00340 or 00300.
[159] Also numbered p.15.
[160] This heading has been moved from MS.VI.201.
[161] MS: 'Blankish'.
[162] MS: Machell added pencilled lines to place 'triangular wise' before 'contiguouse'.

[VI.203]

with Ashes & Boanes; But it had no Urnes in it, which seems to have bin for som ordinary persons; but That ~~other~~ for som persons of \ greater / Quality, \ with / his wife & ~~his~~ child & ~~som~~ other Relations.[163] {Informante. Thomas Longhorn: teste occulato.}[164]

[VI.205][165]

A little further towards Kirkbythore & by the way side, is a small Forte call'd Maiden-Hold, which I look upon as the Prætentura that belong'd to the Camp, being but a Bowshott distant from it, & to have som Relation to the Maiden way (mentioned before) and the Maiden Castle which is upon Stainemore {a ~~stony~~ mountaine \ lying / twixt Yorkshire & Westm'land}& lyes (in like manner) Before another Notable Camp of the Same Sise & Shape on the Top of the Mountaine but at far greater distance, where the Romane way first enters Westmerland.

{A nest of urns} {Machels Bank}

And ½ a mile nerer to Kirkbythore at a Place which is calld Machells Bank (in the Lordship of CRAKANTHORP, about x yards of the Roman Way, on your left hand) were lately discovered 2 strange Repositories of Urns & Ashes, with Burnt Bones amongst them, one of which Urns was transmitted to Oxon by my very worthy & ingeniouse friend Mr Hugh Tod, who (being Chaplaine to the Bishop of Carlile, the Reverend & learned Dr T. Smith, and sent to preach at Kirkbythore for me whilst I was busied in contriving & altering the castle at ROSE for his Lordships Reception, being newly made Bishop),[166] met with [it] Here; whereof This is the figure & full Dimension.[167]

[VI.204]



Figure 3.3.27. Urn, drawn on a separate piece of paper and pasted onto the page. VI.204.

[VI.205]

There were III of these Urns (This being the Least) which stood Contiguouse one unto another, in Triangular ~~wise~~ \ figure, being placed / in the ~~very~~ midst of a Round Pit of Clay made for the purpose, about a Yard deep, ~~with~~ the sides Perpendicular. And herein they were compass'd, & Covered Over \ with / Burn'd Bones & black Ashes, to within a foot of the surface of the ground \ ~~earth~~ / the Remainder bein[g] closed up with Earth. The 2 Greater Urnes were in shape & proportion much like unto that which I have Graphically described \ heretofore / (amongst other things) in a letter to Sir William Dugdale of March 25 1684, which was Published to my unknowledge & Printed at Oxford, amongst your *Philosophic Transactions* Apr. 20 at p.555, upon which they (as kindly as unexpectedly) sent me the complement of being Elected into the Fellowship

[163] This paragraph has been lightly scored through with a cross.
[164] 'Eye-witness.'
[165] Also numbered p.15.
[166] Thomas Smith became bishop of Carlisle in 1684: David W.V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142. For Machell's skill as an architect, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.538.
[167] See dimensions on VI.202, above.

[VI.207]

of the OXFORD PHILOSOPHIC SOCIETY, which I think my self bound in Point of Gratitude, Here, to acknowledg as a Respe[c]t beyond my deserts.[168]

One of these greater sort of Urns was unhappily broke all to Pieces by the careless Hedgers \ Labourers / who accidentally light upon them in casting a Ditch; the other (which I freely bestow'd on my Honour'd Brother, Hugh Machell Esqs (Lord of the Mannour) was a little disabled; But the 3^{d} (which is sent up to OXFORD) was whole & entire. They were all of a Blackish sort of Clay, but softer then Earthen-pots use to be, for the Sheards would not ring. In the 2 greater, were Ashes & Bones, but in the Least (which is here discrib'd) were black Ashes only.

{Another Repository of Ashes onely}
The other REPOSITORY was about 40 or 50 yards distant from the former, by the way side also, and was nothing else but a Pit of Like Forme, full of Ashes & bones \ without any Urnes / {which make mee imagin that urnes have bin used as [blank]}[169] which gives ~~us~~ occasion to look upon them as a mark of Distinction twixt Persons of a Greater & lesser Quality; (as coffins are now \ adayes, / being seldom \ made / used of for the meanest sort) \ for / Terra Tegitur, qui non habet urnam.[170]

[A Coin and two Altars]
A Quarter of a Mile from Machells Bank thus Northwards,[171] At a Place call'd Miln Butts on the Southside of Machells Ing (which is a Meadow lying directly under the ~~mantle of~~ skirts of WHELP-CASTLE, the River Troutbeck being only betwixt them), ~~A~~ This Coin[172] was found ~~in 1687~~, of Trajan the Emperor \ in 1687; / who Reigned Anno Xti 99.[173]
And about as far Westwards from the said Place, a Roman Altar \ ? / was found som years agoe at a place that is called Charles Dub, in the river of Eden; & another at Old Troutbeck Foot. But all the letters are quite washed out, which notwithstanding I thought fit to describe for the workmanship of it,[174] amongst Other Antiquities at Crakenthorp Hall, the Chief & most Antient Seat of the Machells, where they have continued Lords of the Mannour ~~many Hundreds of years~~ {beyond all record, for there is no evidence how or when they came by it; may they be thankful for so great a blessing and long may they flourish.}
The 1st of these is the Coin I now spake of; the 2^{d} is the Altar which [was] found in Ellerkar, which stands in the End of Crackenthorp hall; & the 3d is an Altar which standeth there also, translated thither from Kirkbythore, concerne which next ~~from~~ \ with / Kirkbythore,

[VI.208]

[a] co[n]siderable town con[sisting] as it were, of 3 villages […][175]

[Machell's Notes: VI.208]
Then p.35/36 of Gallatum Cat. Guolph; then the p.ij of the new name K. &c; then 31.[176]

---

[168] See Section A1. of this chapter: research findings presented in a letter to Sir William Dugdale, published in *Philosophical Transactions*, 14 April 1684.
[169] This phrase is in pencil.
[170] Augustine, *City of God*, 1.12. Augustine's actual words were 'Caelo tegitur, qui non habet urnam': 'his covering is the sky, who has no urn.' Machell, however, substituted 'terra' for 'caelo', so that his meaning became, 'He is covered with earth, who has no urn.'
[171] MS: '\ 2 / From Machells Bank thus Northwards \ 1 / a Quarter of a Mile' [pencilled interlineation changes the form of the sentence].
[172] MS: 'Co~~yn~~e \ oin /.
[173] MS: 'a \ this / coyne \ in / was found ~~in 1687~~ of Trajan the emperor \ in 1687 / who reigned Anno Xti 99.'
[174] MS: '~~som years since, in Ellerkar at~~ \ som years agoe at a place that is called / Charles Dub, in the river \ of / Eden, ~~not to mention~~ \ & / another ~~which was lately found~~ at Old Troutbeck Foot. But all the letters were \ are / quite washed away \ out / which notwithstanding I shall \ thought fit to / describe for the workmanship of it.'
[175] The rest of this sentence is illegible: not transcribed.
[176] Machell was referring to pages of the various 'books' of notes he had created in the course of his research. These are now dispersed throughout the MSS as a result of William Nicolson's reorganisation of the material prior to binding. On VI.223 (Appleby), for example, Machell's note reminds readers to, 'See p.19 hujus, a

3 principal streets which mett at the Castle, Sc. Cross End, Down End & Wharton End, being arguments of it[s] former capacity.

[VI.209]

[Gallatum]
Here Camden tells us great Ruines of an antient Town are to be seen, & Ptolemy records it as the 4 city of the Brigantes. But all the Vestigia I can finde of it (after so long ~~a tract of time~~) lyes betwixt ~~the river of~~ Troutbeck on the S. East the Roman Way, with a piece beyond it called Waterman Croft on the S. West; Keld, or Kelk-bottom (as tis commonly call'd) on the N. West. For within this Circuit (but Rarely elsewhere) we have often observ'd foundations of Walls, both brick & stone (some of which were 4 wal's on a breast standing close to one another); Channels of stone & Leaden Pipes for conveying of water \ from the castles which stood some time[177] in the midst of the T[own]; / Urnes, Altars & Tiles with other fragments of Roman Antiquity; & a \ whol bag of Coynes found at several times & in several places / ~~number of coyns~~ which I have now by me, amongst which is one of Julia Mamêa, Augustus, his wife; & another of Julia Augusta, his frolicsome Daughter, whom he could not govern & of whom Macrobius tells in many \ diverse / witty & som wanton Passages.[178]

{Whelp Castle}
Near the East point of this Tract of Ground in the most antient part thereof (as having an easy ascent on all sides) stands the Main Fort (now & antiently called WHELP CASTLE but commonly known by the name of High Burhans, from its high situation comparitively to the Rest of the Towne; the English Saxons calling the Ruines of Old Forts & Castles by the name of Burwens (or rather Burhanes, as I have seen it writ in old Deeds) of which this country affords many Instances. And it (yet) doth appear to have been a Large Square replenish'd with Buildings, containing ~~about~~ \ beside the Mantle and Outworkes / 6 acres of Ground, whose Angles respect the (Quatuor Cardines Caelorum) \ or / iiii Points of Heaven.
And about 40 yards from the East Angle of it, at Burwen Hall end, was this Altar found, with a little Ara, or Portable Altar / attending upon it, which was rude & unfinished, but all the Letters were quite worn away (except what you see), which seemes to have bin [done by] sharping of edgetools,[179] which may seem to have hapned after Xtianity had prevailed so far as to make them brake down their Altars & Images; whereof this […][180]

[Machell's Notes: VI.209]
{Gallatum or Kirkbythore described as Brigantes. ~~Sometimes the 4th city of the Brigantes~~. This is wrong.}
{Kirkbythore. N.B. This is varied & inlarged to Millbeck & Ch[arles] Dub. in Camden.}

[VI.211][181]
(which was also found about the Same Place but close by the Castle) may seem to be one; But the Inscriptions upon the Next Page {p.36}[182] are purely Topical, Relating to the Family of the Machells of Crakenthorp Hall, for explication of the former of which, see what Sir William Dugdal has published in his *Monasticon Anglicanum* out of the Charter of King Henry II, Reciteing & Confirming the gifts of King Henry his Grandfather, & of ~~severall~~ others with him, amongst which Hugh ~~de~~ Morvil (Lord of Westm'land*) confirms the donation of Halth Le Malchael and Eve his wife of XV acres of land, & of certain meadows in Ellerkar (in the Lordship of Crakanthorp). Given to them by

description of the town & castle; & at p.35/36 of the old name, Galatum.' For Machell's original p.36, see VI.210; for 'Cat Guolph', see VI.230; for the name of Kirkby Thore on Machell's original p.31, see VI.223.
[177] The word here is faded and near to the page edge. 'Time' is suggested but is questionable.
[178] Macrobius, *Saturnalia.* For the 'witty' and 'wanton passages' see Jacqueline Long, 'Julia-jokes at Macrobius's *Saturnalia*: Subversive decorum in late antique reception of augustan political humor.' *International Journal of the Classical Tradition* 6:3 (1999), 337-55.
[179] Edge-tools: any implement with a sharp cutting edge, as a knife or sword; technically denoting chiefly chisels, gouges, planes, etc., also axes, hatchets. *OED*.
[180] MS: 'which \ seemes to have bin / sharping of edgetools \ which may seem to have hapned / after Xtianity had prevailed so far as to destroy \ make them brake down their Altars & / their ~~Altars & throw down~~ Images. whereof this ~~that followes (which was~~).'
[181] Also numbered p.22.
[182] VI.210, below.

the said Priory ~~&~~ \ which are / now held by the Bishop of Carlile or his \ under / Tenants ~~under him~~ who did a yearly Homage & Service to the Lord of Crakenthorp and payes a final Rem[ittance] on St Barnabas Day for enjoying the same.[183]

{Hoveden p.690.[184] Mali Catuli}
And for the Latter see Hoveden, temp. RIC. I [1189-99], who gives an account of this Roger Machell, whom he calls Malus Catulus: that he was Drown'd at Messana in Sisily and the Broad Seal of England found about his neck. And here we must note that the Machels were anciently calld MALI CATULI, as appears by severall Deeds beyond date which belongs to this family, in the bodyes of which they bear the one name & in the Roundalls about the Seals (which I have inserted in the following page for confirmation) is inscribed the other, se Fig. 4.

[Machell's Notes: 211]
*{This seems to have bin Hugh Morvil the First: father to that Hugh Morvil who slew Thomas a Becket in the Time of King H. & thereupon forfeited al his estate.}

[VI.210]

M.M.
FRM SIV. HALTH. LE MALCHAEL ~~DOM~~
DOM DE CRAKENTH
ET CL. F. EVÆ VXORIS EIVS.
PRIORAT.VS SAN. MARIÆ KARL.
INTER PRIMOS …… TORES
TEMP. H. CONQVESTORIS F.[185]

For explication & confirmation of this inscription see what Sir William Dugdal has publish'd in *Mon. Ang.*[186]

E. M.
CL. V. ROMA. CATVLI. DOM. CVST.
MAGNI ANG. SIG. S. PLENI. POTENTQ.
RIC. I. QVI SANCTA SVA EXPED. CONT.
RA TVRCAS NAVFRAGGIO PERIIT
HOC AVTEM KENOTAΦIONE.
CORPUS ENIM MESSANÆ REPONITUR
ROGERHEAVED[187]

[183] See grants to the Abbey at Carlisle (inc. Halth de Malchael and Eva his wife) in a Confirmation of Henry II, in Dugdale, *Monasticon, Vol. 6.* (London, 1846 edition), Priory of Carlisle Charters no.3: Charters of Henry II, 144. See also *N&B2*, 240-42. For Halth de Mauchael see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, III.78, III.87, VI.221.
[184] Roger of Hoveden (or Howden), *Gesta Henrici II et Gesta Regis Ricardi* (Deeds of Henry II and King Richard), c.1192; revised in *Chronica magistri Rogeri de Hoveden* ('Chronicles of Master Roger of Howden'), c.1192-1201, which tells the story of England from before Henry II's reign to 1201.
[185] 'FRM [?] Halth le Malchel, Lord of Crackenthorpe; and of his illustrious wife lady wife, Eva. Prior of St Mary's at Carlisle Among the first [Blank] at the time of Henry, son of the Conqueror.'
[186] See above.
[187] 'To Eva Machell. At Rome. The illustrious wife of Roger Malus Catulus, Lord Keeper of the Broad Seal of England & sub-plenipotentiary to Richard I; who, in his Holy Crusade against the Turks, perished in a shipwreck but commemorated by this cenotaph, for his body is laid to rest at Messana. Rogerheaved.' For Rogerheaved and Roger Malus Caltulus, see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, III.76-77. N.B. The uncommon use of the word 'cenotaph' is marked by the use of Greek lettering

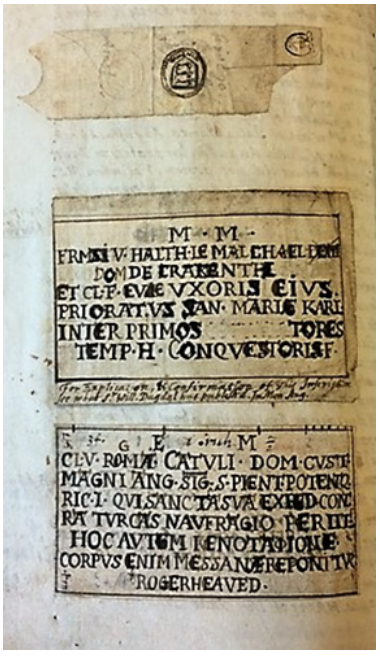


Figure 3.3.28. Machell Seal and Inscriptions. VI.210.

[VI.488]

Places visited by Mr Dugdale in Westm'land besides the places elsewhere

Maybrough Castle

On a mean Ascent. In depth from Crest to Skirt about 60 foote, the perpendicular from the Crest to the

Level ground within about	12f.
The Level within in Diameter about	266f.
Near the centre 4 stones the Biggest conteineing in Height above Earth	11f.
In bread[th] One way	6.
an another	4.

Round Table

Laying ope N. &. S. At the north pas 2 stones	of about 5in[ch] thickness
From the Crist to the midle of the Trench in depth	50f.
Thence to the Level ground therein Ascending	14f.
The Diameter of which Levell is about	160
The 2 Enterances in wideness a piece	15f.

[VI.211]

[F. Coins]

[Fig. 4] These Coyns were in my collection for Crakathorp & therefore I have placed them here. {The 1st is Gallienus Emperour of Rome, who began to Reine in 256 – the other I have not yet discover'd, but it was found \ up/on the South side of Crakenthorp Hall Anno Xti 1674.} The Lyon came from Kirkbythore out of Whelpcastle & alludeth somewhat unto the name, for thus Juda & Dan[iel] are call'd Lyons WHELPS. Genesis XLIX. 9. Deut[eronomy] XXXIII. 22.

[VI.210A][188]



Figure 3.3.29. Coins. VI.210A.

N.B. This was don upon the Back of a Covered Booke (the *Cambridge Concordance*)[189] after the paper had first bin moisten'd with a Touch of my Tongue.
Query: If a coin may not be Taken of by way of Impression, first [try] takeing it of on the end of a stick of wax & then sealing with it.

[VI.211]

[G. Seals]

The 1st of the Seals is of White Wax within (as appears by the edges being broke a little with carrying to London since I first drew it out), though otherwise 'tis so disco~~u~~lo\u/red (through long continuance) on the outside as to looke Readish inclining to Browne, like to the top of a Rye Loaf. Tis appendant (in a blew string) to a Deed without date (for dateing was not used in those days)* whereby Willielmus Malus Catulus conveys

[Machell's Notes: VI.211]

*{Deeds without date are no mark of high antiquity; the Saxons, as first Normans, dated all their Deeds.

[VI.212][190]

{1} to Alexander his brother 2as[191] Bovatas terræ in Crakenthorp, free from all Service & from Secular Service; with this further Priviledge (Ita) Quod si Prædictus Alexander vel heredes sui forefecerint verbo ut opere quod non sit Blodwita, et convicti fuerint; dabunt; xii denarios et emendabunt cui forefecerint{sex denarios & exmendabunt cui forefecerint et sit Blodwita & convicti fuerint}.[192] Which I mention only for \ the / strangeness of it.

---

[188] Page much torn around the edges.
[189] Samuel Newman, *A Concordance to the Holy Scriptures: with the Various Readings both of Text and Margin, in a More Exact Method then hath Hitherto been Extan.* (2nd edn, Cambridge, 1672, many reprints, e.g. 1682). Known as the *Cambridge Concordance*.
[190] Also numbered p.25.
[191] Acres.
[192] 'That if the aforesaid Alexander or his heirs incur forfeiture in word or deed such that there be not bloodwit and they are convicted, they shall give 12 denarii and they shall compensate the person they have wronged. {Six denarii and shall compensate the person whom they have wronged even be it bloodwit and they have been convicted.}'

{2.} The 2nd is not so Brown as the former but rather like a piece of leaven; & is affixed to a Lease for life, Granted by Willielmus Mauchael to Mr Adam de Kirkebythor of his Demaine – Arable Lands (in the Lordship of Crakenthorp) ad fossatas more;[193] about the Camp which we have described) Now calld More Dikes &c. And herein he also mentions one Alexander his Brother, so great a Respect had this W[estmorland] family to the Conquering Names of Alexander & William. This Deed is S.D. {The like Priviledge is granted in a Deed S.D. of Gal. Malus Catulus to Galfridus Malus Catulus, with 2 Oxgangs of Land, but with this Alteration, "Et si prædictus G. vel heredes sui vel aliqui suorum forefecerint et convicti &c. dabunt pro forefacto vid." &c.[194]

[Machell's Notes: VI.212]
1. Note 1. I suppose Will. Malus Catulus gave these 2 ox. to Galfridus Malus Catulus.
2. Galfridus Malus Catulus gave them I suppose to Alexander de C. & see A!
3. W. Malus Catulus gave or rather the same by a Deed of Confirmation.

Will M.C. Alexander Mauchell dom de Craken.
|
John Mauchell
Galfridus Malus Catulus
/ \
Thomas M. Catulus Henricus M. Cat.

[VI.217]

Seales [continued]
{3.} The 3d is the Deed of One John Mauchael (Son of Alexander Mauchael & Lord of this Place) at a Deed bearing Date in the Time of King Henry, son of King John [1216-72]. Wherein he grants to Will. son of William de Crakenthorp, to be Moulter free for a certaine Rent: to be serv'd at Crakenthorp Mill next him & his heir & the Lady Dowager; for so I render "Domina dotata de hereditate dicti Johannis."[195] About this is writ: S. IOHAN MAVC, for Sigillum Johannis Mauchael.

{4.} The 4th are 2 seals which I have placed one above the other; But are appendent to 2 Deeds without date; One of Thomas Machael, Son of Galfridus Malus Catulus; the other of Henry Machael, Son of the same call'd in the body of the Deed: Henricus fil Galfridi Mali Catuli.

{5.} Whereby they confirm to Radulphus de Crakenthorp 2 Oxgangs {2 acres Bovatas} of Land in the said Lordship, which he had by the Gift of Galfridis Malus Catulus their father. Which is a plane & clear Demonstration That the Names of \ 3. / Machel. \ 2. / Mauchael or \ 1. / Malchael; & Malus Catulus ar one & the Same.

[VI.186D]

{Mal} Maul & Malus is without doubt of Norman original.

[VI.219]

{Machell ad Catulus}
Now as to the Originall & true meaning of it. The Machels of Crakenthorp are said ~~by Tradition~~ to Descend of Catulus – or Whelp of Whelp-Castle – for that their was such a man at the Conquest (or then abouts) – Lord of that place – appears from an antient Deed without Date in the Registry of Holm; wherein one Waldeve, son of Gamel, son of Whelp (a branch of the family \ which was / perhaps less injurious \ perhaps / to the conquering ~~sword~~ \ Norman / & so continued still upon the place that the castle there ruin'd. Upon that spot; which at length took the sirname of Kirkbythore,) gave divers lands there to the said monastery. And tis more then probable That the Epithet Mau, Mal or Malus was impos'd by the Normans:

[193] 'Arable lands … up to the dykes of the moor.'
[194] 'And if the aforesaid G. or his heirs or some of his people incur forfeiture and are convicted etc. they shall give as compensation 6d. etc.'
[195] 'Lady endowed from inheritance of the said John.'

"Quod primus id Nominis, Catuli instar Mala cujusdam feriatæ Bestia (Qualis in insigillo Willielmi exprimitur) in hostes sævijt eosque dilaceraverat."[196] Of which the Lyon might be a fit emblem, as well as those figures upon the Seals. Thus, as the Antient Roman Catuli were [c]alled Luctatij, a luctando cum Hostibus,[197] from resisting their enemies: so ours might be called Mali Catuli, a Malum Hostibus inferendo,[198] from Mauling (or Mischeiveing) their Enemies.
And this Halth Le Malchael (of whom we have spoken) is thought to \ be the first to / This Sirname, as \ being the eldest / son to Catulus; for there is an Emphasis in the particle Le, which implyeth as much: Halth Le Malchael being as much as to say, Haltheus Catulus Ille Malus, Halth Whelp the Mischeivous {q.d. præcipue et præ alijs}[199] where the Epithite Mal may seem to be added as a Mark of Disfavour for opposing the Conquerour.

{Malignant}
Thus, those worthy Hero's who espous'd the Interest of King Charles the First, in or after the late Civil-Warrs (of which this family was not the least) were called Malignants on the like occasion.[200] But Benefacere & Mal~~um~~ \ e / audire Regium est.[201]

[VI.219]

{Those warlike dayes}
Or perhaps there was not ~~that of~~ Malignity in the Epithite Mal in that warlike age, being rather a note of ~~undauntable~~ \ indomitable / courage & \ of / Martial Ferocity. For it was admitted into the Names of Persons of the greatest Quality amongst the Normans & is still retained by many worthy & Antient Families who might have exchang'd their Sirnames \ at pleasure / and Assumed others from the Names of the Places of that aboad (if they had seen good \ so pleased /); which (where they had \ a / remarkable sirnames) they commonly left to their principall freeholds (though Orphans or Brothers) {Coseins} for Distinction of Families.

[VI.221][202]
To give you \ som / Examples (in both kinds) – William the Conquerour had One Uncle (Archbishop of Roan)[203] {Speeds *Cronicle*} who was called Mauhgerus; And another Great Uncle (son of Richard the Hardy, III Duke of Nor\ma/ndy, who name was Maliger, which is Malus Gerus,[204] & which they would certainly never have chosen if it had been disgracefull. And we find the Epithite is still retained as no way dishonourable by many Antient and worthy Families; as \ in / Mallory, Mallovel, Malltravers*, Malliver\er/ and many others – Sed ut cunque fuerit impositum, sive gloriosè sive injuriosè, honorificè semper est retentum in hunc usque diem.[205]

But however the name was imposed, This Family of the Machels \ of Crakenthorp / have retained their Antient Manner of Crakenthorp (at the least by Capitulation.) Non per Drengagium sed per Nobile Cornagij Servitium sicut ipsi Normanni. And have long agoe deserv'd so well of the Kings of England: 'Ut Canem Optimum & Generosissimum, Graium, Nimirum (~~Non minu~~ \ tam / fidei quam

[196] 'Because the first of the name Catulus like a wild beast of particular ferocity (such as is depicted on William's seal) raged against his enemies and tore them to pieces.'
[197] 'Luctatii, from wrestling with their enemies.'
[198] 'From bringing ill upon their enemies.'
[199] 'Especially and above others.'
[200] MS.VI.304 repeats this: 'Thus, those worthy hero's […] (of which this family was not the least), were called Malignants on the like occasion.' MS.VI.186D offers a comparison, both faded and obscured, which in precis suggests: 'Wee had a like instance in those {generous souls} who espous'd the interest of King Charles the First in and since our late civil wars: the best of men.'
[201] 'To do good and be ill-spoken of is kingly.' Proverbial; supposedly one of the sayings Publius Syrus, a first-century B.C. Syrian slave. See 'Est regium male audire et bene facere', in *Publilius Syrus Sententiae*, http://www.thelatinlibrary.com/syrus.html.
[202] Also numbered p.29.
[203] Rouen.
[204] 'Maliger', 'Malgerius', and 'Mauger', see Speed, *History of Great Britaine* (London, 1611), Book 9, Ch.1: 22 & 24; Ch.2: 62.
[205] 'But howsoever it has been imposed, whether honorifically or pejoratively, it has always been retained as a matter of honour up to the present day.'

fortitudinis Symbalum) in scuta sua transtulêrunt.'[206] As is expressed in their Seal at Arms at Fig. [blank], and the early use of Seals in this Family may be an Argument of their \ high / Esteem & ~~grat~~ \ great / Reputation in the days of old; For thô they (Generally) began to be used at the Norman Conquest, yet they were not allowed of to persons of Inferior Quality of a long time after: In somuch that Ric. De Lucy, Chief Justice of England in Henry the 2[d] time, is said to have checkt an Inferior Subje\c/t for presumeing to use a Private Seal \ of his own; / whereas he said that appertained only to the Kings & his Nobles. {Lamberts *Perambulation of Kent*, p.404.}[207]

[Machell's Notes: VI.221]

{*Antient Barons of England, which honour is now in the Earle of Arundale since Edward 3[d].}
{Drengage or Drevgage is a servile tenure, whence our word Drudge; But Cornage is a sort of Knights Service, which consisted eundo cum regis excercitu contra Scotos in vanguard[ia], & redeundo in reregard[ia].[208] The most hazardos & most honourable Posts in war that can be: Ingulphus, f.512, n.20.}[209]

[VI.223][210]

[H.] Kirkbythore: why so called

And so to return to the Roman way which we left at the Camp & Places adjacent in the Low end of Crakenthorp Moor. It Leads us Thence to Kirkbythure as 'tis commonly called, but Now & Antiently writ Kirkbythore & sometimes Kirkby-Thor, which gives us clearly the Ratio Nominis,[211] shewing that the Saxon God Thor (from whence our word Thursday) had a famous Kirk (or Temple) Here, after the Romish Idolatry vanish'd & gave way to theirs; Whence the Houses surrounding or standing by it, were call'd Kirkbythor*; And thô I will not trouble you here with any account of his manner of Worship, or the Magnificence of his Throne & Temples; [that] which others have given may be counted \ as such. /

[Machell's Notes: VI.223]

*Which yet is vulgarly cald Kirkby thûre as they call Thorsday Theurday – corruptly Thursday.
See p.19 hujus a Description of the Town & Castle [of Appleby]; & at p.36 of the name Galatum; & p.51: Many Thersby & but one Kirkbythore.

[VI.228][212]

[Notes on the meaning of the name: Kirkbythore]
From its pleasant situation in amongst the woods. Either from κάλατον,[213] being in a wodiy country, for the very m[ountains] – 3 miles distant on the E. side thereof were cover'd with wood; &, as

[206] 'Not through drengage but through the noble service of cornage, just like the Normans themselves … that they put on their shields an excellent and most noble dog, indisputably Grecian (a mark of loyalty as much as of fortitude).'
[207] William Lambarde (1536-1601), *A Perambulation of Kent conteining the description, hystorie, and customes of that shyre. Collected and written (for the most part) in the yeare 1570. Nowe increased by the addition of some things which the authour him selfe hath observed since that time* (London, 1576). William Nicolson also related this story, '… the common use of seals did not prevail in England before the reign of Edward the Third, and there is a passage in a MS history of Battail Abbeyy… which tells a story of an inferior fellow's being reprimanded by Richard Lucy, Lord Chief Justice under Henry the Second, for daring to use a private seal; which, as he observed to him, was the proper prerogative of the king and peers of the realm.' See William Nicolson, *The English, Scotch and Irish Historical Libraries giving a short view and character of most of our historians, either in print or manuscript* (New Edition, London, 1776), 198-99.
[208] 'Going with the King's army against the Scots in the vanguard and returning in the rearguard.' See above, VI.181.
[209] Ingulph (Ingulphus), 'Chronicle of Croyland Abbey', first printed (in part) in Henry Saville's *Scriptores post Bedam* (1596).
[210] Also numbered p.31.
[211] 'Reason for the name.'
[212] This page consists of rough notes in pencil.
[213] The word κάλατον is not found in classical Greek.

app[ears] from thos[e] found there & many trees in the peat mosses, DEO SYLVANO, or else from Gallatum q[uery] Vallatum i.e. Vallo Cinctum.[214]

[VI.266]

I find (in Burton *Upon Antoninus*)[215] that Kirkbythore ~~alias~~ antiently Gallacum, was the 4th city numbred amongst the Brigantes, which I have not noted amongst those papers which I sent you before.

[VI.230]

Cityes of the Brigantes according to Ptolomy
1. Epiacum – Papcastle in Cumberland
2. Vinnovium – Binchester in Ep.[216]
3. Caturactorium – Cateric in Yorkshire
4. Calateu' – Whelp Castle at A.
5. Isurium – Aldburg in Y.
6. Rhigodunum – Brampton in Cumberland
No. Gal \a/cum in the Introduction.
κάλατον[217] Calatum.[217]
7. Olicana – Oteley in Y.
8. Eboracum – York.

The best way is (by order of time) to shew first the antient name of Kirkbythore which

2. By A[n]tonine called Gallacum. T.M. q[uery] Vallatum, being mostly woods; or from καλός pulcher […][218] And not as Camden – Gallatum & Gallagum.[219]

1. By Ptolomy κάλατον Calatum. T.M.

The former name seems to be Brittish; as Gall. Sever for Severus-his-wall, doth sufficiently shew. However, there walls may well be supposs'd to have bin first of earth.
The Greek Geographer seems to have given it ~~either~~ the name of κάλτον either from the British name thereof, or from κάλον lignum,[220] the British citye.
{It seemeth afterwards to have bin called Gouloppum or Guoloph, and was known more definitely by the name of Cat-Guolph – or Guoloppum – i.e. Cat. Guolph – where a discord happened – at Guoloppum i.e. Catguolph.}

To which wee may add:
Dr Gale, in one of his Appendices, which he met with in some antient copyes and has Published in his edition of Nennius, Speakes of a Discord (xii years after the death of Guortigirn.[221] {This Discord was betwixt one} Gort\o/lin (otherwise called Maurion Guitolin) and Ambrosius or Embris, otherwise alias Idris,[222] whose death ensued in that Transhumbrian expedition against the Saxons. And he takes this Cat Guloph, \ bothe which there is but obscure mention, / to be the same with Ptollomæs Gallacum & Camdens Whallop (thô Antiquaries are silent herein), which gives som light ~~to what has bin said~~ / to the old name of &c.; for Cat Guolph may seem to import \ Guolophulum Catuli, as if / ~~what~~ some of the Catuli \ had / Resided Here & ~~were~~ \ bin / Lords of the Place {masters of it}; whence the Castle also in after ages might \ com to be called Catuli Castrum: in English, Whelp

[214] 'To the god Sylvanus or else from Gallatum? Vallatum? i.e. surrounded by a wall.'
[215] William Burton, *Commentary on Antoninus, his Itinerary* (1658).
[216] In the Bishopric of Durham.
[217] Kalaton: Gallatum.
[218] 'Beautiful.' The rest of this sentence is obscured by the binding.
[219] The numbering of the sentences is as seen.
[220] 'Beautiful wood.'
[221] Dr Thomas Gale, dean of York, antiquary and secretary to the Royal Society 1679-81, 1685-93. See N. Doggett, 'Gale, Thomas (1635/6-1702)', *ODNB*. Gale inserted a tract supposedly written by Nennius into the first volume of his *Historiae Anglicanae scriptores XV* (1691): see Thomas Wright, *Biographica Britannia Literaria: Anglo-Saxon Period* (London, 1842), 130.
[222] MS: '(otherwise called Maurion Guitolin ~~at Guoloppum i.e. Cat Guolph (whom the Dr takes to be Marchant (whence Marchator ibus~~) and Ambrosius or Embris alias \ otherwise / Idris, ~~at Guoloppium i.e. Cat Guolph~~.'

Castle / i.e. Cat-uli Castrum, as it is to this day; which, If Judicious Mr Camden had known, he would have distinguished twixt the Town & the Castle, & not have confounded them under one name;[223] there being one Whelp, Lord of this Place about the Time of the Norman Conquest, \ tho / The Town's name ~~being~~ \ was / changed long before that into Kirkbythore, as hath bin shewn.

[I.] 'Runic Silver'

[William Nicolson's Letter to Ralph Thorseby, 1691]

[VI. 225][224]

"This \ is / a transcript of part of a letter which I wrote to Mr Thoresby of Leedes in 1691,[225] which was afterwards printed in Dr Gibson's new edition of Camden.[226]
W. Carliol."[227]

[VI.226][228]

{Mr Nicholson the learned A[rchdeacon] of Ca[rlisle.}
Mr N.'s notes on a runic piece of silver in the possession of Mr Thoresby of Leeds,[229] sent to him in Aug. A.D. 1691.[230]



Figure 3.3.30. Two faces of a silver coin, 'the bigness of a 3d.' VI.226.

[VI.227][231]

Yet having an extraordinary rarity[232] (a piece of silver which relates to this name) communicated by one Mr Thoresby {of Leeds in Yorkshire} to my very worthy and Ingeniouse ~~Colleague~~ \ friend / Mr William Nicolson (Archdeacon of Carlile) for his opinion, and by Him to me, I think fit to insert it; which is as followeth.[233]

[VI.226]

"The best Danish Antiq[uaries] are of opinion that no currant coyne was ever minted in the northern kingdoms till the use of the runic character was laid aside, so that thô they did now & then meet with

---

[223] MS: 'which, If Judicious Mr Camden had known, he would not have sought any other original have distinguished twixt the Town & the Castle, & not have confounded them under the name of Whallop or Whellop {under one name.}'
[224] Transcript of a letter written to Ralph Thoresby in 1691, printed in Gibson's edition of *Britannia.*
[225] The well-known Yorkshire Antiquary, Ralph Thoresby (1658-1725), commenced his correspondence with William Nicolson in 1690. See Joseph Hunter (ed.), *The Diary of Ralph Thoresby FRS Author of The Topography of Leeds,1677-1724 in 2 Volumes, Volume 1* (London, 1830), vi. Although trained by his father for the wool trade, Thorseby's interests turned to the study of antiquities. His father had founded the Musaeum Thoresbyanum by purchasing the cabinet of coins and library of Lord Fairfax from his heir. Ralph Thoresby expanded the collection. He was elected fellow of the Royal Society in 1697, after sending an account of some Roman antiquities he had discovered in Yorkshire. At least thirty of his communications to the society were published in the *Philosophical Transactions*. These deal with Roman and Saxon monuments in the north of England, inscriptions on coins and accounts of uncommon accidents. See P. Kell, 'Thoresby, Ralph (1658-1725), antiquary and topographer'. *ODNB*.
[226] See Gibson's edition of Camden's *Britannia*, 'Additions to Westmoreland', 813-16.
[227] In William Nicolson's hand. The letter was first copied by Machell, but after Machell's death (and after Nicolson had become bishop in 1702), Nicolson edited it with his own explanation, seen here.
[228] MS.VI.227 contains an earlier draft of Nicolson's text: omitted from this edition.
[229] An MS margin comment here gives, 'If it may be known where was found.'
[230] Both this and the following narrative are in Machell's hand.
[231] Also numbered p.33.
[232] MS: 'Yet \ having / have I an extraordinary rarity.'
[233] MS: 'I think ~~fit~~ to insert ~~it with his observations, & therefore~~ the ~~rather because of a runic inscription upon it~~ which is as followeth {fit to insert it, which is as followeth}.'

pieces of the like fashion with this before us, "Ast ego (sayes Th. Bartholin T.S.[234] who speakes the sense of all the rest of his profession) "Amuletorum quoddam genus fuisse magici usus crediderim, cum ex Antiquitatibus nostris Edoctus sim, habuisse veteres, in Paganismo, Res quasdam portatiles ex Argento vel Auro factas, imaginibus Deorum facie humanâ expressorum signatas: quibus futurorum cognitionem explorabant, et quarum possessione felices se, et (quodam quasi numinis præsidio) tutos judicabant."[235]

And he is of opinion that this will prove one of those amulets, rejoyceing extreamely to meet with so noble a proffer of this learned opinion, which he confirmes by these following reasons:

1. The imagery gives us a more humane visage, with a Glory encircling his head \ for the account / which S. Stephanus (in his notes on *Saxo Grammaticus*[236] – and som others of his learned countrymen, give of their antient God Thor, is this – that in the postures they worship'd him, he had

[VI. 225][237]

"Caput flamma circumdatum in modum solis alicujus; eodem modo quo pictores ora divorum exornare consueverunt. In manu etiam sceptrum, aut (prout alij volunt) malleum igneum pingunt."[238]

A description so agreeable to the portraiture above, that it could not have bin more exact if it had bin copyed from it.

But 2ly. The inscription & character on the reverse puts the matter (to me) beyond al dispute; where wee have these words fairly legible: μόνος οὐρανοῦ θεος [239] Thur gut: Luetis, i.e. Thoronis Dei facies[240] (sive effigies), upon which he farther proceedeth thus:

"I never yet saw any Runic Inscription so plane and intelligible. And yet (if there were any occasion for it) the figures of the 2 half moones & stars in the midle might serve for (a good) comment on a text much darker than this is. For the Old Gothic Nations had the same opinion of their Thor, that the Phoenicians had of their μόνος οὐρανοῦ θεος the sun: Cuius Nutum Planetae Reliquaque Sidera Observabant."[241]

{Mr N. has Hadriani leg. iij Battavia.}[242] καλός

[VI.229][243]

2. Copyed from this original.

"But (2[d] ly) the Inscription & \ Runic / Characters on the Reverse put the matter to me beyond all Dispute; where we have these words (fairly legible), i.e. Thur ut luetis (which signifies) Thor: Dei: Facies: (Sive Effigies) the face or effigies of the God Thore. I never yet saw any Runic Inscription so plaine & intelligible."

---

[234] Thomas Bartholin (1616-1680), was the Danish physician and writer who discovered the lymphatic system. 'He also defended the use of amulets. He believed that they operated "by an external species of vapors and atoms attracted either through the respiration or through open pores of the skin"; and he used this reasoning to support amulet therapy… Bartholin felt that his approval of common amulets needed no defence, for "there are a thousand other amulets whose virtues happily are recognized by the consensus of physicians."' Extracted from Martha R. Baldwin, 'Toads and Plague: Amulet Therapy in Seventeenth-Century Medicine', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine,* 67, 2 (Summer 1993), 227-47, at 240. See also Machell's possible source: Thomas Bartholin, *Historiarum anatomicarum rariorum centuria III et IV* (Copenhagen, 1657). The letter might, however, have referenced Thomas Bartholin the Younger (1659-1690), Professor of History at the University of Copenhagen, later appointed Royal Antiquarian and Secretary of the Royal Archives.

[235] 'But I believe a certain type of amulet to have been of magic use, since I have been taught by the Ancients, that the men of old, in Pagan times, had certain [jewelry? boxes?] made of silver or gold, engraved with images of the gods depicted with a human visage: with which they sought knowledge of the future, and through possession of which they judged themselves lucky (as if through the guardianship of some divine spirit).'

[236] Stephanus J. Stephanius (ed.), *Saxonis Grammaticae Historiae Danicae Libri XVI* (1645).

[237] In Machell's hand; transcript of a letter written to Ralph Thoresby in 1691 and printed in Gibson's edition of Camden's *Britannia.*

[238] 'The head is surrounded by flame in the manner of a kind of sun; in the same way in which painters are accustomed to adorn the faces of the gods. In his hand they depict also a sceptre, or (as others have it) a fiery hammer.'

[239] 'Only God of Heaven'.

[240] 'The countenance of the God Thor.'

[241] 'The sun: whose nod [command] the planets and the rest of the stars observe.'

[242] A pencilled note in Machell's hand, referring to Hadrian's 3rd Battavian legion. 'Mr N' is William Nicolson.

[243] The interlineation is in pencil, in Machell's hand.

And \ yet / (were their any Occasion for it) The Figures \ also / of the Half Moon & Stars might serve for a Comment on a much darker Text; for the Old ~~God Thor~~ Gothic Nations had the same Opinion of Their Mighty God Thor as the Phoenicians had of the Sun. Their μόνος οὐρανοῦ θεος, Cuius Nutum Planetae Reliqu\a/que Sidera Observabant*.[244] And this was the Deity which the Saxons honoured above any \ all / other God, from which Kirkbythore derived its \ said / name. But it was formerly called Gallagum, ~~perhaps from Galgagus The Noble King of the Caledonians, as hath been said~~: After Gallatum, query Vallatum, i.e. Vallo Cinctum, when the Romans had won It & Intrenched Themselves there; (~~which reconciles Ptolemy to Antoninus~~) though ~~now~~ we \ now / do not find the l\e/ast Example of a Ditch about It; Except in the Burhanes where the Old Castle Stood, and a little Beyond the Parsonage-house, where there is appearance of a Rampiard & Ditch, which hems in the Croft & Returnes againe Westwards like to a Bastion towards the Parsonage, if it has not been Rather a Bulwark about It.

[J. Inscriptions]

[J1. Altar]

But the following Altar, now at Kirkbythore Hall, The Seat of the Whartons, \ chief / Lords of this Manner), which was found he\r/abouts since Camdens time, may seem to in forme us \ somewhat / more of this matter, If it could be ~~discovered~~ \ read / & well understood. But, Alas! The Letters had taken their flight before I came ~~at them~~ \ there. / Yet \ But / afterwards I found them {in som wafer in the Herald Colledge London} preserved by my most Learned & Industrious friend,[245] Sir William Dugdall (of worthy memory)[246] in his visitation of the County of Westmerland in 1664; which are as followeth:

FORTA. + BALLI + N. M. S. S. + C. CALEZI~~TI~~ + VS. FOR + NTINVS + NƟV

wherein I have plac'd the Croslets-fitche[247] onely for distinction of lines upon the Altar; and which (with Submission to better Judgements) I would willingly read after this manner:

FORTABALLI (pro valli, sive Vallati) N(u)M (inibus) s(acrum) C(aius) CALEZIVS.[248]

[Machell's Notes: VI.229]

*{see Camdens Deo Belatu Cadro … att Gallatum.[249] No, it is a mistake in Mr Camden or the printer, for tis καλατον in Ptolemy, and which at most Calatum or Gallatum, & has nothing to do with Galgacus.}

[VI.186C]

'Kirkby Thore forsan pro valli FORTA BALLI i.e. Fortalitij. Ex vallo factum. A castle made of earth or turves. Bein[g] in sepissime præsertim Notitia Antiquitatum[250] pro v. ponitur Deo sic ideo Legimus. Fortalitij Valli. Numinibus sacrum. C. Calizius Forntinus (vel forsan Frontinus per metathesin).[251]

---

[244] 'Whose nod the planets and the rest of the stars observe.'

[245] MS. '… preserv'd, by \ most / Industrious & Learned \ 1 / friend, Sir William Dugdall.' Machell shows here that he wishes to change the position of the adjectives relating to Dugdale.

[246] Sir William Dugdale died in 1686.

[247] Machell's cross croslets fitched are represented here by the symbol, '+'.

[248] 'Forta Balli instead of Valli, or Vallati; sacred to the spirits. Gaius Calezius.'

[249] Camden's inscription is as follows, 'DEO BELATVCADRO LIB VOTVM. FECIT IOLVX'. See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1607), Westmoreland, 6: 'From thence the river with his full course passeth directly North-west by Buley a castle of the Bishops of Carlil, and by Kirby Thore, under which are seene great ruins of an old towne and peeces of Romane coine otherwhiles digged up, and not long since this inscription …'

[250] Notitia Dignitatum…

[251] 'Kirkby Thore, perhaps instead of valli Forta Balli i.e. Fortalitij. Made from a wall: a castle made from earth or turves. Being placed very frequently and especially in front of a wall in the *Notitia Antiquitatem*.' See also Part 3, Ch.4, Heraldry, VI.489.

{Green Castle}
Had This bin Found on the Top of the Fell I should have Taken It for a Pacafyc[252] Altar to the Gods of Green Castle at the Head of Grange Beck (whence the other altar Inscribed to Silvanus (as they say) was brought); for It is nothing \ else / but Trench above Trench & Forte above Fort in a Circular manner on the top of a Mountain. I can only say That It is not Impossible \ that This / might com from Thence.[253]



Figure 3.3.31. Detail. Frontinus Inscription. VI.186B.

[VI.231][254]
CALEZIVS FORNTINVS (pro Frontinus per transpositio[n]em Litera R.) NΘ (i.e. Numini Iovis Opt[imo] per Implicationem, Sc. et Reduplicationem Litera O.) V (i.e. Votum) … Solvit[255] – or som such like thing.
But what this Frontinus might be to Julius who subdued the Silures & the Brigantes, as we are informd by the Inscription at Apalby School \ (F.) /, or whether he be not the same Frontinus whom I take to be Captain of the 1st Thracian Cohort, Mentioned There also \ at T. / I leave to others; but the Letters C'AL in the said Inscription Incline me to be of That Opinion: And that he might have \ {quartered here or have bin} / Imployd (with his Cohort) in Subdueing this Place. In Order to which we find divers Romaine Camps & Intrenchments about the Towne; as namely That Great One on Crakenthorp More which we have describ'd, being South from hence about a Mile. Another which is opposite to it (The River Troutbeck running betwixt them) at a place cal'd Bran-Crooke (i.e. Brant Crooke) in Marton Field, South-east from hence about the same Distance. And a Third at Hale, upon the Moor Edge (which hath Double ditches, & joyneth into the ~~same~~ \ Maiden / Way on the south side {thereof} about as far Northwards, being the least of \ the three / them All.

{W[help] Castle}
But after the Romans became Masters of it They began to build (more Romano)[256] with Brick, Lime & Stone. And in Process of time \ amongst other ~~buildings~~ houses / erected a magnificent Castle; which the English Saxons (who Succeded them Here & changed All our Names into their own language*) transmitted to us by the name of Whelp Castle; as if som of the Catulis (A flourishing Family amongst the Romans) {or Lords of the Place} had been concern'd in Building of it; for what Catulus was with the Romans, the same was Whelp with the English Saxons†. And we find it continued in that very name at the Norman Conquest‡; which if judicious Camden had know, he would not have named the word so far from the Common use of it as to call it Wheallop for the sake of Gallatum; nor would he have sought any other original. The Strength of this Place & Situation of it being in a pleasant & Plentiful Country, gave the Romans Occasion to make it a Colony, & \ a / standing Qua[r]ter for their light horse, who had a

[252] Pacafyc (pacific, pacyfyque, paciffick): a peace offering; an offer or overture of peace. *OED*.
[253] Here (but not transcribed) Machell repeated his remarks about the crosslets fitche, above.
[254] Also numbered p.37. Several pages in this chapter demonstrate Machell's most careful handwriting. To a large extent, this page represents a fair copy as it was created for, and sent for publication to, Dr John Mill. The text (apart from some interlineation and pencilled margin comment) is easy to read when compared with Machell's notes, allowing us to note (for example) his carefully considered spelling.
[255] 'Calezius Forntinus (instead of Frontinus by transposition of the letter R.) NΘ (i.e. to the divinity of Jupiter the Best by implication i.e. a reduplication of the letter O. V (i.e. his vow) … pays.'
[256] 'In the Roman fashion.'

[Machell's Notes: VI.231]
*{As Aballaba into Apleby, Brovonacum into Brou., Blatabulgium into Bowes.}
†{Mr Camden in the […][257] Deed s.d. {For he cals it there Whellop.}[258]
‡{for Waldeve the son of Gamel, the son of Gamel, the son of Whelp, gave divers lands within his lordship of K[irkbythore] to the monks of Holm Cultram. Deed s.d.}

[VI.233][259]

[J2. Maiden Way]
Temple for their Devotion within this Castle, as appears by a stone lately dig'd up (~~which I shall exhibit by & by to your view~~ amongst other Antiquities which were found there) {Bring it in here} Inscribed DEO ALÆ {or DEC. ALÆ}, as \ if / a whole wing of their Rese\r/ve Guards had laid thereabouts \ this Place. / And for a farther ~~observation~~ \ Confirmation / \ of It / there is the Casway calld Maiden Way all paved with stone, which goes from thence directly Northwards unto Caervoran (near the Picts Wall where the Foot were ingarrison'd) to facilitate & hasten them to Their Aid if ther should be occasion.[260] And upon som Glorious Expedition which they had perform'd, an altar was erected here \ also, / by one Antonia Stratonissa (a good wife I warrant you) = FORTVNÆ SERVATRICI: to Preserving Fortune; upon sight of the Army Returning in Triumph (which they might easily see from this Place \ on / to the Top of the Mountains) and for the arrival of their husbands & children.

{Maiden Way}
And now all the young maidens running in numbers upon the highway to meet all their brothers, cosans (& sweethearts, to whom I should have named it, as may well be supposed \ up/on such \ a / occasion~~s~~) it might thence be call'd Via Virgineæ: The Maiden Way, which our old English call'd Maiden Gath & Maiden Gate. Thus, the Lane near Sourby within the Parish of Kirkbythore, which leads to Mitrig, is call'd Maiden Lane from the resort of som maiden Gentlewomen \ of my Relations / {which I thought fit to take no[te]} who used to walk there.

If this Conjecture ~~upon so good a ground~~ do not please all men because they find there is Maiden Castle on the edge of Stainmore, Maiden Hold on Crakenthorp More, & Maiden Castle againe at Edenbrough in the Kingdom of Scotland, which have the like Compellations with this but cannot be Grounded upon the like reason, I answer neither Is it Necessary. Divers things may have had the same Name upon divers Occasions. And to set aside what may be conjectured of Madan, one of the \ ~~antient~~ / Brittish kings (Grandchild of Brute) who is said Indeed to have Built Maiden Caister now calld Doncastar (how truly I know not) but not a word of his having any hand in these things which are purely Romane. To set (I say) such fancyes aside; these Places of Strength might be so called, because they were never won by Assault; upon which account the City of Tourney[261] was look'd upon as a Virgin City

[VI.235][262]

Till Ravish'd by King Henry VIII & \ having / had This Sentence writ over A Gate:

> Iannes ton ne àperdèu ton Pucillage:
> i.e. Thou Hast never lost thy Maiden-head.

[257] One word here is illegible.
[258] Written in pencil beneath margin text written in ink.
[259] Also numbered p.39.
[260] MS: 'to facilitate & hasten ~~their march upon all occasions to their reliefe~~ \ them to their aid if ther should be occasion. /'
[261] Early in th 16th century the city of Tournai and surrounding area formed a French enclave within the 'Burgundian-Habsburg' Netherlands. When, in 15I3, Tournai was besieged by an army led by the Emperor Maximilian and Henry VIII, the city surrendered to Henry VIII in his capacity as 'King of France'. Determined to keep Tournai, Henry left a resident garrison to build a citadel. In 1519, however, under the terms of the treaty of London, Tournai was returned to Francis I of France. Extracted from C.S.L. Davies, 'Tournai and the English Crown, 1513-1519', *The Historical Journal*, 41, 1 (I998), I-26, at 1.
[262] Also numbered p.41.

The Like of which was Reported of Edenbrough \ Castle / That she was never taken by storm till ~~now~~ (of late) by […][263] King William {2} […][264] But this will not agre to the Maiden-way.

Now as to the Author (as well as the Name) of so Noble a worke, I know there is a Northumberland Story of a Young Lady there who, being courted by a person of Quality out of These parts, required of him (as a Proofe of his Love) That he should ~~pave~~ \ cause a way to be pav'd / over all the Mountains & Through all the Bogs to make ~~the way~~ it passible betwixt Their 2 houses, by the nearest Cutt, which (they say) he did accordingly {was performd accordingly.} Yet the Peevish maid refus'd to have him until he could set it up on End. And so he lost both his love & his labour. Whereupon it was call'd Maiden Way.

[J3. Crawdundale]
But leaving such storyes to their relators {& every man to his own conjecture} I do conclude it a work of the Romans:[265] and that it was either done by VARRONIVS, because his name is not only preserved in the Fort of Caervorran whither it Leadeth; But Inscribed also upon that known Rock near to This Place, called Crawdundale in Newbiggin Parish as has been shewn. Or els perhaps, som of the CATVLI might have an hand In it, Because It extendeth à Castro Catulino ad Convallem-Catuli; for the Castle at This End (which is the only Place considerable whereto it relateth \ leadeth / is call'd Whelp Castle. And the Gill at the other end \ thereof / under Caervorran[266] (Whence ~~perhaps~~ \ are descended / the Whelpdales of Skirsgil, a Family of Good Note in Cumberland), is called Glen-WHELP, where \ in which place / I met with This Fragment of a Roman Inscription \ in a little house, / which had stood 60 years \ on a knok[267] on the back of / behind the fire.[268] And hence the Remainder (if it be not a solecism to call That so which doth not remaine) was consumed to Ashes. Hinc illæ lacrymæ![269]

[VI.248]

[J4. Further Altar]
I have one Altar more to be inserted, found 20 years since in Burney beck within this Parish of Kirkbythore & suppos'd to have stood \ on the top edge of Burney / near unto Green Castle, which is a great Fort with Double Rampiers on the very Top of Milburn Fell, at the south end of it. But, being round, I think tis no Roman Fortification.
The letters upon it are – DEO SILVANO ----- ÆLIVS ----- VOTVM – SOLVIT[270]

[263] In the MS, 2cm of scored-through text appears here.
[264] In the MS, 5cm of scored-through text appears here. A partially legible pencilled interlineation appears to read, 'is able to oppose on'. In fact, 'Edinburgh Castle was captured and recaptured many times. It has been besieged more than any other place in Britain: there have been 23 recorded attempts. Captured in 1296 by Edward I, the Scots reclaimed it in 1314. The English took it again in 1335 before, in 1341, Scots disguised as merchants took it back. Cromwell's forces occupied the castle in 1650. At one point it was even handed over to the English as a ransom payment. It was captured twice by Covenanters in the 17th century, fighting against King Charles I's imposition of Episcopacy.' Janice Hopper, 'Edinburgh Castle history: 900 years protecting Scotland's capital', https://www.britain-magazine.com/features/region/scotland.
[265] A similar passage appears in the margin of MS.VI.234: not transcribed.
[266] Here, a pencilled margin addition is illegible.
[267] Perhaps this is a variant of 'nok' or 'nook': an out-of-the-way corner. *OED*. Machell seems to have described something on a wall or plate lining the back of a fireplace.
[268] MS: '(whence ~~perhaps~~ \ are descended / the whelpdales \ of Skirsgil / a family of good note in Cumberland \ may perhaps be descended / is called Glen-WHELP, where \ in which place / I met with this fragment of a Roman inscription \ in a little house {dwelling} which had stood 60 years \ on a knok on the back of / behind the fire (~~hinc illæ lacrymæ~~).'
[269] 'Hence those tears.' This MS passage continues at the beginning of the section, 'Things Found at Whelp Castle.1.'
[270] 'To the god Sylvanus Aekius pays his vow.'



Figure 3.3.32. Further Altar. Detail. VI.248.

[VI.249]

And so we have done with Kirkbythore, from whence the Romaine Way doth lead us directly nor-west to another antient Romaine town called BROVONACUM, now vulgarly Browham, being v. miles from thence & viii. from Apalby.[271] Here, if any where, should be the Ruine which Camden calls the Ha[n]ging wall of Marc. Antonius. The Conflux of Eden & Lowther sheweth It, but I never yet could finde or hear of any thing like It, unless the outwall of Browham Castle Court may be thought to be It, which was in the Battlement which hung over the wall, being rased upon Corballs as high or higher than the wall It selfe. This was pulld downe by the Lord Thomas Tufton – before whome nothing is able to stand – in 1691.[272]

~~Emot & Lowther \ here / being~~ Emot here having swallowed up Lowther, loseth itselfe in the River of Eden about 2 miles below, near the Head of which \ River / at Russendal Church there [are] 2 Monuments with Hebrew inscriptions. And not far from thence springeth Lyvennet.[273]

[VI.250]

Lilly Beck brings us into Kent, into which runs Kentmere, at the Head of which and on the other side of them spring Ulswater, the head of Emote, which brings [us] to the Castle of Browham where wee left of, & where wee meet againe with the Roman Way.

[VI.267]

[J5. Brougham]

The following {priestly} figure[274] was found near the place where it now standeth (by digging up stones for the wall of Browham Castle Demane circa anno 1665) not far from the Pillar, which may seem to have been a Romane Flamen by the canonicall habit upon it, if that gens togata may be supposed to have wore any such in those antient days. Though I should rather have judged it to have bin a Saxon priest or a Bishop[275] if it had not occur'd amongst other fragments of Romane antiquitys.

[VI. 269]

This oval figure stands in the said wall in the midst of the lane as you go to the castle on your right hand; and was found near that place on the same occasion and about the same time.[276] I take this to be the portraiture of Julius Crispus, son of Constantine the Great, our famous countryman; as appears to me by comparing of it with a coin of his which Speed hath exhibited; and therefore the rather because there was an altar found here, inscribed to his father (D.C. Valerio Constantino) which is to be seen at Apalby s\c/hool.

---

[271] The page continues in pencil.

[272] Thomas Tufton, 6th earl of Thanet and 18th Lord Clifford (1644-1729). He succeeded to the titles on 12 December 1691. For Machell's difficulties with this particular Lord Thanet, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, June 5 1697, 'A narrative of the matter in contest about the Chapel of Sowerby within the Parish of Kirkby-thore in Westmorland to the Right Honorable Thomas Earle of Thanett Patrone of the said Parish-Church, T.M. R[ector]', from III.229.

[273] The page has perished here, but could read, MS: 'which brings [us] to the river Kent & …'

[274] The sketch is missing. There is a vertical gap of 16cm here, with indications of a previously attached sheet of paper.

[275] MS: '{it \ to have bin / a Saxon priest or a Bishop} it one of the Saxon Bishops'

[276] There is a vertical gap of 16cm, but no sketch.

[VI.257]

[J6. Kirkby Lonsdale]
An altar



Figure 3.3.33. 'An altar (above a yard high) digg'd up at Kirby in Loansdale, circa an. 1684.' VI.257.

(above a yard high} Digg'd up at Kirby in Loansdale, circa anno 1684, in a Banke in the River Leun call'd Abbats-Brow, adjoyneing the North East Side of the Churchyard: and now lyeing in the High Street, for a Seat, at Widdow Mans doore. One side of this Altar (which I have Supplyed) is broke of & lost. The 1st Line seemeth to be NVMINIBVS. The 4th APOLLINIS; the last VOTVM SOLVIT &c.[277]

Cætera legant alij[278]

[VI.259][279]

[J7.] Near Ambleside
At the Head of Windermer water, is a small Roman fort. Being an Oblong Square of above 100 Yards in Diameter. Here severall fragments of Roman Antiquities have been discovered, & amongst the Rest divers Medalls of Gold, Silver & Copper; some of which are in That Collection of Mr Thomas Brathwaite, of Ambleside Hall, which he gave by Deed to the Library at Oxford, dated 26 of November 1674. Since which was found one Medall of Gold with Hadrians Image & Superscription upon it, valued at 17s and 6d. And a piece of Gold about 5 Inches long, as thick as the small end of a Tobacco pipe, Sollid & Streight {which the country people took for a piece of bridle bit &) which was purchased by Mr James Cock, Booke Seller in Kendall, for 34s, who also bought the Former Medall, But resold them both some years agoe; so that they never came to my view.[280]
And there is a field house call'd Borosrigg-Hoghouse, 1. mile south from hence in the way twixt Ambleside & Windermer Church, in the East end of which I found a stone (brought from the said Borrans) with this broken Inscription concerning a Roman Cohort there. Which Cohort may seem to have pinn'd up the Brits in Cartmel & Furness, where They continued till King Egfrid's time, who was King of Northum[berland].[281] Gre. Anno 671.[282]

[277] See Part 2, Ch.8, Kirkby Lonsdale, II.204.
[278] 'Let others read the rest.'
[279] Also numbered p.63.
[280] This is Machell's third reference to finds bought by Kendal bookseller and mercer, James Cocke. See Part 2, Ch.9, Windermere, II.323; Part 2, Ch.10, Itinerary, II.424.
[281] Ecgfrith (c.645-685): king of Deira from 664 until 670, and king of Northumbria from 670 until his death in 685. See Hugh Chisholm (ed.), 'Ecgfrith', *Encyclopædia Britannica. Vol. 8* (11th edn, Cambridge, 1911) 870.
[282] 'Gregoriano Anno' refers to the Gregorian calendar.



Figure 3.3.34. Roman Inscription found between Ambleside and Windermere church. VI.259.

[VI.261]

[J8.] {Near Kirkby L. in Lancashire}

[VI.262]

Barrow upon Leun in Tu[n]sdal Parish in Com. Lanc.
These 2 Fragments of Romane Inscriptions are on the Vicaridge[283] House in Tunstal. Being found at Barrow upon Leun in the said Parish. On the Steeple of which Church, on the 3 sides, are 3 Angells \ in stone / holding the Coat of Armes which is marked (a). And in the Quire on each side the East window an Angel \ in stone / holding the Coate marked (b) which are Tu[n]stals; the Monument of one of which Family is under an Arch near the East of the South Ile.
Near Tunsdal Church is Thirland Castle, the chiefe & most antient seat of the Tunsdals (who had a great Estate in this country) {1000 li per annum}, which now belongeth unto the Girlingtons. And they had a Parke about a mile hence, with a good old Hall in the midle of It, calld the Parke House {a good old house with good court and gardines, but no fair access. It stands on a plane.} Purchased by Wilson of Dallan-Tower 60 years since; & now the Seat of Mr Edward Wilson, Justice of Pease = heire Apparent to Dallan Tower; where on the Back Side of the House I saw a tree calld Abour Vitæ, 3 foote in Circumference, and as high as other Ordnary Trees. It grows like a Savin.[284] Arbor Vitæ is the th\u/ya of the Botanists.[285]

[VI.263][286]

At the vicaridge in Tunstall are two Fragments of Romane Inscriptions, Translated hither by the Late Minister for Barrow upon Leun in the said Parish, which I have placed one upon the other, for the better convenience of Graveing. And have added two Coats of Arms (for Ornaments sake, & to fill up the Spaces); The former of which is on the Church Steeple & the Latter (being Tunstalls) is under the window behind the High Altar.[287]
From this Larger Inscription I should have conjectured The Name of The Burrow (Alias Over Burrow) to have been Aurcubia in the time of the Romans. If Mr Cambden, the best of Antiquaries (who yet speaks doubtfully concerning this matter) had not ~~been against It~~ thought otherwise. For I read the Inscription, so far as legible, after this manner: Dis manibus Sacrum et perpetu[a]e securitate Aureus N N IO TU AN […] 52 Hic Mili […] AUREUBIÆ […][288]

---

[283] MS: 'vacaridge'.
[284] '{It grows like a savin…}' Savin = juniper. The rest of this comment is obscured by the binding.
[285] Arbor Vitae: popular name of several evergreen shrubs of the genus *Thuja*, family *Coniferæ*. *OED*. Arbor Vitae grows like a shrubby juniper bush.
[286] Also numbered p.65.
[287] There follows a vertical gap of 13cm, presumably where the two drawings were eventually to be placed.
[288] Machell wrote the inscription twice: once as part of the text (as above) and once in his sketch (*Figure 3.3.35*). The first was written in pencil and is almost illegible; the Figure is easy to read but words are missing. It begins, 'Sacred to the gods of the underworld and eternal freedom from care…' Using Machell's MS, Historic England translated and commented on the inscription: 'The stones cannot now be found there, and have, no doubt, perished. The first of the two inscriptions ... opens with the phrase, "Dis Manibus Sacrum, et Perpetu(a)e Securitate."... In the fourth line the letters seem to be a mis-representation of ANICETV(S), and have probably been followed by VIXIT, as there is a large space left vacant in the drawing. It is, of course, possible that we may read simply AN(NORVM) Lll., but the space after ANICETVS would hardly be left blank. I was inclined to think that AVREVBIAE was simply a misreading of AVRELIAE, but Dr. McCaul … suggests the reading,



Figure 3.3.35. Fragments of Roman Inscriptions at Tunstall Vicarage. VI.262.

[K. Correspondence between Thomas Machell and Dr John Mill c.1670-1692]

[IV.79]

Correspondence 1. Undated

[1. Letter from Machell to Mill, undated.][289]
Sir, I am glad to heare of your good health and better promising fortune, for tis partly my owne since I am sure to be a sharer, if not in your preferment, yet at least in your joy.[290] The loss of two friends, Mr B. & Mr M. doth not truble mee halfe so much (tho very considerable) as the hopes of your preferment doth already delight \ rejoice / mee. For I could be very willing to forgoe my owne, rather than you should \ and will / any way miss, fore you, if elected, may \ both / credit your colledge \ & countery; but I shall be happy if I be no disgrace to either of them.
I hope you will pardon my detagneing your booke, for I was not willing to trust with carriers \ by / whome I have suffered so many great losses. \ But now I have it with the Inscriptions at Apalby \ schoole, which / I have sent \ out / you, \ tho / very preposterously, for I thought to have writt them in one leafe side, but was hard put to it to containe them in two; soe that \ without a paradox / the first must be last and the last must be first. Cancros imitare legendo.[291]
One onely Inscription I have \ voluntary / omitted, which stood so high that I could not come to \ at / it; yett I hope to have it before my returne, & then, as the rest, it shall be at youre service. This is the first time that they were writt \ or read that we hear of. / Diverse Herrald and \ other / travellers when

AVR. EVSEBIAE, conjecturing that Machel has omitted the letters SE … In the last line Dr. McCaul suggests F.P.P. as the concluding letters, expanding them as F(ILIVS)P(IE)P(OSVIT). [Therefore] Aurelius Anicetus, as we gather from the inscription, lived fifty-two years, and appears to have been stationed some time at Overborough, from the use of the words "hic militavit" ("here he has fought"). Aurelius Eusebia, his wife, lived thirty-seven years, and it was probably their son Aurelius, who put up the stone from motives of filial piety ("pro pietate posuit")." Historic England Research Records, Monument No. 44052, https://www.heritagegateway.org.uk.

[289] This is a draft letter which, in the MS, was scored through; the lines have been removed in this edition.

[290] John Mill was elected fellow of his college in October 1670 and ordained in the same year. Preferment included chaplain to the bishop of Exeter (1676); prebendary of Exeter (1677); nominated for rectory of Bletchingdon Oxon (1682); royal chaplain (1682); principal of St Edmund Hall Oxon (1685). S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5-1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*. Though the letter is undated, Machell was possibly congratulating Mill on the prospect of his becoming principal of St Edmund Hall.

[291] A proverb relating to the crab: *Salutem Mitto tibi Metulas, cancros imitare legendo*, seen in the work of the minor Latin poet, Pentadius, i.e. moving crablike, sideways, not in a straightforward fashion. See C.L.F. Pankoucke (ed.) *Poetae Minores* (Paris, 1842), Pentadius, 406.

here \ have attempted to Read / but never could take the paines to observe \ conquer / them. I was full two days on a ladder aboute them, but att last got the ~~conquest~~ \ victory / & now finds them bound \ unto you / like slaves in Tryumphe, unto him who like a generall incouraged me to make this onset. But I must confess they jayded me soe much that I have not attempted to take a Transcript for my own use.

But I took occasion to goe from thence to Kirkby thore, where I drew out the Altar. But (alas!) the Inscription is so much defaced by the Injury of Time ~~then carelessness of the people~~ that to read the characters \ is / no less than impossible. There's a faire F beg[inn]ing the first line, but ~~whose~~ \ he who is able to read the rest / goes further ~~reads better~~ than I. The place where twas founde was the seat of our ancestors (as appears from old writeings) \ and / cald Whelep Castle, after Whelp Castle; & the towne was cald ~~Whelope~~ \ Callatum alias Gallatum / as Mr Cambden will tell you \ will better inform you. / Hic steterit Catuli Regia celsa senis.[292] But iam seges est, ubi domus erat.[293] And the furrow plowes every day more and more [to] make windowes by its woundes, to lett in light to those obscured antiquities. For not much more than a 2 yeare agoe {circa 1667} a great roaleing stone of aboute 2 yard lenth was digd up here ~~the ground~~, which now remaines at Nebiggin Hall.

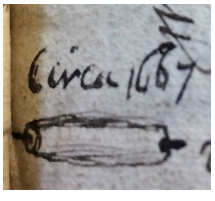


Figure 3.3.36. 'Roaleing stone'. IV.79.

[IV.80][294]

And when they dig the foundacions of there houses, many curious peces of Antiquity are here descovered.[295] I was inform'd by a credible person (whom I have ~~constituted and~~ appointed \ to be my / Stuart […][296] if any such things come againe to his hands) that In diging a little depth for the foundation of a little kill \ which is / now standing on your left hand as you \ journey[297] / for Browham aboute 15 yards beyond the water Troutbeck, a great barr of Iron was taken up, about the thickness of a mans legg, which as soone as touched (such a consumer of all things is Time) fell into shivers.[298] But diverse vessels of brass were taken up whole, perfect and uncorrupted, ~~save only rust which it had contracted~~ that rusted all over. And \ there were / fine Earthen potts & enameld Glass, as I am informd,[299] which gave the spectatoures occasion to thinke (and perhaps not amiss) that People in those days Fabe\r/tius-like, T[r]ichlia sua Samnetico preferebant auro.[300]

---

[292] 'Here will have stood the lofty realm of old Catulus.' Compare Ovid, *Heroide*s. 'Letter from Penelope to Ulysses', I.1.34, 'hic steterat Priami regia celsa senis': here stood the lofty realms of Priam.

[293] 'Now are cornfields where home once was'. Compare Ovid, *Heroides,* 'Letter from Penelope', 1.1.53, 'iam seges est ubi Troia fuit': Now are cornfields where Troy once was.

[294] From here to the end of IV.82, the text becomes more difficult to read: scored-through passages jostle with interlineated phrases. What follows is not a verbatim transcription; rather, it is an attempt to use Machell's words to make sense of what he was trying to communicate.

[295] Here is a blotted interlineation.

[296] 'Steward.' More illegible words follow.

[297] Unclear word.

[298] A 'kill' is the cell of a monk or hermit. *OED*.

[299] For another version of this paragraph, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.558.

[300] [People in those days], 'Fabertius-like, preferred their own wattle huts to Samnite gold'. 'Marcus (sic: Manius) Curius Dentatus refuses the gifts of the Samnites', is a painting by Govert Flinck (1656), hanging in the Royal Palace of Amsterdam. It depicts the Roman consul, Marcus Curius Dentatus, preferring a gift of turnips to an offer of gold and silver objects. 'Fabertius-like' echoes another of Machell's references to righteous frugality, viz. VI.200, at the beginning of this chapter, which refers to 'Fabritian plate' i.e. earthenware used by Gaius Fabricius Luscinus, a similarly self-denying Roman censor in 275 BC.

I made strict enquiry after \ all / these and other things of the like nature; as likewise for coynes diggd up in this place. For coines I enquird much after them […] but as the cocke in the fable,[301] they sleight these jewells and gave them [to] their children \ to play with / who threw them away.[302]
Prodegious stone was likewise here found, which baffle the apprehensions of oure modern workemen \ who cannot imagin / that wonder much, how they could be layd. In diggeing for which, a Vault {Coppin hill Vault} was discovered in the midle of that street as you turn toward the castle, which was closed up at the command of Mr Wharton, under the pennalty of undergoing paying a fine. ~~and~~
These Ruines are found for a vast space together, which discovers the castle to have been very large.[303]
And certanely the territories were not disproportionate \ unanswerable. / But this being from where wee descend, I may seem to have writ to[o] much concerneing it; but I doubt not your pardon since you requir'd it; and know that I do it rather to gratify your curiosity than my owne ambition. For I finde not any thing in this long preservacion of oure name & familie, but a just occasion to glorifie god for so great a Blessing; who I hope allwayes will come nigh the family in there Ancient Inheritance, as hitherto he has done; birthr[ight] neither so poor as to be contemptible, nor yet so rich as to despise others, & forgett themselves.

[IV.81]

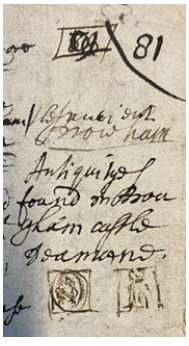
But to goe on a little further in my Itur Boreale.[304] Found at Borovonacum – Browham – 2 memorable figures in stone, noe less remarkeable, set up in the wall which apperd lately in the castle demaine in digging of stones to wall it about. Stones were then digged up, many of them hewne, these 2 above others to be taken notice of because seeme to be the statue of an Ancient holy man \ perhaps one of their [?] as may be gathered from the habit I have scratched out with my pen. But the head \ they have placed / upon it can not att all belong to that body, both by cause of its \ great / disproportion and also because of its workmanship. It is far more Rude than that of the Body, for the 2nd which stood nearer the castle, is a Roman head with a lawrell wreath about it, having a very youthful countenance and a Coate of Male? or of net worke upon him.



Figure 3.3.37. Margin. IV.80.

Figure 3.3.38. Margin. IV.81.

They were found in a place flagged over like a church, which confirmed som in their beliefe in an old conjecture that Browham had been a Towne of a large extent conteineing no less 9 churches, 8 whereof, with the Towne, being demolishd; the ninth had, as it now hath, the Name of Ninechurch, which I rather submit too. But findeing no Ground at all for this Story, save that it was a Roman Colony, I have heard of other opinion con[cerning] a Scotch Saint whose name (they say) was on the wall; and picture was there in the memory of man upon the w[all] – I shall further enquire into – and that thence it was called Ninechurch.
{I conclude this church has taken it name from St Ninianus at whose n. it may seen to have been dedicated. Mr Savage, Ecclesiæ, Rector.}[305]



[301] Aesop's Fable. The Cock and the Jewel. When a cock was scratching in the ground to find food, he found a precious jewel. The cock knew that the jewel was valuable to some, but would have much preferred to find even a single ear of corn. Moral: precious things are worthless to those who cannot appreciate them.
[302] Machell was much struck by this, mentioning it several times in the MS: e.g. see Part 1. Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.560.
[303] From this point on the page, Machell begins to score-through much more thoroughly, and to rewrite interlineally. As the words are so closely written, a perfectly precise transcription cannot be made. Nevertheless, this edition uses only Machell's words, in an attempt to reproduce what Machell was endeavouring to say.
[304] 'Northern Journey.'
[305] As several words in this margin comment are too indistinct to transcribe with certainty, they have been omitted. In the MS, Savage is named as 'Salvage', but a margin comment corrects the error. For Savage, see Part 1, Ch.7, Brougham, II.479-480. Arthur Savage was ordained deacon at Rose Castle, 1637; rector of Brougham, 1643-1662; prebendary of Carlisle Cathedral and Rector of Caldbeck from 1665 to 1701. CCED.

But that be as it will. Certanely the Towne had been very large, as is further probable both from the distance twixt X[C] and parsonedge, which if there had not been nigher would never have beene build at 2 miles distance. And appeares allso from the rubbish plowd up thereabouts where they can onle riple,[306] the ground being hindred with stones.

[IV.82]

I was also at Lazenby in Cumberland.

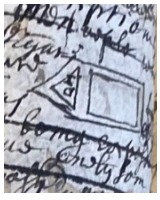


Figure 3.3.39. Stone at Lazonby. IV.82.

Lett me carry you a little further with mee, where tho I cannot have your assistance to read, yet I shall have your company to lament with mee the Injury of Time \ and negligence or rather ignorance of men / which has washd away 2 noble Inscriptions which have bin writ on 2 stones of this figure in the church-yard; but brought as from P[l]um[p]ton Wall;[307] whose inscriptions being exposed to violence from the wether & so washed away, now have onely som characters left remaneing to tell us they were not intended as now a dayes. And that the one was Saxon, and the other Roman. And those symbols[308] in the triangle D.M. Dis man.[309] On the other, in the same place, a crescent[310] for theire Goddess the Moon, whence we yet retaine our Dies lunæ: Munday or Mooneday, as you very well know.

And these I thinke are the most observances that I have made, being destitute of my best companion and 2[nd] selfe, and also being hindered of going in the chefe season of the yeare by the indisposition of my Body,[311] by cold wether partly, partly by my […]ends.[312] Yet while I was at home I was not altogether idle for I have drawne the Armes of the Gentery of Westm'land and informd myself a little concerneing theire families.
But that I may not bore[313] \ you / in so lamenting a condi[tion] for the neglecting the time [and] opportunities here (or my negligence of […][314] industry in the discovering of those remnants of Antiquity), I'le Bring you Back to Pendraggon Castle.

I also rambled to Pendraggon Castle which is a Building so uniforme & compact & so well contrived with a Gallary all round the Top of it that bespeakes the workmens praise and the wisdom of the Ancients, and detractes from the honour some take in these later dayes for their skil in Building [and in] Architecture. It stands betwixt 2 great fells which far overtop it on either side, but the River assaying to Reach about it, change the fine rotunders to strong Bulworkes. [To list] the Roman or rather Brittish strong Bulworke[s] of a square figure which here & there lye up & down the countery would be too large a Taske. But there are 2 or 3 more Remarc[able]. One \ a Campe an Crakenthorpe: more a watch tower; / a campe cald Maiden-holde, as allso of castle demollishd: Maiden Castle on Top of Stanemore, where I saw stone of a dore or window. {And tis no less then a wonder, how ever they should get stones unto such a vast a[nd] craggy mountaine.} {Brough Castle, part whereof fell (as Tradition sayes) on that good Friday our Saviour sufferd, where there is distant from the castle a Tower cald Cæsers. Browham Castle, \ Apalby Castle / where an other \ there be of them at; / & \ Browham[315] C[astle] \ where there is / an other calld Pagan T[ower]. And but the handsomest of all: Maybrough \ Mabrough / Castle at Yeamont, not far from the Rounde Table, for I have neither time nor paper to proceed any further.}

[306] To scratch lightly, graze. *OED*.
[307] Plumpton/Plumpton Wall, Cumberland, is a township in Lazonby Parish containing the Roman site, Voreda.
[308] Editor's substitution; the word it represents is illegible.
[309] 'Dis minibus': to the spirits of the dead.
[310] Machell drew an illustration of a crescent here.
[311] Two words here appear to read, 'since that'.
[312] The letters at the beginning of this word are obscured by the binding.
[313] This a tentative substitution for a very unclear word.
[314] Here, the transcription omits several illegible words.
[315] 'Browham' has been written over 'Appleby': Machell appears to have been careless here.

[Correspondence 2. February 1687]

[Letter 2A. Mill to Machell. 7 February 1687][316]

[I.764][317]

D.L.[318]

I receiv'd your last, and before I come to it, must say something to ~~some~~ former letters I have had. In yours of Oct. 22 last you desird me to speak with Mr Walker to communicate what he mett with in his readyng concerning Westmorland and Cumberland. You know I cannot – Acheronta movere.[319] I was never very well acquainted with him; and now I should be sorry to begin. And I doubt Mr Wood will not wag in this matter.[320] Walker is taken up now with other concerns. However I will talk with Wood, & see what can be done about your monuments in Sicily, if there be any such –

As to your lease 'tis drawn, and seal'd, and ready for you. Your way of haveing it paid to your bailiff in Hampshire, will not be so well.[321] For if it should be paid in that way, it must be return'd afterwards to London, to the Collector in Smithfeild, which is a trouble not fitt to give the Colledge: who will expect, you know, to receive it without trouble. I am advisd by Mr Newlyn their Steward (who gives you his service) to tell you that your best way will be to send your servant in Hampshire over to the Colledge with the money. He \ may / come in one day, and go the next. And therefore, without giveing yourself or me any further trouble, pray write to your Agent, and take this method –

Your large account of the monument dugg up by you, I cannot yet communicate to Dr Plot; he being at London. I chuse to send it back to you, not knowing when we shall see him here. Pray, proceed in gathering what antiquities can be found, relateing to our Country. As to the inscription in Cambden DEO &c., the Circumstance of its being shewn Cambden by an old woman who liv'd upon the place is in the Latin Edition.

And thus I have made a shift to give you a short answer to your several Queries. You know my business is great: so that I cannot expatiate, as I would. Pray remember to send up your old Lease by

---

316 Letter copied in Machell's hand.

317 Also numbered p.24. Part of the reply to the letter can be seen as a scrap on VI.763A, below. Words underscored are in different ink, suggesting that Machell underlined these points as important.

318 'Deo Laudes': praises to God.

319 Virgil mentions the river Acheron in his description of the underworld in Book VI of the *Aeneid.* In Book VII, line 312[13] he gives to Juno the famous saying, 'flectere si nequeo superos, Acheronta movebo': 'If I cannot bend the will of Heaven, I shall move Hell'. In his letter to Machell, Mill appears to be saying of Walker, 'I cannot move the infernal powers.' This suggests that the victim of Mill's opprobrium was Obadiah Walker, Master of University College, Oxford. An excellent scholar, he was also a determined royalist who remained with Charles I in Oxford, and, after the king's death, was ejected from his fellowship. After the restoration he was reinstated and voted Master of University College but his encouragement of Roman Catholicism made enemies. He converted in 1686. When James II was deposed in 1688 and fled England, Walker attempted to follow him but was captured and returned to Oxford, where he was imprisoned and later put on trial. His ghost is reputed to haunt staircase 8 of University College. R. Beddard, 'Walker, Obadiah (1616-1699), college head and author'. *ODNB*. See also a letter from Bishop Thomas Smith to Daniel Fleming (3 June 1686), which refers to John Mill's scathing description of Walker's 'papist' conversion, in J.A. Bennett and R. Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of Sir S. H. Le Fleming Esq., of Rydal Hall, Historical Manuscripts Commission. Twelfth Report, Appendix, Part VII* (London, 1890), 199-200.

320 Anthony à Wood, Oxford antiquary: see Graham Parry, 'Wood, Anthony [Anthony à Wood] (1632-1695), antiquary'. *ODNB*. In 1667, Obadiah Walker became a delegate of the newly founded Oxford University Press. His influence enabled Wood to publish his pioneering *History and Antiquities of Oxford*: see Beddard, 'Walker, Obadiah'. *ODNB*. Nevertheless, Wood was critical of Walker's Catholicism, see Andrew Clark (ed.), *The Life and Times of Anthony Wood, Antiquary of Oxford, 1632-1695, described by Himself, collected from his Diaries and other Papers, Volume III (1682-1695)* (Oxford, 1894), January 1686, 176-77.

321 C.1680 Machell had married Elizabeth, widow of Andrew Whelpdale, rector of Newnham and Dogmersfield, Hampshire, the daughter and coheir of William Godson, lord of the manor and advowson of Dogmersfield. See Angus Winchester, 'Machell, Thomas (bap. 1647, d. 1698), antiquary'. *ODNB*.

Burnyeats.[322] & contrive to pay in the money speedily! That upon recit of it, I may have your Lease from your Colledge, so as to send it you down by the same Carrier. I am
Your most affectionate
J.M.[323]
Oxon, Feb. 7, 1687/8

[I.763A]

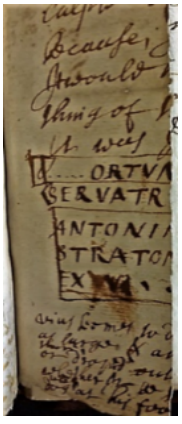


Figure 3.3.40. Part of an Inscription within a discarded draft of Thomas Machell's letter to John Mill, 20-21 February 1687. I.763A. [324]

[VI.295]

[Letter 2B. Machell to Mill. 20-21 February 1687: a precis of a longer narrative]

{This is extracted into the following disc[ourse]}
Feb. 20, 1687/8
Sir
I see you~~r intension~~ \ are so intent / upon your business that makes you unmindeful of other matters, for the lease you desire with such expedition is in your owne hands, as appears by your letter on the 1[t] of December 1687, wherein you acquaint me that you have received my old lease from London, sent to you by one Mr Baynes &c. But I thinke my mother will be up very shortly and therefore you need not haisten that business. However, I shall order the payment as you have directed.
Pray give my service to Mr Wood, & renew my request about the monument, if there be any such in Sicily.
Send me word also in what Latin edition of Mr Camden (for there are diverse) the circumstance of that Inscription (DEO BELATUCADRO), being shewn unto him by an old woman, may be found {no, it was in Northumberland}.[325] As also whether it be not sayed in that Latin edition in the Taberders Library, or on the other in the college library, that Kirkbythore, heretofore calld Gallagum, was the principal town of the Brigantes? For I thinke, somewhere I have read som such matter, but doubt very much \ of the truth of it / because of Yorks being famouse in those dayes.[326] {No[t] suer.}
I have found a piece of a Roman altar since I sent you last, which has bin layd \ with the letters downwards / for a foundation stone, as I suppose, upon the repare of som part of Whelp-Castle, after the first desolution of it, & perhaps by the Christians, or at the least \ som Roman enemyes / by the

[322] Burnyeats, The Kendal Carrier; see below, VI.185; VI.301.
[323] Dr John Mill: Principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford. Born a weaver's son at Hardendale near Shap in 1645, and educated at Bampton School, he entered Queen's College as a 'poor child' in 1661; known as Milne up to 1673. Politically, a waverer, he was nick-named 'Johnny Windmill' in the 1680s. He died in 1707: S. Handley, 'Mill, John (1644/5-1707), Church of England clergyman and college head'. *ODNB*.
[324] Tiny page (4cm x 3cm) containing part of a Latin inscription in a draft letter from Machell to Mill. The reply to this letter appears in this chapter on VI.764: Letter 2. Mill to Machell. 7 February 1687.
[325] See I.764. This margin comment and the neighbouring underscorings have been scrawled in pencil.
[326] This paragraph has been lightly scored through.

Goths and Vandals; for I do not imagin it would have been counted horrendum nefas,[327] while Roman paganism was on foote, to have defaced anything of that nature & put it to such an inferior use. It was inscribed to Preserving Fortune, after this manner: ORTVNAE / SERVATRICI / ANTONIA / STRATONIS / EX VI. SO / {Every word is a line} But adverse fortune has denyed us the happiness of the rest of it, being laid in som other part of the building.
{ἀγχδή Jύκη: bonæ fortunæ. Idem cum bene vertat = sit faustum felixque = cum bonis auspicijs. Apud Græcos in basibus et cipis statuarum virorum. Bene merentium honoris ergo, aut futurum ominandi causa præfigibantur. *Marmora Oxon*, p.57.58.}[328]

[VI.296]

Wee also found pieces of rubble floores, such as Vitruvius seems to describe: L.VII Cap 1^0, {Ruderi novo tercia pars Testae Tunsae admisceatur, Calchisque duae partes ad quinque mortarij mixtionibus praestant responsum, Vitruvius,}[329] composed of like stone dust or sand, together with beaten, pounded or pounced brick, & marble stones of variouse coulers,[330] well rubd & polish'd, which render'd it like unto speckled marble. And in one lumpe of lime or cement, rather which was harder and stronger than stone it selfe, a curious Cornelian Oval was found (either drop'd by accident out of a ring or stuck there on purpose when the morter was made), upon which this figure was fairly ingraven:



Figure 3.3.41. Cornelian gem stone seal figure. VI.296.

Which, whether it be one of the Roman lares or the Saxon god Thor or ~~signo~~ \ one of the / Catulus, with his dog at his foot, I leave you to conjecture.

[327] 'An unholy atrocity.'
[328] 'Good luck! To good fortune! Likewise, with, May it turn out well! May it be lucky and happy! With good omens! Among the Greeks, on the pedestals and pillars of the statues of men. Therefore, they were attached in front, in honour of those who deserved well, or to bring good luck for the future.' See Humphrey Prideaux, *Marmora Oxoniensia ex Arundellianis, Seldenianis, aliisque conflata recensuit & perpetuo commentario explicavit* (Oxford, 1676). Pages 57-58 contain: 'in Appendice saepius inscriptionibus habes praemissa significant idem quod apud Latinos bene vertat, seu sit Faustum felixque, seu cum bonis auspiciis, & apud Graecos in omnibus fere statuarum basibus & cippis in alicujus viri bene meriti hono|rem, aut foederis promulgandi gratiâ erectis, bene ominandi causâ praefigeban|tur.' Translated as, '… in the Appendix you have several inscriptions before them, signify the same thing which among the Latins turns well, or whether Faustus is happy, or with good auspiciousness, and among the Greeks in almost all the bases of the statues and cypresses erected in the honor of some man well-deserved, or by the grace of promulgating a treaty, they were prefigured in the cause of good omens.'
[329] 'The pavement is composed of two parts of fresh rubbish, one of potsherds, and two of lime.Vitruvius.' The whole of Vitruvius's Ch.1.5. translates as, 'Pavements are, however, more fit to be used in the open air, in as much as timbers expanding in a moist atmosphere, and contracting in a dry one, or sagging in the middle, cause defects in the pavement by their settlements. Moreover, frosts and ice soon ruin them. But as they are sometimes required, they must be made as follows. Over the first flooring, boards, others crossing them, must be laid, fastened with nails; thus, giving a double covering to the beams. The pavement is composed of two parts of fresh rubbish, one of potsherds, and two of lime.' See Morgan, *Vitruvius Pollio, The Ten Books on Architecture* (Cambridge, Mass. 1914), Book 7, 1, 5.
[330] MS: 'together with ~~brick~~ beaten \ pounded or pounced / ~~in pieces &~~ \ brick, with / & marble stones of variouse coulers.'

If you know any books in the public Library *de dijs Gentium* let this be enquired of;[331] & note that the sceptre, or whatever it be, is in his right hand a[nd] grav'd in the stone, tho' here it appears to be in the left.[332]
I have since, this: a cristilline stone of an oval figure presented to me, which was found on the west side of the High Burwens in 1691, which I suppose has bin used as a locket, having nothing at all ingraven upon it:[333]



Figure 3.3.42. Image from a ring stone found in 1691. VI.296.

There was alsoe an Urne of the largest sort (such as I described heretofore in my letter to Sir William Dugdale) but unhappily broke by the stroake of a gavelock before it was seen; and this puts me in mind of what was lately said in a newes letter (as I am informed by those that trade in them),[334] that there was an Urne full of Roman Medals found in Wiltshire, concerning which, if it be not to great an avocation, I would desire you to give me an account: Sc. of what metall they are generally made, & whose images & superscription they beare. For if you put me upon this fruitlesse & laborious study, you must expect some part of the trouble as occasion requires. For here we want books & correspondents, without which, you know, nothing can be done. Pray gô[335] inspect my former Letters & let me have further satisfaction concerning my Queries – both in them & this, or else forbeare to impose your commands in this particular upon
Sir
Your most faithfull & affectionate friend

Pray send me a copy of the matriculation oath, and other oaths, which wee tooke in the college & schools upon our promotion & degree, that I may take care to observe and performe them, as God shall inable me.

[Correspondence 3: October 1688 – July 1689]

[V.168][336]

[3A. Mill to Machell. 13 October 1688]

These
For the reverend my very worthy friend
Mr Thomas Machell, Rector
of Kirkby Thore near
Appleby
In Westmerland

---

[331] Machell would probably have known Tertullian's *De execrandis gentium diis* (On the Execrable Gods of the Heathens), but perhaps did not know Lilius Gregorius Giraldus, *De Deis Gentium varia et multiplex Historia, in qua simul de eorum imaginibus et cognominibus agitur* (*A diverse and manifold History of the Gods of all Peoples, in which at the same time there is an account of their images and their epithets.*) (Basel, 1548 and Lyon, 1565).
[332] A rough sketch of a stone appears in the MS margin here.
[333] The paper containing the image has been pasted onto this page (*Figure 3.3.42*).
[334] 16th- and 17th-century newsletters, newsbooks and pamphlets (produced in print or in manuscript), predated the modern newspaper. Suspected by political authorities, often unreliable in their veracity, they were subject to strict control until the failure to renew the Regulation of Printing Act in 1695. Ross Eamon, *Historical Dictionary of Journalism* (2nd edn, London, 2021), 1-14.
[335] 'gô' = ergo: therefore, a common contraction in Machell's MS; for Machell's list of contractions, see MS.IV.97-101.
[336] The outer part (with seal) of a letter to Thomas Machell.

[V.165][337]

Oxon Oct. 13. 1688
D[eo] L[audes][338]
For my own part, I'm goeing to answer your letter, but, I confess I am heartily ashamed of my negligence. I laid yours by upon the receipt of it, and thither rumbling among my papers, I found it, dated Febr. 10th. Well, I must trust to your good nature. Ey' well I mett with it at last; for, but for this accident, it would have remaind in my Archive. It is full of queries, and I am glad to find it so, considering the nature of them, for I would gladly have you pursue your design of searching into the antiquities of our native country. If you meet with ever an old charter relating to my ancient abbey in Valle Magdalenæ, not extant in the *Monasticon*, pray let me have it, for I have a great treasure of charters already! and I would willingly be adding. Hereafter we may add another volume, for ought I know, to the *Monasticon*. As to your last, I need say nothing. 'Tis in Mr Godson's hands and I have deliver'd the counterparts to C.C.C. so that that business is over. – And Woods[339] I have spoke with, but he can say nothing to the Sicilian monument.
– The history of the urn & medals in Wiltshire, I have had the opportunity to be fully inform'd of by a Person of great worth & curiosity, Captain Hatton, who made a very peculiar enquiry about them. & 'tis all, he assures me, forgery & fiction. The medals he saw several of them, were recent things.[340] As to the Inscription Deo Belatucadro &c. in The Library Cambden,[341] ther's not a word of its' being there in Mr Cambden by an old woman[342] \ *a. /. And what he says of K[irkby Thore] is onely this: 'Nomen vetustum penitus obliteravit ipsa vetustas, Wheallop Castle hodie nuncupant. Si per antiquitatis Prætorem liceat, dicerem esse Gallagum Ptolemæi quod Antonino Gallatum suffragante itineraria distantia, nec prorsus reclamante nomine &c.'[343] Not a word of its being the principal town of the Brigantes.
–The Cornelian Oval you must give me further time to enquire after; but I will not fail to give you the sense of the Curious in this place. Your release from Ric. Davis's {?}[344] agents he tells me was sent you long ago – And as for your oaths, that of your matriculation is out of doors with you; it obliges you, while here, to observe the customs and statutes of the University – And for the Coll[ege] Oath at

[337] Letter in Mill's hand.
[338] The letters, 'D L' are probably a contraction of 'Deo Laudes' (Praises to God).
[339] Anthony Wood, antiquary. In his lifetime he was formally known as Anthony à Wood, but he appears in many published works as Anthony Wood.
[340] Captain Hatton was possibly Christopher, first viscount Hatton (1632-1706). In 1670 Hatton succeeded his father as second Baron Hatton and governor of Guernsey. A collector of books and antiquities, Hatton senior had patronised William Dugdale and had carried on an extensive correspondence on scientific and philosophical matters. Five years after the father's death, the son presented to the Bodleian Library his father's collection of four volumes of Anglo-Saxon Homilies and 112 valuable manuscripts (in part Anglo-Saxon), which are styled 'Codices Hattonianæ.' (See Edward M. Thompson (ed.), *Correspondence of the Family of Hatton, being chiefly Letters addressed to Christopher, first Viscount Hatton, A.D. 1601-1704*, 2 vols., Camden Society, London, 1878). In 1687, Christopher, first viscount Hatton, became Captain of Grenadiers in the Earl of Huntingdon's Foot, which might explain why Mill referred to him as 'Captain Hatton'. See Jan Broadway, 'Hatton, Christopher, first viscount Hatton (bap. 1632, d. 1706), politician'. *ODNB*; see also Victor Stater, 'Hatton, Christopher, first baron Hatton (bap. 1605, d. 1670)'. *ODNB*.
[341] Camden left his library of books to his former pupil and friend Sir Robert Cotton, the creator of the Cottonian library; both libraries became foundation collections of the British Library. See British Museum, *A Catalogue of the Manuscripts in the Cottonian Library deposited in the British Museum* (1802).
[342] See Machell's request, VI.295, above, in which he asks 'In what Latin edition of Mr Camden (for there are diverse) the circumstance of that Inscription (DEO BELATUCADRO), being shewn unto him by an old woman, may be found.'
[343] Correctly transcribed by Mill, this translates as, 'But tract of time has quite out-worn the old name, and it is called at this day Whealop-Castle. If I might without prejudice to the judges of antiquity, I would say it were Gallagum mentioned by Ptolome, which Antonine nameth Gallatum, the distance of journeys accord so well, and the name doth not altogether gainsay...' See Camden, *Britannia*, tr. Holland (1607), Westmoreland.
[344] A question mark in Machell's hand.

your admission Scholar, & Fellow, you oblige your self cum ad uberiores fortunas perveneris imminente articulo opportunitatis, ad Collegij meliorationem insister[e] auxilijs et consilijs.[345]

Since I consulted the Library Cambden, I have consulted that of the Taberdars; there's not a word relating to the 2 above mention'd passages wherein you desire satisfaction; only as to the Inscription "Belo Sancto Bela tucadro" {?}[346] \ b. / first 'tis in the Tabitors edition, Cambden saies 'twas describ'd for him by one Mr Oswald Dykes, a Cumberland minister. I think this is all which may concern the questions purpos's in your letter. Pray proceed and make use you think fitt of your old friend & servant, J.M.
{Oxon. Oct. 13 '88}

[V.168]

[Machell's Notes relating to the letter above]

*! a. But I finde an Inscription, Sc. Deo vitirine[o] Limeo Rov[a] P & M ad Kirkbythore in Westmariæ: anicula quae causulam proxima[m] incoluit Arulam votivam Antiqua[m] hanc Camdeno Regionem illam perlustranti ostendit Deo indigiti vitirineo inscriptam. MS Inscrip. P.33. {No. It is a mistake for it was about Caervoran.}[347]
Inscription 2
{q?} Which being an Argument that Camden himselfe was in this country – I must farther enquire if this passage be not either in the Library ore Taberders Camden.[348]
b. I suppose that is another Inscription which in the correct copy is DEO SALVETO &c. and not Belo Sancto and a different thing from that of Kirkbythore.
{!} I have allso an Inscription V. (Deo Silvano) upon an Altar found in Grainge Beck \ in the Parish of K., / The rest being Obliterated: See if it have no affinity with this which was found in an Altar at Moresby in Cumberland.

DEO SILVAN... / COH. II. LING / CVI PRÆES… / G. POMPEIVS M … / SATVRNIN…

To be read thus – Deo Silvano. cohors secunda Lingonum, Cuj præst G. Pompeius M. Saturninus. quæ quidem Ara cum cornuta' Silvani imaguncula. Fossa fuit. MSS Inscrips. p.8. Fig.2.[349]

[V.166][350]

[3B. Machell to Mill. 9 July 1689]

July 9^{t} 1689

Sir
I thank you for the last \ trouble / I gave you in searching the Libraryes – but am still in earnest expection of an Account concerneing the Oval Impressions I sent you, as likewise of the Sicilian monument, but of this I suppose conclamatum est.[351] When I was not well last winter gon a twelve month, I diverted my selfe in Reading Vitruvius; and there I met with a certaine Diagram concerneing an artificial Eccho which ~~I am not so much master of musick which~~ the ancient Romans used in their Theaters. I am not so much Master of Musick as to understand it so well as I ought,[352] much less to render the Thing Intelligible to vulgar capacityes. But Mr Principal of Alban Hall is (as I remember), an Expert musitian; wherefore I desire you to consult him in it, & (if he pleases to do me that favour)

[345] 'When you arrive at a more prosperous station in life, and the moment of opportunity presents itself, to apply yourself to the betterment of the College by your help and counsel.'
[346] The question mark is in Machell's hand. Mill appears to be referring to the inscription, Deo Belatucadro.
[347] 'To an ancient god of pathways, in a lane P & M at Kirkbythore in Westmorland: an old woman who dwelt in a nearby cottage showed this little old votive altar to Camden, when he was traversing that region, inscribed to an ancient native deity.'
[348] I take from this that Machell asked for two libraries to be checked for a particular copy of Camden's *Britannia*: the Bodleian library and the Taberdar's library (Taberdar's Room) at Queen's College, both in Oxford.
[349] 'To be read thus – To the god Silvanus. The second cohort of the Lingones, commanded by G. Pompeius M. Saturninus. It is an altar with a little horned image of Silvanus. It was excavated.'
[350] This page is in Machell's hand.
[351] It is dead past all hope.
[352] MS: 'I am not so much Master of Musick as to understand its & so well as I ~~would~~ \ ought. /'

to send me a plane description of the matter, so as to render it easy and practi\ca/ble.[353] I am resolved according to your repeated desires, to continue my search after the Antiquities this County of ~~afords~~ \ Westmorland / [affords], being very glad to contribute any \ way / to your satisfaction. But in truth I have not that otium scribendi,[354] which is necessary for one being so much diverted with the fattegues & troubles / of a Country life, That it oftentimes distracts my thoughts when I should set upon it. The Best Remedy for which I thinke is, now that Our friend is Archbishop of Yorke,[355] to bespeake me my old Unckle Henryes preferment, Or In order thereto a chaplains place:[356] which I leave to your management.
I heare you have a young man in your Hall for whom I had a singular kindness upon your account. I mean James Gibson;[357] and as I doubt not but he will answer the character I gave him, so I hope he will with your favour and kindness upon[358] my account; which will ~~highly~~ \ ever / obliege,
Sir, your very affectionate friend & servant, T.M.

{Mr Brierly, Lieutenant Collonell to \ a / regiment of horse quartered in these partes, does often with me Remember his Tutor; he is growne a very ingeniouse Gentleman & is much esteemed of amongst the soljers, and all that are acquainted with him.}
{The copy of CCC Lease.}

[Correspondence 4: March – October 1691]

[VI.183]

[Letter 4A. Mill to Machell. 28 March 1691][359]

[VI.298]

These for the Reverend Mr Machell with a book at Kirkby Thore Westmorland.

[VI.183]

Dear S[r]
I presume you have receiv'd my answer to your last. This I send by one Embassador Burnyates;[360] and together with it a Paper book, which I beg leave to lodge in your hands, till he come up again to

[353] The only obviously musical principal of St Alban Hall during this period was the campanologist, Richard Duckworth, author of *Tintinnalogia, or, The Art of Ringing* (1668, 2nd edn, 1671), the first book on the art of change ringing. See J. Eisel, 'Duckworth, Richard (bap. 1631? d. 1706)'. *ODNB*. The dates of Duckworth's tenure are uncertain, so not given in *ODNB*, but Anthony Wood has suggested a starting date of '1692 or thereabouts', which is later than the date of Machell's letter. See Anthony à Wood, *Athenæ Oxonienses 1632-95, Vol. IV* (ed. Philip Bliss, 1813-20), 794.
[354] 'leisure for writing'.
[355] The newly enthroned archbishop of York was Thomas Lamplugh, son of Thomas Lamplugh of Dovenby, Cumberland. He entered Queen's College, Oxford, in 1634 aged 16; BA 1639; MA and fellow 1642; BD 1657; DD 1660; Principal of St Alban Hall, Oxford, 1664-73; archdeacon of London 1664; canon of Worcestor 1669; dean of Rochester 1673; bishop of Exeter 1676; archbishop of York 1688 to 1691, see *OAD*.
[356] 'Old Unckle Henrye' was Henry Machell LLD, prebendary of York in the stall of North Newbold, 1512: see Edward Bellasis, 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 425; see also Bernard Burke, *A genealogical and heraldic history of the landed gentry of Great Britain & Ireland Vol. 2* (London, 1894), 1292. By seeking 'a chaplain's place', Machell is referring to the law that allowed episcopal and noble chaplains a legal right to hold two livings in plurality. Their status was defined in 1530, and further clarified in subsequent acts over the following century; see Daniel Reed, *Patronage, Performance, and Reputation in the Eighteenth-Century Church*, PhD thesis, Oxford Brookes University (Sept. 2019), 44; see also William Gibson, *A Social History of The Domestic Chaplain, 1530-1840* (London, 1997), 67.
[357] James Gibson is described as 'Son of Richard, of Bampton, Westmorland, pauper. St. Edmund Hall; matric. 7 March 1688/9 aged 22; B.A. 1692, *OAD*. Gibson was ordained priest in Oxford on 15 June 1701. CCED.
[358] Here, 3½cm of text has been thoroughly scored-through.
[359] See another transcript in a letter sent by R.S. Ferguson (then editor of CWAAS *Transactions*) on 17 December 1885 to the *Society of Antiquaries of Newcastle upon Tyne*, and printed in the Society's *Proceedings* 2 (1887), 142. Ferguson was frustrated at the quality of Machell's reponse to Mill's invitation, contained in the six volumes of Machell's researches: 'It is very disappointing; it refers to drawings in the book sent to Oxford, but a few rough sketches on tracing paper are pasted in.' Some readers might have been similarly dissatisfied at the lack of finished drawings. To quote Ferguson, thy are 'rough'. But see Letter 9, below.
[360] The Oxford Carrier.

Oxford. You must know, among our other literary designs this is one: to collect by our selves and our correspondents both at home and abroad, all the Inscriptions in what language soever, excepting English, that are not already in Gruter,[361] Reinesius[362] and the Book of our Theater Marbles. A very great Collection is already made; and we are very Zealous to pursue this design as far as it will go. Among those who must promote this work, I must beg leave to mention (I have done it already) the worthy Person to whom I'm writeing; who has made great observations of this kind; and has got together Several Inscriptions in the Northern Parts, not as yet noted by Cambden or any Body else. My request to you is, that you would give \ me / an in this book I send you, all your inscriptions, those of Appleby Schole & all others never yet publish'd. Write them very fair and exactly just as they are upon the stones, even with the Errata. And above every Inscription, set down in English the Pedigree, as I may call it, of such Inscription. The figure (& other considerable Accidents) of the stone on which tis engraven, the place where & the person by whom twas found &c. And order your matters soe as to have them ready by the time Tom Burnyates comes up, so as to send them by him. When ever we print you may depend upon it I will do \ you / justice and honour. Pray be kind in gratifying me in this request; and believe me to be ever
Dear S[r]
Yours most faithfully
J.M.
Oxon March 28. 91.
What we have in Cambden already you need not write.
My humble service to your good Lady &c.

[VI.297]

[Letter 4B. Machell to Mill. 11 May 1691]

May 11, 1691
Dear Sir
I receivd your kinde letter concerneing your Godson a great while agoe, and should have made a more early acknowledgement of your great friendship in adopting him as it were your own childe, and expressing your selfe so freely towards him upon my account; but that I know such a true friend as you are will give way to business, and that no remissness can alter the friendship that \ is so well grounded / has bin so long continued betwixt us ~~& so very well grounded~~.
And this suggests also a ready answer to your ~~rather~~ \ last / letter sent by Burnyeats, wherein you desire me to transmit unto you (in the Booke you sent) all my Inscriptions at Appleby-school or any where else, never yet publish'd; which, though ~~it be~~ a request that would not be granted \ unto / another (considering the \ present / designe \ which / you \ so lately / have revived in me, of writing a Booke of that nature my selfe) yet it cannot in friendship be denyed to you by
Sir
Your Most faithfull and affectionate servant
Tho. Machell.

[VI.185]

[Letter 4C. Mill to Machell, 26 October 1691]

For the Revd Mr Machell, Rector of Kirkby Thore, Appleby

Dear Sir
I sent you down a Paper book, wherein I desir'd you to write down The Inscriptions you mett with from Time to Time in your parts, never yet publish'd. In your answer to this request, you promis'd me to Transcribe them into my Book, and send them up by the Carrier; but Burnyeats all this [time] having brought me no account from you, I am apt to think he neglected to call upon; for otherwise I am confident you would not fail me. I have order'd him to deliver this with his own hand; and I beg

[361] Jan Gruter (1560-1627), *Inscriptiones antiquae totius orbis romani, in absolutissimum corpus redactae*, ('Ancient inscriptions of the entire Roman world, edited in the most complete assemblage.') (1603).
[362] Thomas Reinesius, *Nova Reperta Inscriptionum Antiquarum* (Leipzig and Frankfurt, 1682).

you will send up my book by the next return of the Carrier. My Service to your good Lady and all our Friends. I am ever
Your most faithful servant
J.M.
Oxon Oct. 26. 91.



Figure 3.3.43. Letter to Machell from John Mill, October 1691, with Machell's riposte. VI.185.

[Machell's Note: VI.185]

To shew my readiness to serve an the pu[b]lic wherein I may especially in a thing which may lend credit to our University, I have depauperated my ow[n] collection to inr[i]ch your store.[363]

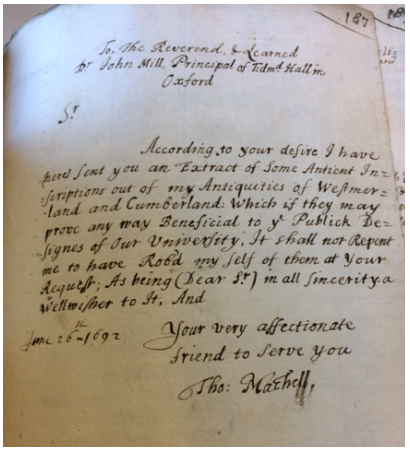
[VI.187]

[Correspondence 5: June – October 1692]

[Letter 5A. Machell to Mill. 26 June 1692]

To the Reverend & Learned Dr John Mill, Principal of Edmund Hall in Oxford.
S^{r}
According to your desire I have here Sent you an Extract of some Antient Inscriptions out of my Antiquities of Westmerland and Cumberland: Which if they may prove any way Beneficial to the Publick Designes of our University, it shall not Repent me to have Rob'd my self of them at Your Request; As being (Dear Sir) in all sincerity a wellwisher to It, And
Your very affectionate friend to serve you.
Th. Machell
June 26th 1692

[363] In Machell's hand; written on Mill's letter in scrawled pencil.


To. The Reverend. & Learned
Dr John Mill. Principal of Edmd Hall in
Oxford

Sr

According to your desire I have
here sent you an Extract of Some Antient In=
scriptions out of my Antiquities of Westmer=
land and Cumberland: Which if they may
prove any way Benefecial to yr Publick De=
signes of Our University, It shall not Repent
me to have Rob'd my self of them at Your
Request; As being (Dear Sr) in all Sincerity a
Wellwisher to It, And

June 26-1692 Your very affectionate
friend to Serve you
Tho: Machell.

Figure 3.3.44. Letter from Machell to Mill, 26 June 1692. VI.187.

[VI.299]

[Letter 5B. Machell to Mill. 1 July 1692]

{This below to a Booke of Inscriptions sent Dr Mill}[364]
Sir
I have Laboured all that I could (even under the Pressure of som mighty affairs that intervened & of diverse Disturbances & Interruptions) to gratify you in Your Request, with such inscriptions as occur in These Parts; but have not had leisure to compleat and finish them as I Intended.[365]
However, Sir, that you may not be altogether frustrated in Your Designe, I have sent you your Book with all the Inscriptions at Apalby-School, and som other Places, fairly writ in It. And (That nothing may be awanting to do you service that layes in my power) I have also sent you The very first Draught of all my other Rude Notes & \ other / Inscriptions as they were Scratched out ~~at the first~~ \ in haste / on Horseback or Otherwise, in my Travails and Rambles; which, notwithstanding, I dare affirm to be very Exact as to the Letter: which is all you desire. But for the notes Interspersed amongst them, they are so ill writt (for want of Convenient time & place) and so full of Blotts & Interlineations, That (unless it be you, who pretend to read anything that falls from my Penn) no body besides my selfe can Compose & Bring them in Order. And you may be suer that I would not expose them in so Rude a Dress to any man liveing Excepting your selfe (my old friend and Confident) who I know will conceal them from all Carping Eyes, & Communicate onely what is for your Purpose (Sc. The Inscriptions) to som Cunning Graver in your own Chamber, who may supply the Defects & Shadowings by his owne Ingenuity; And for the Rest (if you like it so well) you may either take panes to transcribe it your selfe with your own hand, or at least Returne the Deformed Fœtus to be li[c]ked over into som better shape, by the Parent of It.

[VI.300]

In the meantime, that these Inscriptions may be Render'd more serviceable to Your Designe, I have taken care to Stitch them all up in the very same order wherein I purposed to have Treated of Them. For my Intention was to follow the Tract of the Romane-way, which enters Westmerland at Rear-Cross on the Top of Stanemore where:

KING WESTMER*
SLOE KING ROTHNGER

{* Bishop Usher. Note my Authors differ about the Inscription; ergo, see them all.}

And runns through Brough (where I wonder \ much that wee finde / there are no Inscriptions); & Thence by Apalby through Kirkbythore, & so to Browham Castle, where it leaves Westmerland and

[364] Written in pencil.
[365] In the MS, 11cm of scored-through, mainly illegible text follows.

where I ~~would~~ \ intend to / have left It, that I might recurr to Water Crooke {(a.) where I have made a fine Collection} in the Barony of Kendall; and thence to Russendal {(b.) where in the church are 2 Hebrew Inscriptions, which I would have my friend Rabbi Hide (as being the best at it) to translate & send me a Copy of} before I Entered an other County.[366]
Then from Browham Castle I purposed to pursue the said Way through the County of Cumberland, as it runns by the Edge of Penrith fell twixt the Town & the Beacon to Plumton-Wall (3 miles East from which at a Place call'd Nunnery was the last Inscription which is placed there \ not long since discovered / found.) And thence \ I purposed / to Carlile and so on to the End of the Romane-way (which I have not yet found out by \ any / Enquiry but may perhaps Discover hereafter by Traceing of it som where about Bowness. Thence, from the West to the East of Cumberland (by my Pervestigation[367] of the Picts wall) as far as Powt-Ross. Thence to som Towns upon the

[VI.301]

said wall (or not far distant from It) which I saw in Northumberland. And so to other more foreine Inscriptions, ~~in Yorkshire &c.~~ which are not in this Roade.
And in this Method my Papers are laid: so that (if you please) you may goe on & prosper; haveing Materials enough at your hand to fournish a pretty Considerable volume alone by It Selfe. To which may be added (If you please to command them on such a score) all the Coins I have met with In their proper places, wherein they were found: for If you would but polish what I worke ruffly \ rudely / over, I should not scruple to finde you materials; But Indeed it is Endless to undertake both; unless I had nothing else to do, or were free from the variouse avocations & troubles of a Country life.
But however, Sir, Since I have put all I have of this kinde into your hand; & kept nothing back though never so naked; I hope you'l be very tender of them; and, when you have taken out what you please, Returne them agane \ with all possible care / to
Sir
Your affectionate friend & servant
Tho. Machell
Kirkbythore July 1. 1692.

[Addition to the letter]
I have sent the Booke & papers mention'd (as I hope) by Thomas Burneyeates; but there is som thing of a doubt in it; for I was forced to sit up all night (being willing to do all I could for you). And to send my man to Kendal on Sunday to deliver Them to him. But he was gon as far as Kirkby,[368] whereupon Dr Gray advised ~~my servant~~ \ him / to send them by the Kendal Carrier, who set out last Monday & said he was to overtake him. But if they com not by Thomas Burnyeats, you may do well to send to London to enquire at the ware-house for a Book in 4^0 wrap'd up in Linnen, which Dr Gray and my man delivered to the Kendall Carrier ~~who was to set forward to London on~~ on Sunday the 26 of June, directed to you at Edmund Hall, Oxon.
I could not possibly write with it then, for want of time; nor had I an opportunity since, for \ by reason / titheing & som other occasions that \ have / Thronged \ in / upon me. But I hope this Letter will com time enough to give Notice of it, & perhaps may be with you before the Carrier.
Pray excuse all false-spelling, for I minde Things, not Words; & yet of set purpose do aftertimes deviate from the Common way, for which if you do but well & Consider, you will find […][369] som good Reasons. \ ~~And~~ besides which / There are many Things ~~also~~ in the Booke I sent you, which have nead of Correction, which I desire you \ freely / to Bestow ~~upon it~~; & which I ~~would~~ \ Intend[ed] to / have ~~alter'd~~ \ don / myself in som particulars if the Time had not faild me; As, for instance, in my

[366] See Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, 'Thomas Machell's Memorandum of Needs', VI.186. Machell was probably referring to Thomas Hyde (1636-1703), an oriental scholar, M.A. (Queen's College, Oxford) 1659, chief librarian of the Bodleian Library, 1665-1701. In 1691 he became Laudian Professor of Arabic at Oxford, and acquired the Regius Professorship of Hebrew, together with a canonry at Christ Church in 1697. He served the government for many years as translator of diplomatic correspondence with the Ottoman empire or the states of north Africa. Though tolerant of other faiths, Hyde was an Anglican clergyman. See P. Marshall, 'Hyde, Thomas (1636-1703), oriental scholar'. *ODNB*.
[367] 'Diligent research or investigation'. *OED*.
[368] Kirkby Lonsdale.
[369] Here, 2½cm of scored-through illegible text has been omitted.

notes upon Crakenthorp at the name Malchael there is a paragraph begins \ as I remember / with Latine, ~~wh~~ sed ut cunque fuerit impositum &c, which I intended to \ begin with English, & / have altered thus [blank]. But however the name was impos'd (sive gloriose sive injuriose), the Ma\u/chells of Crakenthorp have retein'd it with honour to this very day: still holding This, Their Ancient Mannor \ ordering / (at the least by Capitulation) from the Conquest downwards {without any evidences} utque non per Drengagium &c.[370]
And a little after, in my note about ~~seales~~ \ Nobles: / "For wee do not pretend to have had any such, in This Ancient Family" &c. And many such like. But canis festinans coelos parit Catulos.[371]

[VI.255]

[Letter 5C. Machell to Mill. 7 October 1692]

Sir
I wonder I have not heard from you since I sent you my Book of Romane Antiquities, which I understand by Thomas Burnyeats came safe to your hand. I have Ransack'd Since, That all the Barony of Kendall (that I might not leave one Stone unturned in the County of Westmerland); And have only met with a Broken Altar at Kirkby-in-Loansdale; One fragment of a Romane Inscription at Ambleside in the parish of Windermre, and another at Tunstall in the County of Lancaster; which I have here sent you, together with some other things Relateing to Browham & Kirkbythore; which through hast were omitted, but do appertaine to my former Collection. Pray, if you have taken what is to your Purpose, Returne them againe by Thomas Burnyeates To
Your very affectionate friend to serve you
Tho. Machell
Kirkbythore
Octob. 7. 1692.

[L. Discoveries post 1692]

[I.509A][372]

[L1. Fragment of a draft letter from Thomas Machell, relating to his Antiquities Research at Kirkby Thore, undated]

Sir
I have really don what I have promissd you, but ~~findeing~~ haveing so great an hand my selfe in \ most of / the rarityes, of which art hath within this Parish; I doe repent of the undertakeing of a thing \ subject / more fit for another mans pen. Because I can not describe them unto you so well as I should \ ought / without seeming guilty of selfe commendation. ~~Yet~~ \ & though / I have don it in a Third person, & according to your method proposed, as it had bin your purpose [to] excuse me from the censure of others if any should see it; I desire to be excused for imparteing it to you – & that you would release the kinde promiss which was formerly made by [blank]. I have not leisure to ~~new do~~, nor indeed any patience to new doe it agane, & therefore desire to [be] excused from Impart – &c.

[370] See VI.221, above: 'Sed ut cunque fuerit impositum, sive gloriosè sive injuriosè, honorificè semper est retentum in hunc usque diem': 'But howsoever it has been imposed, whether honorifically or pejoratively, it has always been retained as a matter of honour up to the present day.' 'Non per Drengagium sed per Nobile Cornagij Servitium sicut ipsi Normanni': 'Not through drengage but through the noble service of cornage, just like the Normans themselves.' 'Ut Canem Optimum & Generosissimum, Graium, Nimirum (~~Non minu~~ \ tam / fidei quam fortitudinis Symbalum) in scuta sua transtulêrunt': 'That they put on their shields an excellent and most noble dog, indisputably Grecian (a mark of loyalty as much as of fortitude).'
[371] 'A running dog makes the Catuli equal to the heavens.'
[372] This page, 18cm x 14cm, is pasted onto a blank page in MS.Vol.1. As it is undated, it is difficult to ascertain to what aspect of his research Machell was referring, but the top part of the fragment contains text reused in his work on archaeological remains at Kirkby Thore (see the top of the fragment and compare with this chapter, I.281-82). Moreover, an image on I.281 states, 'This platform was cut out & sent to London to be inserted in Cambden's Britannia 1694 per T. Machell'. Given the tenor of the letter, we might remind ourselves that Machell died in 1698, only four years later.

which you [can] well do, haveing received a Generall account from [?] D. {who knows for certaine it was don by […][373] ~~and I have~~ no ~~time to publish it in pieces~~.}[374]

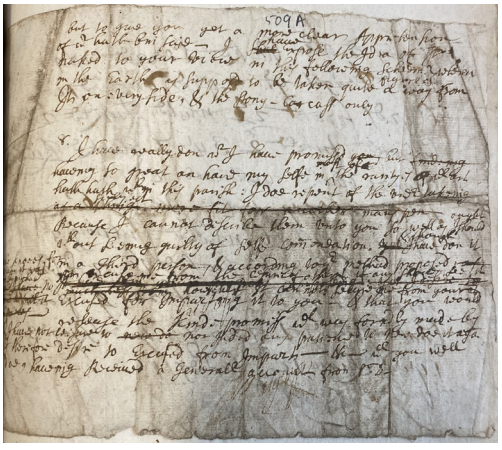


Figure 3.3.45. Page fragment containing a letter. I.509.

[VI.188][375]

[L2. Coin] Sent up to L[ondon] Aug. 1694, to be inserted in Camden *Britannia*

[VI.271]

{1. Kirkbythore}
Constantine the Great, having put to death Julius Crispus whom he had som time created Cæsar, being his own son by Minervina \ his concubine / (as is said elsewhere in the Parish of Browham);[376] he left to succeed him \ in / the Empire as the Augusti (or chief rulers thereof. T.M.) \ 3 of / his sonns, whom before \ his death / he had made Cæsars: / ~~namely~~ Constantine, Constans & Constantius; The Empire bein[g] divided \ amongst them into 3 partes; And by his Testament he then designed Dalmatius, his Nephew, son of his brother Anniballinus, to be Cæsar \ unto / with them, one of whose Coynes was found at Kirkbythore in Soulbyes \ gardine / Burwens in 1688, mense martij;[377] whose figure I have thought to Subjoyne, together with that which occurs in Mr Speed, which will serve as an Explication to It, because this is imperfect*.[378]

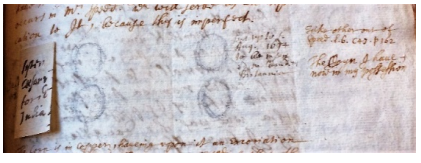


Figure 3.3.46. Coins. VI.271.

Sent up to L[ondon] Aug. 1694, to be inserted in Camden *Britannia*
The Coyn† is in copper, having upon it an Excoriation of greenish rust, yet Shining as pollish'd, so that the figures & som of the Letters may be fairly seen, namely his face on the foreside, very youthful

[373] An initial and a word here are illegible.
[374] This draft, written on a scrap of paper on which many words have been scored through or repeated, is difficult to untangle. The resulting transcript is the closest possible approximation to the original. The following phrases, '~~much less from~~', and, 'lest it can not secure me from yours', have been omitted from this transcript.
[375] Fragment measuring 8½cm x 8½cm.
[376] See the parish of Brougham, I.445.
[377] 'In the month of March.'
[378] See *Figure 3.3.46*.

& smooth, with a sharp picked nose, the bridge being streight and not raised in the midle, as that in Mr Speed – which I do suppose, through the gravers falt, is not so true \ like / as it ought to be. And on the Reverse are 2 Armed men with their Spears in one and colours in \ vexilla[379] in / the other \ hand / without those flo[u]rishes on the Top of the Ensigne & those picked Crookes neer the foot of the Staffes, which Mr Speed hath \ perhaps omitted for want of compass in so small a Coyn. / In the midle of the said Reverse are a pair of Pinchers or som such like thing \ tho it be otherwise in Mr Speeds, / and above the heads of the Armed men where the Coyn is not broken, these Letter[s] are readible = I Ā EXER = which is doubtless a fragment of that Inscription about the Reverse of Mr Speeds – GLORIA EXERCITVS – ~~under~~ \ Then / what should be underfoote, is quite broken \ out, / but may

[Machell's Notes: VI.271]

*{Taike other out of Speed, lib. (4) p.162.}
†{The Coyn I have now in my possession.}

[VI.272][380]

seem to be the same with the other – se these 5 Letters CONST, \ as well as the Letters P.L.N. in Stat[ue] of Constantine […][381] / which may stand in my judgement for Constantinople as the place of its coinage, notwithstanding the opinion of som* from an Inscription on of his Statue, That it was at first Called New Rome {Nova Roma}; for doubtless a Coyn is a better as \ good / Authority as that of a Statue.[382] For Coynes are made in the life time \ commonly / of those whose Image they bear, but Statues, ofte times [ma]ny years after.[383]

{2. In Blekets Burhwens. Query Mr Walker?}[384]
I have another \ Coyn / found in Bleckets Burwens in the same month and year, but being […][385] myne owne I need not to draw it. It is in copper, the face fairly visible with som markes of Letter; the Reverse not so clear. It has som Resemblance of The British King Galgacus & is somewhat hollow, but of this I must Enquire farther, for as I remember therres were of iron†.

I hav also another, found in the same place in the same month and year, Stamped in Honour of Julia Mamæa Augusta, who was […][386] to Julius \ Cæsar & / Grandmother to Augustus; who is called Mamaea Augusta […][387] [for] distinction's sake (as I suppose) from […][388] Augusta, who was his daughter; whose Coyn I have also, found this time twelve month, in the same place.

{L3. Ringstones}

I had ~~not~~ \ scarce / Entertained this noble and renowned Lady Julia Mamæa a weeke in my house before the same place afforded me also another Rarity: an Oval Stone, drop'd out of a Ring \ as if she had scattered her jewels about her / which I have described in another paper but cannot tell what sort It is of. It is ingrav'd with a dillicate figure, holding a long rod in the one hand & an, if I mistake not

[379] Military banners.
[380] Also numbered p.73.
[381] Some words here are obscured by the binding.
[382] MS: 'for doubtless a coyn is a better \ good / authority as that of a statue.'
[383] Here, a pencilled margin note is illegible.
[384] See Walker, Master of University College, Oxford, and a Roman Catholic convert, in Letter from Mill to Machell. 7 February 1687, above. Despite their religious and political differences, antiquaries of note were invited to contribute to Edmund Gibson's edition of Camden's *Britannia*. An expert on Roman and Saxon coins, Walker rewrote an essay for the volume. See Thomas Roebuck, 'Edmund Gibson's 1695 Britannia and Late-Seventeenth-Century British Antiquarian Scholarship', *Erudition and the Republic of Letters* Volume 5: Issue 4 (Oct 2020), 427-481.
[385] A word is blotted here and is illegible.
[386] A hole has been cut out here, see VI.271.
[387] Another hole here.
[388] Another hole here.

an Helmet in the other, which will serve very well for a Seal, and has bin desiged I suppose for the purpose; which will much advance the Antiquity of them.

[Machell's Notes: VI.272]

*As well as the Letters, P.L.N. in that of Constantine (p.259) may sig[nify] the pl[ace] of it[s] minting at London as sig[illum] affirmes: 260. S.9. / from an Inscription of his Statue.[389]

†Send the Coyn to Mr Walker the 1ˢᵗ opportunity.

[389] 'Sig' could be 'sigillum': a seal; alternatively it could be 'signatura': a mark, stamp, signature or impress.

Part 3. Further Collections

[Chapter 4]

[VI.371]

Collect[ions] Concerning Heraldry & of the Arms & Pedegrees of Westmorland

[Foreword: Honour and Dishonour; Dues and Duties]

[I.603]

{Honourr & Deshon[our]?}
Tho Gold come from the earth, none despiseth it, and the dross come from Gold, yet none regards it; so the verteouse comeing from mean parentaige, are honoureble, and the vicious comeing from Noble parentaige are Contempteble. Tis better to \ be / famous from a contempteble family then to be contempteble from a famous family: Ibid. *Milk & Hony*, p.101, §689.[1]

[I.602]

For by that Aristotle[2] dos not show that are honourable;[3]
They are compeld and bound to doe it [to] honour those that are in Authority over them what ~~shall be done to that~~ persone whome the King delighteth to Hon. And Aristotle sayes that onely to show that fælicity consists not therein, not that worthy men are not[4] to be honoured. Sed ibi plura.[5] {It [is] the due of one & the duty of the other.}

{Birth more Honourable}
Now those are more worthy, honour those fro[m] there ancestour (vid. *Polit* tom[e] d.) Hanc quæstionem an virtus sequitur sanguinem. vel simi[le]:) Nobiliores because there loud tongued fame yet sounds in the eares of after, and still are is though[t] on tho they be in the land where all things are forgotten.[6] 'virtus post funera viget'.[7] Nor does it availe that some object, for matter of policy, that worthy men now being, are to take place as less worthy tho more Ancient; for that is not to be don except by[8] persons who by there office represent the Kings majesty & too according to Circumstance: for this bespeakes an unutterable gratitude to those Noble Heroes; and others, by seing what honoures are done unto there lively monuments, I meane there children, are transported into admiration of there worthiness, and raised into high t[h]oughts of equalling those never (nor never to be) forgotten

[1] The aphorisms used here were taken from Ralph Venning, *Milk and Honey, or, A Miscellaneous Collation of Many Christian Experiences, Sayings, Sentences, and Several Places of Scripture Improved* (1654), 101, sections 689, 700.
[2] See one other reference to Aristotle in Machell's letter 'to Mr Holford of the College of Heralds att London', Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, V.3.
[3] 6cm of scored-through text follows here.
[4] MS: 'nōt'.
[5] 'But there is more there.'
[6] 'See *Polit tom[e]* d. [for] this question, whether honour [naturally] follows blood. Or [whether] those who are like them [are] the more noble?' Machell was almost certainly referring to Aristotle's *Politiká* ('Politics') [Things concerning the Polis], a work of political philosophy in eight books. The acronym or abbreviation, 'tomd' is not an obvious one but might perhaps read as 'tom[e] d' (i.e. the fourth book of Aristotle's work.) Perhaps Machell was using an edition of *Politiká* in which the eight books were named 'tomes'. Machell's text utilises 'tome' in the sense of 'volume' or 'book' only once, when discussing a work written by Dugdale, i.e. 'Tome 2. of Dugdalls *Baronage*, p.30': Part 2, Chapter 3ix, Staveley, II.472A. The analysis here is suppositional but since Machell did not regularly cite Aristotle we cannot tell how he thought it fit to refer to the work or even be sure that the abbreviation has been accurately transcribed.
[7] 'Honour is esteemed beyond the grave.'
[8] MS: 'I'.

virtues, and when they see Antiquity take place, strive in time to outstrip one another that (as the Romans did) ~~they~~ \ which of them / may first of all become Deityes. But to the objection, I can farther answer that its far outh of vise[9] of honour onely to respect, interest & honour them most that can doe something; and dispise them that can doe no more.
{1. Quia[10]: The ancestors of this family were [cl]earely deserveing.}
{2. Quia: It will be a spur to others to behave themselves so that they may have earth[ly] honours.}
{3. Quia: Haveing continued in Loyal[ty] for many generations, they will be more careful Loosing it: and the King who is found […] of Honour does there admitt it.}[11]

[VI.373]

[Part I]

Of Familyes

Concerning familyes
I thinke fit to enquire into these three things, viz.
1. Their Antiquity
2. Their Armes &
3. ~~Their~~ Matches
There is no better way of discovering the Antiquity of familyes that I know of, than by serching their ancient writeings, and soe drawing a pedegre according to them, observeing ~~out of them~~ \ thence / what you thinke is remarkeable, but especially the date, according to which you must marshall your succession. But he who takes this in hand will finde it a difficult taske, not onely for the ~~travaile and~~ paines he must ~~take~~ \ undergo / but allso for want of access to these writeings, which few in this aige will expose to view (for fear some flaws should be found in their titles).

As touching the Arms of each particular family in this county, I thinke I am able to ~~produce them~~ \ giv som account, / having long agoe taken notise of them, and confirmd \ a /new my observation by a view which I lately tooke of the most Visitations and Collections of Arms that are about London; but that which grieves me most \ of all / is that I meet not with any that were taken before King Hen[ry] the 8th time, if they reach soe high, and these very imperfect in severall particulars, especially their Visitations of the northern countyes, Westm'land & Cumberland, ~~the family~~ wherein the familyes are so intermixed and compounded together that when you looke for a Westm'land ~~Gent~~ name, you shall find both it and the place of residence in the other Visitation soon[e]r than this: an unusual oversight committed by Heralds, either through negligence or misinformation, and from which Mr Dugdall (the most carefull and accurate man of them all) cannot be excused.[12] For [of] the places ~~there~~ \ in his Visitation, / the Round Table \ is entered / in Cumberland, which all men know (that know anything \ att all / of the country) to be in Westm'land, laying on this side of the River Emote which parts the 2 countyes. Nor will I promisse to be so accurate ~~my selfe~~ as to scape all oversights; som can not be avoided.[13] But I will doe my \ best / endeavour, and be very much beholden to those who shall take

[9] 'Vise': view, contemplation, regard. *OED*.
[10] 'Because'.
[11] The text has perished here. There is one more numbered paragraph (4.) but as much of it has also perished, it has not been transcribed.
[12] MS: '~~which is~~ an unusual oversight ~~For Heralds~~ committed by Heralds \ either / through negligence or ~~false~~ \ mis/ information, and from which Mr Dugdall (the most carefull and accurate man ~~that ever yet made one~~ \ of them all) cannot \ be / excused ~~himselfe wholy in his last Visitation~~.'
[13] R.S. Ferguson's description of family pedigrees and the involvement of the Heralds' Office is pertinent here: 'In Machel's days, the records of heraldic visitations appear to have been the private property of the heralds, and to have been consulted in the hands of their descendants, or the shops of the herald painters. Thus, Knight's visitation was found … in the possession of the herald's grandson, Dr Knight [VI.464]; at the house of Mrs Smith, a widow, near St Dunstan's Church, Fleet Street [see VI.501; I.287; V.3, V.12, V.14-15], he found a very good visitation of Cumberland, "by whom taken I know not" [VI.429]. He guessed the date of it to be 1638, but the extracts he made from it prove that it was a copy of St George's visitation of 1615. He also discovered in the

the paines to correct these papers where they are amiss if ever they happen to come to light; for I doe not write them with any intentions of pub[l]ishing a Booke

[VI.374]

but to gratify a \ particular / friend who will neads believe that I know more of that state of this countrey / ~~county~~ than any other; nay, more indeed than I know my selfe.[14] However, I hope by this means (and that I suppose he chiefly aims att) to provide rough materials for a Temple of Hon[our] if they happen hereafter to fall into the hands of a skilfull Artist who has more time and more ingenuity to order them than I can pretend to.[15]

The 3d thing I purpose to touch upon is the matches of each severall family; but that I can never expect to compleat. However, I shall declare what I know, to which posterity may make their additions in after Ages if they would have a minde, and discover more than I know att present or have time to seek out, by the same means & methods which I have proposed, and allso by searching the Prerogative office, where by wills they shall finde the wife's Xan names & most of her children, who are either therein left executors or legacies.[16] But I almost dispaire that any man \ being, / beside my selfe, will talke so much about so triviall & thankeless a matter; & for my owne part, having a greater imployment upon me, I am not willing to misspend much time in the serch after vanity.[17] Nay I grutche[18] the scribbling of what I \ am / already \ known to / ~~am acquainted with, for little does it esteem of what I know, which yet I would never know but for the love which I had to Antiquity and country, nor never writ before the respect which I have to my [...]~~[19] ~~& country together~~.[20] Because I thinke it not worthy my patries. Nor am I willing in my riper years to expose the --- of my youth.[21]

possession of Mr Fawcett of Sowerby [VI.397] an old book containing a visitation of Cumberland and Westmoreland in 1580.' See R.S. Ferguson, 'Notes on the Heraldic Visitations of Cumberland and Westmorland', *CWI*, 2 (1876), 20-27, at 25.

[14] There are several candidates here. One is Dr John Mill, Principal of St Edmund Hall, Oxford, for whom Machell prepared his work on Roman antiquities, although their later correspondence suggests Machell's equivocation about releasing what he considered to be his own material. See Machell to Mill, 26 June 1692. 'According to your desire I have here Sent you an Extract of some Antient Inscriptions out of my Antiquities of Westmerland and Cumberland: Which if they may prove any way Beneficial to the Publick Designes of our University, it shall not Repent me to have Rob'd my self of them at Your Request.' See part 3, Ch.3, Roman Antiquities, Letter 5A, VI.187. Another candidate might be the antiquary, Robert Plot, see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence, I.516-17.

[15] MS: 'However, I hope by this means (and that I suppose he chiefly aims att) to bring ~~such materialls~~ \ provide / rough materials for a Temple of Hon[our][15] \ ~~rough materiall~~ / (~~stones & morter to thr erecting of a Temple of Honour~~) if they happen \ hereafter / to fall into the hands of a \ skilfull / Artist who has more time and more ingenuity to order them than I can pretend to.' This sentence also contains 9cm of illegible scored-through text (not transcribed).

[16] MS: 'but that I can never expect to compleat ~~or give~~. However, I shall declare what I know to which ~~those who come after me~~ \ posterity may make their additions / may ~~make additions in severall aiges~~ \ in after Ages / if they ~~please~~ \ would have a minde / and discover more than I know att present or have time to seek out, by the same means \ & methods which I have / I proposed ~~before~~, and allso by searching the prerogative office, where by wills they shall finde the wife's Xan names & most of her children, who are either \ therein / left ~~as~~ executors or ~~else to whome some~~ legacies ~~are bequeathed~~.'

[17] MS: 'But I almost dispaire that any man \ beside my selfe / will take~~ing~~ so much about so triviall \ & thankeless / a matter; & for my owne part, having an ~~other~~ \ greater / imployment \ upon me, / I am not willing to misspend ~~the hore~~ much time in the serch \ after vanity. /'

[18] 'Grutch': grudge. *OED*.

[19] Illegible word.

[20] Machell's preferred text (without the scored-through element): 'Nay I grutche the scribbling of what I already known to. Because I thinke it not worthy my patries. Nor am I willing in my riper years to expose the --- of my youth.' The scored through element has been retained above because of the sentiment revealed.

[21] Machell drew a pecked line here, but provided no alternative word.

[VI.377]

[Queries and Answers; Notes on Method] [22]
{I heard of Machells de Wendover, 3 miles from Buckingham; do, Horsham in Sussex; de Gilford in Surrey {the same family}; de Crackenthorpe in Westmorland.
Enquire whether the Arms be the same with[23] in a bordure.
Machell, whose armes be these [empty shield] what this actiom means: a nom. ad arma &c.}

{Whether}
1. The institution of the Heralds Office (since tis certain that arms were before) begun in the reine of Edward 3^{d}? [Answer] Noe, the office is no way long.
2. By the Heralds register I can certainly know which familyes in any county are most ancient according to order, and which of lesser duration? If so [Blank].
3. Denton de Cardew or \ Denton de / Warnell in Cumberland be m[ore] ancient? And whether Blenkinsopp de Helbeck in Westm'land or de Blenkinsop-Castle in Northumberland be the 1^{t} house. Helbeck is with a crescent Argent on the fess for distinction \ of Helbeck. /
4. It be observable in Northumberland that their Arms (as some will have it) do want Crests? And when they 1^{t} began to be added unto the heldmets amongst […][24] [Answer] Not usually till of late years by patent.
5. Mantles have their originals \ as Cartwright would have / from love locks […] mistrisses favours (for if so, seems improper to have a mantel Ermin); or rather from som habit which the Knights wore of old, the wreath indeed may probelely […][25] from the former, if it be not rather the coulours of bearer folo[…][26]
6. Supporters bee proper onely to the gentery down to a Barron, or allso to others of inferior degree. [Answer] Se[e] Guillam,[27] but the contrary has bin in practise[28] for Knights.
7. The Honour of a Barronett (which in defect of an heir the estate passeth to a younger brother) \ yet it goes by pattent / be allso heret[ance] to, unto him with his estate. Or supposeing \ any Gentlemans / family extinct, & the estate to pass to an other of his name, whether the title of honour be allso extinct or transfer to the successor. [Answer] If he be heire it goes by patent: Dugd[ale].[29]
8. Other of the same name \ or title / with ~~Gentlemen~~ \ persons of / quality by Industry advanceing them selves, can withoute the produceing of a pedigree, demand or have granted the beareing of the said Gentleman? For if so, it intitles him to the estate entailed, which, peradventure, he has no right to it att all. [Answer] Noe, he may not with\out some material difference: Dugdale.
9. When the custome of entaileing was first us'd in England.
[Answer] {Anno 13 Edward 1 [1284-1285] etat West: 2; 331 years since} whence derived habet originem a statut Westminster 2. Anno […][30]
10. There be any punishment to be inflicted on those who take […][31]

[22] Much text on VI.377-378 was written in a hand similar to, but not exactly like, Machell's; it might demonstrate an earlier manifestation. Interlineation and marginalia are by Machell (sometimes initialled T.M.) and William Nicolson.
[23] Words here have perished.
[24] The next word has perished.
[25] Several words in this passage have perished.
[26] The rest of this sentence has perished. The mantle is a device surrounding the shield, representing the covering of a knight's helmet: A.C. Fox-Davies, *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978), Chapter XXIV. The name 'Cartwright' as a heraldry expert is unknown to this editor (although the Elizabethan puritan, Thomas Cartwright, wrote sermons denouncing sinfulness: see Patrick Collinson, 'Cartwright, Thomas (1534/5-1603), theologian and religious controversialist'. *ODNB*).
[27] John Guillim, *A Display of Heraldry* (London, 1610).
[28] MS: 'p'tise.'
[29] William Dugdale, *Baronage*.
[30] The paper here has perished.
[31] The paper here has perished.

{Queries for the herald painter}[32]
{Enquire for Mr Smiths in Fleet Street, a little below St Dunstan's Church.[33] Send to Peter Rowlandson. Mr Ward. Whether a Doctor of Physic take place of a squire.}

[VI.378]

{Whether}
Prohibition of duels and what it is. See *Parsons Councellor*.[34]
11. Those that have been traytours, or borne Arms ~~from~~ against the King, ought not either to have lost their scutchions, or att leaste received some abaitment of honour, notwithstanding the Act of Indempnitys.
12. He hath met with any circumstance of antiquity showing when […][35] the dateing of writeings began? {G. hand}[36]
13. The antiquity of Appleby be knowne unto him from any othern author or circumstance than what Camden out of the *Booke of Provincial Notices* has declared, and what that booke is or where to be se[e]n?[37]
Ans[wer] Noe. {In the *Poetical Dictionary* it is cal'd *Urbs Westmarie Antiquissima* e lib. Vol. Province.}[38]
14. There has not been a Family of Duftons de Dufton near Apleby. The last heiress whereof marryed to Duftons de Kirkouswald in Com. Cumberland, where her coat as I suppose (the same being in Dufton & Morton church windows) is to be seen in the 4th quarter of Lord Dakers, his? If not, what her name was to whom this coat belong'd and where her seat?
[Answer] It was Baron Graystock. T.M.
15. Dalston de Dalston, formerly a seat of the Vauxes, were not cal'd Dawsons before they came there.?
[Answer] No, ut put[o].[39]
16. He have not red of King Arthur or Uter Pendraggon's residence in Westmorland, for it should seeme to be so from the Round Table there & Pendraggon Castle.

---

[32] The queries are in Machell's hand. The artists of the College of Arms are known as Herald Painters: https://www.theheraldrysociety.com/articles/the-herald-painter/.
[33] Further references mention 'Widow Smyth' in the same role, see VI.494; VI.501. This St Dunstan's would be St Dunstan's in the West, in Fleet Street, as opposed to St Dunstan's in the East, near the Tower.
[34] Simon Degge, *The Parson's Counsellor, with the law of Tythes and Tything, in two Books* (2nd edn 'corrected', London, 1685). There is mention here of the prohibition of fighting with weapons in churchyards, but no specific reference to the term 'duel', see Part 1, 150.
[35] There follows an illegible two-word interlineation.
[36] Machell was probably referring to Gothic Hand or Blackletter, a script used throughout Western Europe from approximately 1150 until the 17th century. See Geoffrey Dowding, *An introduction to the history of printing types; an illustrated summary of main stages in the development of type design from 1440 up to the present day: an aid to type face identification.* (London, 1962), 5.
[37] Philemon Holland's translation of Camden's *Britannia* (1637) contains, '… for that the high streete of the Romans, as yet evidently apparent by the ridges thereof, leadeth this way to Brovonacum by Aballaba, whereof mention is made in the Booke of Notices': see 'Westmoreland'. John Speed wrote similarly: '… the Aurelian Maures kept a Station in the time of the Romans, and their high-street is apparently to be seen by the ridges thereof, which lead by Apelby to a place named Brovonacum, mentioned in the *Book of Provincial Notices*.' See John Speed, *An Epitome of Mr John Speed's Theatre of the Empire of Great Britain and his Prospect of the most famous parts of the World* (London, 1676), Chap. 49. Otherwise known as the *Notitia Dignitatum*, the Book of Notices is the official list of all ancient Roman civil and military posts, which survives as a 1551 copy of the missing original. A major source of information on the administrative organisation of the late Roman Empire (late 4th and early 5th centuries), it is divided into two sections covering the eastern and western parts of the empire as divided in A.D. 395.The document names the chief civil and military officials of the empire, together with their departmental staffs and, occasionally, the areas of their expertise or competence. The manuscript includes drawings of the regimental shield of each magistrate and the fort of each military commander: https://www.britannica.com/topic/Notitia-Dignitatum.
[38] Thomas Cooper (drawing on the dictionaries of Stephanus), *An Historical and Poetical Dictionary, briefly covering the Proper Names of Places and Peoples* (London, 1565).
[39] 'No, so I think.'

17. He have not red of some highly renowned and much celebrated maiden Queen in Westmorland, which has given denomination to so many places there; as Maiden Castle upon the top of Stamemore, Maiden-Hold upon Speedy-Moors, otherwise Crackenthorpe Moore in my father's lordship, & Maidne-Way, a vast casway, all which retaine their names to this very day.
18. A field of colour (for so it seems by our noblest coats in England) charged with metal, or the contrary be better armoury.
[Answer] Not materiall. T.M.
19. An Esq for his late deceaset father being a Knight may take place of an other, tho his family be ancienter if remoter from of the Esq. […][40]

[VI.379]

{Lib. Sic Notatur Φ.[41] Penes Mr Sheldon}

The ordering of Estates of all Degrees according to their Estate & Degrees. Or: A Table of precendency taken out of a MS booke in 4[0] penes Mr Sheldon de {Beoley} in Com. Warwick

which I have great reason to believe was compiled dureing the reign of H.8. because in the end thereof is a catalogue of the coronations & burials of the successive Kings of England from June in the Year of Our Lord MVIX: 1509.

{[Note] This conjecture will not hold; se the note at the hand[42] and other notes. However, it may serve to compare with Dugdalls in the following pages.}
{It probably was in time of K. Henry 8 but certainly before Queen Elizabeth, by the visitation of the Mayor of Calais in no.19.}[43]

1. The Emperor.
2. The King.
3. The Kings son: a Prince.
4. The Archbishop.
5. The Duke {A Duke's eldest sonn and heir being of the Bloud Royal, shal goe or be sett above a marquess. And if he bee not of the Bloud-Royal, he shall sitt above an Earle.
\ 6. The Bishop. /
7. The Marquess.
8. The Earle {And an Earle's sonn and heir, if he bee of the Bloud-Royal, shal sit above a Viscount. And if he bee not of the Bloud-Royal, he shall sit above a Baron.
9. The Viscount.
10. The Baron.
~~10.~~ 11. The Baronet*
(Note: I wonder when this was made for wee had none of these till King James*}
{*Baronet & Baneret were anciently used promiscously, see below.}[44]

[40] The rest of this sentence has perished. See VI.433, below.
[41] 'The book is marked thus.'
[42] 'Note at the hand': In the MS Machell usually drew a pointing-finger as his 'N.B.' device. It has been removed from this edition and replaced by 'N.B.' or 'Note'.
[43] In another hand, almost certainly that of William Nicolson.
[44] In another hand, almost certainly that of William Nicolson. First mentioned in 1321, the term 'baronet' was applied to noblemen who had lost the right of summons to Parliament. Edward III created eight baronets in 1328. Further creations were made in 1340, 1446 and 1551. Sir William de la Pole's baronetcy in 1340 was created in return for help to maintain the King's army. It is not known whether these creations were hereditary, but all died out. The present hereditary Order of Baronets in England dates from 1611. Created by James I, the Order was granted initially to 200 gentlemen of good birth with an income of at least £1,000 a year. As James aimed to fill the gap between peers of the realm and knights, baronets were created to form the sixth division of the aristocracy following the five degrees of the peerage. More importantly, James needed money to pay for

12. The Knight Batchellour.
13. The Dean. }
14. The Arch Deacon. } None of this allow'd of in Dugdall: see quaere of 4.
15. The Knights. What? Not a word of Esquires. This is strange!
16. The Masters of the Rolls.
17. The Justices.
18. The Barons of the 'Chequer.
19. The Mayor of Calais. }
20. The Dr in Divinity. } None of this in Dug[dale]
21. The Dr of Both Laws. }

{N.B., I take this to be very unauthentic & of later date than King H.8 because of the Baronetts mentioned att Figure 11, T.M.}

{But Baronet here only stands for Baneret who always took place of Knight Bachelors. No 19 shows this to be compiled before the reign of Queen Mary.}[45]

22. Them that have bin maiors of London.
23. The Sergiants of the Law.
24. The Masters of the Chancery.
25. The Preachers & Clerkes Graduites.
26. The parsons & priests.
27. The Worshipful Merchiants. In good time! What, before Gentlemen?
28. The Gentlemen.

{From the omission of Abbots, Priors &c. this was written after the Dissolution of the Monasteries, & from the Respect shown to Preachers in no. 25, probably at beginning of King Edward VI reign.}[46]

[VI.381]

A Table of Precedency in the Kingdome of England[47]

1. The King & Queen.
2. The Prince of Wales & his Princess.
3. Dukes of Royall Blood & their Dutchesses; as the sons, brothers or sisters sons of the King in being, or of a deceased King.
4. The Kings Vice-general in Ecclesiasticall affairs; when one is appointed or made.[48]
5. The Archbishop of Canterbury.
6. The Lord High Chancellor or Lord Keeper of the Great Seale.
7. The Archbishop of York.
8. The Lord High Treasurer.
9. The Lord President of the Kings Counsell.
10. The Lord Privie Seale.

These four officers next aforesaid are to be of the Degree of Barrons of Parliament or above. Otherwise they are not to be placed as aforesaid. The Lord Steward of England is not heare

soldiers to carry out the pacification of Ireland, thus each new baronet was required to pay for the upkeep of thirty soldiers for three years, amounting to £1,095. Extracted from 'The Standing Council of the Baronetage', https://www.baronetage.org.

[45] Almost certainly in the hand of William Nicolson.

[46] The stylistic differences here point to the work of yet another hand, which could be that of Charles Lyttelton, bishop of Carlisle 1762-68. See Part 3, Ch.1, 'Directions for those who shall undertake to finish the Antiquities of Westmorland', VI.432, A & B.

[47] Most of VI.381-386, has been written in another hand but points 1-5 on VI.381 are in Machell's hand.

[48] In January 1535 Henry VIII appointed Thomas Cromwell royal vicegerent, or vicar-general. See H. Leithead, 'Cromwell, Thomas, earl of Essex (b. in or before 1485, d. 1540), royal minister'. *ODNB*.

mentioned, nor in the Stat[ute] 31 H.8.10. because it was not intended that, when the vise of him should be nescary, he should not endure longer than a hac vice.[49]

11. The Great Chamberlan of England, the Constable, the Marshall, the Lord High Admiral, the Lord Steward of the Kings House and the Kings Chamberlan shall be placed after the Lord Privie Seale in manner following: viz. every of them shall be placed above all other personages being of the same sta[tion] Degree. As if he be a Baron above all Barons; if a Viscount, above all Viscounts; if an Earle, above all Earles.

12. Then Dukes and thire Dutchesses.
13. Marquesses and thire Marchonesses.
14. Then eldest sons of Dukes of Roÿall Blood and thire wifes and there sisters.
15. ~~And their sisters~~ If one be daughter and heiress of a Duke she shall take place of all ~~eldest~~ Dukes eldest sons wifes and after Marchonesses.
16. Earles and thire Countesses.
17. The eldest sons of Marquesses, there wifes and there sisters.
18. The yoiunger sons of Dukes of the Royal Blood & their wives.
19. The yoiunger sons of other Dukes and there wives.
20. Viscounts and their Viscountesses.
21. The eldest sons of Earles, their wifes and sisters.
22. The youngest sons of Marquesses and there wives.

[VI.383]

23. All Bishops of England. Viz. The Bishop of London, the Bishop of \ Durham, / the Bishop of Winchester and then all the other Bishops of both \ provinses /shall take place according to the seniority of there confederations.
24. Barons of the Parliament and thire Baronesses. The Kings principal Secretary, being a Baron of the Parliament shall take place of all barons not having any of the offices aforesaid; but if he be a Viscount, Earle or any other higher Degree, he shall not take place of any Viscount, Earle or higher Degree. And if the Secretary be a Bishop, he shall take place of all other Bishops not having ~~not having~~ office aforesaid. But not above the Archbishop, all the Barons, Viscounts, Earles and the above mentioned not having any of the offices aforesaid are to take place amongst themselves according unto the Antiquities of thire severall titles and thire severall Ancestors Creation respectively; and the Heir survives accordingly.
25. The eldest sons of Viscounts, there wives and there sisters.
26. The younger sons of Earles and thire wives.
27. The eldest sons of Barons and thire wives and sisters.
28. The Treasurer Comptrouler of the Kings Household.
29. Knights of the Garter and there ladys.
30. Privie Cou[n]sellers of his Majestys Master of the Court of Wards and Liveries, Chancelor of the Dutchy,[50] Chiefe Justice of the \ courts of / Kings Bench, Master of the Rowls, Chiefe Justice of the Corte of Comon Pleas, Chief Baron of the Corte of Exchequer and the other judges and barons of the Degree of the chiefe of the said courts, who take place amongst themselves according to the seniority of the severall patents.
31. Knights Barronets made by the Kings majestie or ~~Kings~~ \ Prince / Henery[51] and his standerd displayed in an Arms Royall, in an open warr[ant] and the Knight or Prince personaly present for the Time of thire lives, and noe longer. Also there ladyes.

[49] '… because it was not intended that, when the vise of him should be nescary, he should not endure longer than from this turn of office.' The office of Lord Steward has generally remained vacant since 1421, and is now a primarily ceremonial, ad hoc office, filled only for a coronation. *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. 17 (11th edn, 1911), 'Lord Chamberlain' to 'Luqman'.
[50] Duchy of Lancaster.
[51] Henry, Prince of Wales (1594-1612), eldest son of James I.

[VI.385][52]

32. The younger sons of Viscounts and there wives.
33. The younger sons of Barons and there wives.
34. Baronats and there ladys.
35. Knights \ barr\n/onats made otherwise then as abovesaid and there ladyes.
36. Knights who have been Enbassadors.
37. Knights of the Bath and there ladyes.
38. Knights Batchellers and there ladyes.

1. First \ those / select Esqs for the Kings body and there wives who take place only during their office.
2. Baronets eldest sons, their wives and their sisters.
3. Knights eldest sons and there eldest sons likewise sucksesively; so also there wives. These take place amongst themselves according to the priority of the knighting of there first ancestors, not of the last; and he who is descended from a younger brother, shall, if the elder brother be dead, and all his issue male, take the sam place as if he were desended from the elder brother.
4ly. Esqs. The younger sons of baronets, and there wives.
5ly. The younger sons of the eldest sons of Baronets and of other nobles of higher estate.
6ly. The created Esqs with a Collor of S:S,[53] called in the west, White Esqs.
7ly. Those who have any superio\u/r publique office in the common weall, or serve the prince in any worshipfull […][54] calling, whose place or precedence contrived soe for life.

[39.] Others only during the time of there being in office, as ~~an~~ a sherife is an Esq. for life and a Justice of Peace only whilst he is in commission.
40. Gentlemen and there wives.
41. Citysons or Burghers and their wives.
42. Craftsmen, artisans or workmen and there wives.

All Peares, Knights and Baronets abovesaid, there wives and children, doe take place only[55] according to there severall and respective antecedents,[56] priority of the date of their Pattents, or of the time of their being knighted respectively.

[VI.386]

If any of the daughters of any Baron, Viscount or other Peare doe marry any Gentleman, Esquire or other person amongst the minor nobility, yet she shall retaine her honour and place; but if she marry with any of her inferiours amongst the major nobility: to wit with a Baron, or any other her superior, by the custome ~~of~~ now used in England, she shall onely ~~to~~ take place of hir husband. Soe if any daughter of the minor nobility shall mary hir inferior, she shall loose hir owne place and take that of hir husband, excepting onely the daughters of Baronetts, who shall still retaine there places due unto them by birth; by reason there places are particularly granted unto them by the Kings Majesty in there patents under the Great Seale of England.

{Graduits} The Degrees which any man shall take, either in any university or in any Inns of Court, shall not intitle to any other place out of the said university or Inns of Court then what he might justly take without any of the said degrees.

All the eldest Issue males descended from knights shall take \ such / place inter Sc. as there Ancestors would doe if they were now alive, from whom they claim there presedency.

---

[52] Also numbered p.27.
[53] Collor: an ornamental band or chain worn round the neck for ornament or as a badge of office or livery. *OED.*
[54] An unclear word follows.
[55] MS: '~~only~~', followed by an illegible substituted word, not transcribed.
[56] MS: 'anncents.'

{Quere} What place the nobility of Scotland and ~~England~~ Ireland, there wives and children ought to take amongst the English.}[57]
{Answire} Next to those of the same Degree in England. But Scots before Irish: informante, Mr Dugdal, apud London, May, 1675.}

{2. Quere} \ 2 / Whether all the daughters of Baronetts are to take place next after there eldest wives during there fathers life tyme.
{Answire} They are.

{3 Quere} Whether all the daughters of Baronetts are not to have there precedency of all junior Baronetts eldest sons, wives, by the decree of the 14th of King James [1616-1617], and of all junior Baronetts daughters.
{Answire} We doubt not but they are.

{4. Quere} Whether a Bishop or Drs wife can take ~~pres~~ any other place then according to there husbands Quality by birth.
{Answire} They can-not.

[VI.387][58]
See excellent laws enacted by King Henry the 1st, confirmed by his hand & seale, against Wardship more especially, and his assent to King Edwards laws: Speed *History* p.435 Col. 1.

[I.151]

Of the Title Esquire

The barristers at Law have of Late affected to be called Esquires, which never was allow'd amongst the Heralds and in the Late Poll for King Charles the 2nd they generally ~~app~~ payd their Poll of Esquires, \ & / so they [~~on record use Esq.~~] stand returnd in the Exchequer, How be it, as it hath hereto fore been a thing unheard of, so I thinke it now altogether improper that they should be soe termed; for it doth not be long to the Gens Togata,[59] excepting those only of the military cassock; unless ~~it be~~ derived ~~unto them~~ from their progenitors \ who were / knights or esquires, of ~~an~~ descent. And then, it does not belong unto them by vertue of their imployment & office, but by ~~descent~~ their berth.
That a Barister should be writ an Esqr (as it has bin unheard of till late dayes) it seems to me always improper and an incroachment upon the sergiants at Law who have the best pretence to it. & title; for they are call'd Servientes ad Legem, which was the ancient word for a Squire. & out of these (It being the highest degree in Law) the Judges – the milites – are chosen.
The Judges, who bear the sword of Justice in their hands not only to cutt off superfluous branches & rotten stems, but to cut out & divide to every \ one / the harvest that which is his right. So that if \ wee / would appropriate the Titles \ of Esquire & Gentlemen to / Long Robes, & speake like men of standing & sense, wee must call the Bar. Inns of Court, Gentlemen; the Sergeant, Esquire.

{Consider of the Notion}
{~~Howbeit~~ \ For I have / reason to believe (from which I have read) that only the[m] being of the Inns of Court does not make them Gentle \ men /, although a Degree, as that of Barister, may \ possibly doe / make them so). But ~~it was designed at firste that none but Gentlemen should~~ that those Inns of Court were at first designed only for Gentlemens sonns, especially for younger sort; whence the terme \ of Inns of Court Gentlemen / became universal to graduits & others – Gentleman is a Degree of Honour. Non Graduits, quatenus,[60] such cannot be.}

[57] Margin queries and answers are in Machell's hand.
[58] The text is now in Machell's hand,
[59] I.e. 'long robes' (see below) the defining toga of the Romans.
[60] 'To that extent'.

[VI.387]

[The vital importance of ancient evidences of descent]

If any difference should arise, as I hope there never will, touch[ing] the antiq[uity] of any familys which I have taken notice of, I would not have them lay any stress upon anything I have written by conjecture; for precedence is matter little ~~which is not~~ and therefore it must be determined by evident proofe, not by conjecture. Though therefore I have in many familyes, for their greater honour, run them by higher than their \ own / pedegrees will allow, or writeings maintane, yet not without some probably[61] (as finding men of that name witnesse to deed of more ancient date). Yet I must pre[a]cquaint them that I dar not maintane that they are really of the selfe same family & lineally descended from them, because we know there are many of one and the same that will not acknowledge any affinity \ continuity, / especially where names are taken from townes and such townes are frequent in England in severall counties. But my determination upon the matter is that they shall \ not / ~~putt~~ \ confide / too much ~~confidence~~ in mee neither, but have recourse to their ancient evidences and trust me no further than I agree with them; for I am sure I have dealt so faithfully that I am not afraid to be putt to the test; for what is conjecture I deliver as opinion, & what is \ proved / evidence, as demonstration.

Onely as concerneing the matches of familyes I dar not maintane so punctuall a relation, because much of them, as I could not otherwise see, taken from gentlemens owne information, some from visitations, some out of glass windows, and in many familyes they have bin so careless that tho their matches be \ in part / preserved, yet the order is con \ fused / jectural.[62]
The 1^{t} family I finde mentioned now in being in the writeings of the Vip[onts] is John Mauchell \ Hardclay. / The 1^{t} in this country \ John de Ormesheved, who was his servant. / 2^{t} is Hellebeck.[63]
1. Ormesheved
2. Helle beck
3. Hardclay & Mauchaell

[Machell's Notes: VI.387]

It seems Whinfell belonged to Apleby, as by King Johns Deed.
Memorandum that the Countisses Evidences were collected & translated by Barron Hales.[64] King John's ~~mad~~ truce, E. of Essex, Lord Ludgarshalle in Wiltshire & chief Justice of England from him. {Hollin[shed]}[65]

Grant. pro Tempore
Rex &c. G. filio Petri &c. sciatis quod commisimus dilecto et fideli nostro Roberto de Veteriponte castra nostra de Apelby et de Burgo et Totam Baliuam de Westmerland cum omnibus pertinentijs suis, custodiendo quam diu Nobis placuerit & ideo vobis mandamus quatenus sine dilatione Rob. De Boel et Johi de Ormeshevet servientibus ipsius Roberti de Veteriponte predicta castra et Totam Baliuam de Westm'land cum omnibus ad eam pertinentibus habere facialis, et in hujus rei &c. T[este] me ipso apud Rothair xxxmo die martij é patent[e] de anno 40 Joh[annis] Regis mem. 2 in Turri Lond.

[61] Probability [?]
[62] Machell's unresolved decision as to whether to use 'confused' or 'conjectural'.
[63] This word is followed by an illegible scored-through sentence.
[64] Matthew Hale (1609-1676), Chief Baron of the Exchequer and Chief Justice of the King's Bench under Charles II; author of influential works on the law, https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/hale-matthew-1609-76.
[65] The rest of this margin comment is almost illegible but appears to comprise, '… fils Geofrey & … fils Geofrey married to Rob. De Vet. 3d &.' Raphael Holinshed, *Chronicles: The firste volume of the chronicles of England, Scotlande, and Irelande… faithfully gathered and set forth by Raphaell Holinshed*. (1577, enlarged 1587).

Idem. Johannes de Veteriponte habet alias literas patentes directas Omnibus tenentibus de Honore de Apleby et de Burgo et de Tota Baliua de Westm'land quod sint intendentes ei tanquam Baliuo quamdiu &c.[66]
i.e. So they doe service & homage unto him as Baliue &c.

[VI.388]

I submit this to the Norroys judgment.

In man[n]ers of takeing place as which bro[thers] compare with themselves, so which family compared one with another.

1. It is not manners for a man from a later family to take place of one of a more ancient extraction, tho he have greater possesions; no more that it is for a younger brother to take \ place / of his elder who is not so rich as him selfe, which [in] any man to be a great peace of pride, clownishness and folly. Ergo the gentry in the Bar are hugely commended for give precedence to Mr Thornborrow.
But if there be a difference of degree in honour, then the higher takes place. So a Knight[67] of a later family take precedence of an Esquire of an ancienter; and so a younger brother that is a Knight, take place of his elder who is but an Esquire and his eldest son o[ver] of the others eldest son during their fathers lives; for as then the Knights son is an Esq. and the other but a Gentleman. But when they come both to bee of the same degree in honour, the ancienter family doth by right take ~~the~~ place.
2. It is not manners ~~for men~~ for an Esq. by birth to take place of an Esq. by ofice whilst he is upon the actual execution of his ofice as of a Justice a Peace upon the Bench, for there he has a pr[er]og[ative]; as likewise it is not manners for the locall Esqs to take place of the native Esqs when they are of the Bench, except he bee of an ancienter family. So, a mayor out of his Corporation may not take place of his superior in birth, nor a Master of Arts out of the university (or fellow of a college out of his) of an other in whose family is more ancient or birth more noble, nor Dr &c., but by curtesie & in reverence to the profession of Divin[ity], tis often given to them, but them alone.
3. A Knights younger son is but Gentleman & therefore he ought to take place, not as the son of a Knight before other Gentlemen, but as a gentleman amongst those who are Gentlemen according to the antiquity of his family. Except (maybe) durante vitâ patris.[68]
4. The daughters are no more then Gentlewomen, yet they peradventure may have precedence durante vita patris of Infer[ior] Gentlemens daughters of ancient families, & may be of durante vita unius cuiusq[ue][69] till the[y] be marrid, but then the[y] must have place but according to their husband qual[ity]. Nor can the children of Knights sons & daughters however, challenge[70] any precedency from the parents but as the fall in ranke of Gentelty.
5. Noe honour by office doth descend unto wife and children; neither does mans being Justice a Peace, tho he was an Esq. before, give him any precedency of his seniors, save only as afore said upon execution of justice.
6. Esqs by place or creation give place allwayes to Esqs by birth.
Tho a father give place in his owne wrong, yet the son may challenge it agane, for the birthright of honour cannot be aliened from posterity. It cannot be given away, for tho an elder brother give place

[66] 'Grant, for the time being. The King etc. to G. son of Peter etc. Know ye that we have entrusted to our beloved and loyal Robert de Veteripont our castles of Appelby and of Brough and the whole Bailiwick of Westmorland with all its appurtenances, to ward as long as it shall be pleasing to us, and therefore we command that, without delay, Robert de Boel and John of Ormeshevet, underlords to Robert de Veteripont, shall hold the aforesaid castles openly, and the whole Bailiwick of Westmorland with everything that pertains to it; and in [the provisions] of this matter I myself am witness, at Rothair, on the 30th day of March, following a Patent of the 4th year of King John, membrane two in the Tower of London. The same. John de Veteripont has other letters patent directed to all the tenants of the Honor of Appelby and of Brough and the Whole Bailiwick of Westmorland, to the effect that they look to him as Bailiff for as long as etc.'
[67] MS: Here, 2cm of the text is scored through.
[68] 'During the life of his father.'
[69] '… during the lifetime of each one.'Here, the MS contains 4cm of scored-through text.
[70] MS: 'challened.'

to his younger, yet hee cannot make his younger brother elder, nor his younger brothers children, elder brothers children.

{He that has most be lest; & commoner shal often times take place of a courtier. And he that has the best gifts, be the best man & than he that is a scholer, which I suppose many gentle[men] would grumble to submit too.}

[VI.389]

Authorities for the Table in pag. 381, 3, 5, 6[71]

The authority for the several places aforsaid with reference to the figures in the Margent.
For all the figures until the 28th vide, Stat. 31. H.8. Cap. 10 &c. Sir Edward Cokes exposition thereof inst. p. 4th page 361.[72]
In Dugdal's *Antiquities of St Pauls*, towards the end thereof,[73] and the printed *Proceeding of his Majesty from the Tower to Westminster* April 22th 1667. {7? 1.}[74] {Cookes Inter.?}[75]
For the 20th 0 29th: Dr Heylins *History of St George*, page 3 Chap.2, sect. 5th and Ch.3 Sect. 30.[76]
For the 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36: Robt. Cot.[77] 10 Jacoby Regis [1612-13] \ Pact. / se[e] in Dugdale.
For 36. 37. 38. Viz. Mr Dugdalle ut supra.
For the 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. Viz. Robt Cot. 14 Jacoby Regis [1616-1617]. Pact. 2 in 24. Camden's *Britannia* page 176. 177.

This table was revised by William Dugdale Esq., Norroy, King of Arms, and all the queries answerd by him as aforesaid in May Anno Domini 1665: vide his letter and a table inclosed. J.

Query what place younger sons or Esqs are to have amongst equalls? & whether respect shall be had to 2 & 3 sonns &c.
Objection against fig. 38 (&3) why the descendant of ancient squire by creation (tho there never was a knight of his family) should not take place of a less ancient esquire, whose ~~descendant~~ ancestor was a knight. Quere de hac.[78]

It should seem that the ancienter in every degree ought to have precedence of those of the same quality, as among lords he of whose family had the 1t lord has precedence of other of the same quality who were made so lately. So, in familyes of Knights Baronetts, & one would thinks of Esqs to; not he

[71] In another hand: similar to some of the interpolations on VI.379.
[72] Edward Coke, *The First Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England. Or, a Commentarie upon Littleton, Not the Name of a Lawyer Onely, but of the Law it selfe* (London, 1628). Often referred to as 'Coke upon Littleton', it is a commentary on Thomas Littleton's treatise on land tenure.
[73] William Dugdale, *The History of St Paul's in London from its foundation until these times* (London, 1658).
[74] Clearly the writer had written the wrong date [1667]. In the margin, Machell questioned it, substituting '1' [1661]. See, 'The Ceremonial and Proceedings at the Coronation of Charles II (23 April 1661), republished in Thomas C. Banks, *An Historical Account of the Ancient & Modern Forms, Pageantry, & Ceremony of the Coronation of the Kings of England* (London, 1820), 22-76 (particularly 28-30).
[75] Possibly a reference to Robert Cooke, Clarenceux King of Arms. As well as heraldic compilations, visitations, precedencies, heraldry treatises and ordinaries of arms, Cooke compiled *The Armorie of Nobility*, a treatise on the English Baronage (1606, 1621): See J.F.R. Day, 'Cooke, Robert (d. 1593), herald'. *ODNB*. *The Armorie* was completed after Cooke's death by Robert Glover (Somerset King of Arms) and Thomas Lant (Portcullis): see *Report of the Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts*, Vol. 3 (London, 1872), 208.
[76] Peter Heylin, *The History of St. George of Cappadocia* (1631).
[77] Sir Robert Cotton (1571-1631), politician and antiquary, who, with William Camden and others, inaugurated the Society of Antiquaries and opened his extensive library to fellow scholars. As a politician, Cotton was highly involved in issues of precedent; in November 1602, for example, he was asked to produce a list of precedents relating to the office of Earl Marshal. Though he wrote little during his lifetime, many of his tracts were published by James Howells in *Cottoni posthuma* (1651). See S. Handley, 'Cotton, Sir Robert Bruce, first baronet'. *ODNB*.
[78] 'Query this.'

who has the 1ˡ knight of his family but the 1ˡ Esq. Otherwise a cobler's purchasing [a] knighthood shal have his posterity to take the places of the most ancient familyes which are squires by creation.
? Whether the right line extinct of an Esq., the collaterall may take ~~place~~ the title? And whether prescription be a sufficient ground for assumeing the title of an Esq.

[VI.390]

All I can answer in opposition to this argument is that in the same degree, precendence should be given to the ancienter family of that degree; except title be derived from a greater. For the \ younger / sons of a lord are only Esq. but must have the precedence of other Esqs, because their title is derived from an higher dignity; & in like manner the eldest son of a knight for the same reason.
Query: what better distinctions of familyes may [be] thought of, than are now in use? As crissent, mullet, martlet &c.? These are good for brothers, but bordure better for familyes.
I take it that official titles & honours derive a quality to posterity in a lower degree, tho not in the same? Though as \ a / Knight derives to posterity the title of Esq. in the first branch, an Esq by office; as a Justice a Peace or mayor of a towne may I presume doe the like for gentlemen. For they must have a begining, & those who serve their King & Country in any qualitye deserve som honour. Sed de hic quer.[79]

But there is another sort of Esquires which I have not yett mentioned, nor \ indeed / ever read of except in their own subscriptions & writeings: Sc. Squire Baristers, or if you please weed call them Squires Templers (because there were formerly knight of that order) but that I fear[80] The other Inns of Court will be angry at me as excludeing them, who have as good a clame \ to right / to the title \ squire / & to save the king[81] \ a labour / have created them selves such. For an honest gentleman (& barrister at law) upon my proposeing this question whether a barrister as such was not an Esquire, & where there were not an Act of Parliament (in this kings reigne) for it \ as some had endeavord to make me believe, / he answer'd no, there was no such thing; but indeed saith here wee have many amongst ambitious of title who write{them selves so (which no man else do), and to publish their honour. They have got a trick: such as have lodgings in the lowest chambers to write large & fair subscriptions to themselves. These to sue an one Esquire &c., which they stick in their windows to be seen through the glass so that he who runs may read; & take no smale pleasure to whatch in their chambers & hear the ignorant vagrants in or from false[82] the true conclusion: a barrister I warrant Him.}

[VI.391][83]

And ~~truly sayeth he~~, since 'tis our will & pleasure to be such, who can hinder us? We write ourselves squires, & the country people dar not for their lives (or estates att least) ~~calls by~~ \ call us / any other \ wise / ~~compellation~~. And besides, whee have the law in our own hands, & if a writ be issued out against ~~any~~ barrister without that title, tis our common practice to returne it, as an in valid & against (our own) law. Som may thinke I impose upon the lawyers, but I profess seriously on the word of an honest man that I had this story from a gentleman barrister in these very words, or much to this purpose. And he was pleased farther in the conclusion, to reminde me of the fable of the man & the lyon which \ had / a contest, which the man contended as Lord of the Universe, and to convince the lyon, showd him a picture (such as that of the London Apprentice) where a man was strughling with & got above ~~the~~ \ a / lyon. O, quoth the Lyon; you men can make pictures! Which if we could performe that would finde as many lyons above the men as men above lyons. The moral of which leave to the reader, with this protestation, that I highly dout those professors of law who ar men of honesty & sober principles; content with their owne & not watching to invade the propertyes of others & Kings prerogative. But such men as to thus, ough[t] to be blaz'd in their proper colours – parted per pale Or & Gules. For there is a <u>coat</u> belonging to this order of unmade Esquires, whose […][84] {is full as ridiculous to the soberer part of their owne profession, as to any other men. But the absurdity of

[79] 'But of this, query.'
[80] 7cm of illegible scored through text has been omitted here.
[81] 4cm of illegible scored through text has been omitted here.
[82] The next word begins with 'pr', but the rest has perished.
[83] Also numbered p.30.
[84] A word here has perished.

their personal clame to this title will appear if you consider that many Barristers have no Arms attal but by usurpation. Yet these men without Arms must be call'd Armigeri, those that have no scutchons must be calld Esquires; indeed, for sergeant to be counted, so there may be som reason, som kinde of analogical, for the one was anciently Serviens ad Arma, as the \ color / was, & in[deed] is, serviens ad legem. But for barristers as such, ~~tho they may~~ to pretend unto it, is very incongruouse. They may justly \ indeed / be calld Men of Contention; but by no means, Men of Arms.

[VI.393][85]

Of Heraldry

Heraldry is the Art of blazoning Coats Armour. Armes are hieroglyphical symbols or signes demonstrating the nobility or gentility, acquired by virtue and good service performed by the bearer or some of his ancestours, either in martiall exploits or by the learneing they have attained too. P.3.[86]

A Rebus is a quaint allusion to ones name; as this: Take the first letter of [87] Our Father, a maker of wax, an I & an N, the colour of an ass. And what have you then. We have: ABINDUN.[88]

A Devise is a conceit of wit, which is made by means of a comparition, having allwayes the figure of some natural or artificiall (so it bee not humaine) thing, which some smartor acute sentence goeing along with it: as the devise of his Majestyes life-gard of Horse, a lyon passant, crowned Or, with this motto: Dieu et mon droit.[89]



Figure 3.4.1. Dieu et mon Droit. VI.393.

Many in the late wars, both on the Kings side and Parliament, had their devises, amongst whome that of Collonell Cookes of Gloucester-shire, a Parliament, is very remarkable. He figured an armed man cutting the corners of a University cap with his sword, & his motto was:

[85] Also numbered p.32. The text on VI.393-96 is written in another hand.
[86] For the exact words, see John Guillem, *A Display of Heraldry* (London, 1610), 3.
[87] 3½cm of scored-through text is illegible here.
[88] Rebus: a cryptic representation of a word or phrase by pictures, symbols, arrangement of letters, etc., which suggest the word or phrase, or the syllables of which it is made up; spec. an ornamental device, often of heraldic appearance, associated with a person to whose name it punningly alludes. *OED*.
[89] Device: a fanciful, ingenious, or witty writing or expression, a 'conceit'. *OED*.

MUTO Quadrata RORUNDIS

That is: he would convert Square Heads or Cavaliers into Round Heads.



Figure 3.4.2. 'He would convert Square Heads or Cavaliers into Round Heads'. VI.393.

But Queens Colledge in Oxon. most remakeable for its loyalty in that loyall university, both in the time of the war and \ during the / Tyranny of Oliver \ Cromwell / never laid downe their ancient formalityes, nor without great unwillingness admitted of noveltyes or any innovations; inso much that to were a square cap in Oxford was enough to denominate the man a Cavalier, and with the same breath, old soldjer of Queenes.[90]

Hieroglyphics are much of the nature of Arms, only they are sacred signes, used by the Egyptians to expresse their religions mysteryes. Ring was an hieroglyphick of faithfulness; buckle, of steadfastness; bracelet, of industry.
The Antiquity of Arms appears from the antiquity of those Nations that boare them; as the Syrians.
[VI.394]

Syrians	bore a dove
Indians	a dragon
Athenians	an owle
Persians	a [bow[91]] & arrow
Romans	an eagle
Israëlites	the Hebrews
Sythians	a thunderbolt
Phrygians	a swine
Reuben	a mandrake
Dan	a serpent

[90] A scored-through passage at the beginning of this paragraph offers, '~~And well might Cavaliers be represented under the hieroglyphic of a square cap~~.'
[91] Sketch of a bow.

Numbers Cap. 2: Every man of the children of Israell shall pitch under his owne standard & under the arms of their Fathers houses.[92]
The Saxons also bore an Horse anno 450 when they entred this nation under the conduct of Hengist & Horsus. It is their emblem of celerity, & being stamp 1st on money caused to be cald currant; or may be because it goes so fast away.
Romulus bore a bundell of hay at the end of a long staff, which bundell was cald Manipulus; & hence the soldiers under him manipulare.
And Agamemnon a lyon ~~rampant~~ with this epigram: Hic pavor est hominum, manibus gerit hunc Agamemnon.[93]

Concerneing a Coat of Arms, 4 things are observeble:
1. The Crest.
2. The supporters; & the lyon & unicorn in the Kings.
3. The comportment containing the bordure with an inscription, as DIEU ET MON DROIT.
4. The coat it selfe.

Not[e] ad 1. (In Northumberland, that they seldom have any crests.)
Note ad 4. (In Ireland, that many noble families have no Arms at all.)
For understanding of Coats and their Blazonry, gett Guillams *Heraldry*,[94] or, if you can: Lee's Acc*idenc[e] of Armory*.[95]
For understanding the new orders of Nobility & Gentry, get Carter.[96] & with him you may read Lee-Gerrad,[97] out of which many of his coats are borrowed, which treats of these orders sursum ascendendo:[98] Esqs, Knight Batchelor, Knight Barronett, Baron, Viscount, Earle, Marquess, Duke, Prince, King, Emperor.
Gett also: Brookes *Catalogue of Kings, Princes, Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Viscounts since the Norman Conquest*.[99]
And for the Antiquitie of Brittain, gett Verstêgans *Antiquities*.[100]

[VI.395]

Of Heraldry
1. Physical amongst natural things; as the noblest is the

Planets	The Sun
In Animals	Crow, beasat
Mettalls	Gold
Gemms	Diamond
Colours	Sable,

[92] *AVB*: Numbers 2.2.
[93] 'This is the terror of men, this did Agamemnon bear in his hands.' The lion was the symbol of Mycenae, the Bronze Age fortress near Mykines in Argolis, north-eastern Peloponnese, Greece, where the legendary Agamemnon lived. The stone gateway leading into it, surmounted by two lions, is known as the Lion Gate.
[94] John Guillim, *A Display of Heraldry* (London, 1610); see also I.286; II.179; II.409; III.201; VI.394.
[95] Gerard Leigh, The *Accedence of Armorie* (1562); see also 1.133; I.295.
[96] Matthew Carter, *Honor Redivivus. or, The Analysis of Honor and Armory: Reprinted with Many Useful and Necessary Additions and Supply'd with the Names and Titles of Honour of the Present Nobility of England, the Bishops, Baronets, Members of Parliament, &c.* (1673).
[97] Gerard Leigh. Leigh's only published work was *The Accedens [Accidence] of Armory* (London, 1562; reprinted 1568, 1576, 1591, 1597 and 1612. See J. Day, 'Legh [Leigh], Gerard (d. 1563), heraldic writer'. *ODNB*.
[98] 'In order of ascendance'.
[99] Ralph Brooke, *A catalogue and succession of the kings, princes, dukes, marquesses, earles, and viscounts of this realme of England, since the Norman conquest, to this present yeare, 1619: together, with their armes, wiues, and children: the times of their deaths and burials, with many their memorable actions* (1619).
[100] Richard Verstegan, *A Restitution of Decayed Intelligence in Antiquities concerning the most noble and renowned English Nation* (1605; reprinted 1628, 1634, 1652, 1655 and 1673). For Verstegan's career, see Graham Parry, *The Trophies of Time: English Antiquarians of the seventeenth Century* (Oxford, 1995), 49-69.

Birds	Eagle, Phoenix
Serpents	Basiliske
Flowers	Rose, Lily or flore de lice
Plants	Cedar Tree
Trees	Palme or Olive Tree
Fishes	Dolphine
Frutes	Pomgranate
Beasts	Lyon
Dogs	Grahound, which som esteem nex to a lyon

Not[e] that things which have life are preferd, in armes, before things that have no life, except crowns imperiall, whereof there are but two: Englands and Germanys, mentioned in Carter, pag. [blank][101]

{Nobility is twofold, vel:)
2. Politicall amongst the members of a Commonwele or humaine associates; and that is either by
Blood.
Desert.
or Both.
And Desert is sub-divided into that which is acquired use – precedit
Marte by Pike.
Arte by Pen.
Not[e] that Nobleness by blood has precedency of desert in as much as wee see that Gentlemen of the same ranke, if they be so by right, always take place of those who are so by office. But the Blood preceed desert. Yet where those two meet both on one, it is most noble.
Note. Amongst men of equall ranke the Ancients family should still take place.

[The King]
It is worth a mans labour to seeke out the Nature & Constitution of King & Parliament; for which I commend Seldons *Titles of Honour*: the best booke he ever writ.[102] The Kings Coat you have att large in Guillam, 'Blazon*s*', to your hand (with) the reasons of additions.[103]

The King of England
was formerly cald Rex Diabolorum because of his subjects, so often by rebellion (the Divill's Stombling Block) attempted soverainty, and a de defenso,[104] of which hereafter.

The King of Spaine was cald Rex Hominum, because the Spaniards (from the highest to the lowest) has so much of gravity, seriousness, manhoodness and fidelity \ in them / as they ~~who~~ seldom or never

[101] Matthew Carter, *Honor Redivivus. or, The Analysis of Honor and Armory: Reprinted with Many Useful and Necessary Additions and Supply'd with the Names and Titles of Honour of the Present Nobility of England, the Bishops, Baronets, Members of Parliament, &c*. (1673), 260-61.
[102] John Selden, *Titles of Honor* (1614). Selden (1584-1654) was a lawyer and historical and linguistic scholar. *Titles of Honor* dealt historically with European honorific titles such as king, duke, count, baron, and knight. Breaking away from the genealogical concerns of most heralds and kings of arms, Selden derived honour from virtue, portrayed all civil honours as granted by the sovereign, and dismissed any claim to a hereditary nobility independent of the state: Paul Christianson, 'Selden, John'. *ODNB*.
[103] Reference is here made to a later edition of Guillim's, *A Display of Heraldry*. The 4th edition of 1660, for example, contained, 'a true register of all the blazons of the knights of the garter'. Richard Blome was a descendant of the printer Jacob Blome, who held the copyright of Guillim's *Display of Heraldry*. A 5th edition was published by Richard Blome in 1679. See Part 1, Chapter 1 on Appleby, (I.297) for Blome's letter (27 February 1674) to the 'Maior, Aldermen and other the Majestrates of Appleby', concerning his desire to include a chapter 'to treat of the cittyes and cheife townes corporate in England' in his latest edition of Guillim.
[104] 'In defence.'

rebeld. He's allso cald Rex Catholicus, because one of them ~~expeld~~ \ banished / the Arians (who denyed Xt's divinity) out of Spaine.[105]

{Germany}
The Emperor was calld Rex Regum because of the 7 Electours of the Empire, who have almost a kingly power & in their owne territoryes have *OS Gladij {*jus Gladij}[106] & may depose the Emperour if he do not stand \ to / and \ perform / promises in Bulla Aurea.[107]

The King of France is cald Rex Asinor[um], because he makes his subjects beare such heavy burthens of taxes \ 2 / & impositions \ 1 /.[108]

Note that England had the first Xtian King, Lucius; the 1[t] Xtian Em: Constantine; the 1[t] Protestant King: Ed.6; & 1[t] martyrd King: Charles 1[t].

[VI.396]

Charles the 1[t], who calls himselfe in his speech upon the scaffold, the Martyr of the People. He dyed for maintaineing their liberty and freedome: Sc. King Charles, *His Works*,[109] especially his ἐικων βασιλικη:[110] which will sufficiently manifest \ him / an other David: a man after Gods owne heart, who followed the footesteps of his Saviour as well in his death as he did in his life, praying for his enemyes & grievious persecutours, even till he dyed for, and by, them.

That there were Kings before the flood, Selden proves in his *Titles of Honour*.

The King of England title of Defensor Fidei,[111] they commonly say he has from Henry 8, who received it from the Pope because hee writ a booke against Luther in defence of indulgences.[112] But the title is far more ancient, for he is cald defensor fidei in a Charter of King Richard the 2[d] to the University of Oxon, concerneing which se Rex Platonicus[113] & Dr Crackenthorps Epistle to his Booke against the Bishop of Spalatro.[114]

---

[105] 'Catholic King'. Ferdinand and Isabella, joint rulers of Spain, were awarded this title by Pope Alexander VI in 1494. See Henry Kamen, *Spain, 1469-1714: A Society of Conflict* (London and New York, 1983, 2014), 37.
[106] King of Devils'; 'King of Men'; 'The Catholic King'; 'King of Kings'. 'OS Gladij' is probably an archaic form of 'IUS Gladij: 'The right of the sword' [i.e. power of life and death/supreme jurisdiction]. The margin comment explaining the error was made in another hand, probably William Nicolson's.
[107] The Golden Bull of 1356 was a decree named after its golden seal, which fixed the constitutional structure of the Holy Roman Empire for 400 years.
[108] 'King of Asses.'
[109] See, Charles I, King of England, 1600-1649, William Fulman, Richard Perrinchief and John Gauden, *Basiliká. The works of King Charles the martyr: with a collection of declarations, treaties, and other papers concerning the differences betwixt His said Majesty and his two houses of Parliament: with the history of his life: as also of his tryal and martyrdome* (London, 1687).
[110] ἐικων βασιλικη translates as 'royal image'. The word usually means a physical representation, like a statue. The phrase was used when describing busts of the Roman emperors. It could also possibly mean 'model' or 'pattern'.
[111] 'Defender of the Faith.'
[112] The title was first conferred by Pope Leo X on Henry VIII (1521) as a reward for the king's pamphlet *Assertio septem sacramentorum adversus Martinum Lutherum* ('Declaration of the Seven Sacraments Against Martin Luther'). When Henry broke with the papacy, Paul III deprived him of his title but it was restored to the king by Parliament in 1544 and is still used by British monarchs. 'Fid. Def. or 'F.D.' have been regularly on the coinage from the time of George I. Extracted from https://www.britannica.com/topic/defender-of-the-faith.
[113] Isaac Wake, *Rex platonicus: sive, de potentissimi principis Iacobi Britanniarum regis, ad illustrissimam Academiam Oxoniensem, adventu, Aug. 27. Anno M. DC. V.* (1635): A description, in Latin, of the king's entertainment at Oxford in 1605.
[114] Richard Crackanthorpe (1567-1624), *Defensio Ecclesiae Anglicanae; Defence of the Church of England against the calumnies of M. Antony de Dominis, Archbishop of Spalatro* (published in 1625 after his death).

The Kings Arms are sometimes given to a subject, but allways with a distinction: so the Ro[y]all Society now bears them as a badge of his Majestyes favour to the propagatours, as Morgan relates in his *A\r/malogia*.[115]
Upton sayes that the cross is the most noble beareing; and of all crosses, the plane cross (cald St Georges) takes place.[116]
That marke which the angels set on the doors of the Israelites is supposed to have been a cross; & Maemonides tells us that the character of the sacerdotall unction was a ✠ cross betwixt the brows of the high priest.[117]
Obs[erve] that those nations that were ingaiged in the Holy War, obliquely* thus: X; but the more noble nations, as English, Germans and French, bore it with right-angle; thus: †.
Observe that in the Kings Coat theres a chaine about the unicorne of Scotland, because, as some say, they have been false to the Crowne & therefore are to be chained. Others say that it is a reward of that service, according to the Romans custom, who gave bracelets & chanes of gold to persons well deserveing.
{*The Spaniards & Scotts bore the cross obliquely.}

Axioms[118]

1. Non licet insignia mutari magis quam nomina.[119]
2. a nominibus ad arma sequuntur argumenta.[120]
3. Insignia sicut antiquissima, quae alludunt ad nomina Gestantium. Fern: 231.[121]
4. Metalla praeferuntur coloribus quia Argentum sive luna, et Or sc[ilicet] Aurum: sc[ilicet] Sol omnes colores producunt.[122]
5. Qui sanguine solum nobilis maiorum insignia, non sua venditat.[123]
6. Primogenitus est splendour totius familiæ. Gen. 49.2.
Jacob sayes (Deut[eronomy). 21.17) to Reuben: Thou art my first borne, my might & the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity & the excellency of power.[124]

---

[115] Sylvanus Morgan (1620-93), *Armilogia, sive, Ars chromocritica. The language of arms by the colours & metals being analogically handled according to the nature of things, and fitted with apt motto's to the heroical science of herauldry in the symbolical world : whereby is discovered what is signified by every honourable partition, ordinary, or charge, usually born in coat-armour, and mythologized to the heroical theam of Homer on the shield of Achilles : a work of this nature never yet extant* (London,1666).
[116] 'Place' = precedence. Nicholas Upton (c.1400-1457) was a cleric, lawyer, and writer on warfare and heraldry whose *De Studio Militari* (1447) concerned heraldry and the arts of war, drawing on traditional writings but also reflecting 15th-century apprehensions. A. Brown & C. Walker, 'Upton, Nicholas'. *ODNB*.
[117] Moses Maimonides (1135-1204) was a Jewish philosopher, scholar and physician, see *Britannica.com.*
[118] MS: 'Axiom's.'
[119] 'Insignia may not be changed [any] more than names.'
[120] 'Themes follow from names to coats of arms.'
[121] 'Insignia which allude to the names of those who bear them, count as the most ancient. Fern: 231.' See Sir John Fern (c.1553-1609), *The Blazon of Gentry* (London, 1586), dedicated to his mother's relative Lord Sheffield, as 'a moral advertisement of gentry to the practice and action of virtue, without which none can be cleped a perfect gentleman'. His work discussed the relative merits of lineage and talent: 'a gentleman of blood, endued with virtues is to be preferred before all others in the receiving of a dignity, offices or rule in the commonweal'. https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1604-1629/member/ferne-john
[122] 'Metals are preferred to colours because Silver if the moon, and Or or Gold, that is to say the sun, can represent all colours.'
[123] 'He who is noble by blood alone, blazons the insignia of his ancestors, not his own.'
[124] 'The first-born is the splendour of the whole family.' Genesis 49.2. Genesis and Deuteronomy appear to have been confused here. The author quotes, 'Reuben, thou art my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power', but attributes it to Deuteronomy 21.17, when it belongs to Genesis 49.3 (not 2). Deuteronomy 21.17 is as follows, 'But he shall acknowledge the son of the hated for the firstborn, by giving him a double portion of all that he hath: for he is the beginning of his strength; the right of the firstborn is his.' (All *AVB*.)

[Cumberland and Westmorland Family Arms]

[VI.397]

These Arms taken out of an old B[ook] penes Thomas Fawcet de Sowerby.

Note. This Visitation was taken about 1580, John May being Bishop of Carlile. T.M. Consecration [29 September 1577].[125] Obijt 1598.
Note also: That in the Original they stood 3 on a row.



Figure 3.4.3. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.397.

Sc. In the first Order these: Lord Wharton, Musgrave and Lowther.
In the second, Machell = & Crackenthrop & Clibourne which made the first page.
Whence it appears that at the time of this Books being made, the ancient family of the Machels of Crackanthorp were in chiefe repute, next to Lord Wharton, the Musgraves and Low[thers], which are Knight by familyes.

[125] The MS is blotted here; the actual date of John Maye's consecration was been added. May (Meye) died of plague in 1598: David W.V. Weston, *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000), 142.

[VI.398]

A Relation of Proofe of the Arms of
Fothergill of Great Strickland, Threlkeld de Melmerby in Cumberland, Rigge de Strickland Parva, Salkeld de Rosgil, Blenkinsop de Helbeck, Helton {de Murton TM?}

[VI.399]



Figure 3.4.4. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.399.

[VI.400]

A Relation and Proofe of the Arms of

[VI.401]

Burton de Ormside, Sandford de Askam, Dudley of Yanwath, Browham de Browham, Birkbeck de Hornby in Westm'land, Lough de Blenkearne in Cumb'land.



Figure 3.4.5. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.401.

[Second-right Coat] {It seems at the time when the Booke was made out of which I tooke these, that the Browhams (now of Scales in Cumberland) were seated at Browham!!!!! {These are arms of Redding}[126]
[Bottom-right Coat] {This was misplaced in the original, being a Cumberland coate. T.M.}
N.B. That the second Coat in this page was torn out. Instead of which I placed this here together with Dudleys which I fetched from a page misplaced in Cumberland; having also in it Whitfield, Lancaster of Sockbridge Armes, & another Lancaster and 1 Coate Torn out. But in this page also before this of Browhams came in Martindales: Sc. Argent 3 barrs Gules, over all a bend Azure.

[VI.403][127]

Wharton de Kirkby-thore, Prekering de Crosby, Ducket de Grarig, Strickland de Sisars, Bellingham, {Brathwate de Warcop. TM}



Figure 3.4.6. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.403.

[126] Written in another hand.
[127] Aso numbered p.41.

[VI.405][128]

Thornburrow de [Blank] Westm'land; Harr\in/gton de W.; Midleton de Midleton Westm'land; Bradley de [Blank] Westmorland; Preston de Howkar; Redman de [Blank]



Figure 3.4.7. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.405.

{Memorandum: he concludes his collections of Westmerland after this of Readmans, with many blankes ready for more coates, and in one of them: Argent a cheveron Gu[les]. Betwene 9 cloves Sable, 4.2.1 & 2, which having no relation to any particular family, but only to the Grocer Company, I purposely omitt.[129]

[VI.407][130]

Lancaster de Sockbridge; Lancaster de Kendale*; 3. Wiber de Clifton; 4. Warcop de Colby; 5. Sandford de Askham; 6. Dalston de Acornbank; Helton; Scaife.

{N.B. These marked with the figures 3,4,5,6 are additions to the Book per me T.M.}

*{Note this field had bin on at first, but altered afterwards into Argent. This is of Sockbridge T.M.}

[128] Also numbered p.43.
[129] Nevertheless, the following page gives more coats of arms.
[130]Also numbered p.45.

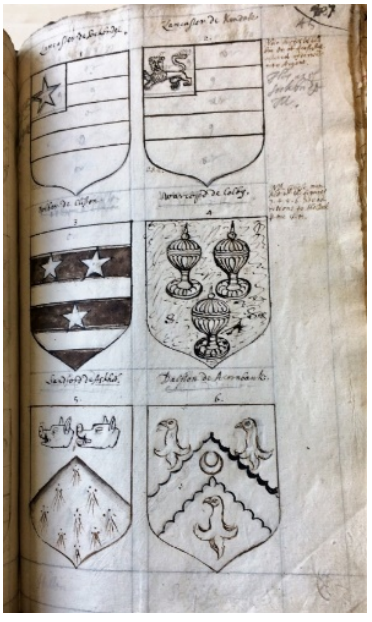


Figure 3.4.8. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.407.

[VI.409][131]

Suddaick de K.; Whitfield; Martindale.

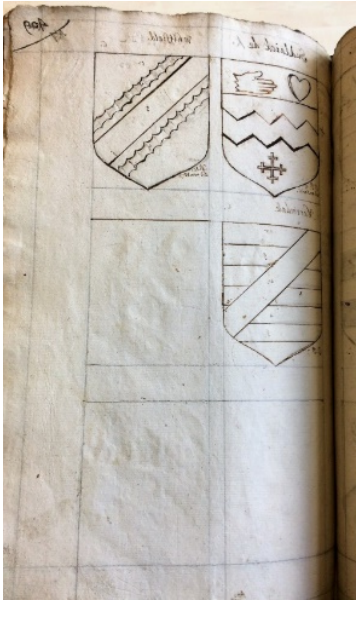


Figure 3.4.9. Thomas Fawcet's Book. VI.409.

[131] Also numbered p.47. For coats of arms of families in Cumberland, see MS.VI.413-25.

[Part II]

[VI.433][132]

Miscellaneous Notes for Families & Armes &c. in order to the Antiquities of Westmorland

Out of III bookes marked by me for distinctions sake after this manner
I. marked thus: χ, in folio } Penes Mr Sheldon de Weston in Com Warwick.
II. marked thus: ## in folio }
III. marked thus Φ in Quarto }
Memorandum: the books had noe titles, nor pages figured, so that I could not refer to the pages.

[VI.451][133]

A Barons Cap

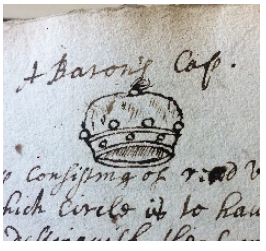


Figure 3.4.10. 'A Baron's Cap'. VI.451.

This sort of cap consisting of read velvet & a circle of gold (which circle is to have 6 pearles on the top of it) to distinguish the same from the circles or coronets of viscounts) was granted by King Charles the 2[t] (as appears by his warrant to the Attorney or Solicitor Generall, bearing July 6[th] 1661, Whitehall) to all Barons & their heires after them who are Peares of the Realm of England & have right to vote in the Upper House of Parliament; which they have liberty to weare on the dayes of coronation of the Kings & Queens of England; & place the same over their Coates of Armes or elsewhere as they shall thinke fit.
By His Majesty's Command
Edward Nicholas.[134]
This out of a booke in folio in the custody of Mr Sheldon of [Blank] in Warwick shire} sic notat ##, where the warrant is under the Kings owne hand ut puto.

In lib. Sic notate (χ) in folio penes Mr Sheldon de [Blank] in Com. Warwick.
There is an account of one William Dakins, who had his eare cut of by sentence in the Star Chamber for making false pedegrees & giving Coates of Armes; and was afterwards taken & imprisond, upon which he confessed amongst many others that he had made false pedegrees for these which follow, mongst many others which are not for my purpose, & subscribed unto it 23 of January 1597, Sc.
For \ Mr / Bellingham of Bromby, Lincolnshire.
For Mr Sanderson of the Bishoprick of Durham.
For Sir William Hilton, Knight.
For Mr Conyers of Sockbourne in the Bishoprick of Durham.
For Mr Grymston of Smeton, Yorke.

[132] MS.VI.435-50 contains general remarks on the nobility of England: not in Machell's hand and not transribed
[133] In Machell's hand.
[134] Sir Edward Nicholas (1593-1669), follower of Charles I and Charles II, was Secretary of State during part of the royal court's period in exile. Never a particular favourite, he retained office after the Restoration, but by 1662 he was out of the king's favour. See S. Baron, 'Nicholas, Sir Edward government official'. *ODNB*.

[VI.452]

For Mr Wivell of Barton.[135]
For Mr Ellerker of Ellerkar.
With abundance in Lincolnshire – almost all the gentry there; all which he confesseth to have made & to be false in the greatest part.
And he descovered severall others who practised the like forgeryes, among whom one Edward Waterhouse, who gatheres fees as an herald.[136] To which and many things more the said Dakyns subscribed in the presence of William Dethick, Garter Principall King of Armes.
There is allso a warrant for apprehending Christopher Dakyns & Edward Waterhouse, according to the tennour of Lord Marshalls warrant in that behalf. March 4th 1597, subscribed by:
William Dethick, Principle King of Armes.
William Camden, Clarenceaux King of Armes.
William Segar, Norroy King of Armes.
Lant. Winsor.[137]
Robert Treswell Somersett.
Thomas Knight, Alijs Rouge Croix.
William Smyth, Rouge Dragon.
S. Thompson, Portcullis.
The whole relation is to be seen out of the miscellaneous MS out of which I writt this; or in the iron barr'd chist in the Heralds Office where the original is kept. Quere whether they have it.

Quere. Whether the Ped[igree] of Bellingham herein mentioned be not the same with that in my book which I su[s]pected.
Quere. Whether Hiltons herein mentioned be not that att Hilton Castle in Bishopric.

There are fine notes in the said manuscript: a warrant of King James dat at Westminster Aug. 1 anno Regni ejus in Ang. 20, Scot. 56.[138] per Breve de privato sigillo:[139] to establish the Earle Marishall in equal power & authority with the Constable, whereon it

[VI.453]

is said to be found by clear proofe in the \ Privy / Council that the Constable & Marshall and joynt judges together, & severall in the vacancy of either, & ergo the King, doth authorise, will & command Thomas Earle of Arundale & Surrey his Earle Marshall, to proceed & judge in all causes whatsoever which pertaine to Constable, or to an Earle Marshall jointly & severally &c. Executed 4^0 September 1622.
There are allso very good accounts of the jurisdiction of the Earle Marshall, Provost Marshall \ Knight Marshall &c. / with the ordinances of the field in time of warr {good for soljer or Herald} excellent

[135] Barton/Burton?
[136] Edward Waterhouse (1619-1670), son of a London fish-monger, entered Emmanuel College, Cambridge, but did not take a degree. Although never a member of the College of Arms, Waterhouse's heraldic and historical interests led him to write books such as *A Discourse and Defense of Arms and Armory* (1660). His earliest work, *An Humble Apologie for Learning and Learned Men* (1653), was a historical survey of the contribution of learned men to human affairs. He was fascinated by the fluctuating fortunes of great families of distinguished ancestry. Anthony Wood thought him a 'cock-brain'd man' of small ability (Wood, *Ath. Oxon.: Fasti*, 2.164) but William Dugdale gave him greater credit. His best-known work is *The gentleman's monitor, or, A sober inspection into the virtues, vices and ordinary means of the rise and decay of men and familie*s (1665). D. Woolf, 'Waterhouse, Edward (1619-1670), heraldic writer'. *ODNB*.
[137] Thomas Lant, Windsor King of Arms: see T. Woodcock, 'Lant, Thomas (1554/55-1600/01), herald and draughtsman'. *ODNB.*
[138] James I of England (1603) and VI of Scotland (1567); James's reign of Scotland was the longest of any monarch pre-union of the crowns: 57 years and 246 days. M. Brown, 'James I (1394-1437), King of Scots'. *ODNB*.
[139] 'By writ of privy seal.'

things & well worth transcribing if I had time. There are allso transcript of Records of all or most of those who have bin Marshalls in most kings reignes, att least from Ed. 3 to Q. Elizabeth.

There is allso a Catalogue of the Armes of Noblemen: bannerets, & knights in the reign of King Edward the Second, out of which I tooke these:

Sir Robert de Clifford, Or & Az. a fess Gules.
Sir Thomas Moulton: Argent, 3 barrs Gules.
Sir Robert Thony: Argent, a manch Gules.
Sir John de Engayne: Gules Crasuly \ & / a chev. Or.
{1.} Sir William Leyburne: Azure, 6 lyons rampand Argent.
Sir John Huddleston: Gules fretty Argent.
Sir Robert de Escales: Gules, 6 scallops Argent.
Sir William Vesey: Or, a plane cross Sable. {This differs from the seal in Clifford ped[igree].}
{2.} Sir Randulphe Nevil: Gules, a fallier Argent.
Sir John Deyncourt: Azure, billette & a fess dancetty[y] Or.
{2.} Sir William Leybourne de North: Or, 6 lyons rampand Sable.
{2.} Sir Hugh de Nevil: Azure, a lyon rampand Or.
Sir Nicholas Ponte: barry of 8, Or & Gules.
Sir Nicholas Vipount: Or 6 annuletts Gules.
Sir John Cromwell: Gules, 6 annuletts Or.

[VI.454]

Sir Robert Hilton: Argent, 2 barrs Gules.
Sir William Maleverer: Argent 3 greyhounds Gules.
Sir Nicholas Carew: Or, 3 lyons passant Sable.
Sir John de Lancaster: Argent, 2 barrs and quarter Gules, on the quarter a leopard Or.
Sir John de Harcourt: Or, 2 barrs Gules.
Sir Walter Beauchamp: Gules, a fess inter 6 martletts Or.
Sir Simon Ward: a cross pate[140] Or: field Azure.
{Daker} Sir William D'acre: Gules, 3 scallops Argent.
Sir Robert de la Ward: Vairy Argent & Sable.
{Malevl} Sir John Maleverer: Gules a Chief Or, a baston gobonne[141] Argent & Azure.
{No collers} Sir William Maleverer: Argent 3 greyhounds Gules.
Sir John de Haverington: Sable, frette Argent.
Sir Michael Haverington: distinguished with a label Or.
{Strikland} Sir Walter Strickland: Argent 2 barrs & a quarter Gules. This must be compared with that seale in our ped[igree].
Sir Thomas le Rous: Ermin on a chief indented Gules, 3 scallops Argent.
Sir John Conyers: Azure, a ma\u/nch Or.

These may be were taken out of my Lord Brudenells Boke;[142] for it follows the names of such familyes which beare different Coates of Armour, taken out of my Lord Brudinells D.[143]

[140] Probably a cross paté: a cross with arms, narrow at the centre. See Fox-Davies, *Heraldry*, 129.
[141] 'Baston': stick or staff. 'Gobony or Gobone': of a bordure composed of a row of squares of two alternate tinctures, sometimes a colour and a metal. *OED*.
[142] Thomas, Lord Brudenell (c.1583-1663), first earl of Cardigan. Royalist soldier and antiquary. His treatise concerning the nobility (1605-12); genealogical papers; drawings and coats of arms (1635) and correspondence with Sir Christopher and Sir Thomas Hatton (1622-60) are held in various English repositories; see TNA Collections, https://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/c/F45645.
[143] A similar reference occurs elsewhere, viz. 'In an old MS penes anct. intitled Lord Brudenell's Book (B) é carta Rogerh'm in parochia de Herton in Comit. de Staff.' The quotation is taken from C.T. Banks, *Baronia Anglica Concentrata: or, A concentrated account of all the baronies commonly called baronies in fee; deriving*

Amongst others I shall onely offer a family:

1. Beauchamp Earle of Warwick: Gules, a fess inter 6 cross crossletts Or. B. of Elmly Gules a fess Or.
Sir Walter Beauchamp: Gules a fess inter 6 martletts Or.
Sir Miles in Bucks: Vaire, a label Or.
Sir Humphrey in Somersett: Vaire, a label Or.
Sir John in Essex: Gules, Brilletty & a fess Or.
Sir John, B. of Fyfield: Or a lyon Sable \ crown'd / Gules.

2. Nevil, Raph Earl of Westmorland: Ruby a saltier Pearle.
\ Sir John in Yorkshire: Argent a saltier Gules. /
Sir James in Surrey: Gules, crusule[144] & 2 trompes Or.
Sir Theobald: Azure crusule & 3 leopards heads fleurie Argent.
Sir John: Gules, crusule & 3 fleurs-de-lis Argent.
Sir Robert: Gules, a fess da\u/ncy Argent, a bordure ingrailed Or.
Sir Richard: Gules, a fess indented Argent, a label Azure.
Sir Phillip: Gules, a fess indented Argent, 3 mullets in chiefe Or.
{Sir Thomas of Lincolnshire: Or, a chiefe indented Vert, a bend Gules.
Sir Phillip: Argent, a fess dauncy Gules, a bend Sable.
[Blank] Azure 3 bustards riseing Or.

[VI.455]

Foes allowed by the King to his Councill of the North while established at Yorke

	li.
Lord Presidents foe	100: 0:0 with budget for himselfe & the rest of the Councill
7 Councillors, their foe	040: 0:0 a peece
The secretary, foe	033: 0:0
The Messenger, foe	006:13:4

For severall expenses allowed yearly amongst the officers & Councillors aforesaid:
Foe, 100:00:00 per annum
Ex Lib. MS Misc[ellaneous] in folio χ not.[145]

{Morvile}
Anno 1171 Willielmus de Traci, Hugo de Morevile, Richardus Brito, Regnaldus filius Ursi, milites, generis permanentia conspicui occiderunt Thomam de Becket Cantuariensem Archiepiscopum, & Pos[t]mod[ic]um Alexandrum Romanum Pontificem adien[te]s, et accepta ab eo pænitentia, ierosolymam profecti sunt; et ex præcepto ~~ab eo~~ Papæ in monte nigro Pænitentiam agentes obierunt, & sunt ierosolymis sepulti, ante ostium Templi.[146]
Hoveden, f. 298 6 & 299.[147] Lib. X Paulo post med.

their origin from writ of summons, and not from any specific limited creation, whereto is added the proofs of parliamentary sitting, from the reign of Edw. I to that of Queen Anne…, Vol. I (Ripon, 1844), 103.

[144] 'Crusule or crusilly': of a field or charge covered or strewn with crosses, usually crosses crosslet. *OED* .

[145] Machell possibly meant, 'note'.

[146] 'In the year 1171 William de Traci, Hugh de Morvill, Richard Brito, Regnaldus son of Ursus, knights notable for the long continuity of their family, killed Thomas de Becket Archbishop of Canterbury, & soon after, going to Alexander the Pope in Rome, and receiving penitence from him, set out for Jerusalem; and while doing penance according to the order of the Pope on the Black Hill, they died and were buried at Jerusalem, before the door of the Temple.'

[147] Roger of Hoveden or Howden, *Chronica*, republished by G. Bishop, R Nuberie & R. Barker Typographij Regii as, *Rogeri Hovedeni Annalium Pars Prior & Posterior, in Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores Post Bedam Praecipui, ex vetustissimis codicibus manuscriptis nunc primum in lucem editi* (London, 1596).

{Q. An haec fuit transgresio ob quam Apleby venit in manus Dom Johans \ Hen. 2 / Regis: et sic Richardi: inde Johannis qui dedit Rob. De Veteriponte.}[148]

{Ad Courts Baron}
Valvasor
Thain – Saxon: Major, a baron or Pear of the Realme.
Baron – Danish: Minor, & proprie such as may be impleaded in Jury among the Knights where Baron is party \ su[n]t / qui ad valvas tentorij Domini sui in Bello excubantes ad quamlibet vim et injuriam propulsandam, valvasor q. vas sortitu[s] ad fortitudinem: viri magnæ dignitatis Brouton.[149]
Minimus, sive valvassimus,[150] Lords of Manours called Barons (but abusively)* the Courts of their Manour calld, ergo, Courts Baron {Lib. 6, Cap. 11. Se Dugdals *Baronagio Angliae.*}[151]
*For of these Glanvil speaketh (Lib. 8, Cap. 10. Fol. 64}.[152] Præterea recordum habent minores curiæ de hijs quæ in ijs factæ sunt, in curia Domini Regis: quod contingit quando Aliquis Baro habet aliquam loquelam in curia sua, unde aliqua Rationabilis dubitat[io] oriatur; ita quod curia ipsa non sufficiat eam determinare, tunc potest {vid[e] versa pagina.}[153]

[VI.456]

Collection out of a miscellaneous MS ## penes Mr Sheldon

{ad bellum cum Scotis. sic notat[um] X pro certe: cetera suspic[io].}[154]
Anno 7. Ed. 2. [1313-14]. A grant was made out of the 15th part of goods moveable within cityes, 7 burrows, & a 20th part of the other laie people, with a forme for the assessing & levying of the same.
Anno 9. Ed. 2. [1315-16]. A like grant of the 15th – out of cityes & burghes; & out of every other towne one X armed man for the kings warrs in Scotland att their charges.
Anno 10. ejusd.: An impost of greater custom is laid upon merchandise, to be levied to the Kings use for a certain time by the way of loane.
Anno 12. Ejusd.: One 18th part of goods moveable of the layetie is granted for the wars in S\c/otland
Likewise, subsidies granted annis Ed. 3.[155] 6^0, 13^0, 13^0, 14, 15^0, 18^0, 20^0, 22, 25, 27, 29, 36, 38, 42, 43, 45, 46, 47, 50, 51.
Likewise, Rich. 2t.[156] Annis 1^0, 2^0, 2^0, 3^0, 4^0, 5, 6, 8^0, 13^0& 14, 18^0 & 20
Temp. Henry 4t.[157] Annis 1^0, 2^0, 4^0, 6, 7, 9, 11, 13

[148] 'Whether this was a transgression on account of which Appelby came into the hands of the Lord King John \ Henry 2 / and so of Richard: thence of John who gave it to Robert de Veteripont.'
[149] 'They are those who watch at the doors of their master's tent in war to repel any kind of violence or injury. valvasor q.: one who has received his military equipment for his steadfastness: men of great respect: Brouton.' A partly illegible margin comment opposite this paragraph, offers, '{The civilians, as Sha[?] *Lexicon Juris*, the […] valuæ Petrius Gregor, *Syntagma Juris Lib. 1*, Cap. 18.}' Machell was probably referring to Petrius Gregorius (Gregorii*), Syntagma Juris Universi, atque legume paene omnium Gentium Lib. 1* (Frankfurt am Main, 1599, 1611; Geneva, 1639).
[150] 'The lowest ranking, or valvassimus'.
[151] William Dugdale, *Baronagio Angliae* (1675-76).
[152] *Tractatus de legibus et consuetudinibus regni Anglie* (*Treatise on the Laws and Customs of the Kingdom of England*), often called *Glanvill*, is the earliest treatise on English law. Written for Henry II and attributed to Ranulf de Glanvill (died 1190) and dated 1187-1189, it was revolutionary in its systematic codification, defining legal process and introducing writs. https://earlyenglishlaws.ac.uk/laws/texts/glanvill.
[153] 'Moreover, the lesser ranking have a court record of the things which have taken place among them, in the court of the Lord King: a thing which happens when some Baron has some suit in his own court from which some reasonable doubt may arise, in such a way that the court itself is not sufficient to settle it, then it is able {see next page}.' [See VI.456, foot.]
[154] 'For the war with the Scots. It is noted X, like this, when certain. The rest I regard as suspect.'
[155] Edward III reigned from 1327 to 1377.
[156] Richard II reigned from 1377 to 1399.
[157] Henry IV reigned from 1399 to 1413.

Temp. Henry 5.[158] Annis 1^0, 2^0, 3^0, 4^0, 9^0, 9^0
Temp. Henry 6.[159] Annis 1^0, 2^0, 3^0, 4^0, 6^0, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14^0, 15, 18, 20, 27, 28, 31bis
Temp. Ed. 4.[160] Annis 3^0, 4^0, 5^0, 12^0, 14^0, 22 haec omnia in L ##

Potest dominus ipse curiam suam ponere in curiam domini regis.[161]
Among those northern people who invaded the Roman Empire, Baron signifyed a man of strength, as by the laws of the Lambards, & corrupt use of the word in Spane, France & Itali \ in which Latine is / now mixed with the Gothick & northern language, in every of which tongues the word Varron or Barron is instead of the Latin word Vir; with which agreement that piece of the ancient law of countries the dane collicipium quod e summa census diversa diu est suarum Dignitatum, si minoris vironis i.e. Baronis, duæ libræ si majoris quatuor.[162] {Bracton Lib. 2, cap. 8, s4.}[163]
The English Saxons called them Thaynes:
Thani Reges: T.M. qui de Rege.[164]
Thani aliorum: T.M. qui de alijs sub Rege.[165]
Hartfordshire. mar. de Brackinges (*Domesdaie*) Hoc manerium tenuerunt duo Taignir. Danes are yet Liberi Domini.[166]

[VI.457]

Collection è Lib. ## in folio, capt. è Claus 21 Ed. 1, part 1^t, m. 10

Licet Rex recuperasset usus Nicho[lai] de Veteriponte Manerium de Aldeston cum pertinent[ijs] quod qu[od]dem manerium idem Rex p[ror]us p[er] literas suas patentes concesserat habend[um] eidem Nicho[lao] e hered[itatione] de Alexandro Rege Scotorum defuncto, Rex vult quod idem Nicholaus continueret serv[ienti]am suam ei. vj Jan.[167] {Aldeston for Alston More in Cumberland.}

[158] Henry V reigned from 1413 to 1422.
[159] Henry VI reigned from 1422 to 1461.
[160] Edward IV reigned from 1461 to 1483.
[161] 'the lord himself can move his court to the court of the Lord King.' This follows the sentence at VI.455, foot.
[162] '… the Danish collicipium [qualification] which for a long time has had a different level among their rankings as a whole: if of a lesser, 'viro', that is a baron, two pounds; if of a greater [baron], four.'
[163] Henry of Bratton (Henricus de Brattona or Bractona) was an English judge of the court known as Coram Rege (later King's Bench) from 1247-50 and from 1253-57. Bracton's chief claim to fame is his association with the treatise *De legibus et consuetudinibus Angliae* (*On the Laws and Customs of England*). Commonly known as *Bracton*, the work attempts to describe rationally the whole of English law, While the attribution of the work to Bracton is of considerable antiquity, it now seems that the bulk of the work was written in the 1220s and edited and partially updated in the 1230s, by persons other than Bracton, with various additions up to the 1250s. The last owner of the original manuscript and the author of the later additions was probably Bracton.' Harvard Law School Library amesfoundation.law.harvard.edu/Bracton.
[164] 'Thane rulers: people who hold their power from the king. Thomas Machell.'
[165] 'Thanes of others: people who hold their power from others under the king. Thomas Machell.'
[166] 'From Hertfordshire. Manor of Brackinges (*Domesday Book*). This manor was held by two Taignir (Thanes). Danes are yet free lords.'
[167] 'Although the King had taken back into possession from Nicholaus de Veteriponte the Manor of Aldeston with its appurtenances, because the same king straightway through his letters patent had granted to the same Nicholas to hold a certain manor, from his inheritance from Alexander King of the Scots, deceased, the King wishes that the same Nicholaus should continue his subservience to him. vi Jan.'

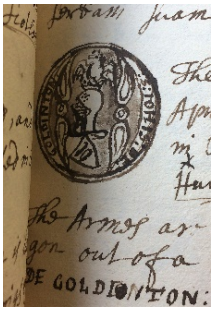


Figure 3.4.11. Seal of John Goldrington. VI.457.

The seale of John Goldrington, ad cartam dat apud Satbridgeworth (vide ubi in Spelmans *Villare*) [1] in Com[itatu] Hereford, 90 Henry 4 [1407-08]. {forsan aliq[uid] faciat ad Goldrington apud Appleby} fuit Dominus de Hunsden* Johannes ille Gold[r]inton.[168]
*Hunsden is in Herefordshire in Bragging Hundred. The Armes are 2 lyons passant, the Crist a demy dragon out of a coronet, the circumscription S. IOHS. DE GOLDINTON[169] i.e. sigillum Johannis de Goldr[i]nton.

{ad cristas}
Crists were used in the 32. Ed. 3. [1358-59]. The same seale with a milstone for the crest. But the page \ foregoing / was lost, in which the seale was dwane[170] so that I know not what it was. But I believe it was of Robert de Insula.

Ax[i]oma. Species legum forest[ae] sunt infinitæ[171]
Betwixt the date of a writ of summons (for a forrest court) and the returne are above 40 dayes; & that is a general in summoning all Royal Courtes of the Crowne {such is the majesty of the said haughty & stately courtes} as of the Court of Parliament; the eires of Quo Warranto

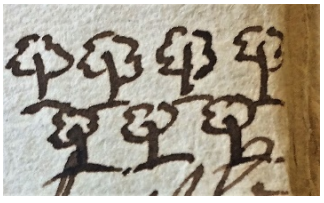


Figure 3.4.12. Forest Court: 'the eire of the forrest'. VI.457.

concerning liberties & franchesses; the eires of the forests & forrest laws; because it is supposed that in the time of 40 dayes after summons, give all persons in the realme who are concerned in those, may have sufficient knowledge of them.[172] Note allso that the forme of warrants: Omnibus, Archiep.,[173]

[168] 'He puts it on the charter at Satbridgeworth (see where in Spelman's Villare) in the County of Herefordshire, 9th year of Henry 4 [1407-8]. {Perhaps he may do something at Goldrington at Appleby} The Lord of Hunsden was that John Gold[r]inton.'
[169] MS: 'GOLDI~~O~~NTON'.
[170] 'drawn.'
[171] 'Proposition. The types of Forest Laws are innumerable.'
[172] The 'Eire' or 'Eyre' was The Court of Justices Itinerant. The 'Eire of the Forest' was the justice seat, which by ancient custom was held every three years by the Justices of the Forest, journeying up and down for that purpose'. See Giles Jacob, *A New Law Dictionary* (1729), EI-EL.
[173] Archiepiscopal: relating to archbishops.

Episcop., Comatis, Baron &c., was changed when the Office of Justice of the Forest, south & north, was given to nobles & now begins thus: R. concessit T.M. officium gardinu[m] et capita[lem] Juristic[tionem] {nostri itinerantis omniu[m] forestarum – chasearum & parcar[um] et war\r/enar[iorum] citra Trent.}[174]

In the laws feudal of the Lombards, collected by their King Rotharis, the word Baron is for a man of strength. And in Lib. 2 *Feudorum* Cap. 10[6] (these Barons according to that law are those capitanei or valvasores majores) for qui a principe vel ab aliqua potestate de plebe aliqua vel plebis \ parte / per feudum est investitus, is capitaneus appellatur, qui proprie valasores majores olim appella\ba/ntur;[175] and of the questions arriseing concerning those Baronie, the monarch of the realme (or those to whome he comitts the same) doth judge, for that those Baronies are said immediate a rege infeudati;[176] as for others, they are Barons ex similitudine,[177] and ergo are those which in the said Laws Feudal are called valvasores & valvasini,[178] for the words are these: Qui vero a capitaneis antiquis Beneficium tenent valvasores sunt.[179]

[VI.458]

Qui autem \ a / valvasoribus feudum quod a capitaneis habebatur similiter acceperint valvasini, i.e. valvasores minores appellantur.[180]

The use of this division in England hath bin no other but this. The Valvasor major is our Baron or Peere of the realm. The second is Valvasor proper, of whom mention is made in the Law (13. Ed. 3. [1339-40] T[….] cha[…..] 15),[181] for the[y] may be impleaded &c.

N.B. Vide Legem. T. The 3 valvasini – as you have it before.[182] This is the authors sense & much of his word. But I am inclinable rather to consider whether these words out of the feudal may not direct us to use of the words thus: That Valvasor Major is a Baron qui de rege tenet, valvasor special: qui de Barone tenet Sc. Dominus Manerij. Valvasinus qui de ipso Domino, Sc. Homo Domini, & speciatim Liber tenens. T.M.[183]

[VI.459]

The names of those which came in with the Conqueror as far as I seem concernd, as to West[morland] & Cumb'land, or elsewhere in my note

These were taken of a MS folio Mr Sheldons marked thus, Sc. χ, where the whole catalogue is to be seen.

[174] 'The King granted T.M. the office of warden and chief jurisdiction {of our circuit of all his forests – chases and parks and warrens, on this side of Trent.}'

[175] '… (these Barons according to that law are those captains or greater barons) for the man who is invested in fee by a king or by some power arising from the people or part of the people, he is called captain – they who properly were once called greater barons.'

[176] '… for that those Baronies are said immediate enfeoffed by the king.'

[177] '… as for others, they are Barons by resemblance.'

[178] '… in the said Laws Feudal are called barons & lesser barons.'

[179] '…for the words are these: indeed, those who hold a fee from the chieftains of old are barons.'

[180] 'Moreover, those who have received from barons a fee which was held in the same way from chieftains, are called 'valvasini' i.e. minor barons.'

[181] These two words are indistinct.

[182] 'See the Law. T. The three Valvasini – as you have it before.'

[183] 'That valvasor major is a baron who holds from the king; a valvasor special is one who holds from a baron, that is, the lord of a manor. A valvasinus is one who holds from that lord; that is, a lord's man, and in particular, a free-holder.'

According to William Taileur of Rhoane, in his *Cronicle of Normandy*: vide How's continuation of Stow's *Cronicle* p.103, 104, 105.[184]

Guillaume de Veitz Pont	Referatur ad Apleby
Le Sire de Port.	Hantshire
Le Sire de Romelle	per Skepton
These archers of the Vale Rieill[185]	& of Bretneil[186] & other places, p.105. 106.
le Sire de Tony	ad Clifford
Le Sire de Oslie	ad Oxon
Hue le Vigot alias Bigot de Maletot	
Le Sire de Harrecourt	\ ad / ad cognom \ ap opedis /
Le Sire de Dancourt	
Le Sire de Scantevil (si Stuttevilee)	
Tostam du Bec	

Those out of the Tables att Battle Abby:

Bohun	(ad Hartley)
Breton	
Beke	
Beauchamp	
Coniers	(ad Machel)
Curson ad Oxon	
Clifford	(! Id mirum non de Clifford. vide etiam ut ducunt originem a [blank] de Ponte, non e suspect[o] reddit[u] vel Catalogi vel Genealogiæ Clifford?).[187]
De la Pole	(ad Wayhil)
Engaynen	(ad Westm'land)
De la Ward	
Fitz William	(ad Musgrave fa.)
Glannvile	
Le Scroope	
Lind-sey	
Le Vaus	
Morvile	(ad Aplby)
Musgrave	(ad Musgrave)
Musgrose	(hi[n]c patet quad sunt destinitæ familiæ)[188]
Mallory	
Morley	
Mantell forsan?	

[184] Edmund Howe, *The Abridgement of the English Chronicles First Collected by M. John Stow, and After Him Augmented with Every Memorable Antiquities, and Continued with* Matter (1611). This volume contains lists of Normans who entered England with William I, from which Machell extracted names local to the north of England. Stow's source was *L'Histoire et Cronique de Normandie*, published at Rouen between 1487 and 1610. Holinshed and Stow called the work, the 'Croniques' or *Chronicles of Normandy*. The author was mistakenly identified by Holinshed, Stow, and John Speed as 'William Taileur', that is, Guillaume le Taileur of Rouen, one of the original publishers of the work in 1487. See R.B. Gottfried, 'Samuel Daniel's Method of Writing History', *Studies in the Renaissance 3* (1956), 157-74, at 158-59. Hence, Machell acknowledges 'William Taileur' as the original source of his lists, while citing his actual source, which was How, *Abridgement of the English Chronicles*, 103-08.

[185] The archers of the vale of Reuill, see Howe, *Abridgement of the English Chronicles*, 104.

[186] The archers of Bretuille, see Howe, *Abridgement of the English Chronicles*, 104.

[187] 'This is amazing. Not of Clifford; see also that they draw their origin from [blank] de Pont, not from the unreliable rendering, either of the Catalogue or the Clifford Genealogy.'

[188] 'From this it is open how far they are of an established family.'

Morton	(inde mirum de oppidis)[189]
Norrice	
Neel	
Oryol	ad [Blank]
Pigot	
Pudsey?	
Rose	(ad Barwises) et Cumberland
Ridle	ad Ridel?
Richmond	(ad Fam. Machel et ad Cumb'land)
Sandford?!	Iterum
Taylbois	(ad?)
Torell	
Tirell	
Ward	(not de la Ward)
Wynell	

Tis something strange that there should be noe (de) prefixed to these sirnames, which are most of that taken from Townes &c. & som of them not French Townes neither.

[VI.460][190]

Cognomina Conquisitorum Angliae cum Domino Guilliam[o] Duce Normaniæ & Conquestore Angliæ ex Rot[ulo] Antiquo penes Tho. Scriven Ar[migerum] Anno 1615.[191]

Achard
Archer
Bastard
Basset
Blundel
Berry
Beauchamp

Botiler
Bigod
Burle
Cursy
Chauser
Darce
Duket ad Grarig
Dericourt
Harecurte
Kosin ad Burton
Lucy
Mansel
Morvil
Moleverer
Morley
Picot
Parley
Puutfrait
Russell
Rydell id mir[um]![192]
Rooz
Richmount
Say
Savage
Tonny ad Cliff
Tyrell
Tayleboys
Vere
Villers
Vesey
Vaus
Ward

I suppose the Table out of which I pick'd these names from among many others are in Hows Continuation of Stow's *Cronicle*, vide. I know not what to thinke of these \ latter / except they have bin taken out of some records & digested in to this alphabeticall \ order / by the Collector, who has left out the (de) for brevity's sake.

[189] 'Hence astonishing about the towns.'
[190] A note at the top of this page reads, 'for. 107'.
[191] 'Surnames of the Conquerors of England with Lord William Duke of Normandy and Conqueror of England, from an ancient document in the possession of Thomas Scriven, Knight, in the year 1615.'
[192] 'Rydall – This is astonishing!'

[VI.461]

Notes concerning Heralds Visitation – with some Coates of Armes

Miscellanea Lib. 10, p.78
25. Rob. Crakenthorpe = Elizabeth, 2[a] fil. Et coheres Johannis Lancaster de Rydall, militis, et habuit in per tem sua maneriu de Mylne-burne.

Entered in Kirkbythore.
Joh[ann]es Crakanthorp de Helgyll in Co. Westm'l. Ed. 4 = filia.
Ambrose Crakenthorpe de Helgill or Holgill sine exit. Antonius Crakewenthorpe obijt 11. H. 8.

[VI.460A]

Ad p.17 in the Booke of Arms
Grocers
Of Whitfield Or, bend Sable, between 2 cotizes ingraled, Sables.
I place it here because a branch of them lived lately at Bolton.

[VI.462A][193]

Coats of Arms belong to Westm'land

{Labourne}
Laburne de Witherslack Hall near Kendall bears Arms 6 lyons passant gardant Or. 32 & 1.
Note this. I have putt downe for Winsors, having information of both from Ar. Duckatt, sed de hoc quere? For he tooke Nevils to be Winsors.
I finde that to the Leyburnes (of what place I know 0) but those who were Barons in Ed. 3 time, the last of which family was Julian, daughter and heiress to Thomas Leyburne, who was given in marriage to Will. Clin\o/ton, E. of Huntington, created by the forsaid King E. 3, anno 1337. And these Leyburns bore for their Arms 6 lyons rampant, 3, 2 & 1. This may peradventure correct the former.
It doth sae {se my pocket book}.

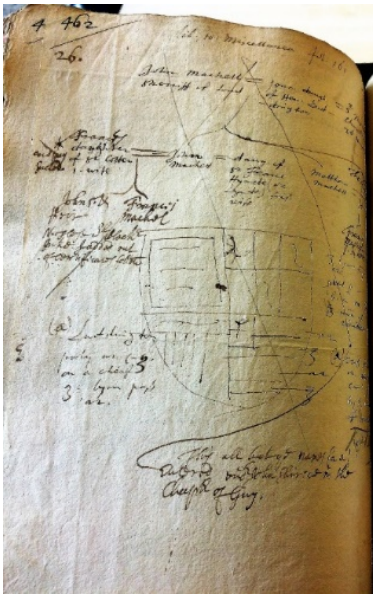


Figure 3.4.13. Labourne Arms. VI.462.

[193] Also numbered p.101.

[VI.463]

(Memorandum *l. the 15* in Colleg. Herald)
{Armes not to be borne by one that maryes of a gentle woman heiress}[194]
A very good booke in the Heralds Office (marked *L. the 15*), wherein is declayred that if an heiress mary one that has no Coate, he cannot bear his wives; neither her children of her, except som of them shall have a Coate granted; then he may quarter his mother Coate. Not otherwise, for to bear it single were an injury to others of the same family in the indirect line. (Sed quere? For I have red the contrary, & methinks it may be born without injurie because the other may be known by their distinction, or hers may be borne with 3 [labels].)[195]
Sed Nihil statuo.[196]
I must serch *Visitation of Lancashire*,[197] for the Gentry about Kendall side, who often transplant thither, & for Gentlemen in other parts: Bishoprick, Yorkshire, Cumberland & Northumberland? Consult Mr Phillipson or Ducket abou[t] Leybourne to joyne the ped[igree].
N.B. Memorandum: I have left a paper att M. in *Yorkshire Visitation*, & Lowther is to be examend.[198]
{? Vide *Visitation Yorkshire* 1585 penes Dr Knight.}

[VI.464]

Mix'd Notes of Families & Places to [be] referd to the proper Chapters

Memorandum: Machells Armes are in Dugdall: greyhound not collared, & that Machell, that match in Apleby Church window, which he called Maliverer; but Armes is indeed Machell & Thornburrow, he has drawn without collers. q. an recte.[199] {?} He has take out the late mon[ument] for the present countiss, nor the figure of the other, but only the inscriptions & Armes.[200] Query whether he has there \ in Apleby Church windows / a chev[ron] between 3 horseheads. What churches & family in Cumberland. Noe.[201]

Memorandum at Mr Knights
A Visitation in the 4^0 of Cumberland wherein are no pedigrees, but the Armes of most familyes in Westm'land & Cumberland; anno et authore nil certo,[202] but about the time of Q. Eliz. As I guess. I should see it.
{Machell}
Machells Armes of Westm'land are there. Sable 3 greyhounds courant in pale, Argent collard Or.
I have consulted at Mr Knights, this:
Visit[ation] of Northumberland per Richard St George, Norroy 1615.
Visit[ation of] Durham, eodem anno.

[194] The rest of this margin comment is obscured by the binding.
[195] MS: image of a 'label'. The label can appear as a cadency mark, denoting the eldest son during the lifetime of his father, but might also be used as a permanent distinction: See Henry Gough, *A Glossary of Terms used in British Heraldry* (Oxford, 1847), 98-99.
[196] 'But I make no judgment.'
[197] Machell is possibly referring to William Dugdale's *Visitation of Lancashire* (1664-65), though there were others: William Flower in 1567 [see F.R. Raines (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancaster made in the year 1567 by William Flower Esq.*, *Norroy*, *King of Arms* (Chetham Soc., Manchester, 1870)]; Richard St. George in 1613 [see F.R. Raines (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancaster, made in the year 1613 by Sir Richard Saint-George, College of Arms* (Chetham Soc., Manchester, 1871)]. But see his reference to an undated Visitation on VI.464 and VI.466, below.
[198] Pedigrees of Gressingham, Thornton, Harwood, Ripon, Burton and Cottingham (of Lancashire and Yorkshire) are examined on the rest of this page of the MS: not transcribed in this edition.
[199] 'Whether correctly?'
[200] This passage has been transcribed as seen. For its meaning see Part 1, Ch.1, Appleby, I.295.
[201] The answer is written in different ink.
[202] 'Year and author uncertain.'

Visit[ation of] Lancashire {anno et authore incerto} penes Knight.
But a very good *Visitation of Yorkshire* circa 1584, 1585, authore incerto.[203]

At the Heralds Office:
Visit[ation] of Westm'land, Mr Dugdale, Norroy, anno [blank][204]

Herald Painter
Att Mrs Smiths by St Dunstan's, a partiall *Visitation of Westm'land* circa in 5^0 Caroli,[205] & all her books.
Mrs Parkers, all her books. Ther a pedigree of Dakers out of which something extracted.
I want the seale & origine of the Burogh of Kendal. Dugdale, *Westm'land*, p.21.b; Appleby, p.22.
Seale a Appleby Schoole p.22.a. I want Wharton of Kirkbythores pedigree. Ibid.

{Burnished Bellingham}
Burnished. Bears ~~Gules~~ \ Argent? / 3 bend\i/etts ~~arg~~ \ Gules / on a canton of the second a lyon rampant of the 1^{l}: è Bellingham ped[igree].

{Salkeld}
Salkeld bears Vert 4 fretts \ of 4 / Or: è ped. Bellingham (forsan è Dugdalle)

{London}
Memorandum: to se when Richard de Veteripont lived refer to the 2^{nd} descent in Bellingham pedigree & send it to the Heralds: Noe such man.[206]

[VI.472][207]

{August 1675. Letters in order to the antiquities of Westmorland}

These: for Mr Thomas Machell att Queens Colledge in Oxford.[208]
{Sorry I saw you not again. Enquire the next […].[209] Tell Campion negat Liter}[210]

[VI.471]

London August the 30^{th}, 1675
Sir
I have had some extraordinary business that hindr'd me in the serch of those Coates you desired of me, otherwise I had given you an account of them ere this. I can only finde three of them, which I have sent you. Mr Threlkeld tould me you desired me to send you the letter of attorney made me by Mr Lowther and you would take care to recover my money. I have sent him a letter per this post with an order to pay it into your hands, and take your receipts for his discharge, which is as well as if I had sent the letter. I would intreat your kindness in it and you will infinitely oblige me to serve you in my own way or otherwise, which with my humble service is all att present.
From your humble servant
Giles Campion

---

[203] See Joseph Foster (ed.), *The Visitation of Yorkshire, made in the years 1584/5 by Robert Glover, 1544-1588* (London, 1875). Glover was Somerset Herald of Arms and father-in-law of William Flower, see N. Ramsay, 'Glover, Robert, herald'. *ODNB*.
[204] See Joseph Foster (ed.), *Pedigrees recorded at the heralds' visitations of the counties of Cumberland and Westmorland: made by Richard St. George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615, and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891).
[205] A numeral in front of the numeral '5' is indistinct.
[206] Added later in different ink.
[207] Reverse of a letter on VI.481. A seal is attached.
[208] Not in Machell's hand.
[209] This word appears to end 'ster'; the first letters might be 'ma' but the word, 'master', is unconvincing here.
[210] The margin comments are in Machell's hand. The Latin might be 'negat litera[m]': literally, 'He says not the letter', which could possibly mean, 'He says, forget the letter' [?] but the sense is not clear

[Machell's Notes: VI.471]
Answered to all but the Mon. Sept. 8 1675, and a farther quere for Sedalls armes?

[VI.471][211]



Figure 3.4.14. 'Drawings of Backhouse, Windsor and Theodall (alt. Theoball) Coates of Arms', in a letter to Machell from Giles Campion. VI.471.

[VI.465]

Visitation \ of / Northumberland, Durham, Northumberland, Cambridge, Suffolk, Essex. Lincoln, Bedfordshire. Penes Dr Knight Dom Regis Chirurgion juxta Nov. Excal.[212]

È *Visitation Northumberland*, se Richard St George, Norroy, 1615.

{Blenkinsop}
1. A pedigree of the Blenkinsops of Bellastar in Northumberland of 8 generations.[213] The armes Argent A bar betwixt 3 gards Sable (p.25).
Itt. Blenkinsop of Blen: a ped. of 5 generations, pag.37.

{Carnaby}
2. Carnaby of Hatton in Northumberland, a ped. of 11 generations.
From William to William etatis 22, 1615, with the coate & crist, p.12b.[214] Crist a Sarazens head Argent band[ed] Argent & Gules.
Carnaby of Horsly, q[uery] Halton, pagina 38. Ibid.

{Fetherston}
3. Fetherston of Fether[ston]haugh: 4 descents to Aubend 1615. p.36.
Swinborn p.8. 20th. 5 descents.

{è *Visitation Episcop*. Eodem anno}

Conyers of \ Sockborn / Laton.[215]
[1.] Azure a manch Or, charg'd in the tip with a mullet Gules.

[211] Letter to T.B. from Giles Campion, with a note in Machell's hand at the foot of the page. Giles Campion was a herald painter, see W.A.D. Englefield, *The History of the Painter-stainers Company of London* (London, 1924), 139.
[212] 'In the possession of the king's surgeon', see Part 3, Ch.2, Correspondence: 'Thomas Machell to Thomas Holford, Herald, Trinity Sunday 1676' [V.2C]. The same letter gives Knight's address as, 'lives behind the ~~Old~~ New Exchange Lower.' See also VI.480, below.
[213] Probably Bellister Castle, Northumberland.
[214] Here, 5cm of text is scored through.
[215] Sockborn and Layton (Durham).

2ly. Barry of 6 a canton Gules, charged with a cross-crosslet florry, Argent.
3. Or a \ cross-crosslet / Sable as the first, a ped. of 8 descents from Sir Christopher of Sockborn, who married Marian the daughter of Sir William Euger, who had Issue Sir William who married Ann daughter of Sir Ralph Bygors of Fetherington and had Issue Sir Christopher of Sockb., & 2, Cudbert of Laton who m[arried] the daughter of Thomas Laton of Sox-Hoe,[216] & had Issue John, who marryed Jane, the daughter of Jo. Ogglethropp, who had Issue Sir Ralph, living 1615, who marryed the daughter of Simon Maud of Wrindlesham in Com. Suff. Esq. & had Issue, Cudbert etatis 4, Mary & Ann.
The crest on a wreath, a Wing Gules erect.

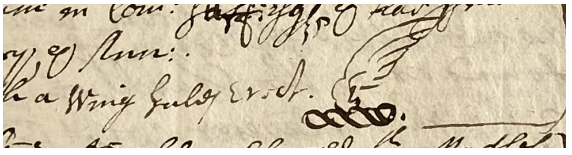


Figure 3.4.15. 'A Wing Gules erect'. VI.465.

{Hotton, Coate}
Hutton of Hutton John: Gules a fess Or, charg'd with a martlet between 3 coushons Argent, tasseled Or, charged with 3 flower de lies of the first. 5 descents. This is Hotton of Stretham in Duram Episcopate,[217] page 19.b.

{Fetherstonhaugh}
Fetherstonhaugh of Stanop in Episcopate Dunelme, 17 descents. The first \ of the name of / Rob. Fetherstonhaugh, 4^0 of Ed. 3rd [1330-1331] \ 3 / about […][218] by the name of Stanop. William de Monte is the 1t name in the pedigree vixit. Henry. Stephen. John \ is / the last marryed, which son of Ralph & Jane Apleyard, 17 of aige, 1613. Vid. p.22 & 23.

{Musgrave}
Azure a /\[219] inter 3 mul[lets]: arranged by the name of Hilliyeard, pro Edenall window.

{Tusdall of Kendal Bar}
Richard Tunstall had Issue Rob. of Kent Cragg in Kendall; marryed the daughter of Asque \ Aske / in Furness & had Anthony of Stockton in Episcopate Dun[elm].

{Comyn ad Machell de Crak.}
Comyn: Azure a cheveron Or, trimmd Sable betwixt 3 garbs Or, p.51. b.
Itter. Gules garbs Or. ~~It.~~ Gules 3 garbs within a duble tresure Or. Informate. Dr Knight.

{Wallis ad Machell}
Wallis in Scotland: ~~Gules~~ a fess ermine. Infor. Dr Knight.

[VI.466]

È Visitation Lancashire, penes Mr W. Knight

{Barlow}
Barlow, Bishop of Chichester, Azure on a /\[220] engraled betwene 3 cross crosslets Sable, a fess Sable.

---

[216] Saxhow.
[217] Here, there are 7½cm of scored-through text.
[218] A three-letter word here is indistinct.
[219] Chevron. The Hilliard (of Durham) coat of arms consists of azure, a chevron with 3 mullets (five-pointed stars), two above and one below the chevron. See John Burke and John Bernard Burke, *Encyclopædia of Heraldry: Or General Armory of England, Scotland, and Ireland* (London, 1844), HIL.
[220] Chevron.

Lib. Penes Mr Sheldon, 4^0 Φ.[221]
Barlow of Barlow: Sable an eagle displayed with 2 heads bearing in his claws expanst a trunk ragged, Argent. A peddigree of 8 descents to Sir Alixander: a good family, p.46.

{Dalton}
Dalton \ of Dalton after of Vispan,[222] / 11 descents, 2 descents \ being / before Ed. 3rd {?} p.124.

{Lancaster: of no distinction?}
Lancaster of Raijn-Hill in Com. Lanc.[223] beares 2 bars with a canton Gules, charged with a lyon passant Or; the crest a Lyon \ or Leopard / head eraysed. pag.80.

{Midleton}
Middleton of Besham & of Leyton, descend of 3rd sonn of Jeffrey Middleton of Westmorland by the daughter & Heire of John Crofts of Dalton.

È *Visitation York.* Cap. 1585

{Mountfort}
Mountforts Armes are Argent powdered with cross crosslets Gules {?} A lyon rampant Azure within a bordure Ermin; the Crist a talbots head Coupd Or. p.134. To give in Fra[n]ck Almoine for Liber Eleemo[sia].[224]

{Maliverer!}
{Maliverer in Yorkshire = Sable 3 grey hounds currant Argent studded Gules & herrelded Ore. Φ 4^0 penes Mr Sheldon.}
Maliverer of Allerton: Gules 3 grey hounds courant in pale Argent, coller Or, with 2 more quarterings & a ped. of 17 descents from William, first of that sirname after the Conquest; who had Isue: 1. Richard, founder of the church of Allerton ob. S.P. 3 foulk = 2. Ralphe Maleverer who had Isue = William, to whom Albert de Gresley gave lands in Flaxby[225] = who had Isue Henry Maliverer, to whom his brother Raphe (who outlived him & had a son called Rich. who dyed S.P.) gave 3 carucate terræ[226] in Clareton Anno 1204. He maryed Cicile, daughter of William Dunforth = & had Rich. who maryed Allice & had Henry, Cosin & heir of his great uncle Raphe, which Henry had Isue John &c. \ John had Isue: John, Lord of Quinxley Parva &c. 14. Ed. 3, 1339. / To Sir Richard Maliverer of Allerton, Knight, Anno 1584. The Crest is a grey hound A[rgent] standing upon a wreath & collard Or, as in the charge (p.215).

{Maliverer XI}
Maliverer of Woodersham, Sable 3 grey hounds courant in pale Argent collerd Or, with 2 quartering more; the Crest, a vine stem & leafe; with a ped. of XI descents from William Maliverer of Woodsham, who lived in 1584, having at that time onely 3 daughters, p.216 a. b.

---

[221] The symbols refer to the book 'in the possession of Mr Sheldon.'
[222] Bispham, Lancashire: see W.O. Roper, 'The Daltons of Thurnham', *Transactions of the Historic Society of Lancashire and Cheshire* (New Series 6, 1892), 97-124, 100.
[223] Rain-hill: See F.R. Raines (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancaster made in the year 1664-5 by Sir William Dugdale, Knight, Norroy, King of Arms, Part 2* (Chetham Soc., Manchester, 1871-72), 172.
[224] 'Frank almoin' (frankalmoign/e) was an English form of land tenure whereby an ecclesiastical body held land free of military service, such as knight service or other secular or religious service, sometimes in return for the religious service of saying prayers and masses for the soul of the grantor. Not only was secular service not due, but in the 12th and 13th centuries jurisdiction over land so held belonged to the ecclesiastical courts, so was immune from royal jurisdiction.' Machell's phrase translates as, 'to give in Frankalmoin as free alms.' See F. Pollock and F.M. Maitland, *The History of English Law Before the Time of Edward I* (Cambridge, 1895), 218-30.
[225] Here, there are 2cm of scored-through text.
[226] '3 carucates of land'.

[VI.473]

{Machell}
Rogerus Malus Catulus, Vicechamberlain to King Richard 1, drownd going to the Holy Land, with the Kings seale about his neck.[227] Out of a parch[ment] booke of Mr Sheldons.

{Nevil}
John Nevyll, Lord Latimer, Anno Henry 4^t, 8^0 28 October [1406]. Seald with a crosse florry upon a escutcheon pendant in a side helme, & the Crist a cypress tre supported by 2 lyons couchant: writ about, S. Johannes de Nevyl Dr de.[228]

{Engayne}
One Thomas Engayne, Dom. de Blatherwick. Die Domenica in Festo Sancti Dunstani,[229] Anno 33 Ed. 3. [1359-60]. Seald with a /\/\/\[230] between 10 cross crosslets, 4, 3, 2, & 1; 4 of which are about the fess and the rest underneath. Writ about sig[illo] &c. He was son of John Dengayne. Se in what county the Manner of Blatherwick {Non occurit in Adams *Villare*.}[231]
Out of a letter of Pope Boniface[232] to the nobles of England assembled in Parliament at Lincoln, anno 1300, where unto was sett their hands & seales asserting the supremacy of King Edward & his jurisdiction over the Scotts, in the time of the Brit.

{Lancaster}
? To count Lancaster seales with 3 lyons passant garda[n]t & a fild of 3 labells, each of them charged with 3 flore de luces. Henricus de Lancaster Henricus de Lancaster Dominus de Mane[rio][233] ad with 3 lyons &c., & over all a bend or phillett.

{Roos}
Willielmus de Roos Dominus de Hamlake, 3 water budgets.

{Bellocampo}
Count Warwick Sc. Guy ~~Beau~~ de Bellocampo with a man in armour on horseback, having a shield in one hand charged with a fess betwene 6 cross crosslets & traping of the said, and a sword in the other. On the reverse a shield hanging on a tre cheqye a cheveron Ermin supported by 2 lyons pasant up the sides of it. Johannes de Bellocampo, Dominus de Hacche nubile.[234]

---

[227] The reference is to Roger Machell, King Richard I's vice-chamberlain and keeper of the great seal of England, who drowned while sailing to the Holy Land, see Part 1, Ch.14, Kirkby Thore and Newbiggin, I.327A. An unclear margin note here probably refers to Roger Hoveden or Howden, author of *Chronica magistri Rogeri de Hoveden* ('Chronicles of Master Roger of Howden: the story of England before Henry II's reign continuing until 1201.')
[228] 'Dr…' is followed by two unclear letters.
[229] 'On Sunday, on the Feast of St Dunstan.' St Dunstan (909-988) is the patron saint of bell-ringers. He was successively Abbott of Glastonbury, Bishop of Worcester, Bishop of London and Archbishop of Canterbury. His concern with the architectural fabric of the Church allowed him to develop the design and forging of bells which increased the importance of their role. He was canonised and his Feast Day is 19 May. https://ringingforengland.co.uk/all-bells/influencers/
[230] A fess dancetté: See *CFH*, 'Engaine', 102.
[231] 'It does not occur in Adams *Villare*.' John Adams, *Index Villaris, or, an alphabetical table of all cities, market-towns, parishes, villages, private seats in England and Wales* (London, 1680, reprinted with additions, 1690). Blatherwick is in Northants.
[232] Pope Boniface VIII (b. c.1230, d. 11 October 1303).
[233] 'Lord of the Manor.'
[234] 'Johes de Bello Campo, Dominus de Hacche' (John de Beauchamp, Lord of Hatch) = John Beauchamp, 1st Baron Beauchamp of Somerset (1274-1336). He was one of the signatories of 'The Barons' Letter of 1301'. The letter (to which they set their seals) was written by seven English earls and 96 English barons to Pope Boniface VIII in the parliament at Lincoln after the pope had claimed Scotland as a fief of Rome and forbidden Edward I to molest the Scots. See Henry Gee and W.J. Hardy (eds), *Documents Illustrative of English Church History*

Robertus de Clifford Castelanus de Apleby[235]

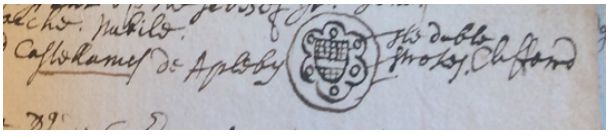


Figure 3.4.16. 'The duble strokes. Clifford'. VI.473.

{Multon}
Thomas de Multon Dominus de Eggremont, 3 barruletts. On horseback but no az[ure] scrip.[236]

{Latimer}
William le Latymer Dominus de Corby

{Eyncourt}
Edmundus de Eyncourt Dominus de Thurgerton

{Nevil}
Ranulphus de Nevyl Dominus de Rayby, a saltier on a shield.

[VI.474]

{Lancaster}
Johannes de Lancaster Dominus de Grisedale: 2 barrs on a canton; a lyon passant gardant.

{Bellocampo}
Walterus de Bellocampo Dominus de Aleceshire: a fess between 6 martletts: 3, 2 & 1.

{Engayne}
Johannes Engayne Dominus de Colum.

{Pecche, Corby}
Gilbertus Pecche Dominus de Corby.

{Hudleston}
Johannes de Hudleston Dominus de Aneys, frette of 8 & no circumscription.

{Leyburne}
Willielmus de Leyborne: 6 lyonsells rampant & writ about* S. WILLIELMI DE LEYBURNE.

{Graystock}
Johannes de Graystock Dominus de Morpath.
Radulphus fil Willielmi: on 8 barulets, 3 chaplett \ 3 ◊ 2 & 1. /
These 2 I believe are changed.

(London, 1896), 89-92. The letter was never sent. It survives in two copies originally held in the Exchequer. See Great Britain Record Commission, *Documents and Records Illustrating the History of Scotland … preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer Vol 1* (London 1837), cxxx-cxxxi. The letters are now held in TNA (E.26). The Latin word 'nubile' (married) might refer to John Beauchamp's marriage to Joan Chenuit before 1301, seen on his shield. See https://www.thepeerage.com/p1982.htm#i19820.

[235] 'Robert de Clifford, governor of the castle of Appleby.'

[236] Scrip: a pilgrim's wallet or pouch, see Gough, *Glossary of Terms used in British Heraldry*, 278.

{Percy}
Henricus de Percy, a lyon rampant with caud inflexed. On horseback armed &c. & the reverse the shield with the same charge.

{St John}
Johannes de Sancto Johane: on horseback &c. On a chief 2 mullets of 6 pointes pierced.

[VI.475]

Q. Taken I thinke out of the *Visitations* penes Dr Knight

{Laton}
Laton of West Laton: 1 a billet[237] Sable between cross crosslets 3 Or, a bend[238] Sable charged with 3 escallops[239] Or. Q. if this be not Laton of Westm'land. [240]

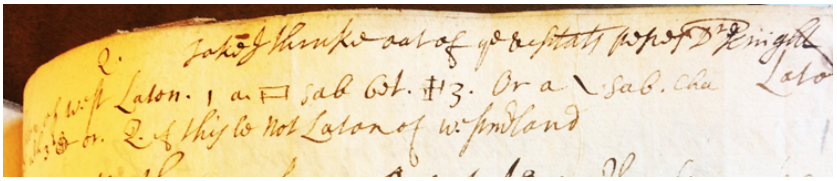


Figure 3.4.17. 'Laton' Arms. Machell's use of heraldry symbols as shorthand. VI.475.

{Persy}
Percy of Northumberland: Or a lyon rampant Azure with a gen. of 8 generations from Henry, 2 earle of Northumberland, Slane 33[d]. Hen. 6. 1455 to [blank]. Algenoone Lord Percy natus 1602. *Visit[ation] York*.

{Stapleton}
Stapleton: Argent a lyon rampant Sable with 3 other quarterings and a ped. of 13 generations from Nichollas to Jane, daughter & heire of Brian Stapleton, maryed to Sir Will. Fairfax. Ex eadem Fam. Stapleton de Wighill.

{Q. C. Chap.}[241]
A mullet[242] 3 in chief, & a [blank] Sable. In a field Argent. The Arms of John Dyneley, Maior of York, see p.127, Mr K[nigh]t.

{Williamson}
Thomas Williamson of Scarborough, one of the Balives of the town, 1584. Bore Argent within a bordure ingrailed Azure. A cheveron ingrailed of the second, charged with 3 crescents Or, between 3 bifoyles slipped Sable. For the Crest: a fallow deer's head erased Azure, lyred Argent, on the neck whereof a sunn Or. He had 2 wives. One was the daughter of Sir Raphe Eure & sister of William Lord Eure or Evers. The other was Ann, daughter of Tristram Tesh of York: p.4 *Yorkshire*. Mr Knight.

---

[237] Here, Machell drew a rectangle.
[238] Here, Machell drew a diagonal line.
[239] Here, Machell's drawing (close to the binding) might be a shell (escallop).
[240] See *Figure 3.4.17.* A coat of arms for Layton of West Layton, Yorkshire, is given in *CFH* as Argent a fess between six cross crosslets Sable. A coat for Layton of Dalemain (when High Sheriff in 1628) is given as Sable on a bend Argent three escallops Gules. For other Layton coats see *CFH*, 201.
[241] A John Dyneley took a BA at Christ's College, Cambridge, in 1609 and was incorporated at Oxford (MA) in 1614: Oxford Alumni at Ancestry.com. One John Dyneley, draper, was Lord Mayor of York from 1577 to 1578: D.M. Palliser, *Tudor York* (Oxford, 1979), 248, 254.
[242] Machell drew a star (representing a mullet).

{Wharton but I take it rather to be Warton}
There are Whartons of Beverly in Yorkshire who bear Or, a cheveron Azure with a martlets between 2 pheons[243] of the first with a ped. of 5 gen. Pag.53: penes Mr Knight.
The Crest on a trunke of a tree erased proper a squirrel proper sitting hold a nutt Or in her forefeete.

{Bainbridge}
Bainbridge Will. in Nottingham a patten of the coate Argent a cheveron Sable charged 5 ermins between 3 halberds Sable. By Will. Flower.[244] The Crest an hound Or, smelling collerd Vert. *Visitation Northampton*. With others. Mr Knight.

{Blenkinsop}
Blenkinsop &c. Argent a bar between 3 garbes Sable with a ped. From Thom[as] temp. Henry 6. to William, of 12 years,[245] 1615. 7 generations. *Visitation Northumberland* by Richard St George, Norroy eadem anno. The same Armes with a ped. of 5 to Tho. Blenkinsop of Blenkinsop, p.37. Rob. B. of Barley the same, p.1.

[VI.476]

Foster of Esterstove in Northumberland, a cheveron between 3 bugles. Coat quartered. A ped. of 6 from Thom. to Thom. aetat 11. 1615: p.18.

Merley, Baron of Morpeth, boar Barry Azure & Gules within a bordure Azure an Orle[246] of martletts Or. He seems to have taken the name of Morpeth from living there, for there is a monument at New Castle in these words: Here lyeth the body of Richard Mortpeth Merchant and Mary his wife, and their children, Christopher, who departed this life the 7. of Apr. 1591[…][247] The Coat is as afore, impaleing a fess between 3 hedgehogs passants.

{Grindall}
Parted per cross Or & Azure. A cross \ counter chang'd / Ermin & Or between 4 hawkes counterchaing'd of the field, collerd Argent. *Visitation* in 4^0 *North. Cumb. & West*. penes Mr Knight, p.9.

{Strickland}
Strickland & his wife Nevil in Com. Cumberland. Thus, parted per pale,
1. Argent a /\/\/\ fess[248] betweene nyne billets[249] Sable.
2. Sable 3 escallops Argent, som for[m][250] of the Dakers &c.; 3 as 2; 4 as 1. The second, Gules a X Argent, on which in fess a mullet Sable, pag.8. *Visitation* in 4^0 *Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmorland*. Strickland now beares the second coate.[251]

{Swinburne}
In Cumberland. Gules 3 bores head ~~Gules~~ \ ~~Argent~~ / betwene 8 cross crosslets Argent, 3.3 & 2. Second: Or a X ingrailed Sable charged in fess with an annulet Or. 4^0 *Visitation.*

---

[243] 'Pheon': the head of a dart, barbed, usually facing downward. See Gough, *Glossary of Terms used in British Heraldry*, 245.
[244] William Flower, Herald. Norroy, King of Arms. See J. Day, 'Flower, William (1497/8-1588), herald. *ODNB*.
[245] Aged 12 years.
[246] 'Orle': a narrow bordure following the outline of a shield but not extending to its edge; A number of small charges (usually eight) arranged around the shield so as to form an orle. *OED*.
[247] The word following this one appears to be 'Bob'.
[248] Fess dancetté, see Engayne, above.
[249] Here, Machell drew a rectangle.
[250] The word is obscured by the binding.
[251] As in *CFH*: 'Sable three escallops Argent', see 329.

{York Cit[y]}
Argent on a cross Gules 6 lyons passant Or.[252]

{Riddal}
Query whether Ridall in Westmorland so writ, & whether a place of that name in N\orth/umberland. Argent a fess betwene 3 garbes Azure, with 4 quarter[in]gs. And a ped. of 12 generations from Duke Utirius de Riddell (3 gen. above Ed. the 2.) to [Blank] William Riddel, son & heir of Thomas of Gatside & Newcastle ætat18. 1615. *Visitation of Episc. Dun*. per Henry St George, Norroy, penes Mr Knight.

{Ewbanke of Durham}
Sable 3 cheverons braised[253] in boss Or, on a chief of the 2nd ~~first~~ 3, O of the 1t. The Crist in a crownet Gules a dragon head Or, with a ped. of 4 or 5 gen. 1t James = Lord [of the] man[or]. 2. William = Tibbels 3. Harry \ Prebend / = Sampson. Toby = Grey. Ibid. pg. 27.

[VI.477]

Notes out of (Mr Knights) *Visit[ation] of Yorkshire*, 1585.
By Sir Will. Segar Garter Principal[254] King of Arms[255]

{Burdet}
Robert Baliol alijs Burdet mary'd Margaret the Daughter of Robert Denby ~~alijs Holland~~ by Margaret Daughter and Heir of Robert Holland, son of Adam.
His Arms were Argent 3 pallets Sable. Overall a Bend Gules charged with 3 martlets of the field. A Pedigree of 15 descents.

{Clapham}
Clapham of Clapham in Yorkshire. Quarterly of 6: 1 Argent, on a Bend Azure. 6 Floredeluces Or. 2, 2 &. 2. The second ~~Sab~~ Argent, on a Bend Sable, 3 coverd cupps of the first. By the name of Lound.
The Third Gules on a castle Or, a pigion Argent. By the name of Sutton.
The fourth Gules upon an Esscallop a cock Or. By the name of Otterborne.
The 5 Argent \ Sable/ Three Greyhoundes Courant Sable \ Argent / collared Or. Brisco? \ Mauleverer – I. I. W.[256]/
The 6th Argent. A Crosse between 3 womens heads Sable. See pag. 138. York,[257] where a pedigree of 21 Generations from Adam to Christopher who maryed the daughter of John Lauden of London & had Isu Christopher, ?Shefield,[258] & Mary. The Crist a Lyon Rampant Sable caud Gules? Holding a sword erect Blade Argent hilt Or.

{Dodsworth}
John Dod\ de /sworth of Thoreton-Watlons. Argent a Chev[ron] between 3 Hunters hornes Sable. A pedigree of 5 descents to John the son of John aetat 17, 1585. But Note that Waight of Hantshire & Sutton of Cheshire pretend to the same Coate; query Ideo, by what claim John the father of John ~~claimeth~~ challengeth the same. Allso he said his Ancestors are descended of a Daughter of the Thoresbyes & yet they have divided lands with the Thoresbyes which now are, and by that means

[252] There are 5 lions on the York coat of arms today.
[253] Braced: See Gough, *Glossary of Terms used in British Heraldry*, 64.
[254] MS: 'Principle'.
[255] 'After becoming Garter King of Arms in 1607, William Segar (c.1554-1633) was granted arms in 1612 and knighted in 1616. Segar was not only a herald, but also 'a painter of significance', who specialised in portraits.' A. Adolph, 'Segar, Sir William, herald'. *ODNB*.
[256] The letter 'W' is indistinct.
[257] MS: 'Yerk'.
[258] Machell frequently placed a question mark before the question.

came to be, the possession of Thoreton Watlons as part of their said mothers Inheritance. But as others hold, their right Arms are notwithstanding Argent […][259] Lyons rampant Sable. Ideo Quaere p.54.[260]

{Eglsfield}
William Eglesfield of Mapleton in Holderness 1584 bare Or 3 Eaglets volant Gules. He was son of Tho. Son of John Eglesfield of Sutton on Derwent. Thomas Eglefield of Barton Willows. William Eglesfield of Charmansay.
Eglesfield quartered with Bosvil, is \ Gules / a chevron Argent charged with 3 cross crosslets Sable, between 3 Eaglets &c. Or.

[VI.478]

{Lawson}
Lawson. A Coat Quarterly. 1 Argent, a cheveron between 3 martlets Sable. A pedigree of 6 descents from William of Cramlington in Northumberland. James of Newcastle. Edmond of Newcastle. Raph of Burgh in Richmondshire Esq. 1585. Whose Armes they are. He had Isue.
1. Roger, son & heir aetat 14. Edmund Anthony Marmaduke Allice Margaret Jane.
And Roger had: 1. Ralphe Sp. 2. Henry married to Ann daughter of Rob. Hodgeson of Hobborne, Edmond, Thomas John George Roger. Dorothy Elizabeth. Mary. Mary Catherine Anne. Query whether Sir Wilfride hence.

{Laton}
Laton of West Laton in Yorkshire a pedigree of 14 Generations from Thomas Layton who lived 7^0 Ed. 3 (1333-34) to Allaine son of John who lived 1613. The Coat is Quarterly. 1. Argent a fess between 6 cross crosslets Sable. 2. Or a Bend Sable chargd with 3 escallops of the field &c. which I thinke is born by Laton of Cumberland{?}

{Labourne}
Labourne of Cousewick. Azure 6 Lyons Argent, 3. 2. &c. 2 Argent a Bend Sable charged with 3 Annuletts of the field. In sinister point ~~a Trifoche slipped of the second. With a pedigree of 5 descents. To James who maryed Briget Daughter of Raphe Bulmer~~. Query if Cousewick be not in Westm'land.

{Leigh}
Argent 2 Bars Azure, overall a Bend Counter compone Or & Gules. With a pedigree of 13 descents from John Leigh of Allington & Boothes in Cheshire. Q. If any thing to Leigh of Cumberland.

{Lampleugh}
Quarterly. 1[t.] Or a Cross florry Sable. 2. Parted per fess Gules & Argent. 6 pigions countercharg'd. 3. Argent, 2 Bars & on a chief of Gules a Cinquefoyle Or. 5 generations of the Lampleughs of Cumberland. John with Eglesfield of Lamborough, Sir Thomas with a coheire of Fenwick, Knight. John with Marg.[261] Pennington; 2. Sir John ma. 1. Curwen (2 Foster) John 1584.

{Malvierer of Allerton}
17 Generations from Will., Ralph, Will., Henry of Clareton 1204, Richard, Henry, John, John 14 Ed. 3 1339. Sir Havilath John. Sir John of Allerton 1400.
{N. Anthony 3 son of John (son of Sir Havilath) had 1. George.}
{N. Gilbert 2 son of Sir Thomas son of Sir John had Sir Richard of Allerton 1584. Gules 3 grey[hounds] Argent collard Or.}[262]
{Sir Havilath. John. Sir John. Sir Thomas. Sir Richard. Sir Thomas – to an daughter & sole heir.}

[259] A blot has covered this numeral; it is possibly '3'.
[260] 'Therefore, enquire p.54.'
[261] Or Mary.
[262] As these margin comments were originally crammed into a small space, they are difficult to decipher.

[VI.479]

{Williamson}

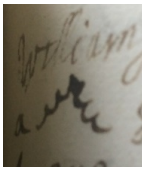


Figure 3.4.18. Shorthand heraldry symbol. VI.479.

Williamson of St Ellen, Aukland, in Episcop. Argent, a [symbol above] Azure charged with 3 crescents Or betwene 3 trifoyles slipp'd Sable & in chiefe a martlet. With a pedigree of 4 descents from Thom. to Will. ætat 10. 1615. *Visitation Episc*. p.29.

{Hutton}
Timothy Hutton \ of Harsk / Gules a fess Or charged with a floredeluce Sable between 3 cushion Ermin. Garlend of lawrel Vert. {Se Hutton of Lancaster & Durham. But the crist is a naked man proper having a branch in his right hand, his left upon his side, and a white scarfe about his loynes, p.37.}

{Preston}
Anthony Preston of Estmorton Argent 2 Barrs Gules; on a canton of the 2nd a cinquefoyle Or, p.58.

{Midleton}

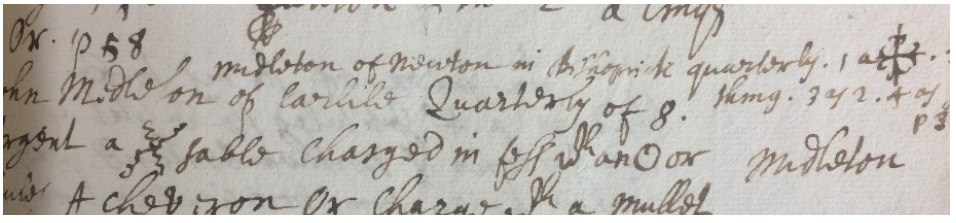


Figure 3.4.19. 'Midleton' Arms: symbols. VI.479.

John Midleton \ of Newton in Bishoprick quarterly 1; 2 nothing; 3 as 2; 4 as 1: p.38. /
John Midleton of Carlisle quarterly of 8.
1. Argent a [see the symbol in figure above] Sable charged in fess with an O Or.

{Headlam}
2. Gules a cheveron Or charged with a mullet upon an O betwen 3 lambs heads Argent. By the name of Headlam.

{Crackenthorpe}
3. Or. A cheveron (chargd with a crescent) betwene 3 mullets Azure. Crackenthorp.

{Lancaster}
4. Argent 2 barrs Gules on a canton of the second a lyon passant Or. Lancaster.

{Martindal}
5. Barry of 6 Argent & Gules. A bend Azure. Martindal.

{Newton}
6. Argent a cheveron Azure, charged with 3 garbes Or. Newton.

{Langrigge Cumb Shire}
7. Argent 6 billets[263] Sable 3. 2 & 1. Langrigge.

{Alanby}
8. Argent within a Bordure Ingrailed a /\ Azure by the name Alanby: p.60.
Crist upon a trunke barwise a monky proper chained Or with an annulet upon his shoulder.

{Pickering}
It seems the family is not quite extinct but rather transplanted into Northamptonshire, for Thomas Pickering of Barrow Hall in Kendal Co. West[morland] Esq. had Romber of Isham in Com. Northampton = Margaret, daughter of John Lustwick, eodem Com.[264] & had Isue Thomas Pickering of Isham, Gent. = Margaret, daughter of Anthony Sharkburgh of Horodon Parva in Com. Northampton: Anthony son & heir; Mary; Alice.
Arms: 1. Ermin a lyon rampant crowned; 2. Sable a X Argent on a chiefe of the 2nd 3 naggs faces Azure: p.44. Nor[thampton].

[VI.480]

{Pickering}
William Pickering of Gretton \ Com. Northampton / bore the same armes in the 1t quarter = Agnes de of: 1. Richard, Thomas 2, Henry 3, Alice: maryed George Quinton of Bed[ford] in Com. Bed., Catherine = Fowke in Com. Bed.
Richard de Gretton Gen. son & heir = Ann, daughter of Thomas Leyton of Leyton in Com. Rutland Esq. & had Isue: 1. John, eldest; William 2; Gilbert 3; Lawrence 4; Awder[265] daughter; Margery daughter: both unmaryed p.58.

Bellingham Thomas in Episcop.[266] Or a bugle Sable, lin'd Gules.

N.B. An Index of the Arms to be had in a 4^0, Intituled, *The Visitation Cumberland & Northumberland*, penes John Knight, Arm[iger] principalem chyrurgion[267] Regis Caroli Secund. in [Blank] near the New Exchange, London.

	Page		
Aske	2	Bellingham	8
Aske	2	Blenkow	9
Aglionby	2	Braham	11
Allouson	7	Browham	11
Allanby	20	Bellingham	12
Allanby	20	Blindrakes	12
Arfour pro Orpheur	20	Bellingham	1
		Berhead	12
Busheby	2		
Birkbeck	2	Curwen	1
Bannes	4	Clifford	1
Burden	4	Carleton	2
Barwis	8	Charas	3
Brisco	8	Corodell	4

[263] Here, Machell drew a rectangle.
[264] 'Of the same county.'
[265] 'Another'.
[266] Durham.
[267] Surgeon.

Clyborn	4
Cholmley	8
Crackenthorp	10
Dikes	2
Dalston	3
Ducket	3
Denton	3
Denton	4
Ducket	7
Daker	9
Duckett	12
Ellis	5
Fallowfield	7
Farrington	8
Gornton	7
Grindall	9
Hutton	2
Hoton	11
Harrington	5
Highmor	6
Hudleston	6
Jackson	7
Ireton	12

Kirkby	6
Lawson	1
Layton	6
Lucy	8
Leigh	8
Lancaster	9
Lancaster	9
Lowther	9
Lough	10
Lampleugh	10
Lampleugh	11
Midleton	3
Moresby	5
Machel	6
Musgrave	1
Nevil	8
Osmotherly	7
Peroy	1
Parr	1
Porter	3
Penruddock	
Pennington	5
Preston	6
Patterricson	
Patterrickson	7

[VI.481][268]

Richmond	2
Rigg	3
Ribton	5
Scroope	1
Salkeld	4
Salkeld	5
Sandford	6
Swinborn	8
Strickland	8
Sands	8
Swinborne	10
Senhouse	10
Skelton	11
Swinborn	11
Sandford	12

Sandford	12
Thwaites	7
Tunstall	8
Threlkeld	10
Vaux	9
Vaux	9
Whelpdall	2
Wyborne	2
Wharton	4
Warwick	4
Warcop	11
Warcop	11

[268] The MS pages following this one (VI.483-86) deal with 'Notes in order of the Antiquities of the Countie of Cumb'land': not transcribed.

Notes out of Mr Dugdall *Visitation of Westmorland* [269]

Godsave of Rigmaden in Kendal & Loansdale with Armes not proved with a ped. of 2 descents. Williams of Borwick in Com. Lanc.
Thomas Godsave of Rigmaden etat 42 mar. 20 Anno 1664 = Susanna daughter of Thomas Cartmele of Farleton into Westmorland.

In Apleby church yard:
Or a lyon rampant Azure Piercy; Gules a X Argent, Nevill; Azure powderd flordelice Or a lyon rampant of the 2, Beaumont, France & England; Machel (or Macherer) Readman; Musgrave, Azure, 6 annuletts Or. He wants the new tomb. {Entered.} [270]

Things to be had att any time in Dugdalls visitation, so that I need not trouble my selfe about them.[271]

[1.] Ad Ambleside: Ambleside at Windermere
Faucium præ gradis Lupi in immenso illo lacu Windermere vocitato suscepti figura p.4. Et nunc Sc. 5^0 Aprilis 1665, penes [Blank] Brathwayte de Ambleside Armigerum.[272]
[2.] A Prospect of Kendall & Castle, Prospect of Appleby & Castle, Prospect of Browham Castle.
[3.] Memorandum that it was agreed upon amongst the King of Armes &c. 30^{li} for granting a coate. 27^{s} is the fee for entering a ped: vid in Lord Marshalls booke. Ibid.
4. All in Apleby Castle & hospital armes
5. All arms at Grarig Hall. I have too in MS oblong.
6. Kirbythore Church and Hall, all the arms & antiquities there: I have them too.[273]
On the Alter these

FORTA
BALLI
N. M. S. S.
C. G. ALEZI
VS. FOR
NTINVS
N. O V…

Forta Valli i.e. Wallataum sive Gallatum. T.M.
Forsan forta balli (pro valli) numinibus sacrasancta C. Calezius Frontinus per tra[n]spos[itionem] Litera. T.M.[274]

7. Arms in Newbiggin Hall
8. Browham Castle Arms & Inscription on \ 3 / alters.

[269] Many of the notes on this page have been scored through, suggesting that Machell no longer needed them.
[270] This paragraph has been placed within a box and scored through lightly with a cross. 'Entered' is in different ink, suggesting that Machell added the information missing from Dugdale's *Visitatio*n.
[271] A heading in bold script.
[272] 'The shape of the jaws of a wolf, picked up from underfoot in that great lake they are wont to call Windermere. p.4. And now, that is 5th April 1665, in the possession of [Blank] Brathwayte of Ambleside, Knight. The length of the existing teeth without the jaws [is] the thickness of three thumbs.'
[273] The following inscription is lightly scored through with a cross.
[274] 'Forta Valli i.e. Wallataum or Gallatum. T.M. Perhaps Forta balli (instead of valli). Sacred to the spirits. Gaius Calezius Frontinus by transposition of a letter.' See part 3. Ch.3. Roman Antiquities, VI.186C, VI.229, VI.231. The name 'Calezius' is a solitary example of the use of Vulgar Latin in Roman Britain: the name is actually 'Calidius' (RIB 764, Kirkby Thore). See C.C. Smith, 'Vulgar Latin in Roman Britain: Epigraphic and other evidence', in Wolfgang Haase (ed.), *Sprache und Literatur (Sprachen und Schriften [Forts])* (Berlin and New York, 1983), 893-948, at 925.

The camp the [shape] oblong: broad about 150 yards. The Roman Way passeth through it there, being \ a square of / 150 yards on each side, as may yet be seen by that part thereof where the great trenches on its outside are to be seen on the South East side of the said castle: è Mr Dugd. *Visitation* 23 March 1664.
9. Lowther Church & Hall.
10. Kendall Church. Kendal Mount he takes to be a castle (ut opinor)
11. Gresmere Church
12. Rydall Hall
13. Willson of Underlays Arms prov'd; Branthwayt of Cartingill; Fisher.
Scaifes, Steales: pedigrees of 3 or 4 gen. with Armes not proved.
14. Wiber of Cliftons ped. & armes. There are 5 descents and a note entered of Will. Wiberge of Clifton, temp. Ed. 3. Had to wife Eleanor, daughter & h. of Gilber Engayne of Clifton in com Westmorland: vide Dugdall in *Cumberland*.
15. The Round Table & Mabrough Castle, which I have allso.

[VI.490]

<u>These I want</u>:[275]
Birbeck
Browham of Scalemldb
Curwen
Dalston of Acomb
Fisher Parvi est[276]
Halton of Barton
Lowther of Colby Leathes
Sandford of Askham
Saufe of Winton parvi
Steal of Kendall parvi
Wha[r]ton of Kirlbythore
Whelpedall collord Or.
Birbeck Bores head in Fess with sable 3 barulets Or, & in Chiefe mullets of the second quartering […][277] a fess /\/\/\[278] between 6 cross crosslets Or.
Ducket of Grarig […][279]

<u>È *Visitation Cumberland & Northumberland* (no Westm'land) penes Dr Knight \ made about the Time of H. 8 or Edw. 6. / A Booke of Armes onely.</u>

<u>Ad Kendall church; vid Bellingham pedigree notes</u>
Sir Robert Bellingham of Kendall who builded the Lady Quire in the same church & lyeth buryed there, dyed the 17 of July 1533. & had 2 wives. 1^{t} The Daughter of Sir Robert Aske. 2. Elizabeth Daughter of John Lord Clifford, after Lord (pro Earle} of […][280]
He beare parted per pale
1. Quarterly of 4.
1. Argent a Bugel Sable lin'd Gules.
2. Argent 3 Bendletts Gules. On a canton a Lyon rampant of the field
3. As the second
4. as the 1^{t}.

[275] The following names (apart from Fisher and Steal) are marked with an X.
[276] 'Of little importance.' 'Saufe' and 'Steal' have also been labelled in this way.
[277] Illegible word here.
[278] Fess dancetté.
[279] The rest of this passage is obscured by the binding apart from, 'Gules a Saltier Argent between 12 cross crosslets Or'.
[280] The word following 'of' is obscured by the binding.

2. Parted per pale.
1. Quarterly in this manner
    1. Azure ~~a fess of 4~~ \ fusils in fess / Argent. By the name of Aske quartering
    2. Azure. 4 baruletts Argent. By the name of [Blank]
    3. As the second.
    4. as the 1[t].

Query whether these be not the Armes of Aske? They are of Sir Robert Aske in the County of Cumberland.

2. Chequie Or & Azure a fess Gules. By the name of Clifford.

Entered in the relation of Bellingham pedigree.
{Richmont per fess Or & Gules 2 cout[281] crescent[282]}
{Sir William Lawson of Isell in Cumberland … Argent & Sable a /\ cout?}[283]
Sir Thomas Parr Knight, Master of the Wards & Controwler to King Henry 8, dyed 8[th] of November Anno [Blank] & is Buryed in the Black fryers. He bare Quarterly Impaleing Quarterly:
    1. Argent within a Bordure, 2 Barrs Azure & a ✡ in chiefe for distinction
    2. Azure, a chiefe & 3 cheveronells in Bass brased Or.
    3. Varre[284] Argent & Azure, a fess Gules.
    4. As the 1[t] impaleing quarterly 1. Azure, 3 Bucks trippant Or. 2. Gules a chevron; between 3 cross crosslets Or; in chief a Lyon passant of the second […][285]

[VI.490A]

    The Crest on a wreat[h] Argent & Sable, a Camells head coupd Gules with a Coronett Coller Or.[286]

Item
Quarterly, the 1[t] as before, the 2[nd] 6 pales Argent & Gules; on a chief a Lyon passant.
3. Argent 2 Barrs Gules on a canton Gules a cross-crosslet[287] Or.
4. Quarterly of 6 Azure & Or 3 Lyon Rampand in the first of the 2[nd] with a cressant in fess po[in]t.

The Crest
A ~~greyhounds~~ \ Camells / head errased Or, crown coller Argent, under which a cressant Sable.

John: He bare allso parted per pale, Argent & Sable, 3 grey[hounds] counter charged a camells head Or
{courant Argent. Alias parted per pail Argent & Sable, 3 grey [hounds] in a Border counterchargd.
The Creast, a greyhound (forsan a chamels head) couped with a coronet […][288] about his hed.
È shoppe apud Charing Cross London.}

[281] 'Countercharged'.
[282] Here, Machell drew a crescent.
[283] 'A chevron countercharged?'
[284] Vair: Parti-coloured fur, see Gough, *Glossary of Terms used in British Heraldry*, 316.
[285] One more margin comment here has been scored through thoroughly and few words can be deciphered. It begins: MS: 'This was in the Time of Sir. S. Musgrave; & when Ducket maryed Labourn. 6 Lyons', followed by illegible words and a symbol.
[286] MS: Here, there is a tiny sketch of a coronet.
[287] MS: Here, there is a sketch of a cross-crosslet.
[288] There follows one blotted, illegible word.

[VI.490B]

35. {a Dugdalli *Visitation* Temp. Car. 2: ni fallor memor.}[289]
Memoranda de pedigree of the Haltons de Burton a Temp. Ed. I. [1272-1307] sed anfract[us][290] to Ciprian 1665 (10 generations).
Dalston of Acorn Bank. 5 generations 1611 – Thomas son of Xtopher.
Ducket. 5 generations.
Hilton, 6. Henry 4., of Murton – tis there sett down that he marryed the daughter of Andre de Hetherton.
Nevinson, Ed. \ Esq. / son of Richard, son of Stephen. Argent a chevron charged with a ✡ between 3 Eaglets disp[layed] Azure with [blank][291]

[VI.491]

36. Brathwate: 7 generations but noe date save in the 3[d]: 34. Elizabeth [1591-92].
37. Midle \ton / of mid. a crescent for destinction. 7 generations from sir geofrey major general to king henry 8 in his expedition to Bulloine, to Edward: 1664.
38. Sandford de ask. 12 generations from Edmund, husband to Idon[ea], English Lord of Little Asseby, to William: 1664.
39. Fisher, 5 generations but not proved, from Henry to Ed. Henry was alderman of Kendal.
40. Willson not proved. 4 generations from Thomas of Staveley: 1624, to Edward: 1664.
41. Leyborne bears Azure 6 lyonns rampant Argent.
42. Phillipson, Gules a chev. Between 3 bores head couped Ermin. 7 Generations from Rowland to Rob.
43. Curwin of Helsington, a 2[nd] house.
44. Hilton of Burton. Johannes 17. Edward I. [1288-89] et agneti uxor[i] ejus Robertus Bacon & Magg[er]eta uxor ejus concesserunt totum terram de dom[inico] eorum in territor[io] de Hel[t]un sans dat. (Temp. Ed. 1.)[292]
45. Sir Richard Fleming, son of Sir John, 35. Henry 3. [1250-51] 2 generations above goes in the name of Furness; a ped[igree] of 21 descents.
46. Bird, 18 descents. 8 of the place. Henry Bird of Browham 16. Henry 6. [1437-38].
47.

- Apleby Church
- Apleby Castle } q. whether the mon[uments] be drawne: I thinke not
- Hospitall } Arms & inscriptions in Mr Dugd.
- Kirkbythore

[VI.492]

- Brougham Castle }
- Lowther Hall }
- Kendall Church } All *Visitation* Dugdall
- Gresmere Church } *Visitation* anno supradicta
- Rydall Hall }
- A wolfe's \ pike's / jaw at Windermer
- A prospect of Kendal
- A map of Apleby
- A prospect of Brougham Castle for Ogleby[293]

[289] 'Unless my memory is mistaken.'
[290] 'Anfractus': a winding or sinuous course. *OED*.
[291] Nevinson Crest: a Talbot proper collared and with chain reflexed over the back Or. See *CFH*, 242.
[292] 'To him and to Agnes his wife, Robert Bacon and his wife Magg[er]eta granted the whole extent of their domain in the territory of Hel[t]un.'
[293] John Ogilby (1600-1676), cartographer, known for publishing the first road-atlas of Britain. Ogilby secured the title of 'His Majesty's Cosmographer' in 1671. He drew upon the support of the king and other patrons in the production and publication of *Britannia … an illustration of the kingdom of England and dominion of*

48. The Machells of Crakenthorp.
It is generally owned for the ancientest Esquires in the north of England, for soe they have bin writt ever since, that title became a terme of honour without the intermixture of \ any / one knight. Howbeit, through their meritts & imployment in the wars tem[p] Henry 8[t], there were 3 att once of this family: viz. Richard, Guy & Hugh. The family has continued here ever since the Conquest, as appears by their evidences in which they are called Machaels or Mali Catuli ab asperitate naturae et ferocitate animi.[294] Their ancient Arms was a tyger \ or wolfe Leapeing on its pray / rampant & crowned. Howbeit in after times they bore the Ensigne above specified upon some considerable occasion or other: viz. Sable 3 greyhounds courant Argent collererd Or; given, as is thought, in Holy War. {Something like this ♔ which resembles a crowne is upon the head of the tyger.}

[III.67]

I could have as easily have inserted into this pedegre a number of Knights as som others have don, the better to establish our title clame to the Title of an Esquire; but I would not doe it: It is sufficient that the Chiefe of our family have bin writ & called & accounted Esquires since (Richard [blank]) it first became a Title of Dignity; & hav bin so far removed \ draned / & sifted from the dreggs of the vulgar & common sortes to have continued Lords of a Manner & Magistrates & amongst the chiefe Gentry of this County six hundred \ years: / which if the title be due on that score is Em[i]nence enough to raise them above the ordinary pitch & level of Gentry.{& the title of Esquire now grown so common that is not worth clame; all the whol nation if they were good clothes, are Squires & Madams.}

[VI.492]

49. {Bird of Browham}
In Browham are 2 ancient demasnes at the castle and one at the Hall. Noe more occur in ancient Rolls & cat[alogues]. Howbeit later \ time have bin / ~~are~~ large inclosents made by Mr James Bird, descended of \ an / ancient yeomanry; for to pass by with it inauthentical.[295] I mean an[296] old pedegree of the Birds, mentioning neither time nor ~~towne~~ \ com[297] / no, nor the wherein they lived (an easy method for any family to descend himselfe directly & linealy from Adam). The first was Henry, mention'd in evidences 17. Henry 6. [1438-39]. From this pedigree may be allowed of, Henry Bird = maryed 17. Henry 6. & had isue.[298]

[VI.493][299]

An Account out of Mr Dugdall's *Visitation of Westmorland* such as were disclamed att Apleby Sommersise, 1666.[300]

?! Robert Barton of Ormhed.
Thom. Birbeck of Coatflat & T.B. of Oreton.
?! Christopher Crakenthorp of Little Strickland \ good family. /
Christopher Dobson of Brampton.
Will. Dobson of Kirkby Stephan \ Kirkby thore. /
John Routledge of Morrland.
?! Thomas Sandford of Askham \ good family. /
Christopher Teasdall of Br\a/mpton & Thornthwayt.
Robert Teasdale of Kirkbythure.
James Webster of Thrymby.

Wales: by a geographical and historical description of the principal roads thereof (1675), the work for which he became best known. C. Withers, 'Ogilby, John, publisher and geographer'. *ODNB*.
[294] 'From their roughness of character and the ferocity of their spirit.'
[295] Seven words have been crossed through here.
[296] MS: 'and'.
[297] 'County'.
[298] For more criticism of Bird see Part 1. Ch.7, Brougham.
[299] Many words on this page are obscured by the binding; some have been scored through. They have been omitted from this edition.
[300] MS: 'An Account ~~of what is to be~~ out of Mr Dugdall's *Visitation of Westmorland* ~~in order to the Antiquities of~~ such as were disclamed att Apleby Sommersise, 1666.'

Those which are marked thus (!) are gentlemen of good familyes & ought not to have bin disclam'd except they would have disclam'd themselves. See my notes before. Kirkbythore? The rest except Birbeck, who perhaps may have som clame by allyance to Hornby, are no gentlemen.

{Kendal Lonsdal Wards}

?! Leonard Airay of Kentmere
John Archer of Oxholme.
William Birket of Troutbeck.
Roger Bradley. } of Underbarrow & Bradley Field
Randall Bateman. }
Oliver Crosfield of Holme.
Christopher Dawson of Langdale.
George Foxcroft of Holmehouse & G Lamprick vide.
Gerrard Fetherston of Crosthwayte & Lyth.
William Garnett.
William Garnett of Barbon & Mansergh.
?! William Gilpin of Kentmere.
Robert Heblethwayte of Killington.
George Lamprick of Holmehouse & G. Foxcroft vid.
?! George Laburn of Skelsmere.
Miles Man of Kirkby Loansdall.
?! Nathaniel Nicholson of Kentmere.

[VI.494]

George Overend of Kirkby.
William Southerway of Langdale vid. Christopher Dawson.
?! Francis Thorburrow of Whitwell.
Allane Willson of Handholme.
N.B. Tis very strange he should disclame som of these which I have marked thus (?!) which notes of interogation & admiration; for they are of the ancient gentrye of the north; but the rest are such as never did or could pretend to it. The reason I suppose of disclameing them was their non-appearance to paying their foes. Quære: an causa sufficiens? puto quod non.[301]

The faults that are in his Visitation

1. Locall. He has \ miscalled many places in his pedegrees & / placed a knowne part of Westm'land, Sc. that place where the Round Table is, in Cumberland. Item: in his disclameing of Dobson: Kirkby Stephan for Kirkbythore.

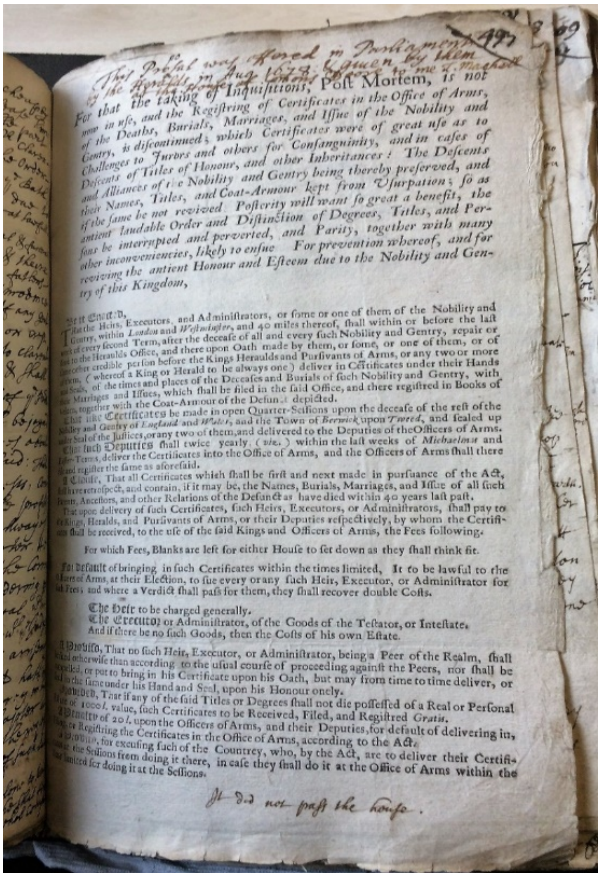
2. Personall. He has entered some for severall generations Squires who were never gentlemen (as the Nevinsons), & entered others Gentlemen only who were most ancient Squires – as the Machells of Crakenthorpe. He has allso disclamed severall ancient families, as above, & allowd of some upstarts entering their pedegrees amongst the Gentery, wherras they had noe Armes. And Birds pedigree is to be enquired into.

3. Armoriall. The Birbecks, whose fess is counter compone Azure & Or, he has made chequie Sable & Or. The match of Machell & Thornburrow in Apleby Church and that drawne the greyhounds there & in his pedigree both alike: Sc. without collers. {There are 2 strokes of orange colour about the neck of each dog for collers.} Item: Lowthers charge: \ Gules for / Sable.
{4. Nominal, which may be seen in my pedegrees (marked) thus: ?!}
In his Visitation of Kendal Church, he has writt \ Sir / Roger insteed of Sir Robert who builded the chaple (se *Visitation* M4^{0} penes Mr Knight; & \ se / the pedigree of the Bellinghames for Sir Roger,

[301] 'Check: whether sufficient reason? I think not.'

penes Mr Holford; et alteram penes Vidua' Smyth).[302] Item: in the ticking of Armes, 4rd in Allanes Coate, there he has marked Sandfords bores heads & lyons rampant Or insteed of Argent, which is a common mistake with him or his scribe.[303]

[VI.499]



That Poſal was Moved in Parliament 1678 by them ... Heraldes ... Machell

For that the taking of Inquiſitions, Poſt Mortem, is not now in uſe, and the Regiſtring of Certificates in the Office of Armes, of the Deaths, Burials, Marriages, and Iſſue of the Nobility and Gentry, is diſcontinued; which Certificates were of great uſe as to Challenges to Iurors and others for Conſanguinity, and in caſes of Deſcents of Titles of Honour, and other Inheritances: The Deſcents and Alliances of the Nobility and Gentry being thereby preſerved, and their Names, Titles, and Coat-Armour kept from Uſurpation; ſo as if the ſame be not revived Poſterity will want ſo great a benefit, the antient laudable Order and Diſtinction of Degrees, Titles, and Perſons be interrupted and perverted, and Parity, together with many other inconveniencies, likely to enſue For prevention whereof, and for reviving the antient Honour and Eſteem due to the Nobility and Gentry of this Kingdom,

Be it Enacted, That the Heirs, Executors, and Adminiſtrators, or ſome or one of them of the Nobility and Gentry, within *London* and *Weſtminſter*, and 40 miles thereof, ſhall within or before the laſt day of every ſecond Term, after the deceaſe of all and every ſuch Nobility and Gentry, repair or ſend to the Heraulds Office, and there upon Oath made by them, or ſome, or one of them, or of ſome other credible perſon before the Kings Heraulds and Purſivants of Arms, or any two or more of them, (whereof a King or Herald to be always one) deliver in Certificates under their Hands and Seals, of the times and places of the Deceaſes and Burials of ſuch Nobility and Gentry, with the Names, Marriages and Iſſues, which ſhall be filed in the ſaid Office, and there regiſtred in Books of Parchment, together with the Coat-Armour of the Defunct depicted.

And that Certificates be made in open Quarter-Seſſions upon the deceaſe of the reſt of the Nobility and Gentry of *England* and *Wales*, and the Town of *Berwick* upon *Tweed*, and ſealed up with the Seal of the Iuſtices, or any two of them, and delivered to the Deputies of the Officers of Armes. And ſuch Deputies ſhall twice yearly (viz.) within the laſt weeks of *Michaelmas* and *Eaſter*-Terms, deliver the Certificates into the Office of Arms, and the Officers of Arms ſhall there receive and regiſter the ſame as aforeſaid.

And be it Declared, That all Certificates which ſhall be firſt and next made in purſuance of the Act, ſhall have reſpect, and contain, if it may be, the Names, Burials, Marriages, and Iſſue of all ſuch Perſons, Anceſtors, and other Relations of the Defunct as have died within 40 years laſt paſt.

That upon delivery of ſuch Certificates, ſuch Heirs, Executors, or Adminiſtrators, ſhall pay to the Kings, Heralds, and Purſivants of Arms, or their Deputies reſpectively, by whom the Certificates ſhall be received, to the uſe of the ſaid Kings and Officers of Arms, the Fees following.

For which Fees, Blanks are left for either Houſe to ſet down as they ſhall think fit.

For Default of bringing in ſuch Certificates within the times limited, It to be lawful to the Officers of Arms, at their Election, to ſue every or any ſuch Heir, Executor, or Adminiſtrator for the ſaid Fees; and where a Verdict ſhall paſs for them, they ſhall recover double Coſts.

The Heir to be charged generally.
The Executor or Adminiſtrator, of the Goods of the Teſtator, or Inteſtate.
And if there be no ſuch Goods, then the Coſts of his own Eſtate.

Proviſo, That no ſuch Heir, Executor, or Adminiſtrator, being a Peer of the Realm, ſhall be otherwiſe then according to the uſual courſe of proceeding againſt the Peers, nor ſhall be compelled, or put to bring in his Certificate upon his Oath, but may from time to time deliver, or cauſe the ſame under his Hand and Seal, upon his Honour onely.

Provided, That if any of the ſaid Titles or Degrees ſhall not die poſſeſſed of a Real or Perſonal Eſtate of 1000 *l.* value, ſuch Certificates to be Received, Filed, and Regiſtred *Gratis*.

And for Default of 20 *l.* upon the Officers of Arms, and their Deputies, for default of delivering in, or Regiſtring the Certificates in the Office of Arms, according to the Act.

And for Remedy, for excuſing ſuch of the Countrey, who, by the Act, are to deliver their Certificates, the Seſſions from doing it there, in caſe they ſhall do it at the Office of Arms within the time limited for doing it at the Seſſions.

It did not paſs the houſe.

Figure 3.4.20. Published document beginning, 'For that the Taking of Inquisitions Post Mortem is not now in use…', pasted into VI.499 and annotated by Machell.

'For that the Taking of Inquisitions Post Mortem is not now in use […]'[304] This Pr\op/osal was offered in Parliament by the Heralds in 1678 and given by them at the House of Commons Doore to me. T. Machell. It did not pass the house.

[302] 'And another in the keeping of Widow Smyth.'

[303] MS.VI.495 and VI.496 consist of 'Notes on visitations, granting and proveing of Arms', taken from the Lord Marshall's papers (I.25) at the Heralds Office.' MS.VI.497 and VI.498 consist of notes on the powers of the Kings of Arms, Heralds and Knights of the Garter. They were entitled by Machell, 'È Lib MS Sic notat Φ penes Mr Sheldon.' These four pages have not been transcribed.

[304] See *Figure 3.4.20.* Richard Ferguson explained this passage in terms of the failings of the College of Arms. 'In 1678 Mr Machell visited the House of Commons; at the door he found the Heralds distributing the prints of a Bill they wished passed to arrest the decay into which the College of Arms was falling.' R.S. Ferguson, 'Notes on the Heraldic Visitations of Cumberland and Westmorland', *CWI*, 2 (1876), 20-27, at 25-27.

[VI.501]

Out of Mrs Smyths *Visitation of Lancashire*
Ut opinor.[305] She lives over against St Dunstans in Fleet Street[306]

{1. Morton, Crosby}
Morton & Crosby came to the Musgraves by the marriage of Allice daughter of Richard Earl of Cambridge by Maud the daughter of Thomas Lord Clifford \ p.3 col. 2 / idem occa. pag.14. \ Falce: they had it in Rosses time. / Cambridge had noe daughter, se[e] Cliffords matches.

{2. Musgrave}
Richard Musgrave tooke to wife Jane daughter and coheir of Sir William Stapleton of Westm'land (puto of Cumb'land) pag. 3. Westm'land. Musgr. 5 Gen.[307] Sir Edward Musgrave of Hartland, sive Hartley, in Westm'land.

{3.} Catterleyn once belongd to the Musgraves or some of there land there. P.6. \ That has bin T. Musgrave who tooke for his 1^{t} wife Mary the daughter of John Vaus, widow of Thomas Holland Earl of Huntington {see my pedigree. King. R.2.}

{4. Warcop}
The Warcops of Smardale were extinct in 2 coheires. The one married to Dalston of Dalston in Cumb'land; the other to Talbott Bowes, p.6. ubi (General: 5 generations).

{5. Layburne}
Layburne of Cunswick in Westm'land p.7. Col. 2.

{6.} Crooke in Westm'land belongd to Nicolsons. 6. Fig. 3.

{7. Thornburrow}
Thornburrow of Hampsfield pag. 8.

{8. Bilose}
Brilose of Hailston (general. 5 or 6 generations) pag. 1. Col. 1.

{9. Brathwate}
Brathwate of Ambleside (general of 7) pag. 1. Col. 2.
Hence Brathwate. 1. Of Burnished; 2. Of Warcop. Ibid.

{10. Dalston}
Dalston of Dalston (2 Generations) p.3. Col. 1.

{11. Musgrave}
Musgrave. General of 13 or 14) p.5, 6, 7. Hence Harcley & Ednall.

{12. Warcop}
Warcop of Smardale (5 Generations) p.7. Extinct in Heiresses.

{13. Carus}
Carus of Asthwate, & of Kendall, 8 generations p.7.
{Asthwat of Asthwate extinct in Ed. 3^{d} time. The place is now calld Dalgarth. Vid. P.7 Col. 2.

[305] 'As I think.'
[306] Widow of a Herald Painter, see VI.494.
[307] It is possible that there is a numeral (5.) before 'Gen.', but it is tiny and close to the binding.

{14. Lowther}
Lowther. Generations of 13 or 14, p.9.

{15. Duckett}
Generation of 5, p.11. Here is mention of Harrington of Wrexam.

{16. Midleton}
Midleton of Midleton 6 or 7 Generations, p.12.

{17. Bradley}
Bradley of Betham in the county of Westm'land, p.18 in the pedigree of [Leyburne.]

{18. Leyburne}
Leyburne of Cunswick in Westm'land bears Azure 6 Lyons rampant Argent. 3.2.1 (A pedigree of 6 descents) p.18. Their Crest is a falcon regardant Azure with wings Expansed, Beack'd & bell'd Or.

{19. Stanley}
Stanleys were a family att Culgaith in Cumb'land p.19. Forsan 9b.

{20. Briggs}
Briggs of Calmyre but 2 Generations taken notice of before extinct in 2 coheires; 1. to Sir Richard Hutton, 2. To Edward Stanley of ~~Cullgaith~~ \ Dalegarth[308] / in Cumb'land, p.19.

[VI.502]

{21. Benson}
Benson (2 descents) of Hugil. Extinct in 2 Daughters. 1. Mabel married to John Preston of Halcar in Lamlash. [2.] to John Rodes, one of the Justices of Common Pleas qui obijt […][309] Roodes[310] forsan de Chipping (forsan in Yorkshire).

{22. Bradley}
Bradley of Bethom descended by 2 descents from Bradley of Bradley in Lancashire. He was Lord of Both. Extinct (forsan) in 3 daughters, p.20 (Generation of 4).

{23. Levins}
Levins had Crooke once, which is in Paroch. Kandalia.[311] He had it by mar[riage] from Corkley. Vid. Fig. 6.

{24.} Todd of Sledall in Westm'land.

{25.} The Leven's of Westm'land are now in Northamptonshire, seated at Evenley[312] anno 1618 (great Generations) p.20.

{26. Phillipson}
Rowland Phillipson of Shelwall of Calgarth. Port Gules a chevron Ermin, between 3 Bores heads couped of the 2[d]. The Crest a plume of fethers Argent reflex'd Gules \ out of / Crown murall Or. Phillipson of Thwaderden hall Bears the same within a Border invecked & a Crescent Or for destinction.

[308] The alteration here is in a different hand.
[309] A word here is obscured by the binding.
[310] 'Who died at Roodes.'
[311] 'The parish of Kendal.'
[312] MS: 'Evemley'.

{27. Fothergill}
Fothergill of Ravendale bears Vert a Staggs head couped Or, within a Border inveck'd of the 2[d]. Sir William Fothergill of this place was Standard Bearer to King Henry 8 at the Battle of Sollon Mos[s] day.[313]

{28. Bellingham}
Bellingham of Burnesheved was Extinct in coheires whereof one was married to Thorneburrough, p.25.

{29. Thornburrow}
William Thorneburrow of Selshead in Westm'land descended from John Thornburrow of Hampsfell in the county of Lancashire. He from William Thornb. of Thornb. in the county of Yorke, the son of forsaid Will. Was Thornb. Of ~~Selshead~~ Hampsfell (a Gen. of 11 descents), p.25. They had a match with the Maleverers and beare a crescent for destinction. Se the coat & crest ibid.

{30. Burneshed}
Burneshed armes ibid in the last 14[t].

{31. Beck}
Beck of Holbreak by […][314] 29. Col. 2.

{32. Bellingham}
Bellingham of Hellsington in Westm'land, 29. Col.

{? Salkeld}
(Salkeld of Corby Castle Cumb'land Ibid). The ped. is from H. 2. – R. I. & well timed;[315] p.29 et supra. ob 25.2 pro Salkeld of Gowbarrow.

{33. Richmont}
De Highet. Gen. of 3.

{34. Stockdale}
Stockdal of Kirkby Loansdall (6 descents to Stockdale of Barbonne in Westm'land) p.31.

{35. Midleton}
Midleton of Kirkby Loansdall (1 descent) 32.

---

[313] Sollom Moss = Solway Moss. In 1542, following Henry VIII's attempt to persuade James V to abandon his pro-French and pro-Catholic policies, war broke out between England and Scotland. In October, the Duke of Norfolk led 20,000 men into Scotland, burning Roxburgh and Kelso. The next month King James retaliated by sending 17,000 troops into England to burn the countryside north of Carlisle. The local English commander, Lord Wharton, mustered 3,000 men to oppose them. The Scots saw the flags of the small English force on a hilltop above them. Fearing that what they saw represented a much larger army, they turned and retreated, the English cavalry attacking their rear. The Scots made a stand at a ford across the Esk, but many were taken prisoner. Some of those who escaped into the vast marsh known as Solway Moss might have drowned. See Historic England, 'Battle of Solway Moss 1542,'https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/list-entry/1000034?section=official-list-entry.

[314] The following two words in the MS are indistinct; the first appears to begin with '~~Cl~~'. The name 'Beck', does not appear in either Index 1. or 2. of F.R. Raines (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancashire 1613 by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms*. However, it does appear as part of the Machell pedigree: 'Hugh Machell of Crackenthorpe (died 1642) married Margaret, daughter of Thomas Beck of Penrith.' See Foster, *Pedigrees … 1615 and … 1666*, 87.

[315] 'Timed' is unclear.

[VI.503][316]

{36. Sheriff of Westmerland}
I tooke Westm'land to have been a country to which I nhad bin pecu[liar] of old to have the High Sheriffdoome intailed upon One family, to wit on the Viponts, notwithstanding if finde (in Bellingham Gen.) that Edward Bellingham was high sheriff of Westm'land {?} 8 & 9 Richard I (pag. 29) And that Sir William Lancaster was the like, pag. 32 col. 2. Armes of Lancaster, Or. 2 Barrs Gules with a mullet dexter. This is Lancaster of Sockbridge

{37. Harrington}
Harrington of Sleddall & Ubery hall in Cumb.[317]

{38. Wolston alias Willson}
Wolston alias Willson de Overstaveley in Kendall Westm'land (3 generations) p.34.

{39. Briggs}
Briggs of Helfell hall in Westm'land p.34.

{40. Phillipson}
Phillipson pedigree from (1516). This family married the sole heiress of Carus de Kendall.
Miles Phillipson of Thwatterden hall.

{41. Ralffe}
Lates of Bark hall.

{42. Carus}
Carus the last family in the *Visitation*.[318]

[VI.507]

12 feofes of the hospital success[ors] from the parentes }
Memorandum Hugh Machell Joynt Com. With Wharton } Dugdale *Visitation*.
Sedgewick bears Argent a Cross Gules charg'd with 3 Bells of the field. È Mr. Marshalls Visitation Booke.
See Atkinsons Arms ibid.
Mille bears Or 3 s[319] Sable.

There is little hopes for gaineing any knowledge out of the Records in [the] Tower in order to the discovery of families in Westm'land; because they are onely for fairs & other priviledges by charter. There is less to be hoped for è lib. Rubro in Scac[cario].[320] {See the Red booke in the Heralds office} that being onely an accompt of great mens possesions. But least of all out of *Doomsday booke*: Because the northern countyes, particularly W. C. & Northumb. were so much preyd upon and exhausted by continuall wars; that the Conqueror did not thinke fit to tax it. \ & beside he might far their[321] aynemy with the Scotts. /

It was usuall of Old to have the figure of some single thing in a Roundell upon Signetts and not in Esc[allops] as appear from several instances. {Says Dugdall.}

---

[316] Also numbered p.14.
[317] Yewbarrow/Ubarrow Hall (once named Ubery Hall) is in Longsleddale, Westmorland, see *N&B1*, 133.
[318] In the MS., '*The Visitation of Cumberland*' follows: see MS. VI.503-06 (not transcribed).
[319] A blot appears here.
[320] 'In the red book in the treasury.'
[321] As the letter 'f' has been superimposed over the letter 'b', this word is difficult to decipher. It might be that Machell meant 'fartheir' [farther]. Similarly, the next word has the letters, 'aynemy', transcribed here as 'enemy'.

Ecclesia	Anno Val.	Decima inde	Patronus
Shap Vicaria	008 15:7:0	0:17:6 ob qua	
Warcop Vicaria	009 5:1: ob	O:18:6 qua	

Besides these, there are other in Westm'land which belong to the Diocess of Chester.[322]

[322] The pages from VI.509 to VI.516 are in Machell's hand and are devoted to 'Families and Arms'; for example, the Nevill, Roos and Vaux families. As the pages have been bound very closely, much substantial content is hidden. These pages have not been transcribed.

Bibliography 1

Published Volumes consulted by Thomas Machell

Acropilita, George	*Historia Bizantina*, Paris edition (1651).
Adams, John	*Index Villaris, or, an alphabetical table of all cities, market-tons, parishes, villages, private seats in England and Wales* (London, 1680).
Airey, Christopher	*Fasciculus praeceptorum logicalium in gratiam Juventutis Academicae compositus* (1628; 2nd edition, Oxford, 1633).
Antonine Itinerary	See Burton, William.
Augustine, St	*City of God.* (*Concerning the City of God Against the Pagans*) (*413-426* AD).
Bartholin, Thomas	*Historiarum anatomicarum rariorum centuria*, III et IV (Copenhagen, 1657).
Bede	*An Ecclesiastical History of the English People* (c.731).
Bedwell, William	*A Brief Description of the town of Tottenham High Crosse Middlesex, together with an historical narration of such memorable things as there are to be seen and observed* (London, 1631).
Bible	Authorised Version
Bird, James	*The speech of James Bird, gent Who was executed at Tyburn, on Friday the 18th day of September, 1691. for the willful murther of his wife Elizabeth Bird* (London, 1691).
Blaeu, Johannes	*Theatrum Scotiae* (Amsterdam, 1648; 2nd edition, 1655; 3rd edition,1662.)
———	*Theatrum Orbis Terrarum, sive Atlas Novus* (1654).
Blome, Richard	*Britannia, or, a Geographical Description of the Kingdom of England, Scotland and Ireland* (1673).
———	*A display of heraldry: manifesting a more easie access to the knowledge thereof than hath been hitherto published by any, through the benefit of method; whereunto it is now reduced by the study and industry of John Guillim, late pursuivant at arms. The fifth edition much enlarged with great variety of bearings. to which is added a Treatise of honour military and civil, according to the laws and customs of England, collected out of the most authentick authors, both ancient and modern, by Capt. John Logan. Illustrated with variety of sculptures suitable to the several subjects; to which is added a catalogue of the atchievements of the Nobility of England, with divers of the Gentry, for examples of bearings.* (London, 1679).
———	*An Essay to Heraldry, in Two Parts. The First Containing ... the Body of Heraldry; the Second, Honour Civil and Military; Being a Treatise of the Nobility and Gentry of England ... The Whole Illustrated with ... Sculptures, Etc.* (London, 1685).
Blount, Thomas	*Glossographia A dictionary interpreting all such hard words, of whatsoever language, now used in our refined English tongue* (1656).

———— *Nomo-Lexikon. A Law-dictionary and Glossary: Interpreting Such Difficult and Obscure Words and Terms, as are Found Either in Our Common Or Statute, Ancient Or Modern, Laws. With References to the Several Statutes, Records, Registers, Charters, Ancient Deeds, Manuscripts, and Law-books, Wherein the Words and Terms are Used* (1670).

Blunt, Henry *A Voyage into the Levant. A Briefe Relation of a Journey lately performed by Master Henry Blunt Gentleman from England by the way of Venice, into Dalmatia, Sclavonia, Bosnah, Hungary, Macedonia, Thessaly, Thrace, Rhodes and Egypt, unto Gran Cairo: With particular observations concerning the moderne condition of the Turkes, and other people under that Empire* (1636).

Boethius, Hector aka Boece *Scotorum historiae a prima gentis origine libri xvii* (Paris, 1527).

Boswell John *Workes of Armorie* (Three volumes: *The Concordes of Armorie*, *The Armorie of Honor*, *Of Coates and Creastes* (1572).

Bracton, Henry de *De Legibus et Consuetudinibus Angliae*: *The Laws and Customs of England* (c. 1235).

Brompton, John *Chronicle*: printed in Twysden's *Decem Scriptores* (1652).

Brooke, Ralph *A catalogue and succession of the kings, princes, dukes, marquesses, earles, and viscounts of this realme of England, since the Norman conquest, to this present yeare, 1619: together, with their armes, wives, and children: the times of their deaths and burials, with many their memorable actions* (1619).

Buchanan, George *Rerum Scoticarum historia* (1582), translated by J. Fraser as *The History of Scotland … Faithfully rendered into English* (1690).

Burnet, Gilbert *Three letters concerning the present state of Italy written in the year 1687 ...* (1688).

Burton, William *The Description of Leicester Shire. Containing Matters of Antiquitye, Historye, Armorye, and Genealogy* (1622; 2nd edition 1638).

———— *A Commentary on Antoninus, his Itinerary, or, Journies of the Romane Empire, so far as it concerneth Britain where in the first foundation of our cities, lawes, and government, according to the Roman policy, are clearly discovered ... with a chorographicall map of the severall stations, and index's to the whole work* (1658).

Camden, William *Britannia, sive florentissimorum regnorum Angliae, Scotiae, Hiberniae et insularum adiacentium ex intima antiquitate chorographica descriptio* (First published in Latin in 1586, with later Latin editions, including one with hand-coloured maps in 1607).

———— *Britannia*, *or, A Chorographicall Description of the Most Flourishing Kingdomes ...beautified with mappes*. In English, translated by Philemon Holland (London, 1610).

———— *Remaines of a greater worke, concerning Britaine, the Inhabitants thereof, Their Languages, Names, Surnames, Empreses, Wise speeches, Poësies, and Epitaphes* (London, 1605).

Carleton, George *The Life of Bernard Gilpin ... With His Sermon Preached Before King Edward the Sixth Anno. 1552*, 4th edition (1636).

Carter, Matthew *Honor Redivivus. or, The Analysis of Honor and Armory: Reprinted with Many Useful and Necessary Additions and Supply'd with the Names and Titles of Honour of the Present Nobility of England, the Bishops, Baronets, Members of Parliament, &c*. (1673).

Casaubon, Isaac (ed.) *Historia Augusta* (1603).

Chaloner, James *A Short Treatise of the Isle of Man, digested into Six Chapters:* Appendix to *King's Vale Royal of England; Or, The County Palatine of Chester* (1656).

Charles I, William Fulman, Richard Perrinchief
The Works of King Charles the Martyr with a collection of declarations, treaties and other papers betwixt His Said Majesty and his two Houses of Parliament, with a history of his Life; as also of his Tryal and Martyedome, 2nd edition (London, 1687).

Church of England *Common Prayer*, *Book of* (1662).

Coke, Edward *The First Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England. Or, a Commentarie upon Littleton, Not the Name of a Lawyer Onely, but of the Law it selfe.* Often referred to as *Coke upon Littleton* (London, 1628).

———— *The Second Part of the Institutes of the Lawes of England* (London, 1642).

Coles, Elisha *An English dictionary, explaining the difficult terms that are used in divinity, husbandry, physick, phylosophy, law, navigation, mathematicks, and other arts and sciences. Containing many thousands of hard words (and proper names of places) more than are in any other English dictionary or expositor. Together with the etymological derivation of them from their proper fountains, whether Hebrew, Greek, Latin, French, or any other language. In a method more comprehensive, than any that is extant* (London, 1676).

Compton, Henry *Episcopalia, or, Letters of the Right Reverend Father in God, Henry, Lord Bishop of London, to the clergy of his diocess* (London, 1686).

Cooke, Robert *The Armorie of* Nobility. After Cooke's death in 1593, *The Armorie* was completed by Robert Glover and Thomas Lant (1606, 1621).

Cooper, Thomas (drawing on the dictionaries of Charles Stephanus)
An Historical and Poetical Dictionary, briefly covering the Proper Names of Places and Peoples (London, 1565).

Cowell, John *The Interpreter*: *or Booke Containing the Signification of Words: Wherein is Set Forth the True Meaning of All, or the Most Part of Such Words and Termes, as are Mentioned in the Law Writers, or Statutes of This Victorious and Renowned Kingdom, Requiring Any Exposition or Interpretation. A Work not Onely Profitable, but Necessary for Such as Desire Throughly to be Instructed in the Knowledge of Our Laws, Statutes, and Other Antiquities* (Cambridge, 1607).

Crackanthorpe, Richard
Defensio Ecclesiae Anglicanae. Defence of the Church of England against the calumnies of M. Antony de Dominis, Archbishop of Spalatro (1625).

Cressy, Serenus *The Church-history of Brittany from the Beginning of Christianity to the Norman Conquest under Roman Governours, Brittish Kings, the English-Saxon Heptarchy, the English-Saxon (and Danish) Monarchy from all which is evidently demonstrated that the present Roman Catholick religion hath from the beginning, without interruption or change been professed in this our island, &c.* (1668).

Damhouder, de, Josse *Praxis rerum criminalium, elegantissimis iconibus ad materiam accomodis illustrata, prætoribus, proprætoribus, consulibus, proconsulibus, magistratibus, reliquisque id genus iustitiariis ac officiariis, apprimè utílis ac necessaria, etc. With woodcuts by Gerard de Jode* (Antwerp, 1554).

Dawes, Lancelot *Gods Mercies and Jerusalems Miseries* (1609).

———— *Sermons Preached upon Severall Occasions* (1653).

Degge, Simon *The Parson's Counsellor, with the law of Tythes and Tything, in two Books*, 2nd edition 'corrected' (London, 1685).

de Losinga, Robert, Bishop of Hereford
Excerpta ex Chronicis Mariani Scoti (an abridgement of the Chronology of Marianus Scotus) (c.1082).

de Oviedo y Valdes, Gonzalo Fernandez (known as Oviedo), *La Natural hystoria de las Indias* (*The Natural History of the West Indies*) (1526-35; English edition, 1555-56).

Diceto, Ralph de 1. *Abbreviationes Chronicorum*
2. *Ymagines Historiarum* (both before 1199).
Most of the 'Abbreviationes' and all of the 'Ymagines' were printed by Roger Twysden in *Scriptores Decem* (1652), see below.

Dioscorides, Pedanius *De Materia Medica* (c. 77 AD).

Doderidg, John *Treatess: Consideration of the Office and Duty of Heralds* (1605).

Duckworth, Richard *Tintinnalogia, or, The Art of Ringing* (1668, 2nd edition 1671).

Dugdale, William *The antiquities of Warwickshire illustrated from records, leiger-books, manuscripts, charters, evidences, tombes, and armes: beautified with maps, prospects and portraictures* (London, 1656).

———— *Monasticon Anglicanum, or, The history of the ancient abbies, and other monasteries, hospitals, cathedral and collegiate churches in England and Wales. With divers French, Irish, and Scotch monasteries formerly relating to England* (London, 1655-1673).

———— *The History of St Paul's in London from its foundation until these times* (London, 1658).

———— (*Baronagium*) *The Baronage of England, or, An historical account of the lives and most memorable actions of our English nobility in the Saxons time to the Norman conquest, and from thence, of those who had their rise before the end of King Henry the Third's reign deduced from publick records, antient historians, and other authorities* (London, 1675-76).

Duval, Pierre *A Geographical Dictionary, In which are Described the most Eminent Countreys, Towns, Ports, Seas, Streights, and Rivers in the whole World. Very Useful for the Understanding of the Modern Histories* (Paris, 1651. 1st English edition, 1662, 1678).

Edmonds, Clement *Commentaries of Julius Caesar* (1677).

Evelyn, John *Sylva, or a Discourse of Forest Trees* (1664).

Favine, André *The theater of honour and knight-hood, or, A compendious chronicle and historie of the whole Christian world*, *containing the originall of all monarchies, kingdomes, and estates, with their emperours, kings, princes, and governours; …The first institution of armes, emblazons, kings, heralds, and pursuivants of armes* (Paris, 1620; London,1623[?]).

Fern, Sir John *The Blazon of Gentry* (London, 1586).

FitzNeal, Richard *Dialogus de Scaccario*, or *Dialogue concerning the Exchequer* (late 12th century).

Florus *An Epitome of Roman History.*

Flower, William *Visitation of Yorkshire* (1563-1564).

Fuller, Thomas *The history of the worthies of England who for parts and learning have been eminent in the several counties: together with an historical narrative of the native commodities and rarities in each county, endeavoured by Thomas Fuller* (1662).

Gale, Thomas *Historiae Anglicanae Scriptores XV* (1691).

Gassendi, Pierre (Petrus Gassendus), 1592-1655. Machell wished to see one of his works, which was housed in the Hospital Library at Kendal (see Machell, Town of Kendal, II.66).

Gauden, John *The works of King Charles the Martyr: with a collection of declarations, treaties, and other papers concerning the differences between his said majesty and his two houses of Parliament* (1662).

Gemeticensis, Guilelmus (fl. c. 1137)
Gesta Normannorum Ducum.

Geoffrey of Monmouth *Historia Regum Britanniae* (c.1136).

Gibson, Edmund (ed.) William Camden and Edmund Gibson (1669-1748), *Camden's Britannia newly translated into English, with large additions and improvements ; publish'd by Edmund Gibson* (London, 1695).

Gildas *De Excidio et Conquestu Britanniae* (late 6th century).

Giraldus, Lilius Gregorius
De Deis Gentium varia et multiplex Historia, in qua simul de eorum imaginibus et cognominibus agitur ('A diverse and manifold History of the Gods of all Peoples, in which at the same time there is an account of their images and their epithets') (Basel 1548, Lyon 1565).

Glanvill, Ranulf de *Tractatus de legibus et consuetudinibus regni Anglie* (*Treatise on the Laws and Customs of the Kingdom of England*) (1187-1189).

Godolphin, John *The Holy Arbor … or, The Sum and Substance of Christian Religion* (1651).

———— *The Holy Limbeck, or, A Semicentury of Spiritual Extractions* (1650).

———— *Repertorium canonicum, or, An abridgment of the ecclesiastical laws of this realm, consistent with the temporal wherein the most material points relating to such persons and things, as come within the cognizance thereof, are succinctly treated* (1678).

Good, Thomas *Firmianus and Dubitantius; certain dialogues concerning Atheism, Infidelity, Popery, and other Heresies and Schismes that trouble the peace of the Church and are destructive of primitive piety* (1674).

Gordon, Robert, of Straloth *Theatrum Scotiae* (Amsterdam, 1648; 2nd edition, 1655; 3rd edition,1662).

Gore, Thomas *Nomenclator Geographicus* (1667).

Gouldman, Francis *A copious dictionary in three parts: I. the English before the Latin; II. the Latin before the English. III; the proper names of persons, places, and other things necessary to the understanding of historians and poets* (London, 1664).

Grafton, Richard *Grafton's Chronicle: or, History of England; To Which is Added His Table of the Bailiffs, Sherrifs, and Mayors, of the City of London, From the Year 1189 to 1558, Inclusive* (1563).

Gregorius, Petrius *Syntagma Juris Universi, atque legum paene omnium Gentium Lib. 1* (Frankfurt am Main, 1599, 1611; Geneva, 1639).

Gruter, Jan *Inscriptiones antiquae totius orbis romani, in absolutissimum corpus redactae* ('Ancient inscriptions of the entire Roman world, edited in the most complete assemblage') (1603).

Guidot, Thomas *de thermis Britannicis tractatus. Accesserunt observationes hydrostaticae, chromaticae, et miscellaneae unius-cujusque balnei apud Bathoniam naturam ... exhibentes. (Observationum centuria, pleniorem in thermarum Bathoniensium naturam inquisitionem complectens, etc.)* (London, 1691).

Guillim, John *A Display of Heraldry* (London, 1610).

———— *A Display of Heraldrie: Manifesting a more Easie Access to the Knowledge thereof then hath hitherto been published by any, through the Benefit of Method: Wherein it is now reduced by the Study and Industry of John Guillim late Pursuivant at Armes. Interlaced with much variety of History, suitable to the Severall Occasions or Subjects*. The fourth Edition… Printed for Jacob Blome (London, 1660).

Gunter, Edmund 'A New Treatise of Fortification', in Samuel Foster, *The Workes of Edmund Gunter, Containing the Description of the Sector, Cross-staff, and Other Instruments; with a Canon of Artificial Sines & Tangent, &c. Much Enlarged by the Author. Together with a New Treatise of Fortification. Whereunto Is Now Added the Further Use of the Quadrant Fitted for Daily Practice* (London, 1653).

Hatton, Baron Christopher
A Book of Seals (1640s). Reproduced by Lewis C. Loyd and Doris M. Stenton (eds), as, *Sir Christopher Hatton's Book of Seals* (Oxford, 1950).

Helvetius (Johann Friedrich Schweitzer), *Vitulus Aureus*, 'The Golden Calf, which the world adores and desires' (1667).

Henshaw, Thomas (ed.), 'Stephen Skinner's *Etymologicon Linguæ Anglicanae* (London, 1671).

Heylyn, Peter *Cosmographie in four bookes: containing the chorographie and historie of the whole world, and all the principall kingdomes, provinces, seas and isles thereof* (London, 1652). (II.510)

———— Ἠρωολογία *Anglorum; or, A help to English history. Containing a succession of all the kings of England, the English, Saxons, and the Britons, the kings and princes of Wales; the kings and lords of Man, and the Isle of Wight. As also, of all the dukes, marquises, earls, and bishops thereof. With the descriptions of the places from whence they had their titles. Together with the names and ranks of the viscounts, barons, and baronets, of England, by Peter Heylyn, D. D. Prebendary of Westminster* (1641).

———— *The History of St. George of Cappadocia* (1631).

———— *Ἠρωολογία Anglorum; or, a help to English history* (1641).

Heywood, Thomas *The Hierarchie of the blessed Angells* (London, 1635).

Higden, Ranulf *Polychronicon* (or *Ranulphi Castrensis, cognomine Higden, Polychronicon (sive Historia Polycratica) ab initio mundi usque ad mortem regis Edwardi III in septem libros dispositum*) written by the English Benedictine monk, Ranulf Higden (c.1280-1364).

Hildebrand, Friedrich *Antiquitates Romanae: in compendium contractae, et juxta ordinem alphabeti dispositae, bono juventutis* (3rd edition, Oxford, 1673).

Holinshed, Raphael *Chronicles*: *The firste volume of the chronicles of England, Scotlande, and Irelande conteyning the description and chronicles of England, from the first inhabiting unto the conquest : the description and chronicles of Scotland, from the first original of the Scottes nation till the yeare of our Lorde 1571 : the description and chronicles of Yrelande, likewise from the first originall of that nation untill the yeare 1571 / faithfully gathered and set forth by Raphaell Holinshed* (London, 1577; enlarged 1587).

Hooke, Robert *Micrographia* (Royal Society, 1665).

Hooker, John (ed.) *The first and second volumes of Chronicles comprising 1. The description and historie of England, 2. The description and historie of Ireland, 3. The description and historie of Scotland: first collected and published by Raphaell Holinshed, William Harrison, and others: now newlie augmented and continued (with manifold matters of singular note and worthie memorie) to the yeare 1586. by John Hooker aliàs Vowell Gent and others. With convenient tables at the end of these volumes* (London, 1587).

Hooker, Richard *Of The Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity,* 8 vols (1594-1648).

Hoveden or Howden, Roger of
Gesta Henrici II et Gesta Regis Ricardi ('Deeds of Henry II and King Richard') (c.1192). Revised in, *Chronica magistri Rogeri de Hoveden* ('Chronicles of Master Roger of Howden: the story of England before Henry II's reign continuing until 1201' (c.1192-1201).

Howe, Edmund *The Abridgement of the English Chronicles First Collected by M. John Stow, and After Him Augmented with Every Memorable Antiquities, and Continued with* Matter (1611).

Howell, James *A French and English Dictionary composed by Mr Randle Cotgrave with another in English and French* (London, 1673).

Howells, James *Cottoni posthuma* (1651).

Huntington, Henry of *Historia Anglorum* or *The Chronicle of Henry of Huntingdon. Comprising the history of England, from the invasion of Julius Cæsar to the accession of Henry II. Also, The acts of Stephen, king of England and duke of Normandy* (1129-54).

Hyde, Thomas *De Historia shahiludii tria scripta hebraica viz. Rabbi Abraham Aben-ezrae prelegans poema rythmicum, R. Bonseniora Ben-Jachiae facunda oratio profaica, liber deliciae regum prosa, stylo puriore, per anonymum. Omnia ex Chartis MSS jam primo deprompsit & Latine vertit Thomas Hyde* (Oxford, 1689).

Ingulph (Ingulphus) 'Chronicle of Croyland Abbey', first printed (in part) in Henry Saville's *Scriptores post Bedam* (1596).

Irenæus of Lyons *Adversus Haereses,(Against the Heresies)* Vol. 3. (c.180 AD).

Kitchin, John *Le Courte Leete et Courte Baron & Hundred Courte &c., Collect by John Kitchin de Grais Inne, an apprentice in Ley* (London, 1592).

Lambarde, William *A perambulation of Kent conteining the description, hystorie, and customes of that shyre. Collected and written (for the most part) in the yeare 1570. Nowe increased by the addition of some things which the authour him selfe hath obserued since that time* (London, 1576).

Leigh, Francis *Of the Antiquity, Office and Privilege of the Heralds in England* (1575).

Leigh, Gerard *The Accedence of Armorie* (London, 1563).

Leland, John *Itinerary,* First published by Thomas Hearne (1770). Leland's notes were not published until the 18th century but they provided much information for William Camden's *Britannia* (first edition, 1586), and many other antiquarian works.

Lister, Martin *De Cochleis* (London, 1685)

———— *Exercitatio anatomica de Cochleis, maxime terrestribus & limacibus* (London, 1694).

Malmesbury, William of
Gesta Pontificum (1125).

———— *Gesta Regum Anglorum*, 'Deeds of the Kings of the English' (1125-34).

Manwood, John *Treatise of the lawes of the forest ... also a treatise of the pourallee ... whereunto are added the statutes of the forest* (1615).

Marshall, Henry *Observationes in Evangeliorum Versiones perantiquas duas, Gothicas scil. et Anglo-Saxonicas* (Dortmund, 1665; Amsterdam, 1684).

Minsheu, John *Ductor in linguas, Glosson Etimologicon* (1617).

Monmouth, Geoffrey of *Historia Regum Britanniae* 'History of the Kings of Britain' (c. 1136).

Morgan, Sylvanus *Armilogia, sive, Ars chromocritica. The language of arms by the colours & metals being analogically handled according to the nature of things, and fitted with apt motto's to the heroical science of herauldry in the symbolical world : whereby is discovered what is signified by every honourable partition, ordinary, or charge, usually born in coat-armour, and mythologized to the heroical theam of Homer on the shield of Achilles: a work of this nature never yet extant* (London, 1666).

Munday, Anthony *A Briefe Chronicle of the Successe of the Times from the Creation of the Worlde to this Instant* (1611).

Newburgh, William of *Historia rerum Anglicarum* (1196-1198).

Newman, Samuel *A Concordance to the Holy Scriptures: with the Various Readings both of Text and Margin, in a More Exact Method then hath Hitherto been Extant* (1st edition, London, 1643; 2nd edition, Cambridge, 1662). Known as the Cambridge Concordance.

Norden John *The Surveyor's Dialogue* (London, 1607).

Ogilby, John *Britannia, Volume the First, or An illustration of the kingdom of England and dominion of Wales: by a geographical and historical description of the principal roads thereof actually admeasured and delineated in a century of whole-sheet copper-sculps: accommodated with the ichnography of the several cities and capital towns, and compleated by an accurate account of the more remarkable passages of antiquity: together with a novel discourse of the present state* (London, 1675).

———— *Mr Ogilby's tables of his measur'd roads ... with other remarks ... to which is added, A true account of the markets and fairs, &c. collected in his survey* (1676).

Ortelius, Abraham *Theatrum Orbis Terrarum*: 'Theatre of the World' (1570).

Oviedo. Gonzalo Fernandez De Oviedo y Valdes (known as Oviedo) *La Natural hystoria de las Indias* ('The Natural History of the West Indies') (1526-35), printed in English (1555-56).

Pagit, Ephraim *Christianographie*, *or, a Description of the Sundrie Sorts of Christians in the World* (1635).

Palladio, Andrea *The Four Books of Architecture* (Venice, 1570). Book I was first published in English in London in 1663.

Paris, Matthew (d.1259)
Chronica Majora, a universal history (in several parts) from the Creation to 1259. Bound with the third part is the *Historia Anglorum* (1250-55).

Petyt (Petit), William *The Antient Right of the Commons of England Asserted* (1680).

Plot, Robert *The Natural History of Oxford-shire: being an essay towards the natural history of England* (1677).

——— *The Natural History of Staffordshire* (Oxford, 1686).

Prideaux, Humphrey *Marmora Oxoniensia ex Arundellianis, Seldenianis, aliisque conflate recensuit & perpetuo commentario explicavit* (Oxford, 1676).

Prynne, William *The History of King John, King Henry III and the most illustrious King Edward the I, wherein the ancient sovereign dominion of the Kings of England, Scotland, France and Ireland ... is asserted and vindicated* (London, 1670).

Ptolemy *Geographia* (Latin translation, 1406, first printed edition, 1477).

Ray, John *A Collection of English words, not generally used ... in two alphabetical catalogues, ... northern ... southern counties, with catalogues of English birds and fishes, and an account of preparing ... metals and minerals* (London, 1674, enlarged 1691).

——— *A collection of English proverbs digested into a convenient method for the speedy finding any one upon occasion: with short annotations: whereunto are added local proverbs with their explications, old proverbial rhythmes, less known or exotick proverbial sentences, and Scottish proverbs* (Cambridge, 1678).

Reinesius, Thomas *Nova Reperta Inscriptionum Antiquarum* (Leipzig and Frankfurt, 1682).

Ridley, Sir Thomas *A View of the Civile and Ecclesiastical Law* (London, 1607).

Rosinus, Johannes *Antiquitatum romanarum corpus absolutissimum* (Basel, 1585).

Ryley, William the elder [Lancaster Herald] and William Ryley the younger
Placita Parliamentaria Or Pleadings in Parliament, with Judgments thereon in the Reign of Edward the First and Edward the Second ... Containing ... Statutes, Ordinances, Provisions, Inhibitions, Forms of Writs on several occasions, Prohibitions, Proclamations, with the Confirmation of Magna Charta and Charta de Foresta. As also of some other Records taken out of the Tower of London which prove the Homage anciently due to the Kings of England from Scotland, and the Establishment of Ireland under the Laws of England (London, 1661).

Sabellicus, Marcus Antonius
Enneades sive Rhapsodia historiarum (1498).

Sammes, Aylett *Britannia Antiqua Illustrata, or the Antiquities of Ancient Britain derived from the Phœnicians* (1676).

Scaccario *Dialogus de Scaccario*: 'Dialogue concerning the Exchequer', a mediaeval treatise on the practice of the English Exchequer written in the late 12th century as a series of questions and answers by Richard FitzNeal.

Scotus, Marianus *Chronicles of Marianus Scotus* (first printed, Basel, 1559).

Selden, John *Titles of Honor* (1614).

———— *Fleta, Seu Commentarius Juris Anglicani Sic Nuncupatus, Sub Edwardo Rege Primo* (1647, 1685).

Skene, Sir John *De Verborum Significatione: The Exposition of the terms and difficill wordes conteined in the foure buikes of Regiam Magistatem, etc.* (2nd edition, Edinburgh, 1599).

Skinner, Stephen *Etymologicon Linguae Anglicanae* (1671).

Smetius, Johannes and Joannes Smetius *Antiquitates Neomagenses. Sive notitia rarissimarum rerum antiquarum, quas in veteri Batavorum Oppido studiose comparavit Johannes Smetius, pater & filius* (Noviomagi Batavorum, 1678).

Smith, Captain John *The true travels, adventures, and observations of Captaine John Smith, in Europe, Asia, Affrica, and America, from anno Domini 1593 to 1629* (London, 1630).

Smith, Sir Thomas *A Discourse of the Commonweal of this Realm of England* (1581).

Smyth (Smith), John *England's improvement revived; plainly discovering the several ways of improving all sorts of waste and barren ground and of enriching all earths, with the natural quality of all lands; and the several weeds and plants which naturally thrive therein observed &c.; together with the manner of planting all sorts of timber trees and underwoods experienced in 30 years' practice.* 6 vols (London, 1670).

Speed, John *The Historie of Great Britaine Under the Conquests of the Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans. Their Originals, Manners, Habits, Warres, Coines, and Seales: with the Successions, Lives, Acts, and Issues of the English Monarchs from Julius Caesar, unto the Raigne of King James of famous Memorie* (London, 1611).

———— *Theatrum Imperii Magnae Brtitanniae: The theatre of the empire of Great Britaine presenting an exact geography of the kingdomes of England, Scotland, Ireland, and the iles adioyning: with the shires, hundreds, cities and shire-townes, within ye kingdome of England, divided and described by Iohn Speed* (London, 1611/12).

———— 'The Miniature Speed': small (10cm x 17cm) cartographic pocket book of Speed's maps entitled*, England Wales and Ireland: their severall counties. Abridged from a farr larger volume: by John Speed* (London, 1619).

———— 'Catalogus Religiosarum Ædium ex Anglico Ioannis Speed, Latinus', in N. Harpsfield and E. Campion, (ed. R. Gibbon), *Historia Anglicana Ecclesiastica* (Douai 1622).

———— *An Epitome of Mr John Speed's Theatre of the Empire of Great Britain and his Prospect of the most famous parts of the World* (London, 1676).

Spelman, Sir Henry *Concilia, Decreta, Leges, Constitutiones in Re Ecclesiarum Orbis Britannici* (1639).

——— *Glossarium Archaiologicum* (1626, compl. William Dugdale 1664).

——— *Villare Anglicum: or a view of the townes of England* (London, 1656).

Spottiswood (Spotswood), John
The History of the Church of Scotland: beginning the year of our Lord 203, and continued to the end of the reign of King James VI (1655).

Stephanius, S. J. *Saxonis Grammaticae Historiae Danicae Libri XVI* (1645).

Stephanus of Byzantium
de Urbibus (6th century; 1st published in Venice, 1502).

Stephanus, Charles *Dictionarium historicum, geographicum, poeticum* (1553).

Stow, John *The chronicles of England from Brute unto this present yeare of Christ. 1580. Collected by Iohn Stow citizen of London* (London, 1580).

——— *A Survey of London* (1598, 1603).

Thoroton, Robert (1623-78)
The Antiquities of Nottinghamshire (1677).

Trithemius, Johannes *Compendium sive Breviarium primi voluminis annalium sive historiarum, de origine Rerum & gentis Francorum* (Paris, 1539 edition, Lib I, 38: 35).

Twysden, Roger *Historiae Anglicanae Scriptores Decem* (1652).

Upton, Nicholas *De Studio Militari* (1447).

Ussher, James *Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates* (1639).

——— *The Whole Works of the Most Rev. James Ussher*, Vol. 6 (Dublin, 1639).

Varagine, Jacobus de *Legenda Aurea* (c. 1260; first dated edition, Barcelona, 1494).

Venning, Ralph *Milk and Honey, or, A Miscellaneous Collation of Many Christian Experiences, Sayings, Sentences, and Several Places of Scripture Improved* (London, 1654).

Veronensis, Torelli Saraynae
De origine et amplitudine ciuitatis Veronae (Verona, 1540).

Verstegan, Richard *A Restitution of Decayed Intelligence in Antiquities concerning the most noble and renowned English Nation* (1605; reprinted 1628, 1634, 1652, 1655, 1673).

Vincent, Augustine *A discoverie of errours in the first edition of the Catalogue of Nobility published by Raphe Brooke, York Herald, from 1619 untill this present yeare, 1622: at the end whereof, is annexed a review of a later edition, by him stolne into the world, 1621* (London, 1622).

Wake, Isaac *Rex platonicus: sive, de potentissimi principis Iacobi Britanniarum regis, ad illustrissimam Academiam Oxoniensem, adventu, Aug. 27. Anno M. DC. V*. (1635). A description, in Latin, of the king's entertainment at Oxford in 1605.

Walsingham, Thomas *Ypodigma Neustriæ* (London, 1574).

Wase, Christopher *Considerations Concerning Free Schools as Settled in England* (Oxford, 1678).

William of Malmesbury
Gesta Regum Anglorum (1125-34).

———— *Gesta Pontificum* (1125).

Yorke, James *The Union of Honour* (London, 1640).

Select List of Classical Texts

Aristotle *Politiká* (Politics: Things concerning the Polis) in eight books.

Cicero, Marcus Tullius
De Oratore (On the Orator) (55BC).

———— *Letters to Atticus*. *Book 4.*

Dio Cassius (Lucius Cassius Dio)
Historia Romana, in 80 books: book 40.

Dioscorides, Pedanius
De Materia Medica (c. 77 AD).

Eutropius *Breviarium Historiae Romanae* (*Summary of Roman History*).

Florus *An Epitome of Roman History*, XLV.

Herodian *libro 6^{0} ad Cultiorem Vitam*; 6th of 8 Books entitled *Roman History*.

Horace *Epodes* 7.

Irenæus of Lyons *Adversus Haereses,* Vol. 3.

Livy *The History of Rome,* Bk 1.

Lucan (Marcus Annaeus Lucanus)
Pharsalia or *De Bello Civili.*

Macrobius *Saturnalia*.

Martial (Marcus Valerius Martialis)
Epigrams. XC. Epigrammata contraria.

Notitia Dignitatum List of Offices of the Late Roman Empire.

Ovid *Metamorphoses* Bk 13.

———— *Heroides 1*.

Pausanias *Description of Greece* (10 books), VIII.43.4.

Pliny the Elder *Natural History*.

Ptolemy	*Geographia*.
Suetonius	*Life of Virgil*.
Tacitus	*Agricola*. (*De vita et moribus Iulii Agricolae)*
Valerius Maximus	*Factorum ac dictorum memorabilium libri IX* (Nine books of memorable deeds and sayings).
Virgil	*Aeneid*, Book VI.
Vitruvius, Pollio	*de Architectura* (The 10 books on Architecture).

Bibliography 2

Published Volumes, Journal Articles, Theses, Maps and Websites consulted for this edition

General Volumes published before 1800

Anon., *The Strange and Wonderful History of Mother Shipton* (London, 1686).

Assigns of Richard and Edward Atkins, *The Tradesman's Lawyer and Countrey-man's Friend* (London, 1703).

Atkins, John, *A Voyage to Guinea, Brasil and the West Indies,* 2nd edition (London, 1737).

Barlow, Frederick, *The Complete English Dictionary: Or, General Repository of the English Language*, Vol. 2 (1773).

Baxter, William, *Glossary of Roman Antiquities* (1726).

Birch, Thomas, *The History of the Royal Society of London for improving natural knowledge, from its first rise, in which the most considerable of those papers communicated to the society which have hitherto not been published are inserted in their proper order* (London, 1757).

Birkbeck, Simon, *The Protestant's Evidence* (1634).

Borlase, William, *Antiquities, historical and monumental, of the County of Cornwall* (1754).

Brathwate, Richard, alias 'Corymbæus', *Barnabæ Itinerarium, or Barnabee's Journal* (1638).

Brookes, R., *The Natural History of Birds: with the Method of Bringing Up and Managing those of the singing kind*, Vol. 2 (London, 1763).

Burn, Richard, *The Justice of the Peace, and Parish Officer*, Vol. 2 (1780).

Camden, William, *Britannia: Or, A Chorographical Description of the Flourishing Kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, and the Islands Adjacent; From the Earliest Antiquity*, 3 vols, translated by Richard Gough (1789).

Collins, Arthur, *A Supplement to the Four Volumes of the Peerage of England* (London, 1750).

Drake, Francis, *Eboracum or the History and Antiquities of York* (London, 1736).

Foster, Samuel (ed.), *The Workes of Edmund Gunter, Containing the Description of the Sector, Cross-staff, and Other Instruments; with a Canon of Artificial Sines & Tangent, &c. Much Enlarged by the Author. Together with a New Treatise of Fortification. Whereunto Is Now Added the Further Use of the Quadrant Fitted for Daily Practice* (London, 1653).

Gerard, John, *The Herball Or Generall Historie of Plantes* (1597).

Gibson, Edmund (ed.), *The Posthumous Works of Sir Henry Spelman Relating to the Laws and Antiquities of England Published from the Original Manuscripts. With the Life of the Author* (Oxford, 1698) (2nd edition, London, 1727).

Goguet, Antoine-Yves. *The Origin of Laws, Arts and Sciences, and their progress among the most ancient nations,* Vol. 3 (Edinburgh, 1775).

Gouldman, Francis, *A copious dictionary in three parts: I. the English before the Latin; II. the Latin before the English. III; the proper names of persons, places, and other things necessary to the understanding of historians and poets* (London, 1664).

Grafton, Richard, *Grafton's Chronicle: or, History of England; To Which is Added His Table of the Bailiffs, Sherrifs, and Mayors, of the City of London, From the Year 1189 to 1558, Inclusive* (1563).

Hale, Sir Matthew, *The History of the Common Law of England* (1713).

———, *Historia Placitorum Coronæ*, or *The History of the Pleas of the Crown* (1736).

Harpsfield, N., and E. Campion*, Historia Anglicana Ecclesiastica* (Douai, 1622).

Horsley, John, *Britannia Romana* (London, 1732).

Bishop, G., R Nuberie and R. Barker (Typographij Regii), *Rogeri Hovedeni Annalium Pars Prior & Posterior, in Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores Post Bedam Praecipui, ex vetustissimis codicibus manuscriptis nunc primum in lucem editi* (London, 1596).

Humble, George, *England Wales and Ireland: their severall counties. Abridged from a farr larger volume: by John Speed and are to be sold by George Humble in pops head alley* (1619).

Jacob, Giles, *A New Law Dictionary*, 2nd edition (London, 1732).

Kennett, Bishop White, *Parochial Antiquities attempted in the History of Ambrosden, Burcester, and adjacent parts in Oxford and Bucks* (1695).
Leland, John, *Itinerary* (published by Thomas Hearne, 1770).
Markham, G., and L. Machin, *Dumbe Knight* (1608).
Nicolson, Joseph, and Richard Burn, *The History and Antiquities of the Counties of Westmorland and Cumberland*, 2 vols (London, 1777).
Nicolson, William, *Glossarium Brigantinum* (1677).
———, *The English Historical Library, or, A short view and character of most of the writers now extant, either in print or manuscript which may be serviceable to the undertakers of a general history of this kingdom* (London, 1696).
———, *The English historical library, in Three Parts, giving a Short View and Character of most of our Historians either in Print or Manuscript : With an Account of our Records, Law-Books, Coins, and other matters serviceable to the Undertakers of a General History of England, The Second Edition Corrected and Augmented* (London, 1714).
———, *The English, Scotch and Irish Historical Libraries giving a short view and character of most of our historians, either in print or manuscript*, New Edition (London, 1776).
Rawlet, John, T*he Christian Monitor* (1695).
Rowlands, Henry, *Mona Antiqua Restaurata: an Archaeological Discourse on the Antiquities, Natural and Historical, of the Isle of Anglesey, the Antient seat of the British Druids* (1723).
Rymer, Thomas, *Fœdera*, Vol. 14 (London, 1712).
Savile, Henry (ed.) *Rogeri Hovedeni Annalium Pars Prior & Posterior, in Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores Post Bedam Praecipui, ex vetustissimis codicibus manuscriptis nunc primum in lucem editi* (London, 1596).
Stevens, John, *The History of the Ancient Abbeys, Monasteries, Hospitals, Cathedral and Collegiate Churches; being two additional volumes to Sir William Dugdale's Monasticon Anglicanum,* Vol. I (London, 1722).
Stukeley, William, *An Account of a Roman Temple and Other Antiquities, Near Graham's Dike in Scotland* (1720).
———, *An Account of Richard of Cirencester, Monk of Westminster, and of his Works* (1757).
Thoresby, Ralph, *Biographia Britannica, or The Lives of the most eminent Persons who have flourished in Great Britain and Ireland from the earliest ages down to the present times, collected by the best authorities, both Printed and Manuscript, and digested in the Manner of Mr Bayle's Historical and Critical Dictionary*, Vol. 6, Part 1 (London, 1763).
Tuckney, Anthony, *Forty Sermons Upon Several Occasions* (1676).
Tynemouth, John of, and Wynkyn de Worde (printer), *Nova legenda Anglie. Sanctilogium Angliae, Walliae, Scotiae, et Hiberniae* (1515).
Upton, Nicholas, *De Studio Militari* (1447).
Warburton, *Vallum Romanum, or the History and Antiquities of the Roman Wall, commonly called the Picts Wall, in Cumberland and Northumberland, with plates and maps* (London, 1753).
Ward, Richard, *The Life of The Learned and Pious Dr Henry More, Late Fellow of Christ's College in Cambridge. To which are annex'd Dives of his Useful and Excellent Letters* (London, 1710).
Waterhouse, Edward, *An Humble Apologie for Learning and Learned Men* (1653).
———, *A Discourse and Defense of Arms and Armory* (1660)
———, *The Gentleman's Monitor, or, A sober inspection into the virtues, vices and ordinary means of the rise and decay of men and families* (1665).
West, Thomas, *The Antiquities of Furness illustrated with Engravings* (London, 1794, 1805).
Wirsung, Christof, *The general practise of physicke conteyning all inward and outward parts of the body, with all the accidents and infirmities that are incident unto them, even from the crowne of the head to the sole of the foote: also by what meanes (with the help of God) they may be remedied* (London, 1605).
Williams, E. & T. (eds), *The Cambrian Register 2: 1796* (London, 1796).
Wood, Anthony à, *Athenæ Oxonienses Athenae Oxonienses: An Exact History of All the Writers and Bishops Who Have Had Their Education in the University of Oxford; To Which Are Added the Fasti, or Annals of the Said University*, I. (London, 1691-92).
Wood, Anthony à, and J. Peshall, *The Antient and Present State of the City of Oxford* (London, 1773).

General Volumes published after 1800

Abel, E.L., *Intoxication in Mythology: A Worldwide Dictionary of Gods, Rites, Intoxicants and Places* (Jefferson, NC, 2006), 16-17.
Aitken, G.A. (ed.), *Satires of Andrew Marvell, sometime Member of Parliament for Hull* (London and New York, 1892).
Statutes of the Realm, Vol. 5 (1628-80), Great Britain Record Commission (1819).
Inventory of the Historical Monuments in Westmorland (London, 1936).
Anderson, Robert, *Ballads in the Cumberland Dialect with Notes and a Glossary* (Carlisle, 1805).
Armitt, M.L., *The Church at Grasmere: A History* (Kendal, 1912).
Armstrong, A.M., A. Mawer, F.M. Stenton & Bruce Dickins, *The Place Names of Cumberland* 1. (Cambridge, 1950).
Baldwin, Martha R., 'Toads and Plague: Amulet Therapy in Seventeenth-Century Medicine', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine,* 67, 2 (Summer 1993), 227-247.
Bale, John, *Index Britanniae Scriptorum* (Oxford, 1902).
Banks, C.T., *Baronia Anglica Concentrata: or, A concentrated account of all the baronies commonly called baronies in fee; deriving their origin from writ of summons, and not from any specific limited creation, whereto is added the proofs of parliamentary sitting, from the reign of Edw. I to that of Queen Anne…,* Vol. I (Ripon, 1844).
Banks, Thomas C., *An Historical Account of the Ancient & Modern Forms, Pageantry, & Ceremony of the Coronation of the Kings of England* (London, 1820).
Barker, Juliet, *Conquest: The English Kingdom of France 1417-50* (Cambridge MA, 2012).
Bartsch, Shadi, *Persius, A Study in Food, Philosophy, and The Figural* (Chicago IL, 2015).
Bate, Keith, Malcolm Barber and Rosemary Horrox (eds), *The Templars. Selected sources translated and annotated* (Manchester, 2002).
Bateman, N., 'From rags to riches; the wool cloth trade and Blackwell Hall, c 1450-1790: a brief survey', *Post-medieval Archaeology* 38.1 (Museum of London Archaeology, 2004), 1-15.
Bath, Jo, and John Newton,
'Sensible Proof of Spirits: Ghost Belief during the Later 17th Century', *Folklore 117*, 1 (2006), 1-14.
Beck, Thomas Alcock, *Annales Furnesienses* (London, 1844).
Beddard, Robert, *A Kingdom without a King: The Journal of the Provisional Government in the Revolution of 1688* (Oxford, 1988).
Bennett, J.A., and Richard Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming, Esq., of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890).
Bingham, Roger, *Heversham – a History of Heversham's Oldest Recorded Church* (Milnthorpe, 1984).
———, *Kendal: A Social History* (Milnthorpe, 1995).
Birkbeck, Robert, *The Birkbecks of Westmorland and their Descendants* (London, 1900).
Blackstone, Sir William, *Commentaries on the Laws of England in Four Books* (1753) *(with notes selected from various later editions, and a Life of the Author by George Sharswood, in Two Volumes* (Philadelphia PA, 1893).
Bliss, Philip (ed.), Wood, Anthony à, *Athenae Oxonienses: an exact history of all the writers and bishops who have had their education in the University of Oxford: to which are added the Fasti, or Annals of the said University* (Oxford, 1632-1695) (London, 1813-20).
Bouch, C.M.L., *Prelates and People of the Lake counties: a History of the Diocese of Carlisle 1133-1933* (Kendal, 1948).
Boumphrey, R.S., C. Roy Hudleston and J. Hughes, *An Armorial for Westmorland and Lonsdale* CWAAS Extra Series XXI (Kendal, 1975).
Brathwate, Richard, and Joseph Haslewood (ed.) *Drunken Barnaby's Four Journeys to the North* (1818).
Breay, John, *The Light in the Dales* (Norwich, 1996).
Breeze, Andrew, *British Battles 493-937: Mount Badon to Brunanburh* (London, 2020).
Brinkley, Roberta Florence, *Arthurian Legend in the Seventeenth Century* (Baltimore MD, 1932).

British Museum, *A Catalogue of the Manuscripts in the Cottonian Library deposited in the British Museum* (1802).
Britnell, Richard (ed.), *Durham Priory Manorial Accounts, 1277-1310* (Woodbridge, 2015).
Broadway, Jan, *William Dugdale and the Significance of County History in the Early Stuart England* (Stratford-upon-Avon, 1999).
Broom, H., E. Hadley and W. Wait, *Commentaries on the Laws of England*, Vol. 1 (Albany NY, 1875).
Brown, F.C., F.A. Bourn & Hermann V. von Holst, *Study of the Orders* (Chicago IL,1906).
Brunskill, E.W., 'A Westmorland Family: Fortunes of the Philipsons', published as a series of three articles in the *Westmorland Gazette* (3 September 1927, 24 September 1927 and 1 October 1927).
Buckland F.T., *Birds and Bird Life* (London, 1863).
Bulmer, T., & Co., *History, Topography & Directory of Cumberland, 1901* (Preston, 1901).
Bunson, Matthew, *A Dictionary of the Roman Empire* (New York and Oxford, 1995).
Burke, John, and John Bernard Burke, *Encyclopædia of Heraldry: Or General Armory of England, Scotland, and Ireland* (London, 1844).
Burke, Sir Bernard, *A Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies of England, Ireland and Scotland* (London, 1838).
———, *A Genealogical History of the Dormant, Abeyant, Forfeited and Extinct Peerages of the British Empire* (London, 1866).
Bush, Michael, *The Pilgrims' Complaint: A Study of Popular Thought in the Early Tudor North* (Abingdon, 2009).
Carlos, Ann M., and Frank D. Lewis, *Commerce and a Frozen Sea: Native Americans and the European Fur Trade* (Philadelphia PA, 2010).
Carpenter, David A., *The Struggle for Mastery: Britain, 1066-1284*, (Oxford, 2003).
Cartwright, Thomas, *The Diary of Dr Thomas Cartwright, Bishop of Chester commencing at the time of his elevation to that see, August M. DC. LXXXVI. And terminating with the visitation of St. Mary Magdalene College, Oxford, October M. DC. LXXXVII* (Camden Society, London, 1843).
Casserly, David, *Massacre, The Storming of Bolton* (Stroud, 2010).
Catholic Record Society, *Records Volume 28: The Douay College Diaries: The Seventh Diary 1715-1778* (London, 1928).
Chambers Twentieth Century Dictionary (Edinburgh, 1950).
Chambers, William and Robert (eds), *Chambers's Information for the People*, Vol. 1. 5th edition (London and Edinburgh, 1874).
Cheviot, Andrew, *Proverbs, Proverbial Expressions, and Popular Rhymes of Scotland, collected and arranged with Introduction, Notes and Parallel Phrases* (Paisley and London, 1896).
Clark, Andrew (ed.), *The Life and Times of Anthony Wood, Antiquary of Oxford, 1632-1695, described by Himself, collected from his Diaries and other Papers, Volume 3 (1682-1695)* (Oxford, 1894).
Clarke, E.D., *Travels in various Countries of Europe, Asia and Africa. Part the Second: Greece, Egypt and the Holy Land,* 2nd edition (London, 1813).
Clarke, James, *A Survey of the Lakes of Cumberland, Westmorland, and Lancashire* (Penrith, 1787).
Clay, Agnes, 'Centumviri', in Hugh Chisholm (ed.), *Encyclopædia Britannica.* Vol. 5, 11th edition (Cambridge, 1910-11).
Cocker, M. and R. Mabey, *Birds Britannica* (London, 2005), 38.
Collingwood, W.G., *Elizabethan Keswick: Extracts from the Original Account Books, 1564-1577, of the German Miners in the Archives of Augsburg* (Kendal, 1912).
Colvin, Howard, *A biographical dictionary of British architects*, *1600-1840* (1st edition, London, 1978; 3rd edition, Newhaven CT, 1995).
Copper, Bob, *A Song for Every Season: A Hundred Years of a Sussex Farming Family* (London, 1971).
Coventry, Thomas, *A Readable Edition of Coke upon Littleton* (London, 1830).
Cross, F. L., & E.A. Livingstone (eds), *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church* (Oxford, 2005).

Currie, C.R.J., and C. P. Lewis (eds), *English County Histories: A Guide* (Stroud, 1994).
Curtis, Jared (ed.), *Collected Reading Texts from the Cornell Wordsworth III* (HEB, 209,2014).
Curwen, J.F., *The Castles and Fortified Towers of Cumberland, Westmorland, and Lancashire North of the Sands*, CWAAS Extra Series 13 (Kendal, 1913).
———, *Records Relating To the Barony of Kendal, 3*, CWAAS Record Series 6 (Kendal, 1926).
———, *The Later Records of North Westmorland or the Barony of Appleby* (Kendal, 1932).
Dale, Bryan, *The Good Lord Wharton* (London, 1906).
Darwall-Smith, Robin, 'The Problem of Georgian Oxford', *Histories of Universities XXXV/I* (Oxford, 2022).
Davies, C.S.L., 'Tournai and the English Crown, 1513-1519', *The Historical Journal*, 41, 1 (I998), I-26.
Ditchfield, Peter H., *Old English Customs extant at the Present Time: an account of local observances, festival customs and ancient ceremonies yet surviving* in *Great Britain* (1896).
Don, George, *A General History of the Dichlamydeous Plants,* Vol. 1 (London, 1831).
Douglas, David, *English Scholars 1660-1730*, revised edition (London, 1951).
Dowding, Geoffrey, *An introduction to the history of printing types; an illustrated summary of main stages in the development of type design from 1440 up to the present day: an aid to type face identification.* (London, 1962).
Drabble, Margaret, et al, *The Concise Oxford Companion to English Literature*, 3rd edition (Oxford, 2013).
Duckett, G.F., *A Description of the County of Cumberland taken in the year 1671 by Daniel Fleming*, CWAAS Tract Series I (London & Kendal, 1882).
Dugdale, William *Monasticon Anglicanum: a history of the abbies and other monasteries, hospitals, frieries, and cathedral and collegiate churches, with their dependencies, in England and Wales; also of all such Scotch, Irish and French monasteries, as were in manner connected with religious houses in England. Originally published in Latin by Sir William Dugdale,* Vols 5, 6 (London, 1846).
———, (ed. J.W. Clay) *Visitation of Yorkshire*, Vol. 3 (1917).
Ellacombe, Henry Nicholson, *The plant-lore and garden-craft of Shakespeare*, 2nd edition (1884).
Ellsburg, Robert, *Blessed Among Us: Day by Day with Saintly Witnesses* (Minnesota, 2016).
Englefield, W.A.D., *The History of the Painter-stainers Company of London* (London, 1924).
Ewbank, Jane M. (ed.), *Antiquary on Horseback. The First Publication of The Collections of the Rev. Thos. Machell Chaplain to King Charles II Towards a History of the Barony of Kendal*, CWAAS Extra Series XIX (Kendal, 1963).
Fagel, Raymond, Leonor Álvarez Francés, and Beatriz Santiago Belmonte (eds), *Early modern war narratives and the Revolt in the Low Countries* (Manchester, 2020).
Ferguson, R.S. (ed.), *Miscellany Accounts of the Diocese of Carlisle … by William Nicolson late Bishop of Carlisle,* CWAAS Extra Series, Vol. I (London and Carlisle, 1877).
———, *A History of Cumberland* (London, 1890).
———, (ed.), *A Cursory Relation of all the Antiquities & Familyes in Cumberland by* (ed.) *Edmund Sandford, circa*, *1675,* CWAAS Tract Series, Vol. IV (Kendal, 1890).
———, *A History of Westmorland* (London, 1894).
Ferguson, R.S., and W. Nanson (eds), *Some Municipal Records of the City of Carlisle*, CWAAS Extra Series, Vol. IV (Carlisle, 1887).
Ferguson, Robert, *The Northmen in Cumberland and Westmoreland* (London and Carlisle, 1856).
Fincham, Kenneth, and Nicholas Tyacke, *Altars Restored: The Changing Face of English Religious Worship, 1547-c.1700* (Oxford, 2007).
Fleet, C., M. Wilkes, C.W.J. Withers, *Scotland: Mapping the Nation* (Edinburgh, 2011).
Fleming, Le, Stanley Hughes, J.A, Bennett and R. Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. Le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890).
Flores, Lisa Pierce, *The History of Puerto Rico* (Santa Barbara CA, 2010).
Foley, R., 'League of Augsburg War', in *The Oxford Companion to Military History* (Oxford, 2001).
Ford, John R. (ed.), *The Beetham Repository 1770*, *by the Rev. William Hutton, Vicar of Beetham, 1762-1811*, CWAAS Tract Series 7 (Kendal, 1906).
Foreville, Raymond and Gillian Keir (eds), *The Book of St Gilbert* (Oxford, 1997).

Foster, Joseph (ed.), *The Visitation of Yorkshire, made in the years 1584/5 by Robert Glover, 1544-1588* (London, 1875).
———, (ed.), *Pedigrees Recorded at the Heralds' Visitations of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland made by Richard St George, Norroy, King of Arms in 1615 and by William Dugdale, Norroy, King of Arms in 1666* (Carlisle and Kendal, 1891).
Fox, Adam, 'Remembering the Past in Early Modern England: Oral and Written Tradition', *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society* 9 (1999), 233-56.
———, *Oral and Literate Culture in England 1500-1700* (Oxford, 2000).
———, 'Printed Questionnaires, Research Networks, and the Discovery of the British Isles, 1650–1800', *Historical Journal*, 53 (2010), 593–621.
———, 'Vernacular Culture and Popular Customs in Early Modern England: Evidence from Thomas Machell's Westmorland', *Cultural and Social History* 3 (2012), 329-47.
Fox-Davies, A.C., *A Complete Guide to Heraldry* (New York, 1978).
Fullarton, A & Co., *Topographical, Statistical and Historical Gazetteer of Scotland*, Vol. 1. (Glasgow, 1842).
Garnett, Emmeline, 'Mansergh', in F. Edmonds and S.A. Rose (eds), *The Victoria History of the Counties of England: A History of the County of Westmorland,* Vol. I (Martlesham, forthcoming).
Gee, Henry, and W.J. Hardy (eds), *Documents Illustrative of English Church History* (London, 1896).
Gemeticensis, Guilelmus 'Gesta Normannorum Ducum', *Oxford Medieval Texts 21* (Oxford, 1992, 1995).
George, Robert H., 'The Charters Granted to English Parliamentary Corporations in 1688', *English Historical Review* 55, 217 (Jan., 1940), 47-56.
Gibbins, Henry de Beltgens, *The Industrial History of England* (London, 1897).
Gibson, William, *A Social History of The Domestic Chaplain, 1530-1840* (London, 1997).
Goble, Rachel, 'The Execution of Perkin Warbeck', *History Today*, Vol. 49, 11 (November, 1999).
Gottfried, R.B., 'Samuel Daniel's Method of Writing History', *Studies in the Renaissance 3* (1956), 157-74.
Gough, Henry, *Glossary of Terms used in British Heraldry* (Oxford, 1847).
Gowling, Margaret E., *The Story of Brough-under-Stainmore* (Kirkby Stephen, 2011).
Grainger, Francis and W.G. Collingwood (eds), *The Register and Records of Holm Cultram*, CWAAS Record Series 7 (Kendal, 1929).
Gregg, Jane, *Ploughing in Latin: a History of Bampton* (Bampton, 2nd edn, 2012).
Halbertsma, R.B., *Scholars, Travellers, and Trade: The Pioneer Years of the National Museum of Antiquities in Leiden, 1818-1840* (Abingdon, 2003).
Hamper, William, *The Life, Diary and Correspondence of Sir William Dugdale* (London, 1827).
Harding, Vanessa, *The Dead and the Living in Paris and London 1500-1670* (Cambridge MA, 2002).
Headwind, Bertil, *The Dialect of Dentdale in the West Riding of Yorkshire* (Upsala, 1967).
Hector, L.C., *The Handwriting of English Documents* (London, 1958).
Henning, Basil Duke, *The History of Parliament: The House of Commons 1660-1690 III, Members M-Y* (London, 1983).
Hodgkinson, John, *The Greater Parish of Kendal, 1553-2002 during the patronage of Trinity College Cambridge* (Kendal, 2002).
Hodgson, J., *A Topographical and Historical Description of Westmorland* (London, 1810).
Holmes, John, *Descriptive Catalogue of Books in his Library*, Vol 2 (London, 1830).
Hooke, Della, *Trees in Anglo-Saxon England: Literature, Lore and Landscape* (Woodbridge, 2010).
Hornsey, I.S., *A History of Beer and Brewing* (Cambridge, 2003).
Howitt, William, *Cassell's Illustrated History of England II* (London, 1858).
Hudleston, C. Roy, and R.S. Boumphrey, *Cumberland Families and Heraldry* CWAAS Extra Series XXIII (Kendal, 1978).
Humber, R.D., *Heversham: The Story of a Westmorland School and Village* (Kendal, 1968).
Hunter, Joseph (ed.), *Letters of eminent men, addressed to Ralph Thoresby FRS*, Vol. 1 (London, 1832).
Hunter, Joseph (ed.), *The Diary of Ralph Thoresby FRS Author of The Topography of Leeds,1677-1724 in 2 Volumes,* Vol. 1 (London, 1830).

Hyde, M. and N. Pevsner, *Cumbria: Cumberland, Westmorland and Furness: The Buildings of England* (New Haven CT and London (2010).

Hyde, Thomas, *De Historia shahiludii tria scripta hebraica viz. Rabbi Abraham Aben-ezrae prelegans poema rythmicum, R. Bonseniora Ben-Jachiae facunda oratio profaica, liber deliciae regum prosa, stylo puriore, per anonymum. Omnia ex Chartis MSS jam primo deprompsit & Latine vertit Thomas Hyde* (Oxford, 1689). (Extended edition, Philip Bliss, ed., London 1820).

Ingram, John (ed.), *Elysium Britannicum, or The Royal Gardens* (Philadelphia PA, 2001).

Iverson, K.V., *Death to Dust: What Happens to Dead Bodies?* (Tucson AZ, 1994).

Jackson, Charles (ed.), *The Diary of Abraham De la Pryme, the Yorkshire Antiquary*, Surtees Society Vol. 54 (Durham, 1870).

Jago, F.W.P., *The Ancient Language, and the Dialect of Cornwall* (Truro, 1882).

James, M.R., *Eton and the King's Recollections, mostly trivial, 1875-1925* (Hastings, 2017).

Jamieson, John, *Supplement to the Etymological Dictionary of the Scots Language* (Edinburgh, 1841).

Jefferson, Samuel (ed.), *Isaac Tullie*, *A Narrative of the Siege of Carlisle, in 1644 and 1645* (Carlisle, 1840).

Jefferson, Samuel, *The History and Antiquities of Carlisle* (Carlisle and London, 1838).

Johnson, Michael, *Romance and the Gentry in Late Medieval England* (Oxford, 2014).

Johnston, Warren, *Revelation Restored*: *The Apocalypse in Later Seventeenth-Century England*, *Studies in Modern British Religious History 27* (Rochester NY, 2011).

Jones, Clement, *A* T*our in Westmorland* (1948).

Joyce, P.W., *Local Irish Names Explained* (Dublin, 1870).

Kamen, Henry, *Spain, 1469-1714: A Society of Conflict* (London and New York (1983, 2014).

Keeler, Mary Frear, *Sir Francis Drake's West-Indian Voyage 1585-86* (Farnham, 1981).

Kennedy, E.D., 'Brompton's Chronicle', in Graeme Dunphy and Cristian Bratu (eds), *Encyclopedia of the Medieval Chronicle* (2016).

Kinney, A.F., D. W. Swain, E. D. Hill and W. A. Long (eds), *The Routledge Encyclopedia of Tudor England* (New York, 2001).

Kinney, J. Kendrick, *A Law Dictionary and Glossary: Primarily for the Use of Students* (Chicago IL, 1893).

Kohanski, Tamarah, and C. David Benson (eds), *The Book of John Mandeville* (Kalamazoo MI, 2007).

Kopel, David B., 'The Posse Comitatus and the Office of Sheriff: armed citizens summoned to the aid of law enforcement', *Journal of Criminal Law and Criminology*, 104, 4 (1973), 761.

Landau, Norma, *The Justices of the Peace, 1679-1760* (London, 1984).

Latham, R.E., *Revised Medieval Word-List from British and Irish Sources* (Oxford, 1965, 1989).

Lecky, Katarzyna, *Pocket Maps and Public Poetry in the English Renaissance* (Oxford, 2019).

Lewis, Samuel, *A Topographical Dictionary of England comprising the several counties, cities, boroughs, corporate and market towns, parishes, and townships*, 7th edition (London, 1848).

Long, Jacqueline, 'Julia-jokes at Macrobius's *Saturnalia*: Subversive decorum in late antique reception of augustan political humor.' *International Journal of the Classical Tradition* 6:3 (1999), 337-55.

Loyd, Lewis C., and Doris M. Stenton (eds), *Sir Christopher Hatton's Book of Seals* (Oxford,1950).

Luard, Henry R. (ed.), *Monachi Sancti Albani: Chronica Majora*, seven vols (London, 1872-83), *Vol. 3* (London, 1876).

Lucas, Peter, *The Rise of the Quakers: Revaluing the place of Preston Patrick in the early movement* (Kirkby Lonsdale, 2017).

Lyte, Maxwell, Stanley Hughes Le Fleming, James Arthur Bennett and Richard Ward (eds), *The Manuscripts of S.H. le Fleming Esq. of Rydal Hall* (London, 1890).

Macpherson, H.A., *A Vertebrate Fauna of Lakeland: including Cumberland and Westmorland with Lancashire North of the Sands* (Edinburgh, 1892).

Magrath J.R. (ed.), *The Flemings in Oxford I* (Oxford, 1904).

———, *The Flemings in Oxford: Being Documents selected from the Rydal Papers in Illustration of the Lives and Ways of Oxford Men, 1650-1700, Vol. II, 1680-1690* (Oxford, 1913).

———, *The Queen's College*, 2 vols (Oxford, 1921).
Maitland, F.W., 'Northumbrian Tenures', *English Historical Review.* Vol. V., Issue XX, (1 October 1890), 625-632.
Malay, Jessica (ed.), *Anne Clifford's Autobiographical Writing, 1590-1676* (Manchester, 2018).
Malden, H.E. (ed.), *A History of the County of Surrey*, Vol. 2 (London, 1967).
Mannex, P.J., *History, Topography, and Directory of Westmorland; and Lonsdale North of the Sands in Lancashire* (London, 1849).
Mehl, Andreas (tr. Hans Friedrich Mueller), *Roman Historiography: An Introduction to its Basic Aspects and Development* (Oxford, 2014).
Mendyk, Stan A.E., *Speculum Britanniae: Regional Study, Antiquarianism and Science in Britain to 1700* (Toronto, Buffalo NY, London, 1989).
Merriton, George, *Nomenclatura Clericalis: or the Young Clerk's Vocabulary in English Latine …* (1685).
Metcalfe, R.W., *The Ravenstonedale Parish Registers* (Kendal, 1894).
Miller, George, *On Fairness and Efficiency: the privatisation of the public income during the past millennium* (Bristol, 2000).
Moorman, F.W., *The Place-Names of the West Riding of Yorkshire*, Thoresby Society (Leeds, 1910).
Morgan, M. H., (Translator & ed.) *Vitruvius Pollio, The Ten Books on Architecture* (Cambridge MA, 1914).
Morrill, John (ed.), *The Oxford Illustrated History of Tudor and Stuart Britain* (Oxford, 2000).
Morris, W.P., *Records of Patterdale, Historical and Descriptive* (1903).
Mullett, Michael A., *John Bunyan in Context* (Pittsburgh PA, 1997).
———, *Patronage, Power and Politics in Appleby in the era of Lady Anne Clifford, 1649-1689*, CWAAS Tract Series 25 (Kendal, 2015).
———, *A New History of Penrith 1: From Pre-History to the Close of the Middle Ages* (Carlisle, 2017).
———, *A New History of Penrith, III: Penrith in the Stuart Century 1603-1714* (Carlisle, 2018).
———, *Carlisle in Revolution and Restoration, c.1648-1688*, CWAAS Tract Series 30 (Kendal, 2022).
Murfin, Lyn, *Popular Leisure in the Lake Counties* (Manchester, 1990).
Nicholls, W., *The History and Traditions of Ravenstonedale, Westmorland* (Manchester, 1877).
Nicholson, Cornelius, *The Annals of Kendal: being a historical and descriptive account of Kendal and the Neighbourhood, with biographical sketches of many eminent personages connected with the town* (London and Kendal, 1832, 1861).
Nicholson, Helen, *The Knights Hospitaller* (Woodbridge, 2001).
Nicolas, Sir Harris, *History of The Earldoms of Strathern, Monteith, and Airth* (London and Edinburgh, 1842).
Nightingale, B., *The Ejected of 1662 in Cumberland and Westmorland, their Predecessors and Successors,* 2 vols (Manchester, 1911).
Norcliffe, C.B., (ed.), *The Visitation of Yorkshire in the years 1563 and 1564 made by William Flower Esquire, Norroy, King of Arms* (Harleian Soc. XVI, London, 1881).
Nugent, Charles, 'Cross-Head of the 17th century Market Cross, Ambleside, bearing the initials of Gawen Brathwaite and the date 1651, later converted into a sundial', *Armitt Library and Museum Exhibition label*, 2017.
Nurse, E.J., *History of the Parish Church Windermere* (Bowness-on-Windermere, 1908).
Nuttall, P.A. (ed.), Thomas Fuller, *History of the Worthies of England*, Vol. 3 (1840).
O. Hehir, Brendan, *Harmony from Discords: A Life of Sir John Denham* (Berkeley and Los Angeles CA, 1968).
Palliser, D.M., *Tudor York* (Oxford, 1979).
Papworth, J.W., and A.W.W. Morant, *An alphabetical Dictionary of the Coats of Arms belonging to Families in Great Britain and Ireland, forming an Ordinary of British Armorials* (London, 1874).
Papworth, W., *Gwilt's Encyclopaedia of Architecture* (1867).
Parkinson, Anne C., *A History of Catholicism in the Furness Peninsula, 1127-1997* (Lancaster, 1998).

Parry, Graham, *Trophies of Time: English Antiquarians of the seventeenth century* (Oxford, 1995 and 2007).
Parson, William and William White, *History, Directory, and Gazetteer, of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland, with that Part of the Lake District in Lancashire, forming the Lordships of Furness and Cartmel* (Leeds, 1829).
Payn, James, *Furness Abbey and its Neighbourhood* (Windermere and London, 1858).
Penman, Jane, *Studies in the History of Martindale* (forthcoming).
Perriam, Denis R. and John Robinson, The *Medieval Fortified Buildings of Cumbria,* CWAAS Extra series XXIX (Kendal, 1998).
Phillips, C.B., The Corporation of Kendal under Charles II', *Northern History* 31 (1995), 157-77.
Piggott, Stuart, *William Stukeley: An Eighteenth-Century Antiquary*, 2nd edition (London, 1985).
Placzek, Adolf K. (ed.), *Andrea Palladio*, *The Four Books of Architecture* (New York, 1965).
Platt, Jane (ed.), *The Diocese of Carlisle 1814-1855: Chancellor Walter Fletcher's 'Diocesan Book' with additional material from Bishop Percy's parish notebooks* (Woodbridge, 2015).
Pollock, F., and F.M. Maitland, *The History of English Law Before the Time of Edward I* (Cambridge, 1895).
Pond, Enoch, *Treatise on Christian Baptism* (Boston MA, 1833).
Poole, William, 'A royalist mathematical practitioner in interregnum Oxford: the exploits of Richard Rawlinson', *The Seventeenth Century* 33, 5 (2018), 557-86.
Powlett, Catherine Lucy Wilhelmina, duchess of Cleveland, *History of Battle Abbey* (London, 1877).
Prescott, J.E. (ed.), *The Register of the Priory of Wetherhal*, CWAAS Record Series I (London, 1897).
Raines, F.R. (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancaster, made in the year 1613 by Sir Richard Saint-George, College of Arms,* Chetham Soc. (Manchester, 1871).
Raines, F.R. (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancaster made in the year 1664-5 by Sir William Dugdale, Knight, Norroy, King of Arms, Part 2*, Chetham Society (Manchester, 1872).
Raines, F.R. (ed.), *The Visitation of the County Palatine of Lancaster made in the year 1567 by William Flower Esq. Norroy King of Arms* (Chetham Soc., Manchester, 1870)].
Reames, Sherry L., *The Legenda Aurea: A Re-examination of its Paradoxical History* (Madison WI, 1985).
Rees, Thomas H, *Notable Welshmen 1700-1900, with Brief Notes in chronological order* (London, 1908).
Relph, J.T., *Chronicles of Crosby Ravensworth* (Crosby Ravensworth, 1992).
Report of the Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts, Vol. 3 (London, 1872).
Richardson, Douglas, *Plantagenet Ancestry: A Study In Colonial And Medieval Families*, 2nd edition (Baltimore, 2011).
Riley, Henry T., (translator and ed.), *Ingulph's Chronicle of the Abbey of Croyland with the Continuations by Peter de Blois and anonymous writers* (London,1854).
Roberts, William, *The Book-hunter in London: Historical and other Studies of Collectors and Collecting* (Chicago IL, 1895).
Robinson, Gavin, *Horses, People and Parliament in the English Civil War: Extracting Resources and Constructing Allegiance* (London, 2012, 2016).
Roebuck, Thomas, 'Edmund Gibson's 1695 Britannia and Late-Seventeenth-Century British Antiquarian Scholarship', *Erudition and the Republic of Letters* Volume 5: Issue 4 (Oct 2020), 427-481.
Rogers, James E.T., *Education in Oxford* (1861).
Rollinson, William, *Dictionary of Cumbrian Dialect, Tradition and Folklore* (Otley, 1997).
Roper, W.O., The Daltons of Thurnham', *Transactions of the Historic Society of Lancashire and Cheshire* (New Series 6, 1892), 97-124.
Eaman, Ross, *Historical Dictionary of Journalism*, 2nd edition (London, 2021).
Rowlands, Marie B. (ed.), *English Catholics of Parish and Town 1558-1788* (London, 1999).
Rutt, J.T. (ed.), *Diary of Thomas Burton*, 4 vols. (London, 1828).
Rydal Hall, Historical Manuscripts Commission Twelfth Report, Appendix Part VII (London, 1890), 200.

Salter, H.E., and Mary D. Lobel (eds), 'St. Edmund Hall', in *A History of the County of Oxford: Volume 3, The University of Oxford,* (London, 1954).
Salway, Peter, *The Oxford Illustrated History of Roman Britain* (Oxford, 1993).
Sanders, F., and W.F. Irvine (eds), *Wirral Notes and Queries … Relating to the Hundred of Wirral, Vol. 1* (Birkenhead, 1892).
Saunders, J., *Cabinet Pictures of English Life: Chaucer* (London, 1845).
Scott, Sir Walter, *Marmion, A Tale of Flodden Field* (Edinburgh and London, 1808).
———, *The Works of Walter Scott, Esq: Volume 9,* (Edinburgh, 1813).
Scriven, John, *A Practical Treatise on Copyhold Tenure and Court-Keeping* (London, 1816).
Scurr, Ruth, *John Aubrey: My Own Life* (London, 2015).
Shackleton Bailey, D.R. (ed.), *Martial. Epigrams, Volume I: Spectacles, Books 1-5*, *Loeb Classical Library 94* (Cambridge MA, 1993).
Simpson, James, 'The Antiquities of Shap in the county of Westmorland', *Archaeological Journal* 18 (1861).
Skemer, Don C., *Binding Words: Textual Amulets in the Middle Ages* (State College PA, 2006).
Skene, William F. (ed.), *John of Fordun's Chronicle of the Scottish Nation,* tr. Felix James Henry Skene (Edinburgh, 1872).
Smith, A.H., *The Place-Names of Westmorland*, Vols XLII (1) and XLIII (2), English Place-Name Society (Cambridge, 1965-66).
Smith, C.C., 'Vulgar Latin in Roman Britain: Epigraphic and other evidence', in Wolfgang Haase (ed.), *Sprache und Literatur (Sprachen und Schriften [Forts])* (Berlin and New York, 1983).
Smith, William W., *A Complete Etymology of the English Language* (New York and Chicago IL, 1873).
Society for the Benefit of the Sons and Daughters of the Clergy in Scotland*, The New Statistical Account of Scotland by the Ministers of the Respective Parishes: Vol. X Perth* (Edinburgh and London, 1845).
Sowerby, Scott, and Noah McCormack (eds), *The Memoirs of Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall from 1633 to 1688*, CWAAS Record Series 23 (Kendal, 2021).
Sowerby, Scott, *Making Toleration: The Repealers and the Glorious Revolution* (Cambridge MA, 2013).
Speake, Jennifer (ed.), *The Oxford Dictionary of Proverbs,* 6th edition (Oxford, 2015).
Spufford, Margaret, *Small Books and Pleasant Histories: Popular Fiction and its Readership in seventeenth-century England* (Cambridge, 1981).
Starnes, DeWitt T., and Gertrude E. Noyes, *The English Dictionary from Cawdrey to Johnson*, 1604-1755 (Amsterdam and Philadelphia PA, 1991).
Steele, Andrew, *The Natural and Agricultural History of Peat-Moss or Turf-Bog* (Edinburgh, 1826).
Stephenson, Michael, *The Gilbertine Priory of Watton*, Borthwick Paper 116 (York, 2009).
Sterling A. Stoudemire (ed.) Oviedo, *La Natural hystoria de las Indias* (*The Natural History of the West Indies*) (Chapel Hill NC, 1959).
Stewart, Rory, *Politics on the Edge* (London, 2023).
Stewart, William, *A Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland or a metrical version of the History of Hector Boece II* (London, 1858).
Stockdale, James, *Annales Caermoelenses or Annals of Cartmel* (Ulverston and London,1872).
Stone, Daniel, *The Polish-Lithuanian State, 1386-1795* (Washington D.C., 2014).
Strutt, Joseph, *The Sports and Pastimes of the People of England* (London, 1876).
Summerson, Henry, *English Heritage Guides: Brougham and Brough Cas*tles (London, 1999).
Summerson, John (ed.) 'The Book of Architecture of John Thorpe in Sir John Soane's Museum', *The Walpole Society, Vol. XL* (1964-66).
Sweet, Rosemary, *Antiquaries: The Discovery of the Past in 18th-century Britain* (London and N.Y, 2004).
Taylor, Michael Waistell, *The Old Manorial Halls of Westmorland and Cumberland*, CWAAS Extra Series VIII (Kendal, 1892).
Thompson, W.N. (ed.) *The Register of John de Halton*, 2 vols, CWAAS Record Series II (Kendal, 1913).

Thomas, J.H., *A Systematic Arrangement of Lord Coke's First Institute of the Laws of* England, Vol. 3 (Philadelphia PA, 1836).
Thomas, Mark, *A History of Brougham Hall and High Head Castle* (Chichester, 1992).
Thompson, W.N. (ed.), *Register of John de Halton III* (London, 1913).
Thomson, Edward M. (ed.), *Correspondence of the Family of Hatton, being chiefly Letters addressed to Christopher, first Viscount Hatton, A.D. 1601-1704*, 2 vols., Camden Society, London, 1878).
Timms, Samuel, *The Family Topographer: a compendious account of the anciemt state of the counties of* England, *VI, Northern Circuit* (London, 1837).
Tjondrowardojo, Yudha Thianto,'Stories Baptismal Registers Told: Private Baptism in Seventeenth-Century England', *History*, 95, 2 (318) (April, 2010), 177-93.
Todd, H.J. (ed.), *A Dictionary of the English Language by Samuel Johnson; with numerous corrections …* (London, 1818).
Toulmin Smith, Lucy (ed.), *The Itinerary of John Leland in or about the Years 1535-1543*, 5 vols. (1907-10, reprinted 1964).
Trevallyn Jones, G.F., *Saw-pit Wharton: The Political Career from 1640 to 1691 of Philip, Fourth Lord Wharton* (Sydney, 1967).
Tynemouth, John of, John Capgrave, Wynkyn de Worde and Carl Horstmann, *Nova legenda Anglie* Vol. II (Oxford, 1901).
Tyson, Blake, 'John Adams's Cartographic Correspondence to Sir Daniel Fleming of Rydal Hall, Cumbria. 1676-1687', *Royal Geographical Society Journal*, 151 (March 1985).
Van der Lem. Anton, and Andy Brown, *Revolt in the Netherlands: the Eighty Years' War, 1568-1648*, E book (28 February 2019), 9781789140880.
Victoria County History, *County of Lancaster*, Vol 8, eds William Farrer and J Brownbill (London, 1914).
Victoria County History, *Somerset*, Vol. 10, ed. Mary Siraut (Woodbridge, 2010).
Walbesser, Jordan, 'Of Camelopards and Camelopardels', in *Coat of Arms: The Annual Journal of the Heraldry Society*, 4th Series, Vol. IV. (2021).
Walker, S, *Nine Standards: Ancient Cairns or Modern Folly?* (Kirkby Stephen, 2008).
Walsh, Michael J., *Dictionary of Christian Biography* (London and New York, 2001).
Wedd, Jackie, *Ravenstonedale and the Gilbertines* (forthcoming).
Weston, David W.V., *Carlisle Cathedral History* (Carlisle, 2000).
———, David W.V., *Thomas Smith, Dean of Carlisle 1672-1684; Bishop of Carlisle: 1684 to 1702* (Carlisle, 2020).
Wharton, Pauline, *The Disappearing Yeoman: Windermere 1640-1841* (self-published, Amazon, 2017).
Whatley, L.J. (ed.), *A Companion to Seals in the Middle Ages* (Leiden and Boston MA, 2019).
Whellan, William, *The History and Topography of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmorland* (1860).
Wilson, J. (ed.) *Victoria County History. A History of the County of Cumberland*, Vol. 2 (London, 1905).
Winchester, Angus J.L, *The Harvest of the Hills: Rural Life in Northern England and the Scottish Borders, 1400-1700* (Edinburgh, 2000).
———, (ed.), *John Denton's History of Cumberland*, Surtees Society Vol. 213 (Durham, 2010).
Winchester, Angus J.L., and Mary Wane (eds), *Thomas Denton*: *A Perambulation of Cumberland, 1687-8, including descriptions of Westmorland, the Isle of Man and Ireland*, Surtees Soc. 207 (Woodbridge, 2003).
Wordie, J.R., 'The Chronology of English Enclosure 1500-1914', *The Economic History Review 2,* Vol. XXXVI, 4, (Nov. 1983), 483-505.
Wordsworth, William, 'An Evening Walk'*, Poems in 2 Vols,* Vol. 1 (London, 1815).
———, 'Siege of Vienna Raised by John Sobieski, in Helen Darbishire and Ernest De Selincourt (eds), *The Poetical Works of William Wordsworth, Vol. 3* (Oxford, 1946).
Wright, Joseph, *The English Dialect Dictionary, being the complete vocabulary of all dialect words still in use, or known to have been in use during the last two hundred years* (London, 1898-1905).

Wright, S.J., 'Easter books and parish rate books: a new source for the urban historian', in David Reeder (ed.), *Urban History Yearbook* (Leicester, 1985).
Wright, Thomas, *Biographica Britannia Literaria: Anglo-Saxon Period* (London, 1842).
Wright, Thomas (ed.), *Early Travels in Palestine* (London, 1848).
Zook, Melinda, *Protestantism, Politics and Women in Britain, 1660-1714* (Basingstoke, 2013).

CWAAS Articles

Armitt, M.L., 'Ambleside Town and Chapel: Some Contributions towards their History', *CW2*, 6 (1906), 1-96.
Barker, Paul, 'The Reverend Thomas Machell's complaint: July 2d. 1690' *CW2*, 89 (1989), 179-81.
Barnes, Henry, 'Visitations of the Plague in Cumberland and Westmorland', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 158-86.
Bellasis, E., 'Machell of Crackenthorpe', *CW1*, 8 (1886). 416-67.
———, 'Strickland of Sizergh', *CW1*, 10 (1889), 75-94.
———, *Westmorland Church Notes, being the heraldry, epitaphs, and other inscriptions in the thirty-two ancient parish churches and churchyards of that county*, *2 vols* (Kendal, 1888 and 1889).
Bevan, Bill, 'Nick Stick Seat, Great Langdale', *CW2*, 89 (1989), 281.
Birley, Eric, 'Notes: Thomas Machell and Hadrian's Wall?', *CW2*, 51 (1951), 181-82.
———, 'A Roman Inscription from Watercrook', *CW2*, 55 (1955) 46.
———, 'The Guys of Kendal and Watercrook', *CW2*, 58 (1958), 94-104.
Bishop of Barrow in Furness, 'Bishop Nicolson's Diaries, Part II', *CW2* (1902), 155-230.
Blackett-Ord, Mark, 'Lord Wharton's deer-park walls', *CW2*, 86 (1986), 133-39.
———, 'Growth of a Manor House: the early history of Warcop Hall, 1580-1745', *CW3,* 20 (2020), 137-50.
Bouch, C.M.L., 'Ninekirks Brougham', *CW2*, 50 (1950), 80-81.
Bower, R., 'Notes on the Kirkby Thore Registers', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 372-386.
Brown, R.P., 'Bainbrig of Hawkin in Middleton, Westmorland', *CW2*, xxiv (1924), 123-49.
———, 'Christopher Wood's inscription in Kirkby Lonsdale Church', *CW2*, 25 (1925), 321-30.
———, 'Thomas Langton and his Tradition of Learning', *CW2*, xxvi (1926), 150-246.
———, 'The Vicars of Kirkby Lonsdale', *CW2*, 29 (1929), 166-92.
———, *Edward Wilson of Nether Levens (1557-1653) and his kin*, CWAAS Tract Series 12 (Kendal, 1930).
Budden, Lionel, 'Some Notes on the History of Appleby Grammar School', *CW2*, 39 (1939), 227-61.
Butler, F.J., 'Chronological Record of Tytup Hall and Bibliography of Father West, S.J.', *CW2*, 42 (1942), 180-82.
Carmichael, T.A., 'Bolton Church', *CW2*, 27 (1927), 188-94.
Charlesworth, Haydn, 'The medieval Parks of Brough-under-Stainmore', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 169-90.
Chippindall, W.H., 'The Tatham families of Burrow, Tunstall, Cantsfield and Lowfield', *CW2*, 33 (1933), 98-112.
Clarke, Peter D., 'The Sectarian "Threat" and its Impact in Restoration Cumbria', *CW2*, 88 (1988), 161-76.
Collingwood, W.G., '"The Fatall Nuptiall," a Tract (by Richard Brathwaite?) on the Windermere ferry accident of 1635', *CW2*, 13 (1913), 147-159.
Colman, C.S. 'The Paralysis of the Cumberland and Westmorland Army in the First Civil War *c*.1642-45', *CW3*, 1 (2001).
Cowper, H.S., 'Cawmire or Comer Hall', *CW2*, 1 (1901), 119-28.
———, 'Notes on Richard Braithwaite of Burneside, the Poet and Writer, and his Portraits', *CW2*, 22 (1922), 79-84.
Cresswell, Lionel, 'Crackenthorpe: Its Manor Hall and the Machell Family', *CW2*, 33 (1933), 113-32.
Duckett, G.F (ed.), 'The Sheriffs of Westmorland, with the early Sheriffs of Cumberland', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 285-305.
Fahy, T.G., 'The Philipson family II: Philipson of Crook Hall', *CW2*, 73 (1973), 150-213.
Farrer, William, and John F Curwen (eds), *Records Relating to the Barony of Kendale 2,* CWAAS Record Series 5, (Kendal, 1924).

Ferguson, Charles J., 'The Development of Domestic Architecture: Rose Castle and Dalston Hall', *CWI*, 2 (1876), 152-71.
Ferguson, R.S., 'Notes on the Heraldic Visitations of Cumberland and Westmorland', *CWI*, 2 (1876), 20-27.
———, 'Wills relating to the Dean and Chapter Library at Carlisle. Wills of Rev. T. Machell, Bishops Smith and Nicolson, and Joseph Nicolson', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 1-12.
———, 'Windermere (Bowness) Parish Church, and its Old Glass', *CW1*, 4 (1880), 47.
Gordon, C.J., 'Crosby Ravensworth Church', *CW2*, 8 (1908), 203-33.
Graham, T.H.B., and W.G. Collingwood, 'Patron Saints of the Diocese of Carlisle', *CW2*, 25 (1925), 1-27.
Haswell, Francis, 'Cliburn Hall', *CW2*, 12 (1912), 126-30.
———, 'The Family of Dalston, *CW2*, 10 (1910), 201-70.
Heelis, John, 'Kirkby Thore Church', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 314-22.
Hewitson, W., 'The Appleby Charters', *CW1*, 11 (1891), 279-85.
Hudleston, C. Roy, 'Thomas Machell, his wife and children and his Whelpdale stepchildren', *CW2*, 70 (1970), 110-45.
Jackson, W., 'The Dudleys of Yanwath', *CW1*, 9 (1888), 318-32.
Kipling, Charlotte, 'The Commercial Fisheries of Windermere', *CW2*, 72 (1972), 156-204.
Lucas, Peter, 'A South Westmorland Medieval Holy Well? The Case of St. Gregory's Well, Preston Patrick', *CW3*, 14 (2014), 125-28.
Mathews, Arnold, 'St Lawrence's Church, Appleby', *CW1*, 8 (1886), 396-403.
Mawson, D.J.W., 'Dr Hugh Todd's account of the Diocese of Carlisle', *CW2*, 88 (1988), 207-24.
Parsons, M.A., 'The Brownes of Townend and the Township of Troutbeck 1500-1750', *CW3*, 2 (2002), 171-82.
Phythian-Adams, Charles, 'From Peoples to Regional Societies: The Problem of Early Medieval Cumbrian Identities', *CW3*, 11 (2011), 51-64.
Ragg, Frederick W., 'Helton Flechan, Askham and Sandford of Askham', *CW2,* 21 (1921), 174-233.
Robinson, Jeremy R., and Kevin Grice, 'Cunswick Hall: an archaeological and historical survey of a Lakeland manor', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 149-68.
Roebuck, Peter, 'Cattle-droving through Cumbria after the Union: the Stances on the Musgrave Estate, 1707-12', *CW3,* 12 (2012), 143-58.
Rogan, John and Eric Birley, 'Thomas Machell the Antiquary', *CW2*, 55 (1955), 123-53.
Rose, Sarah, 'The Barony of Kendal', *CW3*, 15 (2015), 45-56.
Simpson, James, 'Brougham Castle', *CWI*, 1 (1870), 60-70.
Simpson, Rev. W., 'Appleby Castle', *CW1*, 1 (1874), 242-54.
Simpson, W. Douglas, 'The town and castle of Appleby: a morphological study', *CW2*, 49 (1949), 118-33.
T.G.F., 'Recent Publications 2. *Antiquary on Horseback* (1964) T.G.F.', *CW2*, 64 (1964), 414.
Taylor, Michael Waistell, 'Manorial Halls in Westmorland', *CW1*, 12 (1893), 24-27.
Turnbull, P., and D. Walsh, 'Monastic Ruins at Ravenstonedale', *CW2*, 92 (1992), 67-76.
Tyson, Blake, 'Some Cumbrian Builders, 1670-1780', *CW2*, 96 (1996), 161-66.
———, 'St. John's Well and Chapel, Skelsmergh: their location and present condition', *CW2,* 98 (1998), 156-67.
———, 'The first Market House at Bowness-on-Windermere, 1692', *CW3,* 17 (2007), 107-112.
Wallis, P.J., 'Westmorland schools about 1676: Christopher Wase's Survey', *CW2,* 67 (1967), 168-85.
Ware, Canon, 'Notes upon the parish church of Kirkby Lonsdale', *CW1*, 21 (1870), 189-203.
Weston, G.F., 'The Præmonstratensian Abbey of St. Mary. Magdalene at Shap, Westmorland. Part I. Historical', *CWI*, 10 (1899), 286-298.
White, Andrew, '"For his extraordinary paines in beutifying the church." The work of James Addison of Hornby, church painter', *CW3*, 18 (2018), 191-200.
Winchester, Angus J.L., 'Personal Names and Local Identities in Early Modern Cumbria', *CW3*, 11 (2011), 29-50.
Wiseman, W. G., 'The Medieval Hospitals of Cumbria', *CW2*, 87 (1987), 83-100.
Wright, Alison, 'Loyalty and Tradition II. Networking among the north-western Catholic Gentry, 1640-1720: The Case of the Layburnes', *CW3*, 14 (2014), 103-24.

Other Periodicals

Aylesbury News, 19 July 1856.
Church Times, 9 May 2014.
Country Life, 8 June 1961.
Economic History Review 2, Vol. XXXVI, 4 November1983.
Gentleman's Magazine (1791).
History Today, 55, 7 July 2005.
Independent Catholic News, 2 October 2018.
London Gazette. 30 June 1687.
Mail (Cumbria) 26 May 2019.
Notes and Queries, Vol. 11, Series VIII (12 July 1913).
Philosophical Transactions 14, 158 (1684).
Philosophical Transactions, Vol. 61, Part 1 (1771).
Proceedings of the Antiquaries of Newcastle-upon-Tyne, Vol. II (South Shields, 1887).
Science Daily, 22 September, 2010.
Spectator, 15 February 1873.
Transactions of the Historic Society of Lancashire and Cheshire, Vol. XLIV (1892).
Westmorland Gazette, 3, 24 September; 1 October 1927.

Theses

Churches, Christine, 'Daniel Fleming, Richard Scottt and James Cocke: the making of a 17th Century English Provincial Library'. Thesis presented as part requirement for an Honours Degree in History (University of Adelaide, 1984).

Claydon, Anthony M., 'Courtly Reformation: Williamite Propaganda after the Glorious Revolution in England'. Thesis submitted for the PhD (London University, 1993).

Griffin, Tristan A.R., 'Culture, Conflict, and Northern English Fortification in the British Civil Wars, Circa 1638-1652'. Thesis submitted for the PhD (Cambridge University, 2020).

Newman, P.R., 'The Royalist Army in Northern England 1642-45', 2 vols. Thesis submitted for the D.Phil. (University of York, 1978).

Reed, Daniel, 'Patronage, Performance, and Reputation in the Eighteenth-Century Church'. Thesis submitted for the PhD (Oxford Brookes University, 2019).

Wright, Alison, 'The Layburnes and their World circa 1620-1720, The English Catholic Community and the House of Stuart'. Thesis submitted for the PhD (University of St Andrews, 2002).

Maps

Bowen, E. and Kitchin, T., *A New Map of the Counties of Cumberland and Westmoreland Divided into their Respective Wards, scale about 4 miles to 1 inch* (London, 1760).

Ordnance Survey Map, 1st edition (1859-1863) Westmorland, sheet VII.

Websites

Early English Books Online

'Two letters from Scotland giving a true relation of the unhappy loss of the Gloucester-frigot, whereof Sir John Berry was commander: with a particular account of the persons of quality drowned therein, and the miraculous escape of His Royal Highness the Duke of York.' https://name.umdl.umich.edu/A64017.0001.001

British History Online

Kendal Barony — https://www.british-history.ac.uk/kendale-barony/vol2/pp374-397.

Highgate — https://www.british-history.ac.uk/vch/middx/vol6/pp122-135.

The Law Courts and the Old Palace Yard, London — https://www.british-history.ac.uk/old-new-london/vol3/pp560-567

English Heritage
National Heritage List for England http://list.english-heritage.org.uk
Brough Castle https://www.english-heritage.org.uk/visit/places/brough-castle/history/description/

Historic England
Historic England Listing https://historicengland.org.uk/listing
Historic England Research Records https://www.heritagegateway.org.uk.
Battle of Towton 1461 https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/list-entry/1000040?section=official-list-entry
Battle of Solway Moss 1542 https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the 1542list/list-entry/1000034?section=official-list-entry.
Garnett House, Burneside, Kendal https://historicengland.org.uk/listing/the-list/list-entry/1479032?section=official-list-entry.

TNA Collections https://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk.
Lord Brudenell https://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/c/F45645.
Domesday Book https://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/domesday/

Bodleian Library, Oxford https://archives.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/repositories/2/resources/7563.

Metropolitan Archives
The Arms of the City of London
https://search.lma.gov.uk/scripts/mwimain.dll/144/RESEARCH_GUIDES/web_detail_rg/SISN+15?SESSIONSEARCH#coll1

Westminster Abbey http://www.westminster-abbey.org/archive/visit-us/highlights/the-coronation-chair.

Borthwick Institute https://www.york.ac.uk/borthwick/holdings/guides/research-guides/probate-courts/.

British Museum
Armathwaite: View of Armathwaite Bay in Cumberland (after 1758)
https://www.britishmuseum.org/collection/object/P_1869-0612-528.

Royal Society
Pete Wilton, 'Oxford and the Royal Society's Origins',
https://www.ox.ac.uk/news/science-blog/oxford-and-royal-society%E2%80%99s-origins (2010).

Harvard Law School Library
amesfoundation.law.harvard.edu/Bracton.

Parliament, History of, Online
Lowther, Sir John https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1690-1715/member/lowther-sir-john-1655-1700.

Fane, Hon, Sir Vere http://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1690-1715/member/fane-hon-sir-vere-1645-93.
Grahme (Graham), James
http://www.histparl.ac.uk/volume/1690-1715/member/grahme-%28graham%29-james-1650-1730
Hutton, Richard https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1604-1629/member/hutton-richard-1594-1645

Tufton, Hon. Thomas	https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/tufton-hon-thomas
Fletcher, Sir George	https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/fletcher-sir-george-1633-1700
Strickland, Sir Thomas	https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/strickland-sir-thomas-1621-94.
Rawlinson, Curwen	https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1660-1690/member/rawlinson-curwen-1641-89
Pickering, Christopher	https://www.historyofparliamentonline.org/volume/1558-1603/member/pickering-christopher-1556-1621
Hansard	https://hansard.parliament.uk/Commons/1820-06-28/debates
'The Education of the Poor'	https://hansard.parliament.uk/Commons/1820-06-28/debates/7d773019-40a4-4b69-9808-

Adoption of the Gregorian Calendar
https://www.nottingham.ac.uk/manuscriptsandspecialcollections/researchguidance/datingdocuments

Cambridge
Masters of Christ's College, Cambridge
https://www.christs.cam.ac.uk/masters-christs-college-1505. N
St John's College, Cambridge
https://www.joh.cam.ac.uk/masters-st-johns-college-cambridge
Cambridge Alumni Database at 'Ancestry UK' http://search.ancestry.co.uk

Oxford
Oxford Alumni Database at 'Ancestry UK' http://search.ancestry.co.uk

Queen's College Oxford, The https://www.queens.ox.ac.uk/library-history

Brasenose College, Oxford, https://www.bnc.ox.ac.uk/about-brasenose/history/archives/history

Westmorland
Westmorland Gazette https://www.thewestmorlandgazette.co.uk/news/18291644.nostalgia-famous-visitors-kendal-centuries.

Appleby:
Mayors	http://applebytown.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/MAYORS-OFAPPLEBY-PDF.
Town	http://www.applebytown.org.uk/
Red House	https://britishlistedbuildings.co.uk/101146473-the-red-house appleby-in-westmorland

Barton
Hodgson's Hill http://www.gatehouse-gazetteer.info/English%20sites/4653.html

Cumbria County History Trust
Barbon	https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/barbon.
Cliburn	https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/cliburn.
Docker	https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/docker.
Selside	https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/township/selside-whitwell.
Fawcett Forest	https://www.cumbriacountyhistory.org.uk/sites/default/files/fawcett forrest_draft_full_history.pdf

Cumbrian Lives.org.uk
George Hilton https://www.cumbrianlives.org.uk/lives-index/h.html,

Place Names
Smith, A.H. (ed.) *Place-Names of Westmorland* (online), edited by A.H. Smith (1967).https://epns.nottingham.ac.uk/browse/Westmorland
Hutton-in-the-Forest https://hutton-in-the-forest.co.uk.
Kendal Parish Church https://kendalparishchurch.co.uk/history
Kendal, Black Hall https://www.lancaster.ac.uk/quakers/links/kendal_black_hall.html.
Selside https://selside.com/historyofselside.html.
Shap Abbey Harry Hawkins, 'Records of Shap Abbey', Pdf, harry.hawkins68@btinternet.com.

Westmorland people and activities
Otter Hunting https://lakelandhuntingmemories.com/LostOtterhoundsNew.html.
Round Fish https://www.directseafoods.co.uk/fish-glossary/round-fish/
Wharton, Pauline 'The True Story of Robin the Devil', https://paulinewharton.wordpress.com/the-true-story-of-robin-the-devil

Scottish History (Edinburgh)
Balfour, Dr Andrew (1630-94), physician. Royal Society of Physicians of Edinburgh, https://www.rcpe.ac.uk/heritage/college-history/andrew-balfour.
Groundwater, Anna 'Ben Jonson's Walk', University of Edinburgh, 15 July 2013 https://www.blogs.hss.ed.ac.uk/ben-jonsons-walk.
Hopper, Janice 'Edinburgh Castle history: 900 years protecting Scotland's capital', *Britain Magazine* https://www.britain-magazine.com/features/region/scotland

Arms and Descents
Peerage https://www.thepeerage.com/
Baronetage https://www.baronetage.org.
College of Arms https://www.college-of-arms.gov.uk/.
Heraldry, Glossary https://www.heraldsnet.org/saitou/parker/Jpglossa.htm

Encyclopaedia Britannica Biographies
Domitian https://www.britannica.com/biography/Domitian.
Fairfax, Thomas https://www.britannica.com/biography/Thomas-Fairfax-3rd-Baron-Fairfax-of-Cameron.4
Lothar https://www.britannica.com/biography/Lothar-I.
Suetonius https://www.britannica.com/biography/Suetonius.
Vespasian https://www.britannica.com/biography/Vespasian.

Church of England
Clergy of the Church of England Database
http://www.theclergydatabase.org.uk. (CCED)
Sheils, W.J., 'Bishops and their dioceses: reform of visitation in the Anglican church c.1680-c.1760', CCED Online Journal 1, 2007. http://www.theclergydatabase.org.uk/cce_a1/
151 Canons of the Church of England, 1604-1606 https://www.anglican.net/doctrines/1604-canon-law/
Court of First Fruits and Tenths https://www.britannica.com/topic/Court-of-Augmentations

Court of Wards and Liveries
https://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/help-with-your-research/research-guides/land-inheritance-court-of-wards-liveries-1540-1645.
Common Worship Calendar of the Church of England
https://www.churchofengland.org/prayer-and-worship/worship-texts-and-resources/common-worship/churchs-year/calendar (2000).
Book of Homilies (Church of England (1547, 1563 with additions to 1571)
http://www.anglicanlibrary.org/homilies/
St Martin's Priory, Canterbury https://www.dover-kent.co.uk/st_martins_priory.html.
Worcester cathedral Library https://worcestercathedrallibrary.wordpress.com/2019/08/21/the-game-of-the-rose/#_ftn1
Beverley Minster https://beverleyminster.org.uk/saint-john-of-beverley/.

Dictionaries
Black's Law Dictionary (1910) https://thelawdictionary.org/
Collins English Dictionary https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/
Dictionaries of the Scots Language https://dsl.ac.uk/
Merriam-Webster Dictionary https://www.merriam-webster.com

Camden, William, *Britannia* (Translated by Philemon Holland, 1607), hypertext critical edition by Dana F. Sutton (University of California, Irvine)
https://philological.cal.bham.ac.uk/cambrit/

Oxford University Press
Classical Dictionary https://oxfordre.com/classics/search?siteToSearch=classics&q=dictionary&search
National Biography http://www.oxforddnb.com.
English Dictionary https://www.oed.com/search/advanced/Entries?
Reference https://www.oxfordreference.com.
Local and Family History https://www.oxfordreference.com › acref-9780198600800
A Dictionary of British History (3rd edition, 2015)
https://www.oxfordreference.com/display/10.1093/acref/9780191758027.001.0001/

Oxford History of National Biography (*ODNB*) https://www.oxforddnb.com/
Entries consulted
Adolph, A., 'Segar, Sir William (c.1554-1633), herald'.
Anderson, M., 'Kings of the Picts c.300-c.900'.
Asch, R., 'Wentworth, Thomas, first earl of Strafford (1593-1641), lord lieutenant of Ireland'.
Baigent, E., 'Adams, John (d.1738)'.
Baker, J., 'Egerton, Thomas, first viscount Brackley (1540-1617)'.
Barclay, A, 'Mary [Mary of Modena] (1658-1718), queen of England, Scotland, and Ireland, consort of James II and VII.'
Baron, S., 'Nicholas, Sir Edward (1593-1669), government official'.
Bayne, R. & Armstrong, R., 'Birckbek, Simon (1583/4-1656), Church of England clergyman, religious controversialist'.
Beckett, J.V., 'Lowther, John, first Viscount Lonsdale (1655-1700)'.
Beddard, R., 'Walker, Obadiah (1616-1699), college head, author'.
Bendall, S., 'Speed, John (1551/2-1629), historian, cartographer'.
Benedict, J., 'Bury, Arthur (1623/4-1713), college head, writer on theology'.
Bickley, A., & Wright, S., 'Dawes, Lancelot (1579/80-1655), Church of England clergyman'.
Bradley, E. & S. Kelsey, 'Grey, Thomas, Baron Grey of Groby (1622-1657), regicide'.
Broadway, J., 'Hatton, Christopher, first viscount Hatton (bap. 1632, d. 1706), politician'.
'Throckmorton family (per. c.1500-1682), gentry'.

Britnell, R., ‘Sheldon, Ralph (1623-1684), antiquary’.
Brown, A., & Walker C., ‘Upton, Nicholas (c.1400-1457), cleric, lawyer, warfare and heraldry author’.
Callow, J., ‘Graham, Richard, first Viscount Preston (1648-1695), politician and Jacobite conspirator’.
———, ‘Strickland, Thomas John Francis (c.1682-1740), Roman Catholic bishop of Namur’.
Cambers, A., ‘Crakanthorpe, Richard (bap. 1568, d. 1624), Church of England clergyman and logician’.
Carley, J., ‘Leland, John (c.1503-1552), poet, antiquary’.
Carlyle, E., & Winchester, A. ‘Ferguson, Richard Saul (1837-1900), antiquary’.
Christianson, P., ‘Selden, John (1584-1654)’.
Clark, J.K., ‘Wharton, Thomas, first marquess of Wharton, first marquess of Malmesbury, first marquess of Catherlough (1648-1715), politician’.
Clark, M., ‘Robinson, Henry (1551/2-1616)’.
Collins, J., ‘Godolphin, John (1617-1678) civil lawyer’.
Collinson, P., ‘Sandys, Edwin (1519?-1588), archbishop of York’.
————, ‘Cartwright, Thomas (1534/5-1603), theologian, religious controversialist’.
Considine, J., ‘Casaubon, Isaac (1559-1614), classical scholar, ecclesiastical historian’.
Cownie, E., ‘Percy, William de (d.1096, 99?), baron, administrator’.
Cooper, T. & Bradley G., ‘Leyburn, John (1620-1702), vicar apostolic of the London district’.
Corner, D., Howden [Hoveden], Roger of (d.1201/2), chronicler’.
Cranfield, N., ‘Hudson, Michael (1605-1648), Church of England clergyman, royalist agent’.
Crick, J.C., ‘Monmouth, Geoffrey of (d.1154/5), bishop of St Asaph, historian’.
Cromartie, A., ‘Hale, Sir Mathew (1609-1676), judge, writer’.
Cruickshanks, E., ‘Grahme, James (1650-1730), courtier, politician’.
Davies, J., ‘Goodricke, Sir Henry, second baronet (1642-1705), diplomat, politician’.
Day J., ‘Cooke, Robert (d.1593), herald’.
———, ‘Flower, William (1497/8-1588), herald’.
Dockray, K., ‘Neville, John, third Baron Latimer (1493-1543), nobleman’.
Doggett, N., ‘Gale, Thomas (1635/6-1702)’.
Doggett, N., ‘Hare, Henry (bap.1636, d.1708), second Baron Coleraine, antiquary, architect’.
Eisel, J., ‘Duckworth, Richard (bap.1631? d. 1706)’.
Elligott, J., ‘Barwick, John (1612-1664), Dean of St Paul’s’.
Elmer, P., ‘Barwick, Peter (1619-1705), physician’.
Elzinga, J., ‘Howard, Philip [St Philip Howard], thirteenth earl of Arundel (1557-1595), magnate, alleged traitor’.
Farr, D., ‘Lambert, John (bap.1619, d.1684), parliamentary soldier, politician’.
Ford, A., ‘Ussher, James (1581-1656)’.
Ford, L., ‘Mildmay, Sir Walter (c.1523-1589), founder of Emmanuel College, Cambridge’.
Goodwin, G. & Peacey, J., ‘Howard, Henry Frederick (1608-1652), fifteenth earl of Arundel, fifth earl of Surrey, second earl of Norfolk’.
Greenberg, J., ‘Petyt [Petit], William (1640/41-1707), lawyer, political propagandist’.
Hamilton, A., ‘Bedwell, William (bap.1563, d.1632)’.
Handley, S., ‘Cotton, Sir Robert Bruce, first baronet (1571-1631), antiquary and politician.
————, ‘Dolben, Sir William (bap.1627, d.1694), judge’.
————, ‘Mill, John (1644/5-1707), Church of England clergyman, college head’.
————, ‘Spelman, Sir Henry (1563/4-1641), historian, antiquary’.
Harriss, G., ‘Beaufort, John, duke of Somerset (1404-1444), magnate, soldier’.
Haycock, D., ‘Bertram, Charles Julius (1723-1765), literary forger’.
Hayton, D., ‘Nicolson, William (1655-1727), bishop of Derry, antiquary’.
Hegarty, A., ‘Halton, Timothy (bap.1633, d.1704), college head’.
————, ‘Airay, Henry (1558/60-1616), college head’.
————, ‘Potter, Barnaby (bap.1577, d.1642), bishop of Carlisle’.
Henry, J., ‘Wilkins, John (1614-1672), theologian, natural philosopher’.
Higton, H., ‘Gunter, Edmund (1581-1626), mathematician’.

Hodges, R., 'Wase, Christopher (1627-1690), schoolmaster, classical scholar'.
Hoppit, J., 'King, Gregory (1648-1712), herald, political economist'.
Hoyle, R., 'Clifford, Henry, first earl of Cumberland (c.1493-1542), magnate'.
James, S., 'Herbert [née Parr], Anne (*c*.1515-1552), countess of Pembroke, courtier, sister to Katherine Parr'.
———, 'Katherine/Kateryn/Catherine] [née Katherine Parr] (1512-1548), queen of England & Ireland, sixth consort of Henry VIII'.
Jones, J., 'Good, Thomas (1609/10-1678), college head'.
Kaye, J., 'Eglesfield /Egilsfeld, Robert [Robert de Eglesfeld] (c.1295-1349), founder of Queen's College, Oxford'.
Kell, P., 'Thoresby, Ralph (1658-1725), antiquary, topographer'.
Kellett, A., 'Shipton, Mother' (supp. fl. 1530), supposed witch and prophetess'.
Kelsey, S., 'Wharton, Philip, fourth Baron Wharton (1613-1696), politician'.
King, E., 'Ingulf (c.1045-1109), abbot of Crowland'.
Kitchen, F., 'Norden, John, (c.1547-1625), cartographer'.
Knighton, C., 'Knight, John, (bap.1622, d.1680), surgeon'.
Lamont, W., 'Prynne, William (1600-1669), pamphleteer, lawyer'.
Landau, N., 'Burn Richard (1709-1785), legal writer, Church of England clergyman'.
Laughton, J.K. (revised by A. Lambert), 'Berry, Sir Edward, baronet (1768-1831), naval officer'.
Lloyd, S., & R. Reader, 'Paris, Matthew (c.1200-1259), historian, Benedictine monk, polymath)'.
Marcombe, D., 'Gilpin, Bernard (1516-1584), Church of England clergyman, preacher'.
Marshall, A., 'Williamson, Sir Joseph (1633-1701), government official'.
Marshall, P., 'Hyde, Thomas (1636-1703), oriental scholar'.
Mason, J., 'Diceto, Ralph de (d.1199/1200), chronicler and ecclesiastic'.
McCullough, P., 'King, John (d.1621), bishop of London'.
Meadows, P., 'Moore, John (1646-1714), bishop of Ely'.
Meikle, M. & Payne, H., 'Anne [of Denmark] (1574-1619), Queen of England, Scotland & Ireland'.
Mendyk, S.A.E., 'Blome, Richard (bap.1635?, d.1705), cartographer, bookseller'.
Miller, J., 'Anne [Anne Hyde], duchess of York (1637-1671), 1st wife of James II'.
Nurse, B., ' Lyttelton, Charles (1714-1768), bishop of Carlisle, antiquary'.
Parry, G., 'Dodsworth, Roger (bap.1585, d.1654), antiquary'.
Peltonen, M., 'Bacon, Francis, Viscount St Alban (1561-1626), lord chancellor'.
Phillips, C., 'Benson, Gervase (d. 1679), Quaker leader'.
———, 'Lowther, Sir John, of Lowther, first baronet (1605-1675), landowner, local politician'.
Porter, B. & Beva M., 'Skinner, Stephen (bap.1623, d.1667), physician and philologist'.
Prest, W., 'Hutton, Sir Richard (bap.1561, d.1639), judge'.
Quehen, H., 'Pearson, John (1613-1686), bishop of Chester'.
Quintrell, B., 'Morton, Thomas (bap.1564, d.1659), bishop of Durham'.
Ramsay, N., 'Glover, Robert (1543/4-1588), herald'.
Roots, I., 'Burton, Thomas (fl. 1656-1661), diarist'.
Royan, N., 'Boece/Boethius) Hector (c. 1465-1536), historian, college head'.
Sanders, J., 'Brathwaite, Richard (1587/8-1673), poet, writer' (*ODNB* Archive edition).
Seipp, D., 'Fleta (fl. 1290-1300), author of a Latin treatise on English common law written between 1290 and 1300'.
Sil, N.P., 'Herbert, William, first earl of Pembroke (1506/7-1570), soldier, magnate'.
Smith, N., 'Whitehead, George (1637-1724), Quaker leader, writer'.
Smuts, R., 'Howard, Thomas, fourteenth earl of Arundel, fourth earl of Surrey, first earl of Norfolk (1585-1646), art collector, politician'.
Spurr, J., 'Barlow, Thomas (1608/9-1691), bishop of Lincoln'.
Stansfield, M., 'Holland, John, first earl of Huntingdon, duke of Exeter (c.1352-1400), magnate and soldier'.
Stater, V., 'Hatton, Christopher, first baron Hatton (bap. 1605, d. 1670), politician.'
Stone, J., 'Pont, Timothy (fl. 1574-1611), map maker, chorographer'.
Stratford, J., 'John [John of Lancaster], duke of Bedford (1389-1435), regent of France'.

Summerson, H., ‘Clifford, Henry, tenth Baron Clifford (1454-1523), magnate’.
————, ‘Dacre, Leonard (d.1573), rebel’.
————, ‘Hugh [Hugh of Beaulieu] (d.1223), bishop of Carlisle’.
————, ‘The Dacre Family (1542-1716), gentry’.
————, ‘Whelpdale, Roger (d.1423), bishop of Carlisle’.
Taylor, J., ‘Walsingham, Thomas (c. 1340-*c*.1422), historian, prior of Wymondham’.
————, ‘Higden, Ranulf (d.1364), Benedictine Monk, chronicler’.
Thomson, R., ‘Malmesbury, William of (b. c.1090, d. c.1142), historian, man of letters, and Benedictine monk’.
Turner, A., ‘Plot, Robert (bap.1640, d.1696), naturalist, antiquary’.
Walker, S., ‘John of Gaunt (1340-1399), duke of Aquitaine, duke of Lancaster, prince and steward of England’.
Wane, M. & Winchester, A., ‘Denton, John (b. c.1561, d.1617), antiquary’.
Watson, F., ‘Bruce, Christian (d.1356), noblewoman’.
Welch, C., & Axworthy, R. ‘Lovekyn, John (d.1368), merchant, lord mayor of London’.
Winchester, A., ‘Machell, Thomas (bap. 1647, d. 1698), antiquary’.
Withers, C., ‘Ogilby, John (1600-1676), publisher, geographer’.
Woodcock, T., ‘Lant, Thomas (1554/5-1600/01), herald, draughtsman’.
————, ‘Guillim, John (1550-1621), herald’.
————, ‘Warburton, John (1682-1759), herald and antiquary.
Woodley, J., ‘Lister, Martin’ (bap.1639, d.1712), physician and naturalist’.
Woolf, D., ‘Waterhouse, Edward (1619-1670), heraldic writer’.
Wright, D., ‘Langton, Thomas (c.1430-1501), bishop of Winchester, archbishop-elect of Canterbury’.
Wright, S., ‘Fane, Mildmay (1602-1666) second earl of Westmorland, politician, writer’.

Acknowledgements

Cumberland and Westmorland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society would like to record its thanks to the Dean and Chapter of Carlisle Cathedral for permission to publish *Thomas Machell's Collections towards a History and Topography of Westmorland*.

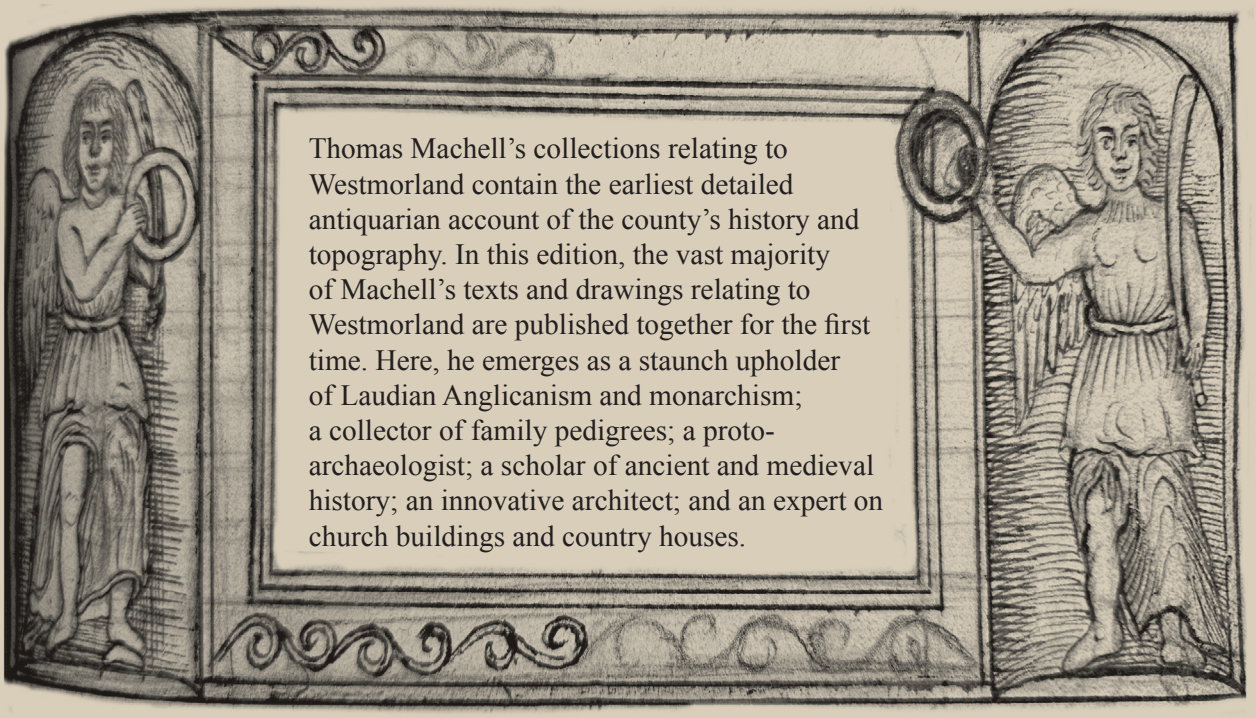
Dr David Weston, Canon Librarian of the cathedral from 1995 to 2005 and continuing in an honorary capacity for several years afterwards, was instrumental in ensuring that the project could begin. I would like to thank him, Professor Emeritus Angus Winchester, and Professor Adam Fox for their help at that stage. I should particularly like to thank Professor Emeritus Michael Mullett for overseeing much of the venture; the Hon. Secretary of CWAAS, Marion McClintock, who generously brought the project to completion; the Hon. Treasurer of CWAAS, Dr W. D. Shannon; members of the CWAAS Small Grants Committee; and Professor Emeritus William Gibson, who has been a constant source of advice and support. I am indebted to the home of Machell's volumes, Cumbria Archives, Carlisle, where I have particularly appreciated the professional help of Helen Cunningham, whose knowledge of both palæography and local history is exceptional. She deserves the deepest gratitude for her support, and the highest respect for her skills.

I remember with deep gratitude my former colleague, the late Dr Jane Penman, for her elegant translations of Machell's Latin and Greek texts, and for her humour, scholarly guidance and warm support as we worked together. I also thank Timothy Sykes for his advice and for his skilful copy editing. This edition could not have been completed without the help of these two very special people.

The saying, 'It takes a village to raise a child', comes to mind as I think of many other people who have offered useful comment and assistance in bringing this book to fruition. The late James Armstrong was responsible for the photography of Machell's images; Haydn Charlesworth dealt manfully with some of the trickiest transcriptions; Harry Hawkins offered his invaluable expertise on Shap charters, as did Tony Cousins on Skelsmergh; Edward Impey, Master and Director General Emeritus of the Royal Armouries, shared his unrivalled knowledge of British fortified buildings; the late Adrian Allen gave advice on medieval documents; former archivist, Jeremy Godwin, very kindly allowed me to check my transcription against his unfinished draft of the Machell volumes, now housed in the Cumbria Archives, Carlisle; and Bryan Harper of Titus Wilson gave me valued advice during the publishing phase. The number of other people who furnished me with opinions and local knowledge is incalculable; I thank them all. Last, but certainly not least, I thank my husband, Richard Platt, for his invaluable support. Any errors in the text and footnotes are mine, although it should be noted that Machell's text can be opaque and his handwriting, at times, atrocious.

Dr Jane Platt FRHistS is an author and editor whose main interests lie in Church and local history. She was a researcher at the Centre for Methodism and Church History at Oxford Brookes University until it closed in 2024 and was one of the editors of CWAAS Transactions until 2025.

CUMBERLAND AND WESTMORLAND
ANTIQUARIAN AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY



More significantly, perhaps, this edition invites readers to explore Machell's other interests. His descriptions of the local, the commonplace and the every-day in Westmorland are vital to the collection. His deep interest in place-names and dialect; games and traditions; folklore and humour; local politics and local characters; his comedic or tragic anecdotes; and his ventures into tales of the occult offer an alternative dynamic which reveals even more of the period and place in which he lived. The importance of Machell's research is that it stands at an intersection between late-seventeenth-century antiquarianism, erudition, religion, lore and tradition.

Machell's History is made particularly valuable by the fact that his early death prevented the publication of a completed work. Had it been published, many of the unique delights of this edition: Machell's correspondence; his trenchant opinions; his unguarded comments; his frequent criticism of his peers, would almost certainly have been edited and lost. The unfinished nature of Machell's History also reveals important aspects of seventeenth-century antiquarian scholarship, including the development of research methods; the building of evidence to provide argument; the careful citation of sources; and the experimental composition of early drafts, which involved copious textual alteration. This transcription of Machell's work-in-progress will be appreciated, not only by those who are already conversant with him as a northern gentleman-antiquary, but also by a greater constituency of scholars and a wider public, to whom some of the hitherto impenetrable content will be revelatory.